

# Imprimatur,

JANUARY 1.  
1664.

WILL. MORICE.

Whitehall, Jan. 26. 1664.

Let this BOOK be Printed.

HEN. BENNET.

*An Advertisement to the Reader concerning this large and exact Table, much wanted and desired in the First and Second, and now annexed to the Third and Fourth Impression of this Book.*

**H**OW well it is observed, *That Humane Industry cannot begin and finish any thing at one and the same time*, this famous Book may be an instance; whose first Edition was but the *Monogram*, and rude draught, to a more exact Composure; the second adding much Matter and Method to the first; and the third and fourth adding Matter, Method, and a most exact and full Table of both, to the second; containing all the Provinces, Kingdoms, States, Principalities, Continents, Isles, Promontories, Isthmus's, Seas, Rivers, Havens, Mirt-Towns, Cities, Strong-holds, with their Longitudes, Latitudes, Situations, Plantations, Inhabitants, Ancient and Modern Names; and the Book and Page where they are satisfactorily discoursed of.

A Table (that notwithstanding every Methodical Book, such as this is, its own Index: Every great Memory, like that of *Cæsar*, carrieth a Table of all Books, in his Brain; and every hopeful Student makes his own Table to all Classical Authors) that carrieth with it its own Commendation. 1. To those that have not time to read Books, but Indexes. 2. To those that have not patience to go through the whole *Body*, and yet curiosity to observe the Remarkable parts of Geography. 3. To those that would recollect what they have forgotten of their reading. 4. To those that upon any emergent occasion, would see the Situation, Rivers, Havens, Strong-holds, Garrisons, Longitudes, Latitudes, Commodities, Products, Curiosities, Inhabitants, Genius, Condition, and History of any place in the World. 5. To those that read any Ancient or Modern Histories, or other Authors, and would be satisfied in the *Scene* of the Actions they read of, and the situation of the places there mentioned. 6. To those that aiming at exactness this way, would compare all the Ancient and Modern Geographers. And 7. To all the Perusers of this Book that complained of the intolerable defects of former Tables and Indexes; of which number, the Learned Compiler of this Table, who drew it up for his own satisfaction, and publisheth it for the Publick, is one who wisheth others as much benefit in the easie way of Perusing it, as he had in the more toilsome way of Collecting it.

The Matter added to this Impression, is much; and all under the Author's own hand, not long before he died; putting to it (as he said truly to his Friend that was with him in the perusal of it) his *last band*.

LIBRARY  
OF THE  
UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS





# COSMOGRAPHY IN FOUR BOOKS. CONTAINING THE Chorography and History OF THE WHOLE WORLD:

AND ALL THE  
Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

By *PETER HEYLYN*.

With an Accurate and an Approved INDEX of all the Kingdoms, Provinces, Countries, Inhabitants, People, Cities, Mountains, Rivers, Seas, Islands, Forts, Bays, Capes, Forests, &c. of any Remarque in the whole World: Much wanted and desired in the former, and now annexed to this last Impression, Revised and Corrected by the Author himself immediately before his death.

Acts 17. 24. 26.

*Deus qui fecit mundum & omnia quæ in eo sunt :--- fecit ex una omne genus hominum, inhabitare super universam faciem terræ, definiens tempora & terminos habitationis eorum.*

Plin. in Procem. l. 7.

*MUNDUS, & in eo Terra, Gentes, Mariæ, Insulæ, insignes Urbes, ad hunc modum se habent.*

L O N D O N :

Printed by *A.C.* for *P. Chetwind*, and *A. Seile*, and are to be sold by *T. Basset*, *J. Wright*, *R. Chiswel*, and *T. Sawbridge*.  
MDC LXXVII.

# T O T H E R E A D E R,

The AUTHOR *rendreth this Account of his Undertaking and Performance in the following Work.*

**I**T is a great complaint with many, That they want time, either to undertake great matters, or to accomplish those they have undertaken: Whereas it is more truly affirmed by *Seneca*, that we do not so much want, as waste it: *Non parum temporis habemus, sed multum perdimus*, as that Author hath it. We trifle out too much of our precious time, as he well observeth, *Aut male agendo, aut nihil agendo, aut aliud agendo*; either in doing ill, or nothing, or else things impertinent: and then cry out, that we want things convenient to perform those duties which are expected from us in our several places. Nor have we only time enough to spend, but some time to spare; some privacies and retreats from business; some breathing fits from the affairs of our *Vocations*: and even of them (those times of leisure and recess) we are to render an account, in *Cato's* judgment: *Otti reddendam rationem judicabat Cato*, as we read in *Tullie*. In which account, as all men generally are concerned, so am I interested therein as much as any. For being, by the unhappiness of my Destiny, or the infelicity of the Times, deprived of my Preferences, and divested of my Ministerial Function, (as to the ordinary and publick exercise thereof) I cannot chuse but say, I have leisure enough; the opportunity of spending more idle hours (if I were so minded) than I ever expected or desired. And though, perhaps, I could have spent those times of leisure which the change of my affairs hath given me, with greater benefit to my self, and more to the advantage of my private fortunes: yet that of *Cato* did so over-balance me, that I was willing to do somewhat which might witness to ensuing times, how I had passed away those hours, and employed that leisure. And when I was considering of some particulars within the compass of my power, and answerable to that small stock of Books which I had recruited, (mine own being taken from me, and disposed of, contrary unto publick Order) I was requested by some friends, of no common quality, to review my *Geography*; to make it more compleat and useful to an *English Reader*: my vacancy from business, used by them as an Argument to induce me to it. A motion looked on, when first made, with neglect enough;

my desuetude from those younger Studies, my great want of Books, the sad complexion of the times, and the unhandsom entertainment which my Endeavors for the Publick had lately met with, seeming sufficient to dissuade me from the Undertaking. Little encouragement, God wot, to write Books for others, when I could not be permitted to enjoy my own; or to employ my self in order to a publick service, when not alone my private Fortunes, but the publick Patrimony of the Church, was destroyed and dissipated. But afterwards, being pressed unto it by some Members of Parliament, whom I found loth to be denied, and by some others of great Rank, but such different *Interesses*, that I wondered how they could all center upon the same *Proposal*: I thought it, at the last, a more *Christian duty*, to satisfy the honest desires of so many men, than to sacrifice any longer to my own privacy and retiredness, to which I had intended to devote my self. So I resolved to venture on it, though well I saw that my condition in so doing might be resembled unto that of the *Israelites* in the Land of *Egypt*; of whom the *Task-masters* did expect the full tale of *Bricks*, and yet denied them their accustomed allowance of *straw and stubble*. My case, in this, not much unlike unto that of the Duke of *Alva*; Who being under the displeasure of the King of *Spain*, in quality of a Prisoner, without the least assurance of recovering the King's favour, or his own liberty; and yet employed, in that Conjunction, for the conquest of *Portugal*, was wont to say, *That he was sent to Conquer Kingdoms with his Fetters on*.

And here I cannot but remember a pretty accident which befel me in the Month of *January*, *An. 1640*, at what time it had been my ill fortune to suffer under some misapprehensions which had been entertain'd against me, and to be before the *Committee for the Courts of Justice*, on the complaint of *Mr. Pryane*, then newly return'd from his confinement, and in great credit with the Vulgar. Heard by them; I confess, I was, with a great deal of ingenuous patience; but most despitigfully reviled and persecuted with excessive both noise and violence, by such as thronged about the doors of that *Committee*, to expect the issue: it being as natural to many weak and inconsiderate men,



## To the Reader.

though on different ends, by *Wicliff*, and some others in the Ages since; who have driven on their private projects under the colour and pretence of a *Reformation*. *Episcopacy*, as it was coeval with the Church of *CHRIST*, so was it the best and strongest Buttreffs in that Sacred Building. Thewalking or subverting of which Primitive Order, did either prostitute the Church to the Lust and Tyranny of that proud Ullurper, or expose the Patrimony thereof unto spoyl and rapine; or finally, subject it to the *Anarchy* and licentiousness of *Heterodoxies*, and confused Opinions. But I fear I have digressed too far in this speculation.

As a *Geographer*, I have been punctual and exact in giving unto every Province its peculiar bounds, in laying out their several Land-marks, tracing the course of most of the principal Rivers, and setting forth the situation and estate of the chiefest Towns, and did once think of beautifying the Work with as many Maps as the several States and Kingdoms which are here described. But upon further consideration, how much it would encrease the Book both in bulk and price, and consequently make it of less publick use than I did intend it, I laid by those thoughts, and rested satisfied with the adding of four Maps for the four parts of the World: by which the *Reader* may discern how each Country lies unto the other, though he find not each particular Province, and much less all the Towns and Cities which are here expressed: and on the other side, may meet with many Towns of inferior note, which are here omitted. And herein I have took some pains in searching out the first Inhabitants of each several Country, as far as I could see by the light of Letters, or go by probable Conjectures, in finding out the place of such ancient Cities as are now decayed, not easily visible in their Ruins; and adding to such Cities as are now in being (if of any Antiquity) their Original Names. As this was necessary to the understanding of the Histories of those elder times, as the knowledge of the present names is to the more delightful reading of our Modern Stories. And though I have not pretermitted any Town of note, fit to be specified and inscribed on in a Work of this nature; yet would I not have the *Reader* look for such a punctual enumeration and description of them, as he may meet withal in those who have written the *Choreography* of some Country only; or think himself disappointed in his expectation, if he find not here the situation and affairs of each Town of War, or the Quartering place of every Company or Troop of Soldiers, which are presented to him in the Weekly News-books. In all Countries there are many places which either by the advantage of their situation, or some present exigency of affairs, are fortified and made Towns of War; or otherwise remarkable for some signal Battel, in these late

bustles and commotions of the Christian World; of which no notice hath been taken in former times, and consequently not within the compass of this Discourse: and yet perhaps may grow as famous and considerable in the times to come, as many of the mightier Cities now decayed and ruined. He that shall think the Work imperfect (though I confess it, to be nothing but imperfections) for some deficiencies in this kind, may be likened to the Country-fellow in *Arifophanes*, (if my memory fail not) who picked a great quarrel with the Map, because he could not find where his own Farm stood. And such a Country customer I did meet with once, a servant of my elder brother's, sent by him with some Horses to *Oxon*, to bring me and a friend of mine unto his Houle. Who having lost his way, as we passed through the Forrest of *Witchwood*, and not able to recover any beaten Track, did very earnestly intreat me to lead the way, till I had brought him past the Woods, to the open Fields. Which when I had refused to do, as I had good reason; alledging, that I never had been there before, and therefore that I could not tell which way to lead him: *That's strange*, said he; *I have heard my old Master, your Father, say, That you made a Book of all the World's; and cannot you find your way out of the wood?* Which being spoken out of an honest simplicity, not out of any pretence to wit, or the least thought of putting a blunt jest upon me, occasioned a great deal of merriment for a long time after: but I hope to meet with no such *Readers*. The greatness of the Bulk, and consequently of the Price, makes me somewhat confident, that none but men of Judgment and Understanding will peruse these Papers: and such as they, will look for no more particulars, than the nature of a general Discourse will fitly bear. Perfection and Exactness is to be expected in each kind of Science, as is observed by *Aristotle* in his second Book of his *Ethicks*, *ἐν ὅσῳ ἡ περὶ ἀρετῆς, πῶς ἐκείνηται*, as far forth as the condition of the Argument may be capable of it. And so much if I have attained unto, is all which can with reason be expected from me. To look for more, were as improper and absurd, (in the words of *Aristotle*) as for an *Artist* to expect Tropes of Rhetoric from a Mathematician, or Demonstrations from an Orator.

Lastly, as an *Historian*, I have traced the affairs of each several Country, from the first Inhabitants thereof, (such as the *Latines* call, *Aborigines*, and the *Greeks*, *Ἀυτοχθόνες*) till these later times. Which that I might be sure to do on a good foundation, I have took more than common care, to settle all the first Adventurers (after the proud attempt at *Babel*) in their right Plantations; and that too in the way of an *Introduction*, that I might the better know where I was to find them, and to go on with their Affairs with

## To the Reader.

with the less disturbance. The rest of their *Occurrences*, I have summed into so short an *Abstract*, as may be useful to the Learned, in the way of a *Remembrancer*; to the less-knowing man in the way of a Tutor: Brevity, in this kind, I have much endeavoured; but so as to avoid all obscurity also. Nor have I only kept my self to the story of Kingdoms, or the greater *Signeuries*, Estates or Nations, which are or have been of the greatest consideration in the sway of the World: but looked on the Estates of such Dukes, Earls, and inferior Princes, as in their times have had the Government of those parts which gave Title to them; whose Actions and Successions are distinctly specified, and all such Alterations noted, as have hapned either in the ruin of such Estates, or the transferring of them from one Houle to another. The Catalogues and Successions of which Royal and Illustrious Families, I have drawn down unto the year 1648. towards the expiring of which year, I began to set my self upon this Employment. And there I fix, as on the top of some dreadful *Precipice*, which one can neither venture down without danger, nor look down without horror. Some things there are of such a nature, that either to speak of them, or to hold our peace, is alike unsafe. In such a case it is best to keep at a distance. For though truth be the best Mistress which a man can serve, (*Magis amica veritas*, said the great Philosopher) yet it is well observed withal, that if a man follow her too close at the heels, she may chance to kick out his teeth for his labour.

In this regard, as also out of that compassionate affection which a true *Englishman* ought to bear his native Country, although in my approaches towards these present times, I have took notice, in some other places, of such battles, sieges, and successes, in the chances of War, as have hapned in these later days: I have forbore to take the least notice of those Tragedies of Blood and Death which have been lately acted on the Stage of *England*. I cannot but with grief confess, that I might find variety of this kind enough, in the late Wars amongst our selves: in which there have been more pitched-fields, more strong pieces taken, more notable travellies of State, and exploits of War, than all the World can parallel in an equal time. But I have too much *English* bowels to please my self in the recital, or to look back on those unfortunate adventures, which I should rather chuse to cover with the *Ait of Oblivion*, or bury in the grave of perpetual silence. How gladly I could have recorded these exploits of War, had they been exercised on a Subject more proper for them, my willingness to take notice, upon all occasions, of the Actions and Achievements of the *English* Nation, will bear witness for me. But the employing of that Valour against our selves, as if not to be conquered, but by one

another, strikes such horror in me, that I cannot think thereof, without much afflictment; nor intimate thus much of it, without great *reluctancies*. I fear it may be said too truly of our late embroilments, as the Historian of the Civil-Wars betwixt *Cæsar* and *Pompey*, *Causa hujus Belli eadem que omnium nimia felicitas*; that they were principally occasioned by a surfeit of too much felicity. But if we were grown weary of our own prosperities; and that prayer and passage in the publick Liturgy (*Give peace in our time, O Lord*) did not relish with us: How happy had it been if we had found some other Field to have tried our Valour in? And made some Foreign Country that *Aeldama*, which so fatally was made at home; The dishonour which we suffered in the Isle of *Rhee*, when beat thence ingloriously by the *French*, the forcible and long detention of the *Palatinate*, by the power of the *Spaniard*; the barbarous Butchery at *Amboyna*; and the beating up of the *Spanish* Fleet within the protection of our Castles, by those of *Holland*; the infolencies of the *Scots*; and the Rebellions of the *Irish*, might well have stirred some indignation in an *English* breast. And had we fought upon those scores, or on none but them, our Victories had deserved the honour of a solemn *Triumph*, denied by the old *Roman* Laws to a Civil-war: But our infelicity (as it seems) was like that of *Rome*, in following those unnatural Wars with such animosities; when the unrevenged death of *Cæssar*, the blood of so many thousand of their slaughtered Citizens, and the shameful loss of so many of the *Roman* Ensigns, should rather have invited them to the conquest of the *Parthian* Empire. Of which, thus feelingly the Poet

*Cumque superba foret Babylon ipsianda  
Trophaus,  
Bella quæ plebsuit, nullo habitura Trium-  
phos,*

(constrain'd  
And when proud *Babylon* should have been  
To give us back our Ensigns lately gain'd:  
We rather chose such Quarrels to pursue,  
For which no *Triumph* could be justly due.

But such is the condition and vicissitude of human affairs, that there is nothing permanent, and much less of certainty. The greatest Monarchies of the World, the *Babylonian*, *Persian*, *Grecian*, *Roman*, have all had their peries, nothing remaining of them now, but the name and memory. And what is now become of those mighty Cities of the East, *Ninive*, *Babylon*, *Ecbatana*, *Susa*, with the rest mentioned in the Scriptures, and in *Classical* Authors? Are not their very Ruines now become invisible? Where are the puissant Families of the *Achæmenides* of *Persia*, the *Selæucæ* of *Syria*, the *Pharaohs* and *Ptolomies* of *Egypt*, the *Cæsars* of *Italy*, the *Merovingians* and *Carolingians* of the Realm of *France*, and the *Plantagenets* of

## To the Reader.

of England? Are they not all extinct and gone, not to be found but by the benefit of story, and some ancient Monuments? And if it be so, as it is, with the greatest Monarchies, the most mighty Cities of the World, we must not think that smaller Kingdoms and Estates can either be so evenly balanced, or so surely founded, as not to be obnoxious also to the same vicissitudes. And, being that saying of *Opratus* is most undoubtedly true, *Ecclesia est in Republica*, that the Church is but a part of the Commonwealth, we must not hope to find it in a better posture than the Civil-State in which it is, and under the protection whereof it subsists and flourisheth. The Church must needs miscarry in the ruin of the Civil-State; and may miscarry, many times, although the Civil-State receive no such alterations. Compared, for this reason, to the Moon, by the ancient Fathers who had observed her in her Prime, in her Encraces, and her Full; and finally, had not only seen her in the *Wane* also, but sometimes too under some horrible *Eclipses*. Which various condition of the *Militant* Church, the Scriptures and succeeding Stories have set forth so fully, that there need no better nor no clearer demonstrations of it. The Ark of God taken by the *Philistines*, the Temple destroyed by the *Chaldeans*, and profaned by the *Syrians*, the Apostacy of ten Tribes at once from the Law of their God, and the extermination of the other two in a short time after, abundantly declare the frail condition and estate of the *Jewish* Church. And find we not the same for the *Christian* also, in the removing of the *Candlestick* from the *Asian* Churches; and making them, together with those of *Greece* and *Egypt*, and all the flourishing Churches in the East and South, to languish and decay remedilessly under the merciless encroachments of the *Turks* and *Saracens*? He must be more than blind that sees not, more savage than those mercies men, that grieves not at their sad condition: but a dead Member, at the most, of *Christ's* Mystical Body, who feels not in himself the lussing of those wretched *Christians*.

If now we look into the causes of that desolation which hath hapned in the Civil-State of those mighty Empires; to what can we impute it, but their crying sins? the pride of the *Babylonians*, the Efficacy of the *Perfians*, the Luxury of the *Greeks*; and such an aggregation of Vices amongst the *Romans* (or Western *Christians*) before the breaking in of the barbarous Nations, that they were grown a scandal unto *Christianity*. In nobis paritur Christus opprobrium, in nobis paritur lex Christiana maledictio, as the devout *Salvian* then complained. Thus also in reference to the Church, did not the Idolaters of the ten Tribes hasten in the *Assyrians*? The shedding of the Blood of so many Prophets by the other two, as much accelerate the coming in of the *Chaldeans* first, and the *Romans* afterwards? Do

we not find the *Arianism* of the Eastern Churches to usher in the inundation of the *Saracens*; the *Donatism* of the South, to have set open a wide Door to let in the *Vandals*? Did not the *Saxons* follow on the heels of *Pelagianism*, as soon almost as entertained amongst the *Britains*? If so, as most undoubtedly it was in the days of old, why should we think but that the Superstitions and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, the Sacrilege and Faction of the Churches of the Reformation shall at the last receive the like Retribution? Or that the Divine Justice is so fast asleep, that our sins must cry as loud as the Priests of *Isaac* did unto their god, before it be awakened by us? Assuredly, we are no less sinners than any of those on whom the Tower of the Divine vengeance hath so heavily fallen; whose blood the *Pilates* of all Ages have mingled with their solemn and religious sacrifices: and therefore have no cause to hope, but that unless we do repent, we shall likewise perish.

The serious consideration of all these particulars, hath made those alterations both in Church and State, which have hapned here amongst our selves, the less strange unto me. For, in these any of these things, wherof it may be said, *Ecce hoc est novum, behold this is new? Eccl. 1. 10*. Have they not been already in the times before us? Do we not find it positively affirm'd by the wisest man that ever was, *That which hath been, is now; and that which is to be, hath already been; Nilul enim novum est sub sole*, for there is no new thing under the Sun. *Eccl. 1. 3, 10, and 1. 11*. And though I cannot tell what effect the reading of this following Book may produce in others, yet I can warrantably say thus much of myself. That the observation of the fall of so many great and puissant Empires, the extirpation of so many mighty and renowned Families, the desolation of so many flourishing *Christian* Churches, as the composing of this Book did present me with, (though formerly no strangers to me in the course of my Studies) did more conduce to the full humbling of my Soul under the mighty hand of God, than either the sense of my own Misfortunes, or any other moral consideration which had come before me. And I could wish, the Reader may receive so much benefit by it, (besides the profit and delight which Books of this nature carry with them) that the Mighty man may learn hereby, not to glory in his greatest Strength, nor the Wise to glory in his Wisdom, or in the cunning carrying on of his great Designs. Let the great Leaders of these times in the Art of War, consider the sad ends of *Joab*, the General of *David's* Forces; and of *Belshazzar*, the Commander of *Justinian's* Armies: wherof the one was slain ingloriously at the *Horns* of the *Altar*, after all his Services; the other forced to beg his bread at the *Gates* of the Temple. Let the great Masters

## To the Reader.

of Wit, and State-craft, have before their eyes the unsuccessful ends of *Achitophel*, the Oracle of the times he lived in; and of *Cesar Borgia*, propoed by *Machiavel*, for the Patern of a Politick Prince: of which, the one laid violent hands upon himself, because his Counsel was not followed; the other, after the default of his Projects, and a long imprisonment to boot, forced to flee his Country, and slain obscurely in an Ambush. Let all men lay unto their hearts the ebbs and floods, those alterations and vicissitudes, to which all Humane Power is subject; the slippery Foundations of that Might and Greatness which is not laid upon the Principles of Justice, and regulated by the *Maxims* of Christian Piety; and, that even those which have dominion over others, have a God too, above themselves, to whom they are to render an account of all their Actions. Not such a God as that of *Lewis* the 11th of France; of whom it is reported, that he wore a Lead Medal in his Bonnet, in the form of a Crucifix: which, when he had caused any man to be killed, whom he feared or hated, he would take into his hands, and kiss it, desiring it to pardon him that one Murder more, and it should be the last which he would commit. Such mockeries as these may be well put on a *Leaden god*; but the God of Heaven and Earth, will not be so mocked: who being *totus oculus*, and *totum lumen*, as the Father calleth him, can easily discern our intents and purposes, notwithstanding those disguises which are put upon them; and see the nakedness of sin in its ugliest shape, though apparelled with the *Fig-leaves* of the best pretences, which the self-deceiving Wit of Man can patch up together. God is the same God now, as in former times, *Primum ad extremum similis sibi*, Yesterday, and to day, and the same for ever; and will not

put up those affronts which the Impieties of men do afflict him with: though in regard of his great patience, and long-suffering, they may flatter their poor Souls, and say, *Tu, God doth not see it*.

Lastly, I am to tell the Reader, that I have now no other *Passion* than himself, to whom to dedicate this Work, and from whom to receive protection and encouragement in it. The time was when I might have said with *Seneca*, *Unus mihi erat pro Populo*, that one Man was to me instead of all men: the Powers of all the People being virtually united in him. But now, as the case stands, I must be fain to invert those words, *Populus mihi est pro uno*; the body of the Nation is to me, in this respect as the *Head* before. Unto them therefore I present it, and that not improperly: A General survey of all the World, the Government, Affairs, and Successes of it, requiring a more general Patron than particular Traçates. But because all the People in the Body *Collective* have not abilities to read, and much less to judge; and that many of those who can do both, may neither have the list nor leisure to peruse these Papers: I look on the *Nobility*, *Clergy*, *Gentry*, as their Representatives in this kind; to whose favourable and ingenious acceptance I submit the same. Which if I can attain unto, it is all I aim at. And it will be no small comfort to me in the midst of so many sorrows as are round about me, that I have been useful to the publick, or added any thing by my Studies unto the Honour and Content of the *English* Nation: whose peace and happiness is heartily commended to Almighty God, by

The Author of these following Papers,

PETER HEYLI N

To my BROTHER the  
A U T H O R.

THY first prest Grapes did yield approved Wine,  
Such as did praise it self; yet to endure  
Our Approbation, thou dost here refuse  
Those former Fruits; and, for our better Cheer,  
Present it us with a pure and stronger Vine:  
Left, else, some curious taste might in dispute  
If so, What needs my second Buth? 'Tis Waste.

Tis well thy choice Minerva merits this,  
This Ivis Garland, everlasting green;  
Which, like the Mules Cap, proportion'd it,  
Whereat thou drink'st, wherein their Liquors been.  
Nor wouldst thou scape the Lash of Nemesis,  
If, with Diogenes, thou shouldst refuse  
To let the thirsty drink there-hence. 'Twere News.

Thy Book's an Ark, which all the World contains;  
And well may bear a short Encomion.  
'Tis slender Meed; yet who such Pay disdains?  
Good Wine may have a Buth, though it need none.  
Nor let these Lines of mine seem partial strains.  
Thy Work ingenious is, and Virtue's Broad,  
Like it, incestible with due praise. 'Tis Good.

True, that the Earth, so young, thou comest hof,  
Is Rare, True, Much, Good, News, and my Buth wait.

Edw. Heylin. J. C.  
& Soc. Int. Temp.

Much Pains is cost, much Cost, and Labour more:  
Fame's breath is dear, 'tis hard to purchase Praise:  
The Mules Seat ascends an Hundred score:  
And Honour's Journey lies not in plain ways.  
Who to Parnassus high-crown'd d' top will force,  
Must with elaborate Quill climb up: and such  
Thy tender Genius boasts itself there. 'Tis Much!

Too much indeed it were, but that in part,  
The Guerdon of well-doing, is the doing.  
Fame, and Reward, but wait upon thine Art;  
Which yet deserves that in this forward going,  
Thy Fortune's may even balance thy Desire.  
But Fortune's base, and sells the Wages due  
To Worth, unto her Favourites. 'Tis True.

The Earth thy Ground-plot is, Geography's  
Kings, sometimes, are thy Subjects, peopling it.  
Thy story, History hath beautify'd,  
Penn'd by the vigour of an Home-bred Wit:  
Whose Art hath travell'd all the World beside,  
And can of every Country well declare  
Th' Occurrents, Nature, Site, and Bounds. 'Tis Rare.



A  
GENERAL INTRODUCTION  
To the following WORK:

Containing the Creation of the World by Almighty God, and the Plantation of the same by the Sons of Men; the necessary use of History and Geography, as well for understanding the Affairs of the Ages past, as for converse and correspondence with the Nations present; together with a brief view of some General Præcognita which necessarily are required unto the Knowledge of each.



WITH great both Piety and Prudence did the Apostles in their Summary of the Christian Faith, join our Belief in God the Father Almighty, with that clause or Article of making or Creating the Heaven and Earth. For as the name of Father doth imply a making (It not be thy Father which hath made thee? saith the Prophet *Isa. 44. 20.*) Who but an Almighty Father could by his mere Word without any pre-existent Matter, create that goodly Edifice of Heaven and Earth, which we behold with so much wonder and applause? A work so full of wonder to the ancient Gentiles, that some of them made the World a God. *Vit illum* (i.e. *Deum*) *mundum vocare*? non falleris as it is in *Seneca*: others more rationally conceiving God to be the Soul of the World, as giving animation or beginning to it. And though they erred, as well in making the World a God, as God to be the Soul of the World, yet might they very well have said as one since hath done, That the World is nothing else but God unfolded and manifested in the Creature. *Nihil aliud mundus universus, quam Deus explicatus*, as *Cyprianus* a late Cardinal hath it. For certainly the special motives which did induce God unto this great work, were a desire and purpose to manifest his Power, to exercise his Providence, and declare his Goodness. Not that God needed to have made the World in regard of Himself, for the World we know was made in the beginning of Time, but God is Infinite and Eternal before all Times; but that it seemed good to Him to create it last, as a thing most conducive to his praise and glory; the Heavens declaring the glory of God, and the Earth shewing his bounteous work, saith the Royal Psalmist. Some, measuring the God of Heaven by their own affections, and finding nothing so agreeable to their own dispositions as to be in company, conceive that God being at last weary of his own Solitude, did create the World, that he might have the company of the Angels in Heaven, and make a start into the Earth (when he saw occasion) to recreate himself with the Sons of Men. *Que beata esse solitudo quæ?* What happiness (saith *Her-*

*tensius*) can there be in Solitude? To which *Lactantius*, *Lib. 1. Cap. 7.* not being furnished with a better, doth return this Answer; That God cannot be said to be alone; *babet enim Ministros quos vocamus Nuncios*, as having the society of the Angels. But then *Lactantius* must suppose that the Angels were co-eternal with God himself, which were to make all Gods, and no God at all; or else his Answer is no Answer, as to that Objection. How much more oppositely might he have thus replied unto *Hortensius*. That the supreme contentment possible to Almighty God is by reflecting on Himself, and in Himself contemplating in his own infinite glories; which being co-eternal with Himself, even from all Eternity, he needed no more company before the World was made, than he hath done since. *Lactantius* being himself a man of a very great reading (though indeed a better *Humanitan* than *Divine*) could not but know these sweet delights which a man habited in Learning takes in Contemplation, and the good society he hath of his own dear thoughts, when he is most retired from the sight of men. And if the wife *Gentile* could affirm so truly, *Nonquam minus solus quare cum solus esset*, that he was never less alone than when he was by himself, what need can any rational man suppose in Almighty God, of having more company than Himself, to delight himself in? If this suffice not for an Answer to that needless question, *What God did before he made the World*; let him take that of *Augustine* on the like occasion: who being troubled with the like curious and impertinent Caption, is said to have returned this Answer; *Fabricasse inferos curiosus*, that he made Hell for all such troublesome and idle Questioners. Which resolution of that Father is by *Sabinus*, a late Dutch Poet, moulded into this handsome Epigram.

*Dum Christum Libyci Pater Augustinus in oris  
Asserit, & peragit munus in æde fiamus  
Dum miranda refert populo primordia mundi  
Egit docuit verbo cuncta creata Dei:  
Impius alijugit, verbisq; procatibus, Afer,  
Ergo Opificem rerum quid facibus? ait  
Aut, Quibus interitus falletur tempora curis,  
Mandus adhuc mundum cum fabricatus erat?*

*Presul ad hac Libycus, Fabricavit tartara, dixit,  
His quoq; feruati talia mente iuauit.*

Which may be Enlarged in these words:

When Reverend *Anfin* did in *Africk* preach,  
And in Gods House the ruder people teach,  
As he the Worlds Creation *prophesied* and taught  
That God made all things by his Word, of note:  
A few Swain upstarting needs would know,  
How God before that did his time bestow:  
And what to spend his thoughts upon, he had,  
When neither Heaven, nor Earth, nor Seas were made:  
To which the Father tartly thus; He then  
Made *Hell* for thee, and such audacious men.

But not to spend more time in answering, so vain a  
caption, suffice it us to know, that it pleased God at last  
when it seemed best unto his infinite and eternal wisdom,  
to create the World, and all things visible and invisible  
in the same contained. A time it had, in which it first  
began to be, which before was not: This *Möses* calls  
*Principium* a beginning simply. In the beginning, God cre-  
ated the heaven and the earth, in the first words of the Book  
of *Genesis*: which is all one as if he had said, the Heaven  
and Earth had a beginning; or that this unformed *Matter*  
or *Chaos* which he entailed there by the name of *Heaven*  
and *Earth*, was the beginning or first draught of those fe-  
veral things which after were created in their proper  
times; that is to say, the first in order of time, because  
made before them, not in order of causality, as the causes  
of them, *Calum et terra, in principio*, (i.e.) *ante omnia  
facta sunt*, *with Simon Petrus* in his *Sermon* on *S. John's*  
*Gospel*. So that whether we do expound those words,  
that the Heaven and Earth had a beginning; or that  
*Möses* by these words did mean, that out of that *Matter*  
which he calls *Heaven and Earth*, as out of the beginning,  
or first matter, all things were created, it comes all to  
one, because it is thereby acknowledged that the first  
*Matter* was created by Almighty God, and therefore of  
necessity to have a beginning. And to this truth we have  
not only the authority and consent of Scripture, but of  
the greatest part of the old *Philosophers*; guided thereto  
by this impossibility in nature, that any visible work,  
whether it be natural or artificial, should either give it  
self a being, or have that being, which it hath from no  
cause precedent. For from that Principle Truly arising  
very rightly in his most excellent Book *De natura Deo-  
rum*, that as a man coming into a goodly house, in which  
he found nothing but Rats and Mice, could not conceive  
that either the house had built it self, or had no other  
maker but those Rats and Mice which were nested in it,  
so neither can it be imagined, that either this World  
should be eternal, or a self-existence; or was composed  
by any natural Agent of what sort soever. And this is  
that which is more briefly and expressly said by the Ap-  
ple, viz. *That every house is built by some man, but he that  
builds all things is God*, *Heb. 3.4*. It is true, that *Ariflate*  
being a very great enquirer into the works of Nature,  
conceiv'd the World to be eternal; and yet not always  
constant unto that opinion. But then it is as true withal  
that there was something else that inclined him to it,  
than a mere admiration of the works of Nature. *Demo-  
critus* and some others had been of opinion, that the  
World was made in the beginning, *fortissimè atomorum  
concurfusibus*, by the accidental union or conjunction of  
those several parcels, of which the Universe consisted;  
and that man himself was but *solutioria elementorum  
concreta*, a voluntary mixture of all the Elements, as *Mim-  
tula* had observed out of their Writings. To which ab-  
surd opinion (as it was no better) though it found a gene-

ral imbracement amongst many of the old *Philosophers*,  
when *Ariflate* knew not how to submit his most exquisite  
judgment; and yet was defective of such further light,  
as might more fully have instructed him in its true Ori-  
ginal: he rather chose to grant, the World to be eternal,  
than to be made of such ridiculous, and unfound, though  
eternal *Atoms*. *Et maluit hanc pulchram mundi faciem ab  
eterno esse, quam aliquando ex æterna deformitate emissa-  
Valefius* in his Book of *Sacra Philosophia* fo pleads the  
case in his behalf; and I think him for it: who am (I  
must confess) a great friend of *Ariflate's*, whom more ac-  
count for the Precursor of our Saviour Christ in *rebus na-  
turalibus*, as *John the Baptist* was in *divinis*.

Nor doth the Scripture and the light of Reason tell us  
only this, that the whole World had a beginning; but,  
by the help of Scripture, and the works of some Learn-  
ed men, we are able to point out the time when it did  
begin; or to compute how many years it is precisely  
from the first beginning, without any notable difference  
in the calculation. For though it be most truly said,  
*Citius inter Horologios quam Chronologios*; that *Clocks* may  
sooner be agreed than *Chronologers*, yet most *Chronologers*  
in this point come near one another, that the difference  
is scarce observable. From the beginning of the World  
to the Birth of Christ, in the account of *Berosus*, are  
39 58 years; 3945 in the computation of the *Genevians*  
3960 in the *alcem of Lantier*; and 3963 in the calcula-  
tion of *Melancholons*: between whom and *Berosus* (be-  
ing the least and the greatest) there is but 35 years difference,  
which in so long a course of time can be no great  
matter. Now if unto the Calculation made by *Berosus*,  
which I conceive to be the truest, we add 1648 since  
the Birth of Christ, the total of time since the World  
Creation, will be 5576 years, neither more nor less. A  
thing which I the rather have inscribed on, because that  
from this *Epoche* or *Era* of the World's Creation, we shall  
compute the times of King Kings and Princes, as reigned  
and flourished in the World before the Incarnation of our  
Lord and Saviour.

It being then resolved as a thing undoubted, that God  
made the World, and that He made it in such time  
as Himself pleased; let us next look upon the matter and  
the method which he pursued the Divine Majesty to make  
use of in this wondrous work.

First, for the matter, out of which all things were  
created, I take it, as before was said, to be that which  
*Möses* in the first words of *Genesis* calls the Heaven and  
the Earth, because they were *lo in potentia*; but after taught  
us more explicitly, that that which he calleth *Earth*,  
was *inani* & *vacua*, without form and void; and that  
which he calleth *Heaven* was but an overall of darkness,  
or *rendra super faciem abyss*, as the vulgar read it. Of  
which *Chaos* or confused *Mess* we thusargued in *Osid*, who  
questionless had herein consulted with the works of *Mö-  
ses*, before his time communicated to the learned  
*Genities*:

*Ante mare & terras & quod tegit omnia Cælum,  
Unus erat toto natura vultus in Orbe,  
Quem dixere Chaos, rudis indigestaque moles,  
Nec quicquam nisi pondus iners, congestaque eodem  
Non bene junctarum discordia semina rerum, &c.*  
Which I shall Enlarge from *G. S.* with some little change.  
Before the Earth, the Sea, and Heaven were framed,  
One face had Nature which they *Chaos* named;  
An indigested lump, a barren load,  
Where jarring seeds of things ill-join'd abode.  
No Sun as yet with light the World adorns,  
Nor new Moon had repair'd her waning horns:  
Nor hung the self-poiz'd Earth in thin Air plac'd,  
Nor had the Ocean the vast Shores embrac'd.

Earth

Earth, Sea, and Air, all mixt; the Earth unfitable,  
The Air was dark, the Sea unavigable:  
No certain form to any one affign'd;  
This, that refists; for in one body join'd  
The cold and heat, the dry and humid light,  
The soft and hard, the heavy with the light.

Out of this *Chaos* or first matter, did God raise the  
World according to those several parts and lineaments  
which we see it in, not as out of any pre-existent mat-  
ter which was made before, and had not God for the  
Author or first Maker of it; but as the first preparatory  
matter which himself had made, including in the same  
potentially both the form and matter of the whole Crea-  
tion, except the Soul of man only, which God breath-  
ed into him. And therefore it is truly said, that God  
made all things out of nothing; not out of nothing as the  
matter out of which it was made, for then that nothing  
must be something; but as the *terminus à quo*, in giving  
them a real and corporal being which before they had  
not, and did then first begin to have by the mere force  
and efficacy of his powerful Word. And though it be a  
*Maxim* in the Schools of Philosophy, *Ex nihilo nil fit*,  
that nothing can be made of nothing; that every thing  
which hath a being doth require some matter which  
must be pre-existent to it, yet this must either be con-  
demned for erroneous Doctrine in the Chair of Divini-  
ty, or else be limited and restrained to Natural Agents  
which cannot go beyond the Sphere of their own ac-  
tivity, *Invisible* and *supernatural Agents* are not tied to  
Rules, no not in the production of the works of Na-  
ture; though Nature, constituted and established in a  
certain course, work every thing by line and measure  
as a certain Rule. And so it was with God in the  
Worlds Creation; he did not only make the World, but  
he made it out of nothing, by his word alone: *Disit &  
facta sunt*, He spake the word and they were made,  
faith the royal *Psalms*, *Psal. 33. 9*. There went no  
greater pains nor matter to the whole Creation, but a  
*Disit Deus*: And this not only said by *Möses*, but by  
*David* too, *Verbo Domini firmati sunt Cæli, & spiritus oris  
eius omnis virtus orbis*, v. 6. i.e. By the Word of the Lord  
were the Heavens made, and all the Hosts thereof by the  
breath of his mouth. In which it is to be observed, that  
though the Creation of the World be generally ascribed to  
God the Father, yet both the Son and the Holy Ghost had  
their parts therein; *Verbo Domini*, by the word of the  
Lord were the Heavens made, faith the Prophet *David*. In  
the beginning was the Word, all things were made by him,  
and without him was nothing made, faith *S. John* the Ap-  
ple. The Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters,  
faith *Möses* in the Book of the Law: *Et spiritus oris ejus  
operetur* by the breath (or Spirit) of his mouth were all the  
Hosts of Heaven created, faith *David* in the Book of  
*Psalms*, Made by his Word, and yet not made together in  
one instant of time. In the first day, he laid the founda-  
tion; and no more; in the five next, he raised the building;  
and this he did, to teach us men deliberation, in our words  
and actions; and to set forth withal unto us, both his  
Power and Wisdom. His Power he manifested in the  
Method of the whole Creation, in that he did produce  
what effects he pleased, without the help of natural cau-  
ses; as giving Light unto the World before he had cre-  
ated either Sun or Moon; making the Earth fruitful, and  
to bring forth Plants, without the influence or motion  
of the Heavenly bodies. And for his Wisdom he expre-  
sed it in as high a degree, in that he did not create the  
very Beasts of the field before he had provided them of  
food and sufficient herbage; nor made man after his own  
Image, before he had finished all the rest of his works,

fitted his House, and furnished it with all things necessa-  
ry both for life and pleasures.

But all things being fitted and prepared for him, at  
last comes *Man* into the World: and he doth make his  
entrance with a greater pomp than any of the rest of the  
Creatures which were before him. They came in with  
no other Ceremony, than a *Disit Deus*; but in the Work-  
manship of *Man*, there was a Consultation held by the  
blessed Trinity. It is there, *Faciamus Hominem*, Let us  
make man; each Person contributing somewhat (as it  
were) to his composition. For God the Father as the  
chief Workman, or principal Agent, gave him form and  
figure; in which he did imprint his own heavenly  
Image. The Son, who is the living and eternal Word,  
gave him voice or speech, that so he might be able to fet-  
ter Gods praises. The Holy Ghost, the Lord and giver  
of Life, (as the *Nicene Fathers* truly call him) breathing  
into his nostrils the breath of Life, whereby he became a li-  
ving Spirit. In this one Creation, was amass'd whatever  
thing was excellent in the whole Creation; the quanti-  
ty or substance of Inanimate Creatures, the life of Plan-  
ts, the sense of Beasts, the understanding of Angels. In  
this one Creature d<sup>d</sup>. God flew the excellency of his  
power and wisdom, in presenting on him his own Image;  
and giving him dominion over all the works of his own Image;  
which Image of God they look for in a very wrong place,  
who hope to find it in mans Body, though of a gallant  
composition, and erected structure. The Heathen Orator  
was able in this point to inform some erroneous Christi-  
ans. *Ad Divinum imaginem propius accedit humana virtus  
quam figura*, Man doth approach more near to the Image  
of God, in the endowments of his Mind, than in the struc-  
ture of his Body, as divinely Cæcero. And as for that do-  
minion which God gave him over the works of his hands,  
the Patent is at large laid down in the first of *Genesis*. For  
God no sooner said, *Faciamus Hominem*, Let us make man  
after our own Image, but presently he adds this Charter  
of Supreme Authority, *And let him have dominion over the  
Fishes of the Sea, and over the Fowls of the Air, and over the  
Cattle, and over all the Earth*. A more particular ex-  
plication of those several points, whereas that Image and  
this Power do conflict especially, I shall not take upon me  
or endeavour now; as being not of this place and pur-  
pose: Which only is to shew, that as man in the very act  
of his Creation participated more of the Divine Image,  
than all other Creatures; so was he by Gods favour  
grant encoined with a larger power, than any of the re-  
st could pretend unto. *Man*, though made lower than the  
Angels, is in this above them; that all the Creatures of  
the World were made to be his servants, and to attend  
upon his pleasure. And yet this great and mighty  
Prince, this general Lord of all the World, and the Crea-  
tures in it (letting aside the dignity of his first Creation)  
doth come into the world in a worse condition, than any  
of the Creatures which were made to serve him, na-  
ked, and impotent, and speechless, without use of rea-  
son; neither of power to help himself, or ask help of o-  
thers. Whereof *Lactantius*, in my mind, gives a very  
good reason, who telleth us, that God sends man into  
the world, *nudum & incertum*, naked, and weak, and un-  
defended against all violence and dangers; whereas all  
Creatures else, *vestita indumentis naturalibus & armata  
sunt*, are naturally both armed and clothed, and able to  
relieve themselves. And this he doth unto this end,  
that man being naturally destitute of those outward  
helps, might make use of his inward faculties of judg-  
ment, wit and understanding, in furnishing himself with  
that which he wants by nature. For herunto the first  
original of all Manufactures and mechanic Arts is to be  
referred



referred, as is most plain and evident from the Book of God, in which we see, that presently upon the procreation of Mankind, *Abel* betook himself to keeping sheep, and *Cain* to husbandry; *Tubal* to handle the Harp, Organ, and such Musical Instruments; and *Tubal Cain* to work upon Brass and Iron, two metals very necessary to most kind of Trades. The like may be supposed in all other Myriads and Arts of Living, though there be no other Expressions of them in those early days; except it be the Art of Building, or the Carpenter's Trade, which no question is as old as any, as by the building of *Cain's* City, and *Noah's* Ark is most clearly evidenced. God made the World, and fitted it with all things necessary for the life of man, leaving man to provide himself of such additions as rather serve for comforts and conveniences in the way of his living, than the necessities of his life.

Here then we have the works of God, and the works of men to be considered, in pursuit of our present Argument. The works of God, in shadowing the Earth with Trees and Forests, interlacing it with Crystal streams, and capacious Rivers; enriching it with fruitful and delicious Vales, adorning it with rocky Mountains, and flocking both the Hills and Vales with all sorts of Cattle. But nothing more sets forth the Power and Wisdom of Almighty God, as it relates to these particulars, than that most admirable intermixture of Want with Plenty, whereby he hath united all the parts of the World in a continual Traffick and Commerce with one another: some Countries being destitute of those Commodities, with which others abound, and being plentiful in those, which the others want. Inasmuch that as in the body of man, that *Micromes*, or little World, the Head cannot live, that it hath no need of the Foot, nor the Foot of the Hand, nor other members of the rest: neither in the Body of the World, can Europe live by Asia, or Spain to England, have no need of your Commodities or am not wanting in those things, whereof thou boastest an abundance. Something there is in every Country which may be spared to supply the defect of others; and are accordingly vented in the way of Merchandise: Of which, thus *Du-Bartas* in his Colonies,

Hence come our Sugars from Canary Isles;  
From Candie, Currants, Muscadels, and Oyls.  
From the Molucces Spices: Balfamum  
From Egypt: Odours from Arabia come.  
From India Gems, rich Drugs, and Ivory;  
From Syria, Mummie, black, red Ebony  
From bewitching Chuse; from Peru, Pearls and Gold;  
From Russia Furs to keep the rich from cold.  
From Florence, Silks from Spain, Fruit, Saffron, Sack  
From Denmark, Amber Cordage, Firre, and Wax,  
From France and Flanders, Linnen, Wood, and Wine;  
From Holland Hops; Horse from the banks of Rhine.  
From England, Wool. All lands, as God directs,  
To the Worlds treasure pay their sundry tributes.

This, as *Du-Bartas* speaks of the present times, fo questions is the same, or the like Commerce held good in the first Ages of the Worlds Creation; God furnishing all Countries from the first beginning with some staple Commodities, for the benefit of themselves and others; for the maintaining of that intercourse between Nation and Nation, which makes them link the closer in the bonds of Amity. And to this end also serve those several Manufactures wherewith some Countries do abound in respect of others; but looked on, in the present Book, as the works of men. And of this kind also are

the several Politics and forms of Government. For, though all Magistracy in it itself be from God originally, and that the Monarchical form comes nearest to the Government used by God himself: yet being that some Politie are merely but humane inventions, all Government or Magistracy is called an Ordinance of man in holy Scripture, 1 Pet. 2. 13. But those particular works of men, which are the most considerable part of our present subject, are Castles, Towns, and Cities of most eminent note, which thrive and prosper in the World, according as they do partake of those Conveniences, which conduce most to their Magnificence and Greatness. Of these *Bacon* gives us many (relation being had to the time he lived in) but of those many we shall touch upon the principal only, passing by those of lesser note, as pleasantness of Site, fruitfulness of Soil, salubrity of Air, and such like obvious Observations. First then, there is required to the Magnificence and Splendor of Cities, a Navigable River, or some such easy passage by Sea, which will bring thither a continual concourse and trade of Merchants; as at Venice, London, Amsterdam. Secondly, some Staple Manufactures or Commodities, which will draw the like resort of Merchants, though the convenience of Sea or Rivers invite them not; as in Nuremberg in Germany, a dry Town, but mightily Traded. Thirdly, the Palace of the Prince; For, *ubi Imperator, ibi Roma*, where the Court is, there will be a continual concourse of Nobles, Gentry, Merchants, and all sorts of Trades: And by this means, *Madrid*, not long since a poor beggarly Village, is grown the most populous City in all Spain. Fourthly, the Residence of the Nobility, beautified with City with stately and magnificent Buildings; which makes the Cities of Italy so much excel ours in England; their Nobles dwelling in the Cities, and ours for the most part in their Country-houses. Fifthly, the Seats or Tribunals of Justice, on which both Advocates and Clients are to give attendance; as in the Parliamentary Cities in France, and Spire in Germany. Sixthly, Universities and Schools of Learning, to which the Youth from all parts are to make resort; which hath been long the chief cause of the flourishing of Oxford, Cambridge, Bononia in Italy, and other Cities of good note beyond the Seas. Seventhly, Immunity from Tolls and Taxes; most men being most desirous to inhabit there, where their In-comme will be greatest, their Privileges largest, and their Disburments least: So Naples, Florence, Venice, having been desolated by Plagues, were again suddenly re-peopled, by granting large Immunities to all comers-in. And last of all, the opinion of Sanctity, either for the Reliques of Saints, or some noted Shrines, or the residence of some famous man, or the Seat of Religion, is not the least *Adamant* which draws people to it, to the great enrichment of some Cities. And to this, *Rome* it self can give us two most pregnant evidences: The one in reference to the Popes, and these latter times; that famous Town not otherwise subsisting now, than by the constant residence of the Popes and Cardinals; whose absence while the Papal See was kept at Avignon, had made it over-grown with Bricks and Brambles, and buried it almost in its own bad ruins. The other, in the person of *Tim Livius* the Historian; to see which man there came so many from the Coasts of France and Spain, that St. Hierom elegantly saith, *Quos ad sui contemplationem Roma non traxerat, omnia hujus hominis fide perduxit: qui jam urbem tantam ingressi, aliud extra Urbem querunt.*

Such are the causes of the Greatness and Magnificence of Cities, when they are once built; none of all which might possibly be looked at by the first builders of Cities,

I mean by *Cain* before the Flood, and by *Nimrod* after, who aimed more at the love of Empire, and self preservation, than at the general good of Mankind, or the particular wealth of those amongst whom they lived. Of *Cain* it is affirmed expressly in the Book of God, That being possessed with this fear, that every one that found him would lay hands upon him and slay him, in revenge of the blood of Abel; He builded a City and called it by the name of his (Enoch Gen. 4. 17. Builded a City? For what reason? To fortifie and secure himself against all revenge, as the Text doth intimate; or thereby to oppress his Neighbours, as *Josephus* witnesseth. Neither was this the only City of the first Ages, though none but this be mentioned in the Book of God. That which the Scripture saith of *Tubal*, that he was the Father of such as dwell in Tents, and of such as have Cattle; that is to say, he was the first of those which lived upon Pasturage, and followed their Cattle up and down with their moveable Tents, not having any certain home or habitations, as the wild Arabes now, and the ancient Nomades is proof sufficient, that the residue of all Mankind lived a more civil kind of life in their Towns and Villages. And if *Pomponius Mela* in that of any credit (as in these things, I think he is) be will inform us, that the City of *Tippa* was built before the Flood; that the King, thereof was named *Cinax*; and that his name, and the name of his brother *Phibes*, together with the Grounds and Principles of their Religion, were found graven upon certain Altars of stone. But whether this be so, or not, certain it is, that as well *Canaan* in the West, whercon *Joseph* stood, as the Land of *Nod* on the East side of *Paradise*, where *Cain* built his City, were peopled long before the Flood; and so were most of the other parts of the World besides. And if well peopled in all, or most parts thereof, no doubt but they had Villages and Towns, yea and Cities too, as well for necessary habitations as for strength and safety. Now that the World was thoroughly peopled before the Flood, seems clear to me by that great and universal Deluge, which God was pleased to bring upon the Face of all the Earth: For what need all the Earth be buried in that Sea of waters, if all the Earth had not been peopled, and all the people of it guilty of oppression, in the sight of God? Besides, it is expressed in the holy Scripture, that in the time of *Abraham*, who lived about 250 years after the Flood in the largest account, and 200 in the shortest; there were Kings of Egypt, and of the *Philistines*, Kings of the *Canaanites*, of *Shinar*, *Elafar*, *Elan*, and of the Nations who questioned; that their Lands well peopled: that both *Chaldea*, and *Mesopotamia*, in the time of *Abraham* had their several Cities as *Ur* in the one, and *Haran*, or *Charan*, in the other; and that *Damascus* the chief City of Syria was then founded also: Not to say any thing of the building of *Babel*, *Erech*, *Accad*, and *Chalneh* in the Land of *Shinar* (or *Babylonia*) nor of the building of *Ninive*, *Refes*, *Rebath*, and *Chalab* in the Land of *Affria*, mention whereof is made in the 10. of *Genesis*. And it is found in good and credible Authors, that *Ninus* the third *Affrian* Monarch (who lived before the birth of *Abraham*) having subdued the Kings of *Media* and *Armenia* invaded *Babylonia* with an Army of 1700000 Foot, and 200000 Horse, and 4000 armed Chariots; and was encountered by *Zoroaster* the King thereof with an Army of four hundred thousand. The credulity wherof, it is were disputed, might be affirmed by the like numerous Army brought by *Xerxes* against the *Greeks*, though in times long after following. And if we will give credit unto *Diodorus Siculus*, who voucheth *Ctesia* for his Author, *Semiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus*, invaded *India* with an Army of three Millions of

men and upwards; and yet was over-matched, and slain by an *Indian* King. If then within the space of four hundred years, we find the Eastern parts to be so well planted, to many Kings possessed of their regal Thrones, and many of them able to impress such infinite Armies, why may we not conclude, that in the course of 1656 years (for so long it was from the Creation to the Flood) the whole World was inhabited and planted in all parts thereof; especially considering the long lives of men, amounting to eight hundred, or nine hundred years; and consequently the long time they had to apply themselves to the act of Generation. And though I have no certain ground for it in the Book of God, yet I am eager to be of *Mercator's* opinion; who placing the 16 Dynasties of the Kings of Egypt (where *Enchiridion* begins to calculate the Egyptian times) at the first planting of that Country by the Sons of *Noah*; reckoneth the former fifteen to have been before the Flood, and to reach very near the times of the first Creation. That *Misraim* the Son of *Han* was possessed of Egypt within two hundred years after the Flood, is a truth undoubted. Nor see I any cause to doubt, but that in the like space of time from the first Creation it might be planted also by the Sons of *Adam*: considering, as we ought to do, that in the Infancy of the World, when the bodies of men were most perfect, and of greatest vigour, they observed no degree of Kindred or Conganguinity; nor tied themselves so strictly to one woman, as they should have done. And for the names of all the Kings of those several Dynasties, either they might be left engraven upon Pillars, such as that of *Seb*; or upon Altars of stone, as in those of *Tippa*; or *Misraim* might have them, by Tradition from the hands of *Noah*; and so deliver them by tale unto his posterity: the Egyptians being generally very good *Herodots*, and standing very much on their own Antiquity. And if this may be said of Egypt (as for my part I see no reason but it may) then may the like be said of all Countries else, that they had their several Kings and Rulers, and set-Forms of Government; the Fathers of Families in those times, having the command and sovereignty over all that defended of them. Nor make I any question of it, but they had several Languages and Mans of Speech, as well as the *Dialects* and pronunciation in the holy Scripture, that in the time of *Abraham*, who lived about 250 years after the Flood in the largest account, and 200 in the shortest; there were Kings of Egypt, and of the *Philistines*, Kings of the *Canaanites*, of *Shinar*, *Elafar*, *Elan*, and of the Nations who questioned; that their Lands well peopled: that both *Chaldea*, and *Mesopotamia*, in the time of *Abraham* had their several Cities as *Ur* in the one, and *Haran*, or *Charan*, in the other; and that *Damascus* the chief City of Syria was then founded also: Not to say any thing of the building of *Babel*, *Erech*, *Accad*, and *Chalneh* in the Land of *Shinar* (or *Babylonia*) nor of the building of *Ninive*, *Refes*, *Rebath*, and *Chalab* in the Land of *Affria*, mention whereof is made in the 10. of *Genesis*. And it is found in good and credible Authors, that *Ninus* the third *Affrian* Monarch (who lived before the birth of *Abraham*) having subdued the Kings of *Media* and *Armenia* invaded *Babylonia* with an Army of 1700000 Foot, and 200000 Horse, and 4000 armed Chariots; and was encountered by *Zoroaster* the King thereof with an Army of four hundred thousand. The credulity wherof, it is were disputed, might be affirmed by the like numerous Army brought by *Xerxes* against the *Greeks*, though in times long after following. And if we will give credit unto *Diodorus Siculus*, who voucheth *Ctesia* for his Author, *Semiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus*, invaded *India* with an Army of three Millions of

men and upwards; and yet was over-matched, and slain by an *Indian* King. If then within the space of four hundred years, we find the Eastern parts to be so well planted, to many Kings possessed of their regal Thrones, and many of them able to impress such infinite Armies, why may we not conclude, that in the course of 1656 years (for so long it was from the Creation to the Flood) the whole World was inhabited and planted in all parts thereof; especially considering the long lives of men, amounting to eight hundred, or nine hundred years; and consequently the long time they had to apply themselves to the act of Generation. And though I have no certain ground for it in the Book of God, yet I am eager to be of *Mercator's* opinion; who placing the 16 Dynasties of the Kings of Egypt (where *Enchiridion* begins to calculate the Egyptian times) at the first planting of that Country by the Sons of *Noah*; reckoneth the former fifteen to have been before the Flood, and to reach very near the times of the first Creation. That *Misraim* the Son of *Han* was possessed of Egypt within two hundred years after the Flood, is a truth undoubted. Nor see I any cause to doubt, but that in the like space of time from the first Creation it might be planted also by the Sons of *Adam*: considering, as we ought to do, that in the Infancy of the World, when the bodies of men were most perfect, and of greatest vigour, they observed no degree of Kindred or Conganguinity; nor tied themselves so strictly to one woman, as they should have done. And for the names of all the Kings of those several Dynasties, either they might be left engraven upon Pillars, such as that of *Seb*; or upon Altars of stone, as in those of *Tippa*; or *Misraim* might have them, by Tradition from the hands of *Noah*; and so deliver them by tale unto his posterity: the Egyptians being generally very good *Herodots*, and standing very much on their own Antiquity. And if this may be said of Egypt (as for my part I see no reason but it may) then may the like be said of all Countries else, that they had their several Kings and Rulers, and set-Forms of Government; the Fathers of Families in those times, having the command and sovereignty over all that defended of them. Nor make I any question of it, but they had several Languages and Mans of Speech, as well as the *Dialects* and pronunciation in the holy Scripture, that in the time of *Abraham*, who lived about 250 years after the Flood in the largest account, and 200 in the shortest; there were Kings of Egypt, and of the *Philistines*, Kings of the *Canaanites*, of *Shinar*, *Elafar*, *Elan*, and of the Nations who questioned; that their Lands well peopled: that both *Chaldea*, and *Mesopotamia*, in the time of *Abraham* had their several Cities as *Ur* in the one, and *Haran*, or *Charan*, in the other; and that *Damascus* the chief City of Syria was then founded also: Not to say any thing of the building of *Babel*, *Erech*, *Accad*, and *Chalneh* in the Land of *Shinar* (or *Babylonia*) nor of the building of *Ninive*, *Refes*, *Rebath*, and *Chalab* in the Land of *Affria*, mention whereof is made in the 10. of *Genesis*. And it is found in good and credible Authors, that *Ninus* the third *Affrian* Monarch (who lived before the birth of *Abraham*) having subdued the Kings of *Media* and *Armenia* invaded *Babylonia* with an Army of 1700000 Foot, and 200000 Horse, and 4000 armed Chariots; and was encountered by *Zoroaster* the King thereof with an Army of four hundred thousand. The credulity wherof, it is were disputed, might be affirmed by the like numerous Army brought by *Xerxes* against the *Greeks*, though in times long after following. And if we will give credit unto *Diodorus Siculus*, who voucheth *Ctesia* for his Author, *Semiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus*, invaded *India* with an Army of three Millions of



*novus fides necessitate compulsi*, that they were driven by necessity to seek new dwellings, the necessity of providing victuals for themselves and their Families, being as strong a motive unto such diffusions, as the *Confusion of Tongues* was afterwards. The difference is, that that which such necessity would have done in long tract of time, the *confusion of Tongues* did in an instant: not only making those proud Builders to give over the finishing of the Tower which they had begun; but to unite themselves with such, whose language came most near to that which themselves were Masters of. It was high time, no question, to desist from this proud Attempt, when the Labourer understood not what the Workman called for, but brought him things quite contrary to his expectation. But because some Plantations had no reference to the *Confusion of Tongues*; but were made before it, or on the fending out of such Colonies as were nearest to the place where the Ark did rest, I think it not amiss to resolve that question touching the settling of the Ark, on which the Plantations of the East have so great dependence. All that the Scripture telleth us of, is, that the Ark rested on the Mountains of Ararat: but where those Mountains are, that it telleth us not. I know *Josaphus* and some other of more emin. at note (but such as ground themselves upon his authority) affirm, those Mountains of Ararat to be the hills of Armenia. Which they do chiefly on these Reasons: First, because Armenia is called Ararat in the Book of God, as it is confessedly; and secondly, because of an old Tradition, current amongst the *Berossus*, and some others of the ancient Writers cited by *Josaphus*, affirming, that on the *Gordian* Mountains in Armenia major, some of the reliques of the Ark were remaining in their times and used as a preervative against Inchantments. Which notwithstanding, I incline rather to the opinion of *Goropius Becanus* (who amongst many strange whimsies broached some notable truths) by whom the Ark is said to rest on the top of Mount *Caucasus* in the Confines of *Tartary*, *Persia*, and *India*. His Arguments are many, but I look on two as of greatest consequence: the first whereof is grounded upon evident reason; the second on plain Text of Scripture. That which is grounded upon reason, is, the exceeding populousity of those Eastern Countries, into which none of those by whom the World was planted after the *Confusion of Languages*, are yet reported to have travelled with their several Colonies; by any who have took pains in this discovery. Those infinite numbers which *Strabo* speaks of, one (and but one of many) of the Kings of the *Indians* brought into the field against *Semiramis*; and the vast army of *Zoroaster* the King of *Babylonia*, conducted out of that one Province against *Ninus*; are proof enough, that those Countries were of an elder Plantation, than to be a second or third *Castling* of some other *Savans* settled in *Persia*, or *Assyria* after the *Confusion*. For *Ninus*, who was the Husband of *Semiramis*, was but the Grandchild of *Nimrod*; and I must needs look upon it, as a thing impossible, that those vast Armies which *Semiramis* was able to raise out of all her Dominions, should be encountered by one King with an equal force, and that of his own Subjects only; if that one King, and those his Subjects had been some late Colony of those new Plantations, and not possessed of a Country peopled and inhabited before that *Confusion*. Nor was it but upon some good ground, that the *Scythians* (who inhabited on the North of Mount *Caucasus*) were generally esteemed the most ancient Nation in the World; and carried it away from the *Egyptians*, *Phrygians*, and all other Competitors with this publick Ver-

dict, *Scythiarum gens semper antiquissima*: which ground could be no other, but the neighbourhood of the Ark unto them (though perhaps that ground long since forgotten, was not stood upon) and the dwelling of *Noah* and his children near the place of the Ark till numbers, and necessity compelled them to enlarge their Borders. And in the enlarging of their Borders, I shall make no question, but that such parts as lay nearest, were peopled and possessed before those which lay further off; according to the method of Plantations in all Ages since. This, though it be to me a convincing Argument, yet it falls short of that which comes from the Text it self, both in authority and weight; where it is said of the heads of those several Families which afterwards joyned together in the building of *Babel* that, *As they went from the East, they found a Plain in the Land of Shinaar, and there they abode*. Gen. 11. 2. If then they came from the East to the Land of Shinaar, as the Text faith plainly that they did; it might well be, that they came from those parts of Asia, on the South of *Caucasus*, which lie East of *Shinaar*, though somewhat bending to the North; impossible they should come from the *Gordian* Mountains in the greater Armenia (supposed to be the Hills which the Ark did rest on) which lie not only full North of *Shinaar*, but many degrees unto the West. For *Babylonia*, or *Shinaar*, is situated in the *Latitude* of 35, and the *Longitude* of 79 and 80. The *Latitude* of the *Gordian* Mountains, in 41, and their *Longitude* in 75. By which account those Mountains are 6 Degrees more Northwards, and 5 Degrees more Westwards than the Land of *Shinaar*: by no means to be reckoned on the East of that Valley, except we make *Mesra* (whose hand God guided in his Books) to speak God knows what, or, in plain terms, to speak plain non-sense. And though the Scripture be so clear, that it needs no commentary, yet the perplexities I find amongst those of the other opinion, in fitting out of the authority of so plain a Text, do add in my conceit some moment and weight unto it. For some will have the Mountains of Ararat to be indeed on the North of the Land of Shinaar; but with some bending towards the East; which were it true, as nothing is more truly false, *Mesra* had never told us that they came from the East; but from some Countys of the North, which lay towards the East. Others will have a double progress of the heads of those several Families: First, from the Mountains of Ararat, or the Plains of Armenia, to the Fields of *Assyria*, and *Syriana*; and secondly, from thence to the Land of *Shinaar*. But of this first journey, there is no *quidam*, not so much as any one syllable in all the Scripture; besides the needfuliness of making them go so far about, and to cross over the great Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris*; whereas they had a shorter, and an easier passage. *Capellus*, singular by himself quarrelous, with the Translation (received without dispute by all other Critics) and will not have not *Hebræi Kedem*, to be rendered East, but to signify that Region, whatsoever it was, which was inhabited by *Kedem* the son of *Ismael*, of whom we find mention, Gen. 25. 15. But then, besides his quarrel with all other Translations, he supposeth a former progress from the Mountains of Ararat to that Land of *Kedem*; and consequently falleth into a part of the Error before rectified, *Bochartus* finding (if not fancying) that the *Assyrians* called all those parts of their Empire beyond *Tygris*, the Eastern, and those on this side of it, the Western; would thence conclude, that these Heads may be said by *Mesra* to have come from the East, because they came from one of the Eastern Provinces of the *Assyrian* Empire.

Every

Every way faulty in this point: For, besides that the greatest part of Armenia lieth on the North of *Tygris*, and the least part of it on the West, and therefore not within the compass of the Eastern Provinces; and that *Bochartus* hath not proved (nor indeed can prove) that this division was in use in the time of *Mesra*; we may as rationally conclude, and with less absurdity, that the first Inhabitants of *Britania*, might have been said by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, or any Writer of that time, to come out of the *West* (though he well knew they came from *Gaul*, which is plainly East of it) because *Gaul* in his time was a Province of the *West* parts of the Empire.

Having thus fortified our opinion both with Scripture and Reason, the Arguments produced against us will be easily answered. For though Armenia be granted to be the Country of Ararat; yet the Mountains of Ararat may extend beyond the Country. That mighty Ridge of Mountains which beginning in Asia the left, run as far as India (by the Ancients commonly called Mount *Taurus*) might very well be called by *Mesra* the Mountains of Ararat, because that was the first Country of the greater Asia by which they passed; and where they were of greater note than they had been formerly. Just as the *Adriatick* Sea took that name from *Adria*, then the chief Port of it, though it washed many Shores besides: Or as some Hills with us are called *Matevra* Hills, because they are highest near that Village, though they extend themselves into other Neighbourhoods. And as for the Authority of Tradition, and the Testimony of humane Writers, which (as before was said) are brought in for an help, touching some Reliques of the Ark to be seen on the *Gordian* Mountains; I look upon it as an Argument of no weight at all. For first *Berossus* (followed herein by all the rest) reports it only on the ground of uncertain hear-say; which is a weak foundation for so heavy a cause to rely upon. Secondly, to balance the Authority of *Berossus* (if of any credit in this case) we have the testimony and authority of *Porcius Cato*, as ancient almost as he, affirming positively, *In Scythia Sagarenatum esse mortale genus*, that Mankind was repaired in that part of *Scythia*, which after was possessed by the *Sacans*; and they, we know, dwelt in those parts of *Scythia* which lay next to *Babylonia*, a Province of the Persian Empire, and not far from the branches of Mount *Caucasus*. And Thirdly, unto one Tradition to oppose another; those of Mount *Caucasus* do aver, that a large Vineyard in *Margiana*, near the foot of that Mountain, was of *Noah's* Plantation: Of which we shall speak more when we come to *Tartary*.

It is now time I should go forwards with the Builders of *Babel*, and their wide diffusions; for whom it was high time, to comfort themselves with such as they could understand; the necessity of discourse and conference on that fatal Adventure, making them lay aside their old acquaintances, and joyn themselves to others of their own new Language. I know that many Learned men according to the number of names laid down in the tenth of Gen. being 70, have made so many Languages to have been spoken upon that *Confusion*: And that of those, 26 being the Posterity of *Sem*, dispersed themselves about Asia the greater, 30 others of the loins of *Cham*, peopled *Africa*, *Arabia*, and *Syria*; and that the 14 which remain, being the issue of *Japheth*, withdrew themselves towards Europe, and the lesser Asia. But this, as to the number of Languages, I take to be but a vain conceit; though many, more improbable, have passed for current. It being plain, that *Canaan* and his Sons, eleven in all, had but one Language amongst them, which was the *Hebrew*, or the Language of the Land of *Canaan*.

And as for *Jethan* and his Sons, being 13 in number, considering that he was the younger brother of *Phaleg*, in whose time this *Confusion* hapned; it is most probable, and avowed for a certain truth, that either none of them were born, or, if they were, yet they were all of them too young to have an hand in the design for the building of the Tower of *Babel*; and consequently could not be within the curse of confounded Languages. So, here is near a third part of the seventy to be taken off, as possibly might all the Sons of *Misraim* be, if it were worth the while to inflict upon it. This then I take but for a fancy. And as for that, of the dispersion into the said three parts of the (then) known World, I take it to be true enough in long tract of time; but false enough, if understood of any present separation of the Sons of *Noah* into parts so far remote and distant from one another. For what needed any such remote Plantations be, as long as they had room enough to live one near another, and to enjoy that civil intercourse, and mutual society which the nature of Mankind doth most delight in? And therefore I conceive it to be far more probable, that they who met together for the building of *Babel*, joining themselves to men of the same Language with them, did first sit down upon the places near the Valley of *Shinaar*: and from thence propagated and dispersed themselves into further Countries, as either the necessity of providing of Victuals, or seeking better and more fruitful habitations for themselves and theirs; or the desire of being out of the reach of some potent Neighbours, who sought they found too heavy for their necks to bear, did enforce them to it. And being so settled to their minds, the addition of a few more years brought the like necessity of sending Colonies further off, as they grew more or less populous in their generations: It being in Plantations of Men, as in that of Bees, amongst whom one *Savans* sends out another, that begets a *Castling*, till the whole ground or Garden grow too small to hold them. For thus (to seek no further for an instance of it) the *Gauls* first planted *Britania*, the *Britains* *Ireland*, the *Irish* *Scotland*, and the *Illes*. Thus the *Helvetians* finding their old dwellings both too barren to sustain, and to narrow to contain their multitudes, *angustias se suae habere arbitantes*, as in *Cæsar's* Commentaries, intended to plant themselves in *Gaul*. And thus the *Syrians* and *Phœnicians* flying the dreadful sword of *Jehonab* the Son of *Nim*, fought them out dwellings further off from the present danger, whereof we shall speak more in its proper place. On the like motives and inducements did the first people after the Flood, dilubrate and disperse themselves into several parts, as their posterities have done since, and will do to the end of the World, in all probability: Giving their own names, or some names of their own inventing, upon the Countries planted or discovered by them. And though the length, and continuing nature of time, hath either changed or sworn out the names imposed by the first *Adventurers*, I mean the first Planters after the Flood; yet all the four Rivers of Antiquity are not so defaced, but that some Nations and Cities have preserved the memory of their first Founders and true Parents. In the discovery whereof, as *Josaphus* in his Book of *Jewish Antiquities* did first lead the way, and gave good light to those who have travelled in it, so a more notable proficiency hath been made therein by *Junius* in his Notes on the tenth of *Genesis*, Sir *Walter Ralegh* in his excellent History, and lately by *Bochartus* a French Writer in his Book called *Geographia Sacra*. Out of whose learned labours, and some Animadversions of mine own, I shall here lay forth what concerning the Plantation of the World by the Sons of *Noah's*, leaving the more exact and punctual description

description of it unto the History of those several Lands and Countries which were planted by them.

First therefore to begin with the posterity of *Sem*, as those who fixed themselves in *Asia*, without wandering further, we find *Sem* to have had five Sons, that is to say, *Elam*, *Assur*, *Arphaxad*, *Lud*, and *Aram*; of whom there is no illue on Record in holy Scripture, but only of *Arphaxad* and *Arms*, and of these two there are four Sons given to *Arms*, viz. *Uz*, *Hul*, *Gether*, and *Mefib*, and but one to *Arphaxad*, which was *Selah*. To *Selah* was born *Heber*, to *Heber*, *Phaleg*, the Ancestor of *Abraham*, and *Yektan* the Father of those thirteen sons, whose names we shall rehearse hereafter, if occasion be. From *Elam* who is first named, did descend the *Elamites*, a people bordering on the *Mediterranean*, and therefore oft-times joyn'd together in the Scriptures, as, *Go up, O Elam*, *Beftige*, *O Media*, *Efa. 2. 2.* And all the Kings of *Elam*, all the Kings of the *Medes*, *Jer. 25. 25.* And in the second of the *Alis*, *Partians*, and *Medes*, and *Elamites*, march in rank and file, as being Nations bordering upon one another. The principal City of this people was called *Elymais*, mention whereof is made in the second of *Maceab. 6. 2.* sufficiently famous for the rich and magnificent Temple which was there consecrated to *Diana*. A City seated on the Banks of the River *Euleus*, and neighbouring close to *Sufiana*, which therefore is sometimes included in the name of *Elam*, as *Dan. 8. 2.* *T-wa* (faith he) in the Palace of *Sufa*, in the Province of *Elam*: where *Elam* is not taken for the Province of the *Elamites* only, but as it gave denomination to all those Nations which they after malter'd. The second Son of *Sem* is *Assur* of whom there is no question made amongst the Learned, but that he was the father of the *Assyrians*, called *Assures* in some old Greek Writers: Not of the whole people of that great and unwise Empire, who sometimes generally pass by the name of *Assyrians*; but of the people of *Assyria* strictly and properly so called, as it denoteth the Country about *Ninive* (the Regal City of that Empire) which after was called *Adiabene*. *Iuxta hunc circumitum Adiabene*, *Assyria pristin temporibus vocata*, as in *Amianus Marcellinus*, *Lib. 35.* *Arphaxad* comes next after *Assur*, and him *Josephus* makes to be the Father of the *Chaldeans*, called anciently *Arphaxadai*, if he tells us true. But others tell us, and that more probable perhaps, that he planted in that part the *Assyria* which was first called *Arphaxitis*, afterwards *Arphaxitis*; by which name it occurs in the Tables of *Pholomy*. *Lud* the fourth son is generally said to be the Father of the *Lydians*, a people of *Asia* the less; the names of *Lud*, and *Lydi* (or *Avdy*) as the *Grecians* call them) being much alike. And it is possible enough that some of the posterity of this *Lud* might afterwards settle in those parts, and call the Country by the name of *Lud*, their common Ancestor: as the posterity of *Abraham* took unto themselves the name of *Hebreus* from *Heber*, one of the Progenitors of their Father *Abraham*. But that *Lud* should in person go so far from the rest of the Sons of *Sem*, I cannot easily imagine. For, *Aram* the fifth and last (as they stand in order of the Text) lets himself down close by his Brethren in the Land of *Syria*, which in the *Hebrew* is called *Aram*, and from thence the name of *Aramites* was given to the Inhabitants of it. Of which, and of the several Provinces which were hence denominated, we shall hereafter speak more fully, when we come to *Syria*. Only take now this testimony and acknowledgment from the pen of *Strabo*. *Quos non Syros vocamus, ipsi Syri Aramensis, et Aramensis vocant.* Those (faith he) which we now call *Syrians*, do call themselves *Aramensis*, or *Aramenians*. In, and about the same parts, did the four sons of *Aram* fix themselves and their Families: *Uz* in that part of

*Syria* which is called *Syria Damascena*, or *Aram Damascenica*; the building of the great City of *Damascus* being generally ascribed unto him: and the Land of *Uz*, bordering South upon *Damascus*, taking denomination from him. The like did *Hul*, or *Chul*, the next son of *Aram*, whom both *Josephus* and *S. Hieronim* settle in *Armenia*, or *Armenia*, as in *Strabo*: and that not improbably, considering that there is a Region in *Armenia*, which *Stephanus* calls *Chalobetene*; and divers Cities in that tract, which still preserve the Radicals of *Hul*, or *Chul*, as *Cholus*, *Cholnata*, *Cholimann*, *Colpa*, and *Colana*, whence mention is made in the Tables of *Pholomy*. For, *Gether*, the third son of *Aram*; it is not yet agreed on where to find his dwelling. *Josephus*, contrary to all reason, placeth him in *Bedria* and *Mercer*, withas little, in *Coria*, a Province of the lesser *Asia*, and *Acanania* of *Greece*. *Justin* sets him down in the Province of *Cassitis*, and *Scleus*, near his Father *Aram*; where *Pholomy* placeth *Gindarus*, and the Nations called by *Pliny*, *Gindarus*: *Bochartus* on the banks of the River *Contritus* which divides *Armenia* from the *Carduchi*, as it is in *Xenophon*. Which River, if it were called originally *Gether*, as he conjectured it might be, the contrivance were at an end. But being that we find in *Pholomy*, a City of *Armenia* (which bordereth on *Armenia*) called *Getera*, and a River of the same Country called *Getera*; I see no cause why we should seek further for the seat of *Gether*; though the Greek Copies (more subject to corruption in the times of ignorance, than the Latin were) instead of *Getera* read *Gagera*. But if this be too far to let him, we shall find *Mus* or *Mefib*, the last Son, planted nearer hand, even in the Northern parts of *Syria*, towards *Mesopotamia*, near the Hill called *Mefius*: at the foot whereof there is a people, which *Stephanus* called *Mefenis*; and thereabouts a River, which in *Xenophon* is named *Mefia*. Both which do evidently declare from what root they come.

Come we next to the second branch of the house of *Sem*, derived from *Arphaxad*; whom we left settled in the Region of *Arphaxitis*, in, or near *Assyria*. Not far from which, in *Sufiana*, a Province of the Persian Empire there is a City of chief note called *Sela*; mention of which is made both in *Pholomy's* Tables; and the 23. Book of *Amianus Marcellinus*. Add unto this the authority of *Eusebius Antiochenus*, who briefly thus, *Σελα δὲ ὁ Σουφίανος*, The People of *Sufiana* came from *Sela*. But this I conceive, must be understood only of that part of this people, which lived in and about the City of *Sela*, and not of the whole Nation of the *Sufians*, or *Sufenis*, which borrowed their denomination from another root. To *Sela* was born *Heber*, from whom the people of the *Hebræi*, or *Hebreus*, do derive their name. And to him *Phaleg* his first born, who in all probability gave name to the Town called *Phalg*, situate on the River *Euphrates*, not far from *Selucia*: Mention whereof is made by *Stephanus* in his Book de *Urribus*, and by *Pholomy* in his Geography; where it is placed right on the banks of *Euphrates*, where the River *Chabarus* mingles waters with it; but there corruptly called *Phalg*, instead of *Phalg*.

But the great increase of *Sem's* posterity came by *Jektan*, the second Son of *Eber*, the Father of no fewer than thirteen Sons, whose names are on record in the tenth of *Genesis*, where it is said, that their dwelling was from *Media*, as thou goest to *Sephar*, a Mount in the East. And here I must crave leave to differ from *Bochartus*, who hath thought *Jektan* and his Sons into a little corner of *Arabia Felix*, where I can find no room for them, and calls them to place them. For being that *Chus* the Son of *Cham*, and the Chiefs of his posterity, eight in number, were planted in *Arabia*, as himself confesseth, it

it must needs be, that they had spread themselves over all the Country, before any of the sons of *Jektan* were of age sufficient to be the Fathers of Families, and lead Colonies thither. *Jektan* is credibly supposed not to have been born when such of *Noah's* posterity as are mentioned *Gen. 10.* dispersed themselves into new Plantations; but it is evident from the Text, that none of his children were then born, if their Father were. And this *Bochartus* doth acknowledge in two several places. First, granting that neither *Phaleg*, nor *Jektan* were present at the building of *Babel*, *multo minus Jektanis filii post aliquos annos genti*; much less the sons of *Jektan* begot many years after; *Lib. 1. c. 16.* And secondly, affirming that *Jektan* and his children came not within the curfew of Confounded Languages, *quia nondum erant genti*, because then unborn, *C. 15.* Hereupon I conclude it to be very improbable that *Jektan* and his children should find room in the best parts of *Arabia Felix*, which *Chus* and his posterity had inhabited long before. And as it is improbable that the sons of *Chus* would plant themselves in the worst part of the Country for so many Ages, and leave the best and richest of it for some new adventures: So it is impossible that the sons of *Jektan* should either be removed to far from the rest of the house of *Arphaxad*, who were all planted on the East of the River *Tygris*, as was before shew'd; or that they should be able, had they been so minded, to break through the whole Countries of the *Assyrians*, *Chusites*, and other Nations, to come unto the utmost corners of *Arabia Felix*. He that believes they did, or could, must have a stronger Faith than mine; but it shall never conduce any thing to his justification. Nor am I moved at all at that which seems to me to be his weightiest Argument, namely, that the *Arabians*, particularly *Joseph Ben Abdallahi*, and *Mahomet Ben Jacob*, two of their chief Writers affirm, that *Jektan* was the Founder of their Tongue and Nation; no more than I am moved to think that the *Saracens* are derived from *Sara* the Wife, and not from *Hagar* the Concubine and servant of *Abraham*; because that people do report it for their greater glory.

And for the several Nations of *Arabia Felix*, whose original he ascribes to the sons of *Jektan*, I see so many transpositions of Syllables, alterations even of Radical Letters, such and so many wrested Originations, as by the like liberty of making *quidlibet ex quolibet*, it were no difficult matter to find place for them in any Country whatsoever. For how extorted and unnatural are the derivations of the *Albani* from *Almoda*, of the *Manite* from *Abimail*, of the *Joharite* from *Johab*? How impossible is it that *Jareth* should give name to the file which *Pholomy* call *Nuege*, *Isidore*, *Insula Teracoma* or *Ac-Sipitrum*, as the *Latins* hath it, that is to say, the Isle of *Hank*, from the abundance of *Hank* which were there bred: There being another Island of the same name near unto *Sardinia* (so called for the self same reason) and a Town called *Jerax* in *Hannoniæ* a Region of *Egypt*, to which *Jareth* might as well lay claim (if that would carry it) as to this *Teracoma*, or *Ac-Sipitrum*, in the Gulf of *Arabia*? How improbable that *Ophir* should give name to *Uphre*, a poor Isle of the Red Sea, *Obal* to *Sinus Aualiter* in *Aethiopia*, on the other side of that Gulf? Or that *Diela* must be fixed in *Arabia*, for no other reason, but because the word signifieth a Palm-tree, of which that Country yields good plenty, as if some other Countries did not yield as much? These and some other reasons hereafter following have made me bold to differ from that learned man in this particular, whose industry and abilities I do otherwise honour; and rather to look for *Jektan*, and his sons in the East part of the World, where the Scriptures place them; than in the South (with refer-

ence to the Wilderness, or Land of *Madian*, in one of which the Book of *Genesis* was written) where *Bochartus* placeth them. Yet so far I must yield to that learned man, that some of the Descendants of *Jektan* in long tract of time, moved with the rarities of the place, might come from *India*, and plant themselves upon the Sea-Coasts of *Arabia Felix*; as the *Arabians* at this day, moved with the Wealth and Trade of *India*, have possessed themselves of many of the Ports and pieces on the Shores thereof.

Now the Text telleth us of the Sons of *Jektan*, that their dwelling was from *Media*, as thou goest to *Sephar*, a Mount of the East; so that by these two boundaries, *Media* and *Sephar*, their habitation must be found. I know, *Bochartus* would have *Mefia* to be *Mefia*, a noted Port, Town on the South-west of *Arabia Felix*, and *Sephar* to be the City of *Sephar* in the South-east of that Country; that City giving name to some Mount adjoining. But being they both lie directly South of the place in which *Mefib* wrote, I cannot see how this position can agree with the word of Scripture; and therefore we must look for both in some other place. And first to find out *Mefia*, we need go no further than *Bochartus* himself, who maketh *Mefib*; the last of the Sons of *Aram*, the Son of *Sem* (according to the general opinion of most Writers else) to be planted in the Mountainous tracts of *Mesopotamia*, from him called *Mont Mefius*, more of which before. And then for *Sephar*, which the Text calleth a Mount of the East; it is to be the Southern part of Mount *Imau*, by *Pholomy* named *Bitagi*, by the Moderns *Gates* extending from Mount *Caucasus* to the Cape *Comari* in the higher *India*, as *Ptolema* a right learned man doth conceive it to be; We have without more difficulty found out the dwellings of the sons of *Jektan* according to the bounds laid down in holy Scripture. But for fear this may not satisfy, for want of some Seconds to *Ptolema* (if Truth needs a Second) we have *Siphare* a City of *Asia*, directly East from *Mont Mefius*, or the dwellings of *Mefib*; both in the East parts of the World, with reference unto the place in which *Mefib* writ: *Mont Mefius* being placed by *Pholomy* in the 74 degree of Longitude, and the 37 of Latitude; and *Siphare* 36 degrees more toward the East, but with no more than two degrees of Latitude super-added to it. And this agreeth to the position assigned to the sons of *Jektan* by *Josephus*, *Eusebius*, and *S. Hierome* the emendation of *Bochartus* coming in to help. It is affirmed by *Josephus* that the *Jokanites* possessed all that Tract, *ὅσοι Κασπίου ποταμοῦ τὴν βόρρην, καὶ τὴν ἀνατολὴν ὅσως τὴν ἑσπέρην*, which lieth about *Caspian* a River of *India*, together with such parts of *Syria* as did border near it. These words being borrowed from *Josephus* both by *Eusebius* and *S. Hierome* the first intendment of *Syria* reads *Syria*, and the other *Jeria*, but neither rightly: there being no such places in the world as *Jeria*; and *Syria* & *Seria* (or the Country of the *Seres*) lying too far off to border on *Caspian* a River of *India*; *Bochartus* therefore helps them out, conceiving (I think right enough) that for *Syria* we should there read *Asia*, and withal granting, as he may, that *Asia* in the largest latitude and extent thereof, comprehending *Parapamisiu* & *Arachosia*, extended as far Eastward as the River *Caspian*. So that we have found out a dwelling for the sons of *Jektan*, betwixt *Mont Mefius* & *Siphare*, a Town of *Asia*; which probably might give name to some Mount adjoining, as *Sephar* by *Bochartus* is supposed to do to some of the *Arabian* hills bordering near unto it. And as these situations do agree exactly with the meaning of those ancient Writers, so it is also very suitable to the other Plantations of the sons of *Arphaxad*. For this I look on as a matter out of all dispute, that *Phaleg* and *Jektan* being both too young to go upon any new Adventures, when so many of

the residue of Noah's posterity removed toward Shinar: kept themselves under the tuition of their Grandfather Noah; or at least wandered not from the Plantation of their Father *Arphaxad*: till *Joktan*'s Sons being grown to be Fathers of Families, were forced to call about for new habitations. And when necessity compelled them to seek new seats, I would fain know why they should think of making a themselves a way to *Arabia Felix*, through Countries peopled and possessed a long time before, when they had Elbow-room enough on the East of *Tygris*, and the unpeopled Countries of some parts of *India* lay to near at hand.

Nor want we as good evidence and as little forced for some of their Plantations in the Eastern parts, as *Bocharius* hath fancied for them in *Arabia*: For *Almodena* might probably be the Founder of *Almodena*, the Metropolis of *Mesopotamia*, not far from *Mefia* or *Mus Mafius* the Western Boundary: and *Jarab* of the Nation of the *Arachians* inhabiting near *Siphara* the Eastern limit, aligned unto the Sons of *Joktan*. With what an easy change might *Obai* or *Chobai* be supposed to be the Father of the *Cabulites* or *Paropamisians* *Hidaram* of the *Orites* an *Indian* people near unto the other? But these North-Eastern parts being peopled, or not very pleasant, how many of the Sons of *Joktan* that we find in the Southern parts of *India*? *Bocharius* himself confesseth that the Land of *Opbir* (another of the Sons of *Joktan*) was a part of *India*; but whether *Sumatra*, *Teprehon*, or *Arachia* *Cherifensis*, I dispute not here. Like evidence there is for *Saba*, remembrances of whose name are found in *Sabalalla* one of the mouths of the River *Indus*, *Sabana*, a City of the *Golden Cherifensis*, a River in the same tract named *Sabanu*, and a City called *Saba*: besides the whole Nation of the *Saba* mentioned by *Dionysius* in his *Periegesis*. And though some late Critics read it *Siba* instead of *Saba*, (as that there was an *Indian* Nation called *Siba* is confessed on all sides): yet seeing *Egyptians* find the *Saba* in this Country also, I cannot fee but that there should be room enough in *India* for both people to dwell in. For *Abimail* another of the Sons of *Joktan*, we find more evident footsteps of him in the *Mali* or *Malian* *Indian* people, in *Malata* & *Maliba* two Towns of *India*, in *Malum* an *Indian* Mountain, and finally in *Malai* *Colan* a Promontory of *Aurea Cherifensis* than in the *Manite* of *Bocharius*. For if *Abimail* signify the Father of the *Mali*, as he saith it doth, he was more like to be the Father of the *Mali* commonly and literally so called, whom we find in *India*, than that we should be forced to look for them in the *Manite*, or look for the *Manite* in the house of *Abimail*. *Idia* must be planted in *Arabia Felix* for no better reason, than because the word signifieth a *Palm*, whereof there is plenty in that Country: I doubt not but to find as many *Palms* to plant by amongst the *Indians*, as *Bocharius* doth among the *Arabians*. And finally, if *Chabarmaveb*, or *Charamaitis* an *Arabian* Region, have such resemblance to the name of *Chabarmaveb*, as to take that Appellation from him, as *Bocharius* telleth us it did: we may conclude with equal, if not better reason, that the *Chadramaitis* an *Indian* people, created upon the mouth of the River *Indus*, upon whose fountains some of the residue of his Brethren had their habitations, had their first Original from that *Chabarmaveb*. For *Havilah* or *Chavilah* the *Antients* especially fit him in the *Indies* also, not far from *Saba* and *Opbir* two of his Brethren: to whose authority I submit, because I find a Province in the *Golden Cherifensis*, called the Kingdom of *Aou*, and thought to be so called from this very man. And I conceive the like also of the rest of the *Joktanites* whose habitations might be found in *India*, or near *Mefia* and *Sepha*, if one would take that liberty of *Criticizing*, altering and transposing

letters, as *Bocharius* doth, only to fix them in a place where they never were. Suffice it that this short Essay may inform the Reader, that *Bocharius* was too confident a lover of his own opinion, where he affirms, *Nec locum alium Sephar nominis, nec illa posterum Joktan in Aria aut India vestigia jam perspicere*: that is to say, that there is no such place as *Sephar*, nor any track or footsteps of the Sons of *Joktan* to be found in *Aria*, or the *Indies*. The contrary whereof is too clearly evidenced.

These were the Generations and dispersions of the Sons of *Sem*, contracted in a narrower compass than either the posterity of *Cham* or *Japhet*: of whom the first, besides the great footing which he had in *Assyria*, did possess all *Africa*, and the other, besides his share in the greater *Asia*, filled almost all the lesser *Asia*, and the whole Continent of *Europe* with the Isles thereof, with his fruitful Progeny. And first beginning with *Cham*, we find him the Father of four Sons, that is to say, *Cafis*, *Misram*, *Phut*, and *Canaan*: of which, only *Phut* the third Son hath no issue assigned him. To *Cafis* the eldest Son were born *Saba* and *Havilah*, and *Sabab*, *Nimrod*, *Sabecha*, and *Raamah*, who was the Father of *Sheba* and *Dedan*. And unto *Misram* the second Son were born *Ludim*, and *Ananim*, *Lehabim*, *Naphthum*, *Pabsum*, *Caphorim*, and *Cafubim*, who was the Father of *Philistim*. Of *Canaan* and his issue we shall speak hereafter. In the mean time we will dispose of these first branches of the flock of *Cham*, beginning first with *Chus* the eldest, and so descending to the rest of this first Line. And first for *Chus*, though it be generally said both by the *Greek* and *Jewish* Writers, that he was the Father of the *Aethiops* in the heart of *Africa*; yet upon better search he is found to have gone no further than *Arabia*, possessing himself of a good part of that which is called *Petraea*, and some part of *Arabia Felix*. For whereas *Zippora* the wife of *Mofes*, was daughter unto *Jethro* the Priest or Prince of *Madian* *Exod. 2. v. 16* and yet is called an *Aethiopian* woman, in the 12 of *Num. v. 1*. It must needs be, that by *Aethiopian* in the last place, must be meant an *Arabian*: for *Madian* doubtless was a City of *Arabia* near unto the *Red Sea*, as is apparent by *Josephus* for the *Jews*, *Pliny* for the *Grecians*, and *S. Hierom* for the *Latine* Writers. But we shall canvass this more thoroughly in its proper place: the strength of reason serving for a supplement of that one defect, which is, that there is no remainder of the name of *Chus* in any of the Cities, Provinces, Counties, Hills or Rivers of that Country, by which his planting there might be made more evident. *Sheba*, the eldest Son of *Chus*, fell himself down on the shores of the *Red Sea*, as near his Father as he could; becoming the Original of the great and wealthy Nation of the *Saba*: he to the much celebrated City of *Saba*, memorable for abundance of the best Frankincense, being their Metropolis or head City. A Nation seated in the most Southern part of this Peninsula, (viz. in *Solomon*'s time to that famous Lady called in the old Testament from her Country, the Queen of *Sheba*;) and in the new Testament from the situation of it, the Queen of the South: the holy Spirit in both places giving her an ample and remarkable testimony.

For *Havilah* or *Chavilah* the second of the Sons of *Chus* most probable it is that he possessed himself of that part of *Arabia*, which lay nearest unto *Babylonia*, and that he gave name to that Land of *Havilah*, which the River *Pison* is said to encompass, *Gen. 2. 21*. Some footsteps of his name remain in the *Chauloteis* *Erastotiles*, the *Chauloteis* of *Strabo* *Antiochus*, but more plainly in the *Chavilae* of *Pliny*: being all three but one people, though thus diversely named, and all of them planted towards the *Persian* Gulf, and so to *Babylon*. On the same shore of

the

the *Persian* Gulf, we are to look for *Sabia* the third Son of *Chus*, where *Pliny* informs us of a City called *Saphia*, and of an Island in the same Gulf called *Sophia* also, from whence in probability some of this people might pass over into *Persia*, on the other side of the Gulf, and there give names to the *Sabaei*, which by the transposition of the letter *T*, are by *Pliny* called the *Stabaei*. That *Nimrod* the fourth Son of *Chus* did first plant himself in *Babylonia*, the Scripture is so plain and positive, that nothing need be added to it. Of *Sabtea* the fifth Son, I confess I can find no track in any of the ancient Authors. For why we should admit of so great a change, as first, of *Binto M*, and then of *Tinto D*, (which could not easily be done by very careless Transcribers) and so find *Stabaea* in *Semidacea*, a City or Country of the *Carmenians* on the *Persian* side of the Gulf, I can see no reason: And therefore rather chuse to mingle him and his Posterity with the Son of *Sabia*, and the children of his brother *Regma*, all planted on the same shore of the *Persian* Gulf. For that *Regma* (our *English* Bibles call him *Raama*) was settled on the banks of the Bay of *Persia*, hath good authority, that there is no dispute to be made of that: *Pliny* placing there the City of *Regma* (*Regma* it is called in the *Latin* Translation) by which name it occurth in *Stephanus* also in his Book *De Urbibus*, *Kas. viij. cap. 1* for *Tigridis* *uolam*. And *Regma*, or the *Persian* Gulf, as his words there are. And not far from thence we are to look for his Son *Sheba*; both being joynted together in the Book of *God*; and both there are said to bulic and employ themselves in the Trade of Merchandizing; *The Merchants* of *Sheba* and *Raamah* (saith the Text) *they were they Merchants; they occupied in the Fair with chief of all Spices, and with all precious Stones, and Gold*, *Ezek. 27. 22*. So that the Nations of the *Sabaean*, though descended at the first from several Parents inhabited the lower parts of *Arabia Felix* from one Sea to the other; as evidently appeareth by those words of *Pliny*: where he informeth us most truly, that the *Sabaean*, an *Arabian* people, well known for their abundance of Frankincense, *ad utraque maria peritis gentibus habitare*, had spread themselves over all the Country, even from the *Red Sea* to the Gulf of *Persia*. Finally, in the same track we find *Dedan* the other Son of *Regma*, and the last of all the Sons of *Chus*: there being on the mouth of the *Persian* Gulf (but not on the *Arabian* Coast thereof) not only a City, but a Province called by the name of *Dedan* which both *Orcinus*, and some other late Geographers do take notice of. And more than so, the Prophet *Ezekiel* joyns him with his brother *Sheba*, and makes them both to follow the same Trade of Merchandizing; *The men of Dedan were they Merchants*, *Chap. 27. 15*. *Sheba* and *Dedan*, and the Merchants of *Tarshish*, *Chap. 38. 13*. *They brought the borns of Ivory, and Ebony, saith the Prophet in the former Text*.

The head of the next house of the race of *Cham*, was *Misram*, the second Son, of whom it is generally affirmed, that leaving his elder brother *Chus* and his posterity, in the rich and delectable Countries of *Arabia Felix*, and the next parts to *Babylonia*, or the land of *Shinar*, he went with his own Son and his Brother *Phut*, into *Africa*, and there planted *Egypt*. Of this there is no question amongst the Learned, though all the tracks and footsteps of *Misram* be quite worn out: unless any thing of it were preserved in the word *Misri*, by which the *Egyptians* anciently called the first Month in the year; or in that of *Misre*, by which name the *Arabians* call *Egypt*, to this day: But because *Egypt* is called *Misraim* in the *Hebrew* Bibles, that only is sufficient without further evidence. And therefore leaving him in *Egypt*,

let us look after his Son *Ludim*, whom he sent to people *Aethiopia*, the next Country to him. For that this *Ludim*, was the Father of those *Aethiops*; many good reasons are alleged. First, from the Text of *Elsiah*, *Chap. 66. v. 10*, and *Jer. 46. 9*. where *Lud* is said to be very *skilful in drawing the bow*; which agrees punctually with the Character given unto the *Aethiops* by *Strabo*, *Herodotus*, *Diodorus Siculus*, and others of the ancient Writers. Secondly, from the joyning of the children or people of *Ludim* with those of *Phut*, in the place of *Elsiah* before cited: which *Phut* may very probably be the City which the *Grecians* call *Phyle*, situate not far from *Syene*, on the very borders of *Aethiopia*, and antiently inhabited both by the *Aethiops*; and *Egyptians*, as *Strabo*, and some others of the Antients witness. Thirdly, from the conjunction of the Children of *Lud* or *Ludim*, with those of *Chus*, on the Gulf of *Arabia*, and those of *Phut*, or *Lybians*, on the other side of *Mount Atlas*, both next neighbours to them; as in *Ezek. 30. 5*, and that of *Jer. above mentioned*; (where our *English* very strangely rendereth *Ludim* by the name of *Lydians*) which dwell too far off both from *Chus* and *Phut*, to be joyned together in one action. But of this, more than enough already; the arguments being so strong, and so most demonstrative. I go on therefore to the next, only observing by the way, that the *Aethiops* mentioned in the Texts of our *English* Bibles, are not those of *Africa*; but the *Chusites* of *Arabia Felix*; our Translators always rendering *Chus* by *Aethiopia*. The *Assyrians*, who come next, I know not where to find, or in what place to look for them, unless they were the same with the *Amantes* of *Solinus*, and the *Hammaites* or *Pliny*, a people seated on the Sea-side near the greater *Syria*, to which the neighbourhood of the *Lebanim* may give some countenance; who seem to be the same with the people of *Libya*, a Province seated betwixt *Egypt* and *Cyrenica*, and were called *Libyegypsi* by the old Geographers, to differentiate them from the Inhabitants of the greater *Lybia*, whereof more hereafter. For the *Naphthum*, I am also at a loss, unless we find them somewhere in *Cyrenica*; and that some remnant of the name be in *Aphid* *famm*, which occurs in *Pliny*. But for the *Tarshishim*, I think no question need be made, but that they were the people of that Province of *Egypt*, which in divers places of the Scripture is called *Pabais*, as *Els. 11. 11*. *Jer. 44. 1*. *Ezek. 29. 14*. and seems to be that part of *Egypt* which is called *Thebes*, where *Pliny* placeth *Pabais*, an In-land Town not far from *Thebes*. (And *Pardus* the *Greek* or *Sepaguntin* term that, which in the *Hebrew* is called *Pabais*.)

Hitherto we have found the Nations which descended from the Sons of *Misram*, in *Egypt*, and the Countries adjoining to it. And there, or thereabouts, we are to look for *Caphorim*, and *Cafubim*, the two Sons remaining. I know there hath been great pains taken to find the *Cafubim* in *Colchis*, and the *Caphorim* in *Cappadocia*, or *Pontus*, not far from *Trabzon*, where notwithstanding there is no track of the names remaining. But this being so far off from *Egypt*, in, and near which both *Misram* himself, and all the rest of his Sons were planted, I can by no means yield to it, though to content such learned men as would fain have it so. I think it possible enough that some of the *Egyptians* in succeeding times, moved with the Fame of that great wealth which *Colchis* was supposed to yield to some Adventurers; might leave their native soil to inhabit there. And therefore I think rather, with the learned *Junius*, that the *Cafubim* were first planted in the Region of *Caffinis* (not far from *Damata*, a chief Town of *Egypt*) which retains somewhat of the name; and so doth *Coprus*, an old City of *Egypt*,

C 3

Egypt,

Egypt, of the name of *Cophetum*. Or if it did not, as it doth, why the name of *Cophet*, which at this day is given to the Christians of Egypt, may not be thought to have its first rise from *Cophetum*, rather than that they are to be called *quasi* *Ægyptii*, correctly for *Ægyptii*, I must needs say I am not fatisfied. Besides, it being clear in Scripture, that the *Cafubim* and *Cophetum* dwelt near together, and that the *Philistini* are said to defend from *Cafubim*, if *Cafubim* should go for *Colchis*, and *Cophetum* for *Cappadocia*, we must first carry them I know not how far off from the rest of their Brethren, against the method of all Plantations; and then bring the *Philistini* back again from *Colchis*, to find a dwelling on the borders of the land of Egypt, from whence their Ancestors and Allies were so far remote. Whereas by settling these two Nations amongst the rest of their Brethren, the journey of the *Philistini* unto *Canaan*, and settling themselves in the possessions of the *Avim* (a *Canaanish* people) whom they had subdued, *Deut. 2. 25.* is both easy and natural. But before we follow these *Philistini* further in their new Plantation amongst the *Canaanites*, we will first see what became of *Phut*, the third son of *Cham*. And if we guide ourselves in this *Labyrinth* by the clew of Antiquity, we shall find him settled West of his Brother *Misraim*, and to the *Atlantic* Ocean, the Lake of *Trismis* paring their Dominions. Some Relicks of the name there were in the time of *Japheth*, who telleth us of a River of *Mauritania*, which in his time retained the name of *Phut*: *Pliny* makes mention of it, also *Plutarch* takes notice of a River in those parts called *Phutib*, which comes very near it. And so doth *Ildore Origin. l. 2.* But *St. Hieron* in my mind puts it out of doubt, whose words I shall put down, and to leave *Africa*; *Phut Lybia, a quo & Mauritania fluxit usque ad presens Phut dicitur, omnique circa eam Regi Phytensis cuius res multi Scriptores tam Graecum quam Latini testes sunt.* Where we have not only a River, but a Province of the name of *Phut*, and many ancient Writers both *Greek* and *Latin* called to witness to it.

And now we should proceed to *Canaan* and his Sons (eleven in all) being the fourth and last branch of the house of *Cham*. But being they all kept together in or near the land of *Canaan*, we shall find him there; or meet with them in such Plantations and Colonies as they sent abroad, under the title of *Phenicians*. And therefore go we next to *Japhet*, whose *Tons* God promised to enlarge, as indeed he did; spreading his branches over *Europe*, the lesser *Asia*, and a great part of the greater *Asia*. To him were born seven Sons in all, that is to say, *Gomer* and *Magog*, *Madai* and *Javan*, *Tubal* *Mefech*, and *Thyras*: Of which the issue of two only are upon record, viz. *Afchenaz*, *Kipthah*, and *Togarmah*, the Sons of *Gomer*; *Elifha*, *Tarfifh*, *Kittim*, and *Dodanim*, the Sons of *Javan*. And first for *Gomer* and his Sons, the first possessed themselves of convenient dwellings in the greater and the lesser *Asia*: *Gomer* himself first planting in the mountainous places of *Albania*, where the Mountains called *Immerius* long retained his name; and after changing that unpleasant and unfruitful dwelling for the Plains of *Phrygia*, in which the City *Cimmeris*, in the days of *Pliny*, did preserve his memory. For that the posterity and people of *Gomer*, called at first *Cimmerians*, came to take the name of *Immerians*, as of *Ciniri* afterwards, is generally agreed upon amongst the Learned. Now then, as *Gomer* fixt himself in the greater *Asia*, so did his eldest son *Afchenaz* in *Phrygia* minor, and the Country of *Troas*, spreading himself a long upon the *Hellepont*, and those *Greecish* Seas, as far as *Bithynia*. In all which places there were left some memory of this Plantation. For in *Bithynia* there is a

Bay called *Sinus Afcanius*, together with a River and a Lake of the same name also. And in the lesser *Phrygia*, and the Country of *Troas*, there was both a City and a Province adjoining, anciently known by the name of *Afcania*, and the *Afcanie* itself also on the coast of the *Ægean*. Nor is it any thing unlikely, but that in honour of this *Afchenaz*, the Kings and great men of those parts, took the name of *Afcanius*. Of which name, besides *Afcanius* the son of *Aeneas*, we find a King mentioned in the second of *Homer's Iliads*, which came unto the aid of *Priamus* at the siege of *Troy*. In the same quarters of the World we find *Ripath* ally, the founder of the *Riphet*, a people dwelling in the East parts of *Bithynia*, and spreading also over *Paphlagonia*: In both which Provinces there are some remnants of his name to be found amongst the Antients. For, besides that *Josephus* faith expressly, that the *Paphlagonians* anciently were called *Riphet*, there is mention in *Apollonius's Argonauticks* of the River *Rhebeus*, which rising in *Bithynia*, emptieth it self into the *Pontus Euxinus*; and of *Paphlagonia*, of which River *Pliny* also doth inform us: and *Stephanus* doth not only acquaint us with the River it self, but tells us also of a Region of the same name, and of a people thereabout, which are called *Rhebeati*. Nor need we look much further, to find out the seat of *Togarmah*, the third son of *Gomer*, whom the Prophet *Ezekiel* not only joyneth with his Father as two neighbouring Nations, but makes both of them to lie Northwards of *Judea*; *Gomer* and all his bands, the hosts of *Togarmah* in the North quarters, and all his bands, *cap. 38. 6.* So that they do not gudge amiss, who place *Togarmah* and his Progeny in *Cappadocia*: a Country not only bordering near to the Plantations of *Gomer*, and lying on the North of the land of *Canaan*, but very well stocked with an excellent breed of Mules and Horses, as *Strabo* testifieth in the eleventh Book of his Geography; with which commodities they traded at the Fairs of *Tyre*, as the same Prophet tells us of them, *Chap. 27. 14.* But for a more evident proof of this, that *Togarmah's* dwelling must be found in *Cappadocia*, we must first know that the *Greek* Translators call him generally by the name of *Togarmas*; and then, that anciently there was a people in *Cappadocia* and *Galatia*, whom *Strabo* calls *Trocmi*, and *Tully Trogmii*, by *Stephanus* they are named *Trocmi*, and *Trogmades* in the Council of *Chalcedon*, in which *Cyriacus* Bishop of the *Trogradensis* (*Kie-Koiois* *Enionon* & *Tegryndian*) is often mentioned.

Having thus done with *Gomer*, and the sons of *Gomer*, we will next pursue the rest of the sons of *Japhet*, except *Javan* only, whom with his four sons we will keep together. And the next son of *Japhet* is *Magog*, concerning whom there hath been much dispute and difference amongst our Antiquaries, some making him the Father of the *Scythians*, and some of the *Goths* and others finally of the *Tartars*: all of them thinking that such terrible names as *Gog* and *Magog*, could not belong to any but such terrible Nations. And possible enough it is, that some of his posterity in succeeding times, finding their own fates too narrow for them, might remove further Northwards, and be the founders of some *Scythian* and *Tartarian* Nation; but that *Magog* himself in his first Plantation, should wander to far out of the way from the rest of his Brethren, when he had elbow-room enough amongst them, I cannot easily imagine. When therefore I find a Region in *Stephanus* called *Gogareus*, between *Iberia* and *Colchis*; and read in *Pliny*, that the City of *Cata-Syria*, which the *Greecians* call *Hierapolis*, was by the *Syrians* themselves called *Magog*: I shall not trouble my self to look for *Magog* any where else, than in those Countries where they have left such evident

Land-

Land-marks to discern themselves by. But this we shall the better see by looking out the dwellings of his two brethren, *Mefech* and *Tubal*, who being joyned together with *Gog* and *Magog*, *Ezek. 38. 2.* and *39. 1.* are very unlike to have their dwellings far abroad: or that they could concur in any publick Action against the *Jews*, according to the scope and purpose of the holy Prophet. Now it is probable (if not more) that *Mefech*, whom the Antients named *Mefech*, seated himself on the North and North-East of *Syria*, in the confines of *Colchis* and *Armenia*, and so unto the *Caspian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. For all along that Track runs a ridge of Hills, which *Pliny*, *Polony*, and *Pomponius Mela* call *Montes Melchici*, differentiating *Colchis* from *Armenia*, and both from *Iberia*; and so make like to be the dwelling of *Mefech* or *Mefech*, and to take denomination from him. And this I am the rather induced to think, because *Tubal*, whom the Scriptures generally joyn together with *Mefech*, is by most Writers said to have settled himself in *Iberia*, the next Province to it. *Josephus* also telling us, that anciently the *Iberi* were called *Tubethi*, though called *Iberians* afterwards on some new occasion. And hereto the constant tradition of the *Spaniards* gives some good authority, who boast of their descent from *Tubal*, which cannot otherwise be granted, than as they were a Colony of these *Iberians*, from whence the Continent of *Spain* was once called *Iberia*; and where one of the principal Rivers is still called *Iberus*. For *Madai*, the third Son of *Japhet*, it is most plain by the authority of Scripture (were there no proof else) that he was the Father of the *Medes*; who in the book of *Daniel*, and that of *Hefter*, are represented to us by no other name than that of *Madai*.

Thus having took a view of those who fixt themselves in either, or in both the *Asia's*; let us look on *Thyras*, *Javan*, and the Sons of *Javan*, who not contented with their dwellings in the lesser *Asia*, filled all *Europe* by degrees with their numerous progenies. And first beginning with *Javan* as the Elder Brother, most Authors make him the Original of those *Greek* Nations which pass under the general names of *Ionians*; and there is very good ground for the assertion, considering that the *Greek* Translators of the Bible instead of *Javan*, read *Yavan*, and that all those who elsewhere ordinarily are called *Ionians*, are by *Homer*, one of the ancientest of the *Greeks*, named *Ionians*. Now *Javan* and *Yavan* sound so like each other, that one may very well conclude, that they were the same. A name not only proper to the *Albanians*, and their *Colchians*, (though probable enough first belonging to them of *Antica*) but comprehending also the *Bactrians* and *Acheans* also; yea, and extending also into *Macedonia*, as appears *Dan. 8. 21.* where *Alexander* the Great, in the Hebrew is called King of *Javan*, which we English *Grecia*. Nor do we much dissent *Javan* from the rest of that flock, by carrying him cross the Seas into another part of the World; for he might go along with *Gomer* in his second Plantation; and, leaving him well settled in the greater *Phrygia*, and his Son *Afchenaz* in the lesser; might then with very little trouble (and no improbability at all) pass over the *Hellepont*, and plant himself in *Attica*, called at first *Ionica*, faith *Plutarch* in the life of *Thucydides*. Or if any one notwithstanding conceive this for too great a leap, and will rather think with *Hecataeus*, that the *Ionians* came out of *Asia* into *Greece* (as *Strabo* cites him to that purpose) I shall not much contend against that opinion; so it be also granted on the other side, that *Javan*, not having room enough on the shores of *Asia*, passed over into *Greece* as a Land uncoccupied. With *Javan* went *Elifha* his eldest Son, the Father of the *Eoles*, or *Eoli-*

ans, on the *Afion* side, as *Josephus* hath it; and the Founder of *Elys* in *Peloponnesus*, and Planter of the *Greecian* Isles, which by the Prophet *Ezekiel* *27. 7.* are called the Isles of *Elifha*. And it agrees exceedingly well with the Isles of *Greece*, what by the Prophet is affirmed of the Isles of *Elifha*; namely, that the Inhabitants thereof did trade to *Tyre* with *Blow* and *Purple* in which some of the *Greecian* Isles were fuch excellent Artifices, that *Carpaphus* had the name of *Porphyrie*, and *Cibira* was called *Tlo-pugosoa*, only from the abundance of *Purple*, which he had amongst them. Not to say any thing of *Coos*, *Nisyros*, and *Gyarus*, and some other of the *Cyclades*, renowned in good Authors, for that *Commodity*.

A shorter Journey, but withal a far shorter Territory, fell to the lot of *Tarfifh* the second Son; whom *Javan*, when he travelled further upon new discoveries, left settled in *Cilicia*, a Province of the lesser *Asia*, where either he, or some of his Posterity, in honour of him, built the City of *Tarfis*, the principal City of that Province. For that *Tarfis* in those early days should go into *Spain*, and there build *Tartessus*, I take to be a strange (if not idle) Romance; that *Tome* being built by the *Phenicians* many Ages after, without relation unto *Tarfis*, or his memory either. What Voyages or Plantations those of *Cilicia* or *Tarfis* made in times succeeding, as I now here find, so it is not material to my present purpose; which principally is to settle the Sons of *Noah* in their first habitations. On therefore unto *Cittim*, the third Son of *Javan*, whom *Josephus* setteth first in the life of *Cyprus*, where he finds a City called *Cittim*, the birth-place of *Zeno the Stoick*, thence furnished *Kittius*. *Josephus* is herein followed by *St. Hieron* in his Notes on *Genesis*, in whole time (as *Pinius* telleth in his Comment on *Ezekiel*) the Town of *Cittim* was still standing; so do *Eubathius* in his *Hexameron*, and divers others. The Author of the Book of *Maccabees* sets him further off, giving the name of *Cittim* unto *Macedonia*. After that (saith the Author) *Alexander the Son of Philip*, went forth of the land of *Chethim*, and then *Darius King of the Persians* and *Medes*, *Cap. 1. 1.* And after in the 8. Chapter of the same Book, *verf. 5.* *Persius King of Macedonia* is called King of the *Cittim*. But this doth no way contradict that of his first planting in *Cyprus*, where it is very probable that he made his dwelling for a time, by reason of the neighbourhood of his Brother *Tarfifh* (*Cilicia*) and the City of *Tarfis* lying near unto it. But finding in time that *Island* to be either too barren, or too small for his people; and that the other parts both of *Greece* and *Asia* were taken up already by the first Adventurers, he might finally fix himself, or some of his posterity, in *Macedonia*, as a spare place which no body could lay claim unto. That either he or any of his Sons did plant first in *Italy*, which I see *Bochartus* would fain have, were against the method of Plantations; and he must give them wings to fly that conveyeth them thither, when as yet Mankind was not taught the use of shipping, or not accustomed at least to make long voyages. But that in course of time, as the World grew fuller, and that *Greece* was not able to contain its multitudes, some of the race of *Cittim* might pass over into *Italy*, the passage thither from some of the Ports of *Greece* being short and ealie, I am apt enough to believe, and in its proper place shall declare my self for it. Nor can I otherwise agree with him, as concerning *Dodanim*, whom amongst all right and reason he hath placed in *Gaul*; making the River *Rodanus*, one of the principal of that Country, to be named of him; when the *Greecians*, mistaking the letter *Daleth* for that of *Reph* (as indeed the letters are so like, that one may

may very easily be mistook for the other) most commonly present unto us by the name of *Rhodomini*. Admitting which, it is more proper, in my mind, to settle *Rhodomini* for a while in the life of *Rhoda*, lying so near the dwellings of his other brethren, till wandering room for the increase of his posterity in so small an Island, he might coast along the shores of *Peloponnesus*, and fix himself finally in *Epirus* by his Brother *Eliphas*, where in the Province of the *Malassians*, we shall find a City called *Dodona*, without any such mixture or change of letters, as before is mentioned. For that the three fourth parts of *Europe* in respect of *Asia*, should be planted all at once by the sons of *Javan*, is so incredible an imagination, that he must have a very strong fancy or be of very light belief, which can entertain it. Finally as for *Thyras* the last son of *Japhet*, having accompanied his brother *Javan* to the shores of *Asia*, and seeing him passed over the Seas to Greece, he took the opportunity of the next Strait or Fretum (since called *Thracicus Rhiphorus*) and fixed himself in *Thrace*, which Country he gave name unto, as most Writers tell us. Nor want there such apparent footprints of the name of *Thyras*, besides the name of *Thracia* (as some spell the word) which may add good authority to this general testimony; there being both a River and an Haven-town not far from *Byzantium*, which *Phry*, *Pulony* and *Mila* call *Atbyras*; a River and Town called *Tyrus* in the Province of *Media*, bordering next to *Thrace*, whereof most of all the old *Geographers* have taken notice; and finally the *Thracians* calling their God, *Mars*, by the name of *Thyras*. Not to say any thing of *Tereus*, *Theraps*, and some others of the Kings of *Thrace*, whose names come very near unto that of *Thyras*, as the founder of their Nation.

This have we seen the several Generations and Dispersions of the Sons of *Noah*, so far forth as their names are registered in holy Scripture: these being the Heads and Leaders of those several Tribes which joyntly together in the project of the building of *Babel*, and afterwards dispersed themselves, as before was shewn. But that no more than these (I mean heads of Families) descended in so long a time from the loyns of *Noah*, that they should have towards the new peopling of the world in an hundred years (for so long it must be at least from the Flood to the building of *Babel*) no more than sixteen Sons in all; and ten of those sixteen good childless also to the grave, is not a thing to be imagined. Nor is it to be thought, that all the people which were born since the Flood till then, could meet together at one place as by infpiration; or being met, would join together in a work of so little profit; or, that if *Noah* or *Son* had been there amongst them, they would not have diffused them from that foolish enterprise. And therefore I should rather be of their opinion, which think that *Noah* fixed himself in those parts, which lay nearest to the place where the Ark took land: and having planted as far Eastward as he thought convenient, sent out the surplusage of his people under the Conduct of one or more of these Undertakers; directing them perhaps to the land of *Shinar*, where himself had dwelt before the Flood. Where being come, and destitute of graver and more sober counsels, they fell upon that vain attempt, which became their ruin; and made them scatter and disperse themselves into so many Companies. For in my mind Sir *Walter Ralegh* pleads the point exceeding strongly, that it must needs be that *Noah* was settled in the East, and had well peopled all those parts which lay nearest to him, before he sent his Troop abroad upon new discoveries. For being it is expressly said in holy Scripture, that as they went from the East,

they found a plain in the Land of *Shinar*; it must needs follow without controversy, that they came from the East Countries into *Shinar* or *Babylonia* and not from that part of *Armenia*, (as the vulgar opinion is) which lay North thereof. Now that the Countries whence they came were not left utterly desolate upon this remove, but very sufficiently provided both of men and Cities, appeareth by those huge Armies which *Zoroaster* the King of *Bactria*, and *Staurobates* a King of the *Indians*, were able to bring into the field. Of whom the first being invaded by *Ninus* the *Assyrian* Monarch, encountered him with an Army of 400000 fighting men; the other on the like occasion out-vied *Semiramis* for numbers: and yet her Army did consist, as we read in *Diodes Siculus*, of three millions and a half of men, besides 10000 armed Waggon; whereof if we believe but the third part, it may serve to prove that the East must needs be planted before this Expedition towards *Babylonia*. For considering that *Ninus* the husband of *Semiramis* was but the third in descent from *Nimrod*, (that is to say, the son of *Belus*, the son of *Nimrod*) it had been a most impossible thing that such a vast increase should be made only out of *Colonies* in so short a time, as needs must be between the planting of the Countries before specified, and these two great actions; unless God raised them out of stones, or by some such miracle, to abate the pride of these tyrants over other Nations. Without a miracle of this nature (which I conceive no wise man would expect to find) it is, I say, a thing impossible that *Staurobates* should exceed *Semiramis* in number of men, as *Diodes* saith he did; he being but a Calling of a second Swarm, and the great Commanders of that part of the world from whence he came upon a second or a third Plantation. Add unto this, that those who have recorded the Acts of *Alexander* the Great, assure us that he found more Cities, and sumptuousness in that little Kingdom of *Perus*, which lay side by side to the East of the River *Indus*, than in all his other travels and undertakings: And this may serve instead of a further evidence, that the East Countries were not planted after this dispersion, but built, and peopled, and reduced under forms of Government, as soon as any in the World. Nor know I elsewhere to find either *Noah* himself, or *Son* and *Japhet*, unless they flaid behind with their Father *Noah*, or were disposed of by themselves in their several quarters: there being none of those, though most diligent men, who have writ of the Plantations of the World upon this dispersion, that either speak of any Nations planted by them, or of their settling in the Colonies of any one of their descendants. Which is to me a very strong Argument that they came not with the rest to the Plains of *Shinar*, but tarried still in those Habitations wherein God had placed them.

Against this I can see but two Objections of any moments; one from the Text, the other from an old Tradition amongst the *Jews*. That from the Text is gathered from those words of *Moses*, when having made his Catalogue of the Families of the Sons of *Noah*, he adds, And by these were the Nations divided in the Earth, after the Flood. Gen. x. v. ult. But these words, as I take it, do relate only unto that division which was made upon occasion of the Confusion of Languages, when they were forced to give over their work, and fort themselves into several Companies: and not to such Plantations as were made before: who being all of one tongue, though in divers dwellings, could not be looked upon as several and divided Nations. For the Tradition of the *Jews*, 'tis this, that from the beginning of the World to the building of *Babel*, that language which in after-times

was

was called the *Hebrew*, was the common language of Mankind; and that it did continue uncorrupt in the house of *Eber*; (whence it had the name) because he joynted not with the rest in that proud and ungodly undertaking. Hence it may possibly be objected, that if there were any others of the off-spring of *Noah*, which came not with the rest to the Plains of *Shinar*, and consequently had no hand in that vain attempt, they could not come within the curse of Confused Languages, but mult needs speak the *Hebrew* Tongue, as well as those descended of the Loins of *Eber*. But against this Tradition, and the consequences of it, there are some things to be objected. For first it is but a Tradition, and therefore of no sure foundation to build upon. And secondly, it is such a Tradition as holds no good coherence with the truth or story; it being a most clear and demonstrative truth, that the *Hebrew* Tongue was not the Language which *Abraham* brought with him out of *Chaldea* and *Mesopotamia*, but that which he found spoken in the Land of *Canaan* at his coming thither, to which both he and his Posterity did conform themselves. Or had it been the Language of *Eber*, as they say it was, (but most undoubtedly was not) yet, thirdly, had this been a privilege conferred on *Eber*, that he and his Posterity should speak the Original Language without alteration or corruption, it must have been extended to all those of the house of *Jacob*, which descended from him; as also to the house of *Laban* in *Padan-Aram*, and to the *Mediterranean* and *Ammonites* as the seed of *Lot*; and finally to the *Phoenicians* and *Idumians*, descended of *Abraham* and *Eliu*; and not be limited and confined only to the house of *Jacob*. Either all these must be partakers of so great a privilege, because their Father *Eber* had obtained it for himself and his; or else it was not such a privilege, or given so universally and incommunicably to the house of *Eber*, as they say it was. So the Tradition falls to ground, as to this particular. And then admitting it for true, that those who staid behind with *Noah* spake the same Language which was common to the Fathers before the Flood, (be it the *Hebrew*, or what else soever it was) I see no reason to the contrary, but that it might in time be branched into several Languages or Dialects of the same one Language, by the commerce and intercourse which they had with Nations of a different speech; as well as those of *Judab*, in so short a time as the Captivity of *Babylon*, had lost the purity of that Language which they so much brag of, and could not understand their own Bibles at their coming home, but by an Interpreter. Of which see *Neb. 5. 7, 8*.

But to proceed: On this dispersion of the Families of the Sons of *Noah*, it came to pass, that though they all descended from one common Root, yet by the situations of their several dwellings, they came to be of several tempers and affections; in which they were so different from one another, that it might seem they had been made at first out of several Principles, and not at all derived from one common Parent. Of which thus *Du Bartas*.

O how full of Wonders strange, in Nature!  
Sith in each Climate, not alone in stature,  
Strength, colour, hair's; but that men differ do,  
Both in their humours, and their manners too.  
The Northern man is fair, the Southern foul;  
That white, this black; that smiler, and this dour.  
Thou' one's blith and frolicke, th' other stout and forward;  
Th' one's full of courage, th' other a fearful coward, &c.

The ground or reason of which difference is to be attributed to the different tempers of those Countries in

which they live, and to the different influences of the Heavenly Bodies on those several Countries which do continue still the same, though many times the Countries do shift and change their old Inhabitants. *Hinc illa ex antiqua viis, et patria forte darunt, que sunt in libris gentes, aut commendant aut notant, laith a Modern but ridiculous Author.* Two or three evidences of this truth will make it clear and evident to a practical judgment, which otherwise might appear obscure in the search of causes. *Plinius* hath told us of the *Gauls*, *Primum corum impetio esse majorem quam virorum; secundum minorem quam feminarum.* Which is the same which *Rob. Dalingus* hath told us of the *Modern French*, that be vigorous as action like Thunder, and ends in a smoke. *De viri Gallorum subita ingenia, laith Cesar* of the ancient *Gauls*: and I believe the present *French* are altogether as rash and hair-brain'd, as the other were. *Gallia fœcunda Canisiorum*, was part of the Character of the *Gauls* in the time of *Juvenal*, and it is told us of the *French* by some late Observers, that there are commonly more Lawtrials amongst them in one year, than have been in *England* since the Conquest. And yet the old *Gauls* in a manner are wholly rooted out of the Country, the several Nations of *Franks*, *Burgundians*, *Britans*, *Normans*, and *Gals*, being in possession of that several dwelling. Thus also it is said by *Tacitus* of the ancient *Germani*, *Diem noctemque continuare potando, nulli obprobrium*; it was no disgrace to any, to spend the whole day and night in drinking; and more than so, *De jugendis affinitatibus, de bello deique et pace, in conviviis consultare*; that they consulted over their Cups of their weighty business. Since which time though all *Germany* hath shifted almost all her old Inhabitants, and taken in new Colonies of *Saxons*, *Avars*, *Thuringians*, *Danes*, *Slaves*, *Huns*, *Saxons*, and other Nations; yet still those ill customs are as much in use amongst them, as ever formerly. To go a little further off: The old Philosopher *Anacharsis* tells us of the ancient *Grecians*, that at the beginning of their Feasts they used little Goblets, *καλὰ ποτήρια* *δὲν μεγάλων* *πινάκων*, and greater towards the end, when they were almost drunken: which custom still remains amongst them, as *G. Sander* observeth, notwithstanding the great length of time, and all the other changes of fate and people, which have happened since. I shall not speak here of the effeminateness of the *Affrick*, or the cruelty or implacableness of the *African* Nations, being as great now as in any of the former times, notwithstanding the great and numerous Plantations of the *Greeks*, *Romans*, *Parthians*, *Saracens*, *Turks*, and *Tartars*, successively, and respectively in the several Countries. And therefore I conclude this point in these words of *Barclay*, *Heret usque in omni gentis sui quædam inconvicta, que hominibus pro condicione terrarum in quibus nasci consuevit, sua fata diviserit*.

Nor is this all the consequent of this dispersion of the Families of the Sons of *Noah*; the separation of their persons producing, first, an alteration of affections, and that engendering natural Animosity: which secondly by their several interferences and Reasons of State, hath left almost no people without some such enemy which doth particularly & perversely cross them in all their Councils. Concerning which, take here the Observation of that notable Statesman and Historian, *Philip de Comines*: which though it be with reference to the *Merdians* of his own time. yet it may be accommodated generally to all States and Ages. "In rebus humanis ita comparation est, ut nullus fore sit populus quem non alius aliquis extorqueat, &c. It is (saith he) so ordered in the state of humane affairs, that there is almost no Nation without a more particular Enemy. The *English* are enemies

to



to the French, the Scots to the English, the Portuguese to the King invertebrate hatred against the Spaniards. The Princes of Italy enjoy great possessions without any good title; but are continually oppoled by the more potent Cities of Venice, Florence, Genoa, and Lucca. The Aragonian Kings of Naples, have found perpetual Enemies of the Dukes of Anjou; as have the Dukes of Milan, of the house of Orleans. The Princes of Italy, and the Florentines, have a ditch at Venice; as the States of Genoa, and Sienna, have against the Florentines. In Germany the animosities have been great and of long continuance, between the Houses of Austria, and Bavaria; the hatred grown beyond all hopes of reconciliation which is between the Switzers, and the Austrian Family. The Dukes of Cleve, and Guick, are always upon ill terms with their Neighbours of Gelderland; and in the North, the Cities on the Baltic Seas have their continual quarrels with the Kings of Denmark. Nor are the enmities any thing less, if they be not greater, which are discernable amongst the people of Asia and Africa, than those that are above remembered. So far and to this purpose faith that notable and judicious Writer.

The consideration of which points, if there were no other, were of it self sufficient to show the necessary use of History and Geography, as well for the understanding the affairs of the Ages past, as for commerce and correspondence with the Nations present. For had no History been written in the former times, in what dull ignorance had we lived of all those occurrences which do so much concern the whole state of Mankind, and are our principal directors in Life and Action? in which respect the Orator must truly call it, *Magistram vitam*. For upon the credit of this History, the examples of our Ancestors, the grounds of civil prudence, and the fames of men do most especially depend. And certainly to draw back the mind to the contemplation of Matters long ago passed; to search out with diligence, and to deliver with faith, freedom, and the life of expression, such things as are found out on a diligent search; to represent unto our eyes the changes of Times, the Characters of Persons, the uncertainties of Councils, and the Conveyances of Actions, the subtilties of Pretensions, and the Secrets of State; must of necessity be a work of as publick use, as it is of great both pains and judgment. Besides, it gives a kind of eternity to all such men, who by their Councils or Achievements have deserved nobly of those Kingdoms, and Commonwealths, wherein they lived. And thereupon the Orator doth not only call it, *Magistram vitam*, but *Lucem veritatis, Titem temporis, Notitiam vestigia, & Vite memoriam*. According to which Character I find these Verses set before a Chronicle of some Kings of England (more worth than all the Book besides.)

For though in these days Miracles be fled,  
Yet this shall of good Historicks be said,  
They call back time that's past, and give life to the dead.

Nor want there other motives to endear unto us the use of History, besides the light it gives unto all the remarkable Actions of preceding times; and the eternity (if I may say so) which it conferreth on the Affairs themselves, by the preservation of their names from the ruins of time, and the pit of Oblivion. For first, it directeth men to Virtue, and deters them from Vice, by shewing forth the glorious memories of virtuous men and the ill favour which is left behind men of ungodly life; and

especially keeps persons of most eminent place from letting loose the reins unto all licentiousness, by representing to their consideration, That all their Actions shall be laid open one day to the view of the Vulgar. Secondly, it hath been a principal Conserver of most Arts and Sciences, by keeping on Record the Dictates and Opinions of so many of the old Philosophers; out of which, a perfect body of Philosophy, and others of the Liberal Arts hath been collected and digested. Thirdly, it is the best School-master in the Art of War, and teacher of Stratagems; and in that can practically afford more punctual directions, than can be otherwise obtained; and is withal the best Assistant to the Statesman or Politician, who from hence draw their Observations and Conclusions; and become thereby fervent to their Prince and Country, though never travelled more than amongst their Books. So Archimedes in his study, and Demosthenes in his Orators Gown, endangered more the enemies of their several Countries, than the Athenians, or Syracusans, did by dint of Sword. And last of all, besides these civil benefits and considerations, and the great help which it affords in the way of discourse; there is no particular branch of knowledge more useful for the true and perfect understanding of holy Scripture, than that of Ecclesiastical and Profane History; or which gives clearer light to many dark passages thereof, especially in the Prophetical Writings of either Testament.

This, as it shews the necessary use and benefit which redounds from History, so doth it serve to offer in that commendation which belongs to the study of Geography also; without some knowledge wherein, the study of History is neither so pleasant, nor so profitable, as a judicious Reader would desire to have it. 'Tis true, Geography without History hath life and motion, but very unstable, and at random; but History without Geography, like a dead carcass, hath neither life, nor motion at all, or moves at least but slowly on the understanding. For what delight or satisfaction can any man receive from the reading of Story, without he know somewhat of the places, and the conditions of the people, which are therein mentioned? In which regard Ammius Marcellinus the Historian, hath deserved very well of all his Readers, premising to the Actions of every Country some brief Description of the place and chief Towns therein. For though the greatness of the Action doth enable and adorn the place; yet it is the knowledge of the place, which adds delight and satisfaction unto the reading of the Story, which conveys it to us. History therefore and Geography, like the two Fires or Meteors, which Philosophers call *Cæter* and *Fulgor*, if joined together, crown our reading with delight and profit; if parted, threaten both with a certain shipwreck; and are like two Sisters dearly loving, not without pity (I had almost said impiety) to be kept asunder. So as that which Sir Philip Sidney said of *Argalus* and *Parthenia*,

Her being was in him alone,  
And he not being, he was none;

may be as justly said of History and Geography, as of those two Lovers. And yet this is not all the benefit which redounds from the study of Geography, which is exceeding useful to the reading of the holy Scriptures, as in discovering the situation of Paradise, the bounds and borders of those Countries which are therein mentioned; especially with relation to the travels of the Patriarchs, Prophets, Evangelists and Apostles, yea of Christ himself not otherwise to be comprehended and understood, but

by

by the help of Geographical Tables and descriptions. Besides this, it is useful to most sorts of men, as to Astronomers, who are hereby informed of the different appearances of Stars in several Countries; their several influences and aspects, their rising and setting, according to different Horizons. Secondly, to Physicians, who are hereby acquainted with the different temper of mens bodies, according to the Climes they live in; the nature and growth of many Simples, and Medicinal Drugs, whereof every Country under Heaven hath some more natural and proper to it self, than to any others. Thirdly, to States-men, who from hence draw their knowledge of the nature and disposition of those people with whom they are to negotiate; the bounds and borders both of their own Kingdoms, and the Neighbouring Countries, with the extent of their respective Dominions by Sea and Land; without the exact knowledge of which, there would be a perpetual Seminary of Wars and discord. Fourthly, to Merchants, Mariners, and Souldiers; the several Profounders of which kinds of life, find nothing more necessary for them in their several callings, than a competent knowledge in Geography; which presents to them many notable advantages, both for their profit and contentment. Finally, by the study of Geography, a man that hath not opportunity nor means of travelling, may with as much benefit, but far less danger and expence, acquaint himself with the particular descriptions of Kingdoms, Provinces, Cities, Towns and Castles, with all things considerable in the same, together with the customs, manners, and dispositions of all Foreign Nations; and that too in as full a manner, as if he had survey'd the one, and observed the other, by a personal visit of the places represented to him.

Such is the necessary use which men of ingenious studies, and professions, do, and may make of History and Geography. In the course of their callings and employments. And there are some things also necessary to the knowledge of each, that we may study them with the greater benefit and contentment. To History, it is only requisite that it be defined, distinguished from such writings as do seem to challenge the name of Histories; and that somewhat be premised of those several Epistles, from which all people do begin their computations. But to Geography it is needful not only that we do define it, but that we explicate those Terms, or second Notions, which are not obvious to the understanding of every Reader. First then for History, if we consult the name or *Quid nominis* of it, it is derived *ἱστορία* ἵστω, ὅς ἑ. ἰ. videre; and therefore properly doth signify a relation of such remarkable Actions at which the Author was an Eye-witness, if not an Agent, *Apud veteres enim* (saith *Hydore*) *nemo scriberebat Historiam, nisi qui interfuisse, & ea que scribenda essent videret*. But now the customary use of the word hath taught it a more ample signification. History being defined to be A Perfect Relation of all Occurrences observable, happening in the State whereof it is written, described by the Motives, Pretences, Consultations, Speeches and Events; a special case being had both of Time and Place.

As for the writings which do challenge the name of History, but indeed are really distinguished from it, they are *Commentaries, Annals, Diaries, or Journals, and Chronologies*. First, *Commentaries* set down only a naked continuance of Events and Actions, without the Motives and designs, the Councils, Speeches, Occasions and Pretences of butcheries. So that *Cæsar* with more modesty than true propriety of speech, applied the name of *Commentaries* to the best History in the World, A History commended by King James to his Son Prince Henry, above all other profane Authors, both for the sweet flowing of the stile,

and the worthiness of the matter it self. For *Theseus* ever (saith he) been of this opinion, that, of all Ethnick Emperors or great Captains, he hath farthest exceeded both in his practice and in his precepts, for Martial affairs. Which makes me the more wonder at the strange and unjust censure of *Justin Lipsius* who calls them *Nudum & simplicem narrationem*, for being intitled *Commentaries*, they do (saith he) not polliceri *præter nomen*; with pride and arrogance enough. 2. For *Annals* next; they are a bare recital only of the Actions happening every year, without regard had to the causes and pretences, or any of the ingredients required in History. So that *Tacitus* had no other Reason to give the name of *Annals* to his excellent Work, than that it is distinguished by the years of the Consul. Otherwise there is no great difference as unto the matter between an History and an *Annal*, the subject of them both being matter of State; and not such trivial things as Triumphs, Pageants, and such like, which stand not with the gravity and authority of Historical *Annals*: betwixt which and a *Diary*, the same *Tacitus* (speaking of some magnificent Structures which were built that year) doth make this difference, *Res idestres Annalibus, talia diurnis Urbis aut mandant, that matters of the greater moment were committed to Annals; and unto Diaries the Acts and Accidents of a meaner nature*. 3. But *Diaries*, besides this difference in point of matter are distinguished from *Annals* also in point of time; a *Diary* or *Journal*, as the name imports, containing the Actions of each day, of which kind was the Chronicle called for by *Absarturus*, in which the Actions of his Court were referred to *Journals*, and in the which he found the relation of the treason intended against him by his Eunuchs. And of this kind was that of King Edward the sixth, mentioned in the History of his life, by Sir John Hayward. 4. Last of all for *Chronologies*; they are only bare supputations of times, with some brief touch upon the Actions therein happening, such as are those of *Eusebius, Ptolemy, Calvisius, and Helvicus*; of which last I dare give that testimony which *Paterculus* affords to *Ovidius*, that he is *perfectissimus in forma operis sui*; though he and all the rest are debtors to *Eusebius* for the incredible pains taken by him in his excellent *Chronicon*. Out of these four, as out of the four Elements, the Quintessence of History is extracted: borrowing from *Annals* time, from *Diaries* and *Commentaries* matter, from *Chronologies* content of time and co-stancy of Princes; and thereto adding of her own all such other Ornaments in which these four are found defective.

That which remains to premise somewhat of those several *Epochs*, from whence particular State, Nations and People, make their computations. These have been very different in former times, according to the several occasions took in several Countries. The Jews had several *Epochs* peculiar to themselves alone, and one in common with their Neighbours. Those which they had amongst themselves were first from the Creation of the World, or the beginning of time; Secondly from the universal Deluge, which hapned, A. M. 1656. Thirdly, from the Confusion of Tongues, A. M. 1786. Fourthly, from *Abrahams* journey out of *Chaldea* into *Canaan*, A. M. 2021. Fifthly, from their deliverance out of Egypt, A. M. 2453. Sixthly, from the first year of *Jubilee*, A. M. 2499. Seventhly, from the building of *Solomons* Temple, A. M. 2932. And lastly, from the Captivity of *Babylon*, A. M. 3368. That which they had common with other Nations, was the *Æra* or *Epoch* of the victory of the Greeks, which took beginning on the first Victory which *Selencus* had against *Antigonus*, which was in A. M. 3367. An Account much used by the Jews, *Chaldeans, Syrians*, and other Nations of the East.

But the *Chaldeans* also had their own *Epochæ* or Accounts, reckoning their time from the first year of *Nabonnassar* (*Salmassar* he is called in Scripture) which began 438 years before this of *Selenus*, mult tant in A.M. 3201. Next for the *Grecians*, they reckon'd a long while by *Olympiads*, the first of which is placed in the year of the World, 3174 (of which more hereafter.) But this Account perishing under the *Constantinopolitans*, they reckon'd after by *Inditions* (an account devised by *Justinian*) every *Indition* containing 15 years, the first beginning A.Chr. 513. which amongst *Chronologers* is still used. The *Romans* reckon'd first from the foundation of their City, which was A.M. 3-13. and afterwards from the sixteenth year of *Augustus* his Empire, (being that which is properly called the *Roman Æra*) A.M. 3936. An account used by the *Spaniards* (where it still began) till the reign of *Pedro* the fourth of *Aragon*, who abrogated it in his Dominions, A.Chr. 1350. followed therein by *John* the first of *Castile*, An. 1383. and then at last by the King of *Portugal* also, 1415. The *Christians* generally do reckon from the birth of *CHRIST*, but this they did not use till the year 600. following in the mean time the Account of the Empire. And finally the *Mahometans* begin their *Hegira* (for so they call the time of their Computation) from the flight of their Prophet *Mahomet* from *Mecæ*, when he was driven thence by the *Phylaræ*, which happened A.Chr. 617. Of these we shall make use generally but of two alone, those namely of the Worlds Creation, and our Saviours Birth; and of the building of *Rome*, and the flight of *Mahomet*, in things that do relate to those several States.

Next for Geography we will first define it, and after explicate such terms or second notions, as are not obvious to the understanding of every Reader. First for the definition of it, it is said by *Ptolemy* to be a description of the whole Earth, or the whole Earth imitated by writing and delineation, with all other things generally annexed unto it. *ἡ γῆς οὐρανὸς αἰσθητὴ καὶ ἀκίνητος* (and not *ἀκίνητος*, as it is commonly but corruptly read) *τὸ καὶ ἀκίνητος* τὸν τὸν οὐρανὸν διὰ τὸ μὴ εἶναι αὐτὸν ἀκίνητον, as his own words are. In which we look not on the Earth simply as it is an Element, for so it belongeth to *Philosophy*; but as it is a Spherical body proportionably composed of Earth and Water, and so it is the subject of Geography.

First for the Earth which is the first part of this body, it is affirmed by the best Writers to be 21600 miles in compass, which is demonstrable enough. For being there are in every degree of the greater Circles 360 degrees, every degree being reckon'd at 60 miles: let 360 be multiplied by 60 and the Product will be 21600 as before is said. So that if it were possible to make a path round about the Earth, an able Footman going constantly 24 miles a day, would compass it in 900 days.

The Earth is divided. In respect of men, into the right hand and the left; In respect of it self, into parts Real and Imaginary.

To Poets which turn their faces towards the *Fortunate Islands* (so memorized and chanted by them) which are situated in the West; the North is the right hand, and the South the left.

To the *Angers* of old, and in our days to *Priests* and men in holy Orders, who usually in their Sacrifices and divine Oblations, convert themselves unto the East, the South is the right hand, and the North the left.

To *Astronomers*, who turn their faces towards the South, because that way the motions of the Planets may be best observed, the West is the right hand, and the East the left.

Finally, to *Geographers*, who, by reason they have fo

much to do with the *Elevation* of the Pole, do turn their face towards the North; the East is the right hand, and the West the left.

The Real parts of the Earth are divided commonly into *Continents*, *Islands*.

A Continent is a great quantity of Land, not separated by any Sea from the rest of the World, as the whole Continent of *Europe*, *Asia*, *Africa*, or the Continents of *France*, *Spain*, *Germany*.

An Island is a part of Earth inclosed round about with some Sea or other; as the life of *Britain*, with the Ocean; the life of *Sicily*, with the Mediterranean; and therefore in *Latine* it is called *Insula*, because it is situate in *fals*, as some derive it.

Touching the *Continents* I have nothing in general to enlarge, till we come to the particular *Geography* and description of them. But for *Islands* (leaving the description of their being, or not being before the Flood) there are four cases to which they may be thought to owe their Origin. 1. An *Earthquake*, which works two ways towards their production: First, when by it one part of a Country is forcibly torn away from the other; and so *Ægeæ* was divided from the rest of *Attica*; and secondly when some vehement wind or vapour being shut up in such parts of the Earth as be under the Sea, raiseth the Earth above the Water; whereunto the Original of most of those Islands, which are far remote from any part of the Continent, is probably to be referred.

2. Great Rivers at their entry into the Sea carry with them abundance of gravel, dirt, and weeds; which, if the Sea be not the more working, will in time settle to an Island. So the Corn which *Tarquinius* sowed in the *Campus Martius*, being cut down by the people and cast into *Tiber*, settled together, and made the *Holy Island*. So the River *Abelarus* caused the *Echinades*, as we shall more at large declare; and so the Island of *Loanda* in the Kingdom of *Congo*, is said to have been made out of the Sands of the Ocean, and the Mire of the great River *Lanza*, call into a heap, and at last formed into an Island.

3. The Sea violently beating on some small Illands, weareth it through, and turneth the *Peninsulas* into a complete *Ile*. Thus was *Sicily* divided from *Italy*, *Cyprus* from *Syria*, *England* from *France*, and *Wight* from the rest of *England*. And 4. sometimes as it catcheth and worketh on some places, so it voluntarily laveth and abandoneth others, which in some time grow to be *Islands*, and firm land under foot. So it is thought the *Iles* of *Zealand* have been once part of the main Sea; and *Vesputius* proveth it, because that the Husbandmen in tilling and manuring the ground, find sometimes Anchors here and there fixt, but very often the bones of huge and great fishes, which could by no accident come hither. To these kind of *Islands*, *Pythagoras* in *Ovid* alluding, saith,

Vidi falsas ex æquore terras,  
Et procul à pelago conche jacere marine,  
Et vetus inventa est in montibus anchora somnis.

Of have I seen that earth, which once I knew  
Part of the Sea; for that a man might view  
Huge shells of Fishes in the upland ground;  
And on the Mountain-tops old Anchors found.

As concerning the situation of *Islands*, whether commodious or not, this is my judgment. I find in *Machiavel*, that for a City whole people cover no Empire but their own Towns, a barren place is better than a fruitful; because in such feats they are compelled to work

work and labour, by which they are freed from idleness, and by consequence from riotousness; but for a City whose Inhabitants desire to enlarge their Confines, fertile place was rather to be chosen than a sterile, as being more able to nourish multitudes of people. The like I say of *Islands*. If a Prince desire rather to keep than augment his Dominions, no place fitter for his abode than an Island; as being by it self and nature sufficiently defensible. But if a King be minded to add continually to his Empire, an Island is no fit feat for him; because partly by the uncertainty of Winds and Seas, partly by the longfomness of the ways, he is not so well able to supply and keep such forces as he hath on the Continent. An example hereof is *England*, which hath even to admiration repelled the most puissant Monarch of *Europe*; but for the causes above mentioned, cannot those any of her winnings on the firm land, though the hath attempted and achiev'd as many glorious exploits, as any Country in the World.

The Continent and Island are sub-divided into *Peninsulas*, *Islands*, *Peninsulas*.

*Peninsula* quasi pons *Insula*, is a tract of land, which being almost encompassed round by water, is joyned to the firm land by some little *Isthmus* as *Peloponessus*, *Taurica*, and *Peruana*.

*Isthmus* is that narrow neck of land, which joyneth the *Peninsula* to the Continent; as the Straights of *Darien* in *America*, and of *Corinth* in *Greece*.

*Promontorium*, is a high Mountain which shooteth it self into the Sea, the utmost end of which is called a *Fore-land*, or *Cape*, as the Cape of good Hope in *Africa*; *Cape Comari* in *India*, &c.

The Imaginary parts of the Earth are such which not being at all in the Earth, must yet be supposed to be so, for the better teaching and learning this Science; and are certain Circles going about the Earth, unfixable to them in Heaven, in nature.

These Circles are either the Greater, or Lesser: in both which, there are 360 Degrees, which in the greater Circles are greater than those in the lesser; and every Degree in the greater is 60 miles.

The greater Circles are either Immutables, as the *Æquator*. Mutable as the *Horizon*, *Meridian*.

The *Æquator* is a great Circle going round about the Terrestrial Globe from East to West. It passeth through *Habessus*, *Immata*, *Gizius*, &c. The use of it is to show the Latitude of any Town, *Promontory*, &c. Now the Latitude is the distance of a place South or North from the *Æquator*, or middle of the World; and must be measured on the Globe by the Degrees in the *Meridian*.

The *Meridian* is a great Circle rounding the Earth from Pole to Pole. There are many *Meridians*, according to the divers places in which a man liveth; but the chief and first *Meridian* passeth through the Island St. Michael, one of the *Azores*. The use of it is to show the Longitude of any place. Now the Longitude of a City, *Cape*, &c. is the distance of it East and West from the first *Meridian*, and is usually measured on the Globe by the Degrees of the *Æquator*.

The *Horizon* is a great Circle, designing so great a space of the earth, as a quick light can ken in an open field. The use of it is to discern the divers risings and settings of the Stars.

The lesser Circles either are noted with some name, as *Tropic*, of *Cancer*, *Capricorn*, *Polar*, either *Arctic*, *Antarctic*. Noted with no distinct name, and are the *Parallels*.

The *Tropic* of *Cancer* (so called of the Celestial Sign *Cancer*) is distant from the *Æquinoctial* 23 Degrees Northward, and passeth through *Barbary*, *India*, *China*, and *Nova Hispania*.

The *Tropic* of *Capricorn*, equally distant from the *Æquator* Southward, passeth through *Æthiopia inferior*, and the middle of *Peruana*. And this is to be observed in these *Tropicks*, that when the Sun is in the *Tropic* of *Cancer*, our days are at the longest; and when he is gone back to the *Tropic* of *Capricorn*, the days are at the shortest. The first they call the Summer, the last they call the Winter *Solstice*; the first happening on, or about St. Barnabas day in June; the last on, or about St. Lucia day in December.

The *Arctic Circle* (so called for that it is correspondent to the Constellation in Heaven called the *Bear*, in *Greek*, *Arctos*) is distant from the *Tropic* of *Cancer* 45 Degrees, and passeth through *Norway*, *Moscovy*, *Tartary*, &c.

The *Antarctic* (so called because opposite to the other) is as much distant from the *Tropic* of *Capricorn*, and passeth through *Terra Australis Incognita*. The use of these four Circles is to describe the Zones.

The Zones are spaces of Earth included betwixt two of the latter nominated Circles. They are in number five, one over-hot, two over-cold, and two temperate.

The over-hot, or *Torrid Zone*, is betwixt the two *Tropicks*, continually scorched with the presence of the Sun.

The two over-cold, or *Frigid Zones*, are situate between the two *Polar Circles*, and the very *Poles*; continually wanting the neighbourhood of the Sun.

The two Temperate Zones, are betwixt the *Tropic* of *Cancer*, and the *Arctic*; and twixt the *Tropic* of *Capricorn*, and the *Antarctic* Circles, enjoying an indifferency between heat and cold; so that the parts next the *Torrid Zone* are the hotter, and the parts next the *Frigid Zone* are the colder.

These five Zones are disposed according to the order of the Zones in Heaven; of which thus *Ovid Metam.* 1.

Vixit due dextra calum, totidemq; finis  
Parte fecant Zones, quinta est ardentior illis  
Sis uno inclusum numero digitumq; eodem  
Cura Dei totidemq; plage tellure prenumat.  
Quarum que media est, non est habilitabilis ætas;  
Nix regit alta duas: totidem inter utramq; levavit,  
Temperata; dedit, mixta cum frigore flamma.

And as two Zones do cut the Heavens right-side, And likewise other two the left divide,  
The middle in heat exceeding all the rest;  
Even so it seem'd to the Creator best,  
That this our World should thus be divided be,  
That with the Heavens in *Zonas* it might agree;  
The middle in heat, the outward more excel  
In Snow and Ice, scarce fit for men to dwell.  
Betwixt these two Extremes, two more are fixt,  
Where heat with cold indifferently is mixt.

The *Parallels*, called also *Æquidistant*, circle the Earth from East to West, and are commonly ten Degrees asunder: Such are the *Parallels* which are fit down in our Maps and Globes. But there are another sort of *Parallels*, two of which go to a *Climæ*. These are called *Artificial* *Parallels*, because they show the difference of the *Artificial* days; and are of an unequal breadth, as we shall see in the Table following. The use of these lesser *Parallels* is to show the *Climæ*.

Now a *Climæ*, or *Climata*, is a space of the Earth contained betwixt three *Parallels*, the middlemost whereof divided it into two equal parts: serving for setting out the length and shortness of the days in every Country. For under the *Æquator* the days are of the full length of

12 hours; but afterwards they encrease the length of half an hour for every *Climate*, till they come to the length of 24 hours, without night at all; which length attained, they encrease no more by hours, but by weeks and months, till they come to the length of half a year. So that we are to reckon 24 *Climates* Northward, and as many Southward; Those Northward known by the proper name of the place or City over which the middle Parallel of the *Climate* doth pass, as *Dia Merocis*, *Dia Sienæ*, &c. Those on the South by the same names, with the condition of *Anti-Dia-Sienæ*, *Anti-Dia-Merocis*, &c. 'Tis true, the ancient Geographers made but eleven *Climates* in all; at the most but nine. Nor needed they to add more, as the cause flows with them; the extent of the habitable World towards each of the Poles, not being so fully known to them, as it is to us.

And here, because those *Climates* are not of equal breadth or extent of Latitude, but grow narrower and narrower towards each Pole; in which regard, it is impossible to describe them under any Rule: I have thought fit to add this ensuing Table, partly framed out of the Commentaries of *Clavius* on the works of *Joh. de Sacro Bosco*, and partly out of *Huet's* Book, *Of the use of the Globes*. The whole divided into 7 Columns. In the first whereof is shewed what *Climates* are inhabited by the *Amphiscii*, *Periscii*, and *Heteroscii*, which terms we shall anon expound in the second, is set down the number of the *Climates* themselves; In the third the number of the *Parallels*; In the fourth, the length of the days in Summer; In the fifth, the distance of every *Climate* and *Parallels* from the *Equator*; In the seventh, the name of the Town or place, through which the middlemost of the three *Parallels* doth pass in this manner following.

### Here followeth the Table of the Climes.

A second use of these *Parallels* and other Circles; is for distinction of men in their several dwellings, who are (according as they are treated of in *Geography*) divided in respect of their shadows into *Amphiscii*, *Periscii*, *Heteroscii*; and in respect of their site and position, into *Antiaci*, *Periaci*, and *Antipodes*. 1. *Amphiscii* are such as dwell between the two Tropicks; so called, because their shadows are both ways; sometimes (when the Sun is North) to the South; sometimes (when the Sun is South) to the North.

2. *Periscii* are such as dwell beyond the Polar Circles so called, because their shadows are on all sides of them. 3. *Heteroscii* are such as dwell in either of the two temperate Zones; so called, because their shadows reach but one way; viz. in our Zone, to the North only; as in the other, to the South only.

4. *Antiaci* are such as dwell under the same *Meridian*, and the same *Latitude* or *Parallel* equally distant from the *Equator*; the one Northward, the other Southward: the days in both places being of a length; but the Summer of the one, being the others Winter.

5. *Periaci* are such as dwell in the same *Parallel*, on the same side of the *Equator*, how distant soever they be East and West; the season of the year, and the length of days being to both alike; but the ones midnight, being the others noon.

6. *Antipodes* are such as dwell feet to feet, so as a right line drawn from the one unto the other, passeth from North to South, through the Center of the World. These are distant 180 degrees, which is half the compass of the Earth. They differ in all things, as seasons of the year, length of days, rising and setting of the Sun, with the like. A matter reckoned for ridiculous, and impossi-

ble (if not somewhat worse) in the former times, that *Boniface* Archbishop of *Metz* hapning to see a Tractate written by *Virgilius* Bishop of *Salzburg*, touching the *Antipodes*; and not knowing what damnable Doctrine might be couched under that strange name, made complaint first to the Duke of *Bohemia*, and after to Pope *Zachary*, An. 745. By whom the poor Bishop (unfortunately only in being learned in such a time of ignorance) was condemned of Heretic. But *Boniface* might the rather be excused, in regard that many of his betters fell also on the self-same error. For venerable *Bede*, a man whose Book *Arch. B. Boniface* was not worthy to carry, effeminate the opinion touching the *Antipodes*, to be no better than a Fable; *neg. enim Antipodatum ullatenus est fabulæ accomodandum assensur*, in his Book de *Ratione temporum*, cap. 22. And yet the marvel is the less, considering that he lived in the darkest times of the Church, when the state of Learning was in its declination; when *S. Augustine* and *Lactantius*, and some others of the Ancient Writers, who lived when learning was at the very height, condemn this point of the *Antipodes*, for an incredible ridiculous Fable: whose words I could put down at large, did I think it necessary. So that we of these Ages have very good cause (to use the words of the late *L. Verulam*) to congratulate the present times, in that the World in these our days, have through-light made in it, after a wonderful manner; whereby we clearly see those things, which either were unknown, or but blindly guessed at by the Ancients.

But to proceed, the second part of the *Terrrestrial Globe* is the *Water*, which making but one *Globe* with the *Earth*, is yet higher than it. This appears, first, because it is a body not so heavy; Secondly, it is observed by Saylor that their Ships move faster to the shore than from it; whereof no reason can be given but the height of the water above the land. Thirdly, to such as stand on the shore, the Sea seems to swell into the form of a round hill, till it puts a bound upon our sight. Now that the Sea hovering thus over and above the Earth, doth not overwhelm it, must be ascribed only to His Power and Providence, who, both made the waters to stand on a heap, who both set them a bound that they should not pass, nor turn again to cover the Earth. The other allusions and properties of the Sea, as motion, saltness, and the like, I willingly omit, as belonging rather to Philosophers, than this present Argument.

The Sea or Water is divided into 1. *Oceana*, 2. *Mare*, 3. *Fretum*, 4. *Sinus*, 5. *Lacus*, 6. *Flumina*.

Of which and other Waters thus said *Ovid* in his *Metamorphosis*.

*Tum freta diffudit, rapidisq; tumscere ventis  
Jussit, & ambire circumdare littora terras.  
Addidit & Fontes, & Stagna immensa, Lacusq;  
Flumina; obliqui cunctis decedunt ripis, &c.*

Which may be Englished to this purpose.

He spread the Seas, which then he did command  
To swell with winds, and compass round the Land:  
To those he adds Springs, Ponds, and Lakes immense,  
And Rivers, which their winding Borders fence.  
Of these not few Earths thirstily pass devour,  
The rest their streams into the Ocean pour:  
When in that liquid Plain with trees Wave,  
The foamy Cliffs instead of Banks they lave.

And

A Table of the Climates belonging to the three sorts of Inhabitants: Page 20.

Inhabitants be- longing to feve- ral Climates.	Climes.	Paral- lels.	The longest summer day.	Latit. H. Scr.	Eleva- tion of the Pole Deg. S.	The breadth of the Climate Deg. S.	The places by which the Climes pass.
Amphiscii.	0	0	0	0	0	18	The beginning from the Equator:
	1	1	12 15	12 15	12 15	35	Sinus Arabicus, or the Red Sea.
	2	2	13 30	13 30	13 30	50	Meroc an Island of Nilus in Egypt.
	3	3	14 45	14 45	14 45	65	Siene a City in Africa.
	4	4	16 00	16 00	16 00	80	Alexandria in Egypt.
	5	5	17 15	17 15	17 15	95	Rhodes and Babylon.
	6	6	18 30	18 30	18 30	110	Rome and Hellepont.
	7	7	19 45	19 45	19 45	125	Venice and Millain.
	8	8	21 00	21 00	21 00	140	Podolia and the lesser Tartary.
	9	9	22 15	22 15	22 15	155	Batavia and Wittenburg.
Heteroscii.	10	10	23 30	23 30	23 30	170	Roschoch;
	11	11	24 45	24 45	24 45	185	Ireland in Muscovy.
	12	12	26 00	26 00	26 00	200	Bohufe a Castle in Norway.
	13	13	27 15	27 15	27 15	215	Gothland.
	14	14	28 30	28 30	28 30	230	Bergen in Norway.
	15	15	29 45	29 45	29 45	245	Wiburg in Finland.
	16	16	31 00	31 00	31 00	260	Arocia in Sweden.
	17	17	32 15	32 15	32 15	275	The mouth of Darcally a River in Sweden
	18	18	33 30	33 30	33 30	290	Divers places of Norway.
	19	19	34 45	34 45	34 45	305	Succia, Alba Russia.
Periscii.	20	20	36 00	36 00	36 00	320	With many Islands
	21	21	37 15	37 15	37 15	335	Theronto adjoining.
	22	22	38 30	38 30	38 30	350	Wanting special names,
	23	23	39 45	39 45	39 45	365	And Landmarks.
	24	24	41 00	41 00	41 00	380	Island under the Arctic Circle.
	25	25	42 15	42 15	42 15	395	
	26	26	43 30	43 30	43 30	410	
	27	27	44 45	44 45	44 45	425	
	28	28	46 00	46 00	46 00	440	
	29	29	47 15	47 15	47 15	455	

Here the Climates are ac-  
counted by the number, from  
60 Degrees 33 Minutes where  
the day is 14 Hours unto the  
Pole is left at 90 Degrees,  
where the artificial day is six  
months.

These Climates are supposed to pass by  
divers Islands within the Arctic Cir-  
cle as Greenland, Island, Greenland,  
wherein, as yet, for the narrowness of  
these Climates coming near together,  
and the uncertainty of observation, no  
special places have been assigned as to  
the other.

And



And for *Oceanus*, the *Ocean*, is that general Collection of all waters, which encompasseth the Earth on every side. A point which *Ovid* hath determined right enough, but laugh't at by *Herodotus* in the former times; who counted it a gross absurdity for any man to relate or write, that the Earth was round, or encompass'd about with the main *Ocean*. But Modern Navigations have found that to be true, which he held ridiculous; and which the most learned in those times knew rather by conjecture than by demonstration. Nor were those Ages so acquainted with those ebbs and flowings of the *Ocean*, and all those other Seas and Rivers which have intercourse with it, as the meanest Sailor at the present. The natural causes of the which seeming so full of difficulty to the bulk of the Ancients, Experience hath taught us to ascribe wholly to the *Moon*, at whose *Full* and *Prime* the *Tides* are ever highest, and the Sea most furious. For as soon as the *Moon* cometh forth from under our *Horizon*, the Sea beginneth to swell, and floweth towards the East, (as it were to wait upon her, or bear her company) till she come unto the height of our *Meridian*: after which till her setting or Western fall, the Sea abateth or decreaseth, which we call the *Ebb*. And when she passeth out of our *Horizon* towards the *Antipodes*, the *Ocean* begins to swell till the height of Midnight, and coming towards our *Hemisphere* doth again abate. In brief, from the *New Moon* till the first quarter the Sea decreaseth; from the first quarter to the *full* it is said to *spring*: from the *full* to the last quarter it is said to *nepe*, and from the last quarter to the *prime* it springs again. As for the uncertainty of the *Tides*, varying every day, it is not so perplexed and intricate, but that they which live on the Banks or Shores thereof know well when to look for it; the next days Tide coming for the most part, one hour ten minutes after the time it hapned on the day fore-going.

2. *Mare*, the *Sea*, is a part of the main *Ocean*, to which we cannot come but through some *Fretum*, or *Straight*; as *Mare Mediterræneum*. And it takes name, First, either from the adjacent shore, as *Mare Adriaticum*, from the City of *Adria*; *Mare Tyrrhenum*, from the Coast of *Tuscan*: Or, Secondly, from the first Discoverer, as *Mare Magellanicum*, from *Magellanus*, who first found it; Or, Thirdly, from some remarkable Accident, as *Mare Icarium*, from the drowning of *Icarus*, the son of *Dædalus*.

3. *Fretum*, a *Straight* is a part of the *Ocean*, penned within narrow bounds, and opening a way into some Sea, or out of some Sea into the *Ocean*, as the *Straight of Hellespont*, *Gibraltar*, *Fretum Davis*, &c.

4. *Sinus*, a *Creek* or *Bay*, is a Sea contained within a crooked or circling shore, wherewith it is almost environed; as *Sinus Persicus*, *Corinthiacus*, &c. and this is sometimes called a *Gulf*, as the *Gulf of Lepanto*.

5. *Lacus*, a *Lake*, is a great body or collection of waters, which hath no visible intercourse with the Sea, or influx into it; as the *Lake of Thyrasium* in *Italy*; the *Lacus Asphaltites*, or the *Dead Sea*, in the Land of *Canaan*. And of this kind properly is the *Mare Caspium*, though by reason of the greatness of it, it is called a *Sea*.

6. *Fluvius*, or *Fluxus*, is a Watercourse continually running, wherby it distinguisheth from *Stagnum*, or a standing Pool, issuing from some Spring or Lake, and emptying it self into some part of the Sea or some other great River; the mouth or out-let of which is called *Osium*. *Tiberis aque longe Osia*, as the Poet hath it. These are conceived in the Earth, and derive both their birth and continual subsistence from the Air; which, piercing the open cracks or *Chasms* of the Earth, and congealed by the stream cold of that Element, dissolves into water (as we see the Air in winter-nights to be melted into a

pearly dew, sticking on our glass windows;) and being grown to some quantity, will (like *Hannibal* in the *Alps*) either find a way, or make a way to vent its superfluity. Which beginning is seconded by the *Ocean*, which running through the hidden passages of the Earth, joineth it self with this aerial vapour, and continueth the begun current. This Sea-water (though in it self of a salt and brackish favour, yet passing through divers windings and turnings of the Earth, is deprived of all unpleasantness, and by how much the spring-heads of Rivers are remote from the Sea, by so much usually are their waters affected with a delightful relish. Rivers having thus entered themselves into a good course, are never without the assistance of neighbouring springs and waters; by whose addition they augment their streams, till they dischannel themselves into the Sea. Now there is of Rivers a treble use: First, that out of them Drink may be afforded to man and beast; Secondly, that running through the Earth, as blood through the body, by interlacing it, and sometimes overwhelming it, it might make the Earth able to produce those fruits which are necessary for the life of man. The last use of Rivers, is, easiness and speediness of conduct; and hereto are required four conditions: First the *depth*, because deep waters sustain the bigger burdens, and on them navigation is more safe. Secondly, *pleasantsness*, whereby the passage is easie both with the stream and against it: wheras in Rivers of a violent current or such as fall down by great *Locks* or *Cataracts*, the sailing or rowing up the waters is as dangerous as laborious. Thirdly, the *thickness* of the water; for by how much the more slimy and gross a water is, by so much can it carry the heavier burdens. So *Tiber*, a River of more fame than depth, or breadth, is better for navigation, by reason of its fitness, than the pure and thin waters of the large and excellent River *Nilus*. Fourthly, the *broadness* of the Channel, that Ships and other Vessels may conveniently wind and turn, and give way to exultation. Some of the old *Philosophers* reputed this conduct so dangerous that one of them being asked whether he thought the living or the dead were the greater number, would not declare himself, because he knew not in which rank to place such as were at Sea. And *Cato Major* thought that men never committed greater folly in their lives than in venturing to go by water, when they might have gone by land. I am none of that Sect, yet I cannot but hold with him that said, *Dulcissima est ambulatio prope aquas, navigatio juxta terram*.

The chief Rivers of Europe, are *Danubius*, and the *Rhene*; of Africa, *Nilus*, and *Niger*; of Asia, *Ganges*, and *Euphrates*; of America, *Oreoque*, and *Maraguan*. Of which and others, more in its proper place.

Thus have we gone over these particulars both of Earth and Water, which are considerable in Geography, and come within the compass of those *Annexaries* of each which *Plolomy* calleth τὰ ἀνναξάρια: And having so done, may discover where the difference lieth between Geography and Chorography; which to some men, not rightly looking into the nature of both, seem to be the same. For howsoever a *Chorographer* doth describe a Country by the bounds, Rivers, Hills, and most notable Cities; yet it is still but the description of some place or Country, and not of the whole Earth universally, which is the proper work of a *Geographer*. So that *Chorography* distinguisheth from *Geography* as a part from the whole: that being as *Plolomy* doth very handsomely express it, like the painting of an eye or an ear, or some other member; this, as the picturing of the head, or whole body of Man. But Geography in its full latitude comprehendeth not *Chorography* only, but *Topography* and *Hydrography* also.

Of these the last is the delineation of the Sea by its several Names, Ports, Promontories, Creeks, and other affections; as also of great Lakes and Rivers: which is most necessary for the use of *Mariners*, and is best done by *Petrus de Medius*, *Peter Nonnius* in his *Regula Artu Navi gaudi*, and *Johannes Aurigarius* in his *Speculum Nauticum*; the chief Writers in the Art of *Pilotage*.

2. *Topography* is the description of some particular place or City; of which kind was the Book of *Stephanus*, *πνεῦμα ὕψους*, or of *Urbibus*, among the Antients; and the *Theatrum Urbium* written by *Brutus* in these latter times; *Strabo* Book of the Survey of *London*, the *French Antiquities de Paris*, and such as these. And of this kind is the description of the Vale of *Tempe*, in the greater *Ortelius*; and those of the *Elysian* fields, the gardens of *Alicious*, and the *Hesperides* in the ancient Poets.

3. *Chorography* (as before was said) is the exact description of some Kingdom, Country, or particular Province of the same; unless this last may fall more properly under the notion of *Topography*. Of this kind the description of the several climes of *Greece* written by *Pausanias*, is of most use and reputation of all the Antients; as that of *Camden Clarendon*, for the Isle of *Britain*; of *Leuis Guicciardine*, for the *Low-Countries*; *Leander* for *Italy*, &c. are amongst the Modern.

4. *Geography*, finally is an aggregate of all these together, borrowing from *Hydrography* the description of Seas and Waters; from *Topography*, that of Towns, Cities, and particular places; and from *Chorography*, the delineations of Regions, Provinces and Kingdoms, which brought into body, make up that Portraiture or Picture of the whole Earth, and every considerable part thereof in writing; which, according to *Ptolomy's* definition before-mentioned, is properly and truly called *Geography*. In the advancement of which studies, those which have took most pains, with the greatest benefit to Posterity, are the said *Ptolomy*, *Pliny*, and *Strabo* for the elder times;

*Mercator*, *Mazinus*, and *Ortelius*, for the later Ages. Of which the two first lived in the times of *Antonius Pius*, the *Roman Emperor*, *An. Chr. 141*. or thereabouts; the other in the reign of *Tiberius Caesar*, the unworthy Successor of *Augustus*: the three last flourishing in the days of our Fathers, about some 80 years ago.

Thus have I briefly summed up those general *Præconia*, which I conceive are necessary to the knowledge and understanding as well of *History* as of *Geography*. Out of which two compounded and intermixt, ariseth that universal Comprehension of *Natural* and *Civil* story, which by a proper and distinct name may be termed *Cosmography*. And this may well be reckoned amongst mixed stories; for it hath from *Natural History* or *Geography*, the Regions themselves, together with their Sites, and several Commodities; from *Civil History*, Habitations, Governments, and Manners; and from the *Mathematick*, the *Climates* and Configurations of the Heavens, under which the Coasts and Quarters of the World do lie. Of the Utility and Excellency of which study I need say no more, than what hath been already spoken of the several parts, whereof this is only the Result, desiring pardon of the Reader, that I have Challenged these imperfect and unworthy Papers by so noble a name; which I desire they may deserve, though I fear they will not. However I will give the venture, and make as speedy and as profitable a discovery, as the times enable me, of the whole World, and the most observable things therein; according to the best light which the reading of *Histories* and *Geographical* discourses hath supplied me with; beseeching him who made the World, and ordereth all the Governments and Affairs thereof as to him seems best, to blefs me in the undertaking; and furnish me with fit Abilities both of strength and judgment to go through with it. *Iste enim est qui operatur in nobis & velle & perficere*; as the Scripture hath it: And so on in God's name.

COSMO.

# COSMOGRAPHY.

## The First Book,

CONTAINING THE

# CHOROGRAPHY

AND

# HISTORY

OF

ITALY, the ALPINE Provinces, FRANCE, SPAIN,  
and BRITAIN, with the ISLES thereof.

By PETER HEYLYN.

Florus in Proem. l. i.

Populus Romanus a Rege Romulo ad Cæsarem Augustum ita late per orbem terrarum arma circumtulit, ut qui res ejus legunt, non unius Populi, sed generis humani facta discant.

Velleius Patercul. Hist.

Quemadmodum Urbem Imperiorumque, ita & Gentium nunc floret fortuna, nunc senescit, nunc interit.



L O N D O N,

Printed by Andrew Clark, for Philip Cherwind and  
Anne Seile, MDCLXXVII.



# COSMOGRAPHY,

The First Book,  
Containing the CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY of *ITALY*,  
the *ALPINE* Provinces, *FRANCE*, *SPAIN*,  
and *BRITAIN*, with the ISLES thereof.

## OF THE WORLD: And First of EUROPE.



OF the Creation of the World by Almighty God, and the Plantation of the same by the Sons of Men, sufficient hath been spoken already. We are to look upon it now, as perfected and peopled in all parts thereof, but all those parts united into one *Compositum*; called therefore by the *Græcians*, *Tò Πᾶν*, and *Tὸ ὅλον*, because the *Summa Totalis*, and general comprehension of all things existent. In which respect 'tis called by the *Latins*, *Universum*, a native of multitude, but of a multitude united (*Universi qui in uno loco versantur*, say the old *Grammarians*.) The great body of the World, like the body of Man, though it have many parts and members, is but one body only. A body of so perfect and exact a form, of so complete a *Symmetry* in respect of the particular parts, and all those parts so beautified and adorned by the God of Nature; that from the elegancy and beauties of it, it was called *Kόσμος*: by the *Græcians*, and *Mundus* by the *Latins*, both names declaring the Composure of it to be full of Ornament; and all those Ornaments conducting Mankind to the knowledge of God. For (as the *Christian Advocate* reasoneth very strongly,) as he which comes into an house, and seeth all things in it ordered in a beautiful and comely order; *utrisque præesse crederet Dominum, &c.* must needs conceive, both that the house had some wife Lord and Master who had so contrived it, and that such Lord and Master of it was of more worth and excellency than the house and furniture: So (saith he) whosoever doth observe the most eminent beauties of the Heaven and Earth, must needs conceive there is some great and more glorious power who did first create it; disposing of all things therein in such excellent manner.

This Contemplation, together with the notions of a Deity, which naturally are ingrafted in the soul of man; hath trained up all men in the practice of some Religion, though few (comparatively) so happy as to be practised in the true. For though the knowledge and worship of the true God, by reason of some accussions in *America*, and the *Indies*, be more generally diffused than in former times; yet is the least part of the World possessed by them who make profession of that Worship. For dividing

the whole World into thirty parts, it hath been found by such as have laboured in this search, that nineteen of them are inhabited by *Idolaters*, who either know no God at all, or worship stocks and stones for gods, even the work of mens hands. Of the 11 parts which are remaining, six are possessed by *Jews*, *Turks*, and *Saracens*; who though they have the knowledge of the God that made them, yet abnegating, or not worshipping the Lord that brought them, they have no part or portion in the true Religion. Then for the five which are behind, two are conceived to be of the *Greek* Communion, the other three being divided betwixt those of the Church of *Rome*, and such as otherwise differing in some opinions, pass generally by the name of *Protestant* or Reformed Churches. Which as it sheweth how small a portion of the World is possessed by *Christians*, who only (though not all of them) have reason to pretend to the true Religion: So doth it shew (I note this only by the way) how fallily those of *Rome* make multitude of Professors to be a sign of the True Church; as correspond unto that sign. Faulty, alike both in the *Position* and the *Application*. For if the multitude of Professors be a sign of the Church, the true Church should be found rather amongst the *Heathens* or *Mahumetans*, than amongst the *Christians*: or if they do restrain their meaning (as I hope they do) to those who make profession of the *Christian* faith: those of the *Greek* Communion, possessing two whole parts of five, will be found more numerous than the members of the Church of *Rome*, though possibly of less esteem in the eye of the World. So infinitely vain was that brag of *Bellarmino* (though otherwise more modest than the rest of the  *Jesuits*) affirming positively and expressly, *Romanam Ecclesiam universum plane orbem possidere, &c.* That the Church of *Rome* is fully of as large a latitude as the World it self. This I have noted by the way, intending to take a more special notice of the state of Religion in the several Provinces of the World, to which now I hasten; permitting first this scheme of those several parts, into which it doth now stand divided.

The World is divided into two parts; unknown, or not fully discovered; and is divided commonly into *Borealis* and *Australis*: the last taking up the *Southern* Continent; the other lying on the *North* of *Europe* and *America*; whereof we shall say somewhat at the end of this Work.

Known, either { *Europe*.  
Anciently, as { *Asia*.  
                    { *Africa*.  
                    { Late, as *America*.

*Europe* is joyned to *Asia*, by that space of Earth which is between the heads of *Tanis* and *India*; *Asia* is joyned to *Africa*, by the Egyptian *Silima*; *India* is divided (as most conjecture from all of them. *Europe* is separated from *Asia*, by a line drawn from the Bay of *St. Nicolas*, to the head of *Tanis*, from thence by that River it self all the length of his course; then by *Palus Meotis*, the *Euasine* Sea, the *Thracian Bosphorus*, the *Propontis*, the *Hellspont*, and the *Egeean*. *Asia* is parted from *Africa* by the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*; and *Africa* from *Europe* by the *Mediterranean*. *Africa* is greater than *Europe*, *Asia* than *Africa*, *America* than *Asia*.

They which have entertained a fancy of resembling every Country to things more obvious to the sight and understanding, have likened *Europe* to a *Dragon*; the head of which they make to be *Spain*; the two wings *Italy* and *Denmark*. In like manner they have been curiously impudent, in resembling *France* to a *Lozenge* or *Rhomboides*; *Belgium* to a *Lion*; *Britain* to an *Ax*; *Ireland* to an Egg; *Peloponnesus* to a *Plantane* leaf; *Spain* to an Ox-hide spread on the ground; *Italy* (which indeed holdeth best proportion) to a mans Leg; with divers the like *Phantasies* of a capricious brain; these Countries no more resembling them, than pictures made when painting was in her infancy, under which they were fain to write, *This is a Lion*, and *this is a Whale*, for fear the spectators might have taken one for a Cock, and the other for a Cat.

*EUROPE*, though the least (as being in length but 2800, in breadth but 1200 miles) is yet of most renown amongst us. First, because of the temperate of the Air, and fertility of the soyl; Secondly, from the study of *Arts*, both ingenious and mechanical; Thirdly, because of the *Roman* and *Greek* Monarchies; Fourthly, from the purity and sincerity of the *Christian* Faith; Fifthly, because we dwell in it, and so first place it.

*EUROPE* is generally said to be called from *Europa*, the daughter of *Agenor*, King of the *Phœnicians*, brought thence by *Jupiter* (as the Poets feign) in the shape of a *Bull*; or as some Histories say, by a *Cretan* Captain named *Taurus*: as others in a ship whose back had the portraiture of a *Bull* upon it. But why the bringing of that Lady into the Isle of *Crete*, should give denomination to the whole Continent of *Europe*, whereof that Island is so inconsiderable, and so small a part. I must confesse I see no reason. *Georgius Beccanus*, who holds the High *Dutch* to be primitive language, which was spoke in *Paradise*, and loves to fetch all names from thence, not thinking it convenient, that *Europe* being first inhabited by *Gomerians* or *Cimbrians*, should be beholding to the *Grecians* for its name; will have it called *Europa*, quasi *Ver-hop*, by the transposition of the two last letters; *Ver* signifying excellent, and *hop* a multitude (whence we use to say, as *much*, as *hop*) because *Europe* contains a multitude of excellent people. And on the other side, *Eu-bar-barus*, a French Writer, loving as much to bring all names from the *Phœnician* or *Punic* tongue, will have it cal-

led *Europe* from *Ur-appa*, which signifieth in that language, a beautiful Countenance, because the *Europeans* much excell'd the *Africans* in whiteness of skin, and clearness of complexion. But in my mind *Herodotus* hath best determined of the controversy, who telleth us plainly, *Οὐκ οἶδεν τὸ εὐρωπαϊκόν, ἑστὶν οὐκ ὀνόμαζεν*, &c. That it is utterly unknown, both whence it had the name of *Europe*, and who first called it so. And yet considering there is a Province in *Thrace* called *Europe*, (whereof most heretofore) why might not the *Africans* give the name of *Europe* to this part of the World, according to the name of that Province which lay nearest to them? as the *Romans* did the name of *Africa* to the other part of the World, after the name of that particular Province or part thereof, which they first brought under their obedience? Or as the *Europeans* gave the name of *Asia*, to the greatest of the three known parts of the World; which properly and originally belonged unto *Asia Minor* (as it since was called;) or rather to those parts thereof which lay next to *Greece*; as shall be shewn hereafter in convenient place.

The first inhabitants of *Europe*, as hath been shewn in part already, and shall be shewn more fully in its proper place, were the Sons of *Japhet*; amongst whom, as the Scripture telleth us, *The Isles of the Gentiles were divided*, Gen. 10. 5. which includes all the Continent of *Europe*, and the Isles adjoining. For besides, that it is compassed about with the *Cyclades* and other Isles in the Seas of *Greece*, together with the Isles of *Candy*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Corsica*, the Isles of *Britain* and *Zealand*, with their young ones adjacent; *Europe* it self was formerly taken for an Island; as being invironed round with water, saving where it is joyned on the North-East to *Asia* the great, which very few of the Antients were acquainted with. And what are the great Countries of *Anatolia*, *Greece*, *Spain*, and *Italy*, all which did fall to the posterity of *Japhet*, but to many *Peninsulæ*, or *Peninsulæ*, invironed almost round with one Sea or other? Nor was the name and memory of *Japhet* so much forgotten by the Children which descended of him; but that the *Greeks*, who were the first of their *European* Plantations, retained it a long time in their *Japhetic*, whom they make to be the son of *Calm* and *Terra*, and the father of the wife *Promethius*, whom *Ovid* therefore calleth *Janus Iapetus*, in the first Book of his *Metamorphosis*. So that we see how punctually the first part of Gods blessing was fulfilled upon him; which was, that he would enlarge the borders of *Japhet*, Gen. 9. 27. The second part thereof, that he should dwell in the *Tents of Sem*, though it was long before it came to the accomplishment, yet it came at last; and that both in the literal and mystical sense. First, in the literal, when the posterity of *Japhet*, both *Greek* and *Romans*, made themselves Masters of *Judea*, or the Land of *Canaan*, and the Eastern parts, promised to, and possessed by, the seed of *Sem*: Next in the mystical, when God was pleased to break down the partition-wall, and to incorporate the *Gentiles* of the house of *Japhet*, into the body of the Church: which for a long time was restrained to the Line of *Sem*.

*Europe* may be considered as it stands divided into the Continent, and the *Islands*: the Continent lying all together; the *Islands* as they are dispersed in the *Greek*, *Egean*, *Cretan* and *Ionian* Seas, the *Adriatic* and the *Mediterranean*, and in the *British* and *Northern* Ocean. But in this work we shall discover them, and discourse of them in this following order, dividing *Europe* into 1. *Italy*, 2. the *Alps*, 3. *France*, 4. *Spain*, 5. *Britain*, 6. *Belgium*, 7. *Germany*, 8. *Denmark*, 9. *Switzerland*, 10. *Russia*, 11. *Poland*, 12. *Hungary*, 13. *Scalonia*, 14. *Dacia*, and 15. *Greece*; and speak of the several *Islands*, as they relate to some or other of these greater Countries.

In all which Countries and Islands belonging to them, besides the *Latine* Tongue which is now rather *Scholastic*, than *National*, and besides the *Italian*, *French*, and *Spanish*, being but so many corruptions of the *Latine*; and besides the *English* which is a Compound of *Dutch*, *Latine*, and *French*; there are in all fourteen Mother Tongues, which owe nothing at all to the *Roman*; that is to say, 1. *Irish*, spoken in *Ireland*, and the West of *Scotland*; 2. *British*, or *Welsh*, in *Wales*, and some parts of *Cornwall*; 3. *Cantabrian*, or *Basquish*, in *Biscay*, about the *Pyrenean* Hills, and near to the *Cantabrian* Ocean; 4. *Arabick*, in the Mountains of *Granada*, called *Alpujarras*; 5. *Finnick*, in *Finland* and *Lapland*, Provinces of the Crown of *Sweden*; 6. *Dutch*, (though with different Dialects) in *Germany*, *Belgium*, *Denmark*, *Norway*, *Switzerland*, 7. *Caucasian*, which the *East-Frislanders* (or *Caucasians*) speak amongst themselves, though to strangers they speak the Common *Dutch*; 8. *Slavonick*, in *Slavonia*,

*Poland*, *Hungary*, and almost all the parts of the *Turkish* Empire; 9. *Illyrian*, on the East side of *Syria*, and the Isle of *Veggie*; 10. *Greek*, in most Provinces and Isles of *Greece*, by the *Greeks* themselves; 11. *Hungarian*, and 12. *Epiratike* in the mountainous places of those Countries; 13. *Jazygian*, on the North-side of *Hungary*, betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiscus*, and 14. *Tartarian*, in the *Taurica Cherfonesus*, and other *European* parts of that barbarous people. And this shall serve for *Europe* in the general notion. Descend me now to the particular Kingdoms, Regions, and Islands of it; beginning first of all with *Italy*, contrary to the usage of most Geographers; who commonly begin with *Spain* or *Ireland*, as being the firstest Countries Westward, and consequently nearest to the first Meridian, from whence the Longitude was reckoned. Which we shall do by reason of that great influence which the *Romans* had in most parts of *Europe*, and many parts of the World besides, in matters as well *Civil* and *Ecclesiastical*, which much depended on the power of that Empire, formerly, and on the usurpations of that Church in the later days.



porary with *Scipio Africanus*, passed not above 300 years. That the *Latin* tongue was afterwards at any time spoken generally in all parts of the *Roman* Empire, or of *Italy* itself, as I see some hold, I can by no means be persuaded; it being by special favour granted to the *Cumans*, dwelling but an hundred miles from the Walls of *Rome*, that they should use the *Roman* Language: which had been a meer mockery, and no mark of favour at all, if the *Italian* people dwelling out of *Latium* had used it formerly. And yet this happened not above 140 years before the times of the Emperors, at what time the *Romans* were Lords of *Italy*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Cosica*, and a great part of *Spain*. It's true, the *Latin* tongue in succeeding times came to be understood in most parts of *Italy*, by reason of the *Roman* Colonies which were planted among them (being in all no fewer than 150) and their continual resort to *Rome* on their several businesses: it being a great point of the *Roman* State, not only to have their Laws written, and judgment pronounced by the *Pretors* for the several Provinces, in the *Latin* only: but to give audience in the open Senate to none who came thither from the subject Nations, save only in the *Latin* tongue, their own proper language. Yet for all this, it never grew to such extent as to be the Language of the whole Empire, no more of *Italy* it self, no more than the *English* tongue is natural or national to the *Welsh*, or *Irish*, though it be generally understood (for the very same reasons) by all of the better sort both in *Wales* and *Ireland*. In which regard I am not of their opinion, who think that the *Italian* (as the *French* and *Spanish*) are nothing but corruptions of the *Latin* tongues, occasioned by the inundations of the barbarous Nations: But rather that the *Latin* words which occur therein, proceeded from that weak impression which the *Latin* tongue had made amongst them, whilst they were under the obedience of that puissant Empire; and that the *Italian* tongue, as it is now spoken, could not receive so great a change from the Barbarous Nations, none of which tarried long amongst them, but the *Goths*, and *Lombards*; nor they so long (the *Lombards* not at all in the Eastern parts) as to be either the occasions or authors of the alteration. So that the present Language of *Italy* is a decompound, made up especially of *Latin* and the old *Italian*: some notions of the *Lombard* being mixt with it in the *North*, and *Welf*, some of the *Goths*, in the middle, about *Rome* it self, and not a little of the *Greek*, in the East of *Naples*.

And as the Language to the Religion of the Country, hath received some change. The *Christian* Faith was first preached in *Rome* it self, and in *Rome* first preached by Saint *Peter*, who came thither in or about the beginning of the Empire of *Claudius*. The two Apostles *Peter* and *Paul*, are generally said by the ancient Writers, to be the first who preached the Gospel in that City. *A double* *Apollis* *Petro & Paulo Rome fundata & constituta* *est Ecclesia*, faith the old Father *Irenaeus*, Lib. 4. Cap. 3. To one of these, the first preaching of the Gospel there is to be referred; both being Bishops of that City: That is to say, *St. Peter* of the Churches of the *Circumcission*; *St. Paul* of those which consisted specially of the *Gentiles*. Now that the Gospel was preached there before *Paul*'s coming, is evident by his Epistle written to the *Romans*, at *Cenchrea* the Port-Town of *Corinth*, six years at least before his being brought to *Rome*; in which he testified that their Faith was famous over all the World; and therefore could not count him who had never been there, for the planter of it: And as *St. Peter* was the first Preacher of the Gospel at *Rome*, so sent he his Disciples to promulgate it in most parts of *Italy*. The *Roman Martyrologist* reckon up eight Bishops of *St. Peter*'s ma-

king, for so many of the principal Cities of this Country: that is to say, *Ephraïmus* (not he whom *St. Paul* speaks of in his Epistle to the *Philippians*) for *Terracina*, of which called *Anagnin*, *Hernagora* for *Aquila*, *Paulinus* for *Lucca*, *Apollinaris* for *Ravenna*, *Marcus* for *Atina*, *Proculus* for *Padua*, *Marcianus* for *Syracuse*, and *Pancratius* for *Taurinonium* in the Isle of *Sicily*. But whether *St. Peter* planted it, or *St. Paul* watered it, certain I am that *GOD* only gave it the increase. It could not else have prospered under such a Tyranny, as many, if not most of the *Roman* Emperors did earnestly endeavor to suppress it with. But *Sanguis Martyrum* (saith *Ecclesiæ*) the watering of it with the blood of so many *Martyrs*, made it grow the faster. And this small grain of Mustard waxed so great a Tree, as over-shadowed all the Provinces of that mighty Empire; and did not only stand it out against all Tempests, but in conclusion did suppress that Superstition and Idolatry, for whose sake all those Princes, till the time of *Constantine*, did more or less, labour to destroy it. How much it had reduced since those times from its primitive purity, and how it did degenerate into Worldly pomp, and Secular policy, by the design and arts of those who boasted themselves to be Successors of that great Apostle, shall be a little touched at, in the story of the *Roman Papacy*. Suffice it in this place to say, that all the people of this Country, partly in reference to the Pope, partly for fear of the *Inquisition*, and partly by being kept in ignorance of the *Protestant* Doctrine (of which they are taught to believe many monstrous things) are all of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*.

But though the Fountains of the waters of Eternal life, have either been stopped or else corrupted by the Popes of *Rome*; the Rivers which do water this most flourishing Garden, still preserve their beds, and run unimpeded and uncorrupted in the same Channels, as before they did. And of these *Italy* hath as many as any one Country; but none of any long course, by reason that all parts of it are so near some Seas; most of which rising from the *Alps*, or the *Apennine* Hills, by melting of the Snows in Winter and casualty of Land-floods at other times of the year, do often overflow the Country, and for the most part leave an ill Air behind them. Those of chief note are, 1. The River *Po* or *Padus* (the *Greeks* call it *Eridanus*) into which *Phaeton* is said to have been drenched when he fell from Heaven. It ariseth in the *Alps*, runneth through *Lombardy*, which it divideth into *Cisadrianum* and *Transpadanum*; and having taken in thirty lesser streams, falls with seven mouths into the *Adriatick* Sea not far from *Venice*. 2. *Robur*, now called *Pisatello*, anciently the North-bound of *Italy*. *His fons* *quondam Italiae fons*, as it is in *Pliny*. It runneth into the *Adriatick* Sea not far from *Rimini*, or *Ariminum*, now the Port-town to *Ravenna*, the Haven of *Ravenna* being long since choked; but of this River more in another place. 3. *Arno*, which rising in the *Apennine* falletteth in to the *Tuscan* Sea, and anciently divided *Italy* on that side from the *Cisalpine Galls*: on the banks hereof standeth the fair City of *Florence*. 4. *Ticino*, which gave name to the City of *Pavia* called of old *Ticinum*; it riseth in the *Alps*, and emptieth it self into the Lake called *Lacus Verbanus*. 5. *Livis* now called *Garigliis*, stained with the blood of *French* and *Spaniards*, in their quarrels for the Realm of *Naples*, and no less unfortunately memorable for the drowning of *Peter de Medicis*. 6. *Caique* fuit rerum promissa potentis, *Tibris*.

And *Tiber*, unto which was given  
The power of all things under Heaven.

It riseth from the *Apennine* Hills, not far from *Arretium* (now *Arezzo*) a Town of *Tuscan* (which it parted from the *Roman Latium*, and the Land of the *Sabines*) and gliding gently near *Citta di Castello*, *Perugia*, and the old *Oriculum*, passeth by *Rome*, and falletteth into the *Tuscan* or lower *Sea*, at *Ostia*. Here is also, 7. The Lake of *Thrasymene*, near which *Annibal* defeated *Flaminius* the Consul and his whole Army, opening thereby his passage to the gates of *Rome*; and 8. The famous River of *Mæturnus*, where the *Romans* overcame *Asdrubal* the Brother of *Annibal*, and thereby made a way to the ruin of *Carthage*. Others of less note shall be mentioned in their proper places.

As for the Mountains of this Country, those of most note are the *Alps*, and the *Apennines*, of which the residue in a manner are but spurs and branches. Of these the *Alps* being also appertaining to *France* and *Germany*, or rather containing many large and entire Provinces which belong to neither, deserve a Treatise by it self. The *Apennines*, being proper only to this Country, but so that it relates to many and particular Provinces of it, shall be spoken of here. A ledge of Hills which take beginning near *Savona*, a Town of the Commonwealth and Country of *Genoa*, situate on the *Mediterranean*, and fetching a little compass Northwards, extend to the further part of *Italy*, dividing it almost in the very middle: that part thereof which lieth towards the *Tyrrhenian*, or *Tuscan* Sea, being called *Cisapennina*; *Transapennina*, that which lieth towards the *Adriatick*. Passing in one entire body as far as *Apollis*, a Town of *Mare Anconitana* (a Province belonging to the Pope) where they are at the highest; it is there parted into two horns or branches, whereto one runs out to the mount of *Gargano*, and so unto the Land of *Oranto*; the other spreadeth it self as far as *Calabria*, those being the most Eastern Provinces of this noble Continent. Called the *Apennine* as some say, *a Penna*, by which word the *Latins* used to signify the top or summit of an Hill, by reason of the height and sharp points thereof; as others say, *quasi Alpes Peninae*, because first overcome by *Annibal* and his *Carthaginians*, who the *Roman* Writers did by the name of *Penni*. The Inhabitants hereof by *Virgil* named *Apenusiaci*. But otherwise reducible to some of the neighbouring Provinces. Of this large Mountain most of the Hills of *Italy* from *Savona* Eastwards, are but the excursions; which being of less note, shall be spoken of as they be before us in the way.

To proceed now to so much of the History of *Italy*, as concerns the general; we are to know that the first Inhabitants of it (not to say any thing of the fictions of *Eriæ* *Annus* under the name of *Berosus*, who will needs have *Nash* himself come hither shortly after the Flood) were doubtless of the race of *Cittim* or *Kittim* the fourth son of *Javan*, one of the sons of *Japhet*. Who being planted by their Father in that part of *Greece*, which was since called *Macedon*, and after spreading themselves further as their numbers increased, peopled *Etolia* and the Countries adjoining to it: From whence, detestous of a warmer and more fertile Soil, they came in tract of time to the Coasts of *Dalmatia*, and thence to this Country since called *Italy*. That they did spring originally from the seed of *Cittim* (or *Kittim*), as the *Greek* pronunciation it wants not very good Authors. For thus *Eusebius*, *Kittim* *ἔστιν Ἀρχαῖος* *ἢ Πρωτογενής*, that is to say, him the *Kittians*, or children of *Kittim*, descended the *Latins* and the *Romans*. The fame occurs also in the *Chronicon* of *Alexandria*. So also faith *Cædrenus* in his *Analeis*, but with more punctuality. *Telephus* (saith he) the son of *Hercules*, reigned in *Italy*, and after him his son *Ionius*, *ἢ Τῆς Κιττίας*; *ἢ Ἀρχαῖος* *ἢ Πρωτογενής*, from whom the *Kittians*

were named *Latins*. The same in other words faith *Suidas*. Nor want there some remainders of this name in approved Writers; besides these authorities; there being a Town in *Latium* called *Ketea*, mentioned in *Dionysius Halicarnassius*, and a River named *Ketes* not far from *Cume*, wherof *Aristotle* speaketh in his book de *Mirabilibus*. And that they came immediately from the *Adriatics*, belideth the other Arguments which *Reinsceus* utteth in this point, the names, or identity rather of the names doth seem to intimate. For *Etolia* being written in the *Greek* *Italia*, and the letter *O* being changed into *A* according to the *Adriack* Dialect, which was that used by the *Etolians*; the alteration of the name from *Adriatic* and *Adriatics*, to *Italia* and *Italians*, will be thought very easy, if not natural; the rather in regard there is an Island near *Italy*, in the *Tuscan* Sea, peopled originally by these very *Etolians*, which in ancient times was called *Etholia*. And it by such an easy alteration of one Letter only, *Italy* may derive its first plantation from the *Etolians*, as no doubt it may; then may that *Italus*, the Chieftain of whom *Virgil* speaks, be no other than *Attilus*, some man of principal mark and eminency, amongst that People, who had the Conduct of this Colony, when they came for *Italy*. And this I should believe much rather, than that this *Italus* was the name of a King of *Sicily*: it being more probable that *Sicily* should borrow its first Planters out of *Italy*, than *Italy* should borrow either Name or People from so small a Kingdom; especially considering that the name of *Attilus* was famous in those parts of *Greece*, ever since *Attilus* the son of a King of *Etolis* was Founder of the *Etolian* Kingdom. The way thus shewn, and the passages into *Italy* laid open, it was not long before the *Pelasgi*, another *Greek* Nation, found the way into it: after whom *Saturn* out of *Crete*, and *Evander* out of *Arcadia*, with their several followers, came and settled there. Not to say any thing of those several Colonies, which coming out of *Peloponnesus*, and the parts of *Achaia*, planted themselves so thick in the East of *Italy*, now called *Calabria*, that of long time it had the name of *Magna Græcia*. So that the *Græcians* made the main grove or body of the *Italy* people: to which the coming of some *Tuscan* under the conduct of *Tyrrhenus* a Prince of *Lydia*, in *Asia minor*, served but as an Accessory, and altered nothing of the Principal. The last that settled here, were some of the Relicks of *Troy*, under the conduct of *Æneas*: who flying from their Native Country, and enraged Enemies, were first cast upon the Coasts of *Africk*, where having laid a while to refresh his Companies (we shall hereafter take an occasion to consider of the Fable of his loves with *Dido*) he let fall for *Italy*, being the place assigned him by the Gods for his Seat and Empire, whither he came with fifteen Ships, which might contain, according to the rate which *Ulyssides* alloweth to the Vessels then used, to the number of 1200 men. And there he landed, as it proved in an happy hour: For he was no sooner arrived, but he was lovingly cherished and entertained by *Latinus* King of the *Latins*, or of *Latium*'s whole chief City or Seat-Royal was then called *Laurentum*; which much relieving of this Stranger, as a man whole time had been his Harbinger, thought he could neither manifest his love sufficiently, nor bind him fast enough unto him, but by betrothing him unto *Lavinia*, his only daughter. Hence grew the Wars betwixt *Æneas*, and *Turan* King of the *Rutuli*, a former Suiter, which being ended in the death of the *Rutuli* in *Rival*, confirmed *Æneas* and his *Trojans* in a sure possession. For now growing with the *Latins*, or *Laurentians*, into a more constant bond of Friendship, by many inter-marriages and mutual kindneses, they built the



Town of *Lavinium*, called so in honour of their Queen, intending it for the Seat-Royal of the Princes of the *Trojan* line. But long it did not hold that state. For *Aeneas* the son of *Jeneas* by his former Wife, to avoid all occasions of contention with his Mother-in-Law, left her (*Jeneas* being dead) in possession of *Lavinium*, and built *Lunga Alba*, which being surrendered by *Julius* the son of *Africanus* to his half brother *Sylvius*, became the constant habitation of the *Sylvian* Kings, till the building of *Rome*, and final ending of the race of the *Sylvian* Kings, the names of whom (for there occurs little of their doings) we are next to these; taking along with us those few Kings which reigned in those parts of *Italy*, before the coming of *Aeneas*.

*A. M.* The Kings of *Italy* of the *Aboriginis*.

2637 1 *Janus*, the first King of the *Aboriginis*, who lived in the same time with *Boaz* and *Ruth*. He received *Saturn* flying out of *Greece* from *Jupiter*, and left him his Kingdom at his death. He is said to be the Founder of the City of *Genoa*, and to have given name to the Hill in *Rome* called *Janiculum*, on which it was supposed that he had his dwelling.

2 *Saturn*, who taught the people the use of dunging of their Lands, and for that cause was honoured by them as a God, under the name of *Stercoris*, as *St. Austine* hath it. He reigned first together with *Janus*, and afterwards by himself alone: the whole time of both their reigns was 33 years.

2670 3 *Picus*, well skilled in divination by the flight and chattering of Birds, and therefore feigned by the Poets to be turned into a Pye. He entertained *Evander* and his *Arcadians*, giving them the Hill (called after *Aventine*) to build upon. 37.

2707 4 *Faunus*, the son of *Picus*, and the Husband of *Fatua*, in whose time *Hercules* came into *Italy*, vanquished the Giants of *Cremona*, and killed the Giant *Cacus*, who had fled from him out of *Spain*. 44.

2751 5 *Latinius*, the son of *Faunus*, who entertained *Aeneas* coming from the Wars and destruction of *Troy*, and gave him his daughter *Lavinia* to wife, with his Kingdom after him in *Dower*. 36.

2787 6 *Lavinia*, daughter to *Latinius*, and Queen of the *Latins* married to *Aeneas* whom she outlived, he being slain in his Wars against *Meczentius*, the King of *Tuscany*, the son or successor of that *Meczentius* (an ungodly Tyrant) whom *Aeneas* had before slain in his War with *Turnus* and the *Latins*. 7.

*A. M.* Kings of the *Latins* of the *Trojan* or *Sylvian* Race. 2787 1 *Aeneas* the son of *Anchises*, and Husband of *Lavinia*, slain in his Wars against *Meczentius* King of the *Tuscans* or *Hetrurians*, as before is said. 3.

2790 2 *Africanus*, the son of *Aeneas* by *Cressa* his former wife: for fear of whom, *Lavinia* being great with child, fled into a Wood, and was there delivered of a son called *Silvius*. He removed the Seat Royal from *Lavinium* to *Lunga Alba*, a City of his own building. 38.

2828 3 *Sylvius Posthumus*, the son of *Aeneas* by *Lavinia*, preferred to the Kingdom by the love of the people, before *Julius* the son of *Africanus* (the Founder of the *Julian* Family) from whom all the Kings of this race had the name of *Sylvius*; *Julius* being honored with the title

Priesthood (an Office next in dignity to that of the King) which he translated afterwards unto his Posterity. 29.

2857 4 *Aeneas Sylvius*, 31.

2888 5 *Latinius Sylvius*, 30.

2938 6 *Alba Sylvius*, so called because of his beautifying and repairing the City *Alba*, then in some decay: or probably, because there he had his birth. 39.

2977 7 *Capetus Sylvius*, 22.

3001 8 *Capys Sylvius*, said to be the Founder of the City of *Capua*; which shews that he extended his dominion farther than the Province of *Latium*. 28.

3029 9 *Capetus Sylvius*, 13.

3024 10 *Tiberinus Sylvius*, from whom the River *Tiber* derives that name, being formerly called *Albulas*. 8.

3050 11 *Agrippa Sylvius*, 40.

3090 12 *Alladius Sylvius*, who to make himself the more terrible to his Subjects, studied a way to imitate the Thunder's but was killed at last by a real Thunder-clap from Heaven. 19.

3109 13 *Aventinus Sylvius*, who gave the name to the Hill *Aventine*. 37.

3146 14 *Procas Sylvius*, 23.

3169 15 *Amulius Sylvius*, the younger son of *Procas*, setting aside his Brother *Numitor*, obtained the Kingdom for himself; slain at last by *Romulus*, and *Numitor* settled in the Throne. 42.

3211 16 *Numitor*, the 21 King from *Janus*, and the last King of the *Latins*, restored by *Romulus* to the Throne; and after the short reign of one year only, deprived by him both of life and Kingdom. After whose death the *Latins*, or *Albans*, had no more Kings, but kept themselves as a Free Estate till subdued to *Rome*. 1.

Concerning this it is to be understood, that *Amulius* having chased his eldest Brother *Numitor* out of the Country, and possessed himself of the Throne, caused his Brothers daughter *Rhea* (for preventing an issue by her) to be shut up in the Temple of *Vesta*. Where the proving the mother of two sons, was according to the Law but quick, and her children by the cruel Tyrant cast out to be devoured of wild beasts. They were found by *Faustulus* the Kings Shepherd, nursed by his Wife, for her infamous life called *Lupa* (whence came the Fable, that they were suckled by a Wolf) and being grown to manhood, fled the Tyrant *Amulius*, placing their Grandfather *Numitor*, in the Royal Throne; whom not long after they deprived both of life and Kingdom. Of these the eldest was named *Romulus*, and the younger *Rhemus*, who leaving *Alba* to the short possession of their Grandfather *Numitor*, laid the foundation of the most famous City of *Rome*; which *Romulus* first handled with the blood of his Brother *Rhemus*, who had disdainfully leapt over the Walls of his new City. This City he made an *Asylum* or place of Refuge for all comers, of what desperate estate soever, and having ranked them into order, made himself their King. A people of so base a nature, that their neighbours refused to give them any of their daughters in marriage: So they were destitute of wives, and consequently not like to continue a people long; till on a Proclamation made of some Plays and Pastimes, many of the *Sabine* women flocked thither to behold the sports, whom the *Romans* seized on, and forced an unwilling consent from them, to become their Wives. From such a base and low beginning did this City rise to be the Empress of the World.

The

The Kings of *Rome*.

*A. M.*

3213 1 *Romulus*, the Founder of *Rome*; he made peace with *Tatius* King of the *Sabinis*, coming against him to revenge the ravishment of their Women; incorporating him and his into his new City, and by that means adding thereto a fair and goodly Territory. 37.

3251 2 *Numa*, the first Author of the *Roman* Ceremonies. 43.

3294 3 *Tullus Hostilius*, who enlarged the borders of *Rome* by the Conquest of *Alba*, the mother City of the *Latins*, and vanquished the *Fidenates*. 32.

3326 4 *Anus Marcius*, who built *Osia* on the mouth of *Tiber*, to be an Haven to the City. 24.

3350 5 *Tarquinius Priscus*, who subdued many of the *Trojan* Nations, increased the number of the Tribes and Senators, and added the triumphal Ornaments. 38.

3388 6 *Servius Tullus*, who first caused the people to be enrolled, and brought into use. 44.

3432 7 *Tarquinius Superbus*, son to the former *Tarquinius*. He vanquished the *Gabii*, and took the Towns of *Ardea*, *Ostium*, and *Suessa Pometia*: but for his own insolent behaviour, and a Rape committed on *Lucretia* the Wife of *Collatin* by his son *Seamus*, he and his whole race were driven out of the Town, *Ann. Mundi*. 3457. *V.C.* 268.

After this, the *Romans* loathing the name of King, chose two Officers to be chosen out of the *Patricii*, or chief Citizens, to whom they gave the name of *Consuls*, *ad consulenda*, from counselling of, and consulting the good of the Commonwealth, *ut consules se suis civibus meminissent*, faith the Historian, their name being a *Memoria* of their charge or duty. And in this Office they resolved to have always two, and those but only for a year, *Ne vel solitudine vel mora potestas corrupteretur*. And though some had the fortune to be *Consuls* two or three years together, yet every new year they were anew chosen, and to their Offices reckoned as several: neither do we find any to have been elected for less than a year, unless upon the death or deposition of a former, until the Civil Wars. But then, *cum belli civilis premia sollicitari caperent*, when theyelves done in the Civil Wars required a quicker turn in requital, the *Consulship* was given only for some part of the year, and ordinarily for two Months: the first *Consuls* being named *Ordinarii* in whose names the writings for the whole year were dated: the other *Minores*, or *Honorary*, which only served to make up a number. For so ambitious were the *Romans* of this honour, that when *Maximus* died in the last day of his *Consulship*, *Cornelius Rebilus* petitioned *Cesar*, for that part of the day that remained: whence that to memorate *Justi* of *Tully*, *O vigilante Consulem, qui tot consulatus suis tempore summum oculis non vidit!* And when *Cicero* was by the Senate degraded from this honour on the day in which he was to have resigned it, one *Publius Reginus* obtained the Office from *Vitellius* for the day remaining: but as the Historian notes, *magna cum irrisu accipiente, relictisq.* Now as the *Romans* did thus exceed the first number of *Consuls*, so sometimes fell they short of it. The first that was sole *Consul* was *Pompey* in the beginning of the Civil Wars, *viz. A.D.C.* 403. The next, one *Varenus D.C.* 410. This Office, from the first Institution to the final period of it, continued at the least in name (for the Emperors had of long time assumed the

Power and Prerogative appertaining to it) the space of 1084 years though not without many intermissions of the name and Title, by the several interplings of the *Decemviri*, the *Dictators*, and the *Consular Tribunes*; of which more anon. The last *Consul* was one *Basilus*, in the time of *Justinian*, *A.C.* 542. The two first *Callistinus* the husband of *Lucretia*, and *Junius Brutus*, by whose indignation the people had took Arms against the house of the *Tarquins*. A man so zealous in defence of the common liberty, so resolutely bent to make good what he had begun, and so extremely opposite to the Royal Race, that he not only caused *Callistinus* to resign his Office with the year, because he was of the blood of the *Tarquins*, but executed his own laws for holding corrupt Conduces & intelligence with them. But though the Government were changed, the old design was followed, which the Kings had laid for the enlarging of their Empire; but followed with so slow a pace, by reason of their factions and divisions, that it was full 900 years before they could be Masters of *Italy*. A matter not unworthy of our consideration, that the *Italians* should hold out so long a time against the puissance of the *Romans*; when in less than half that time ensuing, they did possess themselves of almost all *Europe*, and many goodly Kingdoms and Provinces both in *Asia* and *Africa*: So difficult a thing it was (as is said by *Florus*) *dare caput Italiae*, to contract the many limbs of *Italy* into one body, and unite them under one head.

But to proceed, after *Italy* was fully conquered by them, they fell upon the *Carthaginians*, as their nearest neighbours; whose overthrow in the end of the first *Punic* War, *A.U.C.* 512. gave them the full possession of *Sicily*, (except the State of *Syracusa*) and the Isle of *Sardinia*. After that being molested in their Trade by the *Illyrian* Pirates; and finding them countenanced therein by the Queen of that Nation, they made a fortunate War against her, and brought that puissant people to become their Tributaries, *A.U.C.* 525. The second *Carthaginian* War, managed by *Annibal* in the bowels of *Italy*, had almost put a period to the glories of their Commonwealth. But that being also ended to their advantage by the conquest of *Spain*, they quarrelled *Philip* King of *Macedon*, who had aided *Annibal*, compelled him to accept of peace on their own terms, and after outdrew his son *Perseus* of all his Dominions, making *Macedon* a Province of *Rome*, and all the rest of *Greece* but their Tenants at will. Nor was it long before they picked a quarrel with *Antiochus* the great King of *Syria*, made him abandon his possession of the *Leffer Asia*; and finally prevailed so successfully in all their actions, that there was neither King nor Commonwealth that could stand in their way, until the State being burdened with its too much greatness, began to totter of its self.

Two things there were, which much conduced to the advancement of the *Romans* to their power and greatness, besides the Providence of God which had disposed of it: which were the great encouragements which they gave their Soldiers, and the Triumphant manner of reception which they used to bestow upon their *Generals* when they returned home with honour and victory. For when any of their *Generals* did so return, they permitted to enter sitting on a glorious Chariot, the spoils which he had got in War being carried before, the Prisoners he had taken following bound at the heels of his Chariots; his Soldiers compassing him about with their several Crowns according to the quality of their well-deeds, and all the *Fathers* of the City, attended by the Priests and principal Ladies going out to meet him. The first beginning of which custom is ascribed to *Romulus*, who in the War with *Acan* King of the *Ceninenfes* made

F 2

against



against him in revenge of the rape committed by the Romans on the Sabine women, seeing his people give ground, called for help to Jupiter, and vowed if he overcame King Aeneas, to offer up his Armour to him. Aeneas being vanquished, the Conqueror cut down a fair young Oak and hangeth on it all the Armour of the vanquished King: then girding his Gown close unto him, and putting on his head a Garland of Laurel, he laid the Oak upon his shoulders and marched towards the City, his Army following, and singing an Epitaph, or song of victory. To this we must refer the original and beginning of *Triumphs*. But, *Nihil est inventum & perfectum eodem tempore*, as the saying is. *Tarquinius Priscus* long after *Romulus*, added hereunto the purple Robe, and the triumphal Chariot drawn with four horses. The other pomps came afterwards, as they grew both in power and pride. Now of these *Triumphs* there were two sorts the greater, which was properly called a *Triumph*, and the lesser, vulgarly called the *Ovation*, which differed from one another in many circumstances. For, 1. The *Triumph* made his entrance in a Royal Chariot, and was met only by the Senators in their Robes; but the *Ovation* made his entrance on foot, and was met only by the Knights and Gentlemen of Rome. 2. The *Triumph* had a Laurel Crown, and entered with a noise of Drums and Trumpets; but the *Ovation* had only a Garland of Firr, with Flutes and Hautboys playing before him. 3. The *Triumph* was attended in a Garment of State, which they called *Vestis Trabeata*, but the *Ovation* in a plain purple Gown only. 4. In a *Triumph*, the Soldiers carried out, in *Triumph*; but in an *Ovation*, they ingeminated only *O. O. O.* from the often doubling of which word, it had (as some think) the name of an *Ovation*. 5. And lastly the *Triumph* used to sacrifice a certain number of Oxen; but the *Ovation* a Sheep only, from whence the name is properly to be derived.

Now there was three calcs in which the Conqueror was to be content with this lesser *Triumph*. 1. If the number of enemies whom the flew in battle exceeded not 5000 men; or that he had not so much overcome them by force, as by persuasion or subtilty. 2. If the War had been flight, cursory, or not lawfully managed. And 3. If it were against an Ignoble Enemy. And of this last we have a fair instance in *P. Rupilius*, who having got the victory in the *Servile War*, (a victory of great importance to the State of Rome) was yet content with an *Ovation*, in *Triumph* dignitatem *Servili infirmitate violaret*, as it is in *Florus*. As for the greater *Triumphs*, they were indeed very full of magnificence; the pomp whereof, who list to see, may find it in the *Triumph* of *Paulus Emilius* described by *Plutarch*; though by that which hath before been said, we may conjecture somewhat at the glories of it.

And yet this Honour was not always vouchsafed to those who had but deserved it, there being many ways whereby it might be forfeited or denied in a factious State, and jealous of the over-greatness of the men of War. For, 1. Sometimes it was denied a victorious General, by the strength of a contrary Faction; and so *Pompey* denied *Mucellus* the honour of a *Triumph* for the conquest of *Crete*: 2. Sometimes the Conqueror himself is willing to decline it, for fear of envy: And so *Marcellus* in *Plutarch*, after his conquest of *Sicily*, having triumphed twice before, refused that honor: his reason was, *ἔγὼ δὲ ἀνὴρ ἄριστος & ἰσχυρότατος*, for fear his third *Triumph* might become a matter of envy. 3. Sometimes the Soldiers, having been ill paid, or otherwise not well treated by their Commanders, opposed them in their suit for it: and this was the case of *Paulus Emilius*, who questioned if he missed this honour for not dividing amongst them the spoils of *Greece*, as he once had promised

it *Servilius* and others of the Senate, making it their own cake, had not tickled hard for him with the Soldiers. 4. It was sometimes denied, because the General had born no public Office in the Commonwealth: for so, in *Livy*, when *Lentulus* coming *Proconsul* out of *Spain* required a *Triumph*, the Fathers answered, that he had indeed done things worthy of that honour, but that they had no precedent for it, *ut qui neque Consul, neque Dictator, neque Praetor Res gestisset*, *Triumpharet*. 5. Sometimes the Generals themselves omitted it for the furtherance of some of their other purposes: And so *Cæsar* coming towards *Rome* a Victor, at the same time the Consuls were to be chosen; laid aside his demand of the *Triumph* to sue for the Consulship; it being the custom that such as demanded the *Triumph* should abide without the City, and such as sued for the Consulship must of necessity be within. 6. Sometimes it was denied, when the War had been undertaken without the Command of the Senate: in which respect the *Triumph* was denied unto *Marius* on the conquest of *Galatia* by him, to the great enlargement of their Empire, *quia causam Belli Senatus non approbasset*, because he had no Commission from the Senate for it. 7. There was no *Triumph* granted if the War had been Civil, because in all such Wars whoever was Conqueror, the Commonwealth was a loser by it. And therefore *Pompey* and *Metellus* having vanquished *Sertorius* and his party in *Spain*, would have it called a *Foreign*, nor a *Civil War*, because they would not lose their *Triumph*. *Extremum magis id bellum quam Civile: videri volebant, ut triumpharent*. 8. If the Victory had not been obtained without great loss on the Romans sides in which regard *Valerius* after his conquest of the *Galls* was denied this honour, *quiam agni doli civium amissis, quam gaudium suis hostibus praestulit*, faith *Alexander ab Alexandro*. 9. And lastly, the *Triumph* was denied a General, if the service had not been performed in his own Province: And so we find that when *Lucius* and *Nero*, being Consuls, had vanquished *Asdrubal*, *Lucius* only had the *Triumph*, though *Nero* was the man that had won the day, because the field was fought in the Province of *Lucius*, to which *Nero* came but as an *Accessory*, or assistant to him.

And these are all, or at the least the principal causes of hindering or omitting this great Honour, indeed the greatest that the Free-State could be capable of. But after when the Commonwealth was changed into a Monarchy, it began to be laid aside for altogether, as too great for subjects; and was first purposely neglected by *Vespasian Agrippa*, the Establishment of *Augustus* in the Roman Empire, who when he had a *Triumph* decreed unto him, for quenching certain Rebellions in *Africa*, and his quiet settling of that Country; to give civility an example, refused to accept it. And this example being (as it were) a rule to others, occasioned that this custom was in short time quite laid aside; and that no man under the degree of an Emperor triumphed solemnly; all others from thenceforth, being content with the *Triumphal* Ornaments, *subornatis ensibus, togis, in the words of Dio*. And though *Bisulcius* having subdued the Kingdom of the *Vandals* in *Africa*, is said (600 years after the death of *Agrippa*) to have had the honour of a *Triumph*; yet in propriety of speech, it was nothing but an honourable presenting of himself and his prisoners before the Emperor, and was so far from the magnificence of a Roman *Triumph*, that it wanted many of the solemnities used in an *Ovation*. Nor did the Emperors themselves much affect this honour, either because too popular, or too chargeable, or that they thought it was beneath the Imperial Majesty; the last (as I remember) that made use thereof to set forth his glories, being *Valerius Probus*, after his victory

ries over the *Germans*, and the *Blomy*, a people of *Africa*, in or about the year 284 of our Saviour's birth.

In the next place look we on the encouragements and rewards of the Common Soldiers: For, besides the setting out of Lands and dwellings for the poorer sort, in which they might rest themselves when they were past service; and besides the large *donatives* which the General in his *Triumph* did below upon them; they had their *mural Crowns* for him that first scaled the Walls, a *naval Crown* for him that first boarded the Enemies ships, a *Camp Crown*, or *Corona Castroris*, for him that had forced a way into the Tents or Camp of the Enemy; a *City Crown*, or *Corona Civica*, for him that had preserved the life of a Roman Citizen. Not to say any thing of those Chains and Bracelets which Soldiers of inferior merit were adorned withal. By which encouragements, and the good conduct of their Councils in the Senate, the Roman affairs succeeded so prosperously, and their Dominions were enlarged so immensely, that never any Commonwealth had so large a growth.

And yet the greatness of this State is neither totally, nor only to be attributed to the Consular Government. For though the Walls of this great building were raised by the Consuls, yet the foundation of the same was laid by the Kings, and the roof thereof laid on by the Emperors. Nay, be it spoken to the honour of Monarchical Government, whenever any great and imminent danger did seem to threaten them, they were fain to lay aside their confidence in the rule of their Consuls, and betake themselves to the Command of one Sovereign Officer, whom they called *Dilatator*. Of which, and other the changes hapning in the State of Rome, take this short abstract from *Corn. Tacitus*. "*Urben Romam à principibus Reges habuere*, &c. "The City of Rome, was in the beginning governed by Kings. Liberty and the Consulship *L. Brutus* brought in. The *Dilatator* were chose but for a time: The *Decemviri* passed not two years, neither had the Consular authority of the *Triumvires* of the Soldiers any long continuance, or *Gin-na's* or *Sylla's* dominion. *Pompey* and *Crassus* quickly yielded to *Cæsar's* forces; *Lepidus* and *Antony* to *Augustus*. So *Tacitus* in brief of these publick changes: Of which, as to the *Decemviri*, which were instituted only on a particular occasion for the reforming of the Laws by those of *dilatators*, and the *Military Tribunes of Consul Authority* ordained to divert common people from seeking after the Consulship; I shall here say nothing. But as for the *Dilatator*, being Officers of a Supreme power, and such as made way for the Emperors in the close of all, I shall enlarge a little further. They were called *Dilatators a dilando*, because they prescribed what they pleased unto the people; which they were bound to execute and not dispute. Hence that memorable jest of *Julius Cæsar*, who being told that *Sylla* had resigned his *Dilatatorship* though by the decree of Senate made perpetual to him's returned this Answer, that *Sylla* was an unlearned man, *dilatare nesciit*, and therefore knew not how to *dilate*; or to play the *Dilatator*. They were also called *Populi Magistri*, or the peoples Masters, because from them lay no appeal unto the people (as did from all the rest of the Roman Magistrates) during the whole time of their Command, which ordinarily continued for six months; yet so, that if they did in the mean time settle the affairs of the Common-wealth, they resigned it sooner: if the necessities of the State required a longer continuance in it, they were chosen again. The names of as many of them as I have met withal, I have here subjoined together with the services they did the Publick, in the time of their Office.

#### The *Dilatators* of Rome.

A. D. C.

- 253 1 *Titus Lartius*, chosen upon occasion of a general War made by the Latins upon Rome; the first that ever had this Office.
- 257 2 *Aulus Postumius*, chosen to pursue that War, which he ended with the slaughter of 30000 of the Latins.
- 295 3 *L. Quintinus Cincinnatus*, chosen to this Office from the Plough, overcame the *Volsces*, chosen again A. D. C. 314. to suppress the sedition raised by *Sp. Mælius*.
- 318 4 *Amilius Mamercus*, overcame the *Veientes* and the *Fidenates*, and was thrice in eleven years called unto this Office.
- 338 5 *Pub. Servilius*, who finally vanquished the *Fidenates* and the *Lavinians*.
- 354 6 *Furius Camillus*, who finally destroyed the City of the *Vols*, and being chosen a second time, A. D. C. 362. preserved his Country from the *Galls*: thrice chosen after this upon new occasions.
- 375 7 *Tit. Quintinus Cincinnatus*, chosen in the War against the Latins.
- 385 8 *L. Manlius*, elected in the time of a grievous pestilence, to find a way for the appealing of the gods.
- 396 9 *C. Sulpicius*.
- 418 10 *Marius Rustilius*, the first *Dilatator* chosen out of the Commons.
- 11 *L. Papirius*, subdued the *Samnites*.
- 438 12 *Cæsius*; by whom the *Samnites* were again vanquished.
- 13 *Amilius*, who also overcame the *Samnites*.
- 14 *Lentulus*, who triumphed also over the *Samnites*.
- 451 15 *I. Bembulus*, who finally subdued the *Æqui* and the *Volsci*.
- 16 *Corn. Rufinus*.
- 467 17 *Q. Hortensius*, chosen for appeasing a difference between the Senate and the Commons, who had fortified himself in *Janiculum*, one of the Hills whercon Rome stood.
- 505 18 *Cl. Gliazia*, forced to resign his Office to *Attilius Colatinus*, the first that exercised his Office out of Italy: he was chosen in the first *Punic War*.
- 505 19 *Attilius Colatinus*, the first that exercised his Office out of Italy: he was chosen in the first *Punic War*.
- 536 20 *Fabius Maximus*, chosen in the War against *Amibal*.
- 537 21 *M. Junius*, chosen upon the great defeat which the Roman Forces had at the battle of *Cannæ*.
- 545 22 *L. Manlius Torquatus*, chosen upon the death of *Marcellus* Consul slain by *Amibal*.
- 672 23 *L. Sylla*, (descended from that *Corn. Rufinus*, who had been formerly in this Office) having by force of Arms suppressed the Faction of *Marinus* and *Cinna*, made himself Master of the City, and caused himself to be chosen *Perpetual Dilator*, after the Office had been intermitted, for the space of 127 years: which Office having exercised with a great deal of cruelty, he resigned with as great a confidence.
- 707 24 *C. Julius Cæsar* descended from *Julius* the son of *Ascanius*, who was the second King of the *Trojans*.

Trojan race, having conquered Britain, and added all Gaul Transalpine to the Roman Empire; and finding himself unworthily required by the Faction of Pompey, passed with his Army after him into Greece: and having vanquished him in the fields of Pharsalia, and made himself absolutely Master of the Roman Empire; took to himself the supreme Government thereof, under the Title of Dictator; which having managed for the space of five years, he was murdered in the Senate-house by Brutus and Cassius.

Before the time of these perpetual Dictators, the Romans having some enemies or other that opposed the progress of their fortunes, had not the leisure to contend with one another in a public way; or if they did, their differences and seditions were soon composed. But being grown too great as to fear no Enemy; and the Estate too vast, that it was grown too mighty for a popular Government; then they began to practise on the people's patience, and to project the sharing of the Empire amongst the great Ones. Concerning which, take here this short Epitome, which I find in Tacitus. "Rebus modo dictis equalitas facile habebatur. &c. While (saith he) our Dominions were but small, Equality was easily maintained among us. But after we had subdued the World, and destroyed all Kings and Cities that stood in our way, or might work our annoyance; when we had leisure to seek after Wealth without peril, there arose hot contentions betwixt the Nobility and Commons. Sometimes the factious Tribunes carried it away, sometimes the Consuls had the better: and in the City and common Forum, some little skirmishes (the beginning of our Civil Wars) were sometimes seen. Afterwards, C. Marius one of the meaneſt of the Commonwealth, and L. Sulla the most cruel of all the Nobility, by force of Arms overthrowing the Freedom reduced all to an absolute Government. To them succeeded Cn. Pompeius, a little closer in his projects, but not nothing better minded to the Common-wealth: Et nunquam postea nisi de Principatu quæſimus; and never after that was any other point debated, than who should get the Sovereignty unto himself. So Tacitus: and he saith it rightly. For after Pompey had revived the controverſie, and had found Cæſar a better Disputant than himself; Augustus, Antonius, and Lepidus (on the death of Cæſar) made good the Argument, attracting all power unto themselves by the name of Triumvirs: till Augustus having out-witted Lepidus, and vanquished M. Antony at the battel of Actium, became sole Sovereign of the State, by the name of Prince; Et cuncta bellis civilibus ſeſſa, nomine Principis ſub imperium accepit, as that Author hath it.

But touching those great alterations in the State of Rome, the contentions for the chief command, and the Reduction of it into a Monarchy by Augustus Cæſar, I published a Discourse in the year 1631. (but written many years before) under the title of AUGUSTUS, or an Essay of those Means and Counsels whereby the Commonwealth of Rome was altered, and reduced to a Monarchy. Which being but short, is pertinent to the present business, and so well entertained when it came abroad; I hope it will not be improper or unprofitable to subjoin it here. The Reader may either peruse it, or permit it, as his phanſie guides him. And here it followeth in these words.

They which have heretofore written of Commonwealths, have divided them into three Species: 1. The Government of the Kings, secondly, of the Nobles, and thirdly, of the People. Either of these is again subdivided into good and evil: The evil being only the good corrupted; the good nothing else but the bad rectified. So is the Government of a King divided into a Monarchy, and a Tyranny: Of the Nobles, into Aristocracy and Oligarchy: Of the People, into a Republick, and Democracy. All these, as well in general, as in the several couplets, have a secret inclination to change the one into the other; and to make a Pythagorical transmigration (as it were) into each others King, if need not stand on many instances. The Common-wealth of Rome ("into whose stories whoever looks, will judge "them rather to contain the acts of the whole World, "than a particular Nation) will serve for all. Romulus at the foundation of his City, reserved unto himself the chief Sovereignty, leaving it entire to his successors. Numa, Ancus, Tullus, Tarquin the Elder, and Servius, governed themselves so moderately, and the People so justly, that they affected not Tyranny, nor the Commons Liberty. They appeared more desirous to fill the Coffers of their Subjects than their own Treasuries: And when necessity compelled them to a Tax, they rather seemed to their their sheep than fleece them. But Tarquin the second, commonly called Superbus, a man of insupportable Vices, having by violence enthronized himself in that Chair of State, which (had not his ambitious spirit been impatient of delay) would have been his rightful Inheritance, made his government answerable to his entrance, cruel and bloody. How many men, eminent as well by their own Virtue, as their Parents Nobility, did he cut off? How many did he for no cause promote to make their fall the more remarkable? What part of the Senate was free from slaughter? What corner of the City from lamentations? Yet this was not all. The miserable Romans were visited with three Plagues at once: Pride in the Father, Cruelty in the Mother, and Lust exorbitant in their own Sons, a true Copy of the old Originals. Either of these had been more than enough to exercise the peoples patience. But meeting all at one time, it seemed that nothing could now be added to the wretchedness of the one, and the wickedness of the other. Brutus (a name fatal to Tyrants) did easily persuade the Commons to shake off this yoke. For they, as well desirous of Novelties as sensible of Oppressions, had long since murmured at the present State, and wanted nothing but a Head to break out into actual Rebellion. So the People got the Freedom, and the Kings lost the Sovereignty of the City.

2. Brutus, although he wanted no fair title to the Crown, yet either perceiving how odious the name of King was grown; or perhaps willing to be rather the first Consul than the last Prince, instituted a new form of Government: Wherein the sway of all was referred to the Fathers of the City; out of whom two were annually chosen as chief of the rest. And herein certainly he dealt very adviſedly. For had he sought to confirm himself in the Country, what could men judge, but that not long in his Country was the cause that stirred him to take Arms, but desire of Rule? Again besides that secure Privilege is to be preferred before hazardous Royalty, what hope had he to keep the seat long, having by his own example taught the people both the Theory and Practice of Rebellion? Under this new Aristocracy the Roman affairs succeeded so prosperously, their dominions were

were

were enlarged so immensely, that it may well be questioned whether the Roman Fortune caused their greatness, or their valour commanded their Fortune. For the Governours not seeking wealth but honour, or not their own wealth, but the publick, did to demean themselves both in Peace and War, that there was between all a virtuous emulation which should most benefit his Country. An happiness which was too great to continue long. The people had as yet no written Laws; Custom bearing most sway, the rest of the Law looked up in the breast of the Judges. To avoid such inconveniences as might hence ensue, there were some men, conceived to be as found in judgment, as honest in their actions, deputed by the general Commission, to take an abstrakt of the *Corian Laws*: according to the tenor whereof, the people were to frame their lives, the Judges their sentences. Here followed the *Oligarchy* or *Decemvirate*, State of Rome, but long it lasted not. For these new Lords joining forces together, made themselves rich with the spoil of the people, not caring by what unlawful means they could purchase either profit or pleasure. Appius Claudius, one of the *Decemvirs*, was the break-neck of this Government. He, unmindful of Lucretia and the Tarquins, lulled after Virginia, a woman thought of low condition, yet such a woman in whom Beauty and Virtue strove for the preeminence. The issue was, that she (to save her honour) was slain by her own Father in an open Assembly of the People; Appius forced to make away himself in Prison; and the rest of that Magistracy abdicating their Offices, the Consuls were for a time restored.

3. The People flattered with this victory, and calling to mind how their Ancestors had in like manner banished the Kings, began to know their own strength, and stomached it exceedingly, that they on whose shoulders the frame of the State was supported, should be so much under the command of others, that they who were Lords abroad, should be below the condition of Slaves at home. Hereupon they raise a tumult under the Conduct of their Tribune, Canticus. Not could they by any persuasions be induced to lay down Arms till they had obtained a Decree, That from thenceforth the Nobles and the Commons might promiscuously be married. And this was the first step to the Republick. The gaining this new privilege, put them in possibility of obtaining greater. They now live to be capable of the Consulship. The Fathers consulting of this demand, wisely forbore that to grant their Petition, or to deny it, was alike dangerous. For were it utterly dashed, it was to be feared the people would again forsake the City; and yet make their stay more insolent and insupportable, if it were granted. C. Claudius, one who by his honorable behaviour, was by both parties had in an equal degree of reverence, quickly proposed a middle course, whereby the fury of the multitude might be appeased, without blemish to the Consular dignity. He constituted five Annual Officers, equally chosen out of the People and the Nobles, calling them *Tribuni Militum Consularis potestatis*. This Office continued, but not without many Interpositions, the space of 75 years. Which time extended, and some experience being had of the Peoples Government, the Lords of the Senate did decree, That one of the Consuls should from thenceforth be chosen by, and out of the Commons; that they should be capable of all Magistracies, yea, even of the Dictatorship. So that now Fortune was as speedily a Ladder to climb unto Honours, as Nobility of Birth; and a Good man as much respected as a Great. A rare felicity of the times.

4. The People being thus mixt with the Nobles, as well in Marriages as Honours: one would have thought that

this Common-wealth, being thus equally poised, had been immortal. But as in the Natural Body there can be no exact and Arithmetical proportion of the humors and elements, without some predominancy; so in the Body Politick can there be no equal mixture of the Plebeians and Patricians, without the supremacy of the one or the other. The People had, presently after the institution of the Consuls, raised a Commotion, and withdrew themselves into Mount Aventine. Nor could they be intreated to return into the City, till there were granted unto them peculiar Officers called *Tribuni Plebis*, or Protectors of the Commons. These being not long after by the Common-Council pronounced to be *Sacrosancti*, and inviolable, began to heave the Popular State too high, and thrust the Aristocratick too low; not regarding to lose the love of the one, so they might get the applause of the other. Infomuch, that matters of judgment were devolved from the Fathers to the Commons; and the authority of the Senate trod under foot by the People. Nay, they proceeded so far, that Marius being Tribune, threatened to send Cato the Consul unto prison. And Sulpicius in the same Office made the Consuls forsake the Senate-house; and slew one of their sons, whose heels were not nimble enough to tie away. And now were the Romans governed by that form of rule, than which there is no lower. So that as well by an inevitable necessity in Nature, as the ordinary course of Policies, there must be reverting to the first, and Monarchical Authority. For questionless it saith many times with a Common-wealth as with the Sun, which runneth through all the signs of the Zodiack, till it return to the place where its motion first began. And the Placidian year of reducing of all things to the frame beginning, continuance, and period, how false soever in the Books of Nature, is in some sort true in the change of Government.

5. The way down hill is easy and ordinary, but to ascend unto the top requirith both wit to frame the steps, and courage to give the attempt. So was it here also with the Romans: They had naturally, and almost insensibly falln from a Monarchy to a Populacy or Democracy: But to ascend from a Populacy to a Monarchy, required many steps and degrees in many, much industry in all. Marius and Sulla, well skilled in feeding the humours of the People, were the first that attempted, and severally mounted to such a height of command, as never durst any promise to them, nor they hope for themselves. Marius was of an harsh and stern nature, equally cruel to the Enemy in War, and the People in Peace; one whose birth the Romans might have had just cause to curse, had he not saved them from the Cimbrs. Sulla was one whose carriage none could enough commend before, or sufficiently condemn after his prosperity. A man whose Peace was far more bloody than his Wars; a better Subject than a Prince.

These two gave way each to other, and both to death. Next these, as well in factions and designs, as blood and alliance, succeeded Cæſar and Pompey: Two men never truly parallel since their own times. Cæſar had a wit to invent pregnant, a heart to execute stout, and to both a Fortune to favourable, that he durst undertake what no man dared; and his performances commonly were answerable to his undertakings. Pompey, a man greater than his own or his friends wishes, had triumphed over all the parts of the known World; and could he but have brooked an Equal, he had never met Superior. Had these two lived in divers Ages, or exercised their valour on the common Enemy, the World had been too little to yield them employment.

END

But turning their forces one against the other, *Pompey* overthrown in the *Field*, was basely murdered in *Egypt*; and *Cæsar*, victoriously conqueror in *Thebais*, was barbarously massacred in the *Capitol*. And though none of these four Worthies could settle the *Monarchy* in himself, yet this shall be to their eternal memory recorded, that they first opened a passage to others, and first moved the stone, which rolling along, tumbled the People out of the Government.

6. After the overthrow of *Pompey*, and death of *Cæsar*, the *Common-wealth* might have recovered *Liberty*, if either *Cæsar* had left no heir, and *Pompey* no children; or rather, if *Antony*, a man of an unquiet and turbulent spirit, had not begun new troubles. For he knowing the affection of the *common people* unto young *Octavius*, *Cæsar's* heir; and hearing the continual report of his approach to *Rome* for his inheritance, did by Decree of the *Senate* restore *Scævus* the son of *Pompey* to his blood and honours; Hoping that they two, inheriting their Fathers hatreds, would like *Pellets* in a Boys Pot-gun drive out each others; and so he might remain Lord of the whole. But young *Octavius* was too old to be so fetch over, and had moreover more desire to revenge his Fathers death on *Brutus* and *Cassius*, than turn himself upon an Enemy that neither had done, nor could do him any hurt. At his first entrance into *Rome* he declared himself *Cæsar's* heir, though some regarding more his welfare than honour, disfavoured him from it. His retinue at his entrance was but small, his behaviour gentle and courteous, so that all had cause to love him, none to fear him. His first business was to *Antony*, then possessed of all *Cæsar's* estate. His words as model as his Petition just. *Antony* answer somewhat churlish, forbidding him to meddle in matters of *State*, adding that he was too young to take upon him the name of *Cæsar*, and so dismissed him unsatisfied, and with discontentments. *AUGUSTUS* (for by that name we mean to call him, though he was not yet so called) perceiving that *Antony* answer, though in these but a delay, was in effect a denial, insinuated into the acquaintance of *Cicero*, then potent among the *Senators*, and a capital Enemy of *Antony*; by whose means the *Lords* of the *Senate* began to cast great affection towards him. Next in a solemn Oration to the *People*, he let them know, how he intended to have distributed his Fathers wealth among them; and how *Antony* did unjustly detain it from them both. Certainly, there is not any thing prevailth sooner with the ignoble Man than hope of gain. No sooner had he finished his speech, and given away that to them, which he thought impossible to get for himself, but all was in a tumult. None was sparing of his words, but he had some curse in store for *Antony*: every one vowing the destruction of that man, whom they supposed to deprive them of *AUGUSTUS* donative.

7. In this hurly *Antony* quits the Town, and is by the general voice of the Houses declared an Enemy to the *State*. An Army is given to *Hircius* and *Passus*, then *Consuls*: *AUGUSTUS*, aged but 18 years, having proclaimed *Imperator*, and made head of the League against the common Foe. *AUGUSTUS* as he loved not to absent from a necessary War, so he always used to reserve himself from the dangers of it, and therefore he committed the whole enterprise unto the *Consuls*: well knowing that though the Officers and Soldiers took most pains to get the Victory, yet would the honour of it be referred to him, as *Imperator*; Whereas if any thing fell out to the Army not well, his being a *Non-agent* in the business, would bring his honour off without him. The *Consuls* therefore pro-

ceeded in the War against *Antony*: who seeing little possibility of prevailing, resolved to sell the loss of his own liberty and his Soldiers lives, at a dear rate. And indeed the fortune of the day was so equally shared, that as the *Consuls* might boast of the vanquishment of *Antony*, so *Antony* might triumph in the death of the *Consuls*.

*AUGUSTUS* had now as much as he could desire, more than he expected; a victorious Army at his service. He therefore applies himself to them, that giving that among them which he had in present, and promising them greater favours, according as his fortune and their valour should advance him; he bound them unto him in an eternal bond of allegiance, and made them the first step by which he ascended the *Royalty*. The *Lords* of the *Senate* hearing of the young mans fortune, thought it belto strangle these hopes even in their Cradles, and to that end, decree the honour of governing *Antony*, not to belong to *AUGUSTUS*, but to *Decius Brutus*; for whose defence (being belied by *Antony* in *Mutina*) their Army had been levied. Nor did they think this froth of unexpected unkindness, sufficient to nip the blossom of his hopes; but they denounced him the *Confilipus*. These harsh proceedings compelled *AUGUSTUS* (his honour now lying at stake) to enter *Rome* as Conqueror, and force the *Fathers* to grant him his desires. Having thus gotten what for the time he aimed at; he generally shewed himself grateful to all, and particularly to some of the Soldiers, paying them what was behind by promise, and openly professing that without their aid he durst not have adventured into the *Capitol*. So by keeping his day with the *Military* men, and shewing his noble and generous nature in a thankful commemoration of their service; he added stronger bonds to such as were already his own, and won many daily to his side, which before were either *neutral*, or *adversaries*.

8. *Antony* in the mean time was not idle, but knowing that *Lepidus* was beyond the Mountains with a puissant Army, he posted thither, and so far prevailed with the Soldiers, that he was admitted into the Camps where the *General* entertained him with all expressions of love and welcome. *Antony* perceiving the facile nature of *Lepidus*, soon persuaded him to lead his forces into *Italy*; promising him no less than the Lordship of the World, if he durst but show his face to the *Romans*. *AUGUSTUS* having continual news of this combination, and fearing much the prowess of *Antony*, now strengthened; conceived no course to fitting and convenient to his ends, as to join friendship, and to enter into confederacy with them. And this he did, not for any good will to either, but because being destitute of means to resist them, and also to revenge the death of his Father *Julius*, which he much laboured; he might with their forces oppress *Cassius* and *M. Brutus*, and, as occasion fell out, deal with them being forced. This League was solemnly confirmed by a bloody *Prescription* immediately following. Wherein, to be revenged on their Enemies they betrayed their Friends. A lamentable and ruinful time to good and bad, rich and poor, being alike subject to the slaughter. Now was the time of *Julius Cæsar's* Government thought to be the *Golden Age*, and every one began to curse *Brutus* and *Cassius* as the Authors of these present miseries; whom they barbarously honoured as the Restorers of the Common Liberty. Nay the very Kings were deemed tolerable, and such as lived in their days, happy. The poor *Romans* had not changed the

*Tyranny*,

*Tyranny*, but the Tyrants: Yea, they had three for one into the bargain. Such is the condition of us men, that we know not our own happiness in the fruition, but the want. Two of these *Triumvirs* glutted themselves with blood, taking pride in hearing the lamentable cries and groans of the People. *Antony* on the contrary, shewed himself much grieved at this barbarous cruelty: so that his consent seemed rather forced than voluntary. But this *Prescription*, though in it self cruel and tyrannical, produced some good and profitable effects in the Republick. For when by this *Prescription* and the ensuing Civil War, the stoutest of the Nobles and Commons were made away, few being left which durst endeavour to recover the old Liberty; *Antony* did more easily establish his Monarchy, and restore peace to the City. Moreover the prosecution of this cruelty so incensed the people against *Antony* and *Lepidus*, that *Antony*, whom most held excusable, found them always his faithful friends, if not for love to him, yet in spite to them.

9. But to proceed; *Antony* and *Antony* leaving the guard of the City to *Lepidus*, with joint-forces march against *Brutus* and *Cassius*, both overthrown by *Antony*, whom *AUGUSTUS* did therefore put upon that service, as well to diminish *Antony's* forces, as to keep his own entire. As for himself, either he in policy suffered himself to be driven out of the field by *Brutus*, to make *Antony* more work; or else indeed durst not abide the Battle. Such end had *Brutus* and *Cassius*, two men whom fortune seemed to be in love with on the sudden, and did as suddenly forsake them. *Brutus* the more accomplished man; *Cassius* the more expert Soldier. I pass over *AUGUSTUS* Wars in *Italy*, *Antony's* in *Asia*, the discontents between them, and their reconciliation by the means of *Octavia*, sister to the one, and wife to the other *Emperors*. As also how joining forces together to oppress *Scævus*, then Lordship it over the Sea, and proud with the conquest of *Sicilia*, they received him into the Confederacy, and joined the Island of *Sardinia* to his other conquests. To recompence which kindness, *Scævus* invited the two Generals aboard his *Admiral-Galley*; and after a bountiful entertainment, returned them safe to their Camps. I scarce have ever heard of so great an over-sight among so many able Politicians. And much I marvel with my self, upon what confidence *AUGUSTUS* and *Antony* durst to trust their persons to a reconciled Enemy: or on what reason *Scævus* having both of them in his power, would let slip so lightly that advantage, greater than which was never offered to a discontented and ambitious person. This I am free of, that he afterwards repented it, and could have wished that he had hearkened to the voice of *Menus* his old servant, who had persuaded him to make his bet of that opportunity. The Kings of *France* and *Aragon*, of old Enemies made new Friends, had the like interview at *Saxona*: which that notable Historiographer and States-man *Giesbrandine* describeth with much wonder and commendation. Yet, in the like case, have many, and, as I think, worthily condemned *Lewis* the 11. of *France*, and *Charles* of *Burgundy*, the Arch-politicians of those days, in that *Lewis* at *Perouse* put himself into the hands of *Charles* his Enemy, who also after a short retention, dismissed him.

10. These solemn expressions of amity between the three Generals being thus ended, and *Antony* gone for *Egypt*, *AUGUSTUS* then began to contrive his establishment in the *State*; though with the ruin of his Collegues. He began first with *Scævus*, having by gifts and promises drawn *Menus* unto his side; who by reason of his inwardness with his Master, knew most

of his designs. By the directions of this *Menus*, and the assistance of *Lepidus*, he quickly overthrew *Scævus*; who flying death in *Europe* by the hand of *AUGUSTUS*, found it in *Asia*, by the command of *Antony*. After this victory, *AUGUSTUS* either having, or pretending a quarrel against *Lepidus*, entred into his Camp, seized his person, and depriving him of all honours, confined him to *Rome*. A man that had against his will, stumbling upon the Government, had beyond any desert of his, enjoyed ten years continuance of Empire and prosperity. An action of a very high nature, and such as *AUGUSTUS* durst not have ventured on, if *Antony* had been in *Italy*. He therefore advicely removed him out of his way, before he would attempt the same. It hath been ever a chief Maxim in *Court-Polity*, to remove that man out of the way, under pretence of some honourable charge, whom we intend either to cut from his present honours, or else to make less potent with Prince and People. For which cause also *AUGUSTUS* persecuted *Antony's* father out of the City, to bring him at the last into discredit and contempt. For well he knew that his detrage on *Cleopatra*, could not but draw him into many inconveniences: neither could his neglecting the *State*, to riot with his *Lemman*, be other than distastful to the *Lords* and *People*. Next, he commanded his sister *Octavia* to leave her husband *Antony's* house; yet privately he persuaded her to live there still, and bring up his children; that so the *Romans* seeing her noble demeanor and love to her husband, might the more heartily detest him, who so ignobly and unkindly had rejected her. To add more fuel to this flame of hatred, he readeth *Antony's* Will unto the people, in which many of the *Roman Provinces* were bequeathed to *Cleopatra's* children, and other things ordained to the common prejudice. *Antony* likewise preferred many *Evils* against *AUGUSTUS*, as that he had deposed *Lepidus* from the *Triumvirate*; that he had divided *Italy* among his own Soldiers only, that he had not restored the Ships borrowed to make War against *Scævus*.

11. These discontents seconded with an ambitious hope of prevailing, made them both resolute to refer all to the decision of a Battle. *Antony* had a Fleet consisting of 500 Ships, high built, and trimmed up rather for a Triumph than a Fight. His Land Forces consisted of 10,000 Foot, and 12,000 Horse. *Antony* had the like number of Horsemen, 8000 Foot, and 250 good Mules of War, strong and close, built more for use than ostentation. The Rendezvous was *Actium*, a place seeming to be marked out for notable designs: here being fought also in our Fathers days, that famous battle, wherein the *Venetians* gave the World to understand, that the *Turke* Forces by Sea were not invincible. *Antony* was on the Offensive side, and therefore much doubted whether it were better to give the Onset by Sea or by Land. *Cleopatra*, whose words were Oracles, persuaded him to the Sea-fight: not that she thought it more safe, but that, if *Antony* lost the day, the might with more facility escape. To this resolution, when most of the Captains had for fear agreed, one of the old Soldiers thus bluntly gained it. "What a miserable security are thou possessed with, most noble Emperor? Where is that ancient force, fight wherewith thou hast formerly prevented all disasters? turned the Enemies devices on their own head? Consider with thy self, most noble General, what uncertain friends the Wind and Sea are? To howickle "an Element thou dost trust thy fortunes? Let the *Egyptians*, *Grieks*, and *Phoenicians*, old *Mermoids*, born and nurtured in the Sea, follow this kind of warlike. But let us thy true *Roman* spirits try our valour on the firm Land, and there fight for thy Empire, and our own Lives. Per-

haps

"happ's thou dost mistrust our faith; Look here, *Antony*,  
 " (with that he opened his bosom) and thou shalt see  
 " many an honourable scar got in thy service. We are  
 " now too old to learn new Treasons: Alter therefore thy  
 " resolution, and, to please a woman, cast not away to  
 " many of thy faithful Followers. Certainly the unfeeling  
 " powers of Heaven when they decree a mans destruc-  
 " tion, overthrow those Counsels by which he should  
 " escape it. *Antony* turns his deaf ear to this Soldier's  
 " wholesome advice, and borrowing from *Cleopatra* two  
 " or three knives (as if from the Fountain of her lips he had  
 " derived all his courage) without any more ceremony  
 " proproach to the battle.

12. *AUGUSTUS* on the other side, seeing a necessity of a Sea-fight, was yet in this comforted, that his  
 " Vessels were more useful and better manned, though fewer  
 " than his Enemies: that his men to him were faithful,  
 " and, by reason of their many Victories, in good heart:  
 " From *Antony* were daily revolted some Kings and Cap-  
 " tains of note, to the great encouragement of the onside,  
 " and disheartening of the other. The whole charge of the  
 " War he committed to *Mysipponus Ascrippa*, who falling  
 " in no duty of a good Captain, took from his Gallies what-  
 " soever might be impediments to the valiant or helter for  
 " the cowardly; all that was cumbersome to his own men,  
 " or advantageous to the Enemy. Things thus ordered, and  
 " the battle ready to joy, *Augustus Caesar* standing where  
 " he might be seen and befall of all, is said to make this or the  
 " like Oration. " Fellows and Companions in Arms, I sup-  
 " pose it needless to hear you, which never were ac-  
 " quainted with fear nor bid you overcome, which never  
 " yet knew what it was, not to vanquish. Conquest hath  
 " always fast upon the edges of your swords, and victory  
 " been written in your foreheads. Be not now back-  
 " ward to add this one to your other Triumphs. When  
 " after the death of my Father *Julius* of famous memory,  
 " I first deal in matters of War, I rather found than  
 " made you good Soldiers. And during this twelve  
 " years service under me, neither have you been wanting  
 " in the duty of faithful followers, nor I (I hope) of a vi-  
 " gilant and grateful Leader. Sure I am, I expressed my  
 " self as far as I could, and more I would, had I been able.  
 " Tell not the number, nor the greatness of the adverse  
 " Gallies any ways affright you. The hugeness of their  
 " Bulks maketh them unfit for employment; and the  
 " multitude, once clogging and hindring the others, may  
 " as much further our Victory as theirs. They exceed us  
 " in multitudes of Men, we them in number of Soldiers.  
 " The meaning of the word *Pilot* is unknown among  
 " them. And for their *Mariners*, the best of them are  
 " but *Carters*, *Reapers*, and *Harrow-men*, raked out of the  
 " fields; the rest, the excrement of common Prisons, where-  
 " with their Vessels are loaded, not manned. The General  
 " is indeed a fit Captain for such a selected Company. It  
 " is the same *Antony*, whom you once drove out of the  
 " field, before *Mutina*. I verily perfwade my self, that  
 " neither he dares think of recovering, or of losing  
 " your former glories. It is the same *Antony*, who being  
 " charitably chafed out of *Parthia*, only in that he was  
 " not vanquished, proclaimed himself *Vilior*. It is the same  
 " *Antony*, who intended to make Rome subject to the *E-*  
 " *gyptians*, and to distribute the *Provinces* purchased  
 " with the blood and virtue of our Ancestors, amongst  
 " *Isis* and her fellow Chamber-maids. Nay indeed, it is  
 " not *Antony* at all, but the shadow only of that substance,  
 " which now is hid in *Cleopatra's* Cabin. Courage then,  
 " brave men of Arms; be, as you have till been, *Con-*  
 " *querors*. To speak more, were to detain you from victo-  
 " ry. Only this, Call to mind your ancient valour. Re-  
 " member that I am *Cesar*, you *Romans*.

13. This speech animated the new Soldiers, and  
 " confirmed the old; so that with a general acclamation  
 " they gave the assault. Death, wounds, and blows, dif-  
 " fided in divers fashions, and served in by several men,  
 " were the best delights prepared for these unwelcome visitants.  
 " *Cleopatra* beholding the Battle, and doubting the success,  
 " through the thickets of *Antoniae* Fleet, made away with  
 " the 60 Gallies appointed for her Guard. This disorder  
 " made the breach, at which the Victory entered. *Antony*  
 " seeing her flight, left his Squadron aloft; and being taken  
 " into her Gally, hoysed sail for Egypt: Herein playing  
 " the part of a cowardly Soldier, whilst all of his  
 " Soldiers executed the office of a courageous General.  
 " For they to absolutely perished in the night, that *AUGUSTUS*  
 " was fain to offer them mercy sooner than they  
 " would accept it. At last they all swore allegiance unto  
 " him. The Victory being thus gotten, *AUGUSTUS*  
 " *(no loser of advantages)* speecheb into Egypt,  
 " which he redueth into the form of a Province; making  
 " the people pay, for fine, twenty millions of Gold. By  
 " receiving this money, he so weakened them that they had  
 " no ability to raise an after-war; and by distributing part  
 " of it among his Soldiers, he confirmed them in obedi-  
 " ence. As for *Antony*, he seeing his fortunes desperate,  
 " redeemed the honour lost in his life, by a noble and he-  
 " roick death. And *Cleopatra* ended her life not long after  
 " also. A woman more well-favoured, than fair; well-  
 " spoken, rather than cither. *Antoniae* Courtiers had seen  
 " many Ladies more lovely, none more prevailing; men  
 " being chained to her by the ears, rather than by the  
 " eyes.

14. I willingly omit *AUGUSTUS* entry into Rome,  
 " as also the state and magnificence of his Triumph. His  
 " Victory he used to justify, that none felt the fury of the  
 " War, but such as were slain in the Battle. To assure him-  
 " self of *Antoniae* adherents, was his first care: to which end  
 " he burst in the common Forum, the Collets of *Antony*, un-  
 " opened; wherein all his Letters from his friends in Rome  
 " had been inclosed: well knowing that as long as any  
 " thought themselves suspected Adversaries: they would  
 " never show themselves true Friends. To the *Sensors*  
 " and *Magistrates* he made sumptuous feasts: to the *Com-*  
 " *mon* People he exhibited magnificent and pleasing Stage-  
 " Plays; and, with all variety of pleasure, banished from  
 " both, as well sorrow for the old *Proscriptions*, as fear of a  
 " new. But this was only as a preparation to his main de-  
 " sign. There were two men most dear unto him, and pri-  
 " vily to his Council, *Mecenas* and *Agrippa*; which in the  
 " object of their love, differed only in this; *Mecenas* was  
 " a lover of *AUGUSTUS*, *Agrippa* of the Emperor. *Mecenas*  
 " was of the rank of *Knights*, a man of good and bad parts  
 " equally compounded; when his business required care,  
 " vigilant and circumspect; at leisure time, excessively ri-  
 " otous. *Agrippa* was the first of his house: a man alike  
 " fit for Camp and Council; one neither careless of a good  
 " name, nor covetous of a great. For although he yet  
 " was the man which vanquished *Scotas*, and *Antony*; yet  
 " well skilled in the humours of Princes, he gave *AUGUSTUS*  
 " the honor of all his Conquests; making the  
 " virtue not the reward, but the end of his Actions. So by  
 " doing nobly, and speaking modestly of it, he was without  
 " envy, but not without glory. With these two, *AUGUSTUS*  
 " withdrew into a private Closet, and there  
 " spoke unto them in this form. He made first unto them  
 " a long discourse of the Civil Wars; then added, " That  
 " having by his fortune, and the valour of his Soldiers,  
 " put an end to the troubles; he was unresolved what  
 " to do. Whether to resign the Empire to the People, or  
 " retain it still in his own hands: That in a business of  
 " such

" such importance, he durst not rely altogether on his  
 " own wisdom: That he had made them his Judges, as  
 " men that could speak frankly, and durst speak freely:  
 " That he knew them to have more care of his honour,  
 " than profit; but of the Common-wealth, more than  
 " both: That his Councils, which course he took,  
 " would not be by them eliminated. He therefore in-  
 " treated them to consider what was to be done, and to  
 " give up their opinions in it.

15. *Agrippa* after a short silence thus began. " I know,  
 " thou canst not but marvel, *O Cesar*, that I who under  
 " thine Empire, am sure to be beyond president exalted,  
 " should perfwade thee to live private. But I esteem  
 " more thy honour, than my profit; the publick good,  
 " than my particular preferment. And yet perhaps my  
 " Council shall be as profitable, if not as plausible as the  
 " contrary. I know thee to be no way delighted with  
 " lies and flattery, and will therefore deal with thee  
 " freely and plainly. Thou hast indeed put a period to  
 " the Civil Wars, but to what end, unless thou dost re-  
 " store unto the Common-wealth that Liberty for which  
 " the Wars were raised? What benefit can the people  
 " reap from thy Victory, if thou dost use it only as an in-  
 " strument, for their greater bondage? Dost thou think  
 " that the *Romans* having for many hundred years main-  
 " tained their Liberty, will now be willing to forgo it?  
 " No, *Cesar*, no, Flatter not thy self with these hopes.  
 " *Marius* the younger, and *Sertorius*, were quickly cut  
 " off, when their ends were once known; and *Julius*  
 " thy Father of happy memory, did not long live, after  
 " his Actions seemed to bring the Common Liberty in  
 " hazard. And shall we think that there is no true Ro-  
 " man spirit surviving? no *Brutus*, living to attempt the  
 " like against thee? Believe me, *Cesar*, believe me, it  
 " is far better not to meddle with the Empire at all, than  
 " to be forced to abandon it. But say, Divine Providence  
 " will I protect thee, that thou mayest out-live thy  
 " practices; that thou also not out-live thy glories?  
 " This present age perchance will not censure thee  
 " Actions, because it dares not: but Posterity, free from  
 " all respects of love or hatred, cannot but call them into  
 " question, and brand thy enterprise with Ambition, and  
 " perhaps Tyranny. If thy designs prosper they will  
 " judge thee to have risen unjustly; if otherwise, to have  
 " fallen deservedly. How much better then were it,  
 " now when this honour is without blemish, and thy  
 " reputation unshaken, to resign thy authority? Indeed  
 " when *Scotas* lorded it over the Sea, and *Antony* over  
 " Egypt, it might have been thought want of spirit, to  
 " have depolized thy self from the Government. But now  
 " to do it, when thou art without Rival in the Empire;  
 " now when thou art Commander of the Worlds Forces,  
 " now when the People and Senate lie prostrate at the feet  
 " of thy mercy; were to strike dumb detraction, and  
 " to make future Ages admire thy Temper. Thou art  
 " at this present the joy and comfort of the World;  
 " there is wanting to thee neither Wealth nor Fame. Here  
 " then fix thy foot. For go but one step beyond this  
 " *Non ultra*, and thou wilt run into a boundless Ocean  
 " of perils, which have no end, but the end of thy life and  
 " reputation.

16. " Not so, excellent *Agrippa*, replied *Mecenas*. I  
 " never heard good *Pilot* find fault with Sea-room, or of  
 " more vessels call away into the Ocean, than in the  
 " *Straitest*, and narrow passages. Our Republick is a Ship  
 " fraught with divers Nations. She hath been long tossed  
 " on the waves of Civil dissensions, long driven up and  
 " down with the Wind of ambition; and there is now  
 " no place to fit her for safety, as the unlimited Ocean of  
 " one mans power. This Empire at first rising, seemed not

" to require a *Mararch*; but it is now grown too unwork-  
 " dy, to be without one. Take then upon thee, *O Cesar*,  
 " this Empire; or, to say better, do not forsake it. I should  
 " never thus advise thee, did I conceive any possible in-  
 " conveniences. The Senate doth allow thee a competent  
 " guard of valiant and faithful Soldiers; whom thou  
 " shouldst thou fear? Nay, ill may I prosper, if I see any  
 " cause of fear, were thy Guard cashiered. Enemies thou  
 " hast none: For such as were, are either already slain by  
 " thy valour, or made thy fast friends, by thy bounty and  
 " clemency. To omit *Marius* and *Sertorius*, I will a little  
 " touch at thy Father *Julius*. He, too good a Soldier to  
 " be a *Statist*, was too heady and violent in establishing  
 " his government. Nor could he cunningly temporize,  
 " and suffer the people incontinently, and by degrees, to drop  
 " into bondage; but opprest them all at once. Again, he  
 " committed a great *Solacisum* in State, when discharging  
 " his Guard, he fought to retain that Empire by fair means,  
 " which he had gotten by violence. I know thee, *O Ce-*  
 " *sar*, to be of a more wary and cunning behaviour. Learn  
 " also to work out thy own safety, by Pompey's misfor-  
 " tunes. He after the finishing of the *British Wars*, at  
 " *Brundisium*, disbanded his Army; and thereby merited  
 " to be accounted an honest and moderate man. Certain-  
 " ly, he shewed himself in the course of this action, ra-  
 " ther virtuous than fortunate or politic. For presently  
 " he began to be contemned, and by his improvident  
 " weakening of himself, made an open passage to his own  
 " ruin. I commended his modesty, more than his brains;  
 " neither did he himself, on better considerations, ap-  
 " prove his own doings: and therefore he relolved, had  
 " he been Victor in *Pharalia*, never to have committed  
 " the like oversight. So it is, and so it will fall out with  
 " thee, *O Cesar*, if in this action thou propose him to be  
 " thy pattern. It is not safe, *Agrippa* faith, to take the  
 " Empire; lest fate it is, to refuse it. A settled and in-  
 " variable vice it is in man, Never to endure that any not  
 " above our own rank should over-top us. *Romes* second  
 " founder *Camillus Scipio*, that scourge of Carthage, were  
 " disgraced; and *Marcellus* banished by our Ancestors:  
 " only because their worth had lifted them above the or-  
 " dinary pitch of Subjects. Do not thou hope to fare  
 " better than thy Predecessors. Hereafter, perchance,  
 " thou mightest have fought the Empire, to satisfy thy  
 " ambition. The Empire must now be thy refuge and  
 " *Asylum*. Credit me, The Lords of the Senate, after so  
 " many years of Obedience, know not how to Govern;  
 " neither canst thou, having so long been a Governour,  
 " learn Obedience. True it is, that in matters of domesti-  
 " cal business, a man may stop and desist where he will:  
 " But in the getting of an Empire, there is no mean be-  
 " tween the death of an Enemy and the life of a Prince.  
 " Thou hast already gone too far to retire. Now thou  
 " must resolve to be *Cesar* or Nothing. To say more  
 " were superfluous. Thine own discretion will suggest  
 " unto thee better Arguments. Only this I know,  
 " that thou hast in thee too much *Julius*, not to be an  
 " Emperor.

17. *AUGUSTUS* seemed to incline to this latter  
 " opinion, whether moved with *Mecenas* Oration, especially  
 " his instance in Pompey, or that he was before relolved to  
 " follow that course; is uncertain. Howsoever, seeming  
 " with great attention to observe their speeches, and ga-  
 " therer their several reasons and motives together; he  
 " made this reply. " A most hard thing it is, for a divided  
 " mind to make a well-joynd Answer. Divided I am,  
 " and troubled between your two opinions; loth to  
 " follow either, thence in so doing I must offend  
 " one. Yet since there is a necessity of Resolution, I  
 " intend, though I like well of thy advice, *Agrippa*, to  
 " follow

follow thine, *Mecenas*. In doing which, I am but an instrument of the *Deities*, to put their wills in execution. Often have I heard my Father *Obavus* report, how *Nigidius*, famous for his skill in *Judiciary Astrology*, told him once in open *Senate*, That he had begotten an *Emperor* for the *Romans*. As also, how *M. Cicero*, so renowned for Wit and Eloquence, dreamed, that he saw *Jupiter* place me on the top of the *Capitol*, with a Whip in mine hand. Certainly, if the Powers of Heaven promise me to great an *Empire*, I will not be wanting to my self; but will add by my industry, to their influence. To further my designs, I do desire you, nay I conjure you both, that as you have been ever ready in your Counsels, for you would not now be backward in any necessary Alliance. This said, they presently enter into a new conference, how to manage a business of this weight; what *Senators* to acquaint with their intent, how to dispose of the *Army*, not yet calldred: with what *Plumets* it were best to found the minds of the common people, and to oblige all forts unto him. This Consultation ended, *AUGUSTUS* continued his assiduity to the People, and respect to the *Nobles*. An opportunity he had to express himself to both. There was at that time a Famine, which shrewdly ragged among the *Commons*. To the poorer sort, he distributed Corn, grain; to others, at a mean price. Riches and honours he communicated to both sorts; the better to wipe out of their memories, the ancient freedom. Such parts of the City as were destroyed by casualty of fire, ruined by length of time, or defaced during the *Civil Wars*, he re-edified. Houses of *Common-assembly* he repaired, Temples, consecrated to the gods, he spared no cost to adorn and beautify. And finally, he freely diffused his bounty, that there was no part or member of the City which had not some taste of it. Next, he dismissed his Soldiers, aligning them Lands and habitations in divers parts of *Italy*: That to the People might conceive his *Resignation* to be real, and yet, if need were, his forces might be quickly re-assembled. Nor were *Agrippa* and *Mecenas* waiting for their parts, to promote the cause, but carefully acquainted some of the *Senates* with it, who stood well affected to them; and cunningly prepared others, who had stood indifferent.

18. The foundation thus laid, and the *Senate* fate, *AUGUSTUS* rose from his seat, and spake to this, or the like effect. "When I consider with my self the infinite extent of the *Roman Empire*; I protest I stand at a maze: marvelling how such, as heretofore have raised combussions in the State, durst undertake the sole administration of it. What Nation in the World hath not either begged their Peace at our Gates, or felt the fury of our Wars at their own? What Countries have we not harried with Fire and Sword; making the rising and setting of the Sun the bounds of our Dominions? It mult questionless proceed from an over-weening conceit in them, of their own abilities; who thought themselves fit to undo that which they then, which none but the immortal gods can carry. Of my self I will not say much: Only, I hope I may say with modesty, that I am not inferior to *Cinna*, nor it may be to *Sylla*. Yet have I found in my self, by late experience, yet how unable I was to manage the affairs of State, even then when I had two *Co-adjutors*. There is no *Atlas* of strength sufficient to bear up this *Heaven*, Nor *Star* of influence sufficient, to animate this *Sphere*; Nor one form of virtue sufficient, to actuate this matter. Neither indeed it is fit, that the *Republick* which ought to be immortal, should depend only on the life and welfare of one man. There never

was, since the beginning of time, a City replenished with greater store of worthy and able men, either to consult or execute. Never was there less to grave and discreet a *Confistory*; Never for many of both sorts, to sit to govern. I have by your directions, and the Valour of your Soldiers, put an end to all home-bred quarrels. I have been your instrument to reduce peace internal and external, to your City; and desire now no other Guard or recompence, for any former services, than a quiet and a private life: free from all such dangers and inconveniences, as are inseparably annexed to the Sovereignty. Now therefore, (and may my action be auspicious and fortunate to my Country) do I resign my authority; committing my self, and the *Common-wealth* into the hands of the *Senate* and People of *Rome*.

19. This Oration ended, there followed a soft and silent buzzing in the house. Some supposed this speech not to have so much truth, as art and cunning; yet smothered their conceits for fear of after-claps. Others were creatures of their own making, and they hoping to rise in the fall of their Country, would not hear of a *Resignation*. Some few of the wisest sort thought it not expedient, to put the *Reins* again into the hands of the Multitude. The rest out of a sluggish and Phlegmatic Constitution, chose rather the present state with security, than to strive to recover the old with danger. All therefore with a joint-consent proclaim him sole *Emperor*; and solemnly intreat him to save the *Common-wealth*, otherwise running to inevitable ruin. He for a while, as vainly denied to accept the Government, as they vainly persisted to desire him. At last, wearied with the clamorous all in general, and importunity of some in particular; he by little and little yielded to their requests, taking upon him the *Empire* for ten years: with this Proviso, That if before that time expired, he could fully settle and order the present State, he would give up his charge. This he gave out, not with a purpose of performance, (for at the end of every *Decennium* he renewed his Lease of the Government.) But that the people seeing no sign a possibility of regaining their *Liberty*, might not practise against him. Whereas, had he for term of life received the supreme Authority, he had no doubt halsted his own overthrow. For well he knew, that not the Title of *Dictator*, but the Epithet *Perpetual*, was the destruction of *C. J. S. A. R.*: And yet a great respect was had also in the choice of the Title. The name of *King* he refused, as being odious unto the *Citizens*. Neither would he be called *Romulus*, though he much desired it; lest they should suppose that he did affect the *Tyranny*. When the people called him *Dictator*, he rent his Garments; desiring them to discharge him of a name so hated; and being once called Lord, (*Dominus*) he forbade all that Title by publick Edict. *Princeps Senatus* was the only Title he admitted: well knowing, that the like glorious attributes were heaped on his Father *Julius* by them which least loved him, only to this end, that growing more and more into hatred, he might the sooner be dispatched. Nor was he ignorant, that the *Common-people*, led more by appearances than truth, discerned names more plainly than execution: and that the only course to make greatness stand firmly, was to receive extraordinary power under a Title not offensive. The name also of *AUGUSTUS* conferred upon him by the *Senate*, (as if there had been something in him more than mortal) he refused not; as a Title expressing more dignity and reverence than authority. And having pleased himself in the choice of his Title, he next proceeded to the establishment of his power, which he thus pursued.

20. When

20. When first at the hands of the *Lords* of the *Senate*, he had for ten years received the Government; there was appointed unto him two *Coborts* of *Prætorian* Soldiers for the guard of his person; to whom the *Senate* allowed the double wages of a *Legionary* Soldier, to make them more vigilant and heedful in their charge. Over these he appointed two *Præfects* or *Governors*, (*Captains of the Guard* we may best term them.) To commit the charge to one only, might breed danger, to more, confusion. *Agrippinus* to settle *Nero* in the *Empire*, prevailed with *Claudius*, to make *Burrus*, whom he had at her devotion, the sole *Captain*: and *Nimphidius*, fallen from his hopes of fitting *Galba* belides the cushion; desired the command of the *Guard*, as the next step to Sovereignty. In choice of these *Captains*, he observed two Rules: First, he ever chose them, exordine *Equitri*, not *Senatorial*; lest that, to high a dignity joined to so high a birth, might irritate their resolutions to some designs against his quiet. Secondly, he made choice of two such, as were of contrary humours, and somewhat at odds; that so the ill intents of the one (if they should harbour any) might be thwarted and revealed by the others, and toward in his services. The next course which he took for his own security, was a law he made to curb the wills and attempts of the great ones. For whereas it hath been formerly unlawful to question a *Bondman*, in matters concerning the life and death of his Lord; *AUGUSTUS* passed an Act, that all such *Bondmen* should be first sold to him, or the *Commonwealth*. By means whereof he kept the *Lords*, before presuming on the secrecy of their slaves, from all close and private Conspiracies against him. Having thus strengthened his person, he assumed to himself the *Imperial, Consular, and Tribunician* authority, together with the *Sacerdotal* dignity. As *Emperor* and *General* of the Men of War, he could press Soldiers, raise Taxes, proclaim Wars, make Peace; yea, and put to death the very best and stoutest of the *Senators*. As *Consul*, it was in his power to reform corrupt manners, enquire after mens carriages, to take in and put out of the *Senate* whom he liked; to place and displace the people from a more honourable Tribe, to a less honourable. Yet would he not be called *Consul* as a name too inferiour; but accepted the *Prerogatives* of it, after the surrender of *Mannius*, and his Associates; two men for unity that *Magistracy*, that they could object no crime to old or young, of which themselves were not guilty. The *Tribunician* authority enabled him to hinder any thing attempted against his liking. It preserved his person from all contumely and injury; giving him power to punish, as an execrable person, yea, and without any formality of the Law) whosoever had offended him either in word or deed. As for the *Pontifical* dignity, it made him a little more revered, not more potent. Only it added to his title the title of *Pontifex Maximus*, or *Chief Bishop*; and made him of authority amongst the *Priests*, and in sacred matters, things that concerned *Religion*. The light of Reason taught him, that it was convenient for him, being a *Prince*, to have command on all his People; He had been clerk but half a *Monarch*, such as some *Princes* are with us; who quit their *Clergy* to be governed by a *Foreign Head*.

21. These several *Prerogatives* annexed together, seem not yet sufficient; and therefore he so cunningly dealt with the *Senators*, that they gave him a general Exemption from the *Codive* power of the Law. Which once obtained, he ferociously bends his thoughts to settle the *Common-wealth*; and so to settle it, that by uniting all parties, and giving satisfaction to all *Interests*, it

might not be obnoxious to such frequent and tumultuous alterations, as it had been formerly. But herein when he had consulted the ancient Platforms, he found no small difficulty. The form described by *Plato*, shewed rather how a City ought to be governed, than how it may be. *Aristotle*, though bred in the *Free-State* of *Greece*, was a friend to *Monarchy*; but his discourses dark, and speculative, and not easily reduced to practice. *Solon* afforded the People too much Authority; the *Nobles* too little, the *King* none. The old *Carthaginian* Legislators attributed too much to *Riches*, too little to *Virtue*. The *Persian* Law-makers indulged to the *King* too much, to the Subject nothing. And on the other side, *Lycurgus* in his modelling of the State of *Sparta*, ascribed too little to the *King*, and too much to the *Senate*. *Zaleucus* was rather the Author of some particular Laws, than the Framer of a *Commonwealth*. *Ptoleus*, and *Hippodamus*, as unimitable altogether as *Plato*. Seeing therefore that none of the old *Patterns* did come home to his purpose; and withal considering with himself, that the unmixt Forms of Rule were not equally balanced, and by consequence subject unto change: he resolved to frame his *Common-wealth* out of the perfections of the three good Forms, their imperfections being rejected; referring to himself the Supreme Majesty, to the *Senate* eminent Authority, to the People convenient Liberty, all in just and fit proportion. And to say truth, he did mix the Sovereignty of one, with the Liberty of all; that both the *Lords* and People, without fear of bondage or edition, enjoyed their accustomed Freedoms. The *Consuls* and *Nobles* of the City assembled as formerly they used; matters of State they handled by themselves; Ambassadors of foreign Nations they heard, and dispatched. The *Commons* did assemble in the *Comitia*, to enact Laws and elect *Magistrates*, as in the free *Common-wealth*; Yet to that nothing was done without the consent and privacy of the *Prince*, who for the most part nominated the successive *Magistrate*, leaving the confirmation of him to the people. So that the change, as he contrived it, was not violent and at once, but by degrees, and by the silent approbation of both Estates, as seeming to consist more in the alteration of the *Magistrate*, than of the Laws.

22. But (to proceed more particularly) the first care he took, was to confirm *Religion*, in the same state he found it. I mean *Religion*, as the *Romans* used the word, for these particular, though idolatrous Forms of Worship, which to their several gods had been used among them. This, though he might have changed, as the *Pontifex Maximus*, or *Chief Bishop* of the City; yet very wisely he forbore it. It is not safe for *Princes* that are settled in a long descent of Government, to be too active in such changes; But it is dangerous to attempt it in a green State, and in an Empire not well quieted, and inured to bondage. Men are more sensible of the smallest alterations in the Church, than greater changes in the State, and raise more frequent broils about it. The *Romans* specially were exceeding tender in this point. The ancient *Ædiles* formerly received it into their charge, that they permitted no external either Gods or Ceremonies, to be introduced into the City. And by *Amilius* it was enacted for a Law, That none should offer sacrifices in any publick place, after a new and Foreign fashion. Excellent therefore was the counsel which *Mecenas* gave him when he first undertook the *Empire*, viz. That he should follow constantly the *Religion* which he found established, and compel others also to do like. For, Foreign and strange Rites (saith he) will offend the people, work many inconvenient alterations.

alterations in the Civil State; yea and most likely "will occasion many both seditions and conspiracies. Words which he spake not to the air, but to a Prince exceeding apprehensive of the best advice. Nor did *AUGUSTUS* ever himself more careful in any one Act of Empire, than he did in this. That which *Mecenas* noted, we find true in these latter Ages; in times more skilful of obedience, than the most quiet hour of *AUGUSTUS* Government. No one thing more hath caused so frequent and so general Rebellions in the States of *Christendom*, than alterations of this nature. I cannot therefore but commend it, as a pious resolution in a late mighty Monarch: *Better some few corruptions should be suffered in a Church than still a Change.*

23. Religion thus established, in the next place the welfare of the whole Empire consisted chiefly in reforming of the City; from which, as from the heart, life was conveyed to all the Provinces abroad. And in the City the corruption was most apparent in the *Senate* it self. With them therefore he beginneth, well knowing that crimes in men of eminent place end not in themselves; but by degrees become diffused among their Clients and Followers. Now in the *Senate* were many and desperate men, who had been taken into it during the Civil Wars; as they could court the People, and humour such as were most potent. Of these he expelled none by his own power; but making a speech to them in the *Senate*, of the ancient order and present confusion of the house, he first exhorted them to look back on their former lives, and to judge of their own abilities and merits, for to honourable a room. Then he desired some of them to pick out such among them, as were in disposition factious, and in life faulty, but both to condemn to all their own actions; which they did accordingly. Yet as it often happeneth, that the great *Thief* leads the *left to the Gallies*; and as *Cominius* observed, that after the *Battel of Mantlibury*, Offices were taken from many for flying away, and conferred on such as ran ten miles beyond them: So remained many in the *Senate*, neither less vicious, nor less violent; only more potent to maintain their doings, than some others whom they had removed. *AUGUSTUS* therefore joying to him *Agrippa*, proceedeth to a new review: And certainly it much concerned him in the settling of his affairs, that none should have a voice in that famous Council, but such as were of able judgments, honest repute, and well affected to his Service and the Common-wealth. An enterprise which he esteemed dangerous; that he permitted entrance to no *Senator* till he were searched: himself wearing a *Brigandine* under his Gown; and being invironed with ten of the most courageous and best beloved of the whole company. Such as he found in either kind inexcusable, he discharged from their attendance; else chiding them in their places, which were either emboldened for their wildom, or noted-moderation, or otherwise strong in their dependants. Yet so that greatness of Revenue was esteemed neither a fit Patronage for any, if they were offensive; nor a just cause to challenge interest in the house. Such of them as were rich rather in the gifts of the mind, than those of fortune, he relieved with honourable Pensions; and finally he belittled himself so resolutely, that all confessed that they had need of such a wife Physician, to cure that dull Consumption, whereinto the *Common-wealth* was fallen.

24. In other things he seldom did proceed against them, as of himself; but when they any of them had conspired his ruin, he referred them to the judgment of their fellows. And this he did partly to reserve unto the Court the ancient Prerogative; partly not to be

Judge and Party in his own cause; but principally following the example of his Father *Julius*, who counter-acting a wretchless contempt of his adversaries, used, when he was least suspected, under hand, and by public Officers, to work their destruction. Many also of them whom the *Senate* had condemned he would freely pardon: Conceiving truly, that the questioning of men of high calling, would produce as much error, though it argued not so much rigor as the punishment. Yet if extremity of law was used towards some few, it was to settle quietness in the whole; and as it were a particular blood-letting for the general health. Those who had followed the Factions of *Brutus* and *Antony*, he forgave freely. And not for only, but by manifesting his works by his deeds, and adding truths and honours to his pardons; he made his Chair of State more settled, and immovable. So *Cesar*, by erecting the false and broken Images of *Pompey*, made his own statues stand more firmly. But the chief Act by which he bridled the Nobles, was an Edit by him promulgated, forbidding any of them, his leave not granted, to travel out of *Italy*. For well he knew, that an Empire unseated, and Provinces not quieted; the presence and authority of men of that rank, might raise greater troubles, than could be easily suppressed. Examples he wanted not, that especially of *Cato*; who after the overthrow of *Pompey*, fiercely such a War against *Cesar* in *Africa*; that he never thought Victory at a dearer rate. Yet not altogether to imprison them, he licensed them at their pleasure, to visit *Sicilia*, and *Gaul Narbonne* Provinces close to the Continent of *Italy*, altogether unarmoured for Wars; and indeed chide, as by reason of the variety of pleasures in them used, were more likely to weaken their minds, than to arm their bodies.

25. Now to give the *Senate* some sweet meat to their former lawce; he as much honoured and revered that *Order*, as ever it was in the *Free-State*: Submitting himself to their Judgments and appearing of his own accord, at most of their days of Session. Out of those he chose fifteen alterable every half year, to be of his *Privy-Council*; but then changing them for others: that so all of them might participate of that honour; and yet none of them be acquainted with too many of his Secrets. At his entrance into the *Senate*, he used courteously to salute the *Lords*; and so likewise at his departure. He knew full well that it was noted for great pride in his Father *Julius*, so much to sleight the *Lords* of that *House*, as he always did: never making to them any obeisance; no not then, when they came to tell him what honours were decreed unto him. This Reformation of the great Ones, soon made the lower sort more careful; both to observe good order, and to learn obedience. Yet did not *AUGUSTUS* refer all to *Præfidents*, but somewhat to *Prospit*. The *Roman Knights* he enlisted to yield an account of their lives; a course full of health and wisdom: Idleness being the root of all privacies, and public disorders. To the *Commons* in their *Comitia* and other meetings, he prescribed Laws and Orders as himself titled. The old authority of the *Tribunes*, dashed in the *Dictatorship* of *Sylla*, he would not restore. He suffered them to intercede for the People, but not to prefer or hinder any *Bill*, to the advancement or the prejudice of their *Estates*. Without this *Curia*, the *Commons* would never have suffered him to sit in the *Saddle*. For had the people had their *Tribunes* and had the *Tribunes* had their ancient dignity and power, which they had usurped; there had been little or no hope of altering the form of Government. So different are the ends of the *Common-People*, especially if nuzzled in a factious Liberty, from the designs of Sovereign Princes.

26. The

26. The City thus reformed in the principal errors and defects of it; he again exhibited unto them divers pleasures; as shews of Fencers, Stage-plays, Combats of Wild beasts, public Dancing, with variety of other delightful Spectacles. And this as well to breed in them a good conceit of the change; as by fearing let their cogitations, for want of other objects, would fix themselves upon his actions, and the old freedom. And therefore when some of his more severe and rigid Councillors advised him to interdict all such public pastimes, alleging, that the meetings of the people at those sports, and in so great numbers might at last end in some great tumult and sedition to the endangering of his person, and destruction of his whole Edifice; it was thus over-ruled by *Mecenas* (his most trusty Favourite) *Exspedis tibi, O Cesar, pibem sic occupamus esse*. That it best agreed with his affairs, to have the minds of the people taken up with these sports and pastimes; by which being sweetened and appeased, they were the less inclined of the yoke he had put upon them. But as for Horse-races, Tilt, and Turnaments, as he gladly cherished them, so he permitted them only to the Inhabitants of *Rome*: That to that City being the Seat-Town of his Empire, might be stored with good Horses, and expert Riders. Such of the *Commons* as were behind hand, he relieved: and when that many of them had made him Heir to their goods, he well knowing that no good Father did appoint to his Heir any Prince but a *Tyrant*, presently restored to the Children of the deceased the whole Patrimony. An action truly worthy of *AUGUSTUS* as a true a *Guardian of Orphans*, as a Father of his Country. Such Princes as gave covetously after other mens possessions, seldom enjoy the benefit of their own. The Treasures of Kings are then great, not when their own Coffers are full only, but their Subjects rich. Yet one thing more he seemed to leave unto the people, which they thought most pleasing, Liberty of Speech: Wherein sometimes they were so licentious, that they spared not *Agrippa* himself, to potent with the *Empire*. But he, good man, never using the Prince's favour to the prejudice of any, feared not to mark their taunts and slanders; whether with greater moderation or wisdom, I cannot tell. Neither did *AUGUSTUS* scape their foolish *Poissails* and infamous *Libels*. All which he winked at, knowing that contumacies of that nature slighted and contemned, soon vanish of themselves; but it repined and stormed at, seem to be acknowledged. A temper which he learnt of his Father *Julius*, who was perfect at it. And certainly it was a notable point of Wisdom in both of them. It is the misery of the best Princes, even when they do well to be ill spoken of. And therefore many times such follies are with more policy dissembled than observed, by the greatest Kings.

27. As for this lavishness of the tongue, it is a humour that springeth for the most part, rather from a delight in prating, than any malice of the heart: and they which use it are more troublesome than dangerous. *Julius* feared not the fat men, but the lean and spare. And so *AUGUSTUS*'s thought, that not men liberal of speech, but silent, close and sparing of their words, were most likely to raise tumults. Moreover, as long as the *Common People* retained this Liberty of Speech, they were the less knible of the loss of Liberty in State. Whereas in the days of *Domitians*, when not only they were prohibited to commune together, but even their secret sighs and tears were registred, then began they to look back with a furious eye on the old and common Liberty. Neglect is the best remedy for this Talking vein. When the humour is spent, the People will cease on their

own accords: till then, no forces can compel them. *Tacitus* taxeth *Vitellius* of great folly, for hoping, by force to hinder the continual reports of *Vespasians* revolt; that being the only way to increase, not diminish the rumour. And as much he extolled (I will not say how fitly) the Reign of Prince *Nerva*; wherein it was lawful for the Subject to think what he would, and speak what he thought.

28. These courses though he took to rectifie the *Senate*, and content the people, yet he flayed not them. There were too many of both sorts, dangerous and unquiet spirits, who flamed his proceedings; and under pretence of the ancient Liberty, were apt to any bold attempt, and sudden alteration. These as he winked at for the present, for he employed them (as occasion served) in his foreign Wars. Wherein he followed the example of his Father *Julius*, who when his Soldiers had displeased him, in their *Mutinies* and *Tumults*, would lead them presently unto some desperate and dangerous service: So weakening both his Foes which lay next unto him, and punishing those Soldiers which had disobeyed him. For, though *AUGUSTUS* had thrice shut the Temple of *Janus*, and cherished Peace, no Emperor more, of so large a Territory; yet when he flew his times, and that mens minds were active, and their thoughts disquieted; he could find presently occasion for some new employment. In this a Body Politick may be compared most fitly to the Body Natural. When we are full of blood, and our spirits boyling, there is not any *Physick* better than *Plebotomy*. But if a vein be broken in us, and we bleed inwardly, our estate commonly is dangerous, and almost incurable. So Princes, when their people are tumultuous and apt to mischief or when their thoughts are working, and hearkening after action: do commonly employ them in some service far from home; that there they may both vent their Anger, and employ their Courage. For let them stay at home to confirm their practices, and grow at last into a Faction; the State will suffer in it, if it be not ruined. We cannot have a fairer instance of this truth, than the proceeding of our fifth Henry, and the times next following: Whose former Wars kept us all quiet here at home; wasted those humours, and consumed those fiery spirits, which afterwards, the Wars being ended, inflamed the Kingdom.

29. But his main work was to content the Soldiers, and to make them sure. Some of which he dispersed as before I said, all about *Italy*, in thirty two Colonies; as well for the defence of the Country, as for their more speedy re-assembly, if need should require. Abroad amongst the Provinces were maintained upon the common charge twenty three Legions with their aids; besides 10000 of his Guard, and those which were appointed for the bridling and safety of the City. As to all of them he shewed an excellent thankfulness for their faithful services: so in particular to *Agrippa*, and to one other, whose name the Histories of that Age have not remembered. This latter had valiantly behaved himself at the *battel of Actium*: and being summoned to appear before the *Lords* of the *Senate*, in a manner which concerned his life, cried to *AUGUSTUS* for succour; who assigned him an Advocate. The poor fellow not contented with this favour, baring his breast, and shewing him the marks of many wounds: There (quoth he) have I received, *AUGUSTUS*, in thy service never supplying my place by a Deputy. Which said, the Emperor descending to the Bar, pleaded the Soldiers cause, and won it. Never did Sovereign Prince, or any that command in Chief, lose any thing by being bountiful of favours to their men of War. For this act quickly

spreading



spreading it self over all the Provinces, did fo indear him to the Military men, that they all thought their services well recompensed, in his graciousness to that one man. And now werc they fo far given over to him, that the Honours conferred on Agrippa, could not increase their love; well it might their admiration. Agrippa was of a mean and common Parentage. But supplying the defects of his Birth with the perfections of his Mind, he became very potent with AUGUSTUS; who not only made him Consul, but his companion in the *Tribunician Authority*, and *Provet* of the City. So many titles were now heaped on him, that *Mecenas* perfwaded the Prince, to give him his Daughter *Julia* to Wife; affirming it impossible for Agrippa to live safe, confidering how open new Creatures lie to the attempts of malicious men, unless he were ingrafted into the Royal Stem of the *Cæsars*. On which caufe questiond, for the stronger establishment of his new Honours; *Sejanus* afterward attempted, but not with the like success, the like match with *Livia*, *Tiberius* Daughter-in-Law.

30. The Senate, People, and Men of War, thus severally reduced to a Mediocrity of power and content, the next labour is to alter the old, and establish a new Government of the City it self. To effect which, he dashed all former Laws, by which the *Alites* and *Confederates* of the State were made free *Denizens* of the Town. That he conceived to be a way to draw the whole Empire into one City; and by the monstrous growth and encrease of that, to make poor the rest. Therefore this privilege he communicated unto a few only: partly that in the times of dearth, the City might not so much feel the want of sustenance; and partly that so ancient an honour might not be diffemled; but principally left *Rome* replenished with so huge a multitude of stirring and unruly spirits, should grow too headstrong to be governed in due order. The greatest and most populous Cities, as they are prone to faction and sedition, so is the danger greatest, both in it self, and the example, if they should revolt. This provident course notwithstanding there were in *Rome* men more than enough; and among them not a few male-content, and murmurers at the present fate, such as contemned the *Consuls*, and hated the Prince. To keep these in compais, AUGUSTUS (it being impossible for him to be still resident at *Rome*, and dangerous to be absent) constituted a *Provet* of the City for the most part chosen out of the *Senators*; assigning him a strength of 6000 men, called *Milites Urbani*, or the City *Souldiers*. To him he gave absolute and Royal authority, both in the Town and Territory near adjoining, during his own absence. To him were appeals brought from the other *Magistrates*; and finally to his Tribunal were referred all causes of importance, not in *Rome* only, but the greatest part of *Italy*. *Mestalla* was the first *Provet*; but proof being had of his insufficiency, the charge was committed to Agrippa: who did not only settle and confirm the City, but did the best he could to free the adjoining parts of *Italy* from *Thieves* and *Robbers*; and stopped the courses of many other troubles of the present State. And yet he could not with that power chide so speedily, or so thoroughly reform all these mischiefs; which in the late unsettled times were become predominant, as he did desire.

31. It is recorded that in the Civil Wars of *Marinus* and *Sylla*, one *Pompeius Tellestus* of the *Marian* Faction, told his General, That he did well to scour the Country, but *Italy* would never want Wolves as long as *Rome* was so fit a Forest, and so near to retire unto. The like might have been spoken to Agrippa; That he did well to clear the common *Roads* and *Passages*, but *Italy* would never

want *Thieves*, whilst *Rome* was so good a place of Refuge. For though he did, as far as humane industry could extend, endeavour a general Reformation both within the City and without; yet neither could he remedy, nor foretell all mischiefs. Still were they many, and those great disorders committed in the night seasons; when as no eye, but that to which no darkness is an obstacle, could discern the *Malefactors*. For in the first *Proscription*, many men used to walk the Streets well weaponed; pretending only their own safety, but indeed it was to make their best advantage of such men, as they met either in unfrequented Lanes and Passages, or travelling as their occasions did direct them, in the Night. To repress therefore the fool insolencies of these *Sword-men*, AUGUSTUS did ordain a Watch, consisting of 7000 free-men, their Captain being a Gentleman of *Rome*. In the day time, the Guard of the Town was committed to the *Provet*, and his City *Souldiers*; These *Vigils* resting in their standing Camps. In the night season, one part took their stations in the most suspicious places of the City; another, in perpetual motion traversed the streets; the rest lying in the *Corps de Garde*, to relieve their Companions. By which means he not only remedied the present disorders, but preserved the City from danger of Fire also: Yea, and secured himself from all Night-tumults, which carry with them (though but small) more terror and afflictment, than greater Comotions in the day. Never till now were the common people Masters of their own, both Lives and Substance. And now was travel in the Night, as safe, though not so pleasant, as at Noon.

32. The People and City thus settled, his next study is to keep the *Provinces* in a liking of the Change. But little *Rhetorick* needed to win their liking, who had long desired the present form of Government: mistaking the covetousness of *Magistrates*, the *Lawless* factions, being swayed hither and thither by ambition and corruption. These *Provinces* when he first took the Government, he thus divided: *Asia*, *Africa*, *Nomidia*, *Betia*, *Narbonensis*, *Sicilia*, *Corfica*, *Sardinia*, *all Greece*, *Crete*, *Cyprus*, *Pontus*, and *Bithynia*, being quiet and peaceable *Provinces*, of known and faithful obedience, he assigned unto the Senate. But the new conquered *Regions*, such as had not digested their loss of liberty, with whom any Rebellion or War was to be feared; he retained under his own command. Such were *Tarracensis*, *Lugdunensis*, *Germany*, *Belgica*, *Aquitania*, *Syria*, *Gilicia*, *Egypt*, *Dalmatia*, *Mysia*, *Pannonia*, &c. And this he did, as he gave out, to sustain the danger himself alone, leaving unto the Senate all the sweets of ease: but the truth was, to keep them without Arms, himself always strong, and in a readiness. The notable effects of which Council did not discover themselves only by the establishment of the Empire in his own person during life, and the continuance of it in the house of the *Cæsars* (though men of most prodigious Vices) after his decease: but in some of the Ages following also. For when the family of the *Cæsars* was extinct in *Nero*, the *Imperial* *Provinces* being so strong, and perceiving the *Consular* fo weakly assumed to themselves the creating and establishing of the following Prince. Thus *Galba* was made Emperor by the *Spanish* and *French* Legions, *Vitellius* by the *German*, *Vespasian* by the *Syrian* and *Pannonian*. The *Consular* *Provinces* never stirring, either to prevent their attempts, or to revenge them. And when they adventured once to advance *Gordian* to the Throne, all they could do, was but to betray the poor old man and all his family to a *tragic end*. And yet he did not so appropriate these *Provinces* to the Senate, but

but that they also (as well as those which he referred unto himself) were specified particularly in his private Register. In which (the better to manage the affairs of the Empire) he had set down what Tributes every of them paid, what Presents they sent in, what Customs in them were levied. That Book also comprehended the wealth of the publick Treasury, and necessary charge issuing out of it: What number of Citizens and Allies there were in Arms; what strength there was by Sea; with all other circumstances, the extent, strength, riches, and particulars of his estate. *William of Normandy* did the like when he first came into *England*, when he composed that first Roll of this Kingdom, which we call *Domesday Book*, or the *Roll of Winton*; according unto which, Taxations were compiled, and Aids exacted. The greatest Princes have not thought it a disparagement to be good Husbands; to know the riches of their Crowns, and have an eye to their *Intreaso*.

33. Britain was left out of this *Bead-Roll*, either because from thence there neither was much hope of profit, nor much fear of hurt; or else because being more desirous to keep than enlarge the Monarchy, he thought it most expedient to confine it within the bounds appointed by Nature. *Dauubius* on the North, *Mount Aspas* on the South, *Expatres* on the East, and the main Ocean on the West, did both bound his Empire and defend it. Some Kingdoms have their limits laid out by Nature, and those which have adventured to extend them further have found it fatal. The *Persians* seldom did attempt to stretch their Territory beyond *Darus*, but they miscarried in the action. And what was that poor River, if compared unto the Ocean? Many who loved *Glory*, or expected preferment by the Wars, incited him unto the conquest and Plantation of these Countries. Affirming, "That the barbarous people were naturally bad Neighbours; and though for the present not very strong, nor well skilled in Arms, yet might a weak Enemy in time gather great strength: that he ought to pursue the War for his Father *Julius* sake, who first shewed that Island to the Romans: that it yielded both refuge and supply to Malecontents of *Gaul*, and Enemies in *Germany*: that he would lose the benefit of a wealthy Country; stored with all manner of provision; and the command of a valiant Nation, born (as it were) unto the Wars. That it was an apostasy from honour, to licitly, and add nothing to the conquest of his Ancestors: That he was in all equity bound, as far as in him was, to reduce to Civility from Barbarism, to many proper and able men. But to these motives he replied, "That he had already refused to wage War with the *Parthians*, a more dangerous Neighbour, and far worse Enemy than the British: "That he had waste and desert ground enough in his Dominions, for many a large Plantation, when he saw it needless: That he had constantly refused, though with great facility he might, to conquer any more of the Barbarous Nations: That, as in the Natural body, a surfeit is more dangerous than fasting; so in the body Politick, too much is more troublesome than too little: That the Roman Monarchy had already exceeded the *Persian*, and *Macedonian*; and to extend it further, was the next way to make it totter and fall by its own weight. That he had learned in the Fable not to lose the substance by catching at the shadow. And finally, that many puissant Nations lay in and about *Britany*, against whom *Garrisons* must be kept, and he feared the *Revenues* would not quit the cost. And so the enterprise of *Britany* was quite laid aside.

34. For the assurance of the Provinces already conquered, he dispersed into them 23 Legions, with their *Adi-*

whose pay only, besides provision of Corn, and Officers wages, amounting to five Millions and an half of our *English* pounds, and somewhat more, were so duly paid unto the Armies, that we read seldom in the Histories of that Empire, of any Mutiny amongst the Souldiers, for want of pay. An happiness, whereof these ages have been little guilty. For the amassing of this treasure, and defraying of this Charge, AUGUSTUS made not use only of his own Revenue. Wars which are undertaken, and Souldiers that are levied for the common affairs, ought in all reason to be maintained on the Common purse. The Grandeur and security of an Empire, concerns in all respects, as much the People as the Prince. For which cause he erected an *Exchequer* in the City, which was called *Aerarium militare*, or the *Souldiers Treasury*; whereunto the twentieth part of every mans estate was brought, according to the true and perfect valuation. This was elected an heavy burden at the first; and indeed it was, but that the people felt the strictness and effects of it in the Common safety. In that respect, the Interest was greater than the Principal. Subjects that have a care either of the common peace or honour, will not repine at payments and taxations, though more than ordinary. It is a poor conceit to think that Princes either are able or obliged, to maintain the Wars without assistance from their people: or that the treasures which in these respects they give the King, they do not give unto themselves. I may perhaps repeat him for a cunning *Sophist*, but never for a faithful Subject which covens distinctions betwixt the welfare of the King and the weal of the Kingdom. These Legions he employed as occasion was, either to curb the Natives, or secure the Borders. The Roman Empire seldom had such perfect peace, but that there were employments always for the Souldiers. If that they had in any place a short cessation from the Wars, yet they were not idle. Idleness doubtless is the greatest enemy to *Martial Discipline*. Therefore he kept them at such times perpetually buied, either in paving *Roads*, or in draining *Marshes*. By means whereof, he made not only many of the Barbarous Countries, both fruitful in themselves, and profitable to the Chequer: but thereby also he secured his own affairs, and disarmed his enemies. For many times the Barbarous people trusting to such advantages, were apt too often to rebel; and having got themselves within those Myres and Fastnesses, stood on their Guard, as in some fashionable or defensible Fortresses. The surest means to keep a conquered people from all occasion of revolting, is to lay waste their Wood-lands, and make all parts passable. The opportunity of a safe retreat, makes not more *Thieves* than Rebels.

35. Those whom he placed over his Provinces and Armies, he neither would remove under three years Government, nor yet continue after five. A longer stay might teach them too much cunning in practising on the dispositions of the people, and perhaps prevent them to work unto the favour of the Natives, and the Men of War, and so at last establish in themselves a Sovereignty. *Cæsar's* long stay in *Gaul*, (a second five years being added unto that which was first allowed him) made him so potent with the People, and gracious with the Souldiers, that in the end he brought the Roman Empire under his subjection. And on the other side, to take them from their charges under three years continuance were to have called them home, before they were well learned in the Customs and the nature of the Provinces; so making them unable to instruct their Successors: As for the men whom he employed in those commands, he called them always out of the most valiant and upright in the Camp and Senate.





loved, constant and bountiful to the last. Finally such a one he was, of whom I will only say, what I find spoken of *Severus*; 'It had been an ineffable benefit to the Common-wealth of Rome, if either he had never died, or never been born.

Thus having drawn the picture of this puissant and prudent Prince (though I confide with too much shadow) I now proceed unto the Catalogue of the Roman Emperors: in which I shall take notice of such of their Actions only, as had relation to the Publick, either in the improvement or decarage of their Power and Empire; or point to any single matter which concerns the Church.

### The Roman Emperors.

A. M.

3918

1 *Julius Cæsar* the last of the Dictators, and the first of the Emperors: in memory of whom the following Emperors were called *Cæsars*, till the time of *Adrian*; when it became the title of the heir apparent, or designated Successor; the first who had it in that sense being *Ælius Verus*, though he lived not to enjoy the Empire.

3923

2 *C. Octavianus Cæsar*, to whom the Senate gave the name of *Augustus*; who added unto the Roman Empire the Provinces of *Noricum*, *Pannonia*, *Rhetia*, a great part of *Spain*, and the whole Kingdom of *Egypt*.

A. Chr.

In his time the Lord *CHRIST* was born.

17

3 *Thiberius Nero*, the Son in Law of *Augustus*, subdued many of the German Nations; and added *Galatia* and *Cappadocia* to the Empire. In his time, *CHRIST* suffered 23.

39

4 *Caius Caligula*, the Son of *Germanicus* Son of *Drusus*, the brother of *Tiberius* and of *Agrippina* Necece to *Augustus Cæsar*, by his daughter *Julia*.

43

5 *Claudius Cæsar*, Uncle to *Caligula*, Brother of *Germanicus*, and Son of *Drusus* by *Antonia* Necece to *Augustus* by his Sister *Octavia*; added *Britain*, and *Mauritania*, to the Roman Empire.

57

6 *Domitius Nero*, Son of *Enobarbus*, and *Agrippina* Daughter to *Germanicus*, the last of the *Cæsars*. He made the *Cædian Alpes* a Province of the Empire, and brought the *Armenians* to receive their Kings from the Roman Emperors; and was the first that raised any publick persecution against the *Christians*. An. 67. 12.

7 *Sergius Galba*, chosen by the French and Spanish Legions.

8 *Salustius Otto*, made Emperor by the *Prætorian* Soldiers.

9 *Ant. Vespasian*, elected by the German Legions.

71

10 *Flavius Vespasianus*, chosen by the Syrian and Judæan Armies, subdued utterly the Common-wealth of the Jews, by the valour and prowess of his Son *Titus* and brought *Archie*, *Lycia*, *Rhodes*, *Samos*, *Thrace*, and *Syria* Comagene, under the Form of Roman Provinces.

80

11 *Titus Vespasianus*, the fortunate Conqueror of the Jews.

82

12 *Fl. Domitianus*, who raised the second persecution against the *Christians*. An. 96. 15.

97 13 *Nerva Cocceius*, a noble Senator, but no Roman born; as all the rest had been before him, but not many after him.

99 14 *Vlpian Trajanus*, by birth a *Spaniard*, adopted by *Nerva*: he made *Dacia* a Province of the Empire, carried the Roman Armies over *Euphrates*, subduing *Armenia*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Assyria*, and raised the third Persecution against the *Christians*. An. 110. 19.

118 15 *Ælius Adrianus*, who utterly exterminated the Jewish Nation, and continued the Persecution begun by *Trajan*. 20.

138 16 *Antoninus Pius*, whose friendship was sought by the very Indians. 24.

162 17 *Marcus Antoninus*, furnished the Philosophers, associated *L. Verus* in the Government, by whose valour he subdued the *Parthians*. He raised the fourth Persecution against the Church. An. 167. 19.

181 18 *L. Antoninus Commodus*, Son to *Marcus*, the first Emperor that had been hitherto born in the time of his Fathers Empire. 13.

194 19 *Ælius Pertinax*, made Emperor against his will. *Didius Julianus*, who bought the Empire of the Soldiers.

195 21 *Septimius Severus*, took *Cæstrophon* from the *Parthians*, subdued the Provinces of *Ofoene*, and raised the fifth Persecution. An. 195. 18.

213 22 *Basilius Caracalla*, Son to *Severus*.

220 23 *Opilius Macrinus*, made Emperor by the men of War.

221 24 *Varius Heliogabalus*, the supposed Son of *Caracalla*.

225 25 *Alexander Severus*, Cousin of *Varius*.

238 26 *Maximinus*, a fellow of obscure birth; who being advanced to the Empire, raised the sixth Persecution. An. 237.

241 27 *Gordian*, elected by the Senate against *Maximinus*. 6.

247 28 *Philip*, an Arabian, supposed by some to be a Christian. 5.

252 29 *Decius*, slain in War against the *Goths*; the Author of the seventh Persecution raised against the Church. An. 252.

254 30 *Gallus Hostilianus*. 2.

256 31 *Emilianus* the Moor.

256 32 *Valerianus*, the Author of the eighth Persecution. An. 259. He was taken prisoner by *Sapores*, King of *Perfia*, and made to serve him for a footstool.

33 *Gallienus*, Son to *Valerianus*, in whose time the 30 Tyrants ingrossed unto themselves several parts of the Empire.

271 34 *Claudius II.*, who after a short and troublesome time, left it to

272 35 *Septimius* his Brother, who enjoyed the same but 17 days.

273 36 *Valer. Aurelianus*, restored again the ancient discipline, suppressed all the Invaders of the Empire, and vanquished the *Goths*; but was a great persecutor of the Church, An. 278. 6.

279 37 *Amavus Tacitus*, descended from *Tacitus* the Historian.

38 *Florianus*, an Emperor of two months only.

280 39 *Valerius Probus*. 6.

286 40 *Aurelius Carus*, together with his two Sons *Carinus* and *Numerianus*.

Dioclesian

288 41 *Dioclesian*, first associated *Maximinianus* by the name of Emperor, or *Augustus*; and afterwards *Galerius* of *Dacia*, and *Constantinus Chlorus*, by the name of *Cæsars*. He had had continual Wars against the *Perfians*, and raised the tenth Persecution against the Church, An. 295. Which held so long, and was so vehement, that as *St. Hierome* writes, there were 5000 slain for every day in the year, save the first of January. He afterwards resigned the Empire, and lived in private at *Salona*. 20.

303 42 *Constantinus Chlorus*, a friend to *Christians*. 2.

310 43 *Constantine*, Son of *Chlorus*, furnished *Magnus*, or the Great, the first Emperor that countenanced the Gospel, and embraced it publicly; which he is said to have done on this occasion. At the same time that he was located Emperor in *Britain*, *Maxentius* was chosen at *Rome* by the *Prætorian* Soldiers; and *Licinius* named Successor by *Maximinianus*, the associate of his Father *Chlorus*. Being pensive and solicitous upon these distractions, he cast his eyes up towards Heaven, where he saw in the Air a light Pillar in the form of a Cross, wherein he read these words, *In hoc signo*, In hoc vinces, and the next night our Saviour appearing to him in a Vision, commanded him to bear that figure in his Standard, and he should overcome all his Enemies. This he performed, and was accordingly victorious, from which time he not only favoured the *Christians*, but became a very zealous Professor of the Faith and Gospel. I know *Zosimus* an Heathen Historian, partly out of malice to the *Christians* in general, and partly a particular grudge to the Emperor *Constantine*, reporteth otherwise of the causes of his Conversion: But the authority and consent of all *Christian* Writers, who deliver it as before is told, is far to be preferred before the testimony of one single Heathen, had he not been biased (as he was) by his disaffections.

Before this time it is observed, that few (if at all any) of the Roman Emperors died a natural death, as after they generally did. From *Julius Cæsar* unto *Constantine* there were 40 in all. Of which *Julius* was openly murdered in the Senate, *Augustus* made away by his wife *Livia* as *Tiberius* afterwards by *Macro Caligula* was slain by *Cassius Chæres* as *Claudius* poisoned by his wife *Agrippina*, *Nero*, and *Orbs*, laid violent hands upon themselves, *Galba*, and *Vitellius*, massacred by the Soldiers; *Domitian* by *Stephanus*, *Commodus* by *Leites* and *Eldius*, *Perpetua* and *Fulgentius* by the Soldiers of their Guard; *Caracalla* by the command of *Macrinus*, *Macrinus*, *Heliogabalus*, *Alexander*, *Maximinus*, *Maximus*, and *Emilianus*, successively by the men of War, *Gordianus* by *Philip*, *Philip* by the Soldiers; *Hostilianus* by *Gallus*, and *Ælabius* died a Prisoner in *Parthia*; *Florianus* was the author of his own end, *Aurelianus* murdered by his household servants; *Gallienus*, *Quintillus*, *Murcius*, and *Probus*, by the fury of the military men. And yet I have omitted out of this Account such of the Emperors as were tumultuously made by the Army, without the approbation of the Senate; as also the *Cæsars*, or designed Successors of the Empire; most of which got nothing by their designation and a

doption, but as *citius interfectores*. Some of these were cut off their middlemembers: some for seeking to revive again the ancient Discipline, and some that others might enjoy their places. The chief cause of their continual massacres, proceeded originally from the Senate, and Emperors themselves. For when the *Senators* had once permitted the Soldiers to elect *Galba*, and had confirmed that election; *Evangelus* (saith *Tacitus*) *imperis arcem, principem alibi quam Romæ fieri posse*: more Emperors were made abroad in the field by the Legions, than at home by the *Senators*. Secondly from the Emperors alone, who by an unfeignable love to their Guard-Soldiers, so strengthened them with privileges, and nullified them in their licentious courtes; that on the smallest rebuke, they which were appointed for the safety of the Princes, proved the Authors of their ruin: so truly was it said by *Augustus* in *Dion*, *Metendum est esse fuisse custode, sed multo magis a custode metendum est*. The last cause (be it *causa per accidens*, or *per se*) was the larges which the new Emperors used to give unto the men of service; a custom begun by *Claudius Cæsar*, and continued by all his Successors: in so much that the Empire became fableable, and many times he which had most had it. As we see in *Dion*, when *Salpustianus* offering twenty *Sesteritians* to each Soldier, was (as if they had been by a flock at *Gleek*) out-bidden by *Julianus*, who promised them five and twenty *Sesteritians* amon. So that *Herodian* justly complaineth of this Donative; *Id institum casaque militibus fuit, ut etiam in posterum turpissimum contumacissimisque evaderent, sic in avaritia indies, ac principum contemptus, etiam ad sanguinem usque procederent*. That is to say, From this occasion and beginning, the Soldiers every day grew more shameless, and less regardful of their Prince: so that their covetousness encroaching, and the contempt they had of their Emperors waxing more and more, ended at last in the frequent shedding of their bloods, in hope to have a better Mark of the next Successor: So as the Emperor *Constantine* wanted not good reason, besides their hiding again him for *Maxentius*, to cashier these Guards, as grown more dangerous than useful to *Imperial* Majesty. And so accordingly he did, levelling their *banding Camp* to the very ground, disbanding the whole company, or putting them under other Officers, and to other Services, by means whereof they were not able to create the like disturbances, or dispose of the Empire as before. And for the Captains of these Guards which before were two (*Præfetti Prætorio in Latin*) he increased their number unto four (one for each quarter of the Empire, giving them a Civil Jurisdiction in exchange for the Military Command which they had before, and casting them behind in place after the *Patricii*, an Order of his own devising.

As for the extent and latitude of the Roman Empire, whilst it remained one intire Body (as it was before the time of *Constantine*, who at his death divided it among his Sons) it was in length about three thousand miles, namely from the *Isthmus* Ocean West, to the River *Euphrates* on the East; and in breadth, it reached from the *Danubius* Northward to Mount *Atlas* on the South, about two thousand miles. And though the Romans had extended their Dominions sometimes farther East, and North; yet could they never quite settle themselves in those conquests. Nature (as I formerly) had appointed them their bounds, not to much to limit their Empire, as to defend it. For the enemies found those Rivers, by reason of the depth of the Channel, and violent current of the stream, as a couple of impregnable Fortresses; purposely (as it were) erected to hinder

hinder them from harassing the Roman Countries.

The Revenues of it *Lippian* in his Tract de Magnitudine Romanæ, esteemeth to be about one hundred and fifty millions of Crowns; and that they were no less, may be made more than probable by these reasons: 1. It is affirmed by divers, and among others by *Batovic*, that the yearly Revenues of the King of *China* amount to one hundred and twenty millions of Crowns. And if this be true (as few question it) we cannot in proportion guess the whole Empire of the *Romans* to yield less than one hundred and fifty millions; especially considering what Arts-Masters the *Romans* were, in levying and raising their Taxes and customary Tributes. 2. The *Legionary* Soldiers which were dispersed over the *Provinces*, received in ordinary pay, (besides provision of corn, apparel, and Officers wages) five millions, 156062 pounds and ten shillings of our money; which amounteth unto sixteen millions of Crowns, or thereabout. In the City it self were kept in continual pay, seven thousand Soldiers of the Watch, four thousand or six thousand for the defence of the City? and ten thousand for the Guard of the Emperor's person. The two first had the same wages, the last the double wages of a *Legionary* Soldier. Add hereto the expences of the Palace, and other means of disburals, and I think nothing of the sum can be abated. 3. We read that *C. Caligula* spent in one year two millions and seven hundred thousand of *Sesteriis*; how *Nero* must lavishly gave away two millions and one hundred thousand of *Sesteriis*; and how *Vitellius* in few months, was nine hundred thousand *Sesteriis* in Arrearages; every *Sesterius* being valued at seven pence sixteen shillings three pence: all of them huge and infinite sums. 4. When *Vespasian* came to the Empire, the Exchequer was so impoverished, that he professed in open Senate, that he wanted to settle the Common-wealth four millions of *Sesteriis*, amounting to three hundred and twelve millions of our English money: which Protestation (saith *Sueton*) seemed probable, *Quia & male partis optime usus est*. Now unless the ordinary Revenues came to as much, or more than we have spoken; by what means could this extraordinary sum be raised? 5. We may guess at the general Revenue by the moneys issuing out of particular Provinces; and it is certain, that *Egypt* afforded the *Ptolemies* twelve thousand Talents yearly: neither had the *Romans* less, they being more perfect in inhabiting, than in abating their Intrado. *France* was by *Cæsar* called at the yearly tribute of twenty millions of Crowns. And no doubt the rest of the Provinces were rated accordingly. 6. And lastly, the infinite sums of money given by the Emperors in way of largesse, are proofs sufficient for the greatness of the Income. I will instance in *Augustus* only: and in him, omitting his Donatives at the victory of *Actium*, and thereby, I will specify the Legacy at his death: He bequeathed (by his Testament, as we read in *Tacitus*) to the common lot, and the rest of the people, three pound eight shillings a man to every Soldier of the *Prætorian* bands, seven pounds sixteen shillings three pence; and to every *Legionary* Soldier, of the *Roman* Citizens, four pound ten shillings six pence: which amounted to a mighty mass of money.

The Arms or Ensigns of this Empire when it was up and in the flourish, was the Eagle: not born, as now in colours, and a banner; but in an Image or Portraiture on the top of a Spear, or other long piece of wood, to be fixed in the earth at pleasure. This Ensign, Spear and Eagle together, they called the *Labarum*: *Quæ signa quædam Labarum Italia appendebantur Labra dicebantur*, saith *Lippian*, *Epist. Quæ. Ep. 5*. The use as of this, of

other standards, *Lyra* giveth us in his Notes on the second of *Numbers*, namely, *in ad eorum aspectum, bellatores dividuntur & mutantur*, to call together, and distribute the Soldiers according to occasions. And certainly for this end and purpose, were those Ensigns first invented. Afterwards they were applied to the distinguishing of Tribes and Families; and at last bestowed by Kings and Princes as the honorary tokens of well-deserving: Those which had been the Ensigns of War, becoming the ornaments of Peace. At what time the form of this *Labarum* was altered, and began to be born in colours, I have not yet read. It is now an Eagle *Saturus*, in a Field *Sol*, which kind of bearing the *Heralds* call *mostrich*. It was first born by *Cæ. Marius* in his second Consulship, and in his Wars against the *Gimbri*: from him conveyed to *J. Cæsar*, who was allied to him in design and person; and so derived unto the Emperors, his Successors.

But to proceed, *Constantine* having settled his affairs in peace, and cashiered the *Prætorian* Guards, left to new modelling the Empire; which he conceived to be too cumbersome and unwieldy to be governed by the former Policy: as indeed it was. And first of all, he augmented the *Roman* Provinces to the number of one hundred and twenty, or thereabouts; over every one of which he ordered a particular *Præfident*, that had his residence in the chief City of that Province. Then he reduced these Provinces under fourteen *Dioceses*, (for so he called the greater divisions of his Empire) seven of which were in the East parts thereof, that is to say, the *Diocese of Egypt*, of the *Orient*, of *Asia*, of *Pontus*, *Thrace*, *Dacia*, and *Macedon*: and as many also in the West, viz. the *Præfident* of the City of *Rome* (which I count for one), the *Diocese of Italy*, *Africa*, and *Illyricum*, of *France*, *Spain*, and *Brittain*. Finally instead of the *Præfident* *Prætorio* which had the command of the *Prætorians*, he ordained four for the quarters of the Empire: that is to say, the *Præfident* *Prætorio Italia*, under whom were the *Dioceses of Italy*, *Africa*, and *Illyricum*: *Præfident* *Prætorio Galliarum*, who had under him the *Dioceses of France*, *Spain*, and *Brittain*; 3. The *Præfident* *Prætorio Orientis*, who had commanded over the *Dioceses of Egypt*, the *Orient*, the *Asian*, the *Pontick* and *Thracian* *Dioceses*; And 4. the *Præfident* *Prætorio Illyrici*, under whole superintendence, besides *Illyricum* itself, were the *Dioceses of Macedon* and *Dacia* only, each of these *Præfidents* having a *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant in the several *Dioceses* under his authority, who fixed their residence in the head City of the *Diocese*. And thus I have the rather noted, because of the relation which the Policy of the *Christian* Church had to this Division: it being so ordered in the best and purest times thereof, that in every City where the Emperors had an Officer, whom they called *Defensor Civitatis*, the *Christians* should have a *Bishop*: in every chief City of the Province a *Metropolitan*; and over every *Diocese* an *Archbishop* or *Primate*, from whom lay no Appealation to any other. And so far *Constantine* did well; if at the least the casting of the Empire into so many *Dioceses* was of his devising. But I have reason to believe, that it was more ancient: the Patriarchs or Primates of *Rome*, *Carthage*, *Alexandria*, *Antioch*, and other of the greater Churches, being settled in a preeminence of jurisdiction over the Provinces, and *Metropolitans* assigned to them long time before the Council of *Nice*, and consequently before the Empire (may the birth of *Constantine*, who possibly might act no more in this great business, than the assigning of a *Præfident* *Prætorio* to each several quarter, and the allotting of the *Dioceses* unto each *Præfident*. But whether it were so or not, certain it is, that he committed divers errors, which did more pre-

judice

judice the Empire, than any thing that had been done by his Predecessors. First in translating the Imperial Seat from *Rome* to *Byzantium*; by which transplantation, the Empire lost much of its natural vigour: as we see by experience of Plants and Flowers, which being removed from the place of their natural growth, lose much of their vermic which was formerly in them. On which reason, *Camillus* would not suffer the *Romans* to remove their Seat unto the City of the *Pith*, newly conquered by him: but to prevent them in it, let fire on the Town, and so consumed it, *utrimque Vicis, finit, Laborem Antulianum fides*, as my Author hath it. A second fault of this *Constantine*, was the dividing the Empire amongst his Sons, which only concerned himself. For though it was quickly re-united in the person of *Constantius* (his brethren dying without issue), yet his example being followed by others, the Empire was after torn into many pieces to the defolation of the whole. 'Tis true, the former Emperors used sometimes to associate some partner with them; but so, that they did manage it as one sole Estate: *Constantine* (if I remember rightly) being the first which parcelled it into several Sovereignities, each independent of the other, allotting to *Constantius*, *Greece*, *Thrace* and all the Provinces of the East, to *Constantius*, *Italy*, *Illyricum*, *Africa*; to *Constantine*, *Gaul*, *Spain*, and *Brittain*. The third fault of this Emperor was his removing the *Legion* and *Colonies* which lay before on the Northern Marches, into the Eastern parts of his Dominions; pretending to use them as a Bulwark against the *Persians*, & lying thereby those passages open, at which not long after the Barbarous Nations entered, and subdued the West. For though instead of these *Colonies* they placed Garrisons and Forts in convenient places, yet these being filled with Soldiers, for the most part out of other Countries, fought not as in defence of their native Soil, (as the *Colonies* would and must have done) but on the first onset of those Barbarians abandoned them to the will of the enemy. So that *Zozymus* (though in other of his reports about this Prince he bewrayeth much malice) doth call him, not untruly, the first Subverter of that flourishing Monarchy. To these three we may add a fourth, which concerns the Emperors in general; namely their stupid negligence and degenerate spirits, which shewed it self most visibly in the last of

#### The Western Emperors.

- 341 1 *Constantius*, the youngest son of *Constantinus Magnus*, his brother *Constantine* being dead, in the third year of his reign, remained sole Emperor of the West. 13.
- 354 2 *Constantius*, the other of *Constantinus* sons succeeded *Constantius* in his part, after his decease; uniting the divided Empire into one Estate.
- 359 3 *Valentinian* Emperor of the West, his brother *Valens* ruling in *Constantinople*, and the Eastern parts.
- 4 *Valentinian* II. youngest son of the former *Valentinian*.
- 399 5 *Honorius* the second son of *Theodosius* the Emperor, (his elder brother *Arcadius* reigning in the East) in whole time *Alaric* with the *Goths* invaded Italy, sacked *Rome*, and made themselves Masters of the Country, which afterwards they left in exchange for *Spain*. 26.
- 425 6 *Valentinian* III. during whose time *Attila* and the *Hunnes* made foul work in Italy; and the *Vandals* seized upon *Africa*, as they did on *Italy* and *Rome* also after his decease: Murdered by *Maximus* a *Roman* (whose wife he

had trained into the Court, and ravished) as shall be shewn hereafter on another occasion. He was son unto *Constantinus Cæsar* by *Placidia* sister to *Honorius*, and Widow of *Ambulius* King of the *Goths*.

- 455 7 *Maximian* having slain *Valentinian* the third, succeeded in the Empire; but on the coming of the *Vandals*, whom *Eudoxia* the wife of *Valentinian* (who had some inkling of the manner of her husband's death) had drawn into Italy, he was flung to death by his own Soldiers. 1.
- 456 8 *Avitus*, chosen Emperor in a military tumult.
- 457 9 *Majorianus*, 7.
- 461 10 *Severus*, 6.
- 467 11 *Anthemius*, who at the end of five years was slain (as were the three before him) by *Recimus* a *Saracen* born, the chief Commander of the Armies, who had an aim to get the Empire for himself, but died as soon as he had vanquished and slain *Anthemius*.
- 471 12 *Olybrius*, an Emperor for six months only.
- 472 13 *Glycerius*, another of as little note: As also was 14 *Julius Nepos*, deposed by *Orestes* a noble *Roman*, who gave the Empire to his son, called at first *Monimus*; but, after his assuming the Imperial title, he was called as in contempt *Angustulus*.
- 473 15 *Angustulus*, the last of the Emperors who resided in Italy, vanquished by *Odoacer* King of the *Herals* and *Turingians*. An ominous thing, that as *Angustulus* raised this Empire, so an *Angustulus* should ruin it.

But though *Angustulus* lost the Empire, yet *Odoacer* was not suffered to enjoy it long: Zeno the Emperor of the East (thence *Theodosius* King of the *Goths*, to expel him thence; and to possess himself of Italy, the reward of his valour. And thus the Emperor did the rather, partly because the *Goths* were Christians, and in good terms of correspondence with him; but principally to remove that active Nation somewhat further off, who lay before too near the borders of his own Dominions. And that he might diminish them with the greater content and honour, he made *Theodosius* a *Patriarch* of the *Roman* Empire: an honour first devised by the Emperor *Constantine*; and of so high esteem from the first Institution, that they who were dignified therewith, were to have precedence of the *Prætorio* *Præfident*, who before took place next to the Emperor himself. Nor did the famous *Charlemain* fit upon it any lower estimate, in case he did not add much unto it; when to the Title of Emperor of the *Romans*, he added that of a *Patriarch* in the title Imperial. *Theodosius*, thus authorized and encouraged, marches toward Italy; and having vanquished *Odoacer*, secures himself in his new Conquests by divers politic proceedings: first by Alliances abroad, and then by Fortresses at home. To fortify himself abroad he took to Wife *Amalobeda*, daughter to *Chlodovech* (or *Chlovis*) King of the *French*; marrying his sister *Hemeltruda* to *Thorismund*, King of the *Vandals*; a Prince of the *Goths* in *Spain*; and *Amnelberga* his Niece, to *Hermandfridus* King of the *Turingians*. Being thus backed with these Alliances with his Neighbour-Princes, (all equally concerned in the subverting of the *Roman* Empire) he built Towns and Forts along the *Alpes*, and the shores of the *Adriatic*, to impeach the passage of the barbarous Nations into Italy. His Soldiers and Commanders he dispersed into most parts of the Country; partly to keep under the *Italians*, of whose wavering and unconstant nature he was somewhat doubtful; partly to unite

unite both peoples in a mixture of Language, Marriages, and Customs; and partly that he might more easily in War command them, and in Peace correct them. Italy, which before was made a thorough-fare to the barbarous Nations, and quite disordered by the frequent inundations of Lust and Rapine; he reduced to such a peaceable and settled Government, that before his death they had quite lost the memory of their former miseries: insomuch whereof a general felicity had diffused it self over all the Country. Such Cities as had been formerly defaced, he repaired, strengthened, and beautified. In his Wars he was victorious, temperate in his times of Peace, and in his private carriage discreet and affable. Finally (as *Velleius* saith of *Marcus Antoninus*) he was *Nationis magis quam rationis Barbarus*: And went the most judicious way to establish his dominion in Italy, of any of the Barbarous Princes that ever had invaded the Roman Provinces, which he left thus confirmed and settled unto his Successors.

A. Chr. The Kings of the Goths in Italy.

- 495 1 *Theodorick* of whom before; who to his conquest of Italy added that of *Illyricum*, as also the appendant Islands to both those Countreys; and wrested *Provence* in France, from the *Goths* of Spain.
- 527 2 *Alabalaricus*, Nephew to *Theodorick* by his daughter *Amalsueta*, who in the minority of her son managed the affairs of the *Goths* in Italy. Fearing some danger out of Greece, he rebuked *Provence* to the French, and by their aid drove the *Burgundians* out of *Liguria*. A Lady skillful in the Languages of all those Nations which had any commerce with the Roman Empire, insomuch that *pro miraculo fuerit ipsam audire loquentem*, saith *Procopius* of her.
- 534 3 *Theodatus*, the son of *Hummelfride*, the sister of *Theodorick*, succeeded on the untimely death of *Alabalaricus*. Who being in War with the Romans, (or rather with the Greek Emperors, endeavouring to recover Italy from the hands of the *Goths*) and desiring before hand to know his success; was willed by a Jew to thrust up a certain number of Swine, and to give some of them the names of *Goths*, and unto others the names of Romans. Which done, and going to the flies not long after, they found the Hogs of the *Gothish* faction all slain, and those of the Roman half unbrui'd: and thereupon the Jew prophesied, That the *Goths* should be discomfited, and the Romans lose a great part of their strength; and it proved accordingly. Which kind of Divination is called *Ovaricaria*, and hath been prohibited by a General Council. The loss of this battel (won by *Belisarius* Commander of the Armies of the Emperor *Justinian*) drew on the loss of Rome, and the East parts of Italy, (with the Realm of Naples) and occasioned the death of *Theodatus*, slain shortly after these great losses by the *Goths* themselves.
- 537 4 *Vitiger*, chosen by the *Goths*, besieged and taken in *Ravenna* by the said *Belisarius*.
- 540 5 *Idabaldus*, Governour of *Vercina* on the calling home of *Belisarius*, chosen by the *Goths*, and by them not long after slain.
- 541 6 *Adaricus*, of whom nothing memorable.
- 542 7 *Totilas*, a right valiant Prince, recovered all which had been got from his Predecessors, and

sacked Rome in the fight of *Belisarius*, then returned into Italy, as not able to hinder him. Vanquished and killed in fight by *Narses*, in the 11. of his Reign.

- 553 8 *Teyas*, the last King of the *Goths* in Italy, who being vanquished by *Narses* in the fourteenth year of his Reign, submitted himself to the Eastern Emperours; but after breaking out again, he was finally discomfited, and slain by *Narses*, not far from the City of *Nocera*. An. 567. After which time, the *Goths* and the *Italians* mingled in Blood and Language, became one Nation.

But the miseries of Italy, and those Western parts were not so to end. No sooner had God freed them from the rod of his visitations, which he had laid upon them in the times of *Persecution*, formerly remembered; and giving them peace within their dwellings; but they became divided into *Schism* and *Factions*: and after wallowed in those sins; which a continual surfeit of prosperity hath commonly attending on it. Insomuch that devout *Salvian*, who lived much about these times, complains of that high hand of wickedness, wherewith they did provoke the patience of Almighty God; the lives of *Christians* being grown to deplorably wicked, that they became a scandal to the Faith and Gospel. In *advis pastor* *Christus approbatus*, in *advis pastor* *Christus maledictus*, saith that good Bishop. So that their sins being ripe for vengeance, God sent the barbarous Nations, as his *Executioners*, to execute his divine justice on the impudent men, and made themensible though *Heathens*, that it was Gods work they did, and not their own; in laying such afflictions on these Western parts. *Ipsi facientes non suum esse quod faciunt*, *agunt se & pergerunt divino iussu*, as the said good Bishop doth inform us of them. On this impulsion the *Vandals* did acknowledge that they first wasted Spain, and then harried *Africa*: And at the same time, did *Attila* the *Huns* insert into his Royal Titles the stile of *Malleus Orbis*, and *Flagellum Dei*; acknowledging thereby his own apprehension of some special and extraordinary calling to this publick service. Nay, as *Jorandus* doth report, some of these barbarous people did not stick to say, that they were put on this employment by some Heavenly visions, which did direct them to the work which they were to do. In prosecution of the which, in less time than the compass of 80 years, this very Italy (though anciently the strength and seat of that Empire) was seven times brought almost unto desolation, by the Fire and Sword of the *Barbarians*, viz. First by *Alarick*, King of the *Goths*, who sacked Rome, Naples, &c. 2. By *Attila* King of the *Huns* who razed *Florence*, wasted *Lombardy*, and not without much difficulty was diverted from the spoil of Rome, by the intercession of Pope Leo. 3. By *Geisericus* King of the *Vandals*, who also had the sackage of Rome it self. 4. By *Biorgius* King of the *Atians*, in the time of the Emperor *Maiorianus*. 5. By *Odoacer* King of the *Hernis*, who drove *Augustulus* the last Western Emperor out of his estate; and twice in thirteen years laid the Country desolate. 6. By *Theodorick* King of the *Goths*, called in by *Zeno* Emperor of *Constantinople* to expel *Odoacer* and the *Hernis*. And 7. by *Gundabild* King of the *Burgundians*, who having ransacked all *Lombardy*, returned home again, leaving possession to the *Goths*. As for these *Goths*, being the first and last of those barbarous Nations who had any thing to do in the spoil of Italy, after they had reigned here under eight of their Kings, for the space of 72 years, they were at last subdued by *Belisarius* and *Narses*, two brave

bravest Souldiers that had ever served the Eastern Emperours; and Italy united once more to the Empire, in the time of *Justinian*. But *Narses* having governed Italy about 17 years, and being after such good service most despitigly used by *Sophia* (never the wiser for her name) the Wife of the Emperor *Justinus*, abandoned the Country to the *Lombards*. For the Emperess envying his glories, not only did procure to have him recalled from his Government, but sent him word, That she would make the Eunuch (for such he was) come home and spin among her maid: To which the discontented man returned this answer, That he would spin her such a web, as neither she nor any of her minions should ever be able to unweave. And thereupon he opened the passages of the Country to *Alboinus* King of the *Lombards*, then possessed of *Pannonia*, who coming into Italy with their Wives and Children, possessed themselves of all that Country which anciently was inhabited by the *Cisalpine Gauls*, calling it by their own names *Lombardia*, now commonly *Lombardy*. Nor laid he thereto but made himself master of the Countries lying on the *Adriatick*, as far as to the borders of *Apulia*; and for the better Government of his new Dominions, erected the four famous Dukedoms, 1. Of *Friuli* at the entrance of Italy, for the admission of more aids it occasion were, or the keeping out of new Invaders; 2. Of *Turin*, at the foot of the *Alpes* against the French; 3. *Benevent*, in *Abruzzo*, a Province of the Realm of Naples, against the incursions of the Greek; then possessed of *Apulia*, and the other Eastern parts of that Kingdom; And 4. of *Spoleto*, in the midst of Italy, to suppress the Natives; leaving the whole, and hopes of more unto his Successors.

A. Ch. The *Lombardian* Kings of Italy.

- 568 1. *Alboinus*. 6.
- 574 2. *Clephas*. 1.
- Interregnum avarorum. 11.
- 586 3. *Ansbarg*. 7.
- 593 4. *Agilulfus*. 25.
- 618 5. *Adalulfus*. 10.
- 638 6. *Autaulfus*. 11.
- 649 7. *Ricobard*, or *Robarid*.
- 651 8. *Radulfus*. 9.
- 660 9. *Arbiterius*. 9.
- 669 10. *Gundabertus*. 1.
- 670 11. *Grimoldus*. 9.
- 679 12. *Garibaldus*, mens. 3.
- 679 13. *Parabardus*. 18.
- 698 14. *Cunibertus*. 12.
- 710 15. *Luitbertus*. 1.
- 711 16. *Raimbertus*. 1.
- 712 17. *Arbiterius* II. 12.
- 723 18. *Alprandus*, mens. 3.
- 723 19. *Luitprandus*. 21.
- 744 20. *Hildebrandus*, mens. 6.
- 744 21. *Rachisius*. 6.
- 750 22. *Alstulfus*. 6.
- 756 23. *Desiderius*, the last of the *Lombards*, of whom more anon. In the mean time, we will look into the story of some of the former Kings, in which we find some things deserving our consideration. And first beginning with *Alboinus*, the first of this Catalogue: before his coming into Italy he had waged war with *Cassimundus*, a King of the *Cepheis*, whom he overthrew, and made a drinking Cup of his Skull. *Belisandus* daughter of this King he took to Wife, and being one day merry at *Verona*, forced her to drink out of that dented Cup; which the she loathed, that she promised one *Helmichild*, if he would aid her in killing the King, to give him both her self and the Kingdom of *Lombardy*. This when

he had consented to, and performed accordingly, they were both so extremely hated for it, that they were fain to flee to *Adriana*, and put themselves into the protection of *Longinus* the Exarch. Who partly out of a desire to enjoy the Lady; partly to be possessed of that mass of Treasure which the was fain to bring with her; but principally hoping by her power and party there, to raise a beneficial War against the *Lombards*, persuaded her to dispatch *Helmichild* out of the way, and take him for his husband; and to which the willingly agreed. *Helmichild* coming out of a Bath called for drink, and the gives him a strong poyson; half of which when he had drunk, and found by the strange operation of it how the matter went, he compelled her to drink the rest: so both died together. 2. *Clephas* the Second King extended the Kingdom of the *Lombards* to the Gates of Rome: but was so tyrannical withal, that after his death, they resolved to admit of no more Kings, distributing the Government among thirty Dukes. Which division, though it held not above twelve years, was the chief cause that the *Lombards* failed of being the absolute Lords of all Italy. For the people having once cast off the yoke of obedience, and tasted somewhat of the sweetness of licentious Freedom; were never after so reduced to their former duty, as to obsequy to their Kings in such Achievements as tended more unto the greatness of the King, than the gain of the subject. 3. *Cunibert* the 14. King was a great lover of the Clergy, and by them as lovingly requited. For being to encounter with *Allochis* the Duke of *Trent*, who rebelled against him: one of the Clergy knowing that the Kings life was chiefly aimed at by the Rebels, put on the Royal Robe, and thrust himself into the head of the Enemy, where he lost his own life, but saved the Kings. 4. *Arbiter* the 17. King, gave the *Colian Alpes* containing *Piedmont*, and some part of the Duchy of *Milain* to the Church of Rome: which is observed to be the first Temporal Estate, that ever was conferred upon the Popes, and the foundation of that greatness which they after came to. 5. The 19. King was *Luitprandus*, who added to the Church the Cities of *Ancona*, *Narnia*, and *Humana*, belonging to the *Exarchatus*; having first won *Ravenna*, and the whole *Exarchatus* thereof An. 741. The last Exarch being called *Eutychus*. But the *Lombards* long enjoyed not his Conquests. For *Steph* King of France, being by Pope *Stephen III.* solicited to come into Italy; overthrew *Agilulfus*, and gave *Ravenna* to the Church. The last King was *Desiderius*, who falling at odds with *Adrian* the First, and besieging him in Rome, was by *Charles* the Great, Successor to *Pepin*, besieged in Pavia, and himself with all his Children taken Prisoners, An. 774. And to end the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, having endured in Italy 9.6 years. *Lombardy* was then a Province of the French, and after of the German Empire: many of whose Emperours used to be crowned Kings of *Lombardy*, by the Bishops of *Milain*, with an Iron Crown: which was kept at *Moscuca*, now called *Monza*, a small Village. This *Charles* continued his Fathers former donations to the Church; and added of his own accord, *Maree Anconitana*, and the Dukedom of *Spoleto*. For these and other kindnesses, *Charles* was by Pope *Leo IV.* on Christmas day crowned Emperor of the West, Anno 800. whose Successors shall be reckoned when we come to the story of Germany. At this division of the Empire, *Irene* was Emperess of the East; to whom and her Successors was no more allotted that the Provinces of *Apulia*, and *Calabria*, (the East parts of the Realm of Naples) being then in possession of the Greek. To the Popes were confirmed or given by this Emperour and his Father, almost all the Lands which they possess at this day; though afterwards extorted from them by the following

following Emperours, or under colour of their Title: by many several ways and means brought again unto them, as shall be shewn hereafter in convenient place. The *Venetians*, in that little they then had, remained *suæ juris*. The rest of *Italy*, containing all the other Provinces of the Kingdom of *Naples*, together with *Tuscany*, *Frinds*, *Trevisina*, and whatsoever is at this day in the possession of the Dukes of *Milân*, *Mantua*, *Modena*, *Parma*, *Monferrat*, and the Duke of *Savoy* as Prince of *Piedmont*, together with *Liguria*, or the States of *Genova*, was reserved by *Charles* unto himself, and in his life-time given by him to *Papian* his Second Son, with the title of King of *Italy*. But long it did not rest in the House of *France*; the Princes of the *Lombards* wresting it from the Line of *Charles*, and after weakening and dividing it by their several Factions, till in the end, instead of an united Kingdom, there rose up many scattered Principalities, as shall hereafter be declared. But first we will proceed to the Kings of *Italy*, of which we shall endeavour as exact a Catalogue, as the confusions of that State can be capable of.

The Kings of *Italy*, of the *French*, *Italian*, and *German* Lines.

1. *Papian*, Son of *Carolus Magnus*, died before his Father.
2. *Bernard*, Son of *Papian*.
3. *Ludovicus Pius*, Emperor, and King of *France*.
- 841 4. *Lotharius*, Emperor, eldest son of *Ludovicus*: 15.
- 856 5. *Ludovicus II*, Emperor, eldest son of *Lotharius*: 20.
- 876 6. *Carolus Calvus*, Emperor, the youngest son of *Ludovicus Pius*: II.
7. *Caroloman*, Nephew to *Ludovicus Pius*, by *Ludovicus* his second son, (surnamed the *Antient*).
8. *Carolus Crassus*, or the Fat Emperor, brother of *Caroloman*, the last King of *Italy* of the house of *Charles*, he died Anno 888.
- 888 9. *Guy*, Duke of *Spoleto*, contends with *Berengarius* Duke of *Frinds* both of the *Longobardian* Race, of the Kingdom of *Italy*; and in fine carrieth it against him.
- 894 10. *Lambert*, the son of *Guy*, crowned by Pope *Formosus*.
11. *Ludovicus*, son of *Boson* Earl of *Ardenne*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, by some Writers called only Earl of *Provence*; upon the death of *Lambert* invadeth *Italy*; and is made King.
- 917 12. *Berengarius* Duke of *Frinds*, vanquisheth *Ludovicus*; is made King of *Italy*; and at last overcometh by the *Hungarians* who having wasted the Country returned back again.
13. *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy Transjuranus*, called into *Italy* against *Berengarius*, relinquit in exchange for the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy* to his Cousin.
- 926 14. *Hugh I*, *Arles* King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, who held the Kingdom of *Italy* upon this resignation; but after many troubles, was at last ousted of it by *Berengarius*, and returned into *France*.
- 946 15. *Berengarius II*, son of the former *Berengarius*, on the retreat of *Hugh*, received by the *Italians* as Protector to *Lotharius* the son of *Hugh*; besieging *Adelbair* the next Heir of *Italy* (on the death of *Lotharius*) was taken prisoner by the Emperor *Otho*.
16. *Otho*, called into *Italy* by *Adelbair*, daughter to *Rodolph* King of *Burgundy* and *Italy*; married the Lady, and in her right is King of *Italy*.

- 974 17. *Otho II*, son of the former *Otho*, married *Theophania* Niece to *Nicephorus Phocas*, Emperor of *Constantinople*, and hath *Calabria* for her Dowry: 20.
- 984 18. *Otho III*, Emperor, and King of *Italy*, in whose minority the Kingdom was usurped by 19. *Harduinus*, a man of great power in *Italy*, who kept it all the time of *Otho*; till being broken with long Wars by *Henry* the succeeding Emperor, he was forced to quit it.
20. *Henry*, the second Emperor of that name, having thrice vanquished *Harduinus*, got the Kingdom of *Italy*, and left the same unto the Emperors his Successors: the Title of *Italy* after this time being drowned in that of the Empire; and the Country governed as a part and Member of the Empire, by such Commanders and other Officers as the Emperors from time to time sent thither. But long it did not in that state. For the Popes of *Rome* knowing how much it did concern them in point of Policy, to weaken the Imperial Power in *Italy*, without which their own Grandeur could not be maintained; stirred up continual Factions and Wars against them; and by that means, and by the Censures of the Church which they denounced according as they saw occasion, did so astonish and distract them, that in the end the Emperors began to lay aside the affairs of *Italy*, by which they reaped more trouble than the profit came to. Inasmuch that *Rodolphus Habsburgensis*, a valiant and a politic Prince, finding the ill success which *Henry* the 4. and 5. and *Frederick* the 1. and 2. Emperors of more puissance than himself, had found in their *Italian* actions and pretensions; resolved to rid his hands of that troublesome and fruitless Province; and to that end made as much money as he could of that Commodity, which he saw he was not like to keep. And yet he sold good penny-worths too, to them that bought them; the *Florentines* paying for their Liberties but six thousand Crowns, the Citizens of *Lucca*, ten thousand; and others as they could make their Markets. And being once required the reason, why he went not into *Italy* to look to the affairs thereof, as his Predecessors had done before him; he is said to have returned for answer that conceit of the Fox, for his not going to attend (as other beasts did) at the Lion's Den:

Quia me vestigia terrent,  
Omnia te adesse sum spectant, nulla retrosum.

That is to say;

I dare not go, because no track I see  
Of any Beast returning towards me.

Which faulty and impudent resolution being followed by too many of his Successors, not only gave the Popes the opportunity they looked for, of making themselves the great disposers of the affairs of *Italy* but many pious Princes thereby took occasion of getting all they could lay hold on for themselves, and others. For by this means, the *caligars* made themselves Masters of *Verona*, the *Papstresses* of *Montana*, the *Carriants* of *Padua*, the *Bailiffs* of *Bononia*, and by the same the *Florentines* got *Pistoia* and *Ferrara* was possessed by the *Venetians*. And although *Henry VII*, provoked by these indignities, made a journey thither, reduced many of them; revolted Cities

Cities to their former obedience, and was crowned King at *Milân* with the Iron-Crown; as were also *Ludovicus Bavaricus*, and *Charles IV*, two of his Successors: yet found they in conclusion less small benefit by the enterprise, as did not quit the charge and trouble which it put them to. So in the end *Italy* was left wholly in a manner to the Pope's disposing, who gave away to others what they could not manage, or otherwise confirmed those men in their usurpations, whom they found already possessed of the Emperors Countries; and bound them by that means the faster to the See of *Rome*, of which they were to hold their Estates in Fee: the Emperours having nothing left them, but the empty Title, nor exercising the Imperial Power there any other way, than by changing Earldoms into Marquises, and Marquises into Dukedoms, which they often did for ready money, or reward of Service, or to preserve some shadow of their ancient Interit.

And now we are to look on *Italy* as under a new face of things, not only in regard of several Principalities and forms of Government; but as replenished with new Colonies or Sets of people, differing from the old in manners as well as language. And though the Soil be now as it was before, yet hath that also found some change in the different production of the natural Fruits, as well as in the Manufactures and works of Art. For now besides their Corn and Wine, which anciently were the staple Commodities of this Country; they supply the rest of *Christendom* with Rice, Silks, Velvets, Taffeties, Satins, Grograins, Ruffs, Fullians, Goldwire, Allom, Armour, Glasses, and such like Commodities, which make their Merchants very wealthy; who being for the most part Gentlemen of Noble houses, not only lose not the esteem of their Nobility by following the Trade of Mechanicks (as in other places); but by reason that they are possessed of Estates in Land, which they manage by their Bailiffs and other Servants, they are become the wealthiest Merchants in all *Christendom*.

Nor do the Gentry come behind them in all manner of affluence, which can be possibly enjoyed in so rich a Soil. Their Lands they set not at a vent, but at thirds and halves, according as the Soils more or less fruitful; seldom not into *Italy* to look to the affairs thereof, as his Predecessors had done before him; he is said to have returned for answer that conceit of the Fox, for his not going to attend (as other beasts did) at the Lion's Den:

Quia me vestigia terrent,  
Omnia te adesse sum spectant, nulla retrosum.

That is to say;

I dare not go, because no track I see  
Of any Beast returning towards me.

Which faulty and impudent resolution being followed by too many of his Successors, not only gave the Popes the opportunity they looked for, of making themselves the great disposers of the affairs of *Italy* but many pious Princes thereby took occasion of getting all they could lay hold on for themselves, and others. For by this means, the *caligars* made themselves Masters of *Verona*, the *Papstresses* of *Montana*, the *Carriants* of *Padua*, the *Bailiffs* of *Bononia*, and by the same the *Florentines* got *Pistoia* and *Ferrara* was possessed by the *Venetians*. And although *Henry VII*, provoked by these indignities, made a journey thither, reduced many of them; revolted Cities

apparel they are said to be very modest, in the furniture of their houses sumptuous, at their Tables neat, sober of speech; enemies of all ill reports; tender; that whoever standerth any one of them, if it come unto the parties ear, he is sure to die for it. Of more cost and expense he is very thrifty, and loves to be at no more cost than he is sure to save by, or receive great thanks for; but otherwise for civil carriage and behaviour, surpassing all the Gentry of the World besides. Only in frictions to their Wives, they exceed all reason, of whom they are so extremely jealous, that they shut them up all day from the common view, and permit them liberty of discourse with few or none. The Lock used by a Gentleman of *France* to be assured of his Wives chastity in the time of his absence, is to know a story that it needs no report. But touching the predominancy of this jealous humour in most Southern Nations, we shall speak more hereafter when we come to *Spain*. And yet if that be true, which is proverbially spoken of the women of *Italy*, the husbands have more reason for this strict restraint, than other Nations are aware of. For though they be for the most part witty in speech, and modest in the outward appearance, as much as any; yet it is said of them in the way of Proverb, That they are as Magpies at the door, Saints in the Church, Gossips in the Garden, Devils in the house, Angels in the Streets, and Syrens in the Windows, not wanting on this ground to set out themselves with all advantages of art, there being few amongst them who are not painting, and other the sophisticated helps to fallacious Beauty; and thereupon they have a saying, that *If God make them tall and fat, (for the title of a godly woman is much prized amongst them) they will make themselves fair*.

The Language of both Sexes is very courtly and fluent, all when speaking the *Cortezan*, or Court-language; notwithstanding the diversity of Dialects which is amongst them. For though there be a remarkable difference betwixt the *Florentine* and *Venetian*, the *Milanese* and the *Roman*, the *Neapolitan* and the *Genoese*; yet it is hard to be discerned by the tone or Pronunciation what language any Gentleman is of. But generally it is best spoken in the great Duke's Country, in the Cities of *Florence* and *Siena*; but in *Florence* especially; in which City, *Gineciardine* the *Historian*, *Eccoci* the Author of the *Deamemon*, and other great Masters of the *Italian* Language, did live and flourish in their times.

For other men of note both for Arts and Arms, *Italy* hath afforded many since the fall of the Empire, viz. *Ann* *Silvius*, afterwards Pope, by the name of *Pius* the Second; 2. *Maffius Patavinus*, a stout defender of the Imperial Rights; 3. *Petrarch*, a Roman born; 4. *Angelus Politianus*, the Rector of polite Literature in *Italy*; 5. *Rodolphus Volaterranus*; and 6. *Picus Mirandula*, two great Humanitians; 7. *Guido Bonatus*, a famous Astrologer; 8. *Aristo*, and 9. *Tasso*, the most renowned Poets of their times, and the latter never followed since; 10. *Sixtus Senensis* one of the best Antiquaries of the Nation and a great Divine; 11. *Bellarmino*, and 12. *Barnius*, the Buttrells and Pillars of the Church of *Rome*. And then for Arms; 1. *Ludovicus Contarini*, the first Rector of the honour of the *Italian* Soldierly; 2. *Forti Braccio*, and 3. *Nicolas Piccinino*, two of his training up in the feats of Chivalry; 4. *Sforza*, the Father, and the Son; of which the Son attained by his valour, to the Dukedom of *Milân*; 5. *Christopher Columbus*, a *Genoese*; 6. *Americus Vesputius*, a *Florentine*, and 8. *Sebastian Cabot*, a *Venetian*, the fortunate Discoverers of *America*; 9. *Andrea D'Oris*, Admiral of the Navies to *Charles*

the fifth; and 10. *Ambrosio Spinola* (both *Generals*) Commander of the Armies of *Philip the Great*, King of Spain: Which last being once upbraided by *Maurice*, Prince of *Orange*, as issued from a Race of Merchants, (though otherwise of a very ancient and noble Family) returned this tart and sudden Answer, that he thought is a greater honour to him, being a Merchant, to have the command of so many Princes; than it could be unto the other, though a Prince by birth, to be under the command of so many Merchants.

The usual Division of Italy is into fix parts, 1. *Lombardy*, 2. *Tuscany*, 3. the Land of the Church, 4. *Naples*, 5. *Riviere de Genoa*; and 6. the Land of *Venice*: and of them there is passed this Confine according to the principal Cities, i.e. *Rome* for Religion, *Naples* for Nobility, *Millain* for beauty, *Genoa* for Intellects, *Florence* for Policy, and *Venice* for riches. But take it as it stands at the present time; and Italy is best divided into

The Kingdoms of {  
Naples.  
Sicily.  
Sardinia.  
The Land or Patrimony of the Church.  
The great Dukedom of Tuscany.  
The Common-wealths of {  
Genoa.  
Lucca.  
Milan.  
Mantua.  
Modena.  
Parma.  
Montferrat.  
The Estates of {  
Lombardy, &c.  
The Dukedoms of {  
The Principality of Piedmont.

## The Kingdom of NAPLES.

THE Kingdom of NAPLES is invironed on all sides with the *Adriatic*, *Ionian*, and *Tuscan* Seas, excepting where it joyneth on the West to the *Lands of the Church*: from which separated by a Line drawn from the mouth of the River *Trento* (or *Dreventum*) falling into the *Adriatic*, to the Spring-head of *Aventum*, By which accompt it taketh up all the East of Italy, the compass of it being reckoned at 1468 miles.

It hath been called sometimes the Realm of *Pozzuoli*, from *Pozzili* or *Apulia*, a chief Province of it: its first possessor of the *Romanes* (the Founders of this Kingdom) in these parts of Italy: but called most commonly the Realm of *Sicily*, on this side of the *Phare*, to difference it from the Kingdom of the Isle of *Sicily*, lying on the other side of the *Phare*, or Strait of *Meftina*. The reason of which improprie appellation proceeded from *Roger* the first King hereof, who being also Earl of *Sicily* and keeping there his fixed and ordinary residence? when he got the favour to be made King, desired (in honour of the place where he most reposed) to be created by the name of King of both the *Sicilies*. And that indeed is the true and ancient name of the Kingdom; the name or title of King of *Naples* not coming into use till the *French* were dispossessed of *Sicily* by the *Aragonians*; and nothing left them but this part of the Kingdom, of which the City of *Naples* was the Regal Seat, called therefore in the following times, the Kingdom of *Naples*; and by some of the Italian Writers, the Kingdom only.

This is esteemed to be the most fertile place in all Italy, abounding in all things necessary for the life of man, and in such also as conduce to Delight and Physick; viz. Many Springs, and Medicinal Waters, Baths of divers virtues, fowly Physicks. It hath also an excellent breed of Horses, which may best be transported but by the leave of the King, or at least the *Viceroy*; great store of Allom, Mines of divers Metals, and the choicest Wines,

called anciently *Vina Massica*, and *Falerina*, frequently mentioned by the Poets. And as for Merchandise, to *Alexandria* they send Saffron, to *Genoa* Silks, to *Rome* Wines, and to *Venice* Oyl, &c.

The Noblemen or Gentry hereof, live, of all men the most careless and contented lives; and like the Tyrant *Polyrates* in the elder *Stories*, have nothing to trouble them, but that they are troubled with nothing. And there is a great number of them too, there being reckoned in this Realm in the time of *Orsini*, 13 Princes, 24 Dukes, 25 Marquesses, 90 Earls, and 800 Barons; and those not only Titular, as in other places, but men of great power and revenue in their several Countries: it is said to be 1000000 Crowns a year with the other: the Princes of *Salerno*, and *Severine* being near as great. They are all bound by their Tenure to serve the King in his Wars, which gives them many Privileges, and great command over the common Subject: whereby as they were made the ablest to assist the King, upon any foreign invasion; so are they in condition also of raising and countenancing such defections as have been made from King to King, and from one Family to another, as forced betwixt their ambitious & particular interests. For not alone the Nobles, but in general as many of the common people as can be spared from husbandry, are more addicted to the Wars, than they are to Merchandise: The Nobles in pursuit of honour, and the *Peasants* out of desire of being in action; so that the greatest part of the Forces which serve the *Spaniards* in the Low Countries, are sent from hence. To which, the humour which they have from the highest to the lowest, of going bravely in Apparel, leaves exceeding fitly. An humour which is so predominant in both Sexes, that though the *Peasants* live all the rest of the week in as great severity and drudgery, as his Lord doth in pride and jollity; yet on the *Sundays* and *Saints-days*, he will be sure to have a good suit to his back, though perhaps he hath no meat for his belly. And for the women, the that works hard both day and night for an hungry living, will be so franked up on the *Sundays* and other Festivals, or when the is to show her self in some public place, that one who did not know the humour, might easily mistake her for some noble Lady.

The principal Rivers of this Kingdom are, 1. *Sylarbis*, 2. *Bisurnus*, 3. *Pfocara*, 4. *Trentus*, 5. *Asidius*, 6. *Salutinus*, 7. *Vomano*, 8. *Salutinus*, and 9. *Gargilian*. The most famous of which are *Asidius* and *Gargilian*. The first as being the only River of Italy, which rising South-side of the *Apennine*, forceth a breach through it to the upper Sea: but more for the great Battel fought on the Banks thereof, called the Battel of *Canus*, of which more hereafter. The other no less famous for those many Battels, which have been fought near it between the *French* and the *Spaniards*, for the Kingdom of *Naples*: especially that famous Battel between the Marquess of *Saluzzero*, General of the *French*, and *Gonsalvo*, Leader of the *Spaniards*; the issue of which Victory by the *French*, was the absolute confirmation of the Realm of *Naples* to the *Spaniards*. More famous is this River for the death of *Peter de Medicis*, who being banished his Country at the coming of King *Charles VIII.* into Italy, and having divers times in vain attempted to be reintegrated, followed the *French* Army hither, and after the loss of the day, took ship with others, to fly to *Cajeta*; but over-charging the Vessel, he sunk and drowned them all. But most famous is it in that *Marius*, that excellent though unfortunate Captain, being by *Sylla*'s faction driven out of *Rome*, hid himself stark naked in the dirt and weeds of this River: where he had lain long, but *Sylla*'s Souldiers found him, and carried him to the City of the *Minyrmians*, being not far off.

These

These men, to please *Sylla*, hired a *Cimber* to kill him, which the fellow attempting (such is the virtue of Majesty even in a miserable fortune) run out again crying; he could not kill *C. Marius*. This River was of old called *Liris*; and towards its influx into the Sea exported into Lakes and Fens, called the Lakes of *Minyrmians*, from a City of that name adjoining.

It is divided into the Provinces of 1. *Terra di Lavoro*, 2. *Abruzzo*, 3. *Puglia*, or *Apulia*, 4. *Terra de Otranto*, 5. *Calabria Superior*, 6. *Calabria Inferior*, and 7. the Isles of *Naples*. Some of which have some smaller Territories adjoining to them, which we shall meet withal as they come in our way.

*TERRA di LAVORO* is bounded on the North with *Abruzzo*, from which separated by the *Apennine* Hills, on the East with the River *Silarus*, which parteth it from the lower *Calabria*; on the South with the *Tyrrenian* or *Tuscan* Sea, and on the West with *Lattium*, or *Campania di Roma*; from which divided by the River *Gargilian*, called anciently *Campania Felix*, in regard of the wonderful fertility of it, and that it was the seat or dwelling of the *Campani*: by some modern Latins called *Campania Antiqua*, to difference it from *Lattium*, which they now call *Campania di Roma*, or *Campania Nova*. And for the other name of *Terra di Lavoro*, or *Terra Laboratoris*, it was given to it, from the continual labour of the Husbandmen in cultivating the ground, and carrying in the fruits thereof: but neither the reason, nor the name so new, as some men suppose. But, I am sure, as old as *Pliny*, who calleth these parts sometimes by the name of *Laboria*, sometimes of *Campania Laboriosa*; and gives this reason of the name, *quod ingenium in colendis sit labor*, because of the great pains it requires to till it, and the great profit reaped by them who did till and manure it.

The Country is so exceeding fruitful in Wines and Wheat, that by *Florus* the Historian it is called *Cerevis & Bacchi certamen*, and deservedly too. For in this noble Region one may fee large and beautiful fields overthatched with rich Vines, thick and delightful Woods, sweet Fountains, and moist whollom Springs of running waters; useful as well for the restoring of man's health as delight and pleasure; and in a word, whatsoever a covetous mind can possibly wish, or a carnal covet.

Towns of note hereabouts in the elder times. The principal whereof, 1. *Cajeta*, seated on a fair and capacious Bay, from the crookedness whereof it is thought to be called from *Kaios*, i.e. with reference to the burning of the Fleet of *Enes* by the *Trojan* Ladies, for fear of being forced again to go to Sea, where they had been so extremely rolled in their former Voyages. But why that *Faë* committed on the further coasts of *Sicily*, should be so solemnly commemorated here on the shores of Italy, I can see no reason: and therefore we may far more probably derive it from *Cajeta*, the nurse of *Enes*, in memory of whom being buried here, or herabouts, *Enes* is affirmed to have built this Town. Of which thus the Poet, *Æneid*, lib. 7.

Tu quoque littoribus nostris Ercia maris,  
Æternam moriens famam, Cajeta, dedisti.

That is to say,

*Enes* Nurse, *Cajeta*, by her death,  
Did to these shores an endless fame bequeath.

But on what ground soever it first had this name, it is assuredly a place of great strength and consequences,

and of so special importance for the Estate of this Kingdom, that (as *Cimber* hath observed) if King *Charles VIII.* had but only fortified it and the Castle of *Naples*; the Realm had never been lost. 2. *Naples*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom, a beautiful City, containing seven miles in compass, was once called *Pantheon*, and falling to ruin, was new built, and called *Napoliis*. Among other things here is an Hospital, the revenues whereof is 100000 Crowns yearly, wherewith, besides other good deeds, they nourish in divers parts of the Kingdom, 2000 poor Infants. In this City, the difciple called *Marius Gallicus*, or *Napoliensis*, was first known in *Christendoms*. This City is seated on the Sea-shore, and fortified with four strong Castles, viz. 1. *Cast. Capodua*, where the Kings Palace was, 2. *Ermo*, 3. *Cast. del Ovo*, or the Castle of the Egg, and 4. *Cast. Novo*, or the new Castle. But nature hath not done much less to her Fortifications, than the hand of Art, the Town being for the most part environed by Sea, or Mountains not to be ascended without great difficulty and disadvantages. Which Mountains, as they serve on that side as a bank to the City, so do they furnish the Citizens with most generous Wines; and being once ascended yield a gallant prospect both for Sea and Land. A City honoured by the Seat of the *Vice-Roy*, and the continual resort, if not constant residence of private buildings, to be very graceful, and the publick flatly. And yet it had increased much more in buildings, than it is at present, if the King had not forbidden it by special Edict. And this he did, partly, at the perswasion of his Noblemen, who feared that if such a restraint were not laid upon them, their Vassals would forsake the Country to inhabit here, so to enjoy the privileges and the exemptions of the Regal City: but principally upon jealousie and point of State, the better to prevent all revolts and mutinies, which in most populous Cities are of greatest danger: 3. *Cepes*, once the head of the *Campani*, seated in a delicious and luxurious soil, and one of the three Cities which the old *Romans* judged capable of the Star of the Empire, the other two being *Carthage*, and *Cornith*. Being distressed by the *Sammites* they were fain to cast themselves into the Arms of the *Romans*, who did not only take them into their protection, but suffered them to live according to their own Laws, as a free Common-wealth; rather like a Confederate than a Subject State. Which freedom they enjoyed, till after the revolt to the *Carthaginians*; when being reduced to their obedience by force of Arms, they lost all their Liberties, and hardly escaped its fatal and final ruin: drawing the whole Nation of the *Campani* with divers lesser States, which depended on them, into bondage with its *A.V.C. 542*. *Apulia* and *Flaccus* being Conuls. The pleasures of this place was it which enervated the victorious Army of *Annibal*, who wintered here after a great defeat given to *Terentius Varro* at the Battel of *Canus*, whence came the saying, *Capium est Canus Annibalis*. 4. *Canus*, a City once of great power and beauty, till *Campania* was subdued by the *Romans*; after which, it decayed in both. Near hereto was the Cave or Grot of one of the *Syls*, called from hence *Canus*; and not far off the Lake called *Lacus Avernus*, the sink whereof is said to have poisoned Birds as they flew over it; supposed by ignorant Antiquity for the entrance of Hell. And finally, from this place it was, that *Enes* is fabled by the Poets to have gone down to the infernal Ghosts, to talk with his Father. 5. *Nola*, where *Marcus* discomfited the Forces of *Annibal*, and thereby gave the *Romans* to understand, that he was not invincible. 6. *Tuscani*, a small Town standing

standing on a Creek of the Sea, just opposite to *Baie*, on the other side of it: from which distant about three miles and a half. Both Towns remarkable for the Bridge built betwixt them by *Caligula*, composed of sundry Vessels joyned together in such sort, that there was not only fair and large passage over it, but *Vidallian* houses on both sides of it: Over which Bridge thus made, he marched and remarched in triumphal Robes, as if not only the Earth, but the very Seas were made subject to him. And this he did (as himself afterwards affirmed to some of his friends) to awe the Ocean; and imitate (if not exceed) the like acts of *Xerxes* and *Darius*, mentioned in the ancient Writers, as also to terrifie the *Britains*, and the *German Nations*, with the report of such a notable exploit; or (as some thought) to fulfill the Prophecy of one *Thrasibulus* a fortune-teller of those times, who had been often heard to say in the life-time of *Tiberius* (his next immediate Predecessor) that it was impossible for *Caesar* to succeed in the Empire, as it was for him to ride on Horseback from *Baile* to *Pactolus*. 7. Not far hence, on a Semicircular Bay, stands the City of *Baie* (whereof *Baile* before mentioned is a part) so called as they say, from *Baio*, one of the companions of *Ulysses* in his Navigations. A City in the flourish of the Roman Empire of five miles in length, and two in breadth; so wonderfully endued by Nature, and adorned by Art, that no place in the world was thought comparable to it.

*Nullus in Orbe locis Baie prelares amaris.*

Few places in the world there are

With pleasant *Baie* to compare. As it is in *Horace*.

A City beautified with magnificent Temples, multitude of *Baths*, or *Banias*, Imperial Palaces, stately buildings, and the adjoining Mannor-houses of the Principal *Romans*, whom the pleasures of the place invited thither; and was indeed too great and sensible a monument of the lasciviousness and luxury of that profligate people; of which the *Ambubae* mentioned in the *Satyrists* is sufficient proof. Though some fetch the *Etymology* of the word far enough from *Rome*, deriving it from *Ambubae*, a Syrian word signifying a Pipe, from whence the *Lutier* give this name to their Minstrels now demolished by War, and devoured by Water, that there is nothing of it to be seen but some scattered ruins. 8. *Misenum*, seated near a great Hill, or Promontory of the same name; at the foot whereof there is a large and capacious Harbour, where *Augustus* keeping one Navy and another at *Ravenna* in the upper Sea, awed the whole Roman Empire. But these were places of renown in the former times; all which, excepting *Naples*, are now only known by what they have been, not by what they are. The Principal Cities at this time, are next to *Naples* is *Sessa*, the *Strutium* or *Suffia* of the ancients, and now the title of a Dukedom to the house of *Cordova* in Spain, derived from *Consulva* the great Captain, of whom more hereafter. 2. *Aversa*, a Town of great strength and consequence, second to few in all the Kingdom, but forced to yield (though the Earl of *Montpenier* then Vice-roy of the Realm for *Charles VIII.* were in person to it); to the good fortune of *Consulva*, spoken of before: the whole Kingdom following shortly after. 3. *Cano*, 4. *Salvi*, 5. *Nepesina*, and 6. *Caserta*, with others, to the number of 22, besides 166 Castles or defensible places. Here is also in this Tract the Hill called *Callicianus*, where *Annibal* that great Master in the Art of War, fringed that wary Captain *Fabius Maximus*, by the stratagem of two thousand Oxen, carrying

fire in their horns; by which device he freed himself out of those difficult *Straights*, in which he was at that present. And in this Country there is also the Hill, *Pylaeum*, that catcheth out flames of fire, the smoke of which titled *Pliny Senior*, coveting to search the cause of it. The flame hereof brake forth cruelly also during the reign of *Titus*, calling out not only such fumes of smoke, that the very Sun seemed to be in the Eclipse; but also huge fumes: and of ashes such plenty that *Rome*, *Africa*, and *Syria*, were even covered; and *Herculaneum*, and *Pompeii*, two Cities in *Italy* were overwhelmed with them. There were heard dismal noises all about the Province; and Giants of incredible bigness fell to stalk up and down about the top and edges of the mountain; which extraordinary accident, either was a cause, or preface of the future Pestilence, which raged in *Rome* and *Italy* long after.

On the East side of this *Campania*, and properly (as anciently it was esteemed) a part thereof, lieth that little Territory, which *Alfonso* King of *Naples* caused to be called the *Principate*; bounded upon the East with *Calabria inferior*, or that part thereof which is called the *Basilicata*: from which parted by the River *Silarus*. It extends 33 miles in length, and 10 in breadth: and was of old the Seat of the *Poenicima* Colony of the *Piceni* dwelling on the *Adriatick* Principal places of it, 1. *Melfi*, by the *Italians* called *Maris*, of more note for the Hills adjoining, than any great beauty or antiquity it hath in it self. Those hills now called *Monte Maris*, but known to the *Romans* by the name of *Monte Maris*; of special estimation for the rich Wines called *Vina Melfica*. 2. *Nuceris*, nine miles from the Sea, in a very plentiful and delicious soil. 3. *Rivoli*, a City not long time built, which for the elegance of the buildings hardly yields to *Naples*. 4. *Melfi*, or *Anagnin* Archbishops See, in which it is supposed that the *Marines Compsis* was first found out. It is situate on the Sea-side, and giveth name to the coast of *Anagnis*, fenced with Hills or Mountains of 40 feet an height, that to look down into the *Valles* or the Sea adjoining, makes men sick and giddy. A Town of great note (where there nothing else to commend it to our observation) for the finding out of the *Mariner Compsis*, (as before is said) devised and contrived here about the year 1300, by one *John Flavio*, a native or inhabitant of it. 5. *Salerno*, about a mile from the Sea, the title of the Prince of *Salerno*, and an University, but chiefly for the study of *Physick*, the Doctors of which wrote the Book called *Schola Salerno*, dedicated to a King of *England*: not to King *Henry VIII.* as it is conceived, for then the Commentary on it, written by *Arnoldus Villanovanus*, (who lived about the year 1313) must needs have been before the Text. And therefore I conceive it dedicated, either to King *Richard I.* or King *Edward I.* who in their journeys towards the *Holy-Land*, might bestow a visit on this place, and give some honourary encouragement to the Students of it. Besides these, there are said to be in this small Territory, fifteen other good Towns, and two hundred and thirteen Castles or walled places; but these the principal.

II. North of *Campania*, lieth the Province now called *ABRUZZO*, bounded on the East with *Ugentia*, or *Apulia* on the West, with *Marca Anconitana*; on the North, with the *Adriatick Sea*; and on the South, with the *Apennine*. It is called, *Abruzzum* by the *Latins*, but the reason of the name not agreed upon: divided anciently between the *Picenter* and the *Sannites*: the *Picenter* taking up those parts which lay next the *Adriatick*; the rest being far the greater part) was possessed by the *Sannites*. These last (of the others we shall speak elsewhere)

a people which held longer wars with the States of *Rome* than almost all *Italy* besides; as keeping them in continual action for the space of seventy years together, besides many after-claps. In which long course of Wars, the *Romans* were so hardly put to their shifts, that they were four times fain to have recourse to the last refuge; which was the chusing of *Diktators*; and yet came off so often with success and victory, that it afforded them the honour of thirty triumphs. But these *Sannites*, as they were a potent, so they were also a compound Nation; consisting of the *Ferentini*, *Caraceni*, *Teligni*, *Precatini*, *Vesfimi*, *Hirupini*, and *Sannites* properly so called; into which name the rest of the interior Tribes were after swallowed. The chief City of the whole was called *Sannium*, whence they had their name; which in the conclusion of the War was so defaced by *Papirius* the Roman Consul, as he called *Sannium* in *ipso Sannio requiritur*, that not improperly (saith *Florus*) a man might ask where *Sannium* lived, even in the middle of the City. Which happened A. D. C. 481.

The River of *Pescara* runneth through the midst of it, and divideth it into parts, whereof the one containeth 5 Cities, and 150 Castles, or walled places; the other, 184 Castles, and 4 Cities. The principal Cities of the whole, 1. *Arpinum*, once the chief Town of the *Arpinates*, and the Country of *M. Tullius Cicero*, that famous Orator, now a poor Village called *Arpino*. 2. *Beneventum*, heretofore called *Maleventum*, as we find in *Pliny*, because the Winds hereabouts are so fierce and violent, that men could not sit upon their Horses; but had at last that name of *Beneventum*, from the pleasant Plains and spacious Valleys, which lie round about it; in like manner as the Country of the old *Abroges*, exchanged the name of *Malvo* into that of *Salvo*. It was one of the four Dukedoms which the *Lombards* erected, when they first came into *Italy*, for the better assuring of their Conquest; and was given to the Church of *Rome* by the Emperor *Henry IV.* in exchange of a certain Tribute remitted by Pope *Leo IX.* to the Church of *Bamberg*, where the said Emperor was born, and is still under the command of the Popes of *Rome*. 3. *Avella* built by the Emperor *Frederick* the Second, King of *Naples*, to assure the Realm upon that Quarter. 4. *Lanciano*, four miles from the *Adriatick*, a Town of great Trade and much resorted to by Merchants at her Annual *Marts*. 5. *Ortona*, the Port-town unto *Lanciano*. 6. *Teramo*, or *Teran*, (Polomy called it *Inter-am*) anciently the Metropolis of the *Precatini*. 7. *Citta di Chieti*, situate on a Hill some seven miles from the Sea, heretofore known by the name of *Theate*. 8. *Aquino*, the Birth-place of *Thomas Aquinas*, the great Schoolman, who first brought the scattered limbs of Popery into a body. Here stood also, 9. The old Town *Consuntium*, the chief City of the *Peligni*, made good a while by *Domitius Enobarbus* against *Julius Caesar*, in his first following after *Pompey*, then retired from *Rome*. And seven miles hence, 10. *Sulmo*, honoured with the birth of *Ovid*, that renowned Poet, as himself testifieth.

*Sulmo mihi patria est, gelidis uberrimis undis,  
Millia quinque distat ab Urbe decem.*

Full of cool streams *Sulmo*, my native Land,  
From the great City ninety miles doth stand.

There belongeth also to *Abruzzo* the Country of *Morisi*, in which are 104 walled places or Castles, and four considerable Towns the principal of which is *Bovianum*, or *Bosano*, now a Bishops See, in former times a Colony of the *Romans*, by *Pliny* called *Bovianum Undecimanorum*

to difference it from another in this Tract, of the same name, which he calls *Bovianum vetus*. 2. *Lupatella*, of which little memorable. In this Country also (I mean that which when the *Sannites* called *Fuere Candine*, in which the *Sannites* and their Confederates had so inclosed the *Romans*, that there was no possibility to escape, they sent to *Horatius*, a man for his Age much honoured, and for his Wisdom much followed by them, to know what they should do with the captive Enemies. Word was returned, that they should send them home safe, and without dishonour. Thinking the old man had not been well informed of the state of the business, they sent him again, and he advised, that they should put them all to the sword. These contrary answers made them judge amiss of the old mans brain; and therefore following their own fancies, they spoiled the *Romans*, and dishonoured them, and despoiled them, and so sent them home. Which when *Horatius* came to know, he much lamented the imprudence of so rash an action, but much more the destruction of his Country, as a consequence of it. Telling them, after their return, that had they given the *Romans* a safe and honourable deliverance from the present danger, they had made them their friends for many Ages; or had they put them to the sword for many of their Soldiers and chief Commanders, they had disabled them for long time from pursuing the War: The middle course which they had taken, would be their undoing; and so accordingly it proved. For the *Romans* not being made their friends by so odious a benefit, but hatching revenge for the disgrace, soon renewed the War; and under the conduct of *Papirius* subdued the Country, and handled the poor conquered people with the like despoilment. An excellent precedent unto Princes and those in power, how to proceed towards men of Quality and Rank, when they have them under, which must be, either not to strike at all, or to strike home, and to the purpose. *Nic. Machiavelli*, in his *Florantine History* taxeth *Rinaldo of Albrici* for committing a great *Salestia* in point of State, in that having *Cosmo de Medici*, and desiring to remove him from his publick managery of affairs, he thought it was sufficient to procure his banishment: which *Cosmo*, afterwards returning, paid in better coin. When upon he increth this notable *Apophism*, that, *Great persons must not at all be touched, or if they be, must be made pure from taking Revenge*. Yet do I not interdict a Prince, or any Supreme Governour, the use of Mercy. I know it is the richest Jewel which adorns the Crown. Nor dare I take upon me to direct the use of that excellent virtue. Only I shall observe what usage hath been commonly afforded towards such persons for their *Delinquencies*; whose liberty or life may create danger to the publick. The first is present Execution; for *Mortui non mordent*, as the saying is: a course more to be allowed of where it cannot, than commended where it may be spared. The second is either delicate imprisonment under trusty Guards, or else commitment to the house and custody of some trusty Statesman: in which great caution also is to be observed. For, besides that nothing is more ordinary than the escape of great Prisoners, either by corrupting or deceiving their keepers; We find in our Histories, how *D. Martin*, Bishop of *Ugentia*, being committed to the custody of the Duke of *Backingham* by King *Richard III.* not only procured his own liberty, but brought about that Duke to the contrary faction. The last, which is in all times the gentlest, and in some cases the safest, is not only an absolute pardon of life, and a grant of liberty; but an declaring of the party delinquent, by giving him some place of honour, or committing unto his fidelity some



Office of trust, it being the nature of most men, that where they are not trusted, they are never true; and that as long as they lie under suspicion and jealousy, they will be apt to entertain some thoughts of their lost condition. And of this kind of dealing with a person *Dionysius* we have a pregnant instance in the Emperor *Julian*, who not only pardoned *Marius Celsus*, one of *Galba's* Faction, and a chief one too, but put him in place next to him, and made him one of his principal Leaders, in the following War against *Vitellius*. His reason was *Nobilis natus reconciliationis adhiberet*, lest lying aloof as a pardoned Enemy, he might conceive the breach were but bad made up. And on the other side, *Marius Celsus* proved so sensible of the obligation, that he continued faithful to him to the very last; and lost his life in the pursuance of his quarrel: shewing thereby, that persons of a generous and noble disposition, are more obliged by favours, than restrained by terror. But it is now time I should free my self of these *Furca Caudine* and sport my self a while in the Plains of *Apulia*.

But I must note, before I take my leave herof, that these two Provinces of *Campania* and *Abbruzzo*, make up the greatest, richest, and best peopled part of the Realm of *Naples*. And therefore when the Kingdom was divided between the *French* and the *Spaniards*, it was allotted to the *French*, as having the priority, both of claim and power. The Provinces remaining, although more in number, yet are not comparable to those two for wealth and greatness, and were assigned over to the *Spaniards*, as lying most conveniently for the Realm of *Sicily*.

III. *PUGLIA* is bounded on the West, with *Abbruzzo*; on the East, with *Terra di Otranto*; on the North, with the *Adriatick Sea*; on the South, with *Calabria*. It contains the whole Country called of old *Apulia*; from whence the *Puglia* of the *Italians* and the *Pouille* of the *French* are to be derived.

The whole Country containeth in it besides Villages and Towns unfortified, 126 Castles and walled places, with 13 Cities of good note. The most considerable of which we shall meet withal in our *Chorography* of the several parts, divided anciently by *Ptolemy*, and since him, by *Leander*, into *Apulia* *Dannia*, and *Apulia* *Poenicia*: the former subdivided into the *Capitanate*, and *Pouille* the *Plains*; the later into *Bari*, and the *Land of Otranto*. For that the *Land of Otranto*, (though now a Province of it self) did sometimes pass in the account of *Apulia*; seems to me most probable, in that all the East parts of this Kingdom were held by the *Constantinopolitan* Emperours (after the coming in of the *Lombards*) by no other names than those of *Apulia* and *Calabria*: and by no other names than those were assigned over unto *Otho II. of Germany*, on his marriage with *Irphonia*, Nece to one of those Emperours. And I conceive that it was then laid unto *Apulia*, rather than to *Calabria*, first, in regard that the old Inhabitants were the same in both; the *Lapyge*, *Meſapians*, and *Salentini*, possessing promiscuously all this Tract from mount *Garganus* in *Dannia*, to the Promontory called *Lapygium* in the most Eastern Angle of the *Land of Otranto*. And secondly, in regard that the people of both have a dicitale peculiar only to themselves, occasioned by the biting of a little Serpent, called a *Tarentula*, not curable but by Mistlec only. This said, we will proceed in our Survey of the parts. And first,

*APULIA DAUNIA*, is that part herof which lieth next to *Abbruzzo*, in which parted by the River *Phierus* (now called *Fortore*) and to extending Eastwards to the River *Aufidus* (Lefonto the *Italians* call it) where

it meets with *Poenicia*. The reason of the name is not yet agreed on. But I find no more probable conjecture of it, than that it should be called thus of *Dannus*, the Son of *Danac* by *Piliunus*, once the King of this Country; it being reported in the Legends of those elder times, that *Dannus* being delivered of *Perſeus* whom he had by *Jupiter*, was by her Father the King *Acifius*, exposed to the mercy of the Seas; by which he was waisted with her young son to the Coasts of this Province, here taken up by a poor Fisher, and by him carried to the Court, where the King became enamoured on her, that he took her to Wife, and by her was Father to this *Dannus*. But *Dannus* had not long enjoyed it, on the death of his Father, when either by force or compulsion, he was fain to leave it to *Diomedes* King of *Ætolia*: who at the end of the *Trojan War*, wherein he was principal Actor, hearing of the libidinous couſes of his Wife *Ægiale*, abhorred the thought of living with her; and so came with his people to this Country; where he first his dwelling, and built the City of *Argyrippa*, whereof more anon. But as for *Dannus*, though he was not able to keep the possession of this Country, yet he bequeathed his name unto it; and afterwards withdrawing into *Latium* with such of his subjects as were willing to follow his Adventures, he became there the chief head of the *Rutuli*, and built among them the Town of *Ardea*, his chief seat at the coming of *Æneas* into Italy; betwixt whom and *Turnus* the son of this *Dannus*, grew that deadly feud, so celebrated in the Works of *Virgil*.

In this part herof is the Lake of *Lefina*, so called from a City of that name adjoining to it, made of the waters of *Phierus* and some other Rivers, which there lose themselves; in compass forty miles, and well stored with Fish: the Eels herof the largest that have been seen. Another Lake called *Arduarius*, more memorable, though not so great, it being laid herof by *Pliny*, that the waters of it are neither diminished by draining, nor increased by Land-floods. Here is also the Mount *Garganus*, known by that name in *Virgil*, but now called *S. Angelo*, high, steep, and full of cragged Rocks: twenty miles in compass, but that extent diversified into Hills and most pleasant Valleys, well wooded, and well stored with waters: here being one Lake (besides many others) called *Lacus Veneris*, said to be thirty miles in circuit. A place defendible by nature, and so strong by art, that it is commonly the last piece in the Realm of *Naples*, which is given up to the Invader: as appears plainly by the keeping of it by the *Greeks* and *Sarazens* for many years, after the *Normans* had possessed themselves of the rest of the Kingdom.

The whole divided by *Alphonſus* in his new modelling of this Kingdom) into two parts, the greatest and most flourishing called *Pouille* the *Plains*, from the condition of the soil which plain and level, not so much welled with Hills as the rest of *Apulia*: for which cause called *Puglia Piana* by the modern *Italians*. Intersected betwixt which and *Abbruzzo*, lieth a small Territory, by the said King *Alphonſus* called the *CAPITANATE*, detritate both of Woods and Rivers, and consequently not so populous as the rest of this Province: well furnished notwithstanding with all sorts of Grain, and stored with large and spacious Pastures, which breed fish infinite herds of Cattel, that the Tribute there arising was valued at 80000 *Crowns* per an. in the time of *Giulio Cesare*, and by him reckoned one of the best Revenues of the Realm of *Naples*. Of which tribute when the *French* could receive no part, by reason that on the division which they made with *Ferdinand* the *Catholic* (spoken of before) this Territory as a part of *Apulia*, did belong to the

the *Spaniards*, they brake out into open War, pretending that the Country appertained to them, (as indeed it lay very near their part) and thereby gave a just occasion to the *Spaniards*, a more diligent nation, and more intent upon their work, to worm them by degrees out of all the Kingdom.

Chief places of the whole *Dannia*, 1. *Laveria*, the *Necropolis* of *Ptolemy*, and the *Radra* of *Strabon*; as rich as it is ancient, and honoured with an Episcopal See. 2. *Ascoli*, of old called *Asculum*, and sometimes *Asculum Satrianum*, to difference it from another of that name in *Antoniana*; the title and honour of a Duke, 3. *Trisica*, Dukes title also, built by the Eastern Emperours in a place of strength and great advantage to restrain the insolencies of the *Sarazens*, then infesting this Country. These three in that part of it which is called the *Capitanate*. Then in the other part called *Pouille* the *Plains*. 4. *Sipontum*, once a Roman Colony and an Archbishop See, which honour it enjoyed till destroyed by the *Sarazens*. 5. *Mansfredonia*, founded near the place of the former, by *Mansfred* the Baffard, King of *Naples*, the better to assure these parts of his Kingdom. A stately and magnificent City the Seat of the Archbishop of *Sipontum*; beautified with a capacious Harbour for receipt of Ships, and an impregnable Castle for defence thereof. 6. *Salpe* of great antiquity, but not else defensible. 7. *Severina* of a newer date, but more rich and populous. 8. As ancient and as famous as the best amongst them the poor Village of *Cannae*, situate near the mouth or influx of the River *Aufidus*; *ignobilis Apulie vici*, as it is in *Pliny*, but such as afterwards grew more notable for the great defeat which *Annibal* there gave to *Paulus* *Emilius* and *Terrontius Varro* the Roman Consuls, of whose Army he slew 42700 on the very place. Which victory had he husbanded as he might have done, he had utterly subverted the State of *Rome*: so that it was most tartly (as most truly) said by *Malerb* General of his Horse, *Vincere ſu Anni-bal, videri uis uſuſi*; that he knew better how to get, then to use his victory. 9. But of most note in this part of *Apulia* was the Town *Argyrippa* or *Argyrippa* as some call it, founded by *Diomedes* in the skirts of Mount *S. Angelo* towards the Sea, and in that part of this Country, which then (or afterwards) was held by the *Lapyges*, of which thus *Virgil* in the 11 of the *Æneid*.

*Ille urbem Argyrippam patria de nomine Genis  
Vidit Gargani cœnabit Lapygis arvis*

And being Victor he a City builds  
Near *Garganus* in the *Lapygian* fields,  
And called it *Argyrippa* by the name  
Of some known place it's Land from which he came.

By which we also may conclude that it took this name with reference to some Town of *Ætolia*, which was the native Country of *Diomedes*. For although I know that many of the ancient Writers suppose it to have been first called *Argos Hippium*, with relation to a famous City of that name in *Peloponessus*; and after by contradiction or corruption to be named *Argyrippa*; yet those words of *Patria de nomine Genis*, do persuade me otherwise; *Diomedes* having nothing to do in the Country of *Argolis*, where that City stood; nor in the whole Demi-Island of *Peloponessus*, whereof *Argolis* was a part or Province. It was called also *Diomedis*, and *urbis* *Diomedis*, because of this foundation, and his Royal Seat, after his fixing in his Country; but at the last it came to be called *Argy*, and by that name was known in the time of the *Roman* greatness; Now no where to be found but in the ruins of the place, and the Records of Antiquity,

unless it be in a poor Village called *Sarpy* where *Niger* findeth it.

*APULIA FEUCETIA*, extendeth from the Banks of the River *Aufidus* on the West, to the land of *Otranto* on the East. So called as some conceive from *Peuceutis*; the Brother of *Oenone*; which may be probable enough, this being the first Country at which *Oenone* touched, when he came into Italy with his people. *Bocharius* a great Enemy of all Traditions, will have it called *Peuceutia*, *αὐτὴ ἡ πευκευτία*, for that great quantity of Pitch which these Countries yield, as the word itself signifieth in the Greek. But whatsoever was the reason of this ancient name, of the present is well known and agreed upon from *Bari* the chief City herof, being now called *Bari*.

Places of most importance in it: 1. *Bari*, seated near the Sea, but without a Haven, yet feared in a rich a soil, and so well inhabited, that it is a fair and wealthy City, and the chief of this part of *Apulia*, taking name from hence. 2. *Barietto*, by the modern *Latins* still called *Bareulum*, situate in or near the place of the old *Causium*, an Haven Town, and of so great importance, reckoned for one of the four strong holds of Italy, in the middle Ages; the other three being *Crema* in *Lombardie*, *Prato* in *Tuscani*, and *Fabriano* now called *Fabiano* in *Antoniana*. 3. *Monopolis*, a Port town also not very large, but of a near elegant building; new built, and the title of a Marquis. 4. *Tranen*, an ancient City, and an Archbishops See, but at this time better built then peopled by reason of some defects in the Harbour upon which it standeth. These three last together with *Mansfredonia* in the other *Apulia*, pawned by the Kings of *Naples* (when first invaded by the *French*) to the State of *Venice*; but recovered from them not long after by *Ferdinand* the *Catholic*, when possessed of the Kingdom. 5. *Bisone*, an Archbishop See also, one of which was a notable fiddler in the Council of *Trent*. 6. *Polignano*, on a rocky hill, the Honourary title of a Marquis, and a See Episcopal. 7. *Mottine*, which gives title to a Prince, but not else considerable. 8. *Vigilia*, now called *Bisigla* a Bishops See, situate near the *Adriatick* amongst craggy Rocks. 9. *Venosa*, a strong piece and of great importance; one of the last Towns which held good for the *French*, in the recovery of this Kingdom from *Charles VIII.* The *Venustum* of the ancient *Romans*, and the Birth-place of *Horace*, hence called *Venusium*. Nothing considerable of these people in point of story, but that confederating with *Tarentum* against the *Romans*, as the *Calabrians*, *Bruttii*, and *Lucani* did; they were all forced to submit to the power of *Rome* at the end of the Wars A. U. C. 481. *Papyrius Censor* and *Sp. Carvilius* being the second time Consuls.

IV. *TERRA di OTRANTO*, as it is now called, was once the Eastern part of *Apulia* *Dannia*. unto which it joyneth, from which parted only by a line drawn from *Brundisium* to *Tarentum*, of which more anon. Thus called from *Otranto* the chief Town herof, the seat and habitation in the elder times of the *Salentini*, the *Lapyges*, and the *Meſapians*, and is accordingly intitled in ancient Authors by the several names of *Lapygia*, *Meſapia*, and *Salentina*. They were the last people of Italy which held out against *Rome*, and sunk immediately after the *Tarentini*, upon whose Fate they did depend. A. U. C. 487. *Junius Pera* and *Fabius Pictor*, the two Consuls then, triumphing for it. Of these three Nations the *Lapyges* were of greatest fame or of greatest infamy. *Creteus* originally sent in quest of *Glauce* the Son of *Minos*, whom when they could not find, and durst not return without him, they fixed here their dwelling; *Lapyx* the Son of *Debalus*, being their Captain and conductor; and from him denominated.



Growing into estate and power, they became not only so luxurious in their course of life, and effeminate in their dress and habit, that they were a scorn and scandal to the neighbour Nations; but so regardless of their gods, that in the end they threw down all their Images, and destroyed their Temples: punished at last for these high insolencies by balls of fire falling on them from the heavens, with which the whole flock of them were almost extirpated. The Promontory called *Lapyx*, being the extreme point of this Country towards Greece, now better known by the name of the Cape of St. Mary, did take name from this people; and from thence the North-west wind (or the West-north-west) which the Latines generally call *Caurus*, frequently blowing from this coast, had the name of *Lapyx*, occurring by that name in the 8. of *Æneid*; and in *Horse*, *Carm. l. i. Ode. 4.*

But to proceed: this Country is invironed on all parts, with the *Adriatick* and *Ionian* Seas, having where it joineth to *Apulia* by an *Isthmus* of about 30 miles in breadth; reaching from *Brundisium* in the *Adriatick* or upper Sea, to *Tarentum* on the Gulf or Bay thence named in the *Ionian* Sea. And is from land to land, as you go by water, about 200 miles in compass. The foil hereof is very fruitful if well manured, abounding in Corn, Oyl, Melons, Citrons, Saffron, and other commodities of good price for which they never want the company of the Merchants of *Genoa*. They are many times much endangered by *Grafshoppers*, which commonly devour all whereforever they come, and would in one night consume whole fields of standing corn, if divine Providence by sending the birds called *Gallus* amongst them, did not provide a remedy for so great a mischief. The greatest defect hereof is the want of waters, and therefore probably enough may be the *Sitiosus* *Apulia*; spoken of by *Horace*; which notwithstanding, they have very rich pastures. The people are conceived to be the simplest or most void of craft, of any in *Italy*; perhaps because they have so little commerce with their own Countrymen, and so much with strangers.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Lece*, *Altinum* in Latine, a rich Town well built, and very well peopled, 2. *Castro*, a Sea Town, but not well fenced by Art or Nature, which hath made it very often a prey to the *Turks*. 3. *Gallipoli*, a Town built on so craggy a Rock, that it is conceived to be unconquerable. 4. *Brundisium*, the head Town of the *Salentinii*, once glory in the most capacious Haven of all the world; from whence there was continual passage into *Dalmatia*, *Epirus*, *Macedon*, and the rest of Greece. Here was it that Pompey took Ship to fly from *Cæsar*, and *Cæsar* took Shippling also to pursue after him: when to encourage the Pilot who was afraid of the storm, he cried out, *Cæsarum vultis & Fortunaem cedere*. It was first built by the *Ætoliæ*, under the conduct of one *Dionæctor*, and called *Antiochia*, which in the *Mæssian* Tongue, signifieth the horn or head of a Stag, which it much resembleth: from whence the Latines give it the name of *Brundisium*. At this day it is but a mean Town, the Haven of it being so shoaked, that a Gally can very hardly enter. 5. *Hydruntum*, a very ancient Town, yet still reasonably well peopled, having a strong Castle upon a Rock for its defence, and a capacious Port for Traffick; the principal at the present of all the Province, which is therefore called *Terra Hydruntina*, by our modern Latins. It is now called *Otranto*, and is a place of great importance, that the taking of it by *Mahomet* the Great, Anno 1481. put all *Italy* into such a fear, that *Rome* was quite abandoned. Not well inhabited again, till the expulsion of the *Turks* in the year next following.

Pals we on next to the two *Calabrinæ*, so called from

the *Calabri* an ancient people of this Tra9, inhabiting that Part hereof which formerly had been called *Magna Græcia*, now *Calabria superior*, with a part of the Country of the *Salentinii*, lying on the Northern side of the Gulf of *Tarentum*, now called by the name of *Otranto*. But the *Greek* Emperors being possessed of these parts of *Italy*, when the more Western parts thereof were under the *Goths* and *Lombards*, extended the name of *Calabria* as far as to the Strait of *Messina*, taking the Country of the *Bruttii*, now *Calabria inferior*, into the account; and making but two Provinces of their whole Estate which was left in this Continent by the names of *Apulia* and *Calabria*: of which, *Apulia* contained all the Country on the coast of the *Adriatick*, from *Arusso* to the extreme point or Promontory in the land of *Otranto*, called antiently *Lapygium*, now the cape of St. Mary; *Calabria*, all the rest of these parts of *Italy*, which lie between the *Tyrrhen* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea, and the Bay of *Tarentum*. So that the ancient *Calabria*, was but part of this; and of that *Ennius* the old Poet was a Native, as is affirmed by *Ovid* in his 3. de *Arte*.

*Ennius emensit Calabris in montibus hortos.*

Old Ennius his Garden tills  
Among the steep Calabrian Hills.

Now called the *Basilicæ*, and reckoned as a member of the lower *Calabria*.

But leaving these matters of remote Antiquity, let us behold the Country as it standeth at the present; divided of late times into *Inferior* and *Superior*, in which distinct capacities we shall look upon it. Premising only by the way, that this Country is the title of the eldest Son of the Kings of *Naples*; who were from hence called the Dukes of *Calabria*; and that, before it was subjected to these Kings, it had a King of its own; *Holyfermes*, whose daughter *Flora* was married unto *Godfrey of Bouillon*, being King hereof, An. 1098.

V. CALABRIA SUPERIOR, so called formerly *Magna Græcia*, from many great and famous Cities founded there by the *Greeks*, hath on the East the *Adriatick* or *Ionian* Sea; on the West *Lucania*, from which it is divided by the *Apennine*, and the River *Crathis*; on the North, *Sinus Tarentinus*, or the Gulf of *Tarentum*; and on the South and South-East, *Calabria inferior*, and *Golfo di Squillacy*, of old called *Sinus Salentinus*. The principal Cities at this time are, 1. *Belvedere*, eight miles from the Sea, where once stood *Paestum*. 2. *Brigugian*, the title of a Prince, fortified with a very strong Castle and endowed with the best Revenues of any principality or other Noble-man of Title in all the Kingdom. 3. *Maceræ*, an Archbishops See, a rich Town, and well peopled. 4. *Rofanum*, three miles from the Sea, a well fortified City, and situate in a very fruitful and pleasant Soil. 5. *Alavilla*, which gives title also to a Prince. 6. *Terra Nova*, given with the title of Duke to *Gonsalvo Fernandez de Cordova*, commonly called the great Captain, as a reward of his signal service in the conquest of the Realm of *Naples*; and still enjoyed (together with the title of Duke of *Sessa*) by the house of *Cordova*.

As for the chief Cities of the *Greeks* in the former times, they were *Locris* founded by the *Locrians*, a people of *Achaia*. Here lived the Law-maker *Saleucus*, who ordering Adultery to be punished with the loss of both eyes, was compelled to execute the Law on his own Son, as the chief offender. Therefore to shew the love of a Father, and the severity of a Judge, he put out one of his Sons eyes, and

and one of his own. He also provided in his Laws that no Woman should be attended in the street with more than one Maid, but when she was drunk; that she should not go abroad at night, but when she went to play the Harlot; that she should not wear Gold or Embroidered Apparel, but when she meant to set her self open sale; and that men should not wear Rings and Tiffes; but when they went about the prostituting of some Woman; and many others of this mould. By means whereof both men and women were restrained from all extraordinary Traits of Attendants, and excess of Apparel; the common consequents of a long and prosperous tranquillity. It was also famous in old times for the victory which *Ennomus* and excellent *Musician* obtained against *Aristonum* of *Rhegium*, another of the same profession. For though *Aristonum* had made his prayers to *Apollis* the God of *Musick* for his good success; yet *Ennomus* plainly told him, that Nature was against them in this contention, which had made all the *Grafshoppers* mute on that side the water. And so accordingly it happened. For when the day appointed came, *Ennomus* had the ill part to break one of his Harps strings, even in the middle of his *Musick*; when presently a *Grafshopper* leaped upon his Harp, and supplied most melodiously the place of the broken string, and by that means obtained the victory to *Ennomus*. An accident not unworthy of the *Muse* of *Strada*, in his personation of the Poet *Claudian*. And though I bid not any man to believe this Tale (though of *Strada*'s telling,) yet there are very good Authors for this much thereof, that on the one side of the River *Alax*, which parteth *Locris* from *Rhegium*, the *Grafshoppers* do merrily sing; but on the other side, which is that towards *Rhegium*, they are always silent. 2. *Tarentum*, a Town of no less note, situate on the Bay called *Sinus Tarentinus*; first built by the *Spartans*; the people whereof having a great command on the Country adjoining, were one of the last Italian Nations taken in by the *Romans*. *Namque populi Tarentinos auderet*: For who durst first when once the *Tarentines* were vanquished? faith the Historian. For in the ruin of this Estate, the *Apulians*, *Lucani*, *Bruttii*, and the neighbouring *Calabrinæ* being all confederate together in defence thereof, were brought under the command and power of *Rome*, A.D. 578. all which (from the beginning of the *Tarentine* War some nine years before) were either a free people, or in a kind of subjection to this mighty City; but never felt the force of the *Roman* puissance. So that the War began but A.D. 472. and ended in the total subjection of these several Nations; An. 482. *Papyr*, *Curior*, and *Sp. Carvilius* being then the second time Consuls, as before was said. In the defence of this people did *Pyrrhus* War against the *Romans*; the hope of getting this place for *Antibal*, was the lost of *Capua*; finally here lived *Arctas*, so famous for his flying Dove. 3. *Crotone*, the Inhabitants whereof were once so active, that at one *Olympick* meeting the *Villars* were all of this one Town. Their glory much decayed in a Battle against the *Locrians*, in which one hundred and twenty thousand of them and their Confederates were vanquished by fifteen thousand of the enemy. 4. *Amylea*, a Town inhabited formerly by *Pythagoras*, who having been often terrified with a false report of the approach of their Enemies, published a Law prohibiting all such reports. By which means, their Enemies coming unawares possessed themselves of it. Hence grew the Proverb *Amylea silentium perdidit*; and hence that notable saying of *Lucilius*, who being commanded to be silent, returned this answer, *Mibi necesse est loqui, sic enim Amylea silentio perisse*: 5. *Sybaris*, a City built by the *Greeks* after the destruction of *Troy*; the people whereof were Lords of 25 good Towns, and

could Arm 30000 men. A people so effeminate, that they permitted *Ulysses* nor *Brazier*, no not so much as a Cock to live amongst them, because they would not have their fleeces disturbed; but the *Fiddlers* and *Musicians* were in high request, which advantage the *Crotonian* taking, (with whom then in hostility) they entered the Town in the habit of *Musicians*, and so mattered it. Before which accident there had been a Prophecie, that the Town should never be taken, till men were more esteemed than the Gods themselves. It happened that a slave being grievously beaten by his Master, and obtaining no pardon for the Gods sake, upon whom he called, fled to the monument of some of his Masters Ancestors, and was pardoned of him; which coming to the ears of *Amysir* the Philosopher, he forsook the Town, moan holding him mad in a time of no danger to leave so dedicate a feat; whence came the Proverb, *Amysir infansit*, applied to such as under the pretence of madnes or folly do provide for their safety.

VI. CALABRIA INFERIOR is bounded on the North with *Calabria superior*, from which parted by the River *Crathis*, and a branch of the *Apennine* on the South with the *Tyrrhenian* Sea, and the Strait of *Messina*; on the West with that part of *Campania* which is called the Principate; and on the East with a part of the *Adriatick* or *Ionian* Sea. It was anciently the habitation of the *Bruttii*, whom the *Greek* Writers generally call *Bruttii* and their Country *Bruttania* upon which ground, some of our modern Critics (envying so great an honour to the Isle of *Great Britain*) have transferred to this Province the birth of *Constantine*, the first *Christian* Emperor. The *Bruttii* being first conquered by the *Romans*, with the rest of *Italy*, after the defeat of *Canne*, took part with *Carthage*, and was for a long time the retreat of *Antibal*, whom the *Romans* had shut up in this corner. A Country not much short in fruitfulness of the rest of the Kingdom; and having the advantage of so much Sea, is the better fitted for Traffick. At one extremity hereof, is the Promontory called by *Platony*, *Lexico-Petra*, now *Labo di Spartimento*; all along which, especially in the month of May, are taken great store of *Tuna* (a Fish which much resembleth mans flesh) which being barrell'd up are sold to Mariners. Here are two Rivers also of a very strange nature; of which the one called *Crathis*, makes a mans hair yellow, and dieth Silk white; the other named *Buftenus*, causeth both hair and Silk to be black and fwarthy.

The Principle Cities of it are, 1. *Consentia*, an ancient Town, comprehending seven little Hills, and a Castle on the top of one of them, which commandeth both the Town and Country adjoining. It is built betwixt the head two Rivers, and is still reasonable rich, though not so wealthy now as in former times; 2. *Rhegium*, or *Rhezo*, on the Sea-shore, opposite to *Messina* in the Isle of *Sicily*, which is supposed to have broken off from the rest of *Italy*, and that this Town had the name of *Rhegium* from the *Greek* word *ρῆγος*, which signifieth to break off, or to tear asunder. A Town in former times very well traded, but left desolate in a manner since the year 1594. when it was fired by the *Turks*. 3. *Castellum-Lare*, seated upon the top of a very high Mountain, 4. *Idomonte*, and 5. *Altamura*, two very fair Towns, whose names sufficiently express their pleasant and lofty situations. 6. *St. Euphemia*, from whence the Bay which anciently was called *Sinus Lamestinus*, or *Lamestinus*, is now called *Golfo de St. Euphemia*. 7. *Nicastro*, three miles from the Sea, the same with *Newcastle* in *Engliff*.



scended from *Charles Earl of Valois* (spoken of before) for Her Heir and Successor.

#### The Hungarian Line.

- 1371 13. *Charles III.* Son to *Lewis*, and Nephew of Prince *John of Durazzo* before mentioned, by the power of *Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, and the favour of Pope *Urban V.* was made King of *Naples*. He overthrew and killed in Battle *Duke Lewis of Anjou*, his Competitor, and after the death of King *Lewis of Hungary*, succeeded in that Kingdom also; but long he had not reigned therein, when poisoned (as it was supposed) by the old Queen Mother, to advance her Daughter to that Throne. 15.
- 1386 14. *Ladislaus*, Son of *Charles III.* having a quarrel with the Pope, made a voyage Royal unto *Rome*, where he forced his entry and was there triumphantly received: on which displeasure the Pope called in *Lewis II.* Duke of *Anjou*, who gave *Ladislaus* a great overthrow. Incomfuch, as *Ladislaus* used to say, that if *Lewis* had followed his Victory the first day, he had been master of his Kingdom and Person too; if the second, of his Kingdom; but not of his Person: but not putting it till the third day, he failed of both. So in the end he was compelled to flee to *Rome*, and give over the enterprise. 29.
- 1415 15. *Joane II.* Sister of *Ladislaus*, of as much levity, but not altogether of so ill a fame as the former *Joane*: observing the unprosperous success of the House of *Anjou* the adopted for her Heir, *Alphonso V.* of *Aragon*; who had some claim unto the Kingdom as the direct Heir of *Pedro*, or *Peter III.* and *Constance* the Daughter of King *Manfred*, spoken of before. But finding him to stand too much on his own right, and to be too forwards in taking a possession of it, before her death: she revoked that Adoption, and made a new grant of that Estate to *Lewis IV.* Duke of *Anjou*, and after his decease to his brother *Rene*, or *Renatus*: both vanquished by the *Aragonians*.

#### The Aragonian Line.

- 1434 16. *Alfonso* King of *Aragon*, partly by Conquest, and partly by Adoption, having got the Kingdom, left it well settled unto *Ferdinand*, his natural Son. 24.
- 1458 17. *Ferdinand*, the base Son of *Alfonso* (the lawful Sons inheriting the Realm of *Aragon*, *Sicily*, &c.) succeeded in the Realm of *Naples*. 36.
- 1494 18. *Alfonso II.* Son of *Ferdinand*, in whose time the French began to aim at the Realm of *Naples*. This King and his two Predecessors were of the Order of the Garter.
- 1494 19. *Ferdinand II.* Son of *Alfonso II.* outed of his Estate and Kingdom by *Charles VIII.* Son of King *Lewis XI.* of *France*, whom *Rene* the last Duke of *Anjou* had made the sole Heir of all his Titles and Possessions. And though *Charles* upon his Conquest was solemnly Crowned, yet pushing back his affairs into *France* before he had settled his affairs in this Kingdom, and having much discontent

ted the chief men of the *Anjouin* Faction; he lost it suddenly to the same *Ferdinand* from whom he had so suddenly won it.

- 1497 20. *Frederick II.* Brother of *Alfonso II.* and Uncle of this last *Ferdinand*, succeeded him in Estate; and was the sixth King that had reigned in *Naples* within the compass of three years: that is to say, *Ferdinand I.* *Alfonso II.* *Ferdinand II.* *Charles of France*, the second *Ferdinand* again, and then this *Frederick*. Finding himself betrayed by the *Spaniards*, he submitted himself to *Lewis XII.* King of *France*, and yielded up his Kingdom to him. And indeed what else could that poor Prince do, when he saw his own bloud, and such as had taken his Realm into their protection, conspiring against him?

For when *Charles* made his passage towards *Naples*, *Ferdinand* the Catholic, sent *Gonsalvo*, (who was afterward for his valour furnished the Great Captain) with some Forces to resist the French Invaders. But when the French were expelled, *Gonsalvo* would not leave the Country, because his Master had not as yet sent for him. In the mean time it was agreed between *Lewis of France*, and this *Ferdinand*, that they should jointly let upon the Kingdom of *Naples*: That having won it, the French should possess *Abruzzo*, and *Lavoro*; the *Spaniards*, *Puglia*, and both *Calabrias*: That the first should be entitled King of *Naples*; the other, Duke of *Apuia*. This Confederacy was kept secret till the French Forces were come to *Rome*; and *Gonsalvo* possessed (under pretence of defending it) of all *Calabria*. So that it was no marvel that they made themselves Masters of the Country. An action in which the French dealt very unadvisedly, in bringing into Italy where he was before the sole Moderator, another King as great as himself; to whom as to his Rival, his Enemies might have recourse on all occasions; and the *Spaniard* as unaturally, in betraying for the moiety of a Kingdom, a Prince of his own blood, under pretence and promise of favours: But the two Kings did not continue long in good terms of Partnership. For the *Spaniards* being more intent upon their advantages, soon picked a quarrel with the French, with in two or three years drove them out of all, and to this day keep it; though both this *Lewis*, and his Successors *Francis I.* and *Henry II.* have divers times, and with great effusion of blood, attempted the recovery of it.

#### The Spanish, or Castilian Line.

- 1503 21. *Ferdinand III.* furnished the Catholic King of *Castile*, *Aragon*, &c. and *Naples*. 1.
- 1516 22. *Charles V.* Emperor, King of *Spain*, and the IV. of that name in *Naples*. 43.
- 1558 23. *Philip II.* of *Spain*, and the first of *Naples*. 30.
- 1598 24. *Philip II.* of *Naples*. 3. of *Spain*. 22.
- 1621 25. *Philip III.* of *Naples*. 4. of *Spain*.
- The Arms of this Kingdom are *Azure*, *Scutcheon of Flower de Lucet*, Or, a File of three Labels, *Golden*.
- The Revenues of it are two Millions and a half of Crowns; whereof 200000 are due to the Pope for Chief-Rent, and the rest so exalted in maintaining Garrisons upon the Natives, and a strong Navy against the *Turks*, that the King of *Spain* receiveth not a fourth part *de claro*.

Here are in this Kingdom  
Archbishops 20. Bishops 127.

The

## The Kingdom of SICILIA.

BEFORE we can come into the Isle of *Sicily*, we must first cross that branch of the *MEDITERRANEAN* Sea, which is called the *Faro*, or Strait of *Messina*; where the passage is so strait and narrow, that it exceedeth not in breadth a mile and a half. In other parts, as the Sea grows wider, it is distant from the main land of *Italy* near 300 miles; that is to say, from the Town of *Drepanum* in *Sicily* to the City of *Naples*. As for the *Mediterranean* Sea, it is so called because it interlaceth the middle of the earth; extending from the Straights of *Gibraltar* on the West, to the Coast of *Palestine* on the East; and so dividing *Africa* both from *Europe* and *Asia minor*. In the Scriptures, *Iosh. v. 4.* it is called by the name of *Mare magnum*, or the great Sea: great in comparison of the dead Sea, and the Sea of *Galilee*, lying on the other side of the land of *Palestine*; but small enough if compared to the Ocean, with which in probability the Writer of that Book might have no acquaintance. Besides which general name of the *Mediterranean*, it hath also many particular names, as the *Adriatick*, *Aegean*, *Ionian*, and *Carpathian* Sea, where it bordereth upon *Greece*, and *Anatolia*; *Mare Libyæum*, where it runneth by the shores of *Africa*; with reference to *Italy* called in some parts *Mare Tyrrænum*, in others *Mare Liguricum*; in some parts *Mare Siculanum*, and in others *Mare Sardinum*, &c. And as the *Camelion* is said to apply it self to the colour of the nearest adjacent body: so this Sea taketh its particular denominations from the nearest shores. These Seas are also called by some modern Writers, in imitation of the French, by the name of the *Levant*, or the Seas of the *Levant*; because in respect of *France*, *Spain*, *Britain*, *Germany*, &c. they lie towards the East; the word *Levant* signifying in the French, a rising up, and more especially the Sun-rising. The principal Island of this Sea which relate to *Italy* (for of others we shall speak in their proper places) are those of *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Corfica* and some Isles adjoining unto these.

*SICILY*, environed round with the lower or *Tyrrænian* Sea, contains seven hundred miles in compass; and is supposed to have been joined to *Italy* in former times, being then a *Peninsula*, or Demi-Island, such as *Palæoponessus*; and joined to the Continent by as narrow an *Isthmus*. The reason of that name we shall see anon.

The Separating of it from the main Land of *Italy*, is by the Poets ascribed to *Nepheus*, who with his three forked Mace, or *Trident*, broke it off from the land, in favour of *Jæsus* the son of *Æolus*; that so he might inhabit there with the greater safety, being environed round with waters. Which though it be a Fable or Poetical fiction, yet with some help from the *Mythologists*, may be made a story. For if by *Æolus* and *Nepheus*, we understand the Winds and Seas, it intimates that it was divided from the rest of *Italy*, either by the fury of the Waves, or by the violence of some Earthquakes, to which this Island is still subject, which might in time consume and wear away the Earth. Nor wants there very good reason for this supposition; as, 1. The narrowness of the Strait, exceeding not a mile and a half; inasmuch as at the taking of *Messina* by the *Carthaginians* many of the people saved themselves by swimming over this Strait, into the opposite parts of *Italy*. 2. The shallowness of it, being found upon a diligent sounding, not to be above eight fathom deep. Then 'tis observed, that the land on both sides is very brittle, full of Caves

and chinks made in it by the working of the Sea, on this separation; and that on the *Italian* coast where the Strait is narrowest, there stands a City of old called *Rhegium*, which signifieth a breach or cutting off, from the *Greek* word *Ρρηγναι*, which signifies to break off, or violently to pull asunder; and is supposed to be so called upon this occasion. And indeed the violence of the Sea is so great and dangerous in this narrow Channel, so subject unto blasting winds issuing out of the hollow caverns of the earth; that the breaking off of this Island from the rest of *Italy*, is a thing most credible. Which dangerous nature of the passage, being also full of Rocks, and unsafe by reason of the Whirl-pools occasioned it to be called by *Florus* the Historian, *Fabulosæ infame monstrosæ fretum*; chiefly so called with reference to *Scylla* and *Charybdis*, of which many fabulous things are reported by the ancient Poets. Of these *Charybdis* is a Gulf or Whirl-pool on *Sicily* side, which violently attracteth all Vessels that come too nigh it, devoureth them, and catcheth up their wrecks at the shore of *Trojanum*, not far from *Catana*. Opposite to this in *Italy*, stander the dangerous Rock *Scylla*, at the foot of which many little Rocks shoot out, on which the wave strongly bearing, making that noise, which the Poets feign to be the barking of Dogs. The passage between these two being to unskilful Mariners exceeding perilous, gave beginning to the Proverb;

*Incidis in Scyllam cupiens vitare Charybdim.*

Who seeks *Charybdis* for to shun,  
Doth oftentimes on *Scylla* run.

But there are other things which made *Sicily* famous in old times, besides these two, as *viz.* the punishment of the Giant *Enceladus*, for his attempt against the gods; the frequent burning of *Ætna* (under which he is fabled to be shut up) being supposed to proceed from his sulphurous breath. Secondly, the birth of *Ceres* in this Isle; and thirdly, the Rape of *Proserpine*. To these two last the Isle was consecrated in those days; to *Ceres* in regard the first taught the people to sow Corn, whence the word *Ceres* is often used in the Poets to signify Bread, and other necessary provisions for life, as *Sine Cere & Baccho friget Venus*: To *Proserpine*, because bestowed upon her by *Pluto*, to please her after the Ravishment committed by her.

It is situate under the fourth Climate, the longest day being 13 hours and a half. And was once called *Trinacria*, because it stood forth into the Sea with three Capes or Promontories: *viz.* 1. *Pelorus*, now *Capo de Faro*, to the North; 2. *Pachynus*, now *Capo Pallaro*, to the West; 3. *Lilybæum*, now *Capo Boia*, or *Capo Caro*, to the South. This last looketh towards *Carthage*, and the shores of *Africa*, from which distant 183 miles. And of this *Strabo* doth affirm, that a man of quick and strong sight getting up into a Watch-tower that stood in this Cape, descried a Fleet setting full out of the Haven of *Carthage*; and told the *Lilybæans* their benigns and number. That this is true, I dare not say: for besides the unlikelihood of kenning at so great a distance; we are taught by Philosophy, that the Sea being of an orbicular form, swelleth it self into the fashion of a round Turret or Hill, till it put beyond the eye-sight. From these three corners, this Country was as we have said) called *Trinacria*, or *Trinacria*, according to that of *Ovid*.

*Terra tribus scopulis vestrum procurrit ægor;  
Trinacris à positæ, nomen adepto, loci.*

And

An Island with three corners braves the Main,  
And thence the name of *Trinacris* doth gain.

The first Inhabitants that we find to have dwelt in this Country, are the huge Giants fo often mentioned in the *Odyssey* of the divine Poet *Homer*, called *Leviathans* and *Cyclopes*; of which last rank was the so famous fa-mouled *Polyphemus*, who with so much humanity entertained *Ulysses*, and his companions. These were after-wards rooted out by the *Sicani*, a people of *Spain*, who called it *Sicania*. As for the name of *Sicilia*, some de- rive it from *Sichew*, a supposed King of *Spain*, who is fabled to have conquered this Country. But the truth is, it came from the *Siculi*, who being by *Evander* and his *Arcadians* driven out of *Latium*, came into this Island: to which having mastered the *Sicani*, and driven them from the West and the Northern part, to the East and South they left their name. At their first landing they built the City of *Zancle*, called afterwards *Messina*, to- gether with *Nee*, *Hybla*, *Catana*, and *Leontium*. After them came another Italian people named the *Monges*, being driven thence by the *Oenontians*; and fate down in that part of the Island where stood the City of *Mo- rentum*, built by them at their first arrival. The first of all the *Greeks* who set foot in it (not to say any thing of the coming of the first Hunter in the pursuit of *De- dalus*), having more in it of the Fiction than Historical truth) were the *Chalcidians*, a people of the Isle *Euboea*, now called *Negropont*; who built the City of *Naxos*; and after them *Archias* of *Corinth*, with his fellow ad- venturers, by whom *Syracuse* was either first built, or very much beautified and repaired. Next then the *Rhodians* and *Cretans* sent some Colonies hither, the first Founders of *Gela*; and after of the renowned City of *Agrigento*: And not long after a new Plantation fell from *Sparta* built *Heraclaea*. The Citizens of *Megara*, another state of *Greece*, sent a Colony also, who built *Selinus*. And did those of *Messene* also, who taking the Town of *Zancle* from the *Siculi*, new built or beau- tified it, and gave unto it to repaired the name of *Messina*. Nor is it to be thought, that the *Tyrians* and *Phoenicians*, being to great undertakers of public business, and very powerful in shipping, would sit still, when fo fair a booty did invite their industry: who seizing on the *Promontories* of *Pachynus* and *Lilybæum*, and some of the adjoining Islands did fortify them for the better secur- ing of the Trade which they had in *Sicily*. But all these several Adventurers having several interdicts, joined to- gether in the work of an absolute Conquest; but plant- ing themselves only on the Sea shores, altered not the name by which they found it called at their coming thither.

The people are ingenuous, eloquent and pleasant, but withal very unconstant, and so full of talk, that from thence came the Proverb, *Gerre Sicile*. They are also said to be of a very envious, suspicious, and distrustful nature, uncapable of injuries, and vehement in pursuit of revenge, as appears by that great slaughter which they made of the *French*: yet withal courteous enough to strangers and *Parasitical* enough to their superiors. They have been famous heretofore for many notable in- ventions, *Aristotle* ascribing to them the Art of *Oratory*, and first making of *Pastoral Elegies*, *Pliny* of Clocks (or rather of Hour-glasses; for Clocks were but a late invention, and that of the *Flemings*); and *Plutarch* of Military Engines; in which last were brought by *Archimedes* unto great perfection.

The Christian Faith was first preached here, by some of the *Disciples* of *St. Peter*, whom he sent hither at his

first coming to *Rome*; of which *Pancreas* (whom we call commonly *St. Pancrace*) is said to have been the first Bishop of *Taurumentum*, and *Martianus* of *Syracuse*. They are now generally of the Religion authorized by the Popes of *Rome*; that of the *Greek Church* being rather com- mitted at then allowed of; in the Communion whereof here are thought to be ten thousand souls, but looked on by the rest as *schismatical* people. For the most part they use the *Italian Language*, but very much altered, by the *Greek*, *Arabian*, *Norman*, *French* and *Spanish* tongues; to which Nations they have been se- verally subject, since the time of the *Romans*. The total number of the people is thought to be about a Million and a half.

The soil is incredibly fruitful in Wine, Oyl, Honey, Minerals of Gold, Silver, and Allom, together with plenty of Salt and Sugar; which last commodity the Natives sell in Canes unto the *Venitians*, and buy it again of them when it is refined; and thereby letting strangers go away with the best part of their gains; as generally they do in all other Merchandize; which they permit to be exported, rather then put themselves to the trouble of Trafficking abroad in Foreign Nations. There are also Gems of *Agates*, and *Emeralds*. It yieldeth also great store of the richest Silks, which grow plenty- fully about *Messina*; variety of most excellent and de- licious fruits, both for salt and colour: with such abun- dance of all kinds of Grain, that it was called in old times *Horreum Romanis populi*, or the Granary of the Ro- man Empire; and doth now furnish some parts of *Italy*, *Spain*, and *Barbary*, besides *Malta*, and the adjacent Isles, with that which the can spare of her superfluities. Nay, *Tully* doth not only call it the Granary and Store-house of the City of *Rome*, in regard of Corn, but adds that it was accounted a well furnished *Treasury*; as being able of it self without charge of the State, to cloath, maintain and furnish the greatest Army, with Leather, Corn and apparel. And it *Dionorus Siculus* may be cre- dited in it, he telleth us, that about *Leontium* and some other places, Wheat did grow of it self, without any labour of the Husbandman. At this day in some parts of the Isle, the soil is so exceeding fruitful, that it yields unto the Husbandman an hundred measures of Corn for one And certainly the Corn of this Country must needs yield a wonderful increase, the King of *Spain* receiving an hundred thousand Crowns yearly for the Custom of Wheat. In this Country is the Hill *Hybla*, so famous for Bees and Honey; near which there was a City of the same name also, which afterwards was called *Megara*. And here is also the Hill *Ætna*, now called *Monte Pelé*, which continually sendeth forth flames of Fire, to the astonishment of all beholders. The most famous Con- flagrations in the former times were precisely before the breaking out of the War in *Sicily*, which the *Romans* Writers call *Bellum frivile*, not pacified but by the slaughter of 70000 of the Slaves which had taken Arms against *Rome*; and shortly after the death of *Julius Cæsar*, portending those procriptions and Bloody Wars, which did after follow. And to this day such extraordinary eruptions of it are accounted ominous. The Hill it self is of that height, that it is ten miles from the top to the bottom, and may be easily discerned by Sailors at an hundred miles distance: the lower parts thereof being very fruitful, the middle shaded with Woods, and the top covered with Snow, a great part of the year, not- withstanding the frequent vomiting of flames and cin- ders. But these eruptions of fire are not now so ordinary as they have been formerly; the matter which gave fuel to it being watted by continual burnings: so that the flames which issue hence are hardly visible but by night,

night, though the smoke shew it self the most part of the day. And when it doth break out, which is com- monly once in three or four years; it falleth in great flakes on the Vales adjoining; to the destruction of the Vintage, and great loss of the Country. But that, they say, is recompensed by the plenty of the following years; the ashes thereof so bathing and enriching the soil, that both the Vines and Corn-fields are much bettered by it. And this report I am the apter to believe, in regard we find by late experience here amongst our selves, that the Turk taken from the ground and burnt to ashes, and so spread on land and ploughed into it, doth yield a very great improvement, even to barren soils. Which kind of Husbandry is called the *Devonishing* of land, because there first used; but in *Hampshire* it was called, as I re- member (having been unfortunately too long a stranger there) by the name of *burning and beaking*. But to return again to *Ætna*, into this fiery Furnace the Philosopher *Empedocles* call himself that he might be reputed a God.

Deus immortalis haberi

Dum caput Empedocles, ardentem fervidus Ætnam  
Insistit—

As Horace, in his Book de Arte Poetica.

Empedocles to be a God desires,  
And calls himself into th' Ætnean fires.

The reason of these fires is the abundance of Sulphur and Brimstone, contained in the bosom of the Hill, which is blown by the wind, driving in at the chaps of the Earth as by a pair of bellows. Through these chinks also there is continually more fuel added to the fire, the very water adding to the force of it as we see that water cast on coals in the Smiths-Forge, doth make them burn more ardently. The reason of this flame thus set down by *Ovid*.

Ille bituminis raptum incendia vires;  
Lutæque, exiguæ ardentes sulphura flammæ.  
Atque ubi terra cibus alimentisq; debita flammæ  
Non dabit, adsumptis per longum viribus ævum,  
Naturæq; sustinetur, non enim decet edaci,  
Naturæ feret illa famem, desertisq; desertæ ignes.

A rozen mould these fiery flames begin,  
And clayey brimstone aids that fire within:  
Yet when the slimy foyle consumed, shall  
Yield no more food to feed the fire withal,  
And Nature shall refrain her nourishment,  
The flame shall cease, hating all aliment.

Under this Hill some Poets feign the Giant *Enceladus* to have been buried, as before is said, whose hot breath fired the Mountain lying on his face. Others suppose it to be the Shop of *Vulcan*, and the *Cyclopes* and the gross Pa- pists take it for the place of *Purgatory*; all alike unfaillible. The principal Rivers heretof, 1. *Taretta*, anciently called *Toris*. 2. *Himera*, neighboured by Mount *Hybla*, much famed for Honey. 3. *Sicurus*. 4. *Hybla*. 5. *Acasus*, of great note for its precious Stones. None of them much observable for its length or breadth, but that defect supplied by the commodiousness of Bays and Creeks, which are very frequent in this Island, and by the bene- fit of Fountains and fresh-water Lakes. Most memorable amongst these, 1. The Lake called *Palerme*, (now *Nap- thia*) which for three months doth cast forth water very hot, but of very ill smell; of which there is men- tion made in *Pliny*, by the name of *Ephibia*. 2. A Foun- tain near the foot of *Ætna*, the water whereof is sharp like *Vinegar*, and sometimes boylth; into which a piece

of cloth cast, being before steeped in water mixed with Gall, becomes suddenly black. 3. Another Fountain near *Drepanum*, the water of which, as soon as drunk, provo- keth loosness. All which effects proceed from that sul- phureous and bituminous matter, of which the whole Island is exceeding full. 4. *Arctusius*, of greater fame among the Ancients, than all the rest; especially in that the River *Alpheus* (a River of *Greece*) having swallow- ed up one hundred and forty lesser streams, and losing it self under the ground is thought to empty it self into it. The thing affirmed by *Seneca* and *Strabo* both, and seems to be sufficiently proved, by the several instances of a wooden dish or cup lost in the River *Alpheus*, and found rising up in this River; and by the leaves of certain trees growing on the banks of that *Greek River*, and swimming on this in great abundance; there being none of these trees in all *Sicily*. *Dicitur Alpheus* (with *Mela*) *se non conficiare pelago*; *Jed subter maria, terræq; depressis, hic agere alveum, atq; hic se rursus exalare*.

This Island is famous for the worthy Scholars the once produced, viz. *Æschylus*, the first Tragedian of fame; who being banished through age, once walked in the fields, where by chance an Eagle taking his bald pate for a white Rock, let a Shellfish fall on it, of that bigness that it beat out his Brains. 2. *Dionorus Siculus*, that famous Historian. 3. *Empedocles*, the first inventor of *Rhetorick*; and his fellow *Gorgias*. 4. *Euclid*, the textuary Geome- trician, who taught in *Megara*. 5. *Archimedes*, a most worthy Mathematician, the first Author of the Sphere; of which Instrument he made one of that art and bigness; that one standing within, might easily perceive the several motions of every Celestial Orb. He made also divers Military Engines, which in the siege of *Syracuse* foxy vexed the *Romans*, and was at last slain in his study by a common Souldier in the sack of the Town, to the great grief of the General *Marcellus*. 6. *Epicharmus*, the first Inventor of Comedies; and 7. *Theophrastus*, the first Author of *Pastoral Elegies*. In the latter times, *Nicola*, Abbot of *Palermo*, a learned Canonist, and Cardinal of the Church of *Rome*, commonly called *Panormitanus*, was of greatest fame.

In *Plinius* time there were reckoned in this Island se- ven two Cities, of which only twelve are now remain- ing. The whole divided at this time into three small Pro- vinces, that is to say, 1. *Val de Noto*, 2. *Mazara*, and 3. *Mazara*, to which the Isles adjoining may add a fourth, 1. *V. A. L. L. S. de Noto*. To speak up the Eastern parts of the Island. The chief Cities of which are 1. *Syracuse*, once the Metropolis of the whole Island, and a most flourishing Common-wealth: it was (as *Tully* reports) the greatest and goodliest City of all that were possessed by the *Greeks*; for situation very strong; and of an excellent prospect, from every entrance both by Sea and Land. The Port thereof which had the Sea on both sides of it, was for the most part environed with beautiful buildings; and that part of it which was with- out the City, was on both sides banked up, and situ- ated with very fair Walls of Marble. Nor was it only the goodliest City of the *Greeks*, as *Tully* tells us, but one of the greatest also in the World, as is said by *Strabo*; by whom it is affirmed, that without the outmost Wall thereof, (for it was environed with three Walls) it contained one hundred and eighty Furlongs in compass, which of our measure cometh to eight-hundred and one, that is to say, *Insula* (or the Isle) *Arcadian*, *Neapolis*, and *Tyche*, besides the Fort called *Heclepi*, which commanded the rest; the greatests of all which, the ruins and foundations of it do still de- monstrate. It standeth North of the Promontory

called *Pachynus*, and was built by *Architis* of *Corinthus* about the time of *Jotham* King of *Judah*, who being for an unnatural Race, committed on a young Gentleman, banished his Country, together with his friend and companion *Misellus*, consulted with the Oracle at *Delphos*, how and in what place they should dispose of themselves. The Oracle demanding whether they most affected wealth, or health: *Misellus* answered health, and *Architis* wealth; and thereupon the former was directed to settle himself at *Crotone* in *Italy*, and the other here. Nor did the Oracle deceive him in his expectation; this Town by reason of its beautiful and commodious Port, growing of greatest trade and wealth next to *Carthage* it self, in those times of the World. It was the custom of this Town, when any of the Citizens grew too potent, to write his name in an Olive-leaf, which being put into his hand, did without more ado condemn him to banishment for five years, and was called *Petalium*, from the Greek word *Πτελον*, signifying a Leaf. Yet could not this device so well secure them in the possession of their much desired freedom, that this City fell often into the power of Tyrants, than any one City in the World. That which is now remaining of it is the work of *Angustus*, who after a second destruction of it in the time of *Pompey*, sent a Colony thither, and built upon the site and the parts near unto it. But now the whole Isle (*Ortygia* the Ancients called it) is taken up with a very strong Castle, and the whole City also being very well walled, and held by a Garrison of *Spaniards*. 2. *Note*, which gives name to this whole Division. A City which heretofore contended with *Syracuse* in point of Greatness; situate on a very high Rock, inaccessible on all sides but by one narrow passage; and having under the Cape of *Pasirra* a very fair and capacious Harbour, the Key of *Sicily* on that side. 3. *Angitia*, situate on the shore also, and of so large a Haven that it could never be fortified. 4. *Castro Giovanni*, a Town of about four thousand Families, situate in a wholesome air, and a fruitful foil, which they hold to be the very Navel and exact middle of the Island. It is also much prized for Mines of most excellent Salt. 5. *Lentini*, famous for its Lake, whose fishing is farmed for eighteen thousand Crowns yearly: It was anciently called *Leontium*, and stood somewhat North of *Syracuse*; with which continually in War, either to preserve their own Liberties, or get the Sovereignty of the other. 6. *Enna*, a midland Town, whence *Pluto* is said to have ravished *Proserpine*. In after-times the dwelling of that *Syrus Enna*, who stirred up the Roman slaves against their Lords; and having broke open his common Prisons, and received all such as came unto him pitched up an Army of forty thousand. This War the Roman Writers call *Bellum Sicile*, ended at last but with no small difficulty, by the valour and good fortune of *P. Rutilius*.

2. *MAZARA* containeth all the West parts of the Island. The chief Cities thereof, 1. *Agirgentum*, now call'd *Gergenti*, famous for *Phalaris* the Tyrant, and his torturing *Perillus* in a Brazen Bull, which he had made for the destruction and torture of others. Of which aply *Ovid*,

— Nec enim lex injuria nulla est,  
Quam necis Artifices arte perire sua.

Most just it is, a man should be tormented  
With that, which first his cruel Wit invented.

It was said anciently of the people of this City, that they built as if they should never die, and eat as if they were sure to live no longer. 2. *Palermo*, anciently called *Panormus*, and then a Colony of the *Phenicians*; now the

chief City of *Sicily*, and the Seat of the Spanish Vice-roy. Situate on the West Cape of the Island looking towards *Sardinia*, beautified with large Streets, delicate Buildings, strong Walls, and magnificent Temples. It hath no natural Port appertaining to it, (*Drepanum* serving anciently as the Port thereof) but of late there is an Haven forced out by a mighty *Pierre*, a work of vast expense, and worthy of the greatness of *Rome*. It is also an Archbishops See, and an University. 3. *Morrell*, commonly call'd *Morrell*, famous for the Church, the Archbishops See. It is called in *Latine*, *Mor Regaliu*. 4. *Drepanum*, now call'd *Trapani*, situate on a promontory thrusting into the Sea, not far from that of *Lilybeum*, a Town well fortified, in regard of the ill Neighborhood of the *Moors*, who do often pillage on these Coasts; and having the command of a very fair Port. The Inhabitants of this place are said to be the best Seamen of *Sicily*. 5. *Mazara*, which gives name unto all this Vale, situate South of *Lilybeum*, and not far from *Salemi*. 6. *Eryx*, situate on a Mountain over-looking the Sea, said by the Ancients to have took this name from *Eryx* the Son of *Venus*, slain here by *Hercules*: memorable in those elder times for being the Seat of *King Acleas*, who for kindly entertained *Æneas*, and his wandering *Trojans*; and a magnificent Temple, in which *Venus* was worshipped, and from thence was called *Erycina*; as, *Sive tu maxis Erycina ridens*, in the Poet *Horace*. This was the last Town which the *Carthaginians* held in *Sicily*. On the surrendry whereof by *Amilcar* the Father of *Anibal*; at the end of the first *Punic* War, it was conditioned by the *Romans*, amongst other things that the *Carthaginians* should relinquish all the Claim or Title which they had to any part of this Island; which thereby fell unto the *Romans* (the State of *Syracuse* excepted only.) Who, whatsoever colour they were pleased to put upon that action, were principally tempted to it by ambition and covetousness. And therefore in my mind *Florus* states it rightly, who saith, that it was undertaken *specie quidem juvenudi Socios, re autem silibstante Prædæ*; i. e. under pretence of aiding the *Minorians*, who had put themselves into their protection, but in plain terms to get possession of the Island which lay fit for *Italy*. Now, and long since a ruin only, the place on which it stood being called *Mont St. Julian*. 7. *Segesta*, on the Sea-side, not far from *Eryx*, near unto which the *Trojans* Laid waste of their many long and dangerous voyages, and fearing to go again to Sea, burnt the Fleet of *Æneas*; on which occasion it was built. Peopled at first by such of the more old and feeble *Trojans*, (*Longæque senes, et seclæ æquore matres*, as the Poet hath it) who chose rather to fix their dwelling here, than to follow the fortunes of *Æneas*, in his quest of *Italy*. Call'd then *Acleas*, in honour of *King Acleas*, spoken of before, part of whose Kingdom it was made; afterwards *Ægeia* from *Ægeus* one of *Trojan* Race, born here, by whom it was repaired and beautified; and at last *Segesta*.

3. *MONA* lieth on the North-East of the Island, opposite unto *Palis de Noto*. The chief Towns of it, 1. *Nicosia*, in the mid-land. 2. *Milase*, on the Northern Promontory. 3. *Messina*, a City of great strength and beauty just opposite to *Rheza* in *Italy*. It was the first Town which the *Romans* had in this Island, being put into their hands by the *Mamertines*, a Troop of Soldiers brought thither out of *Campania* for the defence of the City, who minding themselves too strong for the *Citizens*, made themselves Masters of the place; but being with all too weak to hold it, chose rather to surrender it to the *Romans*, than to its true and proper Owners. Hence the beginning of the first War betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. A City it is at this time, of the most beautiful

beautiful building of any in *Sicily*; and peopled by the wealthiest sort both of Merchants and Gentlemen, who live here in great pleasure (if not voluptuousness) as having plenty of all necessary provisions, Fruits of all kinds, delicious Wines, and Snow to moderate and qualify the heats thereof, at cheaper rates than any elsewhere in the Country. On the West side there stands a strong Citadel, highly mounted, and well Garrisoned, which commands the Town: and not far off a very high Lanthorn where Lights are kept burning all night long, for the direction of such Mariners as are to pass those dangerous Straits; which from this *Phare* or Watch-Tower, is called commonly the *Phare* of *Messina*. The Haven of this Town is the fairest of *Sicily*, whose entrances are so strongly fenced and bulwarked, that the people let their Gates (in derision of the *Turks*) stand always open. It is also an Archbishops See. 4. *Catana*, so often vexed by *Diomedes* the Tyrant of *Syracuse*; more ancient than beautiful: seated on the North side of a great (but hollow) Bay, not easily approached by Ships, and therefore neither held by any Garrison, nor much traded by Merchants: the riches of the place consisting principally in the fruitfulness of the foil, the habitation of many of the Gentry, and by being a small University. It was once a Colony of the *Naxians*. And so was also *Tauromenium*, the fifth Town of note in this part of the Island, called sometimes from its Founders *Naxos*, but now *Thermino*; a ruin only of what was in the former days: a place by nature of great strength, but over-topped by *Syracuse* and *Messina*, betwixt which it standeth. It was in this part of the Country that the *Cyclopes* dwelt, there being three little Rocky Islands (now not inhabited) not far from this Town, which for a long time were called *Cyclopsom Scopuli*.

4. On the West part of *Sicily* lie the *ÆOLIAN* or *Vulcanian* Islands, heretofore only seven, and all almost of equal bigness; now eleven in number. The first name derived from *Æolus*, once Lord of them, who being well skilled in divining from what coasts the Winds would blow, (which he conjectured by the smoke ascending from them) occasioned the Poets to make him the God of the Winds. The other is derived from *Vulcan* the God of fire; by reason of the continual flames of fire from thence evaporating in those elder days. But now the matter of those flames being wasted in long track of time, there is only one of them which burneth, now called *STOMBOLO*; by some Writers *Strongyle*, from the roundness of it. An Island of about ten miles compass, but such as seems to be no other than a large round Mountain. Out of the top whereof issueth continually a flame like a burning Beacon, easily discernable far off, but at nights especially: a place so full of horror to the neighbouring Islanders, that they and many others of the *Romish* Catholics conceive it to be Hell it self. And yet in those parts where the rage of the fire offendeth not it is of a very fruitful foil, and apt for tillage.

2. But the fairest and best peopled of those Islands, is that of *LIPARA*, some ten miles in circuit, (from whence the red at call'd the *Liparean* Isles) so named from *Liparus* the chief of the Town, said to be built in the time of *Judah* King of *Judah*; the See of a Bishop, under the Archbishop of *Messina*. The Island generally fruitful, well furnished with *Allum*, *Sulphur*, and *Bismuth*; and with some hot medicinal Baths, which are much frequented, and from thence called *Thermæ*, by the ancient Writers. It was formerly of great wealth, that falling into the disfigurement of *Agaboles* (then the Tyrant of *Syracuse*) they were able to buy their peace of him, at the some of one hundred Talents of Gold; which sum they had no sooner paid, but the Tyrant for a fare-

well, robbed their very Temples. Unprosperous in his Actions always after that adventure. Nor sped it better with the *Turks*, who in the year 1544. laid the Country to the siege; in which condition it remained, till *Charles* the fifth replenished it again with *Spaniards*, and fortified it very strongly against all invasions.

3. Not far off lieth another of these Islands, now called *PAFOGNANA*, or *Fanciana*, but anciently *Ægeia*, conceived to be the same which *Livy* and *Florus* call *Ægæti*: in which there is a fair and capacious Bay, able to receive the greatest Navies; and near to which *Lutathus Catulus* the Consul gave the *Carthaginians* their last blow at Sea, which drew along with it the surrender of *Ægeia*, and the loss of *Sicily*. *Didyme*, *Erymus*, and *Phanias*, four other of these Islands, but of lesser note, I pass over willingly; and make haste to

4. *HIERO*, the seventh and last of these Islands of any consideration, and the eighth in tale, called also *Vulcania*, in which *Vulcan* was worshipped; said to have first appeared above the water at such time as *Scipio Africanus* died. A barren, stony, and uninhabited place, by reason of the fires which formerly have flamed so hideously (especially in the year 1444.) that it made not only the rest of these Islands, but all *Sicily* tremble. Near unto this Isle was fought the first Naval fight betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. Before which time the *Romans* had never used the Seas, as being totally employed in the conquest of *Italy*, inasmuch that when they had built their Gallies, they were fain to exercise their men in rowing, by placing them on two Seats near the water with Oars in their hands. Which notwithstanding, having devised an Engine like a grappling hook, they so fastned the adverse Fleet unto them, that the whole fight seemed a Land-battle fought upon the Sea. The victory fell unto the *Romans*; *C. Duilius* the Consul then commanding in chief; and honoured with the first Naval Triumph that was ever solemnized at *Rome*.

After this Island was once known to the *Greeks*, they sent from all their chief Cities several Colonies, who planted in the Sea-coasts of the Country, as before noted. But so as they never united themselves in a body together, but had their several elites and particular ends; whereby they came to be divided into many factions, and at last made themselves a prey to as many Tyrants. *Phalaris* Lording it at *Agirgentum*, *Panæus* at *Leontium*, *Gelon* at *Syracuse*, *Cleander* at *Gela*, and when one Faction grew too weak to resist the other, they called in several Foreign Nations to abet their quarrel. For on this ground the *Carthaginians* were first called into *Sicily* by the *Messinians*, against the *Agirgentines*. And on the Wars was managed here a great part of the *Peloponnesian* Wars: the *Athenians* siding with the *Leontines*, and the *Spartans* with the *Carthaginians*: in which the whole power of *Athens* was broken by Sea and Land; and their two Generals *Nicias* and *Demophilus*, murdered in prison. But because *Syracuse* was a City of the greatest Authority, and of greatest influence over the rest of *Sicily*, we shall more punctually insist on the State-affairs thereof. The Government of which at first was popular, as it was in most of the Greek Colonies, according to the platforms which they brought from home; and was but newly altered to the *Archepterial*, when *Gelon* made himself King of it, about 256 years after the expulsion of the *Tarquinians* at *Rome*; whom with as many as succeeded in the Royal dignity, take along as followeth.

The Tyrants, or Kings of *Syracuse*.

A. M. 3495 1. *Gelon* the Prince or Lord of *Gela* taking advantage of the quarrels in *Syracuse*, betwixt the  
L 2 Magistrates



Magistrates and people, made himself Master of the City; and was chosen King. A valiant and prudent Prince, by whom 150000 Carthaginians were slain in battle, for their first welcome into Sicily.

3472 2. *Hiero*, the Brother of *Gelon*, a valiant King also, but a rude and covetous man, whereby he lost the love of his people.

3484 3. *Therasybulus*, Brother of *Hiero*, whose Government proved so cruel and unsupported, that it held not above ten Months; who being forced into Exile by the *Syracusan*, the peoples did a while enjoy their liberty; but withal fell into those Factions, which after 60 years made them lose it again.

3544 4. *Dionysius*, that so famous Tyrant, from being General of the Forces of the *Syracusans*, made himself their King. A man of great virtues, but great virtues withal. He brought almost all Sicily under his obedience, and the Town of *Regium* in Italy; reigning in all 18 years.

3582 5. *Dionysius II.* succeeding his Father in his Kingdom and vices, but not in valour or widow, was first out by *Dion* a noble Gentleman of *Syracusa* and afterward taken Prisoner by *Timoleon* of *Corinth*, to which City he was sent, and there died in Exile.

3635 6. *Agathocles*, by trade a Potter, after that a soldier, 20 years after the death of *Timoleon*, made himself King of *Syracusa*. To draw the *Carthaginians* out of *Sicily*, he passed over into *Africa*, and besieged *Carthage*; which example *Scipio* after followed, but with better fortune.

3681 7. *Hiero II.* of a Commander of their Armies chosen King of *Syracusa*, by a Party which he made amongst them. In his time brake out the first *Punic* War, the *Romans* being called in by the *Mercenaries*, who held *Messina* against the *Carthaginians*; the Lords at that time of the greatest part of the Island.

3737 8. *Hieronimus*, the Son of *Hiero*, after whose death *Syracusa* and all *Sicily* became subject to *Rome*, by the fortunate conduct of *Marcellus*.

Of these eight Kings, the six first commonly pass under the name of *Tyrants*; from whence and from some others of like disposition, who Lorded it over the free Cities of *Sicily*, the name of *Sicili Tyranni* grew into a Proverb. But of all none more hated than the two *Dionysii*, who were so odious, that there were continual execrations poured on them; only one old Woman praying for the life of the latter. Who being asked the cause made answer, that he knew his Father to have been a monstrous and wicked Tyrant; on whom when the curses of the people have prevailed, and obtained his death; this his Son succeeded, worse by far than he; for whose life he was resolved to pray, lest after his death the Devil himself should come amongst them. But to proceed: after these *Tyrants*, as they called them, from their rout out, and the Island was conquered by *Marcellus*, it always followed the fortune of the *Roman* Empire; till in the partition of that Empire, it fell together with *Africa* and *Calabria*, into the power of the *Greeks*. In the declining of whose greatness, this Island having been miserably pillaged and spoiled by the Emperor *Constantine*, An. 669. became a prey to the *Saracens*; from them recovered again by the help of the *Normans*, who held both this and the Realm of *Naples*, in Fee of the Church, under the title of Kings of both *Sicily*. From that time for-

wards it ran the fortune of that Kingdom, subject unto the Princes of the *Norman* and *German* Lines; till the death of *Conrade*, no interruption intervening. After whose death when *Manfred* or *Manfred*, the base Son of the Emperor *Frederick*, and Brother of *Conrade*, had forcibly made himself King of these Countries; it was offered to *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*, Brother to *Henry III.* of *England*: a Prince of such riches, that he was able to dispense an hundred Marks per diem, for ten years together; which according to the Standard of those times, was no small sum. But the conditions which the Pope proposed were so impossible for the Earl to perform, that his Agent told him, he might as well say to his Master, *I will give thee the Moon*, catch, climb up, and sit by it. The Earl refusing it, it was offered the King for his second Son *Edmund*, who was invested by the gift of a Ring, and money coined in his name by the Popes appointment, with the Inscription of *Edmundus Rex Sicilie*. But the King not being able to pursue the business, because then overburthened by his Barons Wars, and the Pope having sucked no small store of Treasures from him; it was in the year 1261. given unto *Charles*, Earl of *Provence* and *Anjou*, Brother to *Lewis X.* Under him those Countries joyntly continued subject till the year 1281. in which his Competitor, *Peter* of *Aragon*, claiming it in right of his Wife, Daughter of *Manfred* before mentioned, promising him to fight a single combat before our King *Edward I.* at *Bourdeaux*, failed of his Word; and in the mean time so contrived it, that at the found of a Bell tolling to Prayers, all the *French* men in *Sicily* were cruelly massacred. This exploit is known now under the name of *Vesperi Siculi*; and was managed by *John de Procopia*, a Gentleman of the Realm of *Naples*, whom *Charles* had dispossessed of the Isle of *Procopia*, whereof he had been formerly Lord; and not content to do him such a piece of injustice, added a further insolence to it, in the forcing his Wife. Provoked with these two injuries, the abused Gentleman plots with King *Peter* of *Aragon*, to make him Master of the Isle of *Sicily*, where he had very good Intelligences; and where the *French* by reason of their Lufts and Infolencies had so exasperated the Natives, that they were capable enough of any such impressions, as a man sharing with him in his sufferings, could imprint upon them. According to the compact made, *Don Pedro* riggish out his Navy, under pretence of some exploits against the *Moor*, and anchored in the Port of *Sardinia*, there to expect how well the Tragedy would be acted; which fell out so agreeably to his expectation, that in one instant as it were, on the signal given, the *French* were universally murdered in all parts of the Island: the people being so enraged, that they would not spare women great with Child; supposed to have been got by any of that hated Nation; and *Pedro* coming in with his Navy as the deed was done, was by the general consent of all sorts of people, crowned King of *Sicily*. A bloody policy, confests, which as the Actors learned of the *English Saxons*, who had made like riddance of the *Danes*; so did they teach it to the *French*, who practised it on the *Hugonots* of *France* in that horrid Massacre of *Paris*, An. 1572. An Act which provoked the Pope, that he solemnly excommunicated the King, and caused many of the neighbouring Princes to Arm against him. But the *Rox* dared never the worse for that: who did to order his affairs, that he did both clear his own Country of those enemies which on the Popes curse had come in against him; and ruled *Sicily* more firmly in obedience to him. Since which time this Island hath belonged to the House of *Aragon*, but not always in possession of the Kings thereof, being a while governed as a State apart by its own Kings, whose succession followeth.

Kings

## Kings of Sicily of the House of Aragon.

1281 1. *Pedro*, or *Peter I.* King of *Aragon* by birth, of *Sicily* in right of his Wife, the choice of the people, and the Legacy of *Conrade* (the last of the Royal Line of *Suevia*) but principally by the power of the Sword.

1285 2. *James*, the second Son of *Pedro*, King of *Sicily*, after the death of his Brother *Alfonso*, succeeded in *Aragon*, to which Crown he added the Isle of *Sardinia*.

1291 3. *Frederick*, the Brother of *James*, on his Brothers taking the Crown of *Aragon*, got possession of *Sicily*. By *Frederick Alfonso*, a younger Son of this *Frederick*, the Title of Duke of *Athens* came into this Family.

1336 4. *Peter*, or *Pedro II.* Son of *Frederick*.

1342 5. *Frederick II.*

6. *Peter*, or *Pedro III.*

7. *Lewis*, Son to *Peter III.*

8. *Frederick II.* in the life of *Lewis* his Brother called Duke of *Athens*; after his death succeeded in the Kingdom of *Sicily*.

1389 9. *Martin*, Son to *Martin I.* King of *Aragon*, succeeded in the right of his Wife *Blanche*, Daughter of *Frederick*, the third; and dying without issue, gave the Kingdom unto *Martin* his Father.

1409 10. *Martin II.* of *Sicily* and the first of *Aragon*, of which last he was King by birth, and of the former by the gift of his Son. After which time the Isle of *Sicily* being again united to the Crown of *Aragon*, was never separated from it; except it were when *John* King of *Aragon* gave it to *Ferdinand* his Son, the better to fit him for the bed of *Isabel* Princess of *Castile*, with whom the match was then in treaty; and when the Emperor *Charles V.* gave it, with *Naples*, unto *Philip* his eldest Son, on his marriage with *Mary* Queen of *England*, who thereupon was styled King of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Jerusalem*. But this held only for a year; his Father shortly after resigning to him all his Kingdoms, whereby it became joynt to *Spain* again.

The Revenues of this Kingdom are by some said to be but 800000, but as others say, a million of Ducats, most of which is again disbursed on the entertainment of the Vice-Roy, and the defence of the Island. The Arms are, Or, four Pallets Gules (being those of *Aragon*) betwixt two Flanches Argent, charged with as many Escus Sable, beaked Gules, which was the bearing of *Manfred* King of *Naples*, and *Sicily*, spoken of before, who gave those Arms with reference to his descent from the *German* Emperours.

This Island for the number of its Nobility compares with *Naples*, as having in the time of *Ortelius*, 80 years ago, 7 Princes, 4 Dukes, 13 Marquesses, 14 Earls, 1 Viscount, 48 Barons: Men of authority and power in their several Territories; and therefore not permitted to live much in the Island, the greatest part of their time being spent in the Court of *Spain*, but more to satisfy that King upon reason of State, than any affection of their own to so long an exile. And for the Government of the

Here are  
Archbishops 3. Bishops 9.

## The Kingdom of SARDINIA.

The Island and Kingdom of *SARDINIA* lieth called Cape *Bari*, or Cape *Cero*, it is distant about 200 miles. It is in length 180 miles, 90 in breadth, 560 in the circuit; and is situate under the 4. Climate, the longest day being 14 hours.

In the time of *Ariftole* it was called *Ichnusa*, next *Sandaliotis*, from the resemblance which it hath to a mans Shoe or Sandal; and finally *Sardinia* from *Sardus* the Son of *Hercules*, who coming out of *Sardinia* possessed the fame. For this there is sufficient authority amongst the Ancients. Of the first names faith *Pliny* in as plain terms as may be, that *Timaeus* called *Sardinia* *Sandaliotis*, and *Myrsilus*, *Ichnusa*, from the similitude which it hath to the Shoe-sole, or impression of a man's foot on the ground; *Sardiniam* *Timaeus* *Sandaliotis* appellavit ab effigie sole; *Myrsilus*, *Ichnusam* a similitudine vestigi. And for the last nothing can be more plain than that of *Paustanias*, who tells that the first who came by shipping into *Sardinia*, were certain *Affians* under the conduct of *Sardus* the Son of *Macris*, whom the *Egyptians* called by the name of *Hercules*; who coming into this Island then called *Ichnusa*, τὸ ἰχνηνὰ ἀπὸ τοῦ Σαρδηνίου τοῦ πρώτου ἐκ τῶν ἑλλήνων, caused it after his own name to be called *Sardinia*. For further evidence whereof, the people in the *Latine* tongue are called *Sardis* the adjoining Sea, *Mare Sardinum*. And to this name it was so constant, that no following Plantations from other Countries were ever able to alter it. Some Companies of *Affians*, led by *Iolans*, Came and settled here, where they built *Olbian*, and *Agillie*: leaving a memory of *Iolans* their Captain in some places, which remained in the time of *Paustanias*, called *Iolais*; and taking to themselves for his false name of *Iolantifer*. And after the destruction of *Troy*, some of that scattered Nation came and planted in some void parts of the Island; kept to themselves the name of *Iliosfer*, and by that name are mentioned both by *Pliny* and *Livy*. But neither of these Nations did attempt the change of the name, because not of ability to suppress or out-power the Natives. Nor could the *Carthaginians* do it, though a more puissant Nation than the former were; and such as by the nearness of their habitation (*Sardinia* being distant but 160 miles from *Affica*) had all advantages to make (as at last they did) a full Conquest of it: building therein the Cities of *Charmis*, *Chalaris*, and *Sulcis*; and holding it until it was unjustly extorted from them by the *Romans*, at the end of the first *Punic* War, at what time *Carthage* was in danger to be ruined by the revolt of her own *Mercenaries*, and for not able to resist.

But of the name and first Plantations of this Island we have said enough. Let us now look upon the places in which it is reported that there is neither Wolf nor Serpent, neither venomous nor hurtful Beasts, but the Fox only, and a little Creature like a Spider which will by no means endure the light of the Sun, except held by violence. Some Pools it hath, and those very plentiful of Fish; but generally so destitute of River-water, that they are fain to keep the Rain which falls in Winter, for their use in Summer. By means whereof, and for that there is no passage for the Northern winds, being obstructed by the high Mountain near Cape *Lugudori*, the air is generally unwholesome, if not pestilential: Intomuch that *Tully* writing to his Brother *Quintus* being then in this Island, adviceth him to remember, as in point of health, that he was in *Sardinia*; and speaking of

Tigilins,

*Tigellus* a *Sardinian* born, faith of him, that he was more pestilent than the Country which bred him. The soil is very fertile in respect of *Corn*, but barren if compared with *Sicily*, which yet may rather be imputed to the want of good manuring in the Husbandman, than any natural defect in the Soil it self. Well furred with all sorts of Cattel, as appears plainly by that plenty of Cheefe and Hides which are sent hence yearly into *Italy* and other places. The Horses hereof, hot, headstrong, and hard to be broken, but will last long. The Bullocks naturally amble, so that the Country-man rideth them as familiarly as they do in *Spain* on Mules and Asses. Here is also the beaft called *Musfrones* or *Musfriones*, found in *Corfica* also, but in no other part of *Europe*; somewhat resembling a Stag, but of so strong an hide, that it is used by the *Italians* instead of Armour: Of the skin of which carried to *Cordova* in pain, and there dressed, is made the right *Cordovan* Leather. Finally, here is an Herb, of which if one eat, it is said he will die with laughter; whence came the Proverb, *Risus Sardonius*. The truth of which report I shall not dispute, though it be by others more probably conjectured, that the Herb being of a poysonous nature, causeth men to die with such a Convulsion or attraction of Sinews, that they seem to grin or laugh at the time of their death.

The people are small of stature, of complexion inclining unto swarthy, and that either by reason of the heat of the Sun, or more probably from their *African* extraction: their behaviour much participating of that people also. So slothful in the times of the *Romans*, that people also. They were grown into a Proverb, and a Law made to compel them to work; but now esteemed a very painful and laborious Nation. Much given to hunting, and so prone to Rebellion that the *Spaniard* permiteth no Cutler to live among them; yet peaceable among themselves, and in some measure courteous unto Strangers also. Their Language a corrupt *Catalonian*; their diet on meats common and gross, their apparel in the Towns (especially that of the women) gorgeous, in the Villages fardly.

In matters of Religion they are little curious. That which they make most shew of, is according to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*; which both their Neighbourhood to the Pope, and their subjection to the *Spaniard*, have imposed upon them. But in their practice of it they are loose enough, going to Mass on Sundays and Saints days; which done they fill a dancing in the middle of the Church, singing in the mean time songs too immodest for the most rude, ignorant, and illiterate of any people in Christendom; saying their Masses rather by rote, than reason, and utterly unable to give any account of their Religion.

It is divided commonly into two parts, viz. *Cape Lugudari*, toward *Corfica* and *Cape Cagliari*, towards *Africa*: the first the least, and withal mountainous and barren the last the larger level, and by much more fruitful. Chief Cities of the whole, 1. *Calaris*, first built by the *Carthaginians*, and situate in that point of the Island which lieth nearest to *Africa*; which from hence took the name of *Cape Cagliari*, by which it is at this day called. A City of high fame, when it was first taken by *Gracchus*, for the use of the *Romans*, that it is called by *Florus*, *Urbs ubinum*; and was destroyed by the said *Gracchus*, the better to disable the Natives from rebelling against the Conquerors. Being new built again in more solid times, it was a second time destroyed by the *Saracens*; and finally re-built and beautified by the *Pisians*, at such time as they were Masters of this part of the Island. Very well fortified by Nature, as seated on

the top of an Hill; and hath under it a spacious and goodly Haven, much frequented by Merchants. The Town it self adorned with a beautiful Temple, being the seat of an Archbishop, many fair Turrets, and the constant residence of the Vice-Roy: from whose authority it is exempt by especial privilege, as to the legal Government of it, and ordered by a Common-Council of its own Citizens. 2. *Bassa*, on the West side of the Island, another Arch-Episcopal See. 3. *S. Reparata*, on the North, looking towards *Corfica*. 4. *Aquillara*, on the Western flowers. 5. *Sassari*, a Town of consequence, where they have an *Aqueduct* twelve miles long reaching from thence unto *S. Gavini*. 6. *Algher-basa*, a good Town situate in a whollom air, and a fertile soil, and having a fair Haven of six miles in length, in which the Ships of *Genoa* and *Catalonia* do most commonly ride. 7. *Oreflagne*, a large Town, but very ill peopled, by reason of a bad air which proceeds from the fens the Country about which gives title to the Marquess of *Oreflagne*. 8. *Turtis*, once a *Roman* Colony, now little better than a ruin; yet giving title to the third Archbishop of this Island, who is called in Latine, *Turtianus*. Here are also in divers parts of this Island the remainders of sundry Towers and Forts which the people call *Nuraghi* from *Nura*, one of the Sons of *Geryon*; who (as they think) came into this Country, and built the first dwelling or mansion in it. And this Tradition of the Vulgar hath so much in it of Historical and undoubted truth, that certain Colonies from *Spain* came and planted here, under the conduct of one *Nura*; somewhat before the expedition of the *Atitick* under *Iolas*, as *Pausanias* testifieth.

This Island taken by the *Romans* from the *Carthaginians*, as before is said, was first under the immediate Jurisdiction of the *Prefect* of the City of *Rome*; but after by *Justinian* was made a Province of his new Diocess of *Africa*; and as a part thereof or rather an Appendix to it, was challenged, invaded, and finally conquered by the *Saracens*, Anno 807. From them recovered by the joint-forces of the *Pisians* and *Genoese*, who divided it betwixt them: the Southern part, called *Cape Cagliari*, being allotted to the *Pisians*, and the Northern towards *Corfica*, to those of *Genoa*. But the *Genoese* not content with the partage, (their portion of the Island being less in quantity, and worse in quality) began to quarrel with the *Pisians*, and at the last broke into open wars. To part the Fray, Pope *Eugene* VIII. bestowed it on *James* King of *Aragon*, who driving thence the *Genoese*, Anno 1324. became Master of it. The *Aragonians* before that did pretend fowle Title to it, in right of the Kingdom of *Sicily*, then in his possession; to some preceding Kings whereof it had once been sub-ject; and having backed that Claim by the Pope's Donation, who challenged it as a part of *St. Peter's* Patrimony; incorporated it for ever to the Crown of *Aragon*. Once indeed it was offered unto *Anthony* of *Bourbon*, in exchange for his Title to *Navarre*, but without any purpose of performance, that being only a device to fetch him off from the party of the *Reformed* in *France*, to which he formerly adhered: and was as suddenly laid by, as it if had done the feat intended in the Proposition.

The Government hereof is by a Vice-roy, who resides at *Calaris*, and must of necessity be a *Spaniard* under whom are two Deputy Governors, *Spaniards* also: the one for *Cape Cagliari*, the other for *Cape Lugudari*. Inferior Officers of Command may be of the Natives. What profits arise hence to the Crown of *Spain*, have no where found. The Arms hereof are said to be, Or, a Cross Gules, betwixt four *Saracens* heads Sable, cutted Argent.

*Argent*. Which Arms were given upon the taking of it from the power of the *Moor*: but first taken (as some say) for the Arms of *Aragon*, on occasion of the heads of four chief Princes of the *Moor* which were found severed from their bodies in the Batel of *Alcoraz*, Anno 1094. won by *Don Pedro*, King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*.

There are divers small Islands about *Sardinia*, as 1. *Iola Ruffa*, heretofore called *Phintanis*. 2. The title of *Hercules*, now called *Afinaria*. 3. *St. Peters*, anciently *Hieracum*, or *Acipitrum*, with others of as little note: all which as the Appendants of *Sardinia*, do belong to the *Spaniard*.

There are in this Island, Archbishops 3. Bishops 15.

## The Land of the CHURCH.

WEST OF the Realm of *Naples*, lieth the LAND OF THE CHURCH, extended North and South from the *Adriatick*, to the *Tuscan* Seas. Bounded on the North-east with the River *Trontius*, on the South-east with the *Ausonium*, by which two parted from that Kingdom; as on the North-west by the River *Po*, and *Fiore*, by which separated from the State of *Venice*; and on the South-west with the River *Pisio*, by which it is divided from the Modern *Tuscany*, or the State of the *Florentine*.

By this Account the Pope's Dominion taketh up the whole middle of *Italy*; having in breadth from the one Sea unto the other about two hundred miles, and in length along the *Adriatick* to the furthest parts of *Romandulia*, above three hundred. By which advantages it lieth most fitly for the command of all the rest, it being very calie for the Pope to convey their Forces by Sea or Land, unto what part thereof they please. And were it not that the Pope commonly are of several Factions; and that the Successors peruseh not the designs of his Predecessors, but hath his own ends to himself, which for the most part are driven on without consideration of increasing the publick Patrimony; it is not possible, but that the Pope long before this time, had been Lord of all. And this may be conceived the rather, considering the extraordinary fertility of the soyl, able to spare provisions for the greatest Armies: the multitudes of people which it may afford, in regard they are so seldom consumed by Wars; and that the men of this Dominion (but chiefly those of *Rome*, and the parts adjoining) are conceived to be the best Souldiers of *Italy*; as retaining fome sparks of their Ancestors valour, together with their gravity, magnificence, and a certain greatness of courage, which seems to be particular to them of this Nation. And they preserve also to this day so much of the ancient *Roman*, as to prefer any kind of life, before Trades or Merchandize. For though their Lands be very well tilled, and their Vines well dressed, and all things done exactly in the way of Husbandry; yet for their *Mansuétude* they are brought from other places, as *Venice*, *Naples*, *Florence*, *Genoa*. And though they have the Sea on both sides, and the advantage of many fair and commodious Rivers and Havens, which with little cost might be made very useful: yet do they no way improve their fortunes, or the publick Patrimony in the way of Trade; which is the main defect of the *Papal* Policy, and lieth a rich Country full of poor and indigent persons. But to proceed to the description of the Pope's Estate: it containeth the Provinces of 1. *Romandulia*, 2. the Territory

of *Ferrara*. 3. The Estate of *Urbino*. 4. *Marca Anconitana*. 5. *Ducato Spoletano* with *Sabina*. 6. *St. Peter's* Patrimony, and 7. *Campagna* di *Roma*.

1. *ROMANDIOLA* extendeth from the River *Iguar* (now called *Foglia*) by which parted from the Dukedom of *Urbino* on the East, to the Dukedom of *Parma* on the West, from which parted by the River *Panaro*, called of old *Sulentina*: and from the *Apennine* on the South to *Padua*, and the *Adriatick* on the North. It was called anciently *Flaminia*, from *Flaminio* the *Roman* Consul, who having won it from the *Gauls* planted Colonies in it, and had the honour (though he pursued this War against the will of the Senate) to have it called by his own name: and for the better passage betwixt *Rome* and this, made a very large Caufway, which for a long time was called *Via Flaminia*. Chief Rivers herof, besides those spoken of already, which are only borderers, 1. *Ariminum*, now called *Marechia*; and 2. *Rubicon*, now called *Iffigello*, betwixt *Ariminum* and *Ravenna*, of which more anon.

The chief Cities of it are, 1. *Bononia* (or *Bologna*) seated in a spacious Plain near the *Apennine* Hills, a very populous City of a round form, and a great circuit: the building Antique, seeming for the most part to be the work of the *Lombards*, the foundation of the houses of Free-Rome, the rest of Bricks; built with arched Cloysters towards the street, under which one may walk dry in the greatest rain. A City honoured with many Palaces of the neighbouring Nobles, the chief University of *Italy*, and the retiring place of the Popes. The Civil Law is much studied here, inasmuch that from hence proceeded the famous Civilians *Johannes Andream*, *Aza*, *Barthol*, and *Socinus*. I believe they have built Castles in the air, which ascribe the founding of this University to *Theodosius* II. The Charter of whose foundation dated, Anno 423. is an idle and foolish thing. For there it is said that at the institution there were present *Gualter* Earl of *Padua*, *Emmanuel*, for the King of *England*; and *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, for the King of *France*: when at that time, neither those Earldoms, or those Kingdoms were in *revera* *natura*. It is situate on the River *Aposa*, and was by former Writers called *Felsina*. Near unto this Town in a Dismy-land called *Forelli*, was that meeting, between *Angulus*, *Anthony*, and *Lepidus*; wherein they agreed on the *Triumvirate*, dividing the Empire and City of *Rome* among themselves: Which combination was confirmed by the ensuing Proscription; wherein, that they might be revenged on *Cicero*, *Lepidus* proscribed his Brother; *Anthony*, his Uncle. 2. *Kimini*, anciently called *Ariminum*, seated on the mouth of the River *Ariminum*, of no great note, but for giving name unto this City, and now called *Marechia*. The City large, and seated in a plentiful and pleasant soyl, abundantly productive of Wines, Figs and Olives; wealthy withal, the trade which formerly enriched *Ravenna*, being for the most part managed here. Divided by the River into the City and the Suburbs, but joined together by a fair and stately Bridge, built over it by *Augustus Cesar*, who also erected in the City a *Triumphal* Arch. It is situate somewhat East of the River *Rubicon*, which in those times divided *Italy* from *Gaul*: upon the Bank whereof, looking towards this Town, there was an old Marble Pillar, having on it a Latine Inscription to this purpose, viz. *Levebore thy Colours, and lay down thine Arms, and pass not with thy Forces beyond the Rubicon's whitherfore goest against his commands, let him be held an enemy to the people of Rome.* Which Rule when *Cesar* had transgressed, and turpized this City, he so frightened *Pompey* and his Faction, that they abandoned *Italy* and *Rome* it self, and withdrew themselves



themselves into *Epirus*. It is said that *Cæsar* dreamed the night before, that he carnally knew his own Mother: whereby the Soothsayers gathered that he should be Lord of *Rome*, which was the common Mother of them all. Which dream, and several prodigies happening at the same time with it, did so encourage him in his enterprise, that he is said, at the passing over *Rubicon*, to have said these words, *Eamus quo nos Decemviri, &c.* Let us go whither the fins of our Enemies, and the Wodigies of the Gods do call us. In memory of which warlike, but fortunate action, he caused a monument to be erected in this City, with his name and titles. It was anciently a *Roman* Colony, and in the bulwicks happening betwixt the Pope and the Emperor, was seized on by the *Malabelli*, as *Bononia* was by the *Sevizioli*, two potent Families of these parts; who held them in defiance of the Popes of *Rome*, till they were reduced again unto the Church, by Pope *Julius* the Second. 3. *Cervia*, on the *Adriatick* Sea, where there is made so much Salt, that they furnish therewith all their neighbours of *Marca Anconitana*, and a great part of *Lombardy*: the Pope receiving for his Customs of this one Commodity, no less than 60000 Crowns per annum. 4. *Favilli*, (called of old *Forum Livii*) one of the Towns belonging properly to the Exarchate of *Ravenna*, seated in a very pleasant air, and a fruitful soil, betwixt two fresh streams; of which the one is called *Ravenna*, and the other *Montonus*. 5. *Faventia*, now called *Favenza*, on the banks of *Anuense*, a calm gentle River; an ancient City, but well peopled: much benefited by the Flax which growth in the adjoining fields, and the Earthen Vessels which they vend to most parts of *Italy*. It was first given unto the Popes by *Disiderius* the last King of the *Lombards*, whom they had forcibly required for to grant a courtier. 6. *Sassina*, an old City, seated at the foot of the *Apennine*, the birth-place of *Plautus* the Comedians. 7. *Inola*, anciently called *Forum Cornelli*, and 8. *Cesena*, Cities both of them of no small Antiquity; but this last the fairest build, the better peopled, and the more strongly fortified: there being a strong Castle on the top of an Hill, the work of *Frederick II.* Emperor and King of *Germany*. This Town, with that of *Sassina*, spoken of before, seem to be seated on the banks of the River *Rubicon*, now called *Fifto*. 9. *Ravenna*, situate in the embracements of two Rivers, called *Montonus* and *Ronchus*: by the confluence whereof at their fall or influx into the *Adriatick*, it was one beautified with one of the fairest Havens in the World, and for that cause made the Road of one of the two Navies, which *Augustus* always kept manned to command the whole Empire of *Rome*: the other riding at *Milennus* in *Compania*. This of *Ravenna*, being in the upper Sea, armed and defended *Dalmatia*, *Greece*, *Crete*, *Cyprus*, *Affa*, &c. the other at *Milennus*, in the lower Sea, protected and kept under *France*, *Spain*, *Affick*, *Egypt*, *Syria*, &c. The Walls of this City are said to have been built or repaired by *Theodosius Cæsar*: the whole City to have been much beautified by *Theodosius* King of the *Goths*, who built here a most stately and magnificent Palace; the ruins whereof are but easily discernable. The private buildings are but mean, the public ones are of a grave, but stately structure. Of which the principal heretofore was the Church of *St. Mary the Round*, whose roof was of one entire stone, and honoured with the rich Sepulchre of the said King *Theodosius*: which the Soldiers (in the sack of this City by the French, Anno 1512) pulled down together with the Church itself, only to get the Jewels and Medals of it. The principal at the present is the Church of *St. Vitale*, the Pavement hereof is all of Marble, and the Walls all covered with precious stones

of many sorts, but unpolished as they were taken out of Mines; which sheweth as well the Magnificence as Antiquity of it. The Patriarch of this City, in regard it was so long the Regal and Imperial Seat, have heretofore contended for precedence with the Popes themselves: not brought to yield the place to those proud pretenders, till *Donus II.* in the short time of his Papacy about the year 975, did in fine prevail. And this they did upon good reasons, this City having been anciently the Metropolis of the Province called *Flaminia*, afterwards honoured with the Seat of the Emperor *Honorius*, and his Successors; next of the *Goths* Kings, then of the Exarch, and last of its Patriarch, which was chosen for this purpose, because of the plentiful Territory, fume covered with water; and the convenience of the Haven, at this day choaked; though lately by expense of a great deal of treasure, the Fens about the City have been very much drained; and the Bogs in some places turned to fruitful fields, to the great benefit hereof both for health and pleasure.

As for the fortunes of this Country, it was anciently together with the Territories of *Ferrara*, and some part of *Trevigiana*, the habitation of the *Belli*, who with the *Senones*, the *Isabures*, and the *Cenomani*, made up the whole body of the *Cisalpine Galls*, of whom more hereafter. Finding the *Romans* grown too near them, by whom the *Senner* their next neighbours had been rooted out, they thought it was high time to bestir themselves, especially after the defeat given them by the Consul *Minutius*, who carried the War home unto them; which never any of the *Romans* had done before. For after this, under *Caraculus* their King, they set upon *Marcus* the Consul, killing 3000 of his men, but vanquished and subdued by him in a following Battel. Vanquished again not far from *Minna* by *Cornelius Merita*, with the loss of 14000 of their men, they called both the *Isaburian* and *Transalpine Galls* to come in to aid them. But being then vanquished also at the Battel of *Telamon* (of which more in *Lombardy*) A.U.C. 528, they were followed home, and utterly subdued by the Consul *Flaminius*, as before was said: after which times this Country following the same fortunes with the rest of *Italy*, became subject to the *Goths*, as a part of their *Italian* Conquests: whose Kingdom here was no sooner destroyed by *Narsis*, but the *Lombards* entered. To give a stop to whose successes, and preserve so much unto the Empire as was not already conquered by them; it was thought good by *Justin II.* to send thither an Imperial Officer of principal command and note, whom he honoured with the title of Exarch. His residence settled at *Ravenna*, as standing most commodiously to hinder the incursions of the barbarous Nations; and withal to receive such aids from the Eastern parts, as his occasions did require. These Exarchs having divided *Italy* into many Governments, appointed over each some Supreme Commander, dignified with the name of Dukes. And even now the City of *Rome* it self (so far then was it from being subject to the Pope in *Temporal* matters) had a chief Officer of this kind (acceptable to the Exarch, and subordinate to him) whose Government was called the *Roman Dukedom*. That which they kept unto themselves as their own peculiar, contained the Cities of *Ravenna*, *Rhegium*, *Minna*, *Bononia*, *Cassil*, *Forli*, *Forlimpopoli*, *Sarfina*, *Parma*, and *Placentia*: which ten Cities with the Territories belonging to them, made up that *District* which properly was called the Exarchate of *Ravenna*; much mentioned in the Histories of the middle times, by reason of the continual Wars which they had with the *Lombards*, but newly entered when this Magistracy had its first beginning. The names of these Exarchs are as followeth.

The

## The Exarchs of Ravenna.

A.C.

- 570 1 Longinus 21.
- 591 2 Smaragdus 4.
- 595 3 Romanus Patricius.
- 596 4 Gallinicus 13.
- 609 5 Smaragdus 3.
- 612 6 Joh. Lamigius 4.
- 616 7 Eluberius 5.
- 621 8 Isaacus Patricius 24.
- 645 9 Theodorus Calliopius 10.
- 655 10 Olympius 2.
- 657 11 Theodorus Calliopius, II. 30.
- 687 12 Joh. Platina 15.
- 702 13 Theophilactus 25.
- 727 14 Paulus.

728 15 Eutichius 12. In the days of this Exarch, *Ravenna* was taken from the Empire, by *Loisigarius* King of the *Lombards*, An. 746. But regained by *Charles* the Great, and by him given to the Bishops of *Rome*, together with *Acumonia* and *Spoleto*, as a requital for the Kingdom of *France*, conferred unto King *Pepin* his Father, by the consent and authority of the Popes. The donation of this Exarchate to the Popes, partly to blot out the memory of the Exarchs, and partly to make the people obedient to those Prelates, changed the name of the Country from *Flaminia* (by which name it was formerly known) to *Romandolia*, and now to *Romagna*. Notwithstanding which Donation, or Original Grant, the Popes enjoyed not long the possession of it: The Emperors of *Germany*, and their Vice-gerents in *Italy*, writing it by strong hand out of the possession of the Church; and giving it to such as deserved well of them, and were most likely, or most able to uphold their Faction. And so it stood, till the late Popes conspiring with the French Kings, *Lewis* the 12, and *Francis* the first, brought them into *Italy*, Anno 1509. and by their aids, and by the censure of the Church, to prevail in fine, that they extorted *Ravenna*, and some other places, out of the hands of the *Venetians*, ejected many petty Princes out of other Cities, which they pretended to belong to *St. Peter's* Patrimony; and thereby got possession of all those Territories, which lie betwixt the State of *Venice*, and the *Marches* of *Ancona*.

2. The Territory of *FERRARA* lieth in the very skirts of *Romandolia* towards the *Vention*, extending one hundred and sixty miles in length, and about fifty in breadth: the soil thereof exceeding rich, but (subject to the overflows of the River *Po*; which makes the air in many places to be somewhat unwholesome. And though as well the former Dukes as the Popes, who are now Lords hereof, have been at great charge in raising high banks and Ramparts to keep in the Waters: yet could not this relict the violence of the River, falling from so high a Spring, and seconded with so great Land-floods (as sometimes it is) but that it makes many breaches in them, do what they can. The places of most note herein, are 1. *Grassignan* in the borders of *Tuscany*, near the *Apennine*. 2. *Carpi*, a place of great importance, seated in the middle of this Dukedom; belonging heretofore to the house of the *Pici*. But partly by exchange made with *Marcus Pius*, partly for one hundred thousand Crowns in ready money, given unto *Lionel* Pico, once the Lord hereof, it was by *Charles* the 5. incorporated into this Estate. 3. *Comacchia*, seated in the Marshes of the *Adriatick*, from which the Princes of this Family of *Este*, were at first called only Lords of *Comacchia*; a place which yielded great profit to the former Duke, by the fishing of Eels. 4. *Saviole*, given

by Duke *Alphonso* in exchange for *Carpi*. Here is also the Territory and Lordship of the *Polefins*, the cause of so many quarrels and contentions between the ancient Dukes of *Ferrara* and the States of *Venice*. But the chief honour of this Dukedom is in the Capital City that which denominates the whole. *Ferrara*, a City of five miles in compass, so called from the Iron Mines which are about it; commodiously seated on the River *Po*, which by reason of its breadth, depth and violent swiftnes of the current, is a sufficient rampart to it on that side; the other sides being fortified with a strong wall, and a spacious mote. In the middle of the City is a fair and spacious Market-place, into which do open on all sides about twenty Streets, all of them half a mile in length; and all so freight and evenly built, that the furthest end of each of them may be easily seen. Near to this Market-place is a little Mland, in which the former Dukes had a stately Palace, called *Estudero*, from the fair Prospect which it had or gave to the whole City; and on the North-side of the City a large Park for pleasure. The other houses are for the most part built of fair Free-stone, not joining unto one another as in other Cities, but at pretty distance with neat Gardens between. Arights, the Author of that ingenious Poem called *Orlando Furioso*, and *Eleonore Savanarolo* the Prophetical Friar, were both of them natives of this place: of which the first lieth here entombed, the last for preaching against the Pope, was burnt at *Florence*.

In the declining of the Power and Empire of the *Lombards*, this City together with *Ravenna* was given by *Disiderius* their last King, to the Church of *Rome*, the better to oblige the Popes by so great a benefit. But being taken from them by the Emperors of the house of *Schwaben*, it was again recovered by the prowess of the Countess *Mathildis* An. 1107, who took it, with many other Towns in *Italy*, from the Emperor *Henry* the fourth, and at her death conferred the same upon the Church. The Popes once more possessed hereof, and not able to hold it, gave it in Fee for ever unto *Azzo* of the house of *Este*, a man of great sway in the affairs of *Italy*, who valiantly had defended it against *Ezzelinus*, Vicegerent of *Frederick* the second. This was the first of this Family who had *Ferrara* in propriety: His Ancestors being called before, the Marquesses of *Este*, and sometimes Marquesses of *Ferrara*, (but in title only) as Governors hereof in behalf of the Pope of *Rome*. *Obizzo* the Grandchild of this first *Azzo*, obtained of *Rodolphus* the first, (who was willing to make what money he could of his Lands in *Italy*) the Cities of *Rhegium* and *Modona*; that Grant confirmed by *Guido* Legat of Pope *Benedict* the ninth, with the Popes consent, Anno 1204. Other improvements thereof were made by the following Princes, according to the chance of War, but none of them continued constant in their possession but these three Cities and the Territories adjoining to them. As for this Family of *Este* (*Familia Austria*, it is called in *Latin*) it took this name from *Este*, or *Astis*, a small Town in the Signory of *Verice*, conferred upon the Ancestors of this *Azzo*, by *Charles* the Great. And for the Chiefs, or Princes of it, they have been of great authority and power in their several times, commanding sometimes the *Venitian* Armies, and sometimes the Popes: great favourers of Learned men, and advancers of Learning; in whom that the *Reinold's* and *Rogers* of *Este*, make up a great part of the Poems of *Arigho* and *Tasso*, two of the greatest Wits of *Italy*; and finally allied to many of the best Houses of Christendom. The Catalogue of whom, since they were made the Hereditary Lords and Princes of this noble City, I have here subjoined.

M

The

## The Dukes and Marquesses of Ferrara.

- 1236 *1 Adius, or Azo de Este*, the ninth of that name, but first Hereditary Marquess of Ferrara, by the Grant of the Pope.
- 1264 *2 Obizzo*, the sixth of that name, Grandson to *Azo* by his Son *Reinaldo*, second Marquess of Ferrara.
- 1293 *3 Azo*, the tenth of *Este*, and II. of Ferrara, Son to *Obizzo*.
- 1308 *4 Francisco*, Brother to *Azo* the 2. after whose death, Anno 1312. Ferrara for a time was under the command of the Popes.
- 1312 *5 Alabrandinus*, Brother of *Franciscus*, who had the Title to, but not the possession of Ferrara.
- 1315 *6 Reinaldo* the 3. of *Este*, and the first of Ferrara, recovered Ferrara from the Pope, and cast out his Garrisons. 1317.
- 1335 *7 Obizo II.* Brother of *Reinaldo*.
- 1352 *8 Alabrandino II.* Son of *Obizo*.
- 1361 *9 Nicolao* the 2. of *Este*, and third of Ferrara, Brother of *Alabrandino*, whose children being young he dispossest of the Estate.
- 1388 *10 Alberto*, Brother of *Nicolao*, the Founder of the University of Ferrara. Anno 1392.
- 1382 *11 Nicolao II.* base son of *Albertus*.
- 1441 *12 Leonorus*, the base Son of *Nicolao*, in the minority of his Brother *Hercules*, begot in lawful Wedlock, invaded the Estate, and held it.
- 1450 *13 Borfius*, another of the base Sons of *Nicolao* 2. succeeded *Leaut* in the Estate; who being made Duke of *Modina* by *Frederick* the 3. was by Pope Paul created Duke of Ferrara also, Anno 1470.
- 1471 *14 Hercules*, the lawful Son of *Nicolao* the 2. made Knight of the Garter, by King *Edward* 4.
- 1505 *15 Alphonso*, the Son of *Hercules*.
- 1534 *16 Hercules II.* Son of *Alphonso*.
- 1559 *17 Alphonso II.* who dying without lawful issue, Anno 1595. Pope *Clement* 8. challenged this Estate in the right of the Church; and partly by force, partly by composition (whereof we shall say more when we come to *Modena*) united it for ever to the See of *Rome*.

The yearly Revenues of this Dukedom were heretofore two hundred and fifty thousand Crowns: now not so much worth unto the Pope, by reason of the Alienation of *Modena* and *Reggio*; of which more hereafter.

The Arms of these Dukes (which for the honour of this noble and illustrious Family, and for the transgress of the Coast, I shall here put down) were Pale-wise of three pieces, 1. *Partie per Fesse*, in a chief *Or*, an Eagle displayed *Sable*, membered, langued, and crowned *Gold*; and in base *Azure*, three Flowers de *Lys Or*, within a Border indented *Or* and *Gules*. 2. *Gules*, two Keys in *Saltire*, the one *Or*, the other *Argent*, charged in *Fesse*, with an Echocheon of pretence *Azure*, supporting an Eagle of the third, membered and crowned of the second. Over all in chief a Papal Crown *Or*, garnished with fundry Gems *Azure* and *Purple*. The 3. as the first Counterplaced. Which Coat upon the falling of the House of Ferrara, doth now belong to that of *Modena* and *Reggio*, as descended of it.

3. From the Territory of Ferrara proceed we to the Estate of *Urbine*; both Dukedoms and distinct Estates till these later times: this last the younger of the two, and consequently (as in the ordinary course of Nature)

the survivor also; but swallowed at last into the Popedom as the other was. Bounded on the West with the River *Janus* (now called *Foglia*) by which parted from *Romandula*, on the East from *Marca Anconitana*, on the North with the *Adriatick*, and on the South with the *Apennine* Hills, by which parted from *Tuscany*. So called from *Urbine* the chief City of it, and the Ducal Seat. It is in length about 60 miles, 35 in breadth: Some pieces and Estates belonging anciently to the Church, lying intermingled with the Lands and Signeuries which belonged to the Dukes.

The soil is very fruitful of Corn, Wine, and Oyl, plentiful of Figs and other fruits of most pleasant taste; and in a word, affording all things necessary for the life of man. But the air is generally unwholesome, especially about *Pesaro* and *Fossimbrown*, by reason of the low flats and overflows of the water. The principal Commodities which they vend abroad, are the Wines of *Pesaro*, sold in great abundance to the *Venetians*; and dried Figs, which they vend unto *Bolognes*, and other places.

The most famous River is *Metaurus*, (now called *Mtremo*) and a famous one it is indeed, by reason of that Battel fought on the banks thereof, betwixt *Astrubal* the Brother of *Aniball*, and his *Carthaginians*; and the two Consuls *Livius* and *Cl. Nero*: in which, after a long and hot dispute, the victory fell unto the *Romans*; there being 56000 of the *Carthaginians* slain, (as *Livy* writeth) and 5400 taken prisoners. *Polybim* speaks of a less number both slain and taken; and like enough it is that *Livy*, to advance the honour of that Family, might enlarge a little. But whatsoever was the truth in this particular, certain it is, that this victory turned the tide of the *Roman* Fortune, which from this time began to flow again upon them: the Citizens of *Rome* beginning at this time to trade and traffick, to follow their affairs, and make contracts, and bargains with one another, which they had long forborn to do: and that with secure confidence, as if *Aniball* were already beaten out of *Italy*. This famous River rich in the *Apennine* Hills, and passing by *Fossimbrown*, a Town of this Dukedom, falls into the *Adriatick*.

There are reckoned into this Dukedom seven Towns or Cities, (four of which are Episcopal Sees) and three hundred Castles. The principal of which are, 1. *Urbine*, one of the most ancient Cities of *Italy*, which both *Tacitus* and *Pliny* mention; a fair Town, well built, and the Duke's ordinary seat in Summer. It is seated at the foot of the *Apennine* Hills, in a very rich and pleasant soil, built in the fashion of a Miter, and therefore called *Urbium, quod ubi binae continere videtur*. *Francisco Ubaldo* the first Duke, built here a very sumptuous Palace, and therein founded a most excellent Library, replenished with a great number of rare Books, covered and garnished with Gold, Silk, and Silver; all scattered and dispersed in the time that *Cesar Borgia* seized on the Estate. *Polydore Virgil*, the Author of the History of *England*, which passeth under his name, was a Native here: an History of worth enough as the times then were, except only in such passages as concern the Pope (the collector of whole *Peter-pence* he was then in *England*) whose credit and Authority he preferreth sometimes, before truth itself. 2. *Pesaurum*, now called *Pesaro*, the strongest Town of all the Dukedom, two miles in compass, and fortified according to the modern Art of War: the fortifications of it being first begun by *Francisco Maria* and perfected by *Guido Ubaldo*, his Son and successor: the ordinary seat of the Duke in Winter, well Garrisoned, and therefore trusted with the publick Armory. It is seated near the shore of the *Adriatick*, at the mouth or influx

influx of the River *Janus*, which parts it from *Romagna*: populous, of handom buildings, and a very strong wall, the soil exceeding rich, but the air so bad, that partly in regard of that, and partly by their eating of too much fruits, nothing is more frequent here than Funerals, especially in the month of *August*; few of the Inhabitants living to be fifty years old. 3. *Sengalle*, called anciently *Sena Gallica*, (*Gallica* being added to it to difference it from another of that name in *Tuscany*) a strong and well fenced City near the River *Metaurus*, over which there is a Bridge consisting of eighty Arches, made of that length, not so much in regard of the breadth of the Chancel, as the frequent overflowings of that turbulent Water. 4. *Fossimbrown*, called in old Authors *Forum Sempronii*, for air and soil of the same nature with *Pesaurum*; bought by D. *Frederick* of *Galacezza Malatesta* for thirteen hundred Florins of Gold. 5. *Cabo or Cagli* on the Sea. 6. *S. Leon*, a good Town, and the chief of the Country of *Montefiore*, which is a limb of this Dukedom, anciently belonging to the Church of *Rome*; of old time called *Fortuna Fortuna*, from a Temple there erected to Goddess *Fortuna* (*Te facimus Fortuna deam*, as the Poet hath it.) 8. *Engubium* (now called *Angubio*) a Town belonging to these Princes, but properly within the bounds of the *Spoltan* Dukedom; and there we shall hear further of it. Of the Castles the principal are *Marivola*, and the Rock of *S. Leon*, which were the last that held good for Duke *Guido Ubaldo* against *Cesar Borgia*, Duke of *Valentinus*, Son to Pope *Alexander* the sixth; and the first which did return again under his obedience. For which cause when he fled the second time from the said *Borgia*, he dismantled all his other Castles, as being more likely to admit than resist the Invader; and these two last being very well fortified, he left to keep possession of the Country for him.

Here is also within the limits of this Estate, the Dukedom of *CAMERINO*, an ancient and well peopled Town, of a strong natural situation amongst the Hills: an Estate holden of the Church by the noble Family of *Varenna* till the time of Pope *Paul* the third; when *Julius II.* of *Varenna* the heir thereof, conveyed it by marriage unto *Guido Ubaldo* Duke of *Urbine*. But the Pope pretending an Elcheat for want of heirs males, made himself Master of it by force of Arms; and gave it to his Son *Filippo Farnesi*, whom afterwards with the consent of the College of Cardinals he made Duke of *Parma*; and seated *Camerino* on the Church, as it still continues.

As for the fortunes of this Country, it was anciently the habitation of the *Senones*, a Nation of the *Cisalpine Galls*, who only had the honour of sacking *Rome*, to which City it continued subject, till the declining of the Empire in the time of *Honorius*. They being rooted out at last (of which more in *Lombardy*) and the Country peopled with *Roman* or *Latin* Colonies, it followed the fate fortunes with the rest of *Italy*, till the time of *Conradine*, the last Duke of the Imperial House of *Swabia*, when *Urbine* was first subdued by the Earls of *Montefiore*, whose Successors increasing in power, added the Town and Territory of *Engubio* to it. And in the bulles betwixt *Leopold* of *Bavaria* the Emperour, and Pope *Clement* the sixth, Anno 1345. *Guido di Montefiore* held it under no other Title, but as the Emperour's *Viceroy*. This Family enjoyed it till the year 1444. by the Title only of Earls of *Montefiore*, and Lords of *Urbine* when *Frederick Ubaldo*, for his singular and surpassing valour, was by Pope *Engenius* the fourth, created the first Duke thereof: to hold as Feudatories of the Church, and paying 2240 Crowns for an Annual quit-rent. A man of such repute

for all gallant qualities, that he was by King *Henry* the sixth, made Knight of the *Garter*; in recompence of which high honour, the *English* to this day enjoy many privileges in these Dominions. *Guido Ubaldo* this Duke's Son lost his Estate to *Cesar Borgia*; after whose death he did recover it again by the power and favor of Pope *Julius* the second, to whom succeeded *Francisco Maria di Rovero*, his Sifters Son, in whose Family it continued till now of late, as may appear by this ensuing Catalogue of

## The Dukes of Urbine.

- 1444 *1 Frederick Ubaldo*, of the ancient Family of *Montefiore* the first Duke of *Urbine*, and one of the Knights of the honourable Order of the *Garter*.
- 2 Guido Ubaldo*, Son of *Frederick*, for a while outed of this Dukedom by *Cesar Borgia*. He was Knight also of the *Garter*.
- 3 Francisco Maria di Rovero*, Sifters Son and next heir to *Guido Ubaldo*, was in his own right Lord of *Sengallia*, and had *Pisero* from the Pope in reward of his many services done unto the Church; disfigured for a while by Pope *Leo* the tenth.
- 4 Lawrence di Medices*, Father of *Catherine di Medices* the French Queen, and of *Alexander* the 1. Duke of *Florence*; was for a while made Duke of *Urbine* by Pope *Leo* the 10th (being of that Family) but lost it shortly after to Duke *Francisco*, who after the death of Pope *Leo*, recovered his estates again, and died possessed of the Dukedom.
- 1538 *5 Guido Ubaldo II.* Son of Duke *Francisco*.
- 6 Francisco Maria II.* Son of *Guido* the 2d, whose line expired, it elcheated not long since (for want of heirs males) to the Church of *Rome*.

The Revenues of this Dukedom were reckoned to have been 100000 Crowns per annum; but might have been raised to a greater sum, had not the Dukes preferred the love and ease of their Subjects, before the filling of their own Coffers. He was able to raise 1200 good Soldiers out of this Estate; and more the people would supply, if they had occasion. The Arms heretofore a Tower *Argent*, environed with *Flowers de Lys Or*.

4. *MARCA ANCONITANA* is bounded on the West with the State of *Urbine*, on the East with the River of *Tronto*, or *Drenatus*, by which it is parted from *Abruzzo*, on the South with the *Apennine* Hills, by which parted from the *Spoltan* Dukedom; on the North with the *Adriatick*. The reason of the name we shall have anon.

It was formerly the dwelling of the *Picentes*, possessed all these parts on the Coasts of the *Adriatick*, from the River *Rubicon* on the East, to that of *Anfidum* on the West. For aiding the *Tarentine* their Allies, in their War against *Rome*, they were invaded and subdued by the *Romans* A.U.C. 485, which was about five years before the first *Punic* War, under the conduct of *Sempronius*; at which time they were so great and multitudinous a Nation, that they were numbered to amount to 360000 which were then brought under the Command and Vassalage of the *Roman* Empire. When *Italy* was divided into no more than eight Regions, these *Picentes* only made up one; so did they also when divided into eleven. Afterwards, in the time of the *Antonins*, they made up one of the sixteen Provinces, into which *Italy* was divided by those Emperors; and the same repute it held in the time of *Constantine*, *Picenum* making always one. *Anselmus capri gavis*, as *Florus* calls it, which was the head of their nation, being the Metropolis of the Province.

Called in those times *Picenum Annonarium*, partly by reason of the abundance of grain which it did produce, and partly to distinguish from the dwelling of the *Picentini*, which from its nearness unto *Rome*, had the name of *Picenum Subvolaturnum*; that part of *Campania* at this time, which is called the *Principate*. In the declining of the Empire, it was first called *Marca Firmiana*, from *Firmo*: once a *Roman* Colony, and at that time of most importance in the Country; but by transferring the chief seat from *Firmo* to *Avicena*, in the time of the *Lombards*, it came to have the name of *Avicenniana*. The chief Rivers, besides those named already, which are only borderers, are, 1. *Chientus*, 2. *Sentina*, and 3. *Potenis*; all rising in the *Apennine*, and passing with a twist course to the *Adriatick* Sea.

The chief Towns, 1. *Avicena*, seated on the Hill *Cimmerius* (shooting into the Sea, glorying in giving name to the Province, and her Haven built by *Trajan* the Emperor: one of the fairest of the World, not so much for capacity, as the pleasantness and beauty of it: the descents down unto the Water being made of Marble, and very delectable walking on all sides of it. The City it self is begirt with Hills, on one of which Pope *Clement* the seventh built a very strong Castle. Anno 1532, under pretence of defending the Town against the *Turks*, but indeed to keep the people in more full subjection, who till that time, did yearly choose their own Magistrates, and lived according to their own Laws, like a Commonwealth. 2. *Recanati* (heretofore *Ælia Reatina*), seated upon the banks of the River *Mulio*, renowned for the great concourse of Merchants from all parts of *Europe*, at her Annual Markets; and a vein of the most excellent Wines. 3. *Firmo*, tornamed the *Strong*; in former times of most esteem in all the Province which was hence called *Marca Firmiana*; and to this day, a place of great strength and consequence; and an Archbishop See. 4. *Macerata*, now of most credit; by reason that the Popes *Legati* keeps his residence there, and with him the Chancery for his Marquisate. 5. *Loreto*, called in *Latin* *Lauritana*, a little City betwixt *Recanati* and the Sea; well fortified against the *Turks*, and other Pirates who once spoiled the same, and might be easily tempted thither on the like occasions: The Church here being admirably rich, and frequented by Pilgrims from all parts, to pay their devotions unto our Lady of *Loreto*, and to behold her Miracles. Concerning the removal of whole Chamber litters, in our description of *Palladine*, you shall meet with a very proper Legend. 6. *Aso*, situated the *Fair*, seated at the influx of the River *Druentum*, and on the uttermost side of it towards *Avicena*, to which by some it is ascribed. Anciently the chief City of the *Picentia*, as before is said, and then called *Asculum*, conquered by the *Romans*, under the conduct of *Sempronius*, A.U.C. 485. Near unto this City, was fought the second Battle between *C. Fabritius* and the *Romans* on the one side, and *Pyrrhus* with the *Epirians* on the other; wherein the Victory (as *Plutarch* telleth us) fell to the King, having slain 6000 of his Enemies; but yet with such loss on his side also, that he affirmed to some of his Friends and followers, *That such another Victory would quite undo him*; and with such apparancy of valour and virtue in the *Romans*, that he could not but break forth into this acclamation: *O quam facile esset avire vincere, aut mihi, Romanis militibus, aut me rege, Romanis!* This Town also was the seat of a War called *Bellum sociale*, raised by the people of *Italy* against the *Romans*; *Popedius* being both Author of the Rebellion, and Captain. They for a while forely flaked the state of *Rome*, but at last were vanquished, and this Town by *Strabo* *Pompeii* forced and spoiled. 7. *Adria*, now not otherwise

famous, than that it gave denomination to the adjoining Sea, and the Emperor *Adrian*. 8. *Humana*, which together with *Avicena*, was given to Pope *Zachary*, by *Leoprandus* King of the *Lombards*, about the year 741. The succeeding Popes after the giving of this Inch, took the whole Ell.

5. Having surveyed the Provinces of the Church along the *Adriatick*, we must next cross the *Apennine*, which parts the Marches of *Avicena* from the Dukedom of *Spoleto* (*DUCATO SPOLETANO* the *Italian* call it) which takes up the Western part of that Province, which the old *Romans* called *Umbria*: and therefore before we come to the description of this, we must a little look on the state of that. A Country bounded on the East with the River *Aniene*, dividing it from the East parts of *Latiun*; on the West with *Tufcia* or *Hetruria*; on the North, with the *Apennine*; on the South, with the reaches or windings of the *Tiber*, the main body of *Latiun*, and with that part of *Tufcia* which is now called *St. Peter's Patrimony*. So called, because being situate under the shade of the *Apennine* Hills, it was *Regio Umbria*. Some give another reason of it, that the Inhabitants were called *Umbri*, quasi *Umbra*, as men that had escaped the Deluge; because to ancient people, that no body could tell the Original of them.

But whatsoever was the reason of the name, they were a stout and valiant people, and gave the chief check to *Annibal's* career, after his great Victory at *Thrasymus*, repelling him with loss and shame from the Walls of *Spoleto*: yet not of power sufficient, for all their valour, to preserve their Country from the *Tuscani*, who are said to have destroyed in it 300 good Towns. Made by that means, if not plainly subject, yet obnoxious to the will and pleasure of the *Vibores*, that at their influence or command they sided with them in a War against the *Romans* (whom formerly they had found very quiet neighbours;) and by the *Romans* were subdued together with the rest of the Confederates then in Arms against them, A. U. C. 458. *Decius* and *Qu. Fabius* then in the fifth time Consuls, which was about 77 years before *Annibal* fell into their Country. After which time in such esteem, that it was one of the eleven Regions into which *Italy* was divided by *Augustus Cæsar*; and finally, together with *Tufcia*, made up a Province of the Empire.

As for the Dukedom of *Spoleto*, it taketh up the Western parts of the Province of *Umbria*, as before was said, included betwixt the *Apennine*, the *Tiber*, and the River *Nar*, by which last (now called *Nera*) it is divided from *Sabinia*, or the Land of the *Sabinæ*. The Country of a mixt nature, equally composed of very rough Hills, and yet most delectable Vallies; exceeding plentiful of all necessities, and much commended heretofore for the extraordinary fecundity of the Women. The Wine heretofore is much commended by *Marialis*, as the best of *Italy*.

De Spoletanis que sunt carissima Lageris  
Malueris, quam si multa Falerna bibas.

That is to say,

If with *Spoleto* bottles once you meet,  
Say that *Falerno* Must is not so sweet.

Places of greatest note herein, 1. *Spoleto*, built partly on the Hill, and partly on the lower ground; the residence heretofore of one of the four Dukes of the *Lombardians*, who governed as Vice-roys, or Lord presidents, of the remoter parts of that Kingdom: from whence

whence the County round about it, was called *Ducatus Spoletanus*. It is still a Town of good esteem, populous, and of handsom building; and hath a strong *Fortified* for defence thereof, built upon the ruins of an old *Amphitheatre*: to which men pass over a great Bridge of stone, upheld by 24 great Pillars, which joyns two Mountains together; having between them a deep Valley, but narrow and without any Water. Thordrick the *Goths* built a fair Palace in this City, rebuilt by *Narsus* but since ruined. 2. *Engubium* (now called *Angubis*) seated on the foot of the *Apennine*; in or near that place where anciently stood that City which *Pliny* calls *Unguinum*; *Polony Iuvium*; utterly subverted by the *Goths*. A Town well seated in a fruitful and wealthy soil, and blessed with an industrious people: acknowledging the Dukes of *Urbine* for Lords thereof, till that estate was swallowed up into the Popedom. 3. *Nuceria*, (now *Nocera*) in *Pliny's* time called *Alfaterna*, at the foot also of the *Apennine*; the people of which in former times much traded in their wooden vessel. 4. *Affinum*, or *Affe*, destroyed almost to nothing in the Civil Wars of *Italy*, and only famous at this time, for a See Episcopal, and being the birth-place of *St. Francis*; the Founder of the *Franciscans*, or *Cordeliers*, as the French call them, but we in *England* the *Gray-Friars*. 5. *Citta de Castello*, anciently *Tiberdunum*, on the banks of *Tiber*. 6. *Tuderum*, now called *Todi*, seated near the *Tiber*, on the declivity of a rich and fruitful Hill.

The rest of *Umbria* towards the East, not being within the compass of the *Spoleto* Dukedom, but under the command of the Popes of *Rome*, is by late Writers called *SABINIA*, because the dwelling in times past, of the ancient *Sabinæ*: who being taken into *Rome*, and made Free Denizens of that City in the time of *Romulus*, upon the League concluded betwixt him and *Tatius*, then the King of this people, for a long time lived under the protection of that mighty City. But after joyning with the *Latins* in a War against it, they were subdued by *Curius Dentatus* the *Roman* Consul, and made a subject Province of that common-wealth, A. U. C. 463. But though the *Sabinæ*, at this time bare away the name, yet were they not sole Masters of it in these elder times; the greatest part hereof being possessed by some Nations of the *Umbri*, by whom by a general name they call of *Vulturni* (the *Sabinæ* interjected betwixt them and *Rome*) and as a member of that body, subdued together with the rest of the *Umbri* by the conquering *Romans*. Afterwards in the division of *Italy* made by *Antoninus*, it was called *Nursia*; and in that made by *Constantine*, it was contained within the new Province of *Valeria*: *Reate* being the *Metropolis*, or head City of both. A Territory of no great circuit, but abundantly fruitful in Oyl or Olives, Vines and Fig-trees; watered with the River *Farfarus*, which cutteth through the very middle of it; and with the Lake called anciently *Lacus Velinus* (now *Laco di Pedesina*) esteemed to be the Centre or Navel of *Italy* by some ancient Writers; the waters of which are of such a nature, that in short time they will cloath a piece of wood with a coat of stone, and yet yieldeth excellent Trouts, and other good Fish. The Towns and Cities of most note, are, 1. *Reate* (now called *Rieti*) an ancient City; and the *Metropolis* heretofore of all this Tract; as well when it was called *Nursia*, as when it was under the name of *Valeria*. 2. *Nursia*, a City no less ancient, seated amongst the Hills, which for the most part are covered with snow; from which Town, being heretofore of more reputation, the province of *Nursia*, spoken of in the *Itinerary* of *Antoninus*, took denomination. 3. *Magliano*, a pleasant and well-peopled Town, at this time the principal of this Territory.

4. *Oriculum*, built amongst many Fruitful Hills, a mile from *Tiber*. 5. *Narnia*, the Country and Birth-place of the Emperor *Nerva*, the first of all the Emperours not born in *Rome*, as after him there were few born in it. The soil about it is of so different and strange a nature, that it is said to be made dirty by the Sun and winds, and dusty by Rain: the City well-peopled, and a Bishops See, seated upon a very steep and craggy Hill, not far from the River *Nar* (now *Negra*) from which perhaps it took the name. A City given unto the Church of *Rome* by *Lauprandus*, King of the *Lombards*; of which the Popes of *Rome* having got possession, never left practising till they had got into their power all the rest of the Country. Little else famous in the whole Region of *Umbria*, but that in the Western part thereof, is the Lake, called *Lacus Vademonius*, near to *Amelia*, now called *Amelia*, a Town of the Dukedom, where *Dolabella* overthrew such of the *Senones*, a valiant Nation of the *Galls*, as had escaped the Sword of *Camillus*, *Quintilius*, *Curius*, and other fortunate Commanders in the Wars against them; *Ne qui exaret in ea gens* (saith the Historian) *qui incensam à se Romanis gloriarentur*: a former slaughter being made of them by *Camillus*, on the banks of *Aniene*, the Eastern limit of this *Umbri*.

5. *S. PETER'S PATRIMONY*, properly and specially so called, is that part of *Tufcia* which appertains unto the Church; bounded upon the East with *Tiber*, which divides it from *Latiun*, or *Campagna di Roma*; on the West, with the River *Piso*, which falleth into the Sea near the Mountain of *Argentaria* and parteth it from the estate of the great Duke of *Tufcia*; on the North, with the *Apennine* and the *Spoleto* Dukedom, on the South with the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea. It took this new name presently on the donation of the Countess *Matildis*, who gave it for ever unto the Church, An. 1100. (*Pajal* the second sitting in the Chair of *Rome*) to be the *Patrimony* of *S. Peter*, and his successors in that See. A Country not inferior unto any in *Italy*, for the fertility of the soil: but for the most part of an unhealthy Air, by reason of the frequent overflowings of *Tiber*, and the thick woods which hinder that the winds cannot purge and cleanse it.

The principal Cities, and places of most observation, are 1. *Perugia*, formerly called *Perusia*; a famous Town, in which *Augustus* beleeved *L. Antonius* the brother, and *Falsia* the wife of *M. Antony* the *Triumvir*, who when they had in vain attempted to seduce *Rome* from his party, repaired to this City; which also at the last, yielded to the more fortunate emperor. *Augustus* afterwards, having much adorned and beautified it, caused it to be called *Augusta*; but it returned not long after, to its ancient name. It is seated very pleasantly on the banks of *Tiber*, not far from the *Apennine*, in a very rich and fruitful soil; well built both for the publick and private structures; a Bishops See and made an University, An. 1090. In the distractions of *Italy* betwixt the Emperors and the Popes, this City was seized on by the *Bailiuns*, who held it as Vicars of the Church. The *Odier*, an opposite faction to them, having got together a strong party of Malecontents, so suddenly entered one night into the City, that the *Bailiuns* began to fly: nor was there any thing to hinder them from being Masters of the Palace, but the Chain which was drawn cross the Gate. One of the Soldiers going about to cut this Chain, and wanting room to wield his arm, cried aloud *Give back*; which words being heard, but not well understood by those hurst off, put them to their heels; and the foremost, which thought they fled not for nothing, ran away too. So the City was saved. 2. *Ostia*, seated on to high a Rock, that it is no small fort

TOUR to look down from the top of it, into the vallies beneath; in which there is a Church of a wondrous lightness, and yet the Windows of the fame (it we may credit *Adrianus* who reports it) are made of Alabaster, instead of Glass. 3. *Viterbo*, famous for the long residence of the Popes, at such time as they were affronted by the Roman Senators. 4. *Civita Vecchia* (called anciently *Cornetulle*) the only useful Haven that belongeth to *Rome*; which being ruined by the *Saracens*, was rebuilt by the Popes, new named, and fortified with a very strong Castle for the defence of their Shipping. 5. *Porto*, seated on the mouth of *Tiber*, over against *Ofis* but cannot make one good Haven betwixt them both; a Bishops See, who is one of the seven Cardinals which is always assiduous to the Pope. 6. *Farnese*, the ancient Seat and Patrimony of the *Farnesii*, now Dukes of *Parma*. 7. *Bracciano*, which gives the title of a Duke to a branch of the *Orsini*, a well-known Family of those parts. 8. *Racchiano*, near the last in found, although not in site; compassed round about with Hills in form of a Theatre, having a fair Lake in the midst; out of which runneth the River *Cremora*, near which the *Fabii* were slain.

Here was in this Country also the City of the *Veii*, affirmed to be as big as *Athena*, but questionks of great wealth and power; in a War against which, managed for the most part by the aforelaid *Fabii*, 306 of them were slain in a day, at the Battel of *Cremora*, a petit River of the *Tyberina*: only one little child of them being left at home, who restored the house; and was the Ancestor of that *Fabius Maximus* who preserved *Italy*, in the wars with *Annibal*. Of which great slaughter, thus faith *Ovid*,

——— *Videntibus Arvis*  
*Ter centum Fabii, ter occidere duos.*

——— On the *Vesentian* Plain  
Three hundred and six *Fabii* were slain.

This City of the *Veii* was at last after a ten years siege taken by *Publius Cornelius*, and by him levelled with the earth; because he thought that the common people of *Rome* had a mind to leave their own City, and inhabit here. Here is also that fatal River of *Alia*, high unto which *Bronnus* and his *Galli*, (that people, as shall be shown hereafter, having 200 years before been drawn into *Italy*, by the sweet taste of the *Italian* Wines) slaughtered the *Romans*: the Roman Army at that time consisting of 40000 Soldiers, most of them being raw and unexperienced; the *Galli* not more in number, but naturally of a more fierce and hardy courage, and without all big-boned, that it seemeth they were born to be the terror of mankind, and the ruin of Cities. Which overthrow at *Alia*, and the vanquishment of the *Fabii*, happening in one day, though in divers years, occasioned the old *Romans* to put that day among those unfortunate days, on which they never did attempt any bulwicks of importance. The like account, whether on superstition, or fear of ill-luck, is used by many *Christians*; and especially on *Childrenmas*: da: on which *Philipp de Comines* telleth us: that *Leuis* the 11. used not to debate of any matter, but accounted it a sign of some great misfortune towards him, if any man communed with him of his affairs; and would be marvelously displeased with those that were near him, if they troubled him with any matter whatsoever. In this particular, little less superstitions (if not more) than the ancient *Romans*. And finally, here is the famous Lake called *Thrasymene* (now *Lago di Perugia*, from the nearness of it to that City) where *Annibal* slew *Flaminius* the Consul, and 15000 of

his *Romans*: which fight continued three hours, with so great an eagerness, that the Soldiers perceived not a terrible Earthquake which at that time happened.

6. *CAMPAGNA DI ROMA*, containeth that part of *Italy*, which anciently was called *Latium*, the habitation of the *Latins*, and seat of *Rome*; so called, for that it is adjoining to that famous City, as the more proper Territory, and precinct thereof. It is sometimes also called *Campania nova*, to difference it from *Campania* properly so called; the seat and dwelling of the *Campani*. It is bounded on the East with the said *Campania*, from which it is parted by the River *Asoletus*, on the West, with *Tiber*; on the North with *Umbria*, or the now *Ducato Spoletano*, and *Sabinia*; and on the South, with the *Tyrrhenian*, or *Tuscan* Sea: and came unto the Popes by no other Title, than as they had the Sovereignty and possession of the City of *Rome*, to which it always did belong.

The old Inhabitants were the *Latins*, as before is said, but subdivided into many petit and inferior Tribes, such as the *Aqui*, *Volsci*, *Fidenates*, and others of as little note, to the number of thirty, all vanquished piece-meal by the *Romans*, first under the conduct of their Kings, and then of their Consuls and Dictators. Broken at last by *L. Quintius* the Dictator, *A.U.C.* 295, they became associates with the *Romans*, and so continued for the space of 100 years and upwards. But growing insolent on the sack of that City by the *Galli*, and impudently requiring that one Consul yearly should be chosen by and from themselves, they drew the *Romans* into Arms; by whom subdued under the leading of *Mucius Scaevola*, and *Decius Mus*, then Consuls, *A.U.C.* 413. Subject from that time afterwards to the state of *Rome*, but enjoying greater privileges than the rest of the conquered Nations did; excepting such to whom the like were granted by especial favour.

The chief place of it in old times was the City of *Alba*, then the Seat-Royal of the *Latin*, or *Sylvan* Kings, ruined by *Tullus Hostilius* the third King of *Rome*, in which War *Rome* and *Alba* being laid at the stake, the whole action was committed by the *Romans* to the *Horatii*, to the *Curii*, by the *Albani*, being three Brethren of each side; in which it happened that two of the *Horatii* were slain first, and the third counterfeiting a slight severed his enemies, and so flew them; whereby the *Albani* ever after became subject to *Rome*. 2. *Lavinium*, built by *Aeneas* in honour of his Wife *Lavinia*. 3. *Antium*, honoured many times with the seat and retirement of the Emperors: the Country round about affording variety of Recreations. The people once very strong in shipping till the taking of the Town by *Mucius Scaevola* Consul, who having broke their Forces at Sea, brought with them into *Rome* the Beaks of their Ships and other Vessels, with which he decked and beautified the Pulpit for Orations (in the common *Forum*), which have generally ever since been called *Regia*. This was the chief City of the ancient *Volsci*, a people very strong in shipping though without an Haven: afterwards much frequented by the principal *Romans* in their retirements from the City, so that for pompous and stately buildings it might compare with any other. Out of the ruins of this Town long ago destroyed, sprang the new City called *Nepesinum*, situate on a Rock near unto the Sea, the steepness of which gives it natural strength enough, and yet it is fortified besides with two strong Castles surveying the Sea, and commanding the shore. 4. *Ardea* the chief Town of the *Rutuli*, and seat of *Turmus*, the Rival and Competitor of *Aeneas*: afterwards taken by *Superbus* the last King of the *Romans*; to which when the *Galli* had taken *Rome*, the miserable Citizens were compelled

compelled to fly. 5. *Gabii*, taken also by the same *Superbus*, whose Son *Sextus* counterfeiting some dislike of his Fathers cruelties, fled to the *Gabii*, by whom providently entrusted with the command of their City, which he betrayed unto the *Romans*. 6. *Ofis*, anciently the Port-Town to *Rome*, built at the mouth of *Tiber*, by *Aeneas Martius*, the fourth King of *Rome*; but the Haven hath been long since dammed up, to stop the passage of the enemies Ships unto the City. The Bishop of this Town useth to consecrate the Pope. 7. *Prenefte*, first conquered by the *Romans* under *Qu. Cincinnatus* the Dictator. Nothing so much damaged this City as its natural and artificial Fortifications: for when the *Romans* in the times of Edilition abandoned the Town, they used to make this place their refuge. Among others *Marius* the younger made it the seat of War, against *L. Sylla*: but perceiving the unconstancy of his affairs, he killed himself; and *Sylla* entering it as Conqueror, put 12000 of the Citizens to the Sword. It hath since been so often sacked, that it is very short now of its former lustre; but still it holds the reputation of a Bishops See. 8. *Tibur*, an ancient City also, and seated in a healthy Air. It is now called *Tivoli*, where there is a Fountain, which with artificial Engines moved with Water, representeth the notes of divers Birds. A device very rare (it seemeth) in the time of *Adrianus*, who reported it; but now grown ordinary. In the perfection of which Art, as almost all Civil Nations may pretend a share; so I conceive that the priority herein doth belong of right unto the *French*: whose Master-pieces in this kind do far exceed the rest of *Europe*. For in the Kings house at *St. Germain*, seven miles from *Paris* (if it be lawful for me to digress a little on this Argument) one may behold the *Statue* of a Nymph, sitting before a pair of *Organs*: whose fingers by the help of Water, are taught to manage the keys in to due order, and the Instrument to yield such a Musick to it, as comes exceeding near the *Organ*, if it be not the same; he heard in the mean time jolting from one shoulder to another, like an old *Fiddlers* at a *Wage*; there being also not far off, the counterfeits of *Divers* Mills, who very busily plyed their work till the Musick founded; and there stood still as if enchanted with the noise. In another place, upon the drawing of a Curtain, one may see two *Turtles* riding on their *Dolphin*, in a Sea of Water; each of them with a shell in his hand, which interchangeably and in turns served in stead of Trumpets. In a third, the story of *Perseus* and *Andromeda* most lively acted; and in a fourth, *Orpheus* in *Sylvia* posture, *Orpheus* playing on a Viol, the Trees moving, and the wild Beasts dancing in two rings about him, by the artificial guidance of the Waters only: the pretty Birds in every place so chirping under their several and respective notes, that the hearer would conceive himself to be in some pleasant Grove. But it is time to go from *Tivoli* to 9. *Velitri* (called anciently *Velitae*, and then a City of the *Volsci*) famous for the Birth of the Emperor *Augustus*, and the dwelling of the *Ortiz* Family, a place most delightfully seated among the *Vines*, which yields as rich Wines as most in *Italy*. 10. *Anagnin*, so called, because the Temple which here dedicated to *Jupiter* was named *Anagnin*, that is, *Beardless*; first built by the *Spartans*, who flying from the severity of *Lycorgus* his Laws, did here seek themselves, after a Colony of the *Volsci*, and at last of the *Romans*. But this Town being destroyed by the tyranny of times there stablished up 11. *Taracina* in the place thereof, seated upon a Mountain, but near the Sea, which it embraceth like a half Moon (it is now called the Bay of *Mala*): this City lying on the one horn thereof, in the very extremity of the Popes Dominions; and that of *Cajeta* on

the other, which is the Port-Town of the Realm of *Naples*. The Country abouts hath most pleasant Orchards, of Citrus, Oranges, and Limons; the Oranges having at the same time both ripe and green Fruits, and represents a kind of Summer in the dead of Winter.

Such other things as are remarkable in this *Campagna* (heretofore called *Latium*) but more by what they have been, than that they are at the present, are 1. *Tuscanum*, a Village which belonged to *Tully*, who here composed his excellent Book, called the *Tusculan Questions*. 2. *Formia*, built by the *Lacian* Kings, heretofore the delight and solace of the ancient *Romans*, now visible only in its ruins. 3. *Privernum*, once the chief City of the *Volsci*, and the seat of *Camilia*, a noble *Anacostian* Lady, who aided *Turmus* the *Rutulan*, in his sharp War against *Aeneas* and the *Tyberians*, where she lost her life. 4. *Circe*, an old City (in the place whereof now stands *S. Felix*) the habitation of *Circe*, that so much celebrated Sorceress; of whom, and her enchanting of *Ulysses* and his companions, there is so much upon record, in the ancient Poets. Near to which is the head-land called the *Circian Promontory*, the repercussion of the Waves by whose Southern *Basia* makes a dreadful noise; and gave occasion to the fabulous inventions of the roaring of Lions, howling of Dogs, &c. which were heard about that Witches dwelling.

But the great glory of *Latium*, and indeed not of *Italy* only but of all the World, was that the famous City of *ROME* was seated in it, being built on the East side of *Tiber*; now much enlarged by the increase of 42 lesser Streams or Rivers. It is distant from the Sea about 15 miles, first built, as *Frier Leander* a great *Italian* Antiquary is of opinion, by *Roma* Daughter or Wife to one of the *Latin* Kings. But being forsaken and forsown, by reason of the unwholesome Air coming from the Fens, was rebuilt by *Romulus*, much pleased with the natural strength of the situation; and therefore like to make a good Town of War. And this tradition I should rather subscribe unto, than that it was called *Roma* from *Romulus*; who had he pleased to challenge the honour to himself, might better have caused it to be called *Romulea* (of which name there was a Town among the *Samites*) than to call it *Roma*. But whatsoever greatness it did after come to, it was small enough (God knows) at first; the City comprehending the Mount *Palatine* only, and therefore not a mile in compass; the Territory not extending as *Strabo* windeth, above six miles from the City; and the Inhabitants thereof at the first general Muster, amounting at the most to 3300 men. So inconsiderable they were as well in quality as numbers, that their Neighbours thought it a disparagement to bestow their Daughters on them; and therefore they were fain to get themselves Wives by a slight of wit: proclaiming solemn Plays and Pastimes to be held in *Rome*, and ravishing the Women which came thither to behold the sports. The Kings succeeding much enlarged it. Mount *Aventine*, and the hill *Janiculum* on the other side of the Water, being walled and added to it by *Aeneas Martius* as *Quintilian*, *Esquilinus*, and *Viminalis*, were by *Servius Tullius* his *Capitolinus* and Mount *Calvus*, came not in till afterwards. But at the last it was improved to such an height, that in the flourishing times of that Common-wealth, the men increased to the number of 463000, and the compass of the Town unto 50 miles; there being on and about the walls 740 Towers. And in this number of 463000 men, I reckon neither Servants, Women, nor Children, but men able to bear Arms; *Free-Doniziers*, and such as were enrolled into *Consul*, or the Subsidie Books. To which

if we should add their Wives, Children, and Servants, we cannot probably conjecture that there so have been fewer than three or four Millions. *De Liffis* is of opinion, in his *Tract de Magnitudine Romæ*. The most memorable buildings of it, were first the *Capitol*, founded by *Tarquinius Superbus*, and beautified with the spoils of their conquered Neighbours; saved from the fury of the *Gall* by the cackling of *Geese*. *Tacitus* calleth this house, *Sedem Jovis optimi maximi, aspicuo à majorebus pignus imperii conditum*. It was twice burnt, once in the Civil Wars of *Sylla* and *Marius*; and again in the Wars of *Vespasian* and *Vitellius*. In the third building of it, *Vespasian* carried the first basket of Earth; after him the Nobility did like, to make the people more forward in the service; and perhaps the custom of laying the first stone in a building, or driving the first nail in a timber-work, by him whose edifice it is; hath, from hence, if not beginning, yet growth. 2. Here was the Temple of *Janus* open in the time of Wars, and shut in the time of peace; which, during all their Monarchy, hapned both times; namely during the reign of *Augustus*, after the first *Punic* War, and in the time of *Numa*. 3. Here was the Bridge, called *Pons Sublicius*, on which *Virginius Coles* refitted the whole Army of King *Porcius Tarquin*, and the *Trojans*; till the Citizens being had broken down the bridge, received him swimming to the bank with joyful acclamations and saved their City from present ruin. Here lived the famous Warriors, so much renowned in the stories of elder times; here flourished the exact Martial discipline, so memorized by ancient Historiographers; and finally, here were laid up the spoils and Trophies of all Europe.

ROME, as now it standeth lower on the bank of *Tiber* upon *Campus Martius*, (where it was built after the inundation of the *Goths* and *Vandals*), is in compass about eleven miles, within which compass is not a little waste ground. The Inhabitants of all sorts reckoned to amount to 200000, two parts whereof are Clergymen and Courtiers; that is to say, such as have their dependance on the Court of Rome, either by holding Offices and places of employment under the Popes, or by attending on his person, or waiting on the Cardinals and eminent Prelates who are there abiding; or otherwise being of the retinue of such foreign Ambassadors as are always commorant in the City, to follow the Negotiations of their several Masters; all which must needs amount to a very great number. It was first built on the East-side of the River in the Territory of *Lavinium*, but now there is little left of the old City but the goodly ruins; and here and there some Churches and scattered houses (except it be a little on the North East of the River, from the Gate called *Del populo*, to the Island of *Tiber*); the rest, especially towards South, being taken up with palaces and fields of Corn. The main body of the City, as now it stands is on the West-side of the water, and the *Holy Island*, consisting of three distinct parts or members. Of these the least is that which they call *T. I. Island*, but anciently the *Holy Island*, first made an Island by the Corn, Straw, and other goods of the *Tarquins*, which the Senate not vouchsafing to convert to any publick or private use, commanded to be flung into the River, where it sunk and settled to an Island, called afterwards the *Holy Island*, from a Temple herein built unto *Jeholapius*, brought thither from *Epidaurus*, in the shape of a Serpent. This Island is not above a quarter of a mile in length, and hardly half so much in breadth: but full of stately Churches and beautiful houses. Next to this is that which they call *Trastevere*, or *Trans-Tiberina*; but of old *Janculo*, from the Mountain of that name included in it: Called also *Civitas Raven-*

nation, or the City of the men of *Ravenna*, of the Soldiers which *Augustus* kept at *Ravenna* against *Antonius*; and after placed in this out-part of the City, which by reason of the unwhollomness of the air, is inhabited only by Artizans and poor people; yet compassed about with walls, except on that side next the water, and adorned with many goodly Churches and some handfom buildings. But the chief glory of the City consisteth in that part of it which is called *Il Borgo*, lying on the North-side of the other, but did-joyne from it; compassed about with walls by Pope *Leo* the 4. and from thence called *Civitas Leonina*. For in this part there are, 1. The Church of *S. Peter*, which were it once finished, would be one of the rarest buildings in all the World. 2. The Castle of *S. Angelo*, impregnable unless by *Assault*. 3. The Popes Palace, called *Belvedere*, which with the Gardens thereof was compassed about with a very high wall, by Pope *Nicolas* the fifth. And had his name from the fair prospect which it hath: in the same fence, as *Belvoir* Castle here in *England*, the Barony and Manlion of the Earls of *Rutland*. A Palace of magnificence and receipt enough. 4. The Library of the Hill *Palatine*, properly called the *Palatine*, but more commonly the *Vatican Library*; a Library first founded by *Severus* the fourth, who not only stored it with the choicest Books he could pick out of Europe; but allowed also a large revenue for the perpetual augmentation of it. *Bibliotheca Palatina in Vaticano, toto terrarum orbe celeberrima, aduicis ex omni Europa libris contrita; presentibus certis, &c.* So *Onuphrius*. When the Duke of *Barbar* sacked *Rome*, Anno 1527, it was much defaced and ransacked; but by the succeeding Popes it hath been again recovered to its former fame, and beauty. *Rome* is now an University, which was founded by *Urban* the fourth, at whose request *Thomas Aquinas* professed here. Pope *Nicolas* the fifth was a special benefactor to the same; and after him, *Leo* the tenth, who revived the Greek Learning and Language, which were in these parts almost forgotten. And finally, to this place are brought all the treasures of those parts of Christendom subject to the Popes authority: partly for the expense of strangers, which do there remain on their several pleasures or occasions; and partly for the expeditions which are sent of Bulls of Benefices, Indulgences and other matters of Court-bully-matter; and partly in the Pensions, which are paid there to the Cardinals and other Ministers of those Kings and Princes, which know best how to make their ends of the Popes ambitions. So that it may be truly said, there came not more Tributes into old-Rome from the conquered Provinces, than hath been brought into the New from the subject Churches, which have submitted to the power of the Roman Prelates: and that they have as great command now under the pretence of Religion, as ever they had formerly by force of Arms. So truly was it said by *Proper* of *Aquinate*, (if memory fail not)

Roma caput mundi, quicquid non possidet Armis,  
Religionis tenet.

That is to say,

What Rome holds not with the Sword,  
She holds by colour of the Word.

But yet there wants the *Genius* of the ancient City, the power and natural courage of the old Inhabitants, which held the same against the bravery and assaults of all foreign Enemies: this City during the time of the ancient *Romans*, being never took but by the *Galls*; but since

since *Pontifical*, it hath been made a Prey to all Barbarous Nations, and never was beleagued by any that did not take it. In a Word, the City of *Rome* as now it standeth, is but the carcass of the old, of which it retains nothing but the ruins; and the cause of them, lies thus.

The Popes do much brag of the foundation of their Church, and the authority of *S. Peter*; whose being there is indeed constantly attested by most ancient Writers; inasmuch that *Calvin*, though no friend to the Popes of *Rome*, yet proper *Scripturam confutans*, in regard of the unanimous consent of the primitive times, did not think fit to controvert it. The silence of the Scriptures is a Negative Argument, and concludes nothing to the contrary; against that *Cloud* of unquestioned Witnesses, as soberly and positively have affirmed the same. And yet I would not have it thought by the captious *Romanists*, that I conceive that it makes any thing at all for the Pope's Supremacy, because he fits in *Peter's* seat: no more than it did make for *Vibius Rufus* (as *Dion* doth relate the story) to attain *Tully's* eloquence, or *Cæsar's* power, because he married *Tully's* Widow, and bought *Cæsar's* Chair: though the poor Gentleman did besof himself with this opinion, that he should be Master of them both. Of which see *Lib. LVII*. And yet the Popes rely so much upon this fancy, of being the direct heirs of *S. Peter*, and all his preeminencies, that all things which they lay or do, must be entitled to *S. Peter*. Their Throne must be *S. Peter's* Chair, their Church *S. Peter's* Ship, their Lands *S. Peter's* Parsonage, their Tributes and Exactions must be called *Peter's* pence, their Excommunications fulminated in *S. Peter's* name; and all their Bulls and Faculties sealed *Anno* *Piscatoris*, with *S. Peter's* Signet. Nay, they went so far at the last, that Pope *Stephen* not being contented to be *Peter's* Successor, did take upon him in plain terms to be *Peter* himself. For being distressed by *Astolph* King of the *Lombards*, he sends for aid unto King *Pepin* in this following stile. *Petrus Apostolus JESU CHRISTI, &c. i. e. Peter the Apostle of JESUS CHRIST, to you the most Illustrious King Pepin, and to all Bishops, Abbots, &c. Like the Apostle Peter, whose adopted sons you are, admittis that you presently come and defend this City, &c. And datus non potest, but trust assuredly shall I myself, as if I stand before you, do thus exhort you, &c. And thus I Peter the Apostle of God, will as the last day yield you mutual kindnesses, and prepare you Tabernacles in the heavens.* *Baronius* who records this Letter, Anno 755. lib. 17. was, it seems, pretty well perwaded of it, that the Pope and *Peter* were all one. For in his Exhortation or *Paraphrase* to the State of *Venice*, being then upon some differences with Pope *Paul* the fifth, he stileth him in plain terms thus, *Paulus idemque Petrus vicem Christi agens in terra, i. e. Paul, who is also Peter, and Christ's Vicegerent, &c.* But leaving these imaginary claims and challenges of *S. Peter's* privileges, though they did really advance the reputation of that See in the darker Ages two things there were which did exceedingly conduce to the improvement of their power, in the more knowing and discerning times of *Christianity*. Of which the principal, was the Orthodoxy of the Bishops or Popes of *Rome*, their eminent and sincere profession of the Faith of *Christ*; when almost all the other Churches were either torn in pieces by the fury of *Schism*, or wasted and subverted by the fraud of *Heresie*. In which regard, Appeals were frequently made to the Church of *Rome*, as a more competent Judge of the truth of *Doctrines*; the commendation of it much desired by all true *Christians* and a repair thither for relief and shelter in the times of trouble, made by the Orthodox Professors under persecution. And of these times, and this con-

dition of that Church, we are to understand such passages of the Ancient Writers, as magnifie the Faith of the Church of *Rome*, and let it above all the batteries and assaults of *Heresie*. Such is that passage of *S. Cyprian*, *Romanos esse ad quos perfidia non potest habere accessum*, lib. 1. ep. 3. and that of *Hierome*, *Romanam fidem; i. e. Romanorum fidem* *Apostolica voce laudatam, ejusmodi prestigium non recipere, in Apol. cont. Rufin* and many others of that kind. Which passages it were as foolish and ridiculous to apply to all following times the condition of that Church being different from what then it was; as to accommodate all those *Eligium* and commendations to the present City of *Rome*; which the Orators and Pagnepriests of the elder times have hyperbolically ascribed to old *Rome* in her greatest glory. The next was the fixation of the Popes in the *Metropolis*, or Imperial City; which drawing to it such a multitude of suiters and attendants from all parts of the world could not but add much to the power and reputation of those Prelates, who had the happiness and honour to be resident there; and thereby opportunity to gain more Disciples, to solve more doubts of conscience, and decide more controversies than any other could expect. And so we are to understand that passage in *S. Irenæus*, in which he saith, *Ad hanc Ecclesiam propter potentioris Principatitatem, necesse est omnem convenire Ecclesiam, i. e. eos qui sunt undique Ecclesie*. And so they did as long as *Rome* enjoyed the honour of a more potent Principality than any other Cities. But when that more potent Principality failed to be at *Rome*, by the removal of the Imperial See, till to *Constantinople*, and afterwards unto *Ravenna*, then did the Bishops of *Constantinople* and *Ravenna*, dispute with those of *Rome* for Supremacy; the chief least of Religion most commonly following the seat of the Empire. And in this claim the Patriarch or Bishop of *Constantinople* prevailed so far, that with the permission of *Marcellinus* the Emperour, he took upon him the title of *Universalis Patriarchæ*. Gregory the Great (of whom it is said that he was the worst Bishop of all that went before him, and the best of all that came after him) was at that time Bishop of *Rome*: who sharply inveighed as well against the Emperour, as the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, for this Title, and plainly maintained, that whosoever called himself *Univ. Bishop*, was the forerunner of *Antichrist*. As for himself it is probable that he took the title of *Servus servorum Dei*, more in opposition to him of *Constantinople*, than with an intent to be so truly. To which though those of *Rome* reply that Gregory did not absolutely condemn this Title, but only blamed *John the Constantinopolitan* Patriarch for assuming to himself that attribute, which properly belonged to the See of *Rome*; yet this cannot be. For then either in the old Bulls of the former Popes, we should find mention of this Title; or else Pope Gregory would have assumed it to himself, that the world might take notice to whom of right it did belong. But *Boniface*, who next but on succeeded Gregory, having further aims applied himself to Phœbe that bloody Tyrant; who having murdered the Emperour *Marcellinus*, his Wife and Children, and thereby got the general hatred of all the good Subjects of the Empire, the better to assure himself of Italy, whose revolt he feared, declared this *Boniface* to be the Occasional Bishop and Head of the Church. To such a good beginning, such a gracious Patron do the Popes stand indebted for that power and Empire, which now they challenge to themselves over all the Church.

Now as the Bishop of *Constantinople*, and *Ravenna*, did challenge a priority or precedency, of the Popes of *Rome*; by reason that they were respectively honoured with the Seat *Antichrist*; so were there divers other Bishops, as *Antioch*, *Alexandria*, *Carthage*, *Milain*, which claimed



claimed an equality with them; and would by no means yield them any superiority. For trial of whose claim, we must look back on somewhat which had been said before; where it is shown, that the Roman Empire was divided into fourteen *Dioeceses*; each *Dioecesis* being subdivided into several Provinces; each Province comprehending many several Cities; then, that in every of those Cities, where the Romans had their *Defensores*, the Christians also had a Bishop: in the Metropolis of each Province, which commonly was the seat of the Roman President, the Christians had their Metropolitans; and that in each principal City of each several *Dioecesis*, wherein the *Vicar* of that *Dioecesis* had fixed his dwelling, there did the Christians place a *Primate*. And this was done according to that famous Maxim of Optatus, *hæc publicæ non sibi Ecclesiæ, sed Ecclesiæ ipse in Republica*, that the Church is in the Common-wealth; and not the Common-wealth in the Church. Upon which foundation the Fathers in the Council of Chalcedon, raised this superstructure, *Episcopus unusquisque in regione*, &c. that the honours of the Church should be accommodated unto those in State. So that according to this Platform, the *Primates* of the Church were of equal power, each of them limited and restrained to his proper Sphere; out of the which if he presume once to act, he moved irregularly, and in his Ecclesiastical. And for those *Primates*, I shall give you once for all, this general Muster, that is to say, the Patriarch or Pope of Rome, for the Diocese or Patriarchate of that City; the Primate or Archbishop of Milan, for the Diocese of Italy; of Syria, for that of Ilyria; of Lyons, for that of France; of York, for Britain; Toledo, for Spain, and of Carthage, for Africa. Then for the East parts of the Empire, there was the Patriarch of Alexandria, for the Diocese of Egypt; of Antioch, for that of the Orient; the Primate or Archbishop of Ephesus, for the Diocese of Asia; of Nicomedia for that of Pontus; of Bizantium, or Constantinople for that of Thrace; of Thessalonica, for the Diocese of Greece; and of Justiniana prima, for that of Dacia. Amongst all which there was a mutual correspondence and Co-ordination, for the general Government of the Church; maintained by Letters of intercourse, which they called *Litteræ fœderales*, and *Communicatorias*; but no subordination, and much less subjection, unto one another, as doth appear most evidently by the Canons of the Council of Nice, allying to the three great Patriarchs their peculiar bounds, according to the custom of the former times. As for the *Dioecesis* or Patriarchate of the Popes of Rome, it contained in it those ten Provinces, which were immediately subject to the Præfect or Prætor of that City (an officer first instituted by Augustus Cæsar) that is to say, the Provinces of *Æfrica* and *Umbria*, *Fœcens* Suburbicarian, *Campania*, *Apulia* and *Calabria*, *Valeria*, *Samium*, *Lucania* and the *Bruia*, in the main Land of Italy; and the three Islands of *Sicily*, *Corsica*, and *Sardinia*. In which regard, (I mean as to the immediate Government of those Provinces by the Præfect of the City of Rome) as they are called *Regiones Suburbicariæ*, by Ruffinus an Italian Writer (so denominated the Pope himself was called *Urbanus*, or the City Bishop, as appears plainly by Optatus, who calleth Pope Zephyrinus, *Zephyrinus Urbanus*). But the Popes were not long content with that allotment, growing up daily by a fildly and constant watchfulness upon all occasions, to increase the Grandeur of that See; and taking to themselves the honor to be *Vindictæ Canonum*, the strict and punctual preservers of the ancient Discipline, which took extremely well with all sorts of people. Till in the end from being *Vindictæ Canonum*, they came to be Interpreters and at last the Rulers, or rather the Over-riders of the Canons; and from chief Labourers in the Vineyard,

they became the Landlords: which was the honour aimed at, and at last obtained by the forsaide Boniface, whom that cruel and butcherly Tyrant Phocas made the Head of the Church, the sixty sixth Bishop and first Pope of Rome: the Latin word *Papa* coming from the old Greek *Pater*, signifying a Father. A title at the first common unto other Bishops, as is evident to any one, who hath read the *Fathers*; but after this, appropriated unto those of Rome. Of these Popes, their Succession, and times of Government, our *Chronologues* are very uncertain: not one of them that ever I had the luck to see, agreeing exactly with another. The reasons whereof, I conceive, are, 1. The frequent *Vacancies*; and 2. the many *Schisms* which have happened in it; and 3. the *Anti-Popes* in them created: the Writers of those times accounting him only among the Popes, to whose faction they were most devoted. This Catalogue ensuing I have collected principally out of the Tables of *Helvici*, *Freigius*, *Edlmann*, and *Onuphrius*, whose differences I have reconciled as well as possibly I could: premonishing the Reader, that where the number of years which every Pope is found to fit in the *Papal Chair*, makes not up the full number from his first admission, to the coming in of his Successor; it must be understood of some *Schism* or *Vacancy*, hapning in the Interval, by which the tale is to be made up. And for the difficulties which occur amongst the Ancients, in the first Succession, some placing of them thus, *Linus, Clemens, Clemens*; some *Linus, Clemens Clemens*; and finally some others putting *Clemens* the first, I know no better way to compose the fable than to affirm (as many of the Fathers do) that St. Peter and St. Paul were Co-founders of the Church in Rome; St. Peter of the Church of the *Circumcision*, and St. Paul of the *Gentiles*; each of them being Bishop of the Church of his own foundation: and then to draw down the Succession in this manner following.

## The Bishops of Rome.

- A. Ch.  
 44 1 St. Peter, Bishop of the Churches of the *Circumcision*.  
 70 2 *Cletus*, or *Anacleus*, Successor to St. Peter in the Churches of the *Circumcision*. 23.  
 59 1 St. Paul, Bishop of the Churches of the *Gentiles*.  
 70 2 *Linus*, Successor to St. Paul in the Church of the *Gentiles*. 11.  
 81 3 *Clemens* having succeeded *Linus* first in the Church of the *Gentiles*, did after *Anno* 93. succeed *Cletus* also in the Church of the *Jews*, reckoned by some the next Successor to St. Peter, because the next who after him had the charge of the whole; the Church of the *Gentiles* not being founded, or not differing from the other, till some years after Peter's coming.  
 103 4 *Anacletus* p. 203 15 *Zephyrinus* 18.  
 112 5 *Eugenius* 11. 221 16 *Celstin* 5.  
 121 6 *Alexander* 16m. 5 d. 226 17 *Urbanus* 6m. 7 d.  
 131 7 *Sixtus* 10. 232 18 *Pontianus* 5.  
 142 8 *Telphorus* 12. 238 19 *Anterus* 1.  
 154 9 *Pius* 1. 239 20 *Fabianus* 14.  
 158 10 *Hippolytus* 9. 253 21 *Cornelius* 2.  
 167 11 *Anicetus* 8m. 9. 255 22 *Lucius* 1 m. 8.  
 175 12 *Soter* 4. 256 23 *Stephanus* 3 m. 3.  
 179 13 *Eleutherius* 15. 260 24 *Sixtus* or *Xistus* 11. 2.  
 194 14 *Victor* 9. 261 25 *Dionysius* 10.

- 272 26 Felix 2 m. 5 d.  
 275 27 *Eusebius* 8.  
 283 28 *Caius* 13.  
 296 29 *Marcellinus* 8.  
 300 30 *Marcellus* 5.  
 309 31 *Eusebius* 1.  
 311 32 *Miltiades* 2.  
 314 33 *Sylvester* 2.  
 336 34 *Marcus* m. 8.  
 337 35 *Julius* 15 m. 5.  
 338 36 *Libertus* 15 out vivo  
 339 37 Felix 15.  
 367 38 *Damasus* 13.  
 385 39 *Syriscus* 12.  
 398 39 *Anastasi* 4.  
 402 40 *Innocentius* 15.  
 417 41 *Zosimus* 1 m. 4.  
 419 42 *Bonifacius* 5.  
 424 43 *Celstinus* 8 m. 5.  
 432 44 *Sixtus* III. 8.  
 440 45 *Leo* magn. 21.  
 461 46 *Hilarius* m. 6. 10.  
 468 47 *Simplicius* 15 m. 5.  
 483 48 Felix III. 9.

## The Popes of Rome challenging a Supremacy over all the Church.

- 606 1 Bonifacius III. 5. 796 33 Leo III. 20.  
 607 2 Bonifacius IV. 8. 816 34 *Stephanus* V. m. 7.  
 615 3 *Dionysius* 3. 817 35 *Falschah* 7.  
 618 4 Bonifacius V. 5 m. 10. 824 36 *Eugenius* II. 3.  
 624 5 *Harmonius* 13. 827 37 *Valentinus* d. 4.  
 634 6 *Servatus* 2. 827 38 *Gregorius* IV. 16.  
 639 7 *Joannes* IV. 2. 827 39 *Sergius* II. 3.  
 641 8 *Theodorus* 7 m. 5. 846 40 *Leo* IV. 8.  
 649 9 *Martinus* 6. 854 41 Pope *JOAN.* 2.  
 654 10 *Eugenius* 2 m. 9. 856 42 *Benedictus* III. 2.  
 657 11 *Vitalianus* 14. 858 43 *Nicolaus* 10.  
 671 12 *Ad-* 858 44 *Adrianus* II. 5.  
 677 13 *Dionysius* I. m. 5 d. 868 45 *Joannes* IX. 10.  
 679 14 *Agatho* 4. 873 46 *Martinus* II. 1.  
 683 15 *Leo* II. m. 10. 883 47 *Adrianus* III. 1.  
 684 16 *Benedictus* II. 1. 884 48 *Stephanus* VI. 1.  
 685 17 *Joannes* V. 1. 885 49 *Formosus* 4.  
 686 18 *Conon* m. 11. 891 50 *Bonifacius* VI. d. 15.  
 688 19 *Sergius* 13. 895 51 *Stephanus* VII. 1.  
 701 20 *Joannes* VI. 3. 896 52 *Romanus* m. 4.  
 704 21 *Stephanus* VII. 3. 897 53 *Theodorus* II. d. 20.  
 707 22 *Siffridus* d. 20. 897 54 *Joannes* X. 2.  
 707 23 *Constantinus* 7. 897 55 *Benedictus* IV. 2.  
 714 24 *Gregorius* II. 17. 903 56 *Leo* V. d. 40.  
 714 25 *Greg.* III. 10. 903 57 *Christophorus* m. 7.  
 724 26 *Zacharias* 10. 903 58 *Sergius* III. m. 7.  
 724 27 *Stephanus* III. 5. 910 59 *Anastasi* III. 2.  
 732 28 *Paulus* I. 1. 912 60 *Lando* m. 6.  
 737 29 *Paulus* I. 1. 912 61 *Joannes* XI. 15.  
 767 30 *Constantine* II. 928 62 *Leo* VI. m. 6.  
 768 31 *Stephanus* IV. 4. 929 63 *Stephanus* VIII. 2.  
 772 32 *Adrianus* I. 23.

To these one hundred twenty nine Popes add the fifty five Bishops which preceded that arrogant title of *Universal*, and they make up the full number of two hundred forty four. How many are to come, he must be a cunning man that can determine. And yet such cunning men there have been, who have determined positively, but withal, Prophetically, of the number of Popes; by name St. Malachi one of the first

- 931 64 *Joannes* XII. 5. 1254 122 *Alexander* IV. 6.  
 936 65 *Leo* VII. 4. 1261 123 *Clement* IV. 3.  
 940 66 *Stephanus* IX. 3. 1265 124 *Clement* V. 3.  
 943 67 *Martinus* III. 9. 1271 125 *Gregorius* X. 3.  
 946 68 *Agapetus* II. 9. 1275 126 *Innocentius* X. 14.  
 956 69 *Joannes* XIII. 8. 1276 127 *Adrian* V. m. 5.  
 964 70 *Leo* VIII. 1. 1276 128 *Joannes* XXI. 8.  
 965 71 *Benedictus* V. 1. 1277 129 *Nicolaus* III. 4.  
 966 72 *Joannes* XIV. 7. 1281 130 *Martinus* IV. 4.  
 973 73 *Benedictus* VI. m. 6. 1285 131 *Honorius* IV. 4.  
 974 74 *Dionysius* II. 1. m. 3. 1288 132 *Nicolaus* IV. 4.  
 975 75 *Bonifacius* VII. 1. 1294 133 *Celstin* V. m. 6.  
 976 76 *Benedictus* VII. 8. 1295 134 *Bonifacius* VIII. 8.  
 984 77 *Joannes* XVI. 1. 1303 135 *Benedictus* IX. m. 8.  
 985 78 *Joannes* XVII. 10. 1305 136 *Clement* V. 3.  
 995 79 *Gregorius* V. 3. m. 1316 137 *Joannes* XXII. 18.  
 999 80 *Gregorius* VI. 3. m. 1334 138 *Benedictus* X. 7.  
 999 81 *Sylvester* II. dicitur 1342 139 *Clement* VI. 10.  
 1000 82 *Joannes* XVIII. m. 5. 1352 140 *Innocent* VI. 10.  
 1003 83 *Joannes* XIX. m. 5. 1362 141 *Urban* 5. 8.  
 1009 84 *Sergius* IV. 3. 1378 142 *Gregorius* XI. 7.  
 1012 85 *Benedictus* VIII. 12. 1389 143 *Bonifacius* IX. 12.  
 1024 86 *Joannes* XX. m. 9. 1404 144 *Innocent* VII. 2.  
 1033 87 *Benedictus* IX. 12. 1406 145 *Gregorius* XII. 2.  
 1045 88 *Sylvester* III. m. 1. 1409 146 *Urban* X. 11.  
 1045 89 *Benedictus* X. m. 1. 1410 147 *Joannes* XXIII. 5.  
 1045 90 *Gregorius* VI. m. 1. 1419 148 *Martin* V. 13.  
 1047 91 *Clement* II. 9. 1431 149 *Eugenius* IV. 16.  
 1047 92 *Damasus* II. d. 23. 1447 150 *Nicolaus* V. 8.  
 1049 93 *Leo* IX. 5. 1455 151 *Celstin* III. 3.  
 1055 94 *Victor* II. 2. 1485 152 *Joannes* XXIV. 11.  
 1057 95 *Stephanus* X. m. 6. 1490 153 *Pius* I. 2.  
 1059 96 *Nicolaus* II. 2 m. 6. 1494 154 *Paulus* II. 7.  
 1062 97 *Alexander* II. 11. 1471 155 *Sixtus* IV. 12.  
 1073 98 *Gregorius* VII. dicitur 1484 156 *Innocent* VIII. 7.  
 1086 99 *Victor* III. 1. 1492 157 *Alexander* V. 11.  
 1086 100 *Urban* VI. 12. 1503 158 *Pius* III. d. 26.  
 1087 101 *Urban* VII. 12. 1503 159 *Julius* II. 10.  
 1089 102 *Falschah* II. 18. 1513 160 *Leo* X. p.  
 1118 103 *Calixtus* II. 6. 1522 161 *Adrian* VI. 2.  
 1119 104 *Honorius* II. 5. 1524 162 *Clement* VII. 10.  
 1125 105 *Innocent* III. 5. 1534 163 *Paulus* III. 15.  
 1130 106 *Innocent* IV. 5. 1550 164 *Julius* III. 5.  
 1143 107 *Celstin* III. 3. 1555 165 *Benedictus* XI. d. 22.  
 1144 108 *Lucius* II. m. 11. 1555 166 *Paulus* IV. 11.  
 1145 109 *Eugenius* III. 8. 1560 167 *Pius* IV. 5.  
 1153 110 *Anastasi* IV. 1. 1567 168 *Pius* V. 5.  
 1154 111 *Adrian* IV. 4. 1572 169 *Gregorius* XIII. 13.  
 1159 112 *Alexand.* III. 2. 1589 170 *Sixtus* V. 5.  
 1161 113 *Lucius* III. 2. 1590 171 *Urban* VII. d. 12.  
 1185 114 *Gregorius* VIII. m. 2. 1591 172 *Innocent* IX. m. 1.  
 1188 115 *Clement* III. 3. 1592 173 *Clement* VIII. 13.  
 1191 116 *Celstin* III. 6. 1605 174 *Clement* VII. 13.  
 1198 117 *Innocent* III. 17. 1605 175 *Leo* XI. d. 26.  
 1216 118 *Honorius* III. 10. 1621 176 *Paulus* V. 16.  
 1227 119 *Gregorius* IX. 14. 1623 177 *Greg.* XV. 2.  
 1241 120 *Celstin* IV. d. 17. 1644 178 *Urban* VIII. 22.  
 1243 121 *Innocent* IV. 11.

Apostles of the *Iris* Nation, very much honoured by that people to this very day. Of whom there is remaining in *Massingham* collection of the *Iris* Saints, a certain number of *Monitors* in the Latin tongue; agreeable to the nature or chief accidents of as many Popes successively to one another, according to the order of those several *Monitors*; and thereunto this Prophecy annexed, that when to many Popes had fate in St. Peter's Chair,

either the World should end, or the Popedom fail. The Book was shewed to me by the Author, when I was at Paris, and the Popes names in order joined to every *Motto*, as far as to the time of *Urban*, who last deceased; which I compared as well as memory would serve me, and found the *Mottos* and the Popes to be very answerable. The *Motto* for Pope *Urban*, which I took most notice of, was, *Lilium and Rosa*: a *Motto* very suitable to the principal Action which was like to happen in his time, being the conjunction of the *English* *Rose*, and the *French Lilly*; in the marriage of *Charles* King of *England*, and *Madam Henrietta Maria* the Princess of *France*; which that Pope carefully promoted, in his speedy and cheerful granting of the Dispensation. And to take from me all suspicion of Impotence, this *Maffingham* shewed me an old Book written by one *Winn a Fleming*, and printed near 200 years before his Conclaves; in which the *Masterhood* as in his they did and comparing the *Mottos* with a printed Catalogue of the Popes, I found the name of *Urban*, and that *Motto* to jump even together. From *Urban* downwards there remained (as I now remember) 36 *Mottos* more to come; by consequence, if this *Malady* were as true a Prophet as one *Malachi* was, just for many Popes, and then the Popedom to be ruined, or the World to end. But I hope God for his *Election* sake will abide those thofe days, and not permit the superstitions and the corruptions of that Church to endure so long; nor to many Affectors and Defenders of those *Roman Heterodoxies*, to be added to the former number. Out of the stories of all which (premitting many things of less consideration) I will only select some few passages, for the better understanding of their state and story.

1. *Pelagius* the first, ordained that *Heretick* and *Schismatic* should be punished with temporal death; which severity continueth still: and that none should be preferred to Ecclesiastical dignities by Gifts, and Bribes; which principle is long since antiquated.

2. *Vitalianus*, first brought *Organs* into the Divine service of the Church of *Rome*; to be used in the singing or vocal Music formerly in use; which afterwards was brought unto more perfection by the Popes succeeding.

3. *Constantine* was so generally beloved of all men, that going to *Constantinople*, *Justinian* the second kill his feet in sign of honour, which some of the ambitious Popes in times succeeding, drew into example, and at last brought into a custom, as it still continueth.

4. *Paschal* the first, caused the Priests of certain Parishes in *Rome*, by reason of their nearness to his person, their preference at his Election, and to honour them with a more venerable Title, to be called *Cardinals*. Now names for Kings, and numbered about 70, but more or fewer at the sole pleasure of the Popes.

5. *Eugenius* the second, took to himself within the Territories of the Church, the Authority of creating Dukes, Earls and Knights; as the *Exarch* of *Ravenna* had used to do.

6. *Sergius* the second, was the first that changed his name. For thinking his own name, *Boeca di Boeca*, or *Smirner-mouth*, not consonant to his dignity, he caused himself to be called *Sergius*; which precedent his Successors following, do also vary their names. So that if one be a Coward he is called *Lio*; if a Tyrant, *Clement*; if an Atheist, *Pius*; or *Innocent*; if a Rustick, *Urbanus*; and so for the rest.

7. *John* the eighth, is by most men confided to be a Woman, and is usually called *Pope Joane*. To avoid the like disgrace, the *Porphyry Chair* was ordained; *ubi ab altissimo discant*, &c. so that both in a literal and mystical

sense, this Woman may not unfitly be called, *The Whore of Babylon*. The name of this Female Pope, the *Romish Chronologists* have not inserted into the Catalogue; the reason, as *Marianus Scotus* giveth it, *propter turpitudinem rei, & solum muliebrem*. And from hence it is that in the common Catalogues, these Popes that have called themselves *Johns*, are so ill ordered; some making that *John* which succeeded *Adrian* the second, An. 872. to be the 8th and others the 9th *Platina* only of all the *Posticums* reckoneth *Pope Joane* as the 8th of the *Johns*, and so forward: in which particular I have followed his authority. And it is probable enough that God might suffer that proud Seed to fall into such an infamy, the better to humble the ensuing Popes, in the times of their greatest trust and flourish; or to prevent the brag of that continued Succession, they so much pretend to. More of this Argument, (as to the truth of the story in matter of Fact) he that lists to see, may satisfy himself in Mr. *Cocky* Book of *Pope Joane*; who most indolently hath answered all objections, which hath been made against it by those of *Rome*.

8. *Nicolas* the first, the better to fatten the Clergy to the See of *Rome*, and make them the less obnoxious to their natural Princes; was the first who did by law restrain them from marriage. Saying, that it was more honest to have to do with many Women privately, than openly to keep a Wife: and some of his Successors followed it so close, that a Priest of *Placentia* being accused by his Wife and Children, was deprived of his *Benefice*; but upon proof made, that she was the Wife of another man, and his *Strumper* only, he was again restored to it.

9. *Adrian* the third, ordained, that the Emperor from thenceforth should have no more to do with the Election, or confirmation of the Pope, but that it should be left wholly to the *Roman Clergy*.

10. *Formosus* was so ill beloved, and of such a general disesteem, that Popes *Sylvester* the seventh caused his body to be unburied, all his Acts reversed, two of his fingers to be cut off, and then the mangled carcase to be again interred among the *Laiety*. And though these Acts of *Steven* were adjudged illegal, both by *John* the tenth, and Pope *Romanus*, two of his Successors; and the doings of *Formosus* justified: yet *Sergius* the third caused his corrupt and putrified body to be taken once more out of the grave; and his head to be cut off, as if still alive. So little did the infallibility of *S. Peter's* Chair preserve these Popes from falling into gross and irreconcilable contradictions.

11. *John* the twelfth, was the next after *Sergius* the second that changed his name; a very wicked, cruel, and libidinous man: who coming to that place by his Fathers greatness, cut off the nose of one Cardinal, and the hand of another, for that they had dignified to the Emperor *Otho* the first, what a scandal all the Church did suffer by his detestable life; and finally, being taken in Adultery, was slain by the husband of the woman.

12. *Gregory* the fifth, finding the power of the Emperor, as long as it continued in a way of succession, not likely to be over-born by that of the Church; and being withal incensed against the *Romans*, who, till that time retained some shadow of an Empire, projected the election of the future Emperors, by the Princes of *Germany*; by which the *Germanys* were distracted into Factions, and the *Romans* weakened; and so a door left open to the Popes of *Rome*, to make their ends upon them both.

13. *Stephen* the tenth, brought the Church of *Milan* to be under the obedience of the Popes of *Rome*, which till that time had challenged an equality with them; as before

before Pope *Domnus* had done the Church of *Ravenna*, which for some time had challenged the precedence of them.

14. *Gregory* the seventh, commonly called *Hildebrand*, a turbulent and unquiet man, who first adventured to draw the *Premier* laid down by some of his Predecessors into a conclusion: Excommunicating the Emperor *Henry IV.* for meddling with the Investitures of Bishops, and causing *Rodolph* Duke of *Saxony* to rebel against him. A man, much favoured against the Princes of her own House by the Countess *Matilda*; who is said to be to much his friend, that for his sake he left the company of her Husband, and dissipated her right Heirs, selling her whole Estates in *Italy* on the See of *Rome*. And though the Emperor had the better of this Pope, and made him flee out of *Rome*, and die in exile; yet he was fain at last to submit himself to Pope *Paschal* the second, (who had Armed his own Son against him) to attend bare-foot at his own door, and cry *peccavi*.

15. *Sergius* the third, ordained the bearing of *Candles*, in the Feast of the Purification of the Virgin *Mary*, thence called *Candlemas* day.

16. *Sergius* the fourth was the first that on *Christmas* night, with divers Ceremonies did consecrate Swords, Roses, or the like; to be sent as tokens of love and honour to such Princes as deserved best of them, or whom they desired to oblige. Thus *Leo* the tenth sent a consecrated Rose to *Frederick* Duke of *Saxony*, requesting him to banish *Luther*; and *Paul* the third an hallowed Sword to *James* the fifth of *Scotland*, to engage him in a War against *Henry* the Eighth, who had then withdrawn himself and his Kingdom, from the Pope's commands.

17. *Nicolas* the second took from the *Roman Clergy* the election of Popes, and gave it the College of *Cardinals*.

18. *Celsine* the second, was the Inventor of that mad manner of cursing, or *Anathematizing*, by Bell, Book, and Candle.

19. *Alexander* the third, pursuing the desperate course of *Gregory* the seventh, excommunicated the Emperor *Frederick I.* and by raising War against him in every place; brought him to that exigent, that he was fain to prostitute himself at his feet: when the Pope treading on his neck, said aloud, *Super Aspidem & Basiliscum*, &c. profanely applying those words to the present occasion. And when the Emperor, to put the better colour on his disgrace, meekly replied, *Non tibi sed Petro*; the Pope not willing to lose his part of so great a glory, subjoined as angrily, *Et mihi & Petro*.

20. *Innocent* the third held a Council in *Rome*, in which it was decreed that the Pope should have the correction of all *Christian* Princes; and that no Emperor should be acknowledged, till he had sworn obedience to him. Which bringeth into my mind that jolly humour of the great *Chan of Tartary*; who when he hath done, commands his Trumpeters to sound, and make Proclamation, that now all other Kings and Princes may sit down to dinner. He brought in the Doctrine of *Transubstantiation*, and ordained that there should be a Fix made to cover the consecrated (but now *Transubstantiated*) Bread, and a Bell to be rung before it. He is also said to have first imposed *Anathematic* Confession upon the people.

21. *Nicolas* the third, was the first Pope who practised to enrich his kindred, intending to make one of them King of *Lombardy*, another King of *Tuscany*; and to raise the rest to great Advancements out of the Lands of the Church. Before which time (as *Macbiavel* very well observeth) as there was no mention of the advancement of any of the Pope's kinsfolks or posterity, so afterwards

they studied no one thing more than to prefer their own blood; inasmuch that they have not only laboured (as he saith) to make them Princes, but if it were possible would procure the Popedom to be made hereditary. So he, with probability enough. For so clearly do they love their *Nephews* (by which name they use to call their *Barbards*) that it was very justly said by Pope *Alexander* the third, *The Law forbids us to get Children, and the Devil bids given us Nephews in their stead*.

22. Boniface the eighth, of whom it is said, *That he entered like a Fox, reigned like a Lion, and died like a Dog*; by his general Bull exempted the Clergy from being chargeable with Taxes and Payments unto Temporal Princes. Which being complied with by the Clergy of *England*, King *Edward I.* put them out of his protection; and to the Popes Bull left roaring here. He caused the Book of the *Canon Law*, called the *Decretals* to be first set out; and instituted the Feast of *Jubilee*, to be held in *Rome* every hundredth year; but by *Clement* the sixth it was brought unto the fiftieth year, and since reduced to the five and twentieth. This is that *Pontifice*, who in that great concourse of people which repaired to *Rome*, to observe his new Feast of *Jubilee*, (to which every one that did repair was to have a pleasurable remission of all his sins) shewed himself one day in the habit of a Pope, and the next day in that of an Emperor; and caused two Swords to be born before him every day, in sign that all Power Ecclesiastical and Temporal did belong unto him.

23. *Clement* the fifth, was the first that made *Indulgences* and *Pardons* saleable. For seeing (said he) that one drop of our Saviour's blood had been enough to have saved all Mankind, and yet that all his blood was shed, the over-plus was left to the Church as a standing Treasure, to be disposed of by St. Peter and his Successors. And hereunto, to make his Treasure the more inexhaustible, he added the Merits of the Virgin *Mary*, and all other Saints. Being wearied with the infidelities of the people of *Rome*, he removed the Papal See to *Avignon* in *France*, where it continued for the space of seventy years.

24. *Clement* the sixth had an ill time of it. For in his Papacy the Emperor gave freely all Lands belonging to the Church; so much as formerly had usurped them; to be holden by them of the Empire. Upon which title the *Malgio* became Lords of *Rimini*, the *Ordelschi* of *Forli*, the *Varesi* of *Comarino*, the *Bentivoglio* of *Nonantia*, the *Manfredi* of *Favenza*, &c. Which Estates were never recovered to the Church, till the time of Pope *Jules* the second, though conquered from the present owners in the time of *Alexander* the sixth, by *Caspar* *Borgia* his Son, who had an aim of getting them, and perhaps the Papacy itself, on the *Borgia* Family.

25. *Gregory* the eleventh, returned the Papal Chair again to the City of *Rome*, whither he conveyed himself by Sea in private, for fear of being with-held by the *French*; and being come thither, found the chief parts of the City so over-grown with briars and bushes, and the principal buildings of it so decayed and ruinous, that a little longer absence would have made it desolate.

26. *Paul* the second, endeavoured to encrease the Majesty of the Popedom by Arms and Avarice, and extended his Predecessors in pomp and show; causing his *Miter* to be enriched with Diamonds, Saphires, Emeralds and other Stones of great price; and augmenting the splendor of the Cardinals with a Scarlet Gown, whom *Innocent* the fourth had graced with Red Hats before. He brought the *Jubilee* from fifty years to twenty-five.



27. Sixtus the fourth ordained a constant Guard to attend his person. He very much beautified and repaired the City of Rome, and was the first founder of the Vatican Library. But on the other side he is said by some, to have let all Offices and Preferments to sale, and to have builded in Rome Stews of both sexes, to bring in Beads, and to authorize our Ladies *Plaster*.

28. Alexander the sixth, setting aside all modesty, was the first that openly acknowledged his Nephews (as they call their Bastards) to be his Sons. By one of which, the *Cesar Borgia* before named, he recovered *Fiorino*, *Imola*, and many other Estates from the present owners, on a design of setting them in his own Family, as before is said, and to that end called in the French, who after made such foul work in Italy.

29. *Julio* the second had more in him of the *Souldier*, than the *Priest*; recovering many Towns unto the Church, which had been formerly usurped, being taken from the Occupants by *Cesar Borgia*; and keeping Italy in his time in continual Wars. This is the Pope who passing over the Bridge of *Tiber*, brandished his Sword, and threw his Keys into the River: saying that if *Peter's* Keys would not serve his turn, then *Paul's* Sword should do it.

30. *Leo* the tenth was indeed a great Vauxer of Learnings, but of great prodigality, and vast expence. For maintenance whereof, he sent his saleable *Indulgences* into France and Germany: which business being indirectly handled by his Ministers, occasioned *Luther* in Germany, and *Zuinglius* amongst the *Switzers*, first to write against them; and afterwards to question many points of Popish Doctrine. In pursuance of which quarrel, the Pope of Rome burnt *Luther's* Books, whom he declared for an Heretic; and *Luther* did the like at *Wittenberg* with the Pope's *Canon Law*, whom he declared to be a Persecutor, a Tyrant, and the very Antichrist. Which flame increased so fast and enlarged so far, that it burnt down a great part of the Papal Monarchy.

31. Pius the fourth, continued the Council formerly called at *Trent* by Pope Paul the third, but interrupted and laid aside from one Pope to another, and having brought it to an end, and thereby settled and confirmed the Interests of the Church of Rome, caused it to be received as *Oecumenical*: though the *Italian* Bishops being most of them the Pope's Creatures, did more than double the number of all the rest; and yet some of the rest also were but merely *Titulars*. He added also a new Creed consisting of twelve Articles to be added to that of the *Apostles*, by all who lived in the Communion of the Church of Rome. But of the words and actions of these Ghostly Fathers we have said enough, if not too much. I will therefore end with that of the Painter, who being blamed by a Cardinal, for giving to St. Peter's Picture too much of the Red, replied, That he had made him so, as *blushing* at the Lives of those who were called his Successors.

As for the Temporal power and greatness of the Popes of Rome, there is a pretended Donation of the Emperour *Constantine*; by which the City of Rome itself, most part of Italy, *Africk*, and all the Islands of those Seas are conferred upon them: the forgery whereof is very learnedly shewn by our learned *Crescambion*, in his Discourse upon that subject. But that *Donation* might most justly be suspected of Fraud and Forgery, though nobody had took the pains to detect the same; considering how fearful the Popes are grown to have the truth thereof disputed: inasmuch that many leaves are razed out of *Guiccardine* by the *Inquisition*, where it had been questioned. For in that place the Historian not only denieth

the said feigned *Donation*, but affirms that divers learned men reported, That *Constantine* and *Sylvester* (to whom it is said to have been made) lived in divers Ages. Then sheweth, how bale and obscure the Authority of the Pope was in Rome itself, during the time that the barbarous Nations made havock of Italy. 2. That in the institution of the *Exarchate*, the Popes had nothing to do with the Temporal Sword, but lived as subject to the Emperors. 3. That they were not very much obeyed in matters *Spiritual*, by reason of the corruption of their manners. 4. That after the overthrow of the *Exarchate*, the Emperors now neglecting Italy, the Romans began to be governed by the advice and power of the Popes. 5. That *Papin* of France, and his Son *Charles* having overthrowen the Kingdom of the *Lombards*; gave unto the Popes the *Exarchate*, *Urbine*, *Ancona*, *Spoleto*, and many other Towns and Territories about Rome. 6. That the Popes in all their Bulls and Charters, exprest the date of them in these following words; Such a one our Lord the Emperour reigning. 7. That long after the translation of the Empire from France to Germany, the Popes began to make open protestation, that the *Pontifical* Dignity was rather to give Laws to the Emperors than receive any from them. 8. That being thus raised to an earthly power, they forgot the salvation of souls, sanctity of life, and the Commandments of God, propagation of Religion, and Charity towards men: And that to raise Arms, to make War against *Christians*, to invent new devices for getting of money, to prophane sacred things for their own ends, and to enrich their kindred and children, was their only study. And this is the substance of *Guiccardine* in that place: an Author above all exception. He was a man whom the Popes employed in many businesses of principal importance; so that no hate to them, but love to the truth, made him write thus much. As for the City of Rome, so unlikely is it to have been given by *Constantine*, that neither *Papin* nor *Charles* his Son, (though more beholding to the Popes than that Emperour was) could be induced to part with it. *Lewis* surnamed *Pius*, is said to have been the first Donor of it, and a Copy of his *Donation* is found in the third Book of *Volaterran*, subscribed by the Emperour, his three Sons, ten Bishops, eight Abbots, fifteen Earls, and the Pope's Library-keeper: yet notwithstanding it is thought, by many very learned and judicious men, that really there was no such matter; but that all this was forged by *Anastasis* the Pope's Bibliothecarian, or Library-keeper, who is cited as a witness to the *Donation*. And yet to put the matter further out of question, let us next hear what that great Politician and Statesman, the Recorder of Florence, *Nic. Machiavel*, hath observed in this case. 'Rome (saith he) was always subject to the Lords of Italy, till *Theodorick* King of the *Goths* removed his Seat to *Ravenna*; for thereby the Romans were enforced to submit themselves to the Bishops, *An. 430.* or thereabouts. And talking of the estate of the Popedom, *An. 931.* he saith thus. 'In Rome were elected yearly out of the Nobility two *Consuls*, who according to the ancient Custom ruled that City. Under them was appointed a Judge to minister justice to the people. There was also a Council of twelve men, which gave Governours unto the Towns subject to Rome. And for the Pope, he had in Rome more or less Authority, according to the favour which he found with the Emperors, or others then most mighty; but the leaving of Italy by the German Emperors settled the Pope in a more absolute Sovereignty over the City. And yet it seems they were not of such absolute power, but that the Romans tugged hard with them for their Liberties. Concerning which he tells

us in another place, That the ambition of the people of Rome did at that time (*viz. An. 1010.*) make much War with the Popes; and that having helped the Pope to drive out the Emperour, and altered the Government of the City as to them seemed good, suddenly they became Enemies to him; and the Popes received more injuries at their hands, than at any other *Christian* Princes; and that even in those days when the Censures of the Popes made all the Welt of the World to tremble, yet even then did the people of Rome rebel, and both the Popes and the people studied for nothing so much, as how one of them might overthrow the Authority and Estimation of the other.

But for the Method and degrees by which the Popes ascended to their temporal greatness, take here an extract of the Story taken out of the best Authors, by the most Reverend Father in God the late Lord Archbishop of *Canterbury*, in his learned and laborious work against *Fisher* the *Jesuit*. 'The Pope (saith he) being chosen anciently by the Clergy and people of Rome, used always to receive from the Emperors hands a ratification of that choice: inasmuch that about the year 579. when all Italy was on fire with the *Lombards*, and *Pelagius* the second constrained through the necessity of the times, to enter upon the Popedom without the Emperour's leave; St. Gregory then a Deacon, was shortly after sent in an Embassy to excuse it. But when the *Lombards* grew so great in Italy, and the Empire was so infested with the *Saracens*, and such changes happened in all parts of the World, as that neither for the present the Homage of the Pope was useful to the Emperour; nor the Protection of the Emperour, a valuable for the Pope: by this means was the Bishop of Rome left to play his own game by himself. A thing which as it pleased him well enough, so both he and his Successors made great advantage by it. For being grown to that eminence by the favour of the Emperors, and the greatness of that City and place of his abode, he then found himself the more free, the greater the Tempest was that beat upon the others. And then first he set himself to alienate the hearts of the Italians from the Emperour, in which he did prevail so far, that *Theophylact* the Exarch coming into Italy, was opposed by the Souldiers, who wished better to have the Pope, than to the Emperour, and the Emperour's own Governour was fain to be defended from his own Souldiers by the Power of the Pope, who had gotten an interest in them against their own Master. Next he opposed himself against him; and about the year 710. Pope *Constance* the first did openly affront *Philippicus* the Emperour, in defence of *Images*, as *Onuphrius* telleth us. After him, Gregory the second and third, took up his example, and did the like to *Leo Isaurus*. By this time the *Lombards* began to pinch very close, and to vex on all sides not only Italy, but Rome too. This drives the Pope to seek a new Patron, and very fitly he meets with *Charles Martel* in France that famous Warrior against the *Saracens*. Him he employeth in defence of the Church against the *Lombards*; and the Address seems very advantagefully taken, it proved so fortunate to them both. For in short time it dissolved the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, having then Pope's security: and it brought the Crown of France into the house of *Charles*, and shortly after the Western Empire. And now began the Popes to be great indeed. For by the bounty of *Papin*, the Son of *Charles*, that which was taken by him from the *Lombards*, was given to the Pope; that is to say, the *Exarchate*, and

'all that lay betwixt the *Apennine* and the River of *Po*, So that now he became a Temporal Prince. But when *Charley* the Great had set up the Western Empire, then he returned the Ancient and Original Power, to govern the Church, to call Councils, and to order *Pal* Elections. And this power continued for a time in his posterity; for Gregory the seventh was confirmed in the Popedom by the same *Henry* the fourth, whom he afterwards deposed. And it might have continued longer, if the succeeding Emperors had had *Abilities* enough to secure, or vindicate their own Rights. But the Pope keeping a strong Council about him, and meeting with some weak Princes, and those oft-times distracted with great and dangerous Wars, grew stronger till he had got the better; yet was it carried in succeeding times with great changes of Fortune, and different success; the Emperour sometimes plucking from the Pope, and the Pope from the Emperour; winning and losing ground, as their spirits, abilities, aids and opportunities were; till at last the Pope settled himself on the grounds laid by Gregory the seventh, in that great power which he now wields in and over these parts of the *Christian* World. A power first exercised (saith he in another place) by this Pope Gregory the seventh, and made too good upon the Emperour *Henry* the fourth, as by Pope *Adrian* the fourth, *Alexander* the third, with some others, upon *Frederick Barbarossa*. And others of the same nature were since served when they did not submit. And for this, I hope his Holiness was not to be blamed. For the Emperour kept the Pope under for divers years together, against all reason; the Pope, as *Bellarmin* affirms, being never subject to the Emperour, and wanting force to stand on his own *Prerogative*: I hope the Pope having now got power enough, may keep the Emperours under foot, and not suffer them any more to flout before him.

Having thus a little glanced at the means, by which the great power of the Church of Rome was first obtained; let us next consider of those policies, by which this Papal Monarchy hath been so long upheld in esteem and credit. We may divide them into three heads. 1. Those by which they have intimidated and crested themselves into the affections and affairs of the greatest Princes. 2. Those by which already they have, and by which they will hereafter be able to secure their estate. And 3. those by which they keep the people in obedience and ignorance.

1. Concerning the first. First, the Donation of several Kingdoms to them which have no right nor title, but by the Grants of the Pope, cannot but bind them fast to uphold that power, without which they could lay no claim to that which they are possessed of. Or which sort was the confirmation of the Kingdom of France to the house of *Papin*; of *Naples* to the house of *Sarbois*, and *Anjou*; of *Naxare* to the *Spaniards*. 2. The readiness of their Ministers to kill such as resist them, cannot but necessitate Princes to seek their friendship, and hold fast with them: especially since by a Write of Excommunication, they can arm the Subjects against their Sovereign; and without the charge of leaving one Souldier, either destroy him utterly, or bring him to conformity. The frequent Wars raised by them against the Emperors of Germany, and that against King *John* in England, by these Papal fulminations only; the poisoning of the said King *John* by a Monk of *Srineland*, and killing of King *Henry* the third of France, by *Jaques Clement*; are full proofs of this. 3. Then followeth their allowance of Marriages prohibited both by God and Nature; the issue of which cannot but uphold

the Popes Authority, without which their birth would be illegitimate, and consequently themselves incapable of the Estates they are born unto: And by this means they do more strengthen themselves by the unlawful Marriages of others, than ever Prince could do by the lawful Marriage of his own. Nothing more fattened Queen Mary of England to the See of Rome, than the question that was raised about the Marriage of her Mother to King Henry the eighth; the lawfulness of which depended chiefly on the dispensation of Pope Julius the second. 4. Then cometh in their dispensing with the Oaths of Princes, when they conceive themselves induced upon reason of State, to fly off from those Leagues and break off those Treaties, which have been solemnly made and sworn betwixt them and their Neighbours. By means whereof, such Princes think themselves not perjured, because dispensed with by the Pope; and commonly get something in advantage, or point of profit, for which they cannot be unthankful unto the Papacy, for which they cannot be obvious in all times and stories. 5. Next comes the choosing of the younger Sons of great Princes into the rank of Cardinals; which obligeth the whole Stock or Family to the Papal Throne: that being a means whereby young Princes are preferred without charge to their Fathers, or any diminution of the Regal Patrimony. 6. And as by these courses he holds in with all Christian Princes generally, which are of the Religion of the Church of Rome; so hath he fattened more particularly on the King of Spain; whereof we shall speak further when we come to that Country.

2. Concerning the second: 1. So it is that their Estate hath the firmest foundation of any, as being built on the Conscience of men possessed with an opinion of their Infallibility, and that undoubted power they pretend unto, not only in Heaven and upon Earth, but also over Hell and Purgatory. 2. Then comes the innumerable Preferments at their disposing, for men of all humours and affections; as having in their power the disposing of almost all the Benefices and Bishopricks of Italy, half of those in Spain, divers in Germany and France; which keepeth the Clergy, and all such as are that way studied, in a perpetual dependence upon that See; especially injoying by it many notable Privileges, which those of the Temporalty are not capable of. 3. Consider next the multitude of Monks and Friars, whose very being depends wholly upon his Authority; every Monastery and Convent being a Garrison (as it were) to defend the Papacy, and train up a Militia of Spiritual Janizaries; men most affectionately devoted to his See and Service. Of these it is conceived that there are no fewer than a Million, one half whereof at least may be fit for action; and all maintained at other men's cost, themselves not disturbing one penny towards it. 4. Their Pardons and Indulgences are a great increase to their Revenue: some of them as unlimited as that of Pope Boniface the eighth, which was for 82000 years to all that could say such a Prayer of St. Angelines; and that for every day, *Toties quoties*. 5. Their practicing on Penitents, whom they persuade in the very agony of their Souls, that there is no salvation for them, but by giving part of their Estates unto the Church. 6. Nor have they found any small advantage to their Power and Patrimony by the invention of Spiritual Fraternities, or orders of Friars, and may in number perhaps equal them. Into these the Lay-People of all sorts, men and women, married and single, declare to be enrolled; as hereby injoying the spiritual prerogatives of Indulgences, and a more speedy dispatch out of Purgatory.

3. Concerning the third. 1. They deter the people from reading the Scripture, alleging unto them the perils they may incur by mis-interpretation. 2. They breed an Antipathy between the Papist and the Protestant; inasmuch that a Papist may not lay *Amen*, unto a Protestant's *Deo Gratias*. They debate them from all *fund of the Religion*, in prohibiting the Books of the Reformed Writers; and hiding their own Treatises, in which the Tenet of the Protestants is recited only to be confuted; inasmuch that in all Italy one shall seldom meet with *Bellarminus* works, or any of the like nature to be sold. 4. They have under pain of Excommunication prohibited the *Italians* from Travel and Traffick with *Heretical* Countries, or such places, where those contagious sounds and lights (as they term them) might make them return infected. 5. The *Servitude*, or *Tyranny* rather of the *Inquisition*, (of which we shall speak more at large when we come to Spain) not only the beginnings, but the smallest suspicions of being this way addicted. And 6. the people thus restrained from Travel, are taught to believe that the Protestants are Blasphemers of God and all his Saints; that in England Churches are turned to Stables, the people grown barbarous and eat young Children; that Geneva is a professed Sanctuary of Roguery, and the like. We have yet two later Examples of their dealing in this kind. First, the gross slander of the *Apostasy* (or, as they call it the Reconciliation) unto their Church, of the Right Reverend Father in God Dr. King, not long since the Lord Bishop of London, a Prelate of too known a Faith and zeal, to give occasion for such a calumny. The second, a Book by them published, and commonly sold in Italy and France, containing a relation of God's judgment, shewn on a sort of Protestant Heretics, by the fall of a house in St. Andrew Parish in London; in which they were assembled to hear a Geneva Lecture, *Os. 26 A. D. 1623*. By which dealing the simple people are made to believe that to be a judgment on us of the Protestant party, which the Authors of that Pamphlet well know to be a calumny in regard of us and a sad chance (I will not say a judgment) which befell their own by the fall of a Chamber in Black Friars, where they were met to hear the Sermon of one Drury a Popish Priest, and that too on the fifth of November in their own account, being the 26 of October before mentioned.

The Popedom being thus cunningly and strongly founded, it cannot be if the Popes had been chole young, or of the same Family, (so that the Successor had not often crossed the designs of his Predecessor) but that this new Monarchy had been greater and better established, than ever the old Roman Empire was in her greatest glory. And to say truth, I have wondered what myself, that some of the more active Popes, especially such as were chosen young, and had the happiness to be of such of Noble Families; did never feel the setting of this Estate in their own Posterity: especially considering the good Precedents which they had before them, both in sacred and in civil history. The high Priesthood in the Church of *Jenny* went from Father to Son; and why should any man think it inconvenient to follow the example of Almighty God, in making the high Priesthood in the Church of Christ to be also hereditary, not elective? The *Sacerdents* who were as great Masters for Wit and Policy, as any those Ages did produce, pursued that precedent; governed by Hereditary Caliphs many years together, until the *Sultans* their *Viceregents* (ambitiously affecting the Supreme Command) rooted out their races. And if the same Obligation lie on the Masters of Religion or mixt Orders, for preserving the Rules and Statutes of their foundations, as is upon the Pope by the fundamental

mental Ordinances of the *Conclave*, as it seems to do so why might not the Popes as well dispense with those *Constitutions*, and turn the Popedom into an Hereditary Estate; as *Albert of Brandenburg*, and *Gotardus of Denmark*, Masters of the *Dutch Knights in Prussia and Livonia*, in their times have done? Nor can I live, but that such an alteration as I speak of, might be altogether as contenting to the Princes of Christendom, as the like change from an unfettered popular Government to an Hereditary Monarchy, was formerly unto the Provinces and People of the State of *Rome*. Of which it is affirmed by that notable Historian and Statesman *Tacitus*, *Nepos Provincie illam verumtamen abnuebant, suspecto Senatus populiq; imperio ex certamina Potentium, & avaritiam Magistratuum, inviolato Legum auxilio, que vi, ambitu, potestate pecunia turbabantur*. The Provinces (saith he) disliked not the alteration, to whom the Government of the Senate and People had been long distastful, by reason of the factions of the great Ones, and covetousness of their Officers: the Laws afforded no security at all, as being swayed up and down by force, ambition, and corruption. The Popedom, in one house, would prove more constant in the preservation of all Leagues and Treaties, more careful to preserve the Interest of their Estate, more useful to the Confederates and Allies thereof upon all occasions, than it is at present: where the Popes do often change their fides, and shift their factions; the Successors many times esteeming it his greatest glory to rescind all the Acts of his Predecessor. And possible enough it is that *Cesar Borgia* the Son of *Alexander VI.* might have done such ends, when it was covenanted betwixt him and *Lewis XII. of France*, that being declared General of the Churches Forces, and giving his helping hand to that King in the Conquest of *Milaine*; he should be aided by him in recovering all the Lands of the Church, which the Dukes of *Urbine* and *Carrimre*, the Families of the *Malaspina*, *Baillois*, and *Estivoglio*, with divers others of less note, did possess in Italy. Which having got into his hands, had not his Fathers sudden death, and his own dangerous sickness hapning at the same time, cut off his design; it had been a matter of no great difficulty (if of any at all) to have made himself absolute Master of *Rome*, and of all the Lands of the Church, and to have left the same established in the *Borgian* Family. It is true, that such an alteration would be very distastful to the ambition of the Cardinals, who by the deaths (natural or violent, it matters not) of the present Pope, (albeit by all means both of love and money to that high dignity. But for my part, I cannot see how all the wit in the *Conclave* had been able to hinder it, if *Alexander*, on a purpose to possess some of that number whom he had invited to a Supper, by a mere mistake of his Cup-bearer, had not peyked himself, (even in the very heat of the business than almost effected) and so made frustrate the device.

But passing by this imagination of an Hereditary Popedom; let us behold it as *Elective*, and look upon the form and order observed in it. Now the Election of the Pope is made most commonly in this place, and manner. In the Popes Palace on the Hill *Vaticano*, are among other Buildings five Halls, two Chapels, and a Gallery twenty foot long. The Gallery is appointed for conference, one with the Halls are for the Cardinals Lodgings. Every Hall hath two rows of Chambers, which are purposely for the time, made of green or violet cloth. To each Cardinal is allowed four Servants, to lie in his Chamber. They that are once within, are compelled, unless they be sick, still to continue there; and such as are once out, are no more permitted to go in: left by that means, the

Cardinals should maintain intelligence with any foreign Princes. To this *Conclave* (for by this name the place of the Election is called) is but one door, to which be longed four Locks, and as many Keys. One Key is in the keeping of the Cardinals; one of the City-Bishops; one, of the *Roman Nobility*; and one, of the Master of the *Ceremonies*. There is in this door a Wicket or Hatch, which is opened only at Dinners and Suppers, whereof the Master of the *Ceremonies* keepeth a Key. At this hole the Cardinals Servants receive their meat; every dish being first diligently searched, lest any Letters should be conveyed in them. As for the Lodgings they have neither holes nor windows to give lights to; so that they make day of Wax-Candles. And left the Pope should be made by force, both the City and *Cauldars* are strongly guarded. When the Cardinals are going to Election, the privileges of the Cardinals are recited which every one sweareth to observe, in case he be chosen Pope. Then the Master of the *Ceremonies* ringing a Bell, calleth them to Mass: which ended, there is brought to every Cardinal a Chair, and therein a Scroll of all the Cardinals names. Before the Altar is set a Table covered with a Purple Cloth, whereupon is set a Chalice, and a Silver Bell, and about it six Stools, on which sit two Cardinal-Bishops, two Cardinal-Priests, and two Cardinal-Deacons. Every Cardinal writeth his voice in a piece of paper, goeth to the Altar, prayeth God to guide him in the Election, putteth his voice into the Chalice, and departeth to his Seat. The first Bishop taketh out all the Papers, and delivereth them to the first Deacon; who unfoldeth each of them, readeth (without mentioning the name of the Elector) the name of the Elector; and every Cardinal in his particular Scroll, noteth how many voices every one hath. The account being made, the first Priest having the like Scroll, pronounceth which name hath most voices: which done, the Priest ringeth a Silver Bell; at which call the Master of the *Ceremonies* bringeth in a Pan of Coals, and burneth all the little Papers, wherein the names of the Elector were written. He that hath the most voices (so that his voices exceed the proportion of two parts of three) is acknowledged Pope, and adored by the rest of the Cardinals; but if they exceed not this number, they must begin all anew. If in the space of thirty days the Election be not fully ended, then must the Cardinals be kept from fire, light, and victuals, till they are fully agreed. The Wicket, which we before mentioned, is called the *Golden Gate*, at which stand an infinite number of poor people; on whom the new Pope, having opened that Gate, betoweth his Fatherly Benediction, and remitteth to them all their sins. Then thinketh he continually on the same door with a *Golden Miter*; which whilst he is doing, workmen without break it open. The Chips, Stones, Dust, and Dirt which fallth from the Gate, whilst it is opening, are gathered and preferred as choicest Reliques; and the *Golden Miter* is usually given to that Cardinal, who is in most grace with the new Pope.

This is the ordinary way of the Popes Election, but subject to much Faction and Division amongst the Cardinals, and that in times of less deceit than the present are: Inasmuch as after the death of Pope *Clement IV.* the differences amongst them held for two years and more. Which gave occasion to one of them to say in scorn, that they must *never the roof of the house to make way for the Holy Ghost to come upon them*. And there is now much more corruption and abuse in it, than ever formerly, as buying of Voices, setting up some for sales and tearing Scrutinies, every Cardinal desiring to have a Pope of his own, or his Prince's Faction. So that

we find it written of an old *Sicilian* Cardinal, who after long absence came to the Election of a Pope, where he expected that incessant Prayers, as in times of old, should have procured some fit man to be pointed out to them for the *Vicar of Christ*: that, finding nothing but canvassing, promising rewards, and threatening for Voices in the choice; *Ad hunc madum* (faith he) *funt Pontifices Romani?* And so returned unto his Country, and saw Rome no more.

The ordinary *Temporal* Revenue of the Papacy arising out of Land-rents, Impôts upon Commodities, and sale of Offices, *Borarii* taketh to be better than two Millions of Crowns; but the extraordinary, and *Spiritual*, to be far beyond. For it is said of *Pius Quintus*, who late Pope fix years only, that he got from the *Spanish* Clergy 14 Millions. And though he was a very great Builder, which spent him a great deal of money, yet he managed his Estate, that he laid up four Millions of Crowns in the Castle of *St. Angelo*. *Sixtus V.* took from the *Jesuits* at one clap 200000 Crowns of yearly rent, (because they were too rich for men professing poverty:) and having late but five years had costed up five Millions of Gold; four of which his Successor *Gregory XIV.* spent in less than a year. Out of France they received no less than a Million of Crowns yearly. Out of England, when it was the Pope's *Papal inquisition*, and their Followers extracted no less than 60000 Marks *per annum*, which amounteth to 120000 pounds of our present Money; and was more than the Kings standing Revenue did attain unto: Yet was this in the time of King *Henry III.* before their avarice and rapine was at the height. And of late days, no longer than since the Reign of King *Henry VIII.* besides their *Pen-pence*, which was an Annual Rent upon every Chantry in the Realm, first granted to the Pope by *Offa* King of the *Mercians*, Anno 730. or thereabouts; and afterwards confirmed by *Ethelwolf* the second Monarch of England, besides their first Fruits, Tithes, and all other exactions: it was made evident that in some few years then last past, the Popes had received out of England no less than 160000 *l.* besides for the confirmation of Episcopal Elections only. By which we may conjecture what vast sums they drew hence on all other occasions. Let other Countries subject to the Pope's Authority be accordingly rated; and the total will amount to a sum incredible. Next add to this the sums of money they receive from particular persons for pardons, for dispensations with unlawful Marriages; the profits arising from Pilgrimages, from the death and Funerals of great Persons, from the Indulgences granted to Abbies and Convents; in all which the Popes have a share; and it would puzzle a good *Arithmetician* to state his *Intrado*. So truly was it said by Pope *Sixtus IV.* that a Pope could never want money, as long as he was able to hold a Pen in his hand. Yet notwithstanding, their Treasury for the most part is but low and empty. For the State they keep, because of that great horror which they have above other Princes, which is to be maintained at a great expence (for the more *worldly* the more cost, as the saying is) is very chargeable unto them; their ordinary Graces flandering them in no less than 300000 Crowns *per annum*. The large allowances which they are fain to give unto their Legates, Nuncios, and other Ministers, keep their Coffers low: the entertainment of their ordinary *Assessors* in the Courts of Christian Princes, amounting to no less than 120000 Crowns a month to each. And 3. their greedy desire to enrich their Sons or Kinsmen with the treasures of the Church (with which humour Pope *Sixtus V.* being of poor and obscure birth, was never touched) keeps them always bare. Add unto these the excessive gorgings of the Papal Veli-

ments (in which vanity every one seeketh to excel the other) especially that of their *Triple-Crown*: which must needs put them to great charges; and continual influxes of their treasure. And for an evidence of this last, we find that *Clement V.* who first transferred his See to *Avignon*, to show his gallantry to the French (probably unacquainted with the like fine fights) had his Crown thick set with *Carbuncles* and precious stones: one of which being lost by a fall from his Horse, was valued at 6000 Ducats.

As for the Forces of the Church, the Pope is able to impress as great a number of Land-souldiers out of his Estate, as any Prince or Common-wealth within the limits of Italy. *Paul III.* sent to the aid of *Charles V.* in the Wars of Germany, 12000 Foot, and 500 Horse, and yet raised his own Family to the Dukedom of Parma. *Pius V.* sent to the aid of *Charles IX.* against the *Hugonots*, 4000 Foot, and 1000 Horse; whose Forces they maintained at their own charges. And when *Clement* undertook the War of Ferrara, he raised out of his Estate 20000 Foot, and 2000 Horse in less than a month; which was more than most Princes in Europe could possibly have done. And for the valour of his Souldiers, and ability of his Commanders, they retain so much (as before was said) of their Ancients virtues; that there are thought to be many Families in the Estate of the Churchable to furnish all the Common-wealths and Princes of *Christendom*, with sufficient Captains. What and how little he is able to do by Sea, may be best seen out of the aid which he sent to the *Venetians*, at the famous Battle of Lepanto, wherein he furnished them with no more than twelve Gallies; and those too hired of the Duke of Florence: The *Venetians* in the *Adriatick*, and the *Florentines* in the *Tyber*. *St. John* has, having all the Trade, and consequently all the power in the Seas of Italy: it is true, the Pope was bound by the capitulation, to bear the fifth part of the charge of the War, and with the help of the rest of the Princes of Italy (who were to march under his colours) to set forth 50000 Foot, and 4500 Horse: which is as great an Argument of his riches and power by Land, as the other is of his weakness by Sea.

Having a purpose in the prosecution of this Work, to mention such particular Orders of Knighthood, as most Countries have given beginning to: I will here set down the Orders of such *Papal Spiritual Knights or Friars*, which his holy Benediction hath erected, and far allowance doth maintain. And for our better proceeding, we will begin with the original of a *Monastical life*; and then we will make special mention of some of the *Religious* Votaries of both Sexes. Know then, that under the seventh persecution raised against the Church by *Decius*, one *Pandus*, born at Thebes in Egypt, retired to a private Cave under the foot of a Rock, Anno 260. Here he is said to have lived one hundred years, and to have been seen of no man but one *Anthony* who was at his death. This *Anthony* was the first that followed the example of *Paul*; a man of a noble House, and one that sold all his Estate, that he might the more privately enjoy himself. He lived an hundred and fifty years, and is called the Father of the *Monks*. To these beginnings doth *Polydore Virgil* refer the original of the *Monks*, and religious Orders; the name *Monk* coming from the Greek *Μοναχ*, because of their lonely and solitary lives. Those of the Religious Orders are called *Freres*, and in English, *Friars*, from the French word *Frere*, which significeth a Brother; and that either because of their brotherly co-habitation; or else because they are *Freres in male*, Brethren in mischief and defign.

The foundation of *Monastical* life thus laid by *Paul*, and *Anthony*, the world increased so fast in *Monks* and

and *Eremites*, that it seemed necessary to prescribe them Orders. Herupon *St. Basil* gathered them together, living formerly dispersed; and is said to be the first that built them Monasteries. He is also said to have ordained the three Vows of Poverty, Chastity, and Obedience; to have instructed them in good Arts, true Religion, and in the Service of God, with Hymns, Prayers, and Watching. Of this Order there are not many in the Latine Church but good plenty of them in the Greek. They are bound to abstain from all kind of Flesh, and are called *Monks* of *St. Basil*, by the name of that Father; amongst the Writings of which Father, the Rules for these *Monasticks* are set down at large.

II. The next who prescribed Orders was *S. Augustine*, born in the year 350, who being thirty years of age, is said to have obtained a Garden without the Walls of Hippo, for private Contemplations. Twelve only he admitted into his Society, living with them in all integrity, and wearing a leather Girdle to distinguish them from *Monks*. Branches afterwards into two several and distinct Orders, the one called by the name of *Canons Regular*, whose chief House here in England was *St. John's* near *Colchester*; the other called commonly *Augustine Friars*, or *Eremites* of *St. Austin*, as others call them; Of which effect formerly in the University of Oxford, that all who took the Degree of a Master of Arts, were to submit themselves to their Oppositions in the publick Schools, and receive approbation from them; from whence the form, in *Anglicanorum professorum*, still remained among them. Their house in London stood in Broadstreet, of which a part of the Church still standeth, converted to a Church for the use of the Dutch; the rest demolished, and in the place thereof a stately Mansion erected by Sir *William Paulet* the first Marquess of *Winchester*, and Lord Treasurer of England. These make the first Order of the *Friars Medicantes*. The first Monastery of them was erected at Paris by *William Duke of Guien*, Anno 1155, and Anno 1200, they began to flourish in Italy by the favour of *John Lord of Mantua*. The other branches of this Tree are 1. the *Monks* of *St. Hieron*, 2. the *Carmelites*, 3. the *Crociati Friars*, and 4. the *Dominicans*.

1. The *Monks* of *St. Hieron* challenge their original from the worthy Father of the Church, so called. They flourish especially in Spain, where there are thirty two Monasteries of them; their chief House being *St. Bartholomew* of *Lupiana*, and have taken unto themselves the Rule of *St. Austin*. Their Robe is a white Calfskin, under a tawny Cloak.

2. The *Carmelites* so called from Mount *Carmel* in Syria, pretend their original from *Elias*, and *John the Baptist*. They only allowed at first the Rule of *St. Basil*; and were confirmed in Europe by *Honorius* the Third. They are by some called *Jacobines*, from a Church dedicated to *St. James*, where they had their first Convent; and by us, the *White Friars*, from the colour of their Habit. Their House in London stood in Fleetstreet, converted since into a dwelling of the Earls of *Kent*, besides other Tenements. Their Rule was afterwards corrected according to the Rule of *St. Austin*, by *Dona Eusebia* or *Teresa*, a Spanish Woman; who made them then also certain Constitutions, confirmed by *Pius IV.* Anno 1565.

3. The *Friars* of *St. Crois*, or *Crociati Friars*, were first ordained by *Cyriacus* Bishop of *Jerusalem*, who shewed to *Helena* the place where the Cross was hidden; hence this Order, which being almost decayed, was restored first by *Nicolas II.* and afterwards by *Innocent III.* under the Rule of *St. Austin*. Their Robe is Watcher, and in their hands they carry the Figure of the Cross. Their House in London near the Tower, still retains its name.

4. The *Dominicans*, or *Friars Preachers*, were instituted by *St. Dominick* a Spaniard. He put himself in this Order with sixteen of his Disciples, under the Rule of *St. Austin*, Anno 1206, and his device confirmed by *Honorius* the Third. Their duty is to preach the Gospel in all places unto the farthest parts of the world; which both they did, and their Successors since have done, not at home only, but in India and *America*, with great zeal and diligence. They are called by us *Black Friars*, from the colour of their Habits, and are the third Order of *Friars Medicantes*. Their House in London stood near *Radgate*, and took up the whole Precinct which is still called *Black Friars*; though nothing be remaining of it but the wry name.

III. The third that prescribed Orders was *St. Benedict*, born at *Nursia*, in the Duchy of *Spoleto*, Anno 472. He gathered the *Monks* of Italy together, gave them a Rule in Writing, caused them to be called *Benedictines*, or *Monks* of *St. Benedict*; and lived till he had seen twelve Monasteries filled with them. After his death this Order grew so populous, that there have been of it 20 Popes, 200 Cardinals, 1603 Archbishops, 4000 Bishops, besides some thousands of Canonized Saints, which is too big to brag of. Their Habit is a loose Gown of black, reaching down to the ground, with a Hood of the same, an under-garment of white woollen, and Boots on their legs. The other principal streams of this Fountain are, 1. the *Monks* of *Clugny*, 2. of *Carthusia*, 3. of *Cîteaux*, 4. the *Cistercians*.

1. The *Monks* of *Clugny* are so called from the Abbey of *Clugny* in the County of *Burgundy*, the Abbot whereof, by name *Odo*, was the first that reformed the *Benedictines*, then fallen from their former integrity; Anno 913. He obtained of the Popes and Emperours, that all such Abbies as would come under the compass of his Reformation; which were in all about two hundred) should be called the *Congregations* of *Clugny*, and that they might call their Chapters, and dispatch their common business, when and as often as they pleased.

2. The *Carthusians* were first instituted by one *Bruno*, a German Doctor of Divinity, at the Town of *Carthusia* in *Danubius*, Anno 1080. His followers, which were at the first but six, have at this day 93 Monasteries. They eat no flesh, live by couples, labour with their hands, watch, pray, and never meet together, but on Sundays. Their House in London by corruption and long tract of time got the name of the *Charter-House*, (the *Monks* themselves being commonly called the *Charter-House Monks*.) Now better known by the name of *Sutton's Hospital*; from the Hospital of the Foundation of *Richard Sutton*, a wealthy Citizen of London.

3. The *Monks* of *Cîteaux* were first instituted by one *Robert*, Abbot of *Malden*, Anno 1099, or thereabouts; who together with 21 of the most religious of his Convent, retired to *Cîteaux* in *Burgundy* Duchy; whence the name. About five years after, one *Bernard*, a great Lord, became of their Order, who built and repaired for them 160 Abbies. Their Robe is a white Calfskin, girt with a Girdle of wool the red back. They were by us called *White Monks*; and the common *Benedictines*, *Black Monks*; both from the colour of their Habits.

4. The *Cistercians* owe their original to *Peter de Moray* a *Samarie*, born Anno 1250, who being afterwards for his sanctity chose Pope, was called *Celidine V.* He reformed the *Benedictines*, then much degenerated; and had his Order confirmed by *Gregory XI.* There are at this present 124 Monasteries of them.

IV. The fourth and last that prescribed new Orders to the *Monasticks*, was *St. Francis* of *Assis* in the Duchy of

of *Spoleto*. He fell from Merchandize, which was his first Profession, unto the study of Religion, going barefoot, and behaving himself very penitently: whereupon, great force of Disciples following him, he gave them in writing, by which they are bound to profess absolute beggary, and are not permitted to carry any money about them, or more victuals than will for the present serve themselves and their Brethren. This they observe punctually in their own persons, but give themselves leave to have a Boy with them, to do both without scruple. St. Francis desired they should be called *Minors*, to shew their humility; but they are generally called *Franciscans*, by the name of their Founder. By the French, called *Cordeliers*, because of the knotty Cord which they wear about their neck instead of a Girdle; by us, the *Gray-Friers*, from the colour of their upper Garment. Their Houle in London stood near *Newgate*, of which the Church, the Cloysters, and some other the publick Offices, do still stand entire; the whole converted to an Hospital for poor Children by King *Edward VI.* in the latter end of his Reign, now best known by the name of *Christ-Church*. Their Rule and Order was confirmed by *Innocent III.* Anno 1212, and is the fourth and last of the *Friers Mendicants*, or *begging-Friers*. The other principal Children of his Father, are the *Observants* and the *Capuchins*.

1. The *Friers Minors*, were first founded by *Franciscus de Pado*, a *Neapolitan*, Anno 150, according to a correct copy of the Rule of St. Francis of *Affis*. His followers keep always a true Lenten fast, unless in case of sickness. Their Robe is a dark tawny, an hood of the same hanging to their Girdles.

2. The *Capuchins*, (so called from their Cowl or Capuchin) were ordained by one *Matthew Bassi* of *Ancona*. Frier *Lewis* his Companion, obtained for them of the Pope, the Habit and Rule of St. Francis, Anno 1526. In the space of 42 years they increased to 2240 Allocations, had 222 Monasteries, and were divided into 15 Provinces. They are bound by their Rule to spend their time in prayer, and are generally thought to be the devoutest of all the Orders *Monastical*.

I shall now speak of the *Jeſuites* but that I cannot bring them under any Rule, as being a people neither simply Lay nor Priests, nor merely secular nor regular, but altogether. They were founded by *Ignatius Loyola*, born in *Navarre*, who being in his youth addicted to the Wars, was lamed in one of his Legs: after which main betaking himself to the study of Religion, he framed this Order, consisting at the first of Ten only. *Paul III.* did confirm it, Anno 1540, confining the number within sixty: which he after enlarged ad infinitum. They are now the greatest Politicians, founders of Scholars, and chiefest upholders of the *Romish* See: so that the only way to re-establish the *Romish* Religion in any Land, is to plant a College of *Jeſuites* in it. To the three Vows of Poverty, Obedience, and Chastity, common to all other Orders, *Ignatius* at the Institution of this, added the Vow of *Mission*: whereby his Followers are bound to obey their General, or the Pope, without demanding any reason, in all dangerous and hazardous attempts whatsoever, whether it be undertaking some tedious voyage, for the propagation of the *Romish* Religion, or the massacring of any Prince whose life is a hindrance to their proceedings. It is reported, that a *Jeſuit* being in the midst of his Mats, which they call the Sacrifice of the Altar, was cut for by *Ignatius*; to whom leaving off his Mats, he went immediately. *Ignatius* having no business wherein to employ him, told him, he only sent for him to try his obedience; and withal privately added, that Obedience is better than Sacrifice: and

this is called the blind obedience of the *Jeſuites*. To leave them then as they are, the greatest disturbers of the quiet of Europe, I have heard a worthy Gentleman, now with God, say many times, that till the *Jeſuites* were taken from the Church of Rome, and the pious *Parian* (or *Presbyterian*) Preachers out of the Churches of Great Britain, he thought there would never be any peace in *Chriſtendom*; with what a true preſaging Spirit, the event hath shewed.

Corrivals with the *Jeſuites* in power and learning, and almost coetaneous in point of time, are the *Oratorians*, founded by *Philip Neri* a *Florentine*, Anno 1564. Who marking the great decay which the *Jeſuites* began to have, and the danger which the Church might run, if that Order were not equally balanced by some other of as much ability; first established this, consulting altogether of Priests; that by their diligence in preaching of the lives of the Saints, and other heads of prudential and moral duties, they might divert the torrent of the peoples affection from the brood of *Ignatius*. The renowned Cardinal *Cesar Baronius*, *Francis Borgia*, afterwards Bishop of *Avignon* in France, and one *Alexander Fidelis*, were the three first whom he admitted to his Rule: initiated in S. Hieron's Church at Rome by Pope *Pius IV.* with great zeal and cheerfulness; to whom, as to some of his Predecessors, the power and practices of the *Jeſuites* were become suspicious. They increased speedily (being countenanced on so good grounds) to great numbers, and a proportionable Revenue, as much esteemed of for their knowledge in Ecclesiastical History, and Practical Divinity, as the others for Philosophy, Tongues, and the study of Controversies; and more accepted of in most places, because not usually intermeddling in affairs of State. So very looked on by the Popes, that the *Jeſuites* could not obtain the Canonization of their *Ignatius*, till the *Oratorians* were grown rich enough to celebrate that of their *Neri* also: which happened in the short Popedom of *Gregory XV.* Anno 1622.

To conclude this discourse of Monks and Friers, I will say somewhat of the severest kind of *Recluse*, which is the *Anachorite*, or *Anchore*, so called from *anexochos*, because they use to live retired from company. They are kept in a close place, where they must dig their Graves with their nails; badly clad, and worse dieted: not to be pitied for all that, because their restraint of liberty is voluntary; yet to be lorrowed for in this, that after such an earthly Purgatory, they shall find instead of an *Engle, bone serve*, a *Quis quaerit hoc de maſtulo vultuſu*?

But concerning these Orders of Monks and Friers, certain it is, that at their first institution they were a People much revered for their holy life; as men that for Christs sake had abandoned all their Pomps and Vanities of the World. And questionless they were then a people altogether mortified, and who by their very aspects would gain upon the affection of the hardest hearts; inasmuch that not only many men, but great personages also did desire to be buried in a Frier's weeds as Francis the Second Marquess of Mantua, *Albertus Pius* another Prince of Italy, *Isabel* the renowned Queen of Castile and Aragon, Wife of *Ferdinand* the Catholic; and in late times the great Scholar *Christopher Longinus*. But as *Flam* faith of the Civil Wars between *Cesar* and *Pompey*, *Caſa huius belli, cadem oia omnia, nimia ſit Pompey*; we may say also of these Friers. The greatness of their wealth, which many on a superstitious devotion had bequeathed unto them, brought them first to neglect of their former devout and religious carriage; next to a wretchedness of their credits, and consequently into

into contempt; so that there was not a people under Heaven that was more infamous in themselves, or more scornfully abused by others. Hence the vulgar sayings of the people, that *Friers wear Croſſes on their breasts, because they have none in their hearts*; and that, when a Frier receives the *Razor*, the Devil entreth into him; and the like. Nay, Sir Thomas More, who lost his head in the Pope's quarrel, ticks not in his *Utopia*, to call them *Errone Maximos*; and would have them comprehended within the Statutes of Vagabonds and sturdy Beggars. Now to shew both the humours of Respect and Contempt, used severally to these Monks and Friers, as men often affected; there goeth a Tale, how the Lady *Moor*, Sir Thomas his Wife, hindring by chance a Frier's Girdle, shewed it to her Husband with great joy, saying, Behold Sir Thomas, a step towards Heaven: whereunto with a scornful laugh he returneth this answer, that he feared such step would not bring her to step higher. And as for their retired and solitary course of life, so it is that many Kings, especially of the Saxons in the time of their *Hap-roys*, have abandoned their Scepters to enjoy it: And *Barley* in his *Argenis*, under the person of *Aeneas*, hath defended it in his Princes, as have cloistered themselves to enjoy the solitude of a Convent. Which notwithstanding, Philosophers have defined a man to be *ζῶον πολιτικόν*, a Creature principally made for civil conversation; the Poets say, *Natiſſimū indignū per quem non uſuſque alter*, that he is dedicated to the World, who leaveth no way to society behind him: and the Jews, which live in great numbers even in Rome it self, abhor this unsociable kind of living, and prefer a civil sociableness much before it; as to Nature more agreeable, to Man more profitable, and consequently to God more acceptable. And having spoken thus much of the Monks and Friers, descend we now unto the Nuns.

And indeed I should much wrong the Friers, if I should deprive them of the company of their dearest *Virgins*, and therefore take somewhat of them also. Called anciently *Moniales* from the Greek word *Μῆναι*, from their living alone; whence we also had the names of *Monks* and *Monasteries*: in the middle times called *Nuns*, from *Nunna* an Egyptian word, (for Egypt in old times was not meanly furnished with such *Armenies*) which also signifieth a solitary and lonely life. A word in some of the barbarous *Latines* very much in use. *Scho-lastica* the Sister of St. *Benedict*, was the first who collected them into Companies, and prescribed them Rules. They are shamed as Monks are, and vow (as they do) perpetual Poverty and Virginity. Which last how well they keep, let *Clementis* tell us: who telleth us, that *Pactula* volare idem est ac *publice eam ad ſortandum exponere*: to veil a Nun, and prostitute her for a common Harlot, were terms equivalent. And one *Robinson*, who lived for a time in the English Nunnery at *Lisbon*, hath told us, that he found an hole in the Garden-wall covered over with Mortar, in which were hidden the bones of many newborn children, which their unnatural Mothers had murdered and thrown in there. But of these I will instance only in two Orders, viz. that of St. *Clare*, as being the strictest; and that of St. *Briget* which enjoyeth most liberty.

1. St. *Clare* was a Knights Daughter of *Affis*, where St. Francis was born, with whom life was contemporary, and with whose austere life she was so affected, that she forsook her Fathers house, and followed him. Having learned her *Livie* of that Frier-monger, she devoted an Order of Religious Women, and had it confirmed by Pope *Honorius III.* Anno 1225. Her followers vow Poverty and Virginity, as before was said, go barefoot, feed meanly, and are more straitened in their course of

life, than those of any other Order. By their Foundress, out of a desire to conform the better to the Rule and Order of St. Francis, they were called *Minorites*, or *Minors*, and gave name to the place near the Tower-hill in London, where they had their Houle, called from them, the *Minorites*.

2. St. *Briget* was a Queen of *Switzerland*, and coming to Rome on devotion, obtained of Pope *Urban III.* Anno 1370, or thereabouts, that Friers and Nuns might in some places live together. For being a Woman, and a Widow, the knew best (as it seemeth) what was good for both Sexes; and to devised such a Rule, as conformed both. But little needed this co-habitation or living together, under the shelter of the same Roof. For they had formerly been joyed in carnal affections, though parted by Walls; neither were the Visitation of the Friers to traitors, but that the Nuns did fruitfully by them. These Friers and Nuns though they lived under the same Roof, are prohibited from coming to one another, but on special occasions: the Foundress for ordering it, that the Nuns should lie in the upper Rooms, and the Friers in the lower. The Confessor also is denied access into their Chambers, but thieveth them through an Iron Grate, by which his Lodging is parted from the Lady *Abbeſſe*'s. And herein lieth the Mystery of *Iniquity*. For *Robinson*, when before I named, tells us, that at the time of his service in the English Nunnery at *Lisbon*, he was shewed a way by which this uncharitable Grate, which seemed to keep the Friers, from the company of their female friends, might be, and was on such occasions usually removed, and the access made free and open to each others Beds. Which if it be truly said of these, may be suspected also in all the rest of this Order, and in most also of the others.

And now I return unto my Friers, which besides the maintenance which by their Founders is allotted for their present subsistence; are kept in a continual hope and possibility of attaining to the highest honours which that Church can give, if they continue constant in their due obedience. For there is not one of them which hopeth not to be the Prior of his Convent; 2. Provincial of his Order, in that Country where he liveth; 3. and then the General of this Order. Next none more likely than the Generals to be chosen Cardinals, and out of the Cardinals one of necessity must be chosen (and why not he, as well as any of the Pack?) to be Pope of Rome. So first and twelveth a Companion of man is Hope, that being the last thing which leaves him, it makes all toys superfluous, all difficulties conquerable.

The Popedom containeth  
Archbishops 44. Bishops 57.

## The Signeury of VENICE.

North of the Lands of the Church from *Romandolia* to the *Alps*, lie the Italian Provinces of the State of *VENICE*, bounded upon the South with the Territory of *Ferrara*, and the rest of *Romandolia*; on the West, with the Dukedom of *Milain*; on the North, with the main body of the *Alps*; and on the East, with the *Adriatic* and the River *Adria*, by which last parted from *Liburnia* a *Salutamin* Province. Besides which, it commands a great part of *Dalmatia*, together with the Islands of *Candy*, *Corsica*, *Cephallenia*, *Ithaca*, *Zant*, *Cibiera*, and certain others of less note. The length of their Dominions by Sea and Land extending above a thousand Miles, but the breadth not answerable.

The nature of the soil, and the principal Rivers which refresh it, we shall see anon in the description of the Provinces into which it is divided. According to which Provinces and the chief Cities of them, the Character of the people may best be taken: it being said Proverbially by the *Italians*, that the *Venetians* themselves are stately, crafty, and greedy; the *Venotians* studious and faithful; the *Paduani* fierce; the *Venotians* eager on revenge; those of *Friuli*, grateful, but incontinent; those of *Hilria*, neither long lived, nor of very great courage. That in the conduct of a War, those of *Venice* bring Silver; those of *Trevizi*, Swords; that the *Brescians* are fit to dig in Trenches; those of *Bergamo* lay Ambushes; those of *Padua* to manage Horses. And of the Women it is said, that those of *Crema* are deceitful; those of *Venice* incontinent; those of *Venezia* constant; those of *Venona* gracious; those of *Trevizi* jealous; those of *Brescia* diligent, and the *Bergamasque* crafty.

But not to lay longer in these proverbial characters (though they carry a great deal of truth in them) certain it is, that the *Venetians* themselves speak very little at the Table, very few where they have authority, and many times in excess. And yet such is the constant temper of their Government, and their impartiality in doing justice, that they are very well obeyed, and generally well beloved of all their Subjects; notwithstanding the heavy prefaces which are laid upon them; as well in *Italy* as without. Elected in former times good Soldiers both by Sea and Land, maintaining Wars continually with the *Turks* in *Palestine*; the Emperours of *Constantinople*, in *Greece* it fell; the *Genoese* by Sea, and their Neighbours of *Italy* in this Continent. But of late times they have more studied to preserve, than enlarge their Dominions; and that too rather by expense of money, than the loss of blood, and by wit rather than by valour. So fortunate in this last kind of practice, that *Malabius* observed of them in his time, that *whenever they lost by War, they recovered by Treaty*. A pregnant evidence whereof we shall see anon.

To proceed now to the description of such of the Provinces and Estates of this Common-wealth, as pass under the account of *Italy*, they are these that follow, that is to say, 1. *Marca Treviziana*, 2. *Friuli*, 3. *Hilria*, 4. the *Italian* Isles of the *Adriatick*; of which now in orders leaving the other Members of this Estate to be considered in their proper places.

1. *MARKA TREVIGIANA* is bounded on the South with the River *Adige*, and the most Northern branch of the *Po*, which from some Lime-kilns near adjoining, they now call *Fornace*, by which parted from the Territory of *Ferrara* and the rest of *Romagna*; on the West, with the Rivers *Mincio* and *Sarca*, and the Lake of *Benacus*, now called *Lago de Garda*; from a little Town of that name, adjoining; by which parted from the Duchy of *Millan* on the East, with *Friuli*, and the Gulf of *Venice*; and on the North with the *Alpes* which divide it from *Tirol*, a Province of *Germany*. In the time of great *Augustus Cæsar*, this Tract together with *Friuli* the next neighbouring Province had the name of *Venetia*, from the *Veneti*, the old Inhabitants heretofore; and by that name made one of those eleven Regions, into which he then divided *Italy*. How it obtained this new name we shall see anon.

The principal Rivers of this Tract are, 1. *Brenta*, called anciently *Mædacus Major*, which rising in the *Alpes* not far from *Trent*, and watering the Fields of *Padua*, passeth into the Sea, near the City of *Venice*, making up the famous Haven of *Malanuco*. 2. *Bacillo*, called anciently *Medacus Minor*, which riseth also in the *Alpes*, and

passing by *Venezia*, emptieth it self into the *Brenta*. And 3. *Adige*, now called *Adige*, which springeth also out of the *Alpes* not far from *Trent*, and having taken many lesser streams into its channel, passeth by *Venona*, and after is divided into two great branches; whereof the one falls into the Sea, the other leaveth it self in the midst of the Marishes.

The chief Cities of it are, 1. *Venezia*, one of the twelve Cities built by the *Tuscani*, or *Hetrurians* on this side of the *Apennine*; pleasantly seated on the banks of the River *Bacillo*, and another navigable water called *Reteo* (formerly *Erato*). The Territory of the City not more large than fruitful, abounding with all sort of fruits, and yielding an excellent kind of Wine, which from thence is vendued unto *Venice*. The buildings of it for the most part of polished stone, whereof the Fields adjoining afford special Quarries; and the Inhabitants generally an industrious people, making a great quantity of Silks, with which they do adorn themselves, and supply their Neighbours. 2. *Trevizi*, seated on the Banks of the River *Silva*, (which runneth through the middle of it) in the midst of a large and spacious plain abounding even to admiration, with most excellent Wheat, and all other Necessaries. A City of no ancient name, not mentioned by *Pliny*, nor others of the old Geographers; but of sufficient note in the later times, for being the Residence or Seat of those Provincial Governors (Marquesses they are sometimes called) which the *Lombardian* Kings sent hither to defend their Borders. Hence it gave name to all the Country, in *Latine* called *Marca Treviziana*, or *Tarvisana*, as some call it: taken by the *Venetians*, and lost again divers times; but was finally conquered Anno 1380, or thereabout; *Antonia Veneti* being Duke of *Venice*. 3. *Padua*, formerly called *Patavinum*, built by *Antenor*, whose Tomb is still here to be shewn. From him named *Antenor*, as some report, but after called *Patavinum* quasi *Padavinum*, from its nearness to the River *Po*, and the Fens thereof. Situate in so deleitable and sweet a soil, that *Confutius Palseologus* was used to say, that did not the authority of the Scriptures persuade him otherwise, he should look for *Paradise* no where else, than in *persiana* *Patavinam* *amantem*, amongst the flourishing and delightful sweetmeets of the *Paduana* field. A Town of great esteem in the time of the *Romans*, who much resorted to the same; and much frequented at the present for the University here established Anno 1220, famous for Physicians, who have here a Garden of *Similes*; of good name also for the birth of *Livy* the Historian, *Julius Paulus* a Civil Lawyer his Contemporary, *L. Ammius Stella*, and *C. Valerius Flaccus*, two famous Poets celebrated by *Martial*; and in the later times, of *Marsilius Patavinus* a Minorite Frier, who wrote so learnedly in behalf of the Emperor, against the Pope, *Fr. Zabarella* the Civilian, *Mic. Savonarola* the Physician, *Maginus* the Geographer, and divers others. It was much renowned in former times for the humanity of the Men, and chastity of the Women; which last eminent and famous, that ascribe to one of *Padua*, grew into a Proverb. Hereto alluded *Lucretius*, speaking of his lascivious Writings;

*Tu quoque, nequitia nostri ludisti libelli,  
Vix puerula legeris, sit Patavina tect.*

Young Maids my wanton lines will long to see,  
And read them o'er, though *Patavians* they be.

The City after much vicissitude of Fortune, fell into the power of the *Venetians*, with all her Territories, being in compass one hundred and eighty miles, An. 1409.

Michel

*Michel Steno* then Duke; *Venezia* being won about the same time also. 4. *Brescia*, the second City for bigness and beauty in all *Lombardy*. It is also the seat of an Archbishop, who is an Earl, a Marquess, and a Duke. Her Territories are in length one hundred, in breadth fifty Miles; which the Citizens, together with their Freedom, bought of *Otho* the *Germanus* Emperour, but lost it to *Philip Maria Visconti*, Duke of *Millan*, Anno 1421. to whom they yielded upon certain conditions; which being broken by the Duke, they gave themselves unto the Signeys of *Venice*, An. 1434. *Francis Egisari* being then Duke; under whom it continueth to this day. The City is very populous, the air found and good, the soil exceeding plentiful of Corn, Wine, and Fruits; and having in it Mines both of Iron and Copper, to the great enriching of the people. It was anciently the chief of the *Comitani*, who coming out of *Gaul*, drove the *Tuscani* hence, and seated themselves in their habitations, till finally conquered by the *Romans*. It is situate on a little River called *Garcia*, which runneth through the middle of it; and is said to contain at this time 50000 Inhabitants. 5. *Venona*, so called (as some conceit it) quasi *vere mas*; or as others, quasi *venonia*, because built by *Vrennus*; both false and frivolous alike. It is situate on the Banks of the River *Adige*, and is counted the first City of the second rank of the Cities of *Italy*: proud in the birth of *Catullus*, a well-known Poet; and in an Amphitheatre (a remainder of the *Roman* greatness) able to contain 80000 persons. The Territories hereof are sixty miles in length, forty miles in breadth, enriched with many medicinal Herbs, (especially on Mount *Baldus*, on the Hill thence) where the Physicians go a Simpling. 6. *Bellunum*, or *Cladivacum*, as some Writers call it, two days march from *Venona*, now a small Borough named *Labiatis*, and never of any great note when it was at the best. Remarkable in the *Roman* Stories for the seat here given by the *Vitellians* unto *Otho's* Army; and after by *Vespasian's* Forces unto those of *Vitellius*. By *Tacitus* called in that regard *duabus Romanis cladibus notum & insuavis Vicus*. 7. *Crema*, a Town of no great Antiquity, but situate in a wealthy soil, well peopled, and as well built for the private Edifices: so strongly fortified, that it is reckoned the chief Bulwark of the Signeys of *Venice*, against the *Millanses*, on the borders of which State it standeth. First built about the year 970, by some remnants of the *Antropomorphites*, who on the delivition of *Parasius* (a Town of *Lombardy*) where before they lived, abjured their Heresie, and were permitted to build here. Honoured in succeeding times with a See Episcopal; and either the birth-place, or pretirement of *John Cremonensis*, a *Roman* Cardinal. Who being by Pope *Honorius* sent into England, Anno 1250, divorced the Clergy-men from Marriage; and having in a Convocation of the Clergy, called for that purpose, highly advanced the honour of a single life, and shewed the inconvenience and unfitness of Marriage, in men preferred unto Holy Orders; was the night following (to the great discredit both of his cause and person) taken in Adultery. 8. *Bergamo*, a right ancient Town, but very well built, seated upon the side of an Hill, and having a very large and beautiful Suburbs; the Territory whereof hath many rough and craggy Mountains the spurs and excursions of the *Alpes*; but withal many rich and delightful Vallies intermingled with them. The people of this City and Country are said to speak the coarsest language of any in *Italy*: but to have as fine Wits as the best. Places of more intricate note are, 1. *Este*, (*Astus* in most *Latine* Writers) whence came the Family *D'Este*, late Dukes of *Ferrara*. 2. *Livizium*, a strong Garrison on the borders of *Montana*; as 3. *Gastel-*

*Franco* is towards *Ferrara*; and 4. *Servato*, of most remarkable for the great quantity of Armour which is therein made. 5. *Feltri*, which still preserves its name of *Feltria*; most memorable at the present for a Bishopric. 6. *Alitina*, a Bishops See also, but destroyed and ruined.

This Province being anciently a part of the *Cisalpine Gaul*, fell to the power of the *Romans* at the end of the second *Punic* War; and being conquered by the *Romans*, did continue theirs, till first the *Gauls*, and afterwards the *Lombards* became Masters of it. Afterwards in the fall of the Kingdom of *Lombardy*, it fell first unto the *French*, and after to the *German Empire*; from which by many mean conveyances, it came at last to *Ottocarius*, King of *Bohemia* and Duke of *Austria*, who bought the same of *Ulricus* the last Duke of *Carinthia*: whose Predecessor probably had been a *Lized* heretofore, from the time that *Henry* Son of *Engelbert*, Prince of *Hilria*, adopted by *Henry* of *Ephezia* Duke of *Carinthia*, or *Karnten*, succeeded him in that Estate. Upon a reconciliation made betwixt this *Ottocarius* and *Rodolphus* of *Halsburg* (then Emperour of *Germany*) it was agreed (together with *Austria* it self) unto the Patrimony of that Family, sold by Duke *Leopold IX.* to the *Cararra's*, then Lords of *Padua*; in ruin of whole Estate and Family, it fell (together with that City) into the power of the *Venetians*, who fill hold the same.

2. *FRUOLI* hath on the East the River *Fornio*, which parcel it from *Hilria*; on the West, *Marca Treviziana*, and a branch of the *Alpes*; on the North, the main body of the *Alpes*, which divide it from *Germany*; and on the South, the *Adriatick* Sea, or Gulf of *Venice*.

It is called *Forum Julii* in the *Latine* of which that of *Friuli* is derived; from *Julius Cæsar*, who conducting his Armies this way, built the Town so named; and from that march of his, the *Alpes* adjoining, as it is thought, had the name of *Julia*. By some Writers of the middle times it is called *Regio Aquileensis*, as appertaining for the most part, by the gift of the Emperours *Otho* and *Conradus*, to the Church, or Patriarchate of *Aquileia*; and by the common people of *Venice* for the most part, *Patris*, or the Country, because from these parts they derive their first Original. In which regard part of the Region of *Venetia* as before was said.

The Country is in a manner square, each side fifty miles; watered with the Rivers of 1. *Hydra*, heretofore of no small fame for the Silver Mines; 2. *Tilicentum*, rising from the *Alpes*, and navigable towards the latter end of its course; but broken into many Channels (even at least in number) which makes it not so Navigable as it would be otherwise; most of these Channels being shallow, and easily dried, but (twice and violent withal, by reason of their fall from the neighbouring Hills. 3. *Natisio*, neighboured by the famous City of *Aquileia*. 4. *Tamurus*, mentioned in the first of the *Æneids*, which rising out of the *Alpes*, and running under ground for the space of 330 furlongs, breaketh out again; and being branched into nine Channels, falleth into the Gulf or Bay of *Trieste*. By *Niger* it is now called *Laricina*; but by *Leander* named *Timavo*. The Soil sufficiently fruitful, except towards the *Alpes*, and yielding a very pleasant Wine, which *Pliny* did prefer before any in *Italy*.

Towns herein of most note and consequence, 1. *Aquileia*, or *Aquilegia*, as some call it, made the Metropolis first of the Province of *Hilria* and *Venetia*, by the Emperour *Antoninus*; as afterwards of the whole Dioceses of *Italy*, by the Western Emperours. Honoured in that regard with the seat of the *Presidius Pretoris*, or of his *Vicarius* or Lieutenant: translated from *Millan* to this City, as the



the Gate of *Italy*, by which the barbarous Nations were to make their entrance; never so like to be shut out, as by the power and presence of so great an Officer. After this time, and on this occasion, the Bishop hereof had the title of Patriarch. And here the Patriarchal See had not long continued; when the City was destroyed by *Attila*, that furious Hun; 37000 of the Citizens being slain with the Sword, the rest removing to some places of more safe abode. Re-edified afterwards by *Narsetes*, but never able to recover its former lustre. After which time fearing the like miseries from the hands of the *Lombards*, the Patriarchal See was removed to *Venice*; as the safer place, and seated in the Isle of *Grada*; yet so, that the succeeding Bishops of *Aquileia* (for they stayed at *Venice* only till the times were quiet) do still retain the dignity and name of *Patriarchs*, as well as those of *Grada*, and with better reason. For besides the honour which it had in being made the seat of the *Presbyter* *Petrus*; it had been formerly more honoured with the residence of *Augustus Caesar*, who here kept his Court; whence it had the name of *Roma altera*, or a second *Rome*; and of *Tiberius* who lived here, before his coming to the Empire. As for the City itself, it is situate on the River *Natisso*, but not well inhabited at the present; partly because of the ill Air, partly by the removal of the Patriarch thence, drawn by the *Venetians* of late times, for good reasons of State, to fix his dwelling in their City, and drawing after him a great resort of Bishops, and others of the Clergy of his Jurisdiction, principally by the neighbourhood of *Venice*, attracting all Trade unto it. Most memorable in old story for enduring that famous Siege against *Maximianus*, for the safety of the Empire, of *Rome*; and her Emperours *Maximus*, and *Balbinus*. In whose cause the Citizens hereof were so resolutely faithful, that they braved the women (willing to lose that invaluable ornament of their Sex, for the common good) of the hair of their heads to make Bowstrings of. Nor did this pious constancy of theirs want a happy issue. For they beheld the Tyrant headless under their walls (slain by the hands of his own Soldiers) and saw the Metropolis of the World preserved by their loyalty. And yet the matter was not ended with the death of the Tyrant, the Soldiers and people laying hands on his Children also, and putting all the Sword. On which cruelty being asked the reason, they returned this answer, *That not a Whelp was to be spared of Juilianus*; none of the brood of such a Cur; or in the language of the Author, *Pessimi Canis Catulæ*, none of the progeny of *2. Triste*, of old called *Tergilinus*, from whence a spacious Bay adjoining had anciently the name of *Sinus Tergilinus*, and is now called *Golfo di Trieste*. The Bay replenished principally with the water of the River *Timavus*, which with many streams doth fall into, and is therefore by the Inhabitants of that Gulf for Bay called *Pont Maris*; as *Polybius* in *Strabo* telleth us. The Town of greater Antiquity than observation, mentioned by *Pliny*, and some others of the Ancient Writers, but not else considerable. 3. *Monfalcon*, famous for its medicinal herbs. 4. *Porto Grinare*, of old called *Portus Romanus*, an Haven-Town, as the name importeth. 5. *Concordia*, in former times of no small esteem; but to be demolished by *Attila* the Hun, that it is now nothing but a ruin. The people hereof basking themselves to the Islands in the Marishes of *Venice*, where they planted in *Turcodan*, *Moriana*, *Constatiana*, and some others were adjoining to them of which more hereafter. 6. *Quina*, or *Uden*, the fairest and largest at this time of all the Province, containing about five miles in compass, and about 15000 Inhabitants. Ho-

noured for a time with the Patriarchal See, removed higher from *Aquileia*, at some Siege thereof: of which though long ago deprived, yet it is still the ordinary Seat of the Procurator or Principal Governour, sent from *Venice* thither. 7. *Palma*, a new Town, as being built by the *Venetians* no longer since than their year 1839. but held to be the best fortified of any in *Italy*. 8. *Cividad de Austria*, first built by *Julius Caesar*, in some of his marches towards *Gaul* by whom it was called *Juliana*, after *Forum Julii*, whence the name of *Friuli* (*Diffrictus Fori Julij*), as the *Latins* call it; came unto the Province. But being taken and repaired by some Princes of the *Austrian* Family (on the borders of whose Estate it standeth) it got this new name of *Cividad de Austria*.

This Province anciently was the Seat of the *Eugenii*, inhabiting this tract and part of *Marchia Trevigiana*. But those being vanquished by the *Venti*; and the *Venti* by the *Cisalpine Gauls*, it became finally subject to the State of *Rome*, and in the fall of that great Empire was one of the four Dukedoms founded by the *Lombards*, when they conquered *Italy*; the other three being *Turin*, *Benevento*, and *Spoleto*. The Family of the *Berengarii* were once Dukes hereof; three of which were of special fame, and two of them Competitors for the Kingdom of *Italy*. But this Family being supplanted by the Emperor *Otto*, he gave a great part of the Country to the Church of *Aquileia*; to which almost all the rest was added by the Emperor *Conrad*; yet so that there were divers petit Lords, who had good Estates in it; the name of Duke remaining unto some of the ancient race. One of which named *Luitprand*, envying to the *Venetians* their increase of Dominion, made War against them: which ended in the loss of his Country. *Amatus* 1020, or thereabout; ever since subject to that State: the Patriarch of *Aquileia* whose authority in this Country began to decline, in the rising of the State of *Venice*; considering all his interest also to that powerful *Signory* as better able to defend it against all Pretenders, *Anno* 1420. But notwithstanding this suzerainty, the Patriarch still had large Possessions and Revenues here, and still retains his Jurisdiction over the Prelates of this Country, and those of *Hiria* and *Trevigiana* (20 in all, or thereabout) six only which are those of the Isles of *Venice*, continuing at this day under him of *Grada*.

*HISTORIA* is invironed on the East, West, and South, with the *Adriatick*, in the manner of a Demy-*Island*, or *Peninsula*, save where it toucheth on *Friuli*; and on the North is parted from *Carinthia*, with the *Alpes* of *Germany*. The Country very woody, and full of quires, affording materials to *Venice*, both for Ships and Houses; not comparable for fertility to the rest of *Italy*; and of air to sickly and unwholesome, that the *Venetians* were compelled to hire people to dwell there, and afterwards to grant them many large immunities. It is two hundred miles in compass, watered with the River of 1. *Fornia*, which they now call *Risano*. 2. *Nanpura*, called at this day *Quicero*; and 3. *Liburnia*, which runneth into the Gulf of *Quicero*, called anciently *Sinus Flanavius*, and divides this Country from *Liburnia*, a *Sclavonian* Province.

The chief Towns of it are, 1. *Cape de Trieste*, called in *Pliny's* time *Ægide*; and being afterwards repaired by the Emperor *Vespasian* was called *Justynopolis*. But being taken and destroyed by the *Grecs*, and rebuilt again, it took the name of *Caput Hiriæ*, or *Cape d' Hiriæ*; because the principal of the Province and Bishops See. Of this See was *Venerius* Bishop, about the time of *Luther's* first preaching in *Germany*; who with *Antonio de Dominis* Archbishop of *Spalato*, were of most note of any of these

these parts of the world, that fell off from the Church of *Rome* to the *Protestant* party, and therefore shall be spoken of in more particulars; *Spalato* in his proper place; and *Venerius* here. Being a man of great industry, and eminent parts, he was by many of the Popes employed in *Germany* against *Luther*. In which negotiation he behaved himself with such dexterity, and gave such content unto the Pope, that *Paul 3. An. 1541.* intended to have made him *Cardinal*; had not some who envied him that honour, accused him of *Lutheranism*. To purge himself he began to write a Book, entituled, *Against the Apostates of Germany*, in the pursuit whereof, pondering of *Luther's* reasons he became of his opinion; which being known, he was driven from *Justynopolis*. He submitted himself and his cause to the Fathers at *Trent*, but could not get a hearing. Thence he went to the D. of *Mantua*, from him to the State of *Venice*; but no where finding protection, he retired unto the *Crispini*, and there preached; till *Crispian*, Duke of *Wittenberg*, *Anno 1548.* placed him in his University of *Tubing*, and there allowed him a sufficiency of maintenance. It was built by *Julianus* (as before) the Nephew of *Justinian* the Emperor, as a Fortless against the incursions of the barbarous people, 2. *Fela*, built by the *Calabrians*, at their first coming thither, the name in their Language importing as much as the place of banishment. It was after made a *Roman* Colony, and called *Pictus Julia*; but being first destroyed by *Attila*, after by the *Genoese*, it recovered the old name again; and still continueth with the title of a See Episcopall. It abuteth upon *Sinus Flanavius*, or the Gulf of *Quicero*. 3. *Paruzze*. 4. *Plinus*, 5. *Cita Nova*, all of them seated in the Midland, and not much observable, but that *Paruzze*, and *Cita Nova* are Episcopal Sees: this last being anciently called *Emonia*, whence the Bishop hath the name of *Emmonius*. 6. *Rovigno*, in a little Island, and mounted on an high hill, not unfruitful in Olives, beautified with a convenient Port, and that defended also by a very strong Cavalie. The Town but poor, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of *Venice*, from which distant not above twenty miles; inhabited for the most part by Mariners, and skilful Pilots, hired by such ships as are bound for *Venice*, to conduct them safely over the Bars of *Malinco*. The Country adjoining mountainous and somewhat wild; but those mountains covered on the outside with Physical Simples; and yielding many Quarries of most excellent Marble, which do adorn the *Venetian* Palaces.

It is recorded that the *Hiriani* were a people of *Colchis*, who being sent by King *Æetes* to pursue *Jafon* and the *Argonauts*, were driven up this Gulf; and either for fear of the Kings anger, or not daring to venture their weak Vessel to so long a voyage, as from hence to *Colchis* whence they came; stayed in this Country. It was after that time called *Lipigia*, from *Lipis* an *Æolian*, who first planted here, and took the name of *Hiria* from the *Hiri*, a people on the banks of *Jster*, or *Danubius*; who made up a considerable part of this plantation. Siding with the *Ætolians* in their Wars against the *Romans*, and making many inroads and excursions on them; they were invaded first by *Mithridates*, without leave of the Senate; and him they charged with such a fury, that they beat him out of this Camp. Where finding plenty of Wine, and all store of Provisions, they fell roundly to it; till *Mithridates* having rallied his men again, charged them in their Camps, and killed 8000 in the place; their miserable King being by him partly by the Victors, that he was slain to kill himself for fear of Captivity. This was in *Anno* V. C. 575. *Cl. Pulcher* the next Consul persecuted the Conquest. *Sonprunus* long time after that, *Æ. An. V. C. 625.* reduced it to the form of

a Province. So it continued to the time of *Augustus Caesar*, who joining it to that of *Venice* (or *Ventia*), made out of both the eleventh and last Region of *Italy*. Under the *Romans* they continued whilst that Empire stood; and after the decay thereof regained their liberties; which they enjoyed till by Piracy molesting the *Venetians* they lost many of their Towns to Duke *Petro Candiano*, *An. 938*; and the whole Country was made Tributary, by the valour of the Duke *Henry Dandolo* about the year 1190. After which many times rebelling, they were still re-conquered.

4. The fourth member of this Estate with respect to *Italy*, are some ISLANDS in the *Adriatick*; which being principally under the command of this Commonwealth, is commonly called the *Gulf of Venice*; a Gulf extending in length 700 miles, in breadth 140 miles, in some places less; so called of *Adria* once a famous Haven Town (as before was said) at the mouth of the *Eridentus* or *Po*. Concerning which we are to know, that though the East-Cut part of *Dalmatia*, where the Sea begetteth to take the name of the *Ionian*; yet *Mare Adriaticum*, or the *Adriatick* Sea was of greater length. Extended by the Ancients over the *Ionian*, and thence South-westward till it meeteth with the *Tyrrhen* Seas; and Southward till it come to the coast of *Africk*; inasmuch as *Mare Libyæum*, or the Sea of *Africk*, is by *Orosius* made a part of the *Adriatick*. For speaking of the Province of *Tripolis* (a Province of *Africk*) properly and especially so called, he boundeth it on the North with the *Adriatick*; as he doth the Isle of *Creet*, on the South-side of it, with the *Libyan* Sea, quod *Adriaticum vocant*, which they also call the *Adriatick*; as his own words are, The like might also be made evident out of other Authors, both *Greek* and *Latin*: which I note here, because *Paul's* being tossed up and down in the Sea of *Adria*, as is laid *Att. 27. 27.* and being after call on shore in the Isle of *Malta*; occasioned some to think this *Mellie* or *Malta*, to be that Island of *Dalmatia*, which is now called *Melida* being feated in the Bay or Gulf of *Adria*; whereas the Text speaks plainly of that Isle of *Malta*, which lieth in the furthest parts of the *Adriatick* Sea, on the Coasts of *Africk*. But to return to this Gulf, it was accounted heretofore to be very tempestuous and unsafe, as appeareth by *Improbis secundum Adria*, in the *Venice*, the *Milice Adriaticæ*, in *Catulus*; and in *Herodotus* the *Milice*, in *Seneca's* *Tragedy*. But when the Empress *Helena* had found the Cross on which *CHRIST* suffered, she caused one of the three Nails with which his body was fastened to it, to be thrown of purpose into this Sea; since which time, as *Platina* hath told us in the life of Pope *Sylvester* (and cites *St. Ambrose* for his Authority) it hath been very calm and quiet; the second nail being made into a Bridle for her Son *Constantine's* Horse, and a Crest for his Helmet of the third. But not to trust too much to the truth of this miracle, certain it is that the *Venetians* are Lords of it, by reason of their Naval Power; and that it is every year espoused to the Duke of *Venice*, by the solemn calling in of a Wedding Ring; and every year baptized on *Epiphany*-day, by the Bishop of *Zant*. When this last Ceremony took beginning, I am yet to seek. But for the first, which is performed with a great deal of state, every Holy *Thursday*, the Duke, and the *Magnificos* being rowed in the *Bacantura* (which is a rich and stately Gally made for such Solemnities, and capable of 200 persons, whence it had the name) it took beginning from Pope *Alexander* the third. Who being hardly put to it by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, dead unto *Venice* in the habit of a Cook; *Sublatus* *Cygni* being then Duke: in prosecution of whose quarrel, the *Venetians* encountered *Otto* the Emperours Son, vanquished



him, and restored the Pope. The Duke returning back in Triumph with his Royal Prisoners, was thus fluted by the Pope. *Cyani, take here this Ring of Gold, and by giving it unto the Sea oblige it unto thee: a Ceremony which on this day (the Aletion day) shall be yearly observed both by thee and thy Successors; that so posterity may know that you have purchased the dominion thereof by your valour, and made it subject to you, as a Wife to her husband.*

The principal Islands of this Sea, lie on the other side thereof, on the coast of *Dalmatia*. Some few there are upon this side, but those (as well as those under the command of this *Signeury*) neither great nor famous. Of these the chief are, 1. *MALAMOCO*, in *Latin Methuacum*, situate at the South-west end of the Bank or Cauley called *Il Lido*; now only considerable for the Haven, which is large and deep, made by the influx of *Meduacus* being mentioned; in which the greater ships do ride, till they hire Pilots from *Rovigno* to cross the Bars. It was ennobled heretofore with the Duke's Palace, and an Episcopal See: the City of *Padua* being translated thither, at the lack of that City by the *Lombards*. But the Duke's Palace being removed to *Rialto*, and the Episcopal See to the Island of *Chioggia*; it is now inhabited for the most part by none but Seamen. 2. *TORCELLAN*, in which there is a little City of the same name, honoured with a Bishops See, (the Bishop of *Altina* with much people with him, for fear of the *Il Lombards* retiring thither.) but by reason of the ill air not very well peopled. 3. *MURIANUM*, or *MURIANO*, three miles in compass, but one from *Venice*, of a found air, and very well inhabited, the people whereof make the best *Venice* Gallies, so much used in all parts. 4. *CHIOGGIA*, called in *Latin Ficus Clodia*, a little West of *Malamocco*, at the very entrance into the Marishes from the *Adriatic*: distant from *Venice* 25 miles; to which it served instead of a Bulwark. There is a Town in it of the same name, to which the Bishops See was removed from *Malamocco*, Anno 1103, and near to which are many Saltpits, which yield great gain unto the people, and as much unto the Common-wealth. Near to this Island the *Genoese* so discomfited the *Venitians* in a Fight at Sea, that thereupon, (the taking of the Island following shortly after) they were offered a blank Charter to write what they would. But the *Genoese* being grown too insolent on their good success, made the City desperate; who putting all to hazard, fell again upon them, beat them, pursued them home, and there utterly crushed them; as we shall tell you more at large when we come to *Genoa*. 5. *POVEGLIA*, five miles from the City, first peopled by some who had raised a commotion in the City, on the death of *Pietro Tradonico* the thirteenth Duke. After which much increased both in wealth and buildings, till destroyed by the *Genoese*. It is called *Pupilia* by the Latins. 6. *TUDECHA*, (in *Latin called Judaica*) so named from the Jews who did there inhabit: not above half a mile from the City, and not very large; but liberally furnished with most pleasant Gardens. Thence and the rest reckoned as members of *Trevisiana* or dependants on it.

Between these Islands and the main land of *Friuli*, lieth a shoal of little Isles, in and amongst which standeth the renowned City of *Venice*, the head City of this Common-wealth, and the glory of *Italy*. These Isles 72 in number, but joined together by many Bridges, of which here are said to be 4000 at least, besides 10000 Boats for passage from one Isle to the other. The compass of the whole aggregate body laid to be eight miles, the buildings fair, and generally adorned with Glass-Windows; an Ornament not common in *Italy*; where the windows for the most part are made with Paper to

let in the light: and that Paper oiled all over to keep out the wet. The number of the Inhabitants estimated at 300000. By the situation one would think, that it was denominated from *Venetia*, which in the old *Latin* signifieth the seething or frothing of the Sea. *VENETIA maris exaltatio esse que ad firmum ventis*, faith the old *Glossary* upon *Isidore* out of *Marco Varro*. But the truth is, that it was so called from the *Veneti*, the old inhabitants of the neighbouring Province of *Friuli*; who to avoid the fury of the barbarous *Huns* then threatening *Italy*, abandoned the main land and built this City in the bogs and Marishes of the Sea adjoining, and that it might afford them the greater safety, they not only built it in the most inward part of the *Adriatick* Sea, commonly called the Gulf of *Venice*; but in the midst of many Lakes of Salt-water, extending ninety miles in compass, and having on the East the said *Adriatick* Sea for the length of 550 miles: betwixt which and the said Lakes there is a Bank or Cauley which they call *Il Lido*, made as it were by nature to defend the Islands which lie in this Lake, from the violent fury of the Sea. A Cauley of 35 miles in length, bending like a Bow, and opening in seven places only, which serve as well to keep the Lakes always full of water, as for the passages of Vessels to and from the City. Known by the names of the Ports of 1. *Brondolo*, 2. *Chiocia*, 3. *Malamocco*, 4. *The three Castles*, or the Castles of *Lio*, 5. *S. Erasimus*, 6. *Lito Maggiore*, or the great shore; and 7. *The Treports*: of that of *Brondolo* lieth most to the Southwest, and that of *Treports* to the Northwest of the said great Cauley. And through every one of these there is a safe passage for Ships and Barks of smaller burden: the bigger being compelled to lie at Anchor, on the South side of the City, near to the Ports of *Malamocco*, and the Castles of *Lio*, which are very well fortified, and there must remain till they are brought in by skillful Pilots, who know the passages, which, by reason of the shifting of the Sands, change very often. On the West and North sides, it is compassed with very deep Marishes, about five miles distant from the Land; and on the South with many Islands in which are several Churches and Monasteries, like so many Forts, which lie between it and those parts of *Italy*, which are not under the obedience of the Common-wealth. So that it is impossible to be taken, but by an Army which can stretch 150 miles in compass. It is built, as before is said, on 72 Islands, 60 of which lie close together round about the *Rialto*, the other at a greater distance. Of these the principal, 1. *Heraclea* near the firm land of *Trevisiana*, peopled at first by such as followed *Magnus* Bishop of *Udessa*, who to avoid the fury of the *Lombards* came and planted here: calling the Island and the Town which they founded in it by the name of *Heraclea*, in honour of *Heraculus* the Eastern Emperour in whose time it hapned. Made by this means a Bishops See, and being grown populous withal, it was honoured with the first Seat of the Dukes of *Venice*, removed by *Theodore* the seventh Duke to *Malamocco*, and from thence finally to *Rialto*. Destroyed by *Pepin King of Italy*, Son of *Charles the Great*; it was re-edified in the time of *Angelo Partitiano* the tenth Duke, and called *Cita Nova*; more memorable at this time for the antiquity of the Bishops See, than the number of Citizens. 2. *Jesulan*, neighbouring to *Heraclea*, first planted by some Country people, who flying the fury of the *Lombards*, brought with them a great drove of Mares, and of Horses, whence it had the name of *Equilone*, or *Equilina*. Made afterwards a Bishops See also, by the name of *Jesulanus* or *Equilensis*. 3. *Grada*, on the same part of the City also, but more towards the North, inhabited at first by such of the City of *Aquileia* as betook themselves

thither

thither to avoid the tyranny of the *Hunnes*: but made more eminent than before, by *Paul* the Patriarch of that City, who flying the fury of the *Lombards*, transported to this Island the Reliques and Treasures of his Church; and settled where the Church of *S. Euphemia* had been built before. And though *Helie* who succeeded *Paul*, obtained of Pope *Pelagius* the 2. An. 580. that the Bishops of *Grada* should from thenceforth have the title of *Patriarchs* and be esteemed the Metropolitans of the City and Country of *Venice*: yet the *Aquileian* would not so be robbed of his ancient privileges, and therefore stirred up many suits and disputes about it. The business compromised at last to this effect, that the Patriarch of *Aquileia* should enjoy his ancient jurisdiction over all the Churches in the Continent which belonged unto him; and that he of *Grada*, with the title and stile of Patriarch, should have like jurisdiction over the Churches in the Islands; that is to say, the Bishopsricks of *Heraclea* (or *Cita Nova*) *Equilina*, *Torcellan*, *Chioggia*, *Caprula*, and *Gallia Olinda*. His habitation near the Church of *S. Sylvestre*, in the third Region of the City, called *de Canaregio*. 4. *Caprula*, towards the openings of the *Adriatick*, a Bishops See before the time of *Charles the Great*, but not else observable: none of these four, nor of the residue of the twelve, which be remote from the *Rialto*, being much inhabited at the present. *Castello Olindo*, or *Olivaver* as some call it; situate at the East end of the City, not far from the Cauley called *Il Lido*, of old a City of its self (as the name were) now joined by a Bridge to the rest of *Venice*; of most note for the Cathedral Church of *S. Peter*, and the Palace of the *Venetian* Patriarch: this City having been made a Bishops See by Pope *Adrian* the first Anno 774, with jurisdiction over the Isles of *Olinda*, *Rialto*, *Luparia*, and *Dorsedura*. His title first *Castellanensis*, but afterwards, the Bishop of *Venice*, because the best part of the City did belong unto him, invested by the Duke, and confirmed by the Patriarch of *Grada*, whose suffragans they were till the year 1450. At what time Pope *Ingenius* the 4. (a Native of the City of *Venice*) advanced the Bishops heretofore to the dignity and name of Patriarch; assigning the Churches of *Dalmatia* (of which they were entituled Primates) for their jurisdiction. By means whereof, and by persuading him of *Aquileia* to fix his dwelling here also, as before is said, there are no fewer then three Patriarchs which have their constant habitation in the City of *Venice*. 6. *Rialto*, which is of most esteem and reputation, so called *quasi Rivo alto*, because the Marishes are there deeper than in other places; or *quasi Ripa alta*, because it lay higher above the waters than the other Islands. For which reasons that Island getting reputation above the rest, most of the Gentlemen settled their dwellings in the same; and drew thither in the end, the Dukes palace also, inasmuch that in some ancient Writings, the whole City hath been called *Rialto*; many old Records being dated in such and such a year of the *Rialto*. But as they did increase in numbers, so were they fain to spread themselves from one Isle to another: till in the end they built on all the Islands which lay near together, and might conveniently be joined by Boats or Bridges. By this *Rialto* runs the passage called the *Grand Canale*, being in length about 1300 paces and some forty in breadth; adorned on both sides with stately and magnificent Palaces; and covered with incredible numbers of Boats called *Gondolas*, very neatly built, and veiled over with Cloth, so that the passengers may go unseen and unknown, without the molestation of Sun, Wind, or Rain. For publick Buildings it hath in it 70 Parish Churches, to each of which belonging a Market-place and a Well; 31 Cloysters of Monks, 28 of Nuns, besides Chappels and Alms-houses.

The principal Church of this City is that of *S. Mark*, the Patron of their Common-wealth, whose body they report to have been brought thither from *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, and intombed herein: affirmed by some to be the richest and goodliest Church in all the World. The building of *Mosaic* work, of which they boast themselves to have been the Authors. A kind of work by the *Grecians* called *Αντακτα*, and by the *Latins* writers *Musiva*, *Musica*, and *Musica*, wrought out of Stones or Metals of divers colours, into the shape of Flowers, Knots, Birds, Beasts, and other Fancies of the Workman; yet done with such exactness of skill and judgment, that it seemeth to be all one stone, the work rather of Nature than Art. A Church of admirable work both within and without, compacted of most rare pieces of Marble, Porphyrie, and a rich stone which the *Lapidaries* called *Ophitis*, because it is speckled like a Snake: adorned on the outside with 148 Pillars of Marble, and eight of Porphyrie near the door; besides 600 Marble Pillars of a lesser size, which carry up an open Gallery round about the Church; from whence the Magistrates and others of the principal Citizens, behold such shews as are presented in the Market-place, adjoining to it. The Church in length not above 200 foot of *Venice* measure, nor above 50 in breadth; the roof whereof being of an *Orbicular* form, lyeth open at the very top, where the light comes in, there being no Windows in all the Church, as commonly the Churches in *Italy* are exceeding dark, either to strike in the spectators a religious reverence, or to make their Candles shew the better. And for the inside of the Church, the riches of it are so great, Images so glorious, the furniture of the Altars so above comparison; that all the treasures of the State, may seem to be amassed in the decking of it. And yet as goodly and as glorious as the Fabrick is, it is still unfinisned; and as some think, is kept unfinished on purpose partly to draw on other Benefactors to advance the work, the benefit of whose liberality may be employed unto the use of the publick Treasury; and partly, lest Revenues which are given already should be refused by the Heirs of the deceased, if the work were ended. So infinitely doth the furniture of the Church exceed the sumptuousness and beauty of the Church it self.

Of other of the Publick buildings, the Council-house, the Ducal Palace, Monasteries, Churches, &c. I forbear to speak. Nor shall I here say any thing of their private houses, so large and beautified, that here are said to be no fewer than 200 (most of them on the *Grand Canale*) able to entertain and lodge the best King in Christendom. All I shall add, and so leave this City, will be a word or two of their *Artificer*, and publick Magazine. In the first of which they have in readiness 200 Gallies, with rooms for Cables, Mats, Sails, Victuals, and Ammunition of all sorts: as they thereby to let out a Navy to Sea, on the shortest warning. And in the other it is said, that they have Arms sufficient for 100000 Souldiers of all sorts; amongst which are affirmed to be a thousand Coats of Plate, garnished with Gold, and covered with Velvet; fit for the use and wearing of the greatest Princes. But of their power and forces both by Sea and Land, we shall speak more shortly. In the mean time I take my leave of this gallant City in this following Epigram of *Sannazarus*, one of our late *Italian* Poets, viz.

Viderat Adriacis Venetum Neptunus in undis  
Stare urbem, & toto ponere jura mari:

*Nunc mihi Tarpeias quantum vis Jupiter, arces  
Obijce, & illa tui mania Maris, ait.  
Si Pelago Tibirin præfer, Urbem affice utramque  
Illam homines dicunt, hanc posside deos.*

In English thus:

*Neptune saw Venice in the Adrian land,  
And all the Sea brought under her command;  
Now Jove, said he, thy Roman Towers object,  
And those proud Walls which Mars did once protect.  
Before the Sea if thou prefer,  
Behold both Cities, and thou wilt aver,  
That men built Rome; the Gods plac'd Venice there.*

Proceed we now unto their story: and if we look upon them in their first Original, we shall find them to have been a people of *Phoenicia* (a Province of *Asia* the letter) called the *Hentii*, who aiding *Prizmus* King of *Troy* in his ten years Wars against the *Greeks* where they lost their King, named *Philemon* (or *Philemon* as some call him) chose rather to seek out new Dwellings, than return with shame unto their old. Upon this resolution they join themselves to *Antenor*, who with some remnant of the *Trojans* had the same designs and sailing as the Wind and Sea conducted them, arrived at last in those parts of *Italy*, now called *Friuli*. So wineth the Poet, saying,

*Antenor portus, mediis elapsus Achivis,  
Illyricos penetrare Sinus, atque ultima tutus  
Regna Libanorum, & fontes superare Timavi.*

*Antenor through the Greeks could force his way,  
And safely piercing the Illyrian Bay,  
Cross'd the Libanian Reclines, and conquer all,  
From fierce Timavus Fountain, to his fall.*

Here landing they subdued the *Euganei* (who before inhabited this Tract) and possessed their Dwellings: the name of *Hentii* being changed into that of *Veneti*. But this perhaps not done till subdued by the *Galls*, and made part of *Gallia Cisalpinia* agreeably to the name of the *Veneti*, an old *Gallick* Nation, opposite to the Isle of *Britain*. When those *Galls* were vanquished by the *Romans*, the name and Nation of these *Veneti*, was so considerable, that their Territory had the name of *Venetia*; and together with *Hiria*, made one Province of the *Roman* Empire. And here they lived in peace and safety under the protection of the Empire, till the terrible Noise of the great Preparation of the *Huns*, for the Conquest of *Italy* occasioned many of the principal Men, with their several Retinues, to betake themselves to the Islands, and inaccessible Marishes of the *Adriatick*; where in the place now called *Rialto*, they laid the foundation of this City, March 25. Anno 421. Exceedingly increased by the Destruction of *Aquileja*, and the neighbouring Cities by *Attila*, and the said *Barbarians*, Anno 456. at what time it began to be called *Venetia*, by the name of their Nation. Not much encreased in Power and Greatness, at the fall of the *Lombardian* Kingdom: though for considerable at that time, that in the Division of *Italy* made by *Charles* the Great, betwixt himself, the

Popes and the Eastern Emperors; the *Venitians* were left at liberty, as a Free-Estate: and they derived to be left in a free condition, considering how notably they had freed themselves from *Papin*, the Son of *Charles*, who invaded them with a puissant Army, and was well beaten for his labour, though at first successful. After which, making use of their situation, they grew not only rich in trade, but strong in shipping; and thereby did good service to the Western Princes, in their Wars against the *Turks* in the *Holy Land*. And they served themselves well by it too: getting in one Expedition only (that namely, in which the Empire of *Constantinople* was made a Prey unto the *Laines*, Anno 1200.) all the Islands which they have at the present, in the *Adgean* and *Ionian* Seas; many in those Seas which they have lost; and not a few good Towns in *Peloponnus*, since conquered from them by the *Turks*. Contending with the *Genoese* for the Sovereignty of the *Mediterranean*, they received for great a Blow at the Naval Battle near *Chigiola*, (spoken of before) that they had utterly lost it, the Enemy could have used his Fortune with Moderation. But being recovered of that War, after many various successes and Events of War, Anno 1381, they got the better of them, and made them quit: by means whereof being Lords Paramount at Sea, they next cast their Eyes on the main Land of *Italy*, which now they were at more Leisure to look after, than they had been formerly. The *Hibrians* had before infested them with Piracy, and were punished for it, in the time of Duke *Pietro Candiano*, by the loss of many of their Towns; but in the year 1390, the whole Country is brought under the command of this Common-wealth. *Padaua* with a great part of *Trevigiana* then dependent on it, they extorted from the noble Family of the *Carviri* Anno 1400. The City of *Vicenza* they possessed themselves of in the same year also; and not long after fully perfected their Conquest of *Hiria*, with the Revolt wherof they had before been often troubled.

But that whereby they most improved their Estate was by a constant watching of their Opportunities, taking advantage of the Factions and Frictions amongst their neighbours, and working their own Greatness out of others Ruines. By means whereof they came possessed of many places, of right belonging to the Empire, and the Church of *Rome*; as also of some Towns, pertaining to the Dutchy of *Millain*; and four of the best Havens in the *Adriatick*, which properly belonged to the Realm of *Naples*: not giving aid to any of their distressed Neighbours, without the Mortgage or Direct Sale of some Piece or other. Which forbid kind of Merchandizing, drew all the Princes of those parts (Confederated together in a League at *Cambray* Anno 1508.) to make War upon them; every one to recover by strong hand, what the *Venitians* had extorted from them in their necessity. And the Confederates thrived so well, that *Maximilian* the Emperor recovered to the Empire, the Towns and Territories of *Padaua*, *Vicenza*, *Verona*, *Triest*, *Friuli*, and whatsoever else he laid claim unto; the Popes in Right of the Church, regained *Ravenna*, *Cercia*, *Rimini* (or *Ariminum*) and *Faventa*; Lewis the 12. of *France* in Right of the Dutchy of *Millain*, *Bergamum*, *Cremona*, *Brisa*; the King of *Spain* in right of the Realm of *Naples*, *Monferrato*, *Trent*, *Barletta*, and *Monopoli*, all upon the *Adriatick*; the Duke of *Ferrara* gained *Reggio*, and the Duke of *Mantua* the Town of *Aspidia*. So that the *Venitians* being like the Jay stripped of all their Feathers, were fain to cut the firm land, and betake themselves unto the Isles and Marishes of their City; having not one Foot of all their whole Dominion left them in *Italy*, but

but their Seas and Islands. And yet in very little time partly by working on the Pope to whom they quitted all their interest in the Towns aforesaid; and partly by dividing the rest of the Confederates from one another; they recovered all that they had lost, in a little time: except the Towns of *Naples* only, for which they were not willing to contend with the Crown of *Spain*.

The Government is *Aristocratical*, managed only by the principal men of all the City, both for birth and breeding; the common people having no authority in affairs of State. The chief Officers at the first were many, whom they called *Tribunes*: but experience being had of that confusion, which a multitude of Government carrieth for the most part with it, in the year 79, they made choice of one chief Officer, whom they called their *Duke*. Under these Dukes they have gotten that great Dominion which they now enjoy: The authority of which Dukes was at first more absolute, but by degrees restrained and limited within narrower bounds. He that beareth him in his Robes, his gravity and outward Port, and the respect given him by the people, would think no Prince could be more absolute and supreme. But look upon him in the exercise and power of Government and he is nothing in the world but an empty Title. For notwithstanding that he enjoyeth to great a dignity, yet hath he full power in nothing, nor being able to determine in any point, without the presence of his *Counsellors* (being six in number) who always sit with him, and dispatch affairs both publick and private; as namely giving audience to Ambassadors from Foreign States, receiving Letters from their own Ministers, granting of Privileges and the like; in which the Duke can do just nothing, if four (at least) of these *Counsellors* be not present with him. And yet these *Counsellors* without him may conclude of any thing. Nay he is restrained in all things to the power of the *Senate*, and to three Officers called the *Capi*, that he may not go out of the Town without their consent; and by them is prescribed an order in his own Apparel. So that he is but little better than a Prisoner, when within the City; and a Traytor, if he stir abroad: at the best, but an honourable Servant. And his Revenue is as little as his Authority; as being allowed out of the common Treasury, no more than 40000 *Ducats* a year, towards his expence and entertainment. As for the Sovereignty of the State, that resides wholly in the *Senate*; but representatively in the *Duke*, the six *Counsellors*, and the three Heads or Presidents of the *Forty*, which are the Officers (as I take it) whom they call the *Capi*. The *Senate* or Great Council, consists of all the Gentlemen of *Venice*, above five and twenty years of age, which may amount to the number of two thousand five hundred, though seldom more than two hundred assemble at once, by reason of their several employments in affairs of the Common-wealth, in other places: who usually do meet together every Sunday morning, and on the morning of other Festivals, where they chuse Magistrates, and distribute Government, and other matters of the State. But because such great Bodies move but slowly, and are not very capable of trust and secrecy, they parcel this Great Council into lesser Members; whereof the principal are the *Pregadi*, and the *Council of Ten*. That of the *Pregadi* consists of 120 in which they treat of, and determine matters of the greatest importance; and therein conclude commonly of such principal points, as formerly have been propounded and treated of in the great Assembly: And in this Council besides the 120 before mentioned, the *Duke*, the six *Counsellors*, and the Council of Ten, and all such as have born any publick Office, have their voice or suffrage. This is that Council which

properly and more especially is called the *Senate*; in which nothing is to be concluded or passed into Acts, except four of the six *Counsellors* be present at them, and that fixty at the least of the whole number, give their suffrage to it. Then for the Council of Ten, their power is universal, over all affairs, such as the other Councils may not meddle with, as to conclude of War, or Peace, to put in execution what they think most necessary for the benefit of the Common-wealth, and other things of like weight and moment: which if they were first treated of in the General Council or Assembly, and after in that of the *Pregadi*, as they ought to be in common course; could not be possibly managed with such speed and secrecy, as the exigencies of the State require. And in this Council, with the Prince and his six Assistants, the supreme Majesty of the State doth reside especially. Some other Officers there are, and those of great authority and reputation, as the *Procurators* of St. Mark, which have the charge of the publick Treasures, and the *Avogadori*, or *Tribunes* (as one might call them) of the people, being three in all, one of which must be always present in all consultations, lest any thing should pass to the prejudice, and infringement of the Priviledges of the common people.

For the whole body of the City consisteth either of the *Gentlemen*, or of Artificers and Commons. These last are the descendants and progeny of such as came to settle here when the State was fixed; invited to dwell ere, and to follow their occupations, by several Priviledges and Immunities which were offered to them, and these they neither admit into any of their Councils, nor into any of the Offices of Trust and Power, except it be two, that namely of the Chancellor, and the principal Secretaries, which pertain only to the people. The other are the issue or descendants of those, who first laid the foundation of their City and Common-wealth; and these they have in high respect, and to high esteem, that to make any stranger (how great and eminent soever) a Gentleman of the City, is the greatest honour they can bestow; and not bestowed but upon the best deserving. Henry the 3. of France taking this City in his way out of *Poland*, thought himself graced with this attribute, which they are very daunt and sparing of, it being the highest honour which they vouchsafe to impart to such Commanders of their own, and Ambassadors of other Princes as have well deserved it. And that this honour may be kept up to the very height, and their Nobility grow not too cheap by being too numerous, neither the younger Sons of these *Gentlemen* within the City, or of the *Noblemen* in the Country are permitted to marry. But otherwise they suffer them to satisfy their lusts, with too much impunity; and for their fakes allow of *Stews*, as an evil not to be avoided on the former grounds.

Now, as *Ordo in Tacitus* said to the *Prætorian* Soldiers, *Princeps & Senatus oritur*, *Senatus è volis*: so out of these Gentlemen are chosen the Senators, out of them the Duke. His election by *Contareus* is described in this manner. In the vacancy of the place, all the *Gentry* above thirty years of age are assembled. So many as meet, cast their names into a pot; and in another are put many balls, of which thirty only are gilt. Then a child draweth for each, till the thirty gilt ones be all drawn, for which thirty the child draweth again the second time out of another pot, that hath only nine gilt balls. The nine to draw, nominate forty, out of which forty are twelve again selected by the same kind of lot. These twelve nominate five and twenty, out of which five and twenty are nine again by lot set apart. These nine nominate 45, who are by lot again reduced unto eleven. These eleven chuse forty one, of the best and

and chiefest of the *Senators*; who after an Oath taken severally, to chuse whom they judge worthiest, write in a Circle every one whom he best liketh. The Scrolls are mingled together and then drawn, the fitness of the Persons then drawn is discussed, and he that hath most votes above five and twenty, is the man whom they pronounce to be elected, and adjudged with due solemnities to be created their *Duke*. By the like kind of Lottery do they chuse Gentlemen in the Senate, and make publick Officers, inasmuch that *Consentors*, who hath committed unto writing these publick Forins, conceive (I will not say how rightly) that the *Venician* Common-wealth was modelled by *Plato's* Platform.

But whether this be so or no, certain it is, that this Common-wealth thus constituted, and modelled, as before is said, hath lasted longer under one form of Government, than any *Republick* in the world, either *Greek* or *Roman*. Nor hath it only preserved it self in the same condition, but may most justly be accounted one of the strongest Bulwarks of *Christianity* against the incroachments of the *Turks*: the Wars whereof hath procured plenty to the *Republick*. Inasmuch, that it may well be said, that as *Europe* is the Head of the World, and Italy the face of *Europe*, so *Venice* is the eye of Italy; the fairest, strongest, and most active part in that powerful Body. As if the *Genius* of old *Rome* by some *Pythagorical* transmigration had passed into the body of this powerful State; and animated it with all the virtues of that City, but knit with a more permanent and constant temper. From to base and abject a beginning, is this City grown to be one of the best Supporters of the Arms of *Europe*.

As for the Religion of this State, they tolerate that of the *Greek* Church, but they themselves profess no other than that of the Church of *Rome*: yet with such caution and respect to their own authority, that they suffer not the Clergy to enjoy those privileges, which they possess in other Countries, to the publick prejudice. Hence grew the quarrel betwixt them, and Pope *Paul* the fifth, in which the Signeury stood stiffly to their ancient Rights, and caused Mals to be duly paid, notwithstanding all their Churches were under the interdiction; banished the *Jesuites* for ever out of their Dominions, for tickling too subtly in behalf of the Pope: and in the end prevailed to buy by their constant courage, that the Pope was fain to give over the cause, and reconcile them to the Church, without any submission. A notable example to all *Christian* Princes, how to behave themselves towards those of *Rome*; who are not to be gained upon but by such resistances. So as if a thing it is for men of constancy and courage, to shake off that yoke, which *Papal Tyranny* and Superstition hath imposed upon them.

In managing their Wars they anciently observed two Rules, which most conduced to the enlargement and security of their Common-wealth. The first was the exempting of their own Citizens from the Wars (not out of jealousy, but care of their preservation) unless compelled to the contrary by extreme necessity: the body of their Armies being compounded out of the Provincial Subjects, intermixt with *Mercenaries*. By means whereof they did not only keep their City in the same condition, able at any time, and at all times, to give Law to the rest of their Dominions: but warded the hot and boiling Spirits of their Subjects, in the Wars abroad; which otherwise might have made too much work at home. The other was the entertaining of some neighbouring Prince to be the General of their Forces; whom in the conclusion of the service they dismissed with honour and reward. And by this course they avoided faction, and prevented servitude: Either or both of which might have

happened by employing any of their own great ones in the chief commands, who (after the example of *Julius Caesar* in the State of *Rome*) having a strong party within the City, and an Army without, might perhaps have made himself their Prince. But this was only in the conduct of their Wars in Italy, and in such times when the State was not so well balanced as it hath been since.

As for the Forces of the State, we may behold them in relation to Sea or Land. Their Land-Forces which they have in continual pay, for defence of their Dominion, consist of 28000 Foot, with Captains, and all other Officers enrolled and paid; and besides those, they have a choice Band of 4000 Musketeers, for exercising of which they keep yearly *Musters*, as well to improve them in experience, as to proportion them some gratuities, according to their well-deservings. And as for *Horses*, they maintain constantly 6000 men at Arms, well appointed and paid; the like whereof is not to be found in all Italy. And yet besides this constant and ordinary establishment, they are able to bring great Forces into the Field: as appeareth by their Army against *Lewis XII.* in which without diminishing any of their Forts and Garrisons, they had 2000 men of Arms, 3000 light Horse, 30000 Foot, most of their own natural Subjects; having that they were interlined with some Bands of *Switzers* to which people they give yearly pensions, to be assured of their aid upon all occasions. Then for the Sea-Forces, besides that they keep fifty Gallies in continual action, for defence of the *Adriatick*, and that they have no less than 200 more laid up in the *Asiatick*, with all manner of tackling and ammunition appertaining to them: they have 10000 men enrolled to serve at the Oar, and may raise as many as they please for those kind of services, out of those parts of *Salavonia*, which are subject to them. But the great evidence of the power they can make at Sea, was the great Fleet let out against the *Grand Signiour* for the War of *Cyprus*, An. 1570. in which they manned out one great Gallion, eleven great Gallies, five and twenty tall Ships, and one hundred and fifty Gallies of lesser burden; being in all one hundred and eighty seven Sails, fit for present service. To give the total Sum in brief: they held a War by Sea and Land for seven years together, against all the Princes of *Christendom* (excepting *England*) confederated against them by the League at *Cambray*: in all which time they neither wanted men nor money; and in the end, were the least losers by the bargain.

By this we may conjecture also at the greatness of the publick Treasury, and of the yearly income which supplies the same. For though it be conceived that their ordinary standing Revenue be but four Millions of *Pacats* yearly (which yet is more than any *Christian* Prince can boast of, except *France* and *Spain*) yet they have many other ways to advance their Treasury, by laying new Imposts on commodities as they see occasion, which needs must rise to vast and most considerable sums, in a City of the greatest Traffick of any in *Europe*, and perhaps in all the World besides. And yet besides such Customs and Imposts as they lay on Merchandise, there's nothing which the people do eat or drink, for which they pay not something to the publick Treasury: over and above which, the poorest Labourer in the whole Signiory payeth his *Poll-money* also. Inasmuch, that it is credibly affirmed, that the *Christians* generally do live in a better condition under the *Turk*, than under the *Venicians*. Without such helps, (though heavy and burdensome to the Subject) they could not possibly have spent twelve millions in the War against *Selim II.* and as many a little before that, in the enterprise of *Ferrara*, and the War raised against them by the League at *Cambray*, which was that formerly remembered.

As for the Dukes of *Venice*, though no Sovereign Princes, nor such as do succeed each other in the right of inheritance: yet being they are always men of most eminent note, and that in their names all the business of State is acted, and all writings dated, I will subjoin a Catalogue of them to this present; and to the end that meeting with their names in the course of History, we may the better know in what times they lived.

#### The Dukes of Venice.

697	1 Paulus Anafestus	20	1298	51 Marino Giorgio.
728	2 Marcel Tegolien	10.	1299	52 John Sanraace.
727	3 Hippatus Ursus	11.	1315	53 Francisco Dandolo.
An Interregnum of six years. 1329				
742	4 Theodatus Hippatus	1330	55 Andrea Daudina.	
755	5 Galla of Malinocco.	1342	56 Marius Valerius.	
756	6 Dominico Monogaria	57	John Gradonico.	
760	7 Maurice Galbata.	1343	58 John Daulphin.	
783	8 John Galbata.	1348	59 Lorenzo Celfi.	
799	9 Obelerius.	1352	60 Marco Cornaro.	
804	10 Angelus Partitarius	1355	61 Andrea Contarone.	
822	11 Justinian Partitarius	1371	62 Michael Morosini.	
824	12 John Partitarius.	63	Antonio Padua.	
833	13 Petro Tradonico.	1389	64 Michael Savi.	
859	14 Ursus Partitarius.	1402	65 John de Alenico.	
876	15 John Partitarius.	1412	66 Francisco Pofcar.	
881	16 Petro Candiano.	1457	67 Pofchal Malipiere.	
17	Dominico Tribuno.	1452	68 Christophoro Moro.	
18	Petro Tribuno.	1461	69 Nicolas Troni.	
905	19 Ursus Badonico.	1463	70 Nicolas Marcelli.	
925	20 Petro Candiano II.	1464	71 Petro Alenico.	
932	21 Petro Badonico.	1465	72 Andrea Vendramine.	
935	22 Petro Candiano III.	1467	73 John Moceno.	
950	23 Petro Candiano IV.	147	74 Adoro Barbado.	
972	24 Petro Candiano.	75	Augustinus Barbado.	
972	25 Vital Candiano.	1439	76 Leonardo Loredani.	
973	26 Tribuno Mone.	1439	77 Antonio Grimani.	
985	27 Petro Ursula II.	1511	78 Andrea Grini.	
1003	28 Otto Ursula.	1527	79 Petro Laude.	
1020	29 Petro Barbolani.	1533	80 Francisco Donati.	
1021	30 Dominico Flabenco.	1540	81 Antonio Trevisani.	
1031	31 Dominico Contarui.	1541	82 Francisco Finieri.	
1059	32 Dominico Silicio.	1543	83 Lorenzo Priuli.	
1072	33 Vitalis Falvris.	1547	84 Hierome Priuli.	
1084	34 Vitalis Michiali.	1555	85 Petro Loredani.	
1090	35 Orelafius Falvris.	1560	86 Lemn Moceno.	
1105	36 Dominico Michiali.	1567	87 Sebastian Venturi.	
1118	37 Petrus Polanus.	1578	88 Nicola di pont.	
1136	38 Dominico Morosini.	1586	89 Pofchal Ciocone.	
1143	39 Vitalis Michiali II.	1596	90 Marino Grimani.	
1160	40 Sebastian Zanini.	1606	91 Leonardo Donati.	
1165	41 Anna Moripiere.	1612	92 Antonio Memmo.	
1179	42 Henrico Dandolo.	1615	93 Giovanni Bembo.	
1193	43 Petro Zanini.	1618	94 Nicholas Donati.	
1216	44 Jacobo Tepuli.	1618	95 Antonio Priuli.	
1238	45 Marins Morosini.	1623	96 Francisco Contarone.	
1246	46 Renieri Zeno.	97	Giovanni Correlino.	
1256	47 Lorenzo Tepuli.	98	Francisco Erizzo.	
1263	48 Jacobo Contarui.	now living, An. 1648.		
1267	49 Giovanni Dandolo.			
1276	50 Petro Gradonico.			

The principal Orders of Knighthood in this Republick are 1. of S. Mark, who is the Patron of this City, instituted in the year 1329, and renewed again (being grown somewhat out of use) An. 1662. The honour is commonly bestowed on the person present, sometimes by Letters Patents on a party absent; as lately upon *Daniel Haigius*, one of great eminence for Learning in the

*Netherlands*. The person chosen is to be of noble blood, at the least a Gentleman; the Word or Motto of the Order is, *Pax tibi Marce*.

2. Of the glorious Virgin, first instituted by *Bartholomew of Vincentia*, An. 1222. Their charge is to defend Widows and Orphans, and to procure (as much as in them lies) the peace of Italy. It was allowed of by Pope *Urban* the Fourth, An. 1262. The Arms of this Order, are a Purple Cross, between certain Stars. The Habit a white Surcoat over a Russet Cloak; and seems to be as well a Religious as a Military Institution, like to the Spanish Orders, and that of Malta.

There are in the Provinces of this Commonwealth, before defined, Patriarchs 2. Bishops 16.

## The Great Dukedom of TUSCANY.

HAVING thus run along the Coast of the *Adriatick*, or upper Sea, from the Lands of the Church unto the Alps, which divide Italy from Germany; let us next keep along the tract of the *Tuscan* or Lower Sea, from the said Lands of the Church, to that part of the Alps which divide Italy from France. And in the first place we meet with the Dukedom of Florence, or the Estate of the great Duke of Tuscany; divided on the East from S. Peter's Patrimony, by the River *Fifio*; on the West, from the Common-wealth of *Genoa*, by the River *Macra*, and the strong Fort of *Sarazena*; on the North from *Romandula*, and *Marea Anconitana*, by the *Apennine* Hills, and on the South-side it is bounded with the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas.

It taketh up the greatest and goodliest part of all that which anciently was called *Tuscany*, from the *Greek* word *Tusca*, which signifieth *a Sacrifice*; of which act of Religious Worship, or rather of some superstitious Ceremonies appertaining to it, they are conceived to be the Authors. And to say truth, they were much given to *Sooth saying*, and Divinations, and such like vanities of *Genilism*: *Tages*, that *Melus* of the old World, first appearing here, from whom they learned the greatest part of their Superstitions. So that this name was adventitious and accidental. For properly and originally it was called *Tyrrhenia*, from *Tyrrhus* the Son of *Aryx* King of *Lydia*, who came and planted in these parts about the time that *Gedon* judged the Tribes of *Israel*. But these names signified the same both Country and people, though in divers Languages, and with respect to different Originations: the name of *Tyrrhenia*, and *Tyrrhenia* being most used by the *Greeks*; as that of *Tyfi*, and *Tyscia*, by their Neighbours of *Rome*, who also called the people *Heirschi*, and the Country *Heirsria*, from a particular Province of it was so entituled. Anciently it extended as far Eastward as the banks of *Tiber*, the other bounds being then as they are at the present; and in that tract gave dwelling to a potent Nation. Who not content to be restrained within the *Apennine* and the *Tiber*, waited three hundred Towns of the *Umbris*, the next bordering Nation; and built twelve Cities on the other side of the Mountains, that is to say, *Ayda*, *Perona*, *Vincencia*, *Trent*, *Bergama*, *Mautina*, *Coma*, *Verella*, *Nozara*, *Parma*, *Bononia*, and *Rhegium*; all of esteem and reputation to this very day. They were the first Nation that carried an Offensive War to the Gates of *Rome*, when they gave aid to the *Tarquins* under King *Porfena*; and held

held it out on the *Defensive* as long as any : No people in all Italy standing more stilly in defence of their common Liberties, than the *Palis*, and *Vicenza*, two *Hevurian* Tribes. But nothing could withstand the Fortune of that growing Empire. Twelve Nations of them were brought under by *Tarquinius Priscus*, who from hence brought to *Rome* the *Fseter* and Triumphant Ornaments, and other embellishments of State : the *Vezii* and *Palis*, by the Sword of *Camillus* ; the Conquest perfected by the conduct of *Valerius Corvinus*, and *Fulu Commalus*, A. U. C. 455. So the *Tuscani* were subdued at last, after they had been governed by their own Kings 1132 years : that is to say, from *Tarchon Priscus* their first King, A. M. 2550, to *Tuventus Celo* their last King, A. M. 2668.

The chief Towns of it in those times were, 1. *Vezii*, and 2. *Perusia*, spoken of before. 3. *Fesula*, then of very great fame, now a poor Village hard by *Florence*. 4. *Agellina*, situate not far from the Lake of *Tuscanum*, which from hence was called *Vadum Agyllinum* : the chief Town of the *Tuscans* at the coming of *Æneas* into Italy, and the Seat Royal of *Mecentius* that noted Tyrant, so often mentioned by *Virgil*. First built by the *Palis*, a Greek People, and by them thus named, afterwards by mistake called *Cere* : by like mistake as *Perr*, *Jucatan*, and others of the *American* Provinces, got their present names : as shall here be shewn. For the *Tuscans*, or the *Romans* so others say, demanding in their language of a Country fellow, the name of the place, was answered in his language, *χέρη*, that is to say, God save you, or, God speed you : which word they taking for the name of the Town, did ever after call it *Cere*. Memorable in old time for the Baths adjoining, from hence called *Paluca Cereana* ; more for the preservation of the *Vesul* Fire, and the other holy things of *Rome*, when that Town was taken by the *Galls*, except right of Suffrage : from whence the Tables, in which the *Roman Censors* used to enroll the names of those whom they deprived of their votes in Senates, or any other public Council, were called *Cerites Table*. 5. *Phleria*, on the Sea-side, the principal Town of the *Palis*, of which there is some remainder extant in the Village called *Palari*. 6. *Clusium*, the Seat Royal of King *Porcius* : for aiding, which against the *Galls*, the *Romans* drew upon themselves the fury of that turbulent people. *Pisa*, *Arezzo*, and such others as are still in being, we shall speak of afterwards.

The Rivers and the Soil do remain as formerly, though the first altered in their names. The principal of which are, 1. *Arno*, spoken of before, in the general survey of Italy. 2. *Serius*, by *Polomy* called *Boatini* : a River which by the excellency of its Carps and Trouts, makes some amends unto the people for its violent Land-Roads. 3. *Palis*, as violent and dangerous as the other, but not so profitable ; which falleth into *Tiber*, near *Orviette*. 4. *Marabia*, by *Polomy* called *Ofs*. Here is also the Lake *Volsinus*, which is twenty four miles in compass ; and that called anciently *Sabatena*, but now *Lago Braccini*, from which Water was conveyed to *Rome*. By reason of these and other Lakes, and the frequent over-flowings of the Rivers, the Country in former times was full of Bogs, which made the air unhealthy, and the ways unpassable ; it being in the Flares and Marishes of *Hevrania*, that *Amulius* was tormented. Iosing here in the greatest part of his Elephants, and one of his eyes. But since those times, partly by the industry of the people, and the great providence of the Princes ; the Fens in most places are well drained, and the Bogs converted to firm land : whereby the air is rectified, and

the ways made pleasant ; care being also taken, by great Banks and Ramparts, to keep the Rivers for the most part within their Channels. So that the Country is now full of very spacious Fields, and fruitful Vallies, swelled here and there with pleasant Mountains, little infertile in fertility to the richest Valleys ; abundantly well stored with delicious Wines, and plentiful, in a word of all the blessings of Nature : save that the parts about *Florence* are defective in Wheat, the want of which is supplied from the Fields of *Sienna*, where there is plenty enough of it for themselves and their Neighbours ; though no such superfluity, as to spare any of it unto other Provinces.

But to return unto the story, *Tuscani* being thus brought under the command of *Rome*, was made the second of those eleven Regions, into which Italy was divided by *Augustus Cæsar*. In the division of it made by *Antoninus*, and in that of *Constantine*, it made with *Umbria* one of the ten Provinces, which was immediately subject to the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*. Afterwards in the declination of the *Roman* Empire : it became a member of the Kingdom of *Lombardy*, then of the *French*, and finally of the *German* Empire : during which times it was governed by an Officer of Trust and Power, whom I find sometimes called the *Margrave*, sometimes Duke of *Tuscani* ; who had here more or less Authority, as they could work on the Necessities of their several Princes. *Tuscanus* the last King of the *Lombards*, had been Duke of *Tuscani*, and was by *Albericus* in the time of the *Barons* ; and Guido is called *Margrave* of it, under the Reign of *Horvius Asepis* the German Emperor. Afterwards, as the Popes grew in Power and Greatness, so they made hold to intermeddle in the affairs of this Province : giving it one while to the Kings of *Naples*, another while to the Dukes of *Anjou*, making some Challenge to that Kingdom. In which Distractions the *Florentines* first bought their own Liberty, of the Emperor *Rodolphus Halsburgensis* ; and after purchased the Town and Territory of *Cortona*, of *Ladislaus* King of *Naples* ; that of *Arezzo*, for 40000 *Florenti*, of Duke *Lewis of Anjou*. After this time they busbanded their Affairs so well, that they became one of the most considerable Estates in Italy ; and at the last by taking in *Pisa* and *Sienna*, they got the absolute Dominion of the best and largest part of *Tuscani* : which now is under the command of the Great Duke, and may be branched most stily into these four Parts : that is to say, the Cities and Territories of 1. *Florence*, 2. *Pisa*, 3. *Sienna*, and 4. the *Illynds* situate in the *Tuscan*, or *Tyrrhenian* Seas.

1. And first, the Territory or Estate of *Florence* taketh up the North part of this great Dukedom, having the *Apennine* on the North, and the Estates of *Pisa* and *Sienna* on the South. So called from the City of *FLORENCE*, situate high unto the Conflux of the Rivers *Arno* and *Chianus* ; the former passing through the middle of the City, which is joined together with four Bridges of Stone. Encompassed with Mountains, which do serve as a Fortress against Invasions, and for defence against the Winds. First built by *L. Sylla* that bloody Dictator ; afterwards made a Colony by the *Triumvirs*, *Augustus*, *Antony*, and *Lepidus* ; from the flourishing situation of it being called *Florentia*. The *Lombards* upon some displeasure razed it to the Ground, but it was rebuilt by *Charlemagne* ; to whom and whose Successors they continued faithful, as long as they had any thing to do with the State of Italy : but after, they brook themselves to the *Papal* Faction, and were as rigid *Guelphs* as any. On this foundation it now stands, and is indeed a very fair and flourishing City, agreeable to the name ; the streets being very straight and large, paved with

square

square stone, and always keep exceeding clean : the ordinary buildings beautiful above any in Italy, besides many fair and stately Palaces adorned with *Statues*, the principal of the Palaces is that of the Great Duke, taking up the room of fifty houses which were wont to stand there ; capable of a great retinue : and for the largeness of the building, the Architecture and Ornaments of it, as also for the Gardens, Fountains, Statues, and other Acccessaries, equalling, if not surpassing the goodliest Palaces in all Europe. The like may also be affirmed of the Cathedral, highly commended for the excellency of the Workmanship, but that especially of the Steeple, which both for stuf and structure is beyond compare. This Church is called commonly the *Annunciata*, and worthily accounted one of the chief Ornaments of *Florence* : in which City there are besides to many excellent pieces and curious rarities, that the Archduke *Charles* was wont to say, that it was a City not to be seen but on Holy days. As for the Inhabitants of this City and the parts adjoining, they are a very industrious people, and generally said to be of a very great wit, subtle hands, and of much insight into business : and yet Count *Inhalt*, a French Gentleman, was used to say, *Nun s'avevo due configlii l'ingegno tanto celebrato di Fiorentini*, that he could never find where that great wit of the *Florentines* lay. *Guiccardine* the Historian, was without doubt a notable Statesman ; and *Machiavel*, once the Recorder of this City, a man of as shrewd a brain as any ; and so were the two *Cosmos* of the house of the *Medici* : but whether all the *Florentines*, or the major part of them, be of such extraordinary wit as they say they are, I am not very well resolved ; nor is it much material to enquire into it.

The other Cities and chief places of this first division, are 1. *Fesula*, once a *Roman* Colony, now a small Village called *Fiesolis* situate in the straits of the *Apennine*, not far from *Florence*, which is thought to have risen chiefly from the ruins of it : most memorable for the great defeat here given by *Scyllio* to the great Army of the *Gauls*, conducted into Italy under *Rhadagustus*. 2. *Pistoria*, or *Piseta*, seated on the foot of the *Apennine*, but ruined with its own dissensions ; of which the greatest and most lasting, were those betwixt the *Neri* and  *Bianchi* (or the black men and the white) which divided *Florence*, and that between the *Guelphs* and *Ghibellines*, which here took beginning, and for a long time exercised the peace of *Christendom*. This last began (as some say) upon the quarrel of two Brothers, of which the one named *Guelph*, stood for the Pope ; the other named *Ghibellin*, declared for the Emperor. The quarrel spreading into Parties, called the *Guelphs* and the *Ghibellines*, became at last the wonder and amazement of all good people : inasmuch as some are of opinion, that the fiction of the *Bispy* and *Goblins*, wherewith we use to fright young children was derived from hence. As for the City it self, it is seated in a fair and goodly Plain, compassed with Mountains ; the Streets paved with Freestone, and the Church (which is Cathedral) with Marble. It was first walled by *Desiderius* the last King of the *Lombards*, when he was Governour of this Province ; but for all that, was forced to submit it self to the power of the *Florentine*, by whom it was subdued Anno 1150. when as yet themselves were not the absolute Masters of their own City. 3. *Volterra* built among the Mountains, the birth-place of *Linus* Successor to *St. Peter* in the See of *Rome*. It standeth on the top of an hill, the Walls thereof made of square stone six foot long, which are very nearly joynted together without Mortar ; and in those Walls have Gates for entrance, each Gate having near unto it a very fair Fountain. The Marble Statues, and some Epi-

taphs in *Tuscan* Letters, do evidently declare it to be very ancient. In this Town was born *Rodolphus Volterrano*, one of the greatest Reformers of Learning in the West parts of the World. 4. *Mont Pulciano*, in *Latine* called *Mont Pulitimum*, a well fortified City and the birth-place of *Angelus Politianus*, the Reviver of the *Latine* or *Roman* Elegancies. 5. *Prato*, another strong piece of this part also. Neighbourd by a retiring place of the Great Dukes, called *Pratolino*, a right pleasant Village, beautified with a magnificent Palace ; in which besides many other singularities, are most curious Water-works, equal, if not superior unto those of *Tivoli*. 6. *Cortona*, an ancient City of the *Tuscans*, situate at the foot of the *Apennine* ; sold to the *Florentines* by *Ladislaus* King of *Naples*. 7. *Arezzo* or *Arezzo*, one of the ancient Cities of the *Tuscan* also, and sold to the *Florentines* as the other was, this being bought for 40000 *Florenti* of *Lewis of Anjou*, then the Pope's Viceroy in this Country. 8. *Borgo San Sepulcro*, seated on the *Tiber*, near, or within the *Spelman* Dukedom ; added to this Signory by *Cosmo de Medici*, the first of that name : by whom bought of Pope *Eugenius* IV. for the sum of 25000 *Florenti*, and laid unto the Patrimony of this Common-wealth, to which it serveth for a Bulwark on that side of this Country.

To this division also we may best refer the small, but rich Signory of *Massa*, situate on the borders of the State of *Genoa*. Chief Towns wherof. 1. *Massa* it self, which gives the title of a Marquess to the Lord thereof, of the Family of the *Malaspina*. 2. *Carara*, three miles off from *Massa*, and more near the Sea-side great fame for its Quarries of whitest Marble (much used in the time of the *Roman* greatness) and a breed of the fairest Women in Italy. The Prince hereof a Feudatory to the Duke of *Florence* ; but amongst his own vassals, Absolute enough.

2. The second member of this Estate, is the City and Territory of *PIS A*, lying towards the Sea, betwixt the *Genoese* on the West, and the Territory of *Sienna* on the East. The City first built by the *Pisjs*, a people of *Elia* in Greece ; who following old *Nistor* from *Troy*, were by the violence of the wind driven upon this Coast ; and here upon the River *Arno*, where it meeteth with *Serebio*, did erect this Town. In the distractions of the Empire it stood up for it self, and grew to potent, that at one time they waged War both with the *Florentines*, and *Genoese*. They were once Masters of *Sardinia*, *Cosica*, and the *Baleares* ; but finally, being discomfited by the *Genoese* near the Isle of *Giglio*, An. 1369, they submitted themselves to the protection of *Charles IV.* by whom it was made free. Not long after, it was taken by *John Galeazzo* the first Duke of *Milain*, Anno 1404. by *John Maria* his Son and Successor fold unto the *Florentines*, from whose command they freed themselves by popular violence. The *Florentines* upon this beliedged them, and brought them to that extremity of hunger, that they were ready to be starved. But such was the humanity of the Edifiers, that when they entered the Town, every man carried victuals in his hand in stead of Weapons, to beget, as it were, new life in that rebellious people. This victory the *Florentines* got by the valour and conduct of Sir *John Hawkwood*, whom the *Italians* call *Giovanni di Agno* ; who being first a Taylor in *Effox*, afterwards served *Edward III.* in French wars, where he was Knighted. And when upon the peace concluded after the battle of *Poitiers*, he wanted employment ; he entered with his Regiment into Italy, and put himself into the pay of the *Florentines*, then in war with this City : who for his valour, have honoured him with a very fair Tomb and Monument. When *Charles VIII.* went into Italy, the *Pisani* again revolted ; and were not

without

without much labour and great Charges, reduced to their former obedience. As for the City it self, it is almost as big as *Florence*; this being five miles in compass, and that but fix; but very short of it in the number of people, *Florence* being said to contain 90000 souls, *Pisa* not a third part of that proportion; yet hath it very good advantages to make it populous, that is to say, the publick Arsenal for shipping, an University for Students, and the See of an Archbishop: the Cathedral Church of which, is a very beautiful piece of work the Gates thereof are of Brass, and the Steeple of it of such artificial and exquisite building, that it sheweth as if it were always falling. But the unwholesomeness of the air over-balls all these fair advantages.

The next place of importance within the Territory of this City is the Town and haven of *Livorno*, (*Liburnum* it is called in *Latine*) seated upon the influx of the River *Arno*, well fortified against the *Genoese*, by whom the Works were once flighted, Anno 1297. Upon a reconciliation made between those States, it returned again to its old Masters. And when the *Pisani* were sold over to the *Florentines*, by the Duke of Milan; *Thomas Fregoso* Duke of *Genoa*, seized upon this place, and sold it also to the same Chappin, for 120000 Ducats. By the care of Duke *Cosmo* and his two Sons it is much improved in strength and beauty; and so well fortified, that it is thought to be one of the strongest Cities in *Christendom*: Cities I say, and not Castles, the Castles of *Stockholm* in *Sweden*, and that of *Milain*, being held to be the strongest Forts in the World. After this comes in *3. Petra Sandia*, on the West side of the *Arno*, (a place of great consequence and strength) one of the best pieces of the *Pisani* when a Free-Estate, against their old enemies the *Genoese*, towards whom it standeth. *4. Terracina*, Eastward of *Livorno*, neighboured with a capacious Bay on the *Mediterranean*. *5. Castellana*, an Episcopall See. *6. Porto Baratto*, bordering on the Signeury of *Siena*, now nothing but a station for Ships (not much used for that) but heretofore beautified with one of the best Cities of the *Tuscani*, called *P. Volturna*.

3. The third member of this Dukedom is the City and Territory of *SIENA*, lying betwixt the Estate of *Pisa*, and the Land of the Church. The City said to be built by *Brennus*, who did there put his old sickly men to journey, and called it *Sena*; the birth-place of *Enno Sylvius*, called afterward Pope *Pius II.* of *Francis Piccolomini*, after Pope *Pius III.* and of *Sisto* (hence surname) *Senensis*, the greatest Scholar of the three, if not of all the Age he lived in. By *Antoine* in his *Itinerary* called *Sena Julia*, to difference it perhaps from another of that name near the *Adriatick*, called *Sena Gallica*. Built near the Spring, or Fountain of the River *Arbia*, now better known by the name of *Tréffa*; but built (which makes the situation of it exceeding pleasant) upon an high Hill, on which there is a Castle that commands the Town; the Streets thereof even and very plain, centring in a large and spacious Market-place; near to which is a very fair Palace used for a Senate house in the Free-Common-wealth, and on the South-side near the Walls the Cathedral Church, reputed to be one of the fairest in *Italy*, having only one door into it, to which there is an ascent by fair Marble Stairs, of which the Pavement is made also. Having long held the *Gibeline* or Imperial Faction, it bought its liberty at an ease rate, of the Emperor *Rudolph* I. After, it fell into the hands of the *Spaniards*, then of the *French*; and finally was made over to *Cosmo de Medici* Duke of *Florence*, by the King of Spain, Anno 1558. In consideration of the great charge he had been at to beat out the *French* and other services ex-

pected for the time to come. *Cosmo* being thus invested in it, deprived the people of their Arms, altered the Government, and was the first Prince who had the absolute command of it, after the constitution of their Common-wealth, neither the *French* nor *Spaniards* ruling here as Lords, but only as called in by their several Factions; and suffered to have Garrisons in it of their own people, by the agreement of their Party. And, to say truth, it stood with good reason of State, that the *Florentine* should use all his wit to get this City; and having got it, use all means to assure it to him. For, besides that great accession which it made unto his Estate; by adding thereto the yearly income of 150000 Ducats, above all expences: it was also to be carefully looked on as a Rival, which had long time stood in competition with it, for the sovereign command of *Tuscany*. Besides there had been mighty animosities between the Cities; the *Florentine* being always of the *Guelphs*, and the *Siennoy* of the *Gibeline* Faction. A Faction at last so generally distasted in all *Italy*, and so abominable to the Popes, that on an *Ashwednesday*, when the Pope being at Athens on the Heads of the Cardinals, was to have said, *Memento, O homo, quod cinis es, et in cinerem converteris*, according to the usage of the Church of *Rome*: seeing a *Gibeline* amongst them, he forgot himself, and said thus unto him, *Memento, O homo, quod Gibellinus es, & cum Gibellinis morieris*. Of chief note next unto *Siena*, are 1. *Montalcino* (*Monte Alcinus* in *Latine*) a place of great strength both by industry and situation. *2. Castro Cartale* seated upon a lofty Hill, most memorable for the Birth and Sepulchre of *John Boccaccio*, one of the best wits of his time, as his *Decamerone* declareth; buried here with a sorry and unworthy Epitaph, not worth the labour of transcribing. *3. Sena*, an Episcopall City; as also are *4. Pienza*, *5. Grosseto*, and *6. Chiusi*, this last, the *Chiusum* of the ancient *Tuscani* spoken of before. Besides these are 26 walled Towns within this Signeury, but of no great observation in the course of business.

There belonged also unto this Common-wealth, when a State distinct, some Ports and Pieces on the Sea, which when it was configned over to the Duke of *Florence*, were retained by the *Spaniards*: partly thereby to keep those Princes at his devotion, but principally that by holding so many places of importance in his own hands, he might carry at his Girdle the Keys of *Italy*, and become Lord Paramount of those Seas. Of those the principal, if not all, 1. *Piombino*, in *Latine* called *Plumbinum*, from some Mines of Lead; adorned with a strong Castle, and a plentiful Territory: the Castle in the hands of the *Spaniards*, but the Town and Territory in possession of a Lord of its own, who receives the whole Rents of the Estate. *2. Port Telamon*, Eastward of *Piombino*, so called of old from *Telamon*, an adjoining Promontory, and known by this name in *Plutarch*, in the life of *Marine*. Accounted the chief City of *Tuscani* in those elder times, but most remarkable for the great Battle fought near unto it betwixt the *Romans* and the *Gauls*, A.D.C.529. The Army of the *Gauls* consisting of 70000 Horse and Foot; that of the *Romans* little (if at all) inferior to it. A fight in which *Antius*, one of the Consuls being slain, the Victory was gotten by *Emilius* his Colleague, with the slaughter of 40000 of the Enemies, and the taking of 10000 Prisoners: *Anerostus* and *Congolanius* two Kings of the *Transalpine Gauls* being slain or taken. A Victory which drew after it the total subjugation of the *Cisalpine Gauls*, which followed within three years after. *3. Orbelsio*, drawing more towards the East, the Cossa of the ancient Writers. *4. Monte Argentario*, a Promontory or *Peninsula*, thrusting it self into the Sea, over against *Orbelsio*, by the

*Latins*

*Latins* called *Monte Argentario*: and thought by some who have observed the situation, strength, and extent thereof to be the fittest place for a Royal City to be built in, to command those Seas. *5. Port Hercule*, which still retains its ancient name, imparted to it from some Temple of *Hercules*, which was founded in it; it situate near the Eastern Isthmus of the said *Peninsula*. *6. Porto Longone*, a piece of special consequence for command of the *Mediterranean*; and for that cause of late times gotten by the *French* (then aiming at the Conquest of *Naples*) but again recovered by the *Spaniards*, who doth now possesse it.

The fourth and last member of this Estate, are the Islands in the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas. The principal whereof is, 1. *Elba*, not above ten miles from *Piombino*, called anciently *Arbutha*, by the vulgar *Elba*. *Pliny* affirmeth it to contain in compass a hundred miles, but it proves upon a just measurement, to be but fifty. Not very well furnished with Corn, and less with fruits; but plentiful in Mines of Iron; as formerly for Steel and Copper: for which, especially for Steel, of great esteem in the time of *Virgil*, as appeareth by that passage in the tenth of his *Æneids*, where it is called

*Insula inæxhausti Calybum generosa metalli.*

A noble Isle, and known full well, Fortinckhaunted Mines of Steel.

But for all that, the Steel now failing, the want thereof is supplied by Iron; which Iron is of so strange a nature, that every 25. year it reneweth again upon the Mines, and will by no means melt whilst it is in the Island, but must be carried somewhere else. It affordeth also Sulphur, Allom, Tin, Lead, Marble good plenty; and in some parts the Loadstone also. Formerly it belonged to the Lords of *Piombino*, who not being able to defend it against the *Turks*, it they should at any time invade it, it yielded it, by the Counsel of *Charles V.* unto *Cosmo di Medici* the Duke of *Florence*: referring to themselves the Revenues of it, and the Government of all the Towns and Villages therein, except those that were thought fit for Fortification. It hath a very fair Haven called *Porto Ferravio*, capable to receive any great Fleet that should come thither, and therefore it the *Turks* and *Moss* had been Masters of it, they might easily have commanded all the Coasts adjoining, as well in *Provincia* as *Italy*. For the defence thereof, there are two strong Castles, situate on two little Mountains, on each side one; so fortified by Art and Nature, that they are held to be impregnable, having also good store of Cannon, and all sorts of Warlike Ammunition. And not far off stands a strong Town built by the same Duke *Cosmo*, and by him called *Cosmopolis*; well fortified, and made the Seat of his New Order of *St. Stephen*, of which more hereafter.

The second Island of note is *Giglio*, called *Iglium* anciently, just opposite to *Monte Argentario*, and having some 25 miles in compass; near unto which the *Genoese* fo discomitted the *Pisani* in a fight at Sea, that they were never able to recover their former puissance. *3. Capraia*, not far from *Livorno*, so called from its abundance of Goats; and for the late reason *Ægilora*, by the *Greek* Geographers: as, *4. Galiana*, not far off, took name from abundance of Hens. Of the rest nothing memorable, but that some of them do occur in the ancient Writers, of which sort are 1. *Meloria*, heretofore *Lancelus*, in which there is a very good Haven. *3. Gorgona*, *4. Tréja*, and the small Islands which are called *Fornice*. *6.* To these we may add also the Isle of *Planasia*, more memorable than the rest for the banishment and death of

*Agrippa Posthumus*, the Nephew of *Augustus Cæsar* by his daughter *Julia*; here murdered by the command of *Tiberius*, to prevent all future competition to the State Imperial, situate somewhat nearer unto *Cosima*, than the rest of these Islands.

As for the *MEDICES*, whose Posterity are now Dukes hereof, they were in the Free-State (as *Machiavel* informs us in his *Florentine History*) accounted in the chief rank of the popular Nobility: those being such of the ancient Nobles, as, to be capable of the Magistracy, and publick Offices; then wholly flung among the commons had as it were degraded themselves; and became part of the Commonalty. About the year 1410. *John de Medici*, (the first great raider of this House) hourly maintaining the Liberties of the People against the great ones; was by them to be honoured and enriched; that he not only got a great Party, but almost a Sovereignty in the City. To him succeeded his Son *Cosmo*, one of the greatest Statesmen of those times; who did not only much reform the Civil Government, but enlarged the Territory of the State by the additions of *Casentino*, *Borgo*, *St. Sepulchro*, and some other pieces. Dying in the year 1464. he left the managery of the State to *Peter de Medici* his Son, whose whole time was consumed in suppressing such Factions, as had at home been confuted against him and at his death left all his power, and the great wealth which he had gotten (but with a greater measure of his Fathers virtues) to *Lawrence* and *Julian* his two Sons. The People after his decease, either desirous of Novelties, as most people are; or fearing to be made hereditary to this powerful Family; seemed to incline to one of the *Soderini*, a man of plausible deportment, and well beloved. But he judiciously considering, that new Houses as they are easily honoured, so are they as soon abandoned by the fickle multitude; conferred all the dependencies which were cast upon him, on these two young men of the *Medici*: as being defended from a Family which had long governed the City. Against these two the *Pazzi*, a potent House in *Florence*, conspired, and at Mats they flew *Julian*, but *Lorenzo* escaped: the blows which were flung at him, being received by one of his servants, whom two days before he had delivered out of Prison. For this fact the *Pazzi* were hanged at the Palace window, together with the Archbishop of *Pisa*, who had been of the Conspiracy. To revenge the death of this Bishop, Pope *Paul II.* excommunicated the *Florentines*, and *Ferdinand* King of *Naples* warred upon them. *Lorenzo*, to divert this mischief, went in person to *Naples*: where he grew so much into the good liking of the King, that there was a perpetual League made between them. After his death 1492, his Son *Peter*, having very impropriately delivered *Pisa* and *Livorno* with other pieces, to the *French* King; was, together with his whole Family, banished. *John de Medici*, the Son of *Lawrence*, the brother of *Peter*, being made Pope, by the name of *Leo X.* restored again his Family; who not long after his death were again exiled. This disgrace *Julius de Medici*, Son to the above named *Julian*, and Pope of *Rome*, by the name of *Clement VII.* not enduring, procured *Charles V.* to bulge it; which request was granted; and the City after two years resistance, yielded. The Emperor then gave it to *Alexander Medici*, Grandchild to *Peter*, by his Son *Lawrence* Anno 1531. And he to restrain the insolencies of the people, built a strong Citadel in the Town. This *Alexander* was a Prince of good parts enough, had he not been too much addicted to Luit and Wantonness; which being observed by *Lawrence de Medici* his own Cousin, he twined him to a secret place, under colour of bringing him to the bed of a beautiful Lady, and there basely murdered him. Which done, instead of calling the people



to take Arms for recovery of their lost liberty, as he first intended; he fearfully left the City, and fled towards Venice. So that before the people had notice of the accident, the heads of the Medicei consulted together, and sent for *Cosmo di Medicei* dwelling in the Country with his mother (and then about eighteen years of age) to be their Prince: as being next heir-male which was left of the Family, according to the *Entail* (as our Lawyers call it) made by *Charles* the Emperour. This *Cosmo* proving an excellent Statesman, and a fortunate Commander, to (wayed the affairs of Italy, that *Philip II.* of Spain to be assured of his friendship, gave him the Signeury of *Sienna*, out of which he had lately driven the French; and *Pius IV.* had an intent to have crowned him King of Tuscany. But *Philip of Spain* (though otherwise his special friend) thwarted that intent, as both to have in Italy any more Kings than himself. After in the year 1570. *Pius V.* crowned the same *Cosmo* in the Court of Rome, with the title of Great Duke of Tuscany, for him and his Heirs for ever. In the new Duke's Coronet he caused to be engraven these words, *Pius Quintus Pont. Max. ob eximiam dilectionem & religionis Catholicæ zelum, præcipuumque iustitiæ studium, donavit.* Thus forward were these Popes to honour this Family; but their Successors have been otherwise affected to it. For when one of Duke *Cosmo's* Successors did first intimate a succeeding Pope, that he might be created King of Tuscany; the Pope not liking so Lordly a Title, made answer, that he was content, *He should be a King in Tuscany, but not King of Tuscany.* A Scholar-like distinction, but not so satisfactory to the point proposed.

The Princes of the House of Medicei,  
in the Free-estate.

- A. D.  
1410 1. *John di Medicei*, the first advancer of the Family to publick greatness.  
1433 2. *Cosmo di Medicei*, the Son of *John*, called the Father of the Common-wealth.  
1464 3. *Peter*, the Son of *Cosmo*.  
1472 4. *Lawrence di Medicei*, Son of *Peter*, the great advancer of Learning in Italy.  
1492 5. *Peter di Medicei*, II. exiled upon the coming in of *Charles VIII.*  
6. *Lawrence di Medicei* II. Son of *Peter*, exiled together with his Father; made Duke of Urbino by Pope Leo X. He was the Father of *Catherine di Medicei*, French Queen.

The Dukes of Florence, and Great  
Dukes of Tuscany.

- A. D.  
1531 1. *Alexander di Medicei*, the Son of *Lawrence*, the first Duke of Florence.  
1537 2. *Cosmo II.* the next Heir of *Alexander*, descended from *Lawrence*, a brother of the first *Cosmo*; the wisest Statesman of his time.  
1574 3. *Kenneth di Medicei*, Son of *Cosmo II.* Father of *Mary the French Queen*.  
1587 4. *Ferdinand di Medicei*, the Brother of *Francis*.  
1609 5. *Cosmo III.* Son of *Ferdinand*.  
1621 6. *Ferdinand II.* Son of *Cosmo di Medicei*, the twelfth of this Family, the sixth Duke of Florence, and the fifth of Tuscany.

The length of this Estate is 200 miles, the breadth in some places not much inferior, but growing narrower where it bordereth upon that of *Genoa*. In all which Tract, the Great Duke hath but one considerable Port on the main Land, which is that of *Ligore*; so that his

strength in shipping is not very great: and yet might be greater than it is, if the Subjects did delight in Traffick, and not suffer their Commodities to be bought by Strangers (as generally they do in all this Country) and carried thence in foreign Vessels. For otherwise being an industrious people, and well trained in Manufactures, their power at Sea must needs be greater than it is: the Great Dukes Fleet consisting ordinarily of no more than twelve Gallies, two Gallions, and five Galliasses. And for his Power by Land, he hath in readines sixteen thousand Foot of his own Subjects, well trained and mulctured under experienced Commanders, to serve him upon all occasions; and an hundred men at Arms, and 400 Light-horsemen, well paid, as well in times of Peace as in time of War. And besides these, he keeps so many Forts and Towns in continual Garrison, that his Estate is said to be made of Iron.

What the Revenues of it were in the Free-Estate, I am not able to determine. That they were very great is manifest, in that having in those five years, wherein they waged War against the Duke of *Milain*, spent three millions and an half of Florens; their Treasury was so far from being exhausted, that the next year they belieged and endangered the City of *Luca*. Since the altering of the Common-wealth into a Dukedom, and the addition of a Territory and City of *Sienna*: the Revenues of the Duke are conceived to be a million and an half of Ducats yearly. Of which 600,000 Crowns are raised yearly out of the Dominion of the City of *Florence*; 150,000 more out of that of *Sienna*; the Customs arising out of the Port of *Ligore*, amount yearly to 130,000 Ducats, the toll of Mill-stones only, unto 160,000; that of Salt-Mines, and Iron, falls not short of that: in all a million and 200,000 Ducats. Then hath the Duke his Stock going amongst the Bankers, and trades as much as any in the way of Merchandizing; whereas in other Countries he loseth the privileges of a Nobleman, that betakes himself to Trade and Merchandize. He useth also to buy up almost all the Corn which is brought into the Country out of other parts, and sell it again at his own price; forbidding any to be sold till all his be vendid. The rest is made up by *Excise* upon all Commodities, even unto very Herbs, and Salads, which lies very heavy on the Subject, the poor especially; inasmuch that it was tartly said, and perhaps not untrue, *Qui sub Medicis vivit, misere vivit*; applying an old Rule in a new sense.

The only Order of Knighthood in this Estate, is that of St. Stephen, instituted by *Cosmo di Medicei*, An. 1561, and dedicated to St. Stephen, because upon the Festival of Stephen, Pope and Martyr, being the sixth of August he won the famous battel of *Marciano*. Pope *Pius IV.* confirmed it the same year, and granted them all the privileges which they of *Malta* enjoy: conditioned that those of this Order should make a vow of Charity, of Conjugal Chastity, and Obedience. They are to be nobly born, and in lawful Wedlock; of the *Romish* Church, and without note of infamy. The Robe is of white Camlet, with a red Crois on their left side, as well upon their military Garment, as their wearing Cloaks: intended principally against the *Turks* and *Moor*s, for which cause he first at *Pisa*, being near the sea; but after at *Cosmopolis* in the Isle of *Iva*. The number of them is uncertain: the Great Duke the Supreme Master of it. Other Orders are commonly simple, but this mixt; being partly religious, partly honorary.

The Arms are Or, five Torteaux Gules, two, two, and one, and one in chief Azure, charged with three Flowers de Lys of the reth.

Here are in this Estate  
Archbishops 3. Bishops 26.

## The State of LUCA.

IN the West part of Tuscany, betwixt the Estate of the Great Duke, and the Common-wealth of *Genoa*, lieth the City of *LUCA*, so called from *Lucuma*, a King of the Tuscans, who is said to have built it: situate on the River *Sechia*, not far from the mountains of *Luna*, whence the Country is at this day called *Lunagiana*. It is about three miles in compass, and contains about 24,000 Inhabitants, who generally are a courteous and modest people, men of good judgment, and discreet, and by their widows have preserved themselves a free Common-wealth, notwithstanding the attempts of more powerful neighbours: and they are very industrious also, and well seen in Manufactures, especially in weaving Silks and cloth of Gold, which they taught the Florentines. The City seated in a Plain, compassed with Mountains on all sides except towards *Pistoia*: so strongly fortified by the help of Art and Nature, that this City *Zara* in *Dalmatia*, *Canea* in the Isle of *Candy*, and the Town of *Ligore*, were thought in former times (when the Art of Fortification was less known) to be the four strongest Towns in the Christian World. The streets thereof are narrow, but paved with broad Free-stone, and most easie to walk on: the buildings very fair, built of Free-stone also, and beautified with pleasant Gardens. On the North-west stands a very strong Castle, near which lieth the Cathedral, stately paved with Marble, but very dark, as most of the *Papish* Churches, to give the better colour to the burning of Tapers in the day.

In this Town was the meeting of the three great Captains, *Cesar*, *Pompey*, and *Crassus*, so pernicious to the Roman Republick. For *Pompey* desirous to maintain his authority *Cesar* to get honour, and *Crassus* to increase his wealth, here united their Councils: *Pompey's* authority to be upheld by *Cesar's* Arms, and *Crassus* his Riches; *Cesar's* continuance in his Province to be maintained by *Pompey's* Power, and *Crassus* his Money; and *Crassus* his Estate to be secured by *Pompey's* Greatness, and *Cesar's* Military Reputation. This done, they made a partition of the Roman Provinces among themselves, assigning Gaul to *Cesar*, Spain to *Pompey*, and to *Crassus*, Syria; which strong Confederacy was the cause of that alteration after followed in that State. For *Crassus* being slain not long after, *Pompey* and *Cesar* wanting a third man to poize the balance, fell first to discontents, then to Civil Wars, which at last made *Cesar* Lord of Rome. Upon which meeting, and the breach which succeeded afterwards, was grounded that so memorated speech of *Cicero*, that is to say, *Utinam Pompeius cum Cæsare societatem aut nunquam inisset aut nunquam diremisset.*

But to return again to the Affairs of *Luca*, in the declining of the Empire, it became possessed by the *Gabrs*, from them recovered by *Narvis* with the rest of Italy. After this it again followed the fortune of the Empire, till taken by Count *Rossice* the Father of that notable *Virago*, the Countess of *Mathilda*: who being deceased without Issue, and the Emperours pretending to it as to an Electate, the Citizens made a common purse, and bought their Liberty of their Emperour *Rodolphus* for 20000 Crowns. Some say the money was disbursed for them by a Cardinal. But notwithstanding this purchase and their title by it, the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria* seized upon it again: under pretence of freeing it from the faction of *Guelfus*, who had made himself absolute Master of it. By a German Garrison there left it was sold to the *Genoese*; and having passed through many hands, the Emperour *Charles IV.* got it once again:

of whom they once more purchased their desired Liberties, for 25000 Florens of Gold; and to secure themselves thereof, demolished the Castle built by *Castruccio*. But being not able to maintain it by their proper strength they have put themselves under the protection of their Potent Neighbours; changing their Patrons, as conducted most to their preservation: and finding no security from *Genoa*, and as little from *Florence*, both which they severally tried; they put themselves at last into the Protection of the Dukes of *Milain*, and in that right are patronized by the Kings of Spain.

The Territories of this City extend in compass eighty miles, the chief Town next to *Luca* itself, being that of *Luna*, a Bishops See; all the rest ordinary Farms and Villages, but of a good air, and very well peopled: which yield a Revenue to the publick Treasury of 80000 Crowns per annum; and out of which the State is able to raise (if there be occasion) about 15000 Foot, and 3000 Horse. A great strength for so small a Signeury, but all too weak to save them from the Great Duke's clutches, if he did seriously attempt to force it, and would venture on the displeasure of the Catholick King: besides that, it is thought that he receives more profit than in gifts and presents, by letting it stand as it is; than it would yield (considering the charge of keeping it) if it were his own. As for the Government thereof, the principal Magistrate is called the *Consulatore*, changeable every second month, allotted by a certain and determinate number of Citizens, whom they change every sixth month also; during which time they live together in the Palace, or common Hall. Other inferior Officers I insist not on. And for the Government of the Church, they have two Bishops only, which acknowledge the Archbishop of *Florence* for their Metropolitan.

## The Commonwealth of GENOA.

DIRECTLY West of Tuscany, from which it is divided by the River *Macra*, lieth the Country anciently called *Liguria*, now *Riviera di Genoa*, the Coast of *Genoa*, because it lieth along the Sea of *Genoa*; and by some, *Il Genovesate*, from *Genoa* the Metropolis of this Country and Commonwealth. A Commonwealth once of a large reputation and authority than it is at the present; commanding heretofore the Islands of *Cosica*, *Sardinia*, and the *Balcars*, in the *Mediterranean*; *Lesbos*, and *Chia*, with some others in the *Greekish* Seas; the Town of *Capra*, or *Theodosia*, in the *Taurican* Chersonese; *Pera*, on the other side of *Constantinople*; and a good part of *Tuscany*.

It was also then so strong both in Men and Shipping, that they sent seven federal Armies to the Wars of the Holy Land: and in the space of three days only armed once upon occasion of present service, eight and fifty Gallies, and eight *Pamphyli*; being Vessels of one hundred and forty, or one hundred and sixty Oars apiece; and at another time, one hundred and sixty six Gallies, at a sudden pinch. By the advantage of this strength, they beat the *Pisans* out of *Sardinia*, *Cosica*, and the *Balcars*, compelling them to pay 135,000 Crowns for their Peace; they got a good share in the division of the Empire of *Constantinople*, when that City was taken by the *Tatars*, and held a very strong hand over the *Venizians*. These last they had in so great an exigence, having vanquished their Fleet at Sea, and taken the Island of *Chios*, not far from *Venice*; that the Senate sent them a blank Charter bidding them write down what conditions they pleased, which should be readily condescended to. But *Pier Doria*, Admiral of the *Genoan* Fleet, unaccountably proud of his advantage, would have the City of *Venice* wholly at his own



open disposal. Whereupon the *Venetians*, now made desperate, assault the secure *Genoese*, and took an hundred of their Boats and Gallies. After which they always had the worst, losing their Islands in the *Mediterranean* to the Kings of *Aragon*, *Capua*, and *Pera* with their Islands in the *Greek Seas*, to the Great *Turks*; and full of their Holds in *Tusany*, to the *Florentines*; their power at the last being broke by the *Venetians*, that in the end they were not able to fit out a Navy fit for an enterprise. But these Misfortunes were occasioned principally by their own Divisions; the City being miserably torn in pieces by continual Factions: first between the *Doriai* and *Spicali* on the one side, the *Fisfi* and *Grimaldi* on the other, Anno 1174. Secondly of the *Nigri* and *Mollani*, against the *Salvatici* and *Emiliati*, Anno 1289. Thirdly, between the *Spicali* and *Doriai* themselves, Anno 1336. And fourthly between the Nobility and the Commons, 1339. Which Factions did so weaken them both at home and abroad, that having lost the greatest part of their Estate, they were fain to put themselves on the protection of their Neighbours to defend the rest; having now nothing left them but *Liguria*, and the Isle of *Corfica*.

1. *LIGURIA* hath on the West, the River *Varo* rising about the edge of *France*; on the East, the River *Magra*, by which parted from *Tusany*: on the North the *Apennine Hills*; and on the South the *Ligurian* or *Tyrrhenian Seas*. It is in length an hundred and forty miles; that is to say, from the Port of *Luna* in the East, to that of *Alonaco* in the West, which lie near to *Provence*; but the breadth not answerable to the length: and is divided generally into two Parts or Provinces, the East, and the West, both centring upon *Genoa* the principal City.

The old *Ligurians* were a Stout and Warlike Nation, light and swift of Body, well practised in laying Ambushes, and not discouraged by an Overthrow, but forthwith ready to fight again: to which the Nature of their Country served them very well, being Rough, Mountainous, and Woody; full of fright and dangerous Passages; and in this Tract few open Towns, but many well-fortified Castles, so that without much Labour they could neither be taken nor besieged. And if at any time they were vanquished in theopen field, they had recourse to these Castles, and other places, hemmed round about with Woods and Mountains, in which they paid their after game, and tired out their Enemies and Invaders. The principal of their Tribes were the *Decentii*, *Ossili*, *Eubariates*, and *Juganti*; all at last vanquished by the *Romans*, after the second *Punic War*: but not without much Labour and pains, by reason of the Woods, and Marshes, and Mountains, within and behind which they retired and saved themselves, inasmuch that it was held a matter of more difficulty to find than to conquer them; *Alquanto major erat labor invenire quam vincere*, are the words of my Author. They did divers times, after this, much molest the *Romans*, till at last *Pompeius* so dispossessed them, that he scarce left them Instruments to plough the Earth. So in the end they grew obedient to their Masters. In the division of whole large Territories by *Augustus Caesar*, *Liguria* was made one of the eleven Regions of Italy; as it was also one of the fifteen Provinces, into which Italy was divided by the Emperor *Constantine*: *Milain* at that time the *Metropolis* or Head-City of it. What kind of men they were in the breaking of the Western Empire, may be known by their actions both by Sea and Land, spoken of before: now more addicted to Merchandise than war, but most of all to Usury. A Vice which the Christians learned of the *Jews*, and are now thought to equal, if not exceed their Teachers. It was the saying of a merry fellow, that

in Christendom there were neither Scholars enough, Gentlemen enough, nor *Jews* enough. And when Answer was made, that of all these there was rather too great a plenty than any scarcity, he replied, that if there were Scholars enough, so many would not be double or treble benefited; if Gentlemen enough, so many Peasants would be bankrupt among the Gentry; and if *Jews* enough, so many Christians would not prolefs *Gentry*. The women are very fair and comely, wearing for the most their hair in tresses which they call over their backs: they wear no upper Garments but of Cloth, as being only allowed by the Laws; but their under Garments of the purest fluff. The women here are privileged above all in Italy, having free leave to talk with whom they will, and be courted by any that will, both privately and publicly. Which liberty it is likely they gained at such time as the French were Masters of this Estate; who do allow their Wives such excess of liberty, as no Italian would allow of: in a common *Cartizan*. And though it cannot be affirmed, that the women of the Country or the City it self, do abuse this liberty; yet the Italians being generally of a different humour, reckon them to be at fault as flame; as they esteem the *German Merchants* (who make little reckoning of their promises, if not bound by writing) to be men without faith. Of which and other things concerning this Estate, they have made this Proverb, *Montagne senza legami*, &c. that is to say, *Mountains without Wood, Sea without Fish, Men without Faith, and Women without Shame*.

The Country, as before said, is very mountainous in the In-lands, and full of craggy Rocks towards the Sea: so that by Sea and Land it is very ill travelling. But amidst those Hills are Valleys of as rich a soil, as most others in Italy, abounding in Citrons, Limons, Olives, and Granges, and the like fruits; with such variety of Flowers at all times of the year, that the Markets are seldom unfurnished of them in the month of December. It yieldeth also great plenty of most pleasant Wines, which the Inhabitants call *La Vermozza*; and another which they call *Le Lagrime di Christo*, or *Lacryme Christi*: this last is pleasing to the taste, that it is said, a *Dutchman* tasting of it as he travelled in these parts, fetcht a great sigh, and brake out into this exclamation: How happy had it been with us, *St. Christ! lacrymatus esset in nostris regionibus*, if Christ had shed some of his tears in the Country of *Germany*! Their greatest want is that of Corn and therewith they do supply themselves out of other places.

The principal Towns and Cities of it in the Eastern part, are, 1. *Sarenzosa*, a strong Fortres against the *Florentines*, and one of the best pieces of this Republick. 2. *Porto-Renuiti* (or *Porto Renuiti*, as the Latines call it) of as great consequence as that, but possessed by the *Spaniards*. 3. *Lerigian* (aven in the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian Sea*, 4. *Sevria*, a reasonable good place, remarkable for a white Ecad, and as pleasant Wine as any in Italy. 5. *Fino*, a Haven or Port Town, not far from *Genoa*, anciently called *Torvis Delfinum*. Few of the Towns in this part are of any greatness: but they are set so thick, and intermingled with so many goodly houles both on the Hills and the Valleys, that for the space of twenty miles, the whole Country seems to be one continual building.

In the West part the Town of most importance are 1. *Monaca*, of old called *Monaccus*, and *Portus Herculis* beautified with a commodious Haven: belonging not long since to the *Spaniards*, who bought it for 100000 Crowns of the *Grimaldi*, then its proper Owners; but of late gotten by the French under colour of a late contract. 2. *Ventimiglia*, a good Town, and sweetly seated. 3. *Savona*, taken by the *Genoese*, Anno 1250, before which time it had a Prince of its own. Remarkable for the interview betwixt *Ferdinand the Catholic* and *Lewis XII. of France*, Anno 1507, who

who having been deadly enemies, upon the taking of the Realm of *Naples* from the French by the *Spaniards*, met at this Town, and here most strangely relied upon one another: *Lewis* first boarding *Ferdinand's* Gally; and *Ferdinand* for divers days feasting with *Lewis* in this Town then in his possession, as Protector of the Estate of *Genoa*. Which kind of interview (I note this only by the way) as they chance but seldom; so when they do, they prove for the most part dangerous unto one of the parties: great enemies not being easily forgot by persons of a common Intellig. Nay, that notable Statesman *Philip de Comines* utterly disliketh all such meetings of Princes, though in amity and good correspondence with one another; as many times producing effects quite contrary to their expectations. And this he proveth by the example of *Lewis XI. of France*, and *Henry of Castile*: who meeting purposefully, Anno 1463, to change more friendly words together, took such dislike at each others persons and behaviours, that they never loved one another after it. The like example he bringeth of an interview betwixt *Edward IV. of England*, and the same King *Lewis*: and betwixt *Frederick the Emperour*, and *Charles Duke of Burgundy*; with divers others. His reason I purposely omit, as not pertinent to my present undertaking, and make haste again unto the Town: which is about a mile and an half in circuit, and hath many stately buildings in it. It was called anciently *Sabato* or *Sabatia*, and hath been under the command of divers Lords: being taken from the *Genoese* by the *Visconti*, and the *Sforzas*, Dukes of *Milain*, from them by the French, and at last recovered again by those of *Genoa*. I further note, that this one Town hath yielded to the Church of *Rome* three Popes, viz. *Gregory VII. Julius II. and Sixtus IV.* which is as much as *Genoa* it self can brag of. 4. *Nola*, upon the Sea-side, a commodious Haven. 5. *Finali*, a goodly Port-Town also, and very well fortified: honoured a long time with the Title of a Marquisate, one of the seven founded by the Emperor *Obbo*, (of which more hereafter) but taken from the last Marquis by the Count of *Fuenter*, then Governor of *Milain* for the King of *Spain*, and Garrisoned being put off with an Annual Pension, Anno 1602. 6. *Nilefimo*, a small Town adjoining, possessed upon the same right by the *Spaniards* also; who by these pieces hath a strong command on the Trade of *Genoa*. 7. But the great Ornament of those parts of Italy, is the City of *Genoa*, first built, say some, by *Janus* the Son of *Samus*, as others say, by *Tamus Genim Priscus*, an Italian or *Tuscan* King. But by whomsoever it was built, certain it is, that it was miserably destroyed by *Mago* the Brother of *Anibal*, repaired by *Lacertius Servius*, at the command of the Senate of *Rome*, for whose cause and quarrel it was ruined: once again spoiled and wasted by *Roboris* a great Prince of *Lombards*, Anno 650, or thereabouts: but built more beautiful than before by *Charles the Great*. On his foundation it now stands, situate on the shore of the *Ligystic* or *Ligurian Seas*, to which, being partly built on the declivity of an hill, full of stately Palaces, it giveth a most pleasant and magnificent prospect. It is in compass six miles, of an Obicular form, fortified towards the Sea by Art: towards the Land by Art and Nature: there being, but one way to come to it by Land, and that over steep and craggy Rocks. The Streets are narrow, paved with Flint, and most of them on the sides of the Hill; which is the reason that they use Horse-litters here instead of Coaches, and most of the better sort are carried on mens shoulders in *Sedans* or Chairs: which from hence came to be their into *England*. But that which they call *La Strada*

*Nuova*, or the *New Street*, reaching from the West to North-east, is of a very fair breadth: each house whereof is built with such Kingly Magnificence, that it is said the Buildings for the height of two Stories are made of Marble, curiously wrought; but the Laws forbid Marble to be used any higher: The Haven of it is very fair and capacious, safe from the violence of Tempests, and well fortified: so that the *Spaniards* use to say, that were the Catholic King absolute Lord of *Milain* in *Provence*, and *Genoa* in Italy he might command the whole World. After the re-creating of it by *Charles the Great*, the People here continued subject to his Successors; till the *Berengarii*, as Kings of Italy, were free, Anno 899. in which condition they remained till the year 1318. when being shrewdly weakened in their Estate, they were fain to give themselves to Pope John XXII. after to *Robert King of Naples*. But being soon weary of a foreign Government, the people in a popular tumult made choice of one *Simon Boccanegra*, to be their Duke, Anno 1339. which Government continued till the French were called in by the *Guelph* Faction, in the reign of *Charles VII.* under whom they continued thirteen years; and then expelling them the French for their many insolencies, they put themselves under the protection of the Dukes of *Milain*, Anno 1403. Long time they lived under the protection of those Princes, in great tranquillity, who never carried towards them any rigorous hand; save that once Duke *Lodowick Sforza* exacted of them a great mass of money. But as the tale goeth, his Agent being invited to the house of a *Genoese*, and walking in a Garden with him, was shewed an herb growing there, called *Plantif*, which froaking gently he smelt thence a most pleasing savour, but as unfavourable a smell when he strained it hard. The *Genoese* hereupon inferred, Sir, if our Lord Duke *Lodowick* will gently stroke the hand of his puissance against this City, it will prove pliant to him by obedience; but may chance to prove rebellious if he do oppress it. But *Lodowick* being taken Prisoner by King *Lewis XII.* they first came under the command of the French, and then of the *Spaniards*, according as those Nations had possession of the State of *Milain*; and after many changes and alterations, obtained again their freedom of King *Francis I.* Which being not able to preserve by their proper strength, they finally put themselves under the shelter of the *Spaniards*, who is now their Protector; and that not for nought; he being indebted to them, Anno 1600, a Million and an half of Gold; that being the remainder of 18 Millions, cut off by the Pope's Authority; that if the King might be indebted to that See, for most of his Lands were formerly engaged to the Money-Masters of this City. The same course of non-payment the King took with the rest of his Creditors in *Florence*, *Augsburg*, and the rest, inasmuch that it was commonly said in Italy, that the King of *Spain* had made more ill faces upon the exchange in one day, than *Michael Angelo* the famous Painter, had ever made good in all his life. And thus you see this great City which commanded the Ocean, the Lady of so many Islands, and a great Moderator of the affairs of Italy, fain to put her self into the protection of a foreign Prince, and that too at the charge of a great deal of Treasury: which he continually raiseth from them in the way of Loan, of which he often proves but a sorry Pay-master. And if the Wars he had with *England* did he drain their purses (for it was that War, and the War which he had in the *Netherlands*, that made him so indebted to the Banks of *Genoa*) no question but the revolt of *Catalague*, and the lasting Wars made against him by the French in so many places,

places, have plunged him in as deep as ever. Which notwithstanding this people do to thrive under his protection, and draw to great commodity from their Trade with Spain, that it is thought their private men were never richer, the publick Treasury never fuller than it is at the present.

**CORSICA** is an Island in the *Ligulick* or *Ligurian* Sea, opposite to the City of *Genoa*, from whence it is distant about sixty miles; and lying juft North of the Isle of *Sardinia*, from which it is distant seven miles. It comprehends in length an hundred and twenty miles, in breadth, and three hundred twenty five in circuit; and lyeth under the fifth Climate, the longest day being almost fifteen hours.

The people are stubborn, poor, unlearned; fupposed to be more cruel than other Nations, and so affirmed to be by *Cæsar* in his Book of *Commentaries*; the Progeny, as some say, of the 52 Daughters of *Thetis*, who being all got with child in one night by *Hercules*, were by their Father put to the mercy of the Sea; by which they were brought unto this Island, after peopled by them. From one of these Sons named *Cyrus*, the Island had the name of *Cyrus*, by which it oftentimes occurh in some old Greek Writers. This is the conceit of *Fabius Pictor*, one of *Annius* his Authors. And that of *Enstadius*, a far more credible Writer, is not much unlike, who will have it called *Corfica* from a woman so named, dwelling in the coast of *Liguria*; who following her Bull hither, was the first that discovered it. But these Originals I look on, the first especially, as the worst kind of *Romanesque*: the name of *Cyrus* being more like to be derived from the *Phœnic*, *Korashib*, which signifies a horn or corner, by reason of the many Promontories with which it is fringed, as the Sea. *Corfica insula multis promontoriis angulisq; est*, as it is in *Idore*, lib. 15. cap. 6. And for the name of *Corfica*, I should derive it rather from the *Corfi* (by which name the Inhabitants heretofore are called in most *Latine* Writers) one of the two Nations of most note in the neighbouring Island of *Sardinia*. *Celeberrimi in ea populum Balaris, & Corfi*, as we find in *Pliny*. *Corfi*, or some of them, being overborn by some new Invaders (which the Island of *Sardinia* was seldom free of) were faine to shift their seat, and came over hither.

This Country yieldeth excellent Dogs for game, good Horses, fierce Mastiffs, and a beast called *Musli*, not found in *Europe*, excepting in this Island, and *Sardinia* only; but there called *Misfones*, or *Murionas*, (for I conceive they are the same under divers names) said to be horned like Rams, and skinned like Stags; whose skin is of such incredible hardness, that the beast being cast headlong against a Rock, receives no hurt, but nimbly flies from his Enemy to his Den.

The soil by reason of the Mountains (which every where are too thick and barren in it) is not very fruitful, producing Corn in its plenty, but the best Wines, and such as the old *Romans* will relish, in good measure. It produceth also Oyl, Figs, Raisins, and Honey; the first three in a mediocrity of goodness, the last somewhat bitter, and by many deemed unwholesome. The Tree called *Taxus*, whose poisonous Berries, though it is useless, are much set on by Bees, and therefore thought to be the cause of the bitterness of the Honey. In some few places where the Rivers have their currents, especially towards *Liguria*, it recompenseth by its fertility, in bearing all manner of grain, the barrenness of the mountains. Which mountains cutting through the midst of it, divide the whole Island into *Cismontanium*, being that towards *Genoa*; and

*Transmontanium*, lying towards *Sardinia*; yet so, that the people on each side call themselves the *Cismontanes*, and the other the *Transmontanes*. Both of them speak a corrupt *Italian*, in which there is not a little mixture of *French* and *Spanish*.

For Rivers, there are none of note; the principal of those which the Island yields, being called *Gelo*, and *Trasignano*. And as for Cities, some of the Ancients reckoned 33; which *Strabo* doth conceive to be Castles on lyeth there being but four Towns or Cities in it in his time: of which four, two were *Roman* Colonies, the one planted by *Marius*, called *Mariana*; the other by *L. Sylla*, in the Town called *Alleria*; a place of some Antiquity before that time, and at this day a Bishop's See. But now the place of most importance, is the Town of *Bastia*, seated in the North-east part of the Island, opposite almost unto *Alleria*, with a commodious Haven to it, and a strong Garrison to defend it: as being the ordinary seat of the Governour sent hither from *Genoa*; and of the Bishop of *Alleria*, who makes there his residence. 2. *Aiazze*, a reasonable strong Town, and a Bishop's See; and so is also 3. *Nebbi*, called *Chastum* by *Polomy*. Then there is 4. *Porto Tredici*, built not long since in the place of an old decayed Haven, and peopled by a Colony sent from *Genoa*. 5. *St. Florence* a Port-town in the Northern part in the midst betwixt *Nebbi* and *Mariana*; and 6. *St. Basijace*, called by *Polomy*, *Portus Syracusanus*, juft opposite unto it in the South corner of the Isle; both of them places of good safety, and capable of the greatest Vessels that frequent those Seas.

Who were the first Inhabitants is not easily known. That the *Phœnicians* or *Tyrians* had some footing here, is manifest by that of *Callimachus* an old Greek Poet, who calleth it *Βονίαια*. *Kuyō*, the *Phœnic* *Cyrus*; and by that of *Diodorus Siculus*, affirming that the *Carthaginians* and *Tyrrheni* (which questionless he mistook for *Tyrii*) call the *Phœnices* out of this Island. But whether these *Phœnices* first inhabit, or only had a Colony in some part thereof, is not demonstrable from those Authors. The *Carthaginians* after this made a Conquest of it, and held it till the time of the first *Punic War*; when they were driven thence by the valour of *Cælius Scipio*. Yet was it not totally subdued, nor brought into the form of a *Roman* Province, till some time after; when it was fully conquered by *C. Papirius*, A. U. C. 541. This Island and *Sardinia* at the first being joined together, governed by one *Pætor* only; but afterwards made two distinct Provinces, immediately subject to the *Pæfett* of the City of *Rome*, and consequently members of the *Roman* Patriarchate. In the falling of the *Roman* Empire, it became a prey unto the *Vandals*, who used to send their condemned persons out of *Africa* hither, to fell Timber for shipping; the Country even till then being very much over-grown with Woods. Afterwards with the rest of the Islands of the *Mediterranean*, was under the power of the *Saracens*, against whom *Adonis* the Count or Governour of *Genoa* armed a Fleet of Gallies, and vanquished them in a fight at Sea, but lost his life in the action; which notwithstanding the *Genoese* following their good fortune, seized on the Island, and carried thence thirteen of the Enemies Ships. The *Pisani* after this got possession of it, but being vanquished by the *Genoese* in the fight near *Giglia* (before mentioned) they were faine to leave it to the Conquerors. Since that, it hath always followed the fortune of *Genoa*, save that it remained somewhat longer than that City did in the hands of the *French*, who in the year 1554. seized on it by the aid of the *Turks*, whom (to the great dishonour of Christianity) they entertained in their Wars against *Charles V.* but in the end, restored it to the Common-

Common-wealth, upon the peace made betwixt *France* and *Spain*, Anno 1559. And for securing of this Island to the state of *Genoa*, they fell upon this handsome project: employing none but natural *Genoese* to serve in the Garrisons of the Islands, the better to keep under this untractable People; and filling all their Garrisons upon the Continent with natural *Genoese*, whereby the Island is furnished of its ablest men, who also serve for *Hypothec* of the Publick Faith.

Having thus took a brief view of the several parts and members of this *Commonwealth*, let us next look upon the whole, as to the Government, Forces, and Revenue of it. First for the Government, the principal of their Magistrates hath the name of *Duke*; as titular as the Duke of *Venice*, but of less esteem: that Duke continuing in his Office for term of life, but this being alterable and removed at the two years end. So that he may be called most properly the *Mayor* of *Genoa*. For this two years he dwells in the publick Palace, and hath 500 *German* for the Guard of his Person; in nothing like a Prince but that: and for that time, he alone hath the power of propounding any thing to the Senate, which carrieth some resemblance of a *Negative Voice*. His time expired, he returns unto his house as a private Person, but so, that during life he hath the Office of a *Procurator* in the Common-wealth. To him there are assitant eight principal Officers, who fit upon the same Form with him, and continue in their Office for two years also; which eight, together with the Duke, are called the *Signeury*; but he, and they in matters of most weight and moment, subordinate to the *General Council*, consisting of 400 Persons, all of them Gentlemen of the City; who with the nine before remembered do constitute the body of the Common-wealth. Under this form they have continued, ever since by the power and Goodness of *Andrea Doria* (who might have made himself their Prince); they were discharged of their Subjection to the *French*, Anno 1581. never in danger of relapsing to their former servitude, but in the reasonable practice of the *Fijchi*, a remarkable Family of the City; who hoping to possess themselves of the *Principality* under Protection of the *French*, had so laid their plot, that *Augustine di Fijchi*, who was designed to be their Duke, had in the night time seized on the Navy, and slain *John Doria* who had the command thereof. But leaping from one *Gally* to another, to make sure of all, stumbled and fell into the Sea, where he and his ambitious treasons were both drowned together.

As for their Forces, there are within the *Signeury* 10000 men ready to arm at any time, as they see occasion; 25 Gallies already ready in the Publick Arsenal, and four continually at Sea for defence of their Trading. Sufficient strength to save them from a petty force, though not to guard them from the power of a strong Invader. But the chief strength which they rely on, is the King of *Spain*; whose protection, though it costs them dear, is worth their money; and they have professed to well by it, that notwithstanding all the Losses which they have sustained, it is supposed that the Revenue of the Common-wealth (besides the Treasury of *St. George*, which is very rich, and managed as a distinct body from the Publick, by its own Officers) amounteth to no less than 430000 Crowns per annum.

As for the Treasury of *St. George*, though it contain no part of the publick Patrimony, but be governed by its own Officers, as a State distinct; yet is it of such ready use, so able at all times to furnish the Republick with vast sums of money; that the security and preservation of this Common-wealth depends much upon it. The Institution and Administration whereof, together with

the benefit which from hence reboundeth unto this Estate, I cannot better present to the Readers View, than in the words of *Machiavel*, the greatest Politick of his times; who in his History of *Florence* hath expressed it thus: "Fuit ditissimum illud bellum quod *Genoenses* *maius* abbas cum *Venetis* gesserit, &c. After that tedious War between the *Genoese* and *Venetians*, was ended in the year 1281. and that the *Genoese* found themselves unable to repay those moneys, which they had taken up of their private Citizens in pursuit thereof, they thought it best to assign their ordinary Taxes over to them, that so in read of time the whole debt might be satisfied; and for that end allotted them a Common Hall, there to deliberate and determine of their Affairs. These men, thus made the Masters of the publick Taxes, elect among themselves a Common-Council of an hundred; and over them eight Officers of especial power, to order and direct the rest, and to dispose of the *Intrada*: which Corporation so established, they intituled *St. George* Bank. It happened afterward, that the Republick wanting more moneys, was glad to have recourse unto *St. George*; who growing wealthy by the orderly managing of his stock, was best able to relieve them in their necessities: and as before they assigned their Taxes over to him, he now dischargeth them from oppressing them, they mortgaged all their Domain. So that *St. George* continually waxing richer, and the State poorer, this Corporation became possessed at last, of almost all the Towns and Territories of the Common-wealth: all which they governed by their own Magistrates, chosen by common suffrage from among themselves. It followed hereupon, that the common People bearing less respect unto the Publick, applied themselves unto *St. George*; this being always orderly and prudently governed; that many times inclining to Tyranny; this never changing Officers, or form of Government, that subject to the proud ambitious lusts of each Ultrap, whether Domestick or Foreign. Insumuch that when the two potent Families of the *Freggi* and *Adorni*, contended for the Sovereignty in this Estate, most of the People looked upon it as a quarrel which concerned them not: *St. George* not medling more in it, than to take an Oath of the prevailing Faction, to preserve his liberties. *Rarissimi sunt exopto*, &c. A most excellent and rare thing (saith he) never found out by any of the old *Philosophers* in their imaginary Forms of a Common-wealth, that in the same State, and the same People, one may see at the same time both Tyranny and Liberty, Justice and Oppression, Civility and Misgovernment: This only Corporation preserving in the Common-wealth its ancient Laurels. So that in case *St. George* should in the end become possessed of the remainder of the Patrimony and Estate thereof, as it is possible it may, the State of *Genoa* might not alone be equalled with that of *Venice*, but preferred before it. So far, and to this purpose that great Master of *Statecraft*; a man of less impicity, and more regular life, than some of those who have traduced him for an Atheist.

Here are within this Common-wealth,  
Archbishops 1. Bishop 14.

## The Estates of LOMBARDY!

**L**OMBARDY is bounded on the East with *Romandolia*, and the Estate or Territory of *Ferrara*; on the West, with that part of the *Alpes*, which divides *Italy* from *France*; on the North (reckoning *Marca Trevigiana* within the bounds heretofore) with that part

R parts

part of the *Alpi* which lieth towards *Germany*; and on the South, with the *Apeninæ*, which parteth it from *Liguria*, or the State of *Genoa*.

It was called anciently *Gallia Cisalpina*, whereof we shall speak more anon; and took this new name from the *Lombards* or *Longobardi*, a people of *Germany* (of whom we have already spoken), but shall speak more at large when we come to *Hungary*, who coming out of *Pannonia* possessed themselves of a great part of *Italy*, but left their name to this Tract only. A Tract of ground of which it may be truly said, that *Italy* is the Garden of *Europe*, for *Lombardy* is the Garden of *Italy*, or the fairest Flower in all that Garden. A Country of so rich a mixture, that such another piece of ground for beautiful Cities, goodly Rivers, for Fields and Pastures shaded with such excellent fruits, for plenty of Fowl, Fish, Corn, and Wine, cannot be found again in our Western World. So that it is no wonder, that the two great Kings of *France* and *Spain*, have strived so eagerly, and with such an effusion of Christian blood for the Duchy of *Milain*, a part only (though the richest part) of this goodly Country; and but a spot of Earth compared to their own Dominions.

Anciently it was of more extent than now it is, containing besides the Principalities hereafter mentioned, the Provinces of *Romandiola*, and *Trevisiana*; even all, which in the infancy and growth of the *Roman* Empire, had the name of *Gallia Cisalpina*: Called *Gallia* from the *Gauls*, who being drawn over the *Alpi* by the taste of the sweet *Italian* Wines, in the time of *Tartaricus Priscus* King of *Rome*, under the conduct and command of *Telozeus* Son of *Ambrigenus* King of the *Celte*, subdued the *Natives*, and possessed themselves of all the Country, from the West parts of the *Tyber* Sea and *Apenine* Hills to the *Adriatick*; and from the *Alpi* to the River *Rubicon* on the Northeast, and the River *Arno* on the South-East. *Cisalpina* it was called because it lay on that side of the *Alpi* which was near to *Rome*, to difference it from *Gallia* on the other side of the Mountains; which had the name of *Transalpina*. It was also called *Gallia Togata* because the people of it being civilized, conformed themselves to the *Roman* habit: that on the other side of the *Alpi* being called *Breacata* because they kept themselves to their former Mantles (resembling those now worn by the vulgar *Irish*) which by the *Latines* were called *Breacæ*. For though the word *Breacæ* in some of our common Dictionaries be rendered Gally-flops or Breaches (and possibly the word *Breaches* may be thence derived) which made me conceive that the habit heretofore of those *Gauls* was a kind of *Trowsers*, such as those usually worn by the *Irish* Foot-men: yet when I find in approved Authors, that it was *Tunica Sago impolita*, a Garment which they wore over their Coats and Calfs, I conceive I had good reason to translate it otherwise.

They were generally divided into four great Nations, that is to say, 1. the *Isabres*, inhabiting from the *Alpi* to the River *Arno*, and consequently spreading over the Dukedoms of *Milain*, *Parma*, *Modena*, *Mantua*, *Piemont* and some part of the Dukedom of *Florence*: 2. The *Cenomani* and who lay next the *Isabres*, possessing the greatest part of *Trevisiana*: 3. The *Boii*, taking up the rest of *Trevisiana*, with the Dukedom of *Ferrara*, and so much of *Romandiola* as lieth on the North-West side of the River *Rubicon*: 4. The *Senones*, who passing over the *Rubicon* inhabited the rest of *Romandiola* and the Dukedom of *Urbino*. Of these the *Senones* (or *Semnonæ* as *Ptolemy* calls them) were of greatest fame. These were the men that under the conduct of *Brennus*, having defeated the *Roman* Armies at the Battle of *Alia*, followed their victory unto *Rome*, which they sacked and burned: no-

thing made good in all the City but the *Capitol* only, which also had been taken by them, *ni anseris diu dormitibus vigilasset*, as *S. Augustine* tells it; the *Geese* had been more watchful than their Gods or Guards. Failing herein they compounded for 1000 pound weight of Gold to forsake the City: but before the money was received, they were assaulted by *Camillus*, driven out of the Town, and vanquished in a set Battle, about eight miles off; who is therefore called *Rome's second Founder*. This happened *Anno U. C. 364*. Vanquished again at the River *Arno*, by *T. Quintius* the Dictator: and after that *Anno U. C. 404*, by the said *Camillus* being then 80 years of age, in the *Pontine* fields: they got the *Boii* to assist them, and after joined with the *Sannites*, *Tuscani*, and other Nations in a common War. But being for the most part beaten, and the War carried to their own doors a little before the coming of *Pyrrhus* into *Italy*, by *M. Curius*, the Consul: they were by him driven out of their own Country; and finally got slaughtered by *Dolabella* at the Lake of *Vadimon*, *Anno U. C. 470*, that there was scarce any left of that Nation, to brag that any of their Ancestors had set fire on *Rome*.

The *Senones* being thus destroyed, the *Romans* suffered the rest of the *Gallick* Nations to remain in quiet till the end of the first *Punic* War, when being grown of more strength, and at very good leisure, they took up Arms against the *Boii*, who fearing the like fortune as the *Senones* had found before, called to their Aid both the *Isabrians* and *Transalpines*; making in all an Army of 50000 Foot, and 20000 Horse. *An. U. C. 528*. Discomfited by *Emilius* the *Roman* Consul, near *Talamon* a City of *Tuscany*, with the slaughter of 40000 of their men; they were set upon in their own Country shortly after by the Consul *Flaminius*, vanquished and maled with the loss of one half thereof: most of them after this disaster passing into *Germany*, where we are like to hear more of them. And for the *Isabres* and *Cenomani*, being thus left unto themselves (the remainders of the *Transalpines* excepted only) they were invaded the next year after, (*Anno U. C. 431*) under the Consuls *M. Claudius Marcellus* and *Cornelius Scipio*: to whom upon the loss of their Armies, and some of their best Towns, they did yield themselves: the *Romans* to becoming Masters of all this Country. And yet it was accounted as a Province divided from *Italy*, until the settling of the Empire in *Augustus Caesar*, who dividing *Italy* into eleven Regions, made three of them out of this *Cisalpina*; that is to say, *Gallia Venetia*, and *Italia Transpadana*: as afterwards it made up four of the seven Provinces of the *Dioecesis* of *Italy*, according to the distribution of it which was made by *Constantine*. How it came with the rest of *Italy* into the power of the *Lombards*, and how from them taken by the *French*, with the rest of that Kingdom, had been shewn already. Won by the *French*, and from the *French* transferred with the Empire to the Kings of *Germany*: it did so far preserve the reputation of a Kingdom, that the Emperours were sometimes Crowned at *Milain* with an Iron Crown for the Kingdom of *Lombardy*: as at *Alger* (a Town of *Cleveland*) with a Silver Crown for the Realm of *Germany*; and with a Golden Crown at *Rome*, for the sacred Empire. But the Emperour being weakened by the Artifices of the Popes of *Rome*, this goodly Country was torn from it; and parcelled, in conclusion, amongst many Princes, as it still continueth.

The *Lombards* being Masters of it, and having given it their own name, divided it by the River *Po* into *Longobardia Cispadana*, lying betwixt the *Po* and the *Apenine* Mountains: and *Transpadana*, lying betwixt the *Po* and the *Alpi*: the first of which the old *Romans* called *Emilia*, from *Emilius Lepidus*, the

Founder

Founder of the City of *Reggio* (then called *Regium Lepidi*) once Proconsul of it. In the division of *Italy* by *Augustus Caesar* it had the name of *Gallia*. The other was by him honoured with the name of *Italia Transpadana*, by which name it was known in the times of *Tacitus*; and by him called, *Florentissimum Italie latæ*, the most flourishing part of all *Italy*. But this division being long since worn out of use, and the whole Country being cantoned into many *Elates*, as before was said, we will consider it at the present as it stands divided into the Dukedoms of *Milain* and *Mantua*, which with *Trevisiana*, described already, make up *Transpadana*; and those of *Modena*, *Parma*, and *Monferrat*, which with the Principate of *Piemont*, make up *Cispadana*.

## The Dukedom of MILLAIN.

THE Dukedom of *MILLAIN* hath on the East, the *Elates* of *Mantua* and *Parma*; on the West, *Piemont*, and some part of *Switzerland*, one of the Provinces of the *Alpes*; on the North *Marca Trevisiana*; and on the South, the *Apeninæ* which parteth it from *Liguria*, or the State of *Genoa*. In elder times the habitation of the *Isabres*, originally a Tribe of the *Hedui* inhabiting in those parts of the *Gallia* above the *Alpes*, which now make up the Dukedom of *Burgundy*: but crossing the Mountains with the rest of the *Gallick* Nation, spoken of before, they settled here, built the City of *Milain*, and finally became one of the greatest Tribes of the *Cisalpinae Gauls*: from thence, this Country hath the name of *Isabrian Ducatus* in some of the nearer Modern Writers; but commonly is called *Ducatus Mediolanensis*, from *Mediolanum*, or *Milain*, the chief City of it.

Principal Rivers of it, 1. *Padus*, 2. *Addua*, 3. *Olliv*, and 4. *Ticinus*; of which some what hath been said already; and besides those it hath also in it the Lake called anciently *Lacus Larius*, but now *Lago di Como* (from the City of *Como* which it neighboureth) 60 miles in length.

The chief Cities and places of note are, 1. *Modetum*, not far from *Milain*, of more fame than greatness; the fame thereof arising from the Iron Crown kept in a Monastery here, wherewith some of the Emperours have been crowned by the Archbishops of *Milain*. A custom taken up from the Kings of *Ostrogoths*, who are said to have first used the same, in testimony that they had won their Estates by Iron. 2. *Pavia*, or *Papia*, seated on the Flood *Ticinus*, united to *Milain* by *John Galeazi*, the first Duke thereof, made an University by *Charles IV.* *Anno 1361*. And famous for the Battle in which *Francis I.* of *France* was taken Prisoner by *Charles V.* *Anno 1555*. It is seated, as before was said, on the Flood *Ticinus*, about four miles from the *Po*, or *Padus*: the River carrying at this City so great a breadth, that the Bridge over it is no less than 200 walking paces long, built of Free-stone, and covered over-head with a roof supported all along with Pillars. From this River the City it self was anciently called *Ticinum*: and took the name of *Papia* from its great affection to the Popes; or, as some say, *quasi Patria piærum* (the two first syllables of those words being joined together) by reason of the many goodly men it did produce. It lieth in length from East to West, a very fair Street dividing it in the very midst: on the West side whereof are two handsome Marbled-palaces, and a strong Castle built by *Galeazi*, the first Duke of *Milain*; whose Tomb, together with that of *Leopoldus* King of the *Lombards*, are here still remaining; the Kings of *Lombardy* being so pleased with

the situation of the place, that they made it the Seat-Royal of that Kingdom. The Cathedral here is one of the best endowed in *Italy*, if not in *Europe*; the Revenues of it amounting to 30,000 Crowns per annum. 3. *Como*, the birth-place of both the *Plinies*; a rich and handfom Town situated on the South-side of the *Lacus Larius*, which from this Town hath now the name of *Lago di Como*: into which Lake and through it runs the *Addua*, and yet the waters do not mingle: that of the River passing over those of the Lake. About this Lake are many fair Houses and handfom Villages, which do much beautifie the places; and in the midst thereof an Island called *Comacina*, in which there was a strong Fortress in former times, wherein the *Longobardian* Kings did preserve their Treasure. 4. *Lodi*, or *Lauda* in the *Latine*, seated in a prosperous foil, and blessed with a painful and industrious people. 5. *Novara*, situate upon a high hill, in which live many ancient and noble Families: of right belonging to the *Spaniards*, as Dukes of *Milain*; but at the time when *Magnum* wrote, consigned over upon some conditions to the Dukes of *Parma*. But this Town, though it appertained to the Dukes of *Milain*, is situate within the Dukedom of *Monferrat*; and so is, 6. *Alexandria* also, once a poor small Village, known by the name of *Robertum* from a Grove of Oaks adjoining to it: afterwards being raised to its present greatness, by the joint Purges of the Citizens of *Cremona*, *Milain*, and *Placentia*; in honour of the Emperour it was called *Cæsaræa*. But in short time these people siding with the Popes, drew on themselves the anger of the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossæ*; who having in a manner demolished the City of *Milain*, the people thereof, at the destruction of the City, retired to this Town; calling it in honour of Pope *Alexander III.* whose part they then took against the Emperour, by the name of *Alexandria*, which it still retaineth. It is now the strongest outwork of the whole Duchy, well fortified against all assaults and batteries, which may come from *France*. 7. *Marignan*, situate South from *Milain*, remarkable for the great defeat here given the *Swissers*, by King *Francis I.* and now the title of a *Marquis*. 8. *Cremona*, situate on the Banks of the River *Po*, in a very rich and fruitful soil; an ancient Colony of the *Romans*, but a beautiful City to this day; and of such fidelity to its Prince, that it hath got the name of, *Cremona* the faithful. It was built in the first year of the second *Punic* War, and burnt to the ground by *Vespassian* Soldiers; after the defeat of *Publius* his Forces: which defeat was given under the Walls of this Town. For when *Antoniæ*, *Vespassian* General, hath after his Victory entered into it, he went into a bath to wash away the sweat and blood from his body: where finding the water so hot, he made too cold, he laid by chance, that it should anon be made hotter. Which words the Soldiers applying to their greedy desires, set fire on the Town, and spent four days in the pillage of it. By the encouragement of *Vespassian* it was again re-edified, and is now grown famous for the high Tower, from which the by-word, *Una turris in Cremona, ætæ Petri in Roma, omni portus in Onagra*. 9. *Milain*, a fair Town, once the Metropolis of the Province of *Liguria*, and afterwards of the whole *Dioecesis* of *Italy*; called therefore *Mettepòlis*; τῆς Ἑλλάδος, the Metropolis or Mother-City of *Italy*; as *Dionysius* one of the Bishops heretofore is called the Metropolitan of *Italy* by *S. Athanasius*. At this time the fairest and the biggest of all *Lombardy*, having a Castle so strongly fortified, with natural and artificial Ramparts, that it is deemed impregnable. A City very populous, containing 200000 persons; and of great Trade, here being private Shops equalling the publick Store-houses of other places; the

R 2

people

people consequently so rich, that the Wife of every Mechanick will flant in her Silks and Taffeties. This City is said to have been built by the *Cauis*, 359 years before Christ. It is seven miles in circuit, and honoured with an University, wherein flourished *Hermolaus Barbarus*, *Celsus Rhodogianus*, and *Cardanus*. Scattered it is, in as commodious a Soil as any in Italy, environed with Water by two great Channels; the one drawn from the River of *Adina*, the other from the *Tesoro Adisio*; which run hard by it, and convey all things to the City in so great abundance, that things there are of very cheap rates; and add much also to the industry of the Inhabitants in the vending and differenting of their Manufactures, which are of great esteem in most parts of the World. The buildings of the City generally are fair and flatly, but three especially commended for their magnificence; that is to say, The Castle, the Hospital, and the Cathedral. For matter of Religion it doth use to glory, that *Barnabas* the Apostle was its first Bishop, and *St. Ambrose* one of his Successors; that formerly their Bishop stood on even terms with the Popes of *Rome*, and their Church as much privileged as that; and that since those times they have given unto the World four Popes, that is to say, *Alexander II.* *Urban III.* *Celsine V.* and of late *Gregory XIV.*

As for the fortunes of it, it continued in the power of the French, and the King of that Nation, from the destruction of the *Lombards*, till the Kingdom of Italy fell from the house of *Charles the Great*, and came at last into the hands of the *German Emperours*. Under them it continued till the time of *Frederick Barbarossa*, from whose obedience it revolted Anno 1156, in behalf of Pope *Alexander III.* The Emperour divers times defacing the City, and the people still ministering fresh occasions of dislike and quarrel. *Beatrice* the Wife of *Frederick* coming to see the City, without any ill intentions to it, was by the irreverent people first imprisoned, and then most barbarously used. For setting her upon a Male, they turned her face towards the tail, which they made her hold instead of a Bridle; and having thus shewed her up and down the City, they brought her unto one of the Gates, and there kicked her out. To revenge this horrible affront, the Emperor besieged and forced the Town; adjudging all the people to die without mercy, but such as would undergo this ransom. Between the butchers of a skittish and kicking Male, there was faineed a bunch of Figs; one or more of which, such as desired to live must snatch out with their teeth, their hands bound behind them, as the Male was pacing through the streets. A condition which most of them accepted; and thereupon gave occasion to the custom used of the *Italians*: who when they intend to scoff or disgrace a man, are wont to put their thumb betwixt two of their fingers, saying, *Ecco La Fico*; a disgrace answerable to that of making Horns (in *England*) to him that is suspected to be a Cuckold. The City after this rebelling, and again taken by the Emperour, he levelled it unto the ground, pulled down the Walls, and caused the whole ground on which it stood, to be plowed up, and sowed with Sals, seeming to threaten by that Emblem, that it should never be re-edified. Which notwithstanding the City was not only new built again, but the Pope, with the help of the *Milanese* and *Venetians*, had at last the better of the Emperour; whom he enjoyed, after a vile submission, to undertake a journey to the *Holy Land*. Freed from the Emperour they began to live after the form of a Republick, in which condition they continued about 56 years: when *Orso*, surnamed *Visconti* (quasi his Comes, because he was Lord of *Milain* and *Angona*) assumed the title to him-

self, and settled it upon that Family after his decease; but so that for the most part they were under the command of the *German Emperours*, and to them accountable. *Galeazzo I.* so called (as some write) because the Cocks crowed more than ordinarily at the time of his birth, thad to the Estate hereof the Cities of *Crema*, and *Cremona*. In the person of *John Galeazzo* it was advanced unto a Dukedom by the Emperour *Wenceslaus*, for 100000 Crowns in ready money; which *John* increased to mightily in wealth and power, that he had 29 Cities under his Command; and died as he was going to *Florence* to be crowned King of *Tuscany*. To him succeeded *John Maria*, and after him his brother *Philip*: who in his life had married his only daughter (but illegitimate) to *Francisco Sforza*, the best Commander of his times; and at his death appointed *Alfonso of Aragon*, King of *Naples*, for his Heir and Successor. Before *Alfonso* could take any benefit of this designation, *Sforza* was quietly possessed both of the City and the loves of the people. This *Francis Sforza* (I must needs crave leave to tell this story) was the Son of *James Attendolo*, a plain Country man, who going to his labour with his Axe in his hand, whilst a great Army was passing by him, compared the misery and unprofitableness of his present condition, with those fair probabilities which a Martial life did present unto him. And being in a great dispute with himself what were best to do he presently fell upon a resolution of putting the question to the determination of the Heavenly Providence; by calling his Axe unto the top of a Tree next to him: conditioning with himself, that if the Axe came down again, he would contentedly apply himself to his wonted labour; but if it hung upon the boughs, he would betake himself unto higher hopes, and follow the Army then in passage. He did so, the Axe hung upon the boughs, he went after the Army, and thrived to well in that employment, that he became one of the best Captains of his times (surnamed *de Cotoviglia* from the place of his dwelling, and *Sforza* from the greatness of his noble courage. By *Amonea* the Daughter of *Francis di Casalis*, the Lord of *Cortina*, he was the Father of this *Francis Sforza* whom now we speak of, who was so fortunate a commander in the Wars of Italy, that to oblige him to his Party, *Philip* the Duke of *Milain* bestowed his daughter upon him, and thereby a fair title to this great Estate, which he successfully obtained against all Pretenders. In his Line it continued till the coming of *Lewis XII.* of France, the Son of *Charles*, and Nephew of *Lewis*, Dukes of *Orleans*, by *Valentina* the sole Daughter of *John Galeazzo* the last Duke: who getting Duke *Lodowick Sforza* the last Duke (into his hands, carried him prisoner into France, and possessed himself of the Estate. Outred not long after by the Confederate Princes of Italy, who were jealous of so great a neighbour; he left the cause and quarrel unto *Francis I.* his next Successor in that Kingdom: in pursuance whereof, it is said by *Bellay* a French Writer, that the use of Muskets was first known. But *Francis* being in conclusion taken at the Battel of *Pavia*, and carried prisoner into Spain; for his release, was forced to release all claim unto this Estate. A release long before endeavoured by some French Politicians, because the pretensions hereunto had brought such damage unto that Crown; and no less eagerly opposed by Chancellor *Prax* (on the same reason that *Scipio Nasica* did oppose the destruction of *Carthage*, that is to say, because it did not only keep the French Nation in continual discipline of War; but served for a purgation of idle and superfluous people. Yet notwithstanding this release, *Francis* renewed the War again; and laid siege to *Milain*, then under the command of *Antonio di Leva*, and a Spanish Garrison: during which

which War, the wretched *Milanese*, endured the worst of miseries. For first the Governour, under colour of providing pay for his Souldiers, got all the victuals of the Town into the Castle, to be sold again at his own price; which many of the poorer sort not able to pay, perished of Famine in the streets. And on the other side his Souldiers which were quartered in most parts of the City, used when they wanted money, to chain up their Hosts, and then to put them to a ransom. Such as upon this barbarous usage fled out of the City had their Goods confiscated: on which there followed such a disconsolate delation, that the chief streets were over-grown with Nettles and Brambles. In this miserable estate it continued, till *Charles* the Emperour having totally driven out the French, restored it to *Francis Sforza*, brother to the last Duke *Maximilian*, and Son of that *Lodowick*, who to advance himself unto this Estate, had most imprudently taught the French the way into Italy. But this *Francis* dying without issue, and the house of *Sforza* failing in him, the Emperour entered on the Dukedom as right Lord thereof, and left the same to his Successors in the Realm of Spain. This said, we will sum up the whole story of this Estate, in the ensuing Catalogue of

#### The Lords and Dukes of Milain.

- 1277 1. *Obo Visconti* Archbishop of *Milain*.
- 1295 2. *Matthew*, Brothers Son to *Obo*, confirmed in his command of *Milain* by *Albertus* the Emperour.
- 1322 3. *Galeazzo Visconti* Son of *Matthew*, disfiled of his command by *Lewis* of *Bavaria* Emperour.
- 1329 4. *Atio Visconti*, Son of *Galeazzo*, confirmed in his Fathers power by the same *Lewis* the Emperour.
- 1339 5. *Lucchino Visconti*, Brother to *Galeazzo*.
- 1349 6. *John Visconti*, the Brother of *Lucchino*.
- 1354 7. *Galeazzo II.* Son of *Stephen*, the Brother of *John*.
- 1378 8. *John Galeazzo*, Son of the first *Galeazzo*, created by the Emperour *Wenceslaus*, the first Duke of *Milain*, An. 1395.
- 1402 9. *John Maria*, Son of *John Galeazzo*, slain by the people for his horrible tyrannies.
- 1412 10. *Philip Maria*, the last of the *Visconti*, which commanded in *Milain*; a Prince of great power in fwaying the affairs in Italy. He died Anno 1446; the *Milanese* for some years retaining their former liberty.
- 1446 11. *Francis Sforza* in right of his Wife *Blanch* the base daughter of *Philip*, seconded by the power of the Sword admitted Duke by the general consent of the people of *Milain*, one of the Knights of the noble Order of the Garter.
- 1461 12. *Galeazzo Sforza*, a valiant but libidinous Prince cruelly murdered by his own Subjects.
- 1477 13. *John Galeazzo Sforza*, privately made away (as it was supposed) by his Uncle *Lodowick*.
- 1494 14. *Lodowick Sforza*, the Son of *Francis*, and Brother of *Galeazzo*, who to secure himself of his ill-got Dukedom, drew the French into Italy.
- 1501 15. *Lewis XII.* of France, Son unto *Charles*, and Nephew to *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, by *Valentina* Daughter to *John* the first Duke of *Milain*; vanquished *Lodowick*, carried him prisoner into France, and took the Dukedom to himself.
- 1513 16. *Maximilian Sforza*, the Son of *Lodowick*, restored to the Dukedom by the power of the *Switzers*, and *Venetians*; but again ousted by *Francis I.* Son-in-law and Successor to

King *Lewis XII.* in the Kingdom of France. 1529 17. *Francis Sforza*, Brother of *Maximilian*, restored to the Estate, and the French expelled by the puissance of *Charles V.* who after the death of this Duke *Francis* (the last of the *Sforzas*) An. 1535, united it for ever to the Crown of Spain.

This Dukedom is not now of such great extent, and power as in former times; there being but nine Cities remaining of those 29, which were once under the command of the Dukes hereof; the rest being gotten in by the State of *Venice*, the *Florentines*; the Dukes of *Mantua*, and *Parma*. And yet is this accepted the prime Dukedom of *Christendom* (as *Flaunders* was accounted the prime Earldom of it) as the Annual Revenue of 800000 Ducats to the King of Spain. A good Revenue, might it come clear unto his Coiffers. But what with the discharge of his Garrison-souldiers, the defraying of his Vice-roy, the Salaries of Judges and inferior Ministers; it is conceived that he spends more on it than he getteth.

The Arms hereof are *Argent a Serpent Azure*, Crowned Or; in his Gorge, an Infant *Galea*. Which was the Coat-Armour of a *Saracen*, vanquished by *Orso* the first of the *Visconti* in the *Holy Land*.

Here are in this Dukedom, Bishops 6.

#### The Dukedom of MANTUA.

THE Dukedom of *MANTUA*, is bounded on the West, with *Milain*; on the East, with *Romandiola*; on the North, with *Marca Trevigiana*; and on the South, with the Dukedom of *Parma*.

The Country about *Mantua* is reasonably good, and yieldeth all sorts of Fruits being well manured: plentiful in Corn and Pastures, the very high-ways by the fields being planted with Elms, to train up the Vines which grow there intermingled in every place, as generally it is in all parts of *Lombardy*. But the Inhabitants are conceived not to be of civil and well-bred, as the rest of *Italy* childish in their apparel, without manly gravity, poor in the entertainment of their friends, and exacting all they can from strangers.

The places in it of most note are, 1. *Mercaris*, bordering next to *Milain*. 2. *Fozzila*, a small, but pleasant habitation, belonging to some Princes of the Ducal Family; built with fair Cloysters towards the Street, in which Passengers may walk dry in the greatest rain. 3. *Petula*, a small Village, but as famous as any, in regard it was the place wherein *Virgil* was born: but generally said to be born in *Mantua* (*Virgilius gaudet, as the old Verics*) because the Village is so near the City of *Mantua*, being but two miles distant; that his birth might very well be ascribed unto it. 4. *Mantua*, seated on the River *Nincina*, now called *Sarca*; which coming out of *Lago di garda* falleth not far off into the Po, from whence there is a passage unto *Venice*. By Nature strong, environed on three sides with a running water, half a mile in breadth; and on the fourth side with a Wall. The Dukes to take their pleasure on the Lakes and Rivers, have a Barge called the *Eucenaur*, five stories high, and capable of two hundred persons (whence it had the name) furnished very richly both for state and pleasure. Ours the Son of *Manto* the Prophetess, the Daughter of *Trefius*, is said to have been the Founder of it, and to have given unto it his Mother's names; but I more than doubt it, though *Virgil* a Native of those parts do report

port it so; this City being one of those which the *Tuscan* built beyond the *Apennine*, as the founders *Antriquari* do affirm. Made memorable (by whose ever built at first) in the declining times of Christianity, for a Council holden in it, *An. 1059*, wherein it was decreed, that the choosing of the Pope should from thenceforth belong unto the *Cardinals*. A Prerogative which of old belonging to the Emperours, was first by *Constantine III.* furnished *Paganus*, given to the Clergy and People of *Rome*, in the time of Pope *Benedict III. Anno 684*, returned by *Charles the Great*, when he came to the Empire; and now appropriated only to the College of *Cardinals*. But to return unto the Town: on the East-side of a Bridge of about 500 paces long, covered over head and born up with Arches, stands the Duke's Palace for the City; and not far thence the *Doms*, or Cathedral Church of *St. Peter*. The Palace very fair and stately, but far short for the pleasures and delights thereof, of his Palace at *Mimirsola*, five miles from the City: which though it be of a low roof (after the manner of ancient buildings) yet it is very richly furnished, and adorned with very beautiful Gardens: able to lodge, and give content to the best Prince in Christendom. Here are also many other Towns, as *5. Caprasia*, and *6. Lucera*, of which nothing memorable.

As for the fortunes of this Dukedom, it is to be observed that *Mantua* followed for long time the fortunes of the *Western Empire*; till given by *Obbo II.* Son to *Theobald Earl of Canosse*, for the many good services he had done him. Boniface who succeeded him had to Wife *Beatrice* the Sister of *Henry II.* and by her was the Father of *Matthias*, that famous Warriour, who carried to great a Stroke in the battle of *Italy*. Being dispossessed of her Estate by *Henry III.* the joyed in faction with the Popes, recovered all her own again, and dismembered from the Empire many goodly Territories, which at her death (having had three Husbands, but no Issue) she gave in Fee for ever to the See of *Rome*, *Anno 1115*. After her death, *Mantua* continued under the protection of the Empire. But that protection failing them, by little and little it was brought under by the Family of the *Bonacelli*: who Lording it over a Free-people with too great severity, contracted such a general hatred, that *Paffavino*, the last of them, was slain in the Market-place by the people, under the command and conduct of *Lewis de Gonzaga*, a noble Gentleman; who presently with great applause took to himself the Government of the Estate, *Anno 1328*, which hath continued in his house to this very day, with a great deal of lustre. Whose Successors take here as followeth, under the several titles of

The Lords, Marquesses, and Dukes of *Mantua*.

- A. Chr.  
1238 1. *Lewis Gonzaga*, the first of this Line, Lord of *Mantua*.  
1566 2. *Guido*, Son of *Lewis*.  
1569 3. *Lodowick*, or *Lewis H.* Son of *Guido*.  
1581 4. *Francis Gonzaga*, Son of *Lewis H.* highly extolled by *Pagius the Florentine* for his Wisdom and Learning; who valiantly repulged the attempts made against his Estate, by *John Galeas*, the first Duke of *Milain*.  
1407 5. *John Francisco Gonzaga*, created the first Marquess of *Mantua*, by the Emperour *Sigismund*.  
1414 6. *Lodowick*, or *Lewis III.* Son of *John Francisco*, who entertained the Emperour *Frederick*, and the King of *Denmark*, with great magnificence.

- 1478 7. *Frederick*, Son of *Lewis III.*  
1484 8. *Francis II.* Son of *Frederick*.  
1519 9. *Frederick II.* Commander of the Armies of the Pope, and *Florentines*, entertained *Charles V.* with great solemnity; by whom he was made Duke of *Mantua*, 1530, and declared Marquess of *Montferrat*; in right of his Wife.  
1540 10. *Francis III.* Son of *Frederick*, the second Duke of *Mantua*, and Marquess of *Montferrat*.  
1550 11. *William*, the Brother of *Francis III.* created the first Duke of *Montferrat*.  
1587 12. *Vincent*, Son of *William*, Duke of *Mantua* and *Montferrat*.  
13. *Francis IV.* Son of *Vincent*, had to Wife *Margaret* the Daughter of *Charles Emmanuel Duke of Savoy*, and by her a Daughter named *Mary*; in whose behalf the Duke of *Savoy* undertook the War against her Uncle, for *Montferrat*.  
1613 14. *Ferdinand*, the Brother of *Francis IV.* succeeded him in both Estates, notwithstanding the opposition of the Duke of *Savoy*.  
15. *Vincent II.* the Brother of *Ferdinand*, and of *Francis IV.*  
1628 16. *Charles Gonzaga*, Duke of *Nevers* in *France*, by his Mothers Line; and of *Mantua*, and *Montferrat* by his Father *Lewis Gonzaga*, the third Son of *Frederick I.* Duke of *Mantua*; succeeded on the death of *Vincent II.* but not without great opposition of the Spanish Faction, who lacked *Montferrat*, dislaid *Casal*, and much impoverished both Estates. But the Business was at last composed by the Power of the *French*, and the Investiture conferred upon him, by the hands of the Emperour.

The Territories of this Duke (reckoning in that of *Montferrat* also) are in circuit nigh unto those of *Florence*; but his Revenues fall much short, which amount to about 500000 Ducats only; but might be greater, if either the Duke would be burdensome to his Subjects, as *Florence* is; or if he were not on all sides Land-locked from Navigation and Traffick.

The chief Order of Knighthood in these Dukedoms, is of *The Blood of our Lord JESUS CHRIST*, instituted *Anno 1608*. The Author of it was Duke *Vincent Gonzaga*, when the Marriage was solemnized between his Son *Francis* and Lady *Margaret*, Daughter to the Duke of *Savoy*. It consisteth of twenty Knights, whereof the *Mantuan Dukes* are Sovereigns; and was allowed by Pope *Paul V.* The Collar hath Threads of Gold laid on red, and interwoven with these words, *Dominus Prohibiti*. To the Collar are pendent two Angels, supporting three drops of Blood, and circumscribed with *Nihil ista trister recipio*. It took this name, because in *St. Andrews Church in Mantua*, are said to be kept as a most precious Relique, certain drops of our Saviours Blood (thou canst not, O Reader, but believe it) with a piece of the Sponge.

The Arms of *Mantua* are *Argent*, a Cross *Peter Gules*, between four Eagles *Sable*, member of the second, under an esccheon in *Fesse*, charged quarterly with *Gules* a Lion Or, and Or three Bars *Sable*.

There are in this Dukedom Archbishops 1. Bishops 4.

## The Dukedom of MODENA.

THE Dukedom of *MODENA* containeth the Cities of *Modena* and *Reggio*, with the Territories adjoining to them: both of them situate in that part of *Lombardy* which is called *Cispadana*; and consequently partake of the pleasures and commodities of it.

The people of this Dukedom are said to be better natured than most of *Italy*: those of *Modena* being quick in their resolution; calm to be pacified when wronged, and friendly in their entertainment of Strangers; the *Reggians* being affable, of present wits, and fit for any thing they can be employed in: the women in both Towns of a mild disposition, neither too courtly, nor too forward, as in other places.

The first principal City is that of *Modena*, anciently better known by the name of *Mutina*, and famous in those times for the first battle betwixt *Antony* and *Augustus Caesar*; this latter being then not above eighteen years of age, and yet made head of a new League against *Antony*, whom the Senate and people looked upon as a common Enemy. The managing of the War was left to *Hirtius* and *Pansa* then Consuls; the fortune of the day to equal, that *Antony* left the field, and the Consuls their lives leaving *Augustus* the absolute command of a powerful Army, into whose favours he so cunningly did work himself, that he made them the foundation of his future greatness. It was at that time a *Roman Colony*, but being ruined by the fury of the *Goths* and *Lombards* was afterwards new built at the charge of the Citizens, situate near the *Apennine* in a very good soil, and of indifferent fair buildings. In the distractions of *Italy* betwixt the Emperours and the Popes, *Guido* the Pope's Legate, and then Bishop thereof, consigned it over to *Azzo* of the house of *Este*, Lord of *Ferrara*, *Anno 1304*, the Pope himself consenting so, upon the payment of a yearly tribute of 10000 Crowns: since which time it hath been for the most part in the power of that house: *Borcius* the Marquess of *Ferrara*, being by *Frederick III.* made Duke of *Mantua*, 2. *Reggio*, the second Town of note, hath tasted much of the same fortune; at first a *Roman Colony* called *Regium Lepidi*, afterwards ruined by the *Goths* when they came first into *Italy*, repaired and compassed with a Wall by its own Inhabitants, and for a time under the command of the Earls of *Canosse*. But being weary of that yoke, they recovered their liberty; which being unable to maintain in those bustling times, they gave themselves unto *Obizzo* the Father of *Azzo*, *Anno 1292*; and after that in the year 1326, to the See of *Rome*. Passing through many other hands, it was at last sold for 60000 Ducats to the *Vicenti*, Lords of *Milain*, *Anno 1370*; and in the end recovered by the house of *Este*, *Anno 1409*, and gave the title of a Duke to the aforesaid *Borcius*, whom *Frederick III.* made Duke of *Modena* and *Reggio*, 1452.

The Successors of this *Borcius* are before laid down in the succession of *Ferrara*; who held the whole Estate together till the death of *Alphonso* the last Duke. He dying without lawful Issue, *Anno 1595*, left his Estate to *Cesar* de *Este*, his Nephew by a base Son, called *Alphonso* also; betwixt whom and Pope *Clement VIII.* a War was threatened for the whole: but at last compromised upon these conditions, That the Church of *Rome* should have *Ferrara*, with all the Lands and Territories appertaining to it, as an Estate anciently holden of that See; and that *Modena*, and *Reggio*, being Imperial Fiefs, should remain to *Cesar*; but to be held in fee of the Papal Throne. Duke *Cesar* to have leave to carry away all

his movable goods, to sell such of his Lands as were not of the ancient domain of the Dukedom; and to have one half of the Ordnance and Artillery. By which agreement the Cities of *Modena* and *Reggio*, became a new erected State, distinct, and independent of any other: each City being well fortified, and garrisoned, and furnished with Ordnance for defence thereof. But what they yield unto the Prince in the way of Revenue, and what Forces he is able to raise out of his Estates, I cannot positively determine: but by the Tribute formerly paid unto the Popes for the City of *Mutina*, and the rich Territory of both Towns, and the great Revenues of the Dukedom of *Ferrara*, I conceive they cannot yield less than 100000 Crowns of yearly Income. The Arms of this Duke the same with those of *Ferrara*, before blazoned.

## The Dukedom of PARMA.

THE Dukedom of *PARMA* hath on the North the Dukedoms of *Milain* and *Mantua*, from which it is parted by the *Po*, on the South the *Apennine*, which divideth it from *Liguria*; on the East the Country of *Modena*, and *Romandiola*, from which last parted by the River *Soulenna*, now called *Parano*; on the West *Montferrat*: situate, as *Modena* is, in *Lombardia Cispadana*; and much of the same nature both for soil, and air, and other the commodities of those parts of *Italy*.

The principal Cities of it are, 1. *Parma*, an ancient City, and made a Colony of the Romans at the end of the second *Punic War*; as *Mutina* and *Aquileia* at the same time were. It is seated on a small River of the same name, which runneth almost through the midst of it; beautified with very handfome buildings, and peopled by a race of ingenious men, whether they do betake themselves unto Arts or Arms. The grounds about this City are of excellent Pasturage, and yield great plenty of the Cheese which is called *Permesan*. 2. *Placentia*, seated on the *Po*, one of the first Colonies which the Romans planted amongst the *Chalpine Gauls*, and famous for the resistance which it made both to *Annibal*, and *Alfribal*, who severally in vain besieged it: made afterwards the Metropolis of the Province of *Emilia*, yet nothing the less beautiful for to great an age. The fields adjoining have the same commendation with those of *Parma*, for most excellent Cheese; but go beyond for Salt-pits and Mines of Iron, which the other wanteth. 3. *Mirandula*, a proper Town built in the time of *Constantine* the Son of *Constantine* the Great: the Patrimony of the noble Family of the *Pici* (of which was *Picinus de Mirandula* that renowned Scholar) but held by them as Feudatories to the Dukes of *Parma*; 4. *Briscella*, called anciently *Briscellum*, not far from the chief City of *Parma*; of no great note at the present time, but memorable in the *Roman* story for the death of the Emperour *Obbo*, who here killed himself. For hearing here that his Forces were overthrowen by *Valens*, and *Cedina*, Commanders of the Forces of *Vitellius*, then his Competitor for the Empire; he rather chose to fall by his own Sword, than that the Romans should be forced, for his sake, to renew the War. And this he did with so much honour to himself, that many of his Soldiers flew themselves at his Funeral Pile; not out of consciousness of crime, or for fear of punishment, but to testify their affections to him, and to follow such a brave example as was laid before them. So as we may truly say of him, as he is said by *Tacitus* to have said of himself, viz. *Atti diutius imperium tenuerunt, nemo tam fortiter reliquit*. 5. *Monticella*, in the middle way almost between *Parma* and *Placentia*, and



and opposite unto *Crenona*, a chief Town of the Dutchy of *Millain*, from which parted by the River *Po*.

These Towns (as others in these parts) have been partakers of the diversities of fortune, as being (after the declining of the Western Empire) sometimes under the *Venicians*, most times under the *Millanys*; and at last conquered by Pope *Julius II.* in the confusions and destructions of the Dukedom of *Millain*, under the two last Princes of the House of *Sforza*. By *Paul III.* being of the House of the *Farnesii*, the Cities of *Parma* and *Placentia* with their *Appendices*, were given unto his Son *Petro Aloisii* (or *Petrus Aloisius*, as the *Latinæ* call him) with the title of Duke, Anno 1549. The Signatory of *Camerino*, which he had lately taken from the Dukes of *Urbino*, being given in recompence to the Church. This *Petro* being a man of most vicious life, had amongst other villanies committed an unpeakeable violence on the person of *Cosmus Chirius* the Bishop of *Favenna*; and from affection of *Cosmus* the Bishop of *Favenna* was, for a further poyned him. For which most detestable Fact, he received no other chastisement of his Father than this, *Hæc* *via* *me non committitur didici*, that he was sure he had not learnt those vices by his example. But going on in these wicked courses, he was slain at last by Count *John Agucenda*, and *Placentia*, after a short siege, yielded to *Ferdinand Gonzaga* (Viceroy in *Millain* for the Emperor *Charles V.*) conceived to be privy to the murder. *Ottavian*, the Son of *Petro Luigi*, hearing what had happened, fortified himself in *Parma* as well as he could; but being hated by the new Pope, and distrustful, not without good cause, of the Emperor's purposes, he had quite lost all, if *Henry II.* of France, had not taken him into his protection. For the Emperor *Charles* fully determined notwithstanding that *Ottavian* had married his base Daughter, to have made himself Lord of the Town: and the French King was loth to see so great a strength added to the Emperor's possessions in *Italy*. When the War had now lasted four years, *Philip II.* (who afterward succeeded *Charles*) considering how necessary it was for his affairs in *Italy*, to have this *Ottavian* his friend, restored unto him the City of *Plaisance* or *Placentia*, and he withdrew him from the French Faction, Anno 1557. Yet because he would be sure to keep his house in a perpetual dependence on Spain, he restored it not absolutely at the present, but held the Citadel thereof with a Spanish Garrison, till the year 1583, when in regard of the good services, which *Alexander* Prince of *Parma* had done him in his Wars against the *Hollanders*, and others of the revolted Provinces; he caused it to be surrendered into his hands of his Father *Ottavian*. By which, and by his settling upon this house the Town and Territory of *Nosara*, in the Dukedom of *Millain*, and other personal favours which they have conferred on the Princes of it; the Kings of Spain seem to have given some satisfaction to this House for stepping between them and the Kingdom of *Portugal*; to which they might have made such a probable title, as would have troubled his Estate, had they stood upon it.

#### The Dukes of Parma.

- A. Chr.  
1549 1. *Petro Luigi Farnesii*, Son to *Paul III.* made by the Pope, his Father, the first Duke of *Parma*.  
1550 2. *Ottavian Farnesii*, Son to *Petro Luigi*, married *Margaret* base daughter to *Charles V.* afterwards Governor of the Netherlands.  
3. *Alexander*, Son of *Ottavian* and *Margaret* of *Anstria*, one of the most renowned Soldiers of his time, Governor of the Netherlands for King *Philip II.*

- 1592 4. *Raimundus Farnesii*, Son of *Alexander* and *Mary* of *Portugal*, eldest Daughter of *Edward* Son to King *Emanuel*; one of the Competitors for that Crown.  
5. *Odoardo Farnesii*, Son of *Raimundus*.

## The Dukedom of MONTFERRAT.

THE Dukedom of *MONTFERRAT*, is situate between *Lombardy* and *Piemont*, on the Rivers of *Tanarus* and *Po*, on the East, and West; extended North and South, in a line or branch, from the *Alps* to the borders of *Liguria*; of which last it was sometimes counted part, and called *Liguria Cisalpina* for distinction sake.

It took this name either *a monte ferrato*, from some Mountain of it strewed with Iron; or else *a monte feraci*, as some rather think, from the fertility of the Mountains. And to say truth, though the whole Country seem to be nothing else than a continual heap of Mountains; yet are they Mountains of such wonderful fruitfulness, that they will hardly give place to any Valley in *Europe*.

The principal River of it is the *Tanarus*, above mentioned, which springing out of the hills about *Baretti*, a Town of the Marquisate of *Saluzzese*, falleth into the *Po* not far from *Pavie*. The principal Cities of it are, 1. *Alba*, called by *Pliny Alba Pompeia*, situate on the banks of the said River, in a rich and fertile soil, but a very bad air: near to which, in a poor Village called *Zabia* the Emperor *Perinax* was born. Who being of mean and obscure Parents, after the death of *Commodus*, was called by the Conspirators to the Roman Empire. But being over-zealous to reform the corruptions of the Soldiers, he was by the *Prætorian* Guards (hating their Princes for their virtues, as much as formerly for their vices) most cruelly murdered, and the Imperial dignity sold to *Julianus*, for 25 *Sesteriis*; a man. 2. *Casal*, vulgarly called *St. Vast*, from the Church there dedicated to *St. Eusebius* (or *St. Vast*, as they speak it commonly) the strongest Town in all this Country; well built and peopled with many ancient and noble Families, of which the Family of *St. George* is one of the principal; and made a Bishops See by Pope *Sixtus IV.* Anno 1474. It was in former times the chief seat of the House of *Montferrat*, and for that cause compassed with a strong Wall, and a fair Castle: but of late fortified after the modern manner of Fortifications, and strengthened with an impregnable Citadel by Duke *Vincent Gonzaga*, as the first Key of his Estate, in which new Citadel the Governour of the Province holds his usual residence. 3. *Aigue*, in *Latine Aquensis*, famous for its Baths or Fountains of hot and Medicinal waters. 4. *St. Saviour*, where there is a very strong Fortress, as there is also in 5. *Ponfleur*, or *Pont d'Strua*, so called of the River *Strua*. 6. *Osioniano*, anciently *Occimianum*, the old seat of the first Marquesses of this *Montferrat*. 7. *Belzale*, 8. *Liburni*, and many others of like note.

Here are also within the limits of this Dukedom, the Towns of *Asti*, *Cherian*, and *Chivasco*, belonging to the Dukes of *Savoy*, in the description of whole Country we may speak more of them, together with *Nosara* and *Alexandria*, appertaining to the Dukedom of *Millain*, which we have spoken of already. And henceunto also I refer the strong (and in those times) impregnable Fortresses, by the *Latine* Historians called *Fraxinetum*, from some Grove of *Athens* near unto it: situate in the advantages of the Mountains, and not far from the Sea, by consequence

consequence better able to defend it self and admit relief; and therefore made the receptacle or retreat of the *Saraceni*, at such time as they had footing in these parts of *Italy*. First took and fortified by them in the year 891. recovered afterwards by the prowess and good Fortune of *Obbo* the Emperor, deservedly furnished the Great, about sixty years after. Of great note in the stories of those middle times. By *Luiprandus* placed near the borders of *Provence*; by *Blondus*, and *Leander*, near the River *Po*, and the Town of *Valenza*, once called *Forum Fulvis*; and finally by *Sigonius* in the *Collina Alper*: and so most fit to be referred unto this Country, though now so desolated that there is no remainders of the ruins of it.

This Country was made a Marquisate by *Obbo II.* 985. one of the seven by him erected and given to the seven Sons of *Waleran* of *Saxony*, who had married his Daughter *Adelheid*. A Military Family, conspicuously eminent in the Wars of *Greece*, and the *Holy-Land*; where they did many acts of singular Merit: inasmuch as *Baldwin* and *Conrade*, issuing from a second branch hereof, were made Kings of *Jerusalem*; and *Boniface* one of the Marquesses, got the Kingdom of *Theffaly*, and many fair Estates in *Greece*. But the Male-issue failing in Marquess *John*, the Estate fell to *Theodorus Paleologus*, of the Imperial Family of *Constantinople*, who had married the *Heir-General* of the House; continuing in his name till the year 1534. when it fell into the hands of the Dukes of *Mantua*. In the person of Duke *William Gonzaga* raised to the honour of a Dukedom, as it still continueth the best and richest part of the Duke's Estate, and the fairest flower in all his Garden. The residue of the story may be best collected out of the following Catalogue of

#### The Marquesses of Montferrat.

- A. Chr.  
185 1. *William*, one of the Sons of *Waleran* and *Adelheid*, made the first Marquess of *Montferrat*.  
2. *Boniface*, the Son of *William*.  
3. *William II.* who accompanied the Emperor *Conrade III.* and *St. Lewis* of France to the *Holy Land*.  
1183 4. *Boniface II.* Son of *William II.* his younger Brother, *William* being deposed King of *Jerusalem*, and *Reynier* another of them made Prince of *Theffaly*, succeeded his Father in *Montferrat*. Aiding his Nephew *Baldwin*, the Son of *William*, in recovering the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*; he was took prisoner by *Gay* of *Lusignan*, Competitor with him for that title.  
5. *William III.* Son of *Boniface*, poisoned in the *Holy-Land*, where he endeavoured the restoring of his Brother *Conrade*, to that languishing Kingdom.  
6. *Boniface III.* Son of *William III.* for his valour in taking of *Constantinople*, made King of *Theffaly*.  
1254 7. *Boniface IV.* Son of *Boniface III.* added *Vercellin* and *Epedrium* unto his Estate.  
8. *John*, surnamed the *Just*, the last of this house.  
9. *Theodore Paleologus*, Son of the Emperor *Andronicus Paleologus* the elder, and Toland his Wife, Daughter of *Boniface IV.*  
10. *John Paleologus*, Son of *Theodore*.  
11. *Theodore II.* Son of *John*, a great builder and endower of Religious houses.

12. *Jacobus Johanner*, Son of *Theodore II.*  
13. *John III.* eldest Son of *Jacobus Johanner*.  
1464 14. *William IV.* Brother of *John III.* Founder of the City and Monastery of *Casale*.  
1487 15. *Boniface V.* Brother of *John* and *William*, the two last Marquesses, invited by the Emperor *Frederick IV.* *Blanca Maria*, the Daughter of *William*, surrendering her Estate unto him.  
16. *William V.* Son of *Boniface V.*  
1518 17. *Boniface VI.* Son of *William V.*  
1530 18. *John George*, Brother of *William V.* succeeded his Nephew in the Estate; which he held but four years. After whose death, Anno 1534. this Marquisate was adjudged to *Frederick*, the first Duke of *Mantua*, who had married *Margaret*, Daughter of *William V.* and next *Heir* to *George*.

Whole Successors may be seen in the former Catalogue of the Dukes of *Mantua*.

The Arms hereof are Gules, a Chief Argent.

Here are in this Estate, Archbishops 0. Bishops 4.

And now according to my method, I should proceed to the description and story of the Principality of *Piemont*, the last and most Western part of *Italy*. But being it lieth partly in, and partly at the foot of the *Alps*, was anciently a part of the Province called *Alpes Cœniæ*, and is now part of the Estate of the Duke of *Savoy*; we will defer till we come to those *Alpes Provincie*, which are next to follow. And so much shall suffice for *Italy*, in which there are, besides those of *Piemont*,

Popes 1. Patriarchs 3.  
Archbishops 35. Bishops 292.  
Universities 17.

#### V I Z.

In the Land of the Church,

Rome.  
Bononia.  
Ferrara.  
Pavie.

In Sicily,  
Palermo.  
Catania.

In the Signeury of Venice,  
Venice.  
Padua.  
Verona.

In the Dukedom of Tuscany,  
Florence.  
Pisa.

Siena.  
In Naples,  
Naples.  
Salerno.

In Lombardy,  
Milain.  
Pavie.

Mantua.

And so much for *Italy*.



# OF THE ALPES.

**B**Efore we can come out of Italy into France, we must cross the Alps; a ridge of Hills where-with (as with a strong and defensible Rampart) Italy is assured against France and Germany. They are said to be five days journey high, covered continually with Snow, from the whiteness whereof they took this name; that in the Sabine District being called *Alpium*, which in the Latine was called *Albium*.

They begin about the Mediterranean or Ligustick Seas, and crossing all along the Borders of France and Germany, extend as far as to the Gulf of *Cornero*, in the Province of *Istria* and are in several parts as they lie in order from the Mediterranean to the Adriatick. And first those which lie nearest to the Mediterranean, are for that cause called *Maritime*, from the nearness to *Liguria*, called by some *Liguria*. 2. Then follow those called *Coſtie*, from *Coſtia*, a King of the *Allobroges*: And 3. Those named *Græve*, from the passage of *Horatius* and his *Græcon* Followers, of which both amongst the Poets and Historians, there is very good evidence. 4. After we come to the *Pennine*, so named from the march of *Annibal* and his *Carthaginians*, whom the Latine Writers call by the name of *Pæni*; or from the Mountain-God *Pannus*, worshipped by the *Veragri*, the Inhabitants of it. 5. Next come we to the *Lepontine*, so named from *Lepontius*, who did there inhabit: As 6. the *Rætice*, which lie next to them, from the *Ræti*, once a powerful people of that mountainous tract. 7. Then follow those called *Julie*, from the passage of *Julius Cæsar* over them, in his march towards *Gaul*: and so at last we come unto those called *Carnica*, extending to the shores of the *Adriatick*, denominated from the *Carni* who did here inhabit, and who gave name also to *Carniola*, an adjoining Province.

The ancient Inhabitants of these mountainous Countries, besides the *Allobroges*, *Veragri*, *Leponti*, *Ræti*, and *Carni*, (spoken of before; were the *Sedani*, *Salis*, *Valenses*, *Vacanti*, and divers others of less note and estimation: all vanquished by the indomitable industry of the *Romans*. After whose subjugation, and the settlement of the *Roman* Empire, these Mountains, and some part of the Vales adjoining, made five several Provinces; viz. The Province of the *Celtic Alps*, containing *Wallisland*, and *Piemont*. Secondly, of *Rætia Prima*, comprehending the *Grifions*, and part of the Dukedom of *Milain*, now in possession of the *Switzers*, both which were members of the Diocese of *Italy*. Thirdly, of the *Alpi Maritime*, now part of *Danubiana* and *France*. Fourthly, of the *Græve* and *Pennine Alps*, and the greatest part of *Maxima Sequanorum*, including some part of *Savoy*, and most part of *Switzerland*: both which were members of

the Diocese of *Gaul*. And fifthly, of *Noricum Mediterraneum*; comprehending *Carniola*, *Carinthia*, and the parts near hand, which were members of the Diocese of *Ilyricum Occidentale*. The people anciently, as now, by reason of their drinking Snow-water, dissolving from the tops of the Hills, and sometimes falling thence with as great a violence as the *Cataract* of *Nilus* are said to do; were generally troubled with a swelling in the throat, which the Latines call *Struma*: being the same with that which we call the *King's Evil*: because by special privilege curable by the Kings of France and England. *Quis tumidum guttur miratur in Alpibus?* as the Poet hath it.

Of these vast Hills, the lowest are the *Carnica* and *Maritime*, lying nearest to the several Seas before remembered: The *Coſtie* and the *Græve* not so high, but that the passages lie open for the most part of the year. The rest, by reason of their deep and dreadful precipices, their tedious and steep ascents, narrow ways, dangerous craggy Rocks, fierce whirlwinds, and huge balls of Snow, tumbling with an incredible violence from the tops of the Mountains, are hardly passable by Horse, not at all by Waggons. And yet amongst these dreadful hills, there are observed to be some Valleys of great fertility, not giving ground for fruitfulness to the best in Europe; and for the sweetness of the temperature going much beyond them. With such an equal hand, doth the heavenly Providence dispense the benefits of Nature to his whole Creation: that plenty bordereth upon want, and pain on pleasure.

And yet for all the Difficulty and Danger of these Alpine Passages, Covetousness, or Curiosity, or Desire of Conquest, have found a way to make them passable in many places; and that not only for private and particular Passengers, but for vast Multitudes and numerous Armies, such as those led by *Annibal* and *Julius Cæsar*. But especially the barbarous people found out five ways to break into Italy, which have been since much travelled by diverse Nations, of which three be out of France, and two out of Germany. The first from *France* is through *France*, and so close to the *Ligustick Stars*: easiest for private Passengers, but too strait and narrow for great Armies: there being many passages in the Country of *Nizza*, so narrow, that ten men may make head against ten thousand; as in that called the *Pace of the Virgin* lay out. The second is over the Hills called *Gencure*, into the Marquisate of *Saluzzes*, and to the other parts of *Lombardy*: which was the way that *Charles VIII.* marched towards *Naples*, and by the *Italians*, is commonly called *Strada Romana*, because the ordinary Passage 'twixt France and Rome. The third way is over the greater *Cenis*, (which some call the lesser *St. Bernard*) to the *Ad*, or *Turin*: which (if we may believe antiquity)

was first opened by *Hercules*, and after followed by *Annibal*: who found the Passages so closed up, that he was forced to break his way (as *Plutarch* telleth us) with Fire and Vinegar: whence that so memorable saying, *Viam Annibal, aut invenit, aut facit*. From the passage of those Worthies, this Tract, and that adjoining were called *Alpes Græve*, and *Pennine*. Or if (as others think) *Annibal* took the former way, and came directly upon *Turin*, which Town it is most certain that he took in his march: then these *Pennine* must take name from the Passage of *Adrubat*, or of some part of *Annibal's* Army, which probably was too great to go all one way: or else from the Mountain God *Panninus*, as before was said.

The first way out of Germany into Italy, is through the Country of *Grifions*, by the *Valtoſia*, which the *Spaniards* select into his hands. So that by the keeping of the *Valtoſia*, or *Valtoſia*, and manning of the Fort *Fuenter*, which he also erected; he was in a manner the Lord of this passage: not only to the discontent of the Natives, but to the distaste of the *Savoyards* and *Venetians*. The other way out of Germany into Italy, is through the Country of *Tiroſia*, by the Towns of *Innsbruck*, and *Trent*. This passage is commanded by the Castle and Fort of *Eresberg*, seated on the Confines of this Country towards *Suecia*, and from *Innsbruck*, is two days journey distant. Which Fort, in the War which the *Protestant* Princes made against *Charles V.* was surprized by Captain *Scherstine*, so to hinder the coming of the Pope's Forces into Germany: for which the Emperor so hated him, that when all the rest of that Faction were pardoned, he only continued a *Proscript*, his head being valued at 4000 Crowns. The taking also of this Fort, and the Castle adjoining, by D. *Maurice* of *Saxony*, made the said *Charles* then being in *Innsbruck*, to fly out of Germany: and shortly after to resign his Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand*.

Out of these Mountains rise the Springs of many of the most renowned Rivers in these West parts of the World, as, 1. The *Rhine*, which springeth from two several Fountains, the one which they call the *Nearer Rhine*, out of the *Lepontine*; and the other which they term the *Farther*, or further *Rhine*, out of the *Rætice*, which meet together about a Dutch mile from *Chur* the chief Town of the *Grifions*, and so go on by *Constance* to Germany. 2. *Rhone*, which riseth in that part of the *Lepontine*, which is called *Die Pénchen*, about two Dutch miles from the head of the *Nearer* or *Farther Rhine*, and so through *Wallisland* into France. 3. *Padus*, or *Po*, which hath his head in a branch of the *Catinus* or *Celtic Alps*, heretofore called *Mont Vesulus*, and so through *Piemont* into Italy. Out of these also spring the Rivers of *Raff*, *Panone*, and *Adster*, the first a Dutch, the second a French, and the third an Italian River also; not to say any thing of others of inferior note. The great Lakes which are found in this mountainous Tract, we shall hereafter meet with in their proper places.

Let us next look upon the Countries and Estates here situate, which bordering upon Italy, France, and Germany, and partaking somewhat of them all, do belong to neither; but reckon themselves to be free and absolute Estates, Supreme, and independent upon any others, as indeed they are. Such other of these Alpine Countries, which are under the command of the German Princes, as some parts of *Schlesien* and *Bavaria*, together with *Tiroſia*, *Carniola*, and the rest which belong to *Austria*, shall be considered in the History of those States and Princes, to which of right they do belong. But for the rest, which as they lie entire together without intermixture, so they are absolute in themselves, and owe no suit nor service

unto any other, we will consider them in this place, under the name of the *Alpes*, or the *Alpine* Provinces.

The *ALPES* S then, or the *Alpine* Provinces, call them which you will, are bounded on the East with *Tiroſia* in Germany, and the Dukedom of *Milain* and *Monferrat* in Italy, on the West with *France*, *Danubiana*, and *La Bresse*, parts of the Continent of France, on the North, with the County of *Burgundy* in France, and *Suecia* or *Schlesien* in High Germany; and on the South, with *Lombardy*, and a branch of the *Mediterranean* Sea. Called in the middle times by the name of *Burgundia Transjurana*, because it contained that part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, which lay beyond the Mountain *Jura*. A Mountain which beginning near the City of *Besl*, and not far from the *Rhine*, passeth South-westward by the Lakes of *Biel-Zee*, *Neuenburger-Zee*, and that called *Comne*, till it come almost unto the *Rhuse*: dividing by that means the Provinces of *Switzerland*, and *Savoy*, from the County of *Burgundy*.

It lieth under the sixth Climate, and some part of the seventh, so that the longest day in Summer is fifteen hours and three quarters. Of different nature, in regard both of Soil and People; which will best tell us in the survey of the several Provinces, into which divided; that is to say, 1. the Dukedom of *Savoy*, 2. the Signatory of *Geneva*, 3. the Republics of *Wallisland*; 4. the *Cantons* of the *Switzers*; and 5. the Leagues of the *Grifions*. Which several States, though they be reckoned to belong to the German Empire, and that the Bishops of *Chur*, *Sion*, and *Besl* are generally accounted for Princes of it: yet they neither come unto the *Diet*, nor are subject to the publick Taxes, nor comprehended within any of those ten Circles into which the Empire is divided.

The Language herein spoken, partakes somewhat of all three, as before was said: the French being wholly spoken in *Savoy*, the lower *Wallisland*, and generally by the *Switzers*, bordering on the Lake *Lemane*; the Dutch being common to the greatest part of the *Switzers*, the *Grifions* about *Chur*, and the upper *Wallisland*: and finally the *Italian* used by the generality of the *Grifions*, the *Præfectures* appertaining unto them, and the *Switzers* both in *Piemont*, and those parts of *Savoy* which lie next unto it.

The principal Souldiers of these mountainous Provinces, 1. *Rodolph*, Earl of *Habburg*, the Founder of the present *Austrian* Family. 2. *Thomas*, and 3. *Peter*, Earls of *Savoy*, this last surnamed *Charles VIII.* 4. *Emmanuel Philibert*, one of the later Dukes heretofore, Commander of the Armies of the King of Spain. 5. *John Tzerelin*, commonly called Count *Tilly*, General of the Imperial Armies in the War of Germany. For Scholars of more special note, for which we are beholden to these Countries, we have 1. *Philipp Theophrastus Bombastus a Boerhaam*, commonly called *Paracelsus*, the Author, or In-ventor of Chymical Physick; born in the Mountains of *Helvetia*, as he saith himself: a man of most prodigious parts, and of no mean virtues. 2. *Zuinglius*, one of the chief Agents in the Reformation. 3. *Mylæus*, and 4. *Oecampadus*, two Divines, his Seconds. 5. *Henry Bullinger*, one of the same profession also. 6. *Sebastian Cyslius*, of as much learning as the best of them, though of different judgment. 7. *Dan. Tossanus* the *Hebræist*. To which we may add *S. Calvin* also, who though he had his birth in France, had his being here; and never grew to any eminency in Fame or Learning, till he was settled in Geneva.

For matter of Religion, it is of a very mist condition also, in all these Countries: that of the *Romish* only having publick countenance in the Dukedom of *Savoy*, and *Piemont*; but so that the Reformed is tolerated some parts thereof; especially in the next parts of *Dan-*

phine, to which the neighbourhood of Geneva gives a great increase. In Switzerland there are four Cantons which are wholly for the Reformation, viz. Zurich, Bern, Basle, and Schaffhausen: Seven that stand wholly for the Doctrine of the Church of Rome, i.e. Vren, Schwyz, Unterwalden, Lucern, Zug, Friburg, and Solothurn: in Appenzel, and Glaris, they allow of both. The Grisons are confusedly divided between both Religions; but the Italian Prelates admit no other but the Romish. The cause of which division came upon the preaching of Zuinglius, a Canon of the Church of Zurich: who being animated with Luther's good success in Germany, began about the year 1519 to preach against the Mass, and Images, and other the corruptions of the Church of Rome. In which his Party so increased, that on a publick Disputation, which was held at Zurich, the Mass was abrogated in that Canton by the authority of the Senate, Anno 1526. and Images destroyed at Bern, 1528. After which prosperous beginnings, the Reformation began to spread it self amongst the Confederates; and had prevailed further both in France and Germany, but for a difference which arose betwixt him and Luther about the Sacrament of the Supper: in which Luther did not only maintain a real Presence, but a Consubstantiation also in the sacred Elements; which Zuinglius maintained to be only a bare sign and representation of Christs blessed body. For reconciling this difference, wherein the enemies of both did extremely triumph; a Conference was held between them at Marburg, a Town of Hesse, by the procurement of that Landgrave, but without success: Luther professing that he durst not agree in that point with Zuinglius, *Ne principis suos interpretationes interpretentur Pontificis exosa, magis inviolis reddere*; for fear of drawing too great hatred on the Princes of his own profession. From this time forwards all brake out into open flames, the names of *Ubiqunitarians*, and *Sacramentarians*, being reciprocally cast upon one another; to the great hinderance of the cause which they had in hand: yet to that the Lutheran opinions got ground in Germany, the Zuinglians amongst these Mountains, and in France it self, and finally prevailed by the means of Calvin in many parts in Germany also. But hereof more hereafter in convenient place.

As for the story of those Countries, before they were divided into so many hands, we are to know that the old Inhabitants hereof (mentioned before) were conquered severally by the Romans: as shall be shewn in the description of the several Provinces. Won from the Romans by the Burgundians, in the time of Honorius the Western Emperor, they became a member of their Kingdom; except the Country of the Grisons, and some parts of Switzerland, which fell under the Aims: united afterwards in the new Kingdom of Burgundy, of the French erection, when subdued by that Nation. But Charles the Bald, the last of the French Kings of Burgundy, having united it to the Kingdom of France, divided that Kingdom into three Estates; that is to say, the Dukedom of Burgundy on this side of the Saône, the Dukedom of Burgundy beyond the Saône, and the Dukedom of Burgundy beyond the Jura. This last, containing the greatest part of all these Alpine Provinces (except Piemont only) was by the said Charles given to Conrad a Saxon Prince, the Son of Witkind III. and younger Brother of Robert, the first Earl of Anjou; by the name of Earl of Burgundy Transjurane or Burgundy beyond the Jura. Rodolph his Son and Successor, by Eudes the King of France, his Cousin German, was honoured with the title of King: to make him equal at the least, with Boson Earl of Burgundy beyond the Saône, whom Charles the Great, about the same time had made King of Arles.

But Rodolph finding it offensive to the German Emperor, abandoned it on the death of Eudes, and took to himself the title of Duke. The residue of the story we shall have in the following Catalogue of

#### The Earls, Dukes and Kings of Burgundy Transjurane.

1. Conrad the first Earl of Burgundy Transjurane.
2. Rodolph, Earl, King, and Duke of Burgundy Transjurane.
3. Rodolph II. elected King of Italy against Berengar; which title he exchanged with Hugh de Arles, who was chosen by another Election, for the possession of the Kingdom of Arles and Burgundy, on the assuming of which Crown, he reigned this Dukedom Brother Boson.
4. Boson the Brother of Rodolph II. succeeded his Brother in the Dukedom of Burgundy, beyond the Jura; as afterwards he succeeded Rodolph, his Brothers Son, in the Kingdom of Arles and Burgundy.
5. Conrad II. Son of Boson, King of Arles and Burgundy and Duke of Burgundy Transjurane.
6. Rodolph III. Son of Conrad, who dying without Issue, left his Estates to Henry furnished the Black, the Son of his Sister Gisela, by Conrad II. Emperor and King of German; united so unto the Empire, till by the bounty and improvidence of some following Emperours, it was Cantoned into many parts; of which more anon.

It is now time to lay aside this discourse as to the general condition and affairs of these Alpine Provinces; and to look over the particulars: beginning first with the Estate of the Duke of Savoy, situate wholly in the Mountains, and lying next to Italy, where before we left.

### The Dukedom of SAVOY.

THE Dukedom of SAVOY is bounded on the East with Milan and Montferrat in Italy; on the West, with Dauphine in France; on the North, with Switzerland, and the Lake of Geneva; and on the South, with Provence, and the Mediterranean. The Country of it different nature, that it cannot be reduced under any one Character: and therefore we must look upon it in the several parts into which divided; that is to say, 1. the Principality of Piemont, and 2. Savoy, especially so called.

1. PIEMONTE, in Latine called Regio Pedemontana, because situate at the foot of the Mountains (as the name in both Languages imports) is bounded on the East, with Milan, and Montferrat; on the West, with Savoy, on the North, with the Swissers; and on the South, it runneth in a narrow Valley to the Mediterranean, having Montferrat on the one side, Provence and a part of the Alpes upon the other. The Country wonderfully fertile compared with Switzerland, and Savoy. which lie next unto it; but thought to be inferior to the rest of Italy. It containeth, besides Barones, and Lords, 15 Marquises, 52 Earldoms, 160 Castles or Walled places; and is so populous withal, that once a Piemontese being demanded the extent of his Country, he answered, that it was a City of three hundred miles in compass.

The

The principal Cities of it are, 1. Turin, called of old *Augusta Taurinorum*, because the head City of the Taurini, once the Inhabitants of this Tract: from which Taurini, it deriveth the name of Turin, and not as some conceive from the River Duria, on whose banks it standeth. In this City is the Court and Palace of the Duke of Savoy (who is the Lord of this Country) the See of an Archbishop, and an University, in which the renowned Scholar Erasmus took his degrees in Divinity. It is situate on the River Po, in a place very important for the guard of Italy; for which cause the Romans sent a Colony thither, and the Lombards made it one of their four Dukedoms. Adjoining to it is a Park of the Dukes of Savoy, watered with the Duria, Stura, and Po, six miles in circuit, full of Woods, Lakes, and pleasant Fountains; which make it one of the sweetest situations in Europe. 2. Mondovi, seated on the swelling of a little hill, with very fair Suburbs round about it; in one of which the Dukes of Savoy built a Church and Chappel to the blessed Virgin; intended for the burial place of the Ducal Family. It is the best peopled Town, for the bigness of it, of any in Italy. 3. Augusta Pretoria, now called Aost, situate in the furthest corner of Italy to the North and West. 4. Verelli, a strong Town bordering upon Milan, to which it formerly belonged; and was given first in Dower with Blanch the Daughter of Philip Maria Duke of Milan, to Amade III. Duke of Savoy; anciently the chief Town of the Libyei, who to gether with the Salassi and Taurini, were the old Inhabitants of this Country. 5. Ivrea, called by Polony Eporadia, situate at the very jaws of the Alpes, an Episcopal City. 6. Nives, or Nivese, an Haven on the Mediterranean, at the influx of the River Varo, which divides it from Provence; beautified with a Cathedral Church, the Bishops Palace, a Monastery of Nuns, and an impregnable Citadel. A place so naturally strong, that when as yet the Fortifications were imperfect, it resisted the whole Forces of Barbarossa the Turkish Admiral, Anno 1449. lying before it with a Navy of two hundred sail, and battering it continually with incredible fury. First fortified by Duke Charles, upon occasion of some words of the Duke of Bourbon, who passing this way with his Army, beheld, faith he, a situation of which they know not the importance: the Citadel being after added by Emanuel Philibert, and Garrisoned for the most part with 400 Souldiers. 7. Susse, seated in the ordinary thorough-fare betwixt France and Italy, called of old *Segovia*; and honoured in those times with a stately Sepulchre of King Coligny, a King of the Albiges: one of the seven Marquises in the middle times erected by the Emperor Otto. 8. Pignerolle, fortified with a Castle of great importance, which commandeth all the adjoining Valleys, fold by Duke Charles Emanuel to Lewis XIII. of France, together with the Fort and Valley of Perouse, (and in them both to the number of ten or twelve Towns and Villages) for the sum of 49,000 Crowns, to be for ever in the propriety and Sovereignty of the Kings of France; and thereby giving to the French a commodious pass from Dauphine into Italy upon all occasions, and no small influence and command on his own Estates. 9. Gisors, adorned with many goodly Churches, fair Convents, and noble Families. 10. Ville Franche, a place of great strength, more towards the Sea. 11. Savilian, seated in so pleasant a Country, that Duke Emanuel Philibert had once a purpose to settle his abode in it, and make it the chief of his Estate. 12. Enjuque, a Marquise, another of the seven erected for the Sons of Valeran. 13. Hereunto we may add the City of Ait (though properly within the limits of Montferrat) anciently a Colony of the Romans; and now to be compared, for the greatness and beauty of

her Palaces, to the most stately Cities of Lombardy; situate betwixt the two Rivers of Po and Tanarus, very rich and populous.

Here is also in this Country the Marquise of Saluzzero, (of the same erection as the former, but a greater Estate) the cause of so many differences betwixt France and Savoy. The principal Town whereof is called also Saluzzero (from the Salassi, questionless who dwelt herabouts) seated about the Spring of the River Po; reasonably big, and fortified with a very large Cattle, fitted with rooms for all uses, and for every fashion. 2. Carmanoglia, which gave name to that famous Captain who carried to great a way in the Wars of Italy. A Town so fortified and stored with all sorts of Ammunition, that it is thought impregnable. 3. Ravelle, a well fortified place. 4. Doglian, the thorough-fare for the greatest part of the Trade which is driven betwixt Piemont, and the River of Genoa. The Arms heretofore Argent, a Chief Gules.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Country were the Salassi, Libyei, and Taurini, as before is said, all vanquished by the Romans, and their Country made a Province of that Empire, by the name of the Province of Alpes Cottie, in the time of Nero; of which Genoa was the Metropolis or principal City. The present are defended, for the most part, of the Heruli, who under the conduct of Odoacer conquered Italy; whereof he was proclaimed King by the Romans themselves, but Odoacer being vanquished near Verona, by Theodoric King of the Gots, the Heruli had this Country allotted to them by the Conqueror for their habitation. They had not held it long when subdued by the Lombards, of whose Kingdom it remained a part, till given by Arispert the seventeenth King of the Lombards to the Church of Rome; affirmed by some to be the first temporal Estate that ever the Popes of Rome had possession of. But lying far off, and the Donation not confirmed by the Kings succeeding, the Popes got little by the gift: so that in the subverting of the Kingdom of the Lombards, it was at the devotion of the Kings of Italy, of the house of Charles the Great; and afterwards of his Successors in the Empire, by whom distracted into several Estates and Principalities: Thomas and Peter, Earls of Savoy, made themselves Masters of the greatest part of it, by force of Arms: the former in the year 1210, the latter in the year 1256. Since that time the first Son of Savoy is styled Prince of Piemont. The Marquise of Saluzzero, containing almost all the rest, was added by the marriage of a daughter of this Marquise, with Charles Duke of Savoy, Anno 1481. Of which Marriage though there was no issue, yet the Savoyards always held it as their own, till the French upon a good title possessed themselves of it: Recovered by the Savoyards, Anno 1588. The Civil Wars then hot in France. But finding that he was not able to hold it against Henry IV. (who looked upon it as a door to let his Forces into Italy) he compounded with him, Anno 1600. the Country of Bresse being given in exchange for this Marquise: of which, together with the residue of Piemont, and some pieces of importance in the Dukedom of Montferrat, that noble Family of Savoy doth now stand possessed.

The Arms of this Principality are Gules, a Cross Argent, charged with a Label of three points Azure.

2. SAVOY, strictly and specially so called, is bounded on the East, with Wallisland, and part of Piemont; on the West, with Dauphine, and La Bresse; on the South, with some parts of Dauphine only; and on the North with Switzerland, and the Lake of Geneva.

The Country is for the most part hilly and Mountainous,

tainous, overspread with the branches of the *Alpes*, healthy enough, as commonly all Hill Countries are, but not very fruitful, except some Valleys which lie nearest to the Western Sun, and the plain tract about the *Lemanian Lake*, lying towards *Geneva*. By reason of the difficult and narrow ways, and those full of Thieves, it was once called *Malvay*; but the passages being opened by the coit and industry of the people, and purged of Thieves by good Laws and exemplary Justice, it gained the name of *Savoy*, or *Salvay*, *quasi salva via*: as *Maleventum*, a Town of the Realm of *Naples*, on the like considerations got the name of *Benevent*. By the *Latines* of these later times it is called *Sabaudia*, a name not known to any of the ancient Writers; who knew it by no other name than that of the *Allobroges*, or *Allobrogum Regio*.

The common People are naturally very dull and simple, so gross of understanding for their continual converse with other Nations, who take this Country in their way to *Italy*; that they believe the Duke of *Savoy* to be the greatest Prince in the World: and so unworlike, that a few men of another Nation, well trained and disciplined, will make a great number of them flee. But on the other side, the Gentry are of a very pleasing conversation, civil, ingenious, and affecting all good exercise: so that there may be daily seen in *Chambers* as much good company, and as well appointed and behaved, as in many of the best Towns of *France* or *Italy*. The number of both sorts (taking in *Piedmont* who are not intermixed in the first place of this character) are thought to be 800000.

The chief Cities are, 1. *Chambery*, situate on the banks of the River *L'Arche*, in a very pleasant Valley, compassed round with Mountains; the principal of the Dukedom on that side of the *Alpes*: honoured with the Dukes Court when he resideth in this Country, the ordinary seat of Justice, and many neat houses which belong to the Gentry, fortified of late with a strong Castle and sufficient Outworks; but not recovered of the damage it received, Anno 1600. when it was forced by King Henry IV. of *France*, in his Wars with *Savoy*. 2. *Tarentaise*, an Archbishop's See, situate in the midst of the Mountains, heretofore the Metropolis of the Province of the *Alpes Graie*, and *Pennine*, and called by *Antoninus*, *Civitas Centronum*, from the Centrons who inhabited about this Tract. 3. *Lombard* in the Country of the old *Medullis* betwixt which and *Suse*, a Town of *Piedmont*, lieth the most ordinary road betwixt *France* and *Italy*. 4. *Aigue belle*, situate at the foot of a craggy Rock. 5. *Kapelle*, a sweet and fruitful situation, on the South-side of the Lake *Lemanus*, the chief Town of the Signory of *Fiefogney*: where *Amadee I.* Duke of *Savoy*, having given over his Estate, lived a Monastick life, and was thence chosen Pope by the Fathers at *Basil*, Anno 1440. 6. *Nyon* or *Nevindan* (by some of the old *Latines* called *Nivindanum*) an ancient City, laid desolate in or before the time of *Julius Cæsar*, repaired again in the Empire of *Vespasian*, the Seat of late times of the Bishops of *Geneva*, since their expulsion out of that City. 7. *Belle*, on the *Rhodanus*, or *Rhône*. 8. *Albon*, founded about the year 456. 9. *Conflans*, fortified by the late Dukes of *Savoy*; but otherwise of small importance. 10. *Annunziata*, not much observable, but for being the seat or place of Solemnities, for an Order of Knights called by that name. 11. *Maurienne*, or *St. John de Maurienne*, an Archbishop's See, situate in the Valley of the *Alpes*: so called; the chief City of the old *Medullis*, who dwell hereabouts; from whence the Prince of this house were first entituled Earls of *Maurienne* only. 12. *Charbonnières*, a well fortified place. Here is also the

strong Town and Fort of *Montmelian*, which held out four Months against *Henry IV.* and many thousand shot of *French Cannon*, Anno 1600, and the impregnable Forts of *St. Catharines*, which yet submitted to that King; the Government whereof being denied to the Duke *Byron*, plunged him in discontent and Treason, to the loss of his head.

The many Tribes in and about this Mountainous Country, of which we have mentioned some before, pass generally in most ancient Writers, by the name of *Allobroges*; because the most powerful of them all. Of whom the first mention which we find in story, is the Atonement made by *Hannibal* in his passage this way, between *Bruncus* and his Brother, about the succellion of the Kingdom. Afterwards siding with the *Sallii* a *Gallick* Nation, in a War against *Marsilius*, then a Confederate of the *Romans*, they drew that people on their backs: by whom they were in fine subdued, with the loss of no less than 120000 *Gauls*, under the several conducts of *Cicilius Avobarbus*, and *Qu. Fabius Maximus*: by which last, *Bituntis*, or *Bituntis* King of the *Avernus*, one of the Confederates, was led in triumph unto *Rome*. The Country and people at that time were much alike, *Cælon atrox pervicacia ingenio*, a sharp air, and a stubborn people, as it is in *Florus*: not without commendation in the following Ages, for discovering *Catiline's* conspiracy, by which the whole *Roman* State was in danger of ruin. After which we find *Collus*, one of the Kings of these *Allobroges*, to have been in special favour with *Augustus Cæsar*: affirmed to be the Founder of twelve Cities in this mountainous Tract; whence it had the name of *Alpes Cællie*; and by that name reduced into the form of a Province, by the Emperor *Nero*. In the declining of that Empire, this Province became a part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; and passed, with other rights of that falling Kingdom, to the Emperors of *Germany*, by the gift of *Rodolph* the last King. To them it did continue subject till the year 999. in which *Berald* of *Saxony*, Son of *Hugh* of *Saxony* (which *Hugh* was Son of *Obbo*, and Brother to *Obbo III.*) for killing *Mary* the lascivious Wife of his Uncle, fled from *Germany*; and settled himself here, near *France*. His Son *Humbert*, (surnamed *Blanchmanis*, that is *Whitehand*) was by the special favour of the Emperor *Conradus Salicus*, made Earl of *Maurienne*; which is a Town of this Country, Anno 1027. And by his Marriage with *Adela*, the Daughter and Heir of the Marquess of *Suse*, added that noble Marquise (one of the seven erected by *Obbo II.* and given amongst the Sons of *Wateran*) unto his Estate. *Humbert II.* gained by Conquest the Town and Territory of *Tarentaise*; as *Ame*, or *Amadee III.* did the Counties of *Vauks*, and *Chablais*, Anno 1240. or thereabouts. *Ame*, or *Amadee IV.* by the Marriage of *Sibylle*, Daughter and sole Heir of *Ulric* Earl of *Bresse*, added that Earldom to his House: as *Ame* or *Amadee IX.* did the Town and Territory of *Perelli*, upon the Contract betwixt *Philbert* his Son and Successor, with *Blanch* the base Daughter of *Philip Maria* Duke of *Milain*, who afterwards was married unto *Francis Sforza*. *Ame*, or *Amadee II.* Earl of *Maurienne* was by the Emperor *Henry V.* invested with the Title of *Savoy*; and *Amadee VIII.* created the first Duke, by the Emperor *Sigismund*, Anno 1397. But the main improvement of the power and patrimony of this House came by the valour and good success of the two Earls, *Thomas*, who in the year 1310, and *Peter* one of his Sons and Successors (for his manifold Conquests, surnamed *Charlemain the Junior*) An. 1256. by conquest got a great part of *Piedmont*; to which the Marquise of *Saluzzes*, containing almost all the rest, was united by a marriage of the daughter of the Marquise, to *Charles* Duke

Duke of *Savoy*: and though he died without Issue by her, Anno 1489, yet his Successors still kept the possession of it, till *Francis I.* pretending some title to it in the right of his Mother (a Daughter of the House of *Savoy*) laid it into the Crown of *France*; from which it was again recovered by the *Savoyard*, during the *French Civil Wars*, Anno 1588, and now is peaceably possessed. The Country of *Bresse* being given to the *French*, for their pretension to this Marquise, Anno 1600. These Dukes of *Savoy* have a long time been devoted to the Faction of *Spain*, especially since the *French Kings* took in the latter States bordering on them, as *Burgundy*, *Bretagne*, &c. *Charles III.* sided so constantly with the Emperor *Charles V.* that denying *Francis I.* a passage for his Army through the Country into *Italy*; he was by the said King deposed of his Estates An. 1536. The Emperor to recover it left nothing undone, but in vain; for the *French* encountering his force in the open field, vanquished them, with the slaughter of fifteen thousand of his men. In the year 1558, peace being made between *Henry* and *Philip*, Successors to those great Princes: *Emanuel Philibert*, Son to Duke *Charles*, was restored to all his Rights. His Son and Successor having married *Katherine* the Daughter of King *Philip II.* depended wholly upon *Spain*, notwithstanding many quarrels which did grow betwixt them; his Sons receiving thence many great Penions and preferments. For at the same time, Prince *Amadee Vittorio* the second Son, during the life of *Philip* his elder Brother, was chief Commander of that King's Gallies; and had in Pension a hundred thousand Crowns per annum; *Philbert* the third Son, was Vice-roy of *Sicily*; *Maurice* IV. a Cardinal, had a moiety of the Revenues of the Archbishopric of *Toledo*; and *Don Thomas*, a young man, had his Penions also. But *Amadee Vittorio*, who succeeded him, marrying *Madam Christine*, a Daughter of King *Henry IV.* of *France*, changed his dependences; and held more close to *France* than any of his Predecessors: but whether to the hurt or benefit of his Estates, future times will show. For leaving his Heir a Minor, in the hands of his Mother, the *French* upon pretence of preserving the Country for him, against the incroachments of the *Spaniards*, have made themselves Masters of the greatest parts of it: which when they will restore to the proper Owner, is beyond my cunning to determine. But now behold the Catalogue of the

#### Earls and Dukes of Savoy.

- 999 1. *Berald* of *Saxony*.
- 1027 2. *Humbert*, the first Earl of *Maurienne*.
- 1048 3. *Ame*, or *Amadee I.*
- 1076 4. *Humbert II.*
- 1109 5. *Ame*, or *Amadee II.* the first Earl of *Savoy*.
- 1154 6. *Humbert III.*
- 1201 7. *Thomas*, Son of *Humbert*.
- 1234 8. *Ame*, or *Amadee III.*
- 1246 9. *Bisiface*, Son of *Ame III.*
- 1256 10. *Peter*, a young Son of Earl *Thomas*, called *Charlemagne* the first.
- 1268 11. *Philip*, Brother of *Peter*.
- 1285 12. *Ame*, or *Amadee IV.* Nephew of *Thomas VII.* Earl, by a Son named *Thomas*.
- 1323 13. *Edward*, Son of *Ame IV.*
- 1329 14. *Ame*, or *Amadee V.* the Brother of *Edward*.
- 1342 15. *Ame*, or *Amadee VI.*
- 1385 16. *Ame*, or *Amadee VII.*
- 1397 17. *Ame*, or *Amadee VIII.* the first Duke of *Savoy*.
- 1434 18. *Lewis*, Son of *Ame VIII.*

- 1491 19. *Ame*, or *Amadee IX.*
- 1475 20. *Philbert*, Son of *Ame IX.*
- 1481 21. *Charles*, Brother of *Philbert*.
- 1489 22. *Charles II.*
- 1495 23. *Philip II.* Son of *Lewis* the second Duke.
- 1496 24. *Philbert II.*
- 1504 25. *Charles III.* the Brother of *Philbert*, ousted of his Estate by King *Francis I.*
- 1559 26. *Emanuel Philibert*, restored upon his Marriage with *Margaret* the Daughter of King *Francis I.* made Knight of the Garter by Queen *Mary*.
- 1580 27. *Charles Emanuel*.
28. *Ame X.* called also *Amadee Vittoria*, Son of *Charles Emanuel*, married *Christiane* the Daughter of King *Henry IV.*
- 1637 29. *Charles Emanuel II.* Son of *Amadee Vittoria*, or *Ame X.* at the age of three years succeeded his Father.

The Forces of this Duke consist especially in his Forts and Garrisons, whereof he hath good store in *Savoy*, and *Piedmont*, well fortified and plentifully furnished with all manner of Ammunition. And it concerneth him so to have, considering, what dangerous neighbours he hath near him, and that his Country is a continual thoroughfare, for the Armies both of *France* and *Spain*, upon all occasions. Nor doth it less conduce to his preservation, that he hath to many retreats of natural strength, as are not easily accessible by a conquering Army; of which last fort is, amongst many others, the Valley of *Asti* (which some reckon for a part of *Savoy*, and some of *Piedmont*) so strong by reason of the narrow entries, the uneasy passages, and the great multitudes of the people which inhabit in it; that those who have made themselves Masters of the rest of the Country, durst never attempt it. And of the first, besides those formerly described, is the Town of *Nizze*, so fortified and flanked upon all accesses, that it seems rather to be an assembly of Forts, than a single Fortified. Out of which Garrisons, the Duke is able to draw great Forces for present service; besides the readiness of the *Piedmontese* upon all occasions, which are for the most part taken to Arms.

The ordinary Revenue of this Dukedom (taking *Piedmont*) are said to be above a Million of Crowns per annum. But his extraordinary is so great, that Duke *Charles Emanuel*, during the Wars with *Henry IV.* in a very few years drew out of *Piedmont* only 11 Millions of Crowns; besides the charge which they were put to in quartering of Soldiers, by which it may appear, that the Dukes are not like to want money to serve their turns; when they shall desire it of their Subjects; and yet not charge them more than they are able to bear.

The only Order of Knighthood in this Dukes estate is that of the *Annunziata* ordained by *Amadee* the first Duke, at what time he defended *Rhodes* from the *Turks*, An. 1409. Their Collar is of fifteen Links, to shew the fifteen myriades of the *Virgin*; at the end is the portraiture of our Lady, with the history of the *Annunziata*. Instead of a Motto, these letters, F. E. R. T. id est, *Fortitudo Ejus Rhodum Tenuit*, are engraven in every plate or link of the Collar; each link being interwoven one within the other, in form of a True-lovers knot. The number of the Knights are fourteen, besides the Duke, who is the Sovereign of the Order: the solemnity was held anciently on our Lady-day, in the Castle of *St. Peter* in *Turin*; but of late time in the Town of *Annunziata*, from hence so denominated. So from this victory (for every repulse of the besieger, is a victory to the be-

figged) there arose a double effect; first, the institution of this Order; secondly, the assumption of the present Army of this Duchy, where are G. a Crofs A. This being the Crofs of St. John of Jerusalem, whose Knights at that time were Owners of the Rhodet. Whereas before, the Arms were Or, an Eagle displayed with two heads, Sable, Armed Gules supporting in Fesse, an Escutcheon of Savoy, that is Barwise six pieces Sable and Or, a Bend flowered Vert. A Coat belonging to the Emperours of the house of Savoy, from whom the first Earls of Savoy did derive themselves.

### 3. The Signeury of GENEVA.

GENEVA is a City in the Dukedom of Savoy, formerly subject to its Bishops, acknowledging the Dukes of Savoy for the Lord chief: now reckoned as a Free-Estate, bordering close upon the *Switzers*, and with them Confederate; and so more properly within the course and compass of the *Alpine* Provinces. It is situate on the South-side of the Lake Lemane, opposite to the City of *Lozane* in the Canton of *Bern*, from which it is distant six Dutch miles: the River *Rhofne* having passed through the Lake with a clear colour, that it seemeth not at all to mingle with the waters of it: runneth through the lower part thereof, over which there is a passage by two fair Bridges. This lower part is seated on a flat or level, the rest on the ascent of an Hill: the buildings fair and of Free-stone, well fortified on both sides both by Art and Nature; in regard of the pretensions of the Duke of Savoy (whom they suffer not to arm any Gallies upon the Lake) and other jealousies of State. The compass of the whole City is about two miles, in which there are supposed to be about sixteen or seventeen thousand souls. One of their Bridges is more ancient, and better fortified than the other, belonging anciently to the *Switzers* (or *Helvetians*), the old Inhabitants of that tract; but broken down by *Julius Cesar*, to hinder them from passing that way into *Gallia*.

The people of the Town are generally of good wit in the managery of publick business, but not very courteous towards Strangers, of whom they exact as much as may be; modest and thrifty in Apparel, and speak for the most part the *Savoyard*, or worst kind of *French*. So that the great resort of young Gentlemen thither, is not so much to learn that Language (which is no where worse taught) as out of an opinion which their Parents have, that the *Reformed Religion* is no where so purely practised and professed as there. By means whereof, the *Jry* or *seminary* of our Gentry being seasoned in their youth with *Genevan* Principles: have many times proved disaffected to the forms of Government (as well *Monarchical* as *Episcopal*) which they found established here at home: to the great embroilment of the State, in matters of more near concernment. The Women are said to be more chaste (or at least more reserved) than in any other place in the World: which possibly may be ascribed to that severity, with which they punish all Offenders in that kind. Dancing by no means tolerated in publick or private: *Adultery* expiated by no less than death: *Fornication*, for the first offence with nine days fasting upon bread and water in prison; for the second, with whipping; for the third, with banishment. But notwithstanding this severity, they make love in secret, and are as amorous in their dalliances, as in other places.

The Territories of it are very small, extending not above two Leagues and an half from any part of the Town: but the soil, if well manured, bringeth Grain

of all sorts, and great store of Wine. There is likewise plenty of Pasture and feeding grounds, which furnish the City with flesh-meats, Butter, and Cheese, at very reasonable rates: the nearness of the Lake affording them both Fish and Wild-Fowl in good measure, and amongst others (as some say) the best *Carps* in Europe.

But the main improvement of this State is by the industry of the people, and the convenient situation of the City itself: the City being situated very well for the Trade of Merchandize, in regard it is the ordinary passage, for transporting Commodities out of Germany, to the *Marts* at *Lions*; and from thence back again to Germany, *Switzerland*, and some parts of Italy. And for the industry of the people, it is discernable in that great store of Amour, and Apparel, and other Necessaries, brought from hence yearly by those of *Bern*; and their Manufactures in Satin, Velvet, Taffate, and some quantities of Cloth, (fine, but not durable) transported hence yearly into other places.

The Sovereignty of this City was anciently in the Earls heretofore, at first *Imperial Officers* only, but at last hereditary Princes of it. Betwixt these and the Bishops (Suffragans to the Metropolitan of *Vienne* in *Dauphine*) grew many quarrels for the absolute command thereof. In fine, the Bishops did obtain of the Emperour *Frederick I.* that they and their Successors should be sole Princes of Geneva; free from all Taxes, and not accountable to any but the Emperour. Which notwithstanding, the Earls continuing still to molest the Bishops, they were fain to call unto their aid the Earl of Savoy; who took upon him first as Protector only, but after by degrees as the Lord in Chief. For when the rights of the Earls of Geneva, by the Marriage of *Thomas* Earl of Savoy, with *Beatrice*, a Daughter of this Earl's, fell into that house then *Ame* or *Amade* VI. of that name, obtained of the Emperour *Charles IV.* to be *Vicer-general* of the Emperour in his own Country, and in that right superiour to the Bishop in all Temporal matters: and *Ame* or *Amade* the first Duke, got from *Pope Martin* to the great prejudice of the Bishops) a grant of all the Temporal jurisdiction of it. After which time the Bishops were constrained to do homage to the Dukes of Savoy, and acknowledge them for their Sovereign Lords: the Authority of the Dukes being grown so great (notwithstanding that the people were immediately subject to their Bishop only) that the Money in Geneva was stamped with the Duke's Name and Figure: Capital Offenders were pardoned by him; no Sentence of Law executed till his Officers were first made acquainted; nor League contracted by the people of any validity, without his privacy and allowance: and finally the Keys of the Town presented to him as often as he pleased to lodge there; as once (for instance) to Duke *Charles III.* coming thither with *Beatrice* his Wife, a Daughter of *Portugal*. And in this state it stood till the year 1528, the Bishop being all this while their immediate Lord, and having *jus gladii & alius civilis jurisdictionis partes*, as *Calvin* himself confesseth in an Epistle to Cardinal *Sadolet*. But in that year, Religion being then altered in the Canton of *Bern*, near adjoining to them, *Vire* and *Farel* did endeavour it in Geneva also. But finding that the Bishop and his Clergy did not like their doings, they forced themselves into the people, and by their aid in a popular tumult compelled the Bishop and his Clergy to abandon the Town. And though the Bishop made them many fair overtures, out of an hope to be restored to his Estate; yet would they never hearken to him, nor admit of him any more being once thrust out. Nor did they only in that tumult alter the Doctrine and Orders of

of the Church before established; but changed the Government of the State also: disclaiming all Allegiance both to Duke and Bishop, and standing on their own Liberty, as a Free-Commonwealth. And though all this was done by *Vire* and *Farel*, before *Calvin*'s coming to that City, which was not till the year 1536, yet being come, *sufragio suo comprobavit*, as he saith himself, no man was forwarder than he to approve the Action.

But *Calvin* being come amongst them, made their Divinity Reader, and one of the ordinary Preachers, he first negotiated with them to abjure the Papacy, and never more admit their Bishop; to which he found a cheerful and unanimous consent in all the people. Then finding that no Ecclesiastical Discipline was in use among them, he dealt with them to admit of one of his own composing: which at last he obtained also, but with very great difficulty: and got it ratified by the Senate, July 20. 1537. The next year after, the people weary of this yoke, and he and his Colleagues (*Farel*, and *Coradus*) as resolute to hold them to it; they were all three banished the Town in Popular humour; and with little levy fled to, to return again: to which he would by no means yield, except they would oblige themselves by a solemn Oath, to admit of such a Form of Discipline, as he with the advice of their other Ministers, should prescribe unto them. This being condescended to by that fickle multitude, he returns in triumph to Geneva, September the thirteenth, 1541. and got his new Discipline established on the twentieth of November following. The sum of the Device was this: All Ministers to be equal amongst themselves; two Lay-men to be super-added unto every Minister; the Minister to continue for term of life; the Lay-Elders to be annually chosen: these being met together to be called the Presbytery; and to have power of Ordination, Censure, Absolution; and whatsoever else was acted by the Bishop formerly. Hitherto is related to Geneva only, which being but one City, and a small one too, was not capable of more than one Presbytery. The names and notions of *Claical*, *Provincial*, and *National* Assemblies, came not in till afterwards, as it got ground in Kingdoms, and larger Provinces. This Platform though of purpose framed to content the people; yet since the Lay Officers were to be but annual, and after subject to the lay like other Mortals; it gave but sorry satisfaction unto wilful men. And being built withall on a false foundation, was for a long time hardly able to stand alone, and fain at twelve years end to borrow a support from Zurich, and others of the Protestant Cantons: whom *Calvin* earnestly solicited to allow his project, against which one *Perinus*, and some principal Citizens, had begun to spurn. And so we have the true beginning of the *Genevan* Discipline, begotten in Rebellion, born in sedition, and nursed up by Faction.

Being born in the World by the means aforesaid, some other helps it had to make it acceptable, and approved of, in other Churches. As first the great content it gave to the Common People, to see themselves entrusted with the weightiest matters of Religion; and thereby an equality with, if not (by reason of their number, being two for one) a superiority above their Ministers: Next, the great reputation, which *Calvin* for his diligence in Writing and Preaching, had attained unto; made all his Disciples as authentick amongst some Divines, as ever the *Popes* *Pix* did in the Church of Rome. Whereby it came to pass, in a little time, that only those Churches which embraced the Doctrine and Discipline authorized by *Calvin*, were called the *Reformed Churches*: those in High Germany, and elsewhere, which adhered to *Luther*,

being generally called by no other names than the *Lutherans*, or the *Lutheran Churches*; as not reformed enough from the dregs of Rome. Then comes in his endeavour to promote that Platform, in all other Churches, which he had calculated from the Meridian of Geneva only: commending it to *Gasper Olivianus*, Minister of the Church of *Triers*, as appears by his Letters dated April the twelfth 1560. congratulating the reception of it in the Churches of Poland, as appeareth by others of his Letters. And for the last help, comes in *Beza*, who not content to recommend it as convenient, for the use of that Church (beyond which *Calvin* did not go) imposed it as a matter necessary upon all the Churches: for necessity, *ut ab ea recedere non magis liceat, quam ab ipsius Religionis placitis*, that it was utterly as unlawful to recede from this, as for the most natural points of the Christian Faith. So he, *Epist.* 83. By means whereof their followers in most of the Reformed Churches drove on so furiously, that rather than their Discipline should not be admitted, and the Episcopal Government destroyed in all the Churches of CHRIST, they were resolved to depose Kings, ruin Kingdoms, and to subvert the fundamental Constitutions of all Civil States. And henceunto their own Ambitions gave them spur enough, affecting the Supremacy in these several Parishes; that they themselves might Lord it over God's Inheritance, under pretence of setting CHRIST upon his Throne. Upon which love to the preheminent they did not only pre against the Bishops, with malicious words (as *Diotrophes* for the same reason did against the Apolles) but not therewith content, neither would they themselves receive them, nor permit them that would, casting them out of the Church with reproach and infamy. Which proud ambition in the ordinary Parochial Minister, was cunningly fomented by some great persons, and many Lay-Persons in all places, who under-hand aimed at a further end: the one to raise themselves great fortunes out of Bishops Lands; the other to keep those Tythes themselves, to which by the Law they only were to nominate some deserving Person. Such were the helps by which this new device of *Calvin* was dispersed and propagated.

But to return unto Geneva, though *Calvin* for his time did hold the Chair as a perpetual Moderator, and *Beza* too, until *Dauver* set him beside the Cushion: yet after that, the power of the Presbytery was shrewdly lessened in Geneva, and the good members so restrained in the exercise of it; that they have no power to conveny any man before them, but by the authority of a *Synodick*, or Civil Magistrate. And as for maintenance, they hold their Ministers so strictly to a foryptance, as would be sure to keep them from presuming too much on their power in the Consistory. Tythes of all sorts were to be taken up for the use of the State, and laid up in the publick Treasury; and stipends issued out to maintain the Ministry: but thole so mean, that *Beza* stipend whilst he lived, hardly amounted to eighty pounds per annum, the residue of the City Ministers not to sixty pounds, those of the Villages adjoining, having hardly forty pounds; enough to keep them always poor, and miserably obnoxious to the wealthier Citizens. And that they may not steal the Goose, and stick up a Feather, the State doth use to make some poor allowance to the Wives and Daughters of their deceased Ministers, if they die poor, or leave their Children unprovided; or otherwise have deserved well in the time of their lives. In respect hereof though the Ministers are very strict in forbidding Dancing, and have writ many Tracts against it; yet to give some content to the common people (who have not leisure to attend it at other times) they allow all Manlike exercises on the Lord-days, as shooting in Piques, Long-

Long-bows, Cross-bows, and the like, and that too in the morning, both before and after the *Sermon*, to be no impediment to them, from coming to the Church at the times appointed.

As for the Government of the State, it is directed principally by the Civil or Imperial Laws; the Judge whereof is called the *Lieutenant-criminal*; before whom all causes are tried, and from whom there lieth no Appeal; unless it be unto the Council of two hundred, whom they call the *Great Council*, in which the supreme power of the State resideth. Out of this Council of two hundred, there is chosen another *lesser Council* of five and twenty, and out of them four principal Officers whom they call the *Syndicks*, who have the sole managing of the Community, except it be in some great matter, as making Peace or War, offensive or defensive Leagues, hearing Appeals, and such like general concerns: which the great Council of two hundred must determine of. They have a custom superadded to the Civil Law, that if any Malefactor from another place flee to them for refuge, they punish him after the custom of the place in which the crime was committed. Otherwise their Town being on the borders of divers Princes, would never be free from *Vagabonds*. Examples herof I will assign two: the first of certain *Monks*, who robbing their *Convents* of certain Plate, and hoping for their wicked pranks at home to be the welcome thither, were at their first acquaintance advanced to the Gallows. The second is of a *Spanish Gentleman*, who having fled his Country for clipping and counterfeiting the King's Gold, came to this Town, and had the like reward. And when for defence he alleged, that he understood their City being free, gave admittance to all Offenders; *True* (said they) *but what an intent to punish them that offended*: a distinction which the *Spaniard* never till then learned, but then it was too late.

As for their ordinary Revenue, it is proportionable to their Territory, if not above it, conceived to amount to 60000 pounds per annum; which they raise upon the domain of the Bishop, and the *Tythes* of the Church, and on such impositions as are laid upon flesh and Merchandise. But they are able to raise greater sums if there be occasion, as appears plainly by the finding of 45000 Crowns to King Henry III. before they had been long settled in their own Estates.

And as for Military Forces, they are able to impress two thousand men, and have Arms of all sorts for many in the public Magazine: as also twelve or fourteen Pieces of Ordnance, with all manner of Ammunition appertaining to them; and on the Lake some Gallies in continual readiness, against the Gallies threatened them by the Dukes of Savoy. And for the greater safety of their Estate, and the preservation of their Religion, they joined themselves in a constant and perpetual League with the Canton of Bern, Anno 1582. communicating to each other the Freedom of their several Cities; and by that means, are reckoned for a Member of the Commonwealth of the *Switzers*, which is no small favour to their affairs. But their chief strength, as I conceive, is, that neighbouring Princes are not willing to have it fall into the hands of that Duke, or any other Potentate of more strength than he. Inasmuch that when that Duke belleged it, Anno 1589, they were aided from Venice with four and twenty thousand, and from England with thirteen thousand Crowns, from Florence with Intelligence of the Enemies purposes. Another time, when the Pope, the French King, the *Spaniard*, and Savoyard had designs upon it; the Emperor offered them assistance both of Men and Money: yea, and sometimes the Dukes of Savoy have assisted them against the others, as being more

desirous that the Town should remain as it doth, than fall into any other hands than his own. So ordinary a thing it is for such petty States, to be more safe by the interest of their jealous neighbours, than any forces of their own.

The Arms of Geneva, when under the command of the Earls thereof were Or a Cross Azure. But for the title of Geneva after it had been born a while by the Earls of Savoy, it was given to Philip youngest Son of Anne or Anne de la Roche, to Janus the third Son of Louis the second Duke; and finally, to Philip Duke of Nemours, the fourth Son of Philip the seventh Duke of Savoy, in whose Posterity (Dukes of Nemours) it doth still continue.

#### 4. WALLISLAND.

EASTWARD from Savoy, in a long and deep bottom of the *Alpes Pénine*, lieth the Country of WALLISLAND: so called either *quasi* Wallenland, or the Land of the *Valenses*, once the Inhabitants of the Country about *Martinach*, a chief Town heretofore, or *quasi* Valley-land, or the Land of Valley, of which it totally consists. It stretcheth from the Mountain de *Furken*, to the Town of *St. Maurice*, where again the hills do close, and shut up the Valley; which is so narrow in that place, that a River laid from one hill to another (under which the River *Rhofne* doth pass) is capable of no more than one Arch only, and that defended with a Castle and two strong Gates. On other parts it is environed with a continual Wall of steep and horrid Mountains, covered all the year long with a crust of Ice; so passable at all by Armies, and not without much difficulty by single Passengers: so that having but that one entrance to it, which before we spoke of, no Citadel can be made so strong by Art, as this whole Country is by Nature. But in the bottom of those craggy and impassable Rocks, lies a pleasant Valley, fruitful in Saffron, Corn, Wine, and most delicate fruits; and happily enriched with Meadows, and most excellent Pastures, which yield a notable increase of Cheese and Butter: and in the Country about *Sion* they discovered in Anno 1544. a Fountain of Salt; and have also many hot Baths, and medicinal waters very wholesome. Oil Springs, and River-water, they are very delicate; having scarce any but what they fetch from the *Rhofne*, with a great deal both of charge and trouble (the common people using snow-water for the most part for domestick uses) which made one pleasantly observe, that they pay dearer for their Water, than they do for their Wine. Cattel they have sufficient to serve their turn, and amongst others, a wild *Buck*, equal to a *Stag* in bigness, footed like a *Goat*, and horned like a *Fallow Deer*, leaping with wonderful agility from one Precipice to another, and so not easily caught but in Summer time, for then the heat of that season makes him blind.

It is divided into the Upper and the Lower Wallisland: the Upper lying towards the Mountain de *Furken*, in the very bottom of the Valley; and the Lower stretching out to the Town of *St. Maurice*, which is at the opening of the same: the length of both laid to be five ordinary days journey, but the breadth not answerable. The Upper Wallisland containeth the seven *Rejorts*, of 1. *Sion*, or *Sedun*, 2. *Leuch*, 3. *Brig*, 4. *Nice*, 5. *Ravenn*, 6. *Sider*, 7. *Gumbei*, in which are reckoned thirty Parishes, the Lower comprehending the six *Rejorts* of 1. *Gardis*, 2. *Ardis*, 3. *Salen*, 4. *Martinach*, 5. *Juremont*, and 6. *St. Maurice*: in which are 24 Parishes. The people in both parts laid to be courteous towards strangers, but very rough and churlish towards one another.

It

The several *Rejorts* before mentioned, are named according to the names of their principal Towns: which according to their reckoning are thirteen in number. The chief of which are 1. *Sedunum*, *Sitium*, or *Sion*, a Bishop's See, suffragan to the Metropolitan of *Tarvennise*; the chief of all this little Country: of no great beauty in it self, but neat and gallant in respect of the Towns about it. Situate in a Plain on the River of *Rhofne*, under a Mountain of two tops; on the one of which being the lower, is seated the Cathedral Church, and the Canon's houses; and on the other, looking downwards with a dreadful precipice, a very strong Castle, the dwelling place of the Bishop in the heat of Summer; which being built upon a Hill of so great an height, and so hazardous an ascent, is impossible almost to be took by force; the sharpness of the Rocks keeping it from the danger of assaults and the highness of the Hill from the reach of the Gun-shot. 2. *Martinach*, by *Cesar* called *Obodurus*, and *Civitas Valensium* by *Antonius*, remarkable for its antiquity only. 3. *St. Maurice*, or *St. Moritz*, anciently *Auganum*, the Key of the whole Country; but in Winter especially, when all the other passages are frozen up, that there is no other entrance but by the Bridge at this Town, which for that cause is very well manned and fortified to avoid surprisal; and therefore also chosen for the seat of the Governour of the Lower Wallisland.

This Country now called Wallisland, is in most *Latine* Writers called by the name of *Vallesia*, but corruptly, as I think, for *Vallesia*, as the Dutch or English name for Wallisland: which name I should conceive it took from the *Valenses*, the old Inhabitants of this Valley, of whom *Obodurus* (now called *Martinach*) is by *Antonius* made to be the Metropolitan, or principal City. It was made subject to the Romans by *Julius Cesar*, at such time as the *Helvetians* were conquered by him: and falling with the Western parts of the Roman Empire unto *Charles the Great*, was by him given to *Theodulus* Bishop of *Sion*, Anno 805. Under his Successors they continued to this very day; but so, as that the Deputies of the seven *Rejorts* have not only voices with the *Canons* in his Election, but being chosen and invested unto the place, they joyn with him also in the Diet for choosing Magistrates, redressing grievances, and determining matters of the State. The Lower Wallisland obeyeth the Upper, made subject by long War, and the chance of Victory, and hath no way in the publick Government, but takes for Law that which their Governours agree of. The same Religion is in both, being that of Rome. For maintenance whereof they combined themselves with the seven Popish Cantons of *Switzerland*, Anno 1572. or thereabouts: as also for their mutual defence and preservation against Foreign Enemies, and keeping amity and concord amongst one another.

#### 5. SWITZERLAND.

NEXT unto Wallisland lieth the Country of the *SWITZER*s, having on the East, the *Grisons*, and some part of the *Tirol*, in Germany; on the West, the Mountain *Jura*, and the Lake of Geneva, which parts it from Savoy, and Burgundy, on the North, *Suevia*, or *Schwaben*, another Province also of the upper Germany; and on the South, Wallisland and the Alps, which border on the Dukedom of *Milain*.

The whole Country heretofore divided into three Parts only, that is to say, 1. *Argon*, so called from the

River *Aaz*, whose chief Town was *Lucern*: 2. *Wissburgergon*, so called from *Wissburg* an old Town thereof, the chief City whereof is *Bern*: And 3. *Zurichgon*, so named from *Zurich*, both formerly and at this present the Town of most note in all this Tract; but since the falling of these Countries from the house of *Austria*, divided into many Cantons and other members; of which more anon.

It is wholly in a manner over-grown with craggy Mountains, but such as for the most part have grassy tops, and in their bottoms afford rich Meadows, and nourishing Pastures, which breed them a great flock of Cattel, their greatest wealth. And in some places yields plenty of very good Wines, and a fair increase of Corn also, if care and industry be not wanting on the Husbandmans part, but neither in so great abundance, as to serve all necessary uses, which want they do supply from their neighbouring Countries. And though it stand upon as high ground as any in *Christendom*, yet is so place more stored with Rivers, and capacious Lakes; which do not only yield them great abundance of Fish, but serve the people very well in the way of Traffick, to disperse their several Commodities from one Canton to another. Of which the principal are, *Bodensee*, and the Lake of *Call*, made by the *Rhene*; *Genslersee*, or the Lake of Geneva, by the *Rhofne*; *Wallatsee*, and the Lake of *Lucern*, made by the *Russe*; *Namoburger* and *Bietsee*, by the *Orbe*; and *Zurichsee*, by the River of *Limas*, or *Limachus*.

It is in length two hundred and forty miles, an hundred and eighty in breadth; conceived to be the highest Country in Europe (as before is said) the Rivers which do issue from it running through all quarters of the same; as *Rhene*, through France and Belgium, North; *Po*, through Italy to the South; *Rhodanus*, through part of France, to the Western Ocean; and the *Inn*, which falling into the *Danubius* passeth through Germany, and Hungary, into *Pontus Euxinus*.

And as the Country is, such are the Inhabitants of rude and rugged dispositions, more fit for Arms than any civil occupations, capable of toyl and labour, which the necessities of their Country do insure them to, not able otherwise to afford them an hungry livelihood: the poverty whereof makes them seek for service, which they shift and change according as they like the conditions of their entertainment; and having no way to vent their superfluous numbers by Navigation, are able to spare greater multitudes to a Foreign War, than a man would easily imagine. In a word, the people are naturally honest, frugal, and industrious, impartial in the administration of Justice, and great lovers of liberty.

In matters of War, they were once of such a reputation, on the defeats given by them to *Charles of Burgundy*, that no Prince thought himself able to take the Field, or stand his own ground in defence of his Dominions, if he had not *Switzers* in his Army: And to advance their reputation, the Wars which followed in Italy about the Duchy of *Milain*, served exceeding fitly. For being borderers on that Country, they could be hired better cheaply the French, or *Spaniards*, than any Army could be brought out of France, or Spain. And having had some good successes to increase their fame, they grew formidable at last; that the *Spaniards* in the War of *Guien* were more afraid of one band of *Switzers*, than of all the rest of the French Army. But being found withal to be false and treacherous, and easily bought off by the betters (which they most evidently discovered in betraying Duke *Lodowick Sforza*, who had put himself and his estate into their hands) and those Italian Wars growing unto an end, they did decay for fast in their reputation.

T 2 that



that first the neighbouring Princes could do well without them; and at last used them not at all, or at least very sparingly. And now it is their honour that they are chosen of the Guard to the French King, and the Popes of Rome, and the Dukes of Genoa; and that the greatest Princes of Europe give them yearly Pensions. Which Pensions were given heretofore to be assured of their aid upon all occasions, but now to keep them from engaging on the other side.

For matter of Religion it is proportionably mixt; some of the Cantons being wholly *Popish*, some wholly *Protestant*; in others, both Religions used promiscuously. At first the differences were so eagerly pursued on both sides that notwithstanding the mediation of some potent Neighbours, it broke out into a Civil War, the Cantons of *Switz*, *Uren*, *Underwald*, *Lucern*, and *Zug*, (which the *Latine* Writers of this story call the *Quinquagages*) arming against *Zurich*, *Bern*, and others which adhered to *Zuinglius*. In the beginning of which War, the *Protestant* Party was discomfited, *Zuinglius* himself slain in the head of the Battle, and his body burnt: his heart remaining in the midst of the fire, whole and untouched as Archbishop *Crammer*'s also did, when all the rest of his body was consumed to ashes. But those of the *Reformed* Party would not so give over. Another field they fought for it, and therein had the better of the adverse Party. Wearied at last with reciprocal defeats, they agreed the business indulging each to other the free exercise of their own Religions. So it continueth at this day, diversity of opinions not drawing them from a due care of the publick interest, nor giving any interruption to that bond of peace which was so firmly knit amongst them in their first Confederacy.

Now for the body of their State, it consists of three distinct parts, or members, which are to be considered in this discourse, viz. the *Swiss* themselves, the *Præfectures* which are subject to them, and the States that are Confederates with them. The *Swiss* are subdivided into thirteen Cantons, that is to say, *Switz*, *Uren*, *Underwald*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Bern*, *Zurich*, *Basel*, *Friburg*, *Solothurn*, *Apenzel*, *Glaris*, and *Schaffhausen*. These properly make the body of that Common-wealth, enjoying many rights, privileges and preeminences which the others do not; as power to determine of War and Peace, to dispose of the *Præfectures*, and divide amongst themselves the spoil of the Enemy. The first Confederacy was made betwixt the Cantons of *Switz*, and *Underwald*, Anno 1315. Of which the *Swiss* being the most potent, the most exalted, and that which did most hotly prosecute the combination, gave to the rest the name of *Swissers*, first made for ten years only in defence of themselves against the violence of *Albert I.* Emperor and Duke of *Austria*; intending to alienate them from the Empire, and add them by strong hand to his own Estates, Anno 1309. but made perpetual after their great victory obtained against Duke *Leopold* Son of *Albert* in the fields of *Morgarten*, of which more anon. *Lucern* was added to the three, Anno 1332. *Zug*, *Zurich*, and *Glaris*, came not into the Confederacy till the year 1352. nor *Bern* until the year next after. *Friburg* and *Solothurn* came in Anno 1. 81. *Basel* and *Schaffhausen* united with them in the year 1501. And *Apenzel*, which was the last which was admitted into their Confederacy, Anno 1513. So that there passed within little of two hundred years, from the first beginning of these Leagues, to the finishing of them.

The second Member of this body, are the Towns and States Confederates with them, for the preservation of their common Liberties, viz. the Town and Abbot of *St. Gall*, the Towns of *Kunzel*, *Mulhausen*, *Mueberg*,

and *Biel*, situated on the Lake thence named: (of which the first belonged heretofore to the Earls of *Longeville* in France, the latter to the Bishops of *Basel*) with the City and Signeury of *Geneva*: And of these, *Kunzel* and *Mulhausen* are confederate with all the *Cantons* save the rest, with some particulars only. The Abbot of *St. Gall* first entered into League with *Zurich*, *Lucern*, *Switz*, and *Glaris*, for the preservation of his Lands and Towns then revolting from him: and the Town following his example, confederated with *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Switz*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Glaris*, the better to preserve themselves from the power of their Abbot, who was before their natural and immediate Lord. This was in Anno 1452. *Kunzel*, and *Mulhausen*, two Imperial Towns in the Province of *Schawben*, confederated in a perpetual League with all the *Cantons*, the first, Anno 1515, the other, 1519; *Neuenberg*, *Biel*, and *Geneva*, with *Bern* only.

As for the *Præfectures* of the *Swissers*, they are such lesser parcels and additaments, as have accreted to their Estate, and are subject unto their authority: either by gift, purchase, or the chance of War: some lying in *Switzerland* itself, some amongst other parts of the *Alpes*, and some in *Italy*. These are the Towns and Countries of *Baden*, *Bregenz*, *Millingen*, *Rappenswil*, *Wagenbil*, interposed here and there amongst the *Swissers*: the Town and Country of *Sargans*, lying amongst the *Rhetian Alps*, not far from the *Grisons*; and *Rhodes*, lying in a Valley of the *Alpes*, on the left shore of the *Rhen*, near the Lake of *Constanz*; and finally, the Valleys of *Locarno*, *Magia*, and *Lugano Mendrisio*, and *Belinzano*, situate in and amongst the *Alpes*, near the Dukedom of *Milain*, to which they formerly belonged. Of which the *Præfectures* of *Baden*, and *Millingen* appertain to the eight first Cantons: *Wagenbil*, the *Sargans*, and *Rhodes* to the seven first Cantons: *Rappenswil* to *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwald*, and *Glaris*; and *Thurgow*, unto the ten first Cantons: *Belinzano* to the three first only; and all the rest of the *Italian* *Præfectures* to the *Cantons* generally, excepting *Apenzel*, which was not entered into the confederacy when these *Præfectures* were given unto the *Swissers*, by *Maximilian* Sforza Duke of *Milain*: which was in Anno 1513. some months before the taking in of *Apenzel* to the rest of the *Cantons*.

Such is the number of the *Cantons*, *Præfectures*, and States confederate, amongst all which there are few Towns or Cities of any note: there being no City nor walled Town in the Cantons of *Switz*, *Uren*, *Underwald*, *Glaris*, *Apenzel*, nor in any of the States confederate situate amongst the *Swissers*, but *St. Gall* only; not in any of the *Præfectures* but that of *Baden*. So that the places worthy of consideration are not like to be many. Of those that are, the principal are, 1. *Zurich*, a large City, and a renowned University, situate on both sides of the River *Limn*, where it issueth out of the Lake called *Zurich* See. It had anciently two Monasteries in it, in one of which *Huldricus Zuinglius* was a Canon, slain near this Town in the Battle spoken of before, Anno 1531. now giving name to the most honourable of the *Cantons*, to which belongeth the authority of summoning the general *Diet*; as of those also of the *Protestants*; the Legats thereof presiding in both Assemblies. 2. *Friburg*, situate on the River *Sana*, on the declivity of an uneven and rocky hill, founded by *Bernard* the fourth Duke of *Zeringen*. 3. *Solothurn*, (the *Solothurn* of *Antonine*) on the River *Aar* famous for the Martyrdom of *S. Ulrich*, and his 66 *Theban* Souldiers in the time of the Emperor *Dioclesian*. A Town of great Antiquity, but not so old by far as the people make it: who would have it to be built in the time of *Abraham*. 4. *Basel*, so called either of a *Basiliak* slain at the building of the City; or from the

German

German word *Pascl*, signifying a path; or of *Basileus*, signifying Kingly. It was built Anno 382. and is famous for an University founded by *Pius II.* Anno 1459. It was made a *Canton*, Anno 1501. and is honoured with the Sepulchres of *Oecampadius*, *Erasmus*, *Pontanus*, *Glarinus*, and *Hatonian* the famous Civilian. In this City, Anno 1431, was held that notable Council, wherein though the *Papal* authority was then at the height, it was declared that a general Council was above the *Pope*. What was then enacted, was immediately put in practice; the Council deposing *Pope Eugenius IV.* and placing in his room *Amadeus* Duke of *Savoy*, afterward called *Felix IV.* who having held the See nine years in a time of *Schism* did willingly in order to the peace of *Christendom*, resign the *Pope*dom to *Nicolas V.* who had before been chosen by the opposite Faction. The City is great, rich, and populous, sometimes a Town Imperial, fill a Bishops See: the Bishop being subject to the Archbishop of *Basel*, in the County of *Burgundy*: seated upon the River *Rhene* (where it receiveth *Wes* and *Birs*, two lesser Brooks) by which it is divided into the greater *Basel* lying towards France, and the lesser lying towards Germany. 5. *Lucern*, situate on both sides of the *Russe*, where it issueth out of the Lake of *Lucern*; so called from *Lucern*, i. e. the *Lamborn*, which was placed here on an high Tower, to give light to Water-men in the night. A City well traded and frequented by strangers, because the ordinary road from Germany into *Italy*, passing from hence through the Country of the *Grisons*; and in regard that the *Diet* for the *Popish* Cantons, which heretofore were held at *Uren*, are removed thither. Not far from this Town is the Mountain called *Pilatus hill*, of *Pontius Pilate*, whose ghost (as the common people are made to believe) doth walk once a year on the banks of this Lake in his Judges Robes. And to be sure the fiction shall not be confuted, they add, that whoever seeth him shall die that year. 6. *Bern*, compassed almost round with the River *Aar*, and taking up the whole extent of a little Mountain; the Houses of Free-men, neatly and uniformly built. A Town which gives name to the largest and most potent of all the *Cantons*; one of the first which did embrace the Reformation, and the first of all which purged it self of Images, those excellent Instruments of Superstition and Idolatry: defaced here in a popular tumult, Anno 1548. 7. *Lausanna* in the Canton of *Bern*, a Bishops See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Basel*, seated on the banks of the Lake of *Lemane*, and compassed with mountains always covered with Snow, which open themselves on the East side only, which is towards *Italy*. 8. *Schaffhausen*, the only Town of all the *Cantons*, which lieth on the other side of the *Rhene*; of right belonging unto *Saxonia* or *Schawben*, a Province of Germany, and reckoned as a part thereof, before it was incorporated into this Confederacy.

Next for the *Præfectures*, and Confederate States: they have not many Towns of note (excepting *Ratzen*, and *Miltingen*, two Imperial Cities, which properly belong to another place.) Of those which be, the principal amongst the Confederates, lying within the bounds of this Country, is the Town of *St. Gall*, (Sengal as they corruptly call it) an Imperial City, situate amongst the Mountains near the *Boden* See. A rich, populous, and well-governed Town, taking name from the Monastery of *St. Gall* a famous Seat, and the Apostle of those parts, Anno 630, or thereabouts: the Abbot of which having great possessions in this tract (before *Apenzel*, and this Town revolted from him) was a Prince of the Empire. The *Anabaptists* were once very prevalent here, in so much that one of them cut off his brothers head in the

presence of his Father and Mother, and said (according to the humour of that Sect, who boast much of dreams, visions, and *Emphusisms*) that God commanded him so to do. The principal amongst the *Præfectures* is the Town of *Baden*, or (to difference it from *Baden* a Marquisate in Germany) the *Upper Baden*: seated on a little Mountain near the River *Limn*, almost in the middle of the Country: and for that cause the place of meeting for the Council of Estate of all the Confederates. It taketh name from the Baths here being, two of which only are publick, the rest in private houses: conscious, as it is thought, to much lasciviousness. For whereas it is said of *Adrian*, that *Lavares pro sibiis separavit*; here men and women promiscuously bath together; and which is worst, in private: whences *Munster* telleth us, *Cernus viri uores trallari, cernunt cum alienis loqui, & quidem solum cum solo*; and yet are not any of them disturbed with jealousy. The Baths are much frequented, yet not so much for health as pleasure. Their chiefest virtue is the quickening power they have upon barren women. But as the *Friers* use to send men whose Wives are fruitless, in pilgrimage to *St. Joyce*, the Patroness of fruitfulness; and in the mean time to lie with their Wives: so it may be with good reason thought, that in a place of such Liberty as this is, the lusty young Gallants that haunt this place, produce greater operation of barren women, than the waters of the Bath it self. No other Town of eminent note amongst the *Præfectures* of the *Swiss*, except *Rhodes* it self, the seat of the Governor for the *Swissers*, situate near the Lake of *Constanz*: and none of any note at all amongst the *Italian* *Præfectures*, except *Belinzana*, and *Locarno* neither of them containing four hundred Houses, and those none of the handiomest.

Within the limits of this Country, and in that part thereof which was called *Argow*, containing the now *Cantons* of *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwald*, *Glaris*, and *Lucern*; with some of the adjoining parts of Germany, and some part of the Dukedom of *Savoy*; did sometimes stand the famous and renowned Castle of *HABSPURG*: from the Lords whereof the House of *Austria*, and most of the Kings and Princes of the Christian World do derive themselves. First founded, as some say, by *Ottobert* the third Prince of this Line, at or before the year 700. as others say, by *Rapato* the Son of *Bezeline*, about the year 1020. Situate on the River *Aar* (by the *Latines* called *Arula*) near a Town called *Bruck*; now so decayed, that there is no tracing of the ruins. Preserved in memory by the Lords and Princes of it, descended in a direct line from *Segebert* the eldest Son of *Theobert* King of *Metz*, or *Austrasia*; first French in these parts by *Claire* the second, King of the French, with the titles, as some say, of Duke of *Upper Almain* (the *Lower Almain* being that which is now called *Suecia* or *Schawben*, an adjoining Province of Germany.) Being grown weary of that empty, but invidious title, they were sometimes called Earls of *Habburg*, by the name of this Castle: sometimes Earls of *Attenburg*, another Castle not far off, of their own foundation. And after, closing in with the Kings of *Burgundy Transjuran*, and the German Emperours, they received of them a great part of the Country of *Argow*: from which some of them were called Earls of *Argow*. Not known distinctly by the title of Earls of *Habburg*, till the time of *Rapato* above-mentioned; when those of *Attenburg* and *Argow* became discontinued. Howsoever we will here lay down the whole succession of this famous family, either Earls, or the Progenitors of



The Earls of *Habspurg*.

- A. Chr.  
635 1. *Sigibert*, Son of *Theodobert* King of *Metz*, by *Clotaire* the second of that name, *French* King, dispossessed of the Kingdom of his Father, and afterwards by him endowed with a great part of those Countries, which are now called *Switzerland*, with the title of Duke of *Upper Almain*.
2. *Sigibert II.* Son of *Sigibert I.* Duke of *Upper Almain*.
3. *Ottobert*, or *Obert*, the Son of *Sigibert II.* the founder, as some say, of the *Castle of Altemburg*, and *Habspurg*, of which promiscuously called Earl.
4. *Bebo*, the Son of *Ottobert*, the last Duke of *Upper Almain*; which title he exchanged for that of Earl of *Altemburg*, and *Habspurg*.
5. *Robert*, or *Rotber*, as some call him, the Son of *Bebo*, Earl of *Altemburg*.
- 766 6. *Hertspert*, the Son of *Robert*, who added unto his Estate that part of *Schwaben*, or *Suevia*, which is called *Brissgou*.
7. *Rampert*, the son of *Hertspert*, who flourished Anno 814. at what time he procured the Canonization of *S. Trupertus*.
8. *Gunttram*, the Son of *Rampert*, Earl of *Altemburg*.
9. *Luithard*, the Son of *Gunttram*.
- 900 10. *Luithfride*, the Son of *Luithard*.
- 929 11. *Hunfride*, the Son of *Luithfride*, who added unto his Estates the Territory now called *Sungou*, bordering on *Alfania*, a Province of *Germany*; recovered after his decease by the Dukes of *Schwaben*.
- 950 12. *Gunttram II.* Son of *Hunfride*, the first who took unto himself the title of Earl of *Argow*; from whose second Son named *Berthold*, descended the Dukes or Earls of *Zeringen*, possessed of almost all *Brissgou*, and a good part of *Switzerland*, which they inherited from *Berthold*, the Son of *Gibiro* the third Son of *Gunttram*; Who having founded the *Castle of Zeringen*, and acquired great possessions in adjoining parts of *Schwaben*, left them at his decease (being childless) to *Berthold* the Son of *Berthold*, and his Cofin German.
13. *Bezo*, or *Betzeline*, the eldest Son of *Gunttram II.* Earl of *Argow*.
14. *Rapato*, son of *Betzeline*, the founder or repaire of the *Castle of Habspurg*, from whence both he and his Successors were constantly called Earls of *Habspurg*. Great Grand-father by *Theodobert* his youngest Son, of *Rodolph* Earl of *Khmsfelden*, and Duke of *Schwaben*, elected Emperor (as the insinuation of the Pope Jagamit *Henry IV.*
15. *Warner*, by some called *Crenger*, or *Beringarius* the Son of *Rapato*.
- 1096 16. *Olbo*, the Son of *Warner* or *Beringer*.
- 1108 17. *Warner II.* Son of *Olbo*, enriched by the Emperor *Henry IV.* with some fair Estates belonging to the Dukes of *Schwaben*.
18. *Albert*, the Son of *Warner II.* surnamed the *Rich*.
19. *Albert II.* surnamed the *Wise*, Son of *Albert I.* added to his Estates a great part of the *Upper Alfania*; which he had by the Right of

*Hedwig* his Wife, one of the Daughters and heir of *Simon* the last Earl thereof.

1238 20. *Rodolph*, the fortunate Son of *Albert II.* added to his Estate the rest of the *Upper Elfate*, elected Emperor of the *Romans*, Anno 1273. Of which he made so good advantage that he added unto his Estates the great Dukedom of *Austria*, with all the incorporate Provinces thereto belonging, and laid the first foundation of the *Austrian* greatness, of which more in *Germany*. Here only note, that besides the following Princes of the House of *Austria*, those of the line Collateral still retained the titles of Earls of *Habspurg* (according to the ill custom of *Germany*) increased with the addition of the Earldom of *Kyburg*, of which more hereafter: and so continued till the expiring of that Line in the person of *Rodolph IV.* the last that bare the title of Earl of *Habspurg*, Anno 1356, by whose death many fair Estates were added to the *Austrian* Family.

Having on the occasion of these Earls of *Habspurg*, beheld so much of the affairs of this Country, as related unto that puissant and illustrious family, let us go forward to the rest: first taking in our way the ancient Estate hereof, in the time of the *Romans*. At what time this whole mountainous tract, containing many several Nations (some of them spoken of before) was comprehended under the general name and notion of the *Helvetii*; the greatest and most populous of all the rest: so called, as *Vertegau* will have it, *Quasi Hel-vites*, or the *Vites* of the Mountains, to difference them from the *Vites* of the lower parts, inhabiting in that part of *Cimbric Chersonese*, which is now called *Frisland*; and from those dwelling in the middle, betwixt both extremes in the little Province still called *Vosland*. Grown by long peace, and want of opportunity by traffick into foreign parts, to go great a multitude, that the Country barren of it self, was no longer able to maintain them, they set fire on their Towns and Houses, and with a general resolution went to seek new dwellings. The total number of men, women, and children, which went upon this desperate action, are said to have amounted to the number of 3680000, whereof 900000 were fighting men. They had not long before overthrowen *L. Cassius Roman Consul*, slain the Consul himself, and sold his Soldiers for Bond-slaves: upon the apprehension of which good success, they thought no body able to withstand them. But they found *Cesar* of a stronger metal than *L. Cassius*. Who having stopped their passage by hewing down the Bridge of *Geneva*, till he was grown thorough to bid them battle; fo waited them in several skirmishes and defeats, that they were forced to crave leave of him to go home again, and to rebuild those Towns and Villages which they had destroyed before this enterprize: which he upon delivery of Hostages, did vouchsafe to grant. It is conceived, that at the least two Millions of men perished in this journey, and not so much by the Sword (though that spared them not) as for want of necessities. After this they continued Members of the *Roman Empire*, till conquered in the times of *Honorius* and *Valentinian III.* by the *Burgundians* and *Alamans*, betwixt whom divided; the River *Rosi* parting their Dominions. From them being taken by the *French*, it was made a part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; some parts first taken out: and given to the Progenitors of the Earls of *Habspurg*, as before was noted. Given with the rest of that Kingdom to the Emperor *Courade* the

the second, by *Rodolph* the last King thereof: parcelled out by the *German* Emperours (as their custom was, into divers States, most of the which were drawn in by the Dukes of *Schwaben*, the Earls of *Habspurg*, *Kyburg*, *Werdenburg*, &c. and the Dukes of *Zeringen*; as afterwards in the fall of the one, and as heirs to many of the other, by the Dukes of *Austria*. By means of which united titles the *Austrian* Family was possessed of so much of this Country, as now makes up five *Cantons*; and as many of the principal *Præfectures*; that is to say, the *Cantons* of *Zug*, *Glaronia*, *Lucern*, *Friburg*, and *Schaffhausen*; the *Præfectures* of *Baden*, *Bregentien*, *Mellingen*, *Wagenball*, *Rapperswil*; together with a great part of the Country of *Torgau*, wherein stands the City of *St. Gall*, now a Confederacy with the *Switzers*; some of the rest, as *Uren*, *Switze*, *Underwalden*, being brought under by the power of the Emperor *Albert*, the Son of *Rodolph* of *Habspurg*, who had a purpose to unite them to the house of *Austria*; because obnoxious also to the power of those Princes. But the people being at last over-burthened by the tyranny of those Governors, whom the Dukes of *Austria* and their other Lords had sent among them; rising withal the Empire by the Pope's Fulminations distracted into many Factions, and the *Austrian* Family weakened by a sub-division of that great Estate into many parcels; they contracted an *Offensive* and *Defensive* League amongst themselves, for defence of their Liberty, into which first entered those of *Switze*, *Uren*, and *Underwalden*, Anno 1385. Not all united into one Confederation till the year 1513: as before noted. At their first beginning to take Arms, *Frederick*, one of the many Dukes of *Austria* (to whose share they fell) sent his Brother *Leopold* against them with a puissant Army which they encountered near *Morigarten* a Village of the now *Canton* of *Underwalden*, and there overthrow him: but more by the convenience of those narrow passages, through which his Army was to march, than by any valour. In which it was no small help to them, that the ways were all so filled with Ice, that he was able to do no service with his Horse, and his Soldiers so amazed at the present difficulties, that the *Confederates* only casting stones on them from the tops of the Mountains, made them leap into the Lakes adjoining. This hapned in the year 1315. Grown confident by this success, they brought the new *Canton* of *Lucern* into their Confederacy by the force of Arms, Anno 1332: and that of *Zurich* by their reputation and like hope of Liberty, Anno 1351. in which year those of *Zug*, and *Glarn* invaded by the former five, and willing to discharge themselves of their Lordly Masters, were united to them, as was the new *Canton* of *Basle* in the year next following. In the year 1381. the Towns of *Solaburn* and *Friburg*, descended from the House of *Zeringen*, (at the expiration of that Line) upon those of *Habspurg*, revolted from their natural Lords and admitted *Cantons*, occasioned *Leopold* Son of *Albert* the short, and Brother of *Albert IV.* Dukes of *Austria*, to make War upon them: in which War being vanquished and slain near *Sempach* a Village of the *Canton* of *Lucern*, with the Flower of his Nobility and Gentry, Anno 1386. and the succeeding Dukes not venturing any more against them, the residue of the *Cantons* and *Confederates* were in time made up.

Having thus cleared themselves of the House of *Austria*, they continued free and unmolested, but never came to any reputation for their valour, till the War made upon them by *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, whom they discomfited in three great Battels, and flew him also in the third. A War commenced by him at the first on small occasions, and left hopes: the Country being so

barren, and the people so poor, that their Embassadors to the Duke (as *Comines* reporteth) protested, that if all their Country-men were taken; they would not be able to pay a Ranom, to the value of the Spurs and Bridle-bits in his Camp. Certainly at that time they were so poor, that they knew not what riches was. For having won the first Battle at *Granson* (the other two were those of *Morat* and *Nancy*) one of the goodliest *Pavilions* in the World was by them torn in pieces, and turned into Breaches and Side-coats: divers silver plates and dishes they sold for a French *Sous* (each *Sous* a little more than an English Penny) supping them to be but Pewter; and a great Diamond of the Dukes, which was the goodliest Jewel in *Christendom*, was sold to a Priest for a *Guilder*; and by him again to some of the Lords of the Country for three *Frank*s. After their valour shewed in these Battels, *Lewis XI.* took them into Pension, giving them yearly forty thousand Crowns, viz. twenty thousand to the *Cantons*, and twenty thousand to particular persons: and bowed so much beneath the Majesty of the most *Christian* King, as to term himself one of the *Burgesses* of their Corporation; and to contend with the Duke of *Savoy*, which of them should be held for their first *Allie*. By these Arts, and the earnestness of their Forces for those occasions, he wrested *Burgundy* out of the hands of *Mary* the Daughter of *Charles*; and *Lewis XII.* won *Millain* from *Ludowick Sforza*, whom they peridiously betrayed as was said before. Upon the merit of these services, they required an augmentation of their Pensions: which when this *Lewis XI.* denied, they withdrew themselves from the Amity of the French, and entered into the service of Pope *Julius II.* who therefore filled them the *Defenders of the Church*, Anno 1510. The fruits of which entertainment was the defeat of the whole Forces of King *Lewis*, and the loss of *Millain*; into which *Maximilian Sforza*, the Son of *Ludowick*, was solemnly re-installed by the *Confederates*: who to oblige the *Switzers* more firmly to him, gave them those Towns and Valleys in the *Alpes* of *Italy* (formerly members of that Dukedom) which now belong unto the *Switzers*, reckoned amongst the *Præfectures* of their Common-wealth. *Francis I.* in pursuance of his claim to *Millain*, gave them a great and memorable overthrow at the Battle of *Morigarten*. Yet afterwards considering what damage his Realm had sustained by the revolt of the Auxiliaries to his Enemies, he renewed the Confederation with them: on condition that he should restore the ancient Pension of forty thousand Crowns; secondly, that he should pay unto them at certain terms, six hundred thousand Crowns; thirdly, that he should entertain four thousand of them in his pay continually; fourthly, that for the restoring of such places as they had taken from the Dutchy of *Millain*, he should give unto them thirty thousand Crowns; fifthly, that he should give them three months pay beforehand: sixthly and lastly, that *Maximilian Sforza*, whom they had elected in *Millain*, and were now going to dispossess, might by the King be created Duke of *Nemours*, endowed with twelve thousand *Frank*s of yearly revenue, and married to a daughter of the blood royal. On these conditions, as honourable to them as burthenfome to the King, was the League renewed, Anno 1522. since which time, they have obtained, that six hundred of their Country are to be of the French King's Guard; five hundred of which wait without at the gates of the Courts, the other hundred in the great Hall. And yet the French Kings did not so ingross the Market, though they raised the price of the commodity, but that all other Princes might have them also for their Money: the Kings of *Spain* and others bidding fair for them, but never

never going so high as the French had done. At last, upon the differences which grew amongst themselves in point of Religion they grew to be divided also in point of Pension: the *Popish Cantons* taking Pensions of the Pope, and the King of Spain; the *Protestants* of the French, the mixt, of both; and all of the *Venicians*, by which means being bribed and corrupted by all, they came in very little time to be trusted of none. Which sudden sinking of that fame and reputation which they had attained to, together with the reasons of it: that notable Statesman and Historian *Guicciardine* doth describe as followeth: "The name (saith he) of this wild and uncivil Nation hath got great honour by nature, Concord, and glory by Arms. For being herce by nature, injured to War, and exact keepers of Military discipline, they have not only defended their own Country, but have won much praise in Foreign parts: which doubtless had been greater, if they had fought to enlarge their own Empire, and not for Wages to enlarge the Empire of others; and if nobly they had propounded unto themselves any other ends than the gain of money; by the love whereof being made abject, they have lost the opportunity of becoming fearful to Italy. For since they never came out of their Confinnes, but as mercenary men, they have had no publick fruit of their Victories: but by their covetousness have become intolerable in their actions where they overcame, and in their demands with other men; yea, at home forward and obnoxious in their conclusions, as well as in following their commands under whose pay they serve in War. Their chief men have Pensions of several Princes to favour them in their publick meetings; and for private profit being preferred before the good of the publick, they are apt to be corrupted, and fall at discord amongst themselves, with great lessening of their reputation which they had gotten amongst strangers. So he, relating the occurrences of the year 1511, which the following issue of affairs hath fully verified.

As for the Government of this State, it is merely popular, and that not only in the particular Cantons, but the aggregate body of their Council: the *Gentry* and *Nobility* being either rooted up in those long wars which were betwixt them and their *Vassals*, justly provoked by those intolerable preffures and exactions which they laid upon them; or else worn out of memory and observation, for want of sway and suffrage in the Councils of the Common-wealth. Only in *Schaffhausen*, *Basel*, and *Zurich*, are some Gentry left, not capable of any place or suffrage in the Senate of the said Cantons (from which they are excluded by the Common people, because they joynted not with them in their first revolve) unless they waive their Gentry, and be enrolled amongst the number of *Plebeians*. The rest they have (it seemeth) in so poor esteem, that *Porters* and *Mechanicks* of the meanest Trades, in all occasions of War, are numbered with, and amongst these *Gentlemen*; making up one Society only, and joyning with them in electing the *Master of their Company*, who is one of the Senate. But because that every Canton hath his proper Magistrates, but more or fewer, according as it is in greatness, or in the number of its several *Reforts*, or sub-divisions; it will not be amiss to shew what number of *Reforts* are in every Canton: that is to say, in *Undersalden* only two, in *Switz* six, in *Oven* ten, in *Zug* five, in *Glaris* or *Glarona* fifteen, in *Aperzel* six, in *Lucern* seven, in *Solothurn* more than one, in *Friburg* nineteen, in *Basel* and *Schaffhausen* but one apiece (the Cantons there and in *Solothurn*, reaching but little further than the Towns themselves) in that of *Zurich* thirty one, and thirty in that of *Bern*; in all one

hundred forty and eight. Of these consists the body of this Common-wealth. In ordering whereof, every particular Canton hath its proper Magistrate, chosen by the Commonalty of that Canton (whom they call the *Wismann*) together with a standing Council affilant to him, chosen out of the people, for the directing and disposing of their own affairs; which meet and sit in the chief Town and Village of that *Distrikt*. But if the cause concern the Publick, then every Canton sendeth one or more Commissioners to the general *Diet*; where they determine of the business which they meet about, according to the major part of the Votes: the Commissioners of every Canton having one Vote only, though many may be sent from each, to add the greater weight to their Consultations. The place of meeting is most commonly at the Town of *Baden*, in respect of the commodity of the Inns and Houses, the pleasant situation and famous *Medicinal Baths*; and because it is situate in the very centre of *Switzerland*, and subject to the eight first Cantons. And here they do determine of War, Peace, and Leagues, of making Laws, of sending, receiving, and answering Embassadors; of Governments, and distributing the publick Offices; and finally, of difficult Causes and Appeals, referred unto the judgment of the *Great Council*, in which the City *Zurich*, chief of the Cantons, hath the first place, not by antiquity, but dignity, and of old custom hath the greatest authority of calling together this *Great Council*, signifying by Letters to each Canton, the cause, time, and place of meeting: yet so, that any Canton think it for the publick good, to have an extraordinary meeting of their Commissioners, they write to them of *Zurich* to appoint the same. That which the greater number do resolve upon, is without delay put in execution.

The Forces of these *Swiss* consist altogether of Foot, Horse being found unserviceable in this Mountainous Country. And of these Foot, *Peters* reckoneth that they are able to raise sixscore thousand. Which possibly may be true enough, if it be understood of all that are able to bear Arms. For otherwise *de facto*, the greatest Army that ever they brought into the field, consisted but of one and thirty thousand men, which was that where-with they aided the Confederate States of Italy against the French, and restored *Maximilian Sforza* to the Dukedom of *Milain*. Their ordinary standing Forces are conceived to be sixteen or seventeen thousand, which they may bring into the Field, leaving their Towns and Forts well furnished. And for their Revenue, it is not like to be very great, considering the poverty of their Country, and their want of Traffick with other Nations. That which is ordinary and in common, ariseth out of the Annual Pensions which they receive from Foreign States the profits arising out of their *Dutch* and *Italian* Prefectures, the Imposts laid on Wines sold in Taverns, and Corn used by Bakers; and the Rents of a dissolved Monastery called *Kings-field* (or *Conings-field*) because many Kings and Queens have been cloyestered there, amounting to forty thousand Guldaus yearly. Which Monastery was built in the year 1580. in memory and honour of the Emperour *Albertus*, slain by his Nephew *Spanibach*, not far from *Basel*. Their extraordinary doth consist of spoils that be gotten in the War; which if it be managed in common, are divided in common; but if by two or three of the Cantons only, the rest can claim no share in the booty gotten.

But this is only in relation to the *Swissers* themselves. For otherwise taking in the Confederate States as well without as within the bounds of that Country, they are able to raise fifty or threecore thousand men; that is to say, the *Swissers* themselves seventeen thousand men,

the *Grisons* ten thousand; those of *Wallisland* six thousand, the Abbot and Town of *St. Gall* four thousand, the City of *Geneva* two thousand; besides what *Romell* and *Mulhausen*, two Imperial Cities, are able to contribute towards it; the Dukes of *Savoy* being bound by their ancient Leagues to aid them with six hundred Horses, at his own charges; besides two thousand six hundred Crowns in Annual Pensions. But the Revenue of those States is ordered by it self apart, and never comes within the computation of the publick; unless it be on the repelling of a common Enemy, in which they are equally concerned. In which case, and others of a general interest, they communicate both heads and purses: the Delegates and Commissioners of all the States of this Confederacy, meeting together to consult of the Common Cause, which meeting they entitle the *Greatest Council*. But this is very seldom held, publick affairs being generally ordered by the Commissioners of the *Swissers* only: though they themselves disclaim the name of *Swissers*, as too mean and narrow, and call themselves *Eidenssessen*, that is to say, *Partakers of the sworn Leagues*. More of this Common-wealth he that lists to see, may satisfie himself in *Simler*, who purposely and punctually hath described the same.

## The Leagues of the GRISONS.

THE Country of the *GRISONS* comprehendeth all that part of the *Alpes*, which lieth between the Springs of the Rivers *Rhone*, *Inn*, *Adice* or *Abiss*, and *Adnaa*; being bounded on the East, with the Country of *Tirol*; on the West, with *Switzerland*; on the North, with *Suevia* or *Schoben*, and a part of the *Swissers*; on the South, with *Lombardy*. A Country far more mountainous than any of this *Alpine* tract, and having less natural commodities to boast it self of, more than the Fountains of those Rivers before mentioned.

The People of it by most *Latin* Writers of these times, are called by the name of *Rheti*, the Country *Rhetia*; and so far properly enough, as that the ancient *Rheti* did inhabit all the Lands possessed by the *Grisons*: though the *Grisons* do not inhabit a fourth part of those Lands, which were possessed heretofore by the ancient *Rheti*: For anciently the *Rheti* did extend their dwellings as far as from the *Alpes* of Italy, to the River of *Danube*; comprehending besides this of the *Grisons*, a great part of *Suevia* or *Schoben*, *Tirol*, *Bavaria*, and so much also of the *Swissers*, as was not in possession of the old *Helvetic*. Within which Tract there were not only many rich Valleys and fruitful Fields; but a most pleasant race of Wines called *Vina Rhetica*, much drunk of by *Augustus Cesar*, and by him preferred before all others; which no man can conceive to grow in this barren Country. More properly *Ammonius Marcellinus* calleth this Tract by the name of *Campi Canini*, Mountainous fields, which the continual Snow made to look of an hoary hue; and by allusion therunto, the *Dutchmen* call this Nation at the present by the name of *Grampuntner*, that is to say, the hoary or gray Confederates.

As for the *Rheti*, take them in the former latitude, they were subdued by *Drusus* and *Tiberius*, the Sons-in-law and adopted children of *Augustus Cesar*, A.U.C. 739. And in the time of *Antoninus* made up two Provinces of the Empire, viz. *Rhetia prima*, and *Rhetia secunda*, both of them appertaining by *Constantine* new Model, to the *Diocti* of Italy. A Nation in the first Original, of Italian race, and so more properly to be assigned to that

*Diocti*; but had inhabited this Tract, from the time that *Bellerophon* the Gall led on part of *Tusany*, expelling thence the ancient inhabitants thereof: who under the conduct of *Rhemus*, a great man amongst them, possessed themselves of these Mountains, and afterwards of the Vales adjoining, which they called *Rhetia*, by the name of their Captain General. This hapned in the time of *Tarquinius Priscus*, in the first cradle, as it were, of the *Roman Empire*; in the declining age whereof, during the reign of *Valentinian III.*, and *Augustus*, those parts which lay nearest unto *Germany*, and were worth the conquering, were subdued by the *Alamans*, and *Boarians*; by them incorporated with the rest of their several States. The residue of this Mountainous Tract; as not worth the looking after, continued a member of the Empire, till given by *Charles the Great* to the Bishop of *Chary*; whose Successors, being several ways molested by their potent neighbours, confederated with the *Swissers* for their mutual aid and preservation, Anno 1497. By whose aid they so valiantly made good their ground against the *Austrians*, that at the last, after the loss of twenty thousand men on both sides, the points in difference were accorded, and a peace concluded.

This is the substance of this story, as to former times, to which there cannot much be added in the way of History; little or no alteration hapning in their affairs, but a more perfect setting of them in a form of Government. Concerning which we must observe that this whole Tract is cast into three *Distinctions*: that is to say, the *Upper League* or *Liga Grisa*, 2. *Liga Cadi Dina*, or the League of the House of God, 3. The *Lower League* called also *Liga Diuturna*, or the League of the ten Commonalties. The eight *Italian Prefectures* will make a fourth. Their buildings generally in the three first being cold and mountainous, are of free-stone, but low, and for three parts of the year covered with Snow: the Windows thereof glazed and large, of which for the said three parts of the year they only open a little quarry of Glass, and presently shut it close again; the outside of the Windows having leaves of wood, to keep the heat of their Stoves from going out, or any cold from coming in. And as for travelling, the ways are for the most part unsafe and dangerous, by reason of the straight passages, dreadful precipices, and those almost continual Bridges which hang over the terrible falls and Cataracts of the River *Rhone*, descending with great violence from the highest Mountains: huge hills of Snow tumbling into the Valleys, with a noise as hideous as if it were a clap of thunder.

For the particulars, the *Upper League* lieth in the highest and most mountainous parts of the *Alpes* of Italy, having therein those vast Mountains of *Lucknamier*, and *Der Vogel*; out of which the two streams of the *Rhone* have their first Original. By the French it is called *Liga Grise* or the *Gray League*, (the word *Gray*, or *Grise*, in that Language, being *Gray* in ours) in the same sense as the *Dutch* call it *Grampuntner*, that is, *Confederate cant*, which we may render properly the *Confederate Grisse-pans*: either because the Mountains are continually covered with a periwig of hoary *Hefles*, or from the heads of the people, *Gray* before their time. It consisteth of nineteen *Reforts* or Commonalties, according to the number of their Vales and Villages of which four only speak the *Dutch*, all the rest a corrupt Italian: and was the first which did confederate with the *Swissers*, from whence the name of *Grison* came unto the rest, who after joynted with them in the same Confederacy. It hath no City nor Town of note. The principal of those that be, are 1. *Ilant*, the place

ometimes of the *General Diets* for these *Leagues*.  
 2. *Disfrut*; where is a very rich Monastery. 3. *St. Bernardus*, situate at the foot of the Mountain *Vogel*.  
 4. *Mafur*, sometimes an Earldom, giving name to the Valley *Mafur-tal*. 5. *Galmotier*, whence the Vale is named, inhabited by none but Basket-makers. 6. *Ruffa*, situate on the River *Mufja*, near *Belinzano*, on the skirts of Italy.

2. The second *League*, is *Liga Cadi Dio*, or the *League of the House of God*, so called because it was the proper Patrimony of the Bishop and Church of *Chur*: and may be called the *Middle League*, as being situate between the *Upper League* on the West, and the *Lower League* upon the East. It is the greatest of the three, containing twenty one *Refforts* or *Commonalties*: of which nine lie on this side the tops of the Mountains towards *Germany*, the rest towards *Italy*: and yet two only speak the *Dutch*, the others a corrupt *Italian*. The places of most note are, 1. *Tumet*, the *Timetto* of *Antoninus*, seated amongst high and inaccessible Mountains, betwixt *Chur* and the Valley of *Bergel*. 2. *Mur*, (called *Mura* by the same *Antoninus*) in the Valley of *Bergel*: a Valley extending from the head of the River *Maira*, towards *Chiavenna*, one of the *Italian Prefectures*. 3. *Stalla*, called *Bröia* by the *Italians*, because the way doth in that place divide it self. 4. *Jacomo* (in the Valley of *Compatsch*) called *Travafede* by *Antoninus*. 5. *Sinuada*, in the Valley of *Engadin*. And 6. *Chur*, by some *Caira*, but more truly *Curia*, so called from the long stay that *Constantine* the Great made here with his Court and Army, in a War intended against the *Germans*; built afterwards by some part of his Forces which continued here, Anno 357, about half a *Dutch* mile from the meeting of the two streams of the *Rheue*, in form triangular, the buildings indifferent in themselves, but not uniform with one another. High on a Hill; in one corner of which standeth the *Cloffe*, and therein the Cathedral Church, a stately Edifice, but more in accont of the Natives who have been no fairer, than it is with strangers: and near the Church the Bishop's Palace, and the houses of the *Canons*, all well built, and handsomely adorned. The Bishop of this City, and of all the Country of these *Leagues* (for they received their *Bishop* and the *Faith* together, Anno 489,) acknowledgeth the Archbishop of *Metz* for their *Metropolitan*; is reckoned for a *Prince of the Empire*, and the rightful Lord both of this City and the whole *League*: but on the introduction of the *Reformed Religion*, which they had from the *Switzers* and *Genevians*, the Citizens withdrew themselves from their obedience to the Bishop, and govern the City in the manner of a *Free State*. So far conformable to him, for their own preservation, that as the Bishop and his *Canons*, with the rest of this *League*, upon occasion of the wrongs done them by the House of *Austria*: Lords of the neighbouring *Tirol*; joyned in confederacy with the seven first *Cantons* of the *Switzers* (which was in the year 1498.) So did the Citizens of *Chur*, after they had withdrawn themselves from the command of their Bishops, concur with them at last in that mutual *League*.

3. The third *League* of these *Grisons* is the *Lower League*, called also *Liga Dittura*, or the *League of the ten Jurisdictions*; situate close upon *Tirol*, in the Northeast part of the whole Country. Of all the ten, two only, which are those of *Malans* and *Meienfeld*, obey the joyned commands of the three *Leagues* of the *Grisons*: the other eight being subject to the Arch-Duke of *Austria* under whom they are suffered to enjoy their ancient privileges, for fear of uniting with the *Switzers*; which hitherto they have not done. Only they did unite together in one common *League*, Anno 1436, condi-

tioning their mutual defence against all Enemies, preservation of their peace, and maintenance of their privileges; reserving, notwithstanding their obedience to their natural Lords. In which respect, and by reason of the interest and society which they have with the rest of the *Grisons*, they are in friendship with the *Switzers*, but in no confederacy. City or walled Town they have none. The chief of those they have, are 1. *Castels*, the seat of the Governour for the Arch Duke of *Austria*; 2. *Malans*, and 3. *Meienfeld*, both bordering upon the *Rheue*. 4. *Tanase*, giving name to the first and greatest of the ten Jurisdictions, the chief Town of this *League*, in which are held the *General Diets* for the same; and where are kept Monuments and Records which concern their Privileges. In this *League* is the Mountain called *Rhetico mons*, by *Pomponius Mela*, but now *Pretigower-borg*, because it is at the end of the Valley which the *Dutch* call *Pretigow*.

4. As for the *Italian Prefectures* they are eight in number, and were given unto the *Grisons* by *Maximilian Sforza*, Duke of *Milain*, Anno 1513. at such time as he gave the like present to the *Cantons* of *Switzerland*. Of these the first is called *Plava*, so called from the chief Town of the same name, in Latine *Plava*, once seated in a Plain at the foot of the *Alpes*, near the River *Maira*, the chief of sundry Villages lying in the same bottom; now nothing but a deep and bottomless Gulf. For on the 26 of August 1617, an huge Rock falling from the top of the Mountains, overwhelmed the Town, killed in the twinkling of an eye 1500 people, and left no sign or ruine of a Town there standing; but in the place thereof a great Lake of some two miles length. 2. *Chiavenna*, situate in a pleasant Valley so called, near the River *Maira*, and ten Italian miles from the Lake of *Como*. *Antoninus* calleth it *Clavenna*, and the *Dutch Clevenertal*, or the Valley of *Cleuvu*, more near unto the ancient name. 3. The *Valtellina*, *Valis Tolina* in the Latine, a pleasant Valley, extending threecore miles in length, from the head of the River *Adsa*, unto the fall thereof in the Lake of *Como*: the Wines thereof are much commended, and frequently transported on this side the *Alpes*. It is divided into six *Prefectures*, according to the names of the principal Towns. The chief whereof, are 1. *Bormio*, seated near the head of the River *Adsa*. 2. *Tis*, the chief Fortrefs of the whole Valley. 3. *Sondrio*, the chief Town, and the Seat of the Governour, or Lieutenant General of the whole Country. This Valley lying opportunely for the passage of the King of *Spain's* Forces, out of *Milain* into *Germany*, by the practices and treasons of *Rodolphus Planta*, one of the Natives of it, and of the *Romish Religion*; was delivered to the Duke of *Feria*, being then Governour of *Milain*, Anno 1622. the whole Country brought under the obedience of that King. *Chur* it self forced and taken by them, and the Religion of *Rome* settled in all parts thereof. But two years after, by the joyned Forces of the *French*, *Venetians*, and *Savoyards*, the whole Valley was recovered from the *Spaniards*, and after a long treaty between *France* and *Spain*, the *Grisons* re-estated in their just possessions, Anno 1630. save that the *Spaniard* still holds the Fort of *Fventers*, for the safer passage of his Forces, if occasion be.

Such is the state of the three *Leagues* considered severally and apart from one another. In reference to the whole, they make up one Government, or Commonwealth; for ordering whereof they hold a *General Diet*, once in every year, consisting of threecore and three Commissioners: that is to say, 28 from the *Upper League*, 23 from the *League of the House of God*, and 14 from the *League of the ten Jurisdictions*. These

these have authority to determine of *Appeals* from the common *Prefectures*, to conclude of Peace and War, Confederacies, Embassies, and Laws, which concern the publick: yet so, that in a point of *Judicature*, it is lawful to appeal unto the *Commonalties* of every *League*, who have authority if need be, to reverse the Sentence; the causes being severally propoed, and passed by the major part of voices. The Government of each *League*, popular, as amongst the *Switzers*.

There are in these *Alpine* Provinces,

Archbishops 2. Bishops 13.

Universities 4.

2. e.

1. Turin.  
2. Geneva.

3. Basil.  
4. Zurich.

U 2

OF



have been received from the *Romans*; and the *German* words, at the coming in of the *Frank* and *Burgundians*; but the *Welsh* words which they have, we can give no reason, but that they are the remainder of their ancient Language; of which *Welsh* words, which still continue in that Language, *Camden* in his *Britannia*, reckoneth not a few. 2. It is laid by *Tacitus*, that the *Britanni* were the Descendants of the *Gauls*; and this he proveth, as by other Arguments, so from the identity or near resemblance of the Language which both Nations speak. *Drisvique sermo haud multum diversus*, as his own words are. And 3. it is laid by *Cæsar*, That the *Gauls* used to pass into *Britannia*, to be instructed in the Rites and Learning of the *Druids*; which sheweth that both People spake but one common Tongue; there being, in those times, no one Learned Language which other Nations studied, besides their own.

The foil is extraordinary fruitful, and hath three Load-fines to draw riches out of other Countries. *Corn, Wine, and Salt*; in exchange for which, there is yearly brought into *France* 12000000 *li.* sterling, the Custom of Salt, only to the Kings, being estimated at 700000 *Crowns per annum*. And indeed, the benefit arising on this one Commodity, is almost incredible; it being constituted by the King's Edict, (which is all in all.) That no man shall have any Salt for Domestic uses, (except by special Privilege, and that dearly paid for) but that he must buy of the King's Officers, and that upon such prices too, as they please to sell it. Nor can it be very well stored with Fish: for, besides the benefit of the Seas, their Lakes and Ponds belonging to the Clergy only, are said to be 135000. Their other Merchandizes are, Bees, Hogs, Nuts, Wood, Skins, vast quantities of all sorts of Linnen. And, to say truth, there are not many Countries in the Christian World, to which Nature hath been so prodigal of her choicest blessings, as the hath to this; the Fields thereof being large and open, and those to be intermingled with *Corn* and *Vine*, and every hedge-row to be sowed with choice of Fruits, that never any covetous or curious Eye, had a fairer object. And yet so miserable is the condition of the common Peasant; partly, by reason of the intolerable Taxes laid upon him by the King; and partly, by those great, but uncertain Rents, which are let upon him by his Landlord, (for the poor husbandman is *Tenant* only at the will of his Lord) that there is many one amongst them, who farmeth yearly thirty or forty Acres of Wheat and Vines, that never drinks Wine, nor eats good Bread, from one end of the year unto the other.

The Christian Faith was planted first amongst the *Gauls*, by some of St. Peter's Disciples, sent hither by him at his first coming to Rome; *Xylius, Fronto*, and *Julianus*, the first Bishops of *Rhemes, Perigors, and Mantis*, (*Cenomanensium*, in the *Latine*) being laid to be of his ordaining in the *Martyrologies*. The like may be affirmed (not on furer grounds) of *Trophimus*, the first Bishop of *Arlers*. For, on a Controversie betwixt the Archbishops of *Vienna* and *Arlers*, for the dignity of *Metropolitan*, in the time of Pope Leo I. it was thus pleaded in behalf of the Bishop of *Arlers* *Quod prima inter Gallias, &c.* That *Arlers* of all the Cities of *Gaul*, did first obtain the happiness of having *Trophimus* ordained Bishop thereof, by the hands of St. Peter. Nor is St. Paul to be denied the honour of sending some of his Disciples thither also to preach the Gospel; *Crescent* sent by him, as he telleth us, 2 *Tim. 4.* into *Galatia*, being the first Bishop of *Vienna*, spoken of before, as not the *Martyrologies* only, but *Ado Viennensis*, an ancient Writer of that Church, doth expressly say. And that it was in this Country that he sent that *Crescent* at that time, and

not unto *Galatia* in *Asia minor*, the testimonies of *Epiphanius* and *Theodoret*, which affirm the same, and that which hath been said before of this name of *Galatia*, may confirm sufficiently. But *Christianity* being destroyed by the French at their first coming hither, was again planted by the industry of St. Remigius, the first Bishop of *Rhemes*; *Clovis*, or *Claudianus V.* King of the French, giving way unto it for his Wives sake, who was zealous in it; and after taking unto himself that holy Calling, on a great victory which he won against the *Almaini*; by whom, being over-laid in the day of Battle, he made his prayer to CHRIST, whom his Wife *Clotilda* worshipped; wishing to be of that Religion, if he got the Victory: Which Vow he had no sooner made, (as the Story telleth us) but *Almaini* invaded *timor*, a sudden fear fell upon the *Almaini*, and the French were Conquerors.

At this time they are divided in Religion, as in other places; some following the Doctrine of the Church of Rome; and others, that of those Reformed Churches which adhere to Calvin. But this division is more ancient than Calvin's days; the same opinions (as they relate unto the Errors in the *Romish Church*) being maintained formerly by the *Albigenses*, the *Waldenses*, or *Pauers* of *Lugduno*, (the *Vaudes*, as the French Writers call them) of whom we shall speak more, when we come to *Lyon*. Suffice it in this place to note, That the Doctrine of the Reformed Churches was not new in France, when *Zuinglius* first preached against the superstitions of the Mass, and the worship of Images; and Calvin travelled in advancing the Reformation, though much suppressed as to the outward profession of it. But, being revived by their endeavors, it sprung out again, and spread it self so speedily in this Kingdom, that there were reckoned in the year 1560, above 1240 Churches of them; which cannot, in such a long time, but be wonderfully augmented, though few any of them having escaped some Maffacre or other. Of these Massacres, two are most memorable, viz. that of *Merindol* and *Chabrier*, as being the first; and the Massacre of *Paris*, as being the greatest. That of *Merindol* happened in the year 1545; the Instrument of it, being *Minier*, the President of the Council of *Aix*: for, having condemned the poor people of *Heresie*, he mustered a small Army, and set fire on the Villages. They of *Merindol*, seeing the flame, with their Wives and Children fled into the Wood; but were there butchered, or sent to the Gallies. One Boy they took, placed him against a Tree, and shot him with Calivers; 25 which had hid themselves in a Cave, were in part stifled, in part burned. In *Chabrier*, they so infernally dealt with the young Wives and Maids, that most of them died immediately after. The Men and Women were put to the Sword; the Children were re-baptized, 800 Men were murdered in a Cave, and 40 Women were put together in an old Barn, and burned. Yea, such was the Cruelty of these Soldiers to these poor Women, that when some of them had clambered to the top of the Houle, with an intent to leap down, the Soldiers beat them back again with their Pikes. The Massacre of *Paris* was cunningly plotted. A Peace was made with the Protestants, for the assurance whereof, a Marriage was solemnized between *Henry* of Navarre, chief of the Protestant Party, and the Lady *Marguerite* the King's Sister. At this Wedding, there assembled the Prince of Conde, the Admiral Coligni, and divers others of chief note; but there was not so much Wine drunk, as Blood shed; at it there midnight the Watch-bell rung, the King of Navarre and the Prince of Conde are taken prisoners, the Admiral murdered in his bed, and 30000, at the least, of the

the greatest and most potent men of the Religion, sent by the way of the Red Sea, to find the nearest passage to the Land of Canaan, Anno 1572. Yet notwithstanding these Massacres, and the long and frequent Wars which were made against their Kings, they grew so numerous, and got unto to great a Power, that partly by Capitulations with the French Kings; at the end of every Civil War; but principally, by the convenience of King Henry IV. who was sometimes the Head of their Party, they had gotten above three hundred Walled Towns and Garrisons, and were absolute Masters, in effect, of all those Provinces which lie along the *Aquas* shore, and the *Pyrenes*, from the *Mediterranean Sea*, to the River of *Loyre*. But, being grown too insolent by reason of so great a Strength, and standing upon terms with the King, as a Free Estate, (the Commonwealth of *Rochel*, as King Henry IV. was used to call it) they drew upon themselves the Jealousie and Fury of King Lewis XIII. Who seeing that he could not otherwise dissolve the Knot of their Combination, than by the Sword, drew it out at last; and was so fortunate in the success of his Undertakings, that in two years (viz. Anno 1611, 1622.) he stripped them of all their Walled Towns, except *Montban* and *Rochel* only; and those two he reduced not long after, by the power of his Arms, leaving them nothing to rely on for their future security, but the Grace and Clemency of their King, promoted by their Obedience and Integrity. And it hath sped so well with them since that time, that they never had the exercise of their Religion with so much freedom, as they have hitherto enjoyed since the reducing of their Forts and Garrisons to the Kings obedience.

The other Party in Religion, having the countenance of the State, and the protection and possession of so many years to confirm the same, is so as prosperous a condition both for Power and Learning, as any that acknowledge the Authority of the Popes of Rome. In point of Patrimony, the Author of the Cabinet computes the Tythes and Temporal Revenues of the Clergy, besides Provisions of all sorts, to 80 Millions of Crowns; but this account is disallowed by all knowing men. *Bodin* reporteth from the mouth of Monsieur *Almain*, one of the Presidents of Accounts in *Paris*, that they amount to 12 Millions, and 300000 of their Livres, which is, 12000000 *li.* of our English money; and he himself conceiveth, that they possess seven parts of twelve, of the whole revenues of that Kingdom. The Book, entitled *Comment d'Eljas*, gives a lower estimate; and reckoning that there are in France 200 millions of *Aspens* (which is a measure somewhat bigger than our *Acre*) altogether 47 Millions, which is near a fourth part of the whole, to the Gallican Clergy. And then it is resolved by all that the *Basileians*, (as they call it) which consists of Officers, Churchings, Burials, Diriges, and such like Casualties, amounteth to as much *per annum*, as their standing Rents. Upon which ground Sir *Edwin Sandys* computes their Revenue at six millions yearly. And to say truth, there needs a very great Revenue to maintain their numbers; there being reckoned in this Kingdom, 13 Arch-bishops, 102 Bishops, 1450 Abbots, 540 Arch-Priorities, 12320 Priors, 567 Monasteries, 720 Convents of Friars, 59 Conventualities of *Malta*; besides the Colleges of the *Jesuits*, which being of a late foundation, are not here accounted. And for the *Parish-Priests*, they are reckoned at 130000 of all sorts, taking in *Deacons*, *Sub-deacons*, and all those of Inferiour Orders, which have some Ministry in their Churches, the number of which was reckoned, in the time of King Lewis XI. to be little less than 100000. But then 'tis

like, that *Chanteries* and *Free Chappels* went in that account; or else the *Hugonots* in the Wars have destroyed more Churches than they are like to build again in halfe, there being found in France on a just Account, no more than 27400 Parish-Churches, besides *Oratories* and *Chappels* of *Esse* appearing to them. In which there are supposed to live 15 millions of people, whereof the Clergy, and the Ministers depending on them, do make up 3 Millions, which is a fifth part of the whole. And for their Power, the Gallican Clergy stands more stoutly to their natural Rights against the Usurpations and Encroachments of the *Sec* of Rome, than any other that lives under the Pope's Authority; which they acknowledge so far only, as consistent with their own Privileges, and the Rights of their Sovereign. For neither did they in long time submit to the Decrees of the Council of *Trent*, nor have they yet admitted of the *Inquisition*; nor yield such force of Grift to the Pope's Mill, as probably might redound to him from so rich a Clergy. And for his Temporal Power over Kings and Princes, it is a Doctrine so averred from the Politicians and Principles of the Gallican Church, that in the year 1610, the Divines of *Paris* published a Declaration, in which it was affirmed, that the Doctrine of the Pope's Supremacy was an erroneous Doctrine, and the ground of that Hellish Position, of Deposing and Killing Kings. And this, indeed, hath constantly been the Doctrine of the Gallican Church, since the time of *Gerson*, maintaining the Authority of a Council, above that of the Pope.

But to proceed; The men most eminent for Learning of either side, have been, (besides those mentioned in the *Alpine* Provinces) *Peter du Moulin*, highly commended for his Eloquence, by the Pen of *Balfus*; *Fr. Junius*, a moderate and grave Divine; *Chamier* the Controverser, and *Philip de Morsey*, Lord of *Elfiger*. Of the other Party, *Claudian Efigence*, a *Sarbo* Doctor, the famous Cardinal of *Peron*; *Genardus* the Historian, *Petrus* a learned *Jurist*, &c. In the middle times, St. Bernard, Abbot of *Clareval*; *Pe. Lombard*, Bishop of *Paris*, *John Gerson*, Chancellor of that University. More lately, *Proffer* of *Aquidain*, *Cassianus* the Hermit, *Ireneus* the renowned Bishop of *Lyon*, (though not here a Native). And as to men of other Studies, *Anstus* the Poet, *Harman* and *Gaufredus*, the Civilians; *Duarenus* the Canonist, *Barn. Brissinnus* the great Antiquary, *Isaac Casaubon* that renowned Philologist, *Budeus* that great Master of the Greek Language, *Tennant* the Historian, *Laurentius* the Anatomist, &c. And as for Military men, it hath been famous for the valour of *Clovis* the first Christian King of the French, *Charles Martel*, that stout Champion of the Church against the *Sarazens*; and *Charles* the Great, the Fourth of the Western Empire. In the middle times for *Godefrey* of *Vauillon*, one of the Nine Worthies, (as they call them) the Son of *Estace*, Earl of *Boulain* in *Picardy*; and in the latter days, for King Henry IV. *Francis* and *Henry*, Dukes of *Guise*; *Charles Duke* of *Bayonne*, *Charles Duke* of *Biron*, &c.

The Laws of this Kingdom are either Temporary and alterable at pleasure; or Fundamental, which neither King nor Parliament (as they say) can alter. Of this last sort, the principal are, the *Salique Law*, and the Law of *Apanage*. By that of the *Apanage*, the younger Sons of the King are not to have partage in the Kingdom with their Elder Brother. Which Law was made by *Charles* the Great, before whose time we find the Children of the Kings elevated in their several Thrones, and the Realm parcelled out among them, to many Kingdoms. But by this Law, they are to be entailed to come Dutchy or County, (though they are content sometimes with Annual Penfions) with all the Rights

Rights and Profits thereunto belonging; all matters of Regality (as Levying Taxes, Coyage, and the like) excepted only which, upon the failing of the Maleline, do return again unto the Crown. The name therefore derived from *Albanus*, a German word, signifying a Portion.

But the main Law they stand on, is the *Salique Law*, by which the Crown of France may not descend unto the Females or fall from the *Lance* to the *Distaff*, as their saying is. Which Law, one undertaking to make good out of Holy Writ, urged that Text of St. Matthew, where it is said, *Mark the Lilies*, (which are the Arms of France) and *see how they neither labour nor spin*. This Law they pretend to have been made by *Pharamond* the first King of the French; and that the words *Si aliquis*, so often used in it, gave it the name of the *Salique Law*. But *Hailian*, one of their best Writers, affirms, That it was never heard of in France, till the time of *Philip the Long*, Anno 1315. and that it could not possibly be made by *Pharamond*; who though he was the first King of the French, had not one foot of Land in France: *Clodion*, the Son of *Pharamond*, being the first of the French Kings which passed over the Rhine, their third King, *Morvus*, the first that ever fixed his seat in the Modern France. Others say, it was made by *Charles the Great*, after the Conquest of Germany, where the incontinent lives of the Women, living about the River *Sala*, (in the Modern *Misissipi*) gave both the occasion, and the name. *De terra vero Salica, nulla portio hereditatis mulieri veniat, sed ad virilem Sexum tota terra hereditas perveniat*, are the words thereof. This *Terra Salica*, the Learned *Selden* in his *Titles of Honour*, Englisheth, *Knights-Ere*; or Land that is holden by *Knights Service*, as our Lawyers call it; and proveth this Interpretation by a Record of the Parliament of *Bourdeaux*, cited by *Bodin*; where an old Will or Testament being once produced, in which the Testator had bequeathed unto his Son all his *Salique Land*; it was resolved by the Court, That thereby was meant, his Land holden in *Knights Service*. And then the sense thereof must be, That in Lands holden of the King by *Knights Service*, or the like Military tenure, the Male-children should inherit only, because the Females could not perform those Services for which those Lands were given and by which they were holden. And for this there may be good reason, though in England we deal not so unkindly with the Female Sex, but permit them after the age of 15 years to enjoy such Lands, because they may then take such Husbands as are able to do the King those Services which the Law requirith. But this Interpretation (how good and genuine indeed soever it be) cannot stand with the French Glofs. For then the Crown, being held of none but God, and so not properly to be called a *Fee* or *Fief*, could not be brought within the compass of the *Salique Law*, because not to be counted for *Salique Land*. Give them therefore their own Glofs, their own Etymology and Original; and let us see by what right their Kings Daughters are excluded from their succession to the Diadem. For first, supposing that to be the *Salique Land* which lyeth about the River *Sala*, in the Modern *Misissipi*; I would fain know how it could reach unto the King's Daughter in France, so far distant from it; or with what honesty they can lay on them the like brand of Incontinency, as was supposed to have been found in those Women of Germany? And next, supposing that the Law had been made by *Pharamond*, I would fain learn how it can be applied to the Crown of France, to which *Pharamond* had then no title, nor so much as one foot of Land on that side of the *Rhene*. And finally, supposing that the Law was made in such general terms, as to ex-

tend to all the Countries, which the French in time to come should conquer, and consequently unto France when once conquered by them: I would then ask, Whether it did extend to the Crown alone, or all subordinate Estates which were holden of it? It useth to all Estates holden of that Crown, I would fain know with what pretence they could give sentence in behalf of *Charles of Blois*, against *John de Montfort*, in the Succession to the Dukedom of *Bretagne*: *Charles of Blois* claiming by his Mother, the Niece of *Arthur II.* by his second Son *Guy*; whereas *John de Montfort* was the third Son (and the next Heir-male) of the said Duke *Arthur*. If only to the Crown of France, it would be known by what right they detain that Dukedom from the true Heirs of *Anne the Dutchess*, whose Daughter and Heir, the Lady *Claude*, being married unto *Francis I.* had issue, *Henry II.* and other Children. Which *Henry*, besides *Francis II.* *Charles IX.* *Henry III.* and *Francis Duke of Anjou*, all dying without Issue, had a Daughter named *Isabel*, or *Elizabeth*, married to *Philip II.* King of Spain, by whom she was made the Mother of *Isabella*, the late Arch-Dutchess, and of *Katharine*, the Wife of *Charles Emmanuel*, the late Duke of Savoy. Not to say any thing of the pretensions of the House of *Lorraine*, descending from the Lady *Claude*, the second Daughter of King *Henry II.* and Sister of *Isabel* or *Elizabeth*, Queen of Spain. Nor do we find, that the French so stand upon this Law, as not to think, that a Succession by and from the Females is, in some cases, their best Title. For thus we read, That *Pepin* having thrust his Master *Childeric* into a Monastery, to make good his Title to the Crown, (or some colour for it) derived his Pedigree from *Phylbilda*, one of the Daughters of *Clotaire I.* married to *Austregis* the Grandfather of that *Arnulfus*, who was the first Mayre of the Palace of *Charles's* Family. As also, how *Hugh Capet*, putting aside *Charles of Lorraine*, the right Heir of this *Pepin*, to make his lawless Action the more seemingly lawful, drew his descent from some of the Heirs General of *Charles the Great*; his Mother *Adelheid*, being the Daughter of the Emperor *Henry I.* famed the *Fowler*; who was the Son of *Otto Duke of Saxony*, by *Luitgardis*, the Daughter of the Emperor *Arnulfus*, the last Emperor of the *Romans* (or *German*) of the House of *Charles*. And it is said of *Lewis IX.* so renowned for sanctity amongst them, That he never enjoyed the Crown with a quiet Conscience, till it was proved unto him, That by his Grandmother, the Lady *Isabel of Hainault*, he was descended from *Herningrade*, the Daughter of *Charles of Lorraine*. Add here, that this supposed *Salique Law*, not only crisheth the received Laws of all Nations else, which admit of women to the succession in their Kingdoms, where the Crown descends in a succession; and have a greater respect both unto their Persons and Posterities in such Kingdoms also where the Kings are said to be Elective, as in *Poland*, *Hungary*, and *Bohemia*: but that even France it self hath (submitted to the Imperious Command of two Women of the *Medicis*; and at the present, to the Government of a Spanish Princess. So that it is evident, that this Law, by whomsoever made, and how far soever it extended, is of no such force, but that the Labels of it may be easily cut in pieces by an English Word well whetted, if there were no other bar to the Title of England, than the Authority and Antiquity of the *Salique Law*.

But for my part (if it be lawful for me to dispute this point) I am not fatished in the right of the English Title supposing the *Salique Law* to be of no such force as the French pretended, and measuring the succession in the

Crown

Crown of France, to be according to successions in the Realm of England, on which King *Edward III.* seemed to ground his claim. For if there were no *Salique Law* to exclude succession by the females, as the English did pretend there was not: yet could not *Edward* coming from a Sister of the three last Kings, which reigned successively before him, at least defend himself of them) had had their turns in the succession of that Kingdom. Of the three Brethren two left issue, viz. *Lewis* and *Philip*. *Lewis* turnamed *Hainaut*, Son of *Philip the Fair* and *Joan Queen of Navarre*, had a Daughter named *Joan*, married to *Philip Earl of Evreux*, who was King of *Navarre* in right of his Wife; from which marriage issued all the succeeding Kings of that Realm, the rights whereof are now in the House of *Barboun*. *Philip* the second Brother, surnamed the Long, by *Joan* the daughter of *Othelin Earl of Burgundy*, had a daughter named *Marguerite*, married to *Lewis E. of Flanders*; from whom descended those great Princes of the race of *Burgundy*, the rights whereof are now in the House of Spain. If then there were no *Salique Law* to exclude the Women and their Sons, *Charles King of Navarre* the son of *Q. Joan* and of *Philip of Evreux*, descended from *Lewis Hainaut* the elder Brother, and *Lewis de Malgrine Earl of Flanders* and *Burgundy*, the son of *Lewis E. of Flanders*, and of *Marguerite* the daughter of *Philip the Long*, the second Brother, must have precedence of title before King *Edward III.* of England, descended from a Sister of the said two Kings, their issue severally and respectively, before any claiming or descending from the said King *Edward's* side. So that *K. Edward III.* had some other Claim than what is commonly alleged for him in our English Histories: or else he had no claim to that Crown at all: and I conceive, to wife a King would not have ventured on a business of so great consequence, without some considerable title; though what this title was is not declared for ought I know, by any Writers of our Nation. I believe therefore, that he went upon some other grounds, than that of ordinary succession by the Law of England, and claimed that Crown, as the eldest heir-male and nearest Kinsman to the last King. For being Sisters Son to the King deceased, he was a degree nearer to him than either the *K. of Navarre* or the *E. of Flanders*, who were the Grandchildren of his Brethren: and having priority of either in respect of age, had a fair title before either to the Crown of that Kingdom. And on these grounds *K. Edward* might the rather go, because he found it a *valued case*, in the dispute about the succession in the Kingdom of Scotland. For though *K. Edward I.* measuring the order of succession by the Laws of England, and perhaps willing to adjudge the Crown to one who should hold it of him; gave sentence in behalf of *John Baliol*, the Grandchild of the eldest daughter of the *E. of Huntingdon*: yet was this Sentence disavowed and protested against by the other Competitors. *Robert Bruce* son of the second daughter of the said Earl of *Huntingdon*, as a degree nearer to the last King, though descended from the younger Sister, who not only thought himself wronged in it, but had the unanimous consent of his Son was called to the Government of the Realm of Scotland, during the life of *Baliol* and his Patron both. Proximity in blood to the King deceased, was measured by nearness of degrees, not descent of birth, and on this Plea, though different from the Laws of England, as *Bruce* had formerly possessed himself of the Crown of Scotland; so on the same, though different from the Laws of *Castile*, did *Philip II.* ground his claim to the Crown of Portugal. For being eldest son of *Mary* the Sister of *Henry* the last King (and this was just King

*Edward's* side to the Crown of France) he thought himself to be preferred before the Prince of *Farma*, and the Duke of *Braganca*, descended from the daughters of *Edward* the said King's Brother; because the eldest male of the Royal Blood, and nearer to the said *K. Henry* by one degree. In the paritance of which title, as *Philip* openly fore *Philip of Valois*, against whom he claimed, he served in court, before the Daughters of those Kings (or the matter at least depending of them) had had their turns in the succession of that Kingdom. Of the three Brethren two left issue, viz. *Lewis* and *Philip*. *Lewis* turnamed *Hainaut*, Son of *Philip the Fair* and *Joan Queen of Navarre*, had a Daughter named *Joan*, married to *Philip Earl of Evreux*, who was King of *Navarre* in right of his Wife; from which marriage issued all the succeeding Kings of that Realm, the rights whereof are now in the House of *Barboun*. *Philip* the second Brother, surnamed the Long, by *Joan* the daughter of *Othelin Earl of Burgundy*, had a daughter named *Marguerite*, married to *Lewis E. of Flanders*; from whom descended those great Princes of the race of *Burgundy*, the rights whereof are now in the House of Spain. If then there were no *Salique Law* to exclude the Women and their Sons, *Charles King of Navarre* the son of *Q. Joan* and of *Philip of Evreux*, descended from *Lewis Hainaut* the elder Brother, and *Lewis de Malgrine Earl of Flanders* and *Burgundy*, the son of *Lewis E. of Flanders*, and of *Marguerite* the daughter of *Philip the Long*, the second Brother, must have precedence of title before King *Edward III.* of England, descended from a Sister of the said two Kings, their issue severally and respectively, before any claiming or descending from the said King *Edward's* side. So that *K. Edward III.* had some other Claim than what is commonly alleged for him in our English Histories: or else he had no claim to that Crown at all: and I conceive, to wife a King would not have ventured on a business of so great consequence, without some considerable title; though what this title was is not declared for ought I know, by any Writers of our Nation. I believe therefore, that he went upon some other grounds, than that of ordinary succession by the Law of England, and claimed that Crown, as the eldest heir-male and nearest Kinsman to the last King. For being Sisters Son to the King deceased, he was a degree nearer to him than either the *K. of Navarre* or the *E. of Flanders*, who were the Grandchildren of his Brethren: and having priority of either in respect of age, had a fair title before either to the Crown of that Kingdom. And on these grounds *K. Edward* might the rather go, because he found it a *valued case*, in the dispute about the succession in the Kingdom of Scotland. For though *K. Edward I.* measuring the order of succession by the Laws of England, and perhaps willing to adjudge the Crown to one who should hold it of him; gave sentence in behalf of *John Baliol*, the Grandchild of the eldest daughter of the *E. of Huntingdon*: yet was this Sentence disavowed and protested against by the other Competitors. *Robert Bruce* son of the second daughter of the said Earl of *Huntingdon*, as a degree nearer to the last King, though descended from the younger Sister, who not only thought himself wronged in it, but had the unanimous consent of his Son was called to the Government of the Realm of Scotland, during the life of *Baliol* and his Patron both. Proximity in blood to the King deceased, was measured by nearness of degrees, not descent of birth, and on this Plea, though different from the Laws of England, as *Bruce* had formerly possessed himself of the Crown of Scotland; so on the same, though different from the Laws of *Castile*, did *Philip II.* ground his claim to the Crown of Portugal. For being eldest son of *Mary* the Sister of *Henry* the last King (and this was just King

*Edward's* side to the Crown of France) he thought himself to be preferred before the Prince of *Farma*, and the Duke of *Braganca*, descended from the daughters of *Edward* the said King's Brother; because the eldest male of the Royal Blood, and nearer to the said *K. Henry* by one degree. In the paritance of which title, as *Philip* openly fore *Philip of Valois*, against whom he claimed, he served in court, before the Daughters of those Kings (or the matter at least depending of them) had had their turns in the succession of that Kingdom. Of the three Brethren two left issue, viz. *Lewis* and *Philip*. *Lewis* turnamed *Hainaut*, Son of *Philip the Fair* and *Joan Queen of Navarre*, had a Daughter named *Joan*, married to *Philip Earl of Evreux*, who was King of *Navarre* in right of his Wife; from which marriage issued all the succeeding Kings of that Realm, the rights whereof are now in the House of *Barboun*. *Philip* the second Brother, surnamed the Long, by *Joan* the daughter of *Othelin Earl of Burgundy*, had a daughter named *Marguerite*, married to *Lewis E. of Flanders*; from whom descended those great Princes of the race of *Burgundy*, the rights whereof are now in the House of Spain. If then there were no *Salique Law* to exclude the Women and their Sons, *Charles King of Navarre* the son of *Q. Joan* and of *Philip of Evreux*, descended from *Lewis Hainaut* the elder Brother, and *Lewis de Malgrine Earl of Flanders* and *Burgundy*, the son of *Lewis E. of Flanders*, and of *Marguerite* the daughter of *Philip the Long*, the second Brother, must have precedence of title before King *Edward III.* of England, descended from a Sister of the said two Kings, their issue severally and respectively, before any claiming or descending from the said King *Edward's* side. So that *K. Edward III.* had some other Claim than what is commonly alleged for him in our English Histories: or else he had no claim to that Crown at all: and I conceive, to wife a King would not have ventured on a business of so great consequence, without some considerable title; though what this title was is not declared for ought I know, by any Writers of our Nation. I believe therefore, that he went upon some other grounds, than that of ordinary succession by the Law of England, and claimed that Crown, as the eldest heir-male and nearest Kinsman to the last King. For being Sisters Son to the King deceased, he was a degree nearer to him than either the *K. of Navarre* or the *E. of Flanders*, who were the Grandchildren of his Brethren: and having priority of either in respect of age, had a fair title before either to the Crown of that Kingdom. And on these grounds *K. Edward* might the rather go, because he found it a *valued case*, in the dispute about the succession in the Kingdom of Scotland. For though *K. Edward I.* measuring the order of succession by the Laws of England, and perhaps willing to adjudge the Crown to one who should hold it of him; gave sentence in behalf of *John Baliol*, the Grandchild of the eldest daughter of the *E. of Huntingdon*: yet was this Sentence disavowed and protested against by the other Competitors. *Robert Bruce* son of the second daughter of the said Earl of *Huntingdon*, as a degree nearer to the last King, though descended from the younger Sister, who not only thought himself wronged in it, but had the unanimous consent of his Son was called to the Government of the Realm of Scotland, during the life of *Baliol* and his Patron both. Proximity in blood to the King deceased, was measured by nearness of degrees, not descent of birth, and on this Plea, though different from the Laws of England, as *Bruce* had formerly possessed himself of the Crown of Scotland; so on the same, though different from the Laws of *Castile*, did *Philip II.* ground his claim to the Crown of Portugal. For being eldest son of *Mary* the Sister of *Henry* the last King (and this was just King

The chief enemies to the French have been the English and Spaniards. The former had here great possessions, divers times plagued them, and took from them their Kingdoms; but being called home by civil divisions, lost all. At their departure, the French cunningly set an English Captain, when they would return? Who lastingly answered, When your fax is greater than ours. The Spaniards began but of late with them, yet have they taken them from them Navarre, Naples and Milan: they displaced them in Florida; poisoned the Dauphin of Venice (as it was generally conceived) murdered their Soldiers in cold blood, being taken prisoners in the Isle of Terceira; and by their Faction raised even in France itself, drove Henry III. out of Paris, and most of his other Cities; and at last caused him to be murdered by Jacques Clements, a Dominican Friar. The like they intended to his Successor, K. Henry IV. whose coming to the Crown they opposed to their utmost power, and held a tedious War against him. Concerning which last War, when they fled with the Duke of Mayenne, and the rest of those Rebels which called themselves the Holy League (t'w' which the D. of Guise was the Author) against the two Kings Henry III. and IV. a French Gentleman made this excellent Allusion. For being asked the cause of these civil broils,

x

he



hercelled, they were *Spania* and *Mania*; seeming by this answer to signify *Spain*, *penury*, and *Movick*, *Jury*; which are indeed the causes of all intestine tumults; but covertly therein implying the King of *Spain*, and the Duke of *Mayenne*: since which time the *French*, upon the turn of Fortune, (notwithstanding the cross Marriages between the Kings of both Kingdoms, and their several Sisters) have had as great a hand upon the *Spaniards*, outing them by their plots and practices of the whole Kingdom of *Portugal*, and the Country of *Catalagne* in the main Land of *Spain* it self, and of many of the best parts of *Arrion*, *Hainault*, and other of the *Belgick* Provinces, by the force of Arms. So little constancy there is, either in the favours of Fortune, or the affection of great Princes, that no wife man can trull the one, or depend safely on the other. For in the former times, as we read in *Comines*, there were no Princes more friendly than these two, the Kings of *Castile* and *France*: being the nearest confederate Princes in *Christendom*. For their League was between King and King, Realm and Realm, Subject and Subject; which they were all bound under, especially since the beginning of the Wars betwixt *Charles V.* and *Francis I.* for the Dukedom of *Milain*: there have not been greater animosities, nor more implacable enmities betwixt any Nations, than betwixt *France* and *Spain*. Which seconded by the mutual jealousies they have of each other, and the diversity of Contestations under which they live; hath produced such diffimilitude between them in all their ways, that there is not greater contrariety of temper, carriage, and affections, betwixt any two Nations in the World, than is between these Neighbours, parted no otherwise from one another, than by passable Hills. First, in the *Actions* of the one, the one *Allice* and *Mercurial*, the other *Speculative* and *Saturnine*: the one sociable and discursive, the other reserved and full of thought; the one *open*, that you cannot hide him to keep a secret; the other *close*, that all the *Rhetorick* in the World cannot get it out of him. Next in their *Fashion* and *Apparel*, the *French* wears his hair long, the *Spaniard* short; the *French* goes to and open to the very shirt, as if there were continual Summer, the *Spaniard* to wrap up and close, as if all were Winter; the *French* begins to button downward, and the *Spaniard* upwards; the last always constant in his Fashion, the first intent to much on nothing as on new fancies of Apparel. Then for their *Gare*, the *French* walk fast, as if pursued on an *Arrest*; the *Spaniard* slowly as if newly come out of a *Quarantine*; the *French* go up and down in Clusters, the *Spaniards* but by two and two at the most; the *French* *Laqueys* march in the *Rere*, and the *Spanish* always in the *Pan*; the *French* sing and danceth as he walks the streets, the *Spaniard* in a grave and solemn posture, as if he were going a *Procession*. The like might be observed of their *Tune*, their *Speech*, and almost every passage in the Reader to the ingenious *James Howell*'s Book of *Instructions for Travel*, than insist longer on it here. Only I add, that of the two so different humours, that of the *Spaniards* seems to be the more approvable. Inasmuch as the *Neapolitans*, *Milaneses*, and *Sicilians*, who have had trial of both Nations, chuse rather to submit themselves to the proud and severe yoke of the *Spaniards*, than the lusts and infidelities of the *French*, not sufferable by men of even and well balanced spirits. And possible enough it is, that such of the *Netherlands*, as have of late been won to the Crown of *France*, will find too little comfort in the change of their Masters, as may confirm the relidue to the Crown of *Spain*, to which they naturally belong.

The chief Mountains of this Country, next to the Pyrenees which part *France* from *Spain*, the *Jour* or *Jura* which separates it from *Savoy* and *Switzerland*, and the *Vange* or *Vogels*, which divides it from *Lorraine*; are those which *Cesar* calleth *Gebenna*, *Ptolomy* *Commen*, being the same which separate *Auvergne* from *Languedoc*; called therefore the Mountains of *Auvergne*: the only ones of note which are peculiar to this Continent of *France*, which for the most part is plain and champaign; the others before mentioned, being common unto this, with the Bordering Provinces.

This Country is wonderfully stored with Rivers, the chief whereof, 1. *Sequana* or *Sene*, which arising in *Burgundy*, watering the Cities of *Paris* and *Ram*, and receiving into it nine navigable streams, disburdeneth it self into the *Brittish* Ocean. 2. *Some*, in *Laine* called *Samana*, which rising near the Town of *St. Quintin*, first cutteth between *Picardy* and *Artois*, afterwards passeth through the fair City of *Amiens*, and the goodly Town of *Abbeville*, and finally having received eight lesser rivers, loseth it self in the same Sea also. 3. *Legris* or *Loyre*, on which are seated *Nantes*, and *Orleans*. It riseth about the Mountains of *Auvergne*, (being the greatest in *France*) and having run 600 miles, and augmented his Channel with the entertainment of 72 lesser Rivulets, mingling his sweet waters with the brackish *Aquitane* Ocean. 4. *Rhodanus*, or the *Rhone*, which springeth from the *Alpes*, three Dutch miles from the head of the *Rhen*, passeth by *Lions* and *Avignon*; and having taken in thirteen lesser Brooks, falleth into the *Mediterranean* Sea, not far from *Arles*. 5. The *Sosne*, by the old *Latins* called *Araris*, which rising out of the Mountain of *Vogels* or *Vange*, in the borders of *Lorraine* and *Alsacia*, divideth the two *Burgundies* from each other; and falleth into the *Rhone* at the City of *Lions*. 6. *Garonna* or the *Garonne*, which issuing out of the Pyrenean Mountains, passing by *Toulouse* and *Torrendane*, and having swallowed up sixteen lesser Rivers (of which the *Dordogne* in the chief disburdeneth it self into the *Aquitane* Ocean, near the Town of *Blay*: that part hereof which is betwixt the main Ocean, and the influx of the River *Dordogne*, being called the *Charente*. Of these it is said *Proverbially*, that the *Seine* is the richest, the *Rhone* the swiftest, the *Garonne* the greatest, and the *Loyre* the sweetest. And by these and many other Rivers this Kingdom is enriched with 34 excellent Havens having all the properties of a good Harbour: thus to say, 1. Room, 2. Safety, 3. Easiness of defence, 4. Resort of Merchants.

As for so much of the Story hereof as concerneth the whole, it was first peopled, if we may give credit to *Annius*, (as I think we may not in this point) by *Samahis* the sixth Son of *Japhet* (as affirmed by them, and such as adhere unto them), to be that Son of his, who in the Scripture is called *Methuselah* in the year of the world 1806. But those which are better conversant in the course of *History* have utterly laid aside this device of *Annius*. Even *Festinus*, though a great *Boresan*, does confels ingeniously, *Quis hic Samothetes fuerit, incertum est*; that it is unresolved who this *Samothetes* was. And *Vigier* a French Antiquary does confels with *Festinus*, *Mais en ne seoy qu'il il estoit*, that no body can tell us who he was. They who have better studied this point than *Annius* derive the *Gauls* from *Gomer*, *Japhet*'s eldest Son, whose offspring were first called *Gomerians*; afterwards *Commerians*, at *laint Cimbr*: first planted (as before was said) in the Mountainous places of *Albania*, where the Mountain called *Gimmeris* long preserved his memory, and after changing that unfruitful and unpleasant *densling* for the *Plain* of *Phrygia*, wherein the City of *Timar* did retain some what of his name; in the times of *Elivy*. Afterwards his

polity

proceeded further in the lesser *Asia*, and in long tract of time filled *Germany*, *Gaul*, and *Britain*, with his numerous issue: the *Gauls* and *Cimbri* being clearly of the same Original, though known amongst the *Romans* by two different names. From whence they had the names of *Gauls*, and *Celters*, and *Galata* hath been shewn before. It shall suffice us now to add, that being originally of the *Cimbri*, and having somewhat in them of the blood of *Hercules*, they proved a very valiant and warlike Nation, without whole love, no King could secure himself from eminent dangers. They were very sparing in their diet, and used to fine any one that outgrew his Girdle. With these men the *Romans* fought at first for their own preservation, rather than out of any hope by the conquest of them to improve either their Fame or their Dominions. Inasmuch that when they had invaded *Italy* with a numerous Army, in favour of the *Cisalpine* *Gauls*, under the conduct of *Aureolus* and *Conciliatus*, two of their Kings, and pierced as far as *Clamot* a City of *Tuscany*, the *Romans* thought they had done enough in discomfiting their Forces, and clearing their own Provinces of them; not holding it for a point of wisdom to pursue them, or invade their Country, though by the conquest of *Liguria*, but few years before they had enlarged their Dominions to the borders of it. But to enumerate more particularly their great achievements in the Wars, were they who under the conduct of *Edmonius*, passing over the *Alpes*, conquered the neard parts of *Italy*, called afterwards *Gallia Cisalpine*; and under that of *Segusius*, over-run all *Germany*, and following their successes as far as *Scythia*, founded the potent Nation of the *Celto-Scythae*. These were the men, whose Issue under the command of *Frennus*, discomfited the *Romans*, at the River *Alia*; lacked the City, and besieged the Capitol, *An. M. 357. U.C. 365*. In which action they so terrified the *Romans*, that after their expulsion from *Rome* by *Camillus*, there was a Law made, that the Priests, though at all other times exempted from Military employments, should be compelled to the War, if ever the *Gauls* came again. And finally, these were the men, who under the command of *Belgicus*, and another *Brennus*, ransacked *Illyricum*, *Pannonia*, *Thrace*, and *Greece*, in which they spoiled and plundered the Temple of *Delphos*; for which Sacrilege they were visited with the Pestilence. Such as survived this Plague, went into *Asia*, and there gave name to that Country now called *Galatia*, of whom thus *Dion Barts*:

The ancient *Gaul* in roving every way.

As far as *Phrygia* darts his Golden Ray.

Sciz'd Italy; the World's proud Mithras fack't,

Which rather *Mars* than *Romulus* compact.

Then spoils *Phrygia*, *Mysia* does cultural;

And midst of *Asia* plants another *Gaul*.

Yet at last the *Romans* undertook the War, but not till they had conquered almost all the residue of the then known World. Attempting first by *Fulvius Flaccus*, a Roman Consul, called in by the *Mistificus* to assist them against the *Sallii* their unquiet Neighbours, *A. U.C. 628* that part hereof which afterwards was called *Narbonensis*, being brought into the form of a Roman Province at the conclusion of the War against the *Allobroges* and *Averni*, (undertaken on the like complaint of the *Hedui*) about two years after. Not totally subdued until the time of *Julius Caesar*, and not easily then. For though the War was managed then by the ablest Captain that ever the State of *Rome* gave life to; yet was it not more easily vanquished by the valour and fortune of the *Romans*, than by want of good intelligence and correspondence amongst themselves. Nor did they sell their liberty to

good cheap, as those other Nations, with whom the *Romans* had to deal: *Cesar* himself affirming, That he had slain 119,200 of them before they would submit to the Roman yoke. But at the last they were brought under the power of *Rome*, by whom the whole Country was divided into these four parts, viz. 1. *Narbonensis*, called so from the City of *Narbon*, then a Roman Colony, containing *Languedoc*, *Provence*, *Dauphine*, and some part of *Savoie*, called also *Braccata* at the first conquest by the *Romans*, from the usual habit of the people (resembling the Mantles used by the Wild *Tribe*) called in *Latine*, *Bracca*: attempted first by *Fulvius Flaccus*, in his War against the *Sallii* as before is said; and finally subdued, *A.U.C. 633*, by *Fabius Maximus* and *Cn. Domitius Ahenobarbus*, in their War against the *Allobroges*, and their Confederates, before mentioned, about 70 years before the coming in of *Julius Caesar*. 2. *Aquitania*, so called from the City of *Augusta* (now *D'Aqu*, in *Guine*) lying upon the *Pyrenees*, and the wide Ocean, which comprehendeth the Provinces of *Cajazzo*, *Guine*, *Xaintonge*, *Limousin*, *Quercy*, *Perigord*, *Berry*, *Bourbonnais*, and *Auvergne*; extending from the *Pyrenees* to the River *Loyre*, and consequently stretching over all the middle of *Gaul*. 3. *Celtica*, so named from the valiant Nation of the *Celts*; as called also *Lygudunensis*, from the City of *Lyon*; and *Comata* from the long hair worn amongst this people, extending from the *Loyre* to the *Brittish* Ocean, and comprehendeth the Provinces of *Bretagne*, *Normandy*, *Angou*, *Touraine*, *Main*, *La Beauce*, the Ile of *France*, part of *Champagne*, the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and the County of *Yonne*, 4. *Belgica*, from the *belge*, a potent Nation of that Tract, taking up all the East parts of *Gaul*, viz. *Picardy*, the rest of *Champagne*, the County of *Burgundy*, together with so much of *Germany* and the *Netherlands*, as lieth on this side of the *Rhen*, belonging now unto the Empire and the Kings of *Spain*. In the new modelling of the Empire by *Constantine* the Great, *Gaul* was appointed for the seat of one of the four *Præfetti Prætorio*, designed the four Quarters of it. His Title *Præfetti Prætorio Galliarum*; his Government extending over the Dioceses of *Gaul*, *Spain*, and *Britain*: this Diocese of *Gaul* being callt into seventeen Provinces, that is to say, 1. *Lygudunensis Prima*, 2. *Secunda*, 3. *Tertia*, 4. *Quarta*, 5. *Belgica prima*, 6. *Secunda*, 7. *Germania prima*, 8. *Secunda*, 9. *Narbonensis prima*, 10. *Secunda*, 11. *Aquitania prima*, 12. *Secunda*, 13. *Novempopulana*, 14. *Ulcinensis*, 15. *Maxima Sequanorum*, 16. *Alpe Graia* & *Pennina*, 17. *Alpes Maritimæ*. Of these seventeen, *Germania prima* & *Secunda*, all *Belgica prima*, and a great part of *Secunda* all that of the *Alpes Graia* & *Pennina*, and so much of *Maxima Sequanorum*, as lieth in *Switzerland*, are now dismembered from the name and account of *France*. What principal Nations of the *Gauls*, and what Provinces of the present *France*, the rest contained, shall be declared in our Survey of the particulars.

But long it stood not in this list: for within fixty years after the death of *Constantine*, during the Reigns of *Honorius* and *Theodosius*, the *Burgundians* a great and populous Nation, were called in by *Stilico*, Lieutenant to *Honorius* the Western Emperor, to keep the borders of the Empire against the *French*; then ready with some other of the Barbarous Nations to invade the same. The *Goths* not long after by agreement with the same *Honorius*, leaving their hold in *Italy*, were vested in *Gaul Narbonensis*, by the gift of that Emperor; with a good part of *Tarconensis*, one of the Provinces of *Spain*: *Aquitania* being after added, in regard of the service they had done the Empire, in driving the *Alans* out of *Spain*, then likely to have made a great impression on that Country. And in the reign of *Valentinian* the third, the *French* who had long

hovered on the banks of the *Rhens*, taking advantage of the distractions of the Empire, ventured over the River; first made themselves Masters of *Gaul-Belgick*; and after, spread themselves over all the rest of the Provinces which had not been subdued by the *Goths* and *Burgundians*; excepting a small corner of *Armorica*, then possessed by the *Britons*. So that the *Romans* being outed of all the Country, it was divided between the Nations above mentioned, and that with more equality than could be imagined: The *Goths* possessing all *Aquitain*, and *Narbonensis*, containing now the Provinces of *Provence*, *Languedoc*, *Cofcoigne*, *Guienne*, *Antwoigne*, *Poitou*, *Berry*, *Limousin*, *Perigord*, *Quercy*, and *Auvergne*; the *Burgundians* having for their share, the *Alpine* Provinces, together with *Nivernois*, *Bourbon*, *Beau-Jolois*, *Forreft*, the Counties of *Lyonsis*, *La Breffe*, *Daulphine*, and both the *Burgundies*, from them so denominated. The rest (except that part thereof which we now call *Bretagne*) was possessed by the *French*, who in short time repelled the *Vifigabes*, or *Western-Goths*, (then buſie in the Conquest of *Spain*) out of all the Provinces of the *Roman Aquitain*; by the Valour of *Clodius* the Great, their first Christian King, before they could challenge a Preſcription of 60 years. Nor was it long, before *Provence* also was resigned to *Theodoric* the *French* King of *Metz* by *Amalasenta*, Queen of the *Oftho-Goths*, or *Goths* of *Italy*; nothing being left unto that Nation, of all their *Gallick* Conquests, but *Languedoc* only. In which respect, together with so much of the *Burgundia* which was after laid to *West-France*, shall pass in the account of the *French* part of this Country; the rest of the *Burgundian* Conquests which lie within the bounds of the Modern *France*, (having *Provence* added to them) shall be considered by themselves in the description and affairs of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, a distinct Realm from that of *France*, and not reduced but by piece-meal, and by several Titles, and yet not wholly (to neither) to the Crown thereof. Finally, of the *French* themselves, and the succession of their Kings, we will speak at last, when we have brought all the chief parts and Provinces of this flourishing Country into their poss. Poss. The principal Provinces are, 1. *France*, specially so called, 2. *Champagne*, 3. *Picardy*, 4. *Normandy*, 5. *Bretagne*, 6. The *Elates* of *Anjou*, with its members, 7. *La Beaulle*, 8. *Nivernois*, 9. The Dukedom of *Bourbon*, with the Provinces dependant on it; being all (excepting *Bretagne*) the first acquits of the *French*. Then follow the chief Provinces of the *Gallish* Kingdom; that is to say, 10. *Berry*, 11. *Poitou*, 12. *Limousin*, 13. *Perigord*, and 14. *Quercy*, 15. *Aquitain*, with the members of it; and 16. *Languedoc*; and last of all, the *Burgundian* Kingdom, of which there now remain in *France*, the Counties of 17. *Provence*, 18. *Daulphine*, 19. *La Breffe*, 20. *Lionsis*, 21. The *Dutchy*, and 22. the County of *Burgundy*. 23. The Islands of the *Aquitain*, and *Gallick* Ocean, in the cloſe of all. Of some of which, *La Noire*, a *French* Author, hath passed this sentence: The men of *Berry*, are Lechers; they of *Tourain*, Thieves; they of *Languedoc*, Traitors; they of *Provence*, Atheists; they of *Rhemes*, (or *Champagne*) Superstitious; they of *Normandy*, insolent; they of *Picardy*, proud; &c. &c. &c. But here we are to understand that all these Provinces (though passing by the name and account of *France*) are not under the Command of the *French* King; the Isles of *Jersey* and *Guernsey*, being possessed by the *English*; the Counties of *Burgundy* and *barrois*, by the King of *Spain*; the *Dutchy* of *Bar*, belonging to the Dukes of *Lorraine*; the Principality of *Orange*, to the House of *Nassau*; and *Avignon*, to the Popes of

*Rome*. And on the other side, the *French* Kings are possessed of some Towns and Cities, not lying within the bounds of *France*, as the Imperial Cities of *Metz*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*; lying within the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, the Fort and Pass of *Pignerolle*, in the Dukedom of *Savoy*, and the Port of *Monaco*, in *Liguria*; *Baſe Navarre*, in *Spain*; not to say any thing of their late acquits in *Spain* and *Flanders*, which I lock not on as parts of the *French* Dominions.

## FRANCE, specially so called.

THE first place which the *Franks* or *French*, had for their first Habitation was by that People honoured with the name of *FRANCE*; the first great Tract of *Gallick* ground, by which they took liberty and *ſeiſin* of all the rest. A Province now bounded on the East, with *Champagne*; on the North, with *Normandy*; on the West and South, with *La Beaulle*. To difference it from the main Continent of *France*, it is called the *Iſle of France*, as being circled almost round with several Rivers; that is to say, the *Oiſe* on the North, the *Eure* on the West, the *Velle* on the East, and a vein-river of the *Seine*, towards the South. A Country not so large as many of the *French* Provinces; but such as hath given name unto all the rest; it being the Fate of many small, but puissant Provinces, to give their names to others which are greater than they, it conquered and brought under by them. For, thus we see the little Province of *Poland*, to have mattered and given name to the *Mazovii*, *Pruteni*, and other Nations of *Sarmatia Europæa*, as that of *Mosco*, to the Provinces of *Aſiaticæ*. And thus have those of *Sweden* conquered and denominated almost the great Peninsula of *Scandia*, whereof it is one of the smallest Provinces. And thus this Island, being the Seat-Royal of the *French*, in *Gallia*, gave name to all the residue of it, as they made it theirs. A Country generally so fruitful and delcetable, (except in *Gastinois*) that the very Hills thereof are equal to the Valleys in most places of *Europe*; but the Vale of *Montmorency* (wherein *Paris* standeth) scarce is to be followed in the World. An argument whereof may be, That when the Dukes of *Berry*, *Burgundy*, and their Confederates, besieged that City with an Army of 100000 men, neither the *Aſſailants* without, nor the *Citizens* within, found any ſcarcity of Victuals; and yet the *Citizens*, besides *Soldiours*, were reckoned at 500000.

It was formerly part of the Province of *Belgica ſecunda*, & *Lugdunensis quarta*; the chief Inhabitants thereof being the *Parifii*, the *Bellici*, and the *Silvanici*; and is now divided into four parts, that is to say, the Dukedom of *Valois*, 2. *Gastinois*, 3. *Heurepoix*; and that which is properly called the *Iſle of France*; by some, the *Præſtoris*, or County of *Paris*.

1. Dukedom or County of *VALOIS*, lieth under *Picardy*; the principal Cities of it, 1. *Senlis*. (in *Latine*, *Silvanicum*) 2. *Compiègne*, *Compennum*) ſeated on the River *Oiſe*, a retiring place of the *French* Kings for hunting, and other Country pleasures. 3. *Beauvais* the chief City of the *Belluci*, by *Pholoy* called *Casromagus*; a fair, large, well-traded Town; from which the Country round about hath the name of *Beauvoisin*. The *Patrimony*, in former times of *Roger*, the third Son of *Theobald*, the second Earl of *Blain*, and younger Brother of *Odon*, the first Earl of *Champagne*, who enjoyed it with the Title of Earl of *Beau-*

vois; and at his death, gave it for ever to the Bishops herof; for anciently this City was a See Episcopall; the Bishop whereof is one of the Twelve Peers of *France*. *Philipp*, one of the Bishops here in times succeeding, a Military man, and one that had much damming the English Borders, was fortunately taken by King *Richard I.* The Pope being made acquainted with his imprisonment, but not the cause of it, wrote in his behalf unto the King, as for an Ecclesiastical person, and one of his beloved Sons. The King returned to the Pope the Armour in which the Bishop was taken in, and their words engraved on the same, *Vide an hec fit iusticia filii tui, vel non*; being the words which *Jacobs* Children spake to him, when they presented him with the Coat of their Brother *Joseph*, which the Pope viewing, Iwore, that it was rather the Coat of a Son of *Mary*, than a Son of the Church; and so left him wholly to the Kings pleasure. 4. *Clermont*, a Town of good note in the County of *causovis*; memorable for giving the Title of Earl of *Clermont*, to *Robert* the fifth Son of the King *St. Lewis*, before his marriage with the Daughter and Heir of *Bourbon*; afterwards, to the eldest Sons of that Princely Family; and finally, to *Catherine de Medicis*, created Countess of *Clermont* and *Boislogis*, at her marriage with *Henry* Duke of *Orleans*, Successor to King *Charles I.* in the Realm of *France*. 5. *Lucarch*, a Town belonging to the Count of *Sailly*. 6. *Brenoville*, 7. *St. Lomp*, on the Confines of *Picardy*, so called from a Monastery dedicated to *St. Lomp*, Bishop of *Troy* in *Champagne*, sent into *Britain* with *St. Germanus*, to suppress the *Pelagian* Heresies, which were there beginning. But of this part of *France*, nothing more observable, than that it gave denomination to the Royal Family of the *French* Kings, (thirteen in number) from hence entitled de *Valois*, beginning in *Philip de Valois*, Anno 1328, and ending in *Henry III.* Anno 1579. As for the Earls herof, from whom that adjunct or denomination had its first Original) the first who had the Title of Earl of *Valois*, was *Charles*, the second Son of *Philip III.* in right of his Wife, Earl of *Anjou* also; after whose death, it descended upon *Philip de Valois*, his eldest Son, who carried the Crown of *France* from our *Edward III.* On his assuming of *France* from that *Charles V.* amongst the Titles of which House, it lay dormant, till the expiring of that Line in King *Lewis XII.* and lately given unto the *Montfaucon*, or Duke of *Orleans*, Brother to *Lewis XIII.* and Uncle to King *Lewis XIV.* now reigning, upon the first reconciliation made betwixt him and his Brother; adding thereby to his Estate, not less than 10000 pounds sterling of yearly Rents, which make up 10000 *Frank* or *Livres*, in the *French* account. Only add, that *Charles*, the first Earl of this Family, as he was the Son of *Philip III.* Brother of *Philip IV.* furnished the *Fair*; and Father of *Philip de Valois*: so was he Uncle to *Lewis Huiz*, *Philip the Long*, and *Charles the Fair*, all in their order Kings of *France*. In which regard it was said of him, That he was the Son, Brother, Father, and Uncle of Kings; yet no King himself.

2. The second part of this Province, is called *HEUREPOIX*, beginning at the little Bridge of *Paris*, on the River of *Seine*, and going up along the River, as far as the River of *Verne*, which divides it from *Gastinois*. The chief Towns of it are, 1. *Charenton*, three Miles from *Paris*, where the *French* *Præſtoris* of that City, have their Church for religious exercises, it being not permitted them to hold their Assemblies in any Walled

Cities, or Garrison Towns, for fear of any sudden surprize, which so great a multitude might easily make. Which Church (or Temple, as they call it) being burnt down by the hot-headed *Parisians*, on the news of the Duke of *Mantua*, dead, slain at the Siege of *Mantua*, Anno 1622, was presently re-edified by the command of the Duke of *Mantua*, then Governour of the *Iſle of France*, at the charge of the State: to let those of the Reformed Party understand that it was their *Disobedience*, and not their Religion, which caused the King to Arm against them. 2. *Corbeil*, ſeated on the confluence of *Seine* and *Essons*, which gives the Title of an Earl to one of the natural Sons of *Henry IV.* begotten on the Daughter and Heir of the former Earl. 3. *Melun*, by *Cesar* called *Melodunum*, the principal of this *Heurepoix*, and the place of the *Balliff* for this Tract. Here is also in this part the Royal Palace of *Fountainbleau*, so called from the many fair Springs and Fountains amongst which it standeth; but otherwise ſeated in a solitary and woody Country, fit for Hunting only; and for that cause much visited by the *French* Kings in their times of leisure; and beautified with so much cost by King *Henry IV.* that it is absolutely the fairest and most magnificent Pile of Building in all *France*.

3. *GASTINOIS*, the most dry and barren part of this Province, but rich enough, if compared with other places; lieth between *Paris*, and the County of *Orleans*. The chief places of it are, 1. *Etampes*, in the middle way betwixt *Paris* and *Orleans*, on the very edge of it, towards *La Beaulle*, a fair large Town, having in it five Churches, and one of them a Collodge of *Chanoines*, with the ruins of an ancient Castle; which together with the Walls and demolished Fortifications of it, shew it to have been of great importance in the former times. Given, with the Title of an Earl, by *Charles Duke of Orleans*, then Lord herof, to *Richard*, the third Son of *John of Montford*, Duke of *Bretagne*, in marriage with his Sister the Lady *Marguerette*; from which Marriage issued *Francis Earl of Etampes*, the last Duke of *Bretagne*. 2. *Montleberry*, famous for the Battle betwixt King *Lewis XI.* and *Charles Earl of Charolais*, (after Duke of *Burgundy*) in which both sides ran out of the field, and each proclaimed it self the Victor. It standeth in the road betwixt *Paris* and *Etampes*. And so doth, 3. *Caftrès*, of the bigness of an ordinary Market-Town; not to be mentioned in this place, but for a Chamber or Branch of the Court of *Parliament*, here settled by King *Henry IV.* for the use and benefit of his Subjects of the *Reformed Religion*; in *Latine* called *Camera Calvinista*. 4. *Nemours*, upon the River of *Loire*, the chief of *Gastinois* in name, but not in beauty, (wherein inferior to *Etampes*) a Town which hath given the Title of Duke to many eminent persons of *France*. Here is also in this part, the County of *Rochfort*, and the Towns of 1. *Milly*, 2. *Montargis*, &c. More there occurreth not worth the noting, in this part of the Country, but that being part of the possessions of *Hugh* the Great Countess of *France* and Earl of *Paris*. It was given by him, together with the Earldom of *Anjou*, to *Geoffrey*, famous *Grosfoin*, a high noble Warrior, and a great stickler in behalf of the House of *Anjou*, then aiming at the Crown it self, which at last they carried. Continued in his Line till the time of *Fulk II.* (the fifth Earl of *Anjou* of this Family) who gave it back again to King *Philip I.* that by his help he might possess himself of the Earldom of *Anjou*, from his part where-in he was excluded by his elder Brother. Never since that, dismembered from the Crown of *France*, in Fact or Title.

4. But the great glory of this Province, is that which is more properly called the *ISLE OF FRANCE*, and sometimes καὶ Ἰσθμῶν, the *Isthme*, caused by the Circlings and embracements of the Rivers of *Seine* and *Marne*; the abstract of the whole Beauties and Glories of *France*, which in this rich and pleasant Valley are summed up together.

Chief places in it, 1. *St. German*, seated on the summit of a Hill seven miles from *Paris*, down the waters of a pretty neat and handsome Town, honoured with one of the fairest Palaces of the *French Kings*, which being built (like *Windsor*) on the top of a fine Mountain, on the Rivers side, affordeth an excellent prospect over all the Country. The excellent Water-works herein, have been described on occasion of those of *Tivoli*, a Town of the *Popes* in *Campagna di Roma*, so much extolled by the *Italians*. It was first built by *Charles V.* furnished the *Wife*; beautified by the *English* when they were possessed of this Country: but finally, re-edified and enlarged by *King Henry IV.* who brought it into that Magnificence in which we now see it. It took name from *St. German*, Bishop of *Auxerre*, Companion with *St. Lupus* before mentioned, in the *British* Journey against *Pelagius*. 2. *Poissy*, upon the same River, or rather on the confluence of it, and the *Marne* which falleth into the *Seine*; situate not far from *St. German*, a Bailiwick belonging to the *Provost of Paris*, and one of his seven Daughters, as they use to call them. 3. *Chantilly*, the chief seat of the *Dukes of Montmorency*, the ancientest and most noble Family of all *Christendom*, whose Ancestors were the first fruits of the *Gospel* in this part of *Gaul*, and used to stile themselves, *Les premiers Chrétiens & plus anciens Barons de la France*, i. e. the first *Christians* and most ancient *Barons* of *France*. A Family that hath yielded unto *France* more Admirals, Constables, Marshals, and other like Officers of Power, than any three in all the Kingdom; now most unhappily extinct in the person of *Henry* the last Duke, executed by the command of the late Cardinal of *Richlieu*, for siding with the *Moufieur* (now Duke of *Orleans*) against *King Lewis XIII.* his Brother. The Arms of which illustrious and most noble Family, (for I cannot let it pass without this honour) were *Or a Cross Gules*, cantoned with sixteen *Alions Azure*, four in every Canton. What these *Alions* are, we shall see in *Lorraine*: take we notice now, that from the great possessions which this Noble Family had in all this Tract, it was, and is still called the *Val de Montmorency*. 4. *St. Denis* some three miles from *Paris*, so called of a Monastery built here by *Dagobert*, King of *France*, about the year 640. in memory of *St. Denis*, or *Dionys*, the first Bishop of *Paris*, martyred (on *Mount-martyr*, an Hill adjoining) in the time of *Domitian*. Some of the *French Kings*, because it lay so near to *Paris*, bestowed a Wall upon the Town, now not defensible; nor otherwise of any consideration, but for a very fair Abby of *Benedictines* and therein the Sepulchres of many of the *French Kings* and Princes: neither for Workmanship nor Cost, able to hold comparison with those at *Westminster*. But being the Sepulchre of their Kings, the *French men* use to lay factiously, that to this place none of their Kings do ever go with a good will. In this Town also is the Church of *St. Macien*, where the Kings, with a Fast of Nine days, and other Penances, use to receive the famous Gift of healing the *King-Earl*, with nothing but a Touch: a Privilege enjoyed only by those Kings, and the Kings of *England*. 5. *St. Cloud*, (or the Town of *St. Claudin*) unfortunately memorable for the Murder of *King Henry III.* who lying here at a Siege of *Paris*, from whence he was

compelled to flee by the *Gustian* Faction, was wretchedly assassinated by *Jacques Clement*, a Monk, employed in that service by the Heads of the *Holy League*. 6. *PARIS*, the chief City, not of this Isle alone, but of all the Kingdom. By *Cæsar*, and *Ammonius Marcellinus*, called *Civitas Parisiorum* from the *Parisians*, by *Strabo* called *Λατινία*, *Λατινία*, by *Pliny*, *quasi in Lupa*, i. e. as some conjecture from the dirtiness of the soil in which it standeth. A soil so dirty, (as commonly all rich Countries are) that though the Streets hereof are paved, (which they affirm to be the work of *King Philip Augustus*) yet every little dash of rain, makes them very slippery; and worse than so, yields an ill favour to the nose. The Proverb is, *Il défiant comme la fange de Paris*. It stinketh like the dirt of *Paris*: but the Author of the Proverb might have changed the word, and turned it to *Il pen*, &c. It stinketh like the dirt of *Paris*: no flink being more offensive than those of *Paris* in Summer. It is in compass about eight miles, of an Obicular form, pleasantly seated on the divisions of the *Seine*: a fair, large, and capacious City, but far short of the brags which the *French* make of it. It was thought in the time of *King Lewis XI.* to contain 500,000 people of all sorts and ages; which must be the least: the same King at the entertainment of the *Spanish* Embassadors, shewing 140,000 of this City in Arms, all in a *Livery* of red Cocksfoot, with white Crosses. A gallant sight, though possibly the one half of them were not fit for service: the *Parisians* being for the most part an effeminate people, wanton enough, and apt to mutiny upon all occasions; but little addicted to the Wars, as appears plainly by their suffering *King Henry IV.* to hold *St. Dennis* so long against them, with no considerable Garrison, and by their means to shut them up from all relief on that side of their City. And yet their multitudes, which since the time of that King, must needs be very much increased, are the chief strength of the Town; the Fortifications being weak, and of ill assurance: Insomuch, that when once a *Parisian* bragged, that their Town was never taken by force, an *English* man returned this Answer, That was, because on the least distress it did use to capitulate. It is seated (as before was said) on the River *Seine*, which serveth it with Boats and Barges, (as the *Thames* weithard doth *London*) in the River ebbs and flowing no higher than *Pont de l'Arche*, 75 miles distant from the City.

We may divide it into four parts; The Town, the City, the University, and the Suburbs. *La Ville*, or that part of it which is called *The Town*, is situate on the North side of the River; the biggest, but poorest part of the Four; inhabited by Artizans and Trademen of the meaner sort. In this part are the *Hôtel de Ville*, or the *Guild-Hall*, for the use of the Citizens; the Arsenal, or Armory, for the use of the King; and that magnificent Building called the *Place-Royal*, new built and beautified at the charges of *King Henry IV.* by Tiles and Turnaments, and such Solemnities of State. And in this also, near the banks of the River stand the Kings Palace of the *Louvre*; a place of more Fame than Beauty; and nothing answerable to the reputation which goes commonly of it. A Building of no elegance or uniformity; nor otherwise remarkable; but for the vast Gallery begun by *King Henry IV.* and the fine Gardens of the *Tuileries* adjoining to it. The City is that part of it which takes up the Circumference of a little Island, made by the embracements of the *Seine*; joined to the other parts on both sides, by several Bridges. The *Paris* or *Latetia* of the old *Gauls*

was no more than this, the Town on the one side, and the University on the other, being added since. This is the richest part, and best built of the whole *Compositum*. And herein stand the Palaces, or Courts of Parliament; the Chapel of the Holy Ghost, and the Church of *Nygre-Dame*, being the Cathedral; of ancient times a Bishops See, but of late raised unto the dignity of a Metropolis. On the South-side of the River lieth that part which is called the University, from an University here founded by *Charles the Great*, An 792 at the perswasion of *Alcuin* an *Englishman*, the Scholar of *Venerable Bede*, and the first Professor of Divinity here. It consisteth of 52 Colleges or places for study, whereof 40 are of little use; and in the rest, the Students live at their own charges, as in the Halls at *Oxon*, or Inns of Court, or Chancery at *London*; there being no Endowment laid unto any of them, except the *Sorbonne*, and the College of *Navarre*. Which possibly may be the reason why the Scholars here are generally so debauched and insolent: a ruder rabble than the which, are hardly to be found in the *Christian* world. Semble of this mischief, and the cause thereof, *Francis I.* when the *French* call the Father of the Misery, at the perswasion of *Reuchlin* and *Budanus*, those great restorers of the *Greek* and *Hebrew* Languages, intended to have built a College for 600 Students, and therein to have placed Professors for all Arts and Sciences, endowing it with 50000 Crowns of yearly Revenue, for their continuance maintenance. But it went no further than the purpose; prevented by the inevitable stroke of death, from pursuance of it. In bigness this is little inferior to the Town of *Vile*, and not superior to it for wealth and beauty, few men of any wealth and credit, affecting to inhabit in a place of little Government. The fourth and last part, is the Suburbs, or the *Faux-bourgs*, as the *French* call them; the principal whereof is that of *St. Germain*, (so called from an ancient Abby of that name) the best part of the whole Body of *Paris*, for large Streets, sweet Air, choice of the best Company, magnificent Houles, pleasant Gardens, and finally, for all those Contentments which are wanting commonly in the throngs of most populous Cities.

There are also in this Isle, the royal House of *Madrid*, a ruling-place of the Kings, built by *King Francis I.* at his return from his imprisonment in *Spain*. 2. *Ruel*, a sweet Country-houle of the late Queen-Mothers. And, 3. *Bois de Vincennes*, remarkable for the untimely death of our *Henry V.* I add this only, and to end; That this Isle hath always followed the Fortune of the Crown of *France*; never dismembered from the Sovereignty of the same, though sometimes out of the possession of the *French Kings*, as when the *English* kept it against *Charles VII.* and the *Leaguers* against *Henry IV.* A thing which hardly can be said of any other of the Provinces of this flourishing Country; the *French Kings* of the Race of *Méranie*, and *Charles the Great*, alienating from the Crown, many goodly Territories, contented only with a bare and titular Homage from them. By means whereof, more than three parts of the whole Kingdom was shared first amongst the great Princes of the *French*; which afterwards, by inter-marriages, and other titles, fell into the hands of strangers; most of them enemies of this Crown, and jealous of the Grandeur and Power thereof. Which kept the *French Kings* generally very low and poor, till by Arms, Confiscations, Marriages, and such other means, they reduced all these *Rivallers* to their first and original *Chancel*; as shall be shewn in the pursuance of this Work.

## 2. CHAMPAGNE.

*CHAMPAGNE* is bounded on the North, with *Picardy*; on the South, with the Dukedom of *Burgundy*; on the East, with *Lorraine* on the West, with *France* specially to be called.

The Country, for the most part, very plain, and pleasant, (whence it had the name) adorned with fair Woods, and delectable Meadows, fruitful in Corn, and not deficient in Wines. The Seat, in elder times, of the *Tricassers*, *Catalauni*, *Remi*, the *Luigiens*, and *Senones*, (of which last Tribe or Nation, were those *Cisalpine Gauls* who sacked *Rome* under the Conduct of *Brennus*) part of them, *Celts*; and part, *Belgians*; and so accordingly divided of: the *Belgians*, into the Province of *Belgica secunda*, the Metropolis whereof was *Rhemes*; the *Celts* into *Lugdunensis quarta*, of which the Metropolis was *Sens*; both Cities seated in this Country. The chief Rivers of it, 1. *Seine*, 2. *Marne*, 3. *Tonne*, 4. *Saône*.

Chief places of that part hereof which belonged to *Belgica secunda*, or the Province of *Rhemes*, are 1. *Chalon*, on the River *Marne*, an Episcopal See, suffragan to the Arch-bishop of *Rhemes*; called anciently, *Civitas Catalaunorum*, 2. *Juvenille*, situate on the same River, belonging to the House of *France*; the eldest Son of which Family, is called *Prince of Juvenille*: in the Castle whereof, seated upon an high and inaccessible Hill, is to be seen the Tomb of *Claude*, the first Duke of *Guisse*, the richest Monument, of that kind, in all *France*. The Barony of *William Lord Juvenille*, third Son of *Eustace*, Earl of *Burgundy*, and of *Isabel* his Wife, who brought the Dukedom of *Basilion* for her Dowry or Portion; and Brother of *Godfrey and Baldwin*, Dukes of *Lorraine*, and Kings of *Jerusalem*. But whether it came to him by the gift of his Mother, as part of the Dukedom of *Basilion*, or that he had it by his Wife, a daughter of *Theobald* Earl of *Champagne*, I am not able to determine. Left by him after his decease, to *Godfrey* his youngest Son (*Thierry* his eldest Son, succeeding his Uncle *Baldwin* in the Dukedom of *Lorraine*;) upon the failure of whose Line, it fell unto the Duke of *Lorraine*, as next Heirs thereof, and so unto the Dukes of *Guisse* descended from them. 3. *St. Urban*, a Town of the Territory of *Juvenille*, from which it is about two Leagues distance. 4. *Pierre-Fort*, defended with a Castle of 10 great strength, that in the Civil Wars of *France*, An 1614, it endured a 100 shot of Cannon, and yet was not taken. 5. *Vassy*, upon the River *Blaise*; a Town as sweet a situation, as most in *France*. The last situate in that part of *Champagne* which is called *Vallage*; so named, as I conceive from the River *Vesle*. 6. *Troyes*, upon the confluence of the *Saône* and *Marne*, the chief Town and Bailliege of that part which is named *Parisis Ager* *Potenensis in the Latine*; so called of 7. *Pierre*, another Town thereof, but now not so eminent. 8. *Champan*, upon the *Marne*, the chief Town of *Basseigne*, and strangled with a Castle mounted on a craggy Rock. 9. *Deziers*, or *St. Desir*, (*Sancti Desiderii*) royally fortified after it had been ruined, An 1544. 10. *Rhemes* (*Durocorium Rhemorum*) an Archbishops See, who is one of the Twelve Peers of *France*, lying on the River of *Vesle*. At this City, the Kings of *France* are most commonly crowned, that so they may enjoy the Union of a sacred Oyl, kept in the Cathedral Church hereof; which, as they say came down from Heaven and never decreaseth. How true this is, may be easily seen, in that *Gregory of Tours*, who is so prodigal of his Miracles, makes no mention of it, but specially

(for *Argumentum ab auctoritate negative parum valet*) since the Legend informeth us, that this Holy Oil was sent from Heaven at the anointing of *Clod*, the first Christian King of the French. Whereas *Du Hailan*, the Father of their most judicious Writers, affirmeth *Pepin*, the Father of *Charles* the Great, to have been their first anointed King; and that there was none of *la premiere ligne oint*, *my sacre à Rheims, my ailleurs*, none of the first or Merovigian line of Kings had been anointed at *Rheims* or elsewhere. But sure it is, (let it be true or false, no matter) that the French do wonderfully reverence this (their sacred) Oil; and fetch it with great solemnity from the Church in which it is kept. For it is brought by the *Prior*, sitting on a white ambling Palfrey, and attended by his whole Convent; the Archbishop herof, (who by his place is to perform the Ceremonies of the Coronation) and such Bishops as are present, going to the Church-doors to meet it, and leaving for it with the *Prior*, some competent Pawn; and on the other side, the King, when it is brought unto the Altar, bowing himself before it with great humility. But to return to the Town; it took this name from the *Rhemi*, once a potent Nation of these parts, whose chief City it was, and now an University of no small esteem: in which among other Colleges, there is one appointed for the education of young English Fugitives. The first Seminary for which purpose, (I note this only by the way) was erected at *Dormy*, An. 1568. A second at *Rome* by *Pope Gregory XIII.* A third at *Valladolid* in *Spain* by *King Philip II.* A fourth in *Levain* a Town of *Brabant*. And a fifth here (so much do they affect the gaining of the English to the *Romish* Church) by the Dukes of *Guis*. 11. *Ligni*, upon the River *Saart*.

In that part of it which belonged to *Lugdunensi quart*, or the Province of *Sters*, the places of chief note are, 1. *Senis*, *Civitas Senonensis* in *Autunnum*, antiently the Metropolis of that Province, by consequence the See of an Archbishop also. The Country hereabouts called *Le Paris Senonensis*, was part of the habitation of the ancient *Senones*, some of which passing over the *Alpes*, with other Nations of the *Gauls*, planted those parts which afterwards were for long time called *Gallia Cisalpinia*. Of which the *Senones* were the most valiant, though far less in numbers; as those which had not only the honour of facing *Rome*, but of managing an offensive War against that State, for the space of 100 years and upwards. What afterwards became of them hath been then already when we were in *Lombardy*. 2. *Langres* or *Civitas Lingunensium*, by *Polomy* called *Andomatunum* situate in the confines of *Burgundy*, not far from the fountain or spring-head of the *Seine*; the See of a Bishop, who is one of the Twelve Peers of France. 3. *Troy*, *Civitas Tricassinorum*, seated on the *Seine*; fair, strong and well-traded City, honoured with the title of the Daughter of *Paris*, a See Episcopal, and counted the chief of *Champagne* next *Rhemes*. A City of great note in our French and English Histories, for the meeting of *Charles VI.* and *Henry V.* Kings of France and England, in which it was agreed, that the said King *Henry* espousing *Katharine* daughter of that King, should be proclaimed Heir apparent of the Kingdom of France into which he should succeed on the said King's death, and be the Regent of the Realm for the time of his life, with divers other Articles, best suited with the will and honour of the Conquerour. 4. *Provins*, (by *Cesar* called *Agendicum*) seated upon the *Seine*, in a pleasant Country, abounding in all fragrant flowers, but especially with the sweetest Roses, which being transplanted into other Countries, are called *Provins-Roses*. 5. *Meaux*, seated on the River *Marne*, antiently the chief City of the *Meldi*, whom *Pliny* and others of the old Writers mention in this tract,

now honoured with a Bishops See, and neighboured by 6. *Mousses*, beautified with a magnificent Palace built by *Katharine de Medices*; Queen-Mother of the three last Kings of the House of *Valois*. 7. *Montreux*, a strong town on the confluence of the *Seine* and the *Tonne*. 8. *Chasteau-Thierry*, (*Castrum Theodoricum*, as the *Latins* call it) situate on the River *Marne*. These five last, situate in that part of *Champagne* which lieth next to *Brie* specially so called, known of long time by the name of *Brie*; which being the first or chief possession of the Earls of *Champagne*, occasioned them to be sometimes called Earls of *Brie*, and sometimes Earls of *Brie* and *Champagne*. Add here 9. *Auxerre*, in former time a City of the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, but now part of *Champagne*; of which more hereafter. And 10. *Fontenay*, a small Town in *Auxerriis*, in the very borders of this Province; memorable for the great battle fought near it, An. 841. between the Sons and Nephews of *Ludovicus Pius*, for their Fathers Kingdoms; in which so many thousands were slain on both sides; that the Forces of the French Empire were extremely weakened; and had been utterly destroyed in pursuit of this unnatural War, if the Princes of the Empire had not mediated a Peace between them; allotting unto each some part of that vast Estate, dismembered by that means into the Kingdoms of Italy, France, Germany, *Lorain*, *Burgundy*; never since brought into one hand, as they were before.

Adjoining unto *Champagne* also, where it looks towards *Lorain*, lies the Country and Duchy of *BARI*, belonging to the Dukes of *Lorain*, but held by them in chief of the Kings of France. The Country commonly called *BARROIS*, environed for the most part with the two streams of the River *Marne*; of which the one rising in the edge of *Burgundy*, and the other in the borders of *Lorain*, do meet together at *Châlons* a City of *Champagne*. Places of most importance in it, 1. *Bar le Duc*, so called to distinguish it from *Bar* on the River *Seine*, and upon the River *Albi*; a well fortified Town. 2. *La Motte*, 3. *Ligni*, 4. *Argon*, of which nothing memorable, but that they are the chief of this little Dukedom. Of what antiquity this Dukedom is, and by whom first founded and made an absolute Estate, I am yet to seek; though probable it is, that it might take its first rise (as many other perit Signories did) out of the ruin and dismembering of the Kingdom of *Lorain*, or otherwise might be erected by the Earls Palatines of *Champagne*, out of some part of that Estate. But whether it were so or not, certain it is, that it came first to the present House of *Lorain*, by the gift of *Rene Duke of Anjou*, and titular King of *Naples*, *Sicily*, &c. who succeeded in it in the right of *Isabel* or *Violant* his wife, who succeeded in it in the right of *Isabel* or *Violant* his wife, and Mother, Daughter of *Don John I.* King of *Aragon*, and of *Isabel* or *Violant*, the Heir of *Bar*; and dying gave the same, together with the towns of *Lambedge* and *Orgon*, to *Rene Duke of Lorraine*, his Nephew by the Lady *Violant* his Daughter. From this *Rene*, it was taken by *Lewis XI.* who having put a Garrison into *Bar*, repaired the Walls and caused the Arms of France to be set on the Gates thereof. Restored again by *Charles VIII.* at his going to the Conquest of *Naples*: to buy him out by that means (if I might be true) of his pretensions to that Kingdom, which were fair and specious, since which time quietly enjoyed by the Dukes of *Lorain*, till the year 1633, when seized on by *Lewis XIII.* upon a Judgment and Arrest of the Court of Parliament in *Paris*, in regard the present Duke had not done his Homage to the King as he ought to have done.

The Arms herof are *Azure*, two Barbels back to back, Or. Some of Cross Croiset, Fitch, of the second. But to return again to *Champagne*; it pleased *Henry* *Cesar* at his coming to the Crown of France, to give the same to *Eudes* or *Odons*, Earl of *Blais*, whose Daughter

he had married in his private Fortunes, before he had attained the Kingdom) with all the Rights and Privileges of a County Palatine. Which *Eudes*, or *Odons*, was the Son of *Theobald* Earl of *Blais*, and Nephew of that *Gerlon*, a noble Dane, to whom *Charles the Simple* gave the Town and Earldom of *Blais*, about the year 920, and not long after the time, that he conferred the Country of *Neustria* upon *Rollo* the *Norman*, whose Kinsman and assistant this *Gerlon* was in harassing and wasting the coasts of France. In the person of *Theobald* the third, the Earls herof became Kings of *Navarre*, descended on him in right of the Lady *Blanche* his Mother, Sister and Heir of King *Sancho* the eighth, Anno 1234. By the Marriage of *Joan* Queen of *Navarre*, and Countess of *Champagne*, to *Philip* the Fourth of France, furnished the *Fair*, both these Estates were added to the Crown of France: enjoyed by him and his three Sons one after another, though not without some prejudice to the Lady *Joan*, Daughter and Heir of *Lewis Hutin*. But the three Brethren being dead, and *Philip of Valois* succeeding in the Crown of France, he restored the Kingdom of *Navarre* to the said Lady *Joan*; and for the County of *Champagne* (which lay too near the City of *Paris* to be trusted in a foreign hand) he gave unto her and her Posterity, as in the way of exchange, some certain Towns and Lands in other places; though not of equal value to so rich a Patrimony.

#### Count Palatines of Champagne.

- |          |      |    |   |
|----------|------|----|---|
| An. Chr. | 999  | 1  | <i>Ode</i> , Earl of <i>Champagne</i> , <i>Brie</i> , <i>Blais</i> , and <i>Touraine</i> .  |
|          | 1032 | 2  | <i>Stephen</i> , Son of <i>Theobald</i> the elder, Earl of <i>Blais</i> .   |
|          |      |    | <i>Stephen</i> , Earl of <i>Champagne</i> , and <i>Blais</i> , Father of <i>Stephen</i> Earl of <i>Blais</i> , and King of <i>England</i> .   |
|          | 1101 | 3  | <i>Theobald</i> , eldest Son of <i>Stephen</i> .  |
|          | 1151 | 4  | <i>Henry</i> , Son of <i>Theobald</i> , a great adventurer in the Wars of the Holy Land.  |
|          | 1181 | 5  | <i>Henry II.</i> an Associate of the Kings of France and England in the Holy Wars, King of <i>Jerusalem</i> , in right of <i>Isabel</i> his Wife.   |
|          | 1196 | 6  | <i>Theobald II.</i> Brother of <i>Henry</i> , added unto his house the hopes of the Kingdom of <i>Navarre</i> , by his Marriage with the Lady <i>Blanche</i> , Sister and Heir of <i>Sancho</i> the 8.  |
|          | 1201 | 7  | <i>Theobald III.</i> Earl of <i>Champagne</i> , Son of <i>Theobald</i> the second, and the Lady <i>Blanche</i> , succeeded in the Realm of <i>Navarre</i> , An. 1234.   |
|          | 1269 | 8  | <i>Theobald IV.</i> Son of <i>Theobald</i> the 3. King of <i>Navarre</i> , and Earl of <i>Champagne</i> , &c.   |
|          | 1271 | 9  | <i>Henry IV.</i> Son of <i>Theobald</i> the 4. King of <i>Navarre</i> , and Earl of <i>Champagne</i> , &c.  |
|          | 1284 | 10 | <i>Philip IV.</i> King of France, in right of <i>Joan</i> his Wife King of <i>Navarre</i> , and Earl of <i>Champagne</i> .  |
|          | 1313 | 11 | <i>Lewis Hutin</i> , Son of <i>Philip</i> , King of France and <i>Navarre</i> , and Earl of <i>Champagne</i> .  |
|          | 1315 | 12 | <i>Philip</i> the Long, Brother of <i>Lewis Hutin</i> , King of France and <i>Navarre</i> , and Earl of <i>Champagne</i> .  |
|          | 1320 | 13 | <i>Charles</i> the Fair, Brother of <i>Philip</i> King of France and <i>Navarre</i> , and the last Earl of <i>Champagne</i> ; united after his decease by <i>Philip de Valois</i> to the Crown of France: the Earldom of <i>March</i> , near <i>Angoulême</i> , being given for it, in exchange to the Lady <i>Joan</i> , Daughter of King <i>Lewis Hutin</i> , and Queen of <i>Navarre</i> married to <i>Philip</i> Earl of <i>Eureux</i> , in her right honoured with that Crown, from whom descended the Kings of France and <i>Navarre</i> of the House of <i>Bourbon</i> . |

The Arms of these Palatines of *Champagne*, were *Argent*, two Beads cotized, potentice and counterpoitence of three pieces, Or.

### 3. PICARDIE.

*PICARDIE* hath on the East, the Dukedom of *Luxemburg*, and *Lorain*; on the West, some part of *Normandy*, and the English Ocean; on the North, the Counties of *Artois* and *Hainault*; and on the South, *Champagne*, and France strictly and specially so called. A Country so well stored with Corn, that it is accounted the Granary or Store-house of *Paris*; but that it is the Wines which it produceth are but harsh, and of no good relish, especially in the Northern and colder parts of it.

The ancient Inhabitants of it were the *Suessetor*, *Ambiani* and *Veromandri*, considerable Nations of the *Belge*; and therefore reckoned into the Province of *Belgica Secunda*; but why they had the name of *Picards*, I am yet to seek. Omitting therefore the conjunctures of other men, some of which are groundless, and the rest ridiculous; I only say, as *Robert* Bishop of *Arras*, hath affirmed before me, *Seni* *Seni*, *Seni* *Picardos* *appellet*, *seni* *Belge* *dicendi* *sunt*, *qui* *postmodum* in *Picardum* *transi* *erant*.

The whole Country as it lieth from *Calais* to the Borders of *Lorain*, is divided into the bigger and the lower: the lower (subdivided into *Saintes*, *Ponthieu*, *Boulainvill*, and *Guisnes*: the higher into the *Fidamite* of *Amiens*, *Veromandri*, *Rethelais*, and *Tiersache*; in every of which there are some places of importance and consideration.

In Lower *PICARDIE* and the County of *GUINNES*, the chief Towns, 1. *Calais*, by *Cesar* called *Portus Ictius* (as the adjoining *Promontory*, *Promontorium Ictius*, by *Plutony*) a strong Town close upon *Artois*, at the entrance of the English Channel: taken by *Edward* the third after the siege of eleven months, Anno 1347, and lost again by *Queen Mary* in less than a fortnight, Anno 1557. So that had *Musificus de Cordet* then lived, he had had his wish; who used to say, That he would be content to live seven years in Hell, on condition that *Calais* were taken from the English. The loss of which Town was a great blow to our Estate, for till that time we had the Key of France at our Girdles: and as great a grief unto *Queen Mary*, who sighing presently upon it, said to those which attended her, That, if she were dead, they should find *Calais* near her heart. 2. *Hammes*, a strong place, one of the best Out-works of *Calais*. 3. *Fleures*, on the borders toward *Artois*, which with the County joining to it made an ancient Barony; the Patrimony in times past of the Earls of *S. Paul*, by whom given to *Theobald* the younger, Brother of *Lewis* Earl of *S. Paul* and Confessor of France, (of whom more hereafter) and from that Family conveyed to the house of *Egmond*, by the marriage of *Francis* his heir-chose to *John* Earl of *Egmond*, who died in the year 1528, and was the Father of that Earl, who after was beheaded by the Duke of *Alen*, Anno 1568. 4. *Andres*, more towards the borders of *Ponthieu*, memorable for the interview of *Henry* the Eighth, and *Francis* the First; and many meetings of the English and French Commissioners. 5. *Guisnes*, which gives name to this Division, called the County of *Guisnes* of which the Land of *Oye* wherein *Calais* stood (by the French called commonly *Fais de Calais*) was clefted a part). The Earldom antiently of the illustrious house of *Grais*, of which more anon.

2. In *BOULOGNOIS*, neighbouring on the Country of *Guineux*, the places of most note, 1. *Blackney*, a strong Fort on the Sea-side, betwixt *Calice* and *Boulogne*. 2. *Chantilly*, opposite to *Boulogne*, on the other side of the water. 3. *Baillenhe*, more within the Land, an Out-work to *Boulogne*. 4. *Boulogne*, by *Pliny* called *Portus Giffricus*, part of the Country of the *Morini*, spoken of by *Cæsar*: divided into the *Basi* or *Low Town* lying on the shore-side, well built, and much frequented by *Pasfengers*, going to, or coming out of *England*; and the *High Town* standing on the rise of an Hill, well garisoned for defence of the Port: neath it, and honoured with *Bishops See*, translated thence from *Tonnay* when that City was taken by the *English*. The Town and Country taken by King *Henry* the eighth, with infinite expence of treasure, Anno 1544, but yielded not long after by King *Edward* the sixth: the French redeeming it at less than a fourth part of the money, which the gaining of it had cost the Crown of *England*. As for the fortunes of this Country, it was once an Earldom of its self, during which time it gave one King unto *Hiersusalem*, and another to *England*. The first Earl of it which we meet with, was that *Eustace*, who by his marriage with *Ida*, the Daughter of *Geoffrey* or *Godfrey* the second, Duke of *Lorraine*, added the Duchy of *Bouillon* in *Gaul-Belgick* to his Earldom of *Boulogne*. To him succeeded in both these Titles and Estates, *Godfrey*, firnamed of *Bouillon* his eldest Son: who after the death of *Godfrey* the third his Cousin-german attained unto the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, and finally was the first and most renowned King of the Western Christians reigning in *Hiersusalem*. *Godfrey* being dead, *Eustace* the youngest of his Brethren became Earl of *Boulogne*: whose daughter *Maud* brought this Estate and Title to *Stephen* of *Blais*, who afterwards was King of *England*. *Eustace* the only Son of *Stephen* dying without issue, the rights hereof remained in his Sister *Mary*, the Abbess of *Ramsey*, married to *Matthew* Brother of *Philip* of *Elfsaz* Earl of *Flanders*. And though *Matthew* was commanded by the Pope to restore her again unto the Abbey out of which he had taken her; yet he kept this Country for her Children. Conveyed by *Ida* the eldest Daughter of this Bed to *Reginald* of *Cheshire* her third husband; by *Maud* his daughter to *Philip* second Son of *Philip Augustus* King of *France*, by another *Maud* (he dying without issue) to *Alonso* of *Portugal*, who succeeding after in that Kingdom, lent her back to *Boulogne*, and finally by *Joan* daughter and heir of *William*, this *Alfonso* Grandchild to *Philip* Earl of *Artois*; the Son of *Eudes* Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*; to whom he brought *Philip* their only Son, successful to his Grand-father in the said Estates, and to his Mother in this Earldom. But he deceasing without issue, An. 1361, and *Joan* not leaving any children by King *John* of *France*, whom she married after the death of her first Husband, it fell by some other of the Heirs General to the *De la Tour* of *Auvergne* (the Ancestors of the now Dukes of *Bouillon*) continuing in that Family till the year 1477, when bought by *Lewis* the eleventh of *France* of *Bertrand* de la *Tour*, the better to assure his Kingdom on that side against the *English* then possessed of the Country of *Guineux*. The purchase being made, *Lewis* the now Proprietor, did Homage for it to the Virgin *Mary*, in the chief Church thereof called *Nigre Dame*, bare-headed, on his knees, without Spurs or Girdle: and offered to her Image a massie Heart of gold of 2000 ounces; capitulating that from thenceforth he and his Successors would hold that Earldom of her only, in perpetual Homage; and at the change of every Vassal present her with a golden heart of the same weight. Since which time never aliened from the Crown of *France*; nor giving title unto any but to *Katherine* de

*Medici* Wife of *Henry* the Second, created Countess of *Boulogne* and *Clermont*, when first married to him, before then Duke of *Orleans* only.

The Arms hereof under the ancient Earls of *Boulogne*, were Or, a Banner Gules, tufted Purple: those of 'De la Tour, being a Tower embattled Sable; but the colour of the Field I do not where find.

3. *PONTIEVE*, so called from the Bridges, built for convenience of passage over the moorish Flats thereof, belonged formerly to the *English*: to whom it came by the Marriage of *Eleanor* Daughter of *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, by *Joan* the Daughter and Heir of *Simon* the last Earl hereof, to King *Edward* the first. Towns of most note in it, 1. *Abbeville*, seated on the *Somme*, well fortified and as strongly garisoned, as a Frontier Town upon and on one side unassailable by reason of a deep and moorish Fen, which comes up close to it; beautified with a fair Abbey, whence it had the name (*Abbatin Villa* in the *Latin*) and the See of a Bishop. 2. *Montreuil*, a well fortified Town, in the way betwixt *Abbeville* and Paris. 3. *Crispien*, where King *Edward* the third decaied the great Army of *Philip* de *Valois*, in the first onset for that Kingdom. Anno 1343. And 4. *Trepas*, a small Haven on the East of *S. Valeris*. Some place the Earldom of *S. Paul* in this Country of *Ponthieu*, others more rightly in *Artois*, where we mean to meet with it. The Arms hereof were Or, three Bends Azure.

4. And as for the Country of *SAINTERRE*, which is the fourth part of the *Lower Picardy*, the chief Towns of it are 1. *Peronne*, upon the River *Seme*, where *Lewis* the eleventh, the greatest Master of State-craft for the times he lived in, put himself most impudently into the hands of *Charles* of *Burgundy*, who as improvidently dismissed him. 2. *Roy*, and 3. *Mont Didier*, (*Mont Desiderius* in *Latin*) both of them strong Towns upon the Frontier; but otherwise of little fame in former Stories.

In the *Higher Picardy* being that part of this Country which lieth furthest from the Sea, the first division which occurs, is the *Vidamie* of *AMIENS*, so called of the fair City of *Amiens*, and the *Vidame* or chief Governor of it. Which honour as it is peculiar to the French only, so *Mills* in his Edition of *Glovers Catalogue* of Honour, will have but four at all in *France*, viz. this of *Amiens*, *Chalons*, *Gerborgy*, and that of *Chartres*. But certainly in *France* there are many more of them; as *Rheims*, *Mans*, &c. and formerly as many as it had Bishops; the *Vice-dominus*, or *Vice-demes*, being to the Bishop in his *Temporals*, as the Chancellor in his *Spirituall*; or as the *Vice-comites* (*Vicomites*) were anciently to the Provincial Earls in their Courts of Judicature: or to give you an example nearer home and of more resemblance, these French *Vidames* were unto their several and respective Bishops, as the *Temporal Chancellors* (in this Realm) of the Bishopricks of *Darham*, or the *High Steward* of the Bishopricks of *Ely*, to those several Bishops.

Places of most note herein, 1. *Corbie*, a Town of great importance, and strongly garisoned, situate on the Frontier towards the *Netherlands*: 2. *Chaux*, on the same Frontier also, but of less consideration, the Honorary seat and Title of the present *Vidame*; 3. *Pignigni*, situate on a pretty ascent of ground overlooking the *Somme*, on the left hand of the River betwixt *Amiens* and *Abbeville*, the ordinary seat of the former *Vidames*; more famous for the interview of *Edward* the IV. of *England*, and *Lewis* the XII. than for giving the name of *Picardy* to all the Province; which *Mercator* only of all writers doth ascribe unto it. 4. *Crany* an obscure Village now, but formerly of

special

special note for a goodly Castle, commanding over the adjoining Territory, and giving name to the illustrious Family, hence surnamed of *Crany*, descended from the Kings of *Hungary*, and the Progenitors of the Dukes of *Archeat*, and Princes of *Chimay* in the *Netherlands*; before their translating to which Countries by the Dukes of *Burgundy*, they were entituled Earls of *Guise*. 5. *Amiens* it self, seated upon the *Somme* above *Pignigni*, the River being there divided into many streams for the use and service of the Town; well built, with very strong walls and deep ditches: the loss whereof, when taken by Archduke *Albert*, much hazarded the affairs and reputation of King *Henry* the fourth, and therefore when he had regained it, he added to the former Works an impregnable Citadel. But the chief glory of this City is in the *Cathedral*, the fairest and most lovely structure in the West of *Europe*: so beautified within and adorned without, that all the excellencies of *Colt* and *Architecture*, seem to be met together in the composition. The Fronts of our Cathedrals of *Wells* and *Peterburgh*, the rich Glais in the Quire at *Canterbury*, the costly Imagery, and arched Buttresses in the Chappel at *Wimbor* (before the late defacements of those Cathedrals) might serve as helps to set forth the full beauties of it. The Towns and Territories anciently under the command of the Bishops of it, whose Officers for the Temporal government hereof called *Vice-dominus* or *Vidames*, were at first eligible by the Bishops, and accountable to them, but by degrees engrossing all power unto themselves, they became Hereditary, and gave the name of the *Vidamie* of *Amiens* to this part of *Picardy*. The present *Vidame* of it is the Duke of *Chaux*, who being one of the younger Brothers of *Monsieur* de *Luyne* (chief favourite to *K. Lewis* 13.) obtained in marriage the Daughter and heir of the former *Vidame*, with whom he had the Town and Castle of *Pignigni*, the chief command of these parts, and a rent of 9000 l. per annum, honoured the reason by the power and favours of his Brother with the title of the Duke of *Chaux* and Peer of *France*, Anno 1620, or thereabouts.

II. But not to dwell on this place too long, pass we on next to *VEROMANDUIS*, the ancient habitation of the *Veromandri*, the fairest and largest part of both *Picardies*; and not a whit inferior to the best of *France* in the number of neat and populous Cities.

The principal Towns hereof are, 1. *Soissons*, called anciently *Augusta Suessiomum*, the chief City of the *Suessones* or *Suessiones*; and the last Hold which the Romans had in all *Gaul*; lost by *Stagnius*, Governor for the Western Emperor, to *Clodius* the fifth King of the French. In the division of his Kingdom, made the last Royal of *Clodius* the Son of this *Clodius*; and of *Aripert*, and *Chilperick* the Sons of *Clodius*, from hence entituled Kings of *Soissons*; the Kingdom containing the whole Province of *Belgica secunda*, or the Provinces of *Artois*, *Picardy*, and *Champagne* as we call them now. But *Soissons* having long since lost the honour of a Regal Seat, hath of late times been made the honorary Title of the Counts of *Soissons*, a branch of the Royal stock of *Bourbon*: a Bishops See, and the Bishop whereof is one of the Twelve Peers of *France*, and Earl of *Laon* the Town in *Latin*, *Laodunum*. 3. *Noyon*, an Episcopal See also. 4. *Chapelie*, a strong place, one of the best out-works of *Paris* against the *Netherlands*. 5. *Dourlans*, 6. *La Fere*, and *Haut*, places of great strength also, but more near the Frontiers. And 7. *S. Quintin*, anciently the chief City of the *Veromandri*, then called *Augusta Veromandorum*: called afterwards *S. Quintin*, from that Saint here worshipped, as the *Patron Deus tutelaris* of it. A place of great importance for the Realm of *France*; and so esteemed in the opinion

of the Earl of *Chorlois*, (after Duke of *Burgundy*) and King *Lewis* the first who first never digested the rethorick of it to that King, being pawned unto his Father (together with *Corbie*, *Amiens*, and *Abbeville*) for no less than 400000 Crowns the latter never would forgive the Earl of *St. Paul* for detaining it from him, though under colour of his service. A Town of greater note in succeeding times, for the famous battel of *S. Quintin*, Anno 1557, wherein King *Philip* the second of *Spain*, with the help of the *English*, under command of the Earl of *Pembroke*; overthrew the whole Forces of the French, made themselves Masters of the Town, and thereby grew so formidable to the French King, that the Duke of *Guise* was in post haste sent for out of *Italy* (where his affairs began to prosper) to look unto the safety of *France* it self. As for the Fortunes of this part it was once an Earldom of its self, and an Earldom of as great Antiquity as the most in *France*, it being once *Heribert* or *Hebert* Earl of *Veromandri*, who in pursuance of the quarrel of the House of *Anjou* surprised *Charles* the Simple, and carried him Prisoner to *Peronne*, where he after died; for which he cruelly changed by *Lewis* surnamed *Transtramarine* the Son of *Charles*, when he became possessed of his Fathers Kingdom; and by the Daughter and Heir of another *Hebert*, conveyed in marriage unto *Hugh* surnamed the Great, one of the younger Sons of King *Henry* the first of *France*, succeeding in her right into the title and estate of Earl of *Veromandri*, and by that name renowned in the first wars for the Holy Land, by *Elizabeth* the Necece of this *Hugh*, the Daughter of *Rodolphus* his eldest Son married to *Philip* of *Elfsaz* Earl of *Flanders*, it was added unto that estate; but shortly after given by the same *Philip* (having no children of his own) in Dowry with *Isabel* his Necece, daughter of *Baldwin* Earl of *Hainault* unto *Philip Augustus* King of *France*, and since united to that Crown, not giving since that time the title of Earl or Duke to any, for ought I can find.

III. More towards *Hainault* and *Lorraine* lieth the Country of *RETHELOIS*, so called of *Reisel* the chief Town; well fortified as the rest of the Frontier places, but of most note among the French, in that the eldest Sons of the Dukes of *Nevers*, have usually been entituled Earls and Dukes of *Reisel*; united to that Family by the marriage of *Lewis* of *Flanders*, Earl of *Nevers*, with the daughter and heir of *James* Earl of *Reisel*, An. 1312, or thereabouts. 2. *S. Moubaud* a Town of consequence and strength. 3. *Sygnit*, a strong piece belonging to the Marquels of *Vieuville*. 4. *Chastelle-Portion*, of more beauty, but of little importance. The Arms of the Earls and Dukes of *Reisel* were Gules, three Rakes-heads indented Or.

IV. Finally in the Duchy of *TIERASCHE*, the last part of the higher *Picardy*, we have the Town of *Guise*, of some note for the Castle, but of more for the Lords thereof, of the Ducal Family of *Lorraine* (on the borders whereof it handeth) from hence entituled Dukes of *Guise*. A Family which within a little compass of time produced two Cardinals, the one entituled of *Guise*, the other of *Lorraine* six Dukes, that is to say, the D. of *Guise*, *Mayenne*, *Amial*, *Elbeuf*, *Aguillon*, and *Chevrense*; the Earl of *Samarrie*; and besides many daughters married into the best houses in *France*, once married to *James* the 6th King of the *Scots*. The first, and he that gave the rise unto all the rest of this potent Family, was *Clauud*, Son to *Rene* the second Duke of *Lorraine*, who passing into *France* to take possession of the Patrimony allotted to him, followed King *Henry* the first in the War of *Italy*, where he behaved himself so valiantly at the Battel of *Marignan*, in which he had the chief command of the German Auxiliaries, that the King always after held him in a great esteem, and married him to *Anto Rette* of *Bourbon*, daughter

Y 2



ter of *Francis*, Earl of *Vendôme*; in respect of which alliance, and his other merits, he was honoured with the title of Duke of *Guise*. The Father (amongst other children) of *Mary Q. of Scots*, wife of *James* the fifth, and Grandmother of *James* the sixth, the first Monarch of *Britain*. The second was *Francis*, who endangered the Realm of *Naples*, scilicet the siege of the Emperor *Charles* at *Metz*, drove him out of *Provence*, took *Calce* from *Q. Mary*, and was at last treacherously slain at the siege of *Orleans*, by one of the *Hugonots* named *Poltrois*. (On the instigation of some of the chiefs of that faction) *An. 1463*. The third was *Henry* that great enemy of the Protestants, who contrived the great Massacre at *Paris*, and almost dispossest *Henry* the third of all *France*: He began the holy league, and was finally slain at *Blais*, by the command of King *Henry* the third. But we must know that this Town did anciently belong to the Dukes of *Lorraine*: and had given the title of Earl of *Guise* to *Frederick* the second Son of *John*, and *Charles* the third Son of *Rene*, both the first of those names; before *Claud* of *Lorraine* was advanced to the title of Duke: as being part of the Estate and Patrimony of the Barons of *Jainville*, of whom we spake before when we were in *Champagne*. Of most note next to *Guise* it self, is a *Ripemont* on the South of *Guise*. 3. *Chasteler* upon the borders towards *Luxembourg*, a strong Town, and none of the best out-works of *France*. 4. *Mazures*, upon the *Mas* or *Meuse*, a place of great strength and like importance; belonging properly to the Dukes of *Nevers* (as chief Lords thereof) in right of their descent from the house of *Rabai*: fortified with a strong Citadel for defence of the place, and that Citadel well garrisoned by the French King, for defence of this border; laid to the Government of *Champagne*, though a Town of *Picardy*, and therefore made by some to belong to that Province also.

As for the state of this whole Province, I do not find that it was ever passed over by the French Kings unto any one hand: as almost all the rest of *France* had been at some time or other, but distracted unto divers Seigneuries and several Lordships (all of them absolute in themselves, and scarce affording to the French King the slight tribute of Homage) the particulars whereof we have seen before: some of which fell to the Crown of *France* by confiscations, some by lawful marriages, and others by conquest; some held of *England*, some of the Earls of *Artois*, and others of *Flanders*, and lastly of the Dukes of *Burgundy*, as Lords of those Provinces: these which depended upon *England*, being seized on by *Charles* the 7. on the loss of *Normandy* by the English; as those which held of *Burgundy*, were by *Lewis* his Son, immediately on the death of Duke *Charles*, at the Battle of *Nancy*, *Anno 1476*.

#### 4. NORMANDY.

**NORMANDY** is bounded on the East with the River *Some*, and part of *Picardy*, on the West with *Bretagne*, and some part of the Ocean, on the North, with the English Channel, by which divided from *England*; and on the South, with *France* specially so called, and the County of *Main*. It made up the whole Province of *Lugdunensis Secunda*, in the time of the Romans; the Metropolis whereof was *Rouen*: and in the greatness of the French Empire had the name of *Neustria*, corruptly so called for *Neustria*, the name of *Wetitia* or *Wetionis*, being given by some to this part of the Realm of *Wetfrance*, as that of *Austria* or *Ostentrich* to a part of *East-*

*France*. Afterwards being bestowed upon the Normans by *Charles* the Simple, it was called *Normandy*.

This flourishing and rich Dukedom of *Normandy*, for largeness of Extent, multitude of People, number and stateliness of Cities, fertility of Soil, and the commodiousness of the Seas, may worthily be accounted the chief of *France*. Well watered with the River *Seine* which runneth quite through it; as do also 2. the *Orne*, and 3. the *Aven*: not to say any thing of 4. *Robes*, 5. *Ante*, and 6. *Reinde*, and many others of less note. In length it reacheth about 170 miles, and about 60 in breadth, where it is narrowest: containing in that round the largest and fairest Corn-fields that are to be seen in all *France*. Of all other natural commodities it is extrem plentiful, excepting Wines; which the Northern coldness of the Climate admits not of, or sparingly at the best, and of no perfection. The people of it formerly renowned for feats of Arms, the Conquerors of *England*, *Naples*, *Sicily*, and the Kingdom of *Antioch* in the East; at this time thought to be of a more sharp and subtle wit, than the rest of the French; *Scævans* an *pissibile ed proceps* & *plaudis* (saith *Orellius* of them) especially in the quillets of Law.

It is divided into the Higher and the Lower: the Lower containing the Sea-coasts, and the Higher, the more inland parts. Principal Cities of the whole, 1. *Constance* a Bishop's See, the Spire or Steeple of whose Cathedral, is rarely discernable afar off, both by Sea and Land; and serves Sailors for a Land-mark. From hence the Country hereabouts hath the name of *Constance*. 2. *Avranches*, situate on a Rock with a fair prospect over the English Channel, but more near to *Bretagne*, than the other, the chief City of the *Abrincates*, called *Ingenia* by *Ptolomy*; now a Bishop's See. 3. *Caen* (*Cadomum* in Latin) an Episcopal See, as the other; strong, populous, and well built, seated upon the River *Orne*, second in reputation of the whole Province, but more especially famous for the Sepulchre of *William* the Conqueror, the University founded here by King *Henry* the fifth of *England*, and for the long resistance which it made against him, in his Conquest of *Normandy*. 4. *Baieux* (the *Civitas Baiocorum* of *Antoninus*) from whence the Country round about hath the name of *Bessin*. Memorial of a long time for a See Episcopal. One of the Bishops whereof, called *Odo*, Brother unto *William* the Conqueror, by the Mother's side, was by him created Earl of *Norm*; and afterwards, on some just displeasure committed prisoner. For which, when quarrelled by the Pope, (the Clergy being then exempted from the Secular Powers) he returned this answer, That he had committed the Earl of *Norm*, not the Bishop of *Bayeux*: By which distinction he avoided the Popes displeasure. 5. *Rouen*, of old *Rothomagus*, pleasantly seated on the *Seine*, and watered with the two little Rivers of *Robes*, and *Reinde*, which keep it very sweet and clean. The City for the most part well built, of large circuit, and great trading; the second fair bigness, wealth, and beauty, in all *France*: anciently the Metropolis of this Province, and an Archbishop's See; and honoured of late times with a Court of Parliament, erected here by *Lewis* the twelfth, *Anno 1501*. In the Cathedral Church hereof (a reverend, but no beautiful Fabric) is to be seen the Sepulchre of *John Duke* of *Bedford*, and an envious Court for King *Henry* the sixth: which when an envious Courtier persuaded *Charles* the 6. to deface; *God forbid* (saith he) that I should wrong him, being dead, whom living all the power of *France* was not able to withstand, adding withal, That he defaced a better Monument than the English had bestowed upon him. And to say truth, the Tomb is but mean and poor, short of the merits of the man, and carrying no proportion to so great a virtue.

6. *Falaise*,

6. *Falaise*, upon the River *Ante*, once of strength and note; the dwelling-place of *Arlette*, a Skinner's daughter, and the Mother of *William* the Conqueror; whom Duke *Robert*, passing through the Town, took such notice of, (as he beheld her in a Dance amongst other Damocels), that he sent for her to accompany him that night in bed, and begot on her *William* the *Barlard*, Duke of *Normandy*, and King of *England*. Her immorality that night laid to befo great, that either in regard thereof, or in spite to her Son, the English called all Strumpets by the name of *Harlots*, the word continuing to this day. 7. *Vernerville*, (*Vernulium* in Latin) in former times accounted one of the Bulwarks of *Normandy*, against the French. Of which it is reported, that when news was brought to *Richard* the first, that *Philip* furnished *Augustus*, the French King, had laid siege unto it, he should say these words; *I will never turn my back, till I have conquered these cowardly Frenchmen*. For performance of which Princely word, he caused a passage to be broken through the Palace of *Westminster*, and came to unexpectedly upon his Enemies, that they raised their siege, and halted homewards. 8. *Alanson*, of most note for giving the title of Earl, and Duke, to many Princes of the Royal Family of *Valois*, beginning in *Charles* de *Valois*, the Father of *Philip* de *Valois*, French King; and continuing for eight successions, till the death of *Charles* the Fourth, Duke of this line: conferred occasionally after that, on many of the younger Princes of the Royal Family. 9. *Lysieux*, on the North east of *Alanson*, a Bishop's See, the chief Town of the *Lexovii*; as 10. *Caen*, of the *Caletes*, both placed by *Cæsar* in these parts. 11. *Eureux*, an Episcopal See also, by *Ptolomy* called *Mediolanum*, the chief City anciently of the *Eburones*, and still rich and flourishing Town; the third in estimation of all this Province, and made an Earldom in the person of *Lewis* a younger Son of *Philip* the third; whose Son, called *Philip*, by his marriage with *Joan* Daughter of *Lewis* *Hutin*, attained unto the Crown of *Navarre*. But this Town, with many fair Estates in this Country which depend on it, being seized on by the French in the time of *Charles* the Son of this *Philip*, for some practices against that Kingdom; there was after given to *Charles* the third and last King of this house, in compensation for the same, *Anno 1406*, the title of Duke of *Nemours*, with a good sum of ready money, and a pension of 12000 *l*. *Dieppe*, yearly, issuing out of the Revenues of *Brie* and *Champagne*. 12. *Guise*, a strong Frontier Town towards *France*, whilst *Normandy* was in the hands of the English, or under its own Duke and Prince: notable for the many repulses given unto the French. And 13. *Pontivy*, another Frontier upon *France*; so called of the Bridge on the River of *Oye*, (which divides *France* from *Normandy*) on which the Town is situate, and by which well fortified on that side; but taken at the second coming of *Charles* the seventh, after an ignominious flight hence, upon the noise only of the coming of the Duke of *Tork*, Commander at that time of the Province, and the English Forces. 1. *Albemar*, contractedly *Amert*, most memorable for giving the Title of Earl to the Noble Family de *Fortibus*, Lords of *Holdersby* in *England*; and of Duke to *Edward Earl* of *Rutland*, after Duke of *Tork*. More towards the Sea, 15. *S. Valeris*, seated on a small, but secure Bay, betwixt *Dieppe* and *New-baven*. 16. *Dieppe*, at the mouth of a little River so named, opening into a large and capacious Bay: a Town of Trade, especially for the *New-found-Land*: remarkable for its fidelity to *Henry* the fourth in the midst of his troubles; when the Confederates of the *Guissan* Faction, called the *Holy League*, had ousted him of almost all the rest of his Cities, compelled him to betake himself hi-

ther, (from whence he might more easily have fled for *England*) and called him in derision, *The King of Dieppe*. 17. *New-Haven*, the Port-Town to *Rouen* and *Paris*, situate at the mouth of the River *Seine*, from hence by great Ships navigable as far as *Rouen*; by lesser, unto *Pont de l'Arch*, 70 miles from *Paris*: the Bridge of *Rouen* formerly broken down by the English; to secure the Town, lying unprepared to this day, by means of the *Parisians*, for the better trading of their City. By the French it is called *Havre de grace*, and *Franciscopolis* by the *Latins*: repaired and fortified. (the better to confront the English) by King *Francis* the First, and from thence so named. Delivered by the Prince of *Conde*, and his faction, into the hands of Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*, as a Town of caution, for the landing of such Forces as she was to send to their relief, in the first Civil War of *France* about Religion: and by the help of the same Faction, taken from her again, as soon as their differences were compounded. By means whereof, the *Hugonots* were not only weakened for the present, but made incapable of any succours out of *England* for the time to come: and the next year were again warred on by their King, with more heat than formerly. 18. *Harfleur*, and 19. *Honfleur*, both situate on the banks of the *Seine*, but of little notice at the present, because not capable of any great shipping; nor useful in the way of Trade, by reason of the interposition of *New-baven*, betwixt them and the Sea: the former, famous notwithstanding in our English Stories; as the first Town which that Victorious Prince King *Henry* the Fifth, attempted and took in, *France*. 20. *Churburg*, (the *Latin* call it *Cæsaris Burgum*) on the Sea-side also, the last Town with the English held in the Dukedom of *Normandy*: belonging properly and naturally to the Earls of *Eureux*, advanced unto the Crown of *Navarre*; till alienated by *Charles* the third of *Navarre*, on the composition before mentioned; but being garrisoned by the English for King *Henry* the sixth, it held out a siege of seven Months against the Forces of *France*.

Here are also in this Kingdom, the Towns of 21. *Tanherville*, and 22. *Ewe*, which have given the title of Earl, to the noble Family of the *Greys*, and *Bonchiers*, in *England*: as also those of 23. *Harcourt*, 24. *Longueville*, and 25. *Amal*, which have given the title of Duke and Earl, to some of the best Houses in *France*.

In this Country also is the little Signeury of *IVIDOT*, heretofore said to be a free and absolute Kingdom; advanced to that high dignity by *Clotaire*, the seventh King of the French; who having abused the Wife of one *Gautier* de *Isidot*, (so called because of his dwelling here) and afterward (to prevent revenge) killed the man himself, to make some satisfaction to his Family for so great an injury, created the Lordship of *Isidot*, to the estate of a Kingdom; and gave unto the Heirs of this *Gautier* (or *Walther*) all the Prerogatives of a free and absolute Monarch, as, to make Laws, coin Money, and the like. From hence the French call a man that hath but small domains to maintain a great title, a *Roy d'Isidot*. At last, but at what time I know not, it fell again to a Lordship, and belongeth now to the house of *Belay* in *Bretagne*.

There belongeth also to this Dukedom, but rather as subject to the Dukes of *Normandy*, than part of *Normandy* it self, the County of *P E R C H*, situate betwixt it and the Province of *La Beausse*, of which now reckoned for a part: and was divided into the higher and the lower. The chief Towns of it, 1. *Nogent le Rotrou*, of which little memorable, but that it is the principal of *Perch* *Gouet*, or the lower *Perch*, and that it took that adjunct from *Rotrou*, the second Earl of this County,



the Founder or Repairer of it, to difference it from another of that name, called *Nogent le Roy*, a Town of *Champagne*. 2. *Mortaigne*, or *Mortion*, a Town of the higher *Pereh*, especially for giving the title of an Earl to *John*, the youngest Son of King *Henry* the second, after King of England; as in the times succeeding to the Lord *Edmund Beaufort*, after Duke of *Somerset*. The whole, first made a distinct Estate, in the person of *Arnulph* of *Hesdin* the first Earl thereof. Whole Son and Successor, named *Raton*, (of great note in the Wars of Spain against the *Moor*s, in behalf of *Alfonso* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*, An. 1110) by *Maud* the natural daughter of *Henry* the first of England, unfortunately drowned with her Brother *William*, as they crossed the Seas; had one only daughter, named *Margaret*, (or as some say, *Margaret*) the Wife of *Garcia*, the seventh King of *Navarre*, and Mother of *K. Sancho*, surnamed *the Wise*, from whom all the Kings of *Navarre* have since descended. But this Family being extinct in a short time after, the Estate fell unto the *English*, as Dukes of *Normandy*; and so continued till the seizure of *Normandy* by the *French*, in the time of *K. John*. After which time, the title of Earl of *Pereh* was given to *Charles* Earl of *Valois* and *Alanson*, Father of *Philip* de *Valois*, French King, of *Lewis* Earl of *Artois*, and of *Charles* de *Valois*, Earl of *Alanson* in which house of *Alanson* it continued, and was commonly the title of the eldest Sons of the Dukes thereof.

But to return again to the Country of *Normandy*, the ancient Inhabitants thereof were the *Calates*, *Eboracens*, *Leuvis*, *Abrinantes*, spoken of before; the *Belloaci*, or *Vendicaci*, about *Rouen*; the *Salares* and *Baiofices*, about *Sees* and *Baieux*; all conquered first by the powerful *Romans*; the *Romans* after by the *French*, and the *French* by the *Normans*. These last, a people of the North, inhabiting those Countries which now make up the Kingdoms of *Denmark*, *Switzerland*, and *Normandy*, united in the name of *Normans*, in regard of their Northern situation; as in our History and Description of those Kingdoms, we shall shew more fully. Out of those parts they made their first irruption about the year 700, when they so ravaged and plagued the Maritime Towns of *France* and *Belgium*, that it was inserted in the Litany, *From Plague, Pestilence, and the fury of the Normans, good Lord*, &c. To quiet these people, and to secure himself, *Charles the Simple* gave them a part of *Nenhris*, (from them since called *Normannia*) or *Normandy*, together with the Sovereignty of *Bretagne*; enjoyed by them and their Posterity for many Ages. Their first Duke was *Rolla*, An. 912, from whom, in a direct Line, the sixth was *William* the *Barlard*, Conqueror, and King of *England*, An. 1067. After this *Normandy* continued *English* till the days of King *John*, when *Philip Augustus* seized on all Estates in *France*, as forfeitures, An. 1202. The *English* then possessing the Dukedom of *Normandy* and *Aquitaine*; the Earldoms of *Artois*, *Tourain*, *Maine*, *Payen*, and *Lisieux*; being in all a far greater and better portion of the Country, than the Kings of *France* themselves possessed. The *English* after this recovered this Dukedom, by the Valour of King *Henry* the fifth; and having held it thirty years, lost it again in the unfortunate Reign of King *Henry* the sixth: the *English* then distracted with domestic factions. After which double Conquest of it from the Crown of *England*, the *French* distrustful the affections of the *Normans*, and finding them withal a stubborn and untractable people, have miserably oppressed them with Tolls and Taxes, keeping them always poor and in a low condition; in-somuch as it may be said of them, that they are the most

beggary people that ever had the luck to live in so rich a Country. But it is time to look on

#### The Dukes of Normandy.

- An. Chr.
- 912 1 *Rolla* of *Normandy*, made first Duke of *Normandy*, by *Charles the Simple*; by whose perswasion baptized, and called *Robert*.
- 917 2 *William*, surnamed *Longflee*, from the length of his Sword.
- 942 3 *Richard*, the Son of *Longflee*.
- 980 4 *Richard* the II. Son of the former.
- 1026 5 *Richard* the III. Son of *Richard* the Second.
- 1028 6 *Robert* the Brother of *Richard* the Third.
- 1035 7 *William* the bale Son of *Robert*, subdued the Realm of *England*; from thence called the Conqueror.
- 1093 8 *Robert* the II. eldest Son of *William* the Conqueror, put by the Kingdom of *England* by his two Brothers, *William* and *Henry*, in hope whereof he had refused the Crown of *Hierusalem*, then newly conquered by the *Forces* of the *Cyberian* Princes of the West. Outed at last, imprisoned, and deprived of sight by his Brother *Henry*; he lived a miserable life in the Castle of *Cardiff*, and lieth buried in the Cathedral Church of *Gloucester*.
- 1102 9 *Henry* the first, King of *England*.
- 1134 10 *Stephen*, King of *England*, and D. of *Normandy*.
- 11 *Henry* Plantagenet, D. of *Normandy*, and after King of *England*; of that Name the second.
- 1161 12 *Henry* the III. surnamed *Court-mantle*, Son of *Henry* the second, made D. of *Normandy* by his Father.
- 1189 13 *Richard* I. surnamed *Cœur de Lion*, King of *England*, and D. of *Normandy*, Son of *Henry* the second.
- 1199 14 *John* the Brother of *Richard*, King of *England*, and D. of *Normandy*, outed of his Estates in *France*, by King *Philip Augustus*, An. 1202, before whom he was accused of the Murder of his Nephew *Arthur*, found dead in the Ditches of the Castle of *Rouen*, where he was imprisoned; but entered *causa inaudita*, for his not appearing. After this, *Normandy* still remained united to the Crown of *France*, (the title only being born by *John* de *Valois*, afterwards King, and *Charles* the fifth, during the life-time of his Father) till the Conquest of it by the Valour of King *Henry* the fifth, Anno 1420, which was 218 years after it had been seized on by King *Philip Augustus*, and having been holden by the *English* but 30 years, was lost again, An. 1450, in the unfortunate reign of King *Henry* the sixth. Never since that, dismembered from the Crown of *France*; having that *Lewis* the eleventh, the better to content the Confederate Princes, conferred it, in Appenage, on his Brother *Charles* Duke of *Berry*, An. 1465; but within two Months after, took it from him again, and gave him in exchange for it, the Dukedom of *Guyenne*, which lay further off from his Associates.

What

What the Revenues of this Dukedom were in former times, I can hardly say. That they were very fair, and great, appears by that which is affirmed by *Philip de Comines*; who faith, that he had seen raised in *Normandy*, 95000 *l.* sterling money; which was a vast sum of money in those times. As also by this testimony of the D. of *Burgundy*, who held King *Lewis* the eleventh to be weakened a whole third part in his Estate, by giving *Normandy* in portion to the D. of *Berry*. Now they amount unto as much as the Kings *Treasures* and *Toll-masters* are pleased to draw out of it.

The Arms of *Normandy* were *Gules*, two *Leopards* Or, which with the fingle *Leopard*, or *Lyon*, being added for the *Dutchy* of *Aquitain*, make the Arms of *England*.

## 5. BRETAGNE.

*BRETAGNE* is bounded on the East with *Normandy*, and the County of *Maine*; on the South with *Artois*, and *Poitou*; on all other parts with the *English* or *Gallick* Ocean. Watered upon the South-side with the *Loir*, which divides it from *Artois*; but so, as part of this Dukedom, called the County of *Raiz*, lieth on the South-side of that River, betwixt it and *Poitou*.

It was first called *Armorica*, from its situation on the Sea, as the word importeth in the old Language of that People. But how it came by this new name, is not well agreed on. The general opinion is, That it took this name from the neighbouring *Britons*, brought over hither by the Tyrant *Maximus*, rebelling against the Emperor *Gratian*, Anno 389, by whom this Province was subdued; and from them named *Britannia Minor*, Little *Britain*. An Argument whereof may be, that the Language of this people hath still no small affinity with the *Welsh* or *British*; there being a Tradition also, that the *Britons* who first came over hither, and married the Women of this Country, cut out their Tongues, for fear they should corrupt the Language of their Posterity. And to this Conquest by the *Britons*, these old Verses give this further countenance.

Vicit Atremoricas animas Britannia gentes,  
Et dedit imperio, nomina prisca, jugo.

That is to say,

Gaul-*Armorick*, the *Britains* overcame,  
And to the conquered Province gave their name.

Notwithstanding, the most probable opinion seemeth to be, That it took this name from the *Britains*, an old *Gallick* people, mentioned by *Pliny* in *Gaul-Belgica*; retiring hither on the Invasions and Incursions of the Barbarous Nations; though possibly those *Britains* of *Gallia-Belgica*, might be as well some Colony of the *Island-Britains*, as the *Belge*, a great Nation in the Isle of *Britain*, are said to have been a people of *Gallia-Belgica*. The reason is, because there was no Author before *Geffrey of Monmouth*, who takes notice of this transporting of the *Island-Britains*, by the Tyrant *Maximus*; no ancient Author, Greek or Latin, making mention of it. And for the *Welsh* or *British* words, which are still remaining in the Language, they are conceived to be of no other than a remainder of the old *Gallick* Tongue, which was originally the same with the ancient *British*, as is elsewhere proved.

The Province is in compass 200 French Leagues, pleas-

ant and fruitful; beautified with many shady Woods; and spacious Downs; sufficiently well stored with all manner of Grain; but delitute of Wine and the choicest Fruits, by reason of the Northernly situation of it. Divided commonly into *Haut* or *High Bretagne*, and *Bess* or *Low Bretagne*: the first containing the more Eastern, and the last the Western parts hereof. Neither of the two much furnished with navigable or notable Rivers: the defect of which, the Neighborhood of the Sea supplieth, affording more capacious Havens; and convenient Ports, than any one Province in this Kingdom.

To begin therefore with the Havens: those of most note in the *Higher Bretagne*, are 1. *S. Malo*, built on a Rock within the Sea, wherewith at every high-water it is encompassed. A Bishops-See, and a Port very much frequented by the *French* and *Spanish*, who use here to barter their Commodities; oftentimes spoiled by the *English*, in the Wars with *France*, especially since the time of *K. Henry* the seventh. 2. *Blauet*, a safe, but little Haven, on the mouth of a little River of the same name also. Impregably fortified by the *Spaniards*, An. 1590; when taking opportunity of the broil in *France*, and pretending a good title to this Dukedom, on the expiring of the Male-Issue of King *Henry* the second, he thought by this door to have entered on the whole Estate; but quitted it again on the general Peace made between the Crowns. 3. *S. Brieux*, (by the Latin called *Pannu Sancti Brieux*) a Bishops-See, and a well traded Port, seated upon the *English* Channel. 4. *Pannet*, a Bishops-See also, situate on a spacious Bay, at the mouth of the *Vilain*; the chief Town of the *Veneti*, whom *Cesar* placeth in this Tract, and makes them to be the mightiest people of all the *Armoricans*; strongest in shipping, and best seen in Affairs at Sea. 5. *Craffie*, a little Haven at the mouth of the *Loir*, and the only Haven of this part on the *Gallick* Ocean. Then in *Low Bretagne*, or the more Western parts thereof, there is, 6. *Brest*, seated upon a spacious Bay of the Western Ocean: the Key and Bulwark of this Country, and the goodliest Harbor of all *France*. 7. *Morlaix*, a convenient Port, and well frequented. 8. *S. Pol de Leon*, and 9. *Triguin*, both Bishops-Sees, both situate on the Sea-shore, and both the chief Towns of the *Offism*, whom *Plutony* and *Strabo* place upon this Coast: the first of them neighbored by the *Promontory*, which they call *Le Four*, the *Gouven* of *Plutony*. 10. *Kemper Corentin*, a Bishops-See also, the chief Town of that part hereof which is called *Cornuwall*, (and called so for the same reason as *Cornwall* in *England* is) (situate not far from the *Foreland*, which they call *Pennmarc*, opposite to *Le Four*, spoken of before. A Sea-Town this, but not much talked of for the Haven, for ought I can find. 11. *Conquet*, a well frequented Road, not far from *Brest*. Chief places in the Midlands, 1. *Nanter*, the principal City of the *Nannetes*, (by *Plutony* called *Conduincium*) a large, fair, strong, and populous City, seated upon the *Loir*, a Bishops-See, and the Metropolis of *Bretagne*. 2. *Rene*, anciently the chief Town of the *Rhedones*, (called *Condate* by *Plutony*) now a Bishops-See, and the Parliament City for this Country, established here, An. 1553, which maketh it very populous, and of great resort, though not fully two miles in compass. 3. *Det*, an Episcopical-City also, but unwisely seated amongst Marishes. 4. *Dinan*, a rich and pleasant Town on the River *Nance*. 5. *L'Amblee*, the chief Town of the *Ambiliars*, spoken of by *Cesar*. 6. *Rohan*, the title and inheritance of the Dukes of *Rohan*, descended from a branch of the Ducal Family of *Bretagne*, by *Mary* the second Daughter of Duke *Francis* the first, and Wife of *John*, then Viscount of *Rohan*. 7. *Anstet*, the chief Seat of the now Duke of *Vendisme*, and





the French Kings Cellar by especial *Edict*. The City very pleasant, seated on the River *Loyre*, well built, situated in a sweet Air, and planted with a Civil and ingenious People; who are said to speak the best Language of any in France. For a time it was the chief Seat of a distinct Kingdom, (according to the provident humour of the *Merovingians*) the Lot of *Clodomir* Son of *Clotaire* the Great, and of *Gunttram* Son of *Clotaire*, both Kings of *Orleans*; as also was *Theodorick*, the second Son of *Childbert* King of *Metz*, on the death of *Gunttram*. But *Sigibert* his Son being vanquished by *Clotaire II.* this Kingdom extending to the shores of the *Aquitain* Ocean, was added unto that of France. *Orleans* being at that time, content with the lower Title, had of late oftentimes with greater prudence, been made the honourary Title of the second Sons of France, called Dukes heretofore, the first who had the Title, being *Philip II.* Son of *Philip de Valois* from a wife Son of whose, the Earls of *Dunois*, and Dukes of *Langeulle* do derive themselves, and *Lewis* the second Son of *Charley I.* Grand-father of *Lewis XI.* French King. It is See *Epi-fopul*, a Balivick, or *Siege Presidial*, and an University. The See *Epi-fopul* founded in the Church of *St. Croix*, miserably ruined by the *Hugonots* in the Civil Wars, out of meer hatred to the name. The *Siege Presidial* settled here by King *Henry II.* 1557. for the ease of his Subjects of these parts, in sutes not worth the troubling of the Courts of *Paris*. The University erected by King *Philip le bel*, Anno 1312, though, to speak properly, it be an Hall only for the reading of the Civil Laws, the only Learning there professed, and for that considerable. A Town now not of so great strength as in former times, when for some months it held out against the whole Power of the *English*, rescued from them at last by the valour of *Joan the Virgin*, whose *Statue* (like a man of Arms) is still preserved on the Bridge-gate of this City; near which great *Montacute* Earl of *Salisbury* had his fatal blow.

THE MIDDLE or intermediate *BEAUSSE* lieth betwixt the former; in which the places of chief note are, 1. *Blais*, seated also on the *Loir*, in a sound Air, and fruitful Country; the Nursery for the most part of the Kings Children, for that cause much resorted to by the Nobility, and honoured sometimes with the residence of the Kings themselves: it being in the Council Chamber of the Kings House here, that *Henry of Lorreine*, Duke of *Guise*, the chief contriver of the terrible *Massacre* at *Paris*, and Author of the *Holy League*, was slain by the command of King *Henry III.* Anno 1589. 2. *Chateaudun*, the chief Town of the Earldom of *Dunois*, (the honour and Estate of *John Earl of Dunois*, commonly called the *Bastard of Orleans*, one of the best Soldiers of his time, and so approved by his exploits against the *English*) mounted upon the top of an high Hill, at the confluence of the *Loir*, and *Agre*. 3. *Lavardin*, most remarkable for giving name and honour to a noble Family, which depending upon the House of *Vendôme* (to the *Signeury* whereof it doth belong) brought forth that valiant Commander, *Montfieur de Tardis*, a faithful and courageous Follower of King *Henry IV.* in his long War against the *Leaguers*. 4. *Vendôme*, *Vindocinnum* in *Latine*, the chief Town of the Dukedom of *Vendôme*; not otherwise of note than for the Earls and Dukes which have born this Title; of which as being the Progenitors of the Kings now regnant, I have thought fit to add the ensuing Catalogue; premising first, that this Earldom came to the House of France by the marriage of *Katharine* daughter and heir of *John*, the last Earl of the former Race, to *John I.* the first of the other Family.

#### Earls and Dukes of Vendôme.

- 1386 1. *John of Bourbon*, Grandchild of *Lewis I.* Duke of *Bourbon*, the first Earl of *Vendôme* of this Family.
- 1432 2. *Lewis of Bourbon*, a confederate with *Joan the Virgin* in her actions against the *English*.
- 1446 3. *John of Bourbon II.* from whom descended the Princes of *Roce-Survon*, and the Dukes of *Montpensier*.
- 1472 4. *Francis of Bourbon*.
- 1495 5. *Charles of Bourbon*, the first Duke of *Vendôme*, from whose youngest Son, called *Lodovick* or *Lewis*, descend the now Princes of *Cande*, and Earls of *Saillon*.
- 1532 6. *Antony of Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendôme*, and King of *Navarre*.
- 1562 7. *Henry of Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendôme*, and King of *Navarre*; afterwards King of France also, by the name of *Henry IV.*
8. *Cesar de Vendôme*, of the Sons of *Henry IV.* by the Dutchess of *Beaufort*, created by his Father Duke of *Vendôme*, and once designed his Successor in the Crown of France. Afterwards by the procurement of the King his Father, married to the Daughter and Heir of *Philip Emmanuel*, Duke of *Mercoeur*, (a younger branch of the House of *Lorreine*) possessed of a fair and goodly Estate in the Dukedom of *Bretagne*, in the right of his Wife, a Daughter and Heir of the House of *Mariignis* (a branch of the Family of those Dukes). By means whereof the Duke of *Vendôme* hath not only a large inheritance, but great authority in that Country.

The Arms of the Earls and Dukes of *Vendôme*, were and are, *Azure*, six Flower de Lys, Or, 3, 2, 1. Those of the former Family affirmed by *Barro*, to have been *France*, on a Bond *Gules*, three Lions, Or. But the great Lords of this Country, were the Earls of *Blais*, possessed not only of the Earldom of *Chambray* (a fair and goodly Signeury) in the highest *Barfief*, but also of the whole County of *Tourain*, a better Patrimony and Estate than that, which how they were alienated from those, we have seen before. And as for the Earldom of *Blais* it self, it contained a large and gallant Patrimony in the middle *Barfief*, thereto belonging; which being after sold to the Dukes of *Orleans*, gave the first greatness to that House. As for the Earls of *Blais* themselves, they fetch their Pedigree from one *Gerlon* a noble Dane (Companion in Arms unto *Rollo* the first Duke of *Normandy*) in his acquiring of that Dukedom, by *Charles the Simple*, created the first Earl heretofore, Anno 920, or thereabouts, branching it self into the Houses of *Blais* and *Champagne*; sometimes united in one person, but for the most part, and at last divided into two great Families; *Stephen* King of *England*, commonly called *Stephen* of *Blais*, derived both his name and Parentage from the Earls of this House, (as being Son of *Theobald*, the fifth Earl of *Blais*, by *Maud* one of the Daughters of *William* Duke of *Normandy* and King of *England*, furnished the Conquerour. From this *Theobald* the Earls of *Blais* continued in the Maleline Line, till the year 1219, under nine Princes in the first, of the House of *Gerlon*. And then it fell by the Heirs general, to the noble Family of *Chastillon*, continuing thence till the year 1391, when sold by *Guy de Chastillon*, the last Earl of that House, to *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, he being then Childless, and wholly governed by his Wife (a Daughter of the House of *Navarre*) who could not otherwise maintain her great prodigality, but by ready money. United finally to the Crown, by *Lewis*

*Lewis* the Grandson of this *Lewis*, on his succession to the Kingdom after *Charles VIII.*  
The Arms of these great Earls were *Gules*, three Palis, *Vaire*, a Chief, Or.

## 8. NIVERNONIS.

NIVERNONIS is bounded on the North, with the *Beaufort*, on the South, with *Barbaronia*, on the East, with *Champagne*; and on the West, with *Berry*; so called from *Nivernum*, or *Nevers*, the chief Town thereof.

This is the smallest Province in all this Continent, but to be handled here apart, because not easily reducible unto any other, as all the rest of the lesser Provinces may be. The Soil not very fruitful of Corn or Wine, but plentifully stored with rich Pastures, and well bedded with Woods, in which are found some Mines of Iron, interperfed with Silver, and many Quarries of good Stone, of much use for building. The Territory being but small, we cannot look for many Towns of note and consequence. Of those that be, the principal are, 1. *Pontigny*, remarkable for an ancient Abbey, the burial-place of some of the old Earls of *Nevers*. 2. *Nevers* it self, upon the *Loire*, beautified with a Bridge of twenty Arches, but otherwise not great or fair, though the chief of this small Country, and the seat of the Dukes. The reputation which it hath, proceeding specially from the Antiquity thereof, and the Earls and Dukes from thence denominated.

Once part of the *Burgundian* Conquests, and from them won by the French; it came to have Princes of its own almost as early as any other Country in the Realm of France. Who was the first that had the Title of Earl of *Nevers*, and therewithal the Lordship of this Estate, I can no where find; but thus I am, that in the year 1001, both the Estate and Title were enjoyed by *Ludovic* a Nobleman of the *Burgundian* Race, who on the death of *Henry IV.* Duke of *Burgundy*, was like to have seized on that Estate, in despite of *Robert* King of France, who pretended to it, passing through many Families, it came at last to the House of *Burgundy*, in the person of *Odo*, the Son of *Hugh* the fourth of that name, Duke of *Burgundy*, by the Heir-General of *Nevers*; and from that to the House of *Flanders*, by the marriage of *Toland*, or *Burgundy*, to *Robert of Bethune*, Earl of *Flanders*, 1512, whole Son, named *Lewis*, married the Heir of *Rebail*; uniting, by that marriage, these Estates under his command. Together with the rest of the Rights of *Flanders*, it came again, by marriage, to *Philip the Hardy*, Duke of *Burgundy*; who with the liking and consent of his elder Sons, (otherwise well provided for) conferred both it and *Rebail*, on his third Son *Philip*, whose Necece *Elizabeth*, Daughter and Heir of *John* of *Burgundy*, brought it in marriage to *Adolph* of *Cleve*, her Husband, Anno 1484. In the Person of *Francis*, the fourth Earl of this House, it was made a Dukedom; and by his Daughter *Henrietta*, Sister and Heir of *Francis* the last Prince of this Family, was brought in Dowry to *Lewis de Gonzaga*, second Son of *Fredrick* Duke of *Mantua*, Anno 1563; whose Son *Charles* succeeded his Father and Mother in the Dukedom of *Nevers*, and Father of *Gonzaga*, his Cousin German, in the Dukedom of *Mantua*. And here it is to be observed, that though this Estate hath passed through so many Families; yet the Rights and Regalities thereof, have been still continued; not being hitherto reduced (for ought that I can find) under any of the Parliaments of France, as all the rest of that Kingdom

is, but each parts thereof as are either under other Princes, or else enjoy the Privileges of a free Estate.  
The Arms heretofore are, *Azure*, within a Border *Compos*, *Gules*, and *Argent*, three Flowers de Lys, Or.

## 9. THE DUKEDOM OF BOURBON.

THE DUKEDOM OF BOURBON, in the full power, and extent thereof, comprehended *Bohemania*, *Artois*, *Beau-jolois*, and *Amoygne*; all now reverted to the Crown.

1. BOURBONIS hath on the East, the Dukedom of *Burgundy*; on the West, *Berry*; on the North, *Nivernois*, and a Corner of *Gallinais*; on the South, *Auvergne*; so called from *Bourbon*, (for distinction sake, called *Bourbon Archenbault*) the chief Town thereof. The Country very well Wooded, and of excellent Pasturage; which makes the people more intent to grazing and feeding Cattel, than they are to Tillage; and is watered with the Rivers of *Loire*, *Tonne*, and *Allier*, which are counted navigable; besides *Aron*, *Acolis*, *Lixentes*, *Lambos*, and some lesser streams.

It is divided into the Higher and Lower: in the Higher which is more mountainous and hilly, there is no other Town of Note than that of *Montaigne*, situate in the Country of *Combraille*; the Signeury, as I take it, of *Michael de Montaigne*, the Author of the Book of *Essays*. But in the Lower *Bourbonois*, are, 1. *Molins*, esteemed the Center of all France; situate on the *Allier*, a *Ballage*, and the chief Town of this Country; the River yielding great plenty of Fish, but of *Salmons* specially; the Town adorned with a fair Castle, and that beautified with one of the finest Gardens in France, in which are many trees of Lemmons and Oranges. 2. *Bourbon Archenbault*, and 3. *Bourbon Ancien*; the former of the two, seated upon the *Loir*, and giving name to the whole Province; of great resort by reason of its Medicinal waters. 4. *St. Porcin*, and 5. *Varennes* *Genat*, upon the Frontiers of *Auvergne*, 6. *Chancellie*, 7. *Charraux*, 8. *Palisse*, 9. *Sourguin*, 10. *Amand*.

The ancient Inhabitants were part of the *Hedui*, who being wasted in their Wars against the *Romans*, a great part of their Country was by *Julius Caesar*, conferred on the *Boii*, a German Nation, who coming with the *Helvetians* into *Gaul*, and unwilling upon their defeat to go home again, were by him planted in this Tract, at the request of the *Hedui*, who desired it of him; and possibly the *Hedui* might be willing to have these *Boii* dwell amongst them, not only to fill up their numbers, and manure the waste Grounds of their Country; but in regard of some nearer tie that was between them: it being conceived by many Learned men, that these *Boii*, which together with these *Commanni*, *Senones*, and other *Gallick* Nations, crossed over the *Alpes*, had been originally of these parts: and being driven out of Italy by the conquering *Romans*, fell into Germany, and from thence lent those Auxiliaries to attend the *Helvetians* in their journey, spoken of before. Made subject to the *Romans*, with the rest of *Gallia*; and by them reckoned as a part of *Aquitania*: it continued under their command, till the coming of the *Burgundians*, by whom it was subdued, and made a part of their Kingdom; in the subverting of which Kingdom, it was (together with *Beau-jolois*) subdued by the more powerful *Franks*; and how disposed of afterwards, we shall see anon, having first taken a view of the other Provinces.

2. **FORRETT**, is bounded on the East, with *Beaujolois*; on the West, with *Auvergne*; on the North, with *Bourbonnais*; and on the South with a part of *Langue-doc*. The Country populous and large, but not very fruitful; hilly and mountainous, much of the nature of the Wood-lands. The Air a little of the coldest to afford good Wines; but is sufficiently recompensed by abundance of Pit coal; by which they have very good fires at a cheap rate. The people are conceived to be none of the wildest, but withal, very greedy and covetous of gain.

The chief Towns in it, are, 1. *Mont-brison*, seated on the *Loire*. 2. *Fours*, seated on the same River, called anciently, *Forum Segesfanorum*, the chief Town of the *Segesfani*, or *Secusfani*, whom *Cæsar* and others mention in this part of *Gaul*. 3. *St. Stephen*, (or *Estienne*) in *Ferrand*, near the head of that River. 4. *St. German*, 5. *St. Rimbey*, 6. *St. Bennet le Chateau*, 7. *St. Guernier*, &c. of which little memorable.

This Country of *Forrest* was anciently a part of the Earldom of *Lyons*; dismembered from it at or about the same time with *Beaujolois*; and was held by a long succession of Earls Proprietaries of it, as a State distinct, till *Regnaud*, Lord of *Forrest*, the Son of Earl *Guy*, by the marriage of *Isabel*, Daughter and Heir of *Humbert* Earl of *Beau-jeu*, joined them both together; which was about the year 1265; parted again after his decease, An. 1280. *Guy* being his eldest Son, succeeding in *Forrest*, and *Lewis* his second Son, in *Beau-jeu*. How they became united in the House of *Bourbon*, we shall see anon.

3. *BEAUJOLOIS*, so called from *Beau-jeu*, the chief Town hereof, taketh up the tract of ground betwixt the *Loire* and the *Gasse*; and betwixt *Linnion* and *Forrest*. A Country of no great extent, but very remarkable for the Lords and Princes of it, who have been men of great eminence in their several times. The chief Town of it, is *Beau-jeu*, beautified with a goodly Castle, pleasantly seated on the brow of a rising-mountain, from whence perhaps it took the name; as the great Keep in *Farnham* Castle, was in the same fence, and for the same pleasant situation, called *Joyous Guard*, in the time of *Lancelot du Lake*, whose that Castle was. Which appears further by a Tower built at *Constantinople*, by *Guiscard* the third of that name, Lord hereof, (being then Embassador to the Emperor, from King *Philip Augustus*) with this Inscription, *Turris Belli-jocensis*; which there continued to be seen a long time after. 2. *Belle-ville*, where is an Abbey founded by *Humbert II.* Anno 1158. 3. *Ville Franche*, environed with Walls by *Humbert IV.* whose Son *Guiscard III.* above mentioned, founded here a Convent of *Benedictines*, called to this day, *Mignorette*. 4. *Noirande*, 5. *St. Maurice*, 6. *Uffe*, 7. *Obbeis*, concerning which, there have been long and many Wars betwixt the Earls of *Forrest*, and the Lords of *Beau-jeu*.

This Country, as that other of *Forrest*, was once part of the Earldom of *Lyons*; in the partage of which Estate, it fell to *Osprey*, one of the Brothers of Earl *Artand*, Anno 989, whose Successors had no other Title than Lords of *Beau-jeu*. They were most of them men of great Piety, Founders of many Collegiate and Conventual Churches; some of them men of action also: *Humbert* the second, and the fifth, Adventurers in the Wars of the *Holy Land*; *Richard II.* in those against the *English*; *Guiscard IV.* made Constable of France, by King *Lewis IX.* But the House failing in this *Guiscard*, it was united unto that of the Earls of *Forrest*, as before is said, in the person of *Regnaud*, Earl thereof, whose Son and Successor, called

*Lewis* was also Constable of France; as *Edward*, the Grandchild in this *Lewis*, a Marshal of it. But at the last it fell into the hands of a Jew and wicked Prince, *Edward II.* who being imprisoned at *Paris* for his great Offences, and overlaid with Wars by the Dukes of *Savoy*, made a Donation, or Free-gift, of all his Signeuries, to *Lewis* Duke of *Bourbon*, turnamed the Good; the direct Heir of *Guy* Earl of *Forrest*, the eldest Son of *Regnaud* Earl of *Forrest*, the Lord of *Beau-jeu* above mentioned, and consequently of next kin to him An. 1400.

4. *AUVERGNE* hath on the East, *Forrest*, and *Lyons*; on the West, *Limousin*, *Perigord*, and *Quercy*; on the South, part of *Langue-doc*; and on the North, *Berry*, and *Bourbonnais*. It is divided into the *Higher* and *Lower*. The Lower being called *Limaigne*, is fruitful in a very eminent degree. The *Higher*, mountainous and barren. In this last, the Towns of chief note are, 1. *St. Flour*, a Bishops See of an impregnable situation. 2. *Arles*, on the River *Jourdain*, defended with a strong Castle on the top of a Rock. 3. *Beaugard*, on the River *Gardon*. 4. *Carlat*, 5. *Murat*, 6. *Ellon*, of which little observable in ancient stories. In the Lower, called *Limaigne*, from a River of that name which falls into the *Allier*: there is, 1. *Clermont*, a Bishops See, fair and pleasing for the situation, and Fountains descending from the Hills of the higher *Auvergne*, the chief City of the whole Province. Most memorable in these latter Ages, for the Council here called by Pope *Urban II.* Anno 1067, in which by the Article of the Pope, the Christian Princes of the West engaged themselves in the Wars of the *Holy Land*; giving thereby the better opportunity to the Popes to enlarge both their Territories and their Power. It was first raised out of the ruins of *Gergovia*, the head City of the *Auvergne*, in the time of *Cæsar*; and the Seat-royal of *Vercingetorix*, King of that Nation, who so long put him to his trumps with the Army of 138000 men: now a small Village called *Gergon*. 2. *Rion*, in which resides the Seneschal, or chief Governor of the Lower *Auvergne*. 3. *Montpensier*, of great note for the Princes of the House of *Bourbon*, once Dukes hereof; beginning in *Lewis* the first Earl, Son of *John* Duke of *Bourbon*, An. 1415; and ending in *Henry* the last Duke; whose Daughter and Heir was married to the Duke of *Orleans* Brother of *Lewis XIII.* 4. *Montfaucon*, 5. *Uffois*, 6. *Brionde*, 7. *Aiguacresse*, 8. *Tyronne*, the ancient Seat and Patrimony of the *De La Tour*, heretofore Earls of *Boulogne*, now Sovereigns of *Sedan*, and Dukes of *Beaulieu*; to whom it hath for some Ages given, the Title of *Vicomit*. A Family descended from the Heirs general of *Eustace*, Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardy*, Father to *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorraine*, and King of *Jerusalem*.

The Country first inhabited in the times of the *Romans*, by the potent Nation of the *Auverni*; whose King *Bittius*, was taken Prisoner, and led in triumph unto *Rome*, in the War against the *Salii*, the *Allobroges*, and other of their Confederates. Not fully conquered, till *Cæsar* had subdued their King *Vercingetorix*. They were afterwards part of the Province of *Aquitania prima*; retaining, in the olden changes of the Empire, its old name of *Auvergne*. Heretofore part of the great Duchy of *Aquitain*; remaining subject to those Dukes, till *William* the eighth Duke, and the fourth of that name, gave it in portion with one of his Daughters, whose name I find not, nor the name of her Husband neither; of whom there is nothing on record, but that he took up Arms against *Lewis VI.* who began his Reign, Anno 1110. By the Heir-general of this House, it was conveyed in marriage to *John* the second Son of *Guigut*

*Guigut IV.* and *Beatrice*, Dauphin of *Viennois*, in whose Line it continued under the title of the Dauphins of *Auvergne* till *Berard*, the last Earl or Dauphin of it. Who having married the Heir of *Guy* Earl of *Forrest*, the Son of *Regnaud* above-mentioned, had by her a daughter named *Anne*, Heir of both Estates, married to *Lewis* the Good, the third Duke of *Bourbon*; to whom *Edward* the last Lord of *Beau-jeu*, made a Donation or surrender of that Signeury also, uniting in his person the distinct Estates of *Bourbon*, *Beau-jeu*, *Forrest*, and *Auvergne*.

And as for *Bourbonnais* it self, in the distractions of the French Empire by the policy of *Charles* the Great, who most improvidently Cantoned it into many great Estates, and petit Signeuries, it fell unto the share of the potent Family of the *Dampierre*, descended from the ancient House of *Burgogne*; who held it till the year 1308. At what time *Lewis IX.* for the advancement of *Robert* Earl of *Clermont* (in *Francoisus*) his fifth Son, married him to *Beatrice*, Daughter and Heir of *Archebald* *Dampierre*, the last of that House. *Lewis* the Son of this *Robert*, was the first Duke of this Line; whose Successors and their Achievements, follow in this Catalogue of

#### The Lords and Dukes of Bourbon.

- 1308 1. *Robert*, Son of King *Lewis IX.* Earl of *Clermont*; the first Lord of *Bourbon* of the House of France.
- 1317 2. *Lewis*, the first Duke of *Bourbon*, Peer, and Chamberlain of France; from whose second Son *Jaque*, comes the House of *Feudisme*.
- 1341 3. *Peter*, Peer, and Chamberlain; slain in the Battle of *Poitiers*, An. 1356.
- 1356 4. *Lewis II.* called the Good; in whose person all these Estates were first united: Peer, and Chamberlain of France, and Governor of *Charles VI.*
- 1410 5. *John*, Peer, and Chamberlain; taken Prisoner at the Battle of *Agincourt*, and died in England: the Root of the Family of *Montpensier*.
- 1434 6. *Charles*, Peer, and Chamberlain; General of the Army against the *English*, in the Isle of France.
- 1456 7. *John II.* Peer, Chamberlain, and Constable of France.
- 1487 8. *Peter II.* Brother of *John*, Peer, Chamberlain, and Regent of France, in the absence of *Charles VIII.*
- 1503 9. *Charles* Earl of *Montpensier*, Duke of *Bourbon* in the right of *Sofian* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Peter* the second, Duke of *Bourbon*. After whose death, being slain at the sack of *Rome*, An. 1527, without Issue, his Estate fell unto the Crown; and so continued till by the Sentence of Arrest of the Court of Parliament in *Paris*, *Auvergne*, *Forrest*, and *Beau-jeu*, were adjudged to *Madam Louise*, Mother of *Lewis* the first Duke of *Montpensier*, and Daughter and Heir of *Gilbert* Duke of *Bourbon*, Earl of *Montpensier*, the Nephew of *John* Duke of *Bourbon*, (the first of that name) of which House she was the only surviving Heir; from whence descended *Henry*, the last Duke of that Family, spoken of before. And for the title of *Auvergne*, it was used customarily, by the eldest Sons of the Earls and Dukes of *Montpensier*; till given to *Charles*, natural Son of King *Charles IX.* called from hence, the Count or Earl of *Auvergne*; who being a Confederate of *Charles* Duke of *Biron*, was in the year 1604. made Prisoner by King

*Henry IV.* released by King *Lewis XIII.* Anno 1616. and within two years after made Duke of *Angoulême*: in whose Pottery it remaineth.

The Arms of these Dukes were, 1. France, a Bastion, *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Bourbon*. 2. Or, a Dauphin *Palmé*, *Azure*, for the County of *Auvergne*. 3. Or, a Lion *Sable*, armed *Gules*, under a Label of five pieces of the same, for the Signeury of *Beau-jeu*. The Arms of the Earldom of *Forrest*, I am yet to seek. But anciently, the Arms of *Bourbon*, when under the *Dampierres*, were Or, a Lion Rampant *Gules*, environed with Cockle shells of *Azure*.

#### 10. BERRIE.

HAVING thus taken a view of those several Provinces which (except *Bretagne*) were the first purchases of the French in the modern France; and so much of the *Burgundian* Conquests, as were either laid to the Kingdom of West-France, or else were necessarily to be paid over in the course of our Journey: let us next look on those which were possessed by the *Gules*. And first we will begin with *BERRIE*, (as next in situation with those before described) bounded on the East, with *Bourbonnais* and *Nivernais*; on the West, with *Poitou*; and on the South with *Limousin*; in *Lainie* called *Bismurgen regio*, from the *Bismurges*, the old Inhabitants of this Tract; by *Pliny*, *Strabo*, and some others, called the *Bismurgeni Cabi*, to difference them from the *Bismurges Obisii*, dwelling about *Bardoneus*.

The Country watered in the East with the River *Loire*; in the South, with the *Fage*; in the North, with the *Chers*; and in the Island parts, with *Indre*, *Arnon*, *Thos*, *Eure*, and others which we shall meet withal anon: of no great note, but such as much conduce to the fruitfulness of it: affording it the benefit of fair Pastures and flourishing Meadows; which breed great multitudes of Cattel, and such flocks of Sheep, that when they tax a man for lying in excess of numbers, they use to say, *Eye, Sir, there are not so many sheep in Berrie*.

It containeth in it 33 Walked Towns; the chief whereof are, 1. *Bourges*, a Town of great strength by Nature, and as well fortified by Art, situate in a low Flat, amongst deep impassable Bogs and Marshes, caused by the overflowing of the *Auron*, *Tenre*, *Malon*, and *Auronne*; small Rivers, but of great waters when they meet together: by means whereof, it may be easily drowned at the approach of an Enemy: for that cause made the *Fairfairs* and Retreat of *Charles VII.* in his long Wars against the *English*, possessed at that time of *Paris*, and the greatest part of the Kingdom. The poor Prince in the mean time fain to feed it here with a Rump of Mutton, and a Chick, and that but upon high days neither. From his constant abode here, and that withal he had been Duke of his Country, in the life of his three elder Brethren, by the *English* in derision called King of *Berie*. A large, fair, and rich Town it is, the Seat of an Arch-bishop: a Siege-proof, and one of the best Universities in France, especially for the study of the Civil-Laws; first founded by King *Lewis IX.* and afterwards restored and perfected by *Charles* Duke of *Berie*, the Brother of King *Lewis XI.* Some Fabulous Founders, and Ridiculous Originations, have been thought of for it; as that it was built by *Ogyges*, a Grandchild of *Noah*; by whom called *Byoggers*; which in the corruption of the follow-



ing times, came (forsooth) unto *Bituriges*; which Etymology, were it as dear bought, as it is far fetch'd, might be good for Ladies; and then it would be good for some what. Others, no less absurdly, will have it called *Bituris*, quasi *Biturris*, from two fair Towers which formerly (as they pretend) were erected here: one of the two, in part, still standing: and unto this, they say, aludeth an old *Grammarians*, thus:

*Turris à binis, inde vocor Bituris.*

From two Towers which were builded here,  
The name of *Bituris* I bear.

But the truth is, it was thus called from the *Bituriges*, (the *Bituricum Civitas* of *Antoninus*) and by that name, in the division of old *Gaul* by the Emperor *Constantine*, made the Metropolis of the Province of *Aquitania prima*: of which this Country was a part. 2. *Warron*, or *Viarzon*, pleasantly seated amongst Woods, Vines, and Rivers; the Rivers *Arnon*, *Theu*, *Cher*, and *Yonne*, meeting hereabouts, built in or near the place of the old *Avanienum*, a Town of great note and strength in the time of *Cæsar*: the revolt whereof gave such a check to his proceedings, that he was fain to stretch his wits and valour on the very tenter-hooks, before it was again recovered. 3. *Conserfont*, on the River *Sauldre*, beautified with a strong and magnificent Castle. 4. *Château-Roux*, on the River *Indre*: of which little memorable. 5. *Issoudun*, on the River *Theu*, the Balliage for that part of the Country. 6. *Montfaucon*, an ancient Barony. 7. *Argentan*, on the River *Creuse*, the Title and Estate of *Philip de Comines*, hence called *Signeur de Argenton*, who writ the History of France under *Lewis XI.* in which he dived so far into, and went too largely of, the greatest affairs of State, that Queen *Katharine de Medicis* used to say, That he had made as many Heresies in State Policy, as Luther had done in Religion. 8. *Sancerre*, seated on a high Hill near the River *Loire*; by some *Latine* Writers called *Xantodorum*; but more generally said to be so called, quasi *facrum Cæcis*, from the Goddess *Ceres*, herein worshipped in the times of *Gentilism*. A Town of great consequence and strength; and as such, assigned over to the *Hugonots*, An. 1569. as a Town of Caution for their security, and the better keeping of the Articles of Peace then agreed upon. Famous not long after, for enduring a most desperate and tedious siege under *Charles IX.* by whom those Articles were almost no sooner made than broken. Before which time, it was not under the command of the French Kings, but under the direct Dominion of its own Princes, called the Earls of *Sancerre*, who had the Sovereignty thereof: but being taken by the Kings Forces upon this occasion, An. 1572. and the Walls thrown down, a Garrison was put into the Castle, to keep it for the time to come at the Kings devotion, the Rents and Profits of it still remaining to the true Proprietaries.

Here is also in this Province, the Town and Seigneurie of *Aubigny*, adorned with many Privileges an ample Territory, and a beautiful Castle. Befowed by *Charles VI.* on *Robert*, the second Son of *Alan Stewart*, Earl of *Lennox* in Scotland, for his many signal Services against the English; and is still the honourary Title and Possession of the second branch of that Noble and illustrious Family, hence called by the name of Lords of *Aubigny*.

But as for *Berry* it self, and the Fortunes of it, we may please to know, that the old Inhabitants of it, were the *Bituriges Cubi*, (or the *Fiterges Liberi*, as some Writers call them) subdued, but not without great diffi-

culty, by the matchless *Cæsar*: in the first division of *Gallia*, made part of *Aquitain*; and in the new-moulding of that Province, by the Emperor *Constantine*, a part of *Aquitania prima*, won from the Romans by the *Goths*, and from them by the French, it was for long time under the command of Provincial-Governours, one of which, called by the name of *Godfrey*, obtained that dignity from *Hugh Capet*; and his Posterity enjoyed that Office under the Kings of France, till the days of King *Henry I.* of whom the Inheritance and Estate was bought by *Harpin*, one of the defendants of that *Godfrey*. But long he had not held it as Proprietary, in his own right; when desirous to make one in the Holy Wars, he sold it back again to King *Philip I.* (the better to furnish himself for that Expedition) An. 1096. to be united to the Crown after his decease. Since which time, the Sovereignty of it hath been always in the Crown of France; but the Possession and Revenue sometimes given, with the Title of Duke, for a portion to some of the Kings younger Sons; to be holden of them in *Apanage*, under the Sovereignty and Command of the Donors, and his Successors. The first of those that held this title was *John*, a younger Son of *John King of France*, and Uncle unto *Charles VI.* during whose Reign, betwixt this Duke and those of *Burgundy and Orleans*, the Realm of France was miserably distracted into Broils and Factions. The second was another *John*, Son of *Charles VI.* who dying in his minority, was succeeded in this Title by his Brother *Charles*, Successor to his Father in the Crown it self. The fourth and last, (for it had no more than four Dukes in all) was *Charles*, the youngest Son of King *Charles VII.* who siding with the Earl of *Charolais*, did so much trouble the Affairs of France under *Lewis XI.* by whom he was made Duke of *Normandy*, and of *Guicenne* afterwards; but held neither long. After whose death, it was united to the Crown; never since separated from it: but though it never had Duke since, it hath had three Dukes; first giving the Title of Dukes to the Lady *Joan*, Daughter of *Lewis XI.* and Wife to *Lewis XII.* then Duke of *Orleans*, created herein by her first Husband; when coming to the Crown he divorced her from him, to make room for the Lady *Anne*, Duchess of *Bretagne*, the Widow of *Charles VIII.* his Predecessor. Conferred after her decease, but on more honourable grounds, by King *Francis I.* on the Lady *Margaret* his Sister, first married to *Charles Duke of Alanson*; and after his decease, to *Henry of Albert*, King of *Navarre*, the last that had this Title, being another *Margaret*, Daughter of the said King *Francis*, married to *Philibert Emmanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*.

## II. POICTOU.

**POICTOU** is bounded on the East, with *Tourain*, *Berry*, and *Limousin*; on the North, with *Bretagne*, and *Anjou*; on the South with *Xaintonge*, a member of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*; and on the West, with the *Aquitain Seas*.

It is called in *Latine*, *Pictavia*, from the *Pictones*, as *Protonius*, *Cæsar*, and some others; or the *Pictavi*, as *Antoninus* calleth them, the old Inhabitants hereof; and is a Country so great and plentiful, that there are numbered in it 1200 Parishes, and three Bishopsricks. A strong argument of the populousness and largeness of it. Besides the goodness of the Soil, it hath many other great helps to enrich it; that is to say, a large

large Sea coast, some capacious Harbours, not a few Navigable Rivers emptying themselves into the Sea: besides the benefit which redounds to it from the *Clin* or *Clavien*, the *Creuse*, and *Vienne*, their Rivers falling into the *Loire*; which also glides along on the North thereof.

The principal Towns and Cities of it are, 1. *Poitiers*, in *Latin Pictavis*, seated upon the *Clin*, or *Clavien*; by *Protonius* called *Augustonorum*: the largest City for compass of ground within the Walls, next to *Paris* it self, but containing in that circuit, Meadows, Corn-fields, and other waste grounds. It is an University, especially for the study of the *Civil-Law*; and a See Episcopal: one of the Bishops hereof being *St. Hilary*, surnamed *Pictavensis*, that renowned Father of the Church, and a stout Champion of the Catholic Faith against the *Arians*, though contumacious in their Heretic by the Emperor *Constantine*. 2. *Sauri*, upon the River *Charente*, near the edge of *Xaintonge*. 3. *Talmont*, upon the shores of the Ocean. 4. *Beaumont*, a Sea-Town also, and a reasonable good Port, near the confines of the *Bretagne*. 5. *Roche-sur-yon*, so called for its situation on the *Ten*, or *Tou*; which gave the title of Prince to one of the Branches of the Royal race of *Bourbon*. 6. *Lusignan*, on the River *Tou*, also denominated the noble Family of *Lusignan*, sometimes Kings of *Hierusalem*, and afterwards of *Cyprus*; which last they had in exchange for the first, by the donation of King *Richard* the first of England. 7. *Lusson*, or *Lusson*, seated upon a Navigable arm of the Sea: sufficiently famous in being the Episcopal See of the renowned Cardinal of *Ribichien*, who so long managed the affairs of France for King *Lewis* the thirteenth. 8. *Maillets*, a Bishops See also. 9. *Thouars*, which gives the title of Duke to the ancient Family of *Tremouille*, from which the Dukes of *Bretagne* did derive themselves: from the time that *Constantine* the daughter and heir of *Conan*, after the death of *Geoffrey Plantagenet* her first Husband, had Guy of *Thouars* for her second. 10. *Chapel Heraldu*, (or *Coltrun Heraldu*) on the River *Vienne*; of which *James Hamilton*, second of France, the better to assure him to the French Faction there, against the English, had the title of Duke.

In the *Vine-fields* of this Country, within two leagues of *Poitiers*, was fought that memorable Battle between *John* of France, and *Edward* the son of King *Edward* the third, surnamed the *Black Prince*. Who being distressed by number of the French, would willingly have accepted on honourable terms: which the French not accepting, instead of Conquels, found a fatal overthrow. The greatness and particulars whereof, we shall hereafter see in the like of King *John*. For they presuming on their own strength, to their disadvantage, beset the Enemy of all opportunity of retiring; whereas ordinary Policy would instruct the Leader of an Army, as Count *Poitain* used to say. Hereupon *Thémistocles* would not permit the Grecians to break the Bridge made over the *Hellespont* by *Xerxes*, lest the Persians should be compelled to fight, and so happen to recover their former losses: and *Charles* the sixth, lost his Army, by intercepting of our *Henry* the fifth, in his march to *Calice*. For, where all way of flight or retreat is lost, the basest Soldier will rather dye with glory in the front of his battle, than flye and be killed with ignominy. So true a truth this Proverb of ours, *Make a Coward fight, and he will kill the Devil*. On the contrary, it hath been the use of divers Politick Captains, to make their own Soldiers fight more resolutely, by taking from them all hope

of safety, but byattel. So did *William* the Conqueror; who at his arrival into England, burnt the ships which transported his Army: thereby giving the Soldiers to Arms, and courage of their Hearts; not in the nimble benefits of their heels. *Tariffe*, the Leader of the *Moors* into Spain, burnt likewise all his Navy, one only *Pinnace* excepted; which he reserved to carry tidings of his success. So when *Charles Martel* encountered that infinite Host of the *Saracens*, (of which you have already heard) he commanded the people of *Tours* to open the Gates only to the Victors. Then held his Army over the *Loire*, placing on the Banks thereof, certain Troops of Horse-men, to kill all such as fled out of the Field. Hereby informing his men, that there was to them no more France, than what they fought on, unless they were Conquerors. In like manner, the same *Thémistocles* cunningly working the Persians to enclose the Greek Navy on every tide, counselled the Grecians with such courage, by a necessity of fight, that they gave their enemies the most memorable defeat that ever happened on those Seas.

But to proceed, the people of this Province have more in them of the old *Gaul*, than any in France; as lying so betwixt the borders of the *Goths* and French, that it was never thoroughly planted or possessed by either. An argument whereof may be, that they are naturally more rude, subtil, crafty, and contentious, than the rest of their Country-men; and have a *Dialect* by themselves, much differing from the common French, having many words mixt with it, questionless some remainders of the ancient *Gallick*, which the natural Frenchmen understand not. In the division of *Gaul* by the Emperor *Constantine*, they were reckoned for a part of *Aquitania Secunda*, and as a part thereof, won from the Romans, with *Limousin*, *Perigord*, and *Quercu*, by *Enricus* King of the *Goths* in Spain. Of whose Kingdom it continued part, till those *Goths* were dispossessed of their hold in France, by *Clouis* the fifth King of the French, surnamed the Great. After which, it belonged to the Kings of that people; by the posterity of *Charles* the Great, assigned to some Provincial Governours, with the title of Earls. One of which being named *Elter*, (of the old *Gothib* race, if I guess right) by the last Will and Testament of *William* the Debonaire, Duke of *Aquitain*, and Earl of *Auvergne*, succeeded in that fair Estate. *Poitou*, by this means, made a part of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, came with it at the last to the Kings of England, as shall there be shewn; and being theirs, was given with the title of Earl, by King *Henry* the second, to *Richard*, surnamed *Cœur de Lyon*, who was after King. Seized upon by the French, in that unfortunate Reign of King *John*, with theretof of the English Provinces, Anno 1202. *Alphonso*, Brother to *Lewis* the ninth, is made Earl of *Poitou*; and being again recovered by King *Henry* the third, it was by him conferred on his Brother *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*. But *Henry* being entangled in the Barons Wars, and *Richard* wholly taken up with the affairs of Germany, of which by some of the Electors he was chosen Emperor; it was fully conquered by the French; and never since dismembered from that Crown, for ought I can find. For, though in the more active times of King *Edward* the third, some of the best Towns and pieces of it, were possessed by the English; yet were they lost again soon after, according to the various successes and events of War.



## 22 LIMOSIN, 13 PERIGOT, 14 QUERCY.

THESE PROVINCES I have joyned together, because for the most part they have followed the same fortune; being sometimes French, and sometimes English, according to the successes of either Nation.

1 LIMOSIN, the largest of the three, hath on the East, *Bourbonnois*; on the West, *Perigot*; on the North, and North-west, *Poitou*, and *Berry*; on the South, *Auvergne*. It is divided into the *Higher*, properly called *Limosin*; and the *Lower*, commonly called *La Marche*: both parts, but specially *La Marche*, which lieth towards *Auvergne*, being mountainous, and not very fruitful; but of a free and open Air: inhabited by a people of a more mild and sober nature than the rest of the French, frugal in expence, and moderate in diet; only so great devourers of Bread, that they are grown into a *By-word*.

The chief Towns in *La Marche*, or the *Lower Limosin*, are 1 *Lindlar*, seated in a rough and hilly Country, a Bishops-See 2 *Ozarcus*, seated amongst the Mountains, on the River *Vezere*, a very fierce and violent current, with which fo fortified on all sides, that it is thought to be a very strong and secure dwelling. 3 *Trenac*, 4 *Danfense*, 5 *Belmont*, 6 *Messac*, 7 *Brive Le Gaillard*, &c. In the *Higher Limosin*, the chief Towns are, 1 *Limoges*, a Bishops-See, the principal of the *Levanciers*, from whom denominated; by *Ptolemy* called *Katishum*. A neat, but no large City, rich, populous, and inhabited by a people of so great an industry, that they compel every one to work; and is therefore by the French called the *Prison of Beggers*: seated on the *Vienne*. At the taking off when revolted, *Edward* the Black Prince could by no means be allured to pity the distressed Citizens, till pursuing his Enemies, he saw three French Gentlemen make head against his Army; the consideration of whose magnanimity, drew him to pity, where before he avowed revenge. 2 *Chaluz*, at the besieging of which, our *Richard* the First was slain by a shot from an *Arbalist*; the use of which War-like Engine, he first showed to the French. Whereupon a French Poet made these Verses on the person of *Atrapos*.

*Hoc volo, non alia Richardum posse perire,  
Ut, qui Francigenis Baliste primis usum  
Tradidit, ipse sui rem primis expiator:  
Quamq; aliis decuit, in se vim feriat aris.*

It is decreed, thus must great *Richard* die.  
As he that first did reach the French to dart  
An *Arbalist*; 'tis just he first should trie  
The strength, and taste the fruits of his own Art.

The man that shot him, was called *Bertram* de *Gardou*; who being brought before the King, (for the King neglecting his wounds, never gave over the Assault, till he gained the place) boldly justified his action, as done in the service of his Country; and for revenge of the death of his Father and Brother, whom the King had caused to be slain. Which heard, the King not only caused him to be set at liberty, but gave him an hundred shillings sterling, in reward of his Gallantry, 3 *Soubterren*, on the confines of *Berry*. 4 *Confolat*, *Dorat*, on the River *Vienne*. 5 *Boiffon*, 7 *Biras*, of which nothing memorable.

2 PERIGOT, hath on the East, *Auvergne* and

*Quercu*, on the West, *Xaintoigne*; on the North, *Limosin*, and on the South, some part of *Gascogne*. The Country and people, are much of the same condition with that of *Limosin*; having that *Perigot* is the more woody; and those Woods plentiful of *Chestnuts*. The chief Towns of it are, 1 *Perigeanx*, the principal City of the *Petragri*, by *Ptolemy* called *Vellena*? now a Bishops See: some foot-steps of which name remain in a part of *Perigeanx*, (for the Town, it is divided into two parts) which to this day is called *Vellene*; in which standeth the Cathedral Church, and the Bishop's Palace. The whole City seated in a very pleasant Valley environed with *Dunes*, affording a most excellent Wine, and having in it, as a mark of the Roman greatness, the ruins of a large and spacious Amphitheater. 2 *Bergerac*: seated on the great River *Du*. *Amphibiteater*. 3 *Sarlat*, a Bishops-See. 4 *Nantoux*, defended with *domes*. 5 *Sarlat*, a Bishops-See. 6 *La Roche*, 7 *Marfa*, where is a Well which ebboeth and floweth according to the pulse of the River of *Bourdeaux*. And 8 *Angoulême*, in the North-west towards *Xaintoigne*, the seat of the *Engilmesnes*, in the time of the *Romans*; now a Bishops See: seated upon the River of *Charente*, with which it is almost encompassed: the other side being defended by a steep and rocky Mountain. A Town of great importance when possessed by the English; being one of their best out-works for defence of *Bourdeaux*: one of the Gates thereof being to this day called *Chande*, seems to have been the work of Sir *John Chanda*, Banneret, one of the first Founders of the most Noble Order of the *Garter* since covered from the English by *Charles* the Fifth, it was bestowed on *John*, the third Son of *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, Grand-Father of King *Francis* the First, with the title of an Earl only, *An*. 1408. Afterwards made a Duke, when in the Person of the said King *Francis*, before his coming to the Crown. And for the greater honor did as much of the adjoining Country was laid unto it, it maketh up a Territory of about 24 French Leagues in length; and 15 in breadth: within which circuit are the Towns of *Chasteau-neuf*, and *Coignat*, on the River of *Charente*. 3 *Roche Foulcon*, 4 *Chabannes*, 4 *Meriville*, 6 *Villabur*, &c. Since that united to the Crown, it hath of late times given the title of Duke to *Charles* Earl of *Anjou*, *An*. 1618. the late son of *Charles* the ninth, consequently extracted from the House of *Angoulême*.

3 QUERCY is encompassed about with *Limosin*, *Perigot*, *Languedoc*, and *Auvergne*. A populous Country, for the biggest, (being one of the least in all France) and very fruitful withal, though somewhat mountainous. The principal places in it, 1 *Cabery*, the chief City of the *Cadurci*, in the times of the *Romans*; still a great, strong, and well-traded Town, and the See of a Bishop, who is also the Temporal Lord of it: seated upon the River *Loch*. From hence defended and took name the noble Family of *Charorais* de *Cadurci*, in Latin: out of which, by a Daughter of *Patrick* de *Cadurci*, Lord of *Osmore* and *Kidwilly*, in the *Marches of Wales*, married *Henry* the third Earl of *Lancaster*, came the Kings of England, and most of the Royal houses in Europe. 2 *Montalban*, a Bishops-See also built on the top of an high Mountain, and so well fortified by all advantages of art, that it is thought to be the most defensible of any in France: of which it gave sufficient proof in that notable resistance which it made to King *Lewis* the thirteenth, in his Wars against those of the Religion, *Anno* 1621. 3 *Soulac*, upon the River *Dordogne*. 4 *Nigrepelliss*, another of the Towns possessed by the Protestant Party, reduced to the obedience of King *Lewis* the thirteenth, *Anno* 1621: but in November following, they murdered the King's Garrison, and the next year denied admission to the King.

King. Taken at last, *An*. 1622, by the King in Person: the Punishment did exceed the Crime. For, the men were not only killed and hanged, as they had deserved; but many of the women also; some of them having their secret part rammed with Gun-powder, and so torn in pieces, by the unparalled Barbarism of the merciless and revengeful Soldiers. 5 *Chasteau-Sarasin*, a strong Town on the *Garond*. 6 *Nazare*, 7 *Berzac*, &c.

The ancient Inhabitants of these three Provinces, were the *Leuonices*, the *Petrovrii*, and the *Cadurci*, before mentioned; of which the *Leuonices*, and *Cadurci*, were call into the Province of *Aquitania Prima*; the *Petrovrii*, and *Engilmesnes*, into *Aquitania Secunda*. In the declining of that Empire, seized on by the *Gals*; but from them speedily extorted by the conquering-French. Afterwards, when King *Henry* the third of England, released his right in the Provinces of *Normandy*, *Fleissie*, *Anjou*, *Tourenn*, and *Main*; *Lewis* the 9th, to whom his Release was made, gave him in satisfaction of all former Interstices, 300000 l. of *Anjorian* money, the Dukedom of *Guienne*, the County of *Xaintoigne*, as far as to the River of *Charent*, with the Province of *Limosin*. And on the Capitulation made between *Edward* the third of England, and *John* of France, then Prisoner to him; *Perigot* and *Quercu*, (among other conditions) were assigned over to the English, discharged of all *Relief* and *Homage* to the Crown of France. After which times respectively, they remained all three in the possession of the English, until their final expulsion by King *Charles* the 7th; never since that dismembered from the Crown of France.

## 15 AQUITAINE.

THE Dukedom of AQUITAINE, the greatest and goodliest of all France, contained the Provinces of 1 *Xaintoigne*, 2 *Guienne*, 3 *Gascogne*; with the Isles of *Oleron* and *Ree*, and other Islands in the *Aquitainick* or *Western Ocean*.

XANTOGNE is bounded on the East with *Limosin* and *Perigot*; on the West with the *Aquitainick*, *Oceans* on the North with *Poitou*; and on the South with *Guienne*. So called from *Saintler*, one of the principal Cities of it; as that from the *Santonae*, a Nation here inhabiting in the time of the *Romans*, whose Chief City it was. The River of *Charente* running through the middle, and so on the North border of it, emptieth it self into the Ocean, just opposite to the Isle of *Oleron*; having first taken in the *Seigne*, and the *Bontonne*, two lesser Rivers.

The chief Towns of it are, 1 *Saintler*, by *Ptolemy* called *Mediolanum*; by *Antoninus*, *Civitas Santonum*, seated upon the *Charente*; a Bishops See, and the *Seneschallie* for the County. 2 *St John* de *Angellie*, situate on the *Bontonne*, a Town once impregnablely fortified; whereof it hath given sufficient testimony in the *Civil Wars* of France about Religion, until the fatal time it was dissolved; as what time (*viz.* *An*. 1621) after a siege of forty days, it was taken by King *Lewis* the thirteenth, the Fortifications demolished, the Town left open, and commanded from that time forwards, to be called by the name of *Lewis Bourg*. *Bourg* for *La Mer*, upon the *Dordogne*, which for the wideness of it, is here called a Sea. 4 *Rever*, seated near the confluence of the two great Rivers, the *Garond*, and the *Dordogne*. 5 *Blays*, the most Southern Town of all this Country, defended with a

strong Castle, and a goodly Garrison for securing the passage unto *Bourdeaux*; this Town being seated on the very mouth of the River which goeth up to it. 6 *Rochele*, *Kapella* in the present Latin; but anciently called *Santonum Portus*, as the chief Haven of the *Samones*; a well-noted Port in the most Northern part of *Xaintoigne*; from whence the Country hereabouts is called *ROCHELOIS*. The Town seated in the inner part of a fair and spacious Bay; the entrance of which is well assured by two very strong Forts, betwixt which there is no more space, than for the passage of a good Ship: every night closed up with a maffy chain, and the whole Town either environed with deep Marishes, or fortified with such Bulwarks, Trenches, and other Works of Modern Fortification, that it was held to be, as indeed it was, the safest retreat for those of the Reformed Religion, in the time of their troubles; as may be seen by the story of it, which in brief is thus. At the end of the second *Civil War*, *An*. 1568, many Towns considering how ill the former Peace had been observed, refused to take in any of the King's Garrison, or permit any of the *Populists* to bear Arms amongst them; of which *Rochele* was one; which also contrary to the King's command, maintained a Navy for their safety by Sea, and continued their Fortifications for their defence by Land. So that hither the Queen of *Navarre*, and her Son, retired, as to a place of safety, *An*. 1572. *Rochele* alone, of all the French Towns, held good for the Protestants, and is by *Montfieur Juville* on all sides blocked up: but the siege soon raised, and *Rochele*, *Montalban*, *Sauterre*, with others, made cautionary for the Peace ensuing, *An*. 1575, besieged by *Biron* the elder, with an Army of 50000 men, and 60 pieces of Artillery: *Charles* the ninth, *Henry* Duke of *Anjou*, the Duke of *Anjou*, &c. being also present at the service: it held out from the beginning of *March*, till the 7th of *June*, and was then forced, the City having in one month endured 13000 shot, and the King lost 20000 men amongst them, the Duke of *Anjou* for *An*. 1575 and 78, it was attempted by *Landerac*, the Ille of *Ree* taken, but soon recovered: the King of *Navarre*, and Prince of *Conde*, after the defeat, being received in triumph. *Anno* 1577, besieged to Sea-ward by *Laurens*; who being also beaten back, a Peace was made, and eight cautionary Towns, more added to their former strength. In the troubles of 85, and 88, the Princes above-named made it their retreat; and from thence issued to divert the purposes of the Duke of *Morace*. The next year, *Henry* the third being slain, and the King of *Navarre* seated in the Throne, the Protestants encircled exceedingly in power, and number; and taking advantage of the minority of *Lewis* the thirteenth, governed themselves apart as a Free Estate, *Rochele* being made the Head of their Commonwealths; fortified to that end with 12 Royal *Bastions* of Free-shot, with double Ditches, deep, and broad, in the bottom, abundantly furnished with Powder and Ammunition, 150 pieces of Cannon, besides Culverins and smaller Pieces, with Victuals, and all other necessaries, to endure a siege; and grown unto so great wealth, that there were thought to be an hundred or six-score Merchants, worth 100000 Crowns apiece. This drew upon them the great Wars in the year 1621, and 1622. Which ended in the loss of all their Garrisons except *Rochele* and *Montalban*; those to remain in pledge with the Protestant Party, but for three years on. Which time expired, the *Rochele* were again besieged both by Sea and Land, the Ille of *Ree* took from them, their Fleet broke at Sea, and the mouth of their Haven fo barred up with ships chained together, and sunk into it, and other Works of stupendous greatness, in the very Ocean, that no Foreign succours out of England, (whoever really



- 1241 7 Roger IV. surnamed *Rosier*, a companion of the King *S. Lewis* in the Holy Land.
- 1255 8 Roger-Bernard II. son of *Rosier*.
- 1262 9 Roger-Bernard III. who added *Bearn* and its Appendices unto his Estates.
- 1306 10 Gaston the son of Roger-Bernard the third, and of *Margaret de Moncade* the Heir of *Bearn*.
- 1315 11 Gaston II. son of Gaston the first, a great Enemy to the English in behalf of *Philip de Valois*; and as great a friend to the King of *Aragon* against the *Moor*, in which Wars he was slain.
- 1344 12 Gaston III. for his beauty surnamed *Phœbus*, inferior for Revenue and the Port he lived in, to few Kings in Christendom.
- 1390 13 Matthew Earl of *Castillon*, son of Roger-Bernard Earl of *Castillon*, the second Son of Gaston the first: designed successor to John King of *Aragon*, whose eldest Daughter he had married, but dispossessed thereof by the Duke of *Montau*.
- 1399 14 Archembald Captain of *Buche*, and Isabel Sister and Heir of Matthew Earls of *Foix*.
- 1413 15 John Son of Archembald, a great Enemy to the English in behalf of *Charles* the seventh of *France*: his younger Brother Gaston, as great a friend unto the English, succeeding in the Estate of *Bischoe*. From Peter the second Son of this John, descended *Odet de Foix*, Lord of *Lauriech*, so renowned in the Wars of *Italy*.
- 1436 16 Gaston IV. Son of J. b. a principal Agent in the Conquest of *Guienne* from the English; by his marriage with *Eleanor* Daughter and Heir of John King of *Navarre*, advanced his house unto that Kingdom; Grandfather by John Viscount of *Narbonne* his second Son to Gaston de *Foix* Duke of *Nemours*, slain at the taking of *Rovenne*, Anno 15125.
- 1472 17 Francis Phœbus Nephew of Gaston the fourth, and of *Eleanor* of *Navarre* by their Son Gaston Prince of *Viane*, succeeded his said Grandfather in the Earldom of *Foix*, and his Grandmother in the Realm of *Navarre* about seven years after.
- 1483 18 Katharine the Sister and Heir of Francis, by her marriage with John Earl of *Albert*, added that Earldom also to the house of *Foix*.
- 1517 19 Henry of *Albert* Son of John and Katharine, King of *Navarre*, Sovereign of *Bearn* and Earl of *Foix*, by his marriage with the Lady *Margaret*, Sister to King Francis the first, added the greatest part of the Lands of *Armaignac* unto his Estate.
- 1556 20 Antony of *Bourbon* Duke of *Vendosme*, and Joan his Wife, Daughter and Heir of Henry or *Albert*, Kings of *Navarre*, Sovereigns of *Bearn*, and Earls of *Foix*.
- 1572 21 Henry II. Son of Joan and Antony King of *Navarre*, Sovereign Lord of *Bearn*, and Earl of *Foix*; on the murder of Henry the third of *France*, succeeded also in that Kingdom by the name of Henry the fourth, Anno 1589, the Father of *Lewis* the thirteenth, and Grand-father of King *Lewis* the fourteenth, now reigning, An. 1648. And so having brought the Earls of *Foix* to the Crown of *France*, it is time to leave them. The Arms of these great Earls we have seen before.

2 The Earldom of *BEGORRE* is situate North of *Bearn*, at the foot of the *Pyrenean* Mountains: so called from the *Bigerones*, the old Inhabitants herof in the

time of *Cæsar*. Scattered in which, and the adjoining Principality of *Bearn*, live a leprous and infectious people of noisom breaths, deformed bodies, and ghastly visages, in which regard, not suffered to have any commerce with other people, nor to inherit any Lands; but only to apply themselves to drudgery, and the basest of mechanic trades. From their great misshapen heads called *Capes* or *Gabets*.

Chief Towns herof are 1 *Figneres*, famous for *Medicinal* Baths. 2 *Lourde*, of which nothing memorable. 3 *Tarbes*, (*Antonine* called *Turfanibia*) seated upon the River *Adour*, honoured with a strong Castle, an Episcopal See, and the Senechallic for all the Country of *Begorre*. Which Country having for long time its own Proprietary Earls, under the Sovereignty and Homage of the Crown of *Navarre*, from the Kings whereof they were extracted, or those Kings from them; was at the last, by the marriage of *Petronilla*, Daughter and Heir of *Esquibart* the last Earl, to *Bafon* Viscount of *Marfan* and *Gabardun*, added to that house. Whose Daughter *Mattheu*, marrying to Gaston Prince of *Bearn*, increased that Principality with those goodly pieces of *Marfan*, *Gabardun* and *Begorre*; all brought into the house of *Foix*, by *Margaret*, Daughter of this Gaston, married to Roger-Bernard, as before is said.

The Arms herof were *Azure*, a Cross *Argent*; By *Inigo Arjila* the son of *Simon*, Earl of this Country called to the Crown of *Navarre*, made the Arms of that Kingdom; whereas before that time, the Arms thereof had been *Argent*, on a Tree *Vers*, a Cross in chief, *Gules*. Which Arms are said to be took by *Gracia Ximenes* the first King of *Navarre*, from such a Sign appearing to him in the Sky, before his first battle with the *Moor*.

4 The Earldom of *COMMINGES* lieth betwixt *Bearn* and *Foix*, running betwixt both as far Northward, as to border Eastward on *Begorre*. Divided into the *Higher*, and more mountainous part, situate at the foot of the *Pyrenees*, and the *Lower*, which hath somewhat more of the valley in it. The old Inhabitants of both, the *Comense* and *Conferani*. The principal places at present in the *Lower Comminges* are, 1 *Lombes*, a Bishops See but of late creation. 2 *Moret*, upon the River *Garonne* 3 *Samatan*. 4 *Liesse* on *Dordon*. And in the *Higher* there is, 1 *Conseran*, once the chief Town of the *Conferani*, now a Bishops See, situate at the foot of the *Pyrenean* hills. 2 *S. Bernard*, of old called *Civitas Conseranorum*, a Bishops See also, and the chief City of this Earldom. 3 *S. Beaz*, 4 *S. Brogu*, 5 *Morgeau*, or *Mons Regius*, 6 *Sillieres*, &c.

Of the Estate of this Earldom I have little to say, but that it was united to the House of *Foix*, by the Marriage of *Eleanor*, the Daughter of an Earl herof, to *Gaston* the second of that name, and the eleventh Earl of this House. Given afterwards notwithstanding to a Spaniard called *Rodrigo de Villandrada*, by Charles the seventh, but in the end restored again to the house of *Foix*, by the prowess and great services of Gaston the fourth, who called his Uncle *Matthew*, the youngest Son of *Archembald* and *Isabel* Earls of *Foix* to be settled in it, according to the will and purpose of his Father *Archembald*, who had given it to him. But falling to the Crown again, it was conferred on John of *Leson*, a Bastard of the Earl of *Armaignac*, who was Earl of *Comminges*; and one of the *Marshals* of *France* in the time of King *Lewis* the eleventh. The Arms of these Earls were *Gules*, four Orles in saltier, *Argent*.

5 The Earldom of *ARMAIGNAC*, the greatest of all these Estates considered severally and apart, lieth on the North of *Comminges*, and so extendeth it self to the banks of the River *Garonde*. Principal Towns are, 1 *Aus*, upon the River *Gez*, anciently called *Augusta Ausconum* the

the Metropolis or head City of the Province of *Novempopulania*; by consequence an Archbishops See: The *Revenues* whereof are said to be the greatest of any Prelates in *France*, computed at no less than 40000 *lper annum*. 2 *Ledouze*, a Bishops See, called of old *Leforacium*, in our modern Latin *Ledodurum*. A Town so well fortified, when in the power of the Earls of *Armaignac*, that it held out a siege of three months against the Forces of *France*; but since it came into the hands of the French Kings, so strengthened and embattelled according to the modern Art of Fortifications, that it is held the strongest Bulwark of the Kingdom on this side, and their surest Fortres against Spain. 3 *Liste de Jourdain*, which hath the title of an Earldom, bought at the price of 38000 Crowns, of John Duke of *Bourbon*, by John the fourth Earl of *Armaignac*, An. 1421. 4 *Avallier*, 5 *Auzan*. 6 *Chastellaneu*. 7 *Malbouquer*. 8 *Nestes*, of which little memorable.

The Earls of *Armaignac* fetch their Original from the Kings of *Navarre*. *Sanebo* the great, having subdued some Lands in *Gascogne*, which he conferred on *Grasius* a younger son of his, with the title of Earl of *Armaignac*, Anno 1014. On which foundation it increased so fast, both in power and honour, that *Bernard* the fourth Earl herof, came to be Countable of *France*. And so did John the fourth of that name, by the favour of King *Charles* the seventh: who also writ himself, by the grace of God Earl of *Armaignac*; according to the title of Sovereign Princes. A man of so considerable power in these parts of *France*, that the marriage of a Daughter of his to our Henry the sixth, was thought the best means for establishing his Estate in *Guienne*. And I remember it was charged on the Duke of *Suffolk*, that by breaking of this alliance for that of *Anjou*, he had been the cause of the loss of the King's pieces in *France*. This greatness made him subject to the jealousy of King *Lewis* the eleventh, who worried him out of his Estate and his life together. *Charles*, Brother of this John, succeeded by the favour of King *Charles* the eighth. After whose death the said Estate was seized on to the use of the Crown; till given again by *Francis* the first to *Charles* Duke of *Alanson*, (whose Grand-father had married with a Sister of the said Earl John) and to the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, the said Kings Sister, who, after the decease of the Duke of *Alanson*, brought it to Henry of *Albert*, and King of *Navarre*, her second Husband; returning so to the Original from whence first it came.

The Arms of these great Princes, were quarterly 1 *Argent*, 3 *Lyon Azure*; 2 *Gules*, a Leopard *Lyon Or*, the 3, &c.

6 The Earldom of *ALBERT* is situate on the North-west of *Armaignac*, bordering upon *Guienne*. The chief Town whereof is *1 Nerac*, seated on the River of *Ratze*; the only place of strength and moment in all this Estate: 2 *Chastell-Jalone*, well fortified to disturb the Trade betwixt *Bordeaux* and *Gascogne*, but not able to endure a siege; 3 *Mont de Marfan* and 4 *Tartas*, both seated on the River *Adour*: and all four formerly Towns of Caution for the cause of the Reformed Religion; of which this Country is so full, that the *Papists* Religion had hardly any footing in all this Territory. Which, though the smallest of the fix, and of least Antiquity, had yet the fortune to incorporate all the rest into it. For John, the son of *Alan* Earl of *Albert*, by his marriage with *Katharine*, Daughter and sole Heir of Gaston, son of Gaston of *Foix*, and of *Lenora* Princess of *Navarre*, added to his Estate the Signeures of *Bearn*, *Foix*, and *Begorre*. And Henry of *Albert* his son, by marrying the Lady *Margaret*, Sister of King *Francis* the first, united to it those of *Armaignac* and *Comminges*. By Jean the Daughter of this Henry, the

whole Estate was brought Antony of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendosme*, and Father to King Henry the fourth becoming so united to the Crown of *France*, from which it was at first dismembered.

The Arms of these Earls, were Quarterly 1 *Franke*; 2 *Gules*, a Border engrailed *Arg*. The third &c.

7 As for the Country of *AGENOIS*, the last part of *Gascogne*, it never had other hearts (after it left off to be French) than the Dukes of *Aquitain*. The principal Cities of it, 1 *Agen*, a rich populous and well-traded Town, seated on the *Garonne*, in a fruitful Country; a Bishops See, a Senechallic, and held to be the fairest in *Gascogne*. 2 *Condon*, a Bishops See also, from which the parts adjoining are called *Condounois*. 3 *Villeneuve*, 4 *Clairac*, 5 *Marman*, 6 *Foys*, &c.

Thus having took a brief view of those several members which make up the great body of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*; let us next look on the Estate of the whole thus brought together: which in the declination of the *Roman* Empire, was given unto the *Goths*, before possessed of all *Gallia Narbonensis*, by *Valentinian* the third, as a reward for their service in driving the *Alani* out of *Spain*. Long the *Goths* had not held it, when they were outed of it by *Clodius* the fifth King of the French, continuing under his Successors, till *Ludovius Pius* made it a Kingdom, and gave it unto *Pepin* his youngest Son. But *Charles* and *Pepin*, the Son of this *Pepin*, being dispossessed by *Charles the Bald*, it was by him conferred on *Ranulph*, of the house of *Burgundy*, for his many good services against the *Normans*, Anno 844. Whose Successors take here in this order following.

#### The Dukes of Aquitain.

- 844 1 *Ranulph* of *Burgundy*, first Duke of *Aquitain*.
- 775 2 *William*, Earl of *Auvergne*, Nephew of *Ranulph*.
- 902 3 *Ebler*, Earl of *Poitou*, succeeded in *Aquitain*, and *Auvergne*, by the Will and Testament of Duke *William*.
- 911 4 *Ebler* II. Son of *Ebler* the first.
- 935 5 *William* II. the Son of *Ebler* the second.
- 970 6 *William* III. Son of *William* the second.
- 1019 7 *Guy*, the Son of *William* the third.
- 1021 8 *William* IV. Son of *Guy*.
- 1086 9 *William* V. Son of *William* the fourth.
- 1156 10 *Lewis* the seventh of *France*, in right of *Eleanor* his Wife, sole Heir of *William* the fifth.
- 1152 11 *Henry* Duke of *Normandy* and Earl of *Anjou*, &c. in right of *Eleanor* his Wife, divorced from *Lewis* on pretence of some conflagrancy after King of *England*.
- 1169 12 *Richard*, King of *England*, the Son of *Henry*.
- 1199 13 *John* King of *England*, the Brother of *Richard*, who forfeiting his Estates in *France*, on a judicial Sentence pronounced against him for the (supposed) murder of his Nephew *Arthur* Duke of *Bretagne*; *Aquitain* and the rest of the English Provinces were seized on by the French, Anno 1202. But notwithstanding this Arrest, the English still continued their pretensions to it, till at the last it was agreed betwixt King *Lewis* the ninth of *France*, and Henry the third of *England*, An. 1259. that the English should rest satisfied with *Guienne*, the bounds whereof were to be the *Pyrenees* on the South, and the River of *Charente* on the North, comprehending therein also the Country of *Limousin*; and that on his investiture into this Estate, he should relinquish all his rights in *Normandy*, *Anjou*, *Touren*, *Main*, &c. In consideration whereof, he should have 50000 Crowns in ready money. On this accord, the Kings of *England* became Homagers

to the Crown of France, which sometimes they omitted, sometimes did it by Proxy, but never in person, till Philip de Valois required it of King Edward the third: and because such duties are not often personally done by Sovereign Princes, Du Serres shall describe the formality of it. The place designed for this exploit was the Church of Amiens, "to which Edward came (saith he) with such a Train, as was intended rather to the honour of himself than the French King. Royally attired he was, with a long Robe of Crimson Velvet, powdered with the Leopard of Gold; his Crown upon his head, his Sword by his side, and golden Spurs upon his heels. Philip attended by the chief Officers of the Realm, fat upon his Throne, apparelled in a long Robe of Purple Velvet, powdered with Flower de Luce of Gold; his Crown upon his head, and the Scepter in his hand. Viscount Melun, the great Chamberlain of France, commanded Edward to take off his Crown, Sword, and Spurs, and to kneel down: which he did accordingly. Then taking both his hands, and joining them together, he said unto him; Thou become a Liege-man to the King my Master, who is here present, as Duke of Guienne, and Peer of France, and promise to be faithful and loyal to him; I say, Yea; and Edward said yea, and rose. But the Historians notes withal, that Philip paid yearly for this Payment, the young King never forgetting the indignity which was put upon him, till he had made France a field of blood. And here it is to be observed, that though the Kings of England by this new investiture, were entitled Dukes of Guienne only, yet they had all the power and privileges of Dukes of Aquitaine, excepting the homage of the great Lords and Earls of Gascoigne, which formerly belonged unto them. Inasmuch as Richard the second, though Duke of Guienne only in style and title, invested his Uncle John of Gaunt in that brave estate, under the style and title of Duke of Aquitaine; summoned to Parliament by that name by the said King Richard. From this Accord betwixt the Kings, the English had possession of the Dukedom of Guienne, according to the order of their Succession, to the twenty-ninth of King Henry the third, An. 1259, (the intercalation of John of Gaunt excepted only), when ousted of all their old rights in France, rather by the good fortune, than by the valour of Charles the fifth; the English then, divided in Domestic Factions, and not at leisure to look after the affairs of France. Nor do I find, that Guienne being thus recovered, was ever dissembred from that Crown, but when King Lewis the eleventh aligned it over to his Brother the Duke of Berry, to take him off from joining with the Dukes of Bretagne and Burgundy in a new confederacy, who held it but two years, and died the last Duke of Guienne An. 1427.

The Arms of this Dukedom were Gules, a Leopard or Lyon Or, which joined to the two Lyons of Normandy, make the Arms of England.

## 16 LANGUEDOC.

LANGUEDOC is bounded with the Pyrenean hills, the Land of Auvergne, and the Mediterranean, on the South; on the North, with Forreſt Quercen, and Auvergne, on the East, with Provence and Dauphines on the West, with Gascoigne. Whereas the other Frenchmen in an affirmation say Ouy, these of this Country say Oci and therefore Orelatius conjectures it was call'd *Langue d'Oci*. But others think that it took denomination from the

Goths, who reigning long in this Country, left behind them a smack of their Language; and therefore it was called, *Langue gothica*, and now *Emphonia graia*, termed *Langedat*, or *Langedoc*, that is to say, the Country which retaineth the Gothic Language. In reference to one or both of which Etymologies this Province is by Paulus *Emilius* promiscuously called *Gothiciana* and *Ovitilana*, and in relation to the rest, the people hereof in one of Calvin's Epistles, are given unto us by the name of *Populi Lingue Ovitilane*.

The Country on those parts which lie next to Auvergne, is like the higher parts thereof, mountainous and, not very fruitful; in all the rest, as rich and pleasant as the best Provinces in France; and having the advantages of Olives, Raisins, Figs, Oregans, and other fruits not ordinary but here, and in the neighbouring Province; In that participating the Commodities both of France and Spain The people have somewhat in them of the ancient Goths, and draw nearer to the temper of the Spaniards, than any other of the French as being accounted very devout, great vaunters of themselves, affecting bravery above their condition and estates; not caring how they pinch it on the working days, or at home in private; so they may flaunt it in the street, and be fine on holy-days; The humour all of the Women, and in them more pardonable.

Principal Rivers of this Province, are 8 *Aurance*, 2 *Lirran*, and 3 *Orbe*, emptying themselves into the *Rhodes* and *Alby*, which disburdeneth it self into the Ocean. Chief Towns hereof are, 1 *Nîmes* (in Latin *Lemania*) anciently a Colony of the *Romans*, now a Bishops See, where there remain some marks of the *Roman* greatness, especially the ruins of a spacious Palace built by the Emperor *Adrian*. 2 *Mont-peller* (in Latin *Mons Pessulanus*) situate on a high Mountain, as the name imports, some twelve miles distant from the Sea, a University for the study of *Physick*, and for that very happily feared, the Country round about affording great variety of medicinal Herbs. An Episcopium of it self in the former times, conveyed by Mary Daughter of *William* the last Lord hereof, to King *Peter* of *Aragon* her Husband; next, made a member of the Kingdom of *Majorca*, and finally by *James*, the last King of *Majorca*, sold to King Philip of *Valois*. Of late one of the strongest holds which those of the Reformed Religion had in this Country: and memorable for the notable resistance which it made against the whole forces of *Leuis* the 13. in the last Civil Wars about Religion, 3 *Alets*, and 4 *Carreſſous*, both Bishops Sees, both seated on the River *Aude*, the people of both speaking a corrupt French, with an intermixture of some Spanish. Which intermixture of Spanish with that broken French they either have originally from the Goths of Spain, of whose Kingdom this was once a part: or from their long subjection to the Earls of *Barcelona*, to whom they were conveyed, with other fair estates in this part of France, by the marriage of *Raymond Berenger* the eleventh Earl thereof, with *Adelaide* the Daughter of some of the great Lords who then ruled in *Languedoc*, about the year 1100. And to these Towns as also unto those of *Nîmes* and *Alby*, the Earls of *Barcelona*, and the Kings of *Aragon* (in their right) did pretend a Sovereignty (though they had lost the possession of them) as those of France did to the Earldom of *Barcelona*: till mutual releases made on both sides of each others claims, by *James* the first of *Aragon*, and the King *S. Lewis* An. 1260, or thereabouts. 5 *Albi*, commodiously seated on the River so called, the *Civitas Albigensium* of *Antoninus*, the chief of this part of *Languedoc*, called from hence *La Paix Albigens*; remarkable in Church-history for those great oppositions to the corruption

ons and errors of the Church of Rome, called the *Albigensis*. 6 *Béziers*, upon the River *Orbe*, the *Beirre* of *Polony*, and *Civitas Biterurgum* of *Antoninus*; a Roman Colony of old, now a Bishops See. 7 *Agde*, called *Agatha* by ancient Writers, remarkable for a Council held there in the year 450, and for a well frequented Port, at the mouth of the River *Eghand*. 8 *Narbon*, seated on the mouth of the River *Aude*, the seat of the *Phoenice*, and the first Roman Colony (next after *Carthage*) out of Italy. In Italy it self (to observe so much by the way) were no less than 150 Colonies; 57 in *Africa*, 29 in *Spain*, 26 in *France*, 4 in *England* only, in *Syria* 20, and in other Countries some, but very few in respect of the largeness of the Territories. These Colonies were instituted partly to repress Rebellions in the Conquered Countries; partly to resist a Foreign Enemy, partly to reward the ancient Soldiers, partly to relieve the poorer sort, and partly to purge and empty the City of the superfluity and redundancy of her people. Now if the question be asked, whether a Colony or *Fortress* be more beneficial, I answer with *Boterus* in his *Raggio de ſtato*, that a *Fortress* is more fit for sudden use, and a Colony for continuance; the former are quickly erected, and perhaps as soon lost; the other require some time of settling, and are after of a good sufficiency to defend themselves. As we see in our times, the Spanish Colonies of *Centa* and *Tangier* in *Africa*; and our own of *Calais* which was the last Town we lost on the firm Land. This *Narbon* was in the Infancy of the Roman Empire, the most populous and greatest Town of all France; inasmuch, as from it all this part of France was called *Gallia Narbonensis*. A Province, of which *Pliny* delivered us this sentence; *Narbonensis Gallia agorum cultus, morum virorum dignitate, opum amplitudine, nulli Provinciarum pſſionenda; dicitur; Italia potius quam Provincia*; that is to say, that for fruitfulness of the soil, and the civility of the people, it was inferior to no Province in the Roman Empire. But to return unto the Town, being anciently the Metropolis of this Province, it had withal the honour of being an Arch-bishops See, which it still continueth: well fortified at the present as a Town of War, fronting *Catalonia* and the Land of *Rouſſillon*. 9 *La Py*, the See of a Bishop, who in *Lattine* is called *Podienſis* the chief of that part of the *Telland*, which is named *Velay*, the ancient Seat of the *Telland*. 10 *Viviers*, on the River *Rhone*, (by *Pliny* named *Alia Helviorum*) from whence the Country adjoining hath the name of *Vivarets*. 11 *Rhodes*, or *Rutenus*, the principal City of the *Ruteni*, now a Bishops See; from whence the Country round about hath the name of *Rouerges*; though some account this *Rouerges*, a distinct Province, and no part of *Languedoc*. 12 *Tolouſe*, seated on the *Garonne*, anciently the principal City of the *Tolouſages* and the *Tolouſes*, placed by old Writers in this tract; now the chief of *Languedoc*, and one of the greatest in all France. The Seat of an Arch-bishop, and an University; so ancient, that some report it to be built when *Deborah* judged *Israel*. Here was a Parliamentary Court erected, for the administration of Justice in these parts, 1302. As for the story of *Tolouſe*, it was observed, that certain Soldiers having stole sacrilegiously some Gold out of the Temples of *Tolouſe*, (when it was taken by *Cepio* a Roman Consul) came all to miserable and unfortunate ends: hence grew that *Adage*, *Aurum habet Tolouſanum*, applied unto unhappy men.

But that which deserves most note in the History of it, are large and spacious fields about it, called by the Writers of these times by the name of *Campi Catalaunici*, extending in length 100, in breadth 70 French Leagues.

In which fields, An. 1435, was fought that terrible Battle between *Attila* King of the *Hunnes*, and *Ætius* the Roman Lieutenant in France; *Ætius* was strengthened by the Goths, Franks, Burgundians, and Germans. *Attila's* Army consisted of *Hunnes*, *Eruli*, *Soythes*, *Sarmatians*, *Suevians*, to the number of 500000, of which 180000 that day lost their lives: *Attila* himself being driven to that desperate plunge, that making a Funeral pile of *Hofe Saddle*, he would have burned himself. But his Enemies weary of well-doing, or *Ætius* politically fearing, that if *Attila* were quite destroyed, the Goths, Franks, and others of the Barbarians then confederate with him, would become too insolent; gave him leave to retire home through Italy: which he harassed with Fire and Sword, murdering the People, and ruining the Towns, so that he was then, and long after, called *Flagellum Dei*. *Ætius*, notwithstanding this good service, was by *Valentinian* the Emperor of the West, rewarded with the loss of his head: by which act, the Emperor (as one truly told him) had cut off his right hand with his left. And indeed, so it happened. For not long after, he himself was by *Maximian* murdered; and the Empire of Rome irrecoverably destroyed. Now that these Fields lay herabouts, and not about *Chalons* in the Province of *Champaigne* (as some learned and industrious men have been of opinion) I am assured by these three reasons. First, the improbability that *Ætius* having got the Victory, should suffer such a vast and numerous Army to pass through the whole length of France from one end to the other, and having waited all the Country; to break into Italy. And secondly, the testimony of *Torissander* an ancient Writer, who telleth us, first, that before this fight, *Attila* had besieged and distressed the City of *Orleans*; and therefore was not vanquished in the fields of *Chalons*: and then, that immediately upon the Victory, *Torissander* the King of the Goths, (his Father *Theodoric* being slain) in *Cantabrigia* *ubi & pugnauerat*, *Regia* *Majestate* *ſubvenit* *Tolouſam* *ingreditur*, being proclaimed King in those very fields, entered with great state and triumph into *Tolouſe*, the regal City at that time of the Gothic Kingdom. Which plainly proves the places of Battle to be near this City: though possibly by the name *Campi Catalaunici* (the great length and broadth thereof considered) we are to understand the whole Country of *Languedoc*.

The old Inhabitants of this Country besides the *Helii*, the *Vellani*, the *Tolouſages*, and *Albigens*, formerly remembered, were the *Agatenſes*, *heteroſes*, *Gabales*, *Volce*, and the *Arcomenſes* all which, together with some others of lesser note, made the Province of *Narbonensis Prima*, whercof the Metropolis was *Narbon*. In the falling of the Roman Empire this gift was the rest of *Narbonensis*, and some part of *Spain*, was the King of the Goths, whom *Honorius* by his gift, and by following on him his Sister *Placidia*, brought out of Italy. The Goths having got to good footing in *Gaul*, enlarged their bounds by taking in the most part of *Aquitain*, *Quercen*, and *Auvergne*: but forced to quit them to the French, who conquered that from them which they got from the Romans; and thus them up within the limits of their first Donation. After this they declined as fast in France, as they thrived in Spain; losing *Provence* to *Theodoric*, King of the *Ostro-Goths*, or Goths of Italy's whole Successor *Amalsarius*, leaving a War from Greece, enriched her interest in *Provence* to *Theodobert* the French King of *Metz*. Nothing now left unto the Goths of their *Gallick* purchases, but this *Languedoc* only; and this





rangia, 2 *Estrang*, 3 *Bois de St. Pol*, more properly, *St. Paul de Yenceis*, being the *Civitas Vencensium* of *Antoninus*, but not otherwise memorable.

As for the Princes hereof, they were anciently of the Noble Family of the *Baufis*, but Homagers and Tributaries to the Earls of *Provence*. By *Mary* Daughter and Heir of *Reynold* the last of this Family, it was conveyed in marriage to *John de Chalons*, one of the most Noble Houses of *Burgundy*, from the Earls whereof they were extracted. *Lewis*, the Son of this *John*, obtained of *Rene* Duke of *Anjou*, and Earl of *Provence*, the Sovereignty hereof, as before was said. By *Claude*, the Heir-general of this House, bestowed in marriage by King *Francis* the first, on Count *Henry of Nassau*, Ambassador from *Maximilian* the Emperor of *Germany*. Anno 1514. it was translated to that Family where it still remaineth.

#### The Princes of Orange.

- 1475 1 *Lewis de Chalons*, first absolute Prince of *Orange*.  
 2 *William de Chalons*, who submitted his Estate to the Parliament of *Dauphine*, to fatisfiche King *Lewis* the 11. by whom retired again to his former Sovereignty.  
 3 *John de Chalons*, a bitter Enemy to King *Lewis*, in defence of the Rights of *Mary* Dutchess of *Burgundy*.  
 1500 4 *Philibert de Chalons*, slain at the siege of *Florence*, where he commanded the Forces of *Charles* the 5th: *Claude* his only Sister, and next Heir of that House, being married to *Henry Earl of Nassau*. Anno 1515.  
 1536 5 *Rene de Nassau*, Son of *Henry* and *Claude*, adopted by *Philibert* his Uncle, whom he succeeded in this Estate: slain at the Siege of *Lan-Arcie* in the Netherlands.  
 1544 6 *William de Nassau*, Cousin-german of *Rene*, by whose last Testament left Heir unto his Estates: the great Patron and Affector of the *Belgick* Liberties, against the *Spaniards*: slain by a Partisan of *Spain*, called *Balthazar*, at *Delfe* in *Holland*. Anno 1584.  
 1584 7 *Philip de Nassau*, kept as an Hostage all his life by the King of *Spain*.  
 8 *Maurice de Nassau*, Brother of *Philip*, Commander of the Forces of the *United* *Provinces*.  
 1625 9 *Henry de Nassau*, II. Successor to his Brother *Maurice*, in his Offices, Estates, and Honours.  
 1648 10 *William de Nassau*, II. the Son and Successor of *Henry* married to Princess *Mary*, eldest Daughter of *Charles* King of Great Britain, &c. on May-day 1641.

The Revenues of this Principality are about 30000 Crowns. The Arms are Quarterly *Gules*, a Bend *Or*, 2 *On*, a Hunters Horn *Azure*, fringed *Gules*; the third *az*, &c. Over all, an Escutcheon of Pretence Chequie, *Or* and *Azure*. More briefly thus: Quarterly *Chalons* and *Aurange*, under an Escutcheon of the Country of *VENASCINE*, as the French call it; *Comitatus Vencensium*, in the *Latin*: so called from *Avenio* (now *Avignon*) the chief City of it. Anciently it had Lords of its own, called Earls of *Vence*, (*Venista Comitatus in the Latin*) united to the House of *Savoy*, by the marriage of *Laurenzia*, a Daughter hereof, with Earl *Humbert* the Second, Anno 1080, or thereabouts. But this Family of the first Lords coming to an end, it fell (but by what Right, I find

not) to the Earls of *Tholons*, but held by them as *Homagers*, (for this Estate) of the Earls of *Provence*: on the conviction of Earl *Raymond*, condemned for Heretic, brought under the protection and patronage of the Popes of *Rome*; the more absolute Sovereignty hereof, and of the City *Avignon*, being settled on them by Queen *Joan*, as before is said. The principal Cities of this tract, are, 1 *Avignon*, the *Avenio* of *Strabo*, *Pliny*, and *Mela*; a very fair and flourishing City, pleasantly seated on both sides of the River of *Rhone*: famous for being the residence of the Popes for seventy years; which times the Romans remember till this day, by the name of the *Babylonian Captivity*: admitting, ever since, an Oath unto the Pope at his Coronation, not to remove his Seat to *Avignon*. The first Pope that removed thither, was *Clement* the 5. An. 1300; when as yet the Popes had no more right in it, than that of Patronage and Protection; and returned again to *Rome*, by *Gregory* the 11. An. 1377. In this City are said to be 7 Palaces, 7 Parish Churches, 7 Monasteries, 7 Nunneries, 7 Inns, and 7 Gates. So that if there be any Mystery in the number of seven, or any credit to be given to such *Pythagorean* divinity, the Arch-bishop of this City may as well be entitled Antichrist, as the Pope of *Rome*, if there be nothing but the mystery of this number to affix it to him. It was made an University, at the time of the Popes first settling here, and so still continueth: *Alciat* the great *Emblemast*; being here Professor, 2 *Carpentars*, by *Pisidomy* called *Carpentorastie*, a Bishops-See: as is also, 3 *Cavillon*, (of old *Caballio*) once a Roman Colony on the River *Durance*; and 4 *Tarascum*, on the *Rhone*, opposite to *Beaucaire* in *Languedock*: for the Popes dwelling here so long, could not be otherwise attended than by mitted Prelates, 5 *Vafon*, *Civitas Vafonensis*, of *Antoninus*.

The Revenues of the Pope here, are not very great, and those expended all in keeping of Ports and Garrisons, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of the *Protestants* of *Orange*. So that it is supposed, that it is rather a charge, than a profit to him: which maketh the people like very well to live under his Government, as bringing more money to them, than he gathereth from them.

The Arms hereof, when under the old Earls of *Vence*, were *Gules*, two Keys in Saltire *Or*, fringed *Azure*. Which seems to have in it some preface, (the Popes pretending to the Keys, as we know they do) that it should one day become subject to the See of *Rome*.

The old Inhabitants of the whole Country were, as appeareth, the *Salii*, *Maffilienfes*, *Vafonenses*, and *Vencenices*, before mentioned; besides the *Decetates* about *Antibe*, the *Sentius*, and *Sigifmundi*, about *Ciferon*; all conquered by the Romans in their first war in *Gaul*, called in to aid those of *Marfilius* against the *Salii*. The Fortune of it since, hath been shewn before. Nothing remains now but the Catalogue of

#### The Earls of Provence.

- 1 *Hugh de Arles*, supposed to be the Son of *Lotharius*, King of *Austrasia*, and *Waldrada* his Concubine: made the first Earl of *Provence*, by *Boson* the first, King of *Burgundy* and *Italy* also.  
 2 *William de Arles*, the Son of *Hugh*.  
 3 *William II.* frained the younger, Son of *William*.  
 4 *Gilbert* Earl of *Provence*, the Father of the Lady *Daulce*.

1082 5 *Raymond Arnold*, Earl of *Barcelona*, the Husband of the Lady *Daulce*, of *Provence*.

1131 6 *Berengar Raymond* the second Son of *Raymond Arnold*, and the Lady *Daulce*; his eldest Brother *Raymond* succeeding in *Barcelona*.

7 *Raymond II.* Son of *Berengar Raymond*.

1173 8 *Alfonso* King of *Aragon*, and Earl of *Barcelona*; the Son and Heir of *Raymond* Earl of *Barcelona* eldest Son unto *Raymond Arnold*, and the Lady *Daulce*.

1196 9 *Alfonso II.* second Son of *Alfonso* the first, succeeded in the Earldom of *Provence*, his eldest Brother *Pedro* inheriting the Realm of *Aragon*, and the Earldom of *Barcelona*.

10 *Raymond III.* Son of *Alfonso*, the last Earl of *Provence* of this Line.

1261 11 *Charles of Valois*, Earl of *Anjou*, and in right of *Beatrix* his Wife, one of the Daughters of *Raymond* the third, Earl of *Provence*. He was also King of *Naples*, *Sicily*, &c.

1282 12 *Charles II.* King of *Naples*, and Earl of *Provence*.

1310 13 *Robert* King of *Naples*, and Earl of *Provence*.

1342 14 *Joan*, Queen of *Naples*, and Countess of *Provence*.

1371 15 *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, the adopted Son of Queen *Joan*; Earl of *Provence*; and titular King of *Naples*, &c. (of whose descent from *Charles* of *Valois*, Earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, we have spoke elsewhere.)

1485 16 *Lewis II.* Duke of *Anjou*, Earl of *Provence*, &c.

1416 17 *Lewis III.* Duke of *Anjou*, Earl of *Provence*, &c.

1430 18 *René*, Brother of *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, &c.

1480 19 *Charles Earl of Main*, Son of *Charles* Earl of *Main*, the Brother of *René*, succeeded in all the Estates and Titles of his Uncle; and at his death gave *Provence* to King *Lewis* the 11th, his Cousin-german, as being the Son of *Charles* the 7th, and *Mary* *Lewis* the third, and *René*, the preceding Dukes, and of *Charles* Father of this *Charles*, the last Earl of *Provence*. King sent a Commission to *Palamede de Forban*, Lord of *Salier*, Chamberlain of Earl *Charles*, to take possession of the Country in his name, and command therein as Lieutenant-General. Since which time, *Provence* never was dismembered from the Crown of *France*, so much as in the way of *Apanage*, or any Honorary Title amongst the Kings Children.

What the Revenues of it were to the former Earls, I am not able to say, having no good Authority to proceed upon. Only I find, that besides the Lands belonging to the Earls hereof, and other customary and casual Taxes, there was a Tax called, *The Royal Impost*, being fifteen *Florens* levied upon every fire: which reckoning 3500. fires (for such the estimate of them was) amounted yearly into 50000 *Florens*. Now it is subject to the rigor and uncertainty of the Kings Taxations, as well as all the rest of *France*. And so much of those Provinces which properly made up the Kingdoms of the French and *Goths*, let us next look on those which at the same time were subdued by the *Burgundians*; whose History, Kingdom, and Estate are to be considered, before we come to the description of their several Provinces.

## The Kingdom of Burgundy.

THE Kingdom of the *BURGUNDIANS* at their first settlement in *Gaul*, contained all those Provinces of the Roman Empire, then called the *Alper Graie*, and *Pennine*, *Maxima Sequanorum*, *Lugdunensis Prima*, and *Vienensis*; now passing under the names of the *Dukedom* and County of *Burgundy*, *Suisseerland*, the *Grisons*, *Wallisland*, *Savoy*, *La Bresse*, *Dauphine*, *Lionnois*, *Nivernois*, and some part of the *Dukedom of Bourbon*. A fair and large quantity of ground, able at once to tempt and fatishe an ambitious Nation. But the *Burgundians* came not into *Gaul* of their own accord, though of their own accord they drew somewhat near it. In their Original, they were a people bordering near the *Vandals*, if not a Tribe or Sept of them: and dwelling in those parts in which are now the *Dukedom of Mecklenburg*, and *Pomerania*. At the time that *Drufin* and *Thiborius* warred in *Germany*, they were utterly barbarous, living in Tents only here and there clapped up. Which being in their own Language called *Burgi*, gave them the name of *Burgundians* amongst the *Romanists* in the same sense as the wild *Arabs* had the name of *S. entia*, amongst the *Greeks*, from the like kind of living. In the year 418 at the instigation of the *Vandals*, they left their own seats, and planted themselves in the Towns and Villages belonging now to the *Marquisses of Baden*, and Electors of *Rhene*. About which time they received the Christian Faith, being then miserably oppressed by the *Huns*, breaking upon them out of *Pannonia*. Not finding any other way to free themselves of that Enemy, they betook themselves to the God of the Christians, and were universally baptized. After which, falling on the *Huns*, they slew no less than 30000 of them in one battle, from that time forwards, never troubled with that barbarous Nation. Christians then they were, and Orthodox in their profession, before their coming into *Gaul*: and for that reason called in by *Stilico* to oppose the *French*, then threatening an invasion of the *Roman* Provinces. Upon this invitation they passed over the River with an Army of 80000 fighting men, possessing themselves of all which lay from the farthest shore of the *Leyre*, to the *Alper of Italy*; and from the Mountain *Vangs*, to the *Mediterranean*; *Provence* only excepted, about that same time planted by the *Goths*. Their Government was under Kings: Many according to their Tribes, when they lived in *Germany*: *Monarchical*, when settled in the Realm of *France*, where they had these five.

#### Kings of the Burgundians.

A. Ch.

- 408 1 *Tabica*, who first brought the *Burgundians* into *Gaul*.  
 2 *Gundahic*.  
 3 *Gundebanht*, who harassed *Italy*, then in possession of the *Goths*, with Fire and Sword; the Uncle of *Claudia*, Wife to *Claudio* the fifth King of the *French*, by her persuasion made inclinable to the Christian Faith.  
 4 *Sigifmund*.  
 5 *Gundamar*, the Son of *Sigifmund*, first set upon by *Chlodomer*, the Son of *Clovis* King of *Orleans*, whom he slew in Battle near *Aufans*; but afterwards outed of his Kingdom by *Childebert* and *Clovis*, Kings of *Paris* and *Soissons*, in revenge of the death of their Brother, *Chlo*.



*Clodomire*. And so the Kingdom of the *Burgundians* fell unto the *French*, after it had continued about 120 years: *Cunram* the Son of *Clotaire*, and *Clouis*, one of the Sons of *Dagobert* the first; being in their times, honoured with the Title of Kings of *Burgundy*.

But the first time that the Kingdom of *Burgundy* settled amongst the *French*, in the way of succession, was in the partage of that vast Empire of *Charlemagne*, amongst the children and posterity of *Ludovicus Piu*: in constituting of which Kingdom, *Provence* was added to the reckoning, to make this answerable to the other parts of that broken Monarchy. The first of these *French* Kings, was *Charles*, the youngest Son of *Lotharius* Emperor, and King of *Italy*, eldest Son of the said *Lewis* the Godly. The Succession in this order following.

#### The French Kings of Burgundy.

- A. Ch.  
855 1 *Charles*, youngest Son of the Emperor *Lotharius*, died without issue.  
858 2 *Lotharius*, the second King of *Metz*, and *Lewis* the second Emperor, Brethren of *Charles*, succeeded in *Burgundy*, the Mountain *Jour* dividing and bounding their Estates.  
875 3 *Charles* the Bald, King of *France*, and Emperor, Uncle to the three former Kings, all dying without issue, succeeded in the whole Estates which he again divided into three Governments or Members: that is to say, *Burgundy* on this side of the *Saône*, containing the now Dukedom of *Burgundy*, with the Earldoms of *Lion* and *Maison*. 2. *Burgundy*, beyond the *Jour*, comprehending the Provinces of *Savoy*, *Switzerland*, *Wallisland*, and the Estates of the *Grisons*: and 3dly. *Burgundy*, on the other side of the *Saône*, lying betwixt the other two, containing the now Counties of *Burgundy*, *Provence*, *La Breffe*, and *Dauphine*. This last conferred with the Title of Earl, on *Boson* Earl of *Ardenne*, by *Charles* the Bald, who had married his Sister *Judith*; and not long after, in the person of the said Earl *Boson*, passed unto a Kingdom by *Charles* the Great, by the name of the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. The Kings of these that follow.  
4 *Boson*, Earl of *Ardenne*, Husband of *Hermingrade*, the Daughter of *Lewis* the second, Emperor and King of *Burgundy*, was first by *Charles* the Bald, made Earl of *Burgundy*, beyond the *Saône*; and afterwards by *Charles* the Great, created the first King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, to be held by him and his Successors of the German Emperors.  
5 *Lewis* II. Son of *Boson* and *Hermingrade*, chosen King of *Italy*, but ousted by the Faction of *Beregarin*.  
9. 7 6 *Hugh* de *Arles*, supposed to be the Son of *Lotharius* the second, by *Waldrada* his Concubine, succeeded by the gift of *Lewis*, and was chosen by his Faction there, King of *Italy* also. For the quiet enjoying of which Kingdom, he resigned this to *Rodolph*, Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, elected by another Faction, to that broken Title.  
926 7 *Rodolph*, Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, succeeded on the resignation of *Hugh* de *Arles*; his Brother *Boson* being settled beyond the *Jour*.

927 8 *Rodolph* II. Son of *Rodolph*, a Prince of so short a reign, or of so little note, that he is by some left out of the Catalogue of these Kings.

9 *Boson* II. the Brother of *Rodolph* the first; by whom the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, was united to the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*.

955 10 *Courade* Son to *Boson* the second.

990 11 *Rodolph* III. Son to *Courade*; who having no issue of his body, gave his Estate to *Courade* the second, Emperor of *Germany*, and his Son *Henry*, surnamed the Black; whom he had by *Gisela*, the Sister of this *Rodolph*: by whom it was united to the German Empire, An. 1032. In the distractions whereof, following not long after his decease, the Provincial Earls or Governors for the German Emperors, made themselves Masters and Proprietaries of their several Provinces, (the Dukedom of *Burgundy* excepted, settled long before) out of which rose the great Estates of the Duke of *Savoy*, the Earls of *Burgundy* and *Provence*, the *Dauphins* of *Viennais*, and Lords of *Brise*, together with the Common-wealths of the *Switzers* and *Grisons*: every poor Bird snatching also some Feather or other of this dying Eagle. Yet notwithstanding the dismembering and cantoning of this fair Estate, the succeeding Emperors of *Germany* claimed not only a super-intendence over, but a disposal of all the Countries that ever were under the command of the King of *Burgundy*: inasmuch that the Emperor, *Henry* the sixth, receiving so small part of the money which our *Richard* the first paid to the Duke of *Austria*, for his ransom, gave unto the said *Richard* the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, the Sovereignty of *Provence*, *Viennais*, *Marsellier*, *Narbon*, *Arles*, and *Lion*, together with the Homages of the King of *Aragon*, and of the Earl of *Digon* and *St. Giler*. A Royal gift, if the Emperor had any dominion over those Countries, or if they would have received any Prince or Officer of his appointing.

The Arms of this Kingdom under the old *Burgundian* Kings, are said to have been *Azure*, a Cat *Argent*, and *Gules*. Which being said, we will proceed to the description of those Provinces of this broken Kingdom, which lie within the bounds of *France*; the rest, which lie beyond the *Jour*, having been spoken of already in the *Alpine* Countries, which made up the whole Continent of the *Transjuran* *Burgundy*.

## 18. DAUPHINE.

NORTH of the Country of *Provence*, where we left before, lieth that of *DAUPHINE*; having on the East, *Savoy*, and the *Maritime Alps*; on the West, *Lionnois*, and some part of *Languedoc*, from which divided by the *Rhône*; and on the North, *La Breffe*; and those parts of *Savoy* which lie towards *Piemont*, so called, as some report, from *Dauphine*, Wife of *Guigne* the second: in like manner as *Flanders* is affirmed most probably to have took that name from *Flandrina*, Wife of *Lidick* the second, then one of the last of those Princes who governed in that Country by the name of *Forrester*.

It is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*; the one mountainous, stony, and unfruitful, of the same nature with the *Alpes* with whose branches it is over-run: the other tolerably fruitful, but not to be compared with the rest of *France*. The people of the *Higher*, and more mountainous parts, are generally gross and rude; not capable of Learning; but well enough inclined to Arms and Traffic; and have a custom, that on the coming of

Winter,

Winter, they send abroad all those which are fit for travel, whom they call *Bier*, or *Bisonards* who seldom return back till *Easter*: none staying at home but old men, children, and impotent persons, which cannot go abroad to get their livings. Those in the Lower are more civil, but not more given to labour, than the Mountainers, nor very covetous of gain, so they may live at ease, without want or penury. In both parts generally good Soldiers, and well affected to their Prince.

The Lower *Dauphine*, together with that part of *Provence*, which lies next to the *Rhône*, and the adjoining parts of *Savoy*, made up the Province called *Viennensis*, from *Vienna* the Metropolis of it, situate on the *Rhône*, honoured with the Seat of the *Prefectum Pretorio Galiarum*, till the Chief City of this Country, an Archbishop See, and a Siege *Prefidial*. From hence the tract about it is called *Viennais*, and was the Title of the first Proprietaries of this Country, entitled, *Dauphins* of *Viennais*. To this Town, *Archebald*, the Son of *Herod*, was banished by *Augustus Caesar*. 2 *Valence*, the chief City heretofore of the *Valentins*, then a Roman Colony; now a Bishops See, and an University for the Civil Laws: a rich, strong, and well traded Town, seated on the *Rhône*. The Country hereabouts from hence called *Valentinus*, and hath given Honorary Title to two persons of more Fame, than Honour: the first of which was *Cesar Borgia*, the Son of Pope *Alexander* the sixth, who casting off his Cardinals Cap, was made Duke of *Valentinus*, by *Charles* the eighth: the other, *Madam Diana*, the great Minion and Paramour of *Henry* the second, under whom the much swayed the affairs of *France*, and honoured with the Title of Dutchess of it. 3 *Grenoble*, (in Latin, *Gratiopolis*) the chief Seat heretofore of the *Austrians*, the most populous and best built of all this Province; and much resorted to by the Lords and Nobles, by reason of the Court of Parliament here erected, Anno 1453. About this, lieth the Country called 3 *Grignan*, d. *Ternay*. 5 *Rosillon*. 6 *La Roche*. 7 *Mantelmar*, all along the *Rhône*. 8 *Romont*, upon the confluence of the *Rhône*, and the *Jfere*. 9 *Cremieu*, 10 *St. Marceline*. 11 *S. Andre*. 12 *Beaufort*, more within the Country.

The Higher *Dauphine*, together with those parts of *Provence* which lie next to *Italy*, made up the Province of the *Alpes Maritimes*, the Metropolis whereof was, 1 *Ebrodunum*, now called *Embrun*, an Arch-Bishops See, and Siege *Prefidial*, seated on a high Rock, in the midst of a pleasant Valley, surrounded with Mountains, under which runs the River *Durance*. The Hilly Country hereabouts is the highest of *France*. 2 *Briançon*, near the head of the River *Durance*, called *Brigantio* by *Antoninus*. 3 *Gappe*, now a Bishops See, formerly the chief City of the *Apennines*; the track of whom is still found in the name of the adjoining Territory, called *Le Pais Gapenois*: memorable for a Synod or Assembly of the *French Prestigians* here held, An. 1603. in which it was determined, and as for an Article of Faith, That the Pope was *Antichrist*, and where the Ministers then assembled, gave audience to the Ambassadors of Foreign States, as to a Common-wealth distinct from the Realm of *France*: audaciously importuning their King by their several Agents, for liberty of going (whenever they listed) or sending whenever they pleased, unto the Councils and Assemblies of all Foreign Nations, which professed the same Religion with them: the Preamble to those Encroachments on the Royal Authority, which after proved the ruin of their Power and Party. 4 *Triessin*, so called of the *Triessini*, the old Inhabitants of these parts. 5 *Die*, the *Die Vocatumum* of *Antoninus*, a Bishops See, situate on the River *Drois*:

from whence come those small, but good *Stomack* Wines, which we call *Vin Die*. Others affirm, (and perhaps more knowingly) that this Wine is of the growth of *Champagne*, most plentifully growing in the Fields of a Town called *Hays*, from whence it hath the name of *Vin de Hays*; and is contractedly, *Vin Day*. 6 *Chorges*. 7 *Mombur*, 8 *Effiez*; of which, little memorable.

The chief Inhabitants hereof, in the time of the *Romans*, besides the *Triessini*, *Apennenses*, *Vacontii*, and *Aecusiani*, before mentioned; and the *Allobroges*, spoken of in the *Alpine* Provinces, were the *Saguntini*, about *Valence*; the *Decenses* about *Die*, and the *Cavari* about *Grenoble*. First conquered by the *Romans*, then by the *Burgundians*, and at last by the *French*: under whom made a part of the new Kingdom of *Burgundy*, till the surrender of the same to the German Emperors. Under them it continued till the year 1100. when *Guigne*, surnamed the Fat, Earl of *Grignan*, seeing the Emperor *Henry* the Fourth, over-born by the Popes, and not able to assert his own rights, seized upon this Province under the title of Earl of *Viennais*, to which *Guigne* the second, his Son and Successor, gave the name of *Dauphine*, either from his Wife so called, as some; or from the *Dolphin* which he took for his Arms, as others say. In this Family it continued till the year 1342. under the Power and Government of these following Princes, entitled,

#### The Dauphins of Viennais.

- A. Ch.  
1100 1 *Guigne*, surnamed the Fat, Earl of *Albon* and *Grignan* at the time of the dissolution of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*.  
1135 2 *Guigne* II. the first and absolute Proprietary Prince hereof; by the name of the *Dauphin* of *Viennais*.  
1146 3 *Guigne* III. Son of *Guigne* the second.  
1152 4 *Beatrice*, Daughter of *Guigne* the Third, first married to *Raymond* the third, Earl of *Tolouse*, next to *Hugh* the third, Duke of *Burgundy*; and finally, to *Guigne* of *Albon*, of the house of the former Earls; as in her right entitled, *Dauphin* of *Viennais*.  
1208 5 *Andrew*, the Son of *Beatrice* and of *Guigne* the Fourth.  
1242 6 *Guigne* V. Son of *Andrew*.  
1283 7 *Humbert* the first, in the right of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Guigne* the fifth.  
1335 8 *John* the Son of *Humbert*, exercised in continual Wars, as his Father was, was with the Earls of *Savoy*.  
1322 9 *Guigne* VI. Son of *John*, taken Prisoner by *Edward* Earl of *Savoy*, An. 1329. and at last slain, An. 1342.  
1342 10 *Humbert* II. the younger Son of *John*, and the Brother of *Guigne* the sixth, the last *Dauphin* of *Viennais*, who being purchased with Wars by *Anne* (or *Amedee*) Earl of *Savoy*, entered into the Order of *Dominican* Friars, at *Lions*; selling his Country at a small rate, to *Philip* de *Valois* French King, upon condition, that the eldest Son of *France* should be entitled always, *Dauphin* of *Viennais*, and quarter the Arms of *Dauphine*, with those of *France*. The conditions willingly accepted; and *Charles* the Son of King *John*, the Son of *Philip* de *Valois*, admitted by his Grandfather both to the Title and Estate, in the very year of the surrender. Since this time, the eldest Son of *France* is called generally, the *Dauphin* of *France*; sometimes, the *Dauphin* only, by way of eminency; and many times, the

the Prince-Dauphin, to discontinue him from the Dauphin (or Count-Dauphin) of Auvergne, and perhaps some others. A Title so annexed unto them, that it is not usually laid by on the accession of a greater or superiour Dignity: inasmuch as Francis the eldest Son of Henry the second, (whom he succeeded in the Crown) being King of Scots in the right of Mary his Wife, was by the French commonly called *Le Roy Dauphin*, or the King of Dauphin. Nor have they the bare Title of this Country only, but the commands, profits, and possession of it, sending their own Governours thereunto; who by an ancient Indulgence, have the greatest Privileges (confering all Offices within the Province) of any Governours of France.

## 19. LA BRESSE.

**L**A BRESSE is bounded on the East with Savoy, on the West with Liois; on the North with Chablais in the Duchy of Burgundy, and some part of the Aranche County, and on the South, with Dauphine. The reason of the name I find not. The Country is very fruitful and pleasant, embraced betwixt the Rivers of Saône and Rhodan, with which very well watered. Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Bellay*, a Bishops See. 2. *Bourg*, (for distinction sake called *Bourgen Bresse*) a Town so well fenced, and fortified with so strong a Citadel for command of the Country, that it was thought little inferior to the two impregnable Fortresses of St. Katherine, and Montmelian, in Savoy. The Government of which Town and Citadel, was earnestly laboured for by the Duke of Biron, then Governour of Burgundy, after a repulse on the like suit, for that of St. Katherine: but being suspected to hold intelligence with the Duke of Savoy, at that time in ill terms with King Henry the 4th, it was also denied him: which drew him into discontent, and thereby to his fatal ruine. Afterwards, during the minority of Lewis the 13th, demolished by special Order of the Council of France, for fear of being surprised by the Duke of Savoy, during those confusions. It was of old time called the *Forum Scutianorum*, from the *Scutians*, the ancient Inhabitants of this Tract: 3. *Castillon*, 4. *Mont-Réal*, 5. *Bugey*, 6. *Veromen*, of which nothing observable.

This little Province being anciently a part of the Kingdom of Arles and Burgundy, had its own Earls, Proprietary Lords herof; who held it till the year 1285, at what time Sybille, the Daughter and Heir of Ulric Earl of Bresse and Bugey, (or Bugee, as some Writers call it) conveyed the Estate in marriage to Amedee, or Amedee, the 4th of that name Earl of Savoy. In which House it continued till the year 1600, and then surrendered by Duke Charles Emanuel, to King Henry the 4th, to silence the pretences which that King made to the Marquisate of Saluzzes, and put an end to the War then begun about it: the politick Duke chusing rather to part with an Estate on this side of the Mountains, than to give that active King occasion to look into Italy; to which Savoy must have been a thoroughfare, Piemont an ordinary Pass; and where no end could be expected, but the loss of all. Surrendered then it was on good reason of State, and upon that Surrendry united and incorporated with the Crown of France, and put under the Government of the Parliament of Digion, as it still continueth.

Arms herof, are *Azure*, a Lyon *Ermine*, armed and langued, Or.

## 20. LIONOIS.

**T**HE Country of LIONOIS is bounded on the East with Bresse, on the West with Beau-jolois, Forreft, and Auvergne; on the North, with Burgundy Duchy; and on the South, with Dauphine, and a part of Languedoc. So called from Lions the chief City; and under that Title made an Earldom by Charles the Gros, in the cantoning and dismembring of the Kingdom of Burgundy. The Earldom containing at that time not only Lionois it self, but also Forreft and Beau-jolois, before described. The Earls herof were at first only Provincial Governours; but under the distractions of the German Empire, they shifted for themselves, and became hereditary: but long it held not in one hand. For first, the Earldom of Forreft, and the Lordship or Signeury of Beau-jen being taken out of it about the year 990, the rest of the Estate fell in some tract of time to the Bishops and Church of Lion; but under the Sovereignty of the French Kings, as Lords Paramount of it.

The places in it of most note are, 1. *Macon*, (Maifconum) a Bishops See, situate on the Saône, anciently a distinct Earldom from that of Lion, one of the five (as that of Lion was another) which made up the Dukedom of Burgundy on this side of the Saône: one of the Earls herof, called William, flourishing in the year 1000, or thereabouts; whose Son and Successor, named Otto, married Elizabeth daughter of Humbert, the first Earl of Mairienne, (a Title afterwards exchanged for that of Savoy.) Continuing from some Ages after in this Possession, it was purchased of William the last Earl herof, and of Elizabeth his Wife, by King Lewis the 9th; and afterwards subjected to the Jurisdiction and Court of Lion, as it still continueth. 2. *Eyschall*, on the Rhodan, on the South of Lion, opposite to Vienne, the chief City of the Lower Dauphin. 3. *Dandilli*, 4. *Francheville*, 5. *Chamont*, and 6. *Lebrelle*, all somewhat Weitward of that River, but not much observable. 7. Lions it self, pleasantly seated on the confluence of the Saône and the Rhodan, anciently a Roman Colony, (testified by many old Inscriptions) and honoured with a magnificent Temple, dedicated by the Cities of France, to Augustus Caesar: now the most famous Mart of France, and an University; by our Latin Writers called *Lugdunum*. These Marts in former times were holden at Geneva, from thence removed hither by King Lewis the 11th, for the enriching of his own Kingdom. When Julius the second had excommunicated Lewis the 12th, he commanded by his Apostolical Authority, that they should be returned to Geneva again: but therein his pleasure was never obeyed; the Marts continuing still at LIONS, as a place more convenient and capacious for that great resort of French, Dutch, and Italian Merchants, which frequent the same. As for the University, questionless it is very ancient, being a seat of Learning in the time of Caius Caligula. For in those times, before an Altar could be raised to Augustus Caesar in the Temple spoken of before; this Caligula did institute some exercises of the Greek and Roman Eloquence: the Victor to be honoured according to his merit: the Vanquished either to be servilized, or with their own tongues to blot and expunge their Writings, or to be drowned in the River adjoining. Hence that of Juvenal, *Ut Lugdunensem Rhe-tor didicimus ad aram*, applied to dangerous Undertakings. In the time of the Romans first coming into Gaul, it was

the chief City of the *Hedui*, and *Scutians*, afterwards the *Metropolis* of *Lugdunensis Prima*. The Archbishop herof, is the *Metropolitan* of all France; and was so in the time of S. Irenaeus, one of the renowned Fathers in the Primitive Church, who was Bishop herof.

In this Town lived Peter Waldo, a wealthy Citizen, about the time of Frederick Barbarossa, Emperor of Germany; who being a devout and conscientious man, sensible of the many errors and corruptions in the Church of Rome, distributed the greatest part of his Riches amongst the poor, and betook himself to meditation, and studying of the holy Scriptures. In the carnal eating of C.H.R.I.S.T's Body, the fabrication of the Cup in the blessed Sacrament, in matter of Purgatory, the Supremacy, adoration of Images, invocation of the Saints departed, and many other points of moment, he held opinions contrary to those of Rome, and little different from those of the present Reformed Churches. And yet it may not be denied, but that amongst some good Whets, there were many Tares; which gave the pulchre colour to their Advocates to exclaim against them. Being much followed in regard of his Piety and Charity, he got unto himself and them the name of *Paupers of Lugdunum*, or the *Poor men of Lion*; given in derision and contempt. Afterwards they were called *Waldenses*, by the name of *Waldo*, the beginner of this Reformation; and by that name opposed and writ against by Fryer Thomas of Walden. The French, according to their manner of pronunciation, drawing the *L*, and changing the *W* into *V*, call them commonly *Vandais*; by which name they occur in the stories of that State and Language. But Lions proving no safe place for them, they retired into the more desert parts of Languedoc; and spreading on the banks of the River Avey, obtained the name of *Albigenses*, as before was said. Supported by the two last Earls of Toulouse, they became very martial and insolent; inasmuch that they murdered Trismund their Vifcount in Beziers, and dashed out the teeth of their Bishop, having taken Sanctuary in S. Magdalen Church, one of the Churches of that City. Forty years after which high out-rage, the Divine Providence gave them over to the hand of the Croisades, under the conduct of the French Kings, and many other noble Adventurers, who sacrificed them in the self same Church, wherein they had spilled the blood of others. About the year 1250, after a long and bloody War, they were almost rooted out of that Country allo. The remnants of them, being bettered by this affliction, betook themselves unto the Mountains lying betwixt Dauphine, Provence, Piemont, and Savoy, where they lived a godly and laborious life; painfully tilling the ground, rebuilding Villages, which formerly had been destroyed by War; teaching the very Rocks to yield good pasture to their Cattel: inasmuch as places which before their coming thither, scarce yielded four Crows yearly, were made under 350 Crows a year, by their care and industry. *Lefcivinusus* in speech they used not: *Blasphemy* they abhorred; nor was the name of *Devil* (in the way of execration) ever heard amongst them; as their very Enemies could not but confess, when they were afterward in troubles. The Crimes alleged against them, were, That when they came into any of the neighbouring Churches, they made no address unto the Saints, nor bowed before such Croffes as were erected in the High-ways, and Streets of Towns. Great crimes assuredly, when greater could not be produced! And so they lived, neither embracing the Pope's *Doctrines*, nor submitting unto his *Supremacy*, for the space of 300 years, untouched, unquestioned; even till the latter end of the reign of King Francis the first. But then

the Persecution raging against the Lutherans, they were accused, condemned, and barbarously murdered, in the *Massacres* of *Merindol*, and *Cabrier*, before mentioned. After which time, joyning themselves with the rest of the *Protestant* party, they lost the name of *Vandais*, which called before; and pass in the account of the Reformed Churches of France; enjoying the same privileges and freedom of Conscience, as others of the Reformed do. And though I look not on these men, and their Congregations, as Founders of the *Protestant* Church, or of the same Church with them, as I see some do; yet I behold them as *Assessors* of some Doctrinal Truths, and professed Enemies of the Errors and Corruptions of the Church of Rome, and therein as the Predecessors of the present *Protestants*.

The old Inhabitants of this Tract, were a part of the *Hedui*, that Nation overpeering not this Country only, but *Bourbonnois*, with the whole Dukedom of Burgundy. And of these *Hedui*, the *Isabrie* are thought by some learned men to have been a Tribe, who piling over the *Alpes*, together with the *Senones*, and others of the *Gallick* Nations, possessed themselves of those parts of Italy which now make up the Dukedoms of *Milans*, *Farnes*, *Mantua*, with the parts adjoining. The residue of the story which concerns this Country we have had before.

## 21. The Dukedom of Burgundy.

**T**HE Dukedom of BURGUNDY hath on the East the French County, and some part of Savoy, on the West, *Bourbonnois*; on the North, *Champagne*; on the South, *La Bresse*, *Lionois*, and some part of *Beau-jolois*. A Province so well watered with pleasant and profitable Rivers, that as Queen Katharine de Medicis used to say of France, That it had more fair Rivers than all Europe; so we may say of this Country, That it hath more fine Rivers than all France: here being the Rivers of 1. *Armançon*, 2. *Serein*, 3. *Yonne*, 4. *Torney*, 5. *Valence*, 6. *Doue*, 7. *Brue*, 8. *Sein*, 9. *Louche*, and 10. *Saône*, (the Araris of the ancient Writers) this last dividing the two Burgundies from one another. Yet notwithstanding this great plenty of Waters, the Country generally lies fruitful than the rest of France: hardly yielding sufficient for its own Inhabitants, except Wines only.

Chief Cities in it are, 1. *Dijon*, the birth-place of S. Bernard's seated upon the Saône and Loube, in a Champaign Country: The Town large, populous, and of much resort, as being the Seat of the Governour, and *Parliamentary* for the Province: a Parliament being here erected, *Ans. 1476*. Well fortified on all parts, but especially defended by a strong Castle, called *Talente*, situate on a hill adjoining. It is called *Dreio* in the *Latine*: the Bishop herof *Divionensis*, 2. *Chalon*, (in *Latine*, *Caballinnum*) called for distinctions sake, *Chalon upon Saône*, to difference it from *Chalon upon Marne*, in *Champagne*: a Bishops See also, as the other is; and gives name to that Noble Family of *Chalons*, (out of which the Princes of Orange are extracted) being one of the four ancient Families of Burgundy, the other three, *Vienne*, *Neuchâtel*, and *Virgny*. 3. *Auxois*, by *Præmoly* called *Angustodunum*, the chief City of the *Hedui*: now a Bishops See, heretofore the chief of all the Country; some marks of the old splendour being still to be seen; now very ordinary and mean, beautified only with some fair Churches, which the ruines of Time have not yet demolished. 4. *Beaune*, seated on the *Burgeoise*, in the best and richest soil of all Burgundy; and yielding the best Wines in all France:

remarkable for an Hospital of so fair a building, that it is thought equal to any Princes Palace in Europe; and an impregnable Castle built by King Lewis XII. 5. *Alize*, now a small Village, but of great name and power in the time of *Cesar*, then called *Alexia*, the chief Fortresses of *Vercingetorix*, besieged herein by the said *Cesar*, but so besieged, that he had 70000 men in the Town for defence of the place, and an Army of 300000 *Gauls* at the back of *Cesar*, to relieve their Fellows. So that he was fain to fortify his Camp with two Walls, the one against them within the City, and the other against them without: which done, he kept such diligent watch and ward on both sides, that the besieged heard sooner of the discomfiture of their friends, than they did of their coming. Which fatal news being brought unto them, the Town was yielded. And *Vercingetorix* bravely mounted, rode round about *Cesar*; then sitting in his Chair of State, disarmed himself, took off his Horles caparisons; and laying all upon the ground, fate down at *Cesar's* feet, and became his Prisoner. 6. *Tournus*, encompassed with the *Sosne*. 7. *Semur*, consisting of three parts, each of them severally walled, and strongly fortified. 8. *Verdun*. 9. *Nancy*. 10. *St. Ligier*, famous for Medicinal Baths. 11. *Noyers*, on the borders towards *Champagne*. 12. *Auxerre*, by *Antonine* called *Antiodorum*, of most note for the Council held here, Anno 627. the Country about which, is called *Auxerrois*; and was an Earldom of itself. The Title and Possession of that *Peter* Earl of *Auxerre*, who was the third Emperour of the *Latines* reigning in *Constantinople*; to whom it came in Marriage with his first Wife *Agnes*, the Daughter of the last Earl of the former Race. On the failure of which house, it fell unto that of *Chalons*, by the Marriage of *Jabel*, Niece of the said *Peter*, by his Brother *Robert*, to *John* of *Chalons*, Earl of *Burgundy*: to whom succeeded *John* of *Chalons*, his eldest Son by that *Vener*. (his second Wife) and finally, was sold by *John* of *Chalons*, great Grandchild of the said *John* Earl of *Burgundy*, to *Charles* the Fifth of *France*, An. 1370. by whom united to the Crown; subjected to the Parliament of *Paris*, and made part of *Champagne*. Here is also within this Country, the great and famous Monastery of *Cîteaux*; the Mother of so many Religious Houses dispersed up and down in Europe; from hence denominated, and subject to the Discipline and Rules hereof.

Within the limits of this Dukedom, (on the South parts of it) stands the Earldom of *CHAROLLOIS*, heretofore the Title of the eldest Son of the Dukes of *Burgundy*: so called from *Charveller*, the chief Town hereof, situate in the borders of it, towards *La Bresse*: seized upon with the rest of this Dukedom, by *Lewis* XI. immediately on the death of Duke *Charles* the Warlike: restored again to *Philip* the Second, King of *Spain*, by *Henry* the Second, of *France*, on the Peace made at *Cambray*, and subjected to the Parliament of *Dole* in the County of *Burgundy*, as a part or member of that Estate. So that neither the *Gouverneur* of the Dukedom for the French King, nor the Parliament of *Dijon*, have any thing to do in it. The Arms hereof are *Gules*, a Lion passant regardant Or, armed *Azure*.

The ancient Inhabitants of the whole Dukedom, according to the limits before laid down, were the *Helvi*, one of the most potent Nations of all *Gaul*: who calling in the Romans to aid them in their quarrels against the *Sequani* and *Auverni*, made them all subject unto Rome. In the prosperity whereof, they made up the Province of *Lugdunensis Prima*, of which *Lions* was the Metropolis or principal City. Afterwards, in the division of the French Kingdom of *Burgundy*, by *Charles* the Bald; this part thereof, being called the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, on

this side of the *Sosne*, was cantoned into the five Earldoms of *Dijon*, *Chalon*, *Autun*, *Lions*, and *Macon*: whereof the three first laid together by *Odo* or *Eudes* King of *France*, during the Minority of *Charles* the Simple, were given unto his Brother *Richard* (both Sons of *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*) under the title and title of Duke of *Burgundy*. The Issue of this *Robert* failing, it fell unto another *Robert*, Son of *Hugh* Capet, King of *France*: and the Male-issue failing of that Line also, it was devolved (partly by escheat for want of Heirs male; and partly in the Right and Title of the Heir-general) to King *John* of *France*, the Son of *Philip* de *Valois*, and of *Joan* his Wife, one of the Daughters of *Robert* the Third; who with the consent of *Charles* his eldest Son, firnamed the Wise, gave it unto his second Son *Philip*, (more worthily firnamed the Hardy) together with the Marriage of the Heir of *Flanders*, *Artois*, and the County of *Burgundy*. An argument of no great Wildom; as was judiciously observed by King *Lewis* the Eleventh. For by this means, those great Estates being united in one person, and afterwards these Estates improved by as prosperous Marriages; this House of *Burgundy* grew formidable to the Kings themselves, who never left practising against it, till they had brought it to ruin; and once again united this Dukedom to their own Estates, from which at first it was dismembered.

#### The Dukes of Burgundy.

- 890 1 *Richard* of *Saxony*, the second Son of *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*, Brother of *Eudes*, and Father of *Rodolph*, Kings of *France*.
- 938 2 *Gilbert*, the second Son of *Richard*.
- 964 3 *Obis*, Son of *Hugh* Earl of *Paris*, firnamed the Great, and Brother of *Hugh* Capet, King of *France*; was Duke of *Burgundy*, in right of his Wife the Daughter of *Gilbert*.
- 975 4 *Henry*, the Brother of *Obis*.
- 1001 5 *Robert*, King of *France*, Son of *Hugh* Capet, succeeded in the Dukedom, on the death of his Uncle *Henry*.
- 1004 6 *Robert* II. Son of this *Robert*, and Brother of *Henry* King of *France*.
- 1075 7 *Hugh*, the Nephew of *Robert*, by his Son *Henry*, became afterwards a Monk of *Clugny*.
- 1097 8 *Odo*, or *Obis* II. Brother of *Hugh*.
- 1102 9 *Hugh* II. Son of *Obis* the Second.
- 1124 10 *Oder*, or *Obis* III. Son of *Hugh* the Second.
- 1165 11 *Hugh* III. the Companion, but great Enemy of our *Richard* the First, in the Wars of the Holy Land.
- 1192 12 *Oder*, or *Obis* IV. Son of *Hugh* the Third.
- 1218 13 *Hugh* IV. an Adventurer with King *Lewis* the Ninth in the Holy Land.
- 1273 14 *Robert* III. Son of *Hugh* IV. which *Robert* was the Father of *Margaret*, the Wife of *Lewis* Hutin, King of *France* and *Navarre*; and of *Joan*, the Wife of *Philip* de *Valois*, French King, and Grandmother of *Philip* the Hardy, after Duke of *Burgundy*.
- 1308 15 *Hugh* V. Son of *Robert* the Third.
- 1315 16 *Eudes*, the Brother of *Hugh*, was Earl of *Burgundy* also, in right of his Wife.
- 1349 17 *Philip*, the Grandchild of *Eudes* by his only Son *Philip*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, by descent, (who if he had lived, had been also Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*, in right of *Margaret* his Wife.) But dying young and without

without Issue, he was succeeded in all his Titles and Estates, by

- 1363 18 *Philip* II. firnamed the Hardy, Son of *John* King of *France*, Son of *Philip* de *Valois*, and of *Joan* Daughter of *Robert* the third, by King *John* his Father, with the consent of *Charles* the 5th. his Brother, (in whom the right of this Dukedom was then pretended to remain) made Duke of *Burgundy*, and married *Margaret* Daughter of *Lewis* de *Malsin* (and consequently Heir of *Flanders*, and the County of *Burgundy*) the Widow of his Predecessor.
- 1404 19 *John*, firnamed the Proud, Son of *Philip* the second, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, and Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*.
- 1419 20 *Philip* III. firnamed the Good, who added most of the Netherlands to his Estate.
- 1467 21 *Charles* the Warlike, Earl of *Charolais*, Son of *Philip* the Good. After whose death, slain by the *Switzers* at the battle of *Nancy*, *Lewis* the eleventh seized upon this Dukedom, An. 1476. pretending an Escheat thereof, for want of Heirs males; and so uniting it for ever to the Crown of *France*: as by like colour of Escheat, King *John* had formerly entred on it, and given it unto *Philip* his younger Son, to the prejudice of the Earls of *Exeter*, descended from the daughter and heir of *Lewis* Hutin, and of *Margaret* his Wife, the elder Sister of the Mother of the said King *John*.

Of the great Wealth and Potency of these last Dukes of *Burgundy*, we shall speak further when we come to the description of *Belgium*: the accession whereof to their Estates, made them equal to most Kings in *Christendom*. But for their Arms, which properly belonged to them as Dukes of *Burgundy*, they were Bendwise of *Or* and *Azure* a Border *Gules*. Which Coat is usually marshalled in the Scurcheons of the Kings of *Spain*; that of the Earldom being omitted, though in their possession. The reasons of which are probably (for I go but by guess) partly because this being the older and Paternal Coat, comprehends the other; and partly to keep on foot the memory of this Title to the Dukedom it self, in right of which he holdeth such a great Estate.

## 22. The County of Burgundy.

THE County of *BURGUNDY* hath on the East, the Mountain *Jura*, which parts it from *Switzerland*; on the West, the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, from which divided by the *Sosne*, on the North, a branch of the Mountain *Vange*, which runneth betwixt it and *Lorraine*; on the South, *La Bresse*. It is reckoned to be 90 miles in length, about 60 in breadth: and with the Provinces of *Dauphine*, *La Bresse*, and *Provence*, made up the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Sosne*: on the Eastern side of which it is wholly situate. This part thereof, now generally called the French *Comte*, or the *Free County*, because not under the command of the French Kings; but living in a more free Estate than any Subjects of that Kingdom.

The County in some parts very Mountainous, but those Mountains yielding excellent Vineyards, and having, in recompence of a little barrenness, an intermixture of most pleasing and fruitful Valleys, swelling with

plenty of all natural commodities useful unto the life of man; and for the variety of fresh Streams, and delightful Rivers, inferior only to the *Dutchy*.

The principal Towns and Cities of it are, 1. *Bezancon*, called by *Cesar*, *Vesontio*, then the chief City of the *Sequani*, as afterwards the Metropolis of the Province entitled, *Maxima Sequanorum*; by consequence an Archbishop See. Stated betwixt two Mountains on the banks of the River *Doux*, by which it is almost encompassed, such artificial Fortifications being added to it, as make it very strong both by Art and Nature. But this is an Imperial City, not subject to the Government and Command of the Earls of *Burgundy*, honoured with a small University, founded here An. 1540. by Pope *Julius* the second, and *Charles* the fifth. 2. *Dole*, seated on the same River *Doux*; for riches, strength, and beauty, to be preferred before any in all the County; of which it is the Parliament-City, and consequently of most resort for dispatch of business. Anciently it was an University for the study of the Civil Laws; but now the University is devoured by a College of *Jesuits*: who fearing lest the Doctrine of the Reformed Churches might creep in amongst the people, not only have debared them the use of the *Protestants* Books; but have expressly forbid them to talk of *GOD*, either in a good fort or in a bad. 3. *Salines*, so called from its salt Fountains; out of which came the greatest part of the Earls Revenue: in which respect, or that it was the title of *Obis* the Son of *Frederick* *Barbarossa*, before he did attain the Earldom; the Earls of *Burgundy* since that time, and the Emperors of *Germany*, in their right, retained the name of Lords of *Salines*, in their usual title. A City honoured for a while with the Seat of the Parliament, removed thither from *Dole* by King *Lewis* the eleventh, at such time as he held this Country, withholding to him (being a wife and politic Prince) for many wholesome Ordinances, still observed amongst them. 4. *Poligny*, the *Balliage* of the *Lomere*; as 5. *Vescal* is of the *Higher Burgundy*. 6. *Arbois*, noted for the best Wines, and 7. *Laxoal*, for medicinal Baths. 8. *Nazareth*, on the borders of *Switzerland*, fortified with a very strong Castle; the ordinary feat and retreat from business, of the first Prince of *Orange*, of the House of *Chalons*, who had great possessions in this Country. 9. *Gray*. 10. *Cîtelet-Chalon*. 11. *Quingey*. 12. *Orgelet*. Here is also the great and famous Abbey of *Clugny*, near the Town of *Beaune*; out of which so many Monasteries in the Western Church, had their first Original.

The old Inhabitants of this County, were the *Sequani*, a potent Nation, contending with the *Helvi* and *Auverni*, for the Sovereignty of *Gaul*, till the strife was ended by the Romans, under whom it made, together with *Switzerland*, the Province of *Maxima Sequanorum*. In the declining of which Empire, it fell to the *Burgundians*; and by *Rodolph* the last, King of the French, the Kingdom of *Burgundy* was given to *Conrade* the second Emperor of *Germany*. After that, reckoned as a part of the German Empire, and governed by such Earls or Provincial Officers, as those Emperors sent thither. *Obis* of *Flanders*, Son to a Sister of the Emperor *Conrade*, was the first that held it as Proprietary; the other three whom *Paradise* before him in his Catalogue of the Earls of *Burgundy*, being merely Official. It was first united to the *Dutchy*, by the marriage of *D. Eudes*, with *Joan* the Countess. But no Issue coming out of this bed, it fell into the House of *Flanders*; and with the Heir of *Flanders*, unto *Philip* the Hardy, the first Duke hereof, of the Royal Race of *Valois*, An. 1369. *Philip* the Grandchild of this *Philip*, united most of the *Belgick* Provinces unto his Estate: after whose death, and the death of *Charles* his Son, at the Battle of *Nancy*, the *Dutchy* was surprized by King *Lewis* the eleventh,

as holden of the Crown of France, debated to him for want of Heirs-males. But the County, holden of the Empire, though subdued also by this Lewis, was restored again to Mary the Daughter and Heir of Charles, continuing hitherto in her Issue; as appears evidently by this Catalogue of

#### The Earls of Burgundy.

- 1101 1 *Otho Guillaume*, the first Earl of Burgundy, by the power and aid of *Robert* King of France.
- 1118 2 *Reinald*, Cousin and Heir of *Otho*.
- 1157 3 *Frederick Barbarossa*, Emperor, in right of *Beatrice* his Wife, Daughter of Earl *Reinald*, was Earl of Burgundy.
- 1183 4 *Otho*, the youngest Son of *Frederick*.
- 1200 5 *Otho II.* Duke of *Meranie*, part of the Province of *Tirol* in Germany, was Earl of Burgundy in right of *Beatrice* his Wife, the Daughter of *Otho* the first.
- 1208 6 *Stephen*, Earl of *Chalons*, next Heir of *Gerard* of *Vienne*, and *Joan* his Wife, the second Daughter of *Otho* the first, and Sister of *Beatrice*; acknowledged by his Faction there, for Earl of Burgundy, in the life of *Otho* the second, whom he dispossessed, and left the same unto his Son, to the prejudice of *Alice* the Daughter of *Otho*.
- 1234 7 *John*, Son of *Stephen* de *Chalons*.
- 1269 8 *Hugh* the Son of *John*, married to *Alice* Daughter of *Otho* of *Meranie*; so getting in that pretension also.
- 1279 9 *Othelin*, the Son of *Hugh*, Earl of *Artois* in right of *Maud* his Wife, Daughter of *Robert* Earl of *Artois*.
- 1315 10 *Philip* the Long, King of France; Earl of Burgundy and *Artois*, in right of *Joan* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Othelin*.
- 1331 11 *Ender*, Duke of Burgundy, Husband of *Joan* of France, the eldest Daughter of King *Philip* the Long, and of *Joan* the Countess.
- 1349 12 *Philip*, Duke and Earl of Burgundy, Grandchild of *Ender*, and of *Joan* his wife, by their Son *Philip*.
- 1361 13 *Margaret*, the Widow of *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, and second Daughter of *Philip* the Long, and of *Joan* the Countess, was Countess of Burgundy and *Artois*, after the death of her Cousin *Philip*.
- 14 *Lewis* de *Malain*, Earl of *Flanders* by his Father, and of Burgundy and *Artois*, by his Mother.
- 1383 15 *Philip II.* called the *Hardy*, Duke of Burgundy, by the gift of King *John* his Father, with the content and approbation of his Brother *Charles* the fifth, was Earl of Burgundy, *Flanders*, and *Artois*; as also, Duke of *Nevers* and *Rethel*, in right of *Margaret* his Wife, sole Daughter of *Lewis* de *Malain*.
- 1404 16 *Antony* the Proud, Duke and Earl of Burgundy, his younger Brother *Philip*, succeeding in the Earldoms of *Nevers* and *Rethel*.
- 1419 17 *Philip III.* called the *Good*, Duke and Earl of Burgundy.
- 1467 18 *Charles* the *Warlike*, Duke and Earl of Burgundy.

- 1476 19 *Mary*, the Daughter of *Charles*, married to *Maximilian* of *Austria*, Son of *Frederick* the third, Emperor of Germany; in which honour he succeeded his Father.
- 1482 20 *Philip IV.* Son of *Mary* and *Maximilian*, King of *Castile*, in right of his Wife *Joan*, daughter to *Ferdinand* and *Isabel*, King of *Castile*, &c.
- 1506 21 *Charles*, the Son of *Philip*, King of Spain, and Emperor of Germany, by the name of *Charles* the fifth.
- 1558 22 *Philip V.* of Burgundy, and the second of Spain.
- 23 *Philip VI.* of Burgundy, and the third of Spain.
- 24 *Philip VII.* of Burgundy, and the fourth of Spain; in whom resteth the possession of the Country of Burgundy, and the Earldom of *Charolais*; herein not troubled by the French, upon the death of *Charles* the *Warlike*; partly, because it was accounted as a Feit of the Empire, but principally, for fear of giving offence to the Cantons of *Switzerland*, upon whom it bordereth; jealous enough already of the greatness and power of France, and so not willing to admit such a potent Neighbour.

The Arms of this Earldom are *Azure*, a Lion rampant Or, Some of Billets *Argent*.

### 23. The Islands in the Aquitain and Gallick Ocean.

HAVING thus took a view of the several Provinces within the Continent of France, let us next look upon the ISLANDS which belong unto it, dispersed in the Mediterranean Sea, and the Western Ocean. Those in the Mediterranean Sea, are of little note; as 1. the Isles of *Ereux*, and 2. *Pomagne*, lying against *Provence*; 3. *Magnelone*, lying against *Languedoc*; and 4. *L'Anguade*, betwixt both, at the mouth of the *Rhone*; of which there is nothing to be said, but that those of *Ereux* are thought to be the *Stoebades* of *Pliny*; and his *Blason*, to be *Anguade*. And if the Isles of *Ereux* be the same with the *Stoebades*, then one of them must be the *Lerina* which we find in *Pliny*; of most note afterwards for a Monastery founded in it, which gave name to *Vincentius Lerinensis*, or rather *Lirinensis*, as most Writers call him: the Island now called *Isula Sanbi Honorati*, or Saint *Honoratus*, as *Massonus* telleth us. And of as little note in the Western Ocean, are *Belle Isle*, against *Vannes* in *Bretagne*; the *Ile de Din*, having in it two or three good Villages; and *Marmorset*, plentiful in Salt, and beautified with a Monastery called the *White Abby*. Of which three last, that of *Edle Isle* hath been of late fortified by Art, as of old by Nature, that it is thought to be impregnable: the Abbey of the last endowed with so plentiful a Revenue, that it was thought a competent preferment for *Ambrosine* of *Bourbon*, bafe Brother to King *Henry* the Fourth, to be made Lord Abbot of the same. Those of most note are, 1. *Oleron*, and 2. *Re*, on the Coast of *Aquitain*; and those of 3. *Jarvis*, 4. *Gensley*, 5. *Sarke*, and 6. *Alderney*, on the shores of *Normandy*: Of which, the four last are under the Kings of England; the rest possessed by the French.

1. *OLERON* is an Island situate over against the Province of *Chalosse*, and South unto the Isle of *Re*, from which little distant. It is the biggest of the two, and makes yearly a very great quantity of Salt, wherewith most of the Provinces of the Western Ocean use to be furnished: But it is safe of access, and not very defensible; which makes it of less note both in ancient and modern stories. The principal Town of it is called *Oleron*, by the name of the Island. One thing there is for which indeed this Island is of special fame, and that is, that the *Maritime Laws*, which for near 500 years have generally been received by all the States of the Christian World which frequent the Ocean, (the *Rhodian Laws* being antiquated and worn out of use) for regulating of Sea-affairs, and deciding of Maritime Controversies, were declared and established here, and from thence called the *Laws of Oleron*. And here they were declared and established by King *Richard* the First of England, as Lord Paramount of the Seas, immediately on his return from the Holy Land: this Dand being then in his possession, as a Member of his Dukedom of *Aquitain*: *Que quidem Leges & Statuta per Dominum Richardum quandam Regem Anglia, in reditu a Terra Sancta, correcta fuerunt, interpretata, declarata, & in Insula de Oleron publicata & nominata in Gallica Lingua La Loy d'Oleron*, &c. faith an old Record which I find cited in a MS. Discourse of my late learned Friend Sir *John Burroughs*, (once Keeper of the Records in the Tower of London, but afterwards Principal King of Arms, by the name of *Garter*) entitled, *The Sovereignty of the British Seas*. So powerful were the Kings of England in the former times, as to give Laws to all that traded on the Ocean.

2. The Isle of *REE* is situate over against *Rochel*: to which it served for an Out-work on that side thereof. It is in length ten English miles, and about half as much in breadth, well fortified with deep Marishes at the entries of it; to which the many Salt-pits every where intermingled, add a very great strength. Chief places in it are, 1. *La Butte de Mors*, 2. *St. John de Monts*, 3. *St. Hilary*, 4. *St. Martin*, the largest and strongest of them all; from whence the whole Island hath sometimes been called *St. Martin*. After the taking of this Town by *Lewis XIII.* *An. 1622.* (the Duke of *Soubize* then commanding in it for those of *Rochel*) it was very well fortified, and since made unfortunately famous for the defeat of the English Forces under the Command of *George Duke of Buckingham*, sent thither to recover the Town and Island, on the instigation of *Soubize*, who before had lost it, *An. 1628.*

3. *JARSET*, by *Antonine* called *Cesarea*, situate about ten miles from the Coast of *Normandy*, within the view and prospect of the Church of *Constance*, part of which *Diosey* it was: in length containing 11 miles, 6 in breadth, and in circuit about 33. It is generally very fruitful of Corn, wherewith they have not only enough for themselves, but some over-plus to barter at *St. Malo*, with the Spanish Merchants: and of an Air not very much disposed to Difeases, unless it be an Ague in the end of Harvest, which they call *Les Serzembrer*. The Country stands much upon Incolours, the hedges of the ground well stored with Apples, and those Apples making store of *Sider*, which is their ordinary drink: watered with many pleasant Rivulets, and good fure of Fish-ponds, yielding a Carp for sale and largeness inferior unto none in Europe, excepting those of *Gensley*, which generally are somewhat bigger, but not better relished. The people, for the most part, more inclinable to Husbandry, than to Trades or Merchandise; and therein differing very little from

those of *Gensley*, who are more for Merchandise than Tillage. It containeth in it 12 Parishes or *Villages*, having Churches in them, besides the Members of the *Seigniorie*, and the chief men of the Country. The principal Church is *St. Andrew*, where is the *Cath*, or *Parish* for all the Island. It is about the biggest of an ordinary Market-Town in England: situate on the edge of a little Bay, fortified on the one side with a small Block-house called *Mont St. Andrew*; but on that side which is next the Town, with a very strong Castle, called *Fort Elizabeth*, situate upon craggy Rocks, and encompassed with two arms of the Sea: so named from Queen *Elizabeth*, who built it to assure the Island against the French, and furnished it with thirty pieces of Ordnance, and all other necessaries. There is also on the East-side, opposite to the City of *Constance*, high mounted on steep and craggy Rocks, the strong Castle of *Musit Orgueille*; of great antiquity, repaired by King *Henry* the Fifth; now furnished with forty pieces of Cannon, and made the ordinary residence of the Governours for the Kings of England.

4. On the North-West of *Jarvis*, lyeth the Island of *GENSET*, called *Sarnia* by *Antonine*; in form *Triangular*, each side of nine miles in length. The Country is of as rich a soil as the other of *Jarvis*, but not so well cultivated and manured; the poorer people here, being more given to *Manufactures*, (especially to the knitting of Stockings and Waiscoats) and the rich to Merchandise; many of which are Masters of good stout Barques, with which they traffick into England, and other places. The whole Island contains ten Villages with Churches; the principal of which, *Saint Peter's Port*; a very neat and well built Town; with a safe Peer for the benefit of Merchants, and the securing of the Haven, capable of handsome Barques: a Market-Town, beautified with a very fair Church, and honoured with the *Plaiderie*, or Court of Justice. Opposite whereto, in a little Ill, standeth the Castle of *Cornet*, taking up the whole circuit and dimensions of it; environed on all sides with the Sea, having one entrance only, and that very narrow: well fortified with Works of Art, and furnished with no less than 80 pieces of Ordnance for the defence of the Island; but chiefly, to command the adjoining Harbour, capable of 500 as good Ships as any fail on the Ocean. A piece of great importance to the Realm of England, and might prove utterly destructive of the Trade thereof, if in the hands of any Nation that were strong in shipping. For that cause made the Ordinary *Seal* of the English Governours, though of late times not so much honoured with the presence of those Governours, as a place of that consequence ought to be. Pertaining unto *Gensley*, are two little Isles, the one called *Jet-bow*, the Governours Park, wherein are some few fallow-Deer, and good plenty of Conies: the other named *Arme*, some three miles in compass; a dwelling heretofore of *Franciscan Friars*; now not inhabited, but by *Phisians*; of which, amongst the shrubs and bushes, there is very good store.

5. *ALDERNET*, by *Antonine* called *Arice*, by the French, *Avrigny*, and *Avrigny*, is situate over against the Cape of the *Lexobii*, in the Dukedom of *Normandy*, which the Mariners at this day call the *Hagge*: distant from which, but six miles only. Besides many dwelling-houses scattered up and down, there is one pretty Town or Village of the same name with the Island, consisting of about an hundred Families; and having, not far off, an Harbour made in the fashion of a Semi-circle, which they call *La Crabbie*. The whole about 8 miles in compass, of very difficult access, by reason of the high Rocks and Precipices which encompass it on every side, and with

with a small force easily defensible, if thought worth attempting.

6. And so is also *SARR*, the adjoining Island, being in compass six miles, not known by any special name unto the Ancients; and to say truth, not peopled till the fifth year of *Q. Elizabeth*: who then granted it in fee-farm to *Helian de Carteret*, the Seigneur of *St. Omer*, in the Isle of *Jersey*, who from thence planted it, and made Estates out of it to several Occupants, so that it may contain now about 60. Households. Before, which time it served only for a Common, or Beasts Pasture, to those of *Gersy*: save that there was an Hermitage, and a little Chapel, for the use of such as the solitariness of the place invited to those retirements.

These two last Islands are subject to the Governour of *Jersey*; all four, to the Crown of *England*: holden in right of the Dukedom of *Normandy*, to whose realm they anciently belonged; and of which now the sole remainance is in the power of the *English*. Attempted often by the *French*, (the two first I mean) since they seized on *Normandy*, but always with repulse and loss: the people being very affectionate to the *English* Government, under which they could not hope for. Their Language the *Norman French*, (though the better sort of men speak the *English* also) their Law, the *Grand Coutume* of *Normandy*, attempted and applied to the use of this people in their suits and business, by the *Bailiffs* and *Justiciars* of the two chief Islands. Their Religion, for the main, is that of the *Reformed Churches*: the Government in *Jersey*, by the Dean thereof, Suffragan heretofore to the Bishop of *Constance*, now to the Bishop of *Winchester*; in *Gersy*, by a mixt Consistory of Clergie and *Lay-Eldests*, according to the New-Model of *Geneva*: a Government first introduced in both Islands, *An. 1565*, being the eighth year of Queen *Elizabeth*, and abolished again in *Jersey*, *An. 1619*, being the seventeenth of King *James*.

But to return again to the story of *France*, thow which we have now made our progress both by Sea and Land: It took this name from the *Franks* or *French*, a German people, who in the wane of the *Roman* Empire possessed themselves of it: not mentioned by that name by *Cæsar*, *Strabo*, *Ptolemy*, or any of the more ancient Writers. Nor was it taken up by them, for ought appears, till an hundred years after the death of *Ptolemy*: the first express mention of them, occurring in the Reign of *Gallienus*; then vanquishing the Coasts of *Gaul*, and joining with *Posthumus* the Rebel, against that Emperor. Afterwards often spoken of in the course of the *Roman* stories, under the Empire of *Claudian*, *Probus*, *Dioclesian*, and the Sons of *Constantine*: though only in the way of pillage and depredation. Their habitation in those times, was from the meeting of the *Rhene* with the River *Moselle*, not far from *Frankford*, where they confined upon the particular Nations of the *Bructeri*, *Sicambri*, *Sali*, *Cherusci*, *Frisci*, and *Tentleri*, besides some others of less note; and taking up the Countries of *Westphalen*, *Bergen*, *Mark*, and so much of *Cleve* as lieth on the Dutch side of the *Rhene*, the *Langravedom* of *Hessa*, the Duchy of *Guelder*, the Provinces of *Zuaphen*, *Utrecht*, *Oversse*, both *Friesland*, and so much of *Holland* as lieth on the same side of the *Rhene*. United in the name of *Franks*, to shew that liberty or freedom from the yoke of servitude which the *Romans* had endeavoured to impose upon them; and wherewith all the Nations on the other side of the River were supposed to suffer: Governed by *Dukes*, till the year 420, when *Pharamond* first took upon himself the name of

King. *Meroveus* their third King, having dispossessed the Sons of *Clodion*, the Son and Successor of *Pharamond*, was the first that fixed his seat in *Gaul*: when seeing the *Romans* on the one side put to the word by *Theoderick* and the *Goths*; and on the other side by the *Burgundians*, they passed over the *Rhene*, and possessed themselves of the Province of *Germania Secunda*, containing all the *Belgick* Provinces on the French side of that River, together with the *District* of *Capele*, *Gallic*, and the rest of *Cleve*, then calling in the account of *Gaul*. His Victories and Fortunes were inherited by *Chilperic*, his Son and Successor, who added *Picardy*, *Champaine*, and the Isle of *France*, to the former Conquest; took *Paris*, and made it the seat of his Kingdom. Afterwards, when they had fully seated themselves here, and thereby opened a free passage to the rest of the Country, they quickly made themselves Masters of all that which formerly had been possessed by the *Romans*; whom they ousted of their last hold in *Seissions*, under *Clonius* their fifth King, who also took *Aquitain*, and the parts adjoining, from the *Visi-Goths*, or *Goths* of *Spain*: for these and many signal Victories against the *Almans*, deservedly framed the Great: but greater in submitting to the Faith of *CHRIST*, and receiving *Baptism*, than by all his Victories. *Childebert* and *Cloataire*, the Sons of this *Clonius*, vanquished the *Burgundians*, adding that Kingdom to their own: as *Theoderic* his Grandchild, King of *Mis*, or *Austrasia*, did the Country of *Provence*, resigned unto him by *Amalsuin*, Queen of the *Ostro-Goths*, or *Goths* of *Italy*, by whom it had been wrested from the *Goths* of *Spain*. In the person of *Cloataire* the second, the Realm of *France* impropriately dismembered into many Kingdoms, amongst the Children of *Clonius* the first; that is to say, the Kingdoms of *France*, *Seissions*, *Orleans*, and *Austrasia*, (of which, *Orleans* and *Austrasia* were of long continuance) were again united: whose Successor, *Dagobert* the first, was the last considerable Prince of the *Merovingians*. After this time, the reputation of the French Kings of this Line, began to diminish, scarce doing any thing that might ennoble and commend them to succeeding Ages; or leaving any Monument behind them, but their empty Names: which I shall represent in the following Catalogue, according to their several times: first taking notice, that though the Kings of this first Race did many times divide the Kingdom, as before was said; yet none of them were called Kings of *France*, but those that had their Royal Seat in the City of *Paris*, the rest being called only Kings of *Seissions*, *Mis*, or *Orleans*, according to the name of their principal Cities. And therefore, leaving those to their proper places, we will here only take a survey of those who passed in the common estimate for the Kings of *France*.

#### The Kings of France, of the French or Merovingian Line.

A. Ch.

- 449 1 *Meroveus*, Master of the Horse to *Clodion* the Son of *Pharamond*; from whom this Line of Kings were called *Merovingians*. 10.
- 459 2 *Chilperic*, the Son of *Merove*. 26.
- 485 3 *Clonius*, the first Christian King of the French. 30.
- 515 4 *Childebert*, eldest Son of *Clonius*, his other Brother reigning in their several places. 45.
- 560 5 *Cloataire*, Brother of *Childebert*, first King of the *Seissions*, afterwards sole King of the French.

565

- 565 6 *Cherebert*, Son of *Cloataire*.
- 574 7 *Chilperic II.* King of *Seissions*, and Brother of *Cherebert*, whom he succeeded in the Kingdom. 14.
- 582 8 *Cloataire II.* Son of *Chilperic* the second. 44.
- 619 9 *Dagobert*, Son of *Cloataire* the second. 14.
- 645 10 *Clonius II.* Son of *Dagobert*. 17.
- 663 11 *Cloataire III.* Son of *Cloataire* the second. 4.
- 667 12 *Chilperic III.* Brother of *Cloataire* the third, and Son of *Clonius* the second.
- 680 13 *Theoderic*, Brother of *Chilperic*. 14.
- 694 14 *Clonius III.* Son to *Theoderic*. 5.
- 698 15 *Childebert II.* Brother to *Clonius* the third. 15.
- 716 16 *Dagobert II.* Son of *Childebert* the second. 5.
- 722 17 *Chilperic IV.* Son of *Childebert* the second, and Brother of *Dagobert* the second, opposed by *Charles Martel*, in behalf of *Cloataire* the fourth Son of *Theoderic*, and Brother of *Childebert* the second. 5.
- 727 18 *Theoderic II.* Son of *Dagobert* the second. 15.
- 742 19 *Chilperic V.* Son of *Theoderic* the second, the last of the *Merovingian* Family; deposed by *Pepin*, Son to *Charles Martel*, the Pope giving approbation to his proceedings.

This *Pepin* and his Father *Martel*, were *Mayors* of the Palace to the former Kings; which *Mayres* were originally Controllers of the Kings House, and had nothing to do with the affairs of State. But *Cloataire* the third, to ease himself and his Successors of a burden so weighty, made the *Mayres* Vicars-general of his Empire. From henceforward the Kings followed their pleasures, shewing themselves only on *May-day*; and then seated in a Chariot, adorned with Flowers, and drawn by four Oxen. As for the *Mayres*, he openeth *Paquets*, hearth and dispatcheth Foreign Ambassadors, giveth remedy to the Complaints of the Subjects, maketh Laws, and repealeth them. An Authority somewhat like that of the *Presbiteri*, in the declining times of the *Roman* Empire; or that of the *Sultans* under the *Mahometan* Caliphs, and the Vice-Roys of the old *Egyptian* *Pharaohs*. An Office which had been long born by the Ancestors of this *Martel*, ever since the reign of *Cloataire* the second: in whose time the *Palatine* or *Mayre* was one *Arnulphe*, descended lineally from *Utilo*, the second Son of *Theodon* the first Duke, and Nephew of *Adalgis* the last King of the *Boians*, or *Bavarians*. Which *Utilo* being a Military Prince, and having done good service to *Theoderic* the first King of *Austrasia*, or *Metz*, against the *Danes*, then grievously infesting the Coasts of the *Lower Germany*; was by him made Warden of those Marches, honoured with the Marriage of his Daughter *Pithilda*, and liberally endowed with fair possessions in that Tract. The fourth from *Utilo* was this *Arnulphe*, the first *Mayre* of this House; which Office having long enjoyed, he resigned it to *Ansagis* his eldest Son, (the first who drew unto himself the managery of the whole Estate) and bidding farewell to the affairs of the world, became a Priest, and died Bishop of *Metz*, *Anno* 641. Afterwards Canonized a Saint. *Ansagis* dying in the year 679, left his Authority and Office to his Nephew *Martin*. Son of *Ferdolphus* his younger Brother. But he being slain by *Ebroinus*, one of the Competitors, who at the while enjoyed it: *Pepin* framed the Fat, Son of *Ansagis*, revenging his Cousins death upon *Ebroinus*, and crushing all the opposite Factions which were raised against him, obtained that honour for himself. And having much advanced the affairs of *France*, by the conquest of the *Sueves* and *Frisons*, died in the year 714. Succeeded to in this great Office, after his decease, (for

*Grimold* his only lawful Son, and *Thibaldus* the Son of *Grimold*, whom he had successively substituted in the same, died not long before him) by *Charles* his natural Son, begotten on *Albaida* his Concubine: from his Martial Prowess called *Martel*. Who in his time did to the Kings of *France* great service, especially in routing that vast Army of the *Moor* and *Saracens*, in the Battle of *Tours* before mentioned: thereby not only freeing *France* from the present danger, but adding *Languedoc* to the Crown, formerly in possession of the *Goths* and *Moor*: for which he was created Duke or Prince of the *French*: yet would he not usurp the Kingdom, or the Title of King, though both at his disposal wholly; it being his ordinary saying, that he had rather rule a King, than be one.

To him succeeded *Caroloman* his eldest Son, *An. 741*, who held the Office but a year, and then left it to his Brother *Pepin*. Who being of less moderation than his Father was, made such use of his Power, that partly by that means, and partly under colour of an election, confirmed by Pope *Zachary* the first, he took the Kingdom to himself; and the unfortunate King *Chilperic* had his Poll (havent, and was thrust into a Monastery. For this invidious, both *Pepin* and *Charles* his Son, did many good services for the Pope; destroying, on their quarrel, the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, and giving them most of the Lands which formerly belonged unto the *Exarchs* of *Ravenna*. And on the other side, the Pope to requite these courtesies, confirmed the former in this Kingdom, by their Papal Power (which then began to bear some sway in the Christian World:) and gave the last (besides the opportunity of attaining the Western Empire) the Title of *Most Christian King*, continued ever since unto his Successors. And, to say truth, he well deserved those honours, had they been far greater, by many Victories obtained against the Enemies of the Gospel; the several Heathens by his means converted to the Faith of *CHRIST*; the great abilities he had of Estate and Judgment, enabling him to support the Majesty of the *Roman* Empire. For he not only was sole Monarch of the Kingdom of *France*, not parcelled out as formerly, and in times succeeding, into several petty Kingdoms and Principalities, but had added thereto, by his own proper virtue, the greatest part of *Italy*, the best part of *Germany*, all *Belgium*, the two *Pannonias*, and a great part of *Spain*.

But this vast Empire falling into weak hands, which were not able enough to manage it, decayed in a little time as it was in raising: partly by the unnatural ambition of the Sons of King *Lewis* the Godly, the next Successor of this *Charles*; who to make themselves all Kings, first deposed their Father, and then divided his Estate amongst them, into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *Burgundy*, *France*, *Lorraine*, and *Germany*: four of which falling at last into the hands of strangers, ceased to be *French*, and passed into such Families as proved the greatest Enemies of the Crown of *France*: partly by alienating the best and goodliest Provinces of *France* it self, never again united till these latter days; which made the *French* Kings less considerable both at home and abroad; which we have touched upon before: and partly by the weakness and unworthiness of the Kings of his Race, there being no question to be made, but *Lewis* the *Stammering*, *Charles* the *Bald*, the *Groff*, and the *Simple*, would have found better *Aspirations*, if they had deserved them. For by this means, the issue of this brave Prince grew so depicable in the eyes of their subjects, that first *Edward*, the Son of *Robert* Duke of *Angou*, and after, *Radolph* Duke of *Burgundy*, the Uncle of *Edward* (both of the Race of *Witigandus*, the last Prince

of



of the *Saxons*, (and consequently, both aliens to the House of *Charles*) possessed themselves fevally of the Kingdom. And though they did not hold it long, being depreſſed and over-born by their oppoſite Factions: yet did they lay a fair ground for *Hugh Capet* to build his hopes on: Who being Son of *Hugh the Great* Conſtable of France, and Earl of *Paris*, the Son of *Robert Duke of Anjou*, younger Brother of *Endes*, and near Kinſman of *Rodolph*, never left practiſing his party in the Realm of France, till he had got poſſeſſion of the Regal Diadem, wherewith two Princes of this Houſe had been inveſted formerly by the like Elections. But for the Kings of this ſecond Race, founded by two brave Princes, but on the unjuſt grounds of an Uſurpation, they are theſe that follow.

The ſecond Race of the Kings of France, of the *Carlovinian* or *Boiarian* Line.

A. Ch.

- 751 1 *Pepin*, the Son of *Charles Martel*, ſucceeded in the Office of *Mayre*, An. 742. and having got the Regal Crown, vanquiſhed the *Lombards*, made the *Boiarians* Tributary, and cruſhed the *Saxons*. 18.
- 769 2 *Charles*, ſurnamed the *Great*, the Son of *Pepin*, ſubdued the Kingdom of the *Lombards* and *Saxons*; conquered the *Boiarians* and *Avars*; and vanquiſhed the *Saracens* of *Spain*: Crowned Emperor of the Welt, upon *Chriſtmas-day*, by Pope *Leo* the 3. An. 800. 46.
- 815 3 *Lewis the Godly*, Son of *Charles* King of France, and Emperor, the laſt ſole Monarch of the *French*, depoled by his ambitious and unnatural Sons: the Empire of the *French*, after his deceaſe, being divided into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *Burgundy*, *Germany*, *France*, and *Lorraine*; and France it ſelf diſtracted into many Sovereign Eſtates and Principalities. 26.
- 841 4 *Charles II.* ſurnamed *Calvus*, or the *Bald*, youngſt Son of *Lewis*, King of France, and Emperor; vanquiſhed by *Charles the Groſs*, in the War of *Italy*. 38.
- 879 5 *Lewis II.* ſurnamed *Balbus*, or the *Stammering*, Son of *Charles the Bald*, King of France, and Emperor.
- 881 6 *Lewis III.* with *Caroleman* his Brother, the baſe Sons of *Lewis the Stammering*, Uſurpers of the Throne, in the infancy of *Charles the Simple*.
- 886 7 *Charles III.* ſurnamed *Craſſus*, or the *Groſs*, King of *Germany*, and Emperor; called into France, and elected King, during the minority of *Charles the Simple*. 5.
- 891 8 *Odo*, or *Endes*, Son of *Robert Earl of Anjou*, of the Race of *Witikindus*, the laſt King of the *Saxons*; elected by an oppoſite Faction, outed *Charles the Groſs*. 9.
- 900 9 *Charles IV.* ſurnamed *Simplex*, or the *Simple*, the Poſthumus Son of *Lewis the Stammerer*, reſtored unto the Throne of his Fathers; which after many troubles raiſed againſt him by *Robert the ſecond*, Earl of *Anjou*, (whom he ſlew in Battle) he was forced to reſign. 27.
- 927 10 *Rodolph of Burgundy*, Son of *Richard Duke of Burgundy*, the Brother of *Endes*, ſucceeded on the reſignation of *Charles the Simple*. 2.

- 929 11 *Lewis V.* Son of *Charles the Simple*, ſurnamed *Transmarine*, in regard that during his Fathers troubles he had lived in *England*, reſtored unto the Regal Throne on the death of *Rodolph*: oppoſed therein by *Hugh Earl of Paris* and *Anjou*, the Nephew of *King Endes* by his Brother *Robert* before mentioned.
- 958 12 *Lotharius*, Son of *Lewis* the 4. diſturbed in his poſſeſſion by *Hugh Capet*, the eldeſt Son of the ſaid *Hugh*, on the pretention of that Houſe, by which at laſt he got the Kingdom.
- 977 13 *Lewis V.* Son of *Lotharius*, the laſt King of the Houſe of *Charles the Great*. After whole death, (being King only for a year) the Crown was ſeized on by *Hugh Capet*; *Charles Duke of Lorraine*, Brother of *Lotharius*, and Uncle unto *Lewis* the fifth, being pretermitted.

And now we are come to the preſent Race of the Kings of France, founded in *Hugh Capet*; ſo called from the greatneſs of his head: Son of *Hugh the Great*, Earl of *Paris* and *Anjou*, and Grandchild of *Robert* the ſecond, Earl of *Anjou*: which *Robert* was the Brother of *Endes*, and Couſin-german of *Rodolph*, Kings of France. Who partly by his own wits, but chiefly by the weakneſs of the Mungrel-Iſſue of *Charles the Great*, having got the Diadem, tranſmitted it unto his poſterity; the Crown deſcending in a direct Line from Father to Son, till the death of *Lewis* the tenth, ſurnamed *Hutin*. But here we are to underſtand, that the Realm of France was at that time ſhut up within narrower bounds than it is at preſent: the large and rich Countries of *Champagne*, *Normandy*, *Bretagne*, *Anjou*, *Poitou*, *Langueſc*, and the great Dukedom of *Aquitain*; beſides thoſe Provinces which conſtituted and made up the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, being aliened and diſmembered from it. How they became reduced to the Crown again, will be diſcerned in the enſuing Hiſtory, and Succeſſion of

The third Race of the Kings of France, of the *Capetine* or *Saxon* Line.

- A. Ch.  
988 1 *Hugh Capet*, of whom ſufficiently before. 9.
- 997 2 *Robert*, the Son of *Hugh Capet*, Duke of *Burgundy* alſo. 34.
- 1031 3 *Henry*, the eldeſt Son of *Robert*, his younger Brother *Robert* being ſettled in the Dukedom of *Burgundy*. 39.
- 1061 4 *Philip*, the Son of *Henry*, who added *Berry* to the Crown. 49.
- 1110 5 *Lewis VI.* Son of *Philip*, ſurnamed the *Groſs*. 28.
- 1138 6 *Lewis VII.* Son of *Lewis* the Sixth, an Adventurer in the War of the *Holy Land*; as alſo was his Son and Succellor
- 1181 7 *Philip II.* ſurnamed *Augustus*, by whom *Normandy*, *Aquitain*, and *Anjou*, with their ſeveral Appendices, were taken from King *John* of *England*. 43.
- 1224 8 *Lewis VIII.* Son of *Philip Augustus*. 3.
- 1227 9 *Lewis IX.* ſurnamed the *Saint*, renowned for his Wars in *Egypt*, and the *Holy Land*. He reſtored *Guenne* to the *English*, and added the Earldoms of *Tholeſe* and *Majſen*, to the Crown of France. 44.
- 1271 10 *Philip III.* Son of *Lewis* the ninth. 15.

1286

- 1286 11 *Philip IV.* ſurnamed the *Fair*, King alſo of *Navarre*, in the right of the Lady *Joan* his Wife. 28.
- 1314 12 *Lewis X.* ſurnamed *Hutin*, King of *Navarre* in right of his Mother, whom he ſucceeded in that Kingdom, An. 1305, after whole death the Kingdom of France was to have deſcended to *Joan* his Daughter. 2.
- 1315 13 *Philip V.* called the *Long*, Brother of *Lewis Hutin*, partly by threats, promiſes, and other Practices, cauſed a Law to paſs to which he gave the name of the *Salique Law*, for diſabling Women from the ſucceſſion to the Crown; and thereby quite excluded his Brother's Daughter: ſerved in the ſame kind himſelf, by his Brother *Charles*, who following his example, excluded, on the ſame pretence, his Nieces, *Joan*, and *Margaret*, the Daughters of *Philip*. 5.
- 1320 14 *Charles IV.* but in true account the fifth of that name, moſt commonly called *Charles the Fair*, Brother of *Philip* and *Lewis*, the two laſt Kings. After whole death began the Wars of the *English* for the Crown of France: challenged by *King Edward* the third, as Son and Heir of *Iſabel*, the Daughter of King *Philip the Fair*, and Siſter to the three laſt Kings. 7.
- 1328 15 *Philip VI.* ſurnamed *de Valois*, Son of *Charles Earl of Valois*, the ſecond Son of King *Philip* the third, and Uncle to the three laſt Kings, ſucceeded under colour of the *Salique Law*: of which *Charles* it is ſaid, that he was Son to a King, Brother to a King, Uncle to a King, and Father to a King; yet himſelf was no King. In this Kings days was fought the famous Battle of *Creſſy*, An. 1343. in which the *French Army* conſiſted of about 70000 Soldiers; the *English* of 11800 only: yet the victory fell unto the *English*: by whole valour fell that *John K. of Bohemia*, 11 Princes, 80 Barons, 120 Knights, and 30000 of the common Soldiers. He added unto his Eſtate, the County *Palatine* of *Champagne*, the County of *Dauphine*, and the City and Earldom of *Montpelier*. 22.
- 1350 16 *John*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*; in whole reign was fought the Battle of *Poitiers*, wherein *Edward the Black Prince*, (ſo called for his black acts upon the *French*) with an handful of wearied Soldiers, (but 8000 in all) overcame the *French Army*, conſiſting of 40000; of which they ſlew, beſides the Nobles, 10000 of the common Soldiers, and took Priſoners King *John* himſelf, and *Philip* his Son, 70 Earls, 50 Barons, and 12000 Gentlemen. 14.
- 1364 17 *Charles V.* the Son of *John*; recovered all thoſe pieces (except only *Calice*) which the *English* had before gotten from his Father and Grandfather. He is called commonly *Charles the Wiſe*; but *Lewis* the 11. would by no means allow him that attribute: affirming, that it was but a fooliſh part to give his younger Brother *Philip* the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and withal, the Heir of *Flanders* to *Wite*. And ſo it proved in the event.
- 18 *Charles VI.* a weak and diſtracted Prince; in whole reign, *Henry* the fifth of *England*, called in by the Faction of *Burgundy*, againſt that of *Orleans*, married the Lady *Katherine*, daughter of this King; and was thereupon made Regent of France during the Kings life, and Heir apparent of the Kingdom. But he had ſtill won the great Battle of *Agincourt*, Anno 1415. in which the *English* having an Army but of 15000
- vanquiſhed an Army of the *French* conſiſting of 52000 men; of which were ſlain 5 Dukes, 8 Earls, 25 Lords, 8000 Knights, and Gentlemen of note, and 25000 of the Commons; the *English* loſing but one Duke, one Earl, and 600 Soldiers. This unfortunate Prince loſt what his Predeceſſor, *Philip* the ſecond, had taken from King *John* of *England*, and had not been reſtored by King *Lewis* the ninth.
- 1423 19 *Charles VII.* Son of *Charles* the ſixth, after a long and bloody War, recovered from the *English* (then divided by domeſtick diſſention) all their Lands and Seignories in France, except *Calice* only.
- 1461 20 *Lewis XI.* Son of *Charles* the ſeventh, added unto his Crown the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, the Earldom of *Provence*, (and therewithal a Title unto *Naples* and *Sicily*) and a great part of *Picardy*. A Prince of ſo great wants, or ſuch fordid paſſions, that there is found a reckoning in the Chamber of Accounts in *Paris*, of two ſhillings for new ſleeves to his old Doublet; and three half pence for liquor to greaſe his Boots.
- 1484 21 *Charles VIII.* Son of *Lewis* the eleventh, who quickly won, and as ſoon loſt the Kingdom of *Naples*; which he laid claim to in the right of the Houſe of *Anjou*. By the marriage of *Anne* the Heir of *Bretagne*, he added that Dukedom to his Crown.
- 1498 22 *Lewis XII.* Son of *Charles*, and Grand-ſon of *Lewis Duke of Orleans*, (which *Lewis* was a younger Son of the fifth) ſucceeded as the next Heir-male of the Houſe of *Valois*. He diſpoſſeſſed *Ludowick Sforze*, of the Dutchy of *Milain*, and divided the Realm of *Naples* with *Ferdinand the Catholic*; but held neither long. By his marriage with *Anne* of *Bretagne*, the Widow of his Predeceſſor, he confirmed that Dukedom to his Houſe; united after to the Realm by an Act of State. After his death, the *English*, to prevent the growing greatneſs of *Spain*, began to cloſe in with the *French*, and grew into great correſpondencies with them; inſomuch that all the following Kings, until *Lewis* the 15th. (except *Francis* the ſecond, a King of one year, and no more) were all Knights of the *Garter*.
- 1515 23 *Francis*, Duke of *Angoulſim*, Grand-ſon of *John de Angoulſim*, one of the younger Sons of the ſaid *Lewis Duke of Orleans*, ſucceeded on the death of *Lewis* the 12th. without iſſue male. Took Priſoner at the Battle of *Pavie*, by *Charles* the fifth, with whom he held perpetual Wars; he being as unwilling to endure a Superior, as the Emperor was to admit an Equal. 32.
- 1547 24 *Henry II.* Son of *Francis*, recovered *Calice* from the *English*, and drove *Charles* out of *Germany*, and took from him *Metz*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*, three Imperial Cities, ever ſince members of this Kingdom.
- 1559 25 *Francis II.* Son of *Henry* the ſecond, King of the *Scots* alſo, in the right of *Mary* his Wife.
- 1560 26 *Charles IX.* Brother of *Francis* the ſecond, the Author of the *Maſſacre* at *Paris*. 14.
- 1574 27 *Henry III.* elected King of *Poland*, in the life of his Brother, whom he ſucceeded at his death. The laſt King of the Houſe of *Valois*; ſtripped of his life and Kingdom by the *Guiſſan* Faction, called the *Holy League*. 15.
- 1589 28 *Henry IV.* King of *Navarre*, and Duke of *Vendome*, ſucceeded as the next Heir-male

D d

to



to Henry the 3d. in the right of the House of Bourbon, descended from Robert Earl of Clermont, a younger Son of Lewis the ninth. He ruined the Holy League, cleared France of the Spaniards, into which they had been called by that potent and rebellious Faction; and laid La Bresse into the Crown, together with the Estates of Bearn, and Basque Navarre: and after a ten years time of Peace, was villainously murdered by Ravillac, in the Streets of Paris. 21.

1610 29 Lewis XIII. Son of Henry the Fourth; the most able King of France, since the death of Charles the Great. For to the reduction of the scattered and dismembered Provinces, (the work of his many Predecessors) he added the reduction of all the Forts and Garrisons held by the Huguenots in that Kingdom, (three hundred at the least in number) seized on the Dukedom of Bar, and surprised that of Lorain, both which he held until his death. 32.

1642 30 Lewis XIV. Son of Lewis the 13th. and of the Lady Anne, eldest Daughter of Philip the third of Spain; succeeded at the age of four years, under the Government of his Mother: the 30th King of the Line of Capet, the 43d from Charles the Great, and the 64th King of France (or rather of the French) now living.

As for the Government of these Kings, it is merely Regal; or, to give it the true name, Despotical; such as that of a Master over his Servants: the Kings Will going for a Law; and his Edicts as valid, as a Sentence of the Court of Parliament. *Quod principi placuit* Legis habet vigorem, was a Privilege belonging to the Roman Emperours, as *Justinian* tells us in his *Institutes*: and the French Kings descending from Charles the Great, claim it as their own. The King's Edicts always ending with these binding words, *Car tel est nostre plaisir*. For such is Our pleasure. And though he sometimes loads his Edicts to be *verified*, or approved, in the Parliament of Paris; and his Grants and Patents to be ratified in the Chamber of Accounts, there holdsen: yet this is nothing but a meer formality, and point of circumstance; those Courts not daring to refuse what the King propoeth. It is *Car tel est nostre plaisir*, which there goeth for Law. and by this intimation of his Royal Pleasure, doth he require such Taxes, as the necessity of his affairs, the greediness of his Officers, or the importunity of Suitors, do suggest unto him: the Patrimony of the Crown being so exhausted by the riot and improvidence of former Princes, that the King hath no other way to maintain his State, defray his Garrisons, reward such as deserve well of him, and support those that depend upon him, but only by laying what he pleaseth on the backs of his Subjects; against which there is no dispute by the Common People, though many times the Great Princes have demurred upon it. And therefore to make them also instrumental to the publick Slavery, the Kings are willing to admit them to some part of their spoils, to give them some exemption from those common burdens; and to connive at the oppressing of their Tenants, against all good conscience: that being so privileged themselves, they may not interrupt the King in his Regal Course.

As for the French Parliaments, or Assembly of the three Estates, which heretofore were of great credit and renown, and looked on as the principal Bulwark of the Publick Liberty, being first discontinued by reason of the sharp and continual Wars which the English made in this Kingdom

for the space of 100 years and upwards, they afterward became much weakened by the Policy of K. Lewis the 11. and the Kings succeeding; and finally, by K. Lewis the 13. were laid by for ever. For, finding them to retain something still of their ancient stomach, and apt enough to clash with that absolute Sovereignty which his Predecessors had attained to, he resolved to make no more use of them for the times to come; instead whereof, he ordained another kind of meeting, which he called *Le Assemblee des Notables*; that is to say, the Assembly of some principal men, composed of some selected persons out of every Order or Estate, (of his own nomination) wherunto should be added some Counsellor out of every one of the eight Courts of Parliament; which, being fewer in number, would not breed such a confusion as the others did, and be withal more pliant and conformable to the Kings desires. Now the eight Courts of Parliament before mentioned, being but as so many Courts of Judicature, (like to ours in Westminster) are these that follow; that is to say, The Parliament 1. of Paris, comprehending the Countries of France special, Champagne, Picardy, the Provinces and Estates of Anjou, La Beaulle, Berry, Poitou, the Provinces which make up the Dukedom of Bourbon, with the County of Lionnois. 2. Of Rouen, for the Dukedom of Normandy. 3. Of Rennes, for the Dukedom of Bretagne. 4. Of Bourdeaux, for the whole Dukedom of Aquitaine, (except only Bearn) with the Countries of Limousin, and Perigou. 5. Of Toulouse, for the Earldom of Langueadoc, and Quercy. 6. Of Aix, for the Earldom of Provence. 7. Of Grenoble, for the Country of Dauphine. And 8. of Dijon, for the Dukedom of Burgundy, and the small County of La Bresse; to which is added of late times by King Lewis the 13th. the little Parliament of Pau, for the County of Bearn. Besides which Parliaments, there are certain other Courts in some principal Cities, called *Courts Presidiales*, resembling those with us at York, and the Marches of Wales, whilst they continued in that Power and Jurisdiction which at first they had. And for the better ordering of the whole Estate, (with reference specially to matters military) it is divided into 12 several and distinct Governments; that is to say, 1. Of the Isle of France, 2. Burgundy, 3. Normandy, 4. Guienne, 5. Bretagne, 6. Champagne, 7. Picardy, 8. Langueadoc, 9. Provence, 10. Dauphine, 11. Lionnois, and 12. Orleansois; for in this order they were ranked by the last King: over every one of which is placed a Governour, with such authority as the Lords Lieutenants had in England in their several Counties; all of them carrying matters with a very high hand on the common people, and sometimes standing on terms also with the Kings themselves; but instrumental notwithstanding to the common servitude, which hath been laid upon this Nation generally, as before is said.

The Power of the French King over his Subjects, being so transcendent, it cannot be, but that his Forces must be very great, and would be greater than they are, but that they dare not trust the common people with the use of Arms, for fear they should refuse to pay the accustomed Taxes, or forsake their Trades, or turn their Farms back upon their Landlords. But for an Essay of what a French King is able to do in this kind, it is said, that Charles the 9th. in Garrisons and several Armies in the field, had 15000 Horse, and 100000 Foot, of his own Nation; besides 50000 Horse and Foot of Swisser, German, and others. Nor was this more than what was done by Lewis the 13. within few years past, who had at once five Royal Armies in the field, in Italy, Spain, Germany, and the Belgick Provinces; and kept no fewer than 120000 fighting-men in pay and action, for some years together. Nor did this last King keep up the Military Power of France for Land-service only, at so high a pitch,

but he also brought the Naval Power thereof into estimation. For whereas the French Kings before his time, were very weak and inconsiderable on the Seas, and had scarce any men of War, but what they either hired or borrowed from more Seafaring Nations: this King became so strong in shipping in a little space, (I doubt some neighbouring Princes in the mean time looked not well about them) that he was able to rigg and arm 10000 full of good Ships, and upwards, fit for any service. But to return again to the power at Land, in which the force of these Kings doth consist especially; it is conceived by some, and affirmed by others, that he is able to bring into the field for a sudden service, no less than 60 Companies of Men of Arms, 20 Cornets of Light Horse, and 5 Companies of Harquebussiers on Horseback, which amount to 10000 in the total; together with 20 Esquiers of French foot, and 40 of Swisser, and yet leave his Garrisons well manned, and his Forts and Frontiers well and sufficiently defended.

What the Revenues are in a State so subject to the will and pleasure of the King, is hard to say; being also more or less, as the times and their occasions vary: according unto which, the Revenues of this Crown have much altered. Lewis the 11. gathered one million and a half of Crowns; Francis the first brought them to 3 millions; his successor, Henry the second, to six; Charles the ninth, to seven; Henry the third, to ten; afterwards they were enhanced to fifteen. And in the time of Henry the fourth, the Treasurer of the Duke of Mayenne did not shame to say, that his Minister had more improved the Revenue of France, than any King had done before him, advancing it from two to five millions sterling. A fair Estrado, but far short of those infinite fums which are extorted from the people; whereof a tenth part comes not clearly to the Kings Exchequer. But what need more be said, than that of Lewis the 11. who used to say, that France was a Meadow which he mowed every year, and as often as he liked: and indeed their Impolitions cannot but be great, since there are no less than 30000 Under Officers employed to gather them. Hence I believe spring that wish of Maximilian the Emperor, which was, that he (if it were possible) might be a God; and that having two Sons, the eldest might be a God after him; and the second, King of France. And this was also the cause, that in the Wars between Charles the fifth, and Francis the first, when the Emperours Herald had bid defiance to the King, from Charles Emperour of Germany King of Castile, Leon, Aragon, and Naples, Arch-Duke of Austria, &c. with the rest of his Titles; the King commanded the Herald to return the Challenge from Francis King of France's commanding him to repeat France as many times as the other had petty Earldoms in his file. And on the other side of no less bravery and sense was the saying of the Duke of Alva, who being disswayed by one of his Commanders, from the War with the Netherlands, in regard of the great support they were like to have from the Queen of England, the King of Denmark, the Dukes of Saxony and Brunswick, the Earls of Nassau, &c. Tush man! (said he) there will be more Kings and Princes on our side, than theirs; that is to say, the Emperour of Mexico and Peru; the Kings of Naples, Sicily, and Sardinia, the Dukes of Burgundy and Milan, the Earls of Hapsburg, Charolais, &c. But letting pass these fables and conceits of wit; certain it is, (to say the truth) considering the compactedness thereof within it self, the admirable fertility of the Soil, the incredible multitudes of people, and the convenience of situation betwixt Spain, Italy, and Germany; the name of France might ballance all the others Titles.

The chief Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom, were first of the Gennet, founded by Charles Martel, Mayor of the French Palace: and so called either from Jane his Wife, as *Haiken* would have it, or from the Gennets of Spain, over whom he triumphed at the Battel of Tours, as *Relay* writeth. It ended in the days of S. Lewis. The Knights of the Order wore a Ring, wherein was engraven the form of a Gennet.

2. Of the Pairrie, or twelve Peers, so called, *quasi pares inters*; said to be instituted by Charles the Great, in his Wars against the Saracens. Six of these were of the Clergie. 1. The Arch-Bishop and Duke of Rheims, 2. the Bishop and Duke of Loon, 3. the Bishop and Duke of Langres, 4. the Bishop and Earl of Beauvais, 5. the Bishop and Earl of Noyon, and 6. the Bishop and Earl of Chalons. And six others of the Temporality: 1. the Duke of Burgundy, 2. Duke of Normandy, 3. Duke of Guienne, 4. Earl of Toulouse, 5. Earl of Champagne, 6. Earl of Flanders. These are they so much memorized in the Legends of the old French Writers, but fallily, and on no ground: it being impossible that those should be the foundation of Charles the Great, in whose time there were none of those Dukes and Earls, except the Earl of Toulouse only. Therefore with better reason it may be thus concluded on, that the Twelve Peers were instituted by Charles the Great, though that honour not by him appropriated unto any particular Estates and Titles; but left at large to be disposed of according to the personal merit of the best delvers: it being most sure, that neither Rowland, nor Oliver, nor Duke Naimet, nor Ogier the Dane, had any of the Titles above-mentioned. But for the fixing of this Dignity in the Dukedoms and Earldoms before named, it is said, by some, to have been done by Hugh Capet; others refer it to Lewis the 7th. in whose times all those Dukes and Earls were in Reum Navarre. But by whomsoever first ordained, the Temporal Peers are extinct, and others of no definite number, well deliverer. Only at Coronations, and such publick Triumphs, the custom is, to chuse some principal persons out of the Nobility, to represent those Temporal Peers; as at the Coronation of Lewis the 13th, the places of the Temporal Peers were supplied by the Princes of Conde and Conoy, the Earl of Soisson, the Duke of Nevers, Elbeuf, and Eljournet; the Ecclesiastical Peers remaining as at first they were. So that though Charles the Great might devise this Order, and institute the first Twelve Peers, as is commonly said; yet was not that high honour fixed in any of those Temporal Princes, till the times succeeding; but given to men of several Honours, according to the Kings pleasure, and their well-deliverings.

3. Of the Stars, begun by John King of France, Anno 1352. There were about their necks a Collar of Gold, at the which hanged a Star: the word *Monsieur le Regibus astra vivam*. This Order was disgraced by his Son Charles, in communicating it to his Guard: and so it ended.

3 Of St. Michael, instituted by King Lewis the eleventh. Anno 1409. It consisted first of 30 Knights; which afterwards were augmented to 300. The Habit of the Order was a long Cloak of white Damask, down to the ground, with a border interwoven with Cockle-shells of Gold, interlaced and furred with Ermines; with an Hood of crimson Velvet, and a long tippet. About their necks they wore a Collar woven with Cockle-shells: the word, *Immensi tremor Oceani*. It took the name from the Picture of St. Michael conquering the Devil, which was annexed to the Collar. Some think, that the invocation of St. Michael, was in allusion to the tenth of Daniel. Others say, he took St. Michael, in regard of an

apparition of that Saint, to his Father *Charles* the seventh on *Orleans* Bridge, in his Wars against the *English*. The Seat thereof was first at *St. Michael's Mount*, in *Normandy*, a place which had held long for the *French* Kings; against the *English*: but it was afterwards removed to *Bois de Vincennes*, not far from *Paris*. *St. Michael's* day, the time of the Solemnity; and *Mount St. Michael*, the name of the *Herald* which did attend upon the Order, which in most things are preceded that of of the *Garter*.

5. Of the *Holy Ghost*; ordained by *Henry* the third, *An. 1159*. to rectify the abuses which had crept into that of *St. Michael*, having been of late times given to unworthy persons: to reduce which to its first esteem, he ordered that the Collar of *St. Michael* should be given to none who had not first been dignified with this of the *Holy Ghost*; into which none to be admitted, but such as can prove their Nobility by three descents. Their Oath is; to maintain the *Romish Catholic* Religion, and persecute all Opponents to it. Their Robe, a Black Velvet Mantle, powdered with Lillies and Flames of Gold; with a Cross and a Dove appendant to it. And hereunto he gave the name of the *Holy Ghost*, because he was on *Whitsunday*, chosen King of *Poland*.

I omit the other petit Orders, as those of the *Cock* and *Dog*, by them of *Montmorency*; of the *Porcupine*,

by them of *Orleans*, and of the *Thistle*, by them of *Bourbon*.

The Arms of the *French* Kings in the days of *Pharamond*; and his three first Successors, were *Gules*, three Crowns, *Or*. *Clouis* the Great, altered them to *Azure*, Some of Flower de Lucis, *Or*; and *Charles* the sixth to *Azure*, three Flower de Lucis, *Or*. In which last changes, they were followed by the Kings of *England*, varying the Coat of *France*, which they enquartered with their own, as the *French* Kings did; and by the *Princes* of the blood, who bare the Arms of *France*, with some difference only, for the distinction of their Houses.

There are in *FRANCE*,  
Arch-bishops 17. Bishops 107.  
And Universities 13.

Viz.

1. Paris.	6. Caen.	11. Montpellier.
2. Orleans.	7. Rh. mes.	12. Avignon.
3. Bourges.	8. Bourdeaux.	13. Lyons.
4. Poitiers.	9. Toulouse.	14. Besancon.
5. Angers.	10. Nismes.	15. Dole.

And so much for *FRANCE*.

THE



## The Pyrenean Hills.

**B**ETWIXT *France* and *Spain*, are the Mountains called *Pyrenae*, the reason of which name is very differently reported. Some fetch the original thereof from *Pyrene*, a Nymph, the Daughter of one *Bebriz*: said by old Fables to have been here ravished by *Heracles*: others conceive they were so called, because much stricken with Lightnings, those *Cat-stial* Flame. But being the name doth most undoubtedly proceed from a Greek word which signifies *Fire*. The more probable opinion is, that they took this name from being fired once by Shepherds, (these Hills being then extremely overgrown with Woods:) the Flame whereof raged so extremely, the heat thereof, and Silver being melted by many days together, the fame of which invited many Foreign Nations to invade the Country. Which accident they place 880 years before the birth of our Saviour. Hereunto *Diodorus Siculus*, an old Greek Writer, adds no small authority; who speaking of this Conflagration, (as *Aristotle* and *Strabo* also do) addeth withal, *το μὲν δὲν δὲ τὸ ἀπὸ τῆς πυρρᾶς τοῦ πυρρᾶς τῆς πυρρᾶς*: that is to say, these Mountains had the name of *Pyrene*, from the fire, which many days together so extremely raged. And this Tradition backed by so good authority, I should rather credit, than fetch the derivation (as *Bochart* doth) from *Pyrenai*, a Phœnician word, signifying dark or shady: though true it is, that these Mountains anciently were very much overgrown with woods, as before was noted.

But whatsoever was the reason why they had this name, certain it is, that they have been of long time the natural bound betwixt the great and puissant Monarchs of *France* and *Spain*; terminating (as it were) their desires and purposes against each other, as well as their Dominions: if any thing could put a bound to the designs of ambitious Princes. Yet not more separated by these Mountains, than by those jealousies and fears which they have long since harboured of one another; each of them manifestly affecting the Supreme Command. So that we may affirm of them, as the Historian doth

of others on the like occasion, *Aut montibus, aut munio, metis separantur*. The Mountains also make the *isthmus*, or neck of Land, which conjoins *Spain* to the rest of *Europe*: the *Cantabrian* Ocean fiercely beating on the North-west, the *Mediterranean* Sea more gently washing the South-east thereof. Their beginning at the Promontory now called *Oiarcho*, (the *Oasis* of *Psalm*) not far from the City of *Baïonne* in *France*, bordering on the Sea *Cantabrick*: from thence continued South eastwards, betwixt both Kingdoms, to *Cabo de Creux*, (by the Ancients called *Templum Veneris*) on the *Mediterranean*, not far from the City of *Rhoda*, now *Rosas*, one of the Port-Towns of *Catalonia*.

The whole length, not reckoning in the windings and turnings, affirmed to be 80 *Spanish* Leagues, at 3 miles to a League. The highest part thereof, by the *Spaniards* called *Canigo*, and by the *Latins* named *Canus*: from which, (as it is said by some) there is a prospect in a clear day, into both the Seas. But whether this be true or not, (for I dare not build any belief upon it) it is no doubt the highest part of all these Mountains; and took this name from the whiteness and hoariness thereof, as having on its top or summit, a Cap of Snow for most part of the year. In which respect, as the *Alps* took their name, *ab Albo*; that, in the *Sabine* Dialect, being termed *Alpina*, which by the *Latins* was called *Album*, which before we noted: so did *Mount Lebanon*, in *Syria*, take its name from *Laban*, which in the Phœnician Language signifieth White; and *Lebanah*, Whiteness. Such people as inhabit in this Mountainous tract, have been, and shall be mentioned in their proper places. I only add, and so go forwards towards *Spain*, that the barbarous people of these Mountains compelled *Sertorius*, in his hasty passage into *Spain*, when he fled from the power of *Sylla's* Faction, to pay them *Tribute* for his pals: to which when some of his Soldiers murmured, as thinking it dishonourable to a *Proconsul* of *Rome*, to pay tribute to the barbarous Nations: the prudent General replied, that he bought only Time; a Commodity which they that deal in haughty Enterprizes, must needs take up at any rate.

OF



in temper, humour, and affections, between the *Spaniards* and the *French*, we have spoke more at large already when we were in *France*.

The Women are sober, loving their Husbands or Friends; wonderful delicate, curious in painting or perfuming; and though they have Wine in abundance, yet are they not permitted to drink it; verifying there in the old *English* Proverb, that *none are worse than the Shoe-makers Wife*. Herein in worse condition than the Women of *France*; who though they are restrained from Wine before their marriage; yet, after that, they take what liberty they list, and are no more restrained from it, than the other Sex. But this is the least liberty which the *French Women* have above the *Spaniards*: these being so watched and over-looked, that it is hardly possible for them to hold speech with any man, in business of most importance, and much less in matters of civilities only: those having liberty to be courted at all times and places, even in the presence of their Husbands, without any distrust or interruption. Heretofore they were wondrous strong; and, beyond belief, patient of the throws of Child-bed: *Strabo* relating how one of these women being hired for Harvest-work, and finding her travail come upon her; because she would not lose her days wages, withdrew her self into a Bush; where, being cald of her burden, she returned from one Labour to another. And many of them at this day use not to keep their Chambers above three days after their delivery, and then apply themselves to their Household-business, without either danger or delay.

The language is not the same in all places, though all called the *Spanish*. In *Portugal*, *Catalogue*, and some parts of *Valencia*, it hath a great mixture of the *French*; who in these parts have had much trade and negotiation. In *Granada*, and some parts of *Andalusia*, it partakes much of the *Moor*; and in the Mountains of *Alpuccarras*, the *Arabick* or *Moorish* language still remains in use. The Countries bordering on the *Pyrenees*, and *Cantabrian* Ocean, (but *Biscay* specially) have much in them of the language of the ancient *Spaniards*, before made subject to the *Romans*. That which is common to them all, is the vulgar *Spanish* or *Castilian*, and hath much affinity with the *Latin*. *Beetwood* in his *Enquiries* reporting, that he hath seen a Letter, every word whereof was both good *Latin* and good *Spanish*. *Merrill* shows a Copy of the like, pag. 306. By reason of which consonancy with the *Latin*, the *Spaniards* call their language, *Romance*. The other ingredients of this Tongue, are generally the *Gallic*, *Arabick*, and old *Spanish*, and in some places the *French* also, as before is said; those people having made great conquests, and having had great negotiations in this Country. It is said to be a very lofty swelling speech, as if it were fashioned to command.

And as their Language, so their Laws do owe a great part of themselves to the Laws of *Rome*: the Civil or Imperial Laws being generally used amongst them, but intermixt with many customs of the *Goths*, and the Edicts or Constitutions of their several Kings. Those of the *Goths* being first committed unto writing, and reduced to order by *Enricus* the first King of the *Goths* in *Spain*: those of *Castile* digested by the command of *Ferdinand* the third, *Anno* 1296. into seven Books, called the *Partidas*; not finished till the time of his son *Alfonso*. *Leges Hispaniarum quas partitus vocant, in volumen redigit, as Tarapha* hath told us of him in his *Spanish* History. The like done by King *James* the first, for the Realm of *Aragon*, *An.* 1248. respectively confirmed and ratified by the Kings succeeding. Authorized to be read and dispensed on in the publick Schools, as well as the *Decretals*,

the *Code*, the *Pandect*, on any other part of the Civil or Canon Laws.

The Soil herof, where it is fertile and productive of the Fruits of Nature, yields not to any part of *Europe*, for delight, pleasures, and Commodities; which here appear in greater ripeness and perfection, than in other places. But, for the most part, it is either overgrown with Woods, cumbered with wild and rocky Mountains, or so hot a nature, and so sandy withall, that it is not very fit for Tillage; and so deficient in Water, as not good for Pasturage. So that we may affirm thereof, as of the Figs in the Prophet *Jeremy*, where it is said, no Country better; where *bad* and barren, few so inconvenient, and not any worse. But this defect of outward Beauty and Commodities, is recompensed by those within; affording great plenty of Mines, both of Steel and Iron, and some Mines of Silver; of which last so abundant in preceding times, that it was never free from the Rovers of all Nations; and it is said of *Anibal*, that out of one Mine only in the Country of the *Turdetani*, (now part of *Andalusia*) he received 3000 pound weight daily, for a long time together. The principal Commodities which they vend into other Countries, are Wines, Oyl, Sugars, Metals, Rice, Silk, Licorice, a fine sort of Wool, Cork, Iron, Limmons, Raisins, Oranges, and Fruits of the like nature. In Corn, which is the staff of life, they are defective, that they receive the greatest part of what they spend, from *Italy*, *Sicily*, and *France*. Their Cattel neither fair, nor many; the Country being not able to breed them; so that their Diet is on Salads, and Fruits of the Earth; every Gentleman being limited what flesh he shall buy for himself and his Family, which he send for to the Butcher, or Poulterer, by the final, left Child, able to do the Errand for him, he is sure not to be defrauded in price, or quality. And yet they talk as highly of their gallant fare, as if they furnished with the plenty of all provisos: handsomely checked in that good humour, by that worthy Soldier, *Sir Roger Williams*; of whom it is said, that hearing once a *Spaniard* thus foolishly bragging of his Country Salads, he gave him this answer, *You have indeed good fawce in Spain; but we have dainty Beefs, Veals, and Muttons, to eat with that fawce; and as God made bealls to live upon the grafs of the earth, so he made men to live upon them*. And it is observed, that if a *Spaniard* have a *Capon*, or the like good Dith to his Supper, you shall find all the Feathers scattered before his door, by the next morning.

And as it is in private Houses, so for travelling also, the Inns and Vents of this Country are very ill provided; infomuch, that most men that would not go superfluous to sleep, carry their provision at their Saddle-bows, and men of worth their bedding also. So poor and mean is the entertainment in these places.

Here lived in ancient times, the Giants *Geryon*, and *Cacus*, which were quelled by *Hercules*: and in the flourishing of the *Roman* Empire, 1. *Seneca* the Tragedian, and 2. the Philosopher of the same name; a man of that happy memory, that he could repeat 2000 names in the same order that they were rehearsed: as also 3. *Quintilian* the Orator, 4. *Lucan*, and 5. *Martial*, excellent in their kinds: 6. *Pomponius Mela* the Geographer, 7. *Trogus Pompeius*, with his Epitomator: 8. *Justin*, and 9. *Paulus Orosius* the Historian, this last a Christian. In the middle times, 10. *Isidore* Bishop of *Sevil*, 11. *Julian*, and 12. *Hildebrandus*, Bishop of *Toledo*; and after them, *Eulogius* the Saint and Martyr; men learned for the times they lived in. Then for the later Ages, 1. The renowned Cardinal *Francis Ximenes*, and 2. *Alonso Montanus*, famous for the E

dicious

ditions of the holy Bible. 3. *Mafius*, a learned Commentator. 4. *Ofirius*, well fence in the *Latin* Elegancies; and beforeall, as well in industry as time, 5. *Tolmas* Bishop of *Avila*; a man so copious and industrious in his writings, that it is thought he writ more sheets than he lived days. But of late times we find but few of their Works which have passed the Mountains; the *Latin* which they write, being very coarse, and favouring too much of the *School-man*, (wherein their excellency consists) and therefore they set out their Works most commonly in their own Tongue only. The chief for *Soldiery* amongst them, were formerly *Viriatius*, who held out so long against the *Romans*. *Trojan* and *Theodisius*, both *Roman* Emperors. *Theodoric* the second, King of the *Goths*, the victorious Conqueror of the *Spreuans*. *Bernardo del Carpio*, and *Cid Ruis Diaz*, famous for their achievements against the *Moor*; and in late times, *Gonsalvo* the Great Captain, who subdued *Naples*; *Ferdinand* Duke of *Alva*, who conquered *Portugal*, &c.

The Christian Faith, if we may believe the old *Spanish* Tradition, was first here planted by St. *James* the Apostle, within four years after the death of our Redeemer. To which Tradition, though they held very constant a long time together; yet of late days, *Baronius*, and other learned men of the Church of *Rome*, do most deservedly reject it. That St. *Paul* had a purpose of coming hither, is evident in his 15. Chapter to the *Romans*; and that he did come hither accordingly, is positively affirmed by St. *Crysostom*, *Theodore*, and divers others of the Fathers; which was in *Anno* 61. as *Baronius* thinketh. Nor did St. *Peter* want his part in this great service, but joyed with St. *Paul*; his part in the journey, yet in the sending of Bishops, and other Presbyters, to second the beginnings made by that Apostle. For it is said expressly in the *Martyrologies*, that *Cleopibus*, *Torquatus*, *Secundus*, *Cecilius*, *Judulianus*, *Helysius*, and *Exuperius*, being at *Rome*, ordained Bishops of the two Apostles, *ad predicandum verbum Dei in Hispanias directi*, were dispatched into *Spain* to preach the Gospel. Bishops, most likely, of those Cities where they suffered death; the names of which occur in the *Martyrology*. Under the Empire of the *Goths*, the Faith of *C H R I S T*, which at their coming hither they found right and Orthodox, was defiled with *Arianism*: not ejected till the year 588. when that whole Nation did submit to the Catholic tendries. But *Spain* being conquered by the *Moor* under the conduct of *Musa*, Lieutenant-General to *Ulder*, the *Arabian* Caliph; and *Mahommedanism* over-spreading the whole face of the Country; few Christians as remained under their obedience, but few and inconsiderable both for power and quality, had the name of *Musaraber*. Encroaching in citate and numbers, by the fortunate success of the King of *León* and *Navarre*, and other Christian Principalties growing up apace; they still retained their old name, and their ancient service, distinct from that observed in the Church of *Rome*; this being called the *Musarabique*, the other the *Gregorian* Missal: the one pretending *S. Isidore* Archbishop of *Sevil*, the other *S. Gregory* Pope of *Rome*, for the Author of it. And it continued in this state, till *Junio* King of *Castile* and *León*, *Anno* 1083. by *Alfonso* a French-man, being made Arch-bishop of that City, and Primate of *Spain*, endeavoured the introduction of the *Roman* or *Gregorian* Service; but therein was opposed by the other Prelates, and generally by all the people, sufficiently tenacious of their ancient Forms. At last it was concluded (as the story telleth us) to commit the decision of the Controvercie to a fiery trial; both Books being cast into the fire, the *Gregorian* leaping

presently out, and the *Musarabique* remaining unhurt in the midst of the flames. Convinced by this experiment, that both Forms were pleasing to Almighty God; they yielded so far to the desires of the King, (who was zealous in it) that the *Musarabique* being retained in six of the Churches of *Toledo*, (where it is sung to this day in a Chappel of the Great Church, called *Corpus Domini*) the *Gregorian* or *Roman* Service, should be entertained in the rest of *Spain*. According unto which Decree, the *Musarabique* (but not until some tract of time) came to be disused; and the *Gregorian* Service first admitted in the Cathedral of *Toledo*, May 29. *An.* 1091. And after, by degrees, in the rest of the Country.

Since that, they have been constant to the Rites of the *Roman* Church, and of the Faith and Doctrine therein professed, notwithstanding the great intermixture of *Jews* and *Moor*s, especially since the setting up of the *Inquisition*: devised at first about the year 1478. by *Pedro Gonsales de Mendoza*, Arch-bishop of *Toledo*, against such converted *Jews* and *Moor*s, as did return again to their superstition. But he; and those that had the first execution of it, being found so cruel, that, in the compass of nine years, no fewer than 3000 Families had been destroyed in that Diocess only. In the year 1481. it was thought fit to moderate the rigour of it, and to commit the managing thereof to some *Jacobins* or *Dominical* Friars; who in the first place were to have an eye unto such Apostates, and to Heretics, Magicians, *Sedumies*, Blasphemers of the name of God, &c. confirmed in this Authority, by Pope *Sixtus* the 4th. This Institution in it self was not only necessary, (as the condition of Affairs then was) but exceeding laudable, had it been kept within the bounds at first intended. But of late, instead of being used on the *Jews* and *Moor*s, it hath been turned upon the Protestants, and that with such violence, and extremity of torture, that it is counted the greatest tyranny, and severest kind of persecution, under Heaven: infomuch that many Papists, who would willingly dye for their Religion, abhor the very name and mention of it, and to the death withstand the bringing in of this slavery among them. This is it that made the people of *Aragon* and *Naples* rebel, Countries where the people are all of the Papal side: and this was it which caused the irremediable revolt of the *Low Countries*, the greatest part of that Nation, at the time of their taking Arms, being *Romish* Catholics: yet it is planted and established in *Spain* and *Italy*. (*Naples* and *Venice* excepted) the managing thereof committed to the most zealous and rigorous Friars in the whole Pack: the least suspicion of Heretic, affinity, or commerce with Heretics, reproving the lives of the Clergy, keeping any Books, or Editions of Books, prohibited, or discoursing in matters of Religion, are offences sufficient. Nay, they will charge mens Consciences under the pain of damnation, to detect their nearest and dearest Friends, if they do but suspect them to be herein culpable. Their proceedings are with great ferocity and severity: for first, the parties accused shall never know their accuser, but shall be constrained to reveal their own thoughts and affections. 2. If they be but convicted of any error in any of their opinions or be gain-fayed by two Witnesses, they are immediately condemned. 3. If nothing can be proved against them, yet shall they with infinite tortures and milities, be kept in the house divers years, for a terror unto others. And, 4. If they escape the first brunt with many torments, and much anguish; yet the second question or suspicion, brings death remediless. And as for torments, and kinds of death, *Phalaris* and his fellow-Tyrants, come far short of these Blood-



and *Annibald* the Son of *Amilcar*, had made almost all Spain subject to the *Carthaginians*, even from the Western Ocean to the *Pyrenees*; destroyed *Saguntum*, built new *Carthage*, and struck to great a terror into the Country, that had not *Annibald's* design carried him to Italy, the State of *Carthage* had been absolute Masters of it, without further opposition or resistance. But *Annibald* having taken all his Soldiers with him; and those that came from *Carthage* to command in chief, not being men of parts sufficient to go through with it; they lost it piece-meal to the *Romans*, but in less time than they had been getting it from the *Spaniards*; the valour and good-fortune of *Corn. Scipio*, over-ruling the declining power of that mighty State. The last that here commanded for the State of *Carthage* was *Asdrubal* the Son of *Gisco*; who being beaten by *Scipio* into the Island of *Gades*, left that also to the keeping of *Mago*, one of his Commanders; by whom being pillaged and deserted, it forth with yielded to the *Roman*, the *Carthaginians*, after this never possessing foot of ground in all this Continent.

The *Romans* thus becoming Masters of a great part of it, divided it into *Ultramarine*, lying from the River *Iberus*, Westward, because furthest off from them; and *Citeriorum*, between the said River, and the *Pyrenees*. But having totally subdued it, they divided it into three main parts; 1. *Tarracensis*, so called of *Tarragon*, the chief City of it, containing *Aragon*, *Navarre*, *Biscay*, *Galicia*, &c. 2. *Betanicum*, so named of the River, *Betis*, which runneth through it; comprehending the now Countries of *Granada*, *Andalusia*, and part of *Extremadura*. 3. *Lusitanicum*, denominated from the *Lusitani*, the most potent people of that part, differing in extent from the present *Portugal*, (though this called *Lusitania*, by our modern *Latinists*.) For the old *Lusitania* comprehended part of *Extremadura*, and some part of the two *Castiles*; and no more of the present *Portugal*, than what lieth betwixt the two Rivers, *Ana* and *Duero*; that on the South of *Ana*, being laid to *Betania*; and that on the North of *Duero*, unto *Tarracensis*. Of these three parts, *Betania* was in most esteem under the *Romans*; inasmuch that it contained 8 Roman Colonies, 8 Municipal Cities, and 29 other Towns, endowed with the rights and privileges of the *Latins*. The reason thereof was, that the people of this Country having been formerly broken by the *Carthaginians*, with more quiet endured the yoke of the *Romans*; whereas the rest, for a long time resisted the entry and Empire of that prevailing City. But to proceed to the affairs of Rome in Spain, *Scipio Africanus* laid the first foundation of the Roman Government in this Country: which building, though undertaken by many excellent workmen, was not thoroughly finished till the days of *Augustus*, being almost 200 years since the first attempt. He rooted it, strengthened it, and made it a principal building in his Monarchical City. For the old *Incole* were exceeding valiant and resolute, sometimes disgracing, sometimes endangering the Roman reputation; inasmuch that there were more Commanders lost in those Wars, than any other. At first the *Romans* fought not with the *Spaniards*, but with the *Carthaginians* in Spain: then perished both the *Scipio's*, viz. the Father and the Uncle of *Africanus*. *Virius* held War for 20 years, *Nimantia* held out almost 15, the *Alures* remained unconquered till the time of *Augustus*; and also resolutely maintained their particular liberties, *Ut dijudicari non poterit* (Sixth *Paterculus*) *Hispanis* on Romanis *plus esset in armis robore, et viri populus alteri pariterum foret*. Such manner of men were the ancient *Spaniards* under *Rome* and *Carthage*; the first people of the Continent of Eu-

rope, (excepting Italy) on which the *Romans* did begin to enlarge their Empire, and the last that wholly were subdued and conquered by them. But being conquered at the last, and brought under the form of a Province by *Augustus Caesar*; and *Constantine*, according to the division before-mentioned. But *Constantine* the Great in his new modelling of the Empire, laying some part of *Africa* to it, made it a *Dioecesis* of the Empire; and subject to the *Præfatus Prætorio* for *Gaul*; by whose *Vicarius* it was governed: the whole being then divided into these seven Provinces, viz. 1. *Bætica*, 2. *Lusitania*, bounded as before; 3. *Galicia* containing the modern *Galicia*, *Leon*, and *Oviedo*, the greatest part of the *Old Castile*, and so much of *Portugal* as lieth betwixt the two Rivers of *Minio* and *Duero*, 4. *Carthaginiensis*, so called from the City of New *Carthage*, comprehending New *Castile*, *Aragon*, and *Valencia* with the part of the *Old Castile*, *Navarre*, and *Andalusia*. 5. *Tarracensis*, embracing all *Biscay*, *Navarre*, and *Catalogne*, with the greatest part of the Kingdom of *Aragon*, 6. *Tingitana*, so called from *Tingis* (now *Tangier*) a Town in *Africa*, on the opposite Coast, in which are now the great Kingdoms of *Morocco* and *Morocco*. And 7. the Province of the Islands, containing *Mallorca*, *Minorca*, *Elas*, and *Frumentaria*. Of which seven Provinces, the three first were *Consulares*, governed by *Præfatus*; the other four, from their being under *Præfatus*, were called *Præfatus*. Being thus settled, it continued a Roman *Dioecesis* till about the year 400, when it was subdued by *Gundericus*, King of the *Vandals*; of which people, their beginning, achievements, and final period, we will speak more when we come to *Africa*, where they fixed themselves: invited thenceunto, partly to efface the ill neighbourhood of the *Goths*, who began to grow too potent for them, and partly to satisfy the desire of *Basileus*, Governor of that Province for the Emperor *Valentinian* the third, against whom he had then rebelled, and wanted such support to make good his action. Those being gone, the *Suevi* and *Alani*, who entered with them, could not long subsist; but were finally broken by the *Goths*, and afterwards dispossessed of their Kingdoms also, (though suffered to remain in the Country still) as shall be shown hereafter in its proper place. As for the *Guths*, (of whom we shall speak more in *Sweden*, and have already made some mention when we were in *Gaul*) having sacked *Rome*, and wasted *Italy*, under the conduct of *Alaric*; they were brought out of that Country by the gift of *Narbonensis* in *Gaul*, and so much of *Tarracensis* in Spain, as now makes up the Province of *Catalogne*: the composition being ratified by the marriage of *Athanulfus*, the Successor of *Alaric* with *Placidia*, Sister to *Honorius* the Western Emperor, *Valia*, or *Wallia*, the next of name and note, (for *Signe* who interposed, reigned but one year only, and did nothing in it.) Successor of *Athanulfus*, having beaten the *Alani* out of *Lusitania* and *Carthagenensis*, added those Provinces also unto his Estates, and confining the *Vandals* within *Betania*, was the first of the *Guths* which entered into the Kingdom of the *Guths* in Spain. By their agreement with the *Romans*, they were to keep that Provinces for the use of the Empire, which they did conquer and recover from the barbarous Nations; but contrary to all Faith, and the Articles of their agreement having once beaten the *Alani* out of *Lusitania*, by thy Prowess of *Valia*, and the *Suevi* out of *Betania*, under the conduct of *Theodorick*, the Brother of *Therismund*, they fell upon the *Romans* themselves, whom *Enricus*, and his Successors, by little and little, dispossessed of all Spain on this side of the *Streights*. *Tingitana* held out longest, as furthest off, unfortunately as-  
tempted

tempted by *Theodes* the ninth King of *Goths*, whose Soldiers being set upon by the *Romans* on the Lord's day, or Sunday, refused to fight in their own defence, and were so miserably defeated, that there was never a man of them left to carry news of the overthrow. So early did the Superstition of a Lord's day Sabbath prevail upon this melancholic and devout people. But what this *Theodes* could not do, was performed by *Suintilla*; who in the third time of this reign, *An. 642*, made the Conquest absolute.

Let us next look upon the *Guths* as Lords of Spain, and we shall find them to have been *Christians* in Religion, and somewhat civilized by their long neighbourhood and conversations with the *Græcians*, before they turned their Forces into the West. Their company more desired in this respect, than that of the *Vandals*; who were not only *Pagans*, but far more barbarous. But the *Guths*, being for long time of the *Arian* Faction, did grievously afflict and persecute the *Orthodox* Prelates: continuing in this error till the death of *Leonigild* (or *Leonigildis* as some call him) the last Patron and Assessor of it. Their Government Monarchical, but the Kings Elective, (though for the most part they kept themselves to the Regal Family): an Excommunication being laid on such, by the fifth Council of *Toledo*, as went about to alter that established course. Their Rule or Government was *Catholic*, and that not left in writing, but committed to Memory and Tradition: written, Laws being first made by *Enricus*; which the ensuing Princes confirmed and perfected. What else concerneth them, we shall find in the close of this Catalogue of

#### The Kings of the *Guths* in Spain.

A.C.	1	Valia 20.
420	2	Theodorick 13.
440	3	Therismund 3.
453	4	Theodorick II. 14.
457	5	Henry, or Enricus 18.
470	6	Alaricus 21.
493	7	Gensaric 13.
513	8	Amalaric 11.
516	9	Theodes 18.
526	10	Theodegild 3.
543	11	Agila 5.
546	12	Athanagildus 14.
551	13	Leuba 3.
565	14	Leonigild 18.
568	15	Richard 15.
586	16	Leuba II. 2.
601	17	Vitoricus 9.
603	18	Gundebair 20.
610	19	Sisebutus 9.
630	20	Richard II. 2.
639	21	Suintilla 3.
641	22	Sisenanda 7.
644	23	Suintilla II. 4.
651	24	Tulga 2.
655	25	Vidisindus 10.
667	26	Reccaridus 13.
680	27	Bamba 9.
689	28	Ering 7.
696	29	Egypsa 7.
703	30	Vitiza 13.
716	31	Roderick, the last King of the <i>Guths</i> in Spain, elected to the prejudice of the Sons of <i>Vitiza</i> , which after proved the ruin and overthrow of the Kingdom. For though the Kingdom

went, for the most part, by Election, and that they had respect to the next of blood, (as at this time in *Poland* and *Bohemia*) very few interlopers being here admitted: yet some there were, who either by their merit, or some opportunity, got the possession of the Kingdom, though not at all relating to the Royal Family. Of which kind were *Theodes*, an *Ohio-Guth*, sometimes the Governor hereof for *Theodorick* King of the *Guths* in Italy, Protector of this Kingdom in the minority of *Amalaric*; and *Theodesclaus*, or *Theodegildus*, Nephew to *Tatila*, one of the Successors to *Theodorick*. The rest of principal note were, 1. *Theodorick* the first, slain in the battle near *Tholuz*, against *Attila* the *Hun*, in defence of his own Country, and the *Roman* Empire. 2. *Theodorick* the second, who beat the Nation of the *Suevi* out of *Betania*; and 3. *Leonigild*, or *Leutigild*, who deprived them of *Galicia* also. 4. *Reccaridus* the first, who first embraced the *Catholic* Doctrine of the Church, and rejected *Arianism*; and for that cause first honoured with the title of the *Catholic King*; afterwards returned by *Alfonso* the first King of *Leon*, and made hereditary by *Ferdinand* the King of *Castile*, *Aragon*, &c. Grandfather unto *Charles* the fifth. 5. *Enricus*, or *Henricus* as some call him, as remarkable for Civil Policy, as *Reccaridus* for Piety; as being the *Lycurgus* or *Legislator* of this peoples not governed till his time by a written Law, but either by uncertain customs, or at the pleasure of such Officers as the King let over him. 6. *Suintilla* Son of *Reccaridus* the second, who having in the short time of his reign expelled the *Roman* Forces out of *Tingitana*, *An. 642*, was the first Monarch of all Spain, whereof *Tingitana*, (though on the other side of the *Sea*) had been made a Province by the Emperor *Constantine*, as before was said, and of this Province was *Julianus* Governor in the time of *Roderick*, who being of the Faction of the sons of *Vitiza*, fomented his advancement to the Kingdom; and thereby got the greater portion of the King's displeasure; who sending him upon an Embassy to the Moors of *Africa*, in the mean time deloured his daughter, named *Cava*; which the Father took in such indignation, that he procured the *Moors* (amongst whom he had gotten much credit) to come over into Spain. This request they performed under the conduct of *Musa* and *Tariff*, and having made a full Conquest, subjected it to the great *Caliph*, or *Mohometan* Emperors. It is recorded in a MS. History of the *Saracens*, that at the first coming of *Tariff* into Spain, a poor woman of the Country being willingly taken Prisoner, fell down at his feet, kissed them, and told him, that she had heard her Father (who was Letter'd) say, that Spain should be conquered by a people whose General should have a Mole on his right shoulder, and in whom one of his hands should be longer than the other. He, to animate his Soldiers against the next encounter, unclothed himself, and shewed the mark, which so encouraged them, that they now doubted not the Victory. *Roderick* had in his Army 130000 Foot, and 35000 Horse. *Tariff* had 30000 Horse and 150000 Foot. The battle continued seven days together, from morning to night; at last the *Moors* were victorious. What became of King *Roderick*, was never known, His Soldiers took one arrayed in their King's Apparel, whom upon examination they found to be a Shepherd, with whom the King, after the discomfiture, had changed clothes. It is written also in *Rodericus Tolimanus*, that before the coming of those *Saracens*, King *Roderick*, upon hope of some treasure, did open a part of the Palace, of long time forbidden to be touched; but found nothing but Pictures which resembled the *Moors*, with a Prophecy, that  
which,



whensoever the Palace was there opened, the people there resembled, should overcome Spain; and so it happened. *An. 724.*

**The Moors**, now Lord of Spain by the treason of *Juana*, (who having seen the miserable death of his wife and children, was starved in Prison by the *Africans*) permitted the free use of Religion to the old Inhabitants; left them seeking new dwellings for the Liberty of Conscience, should leave their native Soil desolate. The *Moors* finished their Conquest in five years say some, others, in two; and some again in eight Months. To keep the new-conquered Country in subjection, no way was so convenient, as to plant Colonies: but the *Morisco* women would not abandon their old seats. Hereupon *Mussa* and *Tariff*, by gifts, pardons, and persuasions, drew many *Christian* women to forsake their *Religions*, whom they married to the Soldiers. Not long after *Uludir Uli*, the great Caliph, sent over about 5000 Families of *Moors* and *Jews*, assigning them a convenient portion of Lands to be held with great Immunities, and upon small Rents. These politick courses notwithstanding, the *Moors* long enjoyed not the sole Sovereignty herein: for the *Christians* having now recovered breadth, chose themselves King; and the Authority of the Caliph declining, gave the *Moors* liberty to erect divers petty Royalities, many of which, by little and little, were brought under the command of greater and more powerful Princes. So that at last, Spain fell into a fifteenfold division, viz. into the Kingdoms and proprietary Estates of 1. *Navarre*, 2. *Biscay*, and 3. *Guipuzcoa*, 4. *Leon* and *Oviedo*, 5. *Gallicia*, 6. *Corduba*, 7. *Granada*, 8. *Murcia*, 9. *Toledo*, 10. *Castile*, 11. *Portugal*, and the members of it, 12. *Valencia*; 13. *Catalonia*, 14. the Kingdoms of *Majorca*, and 15. that of *Aragon*: not to say any thing of the petty Kingdoms of *Juen*, *Algezire*, and *Sevil*, besides others of like nature to them, erected by the factious and divided *Moors*, but of short continuance all of them, and of little note. All now reduced at this day, under the three Governments of *Castile*, *Portugal*, and *Aragon*; the Kingdoms and Estates of *Leon*, *Navarre*, *Corduba*, *Granada*, *Gallicia*, *Biscay*, *Murcia*, and *Toledo*, being under *Castile*; *Portugal* with *Algarve*, and the Isles of *Azores*, an entire Government of it self; *Valencia*, *Catalonia*, and *Majorca*, under that of *Aragon*.

## 1. NAVARRE.

**NAVARRE**, the second Kingdom for antiquity in Spain, is bounded on the East with the Principality of *Bearn*, in the Kingdom of *France* on the West, with the River *Ebro*, or *Iberus*; and after, with a little River falling into it, near *Calahorra*, by which divided from *Castile*; on the North, with the *Cantabrian* Mountains, by which parted from *Guipuzcoa*, and on the South, with the River *Araven*, by which divided from that Kingdom. Of larger extent anciently, than it is at present, the little Province of *Alava*, lying toward *Guipuzcoa*, and the whole Country of *Rioja*, (on the West-side of the River *Ebro*) being taken from it, and reckoned members of *Castile*, by *Alphonso* the 4th. Howsoever, we shall look upon it in its ancient bounds, and shall accordingly take notice of the chief Cities and Towns hereof.

It was called at first, the Kingdom of *Sobrarbe*, from a Town of that name, situate in the most inaccessible part of the *Pyrenees*; and therefore chose by *Gracia Xi-*

mines, the first King hereof, for the seat of his Kingdom, as most defensible against the fury of the *Moor*. Afterwards it took the name of *Navarre*, either from *Naxos*, signifying a plain and Champaign Country, (first used by *Inigo Arista*, the sixth King, who having taken *Pampelune*, abandoned the Hill-Countries, and betook himself unto the Plains) or from *Naxariere*, the chief of the three parts into which that City was divided, not only at the taking thereof, but a long time after.

The Country, though environed on all sides with mighty Mountains, yet of it self is said to be reasonably fruitful, well watered, and for the most part plain and level, as before is said. It taketh up also some parts of both sides of the *Pyrenees*: the Spanish side being fertile, and adorned with Trees; the French side generally very bare and naked. That on the Spanish side, and on the summits of the Mountains, now possessed by the *Spaniards*, is called *High Navarre*: that on the French side, now called *Base* or *Low Navarre*, estimated at a sixth part of the whole Kingdom, is enjoyed by the French; incorporated by King *Lewis* the 13, to the Realm of *France*, *An. 1620*.

Places of most importance in *Base Navarre*, 1. *S. Pelay*, formerly the Place of Judicature for this part of the Kingdom; but in the year 1620, removed to *Pau* in the Principality of *Bearn*: both *Bearn* and *Base Navarre*, which hath before been governed as distinct Estates from the Realm of *France*, being then incorporate to that Crown. 2. *Navarrenx*, a Town of great importance, seven Leagues from *Pau*, well fortified, and as well munitioned, King *Lewis* the 13, finding it at his coming thither, *An. 1620*, no fewer than 45 Cannons all mounted; besides 40 Culverins and smaller Pieces; with Powder, Bullet, and Victuals, answerable thereto. 3. *Pied de Port*, or *St. John de Pied de Port*, bordering on the edge of *France*, against which formerly a piece of special strength. 4. *Roncevaux*, or *Roncevaux* situate in the most pleasant Country of all *Navarre*, in the entrance of a small but delightful Valley: famous for the great Battle fought near unto it; in the Straights or entrances of the Mountains leading to this valley; betwixt the French under *Charlemagne*, and a great Army of *Moors* and natural *Spaniards*, confederate together in defence of their common Liberty. In which Battle, by the treachery of *Ganelon*, 40000 of the French were slain; and amongst them, *Rowland Earl of Mans*, the Nephew of *Charles*; and others of the Peers of *France* of whom so many Fables are reported in the old *Romances*; the first Author of which Fables, passeth under the name of Arch-Bishop *Turpin*, said to be one of those twelve Peers, who taking on him to record the Acts of *Charles* the Great, hath interlarded his Story with a number of ridiculous vanities: by means whereof, the noble acts of that puissant Emperor, and his gallant Followers, are much obscured and blemished by those very Fables, which in the times succeeding did employ themselves to advance the fame.

Of special note in *High Navarre*, 1. *Vitoria*, first built, or rather re-edified by *Sancho* the 4. King of *Navarre*, *An. 1111*, by whom thus named in memory of some victory obtained thereabouts against the *Castilians*; whereas before his time it was called *Gasteiz*: as in like case there had been many Towns built by *Greeks* and *Romans*, by the name of *Nicopolis*, or the City of Victory, in the which we shall meet withal hereafter. Situate in the place of the ancient *Vellca*, but graced with the privileges and name of a City, by *John* the second of *Castile*, after it came under the Command of that Crown, *An. 1432*. A Town belonging properly to the little

Pro

Province of *Olava*, and the chief thereof. Which Province being wholly in, and amongst the *Cantabrian* Mountains, was of old a member of *Navarre*: but being extorted from it, *An. 1200*, by *Alphonso* the 4th. of *Castile*, it was in the year 1332, incorporated into that Crown, as a part thereof; as were some other Towns and Members of this Kingdom also, won by the *Castilians*. 2. *Viane*, on the East of the River *Ebro*, well fortified, after the taking of *Logrono* on the other side of the water, (from which distant not above a League) as the Frontier Town against *Castile*. Of greatest note for being the title of the eldest Son of *Navarre*, who was called Prince of *Viane*; advanced upon this honour by King *Charles* the third, *An. 1421*, in imitation of the like custom in *Castile*, where the eldest Son was called Prince of the *Asturias*: but not less memorable for the death of *Casir Borgia*, slain near unto it in an ambush, after all his wanderings, and interchangableness of fortunes. For being Son of Pope *Alexander* the sixth, by birth a *Spaniard*, he was by his Father made a Cardinal; but relinquishing that Title, by *Charles* the eighth of *France*, treated Duke of *Valentinis*, in the Province of *Dauphine*: during his Father's life, he had reduced under his obedience, divers of the Estates which anciently had belonged to the Church of *Rome*; but after his death, imprisoned by Pope *Julius* the second, who was jealous (not without good cause) of his plots and practices, from *Rome* he stole unto *Gonfalo*, then Vice-Roy of *Naples* for *Ferdinandus* the *Catholic*; who notwithstanding his safe conduct, sent him prisoner to Spain; but breaking Prison (desperately sliding down a Window) he came at last into this Kingdom, and was here slain in an Ambuscade, as before was said. So many times was *Macchiasoli*'s great Politician over-reached by Bookmen and Soldiers! 3. *Sobrarbe*, in the most inaccessible parts of the *Pyrenees*; for that cause made the first Seat of the Kings of *Navarre*, entitled from thence the Kings of *Sobrarbe*. Made afterwards a distinct Kingdom from *Navarre*, by *Sancho* the Great, who gave it to *Gonfalo* his youngest Son: after whose death (not having issue) it was seized on by *Don Raynir*, the first King of *Aragon*, and made a member of that Crown. 4. *Sanguessa*, a Town of a large Territory and Jurisdiction, privileged with a Suffrage in the Convention of Estates, and a strong Fortrefs on the borders towards *Aragon*: for which cause formerly aimed at by the Kings thereof, who have had it sometimes in their hands. 5. *Pampeluna*, in the Champaign Country, on the banks of the River *Arge*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom, and the Seat-Royal of its Kings, since the Conquest of it from the *Moors* by *Inigo Arista*, the sixth King of *Navarre*. Of old divided into three parts; that is to say, *Baug*, *Pemplement*, and *Naxariere*; each having several Officers and Jurisdictions, (the cause of many quarrels and much blood amongst them) till all united into one body, and reduced under the command of one chief Magistrate, by King *Charles* the third. *An.* An ancient Town, first built by *Pompey* at the end of his Wars against *Scythians*; in memory of whom called *Pompeipolis* by our modern Latinitis; but *Pampeluna*, more near unto the present name, by *Polomy* and *Antoninus*: now an Episcopal See, the seat of the Vice-Roy, and one of the best fortified Towns of all Spain. 6. *Mia*, not far from the borders of *France*, where it joyneth on *Guipuzcoa*; a place of principal importance: the Castle whereof was one of the last pieces on this side of the Mountains, which held out for King *John* of *Albarran*, against *Ferdinand* the *Catholic*, in his surprisal of this Kingdom. 7. *Montreal*, 8. *Olite*, and 9. *Tafalla*, all yielded with the rest of this Kingdom, to *Fredrick* of

*Toledo*, Duke of *Alva*: who had the happiness to subdue this Realm to the Crown of *Castile*, as his Son *Ferdinand* had to conquer the Realm of *Portugal*. 10. *Tudela*, on the Eastern bank of the River *Ebro*, took from him, by a surprize by *Rosow* Earl of *Perch*, (a Frenchman) coming with many other noble persons to the aid of *Alphonso*, King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*, at the siege of *Sarragossa*, *An. 1110*. Given by that King unto him, for the reward of his service; and afterwards united to the Crown of *Navarre*, by the marriage of *Magdalen* daughter of Earl *Rosow*, with *Garcia* the seventh King of *Navarre*, Successor in that Kingdom to the said *Alphonso*. Of late times honoured with a little University there founded by *Ferdinand* the *Catholic*, on his surprisal of that Kingdom. 11. *Calahorra*, situate on the Western banks of the *Bernu*, or *Ibro*, by *Polomy* called *Calagorina*; by *Strabo*, *Calaguris*; now a Bishops See: taken from *Sancho* the eighth of *Navarre*, by *Alphonso* the fourth of *Castile*, and made a Member of that Kingdom, as also was 12. *Logrono*, in the Country of *Rioja*, on the same banks of the River also. 13. *Ejella*, bordering on *Castile*, to which adjudged (though on the Eastern side of the River) by *Lewis* the 11th. of *France*, made Empire for the atonement of some differences betwixt *Henry* King of *Castile*, and *John* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*; to satisfy that King for his charges in the former Quarrel.

The old Inhabitants thereof, were the *Vascones*, possessed not only of this tract, but of *Biscay* and *Guipuzcoa* also, from them denominated: who passing over the *Pyrenees*, made themselves Masters of that Province which is now called *Gascogne* by the French, and *Vasconia* in Latin. Won from the *Romans* by the *Goths*, and from them by the *Moors*; it began to be a Kingdom under *Garcia Ximenes*, a noble man of the *Gothic* blood; who with 600 men only began to make head against the *Saracens*, *An. 716*. first under the title of the Kingdom of *Sobrarbe*; and after that, of *Navarre*, for the reasons formerly delivered. The sixth from *Garcia Ximenes*, was *Inigo*, surnamed *Arista*, (so named from his vehemency and heat in War) the Son of *Simon* Earl of *Bigorre* in *Gascogne*; elected to this Kingdom on the death of *Ximenes* the fifth King, *An. 840*. or thereabouts, as the next Heir (but in the collateral Line) of *Don Garcia Ximenes*, the first King of *Sobrarbe*. To him the taking of *Pampeluna* is ascribed most generally, though *Turpin* in his History refer the fame to *Garcia* the second King. But certainly the Town was in the hands of the *Moors*, till forced from them by the prowess of *Charlemagne*; by them again recovered after the defeat of *Roncevaux*, and held till the time of this King, who possessed himself of it. To this King also is ascribed the first beginning of the ceremony of Crowning and Anointing, after the manner used by the Kings of *France*. But the old *Roman Provincial*, cited in the *Titles of Honour*, acknowledgeth no such honour to these petty Kings, communicated only, in that time, to the Emperors of the East and West, the Kings of *Hierusalem*, *England*, *France*, and *Scit*. And therefore probable it is, that the custom came into *Navarre* with the House of *Champagne*. Other Kings of most note in the course of Story, were 3. *Fortan*, the second Nephew of *Inigo Arista*, by his Son *Garcia* the third; who added unto his Estate, the Earldom of *Aragon*, defended to him by his Mother, the Daughter and Heir of *Almariz*, or *Anzarin*, the last Earl thereof. 4. *Sancho* the fourth, surnamed the Great, who first assumed unto himself the title of King of Spain: his Predecessors using no other title than Kings of *Sobrarbe* and *Navarre*; his Co-temporaries calling themselves Kings of *Leon*, *Toledo*, *Sevil*, *Cordoba*, according to the names

of

of their several Kingdoms: the *Goths*, Kings of the *Onbs* in *Spain*; and to the *Vandals*, and the *Suevi*. Only the Earls of *Barcelona*, at their first erection by the *French*, entitled themselves the Dukes and Marquesses of *Spain*, as if all were theirs, with brag and vanity enough. But this Prince had some good ground for it, as being by inheritance possessed of *Navarre* and *Aragon*; *Castile*, in the right of his Wife *Dona Nuala*, or *Elvira*, Sister and Heir of *Sancho* the last Earl thereof; and by conquest of a great part of the Realm of *Leon*: so that almost all *Spain*, not possessed by the *Moor*, was become his own. Had these Estates remained intire to his Successors, the *Moor*, no doubt, had sooner lost their hold in *Spain*; and the whole Continent been brought under the obedience of one sole Monarch. But this King either loving all his Sons alike, or else offended with the eldest, who most unnaturally had accused his own innocent Mother of the crime of Adultery, divided his Estates amongst them; giving to *Garcia* his eldest Son, the Realm of *Navarre*, with that part of *Leon* which he held by Conquest; to *Ferdinand* his second Son, *Castile* and *Aragon*; to his third Son *Raymir*, both which he erected into Kingdoms: and finally, to *Gonsalez* his third Son, the Realm of *Sarabre*, then first dismembered from *Navarre*. By means of which impolitic course, his Sons being all of equal Title and Estates, instead of opposing the common Feud, quarrelled with each other, and left the Quarrel as a Legacy to their several Successors: which mischief might have been avoided, if he had not dignified them all with the title of Kings, or left the rest as Homagers unto one Supreme. 5. *Sancho* the fifth, Nephew of *Sancho* the Great, by his Son *Garcia de Nagera*; unnaturally and traitorously slain by his Brother *Ramir*. After whose death, and the short interposition of his Murtherer, this Kingdom was seized on by the Kings of *Aragon*; three of which, viz. *Sancho Ramirez*, *Pedro*, and *Alfonso*, did severally and successively enjoy the same. 6. *Alfonso*, the last of the three Kings of *Aragon* reigning in *Navarre*, surnamed the *Warrior*; who for a time was King of *Castile* also, in right of *Urraca* his Wife: in which respect he took unto himself the title of *Emperour* of *Spain*, though not acknowledged by his others. But finally, dying without Issue, and his Brother *Raymir*, or *Raymond*, called the *Monk*, succeeding in *Aragon*, the Kingdom of *Navarre* reverted to *Garcia Raymir*, Lord of *Monzon*, the direct Heir of *Garcia de Nagera*, by *Raymir Lord of Calahorra*, his younger Son. 7. *Sancho* the eighth, the Nephew of this *Garcia Raymir*, by his Son *Sancho* the seventh, first named the *Wife*, the last King of the *Malculine* and direct Line of the Kings of *Navarre*; the Kingdom, after his decease, passing by the Females, or Heirs-general, to the Earls of *Champagne*, and so unto the Kings of *France*, the Houses of *Eureux*, *Foix*, *Albret*, and *Vendosme*; but never holding above three decedents in any one Family. By means whereof, these Kings being barred from gaining any thing on the *Moor*, by the interposition of the Kings of *Castile* and *Aragon*; and having no way to enlarge their Revenue or Dominions, by any undertakings or adventures at Sea, as the *Portugals* did: incorporated to their Crown as fair and large possessions in the Realm of *France*, as any of the others did in the *Spanish* Continent. The Principality of *Bearn*, the Earldoms of *Foix* and *Begorre*, united in the person of *Gaston* of *Foix*; as those of *Armagnac* and *Albret*, in the person of *John Earl of Albret*: all lying together on the other side of the *Pyrenees*; all added to this Crown by marriage with the Heirs hereof: made up a fairer and wealthier Estate than *Navarre* itself, inferior to few Provinces in the Realms of *Spain*. Not to say any thing

of the accession of the County-Palatine of *Champagne*, exchanged afterwards for some Lands in the Country of *La March* in *Limousin*; or of the Earldoms of *Eureux*, and the Duchy of *Vendosme*, as lying further off; and of less importance: Nor of the great Kingdom of *France*, now herewith incorporate, as to the Person of the King, though not in the possession of this Kingdom also. With so much judgement and success did the ensuing Kings (not otherwise able to enlarge their Territories) bestow their Daughters, that the *Dissip* proved as happy to this little Kingdom, as the Sword to others. 8. *Charles*, the second of that name, and the 30 King of *Navarre*; whom I mention not for any glorious Actions achieved in his life, (for that was full enough of ignominy) but for the strangeness and heinousness of his death. He was a Prince much given to voluptuousness, and sensual pleasures, which he wasted his spirits, that in his old age he fell into a kind of *Lethargy*. To comfort his benumbed joys, he was bound and sewed up naked in a sheet, steeped in boiling *Aqua-vite*. The *Chyrurgion* having made an end of sewing the sheet, and wanting a knife to cut off the thread, took a Wax-Candle that stood lighted by him; but the flame running down by the thread, caught hold on the sheet; which (according to the nature of *Aqua-vite*) burned with that vehemency, that the miserable King ended his days in the fire. 9. *John of Aragon*, the second Son of *Ferdinand* the first, in the life of his Brother *Alfonso*, was made King of *Navarre*, in right of *Blanche* his Wife, Daughter of *Charles* the third; and on the death of his Brother, King of *Aragon* also. And though his Queen died long before him, in whole right he reigned; yet he kept possession of the Kingdom till his death, (reigning fifty four years in all) notwithstanding the opposition made against him by *Charles Prince of Viana*, his only Son by that marriage, and Heir apparent of that Crown; whom he vanquished, imprisoned, and at last poisoned. 10. *John Earl of Albret* in *Gascogne*, King of *Navarre* in right of *Katharine* his Wife: in whose reign the Kingdom of *Navarre* was seized on by *Ferdinand the Catholic*, Son of the said *John King of Aragon and Navarre*, by a second Wife. The manner of it we shall relate with more particulars, when we have summed the whole Succession of

#### The Kings of Navarre.

- |       |    |   |
|-------|----|---|
| A. C. | 1  | <i>Garcia Ximenes</i> . 42.   |
| 716   | 2  | <i>Garcia II. Son of Garcia Ximenes</i> .   |
| 758   | 3  | <i>Fortunio</i> . 13.   |
| 802   | 4  | <i>Sancho Garcia</i> , the last of the direct Line of <i>Garcia Ximenes</i> .   |
| 835   |    | An Inter-regnum of 4 years.   |
| 844   | 6  | <i>Inigo</i> , surnamed <i>Arista</i> , Earl of <i>Begorre</i> , the next Heir-male of the House of <i>Garcia Ximenes</i> . 23. |
| 867   | 7  | <i>Garcia III.</i> surnamed <i>Inigo</i> . 18.  |
| 885   | 8  | <i>Fortunio II.</i> King of <i>Navarre</i> , and Earl of <i>Aragon</i> . 16.  |
| 901   | 9  | <i>Sancho II.</i> called <i>Abarca</i> , Brother of <i>Fortunio</i> the second. 19.   |
| 920   | 10 | <i>Garcia IV.</i> 49.   |
| 959   | 11 | <i>Sancho III.</i> 24.  |
| 993   | 12 | <i>Garcia V.</i> surnamed the <i>Trembler</i> .   |
| 1000  | 13 | <i>Sancho IV.</i> surnamed the <i>Great</i> ; of whom sufficiently before.  |

- |      |     |  |
|------|-----|--|
| 1034 | 14. | <i>Garcia VI.</i> called <i>de Nagera</i> , eldest Son of <i>Sancho</i> . 20.  |
| 1054 | 15. | <i>Sancho V.</i> slain by  |
| 1074 | 16. | <i>Raymir</i> , the Brother of <i>Sancho</i> the fifth, disappointed by  |
| 1076 | 17. | <i>Sancho VI.</i> surnamed <i>Ramires</i> , King of <i>Aragon</i> . 18.  |
| 1094 | 18. | <i>Pedro</i> , King of <i>Aragon</i> .   |
| 1104 | 19. | <i>Alfonso</i> , called <i>de Warrior</i> ; the last of the Kings of <i>Aragon</i> , reigning in <i>Navarre</i> .  |
| 1134 | 20. | <i>Garcia VII.</i> Nephew of <i>Garcia de Nagera</i> . 16.   |
| 1150 | 21. | <i>Sancho VII.</i> surnamed the <i>Wife</i> .  |
| 1194 | 22. | <i>Sancho VIII.</i> the last of the Male-Issue of <i>Garcia Ximenes</i> . 40.  |
| 1234 | 23. | <i>Theobald Earl of Champagne</i> , Son of the Lady <i>Blanche</i> , Sister and Heir of <i>Sancho</i> the 8th. 19.   |
| 1253 | 24. | <i>Theobald II.</i> Earl of <i>Champagne</i> . 18.   |
| 1271 | 25. | <i>Henry</i> , Son of <i>Theobald</i> the second. 3.   |
| 1274 | 26. | <i>Joan</i> , the Daughter of <i>Henry</i> , married to <i>Philip the Fair</i> , of <i>France</i> . 31.  |
| 1305 | 27. | <i>Lewis Hutin</i> , King of <i>France</i> . 10.   |
| 1315 | 28. | <i>Philip the Long</i> , King of <i>France</i> . 5.  |
| 1320 | 29. | <i>Charles the Fair</i> , King of <i>France</i> . 8.   |
| 1328 | 30. | <i>Joan II.</i> Queen of <i>Navarre</i> , the Daughter of <i>Lewis Hutin</i> .   |
|      |     | <i>Philip II.</i> Earl of <i>Eureux</i> .  |
| 1349 | 31. | <i>Charles II.</i> Son of <i>John</i> and <i>Philip</i> of <i>Eureux</i> . 37.   |
| 1386 | 32. | <i>Charles III.</i> Earl of <i>Eureux</i> . 32.  |
| 1425 | 33. | <i>John</i> , Prince of <i>Aragon</i> , after the death of his elder Brother, King of <i>Aragon</i> also; the Husband of <i>Blanche</i> , the Daughter of <i>Charles</i> the third. 54.  |
| 1479 | 34. | <i>Leonora</i> , Daughter of <i>John</i> and <i>Blanche</i> , the Widow of <i>Gaston</i> Earl of <i>Foix</i> ; a Queen of 15 days only.  |
| 1479 | 35. | <i>Francis Phelipe</i> , Grandchild of <i>Leonora</i> and <i>Gaston</i> of <i>Foix</i> , by their Son <i>Gaston</i> , Prince of <i>Viane</i> .   |
|      |     | <i>Catharine</i> , Sister of <i>Francis</i> .  |
| 1483 | 36. | <i>John</i> , Earl of <i>Albret</i> .  |
| 1517 | 37. | <i>Henry II.</i> Earl of <i>Albret</i> , Son of <i>John</i> and <i>Catharine</i> .   |
|      |     | <i>Joan III.</i> Daughter of <i>Henry</i> of <i>Albret</i>   |
| 1556 | 38. | <i>Anthony of Bourbon</i> , Duke of <i>Vendosme</i> in <i>France</i> .   |
| 1572 | 39. | <i>Henry III.</i> the Son of <i>Anthony</i> and <i>Joan</i> , after the death of <i>Henry</i> the third of <i>France</i> , succeeded also in that Realm, by the name of <i>Henry</i> the fourth.   |
| 1610 | 40. | <i>Lewis III.</i> of <i>Navarre</i> , and <i>XIII.</i> of <i>France</i> , now living; with whom remain the rights, but not the possession of this Kingdom. For in the reign of <i>Katharine</i> and <i>John</i> of <i>Albret</i> , <i>Ferdinand</i> gathered an Army under the pretence of rooting out the <i>Moor</i> , and surprised this Kingdom, altogether unprovided, and destitute of means to make the smallest resistance, Anno 1512. The pretended reason of this surprisal, was an Excommunication laid on the Princes by the <i>Pope</i> , of which this King took upon him to be Executioner; but the true cause was an ancient desire which this King had to possess this frontier Kingdom, it being a strong Bulwark against <i>France</i> . It happened then, that <i>Lewis</i> the 12th, having incurred the displeasure of <i>Pope Julius</i> the second, was (together with all his adherents) excommunicated, and his and their Estates given to such as could or would subdue them. The King and Queen of |

*Navarre* were, at this time, both *French* Subjects: he, in respect of *Albret*, his Paternal Inheritance; and she, of her Estates of *Foix* and *Bearn*: and therefore sided with the *French* King, *Ferdinand* having (as we said) levied an Army under colour of extirpating the *Moor*, turneth upon the *French* King, and demanded of these Princes not only a free passage through their Country, but also to have certain places of strength put into his hand, for his better advantage. These unjust demands the *Navarrese* denied. Whereupon *Ferdinand* with all expedition invadeth the Kingdom, the greatest part of which he took without a blow given; the *French* King being as backward in affording due assistance, as the other was unprovided of means for defence. The *French* notled with this loss, divers times attempted the recovery of it, but in vain: for the *Spaniards* still kept those parts of it which lye on that side of the *Pyrenees*, leaving the rest, which lye on the *French* side of those Mountains (being about a sixth part of the whole) to the Descendants of those Princes whom he had deified.

The chief Order of Knighthood was of the *Lilly*, begun by *Charles* the sixth; their Blazon, a Pot of *Lillies*, with the Portraiture of our Lady engraven upon it, their duty, to defend the Faith, and daily to repeat certain *Ave-Maries*.

The Arms of *Navarre*, are *Gules*, a Caruncle nowed Or. Which Caruncle having a resemblance unto chains of Gold, is said to have been first taken by *Sancho* the 8th, in memory that he and his Forces had first broken the Fortification made with Chains, about the Pavilion of *Mahomet Ensign*, the *Miramonolin* of *Morocco*, at the great fight in *Sierra Morena*; before which time the Arms of this Kingdom had been *Azure*, a Cross *Argent*.

### 3. BISCAT and GUIPUSCOA.

OF these two we shall speak together, because of the similitude and resemblances which are between them, both in the Country and the People: the names being also forged from the same Original: Bounded on the West, with the Kingdom of *Leon*, on the East with the *Pyrenees*, and *Guyenne* in the Realm of *France*; on the North, with the *Cantabrian* Ocean; and on the South, with *Navarre* and old *Castile*. Thus named from the *Vascones*, inhabiting the neighbouring Kingdom of *Navarre*, in the time of the *Romans*: part of which people, in the year 640, or thereabouts, passed over unto the further side of the *Pyrenees*, where they took up those parts of *France*, since from them called *Gascogne*. The rest continuing in their old Seat, or spreading more into the West, towards the *Cantabrians*, gave to those parts the name of *Guipuscoa*, and *Vizcaya*, (for so the *Spaniards* write and speak it) now by us called *Biscay*: their language also (which is much different from the rest of *Spain*) being called the *Bajquis*, more nearin found to that of the *Vascons*, the original name.

The whole Country is very Mountainous and Woody, yielding but little store of Corn, and less of Wine: the defect of the first being supplied from other Countries; of the last, by *Siders*; for which end they plant Apples here in great abundance. But from these Woods they draw continually great store of Timber for the building of Ships; and from those Hills there do not only issue pleasant Rivers, (some say 150 in number) of which *Ibros* and *Dura* are said to be two: but such infinite flocks of *Iron* and *Steel*, that no Country yieldeth better, or in greater plenty. Called and accounted for this cause, the *Armory of Spain*; and giving occasion unto

Pliny to report, that there was in this Country a whole Mountain of Iron, *Maritima Cantabria parte, Mons prærupte altus (incredibile dictum) totus ex ea materia* ft. lib. 33. cap. 45. Nor do they only furnish all Spain with Iron, which they make into Instruments of War, and others for domestic uses: but with Timber also for their shipping, with which is stored, that whole Fleets may be built and armed from this Country only.

It is divided commonly into two parts; the Eastern bordering on the Pyrenees, and the Realm of France, which is called *GUIPUSCOA*; and the Western, bordering on the Kingdom of Leon, which properly is called *BISCAY*: the Town of *Montrio* standing in the Confines of both. Both of them heretofore of the same Original, though by several means united to the Crown of Castile: both speak the same *Cantabrian* language, now called the *Biscayish*; the people of both, being more rude and simple, than the rest of Spain; but standing much upon their Gentry, according to the custom of most mountainous and unconquered Nations. The difference is, that those of *Guipuscoa*, by reason of their traffic and commerce with other Countries, favour a little more of Christianity than the others do: in which the common *Biscain* are so far to seek, that though they have some general notions of God and CHRIST, yet very few of them are able to render an account of their Faith, in any tolerable measure. And thus a view being taken of those general notions in which both Countries are concerned; let us next look upon them in their several and distinct capacities, with reference to their chief Towns and Stories.

And first for *GUIPUSCOA*. The places of chiefest note in it are, 1. *S. Sebastian*, (*Don Baltha*, as the vulgar call it) a noted and well traded Port, at the mouth of the River *Gurumo*; beautified with a fair and capacious Haven, defended at the entrances with two strong Castles founded upon the opposite Rocks, and honoured with an Episcopal See. 2. *Tolosa*, (commonly called *Nazare*) at the confluence of the Rivers *Oria* and *Duero*. 3. *Placencia*, on the River *Duero*, inhabited by none but *Blacksmiths*, who do attend their Hammers with such endless diligence, that *Vulcan's* Forge may seem to be translated hither out of the Island of *Lemnos*. 4. *Guetaria*, beautified with a safe and convenient Haven, defended from all Winds by a little Island lying before it: the birth-place of *Sebastian del Cabo*, that famous Pilot, the first that sailed about the World: *Magellann* who went chief in that expedition, perishing in the Action. 5. *Pontarabiat*, at the mouth of the River *Vidua*, which divides this Country from *Gyenne* in France; for that cause very well fortified, and as strongly garrisoned. 6. *Retoria*, situate near a Brook abounding with most excellent Salmons. 7. *Montrio*, at the mouth of the River *Duero*; the farthest Town hereof on the edge of *Biscay*. Most of which stand upon or near the Sea, there being but few Towns of note within the Land, (though there enough of scattered Villages, as in *Biscay* also) because of the roughness of the Mountains.

As for the Fortunes and affairs of this part of the Country, after the subversion of the Kingdom of the *Goths* in Spain (for till that time they followed the same Fortunes with the rest of this Continent) it was at first a member of the Crown of *Navarre*; afterwards wrested from K. *Sancho* the sixth, by *Alfonso* the first of *Castile*, An. 1079; by whom committed to the Government of *Lopez Diaz de Haro*, Lord of *Biscay*. Restored again to the Kings of *Navarre*, upon some following Captulations: It continued till the year 1200; when having experience of the Government of both Kingdoms, and liking better that of *Castile*, they offered

themselves to the subjection of *Alfonso* the 4th; who without so much as one blow struck, became Master of all the Country, and left it settled and confirmed unto his Successors, as it hath ever since remained.

2. For *BISCAY* next; the principal Towns thereof are, 1. *Larrabeechia*, the chief Town of this Province in elder times; in the chief Church whereof, the Kings of Spain, as Lords of *Biscay*; use to be solemnly inaugurated, here making Oath to maintain the Liberties of the Country, and receiving the Homage and Allegiance of the people of it. 2. *Berno*, an old Town also, and amply privileged; the Franchises whereof, the Kings are solemnly sworn to keep, in the Church, dedicated to the honour of S. *Euphemia*. 3. *Guzmania*, the third Town for antiquity in this part of these Countries. Then of a later date, we have 4. *Bilbo*, or *Bilboa*, situate some two Leagues from the Sea, but on a fair and deep Creek thereof; on the other side surrounded with Mountains: built out of the ruins of the old *Flaviobriga*, by *Diego de Haro*, Lord of *Biscay*, An. 1300; and situate the best of any Town in this Country, for plenty of Victuals, especially for fish, and most excellent bread. Exceedingly enriched by making of Armour, and all sorts of Weapons, (their chiefest Manufacture) the *Bilbo*-blades in such request being brought from hence. Besides which trade of Arms and Iron, they deal also in Wool; by the vent of which Commodities they are grown so wealthy, that here are many private Merchants which build yearly three or four good Ships for their own trade only. 5. *Laredo*, a Sea Town also, with a capable Port. The landing place of *Charles* the fifth, when he had relinquished the Empire, and all his other Estates, with resolution to spend the rest of his life in Spain, in a private manner: it being observable, that he was no sooner landed, but the Admiral ship in which he came, and the greatest part of the Navy which came with him, perished in the Haven; so flew him (as it were) that there was no receding from this resolution. 6. *Portigadeira*, commodiously seated on an Arm of the Sea, which floweth up to their very houses, and serveth them exceedingly for the lading and unlading of their Commodities.

The old Inhabitants of this Tract, before the coming in of the *Vascones*, were the *Cantabri*; these subdivided into the several Nations of the *Marbogi*, the *Caristi*, the *Autriguer*, the *Vardali*, and the *Cantabri* properly so called. From these descend the modern *Biscain*. An argument whereof may be their Language, different from the rest of Spain; and said by some to have continued in this Country ever since the conquest at *Babel*. And though they over-shoot themselves; that go as far as *Babel* for the Pedigree and Antiquity of it; yet that it was the ancient Language of Spain, is more than probable; because this people have ever continued without any mixture of Foreign Nations, as being never thoroughly subdued either by *Romans*, *Carthaginians*, *Goths*, or *Moor*s; and so they remained, as in their Liberties not altered, so in their Language not altered. In like manner the *Arabick* continued uncorrupt, in the hills in parts of *Granada*, the Tongue of the old *Britains*, in our *Wales*; and the ancient *Epiriatic*, in the high, woody, and more mountainous parts of that Country. And though those of *Guipuscoa* speak the same Language also, yet is it with a greater mixture of French words, (by reason of their neighbourhood with France, and commerce with Strangers) than it is in *Biscay*; where the old natural Language, whatsoever it was, is in far more purity.

Nor do the *Biscain* differ from the rest of Spain in Language only, but in Customs also; four of which I will here

here set down as a light to the rest. First, they account themselves free from Taxes and Contributions to the Kings of Spain; yielding them obedience with their Bodies, but not with their Purse. And when any of the *Spanish* Kings, in their Progresses, come to the Frontiers of their Country, he bareth one of his Legs, and in that manner entereth into it. There he is met by the Lords and Gentlemen there dwelling, who proffer him some few small Brass pieces ( *Maravedies* they call them, whereof 600 go to a Crown ) in a Leather Bag, hanged at the end of a Lance: but withall they tell him, that he must not take them. Which Ceremony performed, they all attend the King in his journey. Secondly, They admit no Bishops to come amongst them; and when *Ferdinand* the *Catholic* came in Progress hither, accompanied, amongst others, by the Bishop of *Pampluna*, the people arose in Arms, drove back the Bishops gathering all the dust on which they thought he had trodden, cast it into the Sea. Which averifies unto Bishops, as they first took up, in all probability, on some hard usage which they found at the hands of their Prelates; and still retain it out of a stubbornness of nature, most peculiar to them: so possible enough it is, that the want of Bishops, and of Episcopal Visitations amongst the *Biscain* is not the least cause of that ignorance and rudeness (spoken of before) which is found amongst them. Thirdly, they allow not any Priests to live in their Villages, except he bring his Concubine with him: conceiving it impossible for them to keep their Wives unto themselves, if the Curate hath not a Woman of his own. Fourthly, The Women, at all meetings, do first taste of the Cup, and do dispose of it to the men; which custom they have had amongst them ever since *Ogno*, the Countess of *Castile*, attempted to have poisoned her Son *Sancho*, in a Cup of Wine.

But to return again to the old Inhabitants, they were a people of that courage, that they defended the liberty of their Country against the *Romans*, when theretofore of Spain was subdued; and were at last, notwithstanding great effusion of blood, and manifest tokens of manly resolution, and heroic spirits on their parts, vanquished by the Darling of Fortune, *Augustus*. Such hilly and mountainous people, are always the last that are conquered, and the first that stand on their own guard: as besides those *Biscain*, the *Navarrois* and *Asturians*, here in Spain, in respect of the *Moor*s; and our *Britains*, in relation to the *Saxons*. Whether it be, that living in a sharp air, and being inclined to labour, they prove on occasion good and able men; or that the Forts of Nature's own building are not so easily won, as defended; or that the unpleasants of the Country, and unfruitfulness of the Soil, yield no occasion to strangers to desire an Adventure for it: I take not on me to determine. But being overcome at last, they were first cast into the Province of *Tarraconensis*; and so continued after the new modelling of Spain, by the Emperor *Constantine*. Under the *Romans* they continued, till that Empire fell; and then not conquered by the *Goths*, but resigned over to them by the *Romans*, with the rest of that Province. Nor lost they any thing of their ancient and natural courage, by the intermixture of the *Vascon*s; continuing till good Souldiers both for Sea and Land; a stubborn, fierce, and courageous people; impatient of servitude, and not easy to be forced to any thing which they like not of. The last of all the *Spaniards* that submitted to the fury of the *Moor*s, (excepting those of the *Asturias*, never conquered by them) and one of the first Provinces which broke off that yoke: animated and conducted in that undertaking, by *Soria*, defended of the Blood-Royal of *Spain*.

*Land*, Anno 870. made upon that good service, the first Lord of *Biscay*. After this, they continued a free and distinct Estate, under their own Proprietary Lords and Princes of the Noble Family of *Haro*, till that *Nero* of Spain, *Don Pedro* the Cruel, violently took it from *Dona Jeanne*, the eldest Daughter, married to *Ferdinand* the younger Son of *Ferdinand de la Cerde*, the right heir of *Castile*, issued the Lady *Jeanne Manuel*, the Wife of *Henry* the second, and Mother of *John* the first, both King of *Castile*: by which last, this Country was united to that Crown for ever, Anno 1379. The names of the Proprietary Lords of this Estate, we have in this following Catalogue of

#### The Lords of *Biscay*.

A.Chr.

- 870 1. *Soria*, the Son of *Lopes* of *Biscay*, but Nephew by the Mother's side to a King of Scotland, the first Lord of *Biscay*.
2. *Manfo Laper*, the Son of *Soria*.
3. *Inigo* the Deaf, Son of *Manfo Laper*.
4. *Lopez Diaz*, the Son of *Inigo*.
5. *Sancho Lopez*, the Son of *Lopes Diaz*.
6. *Inigo II.* the safe Son of *Lopes Diaz*; the two Sons of *Sancho Lopez*, by reason of their tender years, being yet aforesaid.
7. *Lopez Diaz II.* Son of *Inigo* the second.
8. *Diego Laper*, surnamed the *White*, Son of *Lopez Diaz* the second.
9. *Lopez Diaz III.* Son of *Diego Laper*; the first who took unto himself the surname of *Haro*, from a Town of that name, of his foundation.
10. *Diego Laper Diaz de Haro*, Son of *Lopez Diaz* the third.
11. *Lopez Diaz IV.* Son of *Diego Lopez Diaz de Haro*.
- 1257 12. *Diego Lopez Diaz II.* assisted *Sancho* the second Son of King *Alfonso* the fifth of *Castile*, in excluding the Children of *Don Ferdinand de la Cerde*, his elder Brother; by which *Sancho* he was after slain. A reward not unsuitable to his bold attempt.
- 1289 13. *Diego Laper de Haro*, the Son of *Diego*.
- 1290 14. *Diego Laper III.* the Brother of *Diego Lopez Diaz* the second, the Founder of the Town of *Bilbo*.
- 1309 15. *John* of *Castile*, Brother to King *Sancho*, and Husband of *Mary Diaz de Haro*, Daughter of *Diego Laper* the second.
- 1319 16. *John* the Blind, so called, because he had lost an Eye; Son of *John* of *Castile*, and *Mary Diaz* of *Haro*; slain by King *Alfonso*.
- 1329 17. *John Nunez* of *Lara*, in right of his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *John* the Blind, (whose name I find not) succeeded after the decease of *Dona Maria Diaz*.
- 1350 18. *Nugno de Lara*, an Infant of two years old, succeeded *John Nunez* of *Lara*, his Father.
- 1351 15. *Jean* and *Jabel*, the Sisters and Heirs of *Nugno de Lara*, seized upon by *Don Pedro*; and the whole Signeury of *Biscay* subjected by strong hand to the Crown of *Castile*, with many other fair Estates which depended on it.

The Arms of these Lords of *Biscay*, were *Argent*, two Wolves *Sable*, each of them in his mouth a Lamb of the second.

## 4. LEON and OVIEDO.

THE Kingdom of LEON and OVIEDO, hath on the East, the Country of Biscay; on the North, the main Cantabrian Ocean; on the South, Castile; on the West, Galicia. So called from Leon and Oviedo, the chief Cities of it, and first Seat of their Kings; the ancient Kingdom in all Spain. By a more ancient name it was called *Asturia*, from the *Astures*; who possessed it in the time of the Romans: divided into the two general names of *Augustani*, and *Transmontani*; but comprehending the particular Tribes or Nations of the *Pisici*, *Gigari*, *Zoele*, and *Lanceisfer*.

The Country mountainous and woody, but formerly of some esteem for those small, though swift Horses, which the Romans (from hence) called *Asturnes*; we may read it, *Hobbies*; which afterwards became a common name for all Nags or Geldings: *Astures* Macedonians, being used for a Macedonian Nag, by *Persius* *Astiviter*.

It is divided commonly into two parts; that is to say, 1. *Asturia de Oviedo*, bordering on Galicia, towards the West; and 2. *Asturia Santillana*, confining on Biscay, towards the East. From which division of the Country, the eldest Son of Castile is called Prince of the *Asturias* in the plural number; which title some suppose to be given unto them, because it was the first Country which held up against the Moors. But indeed, the true Original heretofore, is referred by the best Spanish Writers, to the time of the marriage of *Catharine*, Daughter of *John of Gaunt*, and in right of her Mother *Constance*, the right Heir of Castile, unto *Henry* Son of *John* the first, then in possession of that Kingdom. For to this new married Couple it was granted, faith *Mariana*, that after the manner of *England*, where the Heir apparent is called *Prince of Wales*, they should be called Princes of the *Asturias*. In times succeeding, the Towns of *Jean*, *Ubeda*, *Batista*, or *Baeta*, and *Andujar*, all situate near together in *Andalusia*, and each of them invested with a goodly Territory, were added to the Patrimony and Estate heretofore; and so continue to this day.

Places of most importance it is, 1. *Sublano*, now a small Village, but once a Town of so great strength, that it was destroyed by the command of the Emperor *Nerva*, lest it might animate these Mountaineers unto a revolt, 2. *LEON*, situate at the foot of the Mountain, not far from the place of the old *Sablano*, (as it was then called.) The Town but mean, were it not beautified by a fair and large Cathedral; the Bishop wherof acknowledged no *Metropolitan* but the Pope alone. Recovered from the Moors, *An. 722*. Afterwards made the Regal Seat of the Kings of Leon: by some called *Legio*, because the seventh Legion was here lodged; by *Prology* called *Legio Germanica*; and by others, *Gomina*, 3. *St. Andrea*, so named from a Church there built to the honour of *St. Andrew*; by *Prology* called *Flavienensis*; now a well traded Port on the Cantabrian Ocean. 4. *Santillana*, which gives name to the Eastern part of *Asturia*, 3. *Llanes*, where the two *Asturias* meet together, 6. *Ciudad Real*, in the Western part of *Asturia*, called *Asturia de Oviedo*, 7. *Villa Vieja*, the only noted Port in this part of the Country. 8. *Avies*, on the borders of *Galicia*, near the Sea, and not far from the Promontory called of old *Promontorium Sybeticum*, but now *Cabo de Pinar*, 9. *OVIEDO*, called for a time, the City of *Bis-*

shops, because many of the Bishops of Spain, dispossessed of their Churches by the Moors, had retired thither; and there preserved the line of Episcopal Succession, till their Sees were filled again with Bishops in more happy times. Anciently it was called *Lucus Asturum*, and was of old a Bishops See; re-edified by King *Froila* the first, in the year 757. Famous enough in giving the Title of a Kingdom to the first Christian Princes, after the Conquest by the Moors called from hence, Kings of *Oviedo*. Afterwards, *An. 896*, in the time of *K. Ordoño* the first, they began to be titled Kings of *Oviedo* and *León*; and at last, Kings of *Leon* only; *Oviedo* being quite left out of the Regal title, by *Raymir* the second, *An. 940*. More towards the Islands of this Kingdom, (now reckoned part of old Castile) are 10. *Palencia*, the *Palatia* of *Prology* and *Antoninus*, seated on the River *Carion*, once a small University, till the translation of it unto *Salamanca*, by King *Ferdinand* the third. This Town first felt the fury of the *Suevians*, when they mastered these parts of Spain. 11. *Astorga*, anciently called *Augusta Asturica*, when the *Astures* of this Tract were called *Augustani*; a Bishops See, fronting on *Galicia*: happy in this, that it felt not the fury of the lustful King *Visigoth*, who to secure himself in his unlawful pleasures, and to weaken his subjects if they should attempt any thing against him, dismantled all the Towns in his Dominions, except *Leon*, *Tolosa*, and this *Astorga*. 12. *Bonvent*, on the South-east of *Astorga*, which gave the title of Duke to *Frederick* the base Son of King *Henry* the 2d, of Castile, the stem of the potent Family of Spain, for the times they lived in. 13. *Torquemada*, the most Southern Town of all this Kingdom: and for that cause well fortified against the encroachments of the *Castilians*, till the uniting of the Kingdoms made afterwards, (as lying nearest to Castile and the Court of the Kingdom) ordinary place of conference with the States of Leon.

Who were the old Inhabitants of this Country, hath been shewn already. When conquered by *Augustus Caesar*, they were made part of the Province of *Tarraconensis*; part, afterwards, of the Province of *Galicia*, by the Emperor *Constantine*. Won from the Romans, by the *Goths*; and from them, by the Moors; though long they did not lie under their command. For as the last of *Roderick*, the King of the *Goths* in Spain, occasioned the coming in of the Moors; so the last of *Munizaga* Moorish Vice-Roy, occasioned (though in long course of time) their expulsion thence. For *Magazines* having employed *Pelagius*, a young Prince of the *Asturias*, on an Embassy to *Musa* the Lieutenant General of the Moors, then residing at *Corduba*, in his absence ravished his Sister, and at his return died by the edge of his Sword. Despairing of pardon for his act, he was fain to stand upon his guard, and fortify himself in the Mountainous places of this Country; to which many of the old Inhabitants resorted, put themselves under his command, and elected him to be their King: first by the name of King of the *Asturias*; and after by the title of King of *Leon*, when he had got that City into his hands; as being the City of most note, and the strongest Hold that he was possessed of. The Kingdom at the first beginning, contained only the more mountainous parts of the two *Asturias*; enlarged a little further South, on the taking of *Leon* by this first *Pelagius*. Afterwards, by the valour of *Ordoño* the second, it extended over both *Asturias*, *Galicia*, and the Old Castile: divided from the Moors by the Mountains of *Azila*, and *Segovia*; but more defended by the valour of the people, and Gallantry of their Princes, than it was by those Mountains. King of most note; besides the two before remembered, were 1. *Maurgata*, the base Son

of *Alfonso* the first; who having by the help of *Abderamen*, King of the Moors, obtained the Kingdom, came to a base agreement with them; in which he bound himself to pay them, as a yearly Tribute, 50 *Virgins* of Noble Families, and as many of inferior birth; for which he died hated and detested of all men. 2. *Raymir* the first, who so discomfited the Moors at the Battle of *Clavijo*, near *Calaborra*, in *Navarre*, *An. 836*, that from that time the Power and reputation of the Kings of *Corduba* began to languish. 3. *Alfonso* the third, who refused to pay unto the Moors the said tribute of *Virgins*; and for his many Victories against the Moors, was furnished, The Great; who being outed of the Kingdom by his Son *Garcia*, not only patiently digested to great a wrong, but willingly became his Son's Lieutenant against the Moors. 4. *Veramund* the second, chosen King in the minority of *Raymir* the third; in whose time the Moors took *Leon*, and spoiled the Church of *S. James* in *Galicia*; but were after beaten to their homes with the loss of many of their own places. 5. *Veramund* the third, who making War against *Ferdinand* the first, King of Castile, was by him slain in Battle; the Conqueror seizing on his Kingdom in right of *Sancha* his Wife, the Sister of *Veramund*; the three Kings next succeeding, being Kings of both. 6. *Ferdinand* the third, Son of *Alfonso* the 9th, and of *Berengaria*, the younger Sister of *Henry* King of Castile; by the Power and Policy of his Mother, seized on the *Castilian*, of right belonging to *Blanch* the elder Sister, Wife of *Lewis*, Son to *Philip* the second, King of France; and after the death of his Father, succeeded in *Leon*. Of whom we shall hear more when we come to Castile. After this time, these Kingdoms never were divided, but incorporate into one Estate, called for a long time the Kingdom of Castile and Leon; though afterwards *Leon* was left out of the Regal title, and only that of Castile mentioned; except in Legal Instruments, Letters Patent, and Instruments of Negotiation with Foreign Princes. The whole succession of these Kings, the Histories of Spain thus present unto us.

## The Kings of Oviedo and Leon.

## A.C.H.

- 716 1. *Pelagius*, of whom sufficiently before. 20.
- 735 2. *Fafila*, the Son of *Pelagius*. 2.
- 737 3. *Alfonso*, for his Piety furnished the *Catholic*, the Son in law of *Pelagius* by his Daughter *Ormsinde*.
- 756 4. *Pbroilla*, the Son of *Alfonso* the *Catholic*, the Founder, or Repairer rather, of *Oviedo*.
- 768 5. *Aurelius*, the Brother of *Pbroilla*. 6.
- 774 6. *Sillo*, the Son in law of *Alfonso* the *Catholic*, by his Daughter *Odsfnde*.
- 783 7. *Maurgata*, an Ufurper, the bastard Son of *Alfonso*. 6.
- 789 8. *Veramund*, Son to *Froilla*. 6.
- 795 9. *Alfonso* II. furnished the *Chaste*, the Brother of *Veramund*. 29.
- 825 10. *Raymir*, the Son of *Veramund*. 6.
- 831 11. *Ordoño*, Son to *Raymir*. 10.
- 841 12. *Alfonso* III. furnished the Great, the Son of *Ordoño*. 46.
- 886 13. *Garcia*, Son to *Alfonso* the third. 3.
- 889 14. *Ordoño* II. King of *Galicia*, the Brother of *Garcia*.
- 897 15. *Pbroilla* II. Brother of *Ordoño*. 1.
- 898 16. *Alfonso* IV. Son of *Ordoño*. 6.
- 904 17. *Raymir* II. Brother of *Alfonso*. 19.

- 924 18. *Ordoño* III. Son of *Raymir*. 5.
- 929 19. *Sancha*, furnished the *Griff*, Brother of *Ordoño* the third. 12.
- 941 20. *Raymir* III. Son of *Sancha*. 24.
- 965 21. *Veramund* II. Brother of *Sancha*. 17.
- 982 22. *Alfonso* V. Son of *Veramund*. 46.
- 1028 23. *Veramund* III. Son of *Alfonso*. 9.
- 1037 24. *Sancha*, Sister of *Veramund*. 30.
- 1037 24. *Ferdinand*, King of Castile. 30.
- 1607 25. *Alfonso* VI. the youngest Son of *Ferdinand* and *Sancha*: first King of *Leon* only; but after the death of *Sancha*'s elder Brother, he succeeded also in Castile. 41.
- 1126 26. *Urraca*, the Daughter of *Alfonso*.
- 1126 26. *Alfonso* VII. King of *Aragon* and *Navarre*. 13.
- 1122 27. *Alfonso* VIII. the Son of *Urraca*, by *Raymond* of *Burgundy*, succeeded in *Leon* and *Castile*. 35.
- 1157 28. *Ferdinand* II. younger Son of *Alfonso*, King of *Leon* only. 31.
- 1188 29. *Alfonso* IX. Son of *Ferdinand*. 42.
- 1230 30. *Ferdinand* III. Son of *Alfonso*, by *Berengaria*, or *Berenguela*, Sister of *Henry* of Castile, by the power and practices of his Mother, succeeded in the Realm of Castile, whilst his Father lived, *An. 1217*: to the prejudice of *Blanch* her elder Sister, married to *Lewis* the eighth of France; by whom he had *Lewis* the ninth, and other children. Which *Lewis* the ninth, on the marriage of *Blanch* his eldest Daughter, with *Ferdinand* eldest Son of *Alfonso* the fifth, surrendered all rights in the Crown of Castile, and so confirmed the same more absolutely to the house of *Leon*, *Anno 1267*; though neither this *Ferdinand*, nor *Blanch*, nor any of their Heirs, do attain that Kingdom; disfeized thereof by *Sancha* a younger Son. The Kingdoms never since that time disjoined, as they had been twice before since the first uniting.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Argent*, a Lyon *Pasant*, crowned Or. Which Arms when it was joined to the Kingdom of Castile, were quartered with the Coat thereof: that being the first time (as *Cambden* notes) that ever Arms were born Quartered. Followed herein by *Edward* the third of *England*, who not only took unto himself the title of King of France, but (to shew his right unto that Crown) quartered the Flower de *Lys* with his English Lions.

## 5. GALLICIA.

GALLICIA, or GALÆCIA, is bounded on the East with the *Asturias*, from which parted by the River *Mero*; on the South with *Portugal*, from which divided by the River *Minio*; on the North with the *Cantabrians*; and on the West with the *Atlantic* Oceans. The ancient Inhabitants of it, were the *Gallaeci*, (whence it had the name) distinguished into the several Tribes of the *Bedyi*, *Sueri*, *Citini*, *Caperi*, and *Lemavi*, spoken of by *Prology*.

The Country, like that of the *Asturias*, is mountainous, and almost inaccessible, overparched with the *Cantabrian* Hills; and so the fitter to hold out against Foreign Invasions, in defence of Liberty and Religion; in that regard chosen for a retiring place by the distressed and vanquished *Christians*, in their first Wars against the Moors: Not well inhabited to this day; nor so much

for the hilliness of the Country, as for want of Water; which defect makes the people generally draw more towards the Sea, where they improve their Fortunes by trade and fishing. The barrenness of the Country recompened heretofore by the rich Mines of Gold and Silver, which in this Country, and the *Astures*, and some part of *Lusitania*, afforded yearly 20000 pound weight of Gold unto the *Romans*, amounting in our money to two millions of Crowns: but now no such Mines found in it of any value. Instead of which, it yieldeth the best Mines for Iron, of any Province of *Spain*; for which their Waters are so proper, that they are said to fortify and improve the metal.

Places of principal importance are 1. *Compostella* an University and Arch-Bishops See, vulgarly called *St. Jago*, in honour of *St. James*, the Son of *Zebedee*, whom they pretend to be buried here, and of whom there is denominated an Order of Knights: his Reliques said to be kept in the chief Church of it, worshipped by the *Romanists* with great devotion: and drawing to this place a wonderful concourse of people, coming thither on pilgrimage. 2. *Baiona*, not far from the mouth of the River *Minia*, 3. *Coruna*, by *Polomy* called *Flavius Brigantium*; by us English the *Groy*: often mentioned in the story of our Wars with the *Spaniards*, in Queen *Elizabeth's* time; then taken by the *English*: but since, very well fortified to avoid the like surprisal. Divided then, as now, into the *High Town*, and the *Low's* situate on the *Cantabrian* Sea, between the Promontory *Tritemum*, now *Cabo Ortegal*, lying towards the East; and that of old called *Nirium*, now *Cabo Finis Terræ*, as being the most Western end of the then known World. 4. *Orense*, upon the *Minia*, a Bishops-See, by *Polomy* called *Aqua Calidae*, from the Bathes here being, now much commended for the best Wines. 5. *Tui*, on the River, fronting upon *Portugal*: a Bishops See, in ancient Writers called *Aude*, 6. *Ponte-vadre*, 7. *Ribadão*: both upon the Sea, both fitted with convenient Harbours.

The ancient Inhabitants heretofore, as before is said, were the *Gallaici*, one of the last Nations which submitted to the Power of the *Romans*: by whom first made a part of *Tarconensis*; after, a Province of it self, by the name of *Gallicia*; the *Astures*, and some part of the old *Castile* and *Portugal*, being added to it. In the declining of that Empire, the *Suevi*, a potent Nation of *Germany*, accompanying the *Vandals* and *Alani* in their *transigrations*, invaded *Spain*, and first possessed themselves of this Country. But not content with their Estate, they warred on the *Silinger*, (a *Vandal*-Tribe) then possessed *Betia*, whom they vanquished, and took that Province from them, under the conduct of *Reccila* their second King. They added, shortly after, by *Theodoric*, their former Conquerors: topped in their career, by *Theodoric* the second, King of the *Goths*: by whom vanquished, and confined again within *Gallicia*, which they enjoyed till the final ruin of their Kingdom by *Leutigild* the *Goth*, Anno 583: reduced then to a Province of the *Gothish* Kingdom. Their habitation before their coming into *Spain*, was in the Eastern part of *Germany*, beyond the *Elb*. Their Religion at the first, under *Reccarius* their third King, was very *Orthodox*, and sound. But vanquished by the *Goths*, and obliged unto them for the restoring of their Kingdom, they fell off to *Arianism*: persisting in that Heresy for the space of an hundred years, and then again returning to the *Catholic* Faith, under *Theodoric* their King; therein continuing constant till their final overthrow. The Kings heretofore (as many as are upon Record) are these that follow.

#### The Kings of the *Suevi* in *Gallicia*.

1. *Hermenricus*; who first brought the *Suevi* into *Spain*, and possessed *Gallicia*, *Ara-dius* and *Homorius*, then Emperors of the East and West.
2. *Reccila*, who conquered the *Silinger*, and subdued *Betia*.
3. *Reccarius*, the first Christian King who won *Lusitania*; afterwards vanquished and slain by *Theodoric*, King of the *Goths*; the *Suevi* for a time becoming subject to that King.
4. *Masdrus*, restored unto the Kingdom by *Theodoric*.
5. *Frumarius*, the Son of *Masdrus*.
6. *Remismundus*, Brother of *Frumarius*, recovered some part of *Lusitania*, and fell off to *Arianism*.
7. *Theodominus*, the Restorer of the *Catholic* Faith amongst the *Suevi*.
8. *Ariamirus*, Son to *Theodominus*.
9. *Eboricus*, the Son of *Ariamirus*, deposed and slain by *Andeca*.
10. *Andeca*, the last King of the *Suevi* in *Gallicia*, or rather the usurper of the Regal Title, served in the same kind by *Leutigild*, King of the *Goths*, as he had served *Eboricus* his Lord and Master.

After which time, *Gallicia* was made a Province of the *Gothish* Monarchy, and the name of *Suevi* no more heard of in *Spain*. In times ensuing, it became a part of the Kingdom of *Leon*, by the Kings whereof it was won piece-meal from the *Moors*, as their fortunes favoured them. Erected to a Kingdom by *Alfonso* the third, furnished the Great, Anno 886; and given unto *Ordoño* his second Son: by whose succession to the Crown on the death of his elder Brother *Garcia*, it was again united to the Kingdom of *Leon*; but so as to continue a Realm distinct. In the year 955, the *Galicians* not brooking the ill qualities of *Raynir* their third, elected *Veramund* for their King, the Son of *Ordoño* the third, and right Heir of the Kingdom: who, coming to the Crown of *Leon* on the death of *Raynir*, did once again unite it unto that Estate. Disinherited from it once more by *Ferdinand* the first King of *Castile* and *Leon*, who gave it unto *Garcia* his youngest Son, Anno 1067; but conquered shortly after by *Sanebo* the eldest Son of *Ferdinand*; by whom *Garcia* was disinherited and imprisoned, Anno 1081. Never since separated from the Crown of *Castile* and *Leon*: but when *Leon* was severed from *Castile* going along with *Leon* in those separations, till the union of those Kingdoms in the person of *Ferdinand* the second, Anno 1230; the *Castilian* being then grown better Statefmen, than to cation Kingdoms.

The Arms heretofore were *Azure*, (since of *Croissants* *Purpure*, a Chalice crowned Or.

#### 6. The Kingdom of *CORDUBA*.

HAVING thus surveyed those Provinces under the Government of *Castile*, which lie at the foot of the *Pyrenees*, and on the shores of the Northern or *Cantabrian* Ocean; we will next look on those which lie more towards the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and the *Mediterranean*, and so come round at last to *Castile* it self. And first, we will begin with the Kingdom of *CORDUBA*.

*DUBA*, which at first erection of it, contained all those parts of *Spain* conquered by the *Moors*, and not again recovered by the King of *Leon* and *Navarre*: contracted within narrower bounds, when subdued by the King of *Castile* at that time comprehending only the Provinces of *Andalusia*, *Extremadura*, *Granada*, and the Isle of *Gader*. We will consider it, notwithstanding, in both capacities: in the first and largest notion, as unto the story and affairs thereof, till distracted by the *Moors*, into many Kingdoms: in the last and strictest, as to the *Geography*, and description of it.

The Kingdom of *CORDUBA*, as it stood when subdued by the *Spaniards*, was bounded on the East with *Murcia*, and the *Mediterranean*; on the West with *Portugal*, and the Ocean; on the North with the Mountains of *Sierra Morena*, and *Castile*; and on the South with the Ocean, the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and the Midland Seas: fo called from *Corduba*, the chief City of it, and the Seat-Royal of their Kings.

It contained, as before was said, the Provinces of 1. *Andalusia*, 2. *Gader*, 3. *Extremadura*, and 4. *Granada*. But because *Granada* had the fortune to continue a Kingdom, when the rest were conquered, we will consider it by it self, and here proceed to the description of the other three.

1. *ANDALUSIA* is bounded on the East with *Granada*; on the West with the *Atlantic* Ocean, and *Algarve* in *Portugal*: on the North, with *Sierra Morena*, and *Extremadura*; on the South, with the Ocean, the Straights, and the *Mediterranean*. By *Pliny* it is called *Conventus Cordubensis*, from *Corduba*, at that time the chief City of it: and after, *Andalusia*, quasi *Vandalusia*, from the *Vandals*; who having won it from the *Romans*, had for some time (and till their expulsion into *Africa*) possessed themselves of it.

This is the most rich and fertile Country of all *Spain*; extremely fruitful of Wine, Oyl, Oranges, (which last being shipped at *Sevil*, and so brought for England, are by us called by the name of *Sevil* Oranges) and better furnished with Corn than most part of this Continent: watered with the Rivers, 1. *And*, 2. *Odiar*, 3. *Betis*, and 4. *Tonor*: which makes it flourish with a continual greenness of Olives, Vines, and other Fruits; of which the Hills, though watered only with the dew of Heaven, do partake also in reasonable measure. The Air heretofore, by reason of its Southerly situation, is exceeding hot, inasmuch that their Corn there is ripe in *April*: but those excessive heats, much moderated by those constant refreshings which the cool winds, breathing from the North, do bestow upon it. In which respect King *Ferdinand* the *Catholic* did use to say, that it was best living in the Summer at *Sevil*, (one of the chief Cities of this Province) by reason of these cool refreshings in the winter-time at *Burgos* in old *Castile*, which though situate more Northerly, in a very harsh Air, had yet many notable defences against the cold.

The principal Cities and Towns heretofore, are 1. *Corduba*, seated at the foot of *Sierra Morena*, on the left shore of *Guadalquivir*, overlooking towards the South, a spacious and fruitful plain. First founded by *Marcellus* a *Roman* Consul, An. D. C. 601; employed at that time in the Wars of *Spain*: the first Colony planted in this Province by the *Romans*, and the Chief City of *Betia*. For a long time the Seat of the *Moorish* Vice-Roy, Lieutenants to the great *Caliph* of the *Saracens*; after, of its own Kings of that Nation, who built here for their Palace, a magnificent Castle. Reduced by *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, it was restored unto the honour of an Episcopal See; which anciently it had, and doth now enjoy. A City of great circuit, but of very few Houses, by reason

of the multitude of Gardens in it. Famous in former times for the birth of *Lucan*; and both the *Seneca's*.

*Dioscori* *Senecas*, *unicuique* *Lucanum*;  
*Fecunda loquitur Corduba*: faith *Martial*;

*Corduba* glorying in her fruitful field,  
One *Lucan*, and two *Seneca's* did yield.

Nor was it less fruitful of good with in the times succeeding. For not to say any thing of *Hysus* that renowned Confessor, who was Bishop here in the times of *Constantine*, and before: it was a flourishing University in the time of the *Moors*: *Avicen*, *Averroes*, *Rhazes*, *Almanfor*, *Messalab*, those famous Philosophers and Physicians, being Students or Professors in it. It is now vulgarly called *Cordova*; and hence cometh our true *Cordovan* Leather, made of the Skin of a *Sardinian* Beast. Near unto this City, is a Wood of 30 miles in length, having nothing but Olive-trees. 2. *Jaen*, a Bishops See; remarkable for nothing more, than that the Kings of *Spain*, ever since the first recovery of it, have filled themselves Kings of *Jaen*, and use it to this day amongst the rest of their Titles: it having been, before that time, the seat and title of some petty Kings amongst the *Moors*. Nor far hence stood the famous Town of *Illiturgis* (by *Polomy*, *Illurgis*) mentioned to often in the War betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. 3. *Offensa*, of more note for the Dukes heretofore, and a small University founded here, Anno 1549. 4. *Eccia*, on the River *Cenil*; of more esteem formerly, than at the present: by *Polomy* and *Antoninus* called *Atigi*, by *Pliny*, *Augusta Firma*; a *Roman* Colony, and one of the four *Juridical* Resorts of *Betia*. 5. *Marchena*, situate on a Hill, where is said to be the best breed of *Gomets*, (a swift race of Horses) not of this Province alone, but of all *Spain*: the River *Betis* (as it was thought) conveying some secret virtue unto them. Of this Race was the Horse which *Cesar* so loved, that he erected his Statue (when dead) in the Temple of *Venus*: and the ancient *Lusitani* thought they were begotten by the Wind. 6. *Xerez*, situate more within the Mid-lands, towards the borders of *Granada*, and therefore called *Xerez de la Frontera*, (the *Axis* of *Polomy* and *Antonius*) famous for plenty of that Wine which we call *Xerez-Sack*: but more for that great and fatal Battel fought near unto it, betwixt *K. Rudericus* and the *Moors*; the loss of which, drew along with it the loss of *Spain*. 7. *Medina Sidonia*, (so called to distinguish it from a Town of *Castile*, called *Medina Gali*) the Duke whereof was General of all the Forces both by Sea and Land, intended for the Conquest of *England*, Anno 1588. The Town called anciently *Astida*, and *Astid Casariana*; the Duke whereof is of the Family of the *Guzmans*, and the greatest Prince, for Revenue, in all *Spain*: his Intrado being estimated at 1300000 Crowns per annum. 8. *Algezire*, on the Sea-side; a Town of such strength and consequence, that it held out a Siege 19 months, for the *Moors* of *Africa*, against *Alfonso* the fifth of *Castile*; to whom surrendered at the last upon Composition, Anno 1343. Since which, the Kings of *Castile* have filled themselves Kings of *Algezire*; not yet discomfited. 9. *Conil*, a Town on the Sea-coasts, beyond the Isle of *Gader*, part of the Patrimony of the Duke of *Medina Sidonia*. 10. *Gibraltar*, a strong Town, seated at the mouth of the Straights from hence denominated, lying at the foot of the Mountain of *Calpe*, supposed to be one of *Hercules* Pillars; the furthest point Southwards of all Europe. 11. *S. Lucar de Barameda*, (the *Lucifer* form of the Ancients) the Port-



Port-Town of *Seville*, situate at the mouth of the River *Betis*, or *Guadalupe*: where the Ships of that rich City ride, either for a fair wind to put to Sea, or for a tide to carry them up the River, as they come from *America*, 12. *Tariffa*, seated at the end of the Promontory which looks towards *Africa*; and so called, because *Tariff*, Leader of the *Moors* into *Spain*, here landed: recovered from the *Moors* by *Saado* the third of *Castile*, Anno 1292, or thereabouts: the first Governour thereof being *Alfonsi Perez de Guzman*, the first Founder of the now potent Family of *Medina Sidonia*. Supported by some to be the *Carteia* of the Ancients. And if so, then a Colony of the *Libertines* (begotten on some unmarred Spanish Women, by the Roman Souldiers) placed here, and indulged the Privileges of the *Latins*, by Decree of the Senate, An. U. C. 600. Not far from these last Towns, in a little Island made by two branches of the *Betis*, where it falleth into the Sea, stood the famous 13. *Tariffa*, celebrated in most ancient Writers, for the abundance of Silver, which the Mines of it did produce. Which was so great, that (as we read in *Aristotle's* Book de *Mirabilibus* juxta the *Tyrians* or *Phoenicians* first came thither, *ἀπὸ τῶν Τυρίων ἐκείνην, ὅπου τοὺς ἄλλους τὸν ἀργύρον*, that their Ships were neither able to contain or transport it thence: inasmuch that they were fain to make their *Anchors*, and other *Unstuffs*, of Silver. The like commodity the *Gracians* found in their Voyages hither, of which *Herodotus* maketh mention, Lib. IV. Hereupon some have been persuaded, that the Ships which *Solomon* built to go for *Tariffa*, (whereof we read 1 Kings 10, 22.) were bound no further than this place. As for the situation of it, that it was neither *Tariffa*, as some, or *Carteia*, as others do conjecture, (though where *Carteia* was, be alike uncertain, if it were not the same with *Tariffa*, as before is said, doth appear by *Strabo*; who telleth us, that *Betis* falls into the Sea with two mouths or channels, *ἓν ἐν τῷ πελάγῳ καὶ ἑνὶ ἐν ἁλὶ, ὅπου καλεῖται Τάριφος*, &c. and that in the midst thereof there is a City called *Tariffus*, of the same name with the River, (for *Betis* anciently was so named) from whence the whole Country thereabouts is called *Tariffus*. Which situation of this Town in an Island, at the mouth of *Betis*, occasioned *Pliny*, and some others of the ancient Writers, to give the name of *Tariffus* to the Isle of *Gades*: whereof more anon.

In the mean time go we on to 14. *Sevil*, (in *Latin*, *Hispalis*) the fairest City, not only of *Andalusia*, but of all *Spain*. It is in compass six miles, divided into two parts by the *Betis*; but joined together by a strong and beautiful Bridge; the whole environed with beautiful Walls, and adorned with many magnificent and stately Buildings, as Palaces, Churches, and Monasteries; amongst which, that of the *Gordiana*, or *Carthusians*, is endowed with 250000 Crowns of yearly Revenue. It is also the See of an Arch-bishop, under whose Jurisdiction are said to be 20000 Villages; and a most flourishing University, wherein studied *Avicen* the *Moors*, that excellent and learned Scholar. Pope *Sylvestre* the second, and *Leander*, who was Arch-bishop hereof, about the year 580, a stout defender of the *Catholic* tenets of the Church against the *Arians*. The University adorned with one of the greatest and goodliest Libraries in the Christian World; furnished by *Diogo*, the Son of *Christopher Columbus*, the first Founder of it, with no fewer than 12000 Volumes, in several Languages, gathered together with extraordinary charge and care; and endowed with a very fair Revenue for the maintenance and enlargement of it. Famous in former times, for two

Provincial Councils holden here: the first Anno 584; the last Anno 636; and at the present, for that there are continually maintained 30000 *Gonets* for the service of the King; but most of all, for the great traffic of the place. For from this Town the *Castilians* set forwards towards *America*; and here they do discharge the Fleets of Gold and Silver, which they bring from thence. To this Town come the Pearls of *Cubagua*, and the Emeralds of *S. Martha*, the *Cochinele* of *Mexico*, the Corals of *Hipaniola*, and, in a word, the whole treasure of the *New-found-World*. Here is the publick Emporie of all *Spain*, for her Wines, Oranges, and Oyls; sent from hence in so great abundance into all parts of *Europe*, that the people use to say, in the way of a *By-word*, *That if there enter not into Sevil 4000 Pipes of Wine every day in the year, the Farmer of the Customs is sure to break: inasmuch as the Revenues coming out of this City only, are worth a very good Realm to the Catholic King; Magnus* reckoning it at no less than a Million of Crowns yearly. Lastly here resteth the body of *Christopher Columbus*, the fortunate discoverer of the *New-World*, with a *Latin* Epitaph upon his Tomb; but flout (God knoweth) of the great merit of the Man: of which more hereafter.

As for the Fortunes of this City, as they relate to Ecclesiastical or Spiritual matters, it hath been long the See of an Arch-bishop, (as before is said) next in revenue and degree unto him, of *Toledo*; his revenue estimated at 100000 Crowns per annum; his Jurisdiction reaching over all *Andalusia*, and the *Fortunate Islands*; in which are said to be contained 20000 Villages; the very Dioceses of which, being said to comprehend 2000 Benefices, besides *Friers*, *Numeries*, and *Hospitals*, which may make the former computation of the Villages, subject to his Power, as a *Metropolitan*, of more value. Yet not so much considerable for its Wealth and Revenue, as for being once the See of *Isidore*, so much renowned (considering the time he lived in) for the universality of his learning; who was Bishop here, called usually *Isidore Hispanensis*, to distinguish him from another of that name in *Egypt*, called *Pelusiota*. As for the civil Fortunes of it, in the declining of the *Moors*, when their Estate was broken into many Realms and Principalities, it became a Kingdom of it self unto a noble *Moor* named *Almoraxi*, An. 966. One of the Kings whereof called *Almoraxi*, was of so great power, that he had the Regal City of *Corduba*, and the greatest part of *Andalusia*, under his command, made subject with the rest of the *Moors* in *Spain*, to the *Miramolines* of *Morocco*, An. 1091, till the retreat of *Mahomet Enser* unto *Africa*, An. 1214. After which, more made a Kingdom in the person of *Aben Lalle*, a great Prince of the *Moors*; but no longer continuing in that Royal Dignity and Estate, than till the year 1248, when taken and subdued by *Ferdinand* the second of *Castile*, and made a part of his Estate: but so, that it remained a Realm distinct in the Regal stile; in which the King of *Spain* anciently called Kings of *Sevil*.

2. South of *Andalusia*, at the mouth of *Guadalupe*, stands the Isle of *GADES*, distant from the main Land 700 paces, and joined unto it with a Bridge called *Puerto de Saecca*. It is in length 13 miles, of a very fruitful soil; besides the riches which it gets by Fishing, and making of Salt. First peopled by the *Tyrians* 562 years before the Birth of *CHRIST*; subdued by the *Carthaginians*, An. U. C. 236, being invited by the *Tyrians* to aid them in a defensive War against the *Spaniards*; and was the last hold which the *Carthaginians* had in *Spain*; out of which beaten by the valour and good fortune of *Scipio Africanus*. Here stood in ancient times a Temple consecrated

crated to the honour of *Hercules*; in which all Seafaring-men (at their being here) used to pay their vows, and offer sacrifice, as being arrived at the furthest parts of all the World.

Places of most importance in it, are, 1. *Porto Real*, a fair and capacious Haven, between the Town of *Cadiz*, and the main Land of *Andalusia*. 2. *Santa Maria*, another Port more towards the North. 3. *Cadiz*, or *Gades*, the chief Town of the Island, and giving name unto the whole. Situate on the Western part of the whole Isle, on a large Bay, serving as a Road for the *Indian Fleet*; by the resort and trade whereof, it is much enriched. First founded by the *Tyrians*, afterwards made a *Municipal City*, by the *Romans*; and one of the *Juridical Resorts* for the Province of *Betulia*: in whose times it was held to be the noblest and richest in all *Spain*, not yielding to any in the Empire, for greatness, magnificence, or number of Inhabitants of account and quality. In so much, that here lived, at one time 500 *Roman* Knights; which number was not equalled in any one place, except *Padua* only: besides the great concourse of Merchants from all parts of the World. Which great resort, occasioned *Corneilius Balbus*, a Native of it, to add a new Town to the old: the whole circumference of both being 20 Furlongs. By the *Moors*, at their conquest of *Spain*, it was utterly ruined; but since repaired, well fortified, and made the *Magazin* for the Ammunition of the Spanish Navies. Taken, notwithstanding, in one day by the *English*, under the command of *Charles Lord Effingham*, *Robert Earl of Essex*, and *Sir Walter Raleigh*; in which they burned the *Indian Fleet*, consisting in 40 Ships, whose Lading was worth 8 Millions of Crowns; overcame the Spanish Navy, consisting of 57 Men of War; took the *St. Michael*, and the *St. Andrew*, two great Gallies, and their luggage, spoiled and carried away more Martial Furniture, than could be supplied in many years; and forced the Town, in which they slew, and took Prisoners, 4000 Foot, and 600 Horse, and brought thence a very great booty in the sackage of it, Anno 1596. The fortuity of which enterprize, gave occasion to one of the *Wits* then living, to frame this excellent *Anagram* on the name of the Earl of *Essex*, (who was looked on as the greatest *Adventurer* in it) viz. *Devreux; Vere dux*. Which he afterwards cast into this *Distich*.

Vere dux Devreux; & verior Hercules; GADES  
Nam tenet hic vidit, vici at ille simul.

*Alcides* yields to *Devreux*; he did see  
Thy beauties (*Cadiz*) but *Devreux* conquer'd thee.

Near to this *Isle*, is that so celebrated *Straight*, called by name, *Fretum Gaditanum*, for the nearness of it to this Island; by others, *Fretum Herculeum*, not because *Hercules* did there break out a passage to let the *Ocean* into the *Mediterranean*, as the Poets fable; but because of the two Pillars which he caused to be erected on each side of it, with the inscription of *Nil Ultra*, this being supposed to be the furthest Country Westward. But when that supposition was proved untrue by the discovery of *America*, *Charles* the fifth being in those parts, caused two new Pillars to be placed where the old ones stood, or rather, where he thought they stood, and *Plus Ultra* to be written on them. As for those Pillars so much memorized in the ancient Writers, some place them in the Temple of *Hercules*, within this Island; others, on the Promontory of *Calpe* in *Spain*, and that of *Albia*, in *Africa*; and some again in two little Islands near those Promontories. This therefore being a matter doubtful, and not worth the looking after, let us return unto the *Straight*, called

now the *Straight of Gibraltar*, from the Town and Castle of *Gibraltar*, situate on the brink hereof; the *Straight* being in length fifteen miles; and in breadth, where it is narrowest, seven.

*EXTREMADURA* hath on the East and North, *Castile*; on the West, *Portugal*; and on the South *Andalusia*. It was first called *Beturia* from the River *Betis*, which runneth through it; and for distinction's sake, *Beturia Celtica*, from the *Celtici*, then the Inhabitants of this Tract; to difference it from *Beturia Turdulorum*, containing those parts of *Granada*, and *Andalusia*, which lie nearest unto *Tarragonensis*. And when first it had the name of *Extremadura*, it was of larger extent than now it is, reaching unto the Banks of the River *Duro*, the bounds, at that time, of the Kingdom of the *Morifs*, so called by the *Christians*, as lying on the extremities or furthest side of that River.

Principal places in it, are, 1. *Alcantara*, on the banks of the River *Tagus*, situate near the ruins of *Norba Caesarica*, destroyed by *Petrinus* and *Africanus*, two of *Pompey's* Captains, for adhering faithfully to *Cesar*: now of most note for an Order of Knights here seated, and from hence denominated; whereof more hereafter. 2. *Guadalcanal*, famous for its Mines of Silver and Gold. 3. *Merida*, situate also on the *Tagus*; first called *Augusta Emerita*, founded and made a Colony by *Augustus Caesar*, who placed herein his old Soldiers, whom the *Romans* called *Emeriti*; hence it had the name. The chief City, after that, of *Lusitania*; and, by *Aufonius*, preferred before any in *Spain*: now ruinous, meanly built, and but ill inhabited: Famous for nothing, but the Bridge upon the River *Tagus*, a Monument of the *Roman* greatness. Nigh to this Town was fought that memorable battle betwixt *Wallia*, the first King of the *Goths* in *Spain*, and *Attila*, King of *Alani*, and *Silinges*, (this last a people of the *Vandals*) the victory whereof falling to the *Goths*, caused the whole Nation of the *Vandals* to draw forth out of *Spain*, 4. *Medina*, near which the River *Guadiana* hideth it self under the ground, for the space of ten leagues; but more famous for the birth of *Ferdinand Cortez*, the fortunate Discoverer and Conqueror of the Realm of *Mexico*. 5. *Badajoz*, a Bishops See on the borders of *Portugal*. 6. *Guadalupe*, on a River of the same name; renowned amongst those of the Church of *Rome*, for the Miracles and Image of our Lady of *Guadalupe*; as much resorted to in *Spain*, as our Lady of *Loretto* in *Italy*. 7. *Placenza*, a Bishops See, near the Hills of *Castile*; amongst which Hills, (by reason of their strength and safety) *Scorinius* made his last retreat, when persecuted by the *Romans* of the contrary Faction; and where he was most wickedly slain by *Po-penna*, and some other of his own Associates. Not far from hence, if it be not in the self-same place; in a retired and solitary Valley, standeth the Monastery of Saint *Juys*, remarkable for a greater Miracle than any the Lady of *Guadalupe* is able to boast of: which is, that *Charles* the fifth, that most puissant Monarch, having resigned his Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand*, and all the rest of his Dominions to his Son *Philip*, the second, did here bid farewell unto the World; spending the residue of his time in prayers and devout Meditations. The greatest Monument and Example of *Self-denial*, which these latter Ages have afforded. Far beyond any abnegation of the World by our Cloyistered Monks, or any quitting of their Crowns by some Kings and Emperors in the darker Ages of the Church; who living in the time of Ignorance and superstition, saw not so clearly what they did, (or did it out of weakness, and want of spirit) as this Masculine and Heroick Emperor.



The old inhabitants of these Countries, were the *Turduli*, the *Baithi*, and the *Turdiani*, of *Andalusia*, and *Granada*; the *Gethici*, and some part of the *Lusitani*, in *Extremadura*, all vanquished by the *Romans*, during the second *Punic War*, under the fortunate command of *Scipio Africanus*. From them extorted by the *Pandati*, who pailing over into *Africa*, left it to the *Sertunians*; left by them to *Theodorick* the fourth Kings of the *Goths*, who hereby added all *Betice* to his other Dominions. Under the *Goths* it remained subject till their fatal overthrow by the *Moor*, who having made almost an entire Conquest of all the Continent of *Spain*, were at first subject to the *Great Caliphs*, Lords of the *Saracenic Empire*; governing here by their Lieutenants, from *Uladir Vilit*, under whom they first made this Conquest, *Anno 711*, to *Abdalla*, of the House of *Alaoui*, *Anno 757*. At what time *Abdramen*, of the Line of *Mahomet* the *Impiator*, and first Emperor of the *Saracens*, flying the fury of *Abdalla*, by whom the old Line of the *Caliphs*, of the Race of *Humaira*, (of which Race this *Abdramen* was) had been dispossessed of that Empire; came into *Spain*, and was with great joy entertained by the *Spanish Moors*, who cordially affected to his House: whose Government he took upon him, discharged of all subjection and subordination to the *Caliphs*, or *Mahometan Emperors*, and making it an absolute Kingdom of it felt. In his Race it continued without any fraction or subdivision, till the time of *Hizen* the second, the tenth King of these *Spanish Moors*; after whose death, distracted amongst many petit Tyrants, till they were all brought under by the *Moor* of *Africa*; of which more anon. In the mean time, take hence the Catalogue of the Kings of these *Moor* of *Spain*, called commonly, from *Corduba*, their Royal Seat,

#### The Kings of Corduba.

#### A.C.

- 757 1. *Abdramen*, the first Sovereign-Prince of the *Moor* in *Spain*. 31.
- 787 2. *Hizen*, the second son of *Abdramen*, by whom *Zuleima*, his elder Brother, was put by his Throne. 7.
- 794 3. *Hali Hatan*, the Son of *Hizen*. 24.
- 819 4. *Abdramen II.* Son of *Hali Hatan*, discomfited by the *Christians* in the memorable battel of *Clavigno*, *Anno 836*.
- 839 5. *Mahomet*, Son of *Abdramen* the second, who reduced *Toledo*, then revolted, under his Command. 35.
- 874 6. *Almaded*, the Son of *Mahomet*. 2.
- 876 7. *Abdalla*, Brother to *Almaded*, and as little memorable. 13.
- 889 8. *Abdramen III.* furnished *Almanfir*, too fortunate in his Wars against the *Christians*, 50.
- 939 9. *Hali Hatan II.* Son of *Abdramen* the second.
- 959 10. *Hizen II.* Son of *Hali Hatan*, in the 33 year of his reign, deposed for his sloth and negligence, by
- 989 11. *Zuleima*, an *Afric* *n* *Moor*, of the Family of *Alaoui*; and he expelled by
- 993 12. *Mahomet II.* furnished *Almaded*, of the old House of *Humaira*; ousted again by *Zuleima*, and made King of *Toledo*. Betwixt these three, and their several Factions, the Kingdom wretchedly torn in pieces, never returned again to its ancient lustre; and finally, made a prey to

1001 13. *Hali*, another *African Moor*. 2.

- 1003 14. *Cacin*, the Brother of *Hali*. 4.
- 1007 15. *Hazia*, the Son of *Mahomet*. M.nf. 4.
- 1007 16. *Abdramen IV.* a King of 4 weeks only.
- 1008 17. *Mahomet III.* poisoned by his own Servants. 1.
- 1010 18. *Hizen III.* deposed by the *Moor*, grown weary of the House of *Humaira*, of which House he was.
- 1011 12. *Isar* of *Algezire*. 3.
- 1014 20. *Mahomet IV.* the Son of *Isar*, the last King of the *Moor* in *Corduba*, before the second Conquest of these parts of *Spain* by the *Moor* of *Africa*. Concerning which, we are to know, that after the great Victory obtained at *Clavigno*, against *Abdramen* the second, by *Laymir* King of *Leon*, *Anno 836*, in which the *Moor* lost 60000 of his men; the power and reputation of the *Spanish Moor* began to decline: brought entirely to nothing, by the sloth and negligence of *Hizen* the second; after a long and unprofitable reign, deposed by *Zuleima*, who succeeded. But the *Moor* not easily brooking the command of a new *Ujupier*, fell into many Fractions and Divisions amongst themselves: every great man seizing on some part of the Kingdom, which he retained unto himself with the name of King; from whence we have a King of *Sevil*, another of *Toledo*, a third of *Valencia*, a fourth of *Corduba*, &c. the names of which last only, do occur in the former Catalogue; as they which did pretend a Sovereignty over all the rest. And 'twas a sign the Kingdom was in the expiring, when so many Kings succeeded in so few years, after one another: three passing from the deposing of *Hizen* the second, to the beginning of *Mahomet* the fourth, not above 34 years in all; during which time, we had no fewer than ten Kings. The citizen change of Princes, and short lives of Kings, are the apparent signs of a ruinous State, approaching very near to its expiration; as may be seen by the short lives and reigns of the last *Ujupier* Emperors, nine of them hardly reigning 20 years; as also, of the Kings of the *Goths* in *Italy*, of which the last held the Throne no longer than the nine *Ujupier* Emperors had done before them. But to proceed: *Mahomet* the last King of this first Rank, having left the stage in the 13th year of his reign, *Anno 1027*, we find no good constancy of his Successors in the Kingdom of *Corduba*; made inconsiderable by the withdrawing so many Provinces from the body of it: the pride and infidelity of which Royalties and petit Tyrants, forced them at last to call unto their aid the Kings or Miranmolins of *Morocco*, by whom themselves, and all the rest of their Corrivalls, were in time subdued. Under seven Princes of *Morocco*, the *Spanish Moor* continued subject about 120 years; that is to say, from the first coming in of *Jafif* *Islephim*, the Miranmolins, *Anno 1091*, unto the going out of *Mahomet*, furnished the *Great An*, 1214. During which time, the affairs of the *Moor* in *Spain* were so well conducted, that they lost nothing to the *Christians*; but *Extremadura*, taken from them by *Alonso* the second, in the account of *Castile*; the seventh, in account of *Leon*, *An*, 1147; and the City of *Lisbon* taken from them in the same year also, by *Alonso* the first King of *Portugal*. But *Mahomet* the *Great* being vanquished in the great Fight at *Sierra Morena*, by the joint Forces of the confederated *Christians*, *Anno 1214*, left off all further care of the *Moor* in *Spain*; after his going thence, disfracted once again into many Kingdoms, almost as many as great Towns, all of them swallowed up, in a little time, by the Kings of *Castile*, *Aragon*, and *Portugal*. And amongst them, the Kingdom of *Corduba*, not able to stand long on this new Foundation, was ruined and brought, under the command of the *Castilians*, by their

their King, *Ferdinand* the second, *Anno 1236*. Since that time there no more mention of the Kingdom of *Corduba*.

The Arms wherof were *Or*, a Lion *Gules*, armed and crowned of the first, a Border *Azure* charged with 8 Towers *Argent*.

## 7. GRANADA.

*GRANADA* is bounded on the West, with *Andalusia*; on the East, with *Murcia*, and the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *New Castile*; on the South, with the *Mediterranean* Sea. So called from *Granada*, the chief City, and Seat-Royal of it.

It is in length 200 miles, 100 miles in breadth, and about 700 miles in compass: a Kingdom of no great extent; but such as contained in it more fair Towns, strong Fortresses, and defensive places, than the like quantity of Ground in the World besides. The North part of the Country plain; the South parts overpread with the *Alpujarras*, and other spurs and branches of the *Orispeda*. In the time of the *Moor*, wonderfully well inhabited, and full of all sorts of Commodities, the Hills planted with Vines and Fruits, the Plains and Valleys swelling with Corn and Gardens: since their expulsion, neither much peopled, nor very fruitful, for want of men to dress and manure the Land.

The principal Cities of it, are 1. *Granada*, situate on two Hills, divided by a Valley, through which runneth the River *Darid*, consisting of four several parts, called *Albomora*, *Sierre de Sol*, *Granada*, and *Antequera*: the two first standing on the Hills, the two last in the valley; the whole circuit being about 7 miles, and containing in the time of the *Moorish* Kingdom, about 200000 of souls. Fenced with strong Walls, fortified with 130 Towers, and replenished with abundance of wholesome and pleasant Springs. The Merchants and Gentry of the best sort, do dwell in that part which is called *Granada*: the houses of which, are for the most part built of Free-stone, with delicate and artificial Masonry, shewing great magnificence. Herein standeth the Cathedral Church, a work of admirable structure: of Figure round, as having sometimes been a *Mahometan Mosque*. Here is also the place which they call *Alcazar*, representing a little Town, to which are ten Gates, in the *Albomora* is the Palace of the *Moorish* Kings, covered with Gold, indented with *Mosical* works; and which, by reason of the structure, and multitude of Fountains which are about it, may be put amongst the *Wonders* of the world; having withal a goodly prospect over all the Town, lying under it upon the East; a spacious Champion towards the North, and the snowy tops of *Sierra Nevada*, towards the South. This City is the ordinary Parliament, and Court of Justice, for all the Southern parts of *Spain*, as *Valladolid* is for the Northern; *Madrid*, which is the highest Court, having Jurisdiction over, and receiving Appeals from both. A Town first raised out of the ruins of *Ilberis*, situate not far off the Hill *Elvir*, much mentioned in the stories of *Rome* and *Carthage*. In the two other parts of the Town, there is nothing remarkable, inhabited only by *Mechanicks* of the poorer sort. 2. *Albama*, seated amongst steep and craggy Rocks, out of which issue *Medicinal Waters*, occasioning a great report of the *Spanish* Kingdom: the first Town taken by the *Spaniards* in their last long War against the *Moor*, for the recovery of this Kingdom, *Anno 1482*; and looked on, by the *Moor*, as a sad presage of a ruina-

ted and expiring Empire. 3. *Guadix*, an Episcopal See, about nine leagues from *Granada*. 4. *Vila Malaga*, by *Ptolemy* called *Cox*; by *Antonine*, *Seremun*; situate at the foot of the Mountains called *Alpujarras*; a large branch of the *Orispeda* over-spreading a great part of this Country: heretofore planted with incredible numbers of *Moor*, who chose to dwell there for the strength and safety of the situation: since their expulsion, desolate and unfrequented; nothing remaining of them now, but the *Arabic Language*; which is still spoke by those few people which inhabit in it. The Mountains in this Tract so high, that from the tops hereof a man may easily discern the whole course of the *Streights* of *Gibraltar*, together with the Towns of *Sevta*, and *Tangier*, in *Africa*. 5. *Ronda*, at the foot of another branch of the *Orispeda*, called from this Town, *Sierra de Ronda*: not far from which, by *Munda*, now a very small Village, was fought that memorable battel betwixt *Casfar* and the Sons of *Pompey*, the honour of which, fell to *Casfar*, who then made an end of the *Civil War*, which that very day, four years before, were begun by *Pompey* the Father. In this fight was *Cn. Pompeius* slain, and his Forces broken: *Casfar* himself being so put to it, that seeing his Soldiers give back, he was fain to maintain the fight by his own great courage, bidding them *Remember*, that at *Munda* they fought their General. The flame of which reproach, and his noble example, encouraged them to a new onset, which was honoured with a signal and remarkable Victory: this being the last fight that *Casfar* was in; murdered not long after in the Senate-house. And of this fight he used to say, *That in all other places he fought for his Honour, in this for his life*. 6. *Antequera*, heretofore a well-fortified Town, bordering close upon *Castile*. 7. *Malaga*, on the shore of the *Mediterranean*, supposed to be the *Margis* of *Ptolemy*. 8. *Vera* on the same shore; the furthest Town of *Betice*, and of this Country, towards *Murcia*: supposed to be the *Virgao* of *Pliny* from whence the neighbouring Creek or Bay was called *Virgantium*. 9. *Loxa*, on the River *Darid*, enjoying a situation both strong and pleasant. 10. *Malaga*, or *Malaca*, situate at the mouth of *Guadalquivir*, once laced by *Cassius* the rich *Roman*, who flying out of *Spain*, to avoid the Fury of *Marius* and *Cinna*, who had slain his Father and Unkleship himself, and his Companions, in a Cave hereabouts, for eight Months together: but after hearing of their deaths, issued out, and ranfacked, amongst many other Cities, this *Malaga*. A Town of great Traffic, and much Resort, especially for *Railins*, *Almonds*, *Malaga Sack*; well fortified, and of great importance, as a Town of Wars and, to the great prejudice of the *Moor*, taken by *Ferdinand* the *Catholic*, *Anno 1487*: the Conquest of the whole Kingdom of *Granada*, following not long after. It was since made a Bishops-See, or reformed rather to that dignity which it had of old. 11. *Almeria*, a noted Haven on the *Mediterranean*, the *Abdora* of *Mela*; a Colony of the *Carthaginians*, and anciently a Bishops-See. 12. *Carthema*, 13. *Com*, and 14. *Bisfa*, more within the Land: this last, the strongest Bulwark of the City of *Granada*, on the North-east wherof it standeth. A place of great strength both by Art and Nature; and by the *Moor* defended with so great a gallantry, that it held out a siege of 7 Months against an Army of 13000 horse, and 24000 Foot, King *Ferdinand* the *Catholic*, being there in person: and yielded at the last, *Decemb. 4*, 1489, upon better conditions than any Town had done before it.

As for the Fortunes of this Country, after the Conquest of it by the *Moor* and *Saracens*, it was a part or member of the Kingdom of *Corduba*, and so continued till that Kingdom was subdued by the *Spaniards*.

But the *Moors* were too stout to yield at once. Having yet ground enough both to secure themselves in, and endow their King: they are resolved, though they had lost one Kingdom, to erect another. And therefore *Corduba* being taken, and that Kingdom ruined, the *Moors*, with *Mahomet Aben Alhamar*, their unfortunate, but valiant King, removed themselves unto *Granada*, and there renewed their strength and Kingdom, which lasted 256 years, under 20 Kings; whose names here follow in this Catalogue of

#### The Kings of Granada.

- A. C.  
1236 1. *Mahomet Aben Alhamar*, the last King of *Corduba*, and the first King of *Granada*. 36.  
1272 2. *Mahomet Mir Almir*. 30.  
1302 3. *Mahomet Aben Ezar*. 7.  
1309 4. *Mahomet Aben Ezar*. 10.  
1319 5. *Ismael*. 3.  
1322 6. *Mahomet*. 12.  
1334 7. *Joseph Aben Almet*. 20.  
1354 8. *Mahomet Lagus*. 23.  
1377 9. *Mahomet Vermil*. 2.  
1379 10. *Mahomet Guadix*. 13.  
1392 11. *Joseph II.* 4.  
1396 12. *Mahomet Aben Balwa*. 11.  
1407 13. *Joseph III.* 16.  
1423 14. *Mahomet Aben Azar*. 4.  
1427 15. *Mahomet the little*. 5.  
1432 16. *Joseph Abud Almad*. 13.  
1445 17. *Mahomet Ofmen*. 8.  
1452 18. *Ismael II.* 9.  
1462 19. *Muley Alhamar*. 20.  
1482 20. *Mahomet Boabdilin*, the last King of the *Moors* in *Spain*. Of all which, there is little left upon

Record: their whole time being spent in defending their borders against the encroachments of Castile; or else in *Civil-Wars* and discords amongst themselves: in which they were so frequent, and sometimes so violent, as if they had no Enemy near them. *Mahomet Aben Ezar*, the fourth King, deposed by *Mahomet Aben Levin*; and he again thrust out by *Hijmal* the Son of *Ferracben*, before he could enjoy the fruits of his treason. *Mahomet*, Son of *Ismael*, murdered by his Subjects. *Joseph* the Son of *Mahomet*, slain by *Mahomet Lagus*; and he again deposed by *Mahomet Vermil*; who in the end was miserably slain by *Padre the Crael*, of *Castile*, to whom he had fled for help and succour. After this time, they reigned and deposed one another, to the end of their Kingdoms; the Successors never paying till the death of his Predecessor, but violently making way for himself to enter on the Government: even *Mahomet Boabdilin*, the last King hereof, not having patience to expect the death of his Father; but setting him besides the Throne, as he himself was for a time, by *Muley Moabdelin* his Uncle; and thereby opening a fair Gate for *Ferdinand*, King of *Castile* and *Aragon*, to bring in his Forces to the subduing of them all. Such was the fortune of this Kingdom, that as it began under a *Mahomet*, a *Ferdinand* being King of *Castile*; so it ended under a *Mahomet*; a *Ferdinand* being King of *Castile* also. In the first year, then, of this man's Reign, did the War begin, or rather in the last year of his Father, who by taking *Zahara* from the Christians, gave the first occasion; and in the tenth year of the War, (for so long it lasted) 1492, the Empire of the *Moors* ended in *Spain*, by the valour of *Ferdinand* the Catholic, and *Isabel* his Wife, after their first entrance into it, more than 760 years.

Such of them as, after the decay of their Kingdom, had a desire to stay in *Spain*, which had for so long time been their native Country, were suffered to do by the prudent *Vicars*, (fearing a desolation of the Country, if they should abandon it) conditioned, that they would be *Christians*. And that they might be known to be as they professed, the *Inquisition* was established in the City of *Granada*, consisting of a certain number of *Secular Priests*, and *Dominican Friars* who finding any counterfeit or Apostate *Christian*, were first gently to reprove and exhort them; and after, if no amendment followed, to inflict such punishment on them, as was accustomed in like cases. By the terror of which *Inquisition*, many professed, in shew, the *Christian* Faith. But being *Christians* only in the outward shew, and practising on all occasions against the State, the Kings of *Spain* resolved long ago on their *Extermination*; but never had opportunity to effect it, till the year 1609. At what time *Philip* the third having made a Peace with *England*, and a Truce with *Holland*; and finding the *Moors* of *Africa* so embroiled in Wars, that they were not able to disturb him; put that extreme rigour in execution, which had before been thought of in their consultations; 1100000 of them being forced to quit this Country, and provide new dwellings; under colour that they went about to free themselves from the *Inquisition*, and to recover their old Liberty lost so long before.

The Forces which the Kings of *Granada*, in the times of their greatest power, were able to raise, were far beyond the measurement and extent of their Kingdom: not above 700 miles in compass, as before is said; but so exceeding populous, and well accommodated with all manner of necessities, that within two days space, the King hereof was said to have been able to draw together 50000 Horse, and 200000 Foot, for defence of this Kingdom. *Turquet* reports it so in his *Spanish History*. But this proved more than they were able to do in their greatest need; when this Kingdom was finally invaded, and at last subdued by *Ferdinand* and *Isabel*, Kings of *Spain*: though possibly by reason of their divisions at that time, (some following the Party of *Mahomet Boabdilin*; and others, that of his Uncle *Muley*, chosen King against him) they might not join together in a common interest, for the defence of their Estate.

The Arms whereof were *Or*, a Pomegranate (or Apple of *Granade*) slipped, *Vari*.

### 8. MURCIA.

*MURCIA* is bounded on the West, with *Granada*; on the East and North, with *Valencia*, and a part of *Granada*; and on the South, with the *Mediterranean Sea*. So called from *Murcia* the chief City. In former times esteemed a rich and wealthy Country, stored with all sorts of fruits; and so abounding in *Silver Mines*, that when the *Romans* were Lords of it, they kept continually four hundred men at work, and received 2500 *Drachms* of daily profit: now for the most part barren, and but ill-inhabited.

Cities of note there are not many in so small a Country. The principal, 1. *Murcia*, by *Polony* called *Muradin*, seated upon the River *Sigova*, a Bishops See, situate in a pleasant and delightful Plain, planted with Pomegranates, and other excellent fruits: from this the Country had the name of the Kingdom of *Morcia*. 2. *Carthagen*, or *Nova Carthage*, first built by *Asdrubal* of *Carthage*, the brother of *Anibal*, for the better receiving

of such aids, both of men and money, as should come from *Africa*. Situate in a Demi-Island, in the very jaws of the *Mediterranean*: by which, and by a deep Marish on the West-side of it, so inexpressibly fortified; that if *Scipio*, afterwards called *Africanus*, who then lay at the siege thereof, had not been shewed a way over that Marish, at a dead low water, by poor *Filher-men* of *Tarragon*, who knew the Secret, he had there lost both his time and his honour. Nothing more memorable, in the sackage and spoil thereof, (though there was found abundance of Arms and Treasure) than the virtue of *Scipio*, who finding there many *Spanish Ladies* of great birth and beauties, left there as Hostages for the *Spaniards*, with the *Carthaginians*, would not permit any of them to be brought before him, for fear it should betray him to some inconvenience. Being re-edified, it was made a *Roman Colony*, and one of the seven *Judicial Reforts* of *Tarracensis*: by *Constantine* made the chief City of the new Province of *Carthagenensis*, which was hence denominated. Afterwards, twice sacked by the *Goths* and *Vandals*, it lay for a long time buried in its own ruins. And though again new built and peopled, it is still but small, containing at the most but 600 households: and would be utterly abandoned, but for the safety of the place, and the strength thereof, garrisoned, and fortified very strongly by King *Philip* the second, for fear of surprisal by the *Turks*: and the security of the Haven (which is withal very large and capacious) coming from a little Island, lying at the mouth thereof; by which assured from tempestuous winds, and the violent ragings of the Sea. Hence the occasion of that saying of *Andrea Doria*, Admiral unto *Charles* the fifth, That there were but three safe Ports in the *Mediterranean*; that is to say, *Angul*, *July*, and this *Carthagen*: meaning, as I conceive, that those two Months being commonly free from tempestuous weather, were of as great safety to the Mariners, as this famous Port. 3. *Lorca*, another Port-Town, situate on a Creek more within the Land. 4. *Almanca*, 5. *Sarazel*, two strong Towns bordering on *Valencia*; well fortified, when *Murcia* and *Valencia* were in several hands. 6. *Cervilla*, 7. *Alhama*, 8. *Rus*, &c.

This Country, being part of the Province of *Carthagenensis*, was by the *Alani* taken from the *Romans*; at their first entrance into *Spain*: from them recovered by *Walthia*, the first King of the *Goths*, in this part of *Europe*. Together with the rest of *Spain*, it was subdued by the *Moors* of *Africa*, in the distractions of whose Empire, after the going hence of the *Moors* of *Africa*, it was made a distinct Kingdom by *Aben Hut*, of the Race of the Kings of *Saragossa*, who had seized upon it, Anno 1228; and for a time was the most puissant King of the *Moors* in *Spain*, commanding over this Country, *Granada*, and a part of *Andalusia*. Invited to a Feast, made Drunk, and then basely Murdered by *Aben Arabin*, a false servant of his. Anno 1236. One *Aben Hudiel* seized on the Realm of *Murcia*, disturbed in his possession by *Albaquique*, the last King hereof. But he not able to defend himself against his Competitor, surrendered it to *Ferdinand* the second of *Castile*, whom he put into possession of the Fort of *Murcia*, and many other places of great importance; conditioned, that *Albaquique* should enjoy the title of King of *Murcia*, as long as he lived, under the Sovereignty of *Castile*: and that *Ferdinand* should enjoy one half of the profits of it. This was in the year 1241, after it had continued in the state of a Kingdom but 12 years only, united to *Castile* without blood or trouble, and so remains ever since.

### 9. TOLEDO.

THE Kingdom of *TOLEDO*, so called from *Toledo* the chief City of it; contained once the greatest part of that Country which is now called *New-Castile*; of which it is now reckoned only for a part or member. The Country lying next unto it, was anciently the Seat of *Carpetani*, the nature of the Soil we shall find elsewhere.

Principal Cities of this Kingdom, 1. *Toledo*, of great antiquity, as being taken by *Fulvius* a *Roman* *Pretor*, in the time of *Scipio Africanus*; and then a City of good note. Pleasantly seated on the *Tagus*, beautified with many pieces of rare and excellent Architecture; and fortified with thirty Towers standing on the Walls. By reason of the situation of it in the very midst, almost, of *Spain*; it is passing well inhabited as well by the Nobility, who reside there for pleasure; as by Scholars, who abide in it for their Studies; as by Merchants, who resort thither for their Profit: besides such Soldiers and their Officers, who are continually garrisoned in it for defence thereof. The private buildings generally are but mean and ordinary; though, by far, more handsome in the inside, than the outside promisseth; most of them being furnished with water from the River *Tagus*, conveyed into them by the admirable invention of one *James*, a native of *Cremena* in the Dukedom of *Millain*. The Streets narrow, close, hilly, and uneven, exceeding troublesome to walk or go upon, especially in slippery or dirty weather, by reason of its steep and uneven situation on the side of a Rocky Hill; by which, and by the River which almost surrounds it, it is naturally very strong, and well helped by Art. For that cause made the Seat of the *Gothish* Kings; by one of which, called *Bamba*, so repaired and beautified, (besides the addition of a strong Wall for defence of the place) that he is by some accounted for the Founder of it. For so we find it in these old Verses:

*Erexit (suaviter Deo) Rex inclutus Urbem*  
*Bamba, sive celeberrimam protendens Gentis honorem.*

That is to say,

King *Bamba* (God assisting) rais'd this Town,  
Extending to the ancient *Goths* renown.

When the *Goths* fell, it was in chief estimation amongst the *Moors*, and by them advanced unto the honour of a Kingdom; whereof more anon: but under both, (as it continueth to this day) the See of an Arch-bishop, who is the Metropolitan of *Spain*, and President, for the most part, of the *Inquisition*. His Revenue answerable to his Place, the greatest of any Clergy man in the *Christian* World, next to the Popes of *Rome*; as being estimated at 350000 Crowns per annum. Finally, this City hath been honoured with no fewer than 18 National Councils, here held in, the time of the *Goths*; and is now a famous University for the study of the *Civil* and *Canon* Laws, and hath to this day the Temporal Jurisdiction over 17 Walled Towns, besides Villages. 2. *Calatrava*, the next Town of note, is situate on the River *As* of most fame in their later times, for an Order of Knights, called the Knights of *Calatrava*'s of which more when we come to *Castile*. Neighbour'd by the ruins of the strong and famous City *Castile*, which being under the command of the *Romans*, was by the *Gyrgens*, a people that

that dwelt on the other side of the River, suddenly entered and taken. But *Servatius* following after them by the same Gate, put them all to the Sword: and causing his men to apparel themselves in the clothes of the Enemy, led them to the chief City of the *Gyrfsons*, who supposing them to be their own Party, opened their Gates, and were all either slain, or sold for Slaves. More of this Town anon, when we come to *Castile*, to which now belonging, 3. *Talbor*, commonly called *Talvera de la Reyna*, or the Queen's *Talvera*; and called for on occasion of an execrable Murder committed there by the command of Queen *Mary*, the Widow of *Alfonso* the sixth, on the Lady *Leonor de Guzman*, her Husband's Paramour. A proper and neat Town it is, pleasantly seated on the *Tagu*; supposed to be the *Libora* of *Plutony*, and now belonging to the Arch-bishop of *Toledo*, as chief Lord thereof. *Medina Zelina*, commonly called *Medina Celi*, of great importance when possessed or neighbored by the *Moor*. Now of more note for giving the title of Dukes to the illustrious Family *De la Cerde*, descended from *Ferdinand*, the eldest Son of *Alfonso* the fifth; claiming, by that descent, a title to the Crown of *Castile*. What other Towns belonged unto it, we shall see anon.

As for *Toledo* it self, in the time of the *Romans* it was the Metropolis of the Province of *Tarracensis*; after that, the Seat-Royal of the *Gothish* Kings; removed hither from *Tharula* in *Langueudo*: forced by the *Moor*, at their first entrance into *Spain*, *An. 716*; more prudently aiming at the Head, than the *Goths* possibly expected from such *Barbarians*. In the Confusions of that Kingdom, betwixt the beginning of the reign of *Mahomet* the fourth, and the second coming in of the *Moor* of *Africk*, made a distinct Kingdom of it self; continuing in that estate, till taken from *Haia Alchadabir*, the last King hereof, by *Alfonso* the first King of *Castile*, *An. 1083*. This *Alfonso* being the younger Son of *Ferdinand*, the first King of *Castile* and *Leon*, had the Kingdom of *Leon* for his part. Ejected out of that, by his Brother *Sancho* King of *Castile*, he lived in exile with *Almon*, kindly received and entertained by *Almon* the Father of this *Haia*, King of *Toledo*, till the death of his Brother. After which, coming to the Crowns of *Castile* and *Leon*, *Anno 1073*, he picked a quarrel with his Host, and being *Alfonso*, his long abode there, making him acquainted with all advantages that might facilitate his designs; which notwithstanding held him a siege of five years, before he could make himself matter of it, by him years, before he could make himself matter of it, by him incorporated presently on the taking of it, with the rest of that Kingdom, and made the head of *New-Castile*. But for the Kings hereof, as well those who held it but for life, as those who left the same unto their Posterity, they are these that follow:

The Moorish King reigning in *Toledo*.

A. C.

1. *Galfroy*, King of *Toledo*, in the time of *Charlemagne*, under the Vassalage of the great *Caliph* of *Damiscus*: subdued by *Alderamen* the first King or Monarch of the *Moor* in *Corduba*, of the House of *Hamiz*.
2. *Zulima*, the eldest Son of *Alderamen* King of *Corduba*, being dispossessed of the Realm of *Corduba*, and the rest of his Estates in *Spain*, by *Hizari* his younger Brother, resigned a while in *Toledo* of which outdied not long after: *Toledo* from that time continuing a Member of the Kingdom of *Corduba*, till the

latter end of the reign of *Alderamen* the second. At what time.

- 833 3. *Aben Lope*, (the Son of *Musa Aben Cacia*, a *Goth* by Nation and descent; but a *Moor* by profession: who had caused the *Tolador*, and others of the *Moor* of *Spain*, to rebel against *Alderamen*) assumed unto himself the title of King of *Toledo*, a little confederate of *Ordugno* the 11th, King of *Leon*; by whom supported in his Wars against those of *Corduba*; but at last vanquished and dethroned by *Mahomet*, the Son of *Alderamen*, *Anno 848*.
- 990 4. *Abdalla* a great man among the *Moor*, during the contentions betwixt *Zulima* and *Hizari* the second, for the realm of *Corduba*, seized on the City of *Toledo*; which he held as King; and kindly entertained *Mahomet Almohadi*, made King of *Corduba* during those contentions; by whom succeeded in this Kingdom.
- 995 5. *Mahomet*, surnamed *Almohadi*, of the Regal Family of *Humeya*, King of *Corduba*; and dispossessed thereof by the Faction of *Zulima*, retired to *Toledo*; and was kindly entertained by King *Abdalla*, whom he succeeded in this Kingdom.
- 999 6. *Obedyalla*, the Son of *Mahomet*, slain in his Wars with *Hizari*, the King of *Corduba*, in the first or second year of his reign.
- 1000 7. *Hairam*, of the same house of *Aben Humeya*, and, probably, the next Kinsman of *Obedyalla*; succeeded him in this Estate, and left the same unto his Posterity, till subdued by the *Spaniards*.
- 1110 8. *Hizari*, the Son of *Hairam*, of whom nothing memorable.
- 1045 9. *Ali Maynon*, or *Almenon*, as the *Spaniards* call him, the Son of *Hizari*, who entertained *Alfonso* the sixth of *Leon*, when dispossessed of his Estate by his brother *Sancho*.
- 1076 10. *Hizari* II. Son of *Ali Maynon*.
- 1078 11. *Haya*, surnamed *Alchadabir*, the Son of *Ali Maynon*, and Brother of *Hizari*; a cruel Prince, and ill beloved of his Subjects; which gave occasion unto *Alfonso* King of *Castile* and *Leon*, spoken of before, to invade this Kingdom; by whom at last it was subdued, and *Toledo*, with its Territories, added unto *Castile*, as before is said, *Anno 1083*. By which means there accrued to the Realm of *Castile*, besides *Toledo* it self, and the Towns spoken of already, those of *Besaya*, *Ejallona*, *Maqueda*, *Canales*, *Coria*, *Consuegra*, *Berlanga*, *Gualdalajara*, *Ariencia*, and divers others, now passing in the estimate of *New-Castile*.

But to conclude, *Toledo* thus reduced under the command of the *Christians*, was forthwith made the Metropolis of *Spain*, (in regard of Ecclesiastical or Spiritual matters) as it had been before in the time of the *Goths*; and shortly after honoured by *Alfonso* upon the title of the Imperial City; that King, upon the conquest hereof, having assumed unto himself the title of Emperor of *Spain*, but somewhat too affectedly, as the case then stood, there being other Kings in *Spain* as well as he. In which respects he gave unto this City the Arms hereof, in a Field Azure, a Crown Mural Imperial Or, garnished with sundry precious Gems Proper, changed afterwards by *Alfonso* the third of *Castile*, and eighth of *Leon*, affecting the same title of Emperor, to an Emperor sitting on his Throne in a Robe of Gold, with a Globe in his left hand, and a Sword in his right.

But the Blazon of these Arms I find not, nor much worth the searching: the old Coat being worn again after his decease.

## 10. CASTILE.

*CASTILE* is bounded on the East, with *Navarre*, *Aragon*, and part of *Valencia*; on the West, with *Portugal*; on the North, with *Biscay*, *Guipuzcoa*, and the *Asturias*; on the South, with *Extremadura*, *Andalusia*, and *Granada*. The reason of the name we shall have anon.

This was the most prevailing Kingdom of all this Continent; to which the rest are all united either by Marriages or Conquest. Divided commonly into the *New* and *old*; parted from one another by the Hills of *Segovia*: the one being called the *Old Castile*, because it was the Ancient Patrimony of the Earls hereof; and the other named the *New*, from that addition which was made to the first Inheritance, by the Conquest of the Realm of *Toledo*, and other pieces, from the *Moor*. The *Old Castile* is the less fruitful of the two; more lit for Pasturage, than Corn; but better stored with that, and all sorts of fruits, than the neighbouring Countries, which lie betwixt it and the Northern or *Cantabrian* Ocean: the *New* more plain and Champaign, better stored with Fruits, and furnished with sufficient plenty of Corn, and other provisions necessary for the life of man. The *Old Castile* watered with the Rivers of 1. *Relanar*, rising not far from *Burgos*. 2. *Tormes*, passing by *Salamanca*. 3. *Douro*, the receptacle of the others. The *New* with 4. *Guadarama*, honoured with the neighbourhood of *Madrid*. 5. *Tevina*, and 6. *Tagu*, the most famous River of all *Spain*.

The *OLD CASTILE* is situate on the North of the *New*; and hath for the chief Cities of it, 1. *Soria*, of great note in the ancient Story, by the name of *Nannania*; which for the space of 14 years, withstood the whole Forces of *Rome* during which time, they valiantly repulsed their Enemies, and forced them to dishonourable Compositions. But finding, at last, no hope of holding longer out, they gathered together all their Armour, Money, and Goods, laid them in a heap, then set fire on them, and finally burnt themselves in the midst of the flame; leaving *Scipio* (who had brought them to that extremity) nothing but the bare name of *Nannania*, to adorn his triumph. 2. *Avila*, situate under the great Mountains, which are called from hence, the Mountains of *Avila*. Known anciently by the name of *Abule*; and by that name giving the title of *Abulensis* to the renowned *Tolator*, who was Bishop of it. A Man, who in his time was President of the Council to *John* I. King of *Aragon*; yet could not endure enough not to attend his Episcopal Charge, but to compose those learned and painful Commentaries on a great part of the Bible. Of which, and his other Abilities, (besides that *Elogie* which *Caesardine* hath given him) we may take that *Barnard*, saying *Lauda acumen viri, si in meliora indefessum* one of the ancientest Universities of *Spain*: discontinued for a time, by Students, and then restored again by King *Philip* the second, whose birth-place it was; and who erected here a College (among others) for the education only of young English Fugitives. Seated upon the River *Pisuerga*, and one of the Chanceries of the Kingdoms of *Castile* and *Leon*, By means whereof, and of the King's Court here residing in the Summer-time, it became, in little space, a fair, large, populous City, and of great resort, not yielding unto any in *Spain*, except *Lizbon*, and

*Sevil*. It is called in *Latin*, *Vallis Olisum*, and *Vallis Olisana*, from the abundance of Olives growing near it; but by *Plutony*, *Pintia*. 4. *Segovia*, a Bishops-See; of great trade in Clothing; situate under a branch of the Mountain *Idubeda*, called from hence, the Hills of *Segovia*. 5. *Burgos*, near the head of the River *Relanar*, or *Relanar*, at the foot of the great Mountain *Ocoa*, part of the *Idubeda*: built out of certain Village lying hereabouts, by *Nugro Bellder*, a *German* Son-in-law unto one of the first Earls of *Castile*. For a long time the seat of those Kings, since of the Archbishops hereof; the Cathedral being one of the fairest in *Spain*; built with such art, that Mafis may be sung aloud in five several Chapells, without disturbing one another. This City doth contend for Primacy and Precedency, in *Caivil* matters with that of *Toledo*, of which it hath the first place or vote in all Parliaments or Assemblies of the States of *Castile*. But yet to fatishe *Toledo*, the Controversie is still undecided, saying, that he would first speak for *Toledo*, and then *Burgos* should speak for it self. Without the Walls of this City, is a famous Nursery, called *De las Helejas*, consisting of 150 Religious Women, all of Noble Houses. 6. *Guadalupe*, a Bishops-See, on the River *Gadu*. 7. *Zamora*, a strong, and well-built City, and a Bishops-See, the *Seneca* of *Plutony*: situate on the River *Douro*, and now famous for the best Burg-pipes. 8. *Tordesillas*, the *Sejanna* of the Ancients. 9. *Lerma*, not far from *Burgos*; the chief Seat of the Dukes for called; a Prince of great Possessions, and the chief of the Family of *Roku*, and *Sandrol*. 10. *Salamanca*, the most famous University of *Spain*, especially for the study of the *Civil* and *Canon* Laws; first instituted by *Ferdinand* the second of *Castile*, *Anno 1240*; and by an Order of the Pope's, together with *Paris*, *Oxford*, and *Bonnus* in *Italy*, created a *Generale Studium*; wherein there were to be Professors of the *Greek*, *Hebrew*, *Chalde*, and *Arabick* Tongues, besides those of the Arts. It was of old called *Salmanica*; is now a Bishops-See, situate on the River *Tormes*, as before was said.

Nor far from this City, about the times of our Grand-Fathers, was discovered in a Valley situate amongst high and impassable Mountains, a kind of *Patetor*, or *Savage* people, never heard of in *Spain* before. The occasion, this: An Hawk of the Duke of *Alva*'s, which he very much valued, flew over those Mountains; and his men not being able to find her at first, they went back by the Duke to seek her. Clambering from one Hill to another, they hapned at last upon a large and pleasant Valley, where they spied a company of naked *Savage* people, hemmed in amongst many craggy Rocks. The *Salvages*, gazing a while upon them, ran into their Caves, made in the hollows of the Rocks, the best Houses they had: which being observed by the *Falconers*, they returned again unto their Lord, telling him, that instead of a *Falcon*, they had brought him news of a *New-world* in the midst of *Spain*, and of a race of People which came in with *Tubal*. Strongly affirming what they said, they obtained belief. And the Duke shortly after went with a Company of Musketeers, and subdued them easily; they having no offensive Weapons, but only Slings. They worshipped the Sun and Moon, fed upon nothing that had life; but had good store of excellent Fruits, Roots, and Springs of Water, wherewith Nature was well contented. And though their Language was not altogether understood by any; yet many of their words were found to be purely *Basque*. Reduced, on this discovery, to *Christianity*; but easily discernible from all other *Spaniards*, by their tawny complexions, occasioned by the reverberation of the Sun-beams, from those Rocky Mountains wherewith on all sides they are compassed,

compassed. The truth hereof, besides the credit of *James Howel*, in his *Intructions for Foreign Travel*; I have upon enquiry found to be attested by men of gravity and great place in this Realm of *England*: employed there in affairs of publick interest. Satisfied therefore in the truth of the Relation, I am partly satisfied in the men: whom I conceive to be some remnant of the Ancient *Spaniards*, who hid themselves amongst these Mountains for fear of the *Romans*. Their Language and Idollary speak them to be such. For had they either fled from the *Goths* or *Moors*, there had been found some *Cross*, or other Monument of *Christianity*, as in other places; or some such mixture in their speech, as would have favoured somewhat of the *Goths* or *Romans*. But it is time I should proceed.

**NEW CASTILE** is situate on the South of the *Old*. The chief Cities there, 1. *Segura*, a City heretofore of the *Calitibori*, now a Bishops See, beautified with a fair Cathedral, supposed to be the *Condorosa* of *Ptolomy*, 2. *Madrid*, upon the *Guadama*, the *Mintina* of the ancient Writers, now the Seat of the Kings: whose residence there, though the Country be neither rich nor pleasant, hath made it, of a Village, the most populous City in all *Spain*. It is a custom in this Town, that all the upper Rooms in their Houses do belong to the King, except some composition be made with him for them. And of this Town the *Spaniards* do use to brag to strangers, that they have a City walled with fire; and then make good the boast, by saying, That is situate in the midst of Quarries of Flint. 3. *Alcala de Henares*, (of old called *Complutum*) renowned for an University of Divines, founded here in the time of *Ferdinand* the *Catholicke*, by *Francisco de Ximenes*, Cardinal and Arch-bishop of *Toledo*; and by him furnished with the ablest men both for Divinity and the Tongues, that all *Spain* afforded. By whose joint diligence and study in turning over so many Copies of the Bibles, gathered together at his charge from all parts of the World, he published the *Complutensian* Edition of the holy Scriptures in the Original *Greek*, *Hebrew*, and *Vulgar Latin*, with the Translation of the *Septuagint* into *Latin* also. A work of very great charge and pains (taking up 15 years in doing) but of greater probitethere being at the end thereof, an *Hebrew Dictionary*, for the understanding of that Language. 4. *Alevar*, amongst the Mountainous tracts of *Oroselphi*, called *Sierra de Alevar*; memorable for a great discomfure given unto the *Moors*, Anno 1094. 5. *Molina* in the same Mountainous Tract, hence called *Monte de Molina*, remarkable for giving the title of Lord, to the Kings of *Castile*, who in the Realm are called Lords of *Molina*: the Signeity heretofore accruing to that Crown, by the marriage of *Sancho* the third, with *Mary* the Daughter of *Alfonso*, the last *Lord Proprietary*. The Territory large, and the Town of strength, well fortified in the times foregoing, both by Art and Nature. 6. *Cuenca*, seated at the Spring-head of the River *Jucar*, and not far from that of *Tagus* also, amongst the Mountains of *Oroselphi*; built by the *Moors* on the top of those craggy Hills, whom it served for an impregnable Fortrefs against the *Christians*, till taken by *Sancho* the second of *Castile*, Anno 1177.

Here also is the *Escurial*, or Monastery of *S. Lawrence*, built by King *Philip* the second, A place (saith *Quade*, who spendeth 13 pages in its description) of that magnificence, that no building in times past, or this present is comparable to it: The front, toward the West, is adorned with three stately Gates, the middlemost whereof leadeth into a most magnificent Temple, a Monastery in which are 150 Monks of the Order of *S. Jerome*, and a College: that on the right hand, openeth into divers Offices, belonging to the Monastery: that on the left,

unto Schools and out-houses belonging unto the College. At the four corners, there are four Towers of excellent Workmanship; and for height, majestic. To the west the North, is the King's Palace: on the South parts, divers beautiful and sumptuous Galleries; and on the East side, sundry Gardens and Walks, very pleasing and delectable. It contained, in all, 11 several Quadrangles, every one encloistered; and is indeed to brave a structure, that a Voyage into *Spain* were well employed, were it only to see it, and return. Here is also in this Tract, the old Town of *Castulo*, (the *Castum* of *Strabo*) then the chief City of the *Carpetani*, and the birth-place of *Himiler*, the Wife of *Anibal*: from whence this whole Tract had the name of *Saltus Castulonensis*, and so called by *Cesar*: now a poor Village, known by the name of *Castona la Vera*; in which is somewhat to be found of the ancient ruins. But of this more already, when we were in the Kingdom of *Toledo*; to which it more properly belonged.

The old inhabitants of these Castles, were the *Vaceci*, *Ventones*, *Arvacae*, *Oretani*, *Carpetani*, *Dittani*, &c. From none of which, the name of *Castile* can be deduced: that we must fetch it either from the *Castellani*, one a people of *Catalogne* or from some strong fortified Castles erected in the Frontiers, against the *Moors*. This last conjecture may seem probable, because the Arms of this Kingdom are *Gules*, a *Castle* triple-towered, &c. Neither is it any way strange, for Provinces, especially smaller ones, such as at first this was, (though now much extended both in bounds and power) to take their names from a Castle. For (to go no further) even with us, *Richmondshire* was so called from the Castle of *Richmond*, there built by *Alain*, Earl of *Bretnage*; and *Flintshire* took denomination from the Castle built of Flint-stones, by *Henry* the second. We may see hereby, how much *Caesius Secundus Curius* was deceived, who writeth, that *Alfonso* the third, having overthrown *Mahomet Ensifer*, King of *Morocco*, and put 60000 of his men to the sword; assumed these Arms, that thus named this Kingdom, which was before called the Kingdom of the *Basitanes*; because that Victory, like a strong Castle, had confirmed his Estates unto him. Whereas, in case there were no other error in his supposition, the *Basitanes* were no Inhabitants of *Castile*, but of *Valentia* and *Murcia*, Provinces far enough off from the *Old Castile*, at the first taking of that name. And for the former Etymology, it appeareth most evidently, in that the people are by the *Latins* called *Castellani*: the Country, *Castella*: the same name with those elder *Castellani* which inhabited *Catalogne*. But not to stand upon the name, certain it is, that the Inhabitants heretofore, having been conquered by the *Romans*, and made a part of their Empire, fell by degrees to the *Alani*, and from them to the *Goths*, as hath been shewed already on several other occasion. From them extorted by the *Moors*, with the rest of *Spain*: recovered, foot after foot, by the Kings of *Leon*; governed under them, at first, by the *vincial* Earls, Commanders of so many Castles; the Country of the *Vaceci*, fortified and defended against the *Moors*. *Ordengo* the second, harbouring some suspicion against these Earls, caused them all to be cruelly murdered. The people upon this, revolted from the Crown of *Leon*; governed first by Judges, then by Earls, again, as an absolute and free Estate. *Ferdinand* *Gastili*, the first that re-assumed the title of Earl of *Castile*, coming to the Court of *Leon* with a brave Retinue, led to King *Sancho* an Hawk, and an Horse, of excellent kinds, for a sum of money; conditioned; that if the money were not paid at the time agreed on; it should be doubled, and redoubled, till the Debt were paid.

satisfied. This money, by the negligence of the King's Officers, who looked upon the Contract as a matter of jest, became so great a sum, that the King, to satisfy *Gonsales*, made him the first Proprietary-Earl of *Castile*, Anno 939; relating that Estate from all acknowledgment to the Kings of *Leon*. *Nugna*, or *Elvira*, as some call her, Sister and Heir of *Garcias* the fourth Earl heretofore, brought this Estate by marriage to *Sancho*, surnamed the Great, King of *Navarre*, Anno 1028; by whom it was erected into a Kingdom, and given by him to *Ferdinand* his second Son, Anno 1034. Kings of most note and observation in the course of their story, are 1. *Ferdinand* their first King, who added *Leon* to his Kingdom, in right of *Sancho* his Wife, Sister and Heir of *Veremund* the last King thereof, of the race of *Pelagius*. 2. *Alfonso* the first, who subdued the Kingdom of *Toledo*, adding it, by the name of *New Castile*, unto his Estate. 3. *Alfonso* the Fourth, who not only conquered from the Crown of *Navarre*, whatsoever lay on the *Castilian* side on the River *Iberus*, but also the whole Countries of *Alava* and *Guipuscoa*, all which he united to *Castile*: but grew so great, that he caused himself to be solemnly crowned Emperor of *Spain*, in the Cathedral Church of *Leon*, by the Arch-bishop of *Toledo*; and gave his Son *Sancho* the title of King of *Castile*, in his own life-time. The chief of the Confederates against *Mahomet Ensifer*, the *Miramoneline* of *Morocco*, whom he vanquished in the famous battel of *Muradal*, or *Sierra Moracca*, Anno 1214. 4. *Ferdinand* the third, who incorporated *Leon* and *Castile* into one Estate, and added the Kingdoms of *Murcia*, *Corduba*, and *Sevil*, taken from the *Moors*, unto his Dominions. 5. *Alfonso* the fifth of *Castile*, and the ninth of *Leon*, elected Emperor of the *German*, but more famous for his eminence in *Astronomy*; the Author of the *Alfonso Tables*: compiled by many Learned Men assembled together, by his means, in the City of *Toledo*, where, in the compiling of it, it is affirmed by a *Spanish* Writer, that he spent more than the Revenues of the Pope in ten years did amount unto. 6. *Sancho* the 3d. Son of this *Alfonso*, the Author of the great breach in the Line of *Castile*: for having the hap to survive *Ferdinand*, surnamed *de la Cerde*, his elder Brother; he made himself so strong a Party in his Father's Life-time, that he succeeded in the Kingdom, depriving his Brother's Children of their Right therein, though many attempts were made, in their favour, afterwards. *Don Alfonso*, eldest Son of which *Ferdinand* married into *France*, was Father of *Lewis* Earl of *Clermont*; who by *Leonora* de *Gusman*, a Daughter of the now house of *Medina Sidonia*, was Father of *Lewis*, *John* and *Isabella* de *la Cerde*, in which last, (the Male issue being quite extinct) the whole Rights of that Line remained: brought by her to her Husband *Bernard*, a base Son of the House of *Foix*; created by King *Henry* the second, the first Earl of *Medina Celi*; whose Son, called *Gaston*, left the name of *Foix*, and took unto himself that of *de la Cerde*, continued ever since in his Posterity advanced unto the honour of Dukes of *Medina Celi*, in the person of *Lewis* the first Earl, the better to preserve in memory their descent from, and lawful title to that Crown. And for the better keeping and preserving of their claim unto it, it is affirmed to be the custom of this House, once, at the least, in the life time of every Duke, to put up a Petition to the King then reigning, for restitution to the Throne; which the King receiving as of course, doth of course subscribe this answer to it, viz. *No est ingrat*: that is to say, there is no room for him. *S. Pedro* the Cruel, driven out of this Kingdom by *Henry* of *Traslamare*, his Brother, restored again, for a time, by the valour of *Edward* the Black-Prince, Son of *Edward* the third. 9. *John*, Son of *Henry* of *Traslamare*,

who married his Son *Henry*, to *Katharine* Daughter of *John* of *Gauin*, by *Constance*, one of the Daughters of *Don Pedro* the Cruel; to uniting both Titles into one. The times in which these Princes, and the rest, did reign, appeareth in these Catalogues of the Earls and Kings of *Castile*, which are as follow.

#### The Earls of Castile.

- A. Chr.  
910 1. *Ferdinand* and *Gonsales* the first Proprietary Earl.  
932 2. *Garcias*, Son of *Ferdinand*.  
980 3. *Sancho*, or *Santius*, Son of *Garcias*.  
1018 4. *Garcias* II. Son of *Sancho*, slain by Treason: without issue.  
1028 5. *Nugna*, or *Elvira*, the Sister of *Garcias* the second, married to *Sancho* King of *Navarre*, Father of *Ferdinand*, made by him the first King of *Castile*.

#### The Kings of Castile.

- A. Chr.  
1036 1. *Ferdinand*, King of *Castile* by the gift of his Father, and of *Leon* in right of his Wife. 33.  
1067 2. *Sancho*, Son of *Ferdinand*, King of *Castile* only; his younger Brother *Alfonso* succeeding in *Leon*. 6.  
1073 3. *Alfonso*, the Brother of *Sancho*, King of *Leon*, and afterwards of *Castile* also.  
1108 4. { *Urraca*, Queen of *Castile* and *Leon*.  
          { *Alfonso* II. King of *Navarre* and 15.  
          { *Aragon*.  
1122 5. *Alfonso* III. King of *Castile* & *Leon*, the Son of *Urraca*, by *Raymond* of *Burgundy*, her former Husband.  
1157 6. *Sancho* II. the elder Son of *Alfonso* the third, his younger Brother *Ferdinand* succeeding in *Leon*. 2.  
1159 7. *Alfonso* IV. surnamed the Noble, Son of *Sancho* the 2d. 55.  
1214 8. *Henry*, Son of *Alfonso* the fourth. 3.  
1217 9. *Ferdinand* II, Son of *Alfonso* the ninth of *Leon*, and of *Breogunda* the Sister of *Henry*, succeeded his Father in *Leon* also, An. 1230; the Kingdoms never since disjoined, though the title of *Leon* in short time became discontinued.  
1252 10. *Alfonso* V. surnamed the Wise, Son of *Ferdinand* the second, King of *Castile* and *Leon*, and Emperor Elect. 32.  
1283 11. *Sancho* III. the second Son of *Alfonso* the fifth; the children of *Ferdinand* de *la Cerde*, his elder Brother, being first beside. 12.  
1295 12. *Ferdinand* III. of *Castile*, and IV. of *Leon*, Son of *Sancho* the third. 18.  
1312 13. *Alfonso* VI. Son of *Ferdinand*. 38.  
1350 14. *Pedro*, the Son of *Alfonso*, for his infinite Tyrannies, surnamed the Cruel. 18.  
1368 15. *Henry* II. the Baitard-Son of *Alfonso* the 6th, Earl of *Traslamare*. 11.  
1379 16. *John*, the Son of *Henry* the second. 11.  
1390 17. *Henry* III. Son of *John*, and Husband of *Katharine*, the Daughter of *John* of *Gauin*, and the Lady *Constance*, one of the Daughters of King *Pedro*. 17.  
1406 18. *John* II. Son of *Henry* and *Katharine*. 48.  
1454 19. *Henry* IV. Son of *John* the second. 21.  
1478 20. *Isabel*, Sister of *Henry* the Fourth, married to *Ferdinand* V. Son of *John* King, of *Aragon*: Of whose Acts, and Issue, we will make more ample men-  
H h





2. The Kingdom of **ALGARVE** lyeth on the South of *Perigal*, from which divided by a line drawn from *Afcon*, on the Western Sea, to *Odebre*, a Castle on the *Guadiana* on the East, bounded by *Andalusia* on the West and South, by the main *Atlantic*. This is the most low and desert part of all this Kingdom, barren and dry: peopled with few Towns, not thole very populous: hilly and mountainous withall; but yielding, by the benefit of the Sea, a great Trade of Fishings, of *Tunny* especially, whereof more caught upon this Coast, than in all the Kingdom.

The name is took from the Western situation of it, for to the word *Algarve* signifieth in the *Arabic* Tongue, The utmost end of it, called anciently, *Promontorium Sacrum*; now, the Cape of *S. Vincent*; because the bones of *S. Vincent*, religiously preserved by the Christians, were here burnt and scattered about by the *Moor*, Places of most importance in it, 1. *Niebla*, the Seat of *Aben Mefad*, once a King of this Country, 2. *Silvis*, an Episcopal See, seated in the Inland parts, 3. *Villa nova*, a town beyond the Cape, 4. *Lamela*, the *Balsa*; and 5. *Faro*, the *Offshore of Phology*, both noted Ports on the *Atlantic*, 6. *Lagos*, another Haven-Town also.

This Country, conquered by the *Moor*, with the rest of *Spain*, in the distractions of their Power, was for a time under the Sovereignty and Command of the Kings of *Sevil*. Recovered from the *Moor* of *Sevil*, by the Kings of *Morocco*, it became subject unto them, till they left this Country; and, after their retreat, was parcelled amongst many Princes. One of which, called *Aben Mefad*, reigning in *Niebla*, and the parts adjoining, being dispossessed of his Estate by *Alfonso the Wife*, most of the other Towns and Princes: submitted to him, and became his Vassals, Anno 1257. More absolutely subdued and made subject to the Crown of *Portugal*, by *Alfonso* the third, Anno 1265; to whom the said *Alfonso*, the tenth of that name in *Leon*, and the fifth in *Asturias*, had given the same in Dowry with *Beatrice* his Daughter. From which Marriage issued *Dionysius*, or *Dons*, King of *Portugal*, the first that ever used the title of *Rex Algarbium*, Anno 1279.

3. The **AZORES** are certain Islands lying in the *Atlantic* Ocean, opposite to the City of *Lisbon*, from which distant but 250 Leagues. Situate betwixt the 38 and 40 degrees of Northern Latitude; and one of them in the first Longitude; which is commonly reckoned from these Islands, as being the most Western part of the *World*, before the discovery of *America*.

They were thus called from the multitude of *Gophawks* which were found there in the beginnings; (the word *Azor*, in the *Spanish* Tongue, signifying a *Gophawk*) thought at this time there be none of them to be found. Called also the *Flemish Islands*, because first discovered by the *Flemings*; and the great numbers of them in the life of *Faial*, (one of the chief of all the pack) where there are yet some Families which resemble the *Flemings* both in their complexion and habit: and not far from the place of their abode, a Torrent, which the *Spaniards* call *Ribera dos Flamengos*, or the River of *Flemings*. They are also called the *Tercera's*, from *Tercera* the chief Isle among them.

The Air of these Islands is generally good, and subject unto few Distempers, except that which the *Portugals* call the *Blood*; being an impoisonment of the blood, breaking out at the eyes, or other parts of the body. Some other inconveniences they are subject to, proceeding from the humidity of the place; the great winds and storms, of such a violent and strange kind of working, that Bars of Iron as big as a man's arm, have in fix years been worn as little as a Straw. All of them well

stored with Fleish, Fish and other things necessary, except Salt and Oyl, with which they are furnished out of *Portugal*. Wines they have also for their own use but not to be transported far, because of their weakness for which cause also, the richer men provide themselves of *Canary* Wines, or those of the Island of *Madaga*. Of like nature is their Wheat and other Fruits, which hold not good above a year. All of them subject unto Earthquakes, and some to breathings out of fire, which continually sendeth forth fuming vapours. The chief Commodities which they transport unto other Countries, are *Canary* Birds for Ladies, Oad for the Diers, Joyner-work, which they sell to the *Spaniards*; and Beeswax for the victualling of such ships as come there to be victualled.

The Inhabitants are generally laborious, excellent Husbands on their grounds; inasmuch as they make Vines to grow out of Rocks: much given to *Jongny*, by which they make many pretty fancies, much esteemed by the *Spaniards*, but not to expert at it, as those of *Nuremberg*. They take great pains to reach the Castle understanding; the Oxen being taught to know when their Master calleth them. In other things they conform to the *Portugals*, both in their Customs and Apparel; but with some matting of the *Fleming*, which Nation they affect above any other.

The Islands nine in number; and distinguished by the several names of, 1. *Tercera*, 2. *S. Michael*, 3. *Faial*, 4. *Gratiosa*, 5. *S. George*, 6. *Pico*, 7. *Corvo*, 8. *Flores*, and 9. *S. Maries*, of which, *S. Michael*, and *S. Maries*, lie next to *Spain*; *Tercera*, on the North-west of thole, (by consequence), the third in Order, whence it had the name 1. *S. Georges*, *Gratiosa*, *Pico*, *Faial*, on the West of that, and finally, those of *Corvo*, and *Flores*, nearest to *America*.

1. **TERCERA**, the chief of all the rest, 18 miles in compass; well stored with Peaches, Apples, Limons, Oranges; and for the Kitchen, with Turneps, Cabages, plenty of Pot-herbs, and as good *Baitato*-roots, (which are the best food the people have) as any be in the world; but more esteemed in *Portugal*, than they be in this Island, by reason of their great abundance. Here is also great quantity of the best kind of Wood (which from hence is called *Island Wood*) and a Plant about the height of a man, which bears no fruit; but hath a Root as profitable as those that do, out of which the people draw a thin and tender film, wherewith they fill their Matresses, instead of Feathers. Food enough for the use of man, and yet none of prey. No Port of any safety in it, but that of *Angra*; and that made safe by Art, and warded by Nature: the whole begirt with Rocks, which stick out like a pointed Diamond, able to pierce the feet of any who should venture over them. Places of most importance in it, 1. *Prays*, on the Sea-side, well walled but not very well peopled. 2. *S. Barbara*, 3. *S. Sebastian*, 4. *Gasine*, and 5. *Villa Nova*, Burroughs of good note. 6. *Angra*, the chief, not of this Island only, but of all the nine: the Residence of the Governour, and an Archbishop See, who hath in it his Cathedral Church: seated on a convenient Bay, made in the form of a *Crescent*, with two Promontories on each side, (like the two Horns of a half-Moon) bearing into the Sea; each fortified with a strong Castle for defence of the Heaven: the Town it self also well walled about, and environed with sharp Rocks on all sides. Both Town and Castle well garrisoned, and no less diligently guarded. This, in regard of its great strength, and commodious Haven, is esteemed the principal of these Islands, and communicates its name unto all the rest; though neither nearest unto *Spain*, nor the greatest in compass.

2. S.

2. **S. MARIES**, so called from the Saint (as *S. Georges* and *S. Michael* are) unto which it is dedicated; is the most Southern of these Isles, and the next to *Spain*: twelve miles in circuit, inhabited by *Spaniards* only, and thole much given unto the making of Earthen Vessels. Somewhat fenced with Rocks, that it is, and may be easily kept by the Inhabitants, without the charge of a Garrison. The chief Town of it hath the name of *S. Maries* also, which it either giveth unto the Island, or borroweth from it.

3. **S. MICHAELS**, directly North of *S. Maries*, from which, little distant; the biggest in the whole pack, as being 20 miles in length, though the breadth not answerable; much subject unto Earth-quakes and fiery vapours. Of most note amongst our modern Geographers, who have removed hither the first Meridian (by which they divide the World into East and West) from the *Canaries*, or *Fortunate Islands*; where it was fixed in the time of *Phology*, and others of the Ancient Writers.

And this remove seems countenanced even by Nature it self; it being observed, that the Compass when it cometh under the Meridian, drawn through this Isle, hath little or no variation at all, but pointeth almost directly towards the North: whereas in all other places, or less Meridians; East and West, it pointeth not so directly North, but more or less to the North-east, or the North-west; which the Mariners call the *Variation*, or the North-wasting, and the North-wasting of the Compass. And yet it's observed of late, that there is some more sensible variation of it in this Isle of *S. Michael*, than in that of *Corvo*; which therefore is conceived more fit for the first Meridian.

The chief Town hereof, besides many Burroughs and lesser Hamlets, *Punta del Gado*, seated upon a dangerous Sea, and without any Port; yet more frequented by Strangers, than the Port of *Angra*, because here they may go in and out as they please; but not so in the other.

4. **FATAL**, 17 or 18 miles in length; plentifully provided with all things necessary for the life of man, and well furnished with Wood, for which Commodity, much frequented by the Merchants of *England*. The chief Town of it, *Dorta*; defended with a Castle, and that guarded by *Spaniards*; both Town and Island taken by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Anno 1597. This Action was called the *Island-Voyage*; undertaken as well to divert the War which the *Spaniards* threatened to bring to our own doors; as, by seizing some of those Islands, to intercept the *Spanish* Fleet in their return, and to hinder them in their setting out: by which means, wanting their Indian Gold, they might be brought to better terms with their Neighbour-Nations. And though the *English* were not able to hold it long, yet it was said, that the Booty got in this Expedition, amounted to 40000 Crowns besides the honour of beating the *Spaniards* upon his own ground. It took his name from its abundance of *Beeswax*.

5. **GRATIOSA**, not above five or six Leagues in compass; but so well furnished with Fruits, that they send much yearly to *Tercera*; inhabited by *Portugals* only, but so poor, that they are not able to bear the charge of a Garrison. The chief Town of it called *La Praia*.

6. **S. GEORGES**, twelve miles long, about three in breadth; mountainous, and full of Forests: but thole Forests so well stored with Cedars, that they use them many times for Shipping, and sometimes for Fuel. The chief Town of it, called *S. Georges*, as the Island is.

7. **PICO**, lyeth on the South of the Isle of *S. Georges*, and took this name from an high Hill, in the form of a Pyramid, which the *Portugals* generally call a Pike,

or *Pico*. Replenished with Fruits, some Cedars, and a tree called *Trice*, of great Bulk, and as much beauty; the wood thereof, exceeding hard, red within, and waved; so admirably beautiful, that it is allowed only to the King's Officers, the other Subjects being denied the use of it, (but on special licence) by a publick Edict. In bigness, it is second only unto that of *S. Michael*, if not equal to it; hardly so much in length, but of greater breadth. The chief Towns of it, 1. *S. Sebastian*, 2. *Calhota* ne *Nisquin*, Both upon the Sea, and in the East parts of the Island.

8. **FLORES**, directly East from *Faial*, so called from its abundance of Flowers, (as *Gratiosa* from the like flourishing Verduce of it) is in compass not above 8 miles; but plentifully furnished with Carrel, and good grounds to feed them. The chief Town of it, *Santa Cruz*. The Isle (though small, yet) twice as big as the Isle of

9. **CORVO**, so called from its abundance of Crows, situate on the North hereof, and but little distant; both very unsafe, and both most miserable poor, by reason of the many Pirates which lie betwixt them, to intercept such ships as trade towards *America*. But this, though much smaller than the others, may in time be of more esteem than any of them, in regard it is conceived to be the most natural place for the first Meridian, as before was noted: the Needle here pointing directly to the North, without Variation. Which whether it proceed from some secret inclination of the Loadstone to that part of the World, more in this place than any other; or that being situate between the two great Continents of *Europe* and *America*; it is drawn equally towards both, by the magnetic virtue of the Earth it self, I leave to be disputed by more able Judgments.

These Islands were first discovered and subdued by the *Portugals*, under the conduct, or by the direction of Prince *Henry*, Son of *John* the first; who first made the *Portugals* in love with the Seas. And they were also the first Mentions of the Crown of *Portugal*, which held out for *Don Antonio* the Ballard, against *Philip*, the second of *Castile*; against whom the Island of *Tercera* was for a while gallantly defended by *Emanuel de Silva*, with the help of the French; but taken at the last by the Marquess of *Santa Cruz*, and the French, after promise of life, cruelly murdered in cold blood. After which, garrisoned at the first by none but *Portugals*. But upon some commotion happening in that Kingdom, it was thought fit, on some reason of State, to make sure of the best Islands, by *Spanish* Garrisons; which accordingly were put into the Castle of *Angra*, in *Tercera*; the Towns of *Punta del Gado*, in *S. Michael*; and *Dorta* in *Faial*. And to say truth, the *Spaniards* had good reason to be careful of them: these Islands being of such importance, as without them the Navigation of the *Indies*, *Asturias*, *Brasil*, and *New Spain*, could not be continued: because the Fleet which come from those Countries to *Lisbon*, or *Sevil*, must, in a manner, of necessity touch upon some of them; as well in following their course, if they come from the West, as in recovering fresh Winds as are useful to them; if they came from the East.

But to return again to the main Land of *Portugal*, know, that the ancient Inhabitants of it, were the *Lusitani*, dwelling betwixt *Tagus* and *Durius*, the old *Lusitania* being bounded within those Rivers; the *Celtici*, and *Turditani*, who took up also some part of *Betice*, dwelling on the South of *Tagus*; and the *Gallaici*, *Bracari*, (so called to distinguish them from the *Gallaici*, *Lusitani*, who possessed *Gallaicia*) on the North of *Durius*. Subjected first unto the *Romans*; by whom accounted one of the three parts of *Spain*. In the declining



of their Empire conquered by the *Alans* and from them taken by the *Suevians*, who, for a time, made the City of *Braga* the Royal Seat of their Kings. The *Suevians* lost it to the *Goths* and the *Goths*, to the *Moors*, as hath been shewn already in their several stories. Recovered, in part, by the King of *Leon* to whom that part continued subject, till given by *Alfonso* the sixth of *Leon*, in Dowry with his bafe Daughter *Teresa*, to *Henry* of *Lorraine*, (whose virtue and good service, merited no less reward) Anno 1099. Who having fortunately governed it by the title of an Earl, for the space of 12 years, left his Son, *Alfonso*, Heir both to his Fortunes and Vertues; honoured with the title of King of *Portugal*, by the Sovereigns of *Leon*, for his most gallant, demerit shewn in the Battel of *Ovique*, Anno 1139. He had, before the *Assumption* of the Regal Stile, ruled 27 years, with a great deal of honour; and reigned here with no less, 45 years after that *Assumption*; he was revered by his friends, and feared by his enemies. So that the whole time of his fitting in the Chair of State, was 72 years: a longer enjoying of Sovereignty, than any Prince since the first beginning of the *Roman* Monarchy. His Successors we shall have in order in the following Catalogue. But we must first tell you, as in other places of this Work, that the Princes of moit note in the whole Succession, are, 1. *Henry* of *Lorraine*, (whom some make a *Burgundian*, of the City of *Bescon*) who coming into *Spain* to the *Holy Wars*, and delivering nobly in the same, was honoured by *Alfonso* the sixth, with his Daughter *Teresa*, and the Town of *Porto* for her Dowry; given to him with the title of the Earl of *Portugal*. He extended his Estate as far as *Comibre*, on the South of the River *Duro*; so that River being before that time, the utmost bound of it that way. 2. *Alfonso* the first King, who took *Lisbon* from the *Moors*, Anno 1247. and made it the Seat of his Kingdoms which he extended Southward, as far as *Algarve*. 3. *Alfonso* the 3d, who partly by Conquest, and partly by Marriage, added *Algarve* to his Estate, getting it by the Sword, and confirming it to him by the Bed. He also did prevail so far with *Alfonso* the Wife, (never the wiser for so doing) as to get his Realm discharged of the Homage which formerly had been done to the Kings of *Leon*, Anno 1270. 4. *Alfonso* the 4th, confederate with the fifth of the same name in *Castile*, against *Albarran* the *Muramolin* of *Africk*, at the fight near the River *Salado* not far from *Tariff*, where they discomfited the vast Army of *Moors*, consisting of 470000 Horse and Foot. 5. *John* the first, the bafe Son of *Pedro* the first, setting aside the Lady *Beatrice*, Queen of *Castile*, the Daughter of *Ferdinand* the first, and the Lawful Children of his Father, being many in number by force and colour of Election, obtained the Kingdom. Fortified it by his marriage with the Lady *Philipp*, Daughter of *John* of *Guant*, Duke of *Lancester* a strong Competitor, at that time, for the Crown of *Castile*: on which relation, this King, the four Kings next succeeding, and two of this Kings younger Sons, were made Knights of the *Garter*. 6. *Edward* the son and successor of *John* the first; of whom there goes a story, that on the day of his Coronation, he was advised by a Jew, (one of his Physicians) learned in *Astrology*, to defer the Ceremony until noon, in regard he found by his Art, that if they did proceed unto it in that conjuncture, his reign would be very short, and full of trouble. But the King, either out of magnanimity, or contempt of that Art, going on with the Ceremony, the Jew's Prediction was found true; for he reigned not fully five years, and with ill success in his attempts against the *Moors*. 7. *Henry* Duke of *Viseo*, (*Vicomitus* the *Latins* call it) the second Son of *John* the first, created Knight of the *Garter*, by King *Henry* the sixth, An-

1444. By whose encouragement and example, the *Portuguese* began to be affected to Foreign Voyages: discovering in his time, (and, for the most part, under his conduct also) the Islands of *Azores*, *Madeira*, *Holy-Peter*, *Isle of Cape Verde*, and a great part of the coast of *Africa*, as far as *Guinea*; He dyed Anno 1465. 8. *Alfonso* the fifth, who waring on the *Moors* in *Africk*, took from them the strong Towns of *Tangier*, *Alcazar*, and *Asiella*. 2. *John* the second, under whose reign the *Portuguese* fully settled themselves in *Guinea*, and the Realm of *Congo*; discovering all the Coasts and Isles of *Africk* (not before discovered) as far as to the Cape of good hope, Anno 1487: planting and fortifying as they passed; the whole Discovery of *Africk*, the East-Indies, and *Brazil*, being perfected in the Reign of King 10 *Emanuel*; under whom also they discomfited great Armies of the *Turk* and *Sultans*, of *Egypt*; bringing by Sea the riches of the East, into the West. 11. *Sebastian*, the Grandchild of King *John*, son of *Emanuel*, embarking himself unadvisedly in the Wars of *Africk*, lost his life (as it is generally supposed) at the battel of *Alcazar*, in which three Kings fell in one day. But many of the *Portuguese* are of opinion, that he was not killed, but that for shame and sorrow he returned not home; wandering from one place to another, and at last was found and avowed at *Venice*; thence carried to *Naples*, where he was kept three days in a dark Dungeon, without any sustenance but a Knife and a Halter: brought into *Spain* by the King's Command, where at last he dyed. A man in whom so many circumstances met, to make up a truth, that the very *Spaniards* used to say, that either he was the true *Sebastian*, or else the Devil in his likeness. But whether true or not, it is not now material; Death having put an end to that dispute; though the controversy, which ensued upon his death, for the Crown of *Portugal*, being not yet decided. For, though King *Philip* the second of *Spain*, succeeded in it next after *Henry* the Cardinal King (who only came upon the Stage, that the Competitors might have time to declare their titles); and claimed the Crown as eldest Heir-male, and nearest Kinsman to King *Henry*; yet all the World was not well satisfied in the Justice and Equity of his Demands. In the carrying on of which Affairs, he seemed to deal very candidly to the eyes of men, not biased by their proper Interest: offering to submit his Title to a Disputation; professing that the Laws of *Portugal* were more favourable to him, than the Law of *Castile*; and openly acknowledged, that if he should chance to dye before the King *Henry*, his eldest Son, as being a degree further off, would come behind some others of the *Precedents* to it, of whom himself had the precedence. But finding nothing done by *Henry*, and meaning to make sure work after his decease, (*Antonio* the Bastard having got possession of *Lisbon*, and taking on himself as King, by a popular and tumultuous Election) he raised an Army under the command of *Ferdinand* de *Toledo*, Duke of *Alva*, and subdued all that stood against him; *Ferdinand* the Churches of *Brugance*, Daughter of Prince *Edward*, surrendering also all her interest and pretensions to him; so entering by a mixed title of Descent and Arms, Anno 1580. Threecore years it was peaceably enjoyed by the Kings of *Spain*, when suddenly dispossessed by a potent Faction, appearing for *John* Duke of *Brugance*, descended from the youngest Son of King *Emanuel*: in his behalf, wrought so cunningly and under-hand practices of Cardinal *Richelieu*, and others, Ministers of the French, that the King of *Spain* was sooner diffided of *Portugal*, than he heard of any plot or practice set on foot against him, Anno 1636. In which it is to be observed, that

as King *Philip* the second, for the better obtaining of this Crown had embroiled the French, engaging, that King in a bloody War against the *Protestants* of that Kingdom; to make him sure enough from troubling him in his present Enterprise: so the French Ministers had caused a revolt in *Catalogne*; to the end, that when the King of *Spain* was busied in reducing that Province, the *Portuguese* might have opportunity to redeem themselves from the power of the *Spaniards*; whom the Antipathy betwixt the Nations made less pleasant to them. Nor was it a partial defection only, or the loss of *Portugal*, and no more: but a general falling off of the whole Estate in *Africk*, *Asia*, *America*, in the Isles and Continents: the *Accessories* (excepting only the Town of *Couta* in *Barbary*, and some of the *Tercera's*) going the same way as the *Principal* did. And here methinks that grave and deliberate Nation of the *Spaniards* may be justly taxed for committing a greater *Solazim* in point of State, than ever people did before them; in that, having got the full and peaceable possession of the Crown of *Portugal*, and all the out-parts and Members of it; they continued all the Garrisons and strong Holds of the whole Estate, in the hands of the Natives. By means whereof, when *Portugal* it self fell off from the King of *Spain*, the Provinces and Plantations did the like, without any hesitancy, which had some of the chief Pieces in every Province, Factory, and Plantation, been brought by little and little (if not all at once) into the power of the *Castilians*; might have been easily prevented. Nor hath the *Spaniards* hitherto attempted any thing material, for the recovery of that Kingdom: having been ever busy to over-laid by the French in *Catalogne*, *Navarre*, *Flanders*, *Arroy*, and *Italy*; that he hath not had much leisure to attend that business. But leaving him and them to their own affairs, it is time to present you with a Catalogue of

#### The Kings of Portugal.

A. Ch.

- 1139 1. *Alfonso*, the second Earl, and first King of *Portugal*. 45.  
1184 2. *Sancho*, the Son of *Alfonso*. 28.  
1212 3. *Alfonso* II. Son of *Sancho*. 11.  
1223 4. *Sancho* II. Son of *Alfonso* the 2d. 34.  
1257 5. *Alfonso* III. Brother of *Sancho* the 2d. 22.  
1276 6. *Denny*, the Son of *Alfonso* the 3d. 48.  
1295 7. *Alfonso* IV. the Son of *Denny*. 32.  
1357 8. *Pedro*, the Son of *Alfonso* the 4th. 10.  
1369 9. *Ferdinand*, the Son of *Pedro*, the last King of the lawful Issue of *Henry* of *Lorraine*. 18.  
1385 10. *John* the bafe Son of *Pedro*, of whom sufficiently before. 48.  
1433 11. *Edward*, the Son of *John*, and of the Lady *Philipp* of *Lancaster*. 5.  
1438 12. *Alfonso* V. the Son of *Edward*. 43.  
1481 13. *John* II. the Son of *Alfonso* the 5th. 14.  
1495 14. *Emanuel*, the Nephew of *Edward*, by his Son *Ferdinand*, Duke of *Viseo*. 26.  
1521 15. *John* III. Son of *Emanuel*. 38.  
1557 16. *Sebastian*, the Nephew of *John* the 3d, by his Son *Don John* unfortunately slain in the Fields of *Africk*. 21.  
1578 17. *Henry* the Cardinal, Son of King *Emanuel*, the last of the Male-Issue of *Henry* of *Lorraine*. 2.  
1580 18. *Philip* the second of *Spain*, Son of *Charles* King of *Castile*, and Emperor, and of the Lady *Mary* his Wife, daughter of *Emanuel*. 18.

- 1598 19. *Philip* II. of *Portugal*, and III. of *Spain*. 22.  
1621 20. *Philip* III. of *Portugal*, and IV. of *Spain*. 22.  
During his Reign, the *Portuguese* made of the *Spanish* Government, choice for their King.  
1636 21. *John* D. of *Brugance*, the IV. of that Name: a Prince of great possessions, and of Royal Race, who hitherto hath peaceably enjoyed it.

Now that we may the better see by what title both the Kings of *Spain*, and the Dukes of *Brugance*, claim the Crown of *Portugal*; and what other pretenders they were to it, on the death of *Sebastian*; and what right as well *Antonio* the Bastard, (but alledging a sentence of Legitimation) as the Princes of the house of *Savoy*, did pretend unto it: we will lay down their Genealogies from King *Emanuel*, in this following Scheme.

1. *John*, King of *Portugal*. } *John*, Prince of } *Sebastian* King  
} of *Portugal*. } of *Portugal*.  
2. *Lewis* } *Don Antonio* } *Christopher*, and o-  
} *Baltard* } thers.  
3. *Henry* the Cardinal, King of *Portugal*.  
4. *Edward* } *Mary*, wedded to *Alfonso*. } *Rainuccio*  
} *xander* Duke of *Parma*. } *Fernand*.  
2. *Kath*, married to *John* D. of *Brugance*.  
5. *Mary*, married to *Charles* } *Philip* the II. King  
the fifth, King of *Castile*. } of *Spain*.  
6. *Beatrice*, married to *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*.

By this it may appear how the Claims are grounded: but whether Title will prevail, cannot now be told. Suffice it, that as the Royal Line of *Portugal* did begin in an *Henry*, so it ended in an *Henry* also; the Male-Line failing in the person of the Cardinal King, and the Crown falling (on whomsoever it shall fall) on the Heirs of the Females.

The principal Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom, are 1. Of *Aviz*, so called from a Town of that name in *Portugal*, the Seat thereof: Founded by *Sandim* or *Sancho* the first, in imitation of the Order of *Alcantara*, whose *Green Crofs* they wear; but equal to it neither in Power nor Riches.

2. Of *CHRIST*; instituted by *Denny* King of *Portugal*, who conferred on them all the Lands and Possessions of the excommunicated *Templers*, confirmed by Pope *John* the twenty second, Anno 1231. Their Robe is a *Black Cassock*, under a *White Surcoat*; over which, a *Red Crofs*, streaked in the midst with a white Line: their Duty, to expel the *Moors* out of *Betice*, the next Neighbour to *Portugal*. To which Crown, they have added many gallant Countries in *Asia*, *Africk*, and *Brazil*; and so improved their own Estates, that all the Isles in the *Atlantic* do belong to them: besides, the Rents of the Mine of *St. George*, in *Guinea*, amounting to 100000 Ducats of yearly income.

The Arms are *Argent*, on five Escalloons *Azure*, as many Bezants in *Salier* of the first, pointed *Sable*, within a Border of *Gules*, charged with seven Towers, Or. Which five Escalloons were born in memory of five Kings, whom *Alfonso*, the first King, slew at the battel of *Ovique*, Anno 1139; the Border, with the Towers or Castles, being added by *Alfonso* the third, on his Investiture into the Kingdom of *Algarve*, by *Alfonso* the fifth of *Castile*, Anno 1257, whose Daughter *Beatrice* he then married.

and to conceive himself to have some relation to the Arms of that Kingdom. And to proceed we on to those Provinces which are under the Government of Aragon: the third great Body of this State.

## 12. VALENTIA.

**V**ALENTIA hath on the East, the Mediterranean; on the West, part of *Castile*, and *Aragon*; on the North *Catalogne*; and *Murcia*, upon the South. It is watered with the Rivers, 1. *Xucar*, called of old *Sucon*, and *Sutiv*. 2. *Guadalender*, signifying a River of pure water: and 3. *Millar*.

This Country standeth in the most temperate and pleasing Air of all Spain, full of Gardens and places of wonderful delight, where growth abundance of Rice, Sugar, Corn, and Fruit: garnished all the year long with sweet smelling Flowers, and miraculously fruitful of Pomgranates, Limons, and other delicacies. It hath also Mines of Silver, at *Bariol*; of Gold, at *Lador*; of Iron, at *Fuñfraz*; of Alabaster, at *Piacent*; and of Allom, Lime, and Plaster, in many places. From thence also come the best Silks in the World, Cotton of *Murcia*, Crimson, Scarlet, and other precious Colours, and rich Perfumes. Finally, all the Senses of man may be delighted and refreshed with that which comes from this happy Region; in quality, and sweetness, much like that of *Naples*. The delicacy and great pleasures whereof, have made the Inhabitants of it to be thought less Warlike than the other *Spaniards*. The Sheep of this Country also, bear the finest Fleeces of any in Spain: first stocked with *Cotswold* Sheep from England, at the request of *John King of Aragon*, Anno 1455, by the imprudent courtier of King *Edward* the fourth.

Places of note next in it are, 1. *Alicante*, a noted Port on the Mediterranean, whence come our true *Alicant*-Wines, made of their Juice of Mulberries; by *Ptolomy* called *Ulcian*; By *Mela*, *Ulice*: from whence the Bay adjoining is called *Sinus Ulicitanus*, now the Bay of *Alicante*. 2. *Olivia*, a Bishops-See, on the River *Segura*, which divides the Province from *Murcia*. 3. *Segrove*, a Bishops-See; by *Ptolomy* named *Segobriga*, the chief City, in old times, of the *Celtiberi*. 4. *Xitva*, supposed to be the *Incubitis* of *Livy*, where *Scipio* defeated *Hanno* and his *Carthaginians*. 5. *Valencia*, a fair, pleasant, and well-traded City, the See of an Arch-bishop, and given name to the whole Province: in its first glory, one of the chief *Roman* Colonies in these parts of Spain: in its last, the Royal Seat of the *Moorish* Kings of this Country. Situate three miles from the Mediterranean, not far from the mouth of the River *Duroc*, now called *Guadalender*: and is by some said to have been heretofore named *Roma*, which signifieth strength. But when the *Romans* mastered it, to distinguish it from their *Rome*, it was called *Valencia*; which in the Latin Tongue, is of the same signification with the Greek *Πόλις*. Here is an University in which *Saint Dominick*, the Father of the *Dominicans*, studied. 6. *Laurigi*, now a small Village: once a Town of great strength, called *Lauron*: which *Sertorius* besieged, took, and burned, even then when *Pompey*, whose Confederates the *Lauronites* were, stood with his whole Army high enough upon the Flame, to warm his hands; and yet durst not succour it. It was formerly named *Sucon*, after the name of the River; and is famous in *Plutarch*, for the victory which *Quintus* here got of *Pompey*; *Pompey's* Army being not

only overthrown, but himself, with life, hardly escaping. 8. *Morvedre*, situate in or near the place of the old *Saguntum*: the People whereof, when besieged by *Anibal*, continued to obstinate in the expectation of aid from *Rome*, that they chose rather to burn themselves, than yield up the Town: the occasion of the second War between *Rome* and *Carthage*. First founded by the *Zacynthians*, and after this destruction of it, repaired, or re-edited, by the *Romans*, (they could not possibly do less) by whom made a Colony. 9. *Gandia*, which gives the title of a Duke to the House of *Borgia*, and was the style of *Francisco Borgia*, the eldest Son of Pope *Alexander* the sixth, (of this noble Family) called commonly in *Guicciardine*, by the name of the Duke of *Gandy*. 10. *Denia*, seated on the brink of the Mediterranean over which it hath a goodly prospect; the Marquisate of the Duke of *Lerma*: first founded by the *Maffians*, by whom called *Dianium*. Not far from which is the Promontory of *Ferraria*, of old called *Promontorium Dianium*; the Refuge of *Sertorius* in his Wars against *Pompey*, and *Metellus*, both of great renown: the aged, and of much experience; and the other young, and of high resolutions. And yet *Sertorius* found himself much troubled with the old man's Gravity, than the young man's Gallantry: inasmuch as he was used to say, *Tha had it not been for the old Woman Metellus, he would have whipped the Boy Pompey home with Rods*. For he had twice overcome this Great Pompey, before *Metellus* was joined in the Action with him: the first time dangerously wounding, and the second time driving him out of the Field. But fighting against both, he was over-matched; and yet seemed rather to retire, than fly: for them; the *Spaniards* behaving themselves very valiantly, in the time of these Wars, under him: to which *Florus* alludeth, saying, *Nec unquam magis apparuit Hispani militis Vigor, quam Romano Ducis*. At the last when he had a long time upheld the *Marian* Faction, he was traitorously murdered by *Perpenna*, one of his Officers: for which, *Metellus* and *Pompey* had a Triumph at *Rome*. So high an estimate did they set upon the civil death of this *Proscript*.

The ancient Inhabitants heretofore, were the *Ebastani*, the *Edetani*, the *Conestani*, and some part of the *Culturis*: originally of the Province of *Tarracensis*; afterwards (in the sub-division of that Province by *Constantine*) of *Carthaginensis*. In the declining of the Empire, first subdued by the *Alani*, who were scarce war in their new dwelling, when displaced by the *Goths*. From the *Goths* taken by the *Moors*, of whose Kingdom reckoned as a Province: till the fatal overthrow given to *Mahomet Eneser*, at the battle of *Sierra Morvora*, and the departure of the *Moors* of Morocco, to their own Country; which followed presently upon it. By *Za Aben-Zeit*, the Brother of this *Mahomet*, made a distinct Kingdom of it self, Anno 1214: but taken from him by one *Zaen*, a Prince of the *Moors* of Spain, under colour that he had a purpose of turning Christian, and making his Kingdom subject to the Crown of *Aragon*, (as indeed he did) Anno 1228. Conquered from *Zaen* the next King, before he could enjoy the sweets of a new ruled Kingdom, by *James King of Aragon*, Anno 1238. Since reckoned a Member of that Kingdom, never since bred from the body of it, since the first uniting. But still to be overgrown with *Moors*, (not to be blamed for leaving such an excellent feat) that at the final expulsion of that people by King *Philip* the third, there were reckoned no fewer than 22000 Families of them in this little Country.

The Arms heretofore were *Golden*, a Tower embattled *Argent* purled (or pennoned) *Sable*.

## 13. CATALONIA.

**C**ATALONIA is bounded on the North-east, with the Land of *Rouffillon*, and the *Pyrenees*; on the East, with the Mediterranean, on the South, with *Valencia*; on the North, and North-west, with *Aragon*. The Country somewhat mountainous, and full of Woods, and not very well cultivated: beholden more, in that respect, for Corn, Fruits, and other necessary Provisions, unto the courtesy of the Sea, which serves them out of other Countries, than to the Goodness of the Land. And it is as well watered, as most parts of Spain; having in it, besides the *Ebro*, or *Iberus*, common to many other Provinces; and *Ginia*, which runneth between it and *Valencia*; the Rivers of, 1. *Tardera*, 2. *Lobregat*, 3. *Segre*, 4. *Francelino*, 5. *Besora*, and 6. *Onbar*.

The name of *Catalonia*, some derive from the *Castolani*, who formerly inhabited some part hereof: others will have it called *Catalonia*, corruptly, for *Gothalania*, from the mixture of the *Goths* and *Alani*, successively the Masters of it: and some, more improbably, from one *Caribolot*, a Noble-man of this Country, who lived here they know not when. More like it is, that it took this name from the *Catalani*, an old French People of *Languedoc*, the adjoining Province, from whom the fields called *Campi Catalanici*, near unto *Tolouse*, took denomination. But from what root soever they came, certain it is, that they are generally a stout courageous people, as may be seen by their exploits in most parts of Greece, which they miserably spoiled and pillaged many years together, in the time of *Andronicus* the second; to whose aid called in. But then withal, they are a very perverse and obdurate people, little observant of the pleasure or profit of their natural Prince: but on the other side, so zealous in defence of their own Privileges, that they have created more trouble to their Kings, under that pretence, than all the rest of the Subjects of Spain. Of which we need no other instance, than their late revolt unto the French, Anno 1638, which drew after it the loss of the Realm of *Portugal*, and many Towns of great importance in *Flanders*, and the rest of the *Netherlands*.

Principal places in it, are, 1. *Barcelona*, situate on the Mediterranean, near the River *Lobregat*; accommodated with a large and commodious Port, where commonly the Spanish Soldiers do embark, which are bound for Italy. The Town adorned with large streets, handsome buildings, strong walls, and a very pleasant situation. Called *Barfyn* by the ancient Writers, in whose time it was a Roman Colony, now honoured with a Bishops-See, and the Seat of the Vice-Roy. 2. *Tarragon*, seated also on the Mediterranean, East of the River *Francelino*: built, fortified, and peopled by the two *Scipios*, the Father and Uncle of *Africanus*, for a Counter-Fort to *Carthage* (or *New Carthage*) not long before founded by the *Carthaginians*. Afterwards made the Metropolis of *Tarracensis*, hence denominated: but stript of that honour by *Toledo*, and is now but two miles in compass, and containing not above seven hundred Families. Yet still it holdeth the reputation of an Arch-bishops-See, contending with *Toledo*, for the Primacy of all Spain (as *Briga* also doth in the Kingdom of *Portugal*): the controversy being undecided to this very day. 3. *Amputar*, on the same Sea also; once of great esteem, founded by the *Maffians*, a Roman Colony, and a well-traded Town, as the Name doth signify:

this being the *Emporia*, spoken of by *Strabo* and *Ptolemy*; now not observable for any thing, but a safe Road for Ships. 4. *Blamus*, 5. *Palamus*, and 6. *Rajsa*, all Ports on the same Sea, but subject unto divers Winds, and not very spacious, this last by *Ptolemy* called *Rhoda*, first founded by the *Rhodiars*, or people of the Isle of *Rhodes*, and by them so named. More in the Land, are 7. *Girona*, a small, but handsomely built, and a well-traded Town; is a Bishops-See, and the title of the eldest Son of *Aragon*, called Prince of *Girona*. Which Title was first given to *John*, the eldest Son to King *Pedro* the fourth, immediately upon his Birth, Anno 1351; and hath since continued. 8. *Torresja*, on the River *Ebro*, in the most rich and pleasant part of all the Country; recovered from the *Moors*, by *Raymond* the fifth, Earl of *Barcelona*, and Prince of *Aragon*, about the year 1146. The principal Agent in that work, *William Raymond* of *Moncada*, Seneschal of *Catalogne*; rewarded for his good service in it, with a third part of the City. A goodly Town, and of good importance; garrisoned by the French, since the late revolt of *Catalonia* from the King of Spain; and like to draw a great part of this Province after it, whilst it continueth in their power, or in the possession of their party. 9. *Urgel*, an Earl's Honour, and a Bishops-See, situate at the foot of the *Pyrenees*. 10. *Monblanc*, which heretofore gave the Title of Duke to the second Sons of the Kings of *Aragon*. 11. *Moncada*, once a Town of strength; but of more note for giving denomination to the Noble Family of *Moncada*, Hereditary Seneschals of *Catalogne*, and Lords of *Bearn*. Here is also on the East part, where it joineth with the Land of *Rouffillon*, the Promontory called of old, *Templum Veneris*, now *Cabo de Ceux*. And not far from *Barcelona*, the Mountain called *Monferrato*, on the sides full of *Hermitages* and *Anchors* Cells; and having towards the summit of it, a Chappel dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*: much famed and resorted to by Pilgrims from all parts of the World, for her miraculous Image, which is there enshrined.

The old Inhabitants of this Province, were the *Castellani*, *Auscanti*, *Indigites*, *Costani*, with part of the *Ilerones*, and *Lucentini*; all of them part of *Tarracensis*. In the declining of the Empire, seized on by the *Alani*; and they soon after vanquished, if not dispossessed, by the power of the *Goths*. Lost to the *Moors*, in the general ruine of the whole: from them recovered by the puissance of *Charles* the Great; who having taken the City of *Barcelona*, Anno 801. gave it to one *Bernard* a French-man, with the Title of Earl, who governed the Country for that Emperor; as *Wilfredus*, or *Godfredus*, his Successor, did for *Lewis* the Godly. *Godfredus*, Son to this *Godfredus*, by the gift of *Charles* the Great, was the first Proprietary; united unto *Aragon* by the Marriage of Earl *Raymond*, with the Heir of that Kingdom. First held in Vassalage of the French, but that acknowledgment related to King *James* the first, Anno 1260. by the King *St. Lewis*; is the King of *Aragon* relating, at the same time, his pretensions and rights of Sovereignty to *Caracasson*, *Beziers*, *Albi* *Nismes*, and some other pieces in France, of old belonging to that Crown. But before that, the *Catalans* had neglected the acknowledgment of their subjection to that Crown; it being ordered by *Alfonso* the second King of *Aragon*, about the year 1180, That the year of the reigns of the Kings of France, should no more be used in any Instrument or Writings which concerned that People; but the year only of the Incarnation of our Lord and Saviour: which, in effect, was to disclaim the Sovereignty of the Crown of France.

## The Earls of Barcelona.

- A. Chr.  
884 1 Godfredus, furnished the *Hairy*, Son of *Wifredus*, the Provincial Governour for the Empirous *Ludovicus Pius*.  
914 2 Miron, Son of Godfredus.  
933 3 Godfredus II. Son of Miron, by some called *Sonifrid*.  
971 4 Borelus, Brother of Miron, and Uncle of Godfredus the second.  
993 5 Raymond, Son of Borelus.  
1017 6 Berengarius, furnished Borelus, Son of Raymond.  
1035 7 Raymond II. Son of Berengarius Borelus.  
1076 8 Raymond III. Son of Raymond the second.  
1082 9 Raymond IV. Son of Raymond the third, Earl of Provence, also in right of Douce his Wife.  
1131 10 Raymond V. Son of Raymond the fourth, and Douce Countess of Provence, married *Petrullilla*, Daughter of *Raym*, or *Raymond*, the second, King of *Aragon*; whom he succeeded in that Kingdom, Anno 1134. Uniting these Estates together, never since divided: the chief Procurer of this Match, being *William Raymond* of *Moneida*, spoken of before.

The Arms hereof, were four Pallets *Gules*, in a field *Or*, now the Arms of *Aragon*. Which Arms were given to *Geoffrey*, furnished the *Hairy*, the first Earl hereof, by *Lewis* the *Stammering*, Emperor and King of *France*, to whose aid he came against the *Normans* with a Troop of Horse; and being bloody in the fight, desired of the Emperor to give him some Coat of Arms, which he and his Posterity might from thenceforth use. Who dipping his four fingers in the blood of the Earl, drew them thwart his Shield, (which was only of Plain Gold, without any Device) saying, *This shall be your Arms hereafter*.

## 14. The Kingdom of Majorca.

THE Kingdom of *MAJORCA*, contained the Islands of *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Ebusia*, and *Frumentaria*, in the Mediterranean; the Land of *Roussillon*, *Sardaigne*, or *Cerdeigne*, in the Continent of Spain; and the Earldom of *Montpelier* in France.

The Land of *ROUSSILLON*, which is the first Member of this Kingdom, is situate betwixt two Branches of the *Pyrénées* s bounded on the South, with the *Mediterranean*; on the West, with *Catalogne*; on the North, with the said *Pyrénées* on the East, with *Languedoc* in France. Places of most importance in it, are 1. *Helna*, a Bishop's-See on the River *Teebo*. 2. *Colibere*, now a poor and ignoble Village, of note only for a safe and commodious Harbour; but formerly the great and famous City of *Ilberiber*, so often mentioned in the Wars betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. 3. *Perpignan*, (in Latin, *Perpinianum*) built in the year 1068, by *Guinard*, Earl of *Roussillon*, in a pleasant Plain on the River *Thelis*, now a rich Town, well traded, and as strongly fortified against the *French*: to whose fury in the time of War, it is still exposed. Besieged by *Henry*, Son to King *Francis* the first, with a pu-

issant Army, An. 1542. partly, to be revenged, upon *Charles* the fifth, who had before attempted *Montpelier* Province; and partly to get into his hands the chief doat of Spain, by which he might at all times enter into that Kingdom. But he found here such strong resistance, that he was fain to raise his Siege; with as little honour as *Charles* had gotten by his Expedition which he made into Provence. 4. *Salsis*, (the *Salsile* of *Strabo*) a strong place on the Frontier of *Languedoc*; fortified according to the Rules of modern Fortification, and one of the chief Bulwarks against the *French*. 5. *Roussillon*; a Castle of more honour and antiquity, than strength or beauty; by *Pliny*, and other Ancients, called *Ruscino*, the Country, *Comitatus Ruscianensis*, now *Roussillon* and the Land of *Roussillon*; accounted heretofore a part of *Gallia Narbonensis*; and added unto Spain in the time of the *Goths*. On the death of *Gernard*, the last Proprietary Earl, it was added to the Crown of *Aragon*, by *Affonso* the second; by *James* the first, laid to the Kingdom of *Majorca*; united to the Crown again by King *Pedro* the fourth. After that, fold (or rather pawned) by King *John* the second, to *Lewis* the 11. of France, for the Sum of 30000 Crowns, Anno 1462, and freely returned back again to *Ferdinand* the second, (after called the *Catholic*) by King *Charles* the 8. Anno 1493; conditioned that he should not hinder him in the Conquest of *Naples*. Joining hereto, as a part of the Kingdom of *Majorca*, was the Country of *Sardaigne*, or *Cerdeigne*; the habitation of the *Creteani* in former times, and afterwards accounted of as a part of *Aragon*. The chief Town of those *Creteani*, called *Julia Lybica*; the principal now being, hath the name of *Cardano* (or *Sardana*, as the *Spaniards* commonly pronounce) retaining some resemblance to the name of the Nation. The Country lying in the Vallies of the *Pyrénées*, and consequently in a corner somewhat out of the way, was thought fit to be added to the Land of *Roussillon*, (for the better endowment of this Kingdom:) the Features of which, it hath since followed; as appendant on it: pawned when that was unto the *French*, and with that restored.

2. The Earldom of *MONTEPELIER*, is situate in the Province of *Languedoc*, adjoining to the Land of *Roussillon*: so called from *Montpelier*, the chief City: for the description whereof we must fend the Reader back to France, having spoken of it there already. All I shall here repeat, is this, That *Mary*, the Daughter of *William* the last Earl thereof, brought it by Marriage, to her Husband, *Peter* the second King of *Aragon*: and that it was fold to *Philip de Valois*, the French King, by *James* King of *Majorca*, of that name the third. Nothing else memorable in the story and affairs of this little Earldom, but the fortunes of the two last Countesses of it. Of which the first being Daughter of *Emanuel Comens*, Emperor of *Constantinople*, and affianced to *Affonso* the 2. King of *Aragon*, was brought as far as *Montpelier*, in her way towards Spain, and there lodged with her while retinue, in the house of *William*, then Earl thereof, Anno 1174. But hearing that *Affonso*, contrary to his word and promise, was in treaty of another Marriage with the Princess *Sancha* of *Castile* (which he celebrated very shortly after) and ashamed to return to the Court of her Father, after such an injury; she hearkened to the counsel of her Lords and followers, who persuaded her to marry with Earl *William*, then a lusty Bachelor: which was done accordingly. To him he brought a Daughter, named *Mary*, (their only child) afterwards married to *Dun Pedro* the 2. Son of *Affonso*, and successor to him in that Kingdom: so that although the Mother could not have the happiness to be Queen of *Aragon*; yet the Daughter had. But being of no great beauty, the King her Husband

grew weary of her, and would have been divorced, had the Pope consented: whose consent not being to be had, he forsok her Bed, and betook himself to other Women. Which the Queen not being otherwise able to remedy, prevailed with one of the Grooms of his Chamber, called *Pedro Flavian*, to bring her one night unto his Bed, (when some other Mistress was expected) and by him did conceive that night, as it after proved: the King perceiving the deceit on the morrow morning, was neither well pleased, nor much offended, at the honest fraud she had put upon him. Of this conjunction was born a Son at *Montpelier*, whom they named *James*, Successor to his Father in the Kingdom of *Aragon*; and to his Mother (the last Countess of it) in the Earldom of *Montpelier*; united, in his person, into one Estate; and by him finally parted from it, in the cession of the new Kingdom of *Majorca*, as before was said.

3. The Island of *MAJORCA* is situate in the *Mediterranean*, just over against *Valencia*; from which distant about 60 miles; about 300 miles in circuit, the length above an hundred, the breadth somewhat under; the number of Inhabitants reckoned at 30000. The Land, on all sides, towards the Sea, is somewhat mountainous and barren withal: the Islands more Champian and fruitfully yielding sufficient quantity of Oyl, Corn, Wines, and Fruits, for the use of its people. The whole Island is divided into 30 parts (as so many *Wapentakes*) in every one of which are reckoned from 300 to 600 Families. No hurtful Creatures are here bred, except Conies only; and those not hurtful, but by accident: of which more anon.

Places of chief note, in the former times, were 1. *Palma*, and 2. *Pollença*, which had the rights of *Roman* Citizens. 3. *Chiriqui*, and 4. *Cami*, which enjoyed the rights of the *Latins*: and 5. *Cabri*, (or *Bocorum*) which was in the condition of a Town considered; besides divers others not so privileged. Of these none left, at this day, but *Palma* only, vulgarly called *Majorca*, by the name of the Island: a Bishop's See, the Seat of the *Viceroy* for these Isles, and an University: the birth-place of *Raymond Lullius*, a man of great Wit, and profound Judgment: the Author of some Books in the Art of *Chymistry* whose Works are read and studied in that University, as *Aristotle's* are in others. This is the greater of the two Islands called *Bahari*, whence it hath the name. Adjoining herunto, two others of inferior note, called *Dragonera* and *Cabrera*; of which nothing memorable.

4. *MINORCA*, so called, because it is the lesser of the *Bahari*; is situate Eastward of *Majorca*, from which distant near 100 miles, of about 60 miles in length, and 150 in circuit. More fruitful than the other, though less in quantity, of rich soil, which breedeth them great Herds of Cattel, and Mule the name of any in Spain; accommodated also with two convenient Havens, the one called *Maon*, the other *Fenoffu*. Other considerable places, are, 1. *Minorca*, now so called by the name of the Island; and anciently known by the name of *Mago*: situate in the East part thereof, first founded by the *Carthaginians*, as the name imports. And so was also 2. *Janno*, seated in the West, (*Dun parva Oppida, quibus, a Peris indita nomina*, faith *Savertus* Bishop of these Isles, Anno 1210, or thereabouts.) It is now called *Citadella*, or the little City. Here was also in the midland, a third Town, called *Sansiera* by *Pliny*; of which I find no trace remaining.

5. *EBUSIA*, now called *IVICA*, lyeth between the main Land, and the *Bahari*, opposite to the Promontory of *Ferraria*, in the Realm of *Valencia*; from which distant about 50 miles, and near an hundred miles

in compass. The Country plentiful of Corn, and all manner of Fruits, breeding no hurtful Creature, except Conies only which many times destroy their Harvest. The chief Town here, *Tuica* of (old called *Ebusia*) the Inhabitants of which make yearly great store of Salt; wherewith they do not only furnish Spain, but some parts of Italy.

6. *FRUMENTARIA*, so called from the plenty of Corn, is distant ten miles from *Tuica*, and about 60 miles from the main Land of Spain: in circuit about 70 miles. Not well inhabited, by reason of the multitude of Serpents; from which called by the *Grecians* *Ophiass*, and *Colubraria*, by the *Latins*. Both Islands anciently known by the name of *Pityss*, and *Pityader*, from the abundance of *Pines* there growing.

About these Islands are six others of little worth, called 1. *Veda*, 2. *Conirella*, and 3. *Dragonage*, 4. another called *Monolibre*, betwixt *Majorca*, and the influx of the River *Iberus*, 5. *Alfiquera*, lying in the very mouth of that River; and 6. *Sombria*, (anciently called the Island of *Hercules*) over against *Carthagena*; so named from a kind of *Tunny*, in *Latia* named *Sombria*, of which great shoals use to lie about it. All these, together with the *Bahari*, make up the Province of the Islands, the seventh Province of Spain.

But the chief glory of these Islands, were the *FALEARES*, so called (as the general conceit is, from the Greek word *faion*, which signifieth to throw); because the people were so expert in throwing their Slings or Darts: but, as *Bachanne* will needs have it, (to the same effect) from *Baal-ize*, a *Punic* or *Phœnician* word, signifying a *Master* in the Art of slinging. An Art so natural and innative to them, that Parents used to give no meat unto their Children, after some fit age, but what they could hit down with their Slings from the top of a Beam. Of their dexterity at this weapon, there is much mention made in the ancient Writers, as well Historians as Poets. And from this Exercise they had the name also of *Infule Gymnasia*; or else, because the people of it used to go naked to the Wars, (and possibly enough, in those first Ages of the world, as at other times also) from the Greek word *gymnê*, the same with *Nudus* in the *Latin*. Nor were they good at slinging only, but at *firming* too; an exercise not ordinarily performed, but by naked people: at which the very women are at this day experts: *Biddulph* reporting, in the relation of his travels, That being inquired about these Islands, there came a woman furnishing from one of them with a Basket of Fruit to sell. But that which made them most talked of in former times, was their harm done them by their Conies; which here, and in the neighbouring Continent, increased so wonderfully, that *Varro* telleth us of a Town in Spain, undermined by them; and *Strabo*, that they did not only destroy their Plants, but rooted up many of their Trees. Insumuch that the Inhabitants did requit the *Romans* to give them some new feats to inhabit in; *οὐδ' αὖτε γὰρ τῶν τῶν τῶν τῶν*, being ejected by those Creatures out of their Possessions, whose multitudes they were not able to resist. And when that could not be obtained, they moved *Augustus Cæsar* (as *Pliny* telleth us) for some aid against them; who, instead of *Soldiers*, sent them *Ferrets*, by which their numbers were diminished in a little time.

These Islands were first planted by the *Tyrrians*, or *Phœnicians*, the founders of many of their Cities: one of which, in the Isle of *Ebusia*, had the name of *Phœnissa*: From them also they derived the Art of slinging. Made subject to the *Carthaginians*, under the conduct of *Hanno* and *Himilco*, Anno M. 3500, or thereabouts, at what time the *Decemviri* governed *Rome*. Under



## The Kings of Aragon.

- A. Chr.
- 1034 1 Raymir. 42.
  - 1076 2 Sancho, Son of Raymir. 18.
  - 1094 3 Pedro. 14.
  - 1108 4 Alfonso, Brother of Pedro. 26.
  - 1134 5 Raymir II. the Brother of Alfonso.
  - 1137 6 Perronilla, Daughter of Raymir the second.
  - Raymond, Earl of Barcelona.
  - 1162 7 Alfonso II. Son of Raymond and Perronilla. 34.
  - 1196 8 Pedro II. Son of Alfonso.
  - 1213 9 James, Son of Pedro the second. 43.
  - 1276 10 Pedro III. Son of James. 9.
  - 1285 11 Alfonso III. Son of Pedro the third. 6.
  - 1291 12 James II. Brother of Alfonso the third. 36.
  - 1328 13 Alfonso IV. Son of James the second. 8.
  - 1336 14 Pedro IV. Son of Alfonso the fourth. 51.
  - 1387 15 John, Son of Pedro the fourth. 8.
  - 1395 16 Martin, the Brother of John. 17.
  - 1412 17 Ferdinand of Castile, the Nephew of Pedro the fourth. 42.
  - 1416 18 Alfonso V. 42.
  - 1458 19 John II. Son of Ferdinand, and Brother of Alfonso: King of Navarre also, in right of Blanche his Wife. 20.
  - 1478 20 Ferdinand II. of that name, of Aragon, Son of John the second, King of Aragon and Navarre, by a second Wife: and the fifth of that name, of Castile and Leon; which Kingdoms he obtained by the marriage of Isabel, or Elizabeth, Sister and Heir of Henry the Fourth; uniting thereby the great Estates of Castile and Aragon, and all Appendices of either. In which regard, he may well challenge the first place in the Catalogue of the Monarchs of Spain, to be presented in due season.

In the mean time, to draw to a conclusion of the Affairs and Estate of Aragon, we are to understand, that of all the Kingdoms which belong to the *Spaniards*, it is the most privileged, and free from the absolute Command of the Kings of Spain: having in it such a temper or mixture of Government, as makes the Kings hereto to be well high *Titular*, or of little more authority than a Duke of *Venice*. For at the first erecting of this Estate, the better to encourage the people to defend themselves against the *Moor*, they had many *Privileges* indulged them; and, amongst others, threatening of a *Jugiter*, or *Popular Magistracy*; which, like the *Episcopi* of *Sparta*, had, in some cases, superiority over their Kings, reverting their Judgments, cancelling their Grants, and sometimes censuring their Proceedings. And though King Philip the second, in the bulwicks of *Antonio de Perez*, had made a Conquest of that Kingdom, and annulled all their *Privileges*, yet after, of his own meer goodness, he restored them (in part) again, as they continue at this day.

Chief Orders of *Knighthood* (besides that of *Mercede*, spoken of before) in this Kingdom, are 1. Of *S. Savien*, instituted by *Alfonso* the first, Anno 1118. to animate the members of it against the *Moor*. Of the habit and customs of this Order, I have met with nothing.

2. Of *Montesa*, instituted by *James* the first, King of Aragon, Anno 1270, or thereabouts, endowed with all the Lands of the *Templers* (before dissolved) lying in *Valencia* together with the Town and Castle of

*Montesa*, made the Seat of their Order, whence it took the name. Subject at first unto the Master of the Order of *Calatrava*, out of which extracted; and under the same Rule of *Cisterians*. But after, by the leave of Pope *Benedict* the 13th. they quitted themselves of this subjection; and, in sign thereof, changed the Habit of *Calatrava*, which before they used, to a Red Cross upon their Breasts; now the Badge of their Order.

The Arms of Aragon, since possessed by the Earls of *Barcelona*, are Or four Pallets *Gules*: before which, they were, *Azure*, a Cross *Argent*.

## The Monarchy of SPAIN.

Thus having spoke of Spain, and the Estate thereof when broken and divided into many Kingdoms; let us next look upon it as united into one main body; effected, for the most part, by *Ferdinand* the last King of Aragon before-mentioned. Before which time, Spain, being parcelled into many Kingdoms, was little Famous, and less Feared; the Kings thereof, as the Author of the *Politick Discourse*, &c. hath well observed, being only Kings of *Figs* and *Oranges*. Their whole Puissance was then turned one against another, and small achievements had they out of that Continent, except those of the House of Aragon; upon *Sticily*, *Naples*, *Sardinia*, and the *Balears*. *Thuanus*, a diligent Writer of the History of his own Times, (if in some things he favour not more of the Party, than the *Historian*) telleth us, that before this King's Reign, the name and glory of the *Spaniards*, was, like their Country, hemmed in by the Seas on some sides, and the Hills on the other: *Paisque parvis exteriis inuadentibus, quam quicquam memorabile extra suos fines gessisset*. This true, that *Sancho* the Great, King of Navarre, assumed unto himself the title of King of Spain, and that *Alfonso* the fourth of Castile, and the ninth of Leon, caused himself to be crowned Emperor of Spain, in the Cathedral Church of Leon: Titles ambitiously affected upon no good ground, and such as ended with their persons. But this Prince, worthily named, *The Great*, seized on the Kingdom of Navarre, conquered *Granada* from the *Moor*, subdued the Kingdom of *Naples*, united *Aragon* to *Castile*, banished 124000 Families of the *Jews*, began, by the conduct of *Columbus*, the discovery of the *Western Indies*; and finally by marrying his Daughter *Joan*, to Philip, Son of the Emperour *Maximilian*, Duke of *Burgundy*, and Lord of the greatest part of the *Netherlands*, laid the Foundation of the present *Austrian* Greatness. Continued since by so many inter-marriages betwixt the *Spanish* and *Imperial* Branches of that potent Family, That *Philip* the second might have called the Arch-Duke *Albertus*, Brother, Cousin, Nephew, and Son. A strange Medley of Relations. Thus by the puissance of this Prince, the *Spaniards* became first considerable in the eye of the World, and grew to be a terror to the Neighbouring Nations. *Nomen Hispanicum obstrum antea & Picinis pene incognitum*, (saith the same *Thuanus*) tum primum emisse, traxitque temporis in tantam magnitudinem exercuit, ut formidolosum ex eo & terribile tot terrarum Orbis esset cupere. And he saith true, with reference to the French and Italian Nations to whom the *Spaniards* have admitted no small matter of fear and terror; though unto others, they appear no such dreadful Bug-bear. But sure it is, and we may warrantably speak it without any such impressions of fear and terror, that this Kingdom, since that time,

is wonderfully both enlarged and strengthened, a strongly compacted in it self, with all the Ligaments both of Power and State, and infinitely extended over all parts of the World's; his Dominions beholding (as it were) both the rising, and the setting of the Sun: which, before the *Spaniards*, no Monarch could ever say. A greater change than any man can possibly imagine to have been effected in so short a time, as was between the first year of *Ferdinand*, the *Catholic*, and the last year of *Charles* the fifth.

Concerning the title of the most *Catholic King*, re-attributed to this *Ferdinand*, I find, that *Alfonso* the first of *Oriedo*, was so named for his sanctity: with whom it dyed; and was revived in *Alfonso* the Great the twelfth King of Leon and *Oueda*, by the Grant of Pope *John* the 8th. After, it lay dead till the days of this Prince, who re-obtained this title from Pope *Alexander* the sixth: either because he compelled the *Moor* to be baptized, banished the *Jews*, and in part converted the *American* unto Christianity; or because, having united *Castile* to his Dominions, he supplanted the Kingdom of Navarre, and subdued that of *Granada*; he was, in a manner, the *Catholic* or general King of all Spain. The last reason seemeth to Iway most in the re-attainment of this attribute, in that when it was granted and confirmed on *Ferdinand*, by Pope *Alexander* the sixth, the King of Portugal exceedingly stomached at it: *Quando Ferdinandus imperio universum Hispaniam*, (saith *Marina*) non obtinere, quia tum non exigua parte pene Reges alios. It seems *Emmanuel* could not think himself a King of Portugal, if the title of the *Catholic King* did belong to *Ferdinand*. Wherein he was of the same mind, as was *Gregory* the Great; who when *John* of *Constantinople* had assumed to himself the title of the *Oecumenical* or *Catholic* Bishop, stived all *Bishops* of the World to oppose that arrogancy; and that upon the self-same reason, *Nam si ille est Catholicus, nos non sumus Episcopi*: for, if *John* were the *Catholic* Bishop, they were none at all. But upon what consideration forever it was first re-granted, it hath been ever since followed by his Posterity: to whose Crown as hereditary, and in common use, as the most Christian King to France, the Defender of the Faith to England.

And yet there was some further reason, why the *Spaniards* might affect the title of *Catholic King*, his Empire being *Catholic* in regard of extent, (though not of Orthodoxy of Doctrine) as reaching not over all Spain only, but over a very great part of the world besides. For in right of the Crown of *Castile*, he possessed the Towns of *Millan* and *Oran*, the Haven of *Masalquivir*, the Rock of *Plez*, and the Canary Islands in *Africa*; the Continent and Islands of all America, except *Brazil*, and some Plantations in the North, and in the *Cannibal* Islands, of the *English*, *Hollanders*, and a few poor French. In the right of the Kingdom of Aragon, he enjoyed the Realms of *Naples*, *Sticily*, and *Sardinia*, with many Islands interperfed in the *Mediterranean*; and in the right of the House of *Burgundy*, the Counties of *Burgundy*, and *Charolais*, the greatest part of *Belgium*, with a title unto all the rest: besides the great Dukedom of *Millain*, the Havens of *Telamon* and *Plumbino*, and many other pieces of importance in Italy, held by Inheritance from the Empire. To which if those Estates be added, which accrewed to Philip the second by the Crown of Portugal, we have the Towns of *Centu*, *Tangier*, and *Maragon* in *Barbary*, the Fortresses of *Aguin*, and *S. George*, in *Guinea*; the Isles of *Azores*, *Madera*, *Cape Verde*, *S. Thomas*, *Del Principe*, on this side of the Cape, and of *Mojambique* on the other; in Asia, all the Sea-coast almost from the Gulf of *Persia* unto *China*, and many strong Holds in the *Moluccoes*, *Banten*, *Zeilan*, and other Islands; and finally in America, the large Coun-

try of *Brazil*, extending in length 1500 miles. An Empire of extent enough, to appropriate to these Monarchs the title of *Catholic*.

## The Monarchs of Spain.

- A. Chr.
- Ferdinand, King of Aragon, Sicily, Sardinia, Majorca, Valencia, Earl of Catalogue, surprized Navarre, and conquered the Realm of Naples.
  - 1478 1 Isabel, Queen of Castile, Leon, Galicia, Toledo, Murcia, Lady of Biscay, conquered Granada, and discovered America.
  - 1504 2 Joan, Princess of Castile, Granada, Leon, &c. and of Aragon, Navarre, Sicily, &c.
  - Philip, Arch-Duke of Austria, L. of Belgium.
  - 1516 3 Charles King of Castile, Aragon, Naples, &c. Arch-duke of Austria, Duke of Millain, Burgundy, Brabant, &c. Earl of Catalogue, Flanders, Holland, &c. Lord of Biscay, Frieland, Utrecht, &c. and Emperour of the Germans. He added the Realms of Mexico and Peru, the Dukedoms of Gelderland and Millain, the Earldom of Zutphen, and the Seigniories of Utrecht, Over-Issel and Groynning, unto his Estates. A Prince of that magnanimity and puissance, that had not Francis the first in time opposed him, he had even swallowed all Europe. He was also, for a time, of great strength and reputation, in Tunis, and other parts of Africa, disposing Kingdoms at his pleasure: but the Turk broke his power there; and being hunted all out of Germany, he reigned all his Kingdoms, and died private. 42.
  - 1538 4 Philip II. of more ambition, but less prosperity than his Father; fortunate only in his attempt on the Kingdom of Portugal; but that sufficiently balanced by his ill success in the Netherlands, and against the English. For the Hollanders, and their Confederates, drove him out of eight of his Belgick Provinces: the English overthrew his *Invincible Armada*, intercepted his *Plate-Fleet*; and by availing the Ocean, had almost impoverished him: and though he held for a time a hard hand upon France, in hope to have gotten that Crown by the help of the *League*, yet upon calling up his Accompts, he found that himself was the greater loser by that undertaking. So zealous in the cause of the *Romish* Church, that it was thought that his eldest Son Charles was put to death, with his consent, in the *Inquisition*-house, for seeming favourably inclined to the Low-Country Heretics, as the *Spaniards* called them. These four great Kings were all of the Order of the Garter; but neither of the two that followed.
  - 1558 5 Philip III. finding his Estate almost destroyed by his Father's long and chargeable Wars, first made Peace with England, and then concluded a Truce for 12 years with the States of the Netherlands; which done, he totally banished all the *Moor* out of Spain, and was a great stickler in the Wars of Germany.
  - 1621 6 Philip IV. Son of Philip the third, got into his power all the Lower Palatinate; but lost the whole Realm of Portugal, and the Province of Catalonia, with many of his best Towns in Flanders, Arrais, and Brabant, and some Ports in Italy: not yet recovered to that Crown from the power of the French. This Empire consisting of so many several Kingdoms united into one Body, may seem to be invincible. Yet had Queen Elizabeth followed the counsel of her men of War, he might have broken it in pieces. With 4000 men he might have taken away his Indies from him; without



whose Gold, the Low-Country-Army, (which is the very best) could not be paid, and by consequence must needs have been dissolved. Nay, Sir Walter Raleigh in the Epilogue of his most excellent *History of the World*, plainly affirmeth, that with the charge of 200000 l. continued for but two years, or three at the most, the Spaniards might not only have been persuaded to live at peace; but all their swelling and overflowing-fleams, might be brought back to their natural Channels, and old Banks. Their own Proverb faith, *The Lion is not so fierce as he is painted*; yet the Americans tremble at his name: it's true; and it is well observed by that great Politician Machiavel, that things which seem to be and are not, are more feared for, than near at hand. Nor is this judgement built upon weak conjectures, but such as shew the Power of Spain not to be so formidable, as it's commonly supposed: which I find marshalled in this manner following: 1. The disjointedness of his Realms and other Estates, severed by infinite distances both of Sea and Land, which makes one part unable to relieve or defend the other. 2. The looseness of his Preparations in offensive or defensive Wars; his Forces, of necessity, being long a gathering in places so remote from the Royal Seat, and being gathered, no less subject to the dangers both of Sea and Land, before united into a body, and made fit for action. 3. The danger and uncertainty which the most part of his Forinque Revenues are subject to; many times intercepted by Pirates and open Enemies; sometimes so long delayed by cross Winds and Seas, that they come too late to serve the turn. 4. The different tempers and affections of a great part of his Subjects, not easily concurring in the same ends, or travelling the same way unto them. 5. The discontentedness of the Aragonians, Portuguese, and Italian Provinces, not well affected, for their private and particular reasons, unto the Castilians; apt to be wrought on by the Ministers of neighbouring Princes, whom jealousy of State keep watchful upon all advantages, for the depressing of his Power. 6. And last of all, the want of People of his own natural Subjects, whom he may best rely on for the increase and grandure of his Estates, exhausted and diminished by those ways and means which have been touched upon; without any politic or provident cause, to remedy that defect for the time to come. And this I look on as the greatest and most sensible Error in the Spanish Government: therein directly contrary to the ancient Romans; who finding, that nothing was more necessary for great and important enterprises, than multitudes of Men, employed all their studies to increase their numbers, by Marriages, Colonies, and such helps; making their conquered Enemies free Denizens of their Common-wealth: by which means the number of the Roman Citizens became so great (all being equally interested in the preservation of it) that Rome could not be ruined (in *Aeneas's* judgment) by any Forces but her own. But, on the other side, the Spaniards, employ none in their Plantations, but their own native Subjects; and so many of them also in all their enterprises both by Sea and Land, that so many thousands going forth every year, in the flower of their age, not one of them returning home; and those few which return, either lame or old: the Country is not only deprived of the Men themselves, but also of the Children which might be born. An evidence whereof may be, that John the first of Portugal, who reigned before the several Voyages and Plantations of that people, was able to raise 40000 Men for the War of Africa: whereas Emanuel, who lived after those Undertakings, had much ado to raise 20000 Foot, and 3000 Horse, on the same occasion: and Sebastian, after that, found as great a difficulty to raise an Army of 12000.

As for the Forces which the King of Spain is able to make out of all his Estates, they may be best seen by his preparations for the Conquest of England, France, and Flanders. In his design for England, A.D. 1588, he had a Fleet consisting of 150 Sail of Ships, whereof 66 were great Gallies, 4 Gallies of Naples, 4 Gallies, the rest smaller Vessels: freighted with 20000 Souldiers for land service, 9000 Sayers, 800 Gunners, 4000 Pioneers, 25000 pieces of Ordnance: not reckoning into this account the Commanders, and Volunteers; of which last, there were very great numbers who went upon that service for Spoil, Merit, or Honour. In the design of Charles the Fifth, for the Conquest of Provence, he had no less than 50000 in the Field, and in that of Philip the second, for the reducing of Flanders, the Duke of Alva had an Army, at his first setting forward out of Italy, consisting of 8800 Spanish Foot, and 1200 Horse; all of them old experienced Souldiers, drawn out of Naples, Sicily, and the Dutchy of Milan; 3600 German Foot, 300 Lances, and 100 Harquebusers on Horse back, of the County of Burgundy; all old Souldiers also: besides many Volunteers of great rank and quality, very well attended, and his old standing Army in the Belgick Provinces: a Strength sufficient to have conquered a far greater Country.

Of standing Forces in this Country, he maintaineth in these Realms of Spain, but three thousand Horse; and in his Forts and Garrisons, no more than 8000 Foot: his Garrisons being very few, and those upon the Frontiers only, and in Maritime Towns: his Gallies served with Slaves out of Turkey and Barbary. And yet he is able, on occasion, to raise very great Forces; partly, because the ordinary Subjects are so well affected to their Prince, whom they never mention without reverence: and partly in regard there is so great a number of *Fendatories* and Noble-men, who are by *Tenure*, to serve personally at their own charges, for defence of the Realm. And certainly, it must be a considerable Force which the Noblemen of Spain are able to raise, considering the greatness of their Revenue, and the number of Vassals which live under them: it being supposed, that the Dukes of Spain (of which there were 23 when my Author lived) were able, one with another, to dispend yearly from 5000 Ducats, to 100000; some going very much above that proportion; and that of 36 Marquesses, and 50 Earls, the poorest had 10000 Ducats of yearly Rent; and so ascending unto 50 and 60000. The Arch-bishops, Bishops, and others of the greater Clergy, being all endowed with fairer Temporal Estates, than in most places in Europe, are also bound to serve (though not personally) on the like occasions. And to these services the Noblemen are for two reasons more forwards than the other *Fendatories*: 1. Because their Honours descend not *de jure* from the Father to the Son, unless confirmed to the Son by the Kings acknowledgment and compellation, which makes them more observant of him, than in France or England, where it is challenged as a Birth-right. 2. Because out of the gross body of these Noblemen, the King doth use to honour some with the title of *Grandes*, privileged to stand covered before the King, and to treat with him as their Brother: which being the highest Honour which that State can yield, keeps those great persons inreadiness to obey his pleasure, in hope to come to an Honour of so high esteem.

For the Revenues of this King, which ordinarily arise out of his Estates (taking Portugal into the Account) they are computed at Eleven Millions of Crowns yearly; that is to say, four from his Dominions in Italy, two from Portugal and the *Appertinents* thereof, three from the West-Indies, and the other two remaining, from his Kingdoms

Kingdoms in Spain. Besides this, he receiveth yearly the Revenues of the Masterships of all the great Orders in his Kingdom, incorporated to the Crown by Ferdinand the Catholic, not without good Policy and reason of State: the Masters (or Commandadors, as they call them) of those federal Orders drawing after them such Troops of the Nobility, Gentry and other dependants; that their power began to be suspected by the Kings themselves. By which addition there accrueh to the Crown (besides the opportunity of preferring Servants of the greatest merit) above 150000 l. of yearly Reins. As for his Casualties and extraordinary ways of raising money, they are very great: reckoned by the Author of the *General History of Spain* to amount (according to divers Opinions) to 14, 18, and 23 millions of Crowns. For making up of which sum, he puts in the *First Fruits*, and some part of the *Tithes* of Rectories; and other Church Prebends, amounting to three millions yearly. And the Author of the *Politique Dispute*, &c. affirmeth the Pardons sent to the Indies, given him by the Pope, to be worth half a million of pounds yearly. Add herewith the fall and disposal of all Offices, which make up a good round sum; and the free Gifts & Contributions of his Subjects, which amount unto a good Revenue. For the Kingdom of Naples presents him every third year with a million and 20000 Crowns; and *Castile* only at one time granted a Contribution of four millions, to be paid in four years; his Subjects generally being so well affected unto the Crown, that he can demand nothing in reason of them which they are

not ready to grant; the King of Spain being called in that regard by the Emperor Maximilian, the King of Treasures, his expences being very great. First, in keeping Forts and Garrisons in many parts of his Estates against the Revolt of the Natives. Secondly, maintaining so many Frontier places against Foreign Invasions: Thirdly, in the continual pay of an Armada for conducting his *Privateers* from America. And last of all, the many and unprofitable Wars of King Philip the Second, so plunged the Crown in the Gulfs of Bankers and Money-Changers, that much of the Revenue of it stand engaged for payment to this very day.

There are in Spain  
Arch-Bishops 11. Bishops 52.  
Universities 18.

- |                       |                |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| 1. Seville,           | 10. Ebor.      |
| 2. Granada,           | 11. Lisbon,    |
| 3. S. Jago,           | 12. Coimbra,   |
| 4. Toledo,            | 13. Valencia,  |
| 5. Valladolid,        | 14. Lerida,    |
| 6. Majorca,           | 15. Huscia,    |
| 7. Salamanca,         | 16. Saragossa, |
| 8. Alcala de Henares, | 17. Tudela,    |
| 9. Sigüenza,          | 18. Offuna.    |

And so much for SPAIN.

## Of the OCEAN and ISLES

O F

# B, R I T A I N.

BEFORE we can arrive in Britain, the last Western Diocese, we must cross the OCEAN, that *ingenit*, and *infinitum* Pelagus, as *Mela* calls it: in comparison of which, the Seas before mentioned are but as Ponds or Gullets: a Sea in former times known more by fame than trial, and rather wondered at on the shore side, than any more remote place of it. The Romans ventured not on it with their Vessels, unless in the passage from France to Britain: and much famed is Alexander for his hazardous Voyage on this unruly Sea, he having failed in all 400 Furlongs from the shore. The Name and Pedegree take here both from the Poets and Etymologists. The Poets make Oceanus to be the Son of Calum and Vesta, or of Heaven and Earth. They termed him the Father of all things, as *Oceanumque Patrem rerum*, in *Virgil*, because moisture was necessarily required to the constitution of all bodies: and usually painted him with a Bulls head on his shoulders, (whence *Euclid* called him *ὠκεανὸς Ταυροκεφαλῆς*; Oceanus Taurocephalus) from the howling and fury of the Winds; which from it come to the shore, and to which it is subject. As for the Children attributed unto him, they are doublets nothing but the clouds and vapours hence arising. The

name of *ὠκεανὸς*, Oceanus, some derive from *ὠκεῖν*, *celare*, because of its swiftmess; some from *ὠκεῖν*, *findo*, *divido*, because it cleaveth and interlaceth the Earth, And others make it *ὠκεανὸς*, *quasi ὠκεανὸς* *μαγνὸν ὠκεανόν*, *a celosier fluendo*, which agreeth in meaning with the first. Particular names it hath divers, according to the name of the shore, by which it passeth, as *Cantabricus*, *Galicus*, *Britannicus*, &c. The chief Isles of it appertaining to Europe, besides those called the Azores or Isles of Terceira, which we have spoken of when we were in Portugal; those of the Aquitain Ocean, described in our History of France; those of the Netherlands, and the Northern Seas, which are to be described hereafter in their proper places, are the British Islands: by many of the most ancient and approved Writers called simply BRITAIN, because united all in that common notion, though afterwards distinguished into the particular appellations of Great Britain, Ireland, and the rest. Of which, as lying in my way betwixt Spain and Germany; or rather as the next Diocese of the Empire to France and Spain, under the Prefidian *Præsidium* of Gaul, I am next to speak.



## OF BRITAIN.

**BRITAIN**, according to the largest latitude of that name and notion, comprehendeth all those Islands both great and less, which lie in compass about *Albion*, or *Britain* properly so called: by *Ptolemy* called *Britannia*, in the plural number. For speaking of *France* he thus subjoineth, *Ex adverso hujus Britannia Insula*, *Albion ipsi nomen fuit, cum Britannia omnes vocarentur*, i. e. Opposite hereto lieth the Island of *Britain*, which formerly by a more proper name was called *Albion*, the name of *Britain* comprehending all the Isles adjoining. And in this latitude and extent we now take the word; the whole dominion of these Islands, distinguished into several names, being united in the person and under the command of the King of *Great Britain*: that name including all the rest, as appendants of it; with reference to this called the *Isles of Brittain*, or the *British Islands*. Thus *Aristotle* in his Book *De Mundo* (if the Book be his) *Quo in mari due Insule Britannicae sitae sunt, quarum maxima Albion & Ierna*; i. e. In which Sea there are situate two *British Islands* of great note and compass, *Albion* (or *Britain* properly so called) and *Ireland*. *Ptolemy* going to work more punctually, and he states it thus; *Completur prima hae Europa: tabula dicit Britannicas insulas, quas Dionysius Britannides vocat, Hiberniam nempe & Albionem, cum minoribus aliquot adjacentibus insulis, ut sunt Orcaades, Ebudae, Thyne, Mona, & reliquae suis nominibus expressae*: that is to say, This first Table of Europe, comprehendeth the two Islands of *Brit-*

*tain*, which *Dionysius* calls the *Britanides*, namely *Ireland* and *Albion*, with some lesser Islands joining to it, as the *Orcaades*, the *Hebrides*, *Thule*, *Anglesy*, (or *Man*) and others called by distinct names. By which we see, first, that the general name of *Britain* or *British Islands* comprehendeth all those which are situate in the *British Ocean*: and secondly, that the greatest and most famous of them, more specially called *Britain* by the following Writers, was anciently called *Albion* by its proper name. And it was called *Albion*, as many Authors tell me, either from *Albion* the Brother of *Borgion*, the Son of *Neptunus*, mentioned by *Aeschylus*, *Dionysius*, *Strabo*, *Mela*, *Salmasius*, *Pliny*, and others; it being not improper, that the greatest Island of the Ocean, should be denominated from a Son of the greatest Sea-god: or from the old word *Albus*, signifying *White* amongst the *Greeks* (from whence the *Latines* had their *Albion*), by reason of the white chalky Cliffs, seen by the Mariners afar off as they failed those Seas.

But to return again to *Britain* in the general notion, and to the several Islands which that name includeth, we may distinguish them into the *Greater* and the *Lesser*: the *Greater* subdivided into 1. *Great Britain*, or *Britain* properly so called, and 2. *Ireland*; the *Lesser*, 1. the *Orcaades*, 2. the *Hebrides*, 3. *Man*, 4. *Anglesy*, 5. the Islands of the *Scotia* Sea, 6. the *Scoringer*, or Isles of *Sailly*, 7. *Wight*, 8. *Thanet*, 9. *Sunderland*, and 10. *Holy Island*.

## GREAT BRITAIN.

**TO** speak much of *GREAT BRITAIN* or *BRITAIN* specially and properly so called, I hold somewhat superfluous, it being our home, and we therefore no strangers to it. Yet as *Mela* once said of *Italy*, *De Italia, magni quia ordo exigit, quam quia monstrari egeat, parca dicentur*; *nota sunt omnia*; so say I of *Britain*. It is so obvious to the eye of every Reader, that he needs not the spectacles of Letters. Yet something must be said, though for methods sake, rather than necessity. First then, we will begin with laying out the bounds thereof (as in other places); which are, on the East, the *German Ocean*, dividing it from *Belgium*, *Germany*, and *Danemark*; on the West, *S. Georges Channel*, which divides it from *Ireland*; and to the North of that, with the main *Perigian* or *Western Ocean*, of which the Ancients knew no shore; on the North, with the *Hyperborean* or *Donsaledonian Ocean*, as *Ptolemy* calls it, extending out to *Island*, *Freezeland*, and the ends of the then known World; and on the South, the *English Channel*, which divides it from *France*.

The length herof from North to South, is reckoned at 620 *Italian miles*; the greatest breadth from East to West, measured in a right line, no more than 250 of the same miles, but by the crooks and bendings of the Sea-Coast, come to 320 miles: the whole circumference accounted 1836 miles. The greatest Island in the World, except *Java*, *Borneo*, *Sumatra*, and *Madagascar*; and therefore by *Solinus* and some other Ancients (to whom those Islands were not known) called the *Other World*: by others of late times, the *Lady and Mistress of the Seas*. Situate under the 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, and 12th, *Climes*: so that the longest day at the *Lizard* point in *Cornwall*, (being the

most Southern part herof) containeth 26 hours and a quarter; at *Barnick* which is the Border of *England* and *Scotland*, 17 hours 3 quarters, and one hour more at *Straitly head*, in the North of *Scotland*; where some observe that there is scarce any night at all in the Summer Solstice, but a darker Twilight. To which alludes the Poet, saying, *Et minima continet nocte Britannos*: and the *Panegyrist* in the time of *Constantine*, amongst other commendations which he gives to *Britain*, faith, that therein is neither extreme cold in Winter, nor any scorching heats in Summer, and that which is most comfortable, *Long days, and very lightsome nights*. Nor doth the *Panegyrist* tell us only of the temperateness of the air, or the length of the days; but of the fruitfulness of the soil: "affirming *Britain*, to be blessed with all the commodities of Heaven and Earth; such an abundant plenty of Corn, as might suffice both for Bread and Wine; the Wood thereof without wild Beasts, the Fields without noisome Serpents, infinite number of milch Beasts, and Sheep weighed down with their own Fleeces. Whence add that of *Alfred* of *Beverly*, a Poet of the middle times, saying thus of *Britain*.

*Insula praedives, quae toto vix eget orbe;*

*Et cibus totus indiget orbis ope.*

*Insula praedives, cibus miratur & optet*  
*Delicias SOLOMON, Octavianus ope.*

A wealthy Island, which no help desires,  
Yet all the world supply from her requires;

Able

Able to glut King *SOLOMON* with pleasures.  
And furnish great *Augustus* with her treasures.

Proceed we next to the name of *Britain*; of which I find many *Etymologies*, some forced, some fabulous and foolish, and but few of weight. That which hath passed for current in former times, (when almost all Nations did pretend to be of *Trojan* race) was that it took this name from *Brutus*, affirmed to be the Son of *Silvius*, who was the Grandchild of *Aeneas*, and the third King of the *Latines* of the *Trojan* blood. Which *Brutus* having unfortunately killed his Father, and thereupon abandoning *Italy* with his Friends and Followers: after a long voyage and many wanderings, is said to have fallen upon this Island, to have conquered here a race of Giants; and having given unto it the name of *Britain*, to leave the Sovereignty thereof unto his posterity, who quietly enjoyed the same, till subdued by the *Romans*. This is the sum of the Tradition concerning *Brute*: which though received in the darker times of ignorance, and too much credulity; in these more learned days hath been laid aside, as false and fabulous. And it is proved that there was no such man as *Brutus*, 1. From the newness of his Birth, *Gustafus of Moemouth*, who lived in the reign of King *Henry* the second, being the first Author which makes mention of him: for which immediately questioned by *Newbrigensius*, another Writer of that Age. 2. By the silence of all the *Roman* Historians, in whom it had been an unpardonable negligence to have omitted an Accident so remarkable, as the Killing of a Father by his own Son (especially when they wanted matter to fill up the times) and the erecting of a new *Trojan* Empire in so great an Island. 3. By the Arguments which *Cesar*

useth to prove the *Britains* to be derived from the *Galls*; as Speech, Laws, Customs, Dispositions, Manners; and the like. 4. And lest it might be said, that though the *Britains* in *Cesars* time were of *Gallick* race, yet there had been a more ancient people, who had their Original from the *Trojans*, *Tacitus* putteth off that dispute with an *Ignoramus*: *Qui mortales initio coheruit, parum conpertum est*, faith that knowing Writer. And 5. By the Testimony of all *Roman* Historians, who tell us that *Cesar* found the *Britains* under many Kings, & never under the command of one sole Prince, but in times of danger. *Strenua Belli administrandi communis consensu commissa est* *Caesarellanus*, as it is in *Cesar*: *Dum singuli pagantur, universi vincuntur*, as we read in *Tacitus*. To omit therefore that of *Brutus*, and other *Etyms* as unlikely, but of less authority: the name of *Britain* is most probably derived from *Brit*, which in the Ancient *British* signifieth *Faint*; and the word *Tain*, signifieth a Nation: agreeable unto the custom of the ancient *Britains*, who used to discolour and paint their bodies, that they might seem more terrible in the eyes of their enemies. *Britain* is then a Nation of painted men; such as the *Romans* called *Picti* in the times ensuing. Which I prefer before the *Etymologie* of *Bochartus*, a right Learned man, but one that wresteth all originations to the *Hebrew*, or *Phoenician* language: by whom this Island is called *Britain* or *Britannica*, from *Britan-nae*, signifying in that Language a Land of *Tyone*, wherewith the Western parts of it do indeed abound. Other particulars concerning the life of *Britain*, shall be observed in the description of those parts into which it now doth stand divided, that is to say, 1. *England*, 2. *Wales*, and 3. *Scotland*.

## ENGLAND.

**ENGLAND** is bounded on the East with the *German*, on the West with the *Irish*; on the South with the *British* Oceans; and on the North, with the Rivers of *Tweed* and *Salway*; by which parted from *Scotland*; environed with turbulent Seas, guarded by inaccessible Rocks; and where those want, preserved against all foreign Invasions by strong Ports and a puissant Navy.

In former time the Northern limits did extend as far as *Edinburgh* *Wryth* on the East, and the *Fryth* of *Dunbarton* on the West, (for so far not only the *Roman* Empire, but the Kingdom of *Northumberland* did once extend:) the intervening space being shut up with a Wall of Turis by *Lollius Urbicus*, in the time of *Antonius Pius*. But afterwards, the *Romans* being beaten back by the Barbarous people, the Province was contracted within narrow bounds; and fortified with a Wall by the Emperor *Severus*, extending from *Carlisle* to the River *Tyne*, the track wall so made, that at every mile end there is said to have been a Castle, between every Castle many Watch-Towers; and betwixt every Watch-Tower a Pipe of Brass, conveying the least noise unto one another without interruption; so that news of any approaching enemy was quickly over all the Borders, and resistance accordingly provided. In following times the strong Towns of *Barnick*, and *Carlisle*, have been the chief Bars, by which we kept the back door shut; and as for other Ports, we had scarce any on the Frontiers, or Sea-Coasts of the Kingdom; though in the midland parts too many. Which

being in the hands of potent and factious Subjects, occasioned many to rebel; and did create great trouble to the *Norman* Kings, till in the later end of the Reign of King *Stephen*, 1100 of them were levelled to the very ground, and those few which remained dismantled, and made unserviceable. The Maritime parts were thought sufficiently assured by those Rocks and Cliffs, which compass the Island in most parts; and hardly any Cattle all along the shore, except that of *Dover*; which was therefore counted by the *French*, as the Key of *England*. But in the year 1538, King *Henry* the Eighth, considering how he had offended the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth, by his Divorce from Queen *Katherine*; and incurred the displeasure of the Pope, by his falling off from that Sec; as also that the *French* King had not only married his Son to a Niece of the Pope, but a Daughter of the King of *Scots*; thought fit to provide for his own safety, by building in all places where the shore was most plain and open, Castles, Platforms, and Block-Houses; many of which in the long time of Peace ensuing were much neglected and in part ruined.

His Daughter Queen *Elizabeth* of happy memory, provided yet better for the Kingdom. For then not only fortified *Portsmouth*, and placed in it a strong Garrison; but walled the Kingdom round with a most stately, royal, and invincible Navy: with which she always commanded the Seas, and vanquished the mightiest Monarch of Europe; whereas her Predecessors in their Sea Service, for the most part, hired their Men of War, from the *Hansemen*, and *Genoese*. Yet did neither of these erect any Castles in the

the inward part of the Realm: herein imitating Nature, who forthwith the head and the feet only, not the middle of Beasts; or some Captain of a Fort, who plants all his Ordnance on the Walls, Bulwarks, and Outworks; leaving the rest by these sufficiently guarded.

The whole Island was first called *Albion*, as before is said, either from the Giant *Albion*, or *ab albis rupibus*, the white Rocks towards France. Afterwards it was called *Britain*, which name being first found in *Aethonius*, amongst the *Grecians* and in *Lucretius* and *Cæsar*, amongst the *Latines*; followed herein by *Strabo*, *Pliny*, and all other ancient Writers, except *Plutarch* only, by whom called *Albion* as at first; continued till the time of *Egbert* the first *Saxon* Monarch, who called the Southern parts of the Island by the name of *England*, from the *Angles*, who with the *Jutes* and *Saxons* conquered it.

It is in length 320 miles, enjoying a soil equally participating of ground fit for tillage and pasture: yet to pasture more than to tillage are our people addicted, as a course of life not requiring to many helpers, which must be all fed and paid; and yet yielding more certain profits. Hence in former times Husbandry began to be neglected, Villages depopulated, and Hinds for want of entertainment to turn way-beaters: whereof Sir *Thomas Moor* in his *Utopia* complaineth; saying, that our Flocks of Sheep had devoured not only men, but whole houses and Towns. Over (saith he) *que tam inter esse, tam exiguo solent ali; namque tam videri, & indomiti esse capere, ut homines devent iam feræ, agros, domos, oppida vastent, ac depopulentur*. To prevent this mischief, there was a Statute made in the Fourth year of *Henry* the Seventh, against the converting of Arable Land into Pasture ground; by which course Husbandry was again revived, and the soil made so abounding in Corn, that a dear year is seldom heard of. Our Vines are nipped with the cold, and seldom come to maturity, and are more used for the pleasantness of the shade, than for the hopes of Wine. Most of her other plenty and Ornaments, are expressed in this old Verse following;

*Anglia, 1. Mons, 2. Pons, 3. Fons,  
4. Ecclesia, 5. Famina, 6. Lانا.*

That is to say,

For 1. Mountains, 2. Bridges, 3. Rivers, 4. Churches fair,  
5. Women, and 6. Wool, *England* is past compare.

1. For the Mountains lifting up here and there their lofty heads, and giving a gallant prospect to the lower Grounds; the principal are those of *Mendip* in *Somerset*, *Malden* Hills in *Worcestershire*, the *Chiltern* of *Buckinghamshire*, *Colnwood* in *Gloucestershire*, the *Peak* of *Derbyshire*, *Tork Woods*, &c. All of them either bowelled with Mines, or clothed with Sheep, or adorned with Woods. The exact description of which, would require more time than I can spend upon that subject. Proceed we therefore to

2. The Bridges, which are in number 875. The chief of which are, the Bridge of *Rechofer* over *Medway*, the Bridge of *Bristol* over *Avon*, and the Bridge of *London* over *Thames*. This last standing upon 19 Arches of wonderful strength and largeness, supporteth continual ranges of Buildings, seeming rather a Street than a Bridge; and is not to be paralleled with any Bridge of Europe, though of late by some defacement made by fire, Anno 1632, the Buildings are not so contiguous, as they were before,

3. The Rivers of this Country are in number 325. The chief is *Thamesis*, compounded of two Rivers, *Thame* and *Ips*; whereof the former rising somewhat beyond *Thame* in *Buckinghamshire*, and the latter beyond *Cyrus* in *Gloucestershire*, meet together about *Dunelm* in *Oxfordshire*: the issue of which happy conjunction is the *Thamesis* or *Thames*. Hence it flyeth between *Berky*, *Buckinghamshire*, *Middlesex*, *Surrey*, *Kent*, and *Essex*; and so wadeth himself to the *Kenilth Medway*, in the very jaws of the Ocean. This glorious River feeleth the violence of the Sea more than any River in Europe; ebbing and flowing twice a day, more than 60 miles: about whose Banks are so many fair Towns, and Princely Palaces, that a *German* Poet thus truly spoke,

*Tot campor, sylvas, tot regia tellus, tot hortos,  
Artifici excoluit destra, tot vidimus arces;  
Ut nunc Antonio Thamili cum Tibride ceteris.*

We saw so many Woods and Princely Towers,  
Sweet Fields, brave Palaces and stately Towers:  
So many Gardens drest'd with curious care,  
That *Thames* with *Royal Tibor* may compare.

The second River of note, is *Sabrin* or *Severn*. It hath its beginning in *Plinlimmon* Hill in *Montgomeryshire*, and his end about seven miles from *Bristol*: wathing in the mean space, the Walls of *Shrewsbury*, *Worcester*, and *Gloucester*. 3. *Trent*, so called, for that 30 kind of Fishes are found in it, or that it receiveth 30 lesser Rivers; who having his Fountain in *Staffordshire*, and gliding through the Countries of *Nottingham*, *Lincoln*, *Leicester*, and *Tork*, augmenteth the turbulent current of *Humber*, the most violent stream of all the Isle. Yet *Humber* is not, to say truth, a distinct River, having a spring-head of his own, but rather the mouth or *Altarium* of divers Rivers here confluent and meeting together, namely, *Toune*, *Darrent*, and especially *Ouse* and *Trent*. And as the *Danm*, having received into its Chanal the Rivers *Drave*, *Sarus*, *Tibiscus*, and divers others, changeth his name into *Ister*: So also the *Trent*, receiving and meeting the waters above named, changeth his name into that of *Humber*; *Abus*, the old Geographers call it. 4. *Medway*, a *Kenilth* River, famous for harbouring the *Royal Navy*. 5. *Tuvede*, the North-East bound of *England*, on whose Northern bank is seated the strong & impregnable Town of *Barnick*. 6. *Tine*, famous for *New-Castle*, and her inexhaustible Coal-pits. These and the rest of *Principal* ones are thus comprehended in one of *Mr. Drayton* Sonnets:

Our Flood Queen *Thames* for Ships and Swans is crown'd,  
And fiately *Severn* for her shore is prais'd,  
The Crystal *Trent* for Fords and Fish renowned,  
The *Avon* fame to *Albion* Cliffs is rais'd.  
*Carlegion* Chiffer vaunts her holy *Des*,  
*Tork* many Wonders of her *Ouse* can tell,  
The Peak her *Dove*, whose Banks so fertile be,  
And *Kent* will say her *Medway* doth excel.  
*Cotswold* commends her *Ips* to the *Thames*,  
Our Northern Borders boast of *Tuvede* fair flood;  
Our Western parts extol their *Willis* Fame,  
And the old *Lea* brags of *Danish* blood.

4. The Churches, before the general suppression of Abbies, and spoiling the Church Ornaments, were most exquisite: the chief remaining, are 1. the Church of *St. Paul* founded by *Eihelbert* King of *Kent*, in the place where once was a Temple consecrated to *Diana*: A Fair

brick of the largest dimensions of that kind of any in the Christian World. For whereas the so much celebrated Temple of *S. Sophia* in *Constantinople* hath but 260 foot in length, and 75 in breadth: this *S. Paul* is 690 foot long, and 130 foot broad, the main body being 102 foot high, over which the Steeple of the Church was mounted 482 foot more.

Which Steeple being made with Timber, and covered with Lead, was by the carelessness of the Sexton, in the fifth year of the Reign of *Q. Elizabeth*, consumed with fire, which happening in a thundering and tempestuous day, was by him confidently affirmed to be done by Lightning, and was so generally believed till the hour of his death: but not many years since to disabuse the world, he confest the truth of it; on which discovery, the burning of *St. Paul's* Steeple by Lightning, was left out of our Common Almanacks; where formerly it stood amongst the ordinary *Epoche*, or accounts of time. A Church of such a gallant Prospect, and so large dimensions, that had not the late reparation of it been discontinued, it would have been the stately and most majestic Fabrick in the Christian World. 2. The Collegiate Church of *S. Peter* in *Wolmister*, (wherein I have the honour to be a Prebendary) famous for the Inauguration and the Sepulture of the Kings of *England*, the Tombs whereof are the most sumptuous, and the Chapel the most accurate piece of Building in Europe. 3. The Cathedral Church at *Lincoln*. 4. For a private Church, that of *Radcliff* in *Bristol*. 5. For a private Chapel, that of *Kings* College in *Cambridge*. 6. For curious Workmanship of the Glass, that of *Christ-Church* in *Canterbury*. 7. For the exquisite beauty of the Fronts, those of *Wells* and *Peterborough*. 8. For a pleasant lightroom Church, the Abbey Church at *Bath*. 9. For an ancient and reverend Fabrick, the Minister of *Tork*. And 10. to comprehend the rest in one, our *Lady-Church* in *Salisbury*, of which take these Verses,

*Mira enim; sedes quæ continet annus, in una  
Tum tuorum, 4, ferunt, ade fenestram micat.  
Marmoris, tunc fusa tot ab arte columnas,  
Compositis horis quæ vagus annus habet.  
Totus patens portæ, quæ mensuris annus abundat.  
Res mira, at veras celebrata fide.*

How many days in one whole year there be,  
So many Windows in one Church we see  
So many marble Pillars there appear,  
As there are hours throughout the fleeting year.  
So many Gates as Moons one year do view;  
Strange tale to tell, yet not so strange as true.

5. The Women generally are more handsome than in other places, sufficiently endowed with natural beauties, without the addition of adulterate Sophistifications. In an absolute Woman, say the *Italians*, are required the parts of a *Dutch Woman*, from the girdle downwards; of a *French Woman*, from the girdle to the shoulders; over which must be placed an *English* face. As their beauties, so also are their Privileges the greatest of any Nations neither so servilely submissive as the *French*, nor so jealously guarded as the *Italian*: but keeping for true decorum, that as *England* is termed the Purgatory of Servants, and the Hell of Hosts; so it is acknowledged the Paradise of Women. And it is a common by-word among the *Italians*, that if there were a Bridge built over the *Narrow Sea*, all the *Wives* of Europe would run into *England*. For here they have the upper hands in the streets, the upper place at the Table, the thirds of their Husbands estates, and their equal share in all Lands, yet even such as are holden in *Knights-service*: Privileges wherewith

other Women are not acquainted. Of high esteem in former times amongst foreign Nations, for the modesty and gravity of their conversation, but of late times so much addicted to the light garb of the *French*, that they have lost much of their ancient honour and reputation amongst the knowing and more sober men of foreign Countries, who before admired them.

6. The Wool of *England*, is of exceeding fineness, especially that of *Cotswold* in *Gloucestershire*; that of *Long-ster* in *Hampshire*; and of the Isle of *Wight*. Of this Wool are made excellent Broad-cloths, dispersed all over the World, especially *Hig-Germany*, *Muscovy*, *Turky*, and *Pessia*, to the great benefit of the Realm: as well in return of so much money which is made of them, as in setting to work so many poor people, who from it receive sustenance. Before the time of King *Edward* the third, *English* men had not the art, or neglected the use of making Cloth: till whose time our Wool was transported unwrought. And as his Successors have laid impositions on every Cloth fold out of the Realm; his Predecessors had, as their occasions required, some certain Customs granted on every cake of Wool. In the beginning of this *Edward's* Wars with *France*, the Cities and Towns of *Flanders* being then even to admiration rich, combined with him, and aided him in his Wars against that King. And he for his part by the composition then made, was to give them 140000 *l.* ready money to aid them by Sea and Land, if need required, and to make *Bruges*, then one of the great Mart-Towns of *Christendom*, the Staple for his Wools. Here the Staple continued 15 years, at which time the *Flemmings* having broke off from the Kings; and he having by experience seen what the benefit of those Staples were, removed them from *Bruges* into *England*. And for the ease as well of his Subjects in bringing their Wools unto the Ports, as of such Foreign Merchants that came to buy; he placed his Staples at *Excester*, *Bristol*, *Winchester*, *Wolmister*, *Chichester*, *Canterbury*, *Norwich*, *Lincoln*, *Tork*, and *Newcastle*, for *England*; at *Caermarthen* for *Wales*; and at *Dublin*, *Waterford*, *Cork*, and *Tredagh*, for *Ireland*. He further enacted, that no *English*, *Irish*, or *Welsh*-men should transport this Staple commodity, no not by Licence (if any fish should be granted) on pain of Condemnation, and Imprisonment during the Kings pleasure. Lastly, he allured over hither divers *Flemmings*, which taught our men the making of Cloths; (who are now grown the best Cloth-workers in the World;) and to encourage them in that Art; it was by a Statute of the 27th of *Edward* the third, Enacted to be Felony, to carry any Wools unwrought. When *England* had some short time enjoyed the benefit of these Staples, the King removed them to *Calice*, which he had conquered, and desired to make wealthy: From hence they were at several times and occasions translated, now to one, now to another Town in *Belgium*: and happy was that Town, in what Country soever, where the *English* kept a house for this Traffic; the consequence of all people thither to buy, infinitely enriching it. *Antwerp* in *Brabant* long enjoyed the *English* Merchants, till upon some discontents between King *Henry* the Seventh, and *Maximilian* Arch-Duke and Lord of *Belgium*, they removed: but at their return again, were received by the *Antwerpians*, with solemn Procession, Princely Triumph, sumptuous Feasts, rare Banquetings, and other expressions of much Love, but more Joy. And giving of some *Cotswold* Sheep by *Edward* the Fourth, to *Henry* of *Castile*, and *John* of *Aragon*, An. 1465, is counted one of the greatest prejudices, that ever happened to this Kingdom.

The Wool transported bringeth into the Kingdom no less than 1500000 *l.* and the Lead half the sum, so that

*Levis Guicciardine* reporteth. That before the Wars of the Low-Countries, the *Flemings* and the *English* bartered Wares yearly to the value of 12 Millions of Crowns.

The next commodity to the *Wool*, though not mentioned in the verse foregoing, are the rich and inexhaustible *Mines of Cole, Lead, and Tin*: to say nothing of the *Mines of Iron*, as bringing more damage to the publick by the spoil of Woods, than profit to particular persons in the increase of their estates. The *Mines of Cole*, chiefly enrich *Newcastle in Northumberland*, and by that the great City of *London*, and many other good Towns besides: which could not possibly subsist in this general decay of Woods, and neglect of planting, but by this Commodity. The *Mines of Lead* are most considerable in the Peak of *Derbyshire*; those of *Tin* in *Cornwall*, where they dig *Tin* not much inferior to *Silver* in itself. A Commodity which brought great wealth to *England* in former times, the art of making it not being elsewhere known in *Europe*, till once the *Tin-workers*, flying out of *England* for a Murder, passed into *Germany*, *Ann. 1240.* and there discovered some *Tin-Mines* in *Misnia*, not known before, and set on foot that Trade amongst them, to the great prejudice (saith my Author) of the Earls of *Cornwall*, who had before the sole Monopoly of that useful metal.

To these particulars being matters of profit and necessity, if I would add such things as are for delight and pleasure, I might subjoin the *Bulls and Parks*; for which this Kingdom is as eminent among Foreign Nations; as for any of those mentioned in the said old Verse. The *Bulls* for many, tunable, and of such excellent Melody to a Musical car (brought more to the command of the skilful ringer than in former times) that is thought there are more good Kings of *Bulls* in this part of the Island than in half Christendom besides. *Parks* more in *England* than in all *Europe*. The first of which kind for the indulging of Venison, being that of *Windsor*, made by King *Henry* the first: whose example being followed by his Successors, and the Lords and great men of the Realm; the number so increased in a little time, that at the last, besides 55 *Forrests*, and 300 *Chafers*, there were reckoned 745 *Parks* in *England*; all well replenished either with Red or Falow Deer.

And that the Deer might graze with pleasure, and the Sheep with safety, great care was taken by our Progenitors for the destruction of *Wolves*. I know it hath been a tradition of old Writers, That *England* never had any *Wolves* at all, and that they would not live here brought from other places: but it is not so: here being force of them, till *Edward King of England* commuted the 20 l. of Gold, 300 l. of Silver, and 500 head of Cattel imposed as a yearly tribute by King *Albion* upon *Idwallo Prince of Wales*; for the like yearly tribute of 300 *Wolves*: by which means they were quite rooted out in time, the *Welsh* protesting at the last they could find no more.

The Air of this Country is very temperate, neither so hot as *France* and *Spain* in the Summer, because of its Northerly situation; nor so cold in the Winter, because the air of this Kingdom being gross, cannot so free penetrate as the thin air of those Countries. For to say truth, the air in the Winter time is thick and foggy, cloudy, and much disposed to mists; especially near the Sea, and the greater Rivers: inasmuch that many times, the Sun is not seen to shine out clearly for some weeks together. And thereupon there goeth a tale, that the great Countess of *Castile* being Ambassador to King *James* in the first Winter of his reign, and tarrying here about a month, is said not to have seen the Sun all the time of his stay; which occasioned him at his going on ship-board, to desire such

Lords and Gentlemen as attended him thither, to *perform his humble service to the King their Master*, and to the blessed Sun of Heaven when they should see him. And something also touching the temperature of the Air, may be ascribed unto the Winds, which participating of the Seas, over which they pass unto us, do carry with them a temperate warmth.

But if warmth were all the benefit we received from the Seas, It might indeed be said, that we were come from Gods blessing into the warm Sun; but it is not so. For there are no Seas in *Europe* that yield more plenty of Fish than ours. Our Oysters were famous in the times of the old *Romans*, and our Herrings are now very beneficial unto the *Netherlands*, to whom, the *English-men*, referring to themselves a kind of Royalty, (for the *Dutch* by Custom demand liberty to fish, off *Scarborough Castle in Yorkshire*) have yielded up the commodity; by which those States are exceedingly enriched, and our Nation much impoverished and condemned for laziness and sloth. Besides the loss of employment for many men, who using this trade might be a fennery of good and able Mariners, as well for the Wars, as for further Navigations and discoveries, cannot but be very prejudicial to the strength and flourishing of the Common-wealth and Empire of *England*.

But to make this appear more fully in all particulars, I shall extract some passages out of a M.S. discourse of the late Learned Knight Sir *John Burroughs*, principal King of Arms by the name of *Carter*, entitled, *The Sovereignty of the British Seas*. By which it doth appear, that there is fishing in those Seas for Herrings, Pilchards, Cod, Ling, or other Fish, at all times of the year: and that to in plentiful manner, that not long since near *Mineral* on the Coasts of *Devonshire*, 500 Ton of Fish was taken in one day, and 3000 pounds-worth in another, near *S. Ives* in *Cornwall*; the *Hollanders* taking at one draught 20 Last of Herrings.

Secondly, That almost all Nations hereabouts, as *French, Spaniards, Netherlands*, and those of the *Haps*, do mightily improve themselves both in power & wealth, by the benefit of the *English* Fishing; inasmuch as 10000 Sail of *English* Vessels (of which 1400 from the Town of *London* in *East Frisland* only) are thought to be maintained by this Trade alone.

Thirdly, That the *Hollanders* in particular employ yearly 8000 Vessels of all sorts for this Trade of Fishing on our Coasts, whereby they have a Seminary of 15000 Sailors and Mariners, ready for any publick service: all which maintain treble that number of Men, Women, and Children, of several Trades upon the Land.

Fourthly, That for the holding up of this Trade, the said *Hollanders*, inhabiting a Tract of Land not so big as many of our Shires, do build 10000 Sail of Ships yearly; and thereby furnishing all the parts of the world (even as far as *Brasil*) with our Commodities; returning home those of other Countries in exchange thereof, which they sell to us many times at their own prices.

Fifthly, That the said *Hollanders* (as appeared upon computation) made in one year of the *Herrings* only, caught upon these Coasts, the sum of 5 Millions of Cat-pounds, (the Customs and tenth Fish advancing to the publick Treasury no less than 800000 l. Sterling;) it being thought, that the *Herrings* caught by those of the *Hanse Towns*, and other Nations, amount to as great a sum as that.

Sixthly, and finally, That by erecting only 250 *Buffs*, (Vessels of great Bulk and Stowage, but not swift of sail) for the *Herring* Fishing, (which is not a sixth part of those which are employed yearly by the *Hollanders*) either at the publick charge of the State of *England*, or private

Adventurers thereto authorized and regulated, there would be found employment yearly for 1000 ships; and at least 20000 Mariners and Fishers at Sea, and consequently for as many Tradefmen and Labourers at Land; by means whereof, besides the vindication of our credit now as such a loss, there would arise in Customs, Tonnage, Poundage, and other Impots, no less than 300000 l. per Annum to the publick Treasury. The prosecution of which Project (if not in greater proportion than that before) as it was once designed by Mr. Attorney *Noy*, my much honoured Friend: so do I heartily commend it to the Care of the State, and to his Successors in that Office, as the fittest remembrancers to advance it: there being no readier way than this to make the people wealthy, and the Nation formidable.

For notwithstanding these advantages of Fish, the Diet of *England* is, for the most part Flesh; in *London* only there are no fewer than 67500 Beefs, and 675000 Sheep slain, and uttered in a year, besides Calves, Lambs, Hogs, Hens, and Poulterers ware. To prove this, suppose there be in *London* 60 Butchers Free of the City, wherof every one and one with another, killeth an Oxe a day, as at least they do. Then reckon (as the *London* Butchers do affirm) that the Foreigners in the Suburbs and Villages sell four for their own. Lastly, count for every Oxe ten Sheep, (for this is also certainly known) to be killed and sold, and (for have both the numbers above-mentioned. The Earl of *Goodman*, once the *Spanish* Linger here, having in some several Market days seen the several Shambles of this great City, said to them who made the discovery with him: That there was more flesh eaten in a month in that Town, than in all *Spain* in a year. Now had I his skill who by the length of *Hercules* Foot, found out the proportion of his whole body, I might by this provision of flesh consumed in the head-queets at the quantity of that which is spent in the body of the Realm. But this I leave to be determined by an able hand. The usual and natural drink of the Country is *Beer*, so called from the French word *Boire*, (for Wines they have none of their own growing, as before is said) which, without controversy, is a most wholesome and nourishing Beverage: and being transported into *France, Belgium, and Germany*, by the working of the Sea is so purged, that it is amongst them in highest estimation; celebrated by the name of *la bonne Biere d'Angleterre*. And as for the old drink of *England*, *Ale*, which cometh from the *Danish* word *Oela*, it is questionless in itself, (and without that commixture which some are accused to use with it) a very wholesome drink; howsoever it pleased a Poet in the time of *Henry* the Third, thus to decant on it:

*Nescio quid monstrum Stygie conforme paludi,  
Cervicium plerumque vocant; nil sibi ista  
Dum bibitur, nil clarius est dum minguitur; ergo  
Constat, ac quod nullas fecces in ventre relinquit.*

In *English* thus;

Of this strange drink so like the *Stygian* Lake,  
Men call it *Ale*, I know not what to make.  
Folk drink it thick, and piss it very thin;  
Therefore much *Drugs* must needs remain within.

Now to conclude this general discourse concerning *England*, there goes a tale, that *Henry* the seventh (whose breeding had been low and private) being once pressed by some of his Council, to pursue his title unto *France*, returned this Answer: That *France* indeed was a flourishing and gallant Kingdom; but *England* in his mind was a fine Seat for a Country Gentleman, as any could be found in *Europe*.

Having said thus long in taking a Survey of the Country it self, together with the chief commodities and pleasures of it; and amongst them of the *Women* also, (as the method of the old Verse led me on:) it is now time that we should look upon the men. And they are commonly of a comely feature, gracious countenance, for the most part gray-eyed, pleasant, beautiful, bountiful, courteous, and much resembling the *Italians* in habit and pronunciation. In matters of War, (as we are ready to prove) they are both able to endure, and resolute to undertake the hardest enterprises: in peace quiet, and not quarrelsome: in advice or counsel, frank and speedy. Finally, they are active, hearty, and cheerful. And yet I have met with some Gentlemen, who upon the strength of a little travel in *France*, have grown to be *un-Englished* (and so affected or besotted rather on the *French* Nation) that they affirm the *English* in respect of the *French*, to be an heavy, dull, and *Phlegmatick* people; of no dispatch, no mettle, no conceit, no audacity, and I know not what not. A vanity, meriting rather my pity, than my anger. Perhaps in vilifying their Nation, they had consulted with *Julius Scaliger*, who in the 16. Cap. of his 3d Book *De re poetica*, giveth of the two most noble Nations, *English* and *Scotch*, this bafe and unmanly Character, *Gauli belline, Scoti non minus Angli perfidi, ingrati, feri, contempores, stolidi, anestes, inertes, imphibitales, immanes*. His bolt (you see) is soon shot, and so you may happily guess at the quality of the Archer. A man indeed of an able learning, but of his own worth so highly conceited, that if his too much learning made him not mad, yet it made him to be too peremptory and arrogant. To revenge a *National* disgrace on a *Personal*, is an ignoble victory. Besides *Socrates* resolution in the like kind in my opinion was very judicious, *et de se ipso habebat, sibi deus dixit, et deus vero*. If an *Ale* kick us, we must not put him in the Court. To confuse his sentence in every point, would be to him too great an honour, and for me too great a trouble; it being a task, which of it self would require a Volume. The best is, many shoulders make the burden light; and other Nations are as deeply engaged in this quarrel against that proud Man, as ourself so maliciously hath he there taxed all other people, that that Chapter might more properly have been placed among his *Hypercriticks*.

How the *English* and *Germans*, which of all Nations are thought most given to their bellies do agree and differ in this point; the same *Scaliger* hath thus shewed in one of his Epigrams.

*Tres sunt Convivae, Germanus, Flander, & Anglus;  
Die quis edat melius, quis melius bibat.  
Non comedit Germanus, bibis; tu non bibis Angles,  
Sed comedis; comedis Flandrie, bibisq; bene.*

*Dutch, Flemmings, English*, are your only guests;  
Say which of all doth eat, or drink it best.  
Th' *English* love most to eat, the *Dutch* to swill,  
Only the *Flemmings* eat and drinks his fill.

Thus was it in his time with the *English* Nation, though since, I fear we have borrowed too much of the *Dutch*, and learnt a great deal more than needs of the *Flemmings* also.

This Nobility of this Country is not of so much unlimited Powers as they are (to the prejudice of the State) in other Countries; the name of *Dukes, Earls* and *Marquesses*, being merely titular: whereas in other places they have some absolute or some mixt Government, so that upon any little distails they will stand on their own guard, and fight the power of their Sovereign. And on the other side, the Commonalty enjoy a multitude of Privileges

above all other Nations; being most free from Taxes, and burdensome Impositions, but what they take upon themselves by their own consent. They have twice in a year (a laudable custom no where else to be seen) Justice administered even at their own doors, by the Itinerary Judges of the Kingdom: an Order first instituted by King Henry the second. They dwell together with the Gentlemen in Villages, and Towns, which makes them favour of civility and good manners: and live in far greater reputation, than the *Yeomen* in Italy, Spain, France, or Germany; being able to entertain a stranger honestly, diet him plentifully, and lodge him neatly.

The Clergie was once of very great riches, as appeareth by that Bill preferred to King Henry the fifth, against the temporal Revenues of the Church; in which it was suggested, that they were able to maintain 15 Earls, 1500 Knights, 6000 men of Arms, more than 1000 Almshouses, and yet the King might clearly put up 20000 l. per Annum into his Exchequer. How true this was, I cannot say. But after this, King Henry the eighth took his Opportunities, to pare away the excrencies of it; demolishing the Monasteries, and Religious houses, and paring off the superfluities of Bishopsricks and Cathedral Churches; which he found not a few followers amongst the Ministers and great Officers of State, and Court, in the time of King Edward the sixth, and Queen Elizabeth. Yet left they not the Clergie too poor and naked, or destitute of the encouragements and rewards of learning, but that they have been till the objects of a covetous envy; & that which the former *Huipier* left them, being thought too much; though for abilities of Learning (I dare boldly say it) not to be parallel'd in the World. For besides 3450 *Panishal Benefices*, being no *Inappropriations*; and besides the *Vicariages*, more of which exceed the competency beyond the Seas; there were left in England at the time of the Reformation under Queen Elizabeth, 26 Bishopsricks, (taking those of *Wales* into the reckoning) 26 *Dioconies*, 60 *Archidiaconies*, and 544 *Dignities* and *Prebends*; most of which places of fair Revenue. And as for the maintenance of Priests, Monks, and Friars, before the Reformation, there were reckoned 90 Colleges, besides those in the Universities, 100 Hospitals, 3374 Chantries and Free Chappels, and 645 Abbies and Monasteries; more than half of which had above the yearly income of 200 l. in old Rents, many above 2000, and some 4000 almost. So studious were our *Ancestors* both in those times of blindness, and these of a clearer light, to encourage men to Learning, and then reward it.

The Souldiery of England is either for the Land or for the Sea. Our Victories by Land are most apparent over the *Irish*, *Scots*, *Cyprians*, *Turks*, and especially *French*, whose Kingdom hath been fore taken by the English many times, especially twice by King Edward the Third, and Henry the fifth: this latter making for absolute conquest, that Charles the Seventh, like a poor *Roy d'Indes*, confined himself to *Bourges*, where (having callier'd his retinue) he was found in a little Chamber at Supper, with a Napkin only laid before him, a rump of Mutton and two Chickens. And so redoubted even after our expulsion from France, (our civil dissensions) rather causing that expulsion, than the *Frenchmen* valour) was the English name in that Country: that in the Wars between King Charles the Eighth, and the Duke of Bretagne, the Duke, to strike a terror into his enemies appalled 1500 of his own Subjects, in the Arms and Cross of England. But as the *Als*, when he had on the Lions Skin, was for all that but an *Als* and no Lion: so these *Britons*, by the weak resistance they made against their Enemies, shew'd that they were indeed *Britons*, and no *Englishmen*. Spain also tasted the valour of our Land-Souldiers,

when John of Gaunt pursuing his Title to Spain, was sent home with 8 Waggon laden with Gold, and an Annual Pension of 10000 marks; as also when the *Black Prince* re-established King Peter in his Throne. And then also did they acknowledge, though they felt not the puissance of the English, when Ferdinand the Catholic, (surprised the Kingdom of Navarre. For there were then in *Navarra*, a Town of *Guipuscoa*, 6000 English Foot, who lay there to join with this Ferdinand in an Expedition against France. Concerning which, *Guicardine* giveth this Item, That the Kingdom of Navarre may yield rather for the fear and reputation of the English Forces than were at hand, than by any puissance of the King of Aragon. Since those times the Spaniards much esteemed us, as appeareth by this Speech of theirs to our Souldiers at the Siege of *Amiens*; *Tu es tall Souldier, and therein when you come down to the Trenches, we double our guards, and look for blows; but as for those base and cowardly French, when they come, we make account we have nothing to do, but play, or sleep on our Kampanin*. The like the *Netherlanders* can tell; only this is the grief of it: The English are like *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, fortunate to conquer Kingdoms, but unfortunate to keep them. Not to say any thing of the late, but great experience, which the English Souldiery hath gotten by the Civil Broils among themselves; at which my heart fo aketh, and my hand fo trembleth, that I shall only say in the words of *Lucan*,

*Hæc quantum potuit cæli pelagique parari,  
Hæc quæ Civiles fuderunt sanguine dextra!*

That is to say,

How much both Sea and Land might have been gain'd  
By their dear blood, which Civil wars have drain'd!

As for their power and valour at Sea, it may evidently be perceived in the Battel of *Solufe*, wherein King Edward the 3d with 200 Ships, overcame the French Fleet consisting of 300 Sail; of which he sunk 200 and flew 30000 Souldiers. Secondly, at the Battel in 88, wherein a few of the *Queens* Ships vanquished the invincible Armada of the King of Spain, consisting of 134 great Gallies, and Ships of extraordinary bigness. Sir Francis Drake with 4 Ships took from the Spaniard one million and 18200 Ducats in one Voyage, An. 1587. And again with 25 Ships he awed the Ocean, sacked *S. Jago*, *S. Dominica*, and *Carthagea* carrying away with him, besides Treasure, 240 Pieces of Ordnance. I omit the Circumnavigation of the whole World, by this Drake and *Candish*, and the voyage to *Caler*: as also how one of the Queens Ships named the *Revenge*, in which Sir Richard *Greenlee* was Captain, with 180 Souldiers (whereof 50 were sick on the ball) maintained a sea fight for 24 hours against above 50 of the Spanish Gallies. And thought last after her Powder was spent to the last barrelle yielded upon honourable terms; yet she was never brought into Spain: having killed in that fight more than 10000 of their Souldiers, and sunk four of their greatest Vessels. I omit also the discovery of the Northern passages, by *Hugh Willoughby*, *Davis*, and *Frobisher*; concluding with that of *Kekerman*, *Hæc certum est, omnibus locis gentibus navigandi industria & peritia superiores esse Angli: & populi Anglos, Hollandos*. Though now I know not by what neglect, and discontinuance of those honorable employments the *Hollanders* begin to be craved of our ancient Glories, and would fain account themselves Lords of the Seas, and probably had been so indeed, had not his Majesty by the timely re-inforcing of his na-

val Powtr, An. 1636. recovered again the Dominion of it.

The English language is a De-compound of Dutch, French and Latine; which I conceive rather to add to its perfection, than to detract any thing from the worth thereof; since out of every Language we have called the most significant words, and equally participate of that which is excellent in them; their imperfections being rejected. For it is neither so boyterous as the Dutch, nor so effeminate as the French; yet as significant as the Latine, and in the happy conjunction of two words into one little inferior to the Greek.

The Christian Faith was first here planted as some say, by *S. Peter and Paul*; more probably (as others say) by *Joseph of Arimathea*, whose body they find to have been interred in the Isle of *Avallonia* where the Abby of *Glastonbury* after flood. But that of his plantation being almost rooted out by long Persecutions, and no supply of Preachers sent from other places; *Lucius* a King of Britain (and the first Christian King of Europe,) An. 180. or thereabouts, sent his Ambassadors to *Eleutherius* the then Pope of Rome to be furnished with a new supply of Pastors, if not to plant, yet at the least to water, and confirm the Gospel planted here before; but almost rooted out again by prevailing Gentilism. At which time *Lucius* did not only receive the Faith himself, but by the piety of his example, and the diligence of the first Preachers sent from Rome (being both of them natural Britains) it spread by little and little over all his Dominions; and in some tract of time over all the Island. Which being thus recovered to the Faith of Christ, was forthwith furnished with Bishops and Metropolitans, according to the number of the Provinces and principal Cities (twenty eight in all) continuing here as long as Christianity it self. For not to trust herein to the authority of the British History, we find three Bishops of this Isle subscribing to the Council of *Arles*, An. 314. viz. *Eborius* Bishop of *Lark*, *Restinus* Bishop of *London*, and *Adelfus* Bishop of *Colchester*, there called *Colonia Londinensium* and some of them also present in the Council of *Sardica*, An. 358. concurring with the rest in voting to the condemnation of the *Arian* Heretics; and the same or others the next year in the Synod of *Arimin*. And when the Britains were expelled their native Chantry, or shut up in the mountainous parts of the *Ordovices*, and *Silures*, which we now call *Wales*; they carried Christianity and Bishops along with them: *Augustine* the Monk, finding no fewer than seven Bishops in the British Church, when he was sent by Gregory the Great to convert the English. And yet it is no fabulous vanity, (as some men suppose) to say that *Augustine* the Monk first preached the Gospel in England: because it must be understood, not with Relation to the Britains, but the English Saxons: from whom these parts of the Isle had the name of England; and from whom both the Britains, and the Faith it self were driven into the Mountains of *Wales & Cornwall*, and Heathenism introduced again over all the Kingdom. Long after which it pleased God, that Gregory the Great, (but at that time a Deacon only in the Church of Rome) seeing some hand-some youths to be sold in open Market, demanded what and whence they were: to whom it was answered they were Angli: and well may they be so called (saith he) for they seem as Angels. Asking again of what Province they were amongst the Angli; and answer being made of the Province of *Deira* (part of the Kingdom of the *Northumbrians*) therefore (saith he) *De ira Deus sum liberandi*. And lastly understanding that the King of that Nation was named *Ale*; how fitly (saith he) may he sing Alleluia to the most High God! After which time he seriously endeavoured the Conversion of the English Nation; which being Pope he happily effected, by the tra-

vel and diligence of *Augustine* the Monk, the first Archbishop of *Canterbury*. And so well did the work prosper after this beginning, that not only all the Saxons did receive the Gospel, but communicated the Light of it to other Nations: the *Hassians*, *Francoburgs* and *Turingians*, being converted by *Winfred*; the *Frisians* or *Hollanders* by *Willibrod* the first Bishop of *Utrecht*; the Saxons of *Westphalia*, by *Wladrode*, the first Bishop of *Breda*; all of them being English Saxons, as we find in *Brady* and *Iome* others.

Now as these parts of Britain were the first which generally entertained the Gospel, so were they the first also in these later times, which universally submitted to the Reformation of such corruptions, as had been brought upon them by the power and tyranny of the Church of Rome. Endeavoured first in *France*, by the *Alloings*, and *Waldenses*, as was said before. Who being suppressed and ruined by the Sword of the King of France, thrust themselves in the mountainous parts of *Gascogne* and *Guienne*, then in possession of the English, who by that means became acquainted with their *Doctrines*: maintained here publicly by *Wiclif*, and spreading under-hand amongst the people of this Kingdom, till the times of *Luther* and the Reformation by him aimed at. Which being in most other Countries received tumultuously, by the power of the people; was here admired upon mature deliberation, by the authority and consent of the Prince and Prelates: the *Archbishops* in this great work, without respect unto the Dictates of *Luther* or *Calvin*, looking only on Gods Word and the Primitive Patterns, abolishing such things as were repugnant unto either, but still retaining such *Ceremonies* in Gods public worship, as were agreeable to both, and had been countenanced by the practice of the Primitive times. A point wherein they did observe a greater measure of Christian prudence and moderation, than their neighbour Churches; which in a more detestation of the See of Rome, allowed of nothing which had formerly been in use amongst them, because defiled with *Papish* Errors and abuses: and thereby utterly averting those of the *Papal* party from joining with them in the work, or coming over to them when the work was done. Whereas had they continued an allowable correspondence in these extraneous of Religion, with the Church of Rome; their party in the world had been far greater, and not so much stomached as it is. And so it was conceived by the *Marquess de Rhosie*, after Duke of *Sully* and Lord High-Treasurer of France, and one of the chief men of that party there: when being sent Ambassador to King James, from King Henry the fourth, he had observed the Majesty and Decency of Gods public Service, in some Cathedrals of this Kingdom; Religion would be some defaced and trod under foot if not preserved and fenced about with the hedge of Ceremonies.

As for the Government of the Church since the last Conversion, as by the piety and example of *Lucius* there were founded three Archbishopsricks, and 25 Bishopsricks, according to the number of the *Archie-Flamines*, and *Flamines* (whose great Revenues were converted to more sacred uses in the times of Idolatry:) So by the like pious care of Pope Gregory the Great, by whose means this last Conversion happened; Archbishopsricks, and Bishopsricks were designed to convenient places. The number 26 in all; to each Province twelve, besides the two Archbishopsricks and Metropolitans: wherein he had the happiness to have his desires fulfilled, though the number was not made complete till these later days, nor with such equal distribution, as he did intend. For in the Province of *Tork* laid waste and desolate by the *Danes*, and not so soon converted as the other was; the number of the Suffragan

Bishops came not up to his purpose, but did as much exceed in the Province of *Canterbury*: especially when *K. Henry* the 8th had incorporated *Wales* with *England* and founded five Episcopal Sees out of the ruins and Remains of some principal Monasteries: of which none but the Bishopric of *Chester* (and that of the Isle of *Man*, which maketh up the 27th, where laid out the Province of *Tork*, And so it stood notwithstanding the alterations of Religion, without any dispute, till *Calvin* having hammered out his new *Presbytery*, and recommended it to the use of all *Christian Churches* (the History whereof we had succinctly in the *Alpine Provinces*) found many apt Scholars in most places to decry this Order, though conformant to the word of God, and most pure Antiquity.

But the truth is, it was not so much the Authority of *Calvin*, or the malignant zeal of *Beza*, or the impetuous clamors of their Disciples, which caused the *Episcopal Order* to grow out of credit; as the *Avarice* of some great persons in Court and State, who greedily gaped after the poor remnant of their Possessions. It had been else a miracle that *Calvin's* Plat-form made only for the use of a private City, and not proportioned, nor so intended at the first, to the state of other Churches, especially where the Bishops had been instrumental in the reformation: should be so readily received in some Kingdoms, and so importantly and clamorously desired in others.

The most valorous Soldiers of this Country, when possessed by the *Britains*; where 1. *Cassibellane*, who twice repulsed the *Roman Legions*, though conducted by *Cæsar*; and had not a party here at home been formed against him, he had for ever done the like. 2. *Prasutagus*, King of the *Iconi*, 3. *Constantine* the Great, 4. *Arthur*, one of the *Worlds nine Worthies*. In the times of the *Saxons*, 5. *Guy* Earl of *Warwick*, 6. King *Edmund Ironside* and 7. *Canutus* the Dane. Under the *Normans*, of most note have been 1. *William* surnamed the Conqueror, 2. *Richard*, and 3. *Edward*, both the first of those names, so renowned in the Wars of the *Holy-Land*, 4. *Edward* the 3d, and 5. *Edward* the Black Prince, his Son, *dux fulminis belli*, as famous in the Wars of *France*: 6. *Henry* the 5th, and 7. *John Duke of Bedford* his Brother, of equal gallantry with the other. 8. *Montacute* Earl of *Salisbury*. 9. *Sir John Falstaff*, and 10. *Sir John Hawkwood*, of great esteem for valour in *France* and *Italy*: not to defend to later times. And for Sea Captains, those of most note, have been *Hankyn*, *Willoughby*, *Burroughs*, *Jenkinson*, *Drake*, *Frobisher*, *Cavendish* and *Greenville*, of some of which we have spoke already, and of the rest we may have an opportunity to speak more hereafter.

Scholars of most renown amongst us, 1. *Alexander*, one of the Founders of the University of *Paris*. *Beda*, who for his Piety and Learning obtained the Attribute or Adjunct of *Venerabilis*. Concerning which, the *Legends* tell us, that being blind, his Boy had knavishly conducted him to preach to a heap of stones; and that when he had ended his Sermon with the *Gloria Patri*, the very stones concluded, saying, *Amen, Amen, Venerabilis Beda*. But other of the Monkish Writers do assign this reason and both true alike; that at his death some unlearned Priest intending to honour him with an Epitaph, had thus far blundered on a verse, viz. *Hic sunt in fissa Bedæ ossa*: but because the Verse was yet imperfect, he went to bed to consider of it, leaving a space between the two last words thereof; which in the mourning he found filled up in a strange Character, with the word *Venerabilis*; and so he made his Verse, and *Beda* (pardon this diversion) obtained that Attribute. 2. *Anselm*, and 4. *Bradwardin*, Archbishops of *Canterbury*. Men famous for the times they lived in, 5. *Alexander* of *Hales*, Tutor to *Thomas Aquinas*, and *Bonaventure*. 6. *Thomas* of *Walden*, the

professed Enemy of *Wiceliff*, against whom he wrote 7. *John Wiceliff* Parson of *Lutterworth* in the Country of *Leicestershire*, who so valiantly opposed the Power and Errors of the Church of *Rome*; though he vented many of his own. Then came the time of the Reformation, 1. *John Jewel* Bishop of *Salisbury*, to whose Learned and Industrious Labours, in defence of the Religion here by *Law* established, we are still beholden. 2. Dr. *John Reynolds*, and 3. Mr. *Richard Hooker*, both of *Corpus Christi College* in *Oxon*; the first, a man of infinite reading, the second of as strong a judgment. 4. Dr. *Whitaker* of *Cambridge*, the Antagonist of the famous *Bellarmine*. 5. Dr. *Thomas Wilson*, and 6. Dr. *Lancelot Andrews*, both Bishops of *Windsor*, the Ornaments of their several times. 7. Bishop *Montague* of *Norwich*, a great Philologist and Divine. 8. Dr. *John Whitgift*, and 9. Dr. *William Laud*, Archbishops of *Canterbury*. Of which last, and his discourse against *the Jesuits*, Sir *Edward Dering* his professed Enemy, hath given this Character, that in that Book of his he had mizzed the *Jesuits*, and should strike the *Popists* under the fifth rib, when he was dead and gone: and that being dead, whereforever his grave should be, *PAULUS* (whose reputation he endeavored, and had almost finished) would be his perpetual Monument, and his Book his lasting Epitaph. And as for those who have stood up in maintenance of the Church of *Rome*, those of most note were Dr. *Harding*, the Antagonist of Bishop *Jewel*. 2. *Nic. Sanders*, and 3. Dr. *Thomas Stapleton*: to whose Writings the great Cardinal *Bellarmino* doth stand much indebted. 4. *Campan*, and 5. *Parsons*, both *Jesuites*; and 6. *William Reynolds*, a *Seminary Priest*; and the Brother of Dr. *John Reynolds* spoken of before. Of which two Brothers (by the way) it is very observable, that *William* was at first a *Presbyter* of the Church of *England*, and *John* trained up in *Pope* beyond the Seas, *William* out of an honest zeal to reduce his Brother to his Church, made a journey to him: where in a Conference between them it fell out, that *John* being overcome by his Brothers Arguments, returned into *England*, where he became one of the more strict or rigid sort of the *English Protestants*, and *William* being convinced by the Reasons of his Brother *John*, stayed beyond the Seas, where he proved a very violent and virulent *Papist*. Of which strange accident, Dr. *Alabaster*, who had made trial of both Religions, and amongst many notable Whimsies, had some fine Abilities, made this following Epigram; which for the Excellency thereof, and the Rarities of the Argument, I shall here subjoin,

*Bella inter geminos pluraquam Civilia Fratres,  
Traxerat ambigua Religiois apex.  
Ille Reformatæ Fidei pro partibus inquit;  
Iste Reformatandam denegat esse fidem.  
Propositis causæ rationibus, alter utrumque  
Concurrere pares, & occidere paros.  
Quod fuit in votis, Fratrem capis alter-utrumque;  
Quod fuit in fatis, perdidit utrumque fidem.  
Captivi gemini sine capivante fuerunt,  
Et victor victi transfuga castra petiit.  
Quod genus hoc pugna est, ubi victus gaudet uterque;  
Et tamen alter-uter se superasse docet?*

Which excellent Epigram, though not without great disadvantage to the *Latine Original*, I have thus translated:

In points of Faith we undetermined jars,  
Betwixt two Brothers kindled Civil Wars.  
One for the Churches Reformation stood;  
The other thought no Reformation good.

The points propos'd, they traversed the field  
With equal skill, and both together yield.  
As they desir'd, his Brother each subsidies;  
Yet such their Fate, that each his Faith did lose.  
Both Captives, none the prisoners thence do guide;  
The Victor flying to the Vanquish'd side.  
Both joy'd in being Conquer'd, (strange to say)  
And yet both mourn'd because both won the day.

And then for men of other Studies, 1. *Lindwood* the Canonist, 2. *Cajus*, and 3. *Covel*, eminent in the studies of the *Civil Laws*. 4. *Bradton*, and 5. *Brown* of old times; 6. *Dier*, and 7. *Coke* of late days, as eminent for their knowledge in the *Laws of England*. 8. *Johannes de Sacro Bofco*, the Author of the Book of the *Sphere*; and 9. *Roger Bacon*, a noted Mathematician in the darker times. 10. *Sir Francis Bacon* the Learned Viscount of *St. Albans*, of whom more hereafter. 11. *Sir Thomas More*, Lord Chancellor, one of the Rethorers of Learning to the life of Great Britain. 12. *Sir Henry Savile* of *Eaton*, the reviver of *Chrylogism*. 13. *Sir Henry Spelman*, a right Learned Antiquary, and a Religious assertor of the Churches Rights. 14. *Camden*, *Clarendon*, the *Pausanias* of the *British* Islands. 15. *Matthew Paris*, 16. *Roger Hoveden*, 17. *Henry* of *Huntingdon*, 18. *William* of *Malmesbury*, 19. *Matthæus Westminster*, and 20. *Thomas* of *Walsingham*; all known Historians. And finally for Poetry, 1. *Gower*, 2. *Lydgate*, a Monk of *Bury*; 3. the famous *Geoffrey Chaucer*, Brother in Law to *John of Gaunt* the great Duke of *Langcastr*; of which last *Sir Philip Sidney* used to say, that he marvelled how in those misty times he could see so clearly, and others in so clear times go so blindly after him. 4. *Sir Philip Sidney* himself, of whom and his *Arcadia*, more when we come to *Greece*. 5. The renowned *Spenser*, of whom and his *Fairy Queen*, in another place. 6. *Sam. Daniel*, the *Lucan*, 7. with *Michael Drayton*, the *Virg* of the *English Nation*. 8. *Beaumont*, and 9. *Fletcher*, not inferior unto *Terence* and *Plautus*, with 10. My friend *Ben. Jonson*, equal to any of the Ancients for the exactness of his Pen, and the decorum which he kept in the *Dramatic Poems*, never before observed on the *English Theatre*. Others there are as eminent both for Arts and Arms, as those here specified, of whom, as being still alive, I forbear to speak; according to that caution of the Historian, saying, *Vivorum ut magna admira-tio, ita censura est difficilis*.

But from the Men to return again unto the Country, we find it to be subject (according to the several respects of Church and State) to a treble division; viz. 1. into 6 *Circuits* designated to the Itinerary Judges: Secondly, into 22 *Episcopal Dioceses*. Thirdly, into 40 *Shires*. The Realm was first divided into *Circuits* by King *Henry* the Second, who appointed twice in the year, two of the most grave and Learned Judges of the Land, should in each *Circuit* administer Justice in the chief or head Towns of every County. Of these Judges, one sitteth on matters Criminal, concerning the life and death of Malefactors: the other in Actions Personal, concerning Title of Land, Debts, or the like, between party and party. The first *Circuit* (for we will begin at the West) comprehendeth the Counties of *Wilt*, *Somerset*, *Devon*, *Cornwall*, *Dorset*, and *Southampton*. The second containeth the Counties of *Oxford*, *Berks*, *Gloucester*, *Monmouth*, *Hertford*, *Warwick*, *Salop*, and *Stafford*. The third hath in it the Counties of *Surrey*, *Suffolk*, *Kent*, *Essex*, and *Hertford*. The fourth consisteth of the *Shires* of *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, *Huntingdon*, *Cambridge*, *Norfolk*, and *Suffolk*. The fifth of the *Shires* of *Northampton*, *Rutland*, *Lincoln*, *Nottingham*, *Darby*, *Leicester*, and *Warwick*. And the sixth and last, of the *Shires* of *Tork*, *Durham*, *Northumberland*, *Cumberland*, *Wiltmerland*, and *Lancaster*. So that in these six *Circuits* are numbered 38 *Shires*. The two remaining are *Middlesex*, and *Chester*: whereof the first is excepted, because of its vicinity to *London*; and the second as being a *County Palatine*, and having peculiar Judges and Counsellours to it self.

The second Division, but more ancient far in point of time, is that of *Dioceses*, 22 in all, proportioned according to the number of *Episcopal Sees*, each *Diocesis* having in it one or more *Arch-Deacons*, for dispatch of Ecclesiastical business; and every *Arch-Deacon* subdivided into Rural *Deanries*, fewer or more, according to the bigness and extent thereof. Of these there are but four in the Province of *Tork*, that is to say, the *Diocesses* of *Tork*, *Chester*, *Durham*, and *Carlisle*: the other 18 (together with the 4 of *Wales*) being reckoned into that of *Canterbury*. In respect of which great authority and jurisdiction on the Archbishops of *Canterbury* had anciently the titles of *Primates* and *Metropolitans* of all *England*; and for some Ages before the Reformation, used to take place in all General Councils, at the *Popes* right foot. Which Custom took beginning at the Council of *Laterane*, when *Urban* the second called *Anselm* the Archbishop of *Canterbury* from amongst the other Prelates then assembled, and placed him at his right foot, saying, *Includamus hunc in Orbe nostro tanquam altissimus Orbis Papat*. This happened *An. 1099*. They were anciently also *Legati nati* nati; which honourable Title was first given to Archbishop *Theobald*, by *Innocent* the Second, and continued unto the times of their Government, and to have the benefit of their Council, being men of Learning; both the Archbishops and the Bishops, were anciently privileged to have their place and suffrage in the Court of Parliament (as ever since any Parliaments were first held in *England*) as Peers of the Realm; and that too in a double respect: first in relation had to their sacred Office, and secondly to those temporal Estates and Baronies, which they held of the King. Yet did they not enjoy in the times of their greatness of power and flourishing, all the Privileges and Privileges of the temporal Barons: as neither being tried by their Peers in Criminal causes, but left to an Ordinary *juris*; nor suffered in examinations to make a Protection against their honour, to the truth of the Fact, but put unto their Oaths like others of the lower Clergy. As for their Ecclesiastical Courts, it was anciently ordered also, that besides such as appertained to the Archbishops themselves; besides those holden by the Chancellors and Arch-Deacons of every Bishop, in their several *Diocesses*; and some in many private Parishes which they call *Peculiar*: and finally, besides the Courts of *Visitation*, held every two years by the Arch-Deacons or their Official, and every third year by the Bishop himself in person, or his lawful Deputy: there should be also *Synods* or *Convocations*, which are the Parliaments of the Clergy, attended primarily for the Reforming of the Church in *Doctrine* and *Discipline*; and secondarily, for granting Tithes and Subsidies to the King: which *Synods*, whether they be National, or Provincial only, do naturally consist of all the Right Reverend Fathers, the Arch-bishops, Bishops, the Deans, Arch-Deacons, and one Prebend out of each Cathedral, and a certain number of the Clergy, (two for every *Diocesis*) elected by the rest to serve for them in that great Assembly: the Clergy not being bound antiently by any Act, to which they had not given consent by those their *Proxies*: Of which so called and met together, the Bishops sitting by themselves make the Upper House, the Deans, Arch-deacons, and the rest, do constitute the Lower House of Convocation.







the Wealth and treasure of the Kingdom. By means whereof, that every day increaseth in wealth and beauty; the reit (except *Britol* only) do decay as fenibly; that City being like the *Spleen* in the body natural, the monstrous growth whereof fareth all the rest of the Members. *Liene excrefcens, reliquum corpus contabefcit*, as the Doctors have it.

There are in *England* but two Universities, which may equallize, may ten of all other Countries (so that *Paris* be not in the number) most of them being no better than our Colleges of *Wigton*, *Exon*, or *Winchester*; and none so liberally endowed, as some one of those in the Universities. Of which there are 16 in *Cambridge*, some of them called only by the name of *Halls*, but these endowed with Lands and Fellowships as the others are. In *Oxford* there are 18 Colleges endowed with Lands, besides *five Halls*, where Students live at their own charges; in both of them Professors of the Arts and Sciences, as also of Divinity, Law, Physick, and the Learned Languages, with liberal Salaries, and in each to the number of 3000 Students, so regular in their lives and conversations, as are not to be found in the World besides. The fairer and more ancient, *Oxford*, which of long time, together with *Paris* in *France*, *Bononia* in *Italy*, and *Salamanca* in *Spain*, hath been honoured with the Title of *Generale Studium*. For that the University of *Cambridge*, though giving up her hand to her Sister of *Oxford*, the may take place of all the Universities in the World besides is not so long standing as that of *Oxford*, is evident by the testimony of *Robertus de Remyngton*, cited by *Malice Camden*, viz. *Roganne Edwardo primo*, (it should rather be read *secundo*) *de studio Gradibus factis ad Academicam, fecti Oxoniensis*: where the word *ficti* doth not import an identity of the time; but a relation to *Oxford*, as to the pattern. We see this truth yet clearer in the *Wall* of *Pope John* the 21, the contemporary of our *Edward* the Second, as I find in the work of that great Searcher of *Academical* Antiquities *Mr. Brian Trivine*. *Apollistica Auctoritate statimimus* (saith the Bull) *quod Collegium Magistrorum et Scholarium ejusdem studii* (speaking of *Cambridge*) *Universitas sit censenda, &c.* But what need more than the Resolution of the *Commons* of the first Parliament holden under *K. James*? For when the Clerk of that House had put the name of *Cambridge* before *Oxford*, they taking indistinctly that *Hythron Proteron*, commanded the Antiquities of both Universities to be searched, and after search made, gave the place to *Oxford*. But to proceed, the University of *Cambridge* as it was much of later Foundation, so was it long before it grew into esteem; inasmuch, that when *William* of *Wansfete* Bishop of *Winchester*, and Founder of *Magdalen* College in *Oxon*, (whereof I was once an unworthy Member) perfwaded King *Henry* the Sixth to erect a College in *Oxford*, as some of the Kings his Predecessors had done before him: *immo potius Cantabrigie* (replied the King) *Ut dux sit fieri possit in Anglia Academicam habeam*. Now, saith the King in *Cambridge* rather, that fo, if possible, I may have two Universities in my Realm of *England*.

As for the Story of this Country, that it was first peopled out of *Gaul*, is affirmed by *Cesar*, and proved by many strong and concluding Arguments; as their Religion, Manners, Languages, Customs, and the names of the one to the other. To omit therefore the Fable of *Brute*, and the Catalogue of 68 Kings, which are said to have reigned here successively before the coming of the Romans: Certain it is, that *Cesar* found the Country canted into many Kingdoms (four in *Kent* alone) and the people to be very rude and illiterate. Such Learning as they had was locked up in the breasts of the *Druides*, who committed nothing into Writing, and by that means kept the

People in continual ignorance: communicating what they knew to none but those of their own Order, and therein being fought to by the *Druides* or Priests of *Gaul*; who came over into this Island to them, and did from them receive the knowledge of their sacred Myteries. Being conquered or discovered rather by *Julius Cesar*, it was not so much as looked after by the two next Emperors: *Augustus* and *Tiberius* counting it an high point of Wildom, not to extend the Empire beyond the Ocean. *Caligula* had once a mind to the Adventure, but he durst not follow it. But *Claudius*, his Successor, undertook the Enterprize, solicited thereunto by *Vericus* a noble Briton, who for sedition and some practices against the publick, was expelled the Country. Hereupon *Aulus Plautius* is sent over with some Roman Forces, by whom and *P. Ostorius Scapula*, his Successor, *Cadigonus* and *Caracallus* two Kings of the Britains, were severally overcome in battel, a Roman Colony planted at *Camalodunum*, (now *Maldon* in *Essex*) and the Southern parts thereof reduced to the form of a Province. After this time by little and little the whole was conquered, as far as to the *Frythes* of *Dunbarton* and *Edinburgh*. Agriculture in the time of *Domitian*, having the happiness and good fortune to go beyond the furthest of this Predecessors; and so much moderation not to venture further, where there was nothing to be got but blows, cold, and hunger.

At the first entrance of the Romans, the Island was divided into several Nations, each governed by its own Kings and particular Princes, different in their ends and counsels, and so more easily subdued by united Forces. The principal of which (for it is needless to make mention of inferior Clans) where 1. the *Demmonii*, containing *Dawshire*, and *Cornwal*, whose chief Cities were *Ipsa*, now *Exeter* and *Velva* near the Town of *Falmouth* in *Cornwal*. 2. The *Durovorigi*, inhabiting only in the County of *Dorset*, whose chief City was *Durnom* or *Durnova*, which we now call *Dorchester*. 3. The *Belge*, planted in the Counties of *Somerset*, *Southampton*, and *Wilt*, whose chief Cities were *Aque Calide*, now *Bath*; *Venta Belgarum*, now *Winchester*; and *Sorbidunum*, the seat of old *Salisbury*. 4. The *Atrebatii*, confined within *Devshire* only, the chief City of whom was *Gualena*, where now is *Wallingford*. 5. The *Regni*, possessed of *Wessex* and *Surrey*, whose chief Cities were *Vindeli*, now *Winchester*; and *Neomagus*, situate some ten miles from *London*. 6. The *Kantiani*, or the *Kentish*, having *Dumonia*, now *Canterbury*; *Dubris*, now *Dover*; and *Rheupie*, now called *Richborough*, for their principal Cities. 7. The *Trinobantes* of *Middlesex*, and *Essex*, where *London* called afterwards *Augusta Trinobantum*; and *Camalodunum* the first Roman Colony, now called *Maldon*, the Seat-Royal of *Cymbelinus*, King of the *Trinobantes* in the time of the Romans. 8. The *Cantabraci*, dwelling in the Counties of *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, and *Hertford*, whose Towns of most importance were *Magenium*, now called *Dunstable*; and *Verulamium*, (near *St. Albans*) the strongest Hold the Britains had in their Wars with *Cesar*. The *Iconi*, living in the Counties of *Suffolk*, *Norfolk*, *Huntington*, and *Cambridge*; their principal Cities being *Fila Paugitani*, now *St. Edmundsbury*; *Sito-magus*, now *Thetford*; *Durois*, now *Gudnacholster*; and *Combortum*, or *Cambridge*. 10. *Coritani*, who took up the whole Counties of *Lincoln*, *Leicester*, *Rutland*, *Nottingham*, *Northampton*, and *Darby*; their principal Towns of which were *Lincoln*, now *Lincoln*; *Ruge*, where now is *Leicester*; *Gusefome* not far from *Littleborough*, now called *Bridge-Crofton*; *Agdoes*, now *Leighton*, a small Village near *Newark*, upon *Trent*; *Triponum*, now *Torrey*, not far from *Northampton*. 11. The *Brigantes*, the greatest Nation of the Island, filling all *Yorkshire*, the Bishoprick of

*Durham*, *Cumberland*, *Wigmoreland*, and the County Palatine of *Lancaster*, in a word all the North of *England*, (except *Northumberland*, the dwelling of the (12) *Ostodini*, whose chief City Town was *Brennium*, thought now to be *Ribchester* in *Riddelsdale*.) Principal places of which be large and potent Nation, were *Ipsanum*, now *Aldbrough* in the North Riding; *Eboracum* or *York*, in the West Riding; and *Pensaria*, thought to be *Beverly*, in the East Riding of *Yorkshire*; *Vindonum*, where now is *Winchester*, in the Bishoprick; *Epiacum*, now *Pop Castle*, in *Cumborland*; *Calatun*, now *Wharfedale* in *Wigmoreland*; and *Ribidunum*, now *Ribblesdale* in the County Palatine of *Lancaster*. 13. The *Caracii*, seated in the Counties of *Chesher*, *Salop*, *Worcester*, *Stafford*, and *Warwick*, whose principal Towns were, *Devania*, or *Legio vicinia* *Victrix*, now *Welf-Chesher*; *Orcinium*, now *Worcester*, an ignoble Village; *Pennorcinum*, now *Peckridge*, not far from *Stafford*; *Brannogenium*, now *Worcester*; *Munton*, now *Mansfield*, on the River *Avon*. 14. And last of all, the *Dubni* of *Oxford*, and *Gloucestershire*: Principal places of the which were *Darcinia*, now *Dorchester*, seven miles from *Oxford*, and *Corinnum*, or *Cyrenester*, near the head of the *Thames*. Such names as are comprehended under the name of *Wales*, and *Scotland*, shall be remembered when we come to speak of those Countries.

These, and the rest of *Wales* and *Scotland* (as far as the Romans did proceed, being once subdued, Britain became a Member of the Roman Empire; yet so that many of the Tribes had their own Kings, and were suffered to govern by their own Law: it being a known Custom amongst the Romans, as we find in *Tacitus*, *habere sinitis instrumenta de Reges*, to permit Kings sometimes in the conquered Countries, making them instrumental to the peoples bondage. And it is said of *Lucius Venn* the Roman Emperor, that having put an end to the *Parthian War*, *Reges Regibus*, *Provincias Comitibus suis regendas* did: he gave those King Kingdoms he had conquered to be ruled by Kings; the Provinces to be governed by Provincial Earls. Kings of which kind were *Cadigonus* and *Prasutagus*, spoken of by *Tacitus*; *Lucius*, before mentioned, the first Christian King, and *Coelus* the Father of *Helenus*, Mother of *Constantine* the Great. But as afterwards in the *Heptarchie* of the Saxons, that King who overruled the rest, and was of most power and estimation, was called the Monarch of the English: so probable enough it is, that amongst the British Kings, who was in most credit with the Romans, or of most power amongst his neighbours, might be permitted to assume the Title of King of Britain. The Catalogue of whom from *Cassibela* to *Constantine*, I have here subjoined, according to the tenor of the British History,

#### The Kings of Britain after the coming in of the Romans.

##### A. Ch.

1. *Cassibela*, King of the *Trinobantes*, Commander of the Britains in the War against *Julius Cesar*.
2. *Ticonantius*.
3. *Cymbelin*.
4. *Gaidorius*.
45. *Arviragus*, by *Helior Boetius*, called *Prasutagus*, in whose time Britain was subdued by *Aulus Plautius*, sent hither from the Emperor *Claudius*.
73. *Marius*.
73. *Coelus*, the supposed Founder of *Colchester*.

180. 8. *LUCIUS* the first Christian King of Britain, and of all the World: who dying without Issue, left the Roman Emperor his Heir.
207. 9. *Severus*, Emperor of Rome, and King of Britain.
211. 10. *Bassianus Caracalla*, Son of *Severus*, Emperor of Rome after his Father, who lost the Kingdom of Britain to
218. 11. *Caracallus*, a Native of the Island; who rebelling against *Caracalla*, obtained the Kingdom for himself.
225. 12. *Allectus*.
232. 13. *A. Valerianus*.
240. 14. *Coelus* II. the Father of *Helenus*.
289. 15. *Constantine*, Emperor of Rome, in right of *Helenus* his Wife, succeeded on the death of *Coelus* the 2d.
16. *Constantine* the Great, the Son of *Helenus* and *Constantine*, who added his Estates in Britain to the Roman Monarchy.

But to proceed, Britain being thus made a Member of the Roman Empire, it was at first divided into three Provinces only, that is to say, *Britannia prima*, (so called because first subdued) containing all the Counties on the South side of the *Thames*, and those inhabited by the *Trinobantes*, *Iconi*, and *Cantabraci*, whose *Metropolis* or chief City was *London*. 2. *Britannia secunda*, comprising all the Nations on the Further side of the *Thames*, whose chief City was *Cat Leu* upon *York*, in the County of *Manum*; and 3. *Maxima Caesariensis*, including all the rest of the Northern border, whereof the *Metropolis* was *York*; each Province having several Cities, 28 in all. Accordingly, the Church conforming to the Platform of the Civil State, there were appointed for the Government hereof eight and twenty Bishops, residing in those several Cities: three of the which residing in the principal Cities, where honoured with the Title of *Metropolitans*, and a superiority over all the Bishops of their several and respective Provinces, and in this state it stood till the time of *Constantine*, who in his new moulding of the Empire, altered the bounds, and enlarged the number of the Provinces; adding two more unto and out of the former, viz. *Valentia*, containing all the Country from the *Firth* of *Solway*, and the *Pict-mall* on the South, to the *Firth* of *Edenburgh* and *Dunbarton* North, and *Flavia Caesariensis*, comprehending all between *Thames* and *Humber*, the rest betwixt the *Humber* and the bounds of *Valentia*, continuing under the old name of *Maxima Caesariensis*, though now made less than any of the other four. The number of the Provinces being thus enlarged, he made the whole a full and complete *Dioecesis* of the Roman Empire (whereas *Spain* had *Tingitana* added to it, as before was shewn) subordinate as *Spain* was also the *Præfectus Prætorio Galliarum*, and governed by his *Vicarius* or Lieutenant General. Of which division, or rather subdivision of the Roman Provinces, there was no other alteration made in the Ecclesiastical government, but that the British Church became more absolute and independent (as each *Dioecesis* had) residing in the same City with the *Vicar* or Lieutenant General (which was then at *Tork*) of as great power and jurisdiction in the Isle of Britain as any Patriarch at *Alexandria*, *Rome*, or *Antioch*; in their several *Patriarchates*. The *Metropolitans* were no more than before they were: It being ordered by a Canon of the Council of *Chalcedon*, that their number should not be augmented by any alteration made of the Roman Provinces. As for the Forces which the Romans kept here in continual pay, as well to keep their Coasts and

Frontiers against the Enemy, as for retaining of the Natives in their due obedience; they came in! (if *Panorol* be not mistaken in his reckoning) to 23000 Foot, & 2000 Horse: three Legions keeping here, their cantant and continual Residence, that is to say, the sixth Legion, furnished *Vidrix* at *Tork*; the 20th Legion, furnished *Alidrix*, at *Wet-Chester*; and the second Legion, sometimes at *Ipsa Damnonium*, which is now *Caer Leon* up on *Ush*. Which Legions with their *Aids* and *Cohorts*, may well make up the number spoken of before. Of to high estimation was this Island in the State of *Rome*.

Yet could not all these Forces preserve the Country from foreign Enemies; but that in the declining of the *Roman* Empire, the *Saxons* made great spoils on the coasts thereof; as did the *Scots* and *Picts* on the Northern borders: against all which the *Romans* held out well enough, and made good their ground; till the recalling of the *Legions* out of *Britain* for defence of *Italy* it self, then waited and destroyed by the barbarous Nations. Which happened in or about the year of Christ 407, and some 470 years from the first invasions; *Honorius* being at that time the *Roman* Emperor, and *Vitorinus* the last Governor for the Empire, in the Isle of *Britain*. For though the noble *Aetius*, on the Petition and complaint of the slaughtered people, unmercifully butchered by the *Scots* and *Picts*, sent some small Forces to assist them against those Enemies; yet were they presently called back for the defence of *Gaul*, against the *Hunners* breaking in upon it. And then the wretched *Britains* hopefull of all help from *Rome*, and being unable, by their own strength to repel the Enemy, by reason of their long ease and dilute of Arms, applied themselves to *Aldroenus* King of *Armorica* in *France*, (called *Little Britain*) a Prince extracted from the same stock, for relief and succour. Whose Brother *Constantine* (according to the *British* story) passing over with a competent Army, and having valiantly repelled the barbarous people, was crowned King of *Britain*, the first of a new race of Kings, which swayed the Scepter, with much trouble and continual conflicts; either against the *Scots* or *Saxons*, till they were finally subdued and shut up in *Wales*. Of whose most observation in the course of the story were, 1. *Constantine* the first King, and the restorer of the Country to Peace and quiet, traitorously murdered by a *Pict*, 2. *Vortiger*, E. of the *Guspers*, (now *Cornwall*) Protector of *Constantine* the Son of *Constantine*, taken out of a Monastery; after whose death, (wherein he was conceived to have had an hand) he got the Kingdom to himself, but being unable to defend it against the Enemy, and make his title all good against the other children of *Constantine*, first called in the *Saxons*, 3. *Vortimer*, eldest Son of *Vortiger*, who overthrew the *Saxons* in many battles; but in the midst of his Successes was poisoned by *Roxena* a *Saxon* Lady, second Wife of *Vortiger*, 4. *Arthur*, one of the Worlds nine Worthies, of whom the *Monkish* Writers, and other *Legendaries*, report so many idle and impossible actions. Doubtless he was a Prince of most perfect virtue; a great preserver of his Country from approaching ruin, and worthy the Pen of an able *Panegyrist*; by whom his brave achievements might have come entire unto us, without the intermixture of those feats of *Chivalry*, asfabulated to him and his Knights of the Round Table. For by the overtraining of some *Monkish* Writers, *Gosfrey* of *Monmouth*, and the rest, they have given too just occasion to posterity to suspect that virtue, which they intended to advance; and filled us with as much ignorance of the story, as admiration of the persons. But this hath not been the ill hap of King *Arthur*, and his Nobles only; *Charlemain*, and the *Twelve Peers* of *France*, men of great virtue and renown, suffering as deeply in the same

kind by the folly of the *French Romances*. It is affirmed of this *Arthur*, (but how true I know not) that he began the custom of celebrating the *Nativity* of our Lord and Saviour for the twelve days following, with such pastimes and sports as are (or have been used of late) by the Lords of *Misrule* in some Gentlemen's houses: an Institution which the *Scottish* Writers of those times much blame. Perhaps not unjustly; it being a time more fit for our devotions than such rude sports. But to proceed, King *Arthur*, dying left the Crown to the 5. *Constantine*, the Son of *Cador* Duke of *Cornwall* his nearest Kinsman, slain by *Aureliant Cananus*, his own Nephew, who succeeded after him; which faction did so weaken the distressed *Britains*, that they were forced to withdraw themselves beyond the *Severn*: as 6. *Caradoc*, or *Caradoc*, by the joint Forces of the *Saxons*, to change the plain Countries beyond the *Severn* for the steeper, but more fruitful Mountains. Of the rest, till *Cadwalader*, there is little left of any certainty, but their names only; which are thus ranked in the second race of

#### The Kings of Britain after the withdrawing of the Romans.

- A. C.
- 433 1. *Constantine*, 10.
  - 443 2. *Constantine*, 3.
  - 446 3. *Vortiger*, 18.
  - 464 4. *Vortimer*, his Son, 7.
  - 471 5. *Vortiger* (again), 10.
  - 481 6. *Aureliant Ambrosius*, 19.
  - 500 7. *Uter Pendragon*, 6.
  - 506 8. *Arthur*, 36.
  - 542 9. *Constantine II*, 4.
  - 546 10. *Aurel. Conan*, 30.
  - 576 11. *Vortiger*, 4.
  - 580 12. *Malgo*, 6.
  - 586 13. *Caradoc*, or *Caradoc*, 27.
  - 613 14. *Cadwalader*, 22.
  - 635 15. *Cadwalader*, 43.
  - 627 16. *Cadwalader*, the last King of the *Britains*, who on a superstitious zeal travelled in a pilgrimage to *Rome*, there to receive the habit of a Religious Order from the hands of Pope *Sergius*, whom he dyed not long after, Anno 689. After whose death, his Successors were no longer called Kings of *Britain*, but Kings or Princes of *Wales*. And there we shall be sure to find them.

And so the *Britains* leave the Stage, and the *Saxons* enter; a great and potent Nation amongst the *Germans*, but greater by the aggregation of many people, under their name and service, than in themselves: the *Jutes* and *Angles* joining with them, and passing in Account as the same one Nation, their Countries different as their names until this Conjunction; but neighbouring near enough to unite together: the *Angles* dwelling at the first in that part of the *Cimbrian Chersonese*, which we now call *Slavick*, where still the Town called *Angelen*, doth preserve their memory: the *Jutes* upon the North of them, where there is still a Province called by the name of *Jutland*; the *Saxons* South of both in the Dukedom of *Holsatia*, situate in the very neck of that *Chersonese*; where it joincth with *Germany*; joining their powers, they spread themselves with good success, to the South and West; of which more hereafter. And growing Master of the Seas, infected with continual Piracies the Coasts of *Britain*; occasioning herein an Officer of great trust and power, appointed to defend and scour those Seas, in the *Notitia*, called *Comes Littoris Saxonici*. Known by this means amongst the *Britains*, they were called in by *Vortiger*, to aid him against the *Scots* and *Picts*; whom they overcame in a pitched

pitched field near *Stanford*, in the County of *Lincoln*: for to far had the barbarous people marched without any resistance. Reward for this Victory with the Isle of *Thanet*, and after with the whole County of *Kent*, they began to quarrel with their Hosts whom by degrees they dispossest of all the Country on this side of *Severn*; parceling it into seven Kingdoms, called the *Saxons Heptarchie*, that is to say, 1. Of *Kent*, 2. Of the *South-Saxons*, 3. Of the *West-Saxons*, 4. Of the *East-Saxons*, 5. Of the *East-Angles*, 6. Of the *North-Humberts*, and 7. of the *Mercians*. The beginning period, and Kings of which several Kingdoms, and the uniting of them into one Monarchy, we next to shew.

1. The Kingdom of *KENT*, confined within that County only, was begun by *Hengist*, who with his Brother *Horfus* had the leading of the *Saxons* Forces, at their first entry into *Britain*, An. 455. being the sixth year after their first coming in: who reformed *Paganism* to this Country, when the rest of the Isle was *Christian*, occasioned the distinction of *Kent* and *Chesham*. The *Kentish* afterwards the first of the *Saxons* who received the Gospel, by the preaching of *Augustine* the Monk, the Apostle of the *English Saxons*. Principal Cities of this Kingdom, where 1. *Canterbury*, once the Regal seat of the Kings of *Kent*, till given by *Ethelbert*, on his conversion to *Augustine* the first Archbishop thereof and his Successors; afterwards the See of those Archbishops, who had here their Palace and Cathedral, the Kings removing to *Reudber*, seated in the East part of the Country, about seven or eight miles from the Sea, a little Brook serving it thence with some commodities. A City of more Antiquity and fame, than beauty; being now ruinous and decayed, and having nothing in it worth observation, but the Cathedral Church, first founded by *Ethelbert* before mentioned; but afterwards new built upon his foundations, in the form it now stands by Archbishop *Laufank*, *Will. Carboyle*, and some other of their Successors in the said See. The Arch-episcopal Palace is a goodly building, and the ruins of *S. Augustines* Monastery shew what once it was. 2. *Dover*, anciently called *Dubris*, seated on the Sea-front, where the passage is shortest into *France*; for that cause Fortified with a strong and (in those days accounted an) impregnable Castle; clemeed one of the keys of *England*; and the chief of the *Cinque Ports*; now giving the title of an Earl to the house of *Husford*, chief of the Family of the *Carvers*, nearly allied to Queen *Elizabeth* of Famous memory. 3. *Recheber*, seated on the *Medway*, not far from *Chatham* (the situation of the Royal Navy) ancient City, but of no greatness; in former times called *Dunbrin*, after that *Raffa*, thence the name of *Raff-Chatham* Bishops See, the second for Antiquity in all the Island. 4. *Maidstone*, upon the *Medway* also near the head thereof, the largest and most beautiful in all this Country, and most commodiously seated for publick business.

#### The Earls of Kent.

- A. Ch.
- 455 1. *Hengist*, the first King.
  - 488 2. *Erik*, or *Ofsa*.
  - 512 3. *Offa*.
  - 532 4. *Immirek*.
  - 561 5. *Ethelbert*, the first Christian King of this Country.
  - 617 6. *Edwald*.
  - 641 7. *Ercmbert*.
  - 665 8. *Egbert*.
  - 673 9. *Lotharius*.
  - 686 10. *Edrick*.
  - 693 11. *Wighard*.
  - 720 12. *Egbert II*.

- 749 13. *Ethelbert II*.
- 754 14. *Alricus*.
- 793 15. *Ethelbert III*.
- 797 16. *Guthred*.

805 17. *Bardred*, the last King of *Kent*, who lost both life and Kingdom to *Egbert*, King of *Wessex*, or the *West-Saxons*, Anno. 824. The Progeny of *Hengist* having been before extinguished in the person of *Alricus*, overthrown and slain by *Offa*, the great King of the *Mercians*.

II. The Kingdom of *SOUTH-SEX*, or of the *SOUTH-SAXONS*, was begun by *Ella*, a noble Captain of that People, An. 488. It contained only the two Counties of *Suffex* and *Surrey*, which were thence denominated, the first so called *quasi South-Sex*, the Country of the *South-Saxons*; the second *quasi South-Reg*, as lying on the South-side of the River *Thames*, in the same sense as *S. Maries* Church on the other side of that River (in respect of *London*) is called *S. Mary Over Reg*. The *Christian* Faith suppressed here, as in other places, was restored again in the time of King *Edmund*, by the preaching of *S. Wilfride*, Archbishop of *York*, living here in Exile. Places of most importance in it, were 1. *Chichester*, built by *Cissa* the 2d King thereof, and called *Cissanaster*, encompassed almost round with the River *Lavant*, falling not far off into the Sea: the chief Town of *Suffex*, and a Bishops See, removed hither from *Scalpy*, a Demy-Island, in the time of the *Norman* Conqueror, where it was first planted by Archbishop *Wilfride*. 2. *Hastings* one of the *Cinque* ports, in *Suffex* also; the landing place of the *Normans*, and famous for the overthrow of King *Harold* in the fields adjoining. 3. *Gustaford*, upon the River *Wye*, the chief Town of *Surrey*, well built, and having in it two Parish-Churches. 4. *Arundel*, in a Dale or Valley on the River *Arun*, and from thence so named: belonging to the Crown in the time of the *Saxons*, when given by the Testament of King *Affide* unto *Aethelric*, his Brothers Son. Of great note for a beautiful and capacious Castle; but more for giving the title of Earl to the noble Families of the *Albanyes*, the *Fitz-Alans*, and the *Howards*: this last of such a large and diffused Nobility, that in the year 1641, there were no fewer than 8. *Howards*, in the house of *Pecore*. 5. *Kingston* upon the *Thames*, so called to distinguish it from *Kingham* upon *Hull* in *Yorkshire*; heretofore Famous for the Coronation of the Monarchs of the *English-Saxons*, whence it had the name of *Kingham*, or the Kings Town. This Kingdom had only three Kings, crowned in the infancy thereof by more potent neighbours.

#### The Kings of the South-Saxons.

- A. Ch.
- 488 1. *Ella*, the first King.
  - 514 2. *Cissa*, the Son of *Ella*, who lost his life and Kingdom to *Cerdic* King of the *West-Saxons*.
  - 530 3. *Cheulric*, King of *West-Sex*, called himself King of the *South-Saxons*.
  - 4. *Edelmarch*, or *Eidwold*, the first Christian King, overcome and slain in battle by *Cadwalader*, King of the *West-Saxons*, Anno 687. After whose death *Berthar* and *Aethelm*, two Brethren, took on themselves the Government, with the title of *Dukes* or Captains; and held it for a little while. But not being able to withstand the puissance of the *West-Saxons*, this Kingdom was subdued by *Ina*, the Successor of *Cadwalader*; by whom united to that Crown.

III. The Kingdom of *WEST-SEX*, or the *WEST-SAXONS*, the third in order, and that which did in time prevail

prevail over all the rest; contained the Counties of *Cornwall, Devon, Somerset, Dorset, Wilts, Southampton, and Berks*: begun by *Cerdic*, a noble Commander of the *Saxons*, arriving with new Forces out of *Germany*, Anno 495. who having overcome the *Britains* of this Western Tract, conducted by *Natanland* their Chieftain, entitled himself King of the *Wight-Saxons*, Anno 522. The *Christian* Faith suppressed here, as elsewhere, was restored again in the time of *King*, their first *Christian* King; by the preaching of *S. Birinus* Bishop of *Dorchester* near *Oxford*, then a great City, no fewer than ten parishes, now reduced to one.

Chief Cities of this Kingdom, were 1. *Exeter*, a fair and goodly City, and a Bishops See, removed thither from *Cridington* or *Kinton*, by *Leofricus*, An. 1049. Seated upon the Bank of the River *Ex*, whence the name of *Exeter*; environed with deep ditches, and very strong Walls, in compass about a mile and half extends the Suburbs, in which are contained in all 15 Parish Churches, besides the Minster, a beautiful and stately Fabric. 2. *Bath*, so called from the *Baths* there being, the chief City of *Somerset*, by the *Latins* called *Aqua Solis*; by the *Greeks* *θεῖα ὕδατος* for the self same reason. Situate in a low Valley, environed about with Hills very steep and high, from whence come many Rivulets and fresh Springs, to the great Commodity of the people. A fine near Town, and beautified with as near a Church, heretofore a Monastery, partner with *Wells*, the Bishop's See, in the title Episcopal, and gives the Title of an Earl to the Noble Family of the *Bourchiers*. 3. *Palmouth* in *Cornwall*, seated upon a large and capacious Bay, so full of Creeks and Roads, capable of the best Ships, that it is said an hundred Sail of Ships may be lodged therein with such convenience, that from the top of the one, the Mast of another is not to be seen; the mouth or entrance of it defended for the greater safety with two very strong Castles built by *Henry* the 8th, that of *S. Mandis* on the East, and that of *Pendans* (commonly called *Pendennis*) upon the West. 4. *Dorchester*, the chief Town of *Dorsetshire*, which is thence denominated, by *Antoninus* called *Durnovaria*, the principal at that time of the *Durotriges*: an Inland Town, and consequently of no great trading: not so much famous for ought else as giving the Title of a Marquess to *Henry* Earl of *Kingdom* of the noble Family of the *Pierreponts*. 5. *Wilton*, the head Town, in those times of *Wiltshire*, and a Bishops See, honoured with the residence of several Bishops. But by translating of the See to *Sarum* (or *Sarisbury*) as the fitter place, and carrying thither there withal the thowrware which before was here; it fell by little and little into decay; and is now hardly worth the reputation of a great Town. 6. *Winchester* called *Ventia* in the times of the *Romans*, by the *Saxons*, *Vent-easter*, situate on the banks of a pleasant River, the seat Royal of the *Wight-Saxon* Kings, who had here their Palace called *Wolsey*: so named from the Kings of the *Wolpian* Family, and the situation of it in the circlings of the forefard River, which the old *Saxons* called an Eye: not from the *Wool-Staple* here kept, as some; much less from Cardinal *Wolsey*, as others most absurdly think. The house given after to the Bishops, and made their Palace. The Town in compass two miles, besides the Suburbs; commodiously seated in a low place, between very steep Hills, by which it is defended both from cold and wind. Afflicted very much since those times both by War and Fire, half of the ground within the Town being Fields and Gardens; but still adorned with a Magnificent Cathedral, and a gallant (but no great) Castle, bravely mounted upon an Hill for defence and prospect; besides a *College*, and an *Hospital* added since those days. 7. *Southampton*, conveniently seated on

an Arm of the Sea, capable of Ships of burden to the very Key; which maketh it one of the richest Towns in those parts of *England*. Well built, of fair large streets, beautified with five Parish Churches, and fortified with high Walls, a double Ditch, and a right strong Castle: but the Castle now decayed and ruined. 8. *Reading*, on the Banks of the River *Kennet*, where it falleth into the *Thames*, by which means it hath the convenience of both Rivers: a Town of great Trade for Clothing, well built, and of three Parish Churches; heretofore beautified with a strong Castle, and a goodly Monastery, but both decayed. 9. *Windsor*, called *Wandelsford* on the old *Saxon*, situate near the Banks of the *Thames* on a rising Ground, which gives it a fair prospect over all the Country; adorned in succeeding times with a Palace Royal of the Kings of *England*, and the Seat of the Order of the *Garter*, 10. *Wallingford*, the *Guallena* of the *Ancients*, and then the chief Town of the *Attrebatii*, as it was afterwards (in the time of the *Saxons*) of the County of *Berk*; a mile in compass at that time within the Walls, fortified with an impregnable Castle, and adorned with twelve Parishes. So delatored by a Plague, An. 1348. that there is now but one Church left, hardly Inhabitants enough to keep it in repair; and nothing of the Walls left (as much of the Castle) but the track and ruins.

The Kings of the *Wight-Saxons*.

A. Ch.	
522	1 <i>Cerdic</i> , the first Kings, 17.
539	2 <i>Kenic</i> , 29.
565	3 <i>Celtingus</i> , or <i>Chestine</i> , 10.
595	4 <i>Celric</i> , 5.
600	5 <i>Cestwolf</i> , 14.
614	6 <i>Kingi</i> , the first <i>Christian</i> King.
646	7 <i>Renewalchin</i> , 31.
677	8 <i>Sigbert</i> , 1.
678	9 <i>Ejwin</i> , 2.
680	10 <i>Centwin</i> .
687	11 <i>Ceadwal</i> .
690	12 <i>Ina</i> , who first gave the <i>Peter-pence</i> to the Church of <i>Rome</i> .
725	13 <i>Ethelard</i> , 14.
739	14 <i>Cuthbert</i> , 16.
755	15 <i>Sigbert</i> II. 1.
756	16 <i>Kinulph</i> , 31.
787	17 <i>Birric</i> , 13.
800	18 <i>Egbert</i> , the most Puissant King of the <i>Wight-Saxons</i> , who united all the <i>Hepetabrie</i> into one Estate, of whom fee more amongst the Monarchs of the <i>Saxons</i> , and the Kings of <i>England</i> .

IV. The Kingdom of *EAST-SEX*, or the *EAST-SAXONS*, was begun about the year 527, by *Ethelwin*, descended from *Woden*, the common Progenitor of the *Saxons*; from whom we have the name of *Woden-day*, or *Wodensday*, as they called it formerly. It contained only the Counties of *Middlesex*, *Essex*, and so much of *Hartfordshire*, as is in the *Diocesis* of *London*. The *Christian* Faith expelled here as in other places, was restored again in the time of *Sebert*, the Founder of the *Abbey* Church of *S. Peter* in *Westminster*, by the Preaching of *Mellitus* the first Bishop of *London* after the entrance of the *Saxons*, suppressed again by *Seward*, and *Sigbert*, the Sons of *Sebert*; but settled stronger than before by *Codda*, the next Bishop. Principal Cities of this Kingdom, besides *London*, spoken of already, were. 1. *Westminster*, situate in those times a mile from *London*, now adjoining to it. The See of the Archbishop of *London* in the time of the *Britains*; afterwards by the *Saxons* called *Thorn-ye*, or the *Thorny* Island; till the new Minster built by *Sebert* as before is laid, and the *Wigton* situation of it in regard of *St. Pauls*, built at the same time by *Ethelbert* the King

of *Kent*; gained it this new name. A City honoured with the Seat of the Kings of *East-SEX*, and since those times with that of the Kings of *England*; the names of the *Old Palace* of the one, and the *New-Palace* of the other, still remaining there: beautified upon that occasion with more stately and magnificent houses, belonging to the King, Bishops, and Nobility, than all the other in the Kingdom, having of late a new Town added to it in the *Convent Garden* (a place belonging formerly to the Monks of *Westminster*) for uniformity of building, and handsome streets, inferior to no City of *France* or *Italy*. 2. *Colchester*, the chief Town of *East-Sex*, situate near the Sea, on the River *Cole*; a Colony of the *Londoners* in former times, thence called *Colonia Londinensium*, and *Colonia* only, then a Bishops See: from which, or from the River, with the Addition of *Cestor*, after the manner of the *Saxons*, came the name of *Colchester*. A fair and well built Town, and of good resort, fortified with an old *Roman* Wall, and having in it to the number of 14 Churches. 3. *Ebschester* in *Dorset* Hundred, were *S. Ceadla* the second Bishop of *London*, baptized the re-lapsed *East-Saxon*. 4. *Hartford*, the chief Town of the County so called; by *Beda* named *Hertsford*, and of great note in his time for a Synod there held in the dawning of the day of Christianity amongst the *Saxons*; in which *S. Augustine* the Monk, the first Apostle of that people, had a conference or consultation with the British Bishops: More memorable in the following times, for giving the title of an Earl to the illustrious Family, summamed *De Clare*; the addition of an Honour, and a goodly Patrimony to *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*; and at this time, title of Earl, and Marquess to the noble Family of the *Seymours*.

The King of the *East-Saxons*.

A. Ch.	
527	1 <i>Ethelwin</i> the first King.
587	2 <i>Sleda</i> .
596	3 <i>S. Sebert</i> , the first <i>Christian</i> King.
	4 <i>Seward</i> and <i>Sigbert</i> .
623	5 <i>Sigbert</i> II. or the Little.
	6 <i>Sigbert</i> III.
661	7 <i>Sunelm</i> .
664	8 <i>Sigbert</i> .
664	9 <i>S. Seba</i> .
694	10 <i>Sigheard</i> .
	11 <i>Seofide</i> .
701	12 <i>Offa</i> .
709	13 <i>Sleda</i> .
774	14 <i>Sutred</i> , the last King of the <i>East-Saxons</i> subdued by <i>Egbert</i> the great and potent King of <i>Wight-Sex</i> , Anno 828. and his Kingdom made a member of that rising Monarchy.

V. The Kingdom of the *EAST-ANGLES*, so called from the *Angli* or *Engliffi*, which possessed these parts, and the *Eastern* situation of it; begun by *Eissa*, a great Commander of the *Saxons*, Anno 575. contained the Counties of *Norfolk*, *Suffolk*, *Cambridgeshire*, and the Isle of *Ely*. The *Christian* Faith first planted here in the Reign of *Redwall* the third King, by the Ministry of *Felix* a *Burgundian*, the first Bishop of the *East-Angles*, the See whereof was afterwards removed to *Norwich*. Places of most importance in it, were 1. *Dunwich* on the Sea-shore, the first Bishops See of the *East-Angles*, for the County of *Suffolk*; then a Town capable of that dignity, now ruinous, decayed, and for the greatest part worn into the Sea. 2. *Islewich* in the same County of *Suffolk*, and the chief of the Country, a rich, populous, and well traded Empory, consisting of no fewer than twelve Parish Churches.

ches. 3. *Norwich*, the head City of *Norfolk*, situate on the River *Tara*, which runs thence to *Tarmouth*, lying out in length a mile and an half, half as much in breadth, & in that Circuit comprehending about 20 Parishes: well walled about with many a Tower, & 12 Gates for entrances; but hath within it much waste Ground, the City suffering great loss both in wealth and buildings, by *Kar* Rebellion, in the time of *King Edward* the sixth. Recovered of the first blow by the *Dutch* *Manslaughter*, of the last still languishing; yet still it glorieth in the beauties of a fair Cathedral, the three Palaces of the Bishops, the Dukes of *Norfolk*, and the Earls of *Surrey*, and the ruins of an ancient Castle of the *Saxons* building, 4. *North Elmham*, the Bishops See of the *East-Angles*, for those parts which we now call *Norfolk*: both this and that at *Dunwich* ruined in the *Danish* Wars, but this reviving at the end of 100 years and here continuing, both Sees united unto one, till removed to 5. *Thetford*, another Town of this County, situated on the confluence of the *Thet*, and the lesser *Ofis*; a larger Town than either of the other two, from whence at last removed to *Norwich*. 6. *Cambridge*, the chief Town of that County, by *Antonine* called *Camuloton* whence the Modern name: unless we rather fetch it from a Bridge over the River *Cam* or *Grant* (for some call it *Grantbridge*) as perhaps we may. A Town well built by reason of the University, said to be founded by *Sigbert*, King of the *East-Angles*, of whom it is affirmed by *Beda*, that he founded a School for the education of Children in the ways of good Learning; but he speaketh neither of *University*, nor nameth *Cambridge* for the place. 7. *Ely*, situate in the Isle so named, occasioned by the divided streams of *Nen* and *Ofis*, with the over-flotes of other Rivers; turning a great part of this tract into Fens and Marishes, the Inhabitants whereof were called *Girithi*. A place of no great beauty or reputation, as situate in a foggy and unhealthy air; but only for a fair Monastery built by *S. Ethelreda*, Wife of *Egfride*, King of the *Northern*, by her made a Nunnery; afterwards rebuilt and replenished with Monks by *Ethelwald* Bishop of *Winchester*, Anno 970. it thereabouts; finally made a Bishops See in the time of *King Henry* the first, Anno 1109.

The Kings of the *East-Angles*.

A. Ch.	
575	1 <i>Offa</i> , the first King.
582	2 <i>Titellus</i> .
593	3 <i>Redwall</i> , the first <i>Christian</i> King.
624	4 <i>Egpenwald</i> .
636	5 <i>S. Sigbert</i> .
638	6 <i>Egrie</i> .
642	7 <i>Anna</i> .
654	8 <i>Ethelbert</i> .
656	9 <i>Edelwald</i> .
664	10 <i>Alduff</i> .
683	11 <i>Elfwilph</i> .
714	12 <i>Born</i> .
714	13 <i>S. Ethelred</i> .
749	14 <i>Ethelbert</i> II. treacherously murdered by <i>Offa</i> , the great King of the <i>Mercians</i> , to whose Court he came an invited Guest, Anno 793. after whose death this Kingdom became subject to the <i>Mercians</i> , and then to <i>Egbert</i> the <i>Wight-Saxon</i> , governed by Tributary Kings of their own Nation, of whom we have no constant till the time of
870	15 <i>S. Edmund</i> , descended from <i>Anna</i> , the seventh King hereof, Martyred by the <i>Danes</i> for his stout and constant preference in the Faith of <i>CHRIST</i> ; from whence the fair Town of

St. Edmundsbury, in the County of Suffolk, took denomination. After whose death the Kingdom was possessed by the Danes, till vanquished by King Edward the Elder, by whom it was united unto the rest of England.

VI. The Kingdom of NORTHUMBRIA, so called from the situation on the North of *Humber*, contained the Counties of *Tork, Lancashire, Durham, Westmerland, Cumberland, and Northumberland*, properly so called; and all the Southern parts of *Scotland*, as far as to the *Fryther* of *Edinburgh* and *Dunbritton*, formerly reckoned of as Members of the *Roman Empire*. Extorted from the Britains by *Ossa* the Son, and *Eufsa* the brother of *Hengist*, Conductors of new Forces hither; (all of the Nation of the *Angle*) by the leave of *Vortiger*, upon pretence of guarding these Countries from the incursions of the *Scots* and *Picts*. By them divided into two Provinces, the one called *Deira*, extending from the *Humber*, to the River of *Tees*; the other called *Bernicia*, reaching from *Tees* to the two *Fryther* before-mentioned: both governed a long while by Dukes, under the Sovereignty and homage of the Kings of *Kent*. In the year 547, Duke *Ida* takes unto himself the title of King of *Bernicia*, and *An. 559*. Duke *Ella*, doth the like in *Deira*. The Towns of most notice in this last (for the former is now reckoned as a part of *Scotland*) besides *Tork* spoken of before, were *R. Lancaster*, the chief Town of that County, situate on the River *Leon*, which with addition of *Cæster* much used by the *Saxons*, made the name thereof; called for the same reason *Longowicis* by the Emperor *Antonine*. The Town not very well peopled nor much frequented, but of sufficient fame in our *English* Annals for those Noble persons which have successively borne the titles of Earls and Dukes of it; the greatest Princes for Revenue, of any Subjects in *Christendom*. 2. *Kendal*, or *Candale*, situate in a dale on the River *Can*, whence it had the name; the chief Town of *Westmerland*: built in the manner of a *Cæsis*, two long and broad streets thwarting one another. A rich, populous and well traded Town, especially for the making of fine woolen cloth, but of more fame for giving the title of an Earl to *John Duke of Bedford*, Regent of *France*; and to *John de Foix*, created Earl hereof by *Henry* the sixth. 3. *Carlisle*, upon the River *Edon*, a frontier Town betwixt the *Romans* and *Scots*, as now between the *Scots* and *English*: consumed to ashes in the time of the *Danish* furies; afterwards rebuilt by *William Rufus*, made an Episcopal See in the reign of *K. Henry* the first, and beautified with a Cathedral founded at the perswasion of *Athelwulf*, the first Bishop hereof. 4. *Monck-chester*, on the Northern banks of the River *Time*, which maketh there a safe and capacious Haven. Of no great note till the *Norman* Conquest, when from a Castle built by *Robert* Son of *William* the Conqueror, it was called *New-Castle*: growing from that time forwards to such wealth and trading, by the neighbourhood of the *Cole-mines* there, that it is now the goodliest Town in all the North; fortified with strong Walls, beautified with five fair Churches, and giving to the *L. Will. Cavendish*, Viscount *Mansfield*, the honorary titles of Earl and Marquis. 5. *Hagulfstade*, or *Hætteld*, by the *Romans* called *Asclodunum*, by the *Normans*, *Hexam*: a Bishops See in the first time of *Christianity* amongst these *Northumbrians*, specially so called, converted to the Faith in the time of *Oswald* their tenth King, by the Ministry of *Aiden* the first Bishop of *Lindisfarne*: *Eusa* the fifth Bishop, erecting here an Episcopal See for the better propagation of the Gospel among this people; after a succession of ten Bishops ruined and suppressed by the *Danish* furies. 6. *Dunholm*, now *Durham*, situate on a Hill, as the name importeth, a Bishops See, translated hither with the body of *St. Cuthbert*, *An. 950*

or thereabouts, from *Lindisfarne*, a small Island on the Coast of *Northumberland*, where it was first erected by *S. Aidanus*, the first Bishop thereof: planted in *Lindisfarne*, because of the folitude of the place; translated thither to avoid the fury of the *Danes*, who then raged extremely in these Quarters. And being settled here, was fortified with such ample privileges and possessions, by the *Saxon* Kings: that the Bishops were reputed for Count Palatines, at and before the *Norman* Conquest. 7. *Halifax*, in the *West Riding* of *Yorkshire*, of great wealth by making of cloth. 8. *Rippon*, in the same, adorned with a fair Cathedral or Collegiate Church, subordinate to that of *Tork*. 9. *Godmanham*, (by *Beda* called *Gatmandin Gaham*) famous in those days for a Temple of the *Saxon* Idols, burnt down and utterly destroyed by *Coiffe*, the chief Priest thereof, converted to *Christianity* by *Paulinus* the first Archbishop of *Tork*, and the Apostle of the *Northumbrians* in these parts. The Catalogue of the Kings of which mighty Nations, by reason of the division of it into two Kingdoms as before is said, is very intricate and confused, the Kingdoms being sometimes united and sometimes dis-joined. But in regard the most prevalent King of either, was called King of *Northumberland*, the other of *Bernicia* or *Deira* only, I shall accordingly subjoin them in this order following.

#### The Kings of Northumberland.

- A. Ch.  
 549 1 *Ida* the first King.  
 560 2 *Ella*, King of *Deira*.  
 569 3 *Ethelrick*, Son of *Ida* King of *Bernicia*.  
 593 4 *Ethelfride*.  
 617 5 *Edwin*, Son of *Ella*, the first Christian King.  
 633 6 *Osric*.  
 634 7 *Oswald*.  
 645 8 *Osric*, who having subdued and slain *Osric* King of *Deira*, was the first absolute King of all *Northumberland*, no more divided after that.  
 671 9 *Egfride*.  
 686 10 *S. Alfride*.  
 705 11 *Osric*.  
 716 12 *Kenned*.  
 718 13 *Osric* II.  
 729 14 *Godwin*.  
 738 15 *Ogbert*.  
 758 16 *Eusebius*.  
 759 17 *Edmund*.  
 765 18 *Alured*.  
 774 19 *Ethelred*.  
 778 20 *Alfwald*.  
 719 21 *Osric* II.  
 794 22 *Ethelred* II. After whose death, slain by his treacherous and rebellious Subjects (as many of his Predecessors had been before) the Kingdom became distracted into parts and Factions; invaded by the *Danes* on the one side, the *Scots* and *Picts* on the other; who during these distractions had possessed themselves of all the Countries on the other side of the *Tweed*. At the last *Anno* 827, they yielded themselves to *Egbert*, the most Potent King of the *West-Saxons*, ruled by his Deputies for a while, then subdued by the *Danes*, and finally recovered, to the Crown of *England*, by *Alfred* and *Edith*, *An. 950*, or thereabouts. Content since that to give the Title of an Earl to some eminent persons both of *English* and *Norman* Races: as it hath done since the first year of *King Richard* the seconds to the Noble Family of the *Forbes*, descended by *Joseline* of *Brabant*, Brother of *Adelice* the second Wife of *King Henry* the first, from *Charles* the

the Great, Emperor, and King of *France*, and that too in a clearer Line than the *Dukes of Lorrain*, who so much lost of it.

VII. The Kingdom of *MERCIA*, was begun by *Crida*, or *Crodda*, a great Commander of the *Angli*, or *English* Nation, who settling in the heart of *Britain*, where the people were least used to Arms, made themselves Masters of the Counties of *Gloucester, Worcester, Hereford, Salop, Cheshire, Stafford, Derby, Nottingham, Leicester, Rutland, Lincoln, Huntingdon, Northampton, Warwick, Oxon, Buckingham, Bedford*, and the rest of *Hampshire*: which bounded in a manner by all the rest of the *Saxon* Kingdoms, had the name of *Mercia*, from the word *Meare*, which signifieth a bound or limit. The Christian Faith suppressed here, as in other Kingdoms of the *Saxons*, was restored again in the Reigns of *Penda, Peada*, and *Wulfhere*, by the preaching of *St. Chad* the first Bishop of *Lichfield*.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Hereford*, seated on the Banks of the River *Wye*, in the middle of most flourishing Meadows, and no less plentiful Corn fields; raised out of the Ruines of *Aricionem* here placed by *Antonine*, the tract of which name it doth still retain. A Bishops See in the time of the *Britains*, restored to that dignity by the *Saxons*, *An. 680*, the honourable title of the *holms*, once Earls herof; and afterwards of *Henry of Huntingdon* Duke of *Hereford*. 2. *Worcester*, pleasantly seated on the *Severn*, over which it hath a very fair Bridge with a Tower upon it. A Bishops See, *Anno* 679, beautified with a fair Cathedral, and every way considerable for situation, number of Churches, neat Buildings, the industry of the Inhabitants, and giving the Title of an Earl to the Noble Family of the *Somerjets*, extracted by the *Beaumonts* from *John de Gann*. 3. *Lichfield*, the first Bishops See amongst the *Mercians*, founded there *Anno* 646, by *Osric* King of the *Northumbrians*, but fixed and settled by *St. Chad* in the Reign of *Wulfhere* King of the *Mercians*: endowed in the very Infancy with such fair possessions, that in the year 793 *Adulfus* the Bishop herof, was made Archbishop of the *Mercians*. But it proved only a personal honour, and died with him. 4. *Coventry*, so called from an old *Convent* or Religious house, which gave name unto it: Situate in *Warwickshire*, and now the principal tract of that County, though esteemed a County of it self: beautified with a goodly Wall, two fair Parish Churches, large Streets, and very handsome Houses. A City of great Trade & Riches, though destitute of all advantages which a Navigable River might afford it: heretofore of great Fame for a stately Monastery, to which the See Episcopal was for a while removed from *Lichfield*, now a ruin only. 5. *Leicester*, once a Bishops See, the *Dioecese* taken out of thence, to *Lincoln*. Beautified in those days with a fair Collegiate Church, a magnificent Abbey, and a strong Castle; and decayed and ruined by the iniquity and injury of the later times: the Town remaining in as good plight both for Trade and Buildings, as most Towns do which want a Navigable River. Of most fame for the Earls thereof, *Algar* and *Edwin*, noble *Saxons*, *Simon de Monfort* the Catharine and great Incendiary of this Kingdom, the Princes of the House of *Lancaster*, who bore this Title; with some others since. 6. *Derby*, upon the River *Derwent*, a well-traded Town, and of good resort; adorned with five Churches, a goodly Stone Bridge, and a large Market-place; the honorary title of the noble Family of the *Stanleys*, created Earls herof by *King Henry* the Seventh. 7. *Nottingham*, seated on the *Trent*, but very high upon an hill, which overlooks it. For Buildings, fair streets, and a spacious Market-place, not giving way to many Cities; but of most fame for a Roy-

al and magnificent Castle, which for strength, stateliness, and prospect, may justly challenge the precedence of most in *England*. 8. *Lincoln*, a Town in those days of great strength and note, one of the best peopled Cities in all the *Heptharic* and of great Merchandise and Traffick both by Sea and Land: in whose time *Konigius*, then Bishop of *Dorchester*, thought fit to translate hither the Episcopal See. Now much decayed, and thence the Proverb, that *Lincoln was, London is*, &c. The chief fame which now it hath, is for the Minster, one of the stateliest Piles in *England*, and perhaps in *Christendom*; high seated on a Hill, and from thence discerned over all the Country. 9. *Huntingdon*, or the *Hunters Town*, from the great sport the Hunters found in the neighbouring *Forest*, commodiously seated on the Northern bank of the River *Ouse*, rising on the North with a lofty ascent, consisting of four Parish Churches, and shews the ruins of a Castle built by *Edward the Elder*, *An. 917*. 10. *Peterburgh*, seated in a Nook or *Angle* of *Northamptonshire*, where formerly had been a Gulf or whirlpool of exceeding depth; but made firm ground by *Wulfere* King of the *Mercians*, when he laid the Foundations of the Monastery, *Anno* 633, dedicated to *St. Peter*, whence it had this name; before then called *Medanthe*. A Town, but for the Church, of no great esteem, as standing out of the way for Trade, and in no plausible place for health or pleasure; yet shewing two handsome streets, a large Market-place, and a fair Parish Church (besides the Abbey) made an Episcopal See by *King Henry* the 8th. 11. *Northampton*, built on the Northern Bank of the River *Antona*, (now *Nen*) whence it had the name. A Town which for the beauty and circuit of it need not give way to many Cities; fortified heretofore with a very strong Castle, and seated in good an Air, that once the Students of *Cambridge* had a purpose to remove their University hither. The Noble Family of the *Comptons* are now Earls herof. 12. *Bedford*, so called from *Bed* and Lodgings on the *Ford*, built on both sides thereof for the use of Travellers, growing in time to so great biggness as to contain in it five Parish Churches: famous in former times for the great Battel fought in the adjoining fields, *Anno* 572, in which *Cuthwulf* the *Saxon* vanquished the *Britains*, and became Master of the Country: But more famous for giving the title of Duke to *John* of *Lancaster*, Regent of *France* for *King Henry* the sixth, and *Jasper* of *Hatfield*, Uncle to *King Henry* the 7th. 13. *St. Albans*, so called from a famous Monastery, here founded by *Offa* the great King of the *Mercians*, in honour of *St. Albans*, the *Proto-Martyr* of *Britain*, a Citizen of *Verulamium*, near adjoining to it: out of the ruins whereof, decayed by age, and destroyed by War; arose the present greatness of *St. Albans*, the fairest and best traded Town in the County of *Hartford*. 14. *Buckingham*, the chief Town of the County so called, situate on the River *Ouse*: fortified by *King Edward* the Elder against the *Danes*, *Anno* 915, otherwise not much observable, but for those many noble personages which have had the title of Dukes herof.

#### The Kings of Mercia.

- A. C.  
 582 1 *Crodda*, the first King.  
 593 2 *Webba*.  
 614 3 *Cheol*.  
 626 4 *Penda*.  
 656 5 *Peada*, the first Christian King.  
 659 6 *Wulfhere*.  
 675 7 *Ethelred*.  
 704 8 *Kenned*.  
 709 9 *Ethelred*.

- 716 10 *Ethelbald*, overcome by *Cuthbert* King of the *West-Saxons*, at a Fight near *Burford* in the County of *Oxon*, the place still called *Battle-Mill*.
- 758 11 *Offa* the Great.
- 796 12 *Egfrid*.
- 797 13 *Kenulf*.
- 819 14 *Kenelm*.
- 820 15 *Cheulwolf*.
- 821 16 *Bernalf*.
- 824 17 *Ludecan*.
- 826 18 *Witluf*, overcome in fight (as were his two Predecessors) by *Egbert* King of *West-Sax*, became his tributary.

839 19 *Berthulf*.

852 20 *Burhard*, a substituted King of the *West-Saxons*, and the last King of the *Mercians* (the short Reign of his six Predecessors portending that fatal period to be near at hand.) After whose death, *Anno* 856, this Kingdom for some few years tyrannized over by the *Danes*, was united by King *Alfred* to the *English* Monarchy.

Such was the Order and Succession of the *Saxon* Kings, during the *Heptarchie*, or division of it into seven Kingdoms; continuing separate and distinct till the prevailing Fortune of *West-Saxons* brought them all together into one, by the name of *England*. But so, that they were subject for the most part unto one alone, who was instituted *Rex Gentis Anglorum*: those which were stronger than the rest, giving the Law unto them in their several turns, and are these that follow:

#### The Monarchs of the English Saxons in the time of the Heptarchie.

- A. C.
- 455 1 *Hengist*, King of *Kent*, who first brought the *Saxons* into *Britain*.
- 481 2 *Ella*, the first King of the *South-Saxons*.
- 495 3 *Cerdic*, the first King of the *West-Saxons*.
- 534 4 *Kenric*, King of the *West-Saxons*.
- 561 5 *Cheulinf*, or *Celingus*, King of the *West-Saxons*.
- 562 6 *Ethelbert*, King of *Kent*, the first *Christian* King of the *Saxons*.
- 616 7 *Redwald*, King of the *East-Angles*.
- 617 8 *Edwin*, King of *Northumberland*.
- 634 9 *Offwald*, King of *Northumberland*.
- 643 10 *Osfric*, King of *Northumberland*.
- 659 11 *Wulfhere*, King of *Mercia*.
- 675 12 *Ethelred*, King of *Mercia*.
- 704 13 *Kenred*, King of *Mercia*.
- 709 14 *Chelred*, King of *Mercia*.
- 716 15 *Ethelbald*, King of *Mercia*.
- 758 16 *Offa*, the great King of the *Mercians*.
- 794 17 *Egfrid*, King of *Mercia*.
- 796 18 *Kenulf*, King of *Mercia*.
- 796 19 *Egbert*, the son of *Almund*, King of the *West-Saxons*, who having vanquished all the rest of the *Saxon* Kings, and added most of their

Estates unto his own, caused the whole united body to be called *Engel-land*, or *England*, in a Parliament or Council held at *Winchester*, *Anno* 819, being the 19th year of his Reign over the *West-Saxons*; and by that name he was then crowned in the presence of his Nobles, and the rest of his Subjects, leaving it unto the rest of his Successors.

But before we come the recital of their names, we are to take notice of the *Danes*, the next considerable Actors on the Stage of *England*, who in the time of this

*Egbert*, first invaded the Country, and after exercised the patience of his posterity, till in time they got the Kingdom to themselves. Of the Original and first Successors of this people, we shall speak more at large when we come to *Denmark*. Suffice it here to know, that having taken up the void Rooms of the *Justices* and *English* in the *Cumbria* *Chorliffe*, they thought it not amiss to follow them into *Britain* also; making a discovery of some part of the Coast thereof with three Ships only, *Anno* 787, being the first year of *British* (the Father of *Egbert*) King of the *West-Saxons*. Which having done, and prepared themselves for the undertaking, in the time of *Egbert* they invaded *Northumberland*, the Isle of *Sheppey* in *Kent*, and the Coasts of *Wales*; not without much difficulty driven out by him. In the Reign of the three Kings succeeding having vanquished the *Northumbrians*, *East-Angles*, and a part of the *Mercians*; they erected many petty Tyrannies: by *Alfred* first stopped in their Career, by *Edward* the Elder out of the *East-Angles*, and by *Alfred* King of *Northumberland* also; the *Danes* for some time after being subject to the *English* Government, mixing in marriages and alliance, and incorporated with them. By the valour and good Fortune of *Swein* their King, they recovered their power again in *England*; and in the person of *Canutus* obtained the Kingdom: who having impudently sent back his *Danes* into their Country (as if Kingdom got by force, could be held by favour) opened a way to their exclusion from the Crowns, which happened within seven years after his decease. Which said, we come to the Successions of

#### The Kings of England of the Saxon Race.

- 819 1 *Egbert*, the last King of the *West-Saxons*, and the first of *England*, 18.
- 837 2 *Ethelwolf*, the eldest Son of *Egbert*, 20.
- 857 3 *Ethelbald*, the eldest son of *Ethelwolf*, 1.
- 858 4 *Ethelbert*, the brother of *Ethelbald*, 5.
- 863 5 *Ethelred*, the brother of the two former Kings, the third Son of *Ethelwolf*, and as much molested by the *Danes*, as his brethren were, 10.
- 873 6 *Afride*, the fourth Son of *Ethelwolf*, who totally united the *Saxon* *Heptarchie* into one Estate, vanquished the *Danes*, whom he made subject to his commands, though he could not expel them. He divided *England* into Shires, and restored the University of *Oxon*.
- 900 7 *Edward*, furnished the Elder, the son of *Afride*, who recovered the *East-Angles* from the power of the *Danes*, whom he shut up in *Northumberland*, 24.
- 924 8 *Alfred*, the Son of *Edward*, who subdued the *Britains* of *Cumberland* and *Conwall*, and compelled the *Danes* to submit themselves to the *English* Government. In his time lived Sir *Guy* of *Warwick* famous for overcoming *Colbrand* the *Danish* Champion (the great *Goliath* of that people) near the Walls of *Winchester*, 10.
- 940 9 *Edmund*, the Brother of *Alfred*, by whom the *Danes* of *Northumberland* were brought under obedience, and the Kingdom of the *Britains* in *Cumberland* utterly subverted.
- 946 10 *Edred*, the Brother of *Edmund* and *Alfred*, so fortunate against the *Danes*, that he compelled them to be Christianized, 9.
- 955 11 *Edwy*, the Son of *Edmund*.

- 955 12 *Edgar*, the Brother of *Edwy*, surnamed the *Peacable*, the most absolute Monarch of *England*, since the time of the *Saxons*; by whom the tribute of money imposed by *Aethelstan* on the *Wicels*, was exchanged into a tribute of *Wolves*, 16.
- 975 13 *Edward II.* Son of *Edgar*, treacherously murdered by his *Stepdame*, to make way for *Ethelred* her son; hence surnamed the *Martyr*, 3.
- 978 14 *Ethelred*, the younger Son of *Edgar*, and half Brother of *Edward*, enjoyed the Crown unjustly which he got unjustly. Oppressed and broken by the *Danes*, he was fain to buy his peace of them at the yearly tribute of 10000 pounds; enhanced to 48000 pounds within short time after; which monies were raised upon the Subjects, by the name of *Danegeld*. Weary of the exactions, he plotted warily with his Subjects to kill all the *Danes*, as they slept in their beds; which accordingly was put in execution on St. *Briens* night, *November* 12, *Anno* 1012. To revenge this outrage and dishonour, *Swein* King of *Denmark*, with a Fleet of 350 Ships came unto *England*; the fear whereof compelled *Ethelred*, a weak and impuissant Prince to fly into *Normandy*; leaving his poor Subjects to the mercy of the *Danish* Tyrant, who miserably plagued them till his death. To whom succeeded his Son *Canute* (*Canutus*) a more temperate Prince; who though *Ethelred* now returned, or his Son *Edmond Ironside*, a most valiant King, did in the end possess himself of the whole Kingdom.
- 1016 15 *Edmond II.* surnamed *Ironside*, having in vain attempted to recover his Kingdom, at last divided it with *Canutus*: not long after which he was treacherously and basely murdered, by *Edward*, surnamed the *Out-Law*, his eldest Son, who was Grandfather of *Edgar Atheling*, and *Margaret*, Wife of *Malcolm* the third, King of the *Scots*.

#### The Danish Kings.

- 1017 1 *Canutus* King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, after the death of *Edmond* the second sole King of *England*. He married *Emma* the widow of *Ethelred*, and Daughter of *Richard* Duke of *Normandy*, 20.
- 1037 2 *Harald* the base Son of *Canutus*, surnamed *Harfager*, 4.
- 1040 3 *Canutus II.* commonly called *Hardy Canute*, the lawful Son of *Canutus* by *Emma* the Widow of *Ethelred* the second, and Mother of *Edward*, surnamed the *Confessor*, the last King of the *Danes* in *England*. After whose death that people having tyrannized in *England* for the space of 255 years, (of which they reigned only 26) were utterly expelled the Country, or passed in the Account of *English*; *Edward* the *Confessor*, the youngest Son of *Ethelred*, being advanced unto the Throne, by the power and practices of his Mother *Emma*, and the absence of the Children of *Edmond Ironside* his elder Brother, *Anno* 1042.

Now concerning the *Danes* abiding here, and going hence as they did, I observe three customs yet in use amongst us. First, each *English* house maintained one

*Dane*, who living idly like the *Drone* among the *Bees*, had the benefit of all their labour, and was by them called *Lord Dane*; and even now when we see an idle fellow, we call him a *Lord Dane*. 2. The *Danes* used when the *English* drank, to stab them or cut their throats: to avoid which villany, the party then drinking, requested some of the next unto him to be his surety of pledge, which he paid nature her due: and hence we have our usual custom of pledging one another. 3. The old *Romans* at the expulsion of their Kings, annually solemnized the *Fugalia*: according to which pattern the joyful *English* having cleared the Country of the *Danes*, instituted the annual Sports of *Hock-tide*; the word in their old tongue, the *Saxon*, importing the time of *foaming*, or triumphing. This solemnity consisted in the merry meetings of the Neighbours in those days, during which the *Festiva* lasted, and was celebrated by the younger sort of both Sexes, with all manner of exercises, and pastimes in the Streets, even as *Shrove-tide* yet is. But now time hath so corrupted it, that the name excepted, there remaineth no sign of the first institution.

#### The Saxons re-enthroned.

- A. C.
- 1442 16 *Edward III.* surnamed the *Confessor*, half Brother both to *Edmund Ironside*, and *Hardy Canute* the *Dane*, called out of *Normandy*, where he lived, with the Dukes his Cousins, succeeded in the Realm of *England*. This King collected out of the *Danish*, *Saxon*, and *Mercian* Laws, one universal and general Law, whence our *Common Law*, is thought to have had its original: which may be true of the written Laws, not of the customary and unwritten Laws; these being certainly more ancient. He was in his life of that holiness that he received power from above to cure many diseases, amongst other, the swelling of the Throat, called by us the *King-Evil*: a Prerogative that continueth Hereditary to his Successors of *England*. Finally, after his death, he was Canonized for a Saint; and died, having reigned 24 years.
- 1666 17 *Harald II.* Son to Earl *Godwin*, was chosen King in the non-age of *Edgar Atheling*, Grandchild to *Edmond Ironside*, the true Heir of the Kingdom: to which *Hirald* might pretend some title as being both unto Earl *Godwin* by *Thyra* the base Daughter of *Canutus* the first, Sister by the whole blood to *Harald Harfager*; and of the half blood to *Canutus* the second, the last King of the *Danes* in *England*. But *William* Duke of *Normandy*, (of which people we have spoke already when we were in *France* and shall speak more at large when we come to *Denmark*, as the last Actor on the Theatre or Stage of *England*), This *William* (I say) pretending a Donation from his Cousin, King *Edmond the Confessor*, invaded *England*, slew *Harald*, and with him 666 54 of his *English* Soldiers, and possessed himself of the Kingdom; using such Policy in his new Conquest, that he utterly disheartened the *English* from hopes of better fortune. From him beginneth the new account of the Kings of *England*, those of the former Line being no longer reckoned in the computation of the first, second, or third, &c.



## The Norman Kings.

- A. C.  
1067 1 *William*, surnamed the *Conqueror*, after the vanquishment and death of *Harold*, acknowledged and Crowned King, altered the ancient Laws of *England*, and established those of *Normandy* in the place thereof: governing the people absolutely by the power of the Sword, and giving a great part of their Lands to his former Followers, and such as were engaged in the Action with him; from whom most of our ancient Families do derive themselves; those Lands to be holden in *Knights-Service*, which drew along with it the *Wardship* of the Heir in *Minority*, as a charge laid upon the Land.
- 1089 2 *William II.* surnamed *Rufus*, second Son to the *Conqueror*, succeeded by the appointment of his Father, and was Crowned King; slain afterwards in the *New Forest*, by an Arrow levelled at a Deer.
- 1102 3 *Henry*, for his Learning, surnamed *Beau-Clerk*, the third Son of the *Conqueror*, in the absence of his Brother *Robert* (in the *Holy-Land Wars*) entered on the Kingdom, and afterwards took from him also the Dukedom of *Normandy*, and put out his eyes. Deprived of all his male-issue, he left one only Daughter whose name was *Maud*; first married to the Emperor *Henry* the fifth, and after to *Geoffrey Plantagenet* Earl of *Anjou*, *Touraine*, and *Maine*. 34.
- 1136 4 *Stephen*, second Son of *Stephen* Earl of *Champaigne* and *Blais*, and of *Allice* Daughter to the *Conqueror*, succeeded; who to purchase the peoples love, released the Tribute called *Danegelt*: he spent most of his Reign in War against *Maud* the Empress. 19.

## The Saxon Blood refused.

- 1155 5 *Henry II.* Son to *Maud* the Empress, Daughter to *Henry* the first, and to *Maud* Daughter to *Malcolm* King of *Scotland*, and *Margaret* Sister to *Edgar* Archbishop, restored the Saxon blood to the Crown of *England*. His Father was *Geoffrey Earl of Anjou, Touraine, and Maine*; which Provinces he added to the *English* Empire, as also the Dutchy of *Aquitain*, and the Earldom of *Poitou*, by *Eleanor* his Wife; and a great part of *Ireland* by Conquest. Happy in all things, the unnatural rebellions of his Sons excepted. 34.
- 1189 6 *Richard*, the Son of *Henry*, surnamed *Cœur de Lyon*, warred in the *Holy Land*, overcame the *Turks*, whom he had almost driven out of *Syria*, took the Isle of *Cyprus*; and after many worthy achievements returning homewards to defend *Normandy*, and *Aquitain* against the *French*, was by Tempest cast upon *Dalmatia*; and travelling through the Dominions of the Duke of *Anstria*, was taken Prisoner, put to a grievous ransom, and after his return slain at the siege of *Chalus*, in the Province of *Limousin*. 12.

- 1201 7 *John*, Brother of *Richard*, an unhappy Prince, and one that could expect no better, as being an unnatural Son to his Father, and an undutiful Subject to his Brother. Distressed for a great part of his Reign by Wars with his Barons, outed of all *Normandy, Aquitain, and Anjou*, by the power of the *French*, to whom also he was likely to have lost the Realm of *England*. Finally, after a base submission of himself and his Kingdom to the Popes Legate, he is said to have been poisoned at *Swinsede Abbey*. 17.
- 1218 8 *Henry III.* Son of *John*, expelled the invading *French* out of *England*, and by a compulsion with *Lewis* the 9th, was restored unto the Dukedom of *Guyenne*, held by his Successors till the Reign of King *Henry* the 6th. Exhausted by the Pope, and oppressed a long time by his factious and unruly Barons, but at last victorious. 56.
- 1274 9 *Edward*, the Son of *Henry*, awed *France*, subdued *Wales*, brought *Scotland* into subjection, of whose King and Nobility he received homage. 34.
- 1308 10 *Edward II.* Son of *Edward* the first, a dilute Prince, hated of the Nobles, and contemned by the Vulgar, for his immaculate love to *Pierce Gaveston*, and the *Spencer*, was twice shamefully beaten by the Scots; and being deposed by a strong faction raised against him by his Queen, and *Roger, Lord Mortimer*, was barbarously murdered in *Blackley Castle*. 19.
- 1327 11 *Edward III.* Son of *Edward* the second, a most Vertuous and Valorous Prince, brought the Scots to obedience, overthrew the *French* in two great Battels, took the Town of *Calice*, and many fair possessions in that Kingdom. 50.
- 1377 12 *Richard II.* another of our unfortunate Kings, lost many of his Peers in *France*, and at last being over-awed by his two great Uncles of *Lancaster*, and *Gloucester*, and taken Prisoner by his Cousin the Duke of *Hereford*, he was forced to resign his Crown, and afterwards was murdered at *Ponfret Castle*.

## The Lancastrian Line.

- 1399 13 *Henry IV.* Son to *John of Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster*, the fourth Son of *Edward* the 3d, was by the power of the Sword, but with the consent of the People, settled in the Throne, and spent his whole Reign in suppressing homebred Rebellions. 15.
- 1414 14 *Henry V.* the Mirror of Magnificence, and perfect Son of true Vertue, pursued the Title of *France*, and won it, being ordained Heir apparent to the *French* Crown, but lived not to possess the Kingdom. 9.
- 1423 15 *Henry VI.* a Pious, but unfortunate Prince, was crowned King of *France* in *Paris*, which he held during the life of his Uncle *John of Bedford*, and *Humfrey* of *Gloucester* after whose deaths, he not only lost *France* to the *French*, but *England* and his life to the *Turkish* Faction. 38.

The

## The Yorkish Line.

- 1461 16 *Edward IV.* Son of *Richard Duke of York*, the Son of *Richard Earl of Cambridge*, and Grandson of *Edmund of Langley Duke of York*, the fifth Son of King *Edward* the third, challenged the Crown in right of the Lady *Anne* his Grandmother, Daughter of *Roger Mortimer Earl of March*, the Son of *Edmund Mortimer Earl of March*, and of *Philippa*, his Wife, sole Daughter of *Lionel Duke of Clarence*, the third Son of the said King *Edward*, and Elder Brother of *John of Gaunt*. The claim first set on foot by his Father the Duke of *York*, who lost his life in pursuance of it in the Battel of *Wakefield*, with better fortune and success, pursued by King *Edward* himself, who finally after nine bloody Battels fought between the Houses (specialy that of *Townton*, in which were slain 36000 *English*) was quietly seated in the possession of *England* and *Ireland*. 23.
- 1484 17 *Edward V.* his Son, was before his Coronation murdered by his Uncle *Richard*, in the Tower of *London*.
- 1484 18 *Richard III.* Brother of *Edward* the 4, a most wicked and tyrannical Prince, to make way unto the Diadem, murdered King *Henry* the Sixth, and 2. Prince *Edward* his Son. 3. *George Duke of Clarence*, his Brother. 4. *Halings* a faithful Servant to King *Edward*. 5. *Rivers, Vaughan*, and *Gray*, the Queens Kindred. 6. *Edward* the 5th, his Sovereign, with his Brother *Richard*. 7. *Henry Duke of Buckingham* his dear Friend, and greatest Coadjutor in these his ungodly practices; and his own Wife *Anne*, so to make way to an incestuous marriage with his Niece *Elizabeth*, the eldest Daughter of *Edward* the 4th; but before the solemnity, he was slain at *Bolworth*. 3.

## The Union of the Families.

- 1487 19 *Henry VII.* Earl of *Richmond*, Heir to the Houle of *Lancaster*, (as Son of *Margaret* Daughter of *John Duke of Somerset*, Son of *John Earl of Somerset*, Son of *John of Gaunt Duke of Lancaster*) after the overthrow of *Richard*, married *Elizabeth*, Daughter and Heir to *Edward* the 4, uniting by that marriage the divided Families. He was also extracted from the *British* and *French* Royal Blood, as being Son to *Edmund Tudor Earl of Richmond*, Son to *Owen Tudor* (descended from *Cadwaladar*, the last King of the *Britains*) and *Katharine of France*, Widow of *Henry* the 5. His whole Wars was against home-bred Rebels, the chief being *Lambert*, and the Followers and Fautors of *Perken Warbeck*. 23.
- 1509 20 *Henry VIII.* Heir to both Families, between which were fought for the Diadem 17 pitched Fields; in which perished 8 Kings and Princes, 40 Dukes, Marquesses, and Earls, 200000 of the common people, besides Barons and Gentlemen. This King banished the usurped Supremacy of the Popes, and began the Reformation of Religion; though

formerly he had writ a Book against *Luther*, for which the Pope gave him the honourable Title of *The Defender of the Faith*; afterwards made Hereditary by Act of Parliament to his Heirs and Successors. A Prince of great virtues, but of greater virtues. 38.

1547 21 *Edward VI.* the Son of *Henry* the 8th, by *Jane Seymour* his third Wife; out of whose Womb he is said to be cut, to come into the World, as *Cesar* was: but he had neither *Cesar's* Fortune nor length of life; dying very young, and his Affairs conducted by divided Councils; though otherwise of great Lopes, and of a pregnancy of judgment above his years. 6.

- 1553 22 *Mary*, the Daughter of King *Henry* the 8th, by *Katharine of Spain*, the Widow of his Brother *Arthur*, restored the Popes Supremacy banished by her Father, with the whole mass of Popery abolished in her Brother's Reign. To which Religion so addicted, that in the short time of her Reign there was more blood shed, than in the whole 44 years of her Sister *Elizabeth*. In the last year of her Reign she lost *Calice* to the *French*, which proved the loss of her life also, as it was supposed. 5.
- 1558 23 *Elizabeth*, the Daughter of King *Henry* the 8th, by the Lady *Anne Bullen* his second Wife, a most gracious Heroick Princess, was by the Divine Providence of God preserved from the Practices of her Enemies in her Sisters Reign, to sway the Scepter of the Kingdom. She pursued the Reformation of Religion, begun in the times of her Father and Brother; refined the corrupt Coin brought in by her Father, furnished the Royal Navy with all kind of Warlike Ammunitions; encreased the Revenue of the Universities; by the Statute of *Provisions*, succoured the Scots against the *French*; the *French* Protestants against the *Papists*, and both against the *Spaniards*: defended the *Netherlands* against the attempts of *Spain*; commanded the whole Ocean; entered League with the *Muscovites*; and was famous for her Prudence and Government amongst the *Turks, Persians*, and *Tartars*, yea her very Enemies. Finally she died in the 45. year of her Reign, and the 70. of her life, on the 24. of *March*, Anno 1602, according to the computation of the Church of *England*, which beginneth the New Year with the Feast of the *Annunciation*. To whom succeeded *JAMES* the Sixth, King of the *Scots*, with the joy of all men, as the next undoubted Heir of the Crown. Of whom we shall say more when we come to speak of the Monarchs of *Britain*: of which he was the first since the fall of the *Roman* Empire, and such more properly than the greatest of all those Emperours had been before: None of them having all the North parts of *Britain* itself, or any part of *Ireland* at all, nor many of the Isles adjoining, under their Dominion.

In the mean time to look on *England* as a State distinct, we will consider it and the *Kings* thereof, with reference to reputation abroad, and power at home; with the *Revenues, Arms, and Military Orders* of it, as in other places. And first for Reputation, when all Christendom in the Council of *Constance*, was divided into Nations, *Anglicana* *Natio* was one of the Principal, and not *Sulavertis* of *France* or *Italy*, in all affairs concerning the Doctrine, discipline and peace of the Church, which were there debated. And for the place due to the Kings hereof in those

N a

General



General Councils, and the rank they held among other Christian Princes; I find that the Emperor of Germany was accounted *Major filius Ecclesie*; the King of France, *Minor filius*; and the King of England, *Filius tertius & adoptivus*. The King of France in General Councils had place next the Emperor, on his right hand; the King of England on his left hand, and the King of Scotland next before *Capite*. Now indeed the King of Spain being too much improved, is the *dearly beloved Son of the Church*; and arrogate to himself the place above all other Princes: but in time of Pope Julius, the controversy arising between the Ambassadors of the two Princes for precedence; the Pope adjudged it to belong of right unto England. And Pope Pius the Fourth, upon the like Controversy arising between the Ambassadors of France and Spain, adjudged the Precedency to the French.

Touching the *Souldiery of Engl.* and their most notable achievements, both by Sea and Land, sufficient hath been said already. What Forces the Kings hereof have been able to raise, and may command for present service; will best be seen by the addition of King Henry the 8th. at *Bullough*, the Armies of Queen Elizabeth in 88. and the numbers of the Trained Bands of the several Counties. First, for the Action of King Henry the 8th. he had in his *Avant guard* 12000 Foot, and 500 Light Horse in *blew Jackets* with red Guards; in the *Rere-guard* a like number both of Horse and Foot; and in the main Battle 20000 Foot, and 2000 Horse, all in *Red Jaquets* and yellow Guards: the whole number 44000 Foot, and 3000 Horse. They drew after them 100 great Pieces, besides small ones, and for conveyance of their Ordnance, Baggage, and other necessities, no fewer than 25000 Draught-horses, besides other carriages. In the next place for 88. the Queen dispersed in several places on the Southern Coasts of the Kingdom, to hinder the landing of the Enemy, 25000 Souldiers of both sorts, at *Tilbury*, for the defence of the City of London, under the Command of the Earl of Leicester, 22000 Foot, and 1000 Horse; and for the Guard of her own person, under the Lord *Hunsdon*, 34000 Foot, and 2000 Horse: in all the number of 84000 men: besides those goodly Troops which the Nobility and Gentry did present her with, at their own proper charges. And as for the Trained Bands, the number of both sorts disciplined and mustered to be ready upon all occasions: in the eighth year of King James, (for I have since seen no Muster-Roll of them) amounted to 296130 able men, 141315 armed men, 935 Demicalens, 6777 Light-Horse, 19345 Pioneers; besides what was required of *Peers* and *Prelates*, supposed to amount to 20000 armed men, and 4000 Light-Horse. And for their strength at Sea, besides the *Navy Royal*, consisting of about 30 gallant Ships, (besides the lesser Vessels,) the best and bravest that any Prince in Christendom can boast of, as his own propriety: there are such store of *Collier* and *Merchant* Ships, fit for any service, that in the year 88 aforesaid, the Queen had 100 Sail of good Ships to oppose the *Spaniards*; and 20 more to wait upon the motions of the Duke of Parma. And in the year 1597, she set out for the *Ind* Voyage, no fewer than 120 Sail of all sorts, of which 60 were men of War.

As for the *Revenues* of this Kingdom, *Boterus* reckoned them in the time of King Henry the 7th, to be no more than 400000 *Crown*s per annum; but afterwards they were improved to a million. more, by King Henry the 8th, the dissolution of Monasteries, and the benefit redounding from the Court of Wards, making that improvement. And to fix the truth, the Universal dissolution of Religious Houses of all sorts, did for the time fo migh-

tly increase his annual Income, that he was fain to erect two new Courts (the Court of *Augmentation*, and the Court of *Surveyors*) for the better managing of the same. But these Additions being waited by his own exorbitant expences, and the several Alienations made by King Edward the sixth; those Courts of new Erection were dissolved again; and the Revenue fell so short of its former height, that in the 12. year of Queen Elizabeth, the profits of the Crown (besides the Court of Wards, and the *Dutche of Lancaster*) came to no more than to 1831971. 4s. Of which 1106124. 13s. went that year out upon the Navy, the charge of Household, and other necessary assignments. Since which time the great increase of trading, both at home and abroad, and the great glut of money in all parts of the World, hath added very much to the *Intrado*. The certainty whereof as I do not know, so neither will I aim at it by uncertain Hearsay.

The Principal Orders of Knighthood are, and were, 1. the *Roma Table*, instituted by Arthur King of the Britains, and one of the Worlds *Nine Worthies*. It consisted of 150 Knights whose names are recorded in the History of King Arthur, there where Sir Ure a wounded Knight came to be cured of his hurts: it being his fate that only the best Knight of the Order should be his *Chirurgien*. The Arms of most of these, with their several *Blazons* (I know not on how good authority) we find in *Barthelemy*, *Sir Tristram*, *Sir Lancelot*, *Sir Gawain*, &c. all placed at one Round Table, to avoid quarrels about priority and place. The *Welsh* and *Table* hanging in the great Hall at *Windsor*, is, I fully called *Arthurs Round Table*, it being not of sufficient Antiquity and containing but 24 Seats. Of these 12 there are reported many fabulous Stories. They end with their *Founder*, and are signed by that *Lancelot France*, *Rablaies*, to be the *Ferry-men* of Hell; and that their pay is a piece of mouldy bread, and a hallop on the nose.

2. Of *S. George*, called commonly the *Garter*, instituted by King Edward the third, to increase virtue and valour in the hearts of his Nobility; or as some will, in honour of the Countess of *Salisbury* Garter, of which the King formerly had been enamoured. But this Tale to be a vain and idle Romance, derogatory both to the *Founder*, and the Order; first published by *Petard Virgil*, a stranger to the affairs of England, and by him taken upon no better ground than *fama vulgi*; the tradition of the common people; too trifling a Foundation for so great a building; Common bruit, being so infamous in History, that wise men neither report after it, nor give credit to any thing they receive from it. But for this time or common bruit, the vanity and impracticabilities thereof have been elsewhere canvassed. Suffice it to observe in this time and place, that the *Garter* was given unto the King, in testimony of that bond of Love and Affection, wherewith the Knights or Fellows of it were to be bound severally unto one another, and of all of them jointly unto King as the *Sovereign* of it. So faith the *Register of the Order*, (in which occurreth not one word of the Ladies *Garter*) affirming that King Edward did so fit the habit unto that design, *Ut omnia ad amicitiam & concordiam tendere nemo non intelligat*. But to return unto the Order, there are of it 26 Knights, of which the Kings of England are *Sovereigns*: and is so much desired for its excellency that 8 Emperours, 21 Foreign Kings, 21 Foreign Dukes and Princes, besides divers Noble men of other Countries have been *Fellows* of it. The Ensign is a *blew Garter* buckled on the left leg, on which these words are embroidered, viz. *Honry juxta qui mal y pensé*. About their necks they wear a *blew Ribband*, at the end of which hangeth this Image of *St. George*, upon whose day the

Installations of the new Knights are commonly celebrated.

3. Of the *Barb*, brought first into England, 1399. by Henry the Fourth. They are created at the Coronation of Kings and Queens, and the Installation of the Princes of Wales: their duty to defend true Religion, Widows, Maids, Orphans, and to maintain the Kings Rights. The Knights thereof distinguished by a *Red Ribband*, which they wear ordinarily about their necks, to difference them from Knights *Bachelors*, of whom they have in all places the precedence; unless they be also the Sons of Noblemen, to whom their birth gives it besides all Orders.

4. Of *Baronets*, an Order instituted by King James in the 9th year of his Reign, for the furtherance of the Plantation of *Ulster*. They have Precedency of the *Knights of the Bath*, but not of those of the *Garter*, nor of the younger Sons of the Nobility. But this being Here-

ditary, not personal, and rather Civil than Military; is not to properly to be ranked amongst Orders of Knighthood.

The Arms of the Realm of England, are *Mars*, 3 Lyons passant Guardant, Sol. The reason why these Arms quartered with the French, took the second place, are, 1. Because that France at the time of the first quartering of them, was the larger and more famous Kingdom. 2. That the French seeing the honour done to their Arms, might more easily be induced to have acknowledged the English Title. 3. Because the English Arms were compounded of the Lion of Aquitaine, and the two Lions of Normandy, being both French Dutchie.

There were in England, at and since the time of the Reformation.

Archbishops 2.

Bishops 20.

## W A L E S.

W A L E S is bounded on all sides with the Sea, except towards England on the East; from which separated by the River *Dee*, and a line drawn to the River *Wie*. Anciently it extended Eastwards to the River *Severn*, till by the purchase of *Offa* the great King of the Mercians, the *Welsh* or Britons were driven out of the plain Countries beyond that River, and forced to betake themselves to the Mountains; where he caused them to be shut up and divided from England by an huge Ditch, called in *Welsh*, *Clawd Offa*, i.e. *Offa's Dike*: Which Dike beginning at the influx of the *Wie* into the *Severn*, not far from *Chepstow*, extendeth 84 miles in length, even as far as *Cheshire*, where the *Die* is mingled with the Sea. Concerning which Ditch, there was a *Lie* made by *Harold*, That if any *Welsh*-man was found with a Weapon on this side of it, he should have his right hand cut off by the Kings Officers.

The name of *Wales* some derive from *Idwallo*, the Son of *Cadwallader*, who with the small remainder of his Britons, yet made good the faithfulness of this Country, and was the first who had the Title of King of *Wales*. Others conceive that the name of *Welsh* and *Wales*, was given them by the Saxons: who having possessed themselves of all the rest of the Countrey, called the Britons, who lived hereby the name of *Walsh*, which in their Language signified as much as *Aliens*; because they differed from them both in their Laws and Language: which is the general opinion. Most probable it is, that as the Britons derive their Pedigree from the *Gauls* (as before was proved) for they might still retain the name; and were called *Walsh* by the Saxons, instead of *Gauls*: for the Saxons used in most words *W* for *G*, as *Ware* for *Guerre*, *Warden*, for *Guardian*, and the like. And this to be believed rather, because the Frenchmen to this day call the Country *Galles*, and the eldest Son of *England*, *Le Prince de Galles*: as also that the Dutch or Germans (of whom the Saxons are a part) do call such Nations as inhabit on the Skirts of France, by the name of *Wallons*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof in the time of the Romans, before it had the name of *Wales*, were the *Silures* possessing the Counties of *Haverford*, *Brecknock*, *Radnor*, *Monmouth*, and *Glamorgan*, all *Gloucestershire* beyond the *Severn*, and the South parts of *Worcestershire* on the same

side also: their chief Towns, *Ariconium*, now *Hereford*, (not reckoned since the time of *Offa*, as a part of *Wales*), *Baleim*, now *Bath*; *Bryn Brecknock*, *Cubannium*, now *Abercarn*, in *Monmouth*; *Magni*, now *New Radnor*, in the County so named; and *Boonum* now *Bowton*, in *Glamorgan*. 2. The *Dinets*, possessing *Cardigan*, *Caermarthen*, and *Pembroke*, whose chief Towns were *Llanvinnion*, now *New-Castle*, in *Caermarthen*; *Mariidunum*, or *Caermarthen* it self; and *Octipia*, where now stands *S. David*, by the *Welsh* called *Menem*, whence that Bishop hath the name of *Menecensis* in *Latine*. 3. The *Ordovices*, inhabiting the Counties of *Merioneth*, *Carnarvon*, *Anglesey*, *Denbigh*, *Flint*, and *Montgomery*, with the North part of *Worcestershire* beyond the River *Severn*, and all *Shropshire*, on the same side of the River. Their chief Towns were *Segontium*, now *Caer Segont*, in *Carnarvonshire*; *Conomum*, now *Conwy* in the same County; *Bonium*, where after stood the famous Monastery of *Banochor*, in *Flintshire*; and *Mediolanum*, now *Llanllewellyn*, in the County of *Montgomery*. By these three Nations was all that Tract possessed, which lay on the other side of the *Severn*. A very stout and hardy people, and so impatient of the yoke, that two of the three Legions which the Romans kept constantly in Britain, as before is said, were planted in and near this People, the better to contain them in due obedience: that is to say, the second Legion at *Caer Leon* upon *Orkney*, where now stands *Wesf-chester*. So difficult a thing it was to make this Nation subject to the power of Rome; and no less difficult to bring them under the Command of the Saxons: whom they withstood, when all the rest of Britain had been conquered by them; and lived to see their *Victors* overcome by the Normans, before themselves had yielded to a Foreign yoke.

The Christian Faith planted amongst the Britons, in the time of *Lucius*, they still retained, when all the rest of the Island had been relapsed to Paganism; and they remained it not in secret, as afraid to own it, but in a well counterfeited Church. Inasmuch that *Angusfine the Monk*, when he first Preached the Gospel to the English Saxons, found here no fewer than seven Bishops; that is to say, *Herfordensis*, *Tavenfis*, *Paternensis*, *Banchorensis*, *Elwensis*, *Worcesterensis*, and *Morgawensis*, (or rather *Menecensis*;) all which, excepting only *Paternensis*, do still remain

remain among us, though in other names *Hereford*, and *Worcester*, (*Wicciensis*) reckoned now in *England*; *St. David's* or *Menevensis*, *Taenensis*, or *Londaff*, *Bangor*, and *Elyensis* or *St. Asaph*, in *Wales*, according to the present boundaries and limits of it: And as they did retain the *Faith*, to they retained it after the tradition of their Predecessors; neither submitting unto *Anglicanism* as Archbishop of *Canterbury*, nor to the Pope from whom he came as *Occumenical*, or chief Pastor of the Church of *Christ*; nor receiving any new Doctrines or Traditions from them: but standing to those Principles of *Liberty*, and *Religion* which they were possessed of, till all the world almost had yielded to that powerful Sec. Not manumitted from the vassalage and thralldom to it, till they embraced the Reformation of the Church of *England* in Doctrine, Discipline, and Worship: the Liturgy whereof was by the command of Queen *Elizabeth*, translated into the *Welsh* or *British*; as the Bible also was by virtue of an Act of Parliament in the fifth of that Queen, the care thereof committed to the Bishop of *Hereford*, and the four Bishops of *Wales*. But because the Bible then set forth was only in a large Church Volume, it was in the beginning, of the Reign of King *Charles* reduced to a more portable Bulk, at the cost and charge of my Cousin Mr. Rowland *Heylin*, one of the Aldermen of *London*; who also caused the Book called *The Practice of Piety* to be Printed in that Language for the instruction of the People; and a *Welsh* or *British* Dictionary to be made and published, for the understanding of the Language.

But to return unto the Church, and Affaires thereof, for the better ordering of the same, it hath been long ago divided into four Dioceses (besides that of *Hereford*) for the exercise of Ecclesiastical Discipline, those Dioceses subdivided into 9 *Arch-Deaneries*, as before in *England*; all subject heretofore to their own *Primate*, or Archbishop, residing in the City of *Iffa Silurum*, the Metropolis of the Province of *Britannia Secunda*, called by the *Welsh* or *Britons*, *Caer-Leon*, or the City of the Legion, from the second Legion, first there for defence of the Province; and *Caer-Leon* upon *Usk*, because situate on the River so named. But this City being too much exposed to the fury of the *Saxons*, the Archbishop's See was translated to *Meneu*, standing on a Promontory in the extreme Angle of *Pembroke-shire*; by *David* then Archbishop thereof, and near of kin to *Arthur*, that renowned King of the *Britons*: from whom, in tract of time, the name of *Meneu* being left off, the See and City came to be called *St. David's*. From *David* unto *Sampson* the 26. Archbishop of the *Welsh*, (being above 400 years) did they hold this Dignity; but then the Pestilence extremely raging in their parts, Archbishop *Sampson* carried with him the Episcopal Pall, and therewith the Dignity it self to *Dale* in *Bretagne*. After which time we hear of no Archbishop in *Wales*, in name and Title, though the power proper thereto still remained amongst them: the *Welsh* Bishops acknowledging no other *Primate*, nor receiving Consecration from any other hands than their own Bishop of *St. David's*, till Bishop *Barnard* was compelled to submit himself to the Power and Jurisdiction of the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, in the time of King *Henry* the first.

But it's time to look upon the face of the Country as it stands at the present, which we find Mountainous and Barren; not able to maintain its people but by helps elsewhere. To make amends for which defect, there were some Silver Mines discovered in it not long since, by Sir *Hugh Middleton*, Knight and Baronet; not only to the great honour of his own Country, but to the profit and renown of the whole Island of Great Britain. Their chief Commodities are coarse Clothes, entitled commonly by

the name of *Welsh Freeze*, and *Cottens*; which Merchandise was heretofore brought to *Offlowre* (the furthest Town of *Shropshire*) as the common Empory; and there bought by the Merchants of *Shrewsbury*. But the *Welsh* coveting to draw the Staple more into their own Country, occasioned the Merchant to hold off from buying their Commodities: till in the end the Merchant got the better of them, and enforced them to settle the whole Trade at *Shrewsbury*, where it still continueth.

To speak of Mountains in a Country which is wholly mountainous were a thing unnecessary: yet of most note are those of 1. *Snawdon*, 2. *Brechin*; *Rardvare*, and 3. *Plinlimmon*. Not much observable but for their vast height, and those many notable Rivers which issue from them. The principal whereof are, 1. *Dee*, in *Latine* called *Devva*, arising out of *Rardvare* Hills in *Merioneth-shire*, and running into the Sea not far from *Chester*. Over this River *Edward* King of *England* was rowed triumphantly in his Barge by eight inferior Kings, *Vassals* and *Tributaries* to him, that is to say, *Kenneth* King of the Scots, *Malcolm* King of *Cumberland*, *Mac-enis* King of the Isles, *Dufwal*, *Gjizib*, *Hovet*, *Jago*, and *Indethel*, Princes of *Kings of Wales*: using these words to such as attended at him, that *then his Successors might call themselves Kings of England when they did the like*. This was in the year 923, and the last of his Reign. 2. *Wye*, in *Latine* called *Vaga*, arising from *Plinlimmon* Hills, and emptying itself into the *Severn* at *Chepstre*. More in the heart of the Country (for there are but borders for the greater part of their course) 3. *Conwy*, which rising in *Aberneth-shire*, and dividing the Counties of *Denbigh* and *Caernarvon*, mingleth with the Sea at *Abn Conwy*. 4. *Tywi*, which rising in *Montgomery-shire*, and passing betwixt the Counties of *Cardigan*, *Pembroke*, and *Caernarvon*, runneth into the Sea a little below *Cardigan*. 5. *Cledid*, which runneth quite through *Pembroke-shire*, emptyeth itself into *Milford* Haven, one of the most capacious and safest Havens, not of *England* only, but of all the world.

The Men are of a faithful carriage towards all men, especially towards one another in a strange Country, and towards Strangers in their own. Of a temper quickened much inclining to *Choler*, as being subject to the Plague by *Aristotle* called *Exanthema* by which men are quickly moved to *Anger*, and as soon appeased: of all *Angels* the best and noblest. Their Language (the old *British*) hath the least commixture of foreign words of any in *Europe*; and by reason of its many Consonants and guttural Letters is not so pleasing as some others in the Pronunciation. A Language not much studied by these of other Nations; in regard that such of the Inhabitants have addicted themselves to learning, have rather chose to express themselves in the *Latine* or *English* tongues, than that of their own Native Country. The principal of which (not to say any thing of *Merlin*, the Sage of the *Welsh* or *British*) were 1. *Gildas*, for his great knowledge surnamed *Sapient*. 2. *Gosfy* of *Monmouth*, and 3. *Gwal-dus Cambrensis*, the Historians; and of later times 4. *William Morgan*, the Translator of the Bible into *Welsh*, for which performance most deservedly made Bishop of *Londaff*. 5. Sir *John Price* the Antiquary. 6. Owen the Epigrammatist, &c.

The whole Country (not taking in the Counties of *Shropshire* and *Monmouth* into the reckning) containeth 12 Shires only: of which, seven were set out by King *Edward* the first, that is to say, *Clamorgan*, *Pembroke*, *Caernarvon*, *Cardigan*, *Merioneth*, *Anglesey*, and *Caernarvon*; the other five, viz. the Counties of *Denbigh*, *Flint*, *Montgomery*, *Ruthin*, and *Brecknock*, were after added out of the

the *Marchlands* by King *Henry* the 8. These 12 Shires are again contracted or subdivided into 4 *Circuits*, for the administration of Justice. Of which the first containeth the Counties of *Montgomery*, *Flint* and *Denbigh*; the second those of *Caernarvon*, *Anglesey*, and *Merioneth*; the third those of *Caernarvon*, *Cardigan*, and *Pembroke*; and the fourth those of *Clamorgan*, *Brecknock*, and *Ruthin*.

In these 12 Shires are reckoned one Chafe, 13 Forests, 36 Parks, 230 Rivers, and an hundred Bridges. They contain also 126 Parishes, amongst which, four Cities, 57 Market Towns, and 41 Castles of the old erection. The Cities, small, poor, and inconsiderable. The Market Towns, though especially on the *Marches* and out-parts of the Country, very fair and strong; as being not only built for Commerce and Trade, but fortified with Walls and Castles to keep in the *Welsh*: and so employed till the incorporating *Watts* with *England* took away all occasion of the old hostilities. And for the Castles in the *Inlands*, partly by the iniquity of time, which is *edax rerum*, but chiefly by the policy of the Kings of *England*, who would not suffer any places of strength to remain in a Country almost inaccessible, and amongst men apt to take the advantage offered; the very ruins of them are now brought to ruin.

But to proceed more particularly, the four Cities (or Episcopal Seats) are 1. *S. David's*, formerly the Metropolis of *Wales*, situate on the Promontory in *Pembroke-shire*, by the Ancients called *Ollipita*; in a safe place, and far enough from the *Saxons*, whom the *Welsh* most feared; but incommode enough for all the rest of the Clergie to repair unto it: and not so safe neither unto the Inhabitants of it, in respect of sundry other Nations, who have often spoiled and defaced it. For standing near the Sea, it hath been frequently visited and spoiled by the *Danes*, *Norwegians*, and other *Pyrats*, inasmuch that the Bishops were enforced to remove their dwelling to *Caernarvon*: which brought the City (small enough before, when it was at the biggest) to the condition of a Village. 2. *Llan-bech*, upon the River *Tiffe*, whence it took the name; *Llan*, in the *Welsh* or *British*, signifying a Church; *Llan-bech*, the Church upon the *Tiffe*: the Bishops whereof derive their Lineal succession from those of *Caer-Leon* upon *Usk*, though the Primacy or Archbishop's See were removed to *Meneu*. A small Town now it is, God wot, nothing to rank it for a City but the Cathedral Church, and the Prebends houses. 3. *St. Asaph*, a small Town in *Flintshire*, so called from *St. Asaph*, by whom the Cathedral Church was founded, about the year 560. Situate on the Banks of the River *Elyw*, thence called *Llan-elyw* by the *Welsh*, the Bishop *Elywensis* in some *Latine* Writers. 4. *Bangor*, upon the *Menai* a branch of the *Irish* Sea, of no more beauty and renown than the other three; but only for the Cathedral founded here by the first Bishop, defaced by *Owen Glendower*, and afterwards re-edified by *Henry* Dow, Bishop heretof, An. 1496.

Towns of chief note (for these Cities have not so much in them which is worth the noting) are 1. *Shrewsbury* counted now in *England*, but heretofore the Seat of the Princes of *Powys-Land*, who had here their Palace; which being burnt in some of their broils with *England*, is now converted into Gardens for the use of the Townsmen. The Town well traded and frequented by the *Welsh* and *English*, the common Empory of both; well built, and strongly situate on a rising ground, almost encompassed with the *Severn*; that part thereof which is not fenced by the River, being fortified with a very strong Castle, the work of *Roger de Montgomery*, the first Earl heretof,

Anno 1067. Over the River for convenience of passage it hath two Bridges, and but two, the one towards *England*, and the other called the *Welsh Bridge*: which is towards *Wales*, built by *Leoline* or *Llewellyn* the first, one of the Princes of *North-Wales*; whose they conceive to be that *Statua* which is there standing on the Gate, Remarkable since the times of King *Henry* the sixth, for giving the Title of Earl to the noble family of the *Talbots*: a Family of great Honour, and as great an Estate, till the parceling of the Lands betwixt the Daughters and Co-heirs of *Gilbert Talbot* late Earl heretof; according to the ill Custom of *England*, where many times the Estate goes to the Females and the Honour (with nothing to maintain it) to the next Heir-male. 2. *Bangor*, by *Beds* called *Brancorunaburg*, a famous Monastery of the *Britons*: containing above 2000 Monks, attending their devotions at the times appointed, at other times labouring for their livelihood: most cruelly and unmercifully slaughtered by the *Saxons*, at the instigation of *Asaph* the first Archbishop of *Canterbury*, offended that they would not yield unto his authority. 3. *Caernarvon*, on the *Menai* before mentioned, not far from *Bangor*, (the Monastery of *Bangor* being in *Flintshire*) well walled, and fortified with a strong Castle by King *Edward* the first, after his conquest of the Country, formerly much esteemed to, for the Chancery and Exchequer of the Princes of *North-Wales*. 4. *Denbigh*, well seated on the Banks of the River *Irryd*, which from thence runs into the *Clyd*, the furthest River of all those parts. A Town well traded and frequented, especially since it was made by King *Henry* the 8. the head Town of a County: before which time of great report, as being the head Town of the Barony of *Denbigh*, conceived to be one of the goodliest Territories in *England*; having more Gentlemen holding of it than any other. 5. *Mairavall*, not far from *Montgomery*, heretofore a fair and capacious Town, honoured with the Palace, and made the chief Seat of the Princes of *Powys-Land*, thence called Kings of *Mairavall*, now a poor Village. 6. *Caernarben*, *Maridunum* anciently, whence the modern name, the *Britons* adding *Caer* unto it: not called so from *Caer-Merlin*, or the City of *Merlin*, here chanted by the *Lady of the Lake*, in a deep Cave heretofore, as old Fablers and Romances tell us. A fair large Town, beautified with a Collegiate Church; to which there was a purpose in the time of King *Edward* the sixth, of removing the Episcopal See from *St. David's*. Not far off, on the top of an Hill, stands *Dinevor* Castle, the chief Seat of the Princes of *South-Wales*, thence called Kings of *Dinevor*; who had their Chancery and Exchequer in the Town of *Caernarben*. 7. *Hawford*, *Wesf*, situated in the *Chersford*, or *Demy* Island of *Pembroke-shire*, by the *Welsh* called *Ros*; by the *English*, *Little England* beyond *Wales*, by reason of the *English* tongue there spoken: a Town the best Traded and frequented of all *South-Wales*. 8. *Milford*, in the same County of *Pembroke*, famous for giving name to the most safe and capacious Haven in all the Island, consisting of sundry Creeks, Bays, and Roads for Ships, which make it capable of entertaining the greatest Navy: the landing place of *Henry* the 7th when he came for *England*. 9. *Monmouth*, situate at the mouth or influx of the River *Attan*, (where it falleth into the *Wye*) whence it had the name. A Town belonging anciently to the House of *Lancaster*, the Birth-place of King *Henry* the Fifth, called *Henry* of *Monmouth*. That one particular add no more. 10. *Llan-dow*, a Town of great report, by reason of the Court and Council of the *Marches*, kept here for the most part ever since the incorporating of *Wales* with *England*, for the sake of the *Welsh*, and bordering Subjects, in their Suits at Law.

Situate on the confluence of the *Temd*, and *Corve*, and beautified with a very strong Castle: the Palace heretofore of some of the Princes of *Wales*; of the Blood-Royal of *England*, at such times as they resided in this Country (of which more anon), and of late times, the ordinary Seat of the Lord *President of Wales*: now reckoned, as all *Shropshire* on that side of the *Severn*, as a part of *England*. Of *Anglesey* and the Towns thereof, we shall speak hereafter, now taking notice only of *Aberffraw*, the Royal Seat sometimes of the Princes of *North-Wales*, called these *Kings of Aberffraw*.

The Story of the *Britains* till the time of *Cadwalader* their last King, we have had before. After whose retirement unto *Rome*, the whole name and Nation became divided into three bodies; that is to say the *Cornish Britains*, the *Britains of Cumberland*, and the *Britains of Wales*. The *Cornish Britains* governed by their own Dukes, till the time of *Egbert* the first Monarch of *England* by whom subdued *An. 809* and made a Province of that Kingdom. The *Britains of Cumberland* had their own Kings also (some of whose names occur in Story) till the year 946 when conquered by *Edmund King of England*, the Son of *Aethelstan*, their last King being named *Dummlus*, as *Matthew of Westminster* informs us. But the main body of them getting into the mountainous parts beyond the *Severn*, did there preserve the name and reputation of their Country: although their Princes were no longer called *Kings of Britain*, but of the *Walls men* or *Welsh*; and much also they had to make good that title: all the plain Country beyond *Severn* being taken from them by *Offa King of the Mercians*: and themselves made Tributaries for the rest by *Egbert* before mentioned, by *Aethelstan* afterwards. Which last imposed a Tribute on them of 20 pounds of Gold, 300 pounds of Silver, and 200 head of Cattle yearly; exchanged in following times for a Tribute of Wolves. But howsoever, they continued for a time the title of Kings, whose names are thus set down by *Glover*, in his *Catalogue of Honour*, published by *Milles*.

#### The Kings of Wales.

A. Ch. 690 1 *Idwallo*, Son of *Cadwalader*.  
720 2 *Roderick*, Son of *Idwallo*. 25.  
755 3 *Conan*, Son of *Roderick*. 63.  
818 4 *Mervin*, the Son in law of *Conan*. 25.  
843 5 *Roderick II.* surnamed the Great, Son of *Mervin*, who divided his Kingdom, finally enough before, amongst his Sons: giving *Guineidh*, or *North Wales* to *Amawbawl* his eldest Son; to *Cadel*, his second Son, *Debenbarth* or *South-wales*; and *Powys-land* to his youngest Son *Mervin*: conditioned that the two younger Sons and their Successors, should hold their Estates in Fee of the Kings of *North-wales*, and acknowledge the Sovereignty thereof, as *Liegesmen* and *Homagers*. According unto which appointment, it was ordained in the Constitutions of *Howel Dha*, the *Legislator of Wales*, that as the Kings of *Aberffraw* were bound to pay 63 pounds in a way of Tribute to the Kings of *London*; so the Kings of *Dyncewar* and *Matraual* should pay in way of Tribute the like sum to the Kings of *Aberffraw*. But notwithstanding the reservation of the Sovereignty to the Kings of *North-wales*, *Roderick* committed a great *Solacism* in point of State; by this dismembering of his Kingdom, especially at a time when all the Kingdoms of the *Saxons* were brought into one, and that one apt enough upon all occasions to work upon the weakness of the neighbouring *Welsh*: which had they continued under one sole Prince, might have preserved their liberty, and themselves a Kingdom as well as those of *Scotland*, for so long a time, against the power and puissance of the Kings of *England*.

Yet was not this the worst of the mischief neither; his Successors subdividing (by his example) their small Estates into many parcels, inasmuch that of the Eight tributary Kings which rowed King *Edgar* on the *Dee*, five of them were the Kings or Princes of *Wales*. But *Roderick* did not think of that which was to come, whom we must follow in our story, according to the division of the Country made by him into three Estates of *North-Wales*, *South-Wales*, and *Powys-land*.

1. *NORTH-WALES*, or *Guineidh*, contained the Counties of *Merioneth* and *Caernarvon*, the *Isle of Anglesey*, and the greatest parts of *Denbigh* and *Flint-shire*. The chief Towns whereof are *Bangor*, *Dinbydd*, *Caernarvon*, *Aberffraw* (spoken of before), and *Anglesey*, whereof we shall speak more hereafter. The Country (*Anglesey* excepted) the most barren and unfruitful part of *Wales*; but withal the safest and furthest from the danger of the encroaching *English*, which possibly might be the reason why it was set out for the portion of the Eldest Son, in whom the Sovereignty of the *Wales* was to be preserved by the Kings.

#### Princes of North-Wales.

A. Ch. 877 1 *Amarawd*. 36.  
913 2 *Idwallo*, Son of *Amarawd*.  
3 *Merick*, Son of *Idwallo*.  
4 *James*, or *Jago*, Brother of *Merick*.  
5 *Conan*, Son of *James* or *Jago*.  
1076 6 *Gryffith* ap *Conan*.  
1099 7 *Owen Guineidh*, Son of *Gryffith*.  
1120 8 *David* ap *Owen*, Son of *Owen Guineidh*.  
1178 9 *Llewellyn* ap *forwerth*, the Nephew of *David*.  
1194 10 *David* ap *Llewellyn*.  
1240 11 *Llewellyn II.* Son of *Gryffith*, the Brother of *David* ap *Llewellyn*, the last Prince of *Wales* of the *British* Race. Of whom it is said that once consulting with a *Witch*, he was told by her, that it was his destiny, to be carried

in triumph through *London*, with a Crown on his head. Hereupon making free Excursions on the *English* Borders, he drew upon himself the whole power of King *Edward* the first, which not being able to withstand, and the King as willing on the other side not to fight with Mountains, Commissioners were appointed to conclude the differences: *Robert Lord Tipoff* and some others, for the King of *England*; for the *Welsh* Prince, *Grono ap Hejyn*, a great man of that Country, descended from *Brocevel* *Skythrac*, one of the Princes of *Powys-land*, (from whom all *Cambrian* *Clarencians* by of any credit, the Author of these Papers doth derive his Pedigree) under whom that Family had the Office of *Hereditary Cup-bearer*, and from thence their name, *Hejyn*, *Promis*, *five a puelis*, *qua vox in proprium nomen abiit*, (saith the *Welsh* Dictionary) By those Commissioners it was concluded and agreed, that *Llewellyn* should enjoy a part of the Country with the title of Prince, during his life: the rest in present, and the whole after his decease, to be surrendered over to the King of *England*. But *David* the Brother of *Llewellyn*, finding himself excluded by this agreement, from the hope of succession, incensed his Brother and the *Welsh* to a new Revolt: the issue whereof was the taking of *David*, executed by the hand of Justice; and the death of *Llewellyn*, slain in Battle near the *Buich* in *Brocevel* *Skythrac*. Whose head being pitched upon a stake, and adorned with a Paper-Crown, was by a Host taken carried triumphantly through *London*, *An. 1282*. And so the *Prophesie* was fulfilled. In him ended the Line of the Princes of *North-Wales*, after they had for the space of 405 years reigned not only the private Undertakers and

continued

venturers of *England*, but the Forces of many Puissant Monarchs; whose attempts they always made frustrate, by retiring into the heart of their Country, and leaving nothing for the *English* to encounter with, but their Woods and Mountains. But now the fatal period to the *British* Liberty being come, they were constrained to yield to the stronger. What followed after this, we shall see anon.

The Arms of these Princes was quarterly *Gules* and *Or*, four Lions passant guardant counterchanged.

2. *POWYS-land* contained the whole Counties of *Montgomery*, and *Radnor*, all *Shropshire* beyond the *Severn*, with the Town of *Shrewsbury*, and the rest of *Denbigh* and *Flint-shires*; comprehending by the estimation of those times, 15 Cantreds or hundreds of Villages: the word *Cant* signifying an Hundred, and *Trit* a Village. The principal Cities or Towns of it, were, *S. Asaph*, *Shrewsbury*, *Matraual*, spoken of before. A Country more pertaking of the nature and fertility of *England*, than the parts belonging unto *Guineidh*, or *North-Wales*; but always lying in harms way, by reason of the Neighbourhood of the more potent *English*: and therefore given by *Roderick* to *Mervin*, his youngest Son, partly because he was the youngest; but chiefly because he was a man of an approved valour and so more fit to have his portion upon the Borders. In his Line it continued a long time together, but much afflicted and dismembered by the Earls of *Chesler* and *Surewbury*, who took from them a good part of *Flint*, *Denbigh*, and *Shropshire*; and by the Princes of *North-Wales*, who call many a greedy eye upon it. Of the Successors of Prince *Mervin*, I find no good *Constat*, more than of *Brocevel* *Skythrac* before remembered. The last that held it at all entire was *Meredith* ap *Bleithyn*, which holding the ill example of *Roderick Mawr*, divided it betwixt *Maddoc*, and *Gryffith*, his two Sons. Of which *Maddoc* dyed at *Winchester*, *An. 1160*. in the time of King *Henry* the second, his part hereof depending after his decease, on the Fortunes of *Gwynedd*: and *Gryffith* was by *Henry* the first made Lord of *Powys* (the title of Prince left off as too high and lofty.) In his race it continued till the time of King *Edward* the first: to whom at a Parliament holden in *Shrewsbury*, *Owen ap Gryffith*, the 5. from *Gryffith* ap *Meredith* before mentioned, surrendered his place and title; and received them of the King again to be holden in *Capite* and *free Baronage*, according to the custom of *England*. *Avon*, or *Havon*, Daughter and Heir of this *Owen ap Gryffith*, was married unto *John Charles*, *Vallet* (or Gentleman) of the *Privy Chamber* to King *Edward* the second, by whom, in right of his Wife, he was made Lord *Powys*. *Edward* the fifth also of this Line of the *Charletons*, was the last of that House; his Daughter *Jane* conveying the Estates and Title to the House of the *Greys*; and of them also five enjoyed it, the last Lord *Powys* of the Line or Race of *Mervin*, being *Edward*, *Grey*, who dyed in the days of our Grand-Fathers. And so the title lay extinct, until revived again in the person of *St. William* *Herbert* of *Red-Castle*, descended from the *Herberts*, Earls of *Pembroke*; created Lord *Powys* by King *Charles* the first, *An. 1639*.

The Arms of the Princes of *Powys-land*, were *Or* a Lyon Rampant, *Gules*.

3. *SOUTH-WALES*, or *Debenbarth*, contained the Counties of *Monmouth*, *Glamorgan*, *Caermarden*, *Cardigan*, & *Brocevel*; the greatest & most fruitful part of all *Wales*; but more exposed to the invasion of Foreign Nations, *English*, *Danes*, *Flemings*, and *Norwegians*; by whom the Sea Coasts were from time to time most grievously plagued: inasmuch that the Kings and Princes hereof were

inforced to remove their Seat from *Caermarthen*, where it was fixt at first, unto *Dyncewar* Castle, as a place of greater strength and safety; where it continued till the Princes of it were quite extinct, called from hence Kings of *Dyncewar*, as before is said. The chief Towns of it, *Caermarthen*, *Monmouth*, *Landaf*, *S. David*, spoken of already. The Kings and Princes, as far as I can find upon any certainty, are these that follow.

#### The Princes of South-Wales.

A. Ch. 877 1 *Cadel*, the Son of *Roderick Mawr*.  
2 *Howel*.  
907 3 *Howel Dha*, Sovereign King of *Wales*.  
948 4 *Owen*, the Son of *Dha*.  
5 *Meredith*, Son of *Owen*.  
958 6 *Aneaw*, or *Evanus*, Brother of *Meredith*.  
7 *Theodore* the Great.  
1077 8 *Rhef* ap *Theodore*.  
1093 9 *Gryffith* ap *Rhef*.  
10 *Rhef II.* ap *Gryffith*.  
11 *Gryffith* ap *Rhef*, the last Prince of *South-Wales* of the Line of *Cadel*, after they had with great struggling maintained their Liberty for the space of 300 years and upwards: but so that though they still preserved the title of Princes, they lost a great part of their Country to the *Norman-English*. For in the Reign of *William Rufus*, *Bernard de Newmark* a Noble *Norman*, seized upon those parts which now make the County of *Gloucester*; being then a fair and goodly Lordship: and *Robert Fitz-Hamon*, with some other noble Adventurers, made themselves Masters of *Glamorgan*; in which the posterity of some of them are still remaining. Encouraged by their good success, *Anulph* of *Montgomery*, in the time of King *Henry* the first, won from the *Welsh* a great part of *Dyvet*, and we now call *Pembroke-shire*; as the Earls of *Warren*, and Lord *Mortimer* about the same times did prevail exceedingly in the Conquest of *Cardigan* and *Monmouth*. So that the poor Princes had no Country left entire, but *Caermarthen* only, too little to maintain them in so high a title. And though this last *Gryffith*, in the time of the Wars in *England*, betwixt *Maud* the Empress, and King *Stephen*, had recovered a great part of his lost Estate, yet neither he nor his did enjoy it long, himself deceasing shortly after, and his two Sons, *Cymmerick* and *Meredith*, being taken by King *Henry* the second, who most cruelly put out their eyes: Yet did the *Welsh*, as well as possibly they could, endeavour to preserve the liberty which their Fathers left them; till the Felicity and Wisdom of King *Edward* the first, put an end unto the Wars of *Wales*, and settled them in some degree of peace and quiet.

But before we come to speak of this, we are to show another Catalogue of the Kings and Princes of *Wales*, different from the succession of them before laid down; and made according to the History of *Wales*, writ by *Humphrey Lloyd*: this Catalogue containing the succession of the greater and predominant Princes, whether of *Gwynedd*, *Debenbarth*, or *Powys-land*; such as gave law unto the rest, and had the honour to be called Kings of *Wales*, though Princes only of their own proper and particular Countries; as formerly we had a Catalogue of the Predominants of the *English Saxons*, made out of the Predominant Princes of the *Saxon* *Heptharke*. Only we shall find more in the following Catalogue, who were not naturally and lineally Princes of any of the three, and therefore not expressed in the former Tables; but such as by strong hand had intruded into those Estates, to the prejudice of the right heirs, overpowered by them.

The

## The Kings and Princes of Wales, according to the Welch History.

- A. Ch.*  
 688 1 *Ivor*, a potent Inter-*per*, upon *Cadwalader's* departure usurped the Kingdom.  
 690 2 *Iwallo*, or *Edwall*, Son of *Cadwalader*, restored unto his Fathers Throne.  
 720 3 *Roderick Malwinno*, the Son of *Iswallo*.  
 755 4 *Canan Tiendathary*, the Son of *Roderick*.  
 820 5 *Mervin Orich*, in right of *Eisibit* his Wife, the Daughter of *Canan*.  
 843 6 *Roderick Mawre*, (who divided *Wales* into three Estates) the Son of *Mervin*.  
 877 7 *Amarawdb*, Prince of *Gwynedth*, the Son of *Roderick Mawre*.  
 913 8 *Edwal Voel* Prince of *Gwynedth*, Son of *Amarawdb*, made tributary to *Abelstan* King of *England*.  
 940 9 *Howel Dda*, (or the Good) Prince of *Debenbarth*, and *Powys*.  
 948 10 *Jevas*, and *Jago*, Sons of *Edwal Voel*, to whom King *Edgar* did release the Tribute ordained by King *Abelstan*, to be paid in money, for a tribute of *Wolves*; of which we spake before when we were in *England*.  
 982 11 *Howel*, the Son of *Jevas*, succeeded in the Kingdom of *Wales*, his Father being still alive, and of right Prince of *Gwynedth*.  
 984 12 *Cadwallan*, the Brother of *Howel*.  
 986 13 *Meredith ap Owen*, Prince of *Debenbarth*.  
 992 14 *Edwal III.* Son of *Merick*, the Eldest Son of *Edwal Voel*, which *Merick*, had been permitted, as unfit for Government.  
 1003 15 *Aedan ap Blethored*, an *Ullurper*.  
 1015 16 *Llewellyn ap Sisyll*, descended from *Amarawdb*, the first Prince of *Gwynedth* or *North-wales*.  
 1021 17 *Jago ap Edwal*, Prince of *Gwynedth*, Son of *Edwal* the third.  
 1037 18 *Griffith Llewellyn*, the Son of *Llewellyn ap Sisyll*, and the Lady *Angharad*.  
 1061 19 *Blithyn* and *Rhywallon*, Sons of *Angharad*, the Daughter of *Meredith ap Owen* Prince of *Debenbarth*, by a second Husband.  
 1073 20 *Tiabaern ap Caradoc*, Cousin to *Blethyn*.  
 1078 21 *Griffith Prince of Gwynedd*, Son of *Conan*, the Son of *Jago ap Edwal*, one of the Princes of the fame, did Homage to *William* the Conqueror, and was the last that had the title of King of *Wales*.  
 1137 22 *Owen Gwynedd* Prince of *Gwynedd*, and Sovereign Prince of *Wales*, Eldest Son of *Griffith*.  
 1169 23 *David ap Owen* Prince of *Gwynedd*, the younger Son of *Owen Gwynedd*.  
 1194 24 *Llewellyn*, Son of *Forwerth*, eldest son of *Owen Gwynedd*, excluded by *David* his younger Brother.  
 1242 25 *David ap Llewellyn* Prince of *Gwynedd*, Son of *Llewellyn ap Forwerth*.  
 1246 26 *Llewellyn Son of Griffith*, the Brother of *David*, the last Sovereign Prince of *Wales*, of the race of *Cadwalader*; overcome and slain in *Bartel* by King *Edward* the first, *An. 1232.* as before is said: by means whereof the Principality of *Wales* was added to the Cr on of *E. gland*.

When King *Edward* had thus fortunately effected this great business, he gave unto his *English* Barons and other

Gentlemen of note, many fair Signiorities and Estates; as well to reward them for their service in the Conquest, as to engage to many able men, both in purse and power, for the perpetual defence and subjection of it. As for the Lordship of *Flint*, and the Towns and Estates lying on the Sea-Coasts: he held them in his own hands, both to keep himself strong, and to curb the *Welsh*; and (wherein he dealt like the politic Emperor *Augustus*) pretending the ease of such as he had there placed; but indeed to have all the Arms, and men of employment under himself only.

This done, he divided *Wales* into seven Shires, viz. 1. *Glamorgan*, 2. *Carmarden*, 3. *Pembroke*, 4. *Cardigan*, 5. *Merioneth*, 6. *Carnarvon*, and 7. *Anglesey*, after the manner of *England*. Over each of these, as he placed a particular *English* Lieutenant, so he was very desirous to have one general *English* Vicegerent, over the whole Body of the *Welsh*. But this when they mainly withheld of him for his Wife, then great wit Child, to *Carnarvon*, where the was delivered of a Son. Upon the news whereof the King assembled the *British* Lords, and offered to name them a Governour born in *Wales*, which could speak one word of *English*, and whose life no man could tax. Such an one when they had all sworn to obey, he named his young Son *Edward*; since which time our Kings Eldest Sons are called *Princes of Wales*. Their *Investiture* is performed by the imposition of a Cap of Estate, and a *Coronet* on his head that is invested, as a token of his Principality; by delivering into his hand a *Scepter*, being the emblem of Government; by putting a Ring of Gold on his finger, to shew him that now he is a *Husband* to the Country, and a Father to her Children; and by giving him a Patent, to hold the said Principality to him and his heirs Kings of *England*. By which words the separation of it from the Crown is prohibited; and the Kings keep in themselves for excellent an occasion of obliging unto them their eldest Son, when they please. In imitation of this Custom, *more ex Anglia translatum* (saith *Marianus*) has the first of *Cassile* and *Leon*, made his Son *Henry* Prince of the *Asturias*; which is a Country for craggy and mountainous, that it may not improperly be called the *Welsh Spain*. And all the *Spanish* Princes even to these times, are honoured with this Title of *Prince of the Asturias*.

Notwithstanding this provident care of *Edward* the first, in establishing his Empire here; and the extreme rigour of Law here used by *Henry* the 4th, in reducing them to obedience, after the rebellion of *Owen Glendower*: yet till the time of *Henry* the 8th, and his Father, (both being extract from the *Welsh* blood) they seldom or never contained themselves within the bounds of true Allegiance. For whereas before they were reputed as *Aliens*, this *Henry* made them (by act of Parliament) one Nation with the *English*, subject to the same Laws, capable of the same preferments, and privileged with the same immunities. He added also 6 Shires to the former number, out of these Countries which were before reputed as the *Borders* and *Marches* of *Wales*; and enabled them to send Knights and Burgesses unto the *English* Parliaments: so that the name and language only excepted, there is now no difference between the *English* and *Welsh* an happy Union.

The same King *Henry* established for the ease of his *Welsh* Subjects, a Court at *Ludlow*, like unto the ordinary Parliaments in *France*: wherein the Laws are ministered according to the Fashion of the Kings Courts of *Westminster*. The Court consisted of one *President* who is, for the most part, of the Nobility, and is generally called the *Lord President of Wales*; of as many *Counsellors* as the King shall please to appoint; one *Attorney*, one *Solicitor*,

licitor, one Secretary, and the four Justices of the Countie of *Wales*. The Town it self (for this must not be omitted) adjoined with a very fair Castle, which hath been the Palace of such Princes of *Wales*, of the *English* blood, as have come into this Country, to solace themselves among their people. Here was young *Edward* the 5th, at the death of his Father; and here dyed Prince *Arthur*, Eldest son of *Henry* the 7th: both being sent either by their Fathers to the fame end, viz. by their preference to fatisfe and keep in order the unquiet *Welsh-men*. And certainly, as the preference of the Prince was then a terror to the rebellious, so would it now be as great a comfort to this peaceable people.

What the *Revenues* of this Principality are, I cannot say: yet we may boldly affirm that they are not very small, by these reasons following, viz. 1. By the Composition which *Llewellyn*, the last Prince of *Wales*, made with *Edward* the first: who being Prince of *North-wales* only, and dispossessed of most of that, was fain to redeem the rest, of the said King *Edward*, at the price of 50000 Marks (which comes to 100000 pounds of our present money) to be paid down in ready coin; and for the residue to pay 1000 l. per annum. And 2dly, by those two circumstances, in the marriage of the Lady *Katharine* of *Spain*, to the above-named Prince *Arthur*. For first, her Father *Ferdinand* being one of the warriest Princes that ever were in *Europe*, giving with her in Dowry 200000 Ducats; required for Joynture, the third part only of this Principality, and of the Earldom of *Cheshire*. And secondly, after the death of Prince *Arthur*, the Nobles of the Realm perswaded Prince *Henry* to take her to Wife;

that so great a Treasure as the yearly *Revenue* of her Joynture, might not be carried out of the Kingdom.

The Arms of the Princes of *Wales* differ from those of *England*, only by the addition of a Label of three points. But the proper and peculiar device, and which we commonly, though corruptly, call the *Princes Arms*, is a *Coronet* beautified with three *Orich* Feathers, and inscribed round with *ICH DIEN*, that is, I serve; alluding to that of the Apostle, *The Hair while he is a Child differeth not from a Servant*. This *Coronet* was won by that valiant Prince, *Edward* the Black Prince, at the Battle of *Crecie*, from *Joba* King of *Bohemia*, who did there wear it, and whom he there slew. Since which time it hath been the Cognizance of all our Princes.

I will now that up my discourse of *Wales*, with that testimony of the people, who ch *Henry* the second used in a Letter to *Emanuel* Emperor of *Constantinople*; *The Welch Nation is so adventurous, that they dare encounter naked with armed men ready to spend their blood for their Country, and pawn their life for praise*: and adding only this, that since their incorporating with the *English*, they have shewed themselves most loyal, hearty, and affectionate Subjects of the State: cordially devoted to their King, and zealous in defence of their Laws, Liberties and Religion, as well as any of the best of their fellow-Subjects; whereof they have given good proof in these later times.

There are in *Wales*.  
 Archbishops 0. Bishops 4.

## The BORDERS.

Before we come into *Scotland*, we must of necessity pass through that *Barbarous* ground, lying between both Kingdoms, called THE BORDERS; the Inhabitants whereof are a kind of military men, subtle, nimble, and by reason of their often skirmishes, well experienced, and adventurous. Once the *English* Border extended as far as unto the *Fryth*, or Strait of *Edenburgh* on the East, and that of *Dunbar* on the West (the first *Fryth*, by the Latines called *Bodvaria* and the later *Glossa*;) betwixt which, where now standeth the Town of *Sterling*, was an ancient Bridge, built over the River which falleth into the *Fryth* of *Edenburgh*; on a Cross standing whereupon, was writ this *Passport*;

I am Free-march as passengers may ken,  
 To Scots, to Britains, and to English-men.

But when *England* groaned under the burden of the *Danish* oppression, the Scots well husbanded that advantage; and not only enlarged their Borders to the *Tweed*, but also took into their hands *Cumberland*, *Northumberland*, and *Westmerland*. The *Norman* Kings again recovered these Provinces, making the Borders of both Kingdoms to be *Tweed*, East; the *Solway*, West; and the *Cheviot* hills in the midst. Of any great wars made on these Borders, for any particular Officers appointed for the defence of them, I find no mention till the time of *Edward* the first; who taking advantage of the Scots disagreements about the succession of *Alexander* the third, hoped to bring the Country under the obedience of *England*. This Quarrel betwixt the two Nations he began, but could not end: the Wars surviving the Author; so that what *Velleins* saith of the *Romans* and *Carthaginians*, I may as

well say of the Scots and *English*: for almost 300 years together, *ane bellum inter eos populos, aut belli preparatio, aut infide pax fuit*. In most of these conflicts the Scots had the worst. So that *Daniel* in his History seemeth to marvel how this Corner of the Isle could breed so many, had it bred nothing but men, as were slain in these wars. Yet in the Reign of *Edward* the second, the Scots (having twice defeated that unhappy Prince) became so terrible to the *English* Borderers, that a hundred of them would fly from three Scots. It is a custom among the *Turks*, not to believe a *Christian* or a Jew complaining against a *Turk*, except their accusation be confirmed by the Testimony of some *Turk* also; which seldom hapning, is not the least cause why so little Justice is there done the *Christians*. In like manner, it is the Law of these Borderers, never to believe any Scots complaining against any *English*-man, unless some other *English*-man will witness for him; and so on the other side. *Ex jure quodam inter limitatos rati* (saith *Cambden* in his *Elizabeth*.) *nullus nisi Scotus in Scotum, nullus nisi Anglus in Anglum, restis admittitur*. This custom making void in this fashion all kinds of accusations, was one of the greatest causes of the Infolencies of both sides committed. Besides, there were divers here living, which acknowledged neither King; but sometime were Scots, sometime *English*, as their present crimes and necessities required protection, or pardon. To keep in this people, and secure their Borders, there were in each Kingdom three Officers appointed, called the *Lords Wardens of the Marches*: one being placed over the East, the other over the West, the third over the middle Borders. In *England*, the *Warden* of the East *Marches* had his Seat at *Berwick*, (a Town of great strength, and which for the convenience of its situation

tion, was the first thing which the *English* took care to defend, and the *Scots* to surprise, of which he was also Governor. The *Varden* of the West Marches had his Seat in *Carle*, which *Henry* the 8. for that cause well fortified. The *Varden* of the middle Marches had no settled place of residence, but was sometimes in one place, sometimes in another, according as occasion required; the

Office being executed for the most part, by the Wardens of the Eastern or Western Marches. But *Imperium* *terminus ante feuit*, by the blessed Marriage of the Kingdoms, that being now the middle of the which was then the bounds of two Empires; these Officers, and the cause of them, the Wars, are quite extinguished.

## SCOTLAND.

**S** C O T L A N D is the Northern part of Britain, separated from England by the River *Tweed* and *Solway*, and the *Cheviot* Hills, extending from the one to the other. It is in length) according to *Polydore Virgil* 480 miles, but of no great breadth; there being no place distant from the Sea above 60 miles, and the Country ending like the sharp point of a Wedge. And for the length assigned unto it by *Polydore*, it must be made up by measuring the Crooks and Windings of the shores, every where thrusting out with very large *Promontories*, and cutting deep *Indentures* into the Land. For measuring in a straight Line from North to South, the length thereof from *Solway Frith* to the *Strathly-head*, amounteth but unto three hundred and ten *Italian* miles; and from *Berwick* unto *Strathly-head*, is a great deal shorter. So that there is no such over-estimate in the Maps of Britain, nor such necessity to correct them, as was sometimes thought.

It was once called *Caledonia*, from the *Caledonians* a chief People of it: sometimes *Albania*, from *Albanus* or *Braid Albania* principal Province in the North. But the most usual name is *Scotia* or *Scotland*; though the reason of the name be not agreed on. Some fabulous Writers of their own fetch it from *Scota*, the Daughter of an *Aegyptian Pharaoh*, of whom more when we come to *Ireland*. Others with better reason (though that none of the best) from the *Scoti*, *Scitti*, or *Scythi*, a *German*, or *Sarmatian* people, of noted fame; whom they will have to seize first on some parts of *Spain*, from thence to transplant themselves into *Ireland*; and out of *Ireland* into the *Hebrides* or Western Islands, now parts and members of this Kingdom. The more probable opinion is, that they were no other than meet *Irish*, (whose language, habit, and the most barbarous of their customs, the *Highlanders*, or natural *Scots* do still retain) united in the name of *Scot*, about the declination of the *Roman* Empire: the word *Scot* signifying in their language, a body aggregated into one out of many particulars; as the word *Alban* in the *Dutch*, *Scot illud dicitur* (saith *C Camden* out of *Matthew of Westminster*) *quod ex diversis rebus in unum accrevit aggregatur*. First mentioned by this name in some fragments of *Polyphy* (who lived about the time of the Emperor *Arrian*) as they are cited by *S. Hieron*, after the death of *Constantine* much spoken of in approved Authors, as the confederates of the *Picts*, in harrying the *Roman* Province.

The whole divided commonly into the *Highlands*; and the *Lowlands*. The *Highlanders* or *Irish* *Scots* inhabiting the *Hebrides*; and the West parts of the Continent adjoining to them, more barbarous than the *Irish* *Irish* at this day: it not to be civiliz'd (as *King James* observed in his

most excellent *Basilicon Doron*) by planting Colonies of the more Inland, orderly *Scots* among them. The *Lowlanders* or *English* *Scots* (as I well may call them) inhabiting on this side the two *Fyths* of *Dumfriesshire* and *Edinburgh*, and the plainer Countries along the *German* Ocean, are the more civil of the two, as being of the same *Saxon* race with the *English*. This is evident, first by their Language, being only a broad Northern *English*; a *Dialect* only of that tongue: 2. By the Testimony of the *Highlanders* themselves, who are the true *Scots*, and speak the old *Irish* language; by whom the *Lowlanders* and the *English* are called by the same name of *Saxons*: 3. by the general consent of all Historians, affirming that the Kingdom of the *Northumbers* or *English* *Saxons*, beyond *Hammer*, extended as far Northwards as the two *Fyths* before mentioned; and there continued for the space of 300 years: and 4. By the confession of some ingenious Gentlemen of that Nation, who grant it for a probable Tenet, that the *Saxons* and the *Scots* invading *Britain* about the same time, the *Saxons* might extort the Eastern shore lying next their Country, from the old Inhabitants; as well as the *Scots* did all the Western parts which lay next to *Ireland*, and the *Hebrides* or *Western Islands*, from whence they first passed into *Britain*.

The Country for the most part, especially beyond the limits of the *Roman* Province, is very barren and unfruitful, not able to afford sustenance for the *Natives* of it; they were not a people patient of want and hunger; temperate in diet, and not accustomed unto that riot and excess, used commonly in richer and more plentiful Countries. Fruit they have very little, and not many Trees either for Building or for Fuel: the people holding, as in *France*, at the Will of the Lord, and therefore not industrious to build, or plant. Their chief Commodities are coarce Cloth, Fish in great abundance, Hides, Lead, and Coal, of which two last their Mountains do afford some rich undecaying Mines.

The People have been noted by their best Writers, for some barbarous Customs entertained amongst them, one of which was, if any two were displeased, they expected no law, but bang'd it out bravely, one and his Kindred, against the other and his: and thought the King much in their common, if they granted him at a certain day to keep the Peace. This fighting they call their *Feides*, a word barbarous, that were it to be expressed in *Latine* or *French*, it must be by *Circumlocution*. These deadly *Feides*, *King James* in his most excellent *Basilicon Doron* adviseth his son to redress with all care possible; but it pleased God to give him so long a life as to see it in his own days remedied: wherein he got a greater Victory over that barbarous

born people, than ever did any foreign Prince, or any of his Predecessors could do before him; and indeed truly royal, and worthy himself. Another Custom they had of that nature, that the like was hardly ever heard of amongst the Heathen, and much less in *Christianity*, which took beginning, as the *Scottish* Historians affirm, in the Reign of *Ewin* the third, who is the Fifteenth King in their Catalogue, after the first *Fergus*. This *Ewin* being a Prince much addicted, or wholly rather given over unto lechituousness, made a Law, That himself and his Successors should have the *Maidenhead*, or first Nights lodging with every Woman, whose Husband held Land immediately from the Crown; and the Lords and Gentlemen of all those whose husbands were their Tenants or *Homagers*. This was, it seems, the *Knights-service* which men held their Estates by; and continued till the days of *Malcolm Canmor*: who at the request of his Wife *Margaret*, (she was the Sister of *Edgar Atheling*) abolished this Law, and ordained, That the Tenants by way of commutation, should pay unto their Lords a mark in money; which Tribute the *Historians* say is still in force. It was called *Marchetia mulieris*: but whether from *Mark*, a horse in the old *Gallique* (implying the obscene signification of *Equivocal*) as *Mr. Seldon* thinks, or from *Marce*, the sum of money by which it was afterwards redeemed, I cannot determine. Certain I am that this last Custom was of such a barbarous and brutish nature, that the Custom of the *Indians* in giving to the *Bramine* the first nights lodging with their Brides; and that of many Savage unconverted Nations in prostituting their wives and Daughters to the lusts and pleasure of their *Guests*; have not more unchristianity in them, than this of those *Scottish* Christians, if I may to call them.

These Customs shew the ancient *Scots* to be rude and barbarous, partaking little of the civility of the neighbouring Nation: nor are they so broken of the former, but that they are observed by a modern Writer, to be still greedy of revenge where they find means to take it; as also to be a subtle and politic people, inclined to Factions and Seditions amongst themselves; which he that reads their Stories cannot choose but see. A people, as *King James* observeth in his *Basilicon Doron*, ever weary of the present State and desirous of novelties, accustomed to judge and speak rashly of their Kings and Princes; towards whom they have always carried themselves with such untoward civilities, that more Kings have been betrayed, murdered and deposed by the *Scots*, than by all the Nations in the World. But take them in themselves without these relations, and they are said to be an industrious people, capable of all Sciences which they give their minds to, and generally well versed in *Grammatical* Learning, of which most of their *Country* have a smattering. And of most note in point of Learning, have been 1. *Marianus* (surnamed *Scotus*), and 2. *Hector Boetius*, the Historians. 3. *John Major*, a well-known Schoolman, for the times before the Reformation. And for the times that followed, 4. *George Buchanan*, an ingenious Poet, but an unfound States-man; whose History, and Dialogue *De jure Regni*, have wrought more mischief in the World, than all *Marci* works. Not to have been remembered here, but because he was Paganodote to 5. *King James*, of most famous memory; whose Printed works declare his large abilities in all kinds of Learning. 6. *Napier*, the Laird of *Marchmont*, the 7. *Barclay*, the Father and the Son. 8. *John Skene*, the best Antiquary of this Nation. 10. Doctor *John Maxwell*, the late learned Bishop of *Ross*, and my very good friend; besides some others of less note.

The *Christian Religion* was here planted by divers men according to their several Nations, who did here inhabit amongst the *Low-Landers*, or *Saxon-Scots*, by *Aidan* the

first Bishop of *Lindisfarne*, or *Holy Island*; amongst the *Picts*, inhabiting the South-Eastern parts, by *Ninias*, Bishop of *Candida Cafa*, or *Whit-borne*, in *Galloway*; amongst the *Northern-Picts*, An. 555; and finally amongst the *Scots*, by *Taladan*, a Deacon of *Rome*, sent to them higher for that purpose by Pope *Celestine* An. 435; or thereabouts. And for the Reformation of *Religion*, overgrown with the rust and rubbish of the *Romish* Church, (degenerated from it self in the latter days) it was here made good by a strong hand, according to the judgment of *Knox* and others: nor taking counsel with the *Prelates* nor staying the leisure of the Prince as they did in *England*; but turning Prince and *Prelates*, out of all authority; made by that means more naturally subject unto alterations than it had been otherwise; or only to be made good by the same violence which first introduced it. 'Tis true, that for a while being in danger of the *French*, and of necessity to support themselves by the power and favour of the *English*; they bound themselves by a solemn Subscription, to adhere only to the Rites and Ceremonies of the Church of *England*, and to observe that form of Worship which was there established. *Religionis cultus, et Ritibus cum Anglis communibus subsisteremus*; as is affirmed by *Buchanan*, their own State Historian. But no sooner was that danger over, but they found opportunity and leisure to affect their ends; and have endeavoured ever since by practices, and correspondence with that party here, and finally by force of Arms, to thrust their own Constitutions and Form of Worship on the Church of *England*.

As for the Government of the Church, it was originally by Bishops (as in all parts else; ) but to as they exercise their Functions and Jurisdictions in all places equally, whereof ever they come: The Kingdom not being divided into *Dioceses*, till the time of *Malcolm* the third An. 1070, or thereabouts. Nor had they any Archbishop till the year 1428. The Archbishop of *Torke* being accounted and obeyed before that time, as the Metropolitan of *Scotland*. But being once settled in an orderly and constant Hierarchy, they held the same unto the Reformation began by *Knox*; and when he and his associates approving the *Genevian* plan-form, took the advantage of the minority of *King James* the Sixth, to introduce the *Presbyterian* Discipline, and suppress the Bishops; forbidding them by their own sole authority, to intermeddle any more in matters which concerned the Church, and Censuring the Kingdom into *Presbyteries* of their own assigning. And that the King might not be able to oppose their doings, they kept him under by strong hand, imprisoned him at *Stirling*, made him fly from *Edenburgh*, removed from him all his faithful Servants, and seized upon his principal Fortresses; and in a word, so baffled and affronted him upon all occasions, that he was minded many times to have left the Kingdom and retire to *Vence*, which doubtless he had done, (as I have heard affirmed by some of great place and power) had not the hopes of coming at the last to the Crown of *England*, made him stay it out: So that his *Majesty* of *No Bishop*, no King, was not made at random, but founded on the sad experience of his own condition. And though upon the fence of those inconveniences, which that alteration brought upon him, he did afterwards with great both Policy and Prudence, relearn again the *Episcopal* Order, and settled it both by *Synodical* Acts, and by Acts of Parliament: yet the same restless spirit breaking out again in the Reign of his Son, An. 1638, did violently eject the Bishops, and suppress the calling; and set up their *Presbyteries* throughout the Kingdom, as in former times.

The famous or miraculous things rather of this Country are, 1. The Lake of *Nitton*, part of whose waters do con-





himself in the North of Britain, is, according to the above named *Heitor Botinus*, one *Fergus*, which in the time that *Ceyl* governed the *Britains*, came (forthwith) into these parts out of Ireland. From him, unto *Engenius*, we have the names of 39 Kings in a continued succession: which *Engenius*, together with his whole Nation, is said to have been exiled the Island, by a joint confederacy of the *Romans*, *Britains* and *Picts*. Twenty and seven years after the death of this *Engenius*, they were reduced again into their possession here, by the valour and conduct of another *Fergus*, the second of that name. To this *Fergus* I refer the beginning of this *Scottish* Kingdom in Britain, holding the stories of the former 39 Kings to be vain and fabulous. Neither want I probable conjecture for this assertion, this expedition of *Fergus* into Britain being placed in the 424 year of *CHRIST*, at what time the best Writers of the *Roman* Story, for those times, report the *Scots* to have first feared themselves in this Island.

The Kings of chief note in the course of the whole Succession are; 1. *Abthans*, who died in the year 809 and in his life contracted the offensive and defensive league with *Charles* the Great, between the Kingdoms of *France* and *Scotland*. The Conditions whereof were; 1. Let this league between the two Kingdoms endure for ever; 2. Let the enemies unto one be reputed and handled as the enemies of the other; 3. If the *Saxons* or *Engelsmen* invade *France*, the *Scots* shall fend either such numbers of Souldiers as shall be desired, the *French* King defraying the charges; 4. If the *Engels* invade *Scotland*, the King of *France* shall at his own charges lend competent assistance unto the King of *Scots*. Never was there any league, which was either more faithfully observed, or longer continued, than this between these two Kingdoms: the *Scots* on all occasions so readily assisting the *French*, that it grew to a proverb, or by-word, *He that will France win, must with Scotland first begin*. 2. *Kenneth* the 2d, who having utterly subdued and destroyed the *Picts*, extended his Dominions over all the present *Scotland*, delivered to be accepted the first *Monarch* of it: the *Picts* (being either rooted out, or so few in number, that they passed eitherwards in the name and account of *Scots*) from that time forwards never mentioned in any Author. 3. *Malcolm* the first, who added *Wesmerland* and *Cumberland* unto his Dominions, given to him by King *Edmund* of *England*, the Son of *Abthans*, to have his aid against the *Danes*, or to keep him neutral. After which time, those Counties were sometimes *Scottish* and sometimes *English*, till finally recovered by King *Henry* the second, and united to the Crown of *England*, never since disjoined. 4. *Kenneth* the third, who, by consent of the Estates of his Realm, made the Kingdom hereditary to descend from the Father to his Eldest Son, before which time (keeping within the compass of the Royal Family) the *Uncle* was sometimes preferred before the *Nephew*, the eldest in years, though further off, before the younger Kinman, though the nearer in blood. After which time (the opposition and interruption made by *Constantine* the third, and *Donald* the fourth excepted only the Eldest Sons of these Kings, or the next in birth, have succeeded ordinary in that Kingdom. This *Kenneth* was one of those Tributaries and *Vassal* Kings, which sowed King *Edgar* over the *Dee*, near *Chesler*, in such pomp and Majesty. 5. *Macbeth* of whom there goeth a famous Story, which shall be told at large anon. 6. *Malcolm* the third, the Son of *Macbeth*, who lived in *England* during the whole time of *Macbeth's* Tyranny; and thence brought into *Scotland* at his return, not only some *Civilities* of the *English* garb, but the honourary Titles of Earls and Barons, not here before mentioned. At the persuasion of the Lady *Margaret* his wife, (Sister of *Ed-*

*gar*, furnished *Abthels*, and after his decease the Heir of the Crown of *England*) he abolished the various custom spoken of before. He did *Honour* to the *Conquerour* for the Crown of *Scotland*, but after his siding against him with the *English*, was slain at *Alford*. 7. *David*, the youngest Son of *Malcolm* the third, succeeded (his two Brothers *Edgar* and *Alexander* dying without Issue) in the Throne of his Father; and in right of his Mother the Lady *Margaret*, Sister and Heir of *Edgar* *Abthels*, and Daughter of *Edward* the Eldest Son of *Edmund* the second, surnamed *Ironside*, King of *England*, had the best title to that Kingdom also: but dispossessed thereof by the *Norman* Conqueror, with whom by reason of the great puissance of those Kings, and the little love which the *English* bare unto the *Scots*, not able to dispute their Title by force of Arms. From *Maud* the Sister of this *David*, married to *Henry* the first of *England*, descended all the Kings of *England* (King *Stephen* excepted) to Queen *Elizabeth's* death; from *David* all the Kings of *Scotland*, till King *James* the sixth, who on the death of Queen *Elizabeth*, succeeded in the Crown of *England*, in right of his descent from another *Margaret*, the eldest Daughter of King *Henry* the seventh. So that in his person there was not an union of the Kingdoms only under the Title of *Great Britain*, but a restoring of the old Line of the *Saxon* Kings (of which he was the direct and indubitate Heir to the Crown of *England*); the possession whereof had for so long time continued in the Posterity of the *Norman* Conqueror. And upon this descent it followeth most undeniably, that though the *Norman* Conqueror got the Crown of *England* by the power of the Sword, from the true Heirs of *Edmund* the II, surnamed *Ironside*, and that his Successors had enjoyed it by no other Title till Queen *Elizabeth's* death: yet *James*, the first *Monarch* of *Great Britain*, succeeded by a right descent from the *Saxon* Line; without relation to the Conquest of the *Norman* Bastard. 8. *William*, the Brother of *Malcolm* the fourth, and Nephew of *David* before mentioned by his Son Prince *Henry*, (who died in the life of his Father) being taken Prisoner at the Battle of *Alnwick*, did homage to King *Henry* the second for the Crown of *Scotland*, and was thereupon restored to his Liberty, and his Realm to peace. What doth occur concerning the succeeding Kings, when their Affairs with *England* and the World abroad became more considerable, we shall see anon.

In the mean time proceed we to the story of *Macbeth* than which for variety of action, and strangeness of events, I never met with any more pleasing. The story in brief is this: *Duncan* King of the *Scots* had two principal men, whom he employed in all matters of importance *Macbeth* and *Banquo*. These two travelling together through a Forest, were met by three *Fairies* Witches (Weirds the *Scots* call them) whereof the first making obedience unto *Macbeth*, saluted him *Thane* (a title unto which that of *Earl* afterwards succeeded) of *Glamis* the second, *Thane* of *Cawder*; and the third, King of *Scotland*. This is unequal dealing, saith *Banquo*, to give my friend all the honours, and none unto me; to which one of the *Weirds* made answer, that he indeed should not be King, but out of his loyns should come a race of Kings that should for ever rule the *Scots*. And having thus said, they all suddenly vanished. Upon their arrival to the Court, *Macbeth* was immediately created *Thane* of *Glamis*; and not long after, some new service of his requiring new recompence, he was honored with the title of *Thane* of *Cawder*. Seeing then how happily the prediction of the three *Weirds* fell out in the former; he resolved not to be wanting to himself in fulfilling the third, and therefore first he killed the King, and after by reason

of his command, among the Souldiers, and common people, he succeeded in his Throne. Being scarce warm in it, he called to mind the prediction given to his Companion *Banquo*: whom hereupon suspecting as his supplanter, he caused him to be killed, together with his whole Posterity; *Fleance* one of his Sons escaping only, with no small difficulty, into *Wales*. Freed as he thought from all fear of *Banquo* and his Issue, he built *Dunfian* Castle, and made it his ordinary seat: and afterwards on some new fears, consulting with certain of his *Wizards* about his future Estate, was told by one of them, that he should never be overcome, till *Bernane* Wood (being some miles distant) came to *Dunfian* Castle; and by another, that he should never be slain by any man which was born of a Woman. Secure then as he thought, from all future dangers, he omitted no kind of libidinous cruelty, for the space of 18 years; for so long he tyrannized over *Scotland*. But having then made up the measure of his iniquities, *Mac-duffe* the Governor of *Fife*, associating to himself some few *Parties*, equally hated by the Tyrant, and abhorring the Tyranny; privily met one evening at *Bernane* Wood: and taking every one of them enough in his hand, (the better to keep them from discovery) marched early in the morning towards *Dunfian* Castle, which they took by *Scalado*. *Macbeth* escaping was pursued by *Mac-duffe*, who having overtaken him urged him to the combat; to whom the Tyrant, half inborn, returned this Answer, That he did in vain attempt to kill him, it being his destiny never to be slain by any that was born of a Woman. Now then said *Mac-duffe*, is thy fatal end drawing fast upon thee; for I was never born of Woman, but violently cut out of my Mother's belly: which words so daunted the cruel Tyrant, though otherwise a valiant man and of great performances, that he was very easily slain; and *Malcolm* *Commer*, the true Heir of the Crown, seated in the Throne. In the same time *Fleance* prospered in *Wales*, that he gained the affection of the Princes Daughter of that Country; and on her begot a Son called *Walter*, who flying out of *Wales*, returned into *Scotland*; and his descent once known, he was not only restored to the Honours and Estates of his Ancestors, but preferred to be *Steward* of the house of *Edgar* the son of *Malcolm* the third, surnamed *Commer*; the name of *Steward*, growing hence hereditary unto his Posterity. From this *Walter* descended that *Robert* *Stewart*, who succeeded *David* *Bruce* in the Kingdom of *Scotland*, the Progenitor of nine Kings of the name of *Stewart*, which have Reigned successively in that Kingdom. But now it is time to leave off particulars, and look into the general Succession of

#### The Kings of Scots before the Conquest of the Picts.

A. Ch.

- 414 1 *Fergus*.
- 2 *Engenius*.
- 419 3 *Dungal*.
- 4 *Constantine*.
- 5 *Congall*.
- 6 *Goran*.
- 7 *Engenius II*.
- 8 *Congall II*.
- 9 *Kinnatell*.
- 10 *Aidan*.
- 604 11 *Kenneth*.
- 12 *Engenius III*.
- 622 13 *Fergusard*.
- 14 *Donald*.
- 15 *Fergusard II*.

- 16 *Maldaine*.
- 17 *Engenius IV*.
- 18 *Engenius V*.
- 19 *Amberkebleth*.
- 20 *Engenius VI*.
- 21 *Mordoc*.
- 730 22 *Erfinus*.
- 23 *Engenius VII*.
- 24 *Fergus II*.
- 25 *Solvatubius*.
- 26 *Abthans*.
- 809 27 *Congall III*.
- 28 *Dongall II*.
- 29 *Alpine*, slain in a Battle by the *Picts*, in pursuit of his Quarrel for that Kingdom, pretended to belong unto him in the Right of his Mother, Sister and Heir of *Hungus* the last King thereof.
- 30 *Kenneth II* Son of *Alpine*; who utterly subdued and destroyed the *Picts*, extending thereby the *Scottish* Kingdom from one Sea to the other, over all the bounds of modern *Scotland*; of which deservedly accounted the first *Monarch*; the Founder of the new Succession of

#### The Kings of the Scots after the Conquest of the Picts.

An. Ch.

- 839 1 *Kenneth II*, the first sole King of all *Scotland*, 17.
- 862 2 *Donald II*, Brother of *Kenneth* the 2d.
- 866 3 *Constantine II*, Son of *Kenneth* the 2d.
- 870 4 *Ethus*, Brother of *Constantine* the 2d.
- 895 5 *Donald III*, Son of *Constantine* the 2d.
- 903 6 *Constantine III*, 30.
- 933 7 *Malcolm*, Son of *Donald* the 3d.
- 949 8 *Ingulph*, an intruder, 12.
- 961 9 *Duffe*, Son of *Malcolm*, 1.
- 991 10 *Kenneth III*, Brother of *Duffe*.
- 11 *Constantine IV*, an Intruder against the Law, and Line of *Kenneth* the 3d.
- 1004 12 *Malcolm II*, Son of *Kenneth* the 3d, opposed by *Grime*, the Nephew of *Duffe*.
- 1035 13 *Duncan*, Son of *Grime*, succeeded *Malcolm* the second dying without issue.
- 1040 14 *Macbeth*, the Tyrant and Usurper.
- 1057 15 *Malcolm III*, Son of *Duncan*.
- 1096 16 *Donald IV*, surnamed *Ban*, Brother of *Malcolm* the 3d.
- 1098 17 *Edgar*, Son of *Malcolm* the 3d.
- 1107 18 *Alexander*, Brother of *Edgar*.
- 1124 19 *David*, Brother of *Alexander*.
- 1133 20 *Malcolm*, Son of *David*.
- 1166 21 *William*, Brother of *Malcolm* the fourth.
- 1213 22 *Alexander II*, Son of *William*.
- 1250 23 *Alexander III*, Son of *Alexander* the 2d, after whose death, dying without any Issue, *An*, 1285, began that tedious and bloody Quarrel about the succession of this Kingdom, occasioned by sundry Titles and Pretendants to it: principal whereof were *Bruce* and *Balliol*, descended from the Daughters of *David* Earl of *Huntingdon*, younger Son of *William*, and Great Uncle of *Alexander* the third, the last of the Male Issue of *Kenneth* the 3d, those of nearer Kindred being quite extinct. And when the *Scots* could not compose the difference among themselves; it was taken into consideration by King *Edward* the first of *England*, as the Lord Paramount of that Kingdom: who selecting 12 *English*

gliffand as many of the Scots to advise about it, with the consent of all adjudged it to John Baliol Lord of Galloway, Son of John Baliol and Derwognilla his Wife, Daughter of a Lord of Galloway, and of the Lady Margaret, the eldest Daughter of the said David; who having done his homage to the said King Edward, was admitted King.

1300 24 John Baliol, an English-man, but forgetful both of English birth, and English Favours, invaded the Realm of England in Hostile manner, and was taken prisoner by King Edward. Who following his blow, made himself Master of all Scotland, which he held during the rest of his life, and had here his Chancery, and other Courts. 6.

1306 25 Robert Bruce, Son of Robert Bruce Lord of Annandale (Competitor with Baliol for the Crown of Scotland in Right of Isabel his Mother, the second Daughter of David Earl of Huntingdon, and consequently a degree nearer to the King deceased than Baliol was, though descended from the elder Sister) was crowned King in the life-time of King Edward the first; but not fully possessed thereof until after his death: confirmed therein by the great defeat given to Edward the second, at the fight of *Bannock-burn*, not far from *Sterling*, spoken of before. But he being dead, Anno 1332. Edward the third confirmed the Kingdom on

1332 26 Edward Baliol, Son of John Baliol, rejected by the Scots for adhering so firmly to the English; who thereupon harried Scotland with fire and Sword. 10.

27 David Bruce the Son of Robert, restored unto his Fathers Throne by the power of the Scots, and a great enemy to the English. Invading England when King Edward was at the siege of *Calice*, he was taken prisoner by Q. Philip, the Wife of that King, and brought to *Windsor*, where he was prisoner for a while with King John of France. Released at last on such conditions as best pleased the Conqueror. 29.

1371 28 Robert II. surnamed *Stewart*, King of the Scots by descent from the eldest Sister of David Bruce, was extracted also from ancient Princes of Wales (as was said before) restoring thereby the British blood to the Throne of Scotland.

1390 29 Robert III. Son of Robert the second, called John before he came to the Crown; in which most over-awed by his own Brother the Duke of Albany, who had an aim at it for himself. 16.

1406 30 James, Son of Robert the third, taken prisoner by King Henry the fourth of England, as he was crossing the Seas for France, to avoid the practices of his Uncle. Restored unto his Country in the beginning of the Reign of King Henry the sixth, after 18 years absence, he was at last most miserably murdered by the Earl of Arbol, claiming a right unto that Crown. 42.

1448 31 James II. slain by the English at the siege of *Roxborough Castle*. 24.

1462 32 James III. slain by his own rebellious Subjects. 29.

1491 33 James IV. married Margaret the eldest Daughter of King Henry the seventh, but at

the soliciting of the French, against the Peace between the Nations; he invaded England (in the absence of King Henry eighth) with 100000 men: but was by the Earl of Surrey (having 26000 men in his Army) night unto *Folden*, where he was slain, together with two Bishops, twelve Earls, fourteen Lords, and his whole Army routed. 23.

1514 34 James V. Son of James the fourth, and the Lady Margaret, kept for a time such good correspondence with the English, that in the year 1536, he was created Knight of the Order of the Garter. But afterwards inheriting his Fathers hatred against them, he made their Borders in the Year 1541; and was met by the Lord Wharton, then Ward of the West Marches. The Battle begun ready to join, one Sir Oliver Sinclair the Kings Favourite, though otherwise of no great Parentage, was by the Kings directing proclaimed General: which the Scottish Nobility took in such indignation, that they threw down their Weapons, and suffered themselves to be taken prisoners; there being not one man slain on either side. The principal prisoners were the Earls of Glencarn, and Cassetie; the Barons Marill, Oliphant, Somersell, Flemming, with many others: besides many of the principal Gentry. 28.

1542 35 Mary, the Daughter and only lawfully gotten Child of James the first, succeeded in her Cradle unto the Throne, and was married in Marriage to King Edward the sixth of England, but by the power of the *Hot-tens* carried into France, where marriage Francis, then *Dauphin*, afterwards King of the French, of that name the second. And whose death, the married Henry Lord Dally, eldest Son of Matthew Earl of Lennox, Outed of her Dominions by a potent Faction, she was compelled to flee into England, where after a tedious imprisonment, she was put to death in *Fotheringhay Castle* in *Northamptonshire*, and interred at *Pemburgh*, Anno 1586.

1567 36 James VI. the Son of a Mary Queen of Scots, and of Henry Lord Darnley, was crowned King in his Cradle also. He married Anne the Daughter of Christian the third, King of Denmark; was choise of the Order of the Garter, Anno 1590, and succeeded Queen Elizabeth in the Realm of England, March 24. Anno 1602. And here I cannot omit the prudent fore-sight of Henry the seventh, who having two Daughters, bestowed the Eldest (contrary to the mind of his Council) on the King of Scots, and the younger on the King of the French; that so, if his own Issue male should fail, and that a Prince of another Nation must inherit England; then Scotland as the lesser Kingdom must depend upon England, and not England wait on France, as upon the greater. In which succession of the Scots to the Crown of England, the Prophecy of the fatal Stone, spoken of before, did receive accomplishment. And so perhaps might that ascribed in the *Poly-historicon* to an holy Anchorite living in King Egberts time, which is this, Englishmen, for that they woe themselves to drunkenness, to treason, and to rebelliousness of Gods house, first by Dances, and then by Normans, and the third

third time by Scots, whom they holden least worth of all, they shall be overcome. Then the world shall be unstable, and the divers & variable, that the instability of thoughts will be betokened by many manner diversity of Clothing. For on this Union of the Kingdoms, this Prediction seems to have been accomplished; the circumstances mentioned in the same so partly agreeing, and the Scots never subduing England, but by this blessed Victory. Unless perhaps the Accomplishment thereof be still to come; or that it was indeed more literally fulfilled in the great Defeat at *Bannock-burn*, in which was slain 50000 English, as the Scottish Writers do report, and the name of Scot growing so terrible for a time, that an hundred of the English would flee from three Scots, as before was noted.

The Revenues of this Crown *Boterus* estimateth at 100000 Crowns, or 30000 sterling, and it is not like that they were much more, if they came to that: here being not commodity in this Kingdom to allure strangers to Traffick: the Demain or Patrimony of the Crown, but mean; the Country in most places barren, and many of the Subjects, those especially of the Out-Isles, and the Western parts, so extremely barbarous, that they add very small improvement to the publick Treasury.

And answerable to the shortness of their standing Revenue, were their Forces also. For though the Country be very populous, and the men generally patient both of cold and hunger, and inured to hardship; yet in regard the Kings hereof were not able to maintain an Army under pay, their Forces seldom held together above 40 days; & then, if not a great deal sooner, did disband themselves. For the Nobility and Gentry being bound by the Tenure of their Lands, to serve the King in his Wars, and to bring with them such and so many of their *assails*, as the present service did require; used to provide for themselves and their followers, tents, money, victuals, provision of all sorts, and all other necessities; the King supplying them with nothing. Which being spent, they usually disbanded, and went home again, without attending long on the Expedition. Which I conceive to be the reason, why the Scots in the time of hostility betwixt the Nations, made only sudden & tumultuary incursions into England; without any thing of special moment: and that they have not acted any thing elsewhere in the way of Conquest, but only as Mercenaries to the French and other Nations that have hired them. And though it be affirmed that the Army of King James the 4th, when he invaded England in the time of King Henry the Eighth, (being then in France) consisted of 100000 fighting men; yet this I look on only as an argument of their populosity: few of those men being armed or trained up to service, and therefore easily discomfited by a far less Army. It's true that in the year 1643, the Scottish Covenanters raised an Army consisting of 18000 Foot, and 2000 Horse, and 1000 Dragoons; with Arms, Artillery, and Ammunition correspondent to it: which was the gallantest Army, and the best appointed, that ever that Nation did set out in its times foregoing. But then it is as true withal, that this Army was maintained & payed by the two Houses of the Parliament of England, at the rate of 30000 l. per month, and an advance of 100000 l. before-hand, the better to invite them to embrace the action, and prepare necessary for it, without any charge unto themselves. And though the Army which they sent into England above five years after, under James Duke Hamilton of Arran, was little inferior unto this number, but far superior to it both in Horse & Arms, and other necessary appointments: yet it is well known, that the Scots brought nothing but their own bodies to compound that Army; the

Horse and Arms being such as they had gotten out of England in the former War.

In point of reputation amongst Foreign Princes, the Kings of the Scots, and their Ambassadors and Agents, had place in all General Councils, and Ecclesiastical Assemblies, before those of *Castile*: and by the *Statists* of late times, have been reckoned (with the Kings of England, France, and Spain) for absolute Monarchs. But I conceive that this was only since the first years of King Edward the third, when they had quitted their subjection and vassallage to the Crown of England. For that anciently the Scots were Homagers to the Kings of England, may be apparently demonstrated by these following Arguments. 1. By the Homages, and other services, and duties, done by the Kings of the Scots unto those of England: Malcolm the third doing Homage unto William the Conqueror; as William one of his Successors did to K. Henry the second: and that not only for the three Northern Counties, or the Earldom of *Huntingdon* (as by some pretended) but for the very Crown it self: Kenneth the third, being also one of those eight Tributary or Vassal Kings, which rowed King Edgar over the *Dee*, as before was noted. 2ly, By the interposing of King Edward the first, and the submission of the Scots to that interposing, in determining the controversy of succession betwixt Bruce and Baliol: as in like case, Philip the Fair adjudged the title of *Artois*, which was holden of the Crown of France, and then in question betwixt the Lady Maund, and her Nephew Robert; or as King Edward the third, in the right of the said Crown of France, determined of the controversy betwixt John Earl of Montford, and Charles of Blais, for the Dukedom of *Bretagne*. 3ly, By the confession and acknowledgement of the Prelates, Peers, and other the Estates of Scotland, subscribed by all their hands and Seals in the Roll of *Ragman*, wherein they did acknowledge the superiority of the Kings of England, not only in regard of such advantages as the Sword had given him, but as of his original and undoubted right. Which Roll was treacherously delivered into the hands of the Scots, by Roger Mortimer Earl of March, in the beginning of the Reign of King Edward the third. 4ly, By the tacit concession of the Kings themselves, who in their Coins, Commissions, and publick Instruments, assume not to themselves the title of Kings of Scotland, but of *Reges Scotorum*, or the Kings of the Scots: and thereby intimating that though they are the Kings of the Nation, yet there is some superior Lord (King Paramount as we may call him) who hath the Royalty of the Land. 5ly, By the Judgments and Arrests of the Courts of England, not only in the times of King Edward the first, but in some times since. For when William Wallis a Scotsman by birth, and the best Soldier of that Country, was taken Prisoner and brought to London, he was adjudged to suffer death as a Traitor: which had been an illegal and unrighteous judgment, had he been a Prisoner of War, and not looked on by the Judges as a Subject to the Crown of England. The like done in the case of Simon Frezill, another of that Kingdom in the same Kings Reign. In like manner, in the time of King Edward the third, it was resolved by the Court, in the Lord Beaumonts case, when it was objected that one of the Witnesses was a Scot, and therefore as an Alien not to give his evidence; that his testimony was to be allowed of, because the Scots in the Law of England did not go for Aliens. And when one indicted for a Rape in the 13th of Queen Elizabeths Reign, desired a *Medietatem Lingue*, because he was a Scotsman, & so to an Alien; it was denied him by the Court, because the Scots were not reputed here as Aliens, but as Subjects rather. So also, when Robert Omfraville, Lord of *Kyme* was summoned to the Parliament of England, in

the Reign of King Edward the third, by the name of Robert Earl of Angus, (which is a dignity in Scotland,) and after in a Write against him was called only by his own name, & *Orramville*, without any addition of that honor; the Write was judged to abate; which I conceive the learned Judges had not done, if Scotland had not been reputed to be under the Vassalage of the Kings of England, & lastly, by a Charter of Lands and Arms, (which I have in my custody) granted by King Edward the first, in the last year of his Reign, to Peter Dodge of Stopworth in the County of Chester, one of the Ancestors of my Mother in which it is expressed, that the said Lands and Arms were conferred upon him by that King, for his eminent services, *encontre son grand Enemy & Rebel*, Balaio, Roy d'Escoffe & d'Isle de Angleterre; that is to say, against his great Enemy and Rebel Balaio King of Scotland, and Vassal of England. A thing to clear, that if King James had not been extremely tender of the honour of his native Country, he needed not to have put his Lawyers to the trouble of a new Invention, in hammering the Case of the Post-nati for him; to make the Scots inheritable unto Lands in England. The acknowledgment and Reviver of their old Subjection would have served his turn. But of this argument enough, and perhaps too much. I only add, that upon conference which I once had with an honourable person of that Kingdom of Scotland employed unto the Court in a business of no mean consequence to the peace and quiet of his Country: I found him to be sensible of the inconveniences of their present Government, by reason of the Kings absence, and the frequent divisions and partialities of his Council; there, that he confessed that Nation could be never rich or happy, till they were made a Province of the English Empire; and governed by a Vice-Roy, as Ireland was.

# IRELAND.

IRELAND is environed on all sides with the Ocean, parted from Britain by a violent and unruly Sea, called *St. Georges Channel*. Situate on the West of Britain, next unto it is the biggest Island of Europe, containing in length 300, and in breadth 120 miles; and is parted under the 8th and 10th Climates; the longest day being 16 hours and an half in the Southern, and 17 hours 3 quarters in the Northern parts. It was once called *Scotia*, from the Scots who did there inhabit; and *Scotia Minor*, to difference it from Scotland, in the Ile of Britain. But the general name hereof is *Ireland*; by the Latines called *Hibernia*, by the Greeks, *Iernia*. And though some frame a wrested Etymology from *Iberus*, a Spanish Captain; and some from *Irish*, once a corrupted Duke hereof; as others, *Abherno* acre, the Winter-like and inclement air: yet probably the name proceeded from *Eriand*, which signifieth in their own language a Western land. And yet I must not pretermitt the Eryman given us by *Teuchterus*, (more near the name than most of his other Fancies) who will have it called *Hibernia*, from *Iernae*, a Phenician word, signifying the furthest Habitation: there being no Country known amongst the Ancients, which lay West of Ireland.

Their own Chronicles, or Fables rather, tell us, how *Cesair*, a Nephew of Noe, inhabited here before the Flood;

The principal Order of Knighthood in this Kingdom was that of *St. Andrew*, instituted by *Humfrid*, King of the Scots, to encourage his Subjects in the War against King *Arbuthnot* of England. The Knights did wear about their necks a Collar, interlaced with Thistles, with the picture of *St. Andrew* appendant to it: the Motto *Nemo me impune lacessit*. It took this name because after the Battle, *Humfrid* and his Souldiers went all barefoot to *St. Andrews*; and there vowed that they and their Posterity would henceforth use his Cross as their Ensign (which is a Saltire Argent in a Field Azure) whenever they take in hand any war-like Enterprise.

2. But this Order being expired many Ages since, there is now no Order of Knighthood in it, (except *Knights Bachelors*) but that of *Nova Scotia*; ordained by King James, An. 1622. for the planting of that Country by the Scots Colonies; in imitation of the Orders of Barons in England, for the plantation of *Ulster*. Hereditary, as that also is, but the Knights hereof distinguished by a Rib-band of Orange-Tawny.

The Arms are *Sol*, a Lion Rampant *Mars*, within a double Tressure counter-floored: which Tressure counter-floored was added to the Lion by *Achatus* King of the Scots, at what time he contracted the League with France signifying (saith *Helior Boetius* one of their Historians) *Francorum opibus Leovum exinde munimur*; that the Scotch Lion should be guarded by the riches of France.

Reckoned in Scotland, with  
the Isles of it,  
Archbishops 2. Bishops 12.

Universities two,  
*St. Andrews*. *Aberdeen*.

and how 300 years after the Flood, it was subdued by *Bartholomaeus*, a *Scythian*, who overcame here I know not what Giants. Afterward *Nemethus* another *Scythian* Prince, and *Delus* a *Gracian*, came hither: and last of all *Gautbel*, with his Wife *Scota*, one of *Pharaohs* Daughters, who must needs name this Island *Scotia*. But not to honour such *Jepperies* with a confutation, doubtfully the first Inhabitants of this Island came out of Britain. For Britain is the nightest Country unto it, and so had a more speedy waiteage hither. Secondly, the ancient Writers call this Island, a *British* Island: And thirdly, *Tacitus*, giveth us of this Country this verdict, *Solum, celumque cultus & ingenia hominum, band multum a Britannia different*: the Soil and Air, the habits and disposition of the people, were not much unlike the *Britanni*. For further evidence whereof, it was observed, at the reduction of Wales to the Crown of England, by King Edward the first, that many of their Laws and Customs were those of the *Irish*: which shews, that they did both descend from the same Original. But then we must observe withal, that they were counted far more barbarous & savage by most ancient Writers, than those of Britain are deciphered at the first discovery: said by *Strabo* to be Man-eaters; accustomed (as *Solinus* telleth us) to drink the blood of those whom they flew in fight. Nor were the Women, though the softer and more tender Sex, free from such wild

and savage Customs, it being a constant course amongst them, when they were delivered of a man-child, to put some meat into the mouth of it, on the point of a Sword, withing therewith it might not dye but in the midst of Arms, and the heat of Cittels. Both sexes used to trim themselves with the Ivory of Fishes, white as the driven Snow, or the polished Ivory; and therein placed the greatest part of their pride an Ibravery.

Nor are the modern *Irish* much abhorrent from such barbarous customs, as plainly shew from what Original they descend; altered but little by converse with more civil Nations. Of natural constitution generally strong and nimble of body; haughty of heart, careles of their lives, patient in cold and hunger, implacable in enmity, constant in love, light of belief, greedy of glory; and in a word, if they be bad, you shall not where find worse; if they be good, you shall hardly meet with better. The Diet, especially of the meer *Irish*, is for the most part, on herbs, roots, butter mingled with Oat-flower, milk, and beef-*broth*: eating flesh many times without bread, which they digest with *Ughebaugh*; and give their bread-corn to their horses instead of *Provender*. But more particularly, those of the richer sort in all parts, and of all sorts those which inhabit within the Pale (as they themselves call it) and in such places where the English Discipline hath been entertained; conformable to civility, both in behaviour and apparel: The *Kernes* (for by that name they call the wild *Irish* of the poorer and inferior sort) met extremely barbarous; not behaving themselves like *Christians*, scarcely like men. All of them so tenacious of their ancient customs, that neither power, nor reason, nor the sense of the inconveniences which they suffer by it, can wean them to desert or change them. A pregnant evidence whereof, is their use of *Ploughing*, not with such gears or harness, as in other places; but by tying the hindmost horses head to the tail of the former; which makes the poor Jades draw in a great deal of pain, makes them unfeverable by the soon losing of their tails, and what is a course of so slow a dispatch, that they cannot break up as much ground in a week as a good Team well handled would perform in a day; yet no perswasion hath been able to prevail upon them for the changing of this hurtful and ridiculous custom. And when the Earl of *Stratford*, the late Lord Deputy, had damned it by act of Parliament, and laid a penalty on such as should after use it: the people thought it such a grievance, and so injurious to the Nation, that among other things demanded towards a Pacification of the present troubles, their Agents and Commissioners insisted eagerly on the abrogation of this Law. An humour like to this in the point of Husbandry, we shall hereafter meet with in another place. Near of kin to this, is a lazie custom that they have of burning their straw rather than put themselves to the pains to thresh it; by that means to part it from the Corn. From which no reason can dissuade them, nor perswasions win them. They have among them other customs as absurd, though less inconvenient: as placing a green bull, on *May-day* before their doors; to make their kine yield the more milk; kneeling down to the New Moon as soon as they see it, desiring her to leave them in as good health as she found them; and many others of like nature.

They use a language of their own, but spoken also in the West of Scotland, and the Hebrides or Western Islands which though originally *British*, or a Dialect of it, by reason of their intermixture with *Norwegians*, *Danes*, *Essterlings*, or *Osse-men*, and *English Saxons*; hath no affinity with the *Welsh*, for ought I can learn. The Christian Faith was first preached among them by *St. Patrick*, affirmed to be the Nephew of *St. Martin of Tours*, Anno 435. Reformed in the more civil parts,

and the English Colonies, according to the platform of the Church of England: but the *Kernes*, or natural wild *Irish* (and many of the better sort of the Nation also) either adhere unto the Pope, or to their own superstitious fancies, as in former times. And to say truth, it is no wonder that they should; there being no care taken to instruct them in the Protestant Religion; either by translating the Bible, or the English Liturgie, into their own Language, as was done in Wales, but forcing them to come to Church to the English Service, which the people understand no more than they do the Mass. By means whereof the *Irish* are not only kept in continual ignorance, as to the doctrine and devotions of the Church of England, and others of the Protestant Churches; but those of Rome are furnished with an excellent argument, for having the Service of the Church in a Language with the common Hearers do not understand. And therefore I do heartily commend it to the care of the State (when these dissenters are composed) to provide, that they may have the Bible, and all other public means of Christian instruction and devotion in their natural tongue.

The Soil of it is itself abundantly fruitful, but naturally fitter for grafs and pasturage, than it is for Tillage; as may be seen in such places where the industry of man is aiding to the natural goodness of the Soil. But where that wanteth, the Country is either over-grown with Wood, or encumbered with vast Bogs, an unwholesome Mafhes; yielding neither profit nor pleasure unto the Inhabitants. In some places, as in the Country of *Armagh*, so rank and fertile, that the laying of any foil or compost on it, doth abate its fruitfulness, and proves the worst Husbandry that can be.

It hath been anciently very famous for the Piety and Religious lives of the Monks. Amongst whom I cannot but remember *Columbus*, and of him this memorable *Apophthegm*; when offered many preferments to leave his Country, he returned this Answer, *It becomes not them to embrace other mens goods, who for Christs sake had forsaken their own*. Of no less piety, but more eminent in point of Learning, was *Richard Fitz-Rafe*, Archbishop of *Armagh*, commonly called *Armacanus*, who flourished about the year 1350. A declared enemy of the Errors and corruptions of the Church of Rome.

It is affirmed of this Island, that (amongst other Priviledges which it hath above other Islands) it is softer than venomous Serpent, and that no such will live here; brought from other places. Hence of her self we find her speaking in the Poet.

*Ille ego sum Graiis Glacialis Hibernia dicta;  
Cui Deus, & melior rerum nascitur Origo;  
Ius commune dedit cum Creta alvace Tonantis,  
Angues ne nostris diffundant sibil in oris.*

I am that Island which in times of old  
The Greeks did call *Hibernia*, icy-cold;  
Secured by God and Nature from this fear,  
Which gift was given to *Crete*, *Joves* Mother deare,  
That poisonous Snake should never here be bred,  
Or dare to hiss, or hurtful venom spread.

The other miracles of this Island are, 1. That there is a Lake in the County of *Armagh*, into which if one thrust a piece of wood, he shall find that part of it which remaineth in the Mud to be turned Iron; and that which is in the Water, to be turned into a Whet-Stone: richly deferred by him, if the tale be false, who did first report it. 2. That the Kine will yield no milk, if their Calves be not by them; or at least their Calves-skins stufled with straw or hay. It is said also, that all the breed of this Country







any civil course of life; the Fathers inflicting an heavy curse on all their posterity, if ever they should sow corn, build houses, or learn the English tongue. To this indispensible of the Irish themselves, let us add the defects of the Kings of England, and Irish Deputies, in matters of civil Policy, as I find them particularly by Sir John Davies, in his worthy and pithy discourse of this Subject: I will only glean a few of them. First, then, such a barbarous Country is like a field overgrown with weeds, which must first be well broken with the Plough, and then immediately sown with good and profitable seed: to mow a wild and uncivil people, be first broken and ploughed up by war, and then presently sown with the seed of good Laws and discipline; left the weeds revive in the one, and ill manners in the other. Here then was the first defect in our English Kings not to tame and take down the Stomachs and pride of this people, though either civil or foreign wars perhaps occasioned this neglect: and also the Irish Deputies, who at such times as the people up on a small discomfiture, were crest-fallen, neglected the keeping of them by severity of Discipline. The second oversight concerneth particularly our Kings, who gave such large possessions and Regalities unto the first Conquerors, that the people knew no Authority in a manner, above their own immediate Lords. The Laws of England were not indifferently communicated to all the Irish, but to some particular Families and Provinces only: inasmuch as there were but five great Lords of the natural Irish, who had the benefit and protection of the Laws of England, that is to say, O Neale in Ulster, O Connors in Connaught, Mac Morrough in Leinster, O Malcolin in Meath, and O Brian in Tycomond; known by the name of Quaque Sanguines in some old Records. By means whereof the rest of the people being in the condition of Out-Laws, or at the best Aliens, had no encouragement either to build, or plant, or manure their Land, or to behave themselves as Subjects. A fourth defect was more particularly in the Deputy or Lords Lieutenants, who having made good and wholesome Laws against the barbarous customs of the Common people, and the mercilefs oppressions of the Lords, never put any of them in execution; as if they had been made for terror, not for reformation. Fifthly, add unto these (which Sir John Davies hath omitted) the little care which was too often taken by the Kings of England in the choice of their Deputies: sometimes conferring that high Office as a Court preferment, without relation unto the merits of the person, and sometimes sending men of weak or broken Fortunes, who attended more their own profit than their Masters service, and were more bent to fleece than to feed this flock. Sixthly, And yet besides these Errors of the Kings and Deputies in point of Government, there was another, and as great in the Planters themselves; who building all their Forts and Castles in the open Countries, abandoned the Woods and Bogs, and other Fastnesses to the natural Irish; the strength whereof not only animated them to Rebel upon all occasions: but served too fitly to continue them in their ancient Barbarism.

In these terms of wildness and non-subjection stood Ireland, till the latter end of Queen Elizabeths reign, at what time the rebellion of Hugh O Neale Earl of Tir-Ond had engaged almost all the Irish in that desperate action which ending in the overthrow of that ingrateful Rebel, and all his partizans, not only crushed the over-much powerableness of the Irish Nobility, but made the final and full conquest of the whole Nation. So true it is, that Every Rebellion when it is suppressed, doth make the Prince stronger, and the Subjects weaker. Ireland thus broken and ploughed up, that glorious Queen died a victor over all her enemies, and left the sowing of it unto her successors.

for King James, who omitted no part of a skillful Seed-planter. Then there was an *ewm* or *Alt* of Oblivion made whereby all the offences against the Crown were remitted: by such a limited day the people would sue out their Pardons, and by the same Act all the Irish were committed from the servitude of their Lords, and received to the Kings immediate Protection. 2ly, The whole Kingdom was divided into Shires and Judges Itinerant appointed to circuit them: whereby it hath followed, that the exactions of the Lords are laid aside, the behaviour of the people narrowly looked into, the passages before us known to our Souldiers, are laid open by our *Undersheriffs* and *Bayliffs*; and the common people seeing the benefit and security they enjoy by the English Laws, and loth to plead always by an Interpreter, begin to fit their children to School, for the learning of the English tongue. 3ly, The Irish were not rooted out, as in the first plantation in Leinster, and the English only cisted in their rooms: but were only removed from the Woods, Bogs, and Mountains, unto the plain and open Country: that being like wild trees transplanted, they might grow the milder, and bear the better fruit. And 4. whereas there was but one Freeholder in a whole Country, which was the Lord himself, the rest holding in Villenage, and being subject to the Lords immeasurable taxations; whereby they had no encouragement to build or plant, now the Lords Estate was divided into two parts, that which he held in demain to himself, which was still left unto him, and that which was in the hands of his Tenants, whose Estates made in their Possessions, according to the Common course of England, paying instead of uncertain Irish taxations, certain English rents: whereby the people have since for their misdoings on requiring their lands, and manuring their lands, to the great increase of private and publick Revenue.

But that which most advanced the reduction of Ireland to a settled and civil Government, and rooted it into sedition to the Crown of England, was the voluntary flight of the Earls of Tyrone, and Tirconnell, Sir John Oughterby, and other great men of the North, possessed of large Territories and great Jurisdictions. Who being both incapable of Loyalty, and impatient of seeing the Kings Judges, Justices, and other Ministers of State, uphold their Sessions, and execute their Commissions of Oyer and Terminer within the parts where they commanded, without more provocation, or the fear of any danger but a guilty Conscience, forsook the Country, and left their whole Estates to the Kings disposing. By whose directions, their Lands were seized upon and sold to several Purchasers, the City of London interested in a great part of them, a great Plantation made in Ulster of English, Welsh, and Scots, by the united name of a British Plantation; and a new Order of Knights Baronets erected in the Kingdom of England for raising money to advance and assist the work. Which had it been as cordially affected by the English, as it was by the Scots; if more of this Nation had gone thither, and not abandoned so great a part of it to the power of the other, it had been better for both Kingdoms, in the conformity of each to one form of Government (which the Scots, being fadious for another, did not easily brook) and the uniting of both people as one Nation, by the Irish looking on the Scots as their Fellow Subjects, on the English as their old Master or his Fellow Subjects. However, so great a part of the Country (and that which heretofore was the neck of the Rebels) being thus disposed of, it came to pass, that Ireland, which before served only as a grave to bury our best men, and a gulph to swallow our greatest treasures, being governed neither as a Country Free, nor conquered: was brought in some hope, by the prudence and policy of her last Kings

and late Lord Deputies, to prove an orderly Commonwealth, civil in it self, profitable to the Prince, and a good strength to the British Empire. For to such Country it was reduced, in a little time that the wayfaring might travel without danger, the Ploughman walk without fear, the Laws administered in every place alike, the men drawn unto Villages, the Woods and Fastnesses left to beasts, and all reduced to that civility, as our Fathers never saw, nor could we well sample out of ancient Histories.

The Revenues of this Kingdom are said by Walsingham in the time of Edward the 3d. to have been yearly 40000 pounds; but his Successors, till of late, have scarce got to much as the keeping of it cost them: King Richard the 2. being by the same Walsingham reported to have spent 30000 marks out of his own purse, over and above the money which he received thence. Whether this Country were so profitable to Edward the 3d. or no, I determine not, though I find good reasons to persuade me, that Walsingham was not well acquainted with the state of that Exchequer. But sure I am, that the Revenues of the Crown are more than double what they were in the said Kings Reign, and more duly paid into the Exchequer of that Kingdom than ever formerly; the profits of the Custom being amounting to 30000 per Annum, in the last year of King James his Reign. Not to say any thing of the great improvements which were made by the Earl of Strafford, in the time of his Government, because they fell together with him.

The strength of this Kingdom consisteth partly in the situation of it, begirt about with difficult and dangerous Seas; partly in the many Castles first built and fortified by the English Planters, and partly in a standing Army continually kept up by the Kings of England, for defence of their hold and interest against the rebellions of the Natives. What Forces it is able to raise both of Horse and Foot, could never be conjectured at, till now of late. For formerly the Kings of England being actually possessed only of those four Counties which they called the Pale, that is to say, the Counties of Dublin, Louth, Kildare, and Meath (which last had since the time of King Henry the

8th been subdivided into three) were not able to raise any great power out of that Estate, but were forced to send Souldiers out of England (as occasion was) to preserve their Sovereignty in Ireland. The greatest Levy which I read of, was that of 1500 Irish, led by the Prior of Kilmainham to King Henry the fifth, then being at the siege of Harlow in Normandy, And on the other side, the great Lords of the natural Irish, & degenerate English, being divided into Factions amongst themselves, & never joined in any one principal of common interest, were more considerable than the weak, but united Forces of the Kings of England. And though most of them at the last were drawn into Confederacy with the Earl of Tir-Ond, to make good his rebellion: yet find I not that their Army did exceed at any time, the number of 8000 men; and those not well appointed neither. So that the best estimate which can be made of the Forces of Ireland, must be measured by the Armies raised in the late Rebellion when the Irish had both time, and leisure, to get themselves some reputation in the World, and make provision for a War. In prosecution of which, he who considers the many Armies they have raised, since the first murdering under the command of Sir Phelim O Neale, the many defeats which have been given them, and those as many new recruits after each defeat; all of them raised out of the bodies of their own people, without supply from other Countries (besides such as have served against them for the King) must needs conclude that they want not men enough for service; nor skill, nor courage to attempt the most difficult enterprises.

The Arms of Ireland are Azure, an Harp Or, stringed Argent. Which Coat King James, (to shew himself the first absolute King of Ireland) first caused to be marshalled with the Royal Arms of Great Britain.

Reckoned in Ireland at and since  
the Reformation,  
Archbishops 4. Bishops 19;  
One University, Viz.  
Dublin.

## The LESSER ISLANDS.

AND now we come at last to the LESSER ISLANDS, dispersed in several parts of the British Ocean. The chief whereof are, 1. The Orkades, 2. Shetland, 3. The Hebrides, 4. Man, 5. Anglesey, 6. The Island of the Severn Sea, 7. The Sorlings, or Isles of Scilly, 8. Wight, 9. Thame, 10. Sunderland, 11. Holy Island.

I. THE ORKADES or Isles of Orkney are in number 22 situate over against Caithness, the most Northern County of all Scotland, and separate from one another by some narrow Straights. The soil indifferently Fruitful, exceedingly well stored with Barley, and great Herds of Cattel, plentiful in Hares and Conies, as of Cranes and Swans: but destitute of Wheat, and unimproved in both of Woods and Trees. But their chief commodity is their Fish, which the Inhabitants catch upon the Coasts in great abundance. Those of most note in all the cluster, are, 1. *Hebr*, conceived to be the *Oetus of Ptolemy*: as 2. *Fair Isle*, on good reason thought to be the *Dumna of Ptolemy* the chief Town, or it being still called by the name of *Dumna*. 3. *Hey*, taken or mistaken for the *Dumna* of Ptolemy, but not else observable. 4. *Pomona*, the chief of all, in length about 26 miles, in breadth, where it is broadest, six. The chief Town of it *Kirkwall*, honoured with a Bishops See, and strengthened

with two Castles. This Island is well stored with Tin and Lead, and is at this day by the Inhabitants called *Manland*.

The people of these Isles (according to *Maginus*) are great drinkers but no drunkards, *Bibacillimi sunt incolae, vinumque tamen inebriantur*. They use the Gothic Language, which they derive from the Norwegians, in whose possession they once were, and of whose qualities they still retain some smack. The selves themselves, in the time of *Scythians*, were not inhabited; being then overgrown with rustiness (now in a measure, populous and fertile as before was said) and were first discovered by *Julius Agricola*, the first that ever sailed about Britain. In later times they were possessed by the Normans or Norwegians, who held them till the year 1266, when *Magnus* King of Norway surrendered them up to *Alexander* King of Scotland, which Surrender some of the succeeding Kings did afterwards ratify: the claim heretofore being finally relinquished by *Christiern* the first, King of Denmark and Norway, on the marriage of his daughter *Margaret* with King James the 3d. A. 1474. some money being added to make good the Contract, without which the Danes would not forgo their pretensions to them.

II. Two days sailing North of these Orkades, lyeth  
Q9  
SCHET.



*Flemings*, I know not why, call them the *Sorlings*. All of them very fruitful in Corn and Herbage, besides the treasures hid within, well flored with Cones, Cranes, Swans, and moft forts of wild Fowl. Ten of them more esteemed than the reft, are called by the names of 1. *Armath*, 2. *Agnes*, 3. *Samplon*, 4. *Scilly*, 5. *Brefar*, 6. *Rufca*, 7. *S. Helens*, 8. *Arthur*, 9. *S. Maurics*, and 10. *S. Marics*: Of which the moft famous in the account of former times, was that of *Scilly*, as giving name unto the reft, but in the prefent estimate *S. Marics* is accounted the chief of all: 8 miles in compafs, fruitful of all neceffaries, and fortified with a very ftrong Caftle built by Queen *Elizabeth*, well manned and garrifoned, for defence of a large and goodly Harbour made amongst thiefe Iflands, capable of the greateft Navies.

Thiefe Iflands firft difcovered by *Hamulo* a *Carthaginian*, fent by that State to fearch into the Weft Cofts of *Europe*, became of great fame afterwards both in *Grece* & *Italy*; by reason of the Mines of *Tinne* fpooken of before: Sober chief to the *Romans*, that they ufed to fend hither their condemned Prifoners to work in the Mines, as the beft fervice to be done by their forfeited Lives. And hither amongst others, *Infantius*, a fierce *Procellian*, for his factious and feditious carriage, was fent by *Maximus*, and *Silvanus* infulam nitra *Britanniam* deportatus, as *Sulpitius* faith. After the *Romans* had forfaken their hold in *Britain*, they returned again into the power and poffeffion of the *Natives*: from whom fubdued, and added unto the *Engliſh* Crown by *Aethelane* the K. King of *England*. Now ordered for *Civil* matters as a part of *Cornwall*, for military, by their own Captain, fubordinate to the Lord Lieutenant of that County, as for the *Tin-Trade*, by the Lord Warden and Court of *Stanneries*. An Officer and Court erected for the benefit and regulating of the *Tinners* of *Cornwall*, who by privileges and exemptions more than other Subjects, but of late limited and reſtrained by Acts of Parliament.

**VIII.** The Ifle of *WIGHT* lieth over againſt *Hampſhire*, from which it ſemeth to have been divided, the paſſage betwixt it and *Huſh-Caſtle* on the oppoſite ſhore, being very narrow, & the name of it intimating ſome ſuch diviſions. For by the *Britains* it was anciently called *Gnith*, which ſignifieth a breach or ſeparation, from whence the *Engliſh* have their *Weight*, the turning of Guze to Whetting familiar with the *Saxons*; and all other *Dutch* people; and from the ſame root probably the *Romans* had the name of *Vetus*, *Vechi* *Weight*, and *Gnith*, being words of near reſemblance, that we need not burrow further for an *Etymology*. The Ifland of *Oraval* form, 20 miles in length and 12 miles broad about the middle; from thence growing narrower towards each end, to the *Eaſt* and *Weſt*. Naturally Fenced about on all ſides, on the South of all, where it looks towards *France*, on which ſide it is inacceſſible by reaſon of the ſteep and craggy Rocks, the whole length thereof, and not much leſs ſafe on the North-Weſt, where the remainder of the Rocks, (which they call the *Shingles*, and the *Needles*) not worn away either at or ſince the ſeparation from the other ſhore, make the paſſage dangerous; 3 except to ſingle Ships, and thoſe not unaccompanied with the Courſe of the Channel. Towards the North-caſt more flat and level, and therefore fortified with the two Caſtles of the *Coves* and *Sandham*. There is alſo the Caſtle of *Yarmouth* in the Weſt of the Ifland and that of *Gwalbrook* in the middle (but more towards the North) in which laſt there is laid to be Armour for 5000 men, and in each Village (of which here are 37, beſides many Market Towns) a piece of Ordnance. Yet do not of theſe Arms and Caſtles add fo much to the ſtrength of it, as the natural courage of the People, warlike & ſtout,

and trained up unto the poſtures of War from their very childhood.

The ſoil hereof abundantly answereth the pains of the Husbandman, fo plentiful of Corn, and all the fruits of good paſſurage, that they have not only enough for themſelves, but furniſh the markets of *Southampton* and *Portsmouth* (but the laſt eſpecially) with the greateſt part of all Wheat, Fleſh, Cheefe, and Butter, which is ſpent amongst them. Inform that the Souldiers of *Portsmouth* depending on the ſtrength of the Town, have been uſed to ſay, That if they had the Ifle of *WIGHT* to their friend, and the Seas open, they cared not for all the World beſides. Their Sheep here of ſo fine a fleece, that the Wool hereof hath the ſecond eſteem next to that of *Leinſter* (in the Country of *Hereford*) and precedency of that of *Cotſwold*.

Their chief Towns, 1. *Yarmouth*, on the North-Weſt of the Ifland, ſeated on a convenient Haven, which is ſaid to have ſome reſemblance to that of *Rochel*, and that Haven defended with a ſtrong Caſtle. 2. *Brading*, another Market-town. 3. *Newton*, an ancient *Burrough*, and privileged, ſending Bregles to the *Engliſh* Parliament. 4. *Garehook*, a large Town, and neighbour'd with an ancient Caſtle. 5. *Newport*, now the chief of all the Ifle, called in the times paſt, *Medona*, afterwards *Novus*, *Argentum de Medona*, at laſt *Newport*, ſeated upon an Arm of the Sea, capable of Ships of leſſer burden to the very key; and by that means populous, well traded, and inhabited by civil and wealthy people.

The Ifland firſt ſubdued to the *Romans* by the valour of *Velaſianus*, (afterwards Emperor of *Rome*) in the time of *Claudius*. Extorted from the *Britains* by *Cerdick* King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, and by him given to *Stiffa* and *Whigar*, two of that Nation, who had almoſt rooted out the old Inhabitants. It was the laſt Country of the *Saxons* which received the *Gaſpel*, and then upon compulſions, forced to it by the power as well as the perſuaſion of *Cadwalla* the *Veſt-Saxon* King. Took from the *Engliſh* in the time of the *Norman* Conqueror, by *William* Earl of *Hereford*, who thereupon was made the firſt Lord thereof. From whoſe Family, by the gift of *Henry II.* it paſſed to that of *Redvers*, ſon *Rivers*, de *Biparis* than Earl of *Devonſhire*: and on failing of that Houſe returned to the Crown in the Reign of *Edward* the firſt. Never ſo much ennobled as by *Henry* the fifth, who bearing a great affection to *Henry* *Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwick*, in the 23 of his Reign, crowned him King of *Wight*, An. 1445. Which title ended with his life about two years after.

**IX.** *THANET*, is a little Ifland in the North-Eaſt of *Kent*, not far from *Sandwich*, environed on three parts by the Sea, into which it ſtooth with a large Promontory called the *North-fore-land*; the *Cantium* of the ancient Writers: and towards the Weſt, ſeveyed from the main land of *Kent* by the River *Stour*, which is here called *Toulade*, but ſeveyed fo, that by the benefit of a Caſtle and paſſage for the waters in convenient places, it is united to the Continent or main land of *Kent*. The quality, ſize, and figure of it, taken in theſe Rhythms (for I dare hardly) call them Verſes extant not long ſince in a Window of the chief Church there, viz.

*Infula rotunda Thanatos, quam circum unda,  
Nobilis & munda, nulli eſt in orbe ſecunda.*

That is to ſay,

*Thanet* is round with circling waters bound,  
A neat and noble ground, none like it to be found.

Called by *Salinus*, *Athanatos*, in ſome Copies *Thanatos* from whence the *Saxons* had their *Thamer*. Famous, as

in other things, ſo in theſe particulars, that it was the place which the *Saxons* landed at, when they firſt came into *Britain*; the firſt *Livory* and *Seiſin*, which they had of the whole Kingdom, conferred upon them by the impudent bounty of *Vortiger*, to whoſe aid called in; and the landing place of *Auguſtine* the Monk, when he brought the *Gaſpel* to the *Saxons*. The whole about two miles in length, and four in breadth, was reckoned to contain in thoſe times, 600 Families; now very populous for the ſize, and plentiful of all commodities neceſſary, but of corn eſpecially. The people generally are a kind of *Amphibii*, able to get their livings both by Sea and Land, well ſkilled as well in ſteering of a ſhip at Sea, as in holding the Plough upon Land; and in both induſtries. Of moſt note in it, 1. *Stronar*, a Port-town, the uſual landing place of the *Saxons*; more memorable for the Sepulchre of *Vortimer*, King of the *Britains*, who having vanquiſhed the *Saxons* in many battels, and finally driven them out of the Ifland, deſired to be here interred on a conceit, that his dead corps would fight them from landing any more upon theſe Coaſts. And this perhaps a diſtinct imitation of *Scipio African*, who having had a Fortiſſime hand againſt thoſe of *Carthage*, gave order to have his Tomb placed towards *Aſiick*, to fright the *Carthaginians* from the Coaſts of *Italy*.

**X.** *SUNDERLAND* is an Ifland only at an high-water, when environed on all ſides with the Sea; at other times joyned unto the Land, or of an eaſie paſſage from thence to the other: pulled by ſome tempeſt, or by the workings of the Sea from the reſt of the Land: whence the name of *Sunderland*. Situate in the North-Eaſt part of the Biſhoprick of *Durham*, over againſt the influx of the River *Wear*. Rich in its inexhaustible mines of *Cock*, and for that caſe ſeldom without the company of foreign Merchants; or not to have been here reſum'd, but that it hath been thought worthy by our Sovereign Lord King *Charles*, the ſecond Monarch of Great *Britain*, to confer the title of Earl to the two Noble Families of the *Serpents* and *Spencers*: the firſt in the third year of his Reign, An. 1627; the ſecond in the 18th, An. 1642.

**XI.** *THE HOLY ISLAND* lieth upon the Coaſt of *Northumberland*, not far from *Berwick*, ſtretched out in length from Eaſt to Weſt, with a narrow point unto the Land, from thence growing broader like a wedge: fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, and of great ſafety, but more Famous for what it hath been, than for what it is. In the dawning of *Chriſtianity* amongst the *Northumbrians*, made a Biſhop See, by *S. Aidanus*, one of the firſt Apoſtles of that potent Nation. Selected for this dignity by that godly man, for the ſolitude and privacy of it; which made it thought more fit and proper for Devotion. The name then *Lindisfarne*, but the Religious Lives of ſo many pious Biſhops, Monks, and others of the Clergy as did there inhabit, gained it the name of *Holy Island*. The See continued there 253 years, that is to ſay, from the year 637 to 990, under 22 Biſhops, hence called Biſhops of *Lindisfarne*; then removed to *Durham*: the infidelities of the Danes (who then rag'd terribly on theſe Coaſts) compelling them to abandon that Religious ſolitude.

Thus have we taken a ſurvey of the *Britiſh* Iflands, and them by what means *Ireland* and all the leſſer Iflands became united either to the Crown of *England* or *Scotland*; and theſe two Kingdoms to each other joyned in the perſon of the ſame King, and the participation of his Favours, though diſtinct ſtill in Laws and ſome forms of Government, as moſt of the Eſtates of *Spain*, at the preſent time. United alſo in one name, the different Appellations of *England* and *Scotland* being ſwallowed up, or

incorporated rather in that of *GREAT BRITAIN*, which it pleaſed King *James* to own for his ſtile Imperial. And for a memory thereof, to cauſe a piece of Gold to be coined of 20 s. (ſince raiſed to 22 s.) which he called the *Unit*, ſtamped on the one ſide with his picture, and this Inſcription, *JACOBUS D. GR. MAGNÆ BRITANNIÆ FR. ET HIBERNIÆ REX*, and on the other ſide with his Arms, crowned with this Motto, *AVE CLAM EOS IN GENTEM UNAM*. All we have now to do, is to lay down the names of thoſe puſſant Princes, whom God hath raiſed to be

#### The Monarchs of Britain.

1602 I *James*, the fixth of that name, King of the *Scots*, Son of *Mary* Queen of *Scots*, Daughter of *James* the fifth, the Son of *James* the fourth, and of the Lady *Margaret*, eldeſt Daughter of *Henry* the ſeventh of *England*: which *Margaret* being after married to *Archibald* Douglas Earl of *Angus*, had a Daughter named *Margaret* alſo (the only child of her Parents) married to *Matthew* Stewart Earl of *Lenox*; by whom ſhe was made the Mother of *Henry* Lord *Darnley*, the Father of King *James* the fixth, by the ſaid *Mary* Queen of *Scots*. So that King *James* deſcending from the eldeſt Daughter of *Henry* the 7th, both by Father and Mother, on the expiring of the Line of *Henry* the 8th, in the perſon of Queen *Elizabeth* of Famous memory; was the next heir to the Crown of *England*, and was accordingly with all joyſul acclamations proclaimed and acknowledged King in the City of *London*, March 24. An. 1602. (According to the Account of the Church of *England*.) A learned and Religious Prince, a true Defender of the Faith, a Nurſing Father of the Church, and a lover of Learning. He died at *Theobalds*, March 27. 1625, having reigned 23 years, and four days over.

1625 2 *Charles*, ſecond Son of King *James*, and of *Anne* of *Denmark*, (his elder Brother *Henry* dying long before) the 63d King in deſcent from *Cerdick* King of the *Veſt-Saxons*; the 45th King of *England*, in deſcent from *Egbert*; the 24th from the *Norman* Conqueror, the 64th March of the *Engliſh*, and the ſecond Monarch of *Britain*. In the beginning of his Reign he married the Princeſſe *Henrietta Maria*, Daughter of *Henry* the fourth, and Siſter to *Louis* the 13th, French Kings; by whom beſt with a Royal Iſſue of Sons and Daughters.

As for the *Forces* and *Revenues* of theſe *Britiſh* Monarchs, we cannot put the eſtimate of them in a better way than by laying together that which hath been delivered of each ſeveral part, out of which *Items* the ſumma totalis of the whole both in power and treaſure, will be eaſily gathered. For though theſe Monarchs never had any occaſion to muſter and unite the *Forces* of their ſeveral Kingdoms upon any one Action, yet by conſidering what they have been able to do divided, we may conclude of what they may do, if need be, being now united. And ſo we are to do in marſhalling the Arms of the *Britiſh* Monarchy, were are 1. Quarterly France and *England*, 2ly. *Scotland*, 3ly. *Ireland*, the fourth as the firſt. I ſhut up this Diſcourſe of the *Britiſh* Empire, with thoſe words of *Scripture* (the Motto of another of King *James* his Coins) *QVOD DEUS CONFVNXIT NEMO SEPARAT*.

And ſo much for *Britain*.

# A T A B L E

## Of the LONGITUDE and LATITUDE

OF THE

CHIEF CITIES mentioned in this FIRST BOOK.

A.		Lon.	Lat.	D.		Lon.	Lat.
A. Berdene	22	20	57	20	Corduba	9	4
Alcala de Henares	23	0	40	30	Conimbre	5	45
Alicante	28	40	39	0	Compostella	17	15
Almodine	34	0	33	40	Coventry	25	52
Ancona	43	10	43	50			
S. Andrews	22	10	56	20	Diepe	28	40
Angoleme	27	0	46	0	Dignion	25	45
Angiers	18	10	47	25	Dole	28	3
Aquilegia	42	50	46	40	Dover	26	10
Armagh	14	50	54	9	Dublin	16	40
Avero	17	30	41	10	Dunbritton	19	24
Avignon	23	40	45	50	Durham	22	54
Aux	22	40	43	50			
St. Anderos	22	20	43		Edenburgh	22	55
Aix	22	20	42	10	Embrun	28	44
Arles	22	45	43	20	Elie	25	20
Amboise	20	35	47	35	Exeter	22	10
B.		Lon.	Lat.	F.		Lon.	Lat.
Badaios	19	40	38	30	Florence	41	10
Baione	24	20	42	10	Ferrara	44	36
Bast	28	10	48	30	Fajal		48
Bejanfon	26	30	47	30			
Bilbao	23	30	41	10	Geneva	33	40
Baben in Switzerl.	31		48	44	Galway	13	17
Blavet	21	15	47	50	Glocester	19	53
Bononia	35	50	43	33	Gades	15	10
Brest	20		48	50	Granada	11	37
Bath	20	56	51	20	Groine	16	50
Braunce	6		45		Genoa	37	50
Barwick	22	43	55	48	Grenoble	27	45
Barcelona	17	15	41	36			
Berdenant	18		45	10	S. Hillary in Guernsey.	22	20
Bruges	24	10	48	20	Hull	25	20
C.		Lon.	Lat.	L.		Lon.	Lat.
Cambridge	23	25	52	10	Leon	21	10
Calice	26	2	52		Lisbon	9	10
Canterbury	24	50	51	16	Lions	23	15
Cartena	28	20	38	20	Lincoln	22	15
Cine	21		50	5	London	23	25
Carlisle	21	31	52	57	Luca	42	10
Chafter	20	23	53	11	Lagorn	40	20
Chichester	26	10	51				
Clermont	30	15	45	50	Majorca	39	50
Chur	32		42		Malaga	23	50
Cork	15	40	41	40	Marfallez	24	30

S. Malo		Lon.	Lat.	Rochel		Lon.	Lat.
Medina Celi	19	49		Rome	18	15	45
Millaine	23	30	41	10	Roven	42	30
Modena	38	30	46	10	Rbezo	23	40
Montpelier	41	50	35	40		24	0
Montalhan	25	30	44	10		38	20
Messina	23	45					
Minorca	45	50	37	50	Salisbury	18	3
	40	30	40	0	Salenica	8	5
					Saragossa	24	15
					Sevil	7	15
Naples	46	39	30		Sion, or Sittia	29	45
Nantes	24	10	47	10	Stirling	20	10
Narbon	30	20	43	20	Stena	42	20
Nevers	25	47	10		Signenca	18	2
Newcastle	22	30	54	57	Syracuse	40	30
Nismes	26	44	2				
Norwich	24	55	52	40	Taranatise	29	45
					Tarragon	28	30
Oleron	24	30	45	30	Tholose	28	40
Orleans	28	30	48	0	Toledo	16	20
Orange	26	20	43	20	Trieste	44	10
Oxford	22	51	20		Tredab	16	34
Otranto	49	30	40	20	Turin	31	30
					Tarentum	48	0
Pampelun	24	30	43	30			
Paris	23	30	48	40	Valadolid	16	10
Pavie	44	1	35	5	Valencia	19	20
Padua	44	45	36	29	Venice	41	40
Parma	39	20	45	10	Verona	40	40
Pescara	43	0	30	10	Viterbo	41	50
Palermo							
Perugia	42	20	43	10	Weymouth	23	50
Peter-port in Jersey	23	0	49	20	Winchester	22	52
Pisa	40	30	43	40	Wexford	16	42
Placentia	20	40	40	0			
Politiers	26	30	47		Tarmouth	27	30
					Tork	22	25
R.							
Ravenna	41	20	44	20			
Rhemes	25	25	48	30	Zurick	30	20
Roms	19	48					

The End of the First Book.



COSMOGRAPHY,  
The Second Book,  
CONTAINING THE  
CHOROGRAPHY  
AND  
HISTORY  
OF

*Belgium, Germany, Denmark, Swetbland, Russia, Poland, Hungary,  
Sclavonia, Dacia, and Greece, with the Isles thereof.*

---

By PETER HEYLIN.

---

TACIT. HIST. LIB. 4.

*Humanarum rerum possessionem Trans-alpinis gentibus portendi, Druidæ canebant.*

SENEC. de Confolat. ad ALBINUM.

*Quotidie aliquid in hoc magno Orbe mutatur; Nova Urbium fundamenta jaciuntur, nova Gentium nomina extinctis nominibus extinctis nominibus prioribus, oriuntur.*

---

L O N D O N,

Printed by *Thomas Dawks*, Printer to the KING's most Excellent  
MAJESTY in the British Language, for *Philip Cherwin* and  
*Anne Seile*, MDCCLXXVII.

COSMOGRAPHY,  
The Second Book,  
CONTAINING THE  
CHOROGRAPHY  
AND  
HISTORY  
OF

*Belgium, Germany, Denmark, Swetbland, Muscovy, Poland, Hungary,  
Dalmacia, Dacia, Greece, with the Isles thereof.*

OF  
BELGIUM.

**H**AVING pursued the Fortunes of the *Roman* Empire through the four Western Dioceses or Divisions of it, wholly subdued to the command of that conquering State: let us next look on those Countries which lay farther North, and either never felt the force of the *Roman* Armies, or were but conquered in part, or else were reckoned as the members of some greater Province. Of this last fort was all that Tract which is now called *Belgium*, or the *Netherlands*, bounded Eastward with *Westphalen*, *Gulick*, *Cleve*, and the land of *Triers*, Provinces of the higher *Germany*; on the

West with the main Ocean, which divides it from *Britain*; on the North with the River *Ems*, which parts it from *East-Friseland*; on the South with *Picardie* and *Champagne*, two *French* Provinces; upon the South-east with the Dukedom of *Lorrain*.

By the *Latines* (especially of these last times) it is called *Belgium*, from the *Belge*, the most potent people of all these parts; and sometimes also *Germania inferior* or the *Lower Germany*, (in the same sense as by the *English* it is called the *Low Countries* and the *Netherlands*) from their low situation, and the conformity which they have with the *Germans* in Laws, Languages, Customs and Manners.

ners. By some it hath been called by the aggregate name of the *Seventeen Provinces*, from the like number of federal and distinct Estates united under the Command of the King of Spain. The more peculiar name is *Flanders*, which, though but one of the Seventeen Provinces, hath yet given denomination to all the *Netherlands*, the people of which were once generally called by the name of *Flemmings*; and that either for the power of that Province, in regard of the others; or by reason of the great Trade and Traffick formerly driven at the Fairs or *Mars of Bruges* (a Town thereof) by the Merchants of all parts of Europe, or in respect that lying nearer than the rest to France, Spain, Italy, and England, that name was better known and took notice of. But this was when the whole Country was under the command of many Princes; of which the Earls of *Flanders* were esteemed most potent. And though this name continued also after the incorporating of most of these Provinces in the House of *Burgundy*, at which time they were called the *Estates of Flanders*; yet since the falling off of *Holland* and the rest of the *United Provinces* from the Kings of Spain, it hath lost this Honour, the name of *Flanders* being now restrained within narrower bounds.

But for the name of *Belgium*, though I find that name most current amongst the *Latines* of this Age, yet I see little reason for it. For first, old *Belgium* contained in it many fair and large Estates which are not now within the compass of these *Belgick* Provinces; that is to say, the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, *Berg*, *Juliers*, and a great part of *Cleves*, the Bishopsricks of *Trier*, *Mentz*, and *Colen*, and so much of the Kingdom of France as takes up all *Picardy*, with parts of *Champagne* and of France specially so called. Secondly, *Gallia Belgica* extended somewhat farther yet, comprehending a great part of the Lower *Palatinate*, all *Elfsa*, the whole County of *Burgundy*, and so much of *Switzerland* as lieth on the French side of the *Rhene*. And thirdly, the whole Provinces of *West-Friesland*, *Groning*, *Over-Isfel*, *Zuiphen*, together with all *North-Holland*, and so much of *Gelderland*, and *Utrecht* as lieth on the farther side of the middle Channel of the *Rhene*, were never counted of as parts of either *Belgium* or of *Gallia Belgica* (though now within the compass of the *Belgick* Provinces) but as parts of *Germany*; clearly without the limits of the ancient *Gaul*, of which Body *Belgium* was a limb or member in the *Roman* estimate.

As for the *Belge*, from whence we have the names of *Belgium* and *Gallia Belgica*, they were originally *Germans*, who driving out the *Gauls*, planted themselves within the *Rhene*, succeeded by *Cesar* to be the valiantest of the *Gaulick* Nations for these three Reasons. 1. They were the farthest from *Provence*, where the *Roman* Civilities and more affable course of life was embraced. 2. They dwelt on a Sea not then frequented by Merchants; and so wanted those allurements to Effeminacy which are in Countries of traffick. 3. They bordered on the *Germans*, a warlike Nation, with whom they were continually in Arms. This people seeing the prosperous success of *Cesar's* Victories in *Gaul*, joined together in a League, and mustered an Army of 269000 Fighting men against him. But seeing they could not draw him out of his Fortresses, they retired again, and that in such disorder, that three Legions (for no more was *Cesar's* Army) put them to an infinite slaughter. After this, *Cesar*, fighting against them feverally, overcame them all and made their Country, and the Country of the bordering *Germans*, whom he also vanquished, subject unto the *Roman* Empire. By *Constantine* the Great it was made part of the Diocess of *Gallia*, and by him cast into five Provinces: that is to say, 1. *Belgica Prima*, containing the Dukedom of *Lorraine* and the Land of *Trier*, the Metropolis whereof was *Tri-*

ers; 2. *Belgica Secunda*, comprehending *Artois*, *Picardy*, and the Country of *Cambray*, with parts of *Champagne* and France special, of which the Metropolis was *Rhemes*; 3. *Germania Prima*, comprehending *Alsacia*, a part of the *Palatinate*, and the Bishopsrick of *Mentz*, the Metropolis City of that Province; 4. *Germania Secunda*, containing *Cleveland*, *Brabant*, *Gelderland*, *Utrecht*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Flanders*, *Hainault*, *Namur*, *Luxembourg*, *Limbourg*, and the land of *Colen*, which last was honoured with the title of Metropolis; 5. *Maxima Sequanorum*, so called of the *Sequani*, the old Inhabitants thereof, containing the whole County of *Burgundy*, and so much of *Switzerland* as lieth on the French side of the *Rhene*, of which *Besancion* was the Mother City. But at this time none of the Provinces above specified are comprehended under the acpt and name of *Belgium*, but such as were possessed in these latter Ages by the House of *Burgundy*; some petty Seigniories and Estates which properly do belong to *Germany* being added to it: that is to say, the Lordship of *West-Friesland*, given to the Earls of *Holland* by *Charles* the Bald, the Earldom of *Zuiphen* united unto that of *Gelders* by Earl *Orto* of *Nijssay*, and finally the Estate of *Groning*, *Over-Isfel*, and some part of *Utrecht* by *Charles* the fifth. Under which name and notion we do now consider it.

And taking it according to this name and notion, it is in compass 1000 Italian, or 250 German miles; and is situated in the Northern temperate Zone, under the 51. and 52. Climates: the longest day in the midst of the 51st Climate, where it doth begin, being 16 hours; in the beginning of the 52nd Climate increased to 16 hours three quarters, or near 17 hours. The Air in these later days is grown more wholesome than formerly; partly by the wonderful increase of the Inhabitants, and partly by the incredible industry of the people, who, by draining the Marishes, and converting the standing waters into running Streams have purged the Air of many gross and unhealthy Vapours, which did thence usually arise in times foregoing.

The Country is very populous, containing well-nigh three millions of souls; the men being for the most part well-proportioned, great lovers of our English Beer, amindful both of good turns and injuries, of good will inventing, and of a most indefatigable industry for perfecting the rarest Manufactures. For unto them we are indebted for the making of Cloth, which we learnt of the *Flemmings*; also for *Arras*-hangings, *Dorick* Cloths, and the perfection of the Mariner's Compass. They restored Musick, and found out divers Musical Instruments, being naturally good Musicians, and generally so given unto it, and so perfect in it, that therefore (the Art of Musick grew more common) there were not many Great mens houses which had not Musicians to teach their Children. To them belongeth also the invention of Charities, the laying on of Colours with Oyl, the working of Pictures in Glass, and the making of Worsted, *Seyes*, and Tapestries; the making of which and other Stuffs, being driven out of their Country by the Duke of *Alva*, they first taught the *English*. The Women generally are of good complexion, well-proportioned, especially in the Leg and Foot, honours of Vertue, active and familiar. Both within doors, and without they govern all; which, considering the natural desire of Women to bear, rule, maketh them too imperious and burthenfome.

They use for the most part the *German* and *Dutch* Language, with a little difference in the Dialect. But in the Provinces adjoining to France, that is to say, *Luxembourg*, *Namur*, *Artois*, *Hainault*, and some parts of *Flanders* & *Brabant*, they use the French; but the same very corruptly and imperfectly, by reason of that mixture which it hath

hath of the *Dutch* or *German*, yet so that one may easily discern those people to be French originally, or some remainder of the old *Gauls*, mastered by the French, but not rooted out: from their Language or first Original coming to this day by the name of *Wallons*, the *Germans* usually changing G into W, as *Warre* for *Guerre*, *Warden* for *Gardian*, and in the like cases *Wales* for *Galles*, I know there is another Etymology of the name of *Wallons*, some making them to be of the *Burgundian* race, who, at their first passing over the *Rhene*, enquired their way of the Country; people in these words, *On allons*, i.e. *Whither go we* which being oft repeated by them occasioning them to be called *Wallons*: A trim invention doubtless, but of no solidity, nor to be farther honoured with a confutation.

The Country in those parts which lie towards *Germany*, especially on the South-east bordering upon *Cleveland* and *Lorraine*, is somewhat fowled with Hius and over-shaded with Woods, the relics of the great Forest of *Ardenne*, which once took up a great part thereof. But towards the West and North, where it joins to the Sea, it is plain and level, full of Plains and Marthes, affording very little Corn, but abounding in Palturage, which yields a great increase of Butter and Cheese, good store of Bees and Horses of more than ordi ary bigness. By reason of which low and level situation, and the neighbourhood of a troublefome and unruly Sea, it hath been formerly much subject to Inundations; inasmuch as in the time of King *Henry* the 2. *Flanders* was so overflowed, that many thousands of people, whose dwellings the Sea had devoured, came into England to beg new teats, and were by that King first placed *Tork-Spire*, and then removed to *Pembroke*. Since that, it hath in *Zeland* swallowed eight of the Islands, and in them 300 Towns and Villages: many of whose Churches and strong buildings are at a dead low water to be seen. And as once *Ovid* said of *Helice* and *Buris*, Cities of *Achaia*, so may we of these,

*Invenies sub aquis, & adhuc offendere nante  
Inclinata solent cum manibus oppida verſa.*

That is to say,

The waters hide them, and the Sailors show  
The ruin'd Walls and Steeples as they row.

The chief Commodities which they vent into their Countries are Linen, Scarlets, Worsted, *Seyes*, Silks, Velvets, and the like rich Stuffs; together with great quantities of Armour, Ropes, Cables, Butter, Cheese, &c. Of which excepting Cheese and Butter, there is nothing of the natural growth of the Country: the rest being Manufactures which they make out of such materials as they fetch out of Foreign Regions. But the Commodity which yieldeth them most benefit is that of fish, not caught upon their own Coast neither, but either in the Northern Seas or the coast of *England*; the very Herings which they catch on the shoars of *England* (to the no small dishonour of *English* Nation) bringing them a Revenue (besides what is purſued up by the Adventurers) of 440000 pounds per annum; and that of Cod-fish, which they catch on the Coasts of *Friesland*, amounting to 1500000, sterling yearly.

Captains of note and eminence it hath bred but few. The people living till of late in perpetual peace. The chief of those whose names have been transmitted to us are, 1. *Crovis*, a Prince of the *Butavians*, for subduing of it compared to *Hannibal* and *Sertorius*: of which in the long War against the *Romans*, in the time of *Vespasian*, he

gave very good proof. In the middle times, 2. *William* Earl of *Holland*, elected Emperor of *Germany*, 3. *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, Emperor of *Constantinople*, 4. *Philip* the Good, and 5. *Charles* the Wallace, Dukes of *Burgundy*. 6. *Charles* the Fifth Emperor and King of *Spain*. And of late times the Princes of the House of *Nassau* and *Orange*, transplanted hither in the Regency *Maximilian* out of higher *Germany*. And to say the truth their Genius doth not lie so much for Land service as it doth for the Seas, in which they have been very famous and not less fortunate. For of this Nation was *Oliver Vander Noorde*, the fourth that compassed the world, *Jacob le Maire*, the first discoverer of the Straight or *Fretum*, which now beareth his name, besides divers others. And generally the people are so expert in Navigation, (especially these bordering on or near the Coasts) that they seem born for and to the Seas: many of which, being born on Ship-board and bred up at Sea, know no other Country, and brook the Land as ill as a Fifth doth the dry ground. Which natural inclination to it, and the necessity they have of employing themselves that way, (the Country not being otherwise able to provide subsistence for those multitudes of men which it doth about it) hath so exceedingly increased their Shipping, that it is thought that they are masters of more Vessels of all sorts, taking one with another, than almost all the rest of Europe.

Scholars of note it hath bred many. 1. *Erasmus*, the great restorer of Learning in these parts of the World. 2. *Johann Lipsius*, as eminent a reviver of the *Latine* Education. 3. *Johann Scaliger*, the Son of *Jubius*, a man of great Learning, but of equal Arrogance. 4. *Rudolphus Agricola*. 5. *Levinus Lemnius*. 6. 7. *Janus Donsa*, the Father and the Son. 8. *Abraham Ortelius*, and 9. *Gerard Mercator*, the Geographers. 10. *Geo. Cassander*, 11. *Dr. James Hermin*, 12. *Gerard Vossius*, eminent Divines. And 13. *Hugo Grotius*, of as great parts (but seasoned with more modesty and moderation) as the famous *Scaliger*. 14. *Janfenius*, and 15. *Pamelius*, two right learned Men, but of the *Pontifician* party.

As much unfortunate it hath been in some wretched Heretics, in none more than in *David George*, born at *Delf* in *Holland* who called himself *Christ* and King immortal. Flying from *Delf* to *Basil* with his Wife and children, *An. 1545*, he there taught his Doctrine, viz. 1. That the Law and Gospel were unprofitable for the attaining of Heaven; but his Doctrine able to save such as received it. 2. That he was the true *Christ* and *Messias*. 3. That he was not to restore the House of *Israel* by Death or Tribulation, but by Love and Grace of the Spirit. 4. That he had been till that present kept in a place unknown to all the Saints. And that this last point might obtain the easier credit amongst the people, he bound his Disciples, first to conceal his name; secondly, not to reveal of what Condition he had been, thirdly, not to discover the Articles of his Doctrine to any man in *Basil* without his permission. But for all this great care of his within three days after his death (which happened in the year 1566,) his Doctrines, being made known, were condemned by the Senate & Church of *Basil*, his goods confiscated, and his Bones most deservently taken up and burnt. Of somewhat less impiety, but of no less perversity, was 2. *Joh. de Leyden*, (another Town of the same Province) who from a Tailor was made King of the *Anabaptists*, when they had ragged in *Amster*, and there we shall hear farther of him. 3. *Cappianus*, and 4. *Quintinus*, both *Flemmings*, the joint Authors and Co-founders of the Sect of the Libertines.

The Christian Religion was planted in several Provinces by several men: in *Holland, Zealand, and Friesland*, by *Willibrord* an *English* man, the first Bishop of *Utrecht*, whence by degrees it gained on the rest of the Country; these being the first people of the *Franks*, or *German*s, converted totally to the Gospel. In tract of time it fell from the Primitive Purity, participating of the Errors and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*; from which when they desired to reclaim themselves, they were there in opposed by the King of *Spain* and his Ministers. Hence the beginning of the Troubles, enlarged afterwards on pretence of Civil rights invaded and infringed by the *Spaniards* affecting a more absolute Dominion over them than their Laws admitted. At this time, as the Country doth stand divided betwixt the *States*; and the *Spaniards*, so stands it with Religion also: the *Spaniards* permitting only the Religion of the Church of *Rome* within the Provinces and Estates under his command; and the *States* General indulging the free use of all Religions (even the very *Jews*); but countenancing only that of the Reformed Churches, according to the Platform laid down by *Calvin*.

Chief Forests of this Country are: 1. That of *Ardenne*, which in the time of *Cesar* extended from the banks of *Rhene* as far as *Tonny* one way, and *Champagne* another way, and was in compass 500 miles in the least account. In which circuit there was comprehended the Southern parts of *Brabant* and *Flanders*, all *Limbourg*, *Luxemburg*, *Luyckland*, *Namur*, and *Hainault*, together with the land of *Gulick* in the higher *Germany*, as some Writers say. At this time, though the greatest of all *Gaul Belgic*, it reacheth but from *Liege*, to *Theowille*, 30 leagues in length, and yet not all that Woodland neither, though within the Verge of the Forest: there being much Tillage and many Villages in that tract of ground, the principal of which is the Town of *S. Hubert*, situate almost in the midst of it. 2. *Niepe*, and 3. *Nonnen*, in the Earldom of *Flanders*; the first extending to the banks of the River *Lis*, the other coming up close to *Tpres*. 4. *Pondsberg*, in the Confines of *Hainault* and *Flanders*, near unto *Mont-Gervais*. All these were parts of this great forest of *Ardenne*, which once overshadowed all this Country. 5. *Normant*, in *Hainault*, in which is much Charcoal made; supposed for that reason to be a part of that Forest which the old *French* called *La Charboniere*. 6. *Echterwald*, in *Gelderland*, near *Arnhem*, &c.

The chief Rivers are, 1. *Rhene*, which ariseth out of two Springs in the *Leopontian Alps* amongst the *Grisons*, united into one stream near *Chur*: thence passing by the Cities of *Constance*, *Basil*, *Spire*, *Wormes*, *Metz*, and *Colen*, it is again divided about the confines of *Gelderland* into four Branches or Channels. Of which the first is called the *Wael*, which running through *Gelderland* by *Nimwegen* and *Bommel*, loseth it self in the *Muse*. The second, which keeps the name of the *Rhene*, passeth by *Arnhem*, from thence in a contracted channel to *Utrecht*, and so through *Holland* unto *Leyden*. The third, called the *Leck*, taketh his course through the Provinces of *Utrecht* and *Holland*, and so into the Sea betwixt *Dort* and *Rotterdam*. And the fourth called the *Tijdel*, which passing by the Towns of *Zurph* and *Deventer* betwixt *Gelderland* and *Over-Yssel*, emptieth it self into the Ocean near *Amsterdam*. And of these Branches I have given the exacter reckoning, partly because the course of that famous River is otherwise not easie to be observed; and partly because the knowledge of a great part of these Provinces dependeth on the knowledge of the course of this River, it being the middle branch of the *Rhene* (that which goeth by *Leyden*) which anciently divided *Germany* from *Gallia Belgica*. A River

of such reputation in the ancient times, that into it the old *Belge* used to cast the children which they suspected to be illegitimate: For were they born of law full bed, they floated on the waters; if of unlawful, they sank immediately. Whereunto *Claudian* alluding faith, *Nascentes explorat gurgite Rhenu*. But the great number of Antiquities, *Pestifera*, is of opinion, that thereby they only injured their Children to hardness, and made trial of their strength; Adultery being rarely found among them, and so these kinds of experiments needless. 2. *Mosa*, the *Maas*, as the *Dutch* or the *Mettis*, as the *French* men call it, which springing from the Mountains of *Vange* in the confines of *Lorrain* and not far from the Fountains of the *Seine* and *Marne*, runneth through *Lorrain*, *Luxemburg*, *Luyckland* and *Namur*; from thence by *Kuremond* and *Venlo*, two known Towns of *Gelderland*, where turning towards the West, it taketh in a part of the *Rhene*, and from thence passing by *Maasick*, divideth *Brabant* from *Holland*, watering the Town of *Grave* in the one, and of *Dort* in the other; and falleth into the Sea not far from *Brill* with so great a violence, that the waters of it for a long space continue fresh. 3. *Emis*, in *Latine* called *Amisus*, dividing the two *Frisland*s; of which more in *Germany*. 4. *Scaldis*, which arising in *Picardy*, and running through *Artois*, and between *Hainault* and *Brabant*, meeteth with the Sea a little above *Antwerp*. And 5. *Lis* or *Loys*, which runneth quite through *Flanders*. Besides which Rivers, and others of inferior note, (which we shall meet withal in their proper places) here are great flocks of Lakes, Pools and Marshes, which do both fortifie the Country, and provide it of Fish: besides many navigable Channels made by the hand of man from one River to another, for the convenience of passage, and the more easie transport of their Commodities.

The Shoar of this Country hath been much worn out by the Sea, especially that of the Islands of *Zeeland*, and such as lie scattered about *Holland*; where they are defended with Banks and Ramparts, painfully made, and chargeably maintained. These Banks are about ten times in height, and twenty five in breadth at the bottom: they are made of the hardest clay that may be gotten, in the inside stufled with wood and stone, on the outside covered with mats strong and thick made.

The former Inhabitants were divers, and were as differently disposed of in their several Countries. That is to say, the *Atrebrates* in the greatest part of *Artois*; the *Moringi* the rest of *Artois*; and those parts of *Flanders* which make up the *Imperial* and *Dutch* *Flanders*; the *Nervi* in *Hainault*; *Namur*, and *Flanders* *Gallican*; the *Batavi* in *South-Holland*, and so much of *Gelderland* and *Utrecht* as lies on the South-side of the *Rhene*, with the *Menapii* intermixt in the Dukedom of *Gelders*; the *Mattiaci* in the Isles of *Zeeland*; the *Adriatici* and part of the *Tungri* in the Dukedom of *Brabant*, with part of the *Frisi* in *Luxemburg*, and of the *Eburones* in *Luyckland* and the Dukedom of *Limburg*: all which were *Belgic* Nations, and therefore anciently accounted of as parts of *Gallia*. Then on the Northern side of the middle Channel of the *Rhene* there dwelt the *Frisi* minor in *North-Holland*, and so much of the District of *Utrecht* as lies on the farther side of that channel; the *Frisi* major in *West-Friesland* and the State of *Groning*; some parts of the *Sicambri* in the Earldom of *Zurph* and the rest of *Gelderland*, with part of the *Bructeri* in *Over-Yssel* all *German* Nations, and properly not within the reckoning of *Gallia Belgica*. Those which passed under the account and name of *Belge* being subdued, together with other Tribes of that numerous Nation; by the valour and good fortune of *Julius Caesar*, continued subject to the

Romans

*Romans*, with any notable disturbance unto their affairs but the *Rebellion* raised against them by *Civilis* Prince of the *Batavians* in the time of *Vespasian*. In the declining of the Empire they were possessed by the *French*, under whom they made a part of the Kingdom of *Metz*, or *Offenreich*, united by *Childerick* the third to the rest of *France*, and made a member of that Kingdom; as they continued till the time of *Lewis* the Godly, Son of *Charles* the Great. In the division of whose Empire amongst his Children, the Countries of *Flanders* and *Artois* being laid to *France*, the residue of these Countries on this side of the *Rhene* made up a special part of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*. Those on the farther side of the middle Channel of that River, being *German* Nations, gained to the vast Empire of the *French* by *Charles* the Great, in the division of the spoil spoken of before fell to the share of *Lewis* surnamed the Ancient, the first King of *Germany*, and after his decease to his Successors in that Estate, whether King or Emperours. And so we have the whole divided betwixt the three great Kings of *France*, *Lorrain* and *Germany*, by that means subdivided into lesser parcels, (no fewer than nineteen in all) we shall see anon.

In the mean time we are to know, that in the beginning of the *French* Conquests in the rest of *Gallia*, there started up intellectual two great Estates, founded by *Auberan*, *Regnant* and *Ranchaire*, Sons of *Cleodion*, the second King of the *French*; who being disinherited of their Fathers Kingdom by *Mervoe* Master of his Horse, to whose Tuition and Guardianship they had been committed, betook themselves to the most defensible places of the great Forest of *Ardenne*, and the Countries on the banks of the River *Moselle*; where they founded the two great Earldoms from thence denominated. That of *Ardenne* (for of the Earldom of *Moselle* we shall speak elsewhere) contained part of the modern *Flanders*, and some part of *Brabant*, together with all *Hainault*, *Namur*, *Limburg*, *Luxemburg*, and the Dukedom of *Bouillon*. Grown to this greatness by the withdrawing of the *French* forces into richer Conquests, and diminishing of that Empire into many Kingdoms, and trusting too much to that greatness, they drew upon themselves the jealousy of those mightier Princes: occasioning *Clotaire* the second to give their Country unto *Dagobert* his eldest Son, then King of *Metz*, whom he furnished with convenient Forces for the conquest of it, *Brunnulp*, the then Prince hereof, being by him discomfited and slain in Battle. By *Sigebert*, who succeeded his Father *Dagobert* in the Kingdom of *Metz*, the Earldom of *Hainault* is taken out of it, and given to *Albert*, one of the youngest Sons of *Brunnulp*. By *Dagobert* himself succeeding in the Realm of *France*, (and whilst he lived foiking of the *French*) the parts of *Flanders* and *Brabant*, formerly belonging to these Princes, were diminished from it, and laid unto two new Estates of his own creating. And probable it is, that either to weaken this great House, or to comply with the customs of those times, the Earldom of *Namur* might be taken out of it at the same time also, for the portion of some other of the younger Brethren. The rest of the Estate, with the title of Earl of *Ardenne*, remained unto the eldest Son: whose posterity, notwithstanding this great diminution, grew to such esteem, that *Judith*, the Widow of *Ban*, and Sister of *Boson*, Earls of *Ardenne*, was thought a fit Wife for *Charles* the Bald, King of *France* and Emperour, by whom (the more to honour his Family) the said *Boson* was created King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. During the Empire of *Otho* the first, the Earldom of *Luxemburg* was divided from it, and given to *Sigefrid*, one of the younger Sons of *Ricinus* the preceding Prince, and *Esperatus* was *Limbourg* also for another of them. The rest remained to *Godfrey* the eldest Son, who by

*Matilda*, a Daughter to *Otho* the second, was father of another *Godfrey*, who succeeded after *Charles* and *Otho*, the third Duke of *Lorrain*: that Dukedom being ever since enjoyed by the House of *Ardenne*, and there we shall hear farther of it. This said, and so much of the Story opened as concerns the general, we will proceed to a particular Survey of the modern *Belgium*, divided at the present into seventeen Provinces, besides the two great Bishopricks of *Liege* and *Cambray*, which being always under the protection of the *Belgic* Princes, partakers of their fortunes, either good or ill, and lying intermixt among their Estates, shall have their turn in the description of these Countries, divided generally

into	2 Bishopricks	1 <i>Liege</i> or <i>Luyck</i> , 2 <i>Cambray</i> .
	4 Dukedoms	1 <i>Limbourg</i> , 2 <i>Luxemburg</i> , 3 <i>Gelderland</i> , 4 <i>Brabant</i> .
	1 Marquissate	viz. of the Holy Empire.
	7 Earldoms,	1 <i>Flanders</i> , 2 <i>Artois</i> , 3 <i>Hainault</i> , 4 <i>Namur</i> , 5 <i>Zurph</i> , 6 <i>Holland</i> , 7 <i>Zeeland</i> .
	5 Baronies,	1 <i>West-Friesland</i> , 2 <i>Utrecht</i> , 3 <i>Over-Yssel</i> , 4 <i>Muslin</i> , 5 <i>Groning</i> .

Of these nineteen, two only did acknowledge the Sovereignty of the Kings of *France*, viz. *Flanders* and *Artois*; the Earls whereof were Homagers unto that Crown, but seldom did defend so low as to do their Homage, quitted at last to *Philip* the second King of *Spain* and his Successors, by King *Henry* the second of *France* in the Treaty at *Cambray*, Anno 1558. The rest were held originally of the *German* Emperour, and by *Maximilian* Emperour of *Germany*, and Regent of those Countries for his Son *Philip*, (who had a purpose to subject them to the Empire again) were made the tenth Circle of the Empire, called the *Circle of Burgundy*. But neither since nor before that time; would the Princes of the House of *Burgundy*, acknowledge any such subjection, but governed these Estates as absolute Princes, without relation to the Empire, or Subordination to the Emperour or Imperial Officers; never appearing at the Diets, nor contributing to any Taxes there imposed, not holding themselves bound by any Constitutions which were made therein. So that the several Relations being out of use, we must behold it at this time as it stands divided betwixt the *Spaniards* and the *States*: being, first with those *Spaniards* which belong to the *Spaniards*, the true Proprietary of the whole; and therein first with *Flanders*, as of most esteem.

#### 1. FLANDERS, and 2. ARTOIS.

These two I have thought fit to join together, because at first but one Estate; and though divided for a time; yet after five or six Descents again united, and have so continued ever since.

*FLANDERS* is bounded on the East with the *East* with *Hainault* and *Brabant*, on the West with the *English* or *German* Ocean, on the North with the Seas of *Zeeland* and a branch of the *Scheld*, and on the South with part of *Picardy* in *France*, interposing betwixt *Calise* and *Greenwich*. So called, as some say, a *Fland*, because it lieth open to the winds; as others say, from *Flanther*, the Son of *Bilestia*, Daughter of *Cleodion*, the second King of the *French*. Some fetch it from a Town of this name, situate in that part of the Country where now *Ardenburg* stands; so long since ruined, that very few except themselves could ever hear of it: and others (which I think

most

most probable) from *Flandrina* the Wife of *Lideric* the second, the first who governed in these parts by the name of *Forsfere*.

The Soil is indifferently fruitful in Corn and Pasture, the Air healthful, temperate and pleasant. The whole Country not in length above 90 miles, and in breadth but 60, and yet containing in that compass above thirty Cities, (for they reckon all Cities which be walled) and 1154 Villages, which stand so thick, (as needs they must in so narrow a compass) that the *Spaniards*, at their first coming in with King *Philip* the second, took the whole Province for one Town. Divided commonly into 1 *Imperial*, 2 *Gallican*, and 3 *Tenonican*; or 1 *Flanders Imperial*, 2 *Flanders Gallican*, and 3 *Flanders Flammengant*.

1. **FLANDERS FLAMMENGANT**, which is the greatest of the three, is bounded on the East with *Imperial Flanders* and the River *Scheld*, on the West with the *English* Ocean, on the North with the Seas of *Zeland*, and on the South with *Artois* and *Flanders Gallican*. The chief Towns of it, 1. *Caen*, in *Latine* called *Gandavum*, seven miles in compass, but taking the Suburbs, which are great and large, the whole circuit is ten miles at least. One of the greatest Cities in *Europe* for extent of ground but not so populous as many of a less capacity; there being much waste ground even within the Walls. Commonly seated on the banks of the *Scheld*, and the *Ley*, both which run through it, and make in it 26 Islands, joined together by 98 Bridges; and had not her many Seditions ruined her Beauties, she might have been the Queen of *Europe*. In this Town were born *John Duke of Lancaster*, commonly called *John Gant*, and *Charles* the fifth Emperor, and King of *Spain*; which last, to restrain the people from their old Seditions, which had been very troublesome to his Predecessors, (the *Gantois*) taking on them many times to rule and over rule their Princes) built a strong Citadel in the place where stood the Abbey of *Saint Bavon*. For Churches, Monasteries, and other places of Devotion, there were numbered in it 55, all of them answerable to the grandeur and renown of the City; the private Buildings being also very stately, if not majestic. But now it is much fallen from its former glories, the often Seditions of this people drawing upon themselves the vengeance of their angry Prince; and their Wealth much impaired by the long Wars, and the diversion of their Trading by the *Hollanders*, who command the Seas. 2. *Bruges*, or *Brugge*, more within the land. A Town that hath neither Port nor River, yet formerly of such Wealth, and the people in those times so willing to shew it, that Queen *Jean*, the Wife of *Philip* the Fair, having been there, and marked the pomp of the Women, complained that *She was not Queen alone*. The Town of four miles circuit within the Walls, wonderfully well peopled; the Buildings fair & sumptuous, (amongst which 60 Churches and Religious houses) the Streets large and straight, and a spacious Market place, from which the 6 principal Streets of the City do pass directly on to as many gates, which is very pleasant to behold. And though the Town hath neither Port nor River as before was said, yet was it anciently of so great Trading, that it was accounted one of the four Marc Towns of *Christendom*; flourishing chiefly by the benefit of the *English* Cloth, and sensibly decaying when the *English* Traffick was removed hence to *Antwerp*. It was called by *Earl Baldwin*, *Ann* 890, is distant three leagues from the Sea, and seated on a fair and deep Channel made by *Art*, and filled with the waters of all the adjoining Fountains and Rivulets; which artificial Channels are in these Countries very frequent, to the great enriching of the whole State. 3. *Ypres*, a Town feared very strongly, and almost im-

pregnable, on a small River so named: a reasonable rich Town, and well built, though most of the Houses be of Timber, very well served with Water, conveyed into every house almost in leaden Pipes, of which there is so great a number, that the Foundations of it seem to be laid in Lead. 4. *Bourbourg*, a fine strong Town, but little pertaining to the French King in the right of the house of *Bourbon*. 5. *Comines*, on the River *Lis*, or *Ley*, beautified with a strong Castle, and an excellent Library; but more in being the Birth-place of *Philip de Comines*, than notable States-man and Historian. 6. *Contra*, on the same River of *Ley*, one of the ancientest Towns in *Flanders*, yet still continueth well built of very great strength both by Art and Nature, famous for a great Overthrow given the French, *Ann* 1301, for which the Town was called of long time the *Sepulchre of the Frenchmen*. 7. *Ardenburg*, (called in times past *Rodemburg*) a pretty Town enriched every year with a great Horse-fair every June, and beautified with one of the goodliest Churches in all this Province: the principal Town of that part thereof which properly is called *Flanders*; that name being first given to the parts hereunto adjoining, as some conceive, and after by degrees communicated to the rest of the Country. 8. *Bicrollet*, both a Town and Island, and furnished with a good and commodious Haven; yet not to be mentioned in this place, but that the falling of Heings was here first invented by one *William Bachelme*, who died *Ann* 1397. 9. *Winockberg*, so called of a goodly Abbey built upon a Hill in the honor of St. *Winock* an English man of an holy life, sacked by the French, *Ann* 1518, but since re-edified, and made more beautiful than it was before. 10. *Greveling*, on the Sea-side, which, since the taking of *Calice* by the French, hath been made the strongest Town in the Low-Countries. 11. *Oudenard*, seated on the *Scheld*, a fair strong Town and of very great Traffick, especially for Tapestry and the finest Linens, which are here made: the Birth-place of *Margaret*, Dutchess of *Parma*, and Mother to *Alexander Prince of Parma*, the renowned Souldier.

The principal Ports of *Flanders*, being four in number are all of them seated in this part. 1. *Dunkirk*, a small but safe Port, belonging to the French King (as doth *Graveling* also) in the right of the House of *Vendism*, strongly garrisoned by the *Spaniards*, even in times of Peace, because of the importance of their situation both by Sea and Land. Most memorable in these days for that the people of it in the times of War so infested the Seas. 2. *Schuyt*, seated at the mouth of the Channel of *Bruges*, beautified with a very fair Haven able to contain 500 good Ships; and is now subject to the *States*, who enjoy any safe and large Harbors so near unto them. Over against it lieth the Isle of *Cassand*, famous for the birth of *George Cassander*, a moderate and learned Papist formerly as big again as it is at the present, having then a fair Town in it and many rich Villages, of which there is but one remaining, (of the same name with the Island) the rest all swallowed by the Sea. 3. *Nesport* a pretty Town, with a very strong Castle, built on a well frequented Haven, but not very safe, and therefore not much used by the men of War, nor made rich by Pirates, as *Dunkirk*. Near to this Town, *Ann* 1603, was fought the Field-battle betwixt the Archduke *Albert* and the *States*; the Victory, next under God being gotten for the *States* by the valour of the *English*, and the excellent Conduct of the *Vere*. 4. *Offend*, not walled till only, the Low-country Wars, and then but with a mud-wall only, and that not finished till the Arch-duke fate down before it: inasmuch as the Arch-dutchess *Isabel* is said to have sworn, that she would not shift her smock till the Town were

were taken; who, had he kept that rash Oath, had been very lowly; the Town (then garrisoned with *English*) holding out against the said Arch-duke a Siege of three years and as many months.

2. **IMPERIAL FLANDERS** so called, because it was long under the obedience of Emperours, is severed from *Brabant* by the River *Dender*, and from the *English* *Flanders* by the River *Scheld*, about *Oudenard*. It was sometimes called *Kyancant*, of a Castle of that name, destroyed by *Baldwin le Debonaire*, Earl of *Flanders*; and is now called the County of *Alost*, from the chief Town thereof so named, the Jurisdiction whereof, containing 170 Villages, extendeth as far as to the Walls of *Gant* and the Gates of *Oudenard*. The Town is strong, and indifferently fair, situate on the River *Dender*, most famous in these times for a Fair of Hops which is kept there yearly. 2. *Helf*, a walled Town, and the chief of the four Towns in the County of *Wass*; the other three being, 3. *Axle*. 4. *Munchant*. 5. *Affened*; of which little memorable, but that they were all taken from the Empire by the said *Baldwin le Debonaire* in the time of the Emperour *Henry* the Fourth. 6. *Dendermonde*, situate at the mouth of the *Dender* where it entereth into the *Scheld*, a strong Town both by Art and Nature, and much enriched by making Fustians, and a weekly Market of Flax. A distinct Seigniorie of it self, with many rich Villages belonging to it, incorporated into the Earldom of *Flanders* by the Marriage of *Earl Lewis de Malaine* with the Lady *Margaret* of *Brabant*, to which house it formerly appertained, 7. *Rupelmond*, on the mouth of the River *Rupel*, where it falleth into the *Scheld*: Famous in former time for an ancient Castle, in which were kept the Monuments and Records of the Earls of *Flanders*; more in late times for being the Birth-place of *Mercator*, that renowned Cosmographer. 8. *Mont-Gorbard*, called by the French *Gandemont*, a fine and pleasant Town seated on the *Dender*, where three last Towns, together with *Bornhem*, a Fair large Village, having some Jurisdiction on the parts adjoining, made up that Estate which was called the *Proper* or *Domaine* of *Flanders*, because not held of the Empire or the Kings of *France*, but in the Sovereignty alone of the Earls thereof.

3. **FLANDERS GALLICANT**, so called from the French language there spoken, lieth on the South of *Flanders Flammengant*; having *Hainault* on the East, *Artois* on the West, and the Country of *Cambray* on the South. The chief Towns of it are, 1. *Lille*, in *Latine*, *Insula*, so called from its Island-like situation, among Ponds, Pools, Muffles, dried up and made firm land by *Earl Baldwin de Barin*, who built the Town, *Ann* 1007, which afterwards was called by *Baldwin de Lisle*, his Son (born in this Town, and hence so named) *Ann* 1066. The Town made rich by Manufactures and resort of Merchants, accompanied the bell Town of Traffick next *Amsterdam* and *Antwerp*, in all the *Netherlands*. Not far from which are to be seen the Ruines of an ancient Castle called *Brug*, the Seat or Manor-house of the ancient *Forsfere*, who had the Government of this Country for the Kings of *France*. 2. *Douray*, (*Duarum* in *Latine*) a fair and strong Town seated on the *Scharp*, having many Fountains, good Buildings, and a great number of Churches, made an University by King *Philip* the second of *Spain*, who built therein a Seminary or College for *English* Fugitives. 3. *Orchier*, a pleasant Town, and well traded for the making of Serges, which, with the other two, make up the three Estates of this part of *Flanders*. 4. *Armentiers*, an unwalled Town, but of very great Trading, there being yearly 20000 pieces of Cloth hence to *Italy*, and thence to *Constantinople*, 5. *Tournay*, (or *Dornick*, as the Dutch call it) a great, rich, mighty and strong Town, seated on the *Scheld*, well built, and full of

stately and magnificent Churches and Religious Houses, and anciently honoured with a See Episcopal. A Town of great importance, and much contended for betwixt the *Flemmings* and the French; but finally fell unto the French, as the more puissant Prince; taken from them by *Henry* the eighth of *England*, *Ann* 1513, to whom the Citizens paid 100000 Ducats for their present Ranfome, restored by him unto the French, *Ann* 1518, for the sum of 600000 Crowns; and finally from them recovered by *Charles* the fifth, who restored it to the body of *Flanders*, from which it had been long dismembered; but so that it is governed as a State apart, and is called the *Seigniorie* of *Tournest*, having a goodly Jurisdiction over the County thereof about it. 6. *S. Amand*, in the Country of *Tournest*, pleasantly seated on the *Scharp*, in which is one of the richest Abbies in all *Flanders*; the Abbot thereof having the temporal and spiritual Jurisdiction over it and the parts about it. And so much for the Geography of the Earldom of *Flanders*, inhabited by the *Nervii* and *Morini* in the time of *Cesar*.

4. **ARTOIS** is bounded on the East with *Flanders Gallican* and the Country of *Cambray* on the South and West with *Picardy*, on the North with *Flanders Flammengant* and the River *Lis*. The name is derived from the *Archevates*, the old Inhabitants thereof: the Air exceeding temperate, and the Soil so fruitful, that it serveth as a Granary to a great part both of *Flanders* and *Brabant*.

On the West part hereof towards *France* lieth the Earldom of *S. Paul*, so called from the chief Town thereof, a goodly Seigniorie, and of great Jurisdiction and Revenue, containing besides many Villages, the good Town of *Pern*, a walled Town, and of great importance. The Earls hereof were lineally derived from *Walteran*, brother of *Henry* the 7. Emperour of *Germany* and Earl of *Luxemburg*; the last of which was *Lewis* of *Luxemburg*, made Constable of *France* by King *Lewis* the eleventh, with whom, as also with *Edward* the 4. of *England*, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, he paid so many cross tricks, that having long deluded them all, and kept them in a continual jealousy of one another, he was at last by Duke *Charles* taken and beheaded. After whose death this goodly Seigniorie fell to the House of *Vendisme* in *France*, by the Marriage of *Francis* Earl of *Vendisme* with *Mary* the Daughter of this *Lewis*, to whom it was adjudged by the power and favour of the French King's, the Heirs-males being made incapable of Succession in it by the Attainder and Confiscation of the said laid Earl. By means whereof the House of *Vendisme* was intitled to many fair Estates in *Artois*, *Flanders*, *Hainault*, and much goods Lands in *France*, which they were possessed of, *Francis* the 2. Son of that *Francis*, and *Francis* the only Son of this being intitled, whilst they lived, Earl of *S. Paul*, and Dukes of *Tureville*.

The Arms of these Earls were *Argent*, a Lion Gules armed and crowned Or, his tail forked of the second.

As for the residue of *Artois*, the Towns of most importance in it are, 1. *Arras*, in *Latine* *Atrebatum civitas*, the chief City of the *Archevates* the old Inhabitants hereof in the time of *Cesar*, and still the chief City of this Province; a large, populous and well-fortified City, anciently honoured with a See Episcopal, and stocked with an industrious people, the first makers of the Cloth of *Artois*, which took name from hence: divided into two distinct Towns, both of them walled, and called by two several names; the lesser called *La Cite*, subject to the Bishop, beautified with a Fair and stately Cathedral Church, and a Library containing many excellent Manuscripts; the lesser called *La Ville*, subject to the Prince, having large Streets, and a rich Monastery of the yearly Revenue of 20000 crowns. By *Proseley* it is called *Regnum*, seated within a bow-shot of the River

River *Scarp*, and heretofore the Metropolitan Town of *Flanders*, till *Artois* was dismembered from it; since which time the chief City of this Province, as before is said. 2. *S. Omar*, a fair Town, and well peopled, seated upon the River *Aa*, some eight Dutch miles from the Ocean; so called from *S. Omar*, or *Adomarus*, Bishop of the *Morins*; who built a Monastery in this place, from which grew the Town, the second of esteem and rank in all the Country. Near to it is a goodly Lake of fresh water, in which are many little Islands affording good Pasturage for Cattel: of which *Lewis Guicciardin* reporteth, that by fastning a Cord unto the bulwarks which grow in them, a man may draw them which way he will; and that under them there are found great numbers of Fishes, who hid themselves there for shelter against the Weather. 3. *Bethune*, a strong Town; and seated amongst excellent Pastures, of which the people make great plenty of the best Cheese: which, with the Territory hereof, fell to *Guy of Damiette*, Earl of *Flanders*, in right of *Maud* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Daniel* the Lord of this Town, honoured in that regard with the birth of their eldest Son, who from this place had the name of *Robert de Bethune*. 4. *Ayres*, on the *Lis*, a strong Town, with a Castle of great Antiquity. 5. *Bapaume*, a little, but well Fortified Town; and yet more strong, because it cannot be besieged for want of fresh water, which is not to be had within three leagues of it. 6. *Remy*, an unvalleyed Town, but Fenced with a very strong Castle, besieged by the *French*, Anno 1554, but being overcome in a few Days by *Charles* the fifth, they were fain to raise a Siege and go home again. 7. *Hesdin*, on the confluence of two little Rivers, *Blangis* and *Canche*; a Frontier-town on the edge of *France*, one of the strongest and most defensible places of all the *Netherlands*, built by *Charles* the fifth out of the ruins of old *Hesdin*, which having taken from the *French*, he commanded it to be razed as no longer servicable, and raised this Town in stead thereof, somewhat nearer *France*. 8. *Terwin*, or *Tervan*, the *Tervan* of *Ptolemy*, and *Civitas Morinorum* of *Antoninus*, a Frontier-town, held for a long time by the *French*, by whom thought impregnable, till taken by King *Henry* the eighth, Anno 1513, they changed their opinion. A Siege not only memorable for the issue of it, but for two other matters of great moment. The one, that the Emperor *Maximilian* came and served in person under the colours of *S. George*, with the *English* Cross upon his breast: the other, that the *French* intending to victual the Town, had so great an overthrow, that had the *English* followed their Fortune, they had opened a fair way to have made themselves masters of all *France*; the *French* King being so astonished at the news hereof, that he prepared to fly into *Bretaign*. But the *English* more minded the Spoils and riches of *Terwin*, than the sequel of an absolute Victory, *Et frui maluerunt victoria, quam uti*, as the Historian said of *Hannibal*. It is now after many changes of Fortunes in the hands of the *French*, and by some reckoned and accounted of as part of *Picardy*. There are, besides these, two Battered Towns more, that is to say, *Lillers*, *Lenz*, and *La Walles*, of which little memorable; and to the number of 854 Villages.

These Countries of *Flanders* and *Artois* were anciently, if not a part, (as the parts hereof about *Tourney* met undoubtedly were) yet much of the same nature with the great forest of *Ardenne*, nothing but a continual waste of Woods and Defarts, till the Conquest of it by the *French*; the Sea-coasts being then unpeopled for fear of the *Danes*, who by their frequent Piracies did much vex those Shores and the inland Countries meanly planted, for want of Corn and other necessaries for the life of man: subject in

part to the great Princesses of *Ardenne*, till the discomfiture of *Earl Brunepluch* by *Dagobert* sole King of the *French*, by whom about the year 621 this wild Country, extending then as far as the River *Somme*, and comprehending besides *Artois* and *Flanders*, a good part of *Picardy*, was given unto one *Lideric de Buque* with the title of *Forrester*, to be held under the Sovereign of that Crown. In whose posterity it continued with the title of *Forrester* till the time of *Baldwin* the first, the son of *Odoacer*, the seventh of the *Forresters*, whose names occur upon record; there being a long intermission of their names and memories during the Ravagements and Depredations of the *Danes* and *Normans*. This *Baldwin* having first ravished, and afterwards married, *Judith*, Sister to *Charles* the Bald, King of *France* and Emperor, was by him created Earl of *Flanders*, the Sovereignty thereof reserved as before it was: in whose Issue it remained intire, till *Philip* the first Earl of that name gave unto *Philip Augustus*, King of *France*, the Country of *Artois*, with the Earldom or Country of *Veromandois*, part of *Picardy*, in Marriage with *Isabel* his Niece, Daughter of *Baldwin* Earl of *Hainault*. By *Lewis* the eighth, Son and Successor of *Philip Augustus*, *Artois* was given in Portion to his youngest Son *Robert*, made the first Earl of *Artois* by King *Lewis* the 9. An. 1234. And by the Marriage of *Lewis* the first of *Flanders* with *Margaret* the Heir of *Artois* and of the Earldom of *Burgundy*, both these Estates were added unto this *Flanders*, now made far mightier than before. And yet before this great accession of estate it was accounted the prime Earldom, as *Milane* was the prime Dukedom of *Europe*: these Earls being privileged to write themselves *Dei gratia*, all others *Dei clemencia* only; and *Flanders* being now grown abroad to so great esteem, that it was generally used for all the *Netherlands*. Finally, the Marriage of *Margaret*, Daughter of *Lewis de Malin*, Earl of *Flanders*, to *Philip* the Hardy, Duke of *Burgundy*, this great Estate became united to that House, and afterwards was conveyed to that of *Austria*, as shall be seen hereafter in due time and place. In the mean season us take a brief survey of

#### The Earls of FLANDERS and ARTOIS.

- 864 1. *Baldwin*, the first Earl of *Flanders*.
- 879 2. *Baldwin* II.
- 918 3. *Arnulph*, Son of *Baldwin* the 2.
- 960 4. *Baldwin* III. Son of *Arnulph*.
- 964 5. *Arnulph* II. Son of *Baldwin* the 3.
- 988 6. *Baldwin* IV. Son of *Arnulph*.
- 1029 7. *Baldwin* V.
- 1067 8. *Baldwin* VI. Earl of *Hainault*.
- 1070 9. *Arnulph* III. Earl of *Hainault*.
- 1071 10. *Robert*, Son of *Baldwin* the 5. and Brother of *Baldwin* the 6.
- 1093 11. *Robert* II. Son of *Robert* the 1.
- 1114 12. *Baldwin* VII.
- 1118 13. *Charles*, Son of *Countess* King of *Denmark*, and *Adelice* the Daughter of *Robert* the 1.
- 1127 14. *William*, Son of *Robert*, the Son of *William* the Bastard, Duke of *Normandy*, and of *Maud* his Wife, Daughter of *Baldwin* the 5.
- 1132 15. *Theodorick* of *Elfsa*, Nephew of *Robert* the 1. by his Daughter *Heltrude*.
- 1169 16. *Philip* of *Elfsa*, Son of *Theodorick*.
- 1191 17. *Baldwin* VIII. Earl of *Hainault*, succeeded in right of *Margaret* his Wife, Daughter of *Theodorick*, and Sister of *Philip*.
- 1199 18. *Baldwin* IX. Earl of *Flanders* and *Hainault*, and Emperor of *Constantinople*.

#### 3. HAINAULT.

- 1205 19. *Joan*, eldest Daughter of *Baldwin* the Emperor, first married to *Ferdinand*, Son of *Sancho* King of *Portugal*, and after to *Thomas* the 3d Son of *Thomas*, Earl of *Savoy*; both in her right called Earls of *Flanders*.
- 1244 20. *Margaret*, Sister of *Joan*, and 2d Daughter of the Emperor *Baldwin*, Widow of *William* of *Damiette*, governed the Estate of *Flanders* as long as she lived, admitting *William* her eldest Son to the Title of Earl, which he continued till his death (being many years before his Mother's) Anno 1255.
- 1278 21. *Guy of Amplierre*, the second Son of *Margaret*, admitted to the Title of Earl on the death of his Brother, and to the Estate it self on the death of his Mother.
- 1304 22. *Robert* III. firmated of *Bethune*, who married *Toland*, Heir of *Odo* of *Bourgoigne*, Earl of *Nevers*, by whom he had a Son called *Lewis*, who married *Mary* Daughter and Heir of *James* Earl of *Rebel*.
- 1323 23. *Lewis*, Son of *Lewis*, and Grand-son of *Robert* the 3. in right of his Mother Earl of *Rebel*, in right of his Grandmother, Earl of *Nevers*, and of *Flanders* in right of his Father and Grandfather.
- 1347 24. *Lewis de Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*, *Nevers* and *Rebel*, in right of his Father, and of *Artois* and of *Burgundy*, in right of his Mother, whom he succeeded at her death, but the time I find not.
- 1369 25. *Philip* II. firmated the Hardy, Duke of *Burgundy*, succeeded in the Earldoms of *Flanders*, *Artois*, &c. in right of *Margaret* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Lewis de Malain*, whom he married solemnly at *Gannet*, An. 1369. Of which *Philip* and his Successors in these Estates we shall hereafter speak in a place more proper.

#### The Earls of ARTOIS.

- 1214 1. *Robert* of *France*, Grand-son of *Philip Augustus*, and *Isabel* the Daughter of *Baldwin* the 8th, made the first Earl by *Lewis* the 9th.
- 1245 2. *Robert* II. Son of *Robert*.
- 1302 3. *Obeline*, Heir of *Burgundy*, succeeded in right of *Maud* his Wife, the Daughter of *Robert* the 2.
- 1315 4. *Philip* the Long, King of *France*, Earl of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, in right of *Joan* his Wife, the Daughter and Heir of *Maud* and *Orbo*, or *Orbiline*.
- 1331 5. *Endes*, Duke of *Burgundy*, Earl of *Burgundy* and *Artois* in right of *Joan* his Wife, the eldest Daughter of *Philip*.
- 1361 6. *Philip*, the only Son of *Endes*, in right of his Mother, Earl of *Artois*, and so called in his Father's life time.
- 1349 7. *Philip* III. Son of *Philip* II. and Nephew of *Endes*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, and Earl of *Artois*, who died young and without issue, Anno 1361.
- 1361 8. *Margaret*, Daughter of *Philip* of *France*, and of *Joan* Countess of *Artois* and *Burgundy*, married to *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, &c. succeeded *Philip* 3. (being then a Widow) in the Earldoms of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, Anno 1361.

The Arms of *Flanders* are Or, a Lion Sable, langued and armed Gules. Those of *Artois* being Semé of Flower-de-Luces Or, in a field Azure, a File of three Labels Gules charged with as many Castles of the first.

**HAINAULT** is bounded on the East with *Namur*, on the West with *Flanders*, on the North with *Brabant*, on the South with *Picardy* and *Champaigne* in *France*. It was anciently called *Salutis Carvenerius*, from the abundance of *Charcoal* made in the Woods and Forests of it; by some Writers of the middle times, the *Lower Picardy*; by the *Latine* Writers of these times called *Hannonia*. It seemeth to have taken this new name from the River *Haine*, or *Hania*, which passeth through it, and the word *Holt*, signifying a Wood, as being over-spread in a manner with the Forests of *Normault*, *St. Amant de Eignand*, and that of *Poodberg*. and then *Hainault* will be quasi *Haine holt*, i. e. a Country of Woods and Forests on the River *Haine*. Thus called originally by the *French* (as the word importeth) but by the *Dutch* best known by the name of *Hagenow*, i. e. the Country bordering on the *Haine*, as the name signifieth in that language.

The length thereof is 60 miles, 48 the breadth; comprehending in that compass 950 Villages, and 24 Towns; in and amongst which there is reckoned one Principate, 10 Earldoms, 12 Peermors or *Pairies*, 2 Baronies, 26 Abbeyes, one Lord Marthall, (besides other Officers of the Prince) descending by inheritance to the Lords of this Province.

The Air hereof is very good, and the Soil Fruitful, by reason the Country is watered with so many Rivers, as the *Scheld*, the *Sambre*, the *Dender*, and several lesser Streams, besides divers Lakes, Marshes, Ponds and Pools, which do much enrich it, the Country abounding in moist places with fresh Meadows and sweet Pastures, good Fruits, and profitable Trees, but especially with great plenty of Corn. There are also in some parts of it notable Mines of Iron and Lead, and excellent Quarries of the best Stone, fit for all kind of Buildings.

The principal of these Towns are, 1. *Mons*, situate at the confluence of *Haine* and a little River called *Trulle*, which gives a good natural strength unto it; fortified besides with a very strong Wall, three large deep Ditches, and an ancient Castle. The Town is great, beautiful and rich, adorned with sumptuous buildings, both private and publick, and replenished with wealthy Merchants and men of Trade; the principal of all the Province, erected into an Earldom by *Charles* the Great, and sometimes used for the style of Earls of *Hainault*. In this Town is the noble Nunnery of *S.V. aldrake*, once a Dutche of *Lorraine*, the Nuns whereof are to be Ladies and Gentlewomen of Noble Families, in the morning apparelled in white, like Nuns, in the afternoons according to their Birth and Qualities, who when they please may leave the Cloister and be married. The Abbess hath Jurisdiction both in the Town and Country about it, and anciently did put the Earls of *Hainault* into possession of the State.

Another Nunnery like this (but not of such large Revenues) there is at 2. *Mechingen* on the *Sambre*, a good Town of Merchandise, 3. *Valechinnes*, seated on the *Scheld*, and a little River called *Ruette*, which make not only in it many pleasant Isles, but pass almost under every man's house to the great benefit and delight of the place and people. The site hereof is so strong by Nature (besides the Fortifications of Art) that on the one side it may be easily made unapproachable by water, and on the other side is so defended by Hills, that it can hardly be besieged but by three Armies at once. A goodly, large and beautiful Town, especially for publick Building: the Chief whereof are the Church of our Lady, built after the ancient manner



manner of Architecture, with sumptuous Arches and goodly Pillars of Marble and Porphyry, the Earl's Palace, and the Town-hall, Buildings of great magnificence and excellent workmanship. The Birth-place of Henry the 2th, Emperour of Germany, of Mary Daughter of Charles the Warlike, and of *Froissart* the great French Historian. Finally a Town which, for the eminence thereof, is governed as a State apart by itself, having under the Jurisdiction of it 3 Towns, 132 Villages, which on occasion of Appeal resort not to the Provincial Council at *Monti*, but the great Council at *Mechlin*. 4. *Chimay*, upon the River *Blanche*, near a pleasant Forc, which gives the title of a Prince to the eldest Son of the Duke of *Aerschot*, one of the principal Lords of *Brabant*, who hath here a very good Palace. 5. *Halle*, seated on the *Sinne*, which runs through it, a place of great credit amongst the Papists, by reason of an Image of the blessed Virgin famed for many Miracles. Of which see *Lippin* on this Subject. 6. *Beauvais* or *Bavay*, an old Town, at a Pillar whereof begin all the ways leading to *France*, made of Pavestones by *Brumhault*, the Wife of *Sigbert* King of *Metz*, and *Anfrasia*, who with *Frideric* the Wife of *Chilperick*, and *Katharine Medice*, the Wife of *Henry* the 2d, are said to be the three *Furies* of *France*. 7. *Landrevic*, on the River *Sambre*, famous for the notable resistance which it made to *Charles* the 5th, 1543. 8. *Marienburg*, built by *Mary Queen of Hungary*, Governors here for the said *Charles*, An. 1524, to serve as a Bulwark against *France*, on which it fronteth. 9. *Philip-Ville*, built and well fortified for the same reason by *K. Philip* the 2d. 10. *Bonchain*, upon the *Scheld*, in the County of *Offstrand*, which County is the Title of the first Son of *Hainault*: and by that name *William* the eldest Son of *Albert Earl of Hainault* and *Holland*, was admitted Knight of the Garter by *King Richard* the 2d. 11. *Conde*, a good little Town seated on the *Scheld*, the moiety whereof belonged heretofore to the House of *Montpensier* in *France*, as 12. *Enghein*, a Town of great Trade for Tappetry to the House of *Vendoupe*: from whence the Princes of *Conde*, and Dukes of *Enghein* do derive their Titles. 13. *Beaumont*, upon the knap of a goodly Hill, whence it hath the name; belonging at the present to the Dukes of *Aerschot*, but anciently the Partage of the second Son of the Earls of *Hainault*. 14. *Bini*, or *Binche*, on a branch of the River *Hain*, one of the Joindre Towns of the Countesses of *Hainault*, much beautified and made a place of pleasures by *Mary Queen of Hungary*, to whom it was given by *Charles* the fifth, (commonly called the *Queen's Paradise*) but burnt and utterly destroyed by the French, An. 1544. 15. *Aisne*, seated on both sides of the *Dender*, a little, but a pleasant and wealthy Town; here being held the Staple of Linen for all this Country, and the Cloth here fold amounting to 200000 Crowns per annum.

As for the History of *Hainault*, the ancient Inhabitants thereof were the *Nervi*, the most valiant and most potent people of all the *Gauls*, possessed not only of this Province, but of the whole Earldom of *Namur*, and some part of *Flanders*; able to bring, and de facto did bring into the Field, when the *Belgæ* mustered up their united forces against *Julius Cæsar*, no fewer than 50000 fighting men. Wone from the *Romans* by the French, they became a part of the great Earldom of *Ardeine*, continuing so till the death of *Barnolph*, discomfited and slain in battle by *Dagobert* sole King of the French, whom his Father in his life-time had made Duke of *Ardeine*, and designed unto the conquest of it. But the fury of the War being over, the parts of *Flanders* and *Brabant* which belonged unto it, offered upon other Houses, and the rest allotted out amongst his Children, *Alberic*, firnamed the *Orphelein*, one of his younger Sons, was by *Sigbert* King of *Metz* or

*Austrasia*, enfeofed of this Country, by the name and Title of Earl of *Hainault*. Twice this Estate was added or united to that of *Flanders*. 1. In the person of *Baldwin* 5. Earl of *Flanders*, succeeding hereunto in right of *Richild* his Wife, Daughter of *Regnier* the 3d. 2. By the Marriage of *Baldwin* the 6th of *Hainault* with *Margaret* Countess of *Flanders*, Sister and Heir of *Philip* of *Elzefs*, Earl of *Flanders*. But being divided the first time by the usurpation of *Flanders*, wrested from *Arnulph* the 3d, by his Uncle *Robert*, and the second time by the intrusion of *John de Avesnes*, natural Son of *Margaret* the second Daughter of the Emperour *Baldwin*, unto the Estate and Earldom of *Hainault*: it was finally annexed to *Holland* by the Marriage of *John de Avesnes* to *Adelise* or *Aleide*, Daughter and (at the last) Heir of *Florence* the 4th, Earl of *Holland*, *Zeeland*, &c. From which it never was divided, till they were both incorporated into that of *Burgundy*.

#### The Earls of HAINAULT.

1. *Alberic*, one of the younger Sons of *Brumhault* Earl of *Ardeine*.
2. *Wautier*, Son of *Alberic*.
3. *Wautier* II. Son of *Wautier* the first.
4. *Wautier* III. Son of *Wautier* the second.
5. *Albon*, in right of his Wife, eldest Daughter of *Wautier* the third.
6. *Albon* II. Son of the said *Albon* by that Wife.
7. *Manassier*, Son of *Albon* the second.
8. *Regnier*, Son of *Manassier*.
9. *Regnier* II. Son of *Regnier* the first.
10. *Regnier* III. Son of *Regnier* the second.
11. *Baldwin* V. of *Flanders*, and the first of that name in *Hainault*, succeeded in right of *Richild* his Wife, the sole Daughter to *Regnier* the third.
12. *Arnulph*, Son of *Baldwin* and *Richild*, deposed of his Estate and life by his Uncle *Robert*, who seized on the Earldom of *Flanders*.
13. *Baldwin* II. Brother of *Arnulph*, succeeded in *Hainault*.
14. *Baldwin* III. Son of *Baldwin* the second.
15. *Baldwin* IV. Son of *Baldwin* the third.
16. *Baldwin* V. Son of *Baldwin* the fourth.
17. *Baldwin* VI. of *Hainault*, Son of *Baldwin* the fifth, and the eighth of that name in *Flanders*, into which also he succeeded in right of *Margaret* his Wife, Sister and Heir of *Philip* of *Elzefs*, Earl of *Flanders*.
18. *Baldwin* VIII. of *Hainault*, and 9. of *Flanders*, Emperour of *Constantinople*.
19. *Joan* Countess of *Hainault* and *Flanders*, first married to *Ferdinand* of *Portugal*, and then to *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy*.
20. *Margaret* the younger Sister of *Joan*, married to *William* of *Bourbon* Lord of *Dampierre*, by whom she had *William* and *Guy* both Earls of *Flanders*.
21. *John de Avesnes*, base Son of *Margaret*, begot before her marriage by *Bischoff* her Guardian the Prior of *St. Peters* in *L'Isle*, by force and fraud extorted *Hainault* from his Brethren born in lawful wedlock, and married *Aleide* Daughter and Heir of *Florence* the 4th, Earl of *Holland*; whose Successors in both Estate we shall meet with there, and amongst them with *William* the 2. Father of *Queen Philippa*, Wife of *Edward* the 3d, one of the most considerable of all the number.

The Arms hereof are quarterly *Flanders* and *Holland*.  
4. The

#### 4. The Bishoprick of CAMBRAY.

Southward from *Hainault* lieth the Bishoprick of *CAMBRAY*, continuing a goodly Town and Territory, reckoned of anciently as a part of *Hainault*, now a State distinct, rather confederate with the Princes of the *Netherlands*, than subject to them.

The principal City hereof is *Cambray*, (called in *Latin* *Cameracum*) seated on both sides of the River *Scheld*, a fair, goodly and mighty City, full of people, many of which are rich Merchants, but all of them industrious, especially in making such fine linen Cloth from hence called *Cameras*, or *Cambricks*. The private Buildings are very fair, but the publick much fairer, especially the Monasteries and other Churches, of which the most remarkable is that of our Lady, an ancient and sumptuous Fabric and the See Episcopal. From whence the Country and Territory hereunto adjoining is called *Cambresis*, in which are divers Villages and places of importance. The chief of which are, 1. *Chastell Cambresis*, six leagues from the City, remarkable for the Treaty held there betwixt *France* and *Spain*, Anno 1559, in which a Peace was happily settled amongst all the chief Princes of Christendom, after a long and tedious War between those Kings and the Confederates of each; and before that, for the Confederacy there made by the said King of *France* and *Spain*, the Emperour, the Pope, and many of the Princes of *Italy*, against the *Scignoury of Venice*, Anno. 1568, called the *League of Cambray*. 2. *Avesnes* le sec, (so called to distinguish it from *Avesnes* in *Hainault*) near which are digged excellent white Stones for building, little inferior unto Marble.

This Bishoprick was Founded in the person of *S. Disgenet*, a *Gracian* born, An. 390, or thereabouts: whose Successors in tract of time became so potent, that at the last the Bishop hereof became both the Lord Spiritual and temporal of the Town and Territory, honoured with the title of a Duke, and Prince of the Empire, and was in the end made an Archbishop by Pope *Paul* the Fourth, An. 1562. And as for the City of *Cambray*, it was made Imperial by the German Emperours afterwards by *Henry* the fifth, given in protection to *Robert* of *Jernusalem*, Earl of *Flanders* and finally settled and confirmed on all his Successors by the Emperour *Frederick*, An. 1164. Which notwithstanding, the French finding it convenient for them, divers times possessed it: but governing with too great indulgence, they were driven out by the people in the time of *Leu* the 11th, and the Town yielded voluntarily unto *Maximilian*, Governour of these Countries for his Son *Philip*. *Charles* the fifth, in the year 1543, built a strong Citadel in it, pretending that he did it for defence of the Town against the French, but indeed to keep it for himself. After this it was taken by the Duke of *Alençon*, (Brother of *Henry* the 3. of *France*) then Governour of the *Netherlands*, An. 1582, but regained not long after by the *Spaniards*, the Inhabitants giving up the Town for want of victuals. Since that continually possessed by the *Spaniards*, and by them strongly garrisoned; but so, that the people still enjoy their ancient Privileges, and are governed by their own Laws and Bishops, as in former times.

#### 5. NAMUR.

The Ealdom of *NAMUR* hath on the East *Hainault*, on the West the Bishoprick of *Liege*, on the North *Brabant*, and on the South *Luxemburg*; so called from *Namur* the chief Town of it; *Namurcum* and *Namurensis Comitatus* in our *Latin* Writers. The Country is very small, containing only 182 Villages,

and four walled Towns, but plentiful of all commodities, and replenished with a loyal and industrious people. Particularly the Air hereof is very wholesome; the Country watered with many Rivers and plentiful Brooks (amongst which the *Sambre* and the *Mees*) which, besides the benefit of Portage, yield great plenty of Fish. The Hills, whereof it hath not many, are clothed with Woods, abounding with all kind of Fowl and venison; the Vallies eminently fruitful of all sorts of Grain, rich Mines of Lead, Quarries of Marble of all colours, as also of Porphyre or Jasper, and great plenty of Coal. In Mines of Iron to abound, and that continually hammered by a painful people, that *Vulcan* Forge may seem to be reformed to the world again and heated here; which as it makes the people wealthy, so it keeps them from idleness. And as for the Nobility they are generally valiant, given to all military exercises fit for their degrees, and very affectionate to their Princes, the greatest virtue of a Subject.

Walled Towns it hath but four, as before was said; that is to say, 1. *Namur*, the chief of all the Province, where residdeth the Council for the Country, from which lieth no Appeals but to *Mechlin* only. Seated it is between two Hills on both sides of the *Sambre*, which doth there fall into the *Meuse*. The City is rich, inhabited for the most part by the Nobility, defended with a strong Castle, and beautified with a fair Cathedral, Founded here in the Church of *S. Albin*, Anno 1559. Not far off in the Villages of *Ardeine* and *Mosnier* are two Nunneries of Ladies, like those of *Monti* and *Maubuge*, spoken of in *Hainault*. 2. *Boisvies*, upon the *Meuse*, sacked by the French, Anno 1554, since repaired and fortified. 3. *Charlemont*, a small Town, but of most exact Fortifications, built by *Charles* the fifth, An. 1555, to oppose the French, who had then possessed themselves of *Marienburg*, a Town of *Hainault*, 4. *Valencourt*, a little Town, but standing in a goodly and fruitful Country. Of the Villages the chief is *Dome*, seated on the *Meuse* or *Mees*, fortified with a strong Castle, and honoured with the title of Viscountie, 2. *Floren*, 3. *Vaschie*, and 4. *Sauson*, of much beauty and greatness.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Country were a part of the *Nervi*. It was first made an Earldom by some of the Descendents of the Sons of *Clodion*, the second King of the French, who being dispossessed of their Father's Kingdom by *Mercovius*, the Master of his Horse, (to whom he had committed the Guardianship or Tutition of them) were forced to betake themselves to the most defensible places of the great Forest of *Ardeine* and the parts adjoining, where they Founded the great Earldoms, of *Ardeine* and *Moselle*, as before is said, divided in succeeding times into many parcels, of which this is one. By what and how many Earls this Earldom was possessed, I am yet to learn, the Estate being small, and consequently the Princes of it not much considerable. They were allied to the Royal House of *France*, by the Marriage of *Albert* Earl hereof with *Irmingarde* Daughter of *Charles* of *France*, the first Duke of *Lorraine*; and after unto the House of *Flanders*, by the Marriage of *N.* the Daughter and Heir of *Peter*, the last Earl of that race, to *Henry* the Second, Son of *Baldwin* the eighth of *Flanders*, and Brother of *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, and the first Emperour of the *Latins* in *Constantinople*, whom he succeeded in that Empire. After whose death it came by *Toland*, his Daughter, to *Peter* Earl of *Avesner*, who succeeded also in the Empire, and after his decease to *Philip* his younger Son. But he deceasing without Issue, and *Robert* his elder Brother reigning in *Constantinople*, it was seized on by *Philip* the Brother of *Henry*, who, to assure himself thereof, took to Wife *Mary* Daughter of *Philip Augustus* King of *France*, by a Niece or

or Cousin of this Philip it was conveyed in Marriage to Henry Earl of Luxemburg, (the Father by a former Wife of Henry the seventh, Emperor and Earl of Luxemburg) and finally brought back again to the House of Flanders, by the Marriage of Guy of Dampierre Earl of Flanders, with Isabel Daughter of that Henry by the Heir of Namur, and in his Issue it continued (for ought I can find) till it was swallowed up with the rest of the Belgick Provinces by the House of Burgundy. So that the highest we can go in search of the Earls of Namur, is to the time of Hugh Capet and Charles of Lorraine, which was 540 years after the coming in of the Sons of Clodion. From which time downwards the Succession is confused and broken, and towards the latter end discontinued for 140 years. Such as are left upon Record I have drawn together (not without much trouble) in as good order as I could, and here present them in the ensuing Catalogue of

#### The Earls of NAMUR.

1. *Albert*, the Co-temporary of Hugh Capet, spoken of before.
2. *Godfrey*, the Son of *Albert*, and Father of *Alice* Wife of *Baldwin* the fifth of *Hainault*, and Mother of *Baldwin* the sixth of *Hainault*, and the eighth of *Flanders*.
3. *Peter* the Son or Brother of *Godfrey*.
4. *Henry* the second, Son of *Baldwin* the eighth of *Flanders*, in right of *N.* his Wife, the Heir of *Peter*, Emp. of *Constantinople*, also on the death of *Baldwin* the 9th his elder Brother.
1216. 5. *Peter II.* Son-in-Law of *Henry* Emperor of *Constantinople*, and Earl of *Namur*.
6. 7. *Philip*, the younger Son of *Peter*, and *John* the elder Brother of *Henry*, both taking to themselves the title of Earl of *Namur*, the one at *Constantinople*, the other in the *Netherlands*, and both deceasing without Issue.
8. *Philip II.* Brother of *John* and *Henry* without Issue also.
9. *John I.* surnamed of *Dampierre*, the third Son of *William* of *Dampierre* by *Margaret* Countess of *Flanders*, Daughter and Heir of the Emperor *Baldwin*, succeeding by the gift of his Mother, challenging the disposing of it as next Heir of *Philip* the second, or in the right paramount of the Earldom of *Flanders*, enjoyed upon a better Title by
10. *Guy* of *Dampierre*, Earl of *Flanders*, and elder Brother of *John* the second, in right of *Isabel* his Wife, Daughter of *Henry* Earl of *Luxemburg* by his Heir of *Namur*; but I neither find her Name nor Parents.
11. *John III.* Son of *Guy* and *Isabel*.
12. *John IV.* Son of *Guy*, by a former Wife, the Brother of *John* the third by the whole blood being absent or unfriended, and so put beside.
13. *Guy II.* the Brother of *John* the Fourth by the same Venter.
14. *John V.* Son of *Guy* the second, who in the year 1307, married a Niece of *Lewis* the ninth of *France*, by *Robert* Earl of *Clermont* a younger Son.
15. *John VI.* who in the year 1429, sold his Estate to Duke *Philip* the Good to be enjoyed by him on the death of *Theodore*, the next Heir hereof, infirm, and (as it seems) without hope of Children.
16. *Theodore*, of *Theodorick*, the last Earl of *Namur*, after whose Death Duke *Philip* entered on this

Earldom by the former Contract, and as the next Heir of the House of *Flanders* it continuing ever since into his Posterity.

The Arms hereof are Or, a Lion Sable, bruiiled with a Bend Gules.

#### 9. LUXEMBURG.

LUXEMBURG is bounded on the East with the *Moselle* and the Land of *Triers*, on the West with the *Meuse* or *Mees* and a branch of the Forest of *Ardenne*, on the North with *Luskyland*, *Namur*, and a part of *Hainault*, and on the South with the Dutchie of *Lorraine*; so called from the Castle near the Town of *Luxemburg*, selected by *Sigefride* the first Earl hereof for his Seat and Residence.

The whole is divided into parts: the Eastern part being called *Favonne*, fruitful of Corn, and yielding with some Wines, some Mines, and many excellent Quarries of goodly Stone, the Western called the *Ardenne*, a remainder of that spacious Forest, which sometimes overshadowed all this Country, barren of Corn, but very plentiful of Venison, and of Fowl good store.

The people of this Country are not all of one Language: those nearer *Germany*, as in *Luxemburg*, *Arles*, *Rodemark*, *Theowille*, and the rest on that side speaking the *Dutch*, as those of *Montmedy*, *Marville*, *Dampville*, with the rest bordering on *France*, do corrupt or broken *French*, in which regard the Pleadings held before the Council residing in *Luxemburg* are made in both Languages, that so they may be understood by all that be business there. But the Nobility and Gentry (of which there is more in this Province than in any other of the Seventeen) speak both Tongues perfectly. A broad men full of *Ve* true, Courtesy, and Hospitality towards one another, and of great Truth and Faith to their Prince: but reckoned for the worst Landlords in all these Countries; governing their Subjects and Tenants like the Peasants of *France*, contrary to the use and Liberties of the rest of the *Netherlands*. Both sorts, as well the Nobility as the Commons, hate both Law and Lawyers, and for the most part end their Controversies amongst themselves without any Process.

The whole Country containeth in compass about 70 leagues, or 200 Italian miles, in which are comprehended 23 walled Towns, and 1168 Burroughs and Villages. The principal of which are, 1. *Luxemburg* or *Luceburg*, built in the place where anciently stood the *Augusta Primadivorum* of *Ptolemy*; and took this new name quasi *Luci burgum*, from the Image of the Sun there worshipped; seated on the *Alfuntium*, or *Alze*, which runneth through it, large and of a strong situation, but not very well built, nor yet recovered of the spoils which the long Wars betwixt the *French* and the *Spaniards* brought upon it before the Treaty of *Cambray*. However it is the chief Town of the Province, honoured with the Residence of the Council hereof, and the Sepulchre of *John* King of *Bohemia*, slain in the Battle of *Cressy* against the *English*, An. 1348. 2. *Arles*, on the top of an Hill, so called quasi *Ara Luna*, from an Altar consecrated to the Moon in the time of *Paganism*. 3. *Theowille*, on the *Moselle*, over which it hath a goodly Bridge, a Frontier town near *Metz*, and the Border of *Lorraine*, and for that cause made marvellous strong; but taken by the *French*, An. 1578, and restored the next year by the Peace of *Cambray*. 4. *Boftenack*, a fair Town, and very well traded, commonly called the *Paris of Ardenne*, in which part it standeth. 5. *Montmedy*, on an high Hill, at the foot of which runneth the River *Chiers*. 6. *Dampville*, once a very strong place also: both taken and ransacked by the *French*, An. 1552. 7. *Marville*

7. *Marville*, upon the *Chiers*, the one half whereof belonged to the Duke of *Lorraine*, the other to the King of *Spain* as Duke of *Luxemburg*, for which cause it is called *la Ville commune*. 8. *Kock* & *March*, fortified with a strong Castle. 9. *Trois*, a place once of great importance, sacked by the *French*, An. 1552, and restored by the Treaty of *Cambray*, on condition it should never more be walled. 10. *La Fayette* on the *Chiers*, a Town of the same condition.

In the skirts of this Country towards *France* standeth the Principality of *Sedan*, extended all along the banks of the River *Mais*, from the borders of *Lorraine* on the South, to the great Forest of *Ardenne* and the Dukedom of *Bouillon* on the North. A small, but very fair Estate, of fruitful Soil, and beautified with many rich Villages, and some Towns of note: the principal whereof are, 1. *Jamais* upon the borders of *Lorraine*, by the Duke whereof it was taken, after a long season, from the Lady *Charlotte*, the last Heir-general of the House of *Mark*, An. 1585. and laid under that Dukedom as a part thereof. A place of great importance, and therefore much contended for by each Pretender. 2. *Douchery*, a strong Town of war, bordering on *Trafalke* in *Picardy*, by which it is ascribed. 3. *Sedaine*, in Latin called *Sedunum* ad *Mosam*, because the late Duke, in Latin called *Sedunum* ad *Mosam*, the usual Residence on the banks of the *Mais* or *Mosa*, the usual Residence of the Prince: a fine neat Town, well fortified, and planted with 80,000 plants of Ordnance, honoured with a seat of Learning, which being of a middle nature betwixt a Grammar-School and an University, is in the Criticism of these times called *Academia illustris*, to which men may send their children to learn good Letters, though they can take in them no Degrees, that being a privilege reserved only to the Universities. So that these Schools may be somewhat like our Collegiate Churches of *Westminster*, *Winchester*, and *Eaton*, but that the younger Students in these last named are more retrained to Rhetoric and Grammar, than in the other, though these more liberally allowed for the encouragement and reward of Learning, than all the *Schola illustres* of either *Germany*, 4. *Mosfau*, a Town of great strength and consequence on the River *Mais*, upon some jealousies of State, garrisoned by the *French*, as also is *Sedan* it self, and most of the other good Towns belonging unto this Principality, but so that the Revenues of it, execution of Justice, and all other rights of Sovereignty, are still enjoyed, as formerly, by the Lords thereof.

This estate anciently was a part of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, from which it was dismembered for the Portion of some younger Prince, at such time as *Godfrey* Earl of *Ardenne* and *Bouillon* succeeded in the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, after *Charles* and *Orho* the first Dukes; or else accepted and referred by *Godfrey*, surnamed of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorraine*, and King of *Hierusalem*, when he sold the Dukedom of *Bouillon* to the Bishop of *Liege*. By many mean Conveyances and alterations of the Owners it came at last to the House of *Ardenne*, a Family of great wealth and power in *Westphalen*, (a Province of *Germany* not far off) by the Heir-general of which House it was brought in Marriage to *Engelbert* Earl of *Mark*, about the year 1350, from whom descended Robert Earl of *Mark*, and Sovereign of *Sedan* with the Towns annexed, who succeeding his Mother in the Estates of *Saus* and *Florence*, Fiefs holden of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, and eagerly affecting to unite the Estates together, (as they had been anciently) purchased the Town and Title of Duke of *Bouillon* of *Eberhard* Earl of *Mark* his Brother, Bishop and Cardinal of *Liege*, and consequently Duke of *Bouillon* also. Proud of his honour, and being somewhat too stiff in maintaining the Rights of his new Dukedom against a Sentence passed in the Imperial Chamber, in a Suit there

depending betwixt two of his Vassals, he took up Arms against the Empire, with far more courage than discretion. For being in the course of that War worsted by *Charles 5.* (for whom he was too weak an Enemy) the Town of *Bouillon*, being taken by the conquering Emperor, was afterwards restored to the Bishops, and nothing but the Title of Dukes of *Bouillon* left to the Princes of *Sedan*. And that he might be able to hold *Sedan*, this Robert was fain to return again to the protection of the *French*, (as his Ancestors from the time of *Charles 8.* had done before) and died Anno 1555, leaving his Titles and Estate unto Robert his Son, one of the Marshalls of *France*, whose Grandson, called also Robert, being a dear friend and companion of *Henry* of *Bourbon* King of *Navarre*, and afterwards of *France* also, dying without Issue at *Geneva*, Anno 1588, committed to him the disposal of his Estates, and of the Lady *Charlotte* his only Sister. And he so well discharged his trust, that (having settled his own affairs) he gave the Lady in Marriage to *Henry* de *la Tour*, Viscount of *Touraine*, in *France*, (one who had done him very good service in the course of his long War, against the Leaguers) and with her possession of *Sedan*, and the Title of *Bouillon*; whose posterity do still enjoy it. The whole Succession of these Princes we shall find in *Bouillon*, of which more anon.

But to return again to the Dutchie of *Luxemburg*. It was at first a part of the great Earldom of *Ardenne*, dismembered from it in the time of the Emperor *Orho* the first by *Sigefride* the Son of *Ricinius* Prince thereof, who in the division of that Estate amongst his Brethren, had this for his Portion, with the Title of Earl. Of his Successors there is little to be found upon good record in a constant order of Succession, until the time of *Henry I.* Father of *Henry 2.* Emperor of *Germany*, and they of a Royal Progeny of Kings and Princes; two of the which are most considerable, though all of them of eminent quality in their several times, viz. 1. *Henry*, elected and crowned Emperor by the name of *Henry 7.* said to be poisoned by a Friar in the holy Chapel, to prevent some designs he had against the Pope, in asserting the Imperial power in *Italy*. 2. *John*, the Son of this *Henry*, chosen K. of *Bohemia*, in regard of his Marriage with *Elisabeth* the Daughter of *Wenceslaus* King thereof, the possession of which Realm he left unto his posterity, advanced unto a Dukedom by *Charles 4.* the eldest Son of this *John*, in the person of *Wenceslaus* his younger Brother. What else concerns it we shall find in this following Catalogue of

#### The Earls and Dukes of LUXEMBURG.

1. *Sigefride*, the Son of *Ricinius*, Prince of *Ardenne*, the first Earl of *Luxemburg*.
2. *Gilbert*, the Father of *Ogine*, Wife of *Baldwin* the fourth of *Flanders*; but whose Son I find not.
3. *Godfrey*, Earl of *Namur*, was also Earl of *Luxemburg* by the right of Marriage, Father of *Agnes* the Wife of *Simon* the second Duke of *Lorraine*.
4. *Conrad*, perhaps the Son of *Godfrey* by the Daughter of *Luxemburg*, Father of *Carbarine*, Wife of *Matthew* the second, Duke of *Lorraine*.
5. *Henry* Earl of *Luxemburg*, slain in the quarrel of *Rainold* Earl of *Geldres*, contending with *John* Duke of *Brabant* for the Dutchie of *Limbourg*.
6. *Henry II.* Son of *Henry* the first, by means of his Brother *Baldwin*, Elector of *Triers*, was chosen Emperor of the *Germans*, the seventh of that name, Anno 1308, first crowned at *Aken*,

*Ahen*, and afterwards at *Rome*; one of the last Emperours that meddled in the affairs of Italy.

- 1319 7. *John* Son of *Henry II.* Earl of *Luxemburg*, married *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Wenceslaus* the elder, K. of *Bohemia*; of which he was upon that Marriage elected and crowned King, Anno 1311, in the life of his Father; slain by the *English* in the Battle of *Cressy*, Anno 1346.
- 1346 8. *Wenceslaus*, the younger Son of *John*, created Duke of *Luxemburg* by his elder Brother *Charles* the 4th, Emperour and King of *Bohemia*.
- 1383 9. *Wenceslaus II.* eldest Son of the said *Charles* 4. Emperour and King of *Bohemia* also, succeeded his Uncle in the Dukedom.
- 1419 10. *Sigismund*, Brother of *Wenceslaus*, succeeded *Wenceslaus* in all his Estates; to which he added the Crown of *Hungary*, by the Marriage of *Mary*, Daughter of King *Lewis* the first.
11. *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *John* Duke of *Gorizia*, (a Town of *Lusatia*) the Brother of *Sigismund*, by the gift of *Sigismund* her Uncle, being then alive, the better to fit her for the Bed of *Anthony* of *Bourgoyn* Duke of *Brabant*, after whose decease she married *John* the 3. Earl of *Hainault*, *Holland*, &c. But having no Issue by either of them, she sold her interest in this Dukedom to Duke *Philip* the Good.
12. *Philip* the Good succeeded on the Sale aforesaid made by the said *Elizabeth*, in pursuance of the Contract and Agreement made at her first Marriage, for settling this Estate in the House of *Burgundy*. Of whom, and his Successors in these *Belgick* Provinces, we shall speak hereafter.

The Arms are B. fix Barrulets A. supporting a Lion G. crowned and armed Or.

### 7. LIMBOURG.

THE greatest of the Estates of *Belgium* for extent of Territory, at the time of their Incorporating in the House of *Burgundy*, was that of *Brabant*, comprehending 5 of the 19 Provinces; that is to say, the Dukedom of *Limbourg*, and *Brabant*, the Marquisate of the Holy Empire, and the Seigniory of *Meclun*, with the Sovereignty of *Liege* or *Luyc*-land.

*LIMBOURG* hath on the East the Dukedom of *Guick* in High *Germany*, on the West the Bishoprick of *Liege*, on the North *Brabant*, and on the South the Dukedom of *Luxemburg*. The Soil is fruitful of all necessary Commodities, excepting Wines, the want whereof is recompensed with most excellent Wheat, great store of Fenel, and plenty of the best Iron Mines in all these Countries: all which Commodities it hath of so great excellency in their several kinds, that it is said of them proverbially, that *their Bread is better than Bread, their Fire hotter than Fire, and their Iron harder than Iron*. It is also well stored with medicinal Simples, and enriched with a Mine of *Copperas*, (by *Pliny* called *Lapis arvensis*, lib. 34. c. 10.) which being incorporated with *Brass* makes *Latun*, and increaseth the *Brass* by one third part. *Lapis arvensis multum aris habet, & ex eo fuso fit æquis* that Author hath it.

It is one of the least of the *Belgick* Provinces, containing in it but 125 Villages, and no more than five walled Towns or Cities: viz. 1. *Limbourg*, which gives name to the whole Estate, pleasantly seated on a Hill amongst shady Woods, under which runneth the River *Wesde*, which,

having watred the whole Country, emptieth it self into the *Maes*; well built, and fortified with a very strong Castle, mounted upon a steep Precipice, of no easie access. 2. *Valkenburg*, called by the *French* *Faumeunt*, a reasonable fair Town, with a large Territory, two Dutch miles from *Masfricht*; conquered from *Reynold*, Lord hereof, by *John* the third Duke of *Brabant*. 3. *Dalem*, a little Town with a Castle, the Territory thereof extending beyond the *Maes*; conquered by *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, of that name the second. 4. *Rhode le Duc*, a little old Town with as old a Castle, half a league from *Valkenburg*. 5. *Carpen*, situate between *Guick* and *Colden*, beautified with a Collegiate Church and a strong Castle, in which there is a Governour with a good Garrison for defence of the place. Each of these Towns hath Jurisdiction on the parts adjoining, but with Appeal unto the Chancery at *Brabant*.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Tract, and the Bishoprick of *Liege* adjoining, were the *Ebmoures*. When it was first made an Earldom, I am yet to seek. Most probable it is, that lying within the Verge of the great Forest of *Ardenne*, it was at first a member of that Earldom also, difmembered from it for the Portion of some younger Son, as *Luxemburg* and *Namur* were, or seized on by some strong Pretender (as *Guick* was) when *Godfrey* and *Baldwin* Dukes of *Lorraine*, and the direct Heirs of the House of *Ardenne*, were absent in the Wars of the Holy Land. But whensoever & by whomsoever it was made an Earldom, certain it is, that of an Earldom it was made a Dukedom by the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa*, An. 1172. *Henry* one of the Dukes hereof, married his Daughter *Margaret* to *Godfrey* the third, Duke of *Brabant*, which gave the House some colour to pretend unto it, backed with a better Title on the death of another *Henry*, the last Duke of *Limbourg*, whose next Heir, *Adolph*, fold it to *John*, Duke of *Brabant*, pretending to it in the right of the former Marriage, An. 1293. But *Reynold* Earl of *Guick*, thinking himself to have a better Title than *Adolph* in right of *Ermingade* his Wife, the Daughter of *Herman*, a late Duke hereof, put in his plea, and challenged the force of Arms; but being vanquished and taken prisoner by the said Duke *John* in the Battle of *Worancum*, was slain, for his Release, to release all his Claim and Title to the Dukedom of *Limbourg* after that quietly enjoyed by the Dukes of *Brabant*, till they fell both together to the House of *Burgundy*.

The Arms hereof are *Argent*, a Lion Barrie of ten pieces, Or and *Gules*.

8. *LYCK-LAND*, or, the Bishoprick of *LIEGE*.

WESTWARD of *Limbourg*, but a far mightier Estate than it, lieth *LYCK-LAND*, as the *Dutch*, or the Bishoprick of *LIEGE*, *Leodiensis*, as the *Latin* and *French* Writers call it; anciently under the protection of the Dukes of *Brabant*, and afterwards of the Princes of the House of *Burgundy*, as Lords of that Country. By some it is accomplished of and debased as a part of *Germany*; but for the reasons before mentioned I shall place it here. It is environed on all sides with the *Belgick* Provinces, that is to say, with the Dukedom of *Limbourg* and the Earldom of *Namur* on the East, with *Brabant* on the North and West, on the South with *Luxemburg*.

The Air hereof is very wholesome, and the Earth as fruitful, abounding with all kind of Grain and Fruits, with some store of Wine; and as for *Fleish*, *Fish*, *Fowl* and *Venison*, it hath very great plenty, and that too of an excellent taste: less fertile it is in such parts hereof as lie towards *Luxemburg*, in which it is most swelled with Hills, and over-spread with shady Woods, remainders of the great

great Forest of *Ardenne*, within which it stood. But the rich Riches of this Country is under ground, consisting in mines of Lead and Iron, and some few of Gold; Quarries of Alabaster, mingled with all sorts of Marble; rich veins of Brimstone, and unexhaustible pits of Coals; which last it hath in such abundance, that there is digged within the compass of one league of the City of *Liege*, not only sufficient for that great City, but so much over-plus, as being sold at mean prices about the Country, amounts unto 1000000 Ducats of yearly value. The Coal much sweeter than elsewhere, and of nature contrary to all other Coal, in that it is kindled with water, and quenched with oil, and the strong fervour of it taken off by casting Salt on it.

The whole Country containeth 24 walled Towns, and 1800 Villages. The principal of which are 1. *Liege* or *Luyc*, (in *Latine* *Leodunum*) situate in a pleasant Valley environed with four lesser Rivers, which make in it many delightful Islands. The compass of it is about four miles; the ordinary Buildings very fair, all built of Stone; the Bishops Palace a magnificent and sumptuous piece; the Churches in number forty, of which eight are Collegiate; 2. Parochial, all of them for their riches and beauty exceeding all in any City of *France* or *Germany*. Besides these, there are so many Convents, Monasteries and Religious Houses about the Town, that taking all together they amount to an hundred; all of them of such fair Revenues, so well endowed, and the Religious persons thereof of so great authority, that it is called the *Paradise of Priests*, and that derisively. It is also an University of good antiquity, wherein were Students at one time 9 Kings Sns, 24 Dukes Sns, 29 Earls Sns, besides Barons and Gentlemen; the greatest part of which were Canons of the Church of *S. Lambert*, which is the Cathedral of the City. Yet notwithstanding it hath taill of the malice of Fortune as well as others, being first destroyed by the *Danes*, then by the *Normans*, twice taken, and once destroyed, by *Charles* of *Burgundy*, Anno 1468. Subject it is unto the Bishop as Lord temporal of it, from whom (being long since made an Imperial City) there lieth an appeal to the Chamber of *Spire*. 2. *Dinant*, upon the *Meuse*, near *Namur*, of very great Traffick, till destroyed by *Charles* of *Burgundy* in the same year with *Liege*; hardly recovered of which wounds, it was again sacked by King *Henry* the second of *France*, Anno 1354. 3. *Musick*, upon the *Meuse* or *Maes* also, a league from whence is the fair Nunnery of *Thuren*, of the same nature with that of *Mont* and others (spoken of before): the like to which there is near 4. *Bissen*, another Town of this Bishoprick; the Abbesses of each having the privilege of Coining both Gold and Silver. 5. *Lootz*, by the *Dutch* called *Borchim*, in the County of *Dioffain*; made a County in the time of *Charles* the Great, the Title and possession of *Ogier* the *Dane*, so famous in the History of *Alaric* of *France* and others of the old Romans. 6. *Franchimont*, which gives the Title of a Marquess to the Bishop of *Liege*. 7. *Centron*, or *St. Truden*, a fair Town, so called of the Abbey dedicated to that Saint. 8. *Huy* or *Hoy*, so called of a violent River which there runs into the *Meuse*. 9. *Tongres*, the City of the *Tongres*, which together with the *Ebmoures* were once the inhabitants of this Tract; in which are still the ruins of a Temple consecrated to *Hercules*. Anciently it was an Episcopal See, translated hence to *Masfricht*, and at last to *Liege*; and in those times so great and of such renown that *Attila* the Hun destroyed in it 100 Churches now but a very small Town, and not worth the mentioning but for these Antiquities. Eight leagues from hence amongst the shady Thickets of the Forest of *Ardenne*, is 10. that

to celebrated Village, and those famous hot Baths frequented from all the places in *Europe*, called the *Spa*; not so pleasant as wholesome, not so wholsom as famous. Yet are they good for sundry diseases, as the Tertian Ague, the Dropsic, the Stone, the Exaltation of the Lungs, the Sciatica, &c. They are of most virtue in July, because they are then hottest; and to such as taill them they restiff much of Iron, from some Iron Mines, it seemeth, through which the waters run, which feed them. These Baths were of great fame in the time of *Pliny*, who do thus describe them: *Tongri Civitas fontem habet infusum plurimis balis stillantem ferreque vel saporis, quod ipsum non solum in fine potui intelligitur. Hinc aut hic corpora febres terribiles discitis calculorumque vitia. Solie, lib. 31. c. 2.* agreeably to the nature of them at this present time.

This Country (not taking the Dukedom of *Bonillon*, though now reckoned as a part thereof, into this account) followed the Fate Fortunes with the rest of *Belgica*, till the Conquest of it by the *French*; whom it was made a part of the Kingdom of *Lorraine* in the division of which Kingdom between the Kings of *France*, and *Germany* it fell unto the share of the Kings of *France*, as lying almost wholly on the West or French side of the River *Maes*, which parted their possessions in that broken Kingdom. Won from *Lotharius* the French King (the last but one of the *Caroline* Race) by *Otho* the 2. it was by him made part of the Dukedom of *Lorraine* then by him created, and continued as a part thereof, till sold by *Godfrey* of *Bonillon*, Duke of *Lorraine* to the Bishops of *Liege*, (of which more anon) since which time it hath been the Patrimony of those wealthy Prelates. As for the Bishoprick of *Liege*, it was founded at *Tongres*, as before was said; after the sackage of which City by *Attila*, it was removed Anno 498 by *S. Servatius* unto *Masfricht*. But the people of *Masfricht* having martyred *S. Lambert* their Bishop, Anno 763, by *Hugot*, his designed Successor, with the leave of Pope *Constantine*, it was translated to this place, and a Cathedral Church there founded by the name of *S. Lambert*. His Successors did so well husband their advantages that they did not only buy the Dukedom of *Bonillon*, but the City and Territory of *Liege*, sold unto *Spemius* and *Othertus* successively Bishops of it by *Godfrey* of *Bonillon*, Duke of *Lorraine*, at his departure hence to the Holy Land: not much increased since that in Lands, though they be in Titles, the Bishop being filled a Prince of the Empire, Duke of *Bonillon*, Marquess of *Franchimont*, Earl of *Loetz*, and *Habsburg*. Yet are not his ordinary Revenues above 30000 Ducats yearly; his Subjects living very well under him, at ease, Rents, and growing for the most parts unto good Estates. An argument whereof may be, that when the *Liegeois* had rebelled against *Philip* the Good, Duke of *Burgundy* (under whose Clientele they were as Dukes of *Brabant*) they bought their Peace of him at the Price of 600000 *Fiorens* of the *Rhene*, to be paid in six years. After which again Rebelling against *Charles* the Warlike, (as they have been of old to be the most rebellious City in *Europe*, excepting *Ghent*) they were able to wage 30000 men; but not being able to withstand the Forces of their Lord Protector, they fell in to that miserable destruction spoken of before. Since that time they have lived with more moderation under the protection of the Princes of the House of *Austria* but were counted Neutral in Quarrels betwixt the King of *Spain* and the States Confederate, as formerly between the *Spaniards* and the *French*; though many times they suffer in the contestations.

Southward hereof betwixt it and *Luxemburg*, lieth the Dukedom of *Bonillon*, subject unto the Bishops of *Liege*, but a State distinct, and holden by a different Title. It taketh up a great part of that Country which

more particularly and specially is called the Forest of *Ardenne*, with the Woods thereof in many places over-shaded; but not unfurnished of fair Towns and wealthy Villages. The principal of which are, 1. *Loni*, and 2. *Mou-fon-Court*, destroyed by *Charles* the fifth in his War against *Robert* Earl of *Mark* and Duke of *Bouillon*, but on the Peace ensuing repaired again. 3. *Sauv*, and 4. *Floringe*, Fiefs, as before is said, of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, but possessed by the Sovereigns of *Sedan*, since the time that *Robert* Earl of *Mark* and Sovereign of *Sedan* had them in Marriage with *Joan* his Wife, the right Heir thereof, from whom came *Robert* Earl of *Mark*, the first Duke of *Bouillon* of that Family. The last a pretty Town, till destroyed by the *French*, in the Wars betwixt *Henry* and *Philip* the seconds, Kings of *France* and *Spain*, since passing in account as a principal Village. 5. *Hierk*, in the Forest of *Ardenne*, the cause of the great War betwixt *Charles* the fifth and *Robert* Duke of *Bouillon*, spoken of before; the Emperor having passed sentence in behalf of the *Embrives*, who laid claim unto it, and *Robert* favouring the pretensions of the House of *Chinay*. 6. *Bouillon*, built on the side of a Hill near the River *Sensy*, a fair large City, and beautified with a goodly Castle on the top of a Tuffid Hill, and commanding over a large and goodly Territory, so strong as well by Art as Nature, that before the use of great Ordnance it was held impregnable; much spoiled in the War betwixt *Charles* the Fifth and *Robert* of *Mark*, and tolled from one Master to another in a little time, for being taken from *Earl Robert* by the power of *Charles*, it was from him gotten by the *French*, Anno 1552, and finally restored to the Bishop of *Liege* by the Treaty of *Cambray*, Anno 1559, but without prejudice to the Claim and Title of the Prince of *Sedan*. So that there are no fewer than three distinct Families which at this time enjoy the Title of Dukes of *Bouillon*, that is to say, the Bishop of *Liege*, who hath precedence of Title, and the possession of the City, the House of *de la Tour*, who hold *Floringe*, *Sauv*, and some other pieces, and the Heirs-male of the collateral Line of the House of *Mark*, who hold *Lumagne*, *Rechfort*, and some other places, but of less importance.

This Dukedom, once a part of the great Earldom of *Ardenne*, in the division of that Estate betwixt the Children of *Ricaine*, Prince or Earl thereof, fell to the share of *Godfrey* his eldest Son, (*Sedan* with its appurtenances then belonging to it) with the Title of Earl of *Ardenne* and *Bouillon*. By *Godfrey* his Son it was united to the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, who succeeded into that Estate after *Charles* and *Orto*, and by another *Godfrey* the first Duke of *Lorraine* dismembered from it, and given in Dower with his Sister *Ida*, at her Marriage with *Eustace* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardy*. Of these was born the famous *Godfrey*, commonly called *Godfrey of Bouillon*, since after he became he was here educated, or in regard he was Duke hereof before he did attain to the Dukedom of *Lorraine*; who, to provide himself of necessities for the Wars of the Holy Land, (so fortunately conveyed and conducted by him) sold first this Dukedom unto *Obero*, as afterwards of *Liège* successively, and their Successors for ever, which though accounted by most Writers for a part of *Liège*, and of the Bishoprick of *Liège*, call it which you will, was notwithstanding held by those great Prelates as a State distinct, and governed under them by the Bishops of the Country, from whose Sentence there lay no Appeal. The maintenance of which Privileges, on an Appeal made by the *Embrives* unto *Charles* the fifth, cost *Robert* Earl of *Mark* so dear, who had not long before purchased this Estate of his Brother *Eberhard*, Bishop and Cardinal of *Liège*, as was said before. The rest of the Story we have had already in our description of *Sedan*: we will now look upon the Princes which have born these Titles.

#### The Dukes of Bouillon of the House of Ardenne.

1. *Godfrey*, the eldest Son of *Ricaine*, Prince or Earl of *Ardenne*, the first Earl of *Bouillon*, and Husband of *Matilda*, a Daughter of the Emperor *Otho* the 2.
2. *Godfrey* II. Son of *Godfrey* the 1. who in the year 1044, by adoption of Duke *Otho* his Cousin, and the power of *Henry* the 2. Emperor, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Lorraine*.
3. *Gozelo*, Brother of *Godfrey* the 2. Duke of *Lorraine* and *Bouillon*.
4. *Godfrey* III. Son of *Gozelo*.
5. *Eustace*, Earl of *Boulogne*, and *Ida* his Wife, Daughter of *Godfrey* the 3, by him endowed at her Marriage with the Dukedom of *Bouillon*.
6. *Godfrey* IV. surnamed of *Bouillon*, Son of *Eustace* and *Ida*, on the death of his Uncle *Godfrey*, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, Anno 1078, and died King of *Jerusalem*. Going unto the Wars of the Holy Land, he sold this Dukedom to *Obero* Bishop of *Liege* and his Successors, Anno 1096, who did accordingly enjoy it till the year 1509 or thereabouts, when it was sold by *Eberhard* of *Mark*, to his Brother *Robert*, of whose descent and Successors you may take this view in the ensuing Catalogue of

#### The Sovereigns of Sedan, and Dukes of Bouillon of the House of Mark.

1. *Engelbert*, the ninth Earl of *Mark* in *Germany*, by marrying with the Daughter and Heir of *Aremberg*, added *Sedan*, *Jumais*, &c. to the House of *Mark*.
2. *Everhard*, second Son of *Engelbert* by the Heir of *Aremberg*, Lord of *Aremberg*, *Sedan*, &c.
3. *John*, Son of *Everhard*, Earl of *Mark*, Lord of *Aremberg*, *Sedan*, &c.
4. *Everhard* II. Brother of *John*, Earl of *Mark*, &c.
5. *John* II. Earl of *Mark*, Son of *Everhard* the 4.
6. *Robert* of *Mark*, the 2. Son of *John* the 4. Lord of *Sedan*, his elder Brother *Everhard* succeeding in the Estates of *Aremberg*. He added *Pirvenge* and *Saefz*, Towns of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, to his other pieces.
7. *Robert* II. Son of *Robert* the 1. Sovereign of *Sedan*, and Duke of *Bouillon*, which Dukedom he purchased of *Everhard* his Brother, Bishop and Cardinal of *Liège*.
8. *Robert* III. Son of *Robert* the 2. one of the Marshals of *France*, Sovereign of *Sedan*, and Titular Duke of *Bouillon*.
9. *Henry* Robert, Son of *Robert* the 3.
10. *Robert* William, Son of *Henry* Robert, zealous in the Reformed Religion, and a great follower of *Henry* of Navarre King of *Navarre*, to whom, dying at *Geneva*, Anno 1588, he bequeathed the care of his Estates.
11. *Charlotte*, the Sister of *Robert* William, married by *Hen* of *Navarre* (then King of the *French*) to *Henry* de la *Tour*, Viscount of *Turmeque*.
12. *Henry* de la *Tour*, Viscount of *Turmeque* in *France*, descended from the Heirs-general of *Eustace* Earl of *Boulogne* and Duke of *Bouillon*, by Marriage of the Lady *Charlotte*, and the gift of *Henry* the 4. of *France*, succeeded in the Sovereignty of *Sedan* and Title of *Bouillon*, a Protestant, and the Founder of the *Schola Illustri* in *Sedan*.

13. *De la Tour*, Son of *Henry* by one of the Daughters of *William* Prince of *Orange*, succeeded his Father in his Estates, but not in his Religion also, which, to ingratiate himself with the *French* King, he exchanged for Papistry, made thereupon one of the Marshals of *France*, and now living, Anno 1648.

#### 9. BRABANT. 10. The MARQUISATE. and 11. MECHLIN.

These I have joined together, though distinct Estates, because they have a long time followed the same fortune, and that the two last do not otherwise differ from the first than the parts from the whole; the *Marquisate* and *Mechlin* being now reckoned as parts of *Brabant*, and included in it.

*BRABANT* is bounded on the East with *Lucyland* or the Bishoprick of *Liege*, on the West with the River *Scheld*, and a part of *Flanders*, on the North with the *Maes*, which severeth it from *Holland*, and *Gelderland*, and on the South with *Hainault*, *Namur*, and a part of *Lucyland*; so called *quasi* *Brackland*, that is to say, a barren Land, as at first it was; or from the old *Bratunphantum*, which *Cesar* placeth in this Tract; but from whether of the two is not yet determined.

The Air hereof is generally very wholsome and good, and the Soil naturally fruitful, excepting *Kempenland*, (being the parts thereof lying towards the North) which being barren of it, fell, is made indifferently fertile by keeping Cattel, soiling the ground, and other arts of good Husbandry. The people live in most freedom, and are the best privileged of any in *Belgium*. A thing for which they are more beholden to the Prince's goodness, than their own great wits; being noted to be none of the wisest, especially as they grow in age, when most men learn wisdom. *Brabantii quæ magis senescunt, eo magis insulescunt*, as *Erasmus*.

The length hereof, from *S. Gertruydenburg* to *Gembours*, North and South, is 22 Dutch or German miles; from *Helmont* to *Bergen op Zoom*, East & West, 20 of the same miles; the whole compass 80. Within which circuit are contained 26 walled Towns, and Villages with Parish Churches 718; of which the odd 18, called *Franky* or *Market-Towns*, enjoy the Privileges of walled Towns or Cities, though unwall'd themselves.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Hertogenbosch*, or the *Bosch*, as the Dutch *Bos de Drie*, or *Baldine*, as the *French*; and *Sylvia Ducis*, or *Bosium Ducis*, as the *Latins* call it: each name derived according to their several Languages, from a pleasant Wood, belonging to the Dukes of *Brabant*, where the Town now stands, situate on a little River, called *Dreef*, some two Leagues from the *Maes*, near the borders of *Gelderland*. A large and well-built Town, very strongly fortified, and of great trade for Clothing, here being made yearly in the time of *Lewis* Guicciardini 200000 Clothes, worth 200000 Crowns to the Clothier or Draper: Made an Episcopal See, Anno 1559 the Cathedral, which is fixed in the Church of *S. John*, being fair and large, and beautified with one of the goodliest Dials in the Christian world. This is the principal Town of *Brabant* (properly and distinctly so called) comprehending under it the four Countries of *Kempenland*, *Maelland*, *Peelland*, and *Osserland*; and was taken by the Confederate States from the King of *Spain*, after a long and chargeable Siege, Anno 1628. 2. *Tilmont*, on the little River *Gert*, once chief of *Brabant*, but long since decayed. 3. *Ascher*, on the little River *Denmere*, which gives the title of Duke to them of the noble House of *Groz*, descended from the Kings of *Hungary* (of which we spake before at large when we were in *Picardy*) the

Dukes hereof (advanced unto that honour by *Charles* the fifth) being men of greatest Revenue and Authority of any in *Belgium*. 4. *Bergen op Zoom*, so called from the River *Zoom* upon which it is situate, about half a League from the influx of it into the *Scheld*, and not far from the Sea, which gives it a reasonable good Haven. A Town of great strength by nature, but more strongly fortified, famous for being made *Marquisate* by *Charles* the fifth, Anno 1553; more for the notable Rebellion which it made to the *Marquess* *Spinola*, Anno 1622. 5. *Brada*, upon the River *Merck*, a Town pleasantly seated, well fortified, and of great Revenue, having under it the Town and Territory of *Osserland*, the *Barony* of *Ropland*, and the Seigniority of *Osserland*, the Residence, Barony, and chief Town of the Princes of *Orange*, from whom being taken by the *Spaniard* in the beginning of those wars, it was again recovered by some venturesome Gentlemen, who hiding themselves in a boat covered over with Turf, were conveyed into the Castle, which they easily mastered, and made the Prince Lord of it again, after retaken by the *Spaniard*, Anno 1627, but now in the possession of its natural Owners, to whom it came by the right of the House of *Nassau*, by the Marriage of *Engelbert* their Earl, of that House, with *Mary*, Daughter and Heir of *Philip* the last Lord hereof, about the year 1400. 6. *Dreef*, on the River *Denmere*, a good Town and invested with a goodly Territory, belonging to the Prince of *Orange*, whose Ancestors of the House of *Nassau* had it in exchange for some other Lands of the Duke of *Cleve*; and in right hereof he is Burgave of the City of *Antwerp*. 7. *Grimberg*, an ancient Barony, with a large Jurisdiction, defendible on the youngest Son only, after the manner of *Burg English*, as our Lawyers call it. 8. *Gertruydenburg*, standing on the *Dowg*, not far from the influx of it into the *Maes*, the farthest town in the North of *Brabant*, where it joins to *Holland*, which makes it a matter of dispute betwixt those Provinces, to which of them it doth belong. A Town of great trade for Fishing, plenty of Salmons and Sturgeon being taken here, but of Shads especially, whereof 18000 are sometimes caught in a day, fatted, and sent abroad into Foreign parts. It acknowledged the Prince of *Orange* for the Lord thereof, as doth also, 9. *Graves*, a good Town upon the *Maes*, bought by these Princes of the King of *Spain* without consent of the States, without whose approbation no part of the Domain is to be dismembered. 10. *Mastricht*, (in *Latine* *Trajectum ad Mosam*) so called of a Ferry over the *Maes* in former times; supplied now with a goodly Stone-Bridge in the place thereof. A fair and goodly Town, beautified with two Collegiate Churches, in one of which the Dukes of *Brabant* were always Canons; subject in part to the Bishop of *Liege*, and partly to the Duke of *Brabant*. The Children are subject to that Prince to whom the Mother was subject at the time of the Birth, without relation to the Father according to that Maxim of the Civil Law, *Parrus sequitur ventrem*. And if a Stranger come to live there, he must declare to which of the two he will be subject. Yet is the Duke of *Brabant* the chief Sovereign of it, he only having the power of Coinage, and of granting Pardon to Offenders; and as a Town of this Dukedom it was besieged and taken by the Confederate States, Anno 1632.

Here it also within the limits of this Dukedom the Town and Seigniority of *Racelstein*, situate on the banks of the *Maes*, held by the Dukes of *Cleve* of the Duke of *Brabant*, but no otherwise subject; and on the same River the Town and Country of *Horn*, a *Fief* Imperial, beautified with a strong Castle and a goodly Territory, in which is *Wier*, the Residence of the Earls of *Horn*, descended of the ancient House of *Montmorency* in *France*.

2. The *MARQUISATE OF THE EMPIRE*, so called because the farthest Bounds and Marches of the German Empire fronting on *Flanders*, which appertained unto the Sovereignty of the Crown of France, comprehendeth four of the best Towns in *Brabant*, with very large and spacious Territories adjoining to them: viz. 1. *Lovain*, on the River *Dile*, about four English miles in compass; but in that compass much more delightful than it all built and peopled. It was the Mother Town of *Brabant*, and sometimes gave the Title of an Earl to the Dukes thereof: afterwards was made an University by Duke *John* the 4. *An*. 1426. wherein are contained about 20 Colleges, such as they be, much privileged, and enriched with Pensions for publick Readers, by King *Philip* the 2. 2. *Bruxels*, (*Bruxella*) the Seat of the ancient Dukes of *Brabant*, and of the Dukes of *Burgundy* also, after they came to be Lords of those Countries; seated upon the *Sinne*, and other sweet Springs and Rivers, which make it one of the sweetest situations in all *Europe*, having withall a goodly Chancel made by Art from *Brussels* to the River *Dile*, and from thence to the *Scheld*, the charge whereof amounted unto 500000 Crowns. It is of the same compass with *Lovain*, the Building sumptuous, and the Town very rich, not only in regard that it is the ordinary Seat of the Prince or his Regent, and the Chancery for all *Brabant* and the Duchy of *Limbourg*, but in regard of the rich Manufactures of Armour and Cloth of *Arras*, of Silk, Gold and Silver, which are there industriously pursued. 3. *Nivelles*, on the borders of *Hainault*, in a very rich and fruitful Soil, remarkable for the abundance of fine Linen which is therein made, but most of all for a very rich Nuntery (or rather a Nurfery) of noble Ladies of the same nature with those of *Mons* and others before described. 4. *Antwerp*, situate on a goodly Plain on the River *Scheld*, above 17 leagues from the Sea, but furnished with eight Channels, cut out of the River for the Transport of Commodities, one of the which is capable of 100 great Ships. The private Buildings were reckoned the Church of *Notre-Dame*, the *Basilica* Merchants. Well peopled it is, and of so great Trade in former times, that it was held to be the richest Empyre of the Christian World, the Commodities here bought and sold amounted to more in one month than those of *Venice* in two years. The causes of which sudden growth and encrease of Trading are said to be these. 1. The two Marts holden here every year, either of them during six weeks, in which time no man's person could be arrested, or his goods distrained. 2. The King of *Portugal* having in the year 1503 diverted the course of Merchandise from *Alexandria* and *Venice* to the City of *Lisbon*, kept here his Factories, and sent hither his Spices and other Indian Commodities, for which cause the Merchants in the year 1516 forsook *Bruges* in *Flanders*, and settled here. And 3. many of the Nobility and Gentry, during the long and bloody Wars betwixt France and Spain, forsook their Country-houses, and repaired hither by means whereof *Antwerp*, in a very little time grew bigger by 3000 houses than it had been formerly. But as the growth hereof was sudden, so the fall sensible, occasioned through the yoking it with a Cittadel by the Duke of *Alva*, which made Merchants afraid to resort any longer thither as a place of little freedom and less security; but chiefly by blocking up the Haven and intercepting the Trade as sea, by the more powerful *Hollanders*, which hath removed this great Traffic to *Amsterdam* and other Towns of their Country. So that now the chief support of it is the reputation which it hath of being an Imperial City,

the place of receipt for the Kings Revenues, and a Bishops See founded here in the year 1559, which draweth hither more resort of Lawyers and Church-men.

3. The Seigniority of *MECHLIN* consisteth only of that City and a small Territory of 9 Villages adjoining to it. The City is seated on both sides of the River *Dile*, which ebboeth and floweth to the Town and a league above it, and runneth through the very midst, maketh in it a number of small Islands, to the great ornament and commodity of it. A goodly Town containing seven Parish-Churches, besides the Cathedral, being the See of an Archbishop, founded here in the year 1559. Strong in regard it may be easily drowned on all sides; and of great wealth by reason of the many Manufactures of Linen, great Artillery of Brasse and Iron, Bells, Painted works, and others of like use and ornament. And being situate in a manner in the Centre of *Brabant*, distant 4 Leagues from *Antwerp*, *Lovain*, and *Bruxels*, it was made by *Charles* the Warlike (who loved the place) the ordinary Seat of the great Council of State, to which Appeals are made from the other Provinces. But yet it was more beautiful in former times than it is at the present; the City being much decayed by firing 200 Barrels of Powder, *An*. 1546, and by the Sackage of the *Spaniards*, by whom it was taken by force, *Anno* 1572. Most memorable at this time for a famous Nuntery, like to that of *Nivelles*, wherein are sometimes 1600 Nuns, who when they please may leave their Cloister and be married. A Town though in *Brabant*, yet not of it, but a State distinct: for which cause many Women came at the time of their Child-birth use to lay down their Bellies in some Village of *Brabant*, that their Children may be capable of the Privileges and Immunities of the Country. The principall of the Villages is named *Lesur Hout*, pleasantly seated on an Hill, the residue of the Burroughs lying at the foot thereof. Both Town and Villages were the Patrimony heretofore of the noble Family of the *Bertholds*, which failing in the person of *Gautier*, slain in the Battle of *Worancan* by *John* Duke of *Brabant*, left the one half to the Bishop of *Liege*, who sold his moiety to *John* the 2. Duke of *Brabant*; the other to the Earl *Gelders*, who in the year 1333 sold his part unto *Lewis Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*. But he sold nothing but the Title, *John* the third Duke of *Brabant* having seized upon it, and added it to his Estate: the occasion of some quarrel between those Princes, composed by the Marriage of *Lewis* with the Heir of *Brabant*.

But to return again unto *Brabant* it self, the ancient inhabitants hereof were the *Aduatic* and some part of the *Tungri*: it was accomped by the *Romans* a part of the Province of *Germania Secunda*, and by the French Province of the Kingdom of *East-France* or *Austrasia*; the Southern parts thereof towards *Hainault* under the Governance and Command of the Earls of *Ardenne*; the Northern parts lying towards the Sea, and terribly infected with the Depredation of the *Danes* and *Normans*, committed to the care of some principal Officers, whom they called *Lords Wardens of the Marches*. The eldest Son of *Theobald*, the first King of *Austrasia*, accompanied with *Utile* a *Boisarian* Prince, having repulsed the common Robbers, obtained for *Utile* of his Father, the command of those Countries, and possession of a great part of them also, by the Title of Lord Marquess of *Antwerp*: the fourth from whom, called *Arnulph*, was the first Maier of the Palace (of this House) to the Kings of France, made as it were hereditary unto his Successors. By *Dagobert* the first, sole King of the French, that part of this Country which was under the Earls of *Ardenne* being taken from them, the whole Estate was conferred on *Ansfisus*, the Son of *Arnulph*, with the Title of Duke of *Brabant*. The actions and achievements of so many of them as were

Maiores

Maiores of the Palace we have already seen when we were in France. The whole Succession follows here in the ensuing Catalogue of:

The Marquesses of *Antwerp* and Dukes of *BRABANT* of the German or Boissarian Race.

1. *Utile*, Son of *Theobald*, the first Duke, and Nephew of *Aldingarius*, the last King of the *Boisarians*.
2. *Hugbert*, Son of *Utile*.
3. *Alpert*, the Son of *Hugbert*, and Husband of *Elybilda*, Daughter of *Cloaire* the first of France.
4. *Arnoldus*, the Son of *Alpert*.
5. *Arnulph*, Son of *Arnoldus*, the first Maier of the Palace of this Family.
6. *Ansfisus*, Son of *Arnulph*, Marquess of *Antwerp*, and Maier of the Palace, by *Dagobert* the first made Duke of *Brabant*.
7. *Pepin*, furnished the Fat Son of *Ansfisus*, Successor to his Father in his Honours, Offices and Estates, and was herein succeeded by:
8. *Charles*, the base Son of *Pepin*, for his valiant acts furnished *Martel*, there being no lawful Issue of his Father living.
9. *Pepin II.* furnished the Short, Son of *Charles Martel*, having managed the Affairs of France from the death of his Father for the space of ten years, usurped the Kingdom, and was solemnly crowned King at *Sallons* by *Boniface* Archbishop of *Meutz*, on *May-day*, *A. 751*. The Dukedom of *Brabant* returning by this means to the Crown of France, continued a Province of that Kingdom, till the division of the French Empire among the Sons and Nephews of *Lewis* the Godly; when it was made a Member of the Kingdom of *Lorraine*. Not long before the fatal period of that Kingdom, having been many years before divided by the River *Meuse* betwixt the Emperours of *Germany* and the Kings of *France*, (each taking to themselves the Title of Kings of *Lorraine*) it was by *Lotharius* the 3. of France, in whose share it lay, conferred on *Charles* his younger Brother, together with the Title of the Dukes of *Brabant*. But indeed this Donation proved of little worth, the greatest part hereof, together with the rest of that part of the Kingdom of *Lorraine*, which of right belonged unto the French, being conquered by the Emperor *Otho* the 1. and by him added to the Empire. And yet this also fell out in fine to the profit of *Charles*, who being Count-german to this *Otho* the 2. by the Lady *Gerburg*, (Sister of *Otho* the 1. and Wife of *Lewis* furnished *Transmarine*, King of France, the Father of *Charles*) was by him invested into the great Dukedom of *Lorraine*, that Dukedom in the full latitude and extent thereof containing the modern Dukedoms of *Lorraine*, *Guick*, and *Brabant*, with the Lands of *Luxy*, with parts of the Lands of *Trier* and *Colen*. *Brabant* at that time had the name of *Bajus* (or *Low*) *Lorraine*, and as in memory thereof, there is a Court for criminal and Civil Causes held at *Gennap* (one of the Franks or Market-Towns of *Brabant*) called *La Court de Lorraine* to this day: an Estate first erected, as before is said, by the Emperor *Otho II.* who giving it to the said *Charles* of France, referred out of it, as a Dowry for his said Aunt *Gerburg*, the Towns and Territories of *Lovain*, *Bruxels*, *Nivelles* and *Antwerp* lying on the Marches of his Dominions towards France, which (with reference perhaps to the old Marquise of *Antwerp*) he honoured with the title of Marquise of the holy Empire. *A. 981*. *Gerburg*, the Sister, and Heir of *Otho*, the Son of *Charles* above mentioned being put besides her hopes of that fair Inheritance by her Brother *Otho*, who gave it to *Geoffrey* of *Ardenne* (succeeded her Grandmother, the first *Gerburg*, in the Towns and

Territories of *Lovain*, *Nivelles*, and *Bruxels*, which she conveyed in Marriage to *Lambert*, one of the Sons of *Rejner* of *Hainault*, with the title of Earl of *Lovain*. *Henry* his Son, having made himself Master of *Antwerp* also, was by that means possessed of the whole Marquise, but still retained the title of Earl of *Lovain*. *Godfrey* the 6. Earl, having enlarged the bounds of his Dominions by the Conquest of the rest of the Country, *Godfrey* & *Baldwin*, Dukes of *Lovain*, being then absent in the Wars of the Holy Land, was by the Emperor *Henry* the fifth (whose Sister he married) created the first Duke of *Brabant*. *John*, the first Duke of that name, added hereunto the Duchie of *Limbourg*; and *John* the third, the Seigniority of *Malins* or *Mechlin*. How it became united to the House of *Burgundy* is to be seen in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Earls of *Lovain* and Dukes of *BRABANT* of the Race of *Charlemagne*.

1. *Lambert*, one of the Sons of *Regnier* Earl of *Hainault*, made the first Earl of *Lovain*, in right of *Gerburg*.
2. *Henry* the Son of *Lambert*, who took *Antwerp*, making it the head City of the Marquise of the holy Empire.
3. *Lambert II.* Son of *Henry*.
4. *Henry II.* Son of *Lambert* the second.
5. *Henry III.* Son of *Henry* the second.
6. *Henry IV.* Son of *Henry* the third.
7. *Godfrey*, furnished *Barbatus*, Brother of *Henry* the fourth, in right of his descent from *Charles* Duke of *Lorraine* challenged the Country, and recovered it from the House of *Ardenne*, and finally by the Emperor *Henry* the fifth was created the first Duke of *Brabant*, *An*. 1108. Father of *Adelice*, the second Wife of our *Henry* the first, and of *Joseline* de *Lovain*, the Progenitor of the (late) Earl of *Northumberland*.
8. *Godfrey* or *Geoffrey II.* Son of *Godfrey*.
9. *Godfrey* or *Geoffrey III.* Son of *Godfrey* the 2.
10. *Henry V.* Son of *Godfrey* the third.
11. *Henry* the VI. furnished the Good, Son of *Henry* the fifth.
12. *Henry VII.* furnished the Magnanimous, by whose Marriage with *Sophia*, Daughter of *Lewis* the sixth, Landgrave of *Thuringia*, the Landgravedom of *Hassia* came into this House invested in it in the person of *Henry* his Son by the said *Sophia*.
13. *John*, Son of *Henry* the seventh, took in the Dukedom of *Limbourg*, and destroyed the potent Family of the *Bertholds*; his younger Brother *Henry*, by another *Vener*, succeeding in *Hassia*.
14. *John II.* Son of *John* the first, bought of the Bishop of *Liege* the moiety or one half of *Mechlin*.
15. *John III.* Son of *John* the second, added the whole Estate of *Mechlin* to the Dukedom of *Brabant*.
16. *Joan*, the eldest Daughter of *John* the third, married to *Wenceslaus* the first Duke of *Luxemburg*, but died without Issue.
17. *Anthony* of *Burgogne*, Son of *Philip* the Hardy and the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, daughter of *Lewis* de *Malain* Earl of *Flanders* and of *Margaret* the Sister and Heir of *Joan*, after the death of the said *Wenceslaus* and *Joan* his Wife, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Brabant*, his elder







Trumpets to found, gave them the Signal, and then Comanded them to gather Cockles. Which Tower or Fortrefs was at the fall of the Roman Empire overwhelmed by the Sea, the Ruines whereof at a dead low water are still to be seen.

Besides these places on the firm Land or Continent, there are some Islands which pertain to the State of Holland, called by the general name of *Voorn*, because situate directly against Holland *Voorn* signifying as much as before, or in old *Englisch* bevoorn, but known by their distinct and more proper names of *Somerdyke*, *2. Gaurde*, *3. Pier-schille*, to call the principal Towns, and *4. Voorn* specially so named, the chief of them all, being of a fat and fruitful Soil, and plentiful of most sorts of Grain. The principal Towns whereof are, 1. *Briel*, (which we call the *Brill*) a strong Town, and the first that revolted against the Spaniards, Anno 1572. Cautionary to the *Englisch* with the Town of *Flysbijg*, chosen by them in regard of the great command it hath upon the passage to *Gerruydenberg* and the rest of *Brabant*, as also to *Delft*, *Dort*, and *Rotterdam*, the greatest Towns of Trade in the South of Holland. 2. *Groveliet*, a small Town but having a Jurisdiction over many Villages. There are also on the North side of Holland the Isles of *Wierogen* and *Texel*; of which little memorably, but that the last is furnished with a safe and capacious Bay for receipt of Shipping.

One special accident concerning Holland I cannot overpass in silence, namely how *Margaret* Countess of *Henneberg*, and Sister to *William* King of the Romans, being of the age of 42 years, was delivered at one birth of 365 children, the one half Males, the other Females, the odd one an Hermaphrodite; all christened at the Church of *Loofdaynen*, not far from the *Hague*, by the names of *John* and *Elisabeth*, in two Bafins still to be seen in the said Church, by *Guido* the Suffragan of *Utrecht*, all which immediately after died, and with them the Mother.

The Arms of Holland of it self, as a State distinct, are Or, a Lion Gules.

*ZELAND* consisteth of seven Islands, the remainder of 18, the rest whereof the Sea hath swallowed, and in them 200 inhabited Towns. It is severed from *Flan-ders* with the left branch or arm of the *Scheld*, which they call *Houte*, and on the East from *Brabant* with the right branch of the said River, which still keeps his name; and on the North from Holland with the Gulf called the *Vlack*, and on the West with the main Ocean from the Kingdom of England. So called, as some say, *quaſi* Sea and Land; but as *Junius* rather thinks, from *Seland*, an Island of *Denmark*, as before was noted.

The Country is generally more fruitful than the neighbouring *Brabant*, producing great quantity of excellent Corn, plenty of Coriander, and abundance of Madder, used in Dying: the Soil also is very rich in Pasture, but low and marthy, which makes the Air to be very unhealthy: and the whole destitute both of Fresh water and Wood; the want of which last is supplied with Coal out of England and Scotland, or by Turf digged amongst themselves but very sparingly, for fear of weakening the Sea-banks.

The whole containeth 8 Towns, and 100 Villages. The Islands which remain are commonly divided into the Western, and the Eastern, according as they lie with reference to the River *Sheld*. The Western Islands are four in number: That is to say,

1. *VALCHEREN*, (*V'alachria* in Latine) lying to the North of *Schuy* in Flanders, the richest and most populous of all this Province, in compass 13 Dutch, or 40 Italian miles. The principal Towns of which are 1. *Mid-*

*deburg*, seated on a Creek of the Sea, well walled and fortified, the Streets spacious, the Houses and Churches well built, inhabited by wealthy Merchants and industrious Trademen, and of late times (since the removing of the *Englisch* Trade from *Antwerp*) most flourishing Empery. So called because built in the midst of the Island, or because built (as faith *Orellius*) by Prince *Zelandus*, of whom this Province was thus named, in honour of his Grandfather *Metellus*, and by him called *Metelli Burgum*. 2. *Flysbijg*, of great note for its good Port and invincible strength. One of the first Towns which the Low-Country men took from the Spaniards by the diligence of *Voorſt* a Seaman and Monsieur de *Berland*, then the Bay-liff thereof, and not long after put into the hands of the *Englisch* as a Town of Caution; the first Governour of it being the renowned Sir *Philip Sidney*. A poor Town then it was, God wot, now the Key of the Netherlands, without whose license no Ship can pass either to or from the City of *Antwerp*; inasmuch that if the Duke of *Alva* in the beginning of his Government had bestowed that pains in the fortifying this and others of the Maritime Towns, as he did in the strengthening *Antwerp* and some Midland Cities, he had in all probability hindered the remediless Revolt of these flourishing Countries. Not far off standeth the Fort called the *Rammekins*, once Cautionary to the *Englisch* also, together with the *Briel*, the chief Town in the Isle of *Voorn*, (an Isle of Holland) all three being taken from the Spaniards, An. 1572, made Cautionary to Queen *Elizabeth* Anno 1585, and finally surrendered by King James to the States United, Anno 1616. Robert Lord *Lisle* (afterwards created Earl of *Leicester*) the Brother of Sir *Philip Sidney*, then Governour of *Flysbijg*, 3. *Rammekins*, or *Armenyden*, an unwalled Town, but beautified with one of the goodliest and most frequented Havens in all the World; out of which one may sometimes see 700 Sail of Ships of great burthen set forward on their Voyages to several parts. 4. *Vere* or *Campſen*, seated in the North part of the Island, which once gave Title to a Marquess, and from the which the Noble family of the *Veres* (now, and of long time Earls of *Oxford*) took denomination. So as it is no marvel that so many of that Family have ventured their Estates and lives in the Wars of his Country, being their Grandmother in a manner, or their primitive Parent, from whence they were transplanted into England.

2. *SOUTH-BEVELERLAND*, situate betwixt *Walcheren* and *Brabant*, the greatest of the Isles of *Zeland*; heretofore 20 Dutch miles in compass, but now much diminished by the rage and fury of the Sea, by which the Town and Seigniority of *Boorsle*, with all the Countries round about it, was swallowed up Anno 1532. That which remains hath in it many goodly Woods and pleasant Thickets, full of Fowl and wild Beasts for Hawking and Hunting. Chief Towns here are 1. *Romerſloot*, seated on the East toward *Bergen op Zoom*, severed at the same time from the rest of the Island, and made an Island of it self, defended with continual charge from following the sad fate of the Town of *Boorsle*. 2. *Goes*, or *Tergoes*, on the Northern Coast, a strong Town, well privileged, and the only walled Town in all the Island.

3. *NORTH-BEVELERLAND*, lying betwixt *South-Beverland* and the Isle of *Schouwen*, in former times esteemed the Paradise of *Zeland*, and having in it a proper Town called *Chort Cheen*, but so destroyed by the Sea-breach, spoken of, before, that there is nothing now remaining but a few poor Villages.

4. *WOLFEKSDIKE*, lying betwixt the two *Beverlands*, the smallest of the Western Islands, as having in it no more than two Villages but replenished with good store of Pasture,

And

And there are all which fall in the division of the Western Islands, so called because they lay Westward of the River *Sheld*, as those which they call the Eastern Islands on the East thereof. Of which last there are three in number.

1. *SCHOWEN*, lying on the South-West of Holland, so near unto *North-Beverland* in former times, that the Inhabitants could talk together from one shore to the other; but now the Sea hath for them at a greater distance. It containeth in compass fix Dutch miles. Chief Towns wherein are, 1. *Zirzeeke*, the ancientest Towns of all *Zeland*, once beautified with a fair and commodious Haven, now choaked up with Beach, yet still repaired for the second Town in Salt and Madder, of which it yields good plenty. Most famous for the birth of *Levinus Lemnius*, that renowned Philosopher and Physician. 2. *Bronswi-Haven*, inhabited only by Fishermen, not else remarkable.

2. *DUVELAND*, so named from the multitude of Doves or Pigeons, situate betwixt *Schouwen* and *Tolen*, in compass about 4 Dutch miles. It hath no good Town in it, but only Country Villages and Gentlemens Farms. Surrounded by the Sea, An. 1530, but by the industry and diligence of *Adolph* of *Burgundy* and the Lord of *Boforeres* in Flanders recovered again, and at the excessive charge of the people hitherto preserved.

3. *TOLEN*, so called from the chief Town of the Island, where the Earls Toll was wont to be paid, whence it had the name, is situate over against the North-west of *Brabant*, from thence disjoyned by a narrow Creek or Arm of the Sea: the second Town of note being called *S. Martinus Dike*, walled, but not otherwise considerable.

Agreeable to the quality of this Country of *Zeland* are the Arms thereof, being Or, a Lion Gules rising out of a Sea wave Argent and Azure.

*WEST-FRIESLAND*, hath on the East *Groeningeland* and a part of *Westphalen* in High Germany, on the South *Over-Yssel* and the *Zuider-See*, on the North and West the main Ocean. The Country is generally moorish and full of Fens, unapt for Corn, but yielding great store of Pasture, which, in orfulness of the ground make the Air very foggy and unhealthy; nor have they any Fewel wherewith to rectifie it, (except in that part of it which they call *Seven-Walden*) but Turf and Cow-dung, which adds but little to the sweetness of an unford Air. Nor are they better stored with Rivers, here being none proper to this Country, but that of *Leemars*, the want of which is supplied by great Canals in some places, which do not only drain the Marshes, but supply them with water: Which notwithstanding, their Pastures do afford them a good breed of Horses fit for service, plenty of Bees both great and sweet, the best in Europe, next to those of England; and those in such a large increase, that their Kine commonly bring two Calves, and their Ewes three Lambs at a time.

The Country is divided into three parts. In the first part, called *WESTERGOE*, lying towards Holland, the principal Towns are, 1. *Harlingen* an Haven Town upon the Ocean, defended with a very strong Castle. 2. *Hindeloopen*, on the same Coast also. 3. *Stavoren*, an Hanse-Town, opposite to *Enchusen* in Holland, the Town decayed, but fortified with a strong Castle, which secures the Haven. 4. *Franecker*, a new University, or a *Schoola Illustri*, as they call it. 5. *Sneek*, in a low and inconvenient situation, but both for largeness and beauty the best in this part of the Province, and the second in esteem of all the Country. In *OSTERGOE*,

or the East part, lying towards *Groeningeland*, the Towns of most note are, 6. *Leeuwarden*, situate on the hinder *Leemars* the prime Town of *West-Friesland*, and honoured with the Supreme Court and Chancery hereof, from which there lieth no Appeal: a rich Town, well built, and strongly fortified. 7. *Dockum*, bordering upon *Groeningeland*, the birth place of *emma Frisius*. In *SEVEN-WOLDEN*, or the Country of Seven Forests, so called from so many small Forests joyning near together, is no Town of note, being long time a Wood-land Country, and now well inhabited till of late. The number of the walled Towns are 11 in all; of the Villages or Burroughs, 345.

To this Province belongeth the Isle of *Schellink*, the shores whereof are plentifully stord with dog-fish, took by the Inhabitants in this manner: The men of the Island attire themselves with Beasts Skins, and then fall to dancing, with which sport the fish being much delighted, make out of the waters towards them, Nets being pitched presently bewixt them and the water. Which done, the men put off their disguises, and the frighted Fish hasting toward the Sea are caught in the Toys.

Touching the *Frisons*, heretofore possessed of this Country, we shall speak more at large when we come to *East-Friesland*, possessed also by them, and still continuing in the quality of a Free Estate, governed by its own Laws and Princes: here only taking notice that the Arms of this *Friesland* are Azure, femy of Billets Argent, two Lions Or.

The ancient Inhabitants of these three Provinces were the *Batavi* and *Caniofates*, inhabiting the Island of the *Rhe*, situate betwixt the middle branch thereof and the *Waal*, which now containeth *South-Holland*, *Utrecht*, and some part of *Geldres*; the *Frisi*, dwelling in *West-Friesland* and the North of *Holland*; and the *Mattiaci*, inhabiting in the Isles of *Zeland*. By *Charles* the Bald these Countries, being almost unpeopled by the *Norman* Pirates, were given to *Thierrie*, Son of *Sigebert*, a Prince of *Aquitain*, with the Title of Earl: his Successors acknowledging the Sovereignty of the Crown of France, till the time of *Annullis* the 4. Earl, who turned Homager to the Empire. In *John* the 2. they became united to the House of *Hainaut*, and in *William* the 2. to that of *Bavaria*; added to the Estates of the Duke of *Burgundy* in the person of Duke *Philip* the good, as appeareth by his Successors; on of

The Earls of HOLLAND, ZELAND, and Lords of WEST-FRIESLAND.

- 863 1. *Thierrie* or *Theodore* of *Aquitain*, the first Earl, &c.  
902 2. *Thierrie* II. Son of *Thierrick* the 1.  
3. *Thierrie* III. the Son of *Theodorick* the 2.  
988 4. *Annullis*, who made first this Estate to be held of the Empire; slain in a War against the *Frisi*.  
From *Sigefride* the second Son of this *Annullis* came the Lords of *Braderode*, advanced by Marriages to the Seigniorities of *Genepda* and *Wanen*, and many other fair Estates both in *Brabant* and *Holland*.  
993 5. *Thierrie* IV. Son of *Annullis*.  
1039 6. *Thierrie* V. Son of *Thierrick* the 4.  
1048 7. *Florence*, Brother of *Thierrie* the 5.  
1062 8. *Thierrie* VI. Son of *Florence*, in whose Minority the Estate of *Holland* was usurped by *Godfrey* the Duke of *Lorraine*, by some accounted of as an Earl hereof.  
1092 9. *Florence* II. furnished the Fat, Son of *Thierrie* the 6.







Arms. *Lycurgus* gave a Law to the *Lacedæmonians*, that they should never fight often with one enemy: the breaking whereof made the *Thebans*, a small Commonwealth, to be their equals in power: wherupon it was lately said by *Antalcides* to *Agelhas* King of *Sparta*, that by his frequent warring on them and fighting with them he had made the *Thebans* good Soldiers against their wills. The *Turks* won the vast Empire they now possess by making many and speedy Wars. But now that Policy being worn out of fashion, we see that (to omit *Persia*) the little and distracted Kingdom of *Hungary* hath for 200 years refitted their Forces. So was it betwixt the Dukes of *Austria* and the *Switzers*, and so it is between the *Spaniards* and *Low-country-men*; who formerly being accompanied a dull and heavy people, altogether unfit for the Wars, by their continual combating with the *Spaniards* are become ingenious, full of Action, and great managers of causes appertaining to Fights, either by Sea or Land. We may hereby also perceive what advantage a small State gaineth by fortifying places and passages: there being nothing which sooner breaketh a great Army, and undoeth a great Prince than to besiege a well-fortified Town; for that here in he consumeth his time, and commonly loseth his men, credit and money; as the *Romans* before *Numantia*, the great *Turk* in *Malta*, and *Charles* of *Burgundy* before *Nauvle*. For where War is drawn out of the Field into the Walls, the Mattock and Spade being more necessary than the Sword and Spear, there the Valour of the Assailant is little available, because it wanteth its proper object.

Thus as, before we brought these several Estates and Provinces into one hand, so now we have broke them into two; the one part continuing in Obedience to the Crown of *Spain*, the other governing themselves as a State apart. Under the King remain the Dukedoms of *Luxemburg*, *Limbourg* and *Brabant*, some few Towns excepted; the Marquitate of the Empire, the Earldoms of *Hainault*, *Namur*, *Artois*, and *Flanders*, (except only *Schelys*); and the Lordship or Seigniorie of *Mechlin*, with many places of importance in the Dutchie of *Gelders*, to counter-balance the Towns are held from them in *Flanders* and *Brabant*. This is by far the greater part of the Country, and more fruitful in regard of the Commodities there naturally growing, but as much inferior to the other in power and riches, by reason of their strength in Shipping, by which they have the command at Sea, and thereby draw the whole Trade of Christendom, driven before at *Antwerp*, to *Amsterdam*, and other Towns of their Confederacy.

For the general Government of these Provinces there is a Regent sent from the Court of *Spain*, whose Authority is generally as great as that of the King; so that all matters of moment pass under the King's name, and that all Officers of any great trust and concernment are appointed by him, and that all Laws, Decrees, Sentences and Negotiations are dispatched in his name also. For the assistance of the Regent there is a Privy Council, a Council of State, and a Council of Finances, by whom all things are ordered which concern the Publick, the Regent's Authority co-operating and concurring with them, without which, though they may consult, they can execute nothing. And for the Governance and well ordering of their several Provinces there is in every one of them a Lieutenant or Provincial Government, subordinate to the Regent, and accountable to him; and in each Province a particular Council held in the King's name, consisting of more or less Counsellors, (as the bigness of the Province is) for the most part Doctors or Licentiates of the Civil Laws, with a President at the Head thereof, which in some places they call the *Parliament*,

after the manner of the *French*, and in some the *Chancery*. To these Courts all the Subjects do resort for Justice, in Causes both Criminal and Civil: to these are brought Appeals from inferior Judicatures, such as the Courts of great Towns and particular Franchises: and from these lyeth an appeal to the great Council at *Mechlin*, supreme and superintendent unto all the rest.

When any thing is to be done which concerns the profit of the Prince, or otherwise is of publick moment, the Regent sendeth out Letters in the King's name, to command the Estates, that is to say, the Clergy, the Nobility, and the Principal Towns of every Province, (except those of *Luxemburg*, *Gelders*, *West-Friesland* and *Over-Issel*, who by special Privilege cannot be called out of their own Countries) to come before him. The place of their Assembly is for the most part at *Brussels*, the Court and Residence of the Regent; because the *Brabanters* are also Privileged not to be summoned out of the Precincts of their own Province. Where being come, the States Assemble not altogether, but those of one Province at a time, so one after another: to whom the President, or some one of the Council of State propoeth in the Prince's name that which he demandeth. To which if any Town oppose, then all which the rest have done is of no effect, nothing being granted by the Deputies or States of any Province, but with this condition, that all the rest of the Estates do agree unto it. Without this punctual consent of all parties interested, the Prince cannot impose nothing, by their Laws upon the Subject, nor any thing at all in the publick Government.

And as the people are thus Privileged in regard of the Prince, so are the Princes and Prelates privileged in regard of the Pope, it being agreed upon between them.

1. That the Prince is to give Clergy-Benefices, and the Pope to maintain them.
2. That neither Prelate nor Lay-person may be sent to *Rome*, but the Pope to send his Delegates or Commissioners into the Country.
3. The Pope not to give a Benefice, nor grant a Pardon, nor send a Bull into the Country, without the leave of the Prince.
4. That no Clergy-man can buy Lands or other immovables, without the Prince's consent. And
5. That the Prince hath power to visit the Clergy, to see if they be well governed or not; and if they be not, to reform the Abuses.

Great Privileges, if considered rightly; greater than which few Protestant Princes do pretend to in their own Dominions.

As for the Revenue raised by the *Spaniards* out of his part of this Estate, it is not easy to be guessed at; and of that which is, there comes but little to his *Coffers*. The expences of his Court there is as great as ever under any of the former Regents; and his charge of entertaining Soldiers for his Towns and Garrisons greater than before. Nor doth it now stand with reason of State to lay any arbitrary Taxes upon the People, least he exasperate them to a second Rebellion, or stirle them to some new Confederacy against his Quiet.

Under the Government of the Confederate Estates are the Dukedom of *Gelderland*, excepting some few Towns in the hands of the *Spaniards*, the entire Earldoms of *Holland*, *Zeland* and *Zutphen*, the Seigniories of *West-Friesland*, *Over-Issel*, *Over-Issel*, *Greening*, the Town of *Schelys*, with the Isle of *Cassand* in *Flanders*, and many pieces of importance in the Dutchie of *Brabant*. This is the lesser part by far, and far inferior to the other in regard of the Soil, but the more populous of the two, and by the Industry

and great Trading of the people the more rich and powerful. They are governed after their own old Laws, by the particular Estates of every Province, not yet united into one entire Body of a Commonwealth; saving that for the better preservation of their Confederacy, the Commissioners of the several Provinces do consult together, whom they have honoured with the name of the *States General*.

The Estates of the particular Provinces elected out of the principal Towns and Places of most importance, do order the Affairs thereof according to their ancient Privileges, Rights, and Customs, as well by themselves as by their Collegues and Officers whom they do appoint; and that as well for matters of State as in point of Justice. For Administration of the which, the Governors, President and Counsellors of the Provincial Courts, have the cognizance of all Cases, both civil and criminal, and in all Causes of Appeal from inferior Courts; in each of which they proceed without Appeal, making their Acts and Commissions in the name of the said Governors, Presidents, and Council, but pronouncing Sentence and executing Judgment in right of the Sovereignty of the said Province. And these provincial States are chosen Generally out of the Plebeians or common People; and the Burgers (at the best) of the greater Townships: the Nobility and Gentry being for worn out, that in all *Holland* and *Zeland* there are not left above three Families of Gentlemen, and those compelled to live after the Plebeian fashion for fear of Envy, and to avoid the Insolency of the faucy Clowns, who, out of rudeness and the desire of Equality, hate nothing more among them than the name of a Gentleman.

Out of these Provincial States, which hold not for any certain and determinate time, but only during the pleasure of the Community for which they serve, are chosen one or more for each several Province, according to the condition and capacity of those which are chosen, to reside at the *Hague*, there to consult of the Affairs which concern the publick; but so, that be they more or less out of every Province they make amongst them but one Suffrage, when any thing is put unto the Vote. And these they call the *States General*, first because a collected Body out of all the Provinces; and, secondly, because they are not properly to deal in any matters of particular concernment, which are determinable absolutely by the States provincial, but only in such things as concern the general good of the whole Estate, as treating with Ambassadors, making War and Peace, &c. For their assistance in the which, there is a Council of State, made up of the Governors and some eminent men of every Province, (in which the Ambassadors of *England* as long as we held *Flushing* and the other Cautionary Towns, had his voice or suffrage) by whose advice they

dispose of all things which concern the publick; but so that if any difficulty do appear in the business, they conclude nothing till they have the approbation and consent of the particular Cities and Provinces for which they are chosen, to whom they are provable for their Administration, and by whom revocable whensoever they please.

The Revenue of this Estate doubtless is exceeding great, the Army which they keep in continual entertainment consisting of no less than 30000 men; which they can draw into the field, leaving the Forts and Towns very well provided; yet so well paid that we never read of any Mutiny amongst them for want thereof. The whole Charge with the entertainment of Captains and superiour Officers, is said to amount to 500000. *per annum*; raised on the people by Excise laid upon all Commodities, and many Taxes of like nature, so insupportable in themselves, and amongst men which would be thought to live in a free State, that should the *Spaniards* or any Prince in Christendom lay but half so much on their Subjects, it would occasion a Revolt. So that whereas one of the first causes of their falling off from the King of *Spain* was to free themselves from Taxes and Impositions illegally (as they said) enforced upon them; they have drawn on themselves more arbitrary and illegal Payments than any Nation in the World. So little have they got by the change of Government. Touching their power at Sea, we have spoke of already. All I shall now add to it is by way of instance, which is, That in the year 1587 the King of *Denmark*, on pretence of some displeasure, arrested 608 Ships, of theirs of all sorts at one time in the *Sound*; and that the next year after they set out, upon very short warning, and hundred good men of War, to join with *England* against the invincible *Armada*, which then threatened both. To conclude, there is nothing waiting to these Countries wherewith the God of all blessings doth enrich a Nation, but a gracious Prince, unity of Religion, and a quiet Government: which if it pleased the Almighty to confer upon them, they would surpass all neighbouring States in Treasure, Potency, Content, and all worldly Happiness.

There are in these Countries,

Archbishops 3.

Bishops 15.

Universities 7.   
*Leuven, Liege, Dordrecht, Leiden, Harderwick, Groning, Franeker.*

And so much for *BELGIUM*.



# OF GERMANY.

**G**ERMANY is bounded on the East with *Prussia, Poland, and Hungary*; on the West with *France, Switzerland and Belgium*; on the North with the *Baltick Seas, the Ocean, and some part of Denmark*; on the South with the *Alpes*, which part it from *Italy*. By which account the modern *Germany* much differeth from that described by *Tacitus* and others of the *Roman Writers*: That comprehending the three Kingdoms of *Denmark, Norway, and Sweden*, with so much of the Kingdom of *Poland* as lieth on this side of the River *Vistula*; but bounded on the East with the *Rhene*, and on the South with the *Danov*: the modern *Germany* containing on the farther banks of those Rivers five whole *Roman Provinces*, that is to say, *Noricum, Rhipense, and Mediætræanum, Rhetia secunda, Belgica and Germania prima*, with some parts of *Rhetia prima and Germania secunda*: but terminated with the *Danes* and the *Baltick Sea*.

It was first called thus by the *Romans*, (as some conceive) who seeing the people both in Customs, Speech and course of life so like those of *Gallia*, called them the *Germani* to the *Gauls*; the word *Germani* in the *Latine* signifying a Brother of the whole blood, (as our Lawyers phrase it) that is to say, a Brother both by Father and Mother, those which have the same Mother, but divers Fathers, being called *Fratres uterini*. And of this mind is *Strabo*, who speaking of the great resemblance which was betwixt these Nations in Manners, Speech, Customs and way of life, concludes it thus, that the *Romans* did with very good reason call them *Germani*, *cum fratres eos Gallorum hoc nomine vellent offendere*; intending to signify by that name, that they were the Brethren of the *Gauls*. But this is to be understood of those people only which dwelt next to *Gaul*, and not of all the Nations which inhabited in this vast Continent according to the ancient extent thereof; it being very well observed by *Tacitus*, that *Germany* was at first *Nationis, non Gentis, nomen*, the name of some of the Nations only, not of all the Country, the name in process of time spreading over all that large Tract of ground and those scattered Nations which were either conquered by them or incorporate with them. Others will have the name to be merely *Dutch*, deriving it from *Ger*, which signifieth *All*, and the word *Man*, signifying in that Language as in ours; whence also they derive the name of *Almans*; by which they would imply that the *Almans* or *Germani* are a very warlike Nation, a people that have in them *nihil nisi virile* nothing not worthy of a man. *Bochartus*, somewhat near to this, telling us that *Ger* in the ancient *Sallick* did signify as much as *Guerre* in the modern *French*, would have them at their first coming over the *Rhene* to be called *Germani* by the *Gauls*, that is to say, men of War, (or *Gens de Armes* in the present *French*) by reason of the great and many Victories obtained by them.

The like diversity I find for the name of *Almani*. For though some gave them the name of *Almans* from the same originals from whence they fetch the name of *Germani*, as was said before, yet others as probably conjecture, that they had that name because they consisted

of many several Nations coming out of the North and North-east hither, that they seemed to be a Hotch-potch of all sorts of men, kneaded into one name and Nation; which is the conceit of *Alfinius Quadratus*. But for my part, I do conceive (supposing the name of *Almans* to be *Dutch* originally) that the whole Country was not called *Almain* till such time as the Princes of the Dukedom of *Almain* (since called *Suevia*, or *Schwaben*) did possess the Empire, which continuing in that potent Family near 100 years, might very well occasion them to be called the Emperours of *Almain*, or the *Almain Race*, and so impart that the name to the Empire also. And for the *mans* naturally and properly to fall (of whom we shall speak more when we come to *Suevia*) I see no Etymology more agreeable to true Antiquity, than to derive the name from *Mannus*, the Son of *Tuisco*, one of their Gods, and a principal Founder of this Nation, (*Tuisco nem Deum & filium Mannum, originem gentis conditoremque*), as it is said by *Tacitus*: the people being called *Alemanni* (with a double n) in all ancient Writers, as men that did derive themselves from this *Mannus*, the Son of *Tuisco*. In like sort as (I think) the *Marcomanni* inhabiting the Countries of *Moravia*, were so called, abating the *Manni* of the *Marches* or outborders of *Germany*, and not the *Markmans*, as if they were men of mark, the only men of fame and honour of all those Nations; we might as well be pressed from the *Dutch* originals that of *All-man* in the meaning by them pretended, and unto this opinion I am Iwayed the rather because I find the *Dutch* Nation generally so much inclined to derive their Original from *Tuisco*, (from whom the *Tentius*, inhabiting about *Brandenburg*, may well fetch their pedigree;) the name of *Dutchland* or *Dutchmen* coming near in found to *Tuisco-land* and *Tuisco-men*. In which I shall subscribe to *erfegani's* opinion, though for the most part I look upon him but as the second part of *Goupin Becanus*.

But being the Etymologies of the names of most ancient Nations are very uncertain, and for the most part founded on Conjectures only; let us leave the Name a while, and survey the Country: the length whereof (according to the truest and exactest measurement) from East to West, that is to say from *Vistula* or *Wesell* to the *Rhene*, is estimated at 840 Italian miles; the breadth from North to South, that is to say, from the Ocean to the Town of *Bruxen* in *Tyrol*, 740 of the same miles. So that the Figure of it being near a Square, it may take up 3160, miles in compass, or thereabouts. Situate in the Northern temperate Zone, betwixt the middle Parallels of the sixth and tenth Climates, the longest day in the most Southern parts, being 19 hours and an half, and in the most Northern 17 hours and a quarter.

In this compass and extent of ground are supposed to live 10 millions of people. The men of the poorer sort are laborious painful, and of a sincere and honest carriage; the Nobles for the most part either Scholars or Souldiers, and true lovers of Honour; though *Tacitus* hath otherwise resolved it, affirming that the *Gauls* fight for Liberty, the *Belgians* for Honour, and the *Germani* for Gain. Which yet is true enough of the common Souldiers, who, if they fail

fail of Pay, fail in Courage presently. Of both sorts they are generally tall and big, of great Bones, much Flesh, and large Sinews, but commonly of such a phlegmatic constitution, that they have not spirit enough to manage such a mass of flesh as they bear about them. Which want of natural heat to concoct that humor makes them for the most part to be men of a bright or light brown Hair, and fair Complexions. They are little addicted to *Venus*, and very much to *Bacchus*; whence the Proverb, *Five Germanorum est bibere*, and the old Verfes, *Germani possunt cultos tolerare labores.*

*O nitum possunt tam bene ferre sitim.*

The Dutch themselves to labour well endure.

O would they Thirst could half so well endure.

This love unto their Liquor, together with their natural Temper; maketh them fat and corpulent. Whereupon *Pope Julius* the second, styling the *Spaniards Birds of the Air*, because of their Ambition, the *Venetians* and *Genoveses Fishes of the Sea*, because so much accustomed to Navigation, called the *Germani* by the name of the *Beasts of the Field*. And when *Augustus* was resolved to take unto himself the supreme Government of *Rome*, he was advised by *Agrippa* to chuse a Guard of *Germani* to attend upon him. The reason was, (as *Dion* giveth it) Because in those great Bodies there was little Malice hidden, and little Subtily; and that they were a people that took more pleasure to be commanded than to command. In matters of War this people have been formerly in a measure famous; yet not so much by the valour or conduct of their Captains, (for they have had but few such) as by their own hardiness. They withstood the *Romans* 210 years, allying and troubling them more in that space than either the *Carthaginians, Spaniards, Gauls, or Partians*; and even at the last (saith *Tacitus*) *Triumphati magis sunt quam victi*. In our times the *Rutters* and *Lans-knights of Germany*, (for so they call their Horse and Foot) have been much employed: but more by reason of their numbers, easily raised out of so large a Country, than any opinion of their Valour; being slow of motion, dull of apprehension, fearful of putting any thing to the chance of War. By reason of which fearfulness, as they are very cruel upon all advantages, not sparing either age or sex when they get the Victory, so are they apt to run upon any alarm, not to be rallied, if once routed, upon any persuasions. Infomuch as *Charles Count of Mansfield*, General of an Army of 50000 fighting men, but most of this Nation, was forced to suffer a small Army of 10000 *Turks* to pass by his Trenches, being then strongly encamped before *Sirginium*, (now *Gran*) a Town of *Hungary*, and to victual the Town before his face; not daring to set upon them or disturb their purpose, for fear least, being lustily charged his *Germani* would give back and endanger all. And yet besides these weaknesses, they have some great faults. One of which is a custom, if their wages be not duly paid, (though it be in the very midst of a Battle) to cry *Guel*, *Guel*, throw down their weapons, and suffer themselves to be cut in pieces by their Enemy. And so they served *Frederick* the Electour *Palatine* at the Battle of *Prague*. The other is an extreme humour of Spoil and Plunder: on which they are so bent whosoever they come, that such an entertainment them have just cause to say, that they receive more damage by them than they do by their Enemies. Two undecivable notes of mercenary Valour.

The women are of a good Complexion, but by reason of their intemperance in eating and drinking, much given to Corpulency; women of a good carriage, (as the saying is) good Bearers, and as fruitful Breeders; fervently obsequious to their Husbands, whom many of good rank serve at the Table with Trenchers and other necessaries,

and take a way when he hath done, eating the residue apart with and amongst their Maids, scarce sitting down with him once a week, and then too at the lower end, or at some such distance. And though the Women by their Laws have a property in their Goods, which they bring with them at their Marriage, or are given them after, (so as the Husbands hath but the use of them only) and may dispose of them by their last Will at the time of their death; yet is their condition thereby little better, the Husband being no less cruel and imperious than he would be otherwise. Which made *Cavacalli* to say often, that only that Nation knew how to rule their Wives, which added the *Feminine Article* to the *Sex*, and the *Male* to the *Sex*, as the *Germani* do. Most of them, as well Wives as Virgins, (except persons of Honour) use to go bare-footed within doors, and seldom put on Shoes or Stockings, but when they are to go abroad on their occasions. A thing that seems the more strange in regard of the extreme coldness of the Country, which is so fierce that generally they lodge between two Feather-beds, both in Summer and Winter: and in the most houses have their Stoves, of which the doors and windows are kept very close, as well to retain the heat, as to keep out the cold. Which though they may be usefull and inoffensive in Gentlemen's houses; yet in the common Inns, where all sorts of people are necessitated to throng together, the ill smells never purged by admitting any fresh air, are ready to stifle and choke up the Spirits of raw Travellers, not accustomed to them.

The Diet of *Germany, France and Italy*, is by a Traveller thus censured: The *Germani* have much meat, but fluttishly dress; the *French* little, but neatly cooked; the *Italians* neither the one nor the other: And so to say truth, the *Germani* have meat enough; by nature or by custom excessive both in eating and drinking, seldom rising from the Table till they have consumed all which was set before them. Infomuch that in some places it is provided by Law, that in their feasts they shall not sit above five hours at the Table. During which time, if by Intemperance either in eating or drinking a man disgorge his foul stomach in his fellow's Lap, or piss under the Table, it is no disgrace to him, nor at any time taken notice of in his reproach. Which humour of gormandizing and excessive drinking is not only cherished among the Vulgar, but even amongst their greatest Princes, who besides what they do in this kind themselves, have their drinking Champions, as well to answer all Challenges, as to challenge all comers, contending with each other, as a point of State, whose Celler shall afford the greatest and most capable vessels.

The Title of the Father defends to all the Children; every Son of a Duke being a Duke, and every Daughter a Dutchesse: a thing which the *Italians* hold to ridiculous that they put it in the fore-front of this factious Satyre, The Dukes and Earls of *Germany*, the Dons of *Spain*, the Monarchs of *France*, the Bishops of *Italy*, the Nobility of *Hungary*, the Lords of *Scotland*, the Knights of *Naples*, and the *Tempter Brethren* of *England*, make a poor Company. For by this common assuming of the Father's Honour, and the parting his Lands among all the Brethren, the Nobility is beyond reason multiplied, and no less impoverished, their being not few, since seventeen Princes of *Anhalt*, and twenty seven Counts of *Mansfield*, to molest of which their Arms have been the best part of their Riches, & *nihil nisi arma & manus* & in his omnia, as *Tacitus* once said of the ancient *Britanni*. And yet there is not one of this poor Nobility that will vouchsafe to marry with any of the Daughter of the wealthy Merchant, or suffer any of their Sisters to be married



married to any under the degree of a Nobleman; nor any juster cause of a Differing their Children than ignoble Marriages: they never permitting the Issue of such a Bed to succeed in any of their Fees, Estates or Titles: by means whereof, though they debar themselves of such accutions of wealth as Marches of that kind might bring them; yet, to the great honour of their generosity in this particular, they preserve the pure Stream of their Blood from running into muddy Channels, and keep the Spirits of brave men though they want the Fortunes.

The Languages here spoken are, the *French* in *Lorraine*, and in some Towns of the Bishop of *Triers*; the *Italian* in the highest part of *Tyrol*, which lie next to the Commonwealth of *Venice*; the *Sclavonian* spoken in *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, and some parts of *Lusatia*; and the *high Dutch*, the general Language of the Country. A Language very ancient doubtless, (though I am not so much a *German* as to think it spoke in *Paradise*, or before the Flood) and such as, by reason of the little or no impression which the *Roman* Armies made upon this Country, hath less commixture with the *Latine* than any which is used in these Western parts, (the *Welfs* excepted) and is very harsh by reason of its many Consonants.

This Country was esteemed by *Tacitus* to be rude and barren, containing nothing but uncultivated Forests, unprofitable Heaths, and unhealthy Pools. *Germania* informem terris, alteram caelo, fristem cultu aspectuque, as he farther addeth. And such no doubt it was in those times wherein *Tacitus* lived; the people not being civilized, nor the Country cultivated, nor any means found out to rectify the sharpness of that Northern Air. But he who doth observe it now, cannot but confess that there is no Country in the World either better planted, or replenished with more goodly and gallant Cities, being also in most parts both pleasant, healthy and profitable; abounding with Mines of Silver and inferior Metals, plentiful in Corn and Wines, with which they supply the defect of other Nations, as also with Fisk, Fish, Linen, Quicksilver, Alum, Saffron, Armour and other Ironworks. The Arable Lands are so spacious in the Eastern parts, that the Husbandman going forward with his Plough in the morning, turneth not back again till noon; so making but two Furrows for his whole daies work. For this *Verger* was my Author; and if it be not credible, let him bear the blame.

Souldiers of most eminency in the elder times were 1. *Arminius*, the Prince of the *Cheusici*, who overthrowed *Quintinus Varus* and the *Roman* Legions. 2. *Witkind*, the last King of the *Saxons*. For the middle Ages, 3. *Otho* the first, 4. *Frederick Barbarossa*, 5. *Rudolph of Habsburg*, Emperours and Kings of *Germany*. 6. *Henry*, turnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony*. And in the last Century of years, 7. *Frederick* the second, Elector *Palatine*, who made good *Vindicta* against the *Turks*; 8. *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, of whom more hereafter; 9. *Ernst* Earl of *Mansfeld*, 10. *John George* of *Saxony*; 11. *Albert Wallenstein* Duke of *Friedland*, and divers others of late days.

Scholars of note the elder times afforded none, nor the middle many; Learning being here so rare in the middle of the eighth Century, that *Vigilius* Bishop of *Salzburg* was condemned of *Heric*, for holding that there were *Antipodes*. In the next Age there flourished *Rabanus Maurus*, *Haimo* of *Halberstadt*, *Walafridus Strabo*, men learned for the times they lived in. And in the following times, *Ockam*, a stout defender of the Rights of the Empire against the Enroachments of the Pope, *Orho Frisingensis* the Historian, *Albertus Magnus* the Philosopher; of which last it is said, that he made the *Salm* of a Man, which with the help of artificial En-

gines could speak articulately, and was the work of 70 years. Then in the days of our Grandfathers we have 1. *Martin Luther*, that great instrument of the Reformation. 2. *Philip Melancthon*, his Cadjutant in that work, but of more excellent parts, and far better temper; these called the *Phoenix* of that age. 3. *Johann Camerarius*, a great friend of *Philip*. 4. *Martin Commisarius*, a solid and laborious Writer. 5. *Flacius Illyricus*, the chief Author of the *Magdeburgian* Centuries, and Father of the *Rigid Lutherans*. 6. *Sebastian Munster*, an industrious Cosmographer, and a learned Linguist. 7. *Silvius*, and 8. *Buxtorfius*, as great Linguists as he. Not to descend to farther instances in those who have so filled the Marts of *Frankfort* in these latter times.

But the greatest excellency of this people lieth in the Mechanical part of Learning, as being eminent for many Mathematical Experiments, Iron & Water-works, Medicinal Extractions, Chymistry, the Art of Printing, and inventions of like noble nature, to the no less benefit than admiration of the World. Amongst which I cannot chuse but instance in that work of *Regiomontanus*, an excellent Mathematician, and a cunning Artizan, spoken of by *Koekerman*; who at the coming of the Emperor *Maximilian* to the City of *Nuremberg*, made a wooden eagle, which flew a quarter of a mile out of the Town to meet him; and being come to the place where he was, returned back of its own accord, and so accompanied him to his Lodging. A thing if true, (as the Relator was a man too much gravity to abuse the World with an untrue) exceedingly beyond that Miracle of a flying Dove, for which *Archytas* is so famed amongst the ancients. Exceeded only by himself in a like invention, which was that of an Iron Fly, (the greater Miracle of *Arch*, because less in quantity) which at a Feast, to which he had invited some of his special Friends, flew from his hand about the Room and returned again, as is affirmed by *Peter Ramus*; expressed thus by Divine *Du Bartas*.

Once as this Artill, more with mirth than meek,  
Feasted some Friends, whom he esteemed great,  
From his learn'd hand an Iron Fly flew out,  
And, having flown a perfect Round about,  
With wearied wings return'd unto her Master,  
And as judicious on his arm he plac'd her.  
O divine Wit, that in the narrow Womb  
Of a small Fly could find sufficient room  
For all those Springs, Wheels, Counterpoise and Chains,  
Which stood instead of life, and spur, and reins!

And amongst these I reckon *Bertholdus Swart* a *French* Friar, the Inventor (though by accident) of that fatal Instrument, the Gun. Studious in Chymistry, he mingled dried Earth, Sulphur, and some other Ingredients, which he had put into a Mortar covered with stone, and striking fire to light a Candle, as the night came on, a spark by chance fell into the Mortar, and catching hold of the Sulphur and other Minerals, with great violence blew up the stone wherewith it was covered. Amazed at which, he made trial severally of these Ingredients, to find out which of them it was that produced that effect: which having discovered, he caused an Iron Pipe to be made, crammed it with Sulphur, Saltpetre and Stones; and putting fire to it, saw with what violent noise and fury it discharged itself. This Invention he is said to have first communicated to the *Venetians*; Anno 1330; of theseabouts, who having been often vanquished by the *Genoeses*, and driven almost to a necessity of yielding to them, by the help of their Guns (Bombards they were then called) gave unto their enemies a notable discomfiture. And this was the first Battle that ever those warlike Pieces had a part in; which not long after put to silence

len ce all the Engines and Devices wherewith the Ancients were wont to make their Batteries. The next that made use of this instrument were the Inhabitants of the *Baltick* Sea; and not long after them the *English*, at the Siege of *Calice*, Anno 1347; about which time they began also to be used in *France*. The *French*, it seemeth, learned the use of them from the *English*, and the first benefit received by them was the death of that famous Leader, *Thomas Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*, who at the Siege of *Orleans* was slain with a great shot, An. 1425. Twenty years after this, An. 1446, they were first used in *Spain*, at the Siege of *Saragossa*, a Town of the Kingdom of *Aragon*; by the *Castilians*; and after by degrees made common to the rest of that Continent. And being grown common in this Continent, as well unto the *Jews* and *Mooras* unto the *Christians*, it was not long before they taught it to the *Turks*. For the *Jews* being forced to abandon *Spain*, Anno 1492, betook themselves to *Greece* and other parts of the *Turky* Dominions, to whom they shewed the Art of making Ordnance, Gunpowder, Harqueballe, sufficiently since used by that people to the hurt of *Christendom*. But somewhat before this the *Turks* had been in part beholden for them to the Wars they had with the *Venetians*; when at first, yet afterwards growing expert in managing of them, they gave unto *Uffian* *Cassian* and *Himilam*, two of the most mighty Emperours of *Perfia*, two memorable Overthrows by the help of their great Ordnance only. The *Portugals* were in this Art the Tutors to the *Perfians*; for, as *Solyman* the *Turkish* Emperour objected against them, they not only aided *Tamas* the Sophi with certain Harquebushers, but also lent him weapons to shew him the use and making of Artillery. These great Pieces at the first invention were rude unwieldy, and charged with Stone-bullets only: but by degrees they came to that perfection, both for the wall and the hand, which they now have. Whether now Archery or Gunning be to be preferred, I stand not here to determine; only this I am sure of, that Victories have been of late purchased with less expence of blood and life than ever formerly. For of this *Ticam* more perhaps hereafter, when we shall come to take the *Parthian* Archery into consideration.

The Religion of this Country it is not easy to name, considering so many are here allowed, *Jews* being intermixt with *Christians*, and these divided into *Papists* and *Protestants*; the latter also divided into *Lutherans*, *Calvinists*, &c. The *Christian* Faith was first planted here, if *Dorotheus* Bishop of *Tyre* be of any credit, by *St. Thomas* turnamed *Didymus*, one of the Twelve. But being there is little trust unto his Relations, the best were to say with the *Magdeburgians* and the *Martyrologies*, that the *Germans* had not all the same *Apostle*; that the *Go-spell* was first preached amongst the *Rhetians* and *Vindelici* by *S. Lucius* of *Cyrene*, amongst those of *Noricum* by *S. Marcellus*, *Crescentius* at *Mentz*, *S. Clement* at *Metz*, in *Lorraine*, all of them *Apostolical* men, and of the number of the 70. after thatby *S. Maternus* at *Colen*, and by *S. Eusebius* at *Triers*. That the Faith was planted very early in these Countries, *Irenaeus*, the renowned Bishop of *Lyon*, An. 170, is sufficient evidence, who takes notice of it; and that it prospered very well and took very good root, appeareth by the Bishops of *Mentz*, *Triers*, *Worms*, *Spire*, *Basil*, and *Strasbourg*, subscribing to the Council of *Colen* in the Reign of *Constantine* the Son of *Constantine* the Great, An. 347. But the light hereof being extinguished for a time by those barbarous Nations who fell upon these out-parts of the *Roman* Empire, began to shine again on the Conversion of the *French* in all parts of this Country; the Conquests and example of

this Piousant Nation giving great encouragement thereunto. In which as taste of other Countries do not want their honour, for the greatest part thereof belongs to the *English*-*Saxons*; *Willibrod* the first Bishop of *Orebeck*, *Willibrod* of *Aichstet*, *Swinbert* of *Verden*, *Willibrod* of *Breme*, and especially *Boniface* the Archbishop of *Mentz*, who most gloriously fortunate in that sacred service. The *Moravian*, *Bohemian*, and others further off, came not in till afterwards. Not fully converted to the Faith, they began to suck in the Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*; discerned and opposed by *J. Huss* and *Hieronymus Prague*, *Bohemian* Divines, who, by reason of the Marriage of King *Richard* the second of *England* with the Daughter of *Wenceslaus* Emperour and King of *Bohemia*, had opportunity to be acquainted with the Preachings of *Wicliffe*, the Point of whose Doctrine they approved and propagated. But the two being burnt at *Constance*, by the decree of that Council, their followers in *Bohemia* would not give over, but after many sufferings and much blood-shed, obtained at last a Toleration of the Emperour *Sigismund* their King, more able to make good his word in his own Dominions, than he had to have done the two Martyrs from the fire at *Constance*, to whom he had granted his safe Conduct for their coming and going. In this condition they remained under the name of those of the *Sub uraque* or *Calistini*, because of their admitting the Sacrament in both kinds, till the rising of *Luther*; who justly offended at the impious and unwarrantable Assertions of *Frier Toke*, and others of the Pope's Pardon-mongers, first opposed their doings, and after questioned their Authority by which they acted, falling from one Point to another, till he had shaken the Foundations of the *Roman* Fabrick. Of the success of his undertaking we shall speak but little, as in a thing well known to all men of knowledge. Suffice it in this place to say that his Doctrine was not only received in *Germany*, but generally embraced in the great Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Swetland*, with the Provinces and Islands appertaining to them, in great part of *Poland*, *Hungary*, and *Transylvania*, as far almost as to the banks of the *Euxine* Sea, but for the progress of it here (which we are more especially at this time to enquire into) it was so well approved of, that the Dukes of *Saxony*, *Brandenburg*, *Wirttemberg*, *Mecklenberg*, and *Pomerania*, the Marquises of *Brandenburg*, the Langraves of *Hassia*, and most of the free Imperial Cities did adhere unto, who from their Protection made at *Spire* (the Imperial Chamber) to that effect, An. 1529, had the name of *Protestants*. The next year following they delivered in the Confession of their Faith at *Ausburg*, a City of *Suevia*, thence called *Confessio Ausburgica*, authorized, or tolerated at least, after a long War, with variable success on both sides, by the Emperour *Charles* the fifth, at the Pacification made at *Paffaw*, An. 1552, and afterwards more fully at *Ausburg*, where their Confession had first been tendered, Anno 1555.

But not to pass over this matter in these generals only, we may know once for all, that in the year 1530, the Protestant Princes having tendered their Confession at *Ausburg*, (as before is said) and finding it not so well received as they did expect, entered into a Confederation at the Town of *Smalcald* (belonging to the Duke of *Saxony*) for defence thereof, and for the Defence of one another in pursuance of it. Into this Confederacy first entered *John Frederick* the Duke of *Saxony* and his Son, *Ernest*, and *Francis* Dukes of *Lunenburg*, *Philip* the Landgrave of *Hassia*, *George* Marquise of *Brandenburg*, the Cities of *Strasbourg*, *Neurenberg*, *Heilbrun*, *Kintling*, *Ulm*, *Landau*, *Constance*, *Memmingen*, and *Campden*. Afterwards, Anno 1555, there entered into it *Berninus* and *Philip* Princes of *Pomerania*, *Ulrich* Duke of *Wirttemberg*, *Ro-*

bert Duke of Zweibrücken, (or *Bipont*, as some Writers call him) *William* Earl of *Nassau*, *George*, and *Joachim* Earls of *Anhalt*, the Cities of *Frankford*, *Hamborough*, *Ausburg*, *Hanover*, and not long after *Passgrave* and King of *Denmark*. But this Confederacy was like to have dashed the business. For *Charles* the fifth looking upon it as a matter of dangerous consequence to the power and safety of the Empire, and withal instigated thereunto by the Popes of *Rome*, whose interest was no less concerned in it, considering that he could not otherwise untie this Gordian knot, resolved to cut it with the Sword. At first the War succeeded luckily with the Protestant Princes, who armed themselves upon the noise of his Preparations: But there being an equality of Command between the Duke *John Frederick* and *Philip* the Landgrave, the one sometimes not approving, otherwhiles thwarting the other projects, the end proved not answerable. Besides, the politic Emperor knowing full well that the Forces of confederate States are oftener broken by Delays than Battle, avoided all occasions of fighting, and thereby wearied out this great Army, which without performing any notable exploit disbanded it self, every man halting home to defend his own. But none had more reason for to do than the Duke Elector: For in his absence his Cousin *Maurice* (forgetting the Education he had under him, and how formerly the Duke had conquered for him and elevated him in those parts of *Münster* (maugre all opposition of the Popish party) which formerly had belonged to Duke *George* his Uncle) combined himself with the Emperor, and invaded the Elector's Country; who notwithstanding recovered not only all his own, but a great part also of those Lands and Territories in which he had before lost his ungrateful Kinsman. But while he was in the Career, the Emperor suddenly falls upon him not far from *Münster*, (where the Duke was then hearing a Sermon) and by the suddenness of his coming routed his timorous unprovided Army; the Duke himself with some few resolute Gentlemen making head against him, till the most of them were slain, and the Duke taken Prisoner. The next morning he was condemned to lose his head, but pardoned at the last upon some Conditions: amongst which it was none of the least, that he should surrender his Estates, and resign the Electoral dignity to be disposed of by the Victor, as also that he should without ransom release *Marquess Albert* of *Brandenburg*, (a abusive and unquiet man) who was then his Prisoner. This done, the Emperor fraudulently intrappeth the Landgrave, as he shall show more at large hereafter in another place; and carrying on the Wars from one free City to another, compelled them to receive the Mass, and to submit to such Composition as he pleased to grant them; inasmuch as it was thought that the Emperor gained in this journey a Million and 600000 Crowns, and 500 pieces of great Ordnance. But these Successes were too great and too unjustly grounded to continue long. For *Maurice*, the new Duke Elector, who had married the Landgrave's Daughter, and engaged himself unto his Children both by Word and Bond (and that too at the Emperor's instance) for the safe returning, conceived himself unworthily dealt with for to be made the instrument of his Father's thralldom, and therefore that he was obliged both in love and honour to leave no way untried which might gain his liberty. And withal, finding cause to fear that the course of the Emperor's great Successes might end at last in the subversion of the common Liberty, he secretly by an under-hand practice called in the *French* and raising Forces under colour of the Emperor's service, gained *Marquess Albert* before mentioned (who had then a running Army in the field to associate with him, and fell

so suddenly on the Emperor lying then at *Innsbruck*, that he compell'd him to run away in post-hast by torch-light, and the Prelates to break of the Council off *Trent*, where at that time they were assembled. Upon which turning of the balance a Peace soon ensued, which brought forth the Edicts of *Passaw* and *Ausburg*, spoken of before, the best and surest Pledges of the Peace of *Germany*.

In the mean time, while the *Lutherans* thus played their game, there started up another party, begun at first by *Zuinglius* amongst the *Switzers*, of whose both Doctrine and Success we have spoken there. These not communicating Councils went two several ways, especially in the Points of Substantiation and the Real Presence; not reconciled in their times, nor like to be agreed upon amongst their followers. For *Calvin*, rising in to the esteem and place of *Zuinglius*, added some Tenets of his own to the former Doctrines touching Predication, Free-will, Universal Grace, Final Perseverance, (Points fitted for the Schools than a popular Auditor), which the Difference were widened, and the Breach made irreparable: the Cause being followed on both sides with great impatience, as if they did not strive too much for Truth, as Victory. And of the two, those of the *Lutheran* party seemed more violent, (though the other was altogether as irreconcilable) who could not chuse but smother it, to see themselves under determined and blown up by a new form of Doctrine not tolerated in the Empire, but under colour of Conformity to the Confession of *Ausburg*. For *Zuinglianism* being entertained amongst the *French*, a busy and active people, spread it self farther in few years than it was propagated by the *Switzers* (men of the same temper with the *Dutch*) in all times before. Inasmuch as it did not only prevail in *France*, but by the reputation of *Calvin*, and the diligence of his Followers was wholly entertained in the Kingdom of *Scotland*, the *Netherlands*, in many parts of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and even in *Germany* it self, in which it got footing in all the Territories of the Counts *Palatines* in the *Rhine*, in some of the Landgraves of *Hassia*, in the Imperial City of *Strasbourg*, many of the *Hanse*-Towns, and amongst their Princes and free Cities of inferior note. The rest of *Germany*, containing the Patrimonial Estates of the House of *Austria*, the Dukedoms of *Bavaria* and *Lorain*, the Territories of the three Spiritual Electors, and of all the other Bishops in the hands of the Clergy, some of the *Marquesses* of *Baden*, part of the subjects of *Cleves*, and but three of the Imperial Cities, (and those small ones too) that is to say, *Gernund*, *Ueberlingen*, and *Dinkels-Spyell*, (unless some more be added by the great Successes of the House of *Austria*) remain in their Obedience to the See of *Rome*, all which together will hardly make up one fifth part of this spacious Country, the other four being in the power and possession of the Protestant party: yet so that there be many Protestants in *Bohemia*, *Austria*, &c. in other the Estates of the Popish Princes; as there be Papists in the Free Cities of *Frankford*, *Nuremberg*, *Ulm*, *Augsburg*, and some other places, besides the late increase of them in both the *Palatinates*. Off such a speedy growth was the Reformation, that within the space of 40 years it was not only received in all those Countries which do now profess it, but had also got some footing both in *Spain* and *Italy*.

And here perhaps it will not be improper to look upon the means which were chiefly used for the Promoting of this Work; by which it came to spread so far in so little time, and next upon the Stops and Hindrances which were given unto it, by which it was restrained from spreading farther. 1. For the means used in the Advancement of his Work, (next under the Almighty power of the most wise God) they were these especially. 1. The

translating of the Scripture into Vulgar Languages, which easily discovered the Corruptions of the Church of *Rome* both in Doctrines and Forms of Worship. 2. The diligent Preaching of their Ministry, both in Towns and Villages, for the expounding of the Scriptures, and fitting them to the Capacities of the meanest Auditors; which gained exceedingly both on the judgment and affections of the common people; the course of preaching, having been formerly neglected by the Parish Curate, and turned off wholly in a manner to the Begging-Friars. 3. The publishing of Books of Practical Piety and Devotions, which might inflame the hearts of all sorts of men; accustomed before to no other Duties than to tell over their *Credo's* and *Pater-nosters*, and that most common of their *Ave-Maries*, and that most common in a tongue which they understand not. 4. The Education of youth, especially in Catechisms containing the whole body of Christian Religion; which once well planted in their minds, could not so easily be pulled up and removed thence by any contrary persuasion. 5. Their continual offers of disputation with the adverse party in a publick audience; which being denied (as generally at the first it was) gave great assurance of the truth and soundness of the one side, as of the falsehood and weakness of the other. 6. Their compiling of Martyrologies and Histories of the Church, which could not but produce an admirable Zeal and Constancy both in the Readers and the Hearers animated thereunto by those brave Examples which therein was presented to them. One point of Prudence hath been wanting, which is the calling of a General Council of all the Protestant and Reformed Churches, for the composing of the Differences which have grown between them. And this I look on as the first and greatest stop to the Reformation from proceeding farther; many men (not improbably) thinking there must be some want of truth in the Foundation of that Building, which had such wide and open breaches in the Superstructures. The Tyranny and Terror of the Inquisition, by which it is kept out of *Spain*, and kept down in *Italy* and all other parts of the Pope's Obedience, together with those other Policies both to discountenance and suppress it, (which we have spoken of in our description of the Papacy) may come next to this. The addition of these cares and diligence of the *Jesuits* and Seminary Priests, in applying themselves to all those means which they found so effectual on the other side, thereby not only countermine their endeavours, but fighting them up, on even ground with the self-same weapons. And last of all, the Pious and Practices of the Papal Ministers in working on the humours of the opposite parties, thereby engaging them not only into Tongue-combats and ventuations of the Pen, but even to try it out by blows in an open War, once I am sure. By these means they have not only stopped the Progress of the Reformation but would fain give themselves some hopes to destroy it utterly, and thereby to restore the Pope to that power and splendour which formerly he had attained unto in these parts of *Europe*. But of these and such like self-flatteries I shall say with *Seneca*, or rather in his words apply to my own Intention,

— *He manas Torjam erigent?*  
*Torjam habet spes Troja, si tales habet.*

That is to say

Shall these small Jars restore the ruin'd Pope;  
Small hopes be hath, if this be all his hope.

As for the Government of their Churches, those that continue in obedience to the See of *Rome* are under the old form of Archbishops and Bishops, coeval in all *Germany* (as in most places else) with the Faith it self. The *Calvinists* (by which name the *Zuinglians* now also pas-

sef, if not eaten out) submit themselves for Doctrine, Discipline and forms of Worship, to *Calvin's* Model; whereof we have spoke more at large when we were in *Geneva*. And for the *Lutherans*, they have divided the Episcopal Fundion from the Revenues; giving these last to some of their younger Princes, with the Title of *Administrators* of such a Bishoprick; the Fundion or Jurisdiction to some of the more eminent Clergy, with the title of a *Superintendent*, assigning to them a priority both of place and power before other Ministers, which they enjoy for term of life, together with some liberal maintenance: as in proportion to it. In other things, as Order, Habit, and Title of dignity, they differ not at all from the other Ministers. And over them, in the place of Archbishops, they have their *general Superintendents*; all of them of each sort accountable to the supreme Ecclesiastical Consistory, (as formerly to the Provincial or National Synod) made up of Counsellors of State and the Heads of the Clergy. So that the form seems to be much the same as in elder times, but is indeed more different than it seems to be; a great part of the alteration being in the Names, and that no other in a manner than by changing the old *Greek* word *Episcopus* into the new *Latine* word *Superintendent*, both signifying an Overseer, though in different Languages. And so *Ex Græcis bonis Latine fecere non bonis*, in the Poet's words. Which brings into my mind the Story of a people of *Africa*, who having received much hurt by Tigers, made a Decree that no man from thenceforth should call them *Tigres*, but give them a more harmless or less hated name, and then all was well. And as they do conform thus far to the elder times in form of Government, do they also come up to them in their forms of Worship; retaining still a ferted and prescribed Liturgie for all their Churches, most of the Holy-days observed in the former Ages, the Cross in Baptism, kneeling at the Communion, and many other in use and significant Ceremonies, commended to the Church by most pure Antiquity. In point of maintenance they are as defective as the *Calvinists* are; few of their Ministers having Tithes, most of them Pen-sions or Stipends, and those small ones also, seldom exceeding two or 300 Guilders, besides Wood for fuel, Corn, and some other necessities.

Now because mention hath been made of the *Hanse*-Towns and Imperial Cities, we are to understand that the Cities of this Country are of three sorts. 1. Such as are holden in possession by some of the Princes in way of inheritance, part of their Patrimony and Estates; as *Heidelberg*, *Vienna*, *Munich*, *Wittenberg*, &c. 2. Such as are held originally of the Empire it self: which are called *Free Cities*, for their great Prerogatives of Convoyning money, and Governing themselves by their local Ordinances; *Imperial*, in regard they know no Lord or protector but the Emperor only, to whom they pay two third parts of such Contributions as are assessed in the Assemblies or general Diets, and 1500 Florens yearly for themselves and their Territories. They are in number about 60, many of which are of a fair and large Estate; such as are *Nuremberg*, *Ausburg*, *Innsbruck*, *Spire*, *Wormes*, &c. Or which thus *Guiccardinus*: Those, faith he, are called *Free Cities*, which acknowledging by a certain determinate Tribute the Authority of the Empire, do notwithstanding in all other things govern themselves after their own Laws, not seeking to amplify their Territories, but defend their Liberties. 3. The third sort is of those which are called *Hanse*-Towns, or *Hanse*-Cities, that is, (say some) *An see stedem*, Towns upon the Sea, such as those were who first entered into this Confederacy; but at this time the name extends to many in-land Cities, and of no great Trading, joynd with them in a League for their common

common defence and preservation. A League made first against the *Danvs* and the Earls of *Holftein* by some of the Maritime Towns bordering next unto them, that is to say, *Lubeck*, *Hamburg*, *Rostock*, *Wismar*, *Straßburg*, and *Lüneburg*; but afterwards many other of the Imperial Cities and Towns of Trade associated with them in an offensive and defensive League against all enemies whatsoever. In number about 75, those of *Livonia* and *Prussia* being taken into the reckoning: many of which are able to put to Sea 150 good Sail of Ships; such is like more within the Land contributing in money or otherwise to the common charge. First handled by *Waldemar* the 3. of *Denmark*, whom they vanquished in a Naval Battle. After that growing into credit, and driving a great Trade in most parts of Christendom, they enjoyed many large and ample Privileges wherefore they came to be called amongst us sometimes by the name of *Eastlanders*, from their Easterly dwelling, and Merchants of the *Steel-yard*, from the place where they stowed their Commodities; and *Guilda Teutonicorum*, in regard of their Nation, for the most part *Dutch*. But the *Englifs* learning too much wit at the last as to make use of their own Shipping, they began here by little and little to decay, and are now almost worn out of memory with us, though still of good esteem and credit in other Countries.

The principal Rivers hereof are, 1. *Danubius*, or the *Danow*, which rising out of *Nigra Sylva*, or *Schwarzwald*, as the *Germans* call it, at a little Village of *Schwaben* called *Don Eßingen* about two *Dutch* miles from the shores of the *Rhene* passing through *Schwaben*, *Bavaria*, *Austria* &c. by the Cities of *Ulm*, *Regensburg*, *Passau*, *Vienna*, *Rad*, *Buda*, and *Belgrade*, beyond which it becometh to be called *Ister*, by that name most generally known amongst the *Grecians*; and receiving into its Channel, from the long Tract of the *Alps*, the *Sarmatian* and *Carpathian* Mountains, about 60 navigable Rivers, besides lesser Brooks, disgorgeth his full stomach by several mouths (the names whereof we shall find in *Dacia*) into the lap of the *Euxine* Sea; the whole length of his course 1500 miles: Incomuch as we may say with a Modern Poet,

*Cedere Danubius se tibi, Nile, negat.*

O even mouth'd Nile, I plainly see,  
*Danow* will scarce give way to thee.

2. *Rhene*, (of whose original and course we have spoke more fully when we were in *Belgium*) which running from *Switzerland* through *Germany* and *Belgium*, after a course of 800 miles, emptieth it self into the *German Ocean*. All which shall here be added is, that it gives the Title of the *Rhine-grave*, to some Princes as of good Blood as the best in *Germany*, whose Possessions and Estates bordering near unto it they were from thence so called; but of late times decayed (almost to nothing) in their Estates and living for the most part on the entertainment of other Princes, whom they serve in their Wars; the *Palgrave* of the *Rhene*, and two at the least of the three Bishops Electors raising themselves upon the ruin of this House. 3. *Elbe* (*Albis*) which springing out of the Mountain of *Reisenberg* in the skirts of *Bohemia*, runneth a course of 400 miles and passeth by the Cities of *Dresden*, *Meissen*, *Torgau*, *Wittenberg*, *Magdeburg*, and *Lauenburg*, Cities of the Electoral and ancient *Saxony*, and so betwixt the Dukedom of *Holfstein* (now part of *Denmark*) and the rest of *Germany*. 4. *Oder*, which hath its Fountain in the highestmost parts of *Moravia*; and after it hath run its course through *Brandenburg* and *Pomerania*, of some 500 miles in length, falleth at last into the *Baltick* Sea. 5. *Wurgis*, or the *Weser*, which issuing out of the Hills of *Thuringia*, runneth through *Hessia* and *Westphalia*, to the City of *Breme*, not far from which it falls into the *German Ocean*. 6. *Vistula*, or the *Weysst*, which ri-

ling out of the *Carpathian* Mountains betwixt *Poland* and *Hungary*, first passeth by *Cracovia*, the chief City of *Pole*, then betwixt *Pomeran* and *Prussia* and so into the *Baltick* Sea; the ancient Boundary of this Country, dividing it from *Sarmatia Europaea*. 7. *Moselle*, which rising out of the Mountain *Vage*, in the Confines of *Lorrain* and the County of *Burgundy*, passeth directly through *Lorrain*, and the District of *Triers*, by the Cities of *Toul*, *Metz*, and *Triers* it self, beyond which last it falleth into the *Rhene*, at the Town called *Confluentia*. 8. *Salva* or *Saia*, which rising in the Mountains of *Fitzelberg* in the Borders of the *Upper Palatinate*, and passing by the skirts of *Misia* and *Saxony* specially so called, falleth into the *Elb* beyond *Wittenberg*, having first watered the Cities of *Naumburg*, *Merzburg*, and *Jene*, very observable for being the most Eastern Bounds of the *Saxon* Conquests, by this River parted from the *Slaves*. 9. *Maina*, or the *Maine*, which hath its spring in the Mountains of *Bohemia*, and passing by the Cities of *Bamberg* and *Wurzburg*, is received into the *Rhene* beneath *Frankford*. 10. *Amisus*, or the *Emis*, which hath its Fountain near *Paderborn* in *Westphalia*, and passing between the two *Frislands*, falleth into the *German Ocean* not far from *Emden*.

Chief Mountains of this mighty Country, besides the *Alps* spoken of before, which run in a long tract betwixt it and *Italy*, are 1. *Alpiba*, now called *Schwarzwald*, (the present name both of this Mountain and the Forest of *Martiana*, which doth overshadow it) out of which rise the springs of *Danow* and the *Necar*, two principal Rivers of this Country. 2. The *Sudeta*, incircling *Bohemia*, covered with the Woods called anciently *Garia* and *Luna*, now called the Woods, of *Passau* and *Bamberger*, from the places adjoining. 3. *Cetus* in *Austria*, now called *Culemburg*, the ancient Bounds betwixt *Pannonia* and *Noricum*, two Roman Provinces. 4. *Vogels*, commonly called *Vage*, and by some *French* Writers the *Monte de Faucities*, which encircling *Lorrain*, divideth it on the East and South from *Elfsa* and the County of *Burgundy*. As for the Forests of this Country, besides those spoken of already, that of most note was the Forest of *Hercynia*, (of which all the rest were but Limber branches) the beginning whereof was about the Borders of *Switzerland* and *Assatia*, from thence running Eastward along the course of the *Danow* unto *Transylvania*, and thence declining on the left hand through the vast Countries of the *Lithuanians*, *Moscovites*, and *Russies*, in which last there are still many vast Deserts of it; the greatest part thereof in *Germany* being long since consumed, in place whereof are many goodly Corn-fields and well-built Cities. A Wood so formidable to the *Romans*, that they durst never venture to search the end of it; the length thereof after the end of 60 days Journey being undiscoversable, and the farther search into it quite laid aside.

These Boundaries and Land-marks being thus described we shall the better follow the Chorography of this great Continent, according to the several Principalities and Estates therein; having first taken a survey of the ancient condition of it, with so much of the Story as concerns the whole, before it came to be divided into so many hands. The Country was first planted by the Posterity of *Gomer*, who, descending from the Mountains of *Albania*, their first Seat, in memory thereof first called *Gomerini*, after *Cimmerin*, by that name known to *Pliny*, *Ptolemy*, and others of the ancient Writers, removed into the more fruitful Plains of *Phrygia*, and there built the City *Cimmeris*, which *Pliny* speaks of. But that small Province proving too narrow a compass to contain his Offspring, and the adjoining Countries being taken up in the former Plantations, they removed unto the North-west of the *Euxine* Sea, where we find a City of their build-

ing called *Cimmerium*, mentioned both by *Pliny* and *Strabo*, and the adjoining Streight or *Fretum*, called by the name of *Bolporis Cimmerius* by the *Greeks* and *Latines*. Driven from these Dwellings by the more powerful *Scythians*, they spread themselves into the West, where they began to be called *Cimbri*, and by that name, and under those of the *Ambrones* and *Teutones*, several Branches of them, intended an Invasion and Conquest both of *Gaul* and *Italy*: wherein they had prevailed in all probability, *Missi* *seculo Marius contigisset*, had not *Marius* happened to have lived in that Age, by whom they were discomfited and destroyed. That these *Gomerians* or *Cimbri* were the first Inhabitants of *Gaul*, *Germany*, and all the Nations of the North and West of *Europe*, is generally agreed upon by all the Learned. Divided they were into several Nations, and those also subdivided into lesser Tribes, and more obscure Families; amongst which those of *Teutones* or *Tuiscones*, from which the *Dutch* do so affect to derive themselves, might be some of the principal. There settled, and not pleased with that desert dwelling, such of them as dwelt nearest to the *Rhene* passed over that River, and beating the *Gauls* farther up into the Country, possessed themselves of their Dwellings, enjoying them (till conquered by *Julius Caesar*) without any Rival. But *Cæsar*, moved with the complaints of the *Gauls*, and the insolencies of *Arivovis* a King of the *Germans*, (for by that name for the reasons aforesaid the *Romans* called them) marched into their Quarters: the *Roman* Legionaries being so afraid of this dreadful Enemy, *ut testamenta passim in principibus scriberentur*, (saith the Historian) that many of them made their Testaments at the Gates of their Camp, before they fell upon the Enemy. Vanquished by *Cæsar*, and *Arivovis* being fled over the *Rhene*, the *Romans*, by command of their General made a Bridge over the River, and rather terrified than conquered the neighbouring *Germans*; who were more fully brought into subjection by *Drusus*, the adopted Son of *Augustus Cæsar*, from thence called *Germanicus*, by whom not only the *Rhati* and *Norici*, then lying out of the bounds of *Germany*, now included in it, were subdued in fine, and brought into the form of *Roman* Provinces; but the whole Country in a manner to the very Ocean was forced to yield obedience to the *Roman* Empire. But this was for so short a time, that it was both won and lost during the Reign and Government of *Augustus Cæsar*. So that the whole established Conquests of the *Romans* upon this Country, as it is now bounded, contained no more than the Provinces of *Germania*, and *Belgica Prima*, with part of *Germania Secunda*, belonging unto the Dioceses of *Gaul*; the greatest part of the two *Rhati* being under the Dioceses of *Italy*; *Noricum Mediterraneum* and *Ripensis*, with some parts of *Pannonia*, parts of the Dioceses of *Illyricum*. But none of these (as lying on the West side of the *Rhene*, and the South of the *Danow*) did ever pass in the account of the ancient *Germany*, the *Germans* not enduring the yoke so long as to be brought within the number of the *Roman* Provinces. Provoked with the Lust and Insolencies of *Quintilius Varus*, who succeeded *Drusus* in that charge, they set upon him under the conduct of *Arminius*, a chief Prince amongst them, kill him, and utterly cut off three Legions; as we shall see more particularly when we come to *Brinwick*, the ancient Seat of the *Cheerni*, by whom the Forces of that Emperor were driven over the *Rhene*. After which defeat *Augustus* laid aside the Affairs of *Germany*, confining his Empire within the *Rhene*, which *Drusus* had extended to the banks of the Ocean. *Hæc clade factum, ut Imperium quod in litore Oceani non petierat, in ripa Rheni summis flaret*, saith the Historian. Nor did the *Romans* any farther to revenge this Loss by making a new War

upon them, but seemed more careful to defend themselves against their Invasions, than to incur the hazard of a new Defeat, quattering chief Legions with their several Wings and Aids on the shores of the *Rhene*, and four upon the banks of the *Danow*, to keep these people from inchoating on the *Roman* Provinces. But the fatal period of that Empire drawing on apace, the *French*, *Burgundians*, *Almans*, and other *Dutch* Nations break through those Guards, dispossess the *Romans* of all *Gaul*, *Rhætia*, and *Noricum*, which they share amongst them; till in the end the *French*, prevailing over the rest, extend their Empire over all the modern *Germany*; chiefly performed by the valour of *Charles* the Great, created Emperor of the West by the people of *Rome*, and crowned with the Imperial Crown by Pope *Leo* the 4. on *Christmas* day, Anno 801. So that now the old Prophecy of the *Druides*, concerning the removing of the Empire into the West, came to be accomplished; though *Tacitus* in his time accounted it for a vain and idle Prediction. For when *Civilis* raised a Rebellion amongst the *Batavi* (the *Hollanders* and parts adjoining) against *Vespasian*, then newly made Emperor, *possessionem rerum humanarum Transalpina gentibus portendi Druidæ cæbantur*, the *Druides* prophesied of the translation of the Empire to the *Transalpine* Nations: accomplished, as before is said, in the person of *Charles* the Great, King of *France* and *Germany*. By whom it was divided (for the better ordering or Governance of it) into *West-France*, or *West-riek*, in the barbarous Latine of those times called *Westralia*, containing the modern *France*, and to much of the *Netherlands* as lieth on the *French* side of the River *Maes*, and *Offen-riek*, (i.e. the Eastern Kingdom) in the Latine of those times *Austrasia*, containing so much of the modern *Germany* and *Pannonia* as was possessed by the *French*, with the rest of the *Netherlands*. This was afterwards subdivided into the Kingdoms of *Lorrain* and *Germany*: whereof the first contained all *Germany* within the *Rhene*, together with the *Belgick* Provinces before described, the Counties of *Flanders* and *Artois* excepted only; the Kingdom of *Germany* taking up the rest. For in the time of *Ludovicus Pius*, the Son of *Charles*, the great Empire of his Father was parcelled out into many members, as *Italy*, *France*, *Burgundy*, *Lorrain*, and *Germany*, distributed amongst his Sons and Nephews with the Title of Kings: by means whereof the Kingdoms of *Germany* and *Lorrain*, united in the person of *Lewis* the Ancient, in little time were alien'd from the House of *Charles*, and left off to be *French*, possessed by the great Princes of *Lorrain*, *Saxony*, *Schwaben*, and *Bavaria*; by them distributed into many Principalities and inferior States, all passing under the account and name of the *Dutch* or *Germans*. The Kings and Emperours of which here follow.

The Kings and Emperours of *GERMANY*.

- |        |    |  |
|--------|----|--|
| A.C.H. | 1. | <i>Charles</i> the Great, Emperor, King of <i>France</i> and <i>Germany</i> .  |
| 801    | 2. | <i>Ludovicus Pius</i> , King of <i>France</i> , <i>Germany</i> , and the Emperor of the <i>Romans</i> .  |
| 815    | 3. | <i>Lewis</i> , furnished the Ancient, second Son of <i>Ludovicus Pius</i> , King of <i>Germany</i> , to which Anno 876, he united that of <i>Lorrain</i> also.   |
| 841.   | 4. | <i>Charles</i> the Great, Son of <i>Lewis</i> the Ancient, reigned at first jointly with <i>Carloman</i> and <i>Lewis</i> his elder Brethren, after their deaths sole King of <i>Germany</i> , Anno 880. he succeeded <i>Ludovicus Balbus</i> in the Title of Emperor, continued unto his Successors; and during the minority of <i>Charles</i> the Simple |

by a Faction of the French Nobility was chosen King of France: the whole Estate of Charles the Great becoming once again united in the person of one Sovereign Prince.

891 5. *Arnulph*, the natural Son of *Carloman*, the Brother of *Charles*, King of Germany, and Emperor.

903 6. *Lewis* or *Ludovicus IV.* (Lewis the Brother of *Charles* and *Carloman* being reckoned for one) King of Germany, and Emperor, the lawfully begotten Son of *Arnulph*.

913 7. *Conrade*, the Son of *Conrade*, the Brother of *Lewis* the 4. the last Prince of the matiline issue of *Charles* the Great. After whose death the *Francones* and *Saxons*, seeing *Charles* the Simple, King of France, overlaid by the *Normans*, or embroiled by the Princes of the House of *Anjou*, took that advantage to transfer the Empire to themselves: and they made choice of *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* to be their Emperor. A worthy Prince, by whom some Nations of the *Slaves*, the *Hungarians* and part of *Lorraine* were subdued or added to the Empire.

929 8. *Henricus*, furnished *Auceps*, or the Fowler, Duke of *Saxony*, elected by the German Princes, but designed by *Conrade*, as being eldest Son of *Otho* Duke of *Saxony* by *Luitgardis* Daughter to the Emperor *Arnulph*, and consequently a branch of the *Caroline* Stock.

938 9. *Otho*, furnished the Great, the Son of *Henry*, Emperor and King of *Italy*. 36 years.

974 10. *Otho II.* Son of *Otho* the first, Emperor and King of *Italy*. 10.

984 11. *Otho III.* Son of *Otho II.* Duke of *Saxony*, and the last of that House which had the title of Emperor and King of *Italy*. After whose death, all right of Succession being disclaimed, the Emperours became elective; but for the most part the Election was ingroled or monopolized (since the Failure of the House of *Saxony*) by the Dukes of *Franconia*, *Suevia*, *Bavaria*, and *Austria*, notwithstanding the liberty or freedom of Election pretended to by the Electors. The business was first projected in the Court of *Rome*, to make the Emperours less powerful, and distract the Germans, whom they feared, into Sides and Factions: confirmed by a Decree of Pope *Gregory* the fifth, being a Native of that Country.

1002 12. *Henry II.* furnished the Saint, Duke of *Bavaria*, the first Emperor elected according to the Constitution of *Gregory* the fifth, but so elected, that he challenged it in a manner by the right of Blood, as being the Grand-child of *Henry* furnished *Riccius*, the first Duke of *Bavaria* of the *Saxon* race: the second Son of *Henry* the first, and consequently by the next Heir male of that House after *Otho* the 3. compelling some of the Electors, who opposed his Title, by the force of Arms to yield unto it. So that the first Emperor who came in by a clear Election, but not without presentation of a Title also, was

1025 13. *Conrade II.* Duke of *Franconia*, furnished *Salicus*, Husband to *Luitgardis*, one of the Daughters of *Otho* the first, and consequently not a Stranger to the former Family.

1040 14. *Henry III.* furnished *Niger*, the Son of *Conrade*.

1056 15. *Henry IV.* Son of *Henry* the third, in whose days the Popes began to usurp Authority over the Emperours; inasmuch as *Leo* the ninth, having received the Popehood at the Emperours hands, repented himself of it, put off his Papal Vestments, went to *Rome* as a private person, and was there new chosen by the Clergy. This was done by the persuasion of a Monk called *Hildebrand*, who being afterwards made Pope by the name of *Gregory* the 7. excommunicated this *Henry*, the first Prince that was ever excommunicated by a Pope of *Rome*. From which time till the year 1254. there were continual Wars and Thunder betwixt them and the nine following Emperours, some of them being excommunicated, some forced to put their Necks under the Feet of the Pope, others to quit the care of the Commonwealth, and betake themselves unto the Wars of the Holy Land, leaving the Pope to do what he list in Germany.

1106 16. *Henry V.* Son of *Henry* the 4. armed by the Pope against his Father, whom he had sooner succeeded in the Empire, but the Pope excommunicated him, for being too full in the business of Investitures, and raised up the Saxons against him; by whom being vanquished, and otherwise afflicted by the Pope's practices, he was forced to submit unto his commands, and was the last Emperour of the House of *Franconia*.

1125 17. *Lutharius* Duke of *Bavaria*, seizing upon the Empire without any Election, was reconciled unto the German Princes by the means of St. *Bernard*. He settled the Affairs of *Italy* in two Journeys thither. 13.

1139 18. *Conrade III.* Son of *Frederick*, the first hereditary Duke of *Sueve* or *Schweben*, and *Stefen's* Son unto *Henry* the fifth, vanquished *Henry* furnished the Proud, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, and going to the Holy Wars, with *Lewis* King of France, discomfited the *Turks* near the Banks of *Mander*. 15.

1153 19. *Frederick*, furnished *Barbarossa*, Duke of *Sueve*, crowned at *Rome* by *Adrian* the 4. and not long after excommunicated by Pope *Alexander* the 3. to whom he was faithful at last to submit himself, the Pope insolently treading on his Neck. He went after to the Holy Land, where he died, having discomfited the *Turks* in three great Battels. 37.

1190 20. *Henry VI.* Son of *Frederick*, and King of *Sicily*, in right of *Constance* his Wife, crowned by Pope *Celsine*, who employed him in the Wars of the Holy Land, in his Journey towards which he died at *Messina*. 8.

1198 21. *Philip*, Duke of *Sueve*, Brother of *Henry* the 6. excommunicated by the Pope, (who loved not this Family) by whose means *Otho*, the Son of *Henry* the Lion, Duke of *Saxony*, was set up against him. The occasion of great Wars among the Germans, reconciled by Marriage of *Otho* with a Daughter of *Philip*. 9.

1207 22. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* furnished the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, crowned at *Rome* by Pope *Innocent* the 3. by whom not long

long after he was excommunicated, for taking into his hands some Towns of *Italy* which belonged to the Empire: vanquished in *Erabant* by the Faction raised up against him, he relinquished the Empire to his Competitor.

1212 23. *Frederick II.* King of *Sicily* and *Naples*, Son of *Henry* the 6. having settled Germany, disposed himself for the Wars of the Holy Land, where he recovered the possession of the Realm of *Jerusalem*. He was excommunicated by the Pope at his return into *Italy*, and not long after poisoned.

1250 24. *Conrade IV.* Son of *Frederick*, the last Emperour of the House of *Schwaben*. After whose death the Empire being distracted by the Pope's practices into many Factions, each Faction chose an Emperour or King of the *Romans*: so that at one time there were elected *Henry* Earl of *Tourainia*, *William* Earl of *Holland*, *Alfonso* King of *Castile*, the renowned Author of the *Alfonso* Tables, and

1254 25. *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*, Brother of *Henry* the third of *England*, the best monied man of all his time, supposed therewith to buy the Suffrages of the Archbishop of *Colen* and Elector *Palatine*, by whom he was elected and crowned King of the *Romans*, An. 1254: and after he had dealt in the affairs of the Empire 6 years, he returned into *England*, where he died. After whose death, or an Interregnum of 12 years from his Exit rather, the Title was at last accepted by

1273 26. *Rodolph* Earl of *Habsburg*, a petit Prince, (others of greater Estates and Fortunes not daring to take up the honour) the Raifer of the present *Austrian* Family.

1292 27. *Adolph* Earl of *Nassau*, who served in person under King *Edward* the 1. of *England* against the French, for which being discredited by the Germans, he was encountered and slain near the City of *Spire*.

1298 28. *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, Son of *Rodolph* the Emperour, to whom Pope *Boniface* the 8. gave the Realm of France, of which he had deprived King *Philip* the Fair. But *Albert* would not meddle out of Germany, and did nothing in it.

1308 29. *Henry*, Earl of *Luxemburg*, who made a Journey into *Italy* to recover the Rights of the Empire, (where an Emperour had not been seen in 60 years) supposed to be poisoned in the Chalice by a Friar at *Benevent*, a Town of the Pope's. 6.

1314 30. *Lewis*, Duke of *Bavaria*, crowned at *Aix* in the wonted manner; opposed by *Frederick* Duke of *Austria*, chose by another Faction, and crowned at *Bonna*, a Town of the Archbishop of *Colen*: but he being defeated, *Lewis* remained sole Emperour, and was excommunicated by Pope *John* 22. 33.

1346 31. *Charles IV.* Son of John King of *Bohemia*, and Grand-son of *Henry* the 7. crowned with the Iron Crown at *Milvain* 1354; the framer of the Golden Bull. 32.

1378 32. *Wenceslaus*, King of *Bohemia*, and Earl of *Luxemburg*, deformed and vicious; deposed by the German Princes. 22.

1400 33. *Rupertus*, Elector *Palatine*, passed into *Italy*

for the recovery of the Dukedom of *Milvain*, sold by *Wenceslaus*, but was well beaten by *John Galeazzo*, and so returned. 10.

1410 34. *Jodocus* *Barbatus*, Marquess of *Moravia*, Uncle to *Wenceslaus*.

1411 35. *Sigismund* Brother of *Wenceslaus*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and Earl of *Luxemburg*, crowned at *Rome* on Whitsunday 1432. He travelled exceedingly for establishing the Peace of Christendom, distracted at that time with three Popes at once; and was a great promoter of the Council at *Constance*.

1439 36. *Albert II.* Duke of *Austria*, Son-in-law of *Sigismund*, whom he succeeded in all his Estates and Titles, excepting *Luxemburg*. 1.

1440 37. *Frederick III.* Duke of *Austria*, the Son of *Ernest* of *Austria*, and next Heir of *Albert* the 2. He procured the calling of the Council of *Basil* for the Peace of Christendom, travelling for that cause to *Rome*, where he was declared Emperour, Anno 1442. 54.

1494 38. *Maximilian* Son of *Frederick*, Duke of *Austria*, who first united the Estates of *Burgundy* to the House of *Austria*. A Prince that undertook many great Actions, but went through with none. 25.

1519 39. *Charles V.* King of *Spain*, Son of *Philip* King of *Spain*, and Archduke of *Austria*, Son of *Maximilian* by the Lady *Mary* of *Burgundy*. A puissant Prince, who had Prisoners at the same time the French King and the Pope of *Rome*. He ruined the League made by the Protestants at *Smalcald*, took Prisoners the Electour of *Saxony*, and the Landgrave of *Hassia*, drove the great *Turk* from *Vienne*, won the Kingdom of *Tunis*, and in the end resigned all his Estates, and died in a Monastery. 39.

1558 40. *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Austria*, the Brother of *Charles*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, elected King of the *Romans* by the procurement of *Charles*, Anno 1531. Upon whose Resignation he was chosen Emperour, Anno 1558. 7.

1565 41. *Maximilian*, the Son of *Ferdinand*, elected King of the *Romans* in the life of his Father, Anno 1562, succeeding the Empire after his decease.

1577 42. *Rodolphus*, the eldest Son of *Maximilian*, had great Wars against the *Turks*, with whom in the year 1600 he concluded a Peace, but being undermined by his Brother *Matthias*, was forced to surrender to him the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and to content himself with *Austria* and the Empire only. These eight last Emperours were all of the Order of the *Garcer*.

1612 43. *Matthias*, Brother of *Rodolphus*, King of *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, and Archduke of *Austria*, in whose time were sown the seeds of that terrible War which had almost destroyed the Empire. Having no children of his own, he procured *Ferdinand* of *Gretz* to be declared Successour into his Estates. 7.

1619 44. *Ferdinand* of *Gretz*, Archduke of *Austria*, Son of *Charles* of *Gretz*, the younger Son of *Ferdinand*, the first, succeeded *Matthias* in all his Estates and Titles. A Prince more zealously affected to the See of *Rome* than any of his Predecessors, and a great enemy

of the Protestant Religion, occasioning thereby that long and bloody War in the Empire of Germany, not yet fully ended.

1637 45. **Ferdinand III.** Son of **Ferdinand** the 2. broke the great power of the **Swedes**, (called in for the support of the **German** liberty, and against the violent resolutions of his Father at the Battle of **Norlingen**) the twelfth Emperor of the House of **Habsburg**, and the ninth of the House of **Austria** without intermission. The cause of which is to be attributed to **Charles** the 5. who procured in his life-time that his Brother might be chosen *Rex Romanorum*, as his Successor in the Empire: a policy which hath been ever since continued by his Successors. And the **Germans** are the more willing to hearken to it, because the **Austrian** Princes are not only Natives of this Country, but better able to back out the Empire in its complete Majesty than any of the rest of that Nation are.

And to say truth, it is but need that some great Prince or father be entrusted, it who by the power and reputation of his own Estate may preserve the Honour of the Empire, confined in a manner within Germany, and there so weakened by the alienating of whole Countries from it, (some Titular acknowledgment excepted only) that it is nothing in effect but *magni nominis umbra*, the shadow of a mighty body, a meer empty Title. For if we look upon the present state and condition of it, we shall find it otherwise too weak to support the great and swelling Title of the *Roman* Empire. For as for the Empire itself, it hath some Countries reputed as parts of it, which yet acknowledge no Subjection; as **Belgium**, **Switzerland**, and **Denmark**: Some do acknowledge a kind of Subjection, but the Princes of them come not to the Imperial Diets; as the Dukes of **Savoy** and **Lorraine**, and some of the *Italian* Potentates: Finally, some both confess the Emperor to be their Sovereign, and that they owe Service to his Courts, which are the Princes and Cities of Germany only; but those so privileged, so exempted from his commands, so absolute and uncontrollable in their own Estates, that they care little for his power, and not much (if any thing) for his person; of which we shall speak more hereafter, when we come into the form of the publick Government. In the mean time, if we would know by what occasions the Empire became so infested, it may be said, that the reasons and occasions of it have been very many. As first, the weakness and improvidence of the *Caroline* Race, dismembering from it many powerful and wealthy Provinces, reserving only a bare Homage and some slight acknowledgment. 2. The Cunning of the Popes, who from the time of **Henry** the 4. to **Rodolph** of **Habsburg** had by their Excommunications and other practices so exercised the Emperours with intestine troubles, that they forced them in a manner to abandon Italy: insomuch that the said **Rodolph** finding the inconvenience of it, sold most of his Estates there to the fairest Chapmen. 3. This done, and the Popes knowing well enough that they could not wax strong in Italy, it they did not weaken the Emperor's estate in Germany, they first wrested out of their hands the Investiture of the Bishops, Abbots, and other Ecclesiastical Prelates, who being now made their own creatures, were so encreased both in Revenue and Power by little and little, and fortified with so many Immunities, that some of them grew in time to be Free Estates, all of them Princes of the Empire. 4. But fearing that this might not bring the Emperours low enough, they bated them

with continual Factions and perpetual Riots: which put them to a necessity of making what Friends they could, though they paid very dearly for them; and taking up what monies they could of the wealthier Cities, paying them in Exemptions and Royal Privileges, which they could not otherwise cancel or discharge the Debt. And unto this, the making of the Empire Elective gave no little help, few of them looking on the Empire but as Tenants for term of life, and therefore were more likely to discharge such Debts by impairing the publick Patrimony, which they had no hold in, than to diminish any thing of their own Estates. 6. But being the Title of Emperor was the greatest Honour which any of that Nation could be capable of, and such as by good husbandry might be made beneficial unto their posterity, (as we see what good uses have been made of it by the *Austrian* Family, ever since the time of **Rodolph** of **Habsburg**;) who would not part with some of the Imperial Rights, to advance his own House to an equal greatness? And herein many of the Emperours were exceeding faulty, who, to get the Empire to themselves, or leave it after them unto their posterity, dismembered from the same many Towns and fair Possessions, given by them to the Electors for their Votes and Suffrages. 7. A thing which the Electors understood sufficiently, and therefore were resolved to make the best of the market, knowing that the Commodity could be wanted of none but themselves: as in the Election of **Wenceslaus** Son of **Charles** the 4th. of whom it was but Ask and have what they have a mind to, by means whereof the Princes grew in time so strong, that there were few of them who durst not undertake a War against their Emperours. And this appeared by the Story of **Charles** the fifth, who, though the most puissant Emperor which had reigned in Germany since **Charles** the Great, yet found himself so over-matched by the ruffling Princes, that he was willing to resign the Empire to his Brother **Ferdinand**.

But to proceed: By these and every of these means the Body of the Empire came to be divided into many Estates, and those Estates to be made absolute and independent, as before is said. The principal wherof, which being described will make up the Chorography of this great Continent, are those of 1. **Cleveland**, 2. the Estates of the three Spiritual Electors, 3. the *Palatinate* of the *Rhine*, 4. *Alsacia*, 5. *Lorraine*, 6. *Saxonia* or *Schweben*, 7. *Bohemia*, 8. *Austria* and its Appendices, 9. the Confederation of *Wederaw*, 10. *Francia*, 11. *Wintenberg*, and 12. *Baden*, 13. the *Palatinate* of *Northgyn*, or the *Upper Palatinate*, 14. *Bohemia* and the incorporate Provinces, 15. *Pomerania*, 16. *Mecklenburg*, 17. the *Marquissate* of *Brandenburg*, 18. *Saxony*; and the Members of it, 19. the *Dukedoms* of *Brunswick* and *Lunenburg*, 20. the *Langravendome* of *Hesse*, 21. *Westphalia*, 22. *East-Friesland*. Such lesser States as, being absolute and free, are of lesser moment, shall be reduced (together with the Imperial Cities) to those several Provinces in which they are included, or out of which they were taken. As for the Province of *Hollstein*, or *Holland*, though it be Imperial, and in this respect by some accounted as a Province of Germany; yet being under the command of the King of *Denmark*, and by all Writers reckoned as a part of that Kingdom, I shall therefore speak of it. Some of these are thus censured by *Antonius*, a late Writer. They of *Saxonia* (saith he) are Whores, they of *Francia* Ravishers and Buggerers, they of *Bohemia* Hereticks, those of *Bavaria* Thieves, they of *Saxony* Drunkards, they of *Friesland* and *Westphalia* Swearers, and they of the *Palatinate* Gluttons. But I hope more charitably of them all than so. I know there is another division of this Country, made by the Emperor

MANT.

*Maximilian* at the Diet at *Colen*, Anno 1522. who, for the better raising both of men and money for all publick services, caused it to be divided into the ten Circles of service, *Saxony*, 2. *Upper Saxony*, 3. *Westphalia*, 4. Of 1. *Lower Saxony*, 5. Of the four Electors of that part. 6. *France*, 7. *Saxonia*, 8. *Bavaria*, 9. *Austria*, and 10. *Burgundy*. But that before proposed being the more particular, I shall follow that, according to the order before laid down; beginning first with those which, together with the *Belgick* Provinces and the *Dukedom* of *Lorraine*, contained anciently the Provinces of *Belgica* and *Germania Prima*, and some part of *Germania Secunda*, and made up the Kingdom of *Austrasia* strictly and specially so called.

## 1. CLEVELAND.

**CLEVELAND** or the Estates of the Duke of *Cleve*, before dismembered and divided betwixt the Competitors for the Dukedom on the death of the late Duke heretofore, Anno 1609, contained the *Dukedoms* of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, and *Berg*, and the Earldom of *Mark* or *March*, all lying in a ring together. And though these two last lie on the other side of the *Rhene*, and not so properly within in the old Precedents of the Kingdom of *Lorraine*, or any of the *Roman* Provinces before named, yet being they belonged all to the same Prince, not parted by the interposition of other Countries, they shall be handled here together as the same Estate.

1. The *Dukedom* of *CLEVE*, properly and distinctly so called, hath on the East the Countries of *Mark* and *Berg*, with some part of *Westphalen*, on the West *Gelderland* and some part of *Limburg*, on the North the Earldom of *Zutphen* and the Land of *Over-Yssel*, and on the South *Gulick*, and the Land of *Colen*. So called from *Cleve* the chief Town of it.

The Country is very fruitful both for Corn and Pasturage, well stocked with Cattel of all sorts for necessary use and pleasure; hath good store of Fowl, both tame and wild; is blessed also with an healthy Air, and, in a word, with all things needful for the life of man, well watered with the *Rhene*, the *Roor*, the *Dijssel*, the *Esar*, and the *Nijss*, common to this and the rest of the incorporate Provinces.

The places of most importance in it are, 1. *Cleve*, (in *Latine* *Clevo*) so called, because built on the fides of three little Hills (which the *Latines* call *Civi*) gently descending towards the Banks of the *Rhene*, which not far off divides it self into several Chances. An ancient Town, and of great note in former time, as appears by many old Foundations and other monuments of Antiquity continually digged up in the Fields adjoining; but chiefly by an old four-square Tower built on the highest of the three Hills, of great height and state, Founded by *Julius Caesar* as a Bulwark against the *Germans* inhabiting the farther side of the River. For proof of which, besides the old Tradition constantly maintained, there is an Inscription on the Gates of the Duke's Palace, near adjoining to it, which faith, Anno ab Urbe DCXCIII. C. Julius Dictator, his partibus subactis hanc Arcem fundavit, i.e. that in the year 698, from the building of *Rome*, *Julius Caesar* the Dictator, having subdued those parts of the Country, caused this Tower to be built. 2. *Santen*, on the banks of the *Rhene*, a Town of great Antiquity, as the Ruines of it do declare; supported by *Pignius* to be the *Trajana Colonia* of the Ancients. 3. *Wesel*, (in *Latine* *Vesalia*) a fair and rich Town, seated on the Confluence of the *Rhene* with the River of *Liippe*, which, rising in *Westphalia*, doth here lose it self: of great note for a College of Secular Canons built here by *Eberard* the 9th

Earl, Anno 840, or thereabouts, and an Hospital liberally endowed for old impotent persons. Founded by *Henry de Baers*, the Dukes Chancellor. A Town not subject to these Dukes, though within the Dukedom, being reckoned an Imperial City, and one of the *Hanse-Towns*; now neither so Imperial nor so free as formerly: possessed first with the *Spaniards*, with a Garrison of 3000 men (at the beginning of the War of *Cleve*) by *D. Lewis Valasco*, and from them taken by the States of the United Provinces, Anno 1628. 4. *Burick*, on the French side of the *Rhene*, over against *Wesel*, amongst goodly Corn-fields and pleasant Pastures. 5. *Duyburch*, or *Tuitcheburg*, in *Latine* called *Tentoburgum*, a Town of the ancient *Germans*, (as the name importeth) situate on the *Rhene*, betwixt the *Angra* and the *Roor*, two noted Rivers. A Town formerly of great Trading, and notably well built; Imperial, and one of the *Hanse*: but ceased to be Imperial when sold by *Rodolph* of *Habsburg* to *Theodorick* the ninth of that name, Earl of *Cleve*, together with 6. *Cranenburgh*, another Town of this Dukedom, but of lesser note. 7. *Emmerich*, on the *Rhene*, a well-frequented Town, remarkable for a very fair School. 8. *Rees*, 9. *Griet*, and 10. *Griethusen*, all upon the *Rhene*. 11. *Calcar*, a Town more within the Land, but not far from the River; grown wealthy by the trade of Cloathing, and the best Beer or Ale in these parts, sold thence abundantly into the Country round about. Not far from whence, at a place called *Auff de Baern*, it is supposed that *Caesar Germanicus* built his Bridge over the *Rhene*, when he went from *Petra Castra* against the *Maris*, a Nation of Germany. 12. *Gennep*, upon the *Niers* or *Nijss*, not far from its influx into the *Maas*: which together with *Duffels* and *Rixewald* were bought of *Sigismund*, the Emperour, by *Adolph* the first Duke of *Cleve*, for a great sum of money.

South of the Land of *Cleve*, betwixt it and *Colen*, lieth the County of *MUERS*, extended all along on the banks of the *Rhene*; a distinct State, the Earl of which is subject to no other Prince but the Emperour only; so called from *Muers*, the chief Town of it, situate on the French side of the *Rhene*, over against *Duyburch*. Next Towns to which are, 2. *Orfey*, 3. *Angur*; of which little memorable. A small Territory, but in a very fruitful Soil. The neighbourhood whereof to the Land of *Colen* (to which it serveth as an Outwork upon that side) preferred it in former times from the Dukes of *Cleve*, who otherwise, no doubt, either by Arms or Marriage had been masters of it, as they were of the adjoining Provinces on both sides of the River.

2. **GULICK-LAND**, or the Dukedom of *Gulick*, hath on the East the County of *Muer*, and the Land of *Colen*, on the West *Gelderland* and *Limburg*, on the North *Cleve*, and on the South the rest of the Land of *Colen*. The Air and Soil are much of the same nature as in *Cleve*; save that here is a greater plenty of Wood for dying, and a better breed of Horses than in the other, The Seat of the *Menapii* in the times of old.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Gulick*, in *Latine* *Juliacum*, (whence the French call it *Jaliers*) known by that name in the Itinerary of *Antoninus*, sufficient proof for the Antiquity thereof, but not otherwise famous, seated upon the River *Roor*, the chief Seat heretofore of the Dukes of *Gulick*, before the uniting hereof with *Cleve*; and, since the dissolution of that Estate, possessed sometimes by the States of the United Provinces, and sometimes by the *Spaniards*, called in by the Competitors to assert their Titles. 2. *Dueren*, on the same River, the *Marcedurum* of the old Writers; and of late memorable for the long Siege which it held against *Charles* the fifth

in







the Town and Territory of *Soest*; and finally by *John* the 3. the Dukedoms of *Berg* and *Gulick*, as Heir thereof by his Mother *Mary*, sole Daughter and Heir of *William* the fifth and sixth, the last Duke thereof. To which great height this ancient and noble Family had not long attained, and thereby made themselves and their Sons and Daughters fit Matches for the greatest Princes, but it pleased God to bring to its fatal end, and by that means to dissipate this brave Estate in the hands of Strangers, as shall be shewed in the conclusion of this Catalogue of

#### The Earls and Dukes of *CLEVE*.

- A.Cb.*  
 717 1. *Elias Grallius*, Companion in the Wars of *Charles Martel*.  
 732 2. *Theodorick Earl of Cleve*, and Lord of *Teiservant*.  
 755 3. *Rainold* Son of *Theodorick* Earl of *Cleve*, and *Teiservant*.  
 767 4. *Conon*, of great fame in Arms under *Charles* the Great.  
 778 5. *John* Son of *Conon*, married the Daughter of *Michael* Czaropates Emp. of *Constantinople*.  
 790 6. *Robert*, the eldest Son of *John*.  
 798 7. *Baldwin*, the Brother of Earl *Robert*. After whose death, Anno 830. the Earldom of *Teiservant* was taken out of it, and made the portion of *Robert* a younger Son, from whom descended the two Houses of *March* and *Berg*.  
 830 8. *Ludowick* Son of *Baldwin*.  
 834 9. *Eberhard* Brother of *Ludowick*; who gave *Teiservant* to *A.Cb.* his Brother *Robert*.  
 843 10. *Luithardus* Earl of *Cleve*.  
 878 11. *Baldwin II.*  
 918 12. *Arnold*.  
 968 13. *Wignan* Son of *Arnold*.  
 1004 14. *Conrade*, made an Earl of the Empire in the life of his Father.  
 1045 15. *Theodorick II.*  
 1088 16. *Theodorick III.* Companion of *Godfrey* of *Bonillon* in the *Holy Land*.  
 1114 17. *Arnold II.* Brother of *Theodorick* the third.  
 1161 18. *Theodorick IV.* Brother of *Arnold III.*  
 1205 20. *Arnold IV.*  
 1218 21. *Theodorick V.*  
 1229 22. *Theodorick VI.*  
 1247 23. *Theodorick VII.*  
 1255 24. *Theodorick VIII.*  
 1271 25. *Theodorick IX.*  
 1290 26. *Orbo* Son of *Theodorick*.  
 1309 27. *Theodorick X.* Brother of *Orbo*.  
 1325 28. *John* Brother of *Theodorick*, and Canon of *Colen*; the last of the masculine issue of

29. *Adolphus* the VII. of *March*, Son of *Adolph* the 6. of *March* and *Mary* of *Cleve*, first Archbishop of *Colen*, (as fix of this House of *March* had been (almost) successively before him) succeeded on the death of his Uncle *John* to the Earldom of *Cleve*, inaugurated thereunto by *Charles* the Fourth.

- 1389 30. *Adolph II.* of *Cleve*, and VIII. of *March*, created the first Duke of *Cleve* by the Emperor *Sigismund* at the Council of *Constance*, Anno 1417.  
 1443 31. *John III.* Son of *Adolph*, Duke of *Cleve*, Earl of *March*, and Lord of *Ravenstein*.  
 1481 32. *John II.* of the rank of Dukes, and the IV. of the Earls.  
 1521 33. *John III.* Duke of *Cleve*, and Earl of *March*, &c. by descent from his Father; and Duke of *Gulick* and *Berg* in right of his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *William* the last Duke thereof.  
 1539 34. *William* Son of *John* the 3. and *Mary* his Wife, Daughter and sole Heir of *William* the last Duke of *Gulick* and *Berg*, Father of the Lady *Anne* of *Cleve*, one of the Wives of *Henry* the 8. of *England*. He contended very strongly against *Charles* the fifth for the Dukedom of *Geldres*; but, being too weak for so great an Adversary, made his Submission to him at *Venlo*, and so saved his Estates.  
 1584 35. *John-William*, Son of the former *William*, during the life of *Charles Frederick*, his elder Brother, was Bishop of *Munster*; on whose death Anno 1575. he resigned that dignity, and in the end succeeded his Father in his whole Estates, which he managed with great piety and prudence till the year 1610. and then died issueless; the last of that ancient and noble Family of the Dukes of *Cleve*. After whose death much quarrel and contention grew about the Succession betwixt the several Competitors and Pretenders to it: of which the principal were, 1. *Leopold*, Archduke of *Austria*, pretending an Investiture from the Emperor *Rudolphus* in the Dukedom of *Juliers*, to whom, for want of Heirs-males, the Estate was said to be inherited. 2. *John-George*, Duke of *Saxony*, descended from *Sibyll*, Daughter of Duke *John* the third; at whose Marriage with *John-Frederick* the Elector of *Saxony*, Anno 1535, it was said to have been solemnly agreed upon, that on the falling of the Heirs-males of *Cleve*, the Issue of that Marriage should succeed therein. 3. *George-William*, Duke of *Prussia*, Son of *John Sigismund* the Elector of *Brandenburg*, by the Lady *Anne* his Wife, eldest Daughter of *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, Duke of *Prussia*, and of *Maria Eleonora*, the eldest Sister and next Heir of the Duke deceased. 4. *Wolf-gangus-Gulielmus*, Palatine of *Newburg*, Son of *Magdalen*, the younger Sister of that *Mary*, who claimed the Estate as nearest Kinsman by one degree to the said last Duke. And though the right seemed most apparently on the Duke of *Brandenburg*, the Estate in fact, pretended by the Duke of *Saxony*, being formerly cut off by Imperial authority; and that pretended to by the Duke of *Newburg* not of force in *Germany*; yet

yet being that *Leopold* was in Arms, and had already forced a possession of *Juliers* and of most parts of that Countrey, the two Princes of *Brandenburg* and *Newburg* soon agreed the controversy, and by the help of the Protestant Princes their Confederates recovered the greatest part of it from the hands of *Leopold*. But the Palatine of *Newburg*, not content with his Partage, first married with a Daughter of the Duke of *Bavaria*, then reconciled himself to the Church of *Rome*, and called in the *Spanish* Arms, under the command of *Marquess Spinola*, to abate his Quarrel: which made *George-William*, Son of the Elector of *Brandenburg*, and the Lady *Anne*, to call in the Forces of the State, under the command of *Maurice* Earl of *Nassau*, after Prince of *Orange*. The Issue of which War was this, that *Spinola* possessed himself of *Wesel*, *Aken*, *Mulheim*, *Duffeldorp*, and most other places of importance in *Berg* and *Gulick*; with *Rees* and *Emmerich* in the five Towns of *Cleve*, and almost the whole County of *March*. And though most parts of these Estates have been delivered since to the rightful Owners, yet other places of importance are detained from them. Which notwithstanding that they both pretend to keep for the use of those Princes in whose cause they stood; yet when such long parties will win the Game; such Alterations as have happened in the chance of War, by the reciprocal winning and losing of some Towns on both sides, not much conducing to the benefit of the rightful Owners.

The Arms of these Princes were, 1. *Gules* over an Escabeau in Fesse *Argent*, a Caruncle pierced, pommelled and flowered *Or*, for the Dukedom of *Cleve*, a *Or*, a Lion *Azure*, armed *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Gulick*. The Arms of *Berg* and *March* I have no where found.

#### 2. The Estates of the Three ELECTOR-BISHOPS.

As pertaining to the Estates of *Cleve* are those of the Spiritual Electors of the Empire of *Germany*, *Colen*, *Menz*, and *Triers*; not so contiguous and continuous as those of *Cleveland*, and therefore to be laid out severally by their Metes and Boundaries. And first for

*COLEN-Land*, or the Estate of the Archbishop and Elector of *Colen*. It is bounded on the East with the Dukedom of *Berg*, divided from it by the *Rhene*, on the West with *Gulick*, on the North with *Cleve* it self, and the County of *Munster*, and on the South extending to the Land of *Triers*. The ancient Inhabitants heretofore were the *Chibi*, in former times possessed of the Countries of *Berg* and *March*; but, being warred on by the *Germans* bordering next upon them, they were by the clemency of *Agrippa*, then Lieutenant of *Gaul*, received into protection, and as well by placed along the *French* side of the *Rhene*, as well for defence of the Borders of the *Roman* Empire, as for their own security against that Enemy. Won from the *Romans* by the *French* in the Reign and under the conduct of *Childeric*, An. 412, or thereabouts; and from the *French* by the Emperor *Orbo* the first, An. 949. By *Orbo* the 2. made a part of the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, or at the least given by him unto *Charles* of *France*, the first Duke thereof. After whose death, deceasing without Issue-male, the Town of *Colen* and many other pieces upon the *Rhene* were seized on by *Orbo* the 3. and by him restored to the Empire. Since that time the City of *Colen* hath remained Imperial, and of late times incorporated amongst the *Hanse*-Towns; but the Territory near unto it, and a great part of *Westphalia*, subject immediately to the Bishop. The Bishop's See was first founded here by *S. Maternus*, one of the Disciples of *S. Peter*, as hath been constantly affirmed by

old Tradition: but howsoever it was an Episcopal See, without all question, in the time of *Constance*, *Maternus*, Bishop heretofore, subscribing amongst others to the Council of *Arles*, Anno 326. And being *Colen* was in those times the Metropolis of the Province of *Germania Secunda*, the Bishop had the power of a Metropolitan; according to the rule and observation so often mentioned. Afterwards when the Empire was made Elective, these Bishops, with their brethren of *Menz* and *Triers*, were made three of the seven which were to nominate and elect the succeeding Emperor: after which time it is no wonder that they grew both in Power and Patrimony.

Places of most importance within this Electorate are, 1. *Bonn*, situate on the banks of the *Rhene*, in the most pleasant and fruitful place of all the Country; the ordinary Residence of the Archbishop, whose House or Palace here is said to be one of the fairest in all *Germany*. By *Tacitus* it is called *Bonna*, and sometimes *Castra Bonna*, the Wintering-camp in his time of the Sixth Legion. 2. *Nuy*, by the same Writer called *Novesium*, (*Novesium* by *Antoninus*) seated on the *Elp*, not far from its fall into the *Rhene*; the break-neck of the glories of *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, who being resolved to get this Town into his hands, as a convenient pass into *Germany*, lay for long before it, that he left the opportunity of joining with King *Edward* the 4. of *England*, whom he had purposely invited to the War of *France*, and yet was slain so without it. By means whereof he grew so low in reputation, that he was undermined by the *French*, defied by the *Swissers*, and at last overthrown and slain by that beggarly Nation. 3. *Ernae*, or *Adenach*, by *Marcellinus* called *Antenacum*, one of the ten Garrisons erected by the *Romans* on the banks of the *Rhene*, to secure their Province from the *Germans*; the other nine being *Confluentes*, *Boppard*, *Worms*, *Bing*, *Zabern*, *Altrip*, *Seltz*, *Strasbourg*, and *Wassleben*. 4. *Lintz*, seated on the same River also. 5. *Sonnin*, a Town of good repute. 6. *Zulp*, now a Village of no esteem but for the Antiquities of it, by *Tacitus* and *Antoninus* called *Tollacum*, most memorable for the great Victory which *Clevis* the first Christian King of the *French* (upon a Vow made in the heat of the Fight to embrace the Gospel) never obtaining against the whole power of the *Almans*, never precluding after that to invade his Territories. 7. *Rhinberg*, commonly called *Bereck*, the chief Northern Town of all the Bishopricks, situate on the *Rhene*, (as the name imports) there where the Lands of this Bishop as also of the Dukes of *Cleve* and the Earls of *Munster* meet upon a point. A Town which for these 60 years hath been of little use or profit to the right Owner, possessed sometimes by the *Spaniards*, sometimes by the Confederate States; for each commodiously feared, as opening a passage up the River, and receiving great Customs on all kind of Merchandise passing to and fro. But having finally been possessed by the *Spaniards* from the year 1606 till 1633, it was then regained for the State by *Henry* of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, with the loss of no more than 60 men: there being found in the Town 30 brass pieces of Ordnance, 750 barrels of powder, with Vituals and Ammunition of all sorts thereunto proportionable. 8. *Colen*, situate on the *Rhene*, first built by the *Chibi* before mentioned, and by them called *Oppidum Ubiorum*; afterwards, in honour of *Agrippa* (Daughter of *Germanicus*, and Wife of *Claudius*) who was here born, made a *Roman* Colony, and called *Colonia Agrippina*, and sometimes by way of eminence *Colonia* only; thence the name of *Colen*. A rich, large, populous and magnificent City, containing above five miles in compass, in which are numbered

19 Hospitals, 37 Monasteries of both Sexes, 30 Chapels of our Lady, 9 Parishes, and 10 Collegiat Churches, besides the Cathedral, being a Church of vast greatness, but of little beauty, and not yet finished: the Metropolitan whereof is Chancellor of Italy, the second of the three Electors, and writes himself Duke of *Wesphalen* and *Angriaria*. Nigh to this Town did *Cæsar* with incredible expedition make a Bridge over the *Rhene*, which more terrified the barbarous enemy than the reports of his valour. So powerful is laborious industry, that it overcometh all diftaters, and maketh the most unpassable waters void to heriack resolutions.

In this Town also is said to lie the bodies of the Three wife men which came from the East to worship our Saviour, vulgarly called the *three Kings of Colen*. The whole Story is at large written in Tables which are fastened unto their Tombs; the pith whereof is this: The first of them, called *Melchior*, an old man with a large Beard, offered Gold, unto a King; the second, called *Caspar*, a beardless young man, offered Frankincense, as unto God; the third called *Balthasar*, a *Blackmore*, with a spreading Beard, offered Myrrhe, as unto a Man ready for his Sepulchre. That they were of *Arabia*, the Table faith is probable. 1. Because they came from the East, and so is *Arabia* in respect of *Hiernsalem*; and 2. because it is said in the *72 Psalm*, *The Kings of Arabia shall bring gifts*. As for their Bodies, there are there said to have been translated by *Helena* the Mother of *Constantine*, unto *Constantinople*, from thence by *Eusebius*, Bishop of *Milain*, removed unto *Milain*; and finally brought hither by *Rainold*, Bishop hereof, Anno 1164. This is the substance of the History, which for my part I reckon amongst the *Apocrypha*, (except it be their coming from some part of *Arabia*) but have not leisure in this place to refel the Fable.

As for the temporal Estate of the Bishops of *Colen*, it came unto them specially by the munificence of the Emperours of the House of *Saxony*; the Dukedom of *Engern*, containing a good part of *Wesphalen*, being acquired unto this See by *Bruno*, once Archbishop hereof, one of the younger Sons of the Emperor *Henry* the first, furnished the Fowler, with the consent of *Orto* the first, his elder Brother. To which was added not long after the whole Land of *Colen* (as we have formerly described it) by *Orto* the 2. which being formerly a part of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*, was taken out of it, and settled on the Bishops hereof, at such time as the Dukedom of *Lorrain* was erected by him; such pieces only as are found on the other side of the *Rhene* (neither great nor many) being added by the Wit and Industry of the following Bishops: exceedingly increased both in Power and Patrimony by the addition of *Liege* to this Electorate; it being of late the constant custom of the Canons of *Liege* to chuse the Archbishop of *Colen* for their Prince and Pastor.

Next to the Bishoprick of *Colen* lieth the Land of *TRIERS*, extended all along the course of the *Moselle*, from the Dukedom of *Lorrain* on the South, beyond the Influx of that River into the *Rhene* at the City of *Confluentz*, where it bordereth on the Land of *Colen*. It is bounded on the East with *Luxemburg*, as on the West with that part of *Franconia* which lieth below the confluence of the said two Rivers, and is now called *Rhineweg*; more Southward on that side with the Country of *West-riech* and the Dukedom of *Zweibruck*, parts of the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*. The Country towards *Lorrain* and *Luxemburg* is somewhat wild and barren, more fruitful about *Triers* it self and the bank of the *Rhene*; in all parts generally more pleasant than profitable, the greatest Riches of it lying in Woods and Minerals. The Bishop's See was here first erected by *Encherius*, a Di-

sciple and follower of *S. Peter*. The reality whereof is not only testified by the *Martyrologies*, but by *Methodius*, a Writer of approved credit, who adds *Valerius*, and *Maternus* for his next Successors; the line Episcopal continuing till the Council of *Arles*, Anno 326. *Agittius* Bishop of *Triers* subscribing to the Acts thereof. From this time forwards, and before, the Bishop had the reputation and authority of a Metropolitan, the City of *Triers* being anciently the Metropolis of *Belgica Prima*, within which it stands. It increased exceedingly by being made one of the three Electors of the Spirituality, though the last in order, and Chancellor to the Emperor for the Realm of *France*: the Fortunes of which Realm it followed, till wrested from it, with the rest of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*, by the German Emperours.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Confluentz*, or *Coblentz*, the *Confluens* of *Antoninus*, so called because seated on the Confluence or Meeting of the *Rhene* and the *Moselle*; the Station anciently of the first *Legion*. A populous and well-built Town, and seated in a pleasant and fertile Country. 2. *Erenbrefheim*, over against *Coblentz*, on the other side of the *Rhene*, beautified with a strong Castle of the Bishop's, mounted upon a lofty Hill, which not only gives a gallant prospect to the eye, but commands both the Town and River. 3. *Boppard*, seated on the *Rhene*, and called *quæsi Bonport*, from the commodiousness of the Creek (upon which it standeth) for the use of Shipping: one of the Forts (as *Confluentz* before mentioned) also was erected by the Romans on the *Rhene* for defence of *Gaul* against the Germans; occasioning in time both Towns. It was once miserably wasted by *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall* and King of the Romans, because the Bishop of *Triers* agreed not unto his Election, but soon recovered of those hurts. The ancient name hereof in the *Itinerary* of *Antoninus* is supposed to be *Idobriaca*. It was pawned to the Bishops of *Triers* by *Henry* the 7. and not yet redeemed. 4. *Sarbrucken*, on the edge of *Lorrain*, (by *Antoninus* called *Pons Sarnæ*) seated on the River or Brook called *Sar*, (whence it taketh the name) at the fall thereof into the *Moselle*; possessed at the present by a Branch of the House of *Nassau*, (but Homagers of this Elector) entituled hence, according to the Dutch fashion, Counts of *Nassau* in *Sarbruck*. 5. *Veldentz*, and 6. *Beiffeln*, on the *Moselle*, of which nothing memorable. 7. *Treves*, or *Triers*, in *Latine Augusta Trevirorum*, the principal City of the *Trevis*, who possessed this Tract; seated upon the *Moselle* also; the Metropolis of the Province of *Belgica Prima*, and honoured with the Residence of the Vicar or Lieutenant-General for the whole Diocess of *Gaul*; by consequence the Seat of a Metropolitan when it fulfilled to the Gospel. Of such antiquity is it, that it is said to have been founded 150 years before the City of *Rome*: of no great beauty of it self, and as little Trading; the River not being capable of Ships of burthen, and the Air generally cloudy and inclined to rain, that it is by some called merely *Cloaca Planetarum*. It passed sometimes among the number of Imperial Cities, but now acknowledged the Elector for the Lord thereof; by whom it was made an University, one of the ancientest in all Germany, and of as much repute for the Study of good Arts and Sciences as the best amongst them. 8. *Ober-Wesel*, or *Valsala superior*, (so called to distinguish it from *Wesel* in the Dukedom of *Cleve*, which is *Valsala inferior*, or the *Under-Wesel*) the farthest place of this District, seated on the *Rhene*, not far from *Baccarbach* a Town of the *Palatinate*; of no great note, but that it is accounted for a Town Imperial.

This Country anciently was part of the great and famous Earldom of *Moselle*, denominated from the River *Moselle*, along the Course whereof it was first erected; an

an Estate founded by the diherited Sons of *Cledian*, second King of the *French*, at the same time (and on the same occasion also) in which the Earldom of *Ardenne* was erected by them, of which we have already spoken when we were in *Belgium*: this of the two the more obnoxious to the power of the Kings of *Metz*, as lying nearer to the Court, and so more in light the other being farther off, in Countries far less cultivated, but more defensible. This Earldom comprehending, besides this of *Triers*, the Countries of *Zweibrucken* and *West-riech*, and so much of the *Lower Palatinate* as lieth on the French side of the *Rhene*, occasioned the Princes of it to be much looked after; and they maintained their Port to the very last: in the time of the Emperor *Henry* the first, furnished the Fowler, was thought by him a fit Husband for his Daughter *Gerborg*, married after his decease to *Lewis* furnished *Transmarine*, King of *France*; and *Gertrude*, Daughter of *Theodorick*, who came after *Gilbert*, was married to *Henry* surnamed *Gozelo*, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, and by him made the Mother of another *Henry*, Successor unto *Orto* the 3. in the Roman Empire. Impoverished not a little both in Power and Patrimony by the erection to the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, there grew some Feuds between those Houses, occasioning the death of *Albert*, another of these Earls, slain (as it is said by *Lactius*) by *Godfrey*, Son of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorrain*; more probably by some other Prince of the House of *Ardenne*, it not being founded in any other approved Author, that *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* was the Father of any Children. But this Difference being reconciled by the Marriage of *Bertha*, Daughter of *Simon* Earl hereof, with *Thierrie* the 9. Duke of *Lorrain*, and the Family of these Earls expiring in a short time after, this part of the Estate was seized on by the Bishops of *Triers*; that part of the *Palatinate* which lieth on the Gallick side of the *Rhene*, by the Bishops of *Metz*, *Spire*, *Wormes*, and the Princes *Palatine*; the rest being taken in by the Dukes of *Lorrain*, who did still enjoy it: the Emperours of those times being either willing to it, or not able to help it.

3. The Bishoprick of *MENTZ* is not laid out by Bounds and Limits, as the other, because the Patrimony and Estate thereof doth not lie together, dispersed for the most part among *Franconia*, intermixed with the Lands & Towns of the Princes *Palatine*, the Bishops of *Wormes*, *Spire*, and others. So that the Temporal Estate of this Elector is every way inferior unto those of *Triers* and *Colen*; superior unto both in place and dignity, he being the first in rank of the whole Electoral College, Chancellor for the Empire, and in all Meetings sitteth at the right hand of the Emperor. The Bishop's See was first placed here, as some report by *S. Crescens*, one of the Disciples of *S. Paul*, of whose being sent by him into *Gallia* (for so the Ancient Writers understand *Galatia*) the Apostle speaketh 2 Tim. 4. Though others with more probability feat him at *Treves* in *Daulphine*. But whether it were here or there, certain it is, that anciently this City was a See Episcopal; *Marinus*, the Bishop hereof subscribing to the Acts of the Council of *Colen*, Anno 347. And if a Bishop, certainly a Metropolitan Bishop, this City being in those times the Metropolis of the Province of *Germania Prima*. But Christianity being worn out of these parts of Germany by the Conquest of the *French*, *Almans*, and other Infidels, was again restored in this Tract by *Boniface*, an *Englism*, man, the first Archbishop of *Metz*, of this new Plantation, (in and about the time of *Pepin* furnished the *Grass*, Major of the Palace to the French Kings, and Father of *Carl*), who, for the Orthodoxy of his Doctrine, and the number of Churches planted by him, hath been deservedly honoured with The title of the Apostle of Germany.

Towns of most note belonging to the Bishops hereof are, 1. *Metz*, it self, the *Magnificence* of the Ancients, so called from the River of *Maine*, formerly *Mogus* and *Mogonia* in the *Latine*, (now better known by the name of *Maine*) opposite to the fall whereof into the *Rhene* it was built of old, so having the command of both Rivers; and for that cause made the Seat of a Roman Officer, commonly called the Duke of *Metz*, who had a charge of the Frontiers, and especially of those ten Garrisons planted on the banks of the *Rhene*, spoken of before. It is stretched out in great length on the River's side, but not of arduous breadth; well built, and populous towards the water, in other parts not well inhabited. The publick Buildings generally are very large and beautiful, the House built according to the old Roman Model; the most magnificent whereof is the Bishop's Palace, who is the Immediate Lord both of the Town and Territory, extended on both sides of the *Rhene*, fruitful in all natural Commodities and abounding with most excellent Wines. Of good note also for an University here founded by *Theodorick*, one of the Electors, but especially for the Art of Printing, which was here invented, or perfected at the least, and made fit for use. 2. *Bing*, seated on the *Rhene*, another of the Garrison-Towns erected by the Romans on the Banks of that River. In a small Island of which, not far from this Town, is a Tower or Callet called the *Mons-turm*, i. e. the Tower of Mice, built by one *Hatto* (or *Hanno*) Archbishop of *Metz*, Anno 900, or thereabouts, who, in a year of great scarcity, pretending to relieve the poor people oppressed with Famine, caused them to be gathered together into an old Barn, where he burnt them all, saying, They were the Rats, and Mice which devoured the Corn. After which barbarous act he was so persecuted by these *Vermine*, that to avoid them, he was fain to build a Palace in the midst of the *Rhene*, whither the Rats and Mice followed him, and at last devoured him. 3. *Lantfeld*, 4. *Haford*, 5. *Oxenford*, 6. *Alderberg*, 7. *Middleberg*, 8. *Corlofsadt*, the Birth place of *Carolfus*, of great note in the time of *Luther*. 9. *Bischoffstein*, 10. *Königsberg*, (*Mons regius* in *Latine*) the Birth place of *Joannes de Monte*, a famous Mathematician, as appears by his Comment upon *Ptolemy's Almagest*. Most of which Towns being in *Frankland*, though of his Electorate, were not gained in gross by these Electors, as were the Land of *Colen* and District of *Triers*, but piece-meal in a manner, and by retail; partly upon the failure of the House of *Schwarben*, Dukes of *Franconia* also, partly by the munificence of the German Emperours, but specially by making the best use of their Votes and suffrages in the Choice of the Emperours, which they did not part withal for nothing. Such Towns hereof as lie on the French side of the *Rhene* were gained by like means upon the expiration of the House of *Moselle*.

### 3. The PALATINATE of the RHENE.

THE PALATINATE of the RHENE is bounded upon the East with the Dukedom of *Wirttemberg* and some part of *Franconia*, with the refidue thereof and the River of *Maine* on the North, on the South with *Elffers* or *Alfatia*, and on the West with the Land of *Triers*; extended in length from *Conft* to *Gernersheim*, North and South, 72 miles, and in breadth from *Zweibrucken* to *Lauden*, East and West, 90 miles.

It is called the *Lower Palatinate*, to difference it from the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, which is called the *Upper*; the *Palatinate* name of the *Rhene*, because lying on the banks of that famous River. The whole Country is said to be the most pleasant part of all Germany, stored with all sorts of Fruits and Metals, abounding with those cool Wines which

growing on the banks of the *Rhene*, have the name of *Rhenish*; adorned with many goodly Towns, both for strength, populousness, and beauty; and finally, watered with the famous River of the *Rhene*, and the *Neccar*.

The Religion of this Country, and that of the *Upper Palatinate*, which depends upon it, hath much varied since the first Reformation established by *Frederick* the second according to the Form and Doctrine of the Confession of *Angiward*, the Doctrine and Discipline of the *Lutheran* being introduced by *Frederick* the third, the *Lutheran* Form restored again by *Lewis of Ludowick* the fifth, after his death exchanged by the ends of some needy Statists, who could not otherwise raise their Fortunes than by invading the Tithes and Glebe, and other poor remainders of the Church's Patrimony; of which the Clergy being universally deprived throughout this Country, and reduced to miserable poor stipends, by the name of a *Competency*, became so contemptible, and neglected by all sorts of men, that at the last the Church of the *Palatinate* was in the same condition with the Church of *Israel* under the Reign of *Jeroboam*, when Priests were made out of the meanest of the people. And for the Government of the Churches, though moulded to the *Geneva* Plat-form as near as it might be, yet were those Princes loth to leave too much power in the hands of the Elderships, and therefore did appoint four superior Officers to have an eye on them, whom they called *Inspectores & Presbyteri*, their Power being much the same with that of the particular Superintendents amongst the *Lutherans*; and over them a standing Consistory consisting of three Ministers and as many Counsellors of State, of the Prince's nominating, who in his name were to take care of all things which concerned the Church. A Temperament for which they were beholden to *Erasmus*, a Doctor of Physick in the University of *Heidelberg*, who made this Pill, to purge Presbytery of some Popish humours which secretly lay hid in the body of it. But this whole Model and Religion of the Country is much changed of late, and the Religion of the Church of *Rome* restored in most parts thereof since the Conquest of them by the *Spaniards* and *Bavarians*, which before we speak of.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Mosbach*, a pretty neat Town on the banks of the *Neccar*, and a Prefecture, not far from the borders of *Wurtemberg*; 2. *Ludenberg*, near the influx of the same River into the *Rhene*; the moiety whereof was brought by *Rupertus*, the Emperor, and *Palatine* of the Earls of *Holstein*, An. 1571, the other moiety belonging to the Bishop of *Wormes*; 3. *Weinheim*, a small Town not far from *Ludenberg*, belonging once to the Arch-Bishop of *Mentz*, but on some controversy arising about the Title, adjudged unto the said *Rupertus* and his Heirs for ever. 4. *Sieffelen*, in the same Tract, well seated but not very large, laid with the Castle of *Stralburg* to the said *Rupertus* by *Sigfride* (or *Sigfride*) of *Stralburg*, the said Heir bequeath, An. 1547. 5. *Heidelberg*, on the right shore of the *Neccar*, (going down the water) compassed on three sides with Mountains and lying open only towards the West, which makes the Heir thereof to be very unhealthy. The chief Beauty of it lieth in one long Street, extended in length from East to West: on the South-east side whereof is a fair & pleasant Market-place, and not far off a very high Mountain called *Königsstuhl*, (that is to say, the *King's Seat*) upon the middle ascent whereof is the Castle, where the Princes Electors use to keep their Courts, and on the very Summit or top thereof, the ruins of an old Tower blown up with Gun-powder. A Town of no great bigness, nor very populous, there being but one Church in it, which was used in the

time of my Author for Prayer and Preaching: the rest being either ruined, or employed unto other uses, if not repaired again, since the *Spaniards* became masters of it, for more frequent Masses. However, it had the reputation of being the chief Cities of this *Palatinate*, not long since furnished with a great and gallant Library, which for choice and number of Books (especially Manuscripts) was thought not to be followed in all *Europe*; (sic) matched if not over-matched, by the famous *Bodleian* Library of *Oxford*. Most of them to the great prejudice of the protestant Cause were carried to *Rome*, and other places of that party, when the Town was taken by the *Spaniards*, Anno 1620. Finally for the Town it self, it was once part of the possessions of the Bishop of *Wormes*, from whom it was taken by the *Palatines*; and it is now famous for being the Seat of the *Palgrave*, the Sepulchred *Rodolphus Agricola*, and for a University founded by the Emperor and *Palatine Rupertus*, An. 1346. 6. *Bacharach*, on the Banks of the *Rhene*, so called *quasi Bach ara*, for the excellent Wines. 7. *Coblenz*, on the other side of the water; near unto which is the old and fair Castle called *Pfalz*, from whence the name *Pfalz-grave*, or *off-grave* seemeth to some to have been derived. 8. *Oppenheim*, a strong Town, which together with *Kesferslautern* an *Ingelheim* were given to the *Palatines* by *Wenceslaus*, and after settled on them by *Rupertus* the Emperor and *Palatine* for 100000 Florens, Anno 1421. 9. *Creutznach*, called anciently *Staronsus*. 10. *Frankendale*, lately a Monastery only, but being well served by such of the *Netherlands*, who to avoid the fury of the Duke of *Alva* fled thither, is now a Town of principal strength. 11. *Gernersheim*; and 12. *Mannheim*, a well-fortified Town, seated on the Confluence of *Rhine* and *Neccar*.

On the Eastern part of the Country standeth 13. *Ladenburg*, situate on the little River *Tauber*, the farthest bound of the *Palatinate* towards the North-east, there adjoining to the rest of *Frankendale*. And on West side the Towns of 14. *Neustadt*, 15. *Kesferslautern*, in Latin called *Cæsarea Lutra*, once a Town Imperial, from which, and from its situation, on the River *Lauter*, it received this name. 16. *Zweibrücken*, inveighed with a large and ample Territory round about, called the Country of *Zweibrücken*, the Patrimony and Title of a younger House of the *Pfalgrave*, whom the Latin Writers call *Principi-Bipontani*, the French the Princes of *Denzpont*, 17. *Simmeren*, on the North-west point of it, where it meets with the district of *Trier*; the Title of another Branch of the *Palatine* Family, called the Duke of *Simmeren*, situate in that part of the Country which is called *Wischgraben*, of which *Zweibrücken* is also part. In all there are contained within the *Palatinate* 24 walled Towns and 12 fair Palaces of the Prince: most of which they have added to their Estates within little more than 400 years. Such excellent managers have they been of their own Estates, so potent in ordering the affairs of the Empire both in War and Peace, and so ingrafted themselves into the most notable Families of *Germany*, that I may well say with *Terentius*, *Non est alia Germaniae Familia cui plus debeat Nobilitas*.

Within the Limits of this Country, and Intermixed with the Lands of the Princes *Palatine*, are the Bishopricks of *Spire* and *Wormes*; both ancient of great Revenue, but Feudatories for a great part of their Estates to these Electors. Of these more towards the head of the *Rhene*, and on the *Gallic* side thereof stands the City of *Spire*; by *Ptolemy* called *Nemagus*, from the newness of the building when that name was given by *Antoninus*, *Civitas Nemetur*, from the *Nemetes*, who possessed this Tract; and sometimes *Spira*, by which name it doth still

con.

continue. A Town Imperial, and anciently a Bishop's See. *Tiffi* the Bishop hereof subscribing to the Acts of the Council of *Colen*, Anno 347. A neat Town, and very delightably seated; of great repute, by reason of the Imperial Chamber, the Sovereign Court of Judicature of all the Empire, capable of Appeals from the Tribunals of all Princes and free States thereof. A Court which first followed the Emperor in all his Removes, (as anciently the *King's Bench* in *England*) but by *Maximilian* the Emperor first made sedentary, and fixed at *Frankfurt*; removed after to *Wormes*, and finally to this City by *Charles* the fifth. Sufficiently famous in that the name of *Primates* was here taken up, given to the Princes and free Cities following the Reformed Religion, upon their legal Protestation here exhibited. More down the water and on the same shore thereof, stands the City of *Wormes*, one of those built upon the *Rhene* for defence of *Gaul* against the *Germans*; by *Ptolemy* called *Borbetomagus* by *Antonine* *Civitas Wormensis*, whence the modern name; but generally *Civitas Angionum*, from the *Angiones*, the old Inhabitants of that town, whose chief City it was. A Town Imperial as the former, and a See Episcopal as that is, and as ancient too; *Viktor* the Bishop hereof subscribing to the Acts of the Council of *Colen* before mentioned. A Town to be observed for the first appearance which *Luther* made before *Charles* the 5. (the Imperial Chamber then being holden in this City) who, being dissuaded from that journey by some of his Friends, returned this resolute Answer, *That go he would, though there were as many Devils in the Town as there were Tiles on the Houses*. Chief Towns belonging to this Bishop are, 1. *Udenheim*, a Town belonging to the Bishop of *Spire*, whose Residence it sometimes is; conveniently seated for the command of the Country, and therefore upon some design which was then in hand fortified strongly by the Bishop. But this new Fortification, being begun in a time of Peace, gave great occasion of distrust to the neighbouring Princes, who interposed with *Frederick* the fifth, then Prince Elector, (of whom it was held in chief) to cause the Bishop to desist from the finishing of it. Which when he had refused to do, pleading a Placart from the Emperor *Matthias* to complete the work, the Prince Elector with the rest of the Confederates beat it down by force. For this contempt they were cited to *Spire*, the Imperial Chamber, in which it was also resolved to proceed suddenly and severely to their condemnation. One of the chief motives which occasioned that unfortunate Prince to entertain the offer of the Crown of *Bohemia*, and consequently a chief cause of the *German Wars*. In managing whereof this Town was thought so commodious, that *Marques Spisla* caused the works to be raised again, made it the strongest Hold in all those Countries, and caused it to be called by the name of *Philipsburg*. 2. *Rottenberg*, originally belonging to the Bishops of *Spire*, but of late times possessed by the Princes *Palatine*. Others of lesser note I forbear to mention.

The first Inhabitants of this Country on the French side of the *Rhene* were the *Nemetes* and *Angiones* spoken of before the other side of the *Intervi*. That on the West side of the River was first conquered by the *Romans*, and from them by the *French*, of whose Empire it remained a part, but so that it was subject more immediately to the Earls of *Moselle*, first under the Sovereignty and Vassalage of the Kings of *Metz*, and after of the Kings of *Lorraine*. In the dividing of which Kingdom between the Emperors of *Germany* and the Kings of *France*, it became subject to the Empire, but still possessed by those of *Moselle* as it was before. Elcheating to the Empire on the expiration of that Family, partly by force of Arms, partly by paying down ready Money, and partly too by filling of their

Voices, as they saw occasion, it was gained by the Electors *Palatine*: and so also that part of it which lies on the Dutch side of the *Rhene*, which being anciently and properly a part of *Frankendale*, followed the fortunes of that Country, till the failure of the House of *Schwaben*, and then devolved unto the Empire, as the other did. By little and little it got into the hands of the Princes *Palatine*, who being originally Officers of the Emperor's Household, (such as the Maiores of the Palace to the *French* Kings at the first institution) had first the honour of Counts *Palatine* bestowed upon them, and afterwards the place of an Elector in the choice of the Emperor. But where their Estates then lay, where they fixed their dwelling, and what Provinces or people they had subject to them, *nullo inventi scriptum*, I could never find any good Record to build on, saith the learned *Munster*; their habitation and possession in and of these parts (acquired for the most part by Arms and Money) not being above 450 years standing at the utmost. Likely it is, they had their Residence for the most part in the Emperor's Palace, living upon their Rents, (as others great Officers of Court in these late times) the Dignity and Authority of so great a place seeming sufficient to content them: but were called *Comm Palatines* of the *Rhene*, because their Jurisdiction and Authority lay most especially in those parts of the Empire which were towards that River. Afterwards, on the Marriage of *Otto*, the second of that name, Duke of *Bavaria*, with *Gerrude*, the Daughter of *Henry* the Elector *Palatine*, this Office with the Electoral Dignity fell into that House, possessed at that time of those parts of *Francia* and the Earldom of *Moselle*, who not long after, on the dividing of that Estate betwixt *Rodolphus* and *Ludovicus*, the Sons of *Ludovic* the 2. Elector *Palatine* and Duke of *Bavaria*, made up this *Palatinate*. A State which suddenly received a great augmentation, partly by the care & good husbandry of *Rupertus*, Emperor & Elector *Palatine*, partly by the weakness and ambition of *Wenceslaus*, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, and partly by the valour of *Frederick* the Prince Elector. Of these the first brought in the Towns of *Weinheim*, *Ladenburg*, *Sieffelen*, and the Castle of *Stralburg*, with their lands and Territories. The second gave unto the *Palatines*, for their Voices in his Election, three strong Towns of the Empire, *viz.* *Kesferslautern*, *Ingelheim*, and *Oppenheim*. And the last took in *Battel*, An. 1452, the Earls of *Wirtemberg*, the Marquises of *Baden*, the Bishop of *Spire*, and the Archbishop of *Mentz*, and ransomed them on what condition he pleased. More particularly the Earl of *Wirtemberg* (for it was not yet erected into a Dukedom) paid for his ransom 100000 Florens: the Bishop of *Mentz* redeemed himself for 40000 Florens. The Bishop of *Spire* gave for his liberty the Towns of *Rottenberg* and *Wersau*. And the Marquises of *Baden* yielded up in lieu of his freedom the Country of *Spanheim*, of which *Creutznach* is a part, the Towns of *Beßken* and *Binheim*, the right which he pretended to *Eppingen*, a Town over against *Gernersheim* and his Royalties between this *Gernersheim* and *Seltz*, a Town of *Alsacia*, in Filling and Hunting. So having brought these Princes unto their Estates, let us next take a view of those who have succeeded jointly both the State and Title, as far as we can go by the light of Story.

Electors Palatinate of the R H E N E.

1. *Henry*, Count *Palatine* in the time of *Otto* the third, by him ordained to be one of the six Electors.
2. *Sigfride*, the Son of *Adelheid*, Wife of the fix *Henry* the Elector, by a former Husband.

3. *Ezelino*

3. *Ezeline* and *Conrade*, Sons of *Sigefride*.  
 4. *Ludolphus*, Son to *Ezeline*.  
 5. *Conrade*, Elector *Palatine* in the time of *Henry* the fifth.  
 6. *Frederick*, Son to *Frederick* Duke of *Schwaben*, Nephew to the Emperor *Conrade* the third.  
 7. *Henry II.* surnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*.  
 1195 8. *Henry III.* Son of *Henry* the Lion, and Husband of *Clémence*, Daughter of *Conrade*, D. of *Schwaben* and Elector *Palatine*.  
 9. *Henry IV.* Son of *Henry* the third, in the life of his Father, the last Elector *Palatine* of the nomination and appointment of the Emperor, the Dignity from hence-forwards becoming hereditary.  
 10. *Otho*, Duke of *Bavaria*, of that name the second, Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene* in right of *Gertrude* his Wife, Sister and next Heir of *Henry* the fourth, whom he succeeded in the Electoral Dignity, confirmed therein by the Emperor *Frederick* the second.  
 1269 11. *Ludovicus*, Elector *Palatine* and Duke of *Bavaria*, the Son of *Otho*.  
 1294 12. *Rodolphus*, the eldest Son of *Lewis* or *Ludovicus*, succeeded his Father in the *Palatinate* and Electoral Dignity; *Northgöia*, or the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, being added to his part, to make even the scale; his younger Brother *Ludovicus* succeeding in *Bavaria*.  
 1315 13. *Adolphus*, surnamed the Simple, resigned the Electoral Dignity to his Brother *Rodolphus*, as the fitter man to undertake it.  
 1327 14. *Rodolphus II.* on the Resignation of *Adolphus*.  
 1337 15. *Rupertus*, the Brother of *Rodolphus* the second, Founder of the University of *Heidelberg*, Anno 1346.  
 1386 16. *Rupertus II.* Son of *Adolphus* the Simple.  
 1398 17. *Rupertus III.* elected Emperor in the place of *Venceslaus* King of *Bohemia*, Anno 1406, made Knight of the Garter by King *Henry* the fourth.  
 1410 18. *Ludovicus II.* surnamed *Cæcus* and *Barbatus*, the eldest Son of *Rupertus* the Emperor, married *Blanch*, Daughter to *K. Henry*, the fourth of *England*.  
 1439 19. *Ludovicus III.* Son of *Lewis* the second.  
 1451 20. *Frederick*, Brother of *Ludovicus*, during the Minority of *Philip* his said Brother's Son, succeeded in the Electoral Dignity, and added much to that Estate by his personal Vertue.  
 1478 21. *Philip*, the Son of *Lewis* the third, pretended to the Dukedom of *Bavaria* in right of *Margaret* his Wife; but, after a long and bloody War, was forced to go without it.  
 1508 22. *Ludovicus IV.* Son of *Philip*.  
 1544 23. *Frederick II.* Brother of *Lewis* the fourth, who first introduced the Reformed Religion into the *Palatinate*.  
 1556 24. *Otho-Henry*, Son of *Rupertus*, the Brother of *Frederick* and *Lewis*, the last of the direct Line of this House of *Bavaria*.  
 1559 25. *Frederick III.* Duke of *Simmeren*, descended from *Stephen* *Palatine* of *Zweibrück* or *Bipont*, younger Son of the Emperor *Rupertus*, succeeded on the decease of *Otho-Henry* without Issue.  
 1576 26. *Ludovicus V.* Son of *Frederick* the third, a

- munificent Benefactor to the University of *Heidelberg*.  
 1583 27. *Frederick IV.* Son of *Lewis* the fifth, married *Ludovica*, or *Louisa*, Daughter of *William*, and Sister of *Maurice*, Princes of *Orange*.  
 1610 28. *Frederick V.* Son of *Frederick* the fourth, married the Princess *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *James* King of *Great Britain*. In danger of being proscribed for demolishing the Works of *Udenheim*, he accepted the Crown of *Bohemia*. But worsted at the Battle of *Prague*, and warred upon by the *Bavarians* and the *Spaniards*, he lost both that and his own native Estates and Dignities, of which he was deprived by *Ferdinand* the prevailing Emperor; the *Lower Palatinate* being assigned over to and conquered by the King of *Spain*, the *Upper Palatinate*, with the Electoral Dignity, bestowed on the Duke of *Bavaria*. Restored to the possession of the most part of his Country by the power of the *Swedes*, he died at *Mentz*, November 29, 1632. the whole Country falling again not long after under the power and Government of the former Conquerors.  
 1631 29. *Charles-Ludovicus*, the Heir both of his Father's Estates and Misfortunes too; not yet admitted to his Honours, (contrary to the Fundamental Constitutions of the Empire, by which the Sons of the Electors and other Princes are not involved in the guilt of their Fathers offences) but in fair hopes to be restored thereto in part, by the Pacification made at *Münster* this present year 1648: which I pray God to prosper, for the peace of afflicted Christendom.

Now to proceed to the Civil State, and the Concernment of these Princes. The *Palgrave* hath many Privileges above the Electors of either Fort. He taken place of the Duke of *Saxony* and Marquess of *Brandenburg*, because *Henry* the *Palatine* was defended of *Charles* the Great: for which cause he is also, in the Vacancy of the Empire, Governour of the Western parts of *Germany*. In which Office he had power to alienate or give Offices, to take Fealty and Homage of the Subjects, and which is most, to sit in the Imperial Courts, and give Judgment of the Emperor himself. And look whatsoever shall in the Vacancy of the Empire be by the *Palatines* enacted, that the new Emperors are by Oath to confirm and ratify.

The Revenues of these Princes were conceived to be about 100000 *l. per annum*; nor could they be supposed at less: the Silver mines about *Amberg* only in the *Upper Palatinate* yielding 60000 Crowns a year, and the passage of one Bridge over the *Rhene* about 20000 Crowns more, besides the Demesne Lands, and the Lands of the Church, incorporated (since the Reformation) into their Estate.

The Arms hereof are *Diamond*, a *Lion* *Topaz*, Armed and Crowned *Ruby*.

#### 4. ALSATIA.

**ALSATIA** (or **ELSAZ**, as the Dutch call it) is bounded on the East with the *Rhene*, which parteth it from the Marquise of *Baden*, and some parts of *Schwaben*; on the West with the Mountain *Fangs* or *Vogeses*, which separateth it from *Lorraine*; on the North with the *Palatinate*; on the South (where it groweth very

very narrow) with a point of *Switzerland*. A Country for the Pleasants and fertility of it inferior to none in *Germany*: called therefore *Elfsaz*, (as some think) *quasi Edilsaz*, that is to say, a noble Seat; derived more probably by others from the River *Il*, the only River of note in all this Tract, and called so, *quasi Ilfsaz*, the Seat or situation on the River *Il*.

It is divided generally into the *Lower*, and *Higher*, to which the Country called *Sungow* may come in for a third. The *LOWER ALSATIA* is that which bordereth on the *Palatinate*, so called because farther off from the Mountains, and down the water in respect of the course of the *Rhene*. A Country so abundantly fruitful in Wine and Corn (with which it furnisheth some parts of *Germany*, and not a few of the neighbour-Countries) that it is generally called *Germania Nutrix*, or the Nurse of *Germany*, by *Winpbelegius*, the Epitome, or Abstract of it. Chief Towns therein are, 1. *Straeßburg*, so called from the multitude of Streets, (the Dutch call them *Stræts*) anciently *Argentoratum* and then *Argentaria*, from the Roman Exchequer or Receipt, here kept in the time of their Greatness; or from some Mines of Silver which were found about it. A lately, rich, and populous City, well stored with publick Garners and Cellars of Wine against times of Dearth; situate on the two Rivers *Il* and *Brusels*, where they both fall into the *Rhen*; by which, and by the helps of Art, it is very strongly fortified: designed from the first foundation for a Town of War, this being another of the Towns which the Romans built to defend the *Rhene* against the *Germans*; now an Imperial City, and a See Episcopall, the Bishop whereof is Lord of the *Lower Alsatia*. The Church Cathedral is one of the fairest in all *Germany*, much famed for a clock of most admirable workmanship, and a Steeple as curious a frame as that, mounted 574 foot in height, the highest of any in Christendom, higher (if the measure of it be not mistaken) by 40 foot than the Steeple of *St. Pauls* in *London* before the firing of it. Of this thus saith the Poet in *Adrianns*,

*Orbis præclarâ sita, ripis contermina Rheni,  
 Maxima cui celsæ meuiuntur mania turris,  
 Straßburg on Rhene's inamell'd Banks doth lie,  
 Whole Tower even bids defiance to the Skie.*

2. *Zabern*, or *Elfsaz Zabern*, the *Taberna* of *Antonine* and *Marcellinus*, another of the old Roman Garrisons, destroyed by the *Almans*, and repaired again by *Julian* the *Apollate*, then Emperor; now the chief place of Residence for the Bishops of *Straeßburg*, and well frequented in regard of the Courts of Justice kept by his Officers in this City for the *Lower Alsatia*. 3. *Altrip*, so called from *Alta ripa*, from the high banks of the River on which it is seated; another of the Towns or Forts which the Romans, like politic Conquerors, built on the West side of the *Rhene*, to prohibit the Incursions of the barbarous Nations. And so was 4. *Seltz*, seated on the *Rhene* betwixt *Straeßburg* and *Zabern*. And 5. *Wiesbaden*, more towards the *Palatinate*, now a Town Imperial, but seated on the River *Lutra*, not far from its fall into the *Rhene*; encompassed with little Hills and delightful Groves, the River gently washing the Walls thereof, and adding much to its both of strength and beauty. 6. *Hagenau*, between *Seltz* and *Straeßburg*, but not so near unto the *Rhene* as either of them, first walled by *Frederick Barbarossa*, Anno 1164, and since that time of great importance for command of the Country, but seated in a sandy and unfruitful Soil; frequented chiefly heretofore by the old Landgraves of *Elfsaz* for the commodities of hunting. More from the *Rhens*, 7. *Stechels*, corruptly so called for *Steffels*, from the Monastery of *S. Stephen* there founded 18. *Haut*, on the *Brusels*, &c.

Places of the most importance in the *HIGHER ALSATIA* are, 1. *Ruffach*, on the River *Ombach*, belonging to the Bishops of *Straeßburg*, of old called *Knechtum*, from the red colour of the earth, well built, environed with a double Suburb; in ancient times of great repute by the Roman Nobility, much taken with the fruitfulness and pleasures of it, and well inhabited at this day, as is all the Country round about it; by reason of their vigorous proceedings against Thieves; from whence the *Germans* have a Proverb, that the old Gallies at *Ruffach* is made of Oak 2. *Eupheim*, or *Ensfloem*, on the River *Il*; anciently the Station of the Tenth Legion, and then called *Aruncis*; now of most note for the Supreme Court of Justice there held for *Brisgow*, *Sungow*, and this part of *Alsatia*, by the Archdukes of *Austria*, the chief Lords thereof, 3. *Colmar*, an Imperial City, raised out of the Ruines of old *Argentaria* destroyed by *Attila* and the *Huns*; well built, and situate almost in the very Navel of *Alsatia*, not above an hour's journey from the foot of the Mountains, but in a fruitful and rich Soil both for Corn and Pasturage, the Country herabouts being very well watered with the *Lauch*, *Daro*, *Fech*, and *Ill*. 4. *Schlestadt*, in the modern *Latine*, *Sellestadium*, but by the ancients called *Eleuther*, the Station at that time of the 19 Legion; afterwards of great fame for a Church here built by *Hildegardis* Dutches of *Schwaben*, Anno 1044, according to the pattern of the Temple of *Jerusalem*, which in tract of time became the richest Monastery in all these parts. It is situate in a very fertile and delightful Soil, having the *Rhene* on the one side, and some furlongs of the Mountain *Vange*, shadowed with Groves of Chestnuts, upon the other; walled in the time of *Frederick* the second, about the year 1216, and on the East defended with impassible Fens. 5. *Göwiler*, and 6. *Warwick*, both seated near the aforesaid Mountains, and both subject to the Abbat of *Murbach*. 7. *Kesersberg*. 8. *Turckheim*, two Imperial Towns, but not otherwise memorable, as neither are many of the rest, but for name and number: there being reckoned within this small Province of *Elfsaz*, (not including *Sungow*) 46 Cities and Towns begirt with Walls, besides Castles, Forts and Villages, almost innumerable; and amongst them more Free and Imperial Cities than in any one Province of the Empire, except *Schwaben* only.

The Southern part of *Elfsaz*, bordering on the Canton of *Basle*, is commonly called by the name of *SONGOW*, in *Latine* *Sungovia* and *Sungöia*, but in former times the Dukedom of *Pfirt*, from *Pfirt* the chief Town of it, and the Duke's Seat. The Country is very plentiful in Corn and Wine, (as the rest of *Elfsaz*) affording good store of each to the neighbouring *Switzers*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Mulhausen*, on the River *Il*, heretofore under the command of the Bishops of *Straeßburg*, as were also *Kesersberg* and *Colmar*; but being taken in by *Rodolph of Habsburg*, after his advancement to the Empire, it was made Imperial, and is now confederate with the *Switzers*. 2. *Bifort*, remarkable for a Collegiate Church there founded by the Earls of *Pfirt*, in which lie buried 12 Earls and as many Countesses. 3. *Mals*, *munster*, so called from a Monastery of Nuns there Founded by *Mals*, a Prince of the old *Almans*. 4. *Thann*, a neat Town, beautified with the fair Castle of *Engelburg*, mounted upon the top of a lofty Hill. 5. *Mors*, *munster*, so named of an ancient Monastery there founded by the Earls of *Pfirt*, most of them great Builders of Religious Houses. 6. *Altkirk*, not far from the head of the River *Il*; 7. *Pfirt*, it self seated on the *Il*, not far from *Altkirk*; in a Country heretofore overgrown with Woods and Forests, whence it had the name, called by the *French* *Pais de Ferrette*, (corruptly for *le Pais de Ferfist*) by the Dutch moulded into *Pfirt*; by

which name (of the County of *Ferrette*) it is called by *Philip de Comines* and other French Writers; and by that name panned by *Sigismund* the Archduke to *Charles Duke of Burgundy*, made by that means too near a neighbour to the *Switzers*, as is proved in fine.

Westward hereof, betwixt it and the County of *Burgundy*, lyeth the Town and Earldom of *MONT-BEL-GARD*, (*Montis Belgardium in the Latine*) united by the Marriage of *Henrica*, Daughter and Heir of *Henry* the first Earl hereof, Anno 1396, to the Countess of *Wirttemberg*. Chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Clarewang*, 2. *Paffewang*, 3. *Grans*, all anciently beautified with Castles; and 4. *Montbelgard*, a Town of great strength, proud of a Cattle-Royal on the top of a fair and lofty Mountain, whence it took that name: once the Seat of its proper Earls, as after of the Princes of the House of *Wirttemberg*; but now both Town and Castle in the power of the French, who after their good luck in the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, caused a good Garrison of their own to be put into them, Anno 1633, under pretence of keeping them for the children of a Brother of the Duke of *Wirttemberg*, to whom the Inheritance belonged.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Tract were the *Tribochi*, with parts of the *Nemetes* and *Rauraci*; first conquered by the *Romans*, then subdued by the *Almans*, after by the French, and by them made a part of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*; in the fall of which Kingdom it was reckoned for a Province of the German Empire. Governed for the Emperors by Provincial Earls, in the Dutch language called *Lantgraves*: at first officary only, and accountable to the Emperors under whom they served; in the end made hereditary, and successional to their posterities. The first hereditary *Lantgrave* is said to be *Theodorick* in the Reign of *Otto* the third: after whose death the Empire being made elective, gave the Provincial Governors some opportunities to provide for themselves. In his Male-Issue it continued till the Reign of *Frederick* the 2. who began his Empire, Anno 1212, and died Anno 1250, during which interval this Estate was conveyed by Daughters to *Albert* the 2. Earl of *Habsburg*, *Albert* Earl of *Hohenburg*, and *Lewis* Earl of *Oettingen*. *Rodolph* of *Habsburg*, Son of this *Albert*, afterwards Emperor of the Germans, marrying with *Anne* the Daughter of the Earl of *Hohenloe*, became possessed also of his part of the Country; which added to his own, made up the whole upper *Elfs*, continued since that time in possession of the House of *Austria*, descended from him. The third part, comprehending all the Lower *Alsatia*, was not long after sold by the Earl of *Oettingen* to the Bishop of *Strasbourg*, whose Successors hold it to this day; assuming to themselves the title of the *Lantgraves of Elfs*. But as for *Samog*, or the County of *Pfirtz*, that belonged anciently to the Princes of the House of *Schwaben*: in the expiring of which potent and illustrious Family, by the death of *Conradine* the last Duke, Anno 1268, that great Estate being scattered into many hands, it was made a distinct Earldom of its self. And so it continued till the year 1324, when *Ulrich* the last Earl dying without Issue-Male, left his Estate betwixt two Daughters: whereof the one, named *Anne*, conveyed her part in Marriage to *Albert Duke of Austria*, surname the short, Grandchild of *Rodolph* the Emperor before mentioned; the other, named *Ursula*, sold her moiety to the said *Albert* for 8000 Crowns. Since that it hath been always in the possession of the Dukes of *Austria*, (I have only for the time in which it was pawned or mortgaged, together with *Alsatia*, to the Duke of *Burgundy*) governed in Civil matters and points of Judicature by the Parliament or Court of *Eusheim* in the Upper *Elfs*.

## S. LORRAIN.

THE Dukedom of *LORRAIN* is bounded on the East with *Elfs*, and that part of the lower *Palatinat* which passeth by the name of *West-reich*; on the West with the River *Meuse*, or *Mas*, with part of the Country of *Barrois* in France, (belonging to the Duke hereof) and part of *Champagne*; on the North with *Luxemburg* and the Land of *Triers*; and on the South with the County of *Burgundy*, from which, and from the Province of *Elfs*, it is parted by the *Vogeses* or *Vangs*, wherewith it is encompassed on those sides. Assigned unto *Lotharius*, second son of *Lotharius* the Emperor, (who was eldest Son of *Lewis* the Godly) with the style of a Kingdom; from thence called *Lor-reich* by the Dutch, *Lot-reigne* by the French; from which the modern name of *Lorrain*, and the Latine *Lotharingia* are to fetch their Pedegree.

The Country is in length about four dayes journey, almost three in breadth, much overgrown with Forests, and fuelled with Mountains, the spurs and branches of *Vogeses*, and the once vast Wilderness of *Ardene*; yet so sufficiently stored with all manner of necessaries, that it needeth no supply out of other places. Some Lakes it hath which yield great quantity of Fish; one more especially 14 miles in compass. The Fish thereof yields to the Duke's Coffers 20000 l. yearly. It affordeth also divers Metals, as Silver, Copper, Tin, Iron, Lead, in some places Pearls: Chalcidians also of such bigness, that whole Drinking-cups are made of them, and a matter of which they make the purest Glasses, not to be paralleld in Europe. They have also a goodly breed of Horses, equal to those of *Barbary*, or the Court of *Naples*.

The people, by reason of their neighbourhood to and commerce with France, strive much to imitate the French in garb and fashion; but one may easily fee that it is not natural: they have much in them also of the Dutch-mour of Drinking, but far more moderately than the Dutch themselves. Generally they are a politic and hardy Nation; not otherwise able to have held their Estate so long against the French Kings, and the Princes of the House of *Burgundy*. They lived very happily in former times under their own Dukes, not being at all oppressed with Taxes; which made them very affectionate towards the Prince, and useful unto one another. Their Language is for the most part French, as in *Artois*, *Luxemburg*, *Triers*, and other of the bordering Provinces, members of the French Monarchy in former times: not so refined and elegant as is spoke in France, nor so corrupt and coarse as that of *Montbelgard* and the County of *Burgundy*.

I know that many, in respect of the French language, spoken here among them, account this Country among the Provinces of France, and usually describe it to inherit Charts and Writings; but I have placed it with more reason (as I conceive) amongst those of Germany; first, in regard that a Duke hereof is a Prince of the Empire; but especially because that, in the division of the Kingdom of *Lorrain* betwixt the Emperours of Germany and the Kings of France, whatsoever lay on the East side of the River *Meuse* (as this Dukedom of *Lorrain* for the most part doth) was reckoned in the share or portion of the German Emperours.

The Rivers of chief note are, 1. *Murta*, or the *Meurte*, which receiving into it many Rivers, and passing with a swift stream by the walls of *Nancie*, glides along so fairly for a good space within sight of the *Moselle*, which at last it falls near *Conde*, 2. *Mosle*, the *Metz*, or

or *Mas*; whose spring and course hath been already described in *Belgium*. 3. *Moselle*, famous for the design which *Lucius Varenus*, Governor for the Emperour *Nero*, had once upon it. For whereas it ariseth in the Mountain *Vange*, not far from the head of the River *Saône*, and disjunctureth it self into the *Rhone* at *Confluent*; he intended to have cut a deep Channel from the head of this into the other, so to have made a passage from the Ocean to the Mediterranean, the *Saône* emptying it self into the *Rhone*, a chief River of France, as the *Moselle* doth into the *Rhine*. 4. *Selle*, which minglet with waters with the *Moselle* not far from *Metz*. 5. *Sar*, 6. *Martane*, 7. *Vaisy*, with others of less note: all of them plentiful of Salmon, Perches, Tenches, and the best sorts of fish, as in their Lakes are great store of Carps, some of them three foot long, and of excellent taste.

Principal Cities in it are, 1. *Metz*, by *Protolmy* called *Divodurum*, *Metis* and *Civitas Mediomatricum* by *Antoninus*; the chief City of the *Mediomatrices*, who possessed this Tract. It is seated in a pleasant Plain at the confluence of the *Selle* and *Moselle*, the Royal See, in former times of the French Kings of *Austrasia*, hence called Kings of *Metz*, long before that a Bishop's See, as it still continueth. 2. *Toul*, the *Tullum* of *Protolmy*, the *Civitas Leucorum* of *Antoninus*, so called from the *Leuci*, the Inhabitants of it and the Tract about it, pleasantly seated on the *Moselle* and anciently honoured with a See Episcopall. 3. *Verdun*, an ancient Episcopall See also, the *Civitas Verodunensium* of *Antoninus*, seated on the *Moselle* or *Mas*.

The Town and Territory adjoining in preceding times belonged to the great Princes of the House of *Ardene*, and at before the time that they attained the Dukedom of *Lorrain*: but whether they had it in right of their Patrimonial Estate, as lying in the North part of this Country towards *Luxemburg*, as it well might be, or that it came to them in the right of Marriage with some Daughter of the house of *Moselle*, or other Heirs thereof, I have no where found. But howsoever it came to them, it gave unto this House the Title of Earls of *Verdun*, used in their Style, till swallowed with the rest in that of *Lorrain*. The Bishop whereof, as also those of *Metz* and *Toul*, (being the only ones of this Country of *Lorrain*) acknowledge the Archbishop of *Triers* for their Metropolitan. All of them were in the number (heretofore) of Imperial Cities, possessed of large and good Territories and of great Revenue; but taken by the French King *Henry* the 2. Anno 1552, during the Wars between *Charles* the fifth and the Protestant Princes of Germany, under colour of aiding them against the Emperor. And though *Charles* tried all ways to recover them to the Empire again, and to that end maintained a long and desperate Siege against the City of *Metz*; yet was the Town so gallantly defended by the Duke of *Guise*, that he was fain to raise his Siege, and go off with dishonour. Since that, they have been always under the subjection of France, a Parliament being erected at *Metz* for the ease of the people, as in other Provinces of that Kingdom.

Of such Towns as immediately belong to the Duke of *Lorrain*, the principal are *Nancie*, not great, but of a pleasant and commodious site, well watered by the River *Meurte* or *Marta*, and fortified better than before, in the year 1587, on occasion of a great Army of the Germans passing into France to aid the Protestants; most commonly the Duke's Seat, and famous for the Discomfort which *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* here suffered, with the loss of his life. 2. *S. Nicolas*, a Town so populous, well seated, and neatly built, that were it walled, it would hardly yield precedence unto *Nancie* it self; so called from a Church here built to the honour of *S. Nicolas*, Bishop of

*Myra* in the lesser *Asia*, whose Body they pretend to be buried here, or at least some part or Relick of it to be here inshrined, occasioning a great resort of Pilgrims and other People. 3. *Pont a Moufion*, about leagues from *Nancie*, so called from a Bridge on the River *Moufion* upon which it standeth of especial note for a small University lately founded in it, and for giving the Title of a Marquis to the eldest Son of the Dukes of *Lorrain*, accounted commonly and contractually Marquess du *Pont*, *Marchio Mense-Pontanus* by our modern Latinists. 4. *Vancoleur*, the Birth-place of *Joan* the Virgin, to whose Miracles and Valour the French attribute the delivery of their Country from the power of the English. But being at last taken Prisoner, she was by the Duke of *Bradford*, then Regent of France, condemned and burnt for a Witch. Of which crime, I for my part do conceive her free. Nor can I otherwise conceive of her and her brave exploits, than as of a lusty Laïs of *Lorrain*, tutored and trained up by the practice of the Earl of *Dunois*, commonly called the *Bastard of Orleans*, and so presented to *Charles* the seventh, French King, as if sent immediately from Heaven. A project carried on of purpose, (as the most intelligent of the French Writers say) pour faire venir la couraige aux Francois, to revive the drooping spirits of the beaten French, not to be raised again but by help of a Miracle. Upon the fight of her *Statue* on the Bridge of *Orleans*, a friend of mine did adventure on a Copy of Verses in her commendation, too long to be inserted here, but they ended thus,

She dy'd a Virgin: 'Twas because the earth  
Bred not a man whose valour and whose birth  
Might merit such a Blessing. But above  
The Gods provided her an equal Love,  
And gave her to Saint *Denis*. She with him  
Protects the *Lillies* and their Diadem.  
You then about whose Armies the doth watch,  
Give her the honour due unto her Match:  
And when in field your Standards you advance,  
Cry loud, Saint *Denis*! and Saint *Joan* for France!

Next these we have, 5. *Vaudemont*, which gave the Title of an Earl to a younger Branch of the House of *Ardene*, succeeding at the last in the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, in person of *Duke Rene* 2. and since a Title of the younger Son of the Dukes hereof. 6. *Nenf-Chattisam*, on the edge of the Country towards *Barrois*. 7. *Amante*, seven leagues on the South of *Metz*, sometimes the Chancery of *Lorrain*. 8. *Riche Court*, near the Lake called *Garde-lake*, out of which floweth a River which runs into the *Meurte*. 9. *La Mothe*, seated on a River which falls presently into the *Moselle*. 10. *Charmes*, seated on the *Moselle*, the place of Treaty between the Duke of *Lorrain* and the Cardinal *Richelieu*; the result whereof was the surrender of the Town of *Nancie*, and by consequence of all the Dukedom, into the hands of the French, September 1633. 11. *Stenay*, in the extrem North of all this Country, a well fortified Town, and of great consequence and importance to the Dukes hereof; but whether properly belonging to the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, or wrested from the Sovereignty of *Sedan*, upon which it bordereth, (as *Jamais* near unto it was) I have no where found. Of less note there are, 1. *Saint Die*, 2. *Saint Hippolite*, 3. *Bouquennon*, and 4. *Saverden*; the first Towns of this Dukedom taken by the Swedes, Anno 1633, in the War against *Lorrain*. 5. *Saint Miel*, 6. *Odene-Chateau*, 7. *Morcourt*; all taken the same year by the French, in the prosecution of that War, before the Treaty at *Charmes*. 8. *Remberville*, 9. *Espinell*, 10. *Gerbenillier*, &c.



The old Inhabitants of this Country were the *Mediomatrici* and the *Lewii* spoken of before, together with the *Furidenfes*; all of them conquered by the *Romans*, under whom this Country and the District of *Triers*, made up the whole Province of *Belgica prima*. From them being taken by the *French*, with the rest of *Gaul*, it was made a Kingdom; the Provinces of *Germania prima* and *secunda* (containing all the parts of *Germany* before described, and so much of the *Netherlands* as lie on the West side of the *Rhene*) being added to it: called first, from the Eastern situation, by the name of *Obenweich*, or *Austrasia*; the portion of *Theodorick*, the fourth Son of *Clovis*, the first Christian King of the *French*, from the chief City of his Kingdom called the King of *Metz*, whose Successors follow in this order.

#### The Kings of AUSTRASIA, or METZ.

- 514 1. *Theodorick*, the base Son of *Clovis* the Great, vanquished the *Thuringians*, and extended his Kingdom as far as *Hollia* and *Thuringia*, as we call them now.
- 537 2. *Theodebert*, the Son of *Theodorick*, repulsed the *Danes* infesting the Coasts of the Lower *Germany*, and added *Provence* (taken from the *Goths* of *Italy*) to his Estates.
- 548 3. *Theobaldus*, the Son of *Theodebert*, subdued the *Almans*, and added much of their Country to his own Dominions.
- 555 4. *Cloaire*, King of *Soissons*, the youngest Son of *Clovis* the Great, succeeded *Theobald* in this Kingdom, as afterwards his Brother *Childeric* in the Kingdom of *France*, Anno 560, uniting in his person the whole French Dominion.
- 565 5. *Sigebert*, the Son of *Cloaire*, vanquished the *Huns*, then falling into his Estates: killed in his Tent by the practices of *Fredegond*, the Wife of *Chilperick* King of *France*.
- 577 6. *Childeric*, the Son of *Sigebert*, Successor to his Uncle *Grimmar* in the Realm of *Orleans*.
- 598 7. *Theodebert II.* the Son of *Childeric*, vanquished and outed of his Kingdom by *Cloaire* the second of *France*, from whose eldest Son *Sigebert* descended the illustrious Family of the Earls of *Habsburg*.
- 617 8. *Cloaire II.* King of *France*, on the death of *Theodebert* King of *Austrasia*, and his Brother *Theodorick* King of *Orleans*, the sole King of the *French*.
9. *Dagobert*, in the life of his Father King of *Metz*, or *Austrasia*, whom he succeeded at his death in the Realm of *France*.
- 645 10. *Sigebert II.* the eldest Son of *Dagobert*, made choice of this Kingdom for his part of the whole French Empire; therein preferring it to *West-France*, or *France* it self, which he left to *Clovis* the 3. his younger Brother. He brought the *Suevians* to obedience, and subdued the *Slavens*.
- 656 11. *Childeric II.* Son of *Grimwaldus*, Maior of the Palace to *Sigebert*, was by the power of his Father made King of *Metz*, *Dagobert* the Son of *Sigebert* being thorn a Monk, and sent into *Scotland*.
12. *Clovis* the 2. King of the *French*, having vanquished and beheaded *Grimwald*, dispossessed *Childeric* of the Kingdom, which he took to himself.
- 662 13. *Childeric*, the 2. Son of *Clovis*, after the

death of *Cloaire* his elder Brother, succeeding in the Kingdom of *France*, united all the French Dominions into one Estate. In which condition it remained (but with some enlargement of the Bound's) till the Partition made by and amongst the Children of *Lewis* the Godly, the name of *Austrasia*, or *East-France*, being extended by *Charles* the Great over all *Pannonia*, and so much of *Germany* as was under the command of the *French*. In which division, *Lewis* the second Son, furnished the Ancient, being invested in the Kingdom of *Germany*, or so much of *East-France* or *Austrasia* as lay on the East-side of the *Rhene*; *Lotharius*, the eldest Son, had for his share the Title of Emperor, and there with *Italy*, *Provence*, *Burgundy*, and so much of *Austrasia* or *East-France* as lay on the French side of the River. Afterwards being subdivided into three Estates, *Lewis* with the Title of Roman Emperor, was given to *Lewis* the eldest Son, to *Charles*, the youngest, *Provence*, with the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, and to *Lothaire*, the second Son, *Austrasia* on this side of the *Rhene*, from hence called *Lothreich*, *Loth-reigne*, and *Lotharingia*, as before was said. But *Lothaire* dying without issue, the Kingdom of *Lorrain*, containing all the *Netherlands*, (except *Flanders* and *Artois*) and all the parts of *Germany* before described, became divided betwixt *Charles* the Bald Emperor and King of *France*, and *Lewis* furnished the Ancient, King of *Germany*, the one calling himself King of *Lorrain* on that side, the other King of *Lorrain* on this side of the *Meuse*; the River *Meuse* or *Mos* parting their Possessions. But this Partition held not long amongst their Successors: For *Lewis* and *Carloman* King of *France* (the Sons of *Ludovicus Balbus*) resigning their part thereof to *Charles* the Gros, Emperor of the *Roman* and King of *Germany*, the said *Charles*, *Ansrump*, *Lewis* and *Carloman*, successively Emperors of the *Roman* and Kings of *Germany*, together with *Zwentbold* the Ruffian Son of *Ansrump* interloping in the very middle of them enjoyed it wholly to themselves. And so did also *Charles* the Simple King of *France*, on the death of *Conrad*, who forced thereto by *Henry* the first, (who succeeded *Conrad* in the Empire and Kingdom of *Germany*) began way to the old Partition (spoken of before: the *German* after that encroaching more and more on that part of which of right belonged unto the *French*, till in the end (after much vicissitude and interchangeableness of affairs) both Princes laid aside the Title of Kings of *Lorrain*, incorporating so much as they held thereof into the rest of their Estates; *Orto* the third of *Germany* and *Lewis* the fifth of *France* being the last that pleased themselves with that broken Title. In the mean time this Country of *Lorrain* it self, as it is now bounded, together with the Country of *Luyck-Land*, a great part of *Brabant*, some parts of the Land of *Triers*, *Colen*, and as some say, the Country of *Gulick* also, (but in this of *Gulick* I demur, as before was said) being taken out of it, were by *Orto* the Second made a Dukedom, Anno 981, and by him given with the Title of Duke of *Lorrain* to *Charles* of *France*, Son of *Gerberge* his Aunt by *Lewis* the 4. of *France* furnished *Tranmarine*, Son of *Charles* the Simple, *Charles* thus advanced by his Cousin, and forgetting that he had been made Duke of *Brabant* not long before by *Lothaire* the French King, his Brother, shewed himself so alienated from the *French*, and wedded to the *German*, that the *French*, after the death of his Nephew *Lewis* the fifth, (whose next Heir he was) rejected him, and accepted *Hugh Capet* for their King. *Orto*, the Son of this *Charles*, dying without issue, left his Estate to *Godfrey* Earl of *Ardenne*, *Bonillon*, and *Verdun*, his near Kinsmen by the Mothers side, from whom the present Dukes of *Lorrain* do derive themselves. From *Hermingrade*,

one of the Daughters of this *Charles*, married to *Albert* (some call him *Charles*, and others *Godfrey*) Earl of *Namur* by *Alice* their Daughter, married *Baldwin* the 5. of *Hainault*, descended *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders* and *Hainault*, the Father of the Lady *Isabel* of *Hainault*, Wife of *Philip* the 2. King of *France*, thereby uniting the Blood of *Peppin* and *Hugh Capet*, to the great content of *Lewis* the 9. her Nephew: of whom it is said, that being a man of a tender Conscience, he never joyed in the Crown of *France*, till it was proved that he was lineally descended by his Grandmother from *Charles* of *Lorrain*, whom *Hugh Capet* had so unjustly dispossessed. But to return again to the Dukes of *Lorrain*, I find not any great improvement made of the Estate by any of them, more than the accession of the remaining Patrimony of the Earls of *Ardenne* in the person of *Godfrey* or *Geoffrey* the 3d Duke hereof, and the adding of the Dutchy of *Bar* in *France* by *Rene* Duke of *Anjou*, and titular King of *Naples*; but on the contrary a great weakening and distraction of it by the Dukes hereof: *Luyck-Land* and the Dukedom of *Bonillon* being sold unto the Bishops of *Liege* by *Godfrey* firnamed of *Bonillon* after King of *Hiersusalem*; *Brabant* torn from it by *Geoffrey* Earl of *Lovain*, in the time of *Baldwin* Brother of *Godfrey*, and *Gulick-Land* by *Eustace* the Brother of *Baldwin*; the Bishop of *Triers* not being negligent all this while of the opportunity. Besides which, somewhat had been done by the Emperor *Orto* the 3. to the diminution of this Estate, seeing that *Orto* the Second Duke, Son of *Charles* of *France*, had no issue-male, and thinking this Estate, to be great enough without those Additions, and some other pieces on the *Rhene*, by him restored unto the Empire. The rest of this Estate was conferred on *Godfrey* of *Ardenne*, and not without good reason neither being probable enough that as it was first given by *Orto* the II. unto *Charles* of *France* with reference to his Mother *Gerberge* that great Emperour's Aunt, so *Orto* of *Lorrain* Son of *Charles* might look on *Godfrey* of *Ardenne* as most capable of it, with reference to his Mother *Mailde*, the same Emperour's Daughter. And unto this he might be moved not only in a noble gratitude to the blood of *Orto*, from whom his Father had received so great a benefit, but on the solicitation of the Emperour *Henry II.* (a Prince of the same House of *Saxony*) to whom the Alienation of it from the Daughters of *Charles* is ascribed by some. Which said, we have no more to do, but to present the Reader with the Catalogue of

#### The Dukes of LORRAIN.

A.C.

- 981 1. *Charles* of *France*, took prisoner by *Hugh Capet*, in which state he died. He married *Bona*, Daughter of *Ricaine*, and Sister of *Godfrey* the elder, Earls of *Ardenne*.
- 1001 2. *Orto*, Son of *Charles* and *Bona*.
- 1004 3. *Godfrey*, Earl of *Ardenne*, Son of *Godfrey* the elder, and Cousin of *Orto* by his Mother, confirmed herein by the power of the Emperour *Henry II.*
- 1019 4. *Gozelo* of *Bonillon*, the Brother of *Godfrey*.
- 1044 5. *Godfrey II.* Son of *Gozelo*.
- 1070 6. *Godfrey III.*
- 1078 7. *Godfrey IV.* of *Bonillon*, Son of *Eustace* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardie*, and of *Ida* his Wife, the Daughter of *Godfrey* the 2. created King of *Hiersusalem* Anno 1099.
- 1100 8. *Baldwin*, Brother of *Godfrey*, Duke of *Lorrain*, and King of *Hiersusalem*.
- 1119 9. *Thierrie*, Son of *William* the Brother of *Baldwin*.
- 1128 10. *Simon*, Son of *Thierrie*.

- 1141 11. *Mattheu* Son of *Simon*.
- 1176 12. *Simon II.* Son of *Mattheu*.
- 1207 13. *Frederick*, Brother of *Simon*.
- 1213 14. *Theobald*, Son of *Frederick*.
- 1219 15. *Mattheu II.* Son of *Theobald*, no great friend of the Pope.
- 1259 16. *Frederick II.* Son of *Mattheu*.
- 1307 17. *Theobald II.* Son of *Frederick*.
- 1311 18. *Frederick III.* Son of *Theobald*.
- 1339 19. *Rodolph* Son of *Frederick*.
- 1346 20. *John*, Son of *Rodolph*.
- 1382 21. *Charles*, Son of *John*.
- 1430 22. *Rene*, Duke of *Anjou* and King of *Naples*, &c. in right of *Isabel* his Wife, the Daughter of *Charles*.
- 1452 23. *John II.* Son of *Rene* and *Isabel*, succeeded on the death of his Mother.
- 1470 24. *Nicholas*, Son of *John*.
- 1473 25. *Rene II.* Son of *Frederick* Earl of *Vaudemont*, and of *Violant* or *Toland*, Daughter of *Isabel* and *Rene* the first, the Vanquisher of *Charles* of *Burgundy* at the Battle of *Nancy*.
- 1508 26. *Anthony*, Son of *Rene* the 2.
- 1544 27. *Francis* Son of *Anthony*.
- 1545 28. *Charles II.* Son of *Francis*.
29. *Henry*, Son of *Charles*, married *Katharine*, Sister to *Henry* the 4. of *France*.
- 1624 30. *Francis*, Brother of *Henry*.
- 1630 31. *Charles*, Nephew to *Francis* by his Brother the Earl of *Vaudemont*, and Son-in-Law to him by the Marriage of his Daughter and Heir, succeeded by a mist Title of Descent and Marriage. Being resolved to hold it in his own right, he put away his Wife the Daughter of *Francis*, and took another to his Bed, which he better satisfied. Punished not long after by the loss of his whole Estate: For immediately he engaged himself in the Wars of *Germany* in behalf of *Ferdinand* the 2. but being beaten by the *Swedes* at the Battle of *Pfaffenhofen* in the County of *Hanaw*, he lost a great part of his Country to the Victors, who pursued him home. And on the other side, *Lewis* the 13. of *France*, picking a quarrel with him for receiving the Monsieur his Brother, and the Marriage of the Monsieur with the Lady *Margaret* the Duke's Sister, deprived him of the Dutchy of *Bar*, and falling into *Lorrain* with a puissant Army at such time as the *Swedes* were there, compelled him to put into his hands the City of *Nancy*, and by consequence all the rest of his Estates, *Septemb.* 1633. Since which time the Duke hath never been restored thereto, nor hath any thing left him in it, for ought I can hear, but the Town of *La Mothe*, (if that) together with a good Cause, many hearts, and an invincible courage.

The Revenues of this Prince are said to be 700000 Crowns, whereof 200000 arise from the Customs of the Salt made in his Country, and the other 500000 from his Coronet-lands. He is an absolute Prince, and given for his Device an armed hand coming as it were from Heaven, and grasping a naked Sword; to shew that he holdeth his Estate by no other Tenure than God and his Sword, the only hope at this time, of the present Duke. For though he be accounted a Prince of the fifth Circle thereof, which is called the *Circle* of the *Rhene*; yet he neither comes unto the Diets, nor holdeth himself bound by any of the Orders and Decrees which are made therein, as do the rest of the great Princes of *Germany*; his neighbourhood to the *French* formerly securing his Estate against any force which the Empire durst bring against him for those neglects.

The Arms of *Lorrain* are O, a Bend Gules charged with

3 Larks *Argent*. But herein I find *Barn*, an old French Herald, to differ from *Paradine*, the most exact Genealogist of the French Nation. For *Barn* a chertish the Bend not with 3 *Alouettes* Larks as *Paradine* doth, but with 3 *Altrions*, which are in Blazon small Birds wanting beaks, feet, and legs. Of this last opinion is the most worthy Antiquary *Camden Clarendinus*; who withal telleth us, that when *Godfrey de Bouillon* was at the Siege of *Hiersa-falem*, shooting at *S. David's* Tower there, he broaded three feeble birds called *Altrions* upon his Arrow, and thereupon assumed this Arms.

#### 6. SOEVLIA, or SCHWABEN.

THE Dukedom of *SOEVLIA* or *SCHWABEN*, according to the antient limits and extent thereof, was bounded on the North with *Frankland* and the Lower *Palatinate*, on the South with *Switzerland* and the *Alps* of *Tyrol*, on the East with the River *Leck*, parting it from *Bavaria*, and on the West with the *Rhene* dividing it from *Sungow* and both *Alsatia's*. But now the Dukedom of *Wittenberg*, the Marquitate of *Baden*, and other lesser Estates being taken out of it, it is contracted and restrained within narrower Bounds, having on the East *Bavaria*, on the West the Dukedom of *Wittenberg*, and so much of the *Rhene* as serveth to divide it from *Sungo* and the Upper *Elfas*, on the North *Francia* of *Frankland*, and on the South a little of the *Rhene*, with some part of the *Switzers*.

The County for the most part is mountainous and hilly, overpecked with some spurs of the *Alps*, and the woods of *Negra Sylva* or *Swartzwald*, accompanied notwithstanding with great plenty of Springs and Rivers (and amongst them the *Neccar* and the renowned *Danubius*) which do issue from them: which makes the Vales hereof to be very fruitful, sufficiently stored with all necessary provisions. Nor are the Woods and Mountains so unprofitable, but that besides the great plenty of Fowl and the pleasures of Hunting, they do afford some Mines of Iron and other Metals.

The people in regard of their mountainous situation are more fierce and warlike than the rest of the *German's*, and so accompanied by *Plutarch* in former times, industrious in several Trades and Manufactures, especially in the weaving of Linen-cloth, which is made here in great abundance: and by reason they have so much in them of the South, they are *supra modum* in *Pencerem prout*, as *Ambrosius* tells me, at least more given to *Frout* than the other of the *German's*; are the women also being said to be very forwards in this kind, as tractable and easy as the men could wish them.

The whole is generally divided into the *Hegow* lying next to the Lake of *Constance*; the *Algow* extending to *Bavaria*; *Brisingow*, upon the West of the River *Rhene*; and North *Schwaben*, on the Northern side of *Danubius*. Principal Cities in the *HEGOW* are, 1. *Lindau*, situate like an Island in the Lake of *Constance*, encompassed all-most with the waters thereof, but joined to it with a Causeway of 290 paces long: one of the Free or Imperial Cities, made 10, for money, by the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa*, Anno 1166. 2. *Buchorn*, and 3. *Überlingen*, on the same Lake; both Imperial also. 4. *Seckau*, situate on both sides of the *Rhene*, not far from the cillux thereof out of the Lake *Cell*, (so called from a Town of that name belonging to the Arch-dukes of *Austria*, but anciently known by the name of *Lacus Venetus*) and near those dreadful falls or Cataracts of that River no less than 90 Cubits downwards, with great noise and violence. For which cause all Vessels that go down the *Rhene* are faine to unlace themselves, and by Carts to carry their goods to this Town, where they im-

bark them again. Which as it yieldeth great benefit to the Town by Tolls and Impacts, so doth it always keep it stored with abundance of Banks and other Vessels: whence it hath the name of *Seckau*, that is to say, the house of *Skiff*, or the Town of *Skp boats*. The Town is conveniently seated amongst rich Pastures and sweet Groves on both sides of the River; not without some pleasant Hills, and the few well planted with Vines, near adjoining to it. Imperial once, but now a Canton of the *Switzers*, as hath there been hitherto. 5. *Arbon*, upon the Lake it self, (the *Arber Felix* of *Sirado*) belonging to the Bishop of *Constance*. 6. *Meersburg*, the ordinary Seat and Residence of the Bishop of *Constance*, Lord of the most part of this Tract, on the same Lake also. 7. *Constance* it self, situate on both sides of the *Rhene*, where it issueth out of the Lake, coming from hence the Lake of *Constance*, but by the *Dutch Boden-see*, from the Castle of *Baden*, by *Plin* and other Antients *Lacus Arconis*, and *Brigantius*, made by the Confluence of the *Rhene*, and some other Rivers falling out of *Switzerland*. The Town is Imperial, an Episcopical See, and a flourishing Empire: famous for the Council here holden Anno 1144, of great renown as well for the multitude & quality of the people which were there assembled, as for the importance of the matters which were therein handled. The people of most note there assembled were, *Sigismund* the Emperour; 4 Patriarchs, 29 Cardinals, 346 Archbishops and Bishops, 564 Abbots and Doctors, 10000 free Priests and Noblemen, 450 common Barons, 1600 Bishops, and 320 Minstrels and Jesters. The business there handled was, first the pacifying of a Schism in the Church, there being at that time 3 Popes, (or rather Anti-Popes) *Gregory* the 12. resident at Rome, *John* the 22. at *Bononia*, and *Benedict* the 13. in Spain; all three deeply by the Council, and *Marinus* the 7. made sole Pope by the unanimous consent of the Council, declaring both by matter of fact, and by a public Constition here made and ratified, that a Council is above the Pope. The other main business was the proceeding against *John Hu* and *Hierome* of *Prague* (spoken of before) both withstanding the Emperour's safe conduct; were heretaken of Heretic, degraded and burnt. Now the manner of degrading a Priest is this: (I hope to be excused in this Digression) The party to be degraded is steeled in his Priestly Vestments, holding in the one hand a Chalice full of wine & water, and in the other a gill-pate (or *Patten*, as they call it) with a wafer. Then kneeling down, the Bishop's Deputy, 1. taking from him all those things commands him to say no more Masses for the quick and dead. 2. Scraping his Fingers ends with a piece of Glasse, he commandeth him from that time forwards not to hallow any thing. And 3. stripping him of his priestly Habit, he is clothed in a Lay attire, and so delivered over to the secular magistrate. But to return again to the City of *Constance*, being proscribed by *Charles* the 5. for refusing the *Interim*, and not able to withstand such Forces, were raised against them, they put themselves under the protection of *Ferdinand*, then King of the *Romans*, and Brother of *Charles*. But herein they fell out of the Frying pan into the Fire, as the saying is: For *Ferdinand* being possessed of the Town, seized on the common Treasury, and upon all Records and Writings which belonged unto them; set out an Edict, that all the Ministers within eight daies should depart the City, and that no Citizen from thenceforth should wear any Weapon. And instead of a Protector he became their Master.

Chief Cities in the part hereof lying towards *Bavaria* which is called the *ALGOW* are, 1. *Buchorn*, on the Lake called *Feder-see*; 2. *Town Imperial*. 2. *Ravensburg* a Free City, seated amongst Mountains, whereof one hangeth

eth over the River *Ach* running by it in a bed so narrow that not able to receive the waters which fall down from the Hills, it much endangeth all the Country by frequent Inland-floods. 3. *Wangen*, (the *Nemavia* of *Antoninus*) Imperial also. 4. *Kempten*, (the *Campodunum* of *Sirado*, and the *Memmingen* of *Proton*), both Imperial Cities, the last about 3 miles in circuit, populous, rich and very well traded. 5. *Pfullendorf*, 7. *Zürcher*, 8. *Brissach*, all three Imperial; the last supposed to be the *Brigantium* of the Ancients. 9. *Augsburg*, on the River *Lech*, looking into *Bavaria*, first made a Roman Colony by *Augustus Caesar*, and by him called *Augusta Vin-dictio*, a potent People of this Tract. A City of great wealth and late, containing about 9 miles in circuit, and very strongly fortified by Nature on the East and North, where the ground lies low and under water, and on the West and South by Art. The Buildings for three parts of it are of Clay and Timber; but on the West part, seated on an Hill, built of Free-stone, six or seven Stories high, in which are many fair Houses of the principal Citizens, and many stately Palaces, which belong to the *Fuggers*, a Family of very great (almost Princely) Revenues, possessed of many goodly dwellings both in the City and the Suburbs, and adjoining Territories; who though they have of late obtained the honour of Barons, in regard of their Wealth, still keep themselves (contrary to the custom of *Germany*, where Traffick is counted a disgrace to a Noble-man) to the trade of Merchandise. The publick Edifices of it are very decent, especially the Cathedral Church, a majestic Building; the other Churches, being ten in number, and the Religious Houses, correspondent to it. Of old time *Ceres* was here worshipped, from whence (or from the fruitfulness of the soil) the City gives a Sheaf of Corn for the Arms thereof. Since their Conversion unto Christianity it was made a Bishops See. Destroyed by *Attila* and his *Huns*, it was after built more beautifully than it had been formerly, at last made Imperial, and the Mithers of as large a Territory as most Cities of *Germany*. Famous for the Confession of Faith exhibited in this place to *Charles* the 5. by the Protestant Princes; hence called *Confessio Augustana*, Anno 1530. 2. For the *Interim*, or mixt form of Doctrine, containing some Points of Protestantism, but most of Popery, there tendered to both parties by the said Emperour (but received by neither) to be subscribed to and observed till the Differences could be settled by a General Council. And 3. for the publick allowance here given by Decree of all the States of the Empire to the Protestant party, to profess openly their Religion without any impeachment, Anno 1555. A Limitation only laid on the Ecclesiastics, that if they changed their Religion, they should lose their preferments; which were to be bestowed on others more addicted to the See of Rome.

In the third part hereof, called *BRISINGOW*, lying on the East of the River *Rhene*, and the West of *Wittenberg*, and on the South closed in with the Canton of *Basel*. Places of most importance are, 1. *Friburg*, upon the *Trieff*, and other Streams descending from the Mountains of *Swartzwald*, under which it lieth: founded by *Berchtold* the third, Earl or Duke of *Zeringen*, (the Castle of *Zeringen*, founded by *Berchtold* the first, Son of *Gehaz*, the youngest Son of *Guentram*, the second Earl of *Habsburg*, once the chief Seat of those Princes, being then near adjoining to it) in the reign of *Henry* the Fifth Emperour, Anno 1112, or thereabouts. Famous in those days for Silver mines, now for an University here established Anno 1459, and being in present estimation the chief of the Country, of which more anon. 2. *Offenbach*, 3. *Gengenbach*, both upon the *Kintzich*, and both Towns Imperial: the first so named

from *Offa* an English Saxon, the Apottle of these parts of *Germany*. 4. *Hochberg*, which gives the Title of a Marquess to the Marquesses of *Baden*, who are Lords thereof. 5. *Zel*, once Imperial, but of late times belonging, as doth also 6. *Badenwiller*, to the Marquess of *Baden*; this last accruing to them by the Marriage of *Rodolphus* the sixth of that name, Marquess of *Hochberg*, with a Sister of *John* Earl of *Friburg*, the then Lord thereof. 7. *Waldshut*, upon the *Rhene*, in a barren, cold and mountainous Country, but well stored with Woods. 8. *Brissac*, by *Antoine* called *Mons Brissacus*, a Garrison in his time against the encroaching *Almans*, and situate at that time on the French side of the *Rhene*, the course of the River being since turned on the other side, where now it runneth. It is built Castle-wise on the top of a round Hill, in which there is also a strong Tower or Fortresses, raised by *Berchtold* the third for defence of the place; otherwise strong enough by its own natural situation, and might be made impregnable; but for want of water, which is all drawn from one deep Well in the heart of the Town, or brought with great charge and trouble from the *Rhene* which runs underneath it. The Town is fair, populous, and well built; once of most note in all the Country, from hence called *Brissac-gow*, or *Brissac-gow*; but after the building of *Friburg* by *Berchtold* the 4. it grew by little and little to be less frequented, the other being seated more conveniently for Trade and business: Here also, not far off from the Castle of *Zeringen*, stood that of *Kiburg*, somewhat the ancestor of the two; of such authority and repute in those elder times, that the Emperours do still retain the Title of Earls of *Kiburg* in the Style Imperial: defended on the House of *Habsburg* by the Marriage of *Elizabeth*, Daughter and Heir of *Harmann* the last Earl thereof, to *Eberhard* of *Habsburg*, Cousin-german to the Emperour *Rodolphus* on the expiring of which Line, Anno 1376, it fell together with many fair Estates among the *Switzers*, to *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, furnished the Short.

Finally, in the fourth and last part hereof, called *NORTH-SCHWABEN*, because on the North-side of the *Danow*, the places most observable are, 1. *Gemund*, on the *Rheims*. 2. *Dinkel-Spyel*, on the *Warmitz*, two Imperial Towns; which with *Überlingen* or *Werlingen*, (all three but mean in building, Territory, or estimation) (spoken of before, are the only three Imperial Cities in all *Germany* which totally adhere unto the Doctrines of the Church of Rome. 3. *Bopfingen*, on the *Egga*, an Imperial City. 4. *Norlingen* on the same River, but in a low and moorish ground, yet of great repute, populous, and well traded; most memorable for the Decree here given the *Swedes* by *Ferdinand* the third, now Emperour, at his first entrance on the Government; in which *Bannier*, one of the principal Commanders of that Nation, was slain on the place, *Guthaus Horn*, another of as great eminence, taken Prisoner, their whole Forces routed, and thereupon to strange an Alteration of the Affairs of *Germany*, which they had almost wholly conquered, (though not for themselves, that the *Palatinate*, not long before restored to its proper Owner, was again possessed by the Spaniards, *Frankland* by the Imperialists, and the remainder of the *Swedes* forced to withdraw into their Holds on the *Baltick Seas*, Anno 1637. 5. *Rotweil*, not far from the head of the *Neccar*, an Imperial City, and a Confederate of the *Switzers*. 6. *Donauwert*, seated on the Confluence of the *Donaw* and the *Werda*, whence it had the name, most commonly called only *Werda*, an Imperial Town, the habitation of *John* de *Werda*, once a Brewer herein, but afterwards a ch. of Commander of the Forces of the Duke of *Bavaria* in the late German Wars. 7. *Völklingen*, on the *Bregentz*, a small River falling into the

the *Danow*; a Town belonging to the Princes of the House of *Austria*. Not far from which stands *8. Furfberg*, an ancient Castle. The Earls hereof are Princes of the Empire, and Lords of a great part of the Country, descended lineally from *Egino*, or *Eggon*, the youngest Son of the Lady *Judith*, Sister and Heir of *Berthold* the fifth, the last Duke of *Zerigen*, and consequently a Branch of the Illustrious House of *Habsburg*; exceedingly increased both in power and Patrimony, by the Marriage of *Frederick* Earl hereof (in the time of *Charles* the fifth, under whom he served in his Wars against the Protestants) with *Anne* the Daughter and Heir of *Christopher* the last Earl of *Werdenberg*, possessed of many fair Estates amongst the *Switzers* and the adjoining parts of *Schwaben*. In a Village of this Earl, called *Den Eschingen*, is the head of *Danubius*. *9. Ulm*, an Imperial City, situate on the meeting of the *Blawe*, the *Iler*, and the *Danow*, the principal City of *North Schwaben*; about six miles in compass, rich, populous, well fortified, and stored with an Army for Ordnance and all manner of Ammunition, not inferior to any in *Germany*. The Town is but new taking its first rise from a Monastery here founded by *Charles* the Great, which after grew to be a great City; and took the name of *Ulm* from the Elms about it. At first it belonged unto the Monks, of whom having bought their Freedom in the time of *Frederick* the third, it became Imperial. The *Danow* hereabouts begins to be navigable, having so violent a Stream, that the Boats which go down the water use to be held at the place where they land, it being both difficult and chargeable to bring them back again. Not far hence on the banks of the *Danow* lie the *Suevian Alps*, and amongst them the old Castle of *Hohenberg*, the Lord whereof, on the Ruine of the House of *Schwaben*, became possessed of a great Estate here and in *Upper Elsass*, fold afterwards to *Rodolph* of *Habsburg*, the Founder of the now *Austrian* Family.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Brizentes*, *Suanetes*, *Rugifci*, and *Calcones*, who, together with the *Vindelici* (of whom more hereafter) and other Tribes of the *Rheii*, (of whom somewhat hath been said before in the *Alpine* Provinces) possessed themselves of that Country which lieth betwixt the River *Imn* and the head of the *Rhene*, East and West, *Danubius* and the *Alps* of *Italy*, North and South. Within which compass are the greatest part of the *Grifons*, the Dukedoms of *Schwaben* and *Bavaria* on this side the *Danow*, and part of the County of *Tyrol*, and not a few of the Cantons of *Switzerland*. Subdued by *Drius* and *Tiberius Nero*, Sons in law of *Augustus*, they were made a Province of the *Romans*: divided into *Rhetia prima*, taking in all the Countries from the *Rhene* to the *Leck*, or *Lycus*; and *Rhetia secunda*, lying betwixt the *Leck* and the River *Imn*, which by another name was called *Vindelicia*. By which account all *Schwaben* on the South side of the *Danow* was part of the Province of *Rhetia prima*, continuing to till vanquished and subdued by the *Almans* in the time of *Valentinian* the third, Emperor of the Western parts. As for the *Almans* who succeeded in possession hereof, they were originally some Tribes and Families of the *Suevi*, the most warlike Nation of the *Germans*, inhabiting upon the Banks of the River of *Albis*; who jealous of *Cæsars* great Successes, brought against him 430000 fighting men, of which 80000 were slain, and many drowned. They used to flay at home and go to the War by turn; they flayed at home till the Land, to whom the rest returning brought the Spoil of the Enemies. But after this blow we hear little of them till the time of *Caracalla* the Son of *Severus*; during whose Reign, defending towards the Banks of the *Rhene* and the *Danow*, and mingling with other Nations as they passed along, they assumed first the

name of *Almans*; either from that promiscuous mixture of all sorts of men, or (as I rather think) from *Mannus* the Son of *Tuisco*, one of the great and national Gods of the *Germans*. And though they were well beaten by him at their first coming down, near the River *Marus*, and afterwards more broken by *Dioctian*, who slew at least 60000 of them at one time in *Gaul*, yet never left to infect the Provinces of the Empire, which lay nearest to them, till in the time following the track of the *Huns* who had gone before them, and beaten down many of the Forts and Garrisons which were in their way, they made themselves Masters of *Rhetia prima*, *Germania prima*, and part of *Maxima Sequanorum*, containing besides the Countries *Florea* of *Belore*, *Alatia*, and so much of the *Lower Palatinate* as lies on the *French* side of the *Rhene*. But quarrelling with the *French*, their next neighbours, (of whose growth and greatness they began to be very sensible) they were first vanquished by *Clevis* the first Christian King of the *French* in that great and memorable Fight at *Zulp* near *Culen*, and afterwards made wholly subject to the Conqueror, who appointed them with an heavy and lasting Servitude. About this time they returned again to their old name of *Suevians*, their Estate being erected into a Dukedom, called many times the Dukedom of *Almain*; and when so called, divided into the Upper *Almain*, comprehending the Country of the *Grifons*, with some parts of *Switzerland* and *Tyrol*, and the Lower or the proper *Almain*, which contained the rest of the Estates of the ancient *Almans*, called for the most part by the name of the Dukedom of *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, and finally transmitting that name to its Province only, the best part thereof. These Dukes were at first officary only, removable at the will of the Emperor, and accountable to him; not seldom many times one time, especially while under the command of the *French*, some of them being Dukes of the Upper, and others of the Lower *Almain*. So that there is great certainty of their Succession, nor much care betwixt in searching after it; though otherwise men of great Authority and command in their several Times. The most remarkable amongst them was *Rodolph*, Earl of *Roufflen* and Duke of *Schwaben* (descended from the Earls of *Habsburg*) in the Reign of *Henry* the fourth, against whom he was chosen Emperor by the practice and procurement of Pope *Hildebrand*, but overcome and wounded at the Battle of *Elster*, he died not long after of his wounds, with great reverence for rebelling against his Sovereign. After his death, some Provinces being divided from it, and other lesser Estates first erected out of it, it was made hereditary in the person of *Frederick* Baron of *Hohenstauffen*, furnished the Ancient by the munificence and bounty of the said *Henry* the fourth, whose Daughter *Agnes* he had married. His Successors follow in this order.

#### The Dukes of SCHWABEN.

1. *Frederick* the Ancient, the first hereditary Duke of *Schwaben*.
2. *Frederick* with one eye, Son of *Frederick* the Ancient.
3. *Frederick* III. surnamed *Barbarossa*, Son of *Frederick* with one eye, Duke of *Schwaben*, and Emperor: he succeeded the Emperor *Henry* the fifth in the Dukedom of *Francia*, and left the same unto his Successors.

1901: *Frederick* IV. second Son of *Barbarossa*, his elder Brother *Henry* succeeding in the Empire by the name of *Henry* the fifth.

f. Conrad

5. *Conrade*, Brother of *Frederick* the fourth.
6. *Philip*, Brother of *Conrade*, after the death of *Henry* the 6. elected Emperor.
- 1207 7. *Frederick* V. Son of *Henry* the fifth, elected Emperor by the name of *Frederick* the second, King of *Naples* and *Sicily* also in the right of his Mother.
- 1250 8. *Conrade* II. Son of *Frederick* the fifth, King of both *Sicilies*, and Emperor of *Germany* after the death of his Father; poisoned, as was supposed, by his base Brother *Manfred*, who succeeded in his Kingdom of *Sicily*.
- 1254 9. *Conradine*, the Son of *Conrade*, pursuing his Right unto the Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*, was overcome and taken prisoner by *Charles* of *Anjou*, Successor unto *Manfred* in those Estates, and by his command beheaded at *Naples* Anno 1268. After whose death (being the last of that powerful and Imperial Family) this vast Estate was brought unto a second dismembring, and divided amongst the Bishops, Princes and Free Cities hereof: of which last there are more within the old Precincts of this Dukedom than in all *Germany* besides. So that beholding it in the first and second Dilapidation, we find many goodly Patrimonies and fair Estates (besides what belongeth to the Cities and Episcopal Sees) to have been raised out of the Ruines of this great Dukedom: that is to say, the Dukedoms of *Zerigen* and *Wirtenberg*, with the Marquisate of *Baden*, dismembring from it when conferred on *Frederick* of *Hohenstauffen*, the Barldoms of *Pfirt*, *Hohenberg* and *Friburg*, (besides a great improvement of the Earldom of *Habsburg*) advanced out of the second Ruine. Now *Pfirt* and *Hohenberg* were united to the House of *Austria* hath been shewn already; and what becomes of *Wirtenberg* and *Baden* shall be shewn hereafter. Here it is only to be noted, that the Family of *Zerigen*, possessed of almost all *Brifgow* and a great part of *Switzerland*, owe their Original to *Berthold*, the Son of *Gebizo*, a younger Son of *Gunnram* the 2. Earl of *Habsburg*. Which being extinguished after a Succession of seven Princes only in the person of *Berthold* the fifth, (who died the same day in which the Emperor *Rodolph* of *Habsburg* was born) Anno 1218, the Rights hereof descended on the Earls of *Friburg*, the principal City of that Country; unto the first that bare the Title of Earl of *Friburg*, being the eldest Son of *Judith*, Sister and Heir of *Berthold* the last Duke of *Zerigen*, *Eggon*, the last Earl of which House, being overlaid by his undutiful and rebellious Subjects, sold his Estate therein for 12000 Ducats to *Albert* and *Leopold* Dukes of *Austria*, Sons of *Albert* the Short, whose Successors enjoy all *Brifgow* to this very day.

The Arms of *Schwaben* were Argent, 3 Leopards Sable, as is said by *Bara*; but *Paradine* will have them to be three Leopards Sable, crowned Gules, in a Field Or.

#### 7. BAVARIA.

**B**AVARIA is bounded on the East with *Austria*, on the West with the River *Leck* or *Lycus*, which parts it from *Schwaben*, on the North with *Noravia*, or the upper *Palatinate*, and on the South with the Earldom of *Rhetia* and *Carinthia*. It containeth the whole Province of *Rhetia secunda*, and so much of *Noricum mediterraneum* as now maketh up the Bishoppick of *Salzburg*; and by a distinct name was called *Vindelicia*, as being the ancient habitation of the *Vindelici*; so named from the two Rivers of *Vindis* and *Lycus*, (now the *Werd* and the *Leck*) upon which they lived. According whereunto it is thus verified by a *German* Poet.

*Respicit & late furiosos Vindimque Licuque  
Miscentes Undas, & nomina Littoris, unde  
Antiquam Gentem, populumque, Urbemque vocerunt  
Vindelici.*

In English thus,

*Vindis* and *Lycus*, Floods of noted Fame,  
He next beholds, mingling their Streams and Name;  
To which the old *Vindelici* do own  
The name of both their Nation and their Town.

Meaning by their Town, as I conceive, *Augusta Vindelicorum*, their Metropolis or Capital City. But after such time as the *Botti* or *Boiarians* had driven out the *Romans*, and got possession of this Country, the name of *Vindelicia* and *Rhetia secunda* grew into disuse, that of *Bavaria* succeeding in the place thereof, mollified or corrupted into *Bavaria*, the present name of the Country amongst the *Latines*; but by the Dutch called *Bayern*, by the *French* *Bavie*.

The whole is divided into three parts: the *Higher*, lying towards the *Alps* of *Tyrol*, the *Lower*, extending all along the banks of the *Danow*; and the *District* of *Salzburg*, situate betwixt the *Imn* and the Dukedom of *Austria*: a third much over-spread with Woods and Forests, remainders of the *Herucian* Forest, described before. But more particularly the *Higher*, lying towards the *Alps*, is cold and barren, affording no Wines, and but little Corn: the *Lower* being more fruitful, and better planted, for some parts (especially about *Regensberg* and *Landshut*) inferior unto none in *Germany* for Richness and pleasantness of the situation. Of the *District* of *Salzburg* we shall speak by itself, because by some not reckoned as a part hereof. In all the three great quantity of *Fewel* for the fire, and of *Timber* for Building, no less of *Swine* fattened in the Woods, and sent away by numerous Herds into other Countries.

The Christian Faith was first preached here amongst the *Boiarians* by *Rupertus* Bishop of *Worms*, driven from his See by *Childebert* King of the *French*, Anno 540, or thereabouts, and here made the first Bishop of *Salzburg*: corrupted at this time with the Leven of the Church of *Rome*, to which this Country (settling aside the Imperial Cities) is more entirely devoted than any other in all *Germany*.

Principal Cities in the *HIGHER* are 1. *Munchen*, (in *Latine* *Monachium*) the Duke's Seat, seated on the *Isar*, or *Isara*, in a very sweet and delightful Soil, among Ponds and Groves, daintily interlaced with pretty Rivers, and enriched with many excellent Gardens; that of the Duke being hardly to be paralleled in all this Continent: first founded by *Henry* Duke hereof in the time of *Orbo* the first, Anno 972, now grown a large and populous City, the publick Buildings as Churches, Turrets, Libraries, the Senate House, or *Guildhall*, and common Market-place, of such excellent Structure, that they serve not only for Use and Ornament, but for Admiration. Amongst them none is more eminent than the Library in the Ducal Palace, wherein are conceived to be 11000 Volumes, the most part of them Manuscripts. A Town made choice of by *Maximilian*, the now Duke of *Bavaria*, to be the receptacle of the Spoils got by him in the Wars of *Germany*: he being found (at such time as the Town was taken by the King of *Sweden*) 140 Brass Pieces (besides other great Guns) hidden under the ground, one of the which was charged, instead of Powder and Shot, with 30000 Crowns in Gold. 2. *Landshut*, upon the *Leck* or *Lycus*, near the *Alps* of *Tyrol*: once of great strength, because a Frontier towards *Schwaben*; but proving a dangerous neighbor to the *Swed* & Garrisons planted in these parts during that War against the Duke of *Bavaria*, was

by

by them taken and dismantled, and is now an open Village only. 3. *Martenwald*, now a place of no note or beauty, heretofore the *Inimicus* of *Ptolemy* seated near the *Alps*. 4. *Fridberg*, well fortified, by Duke *Ludowick*, or *Lewis* the second, for a Bulwark against those of *Augsburg*. 5. Here stood also the old Castle of *Scheyr*, built by *Arnulph* 2. Son of *Arnulph* the first, Duke of *Bavaria*, the Seat and honorary Title of his posterity, (*Dynasty* *Scheyrsen* in the *Latine*) till *Otho* of *Wittelsbach*, by the favour of *Frederick Barbarossa* and his own good fortune did attain that Dukedom.

In the *LOWER Bavaria* there first offers it self to consideration the Town of *Rain*, seated on the *Leck*, not far from the fall thereof into the *Danow*; memorable for the Skirmish near to it betwixt the *Swedes* and *Bavarians* at the first passing of the *Swedish* Forces over that River, in which *John* Earl of *Tilly*, so famous for his long and fortunate Conduct of the Imperial Armies, received his death's wound, of which he died at *Ingolstadt* within few weeks after. 2. *Newburg*, upon the *Danow*, not far from *Rain*; the first Town of *Bavaria* taken in by the *Swedes* after the said defeat of *Tilly*. 3. *Ingolstadt*, said to be built by a Tribe or Nation of the *Sueves* called *Angeli*, and thence called *Angelstadtum*; or *Angelslade*; first made City by *Ludowick* of *Bavaria* Duke and Emperor, and in the year 1410 made an University, much privileged by Duke *Lewis* or *Ludowick* the fifth, and Pope *Pius* the second. A Town so strongly fortified both by Art and Nature, that it seems impregnable, and indeed proved so to *Gustavus* the late King of *Sweden*, who here found the first check to his prosperous Fortunes, being forced to raise his Siege without endangering it, and find work elsewhere. 4. *Regensburg*, (in *Latine* *Ratisbona*) on the *Danow* also, where it receives the River *Regen*, whence it hath its name: built in the place of *Tiberina*, or *Augusta Tiberii*, so called of a Colony brought hither by *Antony* *Cesar* about the time of our Saviours Passion, afterwards called *Rhetopolis*, or the City of the *Rhetians*, the chief of *Rhetia secundæ*. At this time it is a fair rich, and populous City, beautified with an infinite number of Churches and Religious Houses: anciently an Episcopal See, and of late made the ordinary place for the general Diets of the Empire. In former times it was the Seat of the Kings and first Dukes of *Bavaria*, then made Imperial, and now mixt, or both: for being first Imperial, at the least in name, it was seized on unexpectedly by the now Duke of *Bavaria*, when the *Swedes* first got footing within his Dominions; held by him with a very strong Garrison, after the loss of *Manchen* his chief place of Residence, till at last won from him by the *Swedes*, Anno 1633. 5. *Passau*, by the modern *Latins* *Patavia*, but by some thought to be the *Boadormus* of *Ptolemy*, then a Roman Garrison: seated on the *Danow*, where it meeteth with the *Inn* and the *Ilz*, by which it is divided into three Towns, *Passau*, *Infstadt*, and *Ilstadt*: the whole *Compositum* being a rich, fair, and well traded City: a See Episcopal, and subject immediately to the Bishop as chief Lord thereof, who hath his dwelling in the Castle of *Oberhausen*, adjoining to that part hereof which is called *Ilstadt*. A place remarkable for many Meetings and Consultations of the *German* Princes, especially for that of the year 1552, in which, all former Quarrels being laid aside, the Protestants were first permitted the free Exercise of their Religion, by the consent and Edict of *Charles* the fifth, who had most laboured to suppress it. More in the land is 6. *Frising*, on the swelling of a fine round Hill near the River *Ambray*, which runs beneath it, called anciently *Fraxinum*; conceived to be built by some of the Pretidents or Lieutenants for the *Roman* Emperors, honoured with an Episcopal See about the year 710. One

of the Bishops whereof, commonly called *Otho Frisingensis*, was the best Historian of his time. 7. *Landshut*, upon the River of *Iser*, in the richest and most pleasant Country of all *Bavaria*; a beautiful and well built City, the work of *Lewis* Duke hereof, in the year 1208 adorned with a Church of most curious building for the service of God, and a magnificent Palace for the use of the Duke. 8. *Freising*, the only Imperial Town, (except *Regensburg*) in all this Dukedom. The whole number of Cities and great Towns in both *Bavaria*'s is supposed to be 80; that is to say, 34 Cities, and 46 great Towns, of which there are the principal.

The Bishoprick, or District of *SALTZBURG*, being the third part of *Bayeren* or *Bavaria*, (according to our former division of it) extendeth from the *Inn* or *Oenus* towards the Confines of *Austria*. The Soil hereof is rocky, dry, and barren, excepting some few Valleys only, as seated in the midst of the *Julian Alps*, the habitation heretofore of the *Norici mediterranei*, of whom more hereafter. The principal Town hereof is *Saltzburg*, seated upon the River *Saltzach*, whence it had the name; raised of the Ruines of *Julavia*, placed herabouts by *Antoninus*, the Station of a Cohort of *Roman* Soldiers belonging to the first Legion. An Alpine City, strongly situate among the Mountains; but no less beautiful than many of the lower grounds. The Royal Seat of some of the *Bavarian* Kings, after the Archbishops hereof, the most powerful Princes for Revenue or Jurisdiction of any in *Germany*. The See was first fixed here by *Rupertus* or *Kubertus*, the first Apostle of their parts, spoken of before; whose Image or Impres is stamped to this day on the Coins of this Bishoprick. At the time when *Luther* first endeavoured a Reformation, Cardinal *Matthæus Langius* was Bishop here, who did ingeniously confess, that the Mats did not want his faith, that the Court of *Rome* was much corrupted, and the lines of Priests and Friars fit to be reformed: *sed quid mirum Monachus omnia reformet, id non esse tolerabile*, but that such a sorry fellow as *Luther* should attempt the work, was by no means to be endured. 2. *Newkirch*, on the same River, near the head thereof. 3. *Rosenburg*, on the East-side of the *Inn*, bordering on *Bavaria*, 4. *Trunschheim*, upon the *Traun*, rising out of the Lakes. 5. *Wilhelmsberg*, one of the farthest Northwards, and 6. *Bischofsberg*, one of the most Southern in all this Trade.

The first Inhabitants of *Bavaria* (excluding the District of *Saltzburg*) were the *Vindelici*, as aforesaid; a people so resolutely bent to maintain their Freedom against the incroachment of the *Romans*, that when *Drusus*, the Son in Law of *Augustus*, and Father of *Germanicus* *Cesar*, made War upon them, the very Women thereof took the Alarm; *et desideribus telis, Infantes in oraculum adversa miserunt*, and when their Darts were sent, threw the young Infants (saith the Historian) at the heads of the *Romans*. After that, in the declining of the Empire, succeeded the *Boiarii*, some of the many Tribes of the *Boii*, the most diffused and multitudinous Nation of *Gaul* and *Germany*. Originally they were of *Gaul*, inhabiting the Dukedom of *Bourbon*, from whence some of them passed with the *Senones* and others of the *Gauls* to the farther side of the *Alps* (in respect of them) where they took up the Country between the *Appennini* and the *Po*. Wearied with many Bickerings, at last with sharp and bitter Wars against the *Romans*, and by them deprived of half their Country, some of them passed into *Germany*, and mingled themselves with the *Taurisci*, then dwelling in those parts which we now call *Saxony*; others advancing further, thrust themselves into the *Norici* (of whom more anon), and some retired themselves into the helters and fast places of the *Hercynian* Forest

Forest. Driven from this last by the *Marcomanni*, they fell into the Countries of the *Hermunduri* and *Norici*, (now the Upper *Palatinate*) who, mingled into one Nation with them, took the name of *Boiarii*, and were by that name first known in the time of *Clovis* the 5. King of the *French*; by whose perfwasion, in the 17 year of *Anastasijs* Emperor of the East, they passed over the *Danow*, and possessed themselves of *Vindelicis*, or the second *Rhetia*, with some part of *Noricum*, to which they gave the name of *Boiaria*, as before was signified. They were governed first by Kings, (as all Nations were) of whom we meet with none but *Aldigerius*, (and he the last of that Race) slain fighting on the side of the *Almans* against the *French*, at the great Battel of *Zulp* near *Colen*. After which they were made subject to the Conquerors, as their neighbours and Confederates the *Almans* were, but suffered to live under the command and Government of their own Princes by the name of Dukes. Of these, from *Theodo* the Son of *Aldigerius*, to *Tassilo* the last Duke, outed of his Estate and Honours by *Charles* the Great, for conspiring with the *Lombards* against him, are reckoned 11 Dukes in all; whose names (for there remaineth little of them but the empty names) we shall subjoin in the ensuing Catalogue of the

## Dukes of the BOIARIANS.

- 493 1. *Theodo*, Son of *Aldigerius* the last King, from whose younger Brother *Orilo* descended *Pepin* the Father of *Charles* the Great.
- 511 2. *Theodo II.* firnamed the Great.
- 537 3. *Theodebert*.
4. *Theodo III.* the first Christian Prince of the *Boiarii*.
- 565 5. *Tassilo*, Son of *Theodebert*.
- 598 6. *Garibaldus*.
- 612 7. *Theodo IV.*
- 630 8. *Theodo II.*
- 650 9. *Theodo V.*
10. *Theodebert II.*
11. *Theodo VI.* Son of *Grimoldus*, the Brother of *Theodebert* the second.
- 703 12. *Grimold*.
13. *Hugobert*, Brother of *Grimold*.
- 735 14. *Orilo*.
- 765 15. *Tassilo III.* the last Duke of the *Boiarii*, of whom more anon.

Amongst these, few were of any note but 1. *Theodo* the first Son of *Aldigerius*, who abandoning the name of King, because less pleasing to the *French*, who had newly conquered them, assumed that of Duke, and passing over the *Danow*, extorted the whole Province of *Rhetia* *secundæ* from the *Romans*, Anno 508. or thereabouts. 2. *Theodo* the second, named the great, for his great and many Victories against the *Romans*, whom he outed of all *Noricum* and *Vindelicis*, and whatsoever they held on the Dutch side of the *Alps*. 3. *Theodo* the third of that name, and the fourth in number of the Dukes, converted with his people to the Christian Faith by the preaching of *Rupertus* before mentioned, Anno 80. 4. *Tassilo* the third of that name, and the last of their Dukes of the Race of *Aldigerius*, or of the old *Boiarii* blood, who being deposed by *Charles* the Great, the whole Country became immediately subject to the *French*, governed at first by their Lieutenants. Disinherited from the *French* Empire by *Lewis* the Godly, it was made a Kingdom, (*Pannonia* being added and united to it) by whom it was conferred on *Lotharius* his eldest Son, who was afterwards Emperor of the *Romans*: after his death possessed by the Kings of *Germany*, but as a distinct King-

dom both in name and Title, till the decease of *Lewis* the Son of *Arnulph*, the last of the direct Line of *Charles* the Great. He being dead, and the *Bavarians* loth to be made a subject Province to the Kingdom of *Germany*, one *Arnulph* of the Issue of the said *Charles*, with the general liking of the *Boiarii*, took upon himself the Title of King, but being opposed therein by *Conrad* the Brother of *Lewis*, Emperor and King of *Germany*, and also by *Henry* the first who succeeded, he changed the Title of King into that of Duke: the Founder of the present House of

## The Dukes of BAVARIA.

1. *Arnulph*, of the House of *Charles* the Great, first Duke of *Bavaria*.
2. *Eberhard*, Son of *Arnulph*, deposed by *Otho* the first.
3. *Berechbold*, the Brother of *Arnulph*, confirmed in the Estate by the said Emperor *Otho*. After whose death it was conferred on *Henry* the Brother of *Otho* the 1. who had married *Judith*, Daughter of *Arnulph* the first Duke, and Sister to *Eberhard*.
4. *Henry*, Brother of *Otho* the first, firnamed *Rixius*, or the Quarrellom.
5. *Henry II.* Son of the former *Henry*, firnamed *Hezzelo*.
6. *Henry III.* firnamed the Saint, Son of *Henry II.* the first Emperor who came in by Election, according to the Order made by Pope *Gregory* the 5. After whose coming to the Empire this Dukedom was transferred for 14 Successions from one great Family to another, according to the power and pleasure of the present Emperor, in manner following.
7. *Henry IV.* furnamed *Hezzel*, Brother to *Conrad*, the renowned Wife of *Henry* the Saint, by whom he was preferred to this Dukedom, and by him deposed.
8. *Henry Guelpo*, Son of *Robert* Earl of *Altorff* in *Schwaben*, (of the strange Original of which Family we shall speak in *Brunswick*) made Duke by the Emperor *Conrad* the 2.
9. *Guelpo*, Son of *Henry Guelpo* or *Henry* the 5.
10. *Ernest*, created Duke hereof by the same *Conrad* the 2, and by him deposed again for conspiring against him.
11. *Henry VI.*
12. *Ceno*, accused of conspiracy, and displaced by *Henry* the 3. to make room for
13. *Henry VII.* Son of the said Emperor *Henry* the 3, whom he succeeded in the Empire by the name of *Henry* the 4.
14. *Agnes*, the Mother of the said *Henry* the 4, by the gift of her Son.
15. *Otho*, by the gift of the Emperress *Agnes*, deposed not long after by *Henry* the 4.
16. *Welpo III.* Son of *Coniza*, the Daughter of *Guelpo* the 2, by *Axon* an Italian Marquess, made Duke hereof by the said Emperor *Henry* the 4.
17. *Welpo IV.* Son to *Welpo* the 3.
18. *Henry VIII.* firnamed the Proud, Brother of *Guelpo* the 4, by the Marriage of *Gertrude* Daughter of *Lotharius* the second, Duke of *Saxony* also. Deprived of both by the Emperor *Conrad* the 3.
19. *Leopold*, Son to *Leopold* the 4. Marquess of *Austria*.

- Austria*, made Duke by the said *Conrad* the 3.  
 20. *Henry IX.* Brother of *Leopold*, after Mar-  
 que's, at last Duke of *Austria*.  
 21. *Henry X.* surnamed the Lion, Son of *Henry*  
 the Proud, restored by the Arbitrement of  
*Frederick Barbarossa*, (the Duke of *Austria*  
 being otherwise satisfied) by whom he was not  
 long after prohibited, and deprived of both  
 his Dukedoms. After which this Estate became  
 fixed and settled in the person and posterity of  
 1180 22. *Orto of Styria*, so called from the place  
 of his birth or dwelling, defended lineally  
 from *Arnulp* the Lord of *Sebyr* in the Up-  
 per *Bavaria*, and 2. Son of *Arnulp* the first  
 Duke hereof, advanced upon this honour by  
*Frederick Barbarossa*, in fable of the too great  
 power of the former Dukes: the whole ex-  
 tent of this Estate being reduced by this time  
 to the limits of the modern *Bavaria*, and the  
 Palatinate of *Northgria*.  
 1183 23. *Ludovick*, or *Lewis* Son of *Orto*.  
 1231 24. *Orto II.* Son of *Lewis*, who by marrying *Ger-  
 trude*, the sole Daughter of *Henry Count Pa-  
 latine* of the *Rhene*, brought the Electoral  
 Dignity into the House of *Bavaria*.  
 1290 25. *Henry*, Duke of *Bavaria* and Count *Pa-  
 latine* of the *Rhene*, the Son of *Orto* the 2.  
 1294 26. *Ludovick* or *Lewis II.* Brother of *Henry* Duke  
 of *Bavaria* and Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene*.  
 1321 27. *Ludovick* or *Lewis III.* second Son of *Lewis*  
 the 2. succeeded in the Dukedom of *Bavaria*,  
*Radolph*, the eldest Son, succeeding in both  
*Palatinates* and the Electoral Dignity. He  
 was afterwards elected and crowned Empe-  
 rour, known commonly by the name of *Luo-  
 dovickus Bavarius*.  
 1347 28. *Stephen*, the eldest Son of *Ludovick* the Empe-  
 rour, *William* and *Albert*, his two Brethren,  
 successively enjoying the Earldoms of *Hain-  
 nault*, *Holland*, &c. in right of their Mother.  
 1375 29. *Stephen II.* Son of *Stephen* the first, his Bro-  
 thers, *Frederick* and *John*, sharing with him  
 parts of the Estate.  
 1413 30. *Ludovick II.* surnamed *Barbatus*, deposed and  
 imprisoned by his own Son *Ludovick*, who  
 yet died before him without Issue.  
 1447 31. *Henry II.* Son of *Frederick*, the second Bro-  
 ther of *Stephen* the 2. succeeded on the death  
 of *Ludovickus Barbatus*.  
 1450 32. *Ludovick V.* surnamed the Rich, the Son of  
*Henry* the 2. banished the Jews out of his Es-  
 tates and seized their goods.  
 1479 33. *George*, surnamed the Rich also, the Founder  
 of the University of *Innsbruck*: whose sole  
 Daughter and Heir was married to *Rupertus*  
*Prince Elector Palatine*, with the Dukedom of  
*Bavaria* for her Dowry. But *Maximilian* the  
 Emperour, not liking so much greatness in the  
*German* Princes, confirmed the same on.  
 1503 34. *Albert III.* Son of a former *Albert*, Nephew  
 of *John* surnamed by his Son *Ernstus*: which  
*John* was youngest Brother to *Stephen* the  
 2. who by the power and favour of *Maximilian*  
 the Emperour succeeded unto *George* the  
 Rich: the cause of a long and unhappy War  
 betwixt the Electors of the *Rhene* and Dukes  
 of *Bavaria*, the worst whereof, besides the loss  
 of this Estate, fell upon the *Palatines*, prohi-  
 bited and outed of their Country upon this  
 quarrel; but, upon their Submission, restored  
 again.

- 1508 35. *William*, the Son of *Albert* the 2.  
 1577 36. *Albert IV.* a great Champion of the *Dr* *Artes*  
 and Traditions of the Church of *Rome*; and  
 so extremely affected unto the *Jesuits*, that  
 he built Colleged for them at *Landsberg*, *In-  
 golstadt* and *Munich*, his three principal  
 Towns.  
 1579 37. *William II.* Son of *Albert* the 4. as zealous as  
 his Father in the cause of the Church of *Rome*,  
 therein exceeded very much by  
 38. *Maximilian*, eldest Son of *William* the 2. who  
 chiefly cut of the same zeal sided with *Ferdi-  
 nand* the 2. in the Wars of *Germany*, An. 1620. and took  
 upon him the conduct of the Armies of the said Empe-  
 rour against *Frederick* Count and Elector *Palatine*, cho-  
 sen King of *Bohemia*: in which having done great service  
 to the Imperial and *Romish* Interest, he was by the said  
*Ferdinand* invested in the Upper *Palatinat*, called an-  
 ciently (but not more properly than now) the *Palatinat*  
 of *Bavaria*, together with the Electoral Dignity. This last  
 was conferred at first upon him but for term of like the  
 Diet at *Regensburg*, 1623. the Electors of *Mentz*, *Saxony*  
 and *Brandenburg* then protesting against it; but after-  
 wards, in the Diet at *Prague*, Anno 1628. conferred upon  
 him and his Heirs for ever, to the great prejudice of the  
 Princes of the *Palatine* Family, who by reason of their si-  
 multaneous Investiture with the first of their House  
 not to be deprived of their Estates and Dignities for the  
 offence of their Fathers; the punishment not being ex-  
 tended beyond the person of the offender. But notwithstanding  
 their Pretensions and Allegations, the Duke is still  
 possessed of the Title and Dignity, and confirmed there-  
 by the Conclusions of the Treaty of *Munster*, a new  
 Electorate being to be erected for the *Palatine* Princes.  
 The Arms of this Duke are Lozenges of 21 pieces  
 Bend, *Argent* and *Azure*.

### 8. The Archdukedom of AUSTRIA.

THE Archdukedom of *AUSTRIA*, reckoning in  
 the incorporate Provinces and the Members of it,  
 is bounded on the East with *Hungary* and part of *Sil-  
 vania* on the West with *Bavaria*, and some parts of the  
*Switzers* and the *Grisons*, on the North with *Bohemia*  
 and *Moravia*, and on the South with *Africa* and some part  
 of *Frindl* in *Italy*. Within which circuit are contained the  
 several Provinces of *Austria* properly so called, *Siria*,  
*Carinthia*, *Carniola*, and *Tyrol*. The quality of the whole  
 will be best discerned by the Survey of particulars.

The ancient Inhabitants of the whole were the *Norici*  
 of the *Romans*, parted into the lesser Tribes of the *Seu-  
 ces*, *Alauni*, *Ambisontii*, *Ambilici*, and *Ambirantii*: sava-  
 ged by *Drusus*, Son-in-law to *Augustus Caesar*, and made  
 a Province of the Empire. After by *Constantine* the Great  
 divided into *Noricum*, *Mediocranum*, comprehending  
 the Countries of *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, *Stiria*, and some parts  
 of *Tyrol*, with the Bishopric or District of *Salzburg*,  
 of which *Solva* was the Metropolis or capital City; and  
*Noricum Ripense*, containing only *Austria*, and those  
 parts of *Bavaria* which lie Eastward of the River *Inn*: ex-  
 tended all along on the banks of the *Danube*. It was known  
 by no other names well possessed by the *Romans*, from  
 whom being conquered by the *Avars* and other Nations,  
 it gained those several names and appellations pre-  
 cised before.

1. *AUSTRIA* properly so called hath on the East  
 the Kingdom of *Hungary*, on the West *Bavaria*, on the  
 North the *Bohemian* Mountains towards the West, and  
 on the other side the *Teys*, which separates it from *Mo-  
 ravia*, on the South *Stryia*, or *Stiermark*. It is called by the

the *Dutch* *Osterreich*, and contracted *Ofrich*, that is to  
 say, the Eastern Kingdom, (a part assuming to it felt the  
 name of the whole) this being the extreme Province of  
 East-*France*, or the Eastern Kingdom of the *French*, in the  
 barbarous *Latine* of those times called by the name of  
*Austrasia*, whence the modern *Austria*.

The Air is generally very healthy, and the Earth as  
 fruitful, yielding a plentiful increase without help of  
 Compost or other Soiling, and of so easy a Tillage to the  
 Husbandman, that on the North side of the *Danube* it is  
 Ploughed and managed by one Horse only. Exceeding  
 plentiful it is of Grain, and abundant in Wine; with  
 which last it supplieth the defects of *Bavaria*; it hath  
 great store of Saffron, some provision of Salt; and at the  
 foot of the Mountains, not far from *Hainburg*, some *Gen-  
 gers*. Nor wants it Mines of Silver in a large propor-  
 tion. It is divided by the River *Danube* into the *Lower*, and  
 the *Higher*: that lying on the North side of the River,  
 towards *Bohemia* and *Moravia*; this on the South side,  
 towards *Stiermark*.

Places of most importance in the *HIGHER AU-  
 STRIA* are, 1. *Gmund* seated on a Lake called *Gmund-  
 see*, bordering on *Bavaria*, at the Efflux of the River  
*Drava*, which ariseth out of it. 2. *Lintz*, seated on the  
 Confluence of the said *Danube* with the famous *Danuv*;  
 the *Arciduc* of *Ptolemy*: a Town before the late Wars al-  
 most wholly Protestant; but then being put into the hands  
 of the Duke of *Bavaria*, began to warp a little to the o-  
 ther side. 3. *Walgensein*, on the *Enns* or *Ansfus*, near the  
 borders of *Stiermark*. 4. *Enns*, on the fall of that River into  
 the *Danube* raised out of the Ruines of *Laureacum* some-  
 times the Metropolis of *Noricum Ripense*, the Station at  
 that time of the 2. Legion: afterwards an Arch-bishop's  
 See, made such in the first planting of Christianity amongst  
 this people by *S. Severinus*. An. 464. On the River  
 whereof (suppressed by the *Huns*, *Boiarians*, and others  
 of the barbarous Nations) by the diligence and preaching  
 of *S. Rupertus*, the Metropolis dignity was fixt at *Salz-  
 burg*. 5. *Weidoboven*, near the head of the River *Ipi*.  
 6. *Ipi*, seated at the Influx of that River, and from thence  
 denominated; the *Gefodunum* of *Ptolemy* and other An-  
 cients. 7. *Newsidle*, on a great Lake so named. 8. *Wels*,  
 on the main stream of the *Danubius*. 9. *Hainburg*, on the  
 Confluence thereof and the River *Mark*. Near to  
 which, at the foot of the Mountains now called *Hain-  
 burgberg*, (from the Town adjoining) but antiently  
 named *Mons Cognatus*, is some fane of Ginger: a won-  
 derful great rarity for these colder Countries. 10. *New-  
 fahr*, first called so from the newness of it, being built of  
 late. 11. *Vienna*, by the *Dutch* *Wien*, the principal of  
 all these parts; by *Ptolemy* called *Iulobona*, *Vindobona*, by  
*Antonine*; the Station in their times of the tenth *Roman*  
 Legion; of whose being settled here there are many Monu-  
 ments both within the City and without. Seated it is on  
 the banks of *Danubius*, well built, both in regard of private  
 and public Edifices; each private house having much store  
 of Cellarage for all occasions, that as much of the City  
 seems to be under the ground as is above it. The Streets  
 for the most part are spacious, and all paved with Stone,  
 which makes them very clean and sweet in the midst of  
 Winter. It is fenced with a mighty Wall, deep and pre-  
 cious. Ditches on all parts of it, and many Bulwarks,  
 Towers and Ramparts in all needfull places. The Walls  
 hereof were first raised with some part of the money paid  
 unto *Leopold* Duke of *Austria*, for the ransom of *K. Richard*  
 the first of *England*, taken Prisoner by him as he passed  
 homeward through this Country from the *Holy Land*:  
 Elected to this day the strongest hold of Christendom  
 against the *Turks*; and proved experimentally so to be in  
 that most notable and famous Repulse here given them

An. 1526. at what time 100000 of them, under the con-  
 duct of *Solyman* the Magnificent, besieged this City; but  
 by the valour of *Frederick* the second, Elector *Palatine* of  
 the *Rhene*, and other *German* Princes, were gallantly re-  
 sisted and compelled to retire, with the loss of 80000  
 Souldiers. Nor doth the strength hereof so diminish the  
 Beauties of it, but that it is one of the goodliest Towns in  
 all the Empire; the Residence for these last Ages of the  
 Emperours: made an University by the Emperour *Albrecht*  
*der second*; revived and much advanced by an Episcopal  
 Duke of *Austria*, An. 1356. adorned with an Episcopal  
 See, many magnificent Temples and stately Monasteries;  
 but above all, with a most sumptuous and princely Palace;  
 wherein the Arch-dukes and Emperours use to keep their  
 Courts; built by *Ottacar*, King of *Bohemia* during the  
 little time he was Duke of *Austria*. In the middle Ages,  
 as appears by *Orto Frisingensis*, it was called *Fabiana*,  
 was but being ruined by the *Huns*, and again re-edified, was  
 first called *Biana*, (the first syllable omitted by mistake  
 or negligence) from whence the *Dutch* *Wien*, and the  
*Latine* *Vienna*.

We should now take a view of the Towns and Cities  
 in the *LOWER AUSTRIA*. As there were any in it which  
 were worth the looking after. The Country having never  
 been in the hands of the *Romans*, hath no Town of any  
 great Antiquity; nor many new ones built or beautified by  
 the *Austrian* Princes, since it came into their possession: the  
 only one of note being *Cremis*, or *Cremia*, on the left hand  
 shore of *Danubius*, going down towards the waters. 2. *Rezz*,  
 on the River *Teys*, bordering on *Moravia*; and 3. *Freistat*,  
 at the foot of the Mountains on the skirts of *Bohemia*.  
 4. *STIRIA*, or *STIERMARK* is bounded on the  
 North with *Austria*, on the South with *Carniola* on the  
 East with *Hungary*, and on the West with *Carinthia*; ex-  
 tendeth in length 110. miles, but in breadth not above 60.  
 or thereabout. For the most part mountainous and bar-  
 ren, as being overtopped with the Spurs and branches of  
 the *Alps*, and rich only in Minerals. The reason of the  
 name we shall have anon.

Towns of most consequence are, 1. *Gratz*, seated upon  
 the River *Mar*, and the chief of the Province, from which  
 the third Branch of the House of *Austria* (since the time of  
*Ferdinand* the first) was called de *Gratz*, and had the Go-  
 vernment of the Country for their part of that *Patrimony*.  
 A Town once full of Protestants, and those so strong, that  
 they could neither be forced out, nor hindered from the  
 free exercise of their Religion, till the year 1598. in which  
*Margaret* the late Queen of *Spain*, Sister to the Archduke  
*Ferdinand* de *Gratz*, was by the Citizens solemnly enter-  
 tained; with whom entered so many Souldiers, that the  
 City was taken, and 14 Ministers of the Reformed Reli-  
 gion presently banished. 2. *Rachelpurg*; and 3. *Pruck* both  
 situate also on the *Mar*. 4. *Stachow*, an Episcopal See,  
 seated on the *Drav* or *Dravus*, a well-known River, not  
 far from the fall of the *Mar* into it. 5. *Petaw*, the *Paravia*  
 of *Antonine*, seated somewhat higher upon the *Dravus*.  
 6. *Lambach*, the *Ostibus* of *Antonine*; on the *Dravus*.  
 also. 7. *Voitsberg*, upon the River *Kainach*. 8. *Coley*,  
 the *Celcia* of *Pliny*, of great antiquity, as appears by  
 many *Roman* Inscriptions and other evident signs of Age  
 which are upon it; for this cause thought by some to be  
 that *Celia*, or built at least out of the Ruines of it,  
 which *Ptolemy* placeth in this Tract: it is situate on  
 the River *Savus*, and hath a large jurisdiction over the  
 adjoining Countries. 9. *Cavisch*, seated in a Marsh on  
 the edge of this Country: a place of great strength both  
 by art and nature; once one of the strongest Bulwarks a-  
 gainst the *Turks*; and proved experimentally so to be in  
 that most notable and famous Repulse here given them  
 Bbb 2



*Asfria*, though many times in vain attempted.

The whole Country being mountainous and hilly, generally over-spread with the spurs and branches of the neighbouring *Alps*, and rich only in Minerals, as before was said, was anciently the Inhabitation of the *Taurisci*, (part of the *Norici*) from whom it took the name of *Stiermark*, the *Germans* calling that a *Stier* which the *Latins* call *Tauriscus*, or a little Bullock. By which account *Stiermark* is nothing but the Borders or Marches of the *Taurisci*, the utmost Bounds of their possessions; as indeed it was, laid to *Pannonia* in the distribution of the *Roman* Provinces, it was called *Valeria*, in honour of *Valeria* the Daughter of *Diocletian*. But once dismembered from the Empire, it fell into the name of *Stiermark*, with reference to the *Taurisci* spoken of before. First made an Earldom in the person of one *Ottacarus*, advanced unto that Honour by the Emperor *Conrad* the 2. *Leopold* the 4. from this *Ottacarus* (two other *Ottacars* intervening) was made Marquess of *Stiermark*; and his Son, *Ottacar* the 4. was made Duke hereof by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*. But being without hope of Issue, and infected with the incurable disease of the Leprosy, he sold his Country to *Leopold* the fifth of *Asfria*; who bought it with some part of that vast sum of money which he extorted for the Ransom of King *Richard* the first. It hath continued ever since in the possession of this potent Family, but so, that it hath many times been assigned over for the Portion of the younger Brethren: as, namely, to *Leopold* the ninth of that name, one of the younger Sons of *Albert* the Short; *Ernest* the youngest Son of that *Leopold*; and lastly, to *Charles* the youngest Son of *Ferdinand* the first, called *Charles of Graz*, Father of *Ferdinand* the Second, Successor to *Matthias* in *Asfria* it self and all the rest of the Estates incorporate with it: not likewise to be so impolitically dismembered from the chief of the House, as in former times.

3. *CARINTHIA*, by the *Dutch* called *Karnten*, is bounded on the East with *Stiermark* and the River *Lavand*, on the West with the District of *Salzburg* and the River *Salzach*, on the North with *Asfria* it self, and on the South with *Carniola*, and the River *Dravus*, which having its original in the skirts hereof, passeth through these *Asfrian* Provinces into *Hungary*, and falls at last into the *Danuv*. The Country, being situate in the worst part of the *Alps*, is generally poor and barren, except only in Minerals; extending all along the *Dravus* for the length of 100 English miles, and 47 in breadth, betwixt that River and the *Mur*, by the which it is bounded.

Places of principal note in it are, 1. *S. Veit*, or *S. Viti*, the chief Town of the Country, situate at the meeting of the *Glan* and the *Winnies*, two small Rivers adorned with a spacious Market-place and a beautiful Convent. 2. *Filzbach*, seated on the *Dravus*, in a pleasant Valley encompassed about with Rocks, the Houses thereof adjoined on the out-side with painted Stories, very delightful to behold. 3. *Gurk*, a small Town, but an Episcopal See. 4. *Gluggenfurt*, on the Lake called *Wera-See*, a well-fenced place, called antiently by the name of *Claudia*. 5. *Wolffperg*, upon the *Lavand*, so near to *Stiermark*, that it is by some reckoned for a Town thereof. 6. *Lavamund*, on the same Border an Episcopal See, situate at the influx of that River into the *Dravus*. 7. *Friesach*, a Town of much antiquity, seated on the *Oleza*. 8. *Spirat*, &c. The Story and Succession of the Dukes hereof, before the uniting of it to the House of *Asfria* (this Province and *Carniola* making but one Estate between them) we shall leave anon.

4. *CARNIOLOA*, by the *Dutch* called *Kraen*, is environed with *Salweenia* East, *Friuli* West, *Carnithia* and part of *Stiermark* North, and *Asfria* South. It is

in length from East to West, (extended along the River *Savus*) 120 Italian miles, and about 76 in breadth. The *Asps* here being lower and less cold and rocky than more towards the West, maketh it to be the more rich both in Corn and Wine, and other the productions of nature, than it would be otherwise.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Newmark*, 2. *Elling*, 3. *Marpurg*, 4. *Poggenack*, and 5. *Saxenfeld*, all upon the *Savus*, which, arising in this Country, runneth through the very middle of it, and after falleth into the *Danuv*. 6. *Laibach*, seated on a small River of the same name; by *Ptolemy* called *Pamportus*, but by *Pliny* *Naupertus*; famous in old Mythology for the transport of the Ship called *Argo*, wherein *Jason* and his Comrades brought the Golden Fleece: who coming out of *Pontus*, so into the *Savus* Sea, took their course up the *Danuv*, so into the *Savus*, then into this Town; hence carried their Ship over land into the *Adriatick*, and from thence sailed into *Greece*, where they first began the undertaking. 7. *Goritz*, called antiently *Noricia*, or seated in the place where *Noricia* stood, is situate on the River *Lisnona*, an Italian water, which not far off falleth into the *Adriatick*. A Town of so much note, that antiently it was an Earldom, and in the division of the Estate of *Mainard* Earl of *Tyrol*, (to whom it formerly belonged) was given to *Albert* his second Son, with the Title and Title of Earl of *Goritz*, continuing in his House till the year 1500, when on the death of *Leonard* the last Earl hereof, it descended upon *Maximilian* the first, as next Heir unto it; whose Successors, not only in the Estates of *Asfria*, but the Empire also, do still retain the Title of Earls of *Goritz*, in their usual Style.

The first Inhabitants of both these Provinces of *Kraen* and *Karnten*, were the *Carni* of *Pliny* and other Antients, who made them part of *Venetia*, the Tenth Region of *Italy*; but afterwards, in the distribution of the *Roman* Provinces, they were cast into *Noricum*, and made a Member of the Diocese of the Western *Ilyricum*, but (subject or subordinate rather, to the *Presidius* of *Pratorio* of *Italy*) from them not only the *Alp*idjoyning had the name of *Carnica*, but these two Countries had the names by which now they go. They were united along time in the persons of the Dukes of *Karnten*, of whom the first mentioned upon good Record was *Henry*, Son to *Berchtold*, a Nobleman of *Bavaria*, in the time of the Emperor *Otto* the third, by him advanced unto this Honour and Estate; disposed of in succeeding times at the Will of the Emperours, and given from one Family unto another, as their fancies served them; not fixed in any House till it came to *Henry* the Son of *Engelbert*, President or Prefect of *Asfria*; in which Family it continued under this *Henry*, and his Brother *Engelbert*, *Ulric* the first, *Henry* the third, *Herman*, and *Ulric* the second, the last Prince hereof, who by his Marriage with *Agnes*, Sister and Heir of *Otto* the second, Duke of *Meran*, added that Estate to his former Patrimony. But being old, and without Children, he sold his whole Estate to *Ottacarus*, King of *Bohemia* and Duke of *Asfria*; by whom these Countries were surrendered unto *Rudolphus* of *Habsburg*, on the conclusion of the Peace which was made between them. And although *Rudolphus* gave *Carnithia* to *Mainard* Earl of *Tyrol* (in right of whose Daughter *Elizabeth* *Albert* of Son of *Rudolph* was possessed of *Asfria*); yet on the death of *Henry* the Son of *Mainard* without Issue male, it fell (according to the Contract) unto *Albert* the Short, younger Son of *Albert*, and Grandchild of *Rudolphus*; continuing ever since in that Family, though not always in the chief House of the Dukes of *Asfria*.

The strange and observable Ceremonies with which the Archbishops of *Asfria* are acknowledged Dukes of *Carnithia*

*Carnithia* take here out of *Monster*. In the Meadows adjoining to the Town of *S. Veit* a certain Country-man, to whom that office by inheritance belonged, sitteth on a Marble-stone there being, holding in his right hand a Cow with a black Calf, and in his left hand a Mare as lean as a Rake. Then cometh the new Duke attired in a plain rustick Habit, his Courtiers attending him in their rustick Apparel: at whose approach the Country-man above mentioned demandeth, *What is he that so majestically cometh hitherward?* And the people answer, that it is the future Duke. He again asketh, *whether he be a just Judge, and one that will maintain the liberty of the Country, and purity of the Religion.* The people answer, *He will.* Then he asketh, *by what right he will displace him of his Marble-Seat.* To whom the Steward of the new Duke's House replyeth, *He shall give thee 60 pence in Silver, his Cattel now standing by thee, the Clothes which he hath at this time on, and thy House shall ever be free from Tax and Tribute.* The fellow upon this taking the Duke by the hand, and bidding him to be a good Prince, giveth him a gentle cuff on the ear, setteth him on the Marble-stone, and taking away the Cattel departeth. This done the new Duke goeth to *S. Veit's* Church, and having done his Devotions, putteth off his rustick weeds, and dresseth himself in Clothes befitting a Prince: for such after their Ceremonies he is acknowledged.

The Arms of these Dukes were *Argent*, 3 Lions Leopards Sable.

5. *TYROL* is bounded on the East with *Friuli* and *Marca Trevigiana*, by the interposing of which, or some parts thereof, disjointed from *Carniola*, so on the West with the *Grisini* and some part of *Switzerland*, and on the North with *Bavaria*, and on the South with *Lombardy*. It is extended over the greatest parts of the *Alpes Rhodica*, and some part of the *Jule*, yet intermixt with many rich and fruitful Vallies, those especially which lie on the banks of the *Inn* and the River of *Adige*. Nor are the Hills so void of profit unto the Inhabitants, but that they afford good store of Metals digged out of them, especially of Brass and Silver; which last have yielded to the Arch-duke 230000 Crowns yearly.

Towns of most note are, 1. *Onepont*, or *Innsbruck*, so called from a Bridge on the *Inn* or *Oenus*, which gave denomination to the second branch of *Asfria*, descended from *Ferdinand* the second Son of the Emperor *Ferdinand*, the House of *Graz* issuing from *Charles* the III. Son of that Emperour. Most memorable for the hasty Flight of *Charles* the V. upon the news that *D. Maurice*, whom he had lately made Elector of *Saxony*, was coming against him with his Forces, which so terrified him, that he fled away by Torch-light with some of his followers; the residue of his Court, (most of which were persons of great eminency) trudging in the dark on foot, with the black Guard and the Scullery. The Town hath been many times the Residence of the Dukes of *Asfria*; who have there a very Royal and magnificent Palace. And to say truth, the Town doth seem to be so honoured, amongst pleasant Meadows, spacious Corn-fields, and shady Mountains sweetly seated: the Houses fairly built of Stone, enriched by the Courts of Judicature here settled for all the Country, and provided of a gallant Armory. 2. *Trent*, (Fridemunt it is called in *Latine*) situate in the Confinnes of *Germany* and *Italy*; for which cause the Inhabitants speak both Languages: built on the banks of the River *Adige* of *Adige*; honoured with an Episcopal See; but made more famous by the Council which was there begun by Pope *Paul* the third, *An* 1545, against the *Lutherans*. It was for 22 years together before their meeting dashed by one Pope, and animated by another; advanced by *Charles* the V. upon worldly Policies, and for

as worldly Policies retarded by the Court of *Rome*: for 18 years after this first Convention of it, at sundry times assembled, suspended, and dissolved: and finally, when fixed here seriously by Pope *Pius* the fourth, *Anno* 1562, managed with so much art and cunning by the Papal party, that nothing was determin'd among the Prelates but what had been formerly resolved on in the *Roman* Conclave, and certified accordingly by especial Posts, occasioning that most bitter Jest of one of the *Hungarian* Bishops who was present at it, that the *Holy Ghost* was sent unto them in a Clock-bag from *Rome*. The effects of which Council, so artificially carried on by the strength of wit, I cannot better describe than in the words of the History of it, which are as followeth. "This Council, desired and procured by godly men, to re-unite the Church which began to be divided, hath so established the Schism, and made the parties so obdurate, that the Discords are irreconcilable, being managed by Princes for Reformation of Ecclesiastical Discipline, hath caused the great Deformation that ever was since Christianity did begin; and hoped for by the Bishops themselves to regain the Episcopal Authority, for the most part usurped by the Pope, hath made them lose it altogether, bringing them into greater servitude: on the contrary, feared and avoided by the See of *Rome*, as a potent means to moderate the exorbitant power thereof, mounted from final beginnings, by divers degrees, to an unlimited excess; it hath so established and confirmed the same over that part which remained subject unto it, that it was never so great nor soundly rooted. So far the words of the History. The next note is, 3. *Falkenstein*, remarkable for Mines of Brass; as 4. *Hall* upon the *Inn* for Salt-works, and 5. *Schmas*, for the richer Mines of Silver. 6. *Maln*, near the head of the River *Adige*. 7. *Pollen*, upon the borders of *Italy*, by the people thereof called *Bolzano*, and *Bolsano*. 8. *Tyrol*, an ancient Castle, the first Seat of the Earls or Governors hereof, and giving name for that reason to the Country adjoining. 9. *Meran*, neighbouring the old Castle of *Tyrol*, which gave the Title of Dukes to a branch of the *Caroline* Race, descended from *Rathboldus*, a base Son of the Emperour *Arnulph*, possessed of many large Estates in these *Alpine* Countries, now appertaining to the Princes of the House of *Asfria*. From one of which Dukes, called *Otto* of *Meran*, married to *Beatrice*, Heir of the Country of *Burgundy*, the Earls of *Burgundy* (since that time) do derive themselves.

The Earls hereof were at the first no other than Provincial Officers: when made Proprietaries, I am yet to seek. The first of whom we have any certainty was *Mainard*, Earl of *Tyrol* and *Goritz*, who died in the year 1258, leaving his Earldoms to that *Mainard* who by *Rudolphus Habsburgensis* was infeoffed with the Dukedom of *Karnten*. But *Henry* the second Son of this last *Mainard* dying without Issue male, his Daughter *Margaret* by the consent of all her people, settled her Estate therein on the Sons of *Albert* called the Short; which continues ever since in the House of *Asfria*, though sometimes made the Portion and inheritance of the younger Princes. By *Ferdinand* the first it was given in Appenago to his second Son of *Ferdinand*, surnamed of *Innsbruck* for that reason, who by marrying with *Philippina*, a Burger's daughter of *Augsburg*, so displeased his Brethren, that to buy his peace of them, and enjoy his own content with her, it was finally agreed upon amongst them all, that *Tyrol* should not descend upon his Children of that *Venter*. In pursuance whereof, after his decease, *Tyrol* fell to the House of *Graz*; his eldest Son *Charles* being made Marquess of *Burgundy*, and *Andrew* his youngest Cardinal of *Brixia*. Who were the old Inhabitants of the *Roman Asfria* we have seen

seen already. The old inhabitants of the other part are supposed to be the *Quadi*, in that part which lieth next to *Bohemia*; the *Marcomanni*, in those parts which are next *Moravia*; who intermingled with the *Boii*, and united with them into the name of *Boiarii*, was from the *Romans* the whole Province of the Second *Rhaetia*, and so much of *Noricum* as lieth betwixt the *Inn* and the *Enns*, leaving the rest to the *Avars*, who possessed that and the two *Pannonia*'s, extorted also from the *Romans* in the fall of that great and mighty Empire, as we shall here more fully when we come to our description of *Hungary*.

But these *Boiarii* were conquered by *Clovis* the Great, and the *Avars* driven out of *Pannonia* by *Charlemagne*, both Provinces became members of the *French* Empire, till the subduing of *Pannonia* by the *Hungarians*. To oppose whom, and keep in peace and safety these remoter parts, some Guardians, or Lords-Marchers, were appointed by the Kings and Emperors of *Germany*, with the Title of *Marquesses* of *Opferich*; at first officary only, but at last hereditary, made so by the Emperor *Henry* the first, who gave this Province to one *Leopold*, furnished the illustrious, the Son of *Henry* Earl of *Bamberg*, of the House of *Schmaben*, and therewithal the Title of *Marquess*, Anno 980. This Marquessate was by *Frederick*, *Barbassia* raised to a Dukedom 1158; *Henry* being the first Duke, whose Nephew *Leopold* took *Richard* the first of *England* prisoner, in his return from *Palestine* for whose Ransom he had so much money, that with it he bought *Stiermark*, together with the Counties of *Neuburg* and *Lintz*, and walled *Vienna*. His Son *Frederick*, furnished the Warlike, was made King of *Austria* by the Emperor *Frederick* the second, Anno 1255. Eleven years he continued in his Dignity; at the end of which he was spoiled of his Royal Ornaments by the same hand, for denying his appearance at the Emperors Summons, unto whom for some Outrages he had been complained of. Finally, he died in the year 1246, discomfited and slain in Battle by the King of *Hungary*. Leaving no Issue of his body, this Estate of right should have descended on *Frederick*, Son of *Hermannus*, *Marquess* of *Baden*, and of *Gertrude* his Wife, the Niece of this *Frederick* the Warlike by his Brother *Henry*, who was afterwards beheaded at *Naples* by *Charles* of *Valois*, Anno 1268. But *Ottacar*, Son of *Primslaus* King of *Bohemia*, pretending to it in the right of *Margaret* his Wife, one of the Sisters of the said *Frederick* the Warlike, by a strong hand possessed himself of the Dukedom of *Austria*, which he increased by the addition of *Carinthia* and *Treugiana*, all which he held, together with the Kingdom of *Bohemia* till the year 1278, in which he was vanquished and slain by *Rodolphus* of *Habsburg*, not long before advanced to the *German* Empire. *Rodolphus* thus the Eldest Son, who had then married *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Manard* Earl of *Tyrol* by *Elizabeth* (or *Agnes*) his Wife, the Daughter of *Gertrude*, and Sister and sole Heir at last of *Frederick*, so cruelly murdered at *Naples*, as before was said; By means of which Marriage and Investiture *Albert* was quietly possessed of the Dukedom of *Austria*, *Stiermark*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, together with *Moravia* *Treugiana*, to which the Earldom of *Tyrol* and many other fair Estates in *Schmaben* and *Alsatia* were added. By whom it was first raised to the Title of Archduke is not yet agreed. Some attribute it to *Rodolphus* of *Habsburg*, at the Investiture of his Son *Albert* into these Estates, Anno 1288. Other to *Rodolph* the Ingenious, Anno 1360. Some make it to be first given to *Albert* Duke hereof, in the year 1430; and others post it lower to the Marriage of *Philip*, Son of *Maximilian* of *Austria*

and of the Lady *Mary* of *Burgundy*, with *Joan* Princess of *Spain*. But by whomsoever given at first, it is now the constant and hereditary Title of all this Family; the successive Princes whereof from the first Investiture follow in the ensuing Catalogue of

#### The Marquesses, Dukes, Kings, and Arch-dukes of AUSTRIA.

- 926 1. *Leopold* of *Bamberg*, the first Marquess.
- 983 2. *Henry*, Son of *Leopold*.
- 1014 3. *Albert*, Son of *Henry*, furnished the Vice-roy.
- 1056 4. *Ernestus*, Son of *Albert*.
- 1075 5. *Leopold* II. Son of *Ernest*, a Companion of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*.
- 1096 6. *Leopold* III. Son of the second, Founder of the Abbey of *Neuburg*.
- 1116 7. *Leopold* IV. Son of the third, by his Half-brother *Conrad* the third, then Emperor of the *German*, made Duke of *Bavaria*.
- 1141 8. *Henry* II. Brother of *Leopold*, *Marquess* of *Austria* and Duke of *Bavaria*, made the first Duke of *Austria* by *Frederick*, *Barbassia*, Anno 1158, the whole Country betwixt the *Enns* and the *Enns* being added by the said Emperor unto his Estate, on his relinquishing of *Bohemia* to the Duke of *Saxony*.
- 1177 9. *Ludovick* Son of *Henry* built *Enns* and *Alsatia*; of great note in the Wars of the *Alsatia*.
- 1193 10. *Leopold* V. Son of *Ludovick*, the irreconcilable Enemy of our *Richard* the first, who Prisoner by him in his passage home, and put unto a grievous Ransom, the Dukedom of *Siermark* being purchased with a part thereof.
- 1230 11. *Frederick* the Warlike, Son of *Leopold* the first, made King of *Austria* by the Emperor *Frederick* the second; the last of the male-line of the House of *Bamberg*.
- 1246 12. *Ottacar*, Son of *Wenceslaus* King of *Bohemia*, pretending the right of *Margaret* his Wife, Sister of *Frederick* possessed himself of this Estate, adding thereto the Counties of *Carinthia* and *Carniola*, which he bought of *Ulrich* the last Prince thereof; but was dispossessed of all by *Rodolph* of *Habsburg*.
- 1283 13. *Albert* II. Son of *Rodolph* of *Habsburg*, by his Father made Duke of *Austria*, married *Elizabeth*, the lineal and direct Heir of *Gertrude*, one of the Nieces and (on the death of that *Frederick*, who was slain at *Naples*) the next Heir of *Frederick* King and Duke of *Austria*, after his Fathers death chosen Emperor also.
- 1308 14. *Rodolph* the Ingenious, his other Brother sharing with him in the Estate.
- 1315 15. *Albert*, furnished the Short, the youngest and surviving Brother of *Rodolph*, succeeded in the whole Estate; a great advancer of this House.
- 1358 16. *Albert* IV. Son of *Albert* the Short.
- 1365 17. *Albert* V. Son of *Albert* the fourth.
- 1404 18. *Albert* VI. Son of *Albert* the fifth, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* in right of *Elizabeth* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Sigismund* the King thereof.
- 1439 19. *Ladislaus*, Son of *Albert* & *Elizabeth*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and Duke of *Austria*.

#### 9. VETERAVIA

**VETERAVIA** or **WETERAW**, is bounded on the West with the Bishopric of *Colen*, on the East with *Frankenland*, on the North with *Haffia* and *Westphalen*, and on the South with the Lower *Palatinat*. It containeth a Combination of many small Estates, which being joined in a common League for defence of each other in the preservation of their Laws, Liberties and Religion, are called the *Confederation* of the *Weteraw*. The principal of the States which are thus confederated are the Earls of *Nassau*, *2 Hanaw*, and *3 Solms*; 4 the Lords of *Liechtenberg*, and the Imperial Cities of *5 Eriberg*, and *6 Werzlar*.

The County of *NASSAU* (for fruitfulness of Soil and delightfulness of situation not inferior to moist parts of *France*) lieth at the foot of the Mountains which divide *Haffia* from *Engern* and *Westphalen*, anciently called *Melibocus*; a branch of the long ridge of mountains which were called *Abnobi*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1 *Nassau*, situate on the South-side of the River *Lon*, not far from the fall into it from the *Rhene*; the first Seat and honorary Title of this famous Family, and still in the possession of the Princes of *Orange*, the first branch hereof. 2 *Dillenburg*, the usual Seat of the Earls of *Nassau* before their settling in the *Low Countries*; whence they are named the Earls of *Nassau* of the House of *Dillenburg*, to difference them from others of the same Family. 3 *Cassel*, which gives the Title of an Earl to the owners of it; in *Latine* *Cattii Meliboci*, which shews the name to be compounded of the *Catti*, anciently possessed of these parts of *Germany*, and the mountainous parts of *Melibocus*, then inhabited by them. The possession of this Town is much controverted between the Earls of *Nassau* and the Landgraves of *Haffia*. Concerning which we are to know, that *Henry* the second son of *Lewis* Landgrave of *Haffia* furnished the Mild, married with *Anne*, Daughter and Heir of *Philip* the last Lord hereof, and by her had a Son called *William*, who died without Issue, and a Daughter named *Elizabeth*, married to *John* the third of *Nassau*, to whom the brought *Henry* and *William* Earls of *Nassau*. *Elizabeth* on the death of her Brother *William* laid claim to the Estate, as the next Heir to him; followed in the pursuit thereof by *William* Count of *Nassau*, her surviving Son. Against which *William* the 2. of *Haffia* did alledge a grant or donation of it from his Cousin *William*, the Brother of *Elizabeth* as before is said, and having Possession of the Town, and the members of it, was made thereby the better able to defend his Title. But at the last it was surrendered by Count *William* of *Nassau* (Father of *William* Prince of *Orange*) unto *Philip* the Landgrave, in the time of *Charles* the fifth, for the sum of 600000 Crowns; the House of *Nassau* notwithstanding retaining it amongst their Titles.

3 *Herborn*, a small University, or *Schola illustris*, founded of late by the Earls of *Nassau* in which *Piscator* was Divinity-Reader, and *Aldreus* (both famous in their times) Professor for the Arts and Sciences. 4 *Idstein*, lying South to *Cassel*, and 5 *Wiesbad*, directly South to *Idstein*, betwixt that and the *Maine*; these being the Title and possessions of the second branch of this Family. 6 *Weilburg*, on the *Lon*, not far from *Werzlar*; which gives Title to the third branch of this House, called the Earls of *Nassau* in *Sarbruck* and *Weilburg*.

As for the Princes of the House of *Nassau*, they are very ancient; *Orbo* of *Nassau* being made Earl of *Gelderland* in the year 1079. Another *Orbo* of this House, but proceeding from a different Branch of it, died Anno 1190, the Founder of the present Family of the Princes of *Orange*.

The Arms of these Princes are *Gules*, a Fess *Argent*; assumed by *Marquess* *Leopold* at the Siege of *Acon* or *Ptolemais* in the *Holy Land*, because his whole Armour being covered with blood his belt only remained white. The Arms thereof in former times have been six Larks Or, in a Field *Argent*; supposed to have been taken by the first *Marquess*, because they possessed those six Provinces, for defence of which the Tenth Legion, called *Alexandria*, had been fixed at *Vienna*.

And now we are to take our leave of the *Roman* Empire, which we shall meet withal no more till we come to *Hungary*; the Countries on the north-side of *Danubius* and the East-side of the *Rhene* being almost as soon abandoned as conquered by them. So that in our survey of these Northern Countries we are not like to find such matter of Antiquity as we have before; but must content our selves both with Towns and Villages of a later date, and a lesser continuance. In which we shall begin with those Countries which lie on the other side of the *Rhene* bordering on the Estates of *Cleveland* and the Bishops-Electors; and so proceed on Eastward till we come to the farthest parts of *Germany*, and the Confines of *Hungary*; afterwards turning to the North, till we meet with *Danubius*; which is next of all to be considered.

Orange, and of the House Wisbad and Idstein, out of which descended *Adolphus* Earl of *Nassau*, chosen Emperor in the year 1292. by the Marriage of *Engelbert*, the seventh Earl of this House of *Dillenburg*, with *Mary* Daughter of *Philip*, Lord of *Breda* in *Brabant*, they came first to be possessed of Estates in the *Netherlands*: and by the Marriage of *Henry*, great Grand-child of this *Engelbert*, with *Claude* of *Chalons*, they got the Principality of *Orange* in *France*. A Family as much honoured for the personal Merit of the Princes as any other in *Europe*, of some of which although we have already given a Catalogue, (in the description and story of *Provence*) as Princes of *Orange*, yet take here the whole Succession of them as

The Counts of *NASSAU*.

1. *Orto*, the Son of *Henry*, and Nephew of *Waleran*, the first Earl of *Nassau* of this Line.
- 1190 2. *Henry*, the Son of *Orto*, who added *Dillenburg Wisbad* and *Idstein*, unto his Estate; Grandfather, by *Waldradus* his 2. Son, to *Adolphus* the Emperor.
3. *Orto* II. Son of *Henry*.
4. *Henry* II. Son of *Orto* the 2.
5. *Orto* III. Son of *Henry* the 2.
6. *John*, Son of *Orto* the 3.
- 1362 7. *Engelbert*, the Son of *John* by *Mary* his wife, Daughter and Heir of *Philip*, Lord of *Breda* in *Brabant*, added that Town, with many other fair Estates in the *Netherlands*, to his former Patrimony.
8. *John* II. Son of *Engelbert*, Earl of *Nassau*, and Lord of *Breda*, &c.
- 1475 9. *John* III. Son of *John* the 2.
- 1516 10. *Henry* III. Son of *John* the 3. Knight of the Golden Fleece, married *Claude* of *Chalons*, Sister of *Philibert* Prince of *Orange*.
- 1536 11. *Rene*, Son of *Henry* the 3. and of *Claude* of *Chalons*, Successor to his Uncle *Philibert* in the Principality of *Orange*, Anno 1530, and to his Father in the Earldom of *Nassau*, Anno 1536.
- 1544 12. *William*, the Son of *John* the 3. by *Elizabeth* his Wife, Daughter of *Henry* Landgrave of *Hassia*, and of *Anne* Daughter and Heir of *Philip* Earl of *Catzenbogen*, reformed the Religion in this Country according to the *Lutheran* Doctrines.
- 1559 13. *William* II. Son of *William* the first succeeded Prince of *Orange* by the Will of *Rene* his Cousin-german, An. 1544. and Earl of *Nassau* by the death of his Father, Anno 1559. What else concerns this Prince, we have had before. I only add, that *William* the first besides this *William* had three other Sons: that is to say, Count *John*, the Father of *William* of *Nassau*, Governour of *West Friesland*; Count *Ludowick*, of great renown in the first Wars of the *Netherlands*, in the course whereof he lost his life, Anno 1574; and Count *Adolphus*, slain in the same Wars also, Anno 1568.
- 1584 14. *Philip*, eldest Son of *William* the second and of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Maximilian* of *Erghem*, Earl of *Buren*, succeeded Earl of *Buren* on the death of his Mother, Anno 1551, Prince of *Orange* and Count of *Nassau* by the death of his Father.
15. *Maurice*, Son of *William* the 2. and of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter of *Maurice* Duke-Ele-

ctor of *Saxony*, Prince of *Orange* and Count of *Nassau*: at the age of 10 years made General of all the Forces of the *United Netherlands*, which place he managed for the space of 37 years both with great courage and success.

- 1625 16. *Henry* IV. Brother of *Maurice* (but by another *Venter*, the Daughter of *Gasper Coligny*, Admiral of *France*) Count of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, and General of the forces of the *States* United.
- 1648 17. *William* III. Son of *Henry* the 4. Successor to his Father in all his Honours and Commands. A Prince of great hopes and expectations.

The Arms of the Earls of *Nassau* are quarterly, 1. A *Zure*, a Lion Or, Armed *Gules*; 2. Or, a Lion-Leopard *Gules*, Armed and Crowned *Argent*; 3. *Gules*, a Fels *Argent*; and 4. *Gules* two Leopards Or, Armed and Membered of the first.

Bordered on *Franconia* or *Frankenland* lieth the County of *HANAU*, so called from the chief Town of it: in which the places of most note are, 1. *Hann* itself, in *Latine* called *Hanovia*, honoured with a *Schola illustis* also, and much enriched by the trade of Printing, with which they use to furnish annually the *Marts of France*, distant from hence about ten *Dutch* miles, 2. *Pfaffenhofen*, of no note formerly, but like to be remembered in the Stories of succeeding times, for the great Defeat there given to the Duke of *Lorraine*, July 31. 1613, who lost his whole Forces, all his Ordnance, Ammunition and Baggage, and, which was worst of all, his Country; taken in part from him by the conquering *Swede*, who followed him close unto his home; but wholly by the *French* King upon that advantage. 3. *Lichtberg*, which gives Title to a second Branch of the House of *Hann*, called the Lord of *Lichtberg*. A Family of good esteem, since the time that *Orto* of *Hann* was ennobled with the Title of Earl thereof which was about the year 1399. Before that, Princes of the Empire; and after that advanced unto great Fortunes, by the addition of the Bann of *Mintzberg* in the person of *Philip* the first Earl, of the County of *Rheinick*, in the person of another *Philip*, the third of that name, great Grandchild of the former *Philip*; and finally, of the Lordships and Estates of *Lichtberg*, accruing to this House by the Marriage of a third *Philip*, the youngest Son of *Reinard* the first Earl thereof, with *Anne* the Daughter and Heir of *Ludowick*, Lord of *Lichtberg*; the Title and possession of the second branch of the House of *Hann*, called Lords of *Lichtberg* and *Hofensteyn*, and Earls of *Bischof*: this last being an Estate in *Lorraine* accruing to them by the Marriage of a fourth *Philip*, (the fifth in name and order of the House of *Lichtberg*) with *Margaret* sole Daughter and Heir of *Ludowick* the last Earl thereof.

Between the Countys of *Nassau* and *Hannau* both sides of the River *Lon*, lies the Earldom of *SOLDANIA*, the first Earl whereof (of whom there is any good Consent) was *Henry* honoured with this Title, Anno 1220. But being I find them in the Catalogue of the Counts Imperial made before that time, I must conclude that to be ancienter than the date aforesaid; though that be sufficient to ennoble a far greater Family. By the Marriage of *Conrade* the ninth from *Henry*, first with *Elizabeth*, one of the Daughters of *William* of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, and after with the Widow of the Earl of *Eymond*, they came to be of such authority amongst the *Netherlands*, as to be privileged with a place and Suffrage in the Council of the *States* General: there settled at the present in their greatest honour, especially since the Mar-

age of *Henry* of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, with a Daughter of Earl *Conrade* by his second Wife, the Mother of *William* of *Nassau*, now Prince of *Orange*, and Husband to the Princess *Mary*, the eldest Daughter of Great Britain. But besides their Estate there, they are possessed in this Tract of 1. *Braunfels*, which gives Title to the first Branch of the House of *Solms*; 2. *Croneberg*, the possession of the second Branch of this Family; and 3. *Solms* on the North-side of the *Lon*, the Root of both.

Of the Imperial Cities in this Confederation, the first is *Friburg* called for distinction sake *Friburg in Weterau*, to difference it from another Town of that name in *Brifgen*; situate in the middle of delicious and most fruitful fields, and memorable for the stout resistance which it made to *Adolphus* of *Nassau*, at that time Emperor; who, when he could not get it by Force or Famine, obtained it by Fraud, and put to death no less than 40 of the chief Nobility, whom he found in the Castle. So hated he was for that bloody fact, that he was shortly after deprieved of the Empire, and slain in fight by *Albert* of *Austria*, his Competitor. The second of the two is *Wetzlar*, seated on the *Lon*, where it meets with the *Dille*, which rising near *Dillenburg*, a Town of the Earl of *Nassau* doth here lose its name into the greater. A Town Imperial, confederate with *Friburg* and the Princes before mentioned, for maintaining their common Liberties, and the Religion publicly professed amongst them, being that of the Reformed Churches of *Calvin's* Platform.

10. *FRANCONIA*.

*FRANCONIA*, or *FRANKENLAND*, is bounded on the East with the Upper *Palatinate*, and part of *Foissland*, on the West with the Confederates of *Weterau* and part of the *Rhene*, on the North side with *Hassia* and *Thuringia*, on the South with the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene* and some part of *Schwaben*: So called from the *French*, *Franci*, or *Francones*, in whose possession it was when they were first known unto the *Romans*; the Residence of their Dukes or Princes in this noble Province appropriating the name unto it. Called also *Francia Orientalis*, to difference it from the Realm of *France* which lay more towards the West. At that time of a larger extent than it is at the present, comprehending so much of the Lower *Palatinate* as lieth on the same side of the *Rhene*; since subdued from it and made a Province of it self in these later Ages.

The Country, on the out-parts overgrown wholly in a manner with Woods and Forrests, and environed almost with Mountains; Part of the old *Hercynian* Woods, is within pleasant, plain and fruitful, sufficiently plentiful both of Corn and Wines, but abundantly well stored with Rape and Licoras, and yielding good pasture for Cattel. So that we compare it to a fine piece of Cloth, wrought about with a coarse Lint; or an excellent fine piece of Lawn, with a Canvas Selvage.

Chief Rivers of it are, 1. The *Maine*, or *Menus*, which running through the midst of it, is received into the *Rhene* below *Frankfort*. 2. The *Sala*, whence the adjoining *French* had the name of *Salii*, and *Conrade*, Emperor of the *Germans*, the surname of *Salicus*. 3. *Radenia*. 4. *Sinna*. 5. *Tabero*. 6. *Astus*, &c.

The people of it are ingenious, patient of labour, strong of body, and very industrious, not suffering any to be idle that can earn his living, of what sort soever. The offspring of the ancient *French*, who, having over-mastered *Gaul* and the parts adjoining, left here the seminary of their strength, and a stock of their ancient Princes; *Mar-*

comir, Brother of *Pharamond* the first King of the *French*, governing in these parts as Duke, and leaving the Estate and Title unto his Posterity. The Catalogue of which Princes take in order thus.

The Princes of the *FRANKS*, and Dukes of *FRANCONIA*, of the old *French* Race.

## A. Cb.

- 326 1. *Genebalus*; the Son of *Dagobert*, descended from the old Regal stock of the *Sicambri*, united with other *Dutch* Nations about 60 or 70 years before, in the name of *Frank*, having subdued those parts which lay towards the River *Mannus*, became the first Prince of the Eastern *Franks*; or Lord of *Francia Orientalis*.
- 356 2. *Dagobert*, the Son of *Genebalus*, who added the District of *Triers* unto his Estates.
- 377 3. *Glodowius*, or *Ludowicus*, the Son of *Dagobert*.
- 398 4. *Marcomir*, the Son of *Glodowius*, who extended his Dominion Eastwards towards *Bavaria* and *Bohemia*.
- 402 5. *Pharamond*, or *Waramond*, the Son of *Marcomir*, the first of this Line which took upon himself the Title of King of the *French*: on the assuming whereof (aiming at matters of more importance) he left *Francia*, or *East-France*, with the Title of Duke, to his Brother *Marcomir*.
- 419 6. *Marcomir* the Brother of *Pharamond*.
- 423 7. *Prunmesser*, by some called *Priamus* the Son of *Marcomir*.
- 435 8. *Genebalus* II. the Son of *Prunmesser*.
- 455 9. *Sumo*, the Son of *Genebalus* the second.
- 478 10. *Clodomirus*, or *Lutemarus*, the Son of *Sumo*.
- 515 11. *Hygebalus*, the Son of *Clodomirus*, who became a Christian and added *Wormes* and *Mentz* unto his Estates.
- 541 12. *Helenus*; by some called *Hermericus* a Christian also, who passing over the *Rhene*, subdued that Tract bordering betwixt *Triers* and *Lorraine*, which the *Dutch* call *Welf-reich*.
- 571 13. *Gotofridus*, the Son of *Helenus*, a Christian also, but not able to persuade his people to the same belief.
- 595 14. *Genebalus* III. the Son of *Gotofride*.
- 615 15. *Clodomir* II. the Son of *Genebald* the third.
- 638 16. *Heribert*, the Nephew of *Clodomir* the second.
- 668 17. *Clodowius*, or *Clovis* II. the Cousin-german of *Heribert*.
- 680 18. *Gosbertus* II. the Son of *Clovis* the second.
- 706 19. *Gosbertus* II. Son of *Gosbert* the first.
- 720 20. *Hetavus*, the Son of *Gosbert* the second, the last Duke of *Franconia* of this Line. He dying without Issue-male, Anno 740. bequeathed it at his death to *Pepin*, who afterwards was King of *France*, Father of *Charles* the Great, according to a former Contract made between those Princes. And *Charles* no sooner had it in his possession, but he bestowed the greatest part of it on *Burchard*, the first Bishop of *Wurtzburg* Anno 752. made Bishop of that City by *Boniface*, Arch-bishop of *Mentz*, (the first Apostle of this People) but a year before. The Bishop of *Wurtzburg* by this Grant were possessed hereof as long as any of the House of *Charles* the Great did possess the Empire. But his posterity

Herity failing in the person of *Conrade*, Anno 910. *Orho* the first (who next but one succeeded *Conrade*) invested *Conrade*, Husband to *Luithgardis* his Daughter, with this Country, giving him withal the Title of Duke of *Francia*. Four Princes of this House possessed it, and it is to say, this *Conrade*, firmated *Salicus*, and after him three *Henries*, Father, Son, and Nephew, successively enjoying the Imperial Dignity, by the names of *Henry* the third, fourth, and fifth. This *Henry*, the last Prince of the male Line of *Conrade*, dying without Issue, *Francia* fell to *Frederick Barbarossa*, Duke of *Schweben*, as next Heir to *Henry* by the Lady *Agnes* his Sister, married to *Frederick* the Antient, Duke of *Schweben*, the Grandfather of *Barbarossa*. But that House being also extinct in the person of *Conradine*, Anno 1268, and no one Heir pretending to the Rights thereof, the Bishop of *Wurtzburg* challenged it on the former Grant; content to let some great ones have a part of the spoil, that he and his Successors might enjoy the rest. By means whereof it came to be divided betwixt the Bishops of *Wurtzburg*, *Bamberg*, *Mentz*, the Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, (for antiently so much of the *Palatinate* and the Bishoprick of *Mentz* as lay on the Dutch side of the *Rhine* were but parts of *Frankenland*) the Marquess of *Onaldsbach*, the Earls of *Swartzenburg*, *Henneberg*, and *Hohenlohe*, and as many of the Free or Imperial Cities as are seated in it. Thus every one did gather sticks when the great Oak fell: the Title of the Duke of *Francia* remaining notwithstanding to the Bishops of *Wurtzburg*.

1. *WURTZBURG*, the Metropolis of *Francia*, the Seat and Residence of the Bishop, who is Titular Duke hereof, is situate on the *Maine* or *Main*, in a pleasant Plain environed with Meadows, Gardens, and fruitful Mountains; and very well fenced with Walls, Trenches, Bulwarks, and other Arts of modern Fortification; well peopled, and for the most part handsomely and neatly built. Passing over the Bridge built of Free-stone on many large and spacious Arches, you come into a fair and pompous (though antient) Castle the ordinary dwelling of the Bishop; and yet so strong, that the many vain attempts of the Bishops and Citizens, apt to pick quarrels with their Prince, made it thought impregnable, to which the situation of it on the top of an Hill added some advantage: but it proved otherwise when besieged by the King of *Sweden*, Anno 1631, who after a short, but stout resistance took it by assault. Other Towns of most note which belong to the Bishops of *Wurtzburg* are, 2. *Forsheim*, where it is said that *Pontius Pilatus* was born. 3. *Gmund*, at the meeting of the *Maine* and the *Salza*, or *Sala*. 4. *Bretta* upon the *Salza* or *Sala*, not far from *Gmund*; remarkable enough, if for nothing else, for being the Birth-place of *Melanchthon* that renowned Scholar, the Phoenix of *Germany*, as some call him, and that not unjustly. 5. *Chronach*. 6. *Saffenstein*. 7. *Hickelbad*, of which little memorable.

But to return unto the Bishop as chief Lord of all. He is called in the refined *Latine* of these times *Herib. Littanus*, but commonly *Wurtzburgensis*; differing in sound, but not in sense: for *Wurtzburg* is no other than a Town of *Wurtz*, situate among plants and Gardens, as before is said; and *Heribolis*, made up out of several languages, doth signify no more than a City of Herbs. By whom the Episcopal See was here first created, and how the Bishops hereof came to be entituled unto their Estates hath been shewn already. The manner how the new Bishop is admitted, and the old interred, may be worth our knowledge. On the decease of the former Bishop, the Lord Elect, attended with a great train of horse, is to make his entrance. As soon as he comes within the Gate, he a-

lights of his Horse, and putteth off his Rides, and being attired in a poor and despicable Habit, legit abcut with a Rope, bare-headed also and bare-footed, he is conducted by the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Castel*, *Wertham*, and *Rheineck*, to *S. Savicurs* Church, being his Cathedral. The Dean and Canons there meeting him, ask him what he would have: to which he modestly replies, that though unworthy, he is come to discharge the Office unto which he is called. Then the Dean thus, *I admit thee in the name of this Chapter, committing to thy caritative Church of Saint Savicurs, and the Dekedon thereto belonging, in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.* Which done, he putteth on his Episcopal Habit, wears Maſs, and from thence passeth to the Castle, where he gives entertainment to all the Company. The living Bishop thus invested, proceed we next to the Burial of the dead: whose Body being imbowelled, is kept in the Chapel of his Castle, his Heart preserved in a vessel of Glass. The next day he is carried to the Monastery of *Saint James*, holding a Crozier-Staff in his right hand, and a Sword in his left; buried with them the next day after in the Church of *S. Savicurs*. As for the Revenue of the Bishop, they must needs be great: The Bishop hereof in the time of *Charles* the fifth compounding for his peace with *Albert*, Marquess of *Brandenburg*, at the price of 210000 Crowns in ready money, and entering into a Bond to pay all his Debts, which amounted to 350000 Crowns more. By which we may partly guess at the richness of his Exchequer, and partly at the greatness of his Intrado.

2. The second great Lord of *Francia* is the Bishop of *B. A. M. B. E. R. G.*, a City seated on the *Main*, not far from *Wurtzburg*, the little River *Rednitz* falling there into it: supposed by *Mercator* to be the *Bravoniarum Ptolemy*, and to have took this new name from the Hill *Baba* (so called from *Baba* Daughter of *Orho* Duke of *Saxony*, and Wife of *Albert* once Earl hereof) upon which it is situate, the right name being *Babenberg*. Remember that *Berg* in Dutch signifies a Hill and contractedly *Bamberg*. A City delightfully seated amongst Mountains and pleasant Gardens, and in a soil exceeding fruitful in all necessities, and yielding *Lycoras* in great plenty: the Birth place of *Joachimus Camerarius*, one of the great Lights of *Germany*; and a See Episcopal, the Bishop of which is exempt from the power of the Metropolitan, subject immediately to the Pope, and Lord of many fair Towns and Territories in this Country; but much diminished since the time of *Charles* the fifth: the Bishoprick thereof then being given to Marquess *Albert*, above mentioned, for a Cession from Arms, Anno 1530, no less than 60 of his Lordships (most of which fall into the share of the Marquess of *Onaldsbach* (besides the Tutelage or Guardianship of his Wards and Clients. Of those which are remaining in the hands of the Bishops the principal are, 1. *Bravinglitz*. 2. *Schleislat*.

3. The third great Lord to be considered is the Marquess of *ONALDSBACH*, or *Onsbach*, who is Master of no small part of this Country: but his Estate (as those of the other *German* Princes) confused and intermixed with his Neighbours. His chief Towns, 1. *Onaldsbach*, or *Onsbach*, the usual Residence of these Marquesses, and the Birth-place of most of their Children. *Hallbrum*, on the edge of *Wirttemberg*, walled in about the year 1085, and honoured with some publick Schools there founded by Marquess *George Frederick*, Anno 1482. 3. *Plainsitz*, not far from *Nuremberg*. Such places as they held in *Poland*, we shall meet with here.

These Marquesses are of the puissant Family of *Brandenburg*, by whom this fair Estate was wrestled from the female Heirs of *Wolffram*, the last Lord thereof. The first

first who did enjoy this Estate and Title was Marquess *George Frederick*, the Son of *Albert* Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg* called the *Achilles* of *Germany*, and the Father of *Albert* the first Duke of *Prussia*, and of *George* the first Marquess of *Sagendorff*, and the Grandfather of that Marquess *Albert* who in the days of *Charles* the fifth harassed this Country. But his Male-issue by *John* his eldest Son failing in that *Albert*, Anno 1557 (as was returned to the Electoral House, and by *Sigismund*, a late Elector was given to *Joachim Ernestus*, one of his younger Brethren, who by the Princes of the Union for defence of the *Palatinate* was made chief Commander of their Forces, Anno 1620. A charge in which it was supposed that he carried himself neither so faithfully nor so valiantly as he should have done, being much condemned for suffering *Spinola* with his Army to pass by unopposed, when he had all advantages that could be wished for to impede his march: the greatest part of the *Palatinate* being lost immediately upon that Neglect, and by degrees the rest of the United Princes either taken off from their Engagement, or ruined for adhering to it with too great a constancy. To him succeeded his Son *Christian*, now possessed hereof.

As for the other secular Princes which have any considerable Estates in this Country, they are the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Hohenlohe*, *Rheineck*, *Castel*, *Wertham*, *Hornbach*, and *Swartzenburg*, together with the Lords of *Limmberg* and *Rheinscheid*, all of them named for the chief Town of their Estates, and all those Towns enriched with some suitable Territory. Of these the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Rheineck*, *Castel*, and *Wertham*, are Homagers to the Bishop of *Wurtzburg*, and are to do him service at his Inthronization: the Earldom of *Rheineck* being now united to that of *Hanau*, as was shewn before, and that of *Henneberg* most famous, in that one of the Earls hereof was Father of that incredible increase of Children (as many as there be days in the year) produced at one birth by the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, Sister of *William* Earl of *Holland*, and King of the *Romans*. A Family of as great Antiquity as most in *Germany* fetching their Pedigree as high as to *Charles* the Great, without help of the Heralds. But they of greatest power and Parentage amongst them are the Earls of *Swartzenburg*, deriving themselves from one *Wittikindus* of the House of *Saxony*, who fighting for his Country against the *French*, Anno 1179, was taken prisoner, carried into *France*, and there baptized, at the persuasion of *Lewis* the Godly, Son of *Charles* the Great. *Wittikindus*, his Son and Successor, being baptized at the same time also by the name of *Charles*, was the first Earl of *Swartzenburg*, a Castle of his own building on the edge of *Thuringia*, Anno 796, whose posterity do fill hold the same, but much improved in their Estates by Marriages and other accretments. A race of Princes which have yielded many of great influence in the affairs of *Germany*: amongst them *Gunter* Earl of *Swartzenburg*, elected Emperor of the *Romans* against *Charles* the fourth, by *Rodolph* Elector *Palatine*, *Ericus* Duke of *Saxony*, *Ludovic* Marquess of *Brandenburg*, and *Henry* Archbishop of *Mentz*. By which last he was solemnly inaugurated at *Aken* (or *Aquisgran*) Anno 1349. But being unworthily poisoned by his Competitor, though he died not of it, yet he was made so weak and unfit for action, that he was forced to surrender his pretensions to his mortal enemy, receiving in compensation for his charges 220000 marks in Silver, and some Towns in *Thuringia*.

Of the Imperial Cities, which share amongst them the remainders of *Frankenland*, the principal are, 1. *Frankford* on the *Maine*, so called from its situation on the River *Maine*, to difference it from *Francford* in the

Country of *Brandenburg*. It is divided by the River into two parts, joined together by a Bridge of Stone: the lesser part, situate on the right-hand shore of the River, being called *Saxenhausen*, the greater part, properly called *Francford*, seated on the other. Both are under one Magistrat, and both together make up a fair, rich, populous, and well traded Town; both of great riches and repute by reason of the famous *Marts* here held in the midst of *Lent* and *September* yearly, and the Election of the Emperor or King of the *Romans*, as occasion is. The City is of a round form, compassed with a double Wall, beautified with some Walks without the Town on the banks of the River, amongst Vineyards, Meadows, and sweet Groves: called thus as some say, from *Francus* the Son of *Marcomir*, supposed to be the Founder of it; or a *Francum vade*, as the *Foord* of the *Franks*, before the building of the Bridge. 2. *Schweinfurt*, on the *Maine* also, in a fruitful Soil. 3. *Rotenberg*, on the River *Tauber*. 4. *Wipfheim*. Here is also the Town of 5. *Coburg*, which belongeth to the House of *Saxony*, and gives Title to some of the younger Princes of it, called from hence Dukes of *Saxon Coburg*. And hereto may be added 6. the fair City of *Nuremberg*, conceived by most to be within the Upper *Palatinate*; but by the Emperor *Maximilian* made a member of the Circle of *Francia*, in regard most of the Estates and Possessions of it lie within this Country. Of which indeed they have plentiful a share, that when *Maurice* Elector of *Saxony* and his Confederates had driven *Charles* the fifth out of *Germany*, Marquess *Albert*, before mentioned, (whose Sword was his best Revenue) picking a quarrel with this City, burnt no less than an hundred Villages belonging to it, seventy Mannors and Farm-houses appertaining to the wealthier Citizens, 3000 Acres of their Wood; and after all this havoc made of their Estate, compelled them to compound with him for 200000 Crowns in Money, and six pieces of Ordnance. But being the City it self seems rather to belong to the other *Palatinate*, we shall there meet with it.

Amongst these Prelates, Princes, and Imperial Cities is the great Dukedom of *Francia* at this time divided; the Title still remaining in the Bishop of *Wurtzburg* and some part of the Country: but both the Country and the Title of Duke of *Francia* not long since otherwise disposed of. For the *Swedes* having taken *Wurtzburg*, Anno 1631, as before is said, together with the City of *Bamberg*, and all the Towns and Territories appertaining to them, conferred them upon *Bernard* Duke of *Saxony*, with the style and Title of Duke of *Francia*.

He was inaugurated therein in the Cathedral Church of *Wurtzburg*, July 19. 1633, the Nobility and Gentry of the Country doing Homage to him, and all the Magistrates and Officers of the several Cities taking the Oaths of Allegiance: the new Duke also making Oath, that he would carefully maintain them in their Rights and Privileges. In the solemnities of which day the first great Gun discharged in the way of Triumph broke in the going off, without any hurt done, but the wounding of one Soldier only. An Omen that all this Solemn Act would prove fire unto it. And so accordingly it did: the Victorious Bishops once more into their possessions, and leaving nothing to the new Duke but an hungry Title. And therefore leaving both the old and new titular Dukes, we will here add the Catalogue of those who were Dukes indeed, and had, together with the Title, the full Possession of the Country.

Dukes of *FRANCONIA* of the Dutch or German Race.

- 974 1. *Conradus*, surnamed *Salicus*, created Duke of *Franconia* by *Otho* the first, whose Daughter *Luithgardis* he had married: after the death of *Henry* the second elected Emperor, by the name of *Conrad* the second, Anno 1025.
- 1040 2. *Henry*, the Son of *Conrad*, Duke of *Franconia* and Emperor, by the name of *Henry* the third.
- 1056 3. *Henry II.* of *Franconia* and IV. of the Empire.
- 1106 4. *Henry III.* of *Franconia*, and V. of the Empire.
- 1125 5. *Frederick II.* (surnamed *Barbarossa*) Duke of *Schwaben*, Nephew of *Frederick* the Ancient, Duke of *Suevia*, and of *Agnes* his Wife, the Sister and next Heir of *Henry*, succeeded in the Empire after the death of *Conrad* the 3. his Uncle, Anno 1153.
- 1190 6. *Frederick II.* the Second Son of *Barbarossa*, Duke of *Franconia* and *Schwaben*.
7. *Conrad II.* Brother of *Frederick* the second succeeded in both Estates.
8. *Philip*, the younger Brother of *Conrad*, succeeded in both Dukedoms after his decease, and on the death of *Henry* the sixth his eldest Brother was elected Emperor, Anno 1198.
- 1207 9. *Frederick III.* of *Franconia*, and the V. of *Suevia*, Son of the Emperor *Henry* the sixth, whom he succeeded in the Kingdom of *Naples* and *Sicily*, An. 1202, and on the death of *Otho* the fourth, Anno 1212, was elected Emperor, of that name the second.
- 1250 10. *Conrad III.* of *Franconia*, the II. of *Schwaben*, and the IV. of the Empire, the Son of *Frederick* the third, whom he succeeded in all his Titles and Estates.
- 1254 11. *Conradine*, Son of *Conrad* the third, Duke of *Franconia* and *Schwaben*, dispossessed of his Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily* by *Manfred* the base Brother of his Father, and finally beheaded by *Charles of Anjou*, who succeeded *Manfred* in those Kingdoms. Anno 1268. After whose death this Royal House being quite extinguished, the Bishop of *Wurtzburg* again regained the Title of Duke of *Franconia*, content to let some of the greater Lords and Prelates, which lived near unto him, to share in the possession of it, as before was noted.

The Arms of the ancient Dukes of *Franconia*, before they were incorporated with the House of *Schwaben*, were *Azure*, a Lion Barry of eight pieces *Argent* and *Gules*, crowned Or: which, why it is now born by the Landgraves of *Hesse*, we shall tell you there.

#### 11. WIRTEMBERG, and 12. BADEN.

These I have joined together, though distinct Estates, because both of them were taken out of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*, created both about one time, and lie very close, in a round together; bounded upon the East and South with *Schwaben* properly so called, on the North with the *Lower Palatinate*, on the West with the *Rhene*, and that part of *Schwaben* which is called *Brigow*, parted asunder by the mountainous ridge of Hills

called *Swartzwald*, *Wirttemberg* lying on the East-side thereof, and *Baden* betwixt it and the *Rhene*. And first for *WIRTEMBERG*. The Air thereof is very healthy, neither too hot in Summer, nor too cold in Winter: the Soil near *Swartzwald* lying on the West, and the *Alps* of *Suevia* on the South, of it felt barren and unprofitable; but in some places, by the industry of the Plough-man, made to yield good Corn. But in the middle parts thereof, which lie towards the *Neccar*, little inferior for fruitfulness both of Corn and Wine unto any in *Germany*, besides some Silver-mines near *Wiltberg* and about *Pachlach*, a small Town, whose abundance of Brass, the Foundations of the House seem to be laid upon it.

It took this name from the Castle of *Wirttemberg*, the first Seat of the Princes of it; as that did from the *Teuturgi*, inhabiting the Dutch side of the *Rhene*, or from the *Virtungi*, as *Beatus Rhenanus* thinketh, mentioned by *Trebellius Gallus* in the life of *Aurelianus*; to which the word *Berg*, being added for a termination, made it first *Teuturgiberg*, or *Virtunberg*, and after *Wirttemberg*.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Stungard*, the Duke's Seat, a fair, rich and populous Town, and the chief of the Dukedom; seated in a pleasant and fruitful Plain, not far from the *Neccar*, yielding a quantity of Wine almost incredible, 2. *Tubingen*, on both sides of the *Neccar*, united into one with a fair Stone-bridge. A Town well built, situate in a very rich Soil, and finally adorned with an University here founded by *Eberhard* the first Duke of *Wirttemberg*, Anno 1477, in which *Leonard Fuchsin* that great Herbalist and Restorator of Physick, was once a Professor of that Faculty. 3. *Caslar*, upon the *Neccar* also, not far from which, on the Top of an Hill, stands the old Castle of *Wirttemberg* before mentioned. 4. *Wiltberg*, of great esteem for its Mines of Silver. 5. *Archingen*, inhabited chiefly by Jews. 6. *Schneidorf*, upon the *Rhene*, much resorted to by reason of the hot Baths there; as is also 7. *Neuenburg*, on the *Entz*. 8. *Haidenheim*, 9. *Greiningen*, 10. *Marbach*, of which little memorable. There are also within the limits of this Dukedom many Towns Imperial. As 1. *Wimpfen*, and 2. *Hailbrun*, on the *Neccar*. 3. *Gopping*, upon the River *Vils*. 4. *Weil*. 5. *Reutlingen* on the *Neccar* also made Imperial, by *Frederick* the 2. Anno 1240, otherwise of no great note but for the Paper-mills. 6. *Epling*.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the *Chamini of Prilemy*, and part of the *Intergri* spoken of before. It was made subject with the rest of these parts to the *Almani*, after the *French*, and finally a member of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*. From which dismembered in the time of *Henry 4.* after the dangerous War raised against him by Duke *Rodolphus*, advanced by the practice of Pope *Hildebrand* to the Throne Imperial, it came to have Princes of its own: the first Earl being *Conrad*, in the year 1100, by the grace and favour of the said Emperor *Henry*. Increased by the addition of the Earldom of *Monteburg* and many other Accruments, it was made a Dukedom in the person of *Eberhard* the 6. by *Maximilian* the 1. A. 1495. The Earls and Dukes follow thus in order.

#### The Earls and Dukes of WIRTEMBERG.

- 1100 1. *Conrad*, the first Earl.
2. *Ulric*, Son of *Conrad*.
3. *John* Son of *Ulric*.
4. *Lewis*, Son of *John*.
5. *Henry*, Son of *Lewis*.
6. *Eberhard*, Son of *Henry*.
7. *Ulric II.* Son of *Eberhard*.
8. *Eberhard II.* Son of *Ulric*.
- 1325 9. *Ulric III.* Son of *Eberhard*.

- 1344 10. *Eberhard III.* Son of *Ulric*.
- 1394 11. *Ulric VI.* Son of *Eberhard*.
- 1417 12. *Eberhard IV.* Son of *Ulric*.
- 1417 13. *Eberhard V.* Son of *Eberhard* the 4. by his Marriage with *Henrica* or *Henrietta*, Daughter of *Henry* Earl of *Monteburg*, added that Earldom to his House.
- 1419 14. *Lewis* or *Lodowick II.* Son of *Eberhard* the 5.
- 1456 15. *Eberhard VI.* Son of *Lewis*, Founder of the University of *Tubingen*, created by *Maximilian* the first, the first Duke of *Wirttemberg*, Anno 1495. He deceased without Issue, Anno 1496.
- 1496 16. *Eberhard VII.* Son of *Ulric* the younger Brother of *Lewis* the 2. succeeded on the death of *Eberhard* his Cousin-german.
- 1504 17. *Henry II.* the Brother of *Eberhard* the 7.
- 1519 18. *Ulric V.* Son of *Henry* 2. expelled out of his Dukedom by *Charles* the 5. for the sake of *Reutlingen* an Imperial City, and his Estate conferred on *Ferdinand* of *Austria*, the Brother of *Charles*; but after 15 years Exile, restored to his Dukedom by *Philip* Landgrave of *Hesse*, he Reformed Religion, and Liberally endowed the University of *Tubingen*. 31.
- 1550 19. *Christopher*, the Son of *Ulric* the 5, a follower of his Father's steps in Reformation of the Church, and advancement of Learning.
- 1568 20. *Lodowick* or *Lewis III.* Son of *Christopher*.
21. *Frederick* Son of *George* Earl of *Monteburg*, the Brother of *Ulric* the 5. made Knight of the Garter by Queen *Elizabeth*, Anno 1597.
22. *John-Frederick*, Son of *Frederick* the first.
23. *John-Eberhard*, eldest Son of the former Duke, now living, Anno 1648.

The Revenues of this Duke are supposed to be equal unto those of the Electors *Palatine*, spoken of before; and were more for the Silver-mines in *Saxony*, little inferior to those of that Duke. But for provisions of War, (excepting Powder only) he is meanly furnished. A main defect, considering the ill terms he stands in with the Imperial Cities, betwixt whom and the House of *Wirttemberg* there have been always open Wars, or secret jealousies.

His Arms are Or, 3 Attires of a Stag born *Palatine*, *Sable*.

As for the Marquifate of *BADEN* lying on the West-side of *Swartzwald*, betwixt it and the *Rhene*, it is for the most part, except towards those Woods, a very pleasant and fruitful Country, and much of the same nature with the rest of *Wirttemberg*; so called from *Baden*, a neat Town, where the Marquises keeps his Seat in Winter; and that so named from the hot Baths there, as is also *Baden* (called for distinction sake, the *Upper Baden* amongst the *Switzers*); in which respect the City of *Bath* in *Somerfetshire* had anciently the name of *Caer-Baden* also. Of these Baths it is supposed that there are in this City at least 300, profitable for many Distempers and exacerate Sores, drawing a great resort of people from the neighbouring Countries. This is the chief Town of this Marquifate, from whence the Princes have the Title of Marquises of *Baden*. The next to this is, 2. *Durlach*, or *Turlach*, which gives Title to a second Branch of this House; called also sometimes Marquises of *Durlach* only, but commonly the Marquises of *Baden Durlach* 3. *Liechtenzell*, amongst the Hills of *Swartzwald*, famous for hot medicinal Springs. 4. *Liechtenau*, re-

markable for a Monastery, the Burial-place of the first Marquises. 5. *Gerspach*, in the very heart of that Mountainous tract. 6. *Pfortzheim*, adjoining to the Wood *Hagensheim*, a branch of *Swartzwald* called. 7. *Koelen*. 8. *Badenwile*, and 9. *Sufenburg*, all seated in the Upper *Baden*, being that part hereof which lies next to *Brigow*. 10. *Milberg*, beautified with a fair Castle, the usual Retiring-place of these Princes in the heats of Summer.

This Marquifate, being also taken out of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*, was founded in the person of *Herman* of *Verona* in *Italy*, who deserving well of the Emperor *Henry* the V. was by him felled in some Lands about these parts, An. 1120, and after marrying with the Daughter of an Earl of *Baden*, was by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa* created the first Marquise of *Baden*, Anno 1155. The Estate was after much encreased by the addition of the Earldom of *Hochberg* and the Appendices thereof in *Schwaben*, into which *Christopher* the 13. Marquise hereof, succeeded on the death of his Cousin *Philip*, the last Earl of *Hochberg*; both princes descended originally from two Brothers, of which the eldest, in right of the Lady *Judith* his Wife was Earl of *Hochberg*; the second by the favour of the said *Frederick Barbarossa*, was made Marquise of *Baden*. They were Masters also of many fair Estates in the Lower *Palatinate*; which the *Palatines* of the *Rhene* (as was there said) are since possessed of. Other particulars shall be shewn (if occasion be) in the ensuing Catalogue of

#### The Marquises of BADEN.

- 1155 1. *Herman*, the first Marquise.
2. *Herman* II.
3. *Herman* III.
4. *Herman* IV.
- 1281 5. *Rodolph*, Son of *Herman* the 4.
- 1295 6. *Herman V.* Son of *Rodolph*.
7. *Rodolph II.* Son of *Herman* the 5.
- 1356 8. *Frederick*, Son of *Rodolph* the 2.
9. *Rodolph III.* Son of *Frederick*.
- 1372 10. *Bernard*, Son of *Rodolph* the 5.
- 1431 11. *James*, Son of *Bernard*.
- 1453 12. *Charles*, Son of *James*, the first of the *Mait* quises which was possessed of the County of *Spanheim* in the Lower *Palatinate*, descending on this House by *Anna* Wife of *Rodolph* the 2.
- 1457 13. *Christopher*, Son of *Charles*, who after the death of *Philip*, the last Marquise of *Hochberg*, succeeded also that Estate.
- 1515 14. *Bernard* Son of *Christopher*, his Brother *Ernest* succeeding in that of *Hochberg*.
15. *Christopher II.* Son of *Bernard*, his elder Brother *Philibert* and *Philip* Son of *Philibert*, dying in the life of *Bernard*.
16. *Edward* Son of *Christopher*, intending the sale of his Estate to pay his Debts, was forcibly deprived of all by *Ernest*.
17. *Ernest*, Marquise of *Hochberg*, Nephew of *Ernest* above mentioned; who by that means not only preferred the Marquifate of *Baden*, but united that of *Hochberg* again unto it, and removed his ordinary Seat to *Durlach*.
18. *George*, Brother of *Ernest*, Marquise of *Baden* and *Hochberg*.
19. *Frederick*, the Son of *George*, born in the year 1504, succeeded his Father in both Estates; and (dying) hath a Son called also *Frederick*, to enjoy them after his decease.





into *Bohemia* by a certain Scholar who had been Student in the University of *Oxford*, which hapning into the hands of *John Huss* and *Hierom of Prague*, (two men whereof this Country doth much boast) wrought in their hearts a desire to reform the Church. A business which they prosecuted so earnestly, that being summoned to the Council of *Constance*, they were there condemned for Heretics and burnt, *Anno*, 1414; yet had their Doctrine such deep root in the hearts of the people, that it could never be destroyed by the Tyrannies of War or Persecution (though both were used) to this very day; multitudes of the Professors of it living in this Kingdom under the names of *Calistini* and *Sub uraque*, as before is said) but much both strengthened and increased by the Writings of *Luther*, *Melancthon*, *Calvin*, and such other of the Protestant Doctors as travelled in the Work of Reformation. But this increase of strength and number proved their greatest weakening. For growing insolent upon the sense of their strength and power, they formed themselves into a party, got many of the *Romish* Catholics to adhere unto them, under colour of asserting their Civil Rights, and in the heat of some disputes, caused certain of the Emperor's Council to be thrown out of the Windows of the Council-chamber; and finally about the latter end of the Reign and Empire of *Matthias*, they broke out into open Arms. In the course whereof the *Calvinians* being of most power, and having got a King of their own Opinions, to disoblige the *Lutherans* and more moderate Catholics, who had concurred with them at the first, that being invaded on the one side with a *Lutheran* Army under the command of the Duke of *Saxony*, and a Popish Army on the other by the Duke of *Bavaria*, they were in fine utterly suppressed and made inconfederable: the conquering and successful Emperor (*Ferdinand* the 2.) taking this occasion to extirpate the Protestant Religion out of his Dominions.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Budweis*, (conceived to be the *Marobudum* of *Ptolemy*) a Town towards *Austria*. 2. *Auss*, near the head of the *Elb*. 3. *Tabor*, a strong Town built by *Ziska*, to be a Retreat for the *Hussites*. 4. *Jaromir*, and 5. *Melnick*, both upon the *Elb*. 6. *Littomissel*, an Episcopal See, bordering on *Moravia*. 7. *Pilsen*, the last Town of this Kingdom which yielded to the prevailing Imperialists in the late long War to that Crown: and then also was it betrayed to Count *Tilly* for a sum of money, by some of the Soldiers of Count *Mansfield*, who was then absent, and had so long defended it against the Enemy. 8. *Elnbogen*, much esteemed for the hot medicinal Bathes; situate on the River *Egra*. 9. *Egra*, so called of the same River, on which (near to the borders of the Upper *Palatinate*) it is strongly situate: a large, fair City, containing three miles in compass. Imperial cities, but sold by the Emperor *Ludovicus Barbarus* to *John King of Bohemia*, for 40000 marks of Silver: in compass less, for Sweetness of the place, Elegancy of the buildings, Pleasants of the site, and Richness of soil, superiour far to *Prague* it self. 10. *Prague*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom, situate in the midst thereof, on the River *Muldau*; consisting of four several Towns, each of which has its several Customs, Laws, and Magistrats. The principal is called the *Old Town*, adorned with many goodly Buildings, a spacious Market-place, and a stately Council-house. The second, called the *New-Town*, is separated from the Old by a Ditch of great depth and wideness. The third, called the *Little Town*, is divided from the Old by the River *Muldau*, joined to it by a beautiful Bridge, consisting of 24 Arches. And in this part thereof is the Hill *Rozbine*, on the sides of which are many fair and stately Houses belonging to the Nobility, over-looked by the

strong Castle of *S. Wenceslaus*, (situate on the top thereof) a magnificent Palace, wherein the *Bohemian Kings* and the later Emperours have kept their Residence. The 4th Town is that of the *Jews*, who have here five Synagogues, and live according to their own Law. The whole City is rather large than fair, the Streets being in Winter very dirty, of ill smell in the Summer; the Buildings for the most part of Clay and Timber clapt together without Art, and of little beauty. And though encompassed with Walls and Ditches, it is conceived to be but an open Town, (so poor and weak are the Defences,) inasmuch that whosoever is master of the Field, will be master of the City also. And yet besides the honour of being the Royal Seat, it hath also of long time been an Archbishop's See, and was by *Charles* the fourth, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, made an University. Near unto this Town was fought that memorable Battle between the Duke of *Bavaria* and Count *Bucquy*, Lieutenant for the Emperor *Ferdinand* the second, with 50000 men, on the one side; and *Frederick*, newly elected King of *Bohemia*, which the Prince of *Anhalt*, the Count of *Turn*, and 30000 men, on the other side. It was fought on the eighth of *November* *style novo*, wherein (such was the unfeared Will of God) the Victory fell unto the Imperialists; the young Prince of *Anhalt*, *Turn*, and *Saxe-Weimar*, with divers others, being taken prisoners; the *Bohemian* Ordinance all surprised, *Prague* forced to yield unto the Victor, and King *Frederick* with the Queen compelled to flee unto *Silesia*. A most lamentable and unfortunate Loss, not to this people only, but to the whole cause of the reformed Religion. Yet it is not unworthy of our observation, that this great Battle was fought upon a Sunday, the 8. of *November*, about the time of Morning-prayer, in the Gospel appointed for which day (being then the 23. after *Trinity*-Sunday) is that famous passage, *Reddite CÆSARI, quæ sunt CÆSARIS*, i. e. Render unto *Cæsar* the things which are *Cæsars*; which seemed to judge the Quarrel on the Emperor's side.

But whether of the two Pretenders had the juster Cause, may best be seen by canvassing the Records of that State and Nation, (for the success of War is no standing Rule for measuring the Equity and Justice of the Causes of it;) by which it will be clearly seen, that the erecting of that Kingdom by the *Slaves* or *Franks*, it hath been evermore disposed at the Will of the Emperor, or by Election of the States and People. But intend not at present to dispute that Point, but only lay down the Story of the Kings and People; as in other places, since the first coming of the *Slaves*. A Nation not known by that name till the time of *Julianus*; at what time they inhabited on the Banks of the *Ipsar*, but on the farther side thereof, opposite to *Ilyricum* and *Thrace*, Imperial Provinces. Grown famous by their good Successes against that Empire, their name was taken up by the rest of the *Sarmatians* of *Europe*; who either wanting room, or not liking of their colder Countries, passed on more Westward, and by degrees possessed themselves of those parts of *Germany* which formerly had been inhabited by the *Almans*, *Burgundians* and *Boiarians*; but were then either quite forsaken, or but ill inhabited by the drawing down of those people to the *Roman* Provinces, which they better liked. They were divided 40, or after that their coming thus far West, into four main Bodies: that is to say, the *Winithi*, possessed of the (now) *Marquis* of *Brandenburg*, *Misia*, and *Lusatia*, as also of the Dukedoms of *Mecklenburg* and *Pomerania*; the *Moravians*, inhabiting in *Moravia*, the Lower *Anstria*, and the Upper *Hungary*; the *Poles*, possessed of *Poland*, and the Dukedom of *Silesia*; and finally the *Bohemian Slaves* confined within the limits of that Kingdom only. Under what

what form of Government they lived at their first coming hither, is not certainly known. But being settled in these Countries of *Poland* and *Bohemia*, it was not long before they were erected into several Kingdoms; occasioned by the coming of a new body of *Slaves*, *Croatians*, and others of those scattered Nations, under the conduct of *Zechinus*, a great Prince amongst them, who about the year 640, together with his Brother *Leches* was banished *Cratia*, for a Murderer. He being very acceptable to the *Slaves* of *Bohemia*, who looked upon him as a Prince of their own original Extraction, one of the same Language, Laws or Customs that themselves were of, they admitted him to be their Chief or supreme Governour, by whatsoever name he was called at first: in honour and memory of whom, the *Bohemians* in their own Language do call themselves *Zechians*. After his death, the State relapsed again into a confused Anarchy, till the year 670; at what time, not respecting the Progeny of *Zechinus*, the Founder of their Commonwealth and first Estate, they fastned upon *Crocius*, a man of good esteem amongst them, and elected him to be their Duke. *Crocius* very just, and of great Bohemian opinion, Princes elected of, as *Bertholdus* telleth us. *Crocius* being dead, the *Bohemians* elected *Libussa*, his youngest Daughter, and of her Government soon wearied, they made choice of *Primislaus* for their Prince, and made him Husband to *Libussa*. A man taken from the Plough (as the Stories tell us) to espouse the Princess: it being ordered and agreed on by her many Suitors, that he (whoever he was) before whom an Horse, purposely let loose, did first make a stand, should be the Husband of the Lady, and have the Government of the State. The Horse first makes a stand before *Primislaus*, being then at Plough (having perhaps some Mare in his Team;) and he accordingly is received and admitted their Prince. There, with the other Dukes from the time of *Crocius*, the first Legislator of the *Bohemians*, take in order thus,

#### The Dukes of BOHEMIA.

1. *Crocius*, the Law-giver or *Lychnus* of *Bohemia*.
2. *Libussa*, youngest Daughter to *Crocius*, with *Primislaus* her Husband, (a second *Quintinus*) Founder of *Prague*.
3. *Neramislaus*, Son of *Primislaus* and *Libussa*.
4. *Anstha*, one of the Sons of *Neramislaus*, contemporary with *Charles* the Great.
5. *Vencislaus*, Son of *Anstha*.
6. *Wenceslaus*.
7. *Bela*.
8. *Nagislaus*, Son of *Bela*.
9. *Borziwois*, The first Christian Prince of the *Bohemians*, co-temporary with the Emperor *Charl.*
10. *Sitigislaus*, Son of *Borziwois*.
11. *Wladislaus*, Brother to *Sitigislaus*.
12. *Wenceslaus* II. firmaned the Saint, slain by his Brother *Boleslaus*.
13. *Boleslaus*, a wicked and ungodly Prince.
14. *Boleslaus* II. Son of the former, a great advocate of Christianity amongst his people.
15. *Boleslaus* III. one of the Sons of *Boleslaus* the second.
16. *Jaromir*, Son to *Boleslaus* the third.
17. *Adalricus*, Brother of *Boleslaus* the third, and Uncle of *Jaromir*.
18. *Predislaus*, Son to *Adalricus*.
19. *Sitigislaus* II. Son to *Predislaus*.

1061 20. *Fratislaus*, Brother of *Sitigislaus*, whom, for his manifold defects, the Emperor *Henry* the 4. created the first King of *Bohemia*, *Anno* 1086. Whose Successors take this cut of *Bertholdus* and *Debravins*.

#### The Kings and Dukes of BOHEMIA.

- A. C.
- 1086 1. *Fratislaus*, the Brother of *Sitigislaus*, Duke of *Bohemia*, was by *Henry* the 4. at *Mentz* created King.
  2. *Conrade*, Brother to *Fratislaus*, notwithstanding that his Brother had three Sons, was elected Duke of *Bohemia*.
  3. *Breicislaus*, Son to *Fratislaus*, the two Sons of *Conrade* being rejected, is by the *Bohemians* chosen Duke.
  - 1100 4. *Borziwois*, the 4. Son of *Breicislaus*, is chosen by the *Bohemians* his eldest Brothers then all living.
  - 1109 5. *Sitopulcis*, Cousin-german to *Borziwois*, by the consent and favour of the people, deposed *Borziwois*; and caused himself to be elected in his place.
  6. *Wladislaus* II. Brother to *Borziwois*, preferred by the people to the Throne before *Orto* the Brother, and *Henry* the Son of *Sitopulcis*, the last Prince.
  - 1159 7. *Sobeslaus* Brother to *Wladislaus*, promoted to the State before the Son of *Wladislaus*.
  8. *Wladislaus* III. Son to *Wladislaus* the 2. (the four Sons of *Sobeslaus* omitted) is chosen and crowned the second King of *Bohemia* by *Frederick* the Emperor; but deposed by the States, because he was not by them formerly elected, according to their Privileges and Customs.
  9. *Oldericus*, the third Son of *Sobeslaus*, his elder Brethren yet living, was by the people elected in the room of *Wladislaus* and his Son *Frederick*, whom the Emperor *Frederick* had by force established in the Throne.
  10. *Sobeslaus* II. second Son of *Sobeslaus*, was by *Frederick* above named expelled; and he also by the *Bohemians*.
  11. *Conrade*, Grandchild to *Orto*, the Brother of *Sitopulcis*, elected by the *Bohemians* in place of *Frederick*; between which two Princes there was continual War.
  12. *Wenceslaus*, Uncle unto *Conrade*, and Son of *Orto* aforesaid, was preferred before many nearer the Succession. Him *Primislaus* expelled, but fearing his return, quitted *Prague*.
  13. *Henry*, Bishop of *Prague*, a Stranger to the Blood, was by a general consent elected Duke.
  14. *Wladislaus* IV. Brother to *Primislaus*, the Son of *Wenceslaus* being put by, succeeded *Henry*, and soon after reigned.
  - 1199 15. *Primislaus*, elected by the *Bohemians*, and by the Emperor *Philip* crowned the 3. King of *Bohemia* at *Mentz*, was Brother to *Wladislaus* the 4.
  - 1248 16. *Ottocarus*, notwithstanding that *Wenceslaus* his elder Brother had been crowned in his Father's life time, was acknowledged King. He was slain in Battle by *Rodolphus* the Emperor near the *Marb*, a River of *Moravia*, *Anno* 1278.
  - 1278 17. *Wenceslaus* II. Son to *Ottocarus*.
  - 1284 18. *Wenceslaus* III. Son to *Wenceslaus* the II. D d d the

the last of the *Bohemian* Princes of the mafculine race.

- 1304 19. *Rodolphus*, Son to the Emperor *Albertus*, is by the Potency of his Father, and the election of the States, seated on the Throne, being otherwise a stranger to the Blood-royal of *Bohemia*.
- 1305 20. *Henry*, Duke of *Carinthia*, the Son of *Meinard*, Earl of *Tyrol*, and Husband to *Anne*, the second Daughter of *Wenceslaus* the 2. is chosen by the *Bohemians*: but being weary of his Government, they elect Earl of *Luxemburg*. Finally *Henry* was murdered by one of his Nephews.
- 1311 21. *John*, Earl of *Luxemburg*, Son to *Henry* the seventh Emperor, and Husband to *Elizabeth*, youngest Daughter to *Wenceslaus* the 2. is elected, the Lady *Anne* yet living.
- 1346 22. *Charles*, Son to *John*, and Emperor, of that name the fourth, the Author of the Golden Bull.
- 1362 23. *Wenceslaus* IV. Emperor also, in whose time the Troubles of the *Hussites* and the Valour *Zisca* was famous.
- 1418 24. *Sigismund*, Brother to *Wenceslaus*, maketh himself King by force; and at his death commendeth *Albertus*, Duke of *Austria*, the Husband of his Daughter *Elizabeth*, unto the States of the Kingdom.
- 1437 25. *Albertus*, Duke of *Austria*, elected upon the commendation of *Sigismund* by the *Bohemian* Lords.
- 1440 26. *Ladislavus*, Son to *Albert*, who being the Brother of two Sisters, commended yet one *George Pogorabichus* unto the States, as fittest to succeed him.
- 1458 27. *George Pogorabichus*, neither by Affinity or Consanguinity of the blood, succeeded. And he, though he had three Sons, yet, for the benefit of his Country, advised the Nobles, after his death to elect their King from *Poland*.
- 1471 28. *Ladislavus* II. Son to *Casimire* King of *Poland*, and to *Elizabeth* the younger Daughter of *Albertus* Duke of *Austria*, the Issue of *Anne* the Elder Sister still living, elected King of *Bohemia*.
- 1516 29. *Ludovicus*, Son to *Ladislavus*, elected and Crowned by the means of his Father, then living King of *Hungary* also.
- 1526 30. *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Austria*, Brother to *Charles* the 5. and Husband to *Anne*, Sister to *Ludovicus*, by his Letters reveral acknowledged that he was chosen King of *Bohemia* not of any right, but of mere free will according to the Liberties of that Kingdom.
- 1565 31. *Maximilian*, eldest Son of *Ferdinand*, was in his Father's life time, and at his death, elected King, *Anno* 1540, into which he actually succeeded on his Father's death.
- 1575 32. *Rodolphus*, Emperor of *Germany*, and the eldest Son to *Maximilian*, elected King.
- 1610 33. *Matthias*, Brother of *Rodolphus*, was at the joint suit of them both nominated and appointed King of *Bohemia*, by the general consent of the States, during his Brother's lifetime, viz. *An.* 1610, which nomination they both protest in their Letters reveral should not be to the prejudice of the Liberties and ancient Customs of that Kingdom.
- 1618 34. *Ferdinand* II. Archduke of *Austria* and of

the House of *Gretz*, was by *Matthias* adopted for his Son, and declared Successor to the Crown of *Bohemia*, but never formally and legally elected; for which cause, a mongst others, he was by the States rejected, in like case as *Vladislavus* the 3. had formerly been.

- 1619 35. *Frederick*, Elector *Palatine*, the strongest *German* Prince of the *Calvinists*, and most potent by his great Alliances, was elected King of *Bohemia*, and Crowned at *Prague*, together with his wife, on the fifth day of *November*. This Prince derived his descent from the Lady *Sophia*, Sister to *Ladislavus* the 2. King of *Poland* and *Bohemia*; and married *Elizabeth*, Daughter to *James* King of Great Britain and *Anne* of *Denmark*, which *Anne* descended from the Lady *Anne*, Daughter of *Albericus* of *Austria*, and elder Sister to *Elizabeth*, Mother to *Ladislavus* the 2. above-named, from whom the Claim of *Austria* is derived.
- 1621 36. *Ferdinand* III. Son of *Ferdinand* the II. elected King of *Bohemia* during the life both of his Father and of *Frederick* the Prince Elector also; after whose death he succeeded in this Kingdom both in right and fact; King of *Hungary* also Archduke of *Austria*, and Emperor of *Germany*, now living, *Anno* 1648; more moderate in his Councils than his Father, *Ferdinand*, and more inclinable to *Peace*, (though honoured with a more signal Victory against the *Swedes*, in the Battle of *Norlingen*, than his Father was in all his life) which his Conclusions made at *Munster* are sufficient proof of.

Of the Revenues, Arms, and other things which concern this Kingdom, we shall speak hereafter, when we have taken a view of the rest of the Provinces which are incorporated into it.

2. *MORAVIA* is bounded on the East with *Hungary*, on the West with *Bohemia*, on the North with *Silesia*, and on the South with the Lower *Austria* and the River *Teja*; fenced on the west by the Woods and Mountains of *Bohemia*, part of the *Hercynian* Forest; on the North, by some Spurs or Branches of it, called *Ardenne* by *Ptolemy*; on the two other sides open like a Half-moon or Semicircle. It is the most fruitful place of Corn in all *Germany*, and hath no small force of Frankincense, which contrary to the nature of it, groweth not on a Tree, but out of the Earth; and that too (which adds much to the Miracle, if *Dubravicus* do report it rightly) in the shape and figure of those parts which men and women do most endeavour to conceal.

The former Inhabitants of this Province were the *Marcomanni* and part of the *Quadi*, against whom when *M. Antoninus* the Emperor made War, he had unwares run himself into such a Streight, that his Army was environed with Mountains one way, and Enemies the other. To this (as *Calamities* seldom go alone) was added the extraordinary heat and drought then being. The Emperor thus put to his plunges, came the Captain of his Guard, telling him, that he had in his Army a Legion of *Christians* (*Militens* he calleth them) which by Prayer to their own God could obtain any thing. The Emperor senteth for them, desiring them to make supplication for the Army; which they did, and God Almighty that never turneth a deaf ear to the prayer of his Servants, when

when they are either for his Glory, the Churches or their own good, scattered and vanquished the *Quadi* with Thunder-shot and Artillery from Heaven, and refreshed the faint and dying *Romans* with many a gentle and pleasant Shower. This Miracle purchased to that Legion the surname of *invictibilis*, i. e. the Thunderer, and induced the Emperor to honour men of that holy profession, and to make an end of the Fourth Persecution, *Act. Ch.* 174. Thus *Xiphilinus* bath it in his *Dion*: which coming from the Pen of an Heathen, as this Author was, is of more credit in a matter of such concernment unto Christianity, than if it had proceeded from *Socrates*, *Sozomen*, or any other Ecclesiastical Writer.

Places of most note herein are, 1. *Olmutz*, on the River *Mach* (or *Morava*) the chief Town of the Country, and a small University; near which, out of the Hill *Odunburg* bordering on *Silesia*, springeth the great River of *Odava*, whose course we have before prescribed. 2. *Brin*, on the River *Swarta*, the Seat of the ancient *Marques*. 3. *Hradisch*, and 4. *Cremser*, both upon the *Marb* or *Morava*. 5. *Znaim*, on the *Teja*. 6. *Niclasberg*, (*Mont Nicolai* in the *Latine*) bordering on the Lower *Austria*. 7. *Iglaw*. 8. *Newburg*. 9. *Wenkerchen*. 10. *Bolesitz*, of which little memorable. 11. *Cradisco*, near to which (and in this place only) the Frankincense is found to grow in the shape and form before mentioned.

The old Inhabitants hereof (as before is said) were the *Marcomanni* and the *Quadi*: after them that Tribe or Nation of the *Slaves*, who, from their habitation on the River *Morava*, called themselves *Moravians*, and the Country which they dwell in by the name of *Moravia*, (the *Dutch* call it *Merheren*.) They were extended at that time over all the Lower *Austria*, to the banks of the *Danube* on the South; and as far as to the River *Tibiscus* (over-spreading a great part of the Upper *Hungary*) towards the East. Governed at the first by their own Kings, the first whose name occurs being *Rasla*, in the time of the Emperor *Lewis* the Godly; by him taken Prisoner, and his Realm made tributary to the Empire. After him succeeded *Harmodurus*, and then *Suentopulcus*; in whose time the *Moravians* and other Nations of the *Slaves* received the Gospel by the preaching of *Cyrril* and *Methodius*, two *Gracian* Doctors; officiating all Divine Services in the *Slavonian* or vulgar Language. For which when they made suit to the Pope then being, to whose Authority (as Patriarch of the Western Empire) they were made obnoxious, and that the Pope and Cardinals delaid the business; a voice was heard, as if it had come from Heaven, saying these words, *Omnis Spiritus laudet Dominum*, & omnis Lingua confiteatur ei. Upon which Miracle their Suit was granted at the last, and a Letter Decretal sent unto that elect from Pope *John* the 8. to *Suentopulcus* (or *Szentopulcher*, as some call him) above mentioned. A Privilege by them enjoyed full 200 years, and then reversed by *Gregory* 7. commonly called Pope *Hildebrand*, in his Letters to *Vratislavus* the first King of *Bohemia*, *An.* 1086.

But to return unto the Story *Suentobegius*, Son to *Suentopulcus*, succeeded next, deposed, or rather beaten out of his Country by the Emperor *Arnulphus*, for denying the accustomed Tribute. A Prince of great spirit, and of as great command; having at one time under him not *Moravia* only, according to the largest limits, but *Silesia*, *Bohemia*, and *Polonia* also. *Arnulphus* not able otherwise to effect his purpose, called in the *Hungarians* (though at that time Pagans) by whose help the *Moravians* was subdued, and his Kingdom shattered into pieces, seized on by the *Hungarians*, *Poles*, and other Nations, and finally reduced to the present Limits. Afterwards it was made a Marquitate, (but by whom we find not,) one of the Mar-

queses hereof being *Jodocus Barbatus*, elected Emperor *An.* 1410. After whose death, *Sigismund*, his next Heir, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, gave it to his Son-in-law *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, *Anno* 1417, who in the end succeeded him in all his Estates; since which time it hath always gone along with the Crown of *Bohemia*.

The Arms of the old Dukes or Princes of it were *Azure*, an Eagle chequered Or and Gules, membered and langued of the same.

3. *SILESIA*, (or *SCHLESIE*, as the *Dutch* call it) is bounded on the East with *Poland*, on the West with *Lusatia*, on the North with *Brandenburg*, and on the South with *Moravia*. Wholly encompassed with Mountains, except towards the North, which lets in a sharp Air upon them: the north-land part being full of Woods, but wital of Minerals.

Chief Cities are, 1. *Agendorff*, or *Jegerndorf*, of late the Patrimony of *John Georgius* of the Family of *Brandenburg*, commonly called the *Marques* of *Agendorff*. The Lands and Estates in his possession were first given by *Ladislavus* King of *Bohemia* to *George* surnamed *Pius* one of the sons of *Frederick* of *Brandenburg*, the first *Marques* of *Onphach* of this House, for the many good Services he had done him. But his posterity being extinct, they fell to the said *John Georgius*, Brother to *Sigismund* the Elector; proscripted by *Ferdinand* the second, for adhering to the party of *Frederick* Prince Elector *Palatine*: A Prince of great note and adventures in the beginning of the late *German* and *Bohemian* Wars. 2. *Munsterberg*, which gives the title of Duke to the posterity of *George Pogorabichus*, once King of *Bohemia*, advanced by him unto this Honour and a fair Estate. 3. *Glatz*, or *Gletz*, the last Town of *Bohemia* which held out for *Frederick* the Elector against that Emperor. 4. *Glogaw*, a strong Town on the River *Oder*. 5. *Neisse*, on a River so named, an Episcopal See. 6. *Breslaw*, in *Latine* *Vratislavia*, so called from *Vratislavius* the Founder of it, once one of the Dukes of this Province; by whose procurement it was made an Episcopal See, *An.* 970, or thereabouts. It is situate on the River *Oder*, all the water wherein could not save it from being burnt down to the ground, *Anno* 1341, but it was presently re-edified with a fair Free-stone, and is now one of the prettiest Cities (for the benefits of it) in all *Germany*; fair, populous, and well contrived with open and even Streets, the chief of the Country. 7. *Oppelen*, on the *Oder* also, well fortified both by Art and Nature, barricaded by the River on the West, and on the East with good Out-works, strong Walls, and a fair Castle. 8. *Seraten*. 9. *Reichenbach*, both made Towns of War since the beginning of the *Bohemian* Troubles.

There are also within this Province the two Seigniories of *Prignitz*, and *Crossen*, so called from the chief Towns thereof, belonging to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, the two Dukedoms of *Opwitz*, and *Zator*, appertaining to the Crown of *Poland*, as also the Dukedom of *Lignitz*, and *Sweinitz*, all of them bearing the names of their principal Towns: of which two last, *Sweinitz* is in the immediate possession of the Kings of *Bohemia*; and *Lignitz* hath a Duke of its own, but an Homager and Tributary of that King.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the *Marfigni*, *Burri*, *Gothini*, and some part of the *Quadi*. In the partition of the Eastern parts of *Germany* amongst the *Slaves*, it was laid unto the Dukedom or Kingdom of *Poland*, continuing a part thereof till the time of *Vladislavus* the 2. who, being driven out of his Kingdom by his Brethren, was by the mediation of *Frederick Barbovis* settled in this Country, to be held under the Sovereignty of the King of *Poland*, Divided betwixt his 3 Sons, and afterwards

subdivided amongst their posterities, according to the ill Custom of Germany, it became broke at last into 14 Dukedoms, of 1. *Breiflaw*, 2. *Oppelen*, 3. *Ratibor*, 4. *Ceflin*, 5. *Be-thom*, 6. *Glogaw*, 7. *Sagan*, 8. *Oleutzw*, 9. *Steinaw*, 10. *Falkenburg*, 11. *Sweinitz*, 12. *Lignitz*, 13. *Opfritz*, and 14. *Zator*. Of all which only the two last do remain to *Poland*; the 5 first being made subject to the Kings of *Bohemia*; by *Wenceslaus the II.* the five next by King *John of Luxemburg*; *Lignitz* remaining in the possession of a Proprietary Duke (as before was said) and *Sweinitz* given to *Charles the IV.* Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, by the Will and Testament of *Beleflaus* the last Duke: all *Silefia* by this means (except the Dukedoms of *Opfritz*, and *Zator*) being added to the Crown of *Bohemia*, of which it is rather an incorporate than subject Province.

4. *LUSATIA*, by the Dutch called *Lansitz*, is bounded on the East with *Silefia*, on the West with *Bohemia*, on the North with *Brandenburg*, and on the South with *Bohemia*. The Country is rough and full of Woods, yet plentiful enough of Corn, and of such Fruits as naturally arise out of the Earth: it is populous and thick set with People, that though it be but a little Province, it is able to arm 20000 Foot as good as any in *Germany*. Most commonly it is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*; the first confining on *Bohemia*, the last on *Brandenburg*.

Places of most note in the *Higher Lansitz*, are, *Bautzen*, (*Badissium* the Latins call it) the first Town attended and taken in by the Duke of *Saxony*; when he took upon him the execution of the Emperor's Ban against *Frederick* Elector *Palatine*, then newly chosen King of *Bohemia*. The poor Prince in the mean time was in an ill condition, the *Saxon* being the head of the *Lutheran*, and the *Bavarian* chief of the *Papist* party, arming both against him. So jealous are both sides of the affair, and so little *Calvinian* spirit, as to leave no means unassayed for the suppressing of it. Seated it is upon the *Spre*, and for the most part is the Seat of the Governor for the King of *Bohemia*. 2. *Gorlitz*, upon the River *Neisse*, which gave the Title of Duke to *John*, Brother of *Wenceslaus*, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, and Father of *Elizabeth*, the last Dutchess of *Luxemburg*, before it fell into the hands of the Dukes of *Burgundy*. A fine neat Town, well frequented, and strongly fortified; founded about the year 1231, and not long after so consumed by a mercile fire. *An. 1301*, in *uicinia domus remansit*, as my Author says, that there was not one House left of the old foundation. But it was presently re-built in a more beautiful situation. But it was formerly re-built in a more beautiful form, and of more strong materials, than before it was, both publick and private Buildings very near and elegant. 3. *Zittau*, on the same River, bordering on *Bohemia*. 4. *Lauden*, 5. *Luben*, 6. *Camitz*, of which little memorable, but that together with the former they may take together six Towns which are confederate together in a stricter League for the mutual Defence and preservation, but under the Protection and with the approbation of the Kings of *Bohemia*. Then in the *Lower Lusatia* there is 7. *Spremburg*, so named from its situation on the River *Spre*, which runneth through the whole Country, and in ancient times was called *Suavia*; supported by some (and not improbably) either to give name to the *Suevians*, or to take it from them; that potent Nation inhabiting originally betwixt this and the *Elbe*. 8. *Tribel*, upon the *Neisse*. 9. *Cuthlitz*, and the *Spre*, or *Suavia*, belongs unto the Marquesses of *Brandenburg*.

The first Inhabitants hereof are by some supposed (and but supposed) to be the *Bacones* of *Tacitus*; in the partition of these parts of *Germany* amongst the *Slaves*, made subject to the *Winithi* or *Venedi*, the greatest and

most spreading Nation of all these People. When and by whom first made a Marquessate, I am not able to say for certain; but sure I am, it hath been very much given to the change of Masters. It had first a Marquess of its own; *Conrade* the Marquess hereof, who died in the year 1166 being by the Emperor *Henry* the fifth made Marquess of *Misnia*, added it unto that Estate; and it remained for some time united to it. After being seized on by the *Poles*, it was sold to *Frederick* the 2. Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg*; who, keeping *Cuthlitz* and some other Towns bordering next upon him in his own possession, surrendered the rest on Composition to *George King of Bohemia*, claiming it from a Grant made by *Henry* the 4. to *Vratislav* the first *Bohemian King*, *An. 1187*. A Grant on which no Possession followed, unless it were the Homage and acknowledgment of the Princes off, holding it afterwards of that Crown as the Lord in chief.

Thus have we brought these four Provinces into the power and possession of the Kings of *Bohemia*, remaining still distinct in their Laws and Governments, (as several limbs of the great Body of the *Slaves* made up into one Estate) though joined together in the person of one supreme Governour, who is severally admitted and acknowledged by each Province distinctly for itself, and not by any one of them in the name of the rest. Out of all which so laid together there may be raised the sum of three millions of Crowns yearly for the King's Revenues, towards the defrayment of all Charges.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Mars*, a Lion with a forked Tail *Luna*, crowned *Sol*. Which Arms was first given by *Frederick Barbarossa* to *Vladislaus* the third, made by him King of *Bohemia*, in regard of the good Service he had done him at the Siege of *Milaun*. And though *Vladislaus* was deposed by the States of that Kingdom; because never formally and legally elected by them; yet his Successors keep those Arms to this very day.

### 15. BRANDENBURG.

THE Marquissate of *BRANDENBURG* is bounded on the East with the Kingdom of *Poland*, on the West with the Dukedom of *Saxony*, on the North with *Pomerania* and part of *Mecklenburg*, and on the South with *Misnia*, *Lusatia* and *Silefia*. So called from *Brandenburg*, the chief Town of it, and because once the *Marches* of the Empire against the *Slaves*: divided afterwards into the *Old*, the *New*, and the *Middle Marches*, according as they were extended farther towards *Prussia* by little and little, as the Emperours were able to get ground of those potent people.

The Country contains in length from East to West 60 Dutch, or 240 Italian miles, and is of correspondent breadth; the whole compass making up 540 miles of the last account. Within which Tract are comprehended 55 Cities and walled Towns, 80 Towns of trade, (*Mark-Statens*, or Market-Towns, as they commonly call them) 38 Castles or Manſion-houses of Noblemen, 17 Monasteries, and 10 Parks well stored with Beasts of game: the Country otherwise (considering the Extent thereof) being but thinly inhabited, nor well provided of necessaries, excepting Corn, of which these North-East Countries afford very great plenty.

The Religion of this Country is for the most part according to the form and Doctrine of *Luther*; first introduced and authorized by *Marquess Joachim* the first. In which estate it continued till the Breach betwixt *George-William*, the Father of the present Elector, and the *Palatine* of *Nenturg*. At which time the *Palatine*, having

married a Daughter of *Bavaria*, the most potent Prince of the *Popish* party, reconciled himself to the Church of *Rome*, the better to assure himself of the Aid of *Spain*: and this Elector, having married a Sister of *Frederick* the fifth, Prince Elector *Palatine*, the most potent Prince of the *Calvinians*, declared himself to be of that party and Opinion, the better to assure himself to the Aid of *Holland*, *Anno 1614*. But when on the pervasion of his Wife he set out an Edit for suppressing the *Lutheran* Forms, and authorizing the *Calvinian* only throughout his Dominions, (which was the year 1615.) the people of this Marquissate rose in Arms against him: the difference being thus composed, that the *Lutheran* Forms only should be used in all the Churches of the Marquissate of *Brandenburg*, for the contentation of the people; and that the Marquissate should have the exercise of his new Religion for himself, his Lady, and those of their Opinion, in his private Chapels.

1. *ALTE-MARCK*, or the *OLD MARCK*, so called because the antient *Marches* of the Empire against the *Slaves*, lieth betwixt *Lunenbourg* and the *Elb*, with which it is bounded on the East. The chief Towns thereof are, 1. *Tangermünd*, on the *Elb*, where it receives the River *Tanagra* or *Angra*; honoured sometimes with the Residence of *Charles* the fourth. 2. *Steindall*, the chief of these *Old Marches*. 3. *Soltwedel* divided into the Towns, the old and the new. 4. *Gardeleben*, fortified with the strong Castle of *Eisbimp*. 5. *Ostberg*, 6. *Senften*, laid by some, but falsely, to be so called from the *Senones*, whom they would make the old Inhabitants of this Country; (by all good Writers made to be originally a *Gallick* Nation.) 7. *Werb*, of which little memorable.

In the *MIDDLE MARCHES* or *UPPER-MARCK*, lying betwixt the *Elb* and the River *Oder*, the Towns of most note are, 1. *Butzaw*, a Commendatory of the Temples in former times. 2. *Spandaw* upon the *Spre*, a well-fortified piece. 3. *Oderburg*, called so from that River, on which it is situate; remarkable for a strong Castle built by *Marquess Albert* the second, at which all Passengers by water are to pay their Toll. 4. *Brandenburg*, on the River *Havel*, a Bishop's See, the Seat of the Lords *Marchers* in former times, taking name from hence: by some said to be built by *Brennus*, Captain of the *Gauls*; more truly by one *Brando*, a Prince of the *Francians*, *Anno Ch. 140*. 5. *Frankford* for distinction sake) named ad *Oderam*, on which River it is situate; the Soil about it being so plentifully stored with Corn and Wines that it is not easy to affirm whether *Bacchus* or *Ceres* be most enamoured of it. It was made an University by *Marquess Joachim*, *An. 1506*, and it is also a flourishing and famous Empory, though not comparable to that of the other *Frankford*, seated on the *Maine*. 6. *Berlin*, the ordinary Residence of the Marquess, situate on the River *Spre*, (or *Suavia*) which, rising in *Lusatia*, falleth into the *Albi*. 7. *Havelburg*, on the River *Havel*, a Bishop's See, who acknowledgeth the Arch-Bishop of *Magdeburg* for his Metropolitan.

3. In the *NEW-MARCK*, extended from the *Oder* to the Borders of *Poland*, and called so because last conquered, and added to the account of the *German* Empire, there is *Custrin*, a very strong and defensible Town, seated on the two Rivers *Varta* and *Oder*, fortified with great charge by *John*, Son of *Marquess Joachim*, and by him intended for his Seat. 2. *Sonnenberg*, and 3. *Landsberg*, both upon the *Warta*. 4. *Soldan* in former times the chief of this *Marck*. 5. *Berlinch*, or *New Berlin*: and 6. *Falkenburg*, a strong Town, and fortified with as strong a Castle, towards *Pomerania*.

The first Inhabitants of this Country were the *Variis*

and *Naribones*, part of the great Nations of the *Suevians*; and after them the *Helvidi*, *Wili*, *Beirani*, and other Tribes of the *Winithi*, the greatest Nation of the *Slaves*, who possessed themselves of it. But *Brandenburg* being won from them by the Emperor *Henry* the first, *An. 620*, (at what time the Gospel was first preached amongst it) the Country heretofore was given by him to *Sigefride* Earl of *Rengelsheim*, (eldest Son of *Theodorick*, the second Earl of *Oldenburg*, (a valiant Gentleman with the Title of *Marquess* or Lord *Marcher*, *Anno 927*, upon condition that he should defend those *Marches* (the *Old Mark*, as they now call it) against the *Slaves*. These *Marquesses* were from the first Officer, at the appointment of the Emperor, and to him accountable. *Sigard*, the fourth from *Sigefride*, governing here for *Otho* the third, was the first Elector of these *Marquesses*, and *Udo* the second of that name, and third from *Sigard*, the last that held this Honour at the Emperor's pleasure; that *Dignity* after his decease being made hereditary in the person of *Albert* of *Anhalt*, surnamed *Ursus*, by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*. Which *Albert* having very much enlarged his Border by the Conquest and extermination of the *Slaves*, caused the uncopied Country to be planted with the new Dutch Colonies out of *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Flanders*, and those parts of the *Netherlands*. The House of this *Albert* being extinct in *John* the fourth, it was given by the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* to *Lewis* his Son; by *Otho* the Brother of that *Lewis*, sold for 200000 Ducats unto *Charles* the fourth; by *Sigismund*, the Son of *Charles*, to *Jodocus* Marquess of *Moravia*; but afterwards being redeemed again, it was by the said *Sigismund* conferred on *Frederick* Burggrave of *Nuremberg*, in recompence of his faithful Service in the Wars of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. In his posterity it remaineth, but much increased in power and Patrimony by the additions of the Dukedom of *Prussia*, *Cleve*, *Gulick* and *Berg*, the Marquissates of *Onspack* and *Jagerndorff*, the Earldom of *Mark* in *Westphalen*, now a part of *Cleveland*, the Lordships of *Prignitz* and *Grossen* in *Silefia*, the Towns of *Hoff* and *Chimbach* in *Vorland*, with the County of *Raphin*, and the Town and Territory of *Cuthlitz* in the *Lower Lusatia*, inasmuch that this is now the most powerful Family in all *Germany*. The Marquesses hereof from *Sigefride* to *Albert*, the Son of *Ursus*, &c. follow in this order.

### The Marquesses of BRANDENBURG.

A. C.

627

1. *Sigefride*, Earl of *Rengelsheim*, made the first Marquess of this Border by the Emperor *Henry* the first.
2. *Gero*, by the appointment of *Otho* the first.
3. *Bruno*, Earl of *Witthim*, created Marquess hereof by the same Emperor.
4. *Hugh* the Son of *Bruno*, by the favour of *Otho* the third.
5. *Sigard*, the Brother of *Hugh*, made by the same Emperor the first Marquess-Elector.
6. *Theodorick*, the Son of *Sigard*, ousted of his Command by *Misfronius* one of the Princes of the *Slaves* named *Obotriti*.
7. *Udo*, Earl of *Soltwedel*, (the *Slaves* being beaten and expelled) created Marquess and Elector by *Conrade* the 2.
8. *Udo II.* Son of *Udo* the first, proscribed by *Henry* the 3. for joining with *Rodolph* Duke of *Schwaben* in the War against him.
9. *Primsilant*, King of the *Obotriti*, (the Ancestor of the Dukes of *Mecklenburg*) was advanced unto these Honors by the said *Henry* the 3. and held them unto his death. After which it was made

- made hereditary by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, in the person of *Albert of Anhalt*, the Son of *Orfus*.
- 1152 10. *Albert of Anhalt*, the first hereditary Marquess, Father of *Bernard*, who was created Elector and Duke of *Saxony*, in the place of *Henry* surnamed the Lion, by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*.
11. *Otto* Son of *Albert*.
12. *Otto II.* Son of *Otto* the 1.
13. *Albert II.* Brother of *Otto* the 2.
14. *John*, Son of *Albert* the 2.
15. *John II.* Son of *John* the 1.
16. *Conrade*, Brother of *John* the 2.
17. *John III.* Son of *Conrade*.
18. *Waldemar*, Brother of *John* the 3.
19. *Waldemar II.* Nephew of *Waldemar* the 1. by his Brother *Henry*.
20. *John IV.* Brother of *Waldemar* the second, the last Marquess of the House of *Anhalt*; the Marquise electing to the Empire for want of Heirs.

21. *Lewis of Bavaria*, created Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg* by his Father, the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, on the said Elector.
22. *Lewis II.* surnamed the *Roman*, on the Renunciation of his Brother, succeeded in the Marquise and Electoral Dignity.
23. *Otto*, Brother to *Lewis* the first and second, who fold the Marquise and Electoral Dignity to *Charles* the fourth.
24. *Wenceslaus*, Son of *Charles* the fourth, afterwards King of *Bohemia*, and Emperor of the *Romans*.
25. *Sigismund*, Brother of *Wenceslaus*, Emperor of the *Romans*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, Earl of *Luxemburg*, who fold this Marquise to *Jodocus* Marquess of *Moravia*, and having afterwards redeemed it, conferred the same on

- 1417 26. *Frederick*, Burgrave of *Nuremberg*, solemnly invested herein at the Council of *Constance* An. 1414, for which Investiture he paid unto the Emperor the sum of 400000 Crowns.
- 1440 27. *Frederick II.* Son of *Frederick* the first, to whom the Emperor *Frederick* the 3. gave the Dukedom of *Pomerania*.
- 1470 28. *Albert*, Brother of *Frederick* the 2. called the *Achilles* of *Germany*, relinquished to *Bugislaus* the 10. the possession of *Pomerania*; but his Successors ever since have retained the Title and kept on foot their Pretensions to it. From *Frederick* his Son descended *Albert* the first Duke of *Prussia*, *Frederick* the first Marquess of *Opisch*, *George* the first Marquess of *Sagendorff*, and *Albert* called the *Albionides* of *Germany*, who fo harassed *Francois* in the days of *Charles* the fifth.
- 1486 29. *John*, Son of *Albert*.
- 1499 30. *Joachim*, Son of *John*, who founded the University of *Frankford*, Anno 1536, and authorized the Reformation of Religion in his time begun.

- 1535 31. *Joachim II.* Son of *Joachim* the first.
- 1571 32. *Joachim-Georg*, Son of *Joachim* the second.
33. *Joachim-Frederick*, Son of *Joachim-Georg*.
34. *John-Sigismund*, Son of *Joachim-Frederick*, who had to Wife the Lady *Anne*, Daughter of *Albert-Frederick* the second Duke of *Prussia*, and of *Mary-Eleanor* his Wife, eldest Daugh-

- ter of *William* the first, Duke of *Cleve*.
- 1620 35. *George-William*, Son of *John-Sigismund* and the Lady *Anne*, claiming in her right the Dukedoms of *Cleve*, *Gulick* and *Berg*, the Earldoms of *Mark* and *Ravensburg*, and the Seignior of *Ravensstein*; which he possessed a while, divided with his Cousin *Wolfgangus* Palatine of *Newburg*, Son of *Maximilian* the younger Sister of *Mary-Eleanor*. But falling out about their Partage, the Palatine of *Newburg* called in the *Spaniard*, and the Father of this Marquess, in behalf of his Son, called in the Confederate States of the *Netherlands*, to assert their Titles. After the death of *Bugislaus* the last Duke of *Pomerania*, he was to have succeeded also in that Estate, then possessed by the *Swede*. Of the Agreement made between them, and the great Accrument thereby following to the House of *Brandenburg*, we shall speak more there.
36. *Frederick-William*, Son of *George-William*, now Elector of *Brandenburg*.

The Territories of this Family are the greatest, as before is said, of any in *Germany*, but a great part thereof is very barren, and his Subjects in those parts as poor as the Country; much of his new accessions yielding little but the Title only. So that neither in Revenue or Power he is able to keep rank with the Duke of *Saxony*; his ordinary Revenue hardly amounting at the utmost to 200000 l. per annum, which is but half of the Receipts of the Duke of *Saxony*.

The Arms hereof are *Argent*, an Eagle *Gules*, membered and beaked *Or*.

## 16. POMERANIA.

POMERANIA is bounded on the East with *Prussia*, from which it is parted by the River *Wesfel*, or *Vistula*, on the West with *Mecklenburg*, divided from it by the River *Baltica*; on the North with the *Baltick* Sea, extended on the Coast hereof for the space of 100 English miles; and on the South with the Marquise of *Brandenburg*. So named from the *Pomortzi*, or *Pomerani*, a Nation of the *Slavones*, to whose share it fell from the situation of it on the Sea-shore, as the word in the *Slavonian* doth seem to import.

The Country is for the most part plain, abundantly fruitful in Corn, carried hence to *Danzick*, and transported thence to all parts of *Christendom* in their times of Scarcity; yielding also good store of Pasturage, and great Herds of Cattel; with plenty of Butter, Cheese, Honey, and some reasonable quantities of Flax. Populous it is, and those people of very strong Constitution, as living under a sharp and piercing Air. The whole is divided into the Continent, and the Islands: the Continent into 1. the *Upper Pomerania*, bordering upon *Mecklenburg*, extended from the *Baltica* to the River *Oder*; 2. the *Lower*, reaching from the *Oder* to that part thereof which is now called 3. *Pomerania*, betwixt it and *Prussia*, subject of long time to the Crown of *Poland*, and there we shall hear farther of it.

Chief places in the *UPPER* are, 1. *Bard*, at the mouth of the River *Baltica*, taking name from thence; a well-traded Town, and many times the Seat of the Dukes of this hitherto *Pomerania*. 2. *Wolgast*, upon the *Baltick* Sea, over against the Isle of *Usedom*, the chief of this part of *Pomerania*, from whence the Dukes hereof are called the Dukes of *Pomerania* *Wolgast*; the first Town taken in

by *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, in his famous War for the relief of *Germany*, Anno 1630. 3. *Straßland*, a Town of great Trading and much resort, seated upon the same Sea also opposite to the Isle of *Rügen*; a Town of great name in the course of the *German* Wars. 4. *Gripsholm*, on the same Sea, betwixt *Wolgast* and *Straßland*, made an University, Anno 1436. 5. *Anklam*, upon the River *Pone*. 6. *Trilbese*, situate on a Lake out of which the said River hath its course.

Then in the *LOWER Pomerania* there is 7. *Camin*, an Episcopate. See, situate on the *Baltick* Shore, over against the Isle of *Wollin*. 8. *Colberg*, a strong Town on the same Shore also, at the fall of the *Perjan* into the Sea. 9. *Casslin*, the last Sea-Town of this Tract lying towards *Prussia*. 10. *Stargard*, on the *Ina*, more within the land; as is also 11. *Griffenberg* upon the *Rega*, and 12. *Stron* on the *Oder*, once a poor Fish-Town, now the Metropolis of this part of the Country; rising to this greatness (after the embracing of Christianity) by the aid of *Vintia*, formerly the chief Mart-Town of all these parts; the ordinary Seat of the Dukes of the *Lower Pomerania*; the Dukes of *Pomerania-Stetin*, as for distinction sake they are used to call them.

The Islands hereunto pertaining are those of *Rügen*, *Wollin*, *Usedom*, touched upon before, but now more particularly to be handled. That of most note is *ROGEN*, over against *Straßland*, from which it is divided only by a narrow Strait, in length seven Dutch miles, and as much in breadth; so that the Compass of it, if it were exactly round, would amount to 20 German, or 100 Italian miles; and yet it was once bigger than it is. But in the year 1309, by the force of an outrageous Tempest, a great part of it, lying towards the South-east, as far as to the Isle of *Rügen*, (then conjoined hereto) was torn away, and sunk to deep into the bottom of the Sea, that now the greatest Ships that be fall over it. The Island is plentiful of Corn, the Granary of *Straßland*, as they call it; and is reasonably well stored with Cattel; full of Bay Creeks, and winding Shores, with many and vast Promontories, thrusting into the Sea, which gives them great increase of Fishing. Anciently it belonged to the Crown of *Denmark*, till given by *Waldemar* the third to *Bugislaus* and *Barinimus* Dukes of *Pomerania*; continuing ever since part of that Estate. The chief Town of it is called *As*, or *Asen*, in the middle of the Island, but not containing above 400 Families. Others of less note and estimate being, 2. *Sogart*. 3. *Wick*. 4. *Bugislaus*, &c. small Towns compared with Villages upon the Continent, but the best they have. And yet so populous is the Island, that they are able to arm 7000 good fighting men if there be occasion.

The second of the three, in repute and bigness, is that of *WOLLIN*, situate over against *Camin*: so called from *Wollin* the chief Town, (*Polonium* it is called in *Latine*) made an Episcopate See by *Wartislaus*, the first Christian Prince of this Nation, which on the Sackage of this City was removed to *Camin*. A Town which once so flourished in Traffick, that it gave place to none but *Constantinople*; the *Russians*, *Danes*, *Saxons*, &c. having here their particular Streets. But being miserably sacked by *Waldemar* King of *Denmark*, Anno 1170, melt of the Trade hereof was removed to *Lubeck*, thence which time it never could come near its former glories.

The last in reputation is that of *USEDOM*, seated betwixt both, not far from *Wolgast*; so called from *Usedom* the chief Town in it, of which little observable. All three were of the Habitation of the ancient *Angli*, who under *Odoacer* King of the *Hermi* subverted the Western Empire, conquered *Italy*, and made themselves Masters of it, till subdued by the *Goths*. Those which remained in these

Islands became after subject to the *Slaves*, and had once Kings of their own: the first whose name occurs in Story being *Cring*, the Son of *Kanze*, a pusilliant Prince, extending his Dominions into *Helfin*, *Dinaburg*, and the City of *Lubeck*, which he built about the year 1100, afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Adolph* the 2. Earl of *Helfin*, by some termed the Founder of it. But his Ill-fate failing in the year 1136, it fell by Compact made between them to the Dukes of *Pomerania*, to whom these Islands ever since have continued subject.

And as for *Pomerania* itself, the old Inhabitants thereof were part of the *Regii* before mentioned, the *Reudigi*, *Longi-Navi*, and *Longi-Didami*, with parts of the *Petruhard Burgundians*; into whose void rooms the *Pomortzi* and other Tribes of the *Winithi* (the most potent Nation of the *Slaves*) did in fine succeed, extending their Dominions to the Banks of the *Vistula*, the parts adjoining unto that, to difference them from *Pomerania*, were called *Pomerellia*. But that part of it being given by *Mezowinus*, the last Prince thereof, dying without Issue, An. 1295, to *Primsilast* Duke of *Poland*, the name and power of the Princes or Dukes of *Pomerania* became confined within narrower Bounds than at first they had. The first Prince of it whom we meet with on record, was *Barinimus*, of the noble *Griffoniana* Family, An. 933, whose Grandson *Suaniborus* commanded over all this Tract. But his Dominions being parted betwixt his Sons, *Bugislaus*, who had *Pomerellia*, retained the Language and old Customs of the *Slavonians*; *Wartislaus*, who possessed the residue, conformed himself to the Laws and Language of the *Saxons*: the Country being by that means accounted for a part of *Germany*, and added unto the Empire an account thereof in the time of *Frederick Barbarossa*, by whom *Bugislaus* and *Casimir*, Sons of *Wartislaus*, were made Princes of the Empire and Dukes of *Pomerania*. The Estate being afterwards divided betwixt *Bugislaus* and *Otto*, Sons of *Barinimus* the first, and the House of *Otto* failing, in the person of *Otto* the third, that part hereof was given by the Emperor *Frederick* the third to *Frederick* the 2. Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg*, the cause of much Contention amongst these Marquesses and the other House of the Dukes of *Pomerania*, which was thus agreed at last, That both Princes should continue the Arms and Title, the Possession of it to be yielded to the Duke of *Pomerania*, on the failing of whose Issue, male it should descend upon the Heirs of the House of *Brandenburg*. The Succession of these Princes follow in this order.

## The Dukes of POMERANIA.

1. *Wartislaus*, the first Christian Prince of the *Pomeranians*, Baptized by *Otto* Bishop of *Brandenburg*, Anno 1124.
- 1128 2. *Bugislaus*, Son of *Wartislaus*, created by *Frederick Barbarossa* the first Duke of *Pomerania*.
- 1183 3. *Wartislaus II.* Son of *Bugislaus*, planted the void parts of *Pomerania* with *Saxon* Colonies.
- 1222 4. *Barinimus*, Son of *Bugislaus* the second: after whose death *Pomerania* was divided into two Principalities.

## Dukes of WOLGAST.

- 1277 5. *Bugislaus II.* Son of *Barinimus*.
- 1319 6. *Wartislaus*, Son to *Bugislaus*.
- 1326 7. *Barinimus II.*
- 1363 8. *Wartislaus II.*

## Dukes of STETIN.

- 1277 1. *Otto*, Duke of *Pomerania-Stetin*.
- 1345 2. *Casimir*, Son of *Otto*.
- 1368 3. *Casimir II.* Son of *Casimir*.



- 1594 9. *Barnimus III.*  
 1405 10. *Wartislaus III.*  
 1456 11. *Ericus*, Son of *Wartislaus*.  
 12. *Bugislaus III.* commonly called the tenth, & the younger Prince of both Houses making up the tale, succeeded *Orbo* the third in that part of *Pomerania*, uniting for the whole into one Estate.  
 1523 13. *George*, Son of *Bugislaus* the tenth.  
 1531 14. *Philip*, Son of *George*, in whose time the Reformation made by *Luther* was admitted into *Pomerania*.  
 1583 15. *Bugislaus IV.* but the 12. in the Dutch account, Son of *Philip*; his younger Brother *Erycivus-Ludovicus*, having that of *Stetin* for his share.

16. *Bugislaus V.* and 14. Son of *Bugislaus* the 4. born in the year 1580, succeeded in *Pomerania* of *Wolgast*; as *Philip-Julius*, Son of *Ernestus-Ludovicus*, did in that of *Stetin*. After whose death *Bugislaus* became Lord of all *Pomerania* in a fair way to have lost all to the prevailing Imperialists, had not the timely coming in of the King of Sweden stopped their violent Progress. But *Bugislaus* dying without Issue in the time of the War, and in him the Male-Issue of the House of *Bugislaus* the tenth being quite extinguished, *George-William*, Marquis and Elector of *Brandenburg*, put in his claim for the Estate, according to the compact and Agreement spoken of before. Betwixt whom & the *Swedes* (who under colour of aiding the last Duke had possessed themselves of all the strongest places in the Country) it was accorded and concluded at the Treaty of *Munster*, that all the Higher *Pomerania*, with the Isles of *Rugen* and *Wollin*, and the Town of *Stetin* should from thenceforth belong to the Crown of *Sweden*: Lower *Pomerania* to be enjoyed by the House of *Brandenburg*, so long as the male-Issue lasteth; on default whereof, that also to be added unto that Crown: the Arms and Titles to be used by both promiscuously. And in regard the Marquess of *Brandenburg*, was to part with the Upper *Pomerania* for the Contentation of the *Swedes*, (without which no firm Peace could be made in *Germany*;) it was also there agreed upon, that the Temporal Estates of the Bithoprick of *Havelbergh*, *Minden* and *Cammin*, together with that of *Magdeburg*, (after the decease of the present Bishop) should be for ever added to the possessions of that House; the Marquesses and Electors of it to be thenceforth intitled Dukes of *Magdeburg*, Princes of *Havelbergh* and *Minden*. But what will be the issue of these Conclusions future Times must shew.

The Arms of *Pomerania* are a Gryphon.

#### 17. MECKLENBURG.

THE Dukedom of *MECKLENBURG* is bounded on the East with *Pomerania*, on the West with *Holftein*, a Province of the Kingdom of *Denmark*, on the North with the *Baltick* Sea, and on the South with *Brandenburg* and *Saxony-Lauenburg*. So called from *Mecklenburg* or *Megalopolis* (both names in the several Languages of the *Dutch* and *Greeks*, signifying a great City, a great Town of that name here being in the time of the *Heruli* and the *Vandals*, (the old inhabitants of these parts) whose chief City it was; but on their leaving of this Country decayed to nothing. The Country is

of the same nature as *Pomerania*, and as rich in Corn. Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Wismar*, a noted Port, on a Creek or Bay of the *Baltick* Sea, raised out of the Ruines of old *Mecklenburg* before mentioned, about the year 1240. The Haven here is capable of the greatest Vessels, to which it gives a safe and assured Station, whence the name of *Wismar*, the word signifying, in the *Scalvonian* Language, *idem ac certum mare*, (as my Author hath it) as much as a quiet or safe Sea. Now one of the *Hanse* Towns, and being it lies conveniently for the use of the *Swedes*, allotted to that Crown by the Treaty of *Munster*; the Duke of *Mecklenburg* being in recompence thereof to have the Temporalities of the Bithopricks of *Swerin* and *Ratzenburg*. 2. *Swerin*, seated upon the South-side of the Lake to be named; an Episcopal See and honoured with giving the Title of a Baron to the Dukes of *Mecklenburg*. 3. *Malchow*, first walled by *Nicolas* Prince of the *Vandals*, Anno 1270. 4. *Ratzenburg*, an Episcopal See, spoken of before. 5. *Ratzebock*, the next in reputation of all the *Hanse* Towns to *Lubeck* and *Danzick*; large, rich, and most frequented by all sorts of Merchants, in compass almost fix English miles, situate on the River *Warna*, near the last thereof into the *Baltick*, honoured with an University, here founded by *John* Duke of *Mecklenburg*, Anno 1419, the first Professors in it being brought from *Erfford* in *Saxony*. 6. *Stargard*, which once gave the Title of Duke to the younger Princes of this House. 7. *Sarantine*, memorable for a Nuntery there founded by Duke *Meagen* the second. 8. *Lanz*, built and fortified by Duke *Henry* the second, as an Outwork to *Roskow*, which he had lately conquered of *Christopher* then King of *Denmark*, on the edge of a little memorable. 10. *Fridland*, on the edge of a little memorable. 11. *Frischtel*, both pleasantly and strongly seated on the edge of a Lake. 12. *Dammmin* a strong Town on the Marches of *Brandenburg*.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Country were the *Vandals*, with the rest of the *Heruli* and *Burgundians*. But the *Burgundians*, being reckoned as a part of the *Vandals*, were not much took notice of, till their Irruptions on the Borders of the *Roman* Empire made them more considerable: the Princes of these Nations using no other Title than Kings of the *Heruli* and *Vandals*. Of these the first is said to be one *Ansvinus*, Son of an *Anatolian* Lady, who learned his first Rudiments of Warfare under *Alexander* the Great. Out of his Loins descended a long Race of Kings, among whom *Rhodogais*, who together with *Amaric* the *Goth* invaded *Italy*, (I know not by what warrant) is accounted one. *Gunderick*, the seventeenth of these Kings, weary of to cold a Dwelling, passed towards the South; and, having harassed *Gaul* and *Spain*, shipped himself over the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and crept into the Kingdom of the *Vandals* in *Africa*; where his Successors we shall meet with there. By *Titulian*, the youngest Son of *Gunderick*, the Son of *Gunderick*, the youngest Son of *Gunderick* is continued, who after mingling with the *Obotriti* and other of the *Scalvies*, succeeding into the *Obotriti* and the *Vandals*, left off the Title of Kings of the *Vandals*, and called themselves Kings of the *Heruli* and *Obotriti*, continuing it to *Pribislaw* or *Primislaw* the second, who were himself, *Pribislaw*, *Di* gratia, *Herulorum*, *Wagrorum*, *Cresporum*, *Palmorum*, *Obotritorum*, *Kislinorum*, *Fandulorum*, *Rex*, making here in a general Muster of these Tribes of the *Scalvies* and *Heruli*, which remained under his command. But he being

quilled by *Henry* surnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, the Title of King was laid aside; his Successors contenting themselves with that of Princes. The Estate was divided betwixt *Henry* and *Niclot*, the Nephews of *Pribislaw* by his Son *Henry*, into two Estates, *Henry* assuming to himself the Title of Prince of the *Obotriti*, and *Niclot* that of Prince of the *Vandals*. But the posterity of *Niclot* failing in *William* the last of that Line, Anno 1439, his Title with the Lands thereunto belonging fell to *Henry* the Fat, the fourth Duke of *Mecklenburg*, to which Honour *Albert* and *John*, the Sons of *Henry* the fourth, descended from the elder House, had been advanced by the Emperor *Charles* the fourth at *Prague*, Anno 1348. The Succession of which Family from *Pribislaw* take in order thus:

The Princes of the *HERULI*, and Dukes of *MECKLENBURG*.

- 1158 1. *Pribislaw*, the last King and first Prince of the *Heruli*, after their Subjection to the *Saxons*, restored to this Title and his former Estate by the bountiful Conquerors, to be held under the Right and Homage of the House of *Saxony*.  
 1179 2. *Henry*, Son of *Pribislaw*, baptised with all his people in his Father's life-time, by the perswasion of *Hen.* Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, by whom they were restored to their Estates.  
 3. *Henry II.* Son of the former *Henry*, dividing the Estate with his Brother *Niclot*.  
 1218 4. *John*, surnamed the Divine, so called because created Doctor of Divinity in the University of *Paris*, whither he was sent by his Father to learn good Arts.  
 1260 5. *Henry III.* surnamed of *Hiersuldem*, because of his Expedition thither against the *Saracens*.  
 1302 6. *Henry IV.* surnamed the Lion, for his Valour and undaunted Contancy.  
 1319 7. *Albert* and *John*, the Sons of *Henry*, going to *Prague* with a Princely Train to attend on the Emperor *Charles* the fourth, were by him created Princes of the Empire, and Dukes of *Mecklenburg*, Anno 1348.  
 1380 8. *Magnus*, Son of *Albert*.  
 1384 9. *John*, Son of *Magnus*, the Founder of the University of *Roskow*, Anno 1419.  
 1423 10. *Henry V.* surnamed the Fat, who, on the death of *William* the last Prince of the *Vandals*, succeeded into his Estate.  
 1447 11. *Magnus II.* Son of *Henry*, Founder of the Cathedral Church of *Roskow*.  
 1503 12. *Albert II.* Son of *Magnus* the second.  
 1547 13. *John*, Son of *Albert* the second, endowed the University of *Roskow* with the Lands of some dissolved Monasteries, and authorized in his Estates the Reformation of Religion begun by *Luther*.  
 1578 14. *John III.* Son of *John* *Albert*.  
 1592 15. *Adolph* *Frederick* and *John* *Albert*, Sons of *John* the third, dispossessed hereby by the Emperor *Ferdinand* the second, Anno 1628, their Estates, with the Title of Duke of *Mecklenburg*, being conferred on *Albert* of *Wallenstein*, Duke of *Fridland*, who had not long enjoyed the Title, when *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, the Assertor of the Liberties of *Germany*, restored it to the proper Owners. The Heir to whose Estates is Gu-

*stavus Adolphus*, the only Son and Heir of *John* *Albert*; the other of these two Brothers dying without Issue.

#### 18. The Dukedom and Estates of SAXONY.

THE Dukedom and Estates of *SAXONY* (now reckoning those which now pass under other Names and shall hereafter be described in their several places) are bounded on the East with *Bohemia*, *Lusatia*, and part of *Brandenburg*, on the West with *Holfstein*, *Brandenburg*, and parts of *Lunenburg* and *Holfstein*, on the North with other parts of *Brandenburg*, and part of *Mecklenburg*; and on the South with *Franconia*, and some parts of the Upper *Palatinate*.

It is (we see) an aggregate Body, consisting of two general Limbs; 1. the Dukedom of *Saxony*, 2. the Estates of *Saxony*, or *Saxony* properly so called: the first containing the whole Provinces of 1. *Ober-Sax*, or the Upper *Saxony*, the proper Seat of the Duke Elector. 2. *Misnia*, 3. *Poitland*, and 4. *Thuringia*; the other the of 1. *Anhalt*, 2. *Mansfield*, 3. *Meysenburg*, and 4. *Lauenburg*. And as it is an aggregate Body, so it is comprehensive of all those honourary Titles by which the Princes of *Germany* are distinguished from one another, that is to say, the Electorship of *Saxony*, the Dukedom of *Lauenburg*, the Bithoprick of *Meysenburg*, the Principality of *Anhalt*, the Marquessate of *Misnia*, the Landgraveship of *Thuringia*, the Earldom of *Mansfield*, and the Seigneurie or Lordship of *Poitland*. Of these eight Provinces, the 4 first mentioned are wholly situate without the Limits and Precincts of the ancient *Saxony*; and yet none are, and have been called long before, the Dukedom of *Saxony*, because they make up the whole Patrimony and Estate of the Dukes Electors, who since the Prescription and Deprivation of Duke *Henry*, surnamed the Lion, Anno 1180, in some or other of these Countries have had their fixed Seat and Habitation. The four last, being parts of the ancient *Saxony*, and heretofore in the possession of the Dukes hereof, do still pass under the account and name of *Saxony*, though in the hands of several Owners; all which do acknowledge a Superiority in the Duke Elector, if not some great Relation to him and Dependence on him: so that we have an heterogeneous Body to discourse upon, and therefore must consider severally of the parts thereof, but so, that either first or last we shall find them all in the Succession and affairs of the Dukes of *Saxony*, 1. then.

THE DUKEDOM of *Saxony* is bounded on the East with *Bohemia*, *Lusatia*, and part of the proper *Saxony*; on the West with *Holfstein*, and part of the proper *Saxony*; on the North with the proper *Saxony* only; and on the South with *Franconia*, and the Upper *Palatinate*. So called because the proper Seat and Patrimony of the Duke-Elector: of very different nature both for Air and Soil; but the last especially, as we shall see by looking over the particular Provinces of 1. *Ober-Sax*, 2. *Misnia*, or *Meyssen*, 3. *Poitland*, 4. *Thuringia*, by the Dutch called *Duringen*.

1. *OBER-SAX*, or the Upper *Saxony*, is bounded on the East with the Marches of *Brandenburg*, on the West with *Mansfield*, from which it is parted by the River *Saale*, on the North with *Meysenburg*, on the South with *Misnia*. The reason of the name we shall see anon. The Air hereof is somewhat sharp and piercing, the Soil sufficiently fruitful, but therein not to be compared with *Misnia*, and much less with *Duringen*, being both of them of a richer and more liberal nature.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Torgau*, by some placed in *Misnia*, but by *Mercur* in this Province, because

on the West side of the *Elbe*, in form orbicular, and falling every way from the sides of a Mountain; beautified with a flatly and pleasant Castle belonging to the Elector of Saxony, who is Lord hereof, built by *John-Frederick*, the Elector, Anno 1535. Near to the City is a Lake of a mile in compass, for which the Citizens pay yearly to the Duke 500 Gulden. 2. *Worlitz*, upon the *Elbe*, once a Commandery of the Templars. 3. *Weissenburg*, lying towards *Brunswick*, 4. *Kemberg*, on the *Elbe*. 5. *Buttelberg*, between the *Elbe* and the *Mulda*. And 6. *Wittenberg*, on the *Elbe*, in an open Plain, but strongly fenced with Walls, Ramparts, and deep Ditches. The chief beauty of it lieth in one fair Street, extending the whole length of the City: in the midst thereof is the Cathedral Church, a large Market-place, and the Common-Council-house. In former times it was the Seat of the Dukes Electors, till the Electoral Dignity was conferred on the House of *Meissen*, who, liking better their own Country, kept their Courts at *Dresden*, but so, that *Wittenberg* is still acknowledged for the Head City of the Electorate, and was made an University for Divines by Duke *Frederick*, Anno 1508. It was called *Wittenberg*, as some conjecture, from *Wittikindus*, once Lord of Saxony, when the extent thereof was greatest: famous for the Sepulchres of *Luther* and *Melanchthon*, but chiefly for that here were the Walls of Popery first broken down, and the Reformation of Religion begun by *Luther*, of the wonderful success whereof we have spoke already.

Of the Affairs of this little Country we can say but little, more than the means by which it came into the hands of the Dukes of Saxony, and consequently to the name which it still retains. Concerning which we are to know, that on the Deprivation of Duke *Henry*, furnished the Lion, whose Greatness was grown formidable even to the Emperours themselves, the Dukedom of Saxony was dismembered into many parcels; *Brunswick* and *Lunenburgh* being given unto the Children of the Duke deprived, the lower Parts of *Westphalen* seized on by *Philip* Archbishop of *Colem*, the parts thereof about the *Weser* by the Bishop of *Paderborn*, *Herman* the Landgrave of *Thuringia* laying hold of that part of this Estate which was nearest to him, *Lubeck* and many other of the principal Cities made Imperial, or governing themselves as Free Estates, the Ancestors of the Princes of *Anhalt* and the Earls of *Manifield* endowed with large Possessions also out of this great Patrimony; the Emperour not only coming at it, but willingly consenting to that Dispartion, the better to reward and content those Princes who had assisted him in his Wars against the Duke. By which means there was nothing left of the ancient Saxony to be cleft upon *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, whom *Frederick Barbarossa* had created Duke Elector in the room of *Henry* so deprived. And though Duke *Bernard* for his many good Services to the Empire had been before gratified with the City of *Wittenberg* by *Conrad* the 3. and had conquered from Duke *Henry* the whole Country of *Lauenburg*; yet all being found too little to maintain the Port of a Duke Elector, it pleased the Emperour *Frederick* to bestow upon him all those Lands and Territories which lay between the *Sala* and the *Elbe*, on the North of *Misnia* to make *Wittenberg* the Electoral City and give unto the County thus united to it the name of *Ober-Sax* or *Upper Saxony*, which it continueth to this day.

2. *MISNIA* or *Meissen*, is bounded on the East with *Lusitia*, on the West with *Duringen*, on the North with Saxony (specially so called and some part of *Brandenburg*, on the South with *Voitland* and some part of *Bohemia*). The Country was once overpread with Woods, and full of Bogs, rendering the Air unwholesome, and the Soil un-

profitable; both rectified by the care and industry of the people; now yielding fertile Mines of Silver, and great plenty both of Corn and Pasturage; well watered with the Rivers *Sala*, *Pleffe*, *Elster*, and *Mulda*.

Places of most observation in it are, 1. *Dresden*, seated on the *Albi*, having continually on her Walls and Bulwarks 150 Pieces of Ordnance; in it a Stable of the Duke's, in which are 128 Horses of Service, and a Magazine, out of which 30000 Horse and Foot may be armed at a day's warning. The Town itself is situate on both sides of the River, by which it is divided into the Old Town and the New, joined into one by a Bridge of 800 paces in length. The Country round about it is very rich and pleasant, able to sustain great multitudes. For that cause it was made the ordinary Seat of the Dukes of Saxony, who have here a strong and flatly Castle. 2. *Naumburg*, 3. *Mersburg*, both seated on the River *Sala*, two Episcopal Sees. 4. *Leipzig*, as famous as University for Philosophers as *Jene* in *Lorraine* is for Physicians. It semeth the Scholars and Citizens will not suffer their Beer to perish, of which here is so much drunk and exported, that the very Customs of it due unto the Duke amounteth to 20000 pounds yearly; yet is this Town of no more than two Churches; but wealthy, populous, and built for the most part of fair Free-houses, and honoured with the Courts of Justice for all the Country. Though seated on the meeting of *Pleffe*, *Parda*, and *Elster*, 3 Rivers which lie almost on all sides of it; yet is it not strong, having been thrice taken by the Imperialists in less than 2 years during the late *German* Wars. Sufficiently famous (if for nothing else) for the great Battel fought near it between the late King of *Sweden* and the Count of *Tilly*: the honour whereof falling to the *Sweden* and *Saxons*, (with the death of 15000 on both sides, and the loss of all the Baggage, Arms and Ammunition of the Imperialists) freed all these parts of *Germany* from that civil and spiritual Bondage which was intended by the Emperour to be put upon them. 5. *Melberg*, on the *Elbe*, where *John-Frederick* the Elector was discomfited and taken prisoner by *Charles* the fifth, and by him deprived not long after of his Estate and Dignity. 6. *Meissen*, on the West-side of the same River, in a hilly and uneven ground, built by the Emperour *Henry* the first for defence of the Empire against the *Slaves*: a Bishops See, and the first Seat of the Marquesses of this Country, both which, together with the Burggrave of the Town, had their Palaces or Mansion-houses standing close together on the top of a Hill overlooking both the Town and Country. From this Town the whole Province had the name of *Meissen*. 7. *Friberg*, near the Mountains of *Bohemia*, rich in Mines of Silver. 8. *Roelitz*, not far from which are rich mines of Tin, discovered first in their parts by a *Cornish*-man spoken of before.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the *Hermanians* and *Suabones*, subdued or outed by the *Sorabi*, a great Tribe of the *Slaves* furnished *Winthil*: first conquered by the Emperour *Henry* the first, who built the strong Town of *Meissen* to keep them under, and to impede the neighbouring *Slaves* from any incroachments on the Empire. Being thus added to the Empire and account of *Germany*, it was a while governed by such Officers as by the Emperours were appointed to guard these Marches: the first proprietary Marquess being one *Eckard*, Son of the Earl of *Osfnach*, (descended from a younger Son of *Wittikind*, the last King of the *Saxons*) by the munificence of *Otto* the third, nor made hereditary till the time of *Henry* the fifth, who gave it in Fee to *Conrad* Marquess of *Landsberg* and *Lusitia*, whose Nephew *Theoderich* by his Son *Otto*, furnished the Rich, married *Judith*, Daughter of *Herman* Landgrave of *Duringen*; by which match *Du-*

ringen

gen accrued to the House of *Meissen*, *Henry* their Son succeeding in both Estates. To this *Henry* succeeded *Albert* his Son, and after him successively four *Fredericks*; the last whereof, on the fallure of the House of *Anhalt*, was made Duke by the Emperour *Sigismund* created Elector and Duke of *Wassena*, either because descended from the House of *Wassena*, or as most able to pay for the Investiture, or else to sustain the Estate and Dignity of a Duke-Elector, which had but weakly been supported by the former Family. In his posterity they all nor always in the possession yet continue; but neither all nor always in the possession of the Dukes-Electors. For in the Partage made between *Ernestus* and *Albert*, the Sons of *Frederick* (according to the ill custom of *Germany*) this Country, or the greatest part of it, was assigned to *Albert*, succeeded in the same by *George* and *Henry* His two Sons: which *Henry* was Father of that *Maurice*, who, being seized and confirmed herein by the Duke *John-Frederick*, did after most unworthily take up Arms against him, supplanting him, and finally possessed himself of this whole Electorate; of which more anon.

3. *VOITLAND* is bound on the East with *Bohemia* on the West with *Frankenland* on the North with *Misnia* or *Meissen*, on the South with the Upper *Palatinat*. So called, as some say, from the *Voites* or *Vites*, (some of that People, who together with the *Saxons* and *Angles*, conquered *Britain*) to whom it had the name of *Vitland*, that is to say, the Land or Country of the *Vites*. But being I find not that this name was given it by the *Slaves*, who finding it deserted, or but thinly peopled, at their coming thither, might call it by the name of *Voiland*; from which the alteration unto *Voiland* is both plain and obvious. It is the smallest Province of all *Germany*, and never of such repute as to have any particular Prince, as most others had; but always reckoned as an accessory to some greater Estate. Nor hath any Town of Cities of great estimation: the chief of those which are, being 1. *Osfnitz*, 2. *Woritz*, 3. *Cornab*, 4. *Schnenberg*, near the Mountains called *Sudati* by *Ptolemy*, famed for Silver-Mines. 5. *Gutzberg*, 6. *Culmbach*, and 7. *Hoff*, not much remarkable, but only for the Princes of it of the House of *Brandenburg*; called formerly *Curia Pegnana*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were parts of the *Nerretates* and *Dandati*, succeeded to by the *French* and *Slaves*; as they severally defended Southwards into warmer Countries. Possessed and planted by the *Slaves* it obtained this name. But being a small Nation and a small Estate, it never had the honour of a particular Prince; but did most probably belong to the Lords of *Meissen*, upon which it bordereth, and now, in their right, to the Duke of Saxony. But so that the Duke of Saxony is not the sole Lord hereof: the Marquesses of *Osfnach* of the House of *Brandenburg* possessing the Towns of *Hoff* and *Culmbach*, and some other part of it: the Patrimony at present of *Christian*, Son of *Joachim-Ernest* the late Marquess of *Osfnach*, who now enjoyeth them, with the Title of Marquess of *Culmbach*.

4. *THURINGIA* is bounded on the East with *Misnia* and the River *Sala*, on the West with *Hessia*, on the North with the Wood *Hartz*, and the proper Saxony, on the South with the mountainous Forest of *Duringenwald*, by it parted from *Frankenland*: the Forest and the Country both so called from the *Thuringians*, the ancient Inhabitants hereof, communicating their name to the place they dwelt in.

The Country is environed round about with woody

Mountains, but within those Mountains plain and pleasant, fruitful in Corn, and very plentiful of Woods, which yield great profit to the people; not without some Mines of Gold and Silver, and rich pits of Salt; able to furnish out a Feast, but for wine only, which is the greatest want hereof. The whole length of it is not above 120 miles, and the breadth no more; yet is it so populous and well planted, that there are said to be in it 12 Barons, and as many Abbies, 144 Cities, and as many Market-Towns, 150 Castles, and 2000 Villages.

The principal of these are 1. *Jene*, on the River *Sala*, bordering upon *Misnia*, an University chiefly of Physicians, founded in the year 1555 by the Sons of *John-Frederick* the Elector, taken Prisoner and deprived by *Charles* the fifth. 2. *Erfurt*, on the River *Gera*, out of which are cut so many Chancels, that every Street almost hath the benefit of it. A rich populous, and well-built City, accounted amongst the best of *Germany*, and made an University in the time of the Emperour *Venceslaus*, Anno 1382. Many times burnt, but still reviving, as it Phoenix out of the Ashes, into greater glory. It was at first immediately subject to the Archbishops and Electors of *Mentz*, the first Founders of it, as being built by *William*, Son of the Emperour *Orto* the first, and then Archbishop of that City, of whom more anon: but having freed themselves from him, they have since governed themselves as a Free Estate, and are one of the *Hanse*-Towns, not subject to the Duke of Saxony as their Lord, but their Patron and good Neighbour only. 3. *Mulden*, and 4. *Northen*, two Imperial Cities, but else not observable. 5. *Smalcald*, famous for the League here made Anno 1550, between all the Princes and Cities which maintained the Doctrine of *Luther*, for defence thereof, and of one another in the pursuance of that work: by which famous Confederacy *Luther* not only kept his head on his shoulders, but the Religion by him reformed grew to that strength, that no force or policy could ever root it up. 6. *Kella*, or *Hale*, on the River *Falza*, of great repute for the exceeding quantity of Salt there made, and vendid in other places, at which Town *Philip* the Landgrave was treacherously taken Prisoner, as you shall hear anon. 7. *Weymar*, a Town which, together with the Castle of *Gotha*, were assigned for the Estate and maintenance of that religious, though unfortunate, Prince *John-Frederick* Duke of Saxony, after his Disfigurement and Imprisonment by *Charles* the 5. the ordinary Seat of the Dukes of *Saxony* *Weymar*, who live here in a barely and magnificent Castle made of polished Stone, most artificially contrived, and beautified with Orchards, Gardens, and other pleasures; but made more pleasant by the watering of the River *Ima*, upon which it standeth. 8. *Gutha*, upon the River *Un*, said by *Rathemarus* to be built by the *Gothi*, and by them thus named. A place not long since of great importance, and fortified with a very strong Castle, called *Grummestein*, that being made the Retiring-place of one *Grummebach* and other seditious persons under the Protection of *John-Frederick*, one of the Sons of the deprived Electors. It was taken after a long Siege by *Augustus* the Elector of Saxony, (to whom the strength of this piece being in the hands of the injured Family was a great Eye-sore) and by the command of the Estates of the Empire at the Diet at *Regensburg*, Anno 1567, demolished, and levelled with the ground.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Chosruis* of *Tritius*, and after them the *Thuringi*, who, with the *Herni*, under the Conduct of *Odaccer*, conquered Italy, called by some *Tercenting*, by others supposed to be the *Tirangeta* of *Ptolemy*. Not heard of in this Country till the Reign of *Childerick* the fourth King of the *French*; then

Ecc 2

taking



Archbishop hereof was also by his procurement made the Primate of Germany, acknowledged to by all but the Bishop of *Salzburg* and the three Spiritual Electors. By the Administration of Justice in matters Criminal and Civil, the said *Ordo* did ordain an Officer, whom they called the *Burggrave*, conferring that Office first on *Gero* Marquis of *Lutetia*. Through many hands it came at last to *Burchard* Lord of *Quernfort*, and the Earls of *Manfield*, many of which enjoyed this Honour, settled at last by the Emperor *Rudolph* of *Habsburg* on the Dukes of *Saxony*, who by this means came to have great command and influence on the whole Estate. The Archbishops notwithstanding continued Lords of it, and the whole Territory or District adjoining to it, till the Reformation of Religion; when the Reverends, separated from the Jurisdiction, were given to Lay-Princes, (for the most part of the House of *Brandenburg*) with the Title of Administrator. Finally by the Pacification made at *Munster*, this fair Estate is to be settled for ever on the Electors of that House, to be possessed by them, and their Heirs and Successors, by the Title of the Dukes of *Magdeburg*, the better to content them for the Concession which they made to the Crown of Sweden of a great part of their right and Title to the Dukedom of *Pomerania*.

4. On the North-west of *Magdeburg*, and on both sides also of the *Elbe*, lieth the Dukedom of *LAWENBURG*, bounded on the North with *Mecklenburg*, on the West with part of *Holftein*, and on the South with the River *Elbe* and part of *Lauenburg*; so called of *Lauenburg* the chief Town thereof, and the seat of the Dukes. The Town was first built, as some conceive, by *Henry* Duke of *Saxony*, furnished the Lion, the better to assure his Conquests on that side of the River, by whom it was called *Leopold*, or *Leoburgum*, and *Lauenburg* for the same reasons by the *Dutch* or *German*: on the Proscription of which Prince, the Country being wasted and the Towns destroyed, *Bernhard* of *Anhalt* designed his Successor in the Dukedom of *Saxony*, liking the situation of it, caused it to be re-edified in stronger manner than before, a great part of the materials of the Town of *Erdenburg* being carried cross the Water to enlarge this place. Afterwards being razed by the said Duke *Henry* in the course of that War it was re-built again by *D. Bernhard*, the new Elector, who is therefore by some Writers made the Founder of it. Other places of note herein are, 1. *Erdenburg* a well-fortified place, opposite to *Lauenburg*, on the higher side of the *Elbe*; not so large now as heretofore, the Town of *Lauenburg* being made greater by the lessening of this. 2. *Raczburg*, an Episcopal See, founded here by Duke *Henry* furnished the Lion, upon his gaining of the *Slaves* to the Christian Faith, and of late times the Sepulchre of this Ducal Family. 4. *Molne*, on the farther side of the *Elb*, not far from *Lauenburg*, the cause of much Contentions betwixt the Dukes hereof, and the Town of *Hamburg*, who pretend a Title thereto.

This Country, being for the most part under the Command of the *Slaves*, was from them conquered (together with the whole Country of *Mecklenburg*) by Duke *Henry* the Lion, and by his care converted to the Christian Faith; but he being proscribed, and this Scigniority extorted from him by Duke *Bernhard* of *Anhalt*, his Successor in the Electoral Dignity, it was by *Albert*, Son of this *Bernhard*, conferred on *John* his second Son, from whom the Dukes of *Saxony*, commonly called Dukes of *Saxon Lawenburg*, do derive themselves, who being pretermitted by the Emperor *Sigismund* at the death of *Albert* the 3. the last of the direct Line of *Bernard*, or else not caring for a Title which carried with it too great Sail for so small a Vessel as the Estate of the Elector at the present was, have

since contented the themselves with their ancient Patrimony. It is now time we should proceed to the Story of *Saxony*, the ancient Inhabitants of which Tract were the *Langobardi* or *Lombards* of *Magdeburg*, and part of the *Cherischi* about *Mansfeld* and *Wittenberg*. Overcome by the prevailing Saxons, they became part of their name and Country, which in the full extent thereof was once far greater than now it is, containing all the Countries between the *Rhene* and the River *Eyder* in the *Cimbrick Cherischi*, and from the River *Sala* to the *German* and *Baltick* Oceans. These are said by some to be a People of *Asia*, and there called the *Sace*, who, finding that small Territory (now a part of *Tartaria*) too narrow for them, forsook their Country, and at last fixed themselves in the *Cimbrick Cherischi*, where they first took the names of *Sacifins* (or *Sac-fons*) that is to say, the Sons of the *Sata*. The improbability of this we have there disputed. Observe therefore that and the like Originations of them, I conceive them (for my part) to be natural *German*, some Tribe of that most populous and potent People of the *Suevi*: but for the reason of the name, let every man enjoy the pleasure of his own opinion. Certain I am that in *Ptolemy*'s time they were possessed of those parts beyond the *Elb*, and thence extended to the *Eyder*, part of which Tract is now known by the name of *Holftein*, and were accounted in that time to be no New-comers. Afterwards, as they grew in number, they enlarged their quarters, and passing over the *Elb*, in the time of the latter *Roman* Emperours, possessed themselves of the void places which were left by the *French*, then busied in the Conquest of more fruitful Countries; communicating their name to all the Nations which they overcame, as the *French* had formerly done before them. So that in time they stretch themselves from the River *Sala* on the East, to the *German* Ocean on the West, and took up the two Dukedoms of *Holftein*, *Lunenburg*, and *Brunswick*, the Bishopsricks of *Bremen*, *Verden*, *Hildesheim*, *Hallerstadt*, and *Magdeburg*, the *Marches* of *Brandenburg*, the *Land* of *Mansfeld*, *Westphalen*, both *Friesland*, *Oost-Tijl*, with as much of *Gelderland* and *Holland* as lay on that side of the *Rhene*. By which account the present Electoral Family hath not one foot of the old *Saxony* in their possession; the Seat and Patrimony of the Electors being removed into other Countries, upon the Alterations and Changes which have happened in that Estate, the name and Title of *Saxony* being given to the Country about *Wittenberg*, for no other reason but because it was the chief Seat of the Dukes-Electors. But to proceed, a stout and valiant Nation questionless they were, the Conquerors of the Isle of *Britain*; and the last People of the *German* which yielded up their Country unto *Charles* the Great, by his means gained unto the Gospel *Ann* 785. Their last King was called *Wittkindus*, from whom descend the Kings of *France*, since the time of *Hug* Capet, the present Kings of *Denmark*, of the house of *Oldenburg*, the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Savoy*, the Marquises of *Montferrat*, besides many other noble and illustrious Families though of lesser note. The right or direct Line of the Male-issue of *Wittkind* (whom *Charles* the Great created, of a King, the first Duke of *Saxony*) terminating in the person of *Orto* the third, Emperour of *Lunenburg*, it was by him conferred on *Bernard* Lord of *Guinea*, (but the precise time I find not:) *Henry*, furnished the Saint, who succeeded this *Orto* in the Empire, the next in the collateral Line, being pretermitted, either because at that time settled in the great Dukedom of *Bavaria*, or because there was no hope of Posterity by him, or for some other private grudge, which I read by him. And it continued in this Line till, on the Fortnight of *Henry* the Lion, it was bestowed by *Frederick Barbarossa* upon *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, *Ann* 1180, whose Issue in the right Line failing, it was finally cleft by the Emperour *Sigismund* on *Frederick* Langrave of *Thuringia* and *Marquis* of *Misna*, *Ann* 1423. In his Family it hath since continued, but not without a manifest breach in the course of the Succession; which happened when *John-Frederick* his being deprived of the Electoral Dignity and Estate, his Cousin Duke *Maurice* was invested in them by *Charles* the fifth. For that religious, but unfortunate, Prince (if he may justly have the Title of *unfortunate*) who suffered in so good a Cause, for so good a Conscience) being discomfited and taken prisoner at the Battle of *Mulberg* before mentioned, was the next day condemned to die; but pardoned at the last, upon the intercession of some powerful Friends, upon condition that he should resign the Electoral Dignity, and all the rest of his Estates, into the power of the Emperour: Which done, the Emperour gave him back again of his own accord the Castle of *Gutha* and the Town of *Weymar*, with all the Lands and Territories thereunto adjoining, from which last place his Posterity are now called Dukes of *Saxon-Weymar*. It was also much insisted on, that he should relinquish his Religion, and reconcile himself to the Church of *Rome*; but thereto he opposed. These matters being thus transacted, the Emperour (with the general consent of the Electors) invested *Maurice*, Cousin-german to the Duke deprived, in the Electoral dignity, and all the Lands, Honours and Estates (the Signiories of *Gutha* and *Weymar* excepted only) which formerly had belonged to him: which though it were a great wrong both to the Person and Posterity of the Duke *John-Frederick*, yet it is observed by some grave Writers to have fallen out not unhappily for the advancement of the Reformation then contended for. 1. In regard of *John-Frederick*, whose Christian Patience and Magnanimity during the whole time of his Imprisonment added great reputation to the Cause for which he suffered. 2. In respect of Duke *Maurice*, who was a man of far greater parts to advance the work and every way as zealous in pursuing of it as the other was. And 3. in relation to the Children of the deprived Duke, men not to be relied on in a matter of such weight and moment; inasmuch as it was said of him after his decease, *Quid Vilis reliquerit sui dissimilioris*. It is now time we should proceed to the Investiture of the new Elector. And, because these Transactions of State be not ordinary, I will briefly relate the Cerimonies thereto used as I have collected them out of *Slidan*. There were at *Wittenberg* Scaffolds erected, on which fate the Emperour and the Princes Electors in their Robes. On the back-side of the State were placed the Trumpeters; right against it standeth Duke *Maurice* with two bands of Horsemen. The first in a full career run their Horses up to the Pavillion: out of the second issued *Henry* Duke of *Brunswick*, *Wolfgang* Prince of *Bipont*, and *Albert* Duke of *Bavaria*. These, when they had in like manner coursed their Horses about, alighted, ascended to the Throne, and humbly requested the Emperour, that for the common good he would advance Duke *Maurice* to the Electorship. He consulted with the Electors, made answer by the Bishop of *Mentz*, that he was content, so Duke *Maurice* would in person come and desire it. Then came forth Duke *Maurice* with the whole Troop: before him were born ten Ensigns bearing the Arms of as many Regions wherein he desired to be invested. When he came before the Throne, he kneeled down on his knees, and humbly desired the Emperour to bestow on him the Electorship of *Saxony*, and all the Lands of *John-Frederick*, late Elector. His Petition was granted.

Then the Bishop of *Mentz*, read unto him the Oath by which the Electors are bound unto the Empire: which Oath when Duke *Maurice* had taken, the Emperour delivered unto him a Sword, which was a sign of his perfect Investiture. Duke *Maurice*, now the Elector of *Saxony*, arose, gave the Emperour thanks, promised his Fidelity, made Obedience, and took his place among the Electors. This Solemnity was on the 24. day of *Febr.* *Ann* 1548. Which fact, we now proceed unto the Catalogue of

#### The Dukes of SAXONY.

- 785 1. *Wittkind*, the last King of the Saxons, vanquished, and created the first Duke by *Charles* the Great.
- 825 2. *Bruno*, the Brother of *Wittkind*.
- 843 3. *Luitpluf*, Son of *Bruno*.
- 855 4. *Bruno* II. Son of *Luitpluf*.
- 876 5. *Orto*, Brother of *Bruno* the second.
- 916 6. *Henry*, furnished the Fowler, Son of *Orto*, Emperour of the Romans and King of Germany.
- 937 7. *Orto* II. Duke of Saxony, and Emperour, called *Orto* I.
- 974 8. *Orto* III. Duke of Saxony, and Emperour, called *Orto* II.
- 284 9. *Orto* IV. Duke of Saxony, and Emperour, called *Orto* III.
- 1021 10. *Bernard*, Lord of *Lunenburg*, created Duke of Saxony, and the first Elector, by *Orto* the third, who was the last Duke of the Race of *Wittkind*.
- 1062 11. *Bernard* II. Son of *Bernard* the first.
- 1062 12. *Oradolph*, Son of *Bernard* the 2.
- 1073 13. *Magnus*, Son of *Oradolph*, who taking part with *Rodolphus* of *Schwaben* against *Henry* the fourth, was taken Prisoner and deprived.
14. *Lotharius*, Earl of *Quernfort*, created Duke of Saxony by *Henry* the fourth. He was also Emperour of the Romans.
- 1125 15. *Henry* *Guelph*, furnished the Proud, Duke of *Bavaria* the Husband of *Gerrade*, Daughter of *Lotharius*, by whom he was created Duke-Elector.
- 1139 16. *Henry* II. furnished the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, Son of *Henry* the Proud by his first Wife *Waldis*, the Daughter of *Magnus*, added to this Estate the Countries of *Mecklenburg* and *Lauenburg*, which he had conquered from the *Slaves*, becoming by that means so great, that neglecting his Duty to the Emperour *Frederick*, furnished *Barbarossa*, and siding with the Pope against him, he was by him publicly proscribed, his neighbour Princes armed against him, and by their joint Forces out of all his Estates, every one laying hold on that which lay nearest to him, by means whereof this great Estate being parcelled and divided into many parts, the Title of the Duke-Elector of *Saxony* was given by the said Emperour to
- 1180 17. *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, Son of *Albert* Marquis of *Brandenburg* and Grandchild of *Elieca*, another Daughte of Duke *Magnus*: to whom for his Seat and Habitation, the Emperour gave the City of *Wittenberg*, the Head since that time of this Electorate.
- 1212 18. *Albert*, Son of *Bernard*, from whom the Dukes of *Lauenburg* do derive their Pedigree,

- 1273 19. *Albert II.* Son of *Albert* the first.  
 1317 20. *Rodolph*, Son of *Albert* the 2.  
 1356 21. *Rodolph II.* Son of *Rodolph* the first.  
 1374 22. *Wenceslaus*, Son of *Rodolph* the 2.  
 1389 23. *Frederick III.* Son of *Wenceslaus*.  
 1419 24. *Albert III.* Son of *Rodolph* the third, the last Elector of Saxony of the House of *Anhalt*.  
 1423 25. *Frederick*, Landgrave of *Duringen*, and Marquess of *Misnia*, (on the falling of the House of *Anhalt*, Anno 1423) created Duke of Saxony by the Emperor *Sigismund*, the House of *Lauenberg* permitted for want of putting in their Claim: by the advancement of which Prince, the Title of the Duke of Saxony, returned again to the House of *Witt-kind*, (the first King and last Duke heretofore) after it had been alienated into other Families for the space of 200 years.  
 1428 26. *Frederick II.* Son of *Frederick* the first.  
 1464 27. *Ernest*, Son of *Frederick* the second.  
 1486 28. *Frederick III.* Son of *Ernest*.  
 1525 29. *John*, Brother to *Frederick* the third.  
 1532 30. *John Frederick*, Son of *John* the first; a great advancer of the Reformation of Religion, imprisoned and deprived of his Electorship by *Charles* the fifth.  
 1547 31. *Maurice*, Cousin-german to the Duke *John Frederick*, (as being the Grandson of *Nepheuw* of *Albert*, the younger Brother of *Ernestus* the Duke Elector (created Duke Elector by *Charles* the fifth, whom afterwards he drove out of Germany; and was slain in the Battle of *Musfelden*, against Marquess *Albert* of *Brandenburg*.  
 1553 32. *Augustus*, Brother of *Maurice*.  
 1586 33. *Christian*, Son of *Augustus*.  
 34. *Christian II.* Son of *Christian* the first.  
 35. *John George*, Brother of *Christian* the second, who first sided with the Emperor *Ferdinand* the second against the Elector *Palatine*, and after with the King of *Sweden* against the Emperor.

The Revenues of this Duke are thought to be the greatest of any one Prince of Germany, (the Imperial Family excepted) amounting in the least to 400000 *l. per annum*; though in multitude of Vassals and greatness of Territory he come short of some of them. And to make up this (some or perhaps a greater) it is conceived that the profit which ariseth to him out of Silver-mines is no less than 130000 yearly; the Impost laid on Beer in *Leipsick* only, a City but of two Parish-Churches, (by which conjecture at the rest) being farmed at 20000 *l. per annum*. Then hath he the Tenth of all sort of Increase, as of Corn, Wine, &c. The Salt houses at *Hall* and some other places, very fair lands belonging unto his Domain; and besides this a standing and perpetual Tax laid upon the Subject towards the maintenance of the War against the *Turks*, granted at first in times of Danger and hostility, but gathered ever since in the times of Peace (as to that Enemy) under colour of being ready and prepared against him. According to the quantity of his Intrado he keeps his State, well served, and better attended than any other of the Electors: there being at one time in the Court of *Christian*, the Father of the present Duke, three Dukes, three Earls, and five Barons of other Nations, (besides the Nobility of his own) all Pensioners and Servants to him; one of the Princes of *Anhalt* and one of the Earles of *Mansfield*, both Homagers unto the Saxons, being two of the number.

The Arms of Saxony, are Barre-wise of six pieces *Sable* and *Or*, a Bend floured *Verr*. Which Bend was added to the Coat by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, when he confirmed *Bernard of Anhalt* in this Dukedom, for *Bernard* desiring of the Emperor to have some difference added to the Ducal Coat, (being before only *Barry Sable* and *Or*) to distinguish him and his Successors from those of the former House; the Emperor took a Charlet of Rue, which he had then upon his head, and threw it cross his Buckler or Escutcheon of Arms, which was presently painted on the same.

#### 19. BRUNSWICK, and 20. LUNENBURG.

THE Dukedom of *BRUNSWICK* and *LUNENBURG*, being both originally taken out of this great Dukedom of Saxony extracted both from the same Root, and many times united in the person of the same one Prince, shall be joined together in the Story, though severed in the Chorography or description of them; bounded on the East with *Magdeburg* and *Mansfield* in the upper Saxony, on the West with *Westphalia*, on the North with *Denmark*, on the South with *Hassia*. The Air in all parts heretofore is very cold and comfortable, but found and healthful: the Soil towards the old *Marches* of *Brandenburg* but meanly fertile, towards *Duringen* and *Hassia* mountainous and woody, in other parts very plentiful of Corn, and well provided also of such other Commodities as usually do grow in those colder Climates.

But to take the Chorography of them severally, *BRUNSWICK* is bounded on the East with the Earldom of *Mansfield*, on the West with *Westphalia*, on the North with *Lunenbourg*, on the South with *Hesse*. So called from *Brunswick* the chief City, and the Head of this Dukedom.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Goslar*, upon the River *Gase*, whence it had the name; of a poor Village made a City by *Henry* the first, much beautified and enlarged by *Henry* the third, who founded here two Churches and a stately Palace; now one of the Imperial Cities. 2. *Helmsfat*, in the middle way betwixt *Brunswick* and *Magdeburg*, first fortified by *Charles* Son of *Charles* the Great, for a Bridge to the neighboring *Slaves*; and being after given to the Abbots of *Verden*, was by them sold to *William* the Duke of *Brunswick*. 3. *Quadenburg*, built also by *Henry* the first, much increased since by the neighbourhood of a very rich Nunnery, the Abbess whereof had formerly the Privileges of a Prince of the Empire. 4. *Hildesheim*, an ancient City, honoured with an Episcopal See by *Charles* the Great as the first conversion of the Saxons. 5. *Gruenbagen*, which gave Title to a younger branch of the House of *Brunswick*; a Principality, and a Member of the Empire. 6. *Hannover*, on the River *Lein*, well built, very strongly fortified, and not meanly traded. 7. *Brunswick*, upon the River *Onacra*, which passeth through it, passed over by many handsome Bridges; the Metropolis of the ancient Saxony, and at this time the chief of this Dukedom, though of it felt Imperial, and one of the *Hanse*. The City is of a quadrangular form seated in the midst of a plain very fruitful of Corn, in compass about two Dutch, or eight English miles, somewhat larger than *Nuremberg*, and less than *Erfort*; containing in that compass not above twelve Churches whereof two have Steeples covered with Lead, a third with Bricks, all the rest with Tile. It is rich, populous, and strongly fortified, on some sides with a double, on others with a treble Wall; within which walls are five Cities, distinguished by Privileges, but united by Laws. The whole first built by *Brumo*, Son to *Ludolph* Duke

Duke of Saxony, and Uncle to the Emperor *Henry* the first, about the year 861; from whence it had the name of *Brunswick*, or *Brunens Vicus*, by the more elegant *Latinists* *Brunopolis*. 8. *Hamelen*, on the East-side of the *Weiser* or *Weser*, encompassed with a deep Moat, (occasioned by a stream cut out of the River) round about which are divers Fortifications, and planted with Ordinance. Nigh unto this Town is the Mountain called also *Hamelen*, unto which the *Pyd Piper* (as they call him) led the Children of *Halberstadt*, where they all sunk, and were never more seen. But of this Story more hereafter, when we come to *Transylvania*, or *Wolfsenbuttel*, where the Duke doth keep his Court. For though *Brunswick* giveth him his Title, yet will it not yield him any Obedience, but reputeth it self amongst the *Hanse* Towns; for which cause there have been great Wars between the Dukes and the Citizens. 10. *Halberstadt*, a Bishop's See, the late Bishop (or Administrator of the Bishopric) being *Christian* Duke of *Brunswick*, that noble young Soldier, who had yowed his life and fortune to the service of *Elizabeth* Queen of *Bohemia*, his Cousin-german; created by King *James* one of the Knights of the Garter. A Bishopric of great Revenue, and a very large Territory, since the alteration of Religion, given with the Title of Administrator to the Sons of *Brunswick*; but now, by the Conclusions at *Munster*, assigned over to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, with the Title of Prince of *Halberstadt*, the Family of *Brunswick* being to be recompensed with an alternate Succession in the Bishopric of *Osnabrugge*, and some other additions. 11. *Hersfeld*, the Seat sometimes of the old *Palatines* of Saxony, but not else observable. 12. *Amelungsbame*, another Town of the said *Palatines*, by one of which, called *Sigefridus*, it was beautified with a very fair Abbey; the principal Towns (in those days) of this *Palatinate*, which, bordering on that part of the *Thuringians* which is now called *Hassia*, was taken in by *Herman*, one of the Landgraves of that Country, on the Persecution of Duke *Henry* named the Lion; but on the failure of his Line, recovered for the most part by the Dukes of *Brunswick*, the right Heirs of *Henry*.

The Dukedom of *LUNENBURG* hath on the East the Diocese of *Magdeburg*, on the West the Diocese of *Bremen* and part of *Westphalia*, on the North the *Elbe*, and on the South the Dukedom of *Brunswick*. So called from *Lunenbourg* the chief City, once the Seat of the Dukes.

Places of most observation in it are, 1. *Lunenbourg* it self, situate on the River *Elmenaw*, an Imperial City, and one of the principal of the *Hanse*; so called from the Moon here worshipped in the times of Idolatry. Of a round form it is, and seated in a pleasant Valley, but with Mountains near it: on one of which, called *Calberg*, is a very strong Castle, of right belonging to the Duke, but in the power of the Citizens, who without this Fort could not be masters of their Liberties. The walls about it are of Earth, high and broad, and the Ditches deep: the Buildings generally fair, (for the most part of brick) the chief whereof is the Common-Council-House; the Streets broad and long, with two spacious Market-places, but of no very pleasing smell: the whole about a mile and an half in length, half a mile in breadth, containing six Parish-Churches. But the thing most considerable in it is the Fountain of Salt, the greatest riches of this City) and the House in which the Salt is boiled, containing 52 Rooms, and in each Room 8 Leadens Pans, in which are boiled daily 8 Tuns of Salt, every Tun being sold for 8 *Flemish* shillings, bought by the *Hamburgers*, *Lubeckers*, and other Merchants; some part of the profits of it belonging to the Duke, some to the City, the rest to the Adventurers who employ their Stocks on it. 2. *Celle*, the Seat of the Duke of *Lunenbourg*. 3. *Gethern*, of no great

signes or estimation, but for a strong Castle of the Dukes. 4. *Oldendorf*, situate betwixt the *Fenaw* and the River *Elbe*, memorable for the great Battle fought near unto it, Anno 1633, betwixt the Imperialists and the *Swedes*, the honour and benefit whereof fell unto the *Swedes*, who killed upon the place 5000 of the Enemy, besides such as were found dead in the fields and high-ways, all covered over with dead bodies, took 1500 of them prisoners, and got into their hands 13 pieces of Ordinance, good store of Ammunition, and three Mules laden with Silver for the pay of the Army: the reputation of this Victory drawing in *Hamelen* and other places of importance which stood out before. 5. *Verden*, an Episcopal See, but made a Lay-see, as most other Bishoprics amongst the *Lutherans*; the Profits thereof being received commonly by a Son of *Denmark* with the Title of Administrator, and lastly, by the Treaty of *Munster* appropriated for ever to the Crown of *Sweden*, the Kings whereof to be entailed Dukes of *Verden*, 6. *Rodenburg*, the chief Seat of the Bishops of *Verden*.

The ancient Inhabitants of these Dukedom were the *Dugubini* of *Tacitus*, with some parts of the *Chancis* and *Chersini*: the last of most fame for the Blow they gave to *Quintilius Varus*, Lieutenant in Germany after *Drusus* for *Augustus Caesar*, who, behaving himself with great Insolency towards the Natives, was set upon by these *Chersini* and their Confederates, under the Conduct of *Arminius*, a great Prince amongst them; himself slain, and his whole Army, consisting of three Legions, miserably cut off and desperately used: which Loss, and the Shame thereof, so distracted the Emperor, (not formerly accustomed to the like Misfortunes) that he was many times obliged to tear his Beard, knock his Head against the Posts and cry out in the bitterness of his Passion, *Redde mihi Legiones, Quintili Varus*. Having long time after this maintained their Liberty, (for the *Romans* kept themselves from that time forwards on the French side of the *Rhene*) they were at last subdued by the Saxons, continuing part of that great Dukedom till the time of the 3 *Othos*, Emperours of the *Romans* and Dukes of Saxony; who, looking on the Empire as a State of Inheritance, diminished both the Grandeur and Revenue of their ancient Patrimony, partly by the Donation or Endowment of many Bishoprics, and partly by the creation of many petty Seigniorities to be hidden under them as chief Lords of all. Amongst which that of *Lunenbourg* was none of the least, continuing as a State distinct, till such time as *Bernard* Lord of *Lunenbourg* was by the Emperor *Otho* the third made Duke of Saxony, and created the first Duke-Elector, whereby again it was united to the rest of that Dukedom, the greatest part whereof he held in his actual possession, together with a Superiourity or Jurisdiction over all the residue, (the great Bishoprics excepted only) which had been parcelled out, as before is said; and it continued thus united till the Proscription of *Henry*, firmament the Lion, spoken of before, whose Reconciliation being made by means of *Henry* the second of England, whole Daughter *Maud* he had formerly married, the Emperor *Barbarossa* restored to him again the Cities of *Brunswick* and *Lunenbourg*, with their several Territories, of which his two Sons *Henry* and *William* were first created Earls, then Dukes, the one of *Brunswick*, and the other of *Lunenbourg*, by the Emperor *Frederick* the second. Which Honours and Estates do still remain unto their Posterity. Before I come to the Successions of these Princes, I shall leave to speak of the Original of the *Guelphian* Family, Dukes at the same time of *Bavaria* and Saxony; of which they are at this time the sole remainder. A Family derived from one *Guelphus*, (whence it had the name) the



Son of *Ifenberdu*, Earl of *Altorf* in *Schwaben*; whose Wife, called *fermintrudis*, having accused a poor woman of Adultery and caused her to be grievously punished for having 12 Children at a Birth, was afterwards delivered of the like number, and all of them Sons. Her Husband being absent at the time of her Delivery, the Commanded the Nurse to kill a 11 of them; fearing, it seems, the like shame and punishment as by her infatigation was inflicted on the other Woman. The Nurse going to perform this ungodly command was met by the old Earl then returning homewards; who asked her what she had in her Apron. She made answer, Whelps. He desired to see them: she denied him. Angry at this refusal, he opened her Apron, and there found eleven of his own Sons, pretty sweet Babes, and of most promising Countenances. Examining the matter, he found out the truth, and joining the old Trot to be secret in it, he put the Children out to Nurse. Six years expired, the Earl invited to a Feast most of his own and his Ladies Kindred, and attiring the young Boys all alike, presented them unto their Mother, who suspecting, by the number of them, what the matter was, confessed her offence, is pardoned by the good old Earl, and carefully educates her children: whom the Father commanded to be called by the name of *Guelphs*, alluding to the Whelps or Puppies which the Nurse told him she had in her Apron. From the eldest of these *Guelphs* or *Guelphs* succeeded that *Henry-Guelph*, Son of *Robert* Earl of *Altorf*, whom *Conrade* the second made Duke of *Bavaria*; many of whose posterity enjoyed that Dukedom: increased at last by the addition of the Dukedom of *Saxony*; in the person of Duke *Henry* firmated the Proud, Father of *Henry* called the Lion, and Grandfather of *Henry* and *William* the first Dukes of *Brunswick* and *Lunenburg*, whose Succession followeth in this Order.

#### The Dukes of BRUNSWICK and LUNENBURG.

1. *Henry*, firmated the Lion, the last Duke of *Saxony*, and the first of this Title.

*Brunswick*, *Lunenburg*.  
1195 2. *Henry* first Earl, after Duke of *Brunswick*, 1195 3. *William*, first Earl, after Duke of *Lunenburg*.

- 1213 3. *Otho*, Son of *William*, Duke of *Lunenburg*; after the death of *Henry*, Duke of *Brunswick* also.

- 1254 4. *Albert*, Son of 1252 4. *John*, Son of *Otho*.

- 1279 5. *Albert II.* Son of 1261 5. *Otho II.* Son of *John*.

- 1318 6. *Otho II.* Son of 1330 6. *Otho III.* Son of *Albert* the 2.

- 1334 7. *Magnus*, Son of *Albert II.* on the falling of the other house, enjoyed both Estates.

- 1368 8. *Magnus II.* Son of *Magnus* the first.

- 1073 9. *Henry*, Son of *Magnus* the second.

- 1416 10. *William*, Son of *Henry*.

- 1482 11. *William II.* Son of *William*.

- 1503 12. *Henry II.* Son of *William* the second.

- 1514 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Henry* the 2.

- 1568 14. *Julius*, Son of *Henry* the 3.

- 1589 15. *Henry IV.* Son married the Lady *Elizabeth*, Sister to *Anne* Queen of England.

16. *Frederick-Ulric*, Son of *Elizabeth* of Denmark and of *Henry-Julius*.

- 1634 17. *Augustus*, Son of *Henry* Duke of *Lunenburg*, succeeded on the death of *Frederick-Ulric*, and the failure of the House of *Brunswick* in him, in this Dukedom.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother of *Ernst* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

- 1554 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Otho* the 3.

- 1532 14. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* the 3.

15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother of *Ernst* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

- 1554 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Otho* the 3.

- 1532 14. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* the 3.

15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother of *Ernst* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

- 1554 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Otho* the 3.

- 1532 14. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* the 3.

15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother of *Ernst* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

- 1554 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Otho* the 3.

- 1532 14. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* the 3.

15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother of *Ernst* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

- 1554 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Otho* the 3.

- 1532 14. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* the 3.

15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother of *Ernst* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

- 1554 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Otho* the 3.

- 1532 14. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* the 3.

15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother of *Ernst* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

- 1554 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Otho* the 3.

- 1532 14. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* the 3.

15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother of *Ernst* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

- 1554 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Otho* the 3.

- 1532 14. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* the 3.

15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother of *Ernst* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

- 1554 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Otho* the 3.

- 1532 14. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* the 3.

15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother of *Ernst* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

- 1554 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Otho* the 3.

- 1532 14. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* the 3.

15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother of *Ernst* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

- 1554 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Otho* the 3.

- 1532 14. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* the 3.

15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother of *Ernst* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

- 1554 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Otho* the 3.

- 1532 14. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* the 3.

15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother of *Ernst* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

- 1554 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Otho* the 3.

- 1532 14. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* the 3.

15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother of *Ernst* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

- 1554 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Otho* the 3.

- 1532 14. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* the 3.

15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother of *Ernst* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

- 1554 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Otho* the 3.

- 1532 14. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* the 3.

15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother of *Ernst* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

- 1554 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Otho* the 3.

- 1532 14. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* the 3.

15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother of *Ernst* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

- 1554 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Otho* the 3.

- 1532 14. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* the 3.

15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother of *Ernst* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

- 1554 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Otho* the 3.

- 1532 14. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* the 3.

15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother of *Ernst* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

- 1554 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Otho* the 3.

- 1532 14. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* the 3.

15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother of *Ernst* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

- 1554 13. *Henry III.* Son of *Otho* the 3.

- 1532 14. *Otho IV.* Son of *Henry* the 3.

15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.

- 1546 16. *Henry IV.* Son of *Ernst*.

- 1590 17. *Ernst II.* Son of *Henry* the 4.

18. *Welfgang*, the Brother

thrower and Restorer of the German Liberty. The residue of these Langtraves in their several times occur in the ensuing Catalogue of

### The Langtraves of HASSIA.

- 1263 1. *Henry of Brabant*, Son of *Henry Duke of Brabant*, and of *Sophia* his Wife, Daughter of *Lewis* the sixth, Langtrave of *Thuringia*, after a nine years War betwixt him and the Marquess of *Misra* and the Estate, and took unto himself the Title of Langtrave of *Hessen*.
- 1308 2. *Otho and John*, Sons of *Henry*.
- 1323 3. *Henry II.* and *Lewis*, Sons of *Otho*.
- 1376 4. *Herman*, the Son of *Lewis*.
- 1414 5. *Lewis II.* Son of *Herman*, surnamed the Mild.
- 1458 6. *Lewis III.* Son of *Lewis* the Mild.
7. *William*, the eldest Son of *Lewis* the third, dispossessed of his Estate by
8. *William II.* his youngest Brother.
- 1509 9. *Philip*, the famous Langtrave spoken of before, Son of *William* the second.
- 1567 10. *William III.* eldest Son of *Philip*, succeeded in one moiety of the Estate, and resided at *Cassels*, the other moiety being divided betwixt his Brethren, *Ludowick of Marburg*, and *George of Darmstadt*, Father of *Ludowick of Darmstadt* before mentioned.
- 1590 11. *Maurice*, eldest Son of *William* the third.
12. *William IV.* Son of *Maurice*, now living, 1648.

The Arms of these Langtraves are *Azure*, a Lion Barry of eight pieces, *Argent* and *Gules* crowned Or, which being properly and originally the Arms of the ancient Dukes of *Franconia*, were given by *Conradus Sadius*, Duke of *Franconia*, and Emperor to *Lewis of Orleans* at such time as he invested him in the Langtravedom of *Thuringia*: on the expiration of whose line they were challenged and born by the Langtraves of *Hassia*, as the direct Heirs of *Lewis* the 6. and his Brother *Henry*, the last male Princes of that House.

### 21. WESTPHALIA.

**WESTPHALIA** is bounded on the East with *Hassia*, *Branswick*, and part of *Lunenburgh*, on the West with the Bishoppick of *Colen*, *Cleve*, *Over-Tyffel*, *West* and *East-Friesland*, and the *German Ocean*; on the North with the *Elb*, and the Dukedom of *Holstein*; and on the South with *Westervaria*, and some part of *Hassia*.

It was thus called of the *Westphali*, a Tribe or Division of the *Saxons*, distinguished heretofore into the *Transalbinos*, inhabiting beyond the *Elb* or *Albis*, in the County of *Holstein*, now a part of *Denmark*, the *Ostphali*, betwixt the *Elb*, the Ocean, with the River of *Sala* and the *Wefer*, taking up the Bishoppicks of *Breme*, *Virden*, *Hildesheim*, *Halberstadt* and *Meydelburg*, with the Dukedoms of *Lunenburgh* and *Branswick*; the *Angriwarians*, taking up the North-west part of the modern *Westphalen*, betwixt the Bishoppick of *Breme* and the Earldom of *Oldenburg*; and finally, the *Westphali* or *Western Saxons*, inhabiting the rest of the modern *Westphalen* with the Earldoms of *Mark*, *Berg*, *Zippen*, the Seignioury of *Over-Tyffel*, and some parts of *Gelderland* and *Holland*. But the *Saxons* being subjugated by the power of the *French*, and several new Estates created out of that old Stock, the remnant of the *Westphali* and *Angriwarians* (the Bishoppick of *Breme* being added unto the account) were comprehend and united in the name of *WESTPHALIA*.

The Soil according to the several parts of it, is of dif-

ferent natures: the parts adjoining to the *Wefer* being defart and barren; those towards the Earldoms of *Mark* and *Bergen* mountainous and full of Woods; the Bishoppick of *Breme*, except towards the *Elb*, full of dry Sands Heaths and unfruitful Thickets, like the wide parts of *Windfor* Forreft betwixt *Stanes* and *Fernham*. In other parts it is exceeding plentiful of Corn, and of excellent Pasturage; stored with great plenty of wild Fruits, and (by reason of the many Woods) abundance of Acorns; with infinite Herds of Swine (which they breed up with those natural helps) of so good a relish, that a Gamon of *Westphale* Bacon is reckoned for a principal Dish at a great man's Table.

The old Inhabitants heretofore were the *Chauci majores* about *Breme*; the *Chamavi*, *Angriwarii* and *Bructri*, inhabiting about *Manfter*, *Ofsnabrug*, and so towards the Land of *Colen*; and part of the *Chefrici* (before spoken of) taking up those parts which lie nearest unto *Brinswick* and *Lunenburgh*. All of them were vanquished by *Drusus* the Son-in-Law of *Augustus*, but soon restored to their former Liberty by the great Overthrow given by the *Chefrici* and their Associates to *Quintilius Varus*. Afterwards united into one name with the *French*, they expelled the *Romans* out of *Gaul*, leaving their forsaken and ill inhabited Seats to be taken by the *Saxons*, with whom the remainders of them did incorporate themselves both in Name and Nation. Of that great Body it continued a considerable Member, (both when a Kingdom and a Dukedom) till the Proscription and Deprivation of Duke *Henry* the Lion: at what time the parts beyond the *Wefer* were usurped by *Bernard* Bishop of *Paderborn*; those betwixt the *Wefer* and the *Rhene*, by *Philip* Archbishop of *Colen*, whose Successors still hold the Title of Dukes of *Westphalen*: the Bishoppicks of *Breme*, *Manfter*, *Paderborn* and *Minden*, having been formerly endowed with goodly Territories, had some acorments also out of this Estate, every one catching hold of that which lay nearest to him. But not to make too many Subdivisions of it, we will divide it only into these two parts, viz. *Westphalen* specially so called, and 2. the Bishoppick of *Breme*.

1. In *WESTPHALIA* specially so called, which is that part heretofore which lieth next to *Cleve*, the place of most observation are, 1. *Gefke* a Town of good repute; 2. *Brala* a Village of great beauty; 3. *Arnsberg* and 4. *Fredeborch*, honoured with the Title of Prefectures. 5. *Wadenborch*; 6. *Homburg*, Lording it over fair and spacious Territories. All which with two Lordships and eight Prefectures, more dispersed from the Dukedom of *Engern* and County of *Sarland*, belonging unto the Bishoppick of *Colen*, the titular Duke of *Westphalen*, and really of *Angriwaria*, (*Engern*) as he styles himself: the Title and possession of Duke of *Engern* being acquired unto this See by *Bruno* Archbishop heretofore, Son of *Henry* the first, Emperour and King of *Germany*, firmated the Power, with the consent of *Otho* the first, his elder Brother. 7. *Mountabour*, (perhaps *Mont-Tabor*) seated in that part heretofore which is called *Westermale*; a Town of consequence, belonging to the Elector of *Triers*. 8. *Rhem*, 9. *Schamlat*, and 10. *Beckem*; reasonable good Towns; all of the Bishoppick of *Manfter*. 11. *Manfter* it self famous for the Treaty, and Conclusions made upon that Treaty for the peace of *Germany* seated upon the River *Em*, and so called from a Monastery here founded by *Charles* the great, which gave beginning to the Town; supposed to be that *Mediolanum* which *Ptolemy* placeth in this Tract. A beautiful and well fortified City, and the See of a Bishop, who is also the Temporal Lord of it famous for the woful Tragedies here acted by a lawless

crue of Anabaptists, who chose themselves a King (that famous Tailor, *John of Leyden*) whom they called King of *Sion*, as they named the City *New Jerusalem*, proclaimed a Community both of Goods and Women, cut off the heads of all that opposed their doings; and, after many fanatic and desperate actions, were by the care and industry of the Bishop and his Confederates brought to condign punishment. The Story is to be seen at large in *Sliden*, Mr. *Hooker's* Preface, and some modern Pamphlets; wherein, as in a Mirror, we may plainly see the face of the present Times. 12. *Ofsnabrug*, first built, as *Julius Cæsar* says, by the Earls of *Engern*; but neither so ancient as the one, nor of so late a standing as the others make it. Here is an Episcopal See, founded by *Charles* the Great, who gave it all the Privileges of an University, liberally endowed at the first erection of the same, and since so well improved both in Power and Patrimony, that an alternate Succession in it by the Dukes of *Brinswick*, hath been concluded on in the Treaty of *Manfter*, as a fair Compensation for the Bishoppick of *Halberstadt*, (otherwise disposed of by that Treaty) of late enjoyed wholly by that Family. 13. *Quadenburg* on the River *Hafe*. 14. *Warendorp*, and 15. *Wildenbusch*; Towns of that Bishoppick. 16. *Paderborn* an Episcopal See also, founded by *Charles* the Great at the first Conversion of the *Saxons*, more ancient than strong, yet more strong than beautiful. 17. *Ringelnsheim*, and 18. *Ofsnabrug*; belonging to the Bishop of *Paderborn*. 19. *Minden*, upon the *Wefer*, another of the Episcopal Sees founded by *Charles* the Great, and by him liberally endowed with a goodly Patrimony: converted to Lay uses since the Reformation, under colour of Administration of the Goods of the Bishoppick, and now by the Conclusions at *Manfter*, settled for ever on the Electors of *Brandenburg* with the Title of *Prince of Minden*, to *Kintlen*, a strong Town, conveniently seated on the *Wefer*, not far from *Minden*, to the Bishop whereof it doth belong.

Hitherto one would think that *Westphalen* had formerly been a part of *S. Peter's* Patrimony, belonging wholly to the Clergy; but there are some Free Cities and Secular Princes which have shares therein. As 1. *Warburg*, a neat Town, but seated on an uneven piece of ground, near the River *Dinnla*; a Town which tradeth much in good Ale, brewed here, and sold in all parts of the Country: heretofore a County of it self under the Earls heretofore, now governed in the nature of a Free Estate, and reckoned an Imperial City. 2. *Brakel*, accounted of an Imperial also. 3. *Hervorden*, a Town of good strength and note governed by its own Laws and Magistrates, under the Protection of *Colen*. 4. *Lemgo*, belonging heretofore to the Earls of *Lippe*; but by them so well privileged and enfranchised, that now it governeth it self as a Free Estate. Here is also 5. the Town and County of *Revenberg*, belonging anciently to the Dukes of *Cleve*, and now in the Right of that House to the Elector of *Brandenburg*: as also 6. the Town and County of *Lippe*, lying on the West side of the *Wefer*; the Pedigree of the Earls whereof come fetch from that *St. Marlin* who defended the *Roman* Capital again the *Gauls*, (they might as well derive it from the Geese which preferred that Capital;) others with greater modesty look no higher for it than to the time of *Charles* the Great; one of the noble Families of the ancient *Saxons*. 7. Here also stands the Town and Castle of *Arnsberg*, commanding over a large and goodly Patrimony, thereto adjoining; which being much encreased by the accession of *Sedan* in the neighbouring *Belgium*, was by the Heir-general of this House conveyed in Marriage to *Engelbert*, the 9. Earl of *Mark*, whose second Son, cal-

led *Eberhard*, (but the only one he had by this *Venter*) succeeded in his Mother's Estates and Honour; which were kept undivided, till *Eberhard*, the 6. Lord thereof of the House of *Mark*, contenting himself with the Titles and Estates of *Arnsberg*, left *Sedan* and the pieces which belonged unto it to his younger Brother *Robert*. The great Grandchild of this *Eberhard*, called also *Robert*, created the first Earl of *Arnsberg*, left his Estates and Titles to his Sister *Margaret*, married to *John Lord of Brabant*, a person of great note and power in the *Belgick* Provinces, and faithful to the last in the Cause and Quarrel of King *Philip* the 2. in which finally he lost his life, Anno 1568, leaving both his Estates and Title unto *Charles* his Son, frequently mentioned by the name of *Charles Earl of Arnsberg* in the Stories of the *Belgick* Wars, in which he was no less considerable for his eminent Valour, than his singular Fidelity to his Lord and Master. Some other Lords and Earls here are, but these most considerable: all of them Homagers of the Empire, but their Acknowledgments heretofore little more than titular; though since in danger of performing more real Services; the Emperour *Ferdinand* the 2. after the Surprise of *Polstein* and some part of *Denmark*, Anno 1627, gaining fo far upon this Country, that had not the King of *Sweden* come in so seasonably, he had made himself absolute Master of it, and by the opportunity of the situation of it on the back of the *Netherlands*, forced the United States to some great Extremities. As for the Title of Duke of *Westphalen* and *Engern*, it hath been long used (as before was said) by the Bishops of *Colen*; as also (but with better Right as to that of *Westphalen*) by the House of *Lunenburgh*, descended from the ancient Electoral Family, writing themselves in that regard Dukes of *Saxony*, *Westphalen*, and *Angriwaria* or *Engern*.

2. The Bishoppick of *BREME* lieth on the other side of the *Wefer*, extending as far as to the *Elb* and the *German Ocean*. So called of 1. *Breme*, the principal City, seated on the *Wefer*, there broad and navigable; the City by that means well traded, populous and rich, beautified with fair and even Streets, and very strongly fortified against all Invasions both by Art and Nature, the Town being so seated amongst Fens, occasioned by the Over-flowings of the River, that it may be easily drowned on all sides, to keep off an Enemy; adorned also with a spacious market-place, a fair Council-house, and a large Cathedral, the See of the Archbishop, who is the Temporal Lord of the Town and Territory. Other Towns of special note are 2. *Ofenbride*, not far from *Byeme*, from whence great quantity of Linnen is brought yearly to *England* and other places. 3. *Wruften*, on the *Wefer* also. 4. *Otterndorp*, on the River *Bolla*, not far from the fall thereof into the Ocean. 5. *Boxtebude*, on the *Elb*, not far from *Hamburg*, but on the higher side of the water. 6. *Stode*, *Stade*, or *Stadium*, seated on the River *Zwinge*, near the fall thereof into the *Elb*; accounted the ancientest Town of all *Saxony*, and one of the first which was enrolled amongst the *Haufe*, and by special Privilege had the pre-emption of all the *Rheinish* Wine that passed by them, and the Right also of Coining money. But being over-topped by the Power and Trade of *Hamburg*, (5. *Dutch* miles from it) it grew at length so poor and in such decay, that their yearly Revenues came but to 90 *l. per annum*, so that they were fain to sell their Privileges to the Town of *Hamburg*, and put themselves under the Protection of the Bishop of *Breme*. It revived again upon the coming thither of the *English* Merchants, who finding some hard measure from the *Hamburgers*, fixed their Staple hereby means whereof the Citizens in short time grew exceeding wealthy, the Buildings fair and

and beautiful, the Town strongly fortified. It is situate in a place to easily overwhelmed with water, that the people, in citation of their Strength and Security, used to have Ordinance of Stone planed over their Gates. But the late German Wars have made them fertile of their folly; when, notwithstanding their new Works, and an English Garrison under Sir Charles Morgan, they were compelled to submit themselves to the Earl of Tilly An. 1627, recovered after by the Swedes, in the course of their Victories.

As for the Bishoprick of Bremen it was first founded by Charles the Great, in the person of Willibrod an English Saxon, one of the first Preachers of the Gospel in these parts of this Country. The Town, before that time a poor Village only, being made an Archbishopric See, and the Metropolis of all the Churches of the North, quickly grew up into esteem, as the Bishop did in Power and Patrimony, till they became Lords of this Tract. It was governed since the Reformation of Religion by Lay-Bishops, or Administrators of the Rents of the Bishoprick, which under that Title they inverted to their proper use. And now of late, by the Conclusions made at Munster, is held as an Inheritance on the Crown of Sweden, to be enjoyed, together with the Bishoprick of Verden, by the Kings thereof, with the Title of Dukes of Bremen and Verden: the ancient Liberties of those Cities, formerly granted by their Bishops, being still preserved.

## 22. EAST-FRIESLAND.

EAST-FRIESLAND is bounded on the East with the River Weser, by it parted from Westphalen, on the West with the River Ems, which parteth it from Groeningen and the rest of West-Friesland, on the North with the German Ocean; and on the South with the Earldom of Marck, and part of Cleveland. So called from the Frisii, who, casting out the old Inhabitants, possessed themselves of it, and called it by their own name, Friesland: divided by the Ems, or Amisus, into the Western, spoken of amongst the Netherlands, and the Eastern or East-Friesland, in which now we are.

The nature of the Soil we shall see anon, when we come to the Subdivisions of it. The chief Rivers (besides those of 1. Ems, and 2. Weser, spoken of elsewhere) are 3. Jade, which falleth into a great Bay or Arm of the Ocean, called from hence De Jade. 4. Dollaer, on which standeth the City of Embden. 5. Delm, and 6. Honta, neighboured by Delmenhorst and Oldenburg, Towns of this Country. The whole is divided into 1. The County of Embden, or East-Friesland, properly so called; and 2. The Earldom of Oldenburg.

1. EAST-FRIESLAND specially so called hath on the West the River Ems, on the North the Ocean, on the East and South the Earldom of Oldenburg, called also the County of EMDEN, from the fair Town of Embden, the chief City of it. The Soil hereof is very fruitful both in Corn and Pasturage, sending great store of Oxen, Horses, Wool, Swine, Butter, Cheese, and all sorts of Grain, into other Countries; all of them excellent in their kind, not easily to be bettered (if equalled) in any place whatsoever. Chief Towns herein are, 1. Embden, so called from the Ems, on which it is situate. Dollaer a small River falling here into it: a noted and well-traded Town, beautified with a Haven so deep and large, that the greatest Ships with full Sail are admitted into it. The people are rich, affirmed to have 60 ships of 100 tons apiece, and 600 lesser Barks, of other ships; besides 700 Busses and Fisher-boats, maintained for the most part by their Herring-fishing on the Coasts of England. The

Buildings are generally fair, both private and publick, especially the Church, the Town Hall, and Earl's Palace. This last is a storrer and stately Castle, situate at the mouth of the Haven, and on all sides encompassed by the Sea, and yet not strong enough to preserve the Town from their due Obedience: who in the year 1595, taking advantage of the Absence of the Earl, kept him out of their Town, because he seemed not to approve the Calvinian humour; and have since governed in the nature of a Common wealth, confederate with the States of the United Provinces, for their better Establishment and support. So easily is Religion made a mask to disguise Rebellion. 2. Aurick, by some called Anseling, seated in the Islands, rich and well walled, of great repute by reason of the pleasure of Hunting, afforded very liberally in the Forests and Woods adjoining, drawing hither the Nobility and Gentry in great abundance. 3. Ejen, on the Sea-shore, which gives the Title of an Earl to the Lord thereof; as doth also, 4. Jever, situate on the West of the River Jade; but both Earls subject to the Earl of East-Friesland. 5. Uredeweg, (that is to say, the Free Village) so called from some Immunities granted by the Earls; possessed a while by those of Brunswick who fenced and garrisoned it for themselves, but in the end recovered by Eward the 2. Earl. 6. Broeck, the Seat and proper Government of the Ancestors of these Earls; from whence the parts adjoining are called Breckmarland. 7. Norden, another Prefecture or Captainship of the said Ancestors. 8. Duntorf, a strong Castle and retiring-place of the Earls. 9. Lingen, upon the Ems, a strong Town well fortified, and as well garrisoned; belonging to the King of Spain, as Vicar to the Empire over all Friesland, even to Dittmarsh and the Confines of Denmark. A Dignity procured by Maximilian, Grandfather to Charles the 5. of the Emperor Frederick the 3. in right whereof the King of Spain, as Heir of the House of Burgundy, hath some pre-eminence over Embden, in title to him since the falling off of the Belgick Provincies. More Towns of note I find not in it, but of Castles, stately Dwelling-houses, and well-built Villages, an incredible number; standing so thick, that in many places they join together: some of them being withal so large, so well peopled, and of Streets so spacious, that they may compare with many Cities in Germany. Of all which the most City-like is named Leere.

The ancient Inhabitant hereof were the Chanci, miners, described by Pliny, to be so barbarous a people, and so destitute of all necessary Provision for the life of man, that they had no drink but Rain water, preferred in great Troughs before the doors of their Cottages. They were outed or subdued by the Frisians, a neighbouring People possessing North Holland the District of Utrecht, with the Counties of Groeninge and West-Friesland, who, having once passed over the Ems, extending their Dominions as far as Denmark; governed by Kings, but intermingled with and over-powred by the Saxons, till the time of Charles the Great, by whom the last King Rodbold overcame in fight was perished to receive the Sacrament of Holy Baptism: but being told that his Friends and Kinsfolks were in Hell, because no Christians, *Nathin will I (saith he) be of that Profession, for I love to be amongst my Kindred.* After this, Friesland was a member of the French Kingdom, till the erecting of the Earldom of Holland by Charles the Bald, An. 893, at which time this Friesland on the West side of the Ems was conferred upon him; possessed, but not without much War and Bloodshed, by his Successors, the Frisians ever and anon retelling against them, and killing divers of them in the open field. Those parts of it on the other side of the Ems remained unto the German Empire: governed by Dukes,

puties, Lieutenants, and Provincial Earls, accountable to the Emperors for the Administration, till the year 1453, in which Ulrick, Governour hereof for the Emperor Frederick, having got the Town of Embden out of the hands of the Hamburgers, was made Earl of East-Friesland, transmitting the Estate and Title unto his Posterity.

## Earls of EAST-FRIESLAND.

- 1453 1. Ulrick, Son of Enno, the Son of Ewardus, Captains or Governours for the Empire in Broeck and Norden, made the first Earl of East-Friesland by the Emperor Frederick.
- 1466 2. Eward, the Son of Ulrick, who got Vredenberg from the Citizens of Brunswick.
- 1523 3. Enno, the Son of Eward, who regained Greet-ly, formerly usurped by the Dukes of Geldre.
- 1540 4. Eward II. Son of Enno, who married Katharine, Daughter to Guffavus the first of Sweden.
5. Enno II. Son of Eward the 2. and the Lady Katharine.
- 1586 6. Rodolphus Christianus, Son of Enno the 2. who, being well affected to the Lutheran Forms, (first introduced in the time of Enno the first) was by a Calvinian party grown up in Embden, dispossessed of that City, Anno 1595.
- 1608 7. Enno-Ludovicus, Son of Rodolphus-Christianus, succeeded in this Earldom on the death of his Father, and is still living, for ought I can hear unto the contrary.

The Arms of the Earls of East-Friesland are Argent, four Bendlets Azure, charged with ten Hearts Or, 4, 3, 2, 1.

2. The Earldom of OLDENBURG containeth that part of this Country which lieth on the West-side of the Weser, betwixt the Bishoprick of Munster and East-Friesland specially so called, and so extending Northwards to the German Ocean. So called from Oldenburg, the chief City of it, and the Head of this Earldom.

The Soil hereof is exceeding rich, but in Pastures specially, which breed them infinite Herds of Cattel, and furnish not this Country only, but some of their German Neighbours, and many of the more Northern Nations, with Horses, Beeves, Sheep, Swine, Butter, Cheese. Here is also good store of Pulse, Barley and Oats; plenty of Fruits, and Trees of all sorts; large Woods, and those well stored with Venison, which yield unto the Gentry the delights of Hunting. But the Air is cold and foggy in some extremity; especially in Winter, and night the Sea.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1. Oldenburg, on the River Honta, repaired, if not built, by Orbo the Great, who founded the Church of S. John Baptist. A Town of no great state or beauty; the Houses being generally of Clay, but the Castle (the Dwelling-place of the Earls) of well-hewn Stones; of an obnoxious form, with deep Ditches of water, the Town and Castle both being strongly fortified. 2. Delmenhorst, on the River Delm, a strong place and of great importance, built in the year 1247 by Orbo, Brother of Earl Christian the 2. and having been 67 years in possession of the Bishops of Munster, was suddenly surprized on Palm-Sunday morning by Anthony Earl of Oldenburg, Anno 1477, continuing ever since part of this Estate. 3. Beckenfen, on a River which falleth not far off into the great Bay or Arm of the Sea which is called De Jade. 4. Egnard. 5. Ovelgagd, both seated on a long Languet or Demy-Island betwixt the said De Jade and the River Weser, called Butiada: both taken and the last well fortified by John Earl of Oldenburg, Anno 1520, belonging formerly to the Prefecture of East-Friesland,

but never brought under the command of the Earls thereof. 6. Welferberg, the chief Town, of a spacious Territory. 7. Friedels, a strong piece on the River Jade, built by Earl Christian, one of the younger Branches of the House of Oldenburg, about the year 1400. 8. Mellum. 9. Jadelles, places of principal importance; the one on the River Jade, the other near the Ocean. Here is also within this Earldom the Province of Amersland, supposed by some to have been the Seat of the Ambroses, who accompanied the Cimbrici and Teutones in their Expedition towards the Roman Provinces, and were slain by Marins.

As for the Earls of Oldenburg, they derive themselves from Walpert, one of the Nephews of Wittikindus, the last King and first Duke of the Saxons, who having about the year 850, built a strong Castle on the Borders of Bremen, in the honour of his Wife Altheburg, (whom he dearly loved) called it Altheburgum, so called by the Latins to this day, by the Germans Oldenborch. But his Male-Issue failing in Frederick the 7. Earl, it came to one Elimar the Son of Haio, a Nobleman of the Frisian blood, who had married Richa, the Daughter of John, the fifth Earl of this Family. From him in a direct Line descended Christian or Christern, eldest Son of Theodorick, who, being fortunately advanced to the Crown of Denmark, Anno 1448, left his Estate in this Earldom (but reserving the Title, according to the fashion of Germany) to his Brother Gerrard, the better to take him off from his Pretensions to the Dukedom of Sleswick, and the Earldom of Holstein, in which he did pretend a share. The Patrimony of it was much improved by the additions of the Countries of Rostering, Ofringen, and Wangerland, all lying on the German Sea, bequeathed by the last Will and Testament of the Lady Mary, Countess of Jever in East-Friesland, to John Earl of Oldenburg, the third from Gerrard. The Succession of these Earls, in regard the Royal Line of Denmark, and by consequence of Great Britain, is descended from them, I have here subjoined in this ensuing Catalogue of.

## The Earls of OLDENBURG.

- 850 1. Walpert, of the Race of Wittikind, the first Earl of Oldenburg.
- 856 2. Theodorick, the Son of Walpert.
3. Theodorick II. the Son of Theodorick the 1.
4. Orbo, the Son of Orbo, accompanied the Emperor Henry the 2. in his Wars against the Greeks and Saracens, Anno 1007.
6. Herno, named the Glorious, Son of John.
7. Frederick, Son of Herno, fortunate in his Wars against the Frisians; the last of the Male-line of this House.
8. Elimar, the Son of Haio, a Nobleman of the Frisian blood, and of Richa his Wife, the Daughter of John the fifth Earl.
- 1120 9. Elimar II. Son to Elimar the first.
10. Christianus, or the Warlike, a professed Enemy of Henry the Lion, Duke of Saxony, from whom he took the City of Brème.
11. Maurice, the Son of Christian, an Associate of Arnolph Earl of Holstein in his Wars with Denmark.
12. Christian II. Son of Maurice.
13. John II. Son of Christian the 2.
14. John III. Son of John the 2.
15. Conrad, the Son of John the third.
16. Christian III. Son of Conrad, a Student in Germany.

len, where he was initiated into holy Orders, which he relinquished, much against the will of his brother Maurice, on the death of his Father.

17. *Theodorick*, Son of *Christian* the 3. the fifth Earl of *Delmenhorst* of this Line, which fell to him at the death of *Nicolas* Archbishop of *Breme*, descended from a younger Son of *John* the second.
- 1440 18. *Christian IV.* Son of *Theodorick*, and of *Hedwig*, Sister and Heir of *Gerrard* and *Adolphus*, Dukes of *Selwick* and Earls of *Holfstien*, elected on the commendation of his Uncle *Adolphus* to the Crown of *Denmark*, Anno 1448.
- 1448 19. *Gerrard*, the Brother of *Christian* the 4. a Prince of an unquiet spirit, always in Wars, and always worsted. He lost the Town of *Delmenhorst* to the Bishop of *Munster*.
- 1500 20. *John IV.* Son of *Gerrard*, repaired the Ruines of his Estate, and settled the Distractions of it in the time of his Father, being then in Exile, and after very much enlarged it by the reduction of *Buriana*.
- 1526 21. *Anthony*, the Son of *John* the 4. by a sudden Surprise recovered *Delmenhorst* from the Bishop of *Munster*, Anno 1547, which he strongly fortified.
- 1573 22. *John V.* Son of *Anthony*, enlarged this Earl-dom with the Provinces of *Rusfringen*, *Ossfringen*, and *Wangerland*, bequeathed to him by the last Will of the Countess of *Jeuer*, in *East-Friesland*.
23. *Anthony II.* Brother of *John* the 5. in whose life-time he was Earl of *Oldenburg* also: still living, Anno 1648, for ought I can learn unto the contrary.

And thus we see the present estate of *Germany*, distracted and divided amongst many Princes, Prelates, and Incorporated Towns, the chief of which are herein mentioned and described. But besides these there are many others of less note and smaller Territories, which yet are absolute and free: inasmuch that in one days riding a Traveller may twice or thrice meet with divers Laws and divers Coins, every Free Prince and Free City (whose Laws the Emperours are sworn to keep inviolable) having power to make what Laws and coin what Money they will. And hence, in the Confusion of Kingdoms, the King of *Spain* is said to be *Rex hominum*, because of his Subjects reasonable Obedience, the King of *France*, *Rex Asinorum*, because of their infinite Taxes and Impositions, the King of *England*, *Rex Diabolorum*, because of his Subjects often Insurrection against and Deposition of their Princes: but the Emperour of *Germany* is called *Rex Regum*, because there is such a number of *Reguli* or Free Princes which live under his Command, or rather at their own Command, (for they do even what they list) as the Emperour *Maximilian* the first well noted.

And, to say truth, the publick Government thereof is nothing less than Monarchical, the Emperour being accompanied amongst the Princes but as the chief Officer of the Empire; not reckoned of, by *Bodin* and others of our great Statists and Civilians, as an absolute Monarch, such as the King of *England*, *France* and *Spain*, are confessed to be. For the Privileges of the Free Cities being made perpetual, the great Estates Hereditary, and the Empire Eligible, the Emperours were brought at last to such low condition, as to be made accountable to the States of the Empire; who if they were perverted in their Consciences, or but think they be so, that he is likely by

his Male-administration to destroy the Empire, or that he will not hearken unto good Advice, *ab Electorum Collegio Casaræ majestati private potest*, (as my Author hath it) may be deprived by the Electors, and a more fit and able man chosen into the place, and that too, as the Emperour *Jadocus Barbatus* hath declared in one of his Constitutions, An. 1410, *sine Infidelitatis vel Rebellionis crimine*, without incurring the crimes of Treason or Disloyalty. So that the supreme Power and Majesty of the Empire seems to reside especially and contractedly in the Electoral Colledge; diffidely, in the Imperial Diets, by way of Execution, in the chamber of *Spices*, and other the supreme Courts of the several Circles. But that which makes that Body which they call the Empire, is the Assembly of the Prelates, Princes and Commissioners of the Free Cities in their Diets or Parliaments, the Emperour presiding in them: whom he that saw adorned in his Royal Robes, with the Imperial Crown and Scepter, with the Titles of *Cesar* and *Augustus* given at every word, would think that the whole *Audium* did take life from him; whereas, indeed, he hath not so much Privilege as a Negative voice, but is to put in execution final Decrees and Sanctions as these Estates assembled have thought fit to make; not able to do any act by his own Authority, which may speak him Emperour. But, on the other side, the Princes take power unto themselves of making Laws for, and imposing Taxes on, their Subjects, of raising War upon one another, or against a third; and doing many other acts of supreme Authority, which in the Emperour would be counted matter of Male-administration. Such Points as these, together with the appointing of Judges and the like chief Magistrats, (as they relate unto the Empire) are not to be concluded of but in general Diets; which may be summoned by or without the Emperour, as occasion serveth. And to this weakning of the Majesty and Power Imperial the neighboring Princes have afforded their best assistance; jealous of their own Interests and decrease of Power, if that vast Body so well limbed should be strongly jointed, and all the several Members of it united under the command of one supreme Head. Clear proof whereof we have in those solemn Leagues and Confederations made in their several times against *Charles* the fifth and the late Emperour *Ferdinand* the 2. as soon as they began to be in some possibility of settling the Imperial Majesty in its proper Splendour, and bringing down the Princes of it to a lower pitch.

As for the means by which the Empire is attained, it is, and hath of long time been, by the way of Election as before was noted. The business was first projected in the Court of *Rome* by *Gregory* the first, then Pope, who being a Native of this Country, thought it the most expedient course to continue the Imperial Title amongst those of his Nation. But whatsoever was pretended, the Design of it chiefly was to make the Emperours less powerful, and distract the *German* (whom they feared) into Parts and Factions, that so the Popes might have the better opportunity to grow great in *Italy*. And that the Emperour might be such as the Pope should like of, the matter was so ordered, that the one half of the Electors should be always of the Ecclesiasticks, who, being obnoxious to the Popes, and for the most part driving on their Interest, were very like to serve him on all occasions. The Electors only fix in number: that is to say, 1. The Archbishop of *Mentz*, Chancellor of the Empire, 2. The Archbishop of *Colen*, Chancellor of *Italy*, 3. The Archbishop of *Trier*, Chancellor of *France*, 4. The Count-Palatine of the *Rhene*, Arch-Sewer, 5. The Duke of *Saxony*, Lord Marshal, and 6. the Marquis of *Brandenburg*, Lord Chamberlain. Upon equality of Voices the Duke of *Bohemia* (now King) was to come in for a Seventh; who by Office

is to be chief Cup-bearer in all great Solemnities. For upon days of great Solemnities, as Elections, Inaugurations, the first days of the Imperial Diets, and the like to these, these Offices are performed only; and then performed in this manner following, either in person or by Proxy. Before the Palace-Gate stands an heap of Oats, so high that it reacheth to the breast of the Horse on which the Duke of *Saxony* rideth, having in his hand a silver Wand and a silver Measure, both which together are to weigh 500 Marks. The Duke, still sitting on his Horse, fill up the Measure with Oats, then ticks his Wand in the remainder of the heap, delivereth the measure of Oats unto some of his Servants who stand nearest unto him, and so attends the Emperour into the Court. The Emperour being entered and fate down at the Table, the three Spiritual Electors, standing orderly together, say the Grace before him. Then cometh the Marquis of *Brandenburg* on Horse-back also, with a Basin of Water in his hand, (the Basin being of the weight of 12 Marks of Silver) and a fine clean Towel on his Arm; which, a lightening from his Horse, he holds to the Emperour till he wash. Next comes the Palatine of the *Rhene* mounted on his Horse, with four Silver Platters full of Meat, every one of the weight of three Marks of Silver, which, descending from his Horse, after due reverence made, he carrieth and placeth on the Table. And finally the Duke (or King) of *Bohemia*, entering the great Hall on Horse-back as the others did, with a Napkin on his Arm, and a covered Cup in his Hand of the weight of 12 Marks in Silver, alighteth from his Horse, and presenteth the Cup unto the Emperour. But we must know, that of late times these Offices are seldom or never performed by the Electors in their own persons. It is enough if they tend their Ambassadors, or substitute some one or other of the Emperours Court to do it for them.

The Election is usually celebrated at *Frankford* on the *Main*, to which place the Electors or their Deputies are to make repair on the day appointed by the Archbishop of *Mentz*, whose Office it is (as being Chancellor of the Empire) to issue out the Summons for this Assembly. In their passage unto *Frankford* they are to be sufficiently guarded by every Prince through whose Territories or Dominions they are to travel; their Attendants not to exceed the number of 200 Horse, of which 50 only to be armed. When they are met, they go into *S. Bartholomew's* Church, the most Capacious of that City; where, after the High-Mass is said, the three Spiritual Electors laying their Hands upon their Breasts, and the Temporal Princes on the Book, make Oath to chuse a fit Temporal Head for the People of Christendom. Upon equality of Voices, as it sometimes happeneth, the *Bohemians* hath the casting Voice, and concludes the business. If in the space of 30 days they have not agreed upon a man, then must they have no other allowance but of Bread and Water, nor be suffered to go out of the City, till that necessity compelleth them unto some Agreement. Which being at the last resolved on, and declared accordingly, the Prince so elected is presently saluted by the Title of *King of the Romans*; the Title of Emperour being not properly to be given unto him, until he have received the Imperial Crown at the hands of the Pope: though since the time of *Charles* the fifth, without any such trouble to themselves or the Popes of *Rome*, the Title of both Emperour and Imperial Majesty is usually conferred upon them from their first Election. The Election being finished, and signified to the party chosen, the Inauguration was held anciently at three several places: viz. 1. at *Aginsburg*, or *Augsburg*, in the Land of *Swabia*, where he received the Silver Crown, for the Kingdom of *Germany*, 2. at *Millain*, by the Archbishop whereof he was crowned with the Iron

Crown, for *Lombardy*, for the Realm of *Italy*, 3. at *Rome*, where, at the hands of the Pope himself, he was crowned with a Golden Crown, for the *Roman* Empire. But since, those Journeys unto *Rome* and *Milain* have been long laid by, the Emperours holding their Elections to be strong enough to make good their Title to that Dignity, being merely titular, and their Inauguration at *Augsburg* as effectual as if they had also visited the two other Cities. The form of which Elections, the Privileges of the Electors, and other fundamental Constitutions of the *German* Empire, we find summed up together in the Golden Bull of *Charles* the 4. by him first promulgated, An. 1359. But we must know that, since the publishing of that Bull, the business of Election hath received some change as to the number and the persons of the Parties interested. For, it pleased the Emperour *Ferdinand* the 2. on the Proclamation of *Frederick* the first Elector *Palatine*, to transfer the Electoral Dignity, with the Office of *Arch-bishop*, or Arch-Sewer, from that House to the Duke of *Bavaria*, the Title of Elector of *Bavaria*, with all the Powers and Privileges which belonged unto it, to be inrolled upon him and his Heirs for ever. Which action of the Emperour being protested against by some of the Electors in favour of the *Palatine* Family, and in due care unto themselves, in not admitting such a dangerous precedent for the time to come, it was at last concluded and agreed on by the Pacification made at *Munster*, Anno 1648, That the Duke of *Bavaria* and his Heirs enjoying the said Electoral Dignity with the *Upper Palatinate*, according to the Translation of it from the *Palatine* Family spoken of before; an Eighth Electorate should be added to the former number, to be enjoyed together with the *Lower Palatinate* by *Charles Ludowick*, the now Prince Elector *Palatine*, and his Heirs, who also, on the failure of the Line of *Bavaria* are to be repossessed of their ancient Rights, the Title of *Arch-Treasure* being given unto them at the present instead of that of *Arch-bishop*, or Arch-Sewer, which they had before.

Now as a step unto the Empire, and for the better assurance of the Imperial Dignity to the *Austrian* Family, it was cunningly projected by *Charles* the fifth, (having received the Imperial Crown from Pope *Clement* the 7.) that his Brother *Ferdinand* should be chosen King of the *Romans*; whilst himself was living, and by that means be certain of the Empire after his decease. Which Policy being followed by all his Successors, the Title of *Rex Romanorum*, or King of the *Romans*, is grown to be the Title of the Heir apparent, or designed Successor, in the present Empire of the *German*; as that of *Cesar* was from the time of *Adrian*, in the Empire of the ancient *Romans*. Inasmuch as *Rex Romanorum* is now defined to be one who is already far elapsed in the Empire, that on the Death, Deposition, or Renunciation of the present Emperour, he is immediately to succeed. And so accordingly it hath happened since this Act of *Charles*; who though he laboured under-hand to leave the Empire unto *Philip* his Son and Heir, whom he found capable enough of so high an Honour, yet he could not do it: it being thought by many understanding men, that on notice of this under-hand practice, his Brother *Ferdinand*, who had the like mind to transfuse the Empire to his own Posterity, did secretly lend Duke *Maurice* his helping hand to drive him out of *Germany*, as in brief he did. As for the reasons, or, to say better, the pretences, upon which *Charles* did institute this *Rex Romanorum*, (for questionless the true reason of it was to perpetuate the Empire in the *Austrian* Family) they were these that follow. 1. Because that, having the command of many Nations, he could not always personally attend the Affairs of *Germany*. 2. The troubled Estate of Christendom, of the Empire especially,

occasioned by the Preachings and Works of Luther. 3. The late rural War raised by the Boors of that Country, on the coming out of these new Doctrines, and not yet thoroughly extinct. 4. The violent power of the Turk, who, by his Conquest of a great part of Hungary, was grown too near a neighbour to them. And 5. the imminent Disobedience in all parts of the Empire. All which conjunctly seemed to require some Prince both of Power and Title to assist him in the bearing of so great a Burthen. And by these and the like suggestions he effected his Design herein, though thereby he changed in a manner the Imperial Style. For whereas the first Emperours of the House of Charles the Great were Emperours of the Romans, and Kings of Germany; the later Emperours of the House of Charles the fifth may not improperly be called Emperours of Germany, and Kings of the Romans. It is true indeed, that the wife and understanding Duke of Saxony saw farther through these Pretences than the rest of the Electors either did or would, and that the main Plot was no other, than to make Germany (as Galba said in his Oration unto Piso of the Empire of Rome) *unus quasi Familia Hereditatem*, hereditary in times following to the House of Austria; and thereupon did openly deny his suffrage to the said Election. But finding that the major part of the Electors were resolved upon it, he moved for an Act to pass, prohibiting the continuance of the Imperial Title in any one Family more than three Successions. In which not able to prevail, (as the Game was played) he left the Electors to themselves, by whom Ferdinand was chosen King of the Romans; and not long after crowned at Aids with the usual Rites, Jan. 16. An. 1531. The same course was followed by this Ferdinand, when possessed of the Empire, in causing his Son Maximilian to be elected Rex Romanorum, whilst himself was living; and so by all the rest since then, as before is said.

As for the Forces of the Empire, for by that name we are to measure the Abilities and Power of Germany, we may discern them by those Levies which have been raised upon particular occasions, or by the joint consent of the Free Estates assembled in the Imperial Diets. First, for particular Levies made by private persons, we find 12000 Foot and 8000 Horse raised by the Prince Palatine of Zweibruck, for Aid of the French Hugonots against their King; and, on the other side, no fewer than 7000 Horse, under the Conduct of the Duke of Anhalt and the Earl of Mansfield, for the service of that King against the Hugonots. And as for Levies made by consent of the States, we find that Charles the 5. had under his Ensigns at Vienna, 90000 Foot, and 15000 Horse; Maximilian the 2. at Javarin in Hungary, 24000 Horse, and full 100000 Foot; and finally, that in the War betwixt Charles the 5. and the Protestant Princes, there were no less than 150000 men on both sides; which numbers no one Country in Europe is able to equal. In a word, it is generally conceived that the Empire is able to raise 200000 Horse and Foot, with Arms, Cannon, and Ammunition of all sorts proportionable; which the instances before brought do most plainly evidence.

Touching the Revenues of the Empire, I find them estimated by *Boterus*, and some others since, at seven millions of Crowes yearly. Which may be true enough, taking the Kingdoms of Hungary and Bohemia with the hereditary Estates of Austria into the account. But since they are not so united unto the Empire but they may at sometime or other be disjoined again, no reason they should come into the reckoning, unless it be as the Revenue of the Emperour, though not of the Empire. But as for the Revenue of the Empire it self, taken abstractedly from the personal and Patrimonial Estate of the Emperour, who-soever he be, it can amount to no such sum: the Tribute paid by the Free or Imperial Cities (at least 60 in number) amounting to no more per ann. than 15000 Florens, or 1500 l. English: and what is that, but like a Peppercorn for a Quit-rent, in that mighty Continent? By this we may conjecture what the rest may come to. And though, in the way of saving Charges, (which may be reckoned as a part of his Income also) the Princes and Free Cities be bound to aid him in the time of War against the Turk with 3842 Horse, and 16200 Foot, which he may challenge without troubling the Diets for it: yet War is such a great devourer, that if the Diets do not grant him greater helps, he is like to be but a sorry Gainer by the undertaking; besides the smallness of those Forces considered with the numbers they are able to raise, and the puissance of the enemy whom they are to encounter.

Finally, for the Arms of the Empire, they are *Sola*, an Eagle displayed with two Heads *Saturum* armed and crowned *Mars*: the two Heads signifying (as some think) the Eastern and the Western Empires. *Cespian*, a leamed German, conceives rather that these Arms are two Eagles conjoined, and not one Eagle with two Heads: and that they were taken up by the German Nation in memory of the three Legions of *Quintilius Varus* discomfited by them; at what time they seized on two of the Roman Eagles, (the Military Ensign of that People) the third being cast into the Fens by the Standard-bearer, but whether it be one or two, certain it is that the one Head is quite pulled off, and the whole Body quite stripped of all its Feathers; the Imperial Dignity being little more than titular, depouled and stripped of all authority appearing to it.

There are in Germany.

Archbishops 6. Bishops 34.

Universities 21. viz.

- |                       |                         |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. <i>Colen.</i>      | 8. <i>Herbon.</i>       | 15. <i>Francford.</i>   |
| 2. <i>Triers.</i>     | 9. <i>Hanaw.</i>        | 16. <i>Ryßsch.</i>      |
| 3. <i>Mentz.</i>      | 10. <i>Wirttenberg.</i> | 17. <i>Griffind.</i>    |
| 4. <i>Heidelberg.</i> | 11. <i>Erlburg.</i>     | 18. <i>Jene.</i>        |
| 5. <i>Tubingen.</i>   | 12. <i>Altorff.</i>     | 19. <i>Leipsick.</i>    |
| 6. <i>Ingolstadt.</i> | 13. <i>Prague.</i>      | 20. <i>Wirttenberg.</i> |
| 7. <i>Vienne.</i>     | 14. <i>Olmutz.</i>      | 21. <i>Munpurg.</i>     |

And so much for Germany.

## OF DENMARK.

THE Kingdom of DENMARK, or DANEMARK, reckoning in the Additions of the Dukedom of Holstein and the great Continent of Norway, with the Isles thereof, now all united and incorporated into one Estate, is bounded on the East with the *Baltick* Sea, and some part of Sweden, on the West with the main Western Ocean, on the North-East with a part of Sweden, full North with the main Frozen Seas, and on the South with Germany, from which it is divided on the South-west by the River *Albit*, and on the South-east by the *Trave*, a little *Isthmus* or Neck of Land uniting it to that Continent.

It took this name from the *Danes*, of long time the Inhabitants and Possessors of it; so called *quasi Danorum Tractus*, *sive Regio*, (as *Mercator* hath it), because the Country of that People; but rather *quasi Danorum limnes*, the Bounds or Marches of the *Danes*, bordering down upon the *Dutch*, from whom it hath the name of *Danemarch*.

As for the Situation of it in regard of the Heavens, it lieth partly in the Northern temperate Zone, and partly within the Arctic Circle; extending from the middle Parallel of the tenth Climate, or 55. Degree of Latitude, where it joyneth with Germany, as far as the 71. Degree, where it hath no other bound but the Frozen Ocean. By which account, the longest Day in the most Southern parts hereof is 17 hours and a quarter: but in the parts extremely North, they have no Night for two whole months, three weeks, one day, and some even hours over; as on the other side, no Day for the like quantity of time, when the Sun is most remote from them, in the other *Tropic*. The Air hereof by consequence must be sharp and bitter, even in the very warmest places. Of which, and of the nature of the Soil, we shall speak more punctually in the Description and Survey of the several Parts.

The Inhabitants generally are of good Stature, clear of Complexion, well coloured, for the most part healthful and long-lived; for though they eat and drink beyond measure, they have good Digestions. In Manners they are very severe, crafty and pious in the managing of their Affairs, but proud and wilful, and (as the Historian said of another person) *Omnia quæ dixerant fecerant*; *Offensatores*, great Vaunters of whatsoever they do or say, highly opinionated of their own Actions, and peremptory in maintaining their own Opinions: religious, observers of their Words and Contracts, and strict in executing Justice; especially in punishing of Thieves and Pirates. Such of them as do follow the Wars prove reasonable good Souldiers, both by Sea and Land; but fitter for the Sea, than Field service. The Magistrats are wise rather by experience than study, though they love Learning, and easily attain all Languages which they give their minds to. The old men are covetous, the young men thrifty, and the Merchant ambitious. The Nobility and Gentry are generally of as ancient Families as most in Christendom; here being some of those Houses still remaining which were present at the Pacification made betwixt Charles the Great and Hemmingus King of the *Danes*; and, which adds much unto their Honour, they keep

their Blood unmixed with Marriages with the Vulgar sort; and reckon it for an high disgrace to change their Arms, or make any addition thereto. The Women are fair, discreet, and courteous, and knew well how to govern their Households; exceeding fruitful in bearing of Children, but delivered of them with great difficulty. Both Sexes speak the *Dutch*, or *German*, common (but with some difference in the pronunciation) to all the Northern Nations in Norway and Sweithland.

Of no great note for men of Learning in the former time, it hath been fortunate in these last for 1. *Tycho Brabe*, that renowned Astronomer; 2. *Hemmingus*, a well-known Divine; 3. *Bartholinus*, a Physician and Philosopher of good esteem; 4. *John Cluverus*, the Historian, &c. More famous for great Captains and men of War, especially for 1. *Gustaf*, or *Gorricus*, who settled the Government of this Kingdom, and endangered the great Realm of France. 2. *Sveno*, and 3. *Canutus*, the fortunate Conquerors of England. 4. *Waldemar* the 3. a right valiant Prince; but successful in his Wars against the *Hanse*-Towns, then newly entred into League. 5. *Christiern* the II. a great Commander in the Wars, but of greater Cruelty. 6. *Christiern* the IV. little inferior unto many of his Predecessors. To whom we may subjoin though of different Sex) *Q. Margaret*, the *Semiramis* of these Northern Countries; a Lady of a masculine Spirit, and not more fortunate than daring in all Enterprizes, as the declared in the Conquest of Sweithland, and Subjection of Norway, by her united to this Crown.

The Christian Faith was first preached to those of *Holstein* (the next-neighbouring Country unto Germany) by *S. Angaricus*, Bishop of *Bremen*, the general Apostle of those Northern parts, in the year 826, *Lewis* the Godly then being Emperour of the West. In whose time *Harald King* of Denmark, being expelled his Kingdoms by the Sons of *Godfrey* or *Getricus*, was baptised at *Mentz*, with a great number of that people which attended on him, by the hands of *Ekko* Archbishop of *Rhemes*, employed by the Emperour in that service; the Conversion of the whole Nation following not long after, by the power and diligence of the Emperour *Oibo* the first assigned by the Ministry of one *Poppo* the first Bishop of *Arihusen*; *Sveno*, or *Swain*, then reigning amongst the *Danes*. The *Norwegians* came not in till after, converted in the reign of *Olaf* the third, Anno 1055, or thereabouts the English assisting in the work, and the good King so zealous in it, that he was canonized a Saint after his decease. Relapsing for the most part to their ancient Gentilism, they were finally regained unto Christianity by the means of Pope *Adrian* the fourth, an English-man, about the year 1156, before his assuming of the Popedom called *Nicolaus Breakpear*. But by whomsoever first converted, the Popes of Rome would needs pretend some Power and Jurisdiction over them. Which when they began to exercise with too much Authority, *Waldemar* the third is said to have returned this Answer, *Naturam habemus à Deo, Regnum à Subditis, Divitiarum à Parentibus, Religionem à Romana Ecclesia; quam, si nobis invides, remociamus per presentes*: that is to say, We hold our Life from God,





maria and Jutland, have that it hath an Outlet into the Baltic on the North West of Wagerland. Chief places in it are, 1. *Kiel*, (*Choloniun* in *Latine*) seated upon a navigable Arm of the *Baltick* Sea, parting *Wagerland* from the Dukedom of *Sleswick*: a Town well traded, and having a capacious Haven, seldom without good Trade of Shipping from *Germany*, *Liefland*, *Sweden*, and the rest of *Denmark*. 2. *Rensborg*, the best fortified piece in all *Denmark*. 3. *Niemunster*, on the North west of the *Stær*, not far from the lake of *St.* 4. *Wilsen*, on a small River so called. 5. *Bransfede*, 6. *Borholm*, not much observable, but for a Monastery in which *Henry* one of the Earls hereof (of a younger House) turned Monk and died, Anno 1241.

The ancient Inhabitants of this and the other three were the *Saxons*, *Sigolans*, and *Subalings*, placed here by *Prology*; whom I conceive to be no other than some Tribes of the *Cimbri* of whom this *Chorjone* took name: the two last of which passing into the name of the first, and in the Declination of the *Roman* Empire marching over the *Elb*, and spreading all along the Coasts of the *German* Ocean, molested with their Piracies and Depredations, the Shores of *Britannia*, known by that means unto the *Britans*, they were invited to assist them against the *Scots* and *Picts*. Which action, with the Aid of the *Frisians* and *Angli* (Inhabitants together with them of the *Cimbri*, *Cherjone*) they performed so honestly, as to make themselves Masters of the best part of the Island. Such as remained behind, not being able to defend their own against the *Slaves*, were fain to quit the parts lying next to *Mecklenburg*; which, being peopled by the *Vagri*, took the name of *Wagerland*. But the *Saxons* being vanquished by *Charles* the Great, these on the North-side of the *Elb* became a part of the great Dukedom of *Saxony*, and so continued till dismembered by *Lotharius*, both Duke and Emperor, who gave the proper *Holf* (or *Holftein* specially so called) with the Province of *Stormaria* to *Adolph* Earl of *Schaumburg*, who had deserved well of him in his Wars, with the Title of Earl of *Holftein*, An. 1114. By *Adolph* the second, his Successor, it was settled in this House, who having made a full Conquest of it, caused it to be planted with Colonies of *Dutch* or *German* from *Holland*, *Westphalen*, and *Friesland*, by which means the name of *Slaves* was at last worn out. By *Gerrard* the fifth the Dukedom of *Sleswick* was also added: conferred upon him by the bounty of *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark*, in whose Wars he served. *Adolph* the last Earl of this House dying without Issue, the whole Estate fell on *Christiern*, Son of *Theodorick* Earl of *Oldenburg*, and of *Hednigis* his Wife, Sister and Heir to *Adolph* before mentioned, who, being called to the Crown of *Denmark* accompanied with his Brother *Gerrard* for the sum of 50000 Marks; and having gotten *Dimmarf* also of the Emperor *Frederick* the third, prevailed so far as to have the whole Estate erected into a Dukedom, Anno 1214, to be held by him and his Successors of the Sacred Empire. Which said, we will next add the Catalogue of

#### The Earls and Dukes of HOLSTEIN.

- 1114 1. *Adolph* of *Schaumburg*, by *Lotharius*, Emperor and Duke of *Saxony*, made the first Earl of *Holftein*.  
1137 2. *Adolph* II. Son of *Adolph* the first.  
1164 3. *Adolph* III. Son of *Adolph* the 2. vanquished by *Canutus* King of the *Danes*, lost himself and his Country.  
1232 4. *Adolph* IV. in his Fathers life-time recovered his Estate from *Waldemar* the Successor of *Canutus*, overcome by him in a well fought Battle, Anno 1226, his Father then Prisoner to the *Danes*.

1261 5. *Gerrard*, the 2. Son of *Adolph* the fourth, his elder Brother *John* making choice of *Wagerland* succeeded in *Holftein*.

1281 6. *Henry* the Son of *Gerrard*, the first that set up a Custom-house at *Hamburg*, for receipt of his Tolls and Taxes.

1310 7. *Gerrard* II. Son of *Henry*, slain treacherously by the *Danes*.

1339 8. *Henry* II. Son of *Gerrard* the second.  
1381 9. *Gerrard* III. Son of *Henry* the second, created the first Duke of *Sleswick* by Queen *Margaret* of *Denmark*.

1404 10. *Henry* III. Son of *Gerrard* the third.  
1427 11. *Adolph* V. commonly called the XII. (those of the younger Houses being reckoned in the last Earl of this House).

1459 12. *Christiern* of *Oldenburg*, King of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*, Son of *Theodorick* Earl of *Oldenburg*, and of his Wife *Hednigis*, Sister of *Henry* and *Adolph* the two last Earls, succeeded in the Earldom of *Holftein*, enlarged with the addition of *Dimmarf*, and erected into a Dukedom by the Emperor *Frederick* the third, Anno 1474. But seeing that *Ordo* Earl of *Schaumburg* pretended a Right unto the whole, as the next Heir-male, according to the Constitutions of the Empire, of which it was holden; and *Gerrard* the Brother of *Christiern* put in for his Share, according to the ill Custom of *Germany*, of which it was then composed part: he was fain to buy his peace of both, giving to *Ordo* 43000 *Florens* in ready money, with the Towns of *Pinnenburg*, *Haltzburg*, and *Bransfede*, the ancient possessions of the Earls of *Schaumburg* and 50000 Marks to his Brother *Gerrard*, besides his whole Interdict in the Earldom of *Oldenburg*, as before was said. By this means *Holftein* was united to the Crown of *Denmark* the Kings thereof, as Dukes of *Holftein*, being counted Princes of the Empire; but neither send unto the Diet, nor contribute any thing at all to the publick Taxes, nor acknowledge any kind of Subjection to it more than merely titular. Only it was ordained at the request of the Subjects, when first they were incorporated into that Kingdom, that in case of any grievance or unjust sentence in the ordinary Courts of Justice, wherein they found no remedy in the supreme Council of the Province, it might be lawful for them to appeal to the Imperial Chamber, as they had done formerly. Which as it was granted to content them at the present time, on sufficient Caution, so hath it seldom or never been put in practice; the very Grant or Privilege (if such it were) being in a manner worn out of memory. But since this uniting of these two Estates, the Title of Duke of *Holftein* and a good part of the Country was given unto *Adolphus* Brother of *Christiern* the 2. (created by Queen *Elizabeth* one of the Knights of the Garter, Anno 1560) who governed it interchangeably with the King in their several turns: after whose death, and the death of all his Children dying without Issue-male, the Title of it was conferred on *Ulrich*, Son of *Frederick* the second, and Brother of *Christiern* the fourth, created Knight of the Garter by King *James*, Anno 1605, in whose posterity it remains till this present time.

#### 2. The Kingdom of DENMARK.

IN which 1. *JUTLAND* containeth all the rest of the *Cimbri* *Cherjone*, divided from the Dukedom of *Holftein* by the River *Eyder*, the ancient Boundary betwixt the *Saxons* and the *Danes*; but principally by a long Trench and Wall from one Sea to the other, of great breadth, that a Chariot or two Horse-men a-bread might ride upon it. First built in imitation of

of the *Pis* Wall in *England*, by *Godfrey* King of *Denmark*, in the time of *Charles* the Great; either to hinder the daily Incursions of the *Saxons*, as some, or to stop the current of the Victories of the said *Charles*, as others think. The Tract thereof, still very easie to be seen, is called *Dennuswerk* (or the *Danes Work*) to this very day.

It was so called from the *Frisians*, who, together with the *Angli* and neighbouring *Saxons*, made a Conquest of the best part of *Britain*. The Country fo abounded in Cattel, that it sendeth yearly into *Germany* 50000 Oxen, besides great store of Butter, Cheese, Tallow, Hides, and Horses: divided commonly into *North Jutland*, and *South Jutland*, or *Jutland* specially so called, and the Dukedom of *Sleswick*.

*SOUTH JUTLAND*, or the Dukedom of *SLESWICK*, is that part of the *Cimbrian Cherjone*, which lies next to *Holftein*; called *South Jutland*, from the Southern situation of it; and *Sleswick*, from the chief Town of it, and the Head of this Dukedom. The Country, for the most part, is plain, little felled with Mountains; the Fields whereof do interchangeably yield both *Fish* and *Corn*. For during one three years they sow it constantly, and reap the Fruits of it, and for the next three let the Pools overflow the Land, to the end the *Fish* may eat up the Grass, (whom they catch as often as they please) and the Mud which is left behind enrich the Soil. But besides their Pools, they have also on the *Baltick* Shores many goodly Bays; not only commodious for Merchants, but well stored with *Fish*, and with *Salmons* especially.

Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Flensborg*, seated among very high Mountains on the Shore of the *Baltick* Sea, where there is a Port so deep, so safe, and so commodious, that all the Inhabitants thereof in a manner may lade and unlade their Ships close to their houses. 2. *Holsten*, or *Holftein*, upon the *German* Ocean, not far from the mouth of the River *Eyder*. 3. *Haderslev*, a Bishop's See, if not rather some Town or Manor of the Bishop's of *Sleswick*, situate on a navigable In-let of the *Baltick* Sea, wherewith it is almost encompassed; beautified with the fair Castle of *Hamburg*, begun by *John* the eldest Son of King *Christiern* the first, then Duke of *Holftein*, but finished by *Frederick* the second, King of *Denmark*; 4. *Lundenberg*, in the Peninsula called *Eyderfeste*, over against *De Sirants*, an Island of the *German* Ocean. 5. *Sternberg*, the ordinary Residence of the Governour for the King of *Denmark*. 6. *Gottorp*, a strong Fort or Castle of the Duke of *Sleswick*, at the end of a large Bay or In-let of the *Baltick* also: remarkable for the Toll-booth or Custom-house there erected, at which there is Toll paid one year with another for 50000 Oxen sent out of the *North Jutland* into *Germany*. 7. *Sleswick*, originally by the *Danes* called *Hyabon*, built, as they say, by *Herbe* a Queen of that Nation; but by the *Saxons* called *Sleswick*, as the Town upon the River *Sley*, there running into the *Baltick*, and giving to the Town a fair and commodious Haven. This of long time hath been accounted the chief Town of this Province, honoured with an Episcopal See, and made the Head of the Dukedom, so giving name unto the whole. A Dukedom first erected by King *Henry* of *Denmark*, who gave it to *Waldemar*, great Grandchild of *Abel* a former King, Anno 1280, to be held by him under the Right and Sovereignty of the Kings thereof. But the Male-issue failing, it returned to the Crown, and was by *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* conferred on *Gerrard* Earl of *Holftein*, as before was said, Anno 1386. Repenting afterwards of the Act, he extorted it out of the hands of the Widow of *Gerrard*; but it was again recovered by the Valour and good fortune of his Son *Adolphus*. After whose death it

tell, together with *Holftein*, upon *Christiern* of *Oldenburg* King of *Denmark*, as before related, by whom it was incorporated with that Crown, never since aliened, but assigned sometimes in Portion for the younger Princes, the Patrimony at this time of the Sons of *Alexander*, furnished of *Sunderborg*, (the place of his Nativity) Son of *John*, one of the younger Sons of King *Christiern* the third.

*NORTH JUTLAND*, the most Northern part of all the *Chorjone*, hath on the South the Dukedom of *Sleswick*, but on all other parts the Sea. Divided commonly, according to the number of the Bishopricks; into four Dioceses or Districts; that is to say:

1. The Diocese of *RIP* or *RIPEN*, bordering next to *Sleswick*, containing 30 Prefectures or Herets, (as they use to call them) seven Cities or walled Towns, and ten Castles. The chief of which are, 1. *Ripen*; the Episcopal See, situate near the *German* Ocean. 2. *Kolding*, on a Creek of the *Baltick* Sea; where *Dorothy* the Dowager of *Christiern* the third made a publick School, (one of my Authors calls it an University).

2. The Diocese of *ARHUSSEN*, lying on the North of *Ripen*; but more towards the *Baltick*, containeth 31 Herets or Prefectures, seven Cities or walled Towns, and five Castles. The chief whereof are, 1. *Arhusen*, the Episcopal See, seated on the *Baltick*; the first Bishop hereof being that *Poppo* who converted this Nation, Christianity and Episcopacy going for the most part hand in hand together. 2. *Schanderborg*, on the South of *Arhusen*. 3. *Kaloe*, a strong Castle of the Kings, seated in the inmost part of a large Bay, occasioned by the Promontory or Cape of the *Hilens*, extending hence two Dutch miles to the high Hill of *Elenenberg*, Opposite whereunto, and pertaining to this Jurisdiction, lie the Islands of 1. *Samsø*, 2. *Hilens*, 3. *Tuen*, 4. *Hjarnen*, (perhaps *Gerno*) 5. *Hilens*, and others.

3. The Dioceses of *WIBORCH*, on the North of *Arhusen*, containeth sixteen Herets, the Islands of 1. *Jegon*, 2. *Hansholm*, 3. *Offholm*, 4. *Cifland*, 5. *Egholm*, and 6. *Bodum*; three Cities or walled Towns, and as many Castles. The principal of which is *Wiborich*, the Episcopal See, an Inland City, but situate on a Water which runneth into the Bay of *Limsfort*. The ordinary Seat of Judicature for both the *Jutlands*, for all Causes, as well Criminal as Civil: the Court continually sitting from one day to another, unless perhaps the Judges do sometimes adjourn it for their own Refreshments.

4. The Diocese of *BORGLAVE*, or *Pandalia*, lying farther North, is commonly subdivided into four Parts or Members; that is to say, 1. *Thyland*, lying South of the Bay of *Limsfort*, on the *Baltick* side, whose chief Town is *Alsborch*, the ordinary Seat and Residence of the Bishop of *Pandalia*, from hence many times fled *Alburborgis*, situate on the Bay aforesaid, which, opening into the *Baltick* Sea, extendeth through the main Land Westward almost as far as the *German* Ocean. 2. *Morfe*, lying on the Ocean, and containing three Prefectures or Herets, the Town of *Niceping*, the Castle of *Limsfort*, and the Isle of *Ageroe*. 3. *Hansborg*, the Town of the Bay of *Limsfort*, containing four Herets, the Town of *Thysdal*, where *Christiern* the third founded a publick School, or such another University as that of *Kolding*, the Castle of *Orum*, and the Islands called *Skaringen*, a noted Sea-mart, fishy ferry lying underneath it and about the Coast. 4. *Wenffjell*, *Venflia*, or *Wenflie*, that is (as *Mercator* doth expound it) *Pandalorum fides*, the Seat of the *Pandals*, taken up all the rest of the North of

of *Funland*, containing six Prefectures, the Islands of 1. *Großholm*, 2. *Heerholm*, and 3. *Tidholm*, three Towns, and one Castle: the most remarkable of which is *Schagen*, within the most Northerly point of all this *Scher-fouge*. In this part is a very high Mountain called *Mount Aberg*, in which are found some marks and remainders of the ancient Giants, as the Inhabitants believe, and report accordingly.

The Inhabitants of both *Funlands*, in the time of *Ptolemy* and before were the *Cobandi*, *Chali*, *Phundhi*, *Charadei*, and in the most Northern Tracts the *Cimbri*, of whom the four first were but Tribes or Nations. These moving toward the South in that great Expedition against *Spain*, were taken by the neighbouring *Vandals* into the *Roman* Empire, occasioned the *Finns* and *Angli* to enlarge or shift their Dwellings, each taking up the parts which lay nearest to them. The *Finns*, or *Gutta*, being a People of *Scandia*, and there placed by *Ptolemy*, took up the Northern parts thereof, from them named *Funland*: the other being a People of the *Suevi*, dwelling on the South of the *Elb*, possessed themselves of those parts which lay next the *Saxons*, their old Friends and Confederates, (their chief Town being *Sleswick*) where *Angelen*, now an obscure Village, once of greater note, doth preserve their memory. But these uniting with the *Saxons* in the Conquest of *Britain*, and leaving none behind which were fit for action, or not enough to keep possession of the Country against the new Invaders, gave opportunity to the *Danes* to come in upon them; by whom the Country being conquered as far as to the River *Eyder*, were planted by Colonies of *Danes*, and made a part of that Kingdom: of whom we shall say more in the close of all; first taking a survey of the *Baltick* Islands, and such Provinces on the main Land of *Scandia* as properly make up the Kingdom of *Denmark*.

2. **THE BALTICK ISLANDS** are in number 3, and are so called, because they lie dispersed in the *Baltick* Ocean. At this day it is called by the *German* *De Oze*; Zee; anciently by some *Mare Suevicum*, by *Pomponius Mela* *Sinus Codanus*, by *Strabo* *Sinus Venedicus*; but generally *Mare Balticum*, because the great Peninsula of *Scandia*, within which it is, was by some Writers of the middle and darker Time called *Baltia*. It beginneth at the narrow Passage called the *Sund*, and interlacing the Countries of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Germany*, and *Poland*, extendeth even to *Livonia* and *Lithuania*. The reasons why this Sea, being so large, doth not ebbe and flow, are, 1. the Narrowness of the Strait which by the Ocean is let into it; and 2. the Northern situation of it, whereby the Celestial Influences have lesser power upon it. The principal of this great hole of Islands are, 1. *Seland*, 2. *Fionia*, or *Fionia*, 3. *Angland*, 4. *Lawland*, 5. *Falholm*, 6. *Arja*, 7. *Alsen*, 8. *Tidholm*, 9. *Wien*, 10. *Femera*, and 11. *Bornholm*. Some others of less note we shall name only, and pass them over.

1. **S E L A N D**, the greatest Island of the *Baltick* Seas, is situate near the main Land of *Scandia*, parted from it by a narrow Strait or *Fretum*, not above a *Dutch* mile in breadth, commonly called by the name of the *Sund* or *Sound*. A Strait through which all Ships which have any trading to or from the *Baltick* must of necessity take their course; all other Passages being barred up with insupportable Rocks, or otherwise prohibited by the Kings of *Denmark*, upon Forfeiture of all their Goods. So that being the only safe Passage which these Seas afford, one may sometimes see two or three hundred Ships in a day pass through it: all which pay a Toll or Impostition to the King, according to their Bills of Lading. And to secure this Passage, and command all Pas-

sengers, there are two strong Castles, the one in *Scandia*, called *Helsingborg*, whereof more anon; the other in this Island, which is called *Cronenburg*.

But before we come to this Castle, we must view the other parts of the Island, being in length two days journey, and almost as much in breadth: the Soil so fertile, that, without any manuring or charge at all, it yieldeth plenty of all Necessaries for the life of man. It was anciently called *Codanonia*, and containeth in it fifteen Cities or walled Towns, and twelve Royal Castles. The principal whereof are, 1. *Hafen*, or *Hafnia*, the Metropolis of the Islands, by the *Dutch* called *Copenhagen*, or the *Haven of Merchants*; situate near the Sea, with an handfom Port; the Isle of *Amager*, which lieth on the East-side of the Town, making a very safe Road for all kinds of Shipping. The Town is of an orbicular form, and reasonably well fortified; but the Buildings mean, for the most part of Clay and Timber, only to be commended for a spacious Marketplace. Yet herein, as the chief Town of all the Kingdom, and situate in the heart of those Dominions, is the Palace-Royal; built of Free-stone, in form of a Quadrangle, but of no great Beauty or Magnificence. Most memorable for the University here founded by *Henry Ericus* the ninth; but perfected by King *Christiern* the first, by him and the succeeding Princes liberally endowed. 2. *Fredericksburg*, amongst Woods of Beech, built for a place of Pleasure by *Frederick* the second, where the King hath a fine House, and a little Park, in which (amongst other foreign Beasts) are some *Fallow-Deer* transported hither out of *England* in the 24 year of Queen *Elizabeth*. 3. *Reschili*, not walled but counted for a City, as a See Episcopal; the Bishops whereof have anciently had the honour of Crowning and Inaugurating the Kings of *Denmark*. In the Cathedral Church here are to be seen the Tombs of many of the *Danish* Kings; some of them very fair and sumptuous, the most mean and ordinary. 4. *Sora*, of old times beautified with a goodly Monastery, the Revenues whereof, at the alteration of Religion, were converted to the maintenance of a Free-School built here by *Frederick* the first. But in the year 1623, *Christiern* the fourth, adding hereunto the Revenues of two other dissolved Monasteries, the one in the Isle of *Lawland* and the other in *Funland*, founded here a new University, for the better supply of learned Ministers for the Churches of *Denmark* and *Norway*, (which before could not be provided for out of *Copenhagen*) and furnished it with men of eminence in all Arts and Sciences for its first Professors. 5. *Ellwors*, or *Helsingborg*, a Village only, but much frequented by Sea-faring men as their Ships pass by the *Sund*, upon which it is. Near unto which is 6. the strong and magnificent Castle of *Cronenburg*, built with incredible charge and pains by King *Frederick* the second; the foundation of it being laid on huge Stones sunk into the Sea, and so fastened together, that no Storm or Tempest, how violent soever, is able to shake it; well fortified as well founded, and mixt of a Palace and a Fort, being since the first building of it the most constant Residence of the Kings of *Denmark*, who from hence may easily discern each Ship which falls through the *Sund*, each of which addeth more or less unto his Revenues. A profitable and pleasing Prospect. By the Commodities of this and the opposite Castle, the King doth not only secure his Customs, but very much strengthen his Estate: the Castles being so near, and the Strait so narrow, that, by the addition of some few Ships, he may keep the greatest Navy that is from passing by him.

Unto the Government and Jurisdiction of this Island belong many others; the principal whereof are, 1. *Amager*,

*magia*, *Amager*, or *Amach*, which helps to make up the Port or Road of *Copenhagen*, spoken of before; planted with *Hollander* brought hither by the procurement of *Christiern* the second. 2. *Mund*, or *Moen-Land*, the chief Town whereof is called *Streeke*. 3. (2) *HUENE*, or *WEEN*, a little South of *Cronenburg* Castle; a *Dutch* mile in length, but not quite so broad; remarkable only for the Studies of that famous Astronomer *Tycho Brabe*, for the *Studium* of the second gave this Island, that living to whom *Frederick* the second gave this Island, that living in private and solitary place, removed from all company but his own Family only, he might with more convenience attend his Books. At this day most observable for the Castle of *Oranopolis*, or *Orenburg*, where the greatest part of his Mathematical Instruments are preserved in safety. 3. *FIONIA*, or *FUNEN*, the second Island of account in all the *Baltick*, is situate betwixt *Seland* and *Funland*, from which last it is parted by a Strait called *Middelfart Sund*, so narrow, and of so small a Sea, that the Island and the *Cherfonese* seem joined together. A Country of a pleasant and delightful Situation, and as fruitful withal; containing 12 *Dutch* miles in length, and four in breadth; and therein 24 Herets or Prefectures, 16 Towns, and 6 Royal Castles, besides many goodly Villages, and Gentlemen Houses. The chief whereof are, 1. *Odnsee*, or *Othense* (called in *Latine* *Othonia*) an Episcopal See, founded here, at the first conversion of this People, by *Otho* the Great, whence it had the name. The Town is not large, but beautified with two fair Churches, the one dedicated to Saint *Annet*, the other to Saint *Francis*: situate in the midst of the Island, from which the residue of the Towns are almost equally distant; and so commodiously seated for Trade and Merchandise, as they do not only traffick in the *Baltick* Sea, but in *Sweden*, *Norway*, *Russia*, *Flanders*, and *Germany*. 2. *Nyborch*, 3. *Fornby*, 4. *Symborby*, 5. *Middelfart*, whence the Strait is named, 6. *Bornby*, and 7. *Kartemunde*; all seated on some Haven, or convenient Creek. The principal of the Castles are, 1. *Newborg*, 2. *Hagenschow*, 3. *Elschow*, 4. *Hinsagel*, 5. the Court of *Rugard*. In this Island, not far from the Castle of *Hagenschow*, is the Mountain of *Offarun*, where *John Ranzovius*, An. 1430, discomfited the great Army of *Christopher* the Brother of *Anthony*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, coming in those unsettled times to invade the Kingdom, upon colour of restoring *Christiern* the second formerly deposed: in which Fight the Earls of *Hoye* and *Tackelberg* were both slain in the place, and the Kingdom after that in quiet from the like Pretensions.

South of *Fionia*, and under the Government hereof, are about 90 lesser Islands, most of them inhabited: the chief of which are,

4. **LANGLAND**, seven *Dutch* miles in length, in which, besides many Villages and Gentlemen Houses, we have the Town of *Rudkoping*, and the Castle of *Franeke*.

5. **LAWLAND**, disjoined from *Seland* by a little narrow Strait called *Groen-sund*; so plentiful of Corn and Cheefnuts, that Ships full freighted with them are sent yearly hence. An Island which, besides many Castles, Villages and Manfion-houses of the Gentry, hath five good Towns, viz. 1. *Nysbade*, 2. *Nafco*, 3. *Tegrop*, 4. *Richeg*, and 5. *Maribone*; in which last anciently was a very rich Monastery, the Revenues whereof are now employed for the endowment of the new University of *Sora*, founded by *Christiern* the fourth, as before was noted.

6. **FALSTRE**, four *German* miles in length, affording plenty of Corn yearly to some neighbouring Islands. Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Nicopen*, which for the Elegancy of the place and Pleasants of the Situation is called the *Naples of Denmark*. 2. *Strubopon*,

from whence there is the ordinary passage into *Germany*; seven *Dutch* miles hence.

7. **TUSING**, not far from *Swynborch*, or *Swineburg*, a Town of *Fionia*; a *Dutch* mile in length, situate in a dangerous and troublesome Sea, from whence is no safe passage either to *Seland*, *Funen*, or *Funland*, though much distant from neither. Chief places in it are, 1. *Affens*, towards *Funland*, 2. *Niburg*, towards *Seland*, and 3. the Court of *Keltorp*, belonging to the noble Family of *Refensent*.

8. **FEMERA**, or **FEMEREN**, a fruitful and well-peopled Island, having in it the Towns of 1. *Derborch*, 2. *Stabul*, and 3. *Pitterdorp*. A place of great importance to the Crown of *Denmark*, not so much in danger of being made subject to the *Imperialists* by the taking of *Holstein* and both *Funland*, as by planting a strong Garrison in this small Island: and therefore with all diligence recovered by the King again, and better fortified than before, against all Invasions, Anno 1628. Of the remaining Islands which pertain unto *Fionia*, we find the names of 1. *Aros*, 2. *Romsjö*, 3. *Endelo*, 4. *Ebelo*, 5. *Boko*, 6. *Brando*, 7. *Zoroe*, 8. *Agerius*, 9. *Hellens*, 10. *Jerde*, 11. *Birkholm*, of which nothing memorable.

Amongst these Islands, but not subordinate to *Fionia*, are, 9. **ARJA**, belonging to the Dukedom of *Sleswick*, consisting of 3. Parishes, some Gentlemen Houses, and the Town and Castle of *Koping*: supposed to be the habitation of the *Arvi*, spoken of by *Tacitus*; but a Colony rather of them, as I suppose. And not far off,

10. **ALSEN**, another little Island, but of more repute called in *Latine* *Elyfia*, opposite to the Gulf or Bay of *Flenburg* in the Dukedom of *Sleswick*, to which it also appertaineth. Well stored it is with Beasts for profit, and Game for pleasure; so populous, that some thousands of men may be easily and suddenly raised in it; consisting of 13 Parishes and 4 Towns: that is to say, 1. *Gammelgard*, 2. *Offersholm*, 3. *Nordenborg*, and 4. the good Town and Castle of *Sunderburg*, one of the ordinary Residences of the Dukes of *Sleswick*, and honoured with the Birth of many of their Princes of the Royal Family. Some think it was the Habitation anciently of the *Elyfi*, spoken of by *Tacitus*, and by him placed next unto the *Angli*: But being the *Angli* in those times dwelt about the *Elb*, I rather think, that when some Colonies of the *Angli* scattered themselves in the *Cimbriack Cherfonese*, as before was said, some of the *Arvi* and *Elyfi* might go along for company, and plant themselves near them and these Islands.

11. **BORNHOLM**, the last of all the *Baltick* which belong to *Denmark*, is situate more Eastward, opposite to that part of *Scandia* which is called *Bleking*, betwixt it and *Pomeran*. An Isle of excellent Pasturage, breeding plenty of Cattel, therewith, as also with Butter, Cheese, Wool, Hides, and some store of Fruits, they supply the wants of some of their neighbours; besides good quantities of powdered Beef and Mutton, which they barrell up and sell to *Marriners*. It containeth many good Towns and wealthy Villages; the chief whereof is *Bornholm*, which gives name to the Island. Both Town and Island were pawned by some former Kings unto those of *Lubeck*; from them redeemed by King *Frederick* the second for a great sum of money, after it had been in their possession about 50 years.

These Islands in the time of *Pomponius Mela* were by one general name called the *Hemades*, in number reckoned to be seven; the residue either not inhabited, or not taken notice of, are now here mentioned in the Ancients. Of these seven; the greatest and best peopled was called *Codanonia*, (supposed to be *Seland*), in which the said Author placeth the *Tentoni*. By *Ptolemy* it is called

*Scandia Minor*, with reference to the great *Peninsula* of *Scandia*, supposed by him to be an *Island*. From this, or from the Sea adjoining called *Sinus Cadanus*, the people of these Islands and the vast Eastern Continent took the name of *Danes*; spreading the name afterwards, as they did their Conquests, over the *Sound*, and take notice of such other parts of this Kingdom as lie on the other side thereof, in the vast Continent or Demy-Island (which you will) of *Scandia*: of which somewhat must be first premised, in regard that not only some parts of *Denmark*, but the whole Country of *Norway* (the Northern Islands excepted) are contained in it.

**SCANDIA**, by *Pliny* and *Salinus* called *Scandinavia*; by *Jornandes Scanzia*, hath on the East that Bay or Branch of the *Baltick* which is called the *Finnish* or *Badner* Seas, on the North and West the main Ocean, on the South, where it points towards *Germany*, the *Baltick* or *Offt* Sea; the *Dutch* call it joined to the main Continent of *Sarmatia* by an *Isthmus*, or Neck of Land, at the bottom of the *Badner* Sea, not far from *Wardhus*. In regard of so great Seas on all parts thereof, it was generally by the Ancients thought to be an *Island*, but *incomperita magnitudinis*, of an unknown greatness, as both *Pytheas* and *Xenophon Lampiacenus* do affirm in *Pliny*, by one of which it is called *Baltia*, by the other *Baltia*; from whence the name of *Baltick* to the Sea adjoining. But later Navigations and Experience have confuted that opinion, by which it is found to be no *Island*, but a part of the Continent and a great one too; containing the whole Kingdom of *Norway*, the greatest part of the Kingdom of *Sweden*, and some part of *Denmark*. That part hereof which belongs to *Denmark* is situate in the South of this great *Peninsula*, and divided into the three Provinces of *Hallandia*, *Scania*, and *Bleking*; and in them are 23 Herets or Prefectures, and 15 Cities.

1. **HALLANDIA**, or **HALLAND**, hath on the East the wild Woods which part it from *Gotland*, on the West the intervening Sea betwixt it and *Justland*, on the North *Sweden* properly and specially so called, on the South *Scandia* or *Schonen*. A Country which for the healthfulness of the Air, plainness of the Soil, commodiousness of Havens, plenty of Fish, pleasure of Hunting, for inexhaustible Mines of Brass and Lead, (with some veins of Silver) frequency of well-peopled Towns and Villages, and Civility of the Inhabitants, is not inferior to any. Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Lubum*, 2. *Halmstad*, 3. *Falkenberg*; all of them on the Sea; at the mouth of navigable Streams, whose names I need not. 4. *Wersberg*, upon the Sea-side also, but fortified with a very strong Castle on the top of an Hill; taken and garisoned by the *Swedes*, Anno 1569, and not without great difficulty recovered by the *Danes* again, Anno 1569.

2. **SCANIA**, or **SCHÖNEN**, hath on the East *Blekinga* or *Bleking*, on the West the *Sound*, running along the shore hereof for the space of twenty German miles, on the North *Halland*, on the South the *Baltick* or *Offt* Sea. The Country is of the same nature with *Halland*, as before described; the Character of that pertaining to all the three, this having over and above as peculiar to it, that the Sea-shores are strewed with such Sholes of Herrings, that sometimes Ships are scarceable with wind and oar to break through them, and row off the Harbour. It is in length 72 miles, 48 in breadth. Chief Towns in which are, 1. *Lundin*, an Archbishop's See, the Metropolis of *Denmark* and *Norway*; advanced unto that honour by the means and mediation of *Ericus* the first, who purposely made a journey to *Rome* to elect that business; the Church

of *Denmark* being before that time subject to the Archbishop of *Breme*. This was about the year 1100. It is situate somewhat within the Land, but the Cathedral, easily discernible by Mariners as they sail along, the City by its mean, and, were it not for the Cathedral, of its beauty at all. But that indeed is affirmed to be a work of much Magnificence and Art; especially for the Clock, the Dial, and some outward adjuncts. For in the Dial curiously set out with divers Colours are to be seen distinctly the Year, Month, Week-day, and Hour of every day throughout the year; with the Feasts, both moveable and fixed; together with the Motion of the Sun and Moon, and their passage through each Degree of the Zodiac. Then for the Clock, it is so framed by artificial Engines, that whensoever it is to strike, two horsemen encounter one another, giving as many blows, piece as the Bell sounds hours: and on the opening of a door there appears a Theatre, the Virgin *Mary* on a Throne with *Christ* in her Arms, and the three Kings or *Magi* (with their several Trains) marching in order, doing humble reverence, and presenting severally their Gifts; two Trumpeters sounding all the while, to adorn the Pomp of that Precellion. 2. *Malmsbo*, or *Elbogen*, (called by both names) at the very Southern point hereof, just opposite to *Copenhagen* in *Seland*, a well-traded Port; the Birth-place of *Galpar Bartholinus*, otherwise called *Malmsboius Duns*, that great Mathematician, supposed to be the Author of the Clock and Dial before described. 3. *Trelleborg*, on the North of *Elbogen*, a *Land* *Jeron*, on the Sea-side, of great strength and consequence. 5. *Helsingborg*, a mean Town, but fortified with an impregnable Castle, just opposite to *Helsingore* and *Cronenburg* in *Seland*; the other of the two Keys which openeth into the *Sound*. 6. *Rottenby*, a Frontier-town bordering on *Scania*, a Province of *Swethland*. 7. *Christiana*, or *Christiansborg*, a strong piece built by *Christiern* the fourth, Anno 1604, compassed by the Sea, and fortified by *Puss* and *Marthus*, thought to be impregnable.

3. **BLESCIDA**, or **BLEKING**, is bounded on the East and South with the *Baltick* Sea, on the North with *Verendia*, a Province of *Swethland*, on the West with *Schania* or *Schonen*; more mountainous and barren than either, but yet partaking somewhat of the former Character which we had of *Halland*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Ufled*, on the mouth of a River falling into the *Baltick*. 2. *Christiernburg*, in *Latine* *Christiansopolis*, on the borders of *Swethland*; raised out of the ground by *Christiern* the fourth, to defend his Kingdom on that side, Anno 1604, but not long after by a warlike stratagem surprised by the *Swedes*, in the late War betwixt those Kingdoms in the year 1611; destroyed and depopled by that Nation, who looked upon it as a dangerous and unpleasant Object, but since repaired and replenished. 3. *Alnby*, upon the River which divides the Kingdoms not far from *Christiernburg*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Guts* and *Danciones*, taking up the South-parts of this great *Peninsula*. Meridionalia tenent *Guts* & *Danciones*, as we find in *Ptolemy*, Geog. l. 2. c. 11. which in all probability must be meant of these Provinces. Of these the *Guts*, passing over into the *Cimbriick* *Chersonese*, possessed themselves of the North parts of it, since from them called *Justland*. The rest, uniting with the people of those many Islands which lie together in the Bay or Gulf called *Sinus Cadanus*, (now the *Baltick* Sea) took the name of *Danes*; and not from *Dan*, I know not what King thereof about 1000 years before the Birth of our Saviour. First taken notice of by that name in *Jornandes de rebz* *Getarum*, who lived about the time of *Justinian* the first; about which time, or not long after, it is conceived that they made them-

themselves Masters of so much of the *Cimbriick* *Chersonese* as had been formerly possessed by the *Justes* and *Angli*, who those forsaken or ill-peopled Seats they possessed themselves of. After this we hear little of them till the time of *Charles* the Great, living in a confused estate, sometimes made subject to the *Norwegians*, sometimes to the *Swedes*, but always without Law and Order, till by the King *Godfrey* or *Gormicus* they were regulated by Laws, and reduced to an orderly kind of life, Anno 797. About this time they first began to infect the Coasts of *England*, invaded *Friesland* with a Fleet of 200 Sail, and had much weakened and endangered the great Empire of *France*, if the unseasonable death of *Godfrey*, and the Quarrels which arose about the Succession after his decease, had not kept them off. Their Affairs at home being again well settled, they employed their whole Forces against *England*, as the weaker Enemy: over which they tyrannized 250 years, and reigned 26 under three Kings of that Nation. Obscured of that, and the terror of their name being over, they have been most busied with their Neighbours of *Sweden* and *Germany*; improving their Estate, but rather by Marriages and civil Contracts, than by force of Arms, with the addition of the Kingdom of *Norway* and the Dukedom of *Halslein*: their pretensions to, and for a time the possession of, the Crown of *Sweden* getting them nothing in conclusion but Blows and Losses. So that we have no more to do then to find up a Catalogue of the Kings hereof, till the uniting of the two Crowns of *Denmark* and *Norway*, leaving the rest that follow to another place.

#### The Kings of DENMARK.

A. Ch.

797

1. *Gormicus* the first Legislator of the *Danes*; and the Establisher of their Kingdom; a prudent and valiant Prince.

2. *Olaus* Son of *Gormicus*, or *Godfrey*.

3. *Heningus*, Son of *Olaus*.

873 4. *Siward*, Son of a Daughter of *Godfrey*, by the King of *Norway*.

6. *Siward* II.

7. *Ericus*, or *Henricus*, baptized at *Mentz*, at the same time with his Brother *Harald*, recovered the Kingdom to his House, (of which they had been ousted by the Race of *Godfrey*).

8. *Canutus*, the Son of *Ericus*, the Heathenish Son of a Christian and pious Father.

880. 9. *Frodo*, the Son of *Canutus*, a professed Christian.

886 10. *Gormo*, (our English Writers call him *Gormundus*) Son of *Frodo*.

899 11. *Harald*, the Son of *Gormo*, or *Gormund*.

900 12. *Gormo* II. Son of *Harald*, an enemy of the Christian Faith.

937 13. *Harald* II. Son of *Gormo* the second, a good Christian.

975 14. *Sueno*, or *Swain*, Son of *Harald*, at first a great Enemy of the Gospel, an Usurper of the Throne in his Father's life-time, and a great Scourge unto the English. Outed of his Estate by *Ericus* of *Swethland*, he received the Gospel, regained his Kingdom, and established Christianity in this Country; his War on *England* still continuing.

1010 15. *Olaus*, the eldest Son of *Swain*, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*.

1020 16. *Canutus* II. Brother of *Olaus*, the first King of *England* of the *Danes*, succeeded his Brother in the Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Norway*; to which he added also the Crown of *Sweden*.

1037 17. *Canutus* III. Son of *Canutus* the second, the last King of *England* of the Race of the *Danes*.

1051 18. *Magnus*, Son of *Olaus* King of *Norway*.

1051 19. *Sueno* II. *Silvers* the Son of *Canutus* the second, by *Olfo* an English Duke.

1074 20. *Harald* III. bafe Son of *Sueno* the second.

21. *Canutus* IV. another of the bafe Sons of *Sueno*, murdered at the Altar in the Church of *Odenfe* in the Isle of *Fionia*; afterwards canonized a Saint.

1088 22. *Olaus* II. another of the bafe Sons of *Swain*.

1099 23. *Ericus* II. another of the bafe Sons of *Swain*, the Founder of the Archiepiscopal See of *Lunden*.

1102 24. *Harald* IV. bafe Son of *Henry* or *Ericus* the second.

1133 25. *Nicolas*, another of the bafe Sons of *Swain*.

1135 26. *Ericus* III. another of the bafe Sons of *Ericus* the second.

1140 27. *Ericus* IV. commonly called the fifth, (some one of the younger House being reckoned in), Nephew of *Ericus* the second.

1150 28. *Sueno* III. Son of *Ericus* the third, and *Canutus* the fifth, Grandchild of *Nicolas*, both Kings, the first reigning in *Scandia*, the other in *Justland*; both died without Issue; *Canutus* being slain by *Sueno*, and he by *Waldemar*.

1157 29. *Waldemar*, Son of *Canutus*, the lawful Son of *Ericus* the second, after the interposition of so many Barlards, succeeded at the last in the Throne of his Fathers. By his means the *Knights* and *Vandals* embraced the Gospel.

1185 30. *Canutus* V. Son of *Waldemar*.

1203 31. *Waldemar* II. Brother of *Canutus*, and Duke of *Sleswick* before his coming to the Crown.

1243 32. *Ericus* V. called the VII. Son of *Waldemar* the second, slain by the practices and Treason of his Brother *Abel*.

1251 33. *Abel*, Brother of *Ericus*, slain by the Peasants of *Friesland*.

1252 34. *Christopher*, Brother of *Abel* and *Ericus*.

1260 35. *Ericus* VI. (VIII.) Son of *Christopher*.

1287 36. *Ericus* VII. (IX.) younger Son of *Ericus*, supplanted his eldest Brother *Christopher*.

1327 37. *Christopher* II. eldest Son of *Ericus*, at first dispossessed of his Birth-right by his Brother *Ericus*; after whose death he succeeded in the Crown, by the help of his Half-brother, the Earl of *Halslein*.

1334 38. *Waldemar* III. Son of *Christopher* the second against whom and his Encroachments the Sea-towns, commonly called the *Hanse*, did first confederate, and vanquished him in many Battels.

1376 39. *Margaret*, Daughter and Heir of *Waldemar* the third, married with *Agrim* King of *Norway*, so uniting the Kingdoms of whom and their Successors we shall speak hereafter, when we have took a view also of the Kingdom of *Norway*, and the Appendix thereof.

#### 3. NORWAY.

**NORWAY** is bounded on the East with *Swethland*, from which it is parted by a perpetual Ridge of rough and wild Mountains, called the *Dojrine* Hills, on all other parts by the Sea: that is to say, by the Frozen Sea upon the North; the *German* or *Norwegian* Ocean upon the West; and on the South with the *Danish* Sea,

Sea, interposing betwixt it and the *Cimbriick Chersonese*, being in breadth from *Schagen*, the most Northern point of *Finland*, to *Congel*, the most Southerly Town of *Norway*, no less than 250 miles.

It is called *Norway quasi Tractus seu Via Septentrionalis*, from the Northern situation of it containing in length 1300 miles, in breadth not above half so much, inhabited by a People given to Hospitality, Plain-dealing, and abhorring Theft. Anciently they were great Warriors, and became terrible to all the more Southern Nations; by whom they were called *Normans*, (that is to say, *Honanes Boreales*, or *North-men*, as *Willielmus Gemericus* rightly hath it) being at that time a Mixture of all the Northern Nations together, or of the *Norwegians* and *Sweethlanders*, apart from the *Danes*; whose steps they followed in their frequent, or rather continual, Piracies on the Coasts of *England*, *France* and *Ireland*. By *Helmoldus* in the same sense they are called *Nordlandi*, a name made into *Latine* out of the *Dutch* word *Nord*, and the *French* word *Lieu*, signifying men of a Northern Place or Nation.

Of the Position of it in regard of the Heavens we have spoke already, but more particularly it reacheth from the first Parallel of the twelfth Clime, where the Pole is elevated 8 Degrees, 26 Minutes, as far as to the 71. Degree of Latitude, by which account the longest Day in the Southern point is but 18 hours; whereas at *Wardhuys*, being situate farthest North of all this Country, they have no Night for almost three whole months together.

The Country is for the most part rocky, mountainous and barren, full of vast Woods, extrem cold, and but ill inhabited. In the best parts thereof it affords little Corn, and in the most Northern none at all; inasmuch that the common sort of people are fain to use dried Fish (that which we commonly call Stock-Fish) in stead of Bread; but the better (that is, the richer) sort buy Corn of such Merchants as come to traffick with them. Their chief Commodities are Stock-fish, rich Furs, Train-oil, Pitch, and Tackling for Ships, as Masts, Cables, Deekboards, and the like; which the Inhabitants exchange for Corn, Wine, Fruits, Beer, and other necessities for man's life. The Country is exceedingly troubled with certain little Beasts which they call *lemmings*. They are about the bigness of a Field-Mouse, and are by the Inhabitants said to drop out of the Clouds in tempestuous weather. They devour, like the Locusts, every green thing on the earth; and at a certain time die in heaps (as it were) together, and with their stench so poison the Air, that the poor people are long after troubled with the Jaundies and with a Giddiness in the Head. But these Beasts come not so often to infect the Land, as the Whales do to terrify and molest the shores; the Western Seas being very deep, and therefore a fit habitation for those great *Leviathans*: against whose violence and fury the Mariners and people of the Sea-coast have found a Remedy, which is by casting out some water intermixed with the Oyl of Cadzor; the smell whereof doth force them to retire immediately. Without this help there were no Fishing on these Coasts, which is the greatest Staple-commodity (besides materials for Shipping) which the Country yieldeth.

The Towns here are exceeding thin, and in them the Houses for the most part very poor and miserable, commonly patched up of Dirt and Hurdles, not much unlike our ordinary Cottage-houses in the Fan-Countries. It is distributed into five Prefectures or Governments, according to the number of the Castles which command the same. Of these,

1. The first most towards the South is the Castle of

*BAHUTS*: to which are subject the Towns of 1. *Marsbrand*, situate in a Demi-Island begirt with Rocks, of most note for the infinite quantity of Herrings caught hereabouts. 2. *Congel*, upon the Sea, a Town of Merchandise, opposite to *Schagen* in *Denmark*; 3. *Odewald*.

4. *AGGERHUTS*, the second of the five Royal Castles, hath under its Command the Towns of 1. *Aslo*, or *Alfisa*, on a Bay or Gullet opposite to *Finland*, an Episcopal See, and of most esteem of all the Country, by reason of the Courts of Judicature which are therein held. 2. *Tomborg*, or *Koningsborg*, that is to say, the King's or the Kingly Mountain, formerly a retiring-place of the Kings of *Norway*. 3. *Frederickstade*, built by one of the *Fredericks*, Kings of *Denmark*. 4. *Schiu* or *Sehon*, remarkable for its Mines of Iron and Copper. 5. *Saltzburgh*. 6. *Hamar* the greater, and 7. *Hannar* the less, divided by the interposing of the Bay called *Sinus Muscovianus* in former times the See of a Bishop, since removed to *Alfisa*, or rather thereunto united in these latter times, as many poor Bishops have been in *Ireland*.

3. *BERGERHUTS* is the third Castle of Command herein. Subordinate whereunto are, 1. *Bergen*, the principal Town of the Country, an Episcopal See, and the ordinary Residence of the Governour for the Kings of *Denmark*, situate amongst high Mountains at the bottom of a deep Creek or Arm of the Ocean called *Carnegie*. A noted Port, and much resorted to by Merchants of most foreign Nations, bringing in Corn, Meal, Bread, Beer, Wine, and *Aqua-Vite*, to supply the natural wants and defects hereof; and in exchange transporting hence Fish, Furs, Codage, and other materials for Shipping. In which regard it was accounted formerly one of the four chief Staple-Towns of the *Dutch* Merchants of the *Hanse*: the other three being *London* in *England*, *Norwagrad* in *Muscovie*, and *Bruges* in *Flanders*. But of late time this *Bergen* hath lost most of its Trade, removed hence to *Wardhuys*, nearer unto *Muscovie*: as the great Town of *Novogorod*, by reason of the change of Navigation from the *Baltick* into that of the Northern passage, hath given way to *S. Nicolas*; and *Bruges* was deprived of her Traffick by *Antwerp*, from whence it is removed to *Amsterdam*. For the *Hollanders*, by blocking up the Haven, but especially by keeping *Bergen* up *Zoon*, have such a command over the River, that no Vessel can pass or repass without their license. 2. *Staffenger*, an Episcopal See also, but not else observable.

4. The Castle of *TRONDHEIM* is the fourth, situate in the Town of *Trondheim*, or *Dronheim*, formerly called *Tronden*, and in *Latine* *Nidrosia*; the See of an Archbishop, who is the Metropolitan of *Norway*. A beautiful City heretofore, but since the Subjection of this Country unto the *Danes* reduced to a Burrough. So called of the River *Nider*, upon which it is seated, and therefore a fit habitation for those great *Leviathans*: *Rofa*, the name thence of the principal Church; which in time gave place to the Cathedral for greatness and nearness of the Fabric, all of polished Stone, not giving place in any *Europe*, about the year 1530 much defaced with Fire, which began at the Altar, the damage done by it being estimated at 7000 Crowns; a great sum of money in those times, and for 1000 a Country. So that, by casting up our reckoning, we find in *Norway* one Archbishop and four Bishops; that is to say, the Archbishop of *Trondheim* or *Nidrosia*, the Bishops of *Bergen*, *Alfisa*, *Staffenger*, and *Hannar*: of the same Power, Jurisdiction and Revenue, since the Reformation, as those of *Denmark* whereof, and of the first Conversion of this People to the Christian Faith, we have spoke already.

5. The fifth and last Castle which commands this Country is that of *WARDHUTS*, so called of the Town

Town of *Wardhuys*, as that is from the Isle *Ward*, in which it is seated. A small Castle, and the Town in former times but mean and poor, situate in the extreme North-point of all this Kingdom; but in those times accounted (as easily it might) for the chief of this Prefecture, and honoured in the Summer time with the Seat and Residence of the Governour, retiring more Southwards in the Winter, at what time, by reason of the extremity of the Cold, and long absence of the Sun for some months together (the Town lying within the *Arctick Circle*) it is hardly habitable. But of late time it is much improved both in Wealth and Building, by reason of the removal of the *English* Trading from *Novogorod*, near the *Baltick* Sea, to the Town of *S. Nicolas*, not far from hence; drawing by that means the Trade of *Muscovie* and *Norway* more near together. So that now it is not only useful unto the *Danes*, in regard that it somewhat aveth the neighbouring *Lappians*, and commandeth the Natives, for that cause fortified very strongly by King *Frederick* the second; but made very profitable to him also, by the resort of *Dutch* and *English*, who mult of necessity touch at it (if they make no stay there) in their way to *Muscovie*. Other Towns in these two last Prefectures are not worth looking after.

And so much for the Continent or Main-land of *Norway*: let us next look upon the *Islands* in the Northern Ocean which belong unto it.

The *ISLANDS* in the Northern Ocean.

THE Northern Sea, so named from its Northern situation, is by some called *Mare Scythicum*, because it coasted along the Shores of *Scythia*; by *Juvenal* *Oceanus Glacialis*, because often frozen; by *Pliny*, in the same sense, *Mare Alacchium*, the word in the *Scythick* Language signifying frozen, or congealed; by the *Russians* *Moscovites* *Myrmanowsky More*; by the *Cimbrians*, in their Tongue, *Marimorssa*, that is to say, the Dead Sea, because of the snowiness of its motion, often clogged with Ice; and, in the same sense, *Mare pigram*, by *Tacitus*. This *Tacitus* doth best describe, from whom take it thus. "*Trani* Suones *Mare alacchium* *grum* & *prope immotum*, &c. Beyond the *Swedes* there is another Sea, so flow and almost immovable, that many think it to be the Bounds which compass the whole World. Some are persuaded that the Sound of the Sun is heard as he ariseth out of this Sea; and that many flaps of Gode are seen, and the Beams of his Head. *Illic usque* (& *sama vera*) *tantum Natura*; At this Sea (the Report is credible) is the end of Nature and the World. The *English* were the first of all civil people who adventured to open and discover the Passages of it, under the conduct of *Richard Chancelour*, arriving by this way in *Russia*, *An.* 1553, and tracing out the way; which others of that Nation, together with the *Flemmings*, *Hollanders*, and some Towns of the *Hanse*, have since followed. Of which more in *Muscovie*. The principal Islands dispersed in it are, 1. *Greenland*. 2. *Island*. 3. *Free-Land*, belonging to the Crown of *Norway*, to be surveyed at the present: *Novia Zemla* and *Sir Hugh Willoughbie's* Island, appertaining (if to any) to the *Knez*, or great Duke of *Muscovie*, of which more hereafter.

1. *ISELAND* is situate under the *Arctick Circle*; in length 144 *German miles*, 65 in breadth. So called from the abundance of Ice in it and about it, frozen continually for the space of 8 months, and so vehemently chilled with the Northern Winds, that it yieldeth neither Corn nor Trees, except Juniper only: yet there is Grass in such abundance, that the people are of opinion,

that if they do not sometimes keep their Cattel from feeding, they are in danger to surfeit and die with fulness. Beasts for Labour here are both Horses and Oxen; the Oxen and Kine without Hous, but the Sheep not so; and they have also here a fine breed of little Dogs, known amongst us by the name of *Island Dogs*, the delight of Ladies; as also white Falcons and white Ravens, Eagles with white Tails, with Hares and Bears of the same colour. By reason of their want of Corn, the people eat Stock-fish (as in *Norway*) in stead of Bread: yet notwithstanding, by reason of the benefit of the Sea and access of Strangers, they have all things necessary brought unto them, (even to Wood and Timber) of which the richer sort make use, giving the Merchant in return sometimes the flesh of Bees and Mutton, but ordinarily Butter, Skins, Horses, Hawks, Brimstone, and Fish especially, the Staple Commodity of the Country; of which they have such plenty, and of so good condition, that a piece of *Island* Ling is counted with us as a fit Dish for a Nobleman's Table.

The people for the most part are of a plain and simple nature, living (as in the Golden Age) on that which Nature gives them, without help of Art, more than that of making Cheese and Butter: the Mountains serving them for Towns, and the Rivers for Drink, and their Lodging is all under one roof with their Horses and Oxen. They use neither Physick nor Physicians, yet live so long (and probably the longer for it) that many of them attain to the age of 150 years and more. The Women are exceeding fair, but they know not how to attire themselves; nor is there any difference in Apparel betwixt the Sexes, so that it is not easy to know one from another. Few of them but have some familiar Spirit to do them service: and notwithstanding the endeavour of the Ministers to purge them from this Impiety, yet it is so grained in them that they cannot leave it.

It is observable, that notwithstanding the cold condition of this Island, yet in many places it is full of Heats and Fire under the ground; which, by the *Antipersifaps* of the cold Air stopping the Pores of the Earth, and taking from it the liberty of Evaporation, doth burn more vehemently: inasmuch that there are three high Mountains whose Tops are always covered with Snow, and yet continually burning. The names of them are *Hecla*, *Helga*, and *La-Croix*, but the first the principal, by some called *Heelsfort*; which sometimes casts off Fire, sometimes flaming Water, then Black Ashes and Pumice-Stones, in so great abundance that it darkens the Sun, and makes the Country for six miles round about it to be uninhabited. Stranger things are not spoken of *Etna* than of these three Mountains: and here the Superstitious people have the same opinion which they have in *Sicily*, viz. That underneath must needs be Hell, and the habitations of the damned. But to judicious men the natural reason of these Flames is plain and obvious; occasioned by those veins of Brimstone (great quantity whereof they send in to foreign parts) on which the foundation of the Hills is laid: here being many Rathes and Fountains of hot water, which have Sulphur swimming at the top.

At the first planting of this Island, the people did not trouble themselves with building Towns, but every one sealed himself where he thought convenient, dwelling in Cells and Caverns digged in the bottom of the Rocks. By means whereof the Inland parts have not many Houses: but the Sea-coasts, since the coming of so many Strangers to them, begin to be built in many places, the Buildings for the most part being of Timber, roofed with Flages with an Hole on the sides of the roof to let in the Light. So that we are not to expect many fine Towns or Cities: the principal of them which are being, 1. *Halar*, in the North,



North, and 2. *Schalbolt*, in the Southern part; both Bishops Sees, having petty Schools, consisting of 24 Scholars apiece, to whom the *Latine* Tongue is taught at the charge of the Bishops. 3. *Haffenford*, an Haven Town, where under Tents the *Danish* Merchants barter their Commodities. And 4. *Befede*, a Castle, the ordinary Residence of the Governour for the Kings of *Denmark*.

It hath been generally conceived that this Island is that *Thule* which the Poets so often speak of: as *Tib. servat ultima Thule*, in *Virgil*; *Nec sit terra ultima Thule*, in *Seneca* the *Tragedian*. Nor did there want some reason to persuade them to this opinion; this being indeed the farthest part of the old known World. But greater reasons are against it. For when *Solinus* saith, *Multa sunt circa Britannicum Insulae, et quibus Italia ultima*, I hope *Thule* must be one of the *British* Isles. And when *Tacitus* saith of *Agricola*, *Insulas quas Orcades vocant domuit, despecta est & Thule*, I am sure that *Island* is so far from being kenne'd by any one of the *Orcades*, that it is at least eight Degrees distant. So that *Thule* must be sought for in another place, and where that is hath been shewed already. As for *Island*, it was so far from being known unto the Ancients, that it was hardly known unto those of *Norway* till the year 874, when some of the *Norwegians* were driven out of their Country by *Harald* the first, who first suppressing the many Petty Kings of the *Norwegians*, made many of them seek new Dwellings; of which some few arrived here; where finding room enough to plant in, and no great loss (if any) by change of their Dwelling, they invited many of their Friends and Countrymen to come unto them. An. 1070, they were converted to the Gospel by some Preachers sent thither from *Adelbert* the Archbishop of *Breme*. By whose perswasion and procurement they founded two Episcopal Sees; adding thereto in tract of time eight Religious Houses: that is to say, the Monasteries of *Pingore*, *Remsfelde*, *Modur*, and *Monkeniere*, under the Government and Jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Halar*; and those of *Videy*, *Pernehar*, *Kirkebar*, and *Skiaude*, under the Bishop of *Schalbolt*. In the year 1260, it was first brought under the Crown of *Norway*, following since that the Fortunes of it in all Changes both of Church and State; made subject with it to the Kings of *Denmark*, together with it reformed in matters of Religion according to the Confession of *Angiburg*, retaining still their Bishops, with a limited power, and turning the Revenues of their Monasteries unto other uses, as there they did, according to the will and pleasure of their Lords of *Denmark*.

2. South-west of *Island* lies another, and as cold an Isle, commonly called by the name of *FRESLAND*, from the continual Frosts unto which it is subject. By the *Latines* it is called *Frislandia*, to distinguish it from *Frisia* or *Frisland* in *Germany*. It is situate under the North Frigid Zone; but not so much within the *Arcticus* as *Island* is; the longest Day here in the height of Summer not exceeding 20 hours: and yet the Soil is so cold and barren, that it beareth neither Corn nor Fruit, the Inhabitants living most on Fish; which as it is their only Food, so it is also their chief Commodity wherewith to entertain or invite the Merchant. And hereof there is such abundance caught upon their Coasts, that they are never without the company of *Hanse-men*, *Scots*, *Hollanders*, *Danes*, and *English*, by which last it hath been so frequented in these later times, that it hath been called by some the *Western England*. For quantity it is somewhat bigger than *Island*; but by reason of the bitter Air, and the Defects above mentioned, very thinly inhabited. The chief Town of it is called *Fresland*, by the name of the Island; situate on the Eastern Shore of it. Besides which, there are some others set down in the Maps; as 2. *Sa-*

*mesfor*. 3. *Andefor*. 4. *Sorand*, but not much observable. Westward whereof, as *Zieglerus* (and out of him *Magnus*) telleth us, is a less Island called *Icaria*, giving the name of *Mare Icarium* to the Sea adjoining: so called (by his mistake or translation of the Fable) from *Icarus* the Son of *Dedalus*, a King of *Crete*, who did once (but no body knows when) Land it over these Islands.

III. *GROENLANDIA*, so called, as some say, from the Greenness of it in the Summer; as others say, by *Antiphrasis*, because never green, by reason of the sharpness of Winter. But the former Etymology is more agreeable to the state of the Country. For though it be continually covered with Snow, except in *June*, *July* and *August*, (inasmuch that though the people be always clad with Furs and Skins, yet they feel no heat) yet in those months it is exceeding fresh and green, and affords good Pasturage. It is situate for the greatest part within the *Arctic*, between the 65. and 77. Degrees of Northern Latitude: so that the longest Day in the Southern part is 21 hours and a half; and in the most Northern they have no Night for three months and two weeks. The known length of it is affirmed to be 600 miles, and may be longer than so for ought that any body knows: there being no perfect discovery made of it hitherto, though much frequented by the *English* and *Hollanders*, (two great Seafaring Nations) for the benefit of the Whale-fishing, making there in use. Their chief Commodities are Fish, White Bears, wild Deer, and some Stores of Cattel there bred upon their Pastures, but housed for the most part all the Winter. The greatest part of the people dwell in the Caves, and delight in Necromancy, to which they are more wilfully addicted than those in *Island*, because less acquainted with the Gospel.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Saint Thoms*, (in which there is a Monastery of *Dominican* Friars) seated in the North-East part of the Island; concerning which *Mercator* speaks of one thing which is very observable, relating that it is not far from a flaming burning Mountain, seated upon hot scalding springs, conveyed by Pipes of stone into the Monastery, and serving both as a Stove to warm them, and for a Fire to boil their Victuals. The Walls of the Monastery are built of Pumice-stones cald out of that Mountain; which, being tempered with the water of those burning Springs, doth make glutinous substance, serving instead of Lime, and as long durable. The Gardens of the Convent, in regard of this heat, flourish all the year with Herbs and sweet smelling Flowers; and the adjoining Sea, for the same reason being never frozen, affords good plenty of Fish and Fowl the whole year about, not only for the Monks, but the neighbouring Islanders. So far and to this purpose. The second Town of note is *Iloa*, not far from this Monastery: and 3. *Manderpre*, on the South-East-point. Others, as in a Country not well discovered, we have little notice of: though it be near 300 years since *Nicolas Zenin*, a *Venetian*, cast by Tempest on the Coast of *Frisland*, and by the King thereof employed upon new Discoveries, An. 1380, first made it known to us of Europe; it being immediately on that discovery possessed by the *Norwegians*, and made a Member and portion of that Crown.

As for the *Norwegians* themselves, now their Fellow-subjects, they were first known in the time of *Petery* by the name of *Chedini*, possessing then the Western parts of *Scandia*. Uniting with their Neighbours, both *Danes* and *Swedish*, they became better known in the flourishing times of the *French* Empire by the name of *Normans*; first called so by *Eginhartus* in his History of the Life of *Charles* the Great, insinuating then the Sea-coasts of *France* and *Belgium*. Under this name they fell so

heavily on the *French*, especially in the times of *Charles* the Simple, that they extorted from him that goodly Country, since of them called *Normandy*, conferred on *Rollo*, first Duke thereof, Anno 912, whose Successors much increased their glory by the Conquest of *England*; as some private Adventurers of them did by the Conquest of the Kingdoms of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Antioch*. Afterwards settling on their own bottom, every one of these Northern Nations acting by itself, they were called *Norwegians*: sometimes, as formerly, commanding over all three Kingdoms, subject successively to each; but most and soon governed by their own Kings, till their final Subjugation by the *Danes*. And as a Nation acting solely and by itself, they subdued *Ireland* under the conduct of *Turgissus*, who tyrannized there for a time; as also all the *Orkades* and the Isle of *Man*, fold or surrendered by them upon good conditions to the *English* and *Scots*, who by those Titles still possess them. The Catalogue of their Kings, leaving out all those of the darker times (parallel to our *Brute* and the first *Scottish* *Fergus*) as merely fabulous, we will begin with King *Suibadigerus*, who was King of all the three Kingdoms, and at his death divided them again amongst his three Sons; whose Successors Manster thus reckoneth.

#### The Kings of NORWAY.

1. *Suibadigerus*.
2. *Haddingus*.
3. *Hetharius*.
4. *Collerus*.
5. *Frogerus*.
6. *Gistarus*.
7. *Rotherus*.
8. *Helga*.
9. *Hajmannus*.
10. *Reginaldus*.
11. *Gimmarus*.
12. *Olmundus*.
13. *Olauus*.
14. *Olmundus* II. not long after whose time, Anno scilicet 800, the *Normans* began their Irruptions.
15. *Aquinus*.
16. *Heraldus*.
17. *Olauus*.

18. *Sueno*, King of *Denmark* by Birth and of *Norway* by Conquest.
19. *Olauus* III. Son of *Swain* or *Sueno*, succeeded in the Realm of *Denmark* and *Norway*, *Canutus* his younger Brother being King of *England*. In this King's time the *Norwegians* first received the Gospel.
20. *Canutus*, King of *England*, succeeded his Brother *Olauus* in the Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Norway*, to which he also added the Crown of *Sweden*.
21. *Sueno* II. by whom the Kingdom was restored to the *Norwegians*.
22. *Canutus* II.
23. *Magnus*.
24. *Harald* II.
25. *Magnus* II. King of *Sweden* and *Norway*.
26. *Magnus* III. King of *Sweden* and *Norway*, intending the Crown of *Sweden* for *Ericus* his eldest Son, conferred that of *Norway* on *Hagquin*, or *Aquinus*, his second Son.
27. *Aquinus*, King of *Norway*, younger Son of *Magnus* the third, married with *Margaret*, eldest Daughter of *Waldemar* the third, King

of *Denmark*; so uniting the Kingdom. And though *Olauus*, the only Son of his Bed, died young without any Issue; yet the *Danes*, having once got footing in *Norway*, so assured themselves of it, that they have ever since possessed it as a subject Kingdom, keeping the Natives to poor and low, that they are not able to assert their former Liberties, and not permitting them to use any Shipping, so much as for transporting their own Commodities, for fear they should grow wealthy and strong at Sea. Besides the strong Garrisons maintained in most parts of the Kingdom kept in in such an absolute Awe, that they dare not stir against the *Danes*, if their stomachs served them. So that now *Norway*, or both made subject to the Crown of *Denmark*, or both made Fellow-subjects to the same King, we must next look upon these Kingdoms, not as Kings of each distinct and separate from the other but as they are in Fact and Title.

#### The Kings of DENMARK and NORWAY.

- 1376 1. *Hagquin*, or *Aquinus*, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*: of this last by Descent, of the other by Marriage.
- 1380 2. *Olauus*, Son of *Aquinus* and *Margaret*.
- 1383 3. *Margaret*, Wife of *Aquinus*, Mother of *Olauus*, and Daughter of *Waldemar* the third, after the death of her Son, (in whose time she governed as his Guardian) took upon her the Kingdom in her own Right, not only keeping *Norway* in the State she found it, but adding unto *Denmark* the Crown of *Sweden*, won by the Vanquishment of *Albert* Duke of *Mecklenburg*, then King thereof. A gallant and magnanimous Lady, the *Semiramis* of *Germany*.
- 1411 4. *Ericus*, Duke of *Pomerania*, and Knight of the Garter, Son of the Lady *Mary*, Dutches of *Pomerania*, Daughter of *Ingeburgis*, the Sister of *Margaret*, by whom he was adopted for her Heir, succeeded after her decease in all the three Kingdoms: outed of all before his death by a strong Faction made against him, and his Estates conferred on
- 1439 5. *Christophher*, Count Palatine of the *Rhene*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, (but in Title only) the Son of *Margaret*, Sister of *Ericus*; chosen by the joint consent of all the States of these Kingdoms. After whose death (without Issue) the *Danes* considering the great advantage they had gotten by the addition of *Norway*, pitched upon *Adolphus*, Duke of *Sleswick* and Earl of *Holftein*, for the next Successor, that they might get in those Estates to their Kingdom also. Who, excusing himself by reason of his Age and want of Children, commended to them *Christiern* Earl of *Odenburg*, his Kinsman and next Heir, who was chosen accordingly.
- 1448 6. *Christiern*, Earl of *Odenburg*, upon the commendation of his Uncle *Adolphus*, chosen King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, succeeded his said Uncle in the Estates of *Holftein* and *Sleswick*, continuing since united unto that Crown, and added also thereto by Conquest the Kingdom of *Sweden*.

- 1482 7. *John*, Son of *Christiern*, succeeded in all three Kingdoms; Knight of the Order of the Garter.
- 1514 8. *Christiern II.* Son of *John*, King of *Denmark*, *Norway* and *Sweden*, which last he held under with great cruelty; hated by reason of his Tyranny toward all sorts of people, and ousted of his Kingdoms by his Uncle *Frederick*, Anno 1522. by whom at last he was taken and kept in prison till he died, Anno 1559.
- 1523 9. *Frederick*, Brother of *John*, and Uncle of *Christiern* the second, chosen King of *Denmark* and *Norway* on the Abdication of his Nephew, Reformed Religion in both Kingdoms according to the confession of *Angsborg*.
- 1535 10. *Christiern III.* suppressed with great trouble the Party formed against him in behalf of *Christiern* the second, perfected the Reformation begun in the time of his Father, and was a great Benefactor to the University of *Copenhagen*.
- 1559 11. *Frederick II.* Son of *Christiern* the third, subdued *Diemarsh*, before unconquered by the *Danes* or Earls of *Holfstein*, and added it unto that Dukedom, (both being united to that Crown though held of the Empire) Knight of the Garter.
- 1588 12. *Christiern IV.* Son of *Frederick* the second, Brother of *Anne* Queen of great *Britain*, and Knight of the Garter; who engaging in a War against the Emperor *Ferdinand* the second for the Liberty of *Germany*, was suddenly beat out of all the *Cimbrick* *Cheerfulness* by the prevailing Imperialists, but compounded the business upon very good Terms, and was restored to all his own.
- 1648 13. *Frederick III.* the youngest Son of *Christiern* the fourth, his eldest Brethren being all dead without Issue, succeeded in the Crowns of *Denmark* and *Norway*.

Having thus mustered up the Kings of these several Kingdoms, taken distinctly and conjunct; we must next look upon the way of their coming to their Royal Throne, their form of Government together with their Power, abilities and Revenues incident unto it. As for the manner of their coming to the Royal Throne, the *Danes* pretend their Kingdom to be Elective, and not Hereditary; yet so as they have always let the eldest Son on the Throne of his Father, unless some extraordinary occasion have disposed it otherwise. But they that look upon their Stories in the former times can see no such matter, the Kingdom going generally in the way of Succession, unless by Faction or Usurpation more popular and powerful Pretender hath interposed; as often times hath happened in such other Estates as are Hereditary merely, without claim or colour of Election. 'Tis true, that the Male-issue failing in *Olaus* the Son of *Margaret*, and the Princess which pretended by the Females after her decease not being of sufficient power to assert their Titles; the Kingdom was transferred to the house of *Oldenburg*, who held it on no other ground than by that of Election. Which, being an extraordinary case, is to make no Precedent, though seconded by the ousting of King *Christiern* the second, and the advancement of *Frederick* unto that Estate: these being acts of Violence and Force, and justified only by the false Topick of Success. But whoever lost by the hand, the *Danes* got well by it; King *Frederick* taking up the Crown upon such Conditions as have

made him and his Successors little more than Titular. For he was fain to swear at his Coronation, that he would put none of the Nobility to death or Banishment but by the judgment of the Senate, that the Great men should have power of Life and Death over their Tenants or Vassals; that no Appeal should lie from them to the King's Tribunal; nor the King be partaker of the Consecrations, nor, finally, advance any to Commands and Honours but by consent of his great Council. Which Oath being all taken by his Successors, made *Adams* say, *Non tam re ipsa quam appellatio Reges esse*; that they were only Kings in Title, but not Kings indeed. Yet in regard that the Nobility (so they call their Gentry) have but small Estates, none of them above the degree of Knights, (except only the Princes of the Blood) and that Decree conferred by the King alone; it is not often found that they have dared to cross or oppose their King, but when some of the Royal Family (out of private ends) have conferred with them in it as in the case of *Christiern* the 2. deposed by the People. but these people headed and set on by his Uncle *Frederick*, who had an eye upon the Crown.

As for the Senate or great Council, spoken of before, it consists wholly of men chosen out of the Nobility, (who are to prove their Gentry by a long Descent) seldom exceeding the number of 28. to each of which there is allowed a convenient Salary, with some fair Cattle in the Country for his Retirements, during his being of that Body: his whole Estate being freed also for that time from all publick Payments. Without their Council and advice the King is neither to determine of Peace or War, or to enter into any new League or Confederacies, nor impose any Tax upon the Subject; and unto them and the King jointly is the last Appeal: such being the Constitution of this Estate, that all Causes and Controversies are first decided in the Prefecture or Heret (184 in number) where they first arise: from whence it is lawful to appeal to the Judge of the Province, from him to the Chancellor of the Kingdom, and finally to the King and Council. By the Laws of *Waldemar* the first, who first reduced the Laws into set form and writing, the Bishops were to sit with his Council in all Causes of moment: but were discharged from that Employment by King *Christiern* the third, by whom it was also ordained, that the Clergy should not sell any of the Church-lands without leave of the King.

The Forces which this King or Kingdom are able to raise may best be seen by some of their particular Undertakings: those specially of *Christiern* the second, who, at the request of *Henry* the second of *France*, sent a Navy of an hundred Sail into *Scotland* against the *English*, and therein no fewer than 10000 Soldiers; and of *Frederick* then Duke of *Holfstein*, who in his War had them *Christiern*, (whose removal from the Crown he had then projected) brought 80000 men into the field to make good his Quarrel. And questionless considering the many Ports and Islands that this Crown is Master of, both within the *Baltick* and without, it cannot be but he may suddenly raise a strong power at Sea. And then considering that each of the Nobility, which are here so numerous enough, is bound to find a certain number of Horse upon all occasions; as are those also who hold Lands of the King, which the *Danes* call *Ferlenings*; it will accordingly be concluded, that they are able to make good Levies for a sudden Service, especially in defence of their own Dominions.

The Revenue of this King consisteth principally in the great Impost laid upon all Ships which pass through the Sound: the greatness whereof may easily be conjectured at by the multitude of Ships which of necessity must pass

pass by in the Trade of the *Baltick*, though of late somewhat lessened of what it was, since the *English* found out and frequented the Northern passage into *Muscovia*. There are also some Crown-lands, and a great yearly Toll made of the Cattel which pass into *Germany*; as also of the Fifth transported into other Countries. And yet it is conceived that the Treasures of this King are not very great: partly because there is no other important Commodity but Fish to draw Merchants thither; and partly that there is not any one Town of any great Traffick in all his Realms for the entertaining of Commerce.

The chief order of Knighthood in it is that of the Elephant, instituted by *Frederick* the second. Their Badge, a Collar powdered with Elephants towed, supporting the Kings Arms, and having at the end the picture of the Virgin Mary.

The Arms hereof are Quarterly, 1. Or, three Lions

passant *Verr*, crowned of the first, for the Kingdom of *Denmark*; and secondly, *Gules*, a Lion Rampant Or, crowned and armed of the first, in his Paws a *Dank* Hatchet Argent, for the Kingdom of *Norway*. What Arms belong to him as Duke of *Holfstein* and *Sleswick* I am yet to seek.

There are in *Denmark*

Archbishops 2. Bishops 13;

Universities 2. *Viz.*

*Copenhagen.* *Sora.*

And so much for the Kingdom of *DENMARK*.

O F

## SWETHLAND.

**S**WETHLAND is bounded on the East with *Moscow*, on the West with the *Dofvine* Hills, which divide it from *Norway*; on the North with the great Frozen Ocean, spoken of before, on the South with *Denmark*, *Liefland*, and the *Baltick* Sea. So called from the *Sueci*, *Suehens*, or *Suehidi*, and the word *Land*, added for a termination; of which more hereafter.

It is in length, from *Stockholm* unto the borders of *Lapland*, above 1000 Italian miles; and in breadth from *Stockholm*, lying on the *Budner* Sea, to the Borders of *Denmark*, about twenty good days journey on horseback: inasmuch as they which have travelled the length and breadth of it, on this side of *Lapland* and the Gulf or bay of *Budner*, account it little less than all *Italy* and *France* together; but taking in *Lapland*, and the Provinces on the other side of the Gulf, bigger than both by the quantity of 900 miles.

The situation of it in regard of the Heavenly bodies is the same with *Norway*, under the same Parallels and Degrees; but of so different a temper, both for Soil and Air, as if disposed of under several and long-distant Climates. For the Air here is very pure, but not fish-pur and insupportable as it is in *Norway*: though in some places, where the Moors and Waters fettle, for want of care to open and cleanse the Water-courses they have great Fogs and Mists, which do somewhat putrify it. And for the Soil, it is more fertile than any of the other Northern Provinces: so that besides those Necessaries which they keep for themselves, they usually transport into other Countries store of Malt and Barley; together with great quantities of Brass, Lead, Steel, Copper, Iron, the Hides of Goats, Bucks, Oxen, and costly Furs. They have also fine Mines of Silver, not mix with any other Metal; plenty of Fish in their Lakes and Rivers; abundance of Pine-trees, Firre, Oaks, both for Ships and Houses; yielding besides, among the

Woods, good store of Tar and Honey, and some other Necessaries. But hereof we shall speak more punctually in the several Provinces.

The principal Mountains of this Country are the *Dofvine* Hills, a vast and continual Ridge of Mountains which divide it from *Norway*. And though they want not Rivers fit for common uses, yet partly by reason of their great Frosts and flakes of Ice, partly by reason of the falling of Trees which lye cross their Channels, they have not many navigable, or any of great fame. The principal of such as be, are 1. *Adeler*, at the mouth whereof stands the City of *Stockholm*, 2. *Lusen*, 3. *Dac-lacarie*, giving name to the Province so called, or denominated from it. And of the Lakes, whereof here are exceeding many, that of most note is the Lake of *Werer*, which, receiving into it 24 Rivers, disburtheneth it self at one mouth into the *Baltick*, with such noise and fury, that they call it commonly the *Devil's* head.

The people are naturally strong and active, provident, patient and industrious; hospitable towards Strangers, whom they entertain with great Humanity; so healthy, that, if they do not shorten their days by Excess and Riot, they live commonly to 140 years of age; and so laborious, that a Beggar is not seen amongst them. Of no great note for Arts or Arms in the times foregoing: not much addicted to the one; and so kept under by the *Danes*, that they could not grow eminent in the other: but much improved in both respects in these later days. *Eriem*, the first King of the present Race, who cleared his Country of the *Danes*, and *Gustavus Adolphus*, the last King, who freed the *Germans* from the yoke of the House of *Austria*, not being easily to be matched in the Arts of War. And since they began to give themselves to the sweets of Learning, this Country hath produced (amongst some other learneth men) *Olaus Magnus*, Archbishop of *Upsal*, of great note for his History of the

*Gothland* / *Vandals* : the First-fruits of this Nation in the liberal Sciences. And it is probable, by reason of their late Commerce with the *German* Nations, they will give better testimony to the World hereafter of their proficiency in this kind, as being generally exceeding apt to learn the Arts Mechanical, every man in a manner being his own Artificer, without employing Smith, Mason, Carpenter, or any other manual Trades. Very valiant they are both on foot and horseback, which their long Wars against the *Danes*, and their late Wars in *Germany*, have given good proof of. Their Women are discreet and modest, free from that Intemperance which these Northern parts are subject to. Both sexes use a corrupt *Dutch*, common to all three Northern Kingdoms; except in *Finland*, and the Provinces on the other side of the *Bodner* Sea, where they partake somewhat of the *Moscovite* or *Russian* Language.

The Christian Religion was first planted amongst them by the care and diligence of *Aufgarus* Archbishop of *Breme*, the Apostle-general of the North. Corrupt with Popish Superstitions, it was reformed, according to the *Augustine* Confession, in the time of *Gustavus Ericus*, the first of that present Royal Family, solicited thereunto by one *Peter Neveius* a *Lutheran* Divine, and *Lawrence*, the Archdeacon of *Strengeus*; but chiefly moved (as others say) by a desire to appropriate to himself the Goods of the Church. And this appears to have had some strong influence upon him in it, that he presently seized upon what he pleased; and made a Law, that Bishops should enjoy no more than the King thought fit: yet having pretty well lessened their Revenues, he was content they should remain as formerly both in power and number; referring to himself and his Successors the Nomination of the persons, but so as the Approbation of the Clergy (in a kind of Election) doth usually go along with the Kings appointment.

The Bishops are in number seven: that is to say, 1. of *Lincon*, containing in his Diocese 226 Parishes. 2. Of *Vexime*, under whom are 210. 3. Of *Scara*, ruling over the same number of Churches. 4. Of *Strengeus*, under whom are a hundred only. 5. Of *Ab*, the greatest for extent of all, as comprehending under it 500 Parishes. 6. Of *Wyborg*, and 7. of *Halsby*, whose Dioceses for the most part lie out of the bounds of Sweden, in *Moscovia*, *Livonia*, and some other of the out-parts of the Realm of *Poland*. All of them are under the Archbishop of *Upsala*, their Metropolitan, whose Diocese, extending into *Lapland* and *Finnmark*, containeth 171 Parish-Churches. By which account there are in all the Kingdom of *Swethland* but 1417 Parishes; but many of them a thousand or eight hundred Families: the people being dispersed in Forests and other places, where they have flocks of Timber to build their houses, and flocks of Pasturage for their Cattel; which is the reason why they have not so many great Towns, nor so well inhabited, as is usual in far lesser Countries. As for the Authority of these Bishops, they still retain their Voice in Parliament, and with them so many of the inferior Clergy as are from every *Socken* (a certain number of Parishes, like our *Rural Decanries*) deputed to appear there in the name of the Church: the Affairs whereof the Bishops do direct and order, as well in as out of public Meetings, according to the Ecclesiastical Constitutions formerly established; and if any great occasion be, they may either advise with their Consistorials, or call a Diocesan Synod, (as they think most fit) and therein make such Laws and Canons as they conceive to be most proper for their own Edification.

The whole Kingdom is divided into two parts, the one lying on the East, the other on the West-side of the Bay or Gulf of *Bodner*, called *Sinus Bodicus* in *Latine*,

being a large and spacious Branch of the *Baltick* Sea, extending from the most Southern Point of *Gothland*, as far as to *Lapland* on the North. According to which division, we have the Provinces of 1. *Gothland*, and 2. *Sweden*, lying on the West-side of the Gulf; 3. *Lapland*, shutting it up upon the North; 4. *Bodius* or *Bodden*, and 5. *Finland*, on the East-side thereof; and 6. the *Swedish* Islands, where it mingleth with the rest of the *Baltick*.

## 1. G O T H L A N D.

**G O T H L A N D** is bounded on the East with the *Bodner* Sea, on the West with the Mountains which divide it from *Norway*, and so much of *Denmark* as lies in the same Continent with it, on the North with *Sweden*, on the South with the Sea *Baltick*. So called either from the *Goths*, whose original Country it is commonly affirmed to be, or *quasi* *goot Land*, from the goodness and fertility of the Soil, (*Gootlandia, quæ Germanice* Terra bona fert, as *Maginus* out of *Minster* hath it) the Soil being very fruitful for Corn and Cattel, affording plenty of Mines, with great store of Fish, and generally a better conditioned Country than any of the rest of these Northern Regions.

It is divided commonly into *Ostro-goth*, or *East-Gothland*; *West-Goth*, divided from the former by the great Lake of *Werer*, spoken of before; and *South-Gothland*, subdivided into *Smalandia*, *Tuiscia*, and *Vendia*. Chief Towns in *Ostrogoth* are, 1. *Lincon*, a Bishops See. 2. *Lodise*, adorned with a very fair Haven. In *West-Goth*, 3. *Scara*, on the Lake *Werer*, a Bishops See also. 4. *Elfsborg*, on the Western Sea, betwixt *Denmark* and *Norway*, a place of consequence, and flanked with two very strong Castles in the parts adjoining, the one called *Croning*, and the other *Goldberg*. 5. *Tragnalle*, remarkable for iron works, occasioned by the Mines adjoining. And finally, in *South-Gothland* there is 6. *Vexime*, or *Vexia*, another of the Episcopal Sees. 7. *Walburg*, a reasonable fair Town, with a strong Castle. 8. *Elchebni*, in that part bereft which is called *Vendia*, near the Confines of *Denmark*. 9. *Calmar*, a noted and well traded Port on the *Baltick* Sea, beautified with a Castle not inferior to that of *Milban*, and so well fortified throughout, that at the taking of it by *Christiern* the fourth of *Denmark*, Anno 1611, there were found mounted on the works 108 brass pieces of Ordnance, six Men of War to guard the Haven, with all manner of Ammunition in proportion to them. 10. *Gutenburg*, (or *Gothorum Burgus*) the chief Town of the *Goths* or *Gothland*, as the name importeth, enjoying a commodious Haven, on the *Baltick* also, and which is very frequented for the Trade of *Germany*, to the very much exceeding fity; the principal Town of all this Province, and for that cause the ordinary Seat or Residence of the Governor for the King of *Sweden*.

The first Inhabitants of the South parts of *Scandia* are commonly affirmed to have been the *GOTHS*, whom *Jornandes* in his Book de *Rebus Geticis* makes to have issued out of this Country, and to plant themselves on the North Banks of the *Ister*, near the *Euxine* Sea, some time before the *Trojan* War: ascribing to them what is reported in old Writers of the ancient *Serthians*, as their Encounter with *Vexoris* or *Sofstris* the King of *Aegypt*, the Aids and Achievements of the *Amazons*, their Congress with *Alexander* the Great in his Persian War, and the like to these. In which *Jornandes*, being himself a *Goth*, is no more to be credited than *Gessey* of *Northumbria*, a *Welsh* man, in the Story of *Brute* and his Successors, to whom he doth ascribe the taking and sacking of *Rome* under the conduct of *Brennus*, whom he makes to be

he the Brother of *Belinus* a King of *Britain*. Most probable it is, that they were originally, a *Dutch* or *German* people, part of the great Nation of the *Sarav*, called by *Tacitus* the *Gothines*, inhabiting in his time (as it is conceived) in the Land of *Prussia*; who, finding their own Country too narrow for them, might pass over the *Baltick* into the next adjoining Regions; and not well likely that cold Climate might afterwards in some good numbers go to seek new Dwellings, and at last fix themselves where the Banks of the *Ister*, where *Jornandes* found them. That they were *Dutch* originally, besides the general name of the *Goths*, or *Gothi*, and those of *Ostro-gothi* and *West-gothi*, into which they were afterwards divided, the particular names of *Alaric*, *Theodorick*, *Riccard*, (the names of their Kings and Captains) seem to me to evidence. That they were once seated in this Country doth appear as plainly, 1. by the name of *Gothland* here still remaining; 2. by the Title of *Rex Gothorum*, which the Kings of *Swethland* keep in the Royal Style; 3. by the same Inscriptions in ancient unknown Characters engraven on the Rocks near *Schar* in the Continent, and in *Wadby* in the *Illes* of *Guthland*, supposed by learned men to be some monument of that People. And finally, that their first Dwelling, when first known by this name amongst the *Romans*, was on the North-side of the *Ister*, is evident by the testimony of all ancient Writers, from the time of *Annius* *Caracalla*, with whom they had some tumultuary Stirrings in his way towards *Perfia*, till their violent Irruption into *Italy* and the Western Provinces: most famous in this Interval for a great Fight with *Decius* the *Roman* Emperor, whom they overcame and slew in a Battle, Anno 253. In the time of *Valens* and *Valentinian*, the *Roman* Emperors, a Quarrel being grown amongst them, managed by *Phritigeres* and *Athanaricus*, the Leaders of the opposite Factions; *Phritigeres*, overthrown in fight, had recourse to *Valens*, from whom he received such Succours, that giving his Adversary another day for which he obtained the Victory. Whereupon *Phritigeres* and his Party received the Gospel, but intermixt and corrupt with the Leaven of *Arianism*, by the practice of *Valens*, who sent them none but *Arian* Teachers, to whom and their Factions in the Church he was wholly addicted. Afterwards the whole Nation being driven over the *Ister* by the barbarous *Huns*, they obtained of *Valens* the out-parts of *Torace* for an Habitation, on condition they should serve under the pay of the Emperor, and become Christians: the cause that *Arianism* over-spread the whole Nation generally, which had before infested but one part only. *Ulphilas*, a devout and learned man, was their first Bishop; who, for their better Edification in the way of Godliness, invented a new *Gothick* Character, and translated the Scriptures into that Language: in the study whereof they so well proficited, that many of them in the time of their first Conversion suffered death for it at the hands of *Athanaricus*, and were counted Martyrs. Persecuted by *Valens*, and denied their accustomed Pay, they harried and depopulated the rest of *Torace*, marching towards *Constantinople*, encountered in the way by *Valens*, whom they overcame and killed, after all his Favours. Vanquished by *Theodosius* the succeeding Emperor in many Battles, they became good neighbours, enlarging their Bounds with his leave and licence as far as *Pannonia*, and grown into such estimation with him, that *Ricimer* and *Antagath*, two of that Nation, did obtain the Consulship: not to say any thing of that exorbitant power and favour which *Gaisas* had attained unto in the Court itself. Made insolent by so great Honours, and apt to pick Quarrels with their Patrons, they invaded *Italy* in two great Batches, committing of no fewer than 200000 fighting men. The first whereof, under the Conduct of *Ra-*

*dagisus*, was discomfited and cut in pieces by *Stilico*, Lieutenant to *Honorius* the Western Emperor, at *Fevula* in the Streights of the *Appennine*. The other, by his Treachery permitted to pass, sacked *Rome*, and subdued the most part of *Italy*, under the leading of *Alaricus*. He dying immediately after this great Victory, left the fruits of it to his Son *Athanalsus*, who, marrying with *Galla Placidia*, the Emperor's Sister, relinquished *Italy*, and had all *Gallia Narbonensis*, and a great part of *Hispania Tarraconensis*, assigned unto him, where he erected the Kingdom of the *West-Goths* or *Western* *Goths*, possessed of *Spain* and *Tingitana* for the space of 300 years and upward, when they lost that Kingdom to the *Moor*s, as hath been said. In the mean time the *Goths* which were left in their own Countries, distinguished from these by the name of *Ostro-Goths*, by reason of their more Eastern situation, kept themselves in quiet: being first subdued by the *Huns*, and when by *Wlami* freed from that subjection, not intermeddling or attempting any thing against the Empire, till called by *Zeno* Emperor of *Constantinople* into *Italy* against *Odoacer* and the *Herali*, who had then subdued it. Which action they managed with so much prudence and good fortune by their King *Theodorick*, that they vanquished *Odoacer*, possessed *Italy*, and held it above 60 years; when, broken in many last Battles by *Belisarius* and *Narses*, Lieutenants for the Emperor *Justinian*, their Kingdom and Name there came unto an end.

As for the Kings of the *Goths*, we have a succession of them in *Jornandes* from *Berig*, who first conducted them out of *Scandia* towards the East, till the going of *Theodorick* into *Italy*; but made up with so little probability, that I dare give no more credit to it than the Stories of *Bride*, *Dan*, *Fergus*, or the Lady *Scota*, *Pharo's* Daughter. Such of whom there is any certain knowledge and succession are these few that follow.

## The Kings of the G O T H S.

- 344 1. *Athanaricus*, King of the *Goths* in the time of *Constantinus* and *Constantius*, the Sons of *Constantine* the Great.
- 357 2. *Alaricus*, the first of that name, in the time of *Constantinus*.
- 361 3. *Phritigeres*, King of the *Goths* in the time of *Valens*, the first Christian Prince among that People.
- 370 4. *Athanaricus II.* in the time of the Emperours *Valens*, *Gratian*, and *Valentinian* the second; under whom the *Goths* were first settled on this side of the *Ister*.
- 379 5. *Rhadagisus*, who in the time of *Honorius* first led the *Goths* into *Italy*; slain at the Battle of *Fevula*.
- 410 6. *Alaricus II.* who, pursuing the War of *Italy*, sacked *Rome*, subdued *Naples*, and the most of *Italy*.
- 412 7. *Athanalsus*, the Son of *Alarick* the second, who first erected the Kingdom of the *West-goths* in *Gaul* and *Spain*, continuing there for the space of 300 years and upwards; the present Kings of *Spain* coming from this Stock.
- 417 8. *Athalaricus*, King of the *Goths* remaining in the East at the departure of *Rhadagisus* and *Alaricus*, distinguished from their Plantations by the name of *Ostro-Goths*: vanquished by *Attila*, they became Subjects to the *Huns* in the time of *Theodosius* the second and *Valentinian* the third, Emperours of the East and West.

9. *Wilamir*, one of the Blood-Royal of the *Goths*, Vallat to *Attila* at the first, whom he assisted, or served rather, in the great Battle near *Toulon* against the *Romans*: but, taking advantage of some Quarrel amongst the Sons of *Attila*, took off that Yoke, and recovered the Kingdom of the *Goths*, in the time of the Emperor *Marcianus*.

10. *Theodoric*, Son of *Winithar*, and Brother of *Wilamir*, in the time of *Leo* Emperor of *Constantinople*.

11. *Theodoric*, Son of *Theodoric*, kept at *Constantinople* in his youth as a Pledge or Hostage for his Father, where he was instructed in all the *Greek* and *Roman* Learning, and made the adopted Son (as is said by *Scaliger*) of the Emperor *Zeno*, by whom he was sent into *Italy* against *Odoacer* and the *Hornli*, and erected there the Kingdom of the *Ostrogoths*, which continued till the Reign of *Justinian*, when it was destroyed by *Belisarius* and *Narjes*, as before is said: the name of *Goths* in *Italy* being thus extinct, but their Blood intermixt with the best *Italian*. The sum of their whole Story, for varieties sake, take thus out of *Du Bartas*.

The warlike *Goth*, which whilem issued forth  
From the cold frozen Islands of the North,  
Incamp'd by *Vistula*: but the Air almost  
B'ing there as cold as in the *Baltick* Coast,  
He with victorious Arms *Scalonia* gains,  
The *Transylvanian* and *Valachian* Plains;  
Then flies to *Tracia*, and then leaving *Greeks*,  
Greedy of Spoil, four times he bravely seeks  
To pluck from *Rome* (then *Mary*'s Minion)  
The Plum: which the from all the World had won,  
Guided by *Rhadagise* and *Alarick*,  
Bold *Vindimir* and *Theodoric*, (Legions  
Thence flies to *France*; from whence expult, his  
Rest ever since upon the *Spanish* Regions.

The Arms of these Kings are said to have been *Or*, three Ravens with displaced wings *Purple*, membered *Gules*. And let this suffice for the Original, Successes, and final Period of the *Goths*; reserved by me into this place, because most commonly conceived to be their original Country, at least the place out of which they issued when they first moved towards the East to seek new Dwellings.

## 2. SWEDEN.

*SWEDEN* is bounded on the East with the *Bohner* Sea, on the West with the *Doefrine* Hills, which part it from *Norway*, on the North with *Lapland*, on the South with *Gothland*. So called from the *Sueathans*, or *Saethidi*, the old Inhabitants thereof, of whom more anon. A Country sufficiently fruitful, but for the goodness of the Soil inferior to *Gothland*, and not so well planted or inhabited as that is, by reason of the vast Woods which they will not suffer to be destroyed, and the greatness of some Marthes hitherto undrained: but might be made as rich and fertile, if the people would, as appears by that plenty of Corn growing amongst the Woods, though much hindered by their shade and thickness both from Sun and Rain. But for the Character of this Country, we had it formerly, when we spoke of *Swethland*, in the general, relating specially to this as the principal Part.

And as the largest and principal part of this great Body, it contains in it many Provinces and Subdivisions:

as namely, 1. *Upland*, 2. *Sudermannia*, 3. *Nericia*, 4. *Westmannia*, 5. *Delecarlie*, 6. *Vernland*, 7. *Coperalde*, 8. *Geftricia*, 9. *Helsingia*, 10. *Middlefjar*, 11. *Angermannia*, bordering on *Lapland*, the farthest of these Provinces towards the North. Many of these have no Towns or Cities of any greatness or beauty, the people living thin and scattered, where they have Wood for Building, Pasture for their Beasts, and elbow-room enough for themselves and their Cattel. Of these the principal are, 1. *Upland*, an Archbishop's See, and an University, situate not far from the Bay of *Bodner*, beautified with a large Cathedral, wherein many of the ancient Kings of *Swethland* are interred. From this City the Country hereabouts is styled *Archiepiscopatus Upsalensis*. 2. *Holm*, by the Inhabitants called *Stockholm*, by the *Russians* *Siecolne*, the Royal Seat of the Kings, a noted and well traded Port, and the chief of the Kingdom; exceeding strong both by Art and Nature, as being situate in the Marthes, like *Venice*, at the mouth of the Lake or River of *Atter*, the passage to it out of the Bay being very narrow, and by consequence easily defended, and yet so deep within, that the greatest Ships of Burthen may sail up to the City: the Port within the Strait being so safe and capacious, that it is able to receive at one time 300 Sail, which usually ride there without any Anchor. The Castle of this City is conceived to be one of the strongest holds in the world, fortified for the more assurance of it with 400 brass Pieces, many of which are double Canon. 3. *Nicepon*, a town on the same Bay also. These three are in that part hereof which is called *Upland*. There there is 4. *Strengur*, an Episcopal See, and 5. *Telga*, on the Lake of *Melr*, in the Province of *Sudermannia*; the Tide and Estate of *Charles*, Father of *Gustavus Adolphus* late King of *Sweden* before his getting of the Crown called Duke of *Sudermania*. Next, in the Province of *Westmannia*, there are 6. *Arby*, on the West-side of the said Lake of *Melr*; and 7. *Arby*, rich in Silver-mines, out of which are made the best Bullets of *Sweden*: the Mines here being so rich and profitable, that out of every fifteen pound weight of Silver the workmen draw a pound weight of Gold. 8. *Helsing*, upon the Bay of *Bodner*, in the Province of *Helsingia*, taking name from hence, 9. *Orbo* or *Ornbo* a strong piece in *Nericia*; and 10. *Lesinger*, on the Bay of *Bodner*, one of the farthest North of *Sweden* distinctly and specially so called.

## 3. LAPLAND.

*LAPLAND*, the most Northern part of all *Scandia*, hath on the East *Russia*, on the West the Province or Prefecture of *Wardhus* in the Kingdom of *Norway*, on the North the main Frozen Ocean, and on the South *Bodia*, or *Bodden*, on both sides of the Bay so called.

It is named thus originally from the *Lappi* or *Lappers*, the Inhabitants of it, as they are from the old blockish behaviour; the word *Lappi* signifying the flesh with *insipis* or *insulsi* in *Latine*; for such they are, rude, barbarous, and without the knowledge of Arts or Letters, as except without Corn and Houses, or any certain Habitations (except only in *Finnmark*), feeding for the most part on Fish and the flesh of wild Beasts, with the Skins whereof sowed together they hide their nakedness. Generally they are meer Idolaters, giving Divine honour all the day following to that living Creature, whatsoever it be, which they see at their first setting out in the morning; great Sorcerers, and abhorring the sight of Strangers, whom till of late they used to flee from at their first approach, but within few years past beginning to be more tractable and familiar. In a word, they are the true descendants of the ancient *Finni*, (possessed in old times of all that Tract which lieth between the Bay of *Finland* and the

Frozen

Frozen Ocean) whose natural rudeness and barbarity, unmixt with the condition of more civil people, they do still retain.

It is divided into the Eastern and the Western *Lapland*. The former appertaining to the *Knez* or Great Duke of *Moscovy*, by which people the Inhabitants are called *Moscovy*, or the wild *Lappians*, is subdivided into *Biarma* and *Corelia*, of which, if there be any thing in them worth taking notice of, we shall there speak more. The latter doth belong to the Crown of *Sweden*, subdivided into two parts also, that is to say, 1. *Finnmark*, and 2. *Seriefinnia*.

1. *FINMARK*, being that part hereof which lieth next unto *Norway*, is the more populous of the two. The people are for the most part Idolatrous, but by the neighbourhood of the *Norwegians*, and resort of Strangers unto *Wardhus* and the parts adjoining, somewhat civilized, and in the Borders of both Kingdoms favouring of Religion, possessed of Sheds or forry Houses, and of those Houses reduced to Parishes under the Jurisdiction of the Archbishop of *Upsal*; the chief of which (if there be any chief amongst them) are named, 1. *Sammar*, and 2. *Hells*, called *Finnmark*, as the ancient Bounds and Marches of the *Finni* (of whom more anon) and therefore erroneously by *Magnus* made apart of the Kingdom of *Norway*.

2. *SERIEFINNIA* lieth between *Finnmark* and *Russia*. The name is derived from the *Finni*, a great People of *Scandia*, and *Serikien*, a Dutch word signifying *hopping*, *liking*, or *bouncing*, for such is their gate. An Etimologie not much improbable, in that the Wooden-soled-shoes with sharp bottoms, which they used for their more speedy sliding over the Ice, of which this Country is full, are by the *Germans* (who also use them) called *Serick* *hoben*, or Sliding-shoes. The ancient Writers call this people *Serick* *finni*.

These are indeed the natural and proper *Laplenders*, and unto these the former Character doth of right belong. Of stature very low, little more than Pygmies, but strong and active; well skill'd in Archery, and patient of Cold and Labour; much given to hunting of wild Beasts, whom they kill with their Bowes, devour the Flesh, and cloath themselves with their Skins, which they tie at the top of their Heads, and leave no place open but for the sight; giving thereby occasion unto some to write that they are hairy all over, like Kine or Horses. Such Deer (whereof they have great plenty) as they take unkill'd, they make to draw in little Carts, as they shift their Quarters. But having served them for a while, they are killed at last, though perhaps for nothing but their Skins: a certain number of which they pay yearly to the King of *Sweden* in the way of Tribute. Three Companies of these *Laplenders*, so clad and Armed, as aforesaid, came into *Germany* in the year 1630, to serve *Gustavus Adolphus* in those Wars: looked on with admiration by all Spectators.

Towns we must look for none here, where no Houses be; and yet there are some Sheds and Cabbins on the Sea-shore, which Mariners having made for their refreshment when they came on Land, have bestowed some names on, and possibly in time may become good Towns, now not worth the naming.

## 4. BODIA.

*BODIA*, *BODDEN*, or *BODNER*, is situate on the South of *Seriefinnia*, betwixt it and the Bay or Gulf hence named; extending Southwards on the West side of it, till it joins to *Sweden*, and on the East side, till it meets with the Province of *Fisland*.

Hence is the division of this country into the *Eastern*, *Northern* and *Western* *Badden*, with reference to the Situation of it on the Bay aforesaid. The Country is not very plentiful of Grain or Fruits, but full of great variety of wild Beasts, whose rich Skins yield great profit unto the Inhabitants, and by reason of the commodious situation on all sides of the Bay, it is well stored with Fish. Accidentally it was part of the possessions of the *Finni*, but how or whence it had the name of *Bodia*, *Bodden* or *Bodner*, I am yet to learn. But whencesoever it had the name, certain I am, that from hence the Gulf adjoining is called *Sinus Bodicus*, the *Bodner* Zee by the *Dutch* or *Germans*.

Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Birkara*, in *West* *Bodden*, betwixt the Bay and a great navigable Lake. 2. *Toronia*, a well-traded Empory at the very bottom of the Bay, in *North* *Bodden*. 3. *Helsingiac*, more North than that, towards the Borders of *Lapland*. And 4. *Kerlabi* in *East* *Bodden*, on the Bank of the Gulf, conveniently seated for a Town of Trade.

## 5. FINLAND.

*FINLAND* hath on the North *Bodia*, on the South the *Baltick* Sea or *Mare Suevicum*, on the East *Sinus Finnicus*, on the West *Sinus Bodicus*. It is by *Mansler* thought to be called *Finland*, quasi *fin* land; *quid* *paleior* *et* *amano* *is* *Suecia*, because it is a more fine and pleasing Country than *Sweden* it self. But indeed it is so called from the *Finni* or *Fenni*, a potent Nation who have here dwelt, whose Character is thus framed by *Tacitus*, *Finni* *nis* *minia* *Fortis*, *seda* *Pauperis*, *non* *Arma*, *non* *Equi*, *non* *Penates*, *Vitui* *Herba*, *Vitui* *Pellet*, *Cubili* *Humis*, *Isa* *In Sagittis* *ipse*. True *Finni*, faith he, are wonderful barbarous, miserably poor without Arms, Horse, or Household-goods; Herbs their Food, the Ground their Bed, and the Skins of Beasts their best Apparel, armed only with their Arrows, and in them their hopes. A Character which agreeth every way with our present *Finlanders*, especially those of *Seriefinnia* and some parts of *Finnmarkia*, who are not so well reclaimed to Civility as the other are: but very different from that which *Forander* gives them, who, living within 400 years after *Tacitus*, before they had much (if any) intercourse with foreign Nations, telleth us of them, that they were *Scandinavii*, *Cultoribus omnibus mitiores*, more tractable and civil than any of the Inhabitants of *Scandia*, not excepting the *Suebidi* themselves. If so, they did deserve to live in good country, more plentiful and plain than *Sweden*, and neither so hilly nor so moorish.

The principal places in it are, 1. *Abos*, an Archbishop's See, situate on the most Southern Point of it, thooting into the *Baltick*, 2. *Wiborg*, a Bishops See also, whose Jurisdiction for the most part is without this Province, on some part of *Russia*, all *Finland* being it the Diocese of the Bishop of *Abos*. A Town conveniently seated at the bottom of the Bay or Gulf of *Finland*, (called *Sinus Finnicus* in *Latine*) which divides this Country from *Livonia*; well fortified as the chief Bulwark of this Kingdom against the *Moscovites*; and so well garnished withal, that the keeping of this Town, doth cost the King of *Sweden* 100000 Dollars yearly. 3. *Udden*, on a Point or Promontory of the same Gulf, opposite to *Narva*, another Garrison of this King in *Liesland*. 4. *Vorma*, upon the *Bodner* Zee. 5. *Cronaburg*, more within the Land, at the efflux of a River out of the Lake called *Piente*, 6. *Deckala*, on the Banks of the great Lake called *Holela*. 7. *Vorta*, more Northwards towards *Lapland*. Of which last four I find not any thing observable in the way of Story.

## 6. The SWEDISH Islands.

AND now at last I come to the *Swedish Islands*, here and there interperfed in the *Baltick Seas*, betwixt the *Ile of Bornholm*, which belongs to *Denmark*, and *Lifland* or *Livonia*, appertaining to the *King of Poland*: the principal of which are, 1. *Gothia*, or the *Ile of Gothland*, 2. *Infula Oland*, or the *Iles of Oeland*.

1. *GOTHIA*, or the *Ile of GOTHLAND*, is fituate over againft *Calmar*, a ftrong Town in the Continent of *Gothland*, in length 18 *Dutch miles*, and five in breadth, of a rich Soil, but more fit for Pafturage than Tillage, yielding great Herds of Cattel, ftore of Game for Hunting plenty of Fifh, excellent Marble, and abundance of Pitch, which it fendeth forth to other Countries. There are in, it 18 large and wealthy Villages, befides the Haven Town of *Wifby*, heretofore rich and of very great Trading, as much frequented by the Merchant as moft in *Europe*; but now much decayed, and neither fo well peopled nor fo rich as formerly. The Trade removed hither from *Wolin* in *Pomerania* (destroyed by *Waldemar* the fifth of *Denmark*, Anno 1170) made it flourifh mightily, the greateft Traffick of the *Baltick* being managed here; but after that by reafon of the long and continual Wars betwixt *Denmark* and *Swethland* for the poffeffion of this *Ile*, it became unfafe, the Faftory was transferred unto other places. For being conveniently fited to annoy the *Swedes*, the *Danes* have much contented for it, and fometimes poffeffed it; but at the prefent it is in the hand of the *Swethlander*. By fome conceived to be the *Eungia* fpooken of by *Pliny*.

2. *OELAND*, or the *Iles of Oland*, fo called in the plural Number, becaufe there are many of them, of which this the principal is fituate over againft *Abo*, the chief City of *Finland*. Of no great note, but that it is commodiouly fited to invade or annoy this Kingdom; and therefore very well fortified and as ftrongly garrifoned: here being the good Towns of *Viborg*, *NAMES*, and 3. the ftrong Caftle of *Caftrum*.

Befides which Countries here defcribed, the *King of Sweden* is poffeffed of the ftrong Towns of *Narva*, and *Ruifalia*, or *Revel*, and *Pernau* in *Lifland* of *Kexholm*, or *Hexholm*, in *Corelia*, a Province of *Ruffia*; with very fair and ample Territories appertaining to them: fubdued and added to this Crown by *John* the fecond, An. 1581; except *Ruifalia*, which voluntarily fubmitted to *Ericus* the fecond King of this prefent Race, An. 1561. But being thefe Towns and Territories are not within the Bounds of *Swethland*, we fhall defer all farther difcuffure thereof to a place more proper.

The firft Inhabitants of this Kingdom, befides the *Goths* and *Finni* fpooken of already, were the *Sirones* and *Suiones*, mentioned in *Tacitus*; together with the *Phavones*, the *Phiræi*, and the *Levoni*, whom we find in *Ptolemy*, placed by him in the Eaft and midle of this great *Peninfula*. Which, being the general names of fome mighty Nations, are by *Jornandes* branched into leffer Tribes of the *Sueths*, *Therifad*, *Fingeb*, *Bergio*, *Malili*, *Liothidi*, *Aethelid*, *Storogob*, *Raurmarice*, *Raurgnoici*, *Graunii*, *Agmæzi*, *Onitæ*, *Arochiamii*, *Enagæzi*, *Othingi*, and divers others by him named. But from what root the name of *Swedæi*, *Swædes*, or *Swethland*, by which the chief Province of it, the people generally and the whole Kingdom is now called, is not yet agreed on; nor fpooken of at all by *Munfter* or *Cranzins*; which two but (fpecially the laft) have written purpofely of this people. *Gaſper Pen-cerus* deriveth them from the *Suevi*, who anciently inhabited in the North parts of *Germany*, beyond the *Albi*; from whom the *Baltick* Sea was called *Alare Suevicum*:

which people he conceiveth to have been driven, by the *Goths* and *Daci* into this Country, and by the change of one letter only to be called *Sueci*. But this hath no good ground to ftand on, though I meet with many others which are more improbable. For when they left thofe colder Countries they fell into thefe parts which are ftill called *Suevia*, (the *Schwaben* of the modern *Dutch*) where we find *Suevi* in the time of *Cæſar*. And after, in *ſtadi illa Gentium commigratione*, when almoft all the Northern Nations did ſhift their Seats, we find ſuch of them as had flaid behind to have accompanied the *Vandals* in their On-falls into *Gaul* and *Spain*. Of any Expedition of their proſs the *Baltick* Seas, *ne gry quidem*, nothing to be found in more ancient Authors. We muſt therefore refer the original of this people either to the *Suiones*, or the *Suethidi*, or perhaps to both; both being anciently ſetled in theſe Northern Regions. Of the *Suiones* we read in the Book of *Tacitus* inſcribed *De Moribus Germanorum*; by whom they are reported to be ftrong in Men, Armour and Shipping. And that they were Inhabitants of *Scandia*, appears by two Circumſtances in that Author.

1. That the people were not permitted to wear Weapons, *quia ſubitoſt Hoſtium Inerſus prohibet Oceanus*, becauſe the Ocean was to them a ſufficient Rampart? which could not be affirmed of the ancient *Sueviani*, but agreeeth very well with the ſituation of this prefent Country, defended by the *Baltick* and vaſt Northern Ocean from the ſudden Aſſaults of any Enemy. 2. Becauſe the Sea which hemmed in that people was conceived to be the utmoſt bounds of the World; *Trans Suiones Mare aliud, quæſingis claudique Terrarum orbis fines*, as his words there are: which we know to hold good of this Country. 3. Add unto theſe this paſſage of the old Annals of the Emperor *Lewis* the ſecond, where it is told us of the *Danes*, *reſtitæ patria apud Suiones exſulabant*, that they were baniſhed into the Country of the *Suiones*, which cannot fo well be underſtood of any place as of this *Sweden*, being next neighbour unto *Denmark*, And 4. that this People both by *Munſter* and *Cranzins*, are as well called *Suiones*, as *Sueci* or *Suedi*; which ſheweth what they conceived of their true Original. Then for the *Suethidi* or the *Suethidi*, whom *Jornandes* ſpeaks of in his Book *De rebus Geticis*, they are by him placed in the *Ile of Scandia*, (for ſuch this great *Peninfula* was termed to be by moſt ancient Writers.) Now that theſe *Suethidi* are no other than the prefent *Swethlanders* appeareth 1. by the propinquity of the Names. 2. In that he maketh the *Finni* and *Finniaſtha* the next neighbours to them. And 3. in that they are affirmed by the ſame Author to have furniſhed the *Romans* with rich Furrs, and the *ſkins* of wild Beaſts, with which Commodities this Country is abundantly well ſtored. Now to which of theſe two Nations, either the *Suiones* or the *Suethidi* thoſe of *Sweden* are moſt indebted for their Original, will (I conceive) be no great controverſie: the *Sueths* and *Suethidi* of *Jornandes* being no other than a Title of the *Suiones*, though the greateſt and moſt powerful of all thoſe Tribes; placed therefore in the Front to command the reſt, and fo moſt like to give the name unto the whole.

Their Government was anciently under Kings affirmed to ſole by *Tacitus*, who telleth us alſo that they were abſolute and free, *nallis exceptionibus, non precario jure regnandi*; not bound in Covenant with their people, nor holding their Eſtates at the will of the Subject. But their Hiſtorians have gone for Antiquity herof beyond the ſtory of *Brute* or the *Trojan* War, (beyond which very few of that ſtrain have dared to pretend) as high as unto *Magog* the Son of *Japhet*, reigning here within 90 years after the Flood. But letting paſs theſe Dreams and Doras

ges of the Monkh times, certain it is that ſometimes they were under the *Danes*, ſometimes under the *Norwegians*, ſometimes had diſtinct Kings of their own; and finally ſometimes were comprehended with the *Danes* and *Norwegians* under the general names of *Normans*, conducted by one King or Captain upon Foreign Adtions. Omitting therefore the Succeſſion of their former Kings, we will begin our Catalogue of them with *Jernanctus*, who entertained *Herald* King of *Denmark* and his Brother *Regerfride*, driven out of that Kingdom by *Goricus* or *Godfrey*, the Contemporary of *Charlemagne*; of whoſe Succeſſors *Munſter* giveth us more certainty.

## The Kings of SWEDEN.

1. *Jernanctus*.
2. *Frotho*.
3. *Herutus*.
4. *Sorlus*.
5. *Biorinus*.
6. *Wichſertus*.
7. *Ericus*.
8. *Offenus*.
9. *Sturbiornus*.
10. *Ericus II.*
11. *Olau*.
12. *Edmundus*.
13. *Stinkus*.
14. *Halſteus*.
15. *Animander*.
16. *Agninus*.
17. *Magnus*.
- 1150 18. *Sherco*. 10.
- 1160 19. *Carolus*. 8.
- 1168 20. *Centus*. 54.
- 1222 21. *Ericus III.* 27.
- 1249 22. *Byrgerius*. 2.
- 1251 23. *Waldemarus*. 26.
- 1277 24. *Magnus II.* 13.
- 1290 25. *Byrgerius II.* 23.
- 1313 26. *Magnus III.* Son to *Ericus* the Brother of *Byrgerius* was alſo choſen King of *Norway*.
- 1326 27. *Magnus IV.* King of *Sweden* and *Norway*, which laſt he gave in his life time to *Hagrus* or *Agninus* his ſecond Son; and after the death of *Ericus* his eldeſt Son (his deſigned Succeſſors in this Crown) was outed of this Kingdom by the practice of
- 1363 28. *Albert*, Duke of *Mecklenburg*, Son of *Euphemia*, the Siſter of *Magnus* King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, made King of *Sweden*, on that Quarrel Vanquiſhed by *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* and *Norway* Widow of *Agninus*, Anno 1387: to whom, deſirous of liberty, he reſigned his Kingdom, and died in his own Country, Anno 1407.
- 1387 29. *Margaret*, Queen of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*, the *Semiramis* of *Germany*, having united the three Kingdoms under her Command, cauſed an Act of State to be paſſed in *Calmar*, a chief Town in *Swethland*, for the perſecution of this Union unto her Succeſſors the Law and Privileges of each Kingdom continuing as before they were.
- 1411 30. *Ericus IV.* Duke of *Pomeran*, adopted by *Margaret*, of whoſe Siſter *Ingelburgis* he was defended, was in her life time choſen King of the three Kingdoms, into which he ſucceeded

- 1439 31. *Chriſtopher*, Count *Palatine* and Duke of *Bavaria*, (in Title only) Son of the Lady *Margaret*, Siſter of *Ericus*, ſucceeded in all three Kingdoms. After whoſe death the *Swethlanders*, being weary of the *Danish* Government, broke the Agreement made at *Calmar*, for the uniting of the three Kingdoms under one Prince, and choſe one *Carolus Canutus* to be their King, Anno 1448.
- 1448 32. *Carolus Canutus*, one of the meanest of the Nobility, and not long pleaſing to the great ones: whoſe Diſpleaſure when he had incurred, and ſeared the conſequents thereof, he gathered together all the Treafure he could, fled unto *Dantzick*, and there ended his days.
- 1455 33. *Chriſtiern*, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, called in by a Party of the *Swedes*, and crowned King of *Swethland*; but outed again under colour that he had not kept Conditions with them: the Kingdom being governed after that for a time by Marſhals.
- 1458 34. *John*, King of *Denmark* and *Norway* the Son of *Chriſtiern*, received King by the *Swedes*, then over-powered by the *Miſſcovite*: but their turn being ſerved, they expelled him again, returning to their former Government under Marſhals. Of which Marſhals (deſcended from *Steno Star*, the Uncle of *Carolus Canutus* by his Mother's ſide) there were three in number, viz. 1. *Steno*, 2. *Suanto*, and 3. *Steno Star* the ſecond: of which the two firſt died natural deaths, and the laſt being by *Chriſtiern* the ſecond ſlain in Battle, this Kingdom was again poſſeſſed by the *Danes*.
- 1519 35. *Chriſtiern II.* King of all three Kingdoms, uſed his Victory ſo cruelly here, and his Subjects ſo inſolently at home, that here he was outed by *Güſtavus Ericus* and driven out of *Denmark* by his Uncle *Frederick*.
- 1523 36. *Güſtavus Ericus*, deſcended from the ancient Race of the Kings of *Sweden*, having vanquiſhed and expelled the *Danes*, was on the merit of that adion choſen King of *Swethland*, which ſtill continueth in his Houſe.
- 1561 37. *Ericus V.* Son to *Güſtavus* 8.
- 1569 38. *John II.* Brother of *Ericus*, married *Catherine* the Siſter of *Sigismund* the ſecond, King of *Poland*.
- 1593 39. *Sigismund*, the Son of *John* the ſecond, in the life-time of his Father choſen King of *Poland*, Anno 1586, but was diſpoſſeſſed of the Crown of *Sweden* (after a long War) by his Uncle *Charles*.
- 1607 40. *Charles II.* Duke of *Suderman*, the youngſt Son of *Güſtavus Ericus*, and Brother of *John* and *Ericus* the two former Kings, firſt governed here as Viceroy for his Nephew *Sigismund*. But having an aim upon the Crown (to which he found the *Lutherans* not very favourable) he raiſed up a *Calvinian* party within that Realm; according to whoſe Principles he began firſt to withdraw his Obedience from his natural Prince, and afterwards to aſſume the Government to himſelf: ſpeeding fo well in his Deſign, that after a long War he forced his Nephew to deſiſt from all farther



Enterprizes, and made himself King, *An. 1607.*  
 1611 41. *Gustavus Adolphus*, Son of *Charles*, having fel-  
 lowed his Affairs in *Sweden*, and made Peace  
 with the King of *Denmark*, with whom his  
 Father was in War at the time of his death,  
 fell first on his Cousin *Sigismund*, the King  
 of *Poland*, from whom he took many places  
 of importance in *Prussia* and *Livonia*; and  
 in pursuance of that War was made Knight  
 of the Garter. Afterwards, having fet a  
 Truce with him, he passed into *Germany*,  
 then in great danger of being absolutely  
 intrahled to the House of *Austria*. In which  
 he prospered to beyond all expectation, that  
 in one year he passed over the *Elbe*, the *Rhene*,  
 and the *Danow*, (which no Conquerour ever  
 did before;) and having twice vanquished  
 the Imperialists led by *Tilly*, and restored  
 many of the *German* Princes unto their Es-  
 tates, was in the current of his Victories  
 slain in the Battle of *Lutzen*, *Novemb. 1632*;  
 his body royally conveyed to *Swethland*, and  
 there interred.

1632 42. *Christine*, sole Daughter of *Gustavus*, of the age  
 of seven years, acknowledged Queen of *Sweden*;  
 the Estate being governed by the Councils  
 of the Nobility. After a long War, with va-  
 riable success in *Germany*, they came at last  
 to this accord in the Treaty of *Münster*, that  
 (she and her Successors, Kings and Queens of  
*Swethland*, should peaceably enjoy all the high-  
 est Pomerens, with the Isles of *Rugia*, *Wollin*, and the Town  
 of *Stetin*, in Lower *Pomerland*; the Town and Port of  
*Wismar* in the Dukedom of *Mecklenburg*; and the whole  
 Bishoprick of *Bremen* and *Verden*, and the Prefecture of  
 the Town of *Wilshusen*; with the Title of Dukes of *Bre-*  
*mon*, *Pomerens*, and *Verden*, Princes of *Rugia*, and Lords  
 of *Wismar*; and by those Titles to have place, as Princes  
 of the Empire, in all Diets and Assemblies which  
 concern the Publick. By which agreement (if it hold) the  
*Swedes* have not only got a good footing in *Germany*, a  
 strong Influence upon all the Councils of the Empire, a  
 Door open for more Forces, (if occasion be) and a free  
 passage into the Western Ocean, which before they wan-  
 ted; but may in time prove absolute Masters of the *Baltic*  
*rick* Sea, and make the *Hamburgers*, those of *Lubeck*,  
 and possibly the Kings of *Denmark* and the Empire it  
 self, be at their Devotion.

But leaving these things to the Doubtful issue of Con-  
 tingency, let us next look upon the Forces and Revenues of  
 the Crown of *Sweden* before the time of *Gustavus Adol-*  
*phus*, or as he found them at his Succession to that Crown.  
 For though the *Swedes* pretend their Kingdom to be El-  
 ective, especially since the failing of the Royal Line in  
*Magnus* the fourth, and *Albert* of *Mecklenburg*;  
 yet still the eldest Son or next Heir succeedeth; unless  
 put by Faction and strong hand, as in the case of *Si-*  
*gismund* and his Uncle *Charles*. Which *Charles* for ordered  
 his Affairs, that having engaged the Kingdom in a War  
 against his Nephew, he was solicited at the last to accept  
 of the Crown; to which he would by no means yield, till  
 a law was made for the entailing the same for ever unto  
 his Posterity, whether male or female, as an Heredi-  
 tary Crown. But whether Hereditary or Elective, the  
 King once settled in the Throne is an absolute Monarch;  
 having not only a power to levie Taxes on his Sub-  
 jects, as he seeth occasion, as five, six, seven, eight  
 Dollars, or more yearly upon every Housholder, ac-  
 cording to the proportion of his Estate, but also to grant a

certain number of Peasants unto such as he means to fa-  
 vour, to be as Subjects and Vassals to him, according to  
 his well-deserving. And whereas in the Constitution of  
 this Government every Parish hath a Landman or Con-  
 sul to decide the Controversies of the same, as every Ter-  
 ritory hath its Vicount, and each Province his Lamen;  
 there lieth an Appeal from the Landman unto the Vi-  
 count, and from the Vicount to the Lamen; who, if they  
 be supposed not to judge uprightly, then the Appeal lies  
 unto the Council, and from the Council of Estate to the  
 King himself, (in whom is fixed the Sovereignty and De-  
 rivet her self) and not unto the King and Council as be-  
 fore in *Denmark*.

The Forces of this King are either by Sea or Land.  
 By Sea he is Commander wholly of the Bay of *Bodner*, and  
 hath a great Power in all the rest of the *Baltick*; being  
 able to set out 70 good men of War, as *John* the second  
 did in the year 1578; eleven of which were good Gallies,  
 and all the rest did carry above 50 cast Pieces of all  
 sorts, besides many other good Vessels fit for service.  
 And if a Navy of this size will not serve the turn, he is  
 not only furnished with Timber, Cordage, and all other  
 necessaries for the building of Ships, and with good store  
 of Ordnance and Ammunition for present use, but is able  
 to raise upon a suddain 6000 Marriners, and upon little  
 warning as many more; all which he entertaineth at no  
 other charges in a manner than to find Victuals: in-  
 asmuch as *John* the second, before mentioned, did use to  
 say, that *that which cost the King of Spain a Million of*  
*Crowns, cost him 100000 Dollars.*

For his Land-Forces, they may best be estimated by the  
 Trained Bands (as we call them) in every Province;  
 there being in all 32 *Vexilles* (or Ensigns) of Foot con-  
 stantly trained and Mustered in the several Provinces;  
 each *Vexille* comprehending 600 or 700 men, amounting  
 in the Total to 20000 Foot; all in a manner Musketiers,  
 ready to march whensoever the Kings occasion shall so  
 require. And then for Horse, there are eleven Companies in  
 continual readiness for *Sweden* and *Gotland*, and two for  
*Finland*, maintained at the Charges of those Countries:  
 to which the King may add at his own charges as many  
 more as he pleaseth. And for an instance of what this  
 King is able to do, without putting his Estate in hazard  
 by draining them too dry of men to make good his King-  
 dom, we find that *John* the second, in his Navy of 70  
 Ships spoken of before, had above 18000 Land-Souldiers,  
 besides Marriners. And in the Army which *Gustavus*  
*Adolphus*, the late King, brought into *Germany*, there  
 were mustered no fewer at one time than 12000 Horse,  
 and 34000 Foot, all *Finnish* and *Swethlanders*. For the  
 accommodating of which Armies with Artillery and the  
 like Engines of War, it is thought that the Kings heret  
 are Masters of 8000 great Pieces, for the most part Brass,  
 with Mortar-pieces and Granaado's in proportion to them.

But that which makes his Land Forces most considera-  
 ble is their Hardiness in enduring the extremities of Wind  
 and Weather (inasmuch that it is usual with them to stand  
 Centinel a whole Winters night of 18 hours long  
 without being relieved) their exact Discipline, and Obe-  
 dience to their Commanders, and finally their indefatiga-  
 ble Industry in making their own Shoes, Apparel,  
 Stocks for Muskets, and all other necessaries. Which doth  
 not only make them fit to endure any labour which is put  
 upon them in the Wars, but keeps them from Idleness and  
 the pride of Mutinies; the ordinary effect, in great Ar-  
 mies, of Sloth and ease. Nor do they want encouragement  
 on the Kings part neither; who, 1. gives to every  
 Souldier Victuals, which he accompts not in their pay, and  
 that according to his Obedience and desert. 2. If a Soul-  
 dier

der be taken Prisoner, him the King doth usually re-  
 deem at his own charges. And 3. if a Souldier's Horse  
 be slain under him, the King supplieth him with another.  
 Which make the Souldiers (very sensible of such Obliga-  
 tions) exceedingly conformable unto his Commands, how  
 dangerous soever they seem to be.

Finally, as for his Revenues, they must needs be great,  
 there being four ways allowed him to amass his Treas-  
 ures. First the Revenues of the Church, consisting be-  
 fore the Reformation of seven Bishopricks and sixty Mo-  
 nasteries, which enjoyed very great Possessions; all sei-  
 zed only by *Gustavus Ericus*, and by him incorporate to the  
 Crown, excepting only what is given back to maintain  
 the Bishops. Secondly, Mines, which are here of all  
 Metals in very great plenty, except of Gold and Silver,  
 which they have more sparingly; the Tenth whereof in  
 all places belongs to the King, and yields him such a  
 fair Intrade, that in the year 1578 the King's part out  
 of two or three Mines of Copper only amounted to  
 30000 Dollars. Thirdly, Tents out of all Increase, as  
 Rice, Wheat, Barley, Flax, Oxen, Skins, and the like  
 Commodities, the sum whereof though not certainly  
 known, (because the increase is so uncertain) yet it was  
 once computed, that the Tenth of the Oxen only came  
 in one year to 18000 Dollars, besides Provision for his  
 Household. Fourthly and lastly, Customs imposed on  
 Merchandise, and paid in all his Haven-Towns for all  
 Commodities imported or exported, of what sort so-  
 ever. Besides all which, he hath his Contributions in  
 all times of War, power of imposing Taxes, (though  
 moderately used) as his Necessities require; and on the  
 Marriage of a Daughter, the Kingdom is to pro-

vide her Portion, which of late times hath been fixed at  
 the certain sum of 100000 Dollars, besides Plate and  
 Movables. Out of which several Items to sum up the  
 Total: It was observed, that in the year 1578 King  
*John* the second (all Charges, ordinary and extraordi-  
 nary, being first deducted) did lay up into his Treasury no  
 less than 700000 Dollars; which was a vast sum for those  
 times, considering especially the great Charge which the  
 King had been at that year, in furnishing a Navy of 70  
 Sail, and raising 18000 Land-Souldiers, (besides Horse)  
 for defence of his Realm against the *Danes*. And yet  
 it is conceived by some knowing men, that his Revenues  
 would be much greater than they are, if he did employ  
 Strangers to work the Mines, which the Natives do not  
 husband to the best advantage; and yet are fearful to  
 discover them to other Nations upon some jealousies,  
 which they are naturally addicted to: or if he would  
 turn Merchant, and in his own Ships send out Corn and  
 Cordage, with Masts and Timber fit for Building, and in  
 them bring back Salt and other Necessaries which his  
 Kingdom wants, setting them at a far less price than now  
 they go at, and yet gaining very greatly by it too.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Azure*, three  
 Crowns Or.

There are in *Swethland*

Archbishops 2. Bishops 8.

Universities but one, viz. *Upsal*.

And thus much for *SWETHLAND*:

## OF RUSSIA.

**R**USSIA is bounded on the East by *Tar-*  
*tary*, on the West with *Livonia* and *Fin-*  
*land*, from which it is divided by great  
*Lud*, from which the River *Pola*; on the  
 Mountains and the Frozen Ocean, and some  
 North by the Frozen Ocean, and some  
 part of *Lupland*; and on the South by  
 the Kingdom of *Poland*, and the Province  
 of *Lithuania*, a Province of *Poland*, the Province  
 of *Crimea*, inhabiting on the Banks of *Palus Maeotis*,  
 and the *Euxine* Sea. It stretcheth partly in *Europe*, and  
 partly in *Asia*, the River *Tanus* or *Don* running through  
 it, the common Boundary of those great and noted parts  
 of the World.

It was thus called from the *Rossi* or *Russi*, a People of  
 Mount *Taurus*, or *Taurica Cherfonesus*, (if not both) who  
 in the declining times of the *Greek* Empire possessed  
 themselves of some parts of it, and, being the prevailing  
 People, imposed their Name on all the rest. Called also  
*Ruffia*, *Alia*, to distinguish from *Ruffia Nigra*, a Pro-  
 vince of *Poland*, quod Incole omnium Gentium ipsius im-  
 perii subjecti sunt, as one observes, discounting of the Af-  
 fairs heretofore *Russibus albis* et *Tartaris plebibus*, *stanantur*,  
 because the Inhabitants use to wear white Caps and Vests  
 and. And why thus? It thence the People of *Mari-*  
*giana* and *Soydiana* in *Asia* have the name of *Russibus* al-  
 bi, because they wear green Turbans, as the word im-  
 porteth. Finally, it is called *Moscovia*, from *Moscow*  
 the chief Province of it; as that is denominated from the  
*Moschi*, of whom more anon.

In reference to the Heavenly bodies, it is said by some

to be situate betwixt the 8. and 20. Climates, the longest  
 Day in the Southern parts being but 16 hours and an half,  
 and almost 22 hours and a half in the Northern part. But  
 this is to be understood only of the Province of *Mosco-*  
*via* properly and specially so called, and not of the whole  
 Empire of the *Moscovites* according to the Bounds before  
 laid down. For taking in the Northern Provinces belong-  
 ing to it as *East-Lapland*, *Candora* & *Petcora*, lying with-  
 in the *Arctic* Circle, the longest Day in Summer will  
 be full 6 months, (for so long do those Countries see no  
 Night at all,) which is a mighty disproportion from the  
 length of the longest Day in the most Southern parts, be-  
 ing but 16 hours and a half, as before is said. And by  
 this Rule we are to take the Dimensions also. For though  
 some make the length hereof from North to South, that  
 is to say, from *Catalin* the North to *Astracan* near the *Cas-*  
*pian* Sea, to be no more than 2260 Versts, or 3690 *Italian*  
 miles; yet they confess that, reckoning forwards from  
*Tromscheta*, the farthest point of *Petcora*, the full length  
 thereof will be nigh to much more. And for the breadth,  
 reckoning from *Narva* on the Bay of *Finland*, (now in  
 possession of the *Swedes*) to the Province of *Severia*  
 in the East, it amounteth to 440 Versts, or 6300 *Italian*  
 miles; each Vest being estimated at three quarters of an  
*English* mile. Which mighty Territory, if it were peo-  
 pled answerable to some other parts of the World,  
 would either make it too great for one Prince to hold,  
 or make that Prince too great and puissant for all his  
 neighbours.

The people, as is commonly reported of them, are very perfidious, crafty and deceitful in all their Bargains, False-dealers with all they have to do with, making no reckoning of their Promises, and studying nothing more than ways to evade their Contradicts. Vices by generally known and noted in them, that when they are to deal with Strangers, they dissemble their Country, and pretend to be of other Nations, for fear lest no body should trust them. Destitute they are of humane Affections, and so unnatural, that the Father insults on his Son, and he again over his Father and Mother: a fo malicious one towards another, that you shall have a man hide some of his own Goods in the house of some man whom he hateth, and then accuse him for the stealth of them. They are exceedingly given to drink, inasmuch that all heady and intoxicating Drinks are by Law prohibited, and two or three days only in a year allowed them to be drunk in. For the most part they are strong of Body, swift of Foot, of a square Proportion, broad, short, and thick; gray-eyed, broad-bearded, and generally furnished with prominent Patches. The Commons live in miserable subjection to the Nobles, and they again in as great Slavery to the Duke or Emperor; to whom no man of all the vulgar dares immediately exhibit a Petition, or make known his Grievances: nay, the mean Lords and Officers are squeamish in this kind, and, but on great submission, will not commend unto the Duke a poor man's Cause. They are altogether unlearned, even the Priests meanly indoctrinated; it being cautioned by the great Duke, that there be no Schools, lest there should be any Scholars but himself: so that the people use to work commonly on the Lord's day, holding it fit to be kept by none but Gentlemen; and to say in a difficult question, *God and our Great Duke know all this*, and in other talk, *All we enjoy, Health and Life, is all from our Great Duke*; according to whose pleasure every man is prescribed what Habit he shall wear, both for matter and fashion, suitable unto their Condition. In the time of my Author their Habit was a long Garment without Plaits, which hung down to their heels, commonly of white or blew, with very straight Sleeves; on their Legs wearing Buskins up as high as the calf, for the most part red, high at the heels, and beset with nails of Iron. The fluff and trimming of the Dreß is the only difference betwixt the Noble and the Peasant.

The Women are attired also much after this manner, but with great and noble, suffered to set forth themselves with store of Pearls and Precious Stones, which hang to thick about their ears, that they do almost pull their ears from their heads. A second Marriage is conceived no blemish in point of Chastity, but the third condemns them of Incontinence. They are naturally subject enough to the Lufts of the flesh, but private, and fearful to offend; if once lascivious, then most intolerably wanton. It is the fashion of these Women to love that Husband best which begets them most, and to think themselves neither loved nor regarded, unless they be two or three times a day well-favouredly fawned. The Author of the *Treasury of Times* telleth a Story of a *German* Shoemaker, who, travelling into this Country, and here marrying a Widow, used her with all kindnes that a woman could (as he thought) desire; yet did not the seem contented. At last learning where the fault was, and that his not beating her was the cause of her Penitencies, he took such a vein in cudgelling her sides, that in the end the Hangman was fain to break his Neck for his labour.

They use the *Sclavonian* Language, but for corrupt and mixt with other Languages, that they and the *Sclavonians* understand not one another's meaning but by circumstance only: yet in *Yugria* (out of which the *Hungar-*

*ians* are thought to have issued) they speak a corrupt *Hungarian*; and in *Petersona* and the Country of the *Czechenians* they have a Language to themselves, differing from others.

They first received the Christian Faith in the year 987, or, as some say, Anno 942, by the preaching and ministry of the *Greeks* sent thither by the Patriarch of *Constantinople*; of which Church they are constant followers, both for Rites and Doctrine: but not without some Superstitions of their own superadded to them; viz, not coming near a Cross, Church or Monastery but they kneel down, and make the sign of the Cross, saying *Allyh Hyspadi*, i. e. *Lord have mercy upon us*, nor cutting into any Church, until washed and bathed. They bear a deadly hatred to the *Jews*, whom they suffer not to live amongst them, and to great friendship unto a *Calif*, that they hold it a great offence to kill one, or to eat his flesh. Their Church is governed by 18 Bishops, and 2 Metropolitans, all of them subordinate to their Archbishop or Patriarch, as he in former times to the *Constantinopolitan* by whom he used to be confirmed. But about an hundred years ago they withdrew themselves from that subjection, the Patriarch being nominated by the Great Duke, and consecrated by two or three of his own Suffragans. Without the counsel and advice of this Patriarch, the Emperor or Great Duke doth nothing of any moment. The Bishops are all chosen out of the Monastic or Regular Clergy; which makes the Monks (being all of the order of *S. Basile*) to live very religiously, in hope to be advanced to the Episcopal Dignity. Amongst the Secular Clergy, or Archidiacons, there is not much required of them, but to say their Masses, (which being in their own Language they may easily do) and to read now and then once, the *Christophom's* Homilies, translated heretofore for the use of those Churches. As for the death of their sick Wives they are not permitted to marry; in other thing little differing from the rest of the people. Once in the year it is lawful and usual with them to hold a Synod, at which the Patriarch hath his Crozier or Pastoral-staff carried before him, as the Pope's Legate hath the Cross; where they make Constitutions for the publick Government, and the regulating of Divine matters; which are punctually and carefully observed by the Prince himself.

As followers of the *Greek* Church, (but so as to be counted a Church distinct) they differ much both from the *Romish* and Reformed. 1. Denying the Holy Ghost to proceed from the Father and the Son. 2. Denying Purgatory, but praying for the Dead. 3. Believing that men enjoy not the presence of God before the Resurrection. 4. Communicating in both kinds butting Leavened bread, and mingling warm Water with the Wine, which both together they distribute with a Spoon. 5. Receiving Children of 7 years old to the Sacrament of the Eucharist, because then they begin to Sin. 6. Forbidding extreme Unction, Confirmation, and fourth Marriages. 7. Admitting none to Orders but such as are married, and yet prohibiting Marriage to them that are actually in Orders. 8. Rejecting Carved Images, but admitting the Painted. 9. Observing 4 Lent's in the year. 10. Repeating it unlawful to fast on Saturday, or to eat Blood, or any thing that hath been fringed, according to the first Council holden at *Hiersusalem*. 11. And finally, dissolving Marriage by Divorcement upon every flight occasion, or conceived displeasure. Which diversity betwixt the *Romish* and this people in point of Religion hath bred such a difference betwixt them in point of Affection, and made them so ill-concited of one another, that if a *Moscowite* be known, or but suspected, to have conversed with any of the Church of *Rome*, he is accounted to be a polluted person, and must be solemnly purged and purified, before

before he be admitted to partake of the blessed Sacrament.

In matters of War the people are indifferent able, as being almost in continual Brolls with their Neighbours; and have a Custom, that when they go to the Wars, every Soldier giveth to the Emperor or Great Duke a piece of money, which at the end of the War he receiveth again; and by that means the number of the slain is exact: known. At their Funerals they use to put a Penny into the Mouth of the party deceased, a pair of Shoes on his Feet, and a Letter in his Hand, directed (such is their Superstition) to *S. Nicolas*, whom they deem to be the Porter of Heaven: an opinion doubtless very prejudicial to the Pope's and *S. Peter's* Prerogatives.

This Country is not so populous as spacious. The Eastern parts are vexed with the *Tartars*, who, like *Asseps*'s Dog, will neither dwell there themselves, nor suffer the *Moscovites* to plant Colonies in them: the Western parts almost as much molested by the *Swedish* and *Poleonian* Kings; the Southern by the *Turks* and *Precopeans*; and the Northern by the coldness of the Air, which is of such vehemence, that Water thrown up into the Air will turn to Ice before it fall to the ground. The better to resist the extremity of this Cold, not only the Clothes of this people, but their very Houses, are lined with thick Furs. Every Gentleman or man of note hath in his Dwelling-house a Stove or Hot-house, in which they keep as it were, to heat themselves. Such as travel on the way use often to rub their Nose or Ears with Snow or Ice to settle and recall the motive Spirits into those parts, which otherwise they would be in danger to lose; the ignorance of which preventing Chirurgery was not the least cause that, in the year 1598, of 70000 *Turks* which made an Inroad into *Moscow*, 40000 were frozen to death. By reason of these extremities of Frosts and Cold, it is the Custom of this people to lay the Bodies of their dead all the Winter long on heaps in the Bellies of their Churches, where they lie without putrifying or any ill favour to the end of *March*; at what time the Air beginning to wax warm, and the earth to be fit for digging, each Family looks out their dead Bodies, and takes care to bury them. This excess of Cold in the Air gave occasion to *Cassian* in his *Antients* wittily, and not incongruously, to feign that if two men being somewhat distant talk together in the Winter, their words will be so frozen that they cannot be heard; but if the parties in the Spring return to the same place, their words will melt into the same order that they were frozen and spoken, and be happily understood. Such is their Winter: neither is their Summer less miraculous. For the huge Seas of Ice which in a manner cover the whole surface of the Country, are at the first approach of the Sun suddenly dissolved, the Water quickly dried up, and the Earth dressed in her holy-day Apparel: such a mature growth of Fruits, such flourishing of Herbs, such chirping of Birds, as if here were a perpetual Spring. The reason of which strange and sudden alteration is conceived to be the long lying of the Snow on the face of the Earth, keeping it from the rigour of the Winter Frosts; which being dissolved by the Sun in the beginning of the Spring, doth so thoroughly drench and soak the Ground, (being of a light and Sandy mould) and consequently make it the more penetrable by the beams of the Sun shining hotly on it, that it forthwith in a manner the Herbs and Plants to shoot forth in great plenty, and that too in a shorter time than can be imagined.

The whole Country generally is very much overflooded with Woods, parts of the great *Herzian* Forest, heretofore over-running all the North, and still more visible here than in other places: either by reason of the Islands of the people, naturally given to Sloth and Ease;

or for that the Country is not populous enough to overcome them; or that there is already Ground enough for Tillage to supply their necessary uses. For here do grow the goodliest and tallest Trees of the World, through which, by reason of their thickness, the brightness of the Sun-beams can hardly pierce; affording shelter to great multitudes of Cartel, but of wild Beasts especially, whose Skins are better than their Bodies, as Bears, Martens, Zibelines, Wolves, Black Foxes, whose skins are of very great estimation. Of the timber of these Trees are squared all necessities both for Forts and Houses, the Fortifications in this Country being made of huge Beams fastened together, (the Chinks filled with Earth) not easily shaken by Battery, though much subject to Fire. And out of them sufficient unpeakeable quantity of Pitch and Rosin, which are hence distilled: besides an everlasting Fountain of Wax and Honey; the Bees, without the Midwifery of the Art of Men, building their Hives or Houses in the hollow Trees. Concerning this there goeth a Story (reported and believed for a certain truth) of a Countryman who accidentally had slipped down into a great hollow Tree, where he stood up to the breast in Honey, continuing there two days without other Sustainance: at the end whereof a Bear coming to partake of the Booty, he laid hold of his Legs, and so terrified him with his Claws, that he made him leap out with the man at his heels. The Country yieldeth also great store of Flax and Hemp, which is transported yearly into other Countries, (and would make them very excellent Cordage, if the people had any skill in Manufactures or Mechanical Arts) and in some places rich Pastures, and such store of Corn, that therewith they do furnish *Lapland*, and the North parts of *Sweden*. Fifth they have also in good plenty, which they salt and dry, and either vent it to the Merchant, or lay it up in store for their Forts and Families. By which account it will appear that the principal Commodities which they send abroad are rich Furs, Flax, Hemp, Whales-grease, Honey, Wax, Pitch, Rosin, Nuts, Filibards and the like: which either the *Dutch* and *English* buy of them at the Port of *S. Nicholas*, or the *Americans* at *Asracan* near the *Caspian* Sea; giving them in return Cloth, Silks, Tapetery, and some other Merchandise, transported to the value of 500000 Rubbles yearly. Particularly of Wax 50000 Road, 100000 Road, 100000 Hides, 100 Ships laden with Flax and Hemp, the rest of their Commodities proportionably in the time of my Author's, since whose time the Trade herof hath been much increased.

This Country not improperly may be called (as by some it is) the Mother of Rivers. The chief of which are, 1. The *Don*, called *Tanus* by the old Geographers, and by them thought to be the only Boundary betwixt *Europe* and *Asia*; the Northern parts of this Country being then unknown. It disburtheneth it self into *Palmus Montis*; and hath its Fountain not out of the *Riphean* Mountains, as was thought of old, but out of a great Lake called *Iranomysera*, in the Forest of *Okneskies* or *Seppanios*, some 20 *English* miles from the City of *Tulla*; and having run a great way Eastward, turneth back again and then proceedeth Southwards towards the *Montis*, as was said before. 2. *Borzhenn*, now called *Nisep*, whose spring was unknown unto *Herodotus*, but now discovered to be near *Dnepereck* a Village of *Moscow* far off, lying in the Forest of *Wolkensky*, it receiveth South, and running by the Town of *Sandulsky*, it receiveth many other Rivers, and amongst them that of *Dnest* (by the ancient Writers called *Hypanis*) notwithstanding whose muddy waters it still retains its natural Clearness, and so falls into the *Enzine* Sea. 3. *Tyrannus*, (so called by



the *Sarmatians* and their Slaves. For when the *Africk Scythians* went to plant themselves in *Media*, and the parts adjoining, some of the *Sarmatians*, then Inhabitants of this Tract, went along for company. Their long stay caused their Wives, desiring of their return, to comfort themselves with their Slaves both at bed and board; to whom they brought a lusty increase of Youths: who being well grown, and hearing that the *Sarmatians* were upon their coming back, joined together against them: the Slaves to retain their Wealth and Freedom which they were possessed of, the Women, for fear of the displeasure of their Husbands, and the Young men, for defence of their Fathers and Mothers. With joynt Forces they go out to meet them before their entry into the Country; neither are the Masters slow in their advance, hoping to take them unprovided. At *Novogrod* they have the first fight of each other. The Masters, scorning to defile their Swords on so ignoble an Enemy, assault them with Whips, and by the terror thereof got a signal Victory. In memory of which Battel, the people of that City have ever since stamped their money with the figure of an Horseman shaking a Whip in his hands: And it is the Custom of all *Moscovite*, that the Maids in the time of wooing fend such a Whip, curiously wrought by her own hands, to that Sutor whom the resolves on for her Husband, in token of her future Subjection to him. But of this more hereafter in another place.

## 6. GORELIA. 7. BIARMIA.

Sixty Dutch miles from *Novogrod* lieth the Province called *GORELIA*, extending Northwards as far as to a Branch of the Frozen Sea, where the longest Day is 20 hours and a half, the Nights proportionable in the Winter make it cold and barren. It bordereth on the East of *Finland*, from which it is parted by a long and rough ridge of Mountains. By reason of which Situation betwixt two great Princes, the people are enforced to pay Tribute to both, though properly the Subjects of the great Duke of *Moscow*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Kexholm* or *Hexholm*, in the hands of the *Swedes*, and 2. *Cornburg*, the chief Towns of the Province, belonging with the rest of the Country unto the *Moscovite*. By some this Province is made a part of the Eastern *Lapland*; but, I think, erroneously: the people having some good Town, and favouring of some Humanity, neither of which are known or heard of amongst the *Laplenders*. 3. *Nordenburg*, on the mouth of a Lake, which by the River called *Warjaga* emptieth it self into the Bay of *S. Nicolas*.

On the North-side of that Branch or Arm of the Frozen Ocean which bounds *Gorelia* lieth the Western part of *Lapland*, which by a proper name is called *BIARMIA*: the Country of the *Dikloppi*, or wild *LAPPIANS*, as the *Moscovites* call them, to whose Duke or Emperor they are subject. We had their Character before when we were in *Swethland*, nor shall we need to repeat it here: as Barbarous and as rude as the worst sort of those mentioned in *Scythiana*, and as Idolatrous as they; but more (if more may be) inclined to Lustfulness than the others. In the Winter Solstice, when the Sun entrencheth into *Capricorn*, they have Night for three whole months together, during which time, lurking in their Caves, they have leisure to consult with the Prince of Darkness; being very great Sorcerers, able (as some affirm) to raise Winds, Clouds, Tempests, and do many strange things. Towns there are none. Some Sheds and Cabins on the Sea-coasts, patched up by the Sailors for their reception and refreshment as they come on Land, and named according to their fancies, but not here considerable.

## 8. PETZORA. 9. CONDORA. 10. OB-DORA. 11. YUGRIA.

Opposite to *Biarmia*, or *West-Lapland*, on the other side of the Bay, leading towards the Port of *S. Nicolas*, lieth a large Promontory or Head-land, stretching out far into the North, beyond the *Arctick* comprehending in it 4 Provinces of the *Russian* Empire; that is to say, *Petzora*, *Condora*, *Obdora*, and *Yugria*, belonging formerly to the *Tartars*, but won from them of late years by the *Russian* Emperours; extending by that means their Territories to the River *Ob*, but not a whit improving them in Power or Patrimony. Howsoever somewhat must be said of them, because parts of this great Body which we are to dissect.

*PETZORA*, so called from a River of that name, is fenced on every side by Mountains and unfassable Rocks, extending Northwards to the Sea, and crossed with a vast Chain of Hills, part of the *Hyperborei*, spoken of before: so high, that a certain man, having travelled in the ascent of them 17 days together, is said to have returned back again, despairing to attain the top of them: covered in the Winter-time with perpetual Snows, in the Summer with as scorching Heats, by the continual lying of the Sun on all parts thereof. The people are of a plain and simple nature, and received the *Russian* Faith and Empire at one time together, Anno 1518. The chief Town of it is *Petzora*, or *Pechora*, at the fall of that River into the Sea, a small Town, but having three Churches in it: the people whereof, though otherwise sufficiently simple, as before is said, do in the Summer-time catch Partridge, Ducks, Swans, Geese, and other Fowl, which they take and lay by till the Winter, and then live upon them. So good a Tutor is the Belly, that the Poet did not unasily give it the titles of *Artis Magister* and *Ingenii largitor Venter*: whereof this may serve for one example.

*CONDORA* lieth on the North of *Petzora*, more near the Pole; by consequence is a colder Country, and of worse condition; one half of the Year being continual Day, and the other half as long a Night. The people are universally Idolaters, worshipping some Images (or Idols) in the shape of a Man, others in that of Bears, Wolves, &c. which they adorn with the Richest Furs they can get, and hide them in their Caves for fear of the *Russes*; who if they chance to light upon them, as they hunt those parts for Sables, Foxes and Bevers, take away their Furs, and bestow a greater heat upon them in Fires. The chief Town hereof is *Pusozera*, over against *Nova Zemla*, or on near the great Lake called *Ozera*, whence it hath the name; situate in the 68 Degree of Northern Latitude, 50 minutes over.

*OB-DORA*, so called from the River *Ob*, on both sides of whose Banks it lieth, is the most North-Eastern Province of all these Dominions; won to the Obedience of the *Russes* in the Reign of *Theodore* the Son of *Ivan*, Great Duke of *Moscow*. At what time the People had no Cities, lived in Hordes or Companies, ate the Beasts they took, knew no Corn nor Bread. They were then very good Archers, sharpening their Arrows with Fish-bones; with which bones and the Sineaws of Beasts they fowed Furs together for their Clothing, which they wear inward in the Winter, outward in the Summer, covering their Houses with Elk-skins. By this Trade were some Castles built on the River-side, to which he sent condemned persons, and brought it into the form of a petty Kingdom. But his Successor *Boris* built *Toma*, the chief Town hereof, with divers other Towns on both sides of the Water, nor worth naming here. But notwithstanding this Subjection to the *Moscovite*, they continue till

in their old Idolatry, worshipping an ancient Idol in form of an old Woman, holding in Each Arm a Child, and a third at her feet, called by them *Zlatn Baba*, or the Golden old Wife; to which they offer precious Furs, sacrifice Hares, and therewith do consult touching things to come. But some account this for a fable or a meer mistake.

*PETZORA*, or *YUHAR*, lieth also on the North-west Seas, but more South than either of the other, betwixt *Petzora* or *Pechora*, and the Province of *Dwina*: the longest Day in Summer being not above 21 hours, or not fully that. The people are for the most part Idolaters, and worship the same Images as do those of *Obdora*: affirmed by some to be the Progenitors of the present *Hungarians*, who, coming out of this Country, overran all *Pannania*, and there fixed their Dwellings. For proof of which it is affirmed that they spake the old *Hungarian* Language, not used but in this Country and the North parts of *Hungary*, betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiscus*: which more learned men affirm to be the *Magyesian*, the Language of the *Magyes*, who antiently possessed that Country in the times of the *Romans*. But leaving this dispute to another place, certain it is they are subject to the *Moscovite*, but so poor and miserable a people, that they have few Towns, and not many Houses; and so bare of money, that in stead thereof they pay Furs for Tribute to their Emperour.

12. SEVERIA. 13. PERMIA.  
14. REZEN.

*SEVERIA*, or *SIBIOR*, as the *Moscovites* call it, lieth in a long Tract on the Banks of the River *Ob* or *Oby*, South of *Obdora* and the rest of the four last Provinces. The Country is very fruitful, and abounding with all things necessary, notwithstanding that there be great Deserts, and some Forests also; but those Forests well stored with black Foxes, Ermines, Sables, and the like wild Beasts, which yield more profit by their rich Furs, than any more fertile Country doth by its Corn and Fruits. Insumuch that in the year 1589 there were collected out of this Province only in the way of Tribute for the Emperour, 466 Timber of Sables, (every Timber containing 40 Skins) five Timber of Martens, 180 Cates of black Foxes, (every Cate containing 40 Skins) besides other Commodities. The Woods also do offer good plenty of Honey, and the Plains of Herbage, well watered with the River *Sen*, which falleth into the *Desna*, and bein together into that of the *Nieper*, or *Bozphorus*. There are in it many Towns and Castles, the principal whereof are, 1. *Sibir*, on the West side of the River *Ob*, which gives name to the Province. 2. *Branki*, not far from the great Forest from hence named. 3. *Starodub*, 4. *Potnovlo*, and 5. *Czernigo*. [Here by mistake the two Provinces of Siberia and Severia (which differ as the farthest North-east and South-west points of *Moscovia*, betwixt which there is a vast Tract of ground) are confounded, part of the Towns belonging to one, part to the other, as do the two Rivers, the *Ob*, and the *Nieper*.]

The people hereof, by reason of their continual Skirmishes with the neighboring *Tartars*, are the most Warlike Nations of all the *Russes*; heretofore governed by a Duke or Prince of their own, who at the first acknowledged no Superior, but afterwards was severally and successively tributary to the *Litmanians*, the *Polanders*, and the *Moscovite*; and finally, the last Duke being fairly accused of Treason, was oured of his Estate by *Basilius* the Great Duke, who added it to the rest of his Dominions, as it hath continued ever since.

*PERMIA* is situate on the South-West of *Sibir*,

or *Severia*, a large Province, distant 250 Dutch miles from *Mosco*, so called from *Perm*, or *Permia*, the chief Town hereof, situate on the River *Vjshnora*, or *Vjshnora*. The second Town of note is called *Siewiarskye*. The people (as also those of *Sibir*) are of the *Moscovite* Religion, and live most by hunting wild Beasts, whose Fleth they eat, and make good Merchandise of their Skins, many of which they pay yearly to the Great Duke in way of Tribute, who makes a good Commodity of them, selling them to the Merchant at excessive rates. They have no Corn of their own growth, nor will they buy any elsewhere; but, instead of Bread, eat the Fleth of Seals dried and prepared in the Sun; (speaking a Language of their own, different from the rest of the *Russes*; and in stead of Horses and Oxen, make use of great Dogs and Stags, whom they train up to draw their Sleds from one place to another. There is good store of Woods amongst them; but they want Cedars, and they have paid dearly for that want. For *John Vassilovich*, meaning to pick a Quarrel with them, sent to them for certain loads of Cedar-wood, whereof he knew there grew none in their Country; and upon word returned that they had no such Wood he fined them at 12000 Rubbles.

*REZEN*, a great and godly Province, is situate betwixt the River *Tanais* and that of *Occa*, the most fruitful Country of all *Russia*, and (if report be true) of the whole World also: it being credited affirmed that one grain of Corn doth bring forth six Ears; the Stalks hereof growing so thick, that an Ox can hardly pass through them, or a Quail file out of them, but with very much difficulty. Here is also great plenty of Fruits, better than are to be found elsewhere in *Russia*; together with good store of Honey, Fish, Fowl, and other Commodities; besides Ermines, Bevers, and the like, common in their Countries. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Tula*, famous for the Fountain or Spring-head of the River *Tanais*, which riseth near it. 2. *Coltoga*, well garrisoned for fear of the *Crim-Tartars*. 3. *Cussira*, a Bishop's See; as is also 4. *Rezen*, the principal of the Province, which is situate near, as is supposed upon the Banks of the River *Occa*. A Country, fertile and well-planted, according to the Great Duke 15000 *Boiars*, or Gentlemen which serve on horse-back, and betwixt 30 and 40000 Foot.

15. WIATHKA. 16. CASAN.  
17. ASTRACAN.

South-east of *Rezen*, beyond the banks of the River *Skamne*, and about 150 Dutch miles from *Mosco*, lieth the Province called *WIATHKA*, a fertile and barren, but well stored with Fith, an Honey, and wild Beasts good plenty. Heretofore subject to the *Tartars*, and then the receptacle or retreat of all fugitive Servants, here very gladly entertained: but the *Tartarians* being expelled it was made Subject by *Basilius* to the Duke of *Moscow*. I do not read of any Towns which remain so here, which makes me think that they do still remain so much of the *Tartar* with them as to live in Hordes and Companies, without any fix Dwellings, or at the best, in scattered houses, not thither united into Towns and Villages, except it be the Town of *Wiathka* it self, built since the subjection of it to the *Moscovite*; and made a Garrison, to defend these out-parts of this Empire against the Incurfions of the *Tartars*.

*CASAN*, a Kingdom formerly of *Tartaria deserta*, hath on the South-east of *Wiathka*, the most civil people of the *Tartars*, but owing much of that Civility to their conversation with the *Moscovites*, (though none of the civillest themselves) tilling their Lands and building Houses where they may with safety. For although

the Soil hereof to be tolerably fruitful and fit for Habitation, yet the Country for the most part is desolate and ill inhabited; partly by reason of some vast Defarts, lying betwixt the Cities of *Cafan* and *Afracan*; but principally in regard of the *Crim-Tartars*, who will not suffer the *Moscovites* to plant it with Colonies of his own people, nor the Natives to live there in quiet, except only in the Western parts, where they are protected by Garrisons. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Cafan*, upon the River *Volga*, which gives name to the Kingdom, since the Subjection of this People to the great Duke, and their Conversion to the Faith, made a Bishop's See. 2. *Swirick*, upon the River *Sura*, in the middle of the vast Defarts betwixt *Cafan* and *Afracan*; built by *Basilius* the great Duke, for a Stage or resting-place for Merchants and Travellers, that there they might repose themselves without fear of the *Tartars*. The people hereof had once a King of their own, as before was said; the last of which named *Chelealeick*, (substituted himself unto *Basilius*, the great Duke, and became tributary 20. afterwards revolting, he was vanquished by *John Vasilvich*, An. 1553, and this Kingdom thereupon united to the Empire of *Russia*: the Emperours since that time writing themselves *Czar Cafanick*, or King of *Cafan*. And possibly enough it is that *Basilius*, who first made it tributary, might from hence take the name of *Basilius Cafan*, according to the custom of the ancient *Romans*.

Under the Government hereof are the *Czeremiss*, a People that live in great Forreits without any Houses, living for the most part of Honey and the flesh of wild Beasts, with the Skins of which they are apparelled. Their Language is different from the rest. They are swift of foot, and very good Archers, carrying their Bows in their hands continually, and praffling their Children so timely in it, that they give them nothing to eat (after such an Age) until they can hit a White which is set before them.

*ASTRACAN* lieth also South East of *Cafan*, more near unto the *Caspian* Sea; parted from *Cafan* by those Defarts (spoken of before, but situate on the same Branch of the River *Volga*), which, having run a course of 2000 *Italian* Miles, dischargeth it self into this Sea with no less than 70 Mouths or Channels. It took this name from *Afracan* the chief Town hereof, situate about 20 *Italian* miles from the fall of one of those 70 Mouths or Channels into the *Caspian*: by the commodiousness whereof it is one of the best Towns of Trade in all these Dominions, the *Armenian* Merchants coming hither, and bartering their Silks and Manufactures for the Furs and other natural Commodities of the *Russes* or *Moscovites*. A Kingdom formerly, but a Kingdom of less esteem than that of *Cafan*; conquered (together with it) by *Basilius* the great Duke, Anno 1494, and by him made Christian. But afterwards revolting, they were more absolutely subdued by *John Vasilvich*, who brought into the field against them no fewer than 120000 Horse and 200000 Foot, (enough to over-run a far greater Country) and yet had hardly got the better, but for the terror of his great Ordinance, which the others wanted. Upon that Victory it was made a Member of the Empire of *Russia*, the Emperour whereof hath since styled himself the King of *Afracan*.

#### 18. NOVOGORDIA Inferior. 19. The MORDWITS.

BUT it is now time we return towards *Europe*, out of which we have wandered up and down in the skirts of *Asia*, in tracing out the several Provinces of this Empire, since our first crossing over the Bay of *Grandie*, or *Saint Nicolas*, into the Country of *Petozora*. But in our way we

must first take a view of the Dukedom of *Novogord* the *Lower*, so called to difference it from *Novogord* (situate the *Great*) spoken of before, situate almost in the midst betwixt *Cafan* and *Mosco*, distant from the last 100 *Polonian* miles, and 60 miles from the Borders of the other, every *Polonian* mile being reckoned at four *Italian*. The Country is generally very rich both for Tillage and Pasturage, inferior unto none in all this Estate but *Rifan* and *Wolodimir* only. So called from *Novogord*, the chief Town situate at the Confluence of the *Occa* and *Volga*; besides which it hath the neighbourhood of a very great Lake, which storeth it plentifully with Fish. A City of great esteem in all this Empire, partly for the great number of Houses, in that not easily equalled by any other; partly for an impregnable Castle cut out of the main Rock with incredible charges in the time of *Basilius* the Great Duke, but principally for a stately and magnificent Temple, built above 600 year ago, in imitation (or emulation, as some say) of the famous Church of *S. Sophia* in *Constantinople*. To this Town the Story of the *Scythian* or *Sarmatian* Slaves ought, in my mind, to be ascribed; a though commonly reported of the other *Novogord*, in the West parts of this Empire. My reason is, because it is not likely that the *Sarmatians* dwelling on the Borders of the *Baltick* Sea should cross all this Country to join with the *Asiatick Scythians*, so remote from them in a needless War, which those of this Tract might well do, as near Neighbours to them, if not of the same Nation or Extraction with them: nor is it probable that the Slaves would suffer their Masters to wait all the Country as far as the *Baltick* Sea, and to increase their strength by the Spoil thereof, before they met them in the Field to give them *Tax*.

Subject to the Estate hereof are the *MORDWIT* *Tatars*, lying on the South, betwixt the *Volga* and the *Dwora Tanais*, where it begetteth to return Westwards towards the *Euxine*. A People much of the same nature with the *Czeremiss*, but that they have some Villages and scattered Houses, which the other either want or else care not for. They are Idolaters for the most part (and the rest *Mahometans*) carrying their Idols in their Carts wheresoever they go; worshipping that Beasts all day which they first tie in the morning, and swearing by it for that day, as their chiefest Deity.

#### 20. WOROTINE. 21. TOWER. 22. WOLODOMIR.

AND now again we are in *Europe*, where the Great Duke hath almost as many Titles as Towns with Territories. Four of them (besides some before) are either situate in the Province of *Moscow*, or else so intermingled with the Towns thereof, that they may easily be taken (or mistaken) for Members of it. The principal are, *WOROTINE*, seated on the West side of the River *Occa*, a distinct Dukedom of it self, so called from *Worotin* the chief City of it, built upon that River, about 3 *Dutch* miles from *Culliga* in the Province of *Kozlov* lying on the farther Bank thereof; beautified with a strong Castle, and a pleasant Soil. The 2. *Misenchet*, the next Town of note, remarkable for the Head of the River *Occa*, which ariseth in the fields adjoining.

*TOWER*, or *OTOWER*, as some call it, is a large and goodly Country lying along the Banks of the River *Volga*: so populous, that it is said to contain 40000 *Doublers* or Gentlemen fit to serve on horseback, and double that number of the common or inferior sort. It gives the Title of a Duke to the *Russian* Emperour, and is so called from *Tuver* the chief Town thereof, and a Bishop's See; affirmed to be a fairer and more stately City than *Mosco* it self, from which it is distant 36 *Dutch* miles.

WOLO-

*WOLODOMIR* is one of the most fruitful Countries in all *Russia*, not parallel'd by many Countries in the World; the Soil here (if all be true which is said of it) yielding such an Increase, that many times the Husbandman hath twenty, and sometimes twenty five, for one. It gives the title of a Duke to the *Russian* Emperour, and hath precedence before *Moscow* in the Style Imperial. So called from *Wolodimir*, the chief City of it, and a Bishop's See, and that so named from the Founder, who probably was the same *Varladimir* (one of the first Kings of the *Russes*) who married *Helena* the Daughter of *Nicephorus Phocas*, Emperour of *Constantinople*. The City is situate 36 *Polonian* mile on the East of *Mosco*, anciently the chief Seat and Residence of the Great Duke, and so the chief Seat of *John*, the Son of *Daniel*, who continued till the time of *John*, that from thence he might more easily confront and oppose the *Tartars*, with whose Irruptions and Invasions both he and his Predecessors had long been troubled. Under the Government hereof is the City of *Sofialsk*, of great esteem, and very well peopled as long as the Royal Seat remained at *Wolodimir*, betwixt which and *Mosco* it is seated. After it fell into decay, and being once destroyed by the *Tartars*, could never since recover its ancient Lustre; having now little to uphold its reputation but a Bishop's See.

#### 23. DWINA.

*DWINA*, so called from the chief Town, is situate on the Confluence of two Rivers, *Fuch* and *Sachona*, whence it hath the name *Dwina* in the Language of that Country signifying *two*, as *ruian* doth with us amongst Country-people. A Country of great extent, but exceeding barren, which makes the Villages hereof to stand very thin, the Towns (considering the great compass of it) to be very few, and the Inhabitants for the most part to live upon dried Fish and the Flesh of wild Beasts, which to have no want of. The chief Commodity is Salt, with which they use to furnish the neighbouring Provinces, and provide such Necessaries for themselves as they stand in need of. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Dwina*, situate in before, situate in the middle of the Province, on the meeting of the said two Rivers, where here united into one Stream take the name of *Dwina*, or *Dwina*, the greater; known by that name until its fall into the Northern Ocean in the Bay of *Granvic*. 2. *Sagan*, so called of the River (one of the two which makes the *Dwina*) upon which it is seated. 3. *Colmagro*. 4. *Pinnegre*, two strong Castles.

Unto this Province (because I know not else how to dispose of them) I must reduce these four Towns following: that is to say, 1. *Ofing*, a Bishop's See, situate on the Western side of the River, over against the Town of *Dwina*, and in a Country so ill furnished with Necessaries, that the people eat dried Fish instead of Bread, but have Salt enough to season it from those of *Dwina*. 2. *Czereph*, a Bishop's See also, on the same side of the River, and *Dwina* is ol. 3. *S. Nicolas*, a well-known Port, and a Bishop's See; situate at the influx of *Dwina* into the Gulf of *Granovics* on the Bay of *S. Nicolas*, from hence denominated. A Town much traded since the discovery of the North-east passage by the *English*, and the removal of theirs and the *Dutch* Traffick from *Novogord* hither, from hence diffused with more care and speed into all the parts of this vast Empire. 4. *S. Michael*, on the Sea-side, commonly called *Archangel*, a Town of great Trade, by the *English* especially, who have of late here fixed their Staple, to the great enriching of the place; by reason whereof the *English* Merchants have not only great Privileges and Immunities (as the Authors of so great a be-

nefit unto this Estate) not granted to others, but the whole Nation have found better and more noble entertainment from them than any others have received. The cause of which was primarily the great opinion which their Emperours had of *Q. Elizabeth*, who held very good correspondence with them, continued ever since by mutual Embassies on both sides; and secondly, the comfortable Behaviour of the *English* to themselves, so acceptable to those Barbarians (both Prince and People) that when *John Vasilvich* nailed the Hat of another foreign Embassador to his Head, for his too much perverseness, he used our *Sir Thomas Smith* with all kinde of imaginableness. Another time, when the Jesuite *Possive* began to persuade with him to approve of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*; upon the information of the *English* Embassador, that the Pope was a proud Prelate, and would make Princes kiss his feet, he grew into such a rage, that the Jesuite was afraid he would have beat out his Brains. But to return again to the Port of *S. Nicolas*; it is so called from an Abbey there built unto that Saint, the Tutelary Saint and local Patron of the Nation. Which said, I will let fall from this Port to the *Russian* Islands, and see what may be said of them to our present purpose.

#### 24. The RUSSIAN Islands.

THE *RUSSIAN* Islands are but two, both of them in the Northern or Frozen Ocean, on the Coasts of this Country; that is to say, 1. *Sir Hugh Willoughby's Island*, and *Nova Zemla*; both subject (if to any) to the *Knez*, or great Duke of *Moscow*.

1. *WILLOUGHBY'S ISLAND* was so called from *Sir Hugh Willoughby*, because he first discovered it, Anno 1553, and was hereabouts found frozen to death the next Year following. For being employed by the Merchants of *London* in the time of King *Edward* the sixth, to find out a new way to *Moscow*, *Cathai* and *China*; he proceeded so far as to this Island, (situate almost opposite to the Bay of *S. Nicolas*) where the Weather proved so extreme, and the Frosts so vehement, that his Ship was set fast in the Ice, and all his people with himself frozen to death, in which condition they were found the next year after, with an exact description of their Voyage and Fortunes. Notwithstanding which disastrous beginning, the Enterprize was pursued by some noble Adventurers as *Jensken Jon*, *Birronges*, *Per Jackson*, and others of the *English* Nation, who opened the way as far as to the River *Ob*, (the East Bounder of *Russia*), but by reason of the length of the way, the vast floating Islands of Ice, and perpetual Night for many months together in Winter, could advance no farther.

2. *NOVA ZEMLA*, situate on the East of *Willoughby's Island*, opposite to *Petozora* in *Condorabere* mentioned, was first discovered by such Adventurers as followed *Willoughby's* Design. Famous for nothing but a race of short-statured men, not above four foot high, a degree above the height of *Pigmees*; not yet so far discovered as to know any thing thereof, but by the relation of the *Russes*, who affirm the Inhabitants to have neither Religion, nor Civility, nor the Precepts of any Law; but that they worshipped the Sun, Moon, and Northern Star, to which they offer a yearly Sacrifice of their Deer; that the Island is woody, desert, and not easy for travel, having in it neither grain, Bough nor Grass, yet harbouring great Flocks of Bears, and such ravenous and dangerous Beasts. Found experimentally true by *William Barrentson* and his Associates, employed by the *Hollanders*.



for this Discovery, *Ann* 1594, and 1596, in which last year, after many dreadful Combats with huge flakes of Ice, they were forced to winter in this Island, where they buried an House, as well to preserve themselves from being buried in Snow, as from being devoured by the Beasts (some of them 12 foot in length) which, with the loss of two of their company devoured by those savage creatures, they at last effected; some of them coming home in safety the *Oöober* following. And though they seemed to give some hope that a way might be found unto *Cathai* on the North of this Island (themselves having gone as far North as the 81. Degree of Latitude, within 9 of the Pole) yet it is generally conceived that the undertaking is unprofitable, the success impossible.

And fo I leave it, to return to the Story of *Roffia*, called antiently by the name of *Sarmatia Europea*, but known no farther Northwards than the Head of *Tanis*. And for *Sarmatia Europea*, it was bounded in the time of *Ptolemy* by the *Baltick Sea* and fome *Terra Incognita* on the North, the *7. yeazles Metanefis* (now *Transylvania*) and the *Upper Hungary* upon the South, the River *Wiftula*, or *Welfel*, which divided it from *Germany*, upon the Weft, and the *Tanis* upon the Eaft. Beyond that, all along the Banks of the *Enxine Sea* to the *Mare Cafpium* and as far North, as any Conquerour had gone, it was called *Sarmatia Afaticae* the Countries farther Eaftward being then called *Scythia*. By which account, as *Ruffia*, containeth not all *Sarmatia Europea*, of which *Pruffia* and the reft of the incorporate Provinces of *Poland* paff for a part, fo neither is it totally comprehended in it, extending beyond *Tanis* into *Affaticae*. The antient Inhabitants, called by a general name *Sarmatae*, by the *Greeks Savarmatae*, were subdivided, for fo much of this part of it was then made known, into the *Azagyrifci*, *Rutheni*, *Pagiritae*, dwelling in the North; the *Ogylti*, *Alani*, *Roxolani*, &c. dwelling in the South. Amongst many other barbarous Nations, there were fome of the principal, and from thefe *Roxolani*, as the principal of all the reft, *Matthias a Michow*, a learned *Poleander*, doth derive the Original of the *Roffes*, (which we now call the *Ruffians*;) feconded herein by the more learned *Bocharius*, upon proveth out of antient Authors, that the Inhabitants of *Taurica Cherfonefus* (from which the paffage into this Country is both by Land and cafe) have been formerly called *Rhos*, *Tachos* &c. *ῥωσες* &c. *Taurus vocati gentes Rhos*, as he faith from *Taurizes*. Which *Ros*, or *Rhofes*, firft mingling with the *Alani*, a *Sarmatian* People, might get the name of *Roxolani*; and afterwards poffeffing the more Northern Countries, or mingling with the *Roffi*, of Mount *Taurus* (from whom thofe of *Taurica* defcended) in their enterprizes on *Conftantinople* and the parts adjoining, return to their old name of *Roffi*. The *Roffi*, or *Ruffians*, were then the firft Lords of this Country generally, the *Mefcovites* poffeffors of a Province only; fo called from the *Mofchi*, fpooken of by *Lxxvi* in his *Pharlatia*, and placed by *Pliny* near the head of the River *Phafis*, which rifing from the *Armenian Mountains*, falls into the *Enxine*. Derived no doubt from *Mofchi*, (or *Mofch*), as the Antients called him) the Son of *Japhet*, placed originally in the North and North-eaft of *Syria*, on the Confines of *Calchis* and *Armenia*; where *Pliny*, as before is faid, hath fixed the *Mofchi*, and where there is a long Chain of Hills, which moft of the old Writers call *Montes Mofchici*. But to return unto the *Roffi*, we hear not of them by this name till the time of *Michael*, the third, Emperor of *Conftantinople*; in whose Reign they infected the *Enxine Sea*, and had the boldnefs to attempt the Imperial City, *Anno 864*; faid by *Cedrenus* and fome other of the Eaftern Writers to be a People of Mount *Taurus*,

next neighbours to *Moscow* or the *Moskovs*. Failing in their attempt upon *Constantinople*, and not willing to go home again, they spread themselves, with their Conjurates and Associates in this Expedition, upon the North-west Banks of the *Evxine Sea*, enlarging their bounds Northwards with less opposition than they were likely to have done on the Southern parts: *Constantinople* being once again in vain attempted in the Reigns of *Constantine the 7. and Henricus Aescop*. Converted to the Christian Faith, or growing into better terms with the Eastern Emperours, *Helenus*, Daughter of *Nicephorus Phocas*, is married to *Valadomirus* one of their Kings. From that time forwards they turned their Forces on the *Polanders*, and their weaker Neighbourhoods; save that, provoked by the death of one of their Country, slain accidentally at *Constantinople* in a private Quarrel, they made another fruitless Journey against that City, in the time of *Michael Calaphates*. Enlarging their Empire to the West and South, they became Masters of a great part of *Sarmatia*, *Armenia, Lituania, Podolia, Nigra, Ruffia*, and other Provinces now subject to the Crown of *Poland*, being the parts of their Empire. Anno 1240 the *Tartars*, under the Conduct of *Batani*, or *Batay*, Son of *Ossacca Chan*, broke into them and subdued them: the Country before this empire, under one false King, being broken afterwards into divers petty and inferior Governments, according to the will and pleasure of the infidel Victors. The Principal of these (descended from the former Kings) were *Lords of Volodomy, Moscov*, and some other Cities; held by them with no other Title than that of *Lords of Moscov*, and that to this Tributary to the *Tartars* as were all the rest. Their Seat was originally at *Volodomy*, till the time that *Judas*, the Son of *Daniel*, the fifth Lord of the *Ruffes*, defended the old Royal Line, taking a good liking of the River and Town of *Moscow*, repaired the Town, being before that mean and ordinary, and made it the chief Seat of his Principality. From whence the residue of the *Ruffians*, in succeeding times upon this Estate by Marriages, Fraud and Conquest, had the name of *Moscovites*. But notwithstanding this increase of their power and Empire, the *Tartars* held them for their Vassals, and tyrannized upon the Country with a barbarous Infidelity. Under which Thraldom they long groaned, till the *Tartarians*, being divided amongst themselves, and grown less terrible to the Neighbours, were out of their Power and Command here by the valour of *Jobn*, son of *Basilins* the second; who thereupon changed the Title of *Lord* into that of *Duke*, and after that out of *Gren Duke*, as his Fortunes thrived. Yet not so great, but that he was contented to be an Homager of the *Tartars*: it being finally agreed on at the end of their Wars, that the *Tartars* should relinquish all their Holds in the Country; and on the other side, that once every year, within the Castle of *Moscow*, the Great Duke, standing on foot, should feed the Horse of the *Crim-Tartars* with Oats out of his own Cuy. This Homage was by *Basilins* changed into a Tribute of Furs; which being also accepted by his Successors, (as the grow in power) occasioned the long Wars betwixt the Nations: the *Tartars* always preying on them by sudden Inroads, sometimes by Armies of no less than 200000 fighting men. But notwithstanding all their Power, and the Friendship of the *Turk* to boot, the *Moscovites* is not only able to assert his Sovereignty, but hath also wrested from them many of his Provinces.

As for the Princes of this Country, I shall not trouble myself (as I seee some do) in tracing a Succession of them as far as from the times of *Augustus Caesar*; when neither the *Rossi* nor the *Moschi* had here any footing. We will therefore go no higher than the time of *George*, whose Daughter *Anne* I find to have been married

married to *Henry* the first of *France*. From whom in a direct Line descended another *George*, with whom we intend to begin our Catalogue, as being the last King of the *Russies* before the coming of the *Tartars*. He, wisely yielding to the Storm, waved the Title of King, contented only with the Title of *Lord*, as more fate for him, and less invidious to the *Tartars*. The fifth from whom, called *Iohn*, (as before is said) having removed his Seat to *Mosco*, took to himself the Title of Lord of *Mosco*, the chief feat of that Power and Sovereignty, which he transmitted afterwards to his Posterity; affecting for that cause the Title of Duke of *Moscovie* (though all the conquered Towns and Territories have their place also in his Style) as much as that of *Emperor* of *Russia*; which some of them have assumed also since the time of *Basilius*, who styled himself *Basilius*, by the Grace of God, Emperor and Lord of *Russia*, Great Duke of *Pologdomir*, *Moscovie*, *Novogrod*, the great, *Pleskov*, *Smolensk*, *Tver*, *jarvis*, *Wiatka*, *Belgar*, &c. and Lord and Great Prince of the lower *Novogrod*, *Cernigow*, *great*, *Novogoloda*, *Nov*, *Biele*, *Rondow*, *Jarslaw*, *Poleskie*, *Bielozersk*, *Udore*, *Obdora*, *Konfow*, &c. King of *Czowan* and *Afracan*. But leaving them to their swelling and voluminous Title, (little inferior unto that of the Kings of *Spain*) let us next look on the Succession from the time afore said.

The Lords of *MOSCOWIE* of the old  
Royal *RUSSIAN* Line

A. C. b.

1. *George*, the last King of the *Russes*, and first Lord of the *Russes* of the Royal Line.
2. *Iacflans*.
3. *Alexander*.
4. *Daniel*.
5. *John*, who transferred the Seat to *Mosco*.
6. *John II*.
7. *Basilus*.
8. *Demetrius*.
9. *Georgius II*.
10. *Basilus II*.

The Great Dukes of *MOSCOWIE*.

1. *John*, the first Great Duke, who shook off the Tartarian Bondage.
2. *Basilius Cazan*, won the Provinces of *Severia*, *Rosovia*, and *Smolensko*, with the Realms of *African* and *Cazan*.
3. *John Basilius*, conquered *Livonia* and *Lithuania*. Both which his Successor
- 1548 4. *Joannes Bafilides*, or *Wasilwich*, lost in his age; though in his youth he had subdued the *Noj-baczenian* Tartars to his Empire, and vanquished *Selim* Emperour of the *Turks*, Anno 1569. With this King the *Englishs* first began to confederate.
- 1583 5. *Theodoros Johanniades*, the last of the old Royal Line of *Moscow*.
- 1591 6. *Baris Theodorits*, Brother to the Wife of the last Great Duke, partly by the last Will of his Predecessor, partly by practising with the people, obtained the Empire; but being an unmerciful Tyrant, was dispossessed by the *Polanders* coming in favour of one.
- 1603 7. *Demetrius*, pretending himself to be the Son of *John Wasilwich*, (and generally believed to be so) preferred in a Monastery from the

Tyranny of *Boria*, in hatred of whom he was brought in by the *Polander*; by whose aid he overcame the Tyrant, and rooted out his Family, and was with great joy crowned Emperor in the City of *Mosco*. But the *Russian* Lords disdaining to have a Prince imposed on them from *Poland*, rose in Arms against him, and at last vanquished and slew him in open Field: his Wife, a noble *Polonian* Lady, being sent poorly home, and the *Polanders* beaten out of the Country.

- 1606 8. *Bogdan* *Ivanowitch* farrnamed *Siskins*, the chief of the *Confiscators*, was by the rest of his Faction chosen *Knez*, or Emperour, and held the State with great Trouble till the year 1610, when
- 1610 9. *Demetrius II.* another pretender to the State, as the Son of *Iohn Wasilwitsch* also, in opposition upon *Siskins*, fell up by a stronger Faction, gave occasion to the *Polander* to work upon this difference; by whom *Siskins* was taken Prisoner, *Demetrius* slain, *Smolensky* and other great Towns subdued, and *Vladislaws*, Prince of *Poland*, recommended to the *Russians* to be chosen Emperour. But the *Russies*, loath to fall under the power of the *Polander*; and weary of their own Confusions, made choice at last of
- 1615 10. *Michael Fedorowitsch*, Son of *Theodore* the Patriarch of *Mosco*, who at last settled this vast Empire, and managed it in a more constant way of Peace with the *Turk*, *Tartar*, *Polonian*, and *Sweethlander*, than any of his Predecessors had done before him.
- 1646 11. *Alexius Michaelowitsch* (or the Son of *Michael*) succeeded his Father in the Empire; troubled at first with some Discontents in the State, (as in all other Countries about that time) but now quietly settled, Anno 1648.

The Formales with which these great Emperors are invested or fetted in the Throne are not many nor flatly, such as they be. There afford you out of the History of the Life of *Johnnes Baptista*, written in *Latine* by *Pavlos Oederivinus*. On the 2. of *June*, Anno 1583, *Theodorius Jordanus* went towards the Temple of *S. Michael*: being the principal Church in all *Mosco*, the Streets all covered with Flowers, the Doors of the Citizens crowned with Garlands, the Air echoing with the noise of Flutes and Trumpets, and the people to crowding to behold their Prince, that had not the Guard with naked Swords forced a passage through them, it had been impossible for him to have gone on. Being now come to the Church-door, the Lords of the Country (*Knezess* they there call them) went out to meet him; and the Archbishop of *Mosco*, clad in his Pontificalibus, when he was come into the Church, embraced him. The Pavement of the Church was cobby with Tapestry, and the Stalls adorned with costly Hangings. The Great Duke fate down in his Throne, being attired in a garment of Silk, buttoned down with Golden Buttons: on his Head he wore a Purple Cap fringed with rich Jewels, and on his Fingers abundance of Rings. Being thus seated, the Patriarch made a Prayer to God to bless him, his People, and his Government: which was seconded by the joyful Shouts and Acclamations of his Subjects; amongst whom no small store of Silver-money was flung by the Treasurer, and so they returned to the Palace.

The Government of this Country is meerly Tyrannical, the Emperour being absolute Lord of the Lives, Lands

and Goods of all his Subjects: all of them, the noble as well as the base, subscribing themselves in their Petitions to him by the name of *Kleptery*, that is, Slaves. Whereupon *Mahomet*, a *Turkish Bashaw*, was used to say, that his Master and the *Moscow* were the two most absolute Princes in all the World. First for their Goods; when any Embassador returns home, the Great Duke takes from him all the Presents which he hath received, giving him perhaps some small Reward, perhaps none at all: and as for Lands, they pass not from Father to Son, but as he confirms it. But more particularly, (besides the case of *Permia* spoken of before) *John Vasilvitch* sent a Command to *Mosco*, to provide a Coal-pack of five Fleas for a Medicine: and when the Citizens returned answer that it was impossible, he fined them at 700 Rubbles for their Disobedience. Another time he laid a Mult of 300000 Rubbles upon his Nobility, because he had no good Sport in his Hunting: which they again extorted from the common people; and under colour of want, commanded from some Bishops and Monasteries the sum of 100000 Rubbles, from some 50000, more or less from others, according unto their Revenues. And it is usual with the best of them to cause the *Boiars* (or Gentlemen which serve on horse-back) to pretend themselves robbed, that he may send unto the City to find out the Felon, and, on a *Non est inventus*, fine them at discretion, sometimes 8000, sometimes 10000, and sometimes 20000 Rubbles. Then for their Lives, there is a Story, that *Vasilvitch* having found that one of his Secretaries had received a Goofe stuffed full of Silver for a Bribe, caused him to be brought into the Market-place of *Moscow*, without any legal Trial, he commanded the Executioner first to cut off his Legs about the Shins, and then his Arms about the Elbows, (still asking the miserable man how he liked Goofe-flesh) and in the end to cut off his Head; in similitude of a Goofe ready for the Spit: And that they may the better preserve this Power, the Great Dukes seldom shew themselves unto the people but in Apparel of inestimable value, joyning the Ornaments of a Bishop unto the Majesty of a King, by wearing a Mitre on their Heads shining with Diamonds and rich Stones: and when they wear it not on their Heads, they place it before the Chair of State, (over which are the Images of *Christ* and the Blessed Virgin) holding in their hands a most rich Crozier-Staff, and all their Fingers full of Rings. And upon solemn Festivals and Entertainments the great Chamber is beset with Cupboards of Plate of infinite value, and filled with men clothed with Cloth of Gold to the very footfall of them seeming to be men of the chief Nobility, but many times being no other than the gravest and portliest Citizens of *Mosco*, richly apparelled for the time out of the Emperour's Wardrobe; which to such as do not understand the Fraud, look like to many Princes, and cause no small wonder at his Magnificence. So that the people seeing him in such Royal state, and knowing no more than what they are taught at home, reverence him as Slaves, not Subjects, and look upon him rather as a God than a King.

Having to absolute a Command on their Lives and Goods, it will be easily supposed that he may raise what Forces and amass what Treasures he hath a mind to. First, for his Forces, it is said that he is able to raise 300000

Horfe, if occasion be: and that he may come near that number it is more than probable, in that *John Vasilvitch*, in his War against those of *Astracan*, had actually 120000 Horfe, and that a great part of the Country is in the hands of the *Boiars* placed by their Tenure to serve with Horfe whenever he pleareth; and that there are 110 men chosen by the Emperour, and by him enfeoffed with Lands, (during pleasure only) who for these Lands are to find 65000 Horfe with all things necessary for the Wars, and those in a continual readines fit for present Action. Then for such Horfe as he himself doth keep in perpetual pay, there are no fewer than 25000 which attend him as a Guard to his person, all of them well-experienced men and fit for Service: which added to the 65000 spoken of before, make up a standing Body of 90000. Had he Foot answerable unto this proportion of Horfe, there were no dealing with him; but therein his *Militia* is defective: *Vasilvitch* to his great Army of 120000 Horfe having but 20000 Foot; the Foot-men which he hath in continual pay amounting to 12000 only, far short of such a standing Body of Horfe as before we spoke of. And this defect hath been the reason why the *Polanders* with far less Armies have prevailed against them: the Great Duke not being able with all his power to hinder *King Stephen of Poland* from taking *Vilno*, or besieging *Pleskow* (though his Army was not above 60000 in both Horfe and Foot) for want of standing Bands of Foot to make good his ground. Generally both Horfe and Foot are very obedient to their Captains and Superior Officers: patiently enduring all Discommodities of Cold, Rain, and Hunger, (in that regard fitter to keep a Fortrefs than serve in Field) and so regardless of their Lives in the day of Battle, that they will rather lose themselves than yield themselves Prisoners or demand Quarter.

For his Revenues, they may be what he will himself, considering (besides his extraordinary power of oppressing his Subjects before mentioned) the many ordinary ways he hath of amazing Treasure: viz. the Forfeiting of home-bred Commodities, and ingrossing the sovereignty, selling them at what price he list, and hindering all men else from Trade till his own be sold; provision of Rent-corn and Victual, raised in some years to 200000 Rubbles, Rent-wood and Hay to 30000, Poll-money to 400000, Customs on Merchandise to 800000. By which and other means of collecting Monies, and the Domain of his Crown, though he raise vast Sums; yet it is thought that, his Household-charges being deducted, there remain not towards all other Expences three millions of Rubbles, every Rubble being as much as an English Mark.

The Arms are *Sable*, a Portal open of two Leaves and as many Degrees Or.

There are in *R U S S I A*

Patriarch 1. Archbishops 2.

Bishops 18.

And so much for *R U S S I A*.

O F

# P O L A N D.

**P**OLAND is bounded on the East with *Russia* and the *Crim-Tartar*, from whom it is parted by the River *Borjphenes*; on the West with *Germany*, on the North with the *Baltick* Sea and some part of *Russia*, on the South with the *Carpathian* Mountains, which divide it from *Hungary*, *Transylvania* and *Moldavia*.

It is an aggregate Body, consisting of many distinct Provinces united into one Estate, of which *Poland*, being the predominant, hath given name to the rest, called all together the Realm of *Poland*: and that so named from *Pole*, which in the *Slavonian* Language (the common Language of the Country) signifieth plain; because it is but little settled with Hills. It is of Figure round, in compass 2600 miles, situate under the eighth and twelfth Climates; and that the longest Day in the Southern part is but 16 hours; and about 18 hours in the parts most North.

This Country is plain, but full of Woods, which serve to rectifie the Air, being naturally so cold that they have neither Wine nor Grapes; instead whereof they use that kind of Drink called *Ale*, in former times the usual Beverage of *England* and this Country only. Barley they have, and Pulse in such abundant measure, that no small quantities of each are transported yearly: nor yield they any thing at all to *Denmark*, or *Hungary* for their plenty of Cattel. But of this more in our description of the several Provinces.

The People are very industrious, and studious of all Languages, especially of the *Latine*; to which they are so devoted, that there is scarce a mean man who is not able in some measure to express himself in it. According to their abilities, they are rather prodigal than truly liberal, and good Soldiers generally. The Peasants live in miserable Servitude to their Lords, the Lords in such Equality of estate amongst themselves, that none of them excepting the greater Princes) exceedeth 25000 Ducats of yearly Rent. Proud in their Garb, costly in their Apparel, impatient in their Humours, and delicate in Diet. These last Conditions are common to the Women also, who are for the most part indifferently fair, and rather witty than well spoken. But this, being the peculiar Character of the *Polander* properly so called, is not perhaps communicable to the People of the rest of the Provinces, whom we shall speak of severally in their proper places.

The Christian Faith was first planted in this Kingdom at several times and by several persons, according to the different parts of which it consisteth: in *Poland* specially so called in the time of their Prince *Micosslaus*, Son of *Nemanslaus*, Anno 963; in *Livonia*, by the Preaching of one *Meinardus*, Anno 1200, or thereabouts, in *Lithuania*, not until the year 1386, at the admission of *Jagello* to the Crown of *Poland*, and then done (as some say) by *Thomas* of *Walden* (or *Waldensis*) an English Friar, in *Samogitia* and *Polshunia*, at the same time with *Lithuania*; in the rest at other times and on other occasions: yet to that in many places of idolatry was never totally rooted out, the feeds and practice

whereof many Points still remain amongst them. Corrupted by the Superstitions of the Church of *Rome*, a Reformation was endeavoured at such a time as *John Hus* flourished in *Bohemia*, the next neighbouring Kingdom: but by the rigour of *Vladislaus* the sixth, then King thereof, assisted by his Bishops and Noblemen, it was at that time hindered. Afterwards in the time of *Luther*, some who had studied at *Leipsick*, and *Wittenberg* (Universities of *Saxony*) brought his Opinions home with them into the Province of *Poland*; as some Dutch Merchants (with the rest of their Commodities) did into *Danzick*, the chief Town of *Pomerellia*, Anno 1525: from whence it spread it self over most part of that Country. According as it was favoured or disliked by the *Palatines*, *Chastellans* and other great men of the Realm, so was its entertainment either good or bad: the *Gratiens* in the mean time taking opportunity to win some parts of it to their side, and confirm others in it, who, being originally members of the Church of *Greece*, because originally converted by the Bishops thereof, did still continue in Conformity and Obedience to it. In the end, by reason of the over-greedy Liberty of the Nobility and People, and want of Power in the King to controule their doings, every man took up what Religion he best liked; some following the *Augustine* Confession, others the *Helvetian*, others adhering, as tenaciously to the Church of *Rome*, and some inclining to new Sects, or rather to old Heresies under new Disguises, have brought in such a Miscellaneous or *Babel* of Religions into this Estate, (*Jesuits*, *Lutherans*, *Calvinists*, *Socinians*, *Arians*, *Anabaptists*, and indeed what name being here all tolerated) that at last it grew into a By-word, that *If any man had lost his Religion, he might find it in Poland, or else believe it to be vanished*. A by-word afterwards applied unto *Amsterdam*, communicable since unto other places, *Liberias* *Prophetandi*, or the Liberty of Prophecying, being now as much allowed of in some parts of Christendom, as *Libertas opinandi* was in *Rome* under *Nerva's* Government, *ubi et sentire quae velis, et quae sentias loqui liceat*, when as a man might think as he liked of the publick, and speak what he thought. But whether this be such a *vera et temporaria Felicitas*, such a Felicity of these our Times, as *Tacitus* conceived the return to be of those, future times will shew.

But to return again to *Poland*: notwithstanding this mixture of Religions, yet that most publicly allowed and countenanced is the Religion authorized by the Church of *Rome*, asserted here by the Zeal of the Kings unto that Cause, and the great Power of the Bishops, who seeing how those of their Order have sined in *Germany* and other places, under colour of Reformation of more things amiss, have hitherto upheld the Ecclesiastical Estate in the same form they found it. The Government of the Church is as formerly by 4 Archbishops and 19 Bishops, who challenge a Jurisdiction over all the Kingdom, but exercise it upon those only who submit unto them: those who embrace the Doctrines of *Luther* or *Calvin* following the Forms of Government by them established; and others do some new ones of their own devising. And for those Provinces and people which lie towards *Greece*, or

or were parts heretofore of the *Russian* Empire, and still hold a Communion with those Churches, they have Archbishops and Bishops of their own Religion; that is to say, the Archbishops of *Vilne* and *Lemberg*, the Bishops of *Pelaco*, *Lusko*, *Pinsk*, *Volodimir*, *Przemisl* and *Kiovia*. Yet amongst all these different Churches and forms of Government there is this Conformity, that whenever the Gospel is read openly in the Congregation, the Nobility and Gentry use to draw their Swords, (according to an ancient Custom which they had among them) signifying their readiness to defend it against all Opposers. Which reason doubtless gave beginning to the standing up at the Creed and Gospel in the Primitive times, retained still in the Church of England, whereby we do declare how prepared and resolute we are to defend the same: though some of late, holding it for a Relique of Popery, with greater nicety than wisdom, have refused to do it.

Principal Commanders of this Country in the Art of War were, 1. *Casimir* the third, the great Establisher of this Kingdom after long Diffusions. 2. *Jaagelo*, or *Fladislav* the first, who first brought down the Pride of the *Dutch* Knights in a famous Victory. 3. *Casimir* the 4. the fortunate Conqueror of the *Knights of Prussia*, brought by him under the Command of the Kings of Poland. 4. *Sigismund* the first, by whose Valour and good fortune the *Dutch* Knights were totally suppressed, and the greatest part of *Prussia* for ever added to that Crown. 5. *Sigismund* the second, surnamed *Augustus*, fortunate in his Wars against most of them of *Livonia*, by him united to this Kingdom. Of most special note for learning, *Hofius*, a Divine of the Papal Party, whose great Abilities advanced him to the State of Cardinal. 2. *Crellius*, and 3. *Volckelius*, of the contrary party in Religion, men of great parts, but Heretodox and unsound Opinions. 4. *Fromartius*, the Historian. 5. *Keckerman*, the Professor at *Dauk* or *Dantzick*, a man of universal Studies, but of greater industry than exactness.

Chief Rivers of this Kingdom are, 1. *Vistula* or the *Weyssel*, the ancient Boundary betwixt *Germany* and *Sarmatia Europaea*, which, rising in the *Carpathian* Mountains, passeth by *Cracovia*, the chief City of Poland, and, dividing *Prussia* from *Pomerellia*, falleth into the *Baltick* Sea, not far from *Dantzick*, and is navigable for the space of 400 miles, of old called *Faudalis*. 2. *Wartha*, which runneth through the lesser Poland. 3. *Diuna* the left, watering *Livonia*; and 4. *Borsbhenes*, or the *Nieper*, passing through *Podolia*: both spoken of before, when we were in *Russia*. 5. *Nisster*, by *Polemey* called *Tyras*, which falleth into the *Euxine* Sea, having first parted *Podolia* from *Moldavia*. 6. *Jugra*, by some called the lesser *Tanais*, arising in *Lithuania*, and falling into the more noted *Tanais*, which is now called *Don*. Of less note there are, 1. *Ruben*, or *Renben*. 2. *Chorona*, now called *Pregel*. 3. *Bog*, said by some to be the *Hypaxis* of the Ancients. 4. *Memel*. 5. *Nicmen*, the Meander of these Northern parts. 6. *Windaw*, a *Livonian* River falling into the *Baltick*. Mountains of note here are not many, the Countries for the most part being plain and champaign: and those which be are rather Boundaries betwixt this and some other Kingdom, than proper unto this alone. The chief of which are those called *Sarmaticæ*, dividing *Germany* from *Sarmatia Europaea*, by *Solima* named *Sera*, by *Polemey* the *Carpathian* Mountains; the Boundary at this time betwixt Poland and *Hungary*, of which more anon.

The common Meets and Land-marks being thus laid down, we will next take a view of those several Provinces of which this Kingdom doth consist, being eleven in number; that is to say, 1. *Livonia*, 2. *Samogitia*, 3. *Lithuania*, 4. *Valmirie*, 5. *Podolia*, 6. *Russia nigra*,

7. *Maffovia*, 8. *Podlaffia*, 9. *Prassia*, 10. *Pomerellia*, and 11. *Poland* specially to be called: all of them (except the proper Poland) within *Sarmatia Europaea*.

### 1. LIVONIA.

*LIVONIA*, or *LIEFLAND*, is bounded on the East with the Empire of *Russia*, on the West with the *Baltick* Sea, on the North with the Gulf or Bay of *Finland*, on the South with *Samogitia* and *Lithuania* extended in length along the Shore of the *Baltick* for the space of 125 *Dutch*, or 500 *Italian*, miles, and 40 *Dutch*, or 160 *Italian*, miles in breadth: and called thus perhaps from the *Levomi*, a People of *Germany*, inhabiting not far from the River *Vistula*.

The Country is for the most part plain, without any Mountains; furnished with Corn and Fruits in so great abundance, that they send part thereof into other Countries: and yet there is much Ground untilld in it, by reason of the Bogs and Marthes, which are very frequent. Here is also store of Wax, Honey and Pitch, but they have neither Oyl nor Wine: the want of which last is supplied by Meth. Of taste Beasts fit for man's Service they are well provided; as also of such whole Skins as are more value with the Merchant than their Flesh at the Market; as Ermins, Sables, Castors, and others of that kind, besides good store of Game for Hunting, the Country having in it many large Woods, parts of the *Harjymian*. And as for Rivers, there are few Countries which have more; it being watered by the *Windaw*, the *Beck*, the *Dwine*, the *Renbon*, all of them falling into the *Baltick*; many great Lakes, whereof the chief is that of *Beybas*, 45 miles long, and full of Fish.

The people are much given to Gluttony and Drunkenness, especially in rich men's houses, where it is to be held: for the Peasants live in want enough, poorer Slaves than Tyrannical Landlords, who spend in Riot and excess what these get by Drudgery: and when at any time the poor Wretch leaves his Landlord to mend his condition with some other, the Lord, if he can overtake him, will cut off his Foot, to make him sure for the future. They are a mixture of many Nations: as the *Estoni*, which are the natural Inhabitants, (derived from the *Esti*, a *Dutch* people, spoken of by *Polemey*) of which Nation are almost all the Peasants; the *Moscovites*, *Swedes*, *Dani*, *Dutch* and *Polanders*, intermingled with them, coming in upon several Conquests, and planting themselves in the best parts of it, in which they still Lord it over the Native, but the *Dutch* especially, for long time Masters of the whole.

The Christian Faith was first here planted by *Meinardus* of *Lubeck*, (employed herein) in the time of *Fredrick* the first; at the persuation of some *Dutch* Merchants who traded hither, by the Archbishop of *Byeme*, by whom he was made the first Bishop of the *Livonians*. The Church hereof at this time is governed by the Archbishop of *Riga*, the Bishops of *Derpt*, *Asia*, *Osel*, *Carland*, and *Kiovia*. In those parts which remain subject to the *Polanders*, the Religion of the Church of *Rome* is only countenanced. Such parts of it as are under the *Swedes* or *Dani* are for the most part of the *Lutheran* Profession, planted with Colonies of that People. But the *Estoni*, or original Inhabitants, as they have a Language, so they have a Religion by themselves also, mixt of the Christian and the Pagan. Extremely well affected unto their Priests, to whom they present Salt, Candles and Fruits, when they come to their their Blessings; great lovers of Confection, eaters of Holy water, and diligent frequenters of their Churches; but so extremely ignorant in all Points of Religion, that there is hardly one in a Village that can

lay

say his *Pater-noster*. When they bury any of their dead, every one drinketh an Health to him, and poureth his part upon him when his turn comes to drink; putting it into the Grave with him an Hatchet, Wine, Meat, and a little Money for his Voyage. And in some places they are wholly Idolatrous, (if not converted very lately by the care of the Jesuits) some of them worshipping the Sun, others Stocks and Stones, and some Serpents also. The Language of the Country is for the most part the High *Dutch*, being the Language of those Nations who first Lorded over them; the *Estoni* having generally a peculiar Language, which none of the others understand.

It was divided formerly into the Provinces of *Carland*, *Ejfland*, *Semigallia*, *Virland*, *Harland* and *Lettenland*; but these fix, since the Conquest of it by the *Polanders*, are reduced to three, *Harland* and *Virland* being united unto *Ejfland*, and *Semigallia* unto *Carland*.

Chief places in *Ejfland* are, 1. *Rivallia*, or *Revel*, a Bishop's See, and a well-traded Port, situate on the Gulf of *Finland*; a Town belonging to the *Swede*, the keeping whereof, and of *Wiborg* on the Borders of *Moscow*, stand him yearly in 100000 Dollars. 2. *Habsey*, or *Halsfel*, (*Asia* in *Latine*) a Bishop's See; and 3. *Pernaw*, a well-fortified place, belonging to the *Swedish* also, ever since the Conquest of these parts of the Country by John the second. Places of great importance to the Crown of *Sweden*, as all other pieces of this nature are, which, standing in an Enemy's Country, not only do defend our own, but offend our Adversaries. For they are not only Docks, to open a farther passage into their Territories, whenever we shall find occasion; but whilst the Enemy is besieging thereof, or otherwise busied in recovering them into his power, our own State is preferred in quiet, and time may yield fit opportunity to relieve them, if they be distressed, without waiting of any part of our proper Countries. Of which nature was *Calais* when it was in the hands of the *English*; the Garrisons which the *Spaniards* and *Portuguese* have in *Africk* and *India*: the Charge of keeping them being sufficiently defrayed (if the charge prove greater than the Income, as sometimes it doth) by the advantages they give unto him which hath them.

4. *Vilna*, a strong Town, and fortified with an impregnable Castle, betrayed by the *Dutch* Garrison at that time in it, together with *William* of *Erstenburg*, the Great Master, into the hands of *John Basilus* the Great Duke of *Moscow*, who still holds it. 5. *Derpt*, or *Derbern*, (in *Latine* *Tapauna*) a Bishop's See, situate on the *Beck*, or *Embeck*, betwixt two Lakes, in the midst of the Province, and taken at the same time by the *Moscovite*, who, transporting the *Livonians* into other places, planted these parts with Colonies of his own people. 6. *Tervoff*, a Castle of great strength taken then also by the *Russes*; but being recovered by the *Polander*, was blown up with Gunpowder, that it might no more come into the hands of the Enemy. Hitherto nothing of this Country which belongs to the *Polanders*; that which follow do: that is to say, 7. *Borcholm*, the Seat and Residence of the Bishop of *Rivallia*, since the taking of that Town by the *Swedes*. 8. *Weisenburg*, incommoedly seated betwixt two ill neighbours, *Narvia* and *Rivallia*, but serving very well to prohibit the Incursions of those Garrisons farther into the Country. 9. *Vernebeck*, in that part of *Ejfland*, which is called *Odinapog*, and *Weisenburg*, in that part thereof which is named *Servia*.

In *LETLENLAND*, lying in the midst betwixt *Ejfland* and *Carland*, the places of most note are, 1. *Riga*, (the people call it *Ry*) seated on the Mouth of the River *Duna*, falling there into the *Baltick*: first built & planted at the charges of the Merchants of *Byeme*; after that the Archbishop's See, the ordinary Residence of the Great

Master, and the chief City of the whole Province of *Livonia*. A Town well fortified, according to the modern Rules of Fortification; with a strong Wall, large Bulwarks, double Ditches, Palisadoes, and well provided, of all manner of Ammunition: a famous Empory, of great resort for foreign Merchants, who carry hence, Pitch, Wax, Hemp, Flax, and such other Commodities. They are governed (notwithstanding their Subjection to the King of Poland) by their own Laws, and such stout defenders of their Liberties, that they will by no means admit of any Foreigner to have Command of the City, obedient in all other things to the will of that King. 2. *Danumund*, an impregnable Fortrice, two *Dutch* miles from *Riga*, well garrisoned by the *Polanders*, who here take Toll of all foreign Merchants. 3. *Blokows*, a Garrison of the King's betwixt *Riga* and *Danumund*, where the Merchants are tolled over again. 4. *Wenden*, more within the Land, on the River *Teider*. 5. *Wolmar*, upon the same River. 6. *Kakenhantse*, a strong Town on the Banks of the *Dvina*. This Country belongs wholly to the King of Poland, and stood firm for him in the War made by *Charles* Duke of *Sunderman* against his Nephew *Sigismund* King of Poland and Sweden, when almost all *Ejfland* had submitted to him.

*CURLAND*, the third and last Member of this Division, containing *Semigallia* also, lieth South of *Lettenland*, and North of *Samogitia* and *Lithuania*: an entire Dukedom of it self, but holden under the Sovereignty and Homage of the Kings of Poland. Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Candow*. 2. *Goldingen*. 3. *Kies*, (the *Dutch* call it *Windaw*) the Seat of the Great Master of the *Tenonic* Order in times past, now most frequented as the place of Parliament or general Assembly for Affairs which concern the publick. 4. *Dubin*. 5. *Grubin*, on the Sea-side, but of no Trade at all. 6. *Hafenpor*. And then in *Semigal*, 7. *Mittaw*, the Court and Residence of the Dukes of *Carland*. 8. *Selborg*. 9. *Belfenberg*. 10. *Dobelin*. There is no Town in all this Dukedom of any Trading, though lying for a great place all along the *Baltick*; because none of them are furnished with commodious Harbours. A Dukedom first begun in the person of *Gothardus Keler*, (of one of the Noble Families of *Denmark*) the last Great Master of the *Dutch* Knights in this Country, who in the year 1562, surrendering his Order, and the whole possession of *Livonia*, to *Sigismund*, *Augustus* K. of Poland, received back again for him, and his Heirs for ever the Dukedom of *Carland* and *Semigal*, to be held by them of the Crown; the Nobility of these Countries doing then presently their Homage and Allegiance to him as their Hereditary Prince. Since which time the Princes of this House have continued Feudataries unto Poland, but not reckoned as parts or members of the Body thereof; not coming to the Diets, nor liable to the publick Charges, nor having any thing to do in the King's Election; in a word, rather honourable Neighbours of the King of Poland, than Subjects to them. The present Duke is now to be much increased in Estate and Power, if the new Marquess of *Brandenburg* (whose Sister is his Mother) should depart without Issue. For by that means there will be added to this House the great Dukedom of *Prussia*, those of *Cleve* and *Guelic*, together with such other Countries possessed now by that Marquess as he holds by descent from the Heirs-general of those Dukedoms: which makes him call an eye already upon those Estates.

There belong also to *Livonia* some few Islands situate in the *Baltick* Sea: that is to say, 1. *Offia*. 2. *Dachden*. 3. *Mona*. 4. *Wormle*. 5. *Wrangen*. 6. *Kegn*. Of which the four last do belong to the King of Poland, *Dachden* to the King of *Swedish*, and *Offia*, or *Osel*, to the *Danes*. This last is the chief of all the fix, distant

distant from the main Land of *Livonia* 12 Dutch miles; 14 of the same miles in length, half as much in breadth: the chief Towns hereof being 1. *Oleſa* Bishop's See, which gives name to the Island. 2. *Sonneburg*. The Island was made subject to the *Danes* by *Magnus*, Brother of *Fredrick* the second, King of *Denmark*, who being chosen Administrator of the Bishoprick of *Scythia* in *Estland*, made himself Master of this Island and some other pieces, which, dying without Issue, he bequeathed to the King his Brother, *Anno* 1580.

As for *Livonia* it self, it was first under the *Levoni* and *Esthi*, two German Nations, from whom the Country had the name of *Livonia*, the People of *Estlanders* or *Eſtones*. Distracted into many petit Principalities, it was made acquainted with the Christian Faith by the care of the Merchants of *Bremen*, as before was said. *Meinard* their first Bishop being dead, and *Bertold* his Successor slain by such of the people as had not yet received the Gospel, the Knights of the Port-gaive, or the Sword, were sent hither, to defend the Preachers and the Doctrine by the force of Arms. Finding themselves too weak to effect the business, they united with the Order of *Dutch* Knights in *Prussia*, to whom from that time forwards they became subordinate; the great Master of *Livonia* acknowledging him of *Prussia* for his Superiour. These Knights continued Masters of it without contradiction till the year 1557, (embracing in the mean time the Opinions of *Luther*, *Anno* 1558) then quarrelling with the Archbishop of *Riga*, of the House of *Brandenburg*, because he would not adhere unto their Opinions; who, to secure his own Estate was forced to put *Riga* into the hands of the *Polanders*. Afterward being overlaid by the *Moscovite*, who had taken from them almost all their Country, they were fain to put themselves under the Protection of *Sigismund-Augustus* King of *Poland*, *Anno* 1559. But *William* of *Furstenberg*, the Great Master being betrayed by his own Mercenaries into the hands of the *Moscovite*, *Gothard* his Successor (following the example of *Albert* the Great Master of *Prussia*) transacted with the said *Sigismund* for the whole Estate, which he surrendered to his use in the Castle of *Riga*, *March* 5, 1562, together with his Cross, the Seal of the Order, the Charters and Grants of many of the Popes and Emperours which concerned the same, as also the Keys of the City and Castle of *Riga*, the Office of Great Master, the Rights of Coinage, and all the Powers and Privileges appertaining to it: receiving back again from *Ratzevil*, the King's Commissioner, the Dukedom of *Curland* to him and his Heirs for ever, as before is said. By this Transaction the Kings of *Pole* became Masters of *Lithuania*, and were more absolutely settled in it after a long War betwixt *Stephen* King of *Poland* and *John Vassilvich* the Great Duke of *Moscovie*, who in the end surrendered all his Claim therein to the said *Stephen* and his Successors, *Anno* 1582, reserving only some few Towns on the Eastern Borders: the *Danes* and *Sweethlanders* taking occasion by their Troubles to impatronize themselves of *Narva*, *Rivallia*, *Oſel*, and some other pieces.

### 2. SAMOGITIA.

**SAMOGITIA** is a small Province wedged in betwixt *Livonia* and *Lithuania*, having *Livonia* on the North, *Lithuania* on the East and South, and the *Baltick* Sea upon the West: in length extending 50 miles from East to West, but not of an answerable breadth. It is so called from the lowliness of the situation, (the word *Samogitis* in the Language of the Inhabitants signifying *terram inferiorem*, or the Low-lands) by the *Moscovite* in

same sense called *Samotzhschina*. This lowness of situation makes it very watery, and almost continually frozen: but withal it hath many Forests, which yield unto the people abundance of Honey, better, more pleasing to the taste, and less mixt with Wax, than in other places.

The people are supposed to be of the *Saxon* Race of a good Stature, well set, bold, and apt for War; but withal boisterous, rude and barbarous: Christians in general, but many of them do still retain their old Idolatries, nourishing amongst them a kind of four-footed Serpents, about three handbills in length, which they worship as their Household-gods, attending them with fear and reverence when they call them out to their repair: and if any Mischance do happen to any of the Family, it is imputed presently to some want of due observance of these ugly Creatures. They are naturally inclined to Divinations, Charms and Sorceries, and frequently abused (as for the most part such people are) by Diabolical Illusions. Nay, they which profess the name of *Christ* are so ill instructed, that they use to marry many Wives, without consideration of Blood or Parentage: it being ordinary for a man to marry with his Brother's Widow, and not unusual to marry the Relict of their Fathers, (a Fornication not so much as hecard of in *St. Paul's* time amongst the Gentiles.) They have some Customs also as unprofitable as these are heathenish; breaking up their Land, as they do in *Moscovie*, with Spades or Sickles. And when one of their Governours, observing the Husbandry of other Nations, had brought them the use of the Plough, it turned that for two or three years, either by the indisposition of the Weather, or some other Accident, they had not so much Corn as they used to have. Which War the people attributing to the use of the Plough, *ex quoquam aliud in causa esse putantes*, and not believing that there was any other cause of it, grew so much incensed, that the Governour, fearing some Sedition like to follow on it, was forced to leave them to the old way which before they went. An humour like to that of the *preſent Irish*, in ploughing with their Horses tails, spoken of before. So pertinacious for the most part are ignorant and superstitious people in standing to their ancient Customs, though absurd and hurtful.

Towns they have few, their Houses for the generality being poor and low, covered with Straw or Dirt, with an Hole open in the Roof to let in the light. The principal of those they have (but rather Villages than Towns) are 1. *Bigla*, near the head of the River *Smute*; 2. *Likava*, of which nothing memorable.

This Province hath always followed the fortunes of *Lithuania*: subject when that was so, to the Kings of *Russia*, converted when that was to the Christian Faith, and finally united with it to the Crown of *Poland*.

### 3. LITHUANIA.

**LITHUANIA** hath on the East the Empire of *Russia* on the West *Prussia*, *Moscovie*, and *Poland*; on the North *Livonia* and *Samogitia*, and on the South *Polonia* and *Podolia*. So called from *Lithus* the Ceremonial Staff, used anciently by the *Angurs* in their Divinations; to which the Inhabitants hereof being very much addicted before their receiving of the Gospel, were called *Lithani*; but this is but conjectural only. Yet rather thus, than that it should be peopled by some banished *Italians*, first named *Italiches*, then *Lithiches*, and after, by a most unlikely Corruption, come to *Lithuania*, as *Matthias* a *Mitchon* would fain have it.

The Country for the most part is full of Moors, Forests, some great Lakes like a Sea for bignels, and many navigable Rivers; which frozen over in the Winter make the

the ways more travelling at that time of the year than they are in Summer. The Air in most places is exceeding cold, which makes their Wheat (whereof they have some abundance) to be seldom ripe, and other Fruits of the Earth to come slowly forward. Their Forests yield them Bagles, Ermices, Sables, Deer, wild Horses, plenty of Honey, Wax, and Pitch: but their breed of Cattel is less here, and of smaller stature, than it is in *Germany*. These Forests also are the Store-house out of which the *English* and *Hollanders* furnish themselves with Timber, both for Ships and Building; returning to them in exchange Salt, Wine, and other Necessaries which are wanting here.

The people anciently had Fire and Serpents for their Gods, nourishing the last in their houses, and keeping the other continually burning; the Priests and Ministers of the Temple always adding Fuel, that it might not fail. The *Vespal* Fire was not kept more carefully at *Rome*, nor with greater Ceremony. To this God, whom they called *Dispan*, or the Lord of the *Smoak*, they used to sacrifice young Pullets; to the other, their Cocks. The seed of this Idolatry is so implanted in them, that it is said, that in a Village of the King's called *Levamski*, not four miles from *Vilna*, their chief City, they do to this day worship Serpents. Converted to their Prince *Jagello* to the Christian Faith, *Anno* 1386, they yet retained such Customs as are inconsistent with Christianity, marrying unmarried, when and as often as they please; no Bond being so soon cancelled as that of Matrimony. For a married man to use the body of an Harlot is accounted (as indeed it is) an opprobrious Crime: but for the Wife to have her Stallions and Adulterers is a thing so ordinary and unblameable, that the Husbands call them their Coadjutors, and prize them far above the rest of their Acquaintance. The common people are in a miserable Servitude unto their Lords, pillaged and beaten by them upon any occasion; yet must not come before them with an empty hand. And if any of them have committed a Crime deserving death, he must hang himself as soon as the Sentence is signified to him, or else is beaten and tormented in to cruel a manner, that Death at last is looked on as a better Life.

The Country is divided into ten parts or Provinces, subject unto the Jurisdiction of so many *Palatines*; that is to say, the *Palatine* of 1. *Vilna*. 2. *Trock*. 3. *Minſky*. 4. *Novogrod*. 5. *Brſſia*. 6. *Velhima*. 7. *Kiovia*. 8. *Mſſlau*. 9. *Vitebsky*. 10. *Polozskie*. But *Novogrod* and *Polozskie* being conquered by the Great Duke of *Moscovie*, and added unto that Estate, and *Velhima* reckoned (of late times) for a distinct Province of it self, not depending of it, the remaining number is but seven, most of them taking names from their principal Towns. The chief of those, and others which deserve place here, are: 1. *Vilna*, a Bishop's See, equal in bignels to *Cracon*, the chief City of *Poland*; so called of the River *Vil*, or *Vilva*, upon which it is seated; built there in the year 1205 by one *Gedemin*, a great Prince of these parts; well walled, but the Gates thereof open night and day; large, rich, and well frequented by foreign Merchants, especially by those that drive the Trade of *Moscovie*, who have here their Hall, one of the chief Ornaments of the City. They have in it also some Churches built of Stone, (but the most of Wood) the principal whereof is the Monastery of *St. Bernard*, which is a very comely Structure. The Natives call this Town *Vilenski*, the *Dutch* *Die Wilde*. It is situate in the very heart of the Country, the longest Day in Summer being here 16 hours and half a quarter; whereas in the most Southern parts of the Country it is but 16, and in the most Northern not fully 18. 2. *Kiovia*, or *Kiof*, situate on the *Nieper*, or *Bory-*

*thenes*, where the River *Desna* falls into it: heretofore a beautiful and most stately City, having in it above 300 fair Churches, of which some remain unto this day; the Ruines of the rest to be traced out amongst Shrubs and Buiſhes, the receptacles of wild Beasts. The Seat at that time of the Metropolitan of the *Russian* Empire, containing also under his Jurisdiction the Countries of *Wallachia* in *Dacia*, and *Nigra Russia* in *Poland*. But being destroyed by *Batu* or *Boyo* the *Tartarian*, in the Conquest of these parts by that People, it never could come near its former Lustre: yet still it holds the reputation of a Bishop's See, acknowledging the Patriarch of *Moscow* for his Metropolitan, and consequently is of the Communion of the *Greek* Churches, not of that of *Rome*. 3. *Grodno*, on the River *Chorna*, the chief Town of the *Palatinate* of *Trock*, memorable for the death of *Stephen* King of *Poland*. 4. *Grammado*, more memorable for the great Defeat given near it, by *Jagello* Duke of *Lithuania* and King of *Poland*, to the numerous Army of the *Dutch* Knights invading this Province; so constant with them a Success in the undertaking, that they brought with them a abundance of Chains and Torches; with the one to lead captive the Nobles of *Poland*, and with the other to fire their Cities. But *Jagello*, then newly made a Christian, putting his confidence in God, with an Army of untrained Souldiers so turned their Pride, that he flew 40000 of them; so that they never recovered of that Blow whilst their Order stood. 5. *Pinsk*, in the *Palatinate* of *Brſſia*, fortified with a Castle; both under the *Palatine* of *Mſſlau*. The rest of the chief Towns may be known by the *Palatimates* which they give their names to, but not else observable.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Avſi*, *Pagari*, *Savari*, Tribes of the *Sarmate* Europe. United into this name of *Lithuanians*, they became subject to the Kings of *Russia*, till the breaking of that Kingdom by the *Tartars*. At what time *Erdzgril*, then their Prince, (but an Homager and Tributary to the *Russians*) withdrew himself from their Command; as did also many other of the conquered Provinces. Afterwards *Minadch*, one of the Dukes or Princes of it, being made a Christian, was by Pope *Innocent* the third honoured with the Title of a King. In the end, *Anno* 1386, *Jagello* Duke of *Lithuania*, marrying with *Hedevig* Queen of *Poland*, was upon three Conditions chosen King of that Realm. 1. That he should immediately receive the Christian Faith. 2. That he should unite this Dukedom to the Crown of *Poland*. Of these the two first were performed without any delay, though the second not without some difficulty, the people being obstinate in their old Idolatry, especially in the Religious conceit they had of high Trees, which to cut down was held both unsafe and impious. The could not be weaned from this conceit, till by the authority of the King their loftiest Trees were felled; and their Woods grubbed up: when they saw done without any danger to the Prince, or any of those whom he employed in that service, *Regis mandato* & *autoritate ecclesiarum* they then began to hearken unto his Commands, and generally received the Gospel, and were baptized. In the last point there was a longer time of deliberation: For the Princes of the House of *Jagello*, loth to deprive themselves of their Patrimonial Estate, which was hereditary unto their Posterity, and to subject it to the Election of the *Polanders*, in which it was possible the Princes of their Family might be pretermitted, deferred the accomplishment hereof from one day to another, under colour that the *Lithuanians* would

revolt if they went about it. But *Sigismund-Augustus*, in whose person the Male-issue of *Agello* failed, forcing what Divisions might ensue after his decease, and fearing that the *Moscovites* would renew their old Pretensions, united it into the Crown: ordaining that the Bishops, *Palatines*, and a certain number of the *Chancellors* by him established, should have their place and Suffrage in the great Council of *Poland*; power in the chusing of the King, and all other Privileges which the natural *Polonians* have. Since that it is accounted a chief Member of that Body politic; subject to those Corruptions, Changes and Innovations in matters of Religion, which have been predominant in the other; excepting those parts only which relate to the Church of *Greece*, or *Mosco*, adhering pertinaciously to the Rites thereof.

## 4. VOLHINIA.

**VOLHINIA**, by some accounted one of the *Palatinates* of *Lithuania*, (as once it was) but by others a distinct Province of it; is bounded on the North and East with *Lithuania*, on the South with *Podolia*, and on the West with *Russia Nigra* and *Podlussia*. So called, as *Maginus* is of opinion, from the *Poligari*, who dwelling on the Banks of the River *Polga*, came afterwards in to this Country, calling it *Polgaria*, whence by degrees it came unto *Volhonia*, and at last unto *Volhinia*. But this conjecture is improbable, and of no good grounds.

The Country yields good plenty both of Grain and Fruits, Pools which abound with very good Fish. Forests which do afford them store of Game and Honey, and much good Pasture for their Cattel. That people of the same nature with the *Lithuanians*, but more strong and warlike, & better weaned from their old Superstitions and heathenish customs than the others are. They are of the same Language and Religion with those of *Russia*, to which, together with the rest of *Lithuania*, it did once belong. It is divided commonly into three parts or Provinces, all taking name from the three principal Cities of it: that is to say, 1. *Luske*, in *Lutina* called *Luscoria* a Town of above 1000 Families, where 127 only (in the time of my Author) were of the *Romish* Religion, the residue being *Russians*, *Gracians*, and some *Armenians*. The Seat and Residence of one of two Bishops, of which one being of the Communion of the Church of *Rome*, is of the Province of the Archbishop of *Lemberg* in *Russia Nigra*; but they which are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece* have also a Bishop of their own, who acknowledgeth the Patriarch of *Mosco* for his Metropolitan. 2. *Polodmir*, a Bishop's See also, of the same condition. 3. *Keromence*, which (as the rest) hath unto it many fair Towns and Castles, besides large Villages. The whole was once part of *Lithuania*, as before was said; but is lately difmembered from it, and united to the Crown of *Poland*, as a State distinct but so, that the greatest part of it is immediately subject to the Duke of *Offpragne*, who is said to have 4000 Feudatories in this Country; the greatest Prince of those who hold Communion with the Church of *Greece* in the whole Realm of *Poland*.

## 5. PODOLIA.

**PODOLIA** hath on the North *Volhinia*, part of *Lithuania*, and the great Empire of *Russia*, on the South *Moldavia*, from which it is parted by the River *Tyras*, now called *Nieper*, on the West *Russia Nigra*; extending Eastward through vast uninhabited Countries as far as to the *Exensine* Sea. The reason of the name I find no where guessed at. The people are for the most part of the same nature and original with the *Russians*, to

whose Empire it formerly belonged also, till gained (if such a Subjection as they give the King may be called a gaining) to the Crown of *Poland*, at such time as the *Russes* were intrahed to the power of the *Tartars*.

The Country is generally so fertile, that the Husbandman is accustomed to reap an hundred for one, in regard it bears at one Ploughing for three years together, the Countryman being put to no farther trouble, than at the end of the first and second years to shake the Corn a little, as he reaps or loads it; that which so falls serving as Seed for the next year following. The Meadow-ground is so strangely rich and luxuriant, and the Grass so high, that a man can hardly see the Heads or Horns of his Cattel; of so swift a growth, that in three days it will cover a Rod which is thrown into it, and in few more to hide a Plough, that it is not an easy work to find it. If these things come beyond belief, let *Maginus*, who reporteth them, bear the blame thereof; though better take it on his word, than go so far to disprove him. And yet, which adds much unto the Miracle, the ground is in most places so hard and stony, that there need fix yoke of Oxen to break it up; to the great toil both of the Cattel and the man. It is also said that in this Country there are great Flocks of Sheep, many Herds of Oxen, abundance of wild Beasts, and great store of Honey. And yet for all this Plenty and abundance of all things necessary, the Country for the most part, especially towards the East, is but meanly inhabited, by reason of the frequent Invasions of the *Tartars* bordering next unto it, who have so wasted it in times past, and thereby to discouraged the people from Building, Planting, and all other works of Peace and Husbandry, that in so large and rich a Country there is nothing to be seen but some scattered Houses, few Villages, and not above five Towns of note, viz. 1. *Orzani*, at the influx of the *Borjphenos* or *Nieper* into the *Exensine* Sea. 2. *Vulfow*, at the fall of the River *Boj* into that of *Nieper*. 3. *Bracian*, more high upon the *Boj*. 4. *Linnice*, on the Borders of *Russia Nigra*, built by some divine hand, as it were, amongst the Precipices of high and inaccessible Rocks, and so well fortified withal, that it is impregnable, as is apparent by the many and great Repulses which the *Turks*, *Tartarians* and *Polachi*ans have received before it, with much shame and loss. 5. *Lemberg*, remarkable for the Sawes or Salt-means which they fend thence into other Countries. The former fortunes of this Province, and how it was brought under the Crown of *Poland*, (with which it was incorporated long since) we shall see anon.

## 6. RUSSIA NIGRA.

**RUSSIA NIGRA** hath on the East *Volhinia*, *Podolia*, and *Moldavia*; on the West *Lithuania* and *Poland* specially called; on the North *Lithuania* and *Podlussia*, and on the South the *Sarmatian* or *Casparian* Mountains. It is called also *Roxolomia*, from the *Roxolani*, a chief People of *Sarmatia Europea*, and by some *Kuthenia*; but generally *Russia*, from the first flock of before in the Empire of *Russia*, who spread themselves over all these parts. Some hold that it was first called *Rossia*, which significeth in the *Slavonian* Language a scattered Nation, or a Nation difmembered and dispersed into many parts; and that this was the name generally used of all that spake the *Slavonian* Tongue, and followed the Religion and the Rites of the Church of *Greece*, extended from the Frozen Sea to the *Adriatick*, and from the *Exensine* to the *Baltick* This and a greater tract of ground I grant to have been heretofore possessed by divers Nations under the name of *Slavonians* a very considerable part of *Germany* and *Poland* being conquered by them. But for the name of *Russia*, given at first to all the *Russian* Empire,

Empire, distinguished now into *Russia Alba* and *Russia Nigra*, I adhere unto my former Vow, conceiving that it came from the *Rossi*, an *Armenian* People, inhabiting about Mount *Taurus*, who in the year 864, or thereabouts, attempting the taking of *Constantinople*, and after placed themselves on the Northern Banks of the *Evros*, getting ground of the *Slavonians* to the North and East, till they had made themselves Masters of all *Russia Alba*, *Lithuania*, *Volhinia*, *Podolia*, and this *Russia Nigra*. Distinguished from the former by the adjunct of *Nigra*, after the destruction of that great Empire by the coming in of the *Tartars*; either from the colour of their garments, or their black and more Southerly Complexion. In which regard it is called also *Russia Meridionalis*, or the Southern *Russia*.

The Country is generally fruitful, abounding in Hares, Ocen, Sheep, Sables, and Foxes; such flocks of Bees, that they breed not only in Hives and hollow Trees, but in Rocks and Caves. Well watered both with Pools and Rivers, affording them great plenty of Fish, more naturally flying therein than in other places, inasmuch that it is a Pond to be digged, and spring accordingly, the Fish will breed therein of their own accord, without the help of any other waters. The greatest want heretofore was Wine, either supplied with Medecine from other places. And it is said that in the Territory of *Chelm* the Branches of the Pine-Trees, left upon the ground for three years together, will be converted into Stone.

The people are generally valiant, and so strong of body, that they use Bows of 12 foot long. Being formerly governed by Dukes, they do but ill brook the name of King; which much induced the King of *Poland* to fend Colonies of natural *Polonians* into most parts of the Country, inasmuch as most of the Knights and Gentry of it are of that Extraction, and follow the Religion of the Church of *Rome*; the Peasants and the Original Inhabitants of it being more generally affected to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Greece*.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Chelm*, in the Territory whereof it is affirmed that the Branches of Pine-trees, left upon the ground for three years together, are converted to Stone. 2. *Premislen*. 3. *Halitz*. 4. *Betso*. 5. *Grodno*, and 6. *Leopolis*, by the Natives called *Lemberg*, built by one *Lev a Moscovite*, a Town of great Trade, and an Archbishop's See, who is of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*. But the Patriarch of *Mosco* hath here also an Archbishop of his own ordaining, there being Churches both in the City itself, and all *Russia* generally, (as before was said) which are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*. There are also in this City some *Armenian* Merchants, who have a Church, a Bishop, and some Priests of their own Religion.

Of the Affairs of this Province, and how it was a part once of the *Russian* Empire, hath been said already. Difmembered from it by the *Tartars*, it had a while Dukes or Provincial Governors, subject and tributary unto those *Barbarians*; as had also *Podolia*, its next neighbour. Both conquered by the *Polander*, were for a time kept under by strong hand and the power of Garrisons. But being upon all occasions apt to revolt, by reason of the hard hand which the Kings held over them, (by whom they were treated rather like Slaves than Subjects) they were affixed unto the State, by giving the same Liberties and Immunities, both for the Nobility and the Commons, which the natural *Polonians* had, and by that means made Fellow-members of that Commonwealth. The Act of *Ladislav* the 6. Son of *Agello*, imitating therein the ancient *Romans*, who much augmented their Forces, and assured their Estates, by communicating the Freedom of *Rome* and the Privileges of *Latium* to many of the con-

quered Provinces: and was imitated by *Sigismund* the first, *Sigismund-Augustus* and *Stephen*, his Successors in their incorporating of *Prussia*, *Lithuania*, and *Livonia*, to the Crown of *Poland*.

## 7. MASSOVIA.

**MASSOVIA** is bounded on the East with *Lithuania*, on the West with *Poland* specially so called, on the North with *Prussia* and *Podlussia*, on the South with *Russia Nigra* or *Meridionalis*. So called from *Maffo*, one of the Dukes heretofore, who in the year 1045, being vanquished by *Casmir*, Duke of *Poland*, fled into *Prussia*, and there unfortunately died.

The Country is large, and for the most part full of Woods, where they find store of Bugles and wild Bulls. The people are strong, valiant and courageous in War; differing little from the *Polonians* in Speech, Manners, or Apparel, save that they use a kind of Whistling, which the others do not. The principal Towns of it are, 1. *Warsaw*, the chief of the Province, and heretofore the Residence of the Duke or Prince; remarkable for the best Medecine or Methemine. 2. *Czirkow*. 3. *Polowskie*. 4. *Gadzick*. 5. *Lozara*. 6. *Droie*, the Seat of a *Palatine*, but not else observable.

This Province was once subject to Princes of its own, not subject or subordinate unto any Superior. Of which number that *Maffo* was one, from whom it was named *Massovia*. In the year 1246 and 1260, being strangely wasted and distressed by *Mindoy* Duke of *Lithuania*, they were fain to put themselves under the power of the *Polander*; by whom they were made the Portion of the second Son of that Kingdom. But *John* and *Stanislaus*, the two last Dukes heretofore, dying without Issue, it returned unto the Kings of *Poland*, and became incorporate to that Crown, and privileged in the Election of the King, and all matters which concern the publick, as all others of the *Polonians* are, Anno 1526.

## 8. PODLASSIA.

**PODLASSIA** is bounded on the East with *Polhinia*, on the West with *Prussia*, on the North with *Lithuania*, and on the South with *Massovia* and *Russia Nigra*. The reason of the name I know not. The Country differs not much from those before: the people being a mixt generation of *Russes*, *Moscovites*, and *Polonians*; partake a little of the Manners and Garb of those several Nations from which they lineally are descended.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Bielsko*. 2. *Bransko*. 3. *Saras*; all of them having fair and ample Territories. 4. *Tyockzyn*, strongly fortified and well garrisoned, being the place where the King's Treasures are kept. 5. *Krypin*, beautified with a Royal Palace, and a pleasant Park, wherein are store of wild Beasts for Hunting, and Fish ponds very well replenished. 6. *Narew*. 7. *Piskow*. and 8. *Angelsow*, a very strong Town, built and well fortified by *Sigismund-Augustus*, and by him thus named, Anno 1569, at what time he difmembered this Province from *Lithuania*, to which before it appertained, uniting it for ever to the Crown of *Poland*.

## 9. PRUSSIA.

**PRUSSIA** is bounded on the East with *Lithuania* and *Podlussia*, on the West with *Pomerania*, on the North with the *Baltick* Sea, and on the South with



with *Poland* and *Maffovia*. Called first *Borussia*, from the *Boruffi*, who subdued it, (of whom more anon) which by an easy alteration was changed into *Prussia*, by which name it is still called.

The Country is extended all along the *Baltick* Sea, from the City of *Danzick* in the West, to *Lithuan* on the Mouth of the *Maikank* R. for the space of 50 Polish miles; and from *Torne*, bordering on *Maffovia*, to *Memel* in the Confines of *Lithuania*, 58 miles of the same measure. The Air thereof is very mild and temperate, the Soil both fruitful and pleasant, full of Lakes and Rivers strewed with Fish, plentiful of Corn and other Necessaries, and well clad with Forests, which yield them Game for Hunting, rich Skins for profit, and abundance of Honey, of which last they make Meads for their own use; (their ordinary Drink where there is no Wine) and sell the rest unto the Merchant. But the Commodity wherein they do excel their neighbours is their plenty of Amber, which is the Juice of a Stone which growth like a Coral in a Mountain of the *Baltick* Seas, covered quite with water, and thumbed by Mariners three leagues off, for fear of Shipwreck: the Mountain is reasonable large, about 50 yards high of English measure. And when any Tempest riseth in these Northern Seas, especially in September and December, the Liqueur by violence thereof is rent from the Rock, and cast into divers Havens, and on divers Coasts of this Country, and sometimes upon those of Sweden and Pomerania: the people leaping into the Sea when it rageth most, whence they take up first fowle store of Weeds, after that this Liqueur, which being taken out of the water hardeneth like to Coral. Before is the beauty hereof, and the quality it hath of attracting Straws and Iron, as the Adamant doth, burning like Pitch, and others of this nature; it is excellent good for stopping Bloud, all kind of Agues, Falling-sickness, Dropsies, Stone, Cholick, weakness of Stomack, Head-ach, and the Yellow Jaundies.

The people, especially the Gentry, descend from the *Germani*, and retain much of their nature; having more Art and industry than the other *Polenians*, and being more renacious of their ancient Customs. They were Idolaters long time together, converted first unto the Faith in the time of the Emperor *Frederick* the 2. by whose Fetter they were subdued by the Order of the *Dutch* Knights, *An* 1215, and either won or forced to the Christian Faith. As Christians, governed since the plantation of the Gospel by the Bishops of *Culm*, *Warmia*, *Sambia*, and *Pomerania*, Suffragans to the Archbishop of *Gnesna*, under whom these parts do still continue, which have not yet forsaken the Church of *Rome*: the *Lutherans*, *Calvinians*, and other separate Congregations distinct from them, having their own Forms both of Doctrine and Discipline.

Few Provinces of the North are better watered than this, both for Lakes and Rivers: some of the Lakes being seven Dutch miles in compass, and well stored with Fish. The Rivers are 12 in number; that is to say, 1. the *Vistula*, 2. *Chironus*, 3. *Nogat*, 4. *Elbing*, 5. *Pelica*, 6. *Levia*, 7. *Alia*, 8. *Pregel*, 9. *Offa*, 10. *Premysla*, 11. *Lita*, and 12. *Livia*, all plentifully stored with Fish, besides a large Sea-Coast both for Trade and Filling no small commodity to the Natives.

The Country, formerly divided into twelve Dukedoms, (so they called the parts and fractions of it) was by the industry of the *Dutch* Knights to adored and beautified, (after they had once brought it under their Obedience) that there were no fewer than 72 Castles and 62 good Towns of their foundation. Which number being much increased in these latter times, hath made it the most flourishing part of the whole Kingdom of *Poland*. But the Order of these Knights being suppressed in this Country

by an Agreement betwixt *Sigismund* the first, King of *Poland*, and *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, the last Great Master of the Order; both Town and Country are divided between the Successors of the said *Albert*, as Dukes of *Prussia*, and of the said *Sigismund*, as Kings of *Pole*: the Dukedoms or Divisions of *Hogeland*, *Wania*, *Gallindia*, *Michelow*, *Culmigeria*, with the City of *Mariburg*, the Sovereignty of *Danzick* and *Melting*, with the whole Country of *Pomerellia*, lying on the West-side of the *Vistula*, being allotted to the King; the residue, containing the Divisions of *Schulauonia*, *Sambia*, *Natangia*, *Naravia*, *Bartonia*, *Sudavia*, and *Pomesania* (except the City and Territory of *Mariburg*) to the Duke of *Prussia*.

Chief Towns belonging to the Duke are, 1. *Memel*, a well-frequented Port, the Mart-Town for the Commodities of *Lithuania*, which are brought hither, and here bought by the foreign Merchant: part of this Province interposing betwixt *Lithuania* and the *Baltick*, 2. *Koenigsberg*, as the *Dutch*, *Regiment* as the *French*, and *Muni Regina*, as the *Latins* call it, situate in the Province of *Sambia*, at the bottom of a Gulf or Bay, where the *Pregel* falleth into the *Baltick* Sea: built by the *Dutch* Knights in the year 1260, and made an University by *Albert* the first Duke hereof 1225, the Seat and principal Residence of his Successors; as also of the Bishop of *Sambia*, in *Laine* called *Sambonia*, by the name of the Province, 3. *Mulmberg*, founded by the *Dutch* Knights, *An* 1279, 4. *Brandenburg*, on the South-side of that Bay more near the Sea, built as I guess, by some of the great Masters of that Family, 5. *Ragnitz*, the farthest Town of the Masters of that Family, 6. *Angersburg*, in *Schulauonia*, was also *Ragnitz*, 7. *Nordenburg*, in *Bartonia*, 8. *Ortelsburg*, in *Gallindia*: of which little memorable, 9. *Mariburg*, the farthest of the Duke's Estate towards the *Vistula*, and the ordinary Residence of the Bishop of *Pomesania*. Besides which there are reckoned in this Division 8 good Towns more, and about 54 Castles, though not of much observation in the course of Story.

Chief Towns pertaining to the King are, 1. *Braunsberg*, upon a Bay of the *Baltick* Sea which call *Frish Haffe*; a Town of good Trade by reason of the commodious Haven, and the ordinary Residence of the Bishop of *Warmia*, 2. *Frauenberg*, on the same Bay, not far from *Braunsberg*, 3. *Refel*, the chief Town of the Diocese and Dukedom of *Warmia*, 4. *Strasburg*, in *Michelow* confining on *Poland*, specially to be called, at the Siege whereof *Gustavus Adolphus* King of Sweden, *An* 1628, *Elector* of *Brandenburg*, one of the Engineers of that King, found out the use of Leatheren Ordnance, which afterwards did that King great service in the Wars of *Germany*, 5. *Culm*, on the River *Vistula*, a Bishop's See, 6. *Mariburg*, on the *Nogat*, built by the *Dutch* Knights, *An* 1302, and made the Seat of the great Masters of their order, as founded first from *Polesians* or *Acon* in *Syria* to the City of *Venice*, from whence to *Marpurg*, and at last to this place by *Sydrice* the twelfth Great Master of it, whose constant Residence in this Town occasioned the Bishop of *Culm* to remove thither also. A very fair and well-built City, the Chief of those which do belong to the King of *Poland*: by him fo well garisoned, and furnished with such store of Victuals, Ammunition and other Necessaries, that it was thought able to hold out for a Six years Siege. But it proved otherwise when besegged by the King of Sweden, who took it in less space than so many months; being on the settling of a Peace betwixt the Crowns rendered again unto the King of *Poland*. Beneath this Town, down towards the *Baltick*, is a pleasant Island made by the *Nogat* and the *Weyfel*, for the fertility of its Soil, and the great number of Houses, Villages, and People, not equalled (for the richness of it) in all this Country.

To

To this part also belongeth the fair port of *Elbing*, (or *Melung*, as *Maginus* calls it) situate on the Bay of the *Baltick*, called *Frish Haffe*; spoken of before, not far from a Faithful Lake; well traded, rich, and full of very wealthy Merchants; of great resort from other Nations, and much frequented by the *English* Merchants, who have here their Staple for the *Baltick*: a small, but neat and well-built City, and fortified with a very good Wall, governed after the manner of a free Estate or Commonwealth, under the Patronage and Protection of the Kings of *Poland*, in like sort as *Danzick* also is, of which more anon.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Venedi*; the most potent Nation of this Tract, extended all along the Coasts of the *Baltick*, from them by *Protemy* called *Sinas Venedicus*: containing under them the *Githones*, *Phinis*, *Silantes*, *Phrangudones*, *Avarini*; and more within the Land the *Sodini* and *Gallindae*, whose name the Dukedom or Province of *Gallindia* doth still retain. But great and potent though they were, they were subdued by the *Boruffi*, inhabiting at the foot of the *Riphaean* Mountains, who, weary of their own cold and barren Dwellings, removed into the Western parts, and vanquished the *Venedi*, and those other Nations, possessed themselves of this Country, which they called *Borussia*, now by us named *Prussia*. By *Venedus* one of their Princes, having twelve Sons in all, it was divided into 12 Provinces or Dukedoms, one for every Son; continuing by that means distracted into divers petty Principalities, till the coming of the *Marian* or *Dutch* Knights, sent hither by *Frederick* the second, *An* 1215, by whom the Provinces or Dukedoms of *Sudavia*, *Michelow*, and the greatest part of *Naravia*, were laid waste and desolate: the rest submitted to their power, and received the Gospel. After this it continued subject to this Order of Knights till the year 1419, when, weary of their Extortion and the continual change of Masters, they revolted to the King of *Poland*, to whom they offered their Obedience: founded by the yielding up of *Mariburg*, with many other Towns and Castles, sold to King *Calimirus* by the *Gariffo* Soldiers, *An* 1457, for 476000 *Florents*. But the Knights declining to be so dealt withal, and refusing to swear Allegiance to the Kings of *Poland*, they brake out into open War, which was managed with variable Success on both sides; *Landowicus*, the then Great Master, being so successful at the first, that he once beat the King out of the Field, routed his whole Army, near 30000 of his men upon the place, and took 136 of his chief Nobility: nor was he vanquished at last, but by the Treachery and Rebellion of his own people. In the end, wearied and worn out on both sides, by continual Wars, *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, then Great Master, having for 14 years together courageously maintained the Honour of his Order, and for the four last years imported in vain the Assistance of the Emperor and Princes of *Germany*, began to think of some Expedient to compound the business. Being inclined to *Lothar's* Estate, he secretly practised with *Sigismund* the first of *Poland* to end the War to the advantage of both parties. By whom at last it was agreed, that *Albert* should relinquish his Order, and surrender all *Prussia* into the hands of the King: That the King, possessing the Western parts, with the Town of *Mariburg*, and the Sovereignty of *Danzick* and *Melting*, should invest *Albert* with the Title of Duke of *Prussia*, creating on him and the Heirs of his body the whole Eastern Moiet, containing the Provinces or Dukedoms before specified: and finally, that *Albert* and his Heirs should hold the said Estate, as Homagers to the Crown of *Poland*, taking place in all Assemblies at the

King's right hand. According to this Agreement, *Anno* 1525, *Albert*, attired in the complete habit of Master of the *Dutch* Order, professed himself humbly on his knees before *Sigismund* at *Cracow*, the King then sitting on his Throne. The King, raising him from the ground, caused him to put off those Robes and attire himself in a Ducal Habit: which done, an instrument was read and put forth, whereby the King conferred upon him and the Heirs of his body the Dukedom of *Prussia*, to be held of him and his Successors Kings of *Poland*, *An* Act at which the whole Order were extremely incensed; but they could not help it, and thereupon retired into *Germany*, where there were some good Lands left, to maintain such of them as had no mind to quit that Military honour; leaving their old Estates into *Prussia* to the King and the Duke; whose Successors have hitherto enjoyed their part of it, with the Title of

#### Dukes of PRUSSIA

- 1525 1. *Albert* of *Brandenburg* Son of *Frederick* Marquess of *Onsdalbeck*, of *Onsbach*, created Master of the Order by the Emperor *Maximilian*, *Anno* 1511, and the first Duke of *Prussia* by *Sigismund*, the first of *Poland*, *An* 1525, founded the University of *Koenigsberg*, *Anno* 1544.
- 1568 2. *Albert-Frederick* Son of *Albert* the first Duke, married *Mary-Eleanor*, Daughter of *William* Duke of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, *Berg*, &c.
3. *Anne*, Eldest Daughter of *Duke Albert-Frederick*, Dutches of *Prussia*, brought the Estate in Marriage to
4. *John-Sigismund*, Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg*, who was confirmed therein by *Sigismund* the 3. of *Poland*, pretending an Elcheat thereof for want of Heirs-males of the body of *Albert* the first Duke.
5. *George-William*, Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg*, in right of his Father, Duke of *Prussia* in right of the Lady *Anne* his Mother, and of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, *Berg*, &c. by Descent from *Mary-Eleanor* his Grandmother.
6. *Frederick-William*, Son of *George-William* Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg*, Duke of *Prussia*, *Cleve*, *Gulick*, and *Berg*, of whose Investiture in the Dukedom of *Pomeran* and other large and goodly Seigniouries we have spoken elsewhere.

As for the Government of this Province standing thus divided, that of the Duke is more Monarchical than that of the King; the one being absolute and uncontrollable in his Estates, the other subject to the great Council of *Poland*. If any difference grow between them, Delegates appointed by the King, but taking a new Oath to do equal Justice either at *Mariburg* or *Elbing*, do compound the business: who, together with some other of the Duke's nomination, receive all Appeals in which the Duke is interested as one of the parties.

The Revenues of this Dukedom are thought to be 120000 *Ducats* yearly.

The Armes thereof are *Argent* an Eagle *Vert*, membered and crowned *Or*, langued *Gules*.

#### 10. POMERELLIA.

*POMERELLIA* is bounded on the East with the River *Vistula*, by it parted from *Prussia*, on the South with *Poland* specially to be called, on the North with the *Baltick* Sea, and on the West with the Dukedom of *Poland*.

MEET. AN. 10.



deposited by *Lesius* the fifth, who again seized on the Estate.

- 1243 27. *Bolfgang* V. furnished *Podicins*.  
 1280 28. *Lesius* VI. furnished *Niger*, the adopted Son of *Bolfgang*, and his Cousin-german once removed, after whose death, *An. 1289*, the Estate, being distracted into many Factions, was for some time without a Prince, till at last on 1295 29. *Primsian*, furnished *Posthumus*, Duke of *Pozna*, who again assumed the name of King, continued ever since by his Successors.  
 1296 30. *Pladislaus*, furnished *Lothius*, Brother of *Lesius Niger*, ousted by *Wenceslaus* King of *Bohemia*, *Anno 1300*, after whose death, *An. 1306*, he resumed the Estate.  
 1333 31. *Casimir* III. furnished the Great, Son of *Pladislaus* the fourth, the first Establisher of the Kingdom after all those Troubles, died without Issue.  
 1371 32. *Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, Nephew or Grandson to *Charles* King of *Hungary*, by *Elizabeth* the Sister of *Casimir*.  
 1383 33. *Hedwigis*, the youngest Daughter of *Lewis*, her elder Sister *Mary* succeeding in the Realm of *Hungary*, chosen Queen of Poland; married to *Jagello* Duke of *Lithuania*, Christianized, and called *Pladislaus* the fifth.  
 1386 34. *Pladislaus* V. Duke of *Lithuania*, elected King upon his Marriage with Queen *Hedwigis*.  
 1435 35. *Pladislaus* VI. Son of *Jagello*, or *Pladislaus* the fifth, by *Sophia*, Daughter of the Duke of *Kiovia*, King of *Hungary* also; slain at the Battle of *Farna* by *Amurat* the second, King of the *Turks*, and without Issue.  
 1447 36. *Casimir* 4. Brother of *Pladislaus*, first brought the Knights of *Prussia* under his Command; Knight of the Order of the Garter.  
 1593 37. *John Albert*, the second Son of *Casimir*; his elder Brother *Pladislaus* being pretermitted, on his accepting of the Crowns of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*.  
 1502 38. *Alexander*, the third Son of *Casimir*.  
 1507 39. *Sigismund*, the fourth Son of *Casimir* his elder Brethren dying without Issue; he suppressed the Order of the *Dutch* Knights in *Prussia*, and added part thereof unto his Estate.  
 1548 40. *Sigismund* II. furnished *Augustus*, the last of the Male-issue of *Jagello*.  
 1574 41. *Henry*, Duke of *Anjou*, Son of *Henry* the second, the *French* King, chosen on the death of *Sigismund Augustus*, the only Stranger to the Blood in all this Catalogue. On the death of his Brother *Charles* the ninth, he departed secretly into *France*, where he succeeded by the name of *Henry* the third.  
 1579 42. *Stephen* Bator, *Vaivod* of *Transylvania*, by the recommendation of *Amurat* the third, Emperor of the *Turks*, having first married *Anne*, Sister of *Sigismund* the second, is elected King. He united *Lithonia* to the Crown, and had a great hand upon the *Moscovite*.  
 1587 43. *Sigismund* III. Son of *John* King of *Suevia*, and of *Katharine* his Wife, another of the Sisters of *Sigismund* the second, King of *Poland* and *Sweden*. He valiantly opposed *Osman* the Great *Turk*, invading his Dominions with an Army of 300000 fighting men.  
 1633 44. *Pladislaus* VII. eldest Son of *Sigismund* the third. After whose death the Kingdom was extremely embroiled by Factions, especially

by the mutinous and seditious *Cossacks*, not fully settled by the Election of

- 1648 45. *Casimir* V. Brother of *Pladislaus* the seventh, now King of *Poland*, *Anno 1648*.

The Government of this Kingdom is nothing less than Monarchical. For though the first Dukes thereof were absolute Princes, and ruled after a Despotical manner, having power not only of the Estates of their Subjects, but of Life and Death, without Formalities of Law; yet when they once became Elective, they lost much of that power: which decayed by little and little, that at the last the King is counted little better than a Royal Shadow; *Stat magni nominis umbra*, in the Poet's language. A Diminution which began first in the times of *Lewis* of *Hungary* and *Jagello* of *Lithuania*, who, to gain the Succession to the Kingdom, contrary to Law, the one for his Daughter, the other for his Son, departed with many of their Royalties and Prerogatives, to buy the Voices of the Nobility. Since which time, the Nobility in all their Elections have so limited and restrained the King's Authority, and enlarged their own, that without their consent in Council he may neither make a War, nor treat of Peace, nor impose Taxes, nor alienate any of his Demains, nor do any thing of Importance which concerns the Publick; inasmuch as *Boterius*, a great Statesman, doth expressly say, That the Government of *Poland* doth rather seem an Aristocracy than a Monarchy, a Common wealth rather than a Kingdom. Besides, the King not only takes a solemn Oath at his Coronation to confirm all the Rights and Privileges which have been granted to the Subject by his Predecessors, but adds this Clause, *Quod si Sacramentum meum violavero, incole Regni nullam nobis obtineant pretereuntem*, that if he violate this Oath his Subjects shall not be obliged to yield him any Obedience. Which as *Badinus* well observeth, doth rather favor of the condition of a Prince of the Senate, than of the Majesty of a King. He is respected accordingly by the Great ones, who look not on him as their King but their elder Brother, (and perhaps not that) and reckon his Decrees but of three dates lasting. Which notwithstanding the King, once chosen and introned, hath sole power in many things without consulting with the Senate; as viz. in assembling Diets, chusing the Secular Counsellors, disposing absolutely also of his Vassals and the Revenues of the Crown to what use he pleaseth; being sole Judge of the Nobility in Criminal Causes, which is a strong bridle to rein them in with. By which, and either uniting himself unto the Clergy, or the well forming of his party amongst the Nobility, he may do many things not allowable in strictness of Law: the power and influence which he hath in the publick Government being proportionable to the strength of his Wit and Brain.

And here it is to be observed, that none but the Clergy and Nobility have any Suffrage in the Election of the King: that is to say, the 26. *Palatines*, and 62. *Chapellans*, with the four *Marsbals*, and some others of the principal Officers of State, in behalf of the Nobility; and the Archbishops and Bishops in the name of the Clergy; but of the Commons none at all. Which is the reason why there is so much care taken to preserve the Privileges of the two first Orders, without obtaining any Immunities for relief of the third; who are most miserably oppressed on all sides, rather as bondmen than Tenants in respect of their Lords, and not so much Subjects as plain Slaves in regard of the King; whereof somewhat hath before been noted. Nor are the Common people excluded only out of this Election, but have no place nor Vote in the Council of State, or in any of the general Diets: the first consisting only of the Prelates, *Palatines*, *Chapellans*.

*Chapellans*, and principal Officers spoken of before, the dominating of which pertaineth to the King alone; the remaining of all persons of those several Orders, and the Delegates of each Province and principal City; and upon their Lands: which do amount to such a Sum that by means hereof *King Stephen* maintained War three years against the *Moscovite*, without expending any thing of his own Revenue.

Chief Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom are, 1. The *Marian* or *Dutch* Knights, instituted under the Walls of *Accon* or *Ptolemais* in the *Holy Land*; in a Church whereof, dedicated to the blessed Virgin, their Order was first allowed, from whence they are called *Equites Mariani*. The Institution was in the year 1190. The first Great Master was *Henry Walpot*. The Christians being beaten out of *Syria*, they first removed to *Venice*, and from thence to *Marburg* in *Hassia*, where, and in some other parts of *Germany*, they were endowed with fair Revenues; hence they were named *Equites Teutonici*, or the *Dutch* Knights: Sent into *Prussia* by the Emperor *Frederick* the second *Anno 1239*, or called in, as some say, by the *Moscovite* against the *Prussians*, they fixed their Seat at *Marienburg*, under *Sigisride* the second Great Master, *Anno 1340*, or thereabouts. In the time of *Ludovicus*, the 18. Great Master, they were forced to submit to *Casimir* the fourth of *Poland*, *Anno 1450*; which was the occasion of the long War betwixt them and the *Polanders*, continuing till the time of *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, the 24. and last Great Master in this Country; who surrendered his Order (as before is said) to *Sigismund* the first, by whom he was created the first Duke of *Prussia*. Such of the Knights as disliketh this action retired into *Germany*, where they chose out *Walter Crumberg* Master of the Order the Title being afterwards conferred upon *Maximilian*, one of the younger Sons of *Maximilian* the second; but the Order sensibly decaying, and at this time of little estimation in the World.

2. Of the *Port Glaive*, or *Sword-bearers*, (*Ensseri in Latine*) confirmed by Pope *Innocent* the third, by whom they were sent into *Lithonia*, to defend the Preachers of the Gospel against the Infidels, at the first Conversion of that Country. Being too weak to effect that business, they united themselves with the *Dutch* Knights by the Popes authority, and instead of *Knights of the Sword*, were called *Knights of the Cross*. Separated therefrom in the time of *Univm* their Great Master, *Anno 1541*, the *Dutch* Knights being then dispossessed of *Prussia*, and these inclining wholly to the Opinions of *Luther*, they a while subsisted of themselves. What became of them afterwards, and how the Order was extinguished, hath been shewn already in *Lithonia*.

The Arms of this Kingdom are quarterly, 1. *Gules*, an Eagle *Argent*, crowned and armed Or, for the Realm of *Poland*; and 2. *Gules*, a Chevalier armed *Cap-a-pes*, advancing his Sword *Argent*, mounted on a barbed Courser of the second, for the Dukedom of *Lithuania*.

There are in the whole Realm of *Poland*

Of the *Romish* Church, Archbishops 3. Bishops 19.  
 Of the *Greek* Church, Archbishops 2. Bishops 6.

Universities 4.

*Viz.* *Cracow*. *Dantzick*.  
*Vilna*. *Koningsberg*.

And so much for *POLAND*.

## THE

## Carpathian Mountains.

IN our way from Poland unto Hungary (whither now we go) we must of necessity pass over the *CARPATHIAN MOUNTAINS*, the ancient Boundary of *Sarmatia Europæa* from the rest of Europe. A long and craggy Ledge of Hills, which beginning near the City of *Prefburg*, and the Borders of *Austria*, pass on in a continual course till they come to the very *Euxine Sea*; and by that means not only divide Hungary from Poland, specially so called, but part *Transylvania* and *Moldavia*, two Dacian Regions, from *Russia* *Nigra* and *Podolia*, Provinces of the *Polonian Kingdom*. By *Ptolemy*, in his second Book, they are called *Montes Sarmatici* (*Sarmaticæ Rupes* by *Solinus*) because differentiating the *Sarmatian Nation* (who possessed the most part of it) from *Germany* and the more Southern parts of Europe: and in his third Book by one name *Carpates*, or *Mons Carpatius*, so called (as some think) from the Greek word *Karpatis* signifying *Fruit*, from the Fruitfulness of it, compared with the other Mountains in those Northern Countries. At the present it is known by divers names, according to the Provinces and People which it passeth by. By the *Dutch* generally called *Wurtzgarten*, (or a

*Garden of Herbs*) which alludeth to the name of *Carpatu*, by the *Hungars*, *Tarchzal*. Betwixt *Moravia* and *Hungaria*, where it is at the highest, it is called in the *Sclavonian Tongue* by the name of *Tatru*, in the *German Sclavberg*: where it parteth *Transylvania* from *Russia Nigra*, the *Russies* call it *Bisfid*, and the *Dutch-men* *Crapack*. A Chain of Hills of more length than fame; not much observable in Story, but for the shutting up the *Hungary Sclaves*, and others of those Northern Nations which afterward invaded the *Roman Provinces*: nor of much notice at the present, but for giving an Original to many of the principal Rivers which water the Countries lying on both sides of it. And therefore having nothing more to detain us here, we will pass them over, and descend into the Plains of *Hungary*, where we shall meet again with the *Roman Empire*, the Territories and Affairs whereof we shall take along without interruption until we come unto the Banks of the great River *Tigris* and the *Caspian Sea*. And so far also from this place we shall survey the Fortunes and Estates of the *Turkish Empire*, of which the Realm of *Hungary* is the most Western part or Province; not meeting either of them again till we come to *Egypt*.

## OF

## HUNGARY.

HUNGARY is bounded on the East with *Transylvania* and *Valachia*, on the West with *Siria*, *Austria*, and *Moravia*, on the North with the *Carpathian Mountains*, which divide it from *Poland*, and on the South with *Sclavonia*, and some part of *Dacia*. It extendeth in length, from *Presburg*, along the *Danow*, to the Borders of *Transylvania*, for the space of 300 English miles; and 190 of the same miles in breadth. The reason of the name we shall have anon.

It lieth in the Northern Temperate Zone, betwixt the middle Parallels of the 7. and 9. Climates, so that the longest Summer's Day in the Southern parts is but 15 hours and a half, and not above 16 hours in the parts most North: taking up all that Tract of ground on the North-side of *Danubius* possessed by the *Fazgyes Metanastes*, a *Sarmatian People*, and part also of *Pannonia Superior* and *Pannonia Inferior*, both on the South of that River.

But being it passeth generally under the name of *Pannonia*, we are to know that the *Romans* having made them-

selves Masters of all *Pannonia*, divided it into four Provinces, part of the Diocese of *Illyricum Occidentale*: that is to say, 1. *Pannonia Superior*, bordering on *Noricum*, and containing part of the Higher *Austria*; and the most Western parts of the present *Hungary*, on the South-side of the *Danow*. 2. *Pannonia Inferior*, containing the Eastern parts of *Hungary*, on the same side of the River. 3. *Valeria*, anciently part of *Pannonia Superior*, comprehending *Siria* or *Stiermark*, in the Archdukedom of *Austria*. And 4. *Savia*, so called of the Rivers *Savus*, anciently part of *Pannonia Inferior*, now called *Wandischland*, one of the Provinces or Subdivisions of *Sclavonia*. But the name of *Pannonia* falling into the *Roman Empire*, and this Country being fallen into the hands of other Masters, it took a new name from the Nations who possessed themselves of it, and was called *Hungaria*, quasi *Hunn-avaria*, by a mixt name made of the *Hunni* and *Avarti*, two *Scythian Nations*, who either successively or conjunctly were possessed thereof; or from the *Hungari*, another race of *Scythians*, mentioned by *Strabo* in his Book *De Rebus Geticis*, drawn into this Country by the

the Emperor *Arnulph*, to aid him in his War against *Swatiburgius King of the Moravians*. This last I look on as most probable: the first as more probable than that of *Avartine*, and others of our late Writers, who finding a poor Province in the most Northerly point of the *Russian Empire* called *Ingria*, (and by them *Ingeria*) would have the name of *Hungary* to be thence derived.

The people are strong of Body, and rude of Behaviour, respecting neither the liberal Arts nor Mechanick Trades. The greatest Affection is the name of a Coward, which cannot be wiped off without the killing of a *Turk*: after which they are privileged to wear a Feather, and by the number of their Feathers to show how many *Turks* they have slain in Battle. They desire Wars, and like no Trade better, being naturally slothful, (like the *Trishe*) and therefore best approve of that course of Life, whereby they may rather live upon other mens Labour than take pains for their living. Extremely covetous they are, yet having rather desire than art to enrich themselves, permitting the *Dutch* to ingross all their Trading, and manage such Commodities as the Country yieldeth. Which is the cause (seconded by the Oppressions of the *Turk* and the *Austrian Princes*, under whom they are) that none of them rise to any considerable Wealth. And for such as have Estates in Land, they grow every day more poor than other. For though the Females be excluded from inheriting their Fathers Possessions, (to whom they give no Portion, but new Cloaths on the Wedding-day:) Yet being the Sons do equally inherit the Estate, (as such who hold in *Gueldland* do here in *England*) it must needs be that by so many Divisions and Subdivisions the greatest Patrimony that is will be brought to nothing. Both sexes in the way of their Education are inured to Hardness, not flustered to lie in Beds till the night of their Marriage.

The Christian Faith was first planted here in the time of *Stephen*, furnished the Saint, the first King of this Country, who was invited thercunto by the special means and procurement of the Emperor *Henry* the second, giving him upon that Condition his Sister *Gisela* in Marriage; and through the preaching and industry of *Albert Archbishop of Prague*, Anno 1016, or thereabouts. Since which time Christianity hath continued here without interruption, (defended gallantly and courageously against the *Turks*) but broken into Fractious and Subdivisions among themselves: Some pertinaciously adhering to the Church of *Rome*, some following the Doctrine of *Luther*, others that of *Calvin* and some new Fancies and Opinions, disavowed by all the rest. Free exercise of Religion was first granted by *Maximilian* the second, and re-obtained in the time of *Rodolphus*, his Son and Successor, by the Pacification at *Vienna*, procured by the power of *Bassian Prince of Transylvania*, An. 1606. The violating of which Pacification by *Ferdinand* the second, in the beginning of his Reign occasioned great Wars and Troubles betwixt him and this People, not quieted in a long time after. Yet all these different Parties do agree in this, to punish Adultery and Fornication with no less a punishment than death; the Father forcing his Daughter, the Husband his Wife, and the Brother his Sisters, to the place of their Execution.

The Language generally here spoken is a kind of *Sclavonian*, differing in Dialect from the *Poles*; but in the parts adjoining to *Germany* the *Dutch* is spoken; as the old *Fazgyes* is betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiscus*, the ancient Seat of the *Fazgyes Metanastes*.

The Soil is wonderful fruitful, yielding Corn and Fruits in great abundance; the Grains in some places, (as in the Isle of *Komar*) if it be sowed to grow to its full length before the cutting of it down, being said to exceed the height of a Man: Which doth breed such a

number of Cattel, that this Country alone is thought to be able to feed all Europe with flesh. They yearly send into *Germany* and *Sclavonia* 80000 Oxen: they have Deer, Partridge, Pheasants, in such superfluity, that any man that will may kill them, which in other places is utterly prohibited, these Creatures being preserved as Game for Gentlemen. For at that great Infurrection of the Boors in *Germany*, (before the end of which 50000 of them were slain in fight) their chief Demands were, 1. That they might chuse their own Ministers, 2. That they might pay no Tithes but of Corn, 3. That they might be free from the power of Magistrates, 4. That Wood, Timber and Fowl might be common. 5. And especially, that they might hunt and hawk in all times and places. The other Commodities of the Country are Gold and Silver, whereof they have some very rich Veins; as also of Tin, Lead, Iron, good store of Brass, Copper, Wine: this last as good as that of *Candia*.

The worthiest Scholar that ever this Kingdom produced was *St. Hieron*, a worthy Father of the *Latine Church*, born in *Siridon*. The most worthy of all their Soldiers were 1. *Johannes Huniades*, who so valiantly resisted the Incurfions of the *Turks*, and slew of them 5000 at the Battle of *Maron*. And 2. *Matthias Corvinius*, his Son, afterward King of *Hungary*; of whom thus *Adrian* our of a Poet.

— *Patris decus unica Stipis*

*Gloria, Pannonica Cedis fortissimus ultor.*

His Countries Pride, the Glory of his Race,  
Revenge of th' *Hungarians* late Disgrace.

The principal Rivers of this Country are, 1. *Carpatus*, the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian Mountains*, spoken of before. 2. *Matrav*, near the City of *Agria*, covered with rich Vines. 3. *Erdol*, *omnium amplissimus*, the largest of the three, faith the *Atlas minor*. Which words if true, must needs be understood of the height of this Mountain, but neither of the length or breadth; in both which without question it comes short of *Carpatus*.

The Country is commonly divided into the Upper *Hungary*, and the Lower: the Upper lying on the North of the River *Danow*, out of the Bounds and Territories of the *Roman Empire*; the Lower lying on the South of that River; and comprehending all *Pannonia Inferior*, and part of *Pannonia Superior*, two *Roman Provinces*. The Upper again was subdivided (before the coming in of the *Turks*) into 32 Counties or Juridical Reforms; that is to say, 24 on the West-side of *Tibiscus* (or the *Tieff*) and 8 on the East-side of it: The Lower (at the same time) into 16 only, of which ten were betwixt the *Danow* and the River *Dravus*, and the other six betwixt the *Dravus* and the *Savus*.

— *Patris decus unica Stipis*

*Gloria, Pannonica Cedis fortissimus ultor.*

His Countries Pride, the Glory of his Race,

Revenge of th' *Hungarians* late Disgrace.

— *Patris decus unica Stipis*

*Gloria, Pannonica Cedis fortissimus ultor.*

His Countries Pride, the Glory of his Race,

Revenge of th' *Hungarians* late Disgrace.

— *Patris decus unica Stipis*

*Gloria, Pannonica Cedis fortissimus ultor.*

His Countries Pride, the Glory of his Race,

Revenge of th' *Hungarians* late Disgrace.

— *Patris decus unica Stipis*

*Gloria, Pannonica Cedis fortissimus ultor.*

His Countries Pride, the Glory of his Race,

Revenge of th' *Hungarians* late Disgrace.

— *Patris decus unica Stipis*







- in his Wars against the Dutch then possessed of Pannonia.
2. *Toxus*, subdued Pannonia or the Lower Hungary.
3. *Geisa*, Son of *Toxus*.
- 1000 4. *Stephen*, the fourth Duke, and first King of Hungary.
- 1039 5. *Peter*, furnished the *Alman*, Nephew of *Stephen*; deposed by *Andrew* and *Bela*, Sons of *Geisa* the first, and Brother of *Stephen* the first King.
- 1047 6. *Andrew*, eldest Son of that *Ladislaus*.
- 1059 7. *Bela*, the Brother of *Andrew*.
- 1062 8. *Solomon*, the Son of *Andrew*, expelled his Kingdom by
- 1075 9. *Geisa II.* Son of *Bela*.
- 1078 10. *Ladislaus*, furnished the Saint, Brother of *Geisa* the second.
- 1096 11. *Coloman*, Son of *Geisa 2.*
- 1114 12. *Stephen II.* Son of *Coloman*.
- 1132 13. *Bela II.* Nephew of *Geisa* the 2. by his Son *Almus*.
- 1142 14. *Geisa III.* Son of *Bela* the 2.
- 1162 15. *Stephen III.* Son of *Geisa* the 3.
- 1172 16. *Bela III.* Brother of *Stephen* the 3.
- 1191 17. *Emaricus*, Son of *Bela* the 3.
- 1201 18. *Ladislaus II.* Son of *Emaricus*, reigned but 6 months, being slain by Treason very young, and without Issue.
- 1201 19. *Andrew II.* Son of *Bela* the 3. and Brother of *Emaricus*.
- 1236 20. *Bela IV.* Son of *Andrew* the 2.
- 1271 21. *Stephen IV.* Son of *Bela* the 4.
- 1273 22. *Ladislaus III.* Son of *Stephen* the 4.
- 1290 23. *Andrew III.* Nephew to *Bela* the 4. by his Brother *Stephen*.
- 1302 24. *Charles*, furnished *Martel* Son of *Charles* King of *Naples*, by *Mary*, Daughter to *Stephen* the 4. Against whom was chosen *Wenceslaus* King of *Bohemia*, Son of *Wenceslaus* the second, and of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter of *Bela* the fourth, and after three years *Otho* of *Bavaria*, descended from *Elizabeth*, another of the Daughters of *Bela* the fourth, was chosen also by a Faction against *Wenceslaus*. But *Wenceslaus* surrendering his Claim to *Otho*, and *Otho* not long after being forced to renounce his Title, *Charles Martel* remained King of the whole.
- 1343 25. *Ludovicus*, Nephew to *Charles Martel* by his Son *Carlbert*, succeeded King of Poland also, in right of *Elizabeth* his Mother, Sister of *Casmir* the 2.
- 1383 26. *Charles II.* King of *Naples*, descended from *Charles* of *Naples*, and *Mary*, Daughter of *Stephen* the 4. before mentioned, by their Son *John* of *Durazzo*, one of the younger Brothers of *Charles Martel*, poisoned after a short Reign by the Widow of the former King, to make a way for her Daughter to the Crown.
- 1387 27. *Sigismund* Emperour, King of *Bohemia* and Duke of *Luxemburg*, succeeded in right of *Mary* his Wife, eldest Daughter of *Levi* or *Ludovicus*, her younger Sister *Eduigis* being Queen of *Poland*.
- 1438 28. *Albert* of *Austria*, Emperour, and King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, in right of *Elizabeth* his Wife, the Daughter of *Sigismund*.
- 1440 29. *Ladislaus*, or *Vladislaus*, Son of *Agello* King

of *Poland*, in the minority of *Ladislaus* the Son of *Albert* chosen King of *Hungary*; unfortunately slain at the Battel of *Varna*, with 30000 of his people; and perhaps his Perjury might deserve it. For having made and sworn a Truce with the *Turk*, the Pope's Legate, upon a seeming advantage, absolved him of his Oath, and drew him into the Field. At the beginning the Christians had the better: but at the last, *Amurat* the 2. against whom they fought, lifting up his eyes to Heaven, and desiring *Wher* to look upon the perfidious dealing wherewith his Followers had dishonoured him, re-encouraged his men and to go to the Victory.

- 1444 30. *Ladislaus V.* King of *Bohemia*, the Son of *Albert* by *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Sigismund* and *Mary*.
- 1458 31. *Matthias Corvinus*, Son of the famous *Hunniades*, after the death of *Ladislaus* the 1. King of *Hungary*.
- 1491 32. *Vladislaus II.* or *Ladislaus VI.* Son of *Casmir* the 4. of *Poland*, and of *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *Albert*, succeeded in the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*; his three younger Brothers succeeded in that of *Poland*.
- 1517 33. *Ludovicus II.* King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, both born dead before the ordinary course of nature; being in the 21. year of his Age, and the tenth of his Reign, unfortunately drawn unto the Field, to encounter *Solyman* the Magnificent, one of the hardest Captains in his time. The Battel was fought at a Village called *Mogacz*, or *Mogace*, just betwixt *Belgrad* and *Buda*; in which 19000 of the *Hungarians* were slain, and the young King drowned in the Flight. A most lamentable Discomfiture. *Lewis* thus dead, *John Sepusio*, Vaivod or Governour of *Transylvania*, was by the States chosen King of *Hungary*. But *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Austria*, and Brother unto *Charles* the fifth, challenged the Kingdom in right of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter to *Vladislaus*, and Sister to *Lewis* King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. On this Pretence he invaded the Kingdom, and drove out *John* his Competitor; who, to recover his Right, called *Solyman* the Magnificent into the Country, who took to field footing in it, that his Successors could never since be removed.
- 1527 34. *John Sepusio*, Vaivod of *Transylvania*, chosen King upon the death of *Ludovicus*, the 2. outed by *Ferdinand* of *Austria*, restored by *Solyman* the Great *Turk*, died Anno 1540: after whose death the *Hungarians* caused his Son *Stephen*, an Infant, to be crowned King in his Cradle, of which he was immediately deprived by *Solyman* his pretended Patron, who, under colour of preserving that Kingdom for him, seized *Buda*, and other the chief Towns thereof, which he after kept unto himself.
- 1540 35. *Ferdinand* of *Austria*, elected King of *Bohemia*, in respect to the Lady *Anne* his Wife, Sister of *Ludovicus* the 2. Anno 1527, did in the same Right lay Claim to the Crown of *Hungary*; chosen to which by a party prepared for him, he was always in contention with

- with *John de Sepusio*, each of them acknowledged King by their several Factions; but he was by both sides received on the death of *John*.
- 1561 36. *Maximilian*, Emperour, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, Archduke of *Austria*, Son of *Ferdinand*.
- 1572 37. *Rodolphus*, Emperour, &c. Son of *Maximilian*.
- 1608 38. *Matthias*, Brother of *Rodolphus*, afterwards Emperour.
- 1613 39. *Ferdinand II.* of *Graz*, next Heir unto *Matthias* of the House of *Austria*, afterwards Emperour, &c. against whom a Party of *Hungarians* called in *Bethlen Gabor*, Prince of *Transylvania*, whom they elected for their King, intending (as they said) to crown him also. But the Affairs of *Bohemia* going on the Emperour's side, *Gabor* relinquished his pretensions, and hearkened to a Peace betwixt them.
- 1625 40. *Ferdinand III.* Son of *Ferdinand* the second, chosen and crowned King in the life of his Father, and in the year 1627 King of *Bohemia* also, succeeding after him in the Empire, and now living, Anno 1648.

This Kingdom doth pretend it self to be Elective, and to have special Privileges indulged them by their former Princes; and anciently indeed it was so in both respects, the last especially; King *Andrew* giving authority to his Prelates, Peers, and other people, *Ut sine nostra alicujus Instigatio*, &c. that without any Imputation of Difloyalty they might contradict, oppose, and resist their King, if he did any thing in violation of their Laws and Sanctions. But both their liberty of Elections and pretence of Privileges have been so shaken and restrained by their Kings of the House of *Austria*, that the Elections are become a matter of Formality only, and their Privileges depending wholly on their Prince's pleasure, now grown too potent for them to contend withal, unless they should betray their Country into the hands of the *Turk*. To which some of them have expressed some strong Inclinations, the Oppressions laid upon them by the *Austrian* Family being deemed unendurable.

The Forces of this Kingdom, when it was entire, may best be seen by those great Armies which they have brought into the Field against the *Turk*. By whom two parts of three being since subdued, that which remains must not be thought able to answer the proportion of former times; though they have done more than could be rea-

sonably expected from it. For at the Battel of *Kerskew*, Anno 1566, there were 6000 *Hungarian* Horse, and 10000 Foot of that Nation only; besides the 6 of *Germany* and *Transylvania*; and the next year, notwithstanding the Difcomfiture of that Army, they raised no less than 20000 Horse and Foot, on the noise of some Preparations among the *Turks*. 'Tis true, their Foot are commonly but newly armed; the defect whereto is rather to be imputed to the Prince, than unto the people, who can but bring their Bodies (which is all they have) for defence of their Country. And for their Horse, (whom they call *Heyducks*) maintained in continual readiness at the charge of the Nobility and principal Gentry, they are next Cousins to the *Cossacks*, almost as mischievous as they, and hold as strict Intelligence with the *Turks* as those do with the *Tartars*.

The chief Revenues of this Kingdom come from the Silver-Mines, out of which is yearly raised about a million and a half of Guilders. *Maximilian* the second made it up two millions, by seizing on the Lands of Cathedral and Collegiate Churches, and assigning annual Pensions to the Bishops, Canons, and other Religious persons. Most of which Sum comes clearly to the Emperour's Coffers; the Prebendary Souldiers being paid with Contribution-money raised upon the Country; and the Lieutenant-general, whose entertainment comes to 300000 Dollars yearly, defrayed upon their Purfes also.

The chief Order of Knighthood in this Kingdom was that of the *Dragon*, instituted by *Sigismund* Emperour and King hereof, at such time as by the Council of *Constance* against *John Hus* and *Hierom* of *Prague*, and by the sharpness of his Sword proved upon their Followers, he had cast down (as he conceived) the *Dragon* of Heresie and Schism. But the Device proved of no long continuance, expiring almost with the Author.

The Arms of *Attila* the *Hun*, once the King of this Country by the name of *Pannonia*, are said to have been *Gules*, a Falcon displayed Or, membered and crowned Argent. But the Arms of the Kingdom at this time are Barre-wie of eight pieces, *Gules* and *Argent*.

There are in HUNGARY.

Archbishops 2.

Bishops 13.

And so much for HUNGARY.





Thus Enghbed by my honoured Friend Sir Robert Sta-  
pleton, in his excellent Translation of that harsh Satyrift:  
When Buifness calls, a Crowd the rich man thuns,  
And or 'em's Heads in's huge Sedan he runs,  
Reads, writes; and fleeps within it, as he goes:  
For Sleep will come if he the Curtains clofe.

Befides which office of Chair-carriers, or Sedan-men,  
as we call them now, this People being, when once con-  
quered, a fervile Nation, furnished the Romans with  
thofe Beadles whom they employed in calling the Citi-  
zens from the Fields to their public Buifnesses: to which  
the fame Poet alludeth in the next Satyrift, *Clamante*  
*Liburno, Currite jam fedit*, &c. But to proceed. The  
nearens of this Country to the Adriatick occasioned  
the Bay of *Quarnero*, or *Cornaro*, as some call it, commonly  
called *Sinus Flanaticus*, to be sometimes named *Sinus*  
*Liburnicus*, the parts of Italy on the other fide of it to  
be called *Regna Liburnorum* in the Poet *Virgil*, and  
gave the name of *Liburnades* to a Shole of Iflands lying  
on the Coast hereof, 60 at least in number, as is said by  
*Strabo*. To which and other Iflands of the *Adriatick* we  
are now to haften, leaving the Stories of *Illyricum* to  
the clofe of all.

#### 6. The SCLAVONIAN Iflands.

Along the Coasts of *Sclavonia* lie a Cluster of *Iflands*,  
to the number of a thousand, as is said by *Pliny*, most  
of which (if indeed so many) are but Rocks, not Iflands,  
or not inhabited at all, nor of any note. The Principal  
whereof, and fuch as deserve place here, are, 1. the *Li-*  
*burnades* before mentioned. 2. The *Apfyrides*. 3. The  
*Ifles of Ragusi*. 4. *Arbe*. 5. *Curzola*. 6. *Zara*. 7. *Lissa*  
and *Braccia*; the rest not being worth the looking after  
as to our Defign. The whole number of the Inhabitants  
is reckoned in the total to no more than 40000 per-  
sons.

1. The *LIBURNADES*, said by *Strabo* to be  
60 in number, lie all along the Coasts of *Liburnia*, or *Con-*  
*rado* di *Zara*. The chief whereof are 1. *Iffa*, now called  
*Pago*, containing 100 miles in compafs, having a Town  
of the fame name, but in all that Tract of ground not  
above 1000 Inhabitants, in the time of my Author, by rea-  
son of the sharp Ayre, and great want of Fowl. The Sal-  
tpetres here yield great Commodity not only to the people  
themselves, but also to the State of *Venice*, fupreme Lords  
hereof. 2. *Tragurium*, now *Trau* and *Traban*, fo called  
from the chief Town hereof, built by thofe of *Iffa*: fo  
near the Continent, that it feems to be a part thereof. By  
*Mela* it is named *Tegurium*, with fome little difference:  
3. *Pharus* fo called from the *Pharis*, or *Paris* of whom it  
was once a Colony, long fince come to Ruine. It is now  
called *Lefina*, the greatest of all the *Adriatick* as being 150  
miles in compafs, and very fruitful for the bignefs. It hath  
a Town of the fame name, which enjoys a safe and fpa-  
cious Harbour: unvalued and of no great beauty, but for-  
tified with a ftrong Caffle, which commandeth both the  
Harbour and the Shipping in it. The Birth-place of *De-*  
*metrius Pharus*, fo often mentioned in the Stories of  
*Greece* and *Rome*.

2. The *ABSYRTIDES* are in number many, fo  
called from the River *Abfyrus*, which thereabouts falls  
into the *Adriatick*; according unto that of *Lucan*,  
*Et cadit Adriacis puppans Abfyrus in undas*.  
*Abfyrus* foaming with his haft,  
Into the *Adria* falls at laft.

But whether that River were fo called by the *Colchians*  
at their landing there, in memory of *Abfyrus* the Son of  
*Aetas* King of *Colchis*, whom they went to feek, or for

some other reason, I determine not. Certain I am, it  
could not be fo named from the scattering of his Limbs  
hereabouts by *Medea*, his unnatural Sifter, as is said by  
*Pliny*; that cruel Faft being done on the Shores of the  
*Euxine*: the place being called *Tomas* afterwards upon  
that occasion. But of these *Iflands*, being in number many,  
as before was said, two only are of fpecial note: that is to  
say, 1. *Vegia*, or *Vegio*, not far from *Segna* on the firm  
Land, containing in compafs betwixt 80 and 100 miles,  
and about 10000 Inhabitants: the most populous of all  
these *Ifs*. It hath a Town of the fame name, with a very  
fair Harbour: the *Ifland* by *Pliny* called *Curia*, the  
chief Towns of it in his time being, *Fulfinium* and *Cur-*  
*cum*. 2. *Abfyrus*, as *Ptolemy Abfyrum*, as *Pliny* calls it,  
in whole time it was one *Ifland* only, but now divided into  
two by the *Venetians*, letting in the Sea betwixt them: the  
one of them is called *Cherfo* the other *Ofero*; both joined  
together by a Bridge made by the *Venetians*, and both  
together making up 140 miles in compafs; each of them  
having one Town only, and that of the fame name with the  
*Ifland*; the Inhabitants in both not exceeding 50000 per-  
sons. Stored with fufficiency of Corn, plenty of Wine, and  
abundance of Wood, great quantities whereof are sent  
yearly to *Venice*. They have also goodly Herds of Cattel,  
and great Flocks of Sheep; affording by their Fleefh, Wool,  
Cheefe and Butter, a good increafe of profit to the Ow-  
ners of them.

3. The *Iflands of RAGUSI*, (for fo I call them which  
belong to that Commonwealth) are but three in number.  
1. *Gravosa*, a very pleasant place, full of gardens of O-  
ranges, Limons, and Pomegranates. 2. *Langafte*, fimo-  
ned about with very high Mountains, in which are the  
*Ragufan* Farms, made rich by great Charge and Indu-  
ftry of the fveral Occupants, fo as to yield them Wine,  
Oyl, and most excellent Fruits; which they receive more  
plentifully from a goodly Plain fituate in the middle here-  
of, and naturally more fruitful than the other parts. Near  
to this last *Ifland* is good fifhing for Sprats: and in both  
an Art of making their trees to bring forth Oylers, by  
bending down their Boughs, and tying them under the  
water with Stones; fo as in two years there are fo many  
Oylers fastned to them as is ftrange to fee, and in the  
third year they are very good meat. *Melyda*, lying be-  
twixt *Ragusi* and the *Ifle of Curzola*, by *Pliny* called *Me-*  
*lita*, and on that ground fuppoted by fome to be that  
*Ifland* on which St. Paul did fhipper *Perice*, Art. 26.  
But the name of *Barbarus* which the Text joins to the  
Inhabitants of it, not proper to an *Ifland* betwixt *Greece*  
and *Italy* in the times of St. Paul, and his Landing, when  
he parted thence at *Syracufe*, an Haven of *Sicily* fo far  
from this fo near unto the other *Melita*, which is now  
called *Malta*, fufficiently refel this *Fancy*, though otherwise  
not improbably grounded.

4. Of thofe which are known only by one fingle name  
the chief are, *ARBE*, fo called in the time of *Pliny*,  
from the best Town of it, but by *Ptolemy* it is named *Sto-*  
*donia*. A pleasant *Ifland*, in compafs about 50 miles, and  
containing fome 30000 Inhabitants; the only Haven of life  
of all the *Adriatick*; but that defect is abundantly recom-  
penced by the natural Sweetnefs of the place, which is ef-  
teemed certain difolute Rovers of *Austria*, that they fci-  
ced it upon it *Anno* 1618, and had like to have occasioned an  
upon it heavy War betwixt *Ferdinand*, Archduke of the Houfe  
of *Gratz*, (not long after chosen King of the Romans)  
and the State of *Venice*, if *Philip* the third of *Spain* had  
not made up the Breach.

5. *CURZOLA*, by *Ptolemy* and *Strabo* called  
*Coreyra*, or *Melena*, more rightly *Coreyra Melana*, now  
*Coreyra Nigra*, to difference it from *Coreyra*, now *Cor-*  
*fu*, in the *Ionian* Sea. The chief Town of it, being of the  
fame

fame name with the *Ifland*, was founded by the *Gudians*  
of the *Ifle of Crete*. It is fufficiently fruitful, but of Wine  
efpecially; forty miles long, in compafs ninety, and very  
populous for the bignefs, notwithstanding that the peo-  
ple, being Sea-faring men, do much use the Seas, and  
build many Ships. In the year 1571, a little after the ta-  
king of *Cyprus*, and before the Battle of *Lepanto*, it was  
invaded by *Uluaz Ali*, General of the *Turkifh* Fleet, with a  
Navy of 60 Gallies: for fear of whom *Contareno*, the *Ve-*  
*netian* Governor, together with the *Townsmen* and Gar-  
rison Soldiers, abandoned *Curzola*, the chief Town here-  
of, the *Filly* Women thus forsaken, and preferring Death  
before Dishonour, defended the Walls, and with Fire,  
Stones, and fuch other Weapons as they had, they beat off  
the Enemy; till at the laft a violent Tempeft forced the  
*Turkifh* General to remove his Gallies farther off, to a  
place of fafety.

6. *ZARA*, *LISSA*, *BRAZZIA*, three  
small Ifles, not otherwise memorable but for their Mis-  
fortunes, spoiled by the *Turks* at their departure from  
*Curzola* who carried thence 1600 Chriftians into cruel  
Bondage. The rest I purposely omit, being rather Rocks  
than Iflands, barren and stony for the most part, and  
not much inhabited.

The ancient Inhabitants of *Illyricum*, in the full extent  
of it, comprehending *Liburnia* and *Dalmatia*, were the  
*Lapides*, bordering on *Italy*, the *Scirones*, or *Sciritari*, con-  
fining upon *Macedon*, the *Maezi*, in the middle about *Sa-*  
*lina*; the *Petrifia*, lying towards *Pannonia*; the *Deris*,  
*Cerami*, *Dauris*, *Paras*, *Sicula*, *Sardis*, and others of  
inferior note, making up the great and potent Nations  
of the *Libert* and the *Dalmatae*, and comprehended gene-  
rally in the name of *Illyrians*.

Of these the *Liburnian*  
*Illyrians* (by *Pliny*, *fen Liburni*) are they are indifferently cal-  
led by *Pliny* were the first who felt the Forces of *Rome*:  
which growing State they had provoked by their frequent  
Piracies, but more by murdering the Embassadors which  
were sent unto them to require Satisfaction; *Tenta* their  
Queen, a proud and imperious Dame, commanding Exe-  
cution to be done upon them. Warred upon by the *Romans*  
for fo many Injuries under the Conduct of *Centimulus*, one  
of their Confals, they were overthrowen, (as having more  
of the Pirate than the Soldier in them) some of their chief  
Nobility executed, in revenge of the Wrong done to the  
Embassadors, an yearly Tribute imposed on them, and the  
Queen deprived of the greatest part of her Kingdom,  
conferred by the *Romans* on *Demetrius Pharus*, one of  
their Confederates. But he proving unfaithful to them in  
their War with *Hannibal*, and *Gentius*, their last King, who  
commanded over *Illyricum*, fiding against them with *Per-*  
*seus* King of *Macedonia*, *Antius* the Pretor is sent with a  
fufficient Army to make an end of that work; who used  
fuch diligence therein, that *Scodra* the chief Town of the  
Kingdom was taken, and the King himself, together with  
his Wife and Children, made Prisoners; by consequence  
the whole War ended, *antequam geri Roma nunciaretur*,  
before they knew at *Rome* that it was begun. The *Liburni-*  
*an* after that became quiet Subjects, the whole Country on  
the taking of *Gentius* being made a Province of the *Romans*  
*Anno* D. C. 86, and they employed at *Rome* in many fer-  
vile offices, as before was said: and then the *Dalmatians*  
began to call off the Yoke. But *Dalmatium*, their chief  
City, being first sacked by *Marcus Fulvius*, and after by  
*Nepos* before mentioned, they continued quiet and obed-  
ient till the time of *Augustus Caesar*, when they again re-  
belled at the instigation of one *Batto*, a man very potent  
with the People, who, having ten years together main-  
tained the Liberty of his Country, at last, broken and  
wearied by the Forces of *Germanicus* and *Tiberius*, fub-  
mitted himself unto the two Generals; who, asking the

reason of his Revolt, were answered, because the *Romans*  
sent not Shepherds to keep, but Wolves do devour, their  
Flocks. Thus finally conquered, it continued a *Roman*  
Province till the coming of *Odoacer* into *Italy*, who  
brought it under his Command; as the *Goths* also did, hav-  
ing vanquished him, and thereby made themselves Mas-  
ters of *Italy* and the rest of his Purchases. But the King-  
dom of the *Goths* being brought to an end by the good  
fortune of *Justinian*, and the valour of *Belisarius* and *Nar-*  
*ses*, two of his Commanders, (but very ill requited by him)  
*Illyricum* became a part of the Eastern Empire, continuing  
under the power of the *Gracian* Emperors till the time  
of *Phocas*, that bloody Tyrant; when it was made a Prey  
to the *Sclaves*.

Of these though we have spoken before in fveral pla-  
ces, as their Fortunes and Affairs have led us; yet being  
this is the only Country which preserves their name, we  
will here fpeak more exactly of them than we have done  
hitherto; efpecially as to their Manners, Name, and first  
Original, and finally of their Successe in this Country.  
And first for their Original, I take it for a thing past que-  
tion that they were no other than natural *Sarmatians*,  
inhabiting on the North of the River *Rif*, uniting them-  
felves under this Name in their Undertakings and At-  
tempts on the Eastern Empire: as the many Natives of  
*Germany* took the name of *Franks* and *Almans* in their  
Adtions and Achievements against the Western. But  
why they took this name rather than another, is not yet  
agreed on. Some fetch the original of it from *Slavo*, which  
in the *Sclavonian* Tongue fignifieth a Speech or Word, be-  
cause they were all of one common Language, though from  
*Slava*, fignifying in that Language Fame or Glory, in re-  
gard of that great Fame and Honour which they had at-  
tained by their Successe on the Empire. But when I  
find a potent Nation of the *Winnibi*, *Windi*, or *Venedi*, a  
*Sarmatian* People, called *Scalvini* by *Jordanes*, possessed  
in his time of the farther Shores of the River *Rif*, oppo-  
site to *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, and by that Name wading and  
foraging these Provinces and other parts of that Empire  
in the time of *Justinian*, as we read in *Procopius* that they  
did; I see no reason why we should look farther for the  
name of *Sclaves* than from these *Scalvini*. For having in the  
time of *Phocas* fubdued this Country, and called it *Sclavi-*  
*nia* or *Sclavonia*, after their own Name, they and other  
fortunate Successe on the Eastern Empire, and the Hon-  
our they had thereby gotten, they might very well induce  
the rest of the scattered Tribes of the *Sarmatians* to unite  
together with them both in Name and Adtion, and try their  
fortunes in the Conquest of the West of *Europe*, as these  
had done already on the East parts of it. In which Defign  
they fped fo well, that they became Masters of almost all  
thofe Countries which lie betwixt the River *Viftula* and  
the *Euxine* Sea, the *Adriatick* and the *Baltick*, communi-  
cating their Language unto all the Provinces and Nations  
conquered by them, and to most their Manners, Rites and  
Customs. Their Government was at first by Kings; but fo  
that the Succession feldom held in a Race or Family, and  
thofe that had the Throne did not long enjoy it. For  
having a Law amongst themselves, that he who killed a  
Tyrant should fucceed in his place; they had few Kings  
whom fome or other would not vote to be a Tyrant, and  
then difpatch him out of the way, that a greater Tyrant  
might himself (as it commonly happeneth in fuch cafes) might  
poffels the Power. Infomuch that they had a new King  
almost every year, none of them for the fpace of an hun-  
dred years dying natural deaths; and all that while the  
People (as it must be) were most miserably torn  
in pieces by intestine Wars. They were not cured of  
this Diftemper, till the fveral Tribes and Nations of  
them (as *Poles*, *Moravians*, *Bohemians*, &c. these here, & thofe



of other Countries) had their several Princes succeeding one another in a regular way. Their Religion was Gentilism at the first. For being originally Heathens, they worshipped such Gods as others of the Gentiles did; *Jefus* for *Jupiter*, *Ladon* for *Pluto*, *Marzim* for *Mars*, *Zie-vane* for *Venus*, and *Nian* for *Diana*. They had also a God-dess called *Fagode*, to whom they prayed for Fair weather and a temperate Air. To their Children they used to give no Name till they began to grow great, and then they con-ducted them to the Temple of their Gods; where they cut off their first Hair, and offered it as a Pledge of their future Service: at which Solemnity they called together their Friends and Kinsfolk to make merry, with Banquets, Dancing, Singing, and all kind of Sports; offering in sac-rifice an Hog, and Wine mixed with Honey; somewhat like Methuehlin.

The Gospel was first generally received amongst them by the Preaching of *Gyrril* and *Methodius*, two right godly men, who had before converted the *Georgians* and *Circassians*, two great *Asian* Nations, employed therein by the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, with good Success as to the Work, and with no small Honour and advantage to those Patriarchs also. The Eastern *Slaves*, inhabiting those parts of this Country which lie next to *Greece*, and all the *Dacian* Provinces, except *Transylvania*, being of the Communion of the Church of *Tranſylv*, but privileged to officiate all Divine Services in their natural Language. The rest, as more obnoxious to the power of the Kings of *Hungary* and the *German* Emperours, submitted by de-grees to the Popes of *Rome*, who by this means did reap where they never sowed.

But to return unto the Story, The *Slaves*, thus settled in this Country, (since called *Slavonia*) continued absolute Masters of it, under the Title of *Kings of Croatia and Dalmatia*, till the year 970; when growing unſufferable by their frequent Piracies, and having ravished or surprized a Company of *Venetian* Ladies, they forced that State (as the *Liberians* did the *Romans*) to make War

upon them: which ended in the Loss of *Leſan* and *Car-zola*, two of their best Islands, and almost all the Sea-Towns on the Coast of the *Adriatick*, possessed for the most part since that time by the State of *Venice*: a Tri-bute also of a hundred Barrels of Wine, and a Prefect to the Duke of 3000 Coney-skims, being laid upon them; *Petro Orſolo*, being then Duke of *Venice*, and *Marcovic* King of the *Slavonians*. Afterwards *Zelamirus*, the last King, dying without Issue, bequeathed the Kingdom to his Wife, and she as freely to her Brother *Vladislaus*, King of *Hungary*, furnished the Saint; the right hereof ac-cruing by this means to the Kings of *Hungary*, but the Possession of a great part of it remaining to the State of *Venice*: the cause of much War and Bloodshed betwix those Princes, till the *Turk* came to part the Fray, and got the greatest part for himself by their Disagreements. Be-twix these three *Slavonia* at this time those Island thus divided: the *Venetians* possess the greatest part of the Islands, and all the Sea-coasts from the River *Asio* to the Bay of *Cattaro*, (the City and Commonwealth of *Ragusi* excepted only;) the House of *Austria*, in Right of the Crown of *Hungary*, the Inland parts of *Windischland* and *Croatia*; and the *Turk* (who first set footing herein the Reign of *Mahomet* the second) the whole Kingdom of *Bosnia*, the Patronage of *Ragusi*, some Towns in *Windischland* and *Croatia*, and all the residue of *Dalmatia*, from the Bay of *Cattaro* to *Albania*.

The Arms of *Slavonia* were *Argent*, a Cardinal's Hat, the Strings pendant, and platted in a True-love Knot, meeting in the Base, *Gules*.

There are in *Slavonia*,

Archbishops 4. Bishops 26.

And thus much for *SCLAVONIA*

## OF D A C I A .

**D** A C I A is bounded on the East with the *Exe-sine* Sea and some part of *Thrace*, on the West with *Hungary* and *Slavonia*, on the North with *Podolia* and some other Members of the Realm of *Poland*, on the South with the rest of *Thrace* and *Macedonia*. So called from the *Daci*, who here first in-habited; in *Strabo* better known by the name of *Davi*: who proving, when first known to the *Romans*, an officious people, willingly putting themselves to Service in hope of Gain, occasioned the *Romans* in their Comedies and common Speech to call a Sycophant or Servant by the name of *Davus*.

It lieth on both sides of the *Danow*, fronting all along the Upper and the Lower *Hungary*, and some part of *Sclavonia*: extended from the 7. Climate to the 10. so that the longest Summers Day in the most Northern parts thereof is near 17 hours, and in the most Southern 15 hours, 3 quarters.

By this account, with reference to the other Limits before laid down. It differeth much in Situation and Di-mensions from the ancient *Dacia* described by *Ptolemy*: that lying wholly on the North-side of the *Danow*, but tak-ing in so much of the Upper *Hungary* as lieth on the East-side of *Tibiscus*, this comprehending all the rest of the ancient *Dacia*, with both the *Myſia's* and *Dardania*, and, in a word, the whole *Dacian* Diocese in the largest extent thereof, the Province of *Prævalitana* excepted only; which, though a Member of this Diocese, was no part of *Dacia*, but rather of *Macedon* or *Albania*. For the clearer understanding whereof, we may please to know that *Dacia* properly so called, was situate on the Northside of *Danubius*, as before was said, extending as far Westward as the River *Tibiscus*, where it fronted on the *Jazyges Metanſæ*; inhabited by a military and val-iant People, who many times, especially when the Frost did favour them, passed over the River, and invaded the *Roman* Provinces. And though repressed and made tri-butory

butary by *Julius Cæſar*, yet they brake out again in the time of *Augustus*, who sending *Lentulus* against them with a puissant Army, compelled them to retire on the other side of the River, planting the Southern Banks thereof with strong Towers and Garrisons, to restrain them from the like incursions for the time to come. By means whereof, *ſi Dacia* turned non *viſita*, *ſummata* atque *Silota* est, faith the Historian, though *Dacia*, was not overcome, yet it was removed somewhat farther off, and the Provinces thereby secured from the attempts of that people. After this, scared from the attempts of that people. After this, scared from the time of *Cæſar*, with whom *Augustus* had to deal, we find little of them till the Reign of *Decabalus* their last King, a man both ready in Advice, and quick in Execu-tion. Against him *Domitian* made War by *Julianus* his Lieutenant, who gave *Decabalus* a great Overthrow, and had then utterly vanquished him, if his Wit had not bet-ter befriended him than his Sword. For fearing that the *Romans* making use of their Victory, would enter and take possession of his Country, he pitched in the way a great number of Stakes in Battel-array, putting on them the old Corlets of his Souldiers, which, looking like fo many men at Arms, frightened the Enemy from approaching the Country. *Trajan* was the next that made War against him and brought him to that Extent, that having with much loss endured some few Skirmishes, he yielded him-self, and is acknowledged a Friend to the Senate and Peo-ple of *Rome*. But being one of an high spirit, and born in a free Air, he once again fell off from the *Romans*, but to his own destruction: for feeling by the valour of *Trajan* his Kingdom conquered, and his Pa-ace taken and destroyed, he fell upon his own Sword, and *Dacia* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire. Lost in the time of *Gallienus*, it was again recovered by *Aurelianus*; who, finding how difficult and chargeable the keeping of it was like to be, retransferring the other side of the River, placing them betwix the two *Myſia's*, (in some part of each) and calling the Country given to them by the name of *Dacia*, or *New Dacia*, leaving the Old unto the *Goths*, and others of the barbarous Nations, whose Thoroughfare it was in all their Enterprizes and Designs upon the *Roman* Empire. It was divided by *Aurelianus* into the two Provinces of *Dacia Mediterranea*, and *Dacia Preſens*; this lying on the Banks of the *Danow*, the other more within the Land: which, with the Provinces of *Meſo-potamia*, *Dardania*, *Prævalitana*, and part of *Macedonia*, *Salutaria*, made up the whole Diocese of *Dacia* in the times succeeding. It was first subject with that of *Macedon* to the *Præſens* *Prætorio*, for *Thyricum*, and consequently appertaining (after the Division) to the Eastern Empire. And it continued in this State till the time of *Justinian*, who being a Native of this Country, subducted it from the Command of that Prefect, and instituted both a *Præſens* *Prætorio* for this Diocese only in Civil matters, and a Primate for the affairs of the Church; both settled in the City of *Justinian*, of his own Foundation, enlarging the Jurisdiction of the first by the addition of some part of *Macedonia*, *Secunda*, and *Panno-nia*, and giving to the other all those Prebeminences which had been anciently enjoyed by the greater Pa-triarachs. But this new Institution was of no continuance. For first the *Slaves*, and afterwards the *Russians*, *Hun-gars* and *Bulgarians*, breaking over the *Danow*, dimem-bered it piece-meal from the Empire and divided it under new names amongst themselves. Of which, together with the nature of the Soil and people, I shall speak anon, having first took a view of the Rivers, Hills and other Land-marks, which are to be my chief Guides in the Choro-graphy or Description of them.

The Rivers then of most note are 1. the *Danow*, which

here at *Asinum* or *Asinopolis*, a Town of *Bulgaria*, takes the name of *ſſir*, continuing it from thence to its *Exſu-rium*, where it falleth into the *Exeſine* Sea with 7 Mouths or Channels; that is to say, 1. *Pence*, 2. *Naracſtoma*, 3. *Calſtoma*, 4. *Plendofſtoma*, 5. *Spiroſtoma*, 6. *Bore-ſtoma*: the name of the last I find not amongst my Au-thors, *quia languiſſimum, nec perpetuum*, as it is in *Ptolemy*. 2. *Marulius*, now called *Marſch*. 3. *Termes*, 4. *Alma*, keeping its old name, 5. *Hierafus*. All of Old *Dacia*, and all falling into the *Danow* or *ſſir*: as do also *Ciabrus*, now *Ibar*, a River of *Cervia*, and 6. *Suconia* of *Bulgaria*, or the Lower *Myſia*. Chief Mountains of it are, 1. The *Carpathians*, 2. *Scardus*, 3. *Ozbelus*; whereof the first parteth it from *Sarmatia Europea*; the second from *Dalmatia*, and the third from *Macedon*.

This said, we will proceed to the description of the fe-veral Provinces which we have comprehended under this name of *Dacia*; that is to say, 1. *Transylvania*, 2. *Mol-davia*, 3. *Wallachia*, 4. *Ralcia*, 5. *Servia*, 6. *Bulga-ria*: The first four in Old *Dacia*, on the North-side of the *Danow*, The two last in New *Dacia*, on the South thereof.

### 1. TRANSYLVANIA.

**T**RANSYLVANIA is bounded on the East with *Moldavia*, on the West with the Upper *Hun-gary*, on the North with *Ruſſia Nigra*, a Province of the Realm of *Poland*, from which it is parted by the *Car-pathian* Mountains; on the South with *Ralcia* and *Wa-lachia*.

It took this name from the great Woods lying betwix it and *Hungary*; the name in *Latine* signifying the Coun-try beyond the Woods. By the *Dutch* it is called *Sieben-bergen*, from seven Castles or strong Holds anciently built in it to defend the Frontiers: *Septemcastrens* in some *La-tine* Authors upon that occasion. But by the more elegant *Latinists* it hath been named *Pannodacia*, as that part of *Dacia*, which either was inhabited by the *Pannonians*, or made subject to them.

The Soil doth naturally abound with Wine, Corn, and Fruit; of which it was so plentiful in the time of the *Romans*, that the Emperour *Trajan* caused a piece of Mo-ney to be coined, having the Figure of *Ceres*, holding in the one hand a *Cornu Copia*, and in the other a plain Ta-blet with this Inscription, *Abundantia Dacia*. Particu-larly, besides great plenty of Wheat and most Excellent Wines, it yieldeth great store of Cherries, Damascens, Malacatoons, Musk-melons, not inferior to those of *Italy*, and also Centaury good store, and many other Med-icinal plants; some Mines of Gold and Silver, many of Iron, Brass, Copper, and not a few Veins of Salt and Sul-phur. Of Cattel such abundance, that many times large Oxen are sold for a Floren, or half a Crown a piece; and a most notable breed of Horses: not to say any thing of that variety of Wild Beasts which they have in their Woods and Forests, and of all sorts of Fowl both for food and pleasure. So populous withal, (for the most fruit-ful Countries are commonly populous also) that *Cassi-ald*, Governour hereof in the Minority of *Stephen* the fourth Son of *Iohn de Sepſis*, Anno 1551, advanced an Army of 70000 able men, consisting of the Natives of this Country only, for the Siege of *Lippe*, a strong Town of *Hungary*, but on the Borders of this Coun-try.

The People are much of the same nature with the *Hungarians*, to whom they have been along time subject, but somewhat more stubborn and untractable: speak the same Language as they do, with some difference in the Dialect only; converted at the same time to the Chris-tian

fian Faith, and under the same form of Ecclesiastical Government. In former times they used to read, as the Jews do, from the right hand to the left; but of late heretofore they on to the Western Nations, from whom they are generally defended.

For that the people of this Country are the Progeny of the Saxons, is evident 1. by the Saxon Language yet in part retained. 2. We find that Charles the Great, like a politic Conqueror, placed many of that Nation here, weakening so their strength at home, and fortifying the Bounds of his Empire. And 3. by a Story recited by *Verfeggen*, which we touched in our Description of *Brundwick*; the whole Narration is this. *Halberstadt* was beyond credit troubled with Rats, which a Musician, whom they called the *Pfäpfer*, undertaking for a great mass of money to destroy, they agreed: hereupon he tuned his Pipes, and all the Rats in the Town dancing after him are drowned in the next River. This done, he asketh his pay, but is denied: whereupon he stricketh up a new fit of Mirth: all the Children, male and female, of the Town, follow him into the Hill *Hanslen*, which presently closed again. The Parents miss their Children, and could never hear news of them. Now of late some have found them in this Country, where I also leave them: only telling you this, that this marvellous accident is said to happen the 22. of July, 1376. Since which time it is said that the people of *Halberstadt* permit not any Drum, Pipe, or other Instrument to be sounded in that Street: and established a Decree, that in all Writings, of Contract or Bargain, after the Date of our Saviours Nativity, the Date also of their Childrens Transmigration should be added in *rei memoriam*. But though the *Dutch* or *Saxons* make up the main body of them, yet being conquered by the *Hungars*, they received many of their Colonies; and in the Northern parts there remain still some of the old *Scythians* planted there by *Attila*. Out of those Members is the Body of this State composed: so strong and populous, that it is conceived to be able to raise an Army of 90000 men; and actually did arm 6000 Horse and 12000 Foot for the Battle of *Kersbure*, Anno 1596, being more by 2000 than the whole Realm of *Hungary* sent unto that Service.

Chief Towns herein of the foundation of the *Dutch* or *Saxons* are, 1. *Hermanstadt*, in Latine *Hermanopolis*, (of old called *Cibinium*, from the River *Cibin*, on which it was situate) so named of one *Herman* the Founder of it, little inferior to *Vienna* for strength or greatness, well fortified both by Art and Nature. 2. *Cronstadt*, in Latine called *Corona*, by some *Braşovia*, by others *Stephanopolis*; this last name being given it by *Stephen* King of *Hungary*, who repaired and beautified it; situate on the Borders of *Wallachia*, amongst fruitful Mountains; remarkable for a fair Library and a kind of Academy; and the most noted Empory or Mart-Town of all this Country; of great Resort especially in the Time of their publick Fairs, by *Turks*, *Arabians*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Poles*, *Wallachians*, and other Nations. 3. *Bistricia*, (by the *Dutch* called *Noren*) so called from the River *Brice*, which runneth through it: so pleasant and so sweet a Town, that there is no dirt or mire to be seen at any time; or if there be, the people presently swell up the River, and so cleanse the Streets. 4. *Mediesfus* (by the *Dutch* *Medwitsch*) so called *quasi medius confossus*, because situate in the middle of the Country, a Town almost as neat as *Bistricia*. 5. *Segeşvaria*, or *Scheşburg*, on the declivity of an Hill. 6. *Zağrebis*, or *Laitz*, once the chief Town of the Saxons, but now much decayed; situate in a very deep Valley, well fenced with Waters, and those Waters well stored with Fish. 7. *Clusenburg*, or *Cluswar*, the *Zeugma* of *Ptolemy*, in Latine called *Clandopolis*, from *Clandius* the II. Emperor,

by whom re-edified at first a Colony of the *Saxons* or *Dutch* only, but of late times the *Hungarians*, coming in as Strangers, were at last privileged as Citizens, and inhabited together with them. The Town is well fenced in the middle of a pleasant Plain, encompassed with an handsome Wall, and beset with elegant Buildings. 8. *Alba Julia*, now *Wesslingburg*, the *Apulum* of *Ptolemy*, situate on a small brook then called *Apulus*, (but now *Orani*) whence it had the name. Built on the side of an Hill near the River *Marisch*, (or *Marisus*) over-looking a large and fruitful Plain: heretofore a Bishops See, and the ordinary Residence of the Prince or Vaivod of *Transylvania*, but now a Garrison of *Hungarian* Soldiers, holding it for the Emperor, as King of *Hungary*.

Chief Towns belonging to the *Hungarians*, and by them inhabited, are, 1. *Waradin*, much mentioned in the Stories of these later times, since the invasions of the *Turks*; situate on the Borders of *Hungary*. 2. *Thorda*, built in or near the place where stood the *Valina* of *Phlemy*, so called from the abundance of Salt-pits which were then about it. 3. *Engedine*, by the *Romans* called *Amnium*, from a Causey leading to it, raised by one *Annius*, and from him so named; some Fragments whereof are still remaining. 4. *Deva*, remarkable for a Vein of the best Wines. 5. *Fenischum*, affording very pleasant Wines also, not inferior to those of *Penum* in *Italy*. 6. *Zilich*, 7. *Gela*, of which little memorable. 1. *Miltenbach*, a river from which, betwixt which and the Town of *Brav*, is a very strong Fortrefs, commanding a freight and narrow passage leading into this Country out of *Hungary*.

In the North part hereof lieth the Province called *ZECKLERE*, inhabited by the *Scythians*, an old brood of *Scythians*, brought hither by *Attila* on his first Conquest of this Country, and here still continuing. A people which have much in them of the ancient *Huns*, and had heretofore a peculiar Language to themselves, but now they speak the *Hungarian* generally, differing in the Dialect only. But, though by the necessity of Commerce and Cohabitation, they are brought into the same Language; they still retain their ancient Customs, governed by their old Laws, and living after the same manner as the *Switzers* do; each of their Cantons (seven in number) being absolute in and of itself, but all united with the *Transylvanians*, and with one another, for defence of the whole Country against the several Pretensions of the *German* and *Turkish* Emperours. And though they do acknowledge some Subjection to the Emperor as King of *Hungary*, yet it is but what they list themselves being anciently privileged from all Taxes, more then the paying of a Bull for every Mouthful, in the way of an Hecot, at the Coronation of the new King, when and how oft sever it may chance to happen. Their Cantons (so they call them) are, 1. *Septi*. 2. *Orbgy*. 3. *Kysk*. 4. *Czyk*. 5. *Gyrgy*. 6. *Maros-Zeck*. And 7. *Arania-Zek*, so called from the chief Town in each Division. In former times no Nobleman, nor any one of better Means and greater Eminence than other, was known amongst them: but now of late that Parity (or Confusion rather) is grown out of credit, and some begin to over-top the rest both in Power and Tide as in other places.

The first Inhabitants of the old *Dacia*, whereof this Province was a part, were the *Anari*, *Tarvisi*, *Rhaetis*, *Canconsi*, the *Buridenfi*, and *Biopis*, &c. First conquered they were by *Lyfimbach*, the great and mighty King of *Thrace*, one of the renowned Captains of *Alexander* the Great; in token whereof, innumerable Medals in the age of our Grandfathers were found in this Country, having his Image on the side, and this word *Victoria* on the other. How they were afterwards subdued by the Emperor *Trayan*, and quitted by *Aurelianus*, hath been already

dy. Being forsaken by the *Romans*, it was won by the *Goths*; their constant Dwelling till forced over the *Danube* by the *Huns*, the next Possessors of this Country; the Road or Thorough fare from that time of those barbarous Nations, which out of *Asia* made their Inroads on the *Europæans*. Having been successively subdued by the *Slaves* and *Rosses*, this part hereof was conquered by *Stephen*, the first King of *Hungary*, furnished the Saint, by whose perswasion and inducements they received the Gospel. They were governed after this time as a Member of that Kingdom, by a Deputy, whom they called the *Vaivod* of *Transylvania*, (the word *Vaivod* signifying as much as *Presectus Militie*, or a Lord-Lieutenant) a man, by reason of the greatness of his place and power of most Authority in that Kingdom. The names and Succession of these *Vaivods*, till the time of *John Haniades*, comes imperfectly to us; but after that more cleere and constant in this order following.

#### THE VAIVODS AND PRINCES OF TRANSYLVANIA.

1. *John*, furnished *Haniades*, made Vaivod hereof by *Vladislav* the IV. A man of great Valour and Renown, the great Defender of his Country against the *Turks*, whom he overthrew in many Battles, especially in that of *Maros*, where he slew 50000 of them. He died about the year 1458.
2. *Stephen*, of the noble Family of *Cattory*, Vaivod in the time of *Matthias* King of *Hungary*, the Son of *Haniades*.
3. *Stephen* II. furnished de *Sepiso*, from the place of his Honour or Estate; not so much memorable for any thing as for being Father of *Barbara*, the Wife of *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, and of
4. *John* II. called also de *Sepiso*, after the death of *Lewis* the II. chosen King of *Hungary*, of whom before amongst the Kings of that Realm
5. *Americus*, Bishop of *Veradum*, made Vaivod by *John de Sepiso*, on his taking of the Crown of *Hungary*, treacherously murdered, for not complying with the *Turks*, Anno 1534.
6. *Stephen* III. furnished *Maylat*, a noble *Hungarian*, but extremely ambitious, having not long after the death of *Americus* usurped the Vaivodship, was in the year 1540 confirmed in that Dignity.
7. *Stephen* IV. Son of *John de Sepiso* the late King of *Hungary*, by *Solyman* the Magnificent made Vaivod of *Transylvania*, being then an Infant, (by whom he had been deprived of his Kingdom of *Hungary*, not long before being inchoated upon not long after by the said *Solyman*, this Country was put into the hands of *Ferdinand* King of *Hungary*, other Lands being given to the young Prince in exchange hereof.
8. *Stephen* V. furnished *Dobos*, for his Valour showed against the *Turks* in defending *Agria*, made Vaivod of this Country by the said King *Ferdinand*. But *Solyman*, not liking that this Country should be at the Devotion of the Kings of *Hungary*, conferred the same (under the Vassallage of his Empire) upon one
9. *John* III. whose Family and surname I have no where found; a professed Champion of the *Turks*, and as professed an Enemy to *Ferdinand* and his Successors in the Kingdom of *Hungary*.

10. *Stephen* VI. furnished *Battery*, (of which House he was) made Vaivod by the *Turks*; and afterwards on the Commendation of *Amurad* the III. chosen King of *Poland*.
11. *Christopher Battery*, Brother of *Stephen*, on whose Election unto *Poland*, he succeeded here, and was the first, who leaving the Title of Vaivod, took that of Prince of *Transylvania*.
12. *Sigismund*, Son of *Christopher*, shook off the *Turkish* Bondage, defeated many of their Armies, and slew some of their *Bassis*, (the *Scanderbeg* of the times he lived in) But not being able to hold out against so Potent an Adversary, he resigned his Estate to *Rodolphus* the Emperour, having for it in exchange the Dukedoms of *Oppelen* and *Ratisin* in *Silesia*, and an annual Pension of 50000 *Peacchims*. But finding his Pension ill paid, he made a new Renegation of it to
13. *Andrew Battery*, Cousin of *Sigismund*, slain within the year by the Vaivod of *Valachia*. After whose death
14. *Rodolphus*, Emperour and King of *Hungary*, is admitted Prince of *Transylvania*, on the second Renegation of *Sigismund*. But his Souldiers behaving themselves with too great Insolence, *Sigismund* was called back again, but never well settled: so that at last he was faine to leave the Country in the power of the Emperour and retire to *Prague*, where in the year 1613 he died unlamented. In the mean time
15. *Justine*, or *Ibrav*, furnished *Borcsay*, a Nobleman of this Country, made Prince hereof by the great *Turk*, and supported by him, cleared the Province of the *Germans*: and being followed by great Companies of those of the Reformed Religion, he not only obtained of the Emperour *Rodolphus* a Confirmation of this Estate unto himself, but liberty of Conscience, and the free exercise of Religion for both the Nations, presently after which he died, Decemb. 30. 1606.
16. *Sigismund* II. of the noble Family of *Ragotzy*, elected in the February following by the *Transylvanians*; but finding himself not able to make his Election good against the Emperour, and being unwilling to subject himself unto the *Turks*, and after the end of one year he relinquished the Government, and betook himself again to a private life.
17. *Gabriel Battery*, of the Family of the former Princes, succeeded by the favour of *Acemet* the great *Turk*: after whose death, so welcome unto his Neighbours and Subjects,
18. *Bethlem Gabor*, by the same *Acemet* was made Prince of *Transylvania*; a professed Enemy of the House of *Austria*, but one that with a great deal of noise did them little hurt.
19. *Stephen* VII. furnished *Ragotzy*, on the death of *Bethlem Gabor*, succeeded Prince, by the power and favour of the *Turks*, under whose Clientele and Protection he doth still enjoy it, (as his Predecessors did before him) against all Pretensions of the Empire and Realm of *Hungary*; as on the other side he is defended by the Emperour and Crown of *Poland* from being made Thall unto the *Turks*.

## 2. MOLDAVIA.

**MOLDAVIA** is bounded on the East with the *Enxine* Sea, on the West with *Transylvania*, on the North with the River *Niefter*, the *Tyras* of *Ptolemy* and the *Ancients*, by which it is parted from *Podolia*, a Province of *Poland*: and on the South with *Valachia*.

It is fo called as some fay, *quasi Meotavia*, from its nearness to the Fens of *Meotis*; or rather from the *Huns* and other People of those Fens who possessed the fame. Others conceive that it was first called *Maur-davia*, i. e. *nigrum Davorium Regis*, the Country of the black *Davia*, (for by the name of *Davi* were the *Dacians* called, as we find in *Strabo* and some others) so named from their Complexion, or the colour of their Caps and other Garments; as *Nigra Russi*, a near neighbouring Province of the Realm of *Poland*, on the like occasion. But the more probable opinion (as I take it), is, that it took this name from the River *Moldavia*, which runneth through it; as the *Moravian* had the name from the River *Morava*. The Nature and Religion of the People we shall find in *Valachia*, whereof anciently it was reckoned for a part.

The Country is very fruitful in Corn, Wine Grapes, and Wood; but more used for Pasturage than Tillage, by reason of the great want of people to manure the Land: by means whereof it affordeth great plenty of Beef and Mutton, whereby they supply some parts of *Poland* and the populous City of *Constantinople*. And these they issue out in so great a Number, that the tenth penny, exacted by the Prince or Vaivod in the way of Custom amounteth to 150000 Crowns *per annum*: and yet the Clergy and the Gentry are discharged of this Impost. But the main Trade of this Country is not driven by the Natives: the Port Towns being full of *Armenians*, *Jews*, *Hungarians*, and *Ragusan* Merchants, who forestall the Markets, and barter all their Corn and Wine into *Russia* and *Poland*; their Skins, Wax, Honey, powdered Beef, Pulse and Butter into *Constantinople*: it being credibly reported, that from the Ports of this Country no fewer than 500 Ships laden with Corn, Victuals, and other Provisions necessary to the life of man, are yearly sent unto that City.

The Country is in a manner round, the Diameter each way being near upon 300 *Englisch* miles: but so ill inhabited, by reason of the neighbourhood of the *Turks*, *Tartars* and *Polonian Cossacks*, that certain *Englisch* Gentlemen having in the year 1609 travelled at least 240 miles in the Country, could meet with in all the way but nine Towns and Villages; and for an hundred miles together the Grapes so high, that it rotted on the ground for want of Cart to eat it, and of men to order it. So that we are not to expect in it many eminent Cities or Towns of note, though it afford two Archbishops and two Bishops Sees, Followers (as all the rest of the People are) of the Traditions and Doctrines of the Church of *Greece*.

The principal of those which be, are, 1. *Occasnoia*, *Zuconia*, or *Socava*, the Vaivod's Seat. 2. *Feciciana*. 3. *Fazeling*, of which little memorable. 4. *Kotim*, a place of great strength, on the Borders of *Poland*; by some called *Cochina*, the ordinary Magazine of the Country. 5. *Jassy*, commonly called *Tar*, the chief Town for Wealth and Trade in all this Province. 6. *Bender*, a strong Town on the *Enxine* Sea. 7. *Polada*, near the *Danow*. 8. *Bialograd*, situate on or near the River *Tyras*, now called *Niefter*; a strong Town against the *Tartars*, and *Polonians*. 9. *Kilia*, anciently called *Achilleia* situate on the Shore of the *Enxine* Sea, for the most part com-

passed round with the waters of it, and therefore faulty *Ptolemy* to be an Island. 10. *Ac-German*, of old called *Alprocatron*, and *Moncastrum*, a very strong Town on the same coast also. Both taken by *Bajazet*, the second Emperor of the *Turks*, Anno 1485. But these three Towns are not so properly in *Moldavia*, at least not in *Moldavia* properly so called, as in a little Province called *Bessarabia*, lying on the *Enxine*, formerly counted part thereof, till conquered by the *Turks*, in the year aforesaid, it became a Member of that Empire. A Trade inhabited by the *Bess* in the times of *Ptolemy*, who being driven out of their Country by the *Bulgarians*, settled themselves (as some say) in that part of *Scythia*, which is now called *Bosnia*.

The whole Country, following the Fortune of *Transylvania* and the rest of *Dacia*, till the coming of the *Slaves* and *Rosses*, was for a while accounted part of the *Russian* Empire, till the dismembering of that Empire by the *Tartars*. After which it was sometime Homager to the *Polanders*, sometime to the *Hungarians*, according as the Vaivods or Princes of it could find best Conditions. By *Mahomet* the Great it was made Tributary to the *Turks*; but the Tribute at the first was very light and easy: not above 2000 Crowns *per annum*: that mighty Emperor, who aimed at more profitable Conquests, being loath to spend his Forces on so poor a Purchase as the addition of this Province would have been unto him. But *Bajazet* his Son finding how fit it lay for the more absolute Command of the *Enxine* Sea, took in that part hereof which is called *Bessarabia*, reducing it into the form of a *Turkish* Province, Anno 1485, as before it was; imposing on the rest an increase of the former Tribute; and so left it unto the disposal of its natural Princes. After which time the Vaivods fearing to be made Vassals to the *Turks*, did many times rise in Arms against them, aided therein sometimes by the *Hungarians*, and sometimes by the *Polanders*, which last pretended to the Sovereignty and Chiefage of it. *Bogdan*, Vaivod hereof in the time of *Selim* the second, uniting himself more closely to the *Polonians*, became thereby suspected by the *Turkish* Tyrant; who with a great power chased him out of his Country, and gave the same unto *John*, a *Moldavian* born, but bred up for the most part in the *Turkish* Court (where he renounced his Faith, and was circumcised) under the yearly Tribute of 6000 Crowns. But *John* the new-made Vaivod was no sooner settled, but he returned again to his first Religion, and for that cause grew less affected by the *Turks*, which being observed by the then Vaivod of *Valachia*, he persuaded to obtain that Dignity for his Brother *Peter*; offering to double the said Tribute, and to assist in Subjugation of the Country. The *Turk*, accepting of this Offer, compounds an Army of 70000 *Valachians*, 30000 *Turks*, and 3000 *Hungarians*, with which they fell into *Moldavia*; and were so gallantly received by the noble Vaivod, that few of them escaped the Slaughter. But being afterwards betrayed by his old Friend *Camarce*, and, against faith given, barbarously murdered by the *Turkish* *Bassa*; *Moldavia* fell into the hands of the *Turks*, and was united to that Empire, Anno 1574: the Vaivods from that time forwards being nominated by the *Turkish* Emperours, and governing as Substitutes and Lieutenants for and under them. And though *Arum*, one of the succeeding Vaivods, did shake off this Yoke, and confederated himself with *Sigismund* Prince of *Transylvania*, and *Michael*, Vaivod of *Valachia*, for Defence of themselves and their Estates against that Enemy yet being afterwards supplanted by *Rafsan*, one of his own ambitious Subjects, and that confederacy dissolved, it became Subject first unto the *Polonians*, by the power and

prudence of *Zamoisie*, Chancellor of *Poland*; and then unto *Rodolphus*, Emperour of *Germany*; and finally unto the *Turks*, as before it was. And though the *Polanders* have since made use of some opportunities in imposing Vaivods on this Country, in despite of the *Turks*: yet was it commonly to their own Loss, little or no Benefit to the *Moldavians*; and in the end drew the whole Power to the *Moldavians* upon themselves in the Reign of *Osman*; of the *Turks* upon themselves in the Affairs of this Province, but leaving them entirely to the *Turks* disposing; who receive hence some yearly Tribute, but have not hitherto obtained the entire Possession of it, so long since aimed at by those Tyrants.

## 3. VALACHIA.

**VALACHIA** is bounded on the East with *Moldavia*, and a branch of the *Ister* or *Danubius* bending towards the North; on the West with *Russia*, on the North with *Transylvania* and some part of *Moldavia*, and on the South with the *Danubius* wholly, by which it is parted from *Servia* and *Bulgaria*. First called *Flaccia*, from one *Flaccus* a Noble *Roman*, who, on the Conquest hereof in the time of *Trajan*, brought hither an *Italian* Colony; afterwards by corruption *Valachia*, and at last *Valchia*.

But the name of *Flaccia* or *Valchia* was at first of more large extent than it is at present, comprehending all *Moldavia* also divided in those times by a Ridge of Mountains into *Cisalpina* and *Transalpina*; the name of *Moldavia* being afterwards appropriated to the one, and that of *Valachia* (properly and specially so called) unto the other. The people of both in token of their first Extraction, speak a corrupt *Latin* or *Italian* Language; but in Matters of Religion follow the *Disciples* of the *Greek* Church, and obey the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, under whom all Ecclesiastical Affairs are governed by one Archbishop, and two Bishops. In other things they partake generally of the Rudeness and Barbarity of those Nations, which have since subdued them; being a rough-hewn people, hardly civilized, ignorant for the most part of Letters and all Liberal Sciences, not weaned perfectly (in so long time of their profession of Christianity) from the Superstitions of the Gentiles, swearing by *Jupiter* and *Venus*, marrying and unmarried at their pleasures, much given to Magical Charms and Incantations, and burying with their Dead both Cloaths and Victuals, for their Relief in that long Journey to the other World.

It is in length 500, in breadth 120 miles. The Country is for the most part plain and very fertile, affording store of Cattel, a breed of excellent Horses, Iron-mines, Salt-pits, and all Provisions necessary to the life of man. Some Vines they also have, and not few Mines of Gold and Silver, more then for fear of the *Turks*, and other ill Neighbours they dare discover. They are begirt about with woody Mountains, which afford them Fowel, and very well watered with the Rivers of 1. *Pruth*, called anciently *Hicrasus*. 2. *Sterias*. 3. *Falmina*. 4. *Telza*. 5. *Alata*, all of them falling into 6. the *Danow*, which in this Province, at the Influx of *Falmina*, takes the name of *Ister*. Yet is it not (at the present) very populous the Spaciousness and Fertility hereof considered, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of the *Tartars*, *Turks*, and *Polonian Cossacks*: their late long Wars against those Nations and the *Danub* having much decreased their former numbers, with which they so abounded in the times foregoing, that the Vaivod of this Country, in the year 1473, was able upon little warning to bring 70000 men into the Field for present Service.

Places of most note herein are, 1. *Galatz*, on the Influx of the River *Pruth* or *Hicrasus*, into the *Danubius*; the

water of which River is so unwholesome, that it causeth the Body to swell. 2. *Trisfortum*, not far from which they dig a Bituminous earth, so refined and pure, that usually they make Candles of it instead of Wax. 3. *Prailaba*, by some called *Brailova*, the Town of most Trade in all this Country, situate on the *Danow*, and defended with a very strong Cattle, fortified by Art and Nature, and furnished with a strong Garrison of *Turks*, as the Key of this Province, opening the Door unto the rest. The Town was most cruelly destroyed and razed to the ground, with an incredible Slaughter of the Inhabitants of all Sexes and Ages, for the space of four days together, by *John* the Vaivod of *Moldavia*, spoken of before, at his first revolting from the *Turks*: but the Cattle, in regard of the great strength of it, was scarce attempted by him. 4. *Teina*, a Fortress of great strength, but in the hands of the *Turks* also; 5. *Zorava*, corruptly for *San-Georgia*, seated on the *Danow*, with an Arm whereof the Cattle of it is encompassed, garrisoned by the *Turks*, and by them held to be so strong and so safe a place, that at the taking of it by *Sigismund* the Prince of *Transylvania*, Anno 1596, there were found in it 39 great pieces of Ordnance, with such store of Arms and Ammunition as might well have served for a whole Kingdom. 6. *Tergovista*, or *Tereva*, sometimes the chief City of the Province, and the ordinary Residence of the Vaivod, till the taking of it by the *Turks*; once beautified with a fair and famous Monastery, by the *Turks* converted into a Fortress, environed with deep Trenches, strong Bulwarks upon every quarter, and great store of Ordnance; but many times lost and got again, according to the changes and chance of War. 7. *Bucarest*, about a days journey from *Tergovista*, seated on the *Danow*, remarkable for two Bridges built near unto it. The one was of Boats, (the Bridges built near unto it) but a whole month's laying whereof took up no less than a whole month's time for the transporting of the Army of *Sinan Bassa* against *Sigismund* Prince of *Transylvania* before mentioned, and broken down by the said *Bassa* in his Flight, having been worked in all places by the *Transylvanians*. The other was the work of the Emperor *Trajan*, in his War against *Decabalus* King of *Dacia*, built all of Stone, and laid on Piles and Arches of a wonderful greatness; 24 Piles or Pillars whereof are yet remaining, to the great admiration of all beholders. 8. *Cebim*, of old called *Lycosmos*, in vain besieged by the Forces of *Mahomet* the Great, coming in person to subdue this petty Province. 9. *Zarmizegethela*, the Seat-royal of *Decabalus* King of *Dacia*, taken and destroyed by *Trajan* in his War against him, who, causing it to be repaired and more beautified than formerly, gave it the Privileges of *Rome*, and the name of *Ulpia Trajana*, which it retained as long as *Dacia* was a Province of the *Roman* Empire, now a small Village called *Vatzer*. Some Stones have been dug up hereabouts with this Inscription, *COLONIA ULPIA TRAJANA AUG. DACIÆ E ZARMIS*, which clearly shew as well the Dignity and esteem as the Antiquity of the place, before the *Turks*' times.

This Province, as the rest of *Dacia* on that side of the *Danow*, after the coming in of the *Slaves* and *Rosses* was under Princes of their own, whom they called (as those of *Transylvania* and *Moldavia* did) by the name of *Vaivods*. Protected by the *Hungarian* Kings they lived long in Peace; till, sensible of the approaching Danger which the Conquest of most part of *Servia* and *Bulgaria* by the *Turks* was like to bring them, the Vaivod of it in the time of *Bajazet* the First passed over the *Danow* with his Forces, and having done great Spoil to the *Turkish* Territories, returned again into his Country. Rather provoked than weakened with which Invasion, *Bajazet* comes into *Valachia*, overcomes the Vaivod in a pitched Field, compelling him to flee for Peace, and

to pay him Tribute, But *Bajazet* being not long after taken Prisoner by *Tamerlane*, and the Succession controverted amongst his Sons, the imposed Tribute was withheld, till *Mahomet*, the fifth King of the *Turks*, having settled the Affairs of that tottering State, Anno 1417 enforced them to a new Composition, and the payment of all former Reckonings. The fortunate Successes of *Hunyadi* in several Battles, induced them once more to change their Masters, and to put themselves under the Protection of the *Hungarians*, as they had done formerly: but they paid dear for it, their Country being made the Thoroughfare of the *Turkish* Forces in their Attempts upon that Kingdom. But the *Hungarians* being vanquished at the Battle of *Cassova* by *Amurat* the second, the accustomed Tribute was brought in, and the *Turks* satisfied for the present, being then hardly put to it by the famous *Scanderbeg*. Not long after, in the year 1462, *Mahomet*, the Great undertook the Conquest of this Country, upon advertisement that *Wladis* the then Vaivod of it, intended to join with the *Hungarians* in some War against him: and finding how unprofitably he had spent his Forces in fighting against Woods, Mountains, and a wasted Country, he set up *Dracule*, the younger Brother of *Wladis*, to claim the Government, who, making a Party amongst the people, and having the *Turk* for his Assistance and support, possessed himself of the Estate, to be holden of him as a Vassal to the *Turkish* Empire. And it continued in this State, the Vaivods being after this at the *Turks* appointment, and paying all Exactions imposed upon them, till the Revolt of *Sigismund* the Prince of *Transylvania*, Anno 1591, at what time *Misbach*, the then Vaivod hereof, taking that opportunity to shake off this Yoke, confederated with him and the *Moldavians* for their common Safety. And though he held out longer against *Turk* and *German* than either of the other did, discomfited the *Turks* by his own proper Forces at the Battle of *Nicopolis*, vanquished the *Transylvanians*, and added that Province for a while unto the Estate: yet, being at last out of his Country by the *Polanders*, and another put into his place, he was shamefully slain in his own Tent, by the privacy and consent of *Bassa*, Lieutenant of *Rodolphus*, Emperor, and King of *Hungary*. After whose death the Country, miserably distracted betwixt two Vaivods, the one placed by the Emperor *Rodolph*, and the other by *Mahomet* the Grand Seigneur, endured all the Spoil and Wreck which so calamitous a Competition could bring upon it: till in the end, the fortune of the *Turks* prevailing, the *Valachians* were constrained to submit unto their Disposal, and receive their Vaivods from that Court, as they had done formerly: performing their accustomed Duties, and paying such yearly Tribute as is laid upon them. Which notwithstanding, partly by their own natural Unquietness, and partly by the ambition of such persons as contend for that Dignity, they have since been many times embroiled in Wars; never to quietly composed, but that a new Hope, or the Artifices of the *Turkish* Ministers, starts them into Action. By means whereof, when they have tired and spent themselves in their own Combustions, they may in fine be fully conquered, and made the next addition to the *Turkish* Monarchy.

Of what Revenue these Provinces severally were to their natural Lords, and of what fealty to the *Turk*, I am not able to determine. But look upon them as conjunct, and as they stood at the time of the Revolt so often mentioned, and they yielded one way with another into the Treasury of the Grand Seigneur no less than a million of Ducats yearly. *Kneller* in his *Turkish* History doth report it so. And his Continuator doth affirm that *Moldavia* only, before the said Revolt, did yearly yield unto the *Turk* a whole Tun of Gold, 2000 Horles

for service, 10000 great Measures of Wheat, with as much Barley, and a wonderful proportion of Butter, Honey, and other Victuals; adding wheat, that the other two Provinces paid as much, or more, for their yearly Tribute. After which rate, the Estimate made by *Kneller* may hold very good. But since the Reduction of these Countries to their former Obedience, the *Turks* having been more moderate in their Exactions than they were before, for fear of startling them to some new Engagement; whom they have brought to this Obedience and Conformity with such a vast expense both of Blood and Treasure as would have purchased the best Kingdom of Christendom in the open Market. Insum, that the ordinary Tribute of *Moldavia* is now but 40000 Chequins, that of *Valachia* but 24000 of the same Coin; besides 10000 Horles yearly lent from both. Such Tribes and Presents as are given by the Vaivods hereof, either to get or hold their places, being Merchantable Ware, and wholly at the *Turks* disposing, not being part of this Account.

#### + R A S C I A.

**R A S C I A** is bounded on the East with *Valachia*, on the West with *Hungary*, on the North with *Transylvania*, and on the South with the River *Danubius*, encompassed on three sides with that River, and another now called *Temes*, by the *Latines* *Samus*; and on the East divided from *Valachia* by the River *Aluta*. Called *Rascia* from the *Rascians*, a *Slavonian* People, whom *Ortelius* placeth in this Tract, and from him *Magnus*. But here it is to be observed, that besides this Country, the *Rascians* held some Towns and Territories on the other side of the *Danubius*, and amongst others the strong Town of *Chrysiacum*; whereof more anon.

The Country is poor enough, but the people poorer, oppressed in former times by the *Servians*, and lately by the *Turks*; which makes them valiant and adventurous upon all occasions, as commonly those people are who give themselves the hope of bettering their Fortunes which they cannot make worse. Places of note here are, 1. *Bodan*, a Town of Trade on the *Danubius*, memorable for the Marts or Fairs which are here held annually. 2. *Zarnovia*, 3. *Covin*, 4. *Novebrade*, 5. *Severin*, not far from which, betwixt it and *Bucaresta*, a Town of *Valachia*, are the remainders of *Trayan's* Bridge before mentioned. 6. *Colambes*, and 7. *Columbella*; of which little memorable.

These *Rascians*, as before is said, were a Tribe of *Slaves*, settled in this Country, at the time of their first spreading in the East, and here continuing ever since in possession of it. Governed at first by their own Princes, whom by a name borrowed from the *Grecians*, they called their *Despots*; that being once the Title of the Heir apparent or designed Successor of the Eastern Empire, as *Cesar* had been formerly in the Empire of *Rome*, and *Moscow* in the same sense in the Realm of *France*, to signify the eldest Brother (if Heir apparent to the Crown) of the King in being. But as the following Emperors did assist in Titles, so that of *Despot* fell from one step to another, till given at last unto the Governors of Provinces, as the *Despot* of *Epirus*, *Peloponnesus*, &c. and in the *cees*, as the *Despot* of *Rascia*, *Serbia*, &c. and was assumed by the several Princes of *Rascia*, *Serbia*, and *Bulgaria*. How this Estate became united unto *Serbia*, I am yet to seek: but sure I am, it was united in the person of *George* *Despot* of *Serbia*, and as a part of his Estate surprized by *Amurat* the second, who bestowed his Success therein, (in a Speech made by his Soldiers at the Siege of *Belgrade*) notwithstanding that he had to strive with Hunger, Thirst, Labour, and Desperation. Nor

have I found at what time or under whose Conduct they pulled over *Danubius*, and these possessed themselves of *Chrysiacum*, and some other Towns and Territories on that side of the River, which they still retain, either surrounded by the *Servians*, or at least intermingled with them; which makes some Writers of opinion that the *Rascians* and the *Servians* are but one and the same People under divers names: to which conjecture their being subject to the same Prince gave some farther ground. But whenever they pulled over, most probable it is, that, proving either troublesome Neighbours, or unwelcome Guests, they gave occasion to the *Despots* of *Serbia* to make War upon them, to carry the War over unto this; that side of the River, to carry the War over unto this; till in the end the whole Country was made subject to them. Added to *Serbia*, they fell together with it into the power of the *Turks*, as was said before. But being more impatient of the Yoke than the *Servians* were, they did the *Turks* much mischief many times, as they came in their way never to much not so effectually as when *Mahomet* the III. warred against the *Hungarians*; at what time they frequently distressed his Armies, by cutting off his men, and intercepting the provisions of Arms and Victuals intended for the great Army of *Sinan Bassa*. After which at the time when *Sigismund* Prince of *Transylvania* had won so many noble Victories against the *Turks*, 10000 of these *Rascians*, casting off that Yoke, offered themselves unto his Service. These are the only memorable Actions which are told us of them, though this last was only the attempt of some private Adventures, the whole Nation still continuing in Obedience, as before they did. But following (as they did) the Fortunes of *Serbia*, and having a Concernment on that side of the Water, we shall there say something farther of them.

Thus have we seen when and by what means the whole Province of *Old Dacia* became in part subject, and in part tributary to the *Turks*. It is now time to pass over the *Danubius*, and look upon the other part of this Province, called *Dacia Nova*, or *New Dacia*; containing after our account four Provinces of the *Roman* Empire, that is to say, both *Mysia*, *Scythia*, and *Dardania*, besides the two *Dacia's*, *Mediterranea* and *Ripensis*, interjected betwixt the two *Mysia's*, as before is said: all now reduced only unto two of the *Turkish* Provinces, namely the Counties of *Serbia*, and *Bulgaria*.

#### S. S E R V I A.

**S E R V I A** is bounded on the East with *Bulgaria*, on the West with *Bosnia*, and some part of the Lower *Hungary*, on the North with the *Danubius*, by which it is parted from *Rascia* and some part of *Valachia*, on the South with *Albania*, and part of *Macedon*. It containeth all *Mysia Superior*, and a great part of *Dardania*; and took this new name from the *Serbs*, or *Sorabi*, a *Slavonian* People, of whom more hereafter.

This Country, with the neighbouring *Rascia* and the modern *Slavonia*, was first converted to the Faith by the preaching of *Cyril* and *Methodius*, formerly remembered, between the years 860 and 890. of both which there is reserved some special Monuments. For *Methodius*, having obtained both of the Patriarch of *Constantinople* and the Pope of *Rome*, that the Nations by them converted might celebrate all Divine Offices in their natural Language, translated the whole Bible into the *Slavonian* Tongue, which still they have among them in high esteem. And *Cyril* is said to have devised the *Serbian* Character, not used in this Country only, (though here originally) but also in *Rascia*, *Bulgaria*, *Bosnia*, *Moldavia*, and most parts of *Russia*: which Character, from this

*Cyril*, (or *Chirill*, as they pronounce it) is still called *Chirilizze*.

The Country was very rich and fruitful before the Conquest of it by the *Turks*, well stored with Mines of Gold and Silver, especially about *Zerbenie*, a strong Town hereof. The people are rude and gross, and much given to Wine, false of their Promises, and that upon slight occasions, so that there is but little trust to be laid upon them.

Chief Rivers of this Country, are, 1. *Colubra*, and 2. *Lina*, falling into the *Savus*. 3. *Ibar*, falling into the 4. *Morava*; as that into the *Danubius* at *Chrysiacum*, or *Chrysovetia*, a strong Town of the *Rascians*. Principal Towns hereof, 1. *Nisja*, the *Nessum*, as I take it of *Ptolemy*, by whom it is said to be a City of the *Dardanians*; now the Metropolis of this Country, and the Key thereof: besieged and taken by *Amurat*, the third King of the *Turks*. Anno 1367. 2. *Vidina*, by the *Turks* called *Kiravon*, taken by *Ferisbeg*, in the beginning of *Bajazet* the first, and ever since the Seat of a *Turkish* *Sansack* under the Beglerbeg of *Bassa* of *Temejar*. 3. *Cratova*, and 4. *Zerbenie*, rich in Silver Mines; a great temptation to the *Turks* to invade this Country. 5. *Simandria*, or *Senderovia*, by some called *Spenderebe*, by the *Hungarians* *Zenderin*, by the *Turks* *Semender*; situate on the *Danubius* not far from *Belgrade*, and taken by *Amurat* the II. Anno 1438. since governed by a *Turkish* *Sansack* under the Beglerbeg of *Buda*. 6. *Novograd*, in the Borders hereof, fortified with an impregnable Castle. 7. *Stoniburg* (in *Latine* *Stoniburgadum*) the ordinary Seat of the *Despots*. 8. *Prislen*, built by *Alercaer* to be the Birth-place of the Emperor *Justinian*, most like to be *Tamresium* a City of the *Dardanians*, mentioned by *Procopius*, who maketh it the Birth-place of that Emperor, by whom it was repaired and fortified with four great Towers, thence called *Tetracyprus*. But others (more probably) make him to be born at *Laebida*, a Town of *Bulgaria*, of which more hereafter. 9. *Scupi*, by *Ptolemy* called *Scupi*. And 10. *Ulpianum*, first built by *Trayan*, whose forename was *Ulpian*; afterwards re-edified by the said *Justinian*, and called *Secunda Justiniana*, (*Justiniana Prima*, being in *Bulgaria*): now a poor Village called *Pyrithi*, as *Lazius*, or *Czanadre*, as *Marius Niger* is of opinion. 11. *Rhetivaria*, by *Ptolemy*, for distinction sake, called *Rhetivaria Mysorum*, then the chief City of the *Masians*, of which now no Ruins are remaining. 12. *Raveniczen*, the *Fendensis* of *Ptolemy*, but not else observable.

Besides these Towns and many other of less note which properly belong to this Province of *Serbia*, the *Rascians* also hold some Towns on this side of *Danubius*, the chief whereof is *Chrysiacum*, or *Chrysovetia*, an old Town, almost wholly ruined, till repaired and fortified by the *Turks*. Anno 1449, who marking the convenient situation of it on the Banks of *Danubius*, near to the Fall or Influx of the River *Morava*, and how commodiously it stood both to command and to annoy the rest of this Country, and for transporting of their Forces to the other side of that great River, made it their first work to possess themselves of it, and have held it ever since with a very strong Garrison. Such other Towns as the *Rascians* have on this side of the River, or of less note, are looked on by our Author but as Towns of *Serbia*, (by the *Despots* whereof they were long since conquered) where before we had them.

The old Inhabitants of this Country, such as are most considerable in the story of it, were the *Bastarnae*, the *Dardani*, and the *Masi*: the *Tricornejii* and *Picennjii*, spoken of by *Ptolemy*, being either Branches of the *Masi*, or else an obscure People not worth the looking after. Of these the *Dardanians* were most ancient, inhabi-

inhabiting near Mount *Hemus*, on the Borders of Macedonia, a barbarous People, and perpetual Enemies of that Crown, most mischievous in their Attempts and Designs against it in the declining state thereof, making great and frequent inroads into that wealthy Country, with the spoils whereof they enriched themselves. Insumuch that *Philip* the Father of *Perseus*, finding no other likely means to be rid of that Trouble, negotiated with the *Bastarnæ*, a strong and hardy Nation that dwelt beyond the *Danubius*, to abandon their own Dwellings, and come to him with their Wives and Children; promising to assist them in rooting out the *Dardaniæ*, and give them possession of their Country. But *Philip* dying as the *Bastarnæ* were in their March through *Thrace*, and no care taken by his Son to pursue the Business, they returned all home again, except 30000, which pierced into *Dardania*, and made their own Fortunes as they could. This practice, as it gave matter of Quarrel to the *Romans* against the *Macedonians*; so it occasioned *Perseus*, the Son of *Philip*, to make use of these *Bastarnæ* against the *Romans*, at whose request 10000 Horse and as many foot passed over the *Danow*, under the Conduct of *Claudius*, a King amongst them. But finding that *Perseus* was too frail-laced to part with Money for their pay, they returned again, foraging the Country as they passed. But whether they passed over that River, or mingled themselves with the rest of their Nation, who upon *Philip's* invitation had before come over, that I do not find. However, coming by this means acquainted with the sweets of this Country, divers of them came over hither in the following times, incorporating with the *Dardaniæ*, or bordering near them; insumuch as *Tacitus* for the most part joins them both together, either as the same, or neighbouring Nations first vanquished and added to the *Roman* Empire by *C. Curio Scribonius*, immediately upon the end of the Civil Wars raised by *Spartacus* and the Fencers, or *Gladiatores*, the *Myrsini*, or the *Mæsi*, being broken at the same time also, Anno U. C. 681. As for the *Mæsi*, being the last and greatest of these Nations, they were most probably a Colony of the *Myrsini* of the lesser *Asia*, anciently called *Myrsi*, and the Country *Myrsia*, as those *Asians* were, and as those *Europeans* are by the Greek Writers generally, and by *Florus* and some others amongst the *Latines*, though after, for distinction sake, *Tacitus*, *Pliny*, *Virgil*, and generally most *Latine* Authors, give them the name of *Mæsi*. A fierce and savage People they were held to be, *Barbari barbarorum*, as my Author calleth them, more barbarous than commonly the *Barbarians* were: but, for all that, subdued by *M. Licinius Crassus* in the time of *Augustus Cæsar*, who overcame them in two Battels, and after vanquished the *Bastarnæ*, and their King *Deldo*, whom he killed in fight, the Country being reckoned after that as a *Roman* Province. It continued in this estate till the Fall of the Eastern Empire, when it was subjected by the *Sclavi* or *Sarmatians* of Europe; and in the division of the Spoil fell unto the *Sorabi*, a *Scythian* People, contractedly called *Sorbi*; and at last *Serbi*, *Servii*, and the Country *Servia*. It was reduced again to the Obedience of the Eastern Emperours by *Basilius Porphyrogenetus*, Anno Ch. 1000, or thereabouts; but more absolutely conquered by *John* and *Manuel Comnenus*, two of his Successors: but so as they were suffered to live under their own Princes, whom they called *Despots*, Homagers to the Empire, and depending on it. Inriched with the Conquest and addition of *Rascia*, (the certain time whereof I have no where found) they were first set on by the *Turks* in the time of *Lazarus* the Despot, from whom *Amurath* the first took the Town of *Nissa*, being the chief of all this Country; provoked

thereto by the great Forces which the *Servian* and *Bulgarian* Despots had raised against him for the Siege of *Adrianople*. And though *Lazarus*, terrified with this Loss, made his Peace with *Amurath*: yet after he brake out again into open War, in which he was evermore slain in the Plains of *Cassova*, whereof more anon. To *Lazarus* succeeded *Stephen*, who quietly enjoyed his Dominions here; the *Turks* being in the mean time embroiled in War amongst themselves by the Sons of *Bajazet*. But that difference being once composed, and *Mahomet* absolutely settled on his Father's Throne, the *Turks* began again to pursue this Quarrel: which *George* the Son of *Stephen* compounded with *Amurath* the second, Son of *Mahomet*, paying the *Turks* a yearly Tribute, and giving him his Daughter *Mary* for a Wife or Concubine. But this Alliance did not so well unite their Affections, (though *George* did many ill Offices in regard thereof to his Christian Neighbours) nor so well settle his Estate, but that *Amurath* in fine dispossessed him first of *Rascia*, and afterwards of *Servia* also, for letting *Hunades* escape, whom he had in his power. And though *Amurath* was necessitated to restore *Servia* again, upon the Peace made with *Wladislaus* the King of *Hungary*, yet *Mahomet* the Great, on the death of *George*, soon possessed himself of it. For *Lazarus*, the youngest of *George's* Sons, having deprived *Stephen* and *George's* elder Brethren (whose eyes *Amurath* had before put out, to make them incapable of the Government) of the Principality, compelled them to seek to *Mahomet* for Aid. But dying whilst these matters were in agitation, his Widow put her self and her three Sons, *Peter*, *John*, and *Martin*, under the Protection of the *Hungarians*; and by that means, but with much trouble and many difficulties (the blind Brethren still soliciting the *Turks* against her) held the State a while, till the people, finding no assurance in that kind of Government, and weary of the daily Harms they received from the *Turks*, yielded themselves absolutely to the Power of *Mahomet*, about the year 1460, continuing ever since a Province of the *Turkish* Empire.

## 6. B U L G A R I A.

**B** U L G A R I A is bounded on the East with the *Euxine* Sea, on the West with *Servia*, on the North with the River *Danow*, which is here in the East part called *Ister*, on the South with *Thrace*, called formerly by the name of *Myrsia Inferior*, as lying lower than the other on the course of that River; as *Servia*, lying up the Water, was called *Myrsia Superior*. Afterwards it was reckoned of as a part of *Dacia*, and in that notation was the Birth-place of *Galerius*, one of the *Cæsars* in the Empire of *Diocletian*, born in this Country near the Borders of *Thrace*, not far from the City *Sardica*; who theretore, in the Martyrologies of the middle Times, was called by the name of *Dacianus*. Finally, it took this name from the *Bulgars*, a *Scythian* People, who in the year 566, possessed themselves of it.

The Country for the most part is full of sharp and rugged Hills, Branches of the great Mountain *Hemus*, which divide it from *Thrace*, and spread themselves over all this Province, insumuch that even the Mid-lands of it are rough and stony; and though the lower parts have some Plains and Valleys, yet are they generally full of Woods and Defarts; the most unpleasant and least peopled part of both the *Dacia's*. The Inhabitants hereof, in some conformity to the Country, are patient of all Toil and Labour, and not easily tired; but nothing is more troublesome than their Conversation: more full of Courage than of Valour, their Courage not proceeding by rules

rules of Reason, but issuing only out of Brutishness, or a natural Ferocity.

They first received the Christian Faith towards the latter end of *Justinian* the 2. who died in the year 713, *Trebellian* being then their Prince; afterwards by the persuasion of *Leo* the 4. surnamed *Porphyrogenetus*, about the year 789. But those Conversers being but partial and for private ends, they relapsed shortly after to their former Gentilism; not totally gained unto the Gospel till the Empire of *Michael* and *Theodora*, in the year of Grace 860. Subject since that unto the Jurisdiction of the Patriarch of *Constantinople*; but not without great opposition of the Popes of *Rome*, who laid a Claim unto them.

Places of most note in it are, 1. *Axiom*, or *Axiopolis*, on the Banks of *Danubius*, which from this Town begins to take the name of *Ister*. It is now called *Colomanichof*, of no great fame otherwise. 2. *Dinogetia*, by *Antonine* called *Dumetia*, now *Drimago*, situate also on the *Ister*, opposite to the Influx of *Hierissus*, and the Town of *Galatz*, 3. *Mezimoria*, situate on the *Encine*, and still retaining the old name; in *Strabo*, by some error of the Transcribers, called *Amberia*. 4. *Marcianopolis*, on the *Ister* or *Danubius* also, built by *Trajan* in honour of *Marcia* his Sister, whence it had the name: in vain besieged by the *Goths* at their first Irruptions on this Country; and afterwards much mentioned in the Stories of that warlike People, for many Bickerings and some great Battels they had near it with the Emperour *Claudius*, in one of which they were overthrown by him with a mighty Slaughter. 5. *Nicopolis*, (by the *Turks* called *Nigebol*) built by the same *Trajan* on the *Danow* at the Fall of the River *farve*, at his return from the Conquest of *Dacia*, whence was the occasion of the Name; the word *Nicopolis* signifying the City of Victory; sufficiently memorable for the Founder of it, more for the many great Battels fought near unto it, whereof two were principal. The first, that of *Siegmund* the Emperour and King of *Hungary*, besieging it with an Army of 130000 Christians in the time of *Bajazet* the first; whose Father *Amurath* had taken it from the King of *Bulgaria*: the issue of which Siege was this, that *Bajazet* coming to raise the Siege obtained the Victory, with the loss of 60000 Christians; the Army of the Christians being wholly routed, 20000 slain, all the rest made taken Prisoners, and the young Emperour forced to fly by Sea to *Thrace*, thence unto *Constantinople*, afterwards to *Rhodes*, and at last, after 18 months absence, to his Realm of *Hungary*. The other (as it were in revenge of this) was fought between *Michael* Vaivod of *Valachia*, and the Forces of *Mahomet* the third, over whom the Vaivod got a remarkable Victory, and, as the Fruits thereof, sacked the City it self, carrying thence great Spoil and Booty, and infinite multitudes of People; with some whereof he made up his Army, sending the rest to inhabit and manure the void and desart places of his own Dominions. 6. *Sopota*, called *Tibserim* in the time of *Ptolemy*, repaired by the Emperour *Justinian*, who gave it this name, in a famous and magnificent Temple founded and dedicated by him unto *S. Sophia*. The ordinary Residence in these late times of a *Turkish* Beglerbeg, who hath the chief Command of Europe under the Grand Seigneur. Once taken by *Hunades*, and by him at the command of *Placidius* King of *Hungary*, burnt to the ground; but after a while repaired, and more strongly fortified than it had been formerly. 7. *Varna*, anciently called *Dinopolis*, situate on the *Encine* Sea, near the Borders of *Thrace*; remarkable for the great Defeat there given the Christians, the first Flight of *Hunades* from thence of the *Turks*, and the death of *Placidius* King of *Hungary*, spoken of before. 8. *Siumium*,

9. *Percebius*, 10. *Calacrium*, 11. *Galatz*, & 12. *Macropolis*, all taken by the *Hungarians* in their way to *Varna*, and lost again upon the issue of that Battel. 13. *Silistria*, at this time the chief City hereof, and the ordinary Abode of a *Turkish* *Bey*: delivered to *Amurath* the first by *Salmes*, Prince or King of *Bulgaria*, out of a vain hope to save thereby the rest of his Country. 14. *Parasclabos*, or *Perislabos*, the ancient Seat of the Kings of *Bulgaria*, till the taking of it by *John Zimisce* Emperour of *Constantinople*, who caused it to be called *Iobannopolis*: but it soon lost that new Name, and is now an ordinary Village called *Peretelad*. 15. *Ternova*, the usual Seat or Residence of the later Princes of this Country at the Conquest of it by the *Turks*. 16. *Badina*, once of great importance, and the chief of this Country; but being taken by *Hunades* in the course of his Victories, it was by him burnt down to the ground, as having been the cause of much War to the Christians there: supposed to be built in or near the place where once stood the old City of *Oescus*, the principal Town of the *Triballi*, called therefore *Oescus Triballorum*, though some will have that City to be now called *Elida*. 17. *Venzina*, a Town of great strength, and one of the first pieces taken by the *Turks*. 18. *Cassova*, fatal to the Christians, who in the Plains here had two main Defeats. The first by *Amurath* the first, who here discomfited *Lazarus* the Despot of *Servia*, and the greatest Army that the Christians ever raised against the *Turks*; *Lazarus* himself being slain in the Fight, and *Amurath* himself shortly after the Battel flabbed in the Belly by one *Miles Cobelitz*, a wounded and head-sear Soldier, as he was taking a view of the dead Bodies which lay there in heaps. The last by *Amurath* the second to the famous *Hunades*, whom he here discomfited after a cruel Fight continuing three days together; in which were slain 17000 Christians, and amongst them the greatest part of the *Hungarian* Nobility; *Hunades* put again to flight, and forced to some Extremities to preserve his life; he Turkey by this great Victory with the loss of 40000 men, as themselves confessed. The place in which these Fights were fought, called the Plains of *Cassova*, extendeth 20 miles in length and 5 miles in breadth, incomparable round with pleasant Mountains, in the form of an Amphitheatre; as if it were designed by Nature for a Stage of action. 19. *Dorostorum*, by some of the Ancients called *Roudostol*, the Seat in *Ptolemy's* time of the First Legion called *Italica*; afterwards one of the chief Towns which the *Kosses* or *Russians* had in this Country: from whom it was taken by *John Zimisce* the Eastern Emperour, decaying after that time by little and little, and now wholly ruinant. 20. *Achrida*, the Birth place of *Justinian*, by whom it was beautified and enlarged, and called *Justiniana Prima*; who, raising the Diocese of *Dacia* into a Prefecture, placed here a Primate for the Affairs of the Church, which honour it doth still retain; the Bishop hereof being the Primate of all *Dacia*, and a *Profectus Prætor* for Affairs of State. But he being dead, the Town returned to its old name, now called *Ovrida*, contracted by *William of Tyre* to *Acre*; by the *Turks* called *Ginsimind*: a distinct Principate of it itself in the time of *Amurath* the first, and by him made tributary at his first War with this Country.

And here it is to be observed, that those parts of this Country which lie next to the *Euxine* Sea had anciently the name of *Pontus*, as had also some parts of *Asia minor* which bordered on the same Sea also; and that the City of *Tomis*, as *Ptolemy*, or *Tomas*, as *Pliny* call it, to which *Ovid* was banished by *Augustus Cæsar*, was a City of this *European* *Pontus*, and not of the *Asian*, as hath been commonly conceived. For *Tomi* is by *Ptolemy* placed amongst the Cities of *Mæsia* in



ferior, and by *Ovid* on the West or left side of the *Excuse*, and not upon the South thereof, as appeareth by these Lines of his:

*Cum Maris Euxini positas ad Leva Tomitas  
Quæere me læsi Principis ira jubeo.*

That is to say;  
*My wronged Prince's Wrath commands me 'vide  
At Tomos, on the Euxine's Western side.*

The place is at this day called *Tomis*, according to *Cælius Calpurnius*: but others would have it to be the same which is now named *Novia*, in the same Track alway, not far from which is said to be a Lake called to this day *Ovidow Jezococor*, the Lake of *Ovid*. For what cause it was hither banished is not yet agreed on. Some say it was for the unlawful Pleasures which he enjoyed with *Julia* the Emperours Daughter, whom he celebrates in his *Amorum* under the borrowed name of *Corinna*. Others imagine that he had seen *Augustus* himself ungenerally using the company of the same *Julia*, his Daughter, for which the offended Prince exiled him; and that he alludeth *videtur* unto in his Book of *Tristibus*, saying, *Quæ aliqd videretur nociva lumen feci?* &c. A Crime of which I doubt not that noble Emperour to be in any way guilty. But certain it is, that whatsoever was the true reason of it, that certain it is, that whatsover was the writing of those lascivious and inflammatory Books of *Arte amandi*, tending to the Debauchment of Youth and Corruption of Manners, which he in divers places of his Works acknowledgeth for the cause thereof.

But to return unto the business of this Country. The ancient Inhabitants hereof were towards the East the *Thracians*, dwelling near the Mouth or Fall of the River *Peneus* into the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*; the *Pæni*, inhabiting on the very Mouth of it; and in a little Island opposite thereto, called also *Ægeæ*, now *Pezina*, the *Cribæi*, *Pænesi* and *Dumæsi*, the Western parts being wholly taken up by the *Triballi*, the most potent Nation of them all, who alone had the happiness to vanquish Philip King of the *Macedonians*. For Philip having, or pretending, a Quarrel against *Macedæus* a King of the *Sarmatians*, entered his Country, overthrew him in a few days, carried with him great Booties, and among other things 20000 Mares for Breed, which he took in the Battle; in being the Custom of the *Scythians* and *Sarmatians* to use Mares only in their Wars, because their not stopping in the midst of a Race to piss could be no impediment to them in their Flight. In his return homeward these *Triballi* deny him passage through their Country, unless they might partake of the Spoils. This being denied, they fall from words to blows, and at last to a pitched Field. In which Fight Philip was slain with an Arrow, which, passing through his thigh, nailed him to his Saddle; his Horse being galled with the Wound, falling down to the ground. Which the frighted *Macedonians* seeing, and supposing him dead, fled out of the Field, leaving all their spoils to the *Triballi*, as if they had been sent out only to be their Receivers. So true an Observation is it, that the very Life-blood of an Army runs chiefly in their veins of the General or supreme Commander. Overtopped after this by the *Mæsi*, who mingled with them, they were first broken by the *Romans* under the Conduct of *G. Corio Scriverinus*, spoken of before, the absolute Conqueror of them and the rest of the *Mæsi* being reserved for the times of *Augustus Cæsar*. By him, or his Successors, the whole Country of the *Mæsi* being cast into two Provinces, this part of it had the name of *Mæsia inferior*, that, lying Westward up the Water, being called *Mæsia superior*, for distinction sake. By the Emperour *Archelaus*, the *Dacians* being forced from the other side of the *Danow* by the Barbarous Nations, or by him prudently removed to avoid their

Fury, were planted here betwixt both the *Mæsia*, divided afterwards into two Provinces taken out of the other, *Mædætanica*, and *Ripensis*; which, with the help of the higher *Mæsia*, *Dardania*, *Prevalitana*, and part of *Macedonia Salutaris*, made up the whole Diocese of *Dacia*, as before was said. The residue hereof, now passing under the name of *Bulgaria*, was afterwards divided into two Provinces also; another Province being taken out of the East parts of the lower *Mæsia*, lying betwixt the River *Phanias* and the most Northern Branch of the *Ister*, which they called *Scythia*, because the *Arætes*, a *Scythian* People, did once possess it; the *Romans* afterwards affecting to be thought the Conquerors of that unconquerable Nation. Successively by the *Goths* and *Huns* was this Country taken from the *Romans*: recovered again in or before the time of *Justinian*, who had here his Officers which were subordinate to the Vicar or Lieutenant of *Thrace*, to which Diocese they properly and of right belonged.

But long they held not in that State; the *Slavonians* first, and after the *Bulgarians*, being Masters of them. Of the first of these enough hath been said elsewhere. The latter being a *Scythian* People, inhabiting on the Banks of the River *Volga*, were at first called *Vulgari*, afterwards *Bulgari*: though some conceive they had the name of the *Bulgarians* from *Bulgar*, the chief Town of their Nation; but both uncertain. In the time of the Emperour *Anastasius* they made their first Sally into the Provinces of the Empire, foraging *Thyrricus* and *Thrace*; afterward, in the Reign of *Heraclius*, they were hired by *Cisios* the *Persian* (with many other Barbarous Nations) to besiege *Constantinople*. In the Reign of *Constantine* surnamed *Pogonatus*, conquering or calling out the *Slaves*, they planted themselves in these Countries; compelling the Emperour to compound with them for a sum of money, from making any farther Inroad into his Dominions. From this time forward we find their Princes called by the name of Kings of the *Bulgarians*: the first of which after their settling in these parts was *Trebellius*, or *Trebellus*, as some call him, the fifth Christian Prince of the *Bulgarians*, by whom *Justinian* the Second was first restored unto the Empire, of which he had been ousted by *Asparius*; and afterwards well beaten by them, and forced to fly unto *Constantinople*, on some Breach between them. Growing into good terms with the Eastern Emperours, they aided them against the *Saracens*, then besieging the Imperial City; of whom they slew 20000 as they were foraging the Country: and in the time of *Leo* the fourth, called *Porphyrogenetus*, they became Homagers to the Emperour, whose perswasion *Teleucus* King of the *Bulgarians* received the Sacrament of Baptism; and thereupon was honoured by him with a Wife of the Imperial Family, and the honourable Title of a *Patrician*. After this time the Kings hereof had many Privileges indulged them by the *Constantinopolitans*, not usually communicated unto other Princes, viz. their Crown of Gold, their Tiara or Cap of Silk, and their red Shoes, for their Regal (which were also the Imperial) Ornaments. To these Kings also, and to those only, did the *Greek* Emperours allow the Title of *Basileus*, as being merely Imperial. Other Kings they called *Patriarches* from the *Latine* word *Reges*. Inasmuch that when *Basilius Macedo* had received Letters from Pope *Adrian* the second, wherein *Lewis* the Second the Western Emperour was called *Basileus*, he raised out that Imperial Attribute, and dispatched an Embassie to *Lewis*, wherein he challenged it as his own peculiar Epithet. Some have Quarrelled after falling out, *Cyrinus* the *Bulgarian* King, in the time of *Nicephorus*, Successor to the Emperour *Irenæus*, invaded *Thrace*; and, taking the City of *Sardica*, killed that Emperour in his Tent, and worsted *Michael* (who

(who succeeded) in the open Field; *Mesembria*, a principal City of this Country, being taken and ransacked by him. But *Bogor*, of another temper, not only did receive the Sacrament of Baptism, which many of his Predecessors had intermitted, but brought his Subjects (who rebelled on the Change of Religion, and thereupon were fought with and vanquished by him) to the same Faith also: gratified for that cause by *Theodora* the Emperess with some large Accession unto his Estate. After long Wars betwixt the *Bulgarians* and the following Emperours, the Fortune of the *Constantinopolitan* did at last prevail: *Sammel* King of the *Bulgarians* being overthrown, 15000 of his Souldiers taken and deprived of fight, and the Country conquered by *Basilius* the second, surnamed *Porphyrogenetus*, Anno 1015, from that time Tributary to the Empire; to which they did good service in the time of *Constantinus Ducas*, using their Help against the *Uzi*, a new Swarm of *Scythians*, passing over the *Ister* with an Army of 60000 fighting men, and wasting *Macedon* and *Greece*. The like did *Ighin*, another of the Kings thereof, aiding the *Greeks* against the *Laines*, whom they overthrew with a great Slaughtre, *Baldwin* the Emperour of the *Laines* in *Constantinople* being taken Prisoner, sent in Bonds to *Ternova*, and there cruelly murdered, An. 1206. Nor were they wanting to assist them against the *Turks*, when they grew dangerous to that Empire by the taking of *Adrianople*: for the Recovery whereof they raised a great and puissant Army, unfortunately discom-

fitted by the Forces of *Amurat* the first, Anno 1369. Provoked with which Invasion, *Amurat*, having settled his Affairs in *Asia*, with an Army of 60000 falleth into *Bulgaria*; takes divers Places of importance, and prevailed so far, that *Safmus* the last Prince hereof, wrapping his Winding-sheet about him, to shew that he had deserved Death, prostrates himself most abjectly at the Tyrant's feet, offering to put *Silifria* (his strongest City) into his possession. For net performance of which Offer, his Country again invaded, and most part of it taken from him, he being permitted to enjoy the rest upon hard Conditions, as Vassal and Tributary to the *Turk*. But *Bajazet*, *Amurat*'s Successor, not content herewith, picked a Quarrel with him, and made an absolute Conquest of *Bulgaria*, converting it into a Province of the *Turkish* Empire, An. 1396. In which state it hath ever since continued, governed by three *Turkish* *Sanzacks* under the Beglerbeg of *Greece*: the *Sanzacks* residing at *Nicopolis*, *Silifria*, and *Sophia*, in which last the Beglerbeg himself doth sometimes reside.

There are in *DACIA*.

Archbishops.

Bishops.

And so much for *DACIA*.

## Mount Hæmus.

Before we enter into *Greece*, we must cross *MOUNT HÆMUS*, a Ridge of Hills extending from the *Euxine* Sea to the *Adriatick*, and thereby separating *Greece* both from *Dacia* and *Slavonia*. They are so high and Subject to the Weather, that *Stratonicus*, an old *Grecian*, did use to say, that eight months of the Year it was always cold, for the other four, Winter. It was affirmed by some of the ancient Writers, that from one of the highest Heads hereof as well the *Adriatick* as the *Euxine* might have been discerned: the truth of which report, upon very good reason, hath been called in question. But out of doubt, from some one Top or Summit of it there is so full a Prospect into *Thrace* and *Macedon*, that from hence *Perseus* taking a survey of the Site of these Countries, *pessis per abrupta Captris*, &c. as the Story hath it, was able to make choice of the fittest places for Forts and Castles, whereby to lock up all the passages against his enemies the *Romans*. In the parts bordering upon *Thrace* it is so rough and craggy, that it is not to be passed but at two places only. Whereof one was made by the Emperour *Trajan*, where is yet to be seen a mighty strong Gate built of great square Stone, by which the Passage that way was either opened or shut at the pleasure of them who had the keeping of the same, with a small Force exceeding easily defended against puissant Armies. The other, being situate near a little River by the *Bulgarians* called *Saltina*, not altogether so straight and narrow as the other, but rising high, and full of broken Rocks and dangerous Precipices, is alike impassable; defensible at ease, and without any great danger; as

was experimentally found by the famous *Hmidaeus*, when he attempted (but in vain) to have led his Forces this way for the Siege of *Adrianople*. Those parts hereof which border upon *Macedonia*, though somewhat opener, are not much easier of access; the Passages through the broken Rocks and Precipices being very difficult, and not easily mastered: inasmuch that when *Perseus*, the last King of *Macedon*, had fortified the Streights hereof against the *Romans*, *non religiosis adiis nisi à Cælo venientibus videbatur*, it was conceived (saith *Florus*) that there was no passage left for any Forces, unless they fell immediately from the Heavens themselves.

This great and rocky Chain of Hills, as they were vehemently exposed to Wind and Weather, so were they destitute of those Commodities which were either comfortable, or indeed merely necessary to the Life of man: which made the Passage over them in a manner impossible unto any Armies, but what were very patient both of Cold and Hunger. Yet were they not left desolate and void of People, especially in these sides hereof which lay next to *Greece*; but most especially in those parts which bordered or confined on *Thrace*: where the Spurs and Branches of the Hills spreading far and wide and taking up a great part of the Country, occasioned the *Romans*, in the Division of the Diocese of *Thrace* into several Provinces, to call that part or Province of it which lay next to *Mæsia* by the name of *Hæmimontus*, or *Hæmimontana*. The principal Towns whereof were *Adrianople*, *Endana*, and *Archelais*: the principal Governour thereof being a *Roman* President. Where, by the way, we may take notice of an Error in the common Impressions





only, and perhaps not those. It took beginning in the person of *Agialus*, within 150 years after the Deluge, and 200 years before the death of *Noah*, continuing in a Race of Princes who swayed the Affairs of *Peloponnesus*, till overtopped by the growth and good fortune of the Kings of *Argos*. The names of whom, by reason of the undoubted Antiquity of this Kingdom, I shall here subjoin in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Kings of *SYCION*.

A.M.

A.M.

1860	1. <i>Egialus</i> .	2421	14. <i>Marathon</i> .
1910	2. <i>Europs</i> .	2441	15. <i>Echireus</i> .
1950	3. <i>Telchin</i> .	2456	16. <i>Corax</i> .
1980	4. <i>Apis</i> .	2476	17. <i>Epopeus</i> .
2004	5. <i>Telxon</i> .	2561	18. <i>Laomedon</i> .
2055	6. <i>Egirus</i> .	2601	19. <i>Sicyon</i> .
2089	7. <i>Eurymachus</i> .	2646	20. <i>Phylus</i> .
2134	8. <i>Enicippus</i> .	2686	21. <i>Tausichus</i> .
2187	9. <i>Messapus</i> .	2728	22. <i>Phocus</i> .
2234	10. <i>Peatus</i> .	2736	23. <i>Adrastus</i> .
2280	11. <i>Pleummas</i> .	2740	24. <i>Polypheides</i> .
2328	12. <i>Orthobus</i> .	2741	25. <i>Pelagus</i> .
2391	13. <i>Marathon</i> .	2791	26. <i>Zenippus</i> .

the last King of *Sicyon*. After whose death, *A.M.* 2812, the Estate hereof was governed by the Priests of *Apollo*, the Estate hereof was after another; the first five, only years apiece, *Amphytion*, who was the sixth, continuing 9 years in the Regency, and *Charidemus*, the last of them, ruling 8 years. After whose death, or departure, I know not which, *A.M.* 2844, the *Heracleids*, who about that time returned into *Peloponnesus*, made themselves Masters of this Country; there being no Kings of *Sicyon* from this time forwards.

Of these Kings the most memorable were *Egialus* and *Apis*, the first and fourth, from whom this *Peninsula* had the names of *Apia* and *Agiala*; *Egirus*, the 6 giving name and being to the City *Agira* (spoken of before; *Marathon*, the 13, of whom perhaps the famous Fields of *Marathon* (in the other *Achaia*) took denomination; *Epopeus*, the 17, who founded a Temple to *Minerva*, and therein placed his own Monument or Trophies, *Sicyon*, the 19, the Founder of the City *Sicyon*, or at least the Repairer and Enlarger of it, *Pelagus*, the 25, from whom perhaps the *Gracians* might be called *Pelagi*, (if not known formerly by that name. After this time I find no man of note who here swayed in *Sicyon*, till the time of *Aratus*, the special Ornament of this Town, (of which a Native) and one of the principal Establishers of the *Achaean Commonwealth* against the *Spartans* and *Maccedonians*, of which more hereafter in the general History of *Peloponnesus*.

2. The Country of *ELIS* hath on the East *Arcadia*, on the West the *Ionian Sea*, on the North *Acchia propria*, on the South *Messina*. The chief Cities are, 1. *Elis*, which gives name to the whole Province. So called from *Elipha* the Son of *Jacan*, and Grandchild of *Japhet*, who fix himself in these parts of this Country, where he built this City, calling it by his own name, as his posterity in honour of him did the Isles adjoining mentioned in the Prophet *Ezekiel* by the City runneth the River *Aphis*, of which we have spoken in *Sicilia*; and in this City reigned the King *Ancas*, the clearing of whose Stable is accounted one of the Wonders of the *Lovers* performed by *Hercules*. 2. *Olympia*, famous for the Statue of *Jupiter Olympius*, one of

the seven Wonders, being in height 60 Cubits, composed by that excellent Workman *Phidias* of Gold and Ivory. In honour of this *Jupiter* were the *Olympic Games* instituted by *Hercules*, and celebrated on the Plains of this City, *A.M.* 2575. The Exercises in them were for the most part bodily, as running in Chariots, Running on Foot, Wrestling, Fighting with the *Whorlits*, and the like. But so that there repaired thither also Orators, Poets, and Musicians, and all that thought themselves excellent in any laudable quality, to make trial of their several Abilities: the very Citizens proclaimed the Victories, contending which should cry loudst, and best play his part. The rewards given to the Victour were only Garlands of Palm, or such slight remembrances; and yet the *Greeks* no less esteemed that small Sign of conquest and Honour, than the *Romans* did their most magnificent Triumphant which were Conquerours herein being met by all the principal men in the City in or under which they lived, and a passage broken in the main Walls thereof for their reception; as if the ordinary Gates were not capable of so high an Honour, or able to afford them entrance. Infamuch that when *Diogoras* had been his three S as crowned for their several Victories, a Friend of his came to him with this Gratulation, *More, Diogoras, quoniam enim in Calem glorians es*, that is to say, *Dye now, Diogoras*, for thou that never go to Heaven: as if no greater Happiness could befall the man either in his life or that to come than that which he enjoyed already. The Judges and Presidents of these Games were some of the Citizens of *Elis*, deputy; highly commended for their Justice and Integrity in pronouncing who best deserved without Partiality. Of these thus *Horace* in his Odes:

*Sunt quos Curriculo pulvere Olympico  
Collegisse prius; Metaque servidus  
Evitata Rotis, Palmisque nobilis  
Terrarum Dominos evehit ad Deos.*

*Quos Elax domum reducit  
Palma caelestis.*

That is to say,  
Some in *Olympick* Dust take pride  
Their Chariots and themselves to hide;  
Whom the thunn'd Mark, and Palm for prize'd,  
Like to the Gods hath eterniz'd.

Such as like Heavenly Wights do come  
With an *Eleian* Garland home.

But to proceed, after the death of *Hercules* these Games were discontinued for 430 years: at which time one *Iphitus*, warned so to do by the Oracle of *Apollo*, renewed them, causing them to be solemnly exercised every fourth year: from which Custom *Olympias* is sometimes taken for the space of 4 years; as *quingue annorum Olympiades* for 20 years *Varro* reckoneth the time before the Flood to be Obscure, those before the *Olympiads*, after the Flood, to be Fabulous; but those that followed these *Olympiads* to be Historical. These *Olympiads* were of long time, even from the restoration of them by *Iphitus* unto the Reign of the Emperor *Theodosius*, the *Gracian Epoebe*, by which they reckoned their Account: the first of them being paced in the year of the World 3174, before the building of *Rome* 40 years; the last in the 440, year after *Christ's* Nativity. According to which reckoning this Account continued for the space of 1214 years; the memory of which remains, though the name of *Olympia* be not found in *Peloponnesus* the Town at

at this time being called by the name of *Scotri*. 3. *Pisa*, whose people followed *Nesfor* to the Wars of *Troy*; and in their return were by *Tempest* driven to the Coasts of *Italy*, where they built the City *Pisa* in *Tuscany*. 4. *Tornefe*, a new Town, or the new name of some ancient City; from whence the adjoining Promontory, of old called *Chelenter*, is now called *Cabo di Tornefe*.

3. *MESSENE* hath on the East *Arcadia*, on the North *Elis*, on the South and West the Sea. It takes its name from the Metropolis *Messene*, situate on *Sinus Messeniacus* now called *Golfo di Corone*. 2. *Pylot*, where *Nesfor* was King, now called *Navarino*, a desolate and poor Village not worth the noting. Of which thus *Ovid* (speaking in the name of *Penelope*):

*Nai Pylon, antiquis Nectia Notior arvis,  
Mijunus; incerta est reddita fama Pylot.*

To *Pylon*, aged *Nesfor's* Seat, we fenc;

But could not hear from thence how matters went.

3. *Modon*, or *Mothone*, seated in the most Southern part of this *Peninsula*, from whence unto the *Isthmus* which joine it to the rest of Greece are reckoned 175 Italian miles. The Town is commodiously seated in a *Demi Island*, washed on the one side with the Sea, and so well fortified toward the Land, that in the opinion of most men it is thought impregnable; adorned on the South-side with a large and capacious Bay, about 3 miles wide, secure from all winds except the North, and thus up with a little Island called anciently *Oenusa*, but now *Sapienza*, which makes it one of the safest Harbours in all these Seas. It was possessed by the State of *Venice*, but conquered by the *Turks* after many sharp and fierce Assaults, Anno 1500, both *Alas* and *Corone* yielding on the poise thereof. The best Retreat since that time of the *Turkish* Navies, and the ordinary Residence of the *Turkish* *Sancaks*, who hath the Government of this whole Province of *Morea* under the Beglerbeg of *Greece*. 4. *Corone* or *Coron*, the chief Town on the Bay of *Messene*, called from hence *Golfo di Corone*, and the last which we call against the *Turks* for the State of *Venice*, one Lords of all the Sea Coasts of *Peloponnesus*.

5. *Cypris* now called *Arcadia*, from whence the Bay adjoining hath the name of *Golfo di Arcadia*. Here is also the Promontory called of old *Coryphasum*, now *Cabo Zuchbi*. The people of this small Province had once a great sway in the whole *Peninsula*. At first they were confederate with the *Spartans* in to fight a League, that they mutually sent young Virgins to one another for their publick Sacrifice: but afterwards Corrivals with them for the supreme power: The *Spartans*, at the last getting the upper hand of them, oppressed them with a miserable Servitude. The occasion this: In the confines of this Country stood a Temple of *Diana*, common alike to the *Messenians*, *Spartans*, and *Dares*. It happened that some *Spartan* Virgins were by the *Messenians* here ravished: which abuse the *Spartans* pretended to be the ground of their War; the true reason indeed being their Covetousness of the sole Empire. This War broke out three several times. The first continued twenty years; in which space the *Lacedemonians*, fearing their Absence would hinder the supply of Children in the City, sent a Company of their ablest young men home to accompany their Wives. Their Oil-pressing were called *Purilenti*, who, coming to full growth, abandoned *Sparta*, fled into *Lady*, and there built *Tarentum*. The second being of 23 years continuance, was raised and maintained by *Antigonos*, one of the chief men of the *Messenians*, in which they prospered till *Antigonos*, King of *Arcadia*, one of their Confederates, revolted to side with *Lacedemonia*. Then began they to decline, and *Antigonos* was thrice taken Prisoner, still miraculously escaping. His last Imprisonment was in a Dungeon, where

by chance espying a Fox devouring a dead body, he caught hold of her Tail. The Fox running away, guided *Antigonos* after her; till the freightness of the Hole by which he went out made him leave his hold, and fall to scraping with his Nails, which exercise he never left till he had made the Hole passable, and so escaped; and having a while upheld his falling Country, died in *Rhodes*. The third War was like drops after a *Tempest*; in which the *Messenians* being finally subdued, were forced to abandon their Country, or become Slaves unto the *Spartans*, who put them to all Drudgeries and servile Works; as they did the *Helots*, whom they counted as their bondmen. And to this little some of them did apply themselves with so much Obsequiousness, that at last it grew into a Proverb, *Messenius servitor*, that such a one was more servile, or more slavishly used, than these poor *Messenians*. But the greatest part of them not brooking that heave *Yoke*, passed into *Sicily*, and there built the City of *Messana*. Others were planted in *Naxos*, &c., by the State of *Athens*, the rest departed up and down in all parts of *Greece*: few of them left in their own Country, till *Epaminondas* having vanquished the *Lacedemonians* at the Battle of *Leuttra*, restored them to their ancient Possessions.

4. *ARCADIA* hath on the East *Laconia*, on the West *Elis* and *Messene*, on the North *Acchia propria*, and on the South the Sea. This Country took its name from *Arca*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Calisto*; but was formerly called *Pelagida*: the people whereof thought themselves more akin to the Moon.

*Oria prius Luna, de se si creditur ipsi.*

*Amagno, telus Arcadae nomen habet.*

The land which of great *Arca* took its name  
Was e're the Moon, if we will credit *Pam*.

The chief Cities are, 1. *Manitena*, nigh unto which the *Theban Army*, consisting of 30000 Foot and 3000 Horse, routed the Army of the *Spartans* and *Athenians*, consisting of 35000 Foot and 2000 Horse. In this Battle *Epaminondas*, that famous Leader, received his death's wound, and not long after died. At his last Gaspe, one of his Friends (removing his untimely death, *Alas*, said he, *then die*, *Epaminondas*, and *leave* behind thee no Children. *Nay*, replied he, two Daughters will I leave behind me, the Victory of *Leuttra*, and this other at *Manitena*. It was afterward called *Antigonia*, in honour of *Antigonos*, Tutor or Protector of *Philip* the Father of *Persius*, King of *Macedon*; but by command of the Emperor *Adrian* restored to its old name again, and is now called *Manitena*. 2. *Megalopolis*, the Birth-place of *Polybius*, that excellent Historian. The one half of it had sometimes the name of *Orestia*, from the lodging of *Orestes* in it: the whole is now called *Leontari*, on what cause I know not. 3. *Phiala*, towards the Sea. 4. *Pisphos*, so called from *Pisphos*, one of the Sons of *Lycan*, one King of this Country, slain by *Jupiter*. 5. *Symphalini*, situate near a Lake and River of the same name, where *Hercules* flew the *Symphalini* Birds, so great in number and in Body, that they darkened the Sun-beams, and terribly infected this little Province, till driven thence by *Hercules*. Here was also in this Town a Temple dedicated to *Minerva*, from hence called *Symphalida*. 6. *Tegea*, famous for the Temple of *Pan*, here worshipped; and from hence called *Tegeus*: more for the War made upon the *Tegeates*, or people thereof, by the *Lacedemonians*; who, thinking themselves assured of Victory, brought with them store of Chains and Fetters wherewith to lead Captive their conquered Enemies; but, being overcome in Battle, were themselves bound with them, and forced as Slaves to till the Grounds of these *Tegeates*. Here is also in this Country the famous River *Sige*, whole

whose water, for the poisonous taste, was called the water of Hell; by which Poets feign that the Gods use to swear, as may be every where observed; and that what God never swore by *Sisy* fallily, he was banished from Heaven, and prohibited Nectar for 1000 years.

This Country, for the fictions of it for Pasturage and Grazing, hath made it the subject of many witty and witty Discourses, especially that of Sir *Philip Sidney*, of whom I cannot but make honorable mention: a Book which besides its excellent Language, rare Contrivances, and delectable Stories, hath in it all the Strains of Poetic, comprehendeth the artificial Art of speaking, and to them which can discern and will observe, affordeth notable Rules for Democritus, both private and publick. Which notable Gentleman, as he may worthily be called the *English Heliodorus*, so the ingenious Author of the History of *Melinus* and *Ariana* may deservedly be called the French *Sidney*.

**LACONIA** is bounded on the West with *Arcadia*, on the East and South with the Sea, on the North with *Argolis*. Called first *Laega*, from the *Laegae*, by *Strabo* said to be the first Inhabitants of it; afterwards *Oebalia*, from *Oebalus* a King of *Lacedaemon*; and finally *Laconia*, of the *Lacones* who succeeded the *Laegae* in the possession hereof, on their removal into the Islands of the lesser *Asia*. It is by some Writers also called *Hecatompolis*, from the number of an hundred Cities which it once had in it.

The Soil hereof is exceeding rich, and the Fields very spacious; yet for most part not well tilled, in regard of the many Hills and Mountains which overthwart it. Well watered with the River *Enrotas*, and memorable for many fair Bays and Promontories: of which the principal are the Promontories of *Malea*, and *Tanania*, now called *Cabo Mallo* and *Cabo Matapan*; and of the Bays, that called *Golfo di Colochina*, the *Sinus Laconicus* of the Ancients, into which the River *Enrotas* (now better known by the name of *Pasiphatos*, or the *Kingly River*) pours his gentle Streams. The nature of the People we shall find in *Sparta*.

Places of most observation in it are, 1. *Lenitra*, situate on the Sea-side, near the Bay of *Messine*: of which name were two others in Greece, the one in *Arcadia*, the other in *Achaia*; but this last most memorable. 2. *Amicle*, so called from *Amycle*, the third King of *Sparta*, by whom it was first founded: renowned afterwards for the Birth of *Cassor* and *Polux*, the Sons of *Tyndarus*; and of good note for being the Foundress of the City of *Amicle* in *Calabria Superior*; at first a Colony of this: distant from *Lacedaemon* about 20 Furlongs. 3. *Thionia*, high to which is the Lake of *Lerna*, where *Hercules* flew the Monster *Hydra*; and not far off Mount *Tanarus*, near the Promontory *Tanania*, in which the Natives had a Cave, (believed in former times to be the Defect into Hell) out of which the Poets feign that *Cerberus* was dragged by *Hercules*. 4. *Sidassia*, where *Antigonus* vanquished *Cleomenes*, the last King of *Sparta*. 5. *Epidaurus*, (situated on the Bay named *Golfo di Napoli*) now called *Mulvafia*: a Town well built, and very well peopled; remarkable for the sweet Wines called *Mulvosey* or *Malsiey*, sent from hence into all other parts in great abundance. 6. *Sparta*, so called from *Sparta*, the Son or Brother of *Phoroneus*, the second King of *Argos*, the Founder of it but afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Lacedaemon*, the

second King of this Country, it took that name also; promiscuously known by both in the best Authors. One of the Eyes of Greece, and a famous Commonwealth; but at first governed by Kings, as most of the Greek Cities in ancient times. *Tyndarus*, the Father of *Cassor* and *Polux*, was or ce King hereof. After whose death, and the death of the said famous Brethren, *Menelaus* was admitted King of *Sparta*, or *Lacedaemon*, in right of *Helena* his Wife, their Sister. And though *Nicollstratus* and *Megapenthes*, Sons of *Menelaus* by another *Venter*, succeeded after his decease, yet the *Spartans* soon rejected them, and received *Orestes* the Son of *Agamemnon* to be their King, marrying him to *Hermione*, the daughter of *Menelaus* and *Helena*, and consequently the Niece of *Tyndarus*. *Tisamenus*, the Son of *Orestes* and *Hermione*, succeeded next; in whose time the *Heraclidae*, or posterity of *Hercules*, returned into Greece, under the conduct of *Temenus*, *Crepion*, and *Aristodemus*: Sons of *Aristomachus*: whereof the first possessed himself by force of Arms of the City *Argos*, the second of *Messene*, and the third conquered the City and State of *Sparta*; which dying very shortly after, he left unto his two Sons, *Eurythbenes* and *Procles*, the Rulers of the two Royal Families which jointly and in common governed the affairs of *Sparta*; first absolutely as Sovereign Princes, without any controul, afterwards at the direction of the Senate, and finally under the Command and Check of those popular Officers whom they called the *Ephori*. But because these *Spartan* Kings in each several period were for the most part men of Action, and often mentioned in the Histories of the elder time; I will first make Catalogue of them, and then subjoin such Observations and Remembrances as I think most pertinent.

#### The Kings of SPARTA of the first Family.

A. M.

1. *Enrotas*, the first King of *Sparta*, who gave name to the River *Enrotas*.
2. *Lacedaemon*, Brother of *Enrotas*, from whom the City of *Sparta* was called *Lacedaemon*.
3. *Amycle*, Son of *Lacedaemon*, the Founder of *Amycle*, a Laconian City.
4. *Argalus* Son of *Amycle*.
5. *Cynorta*, Son of *Argalus*.
6. *Oebalus* Son of *Cynorta*, from whom a part of this Country had the name of *Oebalia*.
7. *Hippocoon*, Son of *Oebalus*.
- 2700 8. *Tyndarus*, Brother of *Hippocoon*, in whose life he was King of *Oebalia* only.
9. *Cassor* and *Polux*, Sons of *Tyndarus*, famous amongst the *Argonauts*.
- 2740 10. *Menelaus*, Son of *Atreus*, and Brother of *Agamemnon* Kings of *Mycenae*, together with *Helena* his Wife, the Daughter of *Tyndarus*, whose Rape occasioned the Destruction of *Troy*.
- 2770 11. *Nicollstratus* and *Megapenthes*, Sons of *Menelaus* by a former Wife.
12. *Orestes*, Son of *Agamemnon*, and *Hermione* his Wife, Daughter of *Helena* and *Menelaus*.
13. *Tisamenus*, Son of *Orestes* and *Hermione*, who, being outed of *Sparta* by the *Heraclidae*, resided in *Achaia*, and left his Posterity.

#### The Kings of SPARTA of the Race of the HERACLIDAE.

1. *Aristodemus*, the first King of the Race of *Heraclides*, left the Kingdom jointly to his two Sons,

2848	1. <i>Eurythbenes</i> .	2848	1. <i>Procles</i> .
1890	2. <i>Agis</i> , from whom this Line were called <i>Agidae</i> .	2. <i>Enripion</i> , from whom this Line were called <i>Enripionidae</i> .	
2891	3. <i>Echestratus</i> .	3. <i>Pyrtanis</i> .	
2926	4. <i>Labeates</i> .	4. <i>Ennomus</i> .	
2963	5. <i>Dryffas</i> .	5. <i>Polychetes</i> .	
2992	6. <i>Agellus</i> .	6. <i>Charilaus</i> .	
3046	7. <i>Archelaus</i> .	3076 7. <i>Nicandrus</i> .	
3096	8. <i>Teleclus</i> .	3140 8. <i>Tecopompus</i> .	
3136	9. <i>Alcumenes</i> .	9. <i>Archidamus</i> .	
3173	10. <i>Polydorus</i> .	10. <i>Zenocidamus</i> .	
	11. <i>Euryerates</i> .	11. <i>Anaxidamus</i> .	
	12. <i>Anaxandrus</i> .	12. <i>Archidamus II.</i>	
	13. <i>Euryerates II.</i>	13. <i>Agasides</i> .	
	14. <i>Leonidas</i> .	14. <i>Agasides</i> .	
	15. <i>Anaxandrides</i> .	15. <i>Demaratus</i> .	
	16. <i>Cleomenes</i> .	16. <i>Leontichides</i> .	
	17. <i>Leonidas II.</i>	3447 17. <i>Archidamus III.</i>	
3470	18. <i>Pitarchus</i> .	3478 18. <i>Agis</i> .	
3471	19. <i>Pisibonax</i> .	3520 19. <i>Agis</i> .	
3539	20. <i>Pausanias</i> .	3547 20. <i>Agellus</i> .	
3553	21. <i>Agisopolis</i> .	3588 20. <i>Archidamus IV.</i>	
3567	22. <i>Cleombrotus</i> .	3611 21. <i>Agis II.</i>	
3576	23. <i>Agisopolis II.</i>	23. <i>Eudamidas</i> .	
3577	24. <i>Cleomenes II.</i>	23. <i>Archidamus V.</i>	
3611	25. <i>Arius</i> .	24. <i>Eudamidas II.</i>	
3655	26. <i>Acrotatus</i> .	3700 25. <i>Agis III.</i>	
	27. <i>Arius II.</i>		
	28. <i>Leonidas III.</i>		
	29. <i>Cleombrotus II.</i>		
3714	30. <i>Cleomenes III.</i> , the last of the Line of the <i>Agidae</i> , who, having slain		

*Eurydamidas*, the Son of *Agis* the third, substituted his Brother *Epicles* in his place. But being himself shortly after vanquished by *Antigonus* of *Macedonia*, and forced to fly his Country with his Wife and Children, the Government of the *Heraclidae* ended, after it had continued here for the space of 900 years, or thereabouts.

Under these Kings the Government at first was *Monarchical*, as *Plinckart* termeth it, sufficiently *Monarchical* it were not more. Under *Ennomus*, the Reins of Government fell loose, began to mutiny and grow too headstrong. To bridle whom, and to restrain the Kings with firm, (should they prove exorbitant) *Lycurgus*, the Proctor of *Charilaus*, the sixth King of that House, did ordain the Senate, committing to them the supreme Power in matters Civil and leaving to the Kings the ordering all Military and Sacred business. To curb the Insolencies of this Senate, who quickly found their own strength, *Therompeus*, the eighth King of that House, with the consent of *Eurydamidas*, the tenth King of the other, instituted a new Magistracy chosen out of the Common People, whom they called the *Ephori*; which grew in time to such an height of Pride and Tyranny, as not only to controul the Senators, but to confine, fine, imprison, depose, and mutually to kill their Kings, as the spirit of Sedition moved them. So that the State of *Lacedaemon* was at first a Monarchy under Kings, then an Aristocracy under the command of the Senate, next a Democracy under the

*Ephori*, and finally, by those popular Officers made to plain a Tyranny, that *Aristotle* and *Plato*, two great Common-wealths-men, who died before they had embred their hands in the blood of their Kings, call it in plain terms *tyrannical*. &c. & *tyrannical* a most absolute Tyranny. What think you these men would have called it, had they lived to see *Leonidas* the third deposed, and *Agis* the third of that name also most barbarously murdered by these popular Villains?

But being the Foundation of this Commonwealth was first laid, and the good Laws and Politick Constitutions by which it did so long subsist in great Power and Splendour established, by the Wit and Power of *Lycurgus*, as before was said; we are to know concerning him, that he was the Son of *Ennomus*, the fourth King of the second House, slain in a popular Tumult by the Common people. Who, finding by this Essay, that the People were become too head strong for the Kings to govern, unless reduced to extreme Bondage by their Kings, which he wished not neither, took the advantage of the Minority of *Charilaus* to new mould the Government; and what he could not do by fair means, to effect by Arms; forcing this *Charilaus*, through his Nephew, when he came to age, to flee for Sanctuary to the Temple of *Juno*. Having ordained what Laws he pleased, and settled such a Form of Government as himself well fancied, the better to decline the Envy of so great a Change, he got leave to travel, binding the people by an Oath to observe all his Laws until his return; and, being gone, commanded at his death, that his Ashes should be cast into the Sea, lest, being carried back to *Sparta*, the people might conceive themselves released from their Oath. By means whereof his Laws continued in force near 700 years, during which time that Commonwealth did flourish in all Prosperity. The particulars of which Institutions he left to us to see may find them specified at large by *Plutarch* in the Life of *Lycurgus*. Suffice it that the Discipline was so sharp and strict, that many went into the Wars for no other reason than on a hope to rid themselves from so hard a life; and that *Dioegenis*, returning hence to the City of *Athens*, gave out that he returned from Men to Women, in the *ἄνδρες γυναικῶν*; and being asked in what part of Greece he had met with the completest men, made answer that he could no where meet with Men, but that he had found some Boys amongst the *Spartans*. A cynical and rugged Answer, but such as carried a great deal of Judgment in it; the *Spartans* being more stout and resolute in all their Actions, and less delicate in their Lives, than the rest of the *Grecians*. But besides the strictness of the Discipline under which they lived, there was another thing which made them with for Wars abroad, namely, the little or no power which either the Kings or People had in Civil matters, or Affairs of State, entirely left to the disposing of the Senate and the Power of the *Ephori*. So that the Kings, having by the Laws the Command of their Armies, were willing to engage in War upon all occasions, and the Common people as desirous to attend them in such Employments as the Kings could wish. Upon these grounds War was made a Trade amongst them; beginning with the *Helots*, a neighbouring People, then with the rest of the *Lacodians*, afterwards quarrelling the *Messians*, their old Confederates: all which they severally subdued, and made subject to them. In the War which *Xerxes* made against the City of *Athens*, their King *Leonidas* the first, of the elder House, went forth to aid them; slain at the Straights of *Thermopylae*, courageously fighting for the Liberty of Greece: to which it was thought fit to set upon the *Perseus* Fleet, *Eurybiades* the *Spartan* Admiral did command in chief. In pursuit of this War against the *Persians*, *Pausanias* and



and *Argilians* were of most renown: the first in helping the *Athenians* to drive them out of *Greece*; the other in making War upon them in their own Dominions. Freed from the *Perjans*, they grow jealous of the State of *Athens*, whom they locked on as their Rivals in point of Sovereignty and Glory. Hence the long War betwixt these Cities, called *Belium Peloponnesiacum*, managed for the most part in *Peloponnesus*, from whence transferred into *Sicily*, and at last ended in the taking of *Athens*: the Government whereof they changed into an Aristocracy under thirty Magistrates of their own appointment, commonly called the *Thirty Tyrants*. Proud of this fortunate Success, their next Quarrel was with the *Boeotians*, the conquered *Athenians* covertly, and the *Perjans* openly, assisting the Enemy. Here their Prudence began to leave them. For, besides many small Defeats, *Epaminondas* the *Theban* so discomfited them at the Overthrow of *Leuttra* and *Manitinea*, that *Sparta* it fell was in danger of utter Ruine. Not long after happened the *Holy War*, chiefly undertaken against the *Phocians*, wherein also they made a party: but this War being ended by King *Philip*, they scarce breathed more Freedom than he gave air to. But when *Alexander's* Captains fought for the Empire of their Matter, all these flourishing Republics were either totally swallowed into, or much defaced by the Kingdom of *Macedon*. The *Lacedaemonians* held the chief Strength of a Town to confil in the Valour of the people; and therefore would never suffer *Sparta* to be walked, till the times immediately following the death of *Alexander* the Great: yet could not those Fortifications then defend them from *Antigonus Dofon*, King of *Sparta*, entered the Town, and was the first man that ever was received into as Conqueror. So much different were the present *Spartans* from the Valour and Courage of their Ancestors. *Cleomenes* being forced to forsake his Country, and the Race of the *Heracleidae* falling in him, they became a Prey to *Machanidas* and *Nabis*, two wicked Tyrants, from whom they were no sooner freed, than they were made subject (in a manner) to the Power of *Rome*: and in the end the Town was so weak and inconsiderable, that it was not able to resist the poorest enemy; now a small Burrough called *Misthiora*. And so I leave them to the thoughts of their former Glories, having now nothing else to boast of but the fame and memory of their Actions in former times.

6. *ARGOLIS*, so called from the chief City *Argos*, is bounded on the South with *Laconia*, on the West with *Corinthia* and *Achaia Propria*, on the East and North with the Sea. A Territory remarkable for a most excellent breed of Horses, and from thence called *Hippium*.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Argos*, founded by *Argus*, the fourth King of this Country; the chief of this Kingdom. Memorable as for other things, so 1. for the Death of *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus* who, having forced his Entry into it, was here ignobly slain, after all his Victories, by the hands of an old Woman, throwing a Tile at him from the top of an House: 2. for the long Race of the Kings hereof, from *Inachus* the contemporary of our Father *Abraham*. Anno 2003, unto *Acridas* their last King: whose Daughter *Dione*, being shut up in a Tower of Brass, was deflowered by *Jupiter*, to whom she bare the renowned *Perseus*, so memorized in ancient Poets. But *Perseus*, having by misfortune slain his Grandfather, the old King *Acridas* quitted the City of *Argos*, as unlucky to him, and transferred the Kingdom to *Mycenae*, a City of his own Foundation, and so better fancied, which was by means hereof the second City of esteem in this little Province, growing in small time unto so great Riches,

that it got the name of *dies Mycenae*, as appeareth by *Horace*, in whom the Horses of *Argos* and the Wealth of *Mycenae* are placed in one Verse together:

*Aprom dicit equis Argos, dirigitur Mycenae.*

For Horses *Argos* is of fame, For Wealth *Mycenae* hath the name.

3. *Trezen*, situate on the *Saints Saronicus* (now called *Golfo di Engia*) the Royal Seat of *Pitheus*, the Grandfather of *Trezen* by the Mothers side, who was born herefrom whence the Town in *Ovid* hath sometime the name of *Pitheia Trezen*, and *Trezen* many times is called *Trezenis Heros*; as *Hercules* had the name of *Trezenis Heros* from 4. *Tyrinthia*, another City of this Province, in which he was murdered. 5. *Nemea*, where *Hercules* slew the dreadful Lion which annointed this Country. In honour of which noble Act were instituted in time following the *Nemean Games*, which continued of great fame in *Greece* for many Ages. The Exercises were, Running with swift Horses, Whorlbat, Running for foot, Quoting, Wrestling, Darting, Shooting. Some have referred the Original of these Games to one *Ophelet*, a *Lacedaemonian*, in whose Honour they conceived them instituted, and others fetch it higher, from the War of *Troies*, but this I take to be the more allowable Opinion. 6. *Epidauros*, on the Sea-side, famous for the Temple of *Aesculapius*, and the Cure of all sorts of diseases there, located from *Epidauros*, the Son of *Argus*, the Founder of it. Of the same name, but of a different situation, from that before mentioned in *Laconia*; that being, seated on the Bay called *Golfo di Napoli*, that on the *Engia*. One called *Melissa* and *Amerga*, that at time an Island, by an Earthquake laid unto the Continent, now called *Pegida*. 7. *Nauplia*, so called of *Nauplius* King of *Enolaga* and Father of *Palamedes*, to whom it is anciently believed. A Station then, as now, for Shipping; in that regard called *Nauplia Navale*, now *Napoli*, on *Napoli* is a small and capacious Bay, now called *Golfo di Napoli*, into which the famous River *Inachus*, having passed through the City of *Argos*, doth discharge itself, so called from *Inachus* the Father of *Io*, and the Original and Progenitor of

#### The Kings of ARGOS and MYCENAE.

A.M.

- 2093 1. *Inachus*, the supposed Father of *Io*, from whom the *Gracians* are sometimes called by the name of *Inachi*.
- 2143 2. *Phoroneus*, the Son of *Inachus* and *Melissa*, from whom the said *Io* hath the name of *Phoroneus* in the Poet.
- 2223 3. *Apis*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Niothe* the Daughter of *Phoroneus*, who, leaving *Greece*, went into *Aegypt*, where he taught the people Tillage, and was there worshipped afterwards in the form of an Ox.
- 2258 4. *Argus* the Son of *Apis*, and the Founder of *Argos*; in whose time Agriculture was taken up amongst the *Gracians*, from him called *Argoi*.
- 2308 5. *Crataus*, by some *Peiratus*, the Son of *Argus*.
- 2363 6. *Phorbas*, the Son of *Crataus*; in whose time *Atlas* and *Prometheus* are said to flourish.
- 2397 7. *Triopas*, the Son of *Phorbas*, and the Brother of another *Phorbas*, who planted himself in the Isle of *Rhodes*.
- 2442 8. *Crotopus*.
- 2464 9. *Sthenelus*, outed of the Kingdom by
- 2475 10. *Danaus*, the Brother of *Aegyptus*; by whom being driven out of *Aegypt*, he was made King

King of *Argos* by consent of the people: the Father of those many Daughters got with child by *Hercules*. From him the *Gracians* are called often by the name of *Danai*.

- 2525 11. *Lyncus*, Son of *Aegyptus*, the Brother of *Danaus*.
- 2536 12. *Abas*, the Son of *Lyncus* and *Hypermetra*, the Daughter of *Danaus*.
- 2566 13. *Pratus*, the Son of *Abas*.
- 2604 14. *Acridas*, the Brother of *Pratus*, and the Father of *Danaus*; who being foretold by the Oracle that he should be slain by a Son of that Daughter, thus her up in a Brazen Tower. But *Jupiter*, having corrupted the Guards with Gold, got the Ladie's consent, by whom he had *Perseus*, so renowned amongst the Poets and Historians of those elder times.
- 2637 15. *Perseus*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Danaus*, exposed by his Grandfather to the Seas, miraculously preserved, and grown into great fame by his brave Exploits. He restored *Acridas* to his Throne from which he had been deposed by his Brother *Pratus*. But after having ignorantly and unfortunately slain the said *Acridas*, he removed his Seat unto *Mycenae*, where he reigned together with his Son *Sthenelus*.
- 2645 16. *Eurythene*, the Son of *Sthenelus*, much spoken of for the difficult Tasks which, at the instigation of *Juno*, he imposed on *Hercules* his Foster-child, and the supposed Son of *Amphitryon* his Cousin-german.
- 2688 17. *Atrous* and *Typhes*, Sons of *Pelops*, on the falling of the Line of *Perseus*, succeeded in *Argos* and *Mycenae*, infamous for their Murders and Adultery; *Typhes* abusing the Bed of *Atrous*, and *Atrous* casting him with the Body of his own Son, whence *Θυρεν*, *Θύρα* in the Proverb.
- 2753 18. *Agamemnon*, the Son of *Atrous*, Commander of the *Greeks* at the War of *Trois*, in which action there engaged 69 Kings of the *Gracians*, waisted over with a Navy of 1224 Ships; killed at his coming home by *Agisthus*, his Cousin german.
- 2768 19. *Agisthus*, the Son of *Typhes*, having defiled *Clytemnestra* the Wife of *Agamemnon* in the time of his absence, by her procurement murdered him at his coming home, and usurped the Kingdom.
- 2775 20. *Orestes*, Son of *Agamemnon*, revenged his Father's death on *Agisthus* and *Clytemnestra* his own Mother. After which falling mad, and restored again unto his Wits, he married *Hermione*, Daughter of *Menelaus* and *Helena*, by whom he had the Kingdom of *Sparta* also.
- 2803 21. *Penibulus*, the Son of *Orestes*, and the last King of this Line, outed of his Estate by the *Dares* and *Heracleidae*, who made themselves Masters of all *Peloponnesus*, which they possessed until the Conquest of it by the *Macedonians*.

7. *CORINTHIA* is a little Region, lying towards the *Isthmus* or Neck of Land which joineth *Peloponnesus* to the rest of *Greece*, betwixt *Argolis* and *Achaia Propria*. It containeth only the Territory of the City of *Corinth*, not large, nor very fruitful of those Commodities which the rest of this Peninsula doth abound with;

as being mountainous and hilly, and, by reason of the nearness of the Sea, full of craggy Rocks. The indeed the only Cities of note in it are, 1. *Cenchrea*, the naval Road or Station of Ships for *Corinth*, mentioned *Acts* 18. 18. and *Rom.* 16. 1. in both Texts reckoned a distinct Town from *Corinth*, as indeed it was: situate on that Bay which openeth into the *Aegean* Sea, called anciently *Sinus Saronicus*, now *Golfo di Engia*; and consequently opposite to 2. *Lechaum*, the other Naval Road for *Corinth*, situate on the Western Bay, called of old *Sinus Corinthiacus*, now the Gulf of *Lepanto*. 3. *Corinth* it self, commodiously situate for the Command of all *Greece*, (had not the Inhabitants been more given to Merchandise than unto the Ways) as being seated on the bottom of the Neck or *Isthmus*, the *Ionian* Sea upon the West, and the *Aegean* on the East, washing the Walls thereof, and giving it on each side a Capacious Haven; in which regard it is called by *Horace* *bimaris Corinthus*. It is in compass about Eleven miles, for Strength impregnable, for Command as powerful, Mastering both Seas on which it stood, and cutting off all passage from one half of *Greece* to the other: to which last end the Cattle called *Acercorinthus*, looking into both Seas, served exceeding fitly; and was therefore called one of the *Fetters of Greece*. The City is rich, very well Traded, and neatly built, most Houses beautified with handfom Pillars, from then called *Corinthians*: more memorable for the Wealth of the People, and the convenience of the Situation, than for any notable Exploits performed by them, or any great Influence which they had on the States of *Greece*. But in regard of the Wealth, Greatness, and Situation, accounted by the *Romans* one of the three Cities which they held capable of the Empire; *Carthage* and *Capua* being the other two. In this City lived the famous (or infamous) Whore *Thais*, who exacted 10000 *Drachmas* for a single night's Lodging: which made *Demeitrius* cry out, *Non emam tanti pœnitere*, and occasioned the old By-word,

*Non curvis homini contingit adire Corinthum.*

'Tis not for every man's avail

Unto *Corinth* for to Sail.

Near hereunto stood the *Acercorinthian* Mountains, at the foot whereof the City, and on the top whereof the Castle called hence *Acercorinthus*, were seated: out of which flowed the famous Fountain named *Pyrene*, of old consecrated to the Mules; by *Perseus* called *Fons Caballinus*, because seized by the ancient Poets to have been made by the Horie *Pegasus* dashing his foot against the Rock. And on the other side hereof in the *Isthmus* were celebrated yearly the *Isthmian Games*; ordered by *Trezen* in honour of *Neptune*, in imitation of the *Olympic* devised by *Hercules* in honour of *Jupiter*. The Exercises were much the same, and the reward no other than a Garland of Oaken Boughs: yet they drew yearly a great resort of people to them, partly to exercise themselves and behold the Sports; and partly to sacrifice to *Neptune*, who had hard by a famous Temple.

As for the Fortunes of this City, it was at first called *Ephyra*, at that time a small and obscure place; but beautified and repaired by *Corinthus*, the Son of *Pelops*; it took the name of *Corinth*; governed by him and his posterity, till the coming of the *Heracleidae* into *Peloponnesus*, at what time one *Aletes* of the Race of *Hercules* possessed himself hereof, with the name of King, *A.M.* 2849. Twelve Princes of his Line enjoyed it for the space of 220 years and upwards: when the House failing in the person of *Automedes*, they were governed by temporary Officers, like the *Archontes* of *Athens*. Continuing under this Government 124 years, the City was seized upon by one *Cypselus*, *A.M.* 3294, who left it to his Son *Periander*, one of the Seven wise men of *Greece*, counted a Tyrant in the

those times, for no other reason than that he had suppressed the Popular Government. After whose death, Anno 3364, the City did recover its former Liberty. In the Battle betwixt *Athens* and *Lacedæmon*, and other the Estates of *Greece*, for the Superiority, he did little meddle; the aim of this people being Wealth, not Honour; nor interested in any Action or renown in all those times, but the sending of *Timoleon* to the aid of the *Syracusans* against the Tyrant *Dionysius*, who did Lord it over them. It was subdued, together with the rest, by the Kings of *Macedon*; and with the rest restored to Liberty by the power of *Rome*: under whom growing still more rich, and withal more insolent, they abused certain *Roman* Embassadors. But *irasci populo Romano nemo sapienter potest*, as is said in *Lucius*, which the *Corinthians* found too true; the City being besieged, sacked, and burnt unto the Ground by *Lucius Mummius*, a *Roman* Consul, Anno U. C. 670. In the burning whereof there were consumed so many goodly Statues of Gold, Silver, Brass, and other Metals, that, being melted into a lump, they made up by that fatal chance the so much estimated Metal called *Æscorinium*, more highly prized in *Rome* than Gold or Silver. Repaired again, it was of great esteem in the time of the Emperours, converted by St. Paul to the Christian Faith; and having flourished a long time in Pride and Pleasures, decayed by little and little, till it came to nothing, and is now a small Barren hill called *Craio*.

Having thus spoken of the several Estates of *Peloponnesus*, it resteth that we speak somewhat of the Estates of the whole, partly according to the Fortunes of those particular, which had most Influence on the same. The Affairs hereof were a long while swayed by the Kings of *Sicyon*, whence it had the name of *Sicyonia*, restrained afterwards to the Territories of that City only. But when the Kings of *Argos* came in place and power, it depended much upon their pleasures; from *Apis* the third King whereof, (if not rather from *Apis* the fourth King *Sicyon*) in the opinion of some Writers, it was named *Apis*. But *Pelops* the Son of *Tantalus* King of *Phrygia*, coming into *Greece*, and marrying *Hippodamia*, Daughter of *Oenomaus* King of *Elis*, became the most powerful Prince of all this *Penninsula*, taking from him the name of *Peloponnesus*. The Kingdom of *Mycene*, growing into Power and Credit, had the next turn in swaying the Affairs hereof for a certain season; as after that the *Dores* and *Heracleids*, possessed at once of *Argos*, *Sparta*, *Corinth*, and *Melfene*. The *Spartans*, getting the Preeminence over all the rest, were the next who governed the Affairs of it, and they held it long, having first conquered *Laconia*, and subverted the Estate of *Melfene*; by means whereof, and by their fortunate Success against the *Perjans*, they became almost absolute in their Commands, without any Competitor. But their Power being broken by *Pelopidas* and *Epaminondas* in the *Theban* War, the petty States hereof began to take heart again, and stand upon their own Legs; as they did awhile, till the Kings of *Macedon* succeeding *Alexander* the Great brought them once more under, and made them Fellow-servants with their *Spartan* Masters. In the Confusions which ensued in *Macedon* amongst the Competitors for that Kingdom, *Pavia* and *Dyme*, two Cities of *Achaia propria*, first united them in a strong League of Amity, at such time as *Phylarchus* first went into *Italy*: into which Confederacy the Cities of *Tritæa* and *Phæra* shortly after came, and not long after that of *Ægira*, and the rest of *Achaia propria*. Their Affairs were first governed by two Prætors with Advice of the Senate, as afterwards by one alone with the like Advice; of which *Marcus Ciceronis* was the first, and *Aratus* of *Sicyonia* the second. The ground thus laid, and the reputation of this new Commonwealth increasing

by the Vertue of *Aratus*, the *Epidaurians*, *Træzians*, *Argives* and *Megarians* became Members of it, maintaining gallantly the Liberties of *Peloponnesus*, till finally mastered by the *Romans*. In the Division of the whole Empire it fell, with all the rest of *Greece* to those Emperors, and in the declining of their Fortunes, when the *Latins* got possession of the Imperial City, most of the Sea-Coasts of it were allotted to the State of *Venice*; the Inland parts formerly parcelled out amongst many Princes whom they called *Despots*, continuing as before they were. By *Ladab*, a Daughter of one of these *Despots*, (and as it seems the chief amongst them) married to *Ferdinand*, Son of *James* the first, and Father of *James* the second King of *Majorca*, the Title of Prince of *Majorca* came into that House, used by them and the rest of these *Pitt* Princes, till all together were made a Prey to the *Turkish* Tyrants *Mahomet* the Great, and *Bajazet* the second, by whom they were wholly conquered. For howsoever *Thomas Comnenus Palæologus*, had held hither after the taking of *Constantinople*, and were received and obeyed by those petty Princes: yet being unable to hold out against the Conqueror, they became his Tributaries, but their falling out amongst themselves, and neglecting then to send in the Tribute agreed upon, gave *Mahomet* the second occasion to invade the Country, and under colour of aiding one Brother against the other, to destroy them both, as he did accordingly: *Demetrius* being carried Prisoner to *Constantinople*, and *Thomas* forced to abandon *Peloponnesus*, and fly to *Italy*, Ann. 1457. Such Tumults as he belonged to the State of *Venice* followed the same Fortune also in the time of *Bajazet*, by whom they were all taken at the last, and the whole Country brought under his obedience, Anno 1500, or thereabouts. Governed ever since that time by a *Turkish* *Sanc*, under the name of *herbeg* of *Greece*, who hath his Residence at *Modon*, a Regiment of 1000 Horse to secure the Country, and 70000 *Alpers* (that is to say, 140000 *Crowns*) a year for his entertainment.

## 2. ACHÆIA.

**A**CHÆIA is bounded on the East with the *Ægean* Sea, on the West with *Epirus*, on the North with *Thessaly*, on the South with *Peloponnesus* and the Sea thereof. Called anciently *Hellas* from *Helle* the Son of *Dædalus*; but whence it had the name of *Achaia*, is not yet agreed on: though fire I am that from hence the Inhabitants of it were called *Achæi*, a name communicated afterwards to all the *Græcians* to difference them from the *Achai* of *Achaia propria*.

The Country is famous in the Authors of the elder times, more for the Gallantry of the Men, than any great goodness of the Soil and place: yet that is sufficiently memorable for the Hill *Hymetus*, furnishing with Bees, plentiful of the sweetest Honey, and rich in Mines of excellent Marble; as also for the River *Cephissus*, which runneth almost through the whole length hereof; divided into two main Streams of which the one is called *Asopus*, the other retaineth its first name. Upon the Banks thereof stood the Temple of *Themis*, to which *Dædalus* did repair to be directed in the Restauration of Mankind, as the Poets Fable.

It was divided anciently into these seven Parts; viz. 1. *Attica*, 2. *Megaris*, 3. *Bœotia*, 4. *Phocis*, 5. *Læris*, 6. *Doris*, and 7. *Ætolia*. A Division now as much divided as the name of *Achaia*, changed by the *Turks* into that of *Lebadia*, of which more anon.

1. *ATTICA* hath on the West *Megaris* and some part

Part of *Bœotia*, on all other parts compassed with the Sea: so called from *Athens*, the chief City. The Soil for the most part is very barren and craggy; yet by the Arms and Industry of the People made both rich and famous; inasmuch as the yearly Revenues of this Country were 1200 Talents. The Money current in this Country was commonly stamped with an *Ox*, whence came the By-word *Bos in lingua*, applied to such Lawyers as the By-word to which was the Proverb rising from the Coin of *Ægina* (an Isle adjoining) stamped with the figure of a Snail, viz. *Virtutibus & Sapientiam vincunt Teledines*.

Places of most observation in it were, 1. *Phyla*, a strong Fort on the Borders of *Bœotia*, surprised by *Tharabulus* and others of the banished *Athenians*, during the Government of the thirty Tyrants: the taking whereof was the first step towards their own and their Country's Liberty which soon after followed. 2. *Elenfus*, on the Borders of *Megaris*, almost impregnable fortified by the thirty Tyrants when they had the command of *Athens*, by whom it was designed for their Retreat in all times of Danger. But having withdrawn thither on the taking of *Phyla* and *Piræus* by the *Thessalians*, they found strong Walls and a weak defence for so much Wickedness, being trained out as to a Parly, and so deprived of the Place and their Power together. It was first built by one *Elenfus*, who entertained *Ceres* as she was in Quest of her Daughter *Proserpine*; who, to reward him, taught him the use of Agriculture; and he in honour of her built here a Temple. Hence *Ceres* in the Poets is called *Elenfus*, and her Sacrifices *Sacra Elenfus*; and sometimes the City also *Cerealis Elenfus*, so called by *Ovid* in the seventh Book of his *Metamorphosis*. 3. *Rhamnus*, upon the River *Asopus*, famous for the Temple of *Amphiarus*, and the Statue of the Goddess *Nemesis*, hence called *Rhemusula* in the Poets: this *Nemesis*, or *Rhemusula*, being the Goddess of Indignation, punished those who made themselves unworthy of their present Fortunes. 4. *Tricoronum*, of more Antiquity than fame. 5. *Marathon*, on the South-side of the River *Asopus*, opposite to *Rhamnus*; of great note for the Discomfure given by *Miltiades* the *Athenian* to the numerous Army of *Darius*, consisting of 200000 and 100000 Horse: the Emulation of which noble Victory flamed forth brave Resolves in the breast of *Themistocles*. As memorable in the Poets of those elder times for the *Marathonian* Bull there slain by *Theseus*. *Mopissia*, the ordinary Dwelling-place of *Theseus*, before he reached his Seat at *Athens*. It being at this Town that he rescued *Helen* (whom he had before stolen from her own Country) to her two Brethren *Castor* and *Pollux*; of which bold Rape and Restitution we find mention in *Ovid*, the one in the Epistle of *Oenone* to *Paris*, the other presently *Rudis Mopissia Tyndaris arbo Soror*, that is to say, that she was delivered to her two Brethren (who had taken much pains in seeking for her) in the Town of *Mopissia*. 7. *Piræus*, the Port town to *Athens*, and the ordinary Station for their Shipping, the Haven hereof being capable of 400 Sail; distant from the City about two miles, but joined unto it by two long Walls reaching from the one to the other, for securing the conveyance of their Merchandise to and from the Sea. The Port it self was impregnable fortified by the Advice of *Themistocles*. But as the long Walls were broken down by the command of the *Spartans*, when the City of *Athens* was taken by them, so were the Fortifications of *Piræus* it self demolished by the command of *Sylla*, in his War against *Archelaus* King of *Pontus*, the better to keep under the *Athenians*. 8. *Pæoneus*, a Sea-town also, and of very

good Trade, but not of such importance as the other was. 9. *Athens*, one of the Eyes of *Greece*, and the chief of *Æfrica*, situate from the Sea two miles, as before was said; the Haven of *Piræus* serving it with all Commodities which come from other parts by shipping. First built by *Cecrops* the first King of it, by whom it was called *Cecropia*, *A.M.* 2409; repaired afterwards by *Theseus*, and furnished with good Laws by *Salon*; and finally thus named from *Misæra*, (whom the *Greeks* called *Athene*) to whom they dedicated, and in whose Honour there were yearly kept some solemn Games, called *Panathenæa*. A City heretofore adorned with all these excellencies of Strength and Beauty which Art or Cost could add unto it. Renowned, as for many things, so for three especially: 1. For the inviolable Faith of the Citizens in all their Leagues, and most firm Affection to their Friends: so that *Fides Æfrica* grew in the end unto an Adage. 2. For the famous Scholars which here taught and flourished; so being so happy a Nursery of the choicest Wit, and so fitly seated for the Muses, that the very Natives, being in other Countries, could sensibly perceive some want of that natural Vigour which at home was refrant in their spirits. *Trius corpora sibi Genis separata sint in alias Regiones, Ingenia vero solis Athenienium muris clausa esse testantur, ac Pelionis hathi*. It, yea, and to say the truth, it was a most famous University, from whose great Gift the Conduct-pipes of Learning were delivered over all the World. Yet did not Learning so effeminate or soften the hearts of the people, but that 3. This one City yielded more famous Captains than any in the World besides, not excepting *Rome*; *Miltiades*, *Archides*, *Themistocles*, *Cimon*, *Pericles*, *Alcibiades*, *Phocion*, and divers others of great name. Who though they were the men that both defended and enlarged this Commonwealth, yet were the people so ungrateful to them, or they so unfortunate in the end, that they either died abroad in Banishment, or by some violent death at home. *Themistocles*, the Champion of *Greece*, died an Exile in *Peris*, *Phocion* was slain by the people, *Demosthenes* made himself away by Poison, *Pericles* was many times endangered, *Theseus* their Founder first deposed, and then desperately imprisoned, *Archides*, *Alcibiades*, *Nicias*, &c. banished for ten years by the Ostracism; a form of Punishment, so called, because the name of the party banished was written on an Oyster-shell; and only used towards such who either began to grow too popular, or potent among the men of service. Which Device, allowable in a Democracy, where the over-much powerableness of one might hazard the Liberty of all, was exercised in spite of other than for desert. A Country-fellow meeting by chance with *Archides*, desired him to write *Archides* in his shell: and being asked whether the man whose Banishment he desired had ever wronged him? he replied, *No, he was only sorry to hear folk call him a good man*. We find the like unfortunate end to most of the *Romans* fo redubbed in War. *Coriolanus* was exiled, *Camillus* confined to *Ardea*, *Scipio* murdered, with divers others; only because their Vertue had lifted them above the pitch of ordinary men. *Ventidius* was disgraced by *Antony*, *Agrippa* poisoned, with the privacy of *Domitian*, *Caracalla* murdered by the command of *Nero*: all able men, yet living in an Age wherein it was not lawful to be valiant. In latter times it happened to *Gonstato* the great Captain, who having conquered the Kingdom of *Naples*, driven the French beyond the Mountains, and brought all the Italian Potentates to stand at the *Spartans* devotion, was by his Master called home, where he lived obscurely, though honoured after his decease with a solemn Funeral. Worse fared the *Gustaf* and *Biron* in France; worse *Effex*, and *Du Rely* of *Northumberland*, with us in England. Neither



the *Greeks* were valiantly defended by *Leonidas* King of *Sparta* with no more than 300 of his men, who, having valiantly resisted that Army which in his passage out of *Perfa* had drank Rivers dry, and slain at least 30000 of them, died every man upon the place. To hide the greatness of which Loss, left it should terrify the rest of his Army which were coming on, *Xerxes* commanded all the slain men to be buried in several Pits, except a thousand; as if no more than they had been lost in that passage.

Places of most observation in it are, 1. *Theſſia*, on a River of the same name, at the Fall where into the Bay it is pleasantly seated; shadowed on the North with a Branch of the Mountain *Helicon*, and consecrated, as that was, unto the *Muses*, hence called *Teſpiades* in the Poets. 2. *Platee*; nigh to which *Mardonius*, General to the *Persians*, was overcome by the *Greeks*, with the loss of *Maronius* himself and 160000 men on the *Persian* side; and on the other no more than 313 *Spartans*, 16 *Aradians*, 52 *Athenians*, and about 600 of the *Megarenses*. In memory of which brave exploit, and to preserve the names and honour of those Worthies who there laid down their Lives for the Liberty of *Greece*, there was a Festival kept annually by the *Plateans* in the month of *September*, with solemn Sacrifices, and a kind of divine acknowledgment unto the deceased, continued from the time of *Arifides* the *Athenian*, who first ordained them, to the days of *Plutarch*, who records it; but how long after I am not able to say. In this great Fight the commander in chief was a noble *Spartan*, called *Pausanias*, who, afterwards having a Design to make himself Sovereign of all *Greece*, and being discovered in the Practice, fled for Sanctuary to the Temple of *Pallas*. From whence because it was counted Sacrilege to constrain him by violence, it was unanimously resolved to wall up the Entrances his own Mother laying the first stone. It is recorded that before the fighting of this Battle, the *Albani* had been told by the Oracle that they should be Conquerors; if they fought upon their own ground: whereupon the *Plateans*, within whose Territories the *Persians* had prepared to fight, bestowed that Field on the State of *Athens*. In requital of which noble act, *Alexander* the Great re-edified and enlarged their City, having been first burnt and sacked by the *Persians*, and after levelled with the ground by the *Lacedaemonians*, because confederate with *Athens* in the War against them. 3. *Leuttra*, remarkable for the great Overthrow which the *Thebans*, upon the Conduct of *Epaminondas*, gave unto the *Spartans* and their King *Cleombrotus*, who was there slain: by which Victory they did not only preserve their own Liberty, but brought their Enemies to that fall of Courage and Reputation, that they could never rise again: the divine Vengeance overtaking them in that very place where some of their Nation had deflowered the Daughters of *Scadaeus*, who had given them courteous Entertainment. For which when no Reparation could be had from the State of *Sparta*, the unfortunate Damocles flew themselves, to avoid the infamy of consenting to their own Dishonour, and were buried in those very Fields where this Battle was fought. 4. *Ascræa*, the Birth-place of *Hefiod*, a man (according to *Paterculus*) elegantis ingenii, & carminum dulcedine memorabilis: though it hath pleased that proud Critick, *Julius Scaliger*, intending to decise *Virgil*, to prefer the worst Verse in the *Georgicks* of the one before the whole Works of the other. 5. *Labadia*, near the River *Cephissus*, the Inhabitants whereof were counted the most superstitious of all the *Grecians*: memorable for the *Trojanian* Den or Cave, and the Oracle there given by *Jupiter*, hence called *Trophenus*: into which Cave none were permitted to enter and receive the Oracle, but af-

ter many Ointings, Washings, and the like Superstitious preparations, too long and many to be specified in this place and time. A Town which still preserves to much of its ancient Estimation, that from hence (as I conjecture) the whole Country of *Achaia* hath the name of *Livadia*, by which the *Turks* call it at this present. 6. *Chærona*, or *Chæronia*, the Birth place of *Plutarch*; near unto which was fought that memorable Battle between *L. Sylla* and the *Romans* against *Archelaus*, one of the Lieutenants of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, leading an Army of 120000 Souldiers, of which 10000 only escaped with life, the *Romans* losing but 14. 7. *Orechemnus*, no less memorable for another Victory obtained by the same *L. Sylla* against *Dorileus*, another of that King's Commanders, having an Army of 80000 men, of which 20000 lost their lives that day. After which Victories, when *Sylla* might easily have destroyed that King, he suddenly patched a Peace up with him, that he might hasten unto *Rome*, where *Marinus* and *Cinna* had trodden his Faction under foot: preferring by that act the pursuit of his own private Quarrels before that of his Country, endangered more by *Mithridates* after his return, than it had been formerly. 8. *Aulis*, a Port-Town on the Shores of the *Egean* Sea, where the *Grecians* took shipping when they went to the War of *Troy*; here making Oath never to give over the Enterprise until they had destroyed that City. Concerning which thus lie in *Virgil*.

*Non ego cum Danais Trojanam exscindere Gentem*  
*Aulide paravi.*

That is to say,

I took no Oath at *Aulis*, to destroy,

As did the *Greeks* the Town and State of *Troy*. But the chief of this Country, and such as had a special Influence over all the rest, was the City of *Thebes*, situate on the Banks of the River *Cephissus*, where it was built by *Cadmus* the *Phœnician*, after all his wanderings. Famous in old times for the Wars between *Ætæus* and *Polynices*, the Sons of the unfortunate Prince *Oedipus*, and of his Mother and Wife *Jocasta*. The History of which War is the most ancient piece of Story that we find of all *Greece*; the former times and Writings containing nothing but Fables, little favouring of Humanity, and less of Truth; as of men changed into Monsters, the Attributes of the Gods, and the like. In this Town lived *Pelopidas* and *Epaminondas*, who so crushed the *Lacedaemonians* at the Battels of *Leuttria* and *Manitæa*, that they could never after re-obtain their former Puissance. This Commonwealth long flourished, and at last, being over-burthened in the *Theban* War, was glad to submit itself to the Protection of the *Macedonians*, under the leading of King *Philip*; who by this means first got footing in *Greece*, into which afterwards he thrust his whole body. Upon the death of *Philip*, *Thebes* revolted from the *Macedonians*, but *Alexander* his Successor quickly recovered it: and to dishearten the *Greeks* in the like Attempts, he raised the City, filling all the Inhabitants of age and strength; only *Pindarus*'s house he commanded to be left standing in honour of that learned Poet. At the sack of this Town, one of the *Macedonian* Souldiers entered the house of a principal Woman, named *Timothea*, ravished her, and rifled her Coffers, but still demanding more Treasure, she shewed him a deep Well, saying that there all her Money was hidden. The credulous Villain stooping down to behold his Prey, the troubled him into the Well, and overwhelmed him with Stones. For which noble act, the generous Prince not only dismissed her unhurt, but most highly commended her. It was after re-edified by *Cassander*, and followed for the most part, as the rest of the *Thebians* did, the Fortunes of *Macedon*. It

is reduced at this time to the state of an ordinary Borough, and called *Sivies* by the *Turks*.

4. *PHOCIS* is bounded on the East with *Boeotia*, on the West with *Doris* and *Locris*, on the North with the River *Cephissus*, and on the South with the Bay of *Corinth*. A Country somewhat twined with Mountains, but those of eminent note in the elder times. The chief whereof are, 1. *M. Licon*, 2. *Cithæron* both consecrated to the *Majesty*, and both containing with *Parassus* for height and bigness. 3. *Parassus*, of so great an height, that in that great Delta, e in which most of those parts of *Greece* were covered themselves and many others on the Top here: for which, and for its two Summits reaching to the Clouds, it is of great renown amongst the Poets; as in *Ovid* thus,

*Montis verticibus petis ardens Astra duobus.*  
*Nomine Parassus. Superæque cacamine Nubes.*

To passeth there with its two Tops extends

The lofty Clouds Stars, and all the Clouds transcends.

Places of most observation in it are, 1. *A. Theia*, situate near the Sea, and famous for the *Helleborum* there growing, an Herb very medicinal for the Phrenetic; whence the Poet, *Naevius*, *Antic*, *ram*, applied to mad-men. 2. *Pythia*, or *Pythia*, said to be sacred not only in the middle of *Greece*, but of all the World: *Strabo* relating how *Jupiter*, desirous to know the exact middle of the Earth, let loose two Eagles, one from thence, and the other from the West, which flying with an equal Wing, (so we must conceive) and meeting at this very place, showed it apparently to be the Navel of the World. By reason of which convenient situation in the Heart of *Greece*, it was made a solemn Town for all the *Grecians*, and honoured with the Court and general Assembly of the *Amphictyons*; men chosen out of the prime Cities of *Greece*, who had power to decide all Controversies, and to make Laws for the common good. A Court first instituted by *Asterius*, as *Strabo* teaches us: or, as *Hæcarnæus* more probably, by *Amphictyon* the Son of *Helle*, from whom they seem to have their name. The *Amphictyons* from the several Cities, with reference to the places for which they met, had the name of *Pythiænes*, when assembled, they were called the *Amphictyons*: their Meeting, were at the beginning of the Spring and Autumn. Some instances of censuring their Authority will not be amiss. In the time of *Cimæ*, the *Corinthians*, having by Piracy wronged the *Theſſians*, were tried by this Council; and after that the *Lacedaemonians* for kidnapping *Camæa*, and the *Phocians* for troubling the Land of *Cirra*, which belonged to the Temple of *D. Phoebus* by them annexed: and because they could not obliterate, and paid not their arrearsments, their Dominions were adjudged to be confiscated unto that Temple. So they, disobeying this Decree also, spoiled the Temple itself: for which *War*, *Cæsar*, who by the Assistance of *Philip* King of *Macedon* brought them to Obedience, the Council was again assembled, in which it was decreed that the *Phocians* should raise the Walls of their Cities, that they should no more lose Heart and Arms, that they should no more lose the Temple, nor any longer have a Voice in those Conventions. It was at this time enacted, that the *Sacrifices* of the *Phocians* should be vetted. In King *Philip* and his Successors, Kings of *Macedon*, in whom the *also* did the perpetual Prebend their, and made them Princes of that State. A Court to which the *Sacred* of the *Greek* Evers amongst the *Turks*, and, in our times, the Dots of the Empire, and the At-

families of the *Swissers*, carry most resemblance. 3. *Cirra*, on the Sea-side, the Port-town to *Delphos*. 4. *Crissa*, so called from *Crissus* the Son of *Phobus*, and grandchild of *Æacus*, situate on the edge of the Bay of *Corinth*, called sometimes from hence *Crissus Sinus*. 5. *Scæparia*, memorable for the Defeat of *Cristallus*, Captain of the *Alban* Army, by *Mællus* one of the *Roman* Pretors: the Loss of which Battle drew after it the Destruction of *Corinth*. It was observed in the success of this great Fight, that a Band of *Acadians*, clapping out of the Battle, came into 6. *Elatea*, another City of this Province, and were there kindly entertained on memory of some former Alliances, till news came of the Overthrow of *Cristallus*; when they were ordered by the State of *Phocis* to relinquish the Town, (for Adversity seldom meeteth with returns of Friendship.) They were let upon and all slain by the *Romans* in the last famous place in which their Ancestors had unworthily forsaken the aid of the *Grecians* in their War against *Philip* King of *Macedon*, for the publick L. cre. 7. *Danlia*, a City appertaining to *Toreus* King of *Thrace*, who, having married *Progne*, the Daughter of *Canis* King of *Albania*, ravished her sister *Philomena*, and cut her Tongue, the better to keep his Villany undiscovered. But *Progne* being made acquainted with the double Injury, first made him ignorantly eat his own Son *Tis*, whom he had baked in a Pie, and after killed him, with the help of her ravished Sister. 8. *Delphos*, renowned in old times for the famous Temple of *J. P.* in which, with that of *Jupiter* *Hæmmon* in *Macædo*, (now reckoned as a part of *Egypt*) were the most famous Oracles of the ancient Gentiles; dark Riddles of the D. vil, couched and conveyed with so much Cunning, that the meaning of them was most hidden, when it was thought most easy to be discerned. An Instance of which is that given to *Cræsus*, in the War by him projected against the *Persian*, which was thus delivered;

*Cræsus! per te rursus magnam subvertet opem vim.*  
When *Cræsus* over *Haly* goes,

A mighty Nation he o'ethrows.

Which he interpreting according to his own hopes, crossed the River, was vanquished by *Cyrus* King of *Persia*, and his Kingdom conquered. The like we find of *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, who, before he made a War against the *Romans*, consulted with the Oracle, and received this Answer;

*Alto, Æacida, Romanos vincere posse.*

Which doubtful Prediction he thus construed, *Te posse vincere Romanos*, That he should overcome the *Romans*; but found it unto his cost that the meaning was, *Romani posse vincere te*, That the *Romans* should overcome him: as indeed it happened. By another kind of the same Fallacy, which the Logicians call *Amphibolia*, did this great Enemy of mankind overthrow another, who, demanding of the Oracle what Success he should have in an Expedition which he was in hand with, received his Answer in these words,

*His redibus nunquam per bella peribis.*

Which he thus pointing, *His redibus, nunquam per*, &c. engaged himself in the War, and was therein slain. Whereupon his Followers, canvassing the Oracle, found the meaning of it to be this, *His redibus nunquam, per se*.

The like Juggling he also used in those supernatural Dreams which Philosophers call *Superventive*. For *Cæsar*, dreaming that he cannally knew his own Mother the night before he passed over the *Rubicon*, became Lord of *Rome*, the common Mother of the *Romans*; and *Appian*, the Son of *Pisistratus* the Tyrant of *Athens*, having upon the same precepts the same Dream, was killed and buried in the B. wells of his Mother the Earth. So that *Cæsar* miscarried in his action, and *Appian* thrived; yet still

had the Devil been reputed his Crafts-master, and the Father of Truths. But as the Ecclesiastical History telleth us, that *Julian* the *Apostate*, consulting with the Devil, was told that he could receive no Answer, because that the Body of *Babylus* the Martyr was entombed him his Alter: so neither could the Devils deceive the World, as formerly they had done, after *Christ*, the Truth it self, was manifested in the Flesh, and tormented these unclean Spirits, though, as they alledged, before their time. *Angelus*, as *Suidas* telleth us, in whose time our Saviour was born, consulting with the Oracle about his Successor, received this not satisfying Answer:

Ἐρεβὶς κηλεύει με θεοὶ καὶ ἀγγέλων ἀπάντων  
Τὸνδε θεόν σφραγίσαντα καὶ αἰδῶν ἄνθρωπον  
Λατρεῖν ἀπὸν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ ἀγγέλοις.

An Hebrew Child, whom the blessed Gods adore;  
Hath bid me leave these Shrines, and pack to Hell;  
So that of Oracles I can no more.

In silence leave our Altar, and farewell.

Whereupon *Angelus*, coming home, in the Capitol erected an Altar, and thereupon in Capital Letters caused this Inscription to be engraven, HÆC EST ARA PRIMOGENITI DEI. Now as the Devils had by *Curf's* Birth lost much of their wanted Virtue, so after his Passion they lost it almost together. Concerning which *Plutarch*, in a Tract of his Morals called *Thei* καὶ λατρεῖν ἀπὸν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ ἀγγέλοις, telleth us a notable Story, which was this. Some company, going out of Greece into *Italy*, were about the *Echinades* becalmed, when on a sudden there was heard a Voice loudly calling on one *Thamus*, an Egyptian then in the Ship. At the two first calls he made no answer; but to the third he replied, saying, *Here I am*. And the Voice again spake unto him, bidding him, when he came to the *Palades*, to make it known that the great God *Pas* was dead. When they came unto the *Palades*, which are certain Shelves and Rocks in the *Ionian Sea*, *Thamus*, standing on the Poop of the Ship, did as the Voice directed him: whereupon was heard a mighty Noise of many together, who all seemed to groan and lament with terrible and dubious shrieking. News hereof coming to *Tiberius*, he caused the learned men in his Empire to enquire out of their Books who that *Pas* should be: by whom it was answered, that he was the Son of *Mercury* and *Penelope*, with Ignorance enough, and little satisfaction to the business propounded to them. Such therefore as more narrowly observed the Circumstances of this accident found it to happen at the time when our Saviour suffered on the Cross; who was indeed the true God *Pas*, the chief Shepherd and Bearer of our Sorrows, as the Scripture calleth him: and that, upon this divulging of his Death and Passion, the Devils who used to speak in Oracles, did with great Grief and Lamentation forsake that Office, which had been so painful to them in seducing Mankind. That all Oracles at that instant ceased, I dare not say; though it be certain that about that time they began to fail: it being said by *Juvenal*, who lived in the Reign of *Dominian*, Delphis Oracula cessant, that the Oracle of *Delphos* was then silent; the rest decaying suddenly in a short time after.

But to proceed. The Temple of *Apollo* being spoiled by the *Phocians*, as before was noted, caused the War betwixt them and the *Thebans*, called the Holy War, in which the *Thebans*, being like, to have the worst, but for *Philip* of *Macedon*, who made an end of the Quarrel by subduing both. The Treasure which the *Phocians* found in the Temple was reckoned at 60 Talents of Gold; but it proved *Astruc* Talsunum, and brought a sudden Ruine on their State and Nation: Sacrilege being so unpardonable a Crime, even amongst the Heathen, that the

fault of some few, countenanced by the rest of a people, hath brought Destruction on them all. It was afterwards with the like ill fortune rankfaced by *Brennus* and his *Gauls*, in the wain of the *Macedonian* Empire, all of them miserably perishing who had any hand in it.

5. *LOCRI* is bounded on the East with *Phocis* and a Branch of the *Aegean Sea*, on the West with *Ætolia*, on the North with a long Ridge of Hills which part it from *Theffaly*, and on the South with parts of *Achaia*, *Beotia*, *Phocis*, the Bay of *Corinth*, the Straights of *Aurintrium*, and a part of the *Ionian Sea*. So that for largeness of Extent, and the commodiousness of the Seas, it yieldeth to no Province in *Achaia*, though not so fruitful as some others. Divided into the three Nations, of the *Locri Ozæla*, lying towards the South, on both sides of the Straights, so called from some ill Smells of the Country or people, 2. the *Epinemidii*, inhabiting the middle parts, named from Mount *Cnemis*, not far from *Parnassus*, and 3. the *Opuntii*, so called from *Opus* their chief City, lying on the North-side of the River *Cephissus*, on the Coasts of the *Aegean* or *Evbean* Seas.

Chief Cities of the whole, 1. *Opus*, the Head-City of the *Opuntians*, situate on the River *Asopus*, being one of the main Branches of *Cephissus*. 2. *Cynus*, the Port-Town to *Opus*. 3. *Thronium*, the prime Town of the *Epinemidii*, mentioned by *Polybius*, *Lyotie*, *Ptolemy*, *Aconides* at the foot of Mount *Cnemis*, whence they had their name. 4. *Amphissa*, the chief City of the *Ozæla*, situate in the inland parts of it: the People whereof, refusing to yield to the Sentence of the *Amphictyones* against their Confederates the *Phocians*, were the cause that *Philip* of *Macedon* returned into Greece. Against whom, grievously insulting the *Boeotian*, and manifestly aspiring to the Command of Greece, the *Athenians* desperately opposed; not so much with possibility of prevailing, as being urged on by the sharp and biting Orations of *Demosthenes* made against his Proceedings: which being by him called *Philippicks*, occasioned *Tully* to call his bitter Invectives against *M. Antonius* by the same name also. But the Success hereof was such as commonly attendeth a broken Fortune: The *Athenians* being vanquished at *Cheronæa*, and *Philip* declared Captain of Greece against the *Persians*, obtained under that Title the Command of the fought. 6. *Enantia*, as *Ptolemy*, *Ocantia*, as *Pliny* and *Pausanias* call it, opposite to *Ægira* in *Achaia Propria*. 7. *Molycria*, by *Ptolemy* placed here, and by others reckoned in *Ætolia*: not far from whence is the Promontory of *Antirrhium*, so called because just opposite to that of *Rhium* in *Achaia Propria*, between which runneth a narrow Strait, (not so wide as the *Hellspont*) which openeth into the Bay of *Corinth*: each Promontory being fast that cause fortified by *Bajazer* the second with a very strong Garrison, that on this side being gallantly defended by the *Turks*, when besieged by *Doria*, Anno 1534, for being forced with great Slaughter into a strong Tower, which commanded the Cattle, they rather chose to blow it up, together with the Ammunition, Victuals, and themselves to boot, than that the Fort should come into the hands of the Enemy. Some place this Promontory in *Ætolia* also; but, following the authority of *Ptolemy*, I have placed it here. 8. *Nauractis*, so called from the building of Ships there by the *Heracleids*; situate on the *Corinthian Bay*, near the Mouth thereof. Given, after the Citizens of *Albens* to the poor *Massilians*, unwilling to have them trouble some Neighbours, and their coming to be quiet Slaves) compelled them to seek new Habitations. It hath of late been called *Lepanto*, giving the name of the Gulf of *Lepanto* to the Bay of *Corinth*; by that

that name subject for a while to the *Venetians*, and from them taken by the *Turks*, Anno 1499. Of these *Locrians* those of *Italy* were a branch or Colony, whose Law-giver was *Zaleucus*, spoken of elsewhere.

6. *DORIS* is bounded on the East with *Phocis*, on the West with *Ætolia*, on the North with the Hill *Ossa*, and other Mountains which divide it from *Theffaly*, and on the South with *Ætolia* and part of *Locris*. The Air here of is very healthy, and the Soil sufficiently fruitful, if well manured; but now the greatest part lieth waste for want of Tillage. First peopled by the *Dores* or *Dorieuses*, descended from *Dorus* the Son of *Helen*, and Grandchild of *Democoon*, by whom they were placed in *Theffaly*, afterwards spreading into this Country, which they left their name to as their proper Dwelling: though many of them, following the *Heracleids* into *Peloponnesus*, possessed themselves of the greatest part of *Laconia* also; imprinting on the same their Dialect or form of Speech, from them called the *Doric*.

Chief Cities hereof are, 1. *Doris*, so called in memory of *Dorus*, the first Progenitor of this People. 2. *Ermenus*, seated at the Foot of *Parnassus*, mentioned by *Thucydides*, *Sirabo*, *Mela*, *Ptolemy*, and the rest of the Ancients. 3. *Bium*, as *Ptolemy* says *Bionas* as *Strabo* and *Pliny* call it. 4. *Cyminum*, near *Parnassus* also, in the common Impressions of *Diocorus Siculus* the Historian fallily called *Cynthium*. 5. *Lilea*, situate not far from the Spring or Fountain of the River *Cephissus*; which, rising hereabouts, passeth through the whole length of *Achaia*, and falls into the *Aegean* or *Evbean* Sea.

7. *ÆTOLIA* hath on the East *Locris*, on the West *Phocis*, on the North *Doris*, on the South the *Ionian Sea*, said to be so called from *Ætolus*, the Son of *Mars*, who, being by *Salmonus* cast out of *Elis*, fixed himself in this Country.

Here is the Forest of *Calydon*, where *Meleager* and the Flower of the Greek Nobility slew the wild Boar. Here is the River *Euenus*, over which the Centaur *Nessus* having cried *Dejanira*, Wife of *Hercules*, and intending to have ravished her, was slain by an Arrow which *Hercules* on the other side of the River shot at him. Here also is the River of *Abelous*, of whom the Poets fable many things: as that being Rival with *Hercules* in the love of *Dejanira*, he encountered him in the shape of a Bull; and that when *Hercules* had plucked off one of his Horns, the Nymphs made it of their so-much-celebrated *Cornucopia*.

The people of this Country were the most turbulent and unruly people of all Greece, never at Peace with their Neighbours, and seldom with themselves. The *Macedonians* could never tame them, by reason of the Craginess of the Country: yet they brought them to such terms, that they were compelled to let the *Romans* into Greece, who quickly made an end of all.

Principal Towns hereof were, 1. *Chalcis*, situate near the Spring-head of *Abelous* before mentioned. 2. *Aradus*, near the River so called; which, arising hereabouts, passeth into *Epirus*, and falleth into the Bay of *Ambracia*, not far from *Nicopolis*. 3. *Olennus*, not far from the Gulf of *Calydon*. 4. *Picronne*, giving name to the adjoining Country, called hence *Picronnia*, the People whereof had the name of *Curces* ἀὐτὸν τὸν κούρην from their wearing, being their custom to shave the fore-parts of their Heads, and let the Hair grow on the hinder-parts only, of *Hesperus* casarise approbation, because their Enemies should not lay hold on them by the Fore-top, and so put them down. 5. *Thermus*, the Parliament City, or place of general Assembly, for all the States of

*Ætolia*: which Meeting was called *Panætolium*. It was chosen for those Meetings in regard of the situation and strength thereof, as being situate well-near in the midst of the Country, environed with rocky Mountains, of steep and difficult ascent. For that cause it was made also the receptacle of their Wealth and Treasure in all times of danger; but taken as the last by *Philip* of *Macedon*, with all the Spoil in it, in his War against them. 6. *Calydon*, near the Forest so called, giving name unto the royal Seat of *Oeneus*, Father of *Meleager*, divided into two parts by the River *Euenus*, which runneth through it, according unto that of *Ovid*.

Er Meleagream maculatus sanguine Nefci  
Eucnus Calydonia fecit.

That is to say,

*Calydon*, *Meleager's* Town, the Floud  
Even divides, deni'd with *Nessus* blood.

Adjoining herunto were the *Atabamians*, whom *Pliny* makes a People of it, who gave name unto a little Province called *Atabamania*; but such (as little as it was) as gave it the Title of a Kingdom to *Antimander*; a Prince whom the *Ætolians* made special use of in their Wars against *Philip* King of *Macedon*, the Father of *Perses*, suggesting to him and his Children, that they were descended of the House of *Alexander* the Great, and so engaging them, in hope of that Kingdom, to hazard the quiet of their own. The places of most note are, 1. *Dium*, 2. *Athenæum*; both of them taken by *Philip* in that War.

These, as they were the last Actors on the Stage of *Achaia*, so had they the most deplorable part in all the Tragedy of that Country. The Affairs whereof, governed successively by that State which was most powerful, were for a long time managed by the *Athenians*; whose Councils and Conclusions went for Law amongst them. But that Estate being broken, if not subverted, by the Power of *Sparta*, the *Thebans* and *Boeotians*, who came next in play, had the chief Command; uniting almost all the rest in design with them against the *Spartans*, who now grew terrible to all. Becoming insolent by the course of too much Prosperity, and the many great Victories which they had against the *Spartans*, and thereupon quarrelling with the *Phocians*, they were the cause of *Philip's* coming into Greece; who, as he had learned amongst them the use of Arms, so made he use thereof at last, and of their Dissentions, to unite all the States of Greece under his Command; *Thebes* it self being taken and sacked by *Alexander* the Son of *Philip*, as before is said. The *Macedonians* thus prevailing, partly by Force, but especially by Art and Practice, there was no People in *Achaia* that durst oppose them; till these *Ætolians*, a restless and impatient People, took the Cause in hand. Who thrived so well under *Antigonus* and *Philip*, two of the last Kings of *Macedon*, that they took from them many Towns, invaded *Theffaly*, attempted *Macedon* it self, and, when they could not otherwise obtain their purpose in the Destruction of that Kingdom, opened a passage for the *Romans* to elect it for them. But finding no such favour at the *Romans* hands as they did expect, they began to murmur, and afterwards to excite *Antiochus* and the *Greeks* against them, drawing thereby those Forces against themselves which they had invited into Greece, and were the first People of all the *Grecians* that were conquered by them; though, by the Mediation of the *Rhodiens* and some other Friends, their Country was restored unto them, with the loss only of *Cephalenia*, *Zint*, and some other Islands; which the *Romans* were relieved to keep as the fruits of the War. This was about the 564 year of the building of *Rome*, *Fulvius Nobilior* being then Consul, and chief *Coman*



mander in this War. After which time the several Estates hereof enjoyed so much Liberty as the Romans, their new Masters, thought fit to give them: till they were finally made absolutely subject in the time of *Vespasian*, by whom *Achaia* was reduced into the form of a Province, *Peloponessus* being reckoned as a part thereof. In the Division of the Empire by *Constantine* the Great, the West parts hereof being divided from the rest were called *New Epirus*; but both of them made Provinces of the Diocese of *Macedon*, under the *Profectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*; the principal Officer of this part being called the *Proconsul of Achaia*: continuing under him and his Successors, Emperours of *Constantinople*, till the Destruction of that Empire by the power of the *Turks*; but so that it remained not always under the Command of one sole Officer, the Politie of that State being altered, and this Country parcelled out into many Governments, especially after the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Latines*, or Western Christians. At that time *Theodoros* Imperial, a noble *Græcian*, and one of the (then) Imperial Family, seized on *Aetolia* and *Epirus*; part of which last, and also the first, he left to *Michael* his Son, who held them, though with some dispute: twixt him and *Michael Palæologus*, the first Emperour of *Constantinople* after the Expulsion of the *Latines*, *Charles*, the last Prince of that Family, dying without Issue about the year 1430, bequeathed *Aetolia* to another *Charles*, the Son of his Brother, and *Acarnania* (being that part of *Epirus* which the Princes of *Aetolia* held, to his late Sons, *Momon*, *Turmus*, and *Hercules*. But man Quarrels happening upon this Division, *Amurat* the second having then newly conquered *Thessalonica*, composed the Differences by taking all unto himself, Anno 1432. There were at that time other Princes of like Authority, as of *Athens*, *Phocis*, and *Beotia*; but the first the chiefest, as honoured not only with the Title of *Dukes of Athens*, but of Princes of *Achaia* also; such being the Fortune of that City, as to have the first and last great Say in the Affairs of *Achaia*. For at the Translation of the Empire upon the *Latines*, *Gedroff* of *Troyes*, a French man, was made Duke of *Athens* and Prince of *Achaia*, of whom *Paulus Æmilinus* speaketh, Anno 1220: which Honour afterwards was conferred on *Walter de Breu*, a Kinsman of *John de Breu*, the last King of *Jerusalem*, Protector of *Baldwin* the second the last Emperour of the *Latines*, mentioned by the said *Æmilinus*, Anno 1288. And though on the Defeat and death of this *Walter* by the *Catalanians*, then ransacking those parts of *Greece*, the Title of Duke of *Athens* was assumed by *Frederick Alphonso*, the Son of *Frederick* King of *Scily*, and by other Princes of that House: yet, upon better ground, by the Heir general of this *Walter* it was conveyed in Marriage to *Ignatius de Accio*, a Nobleman of the Realm of *Naples*; whose Son *Walter* (commonly called the Duke of *Ateneis*) for a time obtained the Sovereignty of the State of *Florence*, Anno 1342, but lost it suddenly again by his too much Cruelty. *Francis de Acciolo*, the last Prince of this House, having been brought up in the Court of *Alab* the Great, as one of his Favourites, surrendered his Estate herein, at the persuasion of that Tyrant, in charge for the Country of *Beotia* and the Dukedom of *Twicks*; which he no sooner had received, but he was seized by *Mahomet* to *Joan* his Lieutenant in *Morcia*, by whom it first he was courteously received, at last cruelly murdered. And to the whole Country of *Achaia* fell into the possession of the *Turks*, Anno 1454, or thereabouts.

**EPIRUS** is bounded on the East with *Aetolia*, on the West with the *Adriatick*, on the North with *Thessaly*, *Macedon*, and some part of *Albania*, and on the South with the *Ionian* Seas. So called from the Solidity and Firmness of it, the word *Epirus* in the *Greek* Tongue signifying as much as *Terra firma*, or the firm Land. But by the *Turks* at this day it is called *Albania*, whiche name they give to all the Lands and Countries in their possession lying under the *Adriatick* and *Ionian* Seas.

In this Country was born *Olympias*, Mother of *Alexander* the Great; and *Pyrrius*, who conquered the Realm of *Macedon*, and was the first Foreiner who made tria (though to his own Loss) of the Power and Puissance of *Rome*; accounted by *Hannibal* next to *Alexander* the second great Souldier of the world. Here is also Mount *Pinus*, sacred to *Apollo* and the *Muses*, dividing this Country from *Thessaly*, and therefore common unto both: as also the *Acrocætanian* Hills, so called, because they are so much subject unto Thunder and Lightning, eminent for their height, and much feared by Mariners, who, when they see a little Cloud rising on the top thereof, are sure of a Tempest. Finally, here are the famous Rivers *Acheron* and *Cocytus*, which, for their black waters and unfavourable taste, are said to be the Rivers of Hell; which last the Sacrifices and Solemnities made in honour of *Proserpine*, whom *Plato* vanished and brought hither, had the name of *Cocytia*. Thence, by a Metonymy, these Rivers are taken sometimes for Hell itself; as in that of the Poet,

*Flettere sic neque Sæperos, Acheronta movet.*

Since those in Heaven I cannot move,  
The Powers of Hell I mean to prove.

The Soil hereof is very barren, and in many places full of Forests, and thin of people, but towards the Sea reasonably fruitful: plentiful of Oxen, Dogs, and Sheep, of more than ordinary bigness, and yielding the best breed of Horses. The people use a distinct Language from the *Græcians*, though of the *Greek* Tongue not utterly ignorant; and by reason of the Barrenness of their own Country, become great Wanderers, especially in Summer-time, when they travel into *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Alia Minor*, hiring themselves to work in Harveit under the *Turks*, as also to thresh, winnow, and make clean their Corn; and in the Winter-time return to their Wives and Children. They are able of body, swift of foot, apt to undergo any Toil and Labour; having with good Courages and high Projections: which makes such of them as delight not in works of Drudgery to look for action in the Wars, and otherwise to rob and spoil the neighbouring Mountains of *Albania*. Till their Subjection to the *Turks*, they were much used both by the Kings of *Hungary* and the State of *Venice* in their several Wars, serving on Horse or Foot, as occasion was: as Mercenaries by the *Switzers* in the Western parts, but not so faithful to the party entertaining them.

Anciently it was divided into *Chaonia* (which was the proper *Epirus*) lying on the West, and *Acarnania*, bordering on *Aetolia*, in which it is parted by the River *Achelous*: the middle parts hereof being *Amphilochia*, *Thesprotia*, and *Almene*: all very populous in former times, and so continued till *Paulus Æmilinus*, on the Conquest of *Macedon*, overthrowed seventy of their Cities. Few of which being since re-edified, and the Country for a long time languishing under the *Turks*, here are not a very fair Towns or well peopled Cities at the present to be spoken of; and therefore we must look on such as flourished in the times fore-going. The principal, at which were, 1. *Dagana*, one of the Cities

### 3. EPIRUS.

of *Chaonia*, memorable for the Temple and Oracle of *Jupiter*, hence called *Dodonæus*; situate in a fair Grove, the Trees whereof are said to be Vocal, and to give the Oracle: though others say, It was delivered first by a pair of Pigeons, whereof the one afterwards fled to *Dolphos*, the other to the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon* in *Ægypt*. It was the ancientest Oracle of all *Greece*: and so perhaps was the Town the ancientest Town also. Said to be first built by *Dodon*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Europæ* more probably by *Dodonim*, the Son of *Joveon*, and Grand-child of *Jupiter*, who first inhabited this Region, the whole Country (*Greece* I mean) being called *Ægeon* from the Father, (by which name commonly it occurreth in the Hebrew Text) this Town *Dodon* from the Son. 2. *Casipæ*, a Port-Town, with a fair Promontory of the same name adjoining to it. 3. *Ouchefensis*, by *Strabo* called *Onchimus*, and by *Pliny* *Echinus*, a Port-Town also, now called *Santi Quaranta*. 4. *Pavornius*, on the Sea-side also, retaining still the old name, and but little else. 5. *Antigonia*, more within the Land, founded or repaired by *Antigonus* a King of *Macedon*, now called *Argiro Cefiro*, as *Niger* thinketh. 6. *Phenice*, once the chief Town hereof; which being sacked by the *Illyrians*, under *Tenta* their Queen, gave the Romans an occasion of Quarrel with them, upon Complaint made to them by the *Epirots*. 7. *Pelades*, a Port-Town, the Principal in that part which was called *Thesprotia*; as 8. *Tarone*, on the River *Thyanis*, and 9. *Sybotæ*, an ancient Haven-Town, (now called *Syotæ*) was in that part whereof which was called *Almene*. 10. *Argos*, the chief City of the *Amphilochians*: this part hereof was first named *Molossia*, from *Molossus* the Son of *Pyrrius*; and *Andromache* remarkable for the belt breed of Hatives, hence called *Molossi*: and afterwards (*Quaslibet* *Helene* the Son of *Prianus*, whom *Pyrrius* the Son of *Achilles* settled in this Country; who having unfortunately slain his Brother *Phaon*, caused it in memory of him to be called *Phaonia*; *Chao*namque *omnem* *Trojanæ* *Chao*ne *duxit*, as it is in *Virgil*. Of these *Molossians*, *Plato*, the third Son of *Saturnus*, was sometimes King, called, from the flat and hollow situation of this Country, consisting much of deep Valleys, the King of Hell.

Towns of especial note in *Acarnania* were, 1. *Ambracia*, on the Bay of *Ambracia*, now called *V. antissa*. 2. *Ambracia*, the Regal Seat or Court of *Pyrrius*, giving name unto a fair and capacious Bay, now called *Golfo di Larta*, from *Larta* an adjoining Town, situate in or near the place where *Ambracia* stood. It was once subject unto *Perander*, King or Tyrant of *Corinth*, who being slain by a Woman named *Leontia*, whom he kept as his Concubine, occasioned the Inhabitants from that time forwards, in memory of their Deliverance, to worship a Lion. Afterwards being taken from the Children of *Pyrrius* by the *Macedonians*, and from them won by the *Aetolians* in the time of their greatness, it was besieged by *Pulvius*, a Roman Consul spoken of before. Who, seeing that he could not force it, was willing, at the Mediation of the *Athenians*, *Rhodiens*, and other Friends of both parties, to conclude a Peace; but so that he dissolved this City at his going hence of much excellent machinery, carrying away with him unto *Rome* the Pictures of the nine *Muses* most admirably well done by the hand of *Zeuxis*, the rarest Painter of his times. 3. *Bathrotrium*, a Roman Colony, by *Pliny* called *Colonia* simply; now a small Village called *Burtrino*. 4. *Leucas*, situate on the point of a Promontory of the same name also, anciently memorable for the Temple of *Apollo*. By leaping into the Sea from the top of this Promontory, such as unfortunately were cured of that malady: the first trial of that kind being made by *Sappho* that famous Poetress.

At that time it was joined unto the Land; but since by the violence of the Sea or the hand of man, it is made into an Island; according unto that of *Ovid*,

*Leucæda continam veteres habuere Coloni,*

*Nunc Fræcis crementum.*

That is to say,

*Leucas*, in former times join'd to the Land,  
Environ'd round with Waters now doth stand.

It was called *Leucas* from the Whiteness of the Rock of Promontory, having before the Separation or disjunction of it been called *Neritos*; the chief Town of it varying with the name of the Isle and Promontory. Both Town and Island at this time is called *S. Marre*, taken by *Bajazet* the II. from the State of *Venice*, and by him given unto the *Jews*, (who do still inhabit it) at their expulsion out of *Spain*. 5. *Nicopolis*, a Colony of the Romans, of great both Wealth and Beauty in the time of *S. Paul*, who from hence dated his Epistle to *Titus*: called in that Poetrick *Nicopolis* of *Macedonia*, because *Epiros* at that time was part of the Province of *Macedon*, though afterwards a distinct Province of itself. It was first built by *Augustus Cæsar* on a Promontory opposite unto *Actium*, on the other side of the Bay: that being the place where his Land-Souldiers were incamped before the Naval Battle betwixt him and *Mark Antony*, and from a poor man and his Ass whom he met there the day before. For asking the man his name, he told him that his name was *Entycheus*, i. e. Fortunate; and that the name of his Ass was *Nicor*, i. e. Conquerour; which happy Omen made his Souldiers courageous and hopeful of Victory: and he in memory thereof erected there two brazen Images, the one of the Ass, the other of his Master. It is now a small Village called *Preveza*. 6. *Actium*, on the Sea-shore, high unto which *Augustus* and *Antony* fought for the Empire of the World. The Navy of the latter consisted of 700 Gallies, the former had 250 only; but those crowned with Victory: *Antony* himself deserting his Souldiers to follow after *Cleopatra*, who on the very first Charge fled away for *Ægypt*. The Town being now ruined, the Promontory upon which it stood is called *Caba di Figalo*.

The Country was first peopled by *Dodonim* the Son of *Joveon*, or at least by some of his Posterity coming thither from the Isle of *Rhodes*, whose Memory was preserved a long time in the Town of *Dodon*, by him, or from him, so denominated. Afterwards being parted into several Nations, and those Nations united in the common name of *Epirots*, it became a great and powerful Kingdom; governed by a Race of Kings descending from *Pyrrius* the Son of *Achilles*, and continuing till the time *Pyrrius* was *Eacides*. A man of such Courage and Magnanimity, that he did not only recover his own Kingdom, of which *Cassander* had deprived his Father; but got the Kingdom of *Macedon* from *Cassander's* Children; out of which, he tried his Fortune with the *Romans*, Anno *Mundi* 363, U. C. 471. After his death this Kingdom was thrice taken by the *Macedonians*, and shortly after subdued by *Paulus Æmilinus*, who, as we now said, destroyed 70 Cities hereof in one day. For desirous to satisfy his Souldiers after his Victory in *Macedon*, he sent unto the *Epirots* for ten of the principal men of every City. These he commanded to deliver up all the Gold and Silver which they had, and to that end, as he gave out, he sent certain Companies of Souldiers along with them; unto whom he gave secret Instructions, that on a day by him appointed they should fall to sack every one of the Town whereunto they were sent. A barbarous and bloody Deceit, 70 Cities confederate with the *Romans* ruined in one day, and no fewer than 150000 *Epirots* made and

fold for Slaves. But the chief motive which induced him to so great a Cruelty was, by discippling this Country, to give with a long and fair Sea-coast over against Italy, to lying the Romans opportunity to land their Armies with out any Resistance for the farther Progress of their Forces into Macedonia, Thracæ, Mesia, or where else they pleased. Which ungodly Policy was afterwards imitated by William the Conqueror, who laid waft all that part of Hampshire, since called New Forest, and therein 36 Parish Churches, that he might have a safe Landing-place for his Norman Forces, if the English should at any time endeavour to make head against him. Being made subject to the Romans, it was a while part of the Province of Macedonia; but afterwards, when Macedonia was made a Diocese, it became a distinct Province of it self, called by the name of Old Epirus, to difference it from the Province of New Epirus, which lay Eastwards of it. At the Division of the Empire it belonged to the Constantinopolitans, and so continued till the taking of Constantinople by the Western Christians: at what time Theodorus Angelus, a Prince of the Imperial Family, seized on Ætolia and Epirus, as before was said, and sped for well in his Designs, that he took the strong City of Dracenza from the State of Venice, (to whom it fell in the division of that Spoil) and cunningly (if not treacherously) intercepted Peter the third Emperor of the Latins, whom, as some say, he caused to be Murdered at a Banquet. After his death, his whole Estate being divided into two parts, Ætolia with that part hereof which is called Chaonia, continued in his House till the time of Charles Prince of Ætolia and Epirus spoken of before, after whose death it was subdued by Amurat the Second, as before was said. The residue hereof, together with that part of Macedonia which is called Albania, fell to the Family of the Castriots: the last of which, named John, (the Father of Scanderbeg) seeing himself unable to resist that Tyrant, who had already swallowed up all his Neighbour-princes, submitted his Estate unto him, and gave unto him all his Sons for Hostages. No sooner was the old Prince dead, but Amurat seized on his Estate, murdered his three eldest Sons, and caused George, the youngest to be traid up in the Law of Mahomet: who afterwards, escaping out of his Power and recovering all his Father's Countries, assumed also the Title of Prince of Epirus. After whose death, his Children, not being able to make good their Game, lost it to Mahomet the Great; as shall be shewn more fully in the Story and Description of Albania, which is next to follow.

#### 4. ALBANIA.

ALBANIA is bounded on the East with Macedonia, on the West with the Adriatick, on the North with Scævonia, on the South with Epirus. The Country is mountainous and barren; watered with few Rivers, and thence of no great note amongst the Ancients; as 1. Lani, 2. Apfus, 3. Panyalus, 4. Celydons: all of them falling into the Adriatick.

It took this name from the Albani, once the Inhabitants of this Tract, from whom the chief City hereof was called Albanopolis. Other Towns of most consideration are, 1. Spetigrade, 2. Vestigard, (called by some the Holy City) situate in the Borders of Epirus, on the top of an Hill, where it is fenced about like an Eagle's Nest: one of the best Towns in all this Country which was taken by Scanderbeg at his recovery of his Birthright and Estate herein; but being once taken by him, held good courageously against the Turk, the Souldiers neither fainting in their Oppositions, nor corrupted by Money, till at the last subdued by a Superstition. There was in the Town one

only Well into which a treacherous Christian cast a dead Dog, at the fight of which, being the next day drawn up, the Souldiers gave up the Town, being so unreasonably superstitious, that no persuasion, nor the example of the Captain or the Burgo-masters, could make them drink those (as they thought) defiled waters. 3. Dracenza, a Town of great strength, first called Epidaurum, and afterwards Dyrrhachium. Under the Walls of which Town was the first bickering between the Souldiers of Cesar and Pompey, not only to the present Loss, but also the utter Discomfiture of Cesar, as he himself confessed, if the Enemies Captain had known how to have overcome I must not omit the Valour of Scævus at this Siege, who slew long resisted Pompey's Army, that he had 250 Dartthick in his Shield, and lost one of his Eyes; and yet gave not over till Cesar came to his Rescue.

*Parque novum Fortuna videt contere, Bism Aque Virum* — desquingere ferens in Pellice System.

Fortune beholds an unaccustom'd Sight, An Army and a man together fight.

Whole breast a Wood of Arrows covered quite. In the Division of the Eastern Empire amongst the Latins it fell into the power of Venice, taken at last after a long and tedious Siege, by Amurat the second, Anno 1474. 4. Dibra, in the Hill-Countries, near Epirus, the first Town which submitted to the Valiant Scanderbeg at his revolting from the Turke; supposed to be the Debrum of Ptolemy. 5. Croia, conceived to be the Epitaur of Ptolemy, the chief Town of all this Country seated amongst inaccessible Mountains, and made impregnable by Art: not got by Scanderbeg, but by a Wife, who, having got into his power, the Secretary of the principal Bafa, forced him to write Letters in his Master's name unto the Governour hereof, to deliver it into his hands; which was done accordingly. Afterwards it was in vain besieged by Amurat the second, who under the Walls thereof gave up his wretched Soul to the Devil; and thence being to Mahomet his Son and Successor, before he could again possess it, but taken at the last after Scanderbeg's death, as the Generous or Tutelar Deity of the place had departed with him. 6. Petrella, a Town of great Strength, seated on the Top of an Hill (as almost all the Towns of Albania are) about 25 miles from Croia delivered unto Scanderbeg at his first sitting down before it: as also was Petra Alba, three miles from Petrella, near the Borders of Macedonia, and situate like the other on the top of a Mountain, the River Emathus running under the bottom of it. Scanderbeg, fifty miles from Croia, built on the top of an high Hill in the middle of a pleasant and fruitful Valley, with great and spacious Plains about it. 9. Dagnar Derna, a place of great importance in the Hill-Country towards Scævonia; for the possession whereof rose a War between Scanderbeg and the State of Venice, but the Venetians being worsted at the Battle of Drino, relinquished their Pretensions to it. 10. Anion, a Port-Town, now called Valona, situate over against Hyduntum or Orontus in Italy, distant from it about 60 miles. The Town is unsuitably fit for the invasion of Italy, and was accordingly made use by Achmetes the chief Bafa under Mahomet the Great, who from hence passed his Army over into Apulia, took the Town of Otranto, and had near the death of Mahomet and the Combustions, thence following amongst the Turke, altered the Design, might have opened a very fair way for the adding of Rome unto Constantinople. 11. Apollonia, a Town of great note in the time of the Romans, a Sea-Town, furnished with commodious Haven, which they held as their Entrance into Greece; to that purpose serving them as commodiously as Calais did the English in their Wars with France.

This

This Country anciently was a part of Macedonia, inhabited by the Talantini, Æthras and Albani, from which last (but not till these latter times) it had the name of Albania; but whether these Albani were a Colony of the Albanians of Asia, (though it is very probable) I determine not. When it was made a Province of the Empire it contained all Prevalitana and some part of Macedonia Salutaris; being under the Diocese of Dacia in the time of Justinian, but at first of Macedonia. Dismembered from the main Body of it when the Latines had subdued Constantinople, it fell up to the noble Family of the Castriots; who, though they took unto themselves the Title of Kings or Princes of Epirus, (most of which they held) as the Country is more Note and Eminence, yet was Albania the greatest Strength, and Croia the chief City thereof, the Seat of their Residence: they being called in that respect by some Writers the Kings of Albania. John Castriot, the Father of Scanderbeg, seeing himself unable to resist the Turke, became their Homager, and delivered four Sons for Hostages, whom Amurat the second in their Father's life time caused to be circumcised, and turn Mahometans; and after his decease murdered the three eldest, and seized upon Croia the chief City, with the rest of the Country. But George, the youngest of those Sons, being reserved for better Fortune, was carefully brought up by Amurat (who somewhat passionately affected him) in the Stratagems of War, though some of his Courtiers told him that he nourished a Serpent in his Bosom, which would one day sting him. Amurat, to make trial of his Disposition, offered him on a time the Crown of Albania: to which he prudently replied, that he preferred the honour of his Service before all the Kingdoms of the World; and that he held his hand fitter for a Sword, than his Head for a Crown. Satisfied with which Answer, the Tyrant preferred him to the place of a Sanzack, or Provincial Governour, and gave him some office of Command in all those Armies which he let out against the Christians, Escaping out of the Battle wherein Caraman, the great Bafa, was overthrown and taken Prisoner by Hamad, he got the Town of Croia by a piece of wit, as before was said; and in a very short time after made himself Master of Petrella, Petra, Alba, Stelissa, and all the rest of the Country, by the reputation and return of his first Successors Having recovered his Inheritance out of the hands of the Turke, he reconciled himself to the Church of Christ, flying himself the Souldier of CHRIST JESUS from that time forwards. Invaded by a vast Army of Turke, he overcame Aly Bafa, and kills 20000 of his men with no more than 20 Horse and 50 foot he assauleth Musphala in his Camp; in which 5000 Turke were slain, and 300 taken. With whom encircling not long after in the open Field, he slew 10000 of his men, took many prisoners, and Musphala himself amongst the rest, whom he ransomed for 25000 Ducats. Falling upon the Host of Amurat, then besieging Croia, he killed Feris Bafa hand to hand in a single Combat: and in the time of Mahomet, who succeeded Amurat, vanquished Usac the great Bafa, routed his whole Army, had the spoil of his Camp, took 30 of his fairest Enemies, and slew 20000 of his Souldiers. Not to instance in the rest of his noble Actions, it is reported that in the course of his War against the Turke he killed no fewer than 3000 of them with his own hands; using a Turke's Scimitar in all his Fights, of great weight and bigness. Which when Mahomet on a Peace between them had desired to see, and afterwards returned again with this Centure of it, that he saw nothing in it more than ordinary: the gallant Prince sent back this Answer, that the Virtue of the Weapon depended on the Strength of his Arm, which he could not send him, for that he did reserve it for the death of his Enemies. Finally, ha-

ving held his Cards against Amurat and Mahomet, two most fortunate Gamblers, for the space of 24 years, he set up his Rest at last a Winner; dying in Peace at Lissa, then belonging to the State of Venice, Jan. 17. An. 1466, and was there honourably interred. At the taking of which Town by the Turke about nine years after, his Body was digged up by them, not in spite; but honour, that man accounting himself happy who could get any of his Bones to preserve as a Relic, supposing that as long as he had it about him he should be invincible. But with him died the Liberty of his Country, also not long after subdued by the Turke, and made a Province of that Empire, as it still continueth: the name of Albania being by them extended over all Epirus, and so much of Dalmatia also as is under their power.

The Arms of this Kingdom (or rather of the Kings thereof) were Gules, an Eagle Sable.

#### 5. MACEDONIA.

MACEDONIA is bounded on the East with the Ægean Sea, on the West with Albania, on the North with Mesia Superior and a part of Thracæ, and on the South with Epirus and Achaia.

It was first called Æmonia, from Mount Hamus, which shunth up that side hereof which is towards Mesia, after Æmathia, or Emathia, from a King of it called Æmathus; Macedonia, from Macedo, the Son of Deucalion, and the Father of Caranus, the first King of the Line of Alexander, and finally Krim, or the Land of Krim, whereof see 1. Macedon 1. 1. and 8. 5. from Krim the Son of Javan, and Grandchild of Japhet, who was planted here. Anciently it was of more large extent than it is at the present, extending from the Ægean Sea unto the Adriatick, till the taking of Albania out of it, which hath streighted it upon that side, but the rest is as formerly.

The Country taking it together, is very fruitful and pleasant, though on the outward parts thereof begin with rough Mountains and thick Forests; former times much celebrated for its Mines of Gold and Silver, which are long it is exhausted. It contained formerly the Provinces of Æmathia, Pieria, Pelagica, Iphionia, Philottis, Thessalia, Mydonia, Amphaxitis, Paraxia, Edoniz, and many others of less note, inhabited by 152 several Nations: now principally divided (besides Albania) into, 1. Thessalia, 2. Macedonia (specially so called, and 3. Mydonia, which the Turke call Jamboli.

1. THESSALIE hath on the East the Ægean Sea, on the West Albania, on the North Macedonia and Mydonia, on the South Achaia. A sweet and delectable Country it is, the Pleasures and Delights whereof inclined the People to be very effeminate and dissolute in their course of life, made them in love with Luxury and Ease, and much like the Persians in Behaviour, whose Entrance into Greece they did therefore favour. Yet notwithstanding this Debauchedness, they were esteemed the best Horsemen of all the Grecians: by their excellent managing of which creature, (as if they had been one piece with it, and either lent the Horse their Minds, or borrowed his Body) they gave occasion unto the Fiction of the Centaurs, half Men, half Beasts.

It is now called Comenitaria, and of old was very famous for many things, especially 1. for the Hill Olympus of so great height, that it seemeth to transcend the Clouds and is therefore frequently by the Poets used for Heaven itself. 2. For the Hill Othrys, inhabited by the Lapithæ, over whom Pirithous, was King. 3. for the Mountains of Pelion and Ossa, the Dwelling-places of the Centaurs, who, intending to ravish Hippodamia, the new Bride of Pirithous, on her Wedding-day, were slain by Hercules and

C c

and the *Lapithe*. 4. For the delectable Valley of *Tempe* situate betwixt *Ofsa* and *Olympus*, extending in length fix miles, and five in breadth; so beautified with Nature's Gifts, that it was supposed to be the Garden of the *Muses*. 5. and lastly, For the *Dolopes* and *Myrmidones*, (who did here inhabit) over whom *Achilles* had Command at the Siege of *Troy*; these last by reason that they were a laborious and thrifty People, being fabled by the Poets to have first been *Emmetts*, transformed into men at the Prayer of *Neptune*, when he wanted Soldiers.

--- *Mores quos ante tenebat*

*Nunc quos habent; parcam genus ex patris; laborum  
Quæstique tenax, & quod quæstia referret.*

The custom they of *Emmetts* still retain,  
A sparing Folk, and unto Labour set,  
Strangely addicted to all kind of Gain,  
And wary Keepers of what e're they get.

Places of most observation in it are, 1. *Trica*, the Episcopical See of *Heliodorus*, the Author of that ingenious Piece called the *Athiopick History*; which he professed, that he chose rather to lose his Bishoprick then consent to the burning of his Book, which a Provincial Synod had adjudged to the Fire. A Piece indeed of rare Contexture and neat Contrivances, without any touch of loose or lascivious Language: honest and chaste Affection being the Subject of it, not such as old or modern Poets shew us in their Comedies or other Poems. For here we have no Incessant mixture of Fathers and Daughters, no Pandarism of old Nurses, no unseemly Action specified where heat of Blood and Opportunity do meet; nor indeed any one passage unworthy of the chaste Ear. 2. *Lamia*, where the *Athomians*, after the death of *Alexander*, hoping to recover their Freedoms, befeged *Antipater*; which was the last honorable Enterprize undertaken by that great and renowned City, known in old Histories by the name of *Bellum Lamiacum*. 3. *Larissa*, situate on the South of *Demetrius*, but on the same Bay; memorable for the Birth of *Achilles*, from hence called frequently in the Poets *Larissæ Achilles*, which Birth of his is ascribed by others to the Town of *Phthia*, (from whence the Region called *Phthiotis* takes the nomination) frequently mentioned in the Poets upon that account: and possibly, being neighbouring Cities, the one might be the place of his Birth, and the other of his Habitation. 4. *Demetrius*, situate on the Bay called *Sinus Pelagicus*, (now *Golfo dell' Armiro*) of very great strength by Art and Nature. Which bei g held by the *Macedonians*, together with *Chalcis* in the Isle of *Eubœa*, and the City of *Corinth*, kept all Greece in awe, and were therefore commonly called the *Fetters of Greece*; the *Græcians* never thinking themselves at liberty till those Towns were disannihilated by the *Romans*. 5. *Pharsalia*, high to which was fought the great Battle betwixt *Cæsar* and *Pompey* for the Sovereignty of the *Roman Empire*. A Battle more famous then bloody, 6000 only of 300000 which were in the Field on both sides, being therein slain. A Battle before which the *Pompeians* were in such a miserable Security, that some of them contended for the chief Priesthood, which was *Cæsar's* Office: others disposed of the Consulship and Preferrments in the City of *Rome*. *Pompey* himself being to wretches, that he neither considered into what place it were best to fly if he lost the day, or by what means he might provide for his own Safety, and end the War; as if the War had been made against some ignoble Enemy, and not against that *Cæsar* who had taken 1000 Towns, conquered 300 Nations, took prisoners one million of men, and slain as many. 6. *Philippi*, so named from *Philip the Macedonian*, the first Founder of it; situate in the farther part of the fame Plains of *Thessalia*, and famous for as memorable a Battle as that before, and of no less consequence:

that namely betwixt *Augustus* and *M. Antonius* on the one side, against *Brutus* and *Caïsius* on the other; these latter being rather overcome by Chance then Valour. For either of them (thinking the other vanquished) flew himself in the Field; being the two last that ever openly stood out for the common Liberty, and are therefore called by *Crematius Cordus Ultimi Romanorum*, or the last of the true *Roman Spirits*. 7. *Gomphi*, a very ancient City bordering on *Epirus*. 8. *Phœre*, in which City *Alexander* the Tyrant reigned, against whom that noble Captain *Pelopidas* the *Theban* fighting was slain in Battle: the Tyrant being not long after murdered by his Wife's Brother, and by that means all *Thessaly* recovering liberty. 9. *Pegafa*, or *Pagafa*, situate on the Bay called *Sinus Pelagicus* which from hence is sometimes named *Pegaficus*; in which the Ship called *Argo* was said to be built, so famous for the renowned Voyage of the *Argonauts*. The Hill *Pelion* spoken of before is no far from hence. 10. *Pythion* or *Pitheum*, of great note (according to some) for the *Pythian Games* there celebrated in the honour of *Apollo*, who hercabouts killed the Serpent *Python*: the Conquerours in which Games were crowned at the first only with an Oak Garland, but afterwards with one of Laurel. Of which thus the Poet.

*Næve operis samam posset abolere Venus;*

*Infantis sacros celebri carmine Ludos;*

*Pythia de domiti Serpentis nomine dicitur, &c.*

Thus made to speak English by G. Sandys;

Then left the well-deserved memory

Of such an Act in future time should die;

He instituted the so-famous Games

Of free Contention, which he *Pythia* names

Who Ran, who Wrestled best, or rak'd the ground

With swiftest Wheels, the Oak Garland crown'd.

These Games, together with the *Olympick*, *Isthmian* and *Nemean*, spoken of before, made the four annual Meetings among the *Græcians*, renowned for the universal Concourse of the noblest Spirits. 11. *Dolice*, which, together with *Pytheum*, and 12. *Azorum*, another City of this Tract, standing near together, are called in *Livius* the Historian by the name of *Tripolis*. 13. *Hypata*, the Metropolis of *Thessaly*, so called by *Heliodorus* in his *Athiopick History* before mentioned, who placeth it near the Bay called *Sinus Malianus*, now *Golfo di Zuni* and not far from Mount *Oeta*, bordering on the Province of *Doris*: upon which Mountain *Hercules*, being tortured with a poisoned Shirt sent by his innocent Wife *Dejanira*, is said to have burned himself; thence called *Hercules Oetaeus*. Of all which Towns, *Lamia*, *Pagafa* and *Demetrius*, are in the Region called *Phthiotis*; *Larissa*, *Dolice*; *Pytheum* and *Azorum*, in that called *Pelagis*; *Gomphi* and *Tricca* in *Sphæotis*; the rest in *Thessalia* properly and specially to *Naevius*.

This Country, at first called *Æmonia*, afterwards *Pelagis*, then *Pyrrhæa*, from *Pyrrha* the Wife of *Dæmon*, and finally *Thessalia*, from *Thessalus* one of the Companions of *Hercules*; by *Pliny* is called *Dryopis*, *Episthii* by *Strabo*, *Pelagis* by *Diodorus*, and by *Homæus* *Argis*; the name of some chief City or particular Province being figuratively used for the whole. It was divided commonly into four parts, 1. *Theffalotis*, 2. *Iphæotis*, 3. *Pelagotis*, and 4. *Phthiotis*, the name of *Thessalie*, or *Thessalotis* in the end prevailing; and accordingly distributed to several Governments, united finally in the person of *Philip*, the Father of *Alexander*, who partly by Force, but specially by Art and Practice, made himself Master of the whole. Continuing in a mixt condition betwixt free and subject under the *Macedonian Kings* of the 2. Race; it became subject with that Kingdom to the state of *Rome*, which reckoned

reckoned as a part of the Province of *Macedon*; after a Province of it self, when *Macedon* was made a Diocese, part of which it was. But from a Province of that Diocese, and a Member of the Eastern Empire, it was made a Kingdom, given with that Title to *Boniface* Marquis of *Monferrat* in exchange for *Canada*, together with the City of *Thessalonica*, and some part of *Peloponessus*; at the Division of that Empire amongst the *Latines*; which Title he affected, in regard that *Reiner*, the Brother of *Boniface* his Grandfather, had formerly been created Prince of *Thessalie* by the Emperor *Emanuel*, whose Daughter *Cyri-Maria* (or the Lady *Mary*) he had took to Wife: In him as it began, so this Title ended; *Thessalonica* falling to the State of *Venice*, *Thessaly* reverting to the Empire when the *Greeks* recovered it: from whom it was subdued, and added to the *Turkish Empire*, in the Reign of *Amurath* the second, Anno 1432.

2. *MACEDON* specially so called is bounded on the East with *Mygdonia*, on the West with *Albania*, on the North with Mount *Hæmus*, on the South with *Thessalia*. The Country is for the most part fruitful as before was said, but not surfeiting with Delights as to make the people wanton or effeminate in their course of life; they being naturally good Soldiers, exact observers of military Discipline, and inured to Hardihood, which many signal Victories do most clearly evince both in *Greece* and *Asia*.

The *Greeks* in the pride of their own wits reckoned them amongst the barbarous Nations; and yet, by a strange kind of contradiction, ascribe unto their Country the Seats of the *Muses*. For in this Country was Mount *Pimple*, with a Fountain of the same name at the Foot thereof both consecrated to the *Muses*, from hence called *Pimplide*. Here also was the Hill *Libethirus* and the Province of *Pieria*; from whence the *Muses* had the names of *Libethrides* and *Pierides*; by this last called more frequently than by any other name whatever, especially by the *Greeks* themselves. But the Birth of *Arifotle* in this Country does more convince the *Græcians* of this foolish Arrogance than all the *Muses* in the world. A man so admirable in the general course of Learning, so universally comprehensive of all Arts and Sciences, that the best witted *Græcians* might have been his Scholar, and thought it a great Happiness, as King *Philip* did, that they had any Children to be tutored by him.

The principal Rivers hereof (besides *Erigon* and *Alion* spoken of before) are, 1. *Axius*, at present called *Vardaris*, rising out of the Hill *Scardus*, a Branch of Mount *Hæmus*, and passing through the whole extent of this Country into *Sinus Thermæicus*, or the Gulf of *Thessalonica*, as it is now named: the fairest River of these parts, and of sweetest water; but such as maketh all the Cattel black which drink of it. 2. *Chabrim* 3. *Echedorus*; both rising out of the mid-land Countries, and both falling into the same Bay also. Besides which there are other three fair and capacious Bays ascribed to *Macedon*, though two of them belonging properly to *Mygdonia*; that is to say, *Saguntis*, now *Golfo di monte Sinto*, and *Teronæica*, now the Gulf or Bay of *Aionæia*, and the third common unto *Thrace* also, which is *Sinus Strymonicus*, now the Bay of *Gentia*.

Towns of most observation in it, according to the several Regions and parts hereof, were for the *Almopi*, 1. *Hornæ*, called afterwards *Selenicia*; 2. *Enropus*, of which name there were four in *Macedon*; 3. *Apollonia*, Of *Sinica*; 4. *Trifolus*, 5. *Paræopolis*, 6. *Garsicus*, 7. *Heralia*, for distinction called *Heralæa Sinica*; there being many others of this name in *Greece*. In *Adonia*, bordering toward *Thrace*, 8. *Scardus*, 9. *Bergis*, 10. *Am-*

*phipolis*, on the River *Strymon*, with which it is encompassed, whence it had the name; feared to close on the edge of *Thrace*, that it is questionable to which of them it belongs of right; once garrisoned by the *Athenians*, and from them taken by *Philip the Macedonian* in the first of his Fortunes. 11. *Panderis*, bordering on *Thrace* also, and by some Writers laid unto it, but I think erroneously: repaired and beautified by *Philip* before mentioned, by whom it was called *Philippi*, and situate in a Country so rich in mines of Gold, that the said *Philip* drew hence yearly 10000 Talents, which make 600000 French Crowns or 140000000 English money. Afterwards made a *Roman Colony*; and accounted the chief City of *Macedonia*, as appeareth *Act. 16. 12.* to the People of which *S. Paul* writ one of his Epistles. Next in *Amethia* we have 12. *Tyrris* in the Mid-lands, bordering upon *Thessalie*, now called *Ceræ*, 13. *Adessa*, called afterwards *Ægea*, and now *Vodena*; the first Town of all this Country taken by *Cæsar*, the Founder of the first Race of the Kings of *Macedon*. 14. *Beræa*, on *Sinus Thermæicus*, honoured with the preaching of *Paul* and *Silas*, the Citizens whereof are by *S. Luke* commended for their readiness in receiving the Gospel, 15. *Pella* on the same Bay also, the Birth-place of *Alexander the Great*, from hence called *Pellæus Pellæus*. 16. *Pydnæum* upon the same Bay, at the influx of the River *Alaconia*, in which *Cassander* befieged and took *Olympus* the Mother, *Roxane* the Wife, and *Alexander* the Heir apparent of *Alexander* all whom he barbarously murdered. This Cruelty he committed, partly to revenge himself of *Alexander*, who had once knocked his head and the Wall together; and partly to cry quit with *Olympus*, who had before as cruelly murdered *Aridanus* the base Son of *Philip*, and *Eurydice* his Wife, with whom *Cassander* was supposed to be over-familiar. Memorable also is this Town for the great Battle fought near it betwixt *Perseus* the last King of *Macedon* and *P. Æmilius* the Consul, in which *Perseus*, having shamefully defeated his Army, lost both the Battle and his Kingdom, with no less than 20000 of his foot, which were therein slain; the *Romans* having to cheap a Victory, that it cost them not above an hundred or sixscore men. 17. *Dium*, not far from the Hill *Olympus*, and about a mile from the Sea, of which mile the River *Helicon*, becoming there a Lake, and called *Bathyrus*, taketh up one half. It is situate in the Borders toward *Thessalie*; the way unto it out of *Tempe* being straight and narrow, and almost impassable, by reason of the Spurs of the Mountains running overtwart it, which, had it been well defended by the *Macedonians*, would have kept their Country from the *Romans*, who that way attempted. But *Perseus* hearing that the Enemy had got into *Tempe*, only took care to get his Treasure out of *Dium*, and to abandoned both the Passage and the Town together. 18. *Phylæa*, more within the Land; as is 19. *Eriboæa*. But these four last are in that part hereof which is called *Pieria*.

3. *MYGDONIA* hath on the East the *Ægean Sea*, on the West *Macedon* properly and specially so called, on the North *Edonis* and *Sinus Strymonicus*, on the South *Sinus Thermæicus*, or the Gulf of *Thessalonica*; so that it is almost a Peninsula, environed on three sides with Water.

Here is in this Country the Hill *Athos*, standing in a Peninsula, the *Isthmus* being once cut through by *Xerxes* but since closed again; 't is to be 70 miles in circuit, 3 days journey long, half a day's in breadth, resembling the shape of a Man lying with his Face upwards: the highest point whereof, covered perpetually with Snow, is fable to cast a Shadow as far as *Lemnos*. It is exceeding fruitful both in Grains, Fruit, Oil, and Wine, and wondrous

plentiful in Hares, according to that of *Ovid*.  
*Quot Lepores in Atho, quot Apes pascuntur in Hybla.*  
 How many Hares on *Athos* feed,  
 What Swarms of Bees on *Hybla* breed.

It is inhabited only by Greek Monks, whom they call *Culivres*, of the order of *S. Basil*, to whom the Hill, commonly called the *Holy Mountain*, hath been long since dedicated: the place being so privileged by the Grand Seigneur, that neither *Turk* nor *Gracian* may inhabit in it, except such *Gracians* only as profess this life. Of these there are about 6000, dispersed in 42 Monasteries built after a military manner, for fear of *Thieves* and *Pirates*, wherewith they were much infested in times past: frequented with great Concourse of People coming thither to behold and adore some Reliques, (for which they are of much esteem;) the free Oblations of those Pilgrims, and some Benevolence from the *Turk*, which do much respect them, being the chief means of their Subsistence. The manner of their life is like that of the ancient Eremites: poorly clad, their Shirts of Woollen, which they both spin and weave themselves; none of them idle at any time, doing still somewhat for their Livelihood and the advancement of the House of which they are as dressing Vines, felling Timber, yea and building Ships. Few of them give themselves to Study, and some of them are of too gross an Ignorance, that they can neither write nor read. They are bound by their Order to lodge and entertain such Strangers as have occasion to pass that way, to their rank and calling, and that of free cost too, if it be desired.

Towns of most note, according to the several Regions and parts thereof, are, for *Mygdonia* specially and properly so called, 1. *Antigonis*, so called from *Antigonis* a King of *Macedon*, the first Founder of it. 2. *Xylodis*. 3. *Terpius*. 4. *Phryse*. 5. *Afforus*; all mentioned by *Ptolemy*, but not else observable. 6. *Apollonia*, for distinction sake called *Apollonia Mygdonica*, to difference it from *Apollonia Albania*, then a part of *Macedon*: famous for the Studies of *Augustus Cæsar*, who here learnt the Greek Tongue. For *Amphixia*, where was 7. *Arithusa*; 8. *Stragira*, now called *Stragiras*. 9. *Thessalonica*, situate on the bottom of *Sinus Thermicus*, now called the Bay of *Salonichi*; by the name of the Town. Anciently the Metropolis or Head-City of *Macedon*, the Seat of the *Presidius Prætoris* for *Illyrium* after the removal thereof from *Sirmium*; as also of the Primate of the Greek Church, who resided here.

To the people of this City did *S. Paul* write two of his Epistles. It continued in great power and credit till the Fall of the *Constantinopolitan* Empire into the hands of the *Latin*s: at which time it was bestowed first on *Boniface* Marquis of *Monferrat*, the new King of *Thessaly*; after whose death it fell into the State of *Venice*, who held it till the year 1432, when it was forced by *Amurath* the 2 to become *Turkish*. Which notwithstanding, it still preserves the reputation of a beautiful and wealthy City, inhabited by rich Merchants, who drive here a great Trade, especially for the commodities of the *Indies*; for beauty, Riches and Magnificence, little inferior unto *Naples*: and though the *Turks* and *Tems* make the greatest number of Inhabitants, yet here are reckoned 3 Churches for the use of *Christians*. As for the *Tems*, they swarm here in great abundance, that in this City and that of *Constantinople* only there are reckoned 160000 of them; but generally hated and contemned by all sorts of People, 10. *Siderocassa*, of old called *Chryses*, remarkable for its Mines of Gold and Silver, so beneficial to the *Turk*, that he received hence monthly 18000, and sometimes 30000 Crowns of *clavo*. Next for *Chalcidice*, there was 11. *Parmus*, a Port-

Town. 12. *Stratonica*, in the Peninsula of Mount *Athos*. 13. *Athos*, or *Athosa*, in the same Peninsula, with a Promontory of the same name, high which it flood. 14. *Acauthus*, now called *Erizzo*, on the Bay of the Holy Mountain. And finally in *Paravia* we have 15. *Ampeius*, 16. *Torona*, giving name to the Bay adjoining, called anciently *Sinus Toronæus*, now *Gulf of Stronina*. 17. *Callandra*, on the Sea-side, so called from *Callandra* King of *Macedon*, who repaired and beautified it; being before named *Potida*. 18. *Dieris*. 19. *Mervilis*. 20. *Pellus*, situate in the Cherfoneus or Demy-Iland called *Patalus*, and by some *Patalis*: formerly consecrated to the *Muses*, but before that infamous for the War which the *Gians* are fabled to have made here against the Gods, at what time it was called *Phlegra*, the Fields adjoining *Campi Phlegras*, in which this great Battel is supposed to be fought. The occasion of the Fable was, (as both *Theophrastus* and *Endoxus* do expound the fable) That the *Inhabitants* hereof in those elder times, being men of a most impious and insolent Life, got the name of *Gians*; when *Hercules* endeavoured to subdue and reduce to Reason, it happened that there fell a great Tempest of Thunder and Lightning, by which they were constrained to flee and submit themselves. Hence the Report that those *Gians* made War against the Gods. Others have placed these *Phlegra* Fields in *Thessaly*, and perhaps more probably. Certain I am, that some place nearer to the Hills of *Pellon*, *Ossa* and *Olympus*, doth agree best with it: if aless *Ossa* were not in its narration, who makes those Mountains to be heaped upon one another, for their better reaching to the Skies, and fighting upon even ground, as the saying is. For thus that Poet.

*Afflicte ferunt regnum caelestis Gigantes,  
 Atque congestos fronsit ad sidera Montus.  
 At pater omnipotens, missi per Olympum  
 Finibus, & excessu feruntur Pelion Olli.*  
 Which may be English in these words:  
 The *Giants* once the throne of Heaven assailed,  
 And Hills on Hills unto the Stars erected:  
 Till Jove with Thunder his Olympus brake,  
 And Pelion did from under *Ossa* take.

But from those Fables to proceed to more real Stories. This Country was first peopled by *Cittim*, the Son of *Javan*, passing over out of *Asia minor*: in memory whereof here was not only a Town called *Cittim*, spoken of by *Livius* l. 42. but the whole Land of *Macedon* is in the Book of *Maccabees* called the Land of *Cittim*, 1 *Maccab.* v. 1. and the Inhabitants hereof called *Cittim* in the 8. Chapter of the same Book, v. 5. Spreading in tract of time from one Sea to the other, from the *Ægean* to the *Adriatick*, some Colonies of them passed from hence to *Italy*, and first inhabited that Country, as hath been said. Such as continued in these parts, divided into several Tribes, as in all parts else, became in time to be united in the name of *Macedons*. A People not much taken notice of in the former times, living a poor and painful life, Goatherds and Shepherds for the most part, scarce able to defend their own Merds for the next Invaider, much less to dream of conquering either *Greece* or *Perfis*. And therefore *Alexander* told them, and not much unjustly, (though by him spoken in passion, and to their Disgrace) that his Father *Philip* had first made them *Gentlemen*. For *Philip*, having learned the Rudiments of War under *Epanomachus*, (being then an Hostage with the *Theban*s) and by that means becoming acquainted with the Temper and State of *Greece*, not only freed his own Kingdom from the *Illyrians*, *Thracians*, and other barbarous Nations, who had gained upon it; but taking advantage of the Factions raised amongst the *Gracians*, (which he knew how to feed and cherish for his own improvement)

ment) brought them at first wholly to rely upon him, and after to be subject to him. Inomuch that never any Monarchy had a swifter Growth, nor a more speedy Disolution: there passing not full 40 years from the first of *Philip* to the last of *Alexander*; in which space it was both begun, perfected, and broken to pieces. For the Foundation being laid in Murder, Perjury, and Treason, as at first it was, was never likely to be blessed with a long Continuance.

The Kings of *M A C E D O N*.

A. M.		A. M.	
3155	1. Caranans. 28	3560	13. Orestes. 3.
3185	2. Cenus. 12	3563	14. Archelam II. 4.
3195	3. Tyrmas. 31.	3567	15. Pansanias I. 6.
3223	4. Perdiccas. 58.	3568	16. Amyntas II. 6.
3234	5. Argus. 38.	3574	17. Argus II. 1.
3236	6. Philipus. 38.	3575	18. Amyntas III. 19.
3260	7. Ewropus. 26.	3594	19. Alexander II. 1.
3286	8. Alectas. 29.	3595	20. Alectoris 4.
3415	9. Amyntas. 50.	3599	21. Perdiccas III. 6.
3465	10. Alexander. 43.	3605	22. Philip II. 24.
3503	11. Perdiccas II. 28.	3629	23. Alexander the Great.
3536	12. Archelam. 24.		24. Arideus. 6.

Of these 24 Kings only 6 are famous: viz. 1. *Caranans*, the first King, originally of *Argos*, of the Race of *Hercules*, and by an Oracle commanded to lead a Colony into this Country, and to follow the first Flock of Cattel he saw before him. Being here arrived in a tempestuous stormy day, he espied a Herd of Goats flying the fury of the Weather: These Goats he followed unto *Ædella*, into which, by reason of the darkness of the Air, he entered undiscovered, none the Town, and in short space became Lord of all the Country. On which occasion as the Goat afterwards became the Arms and Ensign of the Kings of *Macedon*, so by that Beast those Kings were figuratively designed in the Holy Scripture: of which see *Dan*, 8. 5. 21. 2. *Perdiccas*, the fourth King, who at *Æge* built a Burial-place for all his Successors, assuring his People, that as long as their Kings were there buried his Race should never fail; and so it happened. For the Kingdom of *Macedon*, after the death of *Alexander* the Great, who was buried at *Babylon*, was translated to the Sors of *Demetrius*, 3. *Ewropus*, who in his infancy was carried in a Cradle against the *Illyrians* his Enemies, and returned victorious: This the *Macedons* did, either because they thought they could not be beaten, their King being present; or persuading themselves that there was none so void of Honour and Compassion as to abandon an Infant, no way able to save himself from Destruction but by the Valour and fidelity of his Servants. 4. *Alexander*, the Son of *Amyntas*, famous for a notable Exploit on the *Perfis* Embassadors; who, being sent from *Megabyzus*, requested a view of the *Macedonian* Ladies. No sooner were they entred, but *perulantis caris* *Perfis* *entrellamis*, as *Justine* relateth the Story, they were called back by this *Alexander*, sending in their steads young Sprinkals maddently attired; who, upon the like Indignities offered flow these effeminate *Asians*. After which he behaved himself so discretely, that the *Perfis* Monarch gave him all *Greece* between *Hæmus* and *Olympus*. 5. *Philip*, Father to *Alexander*, who governed first as a Guardian to *Amyntas*, the Son of *Perdiccas* his elder Brother; but afterwards took unto himself both the Kingdom and Title of King; which he continued in the Deposition of his Nephew and natural Sovereign, the Murderer of the rest of his Brethren, and the Destruction of all such as opposed

led his practice. But, being otherwise a man of approved Abilities, he cleared his own Country of the *Illyrians*, subdued *Acchia Thracæ*, and a great part of *Peloponnesus*, and was chosen General of the *Greeks* against the *Perfis*. But as soon as he had made all things ready for this Expedition, he was slain by one *Pansanias*, a young Gentleman whom he had formerly abused in the heat of his unnatural Lufts. 6. *Alexander*, the Son of *Philip*, who recovered such parts of *Greece* as on the death of his Father had befooled themselves with a hope of Liberty. He subdued *Darius* the great King of *Perfis*, *Taxiles* and *Porus* Kings of *India*; founded the Monarchy of the *Gracians*; and in the height of his Successes was poisoned at *Babylon* (as it is conceived) by *Cassander*, one of his great Captains: his Revenue at the time of his death amounting to 300000 Talents yearly. After his death his new-got Empire was much controverted in the point of Succession, he himself dying without lawful Issue, and having at the death bequeathed it to him who was thought most worthy by his Army: and his Souldiers, according to their several affections and Relations; thought their own Leaders most deserving. At last the Title of King (and in effect nothing but the Title) was by consent of the Commanders call on *Arideus*, a Ballard of *Philip*, to whom *Perdiccas* was appointed to be Protector, (for *Arideus* was a little crazed in his Brain) and to be General of the Army: by whose design he was also married to *Eurydice*, Daughter to *Amyntas*, whom *Philip* had before disposed of that Kingdom. As for the Provinces, they were assigned unto the Government of the chief Commanders, viz. *Ægypt* to *Ptolemy*, *Syria* to *Laomedon*, *Cilicia* to *Philotas*, *Media* to *Pytho*, *Cappadocia* to *Eumenes*, *Pamphylia*, *Lycia* and *Phrygia* major to *Antigonis*, *Caria* to *Cassander*, *Lydia* to *Menander*, *Pontus* and *Phrygia minor* to *Leontanus*, *Armenia* to *Selenus*, *Perfis* to *Eusebes*, *Thrace* to *Lysimachus*, and *Macedon* it self unto *Antipater*: the other parts of the *Perfis* Empire being left to them unto whose hands they were committed in the time of *Alexander*. But this Division held not long: for *Perdiccas* being once slain by *Ptolemy*, and *Eumenes* made away by *Antigonis*, these two became quickly too great for the rest; *Ptolemy* adding *Syria* and *Cyprus* to the Kingdom of *Ægypt*, and *Antigonis* bringing under his Command not only all *Asia minor*, but *Assyria*, *Media*, and almost all the Eastern parts of the *Perfis* Empire. *Antipater* in the mean time, succeeding in the Protectorship, banished *Olympias* the Mother of *Alexander* out of *Macedonia*, as bearing but a Step-dame's love unto *Arideus*. But he being dead the returned out of *Epirus*, (the place of her Banishment) into *Macedonia*, where raising a strong Party amongst the people, he put *Arideus* and his Wife *Eurydice* to death, proclaiming *Alexander* the Son of *Alexander* by *Roxane*, both slain not long after by *Cassander* the Son of *Antipater*, who, to make sure work, murdered also with the like Cruelty *Hercules*, the Son of *Alexander* by *Barisue*, (another *Perfis* Lady, as *Roxane* was) the last Survivor of that House. And so the Royal Family being rooted out, *Antigonis* took unto himself the Title of King: as did *Selenus*, who had now recovered all the *Perfis* Provinces beyond *Euphrates*. The like did *Ptolemy* in *Ægypt*; and *Cassander* in *Macedon*.

The second Race of the *M A C E D O N* Kings.

A. M.	
3648	1. Cassander Son of Antipater supposed to have been the Poisoner of Alexander, rooted out the Blood-royal of Macedon. His Reign was full of Troubles and Difficulties. 19.
3667	2. Alexander and Antipater, Sons to Cassander, but

but not well agreeing, called unto their Aid *Lyfmacbus* and *Demetrius*, by whom they were both in short time murdered. 4.

- 3671 3. *Demetrius*, son to *Antigonus*, the powerful King of *Asia*, after he had in one Battle against *Selenus* lost both his Father and all his *Asian* Dominions, settled himself in *Macedon*: but being there outed by *Pyrrius*, he fled to *Selenus*, and with him died. 6.
- 3677 4. *Pyrrius*, King of *Epirus*, was by the Soldiers, voluntarily forsaking *Demetrius*, made King of *Macedon*: but after 7 months the Soldiers revolted to *Lyfmacbus*, as being a *Macedonian* born. 1.

- 3678 5. *Lyfmacbus*, King of *Thrace*, being thus made King of *Macedon*, was in the end vanquished and slain by *Selenus*, the last Survivor of *Alexander's* Captains. 7.

- 3685 6. *Ceranus*, or *Ptolemy Cerannus* son to *Ptolemy of Egypt*, having traitorously slain his Friend and Patron *Selenus*, seized on *Macedon*: but lost it, together with his Life, unto the *Gauls*, who then plagued these Countreys. After whose death this Kingdom, being distracted amongst many Competitors, settled at last upon

- 3687 7. *Antigonus Gonatus*, the Son of *Demetrius*, who, for his Valour shewn in expelling the *Gauls*, was made King of *Macedon*. And though for a while he gave way to *Pyrrius*, then returning from *Italy*, yet after the death of *Pyrrius* he again recovered his Estate, but was outed once again by *Alexander* the Son of *Pyrrius*. 36.
- 3723 8. *Demetrius II.* Son of *Antigonus*, recovered *Macedon* from the power of *Alexander* the Son of *Pyrrius*. 10.

- 3733 9. *Antigonus II.* furnished *Deson*, left by *Demetrius* as Protector to his young Son *Philip*, usurped the Kingdom. He diverse times vanquished and crushed the *Greacians*, beginning then to cast off the Yoke of *Macedon*. 12.

- 3745 10. *Philip*, the Son of *Demetrius*. 42.
- 3787 11. *Perseus*, the Son of *Philip*, the last King of *Macedon*. The Subversion of which Estate

was first begun in the time of his Father, who had not only warred upon the *Aetolians* and other of the *Greeks* whom the *Romans* had taken into their Protection, but sided with *Antiochus* against them. Upon which grounds they sent first *Titus Q. Flaminius*, one of their Consuls, by whom *Philip* was vanquished at the Battle of *Cynoscephalus*, and his Kingdom made Tributary unto *Rome*. After which picking a Quarrel against *Perseus* also, managed with variable Success by *Licinius*, *Martius*, and others of their Commanders, they dispatched *Paulus Aemilius* with an Army into *Macedon*, to bring him to absolute Subjection. Who sped so well, that *Macedon* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, and *Perseus* led captive unto *Rome*, Anno 3789. In which Triumph, besides the Pomp of leading a Captive King in Bonds, *Aemilius* caused the ready Money which he brought out of *Greece* to be carried in 750 Vessels, every Vessel containing three Talents; which made so infinite a Sum, that the *Roman* people were free for many years after from all Taxes and Impediments. A. M. 3789.

*Macedon*, thus made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, and afterwards divided into three parts or Provinces, that is to say, *Macedonia Prima*, *Macedonia Secunda*, or *Salutaris*, and *Præsalutaria*, in the new Model of *Constitution* became a Diocese, the Diocess hereof containing the Provinces of *Crete*, *Achaia*, *Old* and *New Epirus*,

*Macedonia Prima*, and the greatest part of *Salutaris*, the residue of *Salutaris* and *Præsalutaria* (which makes up the Country now called *Albania*) being laid to the Diocese of *Dacia*. It continued part of the Eastern Empire till towards the last fatal dissolution of it; though many times harassed and depopulated by the *Scythians*, *Bulgarians*, *Rosses*, and other of the barbarous People, at their several Invasions of it. Finally, it was conquered by the *Turks*, first, under the Conduct of *Bajazet*, their fourth King, taking *Nicopolis*, a Town hereof bordering on *Thrace*, and lying North of *Sinus Strimonicus* now the Bay of *Contes*; and after under *Amurat* the second their sixth King, making themselves masters of *Thessalonica*, the chief City of it, and therewith of all the Country. By reason of which many Invasions and last Defolation by the *Turks*, there is scarce one of all those many Cities before mentioned now of any eminence, except *Thessalonica* only; the rest being miserably destroyed. And for the Country it self, it is governed by a *Turkish Sanzack*, under the Beglerbeg of *Greece*; his annual Revenue being but 8000 Crowns, nor any thing else required of him then to maintain 100 Horse in ordinary pay for defence of his Province, and to find 400 Horse on extraordinary occasions, as the Grand Seigneur shall command him.

### 6. THRACE.

**THRACE** hath on the East *Pontus Euxinus*, on the North the Hill *Hæmus*, on the South the *Ægean* Sea and part of *Macedon*. It is a very large and goodly Province, extending 20 days journey in length, and 7 days journey in breadth; and, in relation to the Heavens, reaching unto the 44. Degree of the Northern Latitude; so that the longest Day in Summer is about 17 hours, three quarters.

By several men, according to the times they lived in, hath been called by divers names: by *Stephanus Asia*, by *Suidas Odrisia*, by *Lycophron Cretania*, by some *Thraci*, *Scythia* by *Iosephus* the Hebrew *Thyras*. But generally it is called *Thrace*, or *Thracia*, and that, as some from *Thrax* the Son of *Mars*, as others, from *Thracia*, an Indchantress: more probably from the Perity and barbarous condition of the first Inhabitants, the name in the Original *Greek* bearing that construction: most likely from *Thyras*, the Son of *Japhet*, who first planted here, in memory of whom it did retain the name of *Thyras* in the time of *Iosephus*, besides many other footsteps and remembrances of him in the names of many of their Towns, and some of their Princes, of which we have already spoken in our general Preface. Finally, by the *Turks* it is called *Romania*; either from the many *Roman* Colonies which were planted here, or because *Constantinople*, the chief City of it, was anciently called *Novæ Roma*: and by that name it is now called in most modern Writers.

The Country generally is neither of a rich Soil nor a pleasant Air: the Corn and other Fruits, by reason of the coldness of the Climate, scarcely ripening; the Vines yielding more Shade than Juice, and the Trees for the most part more Leaves than Fruit: yet in some parts there be many large and goodly Plains, where they reap good flocks of Cattle, but of Pulse especially; and towards the Sea side they have plenty of Wine, which *Pliny* much commended both for strength and goodness.

The People anciently were very bold and valiant, and called by some *Antiochiæ*, because every man was a Law to himself. So that it was truly said by *Herodotus*, that if they had either been all of one mind, or under one King,

they had been invincible. Of Manners they were rude and savage somewhat near to Brutishness; buying their Wives, and selling both their Sons and Daughters, as in open Market: in that time facilitated by the *Turks*, who possess their Country. The men were more courageous than comely, wearing Cloaths according to their Conditions ragged and uncleanly. The Married-woman were in love to their Husbands so constant, that they willingly sacrificed themselves at their Funerals. The Virgins were betrothed not by their own Parents, put the common Fathers of their Cities. Such as brought neither Beauty nor Virtue for their Dowry, were put off according to their Mone; small times sold as other Cattel in the Markets.

In matters of Religion they worship *Mars*, *Bacchus*, *Diana*, *Mercury*, as did other Gentiles: wearing especially by the first, from whom they bragged themselves to have been descended. But their chief national Deities were one *Zamolxis*, sometimes a Native of this Country, who, having been brought up under *Pythagoras*, and returning home, prescribed them good and wholesome Laws, assuring them that, if they did observe the same, they should go unto a place when they left this World in which they should enjoy all manner of Pleasure and contentment. By this means having gotten some opinion of a Divinity amongst them, he absented himself, and after was worshipped as their God. Upon these Principles, when any one was born amongst them, his Parents and other Friends, sitting round about him, lamented bitterly his coming into the World, ripping up all the Miseries and Afflictions whereto he was to be exposed in this present Life, and so deplored his condition as absolutely miserable and unhappy. But, on the contrary, when any one chafed to die, they buried him with all Joy and Alacrity, highly rejoicing that by this means he was freed from the Crosses and Distresses of this wretched world. Which is expressed thus briefly (after his wonted manner) by my Author, *Lugentur Puerperia, natiq; deflorant; Funera casta, Fœdæ, Junct, & voluti Sacra cantant Insuper celebrantur*. A piece of such fond and orthodox Divinity, that I wonder how they hit upon it in those times of Darkness, and favouring very much of the Primitive Pity, by which the *Obits* of the Saints were kept as Festivals, no notice being taken of the day of their Births. According to that of the good old Writer, *Non Nativitatem, sed Mortem, Sanctorum Ecclesiæ pretiosam & festam judicant*.

Here lived the Tyrant *Polymnestor*, who villainously murdered *Polixenus*, a younger Son of *Præmarus* for which fact *Hecuba*, the young Prince's Mother, scratched him to death. Here also lived the Tyrant *Ternus*, of whom before in *Ptolemy* and *Diomedes*, who, using to feed his Horses with Man's Flesh, was slain by *Hercules*, and cast unto his Horses. And finally, here reigned King *Corys*, whom I mention not as a Tyrant, but propose as a pattern of rare Temper both in mastering and preventing Passion. For when a Neighbour Prince had sent him a Present of Glasses of the purest Metal, and no less accurate in the Workmanship or Fashion of them, (having dispatched the Messenger with all the due Complements of Majesty and Gratitude) he broke them all to pieces, least if by mishap any of his Servants should do the like, he might be stirred to an intemperate Choler.

Chief Mountains in this Country, besides *Hæmus* spoken of already, are 1. *Rhodope*, the highest next *Mount Hæmus* in those parts of the World; craggy and rough, and the Top thereof continually white with Snow: memorable for the Fate and Fable of *Orpheus*, who in a melancholic humour (having lost his Wife) betook himself to these Mountains, where with his Mute he affected both Woods and Beasts, who are said to have danced unto

his Mute: from this place of his Abode called *Rhodopeus*, from his Country *Thracius*, *Non me carminibus vincet nec Thracius Orpheus*, &c. as the Shepherd boasteth in the Poet. The truth is that he was a man of an heavenly Mute, and by his Dictates and good Council, laid down in Verse, 'first of all civilized this People, and weaned them by degrees from their Bestiality. Hence the occasion of the Fable. But for *Mount Rhodope* it self, it is in the midst of this Country, towering it from *Mount Hæmus* towards the West; which, with the Spurs and Branches of it, and the Plains adjoining, lying betwixt the River *Nessus* on the West, and *Mæis* or *Niger* on the East, made up that Province of the Empire called *Rhodope*, by the name of the Mountain. 2. *Pangæus*, rich in Mines of Silves. 3. *Melampus*, shooting towards the Sea, full of Rocks and Cliffs. And 4. *Orbelus*, lying towards *Macedon*, where there is a little Region from hence called *Orbelia*.

Principal Rivers hereof, besides *Strymon* spoken of before, the Boundary in some places betwixt this and *Macedon*, are, 1. *Nessus*, by the *Greacians* now called *Mæis*, by the *Turks* *Charafas*, which rising out of *Mount Hæmus*, falleth into the Sea near the Isle of *Traissus*. 2. *Athyra*, in which name the memory of *Thyras* the Son of *Japhet* seems to be preserved; which, rising in *Mount Hæmus* also, leaveth it self in the *Propontic*; as doth 3. *Bathyrius*, another River rising from the same *Mount Hæmus*. 4. *Hebrus*, the most noted River of all this Country, rising out of *Rhodope*, and falling into the *Ægean* near the Isle of *Samosbrace*: a River or to flow a Course, that it is not easy to discern which way it goeth; but memorable in the Poets for the Fate of *Orpheus*, who, being torn in pieces by the *Thracian* Women, had his Limbs thrown into it by those Furies. 5. *Therapsus*, good against the Scab both in man and beast, issuing out of 30 Fountains, some hot, some cold, with the pleasantness of whose Waters *Darius* the King of *Perfia* was so delighted, that he erected a Pillar in honour of it.

The chief Towns were, 1. *Abdera*, now called *Prolypsis*, situate not far from the Fall of the River *Nessus* into the *Ægean*, the Birth-place of *Democritus*, who spent his whole Life in laughing at the Follies of others. 2. *Ptoleida*, of old a Colony of *Athens*, from whom it revolted, and submitted to the State of *Corinth*. But the *Athenians*, not enduring the Alliance, beleaguered it, and after two years Siege, and the expence of 2000 Talent, could not recover it again but on Com. offition. 3. *Amis*, on the *Ægean* Sea; a Town of great Strength and Safety, and therefore used by the latter *Constantinopolitan* Emperours for the securing of great persons. For hitler *Michael Palæologus* sent *Jabbar*, the *Turkish Sultan*, flying to him for Aid; and hitler *Mahomet* the great *Fat* *Demetrius*, Prince of *Poloponnesus*, when he yielded up his Country to him: both under colour of providing for their safe and Safety; but in plain terms to keep them in honourable Prisons. 3. *Lyfmacbia*, on the Sea-shore; one of great importance, built by *Lyfmacbus*, who after *Alexander's* death laid hands on this Country: afterwards garrisoned by *Philip* the Father of *Perseus*; on the withdrawing of whose Forces, for some other Service it was taken and raised to the ground by the barbarous *Thracians*, and all the People of it carried into Captivity; but by *Antiochus* the Great re-edified and new-peopled again, moved thereunto by the convenient situation and former glories of the place. 5. *Philippopolis*, so called from *Philip* King of *Macedon*, the Father of *Alexander*, who built and fortified it as a Bridge to hold in the *Thracians*; so called also *Trimonium*, from three Hills on which it was situate: beautified in the time of the *Romans*, with a goodly Amphitheatre, continuing entire and whole till



these latter days, and might have lasted longer by many Ages, did not the *Turks* daily take away the Stones thereof, which are all of Marble, to make money of them. Here are also many other ancient Monuments, though the Town here was huffed and destroyed, the *Scythians* at one time killing in it above 100000 persons: which notwithstanding is a populous and well-frequented, by reason of the convenient situation of it on the River *Hebrus*, which they now call *Mariza*. 6. *Trajanopolis*, so called from the Emperor *Trajan*, by whom it was either founded or repaired; indifferently well peopled, and still preserving its old name. 7. *Selymbria*, on the Coast of the *Propontic* Sea; beautified with a commodious Port for receipt of small Vessels, and many Bays adjoining capable of greater; by *Ptolemy* called *Selybria* and *Olybria* by *Suidas*. 8. *Apollonia*, upon *Pontus Euxinus* or the Black Sea, now *Sisopolis*. 9. *Phinopolis*, on the same Sea also. 10. *Nicopolis* at the foot of the Mount *Hemus*, there being another of that name near the River *Nessus*. 11. *Perinth* on the *Propontic* Sea, near the Influx of the River *Arvis*. A Town of great note in the ancient Business of Greece; of great strength, and peopled formerly with men of such resolutions, that they maintained their Liberty against *Philip of Macedon*, after almost all the rest of *Thrace* had submitted to him. 12. *Heraclea*, at first a Colony of the *Thebans*, and afterwards of much request in the time of the *Romans*, as being beautified with the Palaces of *Persian*, *Domitian*, and *Antoninus*, Emperours of Rome, as also with an Amphitheatre cut out of one entire Marble, and accounted one of the World's seven Wonders; and finally, made the Metropolis of the Province of *Thrace*, one of the Provinces of the Diocese of *Thrace*, whereof more anon. 13. *Olynthus*, called by *Xenophon* the greatest City of *Thrace*; as possibly enough it was in Power and Riches, though not in greatness of Extent. A Colony of the *Athenians*, rich in Trade, and Mistress of a fair and goodly Territory adjoining to it: the People whereof had been malicious Enemies to the Kings of *Macedon*, which principally induced *Philip* spoken of before, to set upon them. In which Attempt he sped so well, that what he could not get by Force he obtained by Money, bribing some of the principal Officers to betray it to him. For the recovery whereof *Demosthenes* oft moved the People of *Athen*, in those elaborate Orations called the *Olynthiacks*. 14. *Sestos*, in the *Thracian* Chersonese, which, being a Peninsula abutting over against *Troas* on the *Asian* side, is now called *Saint George's Arm*. Opposite whereunto on the other side of the Water, is the Town or *Abydos*, remarkable for the Tragical Loves of *Hero* and *Leander*, celebrated by *Metastasio* in old Greek Poet. 15. *Callipolis*, on the Northern Promontory of this Chersonese, the first City of note that ever the *Turks* possessed in *Europe*; taken by *Solyman*, the Son of *Orchan*, the second King of the Ottoman Race, Anno 1358; from whence they easily and in little time spread themselves all over the rest of *Thrace*: the ordinary passage of late times betwixt *Europe* and *Asia*, by reason of the convenient Harbour and safe Anchorage. 16. *Cardia*, seated on the Western side of it, opposite to the Isle of *Lenos*; the Birth place of *Emmenes*, who, being a poor Carrier's Son, attained to such an ability in the Art of War, that after the death of *Alexander* the Great, under whom he served, he seized on the Provinces of *Cappadocia* and *Paphlagonia*, and siding (though a stranger to *Macedon*) with *Olympias* and the Blood Royal against the *Greek* Captains, vanquished and flew *Craterus*, and divers times drove *Antigon* (afterwards Lord of *Asia*) out of the Field. But being by his own Soldiers betrayed, he was by them delivered to *Antigon*, and by him slain. 17. *Sardica*, situate towards Mount *Hemus*, memorable for the

Council there held against the *Arrians*, Anno 351. 18. *Adrianople*, seated near the middle of *Thrace*, called anciently *Ufudama*; but got this name from *Adrian* the Emperour, who repaired and beautified it: made subject to the *Turks* by *Bajazet*, Anno 1361: from the taking of it made the Seat of the *Turkish* Kings, till the taking of *Constantinople* by *Mahomet* the Great, by whom it was removed unto that City. 19. *Pera*, opposite to *Constantinople*, on the farther side of the Water, (the word doth signifie in the *Greek*;) by some called *Galata*; once peopled by a Colony of *Genouefe*, as the Mart and Factory of that State; taken by *Mahomet* the Great, Anno 1453; but still replenished, for the most part, with *Christian* Merchants and Artificers.

But the chief glory of this Country, and of all the East, is the renowned City of 20. *Constantinople*, seated in so commodious a place for Empire, that it overlooks both *Europe* and *Asia*, and commands not only the *Propontis* and *Bosphorus* but the *Euxine* Sea. First founded by the *Byzants*, and from him named *Byzantium*; but being taken by the *Perfians*, and from them recovered by the *Byzants*, (urwilling that the *Perfians* should grow strong in *Europe*) it was repaired and fortified by *Constantine*, one of their Commanders, 663 years before the Birth of our Saviour. In vain it was besieged by *Philip of Macedon*, and of great strength in the Flourish of the *Roman* Empire. The Walls were of a just height, every Stone whereof was joyned with Couplets of Brass, that the whole seemed but one entire Piece; adorned besides with Towers, Bulwarks, and other Arts of Fortification. Siding with *Niger* in his War against *Severus* the Emperour, it endured a Siege of three years against all the Forces of the *Romans*: during which time the people were so distressed by Famine, that men meeting in the Streets would draw and fight, the Conquerour feeding on the Vanquished. For want of Artillery to discharge on the Assaults, they call down upon them whole Stones made of Brains, and the like curious Imagery Houles they pulled down to get Timber for Shipping; the Women cutting off their Hair to inch out their Tackle: and having thus patched up a Navy of 500 Sail, it was left all by one Tempest. Compelled to yield by this Misfortune, the principal of the Nobility were put to the Sword, the Wealth of the Inhabitants given for a Prey to the Soldiers, the Walls thereof dismantled, and the Town left in rubbish. Yet there appeared so much of Majesty and Beauty in the very Ruins, *Ut mireris utrum verum qui primi exstruxerunt, vel corum qui disceperunt, fuisse demeritis, vires sint potiores, as Herodian* hath it. He edified it towards by the Emperour *Constantine*, he honoured it with his own name, and made it the chief Seat of the *Roman* Empire. The City was finished May 11. Anno 331; and, being so finished, was indowed with all the Privileges of Rome, an equal number of Senators, of the Annual Consul, and all other Officers of State, chosen out of both; the Citizens of the one being free of the other, and capable of all places of most Trust and Power. For that cause it was called *NOVA ROMA*, in Rome Fort that cause it was called *NOVA ROMA*, in Rome following times. This City be adorned also with magnificent Buildings, curious Statues, and such like Ornaments, transported hither from Old Rome; which City he spoiled of more costly Pieces than any twenty of his Predecessors had brought unto it. At this day the chief Buildings are the *Turk's Seraglio* and the Temple of *Saint Sophia*; which as they differ not much in place and situation, so as little in Magnificence and State. The Temple of *Saint Sophia* was, if not built, yet re-edified, by the Emperour *Justinian*. It is built of an Oval form, surrounded with Pillars of admirable workmanship, adorned with spacious and beautiful Galleries, roofed all over with

with *Mosaic* work, and vaulted underneath; very strong for the Fabric, and pleasing for the Sight. The Doors are every curiously wrought and plated; one of which by the Superstitious people is thought to have been made of the planks of *Noah's Ark*. And yet this Temple is little more than the Chancel of the Ancient Church, which contained in length 263 foot, and 180 in breadth; and yet to our *Saint Paul's* in *London* may seem for the biggness to have been but a Chappel of Ease. But what it wants in Greatness, it hath gained in Beauty, and in the Elegancy of the Building, wherein it is thought to exceed all the Fabricks in the whole World. The Sides and Floor are all flagged with excellent Marble, and before the Entrance is a goodly *Portico*, or Porch, in which as well the *Christians*, who visit it out of Curiosity, as the *Turks*, who repair thither for Devotion, are to leave their Shoes. By *Mahomet* the Great, after the taking of the City, it was converted to a *Turkish* Mosque, as it still continueth; frequented by the Grand Seigneur almost every Friday which is the Sabbath of that People. Near hereunto standeth the Palace or *Seraglio* of the Ottoman Emperour, on the North-East Angel of the City, where formerly stood the ancient *Byzantium*; divided from the rest of the City by a Wall containing three miles in Circuit, and comprehending goodly Groves of Cypress intermixed with Plains, delicate Gardens, artificial Fountains, and all variety of Pleasures which Luxury can affect or treasure compass. The Palace it self, enjoying a goodly prospect in the Sea, was first built by *Justinus* the Emperour, afterwards much enlarged by the Ottoman Race, containing three great Courts one within another: the Buildings yielding unto those of *France* and *Italy*, for the neat contrivances, but far surpassing them for Cost and Curiousness.

As for the City it self, it is said to be 18 miles in compass, and to contain 700000 living souls; yet would be more populous than it is, if the Plague, like a cruel Terrible Angel, did not every third year to rage amongst them. It is fortified towards the Land with three strong and high Walls, the one higher than the other, the outermost highest of them all: towards the Sea with one Wall only, built after the old fashion with many Towers, which very strongly flanker and defend the same. But formerly both the Town and Chersonese in which it standeth were defended from the Incurfions of the barbarous people by a strong Wall built on the very *Isthmus* of it, some ten miles from the City, reaching from one side to the other: the work of *Alexandrus* who succeeded *Zeno*, Anno 494. A City which a far off gives to the Eye a most pleasing object: to intermix with Gardens and beset with Trees, that it seems a City in a Wood, but being entered, it much deceiveth the expectation which it promised, the Buildings of it being mean, if not contemptible. The Streets for the most part are exceeding narrow, but raised on two Stories high, for the greater Cleanliness: the Houses but of one Story high, frame of rough Stone, and some of Timber, without any outward Grace or exterior Ornamenting; in many places nothing but low Sheds or rows of Shops; and in some places long dead Walls belonging unto great men's Houses. The principal Beauty of the whole, next to some Monuments of Antiquity, which are still preserved, and the Tombs or Sepulchres of some of the Ottoman Kings, which are very sumptuous, are the Mosques or Temples of the *Turks*, about eight thousand in number; and the Port or Haven, so conveniently profound, that Ships of greatest Burthen may safely lay their Sides to the sides thereof, for the receipt or discharge of their Lading; and so commodiously seated on the *Thracian* *Peninsula*, that there is no Wind, whatsoever it be, which blows not in foule Shipping to it. But that which gives

the greatest Pleasure to the sight from the Hills adjoining is the Situation of it on seven Mountains, most of them crowned with Magnificent Mosques, built all of white Marble, round in form, and finished on the top with gilded Spires, reflecting the Sun-beams with a marvellous Splendour. On the first whereof standeth the Ruines of *Constantine's* Palace, exceeding stately to behold. On the second; a fair *Turkish* Mosque, built on the Palace anciently belonging to the *Greek* Patriarch. On the third stands a stately Mosque, the Sepulchre of *Mahomet* the second; and a very large Hospital, for entertainment of Pilgrims and relief of the poor: the Annual Rents whereof are valued at 200000 Cheequines. On the fourth and fifth the Sepulchres of *Selimus* the first, and *Bajazet* the second. On the sixth the Mosque and Sepulchre of *Solyman* the Magnificent, numbered amongst the present wonders of the World. And on the seventh the Temple of *Saint Sophia*, and the *Turks* *Seraglio*, spoken of already. In which respect it is called *Novus Jerusalem* by *Nicetas*, *Orbis sepelialis* by *Paulus Diaconus*; and to acknowledge to be by *Tamus Dunja*, *Phineas Morison*, *G. Sands*, and other of our modern Travellers, the Eye-witnesses of it. So that if there be any Mystery in the number of Seven, or that the fitting of the great Whore on a seven-headed Beast, be an assured direction to find out the Antichrist; we may as well look for him in *Constantinople*, or *Nova Roma*, where the Great *Turk*, the professed Enemy of *Christ* and the *Christian* Faith, hath his Seat and Residence, as amongst the seven Hills of Old Rome, where the Pope resideth. Or, if his sitting in the Temple of God shew us where to find him; we may as well look for him in the Temple of *Saint Sophia*, now a *Turkish* Mosque, as in *Saint Peter's* Church at Rome, still a *Christian* Temple.

But to return again unto *Constantinople*. As it was made by *Constantine* the Imperial City, and consequently the chief City of the East in all Civil matters; for it came in little time to have a great Sway also in Affairs of Religion. The *Christian* Faith is said to be first preached in *Byzantium* by *Saint Andrew* the Apostle, the first Bishop thereof. Afterwards spreading over *Thrace*, and the Churches thereof being regulated by many Bishops, the chief Preeminence in matters which concerned those Churches was given unto the Bishops of *Heraclea*, *Heraclea* being at that time the Metropolis or principal City of the Province. But after that *Constantinople* was built by *Constantine*, and made the Imperial City, as before was said, it did not only over-top *Heraclea*, and draw unto it self the Metropolis Dignity, but stood in Competition with the other Patriarchal Churches for the supreme Power: inasmuch as at the second General Council holden in this City it was unanimously decreed, that the Patriarch thereof should in degree of Honour be next unto the Bishop of Rome, and above those of *Antioch* and *Alexandria*; the same Decree being confirmed in the Council of *Chalcedon* also. By which not only all the Churches in the Diocese of *Thrace*, but also of *Natolia*, or *Asia minor*, (except *Cilicia* and *Isauria*, which remained to the Patriarch of *Antioch*) containing no less than 28 of the *Roman* Provinces, were made subject to him. And though Pope *Leo* the first, pretending only the preservation of the Privileges of those two great Churches, but indeed fearing left *New Rome* might in the end get the Precedency of the Old, did oppose this Act, and some of his Successors persisted in the same Resistance: yet they were forced in the end to give way unto it, especially after the Emperour *Justinian* had by his Imperial Edict confirmed the same; by whom it was finally ordered, *Seniores Romæ Papam primum esse omnium Sacrorum, beatissimum autem Archiepiscopum Constantinopolis*.

populous, *Novae Romae*, secundum habere locum, that is to say, that the Pope of Rome should have the first place in all General Councils, and the Bishop of *Constantinople*, or *New Rome*, should have the second. Encouraged where-with, and with the countenance and favour of the Emperour *Mauritius*, John Patriarch of *Constantinople*, in the time of *Gregory* the Great, took to himself the Title of *Universal or Oecumenical Bishop*, the Pastor-General (as it were) of the Church of *Christ*. And though Pope *Boniface*, by the Grant of that bloody Tyrant *Phocas*, got that Title from him: yet the Patriarchs of *Constantinople* made good their ground, never submitting either themselves or their Churches to the Pope's Authority; being for that cause specially accounted by the Church of *Rome* for Schismatics, and accordingly reviled and persecuted with all kind of Indignities. How it succeeded with these Patriarchs in the times ensuing, and by what means their Jurisdiction was extended over all *Greece*, *Asiatic*, part of *Poland*, and many other Churches in the North and East, hath been said already. Certain it is, the constant Residence of the Emperours from the time of *Constantine* gave great ground unto it: of whom I should here add the names, but that I must first turn up the affairs of *Thrace* before the Building of this mighty and predominant City, and take a brief view of the rest of those Provinces which we have comprehended under the name of *Greece*.

Concerning which we are to know, that the ancient Inhabitants of it had the names of *Strymonii*, *Bardi*, *Dolenci*, *Sapei*, *Sai*, and some others, united by most Writers in the name of *Thracians*. They were governed at first by the Kings or Princes of their several Tribes, as most Nations else, distinguished from the common People, as in other Pomps, do most especially by their Gods, which their Kings had to themselves apart, and were not to be worshipped by the best of their Subjects. These not agreeing well together for the common good, it gave the *Athenians*, *Spartans*, *Thebans*, and other Nations of the *Greeks*, a good opportunity to invade their Country, to seize on the Sea-Towns thereof, and plant Colonies in them: the Country in those times being meanly peopled, and consequently giving that advantage unto the *Graecians* as the *Indies* in these latter times have to the *Spaniards*, *Portugueses*, *English*, *Hollanders*, and all other Adventurers. Such of them as lay next to *Macedon*, proving bad Neighbours thereunto upon all occasions, at last provoked *Philip* the Father of *Alexander*, to put in for a share, who, being chosen Arbitrator betwix two Competitors for that Kingdom, (drawn at last into fewer hands) came not unto the Council with such poor Attendants as Justice and Piety, but with a great and puissant Army; wherewith having vanquished and slain the two Pretenders, he pronounced Sentence for himself, and made *Thrace* his own, compelling the Inhabitants to pay him the tenth part of their Revenue for his yearly Tribute. After the death of *Alexander* this Country was seized on by *Lysimachus*, as his part of the Spoil, who here built the City *Lysimachia*, from hence invading *Dacia*, *Macedon*, and the neighbouring Regions: and he being dead, the *Thracians*, now accustomed to a foreign Yoke, were either Subject, or at least Tributaries, to the *Macedonians*. Aiding them in their Wars against the *Romans*, they incurred the displeasure of that People; who, having ferried their Affairs in other places, and repulsed the *Cimbri*, thought he fit time to call the *Thracians* to account for their former Actions: but sped for ill in the Attempt, that *Porcius Cato* lost his whole Army in the Onset, cunningly intercepted in their Woods and Fastnesses. *Dido* the *Prator*, coming in whilst the *Thracians* were busy in the Chase, gave them such aid, that he de-

ferred a Triumph for it, and made the Victory more easy to *Metellus*, who succeeded *Cato* in that Charge, and triumphed also over them; as also did *Lucullus* on another Victory *A. U. C. 680*. Broken with so many ill Successes, they were finally subdued by *Piso* in the time of *Augustus*; and became so obsequious to that fortunate Prince, that *Rhemenaces*, a great and puissant King thereof, aided him with a strength of Horse against the *Pannonians* and *Ilyrians*, who had then rebelled. Afterwards being made a Province of the *Roman Empire*, in *Constantine's* new Model it became a Diocese under the *Præfatus Prætorio Orientis*; *Thrace* it self being cast into four Provinces, that is to say, *Thrace* specially so called *Hemimontum*, *Rhodope*, and *Europa*; *Scythia* and the Lower *Mæsia*, spoken of before, being added to it: of which the Presidents of *Rhodope* and *Hemimontum* were to be appealed from to the *Præfatus Prætorio*, as the others were, but only to the Prefect of *Constantinople*, the Imperial City. But as *Alfonsus* King of *Castile*, funneled the Wife, was once heard to say, (never the wiser for so saying) That had he stood at the elbow of *Almighty God* when he made the World, he would have *permitted him* some things might have been better ordered: to give me leave to play the fool, and to say this here, that had I stood at *Constantine's* Elbow, I would have counselled him to lay the Diocese of *Thrace* to the Prefect of *Ilyricum*, who had originally only the Dioceses of *Macedon* and *Ilyricum* under his Command; and not have placed it under the Prefect of the East, who had both *Asia* and *Aegypt* under his Authority. For being that there lay Appeals from the Vickers or Lieutenants of the several Dioceses to their ferial and respective Prefects, how great a trouble must it be to the Subjects of *Thrace* on every occasion of Appeal to pass to *Antioch*, there to complain unto the Prefect of the Orient, when *Serminum* and *Tusulanica*, the ordinary Residences of the *Præfatus Prætorio* for *Ilyricum*, were so hard at hand? But *Constantine* was an absolute Prince, and might do what he listed. He had not else removed his Seat far towards the East, and left the Western parts of the Empire open to the Barbarous people, out of a fancy only to preserve the Eastern. For that it was a Fancy only the event did shew: the *Persians* for all this prevailing more than ever formerly, and *Thrace* it self, though honoured with the Imperial City, and planted with so many *Roman Colonies*, so ill inhabited, that a great part thereof lay waste and desert many Ages after. Inasmuch as the *Goths*, being by the *Huns* driven over the *Danube*, were by the Emperor *Valens* planted in this Country, (the Emperor having a design to use them in his following Wars, where not contented with the Portion allotted to them, they bid fair for all, wasting the whole Province, taking divers Towns, and ending, ering *Constantinople* it self, from whence they were not driven. *Valens* himself being killed in the War against them) but by the coming of some *Saracens* to the Aid of the Citizens. Nor could the Residence of the Emperours so protect this Country, but that it was continually harassed and depopulated by the *Scelaves*, *Bulgarians*, *Russes*, *Saracens*, and other Barbarous people falling in upon it; nor hinder one *Bryennius* in the time of *Michael Duca* and *Nicephorus Bonatiates*, from assuming to himself the Title of King of *Thrace*; nor finally prevent the *Turks* of the *Ottoman Race* from getting ground every day on the Lesser *Asia*, inreaching upon *Thrace* it self, and in the end obtaining the Imperial City.

And here perhaps it is expected, considering the *Turks* are now possessed of *Thrace* and the rest of *Greece*, that we should make relation of the Nature of that People, their Customs, Forces, Policies, Original, and Proceedings. But

But the discourse thereof we will defer till we come to *Trocomania*, a Province of *Asia* from whence they made their first Inundations, like to some unrefillable Torrent, into *Perfia*, and after into the other parts of the World now subject to them. And therefore letting that alone till another time, we will proceed to our Description of the rest of *Greece*, consisting of the Islands scattered in the *Ægean*, *Propontick*, *Ægean*, *Cretan*, and *Ionian Seas*: leaving out such as properly belong to *Asia*, till our Description of that Country, though otherwise *Greek Islands*, and so accounted both for their Language and Original.

### 7. The Islands of the PONTICK and PROPONTICK Seas.

Before we come to the Descriptions of these Islands, we must first look upon the Seas in which they lie; beginning with the *PONTICK* first, because the greatest, and that which doth communicate and convey its Waters unto all the rest. *Asen* made up originally of the Confluence of those mighty Rivers (the greatest in those parts of the world) which do fall into it, that is to say, the *Danubius*, *Rhithenes* and *Tanais*, falling out of *Europe*, besides many other fair and large Rivers, (though of lesser note) to the number of at least an hundred, which pay Tribute to it: the whole compass of it being 2700 miles; in form by some resembled to a *Scythian Bow* when it is bent. A Sea not so salt as many others, and therefore much annoyed with Ice in Winter; seldom remitted in the Spring on the Northern Shore. The Traffick of it is wholly in a manner engrossed by the *Turks*, who is Master of all the Sea-coast of it, save what belongs to the *Polonian* and *Crim-Tartar*, at first it was called *Ægeus* from the *Insolpitiableness*, of the neighbouring People, which being brought to some Conformity caused the Sea to be called *Ægeus*. By *Florus* it is called *Mare Sinifrom*, because in the way from *Rome* to *Asiaminor* it lay upon the left hand, as the *Mediterranean* did upon the right. It is commonly called at this time *Mare Maggiore*, for its greatness; and the *Black Sea*, because of the great Mists thence arising. Others not unprobably affirm that it is called the *Black Sea*, from the dangerous and black Shipwrecks here happening; for it is a very dangerous Shore, full of Rocks and Sands; and for this cause there is on the top of an high Tower a Lantern, in which there is a great Pan full of Pitch, Rosin, Tallow, and the like, in dark nights continually burning, to give warning to Mariners how near they approach unto the Shore. This Sea, being the biggest of all those parts, gave occasion to them which knew no bigger to call all Seas by the name of *Pontus*, as *Ovid*, *Omnia pontus erant*, *decenter quæque littora pontis*; and in another place of the same Poet, *—nil nisi pontus & ær*: a better reason doubtless of the name, than that of the Etymologists, *Pontus, quia ponte caret*. Of this Sea the chief Isles are *Tynarus*, and *Eritubius*, little famous.

From hence the Sea binding Southwards is brought into narrower Bounds, not being fully a mile broad, and is called the *Thracian Bosphorus*: *Thracian*, for its Site next *Thrace*; and *Bosphorus*, for that Oxen have swam over it. It hath no Island worth naming. It is fortified on each side with a very strong Castle. That on the *Asian* side, being the older and the lesser, is by the *Greeks* called *Asiaca-Prom*, by the *Turks* named *Accechisar*; the other, just opposite to it, is by the *Turks* called *Genichisar*, by the *Greeks* named *Neocæsion*, or *New Castle*. This last was the work of *Mamomet*, furnished the Great, in the beginning of his Reign; in indignities not inferior to a little City, built by him in or near the place of the ancient *Damalis*.

environed with a Wall 22-foot broad, and containing three great Towers, their Wall exceeding 10. years in thickness; exceedingly well stored with all sorts of Ordnance and Ammunition. By the *English* they are commonly called the *Black Towers*; partly because seated at the Entrance of the *Ægean* or *Black Sea*, and partly because they serve as a Prison for Malefactors of principal note, who seldom are discharged thence till released by death.

This Streight, having continued 26 miles in length, openeth it self into the *Propontis*, 300 miles in compass, confined with *Thrace* on the one side, and with *Bithynia* on the other; so as they which fall in the middle may defy the Land on all parts. Now called *Mæris di Marmara*, from the Island *Marmora*, which, formerly called *Proconnesus*, hath for its abundance of Marble purchased this new name. The Soil is apt for Vines, and not deficient of Corn; yielding also Good Pasturage for Goats, whereof here is plenty; with an incredible number of Partridges amongst the Rocks: the Country of *Asiaticæ*, a famous Poet, who flourished in the times of *Cæsar*. Anciently it had in it two Cities of the same name with the Island, called the *Old* and *New Proconnesus*: the former first built by the *Milefians*, an *Asian* People; the latter by the Natives of this Island. But both these being long since decayed, it hath now only a small Village towards the North, with an Haven to it, inhabited by the *Greeks*, as is all the rest of the Island: such Christian Slaves as are in great numbers employed here by the *Turks* in digging Marble for their Mosques and other Buildings being only Sojourners, not House-keepers, and therefore not accounted amongst the Inhabitants. Here is also in this *Propontick* Sea the Isle of *Cyzicus*; but being it is on *Asia* side, we shall there speak of it.

The Sea having gathered her waters into a lesser Channel is called *Hellepont*, from *Helle*, Daughter of *Atthamas* King of *Thebes*, who here drowned. Over this famous Streight did *Xerxes*, according to *Herodotus*, make a Bridge of Boats to pass into *Greece*: when when a sudden Tempest had shrewdly battered, he caused the Sea to be beaten with 300 Stripes, and cast a pair of Fetters into it, to make it know to whom it was subject. *Xerxes* in this Expedition wasted over an Army consisting of two millions and 164710 fighting men, in no less than 2208 Bottoms of all sorts. When all the *Persians* footed the King in the unconquerableness of his Forces. *Artabanus* told him that he feared no Enemies but the Sea and the Earth; the one yielding no safe Harbour for such a Navy, the other not yielding sufficient subsistence for so multitudinous an Army. But his return over this *Hellepont* was as dejected as his Passage magnificent; his Fleet being broken by the Valour of the *Greeks* and the fury of the Sea, that, for his more speedy Flight, he was compelled to make use of a poor Filter-boat. Neither yet was his Passage secure; for the Boat, being overburthened, had sunk all, if the *Persians* by casting away themselves had not saved the Life of their King. The loss of which noble spirits vexed him, that having given the Steersman a golden Crown for preserving his own Life, he commanded him to Execution as a Co-author of the death of his Servants. It is now called the *Cassius*, or the *Sea of the Two Castles*; which two Castles stand one on *Europe*, the other on *Asia* side, in the Towns of *Sestos* and *Aigaius*. These Castles, commonly by the *Turks* called *Dardanelli*, are exceedingly well built, and abundantly furnished with Munition. They search and examine all Ships that pass that way; they receive the Grand Seigneur's Customs, and are in effect the principal Strength of *Constantinople*. At these Castles all Ships must stay three days, to the end that if any Slave be run away from his Master, or Thieves have stolen any thing, they may be in that place pursued.

and apprehended. So that these Castles are as it were the Out-works of *Constantinople*, to defend it from all Invasions, and from any Forces which may come unto it by Sea out of the *Mediterranean*, as for the Safety thereof from such as may find passage out of the *Euxine*, there are situate at the very entrance of the *Thracian Bosphorus* two strong Castles, the one above *Constantinople* on *Europe* side, the other on the *Asian Shore*, which before we speak of. No *European* Isle of note is in either of the Straights. And therefore we pass on unto

#### 8. The Islands of the *ÆGÆAN* Sea.

**H**ellepont, after a forty miles course, expatiates its waters in the *Ægean* Sea: so called either from *Ægeus*, the Father of *Troilus*, who, so called either from his safe return from the *Mountains of Crete*, there drowned himself; or, secondly, from *Æge*, once a principal City in the prime Island *Eubœa*; or, thirdly, because that the Islands lie scattered up and down like the Leaps of a wanton Goat, from the *Greek* *ἄλγος*.

The chief Islands of it are, 1. *Samos*, 2. *Thasos*, 3. *Imbros*, 4. *Lemnos*, 5. *Eubœa*, 6. *Salamis*, 7. *Ægina*, 8. the *Cyclades*, 9. the *Sporades*, and 10. *Cythera*: all which especially from *Eubœa* Southwards, are called the *Islands of the Archipelago*, the Sea being by the *Greeks* called the *Archipelago*, in regard of its greatness compared unto the narrow Seas which lie about it.

1. *SAMOTHRACE* is a small Island opposite to the Coasts of *Thrace*, where the *Hebrus* falls into the Sea; so called *quasi Samos* *Thracie*, to difference it from the *Asian Samos*, bordering on *Ionis*. Formerly it was called *Dardania*, from *Dardanus* the *Trojan*, who fled hither when he carried the *Palladium* thence. But *Aristotle*, writing of the Commonwealth of these *Samothracians*, telleth us that it was first called *Leucosia*, and afterwards *Samus*, from *Samus* the Son of *Mercury* and *Rhene*, the letter *M* being interposed. It is now called *Samandracis*, and is plentiful in Honey and Wild Deer, and better stored with commodious Harbours than any other in these Seas. It hath a Town of the same name with the Island, situate on a high Hill on the North part thereof overlooking a capacious Haven; of late, by the Pirates frequent infesting of these Seas, wholly in a manner, desolate.

2. *THASSOS*, another little Island on the same Coast, opposite to the Influx of the River *Nessus*, lying betwixt that and *Atthos* in *Macedonia*, at the Mouth of the *Strymonian* Bay: by *Pliny* called *Abria* and *Atthria*, by *Ptolemy* *Todalassa*, at the present *Tasso*. It is in compass betwixt forty and fifty miles, fruitfully fruitful, well replenished with Woods, and yielding good store of the best Wines; mountainous in some places, but those Mountains fraught with Quarries of excellent Marble, which the *Romans* called *Thasian*, from the Island, and in the times of *Philip* and *Alexander* the Great so rich in Mines of useful Metals, that these Kings received yearly 80 Talents for their Customs of them. It hath one Town of the same name with the Island, situate on a large Plain in the North part of it, bordering on a goodly Bay, which serves for an Haven to the Town: and on the South parts where the Country is more mountainous and hilly, there are two Towns more, each of them situate on an Hill, but the names thereof occur not amongst my Authors.

3. *Imbros*, another small Island, now named *Lembo*,

is situate betwixt *Samos* and the *Thracian Chersonese*, in compass about thirty miles, but more long than broad, stretching North and South, and distant from *Samos* betwixt about ten miles. The Island is mountainous for the most part, except towards the West; where it hath some pleasant and well-watered Plains; in it is a Town of the same name, situate at the foot of the Mountains once sacred unto *Mercury*, but not else observable.

4. *LEMNOS*, an Island of more note, both betwixt *Thrace* and *Macedon*, not far from *Insula*, memorable amongst the Poets for the fabulous Fall of *Peleus*, who, being but an homely Brat, hardly worth his own, was by *Juno* in great Passion thrown out of *Heaven*, and, falling on this Island, came to get his Healing. Howsoever, he was anciently worshipped by the People hereof, and from hence called *Lemnos*. It is in compass about an hundred miles, but more long than broad, extended from the East to the West, on every side well furnished with convenient Creeks and some pretty Havens, by which the want of Rivers is in some part recompensed.

The Country is for the most part plain, if compared unto the adjacent Islands, but otherwise fenced with rising Mountains, the interposed Valleys being very fruitful of Wheat, Pulse, Wine, Flesh, Chiefly, Wool, Flax, Linnen, and all other necessaries, only Wood is wanting. And though there be no Rivers, as before was said, yet have they good Fishing on the Sea-coast for their use and sustenance; and in some parts Baths for Health and Medicines. But the chief Rites of this Island is in a mineral Earth here digged, of excellent virtue for curing Wounds, stopping of Ulcers, expelling Poisons, a Preservative against Infections, and the like; called *Terra Lemnia*, from the place, and *Terra Sigillata*, from the Seal or Character imprinted on it. For being made up into small Pellets, and sealed with the *Turk's* Character or Signet, it is then (as before) sold unto the Merchants, by whom it is dispersed over most parts of the Christian World. Upon the sixth of *August* yearly they go to gather it; but not without much Ceremony, and many religious Preparations, brought in by the *Venitians*, when they were Lords of this Island, and still continued by the *Greek* Monks or *Calvores*, who are the principal in the work. There is one Hill only where it groweth, the Top whereof being opened, they discover the Vein, resembling the calling up of Worms; and having gathered as much of it that day as the Priests think fit, it is cloased again; certain Bags of it being sent to the Grand Signiour yearly, the residue sealed up, and sold to the foreign Merchant.

But to return to the Topography of the place. The Eastern parts hereof are said to be fat and fruitful, the Western very dry and barren: in both containing 57 Towns and Villages, all of them inhabited by the *Greeks*, except only three, and those three garrisoned by the *Turks*, who, being Lords of the whole Island, have now named it *Stalimene*. In former times, from two prime Cities in it, it was called *Dipolis*. Of which the first was called *Lemnos*, by the name of the Island, as a large and well-peopled now as ever formerly, but of no great estimation when it was at the best, feared upon a high Hill looking over the Sea, with a handsome Market place, from which Mount *Atthos* casts a Shadow, though distant 87 miles from it. It was formerly by another name called *Myrina*; but that held not long, the name of *Lemnos* still remaining. 2. The second of the two Cities was then called *Hephestias*, memorable for the Temple of *Vulcan*, hence called *Hephestiades*; since desolate and destroyed,

destroyed, and a new Town built in the place of it, being called *Cochin*. This Town is not great, but of a reasonable strength, memorable for the stout Resistance which a notable *Village*, named *Marulla*, made against the *Turks* in the time of *Mahomet* the Great, the *Venitians* then being Lords of the Island. For suddenly landing, when they were not looked for, with a purpose to surprise this Town, they found more Resistance at the Gates than they did expect: none being more commended than this Maiden, who, seeing her Father slain, took up such Weapons as lay by him, and manfully made good the place, until the rest of the Citizens, wakened with the Alarm, came unto her Rescue, and forced the Enemy to retire. Near hereto is the Hill on which *Vulcan* is said to have fell, more eminent for the Mineral earth hereby gathered. And not far hence *Pliny* reports a Labyrinth to have stood in the days of old, little inferior unto that of *Crete* or *Egypt*: the Ruins of it being decayed, that *Bellonius*, who took great pains in it, was not able to trace them. 3. The third place of note is *Sinra*, though an ordinary Village, yet memorable for the Church in which the *Greek Calvores* begin their Orisons on the sixth day, of *August*, before their gathering of the Earth is often mentioned. In this Country anciently reigned *Tonas*, the Son of *Bacchus* and *Ariadne*, during whose time the Women of the Island upon some dislike murdered all the men, the King only excepted, preferred by *Hippolyte* his Daughter, whom they made their Queen, an I by whom *Jason* with the *Argonauts* were finally entertained for two years together, that they had almost forgot their intended Expedition for the Golden Fleece; the her self being got with Child by *Jason* whilst there, the other Women probably following her Example. Following the Fortune of the other parts of *Greece*, it came at last under the power of the *Constantinopolitan* or Eastern Emperours. In the Subversion of that Empire by the *Latines* or Western Christians (of which more hereafter) it fell to the share of the *Venitians*, who held it till the year, 1463, or thereabouts.

Besides these on the Coast of *Thrace*, there are also some of less note on the Shores of *Macedon*. The principal whereof are, 1. *Peparethus*, as *Ptolemy*, *Euonymus*, as *Pliny* calls it, containing about 40 miles in compass, now called *Saragino*, as *Capaldinus*; or *Lemene*, as *Niger* hath it; fortified on the Eastern part with a Castle built upon a Rock. Others of less note are, 2. *Scyathos*, now *Sciathis*; 3. *Scopelos*, 4. *Halonesus*, 5. *Cythenus*, now *Pontico*, and 6. *Dromus*: of which little memorable. All which, together with those formerly described on the Coast of *Thrace*, being but the Accessories of the several Continents upon which they border; followed the Fortune of the principal, and were conquered in them.

5. *EUBOEÆA*, known to the Ancients by the names of *Macris* and *Abantis*, to the Moderns by that of *Negropont*, frontiereth all along the Coast of *Acchaia*, parallel to which it is in Fertility; one part hereof being torn away from it by an Earthquake, and lying still so near unto it, that between the Island and the Continent is only a little *Eurippus*, which ebbs and flows seven times in one day. The reason of which when *Aristotle* could not find, it is said that he threw himself into the Sea, with these words, *Quia ego non capio re, tu capies me*. In this Island is the Promontory *Capreus*, where *Nauplius*, the Father of *Palamedes*, placed his false Fires, to the Destruction of so many *Greeks*. For understanding how his Son *Palamedes*, whom he deemed to have been slain by the hand of *Paris*, was treacherously circumvented by the Policy of *Ulysses* and *Diomedes*, he conceived such

a Displeasure against the whole Host of the *Gracians*, that he intended their general Destruction. To this end he caused Fires to be made on the tops of the most dangerous and inaccessible Rocks in this whole Island; which the *Greeks* taking (according to the Custom of the time) to have been the Marks of some false Haven, made thitherward, and were there most miserably cast away, there perishing 200 Ships, and many thousand men. But when *Nauplius* understood how *Diomedes* and *Ulysses*, whose Ruine he principally intended, were escaped, he drowned himself for very Vexation in this very same place! *Palamedes*, this *Nauplius's* Son, is said to have invented four of the *Greek Letters*, viz. *α, β, γ, δ*, to have first instructed Centinels in an Army; and to be the first Inventor of the Watch-word.

It is in length 150 miles, stretched out from the North-west to the South-east; in breadth not above twenty, where it is broadest; the whole compass 365 Italian miles. It is the Queen of the *Ægean* Sea; not only for Greatness, but for Fertility and Strength; plentiful in Corn, Wine, Oyl, Fruit and Wood fit for Shipping; enriched with many fair Harbour and capacious bays, and those well fortified; watered also with the Rivers of *Circus* and *Melas*, two Rivers of so strange a nature, that if a Sinep drink of the former, his Wool turneth white, but coal-black, if he drink of the latter. For the credit whereof I refer the Reader unto *Strabo*. Here is also said to be a Stone called *Amianthus*, which is drawn into thread like Hemp, and good Cloth made of it; which, when it is stained, in stead of being set r unto the Fullers, is thrown unto the Fire and so cleaned. But whether this be for not, (for I see it only upon hearsay) certain it is that it was once enriched with Mines both of Brass and Iron, though those now decayed; and likewise with Quarries of pure Marble, which continue still.

The Island, before it was conquered by the *Turks*, was very populous: but the people most delighted to live in Villages; the Cities and walled Towns being only three. 1. *Carysso*, anciently *Caryssus*, with little or no variation, but by *Pliny* called *Ægea* and *Chironia*; memorable for its marble Quarries, of which were made the Pillars called *Columnæ Carystia*. 2. *Chalcis*, now *Negropont*, by the *Turks* named *Eribo*, seated on a Plain near the Water's side, there growing into a fair and goodly Bay called the Gulf of *Negropont*; a populous, strong and wealthy City, so fortified with Walls and Bulwarks, that in the judgment of most men it was held invincible when the *Turks* first fate down before it. Nor was it purchased by the *Turks* (though *Mahomet*, who had took *Constantinople*, undertook the business) at a lower price than the loss of forty thousand men, who were spent upon it; but taken at the last, and the people put unto the Sword, without consideration of Sex or Age. A Town in former times of so great Wealth and Power, that it sent Colonies abroad into *Macedonia*, (a principal Region of the which was hence called *Chalcidice*) as also into *Sicily* and some parts of *Italy*; and had a strong Influence on the Affairs of *Acchaia* also, as being situate so near the Continent, that it was joined to it by a Bridge. When it was in the hands of the Kings of *Macedon*, this Town, together with *Demetrias* in *Thessaly*, and the Castle of *Aerocerinth*, were called the *Petters* of *Greece*: inasmuch that when the *Roman* Senate commanded *Philip*, the Father of *Perseus*, to let the *Gracians* at liberty; the *Gracians* made answer, that in vain was their Liberty restored them, unless these three Towns were first dismantled. Permitted by the *Romans* to live according to their own Laws, in memory of that Benefit they refused to declare against them

in behalf of *Antiochus*, who thereupon made himself Master of the Town, and consequently of the Island. But he was forced to leave the place upon the loss of the Battle at *Thermopylae*, it became free again; till finally made subject unto *Rome* with the rest of *Greece*, and with it made a part of the Eastern Empire. In the Division thereof amongst the *Latines*, it fell to the share of the *Venetians*; who from henceforth with their Gallies to infest the Shores of *Spargia*, and disturb their Trade: Provoked wherewith especially with their taking of *Annu*, a City of *Thrace*, under the Conduct of *Nicolas Canalis*, the *Venetian* Admiral, who in that Enterprize had taken 2000 *Turks*, which he carried with him into this Island, *Mahomet* the Great resolves upon the Conquest of it, and with a puissant Army sets before the Town. And though it cost him dear, yet at last he got it, and therewith all the Island also, which depended on the Fortune of it. *An. 1471.*

6. *SALAMIS* is high unto *Megaris*, one of the Provinces of *Achaia*, famous for the Overthrow of the populous Navy of *Xerxes* by the *Athenians* and their Confederates. What was the number of the Souldiers and Gallies of the *Persian* side hath been already declared. The whole *Grecian* Fleet consisted of no more than 270 Vessels, whereof 127 were rigged and set forth at the charge of the *Athenians* only, the rest by the Associates. Yet was the Admiralty committed to *Eurybiades* a *Lacedaemonian*, the *Athenians* preferring the main care of the comm. Safety before an unfavourable contention for Priority. The *Spartans*, seeing the inequality of Forces, intended not to have hazarded the Battle, but with full sail to have retired to *Peloponnesus*, into which Country the *Persians* had made IncurSIONs; respecting more the Welfare of their own Country yet defensible, than the desperate state of *Attica*. This Design was by *Themistocles* (as careful for the state of *Athen* as they for *Sparta*) signified to *Xerxes*; who getting between them and home, compelled them to a necessity of fighting, but to his own Ruine. For in the Conflict more than 200 of his Ships were sunk, and most of the rest taken; the Confederates having lost of their Navy forty only. Between the *Athenians* and the *Megarenses* were many Contentions for this Island; the Fortune of the *Athenians* in the end prevailing. It hath in a City of the same name, the Royal Seat of *Telemon*, the Father of *Ajax*, so famous in the War of *Troy*: more memorable for giving Birth to *Solon* the Legislator of *Athen*, one of the seven Wise men of *Greece*.

7. *EGINA* now called *Engia*, an Island situate over against *Sinus Saronicus*, being that Bay of *Corinth* which openeth into the *Aegae*, hence called *Golfo di Engia*; the Realm of *Eacus*, made for his Justice and Integrity one of the three Judges of Hell; the other two being his Brother *Rhadamanthus*, and *Minos* the King of *Crete*. It had formerly been called *Oenone*, and *Oenopie*; but took this name from *Engina*, the Daughter of *Alpheus* King of *Bœotia*, on whom *Jupiter* is said to have begot both *Alpheus* and *Rhadamanthus*. The people hereof are properly called *Engienenses* and *Enginice*, much spoken of in the Wars of *Athen*, from which they are distant about 12 miles. The Ground hereof is very stony, but good for Battle, of which it is very plentiful: inhabited in former times by a laborious and thriving People, to whom they gave in those days the name of *Myrmidons*, (the Island being also called *Myrmidonis*) quod *Formicarum* more Terram fuderunt, because *Emmet* like they digged up and under the Earth, to make it the more fit for Tillage; who dwell at first in Caves without any Houses. Hence the occasion of the Fable of turning *Emmets* into Men at the prayer of *Æacus*. Both Tale and People after

(I know not how) were carried into *Thebais*, where before we found them.

8. The *CYCLADES*, so called because they lie in a Circle round about *Delos*, are in number 52. They are also called the *Islands of the Arches*, because they are in the Sea called *Archipelago*. They stand of close together, that in a clear day a man may see 20 of them at a time; for which cause it is with good reason accounted to be a dangerous place for Sailors in a Storm. The chief of these *Cyclades*, are, 1. *DELOS*, quævis *Δηλος*, signifying apparent; because when all the Earth had abjured the sect of *Latona* at the request of *Juno*, this Island, then under water, was by *Jupiter* erected aloft, and fixt to receive her, and in it was the delivered of *Apollo* and *Diana*; of which thus *Ovid*:

Erratica Delos

Errantem accepit, tunc cum leviss Isula, nuda.

Illic incombens sub Palladis arbore, Palma,

Edidit invita geminos *Latona* novices.

Unsettled *Delos* floating on the Wave,

A little Island, entertainment gave

To wandering *Laton*, spight of *Juno's* Head,

Under *Minerva's* Palm-tree brought to Bed.

Notable also is this Island for the Temple of *Apollo* and a Custom, neither permitting men to die, or Children to be born in it; but sending sick Men and great-bellied Women to *Rhene*, a small Island, and not much distant. By a more ancient name it is called *Orygia*, and by that name mentioned in many of the Poets, both *Greek* and *Latin*. The chief Town of it, called also *Delos*, is situate on a Plain environed with Rocks, near the Hill called *Cynthus*, whence *Apollo* had the name of *Cynthius*, and *Diana* of *Cynthia*; as of *Delius*, and *Delia*, from the Island. In this Town had *Apollo* both his Temple and Oracle, delivered here more plainly than in other places, whence (as some say) it was called *Delos*, the word in *Greek* signifying manifest or apparent: made famous by the resort of people from all places thither, especially from the neighbouring Islands, who sent yearly multitudes of men and troupes of Virgins to celebrate his Solemnities with Herds of Sacrifices. More wealthy afterwards by the removing of the Trade of *Corinth* thither; that Town being utterly destroyed by the *Romans*, and this made choice of by the Merchant, partly by reason of the Immunities of the place, but principally in regard of the convenient situation betwixt *Europe* and *Asia*. It continued in great Wealth and Power till *Antibridates* laid it wast, and at last on the ceasing of the Oracles, was utterly forsaken, both Town and Island are now called *Solides*. By which name also *Rhene*, an adjoining Island, (before mentioned) is at this day known; chained to the other by *Polyctor* the Tyrant of *Samos*, and now united to it, at the least in name.

2. *TENOS*, by *Aristotle* called *Hydruntis*, by some *Ophusis*, by the Moderns *Tina*. The chief Town of it is of the same name, to be called from one *Tenor* the Builder of it, and giving name to the Island: memorable for a Fountain called *Dipnosus* of which *Aristotle* and *Atheniens* do both affirm, that the Waters will not mix with Wine: the only Island of this Sea which remaineth under the power of the State of *Venice*, the rest being subject to the *Turk*; deserving therefore the first place in our Description of those Islands that incompass *Delos*, though anciently.

3. *ANDROS* (prima inter *Cycladus*), was reckoned chief amongst the *Cyclades*, or first at least in order, because next to *Delos*: originally called *Coros*, afterwards *Autandros*, and at last *Andros*; from *Andrus* the Son of *Eurimachus*, who founded the chief Town in it, of the same

same name also. Memorable for a pleasant Fountain mentioned by *Pliny*, the waters whereof on the Nones of January yearly had the taste of Wine. It still retains the name of *Andros*, or *Andri*.

4. *NAXOS*, now *Nispha*, one of the biggest of the Pack, as being about 80 miles in compass. In ancient times it was called *Veneris Insula*, or the Island of *Venus*; afterwards *Dionysia*, by reason of its abundance of Wine; and the goodne of those Wines together, consecrated to *Bacchus*, whom the *Greeks* call *Dionysius*. From its wonderful plenty of Wheat called by some *Sicilia minor*, or the Lesser *Sicily*, but at last *Naxos*, from one *Naxus*, who had the conduct of a Colony of *Carians* thither. But notwithstanding this new name, *Bacchus* did still retain the honour to be worshipped in it, in regard of his love unto the place; marrying here *Ariadne*, (as the Poets fable) whom *Theseus* had left upon the Rocks: whose Coronet or Chaplet, being by his means made one of the heavenly Constellations, is by *Columella* called *Ardor Naxius*, by the name of the Island, though commonly by Astronomers *Corona Ariadnes*, from the name of the Lady. The Women of this Island are said by *Pliny* to be delivered generally in the eighth month as *Bacchus* was born within that term. But it is more certainly famous in true Story for the Beauty and Fertility of it, and for a kind of excellent Marble called *Ophites* or *Serpentinus*; the ground whereof is green, diapered with blew or purple Spots, in much esteem amongst the *Romans*. When these Islands fell to the *Venetians*, they conferred this on one *John Gyrgis*, a Patrician or Gentleman of that City, (as they did divers of the rest on other undertakers) from whom it came to the Noble Family of the *Crispi's*, who held it till the year 1572, when *James* the last of that House lost it to *Solyma* the second.

5. *GYAROS*, a little Island, into which the *Romans* used to banish Delinquents. Hence that of *Juvenal*, cited by *G. Sandys*.

And aliq. delinquentis Gyaris vel carcere dignum,

Sive off. aliq. id: Probris laudatur, & alget.

If thou intend'st to thrive, do what deserves

Short Gyaris or Gyves: praise'd Virtue starves.

6. *PÁROS*, now *Paros*, by some of the Ancients called *Paria*, by others *Minos*, but it obtained this new name from *Paria*, son of *Jafon*: memorable for Quarries of the whitest Marble, of which commonly the Statues of the Gods were made, called from hence *Marmor Parium* by the *Latins*. It is in compass about 50 miles, running in a long Plain from East to West, having once a Town of the same name seated in the North, once famous, but now utterly ruined. The Inhabitants hereof were noted to be very careless of keeping their Promises and Contracts: whence *Λαλιαντες* grew into a Byword applied to those who made no reckoning of their Promises. There is now a Town in it called *Cephale*, but it is of no great note.

7. *SCYROS*, opposite to *Megafina* in *Asia Minor*, famous for the Birth of *Neoptolemus* or *Pyrrius*, and that it was the Lurking-place of *Achilles*. For his Mother *Thetis*, being forewarned by an Oracle that he should be slain in the *Trojan* War, sent him to *Lycimedes* King of this Island, where he was brought up in Woman's Attire amongst the King's Daughter's, and decreed a Virgin; till by getting *Pyrrius* on *Deidamia* the King's Daughter it was proved to be otherwise. Others relate that *Ulysses* discovered him by a Wife, who, coming thither like a Pedler or Peti-merchant with Arms and other Ware, to avoid distrust, exposed his Merchandise to the view of the Damozels: when the other Ladies falling on the Tires and Laces, *Achilles* took into his hand the Spear and Shield. Which when *Ulysses* had observed, he made him leave that

Company, and away for *Troy*. The handfomness of the fraud take from *Ovid*, thus:

Conspici venturi Genitrix Nereia Fati  
Disimulat Culin Natum, & deceptat omnes  
(In quibus Jacem) sumpta salacia Vasis.  
Arma ego famines animum molura virilem  
Mertibus infraui, &c.

Thus Englished by *G. Sandys* in his Translation of the *Metamorphosis*:

The whole Design in order to relate:  
*Thetis*, fore-knowing great *Achilles* Fate,  
Disguis'd her Son, to like a Virgin drest,  
That all mistook, and *Ajax* with the rest.  
When Arms with Women's Trifles, which might blind  
Suspect, I brought to tempt a manly Mind.  
Yet was the *Hero's* Virgin-like array'd.  
Who taking up the Shield and Spear, I said,  
O Goddess-born, for thee the Fate of *Troy*.  
Her Fall reserves: why doubtst thou to destroy  
Great *Pergamus*? then made him d'off those Weeds,  
And sent the Mighty unto mighty Deeds.

There is another of this name betwixt *Neopontus* and *Lefbor*, which *Orellius* conceives to be the Scene of this Action: but the general opinion is for this, (though that be the greater Ile) to which the situation of it amongst the rest of those Islands where reigned so many of the *Greek* Kings interred in the War of *Troy* seems to give good countenance: the name and power of *Greece* not reaching in those days so much towards the North.

8. *MELOS*, situate betwixt *Crete* and *Peloponnesus*, and equally distant from them both. The Promontories of *Scyllam* in the one, and that of *Diisymneum* in the other, shooting out a point, inhabited in former times by a Colony of *Phœnicians*, who coming out of *Babylon*, a Town of that Country gave that name unto it: being called *Melos* afterwards by the *Greeks*, from its abundance of Honey. The Birth-place of *Diogenes* the Philosopher, hence furnished *Melus*, but more properly *Asot* or the *Atthi*, the first who in those dark times of Ignorance absolutely denied that there was a God. *Protagoras* *Deos* in dubium vocavit, *Diogenes* exclulit, faith *Laërtius* of him. It is now called *Milo*, round in form, and containing 80 miles in compass. The Soil is sufficiently fruitful in Corn and Oyl, but defective in Wine. Here is great plenty of Marble curiously bestowed, and no small store of M.-stones, as also great quantities of Pitch and Brimstone, and some Sulphury or hot Springs good for many Difficacies. The chief Town of it is called *Milo* also.

9. *SERIPHUS*, 20 miles from *Delos*, memorable of old for the Education of *Perses* the Son of *Danae*. It is reported of this Island, that the Frogs bred there are naturally mute; but such as are brought from other places keep their natural tone: from whence, Proverbially, silent and fullen persons were called *Rane Scriptæ*. It is now called *Serphus* or *Serphene*, a stony and rocky Island, and hath a Town of the same name.

10. *CIJA*, by some called *CEOS*, and now *Zea*, opposite to the Promontory of *Achaia* called *Sinim*, in compass about 50 miles, made towards the West, in fashion of a Crescent or half-Moon, mountainous and hilly, except towards the North; by *Pliny* said to have been torn from *Endau*, by a sudden violence of the Sea, many men perishing in the waters. Of old times it was beautified with three fair Towns; 1. *Julis*, 2. *Carthæa*, and 3. *Careissus*: of which there is nothing now remaining.

Others there are whose names occur amongst the Ancients: as 11. *Miconus*, now called *Micole*; 12. *Cyrbus*, now *Cuuro*; 13. *Siphnus*, now *Siphano*; 14. *Therapsa*, now *Santorini*; 15. *Comolis*, called formerly *Echinus*, out now *Poline*; 16. *Oliarus*, now *Quinninia*; 17. *Sicennus*.

cenus, now *Sicino*, 18. *Polygor*, now *Falconara*; 19. *Amorgos*, now *Morge*, one of the biggest of them all, but not else observable.

9. The *SPORADES* are so called from *σποαί*, *spao*, to quad in *Mari* *parse sunt*, & non in *Circulo* *consta*, because they lie dispersed and scattered, not formed into a Circle, as the *Cyclades* are. They are in number twelve. viz. 1. *Anaphe*, so called by the *Argonauts*, *καὶ τὴν ἀναπαιάν* *(Anapainan)*, because the Moon did suddenly, and beyond her natural course, appear unto them, then grievously distressed by Tempest. *Apollo* worshipped here is hence called *Anapheus*. It is now usually called *Nampho*. 2. *Astypalea*, now *Stam-palia*, in compass 88 miles by some of the Ancients called *Troen Trapaiza*, or the Table of the Gods. In *Astypale*, the chief Town of it, was *Apollo* worshipped, from hence sometimes called *Astypaleus*. 3. *Helene*, so called from that fair Greek Dame, whom *Paris* is here said to have first deflowered; now called *Macronisi*. 4. *Los*, fifteen miles from *Naxos*, where *Homer* is said to have been buried: But others find his Grave at *Naxos*, and some at *Chios*; the difference being almost as great about the place of his Burial as the place of his Birth. Then are 5. *Lagusa*, 6. *Phocaea*, 7. *Phocasia*, 8. *Philocandros*, 9. *Schinusa*, 10. *Strychia*, of little note either in Poetry or Story. And finally, 11. *Thera*, not far from *Aegina*, before mentioned, formerly called *Caliste*; but named thus by *Theras* a Theban Gentleman, the Son of *Antioch*, conducting thither a Colony of *Spartans* and *Myrians*, (these last of *Thessaly*) cast out of *Lemnos* by *Pelasgus*: in memory of whom, as the Founder of their Name and Nation, the Islanders used to celebrate an annual Feast. A Sedition after happening amongst this People, the weaker party, under the Conduct of one *Battus*, admonished to do by the Oracle of *Apollo*, passed over into *Africk*, and there built *Cyrene*. The Birth-place of the Poet *Callimachus*, who ascribes his Original to this Island, as himself thus witnesseth,

ΚΑΛΛΙΜΑΧΟΣ ΠΕΡΙΕΛΕΙΟΝ, ὅς ἐστι γέννημα τοῦ Ἰσθμοῦ  
Μήτηρ δὲ τοῦτο πόλις ἐστὶν Ἰσθμίου.

That is to say,

*Calliste*, which men *Thera* now do call,  
Of my dear Country the Original.

10. *CYTHERA*, now called *Cerigo*, lieth in the bottom of this Sea, not above five miles distant from *Capo Malio* in *Peloponnesus*; formerly called *Porphyris*, from the abundance of Marble, whereof the Island yields good plenty. It is in compass about 60 miles, enriched with a delightful Soil, and having many Havens, but those small and unsafe, and very difficult of entrance. It is environed on all sides with Rocks, of themselves inaccessible, by which it is defended from the *Turks*, who hitherto have suffered the *Venetians* to enjoy it, to whom it fell in the division of the Spoil amongst the *Latines*, so often spoken of before. It had a Town of the same name: some two furlongs from the Haven stood the Temple of *Venus*, (the ancientest dedicated to that Goddess which the *Grecians* had), and the ein her *Statua* in complete Armour, like another *Pallas*. Out of this Temple (the Ruines whereof are still to be seen) was *Helen*, the Wife of *Menelaus*, willingly ravished by *Paris*, the Son of *Priamus*; but not enjoyed by him, till he had brought her to a small Island of the *SPORADES* by her name called *Helene*, as before said. From the Devotions of this People paid to duly to her, did *Venus* get the Adjunct of *Cytherea*, by which she is often called in the Poets. Thus, for one, in *Virgil*,

Parce metu, Cytherea, manent immota tuorum  
Fata tibi.

That is to say,

Drive Fear, fair *Cytherea*, from thy mind;  
Thou thy Son's Fate immovable shalt find.

And so I pass from the *Aegean* to the *Cretan Sea*, observing this only by the way, that most of the 69 Kings which accompanied *Agamemnon* in the War of *Troy* were Kings only of these small Islands; or else of other places as inconsiderable for wealth and Potency; every small Town and Territory having in those early times amongst the *Grecians* (when Ambition had not taught the Great ones to devour the less) a peculiar King.

#### 9. The Islands of the CRETAN Sea.

THE *CRETAN* Sea is properly that part of the *Aegean* or *Ionian* Sea which lyeth about the Shores of *Crete*, and formerly was under the Command and power thereof: as in those times, the Sea about *Carpathus*, another Isle of the *Aegean*, had the name of *Carpathian*; and that about *Icaria*, the name of *Icarian*, though situate in the *Aegean* also. The Isles hereof are, 1. *Crete*, 2. *Claude*, 3. *Dia*, and 4. *Leia*; for *Meli* and *Cimoli*, named by *Ptolemy* against the Islands which adjoin on *Crete*, having been already spoken of amongst the *Cyclades*, in the account whereof they pass by consent of Writers.

1. *CRETAN*, now *Candie*, hath on the East the *Carpathian* Sea, on the West the *Ionian*, on the North the *Aegean*, on the South the *African* or *Libick*. Inform it extendeth East and West with three Points or Promontories: whereof that towards the East, called anciently *Samonium*, is now called *Capo di Salomone*; that on the South-west, looking towards *Africk*, formerly named *Hermæa*, is now *Capo Gabrasse*, and finally, that on the North-West towards *Peloponnesus*, of old called *Cmaru*, is now called *Capo Chiffin*. This last is directly opposite to *Malæa* a Promontory of *Laconia*; the Sea betwixt them being so troublesome & tempestuous especially on *Laconia* side, that at last it grew into an ordinary *Calent*, *Mæta prætervectus obfuscatur que sunt domo*, viz. that he which was to Sail by the point of *Malæa*, should lay aside the care of all other matters, and attend his present Safety only.

It hath in several Ages and in several Authors obtained several names. By *Homer* and *Aristarchus* it is called *Hecatompolis*, from the number of an hundred Cities then contained in it: by *Pliny* and *Solinus*, *Mæcaris*, and *Mæcaron*; that is to say, the happy Island, from the goodness of the Soil and temper of the Air: by *Stephanus*, *Idea*, from a famous Mountain of it: by *Giraldus*, *Telechini*, from the *Telechini*, the Priests of *Cybele*, who was hereth ingreat request. At the present it is called *Candie*, either in regard to the *Whitess* of the Rocks wherewith it is Candore, or from *Candia* the Metropolis or chief Town thereof. But the general name which hath prevailed most in all sorts of Writers is that of *Crete*, so called *quasi Creta*, by a Syncope or Abbreviation, from the *Cretæi*, the first Inhabitants hereof; who, together with the *phœnicians* and *Telechini*, were the Priests of *Cybele* the principal Goddess of this Island: and they so called *ἐκείνη* *κύβητις*, from their *Tonsure* or *Shaving* of some of the Pagan Deities, and possibly enough from this Etymology to the Church of *Rome*. And to this Etymology I *Crete*, rather incline, than either to derive the name from *Crete*, the Son of *Jupiter* and the Nymph *Idæa*, or from *Cyete* the Daughter of *Heperus*, though both these have their Authority also. Nor dare I to reject the Conceit of *Bocharius*, who,

who, fetching the Erymons of most people from the *Phœnic* Language or Original, will have the *Cretans* to be descended from the *Cerebiths*, a Nation of the *Philistins*, well known in Scripture; the word *Cerebith* being abbreviated into *Cretib*, from which into *Crete* and *Cretans* is not difficult passage. But in my mind his Conjecture is better than his Proof. For though it may be granted without inconvenience that the chief Arms of the *Philistins* were their Bow and Arrows, as appears 1 *Sam.* 31. 3. and that the *Cretans* anciently were expert at those Weapons also: yet this concludes no more that the *Cretans* are of the Race of the *Philistins*, than that almost all Nations else had the same Original; the Bow and Arrows being the ordinary Weapons of most People formerly, till Custom and Experience trained them up to others of a later date, as he himself acknowledgeth in many places of his excellent and elaborate *Traſtates*.

In respect to the Heavenly Bodies it is situate under the beginning of the fourth Climate, so that the longest Day in Summer is no more than 14 hours and a quarter: and in relation to the Earth, set in the middle of the Sea, as to even a distance from *Europe*, *Asia* and *Africk*, as if naturally designed to be what *Aristotle* hath pleased to call it the *Lady* and *Mistress* of the Sea. For it is distant from *Peloponnesus* an hundred miles, as many from *Asia* the less, and not above 150 from the Shores of *Africk*: so verifying that of *Virgil*,

Creta Jovis magni medio jacet Insula Pontu.

*Jovis* Birth-place *Creta*, a fruitful Land,  
In'th' middle of the Sea doth stand.

It is in length 270, in breadth 50 miles, in compass about 750. The Soil is very fruitful, especially of Wines which we call *Muscadells*, of which they traſt yearly 12000 Butts, together with Sugar-Candy, Gums, Honey, Saffron, Olives, Dates, Apples, Oranges, Limons, Raisins, Melons, Citrons, Pomegranates. Yet, as other Countries of the like hot nature, it is not a little deficient in Corn; the most or greatest part of which is yearly brought thither from *Peloponnesus*.

The Island is very populous, inasmuch that it is thought that upon any sudden occasion the Seignoury of *Venice* can raise in it 60000 men able to bear Arms. The people have formerly been good Sea-fairing men; a Virtue communicated with many Vices, which they yet retain, as Envy, Malice and Lying: to which last they are so infinitely addicted, that an horrible Lie was called proverbially *Cretan mendacium*. This fault was aimed at by the Poet *Epimachus*, a Native of this Island, whose words are thus cited by *S. Paul* to *Titus*, Chap. 1. v. 12.

Καὶ οὗτοι ἀπὸ τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ δόξης γὰρ ἀπερίστατοι.

The *Cretans* always Liers are,  
Unruly Beasts, of Labour spare.

To which this Proverb may be added, viz. *Τελὸς ὅσον ἔδωκεν ὁ θεὸς τὸν τόπον*, that is to say, There are three Nations whose names begin with the letter *K* worse than any others, viz. *Karians*, *Karians*, *Karians*, the *Cappadocians*, *Cretans*, and *Cilicians*: though some, I know, apply this Proverb to the Cities of *Cerinth*, *Capna*, and *Carthage*, beginning all with the same Letter, and all conceived to be very dangerous to the State of *Rome*. At this day they are sick of their old Distractions, as great Liers and as Idle as ever formerly; Covetous withal, and very subtle, impatient of Labour, and not caring to learn any Science perfectly: only well practised in Shooting, to which they are accustomed from their youth, and therein thought more expert than the *Turks* themselves.

The Language generally spoken is the *Greek* Tongue; though the Gentlemen and Merchant, by reason of their Dependence on the State of *Venice*, speak *Italian* also. Both Languages are used also in Divine Offices: the people

being generally of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*; but the *Latine* Service is used also in many places, since the Subjection of this Island to the *Venetians*. They were converted first unto the Faith by *S. Paul* the Apostle, who, having planted the Gospel of Life amongst them, left the watering of it unto *Titus*, whom he made Bishop of this Isle; recommending unto him the Care of the Churches there, with power of Ordination and Ecclesiastical Censure, as appears clearly by the Text. Which power that it belonged to *Titus* as Bishop, and not as their Evangelist only, is affirmed expressly not only by the Subscription of the said Epistle, where he is plainly called *ἐπίσκοπος* *ἐκκλησιᾶς* *ἐκείνης* *ἐν* *κρήτῃ*, the first Bishop of the Church of the *Cretans*; but by the concurrent Testimonies of *Euseb.* *Ecll.* *Hist.* 13. c. 4. *S. Amb.* in *Præfat.* ad *Tit.* *S. Hieron.* in *Tit.* c. 1. v. 5. and in his *Tract de* *Scriptor. Ecclesiasticis*, *Theodoret*, cited by *Oecumen.* in *Præfat.* ad *Ep. Tit.* *Oecumenius* himself in *Tit.* 1. and finally by *Theophylact* in his Preface to the same Epistle. All which in plain terms call him Bishop, and the Bishop of *Crete*; according to that sense and meaning of the word *Episcopus*, as it was used in their times, till sent from *Presbyter*. The Church hereof, whilst wholly under the *Greek* Patriarchate, was governed by four Arch-bishops and 21 Bishops. But since the Subjection of this Island to the State of *Venice*, there is but one Archbishop, which is he of *Candia*, the chief City, and eight Bishops only; besides the titular Patriarch of *Constantinople*, who hath there his Residence; some Prelate of the *Latine* Church having been always honoured with that empty Title ever since the Recovery of that City from the Western Christians.

Famous was this Island amongst the Ancients for many things memorized both by the Poets and old Historians. For here reigned *Saturn* in the first Ages of the World, Father of *Jupiter*, who was born here, and secretly nursed in the Hill called *Ida*. For seeing that, by the Compact betwixt *Saturn* and his Brother *Titan*, *Saturn* was to enjoy the Kingdom for his own Life only, but all his Male-children to be murdered as soon as born; *Jupiter*, by the care of his Mother *Cybele*, was conveyed away, and secretly nursed in Mount *Ida*, as before was said: the Crying of the Infant being drowned by the noise of loud-sounding Cymbals, purposely used by his Rockers to avoid Discovery. Whence afterwards the *Corymbans*, or Priests of *Cybele*, used in her Sacrifices the like musical Instruments, continually founding, and withal shaking of their Heads, (like Fiddlers) in an antick and ridiculous manner, Aloud whereunto thus the Poet *Claudian*;

Non te progenitum Cybeleius *Aëre canoro*  
Lustravit Corybas.

That is to say,

No *Cybeleian Corybas* that day  
That thou was born did in his Cymbal play.

Here also lived *Aënos* and *Rhadamantibus*, whose Laws were after imitated in the prime Cities of *Greece*, and who, for their Equity on Earth, are seized by the Poets to be (together with *Eacus*) the Judges in *Heil*. In this Island also lived the lowly-lustful *Pisipha*, Wife of *Aënos*, who is fabled by the Poets (if it be a Fable) to have doated on a white Bull, who, they say, begat on her the *Minotaur*: *Daedalus* having framed for her an artificial Cow, into which the conveyed her self, and by that means obtained her desire. The Fable is thus expounded, that *Pisipha* was in love with *Taurus*, one of *Aënos*'s Secretaries: whose company by the Pandarism of *Daedalus* the enjoying, was delivered of two Sons, one called *Aënos*, the other *Taurus*. And whereas it is said that the *Aënos*,



*Taur* was slain by *Theseus*, like enough that the annual Tribute of 7 Children, which the *Athenians* paid to *Minos*, was laid up in some Prison, *Minos* and *Taurus* being the Keepers or Gaolers. As for the action of *Pasiphae*, I think it not altogether impossible to be true, considering how *Domitian*, to verify the old relation, exhibited the like beastly Spectacle in his Amphitheatre at *Rome*: for thus saith *Martial*.

*Iunitham Pasiphaen Didmo, credite, Taurus  
Vidimus, accipit Fabula prisca fidem.  
Nec fœmistrar (Cælar) longæva Venusas:  
Quicquid Fama canit, donat Avena tibi.  
The Fable's prov'd a Truth, our eyes did see  
The Cretan Bull sport with *Pasiphae*.  
What cause hath then Antiquity to glory?*

We saw it done, she only heard the Story.

Finally, here was the so-much-celebrated *Labyrinth*, made by *Dædalus* for the including and safe-keeping of the *Minotaurus*; so full of various Windings and turnings, that when any one was got to the end thereof, it was impossible for him to come out but by the help of a Clew of thread. By this *Minotaur* (half a Man, half a Bull) the Children of the *Athenians*, paid yearly to *Minos* in way of Tribute, are said to be murdered, till he was killed by *Theseus*, Son of *Aegæus* King of *Athens*, with whom *Ariadne* the Daughter of *Minos* falling in love, taught him a means to kill the Monster, and gave him the Clew of thread, before spoken of, to conduct him out again: the Moral or History whereof hath been shewn before. Nor must it be forgotten, that *Strabo* the Geographer, who flourished in the time of *Tiberius Cæsar*, was of *Cretan* Parents, (though born in the City of *Amasia* in the Realm of *Pontus*: which adds unto this Island as much true Renown as any of the Fictions or Stories (be which they will) of former times.

Things most observable at the present are these that follow. 1. That it breeds no Serpents, no venomous Worm, or ravenous or hurtful creature; so that their sheepraze very securely without any Shepherd. 2. If a Woman bite a Man any thing hard, he will hardly be cured of it were it true, then the last part of the Privilege foregoing (of breeding no hurtful creature) must needs be false, if this have an Herb called *Alimos*, which if one chew in his mouth he shall feel no Hunger for that day; if *Quade* may be believed, who speaks it. 4. Here is (besides many other medicinal Herbs) that called *Diſtammum*, or *Diſtammus*, of special virtue against Poison, either by way of Prevention or present Cure, peculiar only to this Island: it affordeth great Juice of *Laudanum*, a Juice or Gum forced with incredible labour out of a certain Tree called *Cissus*, of which the Mountains yield abundance; good to cause Sleep, if moderately and carefully taken; but if not very well prepared and taken with moderation; it brings the last Sleep upon a man, out of which he is not to be awakened till the Sound of the last Trumpet raise him.

Chief Mountains of it are, 1. *Ida*, now *Pſiorri*, situated in the midst of the Island, begirt about with many fair and pleasant Villages, sheltered by it from the violence of Wind and Sun; the Hill being so high, that from the Top hereof both sides of the Island may be easily seen. Here *Jupiter* is said to have been secretly nursed, from hence called *Idæus*. And at the bottom of it the *Cretans* use to shew some traſts of the ancient *Labyrinth*, being indeed no other than the Ruines of some larger Quarry: the *Labyrinth* made by *Dædalus* being so defaced in the time of *Pliny*, that he knew not where to find any Ruines of it. 2. *Diſte*, now called *Sebia*, in some places *Lefth*, so high, that all the Winter long it is covered with Snow; yet all the sides thereof are garnished with Cypress-trees: a Mountain of such fame, that the whole Island sometimes had the name of *Diſtea*, the City *Diſtyra*, the Promontory

*Diſtyræum*, and the Herb *Diſtammum* all seeming to take name from hence. 3. *Leuci*, a long Chain of Hills, so named from the Whiteness of them, now called *Malakia*, and by some *La Spachia*.

Rivers of any eminence here are few or none. The principal of those that be, are, 1. *Milopotamus*, 2. *Scapnus*, 3. *Epicadnus*, and 4. *Diworo*, towards the North; 5. *Populiar*, towards the East; 5. and 6. *Limen*, towards the West: none of them navigable, or capable of Ships of Burthen, scarce of little Barks. But that defect is supplied by the neighbouring Sea, which affordeth many Creeks and Bays, some capacious Havens, and greater store of Fish, among which a kind of bearded Mullet, reckoned among the Delicacies of the ancient *Romans*. By the convenience of which Harbours, their Fish-trade, and the situation of it in the midst of the Sea, the People of this were esteemed to good Sea-faring men, that when the people of those times did tax a man with any incredible report, they used to say, *Cretensis pelagus*, meaning thereby the matter to be as improbable as for one *Cretan* to be no Sailor.

In former times there were reckoned in this Island an hundred Cities, whence it was called *Hecatompolis*; which about 40 were remaining in the time of *Pliny*, for so many of their names he gives us. Those of most note were, 1. *Gnosſus*, the Seat-royal or Court of *Minos*, where *Ariadne* the Daughter of *Minos* had the name of *Gnosſia*; in former times called *Ceratus*, from a little River of that name running not far off. 2. *Cydon*, or *Cydonia*, a midland City, (as the former) memorable for an excellent kind of Apples, which the *Latin* called *Poma Cydonia*, amongst whom they were in great request, as they are this day (though by the name of *Adam's Apples*) amongst the *Turks*: the most ancient of all the Cities of *Cretan*, many of which were at first Colonies of this, for which reason it was called commonly *Mater urbium*. 3. *Elythra*, as *Pliny*, *Erythra*, as the printed Copies of *Florus* corruptly call it, one of the five Cities taken here by the *Romans*. 4. *Milettum*, mentioned by *Strabo* (though omitted by *Pliny*), the place in which *S. Paul* left *Timothy* sick, as is mentioned 2 *Tim.* 4. 20, which happened when the Apostle hovered about that Coast, as is said *Aſt.* 27. 7, 8, &c. For that it could not be that *Milettum* to which he congregated the Elders of *Ephesus*, appear by his being at *Hierusalem*, *Aſt.* 21. 17, and other circumstances of the Story. 5. *Gortyna*, now to which flood the *Labyrinth* made by *Dædalus*; memorable also for a Reed, growing on the River *Lenaxa*, (near to which it stood) of which they made their strongest Arrows; by *Virgil* *Aeneid.* 11. called *Spicula Gortynia*, as also for a light Guard much used by Hunters, which *Clavdian* calls *Gortynum vestem*, appareling *Diana* the great Huntress with it. 6. *Diſtammum*, as *Pliny*, or *Diſtanna*, as *Pliny* calls it, so named from the Hill *Diſte*, near to which it is situated: one of the chief Cities of the North parts of this Island; as 7. *Amphicla*, so named from its plenty of Vines, was upon the South. 8. *Minos*, a Port-town, (now *Amara*) so named from *Minos*, in the East; and 9. *Corymbus*, on a Promontory of the same name, in the West side of it. But these, and almost all the rest spoken of by *Pliny*, being so destroyed by Time and Wars that the Ruines of them are hardly visible, we must behold it in the present condition and estate thereof; divided into four parts or Provinces, according to the names and number of the four chief Cities; that is to say, 1. *Sittia*, 2. *Candia*, 3. *Retimo*, and 4. *Canea*.

In the first part, called *SITTIA*, lying towards the East, are 74 Villages, and but 17 Parishes, of which fix only are of the Church of *Rome*, the residue holding

the Communion of the Church of *Greece*. The principal whereof are, 1. *Sittia*, or *Cytia*, conceived by some to be the *Gnosſus* of *Pliny*; a small Town but populous, and very well fortified. 2. *Gierapetra*, betwixt *Sittia* and *Candia*, seated on the Sea-side, on a lofty Rock, at the bottom whereof is said to be a dangerous Whirl-pit, supposed to be the *Panormus* of *Pliny*. 3. *S. Maſcor*, the dwelling-place of one of the Bishops of the *Latin*s.

2. In the second part hereof, called the Territory of *CANDIA*, lying directly West of *Sittia*, are reckoned 465 Towns and Villages, making up amongst them 99 Parish Churches; whereof 77 are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*, the other 22 only of the Church of *Rome*. Of these the principal are, 1. *Candia*, an Archbishop's See, the Metropolis or Head City of the Island, which takes name from hence. It is situate on the North-Coast hereof towards the *Aegean*, beautified with a safe and commodious Haven, and fortified so strongly, that it seems impregnable, affirmed by some to be the *Mastonia* of the Ancients; but I find no such place in *Pliny*, nor in *Orelinus* his *Thesaurus*. The City is fair and large, built for the most part of Free-stone, with low Roofs, after the manner of *Italy*, the Streets broad and spacious from whence a fair and pleasant plain leadeth to a place called the Cave of *Minos*, reported by the common people to be the Sepulchre of *Jupiter*. 2. *Maloſin*, 3. *Theneus*, 4. *Cassell town*, 5. *Bonifacio*, 6. *Belvedere*, 7. *Mardela*, of which little memorable.

3. In the third part, being the Territory of *RETIMO*, formerly *Rhithymna*, lying North-west of the Territory of *Candia*, are accounted 265 Towns and Villages, making up 44 Parishes, whereof 36 are *Græcians*, and but 8 of the *Latin*s. The chief of which are, 1. *Retimo*, on the Shore of the Northern Sea, as *Candia* is, well fortified, and a Bishop's See, but not else observable. 2. *Milopotamus*, an Episcopal See also, called of the River *Milopotamus*, on which it is seated. 3. *Agſiman*, 4. *Mandrus*, 5. *Lappa*, hardly worth the naming.

4. In the fourth and last part hereof, being the Territory of *CANEA*, taking up all the West of the Island, are contained 240 Towns and Villages, distributed into 47 Parishes; of which 32 are of the *Greek* Church and the 14 remaining of the Church of *Rome*. Those of most note are, 1. *Canea*, built by a Colony or Plantation of *Ionian* Gentlemen, on the North Coast also, supposed to stand the same place where once *Cydon* did; second to none but *Candia* for Wealth and Beauty, but far before it for the commodiousness of the Port, commonly called *Porto della Suda*, capable of more than a thousand good Gallies at a time; and therefore strongly fortified with two Cittadels or Castles, on each side of the Haven one, as the Door and Entrance of the Country. 2. *Chusano*, in *Latin* called *Cissamus*, old and decayed, the Walls thereof only holding good against the Ruines of time; situate in a low Moorish place towards the *Aegean*.

3. *Seling*, built upon a Hill on the Sea-side, opposite to *Chusano*, 4. *Spachia*, or *Spachia*, situate at the foot of the Mountains of old called *Leſke*, now *della Spachia*, from this Town: unwall'd, but fortified with a Castle; built for a place of Refuge against the Incurſions of such Pirates as annoy the Coasts, in which the Governour for this part hath his chief Abode. By which account it will appear that in the whole Island are no more than 1044 Towns and Villages, and 207 Parish Churches, of which there be but 48 which are accounted Members of the Church of *Rome*, the residue, 159 in number, retaining their Communion with the Church of *Greece*.

As for the Story of this Island, we can ascend as high as the times of *Saturn*, for its Antiquity affirmed to be the Son of *Uranus* and *Poseidon*, or of Heaven and Earth;

who, better favoured by his Mother obtained the Kingdom of *Crete*, his elder Brother *Titan* being quite excluded. Hereupon Wars arising betwixt the Brethren, it was ordered thus, That *Saturn* for his own Life should enjoy the Kingdom, which after his decease should return to the *Titans*; and for the performance of this Contract, the Sons of *Saturn* were to be strangled as soon as born. But *Cybele* the Wife of *Saturn* unawares to her Husband, preserved first *Jupiter*, and after other of her Sons; which coming to the knowledge of *Titan* and his Sons, they made War against *Saturn*, but in conclusion were subdued by the Aid of *Jupiter*: whence grew the Fable of the *Titans* warring against the Gods, *Saturn* and *Jupiter* his Son being after reckoned in that number. The *Titans* being vanquished, a new War arose betwixt *Saturn* and *Jupiter*, occasioned only (as many unatural Wars since these times have been) by *Fears* and *Jealousies*: which ending at the last in the Flight of *Saturn*, *Jupiter* became sole King of *Crete*, reigning there in great power and honour till the time of his death; and dying was interred at *Gnosſus*, with this Inscription or Epitaph in old *Greek* Letters, *Ὁ ΖΗΤΩΝ ΚΕΦΑ*, that is to say *Jupiter the Son of Saturn*. After his death he was worshipped by the blind Gentiles as the chief of their Gods, and honoured frequently with the Title of *Πατὴρ τῶν θεῶν καὶ ἀνθρώπων* the Father both of Gods and Men: though most incongruously and absurdly, as *Lactantius* noteth, there being many thousands living in and before the times of *Saturn*, when *Jupiter* was yet unborn. But to proceed; he being dead, *Minos*, begotten by him on *Europa*, succeeded here; who, wisely taking the advantage which the convenient situation of the Island gave him, made himself Master of the Seas, and afterwards enlarged his Dominions by the Conquest of the *Megarensis* and *Athenians*, upon which last he imposed, amongst other hard Conditions, a Tribute of seven Male Children yearly to be kept as Hostages; which determined after three years by the Valour and good Fortune of *Theseus*. But *Minos* being slain in *Sicily*, and his Posterity extinct, the *Cretans* would no longer admit of Kings, but governed themselves after the manner of a Commonwealth or free State: The Laws and Ordinances whereof, first devised by *Minos*, were of such esteem that they were much imitated by *Lycurgus*, and are at large described by *Aristotle* in the 2. book of his *Politics*, ch. 8. Under this Government it continued till the *Romans*, having taken in all the rest of *Greece*, picked a Quarrel with them. For though it was pretended that they had been aiding unto *Antisthenes* in his War against them; yet *Florus* states the matter rightly, affirming that the War was undertaken on no other ground, but *sola nobilitas Insulam vincendi cupiditate*, out of a covetous desire only of subduing such a wealthy Island. And to this War they went with so proud a Confidence, that *M. Anthony*, who commanded in it, carried more Chains with him to bring home his Prisoners then Arms to conquer them. An Infelice which he paid right dear for, his Navy being vanquished by the *Cretans*, the bodies of his slain Souldiers hanged upon the Masts, and himself perishing in the Action by a fit of Sicknes. *Marcus*, who succeeding him in that charge, went on more successfully, first taking *Gnosſus*, *Elythra*, or (*Erythra*, as *Florus* calls it) and *Cydon*, their principal Cities, and not long after all the Island, during the vanquished Islanders with such Inhumanity, that most of them poisoned themselves to avoid his Cruelty: rewarded with no other Honour for so great a Victory, than that he got the surname of *Creticus*; his Triumph being denied by the Faction of *Pompey*, against whose will he had put himself upon that Service. This being added to the *Roman* Empire, it was after united unto *Cyrenaica* by *Augustus Cæsar*.

*Cefar*, both making up one Province only, governed by a Proconful till the death of *Nero*; afterwards fepared from it, but the time I find not. During the Reign of *Conftantine*, in 36 years together there fell no Rain, fo that this Ifland was in a manner wholly defolated. But *Helena*, the Mother of *Conftantine*, having obeyed Rain for it by her prayers to God, it was again new peopled by feveral Colonies brought out of *Aegypt*, *Syria*, *Greece*, and the parts adjoining. By *Conftantine* made a Province of the Diocle of *Macedonia*, it continued a Member of the Eaftern Empire till the time of *Michael Palaeologus*, when it was fubdued by the *Saracens*; from them recovered by the more fortunate conduct of *Nicéphorus Phocas*, who came unto the Empire, Anno 963. In the divifion of the Spoil amongst the *Latines*, it was firft given to *Boniface* Marquels of *Montferrat*; by him furrendered willingly to the State of *Venice*, who had a mind to be poffeffed of all the Iflands of that Empire: he being recompensed with the Kingdom of *Theffaly*, the fair and wealthy City of *Theffalonica*, and many Towns and Territories in *Peloponnesus*. Under that State it ftill continueth, in vain attempted by *Sulimus* the fecond in the year, 1571, at what time he invaded and conquered *Cyprus*; and gallantly defended for this year laft againft all the Forces of *Ibrahim* the late Grand Seignior. What the Succels of this War will be, we fhall fee hereafter.

For the Defence hereof againft the Injurments of the Inhabitants, who did at firft ill brook the *Venetian* Government, there are fome ftanding Forces kept in conflant pay; befides fuch as are maintained in feveral Garrifons, the City of *Canea* having in no fewer then fix Companies of Souldiers, *Candia* 2000 Souldiers, and the leffer Cities proportionably: over which there is fet fo ftroga Guard, that a Natural *Cretan* is not permitted to enter weaponed into any of them. And for the prefervation of their Intereft in it from foreign Power, they have furnifhed the Ifland with 70 or 80 Gallies for the defence of the Shores; and have exceedingly fortified the Haven of *Snda* with two ftroga Castles, this Haven being capable of more then 1000 Veffels, and therefore meritoriously reputed the Door and entry into the Countrey. It is reported that the King of *Spain*, *Philip* the fecond, did offer unto the *Venetians* for this Haven money more then enough; but it could not be accepted. For though the *Spaniards* feemed only to intend the Retreat and relief of his own Navy when he would undertake any Expedition againft the *Turks*, yet the wife *Venetians* faw, that by this Haven he might at all times ave, and when he lifted ferprize, the whole Countrey.

II. The other Iflands of this Sea, as of leffer note, will be paid to deliver in few words. The firft of which is called *CLAUDIUS*, mentioned *Alds* 27. 16. fituate on the South-weft of *Crete*, by *Alds* called *Ganlos*; wherein in *Plinius*'s time was a Town or City named *Gandos*, now called *Gozo*, with the Ifland. *2. IALIA*, now *Strandia*, a very fmall Ifland, and of note. *3. LETOIA*, on the South-eaft of *Crete*, now called *Chryfina*. And *4. EGILIA*, or *Argilla*, by *Plinius* *Argilla*, more in the Sea towards *Peloponnesus*; now called *Cecirio* by *Sophianus*. Of which and others of lefs note (if fells may be) there is no more to be faid, but that they have alwayes followed the Fortunes of *Crete*, on which they fecm to have their principal Dependence.

#### 10. The Iflands of the IONIAN Sea.

THE IONIAN Sea is fo called either from *Ionia*, the Son of *Dyrrhachium*, whom *Heracles* having ignorantly killed threw into this Sea, giving that name unto it: to preserve his memory, as *Dyrrhachium*

of opinion, or from *Ionia* a Region in the Extremity of *Calabria*, as *Solinus*; or from *Is*, the Daughter of *Ionchus*, as *Lycophron* the Poet hath it. It containeth all that part of the *Mediterranean* which lyeth from the *Ægean* or *Cretan* Seas unto the *Adriatick*, from which it is parted about *Epidamnus*, (otherwife called *Dyrrhachium*) as is faid by *Plinius*; or rather as the fhooting out of the *Archeron* Hills, as is affirmed by *Pliny* and other Writers; and fo along the shores of the two *Calabria*'s to the Ifle of *Sicily*. Chief Ifles whereof which lyeth in the account of *Greece* (for of thofe lying on the Coaft of *Italy* we have fpoken elfewhere) are, 1. the *Strophades*, 2. *Zacynthus*, 3. the *Echinades*, 4. *Cephalonia*, 5. *Coryra*, and 6. *Ithaca*.

1. THE STROPHADES are two fmall Iflands, now called *Strivali*, lying againft *Meflene* in *Peloponnesus*, famous for nothing but the *Harpyes*, ravenous Birds, affirmed to have the faces of Women, but the Talons of Vultures, fent by the eftranged Gods (as the Fable goeth) for the punifhment of *Phæacus* King of *Acadida*, who had put out the Eyes of his Sons by a former Vice at the infatigation of their Stepdame: For which he was fo plagued by thefe *Harpyes*, that he could fit no Meats on his Table wherefore he was, but thefe ravenous creatures firft devoured it, and then bewrayed the Dishes in which it was. Much pittyed by the *Argonauts*, whom he had courteoufly entertained, they fent *Zetetes* and *Calais*, the winged Ifle of *Boreas* and *Orion*, who drove them thence, and having purfued them to thofe Iflands, turned back again: whence the name of *Strophades*. Under which Fable was conveyed the bad condition of ignorant or unhappy Princes, devoured by Flatterers, Informers, and falfe Accufers, by whom their name and Government was made diftaftful; till by good Council they had purged their Courts of fuch ugly Monfters: concerning which *Alphonus* King of *Naples* was ufed to fay, that thefe *Harpyes* had left the *Strophades* and dwelt at *Rome*. They are inhabited only by fome few Greek Friars: in one of them there is a Spring of Frith Water, which hath its Fountain in *Peloponnesus*, and paffing under the Sea arifeth here. The Greek Priests are called *Calaires*, *quafi* *καλὰ ἱερὰ*, *boni Sacerdotes*; about 30 in number. They wear long Hair, never cut fitch, and but feldom fith; feeding ufually on Herbs, Olives, Oyl, and the like. They never go out of the Iflands, neither do they on any occafion permit Women to come amongst them. They all labour for their Sufenance, fome in Tillage, fome in Vineyards, fome in Fifhing; fo that among very many of them, three or four only can read. But of thefe fomewhat hath been faid elfewhere already.

2. ZACYNTHUS, or *Zant*, is 60 miles in compafs, and diftant from *Peloponnesus* 20 miles, fo called of *Zacynthus*, Son to *Dardanius*. The Countrey is wonderfully ftored with Oyl, Wines and Currants: of which laft they made yearly 150000 Zecechins for their own Cofters, and 43000 Dollars which they pay for Custom to the Seigniority of *Venice*. They were a very poor people when the *Englifh* ufed to traffick there firft; but now they grow rich and proud. At our Merchants firft frequenting the Countrey, they much marvelled to what end they bought for many Currans, and demanded whether they ufed to dye Cloaths or fair Hogs with them, for fo they themfelves did: but now they have learned a more profitable ufe of them. Here are alfo very good Salt-pits, Frith water plenty, but little or no Wood, and lefs Corn: their ground being husbanded, as the cafe ftands with them, to their better advantage; but fo

that many times they are ready to ftarve, if either the Wind or the Sea prove crofs unto them, and hinder them from fetching their Provifions both of Fifeh and Corn out of *Peloponnesus*, in which refpect they are faim to hold fair Quarter with the *Turks*, confidering how eafie it is for him to diftreff them for want of Victual. The Ifland is much troubled with Earthquakes, commonly once a week; in regard whereof they build their Houfes very low; and when they perceive them coming, the Priests are to ring the Bells, to rife the people to Prayers. They have a Custom here at Weddings to invite many young men, whom they call *Compeers*, of which every one giveth the Bride a Ring: which done, it is accounted as detestable a Sin as Inceft for them to accompany her in any carnal kind: and therefore they chufe fuch to be their *Compeers* who have formerly been fufpected of too much Familiarity with her.

The Ifland is very populous and well inhabited, but the people of a fpiteful and vindictive nature, not to be reconciled, if angered. It containeth in it 48 Towns and Villages, the chief whereof, which paffeth by the name of a City, is called alfo *Zant*, ftretched out about the length of a mile on the foot of a mountain, but in breadth not anfwerable; beautified with a fair and convenient Haven opening towards *Greece*, fafe from the danger of Pirats, though not of Winds, capable of great Fleets of fhipping both for bulk and number, and fo frequented from all parts, that he who hath a mind to go out of it need not itay for a paffage. Yet, notwithstanding this great Concourse and refort of Strangers, the Town is rather rich than well-built or beautiful; the Streets hereof being uneven and rugged, and the Buildings by reason of the often Earthquakes, very low. On the Eaft fide of it, on a round fteep Mountain, ftandeth a very ftrong Caffe, a little City of it felf, well garrifoned, impregnable fortified, and of a very difficult Entrance: which commandeth not the City or Harbour only, but a great part of the Sea adjoining. Upon the Wall thereof continually ftands a Watchman, to defcry what Shipping is at land, and hangeth out as many Flags as he difcovereth Veffels. And over the Door of the Town-Hall (the better to intruft the Magiftrates in their publick Duty) it is faid thefe Verfes are infcribed:

*Heleus* 1. edit, 2. amat; 3. punit, 4. confervat, 5. honorat, 1. Nequitiam, 2. Pacem, 3. Crimina, 4. Furas, 5. Probos. Thus enflified by *George Sandys*, whence I had the *Latine*. This place doth 1. hate, 2. love, 3. punifh, 4. keep, 5. requite, 1. Voluptuous Riot, 2. Peace, 3. Crimes, 4. Laws, 5. the Upright.

In matter of Religion, the people, being generally *Greeks* both in Birth and Language, are for the moft part of that Church alfo; but fome adhere unto the *Latine*; each party having their own Bifhop: of which the Greek Bifhop hath his Cathedral in the Church of *S. Nicolas*, near unto the Haven which it giveth name to; and therein a Moniftery of *Calloires*, or Monks of *Bafil*, the *Latine* Bifhop hath his Residence and Cathedral within the Caffe, and therein a Convent of *Francifcans*. The Jews have in this Town their Synagogue alfo: but there are not many of them, if not lately encreafed. In Civil matters they are fubject to the State of *Venice*, the Governour hereof (whom they call the *Providore*) having his Residence in the Caffe, affifted by a Chanceller and two Counfellors (all Gentlemen of *Venice*) whom they change every third year. The Fortunes of this Ifland in former times, and by what means it fell to the *Venetians*, we fhall fhew anon.

3. THE ECHINADES are certain little Iflands, or rather great Rocks, now called *Curzolari*, famous for

nothing but the great Battel of *Lepanto*, fought nigh them betwixt the *Venetians* and the *Turks*; the *Turks* having in their Navy 207 fail of Ships, the *Venetians* and their Confederates but 145 of all forts. But it pleased God to give the Victory to the weaknet: the Ifue of it being fuch, that the *Turks* loft 20000 men who were killed in the Fight, 30000 more which were taken prifoners, 140 of their Gallies, 400 pieces of Ordnance, and 200 Chriftian Captives which were then redeemed: the Chriftians buying this great Victory with the death of 2656 men or thereabouts; too great a price, could it have been purchafed with a lefs. A Victory obtained not far from the point of *Albium*, wherein *Auguftus* overcame the Navy of *Marcus Antonius*, and thereby got the Empire to himfelf alone, of which before he was but Joint-tenant with his Adverfary. So that this place feems to be marked out for a Stage of eminent Actions, and that this later Naval fight was but the fecond part of the firft.

But to return unto thefe *Islands*. They ftand juft againft the Mouth of the River *Achelous*, of which thus the Poet, *Tibullus* obijctus *Achelous* *Echinadas* exiit.

*Fierce Achelous* with the Sea is mixt  
Where the *Echinades* (great Rocks) are fixt.  
Thefe Iflands are in number five, feigned by the Poets to be fo many *Naiades* or Sea Nymphs, whom *Achelous* the River-God upon fome difpleafure metamorphofed into thefe Rocky Iflands. But the truth is, that they were caufed by the Dirt and Mud which this River carried with it into the Sea, where at laft is fettled to firm Ground. Of which himfelf faith thus in *Ovid*,

*Fluvius noftrique marifque  
Continuum deducit humum, pariterque revolvit  
In totidem mediis: quot cernis Echinadas undas.*  
The fury of the Sea waves and mine own  
Continual heaps of Mud and Earth drew down,  
Which, parted by the inter-running Seas,  
Made, as thou feelt, thefe five *Echinades*.

5. CEPHALENI A, the moft populous Ifland of this Sea, is fituate overagainft *Acarnania*, part of the Province of *Epirus*; having on the South-eaft *Zant*, on the North-weft *Coryra* or *Corfu*; in length containing 80 miles, 40 in breadth, the whole compafs being reckoned at 160. Once called *Terrapolis*, from the number of four Cities in it; but three of them were decayed in the time of *Ptolemy*, who takes notice of no more but one, and that of the fame name with the Ifland. It is woody and mountainous in moft places, but the Mountains intermixt with Valleys and the Woods with Champain: plentiful in Wheat, Honey, Currans, Manna, Oyl, incomparable, though not long-lafting, Mufcaddes; as alfo in Cheefe, Wool, Turkeys, and Powder for the dying of Scarles. So deftitute of Water, as having no River, and not many Fountains, that when their Cattel would drink, they gape both morning and evening to receive the Dew diffilling infenfibly from the Clouds.

The People are for the moft part *Greeks*; fome few *Italians*, naturals of the Seigniority of *Venice*, being intermixt: the whole number of the Inhabitants computed at 6000 Families, the number of the Towns and Villages to 200 or thereabouts. The principal whereof are, 1. *Cephalonia*, now *Cefalonia*, fortified with good Works and a very ftrong Caffe. 2. *Argafoli*, a Haven-town, diftant fix miles from *Cefalonia*: the Port whereof is capable of a fufficient Navy. 3. *Sidra*, another Port-town alfo, lying towards the South.

As for the Fortunes of this Ifland, it was firft called *Melana*, after *Teleboe*: and being known by that name was made fubject to *Therbes*, by the Valour and good Conduct of *Amphirrhys*, the *Theban* General, by whom

*Perelas*, the King hereof, was slain in Battle. During which War, and the Stay of *Amphitryo* in this Island, it happened that *Cephalus*, a noble *Athenian*, having by misadventure killed his Wife *Procris* with an Arrow which he shot at a Deer, not daring to abide in his own Country, fled unto *Amphitryo* his old Friend, then newly victorious over the *Tebeans*; who, pitying his case, made him the Governour of this Island, since, from his name, called *Cephalonia*. Having continued for some time in the power of the *Tebeans*, it passed, together with *Zant* and some other Islands into the hands of the *Macedonians*; from whom, in the declining of their Affairs, the *Acheans* got the Isle of *Zant*, and the *Epirotes* *Cephalonia*. But long they had not held them when the *Romans* began to look towards *Greece*, who under colour of setting the Continent at liberty, made themselves Masters of both the Islands; that to they might at leisure possess the whole, as in time they did. In the Division of the Empire they fell, as parts of *Greece*, to the *Constantinopolitans*; and on the takings of that City by the Western Christians, they fell, with almost all the rest of the Islands, to the State of *Venice*, the Governours whereof, retaining *Corfu* and some other of most Importance in the hands of the Seigneur, permitted these (as many other of less note) unto private Adventurers. At the conclusion of the Peace betwixt *Mahomet* the Great and the State of *Venice*, these two, with *Nerios*, or *Leucas*, (spoken of in *Epirus*) were seized on by that Tyrant in despite of that Treaty or Conclusion, as belonging unto private persons, not to the Republick; but were recovered afterwards by the *Venetians* in the Reign of *Bajazet* the second, in the name of the State, and as parts thereof are still governed and defended by them.

5. *CORCYRA*, (now *CORFU*) more anciently was called *Phœacia*; but took this latter name from a Nymph so called, whom *Neptune* is reported to have here deflowered. It is situate over against *Epirus*, from thence 12 miles distant, stretched out from East to West in the form of a Bow, the length thereof being 54 miles. 24 the breadth, and so it is the biggest of these Seas. Commodiously seated for the Trade and Estate of *Venice*, as the Centre of their Dominion and Command by Sea.

The Southern parts hereof are mountainous and defective in Water, much subject to be blatted with Southernly Winds; and therefore they sow little Corn, and plant less Fruits. The Northern parts are level and delightful, adorned with whole Groves of Limons, Oranges, Fig-trees, Olives, and Pomegranates; enriched with plenty of Grain, abundance of Wines, great store of Oyl and Olives, and most excellent Honey; blest with a very temperate and healthful Air, made odorous by most pleasant and sweet-smelling Fruits, which grow most plentifully in each part hereof. *Alcious*, who so courteously entertained *Ulysses* after his Shipwreck, was once King of this Island; whose Gardens, answerable to the natural Delights and Sweetness of it, are so much celebrated by the Poets. One of which thus;

*Quid bisera Alcinoi referam Pomaria, vobisque  
Qui nunquam vacui proditis in aëthera Romi?*

Which may be Englished in these words,

Why should I name *Alcinoi* fertile Ground,  
And Trees which never without Fruit are found?

Towns of most note and strength herein are, 1. *Pagopolis*, 2. *Castello S. Angelo*, of good esteem in respect of many others, but far short of 3. *Corfu*, the chief and strongest of the Island, which the *Turks* have found by their frequent Repulses to be impregnable. For it is situate at the foot of a Mountain, on the top of which are built two inaccessible Fortresses, as being strongly fenced

with a natural Rock, the one called the *Old Fortress*, and the other the *New*: justly esteemed the chief Bulwarks of *Venice*, whose Trade and Power would soon decay should these Forts be lost. For which cause the two Governours (for each Fort hath one) are sworn before the State of *Venice*, never to hold Intelligence with one another by word or writing; lest by the Treachery of the one, the other might be wrought also from his Faith and Duty. Neither is their Command here for more than two years; their Commission then terminating, and new Successors being sent them. The Town is inhabited for the most part by *Græcians*, as is all the residue of the Island, beautified with one of the most commodious Havens in all the *Adriatick*, and the Residence of an Archbishop. A Town of such publick Concernment, in regard of the Strength and Situation, that it is accounted of as the Key of *Venice*, and one of the strongest Bulwarks of Christendom against the Encroachment of the *Turks*. The Story of it since dismembered from the Eastern Empire, at the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Latines*, we have had before.

6. *ITHACA*, now called *Val de Comper*, lieth on the North-east of *Cephalonia*, being in compass 50 miles: most famous for the Birth of *Ulysses*, the Son of *Laertes*, of which thus the Poet;

*Esquimus Scopolus Ithacæ Laertia Regna,  
Et terram alticrem Ixvi exoritur Ulysses.  
From th' Ithacan Rocks, Laertes Realm, we fled,  
And cur'd the Land which dire Ulysses bred.*

It was also called *Dulichium*, or else there was some other Island of that name, not far from *Ithaca*, whereof *Ulysses* was also King, who is hence called *Dulichius Heros* among the Poets: and in this Taunt of *Ajax* to him, *Dulichius* vertex signifieth the Head of *Ulysses*,

*Sed neque Dulichius, sub Achillis casside, Vertex  
Pondera tanta feret.*

*Achilles* Helm's too great a weight, I trow,  
For weak *Ulysses* Head to undergo.

But as weak a man as *Ajax* thought him, he was the Master-Wit of *Greece* for the times he lived in, and one that did as good Service in the War of *Troy* as the best Soldier of them all. A War to which he went somewhat unwillingly, as fearing the sad Consequences and events thereof, inasmuch that he feigned himself mad, ploughing the Shore, and sowing Salt instead of Corn. But *Palamedes*, to make trial whether this was real, or but counterfeit only, cast young *Telemachus*, the Son of *Ulysses*, before the Plough, which he observing, either drove the Plough besides him, or lifted it over him. Discovers by this means, and engaging with the rest in the *Trojan* War, he found out the Design of *Telemachus*, and brought *Achilles* to it also: in the course whereof, by his Wit and Courage, he did very good Service; associated with *Diomedes* in the action against *Rhodus* King of *Thrace*; and with *Palamedes* in foraging the Country for Provisions. By his Policy was the *Palladium* stoln out of *Troy*, and consequently the City taken and destroyed, whose Fate depended on the preservation of that fatal Relick. Here was the ending of the War, which held out ten years, he was withheld from *Ithaca* ten years longer by Winds and Tempests and the Displeasure of the Gods which favoured *Troy*; in which he saved himself from the Enchantments of the *Sirens*, the Allurements of *Circe*, the Cruelty of *Lycophemus*, and after many Dangers come home in safety. A man of so compleat a Vertue, that *Homer* maketh him the Pattern of a Temperate and Prudent man in the Books called *Odysses*, (by his name, as the *Greeks* pronounce it;) as he doth *Achilles*, in his *Iliads*, of a compleat and perfect Soldier.

The

The Country is generally very rocky and barren, exceeding plentiful of Goats, but no Hares live in it; inhabited for the most part by Pirates and Exiles, men banished out of civil Society, and willingly acknowledging no Superior over them; but subject, if to any, to the State of *Venice*, which hitherto hath maintained these Islands against the *Turks*, though many times attempted by them in the most prosperous times of their Arms and Victories. For the *Venetians* being gratified, at the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Latines*, with almost all the Islands of the *Ægean* and *Ionian* Seas, (as being a People strong in Shipping, and so most able to preserve the Possession of them) some of the greatest and most considerable, either for their Riches or commodiousness of Situation, were furnished with convenient Garrisons in the name of the State. The rest they did bestow on the better sort of Citizens, to be defended and made good for their own Use and Charges; who accordingly possessed themselves of one, two or more of them, as they were of ability to set out their Gallies for the keeping of them: the Seigniorship having nevertheless a Care of all, and to that end keeping a Fleet at Sea continually under one of their Admirals; whereby they did not only preserve those Seas from the *Genova* Pirates, but for long time defended all their Islands also, as well against the *Greeks* as the *Turks* Emperours. But all the Isles of the *Ægean* being lost to the *Turks*, except *Cythera* and *Tenos* on the *European*, and *Carpaphos* or *Scarpanto* on the *Asian* side; they have now only *Crete* with the Isles adjoining, and those of the *Ionian* Sea under their Command, and these (but specially the Isle *Crete*) endangered at the present by the *Turkish* Tyrant.

Thus having taken a view of the several Provinces and Isles which belong to *Greece*, according to the ancient and present state of each particular: let us next take a view of the *Græcian* Emperours, who have had here their principal Residence, and possessed the whole (though for a while their Empire was extended over all the East) as they here follow in this ensuing Catalogue of

#### The CONSTANTINOPOLITAN, GRÆCIAN, or Eastern Emperours.

A. Cb.

- 331 1. *Constantine*, surnamed the Great, having reigned 12 years in *Rome*, translated his Imperial Seat to *Constantinople*, which himself had founded.
- 341 2. *Constantius*, the second Son of *Constantine*, in the Division of the Empire, had for this Partage *Thrace*, *Constantinople*, and all the Provinces of the East. After the death of his two Brethren he remained sole Emperour, but retired for the most part in the East; a great Patron of the *Arrians*, and as great a Persecutor of the Orthodox Christians.
- 366 3. *Julian*, surnamed the Apostate, Son of *Constantine* the Brother of *Constantine* the Great; at first a Christian, afterwards a professed Enemy of the Gospel: fortunate in his Wars against the *Almans*, *Franks* and other *Transalpine* Nations, whilst he was a Christian; prodigiously slain in the *Persian* War, When become a Persecutor.
- 368 4. *Jovian*, or *Jovianian*, chosen by the Army, a Religious Prince, made Peace with the *Persian*, and settled the Affairs of the Christian Church: who being dead, *Valentinian*, of mean Birth, but great Abilities in War,

was elected Emperour.

- 369 5. *Valens*, the Brother of *Valentinian*, made Partner in the Empire with him, ruled in *Constantinople* and the East; *Valentinian* taking more delight in *Rome* and the Western parts. A great Patron of the *Arrian* Faction, and the first who brought in the *Goths* on this side of the *Danow*, whom he placed in the desert parts of *Thrace*. To the Destruction of the Empire, and himself to boot.
- 382 6. *Gratian*, the eldest Son of *Valentinian*, succeeded his Father in the West, and his Uncle *Valens* in the East, after whose death he left *Italy* and the West to *Valentinian* his younger Brother. Distressed by the *Goths*, he made *Theodosius* Partner in the Empire with him, and was treacherously murdered by *Andragathius*, at the appointment and command of the Tyrant *Maximus*.
- 383 7. *Theodosius*, a *Spaniard* born, revenged the death of *Gratian* on the Tyrant *Maximus*, and of *Valentinian* the 2. on the Traitor *Eugenius*. He vanquished the *Goths*, utterly suppressed the Pagan Superstitions, which till his time continued even in *Rome* it self, and strengthened the Church of *Christ* with good Laws and Ordinances.
- 399 8. *Arcadius*, the eldest Son of *Theodosius*, succeeded his Father in the East, as his Brother *Honorius* did in the West: the *Roman* Empire after this last Division of it being so distracted and torn in pieces, that it was never since united.
- 412 9. *Arcadius* II. Son of *Arcadius*, made Peace with the *Goths*, whom he employed against the *Huns* and *Perthians*; his more dangerous Enemies, and caused the *Ephefene* Council to be called against *Nestorius*.
- 454 10. *Martianus*, Lieutenant to *Theodosius*, succeeded his Master, and married with *Pulcheria* his Master's Sister. He called the Council of *Chalcedon* against *Discorus*.
- 461 11. *Leo*, a *Thracian* born, elected by the joynt consent of the Senate and Souldiery, sitting in the Council of *Chalcedon*; the Acts whereof he approved and ratified.
- 478 12. *Zeno*, the Son-in-law and Lieutenant of *Leo*, sent *Theodoric* and the *Goths* into *Italy* against *Odoacer*, A Tyrant and a great Drinker; in one of his drunken Fits buried quick by his Empress. In his time *Constantinople* was almost wholly destroyed by Fire; in which perished, amongst other things, 120000 Volumes of good Manuscripts.
- 497 13. *Anastasijs*, a mean Officer of the Court, by the power and favour of the Empress created Emperour: a great Patron of *Eutyches*, yet fortunate in his Wars against the *Perthians* and *Arabians*. In his time *Constantinople* besieged by the *Seythians* was likely to have fallen into great Distress; it *Proclus*, a famous Mathematician, like another *Archimedes*, had not fired their Gallies.
- 521 14. *Justin*, the Son of a *Thracian* Shepherd, and Captain of the Guard unto *Anastasijs*, a Catholic Prince, and Patron of the Orthodox Clergy, whom he called from Banishment.
- 528 15. *Justinian*, the Sister's Son of *Justin*, with whom he was at first Consort in the Empire, recovered *Africk* from the *Andals* by *Belisa-*

TINS

- rius, and Italy from the *Goths* by *Narses*; and finally reduced the Laws of *Rome* into form and method.
- 566 16. *Justin II.* Nephew of *Justinian*, instituted the Exarchate of *Ravenna*, and lost a great part of Italy to the *Lombards*. Unable of himself to oppose the *Persians*, he chose
- 577 17. *Tiberius*, one of his chief Commanders, to be Confort with him, who afterwards succeeded in the sole Command.
- 584 18. *Maurice*, a *Cappadocian* born, fortunate in his Wars against the *Persians*, from whom he recovered *Mesopotamia* in the time of *Tiberius*, by whom at his return he was married to *Constantina* his Daughter, and declared his Successor. Refusing to ransom some of his Soldiers, taken Prisoners by *Caganus* King of the *Avars*, he lost the Affections of his Army.
- 604 19. *Phocas*, a common Soldier, in a military Tumult chosen Emperor, murdered the Emperor *Mauritus*, with his Wife and Children, and made Pope *Boniface* Supreme Bishop or Head of the Church: slain in a popular Tumult by the Common people for his Lusts and Cruelties.
- 611 20. *Heraclius*, a Nobleman of *Constantinople*, chosen by the general consent, repaired the Ruines of the Empire, vanquished the *Persians*, recovered *Hierusalem* out of their hands: and brought home the Cross unto *Constantinople* in triumphant manner; whence the Feast called *Exaltatio Crucis*, September 14. In his time *Mahomet* began to disperse his Dorages.
- 641 21. *Constantine*, or *Constantine II.* Son of *Heraclius*, unfortunate in his Wars against the *Saracens*, who prevailed in all places. Picking a Quarrel with the *Romans*, he defaced *Rome*, robbing it of all the choicest Ornaments which the *Goths* and other barbarous people had left; and ransacking the Isle of *Sicily*, was there slain by the Women.
- 670 22. *Constantinus III.* Son of the former *Constantine*, from his long or early Beard furnished *Paganatus*, repulsed the *Saracens* from *Constantinople*, but could not hinder the *Bulgarians* from passing over the *Danov*.
- 687 23. *Justinian II.* Son of *Constantine* the 3. subdued *Mesopotamia*, *Armenia*, and some part of *Persia*, forcing the *Saracens* to sue for Peace, and become his Tributaries. Against whom *Leontius* on the one side, and *Abdumarus*, on the other, severally taking Arms; were declared Emperours. *Justinian*, taken by *Leontius*, hath his Nose cut off, and his person committed to Custody: but making an Escape, by means of *Trebellen* King of the *Bulgarians*, recovered his Imperial Dignity; and being too violent in the pursuit of his Revenge, was finally murdered at the Altar by the command of
- 713 24. *Philippus Bardanes*, Admiral of his Navy, elected Emperour by the Soldiers, a great enemy of Images, which he caused to be cast out of the Church, thereby incurring the Displeasure of
- 715 25. *Anastasius II.* called also *Artemius*, his principal Secretary, who thrust himself into the Empire; forced to relinquish it by that Army which he had raised against the *Saracens*: in

which Tumult the City of *Constantinople* was sacked and spoiled.

- 717 26. *Theodosius III.* made Emperour in this Tumult by the Soldiers, hearing of the Approach of *Leo*, Commander of the Eastern Armies, resigned the Empire, and took Orders to preserve his Life.
- 718 27. *Leo Isaurus*, in whose time Caliph *Zuleiman* besieged *Constantinople* the space of three years, and when by Cold and Famine 30000 of the *Saracens* were destroyed, they desisted. At this Siege was that Fire invented which we, for the violence of it, call *Wild-fire*; and the *Latines*, because the *Greeks* were the Authors of it, *Græci ignis*: by which the *Saracens* Ships were not a little molested. He was also a great Enemy to Images, and for this cause hated by the Pope and Clergy of *Rome*, who gave him thereupon the Nickname of *Iconomachus*.
- 741 28. *Constantinus IV.* Son of *Leo*, furnished *Copronymus*, for that when he was baptized he bewrayed the Font, followed his Father's Zeal in removing Images, which created him much Trouble, one *Artabardus* being chosen Emperour against him, but at last defeated.
- 777 29. *Leo III.* Son of *Constantine Copronymus*, honoured with the Adjunct of *Porphyrogenitus*, but commonly called *Leo the 4.* (*Leontius* the Usurper (as I conjecture) being reckoned for one;) an enemy to Images, and fortunate in his Wars against the *Saracens*.
- 782 30. *Constantine V.* the Son of *Leo* and *Irene*, first governed the Empire with his Mother, by whom at last supplanted, and deprived of Sight, he died of Melancholy.
- 798 31. *Irene*, Wife of *Leo* the 3. first Confort with *Constantine* her Son, and afterwards sole Emperess of *Constantinople*: for her better support in which Estate she sided with the Popes of *Rome*, and called the second Council of *Nice* for defence of Images. In her time *Charles*, furnished the Great, was by the Pope and People of *Rome* created Emperour of the West, for the Popes, knowing their own Greatness to grow out of the Ruines of the Temporal Power, committed the Empire of the West unto the *French* Princes: whereby the *Greek* Emperours became much weakened; and the *French*, being the Pope's Creatures, were in tract of time brought to their Devotion. In following times, when *Frederick Barbarossa* was by Pope *Alexander* the 3. pronounced non-Emperour, *Emanuel* of *Constantinople* sued for a Re-union of the Empire: but the crafty Pope returned this answer, *Nim licere illi conjungere quæ majores ejus de iustitia disjuncturunt*: Let no man presume to joyn what the God of *Rome*, the Pope, hath put asunder.
- 803 32. *Nicephorus*, a Patrician, made Emperour by the Soldiers, persuaded that *Irene* had made choice of him to be her Successor: slain in a pitch Field against the *Bulgarians*.
- 812 33. *Michael*, furnished *Cæsaropates*, from his Office, (the *Mayor* of the Palace, as it were) Husband to *Procopia*, the Daughter of *Nicephorus*, assumed the Empire, which, finding his own Weakness, he did soon relinquish, and betook himself unto a Monastery.

- 814 34. *Leo V.* furnished *Armenius*, from his Country, General of the Horse to *Michael*, demolished the Images which his Predecessors had set up. He was slain in the Church during the time of Divine Service.
- 821 35. *Michael II.* furnished *Balbus*, having murdered *Leo* assumed the Empire, unfortunate in his Government, and died of Madness.
- 830 36. *Theophilus*, the Son of *Michael Balbus*, an enemy of Images, like his Father, and as unfortunate as he; losing many Battels to the *Saracens*, at last he died of Melancholy.
- 842 37. *Michael III.* Son of *Theophilus*, first ruling with his Mother *Theodora*, who took unto herself the supreme Command; and after of himself sole Emperour, his Mother being made a Nun.
- 866 38. *Basilus*, furnished *Macedo*, from the place of his Birth, made Confort in the Empire by *Michael* the Son of *Theophilus*, whom he basely and treacherously murdered, killed casually by a Stag.
- 866 39. *Leo VI.* for his Learning furnished *Philosophus*, the Son of *Basilus*, a vigilant and provident Prince: most of his time, with variable Success, was spent against the *Bulgarians*.
- 912 40. *Constantine VII.* commonly called the VII. Son of *Leo Philosophus*, first under his Uncle *Alexander*, next under *Zoe* his Mother, and after under *Romanus Lacapenus*, governed the Empire; by which last he was so miserably depressed that he was fain to get his livelihood by Painting. But *Lacapenus* being deposed, and turned into a Monastery by his own Sons, *Constantine* at last obtained his Rights, and restored Learning unto *Greece*.
- 961 41. *Romanus*, the Son of *Constantine*.
- 961 42. *Nicephorus*, furnished *Phocas*, first Governor or Protector of the young Emperour *Romanus*; after whose death, created Emperour by the Army, he recovered *Antioch*, *Cilicia*, and the greatest part of *Asiaminor*, from the power of the *Saracens*: slain in the night by *John Zimisces*, his Wife *Theophania* being privy to it.
- 971 43. *John Zimisces*, Emperour in the place of *Nicephorus Phocas*, governed the Empire better than he did obtain it, vanquishing the *Bulgarians*, *Kosses*, and others of the barbarous Nations; and left it at his death to the Sons of *Romanus*.
- 977 44. *Basilus II.* furnished *Porphyrogenetus*, as many of the Emperours had been before him, in regard that at their Births they were wrapped in Purple, (which the *Greeks* call *Porphyrie*) the Imperial Colour: the subdued the *Bulgarians*, and made them Homagers to the Empire.
- 1027 45. *Constantine VII.* or VIII. Brother of *Basilus*, and with him Partner in the Empire: after whose death he governed three years by himself, but did nothing memorable.
- 1030 46. *Romanus II.* for his Prodigality furnished *Argyropates*, Husband of *Zoe*, the Daughter of *Constantine* the 3. drowned in a Bath by the Treason of his Wife and her Adulterers.
- 1035 47. *Michael IV.* furnished *Paphlago*, from his Country, first the Adulterer and afterwards the Husband of *Zoe*; but died very penitent.
- 1042 48. *Michael V.* furnished *Calaphates*, a man of
- obscure Birth, adopted by *Zoe*, whom he deposed from the Government, and turned into a Monastery. Out of which being again taken in a popular Tumult, he put out the Eyes of *Calaphates*, and, being then 60 years of age, belted both the Empire and her self upon
- 1043 49. *Constantine IX.* furnished *Monomachus*, formerly Husband to a Niece of *Romanus* the 2.
- 1055 50. *Theodora*, Sister unto *Zoe*, after the death of *Constantine*, managed for two years the Affairs of the Empire with great Contentment of all people. But grown in age the succoured it to
- 1057 51. *Michael VI.* furnished *Serratius*, an old, but military man, deposed within 3 years by
- 1060 52. *Isaacus*, of the noble Family of the *Comneni*, valiant, of great Courage, and diligent in his Affairs: which having managed for two years, he left it at his death, with consent of the Senate and people, to
- 1063 53. *Constantine X.* furnished *Ducas*, a great Justiciar and very devout, but exceeding covetous, whereby he became hated of his Subjects and contemned by his Enemies.
- 1071 54. *Romanus III.* furnished *Diogenes*, married *Eudoxia*, the Wife of *Constantinus Ducas*, and with her the Empire. Taken Prisoner by the *Turks*, and sent home again, he found a Faction made against him; by which *Eudoxia* was expelled, himself at his return deposed, and so died in Exile.
- 1075 55. *Michael VII.* the Son of *Constantinus Ducas*, furnished *Parapinatus*, by reason of the Famine which in his time happened, made Emperour in the afore said Tumult. But being found unable for to great an Honour, (the *Turks* prevailing in all places) he was deposed again, and put into a Monastery.
- 1081 56. *Nicephorus II.* furnished *Botaniates*, of the House of *Phocas*, succeeded in the place of *Parapinatus*; deposed within three years by the *Comneni*.
- 1084 57. *Alexius Comnenus*, Son of the Emperour *Isaacus Comnenus*, obtained the Empire: in whose time the Western Christians with great Forces prepared for the Recovery of the *Holy Land*: of whose purposes being very jealous he denied them passage through his Country; but was in the end forced to find them Victuals and other Necessaries.
- 1113 58. *Calo-Joannes*, the Son of *Alexius*, had a good hand against the *Turks*, from whom he took *Laodicea* and some other places of Importance. He also vanquished the *Scythians* or *Tartars* passing over the *Ister*, most of which he either slew in Battel, or sold as Captives; permitting the remainder to abide on this side that River. He also conquered the *Serrians* and *Bulgarians*, transporting many of them into *Bithynia*.
- 1142 59. *Manuel*, or *Emanuel*, the younger Son of *Calo-Joannes*, an under-hand enemy to the Western Christians, and an open enemy to the *Turks*; by whom being entrapped in the dangerous Straights of *Cilicia*, and his Army miserably cut off, he was on honourable terms permitted to return again.
- 1180 60. *Alexius II.* Son of *Manuel*, deposed and barbarously murdered by *Andronicus*,

Confingerman of his Father, with his Wife and Mother.

- 1183 61. *Andronicus Comnenus*, confined by *Mannelto Oennum* in *Paphlagonia*, by reason of his dangerous and ambitious practices, after his death, pretending to reform the State, came unto *Constantinople*: first made Protector, afterwards Confort in the Empire with young *Alexius*: whom having barbarously slain and got the Empire to himself, he was not long after cruelly torn in pieces in a popular Tumult.
- 1185 62. *Isaacus Angelus*, a Nobleman of *Constantinople*, and of the same *Comnenian* Race, designated to death by *Andronicus*; was in a popular Election proclaimed his Successour; deposed by *Alexius* his own Brother, and his Eyes put out.
- 1195 63. *Alexius Angelus*, deprived his Brother, and excluded his Nephew from the Empire; but it held not long.

64. *Alexius Angelus* II. Son of *Isaac Angelus*, who being unjustly thrust out of his Empire by his Uncle *Alexius*, had recourse to *Philip* the Western Emperor, whose Daughter *Mary* he had married, who so prevailed with Pope *Innocent* the 3. (upon a promise for subjecting the Church of *Greece* to the See of *Rome*) that the Army prepared for the *Holy Land* was employed to restore him. On the approach whereof *Alexius* the Usurper fled; *Alexius* the young Emperor is seated in his Father's Throne, and not long after slain by *Alexius Ducas*. In revenge whereof the *Latines* assault and win *Constantinople*, make themselves Masters of the Empire, and divided it amongst themselves: alotted to the *Venetians* *Candia*, many good Towns of *Peloponnesus*, and most of the Islands to *Boniface* Marquis *de Montferrat* the Kingdom of *Thessaly*; to the others of the Adventurers other liberal Shares; and finally to *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders* the main Body of the Empire, with the Title of Emperor. The Seat of the Empire of the *Greeks* being transferred unto *Nice*, a City of *Bythia* in the Lesser *Asia*, by *Theodorus Lascaris*, Son-in-law to *Alexius*, the Usurper, continued there till the regaining of *Constantinople* by the *Greeks* again, after it had been 60 years possessed by the Western Christians.

#### Emperours of the LATINES in CONSTANTINOPLE.

- 1200 65. *Baldwin*, Earl of *Flanders*, first Emperor of the *Latines* reigning in *Constantinople*, taken in fight by *John* King of *Bulgaria*, coming to aid the *Greeks*, and sent Prisoner to *Ternova*, where he was cruelly put to death.
- 1202 66. *Henry*, the Brother of *Baldwin*, repulsed the *Bulgarians* out of *Greece*, and died a Conquerour.
- 1215 67. *Peter*, Count of *Auxerre* in *France*, the Son of *Peter*, youngest Son to *Lewis* the Gros of *France*, and Husband of *Toland* the Daughter of *Henry*, succeeded in the Empire after his decease. He was cunningly entrapped by *Theodorus Angelus*, a great Prince in *Epirus*, whom he had besieged in *Dyrrhachium*: but of an Enemy being persuaded to become his Guest, was there murdered by him.
- 1220 68. *Robert*, the Son of *Peter*, having seen the miserable usage of his beautiful Empress, whom a young *Burgundian*, formerly contracted to her, had most despitely mangled, cutting off

both her Nose and Ears, died of Heart's grief as he was coming back from *Rome*, whither his Melancholy had carried him to consult the Pope in his Affairs.

- 1227 69. *Baldwin* II. Son of *Robert* by a former Wife, under the Protection of *John de Brenne*, the titular King of *Hierusalem*, succeeded in his Father's Throne: which having held for the space of 33 years, he was forced to leave; the City of *Constantinople* being regained by the *Greeks*, and the poor Prince compelled to fly in vain for Succours to the *French* *Venetians*, and other Princes of the West. And though both *Philip* the Son of this *Baldwin*, and *Charles d'Valois*, Father of *Philip de Valois* the French King, in right of *Catherine* his Wife, Daughter of that *Philip*, did sometimes plead themselves with the Title of Emperours of *Constantinople*, yet neither of the two had ever any footing or possession there.

#### The Empire restored unto the G R E E K S.

- 1260 70. *Michael VIII.* surnamed *Paleologus*, extracted from the *Comnenian* Emperor, Emperor of the *Greeks* in the City of *Nice*, most fortunately recovered *Constantinople*; the Town being taken by a party of secretly put into it by some Country-Labourers under the Ruins of a Mine. Present in person at the Council of *Lions*, at the persuation of the Pope he admitted the *Latine* Ceremonies into the Churches of *Greece*; for which he was greatly hated by his Subjects, and denied the honour of *Christian* Burial.

- 1283 71. *Andronicus* II. vexed with unnatural Wars by his Nephew *Andronicus*, who rebelled against him.
- 1328 72. *Andronicus* III. first Partner with his Grandfather, afterwards Sole Emperor.
- 1341 73. *John Paleologus*, Son of *Andronicus* the 3. In whose Minority *Contaczenus* his Protector usurped the Empire, and held it sometimes from him, and sometimes with him, till the year 1357, and then retired into a Monastery, leaving the Empire unto *John*, during whose Reign the *Turks* first planted themselves in *Europe*.

- 1384 74. *Andronicus* IV. the Son of *Joannes Paleologus*.
- 1387 75. *Emanuel Paleologus*, the Son of the said *John*, and Brother of *Andronicus* the 4. In whose time *Bajazet* the sixth King of the *Turks* did besiege *Constantinople*; but found such notable Resistance, that he could not force it.
- 1417 76. *John* II. Son of *Andronicus* the 4.
- 1420 77. *John* III. Son of *Emanuel Paleologus*, in person at the Council of *Florence* for reconciling of the Churches in hopes thereby to get some Aid from the Western Christians, but it would not be.

- 1444 78. *Constantinus Paleologus*, the Brother of *John* the 3. In whose time the famous City of *Constantinople* was taken by *Mahomet* the Great 1453; the miserable Emperor, who had in vain gone from door to door to beg or borrow money to pay his Souldiers, (which the *Turks* found in great abundance when they took the City) being lamentably trod to death in the Throng. Now concerning this Empire of the *Greeks*, we may observe some fatal Contraries in one and the same name. As first, that *Philip* the Father of *Alexander* laid the first

Found.

Foundation of the *Macedonian* Monarchy, and *Philip* the Father of *Perseus* ruined it. Secondly, that *Baldwin* was the first, and *Baldwin* the last Emperor of the *Latines* in *Constantinople*. Thirdly, that this Town was built by a *Constantine* the Son of *Helena*, a *Gregory* being Patriarch; and was lost by a *Constantine*, the Son of a *Helena*, a *Gregory* being Patriarch also. And fourthly, the *Turks* have been Patriarch also. As it was won by a *Mahomet*, so shall it be lost by a *Mahomet*. So *Augustus* was the first established Emperor of *Rome*, and *Augustulus* the last: *Darius*, the Son of *Hystaspes*, the Restorer; and *Darius*, the Son of *Artabanus*, the Overthrower of the *Persian* Monarchy. A like note I shall hereafter tell you of *Hierusalem*. In the mean time I will present you with a fatal Observation of the letter *H*, as I find it thus versed in *Albin's* *England*.

Not superstitiously I speak, but *H* this letter still hath been observed ominous to *England's* Good or Ill. First *Henricus*, *Hefene* and *Helen* were the cause Of war to *Troy*; *Aneas* Seed becoming fo Outlaws. *Hamlet* the *Ham* with foreign Arms did first the *Brutes* invade:

*Hereto Rome's* Imperial Throne the *British* Crown conveyed.

*Henric* and *Horsus* first did plant the *Saxons* in this Isle: *Hangar* and *Habbra* first brought *Danes*, that swayed here long while.

*Atharold* had the *Saxon* end, at *Hardie* *Canute* the *Dane*, *Harries* the first and second did restore the *English* Reign.

Fourth *Henry* first for *Lancaster* did *England's* Crown obtain.

Seventh *Henry* jarring, *Lancaster* and *York* unites in Peace.

*Henry* the eight did happily *Rome's* Irreligion cease.

A strange and ominous Letter, every Mutation in our State being as it were uttered by it.

What were the Revenues of this Empire since the Division of it into the East and West, I could never yet learn.

That they were exceeding great may appear by three circumstances. 1. *Zonaras* reporteth that the Emperor *Basilius* had in his Treasury 200000 Talents of Gold, besides infinite Heaps of Silver and other Moneys. 2. *Lippus* relateth, how *Benjamin* a Jew in his discourse of *Europe* saith, that the Custom due to the Emperours out of the *Vituals* and Merchandise sold at *Constantinople* only did amount to 20000 Crowns daily. 3. We find that at the Sack of *Constantinople* there was found an invaluable mass of Gold, Silver, Plate and Jewels, besides that which was hid in the Earth. For so the covetous Citizens chose rather to employ their Wealth, than afford any part of it to the Emperor, who with Tears in his Eyes went from door to door to beg and borrow Money, wherewith he might wage more Souldiers for the defence of the Town.

The Arms of the Empire were *Mars*, a Cross *Sol* between four *Greek* *Beta's* of the second: the four *Beta's* signifying (as *Bodin* saith) *Banhus*, *Banhus*, *Banhus*, *Banhus*.

It may perchance be expected that we should here make an additional Catalogue of those *Turkish* Emperours who have reigned in *Constantinople* since the taking of it; and, being they are possessed of *Greece*, and do now inhabit it, that we should here also speak of the *Turks* themselves, their Customs, Forces, Policies, Original, and Proceedings. But the discourse of those things we intend to reserve for *Turcomania*, a Province of *Asia*, from whence they made their first Inundation into *Persia*, and afterwards into other parts of the World now subject to them, the only Province which retains any thing of their name. And though the Peninsula called anciently *Taurica Cheronesus* (now part of *Tartaria Precopensis*) be within the Bounds of *Europe* also; yet we will defer the description and story of it till we come to the Affairs of the *Tartars*, and will here conclude our Discourse of *Europe*, and prepare for *Asia*.

And so much for *GREECE*, the last of the Provinces of *EUROPE*.



# A TABLE OF THE LONGITUDE and LATITUDE of the chief TOWNS and CITIES mentioned in this BOOK.

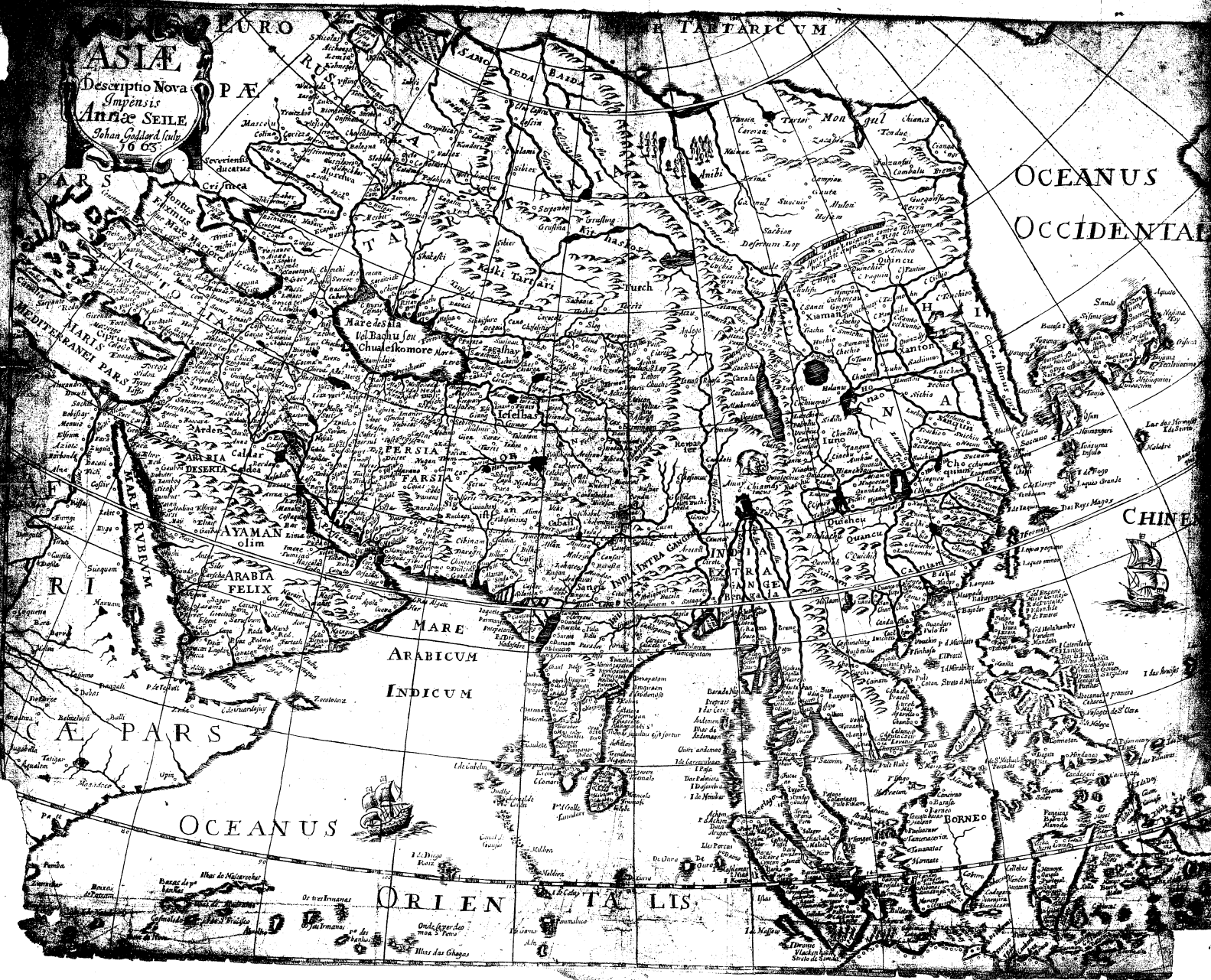
A.		Long.	Lat.	Gradetz	Long.	Lat.	Paffaw	Long.	Lat.
Amsterdam	27.39	52.40	Gann	56.30	51.30		Presburg	42	52.48
	24.30	51.48	Gnesna	30.20	50.40		Plescow	40	48.26
	46.10	40	Groeningen	42	52.10		Pechora	59.10	59
	32.30	48.20		32.10	53		Pernaw	66.50	67
	51.20	41.30	Haderstee	35.5	60.50		Pluckow	53.30	58.40
	24	51	Hallar	3	67.14			57.30	57.40
	36.30	59.20	Halberstadt	32.40	52.10		Rab	40.35	48.50
B.			Heidelberg	28	49.35		Ragusa	44.40	42.30
	39.15	50.10	Hamburg	30	54.30		Regensburg	32.15	48.59
	45	47.40				Rostock	34.18	54.20	
	34.16	61.15	Gene	34	52	Rislow	72.50	57	
	29.45	46.25	Innsbruck	32.10	48.40	Rigen	40.20	55.10	
	35.30	52.36	Lispruck	32.50	44.55	Riga	53.30	58	
	30.20	53.23	Jubiers	27.30	52	Regiment	49.10	55.30	
C.	24.36	51.30							
	32.40	52.30	Larissa	70	33	Saltzburg	35.40	47.40	
	26.42	51.24	Leige	22	50.50	Schalbolt	3.14	64.42	
	42	47.20	Leopoles	52.50	49	Schlesfede	28.6	48.22	
	52.30	45.30	Leipzig	30.30	51.20	Sieswick	31.20	55.15	
	40.50	55.30	Lubeck	31.20	54.48	Spire	27.40	49.20	
			Lucern	29.53	46.42	Stetin	37.40	54	
D.	29.35	41.58	Lunenburg	32.18	53.27	Stockholm	42	60.15	
	56	43.5	Lundin	26	53	Sibir	69.20	59.30	
	27.30	50.30	Luxemburg	28	50	Slowada	86.30	58.50	
	28.30	47.30				Strasbourg	27.50	48.44	
	34.50	56	Magdeburg	37.50	52.18	Stagira	55.30	43.30	
	54.20	39	Marpurg	30.10	51				
	27.40	51	Meniz	27.30	50.30	Theffalonica	53.40	44.20	
E.	42.40	50.12	Metz	27.40	49.9	Triers	26	49.30	
	52	38.30	Middelburg	25	52	Trent	33.40	45.20	
	96.10	35.10	Minden	31.30	52.58	Tubing	30.30	48.40	
	42	39.30	Munich	32.50	48	Thver	68.10	57.10	
			Munster	29.10	52				
	45	54.50	Monts	26	51	Valenciennes	26.39	50.10	
	33.25	51.50	Mosco	70.30	55.40	Ulm	32.30	48.20	
F.	63	48.40	Melvin or Elbing	48	54.50	Vienna	37.45	48.20	
	26	52				Vilna	54.30	55	
	25	51	Nancie	28.45	49.20	Upsal	40.30	60.52	
	36	51.3	Norlingen	33	49	Usting	79.30	61.30	
	28.26	53.34	Nuremberg	31.30	49.30	Utrecht	27.33	52.10	
	34.30	51.10	Nimwegen	28	52	Vicegrad	61.30	51.30	
	36.30	57	Novogrod Magn.	62.50	60.30	Vefalia	31.30	51.30	
G.			Novogrod Infer.	80	55.20				
	36.40	55	Nicopolis	56.30	40	Wardony	50.30	70.30	
	27	54	Negropont	56.10	41	Wiborg	55.58	63.6	
	30	50.30	S. Nicolas	69	64	Wittenberg	35.10	50.55	
	24	52.30				Wismar	33.30	54.14	
	20	48.1	Olmutz	41	40.30	Wologda	74.30	60	
			Osnabrug	29.36	52.29	Wormes	28	49.45	
H.			Oclandi	43.30	57	Wurtzburg	30.10	49.57	
I.									
J.									
K.									
L.									
M.									
N.									
O.									
P.									
Q.									
R.									
S.									
T.									
U.									
V.									
W.									
X.									
Y.									
Z.									

ASIAE  
Descriptio Nova  
Impensis  
Annæ SEILE  
Johan Goddard sculpsit  
1685

EURO

TARTARICUM

OCEANUS  
OCCIDENTALIS



# COSMOGRAPHY,

## The Third Book,

CONTAINING THE  
CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY  
OF THE  
LESSER and GREATER

# ASIA,

AND ALL

The Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles, thereof.

---

By *PETER HETLYN.*

---

JUSTIN. HIST. l. i.

*Imperium Assyrii qui postea Syri dicti sunt, annos MCCC tenuerunt.  
Imperium ab Assyriis ad Medos Arbaces transfert.*

SENECA EPIST. 17.

*Omnes quæ usquam rerum potiuntur urbes, ubi fuerint aliquando quærentur;  
& vario exitii genere tollentur.*

---

L O N D O N,

Printed in the Year MDCLXXVI.

# COSMOGRAPHY,

## The Third Book,

CONTAINING THE  
CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY  
OF THE  
LESSER and GREATER

# ASIA,

AND ALL

The Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

### Of ASIA.



ASIA is bounded on the West, with the *Mediterranean* and *Aegean* Seas, the *Hellepont*, *Propontis*, *Ibracian*, *Eosphorus*, and the *Euxine* Sea, the *Palus Maeotis*, the Rivers *Tanais* and *Dniava*, a Line being drawn from the first of the two said Rivers unto the other, by all which parted from *Europe*; on the North, it hath the main *Scythick* Ocean; on the East, the Straits of *Anian* (if such there be;) the *Indian* Ocean, and *Mare del Zur*, by which separated from *America*; on the South, the *Mediterranean*, or that part of it which is called the *Carpathan* Sea, washing the shores of *Anatolia*, and the main Southern Ocean, passing along the *Indus*, *Perseus*, and *Arabian* Coasts: and finally, on the South-West, the *Red Sea* or Bay of *Arabia*, by which parted from *Africa*. Environed on all sides with the Sea, or some Sea-like Rivers, except a narrow *Isthmus* in the South-West, which joins it to *Africa*, and the space of ground (whatsoever it be) betwixt *Dniava* and *Tanais*, on the North-west, which unites it to *Europe*.

It took this name, as some will have it, from *Asia*, the Daughter of *Oceanus* and *Tethys*, the wife of *Lepetus*, and (by him) Mother to *Prometheus*: as others say, from *Asius* the Son of *Atis*, a King of *Lydia*, from whence that Country first, afterwards all *Anatolia*, or *Asia minor*, and finally, the whole Continent had the name of *Asia*. Others again (but more improbably) derive the name from *Asius* the Philosopher, who gave the *Palladium* unto the *Trojans*; in memory whereof that Country first, and after the whole Continent did receive this name: But these *Originations* being very uncertain, *Bochartus* (out of his great affection to the *Phoenick* or *Phoenician* Language) will have it called so from *Asia*, a *Phoenician* word, signifying *Medium*, or the middle; be-

cause *Anatolia*, or the lesser *Asia*, which gives name (as he conceiveth) to the Greater also, lieth in the middle, as it were, betwixt some parts of *Europe* and *Africa*. And so far the Conjecture doth find countenance from some ancient Writers, that *Asia* is said by *Pliny* to be inter *Africam* & *Europam*, to be betwixt *Africa* and *Europe*; by *Mela*, *medius nostris agoribus excipit*, to be embraced in the middle of the two Seas (he meaneth *Pontus Euxinus*, and the *Mediterranean*.) and finally, by *Eusebius* (conceive them all of *Anatolia*, or the Lesser *Asia*) *μεστω ἀπὸ τῶν ἑξῶν ἀνέχοντες*, to have a middle situation betwixt *Europe* and *Africa*. But by what name, and on what grounds forever it be called by the *Greeks* and *Latines*, it is otherwife, and with better reason called in Holy Scriptures by the name of *Sem*, as being that portion of the world, wherein the whole Posterity of *Sem* had their seats and dwellings, if the observation of *Magnus* be of any weight.

It is situate East and West, from the 52 to the 169 degree of *Longitude*, and North and South, from the 82 degree of *Latitude*, to the very *Aequator*; some only of the Islands lying on the South of that *Circle*: so that the longest Summers day in the Southern parts, is but twelve hours only; but in the most Northern parts hereof, for almost four whole months together no night at all. And for a measurement by miles, it stretcheth in length 5200, and in breadth 4560 miles.

This Country hath heretofore been had in especial honour, 1. For the Creation of man, who had his first making in this part of the world; 2ly. Because in this part of it stood the Garden of *Eden*, which he had for the first place of his habitation; 3ly. because here flourished the four first great Monarchies of the *Asyrians*, *Babylonians*, *Medes*, and *Persians*; 4ly. Because it was the





All of them falling into the *Euxine Sea*. 6 *Afcianus*, 7 *Rhyndacus*. 8 *Asparus*, and 9 *Granicus*, passing into the *Propontis*. 10 *Simiceis*. 11 *Scamander*, called also *Xanthus*, ending their short course in the *Hellspont*. 12 *Caicus*, 13 *Hermus*, 14 *Caystrus*. And 15 *Meander*, joining themselves in the *Aegean*. 16 *Calpis*. 17 *Xanthus*, called also *Lycus*. 18 *Limicrus*, 19 *Cataractis*, discharging into the *Mediterranean*, and 20 *Melas*, adding to the waters of the great River *Euphrates*. Of most which we shall speak more particularly in their several places.

In reference to the State of *Rome*, it contained the whole Diocese of *Pontus*, except *Armenia* the Greater, the *Asian* Diocese intirely, without any exception; and the peculiar jurisdiction of the *Proconsul of Asia*, together with the Provinces of *Ilyria* and *Cilicia*, parts of the Diocese of the East. But because the names of many of those Provinces were of new invention, and some of them as of short continuance, we will consider it according as it stood divided anciently, and before the *Romans* had made any conquests in it, into the Provinces of 1 *Bithynia*, 2 *Pontus*, 3 *Paphlagonia*, 4 *Galatia*, 5 *Cappadocia*, 6 *Armenia Minor*, which (together with *Armenia Major*) made up, though in other names, the *Pontic* Diocese, 7 *Phrygia Minor*, 8 *Phrygia Major*, 9 *Mysia* the greater and the lesser, 10 *Asia*, specially so called, comprehending *Asia* and *Ionia*, 11 *Lycia*, 12 *Caria*, 13 *Lycia*, 14 *Lycania*, 15 *Pisidia*, 16 *Pamphylia*, 17 The Province of the *Rhodes*, all comprehended under the command of the *Vicarius* and *Proconsul of Asia*, 18 *Ilyria*, 19 *Cilicia*, parts of the Diocese of the East, as before was said.

### 1 BITHYNIA.

**BITHYNIA** is bounded on the East with *Pontus*, and the River *Sangarius*; on the West, with part of the *Euxine*, and *Thracian Bosphorus*, and part of the *Propontis*; on the North, wholly with the *Euxine*; and on the South, with *Mysia*, and *Phrygia Minor*: Formerly called *Bebrycia*, afterwards *Mygdonia*, and at last *Bithynia*, and that as some say from *Bithynius*, once a King heretofore probably from the *Thyni*, a people of *Thrace*, who passed over the *Bosphorus*, and subdued it, called therefore by some Writers *Thracia Asiatia*. So witnesseth the Poet *Claudian*, saying:

*Thyni Thracas erant, quæ nunc Bithynia fertur.*

By *Justin* the Historian it is called by the name of *Metapontus*, by reason of its neighbourhood to the *Euxine* and the *Pontic* Regions.

The Country naturally rich, and in those parts heretofore which lieth next the *Bosphorus*, opposite to *Constantinople*, so plentifully enriched with fruitful hills, and pleasant Orchards, when kept by the more curious *Christians*, that it was thought not to be inferior to the so much celebrated *Tenpe*: now robbed of all those former beauties by the carelessness of the *Turks*, who affect neither art, nor sumptuousness, in their retirements and delights.

Chief Rivers thereof are *Phyllis*. 2 *Sangarius*, now called *Savris*, both falling into the *Euxine Sea*; this last arising from Mount *Dindymus*, in the fittest parts of *Phrygia Major*; and making two long reaches in his journey hither. 3 *Afcianus*, which rising also in *Phrygia Major*, but more near the borders of this Country, falleth into the *Propontis*, making the Bay called *Sinus Afcianus*; which with a Lake in the same Country, called *Lacus Afcianus*, doth plainly manifest, that the *Bithynians* are derived from *Askenaz*, the Son of *Gomer*, and grand-son of *Japhet*.

The principal Towns hereof are 1 *Scutari*, over against the Haven of *Constantinople*, called anciently *Chrysipolis*; for that there the *Persians* received their tribute from the other Cities of all these parts of *Asia Minor*. An ample Town, well garrisoned within, and surrounded round about with most pleasant Orchards, and honoured with the neighbourhood of a Royal *Straglin*. Not far off is a Tower, called the *Maiden-Tower*, serving both for a Fort and Watch-Tower; and being furnished for defence with 20 Pieces of Ordnance. 2 *Chalcedon*, on the same shore also, a Colony of the *Megarenses*, called blind by the Oracle, for neglecting *Byzantium*, and choosing the less convenient place for their habitation. And yet did *Constantine* the Great resolve upon the same place also for his *Regal City*; but changed his resolutions on a kind of miracle: it being observed, that when his workmen began to draw the Platform, some Eagles conveyed away their Lines to the other side of the *Bosphorus*, and let them fall directly upon *Byzantium*. Memorable after that for the fourth *General Council* there assembled by command of the Emperor *Martinianus*, for repelling the Heretic of *Nestorius*; in which were 530 Bishops: now so decayed, that it can only show some few of the ruins of it, 3 *Scutari* being risen on the fall thereof. 4 *Nicomedia*, so called from *Nicomedes* King of *Bithynia* (the Son of *Zepus*, and Grandchild to that *Bithynian* King, who so valiantly defended his own and his Country's liberty against *Calanus*, one of Great *Alexander's* Captains) by whom founded: Situate on the top of an Hill, environed with a pleasant and delightful Plain, honoured with the Seat and Residence of many of the *Roman Emperours*, when their affairs called them into the East, before the building of *Constantinople*: on that occasion made the Throne on which many of Gods Saints received the Crown of *Martyrdom*, especially in the Persecution under *Dioclesian*. In those times wealthy, and of fame, now much decayed; but notwithstanding well inhabited both by *Greeks* and *Turks*, for the commodiousness of the fresh springs which are thereabouts. 4 *Libussa*, betwixt *Nicomedia*, and the River *Afcianus*; memorable for the death and sepulture of the famous *Annibal*, who to prevent his being made prisoner to the *Romans*, when *Prusias* King of *Bithynia* intended unworthily to betray him, here made away himself by poison. 5 *Prusa*, founded by another *Prusias*, whose name it beareth; a large and wealthy City as most in *Asia*: honoured for a long time with the residence of the *Turkish* Kings, till the removal of their Seat to *Adrianople*, by *Mahomet* the first; and still ennobled with the sepulture of the Princes of the *Ottoman* Race, except the Emperours themselves. By the *Turks* called *Bursa*, 6 *Nice*, or *Nicea*, by the *Turks* called *Nicchia*, but most commonly *Nicibus*, situate near the Fens of the River *Afcianus*, occasioned by the frequent overflowings of that River: by some affirmed to be the *Metropolis* of *Bithynia*; but I think *Nicomedia* hath more right to claim that honour. First named *Antigonina*, from *Antigonus* the founder of it; and afterwards *Nicea*, by the name of *Nica*, Wife unto *Lysimachus*: both of them Captains of the Great *Alexander*; which last had the happiness to survive the overthrow of the former, and was the longest liver of those Great Commanders. Sufficiently famous both in Ecclesiastical and Civil Story, for the fifth *General Council* there held, by the appointment of *Constantine* the Great, Anno 314, for settling the peace of the Church, then miserably distracted by the *Arian* Heretic. The number of Bishops there assembled, no more than 318, yet of such high esteem for Learning and Piety, that

that never Council hath been held in so great an honour. Here was also held the Council by the Empress *Irene*, for establishing the veneration of Images; that passing by the name of the *Niceene Council*, the Acts thereof might be of greater reputation amongst ignorant men. In which it was decreed by such doubtful Arguments, as *Let us make man after our own Image*, once mainly insisted on by a *Legate* of the Eastern Churches, that they should be revered and adored in as ample and religious manner, as the blessed Trinity it self. This City was also the *Imperial City* of the *Greek Emperours*, after the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western *Christians*, and there continued till the expulsion of the *Latins*, under these

### Emperours of the GREEKS residing at NICE.

ACh.

1500 1 *Theodorus Lascaris*, Son-in-law to *Alexius Angelus* the Usurper, upon the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Latins*, passed over into *Asia*, and fortifying the City of *Nice*, made it the head City of this Kingdom, containing *Bithynia*, both the *Phrygia*, both the *Mysia*, *Lycia*, *Adalia*, and *Ionia*.

1223 2 *John*, surnamed *Ducas*, the Husband of *Irene*, Daughter of *Theodore Lascaris*, succeeded his Father-in-law in the Empire; to which he added *Pontus*, most of the Isles of the *Aegean*, and not a few places of importance in *Thrace* it self.

1256 3 *Theodorus II.* the son of *Ducas*.

1259 4 *John II.* the son of *Theodore* the second, an Infant about six years old, supplanted first, and after cruelly deposed and deprived of sight.

1259 5 *Michael Palaeologus*, descended from the *Imperial* family of the *Comneni*, first took upon him as *Protector* of the Infant-Emperour, and afterwards as his *officer* in the Empire: in which confirmed by many fortunate successes well against the *Latins*, as some *Greek* Usurpers in *Thessaly* and *Epiloponessus*, especially the taking of *Constantinople*, he deprived the young Emperour of his sight, made himself sole Emperour, and left it unto his posterity, who held it with a great deal of trouble and continual disputes, till the year 1452, when conquered by *Mahomet* the Great, as before was said. But this recovery of *Constantinople* was the loss of *Nice*, taken not long after the removal of the *Imperial* seat, by *Sultan Otoman*, Anno 1299, who presently thereupon took on himself the style of King, from which before he had abstained.

As for the fortunes of *Bithynia* it self, I look upon the *Bithynians* as a *Thracian* people, whom both *Strabo* and *Herodotus* speak of, as the founders of the name and Nation. Of such a King of theirs as *Bithynius* I find mention in my Authors; and possibly it might be he who had the leading of the *Thyni*, or *Bithyni* in this expedition, that being the name rather of this Nation, than his proper Family. But for the line of Kings which held out till the flourishing of the *Roman* greatness, they began to reign here some few generations before the time of *Philip*, and *Alexander*, the *Macedonians*: by which last, having other employment, and lying out of the road towards *Persia*, they were little troubled. *Calanus*, one of *Alexander's* Captains, made an expedition into their Country, and was vanquished by them: and afterwards they had to do with one of the Lieutenants of *Antigonus* (one of *Alexander's* greatest Princes) who though he humbled them for the present, yet got he neither title nor possession by it. And thus they held it out till the time of *Prusias*,

so shuffling with the *Macedonian* and *Syrian* Kings, that betwixt both they still preserved their own estates. This *Prusias*, when the *Romans* became so inconsiderable, as that no danger need be feared from *Greece*, or *Syria*, pieced himself with them; and having aided them in their wars against *Philip* and *Antiochus* both and most unworthily promised to deliver *Annibal* (who had fled to him for succour) unto their *Embassadors*, made all sure to this end. His son and successor *Nicomedes*, being outed of his Kingdom by *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, and restored again unto it by the power of the *Romans*, held it as their *Federatory*, as did *Nicomedes* his next Successor, surnamed *Philometor*, who dying without issue in the time of *Augustus*, gave his whole Kingdom to the *Romans*. By them, with the addition of that part of *Pontus* which lay next unto it, it was made a Province of their Empire, by the name of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, continuing to till the division of that Empire into the Eastern and Western; when falling to the share of the *Constantinopolitans*, and with them to the power of the *Turkish* Tyrants, who do still possess it.

### 2 PONTUS.

**PONTUS** is bounded on the East, with *Colechia*, and *Armenia*; on the West, with *Bithynia*, and the River *Sangarius*; on the North, with the *Euxine Sea*; and on the South, with *Phrygia Major*, *Paphlagonia*, *Galatia*, and *Cappadocia*. So that it taketh up the whole length of *Anatolia*, or *Asia Minor*, from *Bithynia* to the River *Euphrates*, which parts it from *Armenia Major*, but not of answerable breadth; and gives name to the Sea adjoining, a *Ponto regione ibi adjacentis ita appellari*, as *Strabo* hath it, called from hence *Pontus* by the *Latins*, the adjunct of *Euxinus* coming on another occasion, which we have spoken of before. A Country of a large extent, and therefore divided by the *Romans* (when Masters of it) into these four parts, viz. *Metapontus*, or *Pontus* specially so called, 2 *Pontus Galaticus*, 3 *Polemoniaceus*, and 4 *Pontus Cappadocius*.

1 *PONTUS S.* especially so called, or *Metapontus*, bordering on *Bithynia*, and bounded on the East with the River *Parthenius*, which divided it from *Paphlagonia*, had for the chief Cities thereof, 1 *Claudiopolis*, so called in honour of *Claudius*, the *Roman Emperour*; and 2 *Flaviopolis*, in honour of *Flavius Vespasianus*; and 3 *Julianopolis*, in honour of the *Julian* Family, all midland Towns. 4 *Diospolis*, on the *Euxine Sea*, so called from a Temple consecrated to *Jupiter* of great report. 5 *Heaclea*, a Colony of the *Phocians*, called for distinction sake (there being many of that name) *Heaclea Ponti*: memorable of late times for being the seat or residence of a branch of the *Imperial* Family of the *Comneni*, when at the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western *Christians*, *David* and *Alexius Comneni* fled into these parts: the first fixing here his Royal residence, commanded over this part of *Pontus*, and *Paphlagonia*; the other possessing himself of *Cappadocia* and *Galatia*, made *Trabzon* his *Regal* or *Imperial* City. But these two Empires, though of the same date, were of different destinies: that of *Heaclea* and *Pontus*, being partly conquered by the *Greek Emperours* residing at *Nice*, and partly seized on by the *Turks* in the beginning and first fortunes of the *Ottoman* Family; the other keeping up the Majesty and State of an Empire, till the year 1461, when subdued by *Mahomet* the Great. 6 *Phylum*, at the mouth or influx of the River *Phyllis*, upon which it is seated. 7 *Amisus*, the furthest Town of this part towards the East, on the sea-side also, once of great strength; but taken by *Lulusius*, together with *Heraclea*, *Synope*, *Amisus*, and other Towns in the war against *Mithridates*, the great King of *Pontus*.



*folia, que sunt turpia vicia.* And 4 The *Heneti*, to whom the *Venicians*, as we have already said, do owe their first original. The Kings who ruled in this Country, derived themselves from *Philonen*, who allied *Prismus* King of *Troy* in his defence against the *Greeks*: in memory of whom, this Region for a while was called *Philonia*. Applying themselves unto the times, they were always favourable to the strongest, serving the *Persian*, and submitting to *Alexander* as he passed that way; and so maintained their estate without much molestation, till the time of *Mitridates* King of *Pontus*: who finding them firm unto the *Romans*, then growing to great power in the *Lesser Asia*, depriving *Philonen*, then King thereof, and took the Kingdom to himself, fortifying the chief Towns and places of it. Retorted again unto his Kingdom by the power of the *Romans*, he gave it to them at his death. But the Country being much wasted, and most of the Cities of it destroyed and dilapidated in the course of that War, it was not thought worthy a particular care, and therefore laid unto *Capria*. Not reckoned a distinct Province in the time of *St. Peter*, who writing to the *7*, dispersed in *Pontus*, *Cappadocia*, *Galatia*, *Asia*, and *Bithynia*, takes no notice of this *Paphlagonia*; nor was it otherwise esteemed than as a member of *Galatia*, in the time of *Paulinus*. Afterwards it was joined to *Pontus*, by the Emperor *Constantine*: part of it after that, with some parts of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, being made into a new Province by the Emperor *Theodosius*, and called *Honorius*, in honour of his Son *Honorius*, whereof *Claudiopolis*, a City of *Pontus*, properly so called, was made the *Metropolis*. But by *Justinian* the name of *Honorius* being abolished, and that of *Paphlagonia* revived again, the whole Country, as before limited, was governed by an *Imperial Officer*, whom he called *Praetor Justinianus*: continuing under the command of the *Constantinopolitan*, till the taking of that City by the *Latins*. After which made a Member of the Empire of *Trabzon*, till the conquest of it by the *Turks*, by whom called *Rom*.

## 4 GALATIA.

**GALATIA** is bounded on the East, with *Cappadocia*; on the West, with the River *Sangarius*; and some part of *Pontus* specially so called, or *Misopontus*; on the North, with *Paphlagonia*, on the South, with *Lycania*. So called from the *Galli*, who having ranged over *Greece*, passed into *Asia*, and brought a great part of it under their command: but being broken by *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, and drove out of *Asia* and the lesser *Phrygia*, we are last confined to this Country. It was at first called *Galla-Graecia*, from that mixture of *Galli* and *Graeci*, who uniting into one body when they came for *Asia*, were commonly called *Galla-Graeci*. By *Sidon*, *Graeco-Galli*, and the Country futable *Graeco-Galia*. Which mixture of *Graeci* and notwithstanding, the *Galli* (being both the greater and prevailing Party) not only preserved their own Language, but in short time made it the common Language of the whole Country. And it continued so till *S. Hieronim*'s days, who tells us in the Preface to his Commentaries on *St. Paul*'s Epistle to this people, that it was *Similitudo Treverorum*, a language like to that of the *Treveri*, or people of *Arver*. A sure and certain Argument of their first Original.

The Country very plentiful of all manner of fruits, even unto volucrauntia; and providently provided of the stone called the *Amethyst*, which is said to preserve from drunkenness the man that wear it. The name doth signify, as much, derived from a *prasion*, and *adversus*, *clivus*, which cometh from *adversus*, signifying wine.

The people had a custom in their publick funerals, to cast letters fairly written, into that last and last fire, wherein the dead body was to be burned, supposing that their friends should read them in the other World. Much given to *Sacrifices*, in the number and frequency whereof they excelled all Nations: insomuch that *Athenes* telleth us of one *Arimorus*, a rich *Galatian*, that he sacrificed the whole Nation for a year together with the *Sacrifices* of Bulls, Sheep, Swine and other Provisions, bought in great Chaldrons made for that purpose, and distributed amongst them in Tents and Booths erected for that entertainment. A brave flath of vain-glorious hospitality.

Rivers of note here are not any, but what are common unto them with their neighbouring Nations, as *Haly*, *Sangarius*, and some others. The Towns of most consideration in it were, 1 *Ancyra*, on the banks of the River *Sangarius*, the chief City of the *Telissages*, a *Gallia* Nation, and the *Metropolis* of the whole Country; memorable in Church-history for a *Synod* here held in the Primitive times, Anno 359. called *Synodus Ancyrae*, but of most note at the present for the making of *Chamelet*: now called *Auguri*. 2 *Olcus*; *Agrinoma*, Cities of the same people. 4 *Tavium*, or *Tavium*. (For I find both names) the chief City of the *Toci*, or *Tregni*, where was a privileged Sanctuary. 5 *Androsia*; 6 *Phabarena*, Cities of the same Nation. 7 *Therma*, a *Roman* Colony, so called of the hot Baths there: the chief City of the *Tolissagi*, as *Paulinus*, or *Tolissagi*, as *Sirabo* nameth them. 8 *Talababara*, belonging also to that people.

Besides the Nations above-named, here dwelt also the *Byceni* and *Priselimitine*; who had also their peculiar Cities, mentioned by name in *Paulinus*, but of little or no observation in the course of story. Of all which Nations, only the *Telissages*, were of the *Gallia* Original; who with others of their Country-men under the conduct of *Belgus* and *Brennus*, having ranfacked *Pannonia* and *Illyricum*, fell at last into *Macedon*; where having tyrannized a while, and laid waste the Country, they were at last vanquished and expelled by *Antigonus* *Genetis*. After this overthrow, under the conduct of *Lamachus*, and *Latus*, they ferried over the *Hellefpon*, and subdued almost all *Asia Minor* on this side the *Taurus*; employed there by those petty Kings and States against one another: their reputation grown so great, that no Prince thought himself secure without their alliance, or able to make war without their assistance. The very *Spiziers* of that age; as mercenary, but more faithful unto those that hired them, but being over-rigorous in compelling their neighbouring Princes to become their *Tributaries*, and too loose in the exacting of their *Tributes*, they enforced *Antas* King of *Pergamus*, by whose favour they had settled about the *Hellefpon*, to become their enemy. Vanquished by him, they were constrained to contain themselves within the bounds of this Province, which from them in the following times was called *Galatia*, and *Galla-Graecia*. Here for a while they kept their ancient courage and estimation, mooting many times their neighbours, & sometimes letting themselves to hire in the wars of others: but in the end they lost both courage and esteem, and were *Galli* only in name, retaining little in the form of their ancient valour. For as most plants and trees lose much of their virtue, being transplanted into another soil: so these men lost their native courage, strength, and hardiness, being weakened by the *Asia* pleasures and delicacies. And as *Tully* saith, for a man to be good in other places is no matter; but in *Asia* to lead a temperate life, is indeed praise-worthy: so might one have said to the *Galli*, that to be courageous & patient of travel amongst the mountains,

was no whit to be admired, but to have continued to amitt the delights of *Asia*, had been indeed meritorious in them. But these men were so far from assailing the *Romans* in the Capital, that they lost their own Country to *Mitridates*, a *Roman* General. A war, which *Mitridates* undertook for no other cause, but that they had been aiding to *Antiochus* against the *Romans*; nor was there any memorable act performed herein: but that of *Chimenes* the Kings Wife, who being ravished by one of the *Roman* Captains, took her advantage while he builed himself in telling the money agreed on for her ransom, to cut off his head, which he presented to her husband, But *Mitridates* got little honour by his success, not being welcomed with a *Triumph* at his coming home, according to the *Roman* custom, because he undertook the war of his own accord, without Commission from the Senate. And yet the Senate was content to enjoy the fruits of it, keeping the *Galatians* as their Subjects, and the Kings their *Federates*. This happened A. D. C. 564. After which time I find *Deiotarus*, by consent of the *Romans*, to reign here as King: who siding with *Pompey* in his war against *Cesar*, incurred the anger of the Victor; and had died first, had not *Tully* pleaded his cause, and obtained his pardon. But he being dead, his Country in the time of *Augustus* was made a Province of the Empire: *Lollius* *Paulinus* being the first President or Governor of it; enlarged afterwards with the addition of *Paphlagonia*, and some part of *Pontus*, from whence called *Galaticum*. Reduced to its first bounds by the Emperor *Constantine*, and divided into two Provinces by *Theodosius*, the one called *Galatia Prima*, the other *Salutaris* from its medicinal waters. Of both which *Ancyra* remained the *Metropolis*. In the falling of the *Eastern* Empire, it was partly seized on by the *Turks*, not totally come into their hands, till the subverting of the Empire of *Trabzon*, upon which it depended. By the *Turks* at this day called *Chiangir*.

## 5 CAPPADOCIA.

**CAPPADOCIA** is bounded on the East, with *Armenia Major*, and some part of *Armenia Minor*; on the West, with *Galatia*; on the North, with *Pontus Polemoniacus*, and *Cappadocia*; and on the South, with *Lycania*, and the rest of *Armenia Minor*. So called of the River, as *Pliny* telleth us, which runneth betwixt it, and *Galatia*.

The Country very plentiful of wine, and most kind of fruits, rich in mines of Silver, Brass, Iron, and Allom; affording also besides a mean sort of *Alabaster*, good store of *Crysil*, *Jasper*, and the *Omyx* stone: But the greatest wealth hereof is their breed of Horses, infinite almost in numbers, and fit for any service they can be put to. And this is universal in all parts of the Country, but not the other; there being some parts of it mountainous and very barren, especially about the spurs and branches of the *Taurus*, which is a chain of hills, thrusting out on the edges of this Country, and the two *Armenias*. Here is also in this Country the mountain *Argens*, said to be so great an height, that from one of the summits or tops thereof, a man of perspicuous eyes may discern the *Euxine* on the one hand, and the *Mediterranean* on the other.

The People of this Country in the time of the *Romans* were of ill report, so vicious and lewd of life, so monstrously addicted to all kind of wickedness, that besides the thare they had in the old Greek Proverb, of *Tetrasus et sedus*, they had some Proverbs to themselves, *Herodotus* and *Herodotus* River, that is to say, a man

of *Cappadocia*, and a *Cappadocian* Monster, being used proverbially, to signify a man most extremely wicked. The words so used by *Gregory Nazianzen*, speaking of *Gregory* or *George*, the *Arian* Patriarch of *Alexandria*; if either *Suidas* or *Erasmus*, two right learned *Crickies*, understand him rightly. And they made good the Proverb ill the times of the Gospel, *Gregory* that bloody butcher of *Alexandria*, *Alexandrius*, *Alesterius*, *Enstathius*, principal Patrons of the *Arians*, and that Arch-heretic *Eusebius*, being all of this Country. Yet such is the influence of *Christianity*, where once entertained, that this lewd disposition of the *Cappadocians* was so corrected and retrained by it, that this Country afforded as many godly Prelates, and courageous Martyrs, as any other whatsoever. Highly commended for it by *Nazianzen* before remembred, who with *Gregory Nyssa*, and *St. Basil*, all learned and religious Bishops, were all *Cappadocians*. And amongst many Martyrs of great faith and constancy, *St. George*, a noble *Cappadocian*, Colonel or Tribune of Soldiers under *Diocletian*, more celebrated in the Churches both East and West, than any other Saint in the Calendar, the blessed Apostles and Evangelists excepted only, and for that reason made Patron of the Order of the *Garrier* by *Edward the Third*. Finally, it is reported of these *Cappadocians*, that they were not only morally wicked, but naturally venomous also; insomuch that if a Serpent did bite any of them, the mans blood was a poyson to the Snake, and killed him.

Principal Rivers of this Country, were 1 *Haly*, spoken of before, which had here its Fountain and Original, the end of *Crasus* Empire both in life and fate, the utmost bounds of his dominions on that side: which purposing to pass over in his way to *Media*, which he intended to invade, he was encountered with, and vanquished by *Cyrus* the great King of *Persia*. 2 *Iris*, which ariseth in this Country also, and passing through, and a part of *Pontus*, dischannelleth it self, as the other doth, in the *Euxine* Sea.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Mazaca*, beautified and enlarged by the Emperor *Tiberius* after the uniting of this Province to the *Roman* Empire, and in honour of *Augustus* *Cesar*, by him called *Cesarea*, the *Metropolis* of *Cappadocia*, and the Episcopal See of renowned *St. Basil*, 2 *Nyssa*, the See of *Gregory*, named *Nyssinus*, the brother of *Basil*, 3 *Nazianzen*, the Episcopal See of another *Gregory*, named *Nazianzenus*, three men, which as for the piety of their conversation they were not equalled in those times: so for their admirable abilities in all kind of learning, nothing more inferior to the most eminent of the ancient *Graecians*. 4 *Tyana*, the *Metropolis* of *Cappadocia* second, after the subdivision of it by the Emperor *Valens*. 5 *Archebis* in the *Prefecture* of *Guardus* *Arca*, so called from *Archebis* a *Cappadocian* King, the founder or reparer of it. 6 *Comana*, for distinctions sake called *Comana-Cappadocia*, so difference it from another of that name in *Pontus*, by *Paulinus* placed. I know not why, in *Armenia Minor*, as is also *Nyssa* before mentioned. Memorable in old times for a Temple consecrated to *Bellona*, whose Priests and other inferior Officers of both Sexes, amounted in the time of *Sirabo* to 5000 and upward; for maintenance of whom the Priests received the Revenue of the Region next adjoining to it; in honour next unto the King, and commonly of the same kindred also. 7 *Dio-Caesarea*, called formerly *Cabira*, as we find in *Sirabo*, 8 *Eusebiopolis*, so called in honour of *Eusebius*, wife of the Emperor *Antonius*. 9 *Andrus*, 10 *Pharia*. 11 *Salambria*. 12 *Campe*, spoken of by *Paulinus*, with many others as obscure, and not worth the naming. Of more note, though not found in the ancient Writers, is 13 *Erasmum*, situate on the very confines of the

the *Greater Armenia* for that cause made the *Rendezvous*, or place of meeting for the *Turkish* Soldiers when there is any expedition in hand against the *Persians*; at which place also after the ending of the War for the present years. And 14 *Perium*, not named, in *Ptolomy*, but memorable for the great Battle fought in fight thereof, between *Crasus* King of *Lydia*, and *Cyrus* of *Persia*; in which *Crasus* having lost the field, and with it his Kingdom, found the Oracle true (though not in the sense that he expected) that *Crasus* falling over the River *Halys*, should overthrow a great Empire; indeed he did; but it was his own, and not the *Persians*.

The *Cappadocians* are derived from *Togarma*, the Son of *Gomer*, hath been so fully proved already in our *General Preface*, that we shall not trouble our selves to repeat it here. Nor shall we need to say more in confutation of their opinion, who would fetch *Cappadocia* out of *Egypt* from the rest of his brethren, to plant him in this Country, than hath there been said. Their fortunes in the former times I find little of: subjected by the *Persians*, with the rest of *Asia Minor*, after the overthrow of *Crasus*, who before had given the Law unto it, as to the *Phrygians*, *Ephlagonians*, *Bithynians*, *Mysians*, and others of the neighbouring Nations. By *Cyrus* given together with *Assia* his Sister, to *Pharnaces*, a Noble *Persian*, who had saved him from the fury of a ravenous Lion running upon him with full mouth, as he was hunting. A noble loyalty and no less royally rewarded. From him descended *Artabazus* King heretofore in his duty to the *Great*, continuing faithful in his duty to the Kings of *Persia*, when almost all the rest of the Kings of *Asia* yielded to the Enemy. Nor did *Alexander* call to account in his march for *Persia*. But after his decease, *Perdiccas* having the command of the Army, set upon him, vanquished him, and most cruelly crucified him, together with as many of his kindred as could be found. One of his Sons, who fortunately had escaped this slaughter, spying his time when the *Macedonians* were at wars amongst themselves, recovered his estate again, and passed it over to his off-spring; continuing in his line, without any subjection, till the time of that *Arabisarxes*, who by *Mithridates* was deprived of his dominion, as was told before. Restored again unto his Kingdom by the power of the *Romans*, he became their Homager, holding, as did his Successors, by their own right: Continuing yet in state of Kings, till the death of *Archelaus* the last King heretofore; who having engaged *Tiberius* for not attending on him when he lived at *Rhodes*, during the late time of *Augustus*, as did others of the *Tributary* States and Princes, was by him possessed of the Empire, cited unto *Rome* under colour of projecting somewhat against the State. Where the old Prince, even spent with Age, the Gout, and some other Diseases, had without question been condemned by the servile Senate, but that one of the witticisms deplored, that he had said, That if ever he went back into *Cappadocia*, *Tiberius* should find, quales nervi sibi essent, what a man he was. Which moved such a laughter in the Senate, the old King being neither able to sit nor stand, that he was dismissed; *Tiberius* thinking that he could not punish him more effectually, than to let him live. A favour which the old King construed to the best, and in the way of gratitude bequeathed his Kingdom at his death to the Empire of *Rome*. Being added to the *Roman* Empire, it was exceedingly enlarged by the addition of the greatest part of the Kingdom of *Pontus*: and so it stood in the time of *Ptolomy*, who reckoned *Pontus*, *Galatians*, *Cappadocians*, and *Polemoniacs*, as parts and Members of this Province. Divided besides those into three chief Prefectures

that is to say, *Clanianiensis*, *Sargaranfene*, *Gardisene*, *Gilicia*, *Tyanidis*, *Lycania*, *Antiochiana*, and *Catanis*. But *Pontus*, *Lycania*, and *Antiochiana* (he means *Pisidia* as I take it) being made Provinces of themselves, by the Emperor *Constantine*, it returned unto its natural bounds, and made one Province of the Empire, of which *Cesaria*, as is said before, was the Metropolis; and so remained, till the Emperor *Valens*, a great Patron of the *Arian* faction, of purpose to depose *St. Basil*, who opposed that Heretic, created another Province out of it, called *Cappadocia Secunda*, whereof the Metropolis was *Tyana*. After this it continued part of the Eastern Empire, till the erecting of the new Empire of *Trapsand*, together with which it fell into the hands of the *Turks*; by whom the whole Province, with the addition of *Pontus*, is now called *Anatolia*, after the name of that City, which the Beglerbeg of *Anatolia* honoureth with his residence, and is said to yield yearly to the *Grand Signior* 60000 Ducks.

#### ARMENIA MINOR.

**ARMENIA MINOR** is bounded on the East, with *Euphrates*; which parteth it from *Armenia Major*; on the South, with *Mount Taurus*, which separates it from *Gilicia*; on the West, and North, with long chain of Hills, called *Mons Scordiscus*; by some called *Mons Amanus*, by others *Antidiscus*, according to the change of places; by which divided from *Cappadocia*. Of the reason of the name hereafter.

The Country of the same nature with *Cappadocia*, before described; in some parts overgrown with Mountains, by which, and by the River *Euphrates* is inclosed and fenced, that it is difficult of entrance in other places and delightful, well watered with sweet streams and some fair Rivers issuing out of the Mountains the principal whereof is *Meas*, so called from the bigness of the water thereof, which falleth into the *Euphrates*.

Divided in the time of the *Romans* into three four Regions, that is to say, *Laviana*, *Arzene*, *Militene*, lying on the *Euphrates*, *Mariana* more within the land towards *Cappadocia*; each of which had their several Cities, whose names are to be found in *Ptolomy*. The principal, *Militene*, the chief City of the Region so called, and the Metropolis of the lesser *Armenia*, called afterwards *Malasia*, and now *Smyr*; the Territory thereof abounding in Oyl and Wine, not inferior to the best of *Greece*. The City said by *Onguribus* to be a Colony of the *Romans*, much spoken of by *Eusebius*, and other Writers of Ecclesiastical story, for the piety of the *Christians* there inhabiting in the fiery times of Persecution. A *Nicopolis*, and 3 *Oremundus* in the Mountain Countries; the former built by *Pompey*, in memory of his victory there obtained against the forces of *Tigranes*, King of *Syria*, and both *Armenia's*. 4 *Garnae*, a well-fortified Town, mentioned by *Tacitus* in the twelfth book of his *Annals*, and by him called *Gornea*, 5 *Caucasis*, and 6 *Arsharis*, memorable for the exile of *St. Chrysostom*. Patriarch of *Constantinople*, confined unto these places by the power and malice of the Empress *Eudoxia*, by whom hated for his Orthodoxy in points of faith; who dying afterwards at *Comana* of *Cappadocia*, was there interred.

This Country was once part of *Cappadocia*, till the *Armenians*, by their incursions and Colonies possessed themselves of it, and gave unto it the name of *Armenia Minor*; continuing part of their estate till the war of *Antiochus* against the *Romans*, who being discomfited by *Pharidates* against the *Romans*, who had married his daughter, *Lucullus*, fled with two thousand Horse to the Court of *Tigranes* the *Armenian*, who had married his daughter, by whom at first neglected, and not suffered to come into his

his presence; but afterwards on the apprehension of the common danger, more esteemed and let by: inasmuch that his royal entertainment there, and the refusal of *Tigranes* to yield him up when required by the *Romans*, occasioned *Lucullus* to bring his forces into these parts, subduing all before him to the banks of *Euphrates*. His Victories being seconded by *Pompey*, and confirmed by *Augustus*, this Country was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire: the greater *Armenia*, lying on the other side of that River, though conquered also in that war, not being taken into the account of the *Roman* Provinces, till the time of *Trajan Augustus*, thinking it an high point of wisdom (as no doubt it was) not to extend the Empire beyond those banks. After this it continued *Roman*, till the declining times of the Eastern Empire; when, with the *Persians*, and subdued by the *Turks*; by whom called *Geech*, or as some say *Pegia*.

And so much of the Provinces of the *Pontick* Diocese, lying within *Anatolia*, or *Asia Minor*, converted to the *Christian* faith by the two great Apostles of the *Jews* and *Gentiles*, as appears by *St. Paul's* Epistle to the *Galatians*, and *St. Peter's* to the *Strangers* dispersed in *Pontus*, *Galatia*, *Cappadocia*, *Asia*, and *Bithynia*.

#### 7. ASIA PROPRIA.

Come we now to the *ASIAN* Diocese, and first to that part thereof which *Ptolomy* and others (for the reasons spoken of before) call *Asia Propria*. Anciently the most rich and flourishing part of all this *Peninsula*; and so affirmed to be by *Tully*, who telleth us, That the *Tributes* which the *Romans* had from other places, hardly sufficed to defray the publick charges for defence thereof, *Asia vero tempore illi et fertilis, et uberrate agrorum, et varietate fructuum, et magnitudine pastuum, et multitudine earum rerum quae exportantur, facit omnibus terris antecellat*. But as for *Asia* (saith he) it is so fertile and fruitful, that for the fruitfulness of the fields, variety of fishes, largeness of pasture-grounds, and quantity of commodities which were brought from thence, it very easily excelled all other Countries. The fortunes of the several Provinces we shall see anon. Brought under the command of the *Persians*, they continued subject to that Crown, for some generations; but at last taken from them by the *Greeks*, under the prosperous Ensigns of victorious *Alexander*. After whose decease, the Empire being divided among his Captains, *Asia* fell to the share of *Antigonus*, whose Son *Demetrius* reigned on the Kingdom of *Macedonia*, and left *Asia* to *Seleucus Nicator*, King of *Syria* and the East, being also one of *Alexander's* heirs. The sixth from this *Seleucus*, was *Antiochus* called the Great, who waging war with young *Ptolomy Philopater*, King of *Egypt*, committed by his father to the protection of the *Romans*; and otherwise practising against their estate, provoked the Senate of *Rome* to send *Scipio* (surnamed from his *Asian* victories) *Asiatens*, against him; who compelled him to forsake *Asia*, which the *Romans* presently took into their possessions. But finding it agreeable to the present estate of their Affairs, (the Kingdom of *Macedonia* standing in their way) to make further use of *Antiochus* King of *Pergeum*, and the people of *Rhodes*, who had been aiding to them in the former war, they gave unto *Eumenes*, the Provinces of *Lycania*, *Phrygia*, *Mysia*, *Ionis*, *Lydia*, *Lycia* and *Caria* to the *Rhodiens*; knowing full well, that they could easily take them back again, when they fall occasion. More heretofore in the story of the Kings of *Pergeum*, on the decease of *Antalus* the last King thereof; these Provinces returning fully to the power of the *Romans*.

It contained only after the account of *Cicero*, the Pro-

vinces of *Phrygia*, *Mysia*, *Caria*, *Lydia*, as he reckoneth them up in his Oration for *Flaccus*: computing the two *Phrygias* for one Province only, and comprehending *Æolia* and *Ionis*, under that of *Lydia*. But for our more punctual and particular proceeding in it, we will consider it as divided into 1 *Phrygia Minor*, 2 *Phrygia Major*, 3 *Mysia*, 4 *Æolia* and *Ionis*, or *Asia* more especially so called. 6 *Lydia*, and 6 *Caria*.

#### 8. PHRYGIA MINOR.

**PHRYGIA MINOR**, is bounded on the East, with *Mysia*, interpolating betwixt it and the *Greater Phrygia* on the West, with the *Hellepontus* on the North, with the *Propontis* on the South, with the *Ægean Sea*. Called *Phrygia* from *Phryx*, a River in the *Greater Phrygia*; or as some say, from *Phryxus*, the son of *Atreus* King of *Thebes*, who flying from the treacherous snares of his Mother-in-law, did here slay himself. Minor was added to it to distinguish it from the other *Phrygia*, which being the bigger of the two had the name of *Majior*. It was also called *Phrygia Hellepontica*, from its situation on that *Streight*, and *Troad*, from *Troas* the chief City of it, by which name it occurth in the book of the *Acts*. It was called also *Epistene*, but the reason of the name I find not, except it came from the *Episteni*, a people dwelling on the East parts of *Bithynia*, and consequently near this place.

Chief Rivers of it *Scamander*, on whose Banks stood the renowned City of *Troy*, honoured by *Hesiod* with the Title of *Divine Scamander*: in which the Virgins of this Country a little before they were to be married, used to bathe themselves, and to say these words, *Αδελφαι μεν εδωκαν απορροειναι*, that is to say, *Take O Scamander my Virginity*. Which opportunity *Cimon* an *Athenian* taking, clapped a Coronet of Reeds upon his head, like a River god, and so deflowered *Callirhoe* a noble Virgin, then betrothed to another, occasioning thereby the leaving off of this foolish custom. It was also called *Xanthus* by the Poets, *Xanthumque bibissent*, as in *Virgil*, and watered a little Region called *Lycia*, whence *Virgil* in his first Epistle unto *Lycian basili*, (*Sanguine Tlepolemus Lyciam respexerat basili*) to signify a *Trojan* Spear. But of this more anon in the greater *Lycia*, 2 *Asopus*, parting this little Region from the lesser *Mysia*, the boundary of it on the North, as the Promontory called *Lethium*, is the furthest point of it towards the South. 3 *Simois*, now called *Simores*, falling into the *Hellepontus*, not far from the Promontory called *Rhætanum* (memorable for the Statue and Sepulchre of *Ajax*); but rising out of *Mount Ida*, an hill of this Region, on which *Pæris* (being by his Father exposed to the fury of wild Beasts) judged the controvercie of the golden Ball in favour of *Venus*; respecting neither the great riches of *Juno*, nor the divine wisdom of *Pallas*, but transfixed with a sensual delight, fatal in the end to the whole Country.

Cities of most observation in it, 1 *Dardanium*, or *Dardania*, the Town and Patrimony of *Troas*, 2 *Affus*, mentioned *Acts* 20. 13. by *Pliny* called *Apollonia* who telleth us that the earth about it is of such a nature, that it will consume a dead body in forty days. 3 *Trojanopolis*, whose name declareth its founder. 4 *Lyrrhesius*, on the Sea-side, opposite to the Isle of *Lebros*, destroyed by *Achilles* and the *Greeks* in the first beginnings of the *Trojan* war, who brought thence amongst other captives the Lady *Briseis*, reserved by *Achilles* to himself for his part of the booty, and after taken from him by *Agamemnon*, which caused such a deep displeasure in him, that he would not go into the field till he were restored.

5 *Sigam*, the Port-town to *Troy*, near a noted Promontory of the same name. 6 *Troy*, situate on the River *Scamander*, the beauty and glory of the East, called *Ilium*, and *Pergamus*, for the reason to be shewn anon. A famous Town, from the people whereof, all Nations derive to fetch their original. The beauty of it may be (as some write) yet seen in the ruins, which with a kind of Majesty entertain the beholder: the walls of large circuit, consisting of a black hard stone cut four-square; some remnants of the Towers which stood on the walls, and the fragments of great Marble Tombs and Monuments of curious workmanship. But certainly these are not the ruins of that *Ilium*, which was destroyed by the *Grecians*, but 7 *Troas*, or *New-Troy*, built some four miles from the situation of the old by *Lysimachus*, one of *Alexander's* Captains, who peopled it from the neighbouring Cities, and called it *Alexandria*, or *Troas Alexandri*, in honour of *Alexander the Great*, who began the work, but lived not to bring it to any perfection. In following times called *Troas* only, and by that name mentioned, *Act* 20. 6. then the *Metropolis* of this Province, now a ruin only, but every day more ruinous than other by the *Turks*, who carry daily the stones and Pillars of it to *Constantinople*, to adorn the houses of the *Bassas*. 7 *Scamandria*, a strong piece, but of latter foundation, cunningly surprised by *Ottoman* the first King of the *Turks*, in the time of a Funeral. Now concerning old *Ilium*, the buildings, glories, and fall of it, take this story with you.

## THE KINGS OF TROY.

- A.M.  
2487 1 *Dardanus*, son to *Corinthus* King of *Corinth*, having killed his brother *Jafus*, fled into this Country, where he built this City, calling it *Dardania*: according to that Verse of *Virgil*, *Dardania* *Iliacæ primus pater urbis, & autor*. Both of *Troy Town*, and *Trojan race*, *Dardanus* the first founder was.
- 2518 2 *Erichonius*, of whom little memorable.
- 2593 3 *Tros*, the son of *Erichonius*, who so much beautified and enlarged the City of *Dardania*, that from thenceforth it was called *Troja*, and the people *Troes*. By supporting the unnatural malice of *Saturn* against his son *Jupiter*, he lost his own son *Ganymedes*: who being taken prisoner by *Jupiter*, who carried the Eagle for his Ensign, is by the Poets said to have been snatched up to Heaven by an Eagle, 60.
- 2653 4 *Ilus*, the son of *Tros*, who built the Regal Palace called *Ilium*; and did wish to enlarge the City, and added so much Ornament and beauty to it, that it is frequently called *Ilium*, and the People *Iliaci*. The many Towers and Towers of it, were of his erection, which being by the *Greeks* called *Iliupis*, and sometimes *Iliupis*, occasioned the whole City to be called *Pergamus*, 54.
- 2707 5 *Laomedon*, who new built *Troy*, which afterwards *Hercules* and the *Grecians* (justly) conceiving displeasure against the treacherous King) twice took and defaced; *Laomedon* himself being slain the latter time, 36.
- 2743 6 *Prismus* who re-edified *Troy*, being giving leave to his son *Paris* to ravish *Helen* wife to *Meneleus* King of *Sparta*, forced the *Greeks* to renew their ancient quarrel: who, after a ten years siege, forced the Town, having lost of their own men 860000, and killed 666000 of the *Trojans*, and their Associates,

A. M. 2783. Ios that of *Ovid* was most true.

*Jam seges est ubi Troja fuit rificandæ fide*  
*Luxurians Phrygio sanguine pinguis humus.*  
Corn now for sythes now grows where *Troy* once stood,  
And the soil's fattened with the *Phrygian* blood.  
Concerning the taking of this Town, two things are to be considered. First, whether the *Grecians* in ten years lay continually before it and it seems they did not: but rather that they did beat up and down, wasting the Country, and robbing the Seas for the first nine years in the tenth only laid a formal siege. This is the more probable, because that in the tenth year of the war, *Paris* is recorded by *Homer* in the third of his *Iliads*, to have fate on a high Tower, and to have learned of *Helen* the names and qualities of the *Greek* Commanders, which he could not be thought ignorant of if they had so long together lain in eye-reach. Secondly, by what means the Town was taken: here we find a difference. For some Historians tell us, that *Aeneas* and *Antenor*, being either of the war, or discontented that it was not managed by their sole advice, or other wise corrupted by the *Grecians*, betrayed it to the Enemy: but this *Virgil* could not brook, as prejudicial to his *Aeneas*, whom he intended to make the pattern of a compleat Prince. He therefore telleth of a *Wooden-horse*, wherein divers of the *Greek* Princes lay hidden, which by *Sinon* one of the *Grecians*, was brought to *Troy* gates; and that the people deluded of that monument of the Enemies might, made a breach in their walls, the gate not being high enough to receive it. And that this fiction of *Virgil* might be grounded on History, it is thought by some, that over the *Scam* Gate where the *Greeks* entered, was the portraiture of a huge and stately Horse: and by others, that the walls were battered by a wooden Engine, called an *Horse*, as the *Romans* in after ages used a like Engine called a *Pern*. Neither of which is much improbable: but with me remains the integrity of *Antenor* or *Aeneas*, for whose sake the tale of the wooden Horse was first invented.

The City being thus destroyed, the *Trojans* who remained in the Country, when *Æneas* and *Antenor* had forsaken it, began to think of some other place for their habitation, which having often shifted, they fixed at last by advice of an Oracle, some four miles from the former, giving it the name of *Ilium*. A poor and sorry Village, when *Alexander* came thither, who in the Temple of *Minerva*, (the only one they had) and a mean one too) offered up his own shield, and took down another, which he used after in his fights against the *Persians*, honoring it with gifts, and promising the people to rebuild and enlarge their City. But what he lived not to see done, was performed by *Lysimachus*, who gave it the name of *Alexandria*, next called the *Alexandrian Town*, as he first simply. A free City it continued till the war of *Antiochus* against the *Romans*; in the course whereof *Antiochus* the *Roman* *Quæstor* having seditiously slain the Consul *Valerius Flaccus* in *Bithynia*, and made himself Master of the Army, being refused entrance here as a Thieland Rebel, besieged the City, and in the space of eleven days took it. And when he boasted that he had done as much in it, as *Agamemnon* and the *Greeks* could do in as many years, one of the *Ilions* tartly answered, *That they wanted an Hector to defend them*. Afterwards *Julius Cæsar*, emulous of *Alexander's* attempts, and desirous to enlarge the *Trojans* race, restored them to their liberty, and the *Romans* of no mean esteem. But time and war, and the barbarity of the *Turks*, have brought it unto rubbish, as before was said.

In the distributing of the Provinces of the *Roman* Empire,

Empire, this little Region, with that of *Myfia* *Hellepontica* adjoining to it, made up the Province called by the name of *Hellepontus*, subject with *Æolia*, *Ionica*, and the *Asian* Isles, to the exempt Jurisdiction of the *Præconsul* of *Asia*. Following the fortunes of *Constantinople* till the taking of that City by the *Latines*, it became then subject to the *Greek* Emperours residing at *Nice*; conquered not long after by the *Turks* of the *Selzucian* family. In the division of whole Empire on the death of the second *Aladine*, the whole Province of *Hellepontus*, with part of the greater *Myfia* and *Æolia*, adjoining to them, and some part of *Lydia*, were seized upon by *Carasus*, a man of great power amongst the *Turks*, who here erected a small Kingdom, called from him *Carasia*, or *Carasi-ili*; long since swallowed up by the *Ottoman* Race, in the time of *Orchanes*, Son of *Ottoman*, and the second King of that house.

## 8. PHRYGIA MAJOR.

PHRYGIA MAJOR is bounded on the East, with *Galatia*; on the West, with *Myfia*, interposed betwixt it and the Lesser *Phrygia*; on the North, with *Metanopis*, or *Pontus* specially so called; on the South, with *Lydia*. Called *Phrygia* for the reasons before laid down; the word *Major* being added for distinctions sake, because the greater of the two.

The People of this Country were anciently more superstitious than the other *Asians*, as appeareth by the rites used in the Sacrifices of *Cybele*, and some other Goddesses: said to be all the Inventors of *Aurgus*, and other kinds of Divination. And yet for the most part men of afterwards, and all for bad itself; whence the Proverb, *Serô Phryges*, applied to those who wanted foresight, and knew better to lament misfortunes than to keep them off; and used not to bethink themselves of what would follow, till it was too late. A people noted for effeminacy and lightness of conversation; and for fear they should not themselves be wanted enough, their very *Musick* was so fitted as to dispose them to lasciviousness. Where by the way, I find three sorts of *Musick* spoken of amongst the Ancients: the first, that which *Aristotle* calleth *Idiolum*, because it settled and composed the affections; and *Bœtius*, the *Lydian* *Musick*, because much used by that people, before corrupted by long ease and ill example. It consisted principally of long notes or *Spondees*, such as that supposed to be which *Elitha* called for, 1 *Kings* 3. 15. to invite the Spirit of prophecy to him; and was played by *David* before *Saul*; to drive away the ill spirit from him. And of this sort was the Church-Musick of the Primitive times, fitted to calm mens passions, and raise their devotions. *Per ubi oblectamenta aurium* (as *St. Augustine* hath it) *disjunctat animas ad pietatis affectum*, that by the pleasure of the ears the passions might be calmed, and the soul inflamed with pious and devout affections. The second sort is that which *Aristotle* calleth *diastoron*, or *diastoron* (as he other *Idiolum* or *moral*) commending it before the other in the education of youth, because more stirring them to action; consisting of *Dactyles*, or one long note, and two short ones, by him and *Bœtius* both called *Dorian*, as most peculiar to that people. The third and last by the Philosopher called *edonastoron*, or ravishing, because it unlooseth the affections, and stirreth men to lascivious thoughts, and wanton thoughts; consisting of short notes or *Tribolies*. *Bœtius* terms it *Phrygian*, as most in use amongst this loose and ungoverned Nation: such as the *French-Musick* in our age. A sort of *Musick* forbidden to be used by *Aristotle*, but upon the Theatre, for contentation of the rude and unpolished people, by reason of that influence which it had upon

mens behaviours. *Mutatâ Musicâ* (saith the *Orator*) *mutatur & mores*; *Curandum itaque ut Musica quàm gravissima & modestissima reatuatur*, that is to say, the change of *Musick* maketh an alteration of manners; care therefore is to be taken in the Common-wealth, that the *Musick* be composed and grave, and fish only used. But see how this hiding humour hath led me out of the way; I return again.

The Country very rich and pleasant, well watered with the Rivers *Sangarius* and *Marlyas*. Of which the former hath its Spring or Fountain in this Country, but its fall in the *Euxine*; on the banks whereof standeth the City *Gordium*, and many others of good note. The latter was so called from one *Marlyas*, who striving with *Apollo* for preeminence in *Musick*, was by him dead, which fact (say the Poets) was so lamented, that from the tears of the mourners grew this River. The chief Towns 1 *Gordium*, the seat of *Gordius*, who from a Plowman being raised and chosen King of this Kingdom, placed the furniture of his Wain and Oxen in the Temple of *Apollo*, tied in such a knot, that the Monarchy of the world was promised to him that could untie it, which when *Alexander* had tried and could not undo it, he cut it with his Sword. 2 *Midæum*, the seat of *Midæus*, son to this *Gordius*, who being not a little covetous, intreated of *Bacchus*, that what ever he touched should be turned into gold; which Petition granted, he was almost starved, his very victuals turned into Gold, till he had repaled his with; and afterward for preferring *Pan's* Pipe before *Apollo's* Harp, his head was adorned with a comely pair of *Alps* ears. 3 *Celsus*, where dwelt the *Celsojans*, to whom *St. Paul* wrote one of his Epistles. 4 *Pissus*, where the Goddess *Cybele* being worshipped, was called *Dea Pessinuntia*. The *Romans* were once told by an Oracle, that they should be Lords of the world, if they could get this Goddess into their possession. Hereupon they tend to the *Phrygians* to demand it. The *Phrygians* willing to please a potent neighbour, especially the *Romans*, being their Country-men, as descended from *Æneas* and his *Trojans*, granted their requests, and the Goddess is shipped away for *Rome*. But behold the unlikelihood of fortune: The Ship, Goddess and all made a stand in *Tiber's* neither could it be advanced forwards by force or Art. It hapned that one of the Vetal Virgins, named *Claudia*, being suspected of unchastity, resolved to put her self upon this experiment: and fastening her girdle to the Ship, prayed to the Goddess, that if she were carefully suspected, the ship might be suffered to go forward, which was no sooner heard than granted, *Claudia* drawing the ship up the water to *Rome*; where I leave the people wondering at the miracle, as well they might. But to return unto the City, it stands in the borders of *Galatia*, and is by some made to be the City of *Gordius*, and the *Gordian* knot placed in it also; but neither rightly. Not far off stood the Mountain *Dindymus*, overlooking the City, in which the Priests of *Cybele* had their usual residence, thence called *Dindymene*. 5 *Apamea*, situate not far from the banks of *Aladon*, anciently a most flourishing Emporie, and the *Metropolis* of the whole Country, till *Constantine* divided it into the two Provinces of *Salutarina*, and *Pactiana*: making 6 *Symada* the *Metropolis* of the first. 7 *Hierapolis*, and 8 *Laudicea*, two noted Cities in those times, the principal of the other Province. 9 *Zulipolis*, or to *Tiberiopolis*, so called from the Emperour to whose honour dedicated. 11 *Doryleum*, &c. Not known unto the ancient Writers, but of more note in modern histories are 1 *Sagaa*, the habitation of *Ereogol*, Father of *Ottoman* the first King of the *Turks*. 2 *Chara-chisar*, by the *Grecians* called *Mcimpyrgus*, or the Black Tower, 3 *Cilicurga*, 4 *Eneigid*, places



places of consequence and importance, taken by the said *Ottoman* from the Christians, in the first rise of his fortunes.

As for the *Phrygians*, they defended (as was shewn before) from *Gomer* the eldest Son of *Japhet*, and *Akennaz*, the eldest Son of *Gomer*: of which, *Gomer* first placed himself in the mountainous Counties of *Albania*, and afterwards in the more pleasant Plains of the *Greater Phrygia*, where the City of *Cimmeris* (the posterity of *Gomer* being generally called *Cimmerians*) did preserve his memory. And as for *Akennaz*, he first took up his dwelling in the *Lesser Phrygia*, and the banks of the *Hellefpont*; where was anciently a City and Territory called *Afcania*, some Isles adjoining called *Infulæ Afcaniæ*, the name of *Afcanus* also very frequent in *Troy* it self. An ancient people they were doubtless, esteemed the ancientest of the World by *Plamistius* King of *Egypt*, upon this Experiment. Delirious to inform himself to what Nation the privilege of greatest Antiquity did of right belong, he caused two children to be kept in a fold, where they were suckled by Goats: all mankind being prohibited upon very great penalties to have recourse to them. All the language which the children learned from their speechless Nurses, was more than *Bee*, which in the *Phrygian* language signifieth bread; and being of no signification at all in any other which was then known to the *Egyptians*, gave up the *Verdict* in their side: But other Nations of the world not yielding to this sentence, by a *Writ of Error*, or an *Ad melius inquirendum*, impelled a new *Juris*, wherein it was pronounced on the *Syrians* side, *Soytharon goss Imper antiquissima*. Where by the way, *Gorgius Becanus* makes the like use of this experiment, to prove the *High Dutch* to be the Original or Mother-tongue of the world; because *Becker* in that language signifieth, as with us, a *Baker*, or a maker of bread. In this Country reigned *Niohe*, who preferring her self before *Latona*, the mother of *Phebus* and *Diana*, had her children slain before her face by an unkind means, and was her self turned into a stone, as the Poets fable. Here also reigned *Tantalus*, who being rich, and wanting wisdom to make use of it, is feigned to stand in Hell up to the chin in water: and that under a tree whose fruit toucheth his lips: yet both the one and the other lie from him, when he offereth at them. Of which thus *Ovid*.

*Tibi Tantalus nulle*

*Dependentur aquæ quæque imminet, effugit arbor.*

In English thus,

Thou canst not, *Tantalus*, those waters taste;

The tree juft at thy lips, flies off as fast.

But this race of Kings being worn out by the tyranny of time or war, the *Phrygians* were made subject to the Kings of *Lydia*; continuing under their command till the Conquest of *Lydia* by the *Perfians*, with which they fell together to the Crown thereof, not made the stronger by the accession of effeminate Subjects. Gained from them by the Sword of *Alexander*, they fell unto *Antigonus* one of his great Captains, and on his overthrow at the battle of *Ipsus*, to *Seleucus* the Conqueror, the first King of that race: following the same fortune after that with the rest of *Asia*, till they came to be possessed by the *Romans*, and made a Province of that Empire. But *Constantine* laying to it the *Greater Mysia*, made two Provinces of it: the one called *Salutaris*, from some miraculous cures there wrought by the *Arch-Angel Michael*, as was then generally believed; the other called *Pactiana*, from *Pactianus*, who in the time of the said *Constantine* was *Præfēt* for the *Pretorium* of the East, and divers years before had begun his honours with the *Lieutenants* of *Britain*. In the declining of the *Constantinian* poli-

tics, it became a prey unto the *Turks* of the *Selæucian* Family; possessed by them till the death of *Aladine*, the last King of that race: when seized upon, together with the *Greater Mysia*, and those parts of *Lydia* which lay next unto it, by *Aidin*, a great *Turkifh* Prince, and made a peculiar Kingdom, called by his name *Aidinia*, or *Aidinli*: extorted shortly from his heirs by the house of *Ottoman*.

## 9. MYSIA.

Interposed betwixt the two *Phrygias* lyeth the Country of *MYSIA* bounded on the East, with *Phrygia Major*; on the West, with *Phrygia Minor*, and the *Ægean* Sea; on the North, with parts of *Bithynia*, *Preponis*, and the *Hellfpont*; and on the South, with part of *Lydia*, *Æolis*, and the *Ægean*. So called from the *Mysians*, the Inhabitants of it.

Whether these *Mysians* were Originally a *Phrygian* Nation, or some interlopers which thrust in afterwards amongst them, I find not determined. Most probable is, they were natural *Phrygians*, being as superstitious in the worship of their several *Deities*, as any *Phrygian* of this age; and that they had this name given them by the *Lydians*, and that they had this name given them by the *Lydians*, from the abundance of *Beech-trees* which grow amongst them, by them called *Mysia*. A people of low & contemptible quality, that it grew into a common proverb to call a fellow of no worth, *Mysiorum patrem*.

The principal Mountain of this Country is that called *Olympus*, situate in the North-parts hereof bordering towards *Bithynia*: from which as it is called *Olympus Mysiæ*, to difference it from *Olympus in Græce*; so the people of the *Greater Mysia*, where this Mountain is, are called *Olympiæ*, to difference them from the *Mysii* or *Æoliæ* of *Ærope*. And as for Rivers, those of most note besides *Æscopus*, parting it from *Troas*, or the *Lesser Phrygia*, are, 1. *Caucus*, on whose banks stands the City of *Pergamus*, and from thence passeth into the *Ægean* Sea, at the Bay of *Elea*; and 2. the famous River of *Gangetic*, which hath his fountain in *Mysia Major*, and passing through *Mysia Minor*, falleth into the *Propontis*. A River memorable for the Victory which *Alexander* obtained on the banks hereof, in his first essay against the *Perfians*: by whom upon the first noise of his preparations he was so flighted, that *Darius* King of *Persia*, gave command to his Lieutenants residing in *Asia Minor*, that they should take him alive, whip him with Rods, and so convey him to his presence. A notable example of the pride and folly of the *Perfians*. But *Alexander* soon taught them another Lesson. For though the *Perfians* were possessed of the higher banks of the River, with an intent to stop his passage; yet he resolved to charge them in the face of their strength knowing full well, that if he could beat them on a place of so great advantage, he should not only lessen them in point of reputation, but beget an opinion of himself that he was invincible. And so accordingly it proved, the *Perfians* being vanquished by him, and all the Kingdoms and Provinces of this *Asia* submitting to him on the noise of the Victory (as an enemy not to be resisted upon equal terms) some few Towns excepted. And therefore it was wisely advised by *Machiavel*, that he who takes upon him to defend a passage, should with his ablest forces oppose the *Affiliates*, because in all Invasions where of place, as defence of Rivers, Streights, and Mountains, they do not only dishearten their Soldiers from dealing afterwards on even ground with that Enemy, but leave no hope unto their fellows and partakers, of being succoured and defended by such weak Protectors. Which caution if the *Perfians* Commanders had observed either here, or at *Pyla*

*Cilicia*, spoken of hereafter, *Alexander* had not so easily subverted the *Perfian* Monarchy. But the fatal period of it was now drawing on, and the men either naturally Cowards, or did prodigiously befothed.

It is divided commonly into *Mysia Minor*, or the *Lesser Mysia*, which lying on the West towards *Troas* and the *Hellefpont*, is called sometimes *Mysia Hellefpontica*; and joyned unto *Troas* by the Emperor *Constantine*, made up that Province which he called the *Consular Hellefpont*; and *Mysia Major*, called from *Olympus* which was in it, *Mysia Olympica*, and the Inhabitants *Olympiæ*; which joyned by that Emperor to the Western parts of *Phrygia Major*, made up that Province which he caused to be called *Phrygia Salutaris*, for the reason formerly delivered.

Places of most observation in the *Lesser Mysia*, were 1. *Abydus*, standing on the narrowest of the *Hellefpont*, opposite unto *Sestos* in *Thrace*; first built by the *Milefians* with the consent of *Cyzer* King of *Lydia*, to whom the Country then belonged; Memorable both in the ancient and modern Stories. In ancient story for the famous resolution of the Inhabitants, when besieged by *Philip* the father of *Perfian* King of *Macedon*. For being brought by him into some districts, and hopeless of good conditions from him, the young men of the Town who had bound themselves by oath to die rather than fall into his hands, let fire thereof, and barbarously slew themselves, with as many of the women and children as could be met with. Which news being brought to *Philip*, moved to little compassion, that he said he would give the *Abydians* three days leisure to die; and therefore would not suffer any of his soldiers to enter the Town, then let open to him, either to take the spoil thereof, or hinder this bloody execution, till the three days end. In Modern story no less memorable for the taking of it by the *Turks*, in the reign of *Orbanes* the son of *Ottoman*, through the treason of the Governours Daughter: who bewitched with the person and valour of *Aderach-men*, a young *Turkifh* Gallant, whom she had beheld from the Towers of the Castle, threw a Letter to him as he drew near the wall, wherein he manifested her affection, and promised to make him Master of that Fortress, if he would persuade his General to raise the siege, and come with a strong Party in the dead time of the night to receive it from her, which was done accordingly. The Town continuing ever since in the power of the *Turks*, well fortified, and one of the two Castles spoken of before, which defend *Constantinople* on that side from all force by Sea. 2. *Cyzicus*, seated in the *Propontis*, in an Island of the same name also, but so near the Continent, that it joined to it by two bridges. The Metropolis of the *Consular Hellefpont*, by consequence an Archbishopric See in the prosperous times of Christianity; as were all other Cities in the *Roman* Empire, which were the Mother-Cities or Metropoles of their several Provinces. A Town of wonderful strength and beauty, when first known to the *Romans*, called therefore by *L. Florus*, the *Rome of Asia*, who gives this Character also of it, *Cyzicum nobilis ciuitas, are, maritima, portu, turribusque munita*. Asiaticæ plage littora illustrat, that is to say, that the noble City of *Cyzicum* by the excellency of the Walls, Bulwarks, Haven, and Towers of Marble, doth beautify and illustrate the shores of *Asia*. Honoured amongst many other goodly and magnificent buildings, with a glorious Temple, the Pillars whereof being 4 Cubits thick, and 50 Cubits high, were each of one entire stone; the whole Fabrick all of polished Marble, every stone joyned unto the other with a line of Gold. In vain besieged by *Mithridates* in the time of his war, who lost before it by the Sword, Pestilence, and Famine, no fewer

than 300000 men, and yet could not force it. Afterwards ruined by an Earthquake, the *Falings-Sickness* of the East, as before is said, it could never be restored to its former lustre: the very ruins of it daily made more ruinous, by transporting the Stones and Marbles to *Constantinople* for the Embellishing of that City. 3. *Pampisus* on the same *Propontis*, in which the beauty god *Priapus* was worshipped in as beauly a figure: *Quem non denudis* (as wittily *Lactantius* scoffeth it) *que quid appareat visu dignum*, supposed to be the same with the *Syrian* or *Phœnician Baal*, so often mentioned in the Scriptures. For this and on some other reasons, *Alexander* had conceived against it such an high displeasure when he was in *Asia*, that he resolved to raze it to the very ground. And seeing *Anaximenes* coming to him as an Ambassador from the Town to obtain his favour, commanded him to hold his peace, and swear as by way of prevention, that he would deny whatsoever he requested of him: whereupon *Anaximenes* entreated him to destroy the City, which now for his Oaths sake he could not do; and so this wicked City at that time escaped. 4. *Parium*, so called, as some say, from *Paris* the son of *Jafon*, a Colony at first of the *Mylefians*, of the *Romans* afterwards: *Troas* and this, the only two *Roman* Colonies in all the Province. By *Homæ* called *Adragia*; as *Lampiscus* in the same Author, is called *Pisylla*. More in the land, are 5. *Scæpis*, 6. *Hiræ*, both mentioned by *Plutarch*, but of more antiquity than fame.

Chief Cities in *MYSIA MAJOR* or *OLYMPIA* are 1. *Dainia*, in the North-parts, not far from *Olympus*. 2. *Apollonia*, near a large Lake sacred to *Apollo*, in the same parts also. 3. *Pala Scæpis*, or *Scæpis Vetus*, on a Bay of the *Ægean* Sea, joyning upon *Troas*, or the *Lesser Phrygia*. 4. *Adramyttium*, mentioned *Acts* 27. where *St Paul* took ship to go to *Rome*; 5. *Antandarus*, on the same Sea also, now called *St Dimitri*, named at first *Cimmeris* from the *Gomerites* or *Cimmerians* here inhabiting (which sheweth that *Mysia* anciently was a part of *Phrygia*) afterward *Edonis*, and at last *Antandarus*, and that either because built or repaired rather by the men of *Andros*, an Island of the *Ægean*, spoken of before, amongst the *Cyclades*, or because the *Grecians* having taken *Polydorus* the son of *Friam*, from the King of *Trace*, received this City for his ransom or rather in exchange for him as the word doth intimate. 6. *Persicene*, on the same coast also. More in the Land. 7. *Præpessillus*, 8. *Trasjanopolis*, 9. *Alydus*, of which little memorable. 10. *Pergamus*, the Regal City of this tract, situate in a goodly Plain on the banks of the River *Caycus*; of a small Town or Fortrefs made a stately City by the Kings hereof, and beautified with an excellent Library containing 20000 Volumes; for the writing or transcribing whereof, *Parchment* was here first invented, which from hence to this day is called *Pergamentum*. Here also were those costly hangings first invented, which we now call *Tapestry*; by the *Romans* called first *Antica*, from *Aula*, signifying a Hall; the Hall of *Antalus* King hereof (by whom invented) being the first room furnished and adorned herewith. Here was born *Galen* the famous Physician, living very healthfully to the age of 140 years his health preserved to so great age, by the means especially, 1. Never eating or drinking his fill. 2. Lying. Never eating any thing that was raw, 3. Always carrying about him some sweet Perfumes. Finally, this was one of the *severn Churches* to which *St. John* writ his *Revelation*. For though it were originally a City of *Mysia*, yet being near unto the borders of *Lydia*, it was reckoned as a City of *Lydian* *Asia*; within the limits whereof those *severn Churches* were all comprehended.

As for the Kings hercof which flourished here for some



boasting of themselves to be *Aborigines*, men growing as it were out of the Soil it self, without any *Ancitors*, report that those *Ionians* were a Colony of their Plantation. But *Heateus* in *Strabo* doth affirm the contrary. Saying, That the *Athenians* or *Iones* of *Greece*, came from those of *Affias* that *Atica* was anciently called *Ionis*, *Plutarch* in the life of *Theseus* doth declare expressly. Most probable it is, that *Heateus* was in the right these parts of *Asia* lying so directly in the way from the Valley of *Shinar* into *Greece*, that *Javan* may very well be thought to leave some of his company here, when he perished the rest over to the opposite Continent. I know *Phanias*, ignorant of their true antiquity, deriveth them from *Ion* the son of *Xuthus*, and grandchild of *Deucalion*: where, in he came to near the truth, though he missed the men, that it was the Grandson of that man who escaped the flood, from whom both the *Athenians* and those *Ionians* had their true original. In regard of which relations betwixt the Nations, the *Athenians* gave aid to those *Ionians* against the *Persians*, who on the overthrow given to *Croesus*, pretended to the Lordship or Dominion of *Asia*, and conquered them in the time of *Cyrus*, the first *Persian* Monarch. Upon which revolt in the time of *Darius*, that King first undertook the invasion of *Greece*: *Xerxes* with great animosities. After this yielding to the times, they followed the fortune of the stronger, subject successively to the *Persians*, *Macedonians*, *Romans*, *Constantinopolitans*, and *Turks*, till the death of *Aladine*, before-mentioned: when both *Eolis* and *Ionis* got a new name, and are now called *Sarcas*, from *Sarcas* a Turkish Captain, who on the death of that *Aladine*, seized upon this Country, and erected here a petit Kingdom long since subdued by those of the race of *Ottoman*.

## II. LYDIA.

**LYDIA** is bounded on the East, with *Phrygia Major*, and some part of *Pisidia*, from which separated by a branch of the Mountain *Taurus*; on the West, with *Eolis* and *Ionis*, or *Asia* specially so called; on the North, with the *Greater Mysia*; on the South with *Caria*. So called from *Lud*, the son of *Sem*, by some of whose posterity it was first inhabited. In the full Latitude and extent thereof, as anciently, comprehending *Eolis* and *Ionis*, the adjoining Provinces, it made the *Lydian Asia*, spoken of before; within the verge whereof of all the seven Churches were contained, mentioned by *St. John* in the Revelation.

The people of this Country are said to have been the first Coyners of Money, the first Hacklers and Pedlers, and the first inventors of Dice, Ball, Chefs, and the like Games: necessity and hunger thereunto enforcing them, according to that of *Persius*, *Artis Magister, ingenuique largitor venter*. For being forcibly vext with famine, in the time of *Ais*, one of the Progenitors of *Omphale*, they devised these Games; and every second day playing at them, beguiled their hungry bellies. Thus for 22 years they continued playing and eating by turns: but then seeing that themselves were more fruitful in getting and bearing children, than the soil at that time in bringing forth sustenance to maintain them, they sent a Colony into *Italy* under the conduct of *Tyrrhenus*, the son of *Ais*, who planted in that Country, called at first *Tyrrhenia*, and afterward *Tuscany*.

This Country was also called *Maonia*, and was thought to have been the native soil of *Homer*, in regard that *Colophon* and *Smyrna*, two of the seven contending Cities, and those which seem to have most colour for

their claim, were anciently accounted as parts of *Lydia*, as was said before. Hence *Homer* hath the name of *Maonides* and *Maonian Vates*: and in some Authors *Cornelius Maenium* is used for *Homer's* Poetical authorities, as *Cornelius Maenon confingere*, in *Ovid*. *Baculus* is also called sometimes by the name of *Maenius*; but for a very different reason, viz. because anciently there were no trees in all this Country but the Vine only.

Principal Mountains of this Country are 1 *Sipylus*, and 2 *Tmolus*, this last of most account in regard of the great fruitfulness of it, covered over with Vines, and yielding abundance of the best *Saffron*. Chief Rivers of it are 1 *Hermus*, which rising out of *Phrygia Major*, passeth only by the skirts hereof, and so falleth into a fair Bay of the *Aegean*, opening towards the Isle of *Clazomenae*. 2 *Pactolus*, which rising at the foot of Mount *Tmolus*, falleth not long after into *Hermus*; famous amongst the Poets for its golden Sands. 3 *Caystus*, no less notable for the abundance of Swans which swim therein, whose Fountain is in *Phrygia Major* also, near the borders hereof; and his fall into the *Aegean* also over against the Isle of *Samos*. 4 *Meander*, which rising out of a branch of the *Taurus*, in the furthest parts of the said *Phrygia*, towards *Lycania*, passeth by *Magnesia*, and endeth his course in the same Sea, near the City of *Ephesus*. A River famous for its many turnings in and out, 600 at the least, as *Plinius* counteth them. Of which in general thus the Poet,

*Meander toties qui terris errat in istis,  
Et lassas in se; sepe retortque aquas.*

That is lay:

*Meander wandering in the self-same soil,  
Whose waters meeting do as oft recoil.*

And in another passage thus,

*Quique recurvum ludis Meander in undis,  
Mæander plays his watry pranks,*

In his so many winding banks.

The Country by reason of these Rivers was exceeding fruitful, abounding in all sorts both of wealth and pleasures, well cultivated and manured above ground, and underneath enriched with prodigious veins of Gold and Silver, and some precious Gems. Which made the people, after their overthrow by *Cyrus*, to become more sensual and voluptuous, and less fit for action, than any plot of their new Masters could have brought them to, had not the natural delicacies of the soil it self contributed to the advancement of their design. And yet before, they were sufficiently infamous for their luxury, and excess of riot, when best seen in wars: so that it is a marvel they were able to prevail on the neighboring Nations, and bring them under their command: as in the times of some of *Croesus* Predecessors, it is said they did. Unless perhaps they did participate of the temper of *Minotus*, the great favourite of *Augustus Caesar*, of whom *Paterculus* hath left this Character: *Ubi res vigilanter, erat sane infans, providens, et agendi sibi simulacrum aliquid ex negotio remitti possit, eis ac nullius penitus humanam fluens*: No man more vigilant than he in times of business, nor woman more effeminate in his times of leisure.

Principal Cities of this Country were, 1 *Sardis*, on both sides of *Pactolus*, the Seat Royal of *Croesus*, and the Kings of *Lydia*, till the Conquest of *Lydia* by the *Persians*. After which time, being taken by the *Greeks*, it so startled *Xerxes*, that he commanded one of his attendants to fly aloud every day, whilst he was at dinner, That the *Greeks* had taken *Sardis*; continuing that *Menemio* till it was recovered. Which cometh (I note this only by the way) was commonly observed in the Parliaments of *France*, as long as *Calice* did remain in the hands

hands of the *English*; and might be profitably revived, till again recovered from the *French*. Overthrown by a most terrible Earth-quake (to which Disease most of the *Asian* Cities had been very much subject) it was re-edified again at the cost of *Tiberius*; continuing long after the Metropolis of this Province, and one of the seven Churches of the *Lydian Asia*, of which the Holy Spirit took such special notice. The others (besides *Pergamus* already mentioned in the *Greater Mysia*; and *Ephesus*, and *Smyrna* in the *Proper Asia*) were 2 *Philadelphus*, near or on the Banks of the River *Caystus*, the second City in account next to *Sardis* it self, and honoured with the dignity of a Metropolis, as appears by the Acts of the *Constantinopolitan* Council, where *Eustathius* Bishop hereof doth subscribe himself, *Episcopus & the Metropolitanus Metropolis*, Bishop of the Metropolis of *Philadelphus*, in the Province of *Lydia*. 3 *Thyatira*, honoured with the same Privilege also, as appears by the constant Order, observed as well in the Civil as Ecclesiastical Catalogues of the Cities belonging to this Province. The Reason whereof for otherwife it was contrary to the practice both of Church and State, to have in one Province more than one Metropolis was the respect had to those several Churches in regard of their Primitive Antiquity, and the Foundation of them by *St. John* the Apostle, as it was generally believed. 4 *Laudicea*, by *Palmy* placed amongst the Cities of this Province, as it stood in his time, and before: but afterwards laid by *Constantine* to the *Greater Phrygia*, and made the Metropolis thereof (which honour *Ephesus* had before enjoyed) it being well observed by *Strabo*, that the *Romans* did not dispute of their Provinces according to Nations, *sed ad eas res spectant diuturnas res, antiquas, in eas res antiquas diuturnas*, but according to those Districts, or Circuits, in which they kept their Courts of Justice. Next unto these, there were of especial consideration, 5 *Magnesia ad Meandrum*, so called because situate on that River, to difference it from 6 *Magnesia pene Sipylum montem*, another of the same name near the Hill *Sipylus*. The first assigned over to *Themistocles*, together with *Myus* and *Lampsaenus*, as was said before. The other memorable for the great Battle fought near unto it, betwixt *Antiochus* and the *Romans*; the loss whereof falling unto *Antiochus*, occasioned the loss of all his *Asian* Provinces on this side of *Taurus*, and the payment of 15000 Talents for the charge of the War, besides some other hard Conditions then imposed upon him. 7 *Alabanda*, opposite to *Magnesia* on the other side of *Meander*, the People whereof, immediately on the overthrow of *Antiochus*, not only sent Embassadors to *Rome*, to congratulate with them, as many other Nations did; but built a Temple to it, and appointed Anniversary Games to be celebrated in the honour of that new-made Goddess. A thing more to be wondered at in the *Roman* Senate for receiving, than in this poor People for bestowing on their City so divine an honour. 8 *Tralles*, on the banks of *Caystus*, to the Inhabitants whereof, *Ignatius* that Reverend Bishop and Godly Martyr writ the Epistle ad *Tralesenses*.

That the *Lydians* were derived from *Lud* the Son of *Sem*, is testified by the general consent of such ancient Writers, as treat of the dispositions of the Sons of *Noah*; to which opinion the nearness of the Names of *Lud*, *Ludim*, and *Lyd* (or *Idum*, as the *Greeks* call them) seems to give good countenance. Nor shall I here dispute it further, as a point unquestioned: the tale of *Lydus*, I know not what Nobleman, that should name this Country, being taken up amongst the *Greeks* for want of more certain truths: Once settled here, they grew up suddenly to a Kingdom amongst the ancient Kings where-

of are numbered *Manes* as the first, *Cotus*, and *Ais*, and then *Aisus* (from whom *Lydia* first, and after, all the Continent, had the name of *Asia*) as his immediate Successors. After whom I find mention of one *Cambites*, said by *Athenæus* to be so great a Gormandizer, that in his sleep he eat his Wife, and finding her hand in his mouth next morning, flew himself for shame: and of another named *Andramyter*, as infamous for his filthy lusts, as *Cambites* for his gluttony. But the Race of these Kings ending in *Omphale*, the Mistress of *Hercules*, who made that valiant Champion spin amongst her Damocels, the *Heracleids* or Posterity of *Hercules* succeeded next; of whom there is no constant and continued Succession till the time of *Ardisius*, the nineteenth in order of that Line, who began his Reign not long before the building of the City of *Rome*. Under his Successors the Affairs hereof so exceedingly prospered, especially under *Halyates* the Father of *Croesus*, that *Phrygia*, *Bithynia*, *Paphlagonia*, *Mysia*, *Caria*, *Eolis*, *Doris*, and *Ionis*, acknowledged themselves Vassals to this Crown: Conceived both in Wealth and Power to be equal to the *Aegyptian*, *Babylonian*, or *Median* Kingdoms, till the Conquest of *Syria* and *Aegypt* by *Nebuchadnezzar* gave him the pre-eminence. But being come unto the height, it received a fall in the Person of *Croesus* the Successor of him who so much advanced it. The Kings hereof, from the time of the said *Ardisius*, take in order following.

## THE KINGS of LTD I A.

- |      |   |  |
|------|---|--|
| A.M. |   |  |
| 3190 | 1 | <i>Ardisius</i> , 36.  |
| 3226 | 2 | <i>Halyates</i> , 14.  |
| 3240 | 3 | <i>Melos</i> , who overcame the people of <i>Sardis</i> , 12.  |
| 3252 | 4 | <i>Candaules</i> , who fiewing his Wife naked to <i>Gyges</i> , was by him slain; who marrying his Wife, succeeded him in his Kingdom. The whole Story is this: <i>Candaules</i> had to Wife a Woman of unparalleled beauty, and supposing the greatness of his happiness not to consist so much in his own fruition, as the notice which others might take of it, intended to shew her in <i>Natures</i> bravery to <i>Gyges</i> the Master of his Herds. <i>Gyges</i> , at first dissuaded him from an attempt so foolish; but seeing no persuasion could prevail, he consented. When he had seen the naked Queen, and was ready to depart, <i>Candaules</i> cried to him, <i>Ego scilicet Gyges</i> : Which words the Queen marking, and seeing the back of <i>Gyges</i> as he left the Chamber, the next morning sent for him: When holding a Ponyard in her hand, she gave him his choice, either presently to be slain, or else to kill the King, and take her to wife, with the Kingdom of <i>Lydia</i> for her Dowry. Of which two evils he made choice of that which he thought the least, and so killed <i>Candaules</i> . |
|      | 5 | <i>Gyges</i> , the first of this new Line added <i>Ionis</i> to his other Dominions. A Prince of so great widom, for the time he lived in, that all other Kings his neighbours (as it were) in the light to him; and he as in the dark to them: occasioning thereby the fiction of a King he had, by which made invisible, when, and as often as he pleased.   |
| 3305 | 6 | <i>Ardis II.</i> the son of <i>Gyges</i> , 37.   |
| 3342 | 7 | <i>Sardiatres</i> , 15.  |

3357 8 *Halyastor* II. of whom before.  
3408 9 *Craesus*, the last King of Lydia, subdued *Doris* and *Æolis*; after which Victories, he was overcome by *Cyrus* King of Persia: in which Battle, a son of *Craesus* who had been dumb from his Cradle, creating a Souldier ready to kill his Father, suddenly broke out into these words, *Rex est, cave ne occidas*. After his overthrow, and the Captivity of *Craesus* (one of the richest Kings that ever was of old) Lydia was made a Persian Province, A.M. 3420.

The *Lydians* after this rebelled, but being again subdued, *Cyrus* bereaved them of all their horfices of services; dispoysed them of all their Armour, and trained them up in all manner of loofe and effeminate living; weakening by this means a powerful Nation, which before that time had not only maintained its own liberty, but aved all the Provinces adjoining. After this they continued Persian till the Conquest of *Asia* by the *Macedonians*, in the division of whose spoils they fell to the portion of *Selenus* and the Kings of *Syria*: following the common fortune of the rest of this *Asia*, till they came under the power of the *Romans*. Made by them one of the Provinces of their Empire, it had the *Lower Mysia*, or *Asya Olympica* annexed unto it: by means whereof the limits of each became so confounded, that the Towns and Cities of the one, are many times ascribed to the other. In the falling of the Eastern Empire it was made (as all the rest of *Anatolia*) a prey to the *Turks*: that Part of it which lieth next to *Æolis*, subject to the *Cararum* Family: as the other parts towards *Phrygia Major* were to the *Aidinian*.

## 12 C A R I A.

C A R I A is bounded on the East, with *Lydia*; on the North with *Lydia* and *Ionis*; on the West, with the *Ææan* or *Ægean* Sea; and on the South, with the *Carpathian*. So called from *Cares*, the son of *Phoronius* King of *Argos*, once the Lord hereof, who is said to have invented the Science of Divination by the flying of Birds, called *Augury*; though others ascribe it to the *Phrygians*, and others unto other Nations, all alike uncertain.

In this Country is the Hill called *Læmus*, the dwelling, or rather trying place of *Eudymion*, who being much addicted to the study of *Astronomy*, found out the changes and courses of the Moon, and is therefore by the Poets feigned to have been his Paramour. Others add, that *Jupiter* hid him in a Cave under this Hill, and cast him into a dead sleep: (which notwithstanding, the defended sometimes to kiss him) whence came the old By-word, of *Eudymionis somnum dormit*. Here is also in this Country the River *Salmacis* said to infest all such as either drink of it, or bathe in it: from whence the Poets raise the fiction of *Salmacis* and *Hermaphroditus*, described by *Ovid*; and the Proverb of *Salmacis ipsa sine sanguine & sudore*, mentioned by *Tully* in his Book of *Officer*, and there used for effeminate and wanton excesses.

Places of most note in it, is *Miletus*, not far from the hill *Læmus*, the birth-place of *Thales*, one of the seven Wise-men of *Greece*; from hence called *Milesius*; and the Mother of no fewer than 75 (or as *Pliny* faith of 80 Colonies, dispersed in several places of *Greece* and *Asia*: anciently honoured with the Oracle of *Apollo*, famed *Miletus*, whose Temple being burnt by *Xerxes*, was again rebuilt by the *Myletians*, to wit a greatness, that it remained without roof; compassed about with a Grove, and dwelling houses, and sumptuously set out with costly

workmanship. This is that *Miletus* mentioned *Aristo*, to which *St. Paul* called together the Bishops of *Ephesus*, and of other the adjoining Cities, *Ab Ephebo & reliquis proximis Civitatibus*, faith *St. Irenæus*, the renowned Bishop of *Lions*, lib. 3. cap. 14. Anciently it was called *Legis* and *Anatolion*. 2 *Mindus*, which being but a small Town, had 40 great Gates, that *Diogenes* the *Cynic* cited out, and said, *Te men* *Mindus*, *take heed that your City run not out at your Gates*. 3 *Haradus ad Læmon*, so called because situate at the foot of that Mountain, to difference it from many others of that name: 4 *Bergylus*, or *Bergylus*, as *Pliny* calleth it, where anciently *Diana* had another Temple, though not to be compared with that of *Ephesus*. 5 *Mylæ*, in old times famous for two Temples sacred unto *Jupiter*; the way to which for 60 furlongs was paved with stone for the easier travelling of *Pilgrims*, and the better ordering of Processions; the principal of the Citizens serving there as *Præfets*, which office they held unto their death. 7 *Primæssus*, memorable for the Stratagem by which it was taken by *Philip* of *Macedon*, the Father of *Persius*. Who meaning to force it by Mine, and finding the earth so stony that it would not work, commanded the *Pioneers* notwithstanding to make a noise under the ground, and caused great Mounts of *Rubbish* to be raised secretly in the night, at the mouth of the Mine, as if the Work went very well forwards. At last he sent word unto the Townsmen, that two parts of their wall stood only upon wooden props, to which if he gave fire, they should find no mercy; which heard, the Citizens yielded up the Town unto him. Souldier in the Art of War is a piece of wit, that it prevails sometimes more than Mines or Batteries.

In the South-west of the Province, thrusting it self to the Sea like a spacious Promontory, stands the Country of *DORIS*, so called of the *Doræ*, a Greek People, who there inhabited. The principal Cities whereof were 1 *Cnidus*, not far from a Foreland or Promontory of the same name, famous of old times for the Marble Image of *Venus*, called hence *Dea Cnidia*. 2 *Cressa*, a noted Haven-Town in the time of *Ptolemy*. 3 *Halicarnassus* (now called *Nesi*) the birth-place of *Herodotus* and *Dionysius*, named hence *Halicarnassus*, two famous Historians, and the seat-Royal of *Artemisia* Queen of the *Carians*; called from hence sometimes the Queen of *Halicarnassus*, who in the honour of her husband *Mausolus*, built a stately Monument, accounted one of the Worlds seven Wonders, of which thus *Martial*, speaking of the Roman Amphitheatre erected by *Domitian*,

*Aere nec vacuo pendentes Mausolea  
Laudibus immo dicis Cares ad Astra ferant.*

That is to say,

*Mausolus* Tomb filling the empty Air,

Let not the *Carians* praise beyond compare.

That the *Carians* were so called from *Cares*, the son of *Phoronius*, King of *Argos*, hath been said before. But *Bochartus* will rather have them so called from *Car*, which in the *Phœnician* Language signifieth a Sheep or a Ram; with numerous flocks whereof they did once abound. And this may seem more probable, in regard that the *Ionians* next neighbours to *Caria*, borrowing this word from the *Phœnicians*, called sheep by the name of *Caræ*, *Kæg*, *lowæ*, & *ægiabra*, faith *Hebæus*, the old *Grammatician*. From whomsoever they had their name, certain it is, they were a very warlike people. *Es amaron pugnaque amantes*, (faith *Pomponius Mela*) *in aliaq. vitem bella appetentes*, who when they had no wars at home, would seek out for action. A little before the time of *Xerxes*, *Mausolus* reigned here, whose wife *Artemisia* (lately mentioned) aided that King in his undertakings against *Greece*. Afterwards, in the time of *Alexander* the

the Great, we met with *Ada* Queen hereof, who aided him against the *Persians*; adopting him for her son and Successor; Subject after her decease to the *Macedonians*, it followed the same fortune with the rest of these Provinces, till the defeat of *Antiochus* near *Magnesia*: in the division of whose spoils it was given to the *Rhodiens*, incorporated not long after to the State of *Rome*, and made a Province of the Empire. Wreathed from the Eastern Emperours by the *Turks* of the *Selæmian* Family, the greatest part hereof, on the death of *Aladin* II. was raised unto a petty Kingdom by the name of *Mentesis*, so called from *Mendos* (or *Mindus*) the chief City of it; the residue being laid to the *Caraman* Kingdom, both long ago subdued by the *Ottoman* Family: that of *Mentesis* by *Mahomet* surnamed the Great, who dispossessed *Eliat* the last Prince thereof, Anno 1451.

## 13. L Y C I A.

L Y C I A is bounded on the East, with *Pamphylia* and *Lydia*, and *Phrygia Major*; on the North, with parts of *Lydia*, and *Phrygia Major*; on the South, with the *Mædian* and *Taurus*. Environed on three sides with the Mountain *Taurus*, which part it from the Countries above mentioned, by consequence naturally strong, and not very accessible: the Sea for the space of 20 miles thrusting up the fourth. And here is to be observed, that besides this, there was a little Region of the same name, not far from *Troy*, not much observed by our Geographers either old or new; but mentioned sometimes by the Poets; as in *Virgil*, *Æneid. 4. Quæsi ubi bybernæ* *Lyctiam*, *Xanthique fœcunda Deserti*, &c. which is meant plainly of the *Byrgian*, or *Troyan* *Lyctia*; the word *byberna* being added because of its Northern situation in respect of this. Of this somewhat hath been said before in *Phrygia Minor*. In which also that there was a River called *Xanthus*, appears not only by those words of *Virgil* which are cited there, but by two passages in *Oenone's* Epistles unto *Paris* no less and evident.

The people hereof were sometimes called *Xanthi*, from *Xanthus* the chief River hereof, which rising in two Springs from the foot of Mount *Cadmus*, passeth by a Town called *Xanthus* also, and falleth into the Sea. But generally they were called *Lycti* and the Country *Lyctia*, from *Lyctæ* the son of *Pandion* King of *Athens*; who either conquered them, or did some memorable act amongst them, which deserved that honour.

The principal Mountain of this Country, and indeed of *Asia*, is the Mountain *Taurus*, which hath his beginning in this Province, extending Eastward to the great *Oriental* Ocean: of which somewhat hath been said already, and more is to be said hereafter, when these hills are grown unto the greatest.

One of the branches of it, and the most notable in this Country, is that called *Chimæra*, vomiting flames of fire like the *Sicilian* *Ætna*: the bottom whereof was infested with *Serpents*, the middle parts grazed upon by *Goats*, and the higher parts made dangerous by the dens of *Lions*. Hence by the Poets made a Monster, having the head of a Lion, the body of a Goat, and the tail of a Serpent; according unto that of *Ovid* in his *Metamorphosis*:

*Quæ Chimæra juvo mediis in paribus Hircum,  
Quæ & ora Leo, caudam Serpentis habebat.*

In English thus,

*Chimæra* from a Goat her mid-part takes,

From *Lions* head and breast, her tail from *Snakes*. This dangerous Mountain was first planted and made habitable by the care of *Bellerophon*, a noble *Grecian*, who is therefore fabled by the Poets to have killed this Monster, employed upon this business by *Jobares* the King of

*Lyctia*, to whom he had been sent by *Prætus* King of *Argos*, who was jealous of him, and sent his Letters to require that King to kill him. Whence came the saying, *Bellerophonis literas portare*; applied to those, who were unawares employed to carry Letters tending to their own destruction: such as those carried by *Urial* to *Joub* the General, by command of *David*.

This Country was so populous, that anciently there was reckoned threefold Cities in it, of which fix and thirty remained in the time of *St. Paul*, now nothing left of them but the names and ruins. Those of chief note were 1 *Myra*, the *Metropolis* of *Lyctia*, when a *Roman* Province; by consequence an Archbishop's See, when *Christian*. *St. Nicolas* one of the Bishops hereof in the Primitive times, is said to have been a great Patron of Scholars: his Festival annually holden on the sixth of December, is celebrated in the Church of *Rome* with several *Patentes*; and still in some Schools here in *England* (as in that of *Burford* in the County of *Oxon*, where I had my breeding and my birth) for a feast and a play-day. Of this City there is mention *Acts 27. 5. 2 Talmesius*, the Inhabitants whereof are famous for *South-saying*, and accounted the first Interpreters of dreams. 3 *Patara*, or *Patras*, (formerly called *Satara*) beautified with a fair Haven, and many Temples; one of them dedicated to *Apollon*, with an Oracle in it, for wealth and credit equal unto that of *Delphos*. 4 *Phaselis*, on the Sea-side also, a nest of Pirates in the times of the *Roman* greatness, by whom then haunted and enriched, as *Algiers* is now: but taken by *Servilius*, a *Roman* Captain, at such time as *Pompey* scoured the Seas. And unto the Pirates of this Town the former ages were indebted for the first invention of those swift Vessels, which the *Romans* called a *Phaselus*, by the name of the Town; we may render it a *Brigantine*. 5 *Cragus*, with the Mountain of the same name, thrusting out eight points or Promontories near to the *Chimæra*. 6 *Rhodia*, or *Rhodiopolis*, as *Pliny* calleth it, most probably of the Foundation of the neighbouring *Rhodiens*. 7 *Solyma*, on the borders hereof towards *Pisidia*, the people of which were conquered and added unto *Lyctia* by the sword of *Bellerophon*, whom *Jobares*, with a mind to kill him, according to the request of *Prætus*, employed in that service. 8 *Corydalla*, near the Mountain called *Masigram*, the *Majesties* of *Pliny*. 9 *Podaleus*, the chief Town of *Myliæ*; as to *Oenananda* is of *OE-BALIA*, two little Regions in this Country.

The *Lyctians* were in former times a puissant people, extending their power upon the Seas as far as *Italy*. Subjected to the *Persian* not without great difficulty; the people with such obstinacy defending their liberty, that some of them being besieged by *Harpages*, Lieutenant unto *Cyrus*, the first *Persian* Monarch, they first burnt their wives, children, servants, and riches, in a common fire; and then made a furious rally upon the Enemy, by whom put all unto the sword. To *Alexander* in his march this way towards *Persia*, they submitted without any resistance. After whose death they fell with the rest of these parts into the hand of *Selenus*. On the defeat of *Antiochus* at the battle of *Magnesia*, it was given to the *Rhodiens* for their assistance of that War; but governed as a Free Estate by a Common-Council of 14 Senators, elected out in their principal Cities: over whom was called by the name of *Leictarchus*. In these remained the sole power of imposing taxes, making War and Peace, appointing *Judicial* and inferior Magistrates, and all things appertaining to the publick Government. A shadow of which power they retained when brought under the *Romans*, and a shadow only: the Supreme power being no longer in the Senate of *Lyctia*, but in that of

of Rome. Nor had their *Lyciarch* any thing but an empty name, and the vain privilege of ordering and disposing the public Games, wherein by his Office he presided. When made a Province of the Empire, it had the same fortune as the others had, till it fell into the power of the *Turks*; after the death of the second *Aladine* made a part of the Kingdom of *Caramania*; of which more anon.

## 14 LYCAONIA.

LYCAONIA is bounded on the East with *Armenia Minor*, from which parted by a branch of the Mountain *Taurus*; on the West, with the *Greater Phrygia*; on the North, with *Cappadocia*; and on the South, with *Pisidia*. So called from the *Lycæones* a People of *Lycia*, or from the *Lycæonians*, Inhabitants of *Lycæonia*, a Town of *Phrygia Major*; who enlarging themselves into these parts, gave this name unto it. Either of which I should prefer before their conceit, who derive it from *Lycæon* King of *Arcadia*, dispossessed by *Jupiter* of that Kingdom; or think that *Lycæon* was a King of this Country, and not of that.

Places of note herein, 1 *Iconium* (now *Cogui*) the *Metropolis* hereof when a Roman Province: A place of great strength and consequence; situated advantageously in the Mountains for defence and safety, and therefore chosen for the Seat of the *Turkish* Kings in *Lesser Asia*, at such time as they were most distressed by the Western *Chalybians*, who under the Command and presence of the Emperor *Conrade* did in vain besiege it, forced to depart thence with great loss both of men and honour. Afterwards made the Seat-Royal of the *Aladine* Kings, the former Race being extinguished by the *Tartars*; and finally of the Kings of the house of *Caraman*, whose Kingdom called the Kingdom of *Caramania*, contained all the South part of the *Lesser Asia*, that is to say, part of the Province of *Caria*, all *Lycia*, *Pamphylia*, *Isauria*, *Cilicia*, *Pisidia*, and this *Lycaonia*. 2 *Lystra*, the birth-place of *Timothy* the Evangelist; where *Paul* and *Barnabas*, having miraculously healed a Cripple, were adored as Gods; and not long after, on the instigation of some *Jews* which came down from *Antioch* and *Iconium*, most deliberately treated; *Paul* being stoned into the bargain, though it pleased God to raise him to life again, *Acts* 14. v. 19, 20. Such was the divine pleasure of Almighty God, that he that did consent to the stoning of *St. Stephen* the *Protomartyr*, and took charge of the cloaths of his Executioners, should suffer in the same kind wherein he had trespass'd, and feel some smart remembrance of his former Actions. 3 *Derbe*, honoured by the preaching of the said Apostle. 4 *Laranda*, so called by *Ptolemy*, and still preserving its old name, the second place for reputation next unto *Iconium*. 5 *Adopsus*, 6 *Paralizi*, 7 *Canna*, 8 *Caratha*, with others named by *Ptolemy*, but not else observable.

Whomsoever they defended, of any great note or observation in the former times: subject to *Cappadocia* when it was a Kingdom, and reckoned as part of it in the time of *Prohomy*, when made a Province of the Empire. Disinherited from it by some of the following Emperours, either to create new Offices and Preferments for some Court-Favourites, or to satiate the ambition of some Prelates, aspiring to the dignity of a Metropolitan, it was made a Province of itself. Torn from the Empire by the *Turks*, it was at first a member of the *Selæucian* Kingdom, as afterwards of the *Caramanian*, which last founded by *Cargman* a great Prince of the *Turks*, on the death of *Aladine* the second, the last King of the

*Selæucian* Family, was a great eye-fore unto that of the House of *Ottoman* from the time of *Amir* the first, who first warred upon it, to the Reign of *Rahim* the second, who in fine subverted it, *Ann* 1486, as may be shewn hereafter, when we come to *Cilicia*, the last of the Provinces of that Kingdom, in the course of this Work.

## 15 PISIDIA.

PISIDIA hath on the East, *Armenia Minor*; on the West, some parts of *Lycia* and *Phrygia Major*; on the North, *Lycaonia*; on the South, *Pamphylia*, and some part of *Cilicia*; from which parted by the main body of Mount *Taurus*. So called from the *Piside*, the Inhabitants of it; but the reason of their name I find not amongst my Authors.

The Country small, but furnished with great plenty of all provisions, as appears by that passage of *Luc*, where speaking of the Expedition of *Marinus* into these parts, he telleth us that he came into the Fields of *Sagalassa* (one of the Cities hereof) being of a rich soil, and plentiful of all manner of Fruit, *Iste ventum est* (with he in agrum *Sagalassarum*, ubere fructu feracem omni genere frugum). But this is to be understood only of the Plains and Champaign, the Mountainous parts hereof being (like others of that nature) poor and barren.

Towns of most observation in it, 1 *Antioch*, the *Metropolis* hereof, when a Province of the Roman Empire, called for distinction sake *Antiochia Pisidia*; mention of which is made *Acts* 4. and of the *Jews* Synagogue therein, honoured by *St. Paul's* preaching, the sum of whose divine Sermon is there repeated. Built by *Silvanus*, the first King of *Syria* of the *Macedon* Race, and by him so called in honour of his Father *Antioch*. 2 *Selæucia*, the foundation of the same *Selæucus*, called also, to distinguish it from others of that name, *Selæucia Pisidia*. 3 *Lyssinia*, on the borders heretofore towards *Phrygia*. 4 *Selge*, a Colony of the *Lactemonians*. 5 *Sagalassa*, situate in the most fruitful part of all this Country, as appears by that of *Luc* before-mentioned. 6 *Cremna*, which only had the honour of a Roman Colony. 7 *Termessus*, strongly situate in the *Syrinch* of the Mounts, the hilly Country about which both the name of *Milyra*. 8 *Olbanassa*. 9 *Platanassa*, of which little memorable.

As for these *Piside*, they were originally defended of the *Solyms*, Inhabitants of the Borders of *Lycia*. A valiant People, and so affirmed to be by *Luc*, who calleth them *longè optimos bello*. Nor did he speak it without cause, this small Nation holding out against the *Persians*, and not conquered by them, when their great neighbours were subdued. Against these *Cyri* the Emperor *Arsaxerxes* Mueon King of *Cyria* did pretend a Quarrel, as if they had trespassed on the borders of his Province. Which though perhaps they had not done, yet this gave him good occasion to levy an Army, preying tending revenge on them, but intending to dispossess his Brother of the *Persian* Monarchy: But *Tigermes* Lieutenant to the King in *Asia*, seeing greater Preparations than were sufficient to oppose the weak *Piside*, made the King acquainted with his suspicions, who accordingly provided for resistance. The Army of *Cyri* consisting of 120000 *Grecians*, and 100000 *Persians*; the Kings Forces were no fewer than 90000 fighting men. They met at *Cunaxa*, not far from *Babylon*, where *Cyri* lost both the Victory and his Life. The *Grecians* who had made their side good, and stood in honourable terms of Composition, being by *Tigermes* betrayed, left the best of their Company. The rest under the

the conduct of *Xenophon*, made safe retreat home in despite of 200000 men which followed at their heels. This *Xenophon* was an Agent in and the Historian of this Expedition; whose example the *Spartans* first and afterwards the *Macedonians*, were encouraged to attempt the Conquest of *Persia*. But to return to these *Pisidians*, they fell, with others of their neighbours, under the power of the *Macedonians*, and were made part of the Dominion of *Selæucus*. Abandoned by *Antiochus* by the will of the Romans, and settled in obedience by the Military progress of *Marinus*, spoken of before; they were in *Prohomy's* time annexed to *Pamphylia*, as a part thereof. Afterwards made a distinct Province of itself, and so continued till those parts of the Eastern Empire were subdued by the *Turks*: first part of the *Selæucian* and *Aladine* Kingdoms, after of the Kingdom of *Caramania*; whereof more anon.

## 16 PAMPHYLIA.

PAMPHYLIA is bounded on the East, with *Lycia*, from which parted by a branch of the *Taurus*; on the North, with *Pisidia*, separated from it by the main body of that Mountain; and on the South, with the *Mediterranean* Sea, which in those parts which lie next to it, is called *Mar Pamphylum*. The reason of the name I find not, unless we think with *Metaphrastes*, that it was so named, quæ ex omnibus gentibus constat esse, because inhabited by a mixture of many Nations; for so *Pamphylia* in the Greek Tongue doth expressly signify. And probable enough it is that lying near unto the Sea, with an open Shore, opposite to *Afric*, near *Syria*, and not far from *Greece*, several Nations from those Parts might repair unto it; and from thence the Name.

The Country for the most part is very Mountainous, over-run with the branches of Mount *Taurus*; but these branches feed great flocks of Goats, of whose hair are made abundance of *Chambers* and *Gregariis*, not inferior unto Silks for fineness. Towards the Sea, which for the space of an hundred and fifty miles coasts along this shore, more pleasant, populous, and fruitful; well watered, and as well planted. The principal Rivers hereof, being 1 *Cataradus*, 2 *Cestrus*, and 3 *Erismus*; next to which last, *Simon* the son of *Mithridates*, Captain General of the *Albanian* Army, overthrew in one day both the Sea and Land Forces of the *Persians*. The manner thus having by plain force broke their Navy, of which he took and sunk no fewer than forty Ships, and three thousand Gallies, he towed the *Persians* westwards with his best men, attired in the Habit, and wearing the Colours of the *Persians* in the tops of their Ships. In their approach the Camp was opened, and all prepared to entertain their victorious Countrymen; but the *Greeks*, once in, suddenly put them to the Sword, and took twenty thousand of them Prisoners.

Principal Cities of it, 1 *Attalia*, founded by *Ptolemy Philadelphus* King of *Ægypt*, and for long time the greatest and most flourishing City of all this Province; well fenced, and seated very commodiously for Trade, on a very fair Bay, now called *Golfo di Satalia*, by the name of the Town, but little altered. And though the Romans did confer the honour of the Metropolitan City upon *Aspendus*, yet still *Attalia* had the first in point of Riches, and is to this day a wealthy and well-traded Empery, the wealthier for the fair Taperies which are therein made. Of this Town there is mention *Acts* 14. v. 25. 2 *Perga*, famous in old times for a Temple of *Diana*, and the yearly Festivals there held in honour of her, from hence called *Diana Pergæ*; of

more famous in the *salings* of time, for *St. Paul's* Preaching in it, mentioned *Acts* 14. v. 25. 3 *Syde*, renowned in times of *Gentilism* for a Temple of *Palus*. 4 *Magydus*, on the Sea-side, not far from *Syde*. 5 *Aspendus*, an in-land Town, but strongly situate; made the *Metropolis* of the Province in the time of the Romans; remarkable for the Elders or Musicians of it, who with one hand both held their Harps and plaid upon them, keeping the other free for more gainful uses; whence the Proverb of *Aspendus Citharista*, an *Aspendian Harper*, by which they signified a Thief. The Town first founded by the *Argives*, the Colony sent thither being led by *Mopsus*, from whom the Country heretofore had the name of *Mopsia*. 6 *Olbia*, not far from *Attalia*. 7 *Carcassum*, and 8 *Colobrasus*, two of the Towns of that part hereof which had the name of *Cilicia aspera*; as 9 *Cretopolis*, and 10 *Menedemium*, of that part which was called *Carbalia*.

Of these *Pamphylians* there is little to be said in point of story, but that they were for the most part on the suffering hand; subject from time to time to those mighty Princes, who would not let their neighbours rest in quiet by them. Being on the same side of *Taurus*, and of easy access, they became first Vassals to the *Syrians*, and after to the *Persian* Kings. When *Alexander* passed that way, in his March towards *Persia*, he took all the Sea-Towns of it: The whole brought under with the rest of the *Asian* Provinces, by *Antigonus* first, after by *Selæucus* the great King of *Syria*. In the expiration of whose Line, this people and their neighbours of *Cilicia*, being left to themselves, and tempted by *Mithridates* to his Faction, began to be troublesome on the Seas, and proved notable Pirates, and were the first Authors or Inventors of those Gallies of an hundred and forty, or an hundred and sixty Oars apiece; which the *Indians* call from hence by the name of *Pamphylia*. But forced to leave this Trade at last, being warred upon by the Romans with great Forces both by Sea and Land (a fuller narrative whereof we shall have in *Cilicia*) in the conclusion of that War, they lost that liberty which so small a time they had enjoyed, and were made Vassals unto Rome. Afterwards made a Province of the *Asian Dioecse*, they ran the same fortune. With the rest, till subdued by the *Turks*; and at the death of *Aladine*, were seized on by *Caraman*, and so became a part of his Kingdom; of which we shall hear more when we come to *Cilicia*. And so much for the Provinces of the *Asian Dioecse* (the Provinces of the Isles excepted, whereof more anon) converted to the *Christian* Faith by three great Apostles; but most especially by *Saint Paul*, of whose Travels through most Cities and Regions of it, there is such pregnant evidence in the Book of *Acts*. And that *Saint Peter* and *Saint John* had also their parts herein, appears by the *Revelation* of the one, and the first Epistle of the other: *Paul* planting, *John* and *Peter* watering, but *God* himself giving the increase. Pass we on next unto ISAURIA and CILICIA, which though Provinces of the *Dioecse* of the Orient, were parts of the *Caramanian* Kingdom: of which having taken a Survey, and so cleared our selves of this *Pamphylia*, we will then fall about with *Illyands* as make up the remainder of the *Asian Dioecse*.

## 17 ISAURIA. 18 CILICIA.

These two, though distinct Provinces, I have joyned together, because the first was only a part of the last; *Cilicia* anciently comprehending both: The fortunes of both being the same also in point of story, which makes the conjunction the more natural.



**ISAURIA**, a mountainous and hilly Province, seated on both sides of *Taurus*, hath on the East and South, the rest of *Cilicia*, whereof anciently it was a part, on the North, *Psidia*; on the West, *Pamphylia*. So called from *Isaurus*, the chief City of it, when first made known unto the *Romans*; which being taken by *Servilius* the *Proconsul*, employed by *Pompey* in that Service, reduced the conquered Country under the command of *Rome*, and gave unto the Conquerour the firname of *Isauricus*.

The quality of the Soil, and whole Estate of this small Province, take thus from *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who had seen these Countries. *Cilicia lateri dextra adnata* *Isauria*, ubi palmitis vires, & frugibus multis quam mediam, fumen navigabile Calicadnus interfecit, &c. i. e. "On the right hand of *Cilicia* lieth *Isauria*, a Province of a wealthy Soil, plentiful of Vines, and much other Fruits, which the River *Calicadnus* parteth in the very midst. Beautified, besides many Towns, with two principal Cities. 1 *Seleucia*, founded by *Seleucus*; and 2 *Claudiopolis*, into which *Claudius* the Emperor brought a *Roman* Colony. For as touching 3 *Isaurus*, heretofore a walled City, and of most esteem, it hath been long ago destroyed, as yielding too secure Refuge to the neighbouring Rebels: inasmuch that now there are scarce any visible Tracts of its former greatness. And not much after, *He due Provincia bello quondam Piratico cateris mixta Predonum*, a *Servilio Proconsule missa sub jugum, facta sunt veltigales*. i. e. "These Provinces (*Cilicia* and this heretofore in the *Piratical* War joining with those Robbers, were brought under by *Servilius* the *Proconsul*, and made subject to the State of *Rome*. And here we have in brief the nature of the Country, the names of the chief Rivers, and the principal Cities, with so much of the Story as relates to the first subjugation of it. What further doubt concern it we shall hear in *Cilicia*, upon the which it did depend.

**CILICIA** is bounded on the East with *Syria*, or rather that part thereof which is called *Comagena*, separated from what parts by a branch of the Mountain *Taurus*, called *Amanus*; on the West, with *Pamphylia*; on the North, with *Isauria*, and *Armenia Minor*; on the South, with the *Mediterranean*, and *Syria*, specially so called. It was thus named, as the old tradition was, from *Cilice* the Brother of *Cadmus* the *Phœnician*, a near neighbour to it; but as *Becharius* (of whose humour I have told you often) from *Callicum*, a *Phœnician* word signifying Stones, *quia lapidosa est Regio*, because in some parts, especially in that which is called *Cilicia Trachea*, or *Cilicia Aspera*, it was very stony. It is now called *Caramania*, as the last Province of the *Caramanian* Kingdom, which held out for those falling Princes, when the rest was conquered by the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* Race.

The Country laid by *Marcellinus* to be *terra dives omnibus bonis*, wealthy and fruitful of all necessities, which *Chæcæder* holdeth good, chiefly in the Eastern parts, which heretofore had the name of *Cilicia Campestris*: the Western parts lying towards *Pamphylia*, formerly called *Cilicia Aspera*, being rough and stony. But generally where the Lands lie in several, and are duly cultivated, it answereth to the former Character; being also very well watered, and having a fair and large Sea-coast for the space of three hundred miles and upwards. Which notwithstanding, it is not much traded, and but meanly inhabited: a great part of the Country lying in large and common Fields, to which none can lay any proper claim, and therefore planted only with Goats and Sheep: out of which the Commoners on all sides raise good profit by Cheese and Butter, by their

Fleeces chiefly. Here is also a good breed of oxen, which fix hundred yearly are called out for the Service of the *Grand Signeur*. But as they are profitable and useful Creatures, so they are dangerous and hurtful to them; especially those of the vulgar *Grecians* call the *Squillachi*, of a mixture between a Dog and a Wolf, which go in troops to be bold, and thewifh wihal, as they use to be upon a man as he is asleep, and leave him neither hurt, dead, nor fardel, nor any thing they can conveniently get from him.

Chief Rivers hereof are, 1 *Pyramus*, now called *Malmejra*, which rising on the North side of the *Taurus*, and forcing his passage through that Mountain, makes such a noise in falling down the precipices and rocks thereof, as resemblanceth at a great distance a deep of Thunder. 2 *Orymagus*, 3 *Calicadnus*, spoken of before. 4 *Cidnus*, which riseth in the *Anti-Taurus*; a River of a violent course, and so cold a water, that *Pliny* writes, it cureth the Gout: the waters of which proved very dangerous to *Alexander* the Great, the coldness of them striking violently into his stomach, and deadly to *Frederick* the first Emperor of the *Germans*, as he here bathed himself, the violence of the stream tripping up his heels, and he not able to recover, was presently drowned.

Of their chief Hills I need add nothing, having it already said that the Country is parted by *Amanus* *Syria*, and by *Taurus* it self from *Psidia* and *Armenia Minor*; not ease of entrance by the first, but very difficult by the last: The *Streights* thereof called *the Cilicia*, or the Ports of *Cilicia*, being indeed high, and almost impassable, that had they been guarded or regarded by the *Persians*, as they should have been, the Progress of *Alexander's* Victories might have checked there. But *Asperus*, who had the charge of them, durst not stand his ground, and so left them open to the Enemy, whom by those Ports he put into the possession of the Kingdom of *Persia*. With better faith, though no better fortune, did the Souldiers of *Persennius Niger* make good these *Streights* against the Emperor *Severus*, the Monarchy of the World lying the second time at the stake, and to be tried for in this Cock-pit. For the *Nigrians* possessed of these *Streights* and Entrances, courageously withstood the *Severian* party, till at last a sudden Tempest of Rain and Thunder continually darning in their faces (as if the very Heavens had been armed against them) they were fain to leave the Passes, and therewith the Victory to the adverse Faction: having sold that at the loss of 20000 of their own lives, which *Alexander* had the happiness or the hap to buy for nothing.

In the borders of this Country towards *Pamphylia*, lived a Tribe or Nation called the *Soli*, originally of *Armenia*: But in long tract of time diffused from converse and communication with their Countrymen, they spoke that Language so corruptly, that from their barbarous manner of pronunciation, and as rude explication, came the word *Solacismus*. Yet amongst these were born three men of eminent note, that is to say, *Cyprius* the Philosopher, *Philemon* and *Aratus* the Poets; out of the Writings of which last, *St. Paul* vouchsafeth to use this Passage, *1<sup>o</sup> 2<sup>o</sup> 3<sup>o</sup> 4<sup>o</sup> 5<sup>o</sup> 6<sup>o</sup> 7<sup>o</sup> 8<sup>o</sup> 9<sup>o</sup> 10<sup>o</sup> 11<sup>o</sup> 12<sup>o</sup> 13<sup>o</sup> 14<sup>o</sup> 15<sup>o</sup> 16<sup>o</sup> 17<sup>o</sup> 18<sup>o</sup> 19<sup>o</sup> 20<sup>o</sup> 21<sup>o</sup> 22<sup>o</sup> 23<sup>o</sup> 24<sup>o</sup> 25<sup>o</sup> 26<sup>o</sup> 27<sup>o</sup> 28<sup>o</sup>*. That blessed Apostle thought himself never the worse Preacher, for being brought up in humane Learning at the feet of *Gamaliel*, nor held it any disparagement to the Influences of the Holy Ghost, to make use of it in his *Sermons* and divine Discourses: and therefore to prevent those Cavils which ignorance or misprision might chance to make in times succeeding, he hath

with three vouchsafed the words and testimony of the *Heathen* Writers; viz. of *Epimæides*, *Tit. 1. 1. 212*, of *Menander*, 1 *Cor. 15. 233*, and that of *Aratus*, before mentioned. So lawful is it in this kind, for those of the *Christian* *Israel* to rob the *Egyptians*; and to make this *Scripture* serviceable to her *Militrils Sarah*.

Principal Cities of this Province, 1 *Sola*, the habitation of the *Soli*, before remembered; by some said to be built by *Solon* the *Athenian*: but generally affirmed to have been planted by those of *Rhodes* and *Arica*: militarily called *Heliospolis*, by *Qu. Curtius*, which is as much in *Latine* as *Solis Civitas*, or the City of the Sun. On the site hereof then decayed and ruinous (the Town having been destroyed by *Tigranes* the *Armenian* King in his late War against the *Romans*) did *Pompey* build his City of *Pompeipolis* after his victory over the Pirates; who not only Lured it over the Seas, and consequently obstructed Trade and Merchandize, but wasted and spoiled the Villages of *Asia* itself. *Pompey* being Victor, and having inflicted exemplary punishment on the Ring-leaders, with the rest, peopled this new Town, and the Country adjoining, allowing them competent possessions, lest want and necessity should again enforce them to the like courses. An action truly commendable, and worthy to great a Captain, rather to take an occasion of offending from the people, than after offence done, to punish them. *Hyblodæus* in the *Utopia*, somewhat bitterly, though perhaps not unjustly, inveigheth against the Laws of these, *Quem multo potius providendum fuerit, ut aliquis esset princeps vite; ne cuiusque sit tam dira furandi primus, deinde perniciis necessitas*. Whereas (saith he) the Laws ought to make provision for putting men into some orderly course of life, and not let them run upon the necessity of stealing first, and then being hanged for it. 2 *Tarsus*, the birth-place of *St. Paul* the Apostle; for that sufficiently famous, were there nothing else to commend it to consideration: But it was a Town withal of great note and consequence, the Metropolis first, of all *Cilicia*; and after the division of *Cilicia Prima*. The Inhabitants thereof had the privilege of *Roman* Citizens. Situate in a goodly Plain on the banks of the *Cydusus*, and by some said to be the work of *Sardanapalm* the last King of *Assyria*; it being engraven on a Monument erected to him, that in one day he had built this *Tarsus*. And 3 *Antiochia*, another City of this Country, near the Sea-side, and not far from the Promontory *Zephyrium*. Of the same date (if the said Monument speak truth), but neither of the same fortune nor continuance, that being utterly decayed, but *Tarsus* still remaining of great wealth and strength. Much spoken of in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, and in the stories of the *Caramanian* and *Ottoman* Kings. And though the *Tarsians* to ingratiate themselves with *Julius Cæsar*, would needs have their Country called *Julioptolis*; yet the old name survived the new, and it is to this day called *Tarsus* or *Tarsissa* by the vulgar *Grecians*; but *Hamsi* by the *Turks*, as *Belonius* telleth us. 4 *Adena*, the *Adena* of *Protolyma*, a large Town, but unvalled, instead whereof defended by a very strong Castle. Situate in a fruitful soil, both for Wine and Corn, wherewith the Town is always furnished for the use of those that are to travel over the *Taurus*; who commonly take in here three days provision. 5 *Epiphania*, the birth-place of *George* the *Arian* Bishop of *Alexandria*; thrust on the world of late by some learned men (but of more industry than judgment) for *George* the *Cappadocian* Martyr. 6 *Mysus*, as famous, or infamous rather, for giving title to *Theodosius Mysus*, Bishop hereof, and a great Patron of the *Nestorian* heresies, in the time of *St. Chrysostome*. The City otherwise of good note, and

of great consequence, in the course of the *Roman* Wars, described at large by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, 7 *Isso*, upon a spacious Bay, called hence *Sinus Issus*, near the borders of *Syria*; memorable for the great battle here fought between *Alexander* and an handful (in comparison) of his *Macedonians*, and that vast Army of *Darius*, (himself then in prison) consisting of 60000 undisciplined *Assians*; whereof so many lost their lives, that the dead bodies seemed to have buried the ground. For partly by the unskillfulness of the Commanders, who chose to fill a place to fight in, that they could make no use of their mighty numbers; and partly by the effeminateness of the *Asian* Souldiers, unable to endure the charge, there fell that day no fewer than 200000 of the *Persians*, 40000 of them being taken Prisoners, amongst them the Wives and Daughters of *Darius*, and not above 100 of the *Alexandrians*, if *Qu. Curtius* be not partial in relating the Story. A victory which assured *Alexander* of his former purchases, and opened a way unto the rest: the *Persians* not being able to make head again, till he had pierced into the bowels of their Empire, and added *Syria*, and *Egypt* to his former Conquests. Of so great consequence is one full Victory to the toiling and getting of a Kingdom. This Town it self now called *Alisceda*, and the great Bay on which it standeth *Gulph d'Alisceda*. 8 *Alexandria*, built by command of the Conquerour near the place of battle, commodiously for Trade, as upon the Sea; but otherwise in a Fenny and Boggy soil, which make the air there to be very unwholsome to men not used to it: little now remaining, but a few houses on the Sea-shore built of straw and mud, hardly affording it the reputation of a sorry Village; and would not long continue such, but that it is the nearest Haven to the Town of *Aleppo* (whereof more in *Syria*) which draweth unto it the rest of some *Christian* Factors, whose houses are of Clay and Timber; but of them not many. The Town at first called *Alexandria*, as before was said, diminished first to *Alexandretta*, now called *Scanderone*. 9 *Nicopolis*, another of *Alexander's* foundations, so named in memory of his great Victory before mentioned. 10 *Amavracia*, a City of great Antiquity in the time of *Strabo*, and the Metropolis, of the Province of *Cilicia Secunda*. 11 *Heraclea*, mentioned by *Belonius*, and by him placed in a fruitful and well-cultivated Plain, at the foot of Mount *Taurus*, a fair and large Town, as he reporteth it, and distant from *Adana* towards the Northwest about three days journey. But I find no such Town in *Strabo*, or *Protolyma*, or any other of the Ancients. 12 *Scanduloro*, a City of *Cilicia Aspera*, or that part of *Cilicia*, which lieth towards *Pamphylia*, heretofore with the adjoining Territory governed as a State distinct, when all the rest of this Country was under the Kings of *Caramania*: against whom the Prince hereof, being a *Mahometan*, had preserved his liberties, by the assistance of the Knights of *Rhodes*, and the Kings of *Cyprus*. And when the *Caramanian* Kingdom was subdued by *Bajazet*, he made so good conditions for himself, that he had other lands and estates in the *Lesser Asia* assigned to him in exchange for this, and so surrendered this to the will of the Conquerour.

The first Inhabitants of this Country were of the Progeny of *Tarshish*, the son of *Javan*, by whom, or some of his posterity, to preserve his memory, the City of *Tarsus* was first built. Increased in tract of time by some new Colonies out of the Neighbouring parts of *Syria*, it followed for the most part the fortunes of its successive together subject to the *Assyrians*, *Persians*, and *Macedonians*. In the declining fortunes of the house of *Seleucus* they began to stand upon their own legs, and might have continued longer in so good a posture, had they not

hearkened to ill Counsels. Tempted by *Mithridates* to join with him against the *Romans*, of whose greatness all the Eastern States were grown very jealous, and being naturally good Sea-faring men, they began together with the *Pamphylians*, to infect the Seas. At first they ventured no further than the shores adjoining, but after emboldened with success, and finding that the *Romans* were sufficiently employed in domestic troubles, and a sharp war with *Mithridates*, fell upon the Coasts of Greece, and in fine of Italy it fell: *Publius Servilius* the *Proconsul* first employed against them, gave them an overthrow at Sea; and following his good fortune, set upon them in their Harbours and retiring places. In which pursuit he not only took from them *Phigalia*, a strong Town in *Lycia*, one of their Retreats, and others of their best and strongest *Receptacles*; but wasting the whole Country of *Cilicia*, fell upon *Isauria*, the most defensible Town thereof, which he took and ravaged. No sooner was *Servilius* departed home, but they broke out more violently than before: filling all the Creeks and Ports of the Eastern Seas with their Frigates, *Brigantines* and other light *Privateer* Vessels, in which that *Pompey* himself thought it to be an action not unbecoming his greatness, undertook the War against them. And he pursued it to such purpose, that having armed 500 sail of all sorts, and stored his ships with 130000 men, he set upon them all at once; and in the space of one sole month made an end of the War. An action not sufficiently to be wondered at, if we consider either the speediness of it, done in so little time as a month; or the cheapness of the Victory, purchased without the loss of one *Roman* Vessel; or finally, the importance and consequence of it, the Pirates from that time not daring to infect the Seas; and all *Cilicia* subjected to the State of *Rome*. How they were afterwards disposed of hath been shewn already. After this they did very good service unto *Pompey* in his War against *Caesar*; of whom thus *Lucan*, reckoning up his Allies and Aids:

*Atque Cilix iusta, non Pirata, carini.*  
And the reformed *Cilician* now  
No Pirate, in his fleet did row.

Nor were they pliant unto him only, as unto their Conqueror; but generally for sale and tractable in the time of *Cicero*, one of the first *Proconsuls* or Lord Deputies which were sent to govern them: that he writ merrily to *Rome*, that he found all quiet in his Province: save that the *Panthers* (some of which, one of his Friends had prayed him to send to *Rome*, for the adorning of his triumph) were for fear of him fled into *Pamphylia*. At the first conquest by the *Romans*, it was divided only into *Campistrem* and *Tracheam*, as was said before; of which *Campistria* was reduced immediately to the form of a Province. *Aspera* or *Trachea* was a while continued under the Government of Kings, till the time of *Vespasian*, and then made a Province as the others. By the succeeding Emperours, on some reason of State (if not those intimated in *Lycania*) the number of Provinces being increased (though the bounds of the Empire were no larger than they had been formerly) the whole was divided into three: that is to say, *Cilicia prima*, taking up all *Campistria* wholly; *Cilicia secunda*, containing the *Maritime* parts of *Cilicia Aspera*; and *Isauria*, taking up the Mountainous part of this last division. Laid by the Emperor *Constantine* to the *Dioecese* of the *Orients*, and consequently subject in spiritual matters to the Patriarch of *Antioch*, where the *Præfatus* *Prætorio* *Orientis* had his usual residence. In the falling of the Eastern Empire, it was conquered by the *Saracens* in the time of *Muhamedus* or *Muavi*, the sixth *Caliph*. Continuing under their command till their declination, it was recovered by the

Greek or Eastern Emperours, and from them conquered by the *Turky* in the course of their victories. But the first race of *Turkish* Kings being worn out by the *Tartars*, and the *Aladinian* Kings ending in *Aladine* the second, it was part of the new Kingdom of *Caramanians*, continuing theirs till the destruction of that line by *Bajazet* the second, Anno 1486, by whom incorporated with the rest of the *Ottoman* Empire.

Thus having made our progress over all the *Provinces* of the *Lesser Asia*, and shewn how every one of them was made subject to the *Turkish* Tyranny: we must next draw down the succession of such *Turkish* Kings as have reigned herein, till it was wholly conquered by the Princes of the house of *Ottoman*. Concerning which we are to know in the way of Preamble, that the *Turky* having made themselves Masters of the Kingdom of *Persia*, and following their successes into *Syria* also, fell to a breach amongst themselves. For making up whereof it was once defended unto by *Asan*, the then *Persian* Sultan, that *Melech* and *Ducet*, two of his discontented Kinmen, should be incoffed in the Cities of *Aleppo* and *Damascus*, and their several Territories with whatsoever they could conquer from the *Caliph* of *Egypt*, possessed at that time of most part of *Syria*, *Cilicia*, and some of the adjoining Provinces. It was also then agreed upon, that a third, but nearer Kinman, called *Cutis Mefes*, another of the *Lords* of the opposite faction; should have leave to conquer for himself, whatsoever he could win from the *Christian* Princes: And he accordingly being furnished with a competent Army, subdued the Provinces of *Media* and *Armenia* in the *Greater Asia*, with *Cappadocia*, *Pamphylia*, and *Bithynia* in *Asia Minor*. Which, and the rest of their affairs, take here in the ensuing Catalogue of

#### The Turkish Kings in Asia Minor of the Sultanian Family.

1075. 1. *Cutis Mefes*, Nephew to *Tungulshir*, the first *Persian* Sultan of the *Turky*, won *Media*, part of *Armenia* Major, *Cappadocia*, *Isauria* and *Bithynia*.
2. *Solyman*, Son of *Cutis Mefes*, lost a while dispossessed of most of his estates by the *Western Christians*, in their first passage towards the *Holy Land*; the Northern parts of which by those *Christians* were restored to the *Christian* Empire, never recovered afterwards by the Kings of this house.
3. *Nahomet*, the son of *Solyman*, recovered some part of his estates in the *Lesser Asia*; but ousted of them, and subdued by
4. *Musaf*, Sultan, or Lord Deputy of *Isauria* for the Kings of *Damascus*; and of the line *Selzucian* Family, who was thereby possessed of all the *Turkish* Provinces in the *Lesser Asia*.
5. *Cassiflan*, the son of *Musaf* (to whom his Father left *Iconium*, with the adjacent Provinces) wrested *Amasia*, and *Angora*, his brother *Jagupasan*; *Sebastia*, and *Celaria*, from his brother *Dodune*: which with their several Territories were bequeathed unto them, by the will of their Father. He overthrew the Emperor *Emanuel Comnenus*, and united *Phrygia* to his Kingdom.
6. *Reueratine*, the third son of *Cassiflan*, having dispossessed his three brethren, *Musaf*, *Cappadocia*, of the estates left them by their Father, became sole Monarch of all the *Turkish* Provinces in the *Lesser Asia*. In the latter end of whose reign, the

*Tartarian Chom* having driven the *Turky* out of *Persia*, many of them under the conduct of *Aladine*, a Prince of the same *Selzucian* Family, joyined themselves to their Countrymen here, with whose help they won *Cilicia* from the *Grecian* Emperours, who in the reign of *Calo-Jhanus*, (the *Turky* being then embroiled by the *Western Christians*) had not long before regained it and after the decease of *Reueratine*, advanced him to the whole estate.

#### The Turkish Kings in Asia Minor, of the race of Aladine.

7. *Aladine*, descended in a direct line from *Cassiflan*, the last *Turkish* Sultan in *Persia*, having with many of his Nation seated himself in *Cilicia*, first made *Sebastia*, one of the Cities thereof, his chief seat or residence: which after the death of *Reueratine*, he removed to *Iconium*, as the ancient Regal City of the former Kings.
8. *Azalide*, by some called *Azadine*, eldest son of *Aladine*, wasted the most part of his reign in wars with his brother *Jahbatine*, whom at last he forced into exile.
9. *Jahbatine*, on the death of his brother possessed the Kingdom, slain afterwards in single combat by *Theodoros Lascaris*, Emperor of the *Greeks*, at *Nice*.
10. *Jahbatine II.* Son of the former, driven out of his Kingdom by the *Tartars*, and died in exile: the *Turky* becoming Tributaries and Vassals unto the *Tartarian*.
11. *Musaf*, and *Cei-cubades*, of the same *Selzucian* Family (but whether the sons of the second *Jahbatine*, I am not able to say) substituted in his place; as Tributaries to the conquering *Tartars*.
12. *Aladine II.* Son of *Cei-cubades*, succeeded his Father in the Kingdom, but as Vassal and Liegeman to the *Tartars*. After whose death, leaving no issue of his body, the great Princes of his Family, divided amongst them his Dominions. To *Saracban* fell *Æolia*, *Isauria*, and part of *Lydia*, from him named *Saracban*, *Saracban*, or *Saracha-III.* to *Aidin* the rest of *Lydia*, *Phrygia* Major, and the greatest part of the *Greater Mysia*, from him called *Aidin*, or *Aidin-III.* to *Carafus*, the *Lesser Phrygia*, with the rest of *Mysia*, from him denominated *Carafan*, or *Carafa-III.* to the Family of the *Isfendiars*, the Cities of *Heraclea*, *Sinope*, and that part of *Pontus* which lie next to *Bithynia*. There were also lesser *Toparchies* or subdivisions, from whence we find a Prince of *Smyrna*, a second of *Amasia*, a third of *Amisus*, a fourth of *Sandalar*, besides many others. But the main body of the Estate was seized by *Caraman*, who for his share had the whole Provinces of *Lycia*, *Lycania*, *Pisidia*, *Pamphylia*, *Isauria*, *Cilicia*, with the Regal City of *Iconium*, the greatest part of *Caria*, (the rest of it appertaining to the Prince of *Mentezia*), with part of *Cappadocia*, and *Armenia Minor*, and some Towns in *Phrygia*, containing in his Family for as many descents (as either of the former had held before) in great power and lustre, under

#### The Turkish Kings in Asia Minor, of the house of Caraman.

13. *Caraman*, the first raiser of this Family, Contemporary with *Ottoman* the first King of that race.
14. *Aladine*, son of *Caraman*, and Son-in-law of *Amurath*, the first of the house of *Ottoman*, by whom subdued, but pardoned and resto-

red unto his Estate, on the humble entreaties of his wife.

15. *Aladine II.* son of the former, subdued by *Bajazet* the first, and hanged by *Tertumshir*, one of *Bajazet's* great Commanders.
16. *Mahomet*, son of *Aladine* the second, recovered his Kingdom on the death of *Bajazet*, vanquished and led captive by the mighty *Tamerlane*. Afterwards warred upon and vanquished by *Atahmet* the son of *Bajazet*, deemed his peace, by yielding up unto him many of his principal Towns: and was finally slain at the siege of *Attalia*.
17. *Ibrahim*, the son of *Mahomet*, and son-in-law of *Amurath* the second, against whom unadvisedly raising War, he was forced to submit and become his Tributary: after whose death, rebelling against *Mahomet* the Great, he was then also vanquished, and a reconciliation made betwixt them.
18. *Ibrahim II.* by some called *Piramus*, the son of *Ibrahim* the first, supported *Zemet*, brother of *Bajazet* the second in his War against him for which *Bajazet* having settled his affairs, invaded and subdued the Kingdom of *Caramania*, killed the unfortunate King in battle, and so united that Estate unto the rest of the Dominions of the house of *Ottoman*. The strange success of which house, from the first rising of it to these present times, shall be deferred till we come unto *Turcomania*; from whence this Nation first attempted and achieved the conquest of *Persia*, and which only of all their large possessions doth retain any thing of their name. In the mean time we will survey the Islands of this *Lesser Asia*, and so proceed to their possessions in the *Greater*, as they lie before us.

#### 19. The Province of the ASIAN ISLES.

The Province of the *ASIAN ISLES* comprehendeth all the Islands in *Asia Minor*, from the mouth of the *Hellespont* to the *Rhodus*, reckoning that for one: united first into a Province by the Emperor *Vespasian*, next reckoned as a part of the *Asian Dioecese*; and afterwards, together with the Province of the *Hellespont*, and that of *Asia* properly and specially so called, making up the peculiar or exempt jurisdiction of the *Proconsul* of *Asia*. Those of most consideration are, 1. *Tenedos*, 2. *Lesbos*, 3. *Chios*, 4. *Samos*, 5. *Cos*, 6. *Karia*, 7. *Pattara*, 8. *Clazomenae*, 9. *Rhodes*. Others of less note, having nothing memorable but their names, are scarce worth the naming.

1. *TENEDOS*, is situate at the mouth of the *Hellespont*, over against the noted Promontory called of old *Sigeum* (but now *Cape Tanizarie*) a Promontory of *Troas*, or the *Lesser Phrygia*, from which distant not above five miles. The Isle it self in circuit no more than ten swelling, with a round Mountain towards the North, in other parts level: both producing as good Wines as the best of *Greece*. It took name, as the general Tradition was, from *Tenes* the son of *Cyrenus*, King of a little City in the *Lesser Phrygia*, who being falsely accused by his Stepdame for soliciting her to that incestuous mixture which she had violently importuned, and he as piously refused, was by the command of his Father put into a chest, expedit to the mercy of the Sea, and here miraculously preserved. Here for a time he is said to reign, with great commendation for his justice; and afterwards going to the aid of the *Trojans*, to have been slain by the hand of *Achilles*: of whom therefore it was not lawful to make



gave over the Siege. At last they became subject to the Romans with the rest of Greece, and followed punctually the same change of fortunes, as did those of Lesbos, which we have spoken of before: till given by *Andronicus Paleologus*, one of the last Greek Emperours, to the *Justinians*, a noble *Græciæ* Family, affiant to him in his wars. Under them it continued as *Tributaries* to the *Turks* (after the *Turks* had made themselves Masters of *Constantinople*) to whom they annually paid eighteen thousand *Ducats*, till the year 1566. When *Solyman* the *Magnificent* picking a quarrel with them for some suspected correspondence with the Knights of *Malta*, commanded *Pial*, one of his greatest Bells, to seize the Island. And he accordingly presenting himself before the City, with a strong Fleet of eighty Gallies, did so astonish and amaze the Inhabitants of it, that without any other summons than the sight of his Navy, they surrendered themselves unto his disposing, upon *Easter-day* being the first day he came before it. Since that time it hath continued *Turkish*, save their Religion, enjoyed by them with like liberty, as in former times.

4 *SAMOS*, is on the South-east of *Chios*, distant above five miles from the shores of *Asia*, about eighty, or eighty seven in compass, environed for the most part, especially on the North-west, with inaccessible rocks, but beautified with a fair and capacious Haven; of little use by reason of *Pirates* which infested those Seas. The soil sufficiently enriched with most kind of fruits, abundantly plentiful of Oyl and Olives, but of *Vines* altogether untimured; which is the more to be admired in regard all the Islands and shores about it, produce them in so great a plenty. It stretcheth from the East to the West: and on the South part of it stood the City of *Samia*, near unto the Haven before spoken of. In former times populous, and well inhabited, as was the rest of the Island, now wholly desolate in a manner, because of the *Pirates*, and in most places very much over-grown with woods: becoming thereby very useful to those public enemies, who find here Timber enough for Shipping, and can upon the sudden put a ship to Sea, for pursuit of their *Robberies*. The chief commodity it affordeth besides those above, is a medicinal Earth, useful for *Chirurgery* and *Physick*: of which in former times were those Vessels made, called *Vasa Samia*, in great request amongst the Romans.

Anciently it had the names of *Dryusa*, *Anabemusa*, *Melampylus*, and *Cyparissia*: outworn by that of *Samos*, which it still retaineth. Memorable in old times for the birth of *Juno*, of one of the *Sibyls*, hence called *Samia*; and finally of the wife-man *Pythagoras* (a philosopher than any of the seven wise Masters so renowned amongst them) who first brought Philosophy into Greece, and from thence into Italy. Once a free Commonwealth of no small esteem, the Inhabitants whereof are mentioned by *Heraclides*, in his Books of the several Commonwealths then being afterwards made subject to the Tyrant *Polycrates*, a man so fortunate, that for a long time he never fell into any mischance. Fearing lest such a long calm would bring on a tempest, he let fall into the Sea a most precious Ring, by him deservedly esteemed, that so it might be said he had some misfortunes. Which after he had found again in the belly of a fish, brought accidentally to his Table, he was overcome by *Orantes* a *Persian*, and brought to a miserable death. Leaving a notable example, that fortune is certain in nothing but uncertainties; and like a Bee with a sharp sting, hath always some misery following in the train of a long concatenation of felicity. From this time forwards it ran the same fortune with the rest of these Islands, subject successively to the great Monarchies in former times, as of late times

to the *Venetians*, *Greeks*, and *Turks*, who do now enjoy it.

5 *ICARIA*, (now called *Nicaria*) lyeth not far from *Samos*, to the West-ward of it, narrow, but extended out in length; the whole compass seven and thirty miles: neighboured by two great Rocks, or little Islands of old called *Melanibis*, now the *Fernaces*: formidable at all times to Mariners, in the night especially. Meantime inhabited at the present, though abounding in passages, and yielding sufficiency of corn; Havenless, and therefore less frequented, yet that defect supplied by commodious Roads. In former times called *Dolichis*, then *Macris*, after *Ischisla*: which name it held till the flight of *Dædalus* out of *Crete*, who justly fearing the anger of *Minos*, for being *Pandor* to his wife, in her loves with *Taurus*, secretly with *Icarus* his son, fled out of that Island. And because he would be sure to out-strip the *Romers* who pursued him, he added fails unto his Boat, which it is said he first invented. But *Icarus*, coming after in another Bark, delighted with the new device, clapped on too much Canvas, and bearing too great a sail, was here cast away. Hence the new name both to this Island, and the Seas adjoining to it, and the occasion of the Fable of *Dædalus* putting wings upon his shoulders, when he fled from *Crete*; and of his flying too high, whereby the wax melted which his wings were fastened with, and so he perished in the water. Of which thus *Ovid*.

*Dum petit infirmis nimium sublimis Icarus*  
*Icarus, Icaris nomina fecit aquæ.*

In English thus,

Whilst *Icarus* weak wings too high did four  
He fell, and gave name to the *Icarian* shores.

6 *PATMOS*, now called *Palmatza*, is situate on the South of the other two; a little Island, not above 30 miles in compass. Mountainous, but indifferently fruitful, especially of wheat and pulse; of other commodities, and fruits, not so well provided. On one of these Mountains stands a Town of the same name with the Island; having on the top thereof a Monastery of *Greek Caloites*; and on the bottom a fair Haven (I mean in reference to the Island.) Forty fails of Ships are said to long unto it; by the trading whereof they bring in those provisions which the soil affordeth not: the soil about the Town being so incomparably barren, that nothing groweth on or near it, but on such earth as is brought thither from other places. Unto this Island (as to others in other parts of the world) did the Roman Emperours use to confine offenders. A punishment laid by *Domitian* on *St. John the Divine*, who in this place writ his Revelation to the Churches of *Asia*. So much the Text affirms for certain, as to the writing of it in this Island. And the Inhabitants by tradition point unto an house on the North-side of the Town, in which it was written, and not far off the Cave where it was revealed. Both places equally honoured by the *Greeks* and *Latines*. They also shew a dead mans hand, which they ascribe to be his, the nails whereof grow again as they cut. But the *Arabians* (saith *Maginus*) claim it for the hand of one of their Prophets. Let them dispute the controversy, whilst we halt to

7 *CLAROS*, another Island not far off, containing about 40 miles in compass. Well stored with commodious Harbours, but very mountainous, some of the hills of such an height, that from the tops thereof, the City of *Ephesus* in *Asia*, (though distant at least eighty miles) may be easily seen. It is now called *Calano*. Neighbouring by *Lero* (of old called *Ileron*) a little Island not above eighteen miles in circuit, but very populous, inhabited both by *Greeks* and *Turks*, and furnishing the neighbouring Countries

Countries with some store of *Alices*. Sacred in former times was *Claros* to *Apollon*, reckoned by him amongst his honours, in his brags to *Daphne*: where he declares,

*Mhi Delphica relas,*

*Et Claros, & Tenedos, Pataraque Regia servit.*  
Tharisto to lay,

The folk of *Delphos*, *Tenedos*, and *Clare*,

And Royal *Patara*, my Vassals are.

8 *COOS*, *COS*, or *COUS*, for by all these names it was called of old, is situate over against *Caria*, in the very bottom of the *Ægean*, that is to say, in that part thereof which is called *Mare Myrionum*, the *Myrian Sea*. A Sea so called, as some say, from one *Myrtilus*, Coachman or *Charioteer* of *Oenomaus*, who having betrayed his race with *Pelops*, and importunate for his reward, was by *Pelops* precipitated into this Sea. *Pliny* less probably conceiveth that it took name from *Myrtus*, a little Island not far from *Eubœa*, a little too far off to extend its name to the shores of *Caria*. And therefore considering that *Lydia* anciently was called *Myrtus*, and that in those times *Æolia* and *Ionis*, lying on this Sea, were accompanied but as parts thereof, I think we may resolve with more probability, that it derived this name from that *Lydian Myrtus*.

In this Sea stands the Isle of *Cous*, now called *Lange*, affording Saylor as they pass by a most beautiful prospect, lying for the most part flat and level, but swelling towards the East with some graceful Mountains, out of which issue many sweet and pleasant springs to refresh the Island which maketh it more than ordinary fruitful. Productive of *Cypress* trees, *Turpentine*, and sundry others, both delightful and medicinal; but most especially celebrated for those rich wines, which the Good fellows of *Rome* so much loved to quaff, called *Vinum Cos*. It is in compass 70 miles, having a Town of the same name, in the suburbs whereof stood anciently the Temple of *Asclepius*, famous and rich with the offerings of those, who having by his assistance (as they supposed) recovered health, came hither to make payment of their vows, and express their gratitude. It is now fortified with a strong Castle, held by a Garrison of *Turks*: and besides this two Villages only in the Island, and both inhabited by *Greeks*.

In elder times it had the name of *Mevepe*, *Caria*, and *Nymphaea*, and at last *Cos*. Memorable in being the Country of many famous men who were here born; viz. of *Hippocrates*, the Reviver of *Physick*, then almost decayed, who is hence called *Hippocrates Cos*. 2 *Sinias*, a Physician also. 3 *Aviston*, a Peripatetic Philosopher. 4 *Pileatus*, as good an Orator, as a Poet. 5 *Nictas*, who for a time oppressed the liberty of this people. And 6 of *Apelles*, the famous Painter; who to express his Art in the Picture of *Venus*, (sitting naked out of the Sea) assembled together all the most beautiful women of this Island, uniting in that piece their divided perfections. Which famous piece being afterwards hanged up in the Temple of *Stomalime*, one of the principal of this Island, was thence conveyed to *Rome* by *Augustus*, and there dedicated to *Cæsar*, as the mother of the *Julian* family: the *Gæns* in regard hereof, being caled of a great part of their annual tributes. Not much less memorable for that fine thin stuff (such as now called *Tissanis*) so much in use amongst the chief Ladies of *Rome*: which at once they then clothed and naked. *Periclitus* *astutus* *visit*, *ita*, *ut munda conspici p'sint*, as my Author hath it. These they called *Vestimenta Cos*, and *Vestes Cos*, so often mentioned by the Poets, especially in their *Amatoria*; as *Cæcia Pællis* in *Tibullus*; *Indue me Cos* in *Propertius*; *Sive eris Cos*, saith the Poet *Ovid*. So in others also; too many, and too long to be added here. I pass to

9 *CARPATHOS*, situate on the South of *Caria*, in the *Mediterranean*, from this Island, called hereabouts the *Carpathian Sea*. A rugged and unpleasant foil, full of difficult Mountains, but those Mountains stored with quarries of most excellent Marble. In circuit about 60 miles, extending more in length than breadth. Heretofore beautified with four Cities, and thence named *Te-trapolis*. But three of the four Cities are long since perished, that of *Carpathos* being still remaining, and still the principal of the Island; both now called *Scarpanto*. Some other Towns it hath all along the shore, and every one of them furnished with some Port or Haven; but small, and for the most part very unsafe. Situate in the middle as it were betwixt *Crete* and *Rhodes*. It hath continued hitherto in the possession of the State of *Venice* (if not taken from them very lately); to whom being given with one of the Islands of these *Græciæ* Seas, at the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western forces, it had the fortune or felicity to continue theirs, when almost all the residue were subdued by the *Turks*. The people *Greek*, of the communion of that Church, notwithstanding their subjection to a state of *Italy*.

10 *RHODES*, situate in the *Rhodian* or *Carpathian* Sea, lyeth over-against the coast of *Lydia* in *Asia Minor*, from which distant about 20 miles. Formerly called *Ophiasia*, *Alteria*, *Eubœa*, *Trinacria*, *Pæssa*, *Corymbia*, *Atalyria*, and at last *Mactaria*, it settled finally and fortunately in the name of *Rhodes*. So named by the *Greeks* from the abundance of *Roses*, which the soil produced. *Rhodes* in that language signifying a *Rose*, the Isle of *Roses*, as it were: but as the Poets say of *Rhoda*, a Nymph of these Seas, here deflowered by *Apollon*, or rather of *Rhoda*, one of the daughters of *Apollon* begot on *Venus*. For one of them thus declareth;

*Insula Dida Rhododæ Sole & Cypride nata est.*

*Rhoda*, from whom this Isle took name.  
Of *Venus* and *Apollon* came.

The Island 140 miles in compass, enriched with a most temperate air, and a fertile soil, producing fruits in very great plenty, full of excellent pastures, adorned with trees which always do continue green; and in a word, so blest with the gifts of nature, that it gave occasion to the Fable of those *Golden Showers*, which were once said to have fallen upon it. The wines hereof so excellent, and so rich of taste, that by the Romans they were used in their second courses, or reserved for the sacrifices of the Gods, as too good for mortals, as affirmed by *Virgil* in the *Georgicks*. The cause of which perpetual flourishing, and continual spring, is to be ascribed to the powerful influences of the *Sun*, so dearly cherishing this Island, or so much in love with it, that it is constantly affirmed, that no day passeth wherein he shinneth not clearly on it, be the air in all other places never so much over-cast with clouds, or obscured by mists. Feigned for that cause to have been naturally a meer *Maris*, altogether inhabitable, if not covered with waters; till loved by *Phæbus*, and erected above the waves by his vigorous influences.

Of the People we shall speak anon. Look we in the mean time on the places of most observation. 1 *Lindus*, (now *Lindo*) a petty town but formerly of more esteem; of note in those times for the Temple consecrated to *Minerva*, by *Danaus* King of *Ægypt*, landing here when he fled out of that Kingdom. As also for the birth of *Chares*, the *Architect* of the huge *Colossus*, whereof more presently; but specially for the nativity of *Cleobulus*, one of the seven wise-men of Greece: the other six being *Solon* of *Athens*, *Periander* of *Corinth*, *Chilon* of *Sparta*, *Bias* of *Priene*, *Thales* of *Miletum*, and *Pittacus* of *Mitylene*. Seven men of whom the *Greeks* most immenely bragged, as if the

World could neither afford them equals, or an equal number: for which decided handily by *Ladantius*, an old *Christian* Writer, who coasts their paucity, and calteth it a miserable and calamitous age, *In quo septem soli fuerunt qui hominum vocabula mererentur*; in which there were more than seven who deserved to be accounted men. 2. *Rhodes*, anciently, as now the chief City of it, the Island from hence taking name, and formerly, as well as in latter times, depending on the fortunes and strength hereof. No place in elder times held superior to it, for the convenience of the Haven, magnificent buildings, delightful Orchards, and other excellencies. Situate on the East part of the Isle, on the declining of an hill, and near the Sea, where it enjoyeth a safe and common Haven: treble walled, fortified with thirteen Turrets, and five strong Bulwarks, besides divers Scones, and other out-works; this Town, and *Famagusta* in the Isle of *Cyprus*, being conceived to be the two strongest holds in the *Turkish* Empire. In former times, one of the principal Universities of the Roman Empire, this *Rhodes*, *Marfilius*, *Tarsus*, *Athens*, and *Alexandria*, being reckoned the old Academies of that Monarchy. And to this Town, as a most noted place of Study, *Tiberius* (afterwards Emperor) did withdraw himself, when *Augustus* had declared his two Nephews *Lucius* and *Caius*, for his Heirs: pretending only a desire to improve himself in the ways of *Literature*; whereas the true cause was his envy at their pre-eminence. Honour'd in those times with that huge *Colossus*, one of the seven Wonders of the World, made by *Chares* of *Lindus*, before mentioned. Composed of Brass, in height seventy Cubits, every finger of it being as great as an ordinary man; and consecrated to the Sun, as the proper Deity of the Island. Twelve years in making, and having stood but 66 years was pulled down in an instant by an Earthquake, which terribly shook the whole Island. The *Rhodian* being forbid by an Oracle to erect it again (or possibly pretending such an Oracle to give that charge) yet held the brass and other materials off (in a manner) sacred. Not meddled with, nor scirefully purloined till *Mnasius*, the General of *Ojman*, the *Mohometan* Caliph, finding in himself no such scruple of conscience, (after he had subdued this Island) made a prey hereof, loading nine hundred Camels with the very brass of it. From this *Colossus* was the Island sometimes called *Colossia*, and the people *Colossians*: not those *Colossians* (as some have very vainly thought) to whom *St. Paul* writ his Epistle, those being of *Colosse*, a Town of the *Greater Phrygia*, as hath been no ed. Here was also in this City anciently a Temple of *Bacchus*, enriched with many presents both of *Greeks* and *Romans*, of both which People the *Rhodian* were then held in a fair esteem; but the God and the good *Wine* in greater Towns of less note, are 3. *Vilanova*, 4. *Rassicare*, and sometimes others, but as little memorable.

This Island was first peopled by *Dadantius* the son of *Javan*, and the Grand-child of *Japhet*, whom the *Greeks* call commonly, but corruptly, *Rhodian*; mistaking the Hebrew Letter *Daleth* for that of *Reph*, letters so like as easily it might draw them to that mistake. Finding this Island too narrow for him, he left here a Colony, and with the main of his people passed into *Greece*; where he planted the Country of *Epirus*, as hath there been said. Those which staid here being mistakenly called *Rhodian* (or called so by the *Greeks*, not looking with too curious eyes into their Antiquities, from the abundance of *Rhodes* here growing) making the best use of their Haven, and other the advantages of their situation, became so expert in maritime affairs, that by *Flours* they are styled *Populus nauticus*, and that not only in the way of Trade and Merchandize, but of power and govern-

ment: holding for many years the command of these Seas, and prescribing Laws for the Reiglement of Navigation. Which being called the *Rhodian* Laws, became the general Rule for deciding marine causes, and ordering the affairs of Sea, in all the parts and Provinces of the *Roman* Empire: and so continued till supplanted in these Western parts by the Laws of *Oleron*. Fearful of falling under the *Macedonians*, they applied themselves unto the *Romans*, whom first they aided in their wars against *Philip*, the Father of *Perseus*; and afterwards in that also against *Antiochus*. Rewarded for this last service with *Lycia* and *Caria*, two of the *Asian* Provinces, which *Antiochus* was to leave on his composition; they became so faithfully affected to the State of *Rome*, that when all the other Islands of the *Mediterranean* and *Egean* Seas revolted to *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, this only adhered unto the *Romans*. Proud either of their strength at Sea, or of those good offices, they began to take upon them as *Mediators*, and thought themselves fit men to advise their Masters. Grown troublesome by their frequent interpositions, and losing much of their esteem by such impertinencies, they began to grow jealous of the *Roman*, and incline to *Perseus* King of *Macedon*: whose Father they before opposed with their utmost power. A change which *Paterculus* expressed with some admiration. *Rhodium ipsi fidelissimi antea Romanis, dubia iam sui promissum in Regis partes visum sunt*, as his words there are. But yet they held for them against *Mithridates*, before was said, and served their turn on all occasions, until insensibly they betrayed their liberty to the power of their friends and of *Confederates* and *Allies*, became their Vassals. Made by *Vespasian* into a Province with three of the Isles, the Governour or President of that Province fixing here his residence, as the chief of those Islands; which gave the title of Metropolitan to the Bishop of *Rhodes*. Under that Empire it continued (or under that of *Constantinople* after the division) till the year 1124: when taken from the *Greeks* by the State of *Traite*; again recovered by the *Greeks*, in the time of their Emperor *John Ducas*, then residing at *Nice*. Won from the *Greeks* by the *Turks*, the Knights of *St. John* of *Hierusalem*, being utterly driven out of *Asia*, possessed themselves of it, by the favour of *Emmanuel* the then Emperor, who aided them in the conquest, Anno 1508. *Rhodes* proving bad neighbours to the *Turkish* Tyrants, whom they ceased not to insult upon all occasions, they were many times in vain invaded; *Mohomet* the Great, famous for taking *Constantinople*, and the Empire of *Trebizond*, spending some time before their City, with both loss and flame. At the last Anno 1522, it was again besieged by *Solyman* the Magnificent, *Liladimus* *Viktor* being then great Master, who did as much in defence hereof as policy and puissance could extend unto. But multitude in the end prevailed, and upon *Christine* day, the *Turk* entered *Rhodes* as Conquerors; though possibly he might have fled as *Pyrrhus* once said (of his Victory against the *Romans*): that such another Victory would have quite undone him. Since that a Province of the *Turks*, by whom, and by some *Jews* banished out of *Spain*, the City of *Rhodes* is wholly inhabited: the *Christians* which are licenced to dwell in the Country, and have leave to trade there in the day time, not suffered upon pain of death to stay there all night. And we pass from the Islands of the *Asian* *Diocesis*, to the Isle of *Cyprus*, a near neighbour unto *Anatolia*, but no member of it: the rest of that *Diocesis*, and those Seas, is 11. *Paphlagonia*, 12. *Arctonia*, 13. *Buglaia*, 14. *Mynia*, 15. *Sirina*, 16. *Cypris*, and the rest, yielding but little matter of observation besides their names.

# OF C Y P R U S.

**C**YPRUS is situate in the *Syrian* and *Cilician* Seas, extended in length from East to West two hundred miles, in breadth sixty; the whole compass reckoned five hundred and fifty. Distant about sixty miles from the rocky Shores of *Cilicia* in *Asia Minor*, and about an hundred from the main Land of *Syria*; towards which it shooteth it self out with a long sharp Promontory, extending heretofore to the main Land, from which rent in former time by a violent Earthquake, as is said by *Pliny*, and worn into this narrowness by the continual working of the Sea upon it.

No place hath often changed his name, or at least had more names on the By than this. Called at first *Cetibus*, or *Cethibus*, from *Ketim* the son of *Javan*, who first planted it. 2. *Cersifin*, from the abundance of Promontories, thrusting like *Horns* into the Sea, (as the word importeth in the *Greek*); 3. *Amastusia*. 4. *Paphia*. 5. *Salaminia*: These three hail from the principal Towns in those parts heretofore. 6. *Macaria*, from the fruitfulness and felicity of it. Besides these, it hath in some times had these By-names also: as, 7. *Asperia*, from the roughness of the Soil. 8. *Colonia*, from the frequency of Hills and Mountains. 9. *Ardea*, from the Mines of Brass, which abound therein. 10. And finally, all those forgotten and laid by, it settled at last in the name of *Cyprus*. So called, say some, from the abundance of *Cypress* Trees, with which most plentifully provided; as others, from *Cyprius* a *Greek* word, signifying Concealment, because sometimes concealed by the Surges from the eye of Sailors; but most improbably said by others to take name from *Cyprus*, who founded here the City of *Apreadia*; whereas indeed six hundred years before *Cyprus* his Birth, we find it by this name in *Homere*. More rightly *Stephanus*, who deriveth it, and *Kypria* the *Myth's* *Kypria*, from *Cyprus* daughter of *Cinyras*, one of the Kings hereof, living before the *Trojan* Wars: though many mind the first comes nearest to the truth, the *Cypris* Tree not only growing here in so great abundance, but being anciently peculiar in a manner to this Island only.

But on what ground forever it was called *Cyprus*, certain I am it had the name of *Cersifin* upon very good reason: the Island or Region that I know of (for the big words of it) thrusting out so many sharp Promontories. For on the West there is, 1. The Promontory called *Acamas*, now *Capo S. Pifano*. 2. *Drepanum*, now *Trepana* and *Melechia*. 3. *Zephyrium*, or *Caput Calidani*, now *Punta Malata*. On the South, 4. *Phurium*, now *Capo Basso*. 5. *Carrion*, or *Capo della Cattri*. 6. *Gades*, or *Capo Chiti*. 7. *Throni*, or *Capo Pile*. On the East, 8. *Pendulum*, now *Capo di Griego*. 9. *Clides*, now *Capo S. Andea*. And on the North, 10. *Coronyon*, now *Capo Corniche*, besides some others of less note. Some of the

Poets give another reason of this name, as that *Venus* of olden times with the People of *Amastus* for sacrificing their Guests, should turn them into burned Cattle, *Unde etiam nomen traxere* *Cersifin*, as it is in *Ovid*, but that merely fabulous; somewhat of kin unto the Legend of *Thomas Becket*, and the *Kenfig-Lang-tail*. Yet so far we may join with *Ovid*, that the Island was not only called *Cersifin*, but that the People were also called *Cersifin*, of which there wants not proof from some other Authors; with which we need not trouble our selves, that name being altogether worn out of use, and no other but that of *Cyprus* given it in common Speech. Nor is it a matter of more strangeness, that *Cyprus* should be called by the *Greeks*, from its abundance of *Cypress* Trees; anciently and originally peculiar to this Island, as before was noted: that the same *Greeks* should give unto the neighbouring Island the name of *Rhodes*, from its great plenty of *Roses*; or to the neighbouring Continent the name of *Phoenicia*, from its great plenty of *Palm-trees*; the word so signifying in that Language.

It is situate under the fourth Climate, so that the longest day in Summer is no more than fourteen hours and a half; and for that cause the Air in Summer time exceeding hot and foully: The Soil moistened with some few Brooks, meriting rather the name of Torrents than Rivers, which being generated for the most part by rain-water, are not seldom dried up by the heat of the Sun; inasmuch that in the Reign of *Constantine* the Great, this Island was for 36 years together almost utterly forsaken, no rain falling all that time. These inconveniences notwithstanding, it is stored with such plenty of all things, that without the help of any Foreign Nation, it is of it self able to build and rig a tall Ship from the Keel to the Top-sail, and to put it to Sea furnished with all things needful for a Voyage, or a Sea-fight. It also aboundeth in Wine, Oyl, Corn, Sugar, Cotton, Honey, Wool, Turpentine, and Allom, Verdegreece, all sorts of Metals, store of Salt, Grograins, and other Commodities, whereupon this Island was once called *Macaria* (i.e. *Happy*). By reason of which wonderful affluence of all necessaries, and that variety of Pleasures (even to sensuality) which the place afforded, it was anciently consecrated unto *Venus*, who is hence called *Venus Cyprina*, and *Dea Cypr*: *Sic et diva potens Cypr* in *Horace*; and in *Ovid*,

*Falsa dies Veneris, jura celeberrima Cypro*,  
*Venerat: ipsa suis aderat Venus aenea fissis*.  
*Venus* Feels hallowed through all *Cyprus* came,  
And *Venus* with her presence grac'd the fane.  
The People hereof are war-like, strong, and nimble; of great civility and hospitality to their Neighbours, and love to Strangers of all Nations, *Jews* only excepted. For in the Empire of *Trajan*, the *Jews* inhabiting *Egypt* and the adjoining Countries, drew themselves together, and chose one *Alexander* for their Captain; under whose



conduct they entered into this Island, and laid it desolate, killing in it 240000 Persons of all Sexes and Ages; not without much blood shed vanquished and slain by *Lucius* the Emperours Lieutenant. Since which time the *Cypriots* permit no *Jew* to enter into the Island; but come he hither voluntarily, or by force of *Tempests*, they lay hands on him, and lead him presently to Execution. A hated Nation, that neither innocence can protect, or equity relieve from that cruel custom.

The Women in former times much noted for their Unchastity, to which their worshipping of *Venus* was no small incentive; it being the custom of these Women to prostitute themselves on the Shores, to the passers by: their very *Virgins* not refusing to be handfelled there, before their Marriage; either to raise their Portions by the sale of their Bodies, or else to please their Goddels with such beastly sacrifices. And if *Volaterranus* may be credited (as I think he may) the Ladies which attended on *Queen Carthage*, when she came to *Rome*, to seek for aid against *James* the Bastard, who had dispossessed her of this Kingdom, shewed themselves little chaster than those ancient *Cypriots*. Somewhat more fortunate in the Men; *Aeschylades*, the Author of the Verse so named; 2 *Xenophon*, an old Poet; 3 *Zeno*; and 4 *Apollonius*, the Philosopher; 5 *Epiphanius*, the learned Bishop of *Salamis*; and 6 above all, Saint *Barnabas*, the dear Associate of Saint *Paul*, being all Natives of this Country.

The Christian Faith was first here planted by Saint *Paul* and *Barnabas*, as the very first fruits of their Apostleship, after they had been separated to the Work of the Ministry by the Impulsion of hands, as appeareth *Acts* 13, &c. The Church hereof, by reason of the Antiquity of it, and the honour of this joint Foundation, so privileged in the best Ages of Christianity, that the Archbishop of this Island had all Prerogatives of a *Primate*, consecrated by his own Suffragan Bishops and acting in all Sacred and Ecclesiastical Affairs, without dependance on, or relation to the See of *Antioch*, whereunto all other Bishops in the Eastern *Dioecese* were either subordinate or subject. Which Privilege being questioned in the Council of *Ephesus*, was by the Fathers there assembled, on a full hearing of the Cause, approved and ratified; confirmed by the Civil Sanction of the Emperor *Justinian*, whose Wife was a Native of this Island; and by the name of *Jus Cyprium*, the Privilege or Exemption of the *Cyprian* Church, transmitted to the Prelates of succeeding times. Which notwithstanding, they continued in good correspondence with the Eastern Churches of the *Greek Communion*, and officiated all Divine Acts after the Rites and Forms thereof, till the *Venetians* became Lords of it, who brought in the *Latin Service* into some of their Churches, and appointed Bishops and other Ministers of the *Papal* party, for execution of the same. And for the Government of these Churches, they had at first fourteen Bishops and Archbishops, to gratify *Queen Alice*, (who had a mind to enrich her friends with some of the Spoils of them) reduced by *Innocent* the third to four only, that is to say, the Archbishop of *Nicosia*, the Bishops of *Famagusta*, *Paphos*, and *Amathus*; but each See furnished with two Prelates, the one for the *Greeks*, the other for the *Latins*: of which the Bishops for the *Latins* have all the *Lands*, and Annual *Revenues*, which of right belong to those Cathedrals; the *Greek* Bishops living upon Stipends levied on the Priests and Deacons of their Jurisdiction.

Rivers, as formerly was said, here are very few; and of those few, the principal are called *Lycus* and *Lapithus*; the first running towards the South, the last towards the North; both not seldom so dried up, that

they leave their empty Channels without any water. Both also have their Source from the Hill *Olympus* (the highest Mountain of the Island) garnished with Trees and Fruits of all sorts; in compass about eighteen Leagues (which make four and fifty Italian miles) and at the end of every League a Monastery of *Greek Monks*, or *Calabres*, and a Fountain of fresh water for the use of the House. Here are also two other little Rivers, the one called 3 *Bodrus*, the other 4 *Tolus*; but of the late nature as the former.

By *Polomy*, or in his time, divided into four parts or Provinces; but since it fell into the hands of the *Lugian* Family, distributed into twelve Counties or *Cantredes*; most of them called by the names of their principal Towns: viz. 1 *Nicosia*. 2 *Famagusta*. 3 *Paphos*. 4 *Andania*. 5 *Limissa*. 6 *Maforum*. 7 *Salinis*. 8 *Messoria*. 9 *Crispocum*. 10 *Pentasia*. 11 *Carpathia*. 12 *Cerines*. The whole containing, besides these Cities and great Towns, 805 Villages or thereabouts, which they called *Casales*, whereof the one half anciently belonged unto the *Crown*, the other half divided betwixt the *Lay Nobility*, and the Ecclesiastick; the Patrimony of these last being computed at 80000 Crowns of Annual Rents, besides Casualties, and the Vails of the Altar. But because the tracing out of these *Cantredes* will be very difficult (as a way which none have gone before me) I will adhere to the division made hereof in the time of *Polomy*, into the Provinces of 1 *Paphia*, 2 *Amathia*, 3 *Lapethia*, and 4 *Salamine*.

1 *PAPHIA* is called of *Paphos* the chief Town thereof, taken up the West part of the Island; in which the Towns of most importance and observation are, 1 *Paphos*, on the Sea-side, by *Pliny* called *Talepaphos*, or old *Paphos*, built, as some say, by *Cynus*, the Father of *Myrrha*, and so named in memory of *Paphos* his Father; but, as others say, by *Paphos*, the son of *Pygmalion*, King of *Phoenicia* and *Cyprus*: to which last *Ovid* doth agree, who speaking of *Pygmalion*'s Statue, turned into a Woman by the power of *Venus* (or rather of his beautiful Wife, fabled, for the surpassing whiteness of her skin, to be made of *Ivory*) heads this of her,

*Ille Paphium genuis de quo tenet insula nomen.*

She *Paphos* bare, from whom the name.

Of *Paphia* to the Island came.

Here *Venus* had her so much celebrated Temple; hence the name of *Paphia*; and here her *Votaries* of both Sexes in their natural nakedness, did perform her Sacrifices. Both Town and Temple ruined by a fearful Earthquake; or as the *Legends* have it, by the prayers of St. *Barnabas*; the ruins of it fill remaining. 2 *Paphos Nova*, or New *Paphos*, now called *Baffo*, five miles from the old, built by *Agapenor*, one of the Nephews of *Lycurgus* the *Spartan* Law-giver, after the Sack of *Troy* forced hither by a violent *Tempest*; consecrate to the same impure Goddels, and much frequented, but without injury to the other; those which here offered not thinking they had done her sufficient service, unless they went in a solemn manner of Procession, and paid their Vows also at the other. 3 *Asione*, situate betwixt both; built by, or called so in honour of *Asione*, daughter of *Polomy* the first King of *Ægypt*, and Lord of *Cyprus*, of that House. 4 *Trepiano*, a daughter of *Trepiano*, under the Promontory so named, a well-traded Port, but miserably decayed by the *Turks*, when they took this Island. 5 *Conelia*, one of the richest of the Island, by reason of the plenty of Sugar and Cotton-wool, growing thereabout. Built in the place of 6 *Cubera*, dedicated to *Venus* also, but differing from the Island of that name in the *Ægean Sea*, rather in pronoun.

pronunciation than the purity of her oblations; the last syllable save one, in the name of that Island, being short in verse, but this of *Cyprus* sounding long, as in this of *Vergil*.

Æt *Amathus*, est celsa mihi Paphos, atque Cithera.  
Cithera, Amathus divine,  
And lofty Paphos are all mine.

2 On the South-East of *Paphia* lieth the Province or *District* of *MATHYSIA*, taking up the South-parts of the Island which look towards *Ægypt*. Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Amathus*, giving name unto this division, then of most note, and much frequented for the annual sacrifices made unto *Adonis* the darling of *Venus*, who had here another of her Temples; the ruins of both hardly now discerned. Built, as some say, by *Amasis*, King of *Ægypt*, when he conquered this Island; but as others say by some of the *Anatibites*, defended from *Anah* one of the sons of *Canaan*. 2 *Cetinus*, or *Cittium*, (for it is so called by both names) the birth-place of *Zeno the Stoick*, hence called *Stoickos*, or *Cittensis*; and memorable for the death of *Simon the Athenian* General. A Town wherein the memory of *Cittium*, the son of *Javan*, is most anciently preserved. 3 *Episcopia*, one of the chief of all the Island, built on the place, or out of the decay of 4 *Curus*, not far from the Promontory of the same name, founded by the *Argives*, where *Apollis* had both a Grove and a Temple, by the name of *Apollis Hyalensis* Altars in those times held so sacred, that whosoever presumed to touch them, was thrown into the Sea from the Promontory or rocks adjoining. 5 *Salines*, or *Salina*, so called from the rich Saltpit; one of the chief Towns of this part, and giving name to one of those twelve *Cantredes*, into which the whole is now divided.

3 *LAPETHIA*, the third part of the Island, lieth on the North thereof, opposite to *Cilicia* in *Asia Minor*. Places of most importance in it, 1 *Nicosia*, the Regal City of the Kings, the See of the Archbishop, and the chief of the Island: anciently called *Ledronis*, and *Lentainis*; but those names long ago laid by. Situate in the midst of the Isle, and in a plain and champaign Country abundantly fruitful and delightful. Environed with a fair wall, so exactly round as if it had been drawn with a pair of Compasses in circuit about five miles, and both for situation, numbers of people, and magnificent buildings of all sorts both publick and private, compared by some to the most beautiful City of *Florence*. Fortified by the *Venitians*, when in their possession, with new walls, deep ditches, and eleven high Bulwarks, with three great Out-works, all of them built according to the Art of modern Fortification. But notwithstanding all these works, and the help of 250 pieces of Cannon planted on the walls, and about the City, it was by the *Turks* taken at the second or third assault, Sept. 9. Anno 1570. So evident a truth it is, that Fortifications are more strengthened by the gallantry and courage of the Defendants, than the Defendants are by their Fortifications. 2 *Cerines*, situate near the Sea, strong by Art and Nature, and furnished with all things necessary to endure a Siege; but yielded to the *Turks* by *Alphonso* *Palacius* the unwearied Governor, terrified with the great slaughter made at the sack of *Nicosia* before the Enemy came near it. At first called *Gennania*, and said to have been built by *Cyrus* the great *Persian* King, when he first subdued the nine Kings hereof, and united the Island to that Crown; built with a more temperate and wholesome air, than any other in the Country. 3 *Tremuris*, the birth-place of *Spiridon*, a Bishop of the *Primitive* times, renowned for miracles; many of which reported by *Sozomen*, lib. 1. chap. 10, and

other Ecclesiastical Writers. Wholly decayed, the ruins of it much contributing to the rise of *Nicosia*. 4 *Lapithus* (by *Pliny* called *Lapeto*) on the banks of a small Rivert of that name, of so great note in former times, that it gave to this Division the name of *Lapethia*, in that part standeth the hill *Olympus*; (now the Mountain of the holy Cross) described before.

4 *SALAMINE*, the fourth and last Province of this Island, taken up the whole East-parts hereof: So named from 1 *Salamin*, once the chief City of the Isle, and the See of the *Primate*, or *Metropolitan* hereof in the *Primitive* times. Destroyed by the *Jews* in the reign of *Trojan*, and re-built again; but being after that taken, sacked, and razed unto the ground by the *Saracens*, in the time of *Heracles*, it never could again recover: the *Metropolitan* See after that subversion, being removed to *Nicosia*. It was sometimes, and by some Writers, called *Constantia* also, but that name could give it no more perpetuity than the other of *Salamin*. Memorable whilst it stood for the founder of it, being *Tenex*, the son of *Telamon* King of *Salamin*, an Isle of the *Ægean Sea*; banished his Country by his Father, and settled in this Island by the power of *Belus*, King of *Phoenicia*: as also for a famous Temple sacred unto *Jupiter*, hence called *Salaminus*. Out of the ruins hereof arose, 2 *Famagusta*, now the prime City of these parts; built as is said by *Ciciliæ*, the Father of St. *Catharine*; but that uncertain. Situate at the East end of the Island, in a plain and low ground betwixt two Promontories, the one called the Cape of St. *Andrem*, and the other *Cape di Griego*, or the head of *Græcia*. In compass not above two miles, in form four-square, but that the side towards the East stretcheth out more in length than the other three. On two parts beaten on with the Sea, the other parts towards the Land defended with a Ditch not above fifteen foot in breadth, an old stone wall, and certain Bulwarks. The Haven (opposite to *Trispolis*, a Town of *Syria*) penteth towards the South-east, defended from the injury of the Sea by two great Rocks, betwixt which the Sea cometh in at a narrow passage not above forty paces broad, but after opening wide and wide maketh a convenient Harbour, rather safe than large, assured both by the difficult entrance, and a chain crossed over it. The whole Town, when the *Turks* appeared before it, but meanly fortified; the works of it of the old fashion, generally decayed except one Bulwark, which was by according to the modern Arts of Fortification, with *Palisades*, Curtains, *Cafemates*, and all other Additions: most gallantly defended by *Brigadine* the noble General; to the wonder and envy of the *Turks*, who spent no less than 118000 great shot upon it and at last yielded upon honourable terms, had they been as punctually performed. 3 *Abrodisium*, so named of *Venus*, whom the *Greeks* called *Abrodite*, who had here another of her Temples. 4 *Asione*, built also by one of the *Asiones* Queens of *Ægypt*, there being two of these of this name, and the same foundation, now called *Lefcare*, and anciently renowned for the Groves of *Jupiter*. 5 *Tamassus*, of good note in the time of *Strabo* for rich mines of Brals, as afterwards for abundance of *Verdegreece* and *Vitruol* found plentifully in the fields adjoining. 6 *Idalium*, near a Mount of the same name, so called by accident. For *Calsenor* the founder of it being told by the Oracle, that he should fear himself, and build a City, where he first saw the rising Sun: one of his followers, seeing the Sun begin to rise, cried out *Idus Idus*, that is to say, Behold the Sun. Which *Omen* taken by *Chalcenor*, he here built this City. But whether this were so or not (as for my part I build not very much upon it) certain it is, that *Venus* had here another Temple, neighboured by the *Idalian Groves*, so memorized and chanted by the ancient Poets. So strong an

an influence had lust and sensuality on this wretched People, that every corner of the Island was defiled with those brutish Sacrifices, which day by day were offered to that impure deity: though to say truth, it was no marvel if having made their *Belly their Gods*, they made in the next place their *glory their shame*.

The first Inhabitants of this Island were the posterity of *Cittim* the son of *Javan*, and grand-son of *Japhet*: who having seen his brother *Tarshish* settled in *Cilicia*, (where his memory is still preserved in the City of *Tarsus*) planted himself and his retinue in this opposite Island. The City of *Cittim*, as *Prothomy*, or *Cittim*, as *Pliny* call it, one of the ancientest of the Island; taking name from him: which with the authority of *Josephus*, and others of the ancient Writers, put it out of question. But being this Island was too narrow to contain his numbers, and willing to seek further off for a larger dwelling, he left here to many of his followers as might serve in time to plant the Country; and with the rest passed into *Macedon*, where we have already spoken of him. Made tributary first to *Amasis* King of *Ægypt*, from which distant about three or four days sailing, Subjected afterwards to the *Phœnicians*, a near neighbour to them, who being a Sea-faring people, made themselves Masters of the Sea-coasts and maritime places, *Cinyras* the Father of *Myrrha*, (by whom both Father and Grand-father to *Adonis*) is said to have been King of both. The like ascribed of *Belus* one of his Successors, who is said to have been the founder of the City of *Cittim*, named *fo* (if not rather repaired than new built by him,) with reference no doubt to *Cittim*, the first Proprietor of this People. By the power and favour of this *Belus*, *Teucer*, the son of *Telamon*, banished his Country, accompanied with many followers from *Salamis*, *Athens*, and *Arcadia*, was settled in the East parts herof; where the City of *Salamis*, by him built, was his first Plantation. Yet so that the *Phœnicians* kept their former hold: it being evident in Story that *Eleusus* one of the Successors of this *Belus*, (but a King of *Tyre*), and a Co-temporary with *Salmassar* King of *Assyria* passed over into *Cyprus* with a puissant Navy to reduce the *Citizens* to obedience, who had then rebelled. The Island at first coming of *Teucer* hither so infinitely overgrown with woods, that the people were not able to till the Island. In such manner, notwithstanding the great waste made of them, both in building ships, and casting metals, a Law was made, that every one which would should fell them, and take as much ground in fealty for his own inheritance, as he could overcome and make fit for tillage. Encouraged herewith, the natural *Cypriots*, together with the Colonies of *Grecians*, *Phœnicians*, *Ægyptians*, so belaboured themselves, that at last they brought it unto *Champey*: parcelled out in succeeding times, amongst nine Kings, for so many *Cyprus* the great *Persian* Monarch found at his coming hither. But *Cyrus*, though he did subdue all those petty Princes, yet he took not from them their Estates or Titles: contented with the conquest of it, and an annual tribute. For ever this, in the time of *Artaxerxes* *Mnemon*, we find *Ezra*, and *Necoctes*, to whom *Isidore* inscrib'd two of his Orations, to be Kings herof. And in the time of *Alexander* the Great, *Cittim* it self (such was the honour born unto the Mother-City) had a King apart, not subject unto any other. The King whereof to render himself with the Conquerour, gave to him a sword, *μαχάριον δαμασκήν*, faith *Plutarch*, an admirable sword, both for colour and lightness, which he used often in all his fights. And after the death of *Alexander*, his great Commanders cantoning his estates amongst them, the Princes and People of this Island were in great distractions, not knowing to whom they might

submit for their best advantage. But *Prothomy*, who had seized on *Ægypt* for his part of the spoil, being strong in shipping, settled them by a personal visit; and fortifying some of the best pieces in it, assured the Country to himself. To him and his posterity it continued subject till the time of *Prothomy* *Auletes*, the ninth King of this Line in our Account, who gave it for a portion to one of his Brethren: in whose time, the *Romans*, without any colour or pretence of quarrel, but only to enrich themselves with the spoil of the Island, sent *Portius Cato* to subdue it. And he at first assayed to get it with the Kings consent, offering him in the name of the *Roman* Senate, the Priest-hood of the Temple of *Paphos*, being a rich and gainful Office, and of high esteem among that people. But when *Prothomy* for fear of worse mischief had made away himself by poison, *Cato* without more ceremony takes possession of it. And because *Annianus* *Marcellinus* the Historian, hath so significantly expressed this business, and withal described so punctually the Estate of this Island; we will add this discourse from him, though somewhat be repeated which was said before. *Cyprus insulam prociat à Continente distantem portusjam*, &c. "The Isle of *Cyprus*, far distant from the Continent, and well stored with Harbours, is famous, besides many Municipal Towns, for two principal Cities, that is to say, *Salamis*, and *Paphos*: the one sacred to *Jupiter*, and the other to *Venus*. An Isle admirably fruitful, and with all things furnished, that without the help of any foreign Nation, it is able of itself to build and rig forth a Ship, from the very keel unto the top-sail, and trim it with all tackle necessary for a pleasant voyage. Nor do I shame to say, that with greater Avarice than Justice, the *Romans* did invade this Island, King *Prothomy*, our old Confederate and Ally, being unworthily prohibited, for no other reason, but that our Treasury was bare, our Exchequer empty. And he no sooner had prevented this dishonour by a quick and voluntary death, making away himself by poison, but the Island was forthwith made tributary, and the riches of it, *Vetus hostiles exarce clasti imposte & in urbem addita per Catonem*, as the spoils of some conquered enemy, were brought on Ship-board, and conveyed by *Cato* unto *Rome*. So far, and to this purpose he.

I know there is another cause alleged for the sending of *Cato* on this Errand, viz. that *Clodius* who was then Tribune, and spied the *Edili*, might have opportunity by his absence to revenge himself on *Cicero*, and some others of the opposite faction: but the main business was the money, as before was said; the prey amounting to 7000 Talents, which comes to two Millions, and one hundred thousand Crowns of Coin now current. Which money and moveables, amounting unto so vast a sum, he feared to lose by Sea, divided it into many small portions, which he put into several Boxes, viz. in every Box two Talents and fifty *Drachms*. At the end of every Box he fastened a long rope with a piece of Cork; by which, floating above the water, the money, if by Shipwreck lost, might be espied again: which was not much unlike the way which Mariners fasten by long ropes to their Anchors, that they may be sooner found. We see by this, that the pretence of the *Romans* to this Country was very weak: *Avareis magis quam justis summi assenti*, are the words of *Sextus Rufus* also. But being made a *Roman* Province, it was in the division of the Empire assigned to the *Constantinopolitan* Emperours, under whom it suffered, as all other parts of the Empire did by the violent invasion of the *Saracens*, who spoiled and ransacked it in the time of *Constantine* the second, destroying the City of *Salamis* or *Constantia*. But that tempest

bāng

being overcome, they returned again unto that Empire, governed by a succession of Dukes, till the year 1184. At which time *Andronicus Comnenus* usurping the Greek Empire, compelled *Iacacius Comnenus*, one of the blood Royal, to shift for himself: who seizing on this Island made himself King thereof, and ruling till the year 1191, when *Richard* the first of England, being denied the common courtesy of taking in fresh water, and seeing his Soldiers abused by the *Cypriots*, not only took the King Prisoner, but subdued the whole Island. And as *Paterculus* telleth us, that when *Marcus Antonius* had captivated *Artamides* King of *Armenia*, *Catenis*, sed ne quid honoris desisset, aureis vinxit; So did our *Richard* keep a *Decorum* towards this Prisoner, binding him not in bonds of Iron, but Silver. King *Richard* having thus possessed himself of this Country, sold it for ready money, (which for the managing of his intended wars against the *Turks*, he most needed) unto the *Templers*: and taking it, upon I know not what discontent, again from them, he bestowed it on *Guy of Lusignan*, the titular and miserable King of *Hierusalem*; receiving in way of exchange, the title of that lost and shipwrecked Kingdom, with which title he and some of his Successors for a time were honoured.

In the posterity of this *Guy*, this Island continued free and absolute, till the year one thousand four hundred twenty three; when *Melechella* (or *Melechiasar*) Sultan of *Ægypt*, invaded this Country, took *John* King her of Prisoner, ransomed him for 150000 Sultanes, restored him to his Kingdom, and imposed on him and his Successors, yearly tribute of 40000 Crowns. This *John* was father to another *John*, whose two children were *Carlote* a legitimate Daughter, and *James* a bastard Son. *James* after the death of his father, dispossessed his sister *Carlote* of the Crown, by the consent and help of the Sultan of *Ægypt*; and the better to strengthen himself against all opposition, he took to wife *Catharine Cornari*, daughter by adoption to the *Venetian* Senate: whom at his death he made his heir, if the child he went withal (having then none by her) should die without issue, as it did, not long after it was born; and the seeing the seditious Nobility too head-strong to be bridled by a female authority, like a good child resigned her Crown and Scepter to the *Venetian* State, Anno 1473. These defended it against all claims, (paying only as tribute to the *Ægyptian*, and after to the *Turkish* Sultans, the 40000 Crowns before mentioned) till the year 1570, when *Musapha*, General of the *Turks*, wrested it from the *Venitians*, to the use of his Master *Selimus* the second, who pretended title to it as Lord of *Ægypt*. The Governour of the *Venetian* Forces at the time of this unfortunate loss was *Signior Bragadino*, who as long as hope of succours, means of resistance, or possibility of prevailing continued, with incredible valour made good the Town of *Famagusta*, in whose defence consisted the welfare of the whole Island. At last he yielded it on honourable conditions, had they been as faithfully kept, as punctually agreed on. But *Musapha* the *Turkish* General inviting to his Tent the principal men of worth in the Town, caused them all to be murdered: and as for *Brigadino* himself, he commanded his ears to be cut off, his body to be flayed alive, and his skin stuffed with straw, to be hanged at the main yard of his Gally. The chief of the prisoners and spoils were in two tall ships, and one *Gallion* sent unto *Selimus*; but he never saw them. For a Noble *Cyprian* Lady, designated to the lust of the Grand *Seigneur*, fired certain barrels of powder; by the violence whereof both the vessels and the booty in them, were in part burned, in part drowned. A famous and heretick dissoluterious unto none of the *Roman* Dames, so

much commended in their Stories, though more to be commended in a *Roman* than a *Christian* Lady.

Thus having summed up the affairs of this Island from the first plantation of it, till this last said conquest, I will lay down the succession of the *Cyprian* Kings of the Noble *Lusignan* Family, in this ensuing Catalogue of

### The KINGS of C T P R U S.

- 1 *Guy of Lusignan*, the titular King of *Hierusalem*, created in the Kingdom of *Cyprus*, by *Richard* the first of England.
- 2 *Amiericus*, the brother of *Guy*.
- 3 *Hugh*, the son of *Amiericus*.
- 4 *Henry*, the son of *Hugh*.
- 5 *Hugh II.* son of *Henry*.
- 6 *Hugh III.* son of *Hugh* the second.
- 7 *John*, son of *Hugh* the third.
- 8 *Henry II.* the brother of *John*.
- 9 *Hugh IV.* son of *Guido*, the younger brother of *John*, and *Henry* the second.
- 10 *Peter*, the son of *Hugh* the fourth.
- 11 *Petrinus*, the son of *Peter*.
- 12 *James*, younger brother of *Peter*, and Uncle to *Petrinus*.
- 13 *James*, the son of *James*, made Tributary by *Melechiasar*, to the Kingdom of *Ægypt*.
- 14 *John II.* the son of *James*.
- 15 *Carlote*, sole daughter and heir of *John* the second, first married to *John* the Prince of *Portugal*, and after to *Lewis* Prince of *Savoy*, out of her Estate and Kingdom.
- 16 *James II.* the bastard son of *John* the second, who by a strong hand seized upon it, and by help of the *Venitians* kept it during life.
- 17 *James III.* born after the decease of his father, where he survived not very long. After whose death, being the last of this Family, the *Venitians* possessed themselves of *Cyprus*: which they invaded with no better title, than the *Romans* had done in former times; not likely to be blest with a long fruition, of that which they had so unjustly got into their hands. But of that already.

And here is to be observed, that these *Cyprian* Kings retaining the title of *Hierusalem* (towards which they sometimes cast an eye) bestowed upon their greatest Subjects, and deservest Servitors, both titles of honour and Offices of State, belonging anciently to that Kingdom. So that we find amongst them a Prince of *Antioch*, a Prince of *Galilee*, a Count of *Tripoli*, a Lord of *Cesarea*, and a Lord of Mount *Tabar*; a Seneschal of *Hierusalem*, a Constable, Marshal, and High-Chamberlain of that Kingdom also. With better reason, though no doubt with as little profit, as the Pope gives Bishopsricks and Archbishopsricks in *Greece* or *Ægypt*. But those titular Offices are now quite extinct, though possibly some of the Titles of honour which were took from thence, may be still remaining.

But to return unto the *Turks*, having thus taken *Famagusta* and *Nicosia*, on which the whole Island did depend, all other Cities of it, and the whole by consequence, were forced to submit to the *Turkish* Tyranny. The Noblemen, and Citizens of principal quality, either most cruelly massacred in the Sack of those Towns, or banished for ever their Native Country, as men whose living there might possibly endanger their new Conquest. But the Country people, Artificers, and *Pers*

fōrs



amongst themselves, and a devout invocation on the Name of God, to direct them in it. The word *Χριστιανισμός* used in the Original, importeth somewhat of *Oracular* and *Divine* direction. And certainly it standeth with reason that it should be so. For if upon the giving of a name, to *John Baptist*, there was not only a consultation had of the Friends and Mother, but the dumb Father called to advise about it; and if we use not to admit the Christ's Church by the door of Baptism, but by the joynt invitation of the Name of God for his blessing on it: with how much more regard of Ceremony and Solemnity, must we conceive that the whole body of Christs people, be baptized into the name of *Christians*? And there is some proof of it too, besides probability and conjecture. For *Suidas*, and before him *Iohannes Antiochenus*, an old Cosmographer, do expressly say, that in the days of *Claudian Caesar*, ten years after the Ascension of our Lord and Saviour, *Eudius* received Episcopal consecration, and was made Patriarch of *Antioch* the Great in *Syria*, succeeding immediately to *St. Peter*: then addeth, that at that time the *Disciples* were first called *Christians*. *ἡ ἀρχὴ τοῦ βαπτισμοῦ τοῦ ἀποστόλου πάλαι καλεῖτο τὸν ἐπίσκοπον τὸν ἀρχιεπίσκοπον*. *Eudius* their Bishop calling them to a Solemn Assembly, and imposing this new name upon them, whereas before they were called *Nazareites* and *Galileans*. A people loathed by the *Heathens*, that they caled not to slander them from the first beginning. For as concerning this *Señ* we know that it is *evēry where* spoken against, laid the *Jews* of *Rome* to the *Apology*, *Act. 28. 22*. *Tacitus* a *Roman*, but a *Gentile* goes yet further with them, calling them *Homines per flagitia infestis*. *Quosdam meritis exemplis*: the calamity in his time being strong and general, that at their private meetings they devoured Infants, and had carnal company with their Mothers and Sisters. Which defamations notwithstanding, they grew in few years to so great numbers, that they were a terror to their Enemies; though grievously afflicted, tortured, and put to several kinds of death, under the ten *Famous Persecutions*, raised against them, by *Nero*, Anno 67. 2 *Domitian*, Anno 96. 3 *Trajanus*, Anno 110. 4 *Marcus Antoninus*, Anno 161. 5 *Severus*, Anno 195. 6 *Maximinus*, Anno 237. 7 *Decius*, Anno 250. 8 *Valerianus*, Anno 259. 9 *Aurélianus*, Anno 278. 10 By *Dioclesianus*, Anno 293. All, but this last especially, so extremely raging, that (as *St. Hieron* writeth in one of his Epistles) that there were martyred 5000 for each day in the year, except the first of *January*, on which they used not to shed blood. But *Sanguis Martyrum*, *Semen Ecclesie*. This little grain of Mustard-seed, sowed by God's own hand, and watered by the blood of so many hol, men, grew to great a Tree, that the branches of it spread themselves over all the world; and got such footing even in the *Roman Army* it self; (Men commonly so of the strictest kind of Religion) that when *Julian* the *Apollate* had vomited out his Soul, with *Vicius tandem Galilee*, they elected *Iovinian*, though a *Christian*, for his Successor, with this acclamation, *Christiani omnes sumus*. We are also *Christians*. But see how the baptizing of God's people by the name of *Christians*, in the City of *Antioch*, hath drawn me out of my way. I return again, both to the place, and to the Author. In whose evidence, besides what doth concern the imposition of the name of *Christian*, upon the body of the faithful, we have a testimony for *St. Peter's* being Bishop of *Antioch*, the first Bishop thereof (of the Church of the *Jews* therein at least) as is said positively by *Eusebius* in his *Chronology*, *St. Hieron* in his Catalogue of Ecclesiastical Writers, *St. Chrysostom* in his *Homilie de translatione Iegnatii*, *Theodore Dialog*, 1. *St. Gregory Epist. lib. 6. cap. 37*. and before any of them by *Origen*, in his sixth

Homily on *St. Luke*. With reference whereunto, and in respect that *Antioch* was accounted always the principal City of the East-parts of the *Roman Empire* (the *Prophet* of the East for the most part residing in it) the Bishop hereof in the first Ages of Christianity, had jurisdiction over all the Churches in the East, as far as the bounds of that Empire did extend that way. To which by *Constantine the Great* the Provinces of *Cilicia* and *Galatia*, with those of *Mesopotamia* and *Osfrene* were added, containing 15 *Roman* Provinces, or the whole *Dioecesis* of the Orient. And though by the subtracting of the Churches of *Palestine*, and the decay of Christianity in these parts by the Conquests of the *Turks* and *Saracens*, the jurisdiction of this Patriarch hath been very much lessened; yet *William* of *Tyre*, who flourished in the year 1130. reciteth the names of 13 *Archiepiscopos*, at *Metropolitans*, and 127 *Episcopos* Sees, yielding obedience in his time to the See of *Antioch*. Since which that number is much diminished, *Mahometanism* more and more increasing, and Christianity divided into Sects and Factions; inasmuch that of three sorts of Christians living in these Countries, viz. The *Maronites*, *Jacobites*, and the *Melchites*, only the *Melchites* are subordinate to the Church of *Antioch*, the others having Patriarchs of their own Religion.

And first for the *Melchites*, who are indeed the true and proper Members of the Church of *Antioch*, and the greatest body of *Christians* in all the East; they are so named in way of scorn, by the *Jacobite* and *Maronite* *Schismatic*, separating without just cause from their Communion. The name derived from *Melch*, signifying in the *Syriack* Language a King or Emperor; because adhering to their Primate, they followed the Canons and Decisions of preceding Councils, ratified by authority of the Emperor *Leo*, by whom subscription was required to the Acts thereof: and were in that respect (as we use to say) of the Kings Religion. Conform in Points of Doctrine to the Church of *Greece*, but that they celebrate Divine Service as solemnly on the *Sundays* as upon the *Sundays*: Subject to the true and Original Patriarch, who since the destruction of *Antioch* doth reside in *Damascus*; and on no terms acknowledging the Authority of the Popes of *Rome*.

Next for the *Maronites*, they derive that name, either from *Marona*, one of the principal Villages where they first inhabited; or from the Monastery of *St. Maron*, mentioned in the first Act of the Council of *Constantinople* holden under *Mennas*, the Monks of which called *Maronites*, were the head of their Sect. Some Points they hold, in which they differ from all *Orthodox Christians*, others in which they differ only from the Church of *Rome*. Of the first sort, 1. That the *Holy Ghost* proceedeth from the Father only without relation to the Son; 2. That the Souls of men were created all together at the first beginning. 3. That male Children are not to be baptized together, but at several times by one and one. 4. That *Heretics* returning to the Church are to be re-baptized. 5. That the Child is made unclean by the touch of his Mother till her Purification; and therefore not baptizing Children till that time be past, which after the birth of a Male-child must be forty days, of a Female eighty. 6. That the *Eucharist* is to be given to Children presently after Baptism. 7. That the fourth Marriage is utterly unlawful. 8. That the Father may dissolve the Marriage of his Son or Daughter; 9. That young men are not to be ordained *Priests* or *Deacons*, except they be married. 10. That nothing strangled, or of blood may be eaten by Christians. 11. That Women in their Monthly courses are not to be admitted to the *Eucharist*, or to come into the Church. 12. And finally (which was indeed their first

discrimination from the *Orthodox Christians*) that there was but one will and action in *Christ*; the Followers of which opinion had the name of *Monobeltites*. Of the last kind, 1. That the Sacrament of the Lords Supper was to be administered in both kinds. 2. And in Leavened bread. 3. That bread to be broken to the Communicants (and not each man to have his Wafer to himself) according to the first institution. 4. Not referring that Sacrament. 5. Nor carrying any part of the consecrated Elements to sick persons in danger of death. 6. That Marriage is nothing inferior to the single life. 7. That no man enter the Kingdom of Heaven till the General Judgment. 8. That the *Saturday*, or old *Sabbath* is not to be fasted. 9. Nor the Sacrament upon days of fasting to be administered till the Evening. They withdrew themselves from the See of *Antioch*, and set up a Patriarch of their own, many ages since (but the certain time thereof I find not) conferring on him for the greater credit of their Schism, the honourable title of the Patriarch of *Antioch*. His name perpetually to be *Peter*, as the undoubted Successor of that Apostle in the See thereof. Dispersed about the spurs and branches of Mount *Libanus*, where they have many Townships and scattered Villages, of which four are reported to retain in their common speech the true ancient *Syriack*: that is to say, 1. *Eden* a small Village, but a Bishop See, by the *Turks* called *Achora*, 2. *Hachshet*, 3. *Sherry*, 4. *Bolfa*, or *Blonfa*, little superior to the rest in bigness or beauty, but made the seat of their Patriarch, when he comes amongst them. At such time as the Western Christians were possessed of these parts, they submitted to the Church of *Rome*; but upon their expulsion by the *Turks* and *Saracens*, they returned again to the obedience of their own Patriarch, on whom they have ever since depended. His residence for the most part at *Trapolis*, a chief Town of *Syria*; but when he came to visit his Churches, and take an account of his suffragan Bishops (who are nine in number) then at *Blonfa*, as is said before. Won to the Papacy again by *John Baptist* a Jesuite, in the time of Pope *Gregory* the thirteenth, who sent them a Catechism from *Rome* Printed in the *Arabian* Language (which is generally spoken by them) for their instruction in the Rudiments of that Religion; yet to that their Patriarch still retains his former power, and the Priests still officiate by the old Liturgies of those Churches, in the *Syriack* tongue. So that this reconciliation, upon the matter, is but a matter of complement on the one side, and ostentation on the other: without any increase of Power or Patrimony to the Pope at all. And for the *Jacobites*, though dispersed in many places of this Country; yet since they are more lately settled in *Mesopotamia*, where their Patriarch also hath his abode or residence, we shall there speak of them.

The Language vulgarly here spoken is the *Arabic* Tongue, continued here ever since the subjugation of these Countries by the *Saracens*. But anciently they spake the *Syrian* and *Phoenician* Languages. Of which, the first (for of the other we shall speak when we come to *Phoenicia*) was the very same with the *Chaldean*, (as the learned *Breuerius* hath observed) either originally so, or else received by them when first conquered by the *Babylonians*. In which respect the *Jews*, when they returned home from their long Captivity, gave to the Language which they brought with them, the name of *Syriack*, *Chaldean* for a great part of it as to the substance of the words: but *Hebrew* as to the notation of Points, Conjunctions, Affixes, and other properties of their former and original speech. And of this more hereafter also, when we come to *Palestine*. But whatsoever their language was in

former times it is now so overtopped by the *Arabic*, that it is spoken in four Villages of the *Maronites* only in all these Countries; the *Arabic* being generally used in all the rest, as was said before.

Principal Rivers of these parts, are, 1. *Chorasan*, called *Chabon* by the *Hebrews*, which hath its fountain in *Palestine*, but his fall in *Phoenicia*, not far from Mount *Carmel*. 2. *Orontes*, now called *Saldun*, and by some Writers *Jordan* the less, ariseth out of the hills called *Pierus*, not far from Mount *Libanus*; and after a while running under the ground, breaketh forth again about *Apamia*, and passing by the great City of *Antioch*, falleth into the Sea not far from it. It was first called *Tiphon*, and took this name from one *Orontes*, who built first the Bridge over it, as we find in *Strabo*, 3. *Eleutherus*, which vith out of some part of *Libanus*, and glided with a speedy course throw a tragly intricate Channel, into the *Mediterranean* Sea: guilty of the death of the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, who falling from his horse as he pursued the *Isfidsels*, and oppressed with the weight of his Armour was here drowned, and lyeth buried at *Tyre*. It is now called *Cajner*, 4. *Singor*, by whom said to be called *Marfus* also, which ariseth in the mountainous parts of *Comagene*, and passing by the City of *Aleppo*, falleth into *Euphrates*. 5. *Euphrates*, the most famous River of the East; of which more hereafter.

Chief Mountains of it, 1. *Carmel*, which being properly of *Phoenicia*, we shall there speak of it. 2. *Fieria*, out of which the River *Orontes* hath its first Original, 3. *Cafus*, not far from *Antioch*, said to be four miles high perpendicularly. 4. *Libanus*, famous for its multitude of Cedars growing thereupon; affording materials unto *Solomon* for the holy Temple. Besides which it affordeth such store of *Frankincense*, that it did formerly the name from *Albanus*, signifying *Frankincense* in the Greek; and so replenished with Honey falling from the Heavens, and hanging on the Boughs of the Trees, that the Husbandmen used to ting (as *Galen* telleth us) that God raised honey; and yearly filled their Pots and Vessels with the sweets thereof. This the most famous and greatest Hill of all these parts, extending in length 150 miles, that to say, from *Sidon*, a City of *Phoenicia*, to *Smyrna*, one of the Cities of *Asia*; and taking seven hundred miles in compass. Inhabited wholly in a manner by the *Maronite* Christians, who to keep that dwelling to themselves without the intermixture of *Mulomedians*, do yearly pay to the *Great Turk*, seventeen *Sultanes* a man, for every one above twelve years of Age; each *Sultany* being reckoned at seven fillings & six pence of our money. And yet the *Maronites*, though intire, without intermixture, are held to be the smallest *Señ*, for number, in all the East; not estimated to exceed twelve thousand households, by reason of the indispotion of this Mountain, in most places unfit for habitation. For besides the cragginess and steepness of it, which makes many parts thereof to be inaccessible; the higher Ridges of it are in a manner perpetually covered with snow, nor melted in so hot a Climate at the nearest approaches of the Sun. And thence no doubt it took this name: the word *Leban*, in the *Hebrew* and *Phoenician* Language, signifying *White*, or *Whiteness*; seven as from the like *whiteness* of snow, the highest part of the *Pyrenean* hills had the name of *Camus*; and that perpetual Ridge of Mountains, which parts *Italy* from *France* and *Germany*, had the name of *Alpes*. 5. *Anti-Libanus*, opposite to the former, and from that so called, a rich, but little Valley only being interposed; out of which Valley the *Orontes* hath its Spring or Fountain, the hill *Fieria* there beginning to advance it self. Some make but one Mountain of them both, divided into two great Ledges or Chains of Hills. Of which the main body is

lying towards the North, hath the name of *Libanus*; that on the South, being but a branch or excursion of it, called *Anti-Libanus*. And to this the Scripture gives some hint, in which both pass for one, by the name of *Libanon*.

The whole Country was anciently divided into these fix parts, viz. 1 *Phœnicia*. 2 *Palestine*. 3 *Syria* specially so called. 4 *Comagena*. 5 *Palmyrene*. And 6 *Calo-Syria*, or *Syria Cana*. But *Palestine* coming under a more distinct consideration, we shall now speak only of the rest.

#### I P H O E N I C I A.

**P**HŒNICIA is bounded on the East and South, with *Palestine*; on the North, with *Syria*, properly and specially so called; on the West, with the *Mediterranean Sea*. So called by the *Grecians*, from the abundance of *Palm-trees* therein growing, the word *Phoenix* in that language signifying a *Palm*. And for a further proof hereof, (for I know there are other *Etyms* and Originations pretended for it) the *Palm* was anciently the special Cognisance or Ensign of this Country; as the *Olive-branch*, and *Cory of Spain*, the *Elephant of Africk*, the *Camel of Arabia*, and the *Crocodile of Egypt*, being peculiar to those Countries. And in an old Coyn of the Emperor *Vespasian's*, stamped for a memorial of his conquest of *Judea*, the Impress is a Woman sitting in a sad and melancholic posture, at the back of *Palm-trees*, with these two words, *Judea Capta*, inscribed thereon; in which, no question may be made, but that the desolate Woman signifieth the Land of *Judea*, and the *Palm Phœnicia*; *Phœnicia* being seated immediately on the North, at the back of *Tenry*.

But it was thus first called by the *Grecians* only, the *Latins* and other People after them taking up that name. For by themselves, and the people of *Israel* their next Neighbours, they are called *Canaanites*, or the Posterity of *Canaan*, five of whose sons, viz. *Zidon*, *Harzi*, *Arvadi*, *Senari*, and *Chamathi*, were planted here; the other six inhabiting more towards the South and East, in the Land of *Palestine*. For further evidence hereof we may add these reasons; first, that the same Woman which in *St. Matthew's Gospel*, Chap. 15. 22. is named a *Canaanite*, is by *St. Mark*, Chap. 7. 26. called a *Syro-Phœnician*. Secondly, where mention is made in the Book of *Jeshub*, of the Kings of *Canaan*; and the *Septuagint* (who very well understood the History and Language of their Country) call them *Βασιλεις τῶν φαινικίων* or the Kings of *Phœnicia*. Thirdly, the *Pœni*, or *Carthaginians*, being beyond all dispute a *Tyrian* or *Phœnician* Colony, when they were asked any thing of their *Original*, would answer that they were *Chamei*; meaning (as *St. Augustine* that Countryman doth expound their words) that they were Originally *Canaanites*, of the stock of *Canaan*. And lastly, from the language of it, which anciently was the old *Hebrew*, *Canaanitish*, or the Language of *Canaan*; spoken both here and in *Palestine* also, before that Country was possessed by the House of *Jacob*: as appears plainly by those names, by which the places and Cities of *Judea* were called, when and before the *Israelites* came first to dwell amongst them, which are merely *Hebrew*. And so much as unto the Language is acknowledged by *Bochartus* also, who in the entrance of his Book inscribed *Chanaan*, declares what profit may ensue from that undertaking to the *Hebrew Tongue*; *Cujus Phœnicia lingua dialectus fuit*, of which the *Phœnician* language was a dialect only.

The Country of it self not great, extended in a good length, from the further side of Mount *Carmel*, where it joyes with *Palestine*, to the River *Volanus* on the North,

by which parted from *Syria*: but withal so narrow, that it is little more than a bare Sea-coast, and therefore very rightly called *Terrarum angustissima* by a modern Writer. Rich rather by the benefit and increase of trade added, than by the natural commodities which the land afforded; yet for the quantity thereof, no place could be more plentifully furnished with *Oyl*, *Wheat*, and the best sort of *Balm*, and most excellent *Honey*; the lower part hereof being designed for the feat of *Abner*, of whom *Moses* prophesied, *Deut. 33. 24. that he should dip his foot in Oyl*. So that the Country generally, was well-conditioned, lovely to look upon, populous, and adorned with more beautiful Cities, than such a span of earth could be thought to hold. Of which thus writeth *Ammonius*, *Actibus monti Libano Phœnicia Regio, plena gratiarum & vernalis, arboribus decorata magnis & paleis &c.* i. e. falling from Mount *Libanus*, yeth the Country of *Phœnia*, full of all graces and elegancies, adorned with great and beautiful Cities, of which the most renowned for the fertility of their soil, and the fame of their achievements, are *Tyre*, *Sidon*, *Berytus*, &c.

The People anciently, by reason of their Maritime situation, were great *Adventurers* at Sea, trading in almost all the Ports of the then known World, and sending more Colonies abroad upon foreign Plantations than any Nations in the Earth. An active and ingenious people, did to have been the first *Navigators*, the first builders of Ships, the first inventors of Letters, (of which hereafter more on some other occasion) and the first Authors of *Astronick*, the first that brought *Astronomy* to an Art or Method, and the first makers of *Glas*. Defamed in Holy Scripture for their gross *Idolatry*, by which they laid a stumbling-block at the feet of the *Israelites*; *Astarte* (or *Astarte*) the goddess of the *Sidonians* (but whether *Juno*, *Venus*, or some other, I dispute not) being to highly prized amongst them, that *Salomon* himself, when he fell from God, made this one of his *Idols*. Once yearly, as *Ensebius* telleth us, they sacrificed some of their Sons to *Saturn*, whom in their Language they called *Melech*; And in the inmost retreats of *Libanus* had a Temple to *Venus*, defiled with the practice of most filthy lusts, intemperately using the natural Sex, and most uncharitably abusing their own. Nor could the purity and piety of the *Christian* faith prevail so far, as to extinguish the ungodly rites, till *Constantine* finally destroyed both the Temples and *Idols*, and left not any thing remaining of them, but the shame and infamy. *St. Augustine* addeth that they did prostitute their Daughters unto *Venus*, before they married them; and it is most likely to be true. For the *Phœnicians* and *Cyprians* being so near neighbours, and subject for a time to the same Princes also, could not but impart their impure Rites and Ceremonies unto one another.

Rivers of note there can be none in so narrow a Region, but what are common unto others, and shall therefore be spoken of. Most proper unto this is the River of *Adonis*, (now called *Cank*), so named most probably from *Adonis* the Darling of *Venus*, whose Rites are here performed with as much solemnity, as they be in *Cyprus*, his Obsequies celebrated yearly in the month of *June*, with great howlings and lamentations, *Lucian* fables that the River usually streameth blood upon that Solemnity (as if *Adonis* were newly wounded in the Mountains of *Libanus*), to give the better colour to their Superstitions. But the truth is, that this redness of the water arises, not from the Winds; which at that time of the year blowing very vehemently, do thereby carry down the stream a great quantity of *Minion* or red Earth, from the sides of those hills, wherewith the waters are discoloured.

discoloured. Such use can *Satan* make of a natural Accident, to blind the eyes and captivate the understandings of befotted People.

Chief Mountains of this Country are, 1 *Libanus*, spoken of before, which hath here its first advance or rising. 2 *Carmel*, which *Ptolomy* placeth in this Country, of which it is the utmost part upon the South, where it joyneth with *Palestine*. Walked on the North-side with the Brook *Chifon*, on the West with the *Mediterranean Sea*; steep of ascent, and of indifferent altitude; abounding with several sorts of Fruits, Olives, and Vines in good plenty, and stored with Herbs both medicinal and sweet of smell. The Retreat sometimes of *Eliab*, when he fled from *Jezabel*; whose Habitation here, after his decease, was converted to a Jewish Synagogue. To this place (being then in the possession of the Kings of *Israel*) did that Prophet assemble the Priests of *Baal*; and having by a miraculous Experiment confuted their *Idolatrous* Follies, caused them to be cut in pieces on the Banks of the River *Chifon* near adjoining to it. Upon this visible declaring of the Power and Presence of the Almighty, the *Gentiles* grew perwaded that *Oracles* were there given by God; by *Suetonius* called the God *Carmelus*. Where speaking of *Vespasian*, who had then newly took upon him the Imperial Dignity, he addeth, *Apud Judæam Carmeli Dei Oracula consuetudinem sua confirmantes fortis, &c.* That consulting in *Judea* with the Oracle of the God *Carmelus*, he was assured that whatsoever he undertook should succeed well with him. In after-times the Order of the *Friars Carmelites*, as Successors unto the Children of the Prophets left here by *Eliab*, had their names from hence: the Ruins of whose Monastery are still to be seen, with a Temple dedicated to the Blessed *Virgin*; and under that a Cave or Chappel, said to have been the lurking place of that Holy Prophet, in the time of his troubles.

Places of most importance in it, 1 *Ptolomais*, now nothing but a ruin of what it hath been, but formerly of great strength and consequence. Named *Ace* at the first Refuge for the Persian Kings in their Wars against *Agypt*; Enlarged, or rather new built by *Ptolomy*, the first of that Race, by whom called *Ptolomais*, which name still continued, though *Claudius*'s heir planting there a Roman Colony, would vain have had it called *Colonia Claudia*. After the Conquest of it by the *Saracens*, in the time of *Omer* the great *Caliph*, it returned towards its first name, and was called *Acon*, or *Acre*; both names still remaining in vulgar speech, as that of *Ptolomais* amongst Latin Writers. Situate in the flourish of it on a flat or level, in form of a triangular Shield; on two sides neighbored by the Sea, which comes up close to it; on the third looking towards the *Champaign*: environed with a double Wall, to each Wall a Ditch, fortified on the outside with Towers and Bulwarks; within the Walls so strongly bouled, as if the whole Town had been a Conjunction of Fortresses, and not ordained for private dwellings. In the midst of the City was one Tower of great strength and beauty, which had sometimes been the Temple of *Belshazzar*, and was therefore called the *Castle of Flies*; on the top whereof was maintain'd a perpetual Light, like the *Pharos of Egypt*, to give comfort and direction in the night to such Mariners as made towards this Port. Took from the *Christians* by the *Saracens* in the time of *Omer*, and from them wrested by the *Turks* with the rest of *Syria*. It came *Cibranic* again Anno 1004. in the Reign of *Baldwin* the first, Brother of the famous *Gedfrey of Beaulieu*, and second King of *Jerusalem*, by the help of the *Genoese*, who for their pains had the third part of the City assigned unto them. Recovered by *Saladine* to the *Turks*, and from him taken again by

the *Western Christians*, under the conduct of *Philip of France*, and *Richard* the first of *England*, Anno 1191. it continued in the possession of the Kings of *Jerusalem*, notably defended by the *Hospitallers* (now Knights of *Malta*) till the year 1291. When besieged by an Army of an hundred and fifty thousand *Turks*, it was forced to yield, though lost by inches; and the *Turks* fearing lest the *Christians* would again attempt it, razed it to the ground, demolishing the large Walls and Arches of it, which lie like massy Rocks on their old Foundations. Memorable in those times for the brave service here done by the *Christians* of the Western parts, of which none more renowned than those of our *Richard* the first, and *Edward* the first. This latter here treacherously wounded by an Infidel, with a poisoned Knife, the venom whereof could by no means be awayed, till his most virtuous Wife (herein proposing a most rare Example of conjugal affection) sucked it out with her mouth. And for the former, he became so terrible and redoubted among the *Turks*, that when their Children began to cry, they would say, *Peace, King Richard is coming*; and when their Horses started, they would spur them, saying, *What you Jades, do you think that King Richard is here?* By the *Mammalukes*, when Lords of *Syria*, it was patched together, and made fit for habitation rather than defence: not peopled by above 300 Inhabitants, nor would it have so many, but for the Haven adjoining; which though a small Bay, and of very ill Anchorage, is much frequented by the Merchants of our Western World, trading here for their Cotton Wools, with which the neighbouring Country is abundantly furnished. I have said the longer in this place, by reason of the great fame and importance of it, as being the last Hold which the *Christians* had of all their Conquests with the loss whereof, they laid aside all thoughts of that Holy Wars. 2 *Tyre*, seated in a rocky Island, about seventy paces from the main Land; well built, and circular of form, as well by Art as Nature impregnablely fortified. A Colony of the *Sidonians*, and therefore by the Prophet *Isa* ch. 23. v. 12. called the *Daughter of Sidon*: but by them built upon an high Hill, the Ruins whereof, by the name of *Palatyrus*, or old *Tyre*, are remaining still. Removed unto the Islands by *Ager* nor King of the *Phœnicians*, and by him named *Sor*, or *Tzor*, from the rocky situation of it (as that word importeth.) Mollified by the *Greeks* to *Tyrus*, and from them taken by the *Latins*, though known to them also by the name of *Sarra* (the *Tyrian Purple* being by *Virgil*, and some others of the ancient Poets, called *Sarrum Oltum*;) and now at last returned to its first original name, vulgarly at this day called *Sor*. A City in elder times of great Trade and Wealth; the Prophet *Isa* ch. 27. v. 8. calling the Merchants *herce Prince*, and her Chapmen the *Nobles of the World*. Excelling all others of those times both for Learning and Manufactures, specially for the dying of *Purple*, first here invented; and that as *Julius Polux* said, by a very accident; the Dog of *Hercules*, or if not his, some Dog or other, whose lips by eating of the Fifth called *Conyliis*, or *Purpura*, had been made of that colour. Grown to great pride, by reason of the Wealth and Pleasures, her destruction was fore-signified by the holy Prophets, accomplished in God's own time by *Nebuchadnezzar*, who with great industry and toil joyed it to the Continent. But his Works being demolished by the fury of the Sea, and the labour of the *Tyrants*, it was after seventy years again re-edified; and having flourished after that for two hundred years, by *Alexander* the Great was again demolished, to whose indefatigable perseverance nothing was impossible. For having filled the Channel with the



Stones and Rubbish of old Tyre, and rammed them in with huge Beams brought from Libanus, he made a passage for his Army; and having once approached the Walls, he over-topped them with Towers and Frames of Timber, that at last he made himself Master of it, putting to the Sword all such as resisted, and causing two thousand of them to be hanged in cold blood, all along the shore, for a terror to others. This Rendition of the Town was divided by the *South-Sayers*, who followed the Camp of Alexander, upon a dream which he had not long before; For dreaming that he had disparted himself with *Satyrs*, the Diviners only making of one word two, found that *Satyrs* was no more than *22 Tys*; that is, *Tua Tyrus*: and it happened accordingly. Recovering once again both her Riches and Beauties, she became a Confederate of the *Romans* in the growth of their Fortunes; endowed by them with the Privileges of their City, for her great fidelity. Made in the best times of Christianity the Metropolitan See for the Province of Phœnicia, the Bishop hereof having under him fourteen Suffragan Bishops. Subjected to the *Saracens* in the year six hundred thirty and fix, and having groaned under that yoke for the space of four hundred eighty and eight years, was at the last regained by *Ghurimud* Patriarch of *Hierusalem*, in the Reign of the second *Edwinn*, the *Venicians* contributing their assistance to it, Anno 1124. In vain attempted afterwards by victorious *Saladin*; but finally brought under the Turkish thraldom, Anno 1289, as it still continueth. Now nothing but an heap of Ruins; but the very Ruins of it so fair a prospect, as striketh both pity and amazement into the beholders, shewing them an exemplary pattern of our humane frailty. Subject at the present to the *Emir* or Prince of *Sidon*, and beautified with a goodly and capacious Haven, one of the best of the *Levant*, but of no great trading. 3 *Sarepta*, by the *Hebreans* called *Sarphat*, situate on the Sea-coast betwixt Tyre and Sidon. Memorable in Holy Writ for the Miracle here performed by the Prophet *Elijah*, in raising the poor Widows Son; in Heathen Writers for the purple Wines, little inferior unto those of *Falerum* in Italy, or *Cibos* in Greece: Of which thus the Poet

Vina mibi non sunt Gazetia, Chia, Falerina,  
Quæque Sarcapano palmite missa bibas.

In English thus,

I have no *Chian* or *Falerian* Wines,

Nor those of *Gazet* or *Sarcap* Vine.

4 *Sidon*, the ancientest City of all Phœnicia, and the most Northern of all those which were assigned for the Portion of the Sons of *Affer*; beyond which the Country of Phœnicia having been hitherto nothing but a bare Sea-coast, beginneth to open towards the East in a fine rich Valley, having *Libanus* upon the North, and the *Anti-Libanus* on the South; once closed up from the rest of Syria with a very strong Wall, long since demolished. It was so called from *Zidon*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*, who first planted here; not (as some say) from *Sida* the Daughter of *Belus*, once a King hereof; this City being mentioned in the Book of *Job*, when so such *Belus* was in being. Situate in a fertile and delightful Soil, defended with the Sea on one side, and on the other by the Mountains lying betwixt it and *Libanus*, from whence defended those many Springs with which they watered and enriched their most pleasant Orchards. The Inhabitants hereof are said to be the first makers of *Chrysal Glasse*, the Materials of the Work brought hither from the Sands of a River running not far from *Ptolemais*, and only made fusible in this City. And from hence *Solomon* and *Zorobabel* had their principal Work-men, both for Stone and Timber, in

their several Buildings of the Temple. The People hereof so flourishing in Arts and Trades, that the Prophet *Zachariah*, chap. 9. v. 2. calleth them the *wise Sidonians*. A City which at several times was both the Mother and Daughter of Tyre; the Mother of it in the times of *Heathenism*, Tyre being a Colony of this People; and the Daughter of it when instructed in the Christian Faith, acknowledging the Church of Tyre for its Mother-Church. The City in those times very strong both by Art and Nature, having on the North-side a Fort or Citadel mounted on an inaccessible Rock, and environed on all sides by the Sea; when that it was brought under the command of the Western Christians, was held by the Order of the *Dutch Knights*; and after on the South-side of the Port, which the *Templers* guarded. Won by the *Turks*, with the rest of this Country, from the Christians, and ruined by those often interchanges of Fortune, it only sheweth now some marks of the ancient greatness; the present *Sidon* standing somewhat West of the old, and having little more than a particular Description, in respect of what it was in her ancient Glories. The Haven at this time decayed, or serving at the best for Gallies; with a poor Blockish, rather for show than service: The Walls of no great strength, and as little beauty, and the Buildings ordinary; but that the *Mosque*, the *Bannia* of Bathy, and the *Cane* for Merchants, are somewhat fairer than the rest: yet gives a Title at this time to the *Emir of Sidon*, one of the greatest Princes of all this Country, of whom more hereafter. 5 *Berytus*, originally called *Gêris*, from *Gerges* the fifth Son of *Canaan*, took this new name from *Berith*, a Phœnician Idol herein worshipped; and now called *Barruth*. Destroyed by *Typhon* in the Wars of the Syrians against the Jews, it was re-edified by the Romans, by whom made a Colony, and honoured with the name of *Judæa Felix*, *Augustus* giving it the Privileges of the City of Rome. By *Herod* and *Agrippa* Kings of the Jews, much adorned and beautified; and of no mean esteem in the time of the Christians, when made an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of Tyre. Being a place of no great strength, nor aimed at by every new Invader, it hath sped better than the rest of these Cities (though stronger than this) retaining still her being, though not all her beauties; well stored with Merchandise, and well frequented by the Merchant. Nigh to this Town is a fair and fruitful Valley, which they call *St. Georges*, in which there is a Castle, and in that an Oratory of the same name also: All sacred to *St. George* the Martyr, who hereabouts is fabled to have killed the Dragon, and thereby delivered a Kings Daughter; but what Kings I know not, nor they neither. 6 *Biblos*, sometimes the Habitation of *Heva*, the fourth Son of *Canaan*, and then called *Heva*. Afterwards made the Regal Seat of *Cinyon*, Father and Grandfather of *Adonis* by his Daughter *Myrrha*; whereof we have already spoken when we were in *Cyprus*. Of such esteem in the Primitive Times of Christianity, that it was made a Bishops See; desolate and thrall unto the time it lost that honour, and became thrall unto the *Turks*. 7 *Orbolia*, called also *Antarados*, because opposite to *Aradus*, another old City of this Tract; but in after-Ages called *Torofa*, and by that name well known in the Histories of the Holy Wars, undertaken by the Western Christians: To whom it made such stout and notable resistance, that though besieged on all sides with united Forces (the whole Army formerly divided, sitting down before it yet after three Months hard siege, they were fain to leave the Town behind them, and content themselves with spoiling the adjoining Plain, more 8 *Tripoli*, seated in a rich and delightful Plain, more

fruitful than can be imagined; one of which Fruits they called by the name of *Annazzaza Franchi*, i.e. *Kill Frank*, because the Western Christians, whom they call by the name of *Franks*, died in great numbers by the intemperate eating of them. A Valley which is said to have yielded yearly to the Counts of *Tripoli* no less than yoccoo Crowns. As for the Town, it standeth about two miles from the Sea, at the foot of Mount *Libanus*; so called because built by the joint Purges of three Cities, that is to say, *Tyrus*, *Sidon*, and *Aradus*. Of no great note among the *Romans*, for ought I can find, till made one of the Episcopal Sees, belonging to the Archbishop of Tyre in the Primitive times. But thriving by degrees, it grew to principal account by the time that the Western Christians warred in the Holy Land: When conquered by them, it was made one of the Tetrarchies, or Capital Cities for the four Quarters of their Empire, which were *Jerusalem* for Palestine, *Edessa* for *Comagena* or *Mesopotamia*, *Antioch* for Syria, and this for Phœnicia. Committed at the first taking of it, to the custody of *Raymond* Earl of *Toulouse* in France; whose Pollicy, whilst it lasted, had from hence the Title of Earls of *Tripoli*. A City, which I know not by what good hap, hath sped better than any of those parts, retaining still as much in strength and beauty as ever it had, if not grown greater by the ruin of all the rest. Situate two miles from the Sea, as before is said; but not above half a mile from the Haven, which lieth upon the West side of it: Compaffed with a Wall, and fortified with seven Towers, of which the fourth is commonly called the Tower of *Love*, because built by an Italian Merchant, who was found in Bed with a Turkish Woman; for which he had forfeited his life, if not thus redeemed it. Before the Haven is an ill-neighbouring bank of Sand, which every day groweth greater and nearer to it; by which in time there is a Prophetic which faith it shall quite be choked: On both sides of it many Store-houses for the Merchant to stow his Goods in, and Shops to sell them: the way from thence unto the City, having on both sides very pleasant Gardens, more curiously kept, than usually amongst the *Turks*. The Town it self stretched out in Length from South to North is situate, as before was said, at the foot of *Libanus*, conveying a Brook into the Streets, and many pleasant Springs into the Chief of their Gardens: in which, and in those towards the Haven, and on other sides of the Town, the Inhabitants keep great store of Silks-worms, selling their Silks raw unto the *Italians*, and buying them again of them in the Stuff or Manufacture. Their Buildings generally low, and the Streets but narrow, except that leading towards *Alppo*, which is fair and open. Over the Brook at the East-side of the City, are built two Bridges; and on the South-side a strong Castle mounted on an Hill, built by the French when they had the Custody hereof: now Garrisoned for the Grand Signior with two hundred Janizaries. At this time it is looked on as the Metropolitan or chief City of Phœnicia, honoured with the residence of the Patriarch of the *Maronites*, for the most part dwelling in this Town and enriched with a great part of the Trade of *Scanderone*, or *Alexandrette*, removed thither some forty years ago by the *Turk* appointment; that Haven lying unopened, and more open to Pirates.

That the Phœnicians were descended of the Sons of *Canaan*, hath been proved already. And being descendants of that Stock, they were at the first governed like them, by the Chiefs of their Families, whom they honoured (as most Nations did) with the Title of Kings. But most of the *Canaanitish* Kings being overcome and slain by *Jehoyas*, *Agenor* a stout and prudent man, one

of those many Kings, which commanded in those parts of the Country, seeing how impossible it was to resist that Enemy, borrowed some Aid from *Agypt*, where he had his Breeding, to make good the Sea-coasts of his Country; in which the *Phligians*, who interposed upon those Coasts betwixt him and *Agypt*, concurred also with him. By which assistance, and by the fortifying of *Sidon*, Tyre, and *Ace* (or *Ptolemais*) which were all the Cities of this Country that were then in being, he did not only preserve his own Estate from the present danger, but left it so assured to the Kings succeeding, that neither *Solomon*, nor *David*, nor any of the Kings of *Israel*, durst attempt upon them. To *Agenor* succeeded his Son *Phœnix*, (*Cadmus*, his elder Brother, going into Greece in search of his Sister *Europa*, ravished by *Jupiter*, where he built *Thebes*, and therein reigned till his death) from whom, as some conceive, this Country had the name of Phœnicia. And though I have declared my self for another reason of this name, which I like much better; yet I shall rather yield to this, or to any other, than to that of *Bocharus*, who will have it derived from *Ben-Anak*, or the Sons of *Anak*, (as if the old Phœnicians were such Giantly men) which must first be contradicted in *Beauck*, then by the *Grecians* turned into *Phœnace*, and at last into *Phœnix*. Such a stretched and extorted Originations never please my fancy, who had much rather hearken to the old received opinions touching the first Originals of Names and Nations, where there is not very pregnant Reason to persuade me otherwise, than strain my self so far for a new Invention, or hearken unto those that do. But for what cause soever they were named Phœnicians, certain it is, they were a very active and industrious People, trading in most parts of the *Mediterranean*, and planting Colonies in many. *Thebes* and *Sephyra* in *Bœotia*, *Nola* in *Italy*, *Gades* in *Spain*; *Utica*, *Lepcis*, *Carthage* in *Africa*, were of their foundation. Nay, if we may believe *Bocharus*, there was no Island or Sea-coast in the *Mediterranean*, or on the *Cantabrian*, *Gallick*, or *British* Ocean, wherein they did not keep some Factory, or erect some Colony. What Kings succeeded *Phœnix* in a constant and continued course, I can no where find. Most like it, they were not under the command of any one Prince; and that besides the Kings of *Sidon*, where *Agenor* reigned, there were some others who called themselves Kings of Phœnicia also, as well as they. Of which sort were *Cynirus*, *Paphus*, and *Pigmalion*, who had their Regal Seat at *Biblos*, and Lorded it over a good part of *Cyprus*, as did also *Echus*, who gave some part of that Isle to *Tener*, as is said before. There is also found mention of one *Phasis*, a Phœnician King, at such time as the *Grecians* conquered *Troy*. After him none, till the subjugation of this Country by the *Babylonians*; *Tetramictes*, *Tomer*, and *Sirato*, mentioned in succeeding times, being Tributaries to the *Persian*, and no absolute Princes. Whether it were that the Phœnicians were made subject to the Kings of Tyre, or that the Kings thereof did nothing to preserve their memory, I am not able to determine. Certain it is, that the Kings of Tyre came in short time to be of very great repute, and to possess themselves of the Coasts of Syria and Phœnicia, and a great part of *Cyprus*; whereby, and by the benefit of their Trade and Shipping, they grew rich and powerful, and of great consideration in Affairs of the World. The Names and History of whom I shall here subjoin, in this ensuing Catalogue of

#### The KINGS of TYRE.

A. M.

1 Abibalur, as *Josephus*, *Abemalur*, as *Theophrastus*,

philus *Antiochenus* calleth him, Co-temporary with *Samuel*; supposed to be the same which the Son of *Syrach* mentioneth, *Ezechiel*. 46. 18.

2 *Saron*, the Son of *Abihah*, whom *David*, as *Enfibus* faith, compelled to pay tribute; complained of by that Prophet, *Plal*. 83. 7.

2931 3 *Hiram*, the Son of *Saron*, confederate with *David*, to whom he sent Cedars, with Carpenters and Malons, towards his Buildings in *Jerusalem*, after he had beaten thence the *Jebusites*; as he did afterwards to *Solomon* when he built the Temple. Much mentioned in the Books of *Kings* and *Chronicles*. 53.

2955 4 *Balestarnus*, or *Bazarnus*, succeeded *Hiram*. 7.

2962 5 *Abdasturnus*, Son of *Balestarnus*, slain by the four Sons of his own Nurse, having reigned nine years; the eldest of which four did for the space of twelve years usurp the Kingdom.

2983 6 *Atharim*, brother of *Abdasturnus*, recovered the Kingdom to his house, out of the hands of the *Chittriers*. 12.

2995 7 *Athurnus*, or *Athurnus*, as *Theophilus* calleth him, the younger Brother of *Athurnus*. 9.

3004 8 *Phelles*, the Brother of these three Kings, and youngest Son of *Balestarnus*, reigned eight months only.

9 *Ishabab*, called *Eibbas*, 1 King, 16, 13. Son of *Athurnus*, slew his Uncle *Phelles*, and so regained his Fathers Throne; before which he was the High-Priest of the Goddels *Altairah*, or *Altair*, (a Dignity next to that of the King.) He was the Father of *Jezebel*, the Wife of *Ahab*, to often mentioned in the Scripture. 32.

3037 10 *Badezar*, or *Bazar*, Son of *Eibbas*. 6.

3043 11 *Mertimus*, by some called *Matimus*, Son of *Badezar*, the Father of *Elia*, whom *Virgil* celebrateth by the name of *Dido*.

3052 12 *Pygmalion*, the Son of *Mertimus*, who slew *Stebus* the Husband of his Sister *Elisa* to get his riches; but yet was confuted by her prey; his Sister *Elisa* accompanied with her brother *Barras* (the founder of the Noble *Barras* Family, of which *Anahab* was) and her Sister *Amia*, flying into *Africa*, where she built the renowned City of *Carthage*. These names of his Successors we find not till we come to

13 *Eblurus*, descended from a Son of *Pygmalion*, who overthrowed the Fleet of *Salmanassar*, the *Affrian*, in the Port of *Tyre*.

14 *Eshobaler*, or *Eshbaal* II. who vaunted himself to be as wise as *Daniel*, and to know all secrets, as faith the Prophet *Ezekiel*, *Chap*. 28. 1, 2. And yet not wise enough to preferre his Kingdom from *Nabuchodonosor*'s who after a Siege of 13 years took the City of *Tyre*, and subject ed it unto his Empire.

15 *Baal*, the son and successor of *Eshbaal* the second, but a Tributary to the *Babylonians*.

After whose death the *Tyrians* had no more Kings, but were governed by Judges, or by such titular Kings only as were sent from *Babylon*. And though *Tyre* and *Sidon* did recover breath in the fall of the *Babylonian* Empire, and the usefulness of the *Persian*: yet being of the *Persian* faction, and having dependance on that Crown, they were by *Alexander* held unworthy to continue. Who therefore deposed *Strao* the King of *Sidon*, and overthrowed the City of *Tyre*; in the taking whereof he

had spent more time, than in forcing all the Cities of *Asia*.

After this time *Phoenicia*, being reckoned as a part of *Syria*, followed the fortune of the whole, subject unto the *Syrian* Kings of the house of *Seleucus*, till made a Province of the *Romans*; subject to the *Constantinopolitans* till the fatal year 636. when subdued by the *Saracens*. Successively conquered by the *Turky Christians*, and after their expulsion by the *Turky* again, then by the *Mamelucks* of *Egypt*, and finally with the rest of *Syria*, by *Selimus* the first united to the *Turkish* Empire. Subject at this time, or of late, to the Emir of the *Drusen*, (commonly called the Emir of *Sidon*) of which people we have spoken before. A people who in the time of *Amrath* the third, were governed by five Emirs or Princes, one of which was *Man-Ogli*, who so resolutely refused his Court or residence at *Andriene*, a strong place situate on a hill, and was of that wealth, that he sent to make his peace unto the above-named *Ibrahim* 320 Arcubus, 20 Packs of *Andriene* Silks, and 50000 Ducats. At a second time he presented him with 50000 Ducats more, 480 Arcubus, 1000 Goats, 150 Camels, 150 Bulls, 1000 Oxen, and 200 Weathers. By these rich gifts we may not a little conjecture of the Revenue of the present Emir of *Sidon*: who since the year 1600. hath ruled almost all the Countries belonging once to five Princes, under his own Empire, containing the Towns and Territories of *Gaza*, *Barus*, *Sidon*, *Tyre*, *Acra*, *Saffet*, (or *Tiberias*) his seat of residence, *Nazareth*, *Cana*, *Mount Tabor*, *Elkiffe*, &c. This present Emir, by name *Faccidine*, was not long since driven out of his Country by the *Turks*, and forced to fly to *Florence*; but he again recovered his own, laid siege to *Damascus*, and caused a notable Rebellion in *Asia*; not quenched in a long time after. And finally, having possessed himself of the City and Castle of *Damascus*, prepared for the taking of *Hierusalem* also, threatening to make the *Chitians* once more Masters of it. This was in the year 1613. How he sped afterward, and whether his Son, as stout and valiant as himself, hath since his death succeeded him in his Estates, I am not able to say: having of late heard nothing of them.

#### S Y R I A P R O P R I A.

**S Y R I A P R O P R I A**, or *Syria* especially so called, is bounded on the East, with *Palmyrene*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *Cilicia*; on the South with *Phoenicia*; and some part of *Cala-Syria*.

This part of *Syria* I take to be the Land of *Hamath*, so often mentioned in the Scriptures, the Kingdom of *Ti* or *Tou*, next neighbour, and sworn Enemy to *Adadazar* King of *Aram-Sobab*: who hearing of the great discomforture which *David* had given unto that King, sent his Son *Joram*, or *Adoram*, for the Scripture call him his Son *Joram*, with Presents to him, as well to congratulate his success, as to be assured for times to come of his love and amity. So called from *Hamath* one of the Sons of *Canaan*, who fixed his dwelling in these parts, and left many Cities of that name in *Syria* and *Palmyrene* (which we shall meet withal in the course of this work) either built by him or his Pottery. Now that the Land of *Hamath* was this part of *Syria*, I am persuaded to believe by these following reasons, viz. 1. From the neighbourhood hereof to *Arpad* or *Arphad*, as in other places, as in *Ifa*. 10. 9. and *Tier*. 49. 23. So in other places, as in *Ifa*. 10. 9. and *Tier*. 49. 23. 2. King. viz. Where are the gods of *Hamath* and *Arphad*? 2 King. 18. 34. The Kings of *Hamath*, and the King of *Arphad*.

1637. 13. And we know well that *Arpad* was the name of an Island over-against the mouth of the River *Euphrates*, one of the Rivers of this Country: so called from *Arpad*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*, alluded to by the *Greeks* and *Romans* in the name of *Aradus*; by which this Isle was known unto them. 2ly. By the vicinity which it hath to *Palmyrene*, the *Aram-Sobab* of the Scriptures, to which it joyneth on the East, with the King whereof (as bordering Princes use to be) the Kings of *Hamath* for the most part were in open War. Of which see 2 Sam. 8. 9. 10. and 1 Chron. 8. 9. 10. 3ly. From the authority of *St. Hierom*, who finding mention in the Prophet *Amos*, *Chap*. 6. 2. of a City named *Hamath* the Great, determineth it to be that City which afterwards was called *Antiochia* (the principal City of this part, and indeed of *Syria*: ) the title of *Great* being added to it, to differentiate it from some other Cities of this name of inferior note. And 4ly. from comparing the places in Scripture, with the like passage in *Josaphat* the Historiographer. The Scripture telleth us, that *Hierusalem* being possessed by the *Babylonians*, *Zedekiah* the King was brought Prisoner to *Nebuchodonosor*, being then at *Riblah*, 2 King. 2. 6. to *Riblah* in the Land of *Hamath*, ver. 2. 1. where the poor Prince first saw his Children slain before his face; and then miserably deprived of sight, that he might not see his great misfortunes, was led away to *Babylon*. Ask of *Josaphat* where this sad Tragedy was acted, and he will tell us that it was at *Reblath* (or *Riblah*) a City of *Syria*, *Antiq.* l. 10. c. 10. And if we ask *Saint Hierom* what he thinks of *Reblath*, he will tell us that it was *Urbs ea quam nunc Antiochiam vocant*, the City which in following times was called *Antioch*. On these grounds I conceive this part of *Syria* to be the land of *Hamath* intended in the Texts of Scripture above-cited; though there were other Towns and Territories of the time name also.

The Country is naturally fertile; the hedges on the high-way sides affording very good fruits, and the adjoining fields affording to the Passenger the shade of Fig-trees. Were it not naturally so, it would not be much helped by Art or Industry as being very meagrely peopled, and those few people without any encouragement either to plant fruits, or manure the Land. Their Sheep are commonly fair and fat, but so overlaid in the tail, both with flesh and fleec, that they hang in long wreaths unto the ground, dragged after them with no small difficulty. *Pliny* observes it in his time, that the tails of the *Syrian* Sheep were a Cubit long, and had good store of wool upon them, *Natur. Hist.* l. 8. c. 48. and Modern Travellers report, that the tails of these sheep do frequently weigh 25 pound weight, and sometimes 30 pounds and upwards. The like hath also been affirmed of the sheep of *Palmyrene* comprehended in old times in the name of *Syria*. And that may probably be the reason why the rumps and tails of Sheep (and of no beast else) were ordained to be offered up in sacrifice, of which *Lev*. 9. But besides the store of Wool which they have from the sheep, they have also great plenty of Cotton Wool, which groweth there abundantly; with the seeds whereof they sow their fields, as we ours with Corn. The stalk no bigger than that of Wheat, but as tough as a Bean; the head round and bearded, in the size and shape of a *Medlar*, and as hard as a stone; which ripening breaketh, and is delivered of a white soft *Bomb*, intermixed with seeds; which parted with an instrument, they keep the seeds for another sowing, and sell the Wool unto the Merchant: a greater quantity thereof issuing from that little shell, than can be imagined by those who have not seen it.

The people heretofore were very industrious, especially

about their Gardens; the fruitful effects whereof they found in the increase of their Herbs, and Plants. Whence the Proverb, *Multa Syrorum Olera*. But whilst they were observed to be very gluttonous, spending whole days and nights in feasting, great scoffers, and much given to laughter. Crafty and subtle in their dealings, not easily to be trusted but on good security; and so were the *Phoenicians*, their next neighbours also. Hence came the *Greek*: Adage which *Suidas* speaketh of, *Σύροι ὄρεσι θοῖνας*, *Syri contra Phoenices*, used by them when two crafty Knaves endeavored to deceive each other. They were noted also to be superstitious, great Worshipers of the Goddels *Fortune*, but greater of their *Syrian* Goddels, whatsoever she was. Affirmed by *Plutarch* to be a Womanish and effeminate Nation, prone unto tears, and such as on the death of their friends would hide themselves in caves from the sight of the Sun. *Herodian* addeth, that they were wavering and unconstant, lovers of Plays and publick Pastimes, and easily stirred up unto Innovations. But at this time, they are almost beaten out of all these humours, having been so often cowed and conquered, that they are now grown fervently officious to them that govern them: not without cause, defective in that part of industry which before enriched them.

Where by the way we must observe, that this Character of the people, and that of the Country belong not to this part alone, exclusively of those which follow to it, to all *Syria*, and every part and Province of it, except *Phoenicia*, which being planted by a people of another Stock, hath had its character by it self. The whole by *Plutarch* divided, besides *Comagena*, *Palmyrene*, and *Cala-Syria*, into many petit Regions, and Subdivisions, as 1. *Pieria*. 2. *Casius*, from the hills adjoining, 3. *Seleucia*. 4. *Apamene*. 5. *Laodicea*. 6. *Cyrrhestica*. 7. *Chalcidice*. And 8. *Chalybanotis*, from their principal Cities. Of which in all he murther up the names of an hundred and upwards, then of some note, most of them now grown out of knowledge, and many of them of no mark or observation in the course of business. So that omitting his method, we will follow our own, and take notice only of such places as ancient were, or at this present are, of most observation and importance in the course of Story: with reference notwithstanding to the subdivisions made by *Plutarch*, as they come in my way, reckoning *Cyrrhestica*, *Chalybanotis*, *Casius*, and the Territories of *Seleucus*, *Laodicea*, and *Apamene*, into *Syria Propria*; and *Pieria* into *Comagena*.

First then to begin with those Cities which lye most towards the East, we have in *Cyrrhestica*, 1. *Zengma*, on the banks of the River *Emphrates*, memorable for the passage of *Alexander the Great*, who there passed over his Army on a Bridge of Boats. 2. *Berras*, supposed by some both ancient and modern Writers, to be that which is now called *Aleppo*, but the position of the place agreeth not with that supposition; *Aleppo* being placed by our modern *Geographes*, in the 72 degree of Longitude, and the 38 of Latitude: whereas *Berras* is assigned by *Plutarch*, to the 36 degree of Latitude, and the 71 of Longitude. Besides that, the River *Sigus*, on which *Aleppo* is situate, keepeth it self almost on an even course in the Latitude of 37 between 20 and 30 minutes over: which is more by a degree and a half than the site assigned unto *Berras*. 3. *Cyrrus*, as in the *Latin* Copies of *Plutarch*, mistook for *Cyrrhus*, once the chief City of this part, from hence called *Cyrrhestica*. 4. *Heraclea*, near which *Minerva* had a Temple; in which, as in that sacred to her in *Lacedaemon*, they used once yearly to offer a *Virgin* for a Sacrifice, but afterwards on the sight of that gross impiety, changed it to an *Hort*. 5. *Regia*, now *Ragia*, two days journey from *Antioch*, took by the Christians in the be-

gaining of the Wars for the Holy Land. 6 Hierapolis, of great renown in those dark times of Ignorance and Idolatry for the Syrian Goddess therein worshipped from whence it had the name of Hierapolis, or the Holy City: being formerly by the Grecians called Callinice by the Syrians, *Magog*; one of the first seats of *Magog* the Son of *Japhet*, and from him denominated. The Goddess so elevated in those wretched times, that from all parts, *Affrica*, *Babylonia*, *Arabia*, *Gilicia*, *Cappadocia*, and indeed what not, they brought her many rich gifts and costly offerings. Now himself, who scoffed at all Religions else, being for a while a great Votary of this Syrian Idol, though afterwards he grew weary of her, and defiled her with urine. The Temple built by *Stratonice*, the wife of *Selenus*, in the middle of the City, compassed with a double wall, about the height of 300 fathoms: the roof thereof inlaid with Gold, and made of such fragrant and sweet-smelling wood, that the cloaths of them which came thither retained the scent thereof for a long time after. Without the Temple there were places inclosed for Oxen, and Beasts of sacrifice: and not far off a Lake of 200 fathom in depth, wherein they kept their sacred fishes: the Priests attending here for their several Offices, amounting in number to three hundred, besides many more subservient Ministers. The tricks and jugglings of these Priests to deceive the people, he that list to see, may find them copiously described in the *Metamorphosis of Apuleius*: which, changing both the names and names may serve for a relation of those galleries and Arts of *Leger-de-main* which the *Friars* and *Pardoners* have practised in the Church of *Rome*: *Chalybeatus*, whence the parts adjoining were called *Chalybeum*, or *Aleppo*, *Joffelus*, and some others were called *Chalybeum*, or *Aleppo*, but on no good grounds: this City having one degree less of Northern Latitude, than *Beræa* had. 8 *Barbarus*, in the same subdivision, near the banks of *Euphrates*, 9 *Chalce*, the principal of that part of *Syria Propria*, which is called *Chalcidice*, but not otherwise memorable, 10 *Telmessus*, another Town of the same division, and as little famous. 11 *Selenus*, so named from the Founder of it, the first Eastern Monarch of that Race, and the greatest Builder of the World, founding nine Cities of this name, sixteen in memory of his Father *Antiochus*, six by the name of *Laudice* his Mother, and three in honour of *Amama* his first Wife; besides many others of great note in *Greece* and *Asia*, either new built, or beautified and repaired by him. From this the Country hereabouts had the name of *Selenus*. 12 *Laudice*, one of the Cities founded by *Selenus*, in honour of *Laudice* his Mother, from which the Region adjoining is called *Laudice*: Built by him in the place where formerly stood the City *Rhamnus*, so called from a certain Shepherd, who being strook with a flash of lightning, cried out amazedly *Rhamnus*, that is to say, *Deus ad excelsis*; before which time it had been named *Lemæa Ad excelsis*, from the whiteness of the Sea-cliffs near to which it is situated: the Country round about commended anciently for the best Wines, and choice of very excellent Fruits. 13 *Amama*, so named in honour of *Amama*, the Wife of *Selenus*; which together with *Laudice* and *Selenus* before mentioned, having the same Founder, and maintaining a strict League of amity with one another, were commonly called the Three Sisters. From this the Country near is called *Amama*. 14 *Emesa*, (now *Hama*) the Episcopal See of *Exephinus*, hence called *Emesus*, who flourished in the time of *Constantinus*, the Son of *Constantine*: in whose name are extant certain Homilies, justly conceived to be of a later date. The City seated in a spacious and fruitful Plain of *Amama*, watered with many pleasant and cheerful Rivers: once of great note, as may

easily be conjectured from the walls thereof, which are still perfect and entire, built of polished stone, and of very large circuit; but the dwelling-houses so decayed, that it affordeth nothing worthy observation. 15 *Epiphania*, in the castræ or subdivision of *Casius*, called at first *Hamath* from *Hamath* a Son of *Canaan*, the founder of it; and upon that account mistaken by *Strabo* for another Town of the same name; in the Tribe of *Naphthali*; so different from this place both in Longitude and Latitude (as we shall shew hereafter when we come to *Palestine*) that they can by no means be the same. But that old Town being gone to ruin it was repaired, if not re-edified by *Antiochus Epiphanius* King of *Syria*, who thereupon commanded it to be called *Epiphania*; obeyed therein as *Josephus* telleth us, by the *Maccedonians*, though the *Syrians* still called it *Amath*, as in former times. *Antiq. l. 1. c. 7. 16 Larissa*, which still preserveth its old name, being now called *Lara*; much mentioned in the Wars of the Holy Land, especially for the death of *Baldwin* the first, Brother of *Gedry of Bouillon*, and second King of *Hierusalem*, *Anno 1118. 17 Gebel*, the *Gabala* of *Ptolemy*, and others of the ancient Writers, situate on the South of *Laudice*, from which twelve miles distant; mentioned *Plin. l. 5. c. 22* confederate with *Tyre*, and other uncircumcised Nations, in their hatred and designs against the *Israhelites*: at this day called *Gabella* (with little difference from the old name of it) and by that name remembered in the Stories of the Holy Wars. 18 *Albaria*, distant two days march from *Antioch*, remembered also in the Wars of the Holy Land; 19 *Aradus*, one of the Co-founders of *Triphis*, situate in a rocky Island of a mile in compass, directly opposite to the mouth or influx of the River *Eleutherus*, and distant from the Continent about twenty furlongs. So called from *Aradus*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*, and mentioned by that name in the Prophet *Ezekiel 27. 8. 11*. This once a Kingdom of its self, containing not this Island only, but some part of the Continent; especially about *Antaradus* (so called because built over against it) situate on the Northern banks of the River *Eleutherus*, of which we have spoken in *Phoenicia*. 20 *Daphne*, about five miles from *Antioch*; but afterwards by the continual enlargements of that City, accounted as the Suburb to it: so named of *Daphne*, one of the Mistresses of *Apollon*, who was here worshipped by the name of *Apollon Daphneus*, and had here his Oracle and his Grove, with other the Additaments appertaining unto those Idolatries as much esteemed of, but more sumptuous than those of *Delphos*. The Grove about ten miles in circuit, environed round with *Cypresses*, and other trees, so tall and close to one another, that they suffered not the Sun to enter in his grateful heats: the ground perpetually covered with the choicest Tapestry of Nature, watered with many a pleasant stream, derived from the *Cappalian* Fountains as it was given out; and yielding the most excellent Fruits both for taste and suture, to which the wind and air participating the sweetness of the place, did add a most delightful influence.

A place devised for pleasure, but abused to lust: he being held unworthy of the name of a man, who transgressed not himself unto a Beast, or trod on this unholy ground without his *Circus*, inasmuch as they which had a care of their good names, did forbear to haunt it. A fuller description of it he that lists to see, may find in the first Book and eighteenth Chapter of *Solomon's Ecclesiastic History*, who is copious in it. The Temple said to have been built by *Selenus* also, renowned for the Oracle there given, by which *Adrian* was foretold of his being Emperour; and therefore much referred to by *Julian* the *Apokata*, for that purpose also. But the body of

Babyls

the *Martyr* and Bishop of *Antioch*, being removed thither by the command of his Brother *Gallus*, then created *Cesar* by *Constantinus*, the Devil and his Oracles were both frightened away, as the Devil did himself confess to *Julian*, who being desirous to learn here the success of his intended Expedition into *Persia*, received this Answer, That no Oracle could be given so long as those Divine Bones were so near the Shrine. Nor was it long after, before the Idol and the Temple were consumed by a fire from Heaven, as was avowed by those who observed the fall of it: though *Julian* did impute it to the innocent *Christians*; and in revenge caused many of their Churches to be burned to ashes. 21 *Antioch*, situate in that part hereof which is called *Casius*, first built, or began rather by *Antigonus*, when Lord of *Asia*, by whom named *Antonia*; but finished and enlarged by *Selenus*, after he had overthrown and slain him at the Battle of *Hama*. Built near the place, and partly out of the Ruins of an ancient City, in the second Book of *Kings* called *Rabbah* in the Land of *Hamath*, *Hamath the Great*, in the sixth of *Amos*; by *Josephus* and the *Syrians*, *Reblis*. Memorable in those days for the Tragedies of *Jehohas* and *Zedechias*, Kings of *Judah*; the first of which was here deprived of his Crown and Liberty, by *Pharash Necho* King of *Egypt*, 2 King, 23. 33. the other of his Eyes and Children, by the command of *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon*, as was said before. In following times it was by some Greek Writers called *Epiphania*, from the nearness of it to that Grove: as afterwards in the times of *Christianity*, by the name of *Theopolis*, or the City of God; either from the many Miracles there done in the Primitive time, or from the great improvement which the *Christian* Faith did here receive, where the *Disciples* first obtained the name of *Christians*. The Royal Seat for many Ages of the Kings of *Syria*; and in the flourish and best fortune of the *Roman* Empire, the ordinary Residence of the *Præfuit* or Governor of the Eastern Provinces; next, of the *Præfuit* *Prætorii Orientis*, who had not only the superintendency over the *Dioecesis* of the Orient, though that large enough; but also of the *Dioecesis* of *Egypt*, *Asia*, *Pontus*, *Thrace*, extending to his Jurisdiction into all the parts of the then known World. Honoured also with the Residence of many of the *Roman* Emperours, especially of *Venus* and *Valens*, who spent here the greatest part of their times; and from the first dawning of the Gospel, with the seat of the *Patriarch*. A Title of such eminency in all times of the Church, the being in account to the See of *Rome* (till *Constantine* being made the Imperial City, got precedence of it) that there are at this time no less than four great *Prælates* which pretend unto it: that is to say, the *true Patriarch*, governing the *Christians* of those parts, whom they call *Syrians* or *Melchites*; the *Pfæda-Patriarch* of the *Jacobite* and *Maronite* Sectaries, both which for the greater credit to their *Sejins*, do assume this Title; and finally, a titular *Patriarch* nominated by the Pope; who since the time that the *Western Christians* were possessed of these Eastern Countries, hath assumed a power unto himself of nominating *Patriarch* for *Alexandria*, *Hierusalem*, and this City of *Antioch*.

The City seated on both sides of the River *Orontes*, about twelve miles distant from the Shores of the *Mædian*; the River *Pharar* passing on the South-side of it. By Art and Nature fortified even to admiration: compassed with a double Wall, the outmost of which was of Stone, the other of Brick, with four hundred and sixty Towers in the Walls, and an impregnable Citadel at the East-end thereof; and on the other side defended with big broken Mountains, whereunto was

adjoining a deep Lake, coming out of the River *Pharar*, before-mentioned. Adorned in former times with many sumptuous Palaces, and magnificent Temples, answerable to the Reputation of so great a City; till taken by the *Saracens*, and after by the *Turks* and *Mamelucks*, men careless of all State and Beauty in their affairs of State, it began to grow unto decay. Recovered by the *Western Christians* from the power of the *Turks*, after a Siege of seven Months, *June 3. Anno 1098*, confirmed in their possession by a great and memorable Victory, got in the very fight hereof within few days after (*June 28*) obtained against *Corbegas*, Lieutenant of the *Persian Sultan*; in which, with the loss of four thousand and two hundred of their own, they slew a hundred thousand of the Enemy. The Town and Territory given by the Conquerors to *Bohemund* a Noble Norman, and Prince of *Tarentum*; who by practising with one *Pyrrhus*, who had the command of one of the chief Towers thereof, afterwards called *St. Georges* Tower, was secretly let into the City, and so made way for all the rest. *Bohemund* thus made the Prince, or as some say, King of *Antioch*, left it to *Bohemund* his Son about ten years after: succeeded in this Principate by *Tancred* and *Rogers*, Princes of great Renown in those Holy Wars; which last unfortunately slain by the *Turks*, not far from *Alleppo*, in the year 1120. *Baldwin* the second having revenged his death by a signal Victory, joyined this Estate to the Kingdom of *Hierusalem*. Betrayed about sixty years after this, that is to say, in the year 1188. it came into the Power of *Saladine*, the victorious King of *Egypt* and *Damascus*, and therewithal no fewer than five and twenty Cities which depended on the fortunes of it: the glories of this famous City so declining after this last Tragedy (but whether laid a waste of full purpose, or destroyed by the injury of the time, I am not able to declare) that it is grown the Sepulchre of what once it was, and lieth buried in its own sad Ruins, hardly preserving the repute of a sorry Village. Such is the infatigability of all worldly Glories. Some other Towns there are in this part of *Syria*, but not to be remembered the same day with *Antioch*.

As for the Story of this Province, as a State distinct, we find it had a King of its own, called the King of *Hamath* (the Kingdom of *Tol* or *Ton* before remembered) who together with the King of *Arphad*, commanded in this part of *Syria*, and the Isles adjoining. *Vassals* in time succeeding to the Kings of *Tyre*, who lorded it over all the Sea-coasts thereof, and consequently had great influence on the Islands also. And it continued in this State till the *Affyrans* Kings began to turn their Forces Westward; when added to that Empire by *Tiglab Pilefer*, after the subversion of the Kingdom of *Damascus*; or by *Salmassiff*, after the destruction of that of *Israel*. The proud but dreadful vaunt which *Sennacherib*, the Successor of those mighty Monarchs, made to *Hezekiah*, viz. *Where are the Gods of Hamath and Arphad?* shews clearly, that those Kingdoms had been conquered not long before; and therefore needs by *Salmassiff*, or *Tiglab Pilefer*. Afterwards, in the struggles between the *Babylonians* and *Affyrans*, for the chief Command, it was a while at the devotions of the King of *Egypt*, being at *Reblis* in this Province, that *Jehobaz* King of *Judah* was put into Bonds, by the command of *Pharash Necho*, as was said before. But *Necho* being not long after vanquished by *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon*, it returned again to that Crown, and after followed the same fortunes with the rest of *Syria*.



that *Alam*, or *Helam*, next unto which *David* discomfited that great Army of the *Mesopotamians*, mention whereof is made 2 *Sam.* 10. 16, 17. 9 *Rafabba*, a Town of note in the time of *Ptolemy*; but of greater in the Holy Scripture, where it is represented to us by the name of *Rafab*, *Jsa.* 3. 20. *Rafab Civitas Syriae*, as Saint *Hierom* hath it: and if a Town of Syria, then most like this 10 *Beab*, and 11 *Berobab*, two other Cities of this Kingdom, taken by *David* in his War against *Hadad-ezar*, 2 *Sam.* 8. 8. the last supposed to be the *Barabene* of *Ptolemy*, though placed by him among the Towns of Arabia the Desert, to which it seems it was allotted in the change of time.

This part of Syria as the rest, was once a distinct Kingdom of it self, by the name of the Kingdom of *Sobab*, or of *Aram-Sobab*. The first King thereof, whose name occurs in Holy Scripture, being *Rebub*, the Co-temporary of *Saul* King of *Israel*, by whom discomfited in battle, as is said 1 *Sam.* 14. 47. But *Adad-ezar* the Son of *Rebub*, a Prince of greater power and valour than his Father was, having brought all the neighbouring Kings under his command (as is said 2 *Sam.* 10. 19.) conceived himself a fit match for *David*, and thereupon opposed his passage, as he went to recover his border at the River *Euphrates*. In which Action though he lost a thousand Chariots, and twenty thousand Foot, and seven hundred Horse, yet would he not end the war: but first with the *Syrians* of *Damascus*, and after with the *Amorites* and their Confederates; and finally by the aid of the *Mesopotamians*, renewed the Quarrel. But being discomfited also in this last enterprise with the loss of forty thousand and seven hundred men, and his life to boot, the Kingdom of *Zobab* was brought under by the Kings of *Damascus*. The story of this war we have in 2 *Sam.* ch. 8. v. 10. in 1 *Chron.* ch. 18. and 1 *King.* 11. 23, 24. yet were not the Kings of *Damascus* so well settled in it, but that *David* had possessed himself of *Beab* and *Berobab*, and other pieces of importance: the Regal City of *Hamath-Zobab* being won by *Solomon*, and many of the best Towns of it built by him to assure his Conquest. But the Kingdom of *Solomon* being rent in pieces in the next Succession, the Kingdom of *Zobab* fell unto those of *Damascus*: and so continued till *Damascus* it self was conquered by the Kings of *Affria*: unless perhaps that *Hamath*, which *Jeroboam* the second is said to have subdued (together with *Damascus* it self) to the Crown of *Israel*, 2 *King.* 14. 28. were this *Hamath-Zobab*, as perhaps it was.

After this nothing memorable in the affairs of this Country, till the time of *Gallienus* the Roman Emperor: during whose reign, amongst the rest who *cannon*ed that Empire betwixt themselves, commonly called the Thirty Tyrants, *Odenatus* a man of great power and virtue assumed the Imperial habit, and took unto him the command of these parts of Syria, together with *Mesopotamia*, and some other Provinces, which he had conquered from *Sapor* the King of *Persia*: against whom he had to good an hand, that he discomfited him in battle, seiz'd upon his Treasures, and took many of his Nobles, and most of his Concubines. For which great acts admitted partner in the Empire by *Gallienus* who was not long after slain by *Maurinus* his Cousin German. He by that murder hoped to obtain the Principality of *Palmyrene* (for by that name it was now called) but in that deceived. For after his death, *Zenobia* his unfortunate Widow, a most masculine Lady, not only preserved the Principality of *Palmyrene* for the use of her Children; but took upon her both the Purple habit, and the command of his Army: which she managed with great wisdom and gallantry, the rest of the time of *Gallienus*, all the reigns of *Clau-*

*dus*, and *Quintillus*, his two next Successors. But vanquished and took Prisoner by *Aurelianus* (who had the happiness to unite the broken limbs of that Empire into as strong a body as ever formerly) the wasted in triumph through Rome. The terror of her name, and the unsuccessfulness of the fight, so generally heightening the expectation; *Ut ea specie nihil unquam esset pompabilis, fatis Trebellius Pollio*. That never any of them was esteemed so glorious. A Lady of so strong a virtue, and of such command upon her self, that it is said never to have made use of her husbands company when she perceived her self with child. After this nothing singular in the story of *Palmyrene*, but when all the rest of Syria was subdued by the Christians of the West, this Province and the next only was made good against them by the Turkish Sultans of *Damascus*.

## COELO-STRIA.

COELO-STRIA is bounded on the East with *Palmyrene*, and Arabia Deserta; on the West, with *Palsetine*; on the North, with *Palmyrene*, and some part of Syria Propria, from which divided by the interposition of Mount *Libanus*; on the South, with *Ismaea* and Arabia Deserta also.

This is the Syria so much mentioned in the Books of Kings and Chronicles, called by the Greeks, *Calo-Syria*, i.e. Syria Cava, because partly situate in the hollow Valleys interjected betwixt *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*, and sometimes also *Syro-Phoenicia*, from the intermixture of those people; as the *Phoenicians* which went with *Dido* into *Africa*, were called *Libo-Phoenices*. By the Romans when made a distinct Province of that Empire, it had the name of *Phoenice Libani*, or *Phoenice Libanensis*, to difference it from the other *Phoenicia*, which they call *Martima*. But before all this by the Hebrews named *Damasc*, Syria *Damascena* in the Latin, from *Damasc* the chief City of it: unless perhaps we should rather say, that *Aram-Damasc* contained only that lay between the Mountains of *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*, the rest being added by the Romans, out of the neighbouring parts of *Palsetine* and Arabia Deserta, as perhaps it was.

Chief Rivers hereof, are 1 *Abana*, and 2 *Pharfar*, the Rivers of *Damascus*, as the Scripture calleth them, 2 *King.* 5. The one of which is thought to be the River *Adonis*, spoken of already; the other that which *Ptolemy* calleth *Chrysorrhoas*, or the golden Flood; which rising in the Hills of this Country, passeth by *Damascus*, and so together with the other into the *Mediteranean* Sea. Chief Mountains of it, 1 *Aladamas* by the *Phoenicians* called *Syrian*, by the *Amorites*, *Samir*; a ridge of Hills which beginning at the East-point of *Anti-Libanus*, bend directly Southwards, shutting up on that side the Land of *Israel*, whereof more in *Palsetine*. 2 *Hippus*, a large of Mountains in the South parts of this Province, where it bordereth on Arabia Deserta.

Towns of most consideration in it. 1 *Helipsis* so called from an Image of the Sun there worshipped in the time of *Paganisms*; now *Belebec*, or (as some say) *Ealbec*. 2 *Chalcis*, more Eastward toward *Damascus*, which gave the title of a King to *Ptolemy Menelaus*, and his Son *Lysanias*, the Kingdom then extending over the City of *Abila*, and the whole Province of *Ismaea* in *Palsetine*. But that Family being either expired or grown out of favour, and *Abila* with *Ismaea* otherwise disposed of, the title of the King of *Chalcis*, with the Town and Territory, was given to *Herod*, brother of *Agrippa* the first, King of *Jewry*. Erroneously supposed by some Learned men to be that *Chalcis*, from which the Country called

Chalcidien

*Chalcidien* takes denomination; that *Chalcis* being placed by *Ptolemy* a degree and a half more East than *Damascus*, and two degrees more towards the North; where as this *Chalcis* lieth on the West of that City, in the shades of *Libanus*, and in the very same degree of Northern Latitude. 3 *Abila*, seated at the foot of *Libanus*, betwixt *Helipsis* and *Chalcis*, from whence the Country round about it is called *Abilene*; given to *Lysanias*, the Son of the former *Lysanias*, King of *Chalcis*, with the Title of *Tetrarch*, Mentioned *Luke* 3. 1. with those other Princes which shared *Palsetine* amongst them. Not that he was the Son of *Herod*, as anciently *Beda* and *Enthymias*, and of late times some very indolent men have been of opinion: but partly because the Cities of the *Chalcis* and *Abila* of right belonged to those of the Tribe of *Naphthali*m (though never conquered or possessed by them) and so to be accounted a part of *Palsetine*; and partly because the Tetrarchy of *Abilene*, when Saint *Luke* wrote that Gospel, was possessed together with the rest by King *Agrippa*. Restored (as it seemeth) to the former Family, after his decease; for known it was by the name of *Abila Lysania* in the time of *Ptolemy*. 4 *Adida*, memorable for the Victory which *Aretas* King of Arabia obtained near unto it, against Alexander King of *Jewry*, the Kingdom of Syria then lying open as a prey to the next Invaders. 5 *Hippus*, or *Hippone*, as *Pliny* calleth it, not far from the Mountain of that name. 6 *Capitolias*, now called *Sanet*, 7 *Gadara*, 8 *Scythopolis*, 9 *Gerasa*, and 10 *Philadelpheia*, reckoned by *Ptolemy* as Cities of *Calo-Syria*; but of right belonging unto *Palsetine*, where we meant to take notice of them. 11 *Eden*, at the foot of Mount *Libanus*, now a Town of the *Maronites*; and anciently of such esteem, that the whole Country of *Damascus* was called *Beit-Eden*, *Amos* 1. 5. 12 *Damascus*, situate in a large Plain environed with Hills, and watered with the River *Chrysorrhoas*, which, with a great noise descendeth from the Mountains, and so abundantly serveth the City, that not only most of the Houses have their Fountains of it, but their Orchards and Gardens have some Rivulets conveyed into them. The Country round about abundantly enrich'd with plenty of most excellent Wines (the Vines hereof bearing Grapes all the year long) and great store of Wheat; as their Orchards with variety of most delicate Fruits: our *Damascens*, (or *Pruna Damascena*, as the Latins call them) coming first from hence; as also our *Damask* Roses, but infinite sort of their natural sweetnels, by the transplantation. A place so furnishing of Delights, so glib about with odoriferous and curious Gardens, that the vile Impostor *Mabomet* would never be persuaded to come into it, for fear (as himself was used to say) left being ravished with the inexpressible pleasures of it, he should forget the business he was sent about, and make there his Paradise. But *Mubavius*, one of his Successors, having no such scruple, removed the Regal Seat unto it, where it continued (for the most part) till the building of *Bagdad* by *Bagiafer* the twentieth *Caliph*, about an hundred years after this Removal: the Regal Seat before that time being at *Mecca*, *Cufa*, or some other of the best Towns of Arabia Felix. The chief Buildings of it, of late times (till destroyed by the *Tartars*) were a strong Castle, in the opinion of those times held to be impregnable; and not without great difficulty forced by *Tamarlane*, whom nothing was able to withstand; as was majestic a Church, garnished with forty sumptuous Porches, and no fewer than 9000 Lanthorns of Gold and Silver; which with 30000 people in it (who fled thither for Sanctuary) was by the said *Tamarlane* most cruelly and unmercifully burnt, and pulled down unto

the ground. Repaired by the *Mamaluks* of *Egypt*, when Lords of Syria, it hath since flourished in Trade, the People being industrious, and celebrated for most excellent Artizans; the branching of Satins, and fine Linen, which we call by the name of *Damaski*, being amongst many others, one of their Inventions. Renowned in the Old Testament for the Kings hereof and the birth of *Eliezer*, *Abraham's* Steward (so honourably ancient was this City); and in the New, for the Conversion of St. Paul, who first preached the Gospel in this place, and here to narrowly escaped the snares of his Enemies, that he was fain to be let down out of the House in which he was, by the help of a Basket.

But ancient and honourable though this City of *Damascus* was, we find nothing of the Story of it, till the time of *David*; the Kings thereof until those days, being conceived to have been Homagers and Tributaries to the Kings of *Zobab*. The first Exploit ascribed unto them in the Holy Scripture, is their coming to the aid of *Adad-ezar*, upon his first defeat by *David*: in which action having lost 22000 men, they were so broken, that they did not only suffer *David* to put Garrisons in the best Cities of *Damascus*, but patiently became his Servants, and brought Presents to him, 2 *Sam.* 8. 5, 6. The name of this unfortunate Prince not made known in Scripture, is by *Josephus* affirmed out of *Nicolaus Damascus*, to have been *Adad* (a name much cherished and assumed by the Kings Successors) who keeping constant to the party of *Adad-ezar* in his following Wars, was at last slain with him, in that great discomfure which *David* gave them, mentioned in 2 *Sam.* ch. 10. v. 18. In which Text the Scripture telleth us nothing of the death of those Kings, that being supplied to us by *Josephus* out of their Records; who also added, that *Rezin*, one of the chief Commanders of *Adad-ezar*, taking this advantage, not only usurped his Masters Kingdom, but made himself Master of the Kingdom of *Damascus* also. From this time forward the Seat-Royal of the Kings of Syria. Nor is this the Tradition of *Josephus* only, but founded plainly on the Scriptures, of which see 1 *King.* 11. v. 23, 24. The Scriptures after this taking no notice of any other Kings of Syria (by the name of Kings of Syria) but of those that reigned in *Damascus*; who in short time had swallowed up the petty Kingdoms of *Geshur*, *Itt-tok*, *Rebub*, besides that of *Sobab* before-mentioned.

## THE KINGS of SYRIA or DAMASCUS.

- 1 *Adad*, the Friend and Confederate of *Adad-ezar* King of *Sobab*, in whose quarrel he was vanquished and slain by *David*.
- 2 *Rezin*, of whom the Scripture saith, In the 2. of *Chron*, that when *David* flew them of *Sobab*, he fled from *Adad-ezar* his Lord, and gathered men unto him, and certain Captains over a Band, and went to *Damascus*, and dwelt therein, and reigned in *Damascus*.
- 3 *Adad II*, an *Idumean*, supposed to be of the Family of *Adad-ezar*, but rather as I think of *Adad*, for fear of *David* fled to *Egypt*, where he married *Tabner* the Queens Sister; and hearing that both *David* and *Joab* were dead, returned again into his Country, and as some write, expelled *Rezin* out of *Damascus*, and reigned there as King.
- 4 *Hezion*, Successor unto *Adad*.
- 5 *Tabrimon*, the Son of *Hezion*, as is said 2 *King.* 15. 18.
- 6 *Beit-hadad*, the Son of *Tabrimon*; hired by *Assi* King



King of Judah, to aid him in his Wars against Baalsh of Israel.

7 Ben-badad II. Son of the former, twice invaded Israel in the reign of Ahab; but both times notably repulsed: the first time by a Sally of 7000 men at the Siege of Samaria; the next at Aphec, where with the like number in effect, he was taken Prisoner, and his Army routed.

8 Hazael, Captain of the Host to Ben-badad, anointed King of Syria by the Prophet Elifha, whom God appointed to do that, by his hands he might avenge himself on Ben-badad, whom Hazael slew; but he proved as ill a neighbour to the Kings of Israel, as those before him. He attempted upon Judah also in the time of Joram, but bribed with the Treasures of the Temple, he withdrew his Forces.

9 Ben-badad III. Son of Hazael, discomfited in three set Battles by Joram King of Israel.

10 Ben-badad IV. Son of Ben-badad the third.

11 Ben-badad V. Son of Ben-badad the fourth.

12 Ben-badad VI. Son of Ben-badad the fifth, in the time of one of which three Kings, but which one we find not for certain, Jeroboam the Son of Joar King of Israel subdued both Chamath, and Damascus; of which see 2 King. 14. v. 18.

13 Rezin II. Son of Ben-badad the sixth, and the last King of Damascus, who joining with Pekah King of Israel, against Abaz King of Judah, enforced him to call unto his aid Tiglath Pileser, King of Assyria; by whom Rezin was taken and beheaded, and the City of Damascus won; the Kingdom of Syria by that means united to the Assyrian Empire.

After this time, the Syrians continued subject to the Babylonian and Assyrian Monarchs; and in the overthrow of that Empire by the Medes and Persians, became a part of their Estate: remaining so till the first Battle betwixt Alexander and Darius, fought near Issus in Cilicia. The Victory wherein falling to the Macedonians, gave him without more trouble than the Siege of Tyre, the possession of Syria and Phœnicia. He dying not long after his Conquest of Persia, this Country lay as it were at stake betwixt Ptolemy King of Egypt, and Antigonus the chief Lord of Asia: but the possession of it, together with the rest of the Persian Empire, in both Asia, fell in conclusion to the share of Seleucus, for his many great and signal Victories firamed Nicæus a man strangely preferred. For being at the first Governour of Chaldaea only, he was forced to leave Babylon, and to forsake his Province for fear of Antigonus, then dreadful to all the Macedonian Captains; and to fly into Egypt, where he became Ptolemy's Admiral. After which Ptolemy fighting a pitched Field with Demetrius, Son to Antigonus, took Seleucus with him, and having won the Battle, gave him aid and licence to recover his former Government. Seleucus well beloved of the People, soon made himself Master not of Chaldaea only, but of all the Persian Provinces beyond Euphrates: and not long after (being seconded by his good Friends Ptolemy, Cassander, and Lysimachus) he encountered Antigonus at Issus in Ionia, where Antigonus himself was slain, and his whole Army routed. This Victory made Seleucus Lord of all Asia, from whence passing over into Europe, he vanquished and slew Lysimachus: Seven Months after which Victory, he was slain by Ptolemy Ceraneus, whose Patron and Protector he had formerly been; being yet the last Survivor of all Alexander's Princes, and the only Possessor of all the Dominions which his Master had, by the way of Con-

quest, Egypt excepted. His Successors, although they were Lords of all Asia, yet since in Syria they kept their residence, to the end that they might the better furnish themselves with Souldiers out of Greece upon all occasions, as was said before, they were commonly called the Kings of Syria. But long they held not in that greatness of Estate and Power, which Seleucus left them; being a full-bodied Tree, and of several Limbs, it endured the lopping off of many Branches; and many a sad blow at the very Root of it, before it fell. For in the time of Seleucus Callinicus, the fourth of this House, Arfaces a Noble Parthian recovered from it all the Provinces of the Persian Empire, lying on that side of Euphrates; and erected the so much celebrated Parthian Kingdom, whereof more in Persia. And in the Reign of Antiochus Magnus, so called for his Victories in Egypt, Judea, and Babylonia, the Romans extorted from it all the Asian Provinces on this side Mount Taurus, not wanting many provocations to induce them to it: for he not only had made War against Ptolemy Philopater King of Egypt, whom the Romans had taken into their Protection; but stirred up the Cities and States of Greece against them: invaded Lysimachia, and some other parts of Europe, in defiance of them, and had received Annibal the Carthaginian, and then the Aetolian, their most mortal Enemies, into his Dominion, governing his Counsels by the influences which they had upon him. Nor may we think but that Ambition and Avarice, to add to their Fame and Empire by the overthrow of so great a Prince, did persuade much with them. So that the point being brought to a ready issue, they pleaded it on both sides in the Battle of Magnesia, a City of Lydia, to which Antiochus brought an Army of 300000 Foot, and as many armed Chariots, besides a Host of Elephants, if the Roman Writers be not over-lavish in their Reports. Receiving the Advice of Annibal, and committing his Affairs wholly to Evit-Congellus, he was vanquished by no more than four Legions of Enemies, and for his Peace compelled to quit all his Asian Provinces on that side of Taurus, and to pay 15000 Talents in ready money for the charge of the War. The rest of his Estates they were content he should enjoy for a longer time, *Et libentius quod tam facile cessit* (as Plutarch handsomely puts it on him) because he had so easily relinquished that. Afterwards in the civil Brolls among themselves, about the Succession of the Kingdom, Alexander King of the Jews took from them many of their best Towns in Palestine, as Joppa, Gaza, Ambedon, Azani, Rhinocorua, almost all Samaria, and Gaskonia, with Scythopolis, Gadara, and many other strong Towns in Cœle Syria. Finally, when they had continued almost all Syria, the Royal Race, and changed their Kings no less than ten times in forty years (a sure sign of a falling and expiring Kingdom) they were fain to cast themselves upon Tigranes the King of Armenia, a puissant and successful Prince, till engaged in the Quarrel of Mithridatus against the Romans: by whom stripped of all his Estates on this side Euphrates, he was fain to content himself with his own Armenia, leaving Syria to the absolute disposal of Pompey, who presently reduced it to the form of a Province. This said, we have not much more to do with the House of Seleucus, but to lay down their Names, and times of their several Governments, till we draw towards the last end of

#### THE MACEDONIAN KINGS of STRIA.

A.M.  
3564 1 Seleucus Nicæus, the first King of this House. 31.

3585 2 Antiochus, firamed Soter, or the Saviour; memorable for nothing so much, as marrying with Stratonice his Father's Wife, in his Father's life-time.

3704 3 Antiochus II. by his flattering Courtiers firamed Theos, or the God; but being poisoned by his Wife, he proved a Mortal.

3719 4 Seleucus II. firamed by the like flattery Callinicus, or fair Conquerour, because shamefully beaten by the Parthians.

3739 5 Seleucus III. called for the like reason Ceraninus, or the Thunderer; the eldest Son of Callinicus.

3742 6 Antiochus III. firamed Magnus, the younger Son of Callinicus, a Prince that embraced many great Actions, and was fortunate in his Successes beyond Euphrates: he plagued the Jews, but lost all Asia Minor unto the Romans.

3778 7 Seleucus IV. called Philopater, the Son of Antiochus, who first began to cast his eye upon the Riches of the Temple at Hierusalem.

3790 8 Antiochus IV. firamed Epiphanes, or the Illuminist; but more truly Epimanes, or the Mad. The great Scourge of the Jews; Brother of Seleucus Philopater, with whom begetteth the Story of the first Book of the Maccabees.

3802 9 Antiochus V. called by the name of Eupator, the Son of Epiphanes; who by Lysias his Captain tyrannized over the poor Jews, for the little time that he reigned; as did also

3804 10 Demetrius, firamed Soter, Son of Seleucus Philopater, by the hands of Nicæus: having possessed himself of the Diadem, by the death of Eupator, slain in his favour by the Souldiers who revolted from him. He was afterwards deposed for a time by Alexander Bala, pretending himself to be the Son of Eupator, supported herein by the Antiochians.

3814 11 Alexander Bala, discomfited in his first Battle by Demetrius, whom he slew and vanquished in the second; married Cleopatra Daughter of Ptolemy Philometer, by whose aid he was victorious. But a Quarrel breaking out between them, Ptolemy invaded Syria, and caused himself to be crowned King of it; Alexander being slain by some of his Souldiers.

3819 12 Demetrius II. firamed Nicæus, Son of Demetrius the first, recovered his Fathers Kingdom, a Friend of the Maccabees, but too cruel to his own People, that he was driven out of his Kingdom by Tryphon General of his Armies.

3821 13 Antiochus VI. firamed Eusebius, the Son of Alexander and Cleopatra, advanced unto the Throne by Tryphon, and after slain by him to make way for himself unto the Diadem.

3824 14 Tryphon, called also Diodorus, having driven out Demetrius, and slain Antiochus, made himself King.

3827 15 Antiochus VII. firamed Soter, Brother of Demetrius, having overcome and slain Tryphon, succeeded him in the Estate; for a while victorious against the Parthians, but afterwards overcome and slain by them.

After whose death Demetrius Nicæus (having lived in Parthia since the loss of his Kingdom) was restored again unto the Throne, which having held about four years; he was again dispossessed and slain by

3843 16 Alexander II. firamed Zebennus, an Egyptian of mean birth, set up by Ptolemy Evergetes; and pretending himself to be the adopted Son of Antiochus, afterwards vanquished and slain by

3845 17 Antiochus VIII. from the crookedness of his nose firamed Gryphus, Son of Demetrius, aided herein by the Egyptians, with whom reconciled: having reigned about eight years in peace; employed him in war with his half Brother Antiochus firamed Cyzicenus; with which variable successes on both sides, continued till the time of his death, having reigned 29 years in all.

3874 18 Seleucus V. Son of Antiochus Gryphus, in the beginning of his reign overcame and slew his Uncle Cyzicenus; but being vanquished by Antiochus firamed Eusebius or Pius, one of the Sons of Cyzicenus, he fled into Cilicia, and was there burnt in his Palace.

19 Antiochus IX. firamed Eusebius, having first vanquished Seleucus, and afterwards Antiochus, another of the Sons of Gryphus, was crowned King of Syria; but slain not long after in the Persian wars.

20 Philip, and Demetrius III. firamed Eucerus, younger Sons of Gryphus, jointly Kings of Syria; but reigning in their several parts, Of which Demetrius intending to dispossess his Brother, was himself vanquished, and forced to fly into Parthia; leaving the whole Kingdom unto Philip. During which amongst themselves Syria was invaded, and in part conquered by Artax King of the Arabians, and Alexander King of the Jews.

3884 21 Tigranes King of Armenia, during these dissensions was by the Syrians chosen King, that by his power they might be freed from the Jews and Arabians: the most puissant Prince that reigned in Syria, since the time of Antiochus the Great, as being King of Syria by election, of Armenia by succession, of Media by conquest. But engaging himself with Mithridatus (whose Daughter he had married) against the Romans, was vanquished by Lucullus: who with the loss of five Romans only, and the wounds of an hundred, is reported to have slain of his Enemies above 100000 men. Finally, being again broken and vanquished by Lucullus, he yielded himself to Pompey (who being appointed Lucullus Successor, deprived him of the honour of ending that War) and retaining to himself Armenia only, he left all Syria to the Romans, having reigned eighteen years. And though Antiochus Comagenus, the Son of Eusebius, petitioned Pompey for a restitution to the Throne of his Ancestors, yet it would not be granted: Pompey replying, That he would not trust the Country into such weak hands as were not able to defend it against the Arabians, Parthians, and the like Invaders; and so reduced it presently to the form of a Province. The government of this Country under these new Lords, was accounted to be one of the greatest honours of the Empire: the Persæ hereof having almost regal jurisdiction over all the Regions on this side Euphrates, with a superintendency over Egypt. Niger, the concurrent of Severus was Persæ here; and on the strength hereof presumed on that competition. So also was Cassius Syrus, who be-

ing a Native of this Country, and well-beloved by reason of his moderate and plausible demeanour, had almost tumbled *M. Antonius* out of his Throne. On this occasion it was enacted by the Senate, that no man hereafter should have any *military or legal* command in the Province where he was born: Left perhaps supported by the natural propension of the people to one of their own Nation; and heartened by the powerableness of his Friends, he might appropriate that to himself, which was common to the Senate and people of *Rome*. But this was when it was entire, and passed but for one Province only, *Phœnicia* being taken into the account; which made the *Antiochians* so proud and insolent, that *Adrian*, in his time intended to subduet *Phœnicia* from it: *Ne tot civitatem Metropolis Antiochia deceretur* (faith *Gallicanus*) that *Antioch* might not be the chief of so many Cities. But what he lived not to accomplish, was performed by *Constantine*, by whom *Phœnicia* was not only taken off; but *Syria* it self divided into four distinct Provinces, as was shewed before, each of them having its *Metropolis* or Mother City; but all subordinate to the command of the *Comes*, or *Præfide* of the East, as he to the command of the *Præfide* *Prætorii Orientis*, the greatest Officer of the Empire, of whom we have often spoke already.

For the defence hereof as well against all Foreign invasions, as the insurrections of the Natives (a wavering and inconstant People) the *Romans* kept here in continual pay four Legions, with their aids, and other additaments. For so many *Marians* had here in the time of *Galba*; and by the strength and reputation of those Forces, was able to transfer the Empire, upon *Vespasian*. And though the *Constantinopolitan* Emperors to whose share it fell, in the division of the Empire, rather increased than diminished any part of this strength: yet when the fatal time came, that Empire was in the declination, the *Saracens*, under the conduct of *Hamer*, their third *Caliph*, Anno 636. possessed themselves of it, *Heraclius* then reigning in *Constantinople*. And it continued in their power till *Tangolix* the *Turk*, having conquered *Persia*, and the Provinces on that side of *Euphrates*, passed over the River into *Syria*, and made himself Master of a great part of that also. A quarrel falling out betwixt him and the nearest Kinsmen, and thereby a great stop made in their furthest progress, was then composed, by the mediation of the *Caliph* of *Babylon*, in the time of *Axon* his Successor. To *Cutlu Meser* was assigned a convenient Army, to be by him employed against the *Christians*, with Regal power over the Provinces by him gained, without relation or subordination to the *Persian* Sultan: of whose successes and affairs hath been spoke elsewhere. To *Melech* and *Ducat*, two others of his discontented Kinsmen, but all of the same *Selæucian* family, he gave the fair Cities of *Aleppo* and *Damascus*, and those parts of *Syria*, with whatsoever they could conquer from the *Caliph* of *Egypt*, who then held all *Phœnicia*, and the Sea-coasts of *Palestine*; to be held in fee and vassalage of the Crown of *Persia*. To these two brethren then we are to refer the beginning of the *Turkish* Kingdom in *Syria*: who, with their Successors, by reason that here they held their residence, caused themselves to be called

#### The TURKISH KINGS of DAMASCUS.

1075 1 *Melech* and *Ducat*, the first *Turkish* Kings of *Damascus*, by the gift of *Axon*, the second Sultan of the *Turks* in *Persia*, added to their Dominions all the rest of *Syria*, together with part of *Cilicia*, and some

neighbouring Provinces in the *Lesser Asia*, N. N. Sultan of *Damascus*, at such times as the *Christians* of the West won the Holy Land: against whom he notably defended the City and Territories of *Damascus*; and in a set battel discomfited and slew *Roger* the *Norman*, Prince of *Antioch*.

1146 3 *Noradine*, (the Son of *Sangein*) General of the Armies, and Son-in-law to the former King, succeeded him in the estate. A noble Prince, memorable amongst other things for a gallant answer made to his Commanders when they perswaded him to take the advantage on the death of *Baldwin* the third and to invade *Hierusalem* whilst the *Christians* were busie in solemnizing his funerals. Not so, faith he, *Compassion and regard to be had of the just sorrow of those Christians, who have lost such a King, as could not be equalled in the world*.

1175 4 *Melechysala*, Son of *Noradine*, continued by reason of his youth, by his Nobles, and Souldiery, who made choice of *Saladine* for their King; by whom dispossessed first, and after vanquished.

1176 5 *Saladine*, the *Turkish* Sultan of *Egypt*, having vanquished the *Persians*, or *Parthians*, coming under the conduct of *Caochod*, Uncle to *Melechysala*, to restore that Prince to his estate, remained King of *Damascus*: and by the puissance of his Armies, recovered from the *Christians* all *Syria*, and the Holy-Land, with the City of *Hierusalem* also.

1199 6 *Eladet*, or *El-Aphed*, the eldest Son of *Saladine*, succeeded in the Realm of *Damascus*; which he exchanged for that of *Egypt* with his Brother *Elaziz*.

7 *Elaziz*, the second Son of *Saladine*, succeeded upon this exchange in the Realm of *Damascus*, murdered not long after by his Uncle *Saphradine*.

8 *Saphradine*, the Brother of *Saladine*, having barbarously murdered eight of the Sons of *Saladine*, (the youngest called *Saphradine* escaping only, who was after Sultan of *Aleppo*) possessed himself of the Kingdom of *Damascus*, left at his death to *Corradine*, his Son or Nephew.

9 *Corradine*, Son or Nephew to the Tyrant *Saphradine*, was by him at his death left Sultan of *Damascus*; to which all *Syria* and *Palestine* were then made *Provincials*. But the treacheries and murders of *Saphradine* crying loud for vengeance, *Hælan* the *Tartar*, in the year 1260, having taken the King of *Damascus* Prisoner (but whether *Corradine*, or some other, I am not able to say) brought him before the walls of the City threatening to kill him in the sight of the people, if they did not deliver it unto him, which the Citizens refusing to do, the wretched King was torn in pieces, and the City taken by assault: the Kingdom taken by the Conquerours conferred upon *Agad* the Son of *Hælan*. And so ended the *Selæucian* Family of the Kings of *Damascus* in the person of *Corradine*, or the Son of *Corradine*, most miserably murdered by the *Tartars*; as it had done in *Egypt* 17 years before, in the person of *Melechysala*, and *Elmutan*, the Son of *Melechide*, as villainously depoted and murdered by the *Mamelucks*. So slippery is the foundation of those Kingdoms that are laid in blood.

Nor did this Kingdom hold long in the hands of the *Tartars*,

*Tartars*, recovered from them in short time by the *Mamelucks*, then Kings of *Egypt*: from them once more regained by the furious *Tamarslane*: who in the year 1400 besieged *Damascus* with an Army of 1200000 men, (if the number be not mistaken, and one *Cypher* added more than should Jin pursuit whereof he filled up the ditches with his Prisoners, put all the people to the sword; and with great Art raised three Towers as a Trophy of his victory, built with the heads of those whom he had so slaughtered. A man so strangely made up of vice and virtues, that it is hard to say which had the predominance. But the violence of this tempest being overblown, the *Mamelucks*, from whom he had also conquered the Kingdom of *Egypt*, recovered *Syria* by de-

grees, and repaired *Damascus*, continuing in their power till the year 1516, when *Selimus* the first discomfited *Campfon Gaurus* the *Egyptian* Sultan in the fields of *Aleppo*. Upon the news whereof the Citizens of *Damascus*, fearing the spoil of their rich City, then of very great trading, let open their Gates unto the *Villors*; as did all the other Cities and Towns of *Syria*, by their example. By means whereof, without any more blows, the *Turks* became Lords of this Country; as the next year of *Egypt* also, by the vanquishment and death of *Tonimbine* who succeeded *Campfon*: so rooting out the name and government of the *Mamelucks*, and adding those rich Kingdoms to the *Turkish* Empire.

And so much for *Syria*.

## MOUNT HERMON.



N our passage out of *Cælo-Syria* into *Palestine*, we must cross Mount *Hermon*; a ledge of Hills; which beginning at the East point of the *Anti-Libanus*, bend directly South: in different places, and by several Nations called by divers names. By *Polomy* called *Aladamas*; by the *Amorites*, *Samir*; by the *Phœnicians*, *Syriens*; and by that name remembered in the Book of *Psalms*. But *Aladamas* they are called only where they border upon *Cælo-Syria*. Where they begin to part the Region of *Trachonitis* from *Arabia Deserta*, they are called by *Moses* and the *Scriptures* *Hermon*, part of the Kingdom of *Oz*, the King of *Basan*, as is said, *Joshua*, chap. 12. 6. *Syriem* by the *Sidonians*, as is affirmed, *Deut.* 3. 9. Running further after this unto the South, they are called *Gilead* or *Galaad*; by *Strabo*, *Trachonitis*, after the name of the Region along which they pass, and are conceived to be the highest part of all Mount *Libanus*, or rather of that long ridge of Mountains which there beginning. And so we are to understand the words of the Prophet *Jeremy*, saying, *Galaad tu mihi Caput Libani*, as the *Visger* readeth it. That is to say, that as the head is the highest part of a man; so these Hills, or this part of them, was the highest of all the branches, or spurs of *Libanus*, called *Galeed* by *Jacob*, from that heap of stones which was there laid by *Laban* and *Jacob*, to be a witness of the Covenant which was made betwixt them, *Gen.* 31. 27. the word signifying in the Original, *An heap*

of Witnesses. And *Laban* said, *This heap is a Witness betwixt me and thee this day; therefore was the name of it called Galeed*, ver. 28. By these Hills, and the main body of the *Anti-Libanus* lying on the North, and the Mountains of *Phœnicia* and *Jumee* on the West, the Land of *Palestine* is so shut up on every side, that no Fortresses can be stronger by Wit or Art, than that Country by Nature: the passages in some parts so narrow, as hardly to afford passage for a single person. *Claudius* *rudique montibus, hinc abruptis rupibus, & profundis vallibus concussis Tormentum, inde alia & implexis an fructibus sic contrahit, ut per angustor colles vix pateat transitus viatori*, as my Author hath it. I had almost forgot to add, that that part of these hills, which is commonly known in Scripture by the name of *Hermon*, is in one place thereof called *Sibon*, as *Deut.* 4. 48. where it is said, that the *Israelites* possessed the Land from *Aroer* on the bank of the River *Arnon*, even to Mount *Sihon*, which is *Hermon*. As also that one of the highest tops or Summits of it, had the name of *Amara*, alluded to by *Solomon* in the fourth of the *Canticles*, by some mistaken for *Ananias*, a branch of *Taurus*, which divides *Syria* from *Cilicia* in the *Lesser Asia*, with which *Solomon* had but small or no acquaintance. And so having cleared our selves of so much of this Mountain, as lay before us in our way, we pass over to *Palestine*: where we shall meet with it again, (or rather with the Western parts and branches of it) under the names of *Gilead* and *Trachonitis*, as a part of that Country.

O F

## PALESTINE.



PALESTINE is bounded on the East, with the Hills last mentioned, by which parted from *Calo-Syria*, and *Arabia Deserta*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean Sea*; and some part of *Phœnicia*; on the North, with the *Anti-Libanus*, which divides it from *Syria*; and the rest of *Phœnicia*; and on the South, with some part of *Arabia Petrea*.

It was first called *Palestine* from the *Philistines*, the most potent Nation of those parts. A name first found in the History of *Herodotus*, but generally used in times succeeding by the *Greeks* and *Romans*. And this I look on as the proper and adequate name of the whole Country, according to the bounds before laid down: the others, by which commonly called, being more restrained, and properly belonging to so much heretofore, as was in the possession of the Tribes of *Israel*. And of this sort are: 1 *Canaan*, or the Land of *Canaan*, so called from *Canaan* the son of *Cham*, by whom first peopled after the Flood; 2 *The Land of Promise*, because by God promised to *Abraham*, and his seed, for an habitation; 3 *Israel*, from the *Israelites*, or sons of *Jacob*, whose surname was *Israel*; 4 *Judea*, and by us *Jewry*, from the *Jews*, or people of the Tribe of *Judah*, the most prevalent of the Tribes of *Israel*. And 5 *Terra Sancta*, or the Holy Land, because the subject of the greatest part of the Holy Scripture; and that the work of our Redemption was herein accomplished by our Lord and Saviour. Which notwithstanding, we must know, that though these names do many times by a *Synecdoche*, express the whole Country of *Palestine*; yet neither the *Canaanites* or the *Israelites* were ever Masters of the whole: except only in the time of *David*, and of some of the *Maccabean Princes*, as also in some part of the reign of *Herod the Great*; all which had the good fortune to command it totally.

But being the most considerable people of it were the Tribes of *Israel*; we will first look upon the Country People under that capacity. And for so much heretofore as was held by them, it is situate between the 2d and 4th Climates; the longest day being fourteen hours and a quarter. The whole length but 200 miles, and not above 80 in breadth; yet was of such a fruitful soil, that before the coming in of the *Israelites*, it had 30 Kings; and after the coming in of that people, so extremely populous, that *David* numbered a Million and 300000 fighting men, besides those of the Tribes of *Levi* and *Benjamin*. But of the fruitfulness heretofore more shortly.

As for the People they were by composition of a middle stature, but strong of body: in their best times a murmuring and stiff-necked generation, never well pleased either with God or Man, with their Priests or Princes; seldom conform unto the Commandments of their God, nor very much constant to themselves; so crippled in

their goings betwixt Superstitions and Idolatry, that they knew not how to walk uprightly: Idolatrous above measure, and incorrigible in it, till their coming back from the Captivity of *Babylon*: and after that as superstitious and severe, in the point of their Sabbath, as they had formerly been exorbitant in the worship of Idols. No Medium on either side, but extreme in both. Divided anciently into these four ranks, that is to say, 1 *Jews*, 2 *Hellenists*, 3 *Proselytes*, and 4 *Samaritans*: all of them pretending a right unto this Country, though not all of them dwelling in it.

Of these the first called *Jews*, from *Judah*, the predominant Tribe; and *Hebrews*, from *Heber* the son of *Seth*, grand-son of *Sem*, and one of the Ancestors of *Abraham*, were such as naturally descended of the Tribes of *Israel*, and lived for the most part in their own Country, adhering to the Law of *Moses*, and embracing the whole Canon of the Old Testament, from the Book of *Genesis* to the Book of the Prophet *Malachi*. Called also *Israelites*, because descended from the loyns of their Father *Jacob*, to whom God gave the name of *Israel*, for his great honour. But after the ten Tribes were carried away by *Sargon*, after to an endless captivity; and two Tribes (with the remainder of the rest) returned from that temporary one which they found in *Babylon*, the name of *Israelites* was laid by, and that of *Jews* assumed, as more proper to them. These read the Scriptures, and executed all Divine Offices in their natural Hebrew.

2. The *Hellenists*, were such as were *Jews* by parentage, but lived dispersed in most Provinces of the Roman Empire: called by that name (we may English it, the *Grecizing Jews*) because they read the Scriptures in the Greek or *Septuagint's* Translation; and performed all publick Offices in that language also. In other things *Asseprophitians* in their Sabbath, as tedious of their Circumcision, and others of the Rites and Ceremonies of the Law of *Moses*, as the *Jews* of *Palestine*: and for that reason, scorned and derided by the *Gentiles*, amongst whom they lived; *Credits Judæus appella*, faith one of their Poets, relating to their circumcising; *Recutaneus Sabbata pates*, faith another of them, with whom though unto their Sabbaths. *Novi illic ritus & ceteris moribus contrarii*, faith *Tacitus*, a graver Author, of the whole body of their Rituals, or Acts of worship.

3. The *Proselytes* were such, as not being *Jews* by birth, or descent of Parentage, conformed themselves unto their customs, and desired to be admitted to their Religion. And these were also of two sorts, the one called, *Proselyti* and the other, *Proselyti fideles*. The first of these, were admitted by the *Jews* to the worship of God, and were instructed in the hopes of the life to come, were obliged to those Precepts which the *Hebrew Doctors* call the Precepts of the sons of *Noah*; but were neither circumcised, nor otherwise conform to the Law of *Moses*. Which Precepts of the sons of *Noah*, so called, because supposed

to be given by *Noah* unto his Sons, when he came out of the Ark, were seven in number: that is to say, 1 That they dealt uprightly with every man. 2 That they blessed and magnified the Name of God. 3 That they worshipped not any false Gods, but to abstain from Idolatry. 4 To refrain from all unlawful lulls and copulations. 5 To keep themselves from theft and robbery. 6 And from shedding blood. And 7 Not to eat the Flesh or Member of any Beast, taken from it when it was alive, by which all cruelty was forbidden. These, though they were admitted to the Worship of God, and might repair unto the Temple; yet because of their Uncircumcision, they were not suffered to converse with the *Jews*, nor to come into the same Court of the Temple with them: but were accounted as unclean, and had their Court apart assigned them in the Worship of God, which was called *Avium Gentium*, or *Immundorum*, and was the uttermost of all. The other *Proselytes*, which was called *Proselyti fideles*, conformed all things to the *Jews*, as in Circumcision, Sabbath-keeping, and all other Ceremonies: and were accounted of as adopted *Jews*; privileged as they were, to worship in the *Lunar Court*; bound as they were, from eating or drinking with a *Gentile*; and in a word, partakes with them in all things both divine and humane, and different in nothing from them but their Race or Parentage. These last in the New Testament called simply *Proselytes*, without any addition: the former by the name of *Sabæus*, or the worshipping *Gentiles*, of which *Eccl. 16. 2. 14. & ch. 17. 24. 17. & ch. 18. 24. &c.*

4. As for the *Samaritans*, they possessed a great part of this Country, which the *Proselytes* did not; yet were not so much *Jews* as they. But of these more anon, when we come to *Samaria*, the proper place of their abode.

As for the natural *Jews* themselves, they are divided also into several Sects; as, viz. 1 *Essenes*, 2. the *Sadducees*, 3. the *Scribes*, 4. the *Pharisees*, 5. the *Herodians*, and 6. the *Gadonites*, or *Gallileans*. The *Essenes*, or *Esseni*, derive their name, as some conceive, from *Asca*, which signifieth *facere*, to do, because they laboured with their hands: as others say, from *Asa*, which signifieth *separatus*, or to *cure diseases*, because they were much given to the Study and Practice of Physick. Their beginning is not yet agreed on. The first time they were heard of, was in the time of *Jonathan*, the Brother of *Judas Maccabeus*, about 150 years before Christ's Nativity; then mentioned by *Josephus*, *Antiqu. Judaic. lib. 12. cap. 9*. A Pythagorean kind of *Jew*, and not much differing in opinion from those old *Philosophers*, professing as they did, 1 Community of Goods, 2 Abstaining even from lawful pleasures, 3 Forbidding of Oaths, 4 Forbearing Wine, and drinking Water, 5 Ascribing the conduct of Affairs to fate or destiny, 6 And using only inanimate or unbloody Sacrifices. Some other *Dogmata* they had, but these the principal: forbidding Marriage not being common to the *Scd*, but only to some few amongst them. And though we find no mention of them in the New Testament, the *Scd* in those times being small and inconsiderable; yet it is thought that St. Paul alludeth to their Tenets: as where he adviseth *Timothy* to make use of Wine, and glanceth upon those who prohibited Marriage, 1 *Tim. 4. 3.* or condemned others in the use of Meat and Drink, *Coloss. 2. 16*. As for the manner of their life, they lived together as it were in *Monasteries*, or *Colleges*, and in every one had their *Superior*, or *Oratory*: admitting none into their Fellowships or Society, unless he brought all he had into their common Treasury; and

not then neither under a three years Probationership. More of them he that willeth to see, may satisfy himself in that Tract of *Philo*, intitled *De Vita contemplativa*, where he most copiously describeth their Institute and course of life: mistakingly applied by *Eusebius* to the *Primitive Christians*, as if that Tract had purposely been composed of them, by that learned *Jew*.

2. The *Sadducees* either derive their name from *Sadoc*, who lived about the time of *Alexander the Great*, and is thought to be the first Founder of them; or from *Sadoc* an *Hebrew* word signifying *Justice*; the men pretending to be so exact and strict *Justitaries*, as if they would justify themselves before God's Tribunal. The occasion of the *Scd* or *Hercle* (for both it was) said to arise from a mistake of *Antigonus*, a right learned man, who teaching, That we ought not to serve God as Servants do their Masters, for the hope of Reward, occasioned *Sadoc* and *Baitus*, two of his Auditors, to conceive that there was no Reward nor Repurchase for a Godly Life; and consequently, no *Resurrection* nor World to come, neither Angels nor Spirits. These were the most capital of their Errors, as appeareth *Act. 23. 6. 8. Math. 22. 3. Luk. 20. 20, 27. &c.* But other *Dogmata* they had, not mentioned in the Holy Scripture; ascribing nothing unto Fate or Predestination, but all things altogether to a mans free-will; 2 Teaching the Soul to be annihilated at the hour of death; 3 Rejecting all Traditions; and 4 Allowing no more Scripture than the five Books of *Moses*. In most of their opinions contrary to the *Scribes* and *Pharisees*, but joining with them both in opposing Christ: and though like *Samson's* Foxes they looked divers ways, and were tyed together by their Tails only; yet in those Tails they carried Firebrands to destroy God's Harvest, and had done it, if they had been able.

3. But indeed the *Pharisees* were the men, who were the Master-wits in the Arts of *Mischief*, *Hominum roburior impetrant*, in the Father's words. Fellows of such a perfidious and concocted malice, that they were almost able to possess the Devil. Their name they derive from *Pharez*, which is to separate. *Separavit* we may rightly call them: For they were first *ἀποσπείροντες τὸν νόμον*, separated to the Study of the Law of God, as *Saul* was brought up to that purpose at the feet of *Gamaliel*: And secondly, *ἀποσπείροντες τὸν νόμον ἀπὸ τοῦ λαοῦ*, separated from the rest of Mankind, by a more illicit profelion of sanctity; as the *Pharisee* boasted of himself, that he was not as other men, or as that *Publican*. And that they might so seem unto simple men, they did thidly separate themselves from the Society and Conversation of others not so pure as themselves, whom they called *Populum terre*, or the Sons of the Earth, upbraiding Christ that he kept company with *Publicans* and *Sinners*: and more than so, used a particular kind of Habit, and had a Garb unto themselves which no others had; using it for a by-word amongst themselves, that *Vester Populi Terræ sunt concubatio Phariseorum*. To which end, as their countenances were more clouded and severe than others did they wear their *Phylacteries* of a broader size than others did: which, by the way, were *fores of Turbantes* bound about their Heads, and upon their hands, wherein were writ the Ten Commandments of God: foolishly interpreting the words of *Deut. And they shall be as Frontlets between thine Eyes*, &c. *c. 6. v. 8*. They began at the same time with the *Sadducees*, which was about 300 years before Christ's Nativity. As for their *Dogmata*, besides those specified above, which were also practicable, they maintained, 1 A *Pythagorean Metempsychosis*, affirming that the Soul of a Righteous man passed from one into another at the time of his death: from



many other *Torrents* which fall into it, because no living Creature is nourished in it, suffocated with the *Bisuminous* favour which it sendeth forth, from the abundance of which matter it is also called *Lacus Asphaltites*. Nigh hereunto flood the once famous Cities of *Sodom* and *Gomorra*, with three others more, whence the Valley had the name of *Pentapolis*, destroyed for their abominations by a fire from heaven: now fruitful in wheat only, but not in subulance; the fruits here growing-being very fair unto the eye. *Sed levi talis pressio vagum fatiscunt pulvere*, but it touched, moulder into ashes, as *Solinus* hath it.

Chief Hills and Mountains of it, besides *Anti-Libanus*, and *Mount Hermon*, spoken of already, which be only borderers, are 1 *Mount Sion*, memorable for the *Tower of David*, which was built upon it, called frequently the *Holy Hill of Sion*. 2 *Mount Moriah*, famous for the intended Sacrifice of *Isaac*, and the Temple of *Solomon*. 3 *Mount Calvary*, on which *CHRIST* suffered, supposed to be the burial-place of our Father *Adam*. 4 *Mount Tabor*, on which our Saviour was transfigured. 5 *Mount Olivet*, from which he ascended into Heaven. 6 *Mount Garizim*, whereon stood the *Samaritan* Temple, their ordinary place of Worship, mentioned *Joh. 4. 20*. 7 The Mountains of *Saron*, stretching with intermixed Valleys from the Sea of *Galilee* to the *Mediterranean*, not far from *Tyre*, there ending in a white cliff, and for that cause called *Capo Bianco* by the Sailer. The whole Mountain pleasantly enriched with the fragrant smells of *Rosemary*, *Sweet Marjoram*, *Hyssop*, *Bayes*, and other Odoriferous Plants which do grow there naturally; but for that, destitute of any other Inhabitants than *Leopards*, *Boars*, *Jacals*, and such *Savage* Creatures. 8 The Mountains of *Gilboa*, the highest on the West of *Jordan*, as 9 those of *Basan*, celebrated for their height in the Book of *Psalms*. And 10 those of *Abarim*, on the East-side of it: from one of the Summits of which last called *Nebo*, by some Writers *Piligrim*, the Lord gave *Moses* a Survey of the Land of *Promise*.

As for this whole Country comprehended in the name of *Palestine*, it hath had divers divisions, according to the quality of the people, or the will of those who have been formerly Masters of it. Divided first betwixt the *Philistines*, *Perezites*, *Hittites*, *Jebusites*, and others of the Sons of *Canaan*, on this side *Jordan*; the *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, *Midianites*, and *Amorites*, dwelling on the other. When conquered by the Sons of *Jacob*, it was divided into the twelve Tribes of 1 *Judah*, 2 *Benjamin*, 3 *Simeon*, 4 *Dan*, 5 *Asher*, 6 *Nephthali*, 7 *Zabulon*, 8 *Issachar*, 9 *Gad*, 10 *Reuben*, 11 *Ephraim*, and 12 *Manasseh*. When that great breach was made by *Jeroboam*, in the Kingdom of *David*, it was broken into the two Kingdoms of *Judah* and *Israel*; of which the first contained only the two Tribes of *Judah* and *Benjamin*, the latter comprehending the other Ten. When the *Israelites* were led Captive into *Affrica*, and a new set of People planted in their rooms, those new-comers from *Samarita*, their Capital City, had the name of *Samaritans*; and when the men of *Judah* were released of their long captivity, and came back from *Babylon*, they took to themselves the name of *Jews*. After which time, the whole Country of *Palestine* anciently possessed or subdued by the seed of *Abraham*, was divided into 1 *Perea*, 2 *Judea*, 3 *Galilee*, 4 *Samarita*, 5 *Judea*, and 6 *Idumea*. When conquered by the *Romans*, all these were joyned into one Province, which for a time was reckoned as a part of *Syria*, or at least subordinate. But *Constantine* notwithstanding of the one or the other, went a way by himself, and cait it into three Provinces, viz. 1 *Palestina*

*Prima*, 2 *Palestina Secunda*, and 3 *Palestina Salutaris*; the *Metropolis* of the first being *Cæsarea Palestine*; of the second, *Samaritis*; of the third, *Hierusalem*. But this division of *Constantines* growing out of use, we will adhere unto the former: Beginning first with those parts thereof which lay on the other side of *Jordan*, because first conquered and possessed by the house of *Israel*; who at that Gate found entrance into all the rest; and coming round to *Idumea*, which last of all these Provinces was added to the State of *Jerry*. In the *Geography* whereof, I must confess my self a Debtor to Sir *Walter Rawleigh*, whose industry herein hath saved me a great deal of search, though sometimes I make bold to differ from him, and add to him, as I see occasion.

## I P E R E A.

**P E R E A**, is that part of *Palestine*, which lyeth betwixt the River *Jordan*, and the Mountains of *Arum* (which divide *Palestine* from *Syria* and the *Arabia*) East and West; and reacheth from *Pella* in the North to the chief Town of *Arabia Petraea* in the South. By *Pliny* it is made to bend more towards *Aegypt*, who describes it thus: *Perea* *Judea pars est ulterior*, *Arabie & Aegypti proxima*, *asperis dispersa montibus*, & *cetera* *Judeis*, *Jordane amne disiecta*. *Perea* (saith he) is the furthest part of *Judea*, neighbouring *Arabia* and *Aegypt*, interperfed with rough and craggy Mountains, and parted from the rest of the *Jews* by the River *Jordan*. So called from the *Greek* word *peras*, in regard of the situation of it on the other side of that River; and not improperly might be rendered by *Trans-Jordania*. Blessed with a rich soil, and large fields beset with divers Trees, especially of *Olives*, *Vines*, and *Palms*. The habitation in times past of the *Midianites*, *Moabites*, and *Ammonites*, at 1 of the two Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben*. Of all which I shall speak in order, beginning with the *Midianites*, and the Children of *Lot*, as the first occupants hereof; upon the knowledge of whose affairs, the State and Story of the *Israelites* hath so much dependance.

And first the *MADYANITES* inhabited on the South-East of the *Dead Sea*, at the very entrance of the Country; descended from one or more of the five sons of *Madian*, the son of *Abraham* by *Rebecca*, mentioned *Gen. 25. 4*, who leaving the rest of their brethren to seek themselves new habitations, more towards the Banks of the Red Sea, and the Desarts of *Arabia Petraea*, continued near unto the place of *Abraham's* dwelling; and mingling with the *Moabites* and *Canaanites* in blood and marriages, came in short time to lose all the knowledge of the true God, and to worship Idols; as the rest of their neighbours did.

Their chief Cities were 1 *Recome*, built by one of the five Kings of the *Midianites*, which was slain by *Jehoshaphat*, afterwards called *Sebah*, 2 *King*, 14. 7. accounted at that time a City of the *Edomites*; next of the *Israelites* or *Arabians*, and by them called *Hagar*. Best known unto the *Greeks* and *Romans*, by the name of *Petra*, and by that name we shall take further notice of it when we come to *Arabia*. 2 *Midian*, on the Banks of the *Dead Sea*, the ordinary residence of their Princes, absolute of themselves at first, as in other places; but at the time when *Moses* and *Jehoshaphat* led the people into their possession, subjected unto *Sihon* King of the *Amorites*; whose Dukes their five Kings and Princes are said to be, *Jesh. 13. 21*. A people whom the *Israelites* had neither not caustily provoked them, at the request of the *Moabites*, by sending amongst them as *Balaam* the false Prophet had advised; the most beautiful of all their women,

not only to entice them to prohibited mixtures, but to allure them to the worship of their Idols also. A malicious and successful plot, but alike dangerous to both parties: God sending a fierce Plague amongst the *Israelites*, which cost them the lives of 24000 persons, besides such as perished by the sword; and giving a command to *Moses*, to avenge him of the *Midianites*, who had so provoked him. On which Commission *Moses* called out 12000 men, and sent them under *Phineas* against the *Midianites*: by whom all their Princes were slain; their Cities and goodly Castles burnt with fire, their men, women, and male-children put unto the sword, as is related in the one and thirtieth Chapter of the Book of *Numb*. Yet notwithstanding this great slaughter, they recovered their former power, if not a greater, and after the death of *Barak* the Judge of *Israel*, did for the space of four years so afflict that people, that they were fain to hide themselves in the Caves and strong holds of the mountains, as is said *Judg. 6. 2*. their enemies having left them neither Sheep, Oxen, nor Ass, or any sustenance at all, &c. But *God* being raised up by God for their deliverance, encountered with their four Kings, and put them to flight: of which four *Oreb* and *Zeeb* were taken and slain by the *Ephraimites* at the passage of *Jordan*; *Zabab* and *Zalmunna* taken by *Gideon* himself, and executed by his own hand, as the story telleth us. In this War there are said to have perished of this people and their Confederates, no fewer than 120000 persons, by which we weakened that we hear no more of them from this time forwards, in any action of importance: their name and Country being first incorporated into that of the *Edomites*, and after into that of the *Israelites*, and other the Inhabitants of *Arabia Petraea*.

2 The *MOABITES* possessed all the Country, from the *Midianites* in the South, as far as to *Esebon* in the North, on both sides of the River *Arnon*; having *Jordan* on the West, and the Hills of *Abarim* on the East. Possessed at the first by the *Emmins*, a race of Giants, whose chief City was *Shenech Kiriatshaim*. But these being vanquished and broken by *Chedorlaomer* and his Associates, of which see *Gen. 14. 5*, their forsaken seats were taken up by the *Moabites*, descended from *Moab*, one of the sons of *Lot*, who lived here in great prosperity all the time of *Valah*, Grand-father unto *Balaam*, the foe of *Israhel*, from whom *Sehon* King of the *Amorites* had taken all the parts of *Moab* on the North of the River *Arnon*, and made that River, which before was the middle of *Moab*, to be the North bound or border of it. In which estate it stood in the time of *Moses*.

Chief Cities of it at that time, were 1 *Rabbat*, the Regal seat of *Balaam* the King of *Moab*, the *Rhamathum* of *Israhel*, 2 *Diblataim*, destroyed with the rest of *Moab*, by *Nebuchadnezzar*, as is said *Jer. 48. 22*. 3 *Gallim*, the Principality of *Phalti* the Son of *Lashai*, to whom *Saul* gave his Daughter *Michal*, formerly married unto *David*, *1 Sam. 25. 44*. 4 *Mathana* and 5 *Nathaniel*, thorow which the *Israelites* passed, after they had left the Well called *Beer*. 6 *Bamsath*, where *Moses* was encamped when he sent to *Sehon* to demand a passage through his Country, *Numb. 21. 19*, &c. 7 *Mizpah*, the City of Refuge to the Father and Mother of *David*, in the time of his troubles under *Saul*. 8 *Hor*, the chief City of *Moab*, not meddling with *Moses* in his march this way, the Lord himself forbidding him to touch upon it, or distress it, because it had been given by him for an inheritance to the children of *Lot*, *Deut. 2. 9*. Which prohibition was not only for this place particularly; (though this place particularly there mentioned) but for all the Lands and Territories then in their possession. 9 *Kir-hareseth*, of which note for the barbarous and inhumane fact of *Matha*

the *Moabitish* King, who being besieged herein by the Kings of *Judah*, *Israel*, and *Edom*, without hope of escape, sacrificed his own eldest Son on the wall thereof, who moved the Kings of *Juda* and *Edom*, that they forsook the King of *Israel* whose the quarrel was. So the siege was raised, 2 *King. 3. 17*.

Now as *Moses* did not at the present disobey God's Order, in leaving the *Moabites* in quiet; so neither did the *Moabites* on their parts provoke him to any hostile act, giving him a free and open passage in his march for *Canaan*; out of an hope that when the *Amorites* were subdued, they should be put into possession of their lost Estates. And though they were deceived of that expectation, the *Israelites* looking on that Country which they had conquered, as the spoils of the *Amorites*, and giving it for a possession to the Tribe of *Reuben*: yet durst they not do any thing in the way of arms, but sent for *Balaam* the false Prophet, to call them by his Curses and Incantations into some Diseases, whereby their strength and courage might be taken from them. *Balaam* the son of *Zippor* was at this time King After whom we find not the name of any other, till we come to *Eglon*, who with the help of *Ammon* and *Amalek*, overmastered *Israel*, and for the space of 18 years tyrannized amongst them: when slain in his own House, and afterwards 10000 of his people by the hand of *Ehud*. But this indignity was in the times succeeding revenged by *Saul* in some part, who made war upon them; but more by *David*, who subdued them, and made them Tributaries: and not only so, but subjected them to the vilest Offices, as is intimated in that form of Speech, *Moab is my wash-pot*, *Psal. 60. 8*. Taking their opportunity, they withdrew themselves from the House of *David*, and put themselves under the command of the Kings of *Israel*, to whom they paid for Tribute in the time of *Abah*, 100000 Lambs, and 200000 Rams, with their Heeces on: but quickly weary of those payments, and revolting from the House of *Abah* also, they were invaded by *Jehoram*, aided herein by the Kings of *Judah* and *Idumea*, by whom being vanquished, *Mesha* their King was fain to shut himself up in *Kir-hareseth*, as was said before. After this joyning with the *Ammonites* and the *Idumeans* or sons of *Edom*, they invaded *Jehoshaphat* King of *Judah*, to whom God gave a memorable and signal Victory, without blow or Battle: the *Ammonites* first setting upon the *Edomites*, and after upon one another, till they were almost all destroyed, 2 *Chron. 20. 23*. From this time we hear nothing of them; but probably they recovered some part of their former Dwellings, when that two Tribes and a half on the East of *Jordan* were carried away captive by *Tiglah Pilser*. Possessed hereof, and of other their habitations, till the reign of *Zedekiah* King of *Judah*, when vanquished, with the rest of these Nations, by the *Babylonians* and *Affrians* under *Nebuchadnezzar*. Nor find we any mention of them in the Ages following, the name of *Moab* being forgotten, or grown out of use: the South parts of their Country laid to *Arabia Petraea*, as the East parts were to that of *Arabia Deserta*, and all the rest, as well as that which had been conquered by the *Jews*, swallowed up in the general name of *Palestina*.

3 The *AMMONITES* inhabited on the North-East of the River *Arnon*, and possessed all that Tract from *Arnon*, on the Head of the River, to the City of *Rabbat*, and on both sides of the River *Jaboc*, as well within the Mountains of *Galaad* as without the same. The Seat in elder times of the *Rephaim*, and *Zanzumims*, a Giant-like Race of men, as the *Emmins* were; but vanquished also, as the others, by



*Chedorlaomer*, *Asteroth* and *Heth* being then the principal of their Habitations. Succeeded too in their desolate and forsaken dwellings, by the children of *Ammon*, the other Son of *Lot*, and the Brother of *Moab*; both Houses running the same fortune; These *Ammonites* being conquered, and deprived of the best part of their Country on the South-side of *Jabes*, by *Og King of Basan*; as the *Moabites*, at the same time, of theirs by *Sehon*. A Monument of which subjection was the Bed of *Og*, found in the City of *Rabbah*, the chief City of *Ammon*, there to be seen when *Moses* had subdued the Kings of the *Amorites*, as appeareth *Deut. 3*.

Chief Cities at such time as the *Israelites* first conquered the Land of *Canaan*, were *Rabbah*, the Regal City of their Kings; taken by *Og of Basan*, as is said before; but again quitted as it seemeth on the coming of *Moses*, that he might be better able to keep the Field. Memorable in succeeding times for the death of *Uriah*, slain here by a design of *David's* when besieged by *Joab*. Who having brought it to terms of yielding, sent for the King to come before it, that he might have the honour of taking a place so defensible, environed in a manner with the River *Jabes*, and therefore called the City of *Waters*, 2 Sam. 12. 27. Afterwards repaired and beautified by *Pholomy Philadelphus*, King of *Egypt*, who having made himself Master of those parts of *Arabia*, which lie near unto it, and liking the convenience of the situation, honoured it with the name of *Philadelphia*, 2 *Dabema*, supposed to be *Rithma*, by the Learned *Junius*, mentioned *Numb. 33. 18*. (the Hebrew Letters *D* and *A* being much alike) a place of great strength amongst the *Ammonites*, 3 *Minneth*, in the South Border; and 4 *Abel-vinorum* in the East Border of *Ammon*; both mentioned in the pursuit of that People when subdued by *Jephthah*, 5 *Mispha*, sometimes one of the Cities of the half Tribe of *Manasseh*, and at that time honoured with the residence of *Jephthah*; but afterwards recovered by the Children of *Ammon*: in whose hands it was, when utterly destroyed and burnt by *Judas Maccabeus*, 1 Mac. 5. 35. 6 *Magedo*, and 7 *Bofor*, two other strong places of the *Ammonites*, there also mentioned; but said to be in the Region of *Gad*, by which name, or by that of *Gileadites*, all the Country of the *Ammonites* lying on this side of the Mountains, was at that time called.

As for those *Ammonites*, they had nothing at all to do with *Israel* as they passed towards *Canaan*; neither provoking them, nor being provoked by them, to any acts of hostility. Afterwards not well pleased that they were not restored to the possession of those Lands which had been taken from them by *Og of Basan*, (conferred by the Decree of *Moses* on the Tribe of *Gad*) they joined with the *Midianites* in their Expedition. But worsted by the puissance and good fortune of *Gideon*, they lay still a while, till stirred up by some secret motion from Almighty God, to avenge him on that sinful and idolatrous People, who by worshipping the gods of the Heathen, had provoked him to anger. Prosperous in it for a time, till his wrath was pacified; who having made use of them to chastise his People, delivered him by his Rod to be burnt by *Jephthah*, vanquished and driven home by him with a very great slaughter. Not so much crushed by the unsuccessfulness of this attempt, but that in the time of *Saul* they brake out again and besieged *Jabes Gilead*; *Nabab*, a cruel Tyrant, being then their King; who having brought the City into great extremity, would give them no other conditions than the loss of every man's right eye: to the end that using to carry a great Target on their left Arms, where-with the eye on that side was wholly shadowed, they

might by this means be disabled from all future service. But *Saul* came time enough to five them from that shame and loss; from that cause so offensive to *Nabab*, that to despight him, he shewed friendship to *David* in the time of his trouble. A courtship which *David* was so mindful of, that he sent Ambassadors to *Hanna* the Son of *Nabab*, to make acknowledgment of it; and to confirm the amity which he had with his Father; but found so ill requital from him, that instead of thanks and kind acceptance, his Messengers were despitely handled, their Beards half shaven, and their Garments cut off by the knee. Incensed therewith he sent *Joab* against them, by whom the Country was laid waste, and *Rabbah* their chief City taken; their Kings Crown, weighing a Talent of Gold, set on *David's* head, and all the Prisoners executed with great severity, some of them being cast into Lime-kilns, and the rest torn in pieces with Saws and Harrows. Quiet a long while after this, we hear no great news of them till the reign of *Jehoshaphat*, against whom confederated with the *Edomites* and *Moabites*, they made open War; but fell by another Swords, as was said before. Not well recovered of this blow, they were subdued and made Tributaries by *Ozias King of Judah*, and continued in the time of *Joash* his Son; who so increased the tribute laid upon them by his Father, that it amounted to an hundred Talents of Silver, ten thousand measures of Wheat, and as many of Barley. Taught by this Lesson how to value the Kings of *Judah*, they continued either quiet Neighbours, or obedient Subjects, though much improved in power and reputation, by gaining the greatest part of their ancient Dwellings, on the removal of the two Tribes and an half, on the East of *Jordan*, to the Land of *Affria*, by *Timoth Pileser*. For after this (with reference to the common danger) *Baal* their King was so strict a Confederate with *Zeeb*, that when *Nebuchadnezzar* had taken *Zeeb* with him unto *Babylon*, and left *Gedaliah* as his Deputy to command the Country, *Ismael*, one of the blood of the Kings of *Judah*, was sent by *Baal* to slay him. But he paid dear for his attempt; his Country being shortly conquered by the *Babylonians*, and the name of *Ammonite* forgotten: changed by the *Grecians* when they came to Lord it over them, to those of *Gileaditis* and *Philadelphias*; according to the new name of their Principal City, and the old one of the Mountains and Hills adjoining.

4 The *REUBENITES* took name from *Reuben*, the eldest of *Jacob's* Sons by *Leah*, of whom, in the first Muster which was made of them at Mount *Sinai*, there were found 46000 fighting men; and 43700 at the second Muster, when they passed over *Jordan*. Their dwelling was on the East of that famous River, having the *Gadites* on the North, the *Deftar Arabia* on the East, and the Land of *Moab* on the South, from which parted by the River *Arnon*.

Places of most observation here, 1 *Abel-Sittim*, placed in that part of the Country which was called the *Forest of Moab*; the last incamping place of *Moses*: afterwards by the Jews called simply *Sittim*: Memorable for the Wood so often mentioned in the Scriptures, of which the Ark of the Lord was made. In after-times by the *Greeks* and *Romans* it was called *Alunus*, mistook by some for that *Abila* or *Abilene* whereof *Lysimachus* was Tyrant; that Town and Territory, as *Josephus* doth affirm expressly, being situate amongst the spurs and branches of *Libanus*, far enough from hence. 2 *Bethbarah*, or *Beth-Bara*, where *John* baptised, and *Moses* made his last and most Divine exhortations to the Tribes of *Israel*, contained in *Deuteronomy*. 3 *Medbarnis*, the strongest in-land

in-land City and Castle in those parts of the World, standing aloft upon a Mountain every way inaccessible: first fortified by *Alexander Jannaeus* King of the *Jews*, as a frontier Town against the *Arabians*; and afterwards demolished by *Gabinus*, one of *Pompey's* Lieutenants, in the War against *Archelaus*. Unfortunately remarkable for the death of *John Baptist*, where murdered by the command of *Herod the Tetrarch of Galilee*, and Lord of this Country of *Peræa*. 4 *Lafa*, or *Lesbab*, of which *Gen. 10. 19*, by the *Greeks* called *Calabrie*, by reason of the fair Fountains rising from the Hills adjoining, out of which issue Springs both of hot and cold Waters, as also bitter and sweet; all which soon after joined into one stream, make a wholesome Bath, especially for Convulsions and contraction of Sinews. 5 *Medeba*, famous for the defeat given to the *Syrians* and *Ammonites* by the conduct of *Joab*, 1 *Chron. 19. 7*. In the time of the *Greeks* laid with some other Towns of this Tract unto *Cela-Syria*; but in the declining times of the *Selencian* Family, regained unto the Crown of *Jerry* by *Alexander*, the second King of the Race of the *Maccabees*; and finally, with eleven others in those parts, delivered by *Antipater* the Father of *Herod* into the hands of *Arctas* King of the *Arabians*, hoping thereby to join him to the side of *Hyrcanus* the Son of *Alexander*, whose cause *Antipater* most favoured. 6 *Bosfor*, or *Bosra*, a City of Refuge, and one of those that were allotted unto the *Levites* on that side of the Water. 7 *Livias*, a Town new built by *Herod*, in honour of *Livia*, the Mother of *Tiberias Cesar*: different from that which the Geographers call 8 *Libia* (though by some confounded) the same with *Laban*, mentioned *Gen. 1. 1*. 9 *Kedemoth*, another City of the *Levites*, giving name unto the adjoining Desert, from whence *Moses* sent his Ambassadors to *Sehon King of the Amorites*, 10 *Bamath-Baal*, the chief City of the worshippers of *Baal*, to which *Balaam* was brought by *Balaac* to curse the *Israelites*. 11 *Hishbon*, the Regal City of *Sehon King of the Amorites*. 12 *Adam*, or the City *Adam* (*Jos. 3. 17*.) where the Tribes passed dry-foot over *Jordan*, opposite unto *Gilgal* in the Tribe of *Benjamin*. Within this Tribe is the Mountain *Nebo*, from which *Moses* took a view of the Land of *Canaan*: an Hill as it seemeth of two tops, whereof that which looketh towards *Jericho*, is called *Pisgab*: that which looketh toward *Moab* being called *Hur*. Here is also a high Hill named *Peor*, where the filthy Idol *Baal* was worshipped also, who hath hence the addition of *Baal-Peor*.

5 The *GADITES* were so called from *Gad* the seventh Son of *Jacob*, begot on *Zilpah* the Hand-maid of *Leah*; of whom were found at the first Muster when they came out of *Egypt*, forty five thousand, five hundred and fifty fighting men; and at the second, when they entered the Land of *Canaan*, forty five thousand bearing Arms. Their situation was betwixt the *Reubenites* on the South, and the half Tribe of *Manasseh* upon the North; the River *Jordan* on the West, and the Mountains of *Arnon* on the East; by which last parted from the dwellings of the Children of *Ammon*.

Cities of most observation, 1 *Arzer*, on the Banks of the River *Arnon*, the principal City of the *Gadites*. 2 *Dibon*, more towards *Jordan*; of great note in the time of *Jehoshaphat*, and of no small account in the time of *Saint Hierom*. 3 *Beth-nimrah*, of which *Ezay* prophesied that the Waters thereof should be dried up; seated upon the *Arnon* also. 4 *Natoroth*, more in the body of the Tribe. 5 *Beth-baram*, mentioned by *Josephus*, chap. 13. v. 27, by *Josephus* called *Betaramphus*; new built by *Herod Antipas*, and called *Livias*, in honour

of *Livia* the Wife of *Augustus Cesar*, translated into the *Julian* Family; who also laid unto it fourteen Villages, to make it of the greater Power and Jurisdiction. 6 *Beth-celab*, by *Josephus* called *Vetecabab*, the habitation of *Miriam*, who in the Siege of *Hierusalem*, when destroyed by *Titus*, was compelled by Famine to eat her own Son. 7 *Succoth*, not far from the River *Jordan*, so called from the Tents or Booths which *Jacob* set up there, in his passage from *Mejopotamia* to the Land of *Canaan*: the People of which Town having denied relief to *Gideon*, as he followed the chase of *Zeeb* and *Zalmunna*, were by him miserably tortured at his return, under a *Tribulum* or *Torelling-Car*, wherewith he tore their flesh, and bruised their bodies. 8 *Jab-zor*, another of the Regal Seats of *Sehon King of the Amorites*; first taken by *Moses*, after recovered by the *Moabites* (as appeareth *Jsa. 16. 8*.) then possessed by the *Ammonites*; and finally from them regained by *Judas Maccabeus*, 1 Mac. 5. 8. 9 *Mahanaim*, so called from the Army of *Angels* which appeared to *Jacob* (*Gen. 32. 2*.) as ready to defend him against all his Enemies, the word in the Original importing a double Army. A place of very great strength and safety, and therefore made by *Abner* the Seat Royal of *Hishbeth*, the Son of *Saul*, during the War he had with *David*; as afterwards the retiring place of *David*, during the Rebellion of his Son *Absalom*. 10 *Kegelim*, the City of *Bazillai* the *Gileadite*, so faithful to *David* in that War. 11 *Ramoth*, or *Ramoth Gilead*, so called from the situation of it near the Mountains of *Gilead*: a Town of special note in the Book of *God*: particularly, for the Pacification here made betwixt *Jacob* and *Laban*, for the death of *Abah King of Israel*, who lost his life in the recovery of it from the hands of the *Syrians*; and finally, for the Election of *Jehon* to the Crown of *Israel*. Anointed at the Siege hereof, by a Son of the *Prophet*. 12 *Penuel*, so called from the interview which the Lord pleased to bestow there on his Servant *Jacob*, at his return out of *Mejopotamia*, mentioned *Gen. 32. 32*. the word signifying the place of the face or vision of *God*: defaced by *Gideon* for their churlish usage of him, when he craved relief of them against the *Midianites*; to whom, together with them against the *Moabites* and *Ammonites*, did once belong. But pertaining to these two Tribes, did once belong. But pertaining to them taken by *Og King of Basan*, and *Sehon King of the Amorites*, it came by the overthrow of those Kings to the hands of *Moses*; by whom allotted unto the Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben*, for their habitation. Continuing theirs till the fatal period of the Kingdom of *Israel* began to approach; at what time their two Tribes, with the half Tribe of *Manasseh* lying on the East of *Jordan*, being carried captive into *Affria*, by *Tiglah Pileser*, the *Moabites* and *Ammonites* recovered a great part of their ancient dwellings. Of which possessed, till their subversion by the *Babylonians*. Afterwards this whole Country coming into the hands of the Kings of *Syria*, had the name of *Peræa*, for the reason formerly delivered. And being won piece-meal by the Kings of *Syria*, came with the rest of the Kingdom of *Judaea*, to the possession of *Herod the Great*; by whom bequeathed at his death unto *Herod Antipas*, one of his Sons, who held it, together with both *Galilee's*, under the name of *Tetrarch of Galilee and Peræa*, as *Josephus* or of *Galilee* only, as *Saint Luke*; who being dead, it was belowned on *Agrippa* King of the *Jews*, of whom more hereafter.

## 2 ITUREÆA.

**ITURÆA** hath on the East and North, *Calo-Syria* on the West, the River *Jordan* and on the South, *Perea*. So called from *Itur* one of the sons of *Ismael*, seated in this Tract; though lost by his Posterity to the *Amorites*, one of the most powerful Tribes amongst the *Canaanites*; and by them made the Patrimony of the Kings of *Basam*. The Race of which King ending in *Og*, the wealthiest and best parts hereof, were given by *Moses* to the half Tribe of *Manasse*; such parts of it as lay towards *Damascus* being taken on by the neighbouring *Aramites*, and made a Kingdom of it self, called the Kingdom of *Gessur*; and the more mountainous and unpleasant left to the first Inhabitants, as not worth the conquering. But both the Kingdom of *Gessur*, and those of the half Tribe of *Manasse*, slipping from one Lord to another, till they came into the hands of the *Greeks*; the name of *Iturea* revived again and grew into very good esteem: the *Itureans* being reputed for good Soldiers, especially at the Bow and Arrows of which thus the Poet in his *Georgicks*, lib. 2.

— *Itureas tacti torquentur in Arcus.*  
Of the best Ewe that can be had  
The *Iturean* Bows are made.

The whole Country in the times of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, divided into *Trachonitis*, and *Iturea* specially so called: this last again being subdivided into *Batanea*, *Gaulonitis*, *Auranitis*, and *Panæa*. For whereas it is said in *St. Luke's* Gospel, that *Philip* the Brother of *Herod* was *Tetrarch* of *Iturea*, and the Region of *Trachonitis*; and by *Josephus*, that for his *Tetrarchy* he had the Provinces of *Trachonitis*, *Batanea*, *Gaulonitis*, *Auranitis*, and *Panæa*: it must needs be that the four last mentioned Provinces make up that one, which by *St. Luke* is comprehended in the name of *Iturea*; distinct from that of *Trachonitis*, though a part thereof. Inhabited in the time of *Josephus*, as in those of *John* and *David*, both by *Jews* and *Syrians*; the *Syrians* dwelling in the mountainous and more barren parts, the *Jews* in that which was assigned them in the time of *Moses*; the whole not yielding unto *Galilee* for extent of ground, but far inferior to it for wealth and fruitfulness; not well inhabited where best, and in some places which are desert and very barren, hardly inhabited at all, or bearing any thing but wild fruits. Such was it in the time of *Josephus*, and not bettered since.

**TRACHONITIS** is that mountainous and hilly Country, which beginning at the borders of the *Ammonites*, where the Hills are called the Mountains of *Agathai*, extendeth it self Northwards as far as *Libanus*: the Hills in those parts being by the *Jews* called *Galeed*, *Syria*, and *Hermos*; but by the *Greeks*, for the craggy and roughness of them, by the name of *Trachones*. The people mischievously bent and much given to Witchcraft, as we find in *Strabo*. *Montanum regionem incultam Ituræi & Arabes, maleficia omnes*. So he, or his Translator rather, for I have not the original by me. Where by *Arabians* he meant those of *Trachonitis*, which every where he maketh to be the same with *Iturea*, though differing from it as the *Caspian* Countries do from the rest of *Gloveshire*, or as a part both from the whole, because united by that name into one Estate, at the time he lived in. Soled & Trachonitis *Iturea nomine appellari*, faith the learned *Grotius*, according to the general consent of the ancient Writers. A people generally addicted to spoil and robbery, living especially on the spoil of those Merchants which traded to and from *Damascus*: till with some difficulty restrained to a more orderly life by

*Herod*, on whom *Augustus Cæsar* had bestowed the Country, to the end that by strong hand he might hold them in.

The People and the Country by *Josephus* are thus described: "The *Trachonites* (faith he) have neither Towns, nor Lands, nor Heritage, nor any other possessions, but only certain Retreats and Caves under the ground, where they lived like Beasts; and having made abundant provision of water and victuals, were able to hold out a long time against any Assailant. For the doors of their Caves were made so narrow, that they could be entered but by one at once; and the way to them not direct, but full of turnings and windings, not possibly to be found out but by the help of a Guide: The whole Country naturally consisting of craggy Rocks. The passages of the Caves once entered, they were found to be very large and spacious, sufficient to contain great multitudes of those Thievish people, who when they had not opportunity to spoil their Neighbours, would rob one another, and omitted no kind of wickedness, being so accustomed to their thurty that could not live otherwise. So he. But I conceive this is not meant generally of all the people, but only of some body of Thieves or Out-laws, which possessed themselves of the freights of the Mountains, and from thence issued to assault and spoil the Passengers. For it is afterwards expressed, that revolting upon the news of *Herod's* death, and committing new outrages; they no longer held of his recovery but they fled the Country, and betook themselves unto a strong Cattle in *Arabia*, where they increased to the number of 1000 persons. So that there is no question to be made at all, but they had Villages & Lands, and Heritages, in the more civil parts hereof, though not amongst those Mountains which *Josephus* speaks of. And amongst those, I reckon, 1. *Gerra*, 2. *Elei*, 3. *Naxa*, 4. *Adrama*; all named by *Ptolemy*, and all placed by him in the Longitude of 70 degrees or upwards: more towards the East than well agree with the position of this Country, or with any part of *Batanea*, lying more towards the West than *Trachonitis*, thought that part of *Iturea*, by him ascribed. Hither also I refer the City of *Tybbe*, the Country of old *Tobit*, and of the Prophet *Elias*. 6 *Tob*, where *Joseph* lived in exile, when oppressed by his brethren, till the necessities of his Country called him to the publick Government. 7 *Hippat* at the foot of those Mountains, reckoned amongst the Cities of *Calo-Syria*, differing in soil as well as Etymology from another of the same name in *Batanea*: this being so named from the Mountain *Hippus*, under which it lieth; that from a Garrison of Horse there placed as shall there be shewn. 8 *Bathira*, on the borders of this Country towards *Batanea*, built there by *Herod*, and planted with a Colony of the *Jews*; which came thither from *Babylon*; the better to suppress the infolencies, and prevent the Robberies of this thievish people, accustomed (as before is said) unto spoil and rapine.

2 **BATANEÆA** is that part of *Iturea* which anciently made up the best and greatest part of the Kingdom of *Basam*, whence it had this name: the changing of *S* to *T*, as *Allyria* into *Atlyria*, and the like, being usual among the *Greeks*. But that Kingdom being brought to an end by *Moses*, it was given to the half Tribe of *Manasse*, so called of *Manasse* the son of *Joseph*, of whom there were found at the first muster near Mount *Sinai*, 32200 men able to bear arms; which though increased in the Deserts, yet were they of such a swift confidence, that there were found 52700 fighting men of them, when they passed over *Jordan*. Their Territory on that side of the River, stretching from *Jaboc* on the South, to the Realm of *Gessur* on the North; and from the Mountains unto

unto *Jordan*, East and West, was exceeding fertile: replenished with all sorts of Cattel, and adorned with the goodliest woods in that part of the world, the Oaks of *Basam* being celebrated in the holy Scriptures.

It had in it sixty fenced Cities when first conquered by those of this Tribe. The principal of which, 1 *Pella*, formerly called *Basis*, but being rebuilt by *Seleucus*, the great King of *Syria*, was by him called *Pella*; with reverence to a City of that name in *Macedon*, the birth-place of *Alexander*, to whom *Seleucus* owed his greatness and whole estate. Destroyed by *Alexander Jannæus* King of the Jews, because not willing to admit of the Law of *Moses* it was afterwards restored by *Pompey* to its former lustre. Memorable in Church story for the Admonition or premonition, given by a voice from Heaven, to the Christians dwelling at *Hierusalem*, to remove thence and dwell at *Pella*, that if they might escape that destruction, which the Roman Army under *Titus* was to bring upon it. 2 *Edreï*, the Seat-royal of the Kings of *Basam*; 3 *Carnaim*, on the banks of *Jaboc*, taken by *Judas Macchabeus*, who fit fire on the Temple of the Idols there, and burnt therein all such as fled thither for Sanctuary. 4 *Ephron*, a strong City upon *Jordan*, taken and burnt by the same *Judas Macchabeus*, for refusing to give a passage to his Army. 5 *Jabesh Gilead*, more near unto the Mountains, whence it had that Adjunct; memorable in the Scriptures, for the siege of *Nabash* King of the *Ammonites*, the raising of that leg by *Saul*, and the gratitude of the people towards him again, in taking down, embalming, and the entombing the bodies of him and his sons, which the *Philistines* had most despitiously hanged on the walls of *Beisban*. 6 *Astaroth*, a City of great note in the elder times: the feat of the *Rephaim*, a Giant-like Race of men, of whom defended *Og* of *Basam*; from whence the Country adjoining had the name of the Land of *Givon*. 7 *Astaroth*, the Goddess of the *Sidonians*, had here her Worshipers. 8 *Ganlon*, sometimes possessed by *Og* of *Basam*, and afterwards made one of the Cities of Refuge; of such esteem in the times of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, that the North part of *Bataneia* or *Batanea* was called *Gaulonitis*; divided into *Superior* and *Inferior*, so often mentioned by *Josephus*. And of this City or Country was that *Judas* of *Galilee*, spoken of in the fifth of the *Acts*, the Founder of the *Gaulonites*, or *Anti-Herodians*. 9 *Gamala* in the lower *Gaulonitis*, so called because the Hill upon which it stood was fashioned like the back of a Camel: invincibly situate, strengthened both by Art and Nature; and at the last with so great difficulty and hazard of *Vespasian's* person, stormed by *Titus*, that the *Romans* in the heat of the execution, spared neither Women nor Children; in sum, that all the Inhabitants perished, except some few women which had hid themselves.

10 *Galada*, after ten months siege, taken and destroyed by *Alexander Jannæus* King of the *Jews*; repaired by *Pompey* and by *Gabinus* made one of the five Seats of Justice for the whole Country of *Palestine*: the other four being *Hierusalem*, *Jericho*, *Hamath*, and *Sephorab*. 10 *Gera*, or *Gergesa*, the chief City of the *Gergesites*, the people whereof on the loss of their Swine intruded our Saviour to depart out of their Coast, as *St. Matthew* hath it. *St. Luke*, and *St. Mark*, ascribe it to the people of *Galada*. Not that the Cities were both one, or the Evangelists at odds in their Relation; but because they were two neighbouring Cities, and their fields lay in common *pace casis de vicinage*, as our Lawyers phrase it; and so the story might be common to both alike. 11 *Hippus*, not far from the River *Jordan*, so called from a Garrison of Horse there placed by *Herod*, not far from the Mountain *Hippus*, as some suppose, which is too far off to have any influence upon it. 12 *Julias*, built by *Philip* the *Tetrarch*

of *Iturea*, in the Southern border of his estate, in imitation of the like work of *Herod* the *Tetrarch* of *Galilee* and *Perea*; to ingratiate himself with *Julia*, the Wife of *Tiberias Cæsar*. 13 *Abel*, by *Josephus* called *Abel Maacha*, for distinctions sake: where *Sheba* that grand Rebel besieged by *Joab*, and the City brought into some danger, had his head cut off, and thrown over the Wall, at the perswasion of a wife Woman of the Town. So the rebellion ended, and the City was saved.

North of *Bataneia*, or *Batanea*, lyeth the Kingdom of *GESSUR*, by a latter name called *AURANITIS*, from *Hauran*, a chief City of it, mentioned by the Prophet *Ezekiel*, Chap. 16. 18. A Kingdom spoken of by *Moses* as the Northern bound of the half Tribe of *Manasse* on that side of *Jordan*, *Deut.* 4. 14. by *Josephus* as the Northern border of the Kingdom of *Basam*, Chap. 12. 5, and reckoned as a part of *Syria* because held by the *Aramites*, 2 *Sam.* 15. 8. A Kingdom, though of no great Territory, yet of some consideration in the eye of the World: *David* esteeming the alliance of the Kings hereof of some use unto him; and therefore marrying *Maacha* the daughter of *Tolmai*, King of *Gessur*, by whom he had *Abijah* and *Tamar*. And to this King it was that *Abijah* fled on the killing of *Amnon*, abiding here three years, as the story telleth us.

Conterminous to this, or at least not very much distant from it was the petit Kingdom of *Ikthab*, which sent 12000 men to the aid of the *Ammonites* against *David*; and not far off, but more towards *Palmyrene*, or *Aram-Zobab*, that of *Beik-Rechob*, Confederates in the same War also with the other *Syrians*, mention whereof is made in the second Book of *Samuel*, Chap. 10. 6. Which whether they belonged to *Syria*, or to those North parts of *Iturea*, is of no great certainty, and of little consequence. For after their this greatness and last exploit we hear no more by the Kings of *Damascus*.

To return therefore into *Gissur* more certainly within the limits of *Palestine*, the places of most observation in it, were 1 *Gessur*, then the chief City of it, and giving name unto the whole. 2 *Malucab*, or *Macani*, as some call it; conceived to be that *Maacha* mentioned in *Chron.* 19. 6. But of this we have already spoken in *Comagena*. 3 *Chauran*, or *Hauran*, mentioned by the Prophet *Ezekiel*, Chap. 47. whence they: Northern parts of *Palestine* were called *Auranitis*, 4 *Chafar-Hauran*, there mentioned by that Prophet also, 5 *Uz*, near the borders of *Damascus*, the first habitation of *Uz* the son of *Aram*, and Grand-child of *Sem*, by whose name so called: supposed to be the Founder of *Damascus* also, and that more probably, than that the Country thereabouts should be the Land of *Hus* ennobled by the dwelling and story of *Job*. 6 *Sacra*, mentioned by *Bochartus*, and by some conceived to be the habitation of *Bildad*, firmament of the *Shechite*, one of *Job's* three Friends, mentioned in that story: but both of him, and *Job* himself, and the Land of *Hus*, we shall speak more at large when we come to *Arabia*. More certainly remarkable for a Port of great strength and use, for the commanding of the Country; recovered from the *Turks* in the time of *Baldwin* the second, by digging with incredible labour through the very Rock upon which it was seated.

As for the fortunes of this dart, after the Tribes on that side of *Jordan* were led captive into *Assyria*, and the Kingdom of *Damascus* subverted by *Tiglarh-Pileser*; it followed the fortune of the *Babylonian* and *Persian* Empires, together with which it came to the *Macedonian* Kings of the Race of *Seleucus*. In the declining of which House it was conquered (or at least the greatest part thereof) by *Alexander* the second, King of the *Jews* of the Race

Race of the *Maacebers*, but lost again for the most part in the time of *Hircanus* the son of *Alexander*; yet afterwards made up the greater part of the Kingdom of *Chalkis* possessed by *Ptolomy* the son of *Menneus*, in the beginning of *Herod's* greatness: who dying left it to *Lysanias* his eldest son, murdered about seven years after by *Marc. Antony*, on the suggestions of *Cleopatra*, who presently seized on his Estates. But *Antony* and *Cleopatra*, having left the Stage, *Lysanias* a son of the murdered Prince entered next upon it, by the permission of *Augustus*. During whose time *Zenodorus*, Lord of the Town and Territory of *Pancas*, farming his Demesnes, and paying a very great rent for them; not only suffered the *Trachonites* to play the *Robbers*, and inflict the Merchants of *Damascus*; but received part of the booty with them. *Augustus*, on complaint hereof, gave the whole Country of *Trachonitis*, *Batanea*, *Gaulanitis*, and *Auranitis*, to *Herod the Asideite*, before created King of *Jewry*; that by his puissance and power he might quell those *Robbers*, and reduce the Country into order: Leaving unto *Lysanias* nothing but the City of *Abila*, (of which he was the natural Lord) whereof and of the adjoining Territory, he was afterwards created *Tetrarch*, by the name of the *Tetrarch of Abilene*, mentioned *Luke 3*. Nor did *Herod's* good fortune end in this. For presently on the death of *Zenodorus*, not long after following, *Augustus* gave him also the District of *Pancas* (of which we shall speak more when we come to *Galilee*) which with the Countries formerly taken from *Lysanias*, made up the *Tetrarchy* of *Philip* his youngest Son; affording him the yearly Revenue of 100 *Talents*, which made 37500 *l.* of *English* Money. On *Philip's* death his *Tetrarchy* was by *Cains Caligula* conferred on *Agrippa* the Nephew of *Herod* by his son *Antipater*, whom he had also dignified with the title of King; after whose death and the death of *Agrippa Minor*, who next succeeded his estates devolved to the *Romans*, and have since had the same fortune with the rest of *Palestine*.

## 3 GALILEE.

**G**ALILEE is bounded on the East, with *Batanea*, and part of the half Tribe of *Manasse* on the side of *Jordan*; on the West, with the Sea-coast of *Phoenicia*, on the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *Anti-Libanus* on the South, with *Samarita*. So called, as some say, from *Geliloh*, a *Phoenician* word signifying as much as borders; because the bordering Country betwixt them and the *Jews*.

The Country not so large as that on the other side of the River, but far more fertile; naturally fertile of itself, every where producing excellent fruits without much pains to the Husbandman, and so well cultivated in old times, that there was hardly any waste ground to be found in it. Thick set with Cities, Towns and Villages, in the time of *Josephus*, and those so populous and rich, that the smallest Village in it is affirmed by that Author, to comprehend no fewer than 15000 Inhabitants. A number beyond all parallel, if reported rightly, and not mistaken in the transcripts. The people from their childhood very stout and warlike, not daunted for fear of want, or dread of penury: which seconded by their vast and almost incredible numbers, made them experimentally known for a tough piece of employment when subdued by *Ti. Ant.* And this, together with their zeal to the *Jewish* Religion, makes it more than probable, that there was something in them of the ancient *Israelite*; and that they were not merely of an *Assyrian*, either stock or spirit; but intermixt with such remainings of the Tribes as had saved themselves, either by flying to the Mountains,

or hiding themselves in Caves and Desarts, or otherwise were inconsiderable for strength and numbers; in the great transplantation of them made by *Salmanser*. And in this I am the more confirmed by their speech or language, which was the same with that of the natural *Jews*, differing no otherwise from it than in tone, and dialect; as our Northern *English* doth from that which is spoke in *London*: as appears by the communication which the *Damofel* had with *St. Peter*, in the High-Priests Hall; in which she plainly understood him, but so that the pronounced him for a *Galilean*. For had the Transplantation been so universal, as some think it was, and that both sick and sound, old and young had been carried away, and none but Colonies of the *Assyrians* to fill up their places; it must needs be that those New-comers would have planted their own language there, as the *Saxons* did on the extirpation of the *Britons*, on this side of the *Severn*. The like may be affirmed of the other Tribes on this side of *Jordan*, especially *Simon* and *Dan*, which either bordering upon *Judah*, or having their Lands and Cities intermingled with it, continued in great numbers in their former dwellings, under the Patronage or subjection of the Kings thereof.

Divided it was anciently into the *Higer* and *Lower*. The *Higer* so called from its situation more amongst the Mountains, had also the name of *Galilea Genimim*, or *Galilee of the Gentiles*; and that either because it lay betwixt the *Gentiles* and the rest of the *Jews*; or because a great part of it had been given by *Solomon* to the Kings of *Tyr*. But for what cause soever it was called so first, certain it is, it held this name unto the last; known by it in the time of the *Apollies*, as appears by *St. Matthew's* Gospel, *Chap. 4*. 15. The *Lower Galilee* is situate on the South of the other, memorable for the Birth and Education of our blessed Saviour, whom *Julian* the *Apollite* called for this cause, in scorn, the *Galilean*: as for the time, the *Disciples* generally had the name of *Galileans* imposed upon them, till that of *Christian*, (being a name of their own choosing) did in fine prevail. Both, or the greater part of both, known in the New Testament by the name of *Decapolis*, or *Regio Decapolitana*, mentioned *Mat. 4*. 25. *Mark 7*. 31. So called from the ten principal Cities of it, that is to say, 1. *Cesarea Philippi*. 2. *Afr.* 3. *Cedes-Nephthalim*. 4. *Sebeth*. 5. *Chorazin*. 6. *Capernaum*. 7. *Beit-Saida*. 8. *Jotapata*. 9. *Tiberias*. And 10. *Sychoptolis*. By which account it stretched from the *Mediterranean* to the head of *Jordan*, East and West; and from *Libanus* to the hills of *Gilboa*, North and South; which might make up a square of forty miles. With reference to the Tribes of *Israel*, the whole *Galilee* was so disposed of, that *Afr.*, *Nephthalim*, and a part of the Tribe of *Dan*, had their habitation in the *Higer*; *Zabulon*, and *Issachar* in the *Lower*; according to which distribution we will now describe them.

1. The Tribe of *NAPHTHALI* was so called from *NAPHTHALI* the sixth Son of *Jacob*, begotten on *Bilhah* the hand-maid of *Rachel*; of whom at the first muster were found 53420 fighting men, and at the second 44540 able to bear arms. The Land allotted to them lay on the West side of the River *Jordan*, opposite unto the Northern parts of *Jurea*; where before we left: having on the West, the Tribe of *Asher*, and that of *Zabulon* on the South. Within which Tract were certain Cities which they never conquered; and one which appertained to the Tribe of *Dan*; the chief of those which were with-held by the *Gentiles*, being *Chalkis*, *Abila*, *Heliopolis*, Cities accounted of as belonging to *Celestia*; where they have been spoken of already. That which did appertain to the Tribe of *DAN* lay on the North-East part hereof, confronting the most Northern

Northern parts of *Jurea*, as before was said; where the *Danites* held one Town of moment, besides many other of less note. And it seemed destined to this Tribe by some old Prelate: the Eastern Fountain of *Jordan* (which hath its original in this Tract) being called *Dan*, at the time of the defeat which *Abraham* gave to *Chedorlamer* and his Associates, hundreds of years before this Tribe had ever a possession in it. Of which see *Gen. 14*. 14. The Town of moment first called *Leshem*, by some Writers *Lesh*; afterwards subject or allied to the Kings of *Sidon*, and upon strength thereof made good against those of *Naphthali*; but taken by some adventures of the Tribe of *Dan*. Of whom it is said, *Job. 19*. 47. That finding their own Country too little for them, they went up and fought against *Leshem*, which they took, and called *DAN*. Accompanied after this exploit, the utmost border Northward of the Land of *Canaan*, the length thereof being measured from *Dan* in the North, unto *Beitphai* in the South: remarkable for one of the Golden Calves which was placed here by *Jeroboam*, and for the two spring-heads of *Jordan*, rising near unto it. When conquered by the *Romans* it was called *Pancas*, from a Fountain adjoining of that name: which with the Territory about it, after the death of *Zenodorus*, who held it of the *Roman* Empire, as before is said, was given by *Augustus* *Cesar* unto *Herod* the Great: and by him at his decease to *Philip* his youngest Son, with the *Tetrarchy* of *Jurea* and *Trachonitis*. By him repaired and beautified, it was called *Cesarea Philippi*, partly to curry favour with *Tiberius* *Cesar* partly to preserve the memory of his own name: and partly to distinguish it from another *Cesarea*, situate on the shore of the *Mediterranean*, and called *Cesarea Palestine*: and being so repaired by him, it was made the Metropolis of that *Tetrarchy*. Mentioned by that name, *Mat. 16*. 13. when *St. Peter* made that confession or acknowledgment of his Lord and Master, that he was *CHRIST* the Son of the living God. By King *Agrippa*, who succeeded him in his Estates, in honour of the Emperor *Nero*, it was called *Neronia*. But that, and the Adjunct of *Philippi*, were of no continuance: the Town being called *Cesarea Pansa* in the time of *Ptolomy*; and simply *Pancas*, as before, in the time of *St. Hierom*. Of this *Cesarea* was that Woman whom our Saviour cured of the bloody Flux, by touching but the Hem of his Garment: who in a pious gratitude of so great a mercy, erected two Statues in this place, representing *CHRIST*, and her self kneeling at his feet; remaining here entire till the time of *Julian* the *Apollite*, by whose command it was cast down, and a Statue of his own set up in the place thereof, miraculously destroyed by a fire from Heaven. The City being at that time, and long before, an Episcopical See. Of less note there were, 1. *Haleb*, and 2. *Reccath*, both situate in the confines of it. And not far off the strong Town and Castle of *Magdala*, (the habitation as some say of *Mary Magdalen*) where the *Pharisees* desired a sign of our Saviour *CHRIST*, as is said *Mat. 15*. 39. & 16. 1. the same, or some place near unto it, being by *St. Mark* (reporting the same part of the Story) called *Dalmannutha*, *Chap. 8*. 10. 11. But whether this Castle did anciently belong to these *Danites*, or to those of *Naphthali*, or to the half Tribe of *Manasse* beyond the River, I am not able to determine.

Of those which were in the possession of the Tribe of *NAPHTHALI*, the Cities of most eminent observation were, 1. *Hazor*, or *Azor*, by *Junius* and *Tremellius* called *Chazar*, the Regal City and Metropolis of all the *Canaanites*: memorable for the *Rendezvous* of 24 *Canaanite* Kings in the War with *Josiah*; by whom it was taken notwithstanding, and burnt to ashes. But be-

ing afterwards rebuilt, it became the Regal Seat of *Jabin* the King of the *Canaanites*, who so grievously for the space of 20 years, afflicted *Israel*; till vanquished by *Deborah* and *Barak*, Destroyed in that War, and repaired by *Solomon*, it continued in so good estate in our Saviour's time, that it was then one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*; it being so still, but known by the name of *Asiopolis*, 2. *Capernaum*, seated on the River *Jordan*, where it falleth into the Sea of *Galilee*; of which Country it was accounted the Metropolis, in the time of our Saviour, with whose presence and preaching often honoured, and one of the principal of the *Decap. litans*. Some marks of its former greatness is retained when *St. Hierom* liv'd, who confessed it to be a Town of some good capacity; but for decayed in the time of *Breidenbach* and *Brachensis* that it consisted but of six poor Fishermen's houses 3. *Hamaith*, so called from *Hamathi* the Son of *Canaan*, planted in these parts; a Town of such esteem in the elder times, that it was reckoned to be one of the Gates of the Land of *Canaan*; and therefore called in Scripture, *Introitus Hamathi*, or the entrance of *Hamath*; as *Numb. 34*. 8. *Job. 15*. *Judg. 3*. 3. *Eccl.* Mistaken by *St. Hierom* for another of the same name in *Syria*, by the *Greeks* and *Romans* after them, called *Epiphania*. And in this I say he is mistaken; *Epiphania* being placed by *Ptolomy* two degrees more Eastward than *Cesarea Philippi*, the most Eastern City of all *Galilee*; & two degrees more North than that, though the most Northern City of all *Palestine*. The ground of this mistake we have seen before. Won by the *Syrians* of *Damascus*, it was again recovered to the Crown of *Israel*, by *Jeroboam* the second Son of *Joa*; and after added by the *Romans* (as were *Sychoptolis*, *Pella*, *Gadara*, and some others of this tract) unto *Celestia*, 4. *Kadeph*, so difference it from others of the same name, called *Kadeph*, *Naphthali*, high seated on the top of an Hill, as is said, *Job. 20*. 7. The King whereof being taken and slain by *Josiah*, it was made one of the Cities of Refuge, and given to the *Levites*. Most memorable for the Birth of *Barak*, who discomfited *Sisera*, Lieutenant of the Host of *Jabin* before mentioned, in the infancy of the *Levites* State; one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*, in the time of the *Romans*; and an Episcopical See in the first ages of Christianity. 5. *Riblah*, watered with the fountain of *Danphib*, a little Rivier, which hereabouts falleth into *Jordan*: to which City, as some say (but I think erroneously) *Zedeckias* the unfortunate King of the *Jews* was brought prisoner unto *Nebuchadnezzar* who caused his children robe slain before his face, & then put out his eyes. But this I look on as an Error in them that say it the Scene of this Tragedy being by *Josiah* laid in *Riblah* (or *Riblah*) a City of *Syria*; the same which in succeeding times had the name of *Antioch*. And certainly *Josephus*, who for so long was Governor of both the *Galilees*, cannot be conceived to be so ignorant of the State of this Province, as to transfer that bloody execution to a City of *Syria*; if it had been acted in this Country. Nor can I think that this *Riblah*, none of the greatest Towns in the Tribe of *Naphthali*, should be capable of the Court and Train of that mighty Monarch; especially for so long a time, as he is said to have attended in that place, the success of his forces then before *Hierusalem*, and the disposal of the State when the Town was taken. 6. *Saphe*, another of the *Decapolitan* Cities, strongly if not impregnable seated; one of the strongest Fortresses of the *Western* Christians, as it was after their expulsion of the *Turks* and *Saracens*; who from hence waited and subdued all the neighbouring Country, as far as to the very Sea. The only place, not of this Country only but of all the East, in which the *Jews* (who possessed it a part of this Town) have any shadow of a

Common-wealth. 7 *Bethlehem*, mentioned *Jaf. 19:28*, made tributary unto those of this Tribe; though otherwise possessed by the *Canaanites* who held out against them. 8 *Cartham*, or *Kiriathaim*, situate near the Mountain, which in following times was called *Mons Christi*, because much frequented by our Saviour; who here made choice of his Apostles, as is said *Mark 3: 13* and where he made also that Divine Sermon, recited in *the 5, 6, and 7. Chapters of St. Matthew's Gospel*. 9 *Masfuboth*, a place of a great strength, but forced by *Bacchides*, General of the Armies of the Kings of Syria, in the time of the *Maccabees*, 10 *Cinnereth*, a strong City, after called *Genezareth*; whence the Lake or Sea of *Tiberias*, neighbouring near unto it, is sometimes called the Lake of *Genezareth*, as *Luke 5: 1, 8c.*

2 The Tribe of *ASER*, was so called from *Aser*, the eighth Son of *Jacob*, begotten of *Zilpah* the Hand-maid of *Leah*; of whom at their first Muster when they came out of *Egypt*, were found 41500 persons able to bear arms, all above twenty years of age; and at the second Muster when they entered the Land of *Canaan*, 53400 fighting men of the new increase. The portion of the Land allotted for their habitation was plentiful in Wine, Oyl, and Wheat, with great store of Balsam; extending from the Coast of *Sidon*, to *Ptolemais*, thirty miles in length; and from the *Mediterranean* Eastward to the Tribe of *Nephthali*, some twelve miles in breadth. And though they never were of power to reduce the maritime Cities of *Ptolemais*, *Tyres*, *Sarepta*, and *Sidon*, under their command; yet had they in this narrow compass many beautiful Cities and Towns of note; which they were quietly possessed of, till their subjugation by the King of *Affria*.

The principal of those, and others which have since been founded, 1 *Aphak*, memorable for the great slaughter there made of the *Syrians*, when besieged by *Ben-hadad*; of whom 100000 were slain by the *Israelites* under the leading of *Ahab*, and 27000 killed by the fall of a Wall. 2 *Gabala*, mentioned by *Ptolemy* amongst the mid-land Cities of *Phoenicia*; but belonging properly to this Tribe: one of those twenty which were offered by *Solomon* unto *Hiram*, and upon his refusal peopled by the *Israelites*. Fallen to decay, it was afterwards rebuilt and strongly fortified by *Herod* the Great. 3 *Gilead*, a Town of great strength and consequences the birth-place of *John* or *Jehonathan*, one of the three seditions in *Hiersusalem* when besieged by *Titus*, where he did more mischief than the Enemy. Attempting to betray this City to the power of the *Romans*, he gave the *Tyrants* an opportunity to be Masters of it, by whom it was burnt unto the ground. But being rebuilt by the authority of *Josephus*, then Governor of *Galilee* for the *Jews*, it was afterwards yielded to *Titus* upon composition. 4 *Canas*, for distinction sake called *Canas-Major*, to difference it from another of that name in the *Lower Galilee*, affirmed for the dwelling of that Woman, whose Daughter *Christ* delivered of an evil Spirit; called by *Saint Matthew* a Woman of *Canaan*, chap. 15, a *Syro-Phœnician* by *Saint Mark*, chap. 7. the *Syro-Phœnicians* of this Tract, being originally of the Race of *Canaan*, as was said before. 5 *Hebbar*, or *Cestibar*, the furthest City of the North; as 6 *Mellal*, or *Malphal*, to the South, of the Tribe of *Aser*. Of later date there are 7 *Thoron*, a strong place, built by the *Christians* on the Hills near *Tyres*, to hinder the excursions of the *Turks*, when they held that City. Situate in a pleasant and fruitful Soil, of great importance in the Wars of the *Holy-Land*, and giving name to the Noble Family of the Lords of *Thoron*; one of which being Confrontable to King *Saladin* the third, lieth buried

in the Chappel adjoining to it; a curious piece of workmanship, and dedicated by the name of the Blessed Virgin. 8 *Belford*, so named from the strength and beauty of it; seated on the high grounds near the *River Naar*, and memorable for the great repulse which *Saladin* the victorious King, of the *Turks* received before it; being forced to raise his Siege with dishonour and loss, on the coming of the *Christians* Armies. Some others Forts here are of the same erection, as 9 *Monfort*, and 10 *Mount Royal* (or *Caltrun* Region) belonging to the *Dutch Knights* (of whom more hereafter) and by them valiantly defended against the Infidels.

3 The Tribe of *ZABULON*, was so called from *Zabulon* the tenth Son of *Jacob*, by his Wife *Leah*; of whom there mustered near *Mount Sinai* 57400 able men; and 65000 at their second Muster, when they came into *Canaan*. Their Territory lay on the South of *Aser* and *Naphthali*, and the North of *Zabulon*, extending from the Lake of *Tiberias* to the *Midstream*.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Jokotham*, the King whereof was slain by *Jofabab*, and the City given unto the *Levites*. 2 *Zabulon*, or the City of *Mena*; lately and magnificent City, till burnt to the ground by *Cristian* a *Roman* President. 3 *Canas-minor*, so called to difference it from the other in the Tribe of *Aser*, the birth-place of *Nathanael*, and as some say of *Simon Zelotes*; memorable for the Marriage at which our Saviour wrought his first Miracle, of turning Water into Wine: Called in *Saint John's Gospel* *Canas* of *Galilee*, 4 *Resfabe*, standing in the Border betwixt both *Galilee*, and therefore strongly fortified by *Josephus* against the *Romans*. 5 *Dathab*, where *Jofabab* found his Brethren as they fed their flocks; and where the Prophet *Elijah* brook blind the *Syrians*, who besieged him in it. 6 *Behsaida*, situate on the Sea of *Galilee*, one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*, the birth-place of *Peter*, *Andrew*, and *Philip*; but most renowned for the Miracles and Preaching of our Lord and Saviour. 7 *Nazareth*, now a small Village, seated in a Vale betwixt two Hills, not far from *Ptolemais* or *Acon*; upon one of which two Hills it was formerly built, where still are to be seen the ruins of many Churches here founded by the *Christians*; it being in the flourishing times of Christianity an Archbishop's Sec. Of great esteem for being, if not the birth-place, yet the habitation of the Virgin *Mary*, who was here saluted with those joyful tidings by an Angel, as she sat in her Chamber. Of which Chamber it is said in the Popish Legends, That it was after the Virgin's death had in great reverence by the *Christians*, and remained in this Town till the *Holy Land* was subdued by the *Turks* and *Saracens*, Anno 1591. Then most miraculously transported into *Sclavonia*; but that place being unworthy of the Virgin's Divine Presence, it was by the Angels carried over into the Sea-coast of *Italy*, Anno 1294. That place also being infested by Thieves and Pirates, the Angels removed it to the little Village of *Loretto*, where her Miracles were quickly divulged; inasmuch that *Paul* the second built a most stately Church over this Chamber, and *Agnes* the fifth made the Village a City. And thus we have the beginning of our famous Lady of *Loretto*. Here did our blessed Saviour spend a great part of his Life before his Baptism; from whence both he and his Disciples had for many years the name of *Nazarenes*. 8 *Josaphat*, long since seated on the top of a Mountain, near the Lake of *Genezareth*, fortified by *Josephus* in the War with the *Romans*; but after a long Siege taken by *Vespasian*, and the City in *Josephus* the Historian, chief Governor of the City, and of both the *Galilees*. 9 *Tiberias*, raised out of the

the ground by *Herod* the Tetrarch, and named thus in honour of *Tiberius Cæsar*. Situate in a fruitful Soil, on the edge of the Lake, which afterwards took the name of the Lake or Sea of *Tiberias*; This City being held by the greatest of the *Lower Galilee*, and the Metropolis of the *Decapolis* Region. In this City it was that our Saviour *CHRIST* called *Saint Matthew* from the Receipts of the Custom-house; and near unto it, that he raised the Daughter of *Jairus*. 10 *Bethulsa*, more within the Land, seated on an high Hill, and of very great strength, as appears by the story of *Judas* and *Heliferus*. 11 *Jafba*, a place of like strength, but forced by *Titus*; who in the fury of the storm slew in it above 15000 persons, and carried away with him 2000 Prisoners. 12 *Sephoria*, or *Sippora*, the habitation of *Jochab* and *Auna*, the Parents of the blessed Virgin; fortified with strong Walls by *Herod* the Tetrarch, who made it his Regal Seat for the *Lower Galilee*. Before that time, it had been made by *Gabinus*, one of the five *Judicial Refuges* for the *Palestinians*; after that not without great difficulty forced by *Vespasian*; and is nothing now but a Castle known by the name of *Zaphet*, or *Saffet*. The ordinary Residence, for the most part, of the *Turkish Sanziak* who hath the Government of this Province; and lately, if not still, of the Emirs of *Sidon*; *Faccardine* the late Emir having been made the Sultan of it, before his falling off from the *Turks*. Not far off is *Mount Tabor*, famous for the transfiguration of our Saviour; for a sumptuous Chappel built on the top of the Hill in memory of it, by the Empress *Helen*, Mother of *Constantine* the Great; and for the Fountain of the Brook *Chifon*, which presently divided into two Streams, runneth Eastward with the one to the Sea of *Tiberias*; and Westward with the other to the *Mediterranean*.

4 The Tribe of *ISSACHAR* is so called from *Issachar* the ninth Son of *Jacob*, by his Wife *Leah*; of whom were found at the first Muster 54400 fighting men, and 64300 at the second Muster. Their Lot, in the partition of the Land amongst the Tribes, fell betwixt *Zabulon*, and the half Tribe of *Manasse* on this side *Jordan*, North and South; extending from that River to the *Mid-Land* Sea. A Territory not so well replenished with strong and eminent Cities, as was that before nor yielding so much matter of observation in the course of bulines.

Those of most note in it, 1 *Taricheas*, on the side of the Lake, about 8 miles from *Tiberias*, of great strength both by Art and Nature; as, with witness the notable resistance which *Vespasian* found when he besieged it, by whom taken with great difficulty and incredible slaughter, 2 *Cibion*, a City of the *Levites*. 3 *Remeth*, called also *Jarnuth*, another City of the *Levites*; where the Hills of *Gilboa* as take beginning, and thence range as far as the *Mediterranean* Westward, and the City of *Jezreel* towards the East. 4 *En-hadda*, near which Soil being diffracted by the *Philistines*, flew himself for grief, or else for fear of killing into the hands of those merciless Enemies, against whom he had so often returned victorious. 5 *Naim*, on the Banks of the River *Chifon*, where *CHRIST* raised to life the Widow's Son. 6 *Harparan*, or *Aphrat*, on the banks of the same River also. 7 *Endor*, of chief note for the Witch with whom *Saul* consulted; and the discomfiture of the *Midianites* by *Gideon*, who perished at *Endor*, and became as the dung of the Earth, faith the Royal Psalmist. 8 *Daharab*, one of the Cities of *Refuge*. 9 *Archea*, not far from the Cave of the two Thieves, who so greatly infested *Galilee* in the time of *Herod*. And 10 of a later date the Castle of *Pilgrims* (*Caltrun*

*Peregrinorum* in *Latine* Writers) built by *Raymond* Earl of *Tholose*, and after fortified by the *Templars*, for the security of such as travelled to the *Holy Land*; and for long time the Magazine or Store-house of the Western *Christians*, now called *Tortosa*. Situate on the Shores of the *Mediterranean*, near a spacious Bay; on the North-side whereof *Mount Carmel*, described already.

As for those *Galileans* which succeeded in the place of these Tribes, they were for the most part originally such as were sent hither by *Salmanassar* to inhabit there, when the *Israelites* were led away into endless thralldom; but intermixed with some Remains of the ten Tribes, as was said before. And yet as if they had been wholly of the same extraction, with the rest of the *Samaritan* Nations, they were as much despised by the *Jews* (as witnesseth that scornful by-word, *Can there any good come out of Galilee?*) as the others were: though these as Orthodox in Religion as the *Jews* themselves. In which so zealously affected, that neither threats nor force could make them offer Sacrifice for the health of the *Roman* Emperours, who they looked on as the Enemies of their Law and Liberty. Brought under the command of the King of *Jewry* by the *Maccabees*, and with the rest of that Kingdom bestowed on *Herod* by the *Romans*. Left by him at his death to *Herod* named *Antipater*, the second of his Sons then living with the Title of *Tetrarch*, which he enjoyed till the death of our Saviour; and on his deprivation (being banished to *Lyons* in France by the Emperor *Caligula*) bestowed upon *Agrippa* his Brothers Son, the first King of the *Jews* so named. Under him, and his Son *Agrippa* the second, it continued till the general Revolt of the *Jewish* Nation, Subjected by the Sword of *Vitus* to the Power of the *Romans*; it hath since followed the same Fortune with the rest of *Palestine*.

#### 4 SAMARIA.

**SAMARIA** is bounded on the East with the *River Jordan*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the North, with *Galilee*; and on the South with *Judea*. So called from *Samaria*, the chief City of it, of which more hereafter.

The Country interchangeably composed of Fields and Mountains, excellent good for Tillage, and full of Trees, yielding variety of Fruits: watered both with the Dew of Heaven, and many fresh Springs which the Earth affordeth it, occasioning thereby abundance of Grains, and consequently of Mith-cheals exceeding plenty. Heretofore very wealthy, and no less populous; but now famed for neither.

The People for the most part were originally the descendants of those *Affrians* whom *Salmanassar* sent hither to possess the dwellings of the captive *Israelites*. Gentiles at first, till better instructed by the *Lyons* whom God sent amongst them, and after by the Priests sent hither by the Kings of *Affria*; they entertained the five Books of *Moses*, and out of them learned the manner of the God of the Land, 2 Kings 17. Further than this they would not go, rejecting all the rest of the Sacred Canon; and no strict Observers of this neither. And though at first they embraced the Worship of God, as that they still adhered to the gods of the Nations where before they dwelt, as *Nergal*, *Alfihach*, *Nibbar*, *Tarak*, and the rest of that rabble; mentioned 2 Kings 17. yet they were soon taken off from those impieties, and became zealous in the worship of one only God; erroneous chiefly in the place which was destined to it. The wicked policy of *Jeroboam* the Son of *Nabat*, was

as natural to them, as if they could not have possessed his Estates without it; and therefore would not suffer their people to go up to *Hiersusalem* to worship, as the Law required. More pious in this than their Predecessors, that they erected no Golden Calves in *Dan* and *Beithel*, or any other parts of their Dominions: though to divert the People from the Temple of God, they would have a Temple of their own. Mount *Garizim*, and the Temple there (of which more anon) as sacred unto them, as that of *Solomon* to the Jews. Schismatical enough in this, but not Idolatrous and Schismatical too as the others were; yet so concited of themselves, and their own perfections, that they imagined themselves debased by any company but their own. If therefore they had visited any of their neighbour Nations, at their return they used to sprinkle themselves with urine: but if by negligence, or the necessity of business, they had touched any not of their own Sect, they drenched themselves, cloaths and all, in the next Fountain. But in this the Jews cried quittance with them, not so much as eating or drinking with them, nor having with them any kind of commerce or dealing, as appears *John* 4. 5. but loading them, on the other side, with all the bitterness of reproach and hatred. There are two manner of people (saith the Son of Sirach) which mine heart abhorreth, and the third is no people: they that sit on the Mountains of Samaria, the Philistines, and the foolish People that dwell at Sichem, *Ecclesi* 10. And this continued to the times of our blessed Saviour, whom when the Jews endeavoured to reproach with their heaviest calumnies, they could find out none so great, as to say that he was a Samaritan, and (which they thought came all to one) a man that had converse with Devils and familiar Spirits.

Of these there were some Sects also, as amongst the Jews. 1. The *Dofibians*, so called from *Dofibear* or *Dofibai*, supposed to be the first Priest who was sent thither by the King of Assyria: agreeing with the Jews in Circumcision, and the Sabbath, and the Doctrine of the Resurrection, (in which last they differed from the common Samaritans, who was a Sadducee in that point) but differing from them in some points of as signal consequence. For they rejected the Writings of all the Prophets, as not *deceitful* inspired by the Holy Ghost; they ate of nothing that had life, like the *Pythagoreans*, abstained from Marriage like the *Efenses*; and in the point of Sabbath-keeping out-went the *Pharisees*: it being resolved upon amongst them, That in what posture soever a man was found on the Sabbath day morning, in the same he was to continue without alteration the whole day after. 2. The *Selvians*, so called from *Selva*, or *Selviab*, one of the Companions of that *Dofibai*; who though they kept all the publick Festivals, as the Jews and the other Samaritans did, yet they kept them not at the same time: transferring the *Paschever* to *August*, the *Pentecost* to *Autumn*, and the Feast of *Tabernacles* to the time of the *Paschever*; not suffered for that cause to worship in the Temple of *Garizim*. 3. The *Goribians*, who kept the same Festivals, and observed the same times of those Solemnities, as the Law required, but kept only one of the seven days of those great Festivals, and laid by the rest, as days of ordinary labour. In other points not differing from the other Samaritans, who though at first possessed of all the Land belonging to the Ten Tribes of Israel, were yet reduced at last to a narrower compass: shut up betwixt *Galilee* and *Judea*, within the ancient Territories of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, and the other half Tribe of *Manasse*, on this side of the Water.

1 The half Tribe of *MANASSES* on this side

of *Jordan*, was situate betwixt *Itachar* on the North, and the Tribe of *Ephraim* on the South; extending from the Mediterranean, to the Banks of that River, in which the places of most consequence and consideration, 1. *Beth-san*, environed almost with the Land of *Itachar*, situate near the Banks of *Jordan*, where it beginneth again to streighten and be like it self, having been almost lost in the Sea of *Galilee*: first called *Nifa*, and so called by *Bacchus* or *Liber Pater*, the Founder of it, in memory of his Nurse there buried; but the Children of *Manasse* not being able to expel the Natives out of it, as in other places, gave it the name of *Beth-san*, or the House of an Enemy. Afterwards when the *Syrians* invaded those parts of *Alfa*, and compelled some of the Jews to serve them against the rest (whom notwithstanding their good Service they put all to the Sword) they new-built this City: called therefore by the *Grecians*, *Scythopolis*, or the City of *Scythians*; and by them reckoned as a City of *Calo-Syria*. Memorable in the Old Testament for the hanging of the dead bodies of *Saul* and his Sons on the Walls hereof, by the barbarous *Philistines*: in the time of our Saviour, for being the greatest of all the *Decapolis* Regions; as afterwards in the flourishing times of Christianity, for being the See of an Arch-bishop: now nothing but a desolate Valley, and an heap of Rubbish, out of which many goodly Pillars, and other pieces of excellent Marble, are often digged. 2. *Terzah*, used by the Kings of Israel for their Regal Seat, till the building of *Samaria*, and the removal of it thither. 3. *Arabatana*, the Territory whereof called *Aralatana*, was afterwards made one of the *Tribarities* of *Judea*. 4. *Thelers*, not far from *Samaria*, where the Battard *Abimelech* was wounded with a Stone, which a Woman threw at him from the Wall; and perceiving his death to be drawing on, commanded his Page to slay him, that it might not be said he perished by the hands of a Woman. 5. *Ephra*, or *Hephra*, in which *Gideon* dwelt: near wherewith there stood an Altar consecrated to *Baal*, defaced by *Gideon*: and not far off the fatal Stone on which *Abimelech* slew 70 of his Brethren. An Heathenish cruelty, and at the day practised amongst the *Turks*. 6. *Asphem*, an agreeable Village, made famous only for the great and notable defeat which *Ptolmy Latyrus* here gave to *Alexander* the King of the Jews: which Victory he used with so great barbarity, that he slew all the Women as he passed along, and caused young children to be fed in *Caldrons*. 7. *Bezek*, the City of the bloody Tyrant *Adonibezek*, whose Story (touched upon before) see at large in *Judges*, chap. 1. By *Josephus* it is called *Bala*, and semeth to be the place in which *Saul* assembled the chief strength of Israel to *Judah*, to the number of 33000 men, for the relief of *Jahob-Gilead*, then distressed by the *Ammonites*. 8. *Jezebel*, the Royal City of *Abah*, and the Kings of his Race, situate on the foot of the Mountains of *Gilboa*: so near unto the Borders of *Itachar*, that some have placed it in that Tribe. Memorable in sacred Story for the stoning of *Naboth* by the procurement of *Jezebel*, and the breaking of *Jezebel*'s neck by the command of *Jehoi*. A City which gave name to the Plains adjoining, called the Valleys or Plains of *Jezebel* (but by the name of *Campus Magnus* in the Book of *Maccabees*, lib. 1. cap. 10.) extending from *Scythopolis* to the Mediterranean: famous for the great and many Battels which have been fought in its name, by *Gideon* against the *Midianites*, of *Saul* against the *Philistines*, of *Abah* against the *Syrians*, of *Jehoi* against *Jehoram*; and finally, of the Christians against the *Saucent*. 9. *Migdale*, unfortunately observable for the death of the good King *Johab*, slain hereabouts in a Battel against

against *Pharaoh Necho* King of *Egypt*; and before that of *Abasiah* King of *Judab*, who received his death-wound at *Gaber*, a Town adjoining, when pursued by *Jehoi*. 10. *Dora*, or *Dor* as the Scripture calls it, on the Mediterranean, not far from the Cattle of Pilgrims in the Tribe of *Itachar*. A very strong and powerful City, and therefore chose by *Tryphon* for his City of Refuge, who having first treacherously taken, and barbarously murdered *Jonathan* the *Maccabean*, after he had received 2000 Talents for his Ranlom; and no less villanously slain *Antiochus* the sixth of *Syria*, his Lord and Master whom he succeeded in his Throne, was by *Antiochus* the seventh, with an Army of 120000 foot, and 8000 horse, besieged in this City, and most delerately put to death. 11. *Cesarea*, anciently called the Tower of *Siraton*, from *Siraton* a King of the *Zidonians*; new-built by *Herod*, and by him not only beautified with a large Theatre and Amphitheatre, both of polished Marble, with a fair and capacious Haven, which with incredible charge and pains he forced out of the Sea. And having in twelve years brought it to perfection, in honour of *Drusus Cesar*, Son-in-law of *Augustus*, he called one of the chief Towers thereof to be called *Drusus*, the City it self to be called *Cesarea Palestine*. The stateliness and magnificence of which City (when first built by *Herod*) he that lifts to see may find the same described at large by *Josephus* the Jew, in the 15th Book of *Antiq.* cap. 13. In this City was *Cornelius* baptised by St. Peter: Here did *Paul* plead in defence of Christianity before *Festus* then the Roman President: and finally, here *Herod Agrippa* was smitten by an Angel, and devoured by Worms, after his Rhetorical Oratory, which his *Parasites* called the voice of God, and not of man. The Metropolis of all Palestine, when one Province only; as afterwards of *Palestina prima*, when by *Constantine*, or some of his Successors, cantoned into three: the first Bishop hereof being said to be that *Cornelius*, whom Saint Peter here initiated in the Faith of CHRIST. 12. *Antipatris*, another City of *Herod*'s building, in the place where *Kapharsalama*, mentioned in *Matt.* 7. 31. had sometimes stood; who in honour of his Father *Antipater*, gave it this new name. Near herunto did *Judas Maccabeus* overthrow a part of *Nicanor*'s Army: and not far off, the Mountain where *Obadiah* the Steward of *Abah* hid the hundred Prophets, whom he preserved against the fury of *Jezebel*: Finally, to this City it was that Saint Paul was conveyed by the command of *Lyfias* to save him from the Jews, who lay in wait to destroy him.

2 The Tribe of *EPHRAIM* was so called from *Ephraim*, the second and youngest Son of *Joseph*; of whom were mustered in the Deserts 45000 fighting men, and 32500 in the Land of *Canaan*; where their Lot fell betwixt this half Tribe of *Manasse*, on the North; and the Tribes of *Dan* and *Benjamin*, upon the South, extending from the River *Jordan* to the Mediterranean.

Places of most consideration, 1. *Saron* on the Mediterranean, to the South of *Antipatris*, mentioned *Acts* 9. 35. and giving name unto that fruitful Valley which reacheth from *Cesarea Palestine*, as far as *Joppa*. 2. *Lydda*, upon the same shores, where Saint Peter (*virtute Christi*, non sua) cured *Aeneas* of the Palsy. By the Gentiles it was called *Diospolis*, or the City of *Jupiter*; but by the Christians, in the time of the Holy Wars, it had the name of Saint George's; partly from a magnificent Temple which the Emperor *Justinian* there erected to the honour of that blessed Martyr; but principally from an opinion which they had amongst them, that he suffered Martyrdom in that place. An opinion founded

on mistakes, first of a *Cenotaphium*, or an empty Monument erected in this City to preserve his memory, for the Grave in which he was interred: the other, in taking the word *Paffio*, used in the *Martyrologies*, for the place of his suffering, which is meant only of the Story or Celebration. But whoever they entitled it by the name of Saint George's, as was said before, and made it on that account also an Episcopal See. 3. *Ramatha*, or *Arimatha*, a City of the *Levites*, supposed to be the dwelling of *Joseph*, who begged of *Pilate* the Body of CHRIST. 4. *Holon*, or *Ajalon*, a City of the *Levites* also; by some placed, and perhaps more fitly, in the Tribe of *Dan*, and there we shall hear further of it. 5. *Themath-Cares*, given by the *Israelites* to *Jothub*, who enlarged the same, and made it a strong and goodly City; honoured with the Sepulchre of that brave Commander, one of the Nine *Worshies* of the World; and afterwards made one of the *Presidures* of *Judea*, by the name of *Thamnitis*. 6. *Adafa*, or *Adafa*, where *Judas Maccabeus* with 3000 Jews overthrew the Army of *Nicanor*. 7. *Jefeti*, called otherwise *Pelcri*, which gave name and birth unto the *Pelcrians*, part of *David*'s Guard, under the governance of *Benaiah*. 8. *Silo*, situate on the top of a lofty Mountain: the receptacle of the Ark, till taken and carried thence by the *Philistines*. 9. *Michmath*, the habitation of *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabean* Brethren, situate in the middle way from *Samaria* to *Hiersusalem*, now called *Byra*. 10. *Naiab*, where *Saul* prophesied. 11. *Beithoron*, a City of the *Levites*, beautified by *Solomon*, but made more famous by the great and notable overthrow which *Judas Maccabeus* here gave to *Lyfias*. 12. *Pirbaton*, on the Mountain *Amelec*, the City of *Abdon* the Judge of Israel. 13. *Sichem*, called also *Sichor*, the habitation in the old times of *Sichem* the Father of that *Hamor*, who defoured *Dinah* the Daughter of *Jacob*; the City for that cause destroyed by *Simeon* and *Levi*; repaired again, and afterwards by *Abimelech* levelled with the ground; a third time re-edified by *Jerobam* the Son of *Nebas*; and a third time ruined by the Kings of *Damascus*: yet notwithstanding these blows, it was of good esteem in the time of our Saviour, who abode in it two days, and converted many. Memorable for *Jacob*'s Well, which was very near inmore for his neighbourhood to Mount *Garizim*, where the blessings were to be read to the people (of which see *Deut.* 11. 27. and *Job* 8. 23.) and where afterwards was built a magnificent Temple for the use of the Samaritan Nation, at the cost and charge of *Sanballat*, a great Prince amongst them. Who having married his daughter to *Manasse*, brother of *Jaddus* the High Priest of the Jews, and fearing he would put her away, to avoid the sentence of Excommunication, which he was involved in for that Match, promised him, that if he would retain her, he would build a Temple answerable to that of *Hiersusalem*, and make him the High Priest thereof, which was done accordingly. But this Temple had not stood above two hundred years, when destroyed by *Hircanus* the *Maccabean*; the place remaining notwithstanding a place of worship, as appears *John* 4. 20. As for the City of *Sichem*, or *Sichor*, it was by the *Grecians* called *Nicopolis*, afterwards made a Colony by the Emperor *Vespasian*, who caused it to be called *Flavia Cesarea*: of which Colony was that renowned *Justin Martyr*. 14. *Samaria*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom of Israel, founded by *Omri* one of the Kings thereof, on the top of the Mountain *Sammou* (which overlooketh all the bottom as far as the Sea-coast) whence it had the name. A lately and magnificent City, conjectured by *Brocardus*, who had traced the ancient Ruins of it, to be bigger than *Hiersusalem*. Destroyed by the *Afrians* when they



carried away the Ten Tribes; but afterwards repaired again, and again beaten to the ground by the Sons of Hyrcanus above-mentioned: But Herod the Great, who was pleased with the situation of it, did again re-edify it, in more stately manner than before; as appeareth by the great store of goodly Marble Pillars, and other carved Stones, in great abundance found amongst the rubbish: and having rebuilt it to his mind, inclosed it with a strong wall, and beautified it with a goodly Temple, in honour of *Augustus-Cæsar*, whom the Greeks call *Sebastos*, he caused it to be called *Sebastie*. Memorable after this new erection from the Sepulchre of *John Baptist*, having made the *Metropolis of Palestina Secunda*, (by consequence an Archbishop's See) now nothing but a few cottages filled with *Greecian Monks*.

Nor were the *Samaritans* themselves (so called from this their principal City) less subject to the vicissitudes and change of fortune, than the City was. Defended for the most part from the *Assyrians*, and such other Nations as were sent thither to fill up the empty places of the captive Tribes: but called *Cuthians* by the *Jews*, either because most of them were of *Cuth*, a Region of *Perfia*, as *Josephus* telleth us, which is now called *Chuzestan*; or else by way of scorn, for *Chusier*, as being of the Posterity of the accursed *Cham*, by *Chus* his son. Having embraced the Law of *Moses*, they began to think better of the *Jews* than the other Nations, but fitted their affections to the change of times: it being the observation of the said *Josephus*, that as often as the *Jews* were in any prosperity, then they called them *Cozins*, and would be of the same Nation with them; but when their fortunes were on the declining hand, then they were strangers which came thither out of foreign Nations, and no kin at all. Nor doth he wrong them in that Character. For when *Alexander the Great* had granted the *Jews* a release of the seventh years Tribute, the *Samaritans* desiring the like exemption, pleaded for themselves *Exegias* (as *Sarus* &c. that they indeed were very Hebrews), though it pleased the *Sidians* to call them *Sichemites*. But when *Antiochus* raged against them with fire and sword, the *Samaritans* sent Letters to him, disclaiming all relation to those of *Judah*, and challenging their descent from the *Modes* and *Perfians*. Nor were they content only to disclaim all kindred with the *Jews*, in the times of trouble, when any persecution rose against them for the Law of God; but did them also all ill Offices, and joyed with their Enemies to their destruction: especially after the *Jews* had refused to admit of their assistance, in the re-building of the Temple; which after that they hindered with great malice, and no less perfervence. But the fortune of the *Jews* did at last prevail, the whole Nation being subdued by *Hyrcanus the Maccabean*, who destroyed their Schismatical Temple also, and levelled *Samaria* it self to the very ground. After this, subject to the *Jews*, who possessed themselves of most of their Cities, and contracted them into a narrower compass than they were in formerly: but still full of hatred and contemned, that nothing was able to appease that inveterate malice, which they had conceived; till both Nations were extirpated in the time of *Adrian*, and made to seek their dwellings in other Countries. Made afterwards a Province of the *Roman Empire*, by the name of *Palestina Secunda*; successively subject with the rest, to the *Perfians*, *Saracens*, and *Turks*, who do now possess it.

### 5 J U D E A.

J U D E A is bounded on the East with the Dead Sea, and the River *Jordan*; on the West, with the

*Mediterranean*; and on the North with *Samaria*, and on the South with *Idumea*. So called from the *Jews*, or people of the Tribe of *Judah*, who after their return from the captivity of *Babylon*, communicated the name of *Jehon* unto all the Nations, as they did that of *Judah* to this part of the Country.

The Soil of the same nation with that of *Samaria*, before described; but it is more swelled with Hills, and more strewed with Rivers, though of no great fame. And therefore we shall say no more, as to the general character and description of it; but look on the particular parts as it stood divided betwixt the *Philistines*, the Tribes of *Dan*, *Simoon*, *Judah* and *Benjamin*.

And first, the *PHILISTINES* commanded all the Sea-coasts from the South of *Phœnicia*, to the North of *Idumea*; or from the *Castle of Pilgrims*, to the City of *Gaza*, taking both into the accompt. But *Joppa*, and all the Towns on the North of that, being taken in by the *Israelites*, they held no more than six Towns of any importance, with the Countries and Territories adjoining to them: but those few populous and strong, that by their own power, and the assistance of the *Edomites*, and the rest of their Neighbours, not well affected to the Tribes, they kept them under terms, and lay more heavy on them than all the *Canaanites* together; as will appear when we sum up the story and successes of their affairs.

In the mean time let us survey the Country which was holden by them, notwithstanding all that could be done against them by the Kings of *Israel*: and therein we shall find worth our observation, 1. *Geth*, or *Gath*, the birth-place of the huge Giant *Goliath*, slain by *David*, as also of many others of the like Gigantic proportion, slain by *David's* Worthies. Destroyed by *David*, or rather slighted and dismantled, it was re-built by *Roboam* the Son of *Solomon*; but again razed by *Ozias* King of *Judah*, who found the *Philistines* there garrisoned both in his neighbours to him, and finally laid waste by *Hazeel* the King of *Syria*. Not much regarded after that, though it kept the name of *Gath* in *St. Hierom's* time; till in these latter Days the King of *Hierusalem* erected there a new Castle, from the ancient ruins. From hence, as I conceive, the Idol *Dagon*, so much worshipped by these *Philistines*, was by the *Syrians* and *Phœnicians* called *Asu-Gath*; and not from *Gath* a *Syrian* Queen, as is said by many. 2. *Asaron*, on the South of *Gath*, of great wealth and power, and one that held out notably against the *Danites* and *Judeans*. Much spoken of in the holy Scriptures, but for nothing more than their Idolatrous worship of *Belzebub*, that is to say, the Lord of *Flies*: so called by the *Jews*, either in contempt of the Idolatries committed to him, or because of that great multitude of *Flies* which attended his Sacrifices, whereof some say, the Temple of *Hierusalem* was wholly free. But whatsoever he was, or for what cause so named, certain it is that he was heretofore in especial honour, and therefore called in Scripture the god of *Asaron*: and his other *Abazabab* the King of *Israel* felt his Messenger, to enquire of this Idol, concerning his health. 3. *Aphid*, (by the *Greecians* called *Asen*) memorable in Holy Writ for the Temple of *Dagon* into which the Ark of the Lord was brought; that Idol falling down before it, as not able to stand upon being the Ark fo near. Near to this Town was *Judas Maccabean* overcome & slain by *Bacchides*, Lieutenant to *Demetrius* the King of *Syria*; and not long after the Town itself was taken by *Jonathan* the brother of *Judas*, who put the Citizens to the sword, and burnt all such as fled to the Temple of *Dagon*, together with the very Idol, consumed in the same fire with the Idolaters. Rebuilt by *Gabinus* a *Roman* General, in the times of *Christianity* it was

was made an Episcopal See; and continued a fair Village till the days of *St. Hierom*. 4. *Acalon*, on the Sea-side also, said to be built by *Acalus* a noble *Lydian*, employed by his King in a war against the *Syrians*; but this very uncertain. One of the chief and strongest Cities of the *Philistines*, of great note amongst the Gentiles for a Temple, dedicated to *Directo*, the Mother of *Seniramis*, here worshipped in the form of a Mermaid: & for another of *Aphs*, wherein *Herod* the Father of *Antipater*, and Grandfather of *Herod the Great* (from his birth in this City called *Herod the Acalonite*) is said to have served as the Priest. It had in the first times of Christianity an Episcopal See; and in the course of the holy Wars was beautified with a new wall, and many fair buildings by King *Richard* the first; 5. *Gaza*, more within the Land, on the River *Bejor*; a fair and strong Town, formerly called *Alis*, from whence perhaps the name of *Gaza* was derived by the Heathens; or else it was so called by the *Perfians*, in regard that *Cambyses* here laid up the Treasure which he had provided for the War of *Agypt*, the word *Gazain* the *Perfian* Language signifying treasures. Of which *Cambyses* it is said by *Pomponius Mela*, *Cum anti Aegyptum peteret, huc belli opes & pecuniam involvit oneri*. After which it was made the Receipt of *Treasure*, in which the *Perfians* laid the Tribute of the Western Provinces, whence all riches had in time the name of *Gaza*. Once *Caleb* took it, but not able to hold it against the *Philistines*, he again deserted it. Destroyed by *Alexander the Great*, and re-built again, it made notable resistance against the *Maccabees*; till at last forced by *Simon* the brother of *Judas*, who liked the place so well that he intended to have made it his place of residence: not decayed in length of time, but that it was a goodly City in the days of *Brochadus*. And it is still the best of all this Coast, built on an hill encompassed with rich and pleasant valleys: the buildings low and mean, as in other places; but some of them adorned with pillars of *Asian* Marble, digged out of the remaining ruins. 6. *Maima*, the Port Town of *Gaza*, but made a City of it by *Constantine*, by whom called *Constantia*; but re-fortified again by *Julian* unto those of *Gaza*, and by him commanded to be called *Gaza Maritima*.

These were the chief places holden by the *Philistines*, a strong and Giantlike race of men, such as the Scripture calls by the name of *Anak*, or the Sons of *Anak*. Originally descended from *Cushim* and *Caphorim*, of the race of *Emoraim* the Son of *Cham*; as appeareth both by the common consent of ancient Writers, and plain Texts of Scripture, *Jer. 47. 4. and Amos 9. 7*. These being settled first in the borders of *Agypt* and *Idumea*, and the *Cushim* gave name unto the Province of *Canaan*, and the Mountain *Cafus*; proceeded Northwards and subdued the *Avims*, a *Canaanitish* people, planting themselves in their habitations, as is laid expressly *Deut. 2. 23*. Here *Abraham* found them in his time, and here they were when *Isaac* went down to *Gerar*. Governed at first by one King whom they called always by the name of *Abimelech*, as the *Egyptians* theirs by the name of *Pharaoh*, sometimes by five, according to the number of their principal Cities; but still united in the times of approaching dangers. Too strong to be subdued by the Tribes of *Israel*, they made head against them, and maintained them at several times, for above 150 years, tyrannized over them, till broken by *Samson*, and for a time kept off by *Samuel*. Recovering again, they vanquished the *Israelites* in the time of *Saul*, whom they discomfited, and changed his dead body barbarously on the walls of *Bethsai*. But *David*, a more fortunate Prince, overthrew them in many batteles, and at length took the Town of *Gath*, one of the strongest Towns they had;

and by that means fo weakened them, that they durst not stir all the time of *David*, nor along while after. Beginning to be troublesome in the days of *Ozias* King of *Judah*, they were warred on by him, their Army overthrown, *Ita* and *Amcia*, two of their strong Forts, took and razed, and the Town of *Gath* again dismantled. In the time of the Idolatrous *Achaz*, associating with the *Edomites*, (who evermore attended the destruction of *Judah*) they broke out again; took *Bethsaiem*, *Ajalon*, *Timnah*, and some other Towns; carried away many *Prisoners*, and slew much People: But the good King *Ezekiab* made them pay dear for it, taking from them, the greatest part of their Country, betwixt *Gath* & *Gaza*. Which notwithstanding, they recovered to so great esteem, that the whole Country had from them the name of *Palestine*. But broken by degrees by the *Maccabees*, they lost both their power and reputation, falling in common estimate as a part of *Jerry*; the fortunes of which it followed for the time succeeding.

2. The Tribe of *DAN* is so called from *Dan* the fifth Son of *Jacob*, by *Bilhah* the Hand-maid of *Rachel*, of whom were mulctured at Mount *Sinai* 62700 fighting men; and 66000 at the second muster, in the Land of *Canaan*: where their lot fell betwixt *Ephraim*, on the North; *Simoon* on the South, the Tribe of *Benjamin*, on the East, and the *Mediterranean* on the West.

Places of most note in it, 1. *Joppa* (now called *Jaffa*) once a famous Mart-Town, and the only Haven to *Judea* in foregoing times: the Town where *Jonah* took ship to fly unto *Tarshish*, where *Peter* raised *Dorcas* from death to life; & where he lying in the house of one *Simon* a Tanner, was in a Vision taught the conversion of the Gentiles. This City they report to have been built before the flood. And here they say reigned *Cepheus*, whose Daughter *Andromeda* was by *Perseus* delivered from a Sea-monster, some of whose bones the people used to shew to strangers, even to the flourishing of the *Romans*. Just as our citizens of *Coventry* and *Warwick* shew the bones of the *Dun-Cow* of *Dunfearn* heath, and the bones of *I* know not what Giant, slain by *Guy Earl of Warwick*. In the time of the *Maccabees* it was garrisoned by the *Syrians*, who having in the Port a Fleet of good power & strength, invited 200 of the chief citizens to go aboard with them, & there drowned them all: for which their Fleet was fired by *Judas*, and such as did escape the fire, fell upon the sword. Twice taken by the *Romans*, & the second time burnt unto the ground: new walled, and fortified with Towers by King *Lewis of France*, in the year 1250, the holy Wars then drawing to their final end. Now nothing standing off but two little Towers where are certain Harquebusses for defence of the Haven, none of the belted-defence from the South & West-wards with eminent Rocks, but exposed to the fury of the North; which makes it more unsafe than the open Seas when enraged by Tempests. Not much frequented by the Merchants, who trade here but for Cottons only, & hold their Factory not far off in a Town called 2. *Rama*, by the *Movers* called *Ramala*, situated in a sandy plain, on the rising of a little Hill: built of Free-stone, but the streets thereof narrow, and the houses contemptible. More beautiful in the ruins of some Christian Churches, and a Monastery built by *Philip* the God of *Burgundy*, where the House of *Nieodemus* stood, than in any of the remaining Edifices. 3. *Jamnia*, near *Joppa*, where *Judas* burnt the rest of the *Syrian* Fleet, the flame whereof was seen to *Hierusalem*, 240 furlongs off: mentioned by *Ptolomy*, and in the times of Christianity an Episcopal See; now not discernible in the ruins. 4. *Cedar* or *Cedron*, fortified against the *Jews* by *Condeba* one of the Lieutenants of *Antiochus*, who hereabouts was overthrown.



Gibeah, all *Israel* arming against it as one man. For besides that perished in the former Battels, there fell in one day 25000 men that drew the Sword: the fury of the Conquerors after that great Victory sparing neither man nor beast, nor any thing that came to hand, and burning down all their Cities also which they came unto. So great an havoc was there made of innocent Maidens, that when the edge of this displeasure was taken off, there were not Wives enough found for those young men which had escaped. The other Tribes having bound themselves by a solemn Oath, not to betray their Daughters on them: inasmuch that they were fain to provide themselves of Wives of the Daughters of *Jabish-Gilead*, a Town of the *Manassites* beyond *Jordan*, whom they took by assault; and of the Daughters of *Shiloh*, whom they took by stratagem. The whole Story see at large in the Book of *Judges*, c. 19. 20. 21.

The Territories of this Tribe lay betwixt those of *Ephraim* on the North, and *Judah* on the South; having the *Dead-Sea* to the East, and the Tribe of *Dan* to the Westward of them. The chief of their Towns and Cities were, 1. *Michmas*, the incamping place of *Saul*, 1 Sam. 13. 2. and the abiding place of *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabean* Brethren, 1 Maccab. 9. 73. 2. *Mispah*, famous in being the ordinary place of assembly for the whole body of the People, in matters of War and Peace: as also in that standing in the midst of *Canaan*, it was (together with *Gilgal*) made the Seat of Justice, to which *Samuel* went yearly to give Judgment to the People. 3. *Gebah*, the North border of the Kingdom of *Judah* toward *Israel*. 4. *Gebeah*, the Country of *Saul*, the first King; where the abutting of the *Levite's* Wife by the young men of this Town, had almost rooted the Tribe of *Benjamin* out of the Garden of *Israel*. 5. *Ai*, a great and strong City, in the Siege of which the *Israelites* were first discomfited: but when by the death of *Achan*, who had sinned the accursed thing, the Camp was purged, *Joshuah* by a warlike Stratagem surpris'd it. 6. *Gibeon*, the mother-City of the *Gibeonites*, who profligating the unresistable Victories of the *Israelites*, came to the Camp of *Joshuah*, and by a wife obtained peace of him and the People: Employed by them in hewing Wood, and drawing Water for the use of the Tabernacle, after the fraud was made known unto them, called *Nethinims*, *Ezra* 4. 3. from *Nathan*, which signifies to give, because they were given to the service of the Tabernacle first, of the Temple after. *Saul* about four hundred years after, slew some of them, for which fact the Lord caused a Famine on the Land; which could not be taken away till seven of *Saul's* Sons were by *David* delivered unto the *Gibeonites*, and by them hanged. This Famine did God fend, because in killing those poor *Gibeonites*, the Oath was broken which *Joshuah* and the Princes swore concerning them. In defence of those *Gibeonites* it was that *Joshuah* stayed War against the Kings of the *Canaanites*, and wayed the motion of the Sun by his fervent Prayers. 7. *Jericho*, destroyed by the sound of *Rams-Horns*, was not only levelled by *Joshuah* to the ground, but a Curse inflicted on him that should attempt the re-building of it. This Curse notwithstanding, at the time when *Abub* reigned in *Israel* (which was about five hundred years after the ruin of it) *Hiel a Bethelite*, delighted with the pleasantness of the place, re-edified it. But (as it was foretold by *Joshuah*) as he laid the foundation of the Walls, he lost his eldest Son; and when he had finished it, and was setting up the Gates thereof, he lost also the younger. It may be *Hiel* when he began this Work, minded not the Prophecy, it may be he believed it not: peradventure he thought the words of *Joshuah* not so much to proceed from the spirit of Pro-

phesy, as from an angry and vexed heart; they being spoken in way of wish, or execration. And it is possible, it may be, he chose rather to build the eternity of his name on so pleasant and beautiful a City, than on the uncertain lives and issues of two young men. 8. *A-nathoth*, the birth-place of the Prophet *Jeremy*, and the Patrimony of *Abiathar* the High-Priest, first hindered by the command of *Solomon*, as to a place of his own, when deposed from his Office by that King. 9. *Nab*, called 1 Sam. 22. 19. the City of the Priests, destroyed by *Saul*, for the relief which *Abimelech* the High-Priest had given to *David*; the Ark of the Lord then residing there. 10. *Gilgal*, upon the bank of *Jordan*, where *Joshuah* did first eat of the Fruits of the Land, and kept his first Passover; where he circumcised such of the People as were born during their wandering in the Wilderness; and nigh to which he set up twelve Stones, for a Memorial to Posterity that the Waters of *Jordan* did there divide themselves, to give passage to the twelve Tribes of *Israel*. Here *Agag*, King of the *Amalekites*, was taken in pieces by *Samuel*; and here *Samuel* once every year administered Justice to the People. For being fated in the midst of the Land of *Israel*, betwixt North and South, and on the East-side of the Country near the Banks of *Jordan*, it served very fitly for that purpose: as *Mispah* also did, which stood in the same distance, in regard of the length of the Land of *Canaan*, but situate towards the West-Sea, near the Land of the *Philistines*: and therefore interchangeably for the use of the People. 11. *Bethel*, at the first called *Luz*, but took this new name in remembrance of the Vision which *Jacob* saw here, at going towards *Mesopotamia*, as is said Gen. 28. 19. It signified the House of God, and was therefore chosen by *Jeroboam*, for the setting up of one of his golden Calves; though thereby (as the Prophet said) he made it to be *Beth-aven*, the House of Vanity, *Hosai* 15. & 10. 4. For then it was a part of the Kingdom of the ten Tribes, and the Southern border of that Kingdom on the Coast of *Ephraim*: but taken from it by *Ahish* the King of *Judah*, and after that accounted as a member of his Kingdom, till the destruction of it by the *Chaldeans*. Called with the rest of those parts in the *Macabees*, by the name of *Aphaim*, which signifieth a thing taken away; because taken away from the ten Tribes, to which once it belonged, 1 Mac. 11. 34. where it is said, to have been taken from the Country of *Samaritania*, and added unto the borders of *Judea*. 12. *Ramath*, another place there mentioned, and said to have been added to the Realm of *Judah* of *Israel*; formerly the South border of the Kingdom of *Israel*; and therefore strongly fortified by *Basai*, one of the *Ash* King of *Judah*. 13. *Chadai*, or *Hadai*, one of the three Cities (the other two being *La* and *15000*) which were inhabited by the *Benjaminites* after the Captivity. Destroyed in the Wars with the Kings of *Syria*, and afterwards re-built by *Simon* the *Maccabee*.

But the chief Glory of this Tribe, and of all the rest, and not so only, but of all the whole World, was really was the famous City of *Hierusalem*, seated upon a rocky Mountain, every way to be ascended with steep and difficult Ascents (except towards the North Mountains, all other sides also with some neighbouring Mountains, as it placed in the midst of an Amphitheatre. It consisted in the time of its greatest flourish of four parts, separated by their several Walls, as if several Cities: we may call them, the Upper City, the Lower City, the New City, and the City of *Herod*: all of them but the Lower City, seated upon their several Hills. Of these, that which we call the City of *Herod*, had formerly been beautified with the Houses of many of the Prophets as

in our Saviour's time with that of *Mary* the Mother of *John Mark*, mentioned *Acts* 15. 37. converted to a Church by the *Primitive Christians*: the Western part whereof was wholly taken up by the Palace of *Herod*, (a wicked but magnificent Prince) for cost excessive, and for strength invincible; containing Gardens, Groves, *Hilpoods*, places devised for pleasures, besides those for exercise. Fortified with three Towers at the corners of it. That on the South-East of the Wall, fifty Cubits high, of excellent workmanship, called *Mariamne's* Tower, in memory of his beloved but insolent Wife, rashly murdered by him. Opposite to which, on the South-West corner, stood the Tower of *Phasaelus*, so called by the name of his Brother, seventy Cubits high, and in form resembling that so much celebrated *Egyptian Pharos*: and on the North Wall, on a high Hill, the Tower of *Hippick*, exceeding both the rest in height by fourteen Cubits, and having on the top two Spires in memory of the two *Hippici*, his very dear Friends, slain in his service in the Wars.

2. On the South-side flood that part which was called the Old City, possessed if not built by the *Jehusites*, and therein both the Mountain and Fort of *Sion*: but after called the City of *David*, because taken by him; and thereon built a strong and magnificent Castle, the Royal Court and Mansion of the Kings succeeding. In the West part hereof stood the Tower of *David*; a double Palace built by *Herod*, the one part whereof he named *Agrippa*, and the other *Cesar*, composed of Marble; and every where interlaid with Gold; and not far off, the House of *Annas* and *Caiaphas*, to which the Conspirators sought our Saviour to receive his Tryal.

3. That which was called the Lower City, because it had more in it of the Valley, was also called the Daughter of *Sion*, because built after it, and did in Majesty and greatness exceed the Mother. For therein upon Mount *Moriah*, stood the Temple of *Solomon* (whereof more anon) and betwixt it and Mount *Sion*, on another Hill, the Palace which he built for his Wife the Daughter of *Egypt*; and that which he founded for himself, from which by an high Bridge he had a way unto the Temple. West hereof, on a lofty Rock over-looking the City, stood the Royal Palace of the Princes of the *Maccabees*, re-edified and dwelt in by King *Agrippa*, (though of *Herod's* Race) and not far of the Theatre of *Herod's* building, adorned with admirable Pictures, expelling the many Victories and Triumphs of *Augustus Caesar*. In this part also stood Mount *Akra*, and on that once a Citadel built by *Antiochus King of Syria*, but razed by *Simon* one of the *Maccabean* Brothers, because it over-topped the Temple; the House of *Helena* Queen of *Adiabene*, who converted from Paganism to *Judaism*, had here her dwelling, and her edifice: and finally, *Herod's* Amphitheatre, capacious enough to contain 80000 people, whom he entertained sometimes with such Shows and Spectacles, as were in use amongst the *Romans*. And in this part also, on a high and craggy Rock, not far from the Temple stood the Tower of *Barris*, whereon the same *Herod* built a strong and impregnable Citadel, in honour of *Mark Antony*, whose Creature he first was, called by the name of *Antoniana*, having a fair and large Tower at every corner, two of them fifty Cubits high, and the other seventy; afterwards garrisoned by the *Romans*, for fear the *Jews* presuming on the strength of the Temple, might take occasion to rebel.

4. As for the New City, which lay North to the City of *Herod*, it was once a Suburb only unto all the rest; inhabited by none but mechanical persons, and the meanest Tradesmen; but after encompassed by *Agrippa* with a Wall of 25 Cubits high, and fortified with ninety

Turrets. The whole City fenced with a wonderful circumvallation on all parts thereof; having a Ditch cut out of the same Rock, as *Jesseph* an eye-witness writeth, sixty foot deep, & no less than two hundred and fifty foot in breadth. First built, say some, by *Melchisedek* the King of *Salem*; by the *Jehusites* themselves say others: by whomsoever built, called at first *Jehusalem*, afterwards *Jerusalem*, with the change of one letter only: enlarged in time, when made the Royal Seat of the House of *David*, to the magnificence and greatness before described, till it attained unto the compass of sixty furlongs, or seven miles and an half. Unconquered for the first four hundred years after the entrance of the Children of *Israel*; and when *David* attempted it, the people presumed so much on the strength of the place, that they told him in the way of scorn, that the blind and the lame which they had amongst them (as the Text is generally expounded) should defend it against him. But as I think, the late learned Mr. *Gregory of Christ Church in Oxon*, hath found out a more likely meaning of the Text than this, who telleth us, that the *Jehusites* by the Blind and Lame (as they knew well what the *Israelites* called Blind and Lame) did understand those Tutelar Idols, on whose protection they relied (as the *Trojans* did on their *Palladium*, for defence thereof: and then the meaning must be this, Those gods whom you of *Israel* call blind and lame, shall defend our Walls. Why else should *David* say, (had they meant it literally) that his soul hated the lame and the blind? 2 Sam. 5. 8. or why should the People of *Israel* be so uncharitable as to say, That the blind and lame should not come into the House (or the Temple of God) were it meant no otherwise? But notwithstanding these vain hopes, the Town was carried under the conduct of *Joab*, that fortunate and courageous Leader; and made the Royal Seat of the Kings of *Judah*.

Proceed we now unto the Temple built by *Solomon*, in providing the Materials whereof there were in *Lebanon* 30000 Workmen, which wrought by 10000 every Month; 70000 Labourers, which carried Burdens; 80000 Quarry-men, that hewed Stones in the Mountains; and of Officers and Overseers of the Work, no less than 3300 men. The Description of this stately Fabric, we have in the first of Kings, cap. 6. 7. In the year of the World 2350, it was destroyed by *Nebuchadnezzar* at the taking of *Hierusalem*: re-built again after the return from the Captivity; but with such opposition of the *Samaritians*, that the Workmen were fain to hold their Tools in one hand, and their Swords in the other, to repulse, if need were, those malicious Enemies. But yet this Temple was not unfavourable to the magnificence of the former; so that the Prophet *Haggai* had good occasion to say to the People, cap. 1. ver. 3. Who is left amongst you that saw this House in her first Glory? is it not in your eyes as nothing, in comparison of it? Nor fell it short thereof only in the outward Structure, but some inward Additions: For it wanted, 1. The Pot of *Manna*, which the Lord commanded *Moses* to lay upon the *Tegistimony* for a memorial, *Exod.* 16. 32. &c. 2. The Rod of *Aaron*, which only budded of all the Rods of the Princes of *Israel*, and was commanded to be kept before the Ark of the *Tegistimony*, for a token against *Corah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, *Num.* 17. 10. 3. The Ark of the Covenant, the making whereof we have *Exod.* 25. 10. and the placing of it in the Oracle, or *Sanctum Sanctorum*, 1 Kings 6. 19. 4. The two Tables of the Law, writ by God's own finger, and by *Moses* laid up in the Ark of the Covenant, *Exod.* 40. 20. and *Deut.* 10. 5. And 5. The Fire of Sacrifice, which came down from Heaven, mentioned *Lev.* 9. 24. 2 *Chron.* 17. 11.

which by the Priests was to be kept continually burning never to go out. This second Temple, partly because it was grown ruinous, partly because it seemed not magnificent enough, but principally to carry favour with the Jews, Herod the *Alexandrian* pulled down, and set up another in the place: making it not much inferior (if at all) unto that of *Salomon*, but far superior to the other *Imperial* Temple, as *Tacitus* most truly called it. And this was it to which our Saviour did sometimes vouchsafe his presence.

But here we are to understand, that by the Temple it is not meant the Fabric only, or the House it self; but also all those several Courts which encompassed, being four in number. That is to say, *Atrium Sacerdotum*, or the Priests Court, which was next unto the Temple wherein stood the Brazen Altar for the daily Sacrifice, and the Laver for the washing of the Priests and the Sacrifice also; into which Court might none enter but the Priests alone. 2. Then there was *Atrium Populi*, or the Peoples Court, separated from the other by a Wall of three Cubits height; to which the people did repair to perform their Sacrifices, to say their prayers, and to make payment of their vows. In the middle of this Court, did *Salomon* make a brazen Scaffold for the Kings his Successors; 2 *Chron.* 6. 13. and afterwards in imitation of his Porch built before the Temple, were many Porches built about it for the people to repair in rainy weather, which gave to this whole Court the name of *Salomon's Porch*, whereof see *John* 10. 23. *Acts* 3. 11. *With* that stood *Atrium Famularum*, or the Womens Court, divided from the other, as is collected out of 2 *Chr.* 20. 5, in the time of *Jehoshaphat* King of *Judah*; in which stood the Treasury, or poor mans Box, mentioned in the one and twentieth Chapter of *St. Lukes Gospel*: from whence this whole Court had sometimes the name of Treasury, as appeareth *John* 8. 20, where it is said, that these women spoke JESUS in the Treasury, that is to say, in the Womens Court, where the Treasury or Alms-box stood. Betwixt these last was an ascent of 15 steps, on which the Levites used to sing those 15 Psalms, which do immediately follow the hundred nineteenth Psalm upon each step one: from whence they had the name of *Psalms Graduates*, or *Cantica Graduum*, i.e. the Psalm or Songs of degrees. And so far all was counted *holyground*, upon which none might tread but either natural Jews, or circumcised Proselytes, whom they called *Proselyti fidei*, as before was said; or such of the other Sex (not natural Jews) who having received all outward initiations, had bound themselves unto the observation of the Law of *Moses*. 4. So was it not with the fourth and last Court, called *Atrium Gentium*, or the Court of the Gentiles, designed for the use of those Gentiles, whom they called *Proselyte Portæ*, bound only unto the keeping of the Precepts given to the Sons of *Noah*. For in that, as unanctified ground (though counted part of the Temple also) did they permit a Market of Sheep and Oxen, the Sale of Doves and Pigeons, and the Tables of Money-changers, for the Oblations of the People: habling the poor Gentiles amongst their Cattle, & ranking them with the worst of them. And out of this Temple, or Court of the Temple did CHRIST our Saviour cast the buyers and sellers, and overthrow the Tables of the money-changers; asserting it to its primitive and original use, which was to be an house of Prayer for all the Nations. This last Court separate the other by a wall of three cubits height, adorned with certain pillars of equal distance, bearing this inscription, ΜΗ ΔΙΣΒΑΛΕΙΣ ΕΙΣ ΤΗΝ ΑΓΙΑΝ ΑΥΛΑΝ, i. e. Let no Alien (or one that is no Jew) enter into the Holy Place: as to this wall it is that the Apostle alludeth, saying, He hath broken down the middle-wall

of partition between us (i. e. between the Jews and Gentiles) making one of us, *Ephes.* 2. 14, 15. inferring hereupon, that the Gentiles are no more strangers and foreigners, but fellow-Citizens with the Saints, and of the household of God, v. 9.

But to go forwards with the Temple, having continued in the glories of which Herod brought it, not above 85 years, it was finally destroyed by *Titus* the Son of *Vespasian*, in the 69 year of Christ's Nativity. At what time the Temple of *Delphos* was utterly overthrowed by Earthquakes and Thunderbolts from Heaven; neither of them ever since repaired, though much endeavoured. The concurrence of which two Miracles evidently sheweth, that the time was then come in which God would put an end both to the Jewish Ceremonies and Heathen Idolatries, that so the Kingdom of his Son might be all in all. For this destruction of the Temple of *Hierusalem* I may call a miracle, in regard it was done against the command of *Titus*; who was not only careful to preserve it, before his Soldiers had put fire to it, but did all that possibly might be to quench it. His reason was, *Populus Jdp. Venerat in Hierusalem*, as *Josephus* hath it, because thereof would redound so highly to the prejudice of the Roman Empire, in being deprived of such a glorious and magnificent structure. But do he who could with his utmost industry, there was no quenching of it till it was consumed. And it adds somewhat to the marvel, that this should happen on the tenth day of August, on which day the first Temple had been burnt by *Nebuchadnezzar*. And certainly it is worth the noting (I hope shall not be accounted superstitious for this observation) to see how happy or unfortunate, one the same day had been found unto divers persons. In the Wars betwixt the French and Spaniards for the Realm of Naples, Friday was observed to be very lucky to that great Captain *Gonsalvo*; he having on that day given the French many notable overthrowes. Wednesday is said to have been fortunate to Pope Sixtus the Fifth, for on that day he was born; on the same made a Monk; on that day created General of his Order; on the same day made a Cardinal, then chosen to be Pope; and finally on the same inaugurated. To Henry the Seventh of England, Saturday was observed to be very fortunate in all his actions; as was the 24 of February unto *Charles* the Fifth, on what day forever: for on that he came into the world, and in that he took the King Francis prisoner at the Battel of Pavie, and on the same received the Imperial Crown. But to return unto the Temple, we find that on the Sabbath, or Saturday, it was taken by *Titus*, on the same day by Herod, and on that also by *Titus*. But go we forwards to *Hierusalem* as now it standeth, it lay in rubbish and unbuild (after the destruction of it by *Titus*) till repaired by *Adrian*; and then the Temple not so much as thought of, till out of an ungodly policy, in the Reign of *Julian*, that Politick Enemy of the Church; who to diminish the infinite number of Christians by the increase of the Jews, began again to build this Temple. But no sooner were the foundations laid, but a terrible Earthquake cast them up again, & fire from Heaven consumed the Tools of the Workmen, together with the Stones, Timber, and other materials. As for the City it self after the defolation in it which was made in *Titus*, it was re-edified by the Emperor *Elus Adrianus*, who named it *Elus*, gave the Jews, and gave it to the Christians. But this new City was not built in the place of the old. For within this, Mount *Calvary* comprehended, which was not in the old before. As on the other side, a great part of Mount *Sion*, part of the City of Herod, and the joyl where the New City stood, are left out of this: the ruins of the other still remain-

ing visible, to shew the ancient greatness and magnificence of it. To look upon it then as it stands at present, it is now only famous for the Temple of the Sepulchre built by *Helena* (whom most report to have been daughter to *Cylius a British King*) Mother to *Constantine the Great*. Much ado had the good Lady, to find the place where the Lords body had been laid: for the Jews and Heathens had raised great hillocks on the place and built there a Temple of *Venus*. This Temple being plucked down, and the Earth digged away, the found three Crosses, whereon our blessed Saviour, & the two Thieves had suffered. To know which of those was the right Cross, they were all carried to a Woman, who had been long afflicted with sickness, and now lay at the point of death. The Crosses of the two Thieves did the weak woman no good, but as soon as they laid her on the Cross on which the Lord died, she leaped up and was restored to her former health: the occasion of the Festival on the third day, by the Latines called *Inventio sancte Crucis*. This Temple of the Sepulchre, even at the first building, was highly revered and esteemed by the Christians of these parts. And even until our days, it is much resorted to, both by Pilgrims from all the parts of the *Romish Church*, who fondly and superstitiously hope to merit by their journey: and also by divers Gentlemen of the Reformed Churches, who travel hitherwards, partly for curiosity, partly for love to the antiquity of the place, and partly because their generous spirits imitate the Heaven, and delight in motion. Whosoever is aided to the sight of this Sepulchre, payeth nine Crowns to the *Tithe Officers*: so that this tribute only is worth to the *Grand Seigneur*, eighty thousand Ducats yearly. The other building generally very mean and poor, if not contemptible, built of flint-stones, low, and but one roof high: flat on the top for men to walk on; and fenced with Battlements of a Yard in height to preserve them from falling: the under-rooms no better than vaults, where they repose themselves in the heat of the day. Some houses near the Temple of *Salomon*, and the Palace of *Herod* adorned with Arches towards the Street, where Passengers may walk dry in a shower of rain; but not many such nor any thing but the ruins left of the ancient buildings. The whole circuit of it reduced to two or three miles, and yet to those that take a survey thereof from some Hills adjoining, where the ruins are not well discerned from the standing edifices, it affordeth to the eye no unpleasant prospect. And as the place is, such is the manner, quality, gathered together of the scum of divers Nations: a few poor Christians, of all the Oriental Sects, which dwell there for devotion; and some Turks, content to lay in it. Inasmuch that when *Robert Duke of Normandy*, being then not cured of his wounds, was carried into this City on the backs of some of this rascal people, he called to a Gentleman of his, who was going for England, and bad him, say, that he saw Duke *Robert* carried into Heaven on the backs of Devils.

Come we now to the Tribe of *LEVI*, though indeed not reckoned for a Tribe, because not planted close themselves, but mingled and dispersed amongst the rest of the people, having forty eight Cities assigned them for their habitation, proportionably taken out of the other Tribes. So was it ordered by the Lord, partly that they being far apart for his service, might be at hand in every place to instruct the people; and partly to fulfil the Prophecy which he had spoken by *Jacob*, who had foretold to *Levi* at the time of his death, that he should

be divided in *Jacob*, and scattered in *Israel*. The like fortune he had Prophesied of *Simeon* also of the accomplishment whereof, so far as it referred to him, and the dispersion of his Tribe, we have spoken before. Now to make up the number of the twelve Tribes, *Joseph* was divided into *Ephraim* and *Manasse*; and the Levites were reckoned to belong unto that Tribe, within whose Territory, that City which they dwelt in, stood. Their maintenance was from the Tenth or Tithes, the first Fruits, Offerings, and Sacrifices of the people: and as it is in *Job.* 11. 17. The Priesthood of the Lord was their Inheritance. There were of them four kinds: 1. *Punies* or *Tyrones*, which from their childhood, till the five and twentieth year of their age, learned the duty of their Offices. 2. *Graduates* *Solai*, which having spent four years in the study of the Law, were able to answer and oppose in it. 3. *Licentiate* *Amolai*, who did actually exercise the Priestly Function. And 4. *Dollors* (*Rabins* they use to call them) who were the highest in degree. For maintenance of whom, they had (as before is said) the Tithes, first Fruits, and Offerings of all the rest of the People besides the 48 Cities assigned for their Habitation: which last, with the several Territories appertaining to them, extending every way for the space of two thousand cubits, seem to have been a greater proportion of it self, than any of the other Tribes, with reference to the small number of Levites) had in their possessions. Then for the Tithes, there was not only a full tenth set out of all kinds of increase; but such an imposition laid upon all sorts of grain, as came to more than a sixth part of the Crop it self. For first, out of six thousand bushels (and so accordingly in all after that proportion) a sixtieth part at least, (and that they termed the *Iberumab*, or the evil eye, or the *niggards* first fruits) was to be set forth as the first fruits of the threshing floor: which was an hundred in the total. Out of the residue being five thousand and nine hundred bushels, the first Tithe paid unto the Levites, came to five hundred and ninety bushels; and of the residue, being five thousand three hundred and thirty bushels, five hundred thirty and one were paid for the second tithe, unto the Priest, which ministered in the holy Temple; yet so, that such as would decline the trouble of carrying it in kind unto *Hierusalem*, must pay the price thereof at the Priests own estimate. Laying which several sums together, it appears demonstrably, that of six thousand bushels (or *fic de ceteris*) there will accrue one thousand two hundred seventy and one bushels to the Priests and Levites; and but four thousand seven hundred seventy and nine to the Lord or Tenants, which is not fully a sixth parts was laid before. Then had they the first born of mankind; and all unclean beasts, redeemed at a certain rate; the first fruits of Wine, Oyl, and Wool; the first fruits of the dough, and of the firstlings of clean beasts (their blood being sprinkled on the Altar, and the fat offered for burnt-offering) the flesh remained unto the Priest. They had also all the meat-offerings, the sin-offerings, the trespass-offerings, the shake-offerings, the heave-offerings, and the Shew-bread: as also of all Eucharistical Sacrifices the breast and the shoulders of others the shoulder, the two cheeks, and the maw; and of the whole burnt-offering they received the skin, besides the free Gifts of the People, appearing thrice yearly before the Lord: and all this brought in unto them without charge or trouble. Which makes it evident, that they were far more liberally provided for, than the rest of the Tribes, though they had no whole Country allotted to them, as others had. And so much for such parts of the Land of Palestine as were possessed in part, or wholly by the Sons of *Jacob*; proceed we now to the Inheritance of the Sons of *Esaú*.





*Jehosophat*: and instead of a Vice-Roy sent unto them from the Court of *Hierusalem*, set up a King of their own Nation; never returning after that to the House of *David*. For though *Joram* made War presently upon them, and got the Victory; yet he did not prosecute it unto any effect, nor beat them out of any of their strong Holds, nor reduce any of their Cities unto his obedience: as if he had got honour enough in the eye of the world by being Master of the Field; or shewing his abilities in command of a greater Army, than the *Edomites* could bring against him. The like error was committed by *Amaziah*, who by a vast Army of 300000 fighting men, did no greater wonders than the killing of 10000 and the taking of as many *Edomites*; but neither left Garrisons in any of their defensible places, nor reduced any part of their Country under his obedience. And for the latter part thereof, it was as punctually fulfilled in the time of *Antipater*, an *Idumean*, Herod the *Ascalonite*, his Son, and their Successors; who in the decrepit age of the House of *Jacob*, became King of the *Jews*, and Lorded over them with insolence and contempt enough.

Mean time to look upon the intermediate passage of their State and Story. It seemeth that at first they were governed by Dukes, each having the command of those several Families, of which they were the Heads or Princes. But as Ambition and Power did prevail among them, the more potent having vanquished or awed the rest, took to himself the name of King: which by the names of their Fathers, and their several Cities in which they reigned, seem to have been chosen by Election; or otherwise to come in by strong hand, as the Sword could carry it. The names of which are thus set down in the Book of *Genesis*.

#### THE KINGS OF EDM.

- 1 *Bela*, the Son of *Beer*.
- 2 *Jobab*, the Son of *Zerah*.
- 3 *Hobab*, of the Land of *Teman*.
- 4 *Hadad*, the Son of *Bedad*, who warred against the *Midianites*, and vanquished them in the Fields of *Moab*, Gen. 36. 35.
- 5 *Samlab*, of *Masrahah*.
- 6 *Saul* of *Rehoboth*, by the River *Euphrates*.
- 7 *Ebal-Hanan*, the Son of *Aebhor*.
- 8 *Hadar*, the Son perhaps of *Baal-Hanan*, for I find no mention of his Father. After whose death the Heads of the several Families resumed the Government again; ruling over their own Tribes, without any one Sovereign or Supreme. And all these Kings they had, before there reigned any King in *Israel*, Gen. 36. 31. that is to say, before any form of Supreme Government was established amongst them in the person of *Moses*, called by the name of a King in the Book of *Deuteronomy*, chap. 35. v. 5. But this distracted Government did not long continue, the *Edomites* being under a King again, at such a time as the Children of *Israel* came out of *Egypt*: for it was unto the King of *Edom* that *Moses* sent Messengers from *Kadesh*, to desire a passage thorow his Country. Which being denied, and the *Edomites* in Arms to defend their Passes, *Moses* forbore to force his way, though the nearest for him: partly because he had no mind to spend those forces in fighting with Hills and Deserts, which were designed for the conquest of another Country; but principally, because God commanded him not to meddle with them, or to take so much as a foot of their Country from them, *Deut.* 2. 5. But *David*, upon whom lay no such obligation, having vanquished the *Syrians*, and other Nations

round about him, followed his fortunes unto *Edom*, whom he overcame, and put Garrisons into all their Cities, and the *Edomites* became his Servants. Governed from thenceforth by a Deputy or Vice-Roy (as is said before) till the time of *Joram* the Son of *Jehosophat* King of *Judah*, in whose Reign they revolted, as before was said. Never regained to that Crown, and but twice endeavoured; that for the Word of God might be in all. Only the *Simenites* in the Reign of *Hezekiah*, wanting Pasture for their Cattel, and room for themselves, seized on the parts that lay nearest to them, destroyed the Inhabitants thereof, and dwelt in their habitations, because there was pasture for their Flocks, *1 Chron.* 4. 29. Provoked wherewith, and with the natural Antipathy which was between them, no People were more mischievously bent against *Judah*, than the *Edomites* were: no men so forward of themselves, to assist *Nebuchadnezzar* against *Hierusalem*; none that so vehemently cried, *Down with it, down into the ground*, none half so ready to set fire unto the Holy Temple. But they got little by this Service to the *Babylonians*, their own thraldom following close upon that of *Judah*, with whom made fellow Subjects to the *Chaldeans*, as afterwards to the *Persians*, and Kings of *Syria*, of the Race of *Sелеucus*. In the declining of that Houle, subdued by *Hyrcanus* the Son of *Simon*, the fourth of the *Maccabean* Princes; by whom they were compelled to be circumcised, and to receive the Law of *Moses*: not only reckoned after that, as a Province of the Jewish Kingdom, but as natural *Jews*. Which notwithstanding, and that the setting of that Crown on the head of *Herod* and his Houle, being originally *Idumeans*, might in all reason have extinguished their invertebrate malice: yet was their hatred of that Nation as great as ever. Fomenting therefore how they had been rewarded by the *Babylonians*; they would needs add the *Romans* against them also: putting themselves into *Hierusalem*, when besieged by *Titus*, only of purpose to betray it; joyning with the seditious there, doing more mischief in the City than the Enemy had done without: and finally, setting fire to the second Temple, as they had done unto the first. Subjected afterwards by the *Romans*, they followed the same fortune with the rest of *Judea*.

Having thus gone thorow with the story of those neighbouring Nations which encompassed *Canaan*, it will be seasonable to look on the affairs of the *Canaanites* first, and after on the Houle of *Jacob*, who possessed their Country. First for the *Canaanites*, they descended from *Canaan* the Son of *Cham*, who with his chosen Sons were here settled immediately after the Confusion of *Babel*. Of those twelve (taking in the Father) five planted in *Phoenicia*, and the Coasts of *Syria*; that is to say, *Sidon*, *Hark*, *Arvad*, *Semari*, and *Hemabi*: the other seven in those parts which we now call *Palistine*, though not all of that; the *Edomites*, *Moabites*, *Midianites*, *Amorites*, and *Iureans*, being Occupants or Tenants with them. And of those seven came those five Nations, which by Gods appointment were totally to be rooted out, viz. the *Canaanites*, the *Amorites*, and the *Hittites*, the *Jebusites*, the *Hivites*, the *Gergasites*, and the *Perizzites*. But from which of the Sons of *Canaan* these last descended, is not yet agreed on: unless perhaps they were descended of the *Sinners* (not otherwise reckoned in this Manner) and got the name of *Perizzites* on some new occasion. Governed at first by the Kings of their several Families, with the names of Kingship number of which increased, as their Families were subdivided into smaller Branches: inasmuch as *Jehoshaphat* found 31 into smaller Branches: inasmuch as *Jehoshaphat* found 31 Kings of the *Canaanites* only besides what might descend from those who were settled in *Phoenicia*, and the Borders

ders of *Syria*. The most potent of these Nations were the *Amorites*, the *Jebusites*, and the *Canaanites* properly so called. Of which the *Amorites* had not only enlarged their Borders beyond *Jordan*, but in the Reigns of *Og* and *Sidon*, ruling at the same time at their several parts, had thrust the *Iureans*, *Amorites*, and *Moabites* out of most of their Countries; and so restored the same again to the Race of the *Emmins* and *Zananzimins* (of which Line *Og* and the Kings of *Basan* were) who had been dispossessed thereof by the Sons of *Lot*. These vanquished in the time of *Moses*, and their Habitations assigned over to the Tribes of *Reuben*, *Gad*, and the one half Tribe of *Manasse*. The *Canaanites* properly so called, as they were the first which fought with the Houle of *Jacob*; so they were the last of all these People that contended with them. The first fought with them under the Conduct of *Arad* their King, who thinking it more safe and prudent to encounter the Enemy in another mans Country, than to expect them in his own, gave Battel unto *Moses* in the Deserts of *Moab*; and having cut off some of the out-parts of his Army, and taken a few Prisoners, he went home again. But *Jabin*, under whom they make their second on-set, went to work more resolutely, and taking a time when the Iniquities of that People cried aloud for vengeance, so prevailed against them, that he tyrannized over them for the space of twenty years. After which time, his Army being discomfited by *Barak*, in the time of *Deborah*, *Sifera*, his great Captain, slain by *Jael* the Wife of *Heber* the *Kenite*, and most of his Cities taken and possessed by the *Israelites*, he perished himself in the dose of that War; for it is said, That they prevailed against *Jabin* the King of *Canaan*, till they had destroyed him, *Judg.* 4. 24. As for the *Jebusites*, they were grown formidable (at the time of the coming of the *Ebreans*) to the rest of their Neighbours, that their King *Adinibezek* bragged, that he had cut off the Thumbs and great Toes of 70 Kings, and made them eat the crumbs which fell under his Table. But being vanquished by *Judah*, he was served in the same kind himself by *Judah* and *Simen*, and carried to *Hierusalem*, where he died: the whole Country of the *Jebusites*, and the City of *Hierusalem* it self, the Fortres of Mount *Zion* excepted only being made a prey unto the Victor. And though the *Jebusites* held that Fortres till the time of *David*; yet being they were only on the defensive side, and made no open War against those of *Israel*, I reckon the *Canaanites* as the last which did contend with them for the chief Command.

The *Canaanites* thus conquered, and for the most part worn out of the Country, the *Israelites* succeeded in their Possessions; according to the promise of God, made to *Abraham*, renewed to *Isaac*, and confirmed to *Jacob*. Governed after the death of *Moses* and *Jehoshaphat*, by the Congregation of the Elders, as appears by many passages in the Book of *Judges*; the Judges (as the Scripture calleth them) not being extraordinary Magistrates, but raised up occasionally by God for some special purpose, according to the exigence of their Affairs; Carrying in this a likeness unto the Dictators in the State of *Rome*. So that the Government at first was an *Arbitrary*; though to say truth, it was rather a *Theocracy*, as the Fathers call it; that is to say, a Government wherein GOD presided more immediately, than in other Nations. And thereupon when the People cried out to *Samuel* to have a King, God said unto him, *Hearken unto the voice of the People, for they have not rejected thee, but they have rejected me, that I should not reign over them*, *1 Sam.* 8. 7. God was their King, and he had mightily reigned over them since they came out of *Egypt*; but they desired to have a King like other Nations, to go in and out before them, and to fight their Battels a King whom they might fee with their bodily eyes, and converse with him in such manner as the People did, which dwelt round about them. And so came in the Monarchy or Kings Government, begun in *Saul*, but confirmed in *David*; the first a *Benjamin*, the second of the Tribe of *Judah*; of which *Jacob* had foretold at the time of his death, that the Kingdom of his People should be vested in it. But there were only three in all, reckoning *Saul* for one, who had Dominion over the whole Houle of *Israel*; the Kingdom after *Solomon*'s death, being rent in twain: ten of the twelve Tribes revolting unto *Jeroboam* the Son of *Neba*; and only *Benjamin* and *Judah*, and so much of the Tribes of *Dan* and *Simen* as lay intermingled with and in the Tribe of *Judah*, remaining firm to *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*, who misgilded by some evil Counsellors which were about him, had given occasion to the breach. A breach that could never be soldered nor made up again, notwithstanding the fair opportunities which were after offered of uniting *Judah* unto *Israel* (for so the two Kingdoms were distinguished in the time of *Joram*; rejoyning *Israel* to *Judah*, in the time of *Asha*. The opportunity offered to *Asha* King of *Judah*, for regaining the revolted Tribes, was the confusions which in his time had fallen out amongst them, by several Factions; each challenging the privilege of making a King unto it self: *Nadab* the son of *Jeroboam* being slain by *Baasha*, *Ela* the son of *Baasha* murdered by *Zimri*, *Zimri* deposed by *Omri* the Father of *Abah*, and *Tibni* a Competitor against *Omri* also. During which time, as the People must needs suffer many great oppressions, which might make them think of their Allegiance to the Houle of *David*: (so could not *Asha* have wanted many fair advantages (had he made his best use of them) of working on that divided Kingdom, and reducing it back unto this houle. But there were two reasons which prevailed more against this re-union than any that could be presented to invite them to it. First, the imperiousness and arbitrary Government of the Kings of *Judah*, putting to death, without formality of Law, those that had displeased them, as in the case of *Shimei*, *Joab*, and *Adonijah*, in the days of *Solomon*; and railing on the Subject what fumes they pleased, though more for ostentation of their own magnificence, than the necessities of the State. Of which exactions *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon* was so far from promising a release or some mitigation at least, that he threatened to make them more than double to what they had been formerly: And how knew they but that *Asha*, and all such as descended from him, might be of the same temper also, and accordingly to those Principles which their Fathers left them. Whereas the Kings of *Israel* holding by no other Title than the Love of their People, and the moderate and regular form of their Government over them, had put their mouths into such a taste of the sweets of Liberty, and made them so much Masters of their own both Lives and Fortunes, that *Naboth* durst deny him his Vineyard to *Abah*, though offering full compensation for it; and *Abah* durst not question the life of *Naboth*, but by suborning Witnesses to accuse him of Blasphemy. So that the present confusions under which they suffered, by the change and violent death of so many Kings one after another, being only temporary, and not likely to continue long, were no persuasions unto them to accept of *Asha*, and much less to offer themselves unto him; who conceived all adversity to be far more tolerable, than the weighty Scepter of that Houle. And there was something also of preceding profit, which swayed the

business

business. The people were obliged by the Law of *Moses* to make three chargeable Journeys yearly to *Hierusalem*, to worship there in the Holy Temple; and to pay a double Tenth yearly out of their Estates (beside Offerings and other Casualties) to the *Priests* and *Levites*. *Jeroboam* out of an ungodly policy, fearing their frequent Journeys unto *Hierusalem* might be an occasion of reducing them to the House of *David*, released them of that charge and trouble, by setting up a new form of Worship, erecting golden Calves for them in *Dan* and *Bethel*, and leaving every man unto the liberty of his own opinion, so it ended not to the Establishment of the old Religion. And on the other side, the *Levites* which dwelt amongst them, and received their Tithes, not willing to conform to these new impieties, and finding that their Ministry was no longer useful, withdrew themselves into the Kingdom of *Judah*, and left the ancient places of their Habitations: by means whereof, the people were released of those payments also. If they returned again to their old obedience, and accepted *Asa* for their King, they must return again also to their old Religion; the golden Calves of their own Imaginations and Inventions, must no more be worshipped: and (which no doubt prevailed most on the common people, who like that Religion best which costs them nothing) the ancient payments to the *Priests* and *Levites* must come up again. Rather than so, they were resolved to suffer yet a little longer, to please themselves in expectation of more settled times: and so falling off to *Asa*, though as moderate & religious a Prince as they could have wished for, had they had power of fashioning a King to their own desires. Now as this opportunity of rejoicing *Israel* unto *Judah*, proved unsuccessful unto *Asa*, so did the like of uniting *Judah* unto *Israel*, prove as unprofitable unto *Joas* the Son of *Jehobabaz*, and Grand-child of *Jehu* King of *Israel*, who being provoked by *Amaziah* King of *Judah*, made War upon him; and not only discomfited him without Battle, and took him Prisoner without blows, but led him captive to the very Walls of *Hierusalem*; and by his Authority got the Gates thereof to be opened to him. But not contented with this honour (greater than ever had befallen to the Kings of *Israel*) he caused 400 Cubits of the Wall to be broken down; through which breach he entered triumphantly in his Chariot, carrying the unhappy Prince before him: and being entered, sacked both the Royal Palace and the Holy Temple. This was the opportunity which was given to *Joas*, of uniting *Judah* unto *Israel*; and this the loss of it. For the People, otherwise like enough to have accepted him for their King, as a Prince of whose noble acts they had heard much speech, were so exasperated by their rash and unbecomable outrages, that they looked upon him as a *Sacrilegious Church-Robber*, whom the Holy Altars were not safe from; and as a covetous and ungoverned Tyrant, not able to conceit the fulness of his own prosperities. If he were thus unsatisfiable in his covetousness, and insupportable in his pride, when he was a *Candidate* for their Kingdom; when in all common prudence he would have sought their love, and insinuated into their good opinions, by easing them of former Taxes, and shewing them fair hopes of his moderate Government: what must they look for when their Towns were filled with Garrisons, *Hierusalem* stuffed with armed Troops, and all the Princes of the House of *David*, from whom they might expect Redemption from cruel Bondage, destroyed or banished, or otherwise made unable to afford them succours? Rather than so, they were resolved to rise as one man against him, and let him see, that neither their Army was so scattered, nor themselves

so cowed, but that they durst adventure it to a further trial. The fear of which made *Joas* sensible of the loss of his opportunity: and so content with Hostages for his safe retreat, he returned home again without other benefit of his Victory, than the spoil and honour. And that this possibly might be the motive of his going back, without putting the success of the affair to a further hazard, may be made probable by the like occurrence in the Story of *Guicciardine*, which in brief is this: *Peter de Medicis* had very weakly opened the Gates of *Flurence* to *Charles* the Eighth, then in his passage towards *Naples*. *Charles* entrencht it triumphantly as a conquered City, armed in complacent manner, and his Lance on his Thigh; his whole Army with him. Many insolencies being committed by the *French*, the Citizens prepare to fight in defence of their Liberties. *Charles* willing to go forwards on his march towards *Naples*, recourts Conditions in writing: but so intolerable, that *Peter Capponi*, one of the chief Citizens, catching the Papers out of the King's Secretaries hands, and tearing them before his face, *Do you* (saith he) *send your Trumpets, we will ring our Bells, and see what will follow*. Which stout and peremptory dealing did daunt the *French*, that they condescended upon very easy terms to abandon the City, and restore all the places appertaining unto their Estate, which were then in his power. The like consideration probably might prevail with *Joas*, as did then with *Charles*; and prompt him not to fight with an enraged multitude in the streets of a City, where he could make no use of his Hosts; and where he might be more galled with Women and Children, throwing Stones or Darts out of their Windows, and from the tops of their Houses; than with an armed Enemy in the open Field. Nor wanted *Joas* an example of this kind, in the times before him; even that of *Abimelech*, in the Book of *Judges*: who having taken the Town of *Thebez*, and forced all the Men and Women into the Castle, was slain there by a piece of a Mill-stone, thrown at his head from one of the Towers of it by the hands of a Woman.

To proceed further in the Story of these several Kings or recapitulate the sum of their principal Actions (as in other places we have done) may be thought unnecessary: the Scripture being in the hands of all sorts of persons, in which their Actions and Successions are at large contained. So that I only shall subjoin their names, with the time of their Reigns, and the year of the World in which they did begin their Empire: leaving the rest unto industry and search of the Christian Reader, of whose acquaintance with the Scriptures I dare make no question. This only I premise as concerning the *Judges*, That the time of their continuance in that authority, is not to be measured from the time of their coming to it, till the entrance of the next Successor, as in that of the Kings: these being occasionally raised by Almighty God, for some present Service, and no standing or established Magistracies; except *Moses* and *Joshua* only, who held the Government during life, and managed it as absolute Princes.

#### The Judges and Captains of the HEBREWS.

A. M.

- 2454 1 *Moses*, a *Levite*, the Law-giver of the Hebrews, brought by him out of the Land of Egypt. 40.  
2494 2 *Josuah*, an *Ephraimite*, who led them into the Land of Canaan. 33.  
2526 3 *Othniel*, of *Judah*, by whom they were delivered from the *Mesopotamians*.

2530

- 2530 4 *Ehud*, a *Benjamite*, who rescued them from the hand of *Eglon* King of *Moab*.  
2610 5 *Deborah* the Prophetess, and *Barack* the *Naphthalite*, who discomfited the Host of *Jabin* King of the *Canaanites*.  
2650 6 *Gideon*, a *Manassite*, who ransomed them from the power of the *Midianites*. 40.  
2690 7 *Abimelech*, the base Son of *Gideon*. 3.  
2693 8 *Tola*, a *Gileadite*. 22.  
2716 9 *Jair*, a *Gileadite*, by whom the people were redeemed from the hand of the *Ammonites*.  
2766 11 *Ison*, of *Bethleem*. 7.  
2773 12 *Eliab*, a *Zebulonite*. 10.  
2783 13 *Ahdan*, an *Ephraimite*. 8.  
2790 14 *Samson*, a *Danite*, the avenger of the People upon the *Philistines*.  
2809 15 *Eli*, the High-Priest, in whose time the Ark was taken by the *Philistines*.  
2849 16 *Samuel* the Prophet, of the Tribe of *Ephraim*.

in the latter end of whose Government, the People being weary of the Command of their former Rulers, desired to have a King to go in and out before them, like other Nations.

#### The Kings of the HEBREWS.

A. M.

- 2878 1 *Saul*, of the Tribe of *Benjamin*, the first King of the Hebrews, and an unlucky one to begin withal. 17.  
2890 2 *David*, the Son of *Jesse*, of the Tribe of *Judah*, the most Victorious King of the Hebrew Nation. 40.  
2930 3 *Solomon*, the Son of *David*, renowned for building of the Temple. The Kingdom afterward divided into

### JUDAH and ISRAEL.

#### The Kings of JUDAH.

A. M.

- 2971 1 *Rehoboam*, the Son of *Solomon*, the first King of *Judah*. 17.  
2988 2 *Abijah*, the Son of *Rehoboam*. 3.  
2991 3 *Asa*, the Son of *Abijah*, discomfited the numerous Army of *Zerah*, the *Ethiopian* or *Arabian* King.  
3031 4 *Jehoshaphat*, the Son of *Asa*, a great Reformer of the State, both Ecclesiastical and Civil. 35.  
3056 5 *Jehoram*, the Son of *Jehoshaphat*. 8.  
3064 6 *Ahaziah*, the Son of *Jehoram* by *Athalia* his Wife, the Sister of *Ahab* King of *Israel*. 1.  
3065 7 *Athaliah*, the Daughter of *Omri*, and Sister of *Ahab*, having destroyed the Royal Race of the House of *David*, usurped the Kingdom for seven years.  
3072 8 *Josiah*, the only surviving Heir of the House of *David*, restored by *Jehoiadab* the Priest, to the Throne of his Ancestors. 40.  
3112 9 *Amaziah*, the Son of *Josiah*, vanquished by *Jotham* King of *Israel*, and a breach forced through the Walls of *Hierusalem*. 29.  
3141 10 *Azariah*, the Son of *Amaziah* called also *Uzziah*, smote with a Leprosy by the Lord. 52.  
3192 11 *Jotham*, the Son of *Azariah*, or *Azariah*. 16.  
3208 12 *Ahaz*, the Son of *Jotham*, in whose time, and on whose occasion the Kingdom of *Damascus* was ruin'd by *Tiglah Pileser* King of *Affria*, and the Tribes on the farther side of *Jordan* led into Captivity. 16.  
3244 13 *Hezekiah*, the Son of *Ahaz*, a Religious Prince: in whose time the Kingdom of the ten Tribes was destroyed by the *Affrians*, and that of *Affria* by the *Babylonians*.  
3253 14 *Manasseh*, the wicked Son of the good King *Hezekiah*, restored Idolatry, and put to death the Prophet *Isaiah*, for opposing his irreligious courses. 55.  
3288 15 *Amon*, the Son of *Manasseh*, and as bad as

#### The Kings of ISRAEL.

A. M.

- 2971 1 *Jeroboam*, the Son of *Nebat*, of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, the first King of *Israel*. 22.  
2993 2 *Nadab*, the Son of *Jeroboam*. 2.  
2995 3 *Basha*, of the Tribe of *Issachar*, having slain *Nadab*, reigned in his stead. 24.  
3019 4 *Ela*, the Son of *Basha*. 2.  
3021 5 *Zimri*, a King of 7 days only, the murderer of *Ela*, and his own Executioner.  
6 *Omri*, the Captain of the Host, who removed the Royal Seat from *Tirzah* to *Samarra*. 8.  
3029 7 *Ahab*, the Son of *Omri*, and Husband of *Jezabel*, a Phœnician Princess.  
3051 8 *Ahaziah*, the Son of *Ahab*. 2.  
3053 9 *Jehoram*, the Brother of *Ahaziah*. 12.  
3065 10 *Jehu*, the Captain of the Host, vanquished and slew *Jehoram*, reigning in his stead. 28.  
3093 11 *Jehobabaz*, the Son of *Jehu*. 17.  
3110 12 *Josiah*, the Son of *Jehobabaz*. 41.  
3126 13 *Jehoram* II, the Son of *Josiah*. 16.  
3178 14 *Zachariah*, the Son of *Jehoram* the Second, after an Interregnum of eleven years, succeeded in the Throne of his Father: slain at the end of six Months by  
15 *Shallum*, who at the Months end was slain by him.  
3178 16 *Menabem*, the Son of *Gadi*. 10.  
3188 17 *Pekabiah*, the Son of *Menabem*, slain by  
3190 18 *Pekab*, the Son of *Remaliah*; served in the same kind, after a Reign of twenty years, by  
3210 19 *Hiskiah*, the Son of *Eli*; in the fifth year of whose Reign, and the eighteenth year from the death of *Pekab*, *Salmannasser* King of *Affria*, having by a Siege of three years carried the City of *Samarra*, destroyed the Kingdom of *Israel*, and led the greatest part of the People into Captivity.

M

he

he was slain by a Conspiracy of his Servants; when he had reigned but two years only.

3310 16 *Jofiah*, the Son of *Amon*, a right godly King; unfortunately slain by *Pharab Necho* King of *Agypt*, at the Battle of *Megiddo*. 31.

3341 17 *Jehoiabaz*, the Son of *Jofiah*, a King of three months only; deposed and sent Prisoner by *Pharab Necho*, to *Eilat* in the Land of *Hamath*, since called *Antiochia*.

18 *Jehoiakim*, the Son of *Jofiah*, and half Brother of *Jehoiabaz*, advanced unto the Throne by *Necho*, who changed his name from *Eliakim*, by which he formerly was called, into that of *Jehoiakim*. 11.

3351 19 *Jehoiachin*, or *Jechoniah*, the Son of *Jehoiakim*, at the end of three Months led captive unto *Babylon*, with his Wives and Mother, and the Great Officers of the Realm, by *Nebuchadnezzar*.

20 *Zedekiah*, another of the Sons of *Jofiah*, and Brother by the whole blood of *Jehoiabaz*, made King by *Nebuchadnezzar* in the place of *Jehoiachin*, or *Jechoniah*; his name being changed from *Mattaniah*, by which called before. But rebelling against his Benefactor, contrary to the counsel of the Prophet *Jeremy*, he was taken Prisoner in the eleventh year of his Reign, *Hierusalem* destroyed, the Temple ruined, and the People carried captive to the Land of *Babylon*, *A.M.3362*. where they lived in exile 70 years. Which time expired, *Cyrus* the King of the *Persians* gave them leave to return to their Country, and to re-edify their City and Temple. Which work being finished, by the encouragement of *Ezra*, *Nehemiah* and *Zorobabel*; and the Nation again settled in some part of their old Possessions, they were after governed by their High Priests, and the Council of their Elders, which they called the *Saubedrim*, the High-Priest bearing the chief stroke, and being looked on as a man of the greatest Power. And therefore I will here subjoin the Catalogue of so many of them as governed the Affairs of this Country, from the Return of the People from the Captivity of *Babylon*, till the time of the *Maccabees*; who managed the Estate heretofore both as Priests and Princes, till their Subjection by the *Romans*.

The High-Priests of the *JEW S* after the Captivity.

A.M.

- 3427 1 *Jofiah*, the High-Priest at the time of the Return, assistant to *Zorobabel* in rebuilding the Temple, which he lived not to finish; though continuing (as some say) in the Government 100 years. But I believe rather, that the Names of his Successors being lost, the whole time is ascribed to him.
- 3550 2 *Jehoiakim*, said to be the Son of *Jofiah*, in whole time, by the diligence of *Ezra* and *Nehemiah*, the Temple was finished, and the Worship of God restored.
- 3580 3 *Jonathas*, or *Johanan*. 30.
- 3610 4 *Jaddus*, who entertained *Alexander the Great* coming to *Hierusalem*, (of whom more anon) the Brother of that *Manasseh*, for whose sake, and on whose occasion, the Temple on Mount *Gerizim* was built by *Sanballat*, with the leave of *Alexander*. 20.
- 3630 5 *Onias* succeeded *Jaddus*, as *Jaddus* had done *Jonathas*; not by Birth (as formerly) but by Election of the People.

- 3651 6 *Simon*, surnamed *Justus*. 9.
- 3660 7 *Eleezer*, the Brother of *Simon*. 32.
- 3692 8 *Menelaus*, the Brother of *Eleezer* and *Simon*.
- 3718 9 *Onias II.* 14.
- 3732 10 *Simon II.* 10.
- 3744 11 *Onias III.*, the Son of *Simon* the 2d.
- 3787 12 *Jafan*, the Brother of *Onias* the 3d.
- 3789 13 *Menelaus II.*, the Brother of *Jafan*, in whose time the Temple was prophesied by the *Syrians*, at the Command of *Antiochus Epiphanes*.
- 3794 14 *Alcimus*, under whose Government the *Maccabees* began to appear in defence of their Country and Religion, by whom succeeded in the Office of High-Priest, after his decease. Among these none of greater note than *Jaddus*, High-Priest at such time as *Alexander the Great* having conquered *Syria*, marched towards *Hierusalem*, and was encountered by this *Jaddus* in his Priestly Vestments assuring him in the Name of the most High God, and making it demonstrable from the Prophecy of *Daniel*, That he should prosper in his Enterprize against the *Persians*. An hope which *Alexander* did embrace with the greater confidence, because (as he affirmed to *Parnonius* his chief Commander) he had once at *Dia*, a City of *Media*, seen in a Dream or Vision such a Person as *Jaddus* was, he habited, and professing the same one God; by whom he was encouraged to pursue the Action which he had in hand, with assurance of Victory. And upon this the Jews were so much favoured by him, that he gave them leave to live according to their own Laws, and to enjoy with Freedom their own Religion. But it held only for his own time; For shortly after his decease, they were on both sides plagued by the Kings of *Egypt* and *Syria*, who ransacked their Goods, and carried their People, made havock of their Goods, and compelled many of them both to eat of forbidden Meats, and offer Sacrifice unto Idols. At the last God raised up *Mattathias* (descended from *Asmoneus* a Priest of the rank of *Jearib*) and his five Sons, to resist these intolerable; who in the Reign of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, who in the Reign of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, undertook the Protection of the People of *Syria*, undertook the Protection of the People, and gave unto the *Syrians* many notable evils; inasmuch that the Jews made choice of *Juda* surnamed *Maccabees* (the eldest of the five Brethren) for their Prince or Governor.

#### The ASMONEAN Princes of JEWRY.

A.M.

- 3759 1 *Judas Maccabees*, the third Son of *Mattathias* above-mentioned, one of the nine Worthies, vanquished three great and puissant Armies of the *Syrians*, conducted by *Apollonius*, *Gorgias*, and *Lysias*, men of great renown, being Commanders of the Forces of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, before mentioned.
- 3805 2 *Jonathan*, the Brother of *Judas*, vanquished the Forces of *Bacchides* and *Alcimus*, Captains of *Demetrius* King of *Syria*; and after many notable exploits and deeds of Arms, was treacherously murdered by *Tryphon*, assisting at that time to the *Syrian* *Diadem*.
- 3823 3 *Simon* the elder, brother of *Judas* and *Jonathan*, subdued the Cities of *Gaza*, *Jope*, and *Jamnia*, and cleared *Judea* of the *Syrians*; perfidiously slain in the course of his fortune by his Son-in-law *Pholomy*. 8.
- 3831 4 *Johannes Hyrcanus*, the third Son of *Simon* (his two

two other Brethren being in the power of *Pholomy*) succeeded in the Government. He destroyed the Temple on Mount *Gerizim*, conquered *Alamaria*, and subdued the *Idumeans*, compelling them to be Circumcised; transferred the War into *Syria*; and dying, left the Sovereignty to his eldest Son *Aristobulus*.

#### The ASMONEAN Kings of JUDAH.

- 3862 1 *Aristobulus*, caused himself to be Crowned, and was the first King of *Judah* after the *Babylonian* Captivity; he starved his Mother, and slew *Antigonus* his Brother.
- 3863 2 *Alexander*, the Brother of *Aristobulus*, exceedingly enlarged the Kingdom of *Jury* by the conquest of *Turæa*, and some parts of *Syria*; but was withal so great a Tyrant, that he causfully slew of his own Subjects fifty thousand in battle; and commanded 800 of his principal enemies to be hanged before his face. He left behind him two sons, *Hyrcanus* who was at last slain by *Herod* after all his troubles, leaving no issue Male behind him; and *Aristobulus* the father of *Alexander*, and of *Antigonus*, of whom more anon: of which two *Alexander* was the Father of another *Aristobulus*, the most beautiful Prince of all his time, and of *Mariamne* the wife of *Herod*, by whose command they were most villainously murdered.
- 3890 3 *Alexandra*, by some called *Salome*, the wife of *Alexander*, and following the counsel of her husband at the time of his death, committed her self and her Children into the hands of the *Pharisees*, then in great power and credit among the people; by means whereof she procured an honourable burial for her husband, obtained the Kingdom for her self, and finally left it to her Children, whose disagreements caused the ruin of this famous Family.
- 3899 4 *Aristobulus II.* the younger Son of *Alexander*, an active Prince, and beloved of the Military Men, having presently after the death of his Mother possessed himself of the greatest part of the Forts and Castles, by the forced consent of *Hyrcanus* his elder Brother, succeeded in the Kingdom and High-Priesthood also; both which he held with great trouble and opposition both from his Brother and the *Romans*, whom most imprudently they called in to decide the Controversie. By *Pompey* sent Prisoner unto *Rome* (with *Alexander* and *Antigonus* his two Sons) he escaped thence and raised a new Army for the recovery of his Kingdom; but being forced to yield himself to *Cabinius* one of *Pompey's* Lieutenants, he was sent back again to *Rome*, where he died in Prison, having reigned three years and six months.
- 3903 5 *Hyrcanus II.* a Prince of weak parts, and not fit for Government, was made High-Priest in the first year of his Mothers reign, but disposed of that dignity by *Aristobulus* his younger Brother. Restored again by the favour of *Pompey*, he was again disturbed in his possession by *Alexander* the eldest Son of *Aristobulus*; who escaping out of *Rome*, had raised some Forces, and began to dispute the Title with him: but was

soon after discomfited by *Gabinus* afore-mentioned, and slain by *Scipio*, another of *Pompey's* Captains. After the death of *Aristobulus*, which happened in the year 3903, *Hyrcanus* was looked on by the People, not only as their High-Priest, but as their Prince and King, commonly called to by *Josphus* in the course of his History. His affairs managed for the most part by *Antipater* (an *Idumean* born, and the Father of *Herod*) his constant and most faithful friend in all his troubles, who governed the Estate with great care and prudence. But he being made away by *Poyfon*, *Antigonus* the younger Son of *Aristobulus*, set on foot his Title to the Kingdom, and drew in an Army of the *Parthians* to make it good; by whose aid, having treacherously inflamed *Hyrcanus*, he cut off his ears (to make him incapable of the Priesthood for the time to come) and sent him Prisoner to *Babylon*; taking upon himself the Title of King, though never acknowledged for such by the Jewish Nation. But long he did not please himself with that Title neither, for being besieged in *Jernsalem* by *Herod*, then newly created King of the Jews by the *Roman* Senate, and by him taken Prisoner in the sack of that City, he was sent in bonds to *Mark Anthony*, and by him beheaded. As for *Hyrcanus* the rightful Prince of this Country, he remained Prisoner for a time amongst the *Parthians*, till hearing of the death of *Antigonus*, he returned into *Jewry*, and lived contentedly under the Government of *Herod*, of whose greatness he had laid the first foundation, and was by him in fine wickedly murdered.

#### The Idumean Kings and Princes of Jewry.

A.M.

- 3940 1 *Herod the Ascalonite*, surnamed the Great, Son to *Antipater* the *Idumean*, was by the power of *Mark Anthony* created, and by *Augustus* confirmed King of *Jewry*; under whom that Kingdom was more enlarged, and in greater splendor than ever it had been in since the time of *David*. A Prince of great Magnificence, but of greater Vices. During his Reign, the Scepter being now departed from *Judah*, the Lord *CHRIST* was born.
- 6 2 *Archelaus*, eldest Son of *Herod* at the time of his death, succeeded with the Title of King; but in truth and reality possessed only a *Tetrarchy*, or fourth part of the Kingdom, though the best and largest of the four, containing *Judea*, *Samaria*, and *Idumea*. The rest of *Herod's* Kingdom was divided into three other *Tetrarchies*, i. e. the *Tetrarchy* of *Galilee* and *Petras*, given to *Herod Antipas*; Secondly, That of *Turæa*, given to *Philip*, another of the Sons of *Herod*; And thirdly, That of *Abilene*, conferred on *Lysanias*. Banished into *France*, his *Tetrarchy* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire; governed by *Pontius Pilate*, at our Saviours Passion.
- 16 3 *Herod II.* surnamed *Antipas*, *Tetrarch* of *Galilee* and *Petras*, on the banishment of *Archelaus*, succeeded him, as chief of the *Herodian* Family, but not in his *Tetrarchy*, and at last followed him in his banishment also. This is he who murdered *John Baptist*, and in whose time *CHRIST* suffered.
- 40 4 *Herod III.* surnamed *Agrippa*, in honour of *Agrippa* the Son-in-law, and most trusty Favourite of *Augustus Caesar*, Nephew to *He-*

rod the Great, by his Son *Aristobolus* begotten on *Marianne* of the Race of the *Asmonæes*, was by *Caligula* first invested in the Tetrarchy of his Uncle *Philip*, with the Title of King; and next, in that of *Antipater* also; and finally by *Claudius*, in that also of *Lysanias*, some part of the Tetrarchy of *Archelaus* being added unto his Dominions. This was the man that murdered *James*, and imprisoned *Peter*; and in the end was stricken by an Angel, and devoured by Worms.

- 47 5 *Agrippa Minor*, son of Herod *Agrippa*, was he before whom *St. Paul* pleaded in defence of the Gospel and the last which had the Title of King of the *Jews*: for in his time the City of *Hierusalem* was destroyed by *Titus*, and the whole Kingdom made a Province of the Roman Empire, Anno 73.

And here it is to be observed, that when *Salmanassar* had subdued and captivated the ten Tribes of *Israel*, he sent new Colonies of his own to plant this Country; that so fruitful and well-situate a part of his Empire might yield its full tribute, and not lie open to the fury of the next Invader. But the *Romans* not having (it seemeth) so much policy or providence, as those whom they counted barbarous; having laid the Country desolate, left it unfurnished of new Colonies: whereby the *Persians*, next the *Saracens*, and after them the *Turks*, entering the Roman Empire at this door, have successively driven the *Romans* out of the whole. Now that we may the better perceive how the *Romans* had weakened, and almost utterly rooted out the Jewish Nation, we will relate some of their particular *Misfortunes*, which were not more cruelly inflicted on them by the Enemy, than justly deserved by themselves; they wishing, though (I suppose) not desiring, that the innocent Blood of our Saviour should be on them and their Children. First then the Inhabitants of *Cesarea* slew of the *Jews* in one day, about 20000, and such as fled were took and imprisoned by *Florus* the Roman Lieutenant of *Judea*. To revenge this slaughter, the *Jews* set upon the *Syrians*; in which skirmish 13000 of them were slain. The people of *Alexandria* put 50000 of them to the sword; they of *Damascus*, 10000; *Antioch*, a Roman Captain, slew in *Afsalon* 10000 of them; and *Cestius* another Captain, 80400 persons. Now to come to the wars here managed by *Vespasian*: This *Vespasian* in the siege of *Apha*, a Jew and took prisoner, 17130 persons; in *Samarita*, 11600 persons; in *Joppa*, 42200 persons; in *Toppa*, 60000 many killed and drowned themselves, that the Sea threw up again 4200 dead bodies; and the rest so totally perished, that there remained none to carry tidings unto *Hierusalem* of the loss of the Town. In the City of *Tarichea*, Jews were slain, and made captives, 45000 persons, besides those which were given to the King *Agrippa*. In *Gamala* there perished 50000, and none left alive but only two women; in *Caesarea* 5000 men died by the Sword; in the City of *Gadara* there were slain 32200, besides an infinite number which had drowned themselves. In *Hierusalem* it self, there died 1100000 of them, partly by the Sword, and partly by the Famine; the worst Enemy of the two; there were found 2000 in Privies and Sinks; and 97000 taken prisoners, inasmuch that 30 *Jews* were sold for a Penny. So punctual was the Divine Justice in retreating to this wretched people, according to the measure of their Iniquities, that they who bought their Saviour for 30 pence, should be sold at thirty for a penny in the open Market.

Now that *Hierusalem* was able to contain such a num-

ber of people, is evident, in that when *Cestius* was Lieutenant of *Jewry*, the High-Priest died at his request, and bore the people which came thither to eat the *Pascal Lamb*; and found them to be two millions and seven hundred thousand living souls, all found and putrid; For to Lepers, or men having a flux of Seed, or women in their monthly terms, or to strangers, it was not lawful to eat of it. And when *Titus* laid Siege to the City, it was in the Feast of the *Paschever*, when most of the people were there assembled; God (as it were) having thus imprisoned them. All these Massacres, besides divers others which I have omitted, and infinite numbers which were slain in the Fields and Villages, which drowned themselves, & which were privately made away, amounting all to almost 2000000 of people, happened in the compass of four years; beginning at the 12th of *Nero*, and ending at the 2d of *Vespasian*; yet was not the whole Nation rooted out, till they year 136. For then this miserable people, having stirred up 6 notable rebellions; the one under *Trejan*, and the last under *Adrian*, the Emperours, were generally banished their native Country, and never again permitted to inhabit it, otherwise than as strangers. After this dissolution, the *Jews* were dispersed all over the World, and especially in *Spain*, where *Adrian* commanded many of them to dwell; yet they found every where so little favour, that having divers times been put to grievous murther and ransoms, they were at last thrust out of most of the Kingdoms of Europe also. They were banished out of *England* by *Edward* the first, Anno 1290. Out of *France* by *Philip* the Fifth, 1307. Out of *Spain* by *Ferdinand* the Catholic, 1492. Out of *Portugal* by *Emmanuel*, 1497. Out of *Naples*, and *Sicily*, by *Charles* the Fifth, 1529. Yet are they found in great numbers in the *Romish* parts of *Germany* and *Poland*; in most Cities of *Italy*, especially *Rome* it self, where are no less than 15000 or 20000 of them; and also in the Popes Country of *Avignon*. The reason why they are permitted to live thus under the Popes nose, is pretended to be an expectation of their Conversion, which is a mere pretence indeed; the true reason being the benefit hence arising to his Holiness's Coffers: the hopes of their Conversion being very small, and the means less. For besides the scandal, *Datum & acceptum*, by the Popes kind worshipping of Images, so preposterously contrary to the first Table of the Law; they are not permitted to see any Book of Christian Religion, no not to much as the New Testament. And (which worketh much upon men of their metal) because at their Conversion they must quit all their goods unto the Church, as being ill gotten, and by consequence the works of the Devil, which in their Baptism they promise to renounce. They have also a Synagogue at *Amsterdam*, and are pretty thick spread over the Dominions of the *Turks*: who, notwithstanding do hate them for crucifying of *CHRIST*, that they used to say in the detestation of a thing, *I would I might die a Jew*. Neither will they permit a *Jew* to turn *Turk*, unless he be first baptized. And though their multitudes be so great both in *Thebanica* & *Constantinople*, that it is conceived they do amount to the number of 160000 persons; yet they are not only contemned but hated: but there, and in all other places of their habitation, upon every tumultuous assembly of the Common people, and constantly every *Easter*, whereforever they be, in danger of death. Inasmuch that if a *Jew* do but stir out of doors betwixt Maundy Thursday at noon, and *Easter Eve* at night, the *Christians* of the East, amongst whom they dwell (though far fewer in number) will be sure to stone them; because at that time, they buffeted, derided, and in fine crucified their Saviour. Hated in all the parts of the *Turky* Dominions, because employed as *Publicans* in gathering and

enhancing

enhancing the publick tributes, which they exact with all severity that may be, and improve unto the most. And no less hated in all parts of the *Christian* world, as Enemies to the Cross of *CHRIST*: so unreluctably addicted to their ancient *Judaism*, and so abhorring from the conversation of other men; that it is not pollible they should reap any other harvest, than contempt and scorn from those amongst whom they dwell.

To give you their Character in brief: They are a people which know how to comply with the times, and the condition which they live in; especially if their profit be concerned in it: reviled like Dogs, and used like Slaves, yet never flew to much as an Angry countenance. A Nation which will thrive whereforever they come, but most by *Usury* and *Brokeage*; not lending any thing but on pawns, and those once forfeited, never more redeemable. The best of both Sexes had to have an unfavourable rank; not incident (if not caused by flutthiness) to other people, from whom as different in their habit as in their Religion. And as for that, they retain still *Circumcision*, as the badge and cognizance of their Nation; but mingled with many Ceremonies not prescribed by the Law, nor observed by the Ancients: placing a void Chair for the Prophet *Elisha*, whom they believe to be present, though unseen at the Solemnity. And upon this they are so bold, that they conceive the Female Sex incapable of eternal life, because not capable of *Circumcision*; and therefore use to name them with no other Ceremony, than at six weeks end to have some young Wenches lift up the Cradle with the Child in it; which the that stand at the head, give them the name unto. Of their *Sabbath* so extremely doating, that they have added to the *superstitions* left them by the *Pharisees*: And herein they are so precise, that if a *Jew* travel on the Friday, and in the Evening fall a short of his Journeys end, that it amounts to more than 2000 Cubits, or six Furlongs, which they account a *Sabbath-day* journey, there must he sit him down and keep his *Sabbath*, though in a wood, or field, or the high-way side, without fear of wind or weather; of Thieves or Robbers, and without taking order for meat or drink: *Periculum latronum prædominatur metu, penuria item omni cibi postquam negligit*, as *Beza* observes it. And so far have they gone in despite of *Christ*, as to declare it unlawful to lift the *Ox* or *Ass* out of a ditch; permitted in the strictest times of *Pharisaical* rigour. So pertinacious in retaining the difference of meat and drink, that they will by no means sit at the Table with other men, and so precise in the dressing of it, that they will eat of no flesh but of their own killing only; and that too with such cautions and reservations, that if any of the entrails be corrupt or dislocated, they will sell the whole beast to the *Christians* for a very trifle. Beneficial in that only to the neighbouring *Christians*. Wine they forbear except it be of their own planting, nor so much out of dislike of that Liquor, for they are generally good fellows, and love their bellies, as for fear the Wine should be baptized: a Ceremony much used in the Eastern parts. Of the coming of their *Messiah* so full of hopes, that there is no great Warrior stirring, but they look upon him as the man still some sad Tragedy or other, which they suffer under that persuasion, makes them see their error promising to themselves whensoever he cometh, a restitution of their Kingdom: and such felicities therein, in the literal sense of some Texts of Scripture, which carry in them more mystical and sacred meaning. That in good time (but Gods, not theirs) they shall be made partakers of the several blessings which those Texts do speak of, is both the hope and with of all pious men who cannot chafe but grieve to behold the natural brutish, so long dismembered and cut off from the tree of life.

And this they neither hope nor wish for but on some fair grounds, presented to them by *St. Paul*: who said expressly, that when the fullness of the Gentiles is once come in, then shall *Israel* be saved, *Rom. 11.25, 26*. The words are so plainly positive, that they need no Commentary. Or if they did, we have the general consent of the Ancients, besides the constant current of most modern Writers; who cherish the glad hopes of their conversion to the Gospel, which the Apostle doth there aim at. *Origene*, *Ambrosius*, *Hierom*, *Augustine*, *Chrysostom*, for the primitive times; *Beda* and *Hugo* *Cardinalis*, in the times succeeding; *Gorran*, and *Thomas Aquinas*, for those of *Rome*; *Calvin*, *Beza*, *Bedinger*, and *Peter Martyr* for the Reformed Churches; besides divers others of great note, who expound that Text. Nor want there other Texts of Scripture to affirm as much; which he that doth desire to live, may find with the Explications of most *Christian* Writers, in a Book writ by Doctor *Willet*, Entituled, *De generali & necessaria Judæorum vocazione*; and thither I refer the more curious Reader. Out of all I shall take these words of *Peter Martyr*, written on that passage of *St. Paul* to the *Romans*, viz. *Non sit Judæi perierunt ut nulla de stirpe Israel spes superest*. The *Jews* (saith he) are not so wholly fallen from the favour of God, but that there still remains some hopes of their salvation. Of their Salvation then by the Gospel of *Christ*, when the fullness of the Gentiles is once come in, we conceive good hopes: but whether there be any of their restitution to their temporal Kingdom, is a further question; and not so clearly evidenced in the Book of God, though there be somewhat in that Book which may seem to intimate it. That the opinion of being restored to the *Messiah*, to that Temporal power which was taken from them by the *Romans*, was prevalent as well amongst *Christ's* Disciples, as the rest of the *Jews*, is, I take it, clear enough in the holy Gospel. In such a Kingdom, and no other, did the two Sons of *Zebadee* desire to sit on both hands of their Master; and the same was it, and no other, which all of them expected, as appeared by the words of *Cleophas*, *Luke 24.21*, that *Christ* should have restored unto them. *We thought*, said he, that this would have proved the man, that should have redeemed *Israel*. Redeemed *Israel*? From what? From *sin* and *Satan*, or the curse and bondage of the Law? Not so, *Am* *sed* *ad* *hanc* *domum* *hanc*; but from the yoke of *Vassallage*, which the *Romans* had so lately imposed on them, say the Fathers rightly. Touching the same it was that they moved him, saying, *Lord, wilt thou at this time restore again the Kingdom of Israel*, *Mat. 19.16*. In answer whereunto, our Saviour makes them no denial, as unto the thing, nor tells them that they never must expect such a reparation, but only puts them off as unto the time, and bids them rest themselves on the pleasure of God the Father. In whose hands the disposing of all Kingdoms was: *It is not for you* (saith he) *to know the times and seasons, which the Father hath in his own power*, ver. 7. By which answer (as it seems to me) there is a possibility of restoring them to their Kingdom also; though not in the *2d* *vis*, at that very instant when they were most desirous to have it done, in any other time fit for them to know; that being a secret, which the Father hath referred to himself alone.

But leaving these Speculations of a Restitution of the Throne of *Israel*, and the great Power and Privileges it may then enjoy, let us look back on the Estate in which it flourished in the former times, when the Forces and Revenue of it were at the height. And first for the Revenue, they amounted in the time of *Salomon* (as is said 2 *Chron. 9.13*.) to 666 Talents of Gold, besides the benefits of his Customs and Impositions, which cometh

cometh to 2997000 pounds of yearly income. A vast Sum for such a little Kingdom. Nor can we reckon them as less, if they were not greater in the time of David; of whom it is affirmed, 1 Chron. 22.14. That he left to Solomon 100000 Talents of Gold, and the 1000000 Talents of Silver towards the building of the Temple, besides 30000 Talents of Gold, and 7000 Talents of Silver, formerly deposited for that purpose, as is said 1 Chron. 29.4. Which if it be computed at the ordinary rate of a Jews Talent, reckoning a Talent of Gold at 4500 pound, and a Talent of Silver at 375 pound, will amount in our money to 840125000 pounds. So vast a Sum, that it had been sufficient to have built a Temple of pure Gold and Silver, far greater than the Temple of Solomon, without other Materials. I conceive therefore with our learned and industrious Brethren, that by the Talent in those places we are to understand a far lesser Sum than the ordinary Hebrew Talent; which whether it doth there signify, as *Explanum*, cited by *Engelbim*, was of opinion; or that every Talent of Gold came to three Golden Crowns of Athens, which maketh forty five shillings of English money, as *Julius Pollux* hath it in his *Onomasticon*, I am not able to determine. But measuring it by the last estimate, which I more approve of, it will amount to two millions and two hundred ninety and five thousand pounds: a vast Sum for a King to live in ready money, which was always exercised in war. And though I do not find expressly what the *Revenues* of *Judah* might amount unto after the division: yet by one circumstance I find them to be very great. For it is written, 2 Kings 18.14. that the yearly tribute imposed upon *Hezekiah*, by the King of Assyria, was three hundred Talents of Silver, and thirty Talents of Gold; amounting (according to the ordinary Hebrew Talent, which questionless is there intended) to two hundred forty seven thousand and five hundred pounds of English money; and therefore probably his ordinary Revenue must be thrice as much, above that tribute. Else the Assyrian had not left him a subsistence for a King to live on. Nor can I think that the *Revenues* of David were less to *Herod*, than formerly to *Solomon*, or *David*; considering his vast expences, the many and magnificent Structures which he brought to perfection, the immeasurable donatives bestowed upon *Angustus*, *Livia*, and the Court of *Rome*, together with the large Legacies he gave at the time of his death: not parallel'd by any King before or since, though of a more large and more ample Territory than he flood possessor of.

What forces the Kings of the Hebrews were able to bring into the field, may be estimated by the Muster which *David* made, when he numbered the People; and the enrolment of such as were able to bear arms, and for service, coming in all to five hundred thousand fighting men, in *Judah* only, and eight hundred thousand men in the Tribes of *Israel*. 'Tis true, that *David* never brought into the field so vast a multitude; but when the Kingdoms were divided, and war denounced betwixt *Jeroboam* and *Abijah*, we find almost the whole number brought into the field: that is to say, 800 thousand on the side of *Jeroboam*, the King of *Israel*, and four hundred thousand by *Abijah*, the King of *Judah*. After this, out of that small Kingdom, *Asa* the Son of *Abijah*, being invaded by *Zarab* the Arabian or Ethiopian, advanced an Army of five hundred and eighty thousand men, which was more than the enrolment made in the time of *David*. An infinite proportion for so small a Kingdom; and were it not avouched in the holy Scriptures, far above belief, had not that God who said to *Abraham*, that his Seed should be as

the Stars of Heaven for multitude, been able to have made it good.

As for the story and affairs of this Country since the time of *Adrian*, the Jews being all expelled their native Soil, and Christianity in fine prevailing over all those parts; it was inhabited as the rest of the Empire was, by men of that Religion only: in this Country for advanced and countenanced, that *Helena* the Mother of *Constantine*, is reported to have built in it no less than two hundred Temples and Monasteries, in places of most note for the Miracles of Christ our Saviour, or the dwelling of some of his Disciples. In the year 615, the Persians under the Conduct of *Chosroes* their King, became Masters of it; and possessed themselves of *Hierusalem* also: expelled thence by the valour and good fortune of the Emperor *Heraclius*, who recovering the Cross on which Christ suffered, out of the hands of the Pagans, carried it with as great a triumph into *Constantinople*, as *David* once did the Ark into *Hierusalem*; occasioning thereby the annual Festival on the fourth of September, called *Holy-Croft-day*, or *Exaltatio Sanctæ Crucis*. But this glory and rejoicing did not long continue: For within twenty years after the recovery of this City from the power of the Persians, it was again conquered and subdued by *Humar*, or *Aumar*, Caliph of the Saracens, Anno 637. Under this yoke the captivated Christians had long suffered, when they changed the Tyrant, but not the tyranny, the Turk about the year 1079, overcoming the Saracens, and domineering in their stead. Twenty years did the Christians languish under this oppression, when one *Peter* an Armenian, travelling for devotion to the holy Land, and being an eye-witness of the miseries under which they groaned; at his return, made his addresses to Pope Urban the second, acquainting him with the sad conditions of the poor Christians in those Countries. A Council thereupon is called at *Clermont* in France, where the Pope (willing to employ the Christian Princes farther off, that he might the better play his game at home, did so effectually advance and endear the business, that no fewer than three hundred thousand fighting men, under several Leaders, undertook the service. And it prospered so well with them in the first beginning, that having beaten the Turk out of *Asia Minor*, taken the great City of *Antioch*, and most of the strong Towns of Syria, they incamped before *Hierusalem*, and in short time took it, Anno 1099. after it had been four hundred years and upwards in the power of the Infidels. The City being thus gained, was offered with the title of King, to *Robert Duke of Normandy*, Son of *William the Conqueror*; but he upon the hopes of the Kingdom of England, refused that honour never prospering, as it was observed, after that refusal, *Godfrey of Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorraine*, had the next offer of it, which with a religious joy he accepted of: though on the day of his inauguration he refused the Crown: affirming that it was not fit for a Christian Prince to wear in that City a Crown of Gold, where the Redeemer of the World wore a Crown of Thorns.

#### The Kings of Hierusalem.

- 1099 1 Godfrey of Bouillon, Duke of Lorraine.  
1100 2 Baldwin of Lorraine, brother of Godfrey, was  
Ptolemais, and many other Cities of Syria.  
1118 3 Baldwin II. surnamed of Bruges, Cousin of  
Godfrey, and Baldwin, the former Kings,  
overcame the Sultan of Damascus; and  
enlarged his Kingdom by the addition of  
Tyre.  
1131 4 Fulk, Earl of Anjou, having married Milli-  
scent, the daughter of Baldwin the second,  
succeeded

succeeded after his decease; unfortunately killed with a fall from his Horse.

- 1142 5 Baldwin III. Son of Fulk and Millicent, fortified Gaza against the Caliph of Egypt; and recovered Palestine from the King of Damascus.  
1164 6 Amalricus, the Brother of Baldwin the third, so distressed the Great Caliph of Egypt, that he was forced to call in the Turk to aid him; by whom slain, and his Kingdom transferred on Saracen the Turkish General.  
1174 7 Baldwin IV. Son of Amalricus, overthrew Saladin the victorious King of the Turk in a Fight near Ascalon, and valiantly defended his Dominions.  
1185 8 Baldwin V. Son of Sybil the Sister of Baldwin the fourth, by William Marquis of Montferrat; unnaturally poisoned by his own Mother, having reigned only five Months to make way for her second Husband, called  
1189 9 Guy of Lusignan, the last King of Hierusalem, that had the possession of the City: during whose time Saladin the Sultan of Egypt won that Kingdom, Anno 1187. which his successors defended against all invasions, till the year 1517. in which Selim the first, Emperor of the Turk, added the Holy Land, together with Egypt, to his Empire. When Hierusalem was taken by the Christians, it is said that the German Emperours name was Frederick; the Pope's, Urbanus the Hierosolymitan Patriarch, Heraclius; and that soalls were they called, when the Christians again lost it. This is the conceit of Roger Hoveden, in the Life of Henry the second; but how it can agree with Chronology, I do not see.  
After the taking of Hierusalem by Sultan Saladin, the Christians retired their Forces into some of the other Towns of the Holy-Land, which they made good against the Enemy, and defended them under the Government of these three Kings following, viz.  
10 Conrad Marquis of Montferrat, Husband of Isabel the Daughter of Amalricus King of Hierusalem.  
11 Henry Earl of Champagne, second Husband of Isabel.  
12 John de Brenne, Husband of Mary, or Yolande as some call her, Daughter of Conrad and Isabel, the last Christian King that ever had possession in Syria or Palestine: inhabited ever since by Moors and Arabians; few Christians, and not many Turk but such as be in Garrisons only. Yolande the Daughter of this John de Brenne, was Wife to Frederick King of Naples, who in her right intitled himself King of Hierusalem: and so now do the Kings of Spain, as Heirs unto Possessors of the Kingdom of Naples. Concerning which Title, it would not be amiss to insert this Story. When the Wars in Queen Elizabeth's time were hot between England and Spain, there were Commissioners of both sides appointed to Treat of Peace. They met at a Town of the French Kings, and first it was debated in what Tongue the Negotiations should be handled. A Spaniard thinking to give the English Commissioners a shrewd grid, proposed the French Tongue as most fit; it being a Language which the Spaniards were well skilled in: and for these Gentlemen of England, I suppose (saith he) that they cannot be ignorant of the Language of their fellow-Subjects; their Queen is Queen of France, as well as of England. Nay in faith my Masters, replied Doctor Dale a Civil Lawyer, and one of the Masters of Requests; the French Tongue is too vulgar for a business

of this secrecy and importance, especially in a French Town: We will therefore rather treat in Hebrew, the Language of Hierusalem, whereof your Master is King; and I suppose you are therein as well skilled, as we in the French. And thus much for this Title.

The Arms of the Christian Kings in Hierusalem was Luna, a Cross Croiset croisé, Sol; which was commonly called the Hierusalem Cross. But for their Forces and Revenues, I cannot see how any estimate may be made hereof, in regard they subsisted not by their own proper strength, but by the Purles and the Forces of the Western Christians; more or less active in that Service, as zeal, or emulation, or desire of glory, were predominant in them.

Chief Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom, after the Recovery thereof from the power of the Turk, were,

1. Of the Sepulchre, said to be instituted originally by Queen Helena. The Mother of Constantine the Great, by whom the Temple of the Sepulchre was indeed first built: but more truly, by Philip King of France, Anno 1099, at such times that temple was regained from the Turk. Their Arms the same with that of the Kings before blazoned, representing the five Wounds of our Saviour CHRIST. At the first conferred on none but Gentlemen of Blood and Fortune, now fable to any that will buy it of the Pater-Guardian, who with a Convent of Franciscans doth reside near that Temple.

2. Of Saint John of Hierusalem, begun by one Gerard, Anno 1114, and confirmed by Pope Paschalis the second. Their Badge or Cognizance is a White Cross of eight points. Their duty, to defend the Holy-Land, receive Pilgrims, and succour Christian Princes against the Infidels. They were to be of noble Parentage and Extraction; and grew in time to such infinite Riches, especially after the suppression of the Templars (most of whose Lands were after given unto this Order) that they had at one time in the several parts of Christendom, no fewer than 20000 Manours; and of such reputation in all Christian Kingdoms, that in England the Lord Prior of this Order, was accounted the Prince Baron in the Realm. But now their Revenue is not a little diminished, by the withdrawing of the Kings of England, and other Protestant Princes, from the Church of Rome; who on that change, seized on all the Lands of this Order in their several Countries; and either kept them to themselves, or disposed them to others as they pleased. Of these we shall speak more when we are in Malta where they now reside: advertising only at the present, that their first Great Master, was that Gerard by whom they were founded: the last that had his residence in the Holy-Land, one John de Villiers, in whose time being driven out of Palestine, they removed unto Cyprus, and in the time of Fulk de Villaret, Anno 1309, to the Isle of Rhodes. Out of which expelled by Solymen the Magnificent, Anno 1522, they removed from one place to another, till at last by the magnificence of Charles the fifth, Anno 1530, they were settled in Malta; and there we shall speak further of them.

3. Of the Templars, instituted by Hugh of Payen, Anno 1113, and confirmed by Pope Eugenius. Their Ensign was a Red Cross, in token that they should shed their blood to defend Christ's Temple. They were buried cross-legged, and wore on their backs the figure of the Cross; for which they were by the common people called Cross backs, or Crouch-backs, and by corruption Crock-backs. Edmund Earl of Lancaster, second Son to our Henry the third, being of this Order, was vulgarly called Edmund Crock-back; which gave Henry the fourth a foolish occasion to scorn, that this Edmund, from whom





*landinus Melchior* above-mentioned, affirming on the credible report of the people hereof, that they came neither out of *Misopotamia*, or *Arabia Felix*, as many wilemen do believe, but out of *Saba* in *Arabia* the *Desart*, which City (saith he) when my self was there, was, as I judged, called *Semifacae*.

Cities of note, in a Country so desart and uninhabited, we most look for few; yet some there are, inhabited by a more civil sort of people, whom they call by the name of *Moors*, giving that of *Arabian* to those only, who living roving and robbing up and down, *Polomy* gives the names of forty Cities and Villages in it (*Civitates & vicis*, saith the *Latine*) the memory of moit of which is now utterly perished. Those of most observation, 1 *Sabe* or *Saba*, the habitation of the *Sabeans* who pillaged *Job*; so called from *Sheba*, the Grand-son of *Abraham* by *Returab*, mentioned *Gen. 25. 3.* of whom, and of the rest of that Line, it is said, in the sixth verse of that chapter, that *Abraham gave them gifts, and sent them away from Isaac Esauward, unto the East Country*: now called *Semifacae*, as is thought by *Melchior*. 2 *Therman*, which possibly may be the Country of *Eliphaz the Themanite*, one of the Visitants of *Job*. As 3 *Shubab*, on the North hereof, was probably of *Bilad*, another of them, hence firamed the *Shuite*. 4 *Tharacaj*, by *Pliny* called *Abipholi*. 5 *Zagmais*, near the *Persian Gulf*, in the Country of the *Raubeni*, supposed to be descended from *Alsham*, the fourth Son of *Ismael*. 6 *Phuntin*, the 36th. 7 *Obab*, the 37th Mansion of the Children of *Israhel*. 8 *Rhegama*, another of those named by *Polomy*, in the Greek Copies called *Begama*. Of any Town of note now being, more than *Semifacae* before-named, I find nothing certain.

The first Inhabitants of this Country, of whom there is any certain Constat, where the Posterity of *Euse*, the Son of *Nachor*, and the Sons of *Abraham* by *Returab*; of whose being settled in these parts, we had before good testimony from the Book of *God*: and intermix'd with them lived some of the Descendants of *Ismael* also. For if the *Adueni*, whom *Polomy* calleth the *Agubeni*, fetch their original from *Adhebi* the third, and the *Raubeni* from *Mihmai* the fifth Son of *Ismael*, as some say they do, I see no reason but the whole Country might be called *Kedar*, from *Kedar* the second Son, as well as from the tawny complexions of the people of it. From them descended the Tribes or Nations (spoken of by *Polomy*, that is to say, the *Orchemi*, *Chameubeni*, *Asiste*, *Majoni*, *Materni*, and *Agrei*, besides the *Adueni*, and *Raubeni*, already specified). But being a dis-jointed People, not under any settled form of Government, not possessed of any thing worth looking after, they were either led not worth the conquering, in regard of their penury; or else unconquerable, in respect of their Country, impassable for great Armies, by reason of the rolling Sands, and want of all things. Yet I conceive, that lying so near to the *Chaldeans*, they followed the fortunes of that mighty Monarchy: Subjects unto it whilst it stood, and after Tributaries unto those who successively possessed themselves of the Supreme Power. Not looked at by the *Romans*, or regarded by them, who aimed at Wealth as well as Honour in their Expedition: nor otherwise subject to the *Turks* at this present time, than as they make use of him and his protection in their frequent Robberies: but counted of as a part of the *Turkish* Empire, because the more civil *Arabians* are indeed his Subjects.

## 2 ARABIA PETRÆA.

**A**RABIA PETRÆA (now called *Barsaband Barkolaba*) hath on the East *Arabia Deserta*,

and part of *Sinus Persicus*, or the Bay of *Persia*; on the West, the *Isimus* which joyneth *Africa* to *Asia*, and part of the *Red Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*; on the North, *Palestine*; and on the South a long Ridge of Mountains, which divide it from *Arabia Felix*.

It had this name either from the rockiness of the Soil hereof, or more properly from *Petra*, the chief City of it, called also by *Abibius*, *Scitarā*, but I know not why: by the *Hebrews*, *Chus*, generally translated *Ethiopia*; by *William* of *Tyre*, *Arabia secunda*, *Felix* being reckoned for the first. By *Strabo*, *Polomy*, and *Pliny*, it is called *Nababæa*, which name it had from *Nababæa*, the eldest of the twelve Sons of *Ismael*; though properly that name belongeth only to those parts of it which lay next *Judea*: fruitful, though joyning to the Deserts: and thus remembered by the Poet, as an Eastern Country.

*Eurus ad Auroram, Nababæaque regna regit,*

*Eurus* unto the East did lie,

Where fruitful *Nababæa* doth lie.

The Country much of the same nature with the other, but in some parts thereof more fertile, it well manured: and in the time of *Marcellinus*, affirmed to be a rich Land, flourishing with variety of Trade and Traffick. But for the most part full of untravellable Deserts, except to those which carry their provisions with them for fear of starving, and go in great Companies, or Caravans, for fear of robbing: and yet much travelled by Merchants who traffick into *Egypt* and *Babylonia*; the Commodities whereof they lay on Camels, which are the Ships of *Arabia*, as their Seas, the Deserts. For upon one of these Camels, they will lay ordinarily 600 and sometimes 1000 pound weight: yet not afford him water above once in four days, not often in fourteen, if there be occasion. So that the Camel carrying so great a burden, and seldom fewer than 500 going in one Voyage, the Merchants, if he scape their robbing, makes a rich Return. Of these Deserts, the most memorable are the Sheep of *Sin* and *Pbaran*, in which the *Ismaelites* long wandered: not beautified with Grass, nor adorned with Trees, the Palm only excepted; nor furnished with Water, but by Rain or Miracle.

The People of it, for the most part, descended of the Sons of *Chus* and *Ismael*, intermixed with the *Nubians*, descending from *Abraham* by *Returab*, and the *Amalekites*, descended probably from *Amalek*, the Grand-son of *Eisau*, mentioned *Gen. 3. 6.* but all united at the last in the name of *Saraceni*. This name derived, as some think, from *Sarra*, signifying a Desert, and *Saken* which signifieth to inhabit, because they live for the most part in these desert places: as others say, from *Sarak*, signifying a Thief or Robber, agreeable to that of *Arabia*, before delivered. This last most suitable to their nature, and best liked by *Scaliger*. *Saraceni a siccis dicuntur ab Esarac, i. e. a siccis regionibus, quod rapinis vivunt.* So he, in his second Book de *Emend. Temp.* A People not reckoned in the former times, till made remarkable by their Conquest of a great part of the World; but always counted warlike and Martial men. Of whom take this Character out of *Marcellinus*. "The *Saraceni* (saith he) whom we are neither to wish for our Friends nor Enemies, are a Martial People, half naked, clad as far as the groin with painted Callocks, ranging up and down on Camels and swift Horses, as well in peace as troublesome times. Not used unto the Plough, to plant Trees, or get their living by Traffick; they wander from one place to another, without house or home, or any constant dwelling-place, or the use of Laws; nor can they long endure the same either Air or Soil, the manner of their living being always shifting,

flitting like ravenous Kites; which if they chance to spy a prey, snatch it up in their flight; or if they chance to fasten on it as it lyeth on the ground, they make no long stay. Their food is chiefly upon Venison, and flocks of Mille, herbs which they gather from the ground, and birds which they get by fowling; but altogether ignorant of Corn and Wine. Their Wives they only hire for a time, though for a few of Money they present their Husbands with a Spear & a Tent, as in way of Dowry; but they part with them when they please. Both Sexes most extremely given to carnal lulls, the women as rambling as the men, married in one place, and brought to bed in another, leaving their Children where they fall without more care of them. So far, and to this purpose he.

Rivers of note here are not many. The principal are, 1 That called *Trajanus amnis*, or the River of *Trajan*, which passing through this Country endeth his course in the *Red Sea*. 2 *Rhinocortura*, called in Scripture the current of *Egypt*, which rising in this Country, and passing by the borders of *Idumæa*, hath its fall in the Lake of *Sin*, and together with the waters thereof, loseth it (as at last in the Mediterranean.

With Mountains it is better stored, and those of eminent observation, as 1 Mount *Sinai*, famous in all Ages for the promulgation of the Law; and of late times, for a Monastery of *Maronites* on the top thereof. The Hill so high, that both shores of the *Red Sea* may be thence seen, but ease of ascent by reason of steps cut out of the rock: it notwithstanding, he that beginneth to go up at the break of day, will hardly overcome the top of it till the afternoon. The Monastery made an Episcopal See, and formerly very well endowed, as appeareth by the Letters of *Eugenius* Bishop thereof, to the Arch-Duke *Charl*, Anno 1569, complaining that the *Turks* had sold all their Land, and that himself and the Monks were fain to pawn their holy Vessels, and take up money on Usury. Here is also a *Mesque*, or *Mosque* of *Turks*, who resort in pilgrimage to it as well as the Christians. 2 Mount *Harab*, where the *Ismaelites* worshipped the Molten Calf, about a mile and a half distant from Mount *Sinai*, but not so high: on the top of which is a Church also, and a Monastery of *Coloivers*, or Greek Monks, at the bottom, exceeding hospitable to Strangers, whom they entertain of free cost, and cheerfully show them all the places worth observation, which the Scripture mentions in that tract. Both hills by *Polomy* called *Melan*, or the Black Mountains; the last now called *Orel*. 3 Mount *Hir*, bordering on *Idumæa*; and memorable for the death of *Aaron*.

Places of moit observation, 1 *Petra*, the name given to this part, at first called *Rekem*, and at that time belonging to *Midian*: afterwards called *Sela*, when pertaining to the *Idumæans*. But falling under the power of the *Arabians*, it is now called *Grat*. Best known in holy Scriptures by the name of *Sela*, beforementioned, which signifies the same with the *Laine Petra*. A City of great note and strength in all times foregoing, taken by *Amaziah* the King of *Judah*, 2 Kings 14. 7. and by him called *Jak-heli*, but in vain besieged by *Scaurus*, a Roman General, who finding the place to be impregnable, was content by the perswasion of *Antipater*, to take a sum of money and raise the siege. Nor did the Emperor *Trajan* spend much better at it, his Souldiers being still beat off in all their Assaults, the very next time to him slain with a Dart, and himself forced to cast away his Imperial habit, and die for his liles the heavens themselves, if *Dion* (who is never sparing of the like prodigies) may be believed, fighting against the *Romans* with thunder, lightning, whirlwinds, and tempests, as often as they made any ap-

proaches to it: But in the end subdued with the rest of the Country. In such esteem, by reason of the strength of it, by the Soldans of *Egypt*, that they kept here her choicest treasures, and in the course of the Holy Wars, much aimed at by the *Turks* and *Christians*, as the Key that opened the Gates of *Palestine*; on the South border whereof, not far from Mount *Har*, before-mentioned, the Town is situate. The Metropolis of the Province when first under the *Romans*; and made the Seat of a *Laine Bishop*, when the Christians of the West were the Lords thereof. 2 *Byssa*, said to have been built by *Angustus Cæsar*, because by him repaired, when decayed and ruined: afterwards by *Alexander Severus* made a Colony of the *Romans*. This last most certain, and for such testified by this ancient Inscription, in an ancient Coin, COL. BOSTRAIN. T. R. ALEXANDRIANE. Memorable also for the birth of *Philip* the Emperor, one of that *Alexander's* next Successors, by whom it was caused for a time to be called *Philippus*, for the Metropolitan dignity removed thither from *Petra* somewhat before the time of *Justinian*, but by whom I find not, and for being the Episcopal See of *Tima* (hence firamed) *Ephrenus*, a reverend Father of the Church in the time of *Julian* the Apostate. A City of as great antiquity as the most that be, mentioned *Gen. 36. 33.* though there accounted of as a City of *Edom*, to which at that time it did belong; and is still remaining, & well known by the name of *Bassireh*, 3 *Elama*, on a bay of the *Red Sea*, called hence *Sims Elamiticus*: 4 *Pbaraz*, reckoned by *Polomy* for a chief Town of this Tract, from whence the Wilderners of *Paran* seems to take its name. 5 *Berezine*, so called from some of the Queens of *Egypt*, but better known by the name of *Ezion-geber*, one of the Stations or Encampings of the Children of *Israhel* made by *Salomon* the ordinary harbour for his Ships, which failed to *Opbir* in the East-Indies. 6 *Sur*, the chief City of the *Amalekites*, giving name to the Wilderners or Desert of *Sur*, coming close up to it: remarkable for the first incamping of the Tribes of *Israhel* after their miraculous passage over the *Red Sea*, and the defeat which *Sad* gave to the *Amalekites*, whom he smote from *Havilah* to this place. 7 *Havilah*, so called from *Havilah* the son of *Chus*, being the furthest border of these *Amalekites*, & *Ismaelites*, on the Gulf of *Persia*, as *Sur* was on the *Red Sea* or Gulf of *Arabia*. 8 *Madian*, so called of *Madian*, the son of *Abraham* by *Returab*, situate towards the *Red Sea* also; the City of *Jethro*, whose Daughter *Zipporah* was the wife of *Moses*: who flying from the Court of *Pharaoh* King of *Egypt*, was by *God's* secret providence directed thither: that keeping the Flocks of *Jethro* in the Deserts adjoining, he might acquaint himself with the ways and passages, through which he was after to lead the house of *Israhel*. 9 *Rephaim*, the encamping place of *Moses*, where he discomfited the *Amalekites*; and to which the said *Jethro* came to him with his Wife and Children, advising him to ease himself of some part of that burden, which the Government of so great a People would else bring upon him. 10 *Kadesh-barnea*, the station of the Tribes, when the Spies which were sent to discover the Land of *Canaan* returned back unto them: memorable for the death of *Miriam* the Prophetess. And 11 *Thara*, no less memorable for the mutiny and punishment of *Corah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, the place remembered *Numb. 33. 27.* But others will have 12 *Makleth*, mentioned *2. 25.* of that Chapter, to be the Stage of that action, the Scriptures being silent in this particular. The rest of their encamping places, being moit of them in this part of *Arabia*, I omit of purpose, as obvious in the Scripture unto every Reader: as I do also some of the Cities of *Moab* and *Ammon*, accounted of by *Pro-*

lomy, as Critics of this Province; but spoken of already in our Description of Palestine, to which more properly belonging.

The old Inhabitants of this Country were the *Midianites*, the *Ismaelites*, the *Amalekites*, and the Children of *Chus*, who dwelling promiscuously together, are sometimes used for one another: the Merchants which brought *Ysop* of his Brethren, being indifferently called *Midianites*, and *Ismaelites*, Gen. 37. 28. and *Zipporah* the wife of *Moser*, who questionless was a Daughter of *Madian*, being by *Miriam* and *Aaron* called an *Ethiopian* or *Chusite*, as in way of reproach, Numb. 12. 1. But being they were different Nations, and such as had some special engagement with or against the Children of *Israel*, we will consider them by themselves, till we have brought them into one body, by the name of *Chusites*, *Ethiopian*s, or *Arabians*, which are all the same.

And first the *MADIANITES* were such of the posterity of *Madian*, the Son of *Abraham* by *Retur*, who preserving the knowledge of the true God, withdrew themselves from all communion with the Idolatrous *Canaanites*, at such time as the rest of their brethren did associate with them; and settled themselves more towards the banks of the *Red Sea*, where they did all good offices to the Children of *Israel*, as they passed through their Country. Of these the *Kenites* were a branch, as appeareth *Judg.* 1. 16. where *Jethro* the Prince or Priest of *Madian*, is called a *Kenite*: some of which turned *Prophets*, and dwelt with the *Israelites* in *Canaan* of *Prophet*, *Isaiah* the *Kenite*, the husband of *Jael*, who slew *Sisera*, was undoubtedly one. The rest, continuing mingled with the *Amalekites*, till the time of *Saul*, were by him warned (in memory of former courtesies) to withdraw themselves from them; lest they should perish with them in the same destruction. Afterwards we hear little of either people, losing their name in the greater Nation of the *Ismaelites*, with whom intermingled, or passing with them in the same common notion of *Arabians*, *Chusites*, or *Ethiopian*s.

Secondly, nor were the *AMALEKITES*, though a greater and more powerful Nation, of much more continuance defended, as it is conceived, from *Amalek*, the Grand-son of *Esau* (though I deny not but there are some reasons to be urged against that opinion) and planted on the backs of the *Edomites*, as their Guard or Out-work. A people maliciously bent against those of *Israel*, as if they had inherited the hatred which *Esau* their fore-father did bear to *Jacob*, whom they violently set on at *Rephidim*, when they supposed them spent and wearied with their flight from *Egypt*. And though discomfited in that battle, yet they continued in their malice against the Tribes, joining first with the *Canaanites* against them when they were in their Marches, and after with the *Midianites*, when not well settled in their new possession. A provocation for ill taken by the Lord of Hosts, because unnatural, and ill grounded, that he declared his resolution from the time of the Battle of *Rephidim*, to put out the remembrance of *Amalek* from under Heaven, *Exod.* 17. 14. Accordingly, when the Children of *Israel* were provided for by him, he commanded *Saul* to set upon them, and to slay both man and woman, infant and suckling, yea, their sheep and cattle. But some of them escaped this slaughter, and fell not long after upon *Zig-Liz*, the retiring place of *David*, which they took and ransacked; but being by him followed on the first intelligence, they were easily overthrown, and the prey recovered. Their malice yet survived their power; and what they could not do by their forces, they endeavoured to effect by joining with the *Ammonites*, *Moabites*, and other Enemies of *David*, in their Wars against him.

And this was *ultimum conam*, one of the last shafts of their dying light; nothing done by them worth remembrance of the times succeeding, most of the Nation being worn out, and those few which were left, retreating to the Mountains of *Edom*, but thereof also dispossessed by the *Simeonites*, during the reign of *Hezekiah*.

Thirdly, the *ISMAELITES*, descending from *Ismael*, the Son of *Abraham* by *Hagar*, branched into twelve great Nations, and grown wondrous populous, spread themselves over a great part of these three *Arabia*'s: all of them either Thieves or Merchants; trading to *Egypt* in Spicery, and Balm, and *Myrrh*, or robbing those which traded in the like commodities. Called also *Hagarens* in the Scripture, as 1 *Chron.* 5. 10. *Psal.* 83. 6. &c. and by that name well known to many of the ancient Writers. A people for the most part of a vagabond and rough life, more given to spoil, than any honest course of living, which made every Traveller and Merchant to be armed against them; so verifying the prediction which was given to *Ismael*, that he should be a wild man, having his hand against every man, and every man's hand against him. St. Hierom so conceives that Prophecy to have been accomplished. More fully verified perhaps, when in and under the name of *Saracens*, (by which, and by the name of *Scimiters*, they were most generally known to the *Greeks* and *Romans*) they made full havock in the world, and were esteemed the common Enemies of all civil Nations. Never so governable in their best and most orderly times, as to acknowledge King or Law, till made one body with the *Chusites*, and the rest of those Nations: and then no further, than it stood with their lust or liking.

Fourthly, As for the *Chusites*, though they permitted the Nations above specified, to inhabit in those Deserts and waste places, which themselves either could not people, or cared not for; yet were they always of most power, and gave name to that whole tract of ground, containing now all *Petrea*, the South part of *Deserta*, and the Mountains which divide *Petrea* from *Arabia Felix*: which from them was called *Chus*, or the Land of *Chus*. Rendred in all places of the Old Testament by the name of *Ethiopia*, first by the Septuagint, and afterwards by all the Fathers *Greek* and *Latins*, the Vulgar Translation of the Bible; and almost all the other Translations at this day extant. And rendered right enough at first, as in all times since, though by some mistaken: who having never heard of any other *Ethiopia* than that in *Africk*, have transferred thither all those actions and Texts of Scripture, which are meant of this. The Septuagint, no doubt, were not so ignorant of the affairs of their next neighbouring Nation, as not to know by what name they were called by the *Greeks*, their then Lords and Masters. And he that looks into the History of *Herodotus*, who lived 150 years before that Translation, will find, that by the *Greeks* they were called *Ethiopian*s, and called so questionless from the full face reason that is to say, the swarthy, or Sun-burnt of their complexion, as the *Ethiops* of *Africk* were, that name being framed from the *Greek* word *Aithra*, signifying tawny and *Oia*, a countenance, by reason of their tawny and Sun-burnt Countenances. For speaking of the huge Army of *Xerxes* against the *Greeks*, he doth thus proceed, *Ἀριθμῶν δὲ τῶν Ἀθίωνων ἦν τὰς Ἀφροῦσας ἀναγομένης τῆς Ἀραβίας*, &c. *Arjames* (saith he) was Captain of the *Arabians* (he meant the *Triglitides*) and *Ethiopian*s which are beyond *Egypt*: but the Eastern *Ethiopian*s were ranked with the *Indians*, nothing differing from the other in the structure of their bodies, but their hair and voice only; the Eastern *Ethiopian*s wearing their hair smooth, those of *Lybia* curled. The *Ethiops*

of *Asia* were armed like the *Indians*, but the *Ethiops* of *Africa* were arrayed with the skins of Beasts. Here too we have an *Aryan* *Ethiopia* in the time of *Herodotus*, the same acknowledged by *Pausanias* an old *Greek* Writer, and by *Philostratus* after him, though they look for it in the wrong place: the first amongst the *Seres*, in the North of *Asia*, the other on the River *Ganger*, too much in the East. Nor doth *Ethiopia*, one of the old Cosmographers, published by *Strabo*, shew more near the mark, who speaking of the River *Tigris*, saith that it burtheth it self, and runneth under the ground in *Ethiopia*. Which though *Strabo* doth interpret of these parts of *Arabia*, yet questionless that Author meant it of the Country about Mount *Taurus*, where that River doth indeed run under ground, and having passed under those vast Mountains, riseth up again.

But what need further search be made to find out the situation of this *Ethiopia*, when it is bounded out so plainly in the holy Scriptures? For when it is said of *Zipporah* the Wife of *Moser*, that she was an *Ethiopian* woman, Num. 12. 1. who is well known to have been a Native of this Country; and when it is said in 2 *Chron.* 21. 16. that the Lord stirred up against *Jehoram* the spirit of the *Philistines*, and of the *Arabians* that were near the *Ethiopian*s, it must needs be that the *Ethiopia* there spoken, must be continuous to the rest of *Arabia*, and be intended of that Country wherein *Madian* was. So where God threatneth by the mouth of the Prophet *Ezekiel*, that he would lay waste the Land of *Egypt*, from the Tower of *Syene*, even unto the borders of *Ethiopia*, Chap. 29. 10. that is to say, from one end thereof unto the other, it followeth necessarily, that *Ethiopia* there meant, must be that part of *Arabia*, or the Land of *Chus*, as the bound of *Egypt* most remote from the Tower of *Syene*, which all Geographers acknowledge to be in the extreme South parts thereof towards the Cataracts of *Nilus*. For to expound it, as some do, of *Ethiopia* in *Africk*, on the borders whereof *Syene* stood, and stood so indifferently betwixt it and *Egypt*, that *Stephanus*, an ancient Writer, makes it very doubtful to which of the two it did belong, were to make the Scripture speak plain nonsense: as plain as if a man should say, that the *French* conquered all the *Netherlands* from *Graveling* to *Flanders*; or that the *Sword* hath ranged over all *England*, from *Berwick* to *Scotland*. As then we have found this *Ethiopia* of the Old Testament to be near the *Philistines* on the one side, and the Land of *Egypt* on the other; so may we find it to be bounded also on the East, with *Babylonia* or *Chaldea*: the River *Gibon*, which is said to compass the whole Land of *Ethiopia*, (or the Land of *Chus*, Gen. 2. 13. being no other than a branch of the River *Euphrates*, which falleth into the Lakes of *Chaldea*). So that the Translation of the Septuagint in reading *Chusites*, or the Land of *Chus* by *Ethiopia*, needs no such alteration or emendation as some men suppose. The mistakes (whereof there have been many) which arise from hence, not being to be charged on them, or on their Translation, but on the ignorance of the Reader, or Error of such Expositors, who dreaming of no other *Ethiopia* than that in *Africk*, have made the Scripture speak of such things as it never means, and carried these *Chusites* into the *African* *Ethiopia*, where they never were. And yet perhaps it may be said, that the posterity of *Chus*, being straitened in their own possessions, or willing to seek new adventures, might have crossed over the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia* (being but seven miles broad where narrowest) and mingling with the Sons of *Ludim* on the other side, might either give the name of *Ethiopian*s to them, or receive it from them.

Now to go forwards with the story, the first great acti-

on attributed to these *Chusites*, or *Arabian* *Ethiops*, incorporated with the rest of those mingled Nations, is the expedition of *Zerah* the King hereof, against *Asa* King of *Judah*, drawing after him an Army of a Million, and 300. Chariots of War (the greatest Army ever read of in unquestioned story) but for all that, discomfited by the Lord of Hosts, on the prayers of *Asa*, and all the spoil of that huge Army carried unto *Hierusalem*. After this *Tiribakah*, another of these *Ethiopian* Kings, finding how dangerous the great growth of the *African* Kingdom might prove unto him, prepared a puissant Army against *Sennacherib*, then belagging *Libna*, threatening the conquest of all *Judah*, and invading *Egypt*: upon the news of whose approach, *Sennacherib*'s forces, which were even upon the gaining of *Pelissium*, the Gate of *Egypt*, were made to dilodge and provide for their safety. For though *Herodotus* call *Sennacherib* King of *Arabia*, and *Affria*, yet was he Master only of those parts of *Arabia*, which had been formerly possessed by the Kings of *Israel*, being no more than some few Cities of *Petrea*, bordering next unto them; or perhaps called so only in respect of those parts of *Syria* & *Mesopotamia*, which were sometimes comprehended under the name of *Arabia*, as before is said. What part they took after in the great War betwixt *Nebuchadnezzar*, and *Pharaoh Necho* King of *Egypt*, is not hard to say. For besides that the same Reasons of State, obliging them to side with the *Egyptians*, were still in force; their giving *Necho* leave to pass through their Country with his Army, to invade the *Babylonians* on the banks of *Euphrates*, make that plain enough. Now that both *Tiribakah* and *Zerah* were Kings of this *Assan*, and not the *African* *Ethiopia*, is most clear and evident: partly in regard the Kings of *Egypt* would never suffer such huge Armies to pass thorough the whole length of their Dominions: but principally because it is said in the holy Scriptures, that *Asa* having overthrown that vast Army of *Zerah*, smote all the Cities about *Gezar*, which formerly had belonged unto the *Philistines*, but were then possessed by these *Chusites* and their Associates. After this, either as Confederates or Subjects, we find them aiding unto *Xerxes* in his war on *Greece*: and like enough it was that in *Alexander*'s March from *Egypt* towards *Persia*, they submitted to him, as did all the other Countries thorow which he passed. He being dead, *Antigonus*, one of his great Commanders, sent *Athenians* with an Army to bring them in, who being trained into an ambush was discomfited by them: *Demetrius* the son of *Antigonus*, thinking that he had done enough in revenge of that overthrow, by compelling them to sue for peace. In the time of the *Seleucian* Race in *Syria*, we find them governed by Kings of their own, most of them called by the name of *Anteus*; of which one was of special note in the declining fortunes of the *Seleucians*, for bidding very fair for the Crown of that Country; and being a flicker in the Wars of *Jerry*, in the time of *Hircanus* the fourth King of the Race of the *Maccabees*, to whom at the Request of *Antipater*, the Father of *Herod*, he gave hopes of aid; and on those hopes was possessed of *Medaba*, and other Towns of good importance, which *Alexander* the Father of *Hircanus* had regained from the *Syrians*, and laid unto the Crown of *Jerry*, to which as parts of *Imnea*, and anciently possessed by the Tribes of *Israel*, he might make some claim. Another there was of the same name, and of no less power, whom we find to have been warred upon by *Herod*, about the time of the battle of *Altium*, and for the most part vanquished by him; and finally a third of more power than either, mentioned by St. Paul, 2 *Cor.* 11. 32. as Lord of *Damascus*. In the flourishing of the *Roman* fortunes, the King hereof having first

aided *Mithridates* and *Tigranes*, in the War against them, submitted themselves unto *Laelas*, being then, no nearer to them than *Armenia Major*. The like they did to *Pompey* also, being then in *Judea*. First vanquished by *Julius Cæsar* in the time of *Antiochus*; but the Victory not improved to an absolute Conquest, till the time of *Trajan*, when partly by his personal presence, and partly by the valour and good fortune of *Rabbi*, his Lieutenant, they were fully vanquished, and brought in to the form of a *Roman Province*; but so, that they had Kings of their own (Vassals and *Epistates* of the Empire) as in former times; continuing in that condition till the rise of *Mahomet*. Of which more hereafter.

### 3. ARABIA FELIX.

**ARABIA FELIX**, is bounded on the East, with the *Persian*, on the West, with the *Arabian Gulf*, on the North with a long ridge of Mountains, which part it from *Djefra* and *Petra*; and on the South with the boundless Ocean. Encompassed on three parts with the Sea, on the fourth with rough, impassable Mountains; in situation and figure much resembling *Italy*.

It had the name of *Arabia Felix* from the fertility and happy condition of it, being esteemed the most fruitful & pleasant Country in all *Asia*, abounding with *Myrrh*, *Balsamum*, *Frankincense*, Gold, and *Precious Stones*: by *Corippus* called *Odorum fertilitate nobilis Regio*, from the abundance of *Frankincense*, wherewith enriched beyond all others. Concerning which there goeth a story, that when *Alexander* in his Adultery or Boyage, was sacrificing to the gods, and cast into the fire with both hands great store of *Frankincense* and *Myrrh*, *Leonides* his Governor, bid him be more sparing of those precious and dear Commodities, till he was Master of the Country in which they grew. Which *Alexander* remembering, when he had brought almost all the East under his obedience, he sent unto *Leonides* a Ship-laden with *Frankincense*, bidding him from thenceforth to serve the gods more liberally. But as well for the reason of this adjunct, as a more perfect character and description of it, take along of the *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who describes it thus: "On the East and South thereof (saith he), are the Happy *Arabians*: so called because so rich in Corn, as well as plentiful in Cattel, Vines, and Odoriferous Spices of all kinds; shut up betwix the *Red Sea*, and the *Persian Gulf*, and so acquainted with all blessings, which either Element can afford: well furnished with Roads and quiet Harbours for Shipping, the Towns of Trade and Merchandise standing very thick; the retiring Houses of the Kings, passing neat and sumptuous. Besides most wholesome Fountains of medicinal waters, they enjoy divers Brooks and Rivers very clear and pure, and a temperature of Air exceeding healthy; so that whosoever considereth all things aright, may well conclude, that there is nothing wanting to the accomplishment of its felicity in the highest degree. So *Ammianus Marcellinus*. To which we need add nothing more to fortify its happiness, than that *Dante* in his Comment on St. *Augustine's* *Enchiridion* ad *Laurentium*, is persuaded that it was the local place of *Paradise*. *Diogenes* (saith he) *Paradisi terrestrius Regio pars quedam est Asiæ, que nunc dicitur Felix*. But it hath other names besides this of *Felix*. By the *Arabians* themselves called *Jemen*, and *Al-jemen* (*Ayamen* corrupted by the *Turks*) which in that tongue signifieth the South, or Southern Region. By *Virgil* it is named *Panchæia*, quasi terra debilis, because of the many chops and chinks which the adour of the Sun makes in the Sands

thereof, though by him much extolled also for its plenty of *Frankincense*.

*Tripæ thuriferis Panchæia pingis arenis*,  
Famed are the Woods the Panchæian Lands,  
For rich and Incense-bearing Sands.

The People anciently, though more civil than the rest of the *Arabians*, had yet many strange and barbarous customs. Adultery amongst them was punished with death as in other places; but only he was held an Adulterer, which enjoyed any that was not his own kinswoman, be he his Sister or his Mother; and so they kept themselves in their own Families; Community of wives or women was esteemed no crime. And of this there is a Tale in *Strabo*, that the King of this Country had fifteen Sons, and but one Daughter, who according to the Customs hereto, was the common wife of all her brethren; every of which had a Staff of like making, which when he went in unto his Sister he did leave at the doors, and by so doing did bid entrance unto the rest, till it were removed. The young Lady, wearied with a continual excess of dalliance, secretly procured a Staff like unto the rest, which when she was desirous to prohibit their access to her, she left at her Chamber-door; and by that means did many times enjoy her desired privacy. At last it happened that all the Brothers being together, one of them departed towards his Sisters Lodgings, where finding a Staff before the door, and knowing that he had his Brethren in one place together, he ascended her by Adultery: but the truth being made known, the Lady was quitted, and their visits afterwards restrained. Of dead Bodies they took no care, nor so much as of their Chiefs or Princes; but left them to the custody of the next dung-hill. They bragged much of their descent from *Jupiter*; and neglected all Sciences & Arts, as disparagements to so great Nobility. Commendable only in the keeping of their faith and promises, and in that most punctual. Much of the same condition are the present Inhabitants, save that less faithful in their Contracts; and by their Law restrained from meddling with the wives of others, permitted many of their own. Some there are of them which apply themselves to the grazing of Cattel, and the rest to Merchandise, wherein very cautious and cunning; but hating to this day all Mechanical Arts. A Nation from the beginning unmixt with others, till the coming of the *Turks* amongst them, of which but few, and those dispersed in Garrisons: boasting of their Nobility, and glorying in nothing more than their greatest shame, namely that the false Prophet *Mahomet* was their Country-man; whose impieties are here generally embraced, and followed.

Amongst the rarities of this Country, some account the *Phoenix*, which growing old burneth herself in a nest of Spices, and from thence a young one ingendered; one of them only at a time, which after a life of five or six hundred years, thus reneweth her kind. But this tradition, questioned in former times by *Pliny* & some others, is now proved a Fiction; contrary both unto divinity & natural reason: though some of the Fathers made use of it as an argument to prove the Resurrection against the Gentiles, by whom the tradition was believed. More common, but of no less observation, is the *Oryx*, a Bird which swalloweth all it findeth, be it Stones or Iron. They delight chiefly in the Deserts, in the fens where they lay their Eggs, and then forgetting where they left them, sit on those they meet next. In that respect accounted for a simple Fowl, though otherwise of wit enough to preserve themselves keeping in flocks, and oftentimes with their fearful shrieces affrighting Passengers, whom they do appear afraid of like a Troop of Hares, whom they do appear afraid of like a Troop of Hares, whom they do appear afraid of like a Troop of Hares. Their wings, too little for their bodies, serve them not for

flight, but to run more speedily; and by that means easily caught, though much laid in wait for, for their Skins, which the People fell into the Merchant with their Feathers on them. Nor of less note is the *Frankincense*, though of common use, almost peculiar to this Country, and here but to those parts thereof which we formerly posited by the *Sabeis*: the Wood out of which the Gum proceedeth, being about 100 miles long and 50 broad; gathered only in *Spring* and *Autumn*. More of this anon.

The Country is much commended by *Ammianus* for plenty of Rivers, the principal whereof are said by *Procopius* to be, 1. *Batius*, 2. *Prion*, 3. *Harmar*, 4. *Lar*, but the modern names thereof I find not. Many fair Lakes, and store of large capacious Bays on each coast of the Sea, 1. *Sinus Eilatiticus*, 2. *Sabaiticus*, 3. *Leantes*, 4. *Sinus Magran*, 5. *Sinus Jebhyphagorum*, 6. *Misamis*, 7. *Sacer Sinus*, or the Holy Bay; and 8. The Road or Naval Station called *Negila*. Mountains of most note, 1. Those which are called *Melanæ*, at the entrance of the *Persian Gulf*, 2. *Cabuthra*, at the entrance of the *Red Sea* or *Gulf of Arabia*, 3. *Hippus*, 4. *Prionus*, not far from the River *Prion*, from whence is denominated, 5. *Climax*, 6. The Mountains called *Dugni*, &c.

Names of good note in ancient times it had very many, no Region affording unto *Polymy* the names of more, and amongst those many commodious Ports for Traffick, the Sea beginning its for the space of 3000 miles and upwards. Of most importance and observation in those times were, 1. *Zebrium*, 2. *Bade*, 3. *Rhabana*, 4. *Carman*, 5. *Memabib*, 6. *Sabe*, 7. *Ar*: the Royal Seats of 5 several Kingdoms, and therefore honoured by *Polymy* with the Title of *Regie*. Then there are, 1. *Mausara*, 2. *Mora*, 3. *Negara*, 4. *Sabbaha*, 5. *Majra*, 6. *Sapha*, which he called *Metropoles*; as being the head-Cities of some former Nations. Amongst the Ports he reckoneth, 1. *Sapphus*, 2. *Trulla*, 3. *Tretos*, 4. *Cryptus*, 5. *Lamus*, and 6. *Moscha*. Amongst the most noted Empories of Towns of traffick, 1. *Musa*, 2. *Oasari*, 3. *Arabia*, 4. *Cane*. Besides which there are some which do preserve the memory of their first Plantations, as 1. *Sapha*, upon the *Persian Gulf*, so from *Saba*, the first Son of *Chus*, 2. *Rhegama*, or *Regma* (the Greek Copies of *Polymy* have it) so named from *Regma* or *Rasma* the sixth Son; on the same Gulf also, 3. *Sabe*, on the Shores of the *Red Sea*. And 4. *Sabe Regia*, more within the Land, so named from *Sheba* the eldest Son of the same *Chus*, from which the rich and potent Nation of the *Sabeans* are to be derived. Out of all which, and many others by him named, we shall take more particular notice of some that follow. 1. *Musa*, a noted Port on the entrance of this Country, frequented anciently by the *Ethiopian* and *Egyptian* Merchants: who there laden their Ships with *Frankincense*, *Myrrh*, *Spices*, and other Commodities of this Country, bringing in, in exchange thereof, Saffron, Corn, Wine, Cintrments, Purple Dyes, &c. 2. *Sabe*, the Royal Seat of the Kings of the *Sabeans*, particularly of that Queen so memorized in holy Scripture; called in the Old Testament the Queen of *Sheba*, from her Country and place of dwelling; in the New Testament the Queen of the South, because of the Southern situation of it in respect of *Judea*: said there to come from the furthest parts of the World, because there was no part of the World which lay South to the Country of the *Sabeans*, over which she reigned. Situate on a little Mountain, affirmed by *Agathangerides* to be *seventy miles* from *Agathangerides*, the most beautiful by far in all *Arabia*, and the Metropolis of the rich and potent

Nation of the *Sabeans*: rich in all the excellencies of Nature, especially in *Frankincense*, a Gum peculiar to them only, and growing here in a Wood of about 100 miles long, and 50 broad; not gathered but in the Spring and Autumn, nor then without great care, and many ceremonies. The Country hereabouts from hence called *Thurifera*, and this sweet Gum appropriated solely to them. *Sabeis* *Arabum propter thura clarissimi*, as we find in *Pliny*; *Solis est thura virga Sabeis*, as it is in *Virgil*: and finally, --- *Thuriferis, falcata regna*, *Sabæis*, in the *Argonauticks* of *Valerius Flaccus*. It was called also *Mariaba*, and by that name occurrieth in some ancient Writers. 3. *Sapha*, more towards the *Persian Gulf*, on the South-side of the Mountain *Climax*, the chief City of the *Homeris*; adorned in times of Christianity with a beautiful Temple. 4. *Sabbatha*, or *Sabota*; as *Pliny* calleth it, seated about the midst of the Country, on the top of an high and lofty Hill, from whence it had a gallant prospect on the Fields adjoining: anciently large and populous, and strongly fortified, having no fewer than 60 Temples within the Walls; the principal consecrated unto *Sabis*, the god of their Nation, to whom they offered the Tythe of their *Frankincense*, *nbi decimas Deo quem Sabin vocant, mensura non pondere capunt Sacerdotes*, as we read in *Pliny*.

But these and almost all the rest being grown out of knowledge, there have risen in their rooms, 1. *Egra*, on the Shores of the *Red Sea*, near the Bay called *Sinus Eilatiticus*, by *Polymy* called *Agra*, by the *Arabians* themselves *Agra*: the Port-Town to *Medina*, from which about three days' journey distant, 2. *Jabir*, or *Jarir*, in the way betwixt *Algar* & *Medina*, the birth-place of *Mahomet*; by whom furnished with a mud-wall, as his place of retreat in the first beginning of his Fortunes, 3. *Medina*, commonly called *Medina Talabani*, corruptly for *Medina Talabani*, that is to say the City of the Prophet, so called from the Sepulchre of *Mahomet*, that vile Impostor, which is there to be seen; although not in such an Iron Coffin, or drawn up to the roof of the Temple by virtue of an *Adamant* there placed, as some deliver. The Town situate in a desolate and barren place, bordering on *Arabia Petraea*; and of great Trade, rich, and well inhabited: the Sepulchre of that Elie Prophet drawing thither a continual resort of Pilgrims. The Temple gorgeous, having 3000 Lamps in it, which burn continually. The Sepulchre or Tomb enclosed with an Iron Grate, but of no magnificence or beauty: covered with a Carpet of green Velvet, which is sent hither yearly by the *Grand Signeurs*, the old one being taken off, and cut into innumerable threads or pieces, and sold for Relicks by the Priests (to such as come in Pilgrimage thither) for their great enriching. 4. *Cusfa*, the ordinary Residence of the first *Caliphs*, till the removing of the Imperial Seat to *Damascus* in *Syria*; and after that the usual place of meeting for consultation in Affairs of State, relating to the peace of this Country, and the Common Interest of this People; as memorably for the Sepulchre of *Mertis Hali*, the Progenitor of the *Persian Sophies*, as *Medina* is for that of *Mahomet*, 5. *Mecca*, supposed to be the *Meclara* of *Polymy*, situate in the like barren Soil, not far from *Medina*; but of far greater resort and traffick: in the whole wealth in a manner of this Country, together with the Commodities of *Persia* and *India*, being hither brought hither; and from hence by Camels backs transported into *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Palatine*, and other parts of the *Turkish* Empire. Unvalued, and richer for that cause, or for concealment of their fopperies from the eyes of Christians, it is made death for any Christian to come within five miles of it. Utterly destitute of water, but what they keep in Cisterns, from one shower of rain

to another, or else brought thither with great charges, otherwise pleasantly feared, rich, and containing about 6000 Families: Every year visited with three *Caravans*, or Troops of Merchants and Pilgrims, from *India*, *Damascus*, and *Grand Cairo*, who having done their business and devotions there, go afterwards in Pilgrimage to *Medina* also, to the great enriching of both places. *Eden*, the Haven-Town to *Meccha*, from which distant about 40 miles, situate on the *Red Sea*, in a sandy foil, unwalked, and much exposed to wind and weather; but wealthy, well-built, and of great resort. *7 Zebti*, now the *Metropolis* of the Country, situate about half a days Journey from the *Red Sea*, in a large plain, between two Mountains; a Riveret of the same name passing by it: well-traded for Sugars, Spice and Fruits: the ordinary Residence of the *Turkish Beglerbeg*, by whom taken not long after *Eden*. *8 Eltor*, a Port Town of this Country, and the only Town where the Christians are full red to inhabit. *9 Aden*, on the very entrance of the *Red Sea*, near the Straights called *Babel Mandel*: supported by some to be the *Madree of Proton*, but more agreeing in situation with the famous Empory by him called *Arabia*. The fairest Town of the whole *Penninsula*, of great strength, both by Art and Nature: well-traded, and well-fortified, having a large capacious Haven, seldom without good force of Shipping, and containing to the number of six thousand persons. Once a distinct Kingdom of it self, but treacherously surprized by the *Turks*, Anno 1538. and therewith all the rest of the Country: made afterwards the Seat of a *Turkish Beglerbeg*, under whom, and him of *Zebti*, are supposed to be no fewer than 3000 *Timariots*. *10 Oran*, the Lock and Key of the Southern Ocean. *11 Thema*, or *Theman*, the same, I take it, which our later Travellers call *Zeman*, situate more within the Land: affirmed by *Benjamin the Jew*, limnamed *Tundelstis*, to be a Town of 15 miles square, but to have within the Walls thereof great quantity of Ground for Tillage. *12 Zural*, a retiring place of the *Caliph*, when they lived in this Country. *13 Her*, on the point or Promontory called *chorosman*, a Garrison not long since of the Kings of *Ormus*. *14 Muckabat*, on the Persian Gulf near the point of Land called *Cape Rozelgate*: opposite to *Surrat* in the *East-India*, and possessed by the *Portugals*, who have fortified it with a well-built Castle, for defence of their Ships and Frigots which frequent those Seas. Of no great note till the taking of *Ormus* by the *Persians*, many of the Inhabitants whereof were since settled here. Of the Affairs of this Country we shall speak anon; having first took a brief view of the Islands which belong unto it.

#### 4 The ARABICK ISLANDS.

THE ISLANDS which lie round about the Shores of *Arabia Felix*, and have been anciently accounted as parts thereof, are dispersed either in the *1 Red Sea*, *2 Southern Sea*, or, *3* the Gulf of *Perfia*.

1. The *RED-SEA* (called also by the Ancients *Sinus Arabicus*, and now *Golfo di Mecca*) is that part or branch of the Southern Ocean, which interpose it self betwixt *Ægypt* on the West; *Arabia Felix*, and some parts of *Petrea*, on the East; the North-East bound of it touching upon *Idumæa*, or the Coast of *Edom*. Extended in length from the Town of *Suez*, anciently called *Asyne*, in the bottom of it, to the Straights of *Babel-Mandel*, where it openeth into the Southern Ocean, for the space of one thousand and four hundred miles: in breadth, for the most part, but one hundred, but in

some places almost two; the Straights themselves not being above a mile and an half, anciently chained by the Kings of *Ægypt*, as is said by *Strabo*; but now left open by the *Turks*, who is Lord hereof. A violent and inquiet Sea, full of Sands and Shelves; inasmuch as they who pass in and out, are fain to make use of Pilots which dwell thereabouts, and are experienced in the channel. Sufficiently famous in all times and Stories, for the miraculous passage of the Children of *Israel*, and the drowning *Pharaoh* King of *Ægypt*.

It took the name of the *Red Sea*, as some conceived, from the redness of the Sands; as others have delivered, from the redness of the Waters: but latter observations have discovered the weakness and absurdity of these *Etymologies*; the Sea and Sands being coloured heres in other places. By the *Grecians* it was called *Erythræum*, which in that Tongue signifieth *Red* also, not from the colour either of the Sands or Waters; but from one *Erythræus*, supposed to be the Son of *Perfus* and *Adinmeda*, who commanded the Eastern Shores thereof. And these come nearer to the mark than the others did. For the truth is, it was originally called the Sea of *Edom*, because it took beginning on the Coasts of that Country: which word in the *Hebrew* signifying *Red*, as appeareth *Gen. 25.30*. first given as a nick-name to *Esfau*, and from him afterwards to *Mount Seir*, or the Land of *Edom*, *Gen. 26.31*. was by the *Greeks* rendered *Erythræum*; and *Mare Rubrum* by the *Latins*. Whence the name of the *Red Sea* became known to all, but the rest of the name to few.

Of the great trafficque which was anciently driven up this Sea, we shall speak hereafter, when we are in *Ægypt*, on the other side of it. Look we now on the Islands which belong to *Arabia*, as they all generally do known in the times of *Pliny* by the names of *1 Adani*, *2 Ani*, *3 Ari*, *4 Cardamum*, *5 Comolus*, *6 Damannum*, *7 Elitracum*, or the *Isle of Hawks*, *8 Malaita*, *9 Polybit*, *10 Socotris*, *11 Timogentia*, and *12 Zylana*. But by what names now called, and of what note it is, is a thing so doubtful, that I dare not offer a conjecture. Late Travellers report almost all of them to be small, desolate, or but meanly inhabited, described by them under other names. One there is of indifferent largeness, said to be an hundred twenty and five miles long, though but twelve broad, called *Dalapa*; with a City in it of that name, where they gather Pearls, &c. Then there is *Camaran*, most extremely hot, of most note for the many spoils there made by the *Portugals*. *3 Xama*, the Earth whereof is said to be *Red* (perhaps to countenance the vulgar Tradition, of calling this the *Red Sea* from the colour of the Sands or Shores) and the King a *Moor*. *4 The Samarian Island*, spoken of by *Strabo*, inhabited by a remainder of that people, who as soon as they saw any Stranger land upon their Coasts, would most religiously desire him not to touch them. Such other Islands as lie upon the opposite Shores, and seem to appertain unto *Æthiopia*, shall find their place in our Description of the *Æthiopian* Islands.

II. The *SOUTHERN OCEAN*, comprehendeth that vast body of Waters, which from the Eastern Banks of both *Æthiopia's*, coast along on the South of *Arabia Felix*, and do directly Eastward, to the furthest *India*: in this regard called by some Writers *Oceanus Indicus*; by others *Mare Australe*, from the situation; and by some also *Mare Rubrum*, or the *Red-Sea*, from *Erythræus* a great King (as they suppose) reigning herabouts, and giving name not only to the *Red-Sea* (or Gulf of *Arabia*) strictly and specially so called, but to all the Sea-coasts also, from the opening of the Bay of *Arabia*, to the Coasts of *India*, by them called *Mare Erythræum*. In

In this vast Ocean *Pliny* placeth many Islands which belong to *Arabia*, but of little note, viz. two Ilands by the name of *Insula Agaboclis*. 2 Three more by the name of *Cocconis*; 3 *Dyscoris*, by *Pliny* called *Dyscoris*, with a City of the same name in it. 4 Seven others in the Bay called *Sinus Saccharis*, by the name of *Zenith*. 5 *Organa*, by *Strabo* called *Tyrinna*, memorable for the Sepulchre of *Erythræus* before-mentioned, being a great Hill planted with Trees. 6 *Serapias*, by *Alexandrus Aristarchus* called *Targana*, famed for a Temple of *Serapis*, the *Ægyptian* Idol. None of them now of any credit, nor formerly of any great note, the two last excepted.

III. On the East-side of *Arabia Felix*, betwixt it and *Perfia*, lieth another large Arm of the Southern Ocean, anciently called *Sinus Persicus*, or the Bay of *Perfia*, now *Golfo di Elkatifis*. A turbulent and unruly Sea, the Southern Ocean breaking in at the one end, and the River *Euphrates* at the other: the continual combating or clashing of which two great waters, make it so unquiet. *Pliny* placeth in this Bay (but as parts or members of *Arabia*) 1 *Tylar*, which *Arianus* sets at the mouth of *Euphrates*. *Solimus* in the Indian Seas, affirming it to be well stored with Vines and Olives: another of this name being placed by *Theophrastus* in the Bay of *Arabia* (but probably the place mistaken) affording good Materials for Shipping. 2 *Alphana*. 3 *Thana*. 4 *Ichna*; of which nothing memorable. To these late Travellers have adjoined two others, if not time of the former under these new names, that is to say, *5 Boyen*, and *6 Gausfar*, where they take the best fishes in the world, in beds of Oysters. Other Islands of this Bay (if any) belong to *Perfia*; where, if occasion require, we shall speak more of them.

To return therefore to the main Land of *Arabia Felix*, the first Inhabitants thereof were the Sons of *Chus*, and the Families which they brought with them. Their memories preserved in the names of some of the chief Towns and Nations, till the days of *Pliny*, *Pliny*, and some other of the ancient Writers. Divided afterwards into the several Tribes or Septs of the *Cassianite*, *Cinadopolite*, *Homertine*, *Adamite*, *Elasari*, *Sachalite*, *Anarite*, *Gerei*, *Egei*, *Salei*, *Mineis*, *Leontis*, *Cattabani*, *Abnari*, and divers others: each governed separately and partly by their several Chiefs; whom they honoured, as in other places, with the name of Kings. One of which spoken of by *Justinus*, named *Hierotimus*, is said to be the Father of 500 Children. Easie to have been overcome, because so divided, if any potent Neighbour had attempted the Conquest of them: as it is wondrous strange they did not, considering the richness of the Country, and the many temptations which they had to invite them to it. More worthily deserving the name of *Philis*, in that never conquered, than in all the other Rarities and Delights thereof. By *Alexander* once deluged for the Sea of his Empire, who probably had endeavoured the Conquest of it, having finished his War against the *Persians*, had he not died in *Babylon* at his coming back. Nor did the *Romans* ever extend their Empire beyond *Petrea*, though once *Augustus* did attempt it; employing for that Action *Largus*, his Lieutenant in *Ægypt*: one *Sames* being then King of those parts which lay nearest to him. The *Romans* at their first entry found no resistance: but when by the extraordinary heat of the air, and drinking salt waters, they began to grow sickly and diseased, the *Arabians* fell lustily upon them, and made them return back both with loss and shame. After this nothing done by the *Romans*, to disturb their quiet; nor much done by the Christians, to advance their glories: the whole divided

into almost as many Religions, as Principalities and Estates. Most of them Gentiles, but circumscribed, as the *Ismaelites*, and other *Arabians* had been of old; many Jews intermingled with them, and some store of Christians, and but these divided also into Sects and Factions. In this state it stood, when *Mahomet* first began to broach his blasphemous doctrine. By birth of *Tajriban*, an obscure Village then not far from *Medina*: his Father called *Abdalla*, an Idolatrous Pagan; his Mother named *Hemina*, as perverted a Jewess. Deprived of both his Parents when but two years old, he was left unto the care of an Uncle: who not able to give him education, nor willing to be at the charge to keep him longer, sold him at sixteen years of age to the *Ismaelites*: by whom exposed to sale in the open Markets, he was bought by one *Abdalmutalif*, a wealthy Merchant. By him employed at first in Drudgery and servile Offices, till noting his great wit, and fitnes for better Services, he at last taught him as his Factor: sending him with his Camels and Loads of Merchandise into *Syria*, *Perfia*, *Ægypt*, and other places, wherein he did behave himself with such dexterity, that he much encreased his Master's wealth, and his own estimation. Of person he is said to be low, and withal flat-headed; but otherwise comely to the eye, and of good aspect. Much troubled with the Falling Sickness, which infirmity he made good use of afterwards affirming that those Fits were nothing but heavenly Raptures, in which he did converse with the Angel *Gabriel*. He is said to have been also well skilled in Magick, by which he taught a white Pidgeon to feed at his ear, which he gave out to be the H. Ghost, by whom he was instructed in the Law which he was to publish: but this not till afterwards. By *Socrates*, comeliness of person, and the great knowledge which he had in his Master's business, he gained so far on the Affections of his Mistress, that on the death of *Abdalmutalif*, she made him her Husband. Possessed of all his Master's Wealth, he affected ease: and being till then of no Religion, or at best a Pagan; he began to hearken unto *Sergius*, a *Nestorian* Monk: who flying out of *Syria* for fear of punishment (the Heretics of *Nestorius* being newly both revived and censured) came into *Arabia*, where he found entertainment in the House of *Abdalmutalif*, the Master of *Mahomet*. By his persuasions, who found him a fit Instrument for the Devil to work on, he began to entertain the thoughts of hammering out a New Religion, which might unite all Parties in some common Principles, and bring the *Christians*, *Jews*, and *Gentiles* (into which the World was then divided) under one Profession. Resolved on this, he retired himself unto a Cave not far from *Meccha*, as if he there attended nothing but Meditations: *Sergius* in the mean time sounding in the ears of the People, both his Parts and Piety. The People being thus prepared to behold the *Poegant*, out comes the principal Actor with some parts of his *Alcoran* (pleasing enough to sensual minds) which he professed to have received from the Angel *Gabriel*. And finding that this edited to his expectation, he next proclaimed Liberty to all Slaves and Servants, as a thing commanded him by God, by whom the Natural Liberty of Mankind was most dearly tenderd: which drew unto him such a rabble of unruly people, that without fear or opposition, he dispersed his Doctrines, reducing them at last to a Book or Method.

The Book of this Religion he calleth the *Alcoran*, that is to say, the Collection of Precepts: the Original whereof they feign to be written on a Table which is kept in Heaven, and the Copy of it brought to *Mahomet* by the Angel *Gabriel*. A Book so highly revered by the *Mahometans*, that they write upon the Cover



of it, *Let none touch this but he that is clean.* The body of it (as it now standeth) was composed by *Ofman* the fourth *Caliph*, who seeing the *Saracens* daily enclining to divers Heresies by reason of some false Copies of *Mahomet's* Law, and that the Empire by the same means was likely to fall into civil diffention; & by the help of his Wife, who was *Mahomet's* Daughter, he got a list of all *Mahomet's* Papers, which he reduced into four Volumes, and divided into one hundred twenty and four Chapters; commanding expressly upon pain of death, That that Book, and that only, should be received as Canonical through his Dominion. The whole body of it is but an Expolition and Gloſs on the eight Commandments.

1 Every one ought to believe that God is a great God, and one only God, and *Mahomet* is his Prophet. They hold *Abraham* to be the Friend of God; *Meyer* the Messenger of God; and *Chriſt*, the Breath of God: whom they deny to be conceived by the Holy Ghost, affirming that the Virgin *Mary* grew with child of him by ſmelling to a Rose, and was delivered of him at her Breasts. They deny the Mystery of the Trinity; but punish ſuch as ſpeak againſt *Chriſt*, whole Religion was not (ſay they) taken away, but mended by *Mahomet*. And he who in his Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, doth not, coming or going, viſit the Sepulchre of *Chriſt*, is reputed not to have merited, or bettered himſelf any thing by his Journey.

2 Every man muſt marry, to encreaſe the Soldiers of *Mahomet*. Four Wives he alloweth to every man, and as many Concubines as he will; between whom the Husband ſetteth no difference, either in affection or Apparel; but that his Wives only can enjoy his Sabbath Benevolence. The Women are not admitted in the time of their lives to come into their Churches: nor after death, to Paraſide: And whereas in moſt or all other Countries, Fathers give ſome Portions with their Daughters, the *Mahometans* give money for their Wives, which being once paid, the Contraſt is regiſtered in the *cadie's* Books; and this iſall their formality of Marriage. More of this Theme we ſhall ſpeak hereafter, when we are in *TURCOMANIA*, and among the *Turks*.

3 Every one muſt give of his wealth to the Poor. Hence you ſhall have ſome buy Slaves, and then manumit them; buy Birds, and then let them fly. They uſe commonly to free Priſoners, releaſe Bond-slaves, build Caves or Lodgings in the ways for the relief of Paſſengers, repair Bridges, and mend High-ways. But their moſt ordinary Almsconſtit in Sacrifices of Sheep or Oxen, which, when the Solemnity is performed, they diſtribute among the poor; to whom alſo, on the firſt day of every year, they are bound to give the Tithes or tenth part of their Gettings in the year foregoing: inſomuch that you ſhall hardly find any Beggars amongſt them.

4 Every one muſt make his Prayers five times a day. When they pray, they turn their bodies towards *Mecca*, but their faces ſometimes one way, ſometimes another way, believing that *Mahomet* ſhall come behind them, being at their devotions. The firſt time is an hour before Sun-ſetting, the ſecond, at noon-day; the third, at three of the clock after-noon; the fourth, at Sun-ſetting; the fifth and laſt before they go to ſleep. At all theſe times the Cryers kept a bawling in the Steeples (for the *Turks* and *Saracens* have no Bells) for the people to come to Church. And ſuch as cannot come, muſt when they hear the voice of the Cryers, fall down in the place where they are, do their devotions, and kiſs the ground three times.

5 Every one muſt keep a Lent one month in a year. This Lent is called *Ramazan*, in which they ſuppoſe the *Alcoran* was given unto *Mahomet* by the Angel *Gabriel*. This Faſt is only intended in the day time, the Law gi-

ving leave to frolick it in the night as they beſt pleaſe; for they abſtain from Wine and Swines fleſh prohibited in their Law at all times, but never ſo punctually abſtained from, as in the time of their Lent.

6 Be obedient to thy Parents. Which Law is the moſt neglected of any in all the *Alcoran*, never any Children being ſo unnatural as the *Turkiſh*.

7 Thou ſhalt not kill. And this they keep inviolate amongſt themſelves; but the poor Chriſtians are ſetured to feel the ſmart of their fury. And as if by this Law the actual ſhedding of blood only were prohibited, they have invented puniſhments for their Offenders, more than death it ſelf. As firſt, the Strappado, which is hanging of them by the Arms drawn backwards; when they are ſo bound, they are drawn up on high, and let down again with a violent ſwing, which joyntureth all their back and Arms. Secondly, They uſe to hoſtup their heels, and with a great Cudgel to give them three or four hundred blows on the ſoles of their feet. Thirdly, It is ordinary to draw them naked up to the top of a Gibbet or Tower, full of hooks, and cutting the Rope, to let them fall down again; and by the way they are caught by ſome of the hooks, where they commonly hang till they die for hunger.

8 Do unto others as thou wouldeſt be done unto thyſelf. To thoſe that keep theſe Laws he promiſeth Paraſide, a place of all Delights, adorned with flowery Fields, watered with Chryſtalline Rivers, beautified with Trees of Gold, under whole cool ſhade they ſhall ſpend their time with amorous Virgins, whole Mantion ſhall ſtand far diſtant. The men ſhall never exceed the age of fifty, nor the women of fifteen; and thoſe to have their Virginities renewed, as ſoft as loſt.

Friday he ordained to be the Sabbath-day, partly to diſtinguiſh his Followers from the *Jews* and *Chriſtians*, who ſolemnize the days enſuing; but principally, becauſe he was on that day proclaimed King or Emperour, and ſolemnly ſo created. Wine and Swines fleſh are the principal things forbidden by the *Alcoran*: from theſe whercof they all unaniouſly refrain; but on theſe they are ſo ſetted, that when they come at it, they ſeldom go home again unſed; inſomuch that all the Wines in *Conſtantinople* have been thrown about the Streets, and death made the penalty for any that will preſume to bring any more into the City. *Mahomet* taught them, That every one ſhould be ſaved by his own Religion, him only excepted, that revolted from the *Alcoran* unto another Law; but ſo, that under the notion of Religion, he means only ſuch as worſhip the one and only God, excluding by that means the old Idolaters of the Gentiles from the hopes of Salvation. And he taught too, That at the end of the World, all men that profeſſed any ſuch Religion ſhould go into Paraſide; the *Jews* under the Banner of *Muſes*, the *Chriſtians* under the Banner of *Chriſt*, and the *Saracens* under the Banner of *Mahomet*. They compel no men therefore to abjure the Faith in which he was born, but commend and approve ſeriously ſuch as find zealous and conſtant in their own Religion; yet holding it an eſpecial honour to have daily new Proſelytes, they incite them by hope of freedom and preferment, which with many are motives too much prevailing. Hence I have heard many ſay, That it is better for a man that would enjoy Liberty of Conſcience, to live in the Countries profeſſing *Mahometaniſm* than Papiſtry: for in the one he ſhall never be ſee from the bloody Inquiſition; in the other he is never moleſted, if he middle not with their Law, their women, or their Slaves.

The Opinions which they hold concerning the end of the World, are very ridiculous; as that at the winding

of a Horn, not all fleſh only, but the *Angels* themſelves ſhall die; that the Earth with an Earthquake ſhall be ſhaken together like a lump of dough; that a ſecond blot of the ſame Horn, ſhall after forty days reſtore all again; that *Cain* ſhall be the Captain or Ringleader of the damned, who ſhall have the countenance of dogs and ſwine; that they ſhall paſs over the bridge of Juſtice, laden with their ſins in ſatchels; that the great finners ſhall fall into hell; the leſſer into Purgatory only; with a thouſand like ſuppoſes: which it is needleſs to add here, conſidering that the *Alcoran* it ſelf is now extant in *Engliſh*, and every one that liſts may read it. A thing fo full of *Taniſties*, incoherence, and ſuch groſs abſurdities, of ſo impure and carnal mixture, that he muſt lay aſide the uſe of his natural reaſon, who is taken by it, if force, ambition, or the want of Chriſtian education do not lead him on. For if we ſeriously look into the cauſes of the deplorable increaſe and long continuance of this Religion, we ſhall find them to be chiefly theſe, 1 The greatness of the Victories gotten by the *Saracens*, who ally compelled the conquered Nations to receive their Law. 2 The great zeal and diligence of the *Arabians* themſelves, who being a numerous people, and much given to Merchandize, have poſſeſſed themſelves of all the Sea-Coaſts of *Africa*, from the ſtreights of *Babel Mandel*, almoſt as far as to the Cape of Good Hope; of all the Iſlands in thoſe Seas, and many *Factories* and good Towns on the Coaſts of *India*: in all which they have ſet their Religion alſo, as a thing inſeparable from their Nation. 3 A peremptory restraint of all diſputation in any point of Religion whatſoever it be. 4 The ſuppreſſing of Philoſophy, and the ſtudy of Humane Sciences; the light whercof might eaſily detect the groſſeneſs of their Superſtitions. 5 The ſenſual liberty allowed of having variety of Wives, and as many Concubines as they are able to keep. 6 The promiſe of the like ſenſual pleaſures in the other world, with which a ſenſe not illuminated with the Spirit of God, doth for the moſt part ſeem to be more affected, than with the ſpeculative hope of ſpiritual happineſs. 7 The forbidding of Printing and printed Books, by which the people might come to ſee the verity and purity of the Chriſtian Faith; the falſhood and impurity of the Law of *Mahomet*. Theſe laſt not without at leaſt not able to induce belief; if the firſt had not opened and prepared the way.

For indeed force of Arms was the ſtrongest Argument by which *Mahomet* himſelf confirmed, and his Succeſſors in their times have ſince propagated and diſperſed his Doctrine. Strengthened by the report of that *raſal Rabb*, which repaired to him, he aſſaults *Medina*, pretending a quarrel to the *Jews*, who had there a Synagogue, Repulſed at firſt with loſs of men, and a wound in his face, by which ſome of his fore-teeth were beaten out; there likely to have made an end of his new Religion, if not recovered by his Soldiers for a further miſchief. At the next ſort he prevailed, the Battle being fought near a place called *Beder*, ſituate betwixt *Mecca* and *Medina*, frequently mentioned in the *Alcoran*. After which fight he took the City, converting the Synagogue to a Temple for his own impieties: the news whercof ſo ſtartled the *Phylarche*, or Nobility of *Mecca*, that they armed all their Powers againſt him, and ſped ſo well in the beginning of the War, that they drove him forcibly from their Territories; which not long after he ſubdued, and ſet his chief ſeat at *Mecca*. From that his flight, the *Saracens* began their Computation of years (as we from *CHRIST'S* Nativity) which they call the *Hegira*; which beſt beſt beginneth about the year of our Redemption 617. Concerning which time, I cannot but obſerve, that *Mahomet* compelled his devil'iſh Doctrine, beginning his

Empire; and *Boniſace* the third aſſumed his *Antichriſtian* title, beginning his unlimited Supremacy night about the ſame year. It was called the *Hegira*, from the *Arabick* *Hegirathi*, which by the Learned in that Tongue, is rendered by *Diarye*, *ſay* *the* *ſpace*, i. e. the perſecution raiſed about Religion. *Joſeph Scaliger* in the firſt Edition of his moſt glorious work *De emendatione temporum*, caſteth off this *Etymology* with *purum putum mendacium*. He will not have it called *Bra fige* or perſecution, but *Bra Hagarene*; becauſe ſoforth the *Arabians* were by ſome called *Hagarens*. I believe it would have puzzled *Joſeph*, with all his reading, to ſhew unto us any *Epoche* or *Bra*, which is taken from the name of a Nation. And therefore other reaſon he giveth us none but this; *Nos autem ſcimus vocem illam primogeniam ſignificatione ab Hagarens non a fuga duci*. But time and oppoſitions at the laſt reclaimed him from this Error; and in the ſecond Edition of his Work, he is content to follow the common opinion of thoſe men, whom in the firſt he whiſtled off with the infamous appellation of *mendaces*.

But to proceed, It hapned much about this time, that the *Saracens* revolting from *Heraclius* the Eaſtern Emperour, joyned themſelves unto him. They had long been diſpleaſed with their condition and now hoped to mend it. Exasperated by *Julian* the *Apollate*, when they ſerved in his Wars againſt the *Perſians*, for telling them when they demanded their pay, that he had more ſtore of Steel than Gold; but then they wanted a fit head to reſort unto. Now ſerving *Heraclius* in the ſame War, they were uſed by his Officers in the ſame ill manner. Asking their pay, the *Treafurer* of the Army made them this churliſh answer, that there was ſcarce money enough to pay the Roman and Grecian Soldiers; and muſt thoſe Dogs be ſo importunate for their Wages? Provoked herewith, and hearing the ſame of *Mahomet*, they betook themſelves to him: who ſtrengthened by their Forces, and the coming in of the reſt of their Country-men ſoon brought the three *Arabians* under his ſubjection. To which, having defeated the Emperours Forces ſent againſt him, he added ſome parts of *Syria* and *Aegypt*; and returning to *Mecca*, there died frantick and diſtemper'd, in the ſeventieth year of his Age, and three and twentieth of his Impiunities: of which he had ſpent thirteen at *Medina*, and the reſt at *Mecca*. His dead body being kept four days in expectation of a Reſurrection, which he promiſed to perform at the end of three; grown full of ſtench and putrefaction, was carried to *Medina*, and there interred: his Succeſſors out of wicked and worldly policy, keeping up the reputation of that Religion after his deceaſe, which they deſired in his life; and calling themſelves *Caliphs*, and *Vicars* General, to him, their Prophet, to the Catalogue of which we haſten; made intricate, not more by their own conſuſions, than by the difference of thoſe names by which they are preferred to us by ſeveral Writers; according to the times and Languages in which they writ.

The *Caliphs* or Emperours of the *Saracens*.

A. C. A. H.

- |     |    |   |   |
|-----|----|---|---|
| 622 | 15 | 1 | <i>Mahomet</i> the Impoſtor, of whom before.  |
| 632 | 15 | 2 | <i>Ebnabazar</i> , or <i>Oquebar</i> , <i>Mahomet's</i> Father in-law, and one of his Great Captains, ſupplanted <i>Ali</i> , to whom the Empire was deſigned by the will of <i>Mahomet</i> ; and took unto himſelf the name of <i>Caliph</i> . |
| 634 | 17 | 3 | <i>Haſmar</i> , the ſecond of <i>Mahomet's</i> Great Captains, having the Command of the Army under <i>Ebnabazar</i> , ſucceeded him in the Eſtate; and added to it <i>Perſia</i> , <i>Aegypt</i> .   |

- 947 30 *Egypt, Palestine*, with great part of *Syria* and *Mesopotamia*. 12.
- 657 40 *Olman*, the third of *Mahomet's* Great Captains, Husband of *Zeneb*, his second Daughter; succeeded under that pretence, and added all *Babry* to his Empire. Distressed by the faction of *Hali*, and beleagued in his own house, he flew himself in the eighty seventh year of his Age, and the tenth of his Reign.
- 660 43 *Hali*, the Kinsman and next heir of *Mahomet*, and the Husband of *Fatime* his eldest Daughter, succeeded on the death of *Olman*: murdered by the procurement of *Muhavia*, near *Cusa*, in *Arabia Felix*.
- 681 64 *Muhavia*, having murdered *Hali*, his Son *Hafem*, or *Ofsan*, and eleven of the Sons of that *Hafem*, the twelfth only escaping with life (from whom descended the Family of the *Alavei*, and the *Persian Sophies*) assumed the Government as rightful-Successor to *Olman*, whose Widow, the daughter of *Mahomet*, he had took to wife. He conquered *Rhodes*, *Cyprus*, and a great part of *Asia Minor*, and was the Founder of the Family of *Aben Humeya*.
- 685 68 *Gizid*, the Son of *Mahomet*, more skilled in Poetry than in Arms.
- 707 90 *Habdalla* and *Marwan*, Competitors for the Supreme Dignity; but carried at last by *Marwan*.
- 716 99 *Abimelech*, the Son of *Marwan*, established the begun Conquests of *Armenia*, and *Mesopotamia*. 22.
- 719 102 *Ulidor Ulit*, under whom the *Saracens* or *Moors* first conquered *Spain*. 9.
- 721 104 *Zulcinus*, Brother to *Ulit*, whose Captain *Muljamus* besieged *Constantinople*, till his Ships were burnt, and his Men consumed with the Plague. 3.
- 725 107 *Humar*, or *Haumar* II. Son of *Ulidor Ulit*. 2.
- 743 125 *Isid*, or *Gizid* II. the brother of *Hammar*, with whom during his life he was joynt Caliph, and after his decease enjoyed it wholly to himself.
- 744 126 *Evelid*, by some called *Ischam*, in whose time *Charls Martel* made such havock of the *Moors* in *France*, Anno 734, their General then named *Abderamen*. 18.
- 745 127 *Gizid* III. the son of *Gizid* the second.
- 752 134 *Hyeer*, by some called *Ibrahim*, the brother of *Gizid* the third, slain by *Marwan*.
- 756 138 *Marwan* II. the last of the house of *Ben-humeya*, slain by *Abdalla*, of the house of *Fatime* and *Hali*.
- 777 156 *Abdalla*, of the house of *Alaveci*, or *Alabeci*, descended from *Hali* and *Fatime*, the eldest daughter of *Mahomet*; called also the Family of *Abas*, because of their descent from *Abas* the Uncle of *Mahomet*, and perhaps Father unto *Hali*.
- 20 *Mahomet* II, surnamed *Bugiafer*, or *Abugefer*, who built the City of *Bagdet*, made from that time the constant seat of his Successors till their fatal period.
- 21 *Mahadi*. 9.

- 286 168 22 *Mufa*, or *Moyse*. 1.
- 287 169 23 *Aron*, or *Arachid*, who compelled *Isra*. Empress of *Constantinople*, to pay him tribute. 23.
- 280 193 24 *Mahamad*, or *Mahomet* III.
- 285 198 25 *Abdalla* III. who took and spoiled *Creta*, and overthrew the *Greeks*; he also spoiled *Sicilia*, *Sardinia*, and *Corfica*. 17.
- 282 215 26 *Mahomet* IV. wasted *Italy*, burnt the Suburbs of *Rome*, and harassed the forenamed Islands. 40.

Others reckon these *Caliphs* to have succeeded *Mahomet* the second.

- 285 198 25 *Mamon*. 12.
- 287 210 26 *Mareizam*. 8.
- 285 218 27 *Wack*. 4.
- 289 222 28 *Methual*. 12.
- 291 234 29 *Montacer*. 1.
- 292 352 30 *Abul Hamet*. 6.
- 298 241 31 *Almazet*. 4.
- 293 245 39 *Motadi Bala*. 7.
- After whose death, the *Egyptians* withdrew themselves from their obedience due to the *Babylonian Caliph*, and chose one of their own, to whom all the *Arabians*, and those of the *Mahometan* Religion, in *Africa* and *Europe*, submitted themselves. Of the *Egyptian Caliphs*, when we come into that Country. Take now with you the names only of the *Syrian* and *Babylonian Caliphs*; for story of them I find little or none, the power being totally in the hands of the *Sultans* of the several Provinces, and nothing left unto the *Caliphs* but an airy title, the shadow of that mighty Tree, which formerly had spread itself over most part of the World.

The *Babylonian Caliphs* after the division.

- A.C. A.H.
- 280 251 1 *Mutemab*. 21.
- 281 273 2 *Mutezad*. 8.
- 287 281 3 *Muebiaphi*. 8.
- 297 389 4 *Muechder*. 24.
- 301 313 5 *Elkaber*. 1.
- 302 314 6 *Ratze*. 7.
- 309 321 7 *Mulade*. 4.
- 343 325 8 *Musteraphe*. 2.
- 347 324 9 *Macia*, and *Taia*. 44.
- 359 361 10 *Kadar*. 41.
- 1030 412 11 *Kaim*. 5.
- 1035 417 12 *Muladi*. 60.
- 1095 477 13 *Mustetaher*. 22.
- 1117 499 14 *Mustafschad*. 18.
- 1135 517 15 *Roschied*. 25.
- 1160 542 16 *Mustenege*. 9.
- 1169 551 17 *Mistazi*. 10.
- 1179 561 18 *Narzi*. 39.
- 1218 597 19 *Taber*.
- 20 *Mustenatar*.
- 1255 638 21 *Mustatzen*, the last *Caliph*, of High Priest of the *Saracens* of *Bagdet*, or *Babylon*, living in the account of a Prince or Emperor; looked on as the Supreme Lord of the *Saracen* Empire; starved in his Castle of *Bagdet*, and his whole posterity starved in his Castle of *Bagdet*, and his whole posterity starved in his reign. Yet there is still remaining a carcass of year of his reign. Yet there is still remaining a carcass of the old body, one whom they call *Caliph*, whose hands and the neighbour Princes use to receive their *Diadems* and Regalities; for so we find that *Solyman the magnificent*, after his conquest of *Chaldea*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Assyria*, 10.

to have been by one of these poor titular *Caliphs*, Crowned King of *Babylon*, Anno 1513.

This unwieldy body of the *Saracen* Empire, having thus two heads, began apparently to decline: losing to the Kings of *Oradea* and *Nawarre*, a great part of *Spain*; to the *Kings of Sardinia*, and *Corfica*; to the *Norman*, *Naples*, and *Sicily*; and finally most of their Empire, with their very names, to the *Turks* and *Tartars*. For *Allan*, or *Haslon*, a *Tartarian* Captain, starved *Mutstazem* the *Babylonian Caliph*, in his Tower of *Bagdet*, and rooted out all his Posterity, (as before was said;) and *Saracen* the first King of *Egypt*, brained the last *Egyptian Caliph* with his Horsemen's Maces; leaving not one of Issue or Kindred surviving. The office of the *Caliphs* (as to matters which concern their irreligion, and the supreme determination of the doubts and controversies which occur therein) being now executed in the *Turk* Dominion, by the *Misly*, or Chief Priest of the *Turk* *Mahometans*.

As *Mars* shewed himself a friend unto those *Saracens*, in their wars and triumphs; so also did *Phabus* pour down no less Celestial influence, on such as addicted themselves to Scholarship. *Bagdes* in *Chaldea*, *Cairoan*, *Fes*, *Marocco*, in *Barbary*; and *Corduba* in *Spain*, were their Universities: out of which came the Philosophers, Astronomers, and Astronomers; the Physicians, Rhetors, and Mathematicians; the Geographers, and almost all the Textuaries and profound Writers, (as *Hali*, *Algazel*, *Alhamazari*, &c.) in *Astrology*, from a great part of our *Astronomical* and *Astrological* terms are borrowed.

There is now no Kingdom, Island, or Province which acknowledged the Empire of the *Saracens*, but the Kingdom of *Fes* and *Marocco* only: *Arabia* it self, the very first seat of their power, acknowledging a subjection to the *Turk* Empire. For first *Petra*, and *Deserta*, being subdued by the *Turks*, when they conquered *Persia*, or otherwise following the fortunes of the present Victor, were afterwards accounted of as subject unto the *Mahometans* of *Egypt*, who out of that Country and all *Syria*, had by degrees disseized the *Selzucetan* Family. And as the Vassals of that Crown, though but Subjects at will, they more molested *Selimus* in his march towards *Egypt*, by falling on his Rear, and terrifying him

with their night-Alarms, than all the Forces of the *Mahometans* in the field against him. But *Egypt* being subdued, and the *Mahometans* utterly destroyed, some of their Chiefs being gained by money, and thereby by promise of preferment; the whole Nation of these wild *Arabs* swore allegiance to him: continuing in account as subject unto his Successors, but in effect doing what they list; governed as formerly by the Chiefs of their several Clanners, and in their Robberies taking no more notice of the *Turks* than they do of the *Christians*. And as for *Felix*, it continued also in a free condition, in respect of any forcible power; till of late times the *Turks* and *Portugals* entrenched upon them. For in the year 1538. *Solyman Bassa*, Admiral of the *Turkish* Fleet against the *Portugals*, who had diverted the trade of the *Red Sea*, and otherwise given offence to *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, by aiding the *Persians*, went with a strong Army to take *Diu*, a Town and Island of *East India*, then in their possession. But being unable to effect it, at his coming back he called in at *Aden*, one of the best traded Ports of *Arabia Felix*, invited the King thereof aboard, most treacherously hanged him, and surprized the City. The like he also did to the King of *Zibur*, the Port Town to *Mecca*; and by that means got possession of all the Coasts of this Country, bordering on the *Red Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*; of which the *Turks* still continue Masters. But in the Inland parts, and towards the *Persian* Gulf, of no power at all; nor suffered to travel up and down without a *Pass*, from those of the *Arabian* Chiefs; or if they do, in danger to be set upon by the *Natives*, who brook them not. Some parts hereof which lie next unto the Isle of *Ormus*, made one Kingdom with it; but the Kings originally of this Country, by whom the City of *Ormus* was first built: and so continued till the taking of *Ormus* by the *Portugals*, Anno 1622. who since the taking of that Isle by the King of *Persia*, hold *Murshabur*, and some other pieces upon this Continent. The residue of the Country canted amongst a company of petit Princes, as in former times; before ambition taught them to devour one another.

And so much for *ARABIA*.

## 6 CHALDEA. 7 ASSYRIA. 8 MESOPOTAMIA.



Hese Provinces, which properly and originally constituted the *Assyrian* Empire, I have joyned together in the Title, because united in the Story and Affairs thereof though severally to be considered in the Description and *Chorography* of them.

### 6 CHALDEA.

*CHALDEA* is bounded on the East, with *Susiana*, a Province of *Persia*; on the West, with *Arabia Deserta*; on the North, with *Mesopotamia*; and on the South, with the *Persian Bay*, and the rest of *Deserta*. Originally called *Chasdim* from *Chesed* the fourth Son of *Nachor*, the brother of *Abraham*. *Chesed* quoad *quartus* est, à quo *Chasdim*, id est, *Chaldei* postea vocati sunt, as *Et. Hierome* hath it. But why the *Chaldeans* should derive their name from *Chesed*, being a People long before *Chesed's* birth, I am not able to determine: unless he taught them the first Principles of the Art of *Astronomy*; or was the Author of some signal benefit unto them, which we know not of. It was called afterwards *Babylonia*, from *Babylon* the chief City of it; and at this day by *Belonius*, *Asania*; by the *Arabians*, *Reldan*; by the *Turks*, *Curdistan*.

But the name of *Chaldea* sometimes went beyond those bounds, taking in some part also of *Mesopotamia* as appeareth by that passage of *St. Stephen*, saying, *Acts* 7. 2. 3. 4. That the God of glory appeared to our Father *Abraham*, when he was in *Mesopotamia*, before he dwelt in *Charran*; and said unto him, Get thee out of this Country, and from thy kindred, and come into the Land which I shall shew thee. Then he came out of the Land of the *Chaldees*, and dwelt in *Charran*, &c. Where clearly that part of *Mesopotamia*, which lay next unto *Assyria*, where then *Abraham* was, is included under the name of *Chaldea*, or the Land of the *Chaldees*. Which I desire the Reader to take notice of, because I must make use of this observation in another place.

The Country by *Herodotus* said to be so fruitful, that it yielded ordinarily two hundred, and in some places three hundred fold; the blades of Wheat and Barley being as he affirmeth four fingers broad. By *Pliny* it is said of the *Babylonians*, that they mowed their Corn twice, and feeded it a third time, or else it would be nothing but blades: and yet so, that the worst of their Land yielded fifty, and their best an hundred-fold increase. Nor is the nature of the soil so altered in long tract of time, but that (as late Travellers have observed) it would in all likelihood attain to its first fertility, if it were ordered with like care and diligence, as in former times. But what need more be said as to the natural fruitfulness and delights of this Country, than that it pleased God Almighty to make choice of some part hereof for

the Terrestrial Paradise or Garden of *Eden*, in which he placed our Father *Adam*, at his first Creation. For there that *Paradise*, by men both skilled in Divinity and Geography, is affirmed to have stood. Yet amongst all sorts of Writers we find different opinions. Some make *Paradise* to be a place of pleasure, and the four Rivers to be the four Cardinal Vertues; but these Allegories on the Scripture are unwarrantable. Others place it in the air, under the Circle of the Moon; and tell us that the four Rivers in the Scriptures mentioned, fall down from thence and running all under the Ocean, rise up again in those places where they are now found: but this is so vain a foppery, that I will not honour it with a consultation. Such as make *Paradise* local, are divided also into three ranks (for I omit the rest) whereof some place it under the *Aequator*, but this agreeth not with the bounds prescribed by the Holy Ghost. Some conceive the four Rivers to be *Tigris*, *Euphrates*, *Nilus*, and *Ganges*; and that *Paradise* was the whole world; but this cannot be: for then when *Adam* was driven out of *Paradise*, it must follow that he was driven out of the world, which were absurd. Those of the soundest judgments place it here, in an Island which is made by the Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, and some branches running from them both: the uppermost of which is called *Pison*, (falsely rendered *Ganges*) which watereth the Land of *Havilah*, or that part of the Land of *Havilah*, which is now called *Chosroan*, or *Susiana*, a Province of *Persia*; and the lowermost is named *Gibon*, (improperly by some translated *Nilus*) which compasseth the East parts of *Arabia Petrea*, by the *Septuagint* for the reasons above mentioned, rendered *Ethiopia*. And this agreeth both with the position of this Country, and the course of those Rivers. For that *Tigris* and *Euphrates* (which the Hebrew Text called *Hiddekel*, and *Perah*) do here join their streams, is confessed on all sides. Then as for *Pison*, it is no other than that River by *Ptolemy*, called *Basilus*, or *Regius*; by *Cassius* more nearly *Pisi-Tigris*, or *Pasi-Tigris*, Perenti ad fluvium, *Pasigris* incolæ vocant, as his own words are. A little stream, which watereth the Land of *Havilah*, or the Country of the *Chavelei*, or *Chavalei*, or *Chavilani*: (for by these several names they are called amongst the Ancients, who place them betwixt the *Babylonians*, and the *Nabatheans* an Arabian people) poureth it fell into the *Tigris*, and falls together with it into the Gulf of *Persia*. And finally for *Gibon*, by *Ptolemy* called *Marsus*, and by others *Marsurus*, it is no other than a branch of *Euphrates*, which watereth the Land of *Chal*, or *Ethiopia Asiatica*, take which name you will, I shew it fell at last in the Lakes of *Chaldea*.

But though in general the Country was extremely fruitful, yet in some places wasit covered with a slimy matter, which the overflowing of the waters, and the nature of the soil together, did bring forth abundantly. Used by them in their buildings, instead of Mortar, than which more

more durable and binding; and therefore chosen for the Cement of the Tower of *Babel*, *Gen.* 11. 3. Some allow it a Cliff, which opening fendeth out such a flock, that it killeth Birds as they fly over it; and others, of a like open place near a Town called *Atis*, which continually throweth out boyling Pitch (named therefore *Hell-mouth* by the *Moors*) filling therewith the adjoining Fields; and that herewith the people use to pitch their Boats. But this in some places only, the Country generally being both healthy and delightful, as before was said.

The People anciently were much addicted unto Sooth-saying and Divinations, and no less noted for being Authors of the first Idolatry that was ever practised in the World. Induced unto the latter perhaps by the Power of their Kings, who would needs confer Divine Honours upon some of their Ancestors. But to the first inclined by their own disposition, and the situation of their Country, yielding a fair sensible Horizon (for the Rational is alike in all places, both in Hills and Vallies) and consequently profitable to the observation of the six several Orb, and the full period of the courses of each several Planet. Certain it is that they grew so noted in this Art, that at the last every *Astrologer*, or *Figure-flinger*, was called a *Chaldean*. *Genis nomine ad eos venientes transiit, qui sese itus sapientia specie venditabant*, as *Besa* hath observed in his *Annotations*. For giving too much credit to them, the People thus flouted by the *Satyrs*.

*Chaldei sed major erit fiducia, quicquid Divinis Astrologis, credent a fonte relatum Ammonis, &c.*

That is to say,

*Joves* Oracles no greater credit have,

Than Sooth-sayings of a *Chaldean* cozening Knave. The Language which was spoken here, had the name of the *Chaldee*, or *Chaldean* Tongue; of great antiquity, and sanctified by the Holy Ghost, some Chapters of the Prophecy of *Daniel* being written in it. So different from the Hebrew in its primitive purity, that the *Jews* did not understand its appearance by the words of the Officers of *Hezekiah*, 2 *Kings* 18. 26. desiring *Balshazzar* to speak to them in the *Chaldee* Tongue, that the common people of the *Jews* might not hear his Blasphemies. A further proof may be, That a man may have some knowledge in the Hebrew, and yet be ignorant of the *Chaldee*; as many are, no doubt, at this present day. But whatsoever it was in its primitive purity, it altered afterwards when the *Jews* came to live amongst them, during the Captivity: out of whose long commerce with them, both Nations lost their proper Languages; and fell upon a third, made out of both, which was called the *Syriack*. Of this we spake before, when we were in *Syria* and *Palistine*. And this is now the natural Language of this Country, and its Neighbour *Assyria*; but with a little mixture of the Greek and *Arabic*: Not vulgarly spoken elsewhere, for ought I can find; but used by many others in their Sacred Offices, by whom not commonly understood. For in this Language, all the Sects of the Eastern Christians do associate their Publick Liturgies: that is to say, the *Nestorians*, *Jacobites*, *Maronites*, (for I reckon not the *Melchites*, who use the Greek Liturgic, amongst the Sectaries.) The like do also the *Indians* or Christians of *Saint Thomas*, the *Coptites* or Christians of *Aegypt*, and the poor remainder of the Chri-

tians in the life of *Zocataria*, an Island on the Coast of *Africa*. Used to those Liturgies, when the Language was more understood amongst them; though now worn out of vulgar knowledge, by the overspreading of the *Arabic*, *Tartarian*, and *Turkish* Conquests. In which the Prelates of these Churches have fallen into the great error of the Church of *Rome*; and without taking notice of the alterations, hapning in the Vulgar Tongues of those several Nations, which are united under them into one opinion, keep up a Language in their Liturgies which they understand not; as if the capacities of the People could be sooner raised to the understanding of an unknown Language, than the publick Liturgies be fitted unto their capacities. The ancient Picty of the Church and the modern Languages of God's People, are not inconsistent; though out of private ends some have taught us otherwise. But I fear this error (as some others) will not be so easily remedied, as apprehended. From the Tongue in which they celebrate the Divine Offices of their Religion, pass we to the Religion it self, whose Sacred Offices are so celebrated.

The Christian Faith was first preached in this Country by *Saint Peter*, of whose being in *Babylon* (the chief City hereof) himself assured us in the last words almost of his first Epistle; and other business he had none here, but to preach the Gospel. Much persecuted by the *Persians* (who were then possessed of all these parts) it prevailed at last; Christianity growing up the faster for the cutting down. The Patriarchal See, originally planned in *Seleucia*, successer unto *Babylon* in repute and greatness, is not also in name; the Bishop whereof, by order of the Nicene Council, had the Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction of these parts, with the name of *Catholicus*; and the next place in Session, at all publick Assemblies of the Church, next after the Patriarch of *Ephesus*. And besides this, the *Indians* or Christians of *Saint Thomas* acknowledge him for their Primate or Metropolitan; as they did afterwards in his right, the Patriarch of *Mozul*. At this present here are some remainders of Christianity, part of them *Jacobites*, but the most *Nestorians*; of whom more anon.

Of the chief Rivers hereof we have spoken already; and Mountains there are none to hinder us in our passage forwards: So that without more delay, we may take a view of their principal places. And in the first place we meet with *Babel*, in the Hebrew signifying Confusion, famous for Confusion of Languages which here happened. For immediately after the Universal Deluge, Nimrod the Son of *Cham*, the Son of *Cam*, perfwaded the People to secure themselves from the like after-claps, by building some stupendous Edifice, which might resist the fury of a second Deluge. This Council was generally embraced, Hebrew only and his Family, as tradition goeth, contradicting such an unlawful attempt. The major part prevailing, the Tower began to rear a head of Majesty, 5149 paces from the ground; having its basis and circumference equal to the height. The passage to go up, went winding about the outside, and was of art exceeding great breadths: there being not only room for Horses, Carts, and the like means of Carriage, to meet and turn; but Lodging for Men and Beasts, and, as the *Persian* reporteth, Grass and Corn fields for their nourishment. But God beholding from on high this fond attempt, sent amongst them (Tongues) which hindered the proceeding of this Building, one being not able to understand what his fellow called for.

2 *Babylon*, on the Bank of *Euphrates*, the ancientest City in the World on this side of the Flood's first built by *Nimrod*, in the place delineated to the raising of the Tower

4288 ft  
in height  
2760 ft



of their first Wives. 6 Not praying before the Cross, nor giving a religious worship to the *Crucifix*, or other Images. So much for these *Nestorian* Sectaries, if so named aright, considering the qualifications added to their opinions: now (but corruptly) called *Nestorians*: the greatest Sect of *Christians* in all the East.

The solemnities which these *Christians* use in contracting Marriage, because not very usual, I will here relate: Their wives they never see till the day of their marriage, but hearing a good report of the young Woman, negotiate with her Parents for her. Agreed upon the business, they meet in the Chancel of the Church, wherein there is a partition with an hole in it: the Bridegroom and his friends standing on the one side, the Bride and her kindred, on the other. When there the *Cassie* or Churchman biddeth the Bridegroom to put his hand thorow the hole into the Partition, and take his Bride by the hand, which he doth accordingly: the Mother of the Bride, with a sharp-pointed instrument, made of purpose pricking the Bridegrooms hand all over, with sufficient eagerness. If when he feeleth the smart, he lets go her hand, they take it for a sign that he will not love her; if he hold her fast, and wring her hand till he cry again, they take it for a very good Omen, and are glad they have so well bestowed her. After the Marriage is consummated, if a Male-child be born unto them, the Father taketh his own name, and is called by the name of his eldest Son: so as if the Fathers name be *Moses* and his sons name *Joseph*, the Father is now more called *Moses* but *Abba Joseph*, or the Father of *Joseph*. So highly do they reverence Marriage, and the fruit thereof, *Posterity*.

It was anciently divided into these six parts, 1 *Arachabitis*, bordering on *Armenia Major*; so called for *Arachabitis*, or the plantation of *Arachab*, the Son of *Sen*. 2 *Adiabene*, bordering on *Mesopotamia*, so called, *quasi Adiabene*, or inaccessible, because fenced with such unfordable Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, that there was no easy coming to it. 3 *Assyria*, *quasi Assyria*, as it is said in *Strabo*: or rather for *Adiavene*, from *Dianus* and *Adiavene*, the chief Rivers of it (the same which *Ptolemy* called *Lychnis* and *Coprus*) as in *Marcus*. 4 *Calacene*, and *Stacene* from *Sittace*, and *Calach*, two chief Cities of it; of which more anon. 5 *Arbelites*, and 6 *Apolloniates*, from *Apollonia* and *Arbela*, two other of the principal Cities.

Here then we have four of the Cities of *Assyria* brought unto our hand, 1 *Calach*, one of those four which *Nimrod* built in the Land of *Assur*, *Gen. 10. 11.* and one of them to which the Ten Tribes were transplanted by *Salmanassar*, 2 *King* 17. 6. and 18. 11. of such esteem those elder days, that *Calacene* as *Ptolemy*, or *Calachene* as *Strabo* most rightly call it, did take name from hence. 3 *Sittace*, situate about two miles from the banks of *Tigris*, in the way from *Babylon* to *Susa*. A City when it gave name to the parts adjoining, both great and populous; well seated in a fruitful Soyl, and well shaded with trees of several sorts; supported by the situation of it to be that *Aecad*, (or rather built in or near the place of it) which was one of the first four Cities of *Nimrod's* Kingdom. 4 *Arbela*, on the banks of the River *Coprus*, built as some say by *Belus* (or *Belochus*) *Prifian* an *Assyrian* King, whence it had the name. Near unto there is a place which *Strabo* calleth *Knarphogor*, or *Cnephium*, conceived by some to be the place where *Noah* framed the Ark. 4 *Apollonia*, built after the *Macedonian* conquest, as appeareth by the name, which is wholly Greek; not otherwise observable, but for giving the name of *Apolloniates* to the Country adjacent. Add unto these, 5 *Gegnamela*, situate in the middle space betwixt *Lychnis*,

and *Coprus* memorable for the last and greatest battle betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius*, the King of *Persia*, who had he made good the Eastern banks of the River *Tigris*, might easily have vindicated the *Macedonians* from coming over the River being so extremely swift and violent, that the *Macedonians* were not able to pass it, but by linking their hands and arms together, and making one entire body to oppose the Currents; and therewithal of so great depth, that the footmen were fain to hold their Bows & Arrows over their heads, to keep them from being moistened and made unserviceable. But having miserably lost this opportunity by the cowardice of *Mazeus*, who had the keeping of this Pass, he was enforced to venture all upon a Battle: drawing unto this place an Army of 50000 Horse, 200000 Foot, in their account who speak least of it (for *Arianus* makes it above a Million) opposed by *Alexander* with no more than 40000 foot, and 7000 horse of his Europeans; but those victoriously successful: 40000 of the *Persians* slain, (but *Diodorus Siculus* speaks of 90000) with the loss of 300 *Macedonian* victory, as is said by *Curtius*. In memory of which notable victory, a Mountain near the place of the Battle, was by *Alexander* called *Nicator*, known by that name to *Strabo* and some other Ancients. 6 *Rebubath*, another of the four Cities, which *Nimrod* is said to have built in *Assur*; by some supposed to be *Birbath*, an ancient City upon *Tigris*, and bordering to near unto *Mesopotamia*, that by *Ptolemy* it is placed in it. Of which more anon. 7 *Rhesina*, another of the Cities of *Nimrod's* building, feared by *Moses* betwixt *Calach* and *Nineve*, *Gen. 10. 12.* and there commended for a great City. Which Character with the site thereof, have induced some learned men to think it to be the same which is by *Xenophon* called *Larissae*, built by him on the River *Tigris*, much about this place, and said to be a City of such strength and greatness, that it was no less than two *Parasangs*, or four miles in compass: the Walls in height a hundred foot, twenty are in breadth; so strongly cemented, that *Cyrus*, who besieged it, could have never taken it, if a casual Eclipse of the Sun had not discouraged the defendants. But whether this conjecture be good or not, we have here *Larissae* for another of the principal Cities. 8 *Nineve*, by the Greeks and Latines called *Ninus*; first built by *Nimrod*, and called *Nineve* with relation unto *Ninus*, his Son or Nephew, after the example of *Cain* whose steps he followed: of whom is said, that he built a City, and called it after the name of his Son, *Enoch*, *Gen. 4. 17.* I know the building of this City is by some ascribed to *Assur*, grounding themselves on that of *Moses*, *Gen. 10. 11.* Out of that Land went forth *Assur*, and built *Nineve*, &c. But I like better of their judgment, who take *Assur* in this place for the name of the Country, and not of the man; making the Text to speak of *Nimrod*, and to say of him, *Egeffus est in Assur*, &c. that is to say, And he went forth to Assur or the Land of *Assyria*, and there built *Nineve*, *Rhebooth*, and the rest there named. A City so enlarged by some of the succeeding Kings, that it came at last to be bigger than *Babylon*, in compass 450 furlongs, or 60 miles; and therefore laid in the Book of *Judas*, to be a City of three days journey, in circuit, as indeed it was: accommodating 20 miles for a days journey, according to the common estimate of those elder times; as also of the Greeks and Romans, in the times succeeding. Nor was it of less strength than greatness, the walls an hundred foot high, and so broad that three Carts might go abreast on the top thereof: and in those walls 1500 Towers, each of 200 foot in height: So strong, that it was thought to have been impregnable especially because of an ancient Prophecy, which signified that the Town should never be taken, till the River became an enemy to it. A Prophecy which

which induced *Sardanapalus* to make it the seat of his war against *Belochus*, and *Arbaces*, then in arms against him; who having besieged it three years without hope of success, at last the River overflowing, carried before it twenty furlongs of the Wall. Which accident terminated the effeminate King, that he burnt himself in the midst of his treasures, and left the Town to the Beneficence, threatened destruction by the preaching of the Prophet *Jesabib*, escaped then upon repentance. But the people going on in their wicked courses, it was destroyed by *Alyxer* King of the *Medes*, that it might no longer be an encouragement to the *Assyrians* to rebel against him as formerly against some of his Predecessors: and so destroyed, that in the time of Saint *Cyril of Alexandria*, as himself affirmeth in his Comment on the Prophet *Nahum*, *his words* *etiam non videretur deorsum rorare*, that one could scarce discern in what place it stood. *Mosul* at this time, and for long since, the chief of *Assyria*: seated on the *Tigris*, and raised out of the ruins of *Nineve*: of most note for being the ordinary abiding place of the *Nestorian* Patriarch, who either in this City it self, or the Monastery of St. *Hermes* near adjoining to it, hath his constant residence. The *Nestorians* in this City so considerable, both in power and number, that though it be in the hands of *Mahometans*, either *Turks* or *Persians*; yet there are numbered in it fifteen *Christian Churches*, and at least 40000 Souls. A Seat so maligning by the Pope, (whom they commonly call the *Reprobate Bishop*) for the greatness of the jurisdiction which this Patriarch hath: that not contented to withdraw the *Indians* from him, (whereof more hereafter) Pope *Julius* the third, set up an *Anti-Patriarch* against him, to whom he gave the title of the *Catholic of Mosul* also; to whom the *Nestorians* dwelling in the Northern parts of *Mesopotamia*, (if some Writers of the *Papal* Party may be believed) do submit themselves, 10 *Arzeri*, of greater strength than *Mosul*, though of less antiquity than *reputetur* from which the whole Province of *Assyria*, is now called *Arzerum*. And 11 *Schibberwal*, at this time of the greatest note, as being the ordinary Residence of the *Turkish Beglerbeg* or *Begs*; who hath 10000 *Timariars*, under his command, to defend this Country, and be ready for any service, as occasion is.

### 8 MESOPOTAMIA.

MESOPOTAMIA, is bounded on the East, with the River *Tigris*, by whom parted from *Assyria*; on the West, with *Euphrates*, which divideth it from *Comagene*, a Province of *Syria*; on the North, with Mount *Taurus*, by which separated from *Armenia Major*; and on the South, with *Chaldaea*, and *Arabia Deserta*, from which last it is parted by the bendings of *Euphrates* also.

In the Scripture it is called most commonly by the name of *Padan Aram*, that is *Syria Culis*; but that name properly belongeth to the North-parts of it; *Aram* or *Syria*, because inhabited originally by the *Aramians*, whom the Greeks call *Syri*; and *Padan*, or *Culis*, from the fruitfulness and riches of it, exceedingly plentifully stored both with corn and wine, and furnished with all necessities for the life of man; in that regard by *Strabo* called *Mesopotamia Fecunda*. The Southern parts heretofore barren and full of Desarts, not having any herbage in them, *sed sine fructibus*, nor any kind of Tree, as we read in *Xenophon*: amongst some of the ancient Writers had the name of *Arabia*, partly because so like in nature to *Arabia Deserta*, and partly being planted with parts is sometimes *Syria Transfluvialis*, or *Syria beyond*

the River (*Euphrates*), of which see 2 *Sam. 10. 16.* But generally in the Hebrew it is called *Aram-Naharajim*; which the Greeks render properly by *Mesopotamia*, or the Country in the middle of Rivers: environed by *Tigris* on the East, and *Euphrates* on the West and South; the River *Chaboras*, or *Alorus*, passing also through it. The Latines generally call it by the same name which the Greeks had given it; *Prifian* join to shew his faculty in Grammar, calling it *Medama*; By the *Turks* it is now called *Diarbech*.

As is the Country, such the People, the most *Adipive* of any we have met with hitherto; able at no time to stand by themselves, but still requiring the addition of some neighbour Nation to be joyned unto them. Nothing that they can call their own, their Name, their Language, nor their Country. Beholding for their Name in the North, to *Syria*; in the South, to *Arabia*; the *Chaldeans* also putting in for a share, and challenging those parts which lie next *Assyria*, to belong to them. Their Language anciently the *Syriack*, at this day the *Arabick*, their Country successively subjected to the *Babylonians*, *Assyrians*, *Medes*, and *Persians*. From them first conquered by the *Romans*, under the conduct of *Pompey*, reduced into the form of a Province, by the Emperor *Trajan*; more fully settled and confirmed by *Aurelianus*. But being recovered by the *Persians*, they fell together into the power of the *Saracens*, and are now commanded by the *Turks*. Never appearing of themselves on the Stage of action, but when once God shewed his mighty power in their many weaknesses; and raised them up to be a Scourge to the house of *Israel*, of which see *Judges* 3. 8. Hired afterwards by *Adadnezar*, King of *Syria* *Zabab*, in his war against *David*, by whom most shamefully defeated, 2 *Sam. 10. 16*, 18. Yet notwithstanding memorable in the Book of God, for the birth of *Abraham* and *Rebecca*; the long abode of *Jacob*, and the birth of his Children, in that respect affording an Original to the Hebrew Nation.

The *Christian* faith was first preached here by St. *Thaddeus*, one of the 70 Disciples; Anno 43, upon this occasion. *Agabus* the *Toparch*, or Prince of *Edessa*, one of the chief Cities of this Country, having been long afflicted with an incurable infirmity, and hearing of the fame of *JESUS*, beseeched him by a special message to come and help him: whereunto our *Saviour* made this Answer, *That he could not visit him in person, the things he was to do, whilst upon the earth, being to be performed only in the Land of Canaan; but that he would take care of his health in convenient time.* Accordingly, not long after his Ascension, St. *Thomas* the Apostle, by immediate revelation from our Saviour, sent *Thaddeus* thither; by whom the Prince was cured, and the Gospel preached, and many of the Nation converted to it: the *Assyrians* wherewith, together with the Copies of the several Letters from *Agabus* to *CHRIST*, and from *CHRIST* to him, preserved in the Archives of *Edessa*, were by *Eusebius* translated out of the *Syriack*, and inserted into the body of his Ecclesiastical History, lib. 1. cap. 14. Once planted, it found good increase, continuing in the purity of it till about the year 530. at what time one *Jacobus Syrus* (so called from his birth and abode in *Syria*) took upon him the defence of the Errors of *Eutyches*, touching the unity of natures in *CHRIST* our Saviour. Whole followers finding the Patriarchs of *Antioch* too vigilant over them, removed for the most part further off, settling themselves in *Babylonia*, and *Mesopotamia*, where they continued in great numbers. Governed by their own Patriarch, to whom the *Jacobites* in *Syria* are also subject, who takes unto himself the Title of Patriarch of *Antioch*, and is successively called *Ignatius*, as if the undoubted





1959 4 *Semiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus* subdued the *Arabians*; but invading the *Indians* also, he was vanquished and slain by their King *Staurabates*. Of this great Lady it is said, that she was born in *Acalon*, a Town of *Syria*, and exposed to the fury of wild beasts. But being born not to die so ingloriously, she was brought up by shepherds, and at full age presented to the *Syrian* Vice-roy, who gave her in marriage to his only Son. Going with him to the wars, she fell in acquaintance with *Ninus*, who liking her person and spirit, took her to his bed. This bred in him a greater affection towards her, so that he granted her at her request, the command of the Empire for five days; making a *Decree*, that her will in all things should be punctually performed: which boon being gotten, she put on the Royal Robes, and (as some Writers do report) commanded the King to be slain. Having thus gotten the Empire, the exceedingly enlarged it, leading with her an Army consisting of one hundred thousand Chariots of war, three millions of Foot, and half a million of Horse. A woman in whom there was nothing not to be honoured or applauded, but her insatiable lust in which, if the *Greek* Writers say true (as we have no reason to believe it of so gallant a woman) she was very guilty.

- 2001 5 *Ninus* II. the Son of *Ninus* and *Semiramis*.  
 2039 6 *Arar* 30.  
 2069 7 *Arabis* 40.  
 2109 8 *Belus* II. 30.  
 2139 9 *Amamirites*.  
 2177 10 *Belochus Priscus* 35.  
 2212 11 *Belochus Jun.* called also *Baleus* 52.  
 2264 12 *Alades* 32.  
 2296 13 *Manitus* 30.  
 2356 14 *Manacles* 30.  
 2326 15 *Spherus* 20.  
 2376 16 *Manacles* II. 30.  
 2406 17 *Sparetus* 40.  
 2446 18 *Alcades* 40.  
 2486 19 *Amintes* 45.  
 2511 20 *Belochus Jun.* 45.  
 2556 21 *Billyares* 30.  
 2586 22 *Lamprides* 22.  
 2618 23 *Safares* 20.  
 2638 24 *Lamprides* 20.  
 2668 25 *Paimas* 45.  
 2713 26 *Seromas* 19.  
 2732 27 *Mitres* 27.  
 2759 28 *Tatanes* 32.  
 2791 29 *Tantes* 40.  
 2831 30 *Tinesus* 30.  
 2861 31 *Derclaus* 40.  
 2901 32 *Espales* 38.  
 2939 33 *Loastines* 45.  
 2984 34 *Pyriabides* 30.  
 3014 35 *Opratus* 20.  
 3084 36 *Opraganeus* 50.  
 3084 37 *Aclajapes* 24.  
 3126 38 *Sardanapalus*, by *Eusebius* called *Tosofceus*, the last King of this Race. Of which, being

38 in all, there is scarce any thing remaining but the very names: registered in this order by *Berosus*, or rather by *Frier Amnius* a Monk of *Viterbum* in *Tuscany*, who hath thrust upon the world, the fancies of his own brain, under the name of that ancient Historian. The chief Kings

of note after *Semiramis*, were,  
 1. *Ninus*, or *Zameis* her Son; who by his Deputies and Lieutenants subdued the *Arians*, *Balians*, and *Cassians*: but was otherwise a man of effeminate and unliking carriage. And therefore is conceived to be the elder *Bacchus*, so much celebrated amongst the *Grecians*.

2. *Belus* the second, who recovered that Country which afterwards was called *Judea*, to the *Assyrian* Empire, from which it had revolted in the time of his Predecessor, (on the defeat of *Amraphel*, one of his Lieutenants, by the Sword of *Abraham*;) and subdued many other Nations.

3. *Belochus Priscus*, the tenth King, who by some Writers is said to be the author of *Divination* by the flying of Birds, called *Auspium*. For of Sooth-saying there were in all four kinds.

1. This *Auspium*, quasi *Avispium*, taken from the flight of Birds, either on the right hand, or on the left; (and hence the Proverb cometh, *Avi finit*, good luck, because in giving, the right hand is opposite to the receivers left; or from the number of Birds, whence *Romulus* had promised to him the Empire before his Brother, because he had seen the double number of Vultures; or lastly, from the nature of them, whence the fable *Romulus*, seeing the Vultures, was (saith *Florus*) *speci plenius verum bellatricem fore, ita illi sanguini & preda afflicti ante pollicebantur*.

2. *Auspium*, ab *Aras inspicendo*, in which the Sooth-sayers observed whether the Beast to be sacrificed came to the Altars willingly, or not: whether the trails were of natural colour, exulcerate, &c. or whether any part were wanting. All Histories afford variety of examples in this kind: I need give no particular instance. A kind of *Divination* said to be practised first by the *Tuscan*, or *Hebræans*; introduced in the knowledge thereof by one called *Taget*, who appearing to certain Plough-men out of a Furrow, taught them this mystery, and so vanished.

3. *Tripidium*, so called quasi *Terridum* and *Tempidum*, from the trembling or shaking of the Earth, was a conjecture of future success, by the rebounding of crumbs cast unto Chickens. We have an instance of this in the life of *Tiberius Gracchus*, who being feloniously bulie in promoting the Law *Agaria*, was sorely warned by the keeper of his Chickens to desist from that enterprise; because when he had thrown the crumbs to the Coop, there came out but one of the Chickens only, and the same without eating went back again; which was taken for a sign of ill luck, as the greedy devouring of them had been good. But *Tiberius* slighting the advertisement, and pursuing his design, was the same day slain.

4. *Augurium*, so called ab *avium garrula*, was a Prediction from the chirping or chattering of birds; also from the found and voices heard they knew not whence, nor on what occasion. In which latter kind the death of *Cæsar* was divined from the clattering of Armour in his house; and the poisoning of *Germanicus* by the founding of a Trumpet of its own accord. In the former an Owl screeching in the Senate-house, was deemed ominous to *Augustus*; and a company of Crows following *Sejanus* to his house, with great noise and clamour, was judged to be fatal to that great favourite: and so it proved.

5. *Manitus*, the thirteenth King, who revived again the ancient Discipline, corrupted by the floatfulness and effeminacy of his Predecessors; and by the terror of his name awed the *Ægyptians*.

6. *Alades*, the eighteenth King, more absolute in *Syria* and the Western parts, than any of the Kings before him.

6. *Sardanapalus*

6 *Sardanapalus*, the last King of this Race, who being wondrous effeminate, and utterly unable to govern so great an Empire, gave opportunity to *Arbaces*, his Lieutenant in *Media*, to conspire against him. By whom, associated by *Belochus* Governor of *Babylon*, he was besieged in the City of *Nineve*, and there reduced unto such extremities, that gathering his Treasures all together, he burnt himself and them in one funeral Pile, *Esolum falsum vitium imitatus*, as is said by *Justin*. The Treasure which he is said to have burnt with him, amounted to one hundred Millions of Talents of Gold, and a thousand Millions of Talents of Silver: which in our *English* Money comes to twenty thousand and five hundred Millions of pounds. A Mass of Money, which as it must be long in gathering, so probably it had not been the Sun in many years, and therefore grown rusty might require a fire to purge it. This *Sardanapalus* afforded it, it may be, to end his life with that, in which he placed his *Summum bonum*. It may be slighted unto his enemies, and it is possible it might be in policy, that to great a treasure not falling to the possession of his Foes, might so much the more disable them from making resistance against, or detaching the Empire from his next rightful Successors. For it is of all things most foolish, both to lose our Treasure, and with it to enrich our Adversaries. On which consideration the *Spaniards* tied their Indian Fleet at *Gades*, and the *Genoese* theirs at *Tripolis*, that their Lading might not come into the possession of their enemies, the *English* and *Mahometans*. After the death of this *Sardanapalus*, *Arbaces* took *Media* & *Perse*, with the adjoining Provinces; *Belochus* strengthened himself in *Assyria*, *Chaldea*, and the adjacent Regions, his Kingdom being called the new Kingdom of *Assyria*.

#### The new Kings of *Assyria*, and *Chaldea*.

A.M.

- 1465 1 *Paul Belochus*, the beginner of this new Monarchy, or Race of Monarchs.  
 1594 2 *Paul Assur*, destroyed *Galilee*, and subdued the Kingdom of *Damascus*; the same who is called *Tiglat Pileser* in the Holy Scriptures.  
 1717 3 *Salmassar*, who destroyed *Samaria*, and ruined the Kingdom of *Israel*, and carried the ten Tribes to perpetual Captivity. This is the *Nabonassar* of the Chronologers.  
 1827 4 *Sennacherib*, whose blasphemous Host was vanquished by Angels from Heaven, and he himself murdered by his two Sons, *Adramelch* and *Sherazer*. 7.  
 1933 5 *Assarhaddon*, who revenging his Fathers death on his Brothers, was deposed by his Deputy of *Chaldea*, and the Seat-Royal transferred from *Nineve* to *Babylon*. 10.  
 2042 6 *Meroch Baladan*, Governor of *Babylon*, succeeded his Master in the Throne, conceived by some, to be the *Mardacempades* of *Ptolemy*; by others, to be also the same King, who by his Captain *Holofernes* did slay *Judas*.  
 2183 7 *Ben Merodach*, the Son of *Meroch Baladan*. 21.  
 2304 8 *Nabopolassar*, who vanquished *Pharaoh Necho* King of *Ægypt*. 25.  
 2339 9 *Nabuchodonosor* the great, by some called the *Hercules* of the East, who conquered *Ægypt* in the life of his Father; with whom he reigned for a time, and mightily enlarged the City of *Babylon*. He joyed also with *Alyages* King of *Medes*, in subverting the

proud City of *Nineve*; and in the eighteenth year of his Reign destroyed *Hierusalem*, and carried the people captive unto *Babylon*. But in the last seven years of his Reign he was so distracted, that he lived not much unlike the Beasts of the Field; according to the Word of God spoken by *Daniel*, Chap. 4. during which time his Son *Eulmerodach*, his Daughter *Nicores*, with *Niglisar* her Husband, and *Laborsfordrach* their Son, governed his Empire as Protectors, and therefore are by some reckoned as Kings. Finally, *Nebuchadnezzar* having recovered his senses, was again restored unto the Throne; and died, when he had reigned in all 44 years.

- 3383 10 *Eulmerodach*, the son of *Nebuchadnezzar*, slain by *Alyages* King of the *Medes*. 26.  
 3409 11 *Balthassar*, son of *Eulmerodach* (the *Nabonidus* of *Berosus*) a Prince of a dissolute and cruel nature, was in the latter end of his reign assailed by *Cyaxares* the son of *Alyages* (whom the Scriptures call *Darius Medus*) and by *Cyrus* the *Persian*: by whom he was slain in the seventeenth year of his reign, and the Empire of the *Babylonians* was transferred to the *Medes* and *Persians*.

A. M. 3426.

That this was the end of *Balthassar*, is the common opinion. But *Josephus Scaliger* in his learned and industrious work, *De emendatione temporum*, maketh him to be slain in a tumult by his own people: who elected into the Empire a Nobleman of the *Medes*, called in prophane stories, *Nabonidus*; in Divine, *Darius Medus*, who after a 7 years reign was slain by *Cyrus King of the Persians*. But by the leave of so worthy a man, this cannot hold good. For the Lord by his Prophet *Jeremy*, had pronounced (Chap. 27.) *That all Nations should serve Nebuchadnezzar, and his son, and his sons son*; whereas *Nabonidus* was a Prince of strange blood, and so the Nations were not to serve him: and in *Balthassar*, the fons son of *Nebuchadnezzar*, was this word accomplished. But let us examine his argument, and withal the scoffs, which very prodigally he bestoweth on such as maintain the contrary opinion: *Natio Chronologorum*, the whole rout of Chronologers; *boni & diligenter vivi*, good fine meaning men; & *addunt alia nihil veriora*, are his first Compliments. *Ut igitur quod Chronologorum est, omnes respiciant*, &c. therefore that they may repeat their ever being Chronologers, he bringeth in *Berosus*, cited by *Josephus*, in his first Book against *Apion*. But *Berosus* there maketh *Nabonidus* (to whom he faith the Kingdom of *Balthassar* was by the people delivered) to be a *Babylonian*, and not as *Scaliger* would have him say, a Nobleman of the *Medes*; neither can the authority of *Berosus* countervail that of *Daniel*, who in Chap. 6. telleth *Balthassar*, that his Kingdom should be divided amongst the *Medes* and *Persians*. His second argument is drawn from the nature of the word, *Βασιλεύς* & *Δασιλεύς*, and *Darius* the *Mede* took the Empire, by which word too, is implied (saith he) not a forcible invasion, but a willing acceptance of the Empire offered. To this we answer, that *Darius* indeed took the Empire quietly and willingly, being offered unto him by *Cyrus*, and his Army consisting of *Medes* & *Persians*, who according to the Word of God, had taken it from *Balthassar*, *Darius* being then absent. *Quid si probaveris* (saith he) *enim cognominatum fuisse Medum*? He hath yet one trick more than all these; and *Medus* must not be the National name

name, but the surname of *Darius*, which he proveth out of a fragment of *Megasthenes*, cited by *Eusebius*, in his work *De Preparatione Evangelica*, where he is called *Médocavdris* & *Yeqi Médoc* &c. an argument of all others the most slight and trivial. For besides that *Médoc* may there as well be the name of his Nation, as of his Family; and besides that, it thwarteth the places of *Jeremy* and *Daniel*, already quoted; it is Diametrically opposite to another place of the same *Daniel*, in his ninth Chapter, where he is called, *Darius*, of the seed of the *Medes*. Of this *Darius* more anon when we come into *Media*. As for *Nabonidus*, unquestionably he was the same with *Balthassar*. For besides that *Josephus* and *Berosus* attribute to either of them the reign of 17 years, the same *Josephus* (who might best know the truth in this case) telleth us that *Balthassar* was by the *Babylonians* called *Nabonidel*, a name not to great a stranger to *Nabonidus*, as *Scaliger's Darius*, or *Herodotus's Labinius*. But in this we must pardon *Joseph*. Scorn and contradiction was a part of his essence. For had he not been in some things singular, in all, peremptory, he had neither been a *Scaliger*, nor the Son of *Julius*.

But leaving *Joseph* to the singularity of his own conceits, we find nothing done by the *Assyrians* or *Chaldeans* after this subjection, which might denote them to have been once the Lords of so great an Empire. Successively inflavied by the *Medes*, *Persians*, and *Macdonians*, then by the *Persians* again, afterwards by the *Saracens*, next by the *Turks*, a third time by the *Persians*, once again by the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* Family, unto whom now subject: never endeavouring to assert in the way of war, or opposition, either their ancient reputation, or their native liberties; but suffering themselves to be won, lost, fought for, and again recovered by their quarrellous Masters, as if they had not title to their own Country, but were born to follow the fortunes of all Pretenders. The reason of which is principally to be ascribed to the form of Government used amongst the *Persians*, which was so Despotical and absolute, if not tyrannical, that they held all the people conquered by them in the nature of slaves, not suffering any to grow great in a state of inheritance, or to enjoy any place of power and profit under them in the conquered Provinces, but at the pleasure of the Prince; as it is now used amongst the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* Empire. By means whereof, the great men having no alliance amongst themselves, and as few dependants amongst the people, were never able to make head against the Conquerors

but in the fall of the present Prince fell together with him: it being a good rule of *Machiavel*, that where the ancient Nobility is in good regard, linked in alliances with themselves, and well respected by the common and inferior people; there it is difficult for the Invader, though a Conquerour, to win a Country, and harder to keep it being conquered. But on the other side, where the Nobility is quite worn out, and the Prince doth hold his Subjects in the nature of slaves, there both the Conquest will be easie, and soon assured. For to what purpose should the Subjects resist the Conquerour, or stand any longer to their King, than he stands to himself, when they are sure the Conquerour can lay upon them no heavier burdens, than they were accustomed to before, and have withal a flattering hope, that their new Masters may be gentler to them, than their former were? It fares no otherwise, with them than with *Esof's* *Afs*, which refused to take the opportunity of an escape from the hands of the enemy, by which he was taken, because he knew it was not possible they should lay more load upon his back, than his old Master made him bear. To which condition the *Chaldeans* and *Assyrians* being brought by the *Persians*, and never accustomed to the taste of a better fortune, have followed the same success as the *Persians* did, falling together with them from one hand to another: the particular account of whose estate we shall find in *Persia*, taking this only for the close. That when *Solyman* the *Magnificent* had discomfited *Tamas* King of *Persia*, and taken the great City of *Bagdat*, *Caramis*, *Nardin*, and the rest both in *Assyria*, *Chaldea*, and *Mesopotamia*, submitted to him without any resistance, and received his Garrisons. And for a confirmation of his Estate, he received at the hand of the *Caliph* of *Bagdat* (who by an old Prerogative had the nomination, or confirmation, at the least, of the Kings of *Assyria*, and the Sultans of *Egypt*) the Royal Ornaments and Ensigns, Anno 1534, incorporating by that means those Regions into his Estates, and making them Provinces of his Empire; in which he left *Sagierbeg* at *Bagdat* to command in Chief, and divers *Sagierbegs* in their several and respective Provinces. And still though the *Persian* Kings have since taken, and are still possessed of some places of importance in them; yet I account them in regard of the said inviolability, and the long possession following on it, for Provinces of the *Turkish* Empire: as I do *Media* of the *Persian*, though *Taurus*, and some other pieces of it be possessed by the *Turks*.

## MOUNT

## MOUNT TAURUS.

**M**OUNT TAURUS is a constant and continual ridge of hills, which extend from the *Mediterranean* to the *Indian* Seas; running thorow the whole length of *Asia* from West to East, and dividing it, as the *Equator* doth the *Globe*, into North and South. It was called *Taurus* from the rest of *Asia* the left, on the North thereof are called *Taurus*; and where they part it from *Cemagena* a Province of *Syria*, they are called *Ammanus*. On the East side of the River *Euphrates* (which forceth it self a throw it) it sometimes resumeth the name of *Taurus*, as in *Ptolemy's* three first Tables of *Asia*, and sometimes taketh the name of *Niphates*, as in the fourth: retaining that uncertain appellation, so long as they bound *Armenia* from *Mesopotamia*. After the River *Tigris* hath also cut them afunder, they continue the name of *Niphates* altogether, until they separate *Assyria* and *Media*, and then they call themselves *Costris*: although between the upper and lower *Media*, they appear not always, but are seen discontinued, and broke in pieces: such parts of it as are found in the middle of that Country, being called *Orantes*; those which lie more towards the East being named *Coronus*, out of the Southern parts whereof issueth the River of *Bagradus*, which divideth the ancient *Persia* from *Caramania*. Continuing further Eastward by the name of *Coronus*, they give unto the *Parthians* and *Hyracians*, their proper Countries; and afterwards change themselves into the Mountains of *Serapis*, out of which riseth the River *Maurguis*. And now beginning to draw towards the end of their course, they first make themselves the South border of *Bactria*, and are then known by the name of *Parapamisus*; and after take unto themselves the name of *Caucasus*, where the famous Rivers *Indus*, *Hydaspis*, and *Zaradus*, have their first beginnings. In this point do they hold their heads exceeding high, to equal the Mountains of *Imaus*; whom they encounter within the 35, 36, and 37 Degrees of Latitude, and the 140 Degree of Longitude: known by no other name than this, till finally they terminate their course in the *Indian* Seas. So far, and to this purpose, that noble Gentleman. It may be added hereunto, that though the ancient Writers could

trace the course of this Mountain, no further than the meeting of it with *Imaus*; yet later observations follow it to the wall of *China*: the parts beyond *Caucasus* being not known by the names of *Delangier*, and *Nangroon*. But this is to be understood only of the main body of these Mountains, which hold on in an even course from West to East; not of those spurs and branches of it, which shoot either to the North, or South: such as are the *Anti-Taurus* in some parts of the lesser *Asia*; the *Gordian* hills, and the *Montes Moschici*, with those which *Pliny* calleth *Pariedri*, others *Variadri*, in *Armenia Major*; and that of *Caboras*, which flieth it self on the North-east of *Assyria*, with divers others.

In such a continual course of Mountains it must needs be that many fierce Nations did inhabit in former times, not easily subdued, nor so soon reduced unto civility, as such who were possessed of places less defensible, and fitter for commerce and traffick with the rest of mankind. And they continued in these late times, the last which were brought under by the *Turks* and *Persians*, the mightiest Monarchs of those parts; though bordering on, or totally environed with their dominions. Two Kingdoms they afforded of long continuance: one towards the West, where it closeth with the Mountains of *Anti-Taurus*, and divideth *Syria* *Cemagena* from *Armenia Major*; the other towards the East, separating *Media* from *Hyracania*. For want of other names to describe them by, we will call the first the Kingdom of *Aladenites*, and the last the Kingdom of *Bahaman*: according to the names of the two last Kings.

1 The Kingdom of *ALADEULES* contained that part of this Mountainous tract, which beginning in or about *Anti-Taurus*, extended it self as far towards the East, as to the banks of the River *Tigris*, where they part *Mesopotamia* from *Armenia Major*. Inhabited by a people naturally very fierce and warlike, more famous for nothing than their want of all things; who as men dwelling in a rough and barren Country, could little profit themselves by husbandry; and therefore gave themselves to grazing, breeding on their pastures some store of horse and Camels, which they sold to others, but especially maintaining themselves and their families by hunting and stealing. Supposed to come originally from the *Cappadocians*, and *Armenians* of the lesser *Asia*, which by long and continual wars in the former Ages, were forced to forsake their dwellings, and for safety of their lives to fly to these uncultivated and desolate Mountains. Where searching every hill and dale, and following the opportunity of Springs and Rivers, but chiefly the mildest Temperature of the Air, and most cheerful aspect of the Sun, they built in many places poor Villages; and afterwards some better Towns. The principal of which is named *Maras*, so called as it is conceived from the River *Marfias*, which rising out of the Mountain *Calen*, passeth

passeth by the fame, and not far off falleth into the River *Euphrates*.

When it was made a Kingdom first, it is hard to say, the Kings hereof being mean and inconsiderable in the eye of the world, not worth the conquering; and wanting power to conquer others and enlarge their territories: nor indeed worthy any King but one of their own, who could content himself with reigning over Rocks and Mountains. The last was *Aladulter*, so much spoken of in the *Turkish* Histories, and by them called the *Mountain King*. Conceived by some Writers to have been the Author of such a *Paradise*, as we shall find described, when we come to *Drangiana*, a Province of *Persia*; and by that means grown formidable to his neighbouring Princes. But that which made him most really and truly known, in the stories of the former times, was the stout opposition which he made against the *Turks*, in their wars with *Persia*. He had before given no small check to the proceedings of *Bajazet* the second, in his conquest of the *Carmanian* Kingdom; and so left troubled *Selimus* the Son of *Bajazet*, in his *Persian* wars, impeaching what he could the greatness of the *Ottoman* Family: Fought with by *Selimus*, he made good his ground with a great deal of courage, till betrayed by *Ali Beg*, General of his Horse, and seeing his Army terrified by the thot of the *Turks*, he was fain to flee. But being at last taken, and put to death by the command of *Selimus*, his Kingdom was converted to a *Turkish* Province, Anno 1515: and so continued to this day.

2 The Kingdom of *BAHAMAN* was situate more towards the East, amongst the Mountains which divide *Media* from *Hircania*, as before was said. The Mountains in those parts so high, that Travellers at the end of a two days journey, may discern the middle Region of the Air to be beneath them: exceeding troublesome to ascend, about 50 miles in height when once got to the top; but more dangerous by reason of the Rocks and Precipices, in the going down: full of inhospitable freights, and so cold and barren, that were not Sovereignty a temptation above all resistance, no man would take upon him the command of so poor a Kingdom. And yet in this extremity of height and cold, there is great

quantity of *Sulphur*, which makes it sparkle in the night, like the hill *Vesuvius*, in *Italy*, by means whereof here are many *Hot-Baths*, three of them walled about, two open; to which resort unfound and decrepit people, in very great multitudes. The chief Town of it *Larry Jeon*, in the ordinary Road or Pass betwixt *Omuel*, the last Town of *Hircania*, and *Damas* the first of *Media*. But the Kings Seat was in a Village called *Reyna*, where he had a Castle so built upon the best advantages of Art and Nature, that it seemed invincible; adorned above, with gardens, flowers, and most pleasant fruits; and furnished beneath with a Rivulet of pure water, which pleasantly passing thorow the Castle, fell into the Valley. A Castle of so large a circuit, that besides the Kings Family or Court, it was able to admit a garrison of 10000 men.

The last King hereof was the foresaid *Bahaman*, derived from a long descent of Royal Ancestors, comparing for antiquity with the *Persian Sophies*: who though ill-neighbourred on both sides, by the *Tartarian* on the one, and the Kings of *Persia* on the other: yet had they with great fortune, policy, and valour, maintained their Royalties against all pretenders. But *Abas* the late *Persian Sophy*, having either conquered or reduced *Hircania*, picked a quarrel with *Bahaman*; pretending that by the opportunity of his situation he might rob his *Carmanian*, hinder his progress towards the *Hircanian* Sea, and turn into other Channels all the Streams or Rivers, which rising from Mount *Taurus*, watered and enriched his *Persian* Territories. And though *Bahaman* never had attempted any of the things objected; yet it was cause enough of quarrel that he might so do: and therefore is besieged in his Castle of *Reyna*, with an Army of 3000 men. Finding no possibility to prevail by force, the General of the *Persians* proceeds by treachery, invites the old King into his Camp under colour of Parley; and by this means drew his two Sons out of the Castle to the Parley also. Whom having got into his power, he first caused their heads to be cut off; and after making use of their Seals and Signets, obtains a surrender of the place: and with it the possession of this mountainous Kingdom, Anno 1601. or thereabouts, united ever since to the Crown of *Persia*.



## OF TURCOMANIA.

**T**URCOMANIA is bounded on the East, with *Media*, and the *Caspian* Sea; on the West, with the *Euxine* Sea, *Cappadocia*, and *Armenia Minor*; on the North, with *Tartary*; and on the South, with *Mesopotamia*, and *Affrica*. So called from the *Turcomans* or *Turks*; who from hence made their first expedition for the conquest of *Persia*, and after spread themselves over all those parts of *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*, now in their possession. A Country which consisteth of four several Provinces, each Province having to its self its particular story; and therefore we must look upon it, as it is now divided into those four parts, that is to say, 1 *Armenia Major*, or *Turcomania* properly and specially so called; 2 *Colechia*, now called *Mengrelia*; 3 *Iberia*, now named *Georgia*; and 4 *Albania*, which they now term *Zuria*.

### i ARMENIA MAJOR.

**A**RMENIA MAJOR is bounded on the East, with *Media*, and some part of the *Caspian* Sea; on the West, with the River *Euphrates*, which parteth it from *Armenia Minor*, in the lesser *Asia*; on the North, with *Colechia*, or *Mengrelia*; and on the South, with *Mesopotamia*, and some part of *Affrica*.

It was called *Armenia*, as some say, *quasi Aram-Mini*, or the *Mini* of *Syria*: but as others say, *quasi Har-mini*, that is to say, *Mont Mini*, or *Montana Miniasis*: the *Mini*, or *Minii*, being a Region of this tract, mentioned by *Jeremy* the Prophet, Chap. 51. 27. and by him placed betwixt *Ararat* and *Atkenaz*, which shew the situation of it to be hercabouts. *Major* which added to it for distinction sake, to difference it from *Armenia Minor*: and now it is called *Turcomania*, as the first seat in which the *Turcomans* or *Turks* did fix themselves, after their eruption out of *Scythia*.

The Country in the most part overspread with hills, branches of those huge mountains of *Taurus*, and *Anti-Taurus*; but intermixt with fertile and delightful Valleys, liberally furnished with Cattel, and good store of Fruits, though much subject to deep flows, which do much annoy it. The Riches of it not to be better estimated than by the frankness of *Tigranes*, once King hereof. Who being fined by *Pompey* at 6000 Talents, not only very readily laid down that sum; but added of his own accord to every Roman Souldier 50 Drachms of Silver, 1000 Drachms to each Captain, and to every Colonel a Talent. For though *Tigranes* had added some part of *Media*, and the whole Kingdom of *Syria*, unto his Estate: yet those being new Acquests, and not fully settled, were not much likely, for the present, to enrich his Coiffers: new conquered Provinces being for the most part more chargeable than beneficial to the *Vittor*.

The people are generally great bodied, of comely performance, and patient of all kind of labour; good Archers, when put to it, but careless of honour got by war; merry, desirous to be at ease, and apt to be footed. The women tall, but homely, of a manly look, most of them skilful at their Bow, or some other weapon. Their Families for the most part great, the Father, and all his Posterity to the third and fourth generation, living under a roof; after whose death the eldest, whether Son or Brother, hath the chiefest Rule. In diet and bathing all alike; and in most places they are said to be very industrious; painful in tillage, and well seen in *Manufactures*, especially rich *Tapestries*, *Grograins*, and watered *Chamless*: with which they traffick into most Cities of the *Turks* and other *Mahometans*; privileged, as they say, by a *Charter* under *Mahomet*'s own hand, above other *Christians*, and upon that occasion more dispersed in the Eastern Countries than any Nation in the world, the *Jews* excepted.

They have a Language of their own, which they call the *Armenian*, not only used amongst them in common talk, but in sacred offices: the Scriptures being translated into that language also; and that, as the people do affirm, by the hand of St. *Chrysostom*, at such time as (on the solicitation of the Emperors *Endocia*, his most eager enemy) he was confined to the lesser *Armenia*, by the Emperour *Arcaidius*: to whom also they ascribe the invention of the *Armenian Characters*, or Letters, still in use amongst them.

They received the *Christian Faith* by the preaching of St. *Bartholomew*, and were anciently of the jurisdiction of the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, as a Province of the *Pontick Dioceses*; which together with the *Asian Dioceses*, and that of *Thrace*, were by the Council of *Chalcedon* laid unto that *Patriarchat*. But falling into the opinion of *Eutycher*, touching one nature only in *CHRIST* our Saviour, they withdrew themselves long since, from the communion of the *Greeks*, whom they hold in greater detestation than all other *Christians*; and chose two Patriarchs of their own, of whom more anon. Other opinions which they hold besides those of *Eutycher*, (which yet they labour to make capable of an *Orthodox* sense;) and those wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*, as 1 Denying *Purgatory*, and prayers for the dead. 2 Admitting none to be made *Priests*, except those that be married. 3 Denying the body of *Christ* to be really under the species of bread and wine. And 4 Re baptizing such as come to their Communion from the *Latine Churches*, Are these that follow, in which they differ also from most Churches else, viz. 1 In receiving Infants to the Lord's Table, immediately after Baptism. 2 In abstaining from unclean meats. 3 In fasting, on *Christmasts* day. And 4 In holding their Children under the fire, as a necessary circumstance in Baptism; because *John the Baptist* told the people which followed him, that *CHRIST* would baptize them with the *Holy Ghost*.

and with fire; in which place he meaneth not material fire, but the lively purgation of the Holy Ghost, according to the nature of fire. The Church of this Sect is governed by two Patriarchs; whereof the one hath under his jurisdiction this Turcomania, comprehending 15000 Families, besides very many Monasteries: and the other hath under him the two Provinces of Armenia the Lesser and Cilicia, comprehending 20000 Families, or thereabouts: The first residing anciently in Sebastia, the Metropolis of the greater Armenia; the second originally at Melitene, the Metropolis of Armenia Minor; but of late at Sis, a small City, not far from Tarsus in Cilicia. Both honoured with the title of *Catholiques*, and having under them to the number of 30 Bishops.

Chief Rivers of this Country, 1 *Araxes*, which rising out of Mount *Aber*, an Armenian Mountain, runneth Eastward as far as *Media*, and then bendeth it self towards the North: and after a long course is divided into two Branches; whereof the one falleth into the *Caspian* Sea, the other into, 2 *Cyru*, another great River of this Country. The fountain of this last in Mount *Caucasus* in the furthest North of Turcomania; and falling into a Lake, there meeteth with, 3 *Cambyses*, another great River of these parts; and so together hasten to the *Caspian* also. 4 *Euphrates*, by the Turks called *Frab*, by the Hebrews, *Perah*, famous in Scripture for its watering the Garden of Eden, hath its fountain in the hills which they call *Niphates*, as is said by *Strabo*. A River of great length and swiftness. For having forced it self a passage through the Mountains of *Taurus*, it runneth in the West of *Mesopotamia*, with a stream so violent, that they who go by water from *Bir* to *Birrah*, a Town on the North-west of *Mesopotamia*, to the City of *Bagdad*, are fain to come back again by land; selling those boats for eight Crowns which they bought for 50. At *Apamia*, a City of *Chaldea*, it is joined with *Tigris*, with which the greatest branch of it passeth thorow the City of *Babylon*, and so into the *Persian* Gulf: the rest of it being cut into many Channels, for fear it should overflow and drown the Country, are quite lost in the Lakes of *Chaldea*. 5 *Tigris*, a swifter stream than that, whence it had the name; the word in the Median Tongue signifying an Arrow. A River of so strong a course, that it passeth thorow the Lake *Thibilis*, without mixture of Waters, and affordeth it Armenians an easie passage to *Bagdad*: who on a few *Rafs* borne up with Goat-skins blown full of wind, and boards laid upon them, make their voyage thither. It is called *Hiddekel* in the Scripture, one of the four Rivers which watered the Garden of *Paradise*: situate in an Island made by the embracement of this River and *Euphrates*, with their several Branches. Rising originally out of the Lake of *Thibilis*, in Armenia Major, where now we are. It is presently almost swallowed by the gaping Earth; and falling under the huge bulk of *Taurus*, breaketh forth again; and compelling the East parts of *Mesopotamia*, which it divides from *Assyria*, meets with *Euphrates*, as before. Of which its first and second birth, thus the Poet *Lucan*.

At Tigris subito tellus absorbet hiatus,  
Occulitque regit angustis, rursusque reatuum  
Fonte novo flumen pelagi non abnegat undas.

That is to say,

*Tigris*, soon swallowed by the thirsty earth,  
Finds there a burial where it had its birth:  
But breaking out at a new spring, vouchsafes  
With the salt Seas to mix its sweeter waves.

Mountains of most note, are. 1 *Aber*, glorying in the fountains of the great River *Araxes*. 2 *Periadri*, or *Perisgeres*, as *Proklos*, *Pariedri*, as *Pliny* calleth it, a branch or spur of the great Mountain *Taurus*. 3 *Udasepes*, another

branch of that great Mountain. 4 Some part of *Anti-Taurus*. 5 The Mountains called *Montes Mischis*, more towards the North, abutting upon *Cappadocia*, and the *Euxine* Sea: which name they took from *Misch*, or *Mosch* the Son of *Japhet*, preserving the remembrance of his planting there. 6 *Niphates*, one of the fountains of *Taurus*, out of which the famous River *Euphrates* is said to issue. 7 The *Gordian* Mountains, conceived by many learned men to be the Mountains of *Ararat*, on one of the tops whereof called *Baris*, the Ark of *Noah* is most generally affirmed to rest. Affirmed by many ancient Writers of the Christian Church, and countenanced not only by *Josephus*, and some others of the Elder Historians; but by the *Septuagint* themselves: who in the 37 Chap. of *Ista*. v. 38. and 2 Kings 19. 37. have rendered *Ararat* by Armenia. And be it so, let *Ararat* be Armenian Mountains: yet doth it not follow hereupon, that the Ark rested on the *Gordian* Mountains, or any other of this Country, as they would conclude. We may infer as *Logically*, for ought I can see, that the Garden of *Eden* must be looked for in Armenia also; because situate in the circings of *Euphrates*, and *Tigris*, two Armenian Rivers. Those Rivers have indeed their fountains in Armenia Major, but compass not the Garden of *Eden*, till after a long course they encounter each other in the spacious Plains of *Babylonia*. And so those Mountains, though they have the name of the Mountains of *Ararat* or Armenia, because there first grown to a discernable and super-eminent height above all the Mountains of those parts, became not the resting place of the Ark, till after a further course towards the East, they were grown to their fullest height; which is in those parts of it betwixt *Seythia* and *Persia*, which are called *Montes Caucasus*: not that Mount *Caucasus* which lieth on the North of *Caldia*, and *Iberia*, out of which the River *Cyru* is said to rise; but that which lieth on the East-side of the *Caspian* Sea, where Mount *Taurus* and *Imaus* do cross each other. But of this elsewhere.

It was divided heretofore into many Provinces, the principal whereof had (I grant) its name from the *Gordian* Mountains, called in some Writers, *Cordis*; from whence the Province had the name of *Gordiana*, but most commonly called *Cordene*, bordering on *Assyria*. The Kingdom once of *Zarbiennus*, who siding with *Lucullus* against *Tigranes* King of Armenia, was by *Tigranes* murdered with his Wife and Children; but honored by *Lucullus* with a stately and magnificent funeral. 2 The second Province of note is called *Cataene*, near the *Montes Mischis*. 3 *Tofarene* bordering on the River *Cyru*. 4 *Colbene* on the banks of *Araxes*. 5 *Sephene*, near the turnings of the River *Euphrates*: mistook by some industrious and knowing men, to be the Syria *Saba* of the Holy Scriptures. 6 *Bassine*, on the North-west, near the Springs of that River. But what Cities did belong to each, I find no where specified.

Those of most consequence in the whole, 1 *Artaxata*, by *Plinius* called *Caput Genis*: of most esteem in those times, and the Seat-Royal of the Kings of Armenia from its first foundation. Built by *Artaxerx*, one of the Progenitors of *Tigranes*, at the persuasion of *Anabal*, whilst he abode in this Country: who liking the situation of the place, drew on it the model of a strong and gallant City, according to which Plat-form it was presently built. Taken and sacked by the Romans, as a daughter of *Carthago*, by *Corbulo* in the time of *Nero*, it never could revive again to its former splendour. In the middle ages called *Eschia*, and at this day *Coy*, or *Coin*; if not built rather out of the ruins of it. A City memorable for two great battels near unto it: the first between *Lucullus* on

the one side, against *Mithridates* and *Tigranes* on the other; wherein the Romans were Victors: the second between *Selimus* Emperor of the Turkey, and *Hysmael* the *Persian* Sophy; wherein the Turkey were Conquerours, Anno 1514: A Victory which he bought with the loss of 30000 of his best men, and such a terror to the whole Army, that the Turkey to this day call it the only day of doom. The fields adjoining to the Town wherein this great battel was fought, called the *Chalderan* fields. 2 *Sebastia*, now *Snassia*, seated on *Euphrates*, where it meeteth with the Mountain *Taurus*; the residence of the Patriarch of the Armenians, at their first separation from the Seat of *Constantinople*; the Metropolis at that time of all Armenia: so named in honour of *Augustus*, whom the Greeks call *Sebastus*. But of late degraded of that dignity, the Patriarchal See, by reason of the fierce wars raging in this Country, betwixt the Persians and the Turkey, being removed to the Monastery of *Eomeazin*, near the City of *Ervan* in Persia; in the dominions of which King these Armenian Christians live in great abundance, by the name of *Jephelini*. 3 *Tigranocerta*, beautified and enlarged, if not first founded, by *Tigranes* above mentioned; by whom replenished with people of several Nations, whose Countries he had taken from them, and enriched in a manner with the wealth of all his Kingdom: there being no Armenian, either Prince or Peasant, who sent not somewhat towards the adorning of it. But taken by *Lucullus* without great resistance, those federal Nations not agreeing amongst themselves; and therein besides other Treasure, no less than 8000 Talents in ready money. The City situate near a River, which *Tacitus* calleth *Niceforus*. 4 *Arasimata*, by *Pliny* called *Arimate*, on the banks of *Euphrates*. 5 *Chobala*, so called in memory of *Hul*, or *Chul* the Son of *Aram*, one of the first Planters of this Country. 6 *Barazis*, by the Emperor *Leo* much enlarged and beautified; dignified with the new name of *Leontopolis*, and for a while made the Metropolis of the Province. 7 *Asarata*, by *Strabo* called *Arxata*. 8 *Theodopolis*, built on the foundation of some of the more ancient Cities, by the Emperor *Theodosius*, and of him thus named. 9 *Colonia*, the strongest and most defensible City heretofore, when possessed by the Romans. 10 *Clamassim*, a strong Town on the banks of *Euphrates*, taken by *Selimus* the first in his way towards Persia, and therewith *livity* and *scijin* of the rest of this Country, since wholly conquered by his Successors. 11 *Charis*, not far from the same River also, supposed to be the *Chorisa* of *Pliny*, of which not long since the ruins only; but in three weeks for repaired and fortified by the Turkey, Anno 1579, that it is thought to be impregnable. 12 *Theffia*, giving name of old to the Lake *Theffius*, and to the Region called *Theffuris*; but now not in being. 13 *Arminum*, now of greatest name, and esteemed the Metropolis of this Country: situate in that part of the Lake of *Van* (the *Martianus palus* of the ancient Writers) which lieth next to this Country: and by that well fortified: the only City of Armenia possessed by the Persians, who are the Lords of all that Lake, of which more hereafter. 14 *Van*, both for natural situation, and the works of Art, accompanied by the Turkey for their strongest Bulwark in these parts against the Persians; and for that cause well garrisoned, and as well maintained.

This Country was first planted by *Hul* or *Chul* the Son of *Aram*, and by *Misch* one of the Sons of *Japhet*, who with their Families or Colonies possessed the same: the one leaving the remainder of his name, in the *Montes Mischis*; the other in the Town called *Chobala*, and the Region called *Colbene* by *Proklos*, *Chobatenis* by *Stephanus*. Advanced to the honour of a Kingdom as soon as

any, that of *Babel* excepted: *Ninus* the third from *Nimrod* finding *Barzanes* King heretofore, whom he forced to acknowledge his superiority, and to aid him in his wars against *Zoraster* the King of *Badria*. Kings of most note in times succeeding, (for we have no constant Catalogue of them) were, 1 *Araxes*, who being warred on by the Persians, was promised victory by the Oracle, on the sacrifice of his two fair Daughters. Willing to satisfy the Gods, and yet spare his Children, he sacrificed two of the daughters of *Mischaleus*, a Nobleman of this Country: by whom in revenge heretofore his own daughters were slain, and himself so closely followed, that swimming the River then called *Helmas*, he was therein drowned, and thereby gave unto that River the name of *Araxes*. 2 *Artaxata*, the founder of the great City *Artaxata*; spoken of before. 3 *Tigranes*, the most mighty King that ever reigned in Armenia, to which he added by his prowess, *Galatia*, and a great part of *Cilicia*, in Asia Minor, the whole Countries of *Media*, *Syria*, and *Phoenicia*: But siding with *Mithridates*, whose daughter he had married, against the Romans, he was by *Lucullus* overthrow in two great battels, and outed of the greatest part of his dominions. Hearing that *Pompey* had succeeded *Lucullus* in command of the Army, and trusting more unto his goodness than a wife man would, he put himself into his power: by whom condemned in a great sum of money for the charge of the War, and stripped of all the rest of his Estates, he was suffered to enjoy Armenia Major, Syria being made a Province, *Sephene* given to *Ariobarzanes* King of *Cappadocia*, *Media* left unto it self, and the lesser Armenia conferred on one of his Sons, who being found guilty of some practice with the King of *Parthia*, was carried prisoner unto Rome, and his Country brought into the form of a Province. 4 *Artavases*, circumvented by *Marc-Antony*, who led him prisoner to Rome, but (cateris, ne quid bonori eius desset, auris, as the Historian tells us of him) it was in Chains of Gold for his great honour; giving Armenia to one of the Sons of *Cleopatra*. And though, 5 *Artaxias* recovered his Fathers Kingdom, yet he and his Successors held it but as Vassals of the Roman Empire: the Senate after that confirming, and sometimes nominating the Armenian Kings. Continuing in this Estate till the time of *Trajan*, it was by him reduced to the form of a Province (made after that a part of the Pontic *Dieceps*) who adding *Mesopotamia* also unto his Dominions, made *Tigris* the Eastern border of his Empire, which *Augustus* thought fit to limit with the banks of *Euphrates*. But long it held not in that form, being governed by its own Kings, as it was before *Trajan's* time, in the reign of *Constantinus*, *Julian*, and the Emperours following; whom they acknowledged and revered as their Lords in chief, till the time of *Julianus* the second (he began his Empire Anno 687.) when subdued by the Sarcens. Recovered by that Emperor, but soon lost again, it continued subject to the Sarcens till the breaking in of the Turkey, Anno 844. of whom more anon. The greatest part of the Turkey emptying themselves into Persia, and other Countries which they took from the Eastern Emperours; the Christians of Armenia began to take heart again, and to have Kings of their own, by whom governed, till again subdued by *Occidan*, or *Heccata* the Son of *Cim*; the first *Cham* of the *Tartari*. Nor did the *Tartars* make so absolute a conquest of it, as to extinguish either Christianity, or the race of the Kings, *Hathum*, surnamed *Armenius*, rising after this, and going in person to *Mongo*, the great *Cham* of *Tartary*, 1257. And in our own Chronicles, in the Reign of King Richard the Second, we find mention of one *Leon* an Armenian King; who came hither to sue for aid against the Turkey: by whom then





the King sent Embassadors to *Constantine*, desiring Ministers and Preachers to be sent to *Iberia*, to instruct the people in the Faith, which was done accordingly. Since that time Christianity hath flourished in this Country without interruption; though by *Mahometans*, and *Pagans*, on all sides encompassed; agreeable in doctrinal points to the Church of *Greece*, whose *Rituals* also the People do to this day follow. Not subject for all that to the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, (though of his Communion) but to their own *Metropolitan* only: who hath under him about 18 Bishops, and resideth for the most part, in *St. Katherine's* Monastery on Mount *Sinai*. By means of which remote dwelling of their principal Pastor, *Mahometanism* hath got some footing, and *Jesuitism* began to creep in amongst them. The occasion of which last was this.

About the year 1614, the *Persians* making an inroad into this Country, took the City of *Cremen*, and therein *Cetaba*, the mother of Prince *Teimuraz*; whom, leading her captive into *Persia*, and not able to prevail with her to turn *Mahometan*, they most cruelly murdered. Some of the *Jesuits* then travelling in those Countries, and willing out of that sad accident to advance the fame of their Society, together with the Catholic cause, cut off the head of a dead man whom they found in the way, anointed it with oyl and odours, brought it into *Georgia*, and signified unto the Prince, that they had with them the head of the blessed Martyr *Cetaba*: desiring leave to live in some Monastery, and have the keeping of the holy *Relique* committed to them. This easily believed, and granted, the head was placed with great honour in the Church of *St. George* at *Aberdall*; much refer to it from all parts by diseased persons: whom if past cure, the *Jesuits* sent home again, prescribing them in the way of preparation a long time of repentance; if curable by outward means which they applied, the cure was presently ascribed to the holy *Relique*. Grown famous by this means, they gained many *Disciples* to themselves; and had no small hope of prevailing on Prince *Teimuraz* to submit himself to the Pope, as the *Vicar of CHRIST*. When in the heat of all their glories, a Letter cometh from *Maacra*, a Lady attendant on the Princess, (but then living in *Persia*, as a slave or bondmaid) signifying that her Master by her perswasion, had got into his power the body of his mother *Cetaba*; which he might ransom if he pleased: two Travellers withal, who came out of *Persia* with the *Jesuits*, reporting what they see them do with the dead man's head. By which means the *Imposture* being discovered, the body of the Queen was sent for, the false *Relique* was cast out of the Church, and the false *Jesuits* into Prison, and next out of the Country.

Rivers of note I find not any, either in *Ptolemy*, or any of our modern Writers, but what are touched upon before, except only the River of *Iberus* spoken of already, from which the Country is thus named. The whole in general so destitute of waters, that *Pompey* in his march this way against the *Albanians*, was fain to carry 10000 bladders filled with water, for the use of his Army.

Places of most antiquity and importance in it, 1 *Araxeissa*, 2 *Vasada*, 3 *Lubium*, 4 *Armedissa*, all named by *Ptolemy*; this last by *Pliny* called *Harmasiss*. 5 *Cremen*, the chief City now possessed by the *Georgians*, 6 *Cacheti*, honoured with a fair Church, the most beautiful of all the Country, dedicated by the name of *Saint George*. 7 *Artsala*, where are to be seen the ruins of a large City, and many Churches; by what name anciently called, I find not. 8 *Aluacala*, or the Golden Castle, a strong Fortrefs, and the ordinary residence of the *Georgian* Princes, since the time of the wars betwixt the *Persians* and the

*Turks*. 9 *Archibelech*, a strong Castle taken by *Solyman* the *Magnificent* in his wars against *Tamas* King of *Persia*, and ever since holden by the *Turks*. 10 *Tefis*, a large and spacious Town, forsaken by the *Georgians* at the coming of *Mustapha*, General of *Amurath* the third, against the *Persians*: who liking the situation of it, caused it to be repaired and fortified, planted thereon an hundred Pieces of Ordnance, and left therein a Garrison of 6000 Soldiers. 11 *Lori*, distant from *Tefis* about two days journey of a Carrier's pace, strengthened with a lofty Castle, environed with deep ditches, and a thick wall, amounting to a mile in compass. Seized on by *Feras* Bass, the Successor of *Mustapha*, who repaired the Walls, planted thereon 200 small Pieces of Ordnance, and garrisoned it with 7000 *Turks* for defence thereof. 12 *Tamanis*, a short days march from *Lori*, the Country lying betwixt both, full of rich fields and pastures, abounding with Corn, Fruit, and Cattel. Night unto which the *Sal* *Feras* raised a new Fortrefs, for the better command of the Straights and Passages, leading from thence to *Lori*, and so to *Tefis*, (the Key of *Media* or *Sirman*) the Wall whereof being 1700 yards in compass, he caused it to be planted with 200 Pieces of Artillery, and with incredible diligence cut down a thick Wood which lay before it, which otherwise would have been an acceptacle of *Turks*, or Enemies. 13 *Gifisa*, 14 *Bafcan*, possessed and fortified by the *Turks*, to make good their footing in this Country. But possibly most of these strong holds now possessed by the *Turks* may be within the bounds of *Armenia Major*, and *Albania*, though within the Country of *Armenia*; the name not being limited to *Iberia*, as was said before.

The first Inhabitants hereof were such who were brought hither by *Tubal*, the Son of *Japhet*, from whom this people at the first, as *Jayphus* hath it, had the name of *Thobelis*. But that name growing out of knowledge, the Nations in it of most note were the *Tibareni*, *Majane*, *Chalyber*, and of less esteem, the *Esfirini*, *Sapiri*, *Macroni*, &c. united at the last in the name of *Iberi*, from the River *Iberus*, of which *Pliny* speaketh, the principal of all this Country. Too fruitful of increase for so narrow a dwelling, some of them put themselves to seek their fortunes; when after long wandering they fell upon the Coast of *Spain* next the *Pyrenies*, where they laid themselves; giving the name of *Iberi* to the chief River there, and of *Iberia* to the Country; Of which more before. Such of them as remained behind continued an unconquered people, under the government of their own Kings, till the time of *Tigermes* King of *Armenia*. By whom invited to his aid against the *Romans*, they came in accordingly; and in his fall discomfited by *Lucullus* in three several battels, were fain to stand upon their guard as well as they could: first holding fair with *Pompey*, who succeeded *Lucullus* in his charge; But breaking out again on a new temptation, they were encountered by him. In which battel 5000 of their men being slain, and 10000 taken, they were constrained to sue for peace; not otherwise to be obtained till *Anacris*, the King of these *Iberians*, gave his Sons for Pledges. After this *Ferdinandus* to the *Roman*, and *Grecian* Emperours, till the fatal inundation of the *Saracens* who weakened that Empire, that the Kings hereof acknowledged no more subjection to those of *Constantinople*, till *Constantinople* it self became the Imperial seat of the *Ottoman* Family; in whose quarrels with the *Persian* *Sophies*, this Country began to suffer a new invasion; some Towns and Forts of it being taken by *Solyman* in his march or passage against *Tamas*. Afterwards in the time of *Amurath* the third, who set his mind most eagerly on the war with *Persia*, a great part of it was subdued by

*Mustapha*

*Mustapha*, the *Turkish* General: who inviting the widow Princess and her two Sons to come to his Tent, sent the young Princes to *Constantinople*: and by that means had opportunity to assure his purchases. And though the *Persians* did their best to assist the *Georgians*; yet proved they but a kind of miserable comforters, as much punishing or plaguing this poor Country with their aids, as the *Turks* by their Armies. So that now it stands divided betwixt the Grand Seigneur, and its natural Princes, the *Georgian* Princes holding the greatest part, but the *Turks* being in possession of the strongest holds; kept by them under colour of securing their way to *Persia*, for which this Country is indeed but unhappily seated.

#### 4 ALBANIA.

ALBANIA is bounded on the East, with the *Caspian* Sea; on the West, with *Iberia*; on the North, with the *Caucasian* Mountains; on the South, with the *Mæotis*. So named from the *Albani*, who did once inhabit it, and of late called *Saviria*, but reckoned in these last ages as part of *Georgia*.

The Country of so rich a Soil, that without the least labour of the Husbandman, the Earth doth naturally and liberally afford her store; and where it is but once sown, will yield two or three reapings. But being ill husbands even in former times, they occasioned *Strabo* to give them this Note for a remembrance, That they needed not the use of the *Sole*, who knew no better how to make use of the Land. The people anciently so simple, that they could not reckon above one hundred; ignorant of weights, measures, and the use of money. Old age they had in high esteem, but held it utterly unlawful to make speech of the dead. And of these *Pliny* doth report, That they were night-headed from their very youth, and could see as well by night as by day; the verity of which last may become very questionable. But withal they are affirmed to have been stout and courageous people, strong bodies, patient of toil and labour, as they are at this day. And well the men may be courageous and stout, when the women are so truly masculine. Of whom it is affirmed by Authors of undoubted credit, that they were exercised in Arms and martial feats, as if descended lineally from the ancient *Amazons*, whom *Plutarch* placed in this Tract; reporting some of them to be aiding to these *Albanians*, in their War with *Pompey*; which possibly might be no other, than from the more noble *Albanian* Dames.

Principal Rivers of this Country, 1 *Suana*, giving name to the *Suani*, one of the Nations of these parts mentioned by *Pliny*. 2 *Casim*. 3 *Gerrus*. 4 *Albanus*, whence perhaps the name of *Albania* came unto this people. 5 *Cyrus*, (by *Plutarch* called *Cyrus*) spoken of in *Armenia Major*, were more properly belonging to this Country; because here in it hath its Springs, and the greatest part of its course also. For rising out of the Mountain *Caucasus*, which flus up this Province on the North, it passeth thorough the midst of it, till it come to the borders of *Armenia*, where it beginneth to bend more towards the East; and having received into its Channel all the former Rivers, besides many others of less note, falleth with twelve mouths into the *Caspian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. Mountains of note here are not any, but what are common unto them with other Nations: the *Monte Maficius* on the South, and *Caucasus* upon the North, being rather common boundaries betwixt several Nations, than peculiar unto any one; though from the last the *Iberians*, and these *Albanians*, be in some Writers called *Caucasice* Gener.

Cities and Towns I find many in it, but little of them more than their very names: 1 *Chabata*, by *Pliny* called

*Cabalaca*, and honoured with the Character of *Insipia*. *Albania urbs*, the most noted City of this Country. 2 *Albana*, so called from the River *Albanus*, upon which it was seated. 3 *Telcha*, 4 *Namechia*. 5 *Thelbi*. 6 *Gerasa*, near unto the Influx of the River *Cyrus*. How these are called, or whether any thing be remaining of them, I am not able to say. The chief now being, and worthy to be so accounted, is the City of *Dorbert*, situate near the *Caspian* Sea; from which to *Tefis*, a City spoken of before, remain the foundations of a high and thick wall: affirmed to have been built by *Alexander the Great*, to defend these parts, against the irruptions of the Northern unconquered Nations. The Town environed with two walls, and so defended by difficult and narrow passages of the Rocks, that it is not easily accessible: but taken for all that, by *Mustapha* the *Turkish* General, Anno 1587, and made the ordinary residence of a *Turkish* Pasha. Conceived to be the *Caucasice* Porte of the Ancients, which *Pliny* honoureth with the title of *Ingeni natura miraculum*: by *Egyptus*, for the strength of it, called *Porta Ferrea*; with reference to which by the *Turks* called *Demir-cam*, the word signifying in their Language, A Gate of Iron. The other places of this Tract are either of no account and estimation, or else are specified before amongst the Cities and good Towns of the *Georgians*, of whose Country this is now a part: yet we may add, 2 *Sabran*, upon the borders of *Media*. 3 *Santia* *Maris*, North of *Dorbert*; both of them on, or near the banks of the *Caspian* Sea.

The first Inhabitants of this Country, seem to have been of the Plantation of *Geber* the Son of *Arax*, and Nephew of *Japhet*, whose memory was long preserved in the City of *Gerasa* before mentioned: So called by him, or some of his Posterity, in remembrance: or him. The People living somewhat out of the common road, were little troubled with Invaders from foreign parts; neither the *Persians*, nor *Macedonians*, looking so far North. Nor possibly had the *Romans* taken notice of them, had they not engaged themselves with *T. rans* first, and afterwards with *Mithridates*. Falling on *Pompey* with an Army of 40000, and well beaten by him, they were content to sue for peace. But finding that the *Iberians* also had took up Arms, they engaged again; levying an Army of 12000 Horse, and 90000 Foot, in which *Oroetes* their King, with his Brother *Cathis*, were in person present. And though they had made good the banks of the River *Cyrus*; yet being ill armed, and for the most part only with skins of beasts, they made but small resistance against the *Romans*: notwithstanding the gallant charge of *Cathis*, who assaulted *Pompey*, and had the honour to be slain by him in the place. After this overthrow, and their giving pledges unto *Pompey* for their good behaviour, we find little mention of them in the Stories of the *Roman* Empire, till the time of *Trajan*, who having conquered, and reduced *Armenia Major* to the form of a Province, resolved to shew his power to these neighbouring Nations; and to that end imposed a King on the *Albani*, of his own appointment, and made the Kings of *Colchis*, and *Iberia*, do their homage to him. In times succeeding no news of them; either because remote from the stage of Action, or serving under the command of some greater Nation, where their name occurs not. Conquered by *Occidan*, or *Haccata* the *Cham* of *Tartary*, together with *Iberia*, and *Armenia*, they were a while subject to that Empire: and passing in succeeding times by the name of *Georgians*, did partake of the same fortunes with them. Now at the mercy of the *Turks*, who by reason of the strong footing which he hath gotten amongst them, is become a dreadful neighbour to them; if not acknowledged by them for their Lord in chief.

R

Thus

Thus having taken a survey of all the Provinces of the Turkish Empire, both in Europe and Asia, and touched upon the means by which they are possessed of Egypt, whereunto all the rest of their hold in Africa, serves but for an accessory, we will now look upon the story of this people, their first original, the great success of their affairs, the Princes under whose command they have made these conquests: which having done, we will proceed to a Description of the Persons, Manners, and Conditions of the Turks themselves, their power and policy, with other things considerable in so great an Empire.

And first for the original of the Turkish Nation, they were most probably the descendants of those *Turce*, whom *Pliny* and *Pomponius Mela* place about the Fens of *Meotis*. Of whom thus *Mela*, speaking of the *Gelani*, a Scythian people, *juxta Thysagete*, *Turcæque, vastus Syllus occupant, alunturque venando*, &c. Next unto them (saith he) live the *Thysagete*, and the *Turce*, possessed of vast Woods, and maintained by hunting; and then a rough and desert Country with continual rocks, as far as to the *Arymphiæ*. And *Pliny* muttering up the barbarous Nations of those parts, joins the *Tissagete* (or *Thysagete*) with the *Turks*, and placeth them next the *Arymphiæ*, as *Mela* doth, *usque ad solitudines salustios valibus apertas*, spreading themselves unto the rough deserts and woody Valleys. Not known by action (though by name) till the time of *Liberius* the second, who began his Empire Anno 577, when pressing hard on the *Avars*, a neighbouring Nation, they compelled them to forsake their seats, and pass into Europe; where they made themselves Masters of *Pannonia*, now called *Hungary*. In the time of *Heraclius*, we find them, with other barbarous Nations, at the Siege of *Constantinople*, but under the command of the *Persians*. After which they began to set up for themselves, and in the year 763, made a road into those Countries which we last described; and loading themselves with prey and booty, returned home again. But liking better of these parts than their own poor dwellings, in the year 844, they brake once more thorow the *Caspian* Streights; and passing through *Iberia*, seized on *Armenia Major*, and there fixed themselves, giving it the name of *Turcomania*. In which wide and spacious Country they roamed up and down, without any certain habitation, removing their herds and families from one place to another, as they had formerly been used to do in the fens of *Meotis*; and as the *Tartars* and wild Arabs do unto this day. And so they lived, a poor and contemptible Nation, till *Mahomet* the Sultan of *Persia*, rebelling against his Lord and Master, the *Caliph* of *Babylon*, called in these *Turks* unto his aid; and by their help obtained a signal Victory. The Victory obtained, the *Turks* desire their Wages, and a fair dismissal; but could speed in neither, the *Sultan* being loth to part with such a necessary mischief, till his Affairs were better settled; and therefore shutting up the passages of the River *Araxes*, which he before had opened for them. Provoked wherewith, under the conduct of *Tangrolipix*, their principal Leader, they began to spoil and waste the Country; a multitude of needy people, and some of the discontented Souldiers, coming daily to them. Assaulted by the *Persians*, in the first battle they not only got a notable Victory, but such force of Armour, Horses, and other necessities, as made them able to encounter with the *Sultan* himself: whom having overthrown and slain in the second fight, *Tangrolipix* is by both Armies proclaimed *Sultan* or King of *Persia*, in the year 1030. or thereabouts.

There were at this time amongst the *Turks* two most noted Tribes; the *Selazucian*, and the *Oguzian*. Of the

*Selazucian*, *Tangrolipix*, *Cutlu Moser*, *Melech*, and *Ducat* were the Heads, of which, *Tangrolipix* as the chief of that *Clan* or Family, was settled in the Throne of *Persia*; *Cutlu Moser* furnished with an Army against the *Christians*, possessed himself of a great part of *Asia Minor*; *Melech* and *Ducat*, by the like favour of their Cousin the *Persian* Sultan, were vested into the Cities of *Altop* and *Damascus*, with their several Territories. But the Line of *Tangrolipix* and the rest being all worn out, as hath been shewn in our descriptions of *Syria*, and *Anatolia*, the man of most Nobility amongst the *Turks*, was *Ottoman* the chief of the *Oguzian* Family; Nephew of *Solyman* Prince of *Machan*, a small Territory in the Realm of *Persia*. Which *Solyman*, flying the fury of the *Tartars* when they conquered *Persia*, was drowned in crossing the River *Emphrates*, as he passed with few Subjects towards *Asia Minor*, the best place of refuge for his Nation; leaving the chief-ship of his Tribe to *Elnigul* his Son, who obtained of the last *Aladine* of the *Selazucian* Family, the Village of *Saguta* in *Bithynia*, for himself and his small handful of people. To him succeeded his Son *Ottoman*, in the year 1280. who to revenge some injuries done unto his people by the imprudent *Christians*, took from them *Castile* after *Castile*; and in the end possessed himself of the City of *Nice*, not long before the Imperial Seat of the *Greecian* Emperours. Emboldened with such great successes, and hearing of the death of *Aladine* the second, whom he acknowledged for his Lord, he took unto himself the Title of *Sultan*, Anno 1300. from which before he had obtained. To this time, and these small beginnings we must reduce the foundation of the *Ottoman* Empire; increased unto its present greatness, by the courage and good fortune of these Princes following.

#### The Kings of the Turkey of the Oguzian, or Ottoman Family.

- 1300 1 *Ottoman*, or *Osman* the Son of *Elnigul*, the first Turkish Sultan of this Line, added to his small Territory the greatest part of *Phrygia*, *Bithynia*, and some part of *Pontus*. 28.
- 1328 2 *Orchanes*, took the City of *Prusa*, and made it his residence; and was the first that had footing in Europe, where he got *Gallipolis*, and other pieces.
- 1350 3 *Amurath*, won the *Thracian Chiosse*, the strong City, of *Adrianople*, with the Countries of *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*; where he was slain by a common Souldier in the fields of *Cassova*. 23.
- 1373 4 *Bajazet*, made himself Master of a great part of *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Achaia*. He was taken Prisoner by *Tamerlane*, and brained himself in an Iron Cage, in which the insolent Conquerour used to carry him. 26.
- 1399 5 *Solyman*, the eldest Son of *Bajazet*, succeeded in the peaceable possession of the Turkish Provinces in Europe; but passing with an Army into *Asia*, for the recovery of those parts thereof usurped by *Mahomet* his youngest Brother, he was forced again into Europe, to make head against *Musa Bajazet* his third Son (employed by *Mahomet* in that diversion) who having there vanquished and slain him, Anno 1406, succeeded for a time in the Throne at *Adrianople*.
- 1404 6 *Mahomet*, the youngest Son of *Bajazet*, a vigilant and active Prince, first wrested from his Brother *Ija* (*Bajazet*'s second Son then living)

living) the City of *Prusa* with the Dominions thereunto belonging, thereupon taking to himself the Title of King or Sultan, by degrees recovered all which his Father had lost unto the *Tartars*: Afterwards making use of *Musa*, for the supplanting of *Solyman*, he followed him presently into Europe, where he fought with him, vanquished and slew him, about the year 1416. Thereby uniting in his own Person the whole Turkish Kingdom, which he enlarged with the more absolute Conquest of *Dacia*, part of *Slavonia*, and the rest of *Macedon*. 17.

1416 7 *Amurath* II. subdued from the *Constantinopolitan* Empire, all *Achaia*, *Thessaly*, *Epirus*; he shaked the State of *Hungary*, and died before the Walls of *Croy*. 34.

#### The Ottoman Emperours.

- 1450 8 *Mahomet* II. surnamed the Great, and first Emperour of the *Turks*, conquered the Two Empires of *Constantinople* and *Trabezond*, Twelve Kingdoms, and Two hundred Cities. 31.
- 1481 9 *Bajazet* II. subdued the *Cardanian* Kingdom, and part of *Armenia*, and drove the *Venicians* from *Moræa*, and their part of *Dalmatia*. 31.
- 1512 10 *Selimus*, having poisoned his Father, subverted the *Mamaliksky* of *Egypt*; bringing it, together with *Palestine*, *Syria*, and *Arabia*, under the yoke of the *Turks*. 7.
- 1519 11 *Solyman* II. surnamed the Magnificent, surprised *Rhodes*, *Belgrade*, *Buda*; with a great part of *Hungary*, *Babylon*, *Assyria*, *Mysopotamia*. 48.
- 1567 12 *Selimus* II. an idle and effeminate Emperour, by his Deputies took from the *Venicians* the Isle of *Cyprus*; and from the *Moors*, the Kingdom of *Tunis* and *Algiers*. 8.
- 1575 13 *Amurath* III. took from the disagreeing *Persian*, *Armenia*, *Media*, and the City *Tauris*; and the Fort *Guarino* from the *Hungarians*. 20.
- 1595 14 *Mahomet* III. took *Agria* in *Hungary*; which Kingdom in all likelihood had been lost, if he had pursued his Victory at the Battel of *Kerslure*. Never but then in any Battel, and then to frighted, that he durst never see the face of an Army afterwards.
- 1603 15 *Achmet*, who the better to enjoy his pleasures, made peace with the *German* Emperour, and added nothing to his Empire. 15.
- 1618 16 *Mustapha*, Brother to *Achmet* succeeded, which was a novelty, never before heard of in this Kingdom; it being the *Grand Seignieurs* common policy to strangle all the younger Brothers: howsoever this *Mustapha* was preserved, either because *Achmet* being once a younger Brother, took pity on him; or because he had no issue of his own Body, and so was not permitted to kill him.
- 1618 17 *Osman*, or *Ottoman* II. succeeded his Uncle *Mustapha*; and being unsuccessful in his War against *Poland*, was by the *Janizaries* slain in an uproar, and *Mustapha* again restored: yet long enjoyed he not his Throne; for the same hand that raised him, plucked

him down again, and seated young *Amurath* in the place.

- 1623 18 *Morad* (or *Amurath* the IV.) Brother of *Osman*, of the age of 13 years, succeeded on the second deposition of his Uncle *Mustapha*; who proved a stout and masculine Prince, and bent himself to the reviving of the ancient Discipline. To the great good of *Christendom*, he spent his stomach on the *Persians*, from whom he recovered *Babylon*.
- 19 *Ibrahim*, the Brother of *Morad*, preserved by the *Sultan*'s Mother in his Brothers life; and by her power deposed again for interdicting her the Court. He spent a great part of his Reign in the War of *Crete*, against the *Venicians*; but without any great success.
- 1648 20 *Mahomet* IV. Son of *Ibrahim*, now reigning: Lord of all this vast Empire, containing all *Dacia* and *Greece*, the greatest part of *Slavonia* and *Bithynia*, the Isles of the *Ægean* Sea, and a great part of the *Tarbarian Cherisones* in Europe; of all the Isles, and Provinces which we have hitherto described in *Asia*; and in *Africa* of all *Egypt*, the Kingdoms of *Tunis* and *Algiers*, with the Ports of *Suacum* and *Erocca*. Now is their stile inferior to so vast an Empire, *Solyman* thus styling himself in his Letter to *Villerius*, Great Master of the *Rhodes*, at such time as he intended to invade that Island; i. e. *Solyman King of Kings, Lord of Lords, most high Emperour of Constantinople and Trabezond, the most mighty King of Persia, Syria, Arabia, and the Holy Land; Lord of Europe, Asia and Africa; Prince of Mecca and Aleppo, Ruler of Jerusalem, and Sovereign Lord of all the Seas and Iles thereof*.
- As for the persons of the *Turks*, they are generally well-complexioned, of good stature, proportionally compacted, no idle talkers, nor doers of things superfluous; hot and vengeous, servile to their Prince, and zealous in their Religion. They nourish no hate upon their Heads, except it be a Tuft on the top of their Crowns, by which they think that *Mahomet* will snatch them up into Paradise at the day of Judgment. For which reason they keep on of all sides, though never so poor, accounting it an opprobrious thing to see any men uncover their heads; saying, when they dislike of any thing which they see, or hear, *I had as lief thou hadst shewn me thy bare Skull*. In their familiar salutation they lay their hands on their bosoms, and a little incline their Bodies; but when they accost a Person of Rank, they bow almost to the Ground, and kiss the hem of his Garment. Walking up and down they never use, and much wonder at the often walking of *Christians*. *Biddulph* relateth, that being at his ambulatory Exercise with his Companion, a *Turk* demanded of him whether they were out of their way, or their wits? If your way (quoth the *Turk*) lay toward the upper end of the Cloister, why come you downwards? If to the nether end, why go you back again? Shooting is their chief Recreation, which they also follow with much laziness, sitting on Carpets in the shadow, and sending some of their Slaves to fetch their Arrows. They prefer, as they pass the streets, the left hand before the right, as being thereby made Master of his Sword with whom they walk. As they shave their heads, or they wear their beards long, as a sign of freedom; but their Slaves keep their heads and close cut.
- The Women are of small stature, for the most part ruddy, clear, and smooth as the polished Ivory; as neither afflicted with the Weather, and often frequenting the Baths: of a very good Complexion, seldom going abroad, and then masked; lascivious within doors, pleasing in

matters of incontinency, and they are accounted most beautiful which have the greatest Eyes, and are of the blackest hue. Every Turk is permitted to have four Wives, and as many Slaves as he is able to keep; yet are they to meddle with none but their own, the offending woman being drowned, and the man dismembered. These Women live in great awe and respect of their Husbands, never sitting with him at the Table, but waiting till he hath done, and then withdrawing into some Room. If their Husbands hath been abroad, at his coming in they all rise from the stools whereon they fate, kiss his hand, and make an obeysance, and stand as long as he is in presence. The Children which they have, they carry not in their arms, as we do, but astride on their shoulders; they live immured from the sight of the World: and permit not their Male Children, nor not their own Sons, to come among them, after they are twelve years old. From their Husbands they cannot be divorced, but on special occasion: but the Husbands may put away their Wives, or give them to their Slaves, when and as often as they list. Far better is it with the Sisters or the Daughters of the Sultan; to whom when her Father or Brother becometh her on one of the Basses, he giveth her a Dagger, saying, *I give thee this man to be thy Slave or Bedfellow; if he be not Loving, Obedient, and Dutiful unto thee, I give thee here this Cantharus or Dagger, to cut off his head.* When they are married, their Husbands come not to bed unto them, till they are sent for, and then also they creep in at the beds feet. That every any of their Ladies made use of their Daggers, I could never read. Only I find, that *Lizide Bassa*, the chief man of the Empire next the Sultan himself, and of him very much beloved, having given his Wife, which was Sister to *Solyman the Magnificent*, a box on the Ear, was upon complaint by her made, thrust from all his honours, banished into *Macedonia*, and had doublets been slain, if the Emperours love, and his own merits had not pleaded for him. And this is all the Prerogative of the Sultan's Daughter; her Sons being accounted as meer and ordinary Turkey only, and never being preferred above the rank of a common Captain, for fear they should be apt to harbour some aspiring thoughts.

The better sort of the Turkey use the *Selavonian* Tongue, the vulgar speak the Turkish Language; which being originally the *Tartarian*, borrowed from the *Persian* their words of State; from the *Arabic*, their words of Religion; from the *Grecian*, their words or terms of War; and from the *Italian*, their terms of Navigation.

They were formerly Idolatrous Pagans, and were first initiated in *Mahometanism*, when they got the Sovereignty of the *Persian* Scepter. The degrees in their Religion are, 1. The *Saffi*, or *Noivies*. 2. The *Calli*, or Readers. 3. The *Hagi*, or Writers of Books; for Printing they use not. 4. The *Napi*, or young Doctors. 5. The *Caddi*, whereof there is at least one in every City to judge of offences. 6. The *Mudrisi*, who use to oversee the *Caddi*. 7. The *Medlis*, or principal Church-Governour under the *Misfi*. 8. The *Cadelefsi*, whereof there are only three; one of *Greece*, the other for *Anatolia*, the third for *Aegypt* and *Syria*; and these fit with the *Bassa* in the *Divano*, to determine of temporal suits. 9. The *Misfi*, whose Sentence in Law and Religion is uncontrollable. He abateeth not himself to sit in the *Divano*, nor affordeth more Reverence to the Emperour, than he doth to him.

His forces are either for the Sea, or the Land. His Sea-forces are great in regard of his spacious Sea-coasts, vast Woods, and number of Subjects. He never suffered but one memorable defeat, which was that at *Lepanto*; yet the next year he threw his Navy whole and entire. Gallies are his only Vessels, which being unable to cope

with Ships of any biggess, were not only the occasion of that overthrow, but also have heartened the *Florentine*, with six great Ships of War only, to swagger in the Seas; so that for more safety, the tribute of *Aegypt* is of late sent to *Constantinople* by Land. The Captain *Bassa*, or Admiral, notwithstanding, with a Navy of 60 Sail, makes a yearly progress about the Seas and Sea-Towns, to annoy th. enemy, (supposed Pirates, collect his tributes, and to redress the abuses committed in the maritime Towns, belonging to the Admiralty. Which annual circuit is begun in May, and ended in October.

Their Land-forces are either Horse or Foot. They which serve on Horse-back, are either the *Spahi*, or *Aspi*; these latter serving to weary the Enemies, and dull their Swords with their multitudes; of whose Bodies the *Janizaries* use to make Mounts, whereon to assault the walls of a besieged Town; and are by them so contemned, that a *Janizary* once sold two of them for a sheeps-head. As for the *Spahi*, they, till they are inrolled into pay, are of the same Original and Education with the *Janizaries*; and called by the same name, *Azameglans*. Their pay is ten Alpers a day. The *Turk* is able and doth maintain 150000 Horse at little or no cost, which no other Prince can do with 14 Millions of Gold. For whosoever any parcel of Land is conquered, it is divided into divers parts, and committed to the manuring of divers men; whom they call *Timariots*. These are to pay unto the Emperour certain Rents; and at their own charges, to fend to his Wars for many Horse, excellently appointed for the field; and which is the chief point of their service, to keep in awe the subjects, in all parts of his Empire. For being, as they are, dispersed in all quarters of his Dominions, the people can no sooner stir, but these will be assembled, and fall upon them. These *Timariots* are in all accounted 719000 fighting men, whereof 25700 have their abode in *Europe*, and 402000 in *Asia* and *Africa*. Were it not for these *Timariots*, as the *Turks* saying is, no Grass would grow where the *Grand Seignior* Horse hath once set his hoof; for if the care of manuring the ground were committed to the Peasants, and not to Military men, the greatest part of this Empire would grow waste and desolate. These *Timariots* were instituted by *Ottoman*, the first Turkish King of this Family; and a curse by him laid on them that should annihilate the Institution. The name is derived from the Turkish word *Timar*, signifying a stipend.

But the Nerves and Sinews of this warlike Body, are the *Janizaries*; who by Original being Christians are chosen by the Turkish Officers, every five years, out of his *European* Dominions; and so distributed abroad to learn the Language, Customs, and Religion of the *Turk*; afterward according to their strength, will, or disposition, placed in divers Chambers. They of the first Chamber are preferred, some to be *Chiansers*, such as go on Embassies, and execute Judgments; others to *Sauvicks*, or Governours of Cities; some to be *Basses*, or Commanders of Horsemen; and others to be *Beglerbegs*, (i. e. Lord of Lords) to command the rest in general. They of the other Chambers, are the *Janizaries*, or *Prætorian* Soldiers of the Guard; to whose Faith and Trust the care of the Emperours Person is committed. The titling of these young Springals is, as we have said, every fifth year; and often times, as occasions serve. By which means he not only directeth his own Subjects, and keepeth them from attempting any stir or innovation in his Empire; but spoileth all the Provinces he most feareth of the Flower, Sinews, and Strength of their People; choice being made of the strongest Youths only, and fitted for War. These, before they are inrolled in pay, are called *Azameglans*, and behave themselves with much

sub-

submissiveness towards their Seniors and Governours: but when once they are honoured with the title of *Janizaries*, they grow by degrees into an intolerable pride and haughtiness. Till of late they were not permitted to marry, neither now can any of their Sons be accounted any other than a natural *Turk*, (whom of all the rest they account the basest) the eldest only excepted: to whom this privilege was granted by *Amurath* the third, when he came to the Crown. They are in number 40000, of which 15000 are always resident in *Constantinople*. In this City they are diversly employed, being as *Contables* to see the peace kept; as *Clerks* of the Market, to feed to the weights and measures; as *Officers*, to arrest common Offenders; as *Wardens*, to look to the Gates, to guard the Houses of Embassadors, and to travel with Strangers for their more safety; in which charge they are very faithful. Their pay is but five Alpers a day, and two Gowns yearly; neither are their hopes great, the command of 10, 20, or 100 men being their greatest preferment: yet are they very obsequious to their Captain or *Agâ*, who is in place inferior to the meaneft *Bassa*, though in power perhaps above the chiefest. For the cratty *Turks* joy not Power and Authority; and if they observe the *Janizaries* to love and respect their *Agâ*, they quickly deprive him of Life and Office. The Founder of this Order was *Amurath* the first, Anno 1365, their greatest Establisher, *Amurath* the second: the name signifieth young Soldiers.

Now concerning these *Janizaries*, we will farther consider, 1. The sway they bear in designing the Successor. 2. Their Insolency towards the Emperour and his Officers. 3. Their behaviour in the vacancy of the Throne. And 4. Their Punishments.

1. Concerning the first, I never find any particular sway the *Janizaries* carried, in the designation of their Emperour, till the death of *Mahomet the Great*: when the *Bassa* having chosen *Corcut* the Son of *Bajazet*, were over-ruled by the *Agâ* and his *Janizaries*, who more inclined to *Bajazet* his Father, and Son to *Mahomet*. Though I am not ignorant that when this *Mahomet* succeeded in the Throne, the joyal acclamations made by the Soldiers, was accounted the chiefest sign of his secure and peruated Establishment. But the chief Instance of their power herein, was the inthronizing of *Selimus* the First, who being but the seventh Son of this *Bajazet*, was not preferred by them before his Brethren in his Fathers lifetime; but by their aids also he severally mastered them; and in the end paysoned his Father. To omit other Examples, even of late, Anno 1622, they slew the young Emperour *Osman*, drew his Uncle *Mustapha* out of Prison, and established him in the Royalty.

As for the next, the first Example in which I find them peccant toward their Prince, was at the beginning of the Reign of the above-mentioned *Bajazet*; when hearing of the intended death of *Achmet Bassa* whom they loved, they broke open the Court Gates, and told the Emperour, *They would teach him, like a Drunkard, a Lesson, and a Lesson as he was, to use his Great Place and Calling with more Sobriety and Discretion.* Not long after, conceiving further displeasure against the said *Bajazet*, they took their Weapons against him, and refused to without great and vile submission on his part, appeased. Against *Selimus* the First they also mutined, when being resolved to winter in *Armenia*, for the better pursuit of his Victories against the *Persian*, he was by them forced to turn home unto *Constantinople*. Against *Solyman* they mutined violently, that they compelled him to displace *Ruffan*, his chief *Bassa* or Favourite. Against *Amurath* the

third, for placing over them a new *Agâ*, they so strongly opposed themselves, that first they set fire on *Constantinople*, and burnt therein, besides Shops and Ware-houses, twenty five great Inns, seven Temples, and 5000 Houses; and in the end contrained him to give them money, and to yield also into their hands two of his chief Counsellors, by them supposed to be their Adversaries, whom they drew about the streets. Finally, (to omit the tumult 1622. above-named) in the year 1602, they grew so discontented with *Mahomet* the third, that they not only threatened to destroy the principal Officers of the Court, and the banishment of the Sultan's Mother, but the depoling of himself also.

3. Now for the third, I find it to have been the custom of these *Janizaries*, between the Deaths of an Old Emperour, and the Beginning of a New, to commit divers Insolencies; as the rifling of the Houses of the *Jens* and *Christians*, among whom they dwell; the murdering of the *Basses*, and principal men about the Court, whom they suspected not to have favoured them; and a number of the like outrageous mischiefs. Of these we find frequent mention, as after the death of *Amurath* the second, and *Mahomet the Great*: at which last time the Merchants of *Constantinople*, being natural *Turks*, escaped not their ravenous hands; neither could *Mahomet-Bassa* avoid the fury of their Swords. This spoil they took for to certain a due, that if they were disappointed of it, they would presently raise Commotions both in Court, Field and City; unless some present satisfaction were made them. To this end, *Achmet* distributed among them two millions and a half of Ducats; *Selimus* the first, two millions; others made an increase of their daily pay. But *Selimus* the second, distributing among them 100000 *Sulhanis* only, was by them prohibited to enter into his *Seraglio*, till he had enlarged his bounty; and the *Great Basses* were rapped about the Pate with their Calivers, for perfwading them to quietness. Now to prevent the dangerous and factious Liberty, which in the vacancy of the Empire was usually committed, the Death of the old Emperour was with all secrecy concealed, till the arrival of the New. To omit others, I will instance in the deaths of *Mahomet* the first, and *Solyman* only. This *Solyman* died at the siege of *Sieghin* in *Hungary*, which was so cunningly concealed by *Mahomet-Bassa* the space of twenty days; that before the *Janizaries* knew of it, his Son *Selimus* had possessed himself of *Constantinople*, and came also to their Army then in retreat homewards. For this *Mahomet* privately strangled the Physicians and Apothecaries, which knew of his death; commanded the Soldiers to go on in their sieges; and divers times shewed them the Emperour sitting in his Horse-litter, as (being troubled with the Gout) he used to do; and when the City was taken, marched home with his dead Body, sitting still in the same manner. So after the death of *Mahomet* the First, the *Basses* of the Court called their *Divan*es as formerly they used; gave order for the levying of an Army, as if some War were intended; and the Kings Physicians went up and down with their Potions, as if they had him still in cure. But the Pensioners and *Janizaries* mifdoubting the matter, with all eagerness desired to fee him; which when the *Bassa* durst not deny, they appointed the next day for their visit. The next day, the body was appended in Royal large Robes; placed in a Chair at the end of a long Gallery, and a little Boy cunningly fed behind him, to move the Kings hand to his head, as if he should stroke his beard, as his manner was; which signs of life and strength the Soldiers seeing, held themselves contented, and so was his death concealed the space of 41 days.

4. As for the last, These insolent and unassurabable pranks

pranks, committed so commonly by these mettlesome slaves, to exceedingly stomach *Bajazet* the second, that he secretly purposed with himself, for curing so dangerous a distaste, to use a desperate remedy; which was to kill and destroy suddenly all the *Janissaries*. It is like that *Bajazet*, being a Scholar, had read how *Constantine the Great* had called the *Prætorian* Souldiers, and destroyed their Camp, as men that were the cause of all the fire in his Empire, and whose pride was come to an intolerable height: and having the same cause to destroy his *Janissaries*, hoped to have done it with as much ease and safety as the other did. But they having notice of the Plot, for the time continued to united and linked together, that he durst not then attempt it; and afterward siding with his Son *Selimus*, cast him out of his Throne into his grave. Since which time the Emperours never durst punish them openly; but when any of them proveth delinquent, he is sent privately in the night-time to *Pers* over against *Constantinople*: where, by the way he is drowned, and a Piece of Ordnance flung off, to signify the performing of the *Sultan's* command.

Now for the Emperours themselves, we will consider them in matters of pleasure, in matters of Ceremony, and in matters of State: the last being considerable in three main points, which are, the murdering of their Brethren, the removing of their Sons, their Revenue; and therein a touch of their Government. To these we will add, what apparent symptoms may be observed to prognosticate the standing, decaying, and increasing of this puissant Monarchy.

1. For the first, he hath not so few as 500 (sometimes 1000) choice Virgins kept in a *Seraglio* by themselves, all Slaves born of Christian Parents, and indeed the Rarest Beauties of his Empire. When he is disposed to take his pleasure with any of them, they are all ranked in a Gallery; and the is by the *Age* of the Women prepared for his Bed, to whom he giveth his Handkercher. She that beareth him the first Son, is honoured with the title of *Sultaneffe*, (Queen-Mother we may call her) neither can he make any of them free, unless he marry them. When the *Sultan* dieth, all his Women are carried into another *Seraglio*, where they are strictly looked to, and liberally provided for, and not seldom times are bellowed by the succeeding *Sultan*, on his Great *Bassae*, and such as he chiefly favoureth, which is a principal honour. They are attended on by Women and Eunuchs; they being not gelded only, but deprived of all their Genitals, and supplying the uses of Nature with a Silver Quill; which inhumane custom was brought in among them by *Selimus* the second, because he had seen a Gilding cover a Mare.

2. These Ceremonies are either performed by them, which is for the most part the building of a *Mosche* only to help to the Salvation of their Souls; or towards them by others, which are most apparent in the entertainment of Embassadors. For when such come to his presence, they are led between two of his Courtiers, and coming before the Throne (on both sides whereof the *Bassae* sit with admirable silence, resembling rather *Statues* than men) they bow themselves to the ground with all humility: laying their hands on their breast, but never uncovering their heads, which (as we noted before) is counted an undecency. When they are to depart, they go all backwards; it being accounted very irreverent to turn their back-parts towards a Prince so glorious. The reason why they are thus brought in between two, is said to be for their greater honour: but is indeed a fear they have, lest the *Grand Seigneur*, under the pretence of a Salutation, or the delivery of an Embassage, should be flabbed, which wariants they have used, ever since the time that *Miles*

*Cabellus*, a *Servian*, scrambling from among the slain at the battle of *Cassius*, and being admitted to the speech of *Amurath* the first, the Author of that overthrow, flabbed him into the belly with his Dagger.

3. Amongst all the Jars and Discontents that be, none have been with more unkindness begun, or more eagerness prosecuted, than those of Brothers; and that not only in private Families, but in the Items of Princes: the multitude of Pretenders, being the Original of most Civil Wars. To prevent these publick Emotions, the Emperours of *Habsburg* use to immure up all their younger Children in the Hill *Amara*; the *Persians* do put out the Eyes of their younger Brothers; and the *Turks* do murder them. Strange and horrid courses, whereby to avoid the fear of a War in the State, they stir up a War in their own Bowels. The first amongst the *Turks* that began this barbarous cruelty, was *Bajazet* the first, on his Brother *Jacup*; whom immediately after his Fathers death, he strangled with a Bow-string: this being the only instrument of their *Fratricide*, because thereby none of the blood-royal of *Ottoman* is spilt on the ground. After him, *Mahomet the Great* caused his young Brother, then an nurse, to die the death; and was not without much ado perswaded from being the Executioner himself. *Amurath* the third, caused his five brethren to be at once strangled before his face; and *Mahomet*, his Son, no fewer than nineteen in one day. By this course they imagine their own Estate to be infinitely secured, as knowing that *Mustapha* a younger Son, stirred a Rebellion against *Amurath*; and *Zemer*, against *Bajazet*; both the second of those names: that *Solyman*, *Musa*, and *Isa*, severally afflicted *Mahomet* the first; and *Corcut*, *Selimus*, the first of these names also. But yet they will not know, that nothing sooner putteth their younger Brothers into the acts of Hostility, than an inevitable Certainty of a violent and unnatural Death: Whereas were they but free of Life, and a Liberal and Princely Maintenance, it is more than probable, they would rest content, as in other Kingdoms the younger Princes do. And notwithstanding their barbarous Policy, they are not quite free from fear, as knowing the *Counterfeits* have heretofore much disturbed the quiet of their Predecessors: for thus we find *Amurath* the second to have been vexed by one, that took upon him the name of *Mustapha*, elder brother to *Mahomet*, then late deceased; who was much furthered and aided by the Greek Princes. This hath been one of the vulgar policies of Princes to kindle flames of sedition in their neighbours Countreys. In the infancy of the *Roman* Empire, we find a counterfeit *Agrippa*; a counterfeit *Nero*; and before them, two counterfeit *Alexanders* in *Syria*. But never was Realm so often troubled with these Mock-Kings, as England: a counterfeit *Richard* the Second, being made in the time of *Henry* the Fourth; a counterfeit *Mortimer*, in the time of *Henry* the Sixth; a counterfeit Duke of *Tork*, a counterfeit Earl of *Warwick*, under *Henry* the Seventh; and a counterfeit *Edward* the Sixth, under Queen *Mary*. To prevent these walking Spirits, *Mahomet* the Third laid out the dead bodies of his Father and nineteen Brethren, as a common Spectacle for all that passed by, or would come to behold them. Of late indeed the *Grand Seigneur* *Mustapha* miraculously escaped the Bow-string twice; 1. When his Brother *Achmet*, and 2. When *Osman* his young Nephew were made *Sultans* and was the first in this Empire that ever did succeed in the collateral Line, as *Ibrahim* the late *Sultan* was the second, on the death of *Morat* or *Amurath* the Fourth, his elder Brother.

4. The removing of the young Princes is done for three Reasons: 1. To wean them from the pleasures of the Court. 2. To train them up in Armes, and inure them to hard-

hardness. 3. And principally to avoid the danger of a Competitor, whereof old Princes are especially jealous. The common places designated to this Princely exile, are *Amelia*, in *Cappadocia*; *Magnesia*, in *Lydia*; and such like Towns of *Natolia*. Neither do the old *Sultans* by such a great distance think themselves secure altogether, but carry a vigilant eye over their Sons actions, and have intelligence of almost every particular thought, the least suspicion being cause sufficient to destroy them. So we find *Mustapha*, Son to *Solyman*, the hopetullest branch that ever sprang from the *Ottoman* tree, to have been shamefully strangled by the command of his Father; upon a rumour only of a Marriage, which he was said to have negotiated with the *Persian* King's Daughter. When these Princes are once settled in their Government, it is a crime meriting no less punishment than death, to depart thence, and come unto *Constantinople*, before their Fathers Death; or unless they are by their Fathers sent for. Of this we have a Tragical example in *Mahomet*, a Prince of great hope, Son to *Bajazet* the second: who desiring to see the fashion of his Fathers Court, left *Magnesia*, to which he was by his Father confined, and attended by two or three Gentlemen, came in the habit of a Sea-faring man to *Constantinople*, and having obtained his desire, he returned to his charge. This strange action being quickly divulged abroad, and by divers variously interpreted, stirred such jealousies in the suspicious head of his old Father, that he took order not long after to have him secretly poisoned.

5. As for the ordinary revenue, it consisteth either in money received, or in money saved. The money saved, is first by the *Tartars*, of whom he commands continually 60000 to attend him in his Wars, without any pay but the Spoil of the Enemy. And secondly by the *Timanians*, who nourish and bring into the Field more Horse, than any Prince in Christendom can keep (as we have already said) for 14 millions of Gold. The money received (according to *Boterus*) is only 15 millions of *Saltines*, which is nothing in respect of so great an Empire. The chief reason whereof is the tyrannical government of the *Turks*, which deters men from tillage, merchandize, and other improvements of their estates; as knowing all their gettings to lie at the *Grand Seigneur's* mercy. His extraordinary revenue is incredible. For besides that no Embassador cometh before him empty-handed; no man is Master of his own wealth, further than it stands with the Emperours liking: so that his great *Bassae* are but as sponges, to suck up riches till their Coffers swell; and then to be squeezed into his Treasury. These men, as he advanceth without envy, so can he destroy without danger: no man here hoping for partakers, if he should resist, as not being ignorant that one mans fortune is built on the desired overthrow of another. Such riches as they gain, if they hap to die naturally, return to the Emperour's Coffers; who giveth only what he pleaseth to the Children of the deceased: These *Bassae* have in their particular Provinces, their *Divaners*, or Law-Courts, where justice hath been administered formerly with great integrity, but now not a little corrupted; yet the comfort is, that such as miscarry in their right, shall without delay know what to trust to: and the *Bassae* upon complaint to the Emperour, are sure to die for it. Over these *Bassae* (the chief of whom is the *Vizier Bassa*, or President of the Council) preside two *Beglerbegs*, one for Greece, the other for *Natolia*.

6. Concerning the present state of the Empire, many judge to be rather in the wane, than the increase; which judgment they ground upon good reasons, whereof these are the chief.

1. The body is grown too monstrous for the head, the

*Sultans* since the death of *Solyman*, never accompanying their Armies in person (except *Morat*, or *Amurath* the fourth) but rioting and waiting their bodies and treasures at home.

2. The *Janissaries*, who have been accounted the principal strength of this Empire, are grown more factious in the Court, than valiant in the Camp: corrupted with ease and liberty, drowned in prohibited wines, enfeebled with the continual converse of women, and fallen from their former austerity of discipline.

3. They have of late given no increase unto their Dominions; and as in the paths of virtue, *Non progressi est regredi*, so in Empires, by violence gotten, when they cease to be augmented, they begin to be diminished.

4. Rebellions have in these latter times been in this Empire strangely raised, and mightily supported; which commotions the former *Sultans* were never acquainted with.

5. The greatness of this Empire is such, that it laboureth with nothing more then the weightiness of it self; so that it must in a manner needs decline, *Pondere pressa*, so overburdened with its own mightiness. For as in a natural body, a surfeit killeth more then fasting; so in the body Politick also, too much extent of Empire doth sooner draw on a ruine, than either too little or a mediocrity.

6. The Sons of the *Grand Seigneur*, whose bravery of mind is ever suspected by their Fathers, are nursed up (contrary sometimes to their natural inclinations) in all effeminacy, which once rooted in them in their youth, doth always after subject them to the softness and baseness of libidinous pleasures.

7. They have lost much of that fear and terror, which formerly their very name did carry with it: inso much that not the *Venetians* only have by Sea often mated, and once overthrown them; the *Hungarians* withstood their greatest forces, for the space of 200 years, by land; the *Polonians* forced them to dishonourable retreat and composition: but the poor Prince of *Transylvania* did divers times discomfit them, with the death of many of their *Bassae*: the *Florentines* with six ships only, intercepteth their trade; and the poor *Emir* of *Sidon* held it out against them many years together.

8. By the avarice and corruption reigning in the Court, all Peace and War, all Counsels and Informations, all Injuries and Favours, being now made saleable. And

9. It is visible and apparent, that their Empire was long since at the height: *Et naturaliter quod procedere non potest, recedit*, as *Vellius* hath it, when an Empire can ascend no higher, by the ordinary course of nature, it must have a fall. All these are more than probable Prognosticks of a sinking Monarchy: and yet there is a greater then any of these, that is to say, the present state of Affairs. The young Emperour *Mahomet* the fourth, now reigning, is but a weak staff to support so vast an Empire; considering not only the infinite casualties, to which children are naturally subject: but the dangers which he may justly fear from a Rebellious Souldiery, and a Factious Court. Who by the murder of one Emperour, and the deposition of two, have made themselves so formidable, but withall so odious in the sight of the Imperial Houle, that there is no way left to save them from a merited vengeance, but to translate the Empire to some other Family; though by the rooting out of this, which whenever it shall happen, either by the natural death or unnatural destruction of the present *Sultan*, it will draw with it an extermination of the *Ottoman* Race, which I look on as a matter not to be avoided, except by miracle. Supposing then the Line of *Ottoman* to fail (as it is most probable that it will) what will become of this vast Empire? Thrice they will be to offer



at it, viz. the *Crim-Tartars*, the *Janizaries*, and the *Bassies*. And first the *Crim-Tartar* may plead a composition, made by his Ancestors, with the Princes of the *Ottoman* Family; which is, that he supplying them with 60000 men at his own charges, when their occasions so require, should on the failure of the heirs males succeed in this Empire. Besides which, he may hope for no small succours, not only from the rest of the *Tartarian* Princes, but even from the *Great Chan* himself, to recover his Estate herein, if withheld from him: thereby to add to the present greatness and renown of the *Tartars*, the access of such a spacious Empire. 2. The *Bassies* may conceive no small possibilities, of dividing this great Empire among themselves, partly by the example of *Alexander's* Captains, who after their Masters death (there being yet some of the Blood Royal remaining) parted amongst themselves not only the new-gotten Provinces, which they had conquered from the *Persians*; but even the Kingdom of *Macedon*, his old Inheritance: partly by an example in their own Histories, by which it appeareth, that after the death of *Aladine* the second, *Caraman*, *Saracban*, *Chindin*, *Carasus*, and the rest of the more powerful Commanders, divided among them the whole *Turkish* Kingdom in the *Lesser Asia*: and partly by the opportunity which they have as Governours in their several Provinces, and having so many bands of Soldiers under their command; which may easily invest them as Proprietaries in those Estates, of which they have already such a fair possession. And so we find the *Sultans*, or Provincial Governours, or the *Caliphs* of *Babylon*, to have done before them. 3. The *Janizaries* may also build their hopes on as fair foundations, as being the Sword and Buckler of the *Ottoman* Empire; got, and maintained by their valour chiefly. Who to excite them to the enterprise, have the example of the *Pretorian* Guards of the *Roman* Empire (a body far more Politick and better compacted than this is;) who out of their own company created the far greater part of the *Roman* Emperours, neither the Provinces or Senate daring to oppose them in it. But above all examples, that of the *Mamaluks* of *Egypt* doth make fairest for them; who were born of Christian Parents, as these are; appointed for the Guard of the *Sultans*, as these are; purposely entertained and inured to the Wars, to take from the natural Subjects, the use of Arms, as these are; men of approved Valour, and the chief Bulwark of that Kingdom against the Christians,

as these are; and then why may they not be like them in this last attempt, for sitting in their Masters Throne, as these *Mamaluks* did? Alike heretofore, that they are already (in a manner) possessed of *Constantinople*, the head Town and heart of the Empire; and their hopes are not vain. For my part I hold them to be the men most likely to carry it, unless the Princes of Christendom laying aside private malice, joyn all in Arms to strip this proud Peacock of his feathers: and (upon so blessed an advantage) to break in pieces with a rod of Iron, this insolent and burdensome Monarchy. A thing rather to be desired than expected. But this by way of supposition, and as in a dream, I awake again.

The Ensign of this Empire (or Arms of it) is the *Croissant*, or half Moon; but how blazoned I cannot tell you: nor are the Learned yet resolved on the beginnings of that bearing. Some derive it to them, from the Eastern Gentiles, who worshipped the Moon under both Sexes, as we learn in *Spartianus*. Some make it common to them with the other *Mahometans*; and they derive it from a pretended miracle of *Mahomet*; who to show his power, is said to have made the Moon fall into his lap in two pieces, and to have restored her whole again to the heavens. Others are of opinion, that it was taken by the *Grand Seigneur* at the winning of *Constantinople*, *Ut signum victæ gentis penes quam Orientis imperium esset*. And of this mind is *Justus Lysius*, induced thereto as it seemeth, by the figure of the *Croissant*, born in some old *Byzantine* Coins. A pretty plausible conceit; and therefore till we have a better, may pass as current as the money.

And thus much I thought convenient to insert in this place, concerning the original, proceeding, and continuance; the natural dispositions, policies, and forces of the *Turks*: this being as the only Province which retaineth their name; so both the first they were possessed of, and the last which they have fully conquered, of all their Dominions. Which said, we must here take our leave of the *Turkish* Empire, and once again of the *Roman* also, of which the River *Tigris* and the *Caspian* Sea were the utmost bounds; not meeting again with either of them, unless by accident (or some unprofitable expeditions) till we come to *Egypt*, and there we shall hear further of them.

And thus much for *TURCOMANIA*.

OF



## OF MEDIA and PERSIA.



Here I have joyned together also, because the affairs thereof have been so united, in making up the second of the four great *Monarchies*, and running the same fortunes ever since; that they are hardly to be parted in course of story, though each must have into it self a distinct *Chorography*. First then, we begin with *MEDIA*.

*MEDIA* is bounded on the East, with *Parthia*, and some part of *Hyrcania*, Provinces of the *Persian* Empire; on the West, with *Armenia Major*, and some part of *Assyria*; on the North, with the *Caspian* Sea, and those parts of *Armenia Major*, which now pass in the account of *Georgia*; and on the South, with *Persia*. So called from *Mada* the Son of *Japhet*, by whom first planted and possessed, after that general dispersion made at *Babel*. Known by this name amongst the Ancients, both *Greeks* and *Romans*; but at this time *Sherwan* by the *Turks* and *Persians*: the word signifying in the language of this Country, a *Milkie-Plain*.

The Country of a large extent, and of so different nature, as one would think it not the same. The North parts lying betwixt *Mount Taurus* and the *Hyrcanian* Sea, very cold and comfortless: so barren, that for the most part they make their bread of dried *Almonds*, and their drink of the juice of certain herbs. Fruit-trees they have but few, and those but of Apples; nor any droves of tame Cattel, as in other places, their food being generally on *Vegetables*, or the flesh of wild beasts took in hunting. But on the South-side of the *Taurus*, the soil is very rich, and the Country pleasant, plentiful both of Corn and Wine, and all things necessary; full of fat Pastures, some of them so large in compass, that 50000 Horses do graze upon them.

The People anciently great Warriours, as those who ruined the great Empire of the *Babylonians*; and laid upon themselves and their own virtue, the foundation of the second *Monarchy*. But being not long after incorporated into the same Empire with the *Persians*, have not only ever since followed the same fortunes with them, but participate of their nature also: and therefore we shall hear more of their *Charaeter*, when we come to *Persia*. Polygamy anciently amongst them, so far from being esteemed a sin or an inconvenience, that it was a punishment for the common *Villager* to have less than seven Wives; or the Woman, if of noble birth, fewer than five Husbands. In their Wars they use commonly to envenom their Arrows with an oil or liquor, made of a bituminous water called *Naphtha*, whereof there is great plenty both here, in *Persia*, and *Assyria*. The oil called *Oleum Medicum*, from this people only, because their invention; and by them most mischievously used. The Arrow which was anointed with it, being shot from a *Slacker Bow*, (for a swift and strong motion took away

its vertue) did burn the flesh wherein it fastned, with so great a violence, that nothing but dust could mitigate the fury of it; water increasing rather than diminishing that malignant flame.

The *Christian Religion* was first here planted by *St. Thomas*, but never had the happiness to be so universally embraced, as in other places; always opposed and suppressed, either by *Paganism*, in the time of the old *Persian* Kings; or by *Mahometanism*, since the first conquest of this Country by the power of the *Saracens*. Some *Christians* yet there be amongst them either of the *Armenian*, or *Nestorian* Sects, (as in all other parts of the *Persian* Empire) the specialties of whose Religion have been elsewhere spoke of. Here live also very many *Jews*, indulged the free exercise of their Religion: many of which are Descendants of those Tribes, which were transplanted hither by *Salmanasser*. But the Religion generally embraced and countenanced, is that of *Mahomet*, according to the *Sophian* or *Persian* Sects; the Language of which Nation they do also speak, though they had a Language of their own, different from that of the *Parthians*, *Elamites*, or *Persians*, as appeareth *Atlas* 2. 9. where they are reckoned as distinct.

Mountains of chief note, 1. *Orontes*, 2. *Coronus*, 3. *Chaboras*, the boundary betwixt *Media* and *Assyria*, 4. *Jafonium*, 5. *Lagon*; all of them (except *Chaboras* only) the disjoynted branches of *Mount Taurus*: which is here more broken and divided, than in any part of his course besides.

Out of these flow their principal Rivers, 1. *Amavudus*, 2. *Sirate*, and 3. *Carindus*; of greatest eminence in this Country, in the time of *Ptolemy*, but otherwise of no great account or observation. 4. *Gates*, the Divider of this Province from *Armenia Major*; but whether any of the former under this new name, I am not able to affirm. Add hereto the great Lake, now called *Argis*, (by the *Persians* *Vallibian*) but by *Strabo* named *Martiana Palus*, situate in the Confinnes of *Assyria*, *Media*, and *Armenia*; of the Fish whereof dried by the Sun and wind, and sold into divers other Countries, the people of these parts raise a great commodity.

In former times it was divided into many *Præinties*, the principal of which 1. *Tropatene*, 2. *Chorambirene*, 3. *Da-rister*, 4. *Marciane*, 5. *Amariace*, and 6. *Syro-Media*: these and the rest reduced to two in the later reckonings, viz. *Atropatia*, and 2. *Media Major*.

1. *ATROPATIA* is that part hereof, which lieth betwixt *Mount Taurus* and the *Caspian* Sea. So called from that *Atropatus*, Governour of these parts in the time of *Darius*, the last *Persian* Monarch; who so valiantly held out against the *Macedonians*. The *Tropatene*, (as I take it) of the ancient Writers. A barren, cold, and inhospitable Country, as before described; and for that cause allotted for the dwelling of many of the Captive *Israelites*, brought hither by *Salmanasser* when he conquered that Kingdom: their numbers being found so

great in this Northern Region, that *Benjamin* the Jew, reckoned no fewer than 50000 of them in one City only, which he calleth by the name of *Madai*. And that great numbers of them were transplanted hither, appeareth by that passage, 2 *Kings* 17. 6. where it is said, that they were placed in *Halab* and *Habor* by the River of *Gozan*, and in the Cities of the Medes. Now *Halab* or *Chalab* seems most probably to be that Region of *Affrica* which *Ptolemy* calleth *Chalaten*, in the North of that Country, towards *Media*, *Habor*, or *Chabor*, to be that Mount *Chabernus*, which parteth this Country from *Affrica*, in which Mountainous tract there was in those times a City of the same name also. Betwixt which City and the Banks of the *Caspian* Sea, I find in *Ptolemy* the City of *Gauzan*, in the 40<sup>th</sup> and 40 *minutes* of the Northern Latitude: in which there are apparent footsteps of the name of the River *Guzan*, upon whose banks it was most likely to be seated.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Hamadani*, by *Benjamin* the Jew called *Madai*, replenished in his time with families of the captive *Israelites*. 2 *Gauzan*, another dwelling of those Tribes, spoken of before. 3 *Mandagarsi*, of which nothing extant but the name. 4 *Gelan*, inhabited by *Gela* of the Ancients, whom the Greek call *Cadusi*. 5 *Bochu*, more towards the *Caspian* Sea, hence called *Mare de Bochu*. 6 *Eres*, a place of great strength, but possessed by the *Turks*, and made the residence of some of their principal Officers: taken by *Musapha* General of the *Turkish* Forces, in the time of *Amurath* the third, and by him fortified as the Gate and entrance of this Country. 7 *Samachia*, or *Shamak*, betwixt *Eres* and *Derbent*, taken by *Osmán Basha*, at the same, Anno 1578 and made the residence of a Beglerbeg, Anno 1583. Conceiv'd to be the *Cyropolis* of *Ptolemy*, by the *Persians* called *Cyrecchata*; bearing the name of *Cyrus* the great *Persian* Monarch, by whom built or beautified. Remarkable at the present for a Pillar of *Eliostones*, inter-woven with the heads of many of the *Persian* Nobility, most barbarously slain by one of the late *Sultans*, and this Pillar here erected for a terror to others.

2. MAJOR MEDIA, or MEDIA specially so called, is that part hereof, which lieth on the South of the Mountain *Taurus*. Commended by the Ancients, for one of the goodliest Countries in all *Asia*: the fields (saith *Ammianus*) yielding abundance of Corn and Wine, for their fatness and fertility very rich, and no less pleasant for fresh Springs and clear veins of water: where one may see plenty of green Meadows; and in them a breed of generous Horses, which they call *Nisai*, mounted by as valiant and generous Riders, who with great jollity use to go unto the Wars, and charge furiously upon the Enemy. The men commended by *Polybius* (ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ πολεμικοί, &c.) as well as the Country.

Cities of note in it, 1 *Ecbatana*, of as great antiquity as *Babylon*; for we find that *Semiramis* the wife of *Ninus*, in a War made against the Medes, who had then rebelled, taking an affection to the place, caused water-courses to be made to it from the further side of the Mountain *Orontes*, digging a passage through the hills, with great charge and labour. Destroyed by the injury of time, it was re-edified by *Deiaces* the sixth, King of the Medes: and afterwards much beautified and enlarged by *Selenius* *Nicanor*, successor unto *Alexander* in his *Asian* Conquests. For beauty and magnificence little inferior to *Babylon*, or *Ninive*, before described. In compass 180 or 200 Furlongs, which make about 24 Italian miles. The walls thereof affirmed in the Book of *Judith*. to be 70 Cubits high, 50 Cubits broad, and the Towers upon the Gates 100 Cubits higher; all built of hewn and po-

lished stone, each stone being six Cubits in length, and three in breadth. But this is to be understood only of the innermost wall, there being seven in all about it; each of them higher than the other, and each distinguished by the colour of their several Pinnacles, which gave unto the eye a most gallant Prospect. From which variety of colours, it is thought to have the name of *Aghaba*, or *Aghabana*. In former times, the ordinary residence of the Monarchs of the Medes and *Persians*, in the heats of the Summer; as *Susa* (the chief City of *Susana*) in the cold of Winter. The Royal Palace being about a mile in compass, was built with all the cost and cunning that a stately Mansion did require: some of the beams thereof of Silver, and the rest of Cedar; but those of Cedar strengthened with Plates of Gold. Said by *Joseph* to be built by the Prophet *Daniel*. Which must be understood no otherwise in the truth of Story, than that it overlaw the Workmen, or contrived the Model; appointing to that office by *Darius Medus*, to whom the building of the same is ascribed by others. Neglected by the Kings of the *Parthian* Race, it became a ruin. 2 *Tauri*, situate in or near the place of *Ecbatana*, out of which rubbish it was built. Distant 150 miles from the *Caspian* Sea, under the shadow of *Orontes*, now called *Korma*; but opening Southwards, towards a large and spacious Campaign, in compass about six miles, and beautified on the South-west within a large and pleasant Garden, the work of *Sultana Tamar*, who resided here often: the buildings for the most part of Brick, with flat Roofs (as common in all the East) well peopled, as containing 200000 persons of all sorts and Sexes. Of great trading, till subdued by the *Turks*, by whom it was thence taken within very few years, viz. by *Selimus* the first, Anno 1514. by *Solyman* the Magnificent, Anno 1530. and by *Osmán Basha*, General of *Amurath* the third, Anno 1585. But this last finding it too chargeable always to be guarded, and not otherwise tenable but by force, pulled down the Walls, and built a large and capacious Citadel: both Town and Citadel recovered by *Emir-Humei-Nirza*, Prince of *Persia*, and Father of *Sultana Sophy*, Anno 1614. after it had been for an hundred years a continual prey unto the *Turks*. 3 *Arasata*, so named by *Ptolemy*, and by the name conjectured to be built by some of the *Parthian* Race. Ruined long since, but more beautifully revived than ever in the present 4 *Casbin*, raised from the ruins of that Town. Situate in a fair and open place on the banks of a little River, which serveth it for household uses, but not for traffick. Exceedingly enriched by the removal of the Court from *Tauris* hither, in the time of *Tamur*; partly invited therunto by the richness of the soil, and the commodiousness of the place; but chiefly that he might without danger attend the *Turks*, who began to encroach on his Dominions. In compass about seven miles, beautified with a large Market-place, many stately Mosques, and the *Sultans* Palace; but neither of joyning to the first, convenient enough, but neither of great state nor beauty. 5 *Rages*, or *Raga*, mentioned in the Book of *Tobit*, so called from *Reu* (i. *Ragu* the son of *Phaleg*, the founder of it: situate near the *Plains* of before; and therefore in that Book called the *Plains* of *Rages*. Repaired afterwards by the Greeks, it was named *Enropus*, and so stands in *Ptolemy*. 6 *Najifan*, supposed by some to be the *Arasata*, more probably named by the of the Ancient Writers: a place much aimed at by the *Turks* in their *Persian* Wars. 7 *Ardevon*, or on near the banks of the great Lake *Argis*, spoken of before: the birth-place and chief Seat of *Guine*, and *Aider*, the first Authors of the *Sophian* Sect; and the burial place of *Sultan Hysmael*, the first *Persian* Sultan of that Line. 8 *Sultana*

*tania*, about six days journey from *Tauris*, environed with high Mountains: the tops of which continually covered with Snow, may be seen far off: founded by *Alyagan*, the eighth King of the Sixth or *Tartarian* Dynasty, and by him made the Royal Seat of the *Persian* *Sultans*, whence it had the name. But ruined by the *Turks*, it retaineth nothing now of its former splendour, but the Mosques, or Temples (one of them, the fairest in the East) which the *Turks* spared. 9 *Troyan*, in the Territory of *Sultania*, situate in a large Plain, but not far from the Mountains; beautified with a fair Market-place, many pleasant Gardens of private men; and one belonging to the King, environed with a Wall of greater circuit than the City. 10 *Turcoman*, in the middle way betwixt *Tauris* and *Casbin*, 11 *Damagan*, at the foot of *Taurus*, a Town of 200 houses, not here considerable but for the signification of the name; which is said to signify a Second Plantation: and being situate at the foot of so high a Mountain, occasioned some of the *Jews* to think that the Ark rested not far off, as perhaps it did. 12 *Maran*, in the Extremity of the Country, but of lesser note.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the Posterity of *Madai*, as before was said; *Ragu* the son of *Phaleg* taking up those parts, which lay next *Affrica*. Divided in long tract of time into several Tribes, as the *Cadusi*, *Amariachi*, *Margisi*, *Sagarii*, *Delryes*, *Tapyri*, and some others. Governed by Kings immediately from the first Plantation; for we find that *Pharus* King hereof, was overthrown and slain by *Ninus* the Grand-son of *Nimrod*. After this made subject to the *Affrians*, their Kings were only *Tindar*, at the best but *Homagers*, perhaps no better than *Provincial* Governors, under that great Monarchy. Of much greater amongst them was that *Arsaces*, who with an Army of 800000 men (if the number be not mistaken) encountered the *Cadusi*, by whom discomfited and slain. But the *Cadusi* so broken, that they were fain to put themselves under the power of the *Persians*, and so continued till the time of *Arbaces*, the last of these *Provincials*, and the first Monarch of the Medes. He living in the time of *Sardanapalus*, had the chance to fee his Lord and Master in a woman's dress, spinning among his Concubines, and otherwise behaving himself in a brutish manner; which so moved him, that he resolved to be no longer subject to so vile a Monarch. Communicating his thoughts unto *Beluchur*, Governor of *Babylon*, and well seen in *Affrology*, he was encouraged to proceed; and sped so well, that having made themselves Masters of *Ninive*, the Imperial City, (though *Sardanapalus* for a time put them shrewdly to it) they divided betwixt them his *Elkates*. To *Beleuchus* fell *Affrica*, and *Babylonia*, with the Provinces on the West of *Tigris*: To *Arbaces*, *Media*, and the rest, which now make up the Kingdom of *Persia*. But being a mild Prince, and desirous by fair and gentle means to assure his Empire, he confirmed the *Persian* *Satrapes* in their former Governments; reserving nothing to himself but a titular Sovereignty. Of whom and his Successors more, when we have taken in the rest of the Provinces.

## PERSIA.

PER. A. bounded on the East, with *India*; on the North, with *Media*, *Affrica*, and *Chaldea*; on the South, with *Tartary*; on the South, with the main Ocean. So called from *Persis* the predominant Province of it, that which gave Law to all the rest: as that is said to do from *Persum*, the son of *Jupiter* and *Danae*; affirmed by the *Grecians* to have conquered these *Eastern* Countries, and to have left his name to this. Of which thus

*Idore*, *Persis* populi à Persico Rege sunt vocati, qui à Græcis in Afiam transfrenti ibi barbaras gentes gravi distinnæque bello perdidimus; & victor nomen subactis Gentis imposuit. In the Scripture it is constantly called *Elam*, till the time of *Daniel* the Prophet, from *Elam*, the son of *Sem*, who was planted there. But after that the Medes and *Persians* had subdued *Babylon*, and transferred the supreme Monarchy to themselves, we find this people called by the name of *Paras*, (whence the name of *Persian* seems to come) the word *Paras* (or *Pharus*) signifying as much as Horseman. Given therefore to this Nation, as it is supposed, from an Edict of *Cyrus*, who not only taught them the art of *Horsemanship*, but set forth a Law, that it should be a reproach to any man to go on foot, *Sine mulum fove parum itigerit esset conficiendum*, whether the journey that he had to go were long or little. Called sometimes also *Achemenides*, from *Achemenes* the son of *Persis*, one of the first known Kings hereof; and by that name, (*Non tot Achemenies armatur Sufa Sagittis*) they occur in the second of *Prophetias*. Where by *Achemenes* Sagitte, he means *Persian* Arrows.

It is of very great extent, stretched out in length from the 82 degree of Longitude, to the 120, being 38 degrees in all; and in breadth from the 23 degree of Northern Latitude, to the 43, being 20 more. According unto which position, with reference to the heavenly bodies, we shall find it seated under the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth Climates: the longest Summers day in the Southern parts, being thirteen hours almost three quarters; and fifteen hours one quarter in the parts most Northwards.

The Country not alike in all places, as it is impossible it should in so great a compass. But generally it is of a pure and wholesome air, the high hills shading it on the one side from the heat of the Climate under which it lieth; and the warmth of the Sun, wherewith encompassed, cherishing a great part thereof. And so it is affirmed to be by *Quintus Curtius*, *Regio non alia in tota Asia salubrior habetur; temperatum celum; hinc perpetuum jugunt opacum; & umbræ, quod æquæ levat; illic mare adjaculum, quod modico tepore terras fovet*. Then for the Earth, it is, by reason of the great heat of the Sun, very dry and sandy, in many places destitute of water; in the South parts thereof few Rivers, and not many Lakes; by consequence neither well peopled, nor manured, for the greatnels of it: men loving to inhabit (and I cannot blame them) where they may have the use of water. Which notwithstanding, it is furnished with all necessities both for life and pleasure: in part affording that which the other wanteth, as shall be shewed in the description of the several Provinces.

The people anciently were trained up to the Wars, but chiefly unto *Arborey*, from their very childhood. Indulged the liberty of having as many Wives as they pleased; they never saw the children begotten of them, until five years old. At that age sent unto their Fathers, they were taught presently to handle the Bow and Arrow. Upon this ground we find the Bow of *Elam* mentioned by the Prophet *Jeremy*, Chap. 4. and the Quiver of *Elam* by the Prophet *Isaiah*, Chap. 22. 6. as the Arms peculiar to that Nation, or most used amongst them. They were good horsemen also, and well skilled in their Dart and Slings, till wealth and ease, and the pride of so great an Empire, made them wholly feminine: depriving them of those abilities both of mind and body, wherein they did excel most Nations in their harder times. In all their fortunes very obsequious, if not servile, to their Kings and Princes; in whose presence it was a crime to spit: but to deny obedience unto his Commands an offence so heinous, as was not to be punished with less than the



their Ruines. The Towns of most note now remaining, being 7 *Jasone*, inhabited for the most part by *Jews*, of which there are no fewer than a thousand Families; supposed to be the descendants of those whom *Salmanassar* transplanted out of the Kingdom of *Israel*. 8 *Saum*. 9 *Calé*, of which little memorable.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the *Chusites* of the house of *Havilah*, the Son of *Chus*; an evident footstep of whose name we have in the *Chavilae*, whom *Pliny* placeth in this Tract, by other Writers called the *Chaukai* & *Chaulasii*, as before was noted, with whom were joynd in the first plantings of this Country, the *Cassii* and the *Susiani*, descended from *Sala* the Son of *Arphaxad*; and the *Elymei*, the posterity of *Elam* the Son of *Sam*. Betwixt the two last Nations long and frequent Wars, till the Kings of *Babylon* or *Assyria* composed the differences, by making both subject to their Empire. After this, nothing memorable in the story of it, till the transplanting of the ten Tribes into the Regions of *Assyria*, and the Cities of *Media*. At that time, as many of the *Israelites* were removed thither; so many of this Nation were sent out (with others) to possess themselves of the void places of those Tribes. Called *Cuthians* by the *Jews*, because the most considerable number of them came from this Province, called in the Scriptures *Cuth*, by *Josephus Canibae*, and by him reckoned for a Region of *Persia*, as indeed it was, the time when he lived considered; different only in the Dialect or form of speech: that Country which the *Hebrews* called *Cub*, being named *Cuth* by the *Chaldeans*; by the *Persians*, *Chuzestan*: that name continuing to this day.

## 2. PERSIS.

**PERSIS** hath on the East, *Carmania*; on the West, *Susiana*; on the North, *Mediana*; and on the South, some part of the *Persian* Bay, or *Sinus Persicus*, which took name from hence. The reason of the name we have had before; this being the predominant Province which in fine gave both Name and Law to the rest of this Empire. It had anciently been called *Cephene*, but now most commonly by the name of *Fari*, or *Pharissian*; more near to *Pharus*, the old name of it, both in the *Arabic* and *Hebrew*.

Such parts hereof as lie towards the North are cold and hilly, not apt to bear either Fruit or Corn, in any plenty. Some *Emeralds* they find there, but not very clear. Those parts which lie towards the *Persian* Gulf, of as bad a nature, though of different quality, sandy, and hot, and beareth little fruit but *Dates*, and few trees but *Palm*. But betwixt both these lyeth a rich and pleasant Country, abounding with Corn, Fruit, and Cattel; great store of *Roses*, of *Rose-water* consequently; wherewith, and with those skins which we call commonly by the name of *Cordanus* from another occasion, they use to furnish all the adjoining Provinces. And to make up the Character of a happy Country, to which nothing wanteth, it is well filled with Lakes and Rivers; the chief whereof are, 1 *Bagradas*, which divideth this Province from *Carmania*. 2 *Rhommanes*, by some called *Araxes*, now *Binduris*, on whose banks stood the renowned *Persepolis*. 3 *Orontes*, dividing *Persis* from *Susiana*, where it falls into the Bay. 4 *Brifiana*, ending its course in the same Sea also.

Mountains of note I find not any, but those which part this Region from *Susiana*. Not known by any special name (for ought I can find); but of sufficient note for the difficult passages out of one Country into the other, called *Pyle Persidis*, defended by *Ariobarzanes*, a Noble *Persian*, against *Alexander the Great*, who was here

very handsomly beaten, and forced to save himself by a close retreat. And though *Alexander* was shewed a by-path afterwards, whereby he fell on *Ariobarzanes* as he was aware: yet he was taught by this hard Lesson, that if those who kept the straits of *Cilicia*, and the banks of *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, had made like resistance, he had not bought the *Persian* Monarchy in so cheap a Market.

It was divided anciently into 1 *Paraticene*, bordering on *Media*. 2 *Mardiene*, joyning on the Gulf or Bay of *Persia*. 3 *Misidia*, lying betwixt both. Each of which, with the several Nations intermingling here as in other places, had their several Cities. The chief whereof 1 *Ausanza*, seated on the Bay betwixt the mouths of *Bagradas*, and *Brifiana*. 2 *Jonacopolis*, on the same Bay also, near the influx of *Rhommanes*, or *Araxes*. 3 *Arima*, more within the Land, now called *Lanflia*. 4 *Marrusra*, 5 *Obroatis*, or *Oreobatis*, as some Copies have it. 6 *Safaracha*, in the Greek Text of *Ptolemy* called *Palegrada*, and *Palegrada* by *Qu. Curtius*. Memorable for the Sepulchre of *Cyrus* the first *Persian* Monarch. Which violated by a Souldier of *Alexander*, in hope of finding some rich booty, he met with nothing but this modest Inscription, *Cyrus ego sum qui Persicum regnum cussini: quinque ades mortalium, ne mihi tantillum idcirco indeas, qua corpus meum obtegunt*. The Sacrilegious Souldier, though a *Macedonian*, put to death by *Alexander*. 7 *Persepolis*, the chief City of this Province, and of all the East, called therefore *Regia Orientis* by *Qu. Curtius*; situate near the banks of the River *Araxes*, and built for the most part of *Cypres* wood, the walls of the houses being made of Marble, digged out of an adjoining Mountain. Affirmed by *Diadotus Siculus*, who at large describes it, to be the richest and goodliest City in all the world. And well we may believe him for the richness of it, *Alexander* finding here 120000 *Talents* in ready money for his own share, after the Souldiers had made what spoil they listed of Coin, Plate, Bullion, Images of Gold and Silver, and Jewels of unpeakable value. But the chief beauty of it was the Royal Palace, built on an Hill, environed with a treble Wall, the first of 16 Cubits height, the second of 30, and third of 60, all of them of black polished Marble, with stately Battlements, and in the Circuit of the whole Palace an hundred Towers; which gave to the beholders far and near a most goodly Prospect. Nor was the inside of less beauty, than the outside of Majesty: the Roof thereof shining with Ivory, Silver, Gold, and Amber; and the Kings Throne being wholly composed of Gold, and the richest Pearls. But rich and stately though it were, and one of the greatest Ornaments of the Eastern world, it was by *Alexander* in a drunken fit consumed with fire, at the instigation of *Lais* that infamous strumpet; as in revenge for so many Cities of the *Greeks*, which the *Persians* formerly had burnt in the *Grecians* Wars. And though *Alexander* in his sober sense did repent him of it, and gave order that it should be re-edified; yet did it never rise to its former height, the Conquerour dying shortly after, and that purpose with him. So ruined in the Age of *Qu. Curtius*, (who lived in the time of *Claudius Caesar*) that he professedly, *vestigium quod non inveniri nisi Araxes amnis ostenderet*, that no footstep of it had been found, if not then and pointed out by the River *Araxes*, on whose banks it stood. But by the fall thereof rose 8 *Sirrus*, now the chief City of this Province, situate in a large Plain hemmed about with Mountains, under one of which it is pleasantly seated; in compass about nine miles, well built and beautified with fair Gardens and magnificent Mosques: two of which larger than the rest, are made more eminent by the addition of two Spires or steeples

Steeple covered with a painting of Gold and Azure; the Fabrics for the most part of *Mosaic* work, as light also by night as day, by reason of a thousand Lamps burning nightly in them. A City (as is said by a modern Traveller) which for good Wine, pretty Women, pleasant Fruits, and a gallant People, may hold comparison with the best in *Persia*. 9 *Moynon*, on the North-east of *Sirrus*, delightfully situate amongst the Woods and fruitful Pastures, and blessed not only with good Wine, but wholesome Waters; of which last, few parts of *Persia* have much cause to brag. 10 *Bannaras*, on the South-west of *Sirrus* towards *Carmania*, chiefly remarkable for the ruins of an ancient Caille, situate on the top of a lofty Mountain. 11 *Goyaam*, a Town of a thousand houses. 12 *Berry*, of no great bigness, but of most esteem, by reason of a fair Mosque, a School for the *Arabic* Tongue, and the Sepulchre of one of their false Prophets; of which the *Persians*, besides *Mahomet*, and *Mortis-Ali*, do acknowledge many.

The first Inhabitants here were of the posterity of *Elam* the Son *Sem*, and such who under his conduct were settled here; called from hence *Elamites*, in the usual file of holy Scriptures by the *Greeks* and *Latines*, *Elymei*: who spreading themselves into *Susiana*, and by degrees also into other Provinces, became so considerable, that the name of *Elamite* and *Elam* were of great renown; having a language to themselves distinct from that of the *Medes* and *Parthians*, as is apparent *Alis* 2. and comprehending under that appellation, the adjoining Regions, as appears plainly in the eighth of the Prophet *Daniel*, where *Safis* is said to be in the Province of *Elam*. How the name was changed into that of *Persia*, hath been shewn before. Such as continued in this Province, divided into the Tribes of the *Mesabate*, *Rapsi*, *Hippophagi*, *Saxai*, *Megores*, and *Stabae*, were at first under the command of their own Princes only: amongst which *Cherdanamer* is of greatest fame, who having the conduct of himself *Anraphel* the Leader of some *Assyrian* Troops; and by the name of the Kings of *Elam* and *Assyria* invaded *Palestine*, subdued the City of *Sodom*, took *Lot* prisoner, and in the end were overthrown by the Forces of *Abraham*. Of no Note after this Expedition, till the time of *Persis* the Father of *Achemenes*, who being *Provincial* Governour of these Countries under *Sardanapalus*, joynd with *Arbaces* and *Belochus* in the War against him: and by the victory, got for himself the dominion over those Estates, which he had formerly ruled for the *Assyrians*; with reference to the Kings of *Media* as the *Supreme Lords*. Whose Successors, till the time of *Cyrus*, took in order thus:

## THE KINGS OF PERSIS.

- 1 *Perses*, from whom perhaps the name of *Persis* may be more properly derived, than either from *Persus* the Son of *Danae*; or the Son of *Persus* by *Andromeda*.
- 2 *Achemenes*, from whom the *Persians* had the name of *Achemenides*, and the succeeding Kings were called *Achemenides*.
- 3 *Cambyses*, in some places of *Herodotus* called also *Darius*.
- 4 *Cyrus*, from whose second son named *Tissaphernes*, descended that *Darius*, the son of *Hystaspes*, one of the seven *Persian* Princes, who got the Kingdom on the expiration of the present Line, and the extirpation of the *Magi*; of which more hereafter.
- 5 *Cambyses* II. the Son of *Cyrus*.

6 *Cyrus* II. surnamed the Great, son of *Cambyses*, and of *Mandane* the daughter of *Astyages* King of *Media*: who joyning with *Cyaxares*, or *Darius Medus*, overthrew the *Babylonian* Empire; and translated thereby the Supreme power to the *Medes* and *Persians*. Of which more hereafter.

## 3. CARMANIA.

**CARMANIA** is bounded on the East, with *Geodusia*, and some part of *Aras* on the West, with part of *Persis*, and the Gulf of *Persia*, from hence called also by the name of *Sinus Carmanicus*; on the North, with *Parthia*; and on the South, with the main *Indian* Ocean. So called from the *Carmani*, a chief people of it; but the reason of that name I find not: It is now generally called *Chyrcman*; those parts of it which lie next to *Parthia*, which *Ptolemy* calleth *Carmania Diserta*, being now named *Mingia*, and by some *Dulcinia*.

The Country for the most part barren, and but ill inhabited. That part which *Ptolemy* calleth *Carmania Deserta*, being truly such; a Wilderness or very Desert, having in it neither Town nor Village, but some few scattered houses, and those but ill provided of food and necessaries, full of unprofitable Sands, destitute of Water, and of a very hot and unhealthy Air. And though the other part hereof which lieth towards the Ocean, hath a Sea-coast of above 200 Leagues in length, and many Rivers emptying themselves into it, yet are they neither richer by it, the shores being full of Rocks, and the Rivers small; so that they neither have good Port, nor safe coming to it. The best Commodities hereof (besides their *Mansaffutiers*) are *Dates*, *Myrrhe*, *Asentie*, some few Mines of Silver, more of Brass and Iron, and good store of *Alabaster*. The Inhabitants hereof were anciently called *Iechthyophagi*, because they lived wholly upon *Fish*, the Country yielding little else for the life of man, *Carmani* *vis vultu ac fruge, sine pecore ac sedibus, piscium cuncta se velant, carne vescuntur, praeter capra sola corpore hirsuta*. The *Carmani* (saith *Pomponius Mela*) have neither fruits, nor raiment, nor house, nor cattel; but cloath themselves with the skins, and feed themselves with the flesh of Fishes; hairy, not only on their heads, but over all their bodies also. Where by the way, *Ammianus Marcellinus* must be out in his informations, who telleth us of these very *Carmani*, that their Country, though far less than that of *Arabia Felix*, and far more obscure, was as well replenished with Rivers; and for fertility of foil not inferior to it. But we must understand the one of the best parts of *Carmania*; the other of *Deserta* only.

Amongst the Rivers which he reckoneth of greater name than the rest, he mentioneth, 1 *Saganis*, 2 *Sagareus*, and 3 *Hydracutus*. Of which *Saganis* only is named by *Ptolemy*, the other Rivers, or the same under divers names, being 1 *Dara*, 2 *Andanitis*, 3 *Gabrarpis*, 4 *Achindanis*, 5 *Salurus*, (the *Sagareus*, as I take it, of *Ammianus*) 6 *Candriaces*, 7 *Zorombas*, and 8 *Samidace*, most of them falling into the Gulf of *Persia*, few Navigable, or of any use in the way of Trading.

Mountains of most note, 1 that called *Seniramis*, from some exploit of that great Lady, 2 *Strongilis*, so named from the roundness of its top, and 3 a continued ridge of Hills, dividing this Country from *Geodusia*.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Cantbaris*, 2 *Agri*, 3 *Tis*, honoured by *Ptolemy* with the names of Cities; 4 *Cyrus*, and 5 *Gochata*, two Port-Towns; 6 *Alexandria*, bearing the name of that great Conquerour, who here or hereabouts kept his *Bacchanalia*, whereof more anon.

anon. 7 *Porto Spana*, by *Ammianus* called *Orospana*, and by him reckoned amongst the fairest and richest of all the Country. 8 *Armuzza*, (or *Armozium*, as *Pliny* calleth it,) on the shore of the Gulf, giving name to a Promontory near adjoining, and to the noble Isle of *Ormus*, of which more anon. 9 *Gundrone*, not long since a poor Village; but since the fall of *Ormus* (from which not above nine miles distant) grown a populous Town, consisting at the least of a thousand houses. 10 *Jaques*, at the opening of the Persian Gulf, into which it looketh, whence the Promontory of it, called *Carpella*, is of late named *Capo di Jaques*. 11 *Carmania*, the Metropolis or mother City of the Province, in former times of good citeem; and now of passing good repute both for Cloth of Gold, and the making of the best *Semytars*. A weapon (whereforever made) of such value amongst the *Mahometans*, and so esteemed of by the *Turks*, that at the overthrow of the Navy at the battle of *Cosus*, Anno 1574. most of them were taken *Prisoners* threw their *Semytars* into the Sea, for fear the *Christians* should be masters of such excellent weapons. It is now called *Clyman*, by the name of the Province, as in former times; with very little difference from the ancient name. 12 *Lar*, more within the Land towards *Persia*, seated in a barren and inhospitable Country, full of huge heaps of Sand, both loose and dangerous, moved and removed as the wind fitteth, into Plains and Mountains: without Grass, Water, Herbs, or any other necessary for the use of Travelers; the City being served with rain-water only, entertained with great joy when it falleth, and kept in cisterns. The City notwithstanding large, and of good capacity, containing not long since to the number of 5000 houses: of which the greatest part, in the year 1590, were thrown down by an Earthquake: now most remarkable for a fair Market-place of about 180 paces square; a goodly Mosque, adorned with *Mosack* work, and a strong Castle seated on the top of an hill, furnished with great plenty of Ordnance brought hither from *Ormuz*. This once a Kingdom of it self, or the head City of a Kingdom, acknowledging no subjection to the *Persian Sappies*: till conquered to that Crown by *Emangoli Chawn* Duke of *Shiras*, who sent hence as much treasure as was fild to load 700 Camels; and put to death the poor King with his whole Posterity, Anno 1604, or thereabouts. 13 *Teco*, or *Dea-chom*, a Town of the jurisdiction of *Lar*, not far from which is a huge Wall cut out of the solid Rock by incredible labour, which served formerly both for the boundary and defence of that fandy Kingdom against the *Persians*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof, were the Posterity of *Sabia*, the Son of *Chus*, who wanting room on the Coast of *Arabia Felix*, where they were first planted, passed over into *Sophia* (from them so named) an Island of the Persian Gulf, and afterwards into the main Land of *Carmania*, where they built and gave name unto the City of *Sabi*, which we find in *Ptolemy*. Divided in some tract of time into the several Nations of the *Sacene*, *Ara*, *Charade*, *Chelomphagi*, *Cabadine*, and *Yafagade*.

Neither the People nor the Country memorable in the way of story; but by Accident only: it being here that *Alexander* being returned out of *India*, kept his *Bacchanalia*, an imitation of *Bacchus*, who first conquered that Nation. Night and day he was continually feasting with his friends, on a Scaffold drawn with eight horses; his Companions following in their Chariots: some adorned with Purple and Silk; others with Flowers and green Boughs; themselves wearing Garlands on their heads, and carrying their carousing Cups in their hands. In this Army there was neither Helmet, Sword, Arrow, or Buckler seen: all their Armour was Cups, Barrels, and

Flacons; their Skirmishing, Eating, Drinking, Laughing, and Singing. Attended they were by Minstrels, playing on their Flutes; by Women dancing, Boys shouting, all playing the drunken fools most naturally. Thus march they through the Country of *Carmania*, in a great diffoluteness as if *BACCHUS* himself had indeed been there, and led the Mummers; and for seven whole days this foolishness continued. So that *Carius* well observeth, *Si quid visitis saltem aduersus consuetudinem animi suistis, mille heretice viri, modo & sobrii, septem diurnis crapula graves in suo triumpho capere poterunt* a thousand Persians, sober and well provided, had their hearts been answerable to go good an opportunity, might have destroyed this drunken Army, and redeemed at once the honour of their Country, and their own liberty.

## 4. ORMUZ.

**ORMUZ**, not so much memorable for the greatness, as the wealth, and the convenience of the situation of it, is an Island situate in the entrance of the Persian Gulf: commanding not long since, over some part of the Continent of *Carmania*, and some few Towns of *Arabia Felix*, and most of the Islands of the Bay. And therefore before we come to speak of the Isle it self, we must take a brief survey of the Sea or Bay called *Sinus Persicus*, according to our method in other places.

**SINUS PERSICUS**, the Gulf or Bay of *Persia*, so famous, to full of Islands, and so much frequented, (I use the words of *Ammianus Marcellinus*) beginneth at *Hormozonta*, (the same which *Ptolemy* calls *Armuz*) a Cape or Promontory of *Carmania*: from which unto a Cape or Foreland of *Arabia Felix*, which the Inhabitants call *Maces*, the passage is so strait and narrow, that one may very easily see to the opposite shore. The Strait once passed, the Bay beginneth to open and enlarge it self, as far as the City of *Teredon* (now called *Balfora*) where *Euphrates* after many downfalls is lost in the Sea. The whole Gulf measured by the shores, of *Oriental* form, in compass 20000 Furlongs, (or 2500 Italian miles) in all the Coasts and sides whereof the Villages and Towns stand exceeding thick, affording frequent passage to and fro for shipping. So far, and to this purpose he, for their description of his, so exact and punctual, our late *Navigations* have not added much but the change of names: the whole Bay being now called *Mor Elkharis*, and the entrances thereunto the Straits of *Balfora*: these last so called because they opened the way to the Town of *Balfora*, the most noted Empory of those parts in the times foregoing.

Chief Isles hereof, besides those on the *Arabian* shore, of which we have already spoken, are 1 *Taxiana*, on the Coast of *Susiana*. 2 *Tahiana*, 3 *Saphiba*, and 4 *Alexandria*, or the Isle of *Alexander*, on the shores of *Tefis*. Of which that which is called *Saphiba*, seems to take name from *Sabia* the Son of *Chus*, planted upon the opposite shore of *Arabia Felix*; and therein giving name to the City of *Saphis*, which we find in *Ptolemy*: And finally joining to *Carmania*, there are the Islands called, 5 *Sedana*, the chief Town whereof was anciently named *Milun*; and 6 *Vorothia*, situate at the very mouth of the Straits, now called *ORMUZ*, by the name of the Town and Promontory of *Armuzza*, in *Carmania*, near adjoining to it, and unto which it did in former times belong.

This Island situate as is said at the mouth of the Gulf or Bay of *Persia*, is in compass about 20 miles, stony, and full of Rocks, in a manner barren of all necessities except

except salt, wherewith their very rocks are covered, and of salt-fishes many houses built. So destitute of all things fitting for the life of man, that the Inhabitants had all their victuals, even the very water which they drank, from some of the adjoining Countries. The air is hot in time of Summer, that the people rest themselves in Caves covered over with wood, where they stand or sit in water up to the chin; and have loop-holes in the tops of their houses to let in the wind. Which notwithstanding, in regard of the situation, it was of late one of the richest Empires in all the world; the wealth of *Persia* and *England* being brought hither, and conveyed hence up by water to the River *Euphrates*, and so by Boats, or on Camels backs to *Aleppo*, *Alexandria*, *Tripolis*; from whence dispersed into all the Countries on the *Mediterranean*, and to some beyond.

The people hereof in their persons, habit, and Religion, participate somewhat of the *Arabians*, but most of the *Teffans*. *Mahometans* for the most part, of the *Sophian* Sect: the rest, but few in number, of the *Christians*: to which converted by the preaching of Father *Gasper*, a *Portuguese* Jesuit, since the settling of that Nation there.

The chief and only City was of the same name with the Island, founded some seven hundred years ago by one *Mahmet Drangis*, descended from the Kings of *Saba* in *Arabia Felix*: who with many Families of the *Sabeans*, passed over the Straits into *Carmania*, and the Isles adjoining, and liking the situation of this Island, built this City in it; which he called *Ormus*, or *Armozium*, according to the name of the Town and Promontory, upon which it lieth. The City seated at one end of the Isle, about two miles in compass, well built, and adorned with a fair Market-place, some Churches, and a well fortified Castle furnished with all necessities to maintain a Siege. By reason of its wealth and resort of Merchants, grown to such esteem, that it gave occasion to this Distich;

*Si terrarum Orbis quaque patet annulus effret,  
Illos Ormuzium gemmas decetque foret.*

That is to say,

Were all the World a Ring, this Isle alone  
Might of that Ring be thought to be the Stone.

It was first under its own King, whose Dominion extended also into some part of the Continent on either side, and over all the rest of the Islands within the Gulf. His Revenue of no great yearly value till the coming of the *Portugals* hither, by whom it was discovered under the conduct of *Albuquerque*, Anno 1506. Who having fortified some part of it for their own defence, and made it the Staple of their Trade for the *Indian Merchandise*, so enriched the same, that the Revenues of those Kings (though *Vassals* and Tributaries to the *Portugals*) amounted to 140000 *Sceriffs* yearly. In this flourishing state it stood till the year 1622, when *Abu* the Sultan of *Persia* having received some affront at the hands of the *Portugals*; or desirous to remove the trade of *Ormus*, to some Port of his own, gave order to *Emangoli Chawn*, the Duke of *Shiras*, to lay siege unto it, with an Army of 15000 men, who seeing no hopes of mastering it by his hand-forces only, furnished himself with the Ships and Cannon of some *English* Merchants, to whom he promised many things which he never performed. For being once Master of the City, he destroyed it utterly, removing the Ordnance to *Lar*, the wealth thereof to his own Treasury of *Shiras*, the materials of the houses to *Gombroon*, spoken of before: the *Portuguese* and *Christians* Natives passing over unto *Muskabar*, in *Arabia Felix*. Since which time though the *English* Captains that ventured in it, were disappointed of the spoil which they did expect; yet so much honour hath been given by the

King of *Persia* to the *English* Nation, that their Agent who resideth at *Gombroon*, takes Custom of all strangers which do traffick thither.

## 5. GEDROSIA.

**GEDROSIA** is bounded on the West, with *Carmania*; on the East, with *Cambisa* or *Guzaran*, a Province of *India*; on the South, with the main *Indian Ocean*; on the North, with *Drangiana*, and *Arachosia*. The reason of the name I find not. Now by *Mercator*, called *Gis*; by *Cassiodorus*, *Circan*.

The Country desolate and barren; like the worst part of *Carmania*, much destitute of fresh water, and covered over with loose sands, dangerous to the native and stranger both. Some rain they have, but not sufficient to allay the heat and drought which they suffer under; and yet by reason of that heat it affordeth in some places *Nard* and *Myrrhe*, with some other Spices. Some *Brooks* here are, or rather *Torrents*, which falling from the hills do somewhat qualifie the indispotion of the soil, and make it habitable: The chief of which was called *Arabis* anciently; the chief Mountain, *Batius*.

Towns of most name in it, 1 *Rbagiana*, honoured by *Ptolemy* with the name of a City; and, 2 a Port or Harbour called *Mulierum Portus*, or the Haven of *Women*. 3 *Arbis*, upon the banks of the River *Arbis*, presented to us also by the name of a City. 4 *Musfana*, the chief of the *Musfane*, a chief Tribe of this Country. 5 *Parfis*, or rather *Eafis*, as the *Greek* Text hath it, the Metropolis of the whole Province in the time of *Ptolemy*. 6 *Gesh*, the chief City at the present; but for nothing memorable.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Masfane*, bordering on *Arachosia*, the *Parfise* towards *Carmania*, the *Rhamie* on the borders of *India*, and the *Orbite*, or *Arbitari*, on the shores of the Ocean. The Country of no note in preceding times, till made famous by the follies of *Alexander*: Who finding by the hard bout which he had with *Porus*, that there was little hopes of the Conquest of *India*, would needs make a fruitless voyage to see the Ocean. And having fatished himself with the sight of that furious Element (as if his very seeing it had sufficiently subdued it to him) landed his Army on this Coast. Where in his march, for want of Victuals, water, and other necessities, he lost more men in the vast and uncomfortable Deserts of this Country, than in all the military services he had put them to: the Army which he carried with him into *India*, amounting unto 15000 Horse, and 120000 Foot; whereof hardly the fourth part came back to *Babylon*. So dearly did he pay for his indiscretion.

## 6. DRANGIANA.

**DRANGIANA** hath on the South, *Gedrosia*; on the North and West, bounded with *Arta*; on the East, with *Arachosia*. So called from *Drangis*, now *Ilment*, the chief River of it; the modern name thereof being *Sigistan*, from *Sige*, the now principal City.

The Country very hilly, and so closed with Mountains, that the River above named is scarce able to force its passage thorow them. Of no great beauty to invite, or reward a Conqueror, yet with the rest, brought under the great *Persian* Monarchs, the fortunes of which Crown they have always followed. So meanly planted, that *Ptolemy* findeth it in it but ten Towns of name; the chief whereof, 1 *Artasphe*, mistook perhaps for *Agripas*; and if so, then the Mother-City of the *Agripas*, whom *Curtius* placeth in this Tract. 2 *Prophasia*, by some of the



Ancients called *Phradag*, the Metropolis of this poor Province: much boasted of by the old Inhabitants hereof, of who had seen no better, (as Country-Villagers use to brag of the next Market-Town) and said by *Amniamus* to be rich, and of high renown, the quality of the place considered. Still of some note amongst the Natives, by whom called *Sifan*. 3 *Arivada*. 4 *Pharaza*, of which nothing memorable. 5 *Sige*, now of most credit in this Country, from hence called *Sigehan*. 6 *Timocani*. 7 *Muleher*, the chief seat of the Kingdom of *Aladine*, or *Aleandine*, who had here a *Fool-Paradise* of his own, of which more anon.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Batrii*, and the *Darande*, from which last, the greatest of the two, the Country might perhaps be called originally *Darandiana*; abbreviated to *Drandiana*, and at last corrupted easily into *Drangiana*. But I offer this only as a conjecture. They were called also by some Writers by the name of *Arabians*; and that as *Amniamus* thinks, because they descended from that people: but I think rather from a branch of the River *Arabis*, which parteth this Country from *Gedrosia*. For I conceive the *Arabians* were too wise to forsake their own Country, and go so far, to get so little by the bargain. Together with the rest of the *Persian* Provinces, subdued by *Alexander*; who being in this Country, happened on the discovery of the treasure intended against him by *Phibutan* the son of *Parmenio*, the most renowned of all his Captains. After this little memorable till these latter days, when it grew famous by means of *Aladine* a seditious *Persian*, Lord of the valley of *Mulcher*, spoken of before; who there made a *terrestrial Paradise*, which he promised to all his *Parizans*: but the Company growing too great for the safety of the Kingdom, they were quickly dispersed; and *Aladine*, with his *Fool-Paradise*, both taken away together, Anno 1262. Some attribute this fiction of *Paradise* to *Aladine*, the Mountain King of *Tannus*, vanquished by *Selim* the first. The whole story is this, out of *Pandul Venetus*. *Aladine* inhabited a Valley in this Country, the entrance into which he fortified with a strong Castle, called *Tigado*. Hither he brought all the lusty Youths, and beautiful Maidens of the adjoining Provinces. The women were confined to their Chambers, the men to Prison; where having endured much sorrow, they were severally cast into dead sleeps, and conveyed to the women: by whom they were entertained with all the pleasures youth and lust could desire, or a sensual mind affect. Having enjoyed this happiness a whole day, they were in a like sleep conveyed to their Irons. Then would *Aladine* inform them how they had been in *Paradise*, and that he could feat them there eternally, if they durst hazard themselves in his quarrels. This when they had sworn to do, they were dedicated to the massacre of such Princes as were like to prove his bad neighbours; and they accordingly did execution. But neither he, nor *Aladine*, were the first who trained up their followers in the Arts of murder. One there was before either of them, whom the Writers of those times call the *Old Man of the Mountains*, inhabiting the Mountainous parts of *Tyre* and *Sidon*; and from thence sending his Disciples on the like *Temptations*, to make away the Western Princes whom he stood in fear of, during the course of the *Holy Wars*. For out of his School came those wretches who murdered the Count of *Tripoli*, being in the Church at his Devotions; and desperately flew *Comrade* Marquess of *Monferat*, walking openly in the Market-place at *Tyre*; and with like carelessness of their own lives, dangerously wounded Prince *Edward* (after King of *England*) sitting in his Tent. These the *Italians* call *Assissine* (whence the word to *Assissinate*) intimating thereby a desperate *Cut-throat*,

but the reason of that name is not yet agreed on: mistakenly by some *Latine* Writers of the darker times, called *Assicide*, and their commander *Rex Assidarum*, as if descended from *Araces*, the founder of the *Assidan* Race of the Kings of *Persia*.

### 7. ARACHOSIA.

**A**RACHOSIA hath on the West, *Drangiana*; on the East, a branch of the great River *Indus*; on the South, *Gedrosia*; and *Paropamisus* on the North. So called from *Arachsis*, the chief City of it; but now best known by the name of *Cabul*, the name of the chief City at this present.

Of the Country I find little spoken, but that it is watered with a branch of the River *Indus*, or rather with some nameless River which falleth into it. By the overflows whereof is made a Lake, which *Amniamus* calleth *Arachotogrene*, by *Ptolemy* called *Arachotis*; after the name of *Arachotis* the chief Town of it, near to which it is.

Towns here were once thirteen, whose names and situation we find in *Ptolemy*; but little or nothing of them in other Writers. The principal 1 *Arachotis*, on the Lake so named, said to be built by *Semiramis* in her march towards *India*, and by her to have been named *Cephene*. 2 *Alexandria*, or (for distinction sake) *Alexandria Arachotica*, the work of *Alexander the Great*, in his like march against the *Indians*: built at the foot of one of the branches of Mount *Tannus* shooting towards the South, and peopled with a Colony of 7000 old *Macedonian* Soldiers, forepart with age, and with the travel of the Wars, whom he left there to inhabit it, his Army being here recruited with the Forces which had served under *Parmenio*, consisting of 12000 *Greeks* and *Macedonians*. It is now called *Cabul*, accounted the chief City of it, and in that capacity gives the name of *Cabul* unto all the Province. 3 *Arbaca*, seeming by the name, to be the work of one *Arbaces*; but whether of *Arbaces* the great King of the *Medes*, I am not able to say. 4 *Chospha*, near the River of that name, as I conjecture; there being besides *Chospha* the chief River of *Media*, another of that name also in *India*; and probably another hereabouts to give name to this Town. 5 *Phoclia*. 6 *Sigara*. 7 *Damiana*, of which I find nothing but the names. 8 *Sin*, now a Town of name amongst them, but not much observable.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Pargete*, called also *Arimaspe*, and *Energete*, a powerful Nation of themselves, brought under the command of *Alexander* by means of *Ammenides*, sometimes the Secretary of *Darius*, whom he made their Governour. And besides them the *Syeri*, *Rophite*, and the *Eorite*; which three made up the main body of the *Arachosians*, committed by *Alexander* to the Government and command of *Memon*. *Ender*, they loving after this the fortunes of the *Persian* Empire; they changed their Masters as that did, till the coming of a *Tartar*. Since that time governed for the most part, by a King of their own, especially since that dividing of the Kingdom of *Persia* amongst *Tamerlane's* Children. Some of which held it as a distinct *Estate*, by the names of the Kings of *Cabul*; till growing great by the Conquest of some parts of *India*, they took unto not only the name of the Great *Mongul*: Now Lords not only of this Country, but of the greatest part of *India* on this side of *Ganges*; of whom we shall speak more when we are in *India*, that being the chief Seat of their Power and Empire.

8. PARO-

### 8. PAROPAMISUS.

**P**AROPAMISUS is bounded on the South with *Arachsis*; on the North, with *Bactria*, from which parted by the main body of Mount *Tannus*, which is here called *Paropamisus*, by the name of the Country: on the East, with some part of *India*; on the West, with *Aria*. So called quasi *Paropaneus*, from the resemblance which it hath to an Island, begirt on all sides almost with Rivers: in which respect by *Ptolemy* called *Paropamisus*, and not *Paropamisus*; by which last name the *Latines* for the most part call it; some of them *Paropamisus*, with a double *f*. But that name being lost long since; it is now by some called *Dache*, by others *Candahor*, but most commonly *Sublectan*.

The Country Mountainous and hilly; here and there intermixt with Valleys: the Mountains of great height, and exceeding barren; the Valleys indifferent fruitful, but so over-shadowed with those hills, that the clearest day in some places seems but like a twilight. The people as obscure as their Country, scarce known to any of their Neighbours in the time of *Alexander*; the barbarous Nations nearest to them esteeming them unworthy of their acquaintance. *Agreste hominum genus, & inter Barbaros maxime inconditum*, as it is in *Cnitus*.

Rivers of most Note herein, 1 *Oxus*, (of which before) which rising out of Mount *Caucasus*, passeth Northwards, and afterwards divideth *Bactria* from *Sogdiana*. 2 *Dargananius*, 3 *Cocorus*, both owing their original to some of the branches of Mount *Tannus*. Which chain of hills beginning hereabouts to draw towards their height, are towards the West called *Parote*, where they give being to the River *Dargananius*, before named: more Eastward they have the name of *Paropamisus*; and *Caucasus* they are properly called where they are thwarted by *Inani*, in the very point, as it were, where *Seythia*, *India*, and the *Persian* Territories do encounter each other. The hills in that place mounted to so great an height, that from the tops thereof, the Stars appear much greater than in other places; the rising and setting of which are from hence easily discerned. Made memorable by the Fable of *Prometheus*, who is said to have been bound here by command of *Jupiter*; on which, *Vintium Prometheus fuisse antiquitus tradit*, faith the Historian. *Prometheus* is indeed by the Poets feigned to have stolen fire from Heaven, and to have made a man of clay; for which presumptuous fault, *Jupiter* bound him on the hill *Caucasus*, where a *Vulture* continually fed on his Liver. But according either to the truth of the Story, or their guess at least, who make some Story the ground of every Fable, *Prometheus* being a very wise man, instructed the dead and clayey carcasses of others in wisdom; and that being very desirous to learn the nature of the Stars, (which is the fire he stole from Heaven) he made the highest part of Mount *Caucasus* his study: where the inward care he had to accomplish his desire, might justly have been compared to a *Vulture* gnawing on his entrails; and of this opinion is *St. Augustine*. But far more memorable is it made for being the resting place of the Ark of *Noah*, whereof we have already spoken in our General Preface.

Places of most consideration in it, 1 *Nandibu*, and 2 *Oristipana*, both named by *Ptolemy*, and reckoned by *Amniamus* for the most famous of this Country. But in what their fame consisted I cannot find. 3 *Parfiana*, 4 *Gazaca*, 5 *Dorocana*, 6 *Bagarda*, all named by *Ptolemy*, but not easily observable. 7 *Candahor*, now the Metropolis of the Country, a Town of great Trade, by reason of the situation of it on the borders of *India*; in that respect giving to the whole Country the name of *Candahor*. By

which name reckoned for a Kingdom, and used amongst the many titles in the *Style Imperial*. Nothing considerable of it in the course of Story, but that being once brought under by the *Persian* Monarchs, it followed the fortune of the rest till these latter times: when the *Persians* being over-laid by the *Tartars*, it became subject to some Kings of the Race of *Tamerlane*, reigning in this Province, till brought under by the Kings of *Cabul*, of the same extraction. Finding those Kings intent on the Conquest of *India*, they freed themselves from all subjection to that Crown, and had Kings of their own, till the year 1600. or thereabouts; when the last King, unable to defend himself against *Ahmda*, King of the *Vishques* (a *Tartarian* People, but subject in some sort to the Crown of *Persia*) surrendered his Kingdom to *Echbar* the Great *Mongul* (descended from the old Kings of *Cabul*) whose Dominions border close upon it. Recovered to the *Persian* Crown by *Mirza* the Son of *Abas*, and the Father of *Sophy* the now *Sultan*; is a Prince of much gallantry, but of more misfortunes; the *Persian* *Sophies*, since that Conquest, using the title of Kings of *Candahor* in the Regal style.

### 9. ARIA.

**A**RIA is bounded on the East, with *Paropamisus*; on the West, with *Parthia*; on the North, with *Margiana*; and on the South, with *Drangiana*, from which last parted by the Mountain *Bagon*. A name in old times given to the Province of *Media*, especially by the *Greeks*; till changed (as they say) into *Media*, on the coming thereof of *Medes*. For so *Panjanis*, amongst others, *μεγαρενισμός* 3 *ἢ τὴν ἀρχαίαν τὴν ἡλικίαν*. τὰς ἀνέστης Ἰάνης τὴν ὁμοίαν καὶ ἀρχαίαν μέδους ἀνέδωκεν, i. e. coming into the Country then called *Aria*, he caused it after her own name to be called *Maria*. But the name of *Aria* was not lost, though it were removed; remaining proper to this Country till these latter Ages, now changed with little alteration, into that of *Ser*.

The Country much subject unto heats, environed with *Dartars*, *Heaths*, and *Forests*; yet near the Mountains which defend them from the heat of the Sun, they have some fruitful *Champagnes*, bearing very good fruits; and amongst others, a strong wine, and of long continuance; keeping both taste and colour above 80 years. They have also here a *Drage* somewhat like to *Myrrhe*, and a kind of *Sapphyr*, but not right.

Rivers of note I meet with none but that which *Ptolemy* calleth *Arian*, by the name of the Province, making a Lake of the same name. The Fountain of which River he maketh to be in *Paropamisus*, and the fall thereof in the said Lake: the waters of it first increased by a nameless stream, falling from the Mountains called *Scripsi*, being that part of *Tannus* which divideth this Country from *Margiana*.

Anciently it was populous and well inhabited, containing above 30 Towns of name and note. Those of most consequence, 1 *Aria*, on the banks of the River *Arian*, the seat of the *Arii*, whom *Pliny* speaketh of in this Tract: but whether they received this name from the Province, or bestowed their own name upon it, I determine not. 2 *Batana*, 3 *Sotira*, 4 *Orbitana*, 5 *Sarmagana*, 6 *Atacanda*, by *Strabo* called *Artecana*. 7 *Nisibis*, mentioned both by *Ptolemy* and *Amniamus*. 8 *Alexandria*, bearing the name of the Great *Conqueror*, by whom planted and made a Colony of his *Macedonians*, for the better awing of the Country, which by some former rebellions had been troublesome to him. But these, and most of those remembered by *Ptolemy*, being grown out of knowledge, there remain now of special note, 9 *Hari*, or *Eri*, seated



tinal Forests; and those fo intricate and thick, that it is a matter of no small difficulty to pass fadage thorow them. Full, as most other Forests are in thofe Eastern parts, of *Panthers, Leopards, Lions, Tigers*: thefe laid of fuch an horrible herecens, that it grew into a Common Proverb ufed of cruel men, that they had ficked an *Hyrcanian Tiger*, *Hyrcanæque admovunt ubera Tigres*, as it is in *Virgil*.

Principal Rivers of this Country, 1 *Ziobert*, fpooken of before, 2 *Mazera*, or *Mazzer*, mentioned by *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and *Ammianus*. And 3 *Secanda*; all falling into the *Caspian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. A Sea which had the names of *Caspian* and *Hyrcanian*, from the *Caspii* and *Hyrcani* bordering next unto it; now from the Town of *Bochus* in *Atropatia*, called *Mare di Bochus*. Fashioned in an Oval form, the length thereof from North to South 700 miles, and 60 miles from East to West. Stormy and troublefome, by reason of thofe many great Rivers which fall into it from all the Provinces adjoining: which notwithstanding it hath no vifible commerce with the *Ocean*, nor doth it at any time overflow its banks, finding more paffage under ground to difcharge it felf of thofe vail streams of water which are poured into it. Well traded by the *Mafovite* Merchants, who having the command of the River *Volga* (which with 70 mouths doth open into this Sea) fail over it, and land at *Farahab*, or fome other of the Port-Towns, where they trade for Silks. Some Iflands here are in it, but not many, or of any great Fame; but only that they ferved the Nations which lay near it for a place of retreat, in time of the *Tartarian* tempest under *Tamerlane*; as the Isles of *Verice* did to the *Italian*, at the coming of *Attila*.

Places of moft confideration, 1 *Hyrcania*, once the Metropolis of the Province, and fo called by *Ptolomy*; ftill extant, but of lefs extent, and ftill called *Hyrcan*. 2 *Tambrace*, in old times of the greateft ftrength, and moft defensible; but taken by *Antiochus Magnus* in the War againft *Affaces* the *Parthian*, for the recovery of thofe Countreys then revolted from him. 3 *Adrafpa*. 4 *Mafaca*. 5 *Anarafa*. Of which we find the names, amongst others, in the ancient Writers. 6 *Abharaffe*, two miles from the Sea, in a fpacious Plain, containing about 200 Houfes; and now of moft reputation of all this Province, by the long Refidence therein of *Abas*, the late *Persian* Sultan, who built there a magnificent Palace, and another two miles off at a place called *Abfhabant*. The furniture whereof, befides coffy Carpets, in Plate and Jewels, at fuch time as Sir *Dudmore Cotton* was there Embaffadour, is faid to have been valued by a knowing Merchant, at 20 millions of pounds. But I fear the Merchant had more skill in Silks than Jewels: fuch a vaft fum to be expended on the furniture of one Palace only, being beyond the poffibility of the Revenue of the *Persian* Souldiers; hardly amounting towards all charges to five millions of Crowns. 7 *Farahab*, on a navigable Arm of the *Caspian* Sea, for beauty, wealth, and greatnefs, of moft note in this Country. Well traded from all parts of this Inland Sea, efpecially by the *Ruffian* Merchants, as before is faid, whole fhips come hither in March, and return in July; it being from hence to *Afirachan* but ten days fail. Bountifed with goodly Gardens, a Royal Manfion of the Kings, and a fpacious Market-place. 8 *Chiofopore*, near the Sea alfo, but on the banks of a River: the water whereof is fud for eleven months to be frefh and fweet, and for the feventh month very falt. 9 *Barfuph*, twelve miles from the Sea, well furnifhed with wood and water. 10 *Omash*, a Town of about 3000 houfes, feated on the North fide of the *Taurus*, in a pleafant and fruitful foil; reforted to by the people of fo many Nations, that feven Languages are there commonly fpooken. Once larger, as

appeareth by fome ruines, than it is at the prefent; by fome conceived to be the *Nabarea* of the Ancients, honoured in thofe times with an Oracle. 11 *Strava*, a Town of great Traffic, for raw Silks efpecially. 12 *Mefandria*, whence the whole Province (or rather the parts adjoining to it) hath the name of *Mefandrian*.

The old Inhabitants hereof, betwixt the *Caspii*, were the *Maxera*, *Aflabeni*, *Chridi*, and the *Aftrietes*, united in the name of *Hyrcans*, in the time of the *Persians*; and by that name well known at the coming of *Alexander*. Againft whom they fo defended themselves, by tying the boughs and twigs of their trees together, that it was impoffible for him to come at them; till with incredible pains and labour he had caufed their Woods to be cut down: at fight whereof the people, who fuppofed the King had too much other bufinefs, and of more importance, than to put himfelf unto that trouble, did fubmit unto him. Falling to the fhare of *Seleucus*, they were the firft people that were gained by *Affaces*, and joyed with him in recovering their former liberty; though they got nothing by the bargain but the change of their *Mofur*. In all times fince, they have been looked upon as Members of the *Persian* Empire, till the conquest of it by the *Tartars*; in the diftractions of whose great Empire after *Tamerlane's* death, it fell to fome Prince of his Houfe, who governed here under the vaffalage and protection of the *Tartars* of *Zagathay*. Recovered not long fince to their old obedience by Sultan *Abas*, who for the better fettling the affairs hereof, removed the Seat Royal from *Spaham*, to which before he had transferred it from the City of *Cashin* to *Sharaffe*, then a fmall Town, now the chief of this Country.

## 12. MARGIANA.

**MARGIANA** is bounded on the Weft, with *Hyrcania*; on the Eaft, with *Bactria*; on the North, with part of *Tartary*, from which fweaved by the River *Oxus*; on the South, with *Aria*, divided from it by the Mountains. So called from the River *Margus*, which runs thorow the Country: but is now named *Tremigen*.

The Country environed with Mountains, and in moft places of it full of fandy Defarts. But where it is watered with the Rivers *Aria* and *Margus*, it is very fruitful, fretching it felf into a large and fpacious Plain, containing in the circuit near 200 miles. The Plain once compaffed with a Wall by *Antiochus Soter*, King of *Syria*; more memorable for the huge flocks of *Vins* which are faid to be in it, as big in bulk as two men can fufhold, and fometimes bearing branches of Grapes two Cubits long. The more to beadmired, in regard there is no other place near unto it, where the Vine will grow. And if the *Ark* refted on the top of Mount *Caucafus*, as it is moft probable it did; why may not this be fome of the remainder of that firft *Vineyard* which was planted by *Noah*, when he defended from thofe Mountains, as is affirmed by the conftant tradition of the people which inhabit here?

The People mixt of *Scythian* and *Persian* breed, partaking of the fiercenefs of the one, and the behaviour of the other, conform unto the *Persians* in Religion, Language, and Apparel; diftinguifhed from them in the colour of their *Turbants* only, which are commonly *Green*: and therefore by the *Persians* called *Jefthas*, or *Green-caps*; the *Turbants* of the *Persian* being always red.

Chief Rivers of this Country are, 1 *Margus*, the peculiar River of it, which rifing out of the foot of the Mountains, and paffing thorow the midft of the Province,

receiveth

receiveth into its Channel the River. 2 *Aria*, haftning out of *Aria*; and fo together lofe themselves in 3 *Oxus*, dividing the *Margians* from the *Tartars*: Out of the joynt streams of which feveral Rivers, is made a large Lake now called *Sabacamber*, but anciently *Palus Oxiana*, from the principal River.

Places of moft obfervation in it, 1 *Alexandria*, or *Alexandria Margiana*, for diftinction fake; one of the fix Towns built by *Alexander* for defence of this Country: called afterwards *Seleucia* from *Seleucus*; next *Antiochia* from *Antiochus Soter*, King of *Syria*, by whom fortified with a very ftrong Wall. It is now called *Indian*, and deemed for the chief of the Country. 2 *Jefonius*, feated on the confluence of *Margus*, with a narrows River iffing from the *Seriphian* Mountains. 3 *Nigea*, as the Printed Books of *Ptolomy* call it, but miftook for *Niffa*, or *Niffea*. 4 *Argadina*. 5 *Rhea*, of which nothing memorable. 6 *Maran*, near to which *Ismael* the firft of the *Sophian* Race, difcomfited the Forces of *Saba* the *Cham* of *Zogahay*.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Maffagetes*, and the *Paris*, taking up the mid-lands; the *Derbices* bordering upon *Oxus*; and the *Tapyri*, dwelling towards the Eaft. United by the name of *Margians*, they were fubdued by the Kings of *Persia*, from whom won by *Alexander* to his Empire: who to affure himfelf hereof built fix Cities in it, two towards the South, and four towards the Eaft; all ftuate on the tops of hills, and built at fuch convenient places that they might afford fuccour to each other, as occafion ferved. After this nothing fingular in the ftory of them; involved in the fame fortunes with the reft of *Persia*, till *Persia* was conquered by the *Tartars*. Since which time, though the reft of the *Persian* Provinces were freed from the *Tartarian* yoke by *Gempfis*, the Soldan of *Parthia*, and King of *Persia* for a time; yet part of this Province, and of *Bactria*, are ftill fubject to them.

## 13. BACTRIA.

**BACTRIA** or **BACTRIANA** is bounded on the Weft, with *Margiana*; on the Eaft and North, with the River *Oxus*, dividing it from *Sogdiana*; on the South, with *Paropamisfus*, from which parted by the hills fo named, and the Mountain *Caucafus*. It took this name from *Bactria*, the chief City of it; and is now called *Choraffa*, but by fome named *Bactar*.

The Country towards the River *Oxus*, is for the moft part well manured, and affordeth plenty of Wheat, and all forts of Fruits, excepting Olives; rich Metals, and fome precious Stones, as *Emeralds*, *Chryfolites*, and *Jafmits*. Plenty of Pastures there be alfo, well flored with Cattel, and thofe of bigger bulk than in other places. But the greateft part hereto to the South and Weft, is nothing but a fandy Defart; and by reason that the fands are driven up and down by contrary winds, no tract or beaten way is to be difcerned: infomuch as Travellers reft all day, and take their journey in the night, that they may guide themselves by the courfe of the Stars, as upon the Sea; not without great danger of being loft or buried, whilst alive, in that fandy Ocean.

The people heretofore a puiffant and warlike Nation, not without great difficulty conquered by the *Affrians*, nor without lefs by the *Persians*; always in Arms, cruel, and refembling the *Scythians*, whose near neighbours they were; and (which may very well pafs for their greateft virtue) *Milium* a Perfurum Incon abhorrenter, abhorring naturally from the *Persian* Luxuries. But withal unnatural to their Parents, whom when old they caft unto their dogs, kept for that purpose, and called *Canes Sepulchrales*,

or burial dogs. The women gorgeous in Apparel, and proud of Gesture, but prodigal of their bodies to their meanest flaves. The men to this day do retain their ancient stoutnefs; but hard betwixt the *Persians* and the *Tartars*, who feverally pretend a dominion over them.

No Province of the *Persian* Empire hath fo many Rivers. The principal of which are 1 *Aratium*, and 2 *Zari-afper*, mingling streams together, as do alfo 3 *Ochus*, and 4 *Orgomanes*; all four contributing their waters to the River *Oxus*. Of *Oxus*, being rather a boundary between the *Persian* and the *Tartar*, than rightly proper unto either, we have fpooken already.

Towns of moft obfervation in it, 1 *Bactria*, the Metropolis, or the chief City of it, ftuate at the foot of the Mountain *Sogdii*, giving the name of *Bactria* unto all the Province. It is now called *Bochor*, and ftill keeps the dignity of the Metropolis: the feat of the Chief Priest or Bishop of the *Mahometans* of *Zagathay* (to which this City, and great part of the Country alfo doth now belong) having here his refidence, in power and reputation equal to the King himfelf. Well fortified, and ftored with all military Provisions: the birth-place (as *Maginus* faith) in thefe latter Ages of *Alexandria*, that learned Philofopher and Phyfician; and in the firft Ages, of *Zoroafter* the more learned *Afthorog*. 2 *Eubufius*, once the Regal feat, and therefore honoured by *Ptolomy* with the title of *Regia*. 3 *Zarifpe*, or *Charifpe*, the chief City of the *Charifpes*, a great Tribe of this Country. 4 *Charracharia*, mentioned by *Ptolomy* and *Ammianus*; 5 *Charran*, upon the River *Oxus*. 6 *Escatridia*, built or repaired by the *Macedonians*, as the name, being merely Greek, doth feem to imitate. 7 *Alivada*, as ancient as the reft, but of no great note in the courfe of bufinefs. 8 *Miflagia*, of a later date, but of greater beauty than any of thofe before fpooken of: fuperiour to *Bochor* in Elegancy, State, and Greatnefs, though not in Dignity; and held by fome to be the pleafanteft of the Eaft.

This Country was as foon peopled as any fince the general Deluge. It had not elfe been poffible that *Zoroafter*, King hereof in the time of *Ninus*, and by him affaulted, fhould bring into the field an Army of 400000 men of this, and perhaps fome other of the neighbouring Provinces, with fo credible Writers fa he did. Encountering *Ninus*, with this Army he prevailed at firft, and flew of the *Affrians* near an hundred thoufand. But *Ninus* having better opportunities of recruiting his Forces, invaded him a fecond time with an Army of 700000 Foot, and 20000 Horfe (the greateft on record in all Ages fince that time, except that of *Semiramis*;) which which he overcame *Zoroafter*, flew him in the field, and united *Bactria* to his Empire. Unto this *Zoroafter* is afcribed the invention of *Aftronomys*, but on no good ground; that Art or Science being ftudied before the flood, (if *Sab's* Pillars, mentioned by *Jofephus*, be of any credit;) and therefore probably no otherwife to be afcribed to *Zoroafter*, than as to the *Reviver* of it; or becaufe he firft committed that unto writing, which he had received by tradition; or becaufe he brought thofe confufed notions which he had received from others, into rule and method. He being flain, and *Bactria* his chief City taken by the wit of *Semiramis*, then the wife of *Ninus*, (but on the merit of that fervice made the wife of *Ninus*;) the *Bactrians* became fubject unto the *Affrian* Kings, after to the Monarchs of the *Medes* and *Persians*. In the expiring of which great Monarchy, *Beflus* a fable and cruel Tyrant, did command this Province: and having villainoufly flain *Darius*, his Lord and Mafter, affumed unto himfelf the title of King of *Persia*, under the name of *Axaxerxes*. But being betrayed by *Spitamenes*, one of his Con-



of the said *Bagos* made sole Monarch of *Perfia*. But being vanquished by *Alexander the Great*, in the three Battels of *Granicus*, *Cilicia*, and *Arbela*, the Empire of the *Perfians* was transferred to the *Gracians*, *A. M.* 3935.

The certain Revenues of this great Monarchy, seem to have been 14560 Talents; for so much the late *Darius* received yearly. But what the casual and extraordinary *Intrado* was, is not eafie to fay; though manifest it is, and demonftrable by many strong and evident reasons, that they far exceeded the certain. For firft, the *Perfian* Monarchs were Kings of 127 Provinces. Secondly, *Darius* offered to *Alexander* for the Ransom of his Mother and two Daughters, 30000 Talents of Gold. Thirdly, *Alexander* found in the Treasury of *Damafcus*, 2600 Talents; in that of *Sufa*, 50000 Talents of Gold uncoin'd; in that of *Pafagardi*, 60000 Talents; in that of *Ecbatana*, 26000 Talents; in that of *Perfepolis*, 120000 Talents; in all 204600 Talents; befides the infinite riches of the Treasury of *Babylon*, yielded into his hands by *Bagophanes*, and other places of note, not particularly fpecied: An huge and moft unfpeakable fum! Fourthly, in that the Gold and Riches which *Alexander*, now a Conqueror, sent from *Perfia* to *Macedon* and *Greece*, (befides which every Captain and common Souldier had provided and laid up for his own maintenance) loaded ten thoufand Mules, and five thoufand Camels.

After this overthrow of the *Perfian* Monarchy, the *Perfian* Nation lay obfcure 525 years, viz. from the 3635 year of the World, to the 228 year of *CHRIST*: of which time they were 83 years under the *Syrian* Successors of *Alexander*; and 442 years under the *Arfacidians* Kings of *Parthia*. *Malla* & *Deffier*, &c. as *Herodian*. "For after *Darius* had loft his Kingdom to *Alexander* the *Macedonian*, and after the Victor himfelf was dead alfo, the more potent Captains divided *Asia* among them. But difcords often arifing, and the *Macedonians* puiffance, by thefe often broils, not finally broken, *Arfaces*, one of the *Parthian* Nobility, perfwaded the barbarous people of the East, and among them the *Perfians*, to caft off the *Greek* yoke, and ftand for their Liberty: he himfelf taking upon him the Title of King, and invefting himfelf with a Diadem, *A. M.* 3718. The *Perfians* by this revolt got little or nothing, having indeed not changed the *Tyranny*, but the *Tyrant* only: thefe *Parthian* Princes Lording it with as high an infolency, as ever the old *Perfian* Monarchs, or the Kings of *Syria* did before. From this *Arfaces*, all the reft of his Successors, and thofe too of the Family of *Artabanus*, or fecond Race of *Parthian* Kings, took that name upon them: as the *Roman* Emperours that of *Cæfar*, or the old *Egyptian* Kings the name of *Pharaoh*. Their ufual Style was *Rex Regum*, or King of Kings: and by that Style with arrogance and infolence enough, *Vologefes* thus infcribed his Letters to *Vifpafian* the *Roman* Emperour, viz. *Arfaces*, *Rex Regum*, *Flavii Vefpafiano*: giving himfelf the Title of King of Kings, but the other nothing but his bare names only. To which, *Vifpafian* without taking notice of the *Parthian's* pride, returned his anfwer to him with this Superfcription, *Fl. Vefpafianus Regi Regum Arfacidi*: whether with more fcorn or modelfy, it is hard to fay. They alfo called themfelves the Brethren of the Sun and Moon, which were the chiefelt Gods they worfhipped. Great Princes queftionlefs they were, and kept the *Romans* harder to it, than all the Kings and States in the world befides: whole names and acts occur in thefe following Catalogues of

## 2. The Arfacidan or Parthian Race of the Kings of Perfia.

- A. M.*  
3718 1 *Arfaces*, the Founder of the *Parthian* Family.  
3741 2 *Mithridates*, or *Arfaces* the fecond, affaulted by *Antiochus Magnus* with an Army of 120000 men, but without fuccels.  
3751 3 *Pampatius*.  
3773 4 *Phraartes*, the Son of *Pampatius*.  
3783 5 *Mithridates* II. Brother of *Phraartes*, fubdued the *Medes*, and extended his Empire to *Euphrates*.  
6 *Phraartes* II. flain in a War againft the *Syrians*.  
3857 7 *Artabanus*, Uncle to *Phraartes* the fecond.  
8 *Pacorus*, the Son of *Artabanus*.  
9 *Mithridates* III. Brother of *Pacorus*.  
3903 10 *Horades*, Brother of *Mithridates*, whom he overcame, and caufed to be flain in his own fight. He alfo vanquifhed *M. Cræfus*, and flew 20000 *Romans*; and becaufe *Cræfus* was reported to be wondrous covetous, he caufed Molten Gold to be poured down his Throat. A miferable death, but in reſpect of the Divine Providence, a moft juft Revenge upon him for his Sacrilege, in Robbing the Temple of *Hierufalem*, as he marched towards the *Parthians*. The overthrow, and the difgrace which thereby hapned to the *Romans*, was not long afterwards recompensed by *Veniudius*, one of the Lieutenants of *Mark Antony* the *Triumvir*, who flew great numbers of them in a pitched field, and amongst others, *Pacorus* the Kings Son: the day of the Battel being the fame, in which *Cræfus* had before been vanquifhed. After this Victory, for which *Veniudius* had the honour of a *Triumph* (and the firft *Triumph* that ever the *Romans* had held for a *Parthian* Victory) he was in a fair way to have ruined this Kingdom, to have ſhrewdly flaken it at the leaft, had not *Antony* in an envious humour called him from that ſervice. Finally, *Horades* was flain by his Son *Phraartes*.  
11 *Phraartes* III. a valiant Prince, but wicked and cruel, as the Murderer of his own Father and many of his Brethren doth clearly evidence. Againft him marched *Marcus Antoninus* with a populous Army, which wanted little of an absolute overthrow; of 16 Legions, scarce fix returning home in safety. This King ſubmitted himfelf and Kingdom unto *Augustus*, capturing the *Roman* Enſigns, and feeing the *Romans* taken at the defeat of *Cræſſus*. The only mark of the *Parthians* Subjection, was their receiving Kings at the appointment of the Senate and Emperours of *Rome*, which alfo was of no long continuance.  
12 *Phraartes* IV. Son of *Phraartes* the third, whom he flew and fucceeded.  
13 *Horades* II. Son of *Phraartes* the fourth, flain in a confpiracy.  
14 *Vemon*, ſubſtituted in the place of *Horades*, but offered by  
15 *Tiridates*, who was alfo diſpoſſeſſed of his Life and

and Kingdom of *Artabanus*, the people flocking to him as a man of courage, and being offended with the two laſt Kings, becauſe they either had received the Kingdom, or at leaſt the Confirmation in it, from the *Roman* Emperours. Which *Artabanus*, though defended either from a Female, or ſome of the Collateral line of the former Family, yet being not direct Heir thereof, he is looked on as a ſtranger to the Blood of the *Arfacide* the Family of *Arfaces*, giving place to that of this *Artabanus*, of which Family we have the names of twelve Kings ſucceſſively Reigning: the moſt conſiderable of them being *Chloſes*, the eighth King of this Line, from whom the Emperour *Trajan* gained *Armenia*, and *Meſopotamia*, adding them to the *Parthian* Empire. Members whereof they did continue till regained to the *Perfian* Crown, by *Sapor* the ninth King of the next *Perfian* Dynaſty. But for thoſe twelve Kings of this houſe, they are theſe.

## The third Dynaſty of the Kings of Perfia, and the fecond of the Parthian Race.

- 1 *Artabanus*.
- 2 *Bardanes*.
- 3 *Gateres*.
- 4 *Vomanes*.
- 5 *Vologefes*.
- 6 *Artabanus* II.
- 7 *Pacorus*.
- 8 *Chloſes*.
- 9 *Parnaspates*.
- 10 *Vologefes* II.
- 11 *Vologefes* III.
- 12 *Artabanus* III. the laſt King of this new Race

of the *Parthians*, whoſe overthrow by the valour of *Artaxerxes* the firſt *Perfian* King of the fourth Dynaſty, occaſioned the Tranſlation of the Diadem to the natural *Perfians*; after it had continued in two *Parthian* Families for the ſpace of 470 years. Which Tranſlation, as it was wrought by the uncreſcible power of God, who only hath the diſpoſing of Crowns and Scepters; ſo in the way of ſecond cauſes it may be principally referred to the Barbarous Malface of this people, by *Antoninus Caracalla* the *Roman* Emperour; who having negotiated a Marriage with the Daughter of this *Artabanus*, and going (as he gave it out) to ſolemnize the Nuptials, was met by the old King accompanied with the flower of his Nobility, and the choicelt of his Souldiers, and other Subjects, in *Triumphal* Ornaments. Which honourable Train was no ſooner come near his Army, but he commanded his Souldiers (on a Watch-word given) to put them all to the Sword, the King himſelf hardly eſcaping with his life. *Caracalla* being dead, and *Macrinus* ſucceeding in the Throne, the *Parthians* ſet upon him to Revenge that ſlaughter. But underſtanding after a long light of three days continuance, that *Macrinus* had ſlain *Caracalla*, they made Peace with him; but were ſo weakened and unable to hold their own, that it made the *Perfians* once more think of recovering to their own Nation, the Regal power. For *Artaxerxes*, a noble and generous *Perfian* (his name purſuing ſuggeſting ſome high thoughts unto him) did fo well husband the opportunity, that he flew *Artabanus* the laſt King of the *Parthians*, and once more brought the Royal Seat into *Perſia*. Yet was not this ſo eaſily effected, the *Parthians* notwithstanding their former loſſes, maintaining another cruel fight for three days together; ſo difficult was it to vanquiſh that Nation, when their Forces were broken; impoſſible when they were entire. *Artaxerxes*, proud of this ſuccels, ſent a peccatory Embaſſy to *Alexander Severus*, the then *Roman* Emperour, to have all the Provinces of *Asia*, which had

formerly belonged to the *Perfian* Monarchy, re-delivered to him: a matter not ſo eaſily granted as demanded. For *Severus* to ſuppoſe ſo iſolent an Enemy, marched towards *Perſia* with an Army *Romanly* appointed; which, to find his Enemy more weak, he divided into three parts: whereof the firſt was to march into *Media*, the ſecond into *Perſia*, the third himſelf Led in the mid-way between both, to ſuccour both, or be ſuccoured by both, as occaſion required. But his device ſucceeded not happily, for his two Armies being by the *Perfians* broken, he with much danger and hiee retired back with the third. This was a good beginning for the *Perfian* Kingdom: the eſtabliſhment followed not long after: *Valerianus* the Emperour being vanquifhed, and taken Priſoner by *Sapor*, the ſecond King of this Race. So that now the name of the *Perſian* grew ſo terrible to the *Romans*, that *Conſtantine the Great* tranſplanted many of the Colonies and Garrifons of the North-weſt parts of the Empire, into the Eaſt, to keep the *Perſian* from growing too far upon the *Roman* Provinces; and removed alſo the Seat of the Empire nigher unto them, from *Rome* to *Conſtantinople*. And thus having ſhewn the beginning and Eſtabliſhment, the Foundation and Building of the new Kingdom of the *Perfians*, take along with you the Catalogue of their Kings, until they once more loſt the Sovereignty of their own Nation, and became Slaves again to more barbarous Maſters.

## The fourth Dynaſty, or Race of the Perfian Kings.

- 228 1 *Artaxerxes* 15.
- 243 2 *Sapor* 31.
- 274 3 *Ormiſdates* 1.
- 275 4 *Vararanes* 3.
- 278 5 *Vararanes* II. 16.
- 294 6 *Vararanes* III.
- 294 7 *Narſes* 7.
- 302 8 *Mifdates* 7.
- 310 9 *Sapor* II. 70.
- 380 10 *Artaxerxes* II. 11.
- 391 11 *Sapor* III. 5.
- 396 12 *Vararanes* IV. 10.
- 406 13 *Idigertes* 21.
- 427 14 *Vararanes* V. 20.
- 447 15 *Vararanes* VI. 17.
- 464 16 *Perozes* 20.
- 484 17 *Valens* 4.
- 488 18 *Cabades*, diſpoſſeſſed by
- 499 19 *Lambuſes* 4.
- 503 20 *Cabades*, again reſtored.
- 523 21 *Coſroes Magnus* 48.
- 581 22 *Hormiſda* 8.
- 589 23 *Coſroes* II. 39.
- 628 24 *Siroes* 1.
- 629 25 *Adbeſir*.
- 26 *Sarbatius*.
- 27 *Barnabius*.
- 630 28 *Hormiſda* II. the 28 and laſt King of the Race of *Artaxerxes*, or the fourth Dynaſty: of whom beſides the two firſt Kings, whoſe Acts are ſpoken of before, the moſt remarkable were, 1 *Vararanes* the ſecond, in whole time *Carus* the Emperour palling over *Euphrates*, and laying Siege to *Cteſiphon*, was there flain by a Thunderbolt. 2 *Narſes*, the Son of *Vararanes*, who firſt diſcombed *Galecius*, one of the *Cæſars*, in the Empire of *Dioſcleian*, and totally ruined his Army: for which *Galerius* being forced to Laquey it by the Emperour's Chariot in his Purple Robes, was ſo highly flamed, that to recover his credit he ſet upon *Narſes* once again, routed him, and took Priſoners his Wives and Children.



3. *Sapor* the second, the Son of *Misdates*, who began his Reign before his Birth. For his Father dying without Issue, left his Wife with Child: which Child the *Magi* having signified by their Art to be a Male, the *Persian* Princes caused the Crown and Royal Ornaments to be set upon his Mothers belly, acknowledging him thereby for their future King. A great and puissant Prince he proved, holding continual War with *Constantine*, and his Successors, till the Death of *Valens*; and gaining from them the best parts of *Mesopotamia*: but withal a great Persecutor of the *Christians*, of whom no fewer than 20000 are said to have suffered in his time. 4. *Yldigerter*, a Prince so esteemed by *Arcadius*, the Eastern Emperor, that he made him Protector of his Empire, during the minority of his Son *Theodosius*: which trust he Royally performed, and was a great friend unto the *Christians* in his own Dominions. 5. *Cabades*, first outed of his Kingdom by *Zamasher*, and restored again, was the first *Persian* King who permitted the free exercise of the *Christian* Religion. He slew *Zelieber*, a King of the *Huns*, coming to his Aid against the *Romans*, because he had before permitted to assist the Emperor; and rooted the *Manichean* Sect out of his Estate. 6. *Cosroes* the Son of *Cabades*, surnamed the Great, a constant Enemy to the *Romans*; from whom he Conquered a great part of *Syria*, and took and sacked the City of *Antioch*. But finding the War brought home to his own door, by *Marinarius*, who was afterwards Emperor, and his own Countries in a flame, he took such thought of it, that he died of a Fever. 7. *Cosroes* the second, as great an Enemy to the Emperor *Heraclius*, from whom he took all that was left of *Mesopotamia*, *Syria*, and the Holy Land, with the City of *Hierusalem* it self; most of it recover'd by *Heraclius*: in despite of whom he caused all the *Christians* in his Kingdom to turn *Nestorians*. 8. *Hormisda* the second, the last of the Dynasty, who being first weakened by Civil and Domestic dissensions, was vanquished by *Hannar* and his *Saracens*, Anno 634. burying to the glory of this renowned Nation in the grave of oblivion, or at least subjection.

The *Saracenic* Caliphs, having added this Kingdom to their large Empire, appointed here their Deputies, whom they honoured with the name of *Sultans*; not one Supreme for the whole Kingdom, but several Governors or *Sultans* for each several Province: called by new names, and moulded into many *Toparchies*, as *Chorazan*, *Monzenabar*, *Uzbek*, and I wot not what; as the *Sultans* acting of themselves, and warring upon one another. as their humours led them, without relation to the *Caliph*, or Lord in chief. During which bustles it so hapned, that *Mahomet*, the Sultan of *Persia* (so called because he was the chief in Command and Power) picking a quarrel with his Neighbour the Sultan of *Babylon*, (*Pisafrits* he is called in some *Christian* Writers, by whom taken or mistaken for the *Caliph* himself) made War upon him. But finding him countenanced and supported by the Power of the *Caliph*, invited the *Turks*, then possessed of some part of *Armenia Major*, to come to his Aid: by whose means he overthrew the *Caliph's* Forces, and might have got the Sovereignty of *Persia* unto himself, if he had used his Victory and his Friends, with any tolerable discretion. But denying to pay these *Turk* their Wages, and send them home, he occasioned them to make head against him, under the Conduct of *Tangrolipix*, their principal Leader; to whom being once in Arms, several discontented persons of the natural *Persians*, did unite themselves. Encouraged with which addition, and being furnished with Horse and Armour, and other necessities, by the Spoil of the Country, they gave Battle to the Sultan himself: whom having vanquished and slain, *Tangrolipix*

by the joynt consent of both Armies is made King of *Persia*, the Founder of

#### The fifth Dynasty, or the Turkish Race of the Kings of *Persia*.

- 1030 1. *Tangrolipix*, of whom sufficiently before.  
2. *Axan*, the Son of *Tangrolipix*; by whom *Calin Moser*, his near Kinsman, was first with great Forces against the *Christians*; whom he dispossessed of a great part of *Asia Minor*.  
3. *Balak*, Sultan of *Persia*, in the beginning of the Wars in the Holy Land, undertaken by the Western *Christians*; against whom he is reported to have sent his Forces. Of whose Successors I find nothing till the time of  
1198 4. *Cassner*, the last King or Sultan of the *Turks*, vanquished in the year 1202. by the *Cham* of *Tartary*. Which makes me very apt to think, that after the death of *Axan*, or his next Successor, the *Turks* lost the Sovereignty of *Persia*, though they kept the possession of some parts of it: the Sovereignty thereof being recovered by the *Caliphs* of *Babylon*: and that it was so held by both, till the *Tatars* dispossessed the one, and destroyed the whole Progeny of the other, as before was noted. And this I find to be the opinion of *Benjamin Tudelensis*, a Learned Jew, which had Travelled most part of the East, to whose judgment herein I subscribe, as most found and rational.

#### The sixth Dynasty, or the Tartarian Race of the Kings of *Persia*.

- 1260 1. *Haalon*, or *Ulab-Kubkan*, by Occa the great *Cham*, made King of *Persia*; exterminated the whole Race of the *Caliphs* of *Bagdet*.  
1266 2. *Habkakaibon*, the Son of *Haalon*.  
1282 3. *Nicador Oglan*, by *Haalon* call'd *Tangador*, who made himself a *Mahometan*, and was named *Humed*, the Brother of *Habkakaibon*.  
1284 4. *Argon-Khon*, the eldest Son of *Habkakaibon*.  
1292 5. *Geniotukhon*, Brother of *Argon-Khon*.  
1295 6. *Badukhon*, the Uncle of the last, of which there is little memorable.  
1296 7. *Gazan*, the Son of *Argon-Khon*, who made *Asiat* his Imperial Seat.  
1305 8. *Alyapin*, who transferred the Court to *Tauris*, and is said to have been the Founder of *Sultania*, a chief City of *Media*; the Brother of *Gazan*.  
1317 9. *Abusaid*, Son of *Alyapin*, the last of the Race of *Haalon*, that reigned in *Persia*. After whose death, Anno 1327. (being the 736 of the *Mohometan Hegira*) the more potent Princes of the *Tartars* everly on the several parts and Provinces of it; every one calling himself King of that part or Province, which he was possessed of. And amongst them *Gempsh* the Sultan or *Soldan* of *Partibia*, (though a *Persian* born) put in for a share, and made himself Master of his own Province, and some parts adjoining: made on that ground by some of our *Christian* Writers (who very impudently have transmitted to us the affairs of this Country) the sole King of *Persia*. In this confusion it continued till the coming of *Tamerlane*, who like a furious Whirlwind, driving

driving all before him, composed the differences, by getting all unto himself. But as Philosophy doth teach us, that no violent motion is of long continuance; so the tumult of business and the success of actions may instruct us, that a Kingdom forced to bow under the command of a prosperous Army, is not so well assured to the Victor, but that fury of the War once past, it may return again to its former liberty, or open a more easy passage to some new Invader. And so it fared with the Conquests and Successes of *Tamerlane*, whose Issue quickly lost this Kingdom, and almost all the rest of his other Purchases: leaving but little memory of their names and Actions. For partly by his own imprudence, in cantoning his Estates amongst his Children; and partly by the weakness of his Successors in the Realm of *Persia*, this Kingdom did relapse immediately to the same confusions in which he found it; having almost as many Sovereign Kings as Provinces. Most of them Homagers perhaps to the Kings of the House of *Tamerlane*, and those who afterwards succeeded in the Title of Kings of *Persia*, of the *Tarcoman* or *Armenian* Dynasty: not yet reduced unto this Crown, notwithstanding the great and prosperous success of the *Sophian* Family. But for the Kings of the Race of *Tamerlane*, who only in their times had the honour to be called Kings of *Persia*, (and well enough content with that:) Such as they were, we find them in this order following:

- 1405 10. *Mirza Chareck*, the fourth Son of *Tamerlane*, succeeded in his appointment in the Realm of *Persia*.  
1447 11. *Olegbegeh*, Son of *Mirza Chareck*, vanquished and slain by his own Son.  
1450 12. *Abdalaisse*, slain not long after by his own Soldiers.  
1451 13. *Abdulla*, the Son of *Olegbegeh*, and Brother of *Abdalaisse*, vanquished by  
1452 14. *Abusaid II.* descended from *Morocha*, the third Son of *Tamerlane*, succeeded on the death of *Abdulla*.  
1461 15. *Zenzeer*, whom some call *Jooncha*, others *Maloucheser*, discomfited and slain in battle by *Ussan-Cassner*, Anno 1472. which was about 70 years from the death of *Tamerlane*.

#### The seventh Dynasty of the *Tarcoman*, or the *Armenian* Race of the Kings of *Persia*.

- 1472 1. *Ussan-Cassner*, by some called *Asymbesius*, by others more truly *Ozem-Azambec*, was the Son of *Tracheton*, one of those poor *Armenian* or *Turcoman* Princes, dispossessed by *Bajazet* the first, and restored by *Tamerlane*. Encroaching on his Neighbours, he was warned to desist by *Zenzeer* last *Persian* King; with whom encountering in a pitched Field, he overcame him, and got that Kingdom by the Victory.  
1478 2. *Jacub*, the second Son of *Ussan-Cassner*, having put by his elder Brother, attained the Throne, and repulsed the *Mamaluks* out of *Mesopotamia* and *Assyria*, which they had invaded. He was after Poysoned by his Wife.  
1490 3. *Julaver*, a Kinsman of *Jacub's*, succeeded him in the Estate, which he held only three years, and then left it to  
1493 4. *Bafinger*, a Prince of the same Blood; who living in Adultery with the Wife of *Jacub*, had conspired his death. 2.

- 1495 5. *Ruffan*, assaulted by *Aider*, or *Secaider*, of the *Sophian* Faction, who then began to be of power.  
1498 6. *Alamat*, or *Hagaret*, the last King of this *Tarcoman* or *Armenian* Race; first vanquished *Secaider* at the Battle of *Derben*, and cut off his head: but was after overthrown and slain by *Hysmael* the Son of *Aider*, upon the quarrel and occasion which here followeth.

*Mahomet* the Impostor and first Emperor of the *Saracens*, by his last Will and Testament, bequeathed the succession unto that Estate, to *Hali* his near Kinsman, and Husband of *Fatime* his eldest Daughter. But *Abudezer*, *Haumar*, and *Ofman*, three powerful men, and the chief Commanders of the Army in the time of *Mahomet*, successively followed one another in the Supreme Dignity. After their death, *Hali* enjoyed that honour for a little while, supplanted first, and afterwards vanquished and slain by *Mubaviz*, a great man of War, who succeeded in it: and to secure himself therein, slew *Hafsin* or *Ofman*, the Son of *Hali*, and eleven of the Sons of that *Ofman*; the twelfth, called *Misja Ceredine*, escaping with life. From him descended lineally one *Gunes*, the Lord of *Ardevile* in *Media*; who considering that there had been no *Caliph* in long time before, began to plot the establishing of that high honour in his own Family, as the right Heirs to it. A man of so great reputation among the people, that *Tamerlane* having made a Conquest of *Persia*, thought it no dishonour to his Greatness to bestow a friendly visit on him. Dying, he left his hopes and projects to his Son, called *Aider*, who afterward for the Purity of Religion pretended by him, had the adjunct of *Teshpy*; the word fo signifying in that Language: who also proved of such efficacy and power with all sorts of men, that *Ussan-Cassner*, the first King of the *Armenian* or *Tarcoman* Race, thought fit to make him Husband unto one of his Daughters. But on the contrary, *Jacub* the Son of *Ussan*, and some of his Successors, seeing him grow unto such power and estimation with the common people; and fearing what he could do, and not what he would do, endeavoured to deprive him by all means that might be. Which he not able to remedy, as the case then stood, practised to add unto his Party under the popular pretence of reforming things that were amiss in their Religion; and grew so powerful in the end, that he gave Battle unto *Ruffan* and *Alamat*, the two last Kings of the former Race. But *Alamat* having got the Victory, caused him to be slain; and delivered *Hysmael* and *Solyman* his two Sons, into the hands of *Amazar*, a chief Commander of his own, by him to be kept in perpetual Prison. But *Amazar*, a man of a more ingenious disposition, afforded them not only liberty, but also good Education: inasmuch that *Hysmael* *Sophi*, a towardy young Gentleman, undertook Revenge for the death of his Father, which work he fulfilled, having overcome and slain King *Alamat*, and his Son *Elyan*. After this Victory, he being Crowned King, or *Shah* of *Persia*, altered the form of Religion: making *Hali*, and himself the true Successors of *Mahomet*, but condemning *Abudezer*, *Haumar*, and *Ofman*, with the *Turks*, as Rebels and *Schismaticks*.

Hence proceeded the bloody Wars, which to the *Persians* I have hapned between them and the *Turks*: the *Persians* burning whatsoever Book or Monument they find concerning those three; and the *Turks* holding it more Meritorious to kill one *Persian*, than seventy *Christians*. *Sirius* in his Commentaries, writing purposefully of the acts of *Hysmael*, saith, that the *Jems* on some fond conceit, were persuaded that he was the *Messiah* they had

had so long looked for: But it proved quite contrary, there never being Prince that more vexed and grieved them.

The eighth Dynasty, or *Sophian* Race of the Kings of Persia.

- 1505 1 *Hyfmael Sophi*, the Founder of this Family, overthrown by *Selimus* the first, in the *Caldanian* Fields. 20.
- 1515 2 *Tamas*, the Son of *Hyfmael*, vanquished by *Solyman* the Magnificent, who took from him the Countries of *Chaldea*, *Affria*, and *Mesopotamia*, with some part of *Media*. 53.
- 1578 3 *Aider*, the second Son of *Tamas*, obtained the Kingdom, imprisoning his elder Brother; but his cruelty being much feared, he was made away by the practice of *Periancona*, his own Sister, having only reigned 15 days.
- 4 *Hyfmael II.* eldest Son of *Tamas*, restored unto his Father's Throne; but murdered with the privy of his Sister also, who found him too rough a nature for her to Govern; having reigned near two years.
- 1579 5 *Mabomet Cadabanda*, advanced unto the Throne by his Sisters Faction, (as being of a milder and more tractable nature) at his first entrance caused her to be beheaded for the former Murders. During his time, not fully settled in the State, *Amurath* the third, by his Lieutenants won from him almost all *Armenia*, *Media*, and great part of *Georgia*. 7.
- 1585 6 *Abas*, the second Son of *Mabomet*, having treacherously practiced the death of *Mirza*, his elder Brother, succeeded his Father, recovered almost all which the *Turks* had gained, and added the Kingdoms of *Ormus*, *Heri*, *Candabar*, and *Hircania*, to the Crown of Persia.
- 7 *Sophy*, the Nephew of *Abas* by his Son *Mirza*, (whose Eyes he caused to be put out on a false suspicion) at the Age of fifteen years succeeded: committed by his Grandfather during his Minority to the Protection of *Emangoli*, *Chamr*, or Duke of *Sibiras*. A Prince, who since he came to Age, hath had a good hand against the *Turks*, attempting the recovery of *Bagdat* and other places, which had been taken from them in time of *Abas*.

The Government of these *Persian* Kings, though it be despotical and severe, hath a great deal less of the Tyranny in it, than any other of the *Mahometan* Kings or Princes: these cherishing their Brethren, maintaining Nobility amongst them, and encouraging Industry; which makes them to be better served than the *Turk*, or *Tartar*:

to both whom they are far inferior both in power and Treasure. Their Officers of State, and men of principal Employment, for the most part *Eunuchs* (as generally in all the Empires of the East:) such persons being thought most trusty, because abstracted from the obligations of Wife and Children, they study more the Princes Service than their own Advantages. Their Forces consist most of Horse, to which they are inclined more generally, than to serve on Foot; and yet the greatest Body of Horse which they have brought at any time into the Field, came not to above 30000; but those well furnished and appointed, maintained on Lordships and Estates after the manner of the *Turkish* *Timariots*. The Foot-Soldiers of his own Countries, but poor and raw, and very seldom stand their ground; that defect being for the most part supplied by *Mercuraries*. The inconvenience of which being found by *Sultan Abas*, he served himself of Children bought of *Christian* Parents near the *Euxine* Sea (from whence the *Egyptian* *Sultans* had their *Mamluks*) whom they call by the name *Cozai-Bassis*, or *Red-Cops*, so named from the colour of their *Turbans*; trained up by them in their Religion and Warlike Discipline, as the *Turks* their *Janizaries*; yet far inferior to the *Turks*, against whom if they have prevailed since the time of *Abas*, they may ascribe the greatest part of their good fortune to those Divisions and Rebellions, which in these late times have been frequent in the *Turkish* Empire. And as for their Sea-Forces, they are inconsiderable. For though they have large Sea-coast both on the *Persian* Bay, the *Caspian* Sea, and the Southern Ocean; yet are they very poor in Shipping: suffering the *Nineville* to ingross the Trade of the *Caspian* Sea; the *Portugals*, to manage that of the Southern Ocean; as formerly that also of the *Persian* Bay, till the taking of *Ormus*.

The Revenues of this Kingdom in the time of *Hyfmael* the first *Sophy*, were exceeding great: inasmuch that *Tamas* his Successor, to ingratiate himself with all sorts of people, released them of all kinds of Customs imposed on Merchandise, either imported or exported. And this they say amounted to the sum of 90000 *Tomans* yearly: which, reckoning every *Toman* at 20 Crowns, made up a Million and 800000 Crowns of annual income. Which notwithstanding, his Revenue was computed at four or five Millions of Crowns yearly; raised out of *Domain* Lands, the *reath* of Fruits, the profit of *Mines*, and the *Fine* paid by every Subject when he sets up Shop. But *Tamas* finding this not to be sufficient to maintain his Royalty, doubled the value of his money, and thereby for the present his Revenue also. Since that they have been much impaired by the Conquest made upon them by the *Turks*, who had got from them so much Land as maintained 40000 *Timariots*; and yielded to the *Grand Seigneur* one Million of yearly income: whether improved again or not to their former height, I am not able to determine.

And so much for Persia.

OF



# OF TARTARY.



TARTARIA is bounded on the East, with *China*, the *Oriental* Ocean, and the *Streights* of *Anian*, (if such *Streights* there be) by which parted from *America*; on the West, with *Russia*, and *Podolia*, a Province of the Realm of *Poland*; on the North, with the main *Scythick* or *Frozen* Ocean; and on the South, with part of *China*, from which separated by a mighty Wall, some part of *India*, the *River Oxus*, parting it from *Bactria*, and *Margiana*, two *Persian* Provinces; the *Caspian* Sea, which separates it from *Media*, and *Hircania*; the *Caucasian* Mountains interposing betwixt it and *Turcomania*; and the *Euxine*, which divideth it from *Anatolia*, and *Thrace*. So called from the *Tartars*, a puissant and mighty people now possessed hereof: the realm of whose name we shall shew hereafter.

It containeth all those great and spacious Provinces, which the *Anglicans* called *Seres*, *Seythia extra Tmaum*, *Seythia intra Tmaum*, *Sace*, *Sogdiana*, the greatest part of *Sarmatia Asiatica*, and part of *Sarmatia Europaea*: extending it self the whole length of *Asia*, from the *River Tanais*, to the *Eastern* Ocean; taking in *Taurica Cherfonefis*, and some other parts of *Europe* also. So that if we measure it by miles, it is said to contain 5400 from East to West, and 3600 from North to South: a greater quantity of ground than the *Turkish* Empire, but of less fertility and account.

In measuring by the way of Degrees, it reacheth from the 50 Degree of Longitude, to the 195, which is 145 Degrees from West to East: and from the 40th Degree of Northern Latitude, unto the 8th, which is within 10 Degrees of the Pole it self. By which account it lieth from the beginning of the sixth Climate, where the longest day in Summer is 15 hours, till they cease measuring by Climates; the longest day in the most Northern parts hereof, being full six months; and in the Winter half of the year, the night as long.

The Country lying under such different Meridians, and such distant Climates, must needs be such, as no general Character can be given of it; and therefore we shall defer that, with the names of the Rivers, and chief Mountains, to the description of the several and particular Provinces. But for the People, being much of the same nature in every part, we may take the measure of them here. Affirmed to be of square Stature, broad faces, hollow eyes, thin beards, thick lips, flat noses, ugly countenances, swart of complexion, not so much by the heat of the Sun, (which keeps far enough off) as their natural flatness. Barbarous every where in behaviour, especially in those parts which they call *Asiatica*, and *Antiquia*; but withal very strong of body, swift of footmanhip, vigilant in time of service, and patient of all extremities both of cold and hunger. The women suitable to the men,

scorning or wanting Ornaments to set themselves out; or when they do, they seldom go beyond Copper, Feathers, or such precious *Gen-gams*.

In behaviour they are rude and barbarous, as before was said; eating their *Enemies* when they take them, as in way of Revenge; first letting out their blood, which they receive into *Cups*, and use it as Wine unto the feast. Though swift of foot, yet generally they love to ride, though it be but on Oxen; about whose necks, as about Horses, when they Travel, they use little Bells, with which *Musick* they are much delighted. Their speech, even in their common talk, is a kind of whining, and their singing little better than the howling of Wolves. They eat commonly with unwashed hands, the dirt and grease about their fingers serving as a sauce for their meat, which they devour greedily, and with little chewing; and for their ordinary drink use Mares milk. Homely of habit, made of the coarsest stuff, and reaching no lower than the knee: and if they go to the charge of Furs, contrary to the custom of other people, they wear the hairy side outwards, and the skin next their own bodies; only to shew the richness of their Apparel. And yet so proud in this beggary, that they account the *Christians* but as Dogs, condemn all the rest of the world, and think their *Cham* the only considerable Prince; by whose name they swear, as by their Gods.

In matter of Religion it is hard to say, whether *Mahometanism* or *Paganism*, be of most extent: some parts hereof being wholly *Pagan*, some wholly *Mahometan*, and some mixt of both. But of the two the *Pagan* is the better *Gentleman*, as being of the elder blood, and of more Antiquity: the Sect of *Mahomet* not being entertained amongst them, till the year 1246.

And yet these have not so prevailed, as to extinguish the remainders of *Christianity*, of which there are amongst them many several Churches. The *Christian* Faith first planted amongst the *Seythians*, by the preaching of *S. Andrew*, and *S. Philip*, two of the *Apostles*. Overgrown in these latter Ages by the Sect of *Nestorian*, either by the diligence of their Preachers, or by want of others to instruct them in more *Orthodox* Tenets. Before the prevailing of the *Tartars*, besides the *Circassian* *Christians*, of whom more anon, there are in the most remote parts of *Tartary*, whole Kingdoms of that Religion; as namely that of *Tende*, the chief of all: besides some numbers of them in *Tangut*, *Canchiteles*, *Cassar*, *Samarchan*, *Kartlim*, *Suehair*, *Erginal*, and *Caraian*; where in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, who surveyed these parts about the year 1270. they lived intermingled with the *Pagans*. Nor so diminished since the Conquest of those Countries by the *Tartars*, but that they are of a considerable number, especially in *Cathay* it self: where they are said to have a Metropolitan in the City of *Cambala*, (the principal City of that Empire) and he so honoured by the

Great



station are orderly disposed of into Streets, and Lanes, and by the *Tartars* are called *Agara*, or a Town of Carats.

The ancient Inhabitants heretofore were of *Scythian* Race; for by that name for ancient Writers can not only the true and proper *Scythians*, lying on both sides of *Imax*; but even the *Sarmatians* or *Sarmatians* also; and those not only of *Sarmatia Asiatica*, bordering next unto them: but even such *European* Nations, as lived on the Northern banks of *Ister*, and the *Euxine* Sea. And so they are affirmed to be by *Proclus* himself; though otherwise more exact than any, in distinguishing *Sarmatia Europæa*, from *Asiatica*, and *Asiatica* from the *Scythians*. For speaking of the Nations of *Sarmatia Europæa*, inhabiting on the *Palus Mæotis*, he ranks them thus, *καὶ περιέχεται τὰς παλαιὰς τὰς Μαιώτιδος*, &c. i. e. And all along the Coasts of *Mæotis*, dwell the *Jazyges* (distinct from those called *Metanages*) and the *Rhosonians*; and more within the Land, the *Hamaxobii* and *Alani*, *Scythians*. More towards the banks of the *Euxine*, and in the *Chersonesus* it self, dwell the ancient *Tauri*, subdivided into the several Nations of the *Sinchi*, *Naspi*, and *Arinchi*, by the said *Proclus* included in the general name of *Tauri Scythæ*. To none but these, of all the *European* *Sarmatians* doth he give this name. And therefore I conceive them to have been those *Scythians*, against whom *Darius* King of *Persia* made his fruitless war. Picking a quarrel with this People, because their King had denied to give him one of his Daughters to Wife; or to revenge, as others more probably say, the inroad which the *Scythians* formerly had made into *Asia*, he drew together an Army of 700 thousand. Passing over the *Thracian Bosphorus*, he came at last to the banks of *Ister*, where it parteth *Moldavia* and *Bulgaria*; and there for the passage of his men caused a Bridge to be Built, to the keepers whereof he left a Cord of 60 knots commanding them every day to untie one knot; and if he came not back before all were untied, to return to their houses. This done, he marched towards his Enemies, who still fled before him; leading him into the most desert and uninhabited parts of their Country, and when they had brought him into a straight, left Embassadors to him with a *Bird*, a *Moose*, a *Frog*, and an handful of Arrows; willing the *Persians*, if they could, to expound that *Riddle*. *Darius*, willing to hope the best of his design, conjectured that the *Scythians* did submit unto him, by delivering into his hands their *Air*, *Earth*, *Water*, and *Arms*. Hieroglyphically signified in their Present: But *Gobrias*, one of their *Seven Princes*, made this Exposition. That if the *Persians* could not fly like a *Bird* thorow the *Air*, or like a *Moose* creep under the *Earth*, or like a *Frog* swim over the *Water*, they could by no means escape the *Scythian* Arrows. And to say truth, this Commentary best agreed with the *Text*. For these *Scythians* following close upon him, or rather driving him before, and vexing him with continual skirmishes, forced him to make such halt to get over the River, that he lost 80000 of his men in fight and flight. This was the only memorable Action of these *European* *Scythians* in those elder ages: more memorable in the times succeeding for their horrid cruelty, than any argument of their valour. For it is said of these *Tauri*, or *Tauri-Scythæ*, that for the pleasing of their Gods, especially of *Diana*, whom they called *Ofloche*, they used to sacrifice all such strangers as they could lay hands on; and with their heads most barbarously adorned the Walls of her Temples. An inhumanity with which the *Christian* Advocates of the Primitive times did much use to upbraid the *Gentiles*; taunting them with the Sacrifices of *Diana Taurica* (so named from hence) as inconsistent with the nature of a God or goodnests; most

rightly giving them this brand or censure, that they were not *Sacra*, but *Sacrilegia*. *Et præter præsumptum esse quæ sit religio*. Better it was to be of no Religion, than of one so cruel.

But to go forwards with the story, In the actions of the *Greeks* and *Romans* we hear nothing of them, unless it were that the Emperor *Trajan* (as *Florus* seems to intimate) took the City of *Tyberis*: Which if he did, he added by that action somewhat to his own honour, but nothing to the *Roman* Empire: this people being never reckoned amongst the Provinces. Nor hear we any thing by name of their infesting the *Roman* Territories (as the other barbarous Nations did: ) except they passed in the account of the *Goths*, *Alani*, *Huns*, *Avars*, or other of the *Scythian*, or *Sarmatian* Peoples; by which the Majesty of that Empire was trod under foot. But what the *Persians*, *Greeks*, and *Romans* were not able to do, was with ease effected by the *Tartars*: who in the time of *Jochata*, or *Hocata*, the next to *Cingis*, under the conduct of *Batba*, or *Ruyda*, one of their most renowned Commanders, subdued all these parts; together with *Russia* on the North, *Bulgaria*, and *Hungaria* on the East. Subject at first to the Command of the Great *Cham* of *Cathia*, as the rest of the *Tartarians* were, they came at last to have a Prince of their own; one *Lachan Cham*, descended from the afore said *Batba*, and (as it was pretended) of the blood of *Cingis*. They grew at last of great power, by conquering the *Asiatick Tartars* which lay nearest to them, that *Mabomet* the Great thought fit to keep them down before grown too strong for him; and therefore under colour of taking in the City of *Caspis* then possessed by the *Genoese*, made himself Master of the greatest part of the *Tartarian* *Chersonesus*, and the Port of *Tauris*; thereby commanding both *Mæotis* and the *Euxine* Sea. In the time of *Selimus* the first, who had married a Daughter of this *Crim-Tartar*, (for so they call him) and was aided by him with an Army of 15000 men against his Father, the *Turks* and these *Tartarians* grew into a League. The chief conditions of it were, that the *Tartar* should aid the *Turk* upon all occasions, with 60000 horse, if it were required; that they shall not make war with any of their neighbours, (except the *Moscovites*) without leave of the *Turk*; that they shall pay yearly to the *Grand Seigneur* in the way of Tribute 300 *Christians*; that the new *Cham*, upon the death or deposition of his Predecessor, shall receive from the *Great Turk* a Royal Banner, in token of his Confirmation in that estate; that in reward of these services, the *Grand Tartar* shall have yearly from the *Grand Seigneur* 5000 *Ducats*, in the way of Pension; and succeed finally in the *Turkish* Empire, if ever the male Issue of the House of *Ottoman* should chance to fail. According unto this agreement, the *Tartars* have been aiding to the *Turks* from time to time, against the *Persians*, *Polanders*, *Hungarians*, *Moldavians*, and indeed whom not? and that with great and puissant Armies; the great *Cham* sometimes arming 150000 of his own Subjects; leaving but one man in an house to attend their Cattle; and sometimes adding in 50000 *Circassians*, and others of the *Asian Tartars*. And for the *Moscovites*, whom he is left at liberty to assault by this *Capitulation*, he hath had so hard an hand upon the him, that in the year 1571 they pierced as far as to the City of *Mosco*, and set fire on the Suburbs: then returning into the City built most of wood, and the space of two hours burnt the greatest part of it; and therein slew more than 800000 of all sorts of people. A quarrel not to the King-composed; the *Tartar* not only laying claim to the Kingdoms of *Caspian*, and *Afrachian*, which the *Russ* possess; but even to *Moscovia* it self, as hath there been shewn.

shewn. Nothing so punctual is the *Turk* on his part, to perform the Contract; who not content to have the *Tartars* for his friend, or at the worst his *Homager*, hath of late times attempted to make him his Slave or *Vassal*. For *Amarath* the third, quarrelling *Mabomet* the *Crim-Tartar* for a design to intercept *Osmán-Begia*, in his way from *Perfia* to *Constantinople*, authorized the said *Osmán* to war upon him: by whom the poor *Crim* and his two Sons, betrayed by some of his own Counsellors (corrupted with *Turkish Gold*) and a thrangled with a Bow-string; *Iltas* a Brother of the *Crim*, first thrown a *Vassal* to the *Turk*, put into the place; and over him the *Turkish Beglerbeg* or *Basla*, to command in chief. What hopes he hath of succeeding in the *Turkish* Empire, if the house of *Ottoman* should fall, hath been already taken into consideration, in our discourse upon that subject.

What the Revenue of this Prince is, it is hard to say; his Subjects having little Money, and living most upon the barter of their Cattle. But besides what he hath in Lands or Customs, and the 5000 *Ducats* yearly which he receives yearly from the *Turk*, he hath the rent of all the spoils which are got in the wars, and a *Chèque* for every Captive, for some two or three (whosoever taketh them) according unto their estates.

As for his power, what he can do in Horse, we have seen already; and as for Foot, and Ammunition, and other necessities, he is supplied with them by the *Turk*, (who doth sometimes excuse his quarrels: ) by whose alliance they have brought the *Moscovites* to some extremities. And upon confidence of the favour and protection of the *Grand Seigneur*, the *Cham* then being, upon the death of *Stephen Babori*, (whom *Amarath* the third, commended to the Crown of *Poland*) sent Embassadors to negotiate his Election to that Kingdom; and to induce them thereto, promised them in his Letters amongst other things, that their Pope should be his Pope, their *Luther* his *Luther*; and that rather than put them unto any charge to find his Table, he could live with *Heretic-flesh*. His Emballie entertained with *Laughter*, as it well deserved.

## 2. TARTARIA DESERTIA.

TARTARIA DESERTA is bounded on the West, with *Precoepensis*, and the Empire of *Russia*; on the East, with *Antiquia*, and *Zagabai*; from which last parted by the River *Spæne*, which falleth into the *Caspian* Sea about the middle of it, and with the great Lake of *Kitay*, from East to West; on the North, with the *Syphic* or frozen Ocean; and on the South, with part of the *Euxine* Sea, the *Caucasian* Mountains, and some part of the *Caspian*.

It took this name from the many *Deserts* which are in it; and is called also *Asiatica*, to difference it from *Precoepensis*, which is wholly in *Europe*: or because it taketh up the whole continent of *Sarmatia Asiatica*, according to the bounds therof laid down by *Proclus*, except some part heretofore incorporated to the *Russian* Empire.

The Country of it self sufficiently fruitful, if well manured; and were it in the hands of a laborious and industrious people, would yield large increase: as appears by the ill-husbandry of the *Tartars*, who sow nothing, yet without giving it any tillage, receiving very plentiful returns of both. But the *Tartar* being a nation that hath no *Agriculture*, and laugheth at *Christians* for living on the tops of *Reeds*, (for they call our bread ) neglect all that which is not of a rank Pasture for their Herds and Cattle: moving from one place to another, as the *Graz*

falleth them; which maketh it so full of *Deserts*, and so empty of Towns as to deserve the name of *Tartaria Deserta*.

The People or Inhabitants of it are of several sorts, derived from three several Originals, and disposed of in three several parts. 1. The *Samoyeds*, dwelling towards the Northern Ocean, who are wholly Idolaters, now reckoned as a part of *Zagabai*, and there we shall hear further of them. 2. The *Circassians*, bordering on the *Euxine*, for the most part *Christians*; and 3. the *Tartars*, planted betwixt both, being all *Mabometans*. These again subdivided into several Tribes, which they call their *Hordes*: of which the most considerable are, 1. the *Nagaian Tartars*, 2. the *Zavolbenes*, 3. the *Thumeneses*, 4. the *Kirgessii*; besides the *Hordes* or Kingdoms of *Caspian*, and *Afrachian*, added unto the Empire of *Russia*, where described already; and others of iniquitous note, not here considerable.

But before we come to speak with these people in their several places, we must first look upon the whole Country, as presented to us under the name of *Sarmatia Asiatica*: bounded by *Proclus* as before, save that it did extend more Westwards; and was unknown to him in the Northern parts of it: now possessed by the *Moscovites*. So populous in the time of that Author, that he giveth us the names of forty several Nations which did then inhabit it, and of about as many Towns of good estimation. Of which there are but few or none remaining; and for the names of some of the principal of them, we shall have them presently.

Rivers of note next in it, 1. *Merabius*, 2. *Rhombitus*, the Greater, and 3. the *Leis*; 4. *Antica*, 5. *Thebanis*, 6. *Plabii*, 7. *Thejris*, 8. *Corax*, and 9. *Varadan*; all of them falling into the *Euxine*, and making Fens. 10. *Vidoni*, 11. *Almatas*, and 12. *Rba*, paying their Tributes to the *Caspian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. Of these the principal is *Rba*, by the modern Latines called *Volga*; by the *Tartars*, *Edi*; rising in *Russia*, not far from the City of *Mosco*, (where we have described it.) Most memorable, besides the twenty Mouths or Channels, wherein it openeth into the *Caspian*, for a Medicinable and wholesome root growing on both sides thereof, which the Physicians call *Rba*, by the name of the River; and for Distillation sake, *Rba Pontick*, to difference it from *Rubarbar*, or *Rba Barbarum*, as of a different nature from it; this last being purgative, and the other more apt to bind. 13. *Oba*, a River unknown to *Proclus*, rising out of the Lake of *Kitay*, a Lake in bignets like the Sea, and full of many little Islands (most of them inhabited.) Which River at its first parting from this Lake, is said to be 8 miles breadth; and growing still bigger and bigger, emptieth it self at last in the Northern Ocean: the present boundary between the *Russian*, and the People in the North of this Country.

Principal Mountains of this part, 1. *Corax*, giving name unto the River issuing out of it, 2. *Montes Hippici*, extended towards the *Caspian* Sea. 3. *Montes Ceramii*, lying in the furthest parts heretofore (then known to my Author) to the North and East. 4. *Caucasii*, or *Caucasi* Montes, extended from the *Euxine* to the *Caspian* Seas; and parting *Sarmatia Asiatica* from *Colibia*, *Iberia*, and *Albania*. A chain of Hills of which *Argilata* faith, *Acumene* & *Latitudine omnium maximæ*, &c. that for height and breadth they are the greatest of the East; the tops whereof are lightened by the Sun beams in midnight till almost day-break, when it is dark night in the valleys beneath. Not passable for horse or foot (except they creep along by the *Euxine* shore) but at one place only, called *Sarmatia Pylee*, or the Gates of *Sarmatia*; by others named *Caucasice Porte*, from the Hills adjoining. Situate in the 51 degree

of *Latitudes*, and not far from the *Caspian Sea*: but that so intricate and narrow, that very small force may keep it against strong Armies. So carefully did Almighty God in his Heavenly Providence, shut up this fierce and barbarous People, from the rest of Mankind, by such unfavourable Waters, and unpassable Mountains: not to be freed out of this Prison, till he thought good to use them, as the Executioners of his wrath and vengeance, for the punishment of sinful and impudent Nations. This said, we will consider those particular Nations, which before we named, and are now possessed of in their several places.

1. Opposite to the *Precoepenses* lie the *CIRCASSIANS*, extended from the *Cimmerian Bosphorus* and the Fens of *Maeotis*, towards the Eastern shores of the *Euxine Sea* for the space of 500 miles; and reaching 200 miles towards the North. The name imposed on them by the *Tartars*, whereas before they were called by *Phrygia*, *Zygi*, by some Writers, *Zybi*, conceived to be the *Zinchi* of *Ptolemy*.

The Country very fitly seated for Trade and Merchandize, as having a fair and large Sea-coast, with many Rivers opening into it (nine of those spoken of before, passing thorough these Tracts) and not a few capacious Bays, and commodious Havens. Of which the principal were *Sinus Cercetius*, or the Bay of *Cercetis*, *Synda*, and *Bata*, two known Havens, and specified by my Author with the adjunct of *Portus*. But these conveniences not much looked after by the present Inhabitants, who are more inclined to the Wars, than to Trades, or Merchandize. A Stout and Military People, trained to their Weapons from their Childhood, and sold as soon as trained to by unnatural Parents. For from these parts did the *Mamelucks of Egypt* fetch their first Original; and from hence supply themselves with a perpetual *Seminary* of Slaves and Souldiers, raised by degrees unto the highest dignities of that slavish Empire; And from these parts the *Persian Sophies* are supplied with their *Coxswains*, *Basas*, disciplined and instructed by them like the *Turkish Janizaries*.

The Christian Faith was here planted in the year 860. or thereabouts, by the Ministry of *Cyrril* (or *Chiril*) and *Methodius*; employed in that Service by the Patriarch of *Constantinople*. In which respect their Churches are of the Greek Communion, conforming thereto in Rites and Doctrine, and of the jurisdiction of that Patriarch: but differing from them very much in matters practical. For it is ordinary with these half *Christians*, not to baptize their Children till eight years old; to hear Divine Service standing without their Churches, into which they very seldom enter (especially the Gentlemen) till the fortieth, or (as some say) the sixtieth year of their age: dividing the whole course of their life between God and the Devil, in dedicating their youth unto Theft and Robbery, their old age (when they can no longer commit those villanies) to the difficult business of repentance.

Places of most observation amongst the Ancients, 1. *Cimmeria*, a Town and Promontory, so called from the *Cimmerii*, once the chief People of these parts, of whom more anon; situate on the very shore of the *Bosphorus*, from hence denominated. 2. *Phanagoria*, in old times a well-traded Empory; situate on a little Island raised out of the Sea, by the care and industry of the *Greeks*, who had here a Factory. 3. *Apaturgus*, by *Pliny* called *Apaturus*, memorable for a Temple of *Venus* surnamed *Apaturia* (which name the gave unto this place,) because (saith *Strabo*) when the Giants assaulted her, the craved help of *Hercules*, who slew them all one after another. 4. *Grusa*, by *Ptolemy* honoured with the title of

*Civitas*, the *Gargaza* of *Diodorus*, now called *S. George's*, *Oenuntia*, near the mouth of the River *Theysis*, 6. *Arza*, more within the Land, which with 7 *Ampacia* hath the name of a City also. The names of their chief Havens we have seen before. But few of these, or any other mentioned by the Ancient Authors, being now visible in their ruins: the chief of those which are now extant, are 1. *Looppa*, 2. *Contice*; but of no great note.

The People anciently though divided into the several Tribes of the *Thirfagete*, *Euge*, *Tarce*, the *Huas*, *Avanti*, and *Maeute*, all noted Nations; besides the *Coxaze*, *Zinchi*, *Tyrambe*, *Pfelis*, and others as obscure as they were, better known by the name of *Cimmerians*, in which those several Tribes concentrated. Descended in the right of that common original, from *Gomer* the Son of *Japhet*, first planted in the Mountainous places of *Albani*: his Posterity known by the name of *Gomerii*, afterwards *Cimmerii*, left there a memorial of themselves in the Mountains called *Cimmerii*. But that Country proving both too barren, and too narrow for them, some of them passed into *Phrygia Major*, where they built the City *Cimmeris*, not unknown to *Pliny*, in whose time it was extant: and others in some Tract of time, keeping the *Euxine* on their left hand, fixed themselves in these parts, here giving name to the Town and Promontory *Cimmerion*, to the *Cimmerian Bosphorus*, and generally to all the people descended of them. From these particularly, as the stout and valiant Nation of the *Cimbri*, do derive their Pedigree; so from these and the Children of *Moseph*, *Mago*, and *Tubal*, the *Sarmatians* both of *Europe* and *Asia*, the *Moscovites*, and perhaps the *Sybiens*, are to fetch their Original: all of them great and puissant Nations; and all involved promiscuously in the name of *Sybiants*. Renowned for no other action more than the memorable Expedition, which they made into *Media* in the Greater, and *Lydia* in the Lesser *Asia*: the *Cimmerians* by themselves alone, or by them as principals the rest of these *Sarmatians* in a body together as a *Sybian* People. Distressed with want, or to disband their small Country of superfluous multitudes, these *Cimmerii* in the time of *Nabulassar*, or *Salmansassar*, King of *Syria*, communicating their design with the rest of the *Sybiens*, to enlarge their quarters; holding along the coast of the *Euxine Sea*, and passing thorough the Country of *Calchis*, first seized on some parts of *Pontus* and *Phaflagonia*. Where having fortified the Promontory on which *Sinope* was after built; and leaving there their Carriages, and the weakest of their Train with sufficient guards, they marched into *Lydia*, reputed (as it was indeed) for a wealthy Region. There they possessed themselves of *Sardis*, the Royal City; and after of the rest of the Country, or the most part of it, *Ardes* the Son of *Giges*, who then reigned in *Lydia*, not being able to withstand them. Both sides being wearied with long War, and grown more pliant by degrees unto one another (as in like case betwixt the *Saxons* and the *Danes*) it proved no difficult matter for *Halyattes*, the Grand-child of *Ardes*, to command the business: aligning to the *Cimmerians* all those parts of his Dominions, which lay beyond the *Rhyndacus*; and settling his *Lydians* in the rest. By this transaction there were so good correspondences betwixt the Nations, that when *Cyxares*, King of the *Medes*, invaded the Country of these *Cimmerians*, under the colour of the invasion which the *Sybiens* had made in *Media*, *Halyattes* did espouse the quarrel, and appeared in one aid. In following times, growing into confidence of one another, and mixt in Marriages and Blood, they became one People; or at least passed not under the contempt of strangers, or the name of *Aliens*. Such end had this most notable

notable expedition of these *Cimmerians*; not much remembered after this, for the like undertakings. Yet here they held their own, though in other names, governed by many petty Princes, but all associated with *Mithridates* against the *Romans*: that King being so great amongst them, that his Son *Machabes* having married into some of their Families, was made King of *Bosphorus*. But *Machabes* having made his peace with *Lucullus*, the *Romans* never looked this way. Nor hear we much of them in succeeding times, till the invasion of the *Tartars*: by whom subdued, they acknowledge at first the Great *Cham* for their Sovereign Lord: whose power declining, they have successively been subject to the *Crim-Tartar*, the *Turk*, and *Moscovite*; but most commonly to the *Crim-Tartar*, as their nearest neighbour, and most able to hurt them. And him they furnished on command with 50000 horse for the *Grand Seigneur's* Service: yet so that they supply the *Persian* with his *Coxswal-Bassas*, and sometimes serve under him for pay, as they do under any which will entertain them. Governed like the *Sufflers*, by their several *Commonalties*: yet so, that every *Commonality* hath some principal man (which the *Sufflers* have not) whom they call *Mosfey*, (that is *Dukes*) to direct and order them.

2. Betwixt these and the River *Volga* dwell the *ZAVOLHENSES*, one of the greatest Hords or Tribes of all the *Tartars*; and therefore called *Horda Magna*. Of these the *Crimis*, or *Precoepenses* were a *Coffling* only, proceeding out of this great Swarm or Nest of Hornets, though afterwards they became their Masters. Of the Country or the People we say nothing here, having sufficiently spoken of both already. Their chief Town hath the name of *Bolgar*, situate on the River *Volga*, and from thence so named: *Volgar* and *Bolgar* differing but little in Orthography, and not much in found.

This Country, as I take it by the situation, should be that which *Ptolemy* calleth *Mithridatis Regio*: whether so called in honour of him by the Princes of the neighbouring *Cimmerians*, with whom he had contracted alliance: or that he had made any Conquests there; or from some other Prince of the same name, I determine not. And in this Tract were those two Pillars, advanced unto the honour of *Alexander*, in *Ptolemy* called *Calumne Alexandri*, in whose time they stood without defacement: there being also *Altars* erected to him, or in memory of him, near the Banks of *Tanais*, occurring in the same Author by the name of *Are Alexandri*. Which probably occasioned the error of *Qu. Curtius*, who brings *Alexander* in pursuit of the *Scythian* War, as far as *Tanais*: whereas it is apparent by the course of his Actions, that he never got beyond the River *Jaxartes*; distant from *Tanais* no less than 2000 miles.

This Tribe first governed by its own King, whom they called *Ulu-Cham*, or the Great *Cham*, was in the year 1566. subdued by the *Crim-Tartar*, and made subject to him. Afterwards conquered by *Basilus* the Great Duke of *Moscow*, who thereupon assumed the Title of King of *Bolgar*: which his Successors still preserve, with the Town itself: well garisoned to keep open the whole course of the River *Volga*, by which they manage the great Trade of the *Caspian Sea*. But for the main body of this people, they returned again to their obedience to the *Crim*, as being a Lamb of the same body with him; and are subject unto his Commands: though by reason of their neighbourhood to the *Moscovite*, and commerce with that Nation, they frame themselves both to their language, habit, and behaviour.

3. East of the *Zavolhenses*, on the other side of the *Volga*, dwell the *NOIHACENSES*, or *NAGAIANS*, spreading as far as the borders of *Zagathay*,

and declining Southward towards the *Caspian Sea*, and the *Montes Hippici*: Accompted the best men of war of all the *Tartars*, but more fierce and cruel than the rest; void of all Arts, not having, or contemning Money, or the use of Corn. Horse-flesh and Mares milk their best diet: the flesh either roasted by the Sun, or heated by continual hanging at the Saddle-bow. And with such cheer (nor worse nor better) did *Acim Can*, one of the Princes of this Tribe, entertain *Jenkinson* and other *English* men in their travels to the *Caspian*, from the River *Volga*. Their chief Town, if possibly it deserve that name, is called *Scharajirzik*, the Residence of one of their Princes; and the next, *Seliktur*, where the said *Jenkinson* found the *Cham*, as in the prime place of his abode. The Government is by several *Mosfey*, the Heads or Chiefs, no doubt, of their several *Clans*: agreeing well enough together against the *Moscovite*, whom they infect with frequent inroads, and put him to the charge of continual Garrisons, at *Casan*, *Afrachan*, and *Viaska*. Their Wars for the most part only *Predatory*, rather to get some present booty, than out of any hope to enlarge their Dominion; and therefore commonly pacified, and sent home with Presents. The Great Duke is so good a Statesman, as to think the expense of Money cheaper than that of Blood; especially when he hath to deal with such an Enemy, who hath neither any Town of consequence, or fixt place of dwelling, and consequently nothing to be got but blows. Their *Mosfey*, formerly more in number, were of late times reduced unto three; of which he of *Scharajirzik* was the chief: to whose direction, and appointment (especially in matters which concerned the publick) the other two do commonly submit themselves.

4. Betwixt these *Nagaians*, and the *Circassians*, lie those Tribes which they call the *KIRGESSI*, spreading as far as to the mouths or influx of the River *Volga*: but intermixt with the *Heflites*, and *Bashurides*, two other of the *Tartarian* Tribes, but of less power. Their life, for the most part in continual motion, removing with their Wives and Families from one place to another; and governing themselves in their removes, by the light of the Pole-star. Partly *Mahometan*, partly *Gentile*, but the *Gentiles* make the greater number, not burying their dead bodies, as in other places, but hanging them upon a Tree, though they sink again: certain enough that they will be devoured or sweetened, before they return back to the same Station. Much reverence yet they give their *Priests*, by whom sanctified and besprikled in their publick meeting, with a certain mixture, compounded of Blood, Milk, Earth, and Cow-dung, a most sweet Confection, but good enough for them that desire no better. And yet with these the *Moscovite* is fain to hold fair compliance, and to send them every year some Presents for fear they should joyn with the *Nagaians*; or otherwise disturb him in his *Caspian* Trade down the River *Volga*.

5. The *THUMENSES* or *THUMEN TARTARS* lie more North than any of these *Tartarians*; having on the South, the *Zavolhenses*, and the Territory of *Viaska* in the Empire of *Russia*. A warlike People, and living near a dangerous neighbour; for which cause they do not straggle to abroad in petty companies, as the others do, but keep together in great bodies: For the most part much delighted in *Negromancy*, and *Conjurations*. In which the Devil so befools them, that he suffereth them to raise Temples; and sometimes, by *Diabolical* illusions, to defeat their Enemies. The only Hord of all *Deserta*, which still continue in obedience to their natural Lord, the Great *Cham* of *Carbay* (if such *Cham* there be.) And unto these we may adjoin the *Molgans*.



*Molgomoxans*, all *Gentiles*, and the most barbarous of all: living in Caves, and feeding upon Worms, and Mice, and Serpents, and such other vermin as would be poison unto any but such *Molgomoxans*, who are more poisonous than those Creatures.

These *Hords*, together with the Kingdoms of *Casan*, and *Afrachan* and such of the *Russian* Provinces as lie on the East of *Tanis*, and the River of *Duina*, make up that Country which anciently passed under the name of *Sarmatia Asiatica*: inhabited originally by the Descendants of *Gomer*, *Mefech*, *Tubal*, *Magog*, the Sons of *Japhet*, spreading themselves more Northwards as they grew in numbers, out of *Albania*, *Iberia*, *Colechia*, and the *Pontick*, or *Cimerian* Nations. Divided into the Tribes or Families of the *Olande*, *Gerri*, *Samocolchi*, *Socani*, *Seci*, *Scimuite*, *Agarite*, *Merdi*, *Canapfeni*, *Chenides*, *Basilici*, *Hyperborei*, *Hippobagi*, and others of as little note: these last so called from their eating of Horfes, which diet they have left unto their Successors. So like in manners and conditions, to the neighbouring *Scythians*, that they passed commonly by that name; and by that name are memorable for the great expedition by them made into *Asia* the Greater, at such time as the *Cimmerians* fell into *Asia Minor*. For passing without opposition thorow the *Sarmatian Streights*, where they might have been easily kept out; and leaving behind them the more barren Country of *Albania*, they fell into *Media*: where they were encountered (but victorious) by *Phraortes*, then King of the *Medes*: Who finding that he was not able to remove them by force, assayed it by cunning; and first persuaded them to look towards the South, as into richer Countries, and more like to yield them full content. Hereupon, full of Prey and Presents, they marched towards *Aegypt*, but were met in *Syria* by *Phamiticus* the *Aegyptian* King, who heard of their coming; and thought it best to entertain them on the way, and not to bid them welcome at home to his great cost. Out-lying the *Median* (as of the two richer Prince) he loaded them with gifts and treasures, and so sent them back again into *Media*, from whence they came: where for many years they afflicted that People, and the neighbouring Provinces, doubling their Tributes, and using all kind of Infolencies: till in the end, *Cyxares*, the Son and Successor of *Phraortes*, acquainting some of his most faithful Subjects with his design, caused the better part of them to be plentifully feasted, made them drunk, and flew them; recovering thereby the possession of his whole Estate. Afterwards imitated by the *English* in their *Heckide* laughter. Such of them as escaped this blow, and were not willing to be subject to the Kings of *Media* (as many of them were) were suffered to return home by the same way they came; whereas at their coming, they found foul work made by their Wives and their Slaves; the story whereof we had when we were in *Russia*. After this we hear nothing of them in the stories of the *Greeks*, and *Romans*, unless those *Amazons*, who attended their Queen *Ibalgithi*, when she belov'd a visit on *Alexander*, were rather of these *Sarmatian Amazons*, than of those of *Pontus* and *Thermodon*, as I think they were: the nearness of their dwelling to *Hircania*, in which place they found him, inducing me to this opinion. But possible enough it is, (though it be not certain) that some of these *Sarmatian* Tribes, though by other names, hearing of the successes of the *Huns*, *Avars*, and other barbarous Nations, which made havock of the *Roman* Empire, might join themselves unto them, and make up their numbers: those Nations being else too small to compound such Armies, as by them were brought into the field against the *Romans*, without such like helps. What their Estate hath been since subdued by the *Tartars*, hath been shewn already.

### 3. ZAGATHAT.

**ZAGATHAT** is bounded on the East, with the Mountain *Imaus*, by which it is parted from *Cathay*; on the North, with the main *Scythic*, or *Erax* Ocean; on the West, with *Tartaria Deserta*, from which separated by the River *Socane*, and the Lake of *Kitay*; and on the South, with the *Caspian* Sea, and the River *Oxus*, by which divided from the Empire of *Persia*. So called from *Zagathay*, a brother of one of the Great *Chams*, on whom it was conferred for his better maintenance; the *Scythia intra montem Imaum* of the ancient Writers.

The Country spreading out so far, on all sides, as before appeared, comprehendeth all those Provinces and tracts of ground, which anciently were called, 1. The Country of the *Sace*, 2. *Sogdiana*, with 3. *Zagathay*, specially so called; and 4. *Tircheshan*, included anciently in the name of *Scythia intra montem Imaum*; and 5. the *Terra Incognita*, which *Ptolemy* makes to be the Northern boundary of that part of *Scythia*. By taking a survey of all which Particulars, we shall find the temper of the whole.

1. *SACE*, or the Country of the *Sacani*, is bounded on the East, with the Mountain *Imaus*; on the West, with *Sogdiana*; on the North with *Zagathay*, properly and specially so called; on the South, with the River *Oxus*, by which parted from *Bactria*. So called from the *Sace*, the Inhabitants of it; but the reason of their name I find not.

The Country anciently either barren, or ill manured; full of vast Forests, wide Deserts, and the like uninhabitable places, few or no Cities in it, and not many Villages (*Civitates autem non habent*, as my Author hath) the People living most part in Caves, or otherwise wandering up and down with their droves of Cattel; Called for that reason *Nomades* by some ancient Writers. The name not proper to these only, but common to all those who followed the like roving life, as the *Sarmatians*, wild *Arabians*, *Saracens*, and the Inhabitants of *Lydia* and *Nubidia* in *Africa*. Only one fortified place they had, which from the materials of it had the name of *Turris Lapidea*, (*ῥαβδὸς λίθου*, in the *Greek*) or the *Calliope* Stones; Part hereof being peopled for the most part by *Camels*; or travelling only with those Creatures, had the name of *Camelorum Regio*.

Divided it was anciently into many Tribes, the *Carate*, and *Comari*, near the River *Jaxartes*; the *Moggeta*, and *Gomede*, near the hills called *Alfatanus*; the *Eyles*, and *Grynei*, more within the Country. All joined in one by the name of *Sace*; and by that name made a very fortunate Progress into *Armenia* (to which they had an easy passage by the Northern Banks of the *Caspian* Sea) and therein gave name unto the Province called *Sacafena*. But proceeding into *Cappadocia*, and there slain by the *Persians* in the midst of their Feallings, they left there also some remembrance of their name, in an annual Festival called *Sace*; celebrated by the *Persians*, in memorial of their good success in the war against them. Such as flaid here, being overcome by *Cyrus* the first *Persian* Monarch, did go good service to that Prince, that *Amorges* the King of these *Sace*, is said to have refused him from the hands of the *Scythians*, by whom otherwife he had been slain, or taken Prisoner. In the declining of that Kingdom, they were subdued by *Alexander* at the end of his *Scythian*, and *Sogdian* wars; who hereabouts, by *Cobartanes* a noble *Persian*, was presented with a Bevy of Beautiful Ladies; one of which was that *Bargine*, whom he made his Wife, and had by her that *Hercules*,

*Hercules*, whom *Polyperchon* and his Faction proclaimed King of *Macedon*. Not memorable in the following times for any thing which they did or suffered; as they have been made by the opinion or mistake of others; who building *Casles* in the *Air*, will needs derive the *Saxons* (our famous Ancestors) from this Original: as if they were called *Saxons*, quasi *Saca* *Sones*, or the Sons of the *Sace*. A fancy in my poor conceit, of no ground at all. For either the number of these *Sace*, when they left these parts, must be great, or little. If little, how can we conceive it possible, they should force their way through those valliant Nations of both *Sarmatia's*, who to the last maintained their Liberties and Estate against the *Romans*? If great enough to force their passage (for stout and provident Nations use not to give passage to great Armies, but they pay dear for it) how can we think it possible they should be shut up in a corner of *Germany*, betwixt the River *Albis* and the *Cimbrick Chersonese*? The *Saxons* then, whatsoever they were, were no Sons of the *Saces*; and what in likelihood they were, hath been elsewhere shewn.

2. *SOGDIANA* hath on the East, the *Sace*; on the North and West, *Zagathay* specially called; on the South, the River *Oxus*, parting it from *Margiana*. So called from a chain of Mountains named *Montes Sogdii*, being the chief of all this Country, though of themselves a spur or branch of the Mountain *Caucasus*.

The Country indifferently fruitful, and very rich in Pasturage, because very well watered. For besides *Oxus*, and *Jaxartes*, which are common unto them and others; they have many Rivers of their own. The principal of which, 1. *Dynus*, and 2. *Arazates*, both navigable, and capable of very good Ships; both also running down the hills with a headlong course, and passing through the *Champion Country*, empty themselves at last in the Lake called *Oxiana*; as is affirmed by *Ammianus*, but as *Ptolemy* faith, into *Jaxartes*.

Places of most consideration are, 1. *Drepfa*, the *Metropolis* or Mother-City of this People. By *Pliny* called *Panda*, by *Solinus* *Darapsa*, situate on the River *Oxus*. 2. *Oxiana*, on the same River, and from thence denominated. 3. *Mareca*, on the same River also. 4. *Alexandria*, called for distinction sake, *Alexandria Oxiana*, which name declareth both the founder and the situation. 5. *Alexandria*, for the same cause of distinction, named *Alexandria ultima*: either because the last City which he built in these parts; or because it lay furthest off on the borders of the *Scythians*, against whose invasions or irruption it was said to be built. 6. *Tribarra*, one of the chief hereof in the time of *Ammianus Marcellinus*. 7. *Cyrcabata*, more memorable, and not less ancient, than any of those named before, by *Qu. Curtius* called *Cyrcopolis*, built by *Cyrus*, to fortifie his borders against the *Scythians*. It held out against the great *Macedonian*, a long time; and he himself coming nigher to the Walls than discretion would permit an ordinary General, had such a blow on the neck with a Stone, that he fell to the ground, his Eyes swimming in his head, and his whole Army giving him for slain: but reviving, he took the Town by a mine, and levelled it with the ground, in revenge of so great a danger.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Oxydrace*, and *Candari*, dwelling at the foot of the *Sogdian* Mountains; the *Oxiani*, and *Cheromii*, near the banks of *Oxus*; the *Jafsi*, and *Tachori*, near the River *Jaxartes*; the *Drepfiani* in the East parts bordering on the *Sace*; whose chief City was *Drepfa*: descended from their fevral roots but all called *Sogdians*. Conquered by *Alexander*, not without danger to his own person, as before was said; at the solicitation of *Spitamenes* a noble *Persian*, it

rebelled again. Who being suppressed, and the Country in some measure quieted, *Arimazes*, a Native of the Province, renewed the war. Who followed with 30000 men, encamped upon the top of an hill, in a place of such notable advantage, that *Alexander*, neither by force nor fair words, could get him out of it. He therefore dealt with 3000 of his youngest and most active men, on the promise of great reward, to climb the hill; and without any noise to show themselves at the back of the Enemy: Which having performed with the loss of 30 of their company, *Alexander* sent one *Cophes* to *Arimazes*; to let him know that the whole Army of *Macedon* was at his back; who terrified with what he saw, more with what he feared, gave up the place, and was scourged and crucified for his labour. So necessary in the Art of warfare is a piece of wit. After this time, it saw the same alterations and change of fortunes, as the *Persians* did; till they were conquered by the *Tartars*, unto whom still subject.

3. *ZAGATHAT* specially called, is bounded on the East, with *Cathay*; on the West, with *Turchistan*, and part of the *Caspian* Sea; on the North, with the Country of the *Samedes*, the *Terra Incognita* of the Ancients; on the South, with the *Sace*, and *Sogdiana*. Anciently part of *Scythia intra montem Imaum*; and took this new name from *Zagathay*, the first Prince hereof, since the time of the *Tartars*.

The Country reasonably fruitful, but not so rich in the natural temper of the soil, as the industriousness of the people, more civil far than any other of the *Tartars*, studious of good Letters, lovers of Arts, as well ingenious as *Mechanick*, well skill'd in *Manufactures*, and very seldom without the concurrence of foreign Merchants. Populous, and well-fortified with Towns and Villages; both for their own more handsome dwelling and the entertainment of others.

Chief Rivers of it, 1. *Jaxartes*, now called *Chesel*, the principal of all this Country: great of it self, but made much greater by the waters of 2. *Duix*, another River of good note, rising out of the Mountain called *Norofus*, and falling with many others into *Jaxartes*; mixt with those streams they are dischannell'd in the *Caspian* Sea. 3. *Jarius*, 4. *Polytimetes*, falling into *Oxus*. Others there are whose names I find not in my Authors, descending from the Mountains of this Northern Region, which are great and many: As viz. 1. *Norofus*, spoken of before. 2. *Alpisi*, on the North of that. 3. *Toporus*, more unto the North. 4. The Mountains called *Sychi*, more Northward still. 5. Those called *Anareti*, besides 6. *Imaus*, of most name, but common unto *Cathay* as well as to *Zagathay*, and there we shall hear further of it.

Cities of most observation in it, 1. *Aspabota*, the only Town ascribed by *Ptolemy* to this Country, and by him honoured with the title of *Civitas*. 2. *Zabafsi*, of less antiquity, but of greater estimation at the present time. Situate on the mouth of the River *Oxus* (now called *Abis*) on the brink of the *Caspian*; and much frequented by the Merchants of foreign Countries, chiefly from *India*, and *Cathay*. 3. *Maracandia*, ancient, and of fame, but placed by *Ptolemy* (why I know not) amongst the Cities of *Bactria*: differing herein from the common and received opinion of other Authors, by whom this City is affirmed to be on the North side of *Oxus*, and consequently not within that Province. Made good by *Spitamenes*, (who having delivered the Traitor *Bessus* into the hands of *Alexander*, revolted from him) against the *Macedonian* Army; by which besieged under the command of *Menendus*. But *Menendus* being slain, with some of his Souldiers, *Spitamenes* escaped hence to *Bactria*, where he was slain by his own Wife, and his head presented

ferred to the Conquerour. Here was it also that *Alexander*, being then Master of the Town, in a drunken fit slew his dear friend *Clytus*; who at the battle of *Granicus* had saved his life, by receiving a blow which was aimed at him. It was afterwards called *Samarband*, the Seat-Royal of *Tamerlane*, by whom enriched with all the spoils and treasures he got in the Wars; there being brought hither from *Damascus* only (and by that one influence we may guess at the rest) 8000 *Camels* laden with the choicest movables. Still the chief Reliance of the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, but far short of that magnificence which once it held. 4. *Bichend*, of no Antiquity, nor of such great name as the Regal *Samarband*, but at this time of greater wealth: situate somewhat in the mid-land, but populous, and a well-traded Town. 5. *Azara*, memorable for being made the Rendezvous of that mighty Army, which *Tamerlane* raised against the *Turks*, consisting in the total of 120000 fighting men when it was at the biggest. 6. *Maranis*, from which place the said *Tamerlane*, having received his aids from *China*, began his march.

These *Tartars*, called *Zagathayans*, by the name of their Country, are of a different government from that of the Great *Cham* of *Cathay*, though subject to him at the first, and have to be even since the time of *Zaicham* or *Batma*, the third great *Cham*; who gave it unto *Zagathay*, a younger Son, whence it had the name. To *Zagathay* succeeded *Og*, by some called *Zain Cham*; (the Father of *Tamerlane*) a peaceable and quiet Prince, who rather studied to preserve than enlarge his Empire. But *Tamerlane* being of a fierce and more warlike nature, made the first proof of his valour and good fortune against the *Moscovite* (for spoiling a City which had put it self under his protection) whom he overthrew with the slaughter of 25000 Foot, and 15000 of his Horse. Moved with this notable exploit, and the hopes of greater, *Gim Cham*, the Great Emperour of the *Tartars* gave him to Wife his only Daughter, and therewithal declared him his Heir apparent. Encouraged and enabled with this advancement, he first brake down the Wall of *China*, encountered with the King thereof, overcame him in battle, and imposed on him the sum of 300000 Crowns of yearly Tribute. Having left things quiet at his back, and taking with him a great part of the Forces of *China*, he advanced forwards against *Bajazer*, the fourth King of the *Turks*; of the greatness of whose growing Empire he began to be jealous. Passing along the left hand shores of the *Calpian Sea*, and so through *Albania*, and the rest of the Provinces which lay in his way (which he took and conquered as he went) he came at last into *Asia Minor*: where near the City of *Sebacia*, he encountered with *Bajazer*: vanquished him, slew 200000 of his men, and carried him away captive in an Iron Cage. Restoring those Princes disposessed by *Bajazer* unto their Estates, and taking to himself all the *Turkish* Provinces in *Anatolia*; he bestowed a private visit on *Constantinople*: which seen, he marched towards *Syria*, subdued both that Province and the Kingdom of *Aegypt*, then possessed by the *Mamlukes*; visited *Hierusalem*, and did honour to the *Holy Sepulchre*; returned by *Babylon*, and won it, and with it the whole Countries of *Babylonia* and *Affria*. And taking *Perfia* in his way impatronized himself of that Kingdom also; and such parts of *India*, as either lay near *Perfia*, or his own Dominions; now made the Sovereign Lord of all the Regions and Kingdoms in both *Asia's*, excepting *India*; for which the rich Kingdom of *Aegypt*, may be put in balance. Come home at last to *Samarband*, he there died in peace. A Prince of strong body, but lovely lineaments, his eyes bearing in them such rays of Majesty, that ordinary men could scarce endure

to look upon them. His hair long, contrary to the custom of the *Mahometans*, (for the most part shaved on their heads) for which he pretended a descent from *Samson*. Perfect in the *Arabian Learning*, and a lover of all learned men; a hater of *Idols* and *Polytheism*; and a great friend to the *Christians*. More fortunate in the conquering of so many Kingdoms, than in laying any sure foundation to maintain his conquest. For by holding his Seat Royal in *Samarband*, *Cambalu*, and others the chief Cities of *Cathay*, he gave the remote Provinces the opportunity of returning to their former Governments; and by excelling his Estates amongst his Children, and kindred, this mighty flood which had so quickly overflowed both *Asia's*, returned in very little time within its own proper and original banks. Even *Zagathay* it self divided from the Empire of *Cathay*, had its King apart (hardly acknowledging the great *Cham* for the Lord in Chief) the most considerable of whom was that *Saba*, who in the new beginnings and untidelines of the *Sophian Empire*, invaded *Perfia*; but instead of recovering that Kingdom into the power of the *Tartars*, he lost some Provinces of his own: *Hircania*, *Margiana*, and some part of *Bactria*, being first subdued by *Aba* the late *Sultan*. Nothing fine memorable, that I meet with, in the affairs of this part of the Empire of *Tartary*.

4. *TURCHESTAN* is bounded on the East, with *Zagathay* specially so called; on the West, with the River *Zeane*, parting it from *Deserts* on the North, with those deserts which *Ptolemy* blindeth under the name of *Terra Incognita*; and on the South, with the *Calpian Sea*. So called from the *Turks*, some of which people when they left their first Seats near the Fens of *Mosin*, settled in this Country, and here still continue.

The Country as defere ill planted, as the rest of *Tartary*, nor to much out of any defect in the soil it self, as in the humour of the people: who though originally *Turks*, yet do compose themselves unto the lives of the *Scythian* or *Tartarian Nomades*, neglecting tillage, and abiding in no place longer than in that place affords them pasturage for their Cattel: huge herds of which they keep as their greatest treasure, but more to cloath their backs with the skins, than to fill their bellies with the flesh.

Amongst the Rivers of most note we may reckon, 1. *Rhymanus*, mentioned by *Ptolemy*, which by the position of it in the 91 degree of Longitude, seems to be of this Tract. It riseth out of the Mountains called *Montes Rhymanici*, giving name to the River, or taking name from it. 2. *Ardoek*, not known by that name amongst the ancients, and whether known at all or not, I am not able to say. Shaping its course towards the North, and weary of so cold a Climate, and such barbarous people; after a long and swift course of a thousand miles, it hideth it self under the ground for five hundred more; but breaking out again, and finding little or no hope of a better fortune, loath it self for ever in the great Lake of *Kitay*.

To look for Towns amongst a people which delight not in settled houses, were a labour lost: yet I once find ascribed unto them, the principal, but of no great note, 1. *Calba*, and 2. *Ocerra*. Then there is 3. *Cristina*, situate on or near the Lake of *Kitay*, never without the company of *Russian* and *Tartarian* Merchants: the *Russian* sailing to it by the River *Ob*; and the *Zagathayans* *Tartars* travelling to it by Land. By these two Nations more people, to maintain their Traffic, than by the *Turcomans* themselves, in whose Land it standeth.

These *Turcomans* are of the Posterity of some of those *Turcs*, who wanting Room, or otherwise oppressed with want, forsook their ancient dwelling near the Fens of *Mosin*,

*Mosin*, and the Coasts of the *Euxine Sea*, to seek new seats, *Anno* 844. That their whole body settled here, and from hence made their conquest of *Perfia*, as some very indolent men are of opinion, I by no means grant. For when the *Sultan* of *Perfia*, having by the means of *Tangulix* and those Mercenary *Turks* whom he invited to his aid, obtained the Victory; and thought it fit for his affairs to detain them longer in his Service: it is said he shut up the River *Araxes*, to hinder them from returning to their habitations. The shutting up of which River, and fortifying against them all the passages and bridges off, had not served his turn, if the *Turks* had come from this place, for then he must have manned against them the River *Oxus*, and such as lay betwixt them and him in the common road. Nor is it probable, that the *Turcomans* dwelling in this Province, on the East side of the River *Volga*, would undertake the fording of that dangerous and violent Water; and force themselves a way thorow *Albania* and *Armenia*, with no greater numbers, than 3000 men, which was the whole strength that they carried with them. So that it is not to be doubted, but that they came first into *Perfia* out of *Turcomania*, and not out of *Turchestan*: and probable enough, that when they first left their own abode, and came into the Northwest shores of the *Calpian Sea*, they might there divide themselves. Some of which leaving that Sea on the left hand, and passing thorow the *Sarmation* or *Albanian* Streights, made their way into *Armenia*, and those parts of *Iberia*, which from them are now called *Turcomania*. The residue keeping that Sea on the right hand, and crossing the *Volga*, where they found the passage most easie for them, settled themselves in these parts of *Scythia* which they found less peopled, now from them named *Turchestan*. Some of which hearing of the good success of their Country-men in the Conquest of *Perfia*, might afterward join with them to assure that purchase. Governed hence their first coming hither, by the Chiefs of their former *Clans*, whom they honour with the title of *Chams*; but all of them Tributaries and Vassals of the *Cham* of *Zagathay*.

5. That part of the Kingdom of *Zagathay*, which anciently passed under the name of *TERRA INCOGNITA*, and was accounted the Northern limit of *Scythia intra Imanus*, hath on the South, *Turchestan*, and part of *Zagathay*, strictly and specially so called: extending Northwards to the *Scythick* or Frozen Ocean, and bounded on the West, with the River *Ob*.

The Inhabitants of this Northern Tract are now called by the name of *Samgyeds*; neither the people nor the Country known to the ancient *Romans*; and indeed neither of them without the knowing. The men black-haired, naturally hardihood, and not to be discerned from women. Old from the women wear a long Lock down to their ears. Clad from the head to the feet in *Deer-skins*, or *Seal-skins*, with the hairy side outwards; (nothing more nice in that than the other *Tartars*.) Their kind of life more rude than theirs, if more rude may be, ranging from place to place, without any propriety of house or dwelling; the leader of each Company their Priest, whom they call their *Papa*, who at every one of their Removes is to offer Sacrifice. *Idolaters* they are all, and most of them *Wichers*; especially such as live most towards the East, destroy their *Idols*, and rob them of the skins of *Beavers*, black *Foxes*, and *Sables*, wherewith those *Idols* are set forth to the publick view: but beslow on them greater heats in a good Fire, into which they commonly use to cast them.

These *Zagathayan* Provinces, with those of *Margiana*, and *Bactria*, before described, made that part of *Scythia*,

which anciently was called *Scythia intra montem Indum*: though in the time of *Ptolemy*, when *Margiana*, *Bactria*, *Sace*, and *Sogdiana*, were reckoned as Provinces of the Kingdom of *Perfia*, this *Scythia* was retrained within narrower bounds, and comprehended only *Turchestan* and the Special *Zagathay*. Inhabited, besides the several Nations dwelling in the four *Perfian* Provinces, by many fierce and savage Tribes, as the *Alani*, *Alamof*, *Sambeni*, and *Massei*; towards *Terra Incognita*; the *Tedjager*, and *Afioze*, near the Mountain *Imanus*; the *Jaxartes* on the banks of the River so called; and the *Mologue*, not far off; the *Zrarte*, and *Sajones*, near the Mountains *Alani*; the *Galdathophagi*, or Milk-eaters, more towards the East; the *Taporei*, and the *Syebi*, by the hills so named: and many others not material to be here remembered. All now united under the general name of *Tartars*, by whom first subdued.

And now we are at last come to *Scythia*, truly so named; *Sarmatia Europæa* and *Asiatica* being called so only by way of participation and resemblance; because the Inhabitants thereof had so much in them of the manners and conditions of those natural *Scythians*. Here therefore we intend to speak something of them, their Name, Antiquity, Dispositions, Customs, and the most memorable Actions relating to them, as far as we can go by the light of story.

First, for the name, the *Graecian* Fables have derived it from one *Scyber*, the Son of *Hercules*, begotten by him on a Mountie, half Woman, half Viper. The *Grammarians* *ἀνὴρ ἡμιγυνή*, signifying to be fierce and angry; whence it is said of the *Jewish* *Peritians*, who failed to be seen of men, *Σαυδοραϊστικῶς*, that they looked with a fower, fierce, and a disfigured Countenance. *Geopius Becanus* doth derive it rather from the Dutch word *Sebuten*, signifying to shoot: agreeable enough to the custom and exercise of the *Scythians*, who are observed by *Herodotus*, *Pliny*, *Lucian*, and other of the ancient Writers, to be very good Archers. But that the word *Sebuten* signifieth the same in the ancient *Scythick*; or that the *High-Dutch* was originally the Tongue of the *Scythians*, will not so easily appear.

Letting that pass therefore as a matter not to be insisted, let us look on the Antiquity of these *Scythian* Nations: and we shall find it to be great, if not greater of all. *Scytharum gens semper antiquissima*. Thus the *Syrian* were of all others, the most ancient people: was received for an Oracle, in the clear ages of the world; and so resolved by way of Verdict, when in great Controversie touching the Antiquity of that Nation, was to be determined, betwixt the *Aegyptian* and the *Scythian*, who contended for it. And this hath passed with such a general approbation, that it is not now to be disputed. In which regard I am so far of the judgment of *Becanus* in that particular, as to conceive that the Countries lying on the North of the Mount *Caucasus* (on which the *Ark* is thought most probably to have rested) were peopled by the Sons of *Noah* before they travelled towards the West, or fell themselves on building the Tower of *Babel*. We had else no doubt heard somewhat amongst the Antiquaries, of the settling of some of those *Adventurers* in these Northern Regions; when giving off that enterprise, and falling upon new Plantations, they either went themselves, or sent forth their Colonies into all places of the world. But of any such Plantations, we cry quidem, not one word say they. Nor can it probably be supposed that *Zoroaster*, the King of *Bactria*, could have raised 400000 fighting men out of that one Province (though some of the adjoining Provinces were took into the reckoning) in those early days, in which he did encounter *Ninus* the

great *Affrian*; had the *Babrians*, and the rest of these *Scythian* Nations, been but a *Cything* as it were of some second swarm, and not *cœval* with the rest. But besides these presumptions we have other proofs: viz. An old and constant tradition on this side the Mountains, that the greatest *Vineyard* of *Margiana* was of Noah's planting; and 2 the affirmation of *Portius Cato*, (though one of the Writers of *Frier Ammian*) in *Scythia Saga renatum martiale genus*, that mankind was repaired in these parts of *Scythia*, so called from *Sabatinus Saga*, an *Armenian* King, whose Dominions did extend thus far. So that I look upon it as a matter of strong presumption, if not demonstrably concludent, that these people were of the first Plantation which was made after the Flood; before the rest of the world was peopled by the *Confusion of Languages*: *Scythiarum gens semper antiquissima*, could not else hold good.

As for their dispositions, and natural inclinations, they are said by *Trogus*, or his Epitomator *Justine*, to be *Gens laboribus & bellis aspera*. "A Nation patient of labours and fierce in War"; of bodily strength immense; and valiant; yet to most Matters of their affections, that they made no further use of their greatest victories than the augmentation of their fame. Thence they esteemed the greatest crime, and that they punished so severely, that their flocks and herds might and did safely wander from one place to another, without fear of stealing. In them they placed their greatest wealth, feeding themselves with the Milk thereof, and making their Rayment of the Skin. Silver and Gold they contemned as much as it was coveted by others; there being no desire of Riches where there was no use. *Mum*, and *Tum*, those common *Barretours*, and authors of debate amongst other men, were not known amongst them; and therefore did not care for tillage, or made any inclosures nor troubled themselves with the care of building. But putting their Wives and Children upon Wains, or Waggon, covered with Hides against the weather, they removed from one place to another, no longer staying upon one than they found grass and herbage to sustain their Cattel. So just in all their actions that they needed not the restraint of Laws; and had attained to such an eminent degree of humane perfection, as not to covet. In a word, that moderation which the *Greeks* endeavoured to attain unto by the help of Learning and Philosophy, was to these so natural, that the ignorance of Vice did as much contribute to their Welfare, as the knowledge of Vertue. Such are the ancient *Scythians* affirmed to be. And being such, it was a wonder that the great Monarchs of the world, who had wealth at will, should make war upon them amongst whom there was nothing to invite an Army, or reward a Conquerour. Yet either on desire of glory, or to add unto the former multitudes over whom he reigned, they were first invaded by *Cyrus* the great *Persian* Monarch: who quarrelling with *Tomyris* Queen of the *Massegetes*, a warlike Nation, inhabiting on both sides of the River *Oxus*, discomfited her Army, and slew her Son *Spargapises*, who commanded it. In revenge whereof, the Queen, having in a second battle obtained the Victory, and took *Cyrus* prisoner, is said to have cut off his head, and cast it into a bowl of blood, with this scornful taunt, *Satis te sanguine quem sitiisti*. Now drink thy fill of blood which thou hast so thirsted. But others tell us otherwise of the success of this fight. By whom it is reported that the Horse of *Cyrus* being disordered on the sight of some Elephants, which came from *India* to her aid, and himself dangerously wounded, the *Scythians* had won the victory but for the coming in of *Amorges* King of the *Sacians*, (who of a conquered enemy was be-

come his Confederate: ) by whom he was refused, and by the 20000 fresh men which he brought with him, obtained the honore of the day, though long he lived not to enjoy it, dying not long after of the wounds he had received. With *Alexander* they are said to begin the war, as loath to be behind land with him; arming themselves upon the building of *Alexandria ultima*, to fear their borders, which they conceived rather intended for a curb to hold them than, than for a bridle to keep them in. But being repulsed, and wise enough to suffer what they could not hinder, they fled for peace, and had it granted; *Alexander* being called away by the revolt of the *Babrians*, a matter of more consequence than these *Scythian* brabbles. With *Alexander's* Successors they had nothing to do, nor with the *Persian* Kings of the *Parthian* Race, the *Parthians* being their Allies, and of *Scythian* blood. And for the *Romans*, it is well observed by the *Historian*, *Romanorum arma advidere nesciunt quoniam scilicet* that they had heard much of their valour, but never felt it. Remaining undisturbed in their bound poverty, till the *Tartari*, an obscure and beggerly people broke out of their Prison and carried out the whole World before them.

As for their Kings, I find some of their names laid down, but without any note of time in which their reigns might be supposed to begin or end. Nor can I think that the Kings occurring in that Catalogue did either reign in the same place, or over the same Nations; or that they succeeded one another. However we will take their names as they come before us, in this list of

#### The Kings of Scythia.

- 1 *Scythos*.
- 2 *Napis*.
- 3 *Phitra*.
- 4 *Sagittas*.
- 5 *Targisana*.
- 6 *Plinna*.
- 7 *Scholyphethos*.
- 8 *Panacagora*.
- 9 *Tanairi*.
- 10 *Indathysfus*.
- 11 *Saulius*.
- 12 *Spargapises*.
- 13 *Tomyris*.
- 14 *Aripethos*.
- 15 *Sailer*.
- 16 *Olimasdes*.

17 *Lambinus*, the last of all those *Scythian* Kings who are conceived to have the Government of these warlike Nations. But for my part I dare not say, that every any one King did command the whole people generally; each Tribe or Nation having their particular Kings as in other places not reduced into form and order. And therefore for those Kings, if such Kings there were (as for some of them I durst venture to swear the contrary) they must be such as in their several Countries were of greatest fame, most taken notice of in the world, or employed in the conduct of their joynt and united forces; and so conceived to be the Kings of the whole *Scythian* Nation: as *Cassibellane*, King of the *Trimbantes*, and perhaps not that, is by some Writers said to be the King of the *Britanni*; because he had the conduct of their forces against *Julius Cesar*.

#### 4. CATHAI.

**CATHAI** is bounded on the West, with *Zagathay*, from which parted by the Mountain *Imam* on the East, with the *Oriental Sea*, and some part of *China*;

*China*, on the North, with *Tartaria Amiqua*; and on the South, with part of *India*. So called from the proper or special *Cathay*, the principal Province of the whole; the other parts into which it is commonly divided being 2 *Altay*, the Countries of the *Eastern Tartars*.

1. **CATHAI**, more properly and specially so called, is bounded on the East, with *China*; on the West, with the Mountain *Imam*; by which parted from *Zagathay* on the North, with *Altay*; and on the South, with *India extra Gangem*: So called from the *Chata*, an old *Scythian* people, who having conquered the *Seres*, and the rest of the neighbouring Nations, gave their own name unto the whole, according to the Custom of victorious people.

This Country is exceeding long, if it be measured by the Scale, and Rules laid down by *Ptolomy*; who placeth *Anzacia*, the most Western Town of *Scythia extra montem Imam*, in the Longitude of 144 degrees, and *Sera* the Metropolis and most Eastern City of *Serica* in the Longitude of 177 degrees and 15 Minutes; as on the other side he placeth *Seta* the most Southern Town of *Scythia extra montem Imam*, in the Latitude of 35 degrees, and 10 minutes, and *Damia* the most Northern Town of *Serica* in the Latitude of 51 degrees, and 40 minutes. By which account, supposing these four Towns to be placed in the very extremities and out-parts of this Country, it must extend from North to South 960 miles and somewhat upwards, and about 1500 miles from East to West in the length thereof; which as it sheweth the dimensions and extent of it to be very great, so it may probably infer that the Country is not in all places of the like fertility, the West parts of it being very mountainous and barren, and consequently not very fruitful, as being overgrown in most places with the spurs and branches of *Imam*. But in those parts thereof which lie towards the East, it is said to be abounding in Wheat, Rice, Wool, Hemp, Silk, and Musk; Great store of that medicinal Root called *Rhubarb*, or *Rba-Barbarum*, to difference it from the *Rba-Pontic*, growing on the banks of *Volga*. They have also very great Herds of Camels, of whose hair they make those stuffs which are hence called *Camlets*, or *Chamlets*; and such an infinite breed of Horses, as besides those which they preserve for their own use, they furnish the whole Realm of *China* with such multitudes of them, that at one time there were not fewer than 80000 for a Present to the King of that Realm by the Princes of these Western *Tartars*, as the *Chinese* call them; of which he that writ the Book called *Bukhan Tartaricum*, affirmeth himself to have been eye-witness, and to his credit I refer it, that the great *Chan* feedeth yearly 10000 white Mares, which he keeps for their Milk. Some of their Rivers are reported also yield *Golden Sands*; But whether it be so or not, certain it is, that it is so well provided of all things both for necessary use, and the pleasures of life, that it is thought to be inferior to few Countries of *Europe*. The air indeed not so temperate, as in many places; the Summers times extremely hot, and in Winter miserably cold: Summer many men die of heat, when they hear it. The winds no less violent than the thunder, do sometimes tear up trees by the roots, and beat men from their houses; but seldom bring with them any storm of rain: the greatest showers which they have, hardly wetting the ground.

The people are generally very warlike, strong of body, quick of action, fearless of the greatest dangers, patient both of want and labour: of mean attire, little eyes, sharp sight, and thin beards. Indulgent they are in several *Manufitures*; of a good wit for dispatch of business.

The people are generally very warlike, strong of body, quick of action, fearless of the greatest dangers, patient both of want and labour: of mean attire, little eyes, sharp sight, and thin beards. Indulgent they are in several *Manufitures*; of a good wit for dispatch of business.

nefs: more honourable than the rest of the *Tartars*, as loving to dress themselves gorgeously, to fare sumptuously (if there be occasion) to live in handsome houses, and to frequent the most populous and best-traded Cities: All which civilities or refinements, call them which you will, together with the greatest part of their Arts and Manufactures, they first learned of the *Chinese*, during the time that the *Chinese* lived as Subjects under the great *Chan*, and the Nations had continual intercourse with one another. They account not any for a Wife till the bear them Children, nor till then do meddle with their Dowries but repudiate them at a certain time, if they find them barren. They reverence their *Chan*, or Emperor, even to Adoration; not suffering any Stranger to come in his presence, except he be first purged: if any otherwise presume, it is present death.

The Religion publicly allowed and countenanced, is that of *Mahomet*; but so that they retain the *Pentateuch* of *Moser*, and observe many things therein countenanced. It was much laboured by *Pope Innocent*, and *King Lewis* of *France*, that they should receive the *Christian* Faith; and they found some inclinations in the People, and chief Princes to it. But finding by the *Mahometan* Agents, who then laboured to bring them to their Superstition, that *Mahomet* allowed of many Wives, and other things more agreeable to their fleshly lusts, they conformed to that; Yet so, that there are many *Idolaters* in *Cathay* it self (I mean *Cathay* strictly so called) and some *Christians* also; the state of whose affairs we have thrown before.

Chief Rivers of the whole. 1 *Polsung*, which falling into the Eastern Ocean is navigable up to the City of *Cambalu*, to which it is a means of conveying great store of Merchandise. 2 *Caroruman*, so broad and deep that no Bridge can be made over it. 3 *Quian*, one of the greatest in the world; in length about an hundred days journey; for breadth, in most places six miles, in many eight, and in some ten. 4 *Quianus*, about half a mile over, and well stored with fish: of all which we shall speak more fully when we come to *China*. Here are also very many Lakes, both large, and useful, as 1 the Lake of *Canielu*, in which are said to be so many Pearls as would make them of no value, if every man might have leave to fish for them; which is therefore interdicted. (without special licence) upon pain of death. 2 The Lake of *Cararami*, about an hundred miles in circuit, and so full of fish, as might suffice for all the Country, did they love to eat of it. The Mountains we shall climb over in their several places.

Principal Cities of the whole at this present time, under the notion of *Cathay*, are 1 *Cambalu*, supposed to be the *Ipsedon Serica* of the Ancients, and like enough to be that City of the *Cathayans*, which made the notable resistance unto *Gingis* the first King of the *Tartars*, in his first attempts upon this Country, of which more anon. After afterwards, in regard of the pleasantness of the situation, and extreme fertility of the soil, the chief Seat of his Empire; and being exceedingly enlarged and beautified had the name of *Cambalu*, that is to say, the Seat or City of the *Sham*, in the same sense as the chief City of *China* had the name of *Pekin*, signifying in that Language the Court or City of the King. Built of Freestone, and situate in the midst of the Country as the heart and center to the rest. It is seated on the River *Polsung*, honoured with the Great *Chan's* residence, and enriched with a mighty confluence of Merchants of all sorts. Besides other Merchandises there are every year 10000 Cars loaded with Silk sent thither from *China*. Affirmed to be in compass 28 miles besides the Suburbs, in which, besides other Inhabitants of all sorts, are said to

be 50000 Astrologers or rather Fortune-tellers. 2. *Xaindu* the Royal Palace of the Emperor, of a foursquare figure, every side extending eight miles in length: within this Quadrant is another, whose sides are six miles long, and within that another of four miles square, which is the Palace itself. Between these several Walls are Walks, Gardens, Orchards, Fish-ponds, places for all manner of exercise, & Parks, Forests, and Chafes for all manner of Game. 3. *Carata*, a fair City and a said to guild their Teeth. 4. *Gonca*, a fair City and a great, adorned with many Idol Monasteries. 5. *Cavanfu*, near which there groweth an herb called *Chiny-Cathay*, of admirable effect against many Diseases, & to be esteemed by the Natives, that they value an ounce of this at a fack of *Rubarb*. 6. *Segni*, the residence of a Nestorian Bishop.

Having thus took as good a view of the present face of this Country, as the time affords us, we will next look upon it in those integral parts, of which it specially consisteth comprehending (as before was intimated) those two long and ample Provinces, which the Ancients called, 1. *Serica*, and 2. *Seythia extra montem Imaum*, according to those Bounds and Characters which are given us of them.

1. *SERICA*, hath on the East, some part of *China*, on the South, *India extra Gangem*, and some part of the Country then inhabited by the ancient *Sines*, on the North, *Altay*, on the West, *Seythia* beyond the Mountains of *Imau*. In which I follow not the bounds laid down by *Ptolomy*, who for want of that knowledge in these remote Countries which these latter Ages have afforded, is fain to shut it up on the North and East with a *Terra Incognita*. At the present it is called *CATHAY*, and that most probably from the *Chata*, a *Seythian* People, who subduing the old Inhabitants, became Masters of it.

But for the name of *Serica*, it was derived originally from *Sera* the chief City of it; whence the people had the name of *Seres*, very indolent in their times, and amongst other things in the making of *Silk* (made of a fine wooll growing on their leaves of Trees) from hence named *Serica*. Of great esteem amongst the *Romans*, as is said by *Pliny*, *Tam multiplici opere, tam longinquo orbis petiunt, ut in publico matrona tranflectat*; being far fetched and dear bought, they were good for Ladies. Nor were they indolent only, but chaste and temperate. The names of Thieves and Whores were not known amongst them. They eat not any unclean flesh, nor used the company of their Wives either after Conception, or during their Menstrual Purgations. So moderate of diet, that they lived commonly to the age of 200 years; the quietness and mildness of their disposition helping much thereto. Of yellow hair, watcher or Sea-green eyes, and good complexion. Men of few words, but very just in all which they did or did. Governed by a Common Council of 5000 men, every one of which was to find an Elephant for the use of the State.

If you will take the Characters both of the Country and People from *Ammianus Marcellinus*, he will give it thus. "First of the Country, that it is plentiful and large, circled about with a chain of Mountains, the two famous Rivers *Ochardar*, and *Banhsia* with a hill and a flow stream running thorow the middle of the inclosed Plain, spaciouly stretched out to the sides of the precipices: in one place large and open, in another lying flat and low, with an easie descent in which regard they have abundance of Corn, flocks of Cattel, and plenty of Orchards. The temperature of the Air pleasant and wholesome, the constitution of the weather clear and pure, the blowing of gentle winds most com-

modious, and the Woods with a pritty glimmering of light, both within and under them: from whence the people with much sprinkling of water, softening that which the Trees bring forth like a kind of *Picea*, kemb a most fine and tender matter, which they spin into *Silk*, serving in former times for the Nobility and Gentry, now become common to those also of inferior rank. Then for the People, he saith, that they are a staid Nation, lovers of quiet, not troublesome unto their Neighbours, without the use of Arms, and the knowledge of battels, declining the company of Strangers, and so far from coverousness, or curiosities, that when any Merchants come unto them to buy their *Silk*, without much beating of the price, they let them have such things as are bred amongst them, without looking after the Commodities of other Countries. So he. And if he did over act the *Panegyrist* (as I see no reason why he should) never were people happier in the place of their dwelling, nor Country happier in its people.

Chief Mountains of it (and Mountains they had very many) were 1. the *Montes Casii*, and 2. *Auzacii* towards the East. 3. The *Annie*, environing a great part of the Country. 4. The *Almarai*, 5. and those called *Seria*, near the City *Sera*. 6. *Tazuri*, 7. *Emmodur*, and 8. *Ottacora*: but all of them probably the spurs and branches of the great Mountain *Imau*; But by what names now called it is hard to say; and no less hard to say how to accommodate the names of the Rivers spoken of before, to those which we find mentioned in the ancient Writers; the principal of which (all flowing out of these great Mountains) are, 1. *Ochardar*, by *Pliny* called *Cambis*, siting out of the *Montes Auzacii*; 2. *Pisara*, issuing out of the *Almiri*. 3. *Banhsia*, whose Fountain is in the *Montes Casii*. And 4. *Lami*.

Towns of chief note amongst them, 1. *Sera*, which gave the name of *Serica*, and *Serer*, to the Province and People. 2. *Ottacora*, near the Hills so called; whence it had the name. 3. *Issidon*, for distinction sake called *Issidon Serica*, to distinguish it from another of that name in *Seythia*, called *Issidon Seythica*; the chief City of the *Issidones*, gens magna, one of the greatest Nations in all the Country, as is said by *Ptolomy*; and like enough to be that City of the *Cathayans*, which made that notable resistance unto *Cingis* (which before I spoke of) in his first attempts upon this Country. 4. *Orfana*, 5. *Dofache*, 6. *Daxata*, of which little memorable. Some other Cities there were in it (about Nine more being named by *Ptolomy*) of which we find nothing but the names, and therefore I shall pass them over without further mention.

But here it is observed, 1. That *Ptolomy* gives unto this Country, and to some of the Towns or Cities of it, such a Northerly Latitude (ranging the furthest parts thereof in the same Parallel with the Isle of *Thyle*) as cannot possibly agree with that fertility of soyl, and delightful temper of the Air, which is given to *Serica*. 2. That he tells us of a Promontory called *Tabya*, situate in *extrema Terra*, in the extremities of the Country between North and East, which I cannot but exceedingly wonder at, considering that he shuts up this Country on the East and North with a *Terra Incognita*, and extends not any part thereof towards the Sea, rendering it thereby incapable of any such Promontory. 3. That some of our late Writers, both in their Table and their Maps, have placed the Regal City of *Cambala* so far towards the North, as very ill agree with that pleasantness and sweetness of situation, which induced the great *Chams* to make choice of it for the Seat Royal of their Empire. But as we thereof for the Seat Royal of their Empire. But as we may easily pardon these mistakes of *Ptolomy* in places to

far distant from him, and then but little known to the *Greeks* and *Romans*; so we may easily pardon these of the later times, who grounding on the authority of so eminent an Author, have in some things been misled by him: it happening very many times (which I find somewhere mentioned on the like occasion) *Magni erroris, magnorum virorum auctoritate, transmissos*, that great errors are often entertained upon the credit of their Authors.

The old Inhabitants hereof, in those parts which lay next the *Seythians*, are said to have been *Antropophagi*, or Man-eaters, most probably a *Seythian* Nation, that Custom being so abhorrent to the mildness of the *Serican* temper. Or else, we must correct the Copies of *Ptolomy*, by the History of *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who instead of *Antropophagi*, placeth the *Alitrophagi* in the self same Tract. The other Nations not disdained with the like reputation, are the *Sizygers*, and *Anabi*, not far off the *Auzacian* Mountains; the *Piale* near the River *Ochardar*; the *Gerani*, and *Rhabbanes*, their nearest neighbours; the *Thrauni* dwelling towards the East, the *Bae* and *Ottacora* more towards the South. These with the residue, governed by a Common-Council of 5000 men, every one of which was to find an Elephant for the service of the Common-wealth, as was said before. And more than this we hear not of them in the way of Story; the Natives never going abroad with their wares, and having little speech with Strangers, when they come amongst them. Being vanquished by the *Chata*, a *Seythian* Nation, from whom it is like that it took their name of *CATHAY* (for in this we go but by conjecture) they continued under Kings of their own, till subdued by the *Tartars*, against whom they made such stout resistance, being belleged by *Cingis* in their principal City, that when they wanted stones to cast out of their Engines, they supplied that want with molten Silver; and held out so long, that *Cingis* finding Victuals to grow short in his Camp, commanded that every tenth man should be eaten. But at the last being undermined, the Town was taken, the Citizens massacred, and their King or Emperor (as some call him) slain: after whose death, and not before, *Cingis* assumed the Title of the *Cham*, or Emperor. The residue of their Story we shall have hereafter.

*SEYTHIA EXTRA IMAUM* was bounded on the East, with *Serica*; on the West, with *Imau*; on the South, with *India extra Gangem*; and on the North, with the Countries comprehended in the name of *Altay*, which *Ptolomy* hath given us in the notion of the *Terra Incognita*. Called *Seythia*, because planted by a brood of the *Seythians*. *Extra Imaum* was put to it, to distinguish it from that part of *Seythia* which lay on the West side of that Mountain, nearest unto the *Greeks* and *Romans*. But now the Mountain, and the Country, have the name of *Altay*.

To look upon it as it standeth by the name of *Seythia extra Imaum*, we find not any thing delivered of the Rivers or Mountains of it, but what is common unto them with the neighbouring Nations: the Mountains called *Auzacii*, and *Casii*, and *Emmodur*, being common unto this with *Serica*; as *Imau* jointly to both the *Seythians*, which it divided anciently the one from the other: though now this last be reckoned to belong to *Cathay* alone, because the *Tartars* on both sides of it profess themselves subject to that *Cham*. This the most famous Mountain in the East of Asia, beginning at the shores of the *Seythick*, or Frozen Ocean, and extending thence directly Southwards unto Cape *Comari*, a Promontory of the Southern or *Indian* Seas. By which account it divideth the Greater Asia into East and West, as *Tartars* doth into

North and South, which Mountain it crosseth in right Angles, about the Longitude of 140. as before was said. That part hereof which lyeth on the South of *Tartars*, was by the Ancients called *Baris*; and by the modern is named *Gates*: of which we shall speak more when we come to *India*. That on the North of *Tartars*, called *Imau* properly, was anciently most memorable for dividing the vast Countries of the *Seythians*, into *Seythia intra Imaum*, and *Seythia extra Imaum*; a division much observed by the old Geographers: now chiefly memorable for being the Sepulchre of some of the *Chams* of *Tartary*, most generally known by the name of *Altay*, but by some called *Belgion*.

Chief Towns hereof were 1. *Auzacia*, at the foot of the hills so named. 2. *Chaurana*, the Chief City of the *Chauranai*. 3. *Seta*. 4. *Issidon Seythica*, so called to difference from the other of that name in *Serica*. These with the rest, and all the Country, as far as it was known in the days of *Ptolomy*, inhabited by the *Abii*, *Hippophagi*, or horse-eaters, a diet still used by the *Tartars* or modern *Seythians*. 2. The *Issidones*, who are said by *Pomponius Mela* to make carousing cups of their Fathers heads, first trimmed and gilded. 3. The *Cauranai*, and 4. the *Chata*, who being (as it seemeth) the most potent Nation, caused all the rest to be called by the name of *Cathay*, communicating that name also to be conquered *Seres*. Besides the possessions of which Tribes, there was also the Regions of *Adassa*, *Cassia*, and *Auzanai*; these last so called from the Mountains upon which they stand. More than this we have not to say of this Country by the name of *Seythia*, there being nothing memorable of it in the course of Story, or worth the observation in the way of Geography.

*ALTAY* is bounded on the South, with *Cathay*, specially so called, and part of *China*; on the North, with *Tartaria Antiqua*; on the West, with the great Mountain *Imau*; and on the East, with the Nations or Countries of the Eastern *Tartars*. So called from its neighbourhood to that mighty Mountain, which the *Tartars* in their Language call by the name of *Altay*.

The Country utterly unknown to the ancient Writers, and not much canvassed or travelled by our modern Pens. In which respect I shall now trouble my self no further, than by giving a brief touch on the several parts of it. Of which the most that can be said, will be but little for the information of the judicious Readers; who are not to be bettered by the names of places, if there be not something in them of further use. Now for these Provinces the principal of them are, 1. *Casac*, 2. *Cheshmari*, 3. *Lep*, 4. *Camul*, 5. *Tainfu*, 6. *Cainda*, 7. *Carazani*, 8. *Cardandan*, 9. *Erginul*, 10. *Tangush*.

1. *CASAC*, bordering on the North-West of *China*, a Mahometan Country, but admitting of some Christians also; the largest Kingdom in all *Altay*, except *Tangush* only, and furnished with many Towns or Cities both of Trade and Note; the principal whereof are 1. *Hischam*, the Royal City of this Country, and Mart famous for concourse of Merchants; and variety of Merchandises. 2. *Cialie*, the chief Town of a Province or Kingdom so named, but subject to the King of *Casac*, who in the year 1603, was called *Mahomet Chan*, a Prince of credit in those parts, but neither equal in Port or Power to the King of *Tangush*. The people generally rude and barbarous, in so much that some parts here of both Sexes do indulge themselves this mutual privilege, that if the Husband or the Wife be absent above twenty days, the other party is at liberty to marry again.

2. *CHEMUR*, the Inhabitants whereof are generally both *Idolaters* and *Inchanters*, causing the dumb *Idols* to speak, the winds to rise, and the Sun to be dark.

darkened. For studying which *Black Arts* (if they come to them by study) they have many *Monasteries*, in which their *Hermites* or *Monasticks* live a strict kind of life, and are very abstemious.

3. *LOP*, memorable for a great Defeat of thirty days journey, to true a *Defeat*, that whosoever doth not mean to be starved, must carry all his victuals with him. Dangerous to Travellers, if not before-hand made acquainted with their danger: the evil *Spirits* using to call men by their names, and make them go astray from their company, where they perish with famine, or are devoured with wild beasts. The chief Town hereof called *Lop*, giving name to both.

4. *CAMUL*, an Idolatrous Country, the people whereof account it a great honour to them to have their Wives and Sisters at the pleasure of such as they entertain. From which brutish custom when restrained by *Mango Cham*, they petitioned him at three years end to be restored again to their former liberty; protesting they could never thrive, since they left that custom. Which desire of theirs was at last granted, and is still in use.

5. *TAINFU*, more civil than the rest, the people being very industrious, and good Artificers: making the most part of the Arms which are used by the *Cham*; and some of which they sell to Merchants.

6. *CAINDU*, with a Town in it of the same name, of great resort by Merchants (such as we call, *perit Chapmen*) for *Womens Veils* here made, with very great Art, of the Bark of Trees. And it is well that they have Veils to hide their hamelness, the Women of this Trade being prostituted unto every Traveller.

7. *CARAZAN*, inhabited by a barbarous and savage people, who in the day time live in Dens for fear of Serpents, with which (and some of them so pees long, and ten spans in thickness) they are much infested, and in the night go forth to prey upon Wolves and Lions. They have an use that when any stranger cometh into their houses, of an handsome shape, to kill him in the night: not out of desire of spoil, or to eat his body; but that the soul of such a comely body might remain amongst them.

8. *CARDANDAN*, near *Carazan*, and as savage as that. The people whereof draw black lines on their bodies, which they count for the greatest Ornament. In case of sickness they send not to the Physician but the next *Incubators*, who taking Council of the Devil, apply some remedy; or if they think the man put cure they tell him that his offences are grown too great to admit of help, and so put him off.

9. *ERGINUL*, possessed by an Idolatrous people, but mixed with some *Mohometans*, and *Nestorians*. In which Country they have certain *Bells*, as big as *Elephants*, with Mains of fine white hair, like fish, some of which they tame; and betwixt them and their Kine engender a Race of strong and laborious beasts, not inferior in that kind to Oxen. Here is also found a beast of an exquisite shape, but not bigger than a Goat, which at every Full Moon hath a swelling under the belly; which being cut off by the Hunters, and dried in the Sun, proveth to be the best *Musk* in the World.

10. *TANGUTH*, the greatest and most potent of all the rest, bordering on the North of *Cathay*, especially so called, and (like to that) inhabited by an industrious and laborious people, amongst whom the Art of Printing is said to have been extant a thousand years. Blessed here, to have with a great increase of *Christianity*; but now the *Ceniles* or *Idolaters* make the greatest part, with some

*Mohometans* amongst them. And for the serving of those Idols, they have not only many large and beautiful Temples, built in the manner of *Christian* Churches, and capable of 4 or 5000 persons: but also many fair *Monasteries* for the use of their *Vaivaires* and *Recluses*. They are possessed of many Towns, most of them well fortified, and planted with good store of Artillery. The chief of which, 1. *Sacbian*, bordering on the *Desert of Lop*, inhabited by some of all three Religions; in which it is affirmed that they first used the Art of Printing. 2. *Campion*, the Metropolis, or Mother City of this Country; where the Christians in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, had three fair Churches: now over-nimbred by the *Geniles*, who have here many *Monasteries* for the use of their *Idols*, and many Religious persons dedicated to their service only. Who though they live more honestly than the rest of their Order, and hold it an impiety to tempt a woman to the act of Lust; yet if the woman make the offer, they hold it no small sin to refuse her carnal desire. 3. *Santa*, a Town in the middle way betwixt *Campion* and *Sucuir*, as being five days journey from the one, and six days journey from the other; by which we may conjecture at the long extent of this Kings Dominion. 4. *Sucuir*, situate amongst Mountains clothed with *Rubarb*, from whence conveyed by Merchants over all the world; but so neglected by the Natives, that did the foreign Merchant bring it into request, they would scorn to gather it. This once a Kingdom of it felt, made subject afterwards with *Tanguth*, to the *Cham of Chay*, or the great *Cham of Tartary*. But the fury of this *Tartarian* tempest, being overblown, the Kings of *Tanguth* did not only recover their ancient Royalty; but by degrees possessed themselves of the most part of the rest of *Alay*, and perhaps part of *Cathay* also, being looked on at the present as the greatest and most puissant Prince betwixt the Mountains of *Imau* and the Eastern *Tartars*, to the description of whose Countries we do next proceed.

The Countries of the Eastern *Tartars* are bounded on the West, with *Altay*; on the East, with the *Oriental Ocean*; on the North, with *Tartaria Antiqua*; and on the South, with *China*; so called from their Eastern situation, in regard of those of *Cathay* and *Alay*, which by the *Chinese* are called commonly the Western *Tartars*.

The Country not very fruitful, because ill cultivated, so that the chief Commodities which they find abroad, are the Root called *Ginseng*, so much esteemed amongst the *Chinese*, and all sorts of precious skins, as those of *Castor*, *Martron*, and *Zibeline*; and also Horse-hair, of which the *Chinese* make their Nets, and the men (though madly) use it in tying up their hair, as the handiwork drest they can appear in. With these Commodities they traffick into *Leatong*, a Province of the Northeast of *China* (from which they are parted only by an Arm of the Sea) where commonly they make good Markets, their Merchandise being thence dispersed into all parts of that Kingdom. The people are generally of broad Faces, their colour White, but their Nose is not so flat, nor their Eyes so little as the *Chinese* are, sparing of speech, and somewhat penfive, but neither so unfriendly as their neighbours of *China*, or so barbarous and rude as the *Tartars of Europe*. They have both the head and the beard, referring only the *Mustachoes*, which they extend to a great length, and in the hinder part of their head they leave a Tuft, which being curiously woven and platted, they let hang down carefully below their shoulders; they have a round and low Cap, which is always garnished round with some precious skin three fingers broad, of *Castor* or *Zibeline*, and serveth to defend their Temples, Ears, and Fore-heads from Colds, and other Tempests. That which appears

appears above the skin being covered over either with *curious red Silk*, or else with black and purple Horse-hair, which they dye and drest most curiously, so as their apparences being handsomely joined together makes the Cap both commodious and handsome. Their Garments are long *Rubes* falling down to the very foot, but their Sleeves are not so long and large as the *Chinese* use, but rather such as are used in *Poland* and *Hungary*, only with this difference, that they fashion the extremity of the sleeve ever like a Horse's Hoof. At their girdle there hangs on either side two Handkerchiefs to wipe their face and hands, besides there hangs a Knife for all necessary uses; with two Purses, in which they carry *Tobacco*, or such like commodities. On their left side they hang their Scymiters, but so as the Point goeth before, and the Handle behind; and therefore when they fight they draw it out with the right hand behind them without holding the Scabbard with the other. They seldom wear shoes, and use no Spurs to their boots, which they make either of Silk or of Horse-skin very neatly drest; but they often use fair Pattens, which they make three fingers high. In riding they use Stirrups, but their Saddles are both lower and broader than ours. In matters of war they are very nimble, never carrying any baggage with them, nor taking carter provision, but filling themselves with what they find; yet commonly they eat flesh, though half walked or half boiled: and if they find none, they fall upon their Horses and Camels. The earth covered with their Horse-dung is their bed, for they care not for houses and chambers, but if they are forced to dwell in houses, their horses must lodge with them, and they must have many holes beaten in the walls to let in the air; but yet their Tents are most beautiful, which they fix and remove with such Art and dexterity, as they never retard the speedy march of an Army.

They inhabit amongst many other Provinces, those of *Semabasia*, *Tanius*, *Gupi*, *Nimban*, and *Niucho*; of which I am able to say nothing in the way of *Chorography*, or of the four first in way of *Histroy*; only I find that those of *Nimban* were aiding to the King of *Niucho*, in the Conquest of *China*: and of the *Gupi* it is written, that they are so called, by reason they make their Coats of defence or Breast-plates of Fishes skins, which grow (as is affirmed) in a manner impregnable. None of which Nations count themselves originally of *Tartarian* Race. Yet either terrified by the noise of their great successes, or willing to partake of some part of their fortunes, they not only aided them in their Wars on that side of *Imau*, but were content to take their very name upon them. Never invaded nor subdued till the time of *Hombu* King of *China*, who having driven the Western *Tartars*, then Lording it over that Kingdom, from one part of it to another, compelled them finally to betake themselves unto those parts and Provinces of the Eastern *Tartars*, which now make up the Kingdom or Province of *Niucho*, where the War followed after them also, till by little and little they became more quiet; compelled to beg their Peace of the Conquering Enemy; divided into seven *Hords* or Tribes, and governed for a long time by their several Chiefs, they became at last united into one Kingdom called the Kingdom of *Niucho*, Anno 1550, or thereabout. Oppressed by the *Princes of Leatong*, in the way of their Trade, and suffering amongst many other indignities the death of their King, whom those *Princes* had entrapped and murdered, they made complaint of these outrages to the King of *China*, and finding no remedy at his hands, put themselves into Arms, invade the Province of *Leatong*, take the City of *Leatong*; and having besieged the King himself in the Royal or Imperial City of *Peking*, they returned home (find-

ing no hope of taking it at that time) with the Spoil and plunder of all those parts through which they marched. The War thus first begun was managed for many years with great loss on both sides, the *Tartars* having got nothing by it, but the Eastern parts of the Province of *Leatong*, and the honour of having shewed themselves twice more at the Walls of *Peking*, till in the year 1644, being invited into *China* by *Usangunius* to support the then falling fortune of the Royal Family, they husbanded the opportunity so well as to make themselves the absolute Masters of that mighty Kingdom. The whole story and success of this notable action, we shall sum up in brief when we come to *China*. In the mean time take here the Catalogue of

#### THE KINGS OF NIUCHÉ.

1550 1. N. N. advanced unto this Kingdom after the reducing of the several *Hordes* into one main body, and Father of the King succeeding, who was slain at last by the treachery of the *Princes of Leatong*, as before was said.

1616 3. *Theienmingun*, who to revenge his Fathers death, invaded *China*, took the City of *Leatong*, braved the great Emperor at the Walls of the Regal City, and having enriched himself with the spoils of the Country returned home again.

1627 4. *Theienzungu*, the Son of *Theienmingun*, followed the War with the same fortune as his Father did, both of them growing greater in Renown and Riches than in Power and Patrimony.

1636 5. *Zungius*, the Son of *Theienzungu*, secretly brought up amongst the *Chinese*, by means whereof he grew not only acquainted with the conditions of that people but their weaknesses also; and consequently was the better prepared to lay the foundation of that greatness to which the *Tartars* have attained by the Conquest of it. Called into *China* by *Usangunius*, as before is said, he possessed himself of the City of *Peking*; and though he died as soon as he was Master of that City only; yet left he such instructions to his Brothers, and the rest of his Council, that very easily and speedily they possessed themselves of all the Kingdom.

1644 6. *Xanbusius* the Son of the former, of the age of nine years only at the death of his Father, the management of his affairs both for War and Peace being committed to his Uncles, but chiefly unto *Amavangur* the eldest of them, by whom so prudently conducted, that within the space of four years he was quietly settled in that Throne, all opposition and pretenders to the Royal succession, being beaten down, of which more hereafter.

#### 5. TARTARIA ANTIQUA.

TARTARIA ANTIQUA hath on the South, *Alay*, and the Countries of the Eastern *Tartars*; on the West and North, the main *Scythick Ocean*; on the East, the Straights of *Anian*, (if such Straights there be) by which parted from *America*. So called, because the first habitation of the *Tartars*; who from this Den or



Goal, made their first eruptions, and have since overgrown so much of Asia.

The Country cold and comfortless, as lying under the *Polar Circle*, and in part beyond it; not fit for any but such as can live no where else: yet heretofore a receptacle of many Christians (though those of the *Nestorian Sect*) who here enjoyed that liberty of their Religion, which the *Persian* and *Saracenic* denied them in more pleasing Countries. It contained many Regions, some not considerable. Those of most note are 1 *Thebet*, 2 *Tarbar*, 3 *Tenduc*, 4 *Barbu*, 5 *Anian*, and 6 *Tartar*.

1. *THEBET* a fenny Region, and full of Woods, rich in *Coral*, which they find on the Sea-shore, and use it instead of Money. So named from the chief City of it, the ordinary seat of the *Abassie*, or Pope of this Idolatrous People; much revered, and having in his power the disposing of all Offices, which concern the Service of their *Idols*. They have also some good flocks of *Musk*, and abundance of wild beasts which are bred in their Forests: But no beasts wilder than the People, who in times past (if not at the present also) used to bury their Parents in their own bowels, and to make drinking cups of their skulls; for fear lest in the midst of their jollity they should forget their Progenitors. Yet not more barbarous than immodest; it being contrary to their custom to take a Wife that is a Virgin. And therefore the Mothers use to prostitute their Daughters to the Merchant-Strangers, who having had their pleasures of them, gratify them with a Jewel, or some other Present, which they wear on their Wedding-day, the being the most acceptable bride to her Husband, who bringeth the greatest *Dowry* with her of those base rewards. It contained once several petty Kingdoms, (*Homagers* to the Kings of *Tenduc*) with many Cities; but now laid desolate by the *Tartars*.

2. *TABOR*, once a distinct Kingdom also. One of the Kings whereof in the year 1540, came to the Courts of *Charles* the Fifth, and *Francis* the First; where he found Princely entertainment. But upon proof that he was a *Fetio* for the *Jem*, and secretly solicited many unto that Religion, by the command of *Charles* he was burnt at *Montma*.

3. *TENDUC* a populous Kingdom of it self, but greater in name and power; the Kings hereof commanding all these North-east parts, as far as the borders of *Cathay*. Christians in Religion, till the Conquest of it by the *Tartars*, though according to the *Nestorian* tendencies: but now *Mahometan* as the most part, with some remainders, and but few of Christianity. Divided into many large and spacious Provinces, as *Chincistales*, *Cersuth*, *Egrigata*, *Cerchau*, others of less note; so called according to the names of their principal Towns, or having some Towns in them of the name of the Provinces.

Those of most note in *Tenduc* it self, 1 *Cin Cham*, the ordinary & picture of the Kings of *Tenduc*, before it was subdued by the *Tartars*, and since that also, a *Caracaras*, where *Cingis* was first honoured with the title of King, the Kings hereof bearing the Port of Kings, and the Office of Priests, were anciently called by the name of *Priest John*, or *Priest John*: a title now erroneously conferred by some on the Emperor of the *Abassies*, or *Abissinians* in *Africk*. Concerning which it is a wonder, that *Joseph Scaliger*, a man of high infinite reading, should be so deceived: and by the authority of his judgment deceive so many. For finding that there was a *Priest John* in the North of *Asia*, and hearing vulgarly that title given to him in *Africk*, he fell upon a fancy that this *Abassie* Emperor was formerly of the great power, as to extend his Empire over *India*, and the North of *Asia*; and in this last, for the assurance of his

Conquests to hold his residence. A monstrous, and un-defensible fancy! For besides that, all Histories, even those of the *Abassies* themselves, are silent in it: how improbable is it, that a King reigning in the Heart of *Africk*, should subdue the most remote parts of *Asia*; and there keep his Court, for many great States and most puissant Nations being interposed or that so memorable an exploit should be buried in silence, and found in no record but in *Scaliger's* head! Besides it is well known, and generally granted, that the *Priest John* of *Asia*, was by *Scot* a *Nestorian*; but he that is so called in *Africk*, of the *Sect* of the *Jacobites*: and further, that the *Christians* of *Ethiopia* are circumcised, which never was reported of those of *Asia*.

Letting this pass therefore as an unwarrantable, and ill grounded fancy, we are to know that formerly this Province of *Tenduc*, was under the old Kings of *Cathay*, till the time of *Cin Cham*, the King thereof. After whose death a certain *Nestorian* Shepherd (that is to say, the Master of great flocks of sheep) being Governor of the *Laymans*, a People of *Tenduc*, took to himself the Title of King of *Tenduc*, whom they called by the name of *Priest John*, or Prince *John* (the same word in their Language, as in the *Hebrew*, signifieth both *Priest* and *Prince*). Dying he bequeathed his Estate and Flocks to his Brother *Om-Cham*, (commonly called in one word *Uncham*) a greater Sheep-Master than he; whose Flocks ranged over all the Pastures of the *Moles*, or *Mongul Tartars*, though dwelling fourteen days journey off, whom he had in subjection: the Title of *Priest John*, or *Priest Johnnes*, going along with the dignity and Royal estate. And though afterwards this *Uncham* was subdued by the *Tartars*, yet his Posterity for long time were suffered to enjoy the Title of Kings and Presbyters; (but *Vallisi* and *Homagers* to the Great *Cham*) the Great *Cham*, in regard of their Nobility and Royal Parentage, bestowing their Daughters on them in Marriage; as is laid by *William de Rubrquis*, who travelled in these Countries, Anno 1253. the King hereof being then named *George* (the fourth from *Uncham*) but commonly called *Priest Johnnes*, as his Fathers were.

4. *BARBU*, on the extreme Northwest, bordering on both those sides the cold *Seythick* Ocean, situate under the North-star; of the same nature, both for the Soil and People, as that of the *Tartars*. And

5. *ANIAN*, on the Northeast, opposite unto it, giving name unto the *Streights* of *Anian*, lying betwixt *Tartary* and *America*; which *Streights* (if any such *Streights* there be) the *Tartars*, and some other of these Northern Nations, are thought to have passed over, and to plant that Country.

6. *TARTAR*, so called of the great River *Tartar*, the principal of this Northern Tract, and giving name unto the *Tartars*: this being their Original Country, where they lived like beasts, having neither Faith, nor Letters, nor Habitation, nor the use of Arms, nor any Reputation amongst their Neighbours. In matters of *Religion*, the worst sort of *Gentiles*, worshipping the Sun, Moon, Fire, and the very Earth: to which they offered in the morning fasting, the first of their meats and drinks.

Their *Idols* made of *Felt*, and placed on both sides of the doors of their Tents or Booths, as the preservers of their Cattel, and the Authors of Milk. Divided into five *Clans* or Tribes, denominating to many Towns and Territories in which they dwell, that is to say, 1 *Mongul*, 2 *Toka Mongul* (or the Great *Mongul*), 3 *Somungul*, or the *Water-Mongul*, 4 *Mercat*, 5 *Merris*: each of them governed by its *Chief*, as commonly it is amongst barbarous Nations; though all those *Chiefs* subordinate

to some higher power. Oppressed by *Uncham*, or *Uncham*, the King of *Tenduc*, who invaded their Pastures, and compelled them to pay unto him the tenth of their Cattel; with joyant content they removed somewhat further off, and denied their *Tribute*. This opportunity was taken by *Cingis*, one of the Tribe of the *Toka-Monguls*; and so well husbanded, that they admitted him to their King. For publishing abroad amongst the credulous people, that an armed man appeared to him in his sleep, with a white Horse, and said, O *Cingis*, or *Cingis*, it is the will of immortal God, that thou be Governor of the *Tartars*, and free them from bondage and paying *Tribute*, they found a general belief, especially amongst those of his own *Clan*, who joining themselves to him, followed him, as their King-leader, in all his actions. Thus backed and strengthened, he made War against the *Somunguls*, slew their Commander, and subdued them: and by their help successively assaulted the *Mercats*, and *Merris*, whom he also vanquished. And having thus subdued all the *Clans* of the *Tartars*, and added the Estates of *Thebet* and *Tanguth* unto his Dominions, he was by the consent of the seven Princes, or Chiefs of their *Clans*, (*Thebet* and *Tanguth* being added to the former number) placed on a Seat on a piece of *Felt*, (the best Throne they had or could afford) and saluted King; with as great reverence and solemnity as their State could yield. And first to make trial of his power, and their obedience, he commanded the seven Chiefs, or Princes, to surrender their places, and each of them to cut off the head of his eldest Son: which was done accordingly. Had *John* of *Leyden* been a *Scholar*, as he was but a *Butcher*, I should think he had studied the acts of *Cingis*, and proceeded by them. Assured by this of their fidelity and obedience, he set upon the *Naymans*, a People of the Kingdom of *Tenduc*, whom he overcame. And now conceiving himself fit for some great alliance, he sent to *Uncham*, and demanded one of his Daughters for his Wife; which *Uncham* with some threats, but more scorn, denying, he marched against him, slew him in the field, and possessed his Daughter, and with her also his Estate. Proud with this good success, and encouraged by so great an increase of power, he invaded the Kingdom of *Cathay*; pretending for that also the authority of an *Heavenly Vision*, in the name of the *Immortal God*: in which attempt, discomfited at first with a very great overthrow, but at last victorious; conquering the several Nations of it one by one, till in the end he brought the War to the chief City of that Kingdom, which at last he took, and therewithal the Title of *Cham* or Emperor. Continuing in this Dignity for the space of six years, and every year adding somewhat to his Dominions, he was at last wounded in the Knee at the Castle of *Thayia*; of which wound he died, and was honourably buried in Mount *Altay*.

This is the best account I am able to give of the beginning of this great Empire, the original of this spreading Nation, and the description of the Country of their first habitation. They that have *Christened* some of the most Northern parts of it, by the means of the *Tribes* of *Dan* and *Nephthalim*, and accordingly placed them in their Maps, might with more credit have supplied those vacant places, which they knew not otherwise how to fill, with the Pictures of wild beasts, or monstrous fishes; which might well enough have pleased the eye, without betraying the judgment of the looker on. Of his Successors I am able to make no certain Catalogue; their names being doubtfully delivered, and the Succession much confounded amongst our Writers: the names of the *Provincial Sultans* being many times imposed upon us, instead of those of the *Chams* themselves. But we will wade through

those difficulties as well as we can, and exhibit as perfect a Catalogue of them, as the light of Story will direct me: first adding (what should have been before remembered) that it is recorded, that *Cingis* before he joyntly battled with *Uncham*, consulted with his *Diviners* and *Astrologers* of the success. They taking a green Reed, cleft it afunder; writ on the one the name of *Cingis*, and *Uncham* on the other: and placed them not far afunder. Then fell they to reading their *Charms* and *Conjurations*, and the Reeds fell a fighting in the sight of the whole Army, *Cingis* Reed overcoming the other: whereby they foretold the joyful news of Victory to the *Tartars*, which accordingly happened. And this was the first step, by which this base and beggarly Nation began to mount upon the Chair of Empire and Sovereignty, whereas before they lived like beasts, having neither Letters, nor Faith, nor dwelling, nor reputation, nor valour, nor indeed any thing befitting a man, as before was said.

#### The Great CHAMS of the TARTARS.

A. C.

- 1162 1 *Cingis*, *Cincibus*, *Zingis*, or *Changius*, was made King or *Cham* of the *Tartars*; he subdued *Tenduc*, and *Cathay*, changing the name of *Seythians* and *Seythia*, to *Tartarians* and *Tartaria*.
- 1168 2 *Jochan Cham*, or *Hocata*, succeeded. In his time the name of *Tartar* was first known in Europe, Anno 1212. in which year they drove the *Polesjacks* from the banks of the *Encine* Sea. By his Captain *Batba*, or *Reido*, he subdued *Moscovia*, or *Russia*; planted his *Tartars* in *Taurica Cherfonisus*; wasted *Hungaria*, *Bosnia*, *Servia*, *Bulgaria*; and by his other Captains took *Perfia* from the *Turks*.
- 3 *Zaincham*, *Batba*, or *Barcham*, ruined the *Turky* Kingdom of *Damascus*, and *Asia* the less.
- 4 *Gino Cham*, whose Daughter conveyed the Empire unto her Husband *Tamerlane*, or *Tamberlane*.
- 1370 5 *Tamir-Cutla*, *Tamir Cham*, or *Tamerlane*, a great Tyrant, but withal an excellent Soldier. It is thought, that he subdued more Provinces in his life time, than the *Romans* had done in 800 years. Of whose acts we have spoke at large. Dying, he divided his great Empire amongst his Children, as *Perfia* to *Mirza Chabaruk* his fourth Son, *Zagatbay* to another, (perhaps unto *Sautochus* his eldest Son) and so to others.
- 1405 6 *Lutrochin*, the second Son of *Tamerlane*, succeeded in *Cathay*, though the eldest was at first proclaimed, which his Father had before prognosticated: who when his Sons came to him before his death, laid his hand on the head of *Sautochus*, who was the eldest, but lifting up the Chin of *Lutrochin*, who was the second. He lived not long, succeeded to by
- 7 *Alan*, who added little to his Estate.
- 8 *Mango Cham*, to whom *Haiton* an *Armenian* Prince (and the chief Compiler of the *Tartarian History*) went for aid against the *Caliph* of *Bagdat*. By whose perfwasion the said *Mango Cham* is said to have been *Christened*, with all his Household, and many Nobles of both Sexes.

9 *Cublay Cham*, the Son of *Mango*.

10 *Tamul Cham*, the Nephew of *Cublay* by his Son *Cingis*.

11 *Demy Cham*, the Great *Cham* of *Cathay* in the year 1540, or thereabouts. What the names of the *Chams* are who have since reigned, we cannot learn; nor what memorable acts have been done among them. The great distance of Countreys, and difficulty of the journey, have hindered further discoveries. For the Great *Cham*, and his next neighbour the King of *China*, will neither suffer any of their Subjects to travel abroad, nor permit any Foreigners to view their Dominions, or enter into them: unless their Embassadors or Merchants, and those but sparingly, and under very great restraints, to avoid all giving of intelligence touching their affairs; saving that in these later times the *Jesuits* have found some footing in *China*, by whom notwithstanding, we have received little or no intelligence in matters which concern this Countrey.

The Government is tyrannical, the Great *Cham* being Lord of all; and in his *langue* (besides which they have almost no Laws) consisteth the power of life or death. He is called by the simple Vulgar, *The shadow of spirits*, and *Son of the Immortal God*: and by himself is reputed to be the Monarch of the whole World. For this cause every day as soon as he hath dined, he causeth his Trumpets to be sounded; by that sign giving leave to the other Kings and Princes of the earth to go to dinner. A fine dream of Universal Monarchy. At the death of the *Cham*, the seven chief Princes assemble to crown his Son; and they place on a black course cloth: telling him, if he live well, Heaven shall be his reward; if ill, he shall not have so much as a corner of that black cloth to rest his body on: then they put the Crown on his head, and killing his feet, swear unto him fealty and homage. And at the Funeral of these great Monarchs, they use to kill some of his *Guard Soldiers*, whereof he hath 12000 in continual pay, saying unto them, *It & domus nostra fruite in alia vita*. *Paulus Venetus* reporteth, that at the obsequies of *Mongo Cham*, no fewer then 10000 were slain on this occasion.

These *Chams* are for the most part severe Justicers, and punish almost every small fact with sudden death; but theft especially: Inasmuch that a man in *Cambalu* taking a piece of milk from a womans head, and beginning to drink thereof, upon the womans out-cry was apprehended, and cut asunder with a sword, so that the blood and the milk came out together. Nor are *Adultery* or *Lying* punished with less than death, and so ordained to be by the Laws of *Cingis*, their first Emperour. A wiser man, than possibly could be expected from so rude a Countrey, and of so little breeding in the knowledge of Books or Business: the *Tartars* being utterly without the use of Letters, till the conquest of the *Huys*, a *Cathayan* Nation built of Christian Faith.

What Forces the Great *Chams*, in the height of their power, were able to draw into the field, may be conjectured at by the Army of *Tamerlane*, consisting of 1200000 Horse and Foot, as was said before. And looking on them as confined within *Cathay*, we shall find them not inferior to the greatest Princes. For *Cublay Cham*, long after the division of this great Estate, which was made by *Tamerlane*, had in the field against *Naijan* his Uncle, and one *Caiaids*, who had then rebelled, an Army of 100000 Foot, and 360000 Horse: there being 500000 Horse on the other side, which was probable enough, if he were in both Armies. And this is probable enough, if report be true touching the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, and those of *Turchistan*, (before reduced under the obedience of the other) of which the first is said to have been able

to raise 300000 Horse, and the last an hundred thousand more. For standing Forces, he maintains 100000 Horse, distributed amongst four Captains, for the guard of his Person; besides which he hath great Forces in every Province, and within four miles of every City, ready to come upon a call, if occasion be: so that he need not fear any outward invasion, and much less any homebred Rebellions. But on the other side, admitting this for truth which before is said, we find him of no power at Sea, without which great Princes are exposed most commonly to the invasions and affronts of such as are strong in Shipping: For either the Eastern *Tartars* interposed betwixt him and the main Ocean, whereby he is Landlocked (as it were) from all Trade at Sea; or if he have any Port in the North-east parts of this long Countrey, where it joyneth on *Tartarea Antiqua*, it is so far off, and so much out of the way, that it adds nothing to his power, and not much to his purse.

Of the *Revenues* of the *Cham*, I can make no estimate, but may conclude them to be what he list himself: he being the absolute Lord of all, the Subject without any thing he can call his own. But that which ordinarily doth accrew unto him, is the tenth of Wool, Silk, Hemp, Corn, and Cattel. Then doth he draw into his own hands all the Gold and Silver which is brought into the Countrey; which he causeth to be melted, and preserved in his Treasury: imposing on his people instead of money, in some places *Cockle-shells*; in others, a black coin, made of the bark of trees, with his stamp upon it. And besides this he hath to himself the whole trade of *Pearl-fishing*, which no body upon pain of death dare fish for, but by leave from him. So that his Treasury is conceived to be very rich, though his Annual income be uncertain, or not certainly known.

Hitherto I have profecuted the affairs of this mighty Monarch upon the common credit of approved Authors, yet must confess I am not very well satisfied in the truth and reality of the thing it self; it being rather my opinion, that there is no such man at this present time as a great *Cham* of *Tartary*, with Sovereign Power and Jurisdiction over all the other Members of that vast body; but that this Empire being broken in pieces by the Sons of *Tamerlane*, the conquered Countreys did by little and little return again to their former Governments, or else were seized on by the *Visi Chams* or Governours of the several Provinces. For first I consider it as impossible that there should be such a mighty Monarch, of such absolute authority, such an infinite power, and such unlimited Revenue; and yet that for the space of an hundred years and more, we should hear neither tale nor tidings of them, nor so much as of their names, especially in an active age, and when this great building of the world hath such Catefments in it. For it must needs seem strange to a rational man, that neither *Jenkinson* who passed into *Persia* by the *Caspian* Sea, nor Sir Robert *Shurley* who spent much time in the *Persian* Court, nor Sir *Thomas Roe*, or Sir *Dudmore Cotton* (the first Embassadors to the Great *Mogul*, the other to the *Persian* *Sophy*) should tell us any thing of this Prince, if such Prince there be; or that the Travellers of our Nation who have rambled over all parts of *India*, the next neighbouring Countrey, should bring us home no tidings of him; or the *Jesuits* with all their diligence should not find him out. Secondly, I consider it is a thing improbable, that if there were any such mighty Prince, keeping his Royal Court in the City of *Cambalu*, so near unto the Kingdom of *China*, he should permit the beggerly Nations of the Eastern *Tartary* to conquer that rich and mighty Empire in so short a time, he in the mean season sitting still as a dull spectator, neither considering his own danger, nor putting in for

for a threat of so great a booty. Thirdly, I observe that in the decree of a Marriage between *Ximbiu* the great King of the Eastern *Tartars*, now reigning in *China*, with a Daughter of the King of *Tangut*, the King of *Tangut* is called Prince of the *Occidental*, or Western *Tartars*, by which name the *Chineses* call all the *Tartars* inhabiting the vast Countreys of *Alay* and *Cathay*, especially so called, (as being Westward of themselves, and the Eastern *Tartars*.) which Title the King of *Tangut* had not merited or durst have assumed unto himself, if there had been any such great *Cham* then reigning in *Cathay*, and residing in *Cambalu*, as our Authors speak of. And fourthly, I observe it as a matter probable, that as at the breaking of this Empire into pieces upon the death of *Tamerlane*, the *Presepenses*, or *European Tartars* submitted to a Prince of their own Nation, under the Power and Government of whole Successors, they do still continue: and much of the *Afatick Tartary* being subdued by the *Misowites*, the neighbouring *Tartars* did return to their ancient Government by *Hordes* or Tribes; that so the

Kings of *Tangut* might not only recover their own Inheritance, but by degrees possess themselves of the greatest part of all *Alay*, if not of some part of the *Proper Cathay* also. And therefore that some of the late great *Chams* mentioned in the former Catalogue, are no other than the Kings of *Tangut*, or the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, in whom (if any where) remaineth the Succession of the House of *Cingis*.

From these Premises I conclude, that all which hath before been spoken touching the great power, authority, and revenue of the great *Cham* of *Tartary*, must either be referred unto the times of their greatest glory, when their Empire was entire, or not much diminished; or else relate, with some qualifications, to the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, or the Kings of *Tangut*. But these my observations and considerations, with the conclusion issuing from them; I willingly submit unto better Judgments.

And thus much for TARTARY.

## OF CHINA.



HINA is bounded on the North, with *Alay*, and the Eastern *Tartars*, from which separated by a continued chain of hills, part of those of *Ararat*, and where that chain is broken off, or interrupted, with a great Wall extended 400 Leagues in length; built, as they say, by *Tizianzon*, the 17 King hereof, on the South, partly with *Caucasian*, a Province of *India*, partly with the Ocean; on the East, with the Oriental Ocean; and on the West, with part of *India*, and *Cathay*; and from which no otherwise separated than by such natural bounds, and Ramparts as commonly divide great Countreys from one another.

The Northern parts hereof were utterly unknown unto the Ancients, both *Greeks* and *Latines*; But for the Southern parts hereof, they make up that Countrey which *Ptolomy* called *Sinae*, or *Sinarum Regio*, by which name the whole Countrey is called at the present by our modern *Latinists*; and from whence that of *China* seems to be derived. By *Paulus Venetus* called *Mangi*, by the neighbouring Countreys *Sangai*, by the Natives *Taine*, and *Tchinois*: which last, signifies no other than a Realm; or by way of excellence, the Realm. By the *Arabians* it is called *Tzsin*; and the Inhabitants call themselves by the name of *Togais*.

It is said to contain in circuit 69516 *Dies* of *China* measure, which reduced to our *European* measure, will make a compass in the whole of 3000 Leagues: the length thereof extended from the borders of *India*, to the most Northern Provinces of this Continent, 1800 Leagues. But they that say so, speak at random. For besides that 1800 Leagues in length, must needs carry a greater compass than 3000 Leagues, they make it by this reckoning to be bigger than *Europe*, which I think no sober man will grant. And answerable to this vast compass, it is said

also to contain no fewer than 15 Provinces, every one of which is made to be, of a greater Continent than the greatest Realm we know in *Europe*: Yet not a Continent of waste ground, or full of uninhabitable Deserts, as in other places; but full of goodly Towns and Cities. The names of which Provinces, and the number of their Towns and Cities, I have thought fit once for all, to lay down in this *Diagram* following.

The Provinces, Cities, and Towns in China.

Prov.	Cit.	Tow.
1 Canton	37	190
2 Foquien	33	99
3 Olam	90	130
4 Sijnan	44	150
5 Tolenchia	51	155
6 Canjay	24	122
7 Minchian	25	29
8 Ochian	19	74
9 Honan	20	102
10 Pagnia	47	150
11 Taitan	47	78
12 Quinchien	45	113
13 Chaguan	43	95
14 Sijnan	41	105
15 Quinsay	31	114

By which it doth appear, that in these fifteen Provinces there are 591 Cities; 1593 walled Towns; and besides them 1154 Castles, 4200 Towns unwall'd; and such an infinite number of Villages, that the whole Countrey seems to be but one City only. But here we are to understand, that these great Provinces are divided into many lesser, and some of them presented to us (in late stories) under other names, according to the Languages and Appellations of those several Nations, which either have recourse unto them, or do traffique with them; which the Reader may take notice of with less doubt

or wonder, in regard that the main Country of *China* itself is called by so many several names, as before was shewn.

It reacheth from the 130th. to the 10th. Degree of *Longitude*: and from the *Tropic of Cancer*, to the 53 Degree of *Latitude*. So that it lies under all the *Climes* from the third to the ninth; indifferently: the longest Summers day in the Southern parts, being thirteen hours, and forty minutes; increased in the most Northern parts, to 16 hours and 3 quarters. Enjoying by this site an air somewhat of the hottest, especially in those parts which lie under the *Tropicks*; but withal very found and healthy, and fit for the production of the choicest Fruits.

The Country very rich and fertile, inasmuch that in many places they have two, and in some three Harvests in a year: well cultivated, and sowed with all manner of Grain, and planted with the best kind of Fruits: which do not only come to a speedy maturity, but to more excellency and perfection than any of these Western parts. The like is also said of their *Pearls* and *Becora*, fairer and of greater virtue than those of *America*, or any other part of the world besides. Particularly it aboundeth with Wheat, Barley, Rice, Wool, Cotton, Olives, Vines, Flax, Silk, all kind of Metals, Fruits, Cattel, Sugar, Honey, Rubarb, Camphire, Ginger, all kinds of Spices, medicinal wood, call'd *China wood* by the name of the Country, Musk, and Salt: the Custom for which last in one City only, which is that of *Canton*, amounteth to the yearly value of 180000 Crowns. It yieldeth also an Herb, out of which they press a delicate juice, which doth not only serve them in stead of Wine, but preserveth their health, and freeth them from many of those inconveniences, which the immoderate use of Wine doth breed to others. Such store of Poultry of all sorts, but of Ducks especially, that in the Town of *Canton* only before mentioned, it is thought there are 12020 eaten every day, one day with another.

The people are for the most part of swart complexion, but more or less, according to their nearness to the heat of the Sun, short nosed, black eyed, and of very thin beards. They wear their Garments very long, with long loose sleeves, and their Hair much longer than the neighbouring *Tartars*, who wear their Hair exceeding short, and their cloaths much closer; to which two Fashions so addicted, that more of them took up Arms for their Hair and Habit (when required to conform in those particulars to the will of the Conquerour) than had done either for their King, or their common liberty. So much delighted with their own fashion and composure, that as the *Ne-groes* use to paint the Devil White, as a colour contrary to their own: so when these *Chinies* use to draw the Picture of a deformed person, they set him forth in a short coat, broad eyes, long nose, and a bushy beard. They are much given unto their bellies, and eat thrice a day, but then not immoderately: drink their drink hot, and eat their meat with two sticks of Ivory, Ebony, or the like, not touching their meat with their hands at all, and therefore no great foulers of Linnen. The use of Silver Forks with us, by some of our spruce Gallants taken up of late, came from hence into *Italy*, and from thence into *England*. Their Marriages they celebrate most commonly in the New Moon, and many times put them off till *March*, when the year beginneth with them as it doth with us: in which solemnity they spare for no cost nor charge, Music, and Stage-plays, and good cheer many days together. Yet doth not this take them off a jot from their natural industry, and their proficiency in *Manufactures* and *Mechanick Arts*. For the Son is bound to follow his Father's occupation: which Law,

preventing the roaving about of idle people, and exciting in each breast an emulation in every Art, maketh the Inhabitants excellent Artificers. In giving Alms they are bountiful to the maimed, and the lame; but reject the blind, as being sufficiently able to get sustenance for themselves by corporal labour, as grinding of Corn, &c. They have long enjoyed the benefit of *Printing* before it was known in *Europe*, but Print not as we do, from the left hand to the right; nor as the *Jews*, from the right hand to the left; but from the top of the leaf downward to the bottom. *Guns* also have been used among them time out of mind: whence they are so well conceited of themselves, that they use to say, They themselves have two eyes, the *Europeans* one, and the rest of the people of the world not one. A pretty flourish of self-praising. Now that *Guns* were in use in these Eastern Countries, and consequently also amongst them, even when *Bacbus* made his Expedition into *India* (which was some three or four years before, or after the departure of *Ishad* out of *Aegypt*) Sir *Walker Rawleigh* seemeth to affirm: because *Philstratus*, in the life of *Apollonius Tyanus*, telleth us how *Bacbus* was beaten from a City of the *Oxydrace*, by thunder and lightning; which he interpreteth to be the Cannon. But certainly himself in another place of his most excellent Book, acknowledgeth this *Philstratus* to have written fabulously; and therefore no fit foundation for a conceit so contrary to probability, and the opinion of all times. Besides, whereas *Dion* telleth us, that by the benefit of thunder and lightning from Heaven, *Severus* discomitted *Pescennius Niger*; and by the same means, was himself repulsed from the Walls of *Petra* in *Arabia*: we may (if this interpretation hold good) as easily maintain, that *Severus* had great Ordinance in his Camp; and the *Arabians* in their Town. As for *Printing*, whether *John Guttenberg* learned it of the *Chinies*: or whether good inventions, like good wits, do sometimes jump, I dare not determine: sure I am that he first taught it in *Europe*; and as some say, in the year 1440. At *Harlem* a Town of *Holland*, it is first said to be practised; and at *Meniz* perfected. Now whereas it is by some doubted, whether the Art of *Printing* be available to the proficiency and advancement of Learning, or not; I must not herein be both a Judge, and a party: but must leave the decision of the point to men uninterested. Only this I dare boldly say, that this most excellent invention hath been much abused, and prostituted to the lust of every foolish and idle Paper-blurrier: the Treasury of Learning being never so full, and yet never more empty; over-charged to with the froth and foam of all foolish and unnecessary discourses. In which (though all Nations have their share therein, and we of late as much as any) the *Dutch* have been accounted the most blame-worthy: who not content to scatter their poor conceits amongst themselves, and Print them in their own Tongue in only (as our *English Paper-blurriers* do) publish them twice a the *Latine* to the eye of others, and send them twice a year to the publick *Marts*, though neither worth the Readers eye, nor the Printers hand. *Scriptura plus habet quam miserrimum olim cum caetera maxime*; the complaint once of an old Comedian, was never truer than at the present.

But not to dive too deep into this dispute, the people, as before was said, are good Artificers, ingenious and excellent in all things which they take in hand: the *Precious* Dishes, curious Carvings, and the fine Painted Works which we have in Tables, Leather, Stuffs, being brought from thence. Effeminated with much ease and pleasure, they are not much given unto the Wars, which maketh them the more easie prey to the Neighbouring *Tartars*, whose very name hath bred more terrors in them, than their Arms

Arms or Conquests. Inasmuch that when *Usangueius*, requested Aid of *Zungtze* King of the *Eastern Tartars*, against *Lycangtze*, and his rabble of Rogues, which sacked the City of *Peking*, and placed himself in the Throne Imperial; the *Tartarian* having but few men in readiness, advised him to array a good part of his own Soldiers with the Arms and Colours of the *Tartars*, that on the Terror of that sight he might obtain the cheaper, and more certain Victory: which prudent Council was pursued, and it proved accordingly: but what they want in courage, they supply with Wit, being fain to be a politic and judicious people; but withal very jealous of their women, and great Tyrants over them, not suffering them to go abroad, or sit down at the Table if any stranger be invited, unless he be some very near Kinsman. A Tyranny or restraint, which the poor women give no cause for, being fain to be very honest and much reserved; not so much as shewing themselves at a window for fear of offence: and if they use painting, as most of them do, it is rather to preserve themselves in the good affections of their Husbands, than for any other lewd respects. For the most part of a fair Hair, whereof very curious, binding it about their heads with Ribbands of Silk, and garnished with Pearls and precious Stones. Neat in their drefs, and very costly in their apparel, with reference to their estates, and the degree of their Husbands: the richer sort wearing attire lusc'd with Gold, and interlaced with very rich jewels: the poorer in Serge, and razed Velvets. They have most of them little feet, which they take great pride in, and for this cause bind them up hard from their very Infancy; which they endure patiently though they be very painful: because a small foot is accounted for so great a grace. And yet it is conceived that this proceeded not so much from their own curiosity, as from the jealousy of the men, who have brought it in, to the end that they should not be able to go but with a great deal of pain; and that going with so ill a grace, and so little ease, they should have no desire to stir much abroad. A custom so Ancient and received, that it hath got the force of Law; and if any Mother should do otherwise in breeding their Daughters, they would undergo some censure or mark of infamy. If a desire to see their Parents get them the freedom of a wife, they are carried to them in clofe Chairs, and attended by so many waiters, that it is not possible for any man either to see them, or hold any discourse with them.

Of both Sexes it is thought that this Country containeth no fewer than 70 Millions. Which though it seem to be a number beyond all belief; yet it is knowingly averred, and may be thought probable enough, if we consider the spaciousness of the Country. 2 The secret goodness of the Stars, and temperature of the Air. 3 The abundance of all things necessary to life. 4 That it is not lawful for the King to make any War, but merely defensive, and so they enjoy perpetual peace. 5 That it is not lawful for any *Chinies* to go out of the Country. And 6 That here the Sea is as well peopled as whole Provinces elsewhere. For the Ships do resemble a City, in which they buy, sell, are born, and die. And on the several Rivers which water the Walls of *Nanquin*, and *Pekin*, for no less than 300 Leagues, the Ships are said to be so thick ranked, that it seemeth to be a continual Street.

The people hereof in matters of Religion, are generally all *Gentiles*, and conceive thus of the Creation; viz. that there was one *Taine*, who created *Tanxon*, and *Panxina*, whose Posterity remained 90000 years; but they for their wickedness being destroyed, *Taine* created *Luitxam*, who had two horns: from the right came men, from the left came women. When any of them dieth,

they cloath him in his best apparel, all perfumed, set him in his best Chair, and there all his nearest Kindred kneeling before him, they take their leave with tears. When he is Coffin'd, they place him in a room richly furnished, with Candles continually burning on it. Not much unlike to which Ceremonies, we find, how whilst the funeral was preparing for *Francis the French King*, his Statue apparelled in Royal Robes, with the Crown, Scepter, &c. was laid on his Bed; whither Dinner and Supper was daily served in, with the like State and Solemnity as when he was living. But to return again to my dead *Chinies*; when he has lain, as is above said, fifteen days, he is carried forth to his Funeral, the place whereof is in the Fields; for to be buried within the Walls, were a thing of all others the most wretched. Hither, when they are in the manner of a Procession, come, they burn his body, and with it Men, Cattel, and other provision, for his attendance and sustenance in the other world: as they use in the Funerals of *Tartary*. As great *Idolaters* are also, sacrificing to the very Devil, and that upon the same reason, as the most ignorant sort of the *Gentiles* do; because forth he is a wicked and mischievous creature, and would otherwise hurt them.

Yet in the middle of this darkness there appeareth some light, whereby we may perceive that Christianity had some footing here, in the times foregoing; for they believe, that *God* is an immortal Spirit; that by him the first man was made of nothing; that the Soul dieth not with the Body, but is capable of reward and punishment in another life, according to the works it hath done in this. Which left they should be thought to be only some remainders of the light of nature, (the learned men amongst the Ancient *Greeks* and *Romans*, having so much Divinity as this, without the Gospel) we may here add, that the *Idols* most generally worshipp'd by them, is painted with three heads looking one on another; signifying, as themselves affirm, that they have all but one will, which makes some think they had been Anciently instructed in the Doctrine of the Holy Trinity. They have also the Picture of a very fair Woman holding a Child in her Arms, who, as they say, was Daughter of some great King; and that she was delivered of that Infant when she was a Virgin. And as some add, they have portraitsures of the *Salmon*, and with the marks or Characters of the twelve Apostles, (as usually painted in some part of the *Christian Church*: of whom they are able to say nothing, but that they were great Philosophers who lived virtuously here, and were therefore made Angels in Heaven. And finally they hold, that there is a great number of Saints, or men Elevated in an eminent degree of Happiness, who in their times exceeded others in knowledge, industry, or valour, or lived an austere life without wronging any man: or otherwise deserved nobly of the Commonwealth, as the Authors of some fabled benefit unto their Country.

These I conceive to be some evident remainders of Christianity, or the Remembrances rather of that Christianity, which formerly was known amongst them: first planted here (as may be probably collected) by St. Thomas, or some of his Disciples: an Ancient Breviary or Liturgy of the Indian Churches, giving good hint to it: Where it is said, *Per D. Thomam regnum calorum volavit, & ascendit ad Sinas*: i. e. that by St. Thomas the Kingdom of Heaven was Preached unto those of *China*. Some *Chalrallies* here were also of it, in the time of the *Tartars*, though now obliterated, and not visible but in these decavements; And in this state it stood till the time of our Fathers, in which the *Jesuits* (commendably industrious in the propagation of the *Christian Faith*) not without great danger to themselves, have endeavoured, and in part

part effected, their *Conversion*. For though they have gained but few *Profelytes*, (in regard of those infinite numbers of people which are said to live here) yet some *Converts* they have made amongst them; and thereby sown those seeds of that saving Truth, (though mingled with some *errors* of their own) which may in time increase and spread over all the Country. For at the present they have not only got footing in the Ports and Sea-Towns; but also in many mid-land Cities, and in some also very far distant from the Sea; in all of which, they have both Churches for their followers, and Cells or Monasteries for themselves; and finally, have gained far upon the Court, as not only to have their doings well approved of by Authority Royal; but have also gained unto the Faith, the Mother, Wife, and eldest Son of *Jungly* the late declared Emperor of the *Chineses*, which eldest Son they have baptized (and be it an happy Omen, for the good of Christendom) by the name of *Constantine*.

Hills of great Note here are not many, here being but one Mountain touched upon by *Ptolomy*, in his description of the Country called *Sinarum Regio*, which we conceive to be the Southern part of this *China*: agreeable unto the observation of Modern Writers, by whom it is affirmed to be so plain and level, and so unfurnished with hills at all; that they have *Carts* and *Coaches* driven with *sails* as ordinarily as drawn with horses, in these parts. Not the less destitute of Rivers for this want of Mountains, *Ptolomy* naming in it, 1 *Aphrata*, 2 *Senis*, 3 *Amphite*, and 4 *Cotiaris*; all which had here their fount and fall: yet he knew the out-skirts of the Country only. But because the Country of the *Sine*, of which *Ptolomy* speaks, make but a South part of this great Country, and the Rivers which before we mentioned in *Serica*, pass into it also, it's possible enough, that we may find them all amongst the chief Rivers of this Country, whenever we shall come to have a more perfect Chorography hereof than former times have given unto us. In the mean season we may know, that the names by which the principal Rivers are now called, are 1 *Tale*, which rising in the North-east parts of the Country, and passing by the Southern skirts of *Leantong*, falleth into the Ocean over against the Island of *Corea*, making a little Iller at the Inflox of it, fortified with a strong Castle called *Xaing-hai*, to secure that entrance. 2 *Croceus*, which arising in the West borders hereof, first bendeth its course to the North-east, watering the City of *Kiaingchen*, and after passing directly Eastward, till it falls at last into the *Tale*. 3 *Polyganga*, which issuing out of some of the branches of Mount *Imaur*, first passeth by the great City of *Cambala*, and falls at last into the mighty Lake of *Quinsay*, and finally again contracted to its proper Channel, doth either lose it self in the Eastern Ocean, or in the great River of *Kiang*, of which more anon. 4 *Cacamacan*, another of those great Rivers which falleth into the Lake of *Quinsay*, and possibly may be the same which the *Chetayzen Tartars* call by the name of *Caromoram*. 5 *Kiang*, (or *Quiam*, as the *Tartars* call it) which having its original from Mount *Imaur*, and passing thorow the whole breadth of *Cathay*, cutteth thorow the middle of this Country, which it divideth (like an Equator) into North and South, watering therein the stately Cities of *Nanquin* and *Cassing*, where it is no less than 4 miles broad, encircling more and more in breadth by the falling in of other principal Rivers, till it come at last to be 30 miles over, and cutting up such Mountains of Water, that the *Chineses* call it not undervulgarly, *The Son of the Sea*. 6 *Giantshan*, the same (I think) which the *Tartars* call *Quianzen*, which rising out of some other spurs or branches of the Mount *Imaur*, falleth at last into this Country, and passing by the goodly City of *Hangken* on the North,

and the fair Town of *Xaoking* on the South, endeth its course at last in the Eastern Ocean. 7 *Queen*, a River of the Southern parts, but not much observable. Here are also many great *Lakes*, not inferior to some Seas in bigness; so plentiful in Fish, as if they contended with the foyl, which should be most profitable: and yet so swelled with winds (though the winds many times blow strongly) that both upon these *Lakes*, and on the Rivers and Sea-coasts, they pass up and down in small Barks, with no other Sail than a Bough set up an end in the midst of them; by the help whereof they make good speed in their Navigations. Nor do these *Lakes* or Rivers use to overflow their banks, or endanger the Country: but when they do, it brings some fatal ruine with it; as in the year 1527, when the *Lake of Sancey* breaking out, overwhelmed seven Cities, many Towns and Villages, and Country people, almost infinite numbers.

Towns of most Note amongst the *Sine*, though nothing but the names be remaining of them, 1 *Bramia*; and 2 *Rhabana*, honoured with the title of *Civitates*, 3 *Aphrata*, 4 *Achata*, more within the Land; but all four under some degree of Northern Latitude, 5 *Thine*, the Metropolis of the Country, by some called *Sine*; 6 *Sarata*, 7 *Catananagara*, these on the South side of the Line. But in this *Ptolomy* was mistaken; it being found by the more certain observations of our later Writers, that no part of *China* comes within 20 degrees of the *Equinotial*; and so not capable of having any Towns or Cities of a Southern Latitude. Here was also a large bay called *Sinarum Sinus*, a Promontory named *Nanpin*, in the fourth degree of Northern Latitude; and another named *Satyrorum*, lying under the *Aequinox*. More than this of the Cities of the ancient *Sine*, I have nothing to say, which I dare offer to the Reader.

But to behold them as they are presented to our view in the Modern *China*, it hath been said, that for number there are no fewer than 501 Cities; and those so uniformly built, so conformable to one another, that they differ not in form and fashion, but in quantity only. Much like the Cities of *Utopia*, mentioned by Sir *Thomas More*, *Idem situs omnibus, eadem, quatenus per locum licet, rerum facies*, so near resembling one another, that he who knoweth but one of them, may conjecture at all. And this is the manner of their building. Most of their Cities have the benefit of some navigable River, near which they stand: the waters whereof serve them both for navigation, and domestic uses. Two great Streets crossing one another in the very midst, so broad, that horsemen may ride a breift in the narrowest of them; so that a man standing in the middle, may see either side; each end being shut up with a Gate of great strength and beauty; and those Gates fortified and strengthened with thick plates of Iron. Generally greater and more stately than those of *Europe*, but defective in that point of elegance which the *Magnificent* Churches, and more sumptuous buildings for the dispatch of publick business, in these parts abound with. Their private houses for the most part are also low, and destitute of Porches, Windows, Galleries, the principal ornaments and graces of *Architecture*. Nor are their Cities built only for resort, or trade, but for strength and safety, environed with deep and broad ditches, the Walls of brick or stonell, strong above belief, planted with Ordnance and Artillery in convenient places: and every night the Gates are not only locked, but sealed; not to be opened till unsealed by the principal Magistrate. So like they are to one another, that we may say with *Ovid* on the like occasion;

— Facies non omnibus una,  
Nec diversa sament, qualem deest esse fororum.

Which

which I find thus Englished by *G. Sandys*.

Amongst them all no two appear the same,  
Nor differed more than Sisters well became.

But not to rest our selves on this general Character, let us take a more particular view of some of the principal. And in that list we find, 1 *Quinsay*, called *Sunien* by the Natives, situate somewhat towards the South, on the Western borders of this Kingdom, where it consisteth on *Cathay*; of this Town many things are reported beyond all belief, as namely, that it contained once in circuit an hundred miles, and had in the midst of it a Lake of 30 miles compass; in which Lake were two goodly Islands, and in them two magnificent Palaces, adorned with all-necessaries, either for majesty, or convenience; in which are celebrated the publick Feasts, and the marriages of the better sort. The Lake nourished with divers Rivers, the chief being *Polyganga*, and *Cacamacan*; on which Rivers 12000 Bridges are said to have lifted up their stately heads: and under whose immense Arches, great Ships with Sails spread abroad, and *top and gal* land, might and did usually pass. It is also said to have had ten Market-places, each of them four miles amunder, and every one in form quadrangular, the sides thereof half a mile in length. Here were said also to be twelve Companies of Traddlers or Artizans, each Company having 12000 Shops, and in all a million and 60000 Families. But whatsoever it was in the former times, certain it is that at this time (if it hath at this time any being at all) partly on the removal of the Court from hence to *Cambala* by the *Tartars*; and since to *Nanquin* and *Pekin* by the Princes of the House of *Hambu*, and partly the fury of Wars, and partly by the violence of Earthquakes, it hath lost no small part of her ancient beauty and renown. 2 *Unguen*, famous for the abundance of *Sugar* there made. 3 *Nanquin*, seated 9 Leagues from the Sea, on the great River of *Kiang*, whereon ride for the most part no fewer than 10000 of the Kings Ships, besides such as belong to private men. The Town in compass 30 miles, being girt with three fair brick walls, having large and stately Gates. The streets in length two Leagues, wide and paved; the number of houses is about 200000, so that it may equal four of the fairest Cities of *Europe*. 4 *Pekin*, or *Pagania*, in the middle of the Province so named, (being one of the four Northern Provinces, which take up the whole breadth of this mighty Kingdom) where the King continually resideth; and that, either because the air hereof is more healthful and pleasant, than any of the other, or because it lieth near unto the *Tartars*; with whom the *Chineses* are in perpetual War: so that from hence the dangers which may by their invasions be either prevented, or relisted. The City said to be inferior to *Nanquin* for bulk and beauty, but to exceed it in multitude of Inhabitants, Souldiers, and Magistrates, occasioned by the King's abode. Environed on the South with two Walls, of so great breadth, that twelve horsemen may run abreft upon them; on the North, with one Wall only, but that so strong and vigilantly guarded, that they fear as little annoyance on that side as they do on the other. But the greatest Ornament hereof is the Royal Palace, compassed about with a triple Wall, the outwardmost of which would well environ a large City; within which pass, besides the many Lodgings for *Eunuchs*, and other Courtiers, are Groves, Hills, Fountains, Rivers, and the like places of pleasure, larger in circuit, but not comparable for the Arts of *Architecture* to the Royal Palaces of *Europe*: First built by some of the *Tartar* Kings of this Country in imitation of the Royal Palace of *Xajinda*, mentioned in *Cathay*, honoured sometimes with the residence of the *Chams* themselves, which

as it gave unto the City the name of *Pekin*, that is to say, the Court or City of the King, in the Language of *China*; so gave it occasion unto some Writers to make this name, and *Cambala* the same, both names being of the same signification, though in divers Languages, 5 *Cantan*, supposed to be the *Catigara* of *Ptolomy*, by the *Chineses* called *Quamchen*, the least of the Metropolitan Cities of this Country, but beautified with many triumphant Arches, a navigable River, large Streets, and many goodly Bridges. Fortified with deep Trenches, 83 Bulwarks, and seated in so rich a soil, both for Fowl and Cattel, that here are said to be eaten daily 6000 Hogs, and 12000 Ducks, besides proportionable quantity of other victuals. If this be one of the least of their Metropolitan, what may we fancy of the greatness of a Town in which the *Portugals* drive a wealthy trade, being permitted in the day-time to come within the City it self, but at night excluded, and forced to find lodging in the Suburbs. By reason of which restraint they have settled their Mart at *Macao*, the Port-Town to this, where they have their Factor, and many Families; the Town being almost wholly peopled by them. 6 *Leantong*, the chief City of *Leantong* (another of the four Northern Provinces) and the first Town taken by the Eastern *Tartars* in their attempts upon this Kingdom, by this door making themselves an entrance unto all the rest. 7 *Ningvien*, made the Metropolis of *Leantong* after the taking of *Leantong* by the Eastern *Tartars*. 8 *Sigan*, or *Singan*, the chief City of *Xensi*, sometimes of the four Northern Provinces, and honoured with the Kings residence. 9 *Xaoking*, on the South side of the River *Gienhang*, one of the fairest Cities of *China*, so environed with sweet waters, as a man may contemplate its beauty, as rounding it in a Boat; containing a Navigable Channel whose sides are garnished with the like ornament; and of the same stone there is also built many fair Bridges, and triumphant Arches; the houses being all of the same stone also, which render it the nearest (though not the biggest) City in this mighty Kingdom. 10 *Suebean*, about two days journey from the Sea, seated in Marishes like *Venice*, but more commodiously, because those Marishes are of fresh water; the streets and houses founded upon Piles of *Pine-tree*; with many Bridges, and conveniences for passage both by land and water. Well traded, as the fittest Center for dispersion of Merchandise from all the other Ports of the Kingdom: by the multitude and frequency of Ships, almost denying faith to the eyes, which would think all the Ships of *China* to be here assembled. So infinitely rich, that the small Region whereof it is the Head, containing but eight Cities more, payeth 12 millions to the King of yearly Income. 11 *Hamsen*, or *Hangchen*, on the North side of the River *Gienhang*, out of which furnished with a Channel of great length and breadth, by which it trades into the Northern parts of this Kingdom; the Metropolis of the Province of *Chequian*, about two days journey from the Sea; in compass less than *Nanquin*, but better built: no places in it taken up with Gardens, Orchards, or other pleasures; but all employed for Shops, Houses, and other Edifices. So beautified with *Triumphant Arches*, erected to the honour of deserving Magistrates, that in one Street there are 300 of great masts, of workmanship. The Temples magnificent and many; the bank-sides of the Channels watering every Street, beset with Trees of shade, and most excellent Fruits: and in the middle of the City a round high Mountain, which gives the eye a gallant prospect into every Street. And not far off a pleasant Lake of great breadth and length, the banks whereof are beautified with Groves and Gardens, and the Lake

it self even clothed with vessels of all sorts, on which the Citizens use to feast, and entertain their idle time with Plays and Spectacles. Two Cities to replenish with all kind of pleasures, that the *Chinois* use to a Proverb, *Thien Xam, thien thum, ti Xamfu hum*, that is to say, Look what the Hall or Prefecture-Chamber is in Heaven, that *Hansen* and *Suecheu* are on Earth. 12 *Focheu*, beautified amongst many other stately Structures, with a magnificent Tower erected on 40 Marble Pillars, of great elegance, cost, and bigness, every Pillar being 40 spans in height, and 12 in breadth: not to be parallel'd, as some say, by any the like work in *Europe*. 13 *Lo-chian*, as in which are 70000 Families, 14 *Colan*, famous for the best *Porcellane*. 15 *Sciambay*, by some called *Thien-cin*, a station to which an incredible number of Ships resort, both by Sea and River, from all parts of this Kingdom; seated within 24 hours sail of the Isle of *Japan*, and therefore defended with a strong Garrison, and a Navy. Situate in a pleasant and wholesome soil, the whole Country lo forth with trees, as if it were one continued Orchard. So populous, that it containeth 40000 Households, most of which get their livelihood by weaving Cottons, it being supposed that there are 200000 persons which attend that Manufacture. 16 *Chinchiam-fu*, whence by a River made by hand, there is a passage to *Suecheu*, the water of which never freezeth, and for that cause do clogged with Ships in time of Winter, that the passage is stopp'd with the multitudes of them. 17 *Zuan-cher*, a most rich and beautiful City, environed with large waters, and the only Southern Port within the Land to which Ships or Boats may have access. 18 *Caiton*, or *Caitung*, seated upon the River *Giang*, a City once of three Leagues in compass, whose Harbour was seldom without 500 Ships, and sometimes honoured with the Seat or Residence of the Kings themselves; most miserably destroyed *Anno* 1642, by *Zuanchin* the late King of this Country, who breaking down the dams and sluices to let in the River, for the dislodging of some Thieves and Out-laws, who had then belieged it, gave it to great and forcible a passage towards the Town, that it bare down the greatest part of the houses of it, and therein drowned above 300000 of the natural Citizens; before which time the *Metropolis* or chief City of the Province of *Honan*. 19 *Kuingchen*, on the South-side of the River *Croeu*, the richest and the fairest City in these parts of the Country, commodiously seated to command that River. 20 *Chanking*, the head City of the Province of *Quam-tung*, for the strength and convenience of its situation thought fittest for the seat of *Jungly*, the last deposed Emperor of the *Chinses* against the *Tartars*. 21 *Sueilin*, the chief City of the Province of *Quangsi*. 22 *Taining*, the *Metropolis* or chief City of *Xanfi* or *Canfy*, another of the four Northern Provinces, but not else observable for any thing I find of it, either in point of Trade or Story. 23 *Manchang*, a chief City of the Province of *Kiangsi*, of which little memorable; and less of 24 *Cegiron*, but that it is like unto the rest in form and Structure.

Besides the Provinces before mentioned, there are three others not directly under the dominion of the Kings of *China*, though depending on it, that is to say, 1 The Province of *Suecheu*, 2 The Island of *Corea*, 3 The Island of *Cheusan*.

1. The Province of *Suecheu*, lyeth on the Southwest of this Kingdom, of the same nature both for soil and air with the rest of *China*, but possessed by a more warlike people; the women here being trained up to feats of Arms, and so well practiced on their weapons, that when the Queen herself went to the aid of the Emperor *Vanley* against the *Tartars*, *Anno* 1618, she took with her a small

Army of 9000 women, performing actions not unworthy the bravest men: the chief City hereof is called *Cingra*, of great capacity, and to exceeding populous withal, that *Changhiensungu* (that most barbarous Tyrant) caused no fewer than 60000 of them (men, women, and children, all indifferently) to be slaughtered in one day before his face. The whole Country governed for a long time by its own Kings, of the name *Taimingian* Race with the Kings of *China*, from whom dwelling received their investiture, they were afterwards of absolute authority over their own Subjects, who acknowledged no other King but him. And in this state it did continue till the year 1644, when *Changhiensungu*, whom before I named, entering into this Country with his rabble of Rogues, made a Conquest of it, murdered the young King, Son to the *Amazonian* Queen, which before we spoke of: depopled the great City of *Cingra*, butchered at one time twenty thousand Priests, at another time eighteen thousand Students; and finally committed such unpeakeable outrages, that the *Tartars*, in mercy to that wretched people, sent an Army against him, by which he was vanquished, and slain; this Province thereupon submitting to the *Tartars* as their great deliverers.

2. *Corea*, is an Island of the *Eastern Ocean*, not far from the North-east of *China*, over against the fall of the River *Yalu*. The quality of the soil, the dimensions of it, and what Cities it containeth in it, I have no where found. The people far more warlike than those of *China*, with reason of the ill neighbourhood of the *Japanese*, with whom they have always either open Wars, or uncertain Peace. Invaded by them, they made an offer of their Country to the King of *China*, who having repulld the Invaders, restored their Country freely to them, without Lying any other Imposition on them, than of love and gratitude, which obligations those of *Corea* have discharged most fully. For when *Vanley*, the late Emperor of *China*, was first invaded by the *Tartars*, they sent up his aid twelve thousand men well Armed, and exerted in the Wars increasing their supplies in the time of *Theinques*, who next but one succeeded *Vanley*. Drawing the whole storm upon themselves by those friendly aids, they were accordingly assisted by the King of *China*, whose Forces came to seasonably in the heat of a Battle between the *Coreans* and the *Tartars*, that the *Tartars* after a long and terrible fight, were driven out of the Island, but with such incredible loss on all sides, that few or none escaped of the Army of *China*, seventy thousand of the *Coreans* slain, and the *Tartars* leaving fifty thousand of their men behind them; after this they were unhand of their fleet and final Conquest of the Kingdom of *China*, when seeing the *Tartars* Lords of all, and no possibility of resistance, they submitted to them, about the year 1648, upon condition of retaining their Hair and Habit, which no extremity of personal danger, or fear of publick defolation, could compel them to alter.

3. *Cheusan*, is an Island of the same Seas, on the South of *Corea*, opposite to the City of *Nympus*, in the main Land of *China*; an Island which being heretofore a dwelling place of poor Clowns and Fishermen only, is now become a potent Kingdom. For *Lu Regulu*, chosen by a party of his own to succeed to the withstanding the great *China*, and finding no hopes of withstanding the great power of the *Tartars*, retired himself into this Island with his friends and followers, followed not long after by great multitudes of the natural *Chinses*, who chose rather to forsake their Country, than to conform in Hair and Habit to the will of the *Tartars*; inasmuch that there are now

now found in this Island threecore and ten Cities, with a strong and formidable Army, which hitherto hath commended all the *Tartarian* Power and Forces, and watch for some happy occasion to advance again their Kingdom in *China*.

The ancient Inhabitants of the *Sine*, in the time of *Ptolomy*, were towards the North, the *Semantian* bordering a Mountain of that name, and the only one remembered in all this Country: more Southward, the *Acadre*, and *Alphire*: Towards the Sea *Anabazte*, and *Ich-shophagi* (these last so called from living wholly upon Fish.) United into one body by the name of *Sine*, and known by that name to the *Romans*, in the time of *Ptolomy*, who boundeth them on the North with *Serica*, on the West with *India extra Gangem*, and on the East and South with a *Terra Incognita*: which though it make up the least part of the Modern *China*, *Serica* touching only on a Corner of the Northwest of it, and the main Ocean washing it on the East and South: yet the *Arabians* in their *Tauin*, and our late *Latine* Writers in their *Sina* and *Sinensium Regnum*, do from hence give the denomination to this mighty Kingdom. How far they stretched beyond the bounds laid down by *Ptolomy*, and whether they subdued the Eastern and more Northern Nations, or were Conquered by them, it were hard to say; nor is it easy to resolve, from what original these and the rest of the Inhabitants do derive themselves, whether from the *Judians*, or the *Scythians*: or that it was primitively planted by some of the Posterity of *Noah*, before the enterprise of *Babel*: which last may probably be concluded from the extreme populousness of the Country, the many magnificent Cities their Industry and Ingenuity in all Arts and Sciences, not to be taught them by their neighbours, more ignorant in those things than themselves. And hereunto the *Chronicles* of *China* seem to give some ground, which tell us of three hundred and forty Kings, which for the space of four thousand years have therein reigned. For as their *Chronicles* inform us, (if they may be credited) the Country being without Rule or settled Government, was first reduced into order by one *Vity*, the Son of *Ezalem*: by whom the people were instructed in *Physick*, *Astronomy*, *Divination*, and the Art of Tillage: to which, this *Vity*, having found out the way of cutting or sawing Timber, added the use of Ships and *Houers*, and many other the effects of *Mechanical* hands. Having by the valour of *Lincheon* one of the Commanders, subdued a great part of the Country, he drew them into Towns and Villages, distributed them into Offices, and several Trades, disposing those of the same Trade into Streets by themselves; and commanding that no man without leave from himself, or his Officers, should follow any other Trade than that of his Father. He prescribed them also the fashion of their Garments, taught them the Art of making and dying Silks: and having reigned an hundred years, left the Kingdom well established upon his Posterity. Of this Race there are said to have been 217 Kings, who held the State 2557 years.

The last of them was that *Tzaintzour*, who being ill-nourished by the *Scythians* (not yet called *Tartars*) is said to have built that vast Wall spoken of before: extended 400 Leagues in length, and at the end of every League a strong Rampart or Bulwark, continually garrisoned, and well furnished with all warlike necessities. He being slain by some of his Subjects, burdened and waded with his work, the Race of *Vity* ended; and that of *Anchofan* succeeded, a Prince of much Prudence, but greater courage. In his Line it continued under 25 Kings, but thrice shaken towards the close by a Civil War, between *Trunshy*, the 23 of his House, and his Nephew

*Laupy*. Hardly well settled under *Quimrey*, the last of this House, when *Tzauu*, a great Tyrant of the other Faction, set upon him, and slew him. And so the Majesty of the Blood-Royal being trod under foot, the Crown was also tossed from one hand to another, and made a Prey unto the strongest: there being of the Race of this *Tzauu*, eight Kings, reigning 62 years: Of the Race of *Dian*, five Kings, who reigned thirty one; of the Race of *Tzoy*, three only, who reigned thirty seven; Of the Race of *Tenao*, one and twenty, who held the Crown 294 years, and eight there were who reigned 120 years, of the House of *Tanzum*. Of other upright Families to the number of five, were fourteenth Kings also, who governed only for the space of 66 years: And then one *Laitzun*, try, obtained the *Vitay*, the first King of the Country, which he and seventeen of his Posterity, for the space of 320 years, governed with much peace and honour. *Forsar*, the last King of that Royal Family, foretold by Prophecy that he should be deprived of his Kingdom by one who had an hundred eyes, neglected the *Advertisement*, as unworthy credit: but it fell out agreeable to that Prediction, when vanquished by *Chisfan-baan* (which word signifieth an hundred eyes) Lieutenant unto *Ujan*, a *Tartarian* Prince, but made a Province of the *Tartarians*, was governed for the space of 93 years, under nine *Tartar* Kings, Tributaries to the Great *Chan*, and dependants on him: the *Chams* themselves many times passing into *China*, and abiding there according as their pleasures or affairs did invite them to it, which occasioned such a continual intercourse between those of *China* and *Caitay*, that they have much participated ever since that time of the manners and customs of each other. But here it is to be observed, that the *Tartars* spent almost as much time in the Conquest of *China*, as they did in the possession of it; the War being first begun, *Anno* 1206, finished 1268, the *Tartars* being totally ousted when they had reigned here 90 years only, that is to say, *Anno* 1358, or thereabouts, considering with himself the discontentedness of the *Chinses* under so long Bondage, the luxury of the *Tartars*, effeminated with the pleasures of that Country, and the unwarlike temper of *Gim Cham*, then reigning over all in the City of *Cambalu*, raised to himself so strong a Party, that in short time he drove the *Tartars* out of all; forcing them to betake themselves to those parts of the Eastern *Tartars*, which now make up the Kingdom of *Sinche*.

1. Finally turning towards the West, he not only recovered back to *China* such parts thereof (as had been layed unto *Caitay*, and incorporated with it by the *Tartars*; but growing thereby a formidable neighbour to the *Cham* himself; Advanced for this great Service to the Crown of *China*, *Anno* 1269, he took unto himself the name of *Hungu* (our late Writers commonly call him *Humbin*) which signifieth as much as the famous Warrior, and gave unto his Children, and their Posterity, the name of the *Taimingian* Family, which they still continue. For the recovery of this Country, great *Tamerlane* mustered up his Forces, and though *Humbin* brought into the field 350000 Horse and Foot, yet nothing could resist the powerful genius of that mighty Conqueror, who obtained here a signal Victory with the death of 60000 *Chinses*: but wisely moderating his prosperity, and mainly bent upon his war against the *Turks*, he thought it his best and safest way to let the people of *China* have a King of their own, imposing on him a Fine of 300000 Crowns in ready money, a certain annual Tribute (long time after paid) with certain other conditions,



which as they were pleasing to the Victor, so they were not destructive to be vanquished. By means hereof it came to pass, that such a long communication in Affairs of State, having passed between *China* and *Cathay* (those of *China* in old times Lorded it over part of the *Chinghisians*, as the *Cathayans* in late times did over the *Chinghisians*), there grew a great resemblance between both Nations, in Manners, Conditions, Arts and Manufactures, as before is said, which circumstances lay together, may afford some reason why in some Writers, easily misquided by such probabilities, *Cathay* and *China* have been reckoned to be one and the same. Nor did the Empire of the *Chinghisians* extend in old times, only over part of *Seythia*, but also over part of *India*, and some of the *Oriental* Islands. But the Princes of the House of *Hambu*, finding their own Kingdom large enough to content their desires, abandoned all the *Acquisories* and Out-parts of their Dominions: prompted thereunto, not only by their own Moderation, but by some misfortunes which befell them. For as we find that the *Romans* having by the fury of two violent tempests, lost no fewer than 206 of their Ships and Gallies, resolved to abandon (and for a long time did forbear) the *Sea*, which had used them so unkindly: So the *Chinghisians* having received a great overthrow, and loss of 800 Ships, near unto *Zeilan*, they freed all the Islands from obedience unto them, and contented themselves with the bounds which nature had bestowed on them. And of their moderation herein we have a very rare example. For when the people of *Corea*, a small Island adjacent, on the Confines of *China*, were invaded by the *Japoneses*, they submitted themselves unto the King of *China*: who having repulsed the enemy, and thereby freed his own Country from danger, presently re-delivers over unto the *Coreans*, their Towns and liberty. A rare fact of a contented people. Whether it favours of greater moderation or magnanimity, I am not able to determine. In this Family had the Realm continued under 15 Kings, for the space of 266 years and upward, reckoning from *Hambu* unto *Boneg*: who being the twelfth in this Line, succeeded his elder brother, unfortunately slain with a fall from an Horse. Reported for a Prince of good disposition, great judgement, and a severe Justiciary, this *Boneg* (otherwise called *Fanly*) began his Reign, Anno 1573, governing this Kingdom in great prosperity and glory for the space of 40 years and upwards; when causing the Christian Subjects and the *Jesuits* their Converters to be harshly dealt with, and denying Justice to the *Eastern Tartars* for the many wrongs done them by his Prefects in the Province of *Leontong*, he drew that people into Arms, as if marked out for Executioners of Divine displeasure. Stript by them in the year 1618, of a part of *Leontong*, and braved by their Forces within sight of *Pekin*, he contracted some melancholick distempers, of which he died about two years after, leaving the Crown to his Son *Taichang*, who having held it but four months, left it, and all the troubles of it to his Son *Thinkie*, a valiant Prince and fortunate against the *Tartars*, but of short continuance. For dying in the year 1627, he was succeeded in that Kingdom by his brother *Zunchinus*, a Prince of contrary disposition, cruelly bent, a great Oppressor of his Subjects, and for these causes ill beloved; yet they continued in obedience (though for fear rather of the *Tartars*, than for love of him) until the year 1640, or thereabouts. At what time the people in many places oppressed with Taxes, and in the Northern parts with Famine, arise in 8 Companies of Armies, which growing wanton by success, and warring upon one another, they are at last reduced under two chief Leaders, that is to say, *Lycungz* and *Changchibengum*.

These two being come to an agreement took their several ways, the last of them falling into *Suchuen*, whose villanies and deferred destruction we have there related. *Lycungz* the more fortunate villain, in the year 1641, besieged *Chifang* the chief City of the Province of *Hanan*, a place of great strength, but far greater riches, on the ruin whereof by the Kings improvidence, and his subduing the whole Province of *Xenfi*, he took to himself the title of King, and would be called *Lycungz* the *Prosperous*; and not long after causing the people of the Taxes which the avaricious King had imposed upon them, putting the Tax-masters to death, and gaining upon all sorts of men by his courteous usage, he took unto himself the name of Emperor. *Zunchinus* succeeds his Brother, hindered by Factions in the Court, from sending formidable Forces against the Rebels, who passing over the great River *Crocu* without any resistance prevailed in all places where they came, even to the taking of the great City of *Peking*, and the Palace Royal; at the hearing whereof, the Emperor seeing no way to escape their hands, hanged himself in his own Orchard, Anno 1644. his example therein followed by the Emperors and his principal Servants. The body of the Emperor cut in pieces, his two younger Sons beheaded, the principal Magistrates murdered, and that great City sacked by command of the Victor. Forced to remove back again to *Xenfi* by *Unguin* Commander of the Army in *Leontong*, who called in the *Tartars* to revenge those Outrages, the Rebels taking with them all the wealth and treasure which the Emperors of the *Tamining* Family had amassed together in the space of 260 years and upwards, *Zungun* the King of the *Tartars* having thus got the City of *Peking*, died presently after, leaving his Son at nine years old to succeed him in that glorious fortune. By him commended to the care and protection of Uncles, who very faithfully discharged the trust reposed in them; infinite numbers of *Tartars* thronging into *China* upon this occasion, and those not only of the Eastern but the Western Nations.

By these the Infant-King was proclaimed Emperor of *China*, by the name of *Xunehin*, styling the new Imperial Family by the name of *Tarting*, the eldest of the Uncles whom the *Tartars* called *Amavangum*, having the chief conduct of Affairs.

*Unguin* by the *Tartars* not long after is declared King of *Xenfi*, out of which he shortly drove the Rebels, and possessed himself of it; *Lycungz* being either killed in the fight, or else otherwise lost. *Hongquang* Nephew to *Vanley*, and Cousin German to *Zunchinus*, elected Emperor by the *Chinghisians* of the Southern parts, is opposed herein by one that pretended himself to be the eldest Son of *Zunchinus*; which division gave the *Tartars* a notable victory over all their Forces, and the great City of *Nanquin* in reward thereof.

The new Emperor being shortly after betrayed into the hands of the *Tartars* is by them hanged on the Walls of *Peking*; which death the *Tartars* count most noble. The pretended Son of *Zunchinus* discovered, and served in the same fort also. And though *Leontong* first, and afterwards *Jungly*, and *Lu. Regul*, were chosen and declared Emperors by their several parties, Anno 1648, yet nothing could prevail against the fortune of the *Tartars*, *Leontong* being forced to put himself into their power, *Jungly* to fly into the Mountains, and *Lu. Regul* to secure himself in the Isle of *Chenxan*.

What hath succeeded since that year, future times will show.

The Government of this Kingdom is merely tyrannical; there being no Lord but the King, no title of dignity or nobility ever known amongst them; nor Toll or

Duty

Duty paid unto any but to him: the younger Princes of the blood being maintained by *Stipends*, and *annual Pensions*, large enough to support their Trains, but without any Lands or *Tenants*, for fear of drawing on them any great dependence. The King alone is the general Landlord, and him the Subjects do not only reverence as a Prince, but adore like a God. For in the chief City of every Province, they have the Kings portraiture made of Gold, which is always covered with a Veil: and at every New-moon, the Magistrate and other inferior Officers use to kneel before it, as if it were the King himself. By these and other Artifices of like contrivement the Common people are kept in such awe and fear, that they are rather Slaves than Subjects: calling their King the *Lamp of the World*, and Son of the everlasting Sun, without whose light they were able to see nothing.

In every Province, except *Pequin* and *Tolenche* only, he hath his Deputies or *Vice-Royes*, maintained by liberal stipends from the public Treasury: but those he governeth by himself. Some Laws they have, and those affirmed to have been written 2000 years since, as is like enough they were. So strongly do they favour of the ignorance and *Atrocity* of the darkest times: the manner of life by them allowed, most offensive and shameful; their *Idolatry* most gross and palpable; their *Exorcisms* ridiculous, and the prostitutions of their *Virgins* most abominable; and the variety of sensual prophaneations, to an illuminated mind most base and contemptible. In a word, nothing commendable in their course of life (notwithstanding the brags which they make of themselves) but their Arts and Industry.

The Forces which this King is able to draw into the Field must needs be infinite, considering that incredible number of Subjects under his command. For whereas *France* is thought to contain 15 millions of people; *Italy* with the Isles, as many; *Germany*, with the *Swissers* and *Belgick* Provinces, about that proportion; *Spain* not above seven millions; and the Kingdom of *England* about four: this Country only is computed at 70 millions; which is more by 15 millions than all together. Proportionably his Levies must be so much greater, than can be ordinarily raised out of those Countries. But because it may be thought that his Subjects, though more in number, may be less trained to the wars than those of *Europe*: the contrary is affirmed by such as have taken an estimate of the Forces, which every Province is bound to entertain in continual readiness. And by that estimate it appeareth, that in the year 1557 (though a time of peace) there were dispersed in the fifteen Provinces of this Realm, to the number of five millions, 846500 Foot, and 948350 Horse. Which notwithstanding it may be said, and not unjustly, that he is able to bring into the field, amongst such multitudes of men, but few good Soldiers, the people being generally unwarlike, and of no great courage, as was before observed of them in that general Character. Nor is he less powerful for Sea-service, having continually great Fleets for the guard of his Coasts, in continual attendance, and many more ready to set out when there is occasion: inasmuch that the *Chinese* use to say in the way of a Proverb, That their King is able to make a Bridge of Ships from *China* to *Babylonia*, which are 50 Leagues asunder. Some of these Ships (whereof the King hath above a thousand of his own, besides those of his Subjects) of great magnificence and beauty: the Officers and Soldiers in all which are exceeding well paid, and rewarded answerably to their merits. And as this King is able to raise greater forces than any from his own estates; so doth he also de facto do it, when the urgency of his affairs doth require it of him: his ordinary fleet being 300000 Foot, and 200000

Horse, without which compleat number (not only in the muster-roll, but in bodies of men) he vouchsafes not to go into the field.

Answerable unto these great Levies of men, must be his Revenue: which they who have travelled in this search if they tell us true, and do not build upon an hope of not being confuted, (as for my part I fear they do) affirm to be 123 millions of Crowns, answered unto him out of the profits of the Mines of Gold, Silver, and other Metals: the tenth of all commodities which the Earth brings forth; the toll imposed on that unpeackable quantity of Merchandise, which passeth on so many navigable Rivers from one Town to another; the Customs taken of all those rich wares which are brought into *Europe*, and the Gabel laid on Salt in all parts of his Kingdom. Out of which sum, the payment of his Fleet discharged, the entertainment of his Soldiers satisfied, and his Court defrayed, there remaineth 40 millions of Crowns de claro to be disposed of, either in his treasury, or private pleasures, or the works of magnificence and ostentation.

And thus far also according to the general current of received opinions have I followed the descriptions and affairs of *China*, as a distinct Country from *Cathay*; not ignorant that there are many probable reasons which might incline us to believe them to be one and the same; for first it is alleged in favour of this opinion that it is neither new nor strange, for one and the same Country, to be called by divers names, according to the languages and fancies of several Nations; that Country which we call *Germany*, being by the Natives called *Dutch-land*, not long since known most commonly by the name of *Almaine*; that part of *Britain* which we call *Wales*, being by the French called *Galler*, and *Cambria* by the *Latine* Writers: those mountainous people which the *Romans* knew by the name of *Rhetis*, being by some of our Northern *Latins* called *Confederati Cant*, *Campi Camini* by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, *Grannipuntum* by the neighbouring *Dutch*, and finally *Grisius* by the French, which four last names do carry all the same sense and signification, though in different words; that *China* it self, is by the Natives called *Tabinu*, *Taisin* by the *Arabians*, *Mangi* by *Paulus Venetus*, and by the neighbouring Nations *Sanglay*; that as it cannot be inferred from the like diversity of appellations that *Almaine*, *Germany*, and *Dutch-land*, make three several Countries, (& sic de ceteris) so neither can it be concluded on the same grounds that *China* and *Cathay* make two several Empires. In the next place it is alleged that since by later voyages and navigations, this mighty Kingdom hath been discovered, and made known unto us of *Europe* by the name of *China*, the name and Empire of *Cathay* hath grown out of knowledge. For proof whereof they bring in the *Itinerary* of *Benedictus a Goez*, a *Jesuite*, who in the year 1603, crossing from the North-east parts of *Persia* to the Realm of *China*, and naming all the several Countries and Towns of any note which lay in his way, makes no mention of any such Country as *Cathay*; nor any such Prince as the Great *Chan* thereof: telling us also that *Martin Marinus*, who had lived long in *China*, in his Books entitled *Belium Tartaricum*, comprehendeth all the Countries betwixt *China* and *Mount Inu*, under the general Name and Notion of the Western *Tartars*, not taking notice of any such Country as *Cathay*; nor of any greater Prince amongst them, than the King of *Tangut*; and that *Ramusius* in his notes on *Paulus Venetus*, reporteth some conference which he had with *Chagimemet* a *Persian* Merchant, who told him that he had seen *Campion* and *Succur* Cities of *Cathay*, in the reign of *Demercan*, which must be understood of *Cathay*.

in the general Notion, as it comprehendeth all the *Tartarian* Countries beyond *Imam*, it being well known that *Campion* and *Succurri* are two Cities of *Tangut*, and not of the proper *Cathay*, or *Cathay* specially called. In the third rank of proofs they inforce in the similitudes, or resemblances betwixt both Countries, and both people, which are so great and visible in the temperature of Air, fertility of Soil, and pleasantness of Situation, in Customs, in Ingenuity, Arts and Manufactures, as may be thought to carry an Identity, or sameness with them; which sameness or Identity they do also find in *Pequin* the chief City of *China*, and *Cambalu*, the supposed chief City of *Cathay*, being two words of the same sense and signification, though of divers sounds; for *Pequin* signifieth the Court or City of the King in the *Chinian* Language, and *Cambalu* signifieth the Court or City of the *Cham*, in the Language of *Tartary*. The like they also have observed of the Royal Palaces, adjoining to the said two Cities, so like in the vast greatness and extent of the outer Walls, the Parks and Forelands intermingled, the magnificent form and structure of the inner Palaces, with all the rest of the particulars before-recited, that a man might very well conclude them to be one and the same, adding withal that such an immense, and unparalleled work, as the great *Chan's* Palace called *Xaindu*, must needs require more hands and a longer time, than the great *Cham* (considering their continual wars, and little intervals of leisure) could bestow upon it. But their four head-proofs, which seem indeed to be the strongest, they derive first from the Testimony of *Benedictus Gees* above-mentioned, who without taking notice of any such Country as *Cathay*, in so long a journey, telleth us that at *Ciala* a City of the Kingdom of *Cassir*, and not far from *China*, he was first informed that *Cathay* and *China* were the same. 2<sup>d</sup>. From the Testimony of an old *Mahometan* Pilgrim, who returning from *Meccha* by *Labar* (the Royal Seat and City of the great *Mongul*) affirmed there that he had lived long in *Cambalu*, they chief City of *Cathay*, which Kingdom had in it one thousand and fifty Cities, the King thereof being a very mighty Prince, and having a strength of 400 Elephants brought thither from *Malacca* and *Pegu*, and that much Merchandize was brought in the Country by Sea: which if it be not meant of *China* (to which the story may agree in all particulars) must needs be one of the loudliest lies that ever came from the mouth of a *Mahometan*, or a *Pilgrim* either; our Geographers finding very few Cities or Towns of note in *Cathay* specially called, no access thither by Sea for any Merchandize, nor any way to bring those Elephants from *Pegu* and *Malacca*, which the Pilgrim dreamt of. 3<sup>d</sup>. A clearer Testimony of some other *Mahometans* respecting to *Pequin* every fifth year, either as Merchants or Embassadors, or as both together; by whom the Jesuits there living were informed, that in the Dominions of the *Persian*, and the great *Mongul*, from whence they came, the Kingdom of *China* was called by no other name, than by that of *Cathay*, they knowing no other Country of that name, but *China* only. And 4<sup>th</sup>. From the asseverance of *Pantegia*, another *Jesuit*; who in his Letters dated from *Pequin* much blamed our ordinary Maps for placing *Cathay* next to *China*, whereas (saith he) *China* or *Sinai* is *Cathay*, as this *Pequin* where we now are is the City of *Cambalu*; which two last evidences coming from the Pen of one who had lived many years in *China*, and not conducting any way to the advancement of the *Catholic* cause, must needs be thought to carry some great credit and authority with them.

These reasons if they be of force and moment to the point in hand, we must then add *Penelope's* part, unravelling all the Web which before was woven, *Antique* terms

in *Latin* omne redibis opus, in the Poets Language, which that we may the better do, and with as little detracments to the whole piece as possibly we can, I shall thus proceed. First then it is to be conceived that *Cathay* specially called, was an aggregate body, containing many several Kingdoms, and distinct Estates, though Homages to the Kings of *Cathay*, or dependents on them: as anciently in the Realm of *France* besides the Kings of *France* themselves, there was a King of *Burgundy*, a King of *Metz*, a King of *Suiffons*, a King of *Olestan*; and after that a Duke of *Normandy*, a Duke of *Bretagne*, a Duke of *Aquitain*, and Earl of *Campaigne*, and Earl of *Toulouze*, all absolute and uncontrollable in their own Estates. And then the Kingdom of *Tangut*, which we placed in the Southern parts of *Altay*, must be made one of the Kingdoms of *Cathay*; and *Demercan*, whom we ranked in the Catalogue of the *Chams* of *Tartary*, must be brought a peg lower, and looked on as a King of *Tangut* only, and no more than so. 2<sup>d</sup>. It must be taken for granted, that the *Tartars* having conquered the Realm of *Cathay*, and afterwards, by the help of that people, subdued *China* also, caused all the Northern parts of *China* to be called *Cathay*, as being in the same Latitude and Parallels with it, and much of the same nature and complexion, both for Soil and Air, giving unto the Southern parts (which was the true and proper Country of the *Sine*) the name of *Mangi*, transferred afterwards by some Authors to the Country generally; and having thus extended the Name and Territory of *Cathay*, the first foundation of their greatness, they fixed their Royal Seat in the City of *Pequin*, which by a new *Tartarian* name (but of the same sense and signification) was from thence called *Cambalu*. Thus in the first place the French Kings of the *Caroline* Family, communicated the name of *France* (East *France* it was most commonly called) to the greatest part of *Germany*, then conquered by them; the *Catholians* of *Spain* extended the name of *Castile* on every side, as they got ground upon the *Moor*, till it became the largest Province of any one name in all that Continent; and *Roger* Earl of *Sicily*, having conquered the Eastern parts of *Italy* (which now make up the Kingdom of *Naples*) commanded it to be called the further *Sicily*, and himself to be crowned King of both, by the name of King of both the *Sicilies*. And in the second place, the French Dukes of *Zweibrucken* in high *Germany* are by the French called Dukes *Deux-ponts*, by the late *Latin* Writers *Duces Bipontani*, all in the same sense and signification; the Town of *Sherizogen Bofch* is by the French called *Bois le Duc*, by the *Latin* Writers, *Status Ducis*; and here at home the Military Towns or Stations of *Liddesdunum*, *Colonia*, *Præfidium*, *ad Lapidem*, and *Portus Magnus* were turned by the conquering *Saxons* (the former significations being still retained) into *Bedford*, *Colchester*, *Warwick*, *Stoneham*, and *Portsmouth*, commonly now called *Portsmouth*, *Calverham* *Alutun* into *Edenburgh* by the *Pills* or unconquered *Britanni*. 3<sup>d</sup>. We may take it for a truth unquestioned, that *Hunbar* having expelled the *Tartars* out of *Mangi*, or the Southern parts, and fixed the Royal Seat at *Namquin*, on the South side of the River *Kiang* (though paying both fine and tribute to victorious *Tamerlane*) did afterwards on *Tamerlane's* engagements beyond the Mountains, and the cantoning off of that great Empire amongst his Children, expell them out of the North parts also; his Successors thereupon removing the Court to *Pequin* (from henceforth *China* name) the better again by its true, proper, and *Chinian* name) the better to attend the motion of that dangerous Enemy. *Tersusalem*, commanded to be called *Elir* by the Emperor *Adrian*, and *London* named *Augusta Treburanum* by some other of the *Roman* Emperours; transferred to their old names

names again, as-foen as that authority failed, it imposed the new. And 4<sup>th</sup>. as from this time forwards the Northern parts of *China* might still retain the name of *Cathay*, and being most traded by the *Persian* and *Indian* Merchants, might be best known by that name in their several Countries: so by dividing this great Empire into so many parts, removing the Imperial Seat to *Sameracand*, on the other side of the Mountains, erecting many new Estates out of the ancient Prefectures, and Governments of *Cathay* it self, and parceling the remainder of it between the Kings of *Tangut*, *Cassir*, and such other Princes of the *Tartars*, as were not wanting to themselves in those opportunities, the true *Cathay* might lose

that name by little and little, which formerly it had communicated to those parts of *China*. Thus the *Burgundian*, *Lombards*, *Vandals*, *Hungars*, lost those names at home, in their ancient and native habitations, which still remain unto those Countries that were conquered by them. These reasons and considerations I willingly submit to the Readers Judgment, being my self to great a *Sceptick* in this point that I dare determine nothing positively on either side. It is enough that I have layed the cause open without partiality, or byassing on either hand, before the Jurors; let them give up their verdict in it as they like the evidence.

## OF INDIA.



NDIA is bounded on the East with the Oriental Ocean, and some part of *China*, or as some others say, with a great Country called *Mange* (not much known unto us of *Europe*) intersected betwixt it and *China*, on the West, with the *Persian* Empire; on the North, with some branches of *Mount Taurus*, which divide it from *Tartary*; and on the South, with the *Indian* Ocean. So called from the River *Indus*, the nearest of esteem and note in all the Country, towards these parts of the world.

It is conceived to be the largest Country, of any one name in the world, except *China* and *Tartaria*; affirmed by *Pomponius Mela*, to be of such a great extent on the Seacoasts of it, that it was as much as a Ship could sail in 40 days. Extended from 106, to 159 degrees of Longitude, and from the *Equator* to the 44<sup>th</sup> degree of Northern Latitude. By which account it lieth from the beginning of the first, to the end of the sixth *Clima*: the longest Summers-day in the Southern parts being 12 hours only, and in the parts most North, 15 hours and a half.

Concerning the monstrous Fables which the Ages foregoing have delivered to us of this Country, give me leave to say, that as the Poets used of old to fill up the times of their that were ignorant, with strange Fictions, and prodigious *Metamorphoses*, or as our modern Geographers, in the Maps of the World, fill up those unknown parts thereof, with which they can give us no certain description, with strange Pictures and uncouth shapes of Beasts and Trees; so also the Writers in former Ages have filled the story of remote Countries, of which they knew little, with fables impossible and incredible relations. Hence there have been attributed to this *India*, the Fables of men with dogs heads, of men with one leg only, yet of great strength; of such as live by scent; of men that had but one eye, and that in their forehead; and of others, whose ears did reach unto the ground. It is reported also that this people by eating a Dragons heart and liver, attain to the understanding of the languages of beasts; that they can make themselves, when they list, invisible; that they have two tubs, whereof the one opened yields wind, the other rain, and the like. But these relations, and the rest of this strain, I doubt not but the under-

standing Reader knoweth how to judge of, and what to believe. For my part I am of the same mind with *Curtius*, *Plura equidem transcribo quam credo; nec enim affirmare ausus sum que dubito, nec subducere sustineo que accipi*: I may perhaps relate some things which I do not credit, but shall not let them pass without some cautions; that so I may neither impose any thing on the Reader's belief, nor defraud him of any thing conducive to his contentation.

The Country (to report no more of it than it doth deserve) enjoyeth an exact temperature of the air, two Summers, (or one as long as two) and a double increase, blest with all things which are either necessary to the life of man, or of convenience and delight; particularly with Mines of Gold and Silver; and with precious Stones; with Spices of all sorts, and Civets; with the best *medicinable* Drugs; Metals of all kinds, except *Copper* and *Lead*; abundance of all sorts of Cattel, except Horses. Somewhat defective also in Wheat and Vines, that so this Country might be beholding unto others, as well as others to this. Famed also for abundance of Camels, Apes, Dragons, Serpents, *Rhinoceros*, Elephants. These last more favouring of reason and humane ingenuity, or else more tractable and docile, than any brute creature whatsoever. Of this we have a fair influence in the Story of the Acts of *Alexander*. The Elephant which King *Porus* sat upon, finding his Master strong and lusty, rushed boldly into the thicket of the Enemies Army: but when he once perceived him to be faint and weary, he withdrew himself out of the Battel, kneeled down, and into his Trunk received all the Arrows which were directed at his Master. The greatness of the Creature makes it yet more admirable that either he should have soul enough of his own, to actuate so vast a body; or being of such strength and bigness, should submit himself to the instructions of another; some of these *Indian* Elephants, as *Aelianus* hath affirmed, being nine *Cubits* high, and as many long; and in breadth or thickness about five *Cubits*. Nor doth the Sea afford less plenty or variety, than we find on shore: yielding abundance of the richest and fairest Pearls, huge shoals of fish, and amongst them the Whale or great *Leviathan*; exceeding the proportion of that Land-monster the *Elephant*. For though the ordinary dimension of the Whale be but 46 *Cubits*,

*Cubits* in length, and eight in thickness: yet *Nearchus* in *Arianus* is said to have measured one, in these *Indian Seas*, which was of the length of 50 *Cubits*, and of breadth proportionable: not to say any thing of that incredible report of *Pliny*, who speaketh of some *Indian Whales*, which were nine hundred and threescore foot, or four Acres long.

The people are of five sorts, and as many Religions: that is to say the Natural *Indians*, derived from the Original Inhabitants of it. 2<sup>d</sup>. *Moors*, or *Arabians*, who more than two hundred years ago, possessed themselves of some *Towns*, driving the Natives up higher into the Country. 3<sup>d</sup>. *Jews*, scattered and dispersed (as in other places) into all parts of it. 4<sup>th</sup>. *Tatars*, in those Parts and Provinces which are under the Great *Mongal*. And 5<sup>th</sup>. *Portugues*, who have many Colonies and *Factories* in the Ports and Islands, but brag as if they had made a conquest of all the Country. Which notwithstanding, considering that the natural *Indians* are by far the greatest number, we must relate to them only in the *Charact*er which is made of this people. Affirmed to be tall of stature, strong of body, and of complexion inclining to that of the *Negrees*: of manners civil and ingenuous, free from fraud in their dealings, and exact keepers of their words. The common sort but meanly clad, for the most part naked, content with no more covering than to hide their shame. But those of greater Estates and Fortunes (as they have amongst them many *Ancient* and Noble Families) observe a Majesty in both Sexes, both in their Attendants and Apparel; sweetening the last with Oyls, and Perfumes, and adorning themselves with Jewels, Pearls, and other ornaments befitting. They eat no flesh, but live on Barly, Rice, Milk, Honey, and other things without life.

The Women not of much fairer complexion than the men, yet of lovely countenances, wear their hair long and loose, but covered with a thin Veil of *Calico Linn*. Their ears hung with many rings, so great and heavy, that they are torn, and stretched to much disproportion; their noses also ringed, and behung with Jewels according to their estate and quality. Servilely obsequious to their husbands, whose affections they divide amongst them without jar or jealousy: the men allowed here, as in all the East, the use of many wives, whom they buy of their Parents for a yoke of Oxen; and may marry as often as they list. In which they have too great a privilege above the women, who after the decease of their common husband, do either burn in the same flame with him, or else are forced to doom themselves to perpetual Widow-hood. But of this we may speak more hereafter, when we come to the particulars.

The Christian Faith was first planted in these Countries by St. Thomas, from whom the remainders of Christianity take denomination; and unto whom the Records and Monuments of that Church do ascribe their conversion. For in one of their *Breviaries* written in the Chaldean Tongue, and translated into *Latine* by Father *Johann Maria Campanin* a Jesuite, we find it thus, *Per D. Thomam evangeti error Idolatrie ab Indi, &c.* i. e. By St. Thomas the errors of Idolatry vanished out of the *Indies*; by St. Thomas, they received the Sacrament of Baptism, and the Adoption of Sons; by St. Thomas, they believed and confessed the Father, the Son, and Holy Ghost; by St. Thomas, they kept the Faith received of one God; And finally, by St. Thomas, the splendour of saving Doctrine did appear to all *India*. His body, as they say, is interred in the City of *Maliapar*, upon the Coast of *Choromandel*; the truth of which tradition I dispute not here. But this Plantation of the Gospel by the hand of St. Thomas was not universal over all the Country, but

in some Parts and Provinces only: or else was forced to give ground while prevailing *Heathenism*. For in the Reign of *Constantine*, we read how the *Indians* living on the further side of the River *Ganges* (for so I understand the *Indi interiores* of my Author) were converted to the Faith by the Ministry of one *Frumentius*, of the City of Tyre; who having spent the greatest part of his time amongst them, was employed in that service, and consecrated the first Bishop (for those Churches) by the great *Athanasius of Alexandria*. But being the foundation of this building was laid by St. Thomas, the remainder of Christians here being, ascribe the whole work to him; called therefore *Christians* of St. Thomas. Governed originally by their own Bishops, subordinate to an Archbishop of their own also, residing at *Gasegama* fifteen miles from *Cochin*, one of the chief Cities of this Country; who for a long time acknowledged obedience to the Patriarch of *Musal*, by the name of the Patriarch of *Babylon*, as by these *Christians* of *India* he is still termed. The number of the *Christians* computed at 15 or 16 thousand Families; or at 70000 persons in that large tract of ground, which beginning at the out-lets of *Indian* and *Ganges*, stretcheth unto the Cape or Promontory called *Cape Comari*. The Points wherein they differed from the Church of *Rome*, 4. Their admitting the Sacrament of the Eucharist in bread seasoned with salt; 2. Administering in both kinds, but using instead of Wine (which is scarce, or not at all, to be had in this Country) the juice of Raisins soaked in water over night, and so pressed forth; 3. Not baptizing Children until 40 days old, except it be in danger of death; 4. Permitting no Images in their Churches, but that of the Cross; 5. Allowing one marriage to their Priests, but forbidding the second; 6. In painting God with 3 heads on one body, to denote the Trinity; 7. Denying the Use of extreme *Unction*; And 8. not acknowledging the Pope's Supremacy; but besides these remainders of those ancient Christians, there are some others now of late of a new Plantation, by the pains and travel of the *Jesuites*, though not with such success here, as they found in *China*: many of the Inhabitants, partly by the diligence of the *Arabians*, and partly by the power of the great *Mongal*, having embraced *Mahometanism*; and being consequently less inclinable to admit the Gospel, than when they were in the condition of their natural *Genitism*. Yet have they made such good progress in it, that *Eshelar* the *Mongal*, not only founded a fair Church for the use of the *Christians* in the City of *Agra* (the Regal City of that Empire) but committed to the care of the *Jesuites* the Education of two Princes of the Regal Family. And possibly they might have made a great increase of Christianity before this time, had they not been opposed thereto by Sultan *Cerross*, a bitter Enemy to their proceeding, in the Reign of his Father, and no great Favourer of them since. Inasmuch that hearing a *Jesuite*, called *Francisco Carr*, report unto his Father how miraculously a wooden Cross of his had escaped the fire, he was very urgent with his Father to have a great fire presently made, and the same Cross to be thrown into it, upon these conditions, that if the Cross consumed not, his Father and himself should be burned in the same fire with it. A fiery trial which the poor *Jesuite* had much ado to put off, and preserve his credit. Howsoever they have gained one point of view the old *Christians* they have gained to the Church of *Rome*, great confidence and importance to the *Jesuites*. For in the year 1599, by the solicitation of the *Jesuites* and others, the *Indian Christians* renounced their obedience to the Patriarch of *Musal*, and submitted their

Churches

Churches to the Jurisdiction of the Pope of *Rome*, in a *National Synod* held at *Liamper*, not far from *Maliapar*, by the Arch-bishop of *Goa* (the Primate of the *Portugals* in those parts) not only rejecting all opinions contrary to the *Roman Tenets*, but delivering all their Books and *Liturgies* to be altered and refined by the said Arch-bishop, according to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*, which was done accordingly.

But these comparatively to the rest, come not to an handful; the main body of the people wallowing in their *Genitism*; and still retaining many of those ancient Customs, which they used of old: as *viz.* 1. Not knowing their Wives after they have born them two children: Nor keeping them, if after five years *cobabitatio* they can raise no issue by them, but then exchanging them for others; 3. Rewarding none for any military exploit, if they bring not with them in their hands the head of an enemy: 4. Killing their Friends, before they were withered or decayed by Age, or Sickness. To these they have since added others of a later invention, perhaps more barbarous; of which we may have opportunity to speak anon. Their Priests or Learned men in the time of old were called *Brachmanes* from one *Brachman*, the preceptor of their Rites and Laws, by whom introduced in the Endiments of their Philosophy; some of which, from their being naked, had the name of *Gymnosophists*; who were to them as the *Chaldei* to the *Assyrians*; the *Magi* to the *Persians*; and the *Druids*, to the ancient *Britanni*. Had in great Reverence by the People, and living for the most part an austere and solitary life, in Caves, and Dens, feeding on herbs, poorly apparelled, and for a time abstaining from all carnal pleasures; but that time past, they may indulge themselves more liberty, and admit the company of women. Others of them live together with the common people, as being their ordinary Priests. Of these, the great *Alexander*, when he was in this Country surprized ten; one of them called by the name of *Calanus*, with whom he had a great deal of communication: propounding to him many strange questions, and receiving back to many of them, (as himself confessed) some not unsatisfying, though strange answers. To these *Gymnosophists*, or *Brachmans*, the *Brachmanes* do now succeed, both in place and authority; but differ from them most extremely in point of learning, and the civilities of their lives: these *Brachmanes* being the most impure, libidinous, and sensual beasts in all the Country; privileged with the first nights lodging of every Bride, which when fared with their filthy lust, they sell, or traffick with, to strangers, serving as *Strabons* to old men, and as *Panders* to young; so steeled in wickedness, and ignorant of all good Letters, that they have nothing of a man but the voice and shape. *Mahometanism* is also entertained in a great part of the Country, first brought in by the *Tartars*, and neighbouring *Persians*, unto whom conforming; but much increased by the victories of the Great *Mongol*: who being, originally a *Tatar*, and of that Religion, hath caused it to be propagated in most parts of his large Dominions.

Mountains of most note in it, besides *Cancesus*, and some other of the branches of *Taurus*, or *Ararat*, common to this, and the *Tartarian* and *Persian* Empires, 1. *Sardonicus*, full of Mines of those precious Stones which are called after the name of the Mountain. 2. *Vindicus*, 3. *Bitigis*, 4. *Adafrahas*. 5. Those called *Apoepi*, and 9. Those named *Oreidi*. And on the further side of *Ganges*, 7. *Repyrbus*, 8. *Mendarus*, 9. Those called *Danufi*, and 10. *Seambius*; parts of this last extending also unto *China*. All of them very fruitful in the production of Mines, and Rivers, as will appear by looking over the particulars when we come unto them.

But the Mountain of chief note of all, is that which *Pholom* called *Bitrige*, and is now named *Gase*; the Southern part of the great Mountain *Iman* spoken of before: extended from Mount *Caucasus*, where it crosseth the *Taurus* in right Angles, to *Cape Comari*, a known Promontory of *Indochina*, or the higher *India* (which it divideth into East and West) for the space of 400 Leagues and upwards. Conceived by *Ptolemy*, a Learned Writer, to be that Mount *Sephar*, mention whereof is made in the tenth of *Genesis*, where it is said to be the utmost Eastern limit of the Sons of *Jokan*, *Gen.* 10. 30. With probability enough, for ought I can see; the Sons of *Jokan* being settled in these parts of *India*; and the Provinces of the *Persian* Empire which lie nearest to them. And of far *Stephanus* doth concur with *Ptolemy*, as to affirm of this Mount *Sephar*, that it is *Mons Indus*, and *Indus* Mountain: both of them grounding on St. Hierom, who expressly saith, *Sephara mons Orientis in India, juxta quem habitaverunt filii Jokan*. i. e. That *Sephar*, or *Sepher*, is the name of a Mountain of the East in *India*; near to which dwelt the Sons of *Jokan*. More probably, without doubt, than that we should transfer it into *America*, as I see some do; and make it there to be the great Mountain of the *Andes*, which runneth the whole length of *Peru*, from one end to the other, and thence, as some will have it, to the Straights of *Magellan*. Which should we grant, we must not look for *Jokan*, or the Sons of *Jokan*, either in *Arabia Felix*, where *Bacharus* placeth them; nor in the Eastern parts of *Asia*, where most probably they may be found; but we must cross the vast Oriental Ocean, and look for them in a place where they never were; besides, that granting this for true, we must allow *America* to have been known in the time of *Moses*, which no Author that I ever met with, did so much as dream of.

Rivers of most note are, 1. *Indus*, which ariseth out of that part of *Taurus*, which the Ancients called *Paropamisus*, the Moderns, *Nangraos*; and having received into it 19 other Rivers, after a course of 900 miles, falleth into the Ocean at seven Mouths, that is to say, 1. *Sagappa*, being the most Western; 2. *Sinburn*, 3. *Aureum*, 4. *Cariphi*, 5. *Sappara*, 6. *Sabalassa*, 7. *Loribare*, the most Eastern. But five of these being choaked with Sands, or drawn into the neighbouring Channels, there are now remains but only two. A River famous in Records and ancient stories, for giving name unto the Country and that celebrated voyage of *Alexander*, who sailed down it towards the *Indian Ocean*: the voyage holding above five months, of which there is said to have passed no day wherein he sailed not 15 miles, or 600 Furlongs. 2. *Ganges*, which riseth, as some say, from the Mountain *Iman*, (or rather from that part of *Taurus*, where *Iman* falleth right upon it,) and falling headlong down the Rocks, is first collected into a Lake or Pool, (supposed by others for the fountain and original of it,) whence with a candler pace it passeth towards the Ocean; taking in by the way, as is said by *Pliny*, 30 navigable Rivers. In the narrowest place of eight miles breadth, in the broadest 20, seldom so shallow but that the depth thereof is 100 foot, or 20 Geometrical paces. Parted into five great Channels it falleth at last into the Sea; the first of which most towards the West, is called *Camblylin*, 2. *Magnus*, 3. *Cambervicus*, 4. *Phindolamun*, and 5. that which lieth furthest towards the East, called *Antiboli*. This River erroneously supposed to be that *Pisus* which watered *Paradise*: and to encrease the reputation of the error, we find it countenanced by *Josephus*, and other no less eminent names; and also backed by some traditions of the people which inhabit near it. By whom it is affirmed, that one of the *Bengalan* Kings sent men up the River, who came

at least to a pleasant place, blest with a fragrant Earth, swift air, and quiet waters; beyond which they could go no further. The truth and reality whereof doth so possit them, that at the mouth of this River called *Gangage*, such as are weary of this world use to cast themselves into the Current, and are presently devoured by a Fish, called *Sea-dog*, by whom they hope to find a quick passage to *Paradise*. The occasion of which error among the Ancients, proceeded from those words of the Scripture, in which it is affirmed of *Pisón*, that it compassed the Land of *Havilah*: which granting that it did, inferreth not that either this River must be *Pisón*, or that *India* is intended by that *Havilah*. For besides *Havilah* the Son of *Joktan*, planted in some part of *India*, there was another *Havilah* the Son of *Chus*, settled in the Land of *Havilah* or *Chifiana*, not far from *Babylon*: this last indeed watered by the River *Pisón*, and the first by *Ganges*: too far asunder, and divided by too many Nations, to be taken or mistaken one for another. But no less famous, because none of those which neighboured the Garden of *Eden*, perhaps of greater fame than any of those which did. For this River do the superstitious *Indians* make their solemn Pilgrimages, vainly conceiving that they shall be sure of their Eternity, if at the time of their death they may drink of this water. To the overflowings of this River do the people ascribe the fertility of the Countries adjoining, as the *Aegyptians* do to *Nilus*. And finally, by this River was the whole Country anciently, and at this present is, divided into two main parts, (each subdivided into many particular Provinces) viz. 1. *India intra Gangem*, 2. *India extra Gangem*. Of each of which we will first take a brief survey, with reference to the state and story of it in preceding times; and then consider them with reference to the present Age.

## 1. INDIA EXTRA GANGEM.

**INDIA EXTRA GANGEM** is bounded on the East, with the River *Ganges*, till the fall thereof into the Sea; and after that with that large and spacious Bay, called anciently *Sinus Gangeticus*, now the Gulf of *Bengala*; on the West, with *Paropamisus*, *Arachosia*, *Gedrosia*, Provinces of the *Persian* Empire; and part of the *Arabian* Seas; on the North, where it is broadest, with Mount *Taurus*, branched into *Paropamisus*, *Caucasus*, and other parts; and on the South, where it endeth in a sharp Point or Promontory, by *Ptolomy* called *Comoria extrema*, but now Cape *Comari*, with the *Indian* Ocean. So named from being situate on the side of *Ganges*; by the Moderns, *Induflau*.

The Country of the same nature formerly, as it is at the present, not altered but by changing of the Channels of *Indus*; which being shifted by an Earthquake, turned a great part of the once neighbouring Region to a sandy Desert: *Indus* (as many other of the *Indian* Rivers) fatning and enriching all the Land which it overfloweth. The people of those elder times, much like the *Seythians*, especially in their course of life, living without Cities, Temples, Houses, in their movable Tents: their food the bark of a Tree, called *Tala*, which served for bread; and the flesh of Bucks, Does, and other Venison, with the skins whereof they made their Garments. All of them *Free-men*, but no *Slaves* to be found among them. Less warlike than the *Seythians*, but as great contempters of death as they: the very women contending eagerly amongst themselves, which should accompany their Husband (one Husband having many Wives) to his Funeral Pile. Of which thus St. Hierom, *He igitur contentum de amore viri, & ambitio summa certantem est appetitum mortis sollicita, dignum morte confert.* A Custom still retained

amongst them; of which somewhat hath been said already, and more is to be said in another place.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1. *Hydaspes*, by *Ptolomy* (and by him only) called *Bidespes*, one of the furthest bounds of *Alexander's* Conquests. 2. *Sasus*, 3. *Cas*, 4. *Acesines*, very memorable in the Jells of *Alexander*, 5. *Sundabilis*, 6. *Varadrins*: all coming from the Northern Mountains and all falling (Hydaspes with three other Rivers first received into it) into the great bed of *Indus*. 7. *Diamna*, 8. *Sorabus*, and 9. *Soa*, falling from the like Northern Mountains, into the main Channel of *Ganges*. 10. *Naragons*, issuing from Mount *Vindius*. 11. *Bari*, from *Bitigga*. 12. *Chaberis*, from *Adisabris*. 13. *Tinds*, from the hill called *Uxentius*; and 14. *Tina*, from the *Orodian* Mountains, with many others of less note. By what names called at the present, I determine not; nor find I any which have dared to adventure on it. But doublets to be found in 1. *Catamul*, 2. *Cebba*, 3. *Ria*, 4. *Chenaa*, 5. *Rebeth*, all tributary into *Indus*, which is now called *Schinda*. 6. *Taphi*, 7. *Harnada*, 8. *Chambel*, 9. *Jamena*, which empty their waters into *Ganges*; the which, with such others of the principal Rivers as were known by name to us, shall occasionally be touched on in that which followeth. Besides which Rivers, here is famous Lake mentioned in the Jells of *Alexander*, (but the name occurreth not) not much above a mile in circuit, but exceeding pleasant, shaded on every side with woods, memorable for the great refreshment which it gave to *Alexander's* Army, when even pined with thirst.

The Country for exceeding populous in the time of *Ptolomy*, that it afforded him the names of more noted Cities, than any one Country in the world. Of which 1. *Cotara*, 2. *Nigama*, 3. *Sageda*, 4. *Rarsala*, 5. *Majopala*, and 6. *Pisandara*, are honoured with the name of Metropoles; as being the head Cities of their several and respective Nations. 7. *Ozeue*, 8. *Sora*, 9. *Palibotira*, 10. *Gange*, 11. *Batana*, 12. *Hippocra*, 13. *Cavara*, 14. *Madura*, 15. *Orubura*, and 16. *Malanga*, mentioned as the Royal Seats of several Princes, by the name of *Regie*. 17. *Bardaxema*, 18. *Tydiv*, 19. *Argari*, 20. *Cumula*, 21. *Chaberis*, on the River so called. 22. *Palura*, on the shores of the Gulf of *Bengala*, and 23. *Palura*, on the banks of *Cambysium*. 24. *Tilgammum*, marked out above the rest with the name of *Civitates* (Cities) and therefore probably of more note than others not so distinguished. And finally, 25. *Monoisium*, 26. *Simylla*, near a Promontory of the same name, 27. *Nitra*, 28. *Maziris*, 29. *Elancorum*, 30. *Celbi*, 31. *Sabur*, 32. *Sobura*, 33. *Poduca*, 34. *Mlanga*, 35. *Meliorpha*, 36. *Contacissila*, 37. *Nolyne*, 38. *Barganza*, specified as the most noted and celebrated Empires: besides 39. *Cambysium*, 40. *Statibus*, (and 41. a Road open to *Chrysis*) two commodious Stations or Roads for shipping. The names and situation of these places is the most we find of them, which makes me pass them over with a bare recital, only to show how populous and well planted this Country was in the time of my Author.

Of less name, but of more note in the course of story, 1. *Nisa*, built by *Bacchus* at the time of his *Indian* Conquest, and called thus by the name of his Nephew, to preserve her memory, his Mother dying in Child-birth of him. Repentless by him with his sick and wounded Soldiers, whose Posterity continued here till the time of *Alexander*, who spared the City and the People for his Temple to *Bacchus*, who was therein worshipped in a Temple of his own foundation, planted about with Vines, and Ivy, whose shady branches covered the roof of it. In the midst thereof an Image, with all of Gold or metals belonging to a plentiful *Vintage*, all of Gold or Silver.

Silver. 2. *Taxilla*, or *Taxiala*, as *Ptolomy* calleth it, seated between *Indus* and *Hydaspes*, in the Region called *Versa*, and built most probably by *Taxiles*, a puissant King of *India*, in the time of *Alexander*. Adorned in elder times with a Temple dedicated to the *Sun*, and therein with an Ivory Image of *Ajax*, a Golden Statue of *Alexander*, and the portraiture of King *Pornu* made in Copper. The floor of *Majical* work powdered with Pearls, the Walls of red Marble interlaid with Gold, which made it shine a far off, like a flash of lightning. 3. *Nagana*, called also *Dionysopolis* in memory of *Bacchus*, who was also called *Dionysius*, and *Liber Pater*. 4. *Adorne*, by *Dindrus* called *Aornus*, and *Avernus* by *Strabo*: so strongly seated on a Rock, that *Hercules* was not able to force it: which made *Alexander*, (imitating, and therein out-going the Acts of *Hercules*) assault it with the greater force, and at last he carried it. 5. *Bucephala*, built by *Alexander* on the banks of *Hydaspes*, and named thus in memory of *Bucephalus*, his beloved horse, which had served him in all the course of his Fortunes, and dyed hereabouts, being then thirty years old. 6. *Pireta*, another of his foundations, so called by the name of his Dog whom he dearly loved. 7. *Alexandria*, on the banks of *Indus*, another of his foundations also. 8. *Mazaga*, on the West of *Indus*, one of the first Towns of *India*, taken by the *Macedonians*, though garrisoned within, and invironed without by an Host of 300000 men: but yielded after some resistance, with the use of her own body, by *Cleopatra* the Queen thereof, who received it back with other favours, from the hands of the Conqueror. 9. *Sora*, a strong City on the same side of *Indus*, taken by *Pargaseron*, one of his Commanders. 10. *Samu*, on the banks of the same River, taken by *Alexander* in the course of his Navigation down that Sea of Waters; the Inhabitants whereof fought against him with poisoned Arrows, with one of which *Ptolomy*, (afterward King of *Egypt*) was dangerously wounded, and cured with an herb which *Alexander* dreamt he had seen in the mouth of a Serpent. 11. *Oxydrace*, the chief City of the *Oxydracians*; at the Siege whereof *Alexander* is said to be the first that scaled the Walls, and the last that could do so, the Ladder breaking as soon as he was at the top. Standing thus alone as a mark to all their Darts, he was by the Soldiers desired to leap down amongst them; he in a daring bravado leaped into the Town among his Enemies: where it was not only his good hap to light upon his feet, but to have an old Tree at his back to defend him behind. In this posture he is said to have maintained the fight a long time, against all the Soldiers of the Town; killing two of them with his own hands, and that by example teaching the rest to be more manfully, till being wearied, and dangerously wounded, he was forced to leave his feet, and commit the weight of his body to his knees. In this case *Leonatus*, *Pencester*, and some other of his Captains, came to assist him; who defended their dying Master, till the whole Army entered the Town, and put all the people to the sword, in revenge of their King, whose life they had little hope to enjoy: though he with much danger did afterward recover. For my part I give little or no credence to this story, ranging it in the same Catalogue of truth with the Adventures of *Danzel del Phabo*, *Rosicler*, *Belianis*, *Amadis*, and the rest of the rabble of *Knights Errant*. Neither is this the first time that *Curtius* hath disgraced the foundnes of *Alexander's* Judgment, and the truth of his Actions, with the like idle and impossible Fables: though indeed in that particular, he faith that it was *multo magis ad temeritatis quam de gloria famam*. And 12. *Nicea*, built by *Alexander* on the banks of *Acesines*, in memory of his many great and signal Victories. Not far from which,

finding how unwilling his Soldiers were to pass further East, he purposed to have behind him some Monument of his great Exploits, and to make his fame immortal amongst the *Indians*. And to that end he caused the form of his Camp to be enlarged, and the *Cabins* to be made bigger than sufficient for his men to lodge in; the *Mangers* to be set higher than his Horses could reach; *Arms* and *Bills* for horses of too great a size (made not for use, but ostentation of his might) to be scattered up and down the Camp, for the savage people to wonder at in the times to come. By means whereof he got nothing amongst knowing men, but suspicion that his Actions were intended less memorable, than they are reported to have been; since he so vainly laboured to have them thought greater, than indeed they were.

The old Inhabitants heretofore, where the *Indo-Seythe*, inhabiting on the North-West of *Indus*, the *Mazaga*, *Sadama*, *Pirae*, *Limyricae*, *Aii*, the *Soringi*, *Arvati*, *Oxydrace*, *Moli*, and *Lambate*, the *Gandavides*, or *Gangarides*, near the mouth of *Ganges*, the *Caspian*, under the shades of Mount *Vindius*, The *Muscani*, *Chazziei*, *Polinde*, *Phyllie*, *Bitiggi*, *Chadramitie*, *Pezari*, *Adisabris*, *Mandale*, *Dryphits*, *Sabara*, *Pandion*, with many others, to the number of 122. several Nations, if *Megasthenes* be not out in his reckoning, too many and too impertinent to be numbered here.

Originally descended from the Sons of *Noah*, before they left these Eastern parts to go towards the unfortunate Valley of *Shinar*. We could not else have found this Country full of people in the days of *Semiramus*, the Wife of *Ninus*: who leading an Army compounded of several Nations, to the number of four Millions and upwards (if *Ctesias*, and *Diodorus Siculus*, who reports it from him, be of any credit; but certainly the greatest Army that ever was raised) was encountered by *Sinuo-bates*, a King of *India*, with greater force made up of natural *Indians* only; by whom he was vanquished and slain. A matter beyond all belief, though neither Army could make up a fourth part of that number, if the *Indians* had been no other than some one of those Colonies, which were sent from *ABE L*; or rather a second or third *Swarm* of those former Colonies, which went thence under the command of the first *Adventurers*. For that any of the first *Adventurers*, who were present at the building of the Tower of *ABE L*, travelled so far East, is not affirmed by any who have laboured in the search of their Plantations. So that I take it for a matter undeniable, that the Plantation of *India* preceded the attempt of *ABE L*; though by whom made, there is nothing to be said for certain: Yet if I might have liberty to express my own conceptions, I am inclinable to believe that all the Eastern parts of *Persia*, with *China*, and both the *Indians* were peopled by such of the Sons of *Sem*, as went not with the rest to the valley of *Shinar*. For otherwise I can see no reason, that the Posterity of *Taphis* should plant the greatest part of the Lesser *Asia*, and the whole Continent of *Europe*, with the Isles thereof; and that the Sons of *Cham* should spread themselves over *Babylonia*, *Palestina*, the three *Arabiae*, and the whole continent of *Africa*: the Posterity of *Sem* being that up in a corner, the Greater *Asia*, hardly so big as some one of the Provinces taken up by the other *Adventurers*. And therefore that I may allow to the Sons of *Sem* an equal Latitude, I think it not improbable to fix them in these Eastern Countries; spreading themselves this way as they grew in numbers, before the rest of the *Adventurers* went to seek new fortunes at the Tower of *ABE L*. And being that the Country was large and wealthy and might have room enough to spare for some second company (especially descending from the same root with them.) I









to supply which defect he furnisheth himself with Souldiers out of *Perfia*, of which his standing bands consist; most of their Sultans and Commanders of that Nation also. More given to Merchandize than War, and therein thought to be as cunning (if not deceitful withall) any people in the World: treacherous in their trust, proud in their carriage, bloody upon advantage, and much given to *Venerie*; ignorant of Letters, but well practiced in *Mechanical Arts*. In matters of Religion for the most part *Gentiles*, not knowing or contemning the Law of *Mohomet*; but very punctual in their own heathenish superstitions. The *Banians* in this Country, being natural *Indians*, nursed in Paganism, and so wedded to their old Idolatries, that no persuasions can prevail with them, make the greatest number; and seem to be all *Pythagoreans* in some opinions, for they eat not any thing that hath blood or life, but feed on Rice, Roots, Plantains, and such natural fruits: paying a large Revenue yearly to the Great *Mongul*, that no Oxen may be killed amongst them. And because new opinions should not grow amongst them, they marry in their own *Tribes* only, and never out of their own *Traditions*; secure thereby as they conceive from all innovations.

Cities of most observation in it, 1. *Cambaia*, three miles from the *Indus*, and as many in compass, one of the neatest and best built in all the East. So populous withall, that it is thought to contain 130000 Families; and is therefore called the *Cair* of the *Indies*. Of most esteem in all this Kingdom (though far less than *Madabar*) to which it doth impart its name. 2. *Barache*, Southwards of *Cambaia* on the top of an hill, with a fair River underneath it; well walled, and noted for the best *Callicens* (a kind of linnen Cloth so called from the City of *Calicut*, where it was first made) not to be matched in all the *Indies*. 3. *Swaley*, still more unto the South, and about a mile from the Sea-shore; but giving name unto a large and capacious Bay, where the ships ride that trade at *Surat*. 4. *Surat*, about ten miles from the Bay of *Swaley*, from whence the River navigable but by Boats and Shallops, fortified with a Cattle of stone, well stored with Ordnance. The houses for the most part of Sun-dried Bricks, very large and lasting: built with flat Roofs, but Battlemented on all sides for fear of falling and beautified with goodly Gardens of Pomgranates, Melons, Figs, and Limons, intercalated with Rivereys and Springs. Made of late years a Factory for the *English Merchants*, who have here their President, and a magnificent house for their reception, and staple of their Commodities. 5. *Neriand*, a great Town, and as remarkable for the making of *Ludico*, of the matter and making whereof we have spoke already, when we were at *Biani*, a Town or City of the Kingdom, or Division of *Agra*; as memorable for that Commodity as this *Neriand*, or any other of *India*. 6. *Daman*, upon the Sea-side over against *Div*; and possessed as that is by the *Portugals*. A beautiful and pleasant Town, fortified with a strong Cattle at the North end of it, of white chalky stone, well planted with Ordnance: opposite whereunto on the South side of the Town a goodly Church, edged on the top with white. Which with the houses for the most part of the same colour also, afford a pleasant prospect to the Sailors by 7 *Campawels*, situate on the top of an high Mountain, and environed with a seven-fold wall, once the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Cambaia*. 8. *Dacaiote*, a place of little strength, that the Great *Mongul* could never get it by force. Rendered at the last upon composition, conditioned they should still be governed by a King of their own. 9. *Netherby*, a great Market of Brazen ware, Bealls, and Armour. 10. *Bandore*, 11. *Tenai*, &c.

This Kingdom taking in *Guzarate* and *Sinda*, as parts

hereof, is extremely populous; said fad to contain 6000 Towns and Villages, very well inhabited; but the people not accustomed to, or unfit for wars. Anciently governed by Kings of their own, it was first subdued by the *Arabians* or *Mooris*, Anno 1423, under the conduct of one *Mahomet* or *Machmut*; who having forced the *Reshetes* or *Naturals* of the Country to betake themselves unto the Mountains, was made King hereof. To him succeeded his Son *Mamudius*, one of no great action. But what he wanted was supplied by his Son *Badrinus*, who having conquered the Kingdom of *Citor*, invaded that of *Mandus* also. His Army for that war consisted of 500000 Foot, 150000 Horse, 1000 great Pieces of Ordnance, 500 Wagons loaded with Powder and Shot, and as many Wain-loads of Gold and Silver to buy his Army. But being discomfited in two great Battels by *Mehamed* the *Mongul Tartar*, whom *Galgie* the *Mandian* King had called in to his aid, he shaved his beard, and fled in a disguise to *Div*, then possessed by the *Portugals*; whom he licensed in that districts to build the *Cittadel*, slain afterwards by a mean *Mariner*, as his return from the *Portugal* Vice-Roy, whom he had visited on ship-board. And though *Mamudius* his successor endeavored to free his Kingdom from both pretenders; yet weakened with the loss of so great an Army, he was not able to effect it. First driven from *Div*, which he had besieged both by Sea and Land, to his great dishonour; and after vanquished in battle by *Adabar*, the Son of *Mehamed*, not far from *Serkiffe*, the ancient burial-place of the Kings of *Cambaia*, but the Sepulchre of the Kingdom, which by that victory fell to the Great *Mongul*, who have since enjoyed it.

#### 4. DECAN.

DECAN is bounded on the East, with *Narisinga*; on the West, with the *Indus* Ocean; on the North, with *Cambaia*; on the South, with *Malabar* and *Canara*. The reason of the name we shall have anon.

It lieth along the Sea-coast for the space of 250 miles, betwixt *Aliga* and *Bate*, two noted Rivers; extending East, as far as the Mountain *Gates*, and afterwards thrusting into the North betwixt *Cambaia* and those Mountains till it meet with *Cambaia*. The soil much of the same nature with the rest of *India*, but not so flourishing as *Cambaia*. The people for the most part *Mahometans*, which Religion was first planted there by the Conquests of *Sa-Nasradine*, 350 years ago; yet not without some intermixture of their ancient *Gentilism*.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Bider*, the Seat-Royal of *Mamudius*, once sole King of this Country; who to beautify and adorn this City, commanded every one of his *Prebsters*, or subordinate City Governors, being eighteen in number, to build here a Palace, and to reside therein certain months in the year: each one to leave a Son there in perpetual hostage. Situate in the most Northern parts in perpetual hostage. Situate in the most Northern parts of the Country more near the Borders of *Dely*: from the King whereof *Mamudius* had then newly revolted; and therefore would make use of this place, as most in danger. 2. *Visapore*, bordering on *Cambaia*, after it was Seat of *Idalcen*, one of the Kings of *Decan*, confidenced into several Kingdoms. 3. *Danagers*, confidenced into several Kingdoms. 4. *Canara*, a beautiful and flourishing City, once the chief Seat of *Nisalamcen*, or *Nizalimexa*, another of the Kings hereof, after that division. 4. *Decan*, so called by the name of the Province; of which the chief City next to *Bider*, the Imperial Seat. Six miles from which there is an Hill compassed with an high wall, and kept there is a strong Garrison, because of the great fire of *Diab* by a strong Garrison, because of the great fire of *Diab*, which are digged out of it. The Town so wealthy, that

that the people generally are attired in silks, or the purest *Tiffany*. 5. *Sinacora*, on the mouth of the River *Aliga*, wherewith falleth into the Sea. 6. *Goa*, a Sea Town also, situate in a little but most pleasant Island, called *Tienarum*, fifteen miles in compass; opposite to the mouth or outlet of the River *Mandavus*. A noted Empory, and one of the chief keys which unlock the *Indies*; for number of Inhabitants, magnificent buildings, and pleasantness of situation, one of most note in all this Country. Possessed by the *Portugals*, who have here their *Arsenal*, and harbour for their *Indian Fleet*; by which they do command these Seas. So strongly fortified withal, that though beleaguered by *Idalcen* (of whom before) with 35000 Horse, 6000 Elephants, and 2500 Piece of Ordnance, Anno 1573, yet he could not force it. Made in regard of the convenient situation and strength thereof, the ordinary Residence of the *Portugal* Vice-Roy, who hath here his Council, Chancellour, and other Officers, for the government of such parts of *India* as belong to that Crown: as also of the Arch-bishop or Primate of the *Indian Churches* planted by that Nation, who is hence called the Arch-bishop of *Goa*. 7. *Chand*, a Sea Town, in the hands of the *Portugals* also, and by them well fortified: Inasmuch as *Nisalamcen* assaulting it at the very same time with a very great Army, was fain to leave it as he found it. 8. *Salagante*, in the Up-lands or Hill-Country, whence it had the name: *Basia* in the *Persian Language* signifying a top, or summit of a Mountain; and *Guate* an Hill. 9. *Brampey*, once the chief seat of another Kingdom, called the Kingdom of *Chandis*, now the chief City of those parts of *Decan* which are subject to the Great *Mongul*. Situate on a great River in the midst of a spacious Plain, beautiful, and of very great Trading; in biggness equal unto *Paris*, yet yielded to *Echebar* the *Mongul*, without any resistance Anno 1600, *Miram* then the King thereof forsaking it, and betaking himself to 10. *Syza*, a strong Hold both by Art and Nature; Situate on the top of an hill, which is in compass five Leagues, and environed with a triple Wall: furnished with Victuals, and all other necessary Provisions, sufficient to maintain 60000 men many years; 3000 great Pieces of Ordnance planted on the Walls. Besieged herein by *Echebar* with an Army of 200000 fighting men, he held out against him till overcome by promises of fair correspondence, drawn out of his Hold some of his Counsellors being bribed to persuade him to it: he was detained by the *Mongul*; and the Commanders won by rewards and hopes yielded up the Fort, and therein all the Princes of the Royal Family, accustomed kept therein when the Throne was full; which vacant, the next Heir was taken hence, to succeed unto it. Of the same nature, as it seemeth, with the hill *Amara* in *Atchipsia*, or the *Abassine* Empire.

The Country formerly inhabited by a people called *Venazarari*, by Religion *Gentiles*, and held by them till the year 1300, when overcome by *Sa Nasradine*, a *Mahometan*, and King of *Dely*: who driving the Inhabitants into the Hill-Countries, possessed himself of a great part of it, compelling them to submit unto his Religion. The residue thereof subdued by *Abdessa*, whom *Sa Nasradine* left here to pursue the war, was by him governed with great justice for 20 years, when dying he left his Government to his Son *Mamudius*, confirmed by the Successor of *Sa Nasradine* in his Fathers *Regency*, on the payment of an annual Tribute. *Mamudius* soon finding that the young King was of no great spirit, not only refused to pay the Tribute imposed upon him, but took unto himself the title of King *Decan*, giving this name unto the Country (before called *Canara*) in regard that he had filled it with a Mongrel body of *Christians*, *Mahometans*,

and *Cenites*, acknowledging no common Parent, nor agreeing in Language, Customs, or Religion; the word *Decan* signifying in that Tongue; as much as illegitimate brood, or a body of Barbars. Out of these he made choice of twelve (others say eighteen) whom he appointed Governors of so many Provinces: not daring to trust any of the old Nobility, or of the Natives of the Country; and hoping that these *Slaves*, so promoted by him, would be more subject to command. But here his silly hopes deceived him. For these *Slaves* either governed by their Masters example, who had done the like unto the Son and Heir of *Sa Nasradine*; or presuming on their own strength, and some Foreign Aids, left to their Master nothing but an empty Title; each one becoming absolute in his several Province. Nor did his Successors for any long time take that Title: *Daquem*, the last of them, being taken at *Bider* his chief City, and thereupon the name of King usurped by every one of these petit Tyrants, reduced at last into fewer heads. Such of them as were left, became considerable Princes, as appeareth by the great Army raised by *Idalcen* for the siege of *Goa*: But in the end, distressed on the one side by the *Portugals*, who embarrased their Trade, and invaded on the other side the Great *Mongul* with most puissant Armies, *Melic* entitled King of *Decan*, and *Miram* King of *Brampey*, were in subjection by *Echebar*, about the year 1600. Against whom and his Successors, though the *Venazarari* still hold out, as the *Reshetes* or *Rasboos* do in the Realm of *Cambaia*; and that the King of *Amudanger*, and perhaps some other petit Princes, are not yet brought under: yet we may look on the *Mongul* as the Lord of this Country, the residue of these *Royalties*, and petit Princes (if any of them be remaining) being *Homagers* or Vassals to him. Against whose further Progress to the Cape of *Comari*, which *Echebar* too greedily aimed at, the puissant Kings of *Narisinga*, and those of *Malabar* have opposed their power; whose Kingdoms and Estates we must next survey, before we take a view of those other Provinces which are now under the command of that mighty Monarch.

#### 9. CANARA.

CANARA is bounded on the North, with *Decan* (whereof anciently it was a part;) on the South, with *Malabar*; on the East, with *Narisinga*, from which separated by the Mountain *Gates*; on the West, with the Ocean. The reason of the name I find not, nor much worth the searching.

The Country hath a fair Sea-coast, with many capacious Harbours in it, which cannot but add much to the wealth thereof; as liberally furnished in the in-land parts with Rice, Figs, and Sugars: but destitute of Wheat, Pulse, and Barley. Not much the poorer for that want, the people either not knowing, or not regarding the use of bread; but living on such fruits as the earth produceth of it self, without the charge or care of the husbandman. In other things but little differing, if at all, from the rest of the *Indians*; their Religion for the most part *Paganish*, but intermixed with *Mahometans*.

Principal Towns and Cities of it, 1. *Melinde*, a commodious Haven. 2. *Ozora*, Port Town of good note, sometimes held by the *Portugals*. 3. *Baticalia*, situate in the richest part of all this Country; never possessed by the *Portugals*, but under contribution to them. 4. *Mangalar* a Town of great wealth and trade; fortified with a strong Cattle, once destroyed by the *Portugueses*, but recovered and repaired by the King of *Narisinga*, who is Lord of this Country. 5. *Meyender*, more within the Land. And so is also, 6. *Lisper*, famous for her Quarries of Adamant.



mounteth on a Scaffold covered with Silk or Tapestry; and in the sight of all his People, gathered together to behold this strange solemnity, cutteth off his nose, ears, lips, and other parts, which he casts towards the Idol, and in his conclusion cuts his own throat at his bloody Sacrifice: his designed Successor being present at this bloody Sacrifice, who at the twelve years end is to do the like. Never was *Scepter* bought at so dear a rate: For though all *Crowns* be lined with *shorn*, yet here the pomps of Sovereignty be less lasting than in other places; the entrance full of fears, and the end of horrors.

These Kingdoms heretofore but one, till the year 900 or thereabouts, were branched and cantoned into these seven, by *Sarama Peremal*, the sole Monarch. He by the solicitations of some *Arabians*, trading to his Ports, became *Mahometan*; and therein for devout, that he relieved upon a Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, there to end his days. At his departure he divided his Estates into these seven parts, distributing them amongst the nearest of his Kindred; assigning unto him of *Coulam* the preeminence in sacred matters: and the Imperial dignity unto him of *Caliente*, with the title of *Samorin*, that is to say, *Chief Emperor*, or as some write, a God on Earth. He only privileged with the right and power of *Coinage*; the rest to be subordinate, if not subject to him. From *Peremal*'s settling forwards to the City of *Mecca*, the *Malabars* accompt their reckonings, and begin their years; as the Christians from the birth of their Lord and Saviour. And for a time his Heirs were punctually observed. But the Kingdom of *Caliente* being weakened by the power of the *Portugals*, the other Kings began to free themselves from that subjection; and in the end to cast off all relation to him, and to his *Prerogative*. Yet still he is esteemed of more Power and Majesty than any of the rest of the Kings of *Malabar*; and looked on with more reverence than any of them. The certainty of his *Revenues* I have no where met with, but conjecture them to be very great; first in regard of that infinite trading which is managed from most parts of the World in this Port of *Caliente*; the Customs and Imposts upon which must needs be of exceeding value; and secondly in reference to the wealth of private Merchants, many of which are said to equal some Kings in *Africa*; and Dukes in *Europe* not a few.

*Quid Domini facient? audient cum talia Fures.*

And if the man such Riches have,  
Then what must he that keeps the Knave?

What Forces he is able to raise may be fully seen by that which hath been said before; wherein we find him with an Army of 90000 men besieging and taking in the Fort of *Chalen*, with another of 100000 beleaguering the Castle which the *Portugals* had built near the City of *Caliente*. And when the said *Portugals* stirred up the King of *Cochin* to make head against him, he fell upon them suddenly, both by Sea and Land, with 60000 Land-Souldiers, and 200 good Vessels of War for his Service at Sea. Sufficient force to reduce the rest of these petty Kings to their old acknowledgments, but that some of them to avoid the danger, have put themselves under the *Vassalage*, or protection at the least, of the Great *Mungu*: others by suffering the *Portugals* to build Forts in their Kingdoms, have engaged them in defence of their Estate against this pretender. His Forces consist most of Foot, Horse being unfeivable in these Countries, by reason of those many Rivers which interlace it, and these Foot are compounded most of Gentry, which they there call *Nairos*, trained to their Weapons when they are but seven years of Age; every one to that Weapon which he most delighteth in, which makes them very expert and nimble at them; much privileged for that cause by the

Laws of the Country, and to esteemed of by the King, that out of them his Sisters chuse what men they please to their *Husbands*, some of them by that means being made the Fathers of the King succeeding.

Nothing else memorable touching the affairs of *Caliente*, but the way of succession to the Kingdom: the Crown descending upon none of the Kings Children, but on the Son of his eldest Sister, or nearest Kinswoman. For being that one of the *Bramines* hath always the maiden-head of his Queens, and that some of these *Stallions* are continually allowed to keep them company, it is presumed, or very probably supposed, that the Queens Children are the *Bramines*, and not the Kings.

### 8. NARSINGA.

**NARSINGA** is bounded on the South, with *Tra-vancor*; on the West, with the Mountain *Cates*; on the North, with *Oritan*, or *Oriza*; on the East, with the Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Narsinga* the chief City of it, and the Royal Residence of the King.

The Country is said to be in length 600 miles, or as some say, of as much extent as can be travelled in six months, plentiful in the same Commodities which the rest of *India* doth afford, except *Pepper* and some other Spices which are proper to *Malabar*. Not to well furnished with Rivers as some other places: which want is liberally supplied by water falling from the Mountains and received into trenches, meers, and *Lakes*, which do wonderfully cool, moisten and enrich the Land, causing the Corn and Cattel to prosper above all imagination. Most destitute in this kind is the Province of *Choromandel*, in which if any year passeth without rain, they fall into such extremities, that they are fain to feel their children.

The People in Religion, *Gentiles*, to worshipping one God, as the Lord of all, which is taught them by the light of nature, that they join the *Devil* or their *Togdes* in Communion with him, whereto induced by the persuasion of their beasty *Bramines*, who therewith seek no small advantage. Some Christians there are intermixt of the old *Plantation*; especially in *Maliapur*, and the Region of *Choromandel*; but not so well instructed in the Principles of their own belief, as to be able to convince or convert the *Gentiles*, nor to disfigure them from the use of some *Heathenish* Customs though barbarous, inhumane, and against all reason: nor used in any place, but amongst the *Indians*. Amongst which I reckon for most savage, the forcing of poor women to burn themselves with their husbands bodies, the women kindred, not the husbands, thrusting them on these hard conditions; who reckon it a disgrace to their Family, if the should refuse. And because they will be sure not to have that infamy stick upon them, they have ordered that the woman who shall so refuse, must have her head, and break her Jewels, and not be suffered to eat, drink, or sleep, or company with any body till her death. A life more miserable than the Flames which they seek to shun. This makes them leap into the fire with joy and greediness; and to contend which shall be most; the being thought to have been most loving during his life, which is now most willing to accompany him in his death, and offer her self to his *Names*, at the Funeral Pile: wherunto thus alluded the Poet:

*Es certamen habent, letis, qui viva sequatur  
Conjugium's pudor, et non licuisse mori.  
Arden virgines, & prebent pistora flammæ;  
Imponuntque suis una peritura virgines.*

A thame 'tis to die; they therefore strive,  
Who may be fain'd to follow him alive.

The

The Victor burns, yields to the flame her breast;  
And her burnt face doth on her husband rest;  
Chief Cities of this Country, 1 *Caol*, on the borders of *Travancor*, belonging anciently to the Kings of *Coulam*, now to those of *Narsinga*; the people wherabout called *Paravi*, are a kind of *Christians*, who live for the most part by fishing for *Pearls*, which they sell to the *Portugals*, and *Bengal* Merchants. 2 *Golkonda*, the chief City of the Province called *Mushlipatan*, the Lord whereof is a *Moor*, of the *Sophian* Sect; but a Vassal to the Kings of *Narsinga*. 3 *Chamdagrin*, one of the Seat-Royals of the King. 4 *Prepeti*, three miles from *Chamdagrin*, memorable for a yearly Feast here celebrated in honour of *Peremal* (once *fole King of Malabar*) reckoned for a Saint at least in these parts of *India*: the offerings at which accustomably amount unto 2000000 Crowns. 5 *Chadamaram*, the Mother-City of those *Pagan* Solemnities, which are done to *Peremal* who hath here a Temple endowed with 30000 Ducats of Annual Rent, all consumed by the *Bramines* belonging to it, who pretend to have been born out of *Peremal*'s head. 6 *Madura*, honoured with the residence of the *Chochanada*, or the chief *Priest* of the *Bramines* of this Kingdom; so numerous, that in this Town, and the Territories of it only, are thought to be no fewer than an hundred thousand. The far also of one of three *Naiichi*, or Tributary Kings of the Crown of *Narsinga*; the other two residing at 7 *Ging*, and 8 *Tanajir*, the chief Towns of their Principalities, but not else observable. 9 *Maliapur*, called also *St. Thomas*, from an opinion that the body of the Apostle was here interred: martyred here by the *Idolatrous Indians*, whose Posity in other things like unto other men, are said to have one leg and foot as big as an Elephant's: a punishment inflicted on the whole Generation for the sin of their Ancestors. How true this I cannot say, but I am that *Dorothew* faith, that he rested at *Calamina*, where he was slain with a Dart. However the *Portugals*, to make some use of the old Tradition, removed some bones from this place, which were said to be his, and enshrined them in *Goa*, their own City; much visited by profitable *Pilgrims*, to their great enriching. The City once so large and populous, that it contained 330 Temples, for the use of divers Nations which resorted thither. In these latter days desolate and forlorn, inhabited only by some old Christians, till the *Portugueses* began to people it with new Colonies. 10 *Choromandel*, giving name to a large Sea-Coast, lying on the West-side of the Gulf of *Bengala*. 11 *Calpa*, a Town of *Choromandel*, in which the woman is not burned with her Husband, as in other places of this Country, but buried quick in the same grave with him. 12 *Negapatan*, in the same Region, inhabited for the most part by *St. Thomas Christians*. 13 *Tanajari*, once the chief City of a Kingdom so called, the King whereof was able to bring into the field 100000 Horse and Foot, and 100 armed Elephants, but now subject to the King of *Narsinga*. The people black, but so out of love with their own colour, that they willingly prostitute their Wives or Daughters, to any people of a whiter and more clear complexion. 14 *Bisnagar*, once the chief City of this Kingdom, whence the King is sometimes called the King of *Bisnagar*. In those times 24 miles in compass, with nine Gates in it, (amongst others) continually guarded with Souldiers; and a magnificent Palace, not elsewhere equalled. In the year 1565, sacked by four of the *Mahometan* Kings of *Decan*, who with their joint Forces had invaded this Kingdom; it became desolate and forsaken; and the Court removed to 15 *Penegado*, eight days journey within the Land (*Bisnagar* being seated on the borders of *Decan*) but long it had not staid there when removed to 16 *Narsinga*, where

it hath ever since been fixed, which is now the chief City of this Kingdom, unto which it gives name; though the King many times calls himself by the name of that City where he resideth for the present.

Of the Antiquity of this Kingdom I have little to say, these Eastern parts not being known at all till these later times, not well known in these. About the year 1550 their King then reigning was imprisoned by three of his Captains or Commanders; who shewed him only once a year to his Subjects, parting the power and government amongst themselves. He being dead, and his Son kept in the like restraint, *Romaragio* the first Captain ascended the Throne, *Timaragio* managed the Estate, and *Bengabe* commanded the Army. But these Usurpers being overthrown by the Kings of *Decan*, in the year 1565, *Timaragio* the Survivor took the charge of all; whose Son, to make himself sure of the Kingdom, murdered his imprisoned Sovereign (the life and liberty of Kings being much of a date) whence followed many broils and troubles touching the succession, till settled in the person of *Christamar*, the undoubted Heir: who did not only restore peace and quiet to *Narsinga* it self, but recovered *Canara* out of the hands of the *Idalcans*, who had before endangered his estate therein. Of the great Army which he led against this *Idalcans*, we have spoke already; adding here only; that before he went upon this enterprise (called the journey of *Rachol*) he sacrificed in nine days 2036 Beasts to the Country Idols, the flesh whereof he caused to be distributed amongst the poor. Routed at first, and being perfwaded by some about him to go out of the field, he is said to have made this Noble Answer, That he had rather the *Idalcans* should boast that he had slain him, than vanquished him. And thereupon leaping into the thicket of his Enemies, and well followed by the valiantest of his Friends, he obtained the Victory. But this vast Army of 600000 Foot, 30000 Horse, 537 Elephants, with necessaries answerable to such infinite multitudes, speaks only what he can do on extreme necessity, or when he had some long time of preparation, as he had in that Action. The power of Kings is better measured by their standing Forces, than by necessitated *Levies*. And herein this Prince comes not much short of his great Neighbours: his standing Bands consisting of 40000 *Nairos*, or Gentlemen of his own Kingdom, which serve on foot; 20000 Horse, who are either *Persians* or *Arabians*, and 200 Elephants, well paid, and kept in continual readiness; his Foot defrayed out of his *Revenues*, his Horse maintained like the *Turky Timariots*, out of certain Lands distributed amongst his Captains (some of which are said to have a million of Crowns per annum) to furnish him with these stable Bands of Horse and Elephants.

As for his *Revenues*, it is reckoned at 12 millions yearly, out of which he is thought to lay up three; defraying with the rest the expence of his Household; and the entertainment of his Foot. This Sum amassed together out of the Lands, Mines, and Forreils of the Country, which are wholly his; and the waters of some Rivers, (sold by him to his Subjects) which he monopolizeth, the common people having nothing but their Arms and Labour. Of which, the Mines, Forreils, and one third of the Lands, he retaineth to himself; the other two being divided amongst his Captains. So that it is no marvel if so rich a Country yield him such an income, considering it is all his own. I do rather wonder (of the two) it should yield no more.



## 9. ORISTAN.

**ORISTAN** or **ORIXA**, is bounded on the South, with *Narfinga*, on the West, with *Dely and Sauga*; on the North, with the Kingdoms of *Batanes*, on the East, with the Gulf *Bengala*, and part of *Patanaw* or *Patane*; so called from *Orissa*, the Chief City of it.

The Country hath plenty of Rice, cloth of Cotton, and a fine stuff like silk, made of grasse, and there called *Turva*; with which, together with *Long Pepper*, *Ginger*, *Myrabolan*, and other Commodities here growing, they use to load 25 or 30 Ships from the Haven of *Orissa* only. The people to well governed, or so hating theft, that in the time of their own Kings, before they came under the *Monguls*, a man might have travelled with Gold in his hand without any danger. In other points, of the same temper and religion with the rest of the *Indians* subject to that Prince.

It is generally well watered, and interlaced with many Rivers, which do much moisten and refresh it; but none so beneficial to the Kings heretofore as the River *Gauanga* (of old called *Chaberir*) the waters whereof esteemed sacred by the Kings of *Caticue* and *Narfinga*, and much used by them in their sacrifices and superstitious purgations, are wholly ingrossed by this King, who selleth them to those Princes at excessive rates. Besides which Rivers it is watered with a fair Sea-coast, of 350 miles in length; that is to say, from *Cape Guadurmo* in the South, which divides it from the Realm of *Narfinga*, to *Cape Legora* in the East, which parts it from *Bengala*. But for all that not very much traded, because not so well provided of commodious Havens, as many other *Indian* Provinces of a far less Territory.

Towns of most note herein, 1 *Orissa*, on the Sea-side, or not far from it, the best traded Port of all this Kingdom; to which the name thereof is to be ascribed, as the Head City of the Country. 2 *Cateoba*, six days journey within the Land, the ordinary residence of their Kings: before it was subdued by the Great *Monguls*. 3 *Angeli*, a well frequented Port, at the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*; from whence many Ships are yearly laden with *Indian* Wares. 4 *Baceli* or *Bacila*, more within the Land, and once the head City of a Kingdom, but a very poor one. 5 *Simerang*, where they held it an impety to eat fish, or kill any beast. 6 *Senepate*, of which little memorable. Nor do I find any thing which deserves much memory in the affairs of this Kingdom; but that the Kings heretofore were *Gentiles*, subdued many years since by the King of *Patanaw*'s, and both grown weaker by that War, by *Echebar*, the Great *Mongul*.

## 10. BOTANIER.

**BOTANIER** (under which name I comprehend all those Petit Kingdoms which are crowded together in the North and North-East of this part of *India*) hath on the South, *Orissan* and *Patanaw*; on the West, the River *Gauanga* or *Chaberir*, by which parted from the Realms of *Pengab*; on the North, the *Zagababan* *Tartars*, divided from it by some branches of Mount *Taurus*; on the East the famous River *Ganges*. So called from *Botia*, the principal City of *Botanier*, which is the chief of these small Kingdoms.

The Country great, of three months journey in extent, full of high Mountains, one of which may be seen five days journey off, in which are said to dwell a people with ears of a span long or more, whom otherwise those of the Valleys count as *Ape*. In those parts which are next

*Pengab*, they are white, and *Gentiles*; in others, more enclined to the *Olive* colour. Their garments they wear close to their bodies, so freight that one cannot fee a pleat or wrinkle; and those they never put off by night nor day whilst they are able to hang on: nor do they walk at any time, for fear of deffiling so pure a Creature as the water. Contented with one Wife (deferred to behold a miracle in these Eastern parts) and yet *cobah* not with her after two or three Children. When any of them die, the *South-sayer* is to tell them what to do with his body; according to whose direction (first consulting his books) they burn, bury, or eat it. Few Towns of note there are amongst them. The principal, 1 *Botia*, the Metropolis of it, 2 *Clamur*, of which little memorable. 3 *Kakores*, the second Kingdom of this rank, large but exceeding mountainous, as being over run by the branches of Mount *Caucasus*, which divides it from *Tartary*. So named of *Kakores* the chief Town thereof, by some called *Negarist*, their Staples for the sale of their cloth (most of the people being *Weavers*) bought of them by the *Chinays*, and *Tartarian* Merchants, who resort frequently to those Markets. This is a distinct Kingdom of it self, the Kings whereof are called *Derman*, but *Vassals* to the Great *Mongul*. And so is he of 3 *COUCHE*, another Kingdom of this Tract, fronting upon *Canchin* *China*, beyond *Ganges*; so called from *Conche*, the chief Town of it. The Country rich, by reason that it may be drowned, and dried up again, when the people will: full of good pastures by that means, and those well stored with Sheep, Goats, Swine, Deer, and other Cattel; though the people neither kill nor eat them, but on the contrary build Hospitals for them, in which when lame and old, they are kept while they die. Yet many times they eat their money, and I cannot blame them; their small money being *Almonds*.

4 *GOUREN*, the most Northern Realm in this general division, so called of *Gor*, or *Goren*, the chief Town of it. The Country in some parts mountainous, out of which springeth the River *Sichu*, one of the Tributaries unto *Ganges*, the rest a kind of a Desert or unpeopled Country, joyneth close to *Conche*, in which are few Villages, grasse (or reeds rather) longer than a man, and therein many *Buffs*, Tigers, and other wild Beasts none wilder than the Thieves, who frequent the Wildernesses.

In this Tract also are the Kingdoms of 5 *RAME*, and 6 *RECON*, joyning upon *Zagabab*, or enclining towards it; possessed by the *Mongul Tartars* from the time of *Tamerlane*, if not before: but *Fendataries* to the Kings of *Chabul* or *Arachofa*, who commanded in the North-East of *Persia*, and these North parts of *India*; and from those places drew his Army or the greatest part of it, when called unto the aid of *Galgée*, the King of *Mando*. Here is also the Kingdom of 7 *TIPPUR* *FA*, naturally fenced with Hills and Mountains, and by that means hitherto defended against the *Mongul Tartars*, their bad Neighbours, with whom they have continual wars. But of these Northern Kingdoms lying towards *Tartary*, there is but little to be said; and that little of no certain knowledge, those parts being hitherto so untravelled, that they may pass in the Account of a Terra Incognita.

## 11. PATANAW.

**PATANE** or **PATANAW**, is bounded on the North, with the Realm of *Botanier*; on the East, with *Ganges*; on the West, with *Orissan*; and on the South, with the Kingdom and Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Patane* the chief City of it. There is another Kingdom

Kingdom of this name in the further *India*: but whether it were so called because a Colony of this; or from some resemblances in the nature of the several Countries, or from the signification of the word in the *Indian* Language, I am not able to determine. Certain I am, that though they have the same name, yet they are under different Governments, and situate in far distant places: no otherwise agreeing than in some resemblances, as *Hiland* in the Low-Countries doth with *Holland* in *Lincolshire*.

The Country yieldeth veins of Gold, which they dig out of the pits, and wash away the earth from it in great Bolls. The people tall, and of slender making, many of them old: great Praters, and as great deflenders. The women so bedecked with Silver and Copper, especially about the feet, that they are not able to endure a shoe. Both Sexes use much washing in the open Rivers, and that so intermix together in their natural nakedness; especially such as live near the banks of the River *Jumena* (esteemed more holy than the rest) which from *Agra* passing thence this Country falleth into *Ganges*.

Chief Towns heretofore, 1 *Patane*, a large Town and a long one, built with very broad streets; but the houses very mean and poor, made at the best of earth and hurdles, and thatched over head. The Metropolis of this Kingdom, because the ancientest, and that which gives the name unto it. 2 *Banaras*, a great Town on *Ganges*, to which the *Gentiles* from remote Countries use to come in Pilgrimage, to bath themselves in the holy waters of that River. The Country betwixt this and *Patanaw*, very fair and flourishing, and beautified on the Road with handsome Villages. 3 *Siripure*, the chief Seat of one of the old Princes of this Country; not yet subdued by the Great *Mongul*. 4 *Cianderax*, on the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*; the Seat of another of their Kings. One of which memorable for a trick put upon the *Jesuits*, when blamed by them for the worship of so many *Pagodes*, as contrary both to the Law of God and Nature; For causing them to rehearse the Decalogue, he told them that he did offend no more against those commandments in worshipping so many *Pagodes*, than they themselves in worshipping so many *Saints*. 5 *Satagani*, a fair City (for a City of *Moors*) once part of *Patanaw*, since ascribed to *Bengala*.

The people of this Country properly called *Patanawes*, but corruptly *Partibians*, were once of great command and power in these parts of *India*. Lords, for a time, of a great part of the Kingdom of *Bengala*, into which driven by *Baburax*, the *Mongul Tartar*, the Father of *Emanpaxda*, and Grand-father of *Echebar*. Their last King being slain in that war, twelve of their chief Princes joyned in an *Arifocracy*, and warring upon *Emanpaxda* had the better of him. After this, their Successors attempted *Orissan*, and added that also to their Estate, but they could not long make good their fortunes, subdued by *Echebar* the *Mongul*, and made subject to him. Three of them, viz. the Prince of *Siripure*, the King of *Cianderax*, and he whom they call *Majadalin*, retain, as yet (for ought I can learn unto the contrary) as well their ancient *Paganism* as their natural liberty. The other nine, together with *Mahometanism*, have vassalised themselves to the Great *Mongul*, now the Lord Paramount of the Country.

## 12. BENGALA.

**BENGALA** is bounded on the North, with *Patanaw*; on the East, with the Kingdoms of *Pegu*; on the South and West, with the Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Bengala* the chief City of it. It containeth

in length on the Gulf and River 260 miles, and as much in breadth into the Land. A Country stored with all things necessary to the life of man, great plenty of Wheat, Rice, Sugar, Ginger, and long Pepper. Such abundance of Silk, and Cotton, and of Flesh and Fish, that it is impossible that any Country should exceed it in those commodities. And which crowns all, blest with so temperate and sweet an air, that it draws thither people of all sorts to inhabit it. Here is also amongst other rarities, a Tree, called *Moser*, which beareth so delicate a fruit, that the *Jems* and *Mahometans* who live here, affirm it to be the fruit which made *Adam* to live.

The natural Inhabitants for the most part are of white complexion, like the *Europeans*, subtil of wit, and of a curious disposition; well skilled in dealing in the world, much given to traffick, and intelligent in the way of Merchandise, if not somewhat deceitful. Not ignorant of other Arts, but with some finattering in *Philosophy*, *Physick*, and *Astronomy*. Stately and delicate both in their Diet and Apparel; not naked, as in others of these *Indian* Provinces, but clothed in a shirt or smock reaching to their feet, with some upper Garment over that. The women of an ill name for their unchastity, though *Adultery* be punished with cutting off of their noses. Neat, if not curious and roe coltly in this one custom, that they never feast meat twice in the same Port. But for every boyings buy a new one. In Religion, for the most part *Mahometans*, especially on the Sea-shores, which lay most open and commodious to the *Arabians*; by whom *Mahometanism* was here planted many Ages since.

Of Rivers we need take no care, having spoken of *Ganges*; that with its many channels may abundantly serve to water so small a Province. But heretofore more anon in a place more proper. Proceed we now unto the Cities. The principal whereof, 1 *Bengala*, which gave name to the whole Kingdom, situate on a branch of the River *Ganges*, and reckoned for one of the most beautiful Towns of all the *Indies*. Exceedingly enriched by trade, but more by Pilgrimages, by reason of the holiness and divine operations ascribed by the *Indians* to the waters of it: there being few years in which not visited by three or four hundred thousand Pilgrims. 2 *Guro*, the Seat Royal of the ancient Kings, 3 *Catagan*, on the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*, a well-traded Port. 4 *Taxda*, once a Town of great traffick, and situate in those times on the banks of *Ganges*; now by the changing of the channel (occasioned by the frequent over-flowing of it) above a League off from the River. 5 *Porto Grande*, and 6 *Porto Pequeno*, two Towns of the *Portugals*; but without Forces for defence, or rules for Governments. Places like the *Asylum*, which was built by *Romulus*; whereunto such as dare not stay in their own Countries, or any well regulated Cities; use to make their resort; priviledged here to live in all kind of licentiousness.

Here is also in the North parts of this Province, or adjoining to it, the City and Kingdom of *ARACHAN*; lying along the banks of *Ganges*, but so remote from the Sea, that it is 50 miles distant from the nearest branch of it. Wealthy, and populous withal; governed heretofore by a King of its own, so wallowing in wealth and sensual pleasures, that he had in this City, and the parts adjoining twelve Royal Palaces or *Seraglios*, all strowed with women for his lust. Now subject with *Bengala* and *Patanaw*, betwixt which it lyeth, to the Empire of the Great *Monguls*.

There are some small Islands in the Gulf of *Bengala*; which I account unto that Kingdom. 1 *Bazacata*, now called *Basse*. 2 *Barasse*, of which name there are five in *Pulomy*, three of them by *Mercator* said to be *Mindana*, *Cailen*, and *Sabur*. 3 Two, called the Islands of *Good Fortune*.

For some, by him placed upon the *Aquator*, and said to be inhabited by *Anthrophagi*, or man-eaters; and there were three more which he calls *4 Sadadibe*, now named *Cathana*, *5 Isfide Satoryrion*, or the Isles of *Satyr*, three calls like *Satyr*, and *6* those called *Manilio*, in number calls like *Satyr*, (now *Isles de Prace*) reported by *Phalomy* to be so few, (now *Isles of Bones*, that they violently drew off from any things or vessels which had Iron in them; for which cause they which used these Seas fastened the planks of their Ships with wooden Pins. But our later Navigators find no such matter, unless perhaps it may be in the exploits of *Sir Elum of Bonduaux*, where indeed we meet with such an Island, in the course of his Errand.

But to return again to the Kingdom of *Bengala*, we find it of a different constitution from the rest of the Kingdoms of these parts. Not governed by a Family of Successive Princes, defended from the Stem of a Royal Ancestry, as others are. Chance, or necessity, had brought thither many *Habshinies*, or *Aethiopiens*, who made a Conquest of the Country; and chose a King out of themselves. To keep what they had gotten, and perpetuate the Royal honour to the *Habshinie* Nation, they procured thence yearly thirty thousands of *Slaves*, whom they trained up unto the wars, advanced unto the highest commands in *Civil* and *Military* service; and out of them elected one for their Lord and Sovereign; as the *Mamuluck* in the Kingdom of *Egypt*, whom herein they followed. By some *Arabians* trading with them, they came to time to admit *Mohometanism*, amongst them the Sea-coasts especially. Dispossessed first of some part of their Kingdom, lying about *Satagan*, by the Part of their Kingdom, when driven to seek new dwellings by *Baburza*, the *Mongul Tartars*, and of the whole Kingdom, by the valour and good fortune of *Echebar*, who added it unto the rest of his Estate.

Thus have we drawn together all the Indian Provinces on this side of *Ganges* (the Kingdoms of *Malabar* and *Narsinga* being but a Parenthesis in the construction of this sentence) into the hands of the *Mongul*. So called for his descent from the *Mongul Tartars*, one of five great Tribes or Nations into which that people were divided. Derived originally from the famous and mighty *Tamerlane*, who having added almost all the Greater and Lesser *Asia* unto his Estates, left *Persia*, with the parts of *India* which lay nearest to it on the North, to *Myrza Charrak*, his fourth Son. But his Issue failing in *Abdulla*, the fourth of that Line, those Estates fell to *Abusaid*, descended from *Maromcha*, the third Son of *Tamerlane*: Whole Son and Successor called *Zawer*, by some *Malawares*, being diffided of the greatest part of the Kingdom of *Persia*, by *Ulfan-Cassane*, the rights of all, with the possession of *Arachbia* (now called *Cabul*) and *Parapamisus* (now *Candabar* or *Sablonan*) together with so much of *India* as was held by those Princes, remained in *Hamed*, one of the younger Sons of *Abusaid*, whose Posterity laying hold on such opportunities as were offered to them, have made themselves Masters in few years of this mighty Empire. Whole Successors and their achievements we shall here present.

#### The Great Mongul.

1743 1 *Hamed*, the son of *Abusaid*, of the Race of *Tamerlane*, after the Conquest of *Persia* by *Ulfan-Cassane*, succeeded in *Cabul*, *Candabar*, and the parts of the Realms of *India* subject to the *Tartars*.

1500 2 *Babur* or *Baburza*, in danger to be dispossessed of most of his Estates by the neighbouring

*Uzbekes*, living upon the borders of *Persia*, *Tartary*, and *India*, whom at last he quieted; enlarging his dominions by the Conquests of some part of *Patanawa*, and other Kingdoms in the North.

1532 2 *Hamuyen*, the Son of *Babur*, or *Baburza*, commonly called *Emanpazda*, vanquished by the *Parthians* or *Patanaws*, and their confederates, craved aid of *Tamas*, the second *Persian* Monarch of this Line, on promise to conform to the *Sepbian Seti*; and by that aid confirmed and settled his affairs; but held himself to the Principles of his Religion.

4 *Merhamed* or *Miranandus*, Son of *Emanpazda*, called in by *Galgee* the King of *Mandao*, against *Badurim* the *Cambaian*, vanquished the *Cambaian* King in two pitched fields; and conquered the Kingdoms of *Mandao*, and *Balsafa*, with some other Provinces.

5 *Adabar* the Son of *Merhamed*, added the Realms of *Delly* and *Cambalia*, unto his Dominions.

1550 6 *Mahomet Selabdin*, commonly called *Echebar*, brother of *Adabar*, the most fortunate and victorious Prince of all his Family, subdued the Kingdoms of *Caximir*, *Agra*, *Decan*, *Orissa*, *Bengala*, *Patanawa*, and divers others of less note.

1605 7 *Selim*, surnamed *Jangheere*, the Son of *Echebar*, who added nothing that I hear of, to his Fathers Conquests.

1627 8 *Blackie*, the Grand-child of *Selim* by his eldest Son, (wickedly murdered by the practice of *Curroon* or *Agra*) proclaimed King on the death of his Grand-father; but shortly after made away by *Asaph Chawm*, to make room for

1627 9 *Curroon*, the third Son of *Selim* or *Jangheere*, and Son-in-law unto *Asaph Chawm*; having by his own Ministers, and the hands of his Father-in-law, murdered the proclaimed King his Nephew, and all the other Princes of the Royal blood, succeeded into the Estates, and was Crowned at *Agra*. A wicked and bloody Prince, still living for ought I hear to the contrary.

To look a little on these Princes, their estate and powers in matters of Religion they have generally been *Mohometans*, that Religion being long since embraced by the *Tartars*, from whom they originally descended. But not so scrupulous or precise in that profession, as to endeavour the suppressing of any other opinions: both *Echebar*, and his Son *Jangheere*, being so inclined unto *Christianity*, that they permitted the *Jesuits* to build Colleges and Churches in *Agra* it self, the Imperial City, and many other chief Cities in his Dominions. Of *Echebar* it is reported, that being doubtful what Religion to adhere unto, he caused 30 infants to be so brought up, that neither their Nurses nor any body else should speak unto them: resolving to addict himself to the Religion of that Country, whose Language should be spoken by them, as most agreeable to nature; and he did accordingly. For as those Children spake no Language, so was he positive and resolved in no Religion; able to see the vanities of *Mohomet*, and the horrible impieties of the *Gentiles*, but not willing to conform unto the strictness of *Christianity*. And though *Selim* who succeeded, to content his *Mohometan* Subjects, declared himself for that Religion; yet his affairs being once settled, and his Throne confirmed, he became as *Neutral* as his Father; Sultan *Curroon* now reigning,

Reigning, of the same *Neutrality*, and 'tis well he is so, there being no Religion so impure and bloody, which he would not dishonour by his known ungraciousness.

The Language spoken by these Princes, and their natural Subjects the *Magores*, or *Mongul-Tartars*, is said by some to be the *Turkish*. But I think rather, that it is some Language near it, than the very same: And that the Language, from which they speak is the ancient *Scythian* or *Tartarian*, from which the *Turks* (a *Scythian* people) differ but in *Dialect*; a sprinkling of the *Persian* intermixt amongst them. A mixture not to be denied, in regard of their long dwelling in that Country, the intercourse which their Subjects of those parts have with these of *India*; and that the greatest part of their Soldiers, Officers, and Commanders are supplied from thence.

Their Government is absolute, if not *Tyrannical*, the Great *Mongul* being Lord of all, and heir to every man's estate which is worth the having: the Persons and Purposes of his Subjects at his sole disposing; so that he may amass what Treasures, and raise what Forces for the Wars his need requireth; or the *Avarice* or *Ambition* of his Ministers shall suggest unto him. First, for his Treasures, it is conceived that his Revenue doth amount yearly to fifty Millions of Crowns; and there are reasons to persuade that it may be more. The Country very rich, and notably well traded from all parts of the world, the *Impossi* upon which, is of infinite value; besides the vast sums of money brought into his Dominions from all Countries whatsoever, which hold traffick here: their Commodities not being to be parted with but for ready *Coin*. The whole Land being also his, he estates it out for no term certain, retaining a third part of the profits to himself, and leaving two thirds to the *Occupants*, to be held by them during pleasure. Who if they thrive upon their bargains, they thrive not for themselves, but him: it being in his power, if he want patience to expect the Incumbent's death, to enter on the whole estate of the *Tenant* by the way of *Echebar*: but if he tarry till the death of the *Occupant*, it falls to him of course, the Wife and Children of the deceased being fairly dealt with, if he content himself with the personal estate, and leave the Land to them to begin a new; for Instance, of those huge sums which in so rich a Country may be had this way, it is said, that when the *Vice-Roy* of *Lahna* dyed, he left to *Echebar* three Millions of Gold, besides Silver, Jewels, Horses, Elephants, Furniture and Goods, almost invaluable: And of one *Raga Nagur*, another of his great Officers, that at his death the Great *Mongul* seized of his into his hands 3300 pound weight of Gold, besides Plate and Jewels. Besides these means of heaping Treasure, all the Mines of the Country are wholly his, and the *Professors* given by all sorts of *Sutors* hardly to be numbered; none being admitted to his presence which comes empty handed. Finally, if *Badurim*, which was King of *Cambalia* only, could bring into the field at once 500 Tuns of Gold and Silver to pay his Army; and after the loss of all that treasure, advanced upon the sudden the sum of 600000 Crowns, which he sent to *Solymann* the *Magnificent* to come to succour him both which it is well known he did: What infinite *Treasurers* must we think this Prince to be Master of, who hath more than four times the estate of the King of *Cambalia*, and far more trading now than in former times.

By the like Parallel we may conjecture somewhat at his Forces also; *Badurim* the *Cambaian* brought into the field against *Merhamed*, and the King of *Mandao*, as was partly touched upon before, 150000 Horses, 500000 Foot, 2000 Elephants armed, 2000 Pieces of brass Ordnance, of which were 4 *Bastilks*, each of them drawn with 100 Yoke of Oxen; and 500 Carts loaded with Powder

What then may we conceive of this Prince, and of so much a greater Estate than he, but that his Estate may be raised proportionably to 6 great Dominions? But because possibly *Badurim* did extend himself to the utmost of his power, and having lost two Battels, was never able to recruit again, which no wise Prince could do but in great extremities: It is conceived that the *Mongul*, without running any such hazards on the loss of a Battel, can in an instant raise 50000 Elephants 300000 Horses and Foot proportionable; and yet have stock enough for an *After-game*, if that he should chance to lose the first. But it is seldom that he hath advanced to so high a *Messier*. For in his action upon the Kingdoms of *Decan*, he had but an hundred thousand men, and a thousand Elephants for fights though possibly of all sorts of people there might be more than double that number. For in his ordinary removes in times of *Progress*, it is said that his followers of all sorts amount unto two hundred thousand; and that his Tents do usually take up as much ground as the City of *London*. Yet notwithstanding this great power, the fortunes of this Empire hath not only been at a stand, since the death of *Echebar*, but the *Rashoobes* in *Cambalia*, the *Venazars* in *Decan*, and other pusillat Rebels in other parts of his Dominions, hold out still against him; some of them being laid to command as much Land as a pretty good Kingdom, and to have always in readines 20000 horse, and 50000 foot, to make good their Mountains. Nature, or Divine providence hath given to Emperors, as to Men, a determinate growth, beyond which there is no exceeding.

#### 2. INDIA EXTRA GANGET.

INDIA EXTRA GANGET is that part of the great Continent of *India*, which lieth on the further side of the River *Ganges*, from the spring or fountain of it, whosoever it be, to the fall thereof into the Sea by the fifth and last mouth thereof, which is called *Ambohi*: The other four being reckoned into the other part of *India*, on this side of that River. From hence extended Eastward as far as *China* and the *Oriental* Ocean, on other parts bounded as before.

The Country in those elder times so renowned for wealth, that one Tract of it had the name of *The Silver Region*, and another of *The Golden Chersonese*: this last supposed to be the *Opbis* of *Solymann*, of which more hereafter. The people of the same nature and disposition, in the elder times, as those which did inhabit on the hither side of the *Ganges*; nor so well known to the *Greeks* or *Romans* as the others were, by reason of the remoteness of their situation, nor so well discovered at the present. So that the best account we shall be able to give of it (though that lame enough) will not be so exact and punctual as of that before, with reference either to the state thereof in the times of the Ancients, or the affairs of it in these days.

Mountains of most note in it, 1 *Byrrun*, 2 *Mandrin*, 3 *Semantinus*; and 4 those called *Damaji*, touched upon before, in our general discourse of *India*. Out of which, and from other springs, flow these following Rivers, 1 *Catabeda*, 2 *Borjanna*, 3 *Sadur*, 4 *Temala*, 5 *Bofyn-ga*, 6 *Chrysauros*, 7 *Polandus*, 8 *Atiabak*, these three last in the part hereof called the *Golden Chersonese*, 9 *Damas*, and 10 *Doria*, rising out of the Mountains called *Damaji*. Others there are whose names I meet with in my Author, but of no great note: by what names any of them now distinguished it is hard to say. Nor find I any who have dared to adventure on it.

Of the chief Towns, 1 *Balanga*, 2 *Cirtaba*, 3 *Tesale*, 4 *Tagma*, and 4 *Malibara*, have the name of being the Metropolis of their several Nations, 1 *Triglyphon*, only D d honoured





coming to the Crown, is to build a Temple; which he adorned with high Steeples, and many Idols. 2 *Quedus*, renowned for the bell Pepper, and for that cause very much frequented by foreign Merchants. 3 *Tavay*, upon the Sea-coast where it joineth to *Pegu*. Whence measuring along the shores till we come to *Champa* before mentioned, being all within the Dominions of the King of *Siam* (not reckoning the *Chersonese* into this Account) we have a Sea-coast of the length of 600 Leagues. 4 *Lugor*, upon the Sea-side also, near that little *Hydra*, which joineth the *Chersonese* to the Land; from whence to *Malacca*, is 600 miles sail all along the coast; 5 *Calaman*, the head City of a little Kingdom, but subject to the Crown of *Siam*. 6 *Siam*, the chief City of this part of the Kingdom, which it giveth this name to. A goodly City, and very commodiously seated on the River *Menam*, for Trade and Merchandize. So populous and frequented by foreign Nations, that besides the Natives, here are said to be thirty thousand households of *Arabians*. The houses of it high built by reason of the Annual deluge, during which time they live in the Upper-rooms; and unto every house a Boat for the use of the Family. Those of the poorer sort dwell in little sheds, made of Reed and Timber; which they remove from place to place for the best convenience of their Markets: And yet so strong, that being besieged by the *Tanguan* Conqueror, then King of *Pegu*, Anno 1567, with an Army of fourteen hundred thousand fighting men, for the space of 20 months together, it resolutely held good against him: not gained at last by Force, but Treason, one of the Gates being set open to him in the dead time of the night, and by that means the City taken. The people hereof are thought to be inclining to Christianity; but hitherto foil instructed in the Principles of it, that they maintain, amongst many other strange opinions, that after the end of 2000 years, (from what time I know not) the World shall be consumed with fire; and that under the ashes of it shall remain two Eggs, out of which shall come one man and one woman, who shall people the world anew.

5. *MUANTAT*, the last of these Kingdoms, lieth betwixt *Jangama* and *Siam*; memorable for nothing more than the City of *Odia*, or *Udia*, the principal of all the Kingdoms of *Siam*; and the usual residence of those Kings. Situate on the banks of the River *Caspima*, and containing in it 40000 Inhabitants, of which 5000 are trained to the Wars, and in continual readiness for present service. For though this King be Lord of nine federal Kingdoms, yet he useth none of them in his Wars but the natural *Siamites*, and those of this City, and the rest of his Subjects of *Muantay*. It is said that for the use of this City only (being seated like *Venice* upon many little Islands, not bridged together) there are no fewer than 200000 Sciffs, and Shallops; serving to wait the people from one place to another. By means hereof of great strength, and almost impregnable. But being beleaguered by the *Tanguan* or *Bermin* Conqueror with ten hundred thousand fighting men (an Army big enough to have buried a greater City than this, if every man had but cast a shovel full of earth upon it) it was won at last.

The Government of these Kings of *Siam*, was absolute heretofore, if not tyrannical, he being sole Lord of all the Land in his Kingdoms; which he either gave to his Nobles, or Farmed out to Husbandmen, during life or pleasure, but never passed over unto any right of Inheritance. And these he grants unto his Subjects, beside rents in money, upon condition to maintain a determinate number of Horse, Foot, and Elephants: thereby enabled without further charge unto the Subject, to levy 20000 Horse, and 250000 Foot for present service;

besides far greater numbers out of the residue of his people, if occasion be. And for his ordinary Guard he was said to keep 6000 Souldiers, and 200 Elephants, of which Beasts he is reported to have 30000, of which every tenth Elephant is trained up to the War. By reason of so great a power he became Master of the Realms of *Cambaya* and *Campa*; held those of *Malacca*, *Jor*, *Pahau*, and *Panam*, as his Vassals and Tributaries; with that of *Jangama* and the *Laos*, under his protection. But when the fatal time was come, and that his City of *Siam* was betrayed to the King of *Pegu*, he poisoned himself upon the news, his Son becoming Tributary to the *Peguan* Victor. This Son of his, too much a Prince to be a Subject, revolted from a Son of the *Peguan*, a vicious and tyrannical King, degenerating from the gallantries of so worthy a Father; by whom he was besieged in *Siam* with 90000 fighting men. Unable to resist his Army if he had presently declared such a resolution, he entertained the King with Treaties, and promises of delivering the City to him, till the third month after, (which was *March*) when ordinarily the River was to overflow all the Country for 120 miles about: by which sudden and violent inundation and the Sword together (the *Siamites* waiting diligently for the opportunity) there perished all of this great Army, except 70000. After this blow, the conquering *Siam*, Anno 1600, besieged and endangered the City of *Pegu*, of which more anon; and dying in the year 1205, left his Estate unto his Brother. Whole Son succeeding, settled a *Factory* in *Siam* of the *English* Merchants, Anno 1612, and was in a fair way of obtaining the Sovereignty of *Pegu*, then destroyed and wasted; if the violent and unreluctant coming of the King of *Burma* had not crossed him in it: to whom now subject with the rest of the *Indian* Princes, on that side of the River.

#### 6. PEGU

*PEGU* is bounded on the East, with *Jangama*, and a part of *Siam*; on the North, with the Kingdoms of *Bramas*, on the West and South, with the Kingdom of *Bengala*. So called from *Pegu* the chief City, as that by the name of the River upon which it stands eth. Divided commonly into the Kingdoms and Estates of 1 *Verma*, 2 *Macin*, 3 *Orachan*, 4 *Martavan*, and 5 *Pegu*, specially so called.

1. *VERMA* is the name of a small Kingdom bordering upon *Bengala*; and so denominated from *Verma*, the chief Town thereof: A Kingdom which hath no Port or Haven at all; and therefore wholly freed of *Moor* and *Mahometans*, which can be said of no other of these *Indians* Kingdoms.

The People black, naked above the Waiste, and covered beneath it only with a Veil of Cotton; in matter of Religion, *Gentiles*; and in war right valiant. This last apparent by the long and frequent Wars which they had with the *Peguan*s; to whom made tributary in conclusion, but not fully conquered.

2. *MACHIN* so called from *Macin* the chief City thereof, is another of these *Peguan* Kingdoms. Of final esteem, but for the great quantity of the Sweet-wood, by the *Latins* called *Lignum Vitæ*, by the Natives *Calamba*, so much in use for Funerals and Batches, (as was said before) held a llo by the *Indians* for a sovereign and unparalleled Medicine against many dangerous diseases; great quantities hereof are brought hence yearly by the Merchant. One of the first Kingdoms which was conquered by the King of *Burma*, (upon whom it bordereth) in the beginning of his Fortunes.

3. *ORACHAN*, or *Arachan*, lieth on the West of *Macin*, and the South of *Verma*; environed round with

with Mountains, and impassable Woods, Chief Towns whereof, 1 *Dianga*, taken and destroyed by the *Portugals*, in the quarrels betwixt them and the King of *Arracan*, Anno 1608. 2 *Sundua*, situate in an Island unto which it giveth name, six Leagues off from the Continent of *Bengala*, to which it formerly belonged. Subdued by the *Portugals*, Anno 1602, and from them taken by this King about two years after, and made a member of his Kingdom. The Island 20 Leagues in compass, very strong, fruitful, and the Town well fortified. 3 *Arachan*, the head City, which gives name to all, distant from the Sea 45 miles, but seated on a large and capacious River. The King and Kingdom of no note, till the ruins of *Pegu*, to the Crown whereof it once pertained. In the Desolation of which State the King hereof combining with him of *Tango*, besieged the second *Peguan* King in the Castle of *Mear*, and had betwixt them the whole Pillage of that wealthy City, together with the possession of the best Towns of it. After this victory, he returned to *Arachan* in triumph, leading with him the *White Elephant* of the King of *Pegu*, sumptuously adorned; the Brother and two Sons of the *Peguan* following in the *Pageant*. A solemn and magnificent entry. The better to assure himself of his new Dominions, this King bestowed upon the *Portugals* the Fort of *Sirrahong*, on the River *Pegu*. For which favour, ill-requited by the *Portugals*, who had taken his Son, and put him to a grievous ransom, they brake out into open Wars. In the pursuit whereof, for many losses, the King recovered from them the Isle of *Sundua*; and manning out a Fleet of 1200 Sail (of which 75 were of great burden, as to carry every one twelve Pieces of Ordnance) and in that Fleet 30000 Souldiers, 8000 hand-guns, and 3500 great Pieces, besieged the Fort: which in that action also by the King of *Tango*, and though he failed in his design, yet like enough he had prevented the King of *Arachan*, who took it in the year 1613, as before is said, had he not been out in the mean time of his own Kingdom by the King of *Burma*: of whose great life, the conquering of the Realms of *Macin* and *Arachan* were the first foundation.

4. *MARTAVAN*, the richest of these Kingdoms, lieth South to *Arachan*, a little turning towards the West. The soil so fertile, that it yieldeth three Harvests in a year; and sent annually fifteen Ships to *Cochin*, and as many to *Malacca*, laden with Rice. Rich also in Mines of Iron, Lead, Steel, Brass, Silver, Gold, and *Rubies*, and very liberally provided of Springs and Rivers. The Forts well stored with Harbs, Boreas, and *Buffals*; store of Pines and Palms: the Woods with *Sugar-Cane*s, many excellent fruits; the ordinary herbs and shrubs either *Medicinal* or *Odoriferous*. The principal City of it called also *Martavan*, situate on a Haven open at all times of the year, and not choaked with Sands, as usually other Havens are in the *Indian Water*: of great trading, much splendour, and a temperate Air. Faithful unto the last to the Crown of *Pegu*, to the Kings whereof their own were subject; and in that constancy they twice repulsed the King of *Siam*, who then had conquered the most part of the Kingdom of *Pegu*. Angry whereat, the *Siamite* called two of his cowardly Captains to be cast into a Caldron of boiling Oil; and at the third Assault became Master of it. *Bannala* the old King hereof (59 years old) with his heir apparent, and 200000 of his Subjects being compelled to hide themselves in the Woods and Defiles.

5. *PEGU*, the most Predominant Kingdom, lieth like a *Crescent* or Half-Moon on the Gulf of *Bengala*; extending on the coast from *Negrais* unto *Tavan*, the next Town of *Siam*, for the space of three hundred miles, and upwards; but little less in breadth, if not quite as much.

So called from the River *Pegu*, which runs through the middle of it, and gives this name also unto *Pegu* the most noted City.

The Soil hereof exceeding fruitful, by reason of the annual overflows of the River, which do yearly fatten it, fit to bear Wheat, and of Rice yielding an incredible quantity. It affordeth also many *Rubies*, great numbers of *Civet-Cats*, plenty of *Lures*, (a Gum there made by *Ants*, as here Bees make Wax) store of Elephants, and abundance of Parrots, which speak plainer, and are much fairer than in any place else.

The people of a mean stature, somewhat corpulent, and naturally beardless. If any trailing hair thrust forth, they always carry Piners with them to pull them out. Nimble and strong, but yet not very fit for Wars spending too much of their strength in the love of women, to which most passionately addicted. They black their Teeth, because they say that dogs teeth be white; and wear no cloaths but on their heads and about their nakedness. Said by the *Jews* to be descended from some of the Tribes of *Israel*, confined hither by *Solomon*; but by the *Peguan* themselves, to be begotten of a Dog and a *China* woman, which were saved here upon a Shipwreck. By Religion for the most part *Gentiles*, imagining innumerable Worlds one after another, and a determinate number of Gods for every World: more *Orbicular*, in aligning after the life, according to the merits of the party deceased, one place of *Torment*, and another of *Delight* and Pleasures, if they had not added a third also for *Justification*.

Chief Cities of this Kingdom. 1 *Cosni*, seated in a Territory full of woods, as those Woods of *Tigers*, Wild Bores, Apes and Parrots; the houses made of *Canes*, which serve here for Timber, (some of them being as big as Hogheads) covered over with Thatch. 2 *Josabela*, a great City on the River *Pegu*. 3 *Dian*, on the same River also where they make Barks or Vessels as big as *Galleys*; which serve both for Trade and Habitation. 4 *Coslin*, a City four-square, and each square four miles. 5 *Langan*, a pleasant Town, and full of Palm-trees. 6 *Dala*, in which were the Kings Stables for his ordinary Elephants: his four *White Elephants* (for so many he had) being all years kept about the Court, not seen abroad, but in great solemnities, when trapped in Furnitures of Gold; and no less honoured by the people, than the King himself: called therefore King of the *White Elephant* by the neighbouring Princes. 7 *Silnangade*, where many victualing Barks are made to serve for dwelling on the Sea. 8 *Mear*, can, where they are made to unload such goods as are to pass by Land to *Pegu*. Neighbouring by the strongest Cattle in all this Kingdom, and therefore chosen by the King for his place of *Kerret*, when distressed by the Kings of *Arachan*, and *Tango*. To the last of which making choice to yield up his Person, with his Wife and Children, because he had married him to his Sister, he was by him periodically and barely murdered. 9 *Sirrahong*, a strong piece on the mouth of the River, given by the King of *Arachan* to the *Portugals*, and by them committed to the keeping of *Philip de Brito*, in the year one thousand six hundred, or thereabouts. Who having made it good against him, and the King of *Tango* his associate for the space of thirteen years together, was at last forced to yield himself Prisoner to the King of *Arachan*, by whom cruelly tortured on a Spit. 10 *Pegu*, the glory of these parts, great, strong, and beautiful: Divided into two Towns, the *Old* and the *New*; the *Old* inhabited by Merchants, the *New* by the King and his Nobility. The Houses made of Wood, but covered with Tiles: a *Cocoa*-Tree before every house, yielding a comfortable shade, and a pleasant fence. The streets as straight as any line, and so broad that ten or twelve men may ride abreast in the



the narrowest of them. In figures square, each square having five Gates, besides many Turrets, all of them beautifully gilded. The whole well walled with Walls of stone environed on all sides with great Ditches; and in the midst the Royal Palace, walled and ditched about, most sumptuously gilded; but especially the Temple or *Idol-chapel*, the walls whereof were hid with Gold, the Roof tiled with Silver.

In this magnificent Palace lived the *Peguan* Kings, in as much pomp and pleasure as the World could yield: his Empire not extending only over these Kingdoms now described, but over all the Provinces or Kingdoms of the *Bramines* also; which he governed by his several *Vice-Roy*s, or rather *TRIBUTARIE* Kings. A happiness too great to continue long. For in the year 1567, the *Vice-Roy* or *Tributary* King of *Tangu*, by the aid of his Faction, and reputation of his Virtues, entered into rebellion; and slaying the Nobles of the Land, usurped that Kingdom. After this he subdued the Cities and Kingdoms of *Calam*, *Melintay*, *Prom*, *Miranda*, and *Ava*, inhabited all of them by the *Brames* or *Bramines*; and therefore taking to himself the Title of the King of *Brama*, because his fame and fortunes took their rise from his victories over them. Following the course of his success he first assailed the Cities of *Odia*, and *Siam*, but repulsed with loss. To make amends for which misfortune, he beleaguered *Pegu*, and subdued it; and by the reputation which he got in that action, returning to the siege of *Siam*, had it yielded to him. Dying, he gave the Kingdom of *Ava* unto one of his Brothers; that of *Prom*, to one of his Grand-sons; the Kingdom of *Jangona* to a younger Son, but born after the time of his obtaining the Crown of *Pegu*; and finally that of *Pegu*, with the Sovereignty over all the rest, to his eldest Son, a Prince of a vicious and tyrannical nature: and not more cruel to his Subjects, than they disobedient to him. Whereupon preparations are made on both sides, the people, to defend their liberty; the King, to preserve his Royalty. During these civil discords, the titular King of *Siam*, whose late overthrow was not yet fully digested, came violently into the Country of *Pegu*; burning Corn, Grass, and Fruits, killing Man, Woman, and Child: and having satisfied his Fury, returned to his home. This spoil of the Fruits of the Earth, was but a prologue to an unsupportable Famine, which consumed

all the Inhabitants of this flourishing Kingdom, except such whom the *Granaries* of the City of *Pegu* preferred, Anno 1568. For here the Fathers devoured their Children, the stronger preyed upon the weaker; not only devouring their more fleshy parts, but their entrails also: nay they broke up the skulls of such as they had slain, and sucked out their brains. This calamity incited another Tributary Prince of *Tangu*, to make his best advantage out of his neighbours affliction; though made his Brother-in-law, and advanced to great honours by his Father. For justly fearing the displeasure of his angry Prince, to whose aid he had refused to come, when sent for by him, he joined himself with the King of *Arracan*, besieged his Lord and Sovereign in the Fort of *Meccan*. Brought to extremities, the unfortunate Prince, thought best to put himself into the hands of his Brother of *Tangu*, who assaulted and entered *Pegu*: where he found as much Treasure as 600 Elephants, and as many Horses, could conveniently carry away. This havock being made, he villanously murdered the King, Queen, and their Children, and departed; leaving the gleanings of his spoil to the King of *Arracan*: who, Anno 1600, was expelled by the King of *Siam*, who enjoyed it not long. For the King of *Burma* having with an Army of an hundred thousand fighting men, and forty thousand Elephants, subdued the Kingdoms of *Macin*, and *Arracan*, followed the currents of his victories; conquered *Siam*, drove the King thereof from *PEGU*, where he hath built a most magnificent Palace: and is now the sole Monarch of the Twelve Kingdoms of this *India*.

A more particular relation of this King, and his new-settled estate, we cannot yet understand: what his Revenues are, what his Government, what his Forces. Merchants, whose iniquitiveness into the State-Matters of other Princes, is dangerous to their trading, cannot give us any full satisfaction: *Scholars* and *Statists* are not permitted to observe and such of the Natives as could give us the most light, are not suffered to travel. Only we may conjecture by the great wealth of those several Princes, and the vast Armies by them raised in their several Territories: that his Annual Revenues, *Casualties*, and united Forces must be almost infinite.

And so much for *INDIA*.



OF

## The Oriental Islands.



HE ORIENTAL ISLANDS, so called from their situation in the *Oriental*, or Eastern Seas, may be divided into the Islands of 1. *Japan*, 2. the *Philippine*, and Isles adjoining, 3. the Islands of *Bantam*, 4. the *Malucces*, 5. those called *Sinde*, or the *Celebes*, 6. *Borneo*, 7. *Java*, 8. *Sumatra*, 9. *Ceilan*, and 10. certain others of less note,

### 1. JAPAN.

*JAPAN* is an aggregate body of many Islands, separated by small Gulfs, Strights, and Turnings of the Sea; but taking name from *Japan*, the chief of all. Some reckon them to be 66 in all; others ascribe that number to so many Kingdoms, into which these Islands (be they in number more or less) use to be divided. But whatsoever the number be (the certainty whereof I can no where find, there are three only of account, to which the several petty Kingdoms are now reduced: that is to say, 1. *Japan* specially so called, which containeth 53 Kingdoms, of which 26 are under the King of *Macao*, 12 under the King of *Annam*, the other 15 under other Princes of inferior note. 2. *Ximo*, which containeth in it nine Realms, the principal whereof are those of *Baigrand Figen*, 3. *Nicum*, which comprehendeth four only of these petty *Seignories*.

*JAPAN* is the chief of all these Islands, to which the residue may be accounted of but as *Appartenances*, is situate over against the straits of *Aniau* (if such straits there be) towards which it looketh to the North: distant from *New Spain* on the East 150 Leagues, or 450 *English* miles; and 60 Leagues from *Canton*, a Province of *China*, opposite to it on the West. On the South it hath the vast Ocean, and those infinite shoals of Islands which are called the *Philippine*, and the Isles neighbouring upon them. Extending in length from West to East 200 Leagues, but the breadth not proportionable therunto: in some places not above 10 Leagues over, and in the broadest part but 30.

The Country Mountainous and barren, but of a very healthy air, if not too much subject unto cold, yet in some places they have Wheat ripe in the Month of *Mays*; but their Rice, which is their principal sustenance, they gather not before *September*. The surface of the Earth, clothed with Woods and Forrests, in which some Cedars of so tall and large a body, that one of them only is sufficient to make a Pillar for a Church: the bowels of it flooded with divers Metals, and amongst others with such inexhaustible Mines of Gold, that *Paulus Venetus* reporteth some of the Palaces of their Kings to be covered, in his time, with sheets of Gold, as ours in *Europe* are with Lead. But I find no such matter in our latter Travellers. Their Fields and Meddows full of Cattel, and hitherto not made acquainted with the making of *Butter*; their

Fens much visited by wild Ducks, as their house-yards with *Pigeons*, *Turtles*, *Quails*, and *Pullets*.

The People for the most part of good understanding, apt to learn, and of able memories; cunning and subtle in their dealings. Of body vigorous and strong, accustomed to bear Arms until 60 years old. Their complexion of an Olive-Color, their beards thin, and the one half of the hair of their heads shaved off. Patient they are of pain, ambitious of glory, uncapable of suffering wrong, but can withal defensible their contentments of it till opportunity of revenge. They reproach no man for his poverty, so it come not by his own unthriftiness, for which cause they detest all kinds of gaming, as the ways of ill-husbandry; and generally abhor *Slavery*, *Theft*, and *Swearings*. Their mourning commonly is in white, as their scarls in blacks; their teeth they colour black also, to make them beautiful: they mount on the right side of the horse, and sit (as we are used to rise) when they entertain. In *Physick* they eat salt things, sharp, and raw; and in their *salutations* they put off their shoes. The very *Antipodes* of our world in customs though not in site, and the true Type or Figure of the old *English* *Dunon*, opposite to the *Papists* in things fit and decent, though made ridiculous many times by that opposition. In other things they do much resemble those of *China*, if not the more ceremony of the two: walking their Infant children in the nearest River, as soon as born, and putting off their shoes when they go to meat.

The People have but one Language, but those do intermingled with the words of other Nations, that it seems rather to be many Languages than one. They have long used the Art of *Printing*, which probably enough, they might have from *Chinese* Characters whereof are a kind of *Brachygraphy*, and signify not only Letters, but some whole words also. In matters of Religion, *Gentiles*, adoring anciently the Sun, Moon, and the Stars of Heaven, and giving divine honour to wild beasts, and the Stags of the Forrests: but finally worshipping some of their deceased Priests and Princes, by the names of *Potatoes* and *Caneiros* the first of which they use to pray for goods of the other world, and to the last for *Temporal* blessings. Their Priests they call by the name of *Bonzes*, settled in goodly *Convents*, and endowed with very large Revenues: who though divided into eleven different (if not contrary) Sects, do well enough agree in denying the Providence of God, and the Immortality of the Soul. Of late times by the care and diligence of the *Jesuits*, *Christianity* hath begun to take footing here; whether with such a large increase as their Letters called *Epistols Japonicae* have been pleased to tell us, I am somewhat doubtful. They tell us there are some Kings of these Islands, whom they have converted and baptized, that within 50 miles of *Macao* they had 50 Churches, 200 at the least in all, and that in the year 1587, the number of their Converts were two hundred thousand. Of this, if



There is not far off another Island, not in this account, called *Timor*, situate in the tenth degree of *Southern* Latitude; the chief of many little Islands which lie round about it; but not else observable, except it be for that abundance of *Sanders* both white and yellow, which growing there, is greedily exchanged by the Inhabitants for Iron, Hatchets, Swords, Knives, and the like commodities.

#### 4. The *MOLVCCOES*.

**T**HE *MOLUCCOES* are in number many; the King of *Terate* which is one of them, being said to have Dominion over 70 Islands: but the *determinate* number of them I do not where hind. Situate on both sides of the *Aequator*, and consequently of an hot and temperate air: the foyl so dry and spongiuous, that it sucketh up the greatest shower of Rain that doth fall amongst them, before it can pass into the Sea. Not very well furnished with necessaries for the life of man; but that defect supplied with the abundance of Spice which are growing here, *Cinnamon*, *Ginger*, *Nutmeg*, *Mullick*, *Aloes*, *Pepper*, and the like commodities; for which the Merchants bring them all things that the Country wants. But 'tis the *Clowe*, which is the great Riches of these Islands, and peculiar in a manner to them. A Spice, which groweth on Trees, like Bay-trees yielding blofoms, first white, then green, (at which time they yield the pleasantest smell in the world) and lat of all red and hard, which are the *Cloves*. Of nature so extreme hot that if a Pail of water should only stand in the room, in which they are cleansed and sorted, the *Cloves* in two days would dry it up. Of which nature the unsun Silks of *China* are affirmed to be.

Tin: People for the most part *Idolaters*; intermix with some *Mahometans*, dwelling on the shores; and of late times with *Christians* in their several *Factories*. Of several *Originals*, and different Languages, but all in general fraudulent, peridious, treacherous, inhumane, and of noted wickedness. Few of them clothed, nor much caring to hide their shame. Not civilized by the cohabitation of more model and civil Nations. Pure fuch ill conditions should be lodged in such handfome bodies : the people being faid to be better proportioned than the other *Indians*; and for ftrength and valour not followed by any of them.

of Orléans, the Islands which pass under this name, there are not above five or six of any reckoning: that is to say, 1 *Tenote*, 2 *Tidor*, 3 *Maicir*, 4 *Rachin*, 5 *Maebian*, and 6 *Borac*: None of them above fix Leagues in compass, many not so much; the whole cluster of them thronged together in a girdle of no more than 25 Leagues in the Circumference: yet of such consequence and importance, that the two famous voyages of *American Vespulius*, and *Ferdinand Magellanus*, the first employed by *Enmanuel King of Portugal*, the other by *Charles the Emperour*, and *King of Spain*, were undertaken only to find out the next way unto them.

Of the rest, *Machian* and *Tidore* have their proper Kings; so hath *Bathoe* also, if that be one of them: the King whereof had anciently some title and authority over those of *Bandon*. *Machy*, and *Machian*, are subject to the King of *Terenate*, who is a *Mahometan* in Religion; and said to be the Lord of 70 Islands. This the most puffed Member of this scattered body; and for that cause most aimed at by all Competitors, the *Spaniards* having here one Fortred, and the *Hollanders* three. Both Nations hated by the Natives, whom they continue and wait in the wars between them; but of the two the *Spaniards* looked on by the people as the more a *Gentleman*; and the other stomached and deplored for their *ferdid* dealings.

Nothing else memorable in the story of *Cherography* of them, but that they were discovered by the conduct of *Magellanus*, in the Reign of *Charles the Fifth*, who employed him in it, Anno 1519, and that there is in *Ternate* a Prodigious Mountain, in height above the Clouds of the Air, and in Nature agreeing with the Element of Fire, which it seems to mount to: huge flames whereof, with dreadful thunders, and dark smoke, it sends forth continually. reckoned by some amongst these Islands, but howsoever neighbouring near them, are those of *Sulzerone*, and *Polarisay*, the first more plentiful of Cloves, the second more proper for the Nutmeg, but both acknowledging the Sovereignty of the Kings of England; nor *Palerone*, by the general and voluntary Act of all the chief men of the Country, was surrendered into the power of King James, the possession of it being given for his Majesties use to Captain Court, Decemb. 23. Anno 1616, no other Nation at that time having any interest in it, or Pretensions to it: which notwithstanding it was not long after seized on by the insolent and ungrateful *Hollanders*, who being to reform it upon composition, cut down all the *Clove-Trees*, so to deprive the *English* of the benefit of them. *Polarisay* made the like surrender at the same time also, declared by setting up the *English* Colours on the top of their Castle, giving to Court a green tuff (whereby as by Livery and Scut) to take possession of the Country, promising the annual tribute of a branch of *Nutmegs*; and that they should sell neither *Mace* nor *Nutmegs* to any, but to those of the *English* Nation. The like done at or near the same time, by *Wayre* and *Roffings*, two other Islands of these Seas; which if they be not those two of *Burdon*, pointed at before, must needs be brought within the number of this latterd Company.

5. The *SINDÆ* or *SELEBES*.

Near the *Molucces*, and almost intermingled with them, are a set of Islands which *Proslamy* calleth *SINDA*, and the Moderns *SELEBES*; many in tale, but not above four of any *weight*; so that to say, *SELEBES*, *2 Gito*, *2 Ambina*, *1 Misciss*; of which the two first are situate under the *Equator*, and the last somewhat on the South of it: all of them the time of *Proslamy* inhabited by *Anthrophagi*, and a long time after; inhom as the Kings of the *Molucces* did use to fend their condemned persons into these Islands, there to be devoured. Which said in general we will take a more particular view of them, as they lie before us.

1. *SELEBES*, which gives name to the reef, and hath under it many lesser Iflands, is large and rich. The soil thereof exceeding fertile, the people tall and comely, and of colour, not so much black as ruddy. Much given to *Piracy*, and all *Idolaters* full of lare. Governed by many Kings or petty Princes, the cause of much contention, and many quarrels: three of which are said to have been converted to Christianity; and for that cause much hated by their heathenish Subjects, who thereupon rebelled against them. It is situate West of the *Molucces*, and hath therein a Town called *Sion*, honoured with the abode of one of their Christian Kings: but possibly not so called until their conversion; the proper name thereof being *Cian*, 2. *Nibon*, in the South, and 3. *Terdin* in the North parts of it.

2. *GILOLO*, called also *Batachina*, is one of those Islands, which our late Navigators include under the name of *Del Moro*. Of large extent, conceived to be half as big as *Italy*. By that account (the truth whereof I do very much doubt) greater than *Zeilan* is in compass, though of less reputation: That being governed by its own Prince: This subject for the most part to the King of *Amboyna*.

Terenatc.

*Tenante*. Situate East of the *Moluccoes*, exceeding plentiful of Rice, well stored with wild Hens; and on the shores provided of a kind of *Shell-fish*, which in taste much resembleth Mutton. A tree they have which they call by the name of *Sagu*, of the pith whereof they make their bread; and of the sap or juice of it they compose a pleasing drink, which serveth them instead of Wine. Their intemperately hot; the people well proportioned but rude and savage; some of them *Gentiles*, some *Manichaeans*, of which last Religion is their King, the chief Town of it is *Batchame*, or *Batashina*, (whence the new name unto the Island) in which the *Hollanders* have a Fort to defend their Factory.

3; *AMBOINA*, South of the *Aganina*, and the third of the *Sinde*, hath many Islands of less note, which depend upon it, and do communicate in the nature. In compass about five hundred miles, said by *Magnus* to be extremely rough and barren; which must be understood with reverence to some kinds of Grain. For otherwise it is very fertile, abounding productive of Rice, Citrons, Limes, Oranges, *Coco-nuts*, *Sugar-Canes*, and other fruits, and very plentiful of *Clowes*. Which last, as it makes fame to reckon it amongst the *Molucces*; so may it be a reason why the Island is defective in fish fruits as require much moisture: the *Clowe* being of so hot a temper, as before was noted, that it draweth to it all the moisture of the Earth, which is near unto it.

The people much given to Piracy, wherewith they do infest all the neighbouring Islands, Detained for *Cannibals*, or Man-eaters: it being here a constant custom, that when their Parents were grown old, or sick of any incurable Disease, they give them to one another to be eaten by them. They have one Town of more note than other, which they call *Ambonia*, by the name of the Island. First, taken by the *Portugals*, and by them secured with strong Fortresses: during whose power here, the *Jesuites*, who had in it their several Residences, converted many to *Christianity*. But in the year 1605, the Island and the Port both were conquered by *Stephen Hagan*, for the States of the United Provinces: who having cleared the Country of the *Portugals* Forces, possessed themselves of it. Received by the Natives at their first coming with Joy and Triumph: but they got little by the change, as they found soon after: their new Masters being more burdensome, and insufferable, than the old had been. For claiming it in the right of Conquest, and think they may oppress the Natives by the Law of Arms; and ingross all trade unto themselves as the true *Proprietaries*. Infamous even amongst the rude and savage *Indians* for their barbarous inhumanity executed upon some of the *English* (the greatest Patrons under God which they have in the world) when in the year 1618. they most cruelly tortured, and most wickedly murdered: under colour of some plot to betray their Fortresses: but in plain truth for no other reason but because they were more beloved by the Inhabitants, and began to gain upon their trade.

4. West of *Ambun*, and South-West of *Selebet*, lieth the fourth of thise Islands, called *MACASSARA*, said to contain from East to West 600 miles; plentiful of Rice, Fish, Fih, Salt, and Cotton-Wool: not destitute of Gold and Pearls, and well stored with *Sandar* (*Sandalum* it is called in *Latine*) a medicinal wood, growing like a Nut-tree: of several colours, white, red, yellow, but the red, the best: the fruit in making like a Cherry, but of no esteem. In some parts overgrown with woods, in which certain *Fly* make nightly fuch shining lights, as if every twig or bough were a burning Candle.

In the middle covered with high Mountains, out of which now many navigable Rivers.

The people for the most part *Gentiles*, intermixt on the

Sea-coasts with some *Mahometans*. Chief Towns heretofore, 1 *Senderem*, the Kings Seat, situate near a large Lake, very commodiously for traffick. 2 *Macassar*, an *English* Factory, so called according to the name of the Island.

Near to these Islands, and somewhat North to *Batavia*, are some other Isles, plentiful of all things necessary for the life of man; but inhabited by a thievish and *Piratical* people: the principal of which, is *Terrao*, 2 *Sanguin*, 3 *Solor*, 4 *Moravia*, in which last they eat *Batata* Roots, instead of bread; besides some others of less note. Most of the people *Gemiles*, except those of *Sanguin*, the Kingdom, whercof being gained to the Christian Faith, by some of the *Jesuits*, hath brought many of his Subjects to the same Religion.

## 6. BORNEO.

WEA of these *Selebes*, lieth *BORNEO*, of more note and greatness, than any hitherto described, in the *Indian Seas*. In compass, after their accompt who speak most sparingly, 2200 miles; but as some say, no less than three months fall about. Situate under the *Equator*, which parteth the Dominions of the King of *Borneo*, and the King of *Lau*: opposite on the North to *Cambodia*; on the South, to *Java*; on the East, to *Selebes*; on the West, unto the Isle of *Sumatra*.

The Country said to be provided naturally of all things necessary; yet said wical to be unfurnished of Affes, Oxen, Herds of Cattel, except only Horses, and these but small of stature neither: the greatest riches of it being *Campfire*, *Agarick*, and some Mines of *Adamants*, cronomically conceived by *Mercurio* to be the *Infu-la bene Fortune*, spoken of by *Ptolomy*; that being seated opposite to the out-lets of *Ganges*, in the *Latitudes* of a hundred forty five Degrees, and fifteen Minutes; the warm degree degrees of the *Golden Chirifonee*, and consequently twenty Degrees distant at the least from that Island in *Prolomy*.

The people generally more white than the rest of the *Indians*, of good wits, and approved integrity, though all *Mahometans*, or *Gentils*. Divided betwixt two Kings, and two Religions; the King of *Borneo* and his Subjects being all *Mahometans*; those of *Lau* still remaining in their ancient *Gentilism*. They think the *Sun* and *Moon* to be man and wife, and the *Stars* their children; ascribing to each of them divine honours, to the *Sun* especially, whom they salute at his first rising with great Reverence, saying certain Verses. Their publick businells are treated of commonly in the night, at which time the *Councillors* of *State* meet, and ascend fome tree, viewing the Heavens till the *Moon* rise, and then go to the *Senate-house*. The same Apparel generally of both Religions; but thin, by reason of the great heat of the Air: a shirt of Silk, or *Calicote*, or some flesh sight stuff, worn more for modesty than for warmth.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Borneo*, situate in the North-  
West part of the Island near a goodly bay, but in the  
middle of the Fens like the City of *Venice*, and feated as  
that is, on *Piles*; the building sumptuous, of hewed  
stones, covered with the leaves of the *Coco-tree*. The  
Town so large as to contain 2500 Families. 2 *Taipura*,  
3 *Tamaraot*, 4 *Malano*, all of them noted for fair Ci-  
ties, or commodious Havens. 5 *Sagadana*, a Factory of  
*Englib*. 6 *Lavi* on a large Bay in the South-East part  
of the Island, the ordinary Seat of the King of *Lauu*. 7 *Paro*,  
on another capacious Bay, not far from *Lavi*, and direct-  
ly opposite to *Borneo*: that being feated on the North-  
West, and this on the South-East of the Island. Betwixt  
these two Kings is the whole divided; but so, that of  
*Borneo* hath the greater part of it, and therefore keeps the

th



Government, Anno 1604. The name of the New King *Sultan Pedrucks Siric*, who in his Letter to King *James*, spoken of before, titles himself the sole King of *Siamatra*: either with greater brag than truth, or else because the Kingdoms of *Teco*, *Priaman*, and *Barosse*, being conquered by him, all the rest were become his *Tributaries*. Associated with the Forces of the King of *Jor*, or *Jabor*, who had married his Sister, he belieged *Malacca*, and distressed it: But being beaten from it by the *Portugals*, he turned the tide of his displeasure upon his *Confederates*, and subdued that Kingdom; who with the King of *Sich* (some other petty Prince near by) and two of their brethren, were in the year 1612, brought Prisoners to *Achem*.

The Government of this King is absolute, and merely arbitrary, executing what he hath a mind to, without *form of Law*. So cautious, that without his *Placard* no *stranger* can have *Ingreſs* into his Dominions, or free *Egreſs* out of them. Nor is admittance to his presence granted unto any whom he first finds not for by an Officer with a *Gilded Staff*. He is conceived to be living both by Sea and Land, his Country populous, his Elephants many and well trained, able to part to Sea 120 or if need be 200 Gallies and *Frigats* fit for any service, most of which carry *Demi-Canon*, Culverin, Sakar, Minion, and other like Ordnance of *Brass*. So great a Master of his Subjects, that in 21 days he had a goodly *Chandel* drawn about his Palace, from a River which was eight miles off. Of his *Revenues*, I am able to make no conjecture, but think him to be full of Gold, by that great quantity of Golden Furnitures which he hath about him.

Golden Fur-trade's whence the Kings Gold, I cannot but take notice of some Islands on the West of Sumatra, called *Aurea Isula*, or the *Golden Islands*; the chief of which named *Amboina*, is possessed by *Cannibals*, or *Man-eaters*. Opposite unto which on the East lie the *Malacca*, and *Andamania*, are those called *Linga*, *Bintia*, and *Bintama*; the last of which is said to be very woody, well watered, and to afford a commodious *Station* for shipping. The houses are built of Stone, but thatched, except that of the King (for even these forry Indians love to have a King of their own); whose house more eminently seated, is more handiome covered.

9. ZEILAN.

WEST of Sumatra, somewhat inclining to the North, is the Island of ZEELAND, ten degrees distant from the *Aequator*, and near adjoining to the Promontory in the higher *India* which *Protemy* calleth by the name of *Cory*. The length hereof computed at 250 miles, the breadth at 150 miles only, the whole circumference at 750 or 800 miles. Conjectured by the Situation, and other probable inducements, to be the *Taprobane* of the ancient Writers. *Orellius* and most other intelligent men of thise latter times are of that opinion. Only *Mercator*, who hath carried the *Golden Chersonese* to the *Ileoc Zagan*, and fixed *Taprobane* in that of *Sumatra*, (in which I left I must confess he hath many Partners) will have this Island to be that which *Protemy* calls *Nangeris*, though that be four Degrees more West than the Promontory of *Cory* to which this *Ile* in former times seems to have been joynted.

Taking it therefore for an evident and undoubted truth, that this *Zeilan* or *Ceilan* is the *Taprobant* of the Ancients, we will a little look on the state of that Island, with reference to the times when those Authors lived. By *Pliny* is affirmed to be plentiful in Rice, Honey, Ginger, Gold, Silver, Precious Stones, and all kind of Metals. By *Pliny*, that the Gold is pure, and the Gems rarer than any in *India*; that there were also Groves of Palm-trees, and

great fote of Elephants; is declared by *Elian*, and some others. Watered with many fair and pleasant Rivers;*Scythia* 1. *Sasne*, 2. *Alexand*, 3. *Baracuz*, 4. *Gandes*, 5. *Phafri*: the Hills in many places having a full prospect over the adjoining Valley; the chief of which were *Males*, and those called *Calbi*, the Vallies perpetually enriched with the choicest Fruits. Exceeding populous for the bignesse, and stored with many Towns of note. Of which *Margaramm* only hath the name of a *Metropolis*, 1. *Margana*, 2. *Tegana*, 3. *Sindocanda*, 4. *Hlodca*, 5. *Nababira*, 6. *Dogana*, 7. *Dionysopolis*, 8. *Docana*, 9. *Aboras*, 10. to *Hicetum*, 11. *Nagadiba*, 12. and 13. *Amudaria*, the famous name of Cities; 14. *Medimena*, and 15. *Talacorum*, noted for the Towns of Traffick. 16. *Priape*, 18. *Mardana*, 17. *Rhizela*, 18. *Spataura*, and 19. that of the *Sax*, for commodious use of the People, 20. *Amnogramm* being honour'd with the title of *Regia*, or the Royal City. As for the *Scythians*, it is said by *Euſtoly* to have been firſt called *Targabana*, then *Simodi* *Enlyma*, and finally in this time *Saxiſcia* and the People *Sax*; from whence the name of *Sclan* or *Sclen* frogs to be derived.

To take a view of all the present, I find it did to be of an *Oval* form, divided from the main Land by a narrow Channel, the Havens refreshing it with their Dewes, the Air with a fragrant freshnes, the Earth diversified into many Rivers and Fountains; the Earth diversified into lofty hills, and low vallies; her inward Chambers filled with Metals, and lowly Jewels; her outward Coat of the pleasant colour, coloured with whole Woods of *Cinnamon*, besides *Fruit*, *Lemons*, *Oranges*, &c. bettering both *Spain*, *Of Limbs and Beasts* great plenty both wild and tame, and the best breed of *Elephants* in all the world. Deliciteious use of the *Vine*, the want of which supplied with a pleasant drink made of the juyce of fruits, more natural to them than the other, and so preservative of life that the people are reported to be longer lived than in any other parts. In a word, so abounding in all contentments, that the Indians hold it to be *Paradise*, and take upon them to point out some of *Adams* footings, left for a memorial in some parts of it. And to confirm them in this Error, they have an Hill there which the *Spaniards* call by the name of *Pico de Adam*, affirmed to be seven Leagues in height, from whence *Adam* ascended into Heaven? for that cause visited by the *Moors* or *Arabians*, with continual *Pilgrimages*.

The People for the most part tall and frail of body, naked from the girdle upwards, unwarlike, and much given unto craft and pleasures; So quaquam fowmached that the poorest of them will not eat that meat which another hath touched; inclined to bravery, which they stretch out wide holes in their cars, which they stretch out with *Jewels* to their very Shoulders. *Cunning Artificers* in all Metals, one of them making a *Cross* of such exquisite workmanship, that it seemed to give life to the dead; and was sent by the Archbishop of *Goa* to the King of *Spain*, as the rarest of the world which had ever graced his Royal *Cabinet*. They are also very active, and well skilled in *Navigation*, both men and women, travelling thorow India through their tricks and *Hobby-horses*, by which they get themselves both delight and money. In matter of *Religion*, they are generally *Idolaters*, especially the *Natives*, whom they call *Cingales*, which live in the In-Lands: the Sea-coasts (as in other Islands) being filled with *Moslems*. *No Christians* that I hear of but in *Columbo*, a Town of the *Portugals*.

Cities of most repute amongst them, 1 Candie, the seat of one of their Kings, supposed to be the *Sindocandia* of *Plotomys*, memorable for the *Statue* of their supposed *Adam*, most artificially wrought, of five or six Fathoms high, *Symmetrically* proportionable to the print of his foot, which

which they conceive to have amongst them. 2 *Vemane*, of great renown for an *Idol-Temple*, in compass 130 paces, of great height, and all white except the top, which hath the Spires thereof so gilded, that when the Sun shines, men are not able to look upon them. 3 *Janaspatan*, 4 *Triqui Lemale*, (supposed to be the *Tarich* of *Ptolomy*) 5 *Betecolum*, 6 *Vilaflem*, 7 *Tanamaca*, 8 *Laula*, 9 *Galle*, the seats of many of their Kings; the *Nogaria*, conceived to be the *Nigari*; as 11 *Agenda*, the *Jagaria* of *Ptolomy*. 12 *Columbi*, the seat Royal of the chief King of this Island, situate on a capacious Bay in the Southwest of it, and of most trade in all this Country : many great Ships laden with Cinnamon, Gems, Elephants, and other Indian Commodities go yearly hence. Fortified by the *Portugall* (by whom called *Columbo*) with a very strong Castle, built with the King's leave at first, to secure their trading; but since used by them as a curb to hold him in with, and to compel him to pay Tribute.

This Country first discovered to be an Island by *Oncristus*, Admiral of Alexander's Fleet, was in the time of *Troilus* inhabited by several Nations. The principal of which were the *Gathis*, and *Madure* dwelling in the North; the *Rhogandani* and *Nanigiri* in the South; the *Sindocade* in the West; and the *Tarachi* in the East, the middle parts being taken up by the *Autrogrannati*, *Mazeshi*, *Saani*, *Serni*. But little or nothing is said of them in the story of *Ulys*, but that they were good *Mimicks*, did imitate the tunes of Birds, and could speak to two at once, as if double tongued; that they were very studious of Astrology, and worshipp'd the Sun and the Host of Heaven; that some of their Embassadors coming to the time of *Claudius Cæsar*, *Solem à Leva oriri nitui* *jun*, &c. admir'd to see the Sun rise on the wrong side of them; and finally, that the King was chosen by the people with respect had to his age and clemency; who being enthroned, appointed thirty Judges to administer Justice to the Subject, without the Major part of whom, sentence of Death was to pass on no man. In following times this Monarchy (for such it was in the time of those Authors) was broken into many Pieces: the *Portugals* finding nine Kings in it, at their first coming hither, all Homagers or Tributaries to the King of *Columbi*. After that, this their chief King was wickedly murdered by his Barber, who drove the other Kings out of the Country, and for a while usurp'd the Monarchy to himself. Since which time, having once again recover'd their Kingdoms, six of them (as I have somewhere read, but remember not where) put themselves under the protection of the *Great Mogul*, and became his Feudatories.

Near herecallto on the Coasts of Malabar, are the Islands which they call *Maldive*, many in number, but few called from the principal of them, as that from *Moldova*, a noted and well-traded Empory, where the King resideth: Not very plentiful of necessaries for the use of man, did not the *Palm* alone supply them in all other wants. Inhabited by an indolentious and slobber people, who make themselves long Garments of Silk or Flax, brought from other places, wherewith more modestly adorned, than the rest of the *Indians*: and by their Filting draw up shells of such mingled colours, that they serve amongst the *Siamers* instead of money.

10. *ISLANDS* of less note.

**B**EHIDES these Islands represented to us by their several names, and some who have nothing but their names to take notice of; there be many thousands of Isles note which we find in grofs: that the *Indian* Seas being to prodigiously full of Islands, that it is almost impossible to believe there should be such multitudes; & yet utterly impossible to credit what is told us of them. Some of the most remarkable of them we have touched upon, as Accellories Appurtenances to some greater Islands. The rest we shall present only in the general Muster, together with a taste of some of those strange reports, with which some men have fouled their Papers, and abused their Readers. Of the *Philippines* there are said to be 11000, though but 40 of them in possession of the King of *Spain*. More South, but over against *China*, is another *Frie* of them, affirmed by Mariners to be no fewer than 7448; and (as if nature had delighted to disport her self by lowering Islands in these Seas) another Shoal of them about *India*, no fewer in number than 127000, all which laid together would make a Continent as large as three or four parts of *Europe*; and are full growing under the burthen of Heathenism. These *Islands* stand loo nigh unto one another, that they seem only to such as are afar, to be all but one firm Land; & yet whosoever allo passeth between them, may with his hands touch the Boughs of the Trees on the one side, and on the other. Of these and the other *Indian* Islands, Travellers relate many incredible Fables, *viz.* That there are Hogs that have two teeth growing out of their snouts, and as many behind their ears, of a span and a half long; a Tree whose Western part is rank poison; and the Eastern part an excellent preservative against it. They tell us also of a Fruit, that whosoever eateth, shall for the space of twelve hours be out of his Wits; and of a Stone, on which whosoever sitteth, shall suddenly have a rupture in his body. We are told also that hereabouts are taken Tortoises of that bigness, that ten men might fit and dine within one of the shells; and that there is a Tree, which all the day-time hath not a flower on it, but within half an hour after Sun-set, is full of them. All huge and monstrous lyes, and not fit for credit. *Galsano* reporteth also, that in some of these Islands there is a Fruit, of which if a Woman that is with child eat, her Child will presently move; that there is a River plentifully stored with Fish, whose water is yeft so hot, that it doth immediately scald off any skin of the Beast that is cast into it; that some of the men have tails; and most of their Swine hogs; that they have Oysters which they call brats, the shells whereof are of so large compals, that they Christen Children in them; that in the Sea there are stones which grow and increase like Fish, of which the best Lime is made: that there is a bird called *Monicodacta*, which having no feet is in a continual motion: and that there is a hole in the back of the Cock, in which the Hen doth lay her eggs, and hatch her young ones. I bid no man to believe these Relations: for my part I lay with *Horace*,

*Quodcunque ostendis mihi sic, incredulus odi.*

Whatever thus thou tell'st me, I

Will always hate it as a lyc.

And so much for these *EASTERN ISLANDS*.





## An Advertifement to the Reader touching the ERRATA of this PART.

**I**N the first place the Reader is to be advertised that Fol. I have adventured to prove the Alamaths of Ptolomy to be the Chamath, or Hamath-Sobab, of the Holy Scriptures, The place ill pointed, but the judicious Reader will easily find out the scope and meaning. Yet if this shall not be approved of, I should then think it to be that Elam or Belam where David discomfited the Army of the Mesopotamians; mention whereof is made 2 Sam. 10. 16. 17. In the next place he is to know, that Fol. within the compass of five lines, the Victory which Afa King of Judah obtained against the numerous Army of Ethiopians, is twice repeated: in the first place ascribed to Jethir, in the next to Marcella, (though the other also hath good Authors) let that of Jethir be supplied in this manner following. 5. Jethir or Jethira, in the North Border of this Tribe toward Eleutheropolis: a City anciently of the Levites, in St. Hieroms time called by the name of Jethira, and then replenished altogether with Christians: now nothing but the name remaining. 6. Marcella, &c. And finally, whereas Ajalon, p. is placed in the Tribe of Ephraim, and p. in the Tribe of Dan, the reason is, because being situate in the Borders of both Tribes, it is by some Writers ascribed to Dan, and by others to Ephraim. The like may be also said of Michpas, mentioned also in two Tribes according as it is disposed on by several Authors:



# A T A B L E OF THE LONGITUDE and LATITUDE OF THE CHIEF TOWNS and CITIES Mentioned in this BOOK.

A	Long.	Lat.	Chesnur	Long.	Lat.
Aden	132.30	3.40	Chianfu	115.10	3.0
Agra	82.0	13.50	Chirman	147.30	27.30
Aleppo	118.10	44.0	Cincapura	98.30	27.30
Amboina	72.30	38.0	Cochin	136.43	1.20
Amodaba	162.50	42.04	Culmcho	114.0	9.40
Antioch	169.50	23.10	Comori	117.30	6.40
Apamea	72.30	39.0	Coulan	115.10	7.10
Arachan	61.30	43.40	Cantan	114.30	7.10
Ardevat	129.10	10.24	Chaul	149.0	25.0
Arminig	140.50	25.0		109.40	17.30
Avaa	70.0	41.0			
Amogha	142.30	27.50			
	66.30	44.30			
B	Long.	Lat.	D	Long.	Lat.
Babylon	92.20	33.0	Damascus	74.30	35.0
Bacou	88.50	42.0	Decan	113.20	44.0
Balfora	82.40	31.10	Dely	114.0	19.10
Banda	164.0	45.04	Derbent	84.53	42.20
Batocalla	111.30	12.40	Diu	108.0	20.30
Bengala	125.10	21.20	Dornate	137.50	7.50
Berbelehem	65.45	31.50			
Bisnager	114.20	14.10			
Bulgar	88.30	54.30			
C	Long.	Lat.	E	Long.	Lat.
Cabul	212.20	31.0	Ephesus	60.30	39.40
Cairadu	137.30	47.40	Eres	87.40	40.50
Calcutt	112.40	10.30	Evgimul	150.0	58.20
Cambala	161.10	51.40			
Cambodia	342.20	11.40			
Campion	148.0	57.30			
Cananor	112.50	11.0			
Candahar	110.40	33.40			
Capna	68.50	48.0			
Calamines	149.0	9.0			
Cauchin China	140.30	20.0			
Cranganor	113.0	9.40			
Cerafo	73.0	44.40			
Choromandel	115.20	22.30			
F	Long.	Lat.	G	Long.	Lat.
Famagusta	69.20	30.30	Gabara	80.50	36.10
Falfo	57.50	45.40	Gaza	70.50	39.10
H	Long.	Lat.	H	Long.	Lat.
Heri	99.53	30.0	Geft	107.30	26.30
Hormar	165.25	35.10	Gilolo	161.30	1.10
Hierisfalem	72.20	33.0	Goa	112.20	14.40

### The TABLE.

LIB. III.

	I	Long.	Lat.		Q	Long.	Lat.
Jefdi		94.40	32. 0	Quinfu		144.40	42.30
Jedio		105.40	38. 0	Quinfay		153. 0	40. 0
Jericho		73. 0	33. 0		R		
Joppa		71.20	34. 0				
Jitigias		110.30	39.40	Rhabana		196.30	47. 0
	L			Rhades		61.40	37.20
Laguin Major		165. 0	28. 0	Rages		79.10	38. 0
Liampo		160.20	34.40	Regis		82.10	36. 0
Lop		134.20	53. 0		S		
	M			Sablehan		114. 0	30. 0
Macao		140.10.	23.20	Sarmachan		130. 0	47. 0
Machan		160.40	0.30	Samaria		72.20	33.40
Macin		85.30	25.50	Sciro		57.30	41.10
Malacca		136.30	2.50	Siam		139.10	14.30
Maldiva		113. 0	3. 0	Sidon		72.10	36.30
Maliapar		118. 0	13.20	Sind		109.30	27. 0
Mamora		155.40.	0.42	Siras		90.40	30.40
Mandas		121. 0	25. 0	Smyrna		60.20	40.30
Maugalar		112. 0	11.30	Sigellan		205. 0	31. 0
Martavan		134.30	17.10	Siltania		92.40	37.20
Meccha		73.30	25. 0	Succut		143.10	56. 0
Medina Tahnabi		73. 0	27.30	Sunda		138.86	40. A
Meaco		170.30	37. 0	Sufis		73.40	48. 0
Mindanos		160.40	7. 0	Scarpanto		62.10	36. 0
Moltan		114.20	24.30		T		
Multan		109.50	29.20	Tangn		152. 0	63.30
Mongul		159.29	60.40	Talcen		85. 0	47. 0
Mufbat		84. 0	34.50	Tarnaffur		119.40	17.10
	N			Tarfus		71.20	40. 0
Nagulan		97. 0	53.30	Tauris		90.30	38.10
Naim		94.10	33.40	Tenduc		168.30	67.30
Nayman		140. 0	65.10	Thebet		138.50	44. 0
Narfunga		119. 0	18. 0	Trapezond		74.30	44. 4
Nazareth		72.40	34.10	Tripolis		72.20	37. 0
Nicomedis		63.10	44.20	Troy		59. 0	42.30
Nifibul		102.10	38.40	Tyre		72.10	38. 3
Nice		57.41	40. 0	Tidore		160.40	0. 0
Ninive		82.36	40. 0		V		
	O			Van		86.30	36.50
Odia		158.30	12. 0	Varma		130.24	20.10
Onor		111.40	19.10		X		
Orixaz		118.40	20.40				
Ormus		91.20	27.50	Xamdu		168.40	55.40
Oxiana		107.41	20. 0	Xara		130. 0	17. 0
	P				Z		
Pacem		132. 0	4. 0	Zigafifi		101.30	42.30
Pedir		131.10	4. 0	Zuma		74.40	11.40
Pegus		135. 0	20.10	Zibit		70. 0	22.20
Ptolemais		66.40	29.40				
Persepolis		90.40	30.40				
Patyne		138.10	6.50				

The End of the Third Book,



# COSMOGRAPHY, The Fourth Book.

---

PART I.

---

CONTAINING THE  
CHOROGRAPHY  
AND  
HISTORY  
OF  
AFRICA:

AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

---

By *PETER HETLYN*.

---

C. JUL. SOLIN. cap. 33.

*Ultra hos (Æthiopes) monstrosæ gentium facies: Aliæ sine naribus aequali totius oris  
plantis, informes habent cultus: Aliis concreta ora sunt modicoque tantum foramine  
calavis avenarum pafus hauriunt: Nonnullæ linguis carent, in vicem sermonis uten-  
tes nutibus, manibusque.*

PTOLOM. GEOG. lib. I. cap. 5.

*Constat per ipsas temporum traditiones, quasdam partes Continentis terræ quæ a nobis ha-  
bitatur, nondum propter difficultatem magnitudinis peragrationem, ad notitiam pervenisse:  
quasdam vero non tales, ac fertur, esse, &c. necesse ergo est ut ibi novissimis temporis  
nostri traditionibus penitus quasi adscriamus.*

---

L O N D O N,

Printed for *Anne Seil*, M DCLXXVII.

# COSMOGRAPHY, The Fourth Book.

## PART I.

### CONTAINING THE CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY OF AFRICK,

AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

#### OF AFRICK.



**AFRICK** is bounded on the East by the Red-Sea, and Bay of Arabia, by which parted from Asia; on the West by the main Atlantick Ocean, interpoling betwixt it and America; on the North by the Mediterranean Sea, which divides it from Europe and Anatolia; and on the South, with the

Ethiopic Ocean, separating it from Terra Australis incognita, or the Southern Continent. Parted from all the rest of the World, except Asia only, to which joyned by a narrow Isthmus, not above 60 miles in length, and memorable for the great design which Cleopatra the last Queen of Egypt had upon it, which in brief was this. When Mark Anthony was encountered by Augustus in the Naval Battel of Actium, Cleopatra fearing the success, fled through the midst of all his Fleet, with the 60 Gallies which were appointed for her Guard. Being come to the North part of this Isthmus, she gathered together all her portable Treasures, and intended to hoist her Shipping out of the Mediterranean, and hale them over the Land to the Red-Sea, from whence she had purposed to take Sail, and together with her Sweet-heart Anthony, and some other choicest Friends, to seek out some other place of dwelling far enough from the Romans. But from this, Anthony, who fled after her,

and vainly hoped for a change of fortunes, did at last dissuade her.

The Form hereof is like a Pyramid reversed; the Basis of which, from Tanger on the Strait of Gibraltar, to the point where it joyneth unto Asia, is reckoned at the breadth of 1920 Italian Miles, the Comus of it very narrow. But from the Comus or Pyris to the most Northern part of the Basis, it extendeth it self the space of 4155 Miles, being much less than Asia, and far bigger than Europe.

By the Grecians it is called most commonly Libyá, (of which more hereafter) part of it taken for the whole; by the Ethiopians, Alkebi-Lam; by the Indians, Beseant. But the most noted name thereof is Africa, which Josphus out of Cleodemus and Polybistor, deriveth from Ephor or Apher, one of the Nephews of Abraham, by Midian the Son of Keturah. The Arabians, by whom it is called Iffrebia, derive it from the Verb Farnab, signifying to divide; because more visibly divided both from their own Country, and the rest of the World, than any other part thereof which was known unto them. Some of the Greek Fablers fetch it from one Afer, a companion of Hercules, whom he attended unto Spain. Some fetch it out of Apher, an Hebrew word, signifying Dust, agreeable to its sandy and dusty Soil. Festus an old Grammatian, from A Frigatium, and the Greek word *phos*, which imports



ports a country void of cold, as suitable to the fiery temper of the Air. By *Barbatus*, who brings all from the old *Phœnician*, it is said to be derived from *Purus*, *Spica*, an ear of Corn, which mollified into *Ferie*, came at last to *Africa*, that is to say, a Country plentiful in Corn, which Etymology of his may receive some countenance from that great plenty of Corn which with the *Romans* called the *Proper Africa*, whereof we shall speak more when we come to *Barbary*: the whole Continent taking from that Province the name of *Africa*, be not worth accepting) I should prefer the Etymon of *Fertus* before any other, unless we might be sure that *Carthage* anciently was called *Africa*, as *Suidas* telleth us it was; for then without all peradventure we would seek no further. For other more particular names by which it hath been called in some elder Writers, i. e. *Olympia*, *Oeania*, *Elphaitica*, *Coryphe*, *Ammonia*, *Hesperia*, *Origia*, and perhaps some others, it is enough to our design to take notice of them.

It is situate for the most part under the *Torrid Zone*, the *Æquator* crossing it almost in the very midst; and for that cause supposed by many of the Ancients not to be inhabited at all, or but very thinly, in the middle and more Southern parts of it: or at all, with such strange people, as hardly did deserve to be counted men. *Pomponius* among others was of this opinion, gushing the inward parts thereof to be taken up by such strange Brutes as the *Cynophantes*, who had heads like dogs; 2. The *Scelopores*, who with the shadow of their foot, could and did hide themselves from the heat of the Sun; 3. The *Gamagaphantes*, a naked people, ignorant of the use of Weapons, and therefore fearfully avoiding the sight of men; 4. The *Blennyes*, who being without heads, had their eyes and mouths in their Breasts; 5. The *Aripiani*, who had no other humane quality to declare them to be men, but the shape and making of their bodies. These people as they thought possessed some small portion of the mid-land parts of this great Country; the rest they knew not, or conceived to be uninhabitable, in regard of the great heats thereof. But late discoveries and navigations have found the contrary, the Country proving in most parts to be well inhabited, and the coolness of the nights, by mists, dew, and gentle gales of wind, to mitigate the heat of the day.

*Quodque die Solis vehementer exarduit æstus,  
Humida nos reficit, paribique refrigerat horis.*

That is to say,

What the Sun burns by day, the Night renews,  
And doth as much refresh with moistning Dews.

For notwithstanding that it be in some places full of sandy deserts, a disease incident to some parts of *Arabia*, *Pæstia*, and other Countries of a more Northerly situation; yet it is said by some, who speak it upon knowledge, that the greater part of those Regions which lie under the *Life*, or near it, (both in *America*, and here) have so many goodly Fountains, Rivers, and little Brooks, such abundance of Cedars, and other stately Trees of shade, so many sorts of delicate Fruits ever bearing, and at all times decked with blossoms; as may make them hold comparison with any others, supposed to be of a more temperate situation.

But as was said before, the Ancients knew not much of this Country, and therefore spoke upon conjecture, or more doubtful hear-say. For though *Humo* a noble *Carthaginian* employed by that State, discovered much of the

Western Shores of this great Peninsula, yet he ventured not so much into the Land: nor did his *Journal* (either suppressed by the *Romans*, or not much took notice of) give any great light to other Nations to pursue those Voyages; being writ in the *Carthaginian* Tongue, but since translated into *Greek*, and published at *Basil* by *Siegmund Gelenius*, Anno 1533. As little credit did it find in former times, that some *Phœnicians* in the days of *Pharao* *Necho*, passing down the *Red-Sea*, should sail about the Coasts of *Africa* to the Straits of *Gibraltar*, and to return again to *Egypt* by the *Mediterranean*; as we find in *Herodotus*, that they did. But what those Ages disbelieved or deemed impossible, is now grown ordinary, the *Circumnavigations* about this Country being very frequent, since first performed by *Vasquez de Gama*, an adventurous *Portugal*, in the year 1647, being 80 years after, or thereabout, from the time that the *Portugals* first attempted the discovery and circumnavigation of the Coasts of *Africa*, which at the last, to the no small glory of their Nation, was accomplished by them. For so it happened, that having extended their dominions as far as they could upon the Continent of *Spain*; and having withal a large Sea-coast, and fit for Shipping, they turned their Forces on the *Moors* which dwelt in *Africa*, from whom they took many of their best towns which lay along upon the Shores of the main *Atlantic*. Encouraged by this good success, *Henry Duke of Viseu*, one of the younger Sons of King *John* the first, resolved to spend his purse and credit upon new discoveries. And to that purpose, having had some conference with some persons of knowledge and experience in Cosmography, he drew together the best men of Action, both in *Spain* and *Italy*. By their means, and his own good fortune, he first discovers the *Isle of Madaga*, Anno 1420. The *Isle of Holy Pet*, Anno 1428. The *Islands of Cape Verde*, Anno 1440. the Maritime parts of the Land of *Guinea*, Anno 1452, which fair foundations being laid, and the way opened to those great discoveries which after followed; that glorious Prince deceased in a good old age, Anno 1463, leaving this Character behind him, that he was the first that made the *Portugals* in love with the Sea; discontinued after his decease above 20 years, it was resumed again by King *John*, the second of that name, who by the conduct of *Diogo Con*, Anno 1486, discovered the *Realms of Angola* and *Congo*, with the *Isle of St. George*, and thereupon resolves in the next year following, to try his fortunes for conquering the whole Coast of *Africa*, thereby to find a way to the wealth of *India*, in which he employed Captain *Bartholomew Diaz*, who passing beyond *Cape Verde*, discovered first the *Princeps* Island, and sailing from thence Southward to the furthest Promontory (since called the *Cape of good Hope*) returned home again: either discouraged by crofs Winds, or unready Seas, or the untractableness of his Mariners, or by all together. The man to who the honour of this Enterprize was reserved, was that *Vasquez de Gama* above mentioned, employed in this service by King *Emanuel*, Anno 1597, who having in his voyage discovered the *Islands of St. James*, and *St. Helen*, and after doubled that terrible Cape, which *Bartholomew Diaz* durst not pass, gave it the name of *Cabo di Buena Esperanza*, or the *Cape of good Hope*, because of the good hope it gave him of finding the desired way to the good Trade of *India*; and having so doubled this Cape, and after *Africa* on the left hand of him, he kept his course on towards the North, till he discovered the Countreys of the *Quiloas*, *Mombaza*, and *Melinde*, with the King of which last he contracted an especial friendship, by his favours and directions, found the Port of *Calicut* in *East-India*, from whence with infinite joy and due honour he returned to *Lisbon*, Anno 1500. The design followed

followed the next year by *Alvarez Capralde*, furnished with 12 ships, 1500 Souldiers, but he being cutt upon the Coasts of *Brasil*, and diverting wholly in a manner on the discovery of that large Countrey, it was pursued the next year with greater strength, by *Vasquez*, and his Brother *Stephen*, afterwards by *Ferdinand de Olmeda*, and *Alphonso Albuquerque*, and divers others of that Nation, and finally by the *English*, *Hollanders*, Merchants almost of every Country, which have any Trade upon the Ocean. By means whereof the latter Ages are better instructed in the particulars of it than the former were; who knew not much beyond the limits of the *Roman Empire*, and some parts adjoining upon *Egypt*, more than the strange beasts and more strange reports which they had from hence; occasioning hereby the By-word, *Africa semper aliquid apertat novi*.

Touching the state of Christianity in this great Continent, it is very weak; most of those Regions which Christian Religion had once gained from Idolatry, *Mahometanism* having since regained from Christianity: inasmuch that not only the North part of *Africa*, near the *Mediterranean*, from *Spain* to *Egypt*, where the Gospel once so exceedingly flourished, that three hundred Catholic Bishops were at one time banished thence by *Gensericus* King of the *Fandals*; as at this present utterly void of Christianity, (except some few Towns belonging to the King of *Spain*); but even in all this vast Country, thrice as big as *Europe*, there is not any one Region entirely Christian, but the Kingdom of *Habshia* only, and perhaps not that, nor where the Christians are intermingled with *Mahometans*, but only *Egypt*; nor where mingled with Idolaters, but in *Congo* and *Angola*, and some few Towns upon those Coasts in the hands of the *Portugals*. So little benefit have those Nations gotten by our late discoveries; it being *Gain*, not *Godliness*, which the Merchant aims at.

The Nations inhabiting this Country, or dispersed in it, may be reduced to *Africans* properly so called, *Egyptians*, *Habshians*, *Arabians*, *Jews*, and some *European* Christians only in their Forts and Garrisons; the *Jews* in all the good Towns where Trading is stirring; the *Arabians* chiefly on the Sea-Coasts bordering on the *Red-Sea*; but wandering in great hords or companies all about the Country with their Wives and Children: the *Habshians* and *Egyptians* in their several Kingdoms: The *Africans* again subdivided into *Moors* and *Cafers*; of which the *Moors* are wholly under the Law of *Mahomet*, the *Cafers* dwelling in the in-land and more Southern parts, nor discovered anciently in their wonted Gentility. Accordingly, the Languages herein spoken are different also; The *Portugal* or *Spanish* being used by the *Europeans*; 2. The *Chaldean* or *Syriack* by the *Jews*; 3. The *Arabic*, by those of that Nation, and in all *Barbary* except *Morocco* only; 4. The *Habshian*, and 5. the *Egyptian* in those Kingdoms: 6. That called *Aguel-amari*, or the *Noble Language*, supposed to be the natural and original language of the *Roman Africans*, intermixt with some *Arabian* words, and spoken generally in *Morocco*, and so amongst some of the Inhabitants of *Barbary*, nearest to *Mount Atlas*: 7. That named *Sungul*, used in *Tombutu*, *Guinea*, and others of the people of the Land of *Negroes*; and 8. That called *Gubco*, spoken by those of *Æthiopia inferior*, and such of the Land of *Negroes* as lie next unto it.

In reference to the state of the *Roman Empire*, it contained only the *Dioceses* of *Egypt*, *Africa*, and part of the *Dioceses* of *Spain*. The *Dioceses* of *Egypt* subdivided into the Provinces of, 1. *Libya superior*, 2. *Libya inferior*, 3. *Thebais*, 4. *Aegyptiaca*, 5. *Aradia*, and 6. *Egyptus*, especially so called, distinguished by other names in the *Nicens Council*: That of 1. *Africa*, *Tripolitana*, 2. *By-*

*zacena*, 3. *Zengitana*, 4. *Numidia*, 5. *Mauritania Cesariensis*, 6. and *Mauritania Sitifensis*; the other part of *Mauritania*, called *Tingitana*, being laid to the *Dioceses* of *Spain*. The rest of this Peninsula, as they never conquered, so it never was much taken into consideration. But being more perfectly discovered now than in former times (though not so perfectly, as that I can be able to promise an exact account of it; it is divided commonly into these seven parts. 1. *Egypt*, 2. *Barbary*, or the *Roman Africa*, 3. *Numidia*, 4. *Libya*, neither of which the same with those of the ancient *Romans*; 5. *Terra Nigritarum*, 6. *Æthiopia superior*, and 7. *Æthiopia inferior*. Such of the Islands as do not properly belong unto any of these, shall make up the eighth. In the descriptions whereof we will follow the Method of *Plamations*, and begin with *Egypt*, as being peopled and possessed before all the residue.

## OF EGYPT.

**E**GYPT is bounded on the East with *Idumæa*, and the Bay of *Arabia*; on the West with *Barbary*, *Numidia*, and part of *Libya*; on the North with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the South with *Æthiopia superior*, or the *Habshian* Empire.

This Country in the Holy Scripture is called *Misraim*, from *Misraim* the Son of *Chus*, and Grandson of *Cham*, by whom first planted after the Flood, the Footsteps of which name do remain among the *Arabians*, who still call it *Misra*. Named in the fame regard in the Book of *Psalms*, the Land of *Hem*: a name retained in the name of the sacred Offices of the old *Egyptians*, where (as *Plutarch* witnesseth) it was called *Chemia*, for *Chamia* no doubt; as that from *Cham* or *Ham*, the first flock of their Nation. In prophane Authors it hath had the several names of 1. *Aria*, from the fertility of the Air, which is never clouded; 2. *Potamia*, from the propinquity of the Sea, washing two sides of it; 3. *Oggia*, from *Oggys*, a supposed King thereof; 4. *Metamopods*, from the black colour of the soil; 5. *Osiria*, from their God *Osiris*, here in high esteem; 6. and finally, it was called *Egyptus*, which in the end prevailed over all the rest, either from *Egyptus* the Brother of *Danais* once King thereof (in the stories of this Nation better known by the name of *Ramses*) or from *Egyptus*, the old name of the River *Nilus*, by whose annual over-flowings made both rich and famous; and of the soil and rubbish which that River brought with it from the higher Countreys; it was by some supposed to have been raised into firm land, and gained out of the Sea. Called therefore in some Writers by the name of *Nili domus*, or the gift of *Nilus*. Yet some there be, who would have it called *Egyptus* for *Aegyphus*, and that derived from *Al Coptus*, which signifieth the Land or Countrey of *Coptus*, that being supposed to have been anciently the chief City of it. And some again will have the name derived from *Chibth*, by which the *Egyptians* call themselves to this very day.

It containeth in length from the *Mediterranean* to the City of *Aisra*, or *Syene*, bordering on *Æthiopia*, 562 Italian Miles: in breadth (exclusively of *Cyrene* and *Libya*) from *Rosetta* unto *Damietta*, or from the most Westerly branch of *Nilus* to the farthest East, 160 of the same miles; to which the adding of those two Provinces makes a great accession: situate under the second and fifth Climates, so that the longest day in Summer is but 13 hours and an half.

By reason of this Southerly situation of it, the Air is here very hot and offensive, so that to avoid the insupportable heats thereof, and to have the benefit of some fresh wind, the inhabitants are accustomed to build high Towers

ers in all their Towns, on which they use to solace and refresh themselves. The soil made fruitful by the overflowing of *Nile* (whereof more anon) is so exceeding plentiful of all sorts of Grain, that it was called *Horreum Populi Romani*, the Granary or Store-house of the People of *Rome*: which City it did annually furnish with four months provision, inasmuch that it was said by *Pliny*, that the greatness of the *Roman Empire* could not long continue without the Corn and Wealth of *Egypt*, the plenty or famine of that City depending wholly on this Country. It abounds also with rich Pastures, in which they feed great flocks of Camels, Horses, Asses, Oxen, Sheep, and Goats, greater of growth than usually in the places else, and by reason of the moonlightness of the Country, they have great flocks of Fowls. Of Poultry they have also good numbers about their houses, hatched in a different manner from all other Countries, not by the fitting of the Hen, but by the heat of *Furnaces* or Ovens; in which their Eggs are orderly laid in dung, and by a gentle heat brought to animation. It is also liberally furnished with great plenty of Metals, some precious Stones, good Wines, and the choicest Fruits, as Limons, Oranges, Pomgranates, Citrons, Figs, Cherries, and such as these, excellent both for taste, and colour. Of Palm-trees also great abundance; of which though we have spoke before, yet we shall here more fully declare the nature and strange properties of them. They grow in couples, Male and Female, both thrust forth Cods full of Seed, but the Female is only fruitful, and that not, except growing by the Male, and having his Seeds mixt with hers. The pith of these Trees is an excellent Salad, better than an *Artichoke*, which in taste it very much resembleth. Of the branches they make Bed-reds, Lattices, &c. of the leaves, Baskets, Mats, Pans, &c. of the outward husks of the Cod, Cordage; of the inner, Bristles. The Fruit it bears best, known by the name of Dates, are in taste like Figs; and finally, it is said to yield whatsoever is necessary to the life of Man. It is the nature of this Tree, though never so ponderous a weight were put upon it, not to yield to the burthen, but still to resist the heaviness of it, and to endeavour to lift and raise it self the more upwards. For this cause planted in Church-yards in the *Eastern* Countries, as an Emblem of the *Resurrection*: in field whereof we use the *Eve-tree* in these cold Regions. For the same reason given to *Conquerors* as a token of *Victory*, it being the Emblem or Hieroglyphick of a Soldier's life. Hence signifiatively used for Precedency, as *Hic equidem confilio Palmam do*, in *Tertius*; sometimes for the victory it self, as *Non astant vamen hanc Palmam*, in *Pliny*; & *Plurimum Palmam homo*, for a man that had won many Prizes in the *Pence-School*, as in *Tully pro Roscio*: more naturally for the sign of Victory, as in that of *Hætzæ*:

—Palmæ nobilis  
Terrarum Dominos exivit ad Deos.

That is to say,

The Palm, of Victory a sign.  
Equals men to the Powers Divine.

The People, though the Country lie in the flame Climate with *Barbary*, are not black, but tawny, or Olive-coloured, affirmed by *Pomponius Mela* to weep and mourn over the bodies of their dead, daubed over with dung: to have held it a great impiety to burn or bury them, but having imbalanced them, to lay them in some inward Room of their Houses: the men to keep themselves at home, for the household-business, the women to follow Merchandise and

affairs abroad; the men to carry burthens upon their heads, and the women theirs upon their shoulders; *Antipodes* in these last to most other Nations. But certainly they were a witty and ingenious people, the first Inventors of *Geometry*, *Aritmeticke*, *Physick*, as also of *Astronomy*, *Necromancy*, and *Sorcery*. They first taught the use of Letters to the neighbouring *Phœnicians*, by them imparted to the *Greeks*. Accustomed at the first to express their conceits in the shape of Birds, Beasts, Trees, &c. which they termed *Hieroglyphick*; of which two or three Examples out of *Orus* will not be impertinent. For *Eternity* they painted the Sun and Moon, as things which they believed to have had no beginning, nor were likely to have any end: For a Year, they painted a Snake, with his tail in his mouth, to shew how one year succeeding another, kept the world still in an endless circle. For a Month, they painted a Palm-tree, because at every new Moon it feth forth a new branch. For God, they painted a Falcon; as well for that he soareth so high, as that he governeth the lesser Birds. For Integrity of life, they painted Fire and Water, both because these Elements are in themselves most pure, and because all other things are purified by them. For any thing that was Abominable to the Gods, they painted a Fish, because in their Sacrifices the Priests never used them; and the like. From this manner of expressing ones self, the invention of Letters is thought to have had its original (though learnt by them no question of the children of *Israhel*, whom they lived amongst them;) the History whereof take briefly, and word for word, out of *Tacitus*. *Primi per formam animarum Ægyptii*, &c. "The *Ægyptians* first of all expressed the conceptions of the mind, by the shapes of Beasts; and the most ancient Monuments of man's memory, are seen graven in stones; and they say, that they are the first inventors of Letters. Then the *Phœnicians*, because they were strong at Sea, brought them into Greece; and so they had the glory of that which they received from others: For there goeth a report, that *Cadmus* sailing thither in a *Phœnician Ship*, was the Inventor of that Art among the *Greeks*, when they were yet unexpert and rude. Some report, that *Croesus* the *Albionian*, or *Livian* the *Theban*, and *Palamides* the *Greecian*, did find out sixteen Characters at the time of the *Trojan War*; and that afterward *Simonides* added the rest. But in *Italy* the *Etrurian* learned them of *Damaratus* the *Carinthian*; and the *Aborigine* of *Eubœa* the *Arcadian*. So far *Tacitus*. That the *Phœnicians* were the first Inventors of Letters, I dare not affirm; and as backward am I to refer the glory heretofore to the *Ægyptians*; for certainly the *Hebrews* were herein skilled before either: yet that the *Phœnicians* were herein School-masters to the *Greeks*, I think I may with safety maintain, having *Lucan* in consent with *Tacitus*.

Phœnices primi (fame fiderunt) ansæ  
Manfuram redditis vocem figure figuræ.

Phœnicians first (if fame may credit, have)  
Dar'd in rude Characters our words engrave.

Of this mind also is *Isidore* of *Sevil*, in the first Book of *Originationes*, who also addeth, that for that cause the Fronts of Books, and the Titles of Chapters were written in red Letters, as it is by some still in use. *Hinc et quid* & *Phœnicio colore librorum capita describuntur, quia ab* *israël* *littere initium habuerunt, cap. 3.* As for the less vulgar Letters, which the *Latines* call *Cyphre*, and whereof every exercised *States-man* hath peculiar to himself; they were first invented by *Julius Cæsar*, when he first began to think of the *Roman Monarchy*, and were used by him in his

his Letters to his more private and tried Friends, that if by misfortune they should be intercepted, the contents of them should not be understood. *Imas Ægyptus nris nostris* *et* *zaphodis*. *Ne ulla litterarum lectio cuius esset. Augustus*, one of the greatest Politicians of the World, had another kind of obscure writing, for in his Letters of more frequency and importance, he always used *zō* *derogari* *ad* *magis*, to put the Letter immediately following in the order of the Alphabet, for that which in ordinary writing he should have used. As for *Brachygraphy*, or the Art of Writing by short Characters, so useful for the taking of a Speech or Sermon as it is spoken: I find in *Dion*, that *Mæcenus*, that great Favourite of *Augustus Cæsar*, and patron of Learning, did first invent them: *ad celebratam scribendi*, for the speedier dispatch of Writing; *zō* *æser* *zō* *zaphodis* *zaphodis* *zaphodis* *zaphodis* (they are the very words of my Author) *æser* *zō* *zō* *zō*. *Isidor* in the second Chapter of this Book above mentioned, ascribeth it to *Aquila*, the *Libertus* or Freed-man of his *Mæcenus*; and to *Tortius Persianus*, and *Phalaris*, who added to this Invention. Yet had all they their chief light in it from *Tullius Tiro*, a Freed-man of *Cicero's*, who had undertaken and compassed it in the *Prepositions*, but went no further. At the last it was perfected by *Seneca*, who brought this Art into order and method; the whole Volume of his contractions consisting of 5000 words. *Deinde Seneca contrahit multum diglossæ et alia numero, opus efficit in quinque milia.*

So eminent in Arts and Learning were the old *Ægyptians*, that from them *Pythagoras* and *Democritus* learnt their Philosophy; *Lycurgus*, *Solon*, and *Plato*, their forms of Government; *Orpheus* and *Homer*, their Poetical fictions of the Gods. Particularly here flourished 1. *Arystarchus*, the famous and learned Grammarian; 2. *Herodian*, a diligent Student and Searcher into curious Arts; 3. *Ammonius*, the Master of *Plotinus*; 4. *Didymus*, surnamed *Calceutæ*, for his indetergible Industry in several Sciences; 5. *Mureton*, an old Historian, of whom we have nothing but some fragments; 6. *Appianus*, an Historian of a later date, whose works are extant; 7. *Didymus* the Grammarian; 8. *Cl. Ptolemaeus* the Geographer; 9. *Achilles Statius* the Poet; 10. And before all, the profound Philosopher *Mercurius*, surnamed *Trismegistus*. And after their Conversion to the Faith of Christ, 1. *Panteus*, the first Reader of Divinity in the Schools of *Alexandria*; 2. *Origen*, and 3. *Glemon Alexandrinus*, both skilled in the Universality of Learnings; 4. *Dionysius*; 5. *Athanasius*, and 6. *Cyril*, all three Bishops of *Alexandria*, and the glories of their several times.

This notwithstanding, their Religion before the embracing of Christianity, was the worst of *Gentilisms*; these people not only worshipped the Sun, Moon, and the Stars of Heaven, Creatures of greatest Use and Glory; nor only sacrificing to *Jupiter*, *Hercules*, *Apollo*, and the rest of the Gods, (many of whom were Authors in their several times of some publick benefit to mankind) as did other *Gentiles*; but attributing Divine honours to Crocodiles, Snakes, Serpents, Garlick, Leeks, and Onions. For which, as worthily condemned by the *Christian* Fathers, so most deservedly exposed unto publick scorn, by the Pens of the Poets.

Porræ & cape nefas violare, & ledere morsus;  
Felicem populi, quibus hæc nascitur in Hortis  
Nemina! — Quis necesse quædam demens  
Ægypti portenta colat, &c.

Which may be rendered to this purpose:

To bite an Onion or a Leek, is more  
Than deadly sin. The Numen they adore  
Grows in their Gardens. And who dares not know  
What monstrous Shapes for Gods in Egypt are?

But the Gods most esteemed by them, and by all sorts of the *Ægyptians* the most adored, was *Apis*, a coal-black Ox, with a white star in his forehead, the Effigies of an Eagle on his back, and two hairs only in his tail. But it seemeth his Godship was not too much respected by strangers. For *Cambyses* when he conquered *Egypt*, ran him with his sword through the Thigh, and cauled all his Priests to be scourged. And *Augustus* being here, would not vouchsafe to see him, saying, *Dei ad hæc hæc ægyptiæ* *ægyptiæ*, that the Gods, and not the Oxen of *Egypt* were the object of his Devotions. A speech most truly worthy to brave an Emperour.

But it is time we should proceed to a survey of these *Ægyptians*, as they stand at the present, much differing from the ingenuity and abilities of their Predecessors; nothing but Ignorance and Barbarism to be found amongst them. For such as have observed the nature of the Modern *Ægyptians*, affirm them to have much degenerated from the worth of their Ancestors; prone to Innovations, devoted to Luxury, cowardly, cruel, addicted naturally to cavil, and to detract from whatsoever is good and eminent. In their dealing with other men, more obtrusive than faithful, of a wit much inclining to craftiness, and very eager on their Profit. Of person, of a mean stature, tawny of complexion, and spare of body, but active and quick of foot. Such as inhabit in the Cities, apply themselves to *Merchandise*, grow rich by trading, reasonably well habited, and not much differing from the *Turks* in dress and fashion. Those in the Country, who betake themselves to *Husbandry*, affirmed to be a savage and nasty people, cruelted over with Dirt, and stinking of smocks; fit company for none but those of their own condition. Nothing now left amongst them of the Arts of their Ancestors, but an affliction which they have unto *Divination*; to *Fortune-telling* great pretenders; by which, and some cheating tricks in which very well practised, great numbers of them wander from one place to another, and to get their livelihood; occasioning the *Vagabonds* and Stragglers of other Nations, who pretend unto the same false Arts, to assume their names. The whole body of the Inhabitants now an *Hodder* or Medley of many Nations, *Moor*, *Arabians*, *Turks*, the natural *Egyptian* making up the least part of the reckoning.

The Women of the same complexion with the men, but well formed and featured, did not they too much affect a seeming *Corpulency*; which if they cannot get in Flesh, they will have in Cloaths. Very fruitful in Child-bearing, and quick of dispatch when they are in labour: some of them having three or four children at a Birth; those that are born in the eighth month living to good Age and not in danger of death, as in other Countries. Such of them as dwell in Cities cover their faces with black *Cyprosi* bespotted with red; their arms and ankles garnished with bracelets and hoops of Gold, Silver, or some other Metal. Those in the Country for a Vail, use some dirty cloth, having holes only for their eyes, which little is too much to face and abstain from loathing. Both in the City and the Country, contrary to the custom in all places else, the Women use to make water standing, and the men crouching on their knees.

The *Christian* Faith was here first planted by *S. Mark*, whom all Antiquity maketh the first Bishop of *Alexandria*. His

His Successors, till the time of *Heracles* and *Dionysius*, chosen continually out of the *Presbytery* or Cathedral-Clergy; afterwards out of the Clergy at large. Their Jurisdiction settled by a Canon of the Council at *Nice*, over all the Churches in the whole *Dioecesis* of *Egypt*, (taking the word *Dioecesis* in the civil notion) containing *Livya*, *Pentapolis*, and *Egypt* specially so called; to which, though *Epiphanius* adds *Thebais*, *Maritima* and *Ammonica*, yet he adds nothing in effect; *Thebais* and *Maritima* being parts of *Egypt*, as *Ammonica* was of *Livya*. Afterwards the *Asiopian* or *Abissine* Churches became subject to this *Patriarch* also, and do acknowledge to this day some relation to him. By the coming in of the *Saracens*, and the subjugation of this Country, *Christianity* fell here into great decay; languishing so sensibly into those times, especially since the Conquest of it by the *Turks*: that whereas *Borhardus* in his time reckoned three hundred thousand *Christians*; in the last estimate which was made of them, they were found to be fifty thousand. This small remainder of them, commonly called *Copti*, either from the Greek word *κοπτο* *Scindo*, because they retained the use of *Circumcision* with their *Christianity*; or from *Coptus*, a chief Town in *Egypt*, in which many of them did reside; or finally by *Abbreviation* from *Aegypti*, corrupted from *Aegypti*, their own National name. They are all *Jacobites* in Sect, from whom they differ notwithstanding in some particulars; in some from all *Christian* Churches, in many from the Church of *Rome*. The points most proper to them, 1. Using *Circumcision* with their *Baptism*, but rather as a National than Religious custom; though in that sense also laid aside, as is said by some, by the persuasion of some *Legates* from the Pope of *Rome*, in a Synod held in *Cairo*, Anno 1583. 2ly. Conferring all sacred Orders under the Priesthood on Infants immediately after *Baptism*; their Parents, till they come to sixteen years of age, performing what they promised in their behalf, viz. Charity, fasting on Wednesday and Friday, and four Lenten of the year. 3ly. Reputing *Baptism* not to be of any efficacy, except ministered by the Priest, in the open Church, in what extremity soever. 4ly. And not baptizing any Children till the fortieth day, though they die in the interim. 5ly. Giving to Infants the Sacrament of the *Eucharist*, as soon as Christened. 6ly. Contracting Marriages even in the second degree of Consanguinity, without dispensation. 7ly. Observing not the *Lords day*, nor any of the *Festivals*, except only in *Cities*. 8ly. And in their Liturgies, reading the Gospel written by *Nicodemus*. The points wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*. 1. Administering the Sacrament of the *Lord's Supper* under both kinds. 2ly. Administering in leavened bread. 3ly. Admitting neither *Extreme Unction*, nor the use of the *Eucharist*, to those that are sick. 4ly. Nor *Purgatory*, nor Prayer for the dead; 5ly. Nor using Elevation in the act of Administering; and 6ly. Reckoning the *Roman Church* for *Heretical*, and esteeming no better of the *Latine*, than they do of the *Jews*. In these Opinions they continue hitherto against all Opponents and persuasions. For though *Baronius* in the end of the sixth Tome of his *Annals*, hath registered an Ambassage from *Marcus*, the then Patriarch of *Alexandria*, to Pope *Clement* the 8. wherein he is said to have submitted himself and the Churches of *Egypt* to the Pope of *Rome*; yet upon further search made, it was found but a Cheat, devised to hold up the reputation of a sinking cause. The Patriarch of *Alexandria* still adhereth to his own Authority; though many of late, by the practice and solicitation of some baser *Friars*, have been drawn to be of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*; and to use her Liturgies.

Among the *Rarities* of this Country, some were the works of Nature, and some of industry and magnificence.

Of this last kind I reckon the *Labyrinth*, the *Pyramids*, and the *Pharos*; all of them admirable in their several kinds, the envy of the Ages past, and the astonishment of the present. Look we first on the *Pyramids*, many in number, three more celebrated, and one the principal of all; situate on the South of the City of *Memphis*, and on the Western banks of *Nilus*. This last, the chief of the *Worlds seven wonders*, square at the bottom, is supposed to take up eight Acres of ground. Every square 300 single Paces in length, ascended by 255 steps, each step above three foot high; and a breadth proportionable; growing by degrees narrower and narrower till we come to the top, and at the top consisting but of three Stones only, yet large enough for 60 men to stand upon. No Stone so little in the whole as to be drawn by any of our Carriages, yet brought thither from the *Arabian* Mountains. How brought, and by what Engine mounted, is an equal wonder. Built for the Sepulchre of *Cheops*, an *Egyptian* King (as were the rest for others of those mighty Princes) who employed in it day by day twenty years together, no fewer than 360000 men continually working on it. The charges which they put him to, in no other food than *Garlick*, *Radishes*, and *Onions*, being computed at a thousand and eight hundred *Talents*. The next to this in bulk and beauty, is said to be the work of a Daughter of *Cheops*, enabled (as *Herodotus* writeth) both to finish her Fathers undertaking, and raise her own unto the height, by the prostitution of her body, requiring but one stone towards the Work from each one of her Customers, though the Tale unlikely. Nor is it of a greater truth, though affirmed by *Josaphus*, and supported by many good Divines, that the Drudgery put upon the *Israelites* did contain these *Pyramids*: the Materials of these works being *Stone*, by their employment *Bricks*. But past all doubt, advanced by those confederate Princes upon good advice, and not for ostentation only of their power and glories. For by this means they did not only preserve their memory to succeeding Ages, but for the present kept the Subject from sloth and idleness; who being a people prone unto *Innovations*, were otherwise like enough to have fed that sin in the change of Government, if not thus prudently diverted.

As for the *Labyrinth*, it was built by *Pfaminetus* on the banks of the River *Nilus*, situate on the South of the *Pyramids*, and North of *Asiut*, or the City of *Cusae*. It contained within the compass of one continued Wall a thousand Houses, and twelve Royal Palaces, all covered with Marble; and had only one entrance, but innumerable turnings and returnings, sometimes one over another; and all in a manner invisible to such as were not acquainted with them: the building more under ground than above: the Marble stones laid with such Art, that neither Wood nor Cement was employed in any part of the Fabric; the Chambers so disposed, that the doors upon their opening, did give a report no less terrible than a crack of Thunder. The main entrance all of white Marble, adorned with stately Columns, and most curious of Scenery. The end at length being attained, a pair of Steps of 90 Steps conducted into a gallant Portico, supported with Pillars of *Theban* stone, which was the entrance into a spacious Hall, (the place of their general Conventions) all of polished Marble, set out with the Statues of their Gods. A work which afterwards was imitated by *Dadalus*, in the *Cretan* Labyrinths; though that fell as fast from the glories of this, as *Minus* was inferior unto *Pfaminetus* in Power and Riches.

Next unto this, I place the Isle and Tower of *Pharos*, the Island opposite unto *Alexandria*, once a mile distant from the Land, but joined to the Continent by *Cleopatra* on this occasion. The *Rhodians*, then Lords of the Sea,

Sea, used to exact some tribute or acknowledgment out of every Island within those Seas, and consequently out of this. Their Ambassadors sent unto *Cleopatra* to demand this Tribute, she detained with her seven days, under colour of celebrating some solemn *Festivals*; and in the mean time, by making huge dams and banks in the Sea, with incredible both charge and speed; united the Island to the shore; which finished, she sent the *Rhodians* away empty-handed, with this witty Jeer, telling them, That they were to take Toll of the Islands, and not of the Continent. A Work of great Rarity and Magnificence, both for the bigness of it, taking up seven furlongs of Ground, and for that cause called *Heptastadium*; and that incredible speed wherewith it was finished. As for the *Watch-Tower*, called in Greek and *Latine* *Pharos*, by the name of the Island; it was built by *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, for the benefit of Sailors, (the Seas upon that coast being very unsafe, and full of Flats) to guide them over the Bar of *Alexandria*. Deliberately ordered another of the *Worlds seven Wonders*: the other five being, 1. the *Mausoleum*, 2. the Temple of *Ephefus*, 3. the Walls of *Babylon*, 4. the Colossus of *Rhodes*, and 5. the Statue of *Jupiter Olympius*. This Watch-Tower, or *Pharos* was of wonderful height, ascended by degrees, and having many Lanthorns at the top, wherein Lights burned nightly, as a direction to such as sailed by Sea. The Materials were white Marble; the chief Architects, *Sotratrus* of *Gnidos*, who engraved on the Work this Inscription: *Sotratrus* of *Gnidos*, the Son of *Dexiphanes*, to the Gods *Protectors*, for the Safeguard of Sailors. This Inscription he covered with *Plaster*, and thereon engraved the Name and Title of the King, the Founder: to the end that the Kings Name being so wasted and washed away, his own, which was written in Marble, might be eternized to posterity as the Founder of it. Nigh unto this *Pharos*, *Cesar* pursuing *Pompey* into *Egypt*, and having discontented the King thereof, by demanding pay for his Soldiers, had his Navy which here lay at Anchor, assailed by *Achilles*, one of young *Ptolomy* Servants, *Cesar* himself being then in *Alexandria*. Hearing of the Skirmish, he hastened to the *Pharos*, meaning to succour his Navy in person; but the *Egyptians* making towards him on all sides, he was compelled to leap into the Sea, and swim for his life. And though (to avoid their Darts) he sometimes ducked, yet held he still his left hand above the water, and in it divers Books, which he carried fate unto his Ships, and animating his men, got the Victory. It is said that *Egypt* hath only two doors; the one by Land, which is the strong Tower of *Pelegium*, or *Damiata*; the other by water, which is this *Pharos*: *Tota Egyptus maritimo accessu, Pharos pedestre vero, Pelusio, velut clausura maris existimatur*, saith *Opian*.

Amongst the *Rarities* of Nature, we may reckon those strange Beasts and Fishes, proper almost unto this Country, i. e. the *Crocodile*, the *Ichneumon*, the *Hippopotamus* (or Sea-horse) the *Bis*, the *Ape*, and many several sorts of Serpents. To speak of which particularly were a Work more proper to a Natural History, than a Geographical. And yet the *Crocodile*, more proper unto *Egypt* than all the rest, cannot be parted with in silence: A Creature of a strange nature, hatched of an Egg no bigger than that of a *Turkey*, and increasing to the length of thirty foot; his tail as long as all the rest of his Body, with which he is accustomed to inchain his prey, and draw it into the River; his Feet armed with Claws, and his Back with impenetrable Scales; his Mouth so wide (of which he moveth only the upper Jaw) that he is able to swallow a Heifer; equally used to both Elements, but better fitted in the Water, than on the Land; Cowardly, though a Creature of prey, and such as usually flies from those which dare set upon him; and easily vanquished by the *Dolphin*,

who swimming under the water woundeth him in the belly, where affailable only. Whether so easily destroyed by the *Ichneumon* (a kind of Water-Rat) skipping upon his mouth, and gnawing his way out again, as old Writers say, hath of late been questioned.

Of less dispute, but not less *Rarity* in Nature, are these that follow: 1. That in all this Country it never raineth; or if a Cloud do sometimes happen to dissolve upon them, it bringeth on their Bodies innumerable Sores, and strange Diseases. 2. The annual overflowing of the River *Nilus*, and the many memorable times which are said to follow on the same. Of which it is thus said by *Lucan*;

*Terra suis contenta bonis, non indiga Mercis,  
Aut Jovis; in solo tanta est fiducia Nilo:*

*The Earth content with its own Wealth, doth crave  
No Foreign Mart, nor Jove himself; they have  
Their hope alone in Nilus fruitful Wave.*

This *Nilus* from the 15 day of *June*, swelleth above his Banks, for the space of 40 days; and in as many more, gathereth his waters again to their proper bounds. If it flow not to the height of fifteen Cubits, then the Earth is deficient in her abundance of increase, for want of moisture; and if the waters surmount the superficies of the Earth, more than seventeen Cubits, then like a drunken man, it cannot produce its natural operation, as having his stomach (as it were) overlaid and furcharged with too much Liquor: but if the Mean be granted, there is no Country which can brag of the like Fertility; the Corn being all housed before the 20th of *May*. During this *Inundation*, they keep their Beasts and Cattle on the tops of such little hills, which either the Providence of Nature, or the Industry of Man, hath prepared for them; where they abide till the decrease of the Waters; and on these Hills also stand most of their Towns and Villages, appearing in the time of the Flood like so many Islands; and holding a Commerce and continual Traffic by the intercourse of Boats and Shallops, by which they do transport their Marketable Commodities from one place to another. And if it chance at any time, that the River doth not thus overflow the Country, it is not only the fore-runner to a following dearth, but prognosticeth some ensuing mischief to the Prince and State: Confirmed by the testimony of good and credible Authors, who have told us that in the 10th and 11th years of *Cleopatra*, the River increased not at all; that it was noted as a Fore-teller of the Fall of those two Great, but Unfortunate Princes, *Cleopatra* and her Sweet-heart *Antonius*. A second Commodity which ariseth from the overflows of *Nilus*, is health, which it bringeth with it in most parts of the Country; the Plague, which oftentimes miserably rageth upon the first day of the Flood, abating instantly; inasmuch that whereas 500 may die of that Disease in the City of *Cairo* but the day before, there dieth not one of it on the day following. A third wonder in this River is, that keeping its waters united in a Body together, after it falleth into the Sea, it changeth the colour of the *Mediterranean*, further than any part of it can be seen from the shore. Add unto these, the many living Creatures which the flume thereof engendreth, on the withdrawing of the River to its natural Channel: whereof *Onid* thus;

*Sic ubi desinit madidior Septemfluvius agros  
Nilus, & antiquo sua flumina reddit altis;  
Plurima Cultures versis Animalia glebis  
Inveniant.*

Which I English thus:

*So when the Seven-month Nile the fields forsakes,  
And to his ancient Channel him betakes;  
The Plague-men many living Creatures find,  
By turning up the Mud that's left behind.*

Amongst which Creatures so engendered, are said to be such innumerable heaps of Frogs, that if Nature, or Divine Providence rather, did not furnish this Country with a proportionable number of *Storks*, by whom they are greedily devoured, the *Plague* of Frogs would come a second time upon them to their utter destruction.

On the Banks of this River also grew those fadgy Woods called *Papyrus*, of which Paper was made in former times, which Treckon amongst the *Rarities of Egypt* also, but a Rarity of Art and Nature mixed. They divided it into thin flakes, (into which it naturally parteth) then laying them on a Table, and moistening them with the glutinous waters of the River, they pressed them together, and after dried them in the Sun. By means of which invention, Books being easier to be transcribed and reserved than formerly, *Ptolemy Philadelphus* made his excellent Library at *Alexandria*; and understanding how *Attalus King of Pergamus*, by the benefit of this Egyptian Paper, arrived to carrying him in that kind of Magnificence, prohibited the export of it out of Egypt. Herupon *Attalus* invented the use of Parchments, made of the Skins of Calves and Sheep; from the materials called *Membrane*, and *Pergamentum* from the place where they were invented. The convenience whereof was the cause, that in short time the Egyptian Paper was worn out of use; in place whereof succeeded our Paper made of Rags; the Authors of which excellent Invention, our Progenitors have forgotten to commit to memory. Before the use of these Papers and Parchments were first made known, I observe three ways of Writing amongst the Ancients: 1. I hope I shall be pardoned this brief digression. 1. On the inward side of the Bark of a Tree, which is in *Latine* called *Libri*, and whence Books have the name of *Libri*. 2. On Tables framed out of the main body of a Tree, which being called *Candex*, gave the *Latins* occasion to call a Book *Codex*. 3. They used to cover their Tables over with Wax; and thereon to write what they listed to signify; from whence a Letter-carrier was named *Tabulatorius*. The Invention wherewith they wrote, was a sharp pointed Iron, which they called *Stylus*; a word now signifying (the Original derived from hence) the peculiar kind of *Purpura* which any man uses as *Negligent Stylus*, in *Quintilian*; and *Exortatus Stylus*, in *Cicero*. I should have also noted, that they used sometimes to write in *Leaves*; That the *Sibyls* Oracles being so written and scattered abroad, had the name of *Sibyllæ Folia*; and that from thence we have the phrase of a *Leaf of Paper*. But of this Argument enough.

Now to these Rarities of Nature, and Magnificent Industry, most of them near the River Nile, or relating to it, we are to add another far greater moment, and such as yields fecundity to be supernatural, which is that above five miles from the City of *Cairo*, there is a place, in which, on every Good Friday yearly, there appear the Heads, Legs, and Arms of Men rising out of the Ground, to a very great number: which if any man draw near unto them, or touch any of them, will shrink again into the Earth. Supposed by some to be an Imposture of some *Water-Monks* only to tickle them over-night in the Sands, and keeping them secret to themselves, obtain thereby the ferrying over of many thousands of people to thence the night. But *Stephen Duplex*, a sober and discerning man in the opinion

of *Gonsartius*, who reports it from him, conceived otherwise of it: affirming soberly that he was an Eye-witness of the wonder, that he had touched divers of these rising Members; and that (as he was once so doing to the head of a Child) a man of *Cairo* cried out unto him *Kali, Kali, ante materaledi*; that is to say *Hold, hold, you know not what you do*. A strange Forewarning (I fit but of undoubted credit) of the Resurrection of the whole Body, presented yearly, in the Rising of these several parts.

Having thus done with the *Rarities* concerning *Nilus* and that great increase of wealth which accrued thereby to all the Country, in the improvement of the natural commodities of the Earth: let us next look on the *Red-Sea*, and the Riches which that brought unto this Kingdom, in the way of Trading. A Sea whereof we have spoken already, as to the reason of the name, the extent thereof, and the several Islands contained in it, and therefore shall not need to repeat it here. That which is proper to this Country, and to this alone, is the fame it hath for the miraculous passage of the *Isopeltier* through it as upon dry-land, and the drowning of *Pharao's Concheries* and all his people, at large commemorated in the Books of Holy Scriptures: as also for that through it the Spices of *India* and *Arabia*, were brought to *Alexandria*; and thence by the *Venicians* dispersed through all Europe, Africa, and Asia. I suppose I shall not do amiss to fit down Historically out of *Galvano*, a relation of the beginning continuance, and period of the Traffick through this Sea, by which all Europe formerly received so great Commodity. *Know then* (saith he) that *Ptolemy Philadelphus*, 277 years before the Incarnation, was the first that set on foot this Navigation: *Colus* (of old called *Myos*, *Hormos*) on the Sea-side being the ordinary Haven out of which they boyled Salt for India; and into which they returned, full fraught with their Commodities. From hence they were by Land conveyed to *Coptus*, and so down the Nile to *Alexandria*, by which Traffick the City grew exceeding Rich; inasmuch that the Custom-house there yielded *Ptol. Aulites* 7. *Millia* and an half of Gold yearly. The Romans being Lords of Egypt, enhanced the Customs to double that sum: so they fell into India every year (as *Pliny* witnesseth) 1200 *Shipps*, whose lading was worth 120000 *Crownes*; and there was made in return of every Crown 100. When the Vandals, Lombards, Goths, and Moors had torn in pieces the Roman Empire, all Commerce between Nations began to cease. At last providing the inconveniences, they began anew, conceiving the Indian Commodities partly by Land, partly by Water, unto *Capha* in *Taurica Chersonesus*, belonging to the *Gomæ*. Next Traiberon was made the *Mar-Town*, then *Samarchand* in *Zagataie*, where the Indian, Turkish, and Persian Merchants meet to barter Wares: the Turks conveying their Merchandise to *Damascus*, *Barutti*, and *Alleppe*; from whence the *Venicians* transported it to *Venice*, making that the common Emporium of Christendom. Once again, viz. Anno 1300. the Soldans of Egypt restored the Passage by the *Red-Sea*; which having continued more than 200 years, is now discontinued by the *Portugals*, *Spaniards*, *English* and *Dutch*, which bring them to their several homes by the backside of *Africk*: So that not only the Traffick of *Alexandria* is almost decayed, and the Riches of the *Venicians* much diminished; but the *Drugs* and *Spices* have lost much of their Virtue, as impaired by too much moisture in so long a Voyage. So much faith he, touching the cause and alteration of this Trading: to which I shall take leave to add, that for the better and more quick return of such Commodities as were usually brought into this Sea; some of the Kings of Egypt attempted formerly to cut a main Channel from it to the River *Nilus*, passable by Ships of greatest burthen; the marks of whose proud attempts are remaining still. *Sesathris* was the first who designed the work, having

before with good success cut many Trenches from the River, and some Navigable into many places of the Country; by which unspeakable Murders were drained, the Country flourished, Trade made ease, and the People better furnished with more than in former times. During the great Persian Monarch, seconded the same Project; so did one of the *Ptolomies*; The like is said of a Capricious *Ptolemy* in these latter times. But they all gave it over on the great consideration; which was a fear, lest by letting in the *Red-Sea* they might drown the Country, and perhaps make a second Deluge in the parts of *Greece* and *Asia Minor* which lay nearest to them: that Sea being found to be much higher than the *Mediterranean*, and the flats of *Egypt*.

But here we are to understand, that all which hitherto hath been spoken concerning *Egypt*, relates to *Egypt* strictly, and specially so called; containing only so much of the Country of *Egypt* as lieth upon the Banks and Channels of the River *Nilus*; and not to all that tract of ground which lay betwixt the *Red-Sea* and the borders of *Libya*, which was reckoned in the compass of the Kingdom of *Egypt*, much less as comprehending *Libya* and *Cyrene* also, though now accounted Members of that Body; and anciently parts or Provinces of the *Dioecsis* of it. For *Egypt*, in the largest sense and acceptance of the word, may be, and generally is divided into these three parts, viz. 1. *Egypt*, in the general Nation, or the Kingdom of *Egypt*, extended on the *Mediterranean* from the borders of *Idumea* to the *Roman Libya*, or *Marmarica*, lying Westward of the mouth of *Nilus*, called *Heracleotica*; and on the borders of *Aethiopia Superior* from the said *Red-Sea*, to the Country of *Libya Interior*. 2. *Libya* or *Marmarica*, lying betwixt *Egypt* properly so called, and the Province of *Cyrene* or *Pontopolis*. And 3. *Cyrene* or *Pontopolis*, reaching from that *Libya* to the greater *Syria*; which is bordered with that part by the *African Dioecsis*, which is now called the Kingdom of *Tunis*. And in this first acceptance of it we shall now proceed to a Survey of the Mountains and chief Cities; which done, we shall describe the other in their proper places; and then unite them all in *General Story*.

As for the Mountains of this Country, there are very many: there were no living else for the people in the time of the overflowings of the River. The principal of these, 1. Those called *Mount Libya*, lying in a long Chain on the West of *Nilus*; 2. *Alabysinus*; 3. *Phryphryus*; 4. *Troicus*; 5. *Basilianus* on the East thereof. Betwixt these Hills the course of the River is so hemmed in on both sides, that at the upper part of the stream, where it first entereth into *Egypt*, the space between the Mountains is not above four miles broad; enlarging afterwards to eight, then about *Cairo* to thirty fives; then opening wider and wider, till we come to the breaches of the *Delta*, as the Country doth increase in breadth. On these and other of the Mountains and lesser Hills, stand most part of the Towns, the receptacles of the Country-people in the time of Flood, rising when least, to fifteen *Cubits*, or seven yards and an half.

Rivers of Note here are none but *Nilus*, nor indeed any one but that; that being sufficient of it felt to enrich this Country, which otherwise would be nothing but a *Sandy Desert*. The Head thereof not in the Mountains of the *Mounts*, as was once supposed, but in the Lake *Zemire* in the *Aethiopia interior*, passing from thence through the *Higher Aethiopia*, or *Habesine* Empire, till it falls at last into this Country; and running in one continual Channel (excepting where it brancheth into little Islands, as it sometimes doth) before its influx into the Sea, is divided into seven great streams, opening into the Sea with so many mouths. Namely, 1. *Heracleotica*; 2. *Babitanica*; 3. *Schénitica*; 4. *Paniticum*; 5. *Mondianum*; 6. *Camiaticum*; 7. *Ptolemaicum*. The first and last of these Currents

(which are the only two now left) being far distant from the other, and growing into one at the chief point of the *Rivers* division, make that part of *Egypt* which is called *Delta*, because of such as come to this Country out of *Greece*, *Italy*, or *Antalis*; it resembleth that Letter in the *Greek Alphabet*. Now because *Nilus* so runneth in its certain Channel, that the People have no other water to make use of for all necessities; there are many by-trenches and deep Ditches cut in convenient places (by the Care and Munificence of their Kings) to receive its Waters, and to communicate them to the people, who know almost no other drink then the Waters thereof; and indeed they need not: the Waters of this River being of such excellent both taste and virtue, that when *Ptolemy Niger* saw his *Souldiers* murmur for want of Wine; *When* (saith he) *do you grumble for Wine, having the Water of Nile to drink?*

But beside the Waters of this River, and the Trenches of it, the people are supplied with that Commodity by Lakes and artificial Channels, which serve for watering their Cattel, tempering of Mortar for their Buildings, and other such inferior uses; sometimes perhaps for drink for the poorer sort, who cannot be conveniently furnished with the waters of *Nile*. Amongst the Trenches, which were many, as before was said) those of most estimation were the Works of *Ptolemy*, and the Emperor *Trajan*, the first falling into that branch of the Nile, which maketh the Ile called *Heracleotis*: the other into the main body of it not far from *Cairo*. These two, by reason of the many fresh Springs which fall into them, have the name of Rivers in old Authors: and betwixt these was seated the Land of *Goshen*, extending from *Nilus* to the *Red-Sea* on the East and West. The chief of Note amongst the Lakes, were those called, 1. *Mareotis*, not far from *Alexandria*, by *Pliny* called *Araratop*, *Maria*, by *Ptolemy*; all which names are now lost, and changed into that of *Lago di Antaeon*, from a Town of that name near unto it. 2. *Lacus* supposed to be the same which in the Book of *Maccabees* is called *Aphar*, lib. 1. cap. 9. And 3. *Moris*, now called *Bubaria*, more memorable than the rest. In compass 3500 furlongs, 50 fathom deep, in the midst whereof were two *Pyramides*, 50 fathoms above the water, and as much beneath it: the Fifth of this Lake for one fix months in the year, is said to be worth twenty of their pounds a day to the Kings Exchequer; for the other six, each day a Talent. 4. The Lakes called *Amariensis*, which the Trench, or River called *Ptolemaeus*, doth discharge its waters, conveyed from thence into the *Red-Sea*.

The whole divided anciently into two parts onely. 1. That called *Delta*, betwixt the two extrem branches of the River *Nilus*, the form of which Letter it resembleth to him who standing on the Sea-shore, could take a view of it, as before was said. 2. That called *Thebaïs* from *Thebes*, the principal City of it, comprehending all the rest of the course of that River, but up on both sides with the Mountains spoken of before. But this Division leaving out all those parts heretofore, which lay on the East-side towards the *Arabian Gulf*, and on the West, as far as to the borders of *Libya Marmarica*; the *Macedonians* laying it all together, divided it into 18 *Centrades*, or *Dioecis*, by them called *Nomi*; increasing in the time of *Ptolemy* the Geographer, to 46; *Orelinus* out of divers Authors hath found 20 more. When conquered by the *Romans*, and made a *Dioecsis* of the Empire: it was divided into four Provinces, (not reckoning *Marmarica* and *Cyrene* into the account) that is to say, 1. *Egyptiaca*, specially so called, containing all the *Delta*, and the *Dioecis* or *Nomus* of *Mareotis*, bordering on *Marmarica*. 2. *Aegyptiaca*, so called from *Angustin Cesar*, on the East of the *Delta*, betwixt it and *Arabia Petrea*. 3. *Aradaia*, so called from the Emperor *Arcadius*, in whose time it was taken out of

*Thobais* lying on both sides of the River, from the *Delta* to the City of *Antinous*. 4. *Thobais*, extending on both sides of the River from the borders of *Libya* *Marmarica* to the *Red-Sea*, (as the other doth) from *Antinous* unto *Aethiopia*; Divided otherwise by some into *Superiorem*, reaching from *Aethiopia* to the City of *Antinous*, *Mediam*, stretching thence to the point of the *Delta*; and *Inferiorem*, which comprehendeth all the rest. But at this time, that part heretofore which lieth on the South and East of *Cairo* is called *Saud*, or *Salid*; honoured heretofore with the dwelling of the ancient *Pharaohs*, because nearest unto *Aethiopia*, their most puissant Neighbour. 2. That betwixt *Cairo*, *Rofetta*, and *Alexandria*, hath the name of *Erythra*, wherein the *Ptolomæan* Princes did most reside; because most convenient for receiving Supplies of Men from the States of *Greece*. And finally, that from *Cairo*, to *Tenfe* and *Damietta*, is now called *Maronna*, in which the *Turks* and *Mamelucks* made the seat of their Empire; because most neighbouring to the Christians, whom they stood in fear of, as likeliest to invade them upon that side. In the whole Country there was reckoned in the time of *Amasis* the second, no fewer than 36000 Cities; but if the Towns and Villages be not reckon'd in, I should much doubt of the account. By *Diodorus Siculus*, it is said, that there were 3000 in his time: but *Orellius* on a diligent search, finds 200 only.

Those of most note in the Province of *Aegyptus*, 1. *Pelufium*, the most Eastern City of *Egypt* towards *Idumæa*, situate on the most Eastern Channel of *Nile*, called hence *Peluficum*; by *Amnians* to be the work of *Peluseus* the Father of *Achilles*, commanded by the Gods to purge himself in the Lake adjoining for the murder of his Brother *Phocæus*. Accounted for the chief door of *Egypt* towards the Land, as *Pharos* was to those who came thither by Sea; the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Aegyptus*, the birth place of *Ptolemy* the Geographer, and the Episcopall Seat of *St. Ifidorus*, furnished *Pelufium*, whole eloquent and pious Epistles are still extant. Out of the ruins heretofore (if not the same under another Title) *Jarofo*, 2. *Damietta*, memorable for the often Sieges laid unto it by the Christian Armies; for none more than that under *John de Brenne*, the Titulary King of *Jerusalem*, and the Princes of *Europe*, Anno 1220. During which (being of 10 months continuance) the Famine and the Pestilence to extremely rag'd, that the Town in a manner was depopled, before the Beliegers knew any thing of their condition: till in the end two venturous Soldiers, admiring the silence and solitude of so great a City, in a *Barado* scald the Walls; but found no man to make resistance. The next day the whole Army entered, where they found in every house, and every corner of the streets, whole heaps of dead bodies, none to give them buriall. A lamentable and ruefull spectacle! 3. *Hera* or *Civitas Heronum*, in the *Ardian* *Hydnus*; at the very bottom of the *Gulf*; remarkable for the first interview betwixt *Isaac* and *Joseph* after his coming into *Egypt*. 4. *Heliopolis*, or the City of the Sun, now called *Beftames*; in the Scriptures *On*, of which *Putiphar* the Father of *Afenath* (whom *Pharaoh* married unto *Joseph*) was Priest, or Prince, as is said, *Gen. 41. 45*. Given (as *Josephus* telleth us) for an habitation to the Sons of *Isaac*; by consequence one of the chief Cities of the Land *Ramfès* or *Giften*; and memorable in time succeeding for a publick Temple built for the *Jews*, with the consent of *Ptolemy*, surnamed *Philadelphus*, by *Onias* the High-Priest, then dispossest of his Authority and Office by the power of *Antiochus* a Temple much esteemed by the *Hellenists*, or *Greeking Jews*; and though Schismatical at the best in its first original; yet Schismatical and Idolatrous too, as was that of Mount *Gebazinim*. 5. *Babutis*, somewhat more North than *Heliopolis*,

by some of the ancients called *Avaris*, by the Scriptures *Pibefeth*, another City of that tract; now better known by the name of *Ziath*: supposed to be the same which the *Noëtitia* calleth *Caftra Judæorum*; memorable in time of *Paganism*, for a famous Temple of *Diana*. 6. *Asiut*, on the shore of the *Red-Sea*, so called in honour of *Asiut*, Sister of *Philadelphus* and Wife to *Lysimachus* King of *Thrace*; afterwards called *Cleopatras* in honour of *Queen Cleopatra*; now better known by the name of *Suet*. Of great commerce and trading in the time of the *Ptolomies*: Now almost abandoned; and would be utterly deserted, were it not made the station of the *Turkish* Gallies, that command the *Gulf*; which being framed at *Cairo* of such Timber as is brought thither by Sea from the Woods of *Cilicia*, and sometimes from the shores of the *Euxine* Sea; are again taken in pieces, carried from *Cairo* unto this City on the backs of Camels, and here joynted together. Conceived to be the same which in former times was called *Bast-Zephon* (of which see *Exod. 14. 9*.) from the late incamping place of the Tribes of *Israel*, who from hence passed through the *Red-Sea*, upon dry Land. 7. *Gibla Rubra*, by the *Greeks* called *Hiera Bolus*, and sometimes *Erythra Bolus* also, more near the *Latin*; the redness of the soil giving name unto it: situate on the River or Trench of *Tralan*: more memorable for a misfortune that befel it than for any thing else; purposely burnt by *Amoseph* the fifth, upon this occasion. Being blind, he was assured by some of his Wizzards, that if he washed his eyes with the Urine of a Woman, which had never known any but her own Husband, he should be restored unto his sight. After a long search and many vain trials, he met with one whose water cured him: whom he took to wife; and causing all the rest whom he had made trial of, to be brought together to this Town, he set fire on the City and burnt both it and all the women there assembled with which Tale, if true, is little to honour of the Dames of *Egypt*.

Places of most note and observation in the Province of *Egypt*, strictly and specially called, are 1. *Alexandria*, situate Westward of the *Delta*, over again the Isle of *Pharos* and built upon a Promontory, thrusting it self into the Sea; with which on the one side, and the Lake *Maronna* on the other, it is exceeding well defended: the Work of *Alexander* the Great, and by him peopled with *Greeks*, immediately after his Conquest of *Egypt*. The Regal Seat of the *Ptolomies*, whilst *Egypt* did maintain the State of a Kingdom; and afterwards the *Metropolis* of it, when a Roman Diocesis. Adorned with many stately Buildings; of which most memorable the *Serapim*, (or Temple of their God *Serapis*) for sumptuous workmanship, and the magnificence of the Fabrick, inferior to none but the *Roman* Capitol; and next to that, the Library erected by *Philadelphus*, who had stored it with 700000 Volumes; unfortunately burnt in the War against *Julius Cæsar*. A City of great Trading, and infinite Riches; *ut supra* *scilicet* *et* *alexandria* the greatest Empery of the World, as is said by *Strabo*. Wanton with which, the Citizens so abound in all licentiousness both of life and speech, that they spared not the Emperour himself if he came in their way. But they paid dearly for their folly. For *Cæsar* could not so patiently of a Contumely as some wiser Princes, having felt the lashes of their tongues, when he was amongst them, assembled all the youth of the City, as if out of them he would have chosen some to attend his Person: and suddenly gave command to his Soldiers, to put them all to the Sword. A slaughter so great and universal, that the River *Nile* coloured with the blood of the slain, might not in this improperly at that time be called a *Red-Sea*. In this City, Anno 180. *Pantemon* read both Divinity and Philosophy to all such as would come to hear him; which as it is conceived to give the first hint to the instructing of

Univer-

Universities in the rest of Christendom; so from that first beginning the Schools of *Alexandria* grew to great and eminent; that *Nazianzen* calleth them *Theriacas* *tractatus*; *scilicet* *theriacus*, the Shop, or Work-house, as it were, of all kinds of Learnings. Much short of what it was even in point of Trading, especially since the diversion of the Spice Trade from the Bay of *Arabia*; and utterly divested of those beauties which once it had. Inhabited at the present by a mixture of Nations, *Mooris*, *Jews*, *Turks*, *Greeks*, and *Christian* *Coptis*; more for some little gain which they reap by Trafficking than any pleasure in the place. Now called *Scandaria* by the *Turks*, remarkable only for the house of the Patriarch (though he dwell for the most part in *Cairo*) and a Church in which *St. Mark* their first Bishop was said to be buried. 2. *Camppe*, situate East of *Alexandria*, and on the principal branch of the *Nile*, called *Heracleoticum*; so called from *Camppe* the Pilot of *Montanus*, who having suffered shipwreck upon this Coast, was there interred by his Master. A Town so branded in old times, for varieties of all kind of beastliness, and Luxury, that as *Seneca* very well observed, he that avoided the viciousness and debauchery of it, could not escape the infamy: the very place admitting matter for suspicion. 3. *Rofetta*, on the same branch of the River, and not far from *Camppe*, out of whose ruins it arose; built by a Slave of one of the *Egyptian* *Caliphs*; unwall'd, and destitute of all Fortifications, but plentifully accommodated with all sorts of Commodities, and well frequented by the Merchant. 4. *Nieopolis*, now called *Mania*, the Monument of some eminent Victory, and probably of the Conquest of *Egypt* by the *Macedonians*; the name being *Greek*, and the Town standing within 30 Furlongs of *Alexandria*. 5. *Apbrodis* and *Apbrodisopolis*, so called from *Venus*, who was here worshipp'd: situate betwixt the two middle branches of the *Nile*. 6. *Sais*, betwixt the same branches of the River also: whence that *Nomus* or Division had the name of *Saïtes*. It is now called *Schut*, or *Siguiti*. 7. *Plimbis*, on the Sea-side; and 8. *Hierax*, more within the Land: the chief Towns of the Region called *Mæria*.

In *Arcadia* called also *Heptanomis*, because it contained seven of the *Nomi* or Divisions, into which *Egypt* was distributed by the *Macedonians*, and the places of most note were and are, 1. *Memphis*, on the Western banks of *Nile*, not far from the sharp point of the *Delta*, where the River first beginning to divide it self; the Regal City of the old *Egyptian* *Pharaohs*; by one of which who removed the Seat-Royal from *Thebes* hither, it is said to be built, and called thus by the name of his Daughter. In compass, when it flourished about 20 miles; great, populous, and adorned with a world of Antiquities; amongst others with the Temples of *Apis*, *Venus*, and *Serapis*, bect with *Sphinxes*; now nothing left of the Ruins of it, but the Statues of some monstrous Resemblances, sufficient to shew what it hath been formerly. The *Pyramides* before described, stood not far from hence to which the Poet relateth, saying,

Barbara Pyramidum sileat miracula Memphis.

Let barbarous Memphis brag no more  
Of her Pyramides, as before.

2. *Babylon*, called for distinctions sake, *Babylon Aegyptiorum*, built on the other side of the River, and somewhat more unto the North: said to be founded by *Cambyses* the Persian Monarch, the first that made this Kingdom stoop to the yoke of a Foreiner; and by him peopled with some *Babylonians* or *Chaldeans* transplanted hither. Great, as appeareth by the ruins; amongst which,

many of the Christian Temples and Monasteries do lie there in rubbish; the Cattle whereof served long after for the Garrison of the three Legions, appointed to defend this Country in the time of the *Romans*. This, thought by some to be the *Babylon* mentioned by *Saint Peter*, in his first Epistle Chap. ult. which the following words, *and Mark my Saw*, (*Saint Mark* being the first Bishop of the *Alexandrians*, and the Apostle of *Egypt*) may make somewhat probable, but the truth and reality hereof, I dispute not now. Out of the ruins of this City arose 3. *Cairo*, now, and for many Ages past, the chief of this Country: raised from the ashes of old *Babylon* by the *Caliphs* of *Egypt*, and by the *Mamelucks* made the Seat-Royal of their Kingdom. In compass not above eight miles; but full of Streets, the number of which said to be 18000, every one of them fortified with a Gate at each end; which being well barred, made every several street an impregnable Fortref. Found so by *Schymus* the first, when he conquered *Egypt*, who spent three days in forcing his way through it with his numerous Army. The private buildings very mean; the publick, especially the *Mosques*, beyond thought magnificent. Visited every seventh year with a dreadful Pestilence; yet still so populous, that it is conceived to be in good health, if there did not above a thousand in a day, or three hundred thousand within that year. Adorned with many delicate Orchards both within the City and without; full of variety of contentments, and neighboured by a pleasant Lake; but made more pleasant by the company which meet there in Boats, for their mutual solace and delights. Fortified at the South end with a stately Castle, the Palace of the *Mameluck Sultans*; situate on the top of a Mountain; overlooking the City, and a great part of the Country also. So large, that it seemeth a City of it self, immersed with high walls, divided into many partitions of several Courts, in times past the places of exercise; and entered by doors of Iron. Destroyed for the most part by *Selimus*, for fear of giving opportunity to some rebellion; or envying the *Mamelucks* the glory of having been the Masters of so brave a Mansion: that which is left, now serving for the habitation of the *Turkish* *Bassas*, who hath the Government of this Kingdom. 4. *Metared*, or *Matarea*, not far from *Cairo*; the soil whereof is said to be so rich and fertile, that the People are fain to cover it with Sand or Gravel, for moderating the extreme rankness of it. 5. *Asiut*, on the West-side of the *Nile*, and somewhat South of the famous *Labyrinth* before described; called also (to difference it from another of the same name on the shore of the *Red-Sea*) the City of *Crocodiles*, in regard of the divine honours there done that Monster. 6. *Nilopolis*, or *Nili Civitas*, in the Island called *Heracleotis*, made by the imbecumens of the River; most memorable for being the Episcopall Seat of *Cheremonus*, a right good Prelate; of whom see *Eusebius* in the 6. Book, and 34. Chapter of his Ecclesiastical History. 7. *Troia*, on the Eastern stream which makes that Island not much observable, but for giving name to the *Moutes* *Tracis* lying near unto it; out of which were digged the Stones which made the *Pyramids*. 8. *Cinopolis* in a little Island upon the water. 9. *Hermopolis*, or the City of *Mercury*; called also *Hermopolis magna*, to difference it from another of that name not far from *Alexandria*, to which they give the Adjunct of *Parva*. 10. *Antinous*, now *Antin*, founded by *Adrian* the Emperour, in honour of *Antinous* his especial Favourite; the most Southern City of this Province, on the banks of the *Nile*. 11. *Dionysius*, or the City of *Bacchus*, situate on the Southern end of the Lake of *Mœris*, in the *Nomus* or Division called *Oasis parva*. 12. *Clyma*, upon the shores of the *Gulf*, a Roman Garrison.





first suffered to live under them, as a *Free-state*, till the Conquest of Egypt; then reckoned as a part of that, and so accordingly described by *Ptolemy*: where *Libya*, *Marmarica*, and *Ammonica*, occur amongst the *Nomi*, or *Districts* of it. Afterwards made a distinct Province of that *Dioecesis*, and governed by a *Lord-Præfident*, under the *Præfides Augustalis*, or *Suprem* Commander for the Emperours.

## 3. CYRENE.

CYRENE is bounded on the East, with *Marmarica*; on the West, with *Africa propria*, or the Realm of *Tunisi*; and some part of the *Mediterranean*, and the Greater *Syria*; on the North, with the *Mediterranean* wholly; on the South, with *Libya Inferiour*, or the *Deserts* of *Libya*.

It took this name from *Cyrene*, the chief City of it, from whence sometimes also called *Cyrenæica*; by *Pliny* and some other *Roman* Writers it is called *Pentapolis*, from five chief Cities which were in it, viz. 1. *Cyrene*, 2. *Ptolemais*, 3. *Arsinoë*, 4. *Darnis*, 5. *Berenice*: by *Ammianus* for the same reason *Libya Pentapolis*, the name of *Libya* extending over many of these *Roman* Provinces. And finally, at the present, it passeth with that last described by the name of *Barca*, or *Barka Marmarica*; the whole extent whereof in length from the Greater *Syria* unto *Egypt*, is no less than 1300 miles, but the breadth not above 200.

The Country in the South parts desolate and barren, flied with few Towns, and not many Villages: the people living up and down in scattered houses, and at such a distance, as if it were in so many Islands. Desolate not of Springs and Rivers only, but of Rain-water too, the Clouds not very often dropping: if any fell, it was dried up presently by the Sands. But within fifteen miles of the Sea, indifferently fruitful and well inhabited.

The people in old times were said to have been utterly ignorant of buying and selling, of fraud and cheating, not knowing, or not caring for the Use of Money: content with little, not superfluous in their Cloths or Buildings; their houses for the most part (except only in their greater Cities) made of Oler-Twigs. Much altered in the first part of their Character, since the coming of the *Arabians* hither; now a Thieving Nation, given wholly to Robbery and Spoil. So lazy, that they will not Manure or Till their Land, but provide themselves with Corn from *Sicily* laying their Children to paw for it, till by their Thieving they can raise a sufficient sum to discharge the Debt.

One only River I find in it, but of fame enough to serve for many; by *Ptolemy* called *Lathon*, by *Pliny* *Lebon*, by the Poets *Lebe*. Swallowed by the Earth not far from its first original, it riseth up again about *Berenice*; fained therefore by the Poets to come from *Hell*, and to create *forgetfulness* in all them that drink of it: it being the condition of the dead to remember nothing. Thence the occasion of the fancy. Some *Lakes* I find also in it, whereof one occasioned by this River, not far from the Sea; another more within the Land (where indeed more necessary) near *Palturus*. With Mountains better fortified (though not much better for them) the principal whereof, the first called *Heracleis Aræne*, the Sands of *Heracles*, thwarting the Country East and West, 2. *Bæolican*, on the South of thofe: and 3. *Volpe*, a long ridge of Hills, bordering upon *Africa Propria*.

Cities of most note in it, 1. *Apollonia*, in the East parts near the Promontory called *Zephyrium*, in the Confines of *Libya*, or *Marmarica*. 2. *Cyrene*, in the West of that; once of such power, that it contended with *Carthage* for some preeminencies: Then the chief Lady of this Tract,

which it gave this name to. The birth-place of *Erato*, the *Mathematician*, *Callimachus* the Poet, and of that *Simon* of *Cyrene*, whom the *Jews* compelled to carry our *Saviour* Crocs. 3. *Ptolemais*, betwixt *Cyrene* and *Arsinoë*; built or repaired by *Ptolemy Philadelphus*; the Episcopal City of *Synefius*, a learned and religious Bishop of the Primitive times, as appears by his Epistles extant. 4. *Arsinoë*, on the East-side of the River *Lathon*; so called in honour of *Arsinoë*, the sister of *Philadelphus*, and Wife of *Magus*, once King of this Country. 5. *Berenice*, on the Western Bank of the said River, so called from *Berenice* the Mother, or (another of the same nature) the Daughter of *Magus*: The furthest Town of all this Country, bordering on the Promontory called *Boracum*, and the Greater *Syria*. This last a Quick-sand very dangerous to *Mariners*, in compass 635 miles, and by them carefully avoided. 6. *Palturus*, more within the Land, but on the borders of *Libya* or *Marmarica*, South to *Apollonia*. 7. *Aptungis*, now *Lungifari*, by *Ptolemy* called *Apuchi Fannum*. 1. *Heracleis Turris*, the Tower of *Heracles* near the Greater *Syria*; erected in the honour of *Heracles*, his killing of the Dragon, and robbing the Orchards of the *Hesperides* of their golden Apples. Thofe *Hesperides* said to be *Aglaë*, *Arcthusa*, and *Hesperethusa*, the three Daughters of *Atlas*: their Orchard placed by *Ptolemy* betwixt this Tower and *Palturus*; by *Pomponius*, in the *Atlantic* Islands; by *Virgil*, in *Mauritania Tingitana*; by *Pliny*, both in *Mauritania* and this *Cyrene*; and possibly in all alike. 9. *Zephyrus*, 10. *Acabhis* in the mid-lands; all worn out of memory. 11. *Fefan*, of greatest name now, though scarce worth the naming.

The old Inhabitants of this Country, were the *Abite* on the East, the *Bercite* near the Greater *Syria*, the *Mæcæne* and *Legænicæ* near the Mountains of *Heracles*; all probably descended from *Naphthum* the Son of *Mizraim*, of whom there still remain some foot-steps in *Apuchi Fannum*, the Fane or Temple of *Apuchus*. This *Apuchus*, by some mistakenly called *Antuchus*, and by the *Grecians* said to be the Son of *Cyrene*, and the Brother of *Arsinoë*: who being sent out to seek their Fortunes, *Arsinoë* fell into the life named *Caos*; and *Apuchus*, or *Antuchus*, into *Libya*, both by them first planted. *Nephthim*, the Deity of this Country, by the *Egyptians* called *Nephthim*, seems to come from *Naphthum*; most highly worshipped by this People, because he first taught them the use of *equus*, *equus*, the Art of training Horses to the Coach or Chariot; in which the *Cyrenæans* after grew so expert, that they could drive their Chariots in a round, or circle, and always keep their Chariot-wheels in the self-same track. Of no great power, till *Battus* a noble *Spartan*, landing in this Country, had built the City of *Cyrene*; and founded it in so good a course of Life and Discipline, that in short time it came to have Dominion over the most part of this Country; and to contend with *Carthage* about their Territories. Warded on by *Arsinoë* King of *Egypt*, they faced with the *Greeks* for aid, and by their assistance overcame him. Long after which, falling at odds among themselves, they craved aid of *Ptolemy* the first of that Race, by whom they were finally subdued. Left by him at his death to *Magus*, a Son of his last Wife by a former Husband, whom he came again to the Crown of one of his Daughters; it came again to the Crown of *Egypt*, by the marriage of *Berenice*, the Daughter and Heir of *Magus*, with the Son of *Ptolemy Philadelphus*. Allocated from which Crown again, for the pretence of some of the younger Princes; and in the end given by one of the *Ptolemies*, the last King hereof, to the people of *Rome*. Reduced into the form of a Province by *Augustus Cæsar*, by whom united in one Government with the Isle of *Crete*: but

but made a Province of it self by the following Emperours, never since separated from the fortune and affairs of *Egypt*, to which now we hasten.

That the Kingdom and Nation of *Egypt* was of great Antiquity, is not a matter to be doubted; the question in this point, betwixt them and the *Scythian*, being not easily decided. Whether it were so ancient, as the *Egyptians* say, may perhaps be controverted. By them it was affirmed, that they had the memory and story of 13000 years; and a succession of 330 Kings in the time of *Amosis* the second, who was contemporary with *Cyrus*. Which number of years, if understood of *Solary* years, measured by the course of the Sun, must not be allowed of; because it maketh them many thousand years older than the Creation: but if of *Lunar*, which is most agreeable unto the account of the *Egyptians*, who reckoned their years by months; it will amount unto no more than to 1000, or 1100 years, and so fall answerably to the times following after the Flood. But for their Kings, 330 in their reckonings, and those of 24 or 25 several *Dynasties*, the matter is not so soon made up. For either those Kings, must not be all Kings or supreme Lords of *Egypt*, as the *Pharaohs* were, but their several *Regents* or *Vice-regents*, armed with Regal power; those *Dynasties* not the successions of so many Regal Families, but of their Substitutes and Lieutenants, many of which might live successively under one *Suprem*: or else we must needs look on *Egypt* as distracted in those times, into several Kingdoms, amongst the Princes of those *Dynasties* before remembered; or finally, we must look for some of those Kings and Princes before the Flood. By either of these ways, the business may be well agreed. For if that most of them were but the names of several *Regents*, (as probable enough it is) there might be many such in the Reign of one King; according to the King's fancy, the merit of particular persons, to the necessities of State; Changes of great Officers, especially if grown too great, are not new nor strange. If they were all Kings, or Supreme Rulers, (as it is also probable) we find not any thing of moment to persuade the contrary, but that many of them lived and reigned in their several parts (as in other Countreys in those times) till the greater had devoured the less. Or if they were the names of such sovereign Princes, as had the sole command of *Egypt* before the Flood, (as some think they were) they might amount in all to a great number, and so many *Dynasties*; the illiquity of those times, the ambition of great persons, and consequently the short lives of the Kings being duly pondered. That *Egypt*, and most part of the World, was peopled before the Flood, hath been already proved in our *General Preface*: If peopled, then no question under some form of Government: the names of which Governours (call them Kings or Rulers, or what else you please) might be preserved in *Egypt* on Pillars of Brass or Stone; or otherwise transmitted by tradition unto *Cham* the Father of *Misraim*, by whom this Country was first planted after the Confusion of *Babel*. But that old stock of Kings and People being destroyed in the general Deluge, the Children of *Misraim* succeeded next in their desolate dwellings; yet so, that the posterity of *Chus* and *Lebahim*, two others of the Sons of *Cham*, had their shares therefrom. From the first of which descended the Inhabitants of those parts of *Egypt*, which lay along the shores of the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*: in which re-

spect, not only one of the *Nomi*, or divisions bordering on the *Isthmus*, had the name of *Arabia*: but the people dwelling on those shores were called *Arabes*, divided into the *Arabes Azariti*, and *Arabes Aditi*. And from the other came that mixture of Nations, called *Liby-Egyptii*, or *Libyans* and *Egyptians* intermixt together, inhabiting in *Misraica*, and the Western parts. But though these people were derived from several Ancestors, they made one Nation in the total: subject to *Misraim* as their Chief, and after his decease, unto his Successors in the Kingdom of *Egypt*. Concerning whom we may observe, that in *Cham*, our greatest Antiquaries find the name of *Jupiter Hammon*: *Misraim* they guess to be *Osiris*, the great God of *Egypt*. To him succeeded *Typhon*, not by right of blood, but by Usurpation; who dissatisfied by *Lebahim*, the brother of *Misraim* (whom the *Greeks* call *Hercules Ægyptius*) the Kingdom was restored to *Orus*, the Son of *Osiris*. During the time of these few Princes, happened all those things which are recorded in the Scriptures concerning *Egypt*; from the first going down of *Abraham* in the time of *Osiris*, to the advancement of *Joseph* in the Reign of *Orus*: in which there passed the 15, 16, and 17. *Dynasties* of Regal Vice-Roys. Lieutenants only, as I take it, to those mighty Princes. The Kings themselves called generally by the name of *Pharaohs*, though they had all their proper and peculiar names: as afterwards their Successors here had the name of *Ptolemies*, and the *Roman* Emperours, that of *Cæsar*. Few of them famous in the stories of other Nations, or for renown for their Achievements and Exploits abroad, contenting themselves with the Revenues of their own Dominions, and spending the surplussage thereof in building Cities, draining the Marshes of the Nile, or other works of Ostentation and Magnificence. Only *Sesiftris* is of fame for his undertakings; though when he had cast up his account, he got nothing by them: of whom it is reported, that being a King of great wealth and puissance, he had brought under subjection all his neighbouring Princes, whom he compelled in turns to draw his Chariot. It hapned that one of these unfortunate Princes cast his eye many times on the Coach-wheel: and being by *Sesiftris* demanded the cause of his so doing, he replied; That the falling of that Spoke low, which but just before was the height in the wheel, put him in mind of the infallibility of Fortune. The King deeply weighing the Parable, would never after be so drawn in his Chariot. He was also the first that encountered the *Sybarites* in Battle; having already in conceit conquered them, before he led his Army against them. The *Sybarites* much marvelled, that a King of such great Revenues would wage war against a Nation so poor, with whom the fight would be doubtful, the Victory unpromisable; but to be vanquished a perpetual infamy and disgrace. For their parts they resolved to meet him as an Enemy, whose overthrow would enrich them. When the Armies came to join, the *Egyptians* were discomfited, and pursued even to their own doors by the Enemy. But the *Sybarites* could not enter the Country, because of the Fens, with whose passage they were unacquainted; and so they returned. Which said, without troubling our selves with their many *Dynasties*, we will lay down the Succession of their Kings, as well as we can; the disagreement of Historians and Chronologers, touching this Succession, being irreconcilable.

## The PHARAOHS, or KINGS of EGYPT of Egyptian Race.

A.M.

- 1 Mizraim, the Son of Cham, by the Grecians called *Ogyris*: in whose time Abraham went into Egypt.
- 2 Typhon, an Usurper.
- 3 Orus, the Son of *Ogyris*, restored unto the Kingdom by his Uncle *Lebabin*; the Advancer of *Joseph*.
- 2207 4 Amasis, *Themistis*, or *Amos*, in whose time Jacob went down into Egypt. 25.
- 2233 5 Chebon. 12.
- 2245 6 Amnophis, or Amnophitis. 21.
- 2266 7 Amasis, the Sister of Amnophitis. 22.
- 2288 8 Mephres. 12.
- 2300 9 Mephremuthsis. 25.
- 2325 10 Themistis, or Themistis. 10.
- 2335 11 Amnophitis II. supposed to be Memnon and the Vocal Statue. 31.
- 2366 12 Orus II. the Bisiris of the Grecians, a bloody Tyrant; who commanded the male-children of *Israel* to be slain. 37.
- 2403 13 Aenecheres, by some called *Thermutis*, the Daughter of Amnophitis the second, and afterwards the Wife of Orus; who preserved *Moser*, and survived her Husband. 13.
- 2416 14 Rathbis, the Son of Orus. 6.
- 2422 15 Aenecheres. II. 12.
- 2449 16 Ceneber, by some called *Arenasis*; *Bocchoris*, by others; drowned in the Red-Sea, with his Horses and Chariots. 16.
- 2453 17 Acheres. 8.
- 2462 18 Cherres. 10.
- 2472 19 Armais, by the Grecians called *Danais*, whose 50 Daughters being married to the 50 Sons of his Brother *Egyptus*, murdered their Husbands; for which cause *Danais*, being forced out of Egypt, passed into Greece, where attaining to the Kingdom of *Argos*, he gave unto the Grecians the name of *Danai*.
- 2575 20 Ramses, surnamed *Egyptus*, the Brother of *Danais*.
- 2580 21 Amnophitis III. 10.
- 2590 22 Sathos, or Sathia. 55.
- 2645 23 Khafseer, or Ramses. 66.
- 2711 24 Amnophitis IV. 40.
- 2751 25 Ramses II. 26.
- 2777 26 Thunus 7. After whose death succeeded a Race of twelve Kings, called the *Diopolitani*, who held the Kingdom for the space of 177 years. Their Names we find not, but that that one of the latest of them, whose Daughter *Solomon* married, was called *Vaphres*; and perceiving *Ogdas*, who removed the Royal Seat from *Thebes* to *Memphis*, might be another, and the eighth, as his name importeth.
- 2561 39 Smendes, the Sise of the Scriptures, who made War upon *Rehobam* the Son of *Solomon*; conceived to be the *Sesiris* of Herodotus, and others of the ancient Writers, of whom sufficiently before.
- 2987 40 Psennecus, conceived to be the *Cheops* of Herodotus, Founder of the vast *Pyramid* before described. 41.

A.M.

- 3028 41 Nopher-Cherres. 4.
- 3032 42 Amnophitis V. 9.
- 3041 43 Osfekon, the *Afchis* of Herodotus.
- 3047 44 Pfanecus. 9.
- 3056 45 Psennecus II. 14.
- 3070 46 Sfenchis. 21.
- 3091 47 Ufson. 15.
- 3106 48 Takelatis. 13.
- 3119 49 Patabstis. 40.
- 3159 50 Ofekon, the second *Hercules*, *Egyptus*, as some will have it, 8.
- 3167 51 Pfanis. 15.
- 3185 52 Bocchoris, called by the name of *Se*, 2 Kings 17. 4. taken and burnt by *Sabacon* the King of *Aethiopia*. 44.
- 3229 53 Sabacon King of *Aethiopia*. 8.
- 3238 54 Sevacus Son of *Sabacon*. 14.
- 3252 55 Tarason, falsely supposed to be the *Zerah* of the Scriptures. 10.
- 3270 56 Sicphinates. 7.
- 3277 57 Niclaphis, after whose death followed an Aristocracy of 12 Princes, who having governed 15 years, were divided of their Authority by one of their own number, called
- 3288 58 Pfanitiscus, who first made the *Grecians* acquainted with Egypt, whom he invited to his aid against the *Syrians*: the Founder of the famous *Labyrinth* before mentioned, and no less memorable for his prudent preventing of the *Syrians* from breaking into his Country, of which we spoke before, when we were in *Tartaria*. 54.
- 3335 59 Necho, who slew *Josiah* at the battle of *Megiddo*. 25.
- 3360 60 Pfanis II. 44.
- 3366 61 Apries, called *Hophra*, Jer 44. subdued by *Nebuchadnezzar*, and deposed by *Amasis*. 25.
- 3391 62 Amasis II. 44.
- 3435 63 Pfanitiscus or Pfanitiscus II. a King of six months only; vanquished by *Cambyses* the second Monarch of *Persia*, who united Egypt to that Empire, under which it continued till the time of *Darius* the sixth King of the *Medes* and *Persians*: in the 2d. year of whose Reign it revolted from him, and became a Kingdom of its self, as in former times.
- 3555 64 Amyntas, the last King after the Revolt. 6.
- 3561 65 Nepherites. 6.
- 3567 66 Achoris. 12.
- 3579 67 Pfanitiscus III. 1.
- 3580 68 Nepherites II. a King of two months only, 69. *Nebuchadnezzar*. 18.
- 3598 70 Teos or Techer, deposed by
- 36000 71 Nollanor II. the last King of the natural Egyptian Race, that ever governed Egypt by the name of a King. For in the 18th. of the Reign of this King, Egypt was again recovered by the valour of *Oebus*, the eighth Emperor of *Persia*. And when *Alexander* had overthrown *Darius*, he came, and without blows won this fertile kingdom; which yielded him

him during his life the yearly value of 6000 Talents. After his death this Kingdom fell to the share of *Ptolemies* the Son of *Lagus*, from whom all the subsequent Kings of Egypt were called *Ptolemies*.

## The Second DYNASTY, or the PTOLOMEAN Kings of Egypt.

A.M.

- 3461 1 Ptolemy, one of *Alexander's* Captains, reputed the Son of *Lagus*; but supposed to be the Son of *Philip* of *Macedon*, half-brother to *Alexander*. 40.
- 3681 2 Ptol. Philadelphus, who filled the Library of *Alexandria* with 700000 Volumes, and caused the 72 Interpreters to translate the Bible.
- 3717 3 Ptol. Evergetes the Son of *Philadelphus*, vanquished *Seleucus Callinicus* King of *Syria*, and probably had subdued the Kingdom, if not called back by Domestic diffusions. 26.
- 3743 4 Ptol. Philopater, a cruel, voluptuous and incontinent Prince; cruelly slew *Cleomenes* the last King of *Sparta*, who had fled to his Father for relief, in the time of his exile. 17.
- 3769 5 Ptol. Epiphanes, at the age of five years succeeded his Father; protected by the *Romans* against *Antiochus* the Great of *Syria*, who had an aim upon his Kingdom. 28.
- 3784 6 Ptol. Philometor, the Son of *Epiphanes*; by *Cleopatra* the Daughter of *Antiochus*; protected in his homage by the *Romans* also: caused himself to be Crowned King of *Syria*, but again relinquished it. 35.
- 3829 7 Ptol. Evergetes II. for his deformity called *Physcon*, the Brother of *Ptol. Philometor*, a wicked Prince, and one that spent the greatest part of his Reign in a cruel war against *Cleopatra*, his Wife and Sister. 29.
- 3858 8 Ptol. Lathargus reigned 16 years with *Cleopatra* his Mother, by whom dispossessed of his Estate for the space of ten years; after her death was sole Lord of Egypt. His Brother *Alexander* being taken by the Queen-mother as her Associate, in the time of his deprivation, and passing in the account of the Kings of Egypt.
- 3892 9 Ptol. Antates, the Son of *Lathargus*, surnamed also *Dionysius*, whose Brother being settled by him in the Isle of *Cyprus*, was most unjustly stripped of it by the power of the *Romans*: and he himself ousted of Egypt by his own Subjects, but restored by the aid and love of *Pompey*.
- 3922 10 Ptol. Dionysius, called also *Junior*, or the younger, together with *Cleopatra* his Wife and Sister, succeeded *Antates* in the Throne, which they held together by the space of three years. In the last of which, *Pompey* was barbarously slain on the shores of Egypt, by the command of *Achillas* the young Kings Governor; and the young King himself unfortunately slain in the *Alexandrian*

A.M.

- tumult against *Julius Caesar*.
- 3925 11 *Cleopatra*, the Wife and Sister of *Dionysius*, restored to the Crown of Egypt by the bounty of *Caesar*, of whom exceedingly beloved for her wit and beauty. After which she governed Egypt 19 years in her own sole right, with great pomp and splendor: when being imbarqued in the bed and fortunes of *Marc Anthony*, she killed her self not long after his fatal Overthrow at the Battle of *Actium*, that the might not be led in triumph through *Rome*.
- These *Ptolemaean* Princes of Egypt, were for the most part in wars with the Kings of *Syria*, in which they were by turns victorious, and vanquished; neither Prince having cause to boast of his bargain. After the death of *Cleopatra*, whose live and love with *Marcus Antonius I* will not now relate, this Country fell to the share of the *Roman* Emperours, and was by them highly prized, and warily looked into. The Governor hereof was but a Gentleman of *Rome*; no Senator being permitted to come into it; it being a maxim of State, not to suffer men of great Houses to come into that Country, whose revolt may endanger the whole Empire. Of this nature was Egypt. For besides the natural situation of the place, very defensible; and besides the abundance of Money with which it was stored; this Country alone furnished the City of *Rome* with Corn, for four Months yearly. Whence *Jesephus* being chosen Emperour by the *Syrian* Legions, and hearing of the defeat of his concurrent *Vitellius*, hastened hither: to this end only, that detaining the ordinary provision of Victuals, he might by famine compel the City of *Rome* to stand at his devotion: *Ut nehom quoque extreme opis indigem fame urgetet*, as the Historian hath observed. When made a Province of that Empire, it was counted as the Emperour's sole Peculiar: afterwards made (as well it might) an entire Diocesi of its self, subordinate to the *Prefectus Pretorio Orientis*. In the division of the Empire allotted to the *Constantinopolitani*, whose Government being thought to be insupportable by this wanton people, they called in the *Saracens*, by whom the *Greek* Garrisons were cast out, and the Country made subject to *Hammar* the third of the *Caliphs*. Afterwards weary of them also, they would have a *Caliph* of their own, revolting totally from the *Caliph* of *Bagdat*. So that from this time forwards we shall meet with two *Caliphs* at a time; the one residing at *Cairo* in Egypt, to whom the *Saracens* or *Moslems* of *Spain* and *Africa* did submit themselves: the other at *Bagdat*, who Lorded it over all the rest, at least as to the Supremacy Title, and some chief Prerogatives; though the main power was centred and disposed of among their Sultans.

## The Third DYNASTY, or the CALIPHS of EGYPT.

A.C.	A.H.	
870	247	1 Achmader, or Achmat, 10.
880	257	2 Tolon, 3.
883	260	3 Hammaria, 29.
903	280	4 Abanun, slain by Mustaphi, the Caliph of Babylon, 37.
940	317	5 Achid, Muhammad, the Son of Tangi, 3.
943	320	6 Abigad, the Son of Achid, 27.
970	347	7 Meaz, Ladin, Illabi, of the race of Phatime and Hali, 5.
975	352	8 Aziz, the Son of Meaz, 21.
996	373	9 Elchachin, 23.
1019	396	10 Etaber Lazizidin Illabi, 16.
1035	412	11 Mustaratzar Billabi, 60.
1096	472	12 Mustade, 5.
1100	477	13 Elomir Bahacan Illabi, 35.
1135	512	14 Elchaf Ladin Illabi.
		15 Etazar.
		16 Elphaiz.

## The Fourth DYNASTY, or the Race of the TURKISH KINGS or CALIPHS of EGYPT.

- 1163 1 Afereddin, surnamed Shirachob, called Sarracon, by the Christian Writers; the first of the *Turky* which reigned in Egypt; of the Noble Family of *Ainab*.
- 1186 2 Zeli-bedin, called Saladin, by the Christian Writers; the Son (or as some say, the Nephew) of Sarracon, or Shirachob; confirmed in his Estate by the Caliph of Bagdat, under whose jurisdiction he reduced the Egyptian Schismatics. He obtained also the Kingdom of Damascus, conquered Mesopotamia and Palestine; and in the year 1190, regained the City of Hierusalem. A Prince who wanted nothing to commend him to succeeding Ages, nor to glorify him in the Kingdom of Heaven, but the saving knowledge of CHRIST JESUS.
- 1199 3 Elaziz, the second Son of Saladin, succeeded in the Realm of Egypt; which he exchanged afterwards with his Brother Eladul for the Kingdom of Damascus.
- 4 Eladul, or El-Phazel, by the Christian Writers called Melchid, succeeded upon this exchange in the Kingdom of Egypt; and overcame the Christians, without the loss of a man, at the siege of Cairo, by letting loose the Slaves of Nine, which drowned their Army, and forced them to covenant with him at his own pleasure.
- 1210 5 Elchamli.
- 1237 6 Melch Affalch, by the Christian Writers called Melchid, the Son of Elchamli, who overcame Louis the 9th. of France; and going with that King towards Damiat, was slain by the Soldiers of his Guard, called Mamaluck.

17 Etzar Ladin Illabi, the Son of Elphaiz, the last Caliph, or King of Egypt, of the race of Phatime: the *Turky* succeeding after his death in this opulent Kingdom. Concerning which we are to know, that Elphaiz, the Father of Etzar, being overpowered by Almericus King of Hierusalem, craved aid of Norradine the *Turkish* Sultan of Damascus; which he received under the conduct of Sarracon, or Shirachob, a right valiant and stout Commander: who taking his advantages, not only cleared the Country of Almericus, but got the whole Kingdom to himself, dashing out the brains of Elphaiz with his Horseman's Mace. And though Etzar his Son assumed for a while the Title of Caliph, yet the destruction of himself, and the whole Phatimian Family rooted out by Sarracon, soon put an end to that Claim, and left the Kingdom in the peaceable possession of the *Turkish* Sultans.

1242 7 Elmutan, the Son of Melch Affalch, succeeded for a time in his Fathers Throne. But the Mamaluck being resolved to obtain the Kingdom for themselves, enforced him to flee to a Tower of Wood, which they set on fire; the poor Prince, half burned, leaping into a River (which ran close by it) was there drowned, and the Mamaluck settled in the Kingdom, An. 1245.

These Mamaluck were the Off-spring of a People on the banks of the Euxine Sea, vulgarly called the *Circassians*: whom Melchid, either bought of their Parents, or (at the second hand) of the *Tartars*, then newly Masters of those Countreys, to supply the want of valor in the idle and effeminate people of Egypt, and out of them selected a choice Band of men, for the Guard of his Person. Knowing their strength, and finding their opportunity, they treacherously flew Melchid, his Lord and Master; appointing one Azzedin Iok, a *Turcoman* by Nation, and therefore by most Christian Writers called *Tarqaimancu*, (one of their own number) a man of great spirit and valour, to succeed in the Throne. Unwilling to receive the Supreme Authority into the hands of the *Egyptians*; and not permitting their own sons to enjoy the name and privilege of Mamaluck; they bought yearly certain numbers of *Circassian* Slaves, whom they committed to the keeping of the *Egyptians*, by them to be instructed in the Egyptian Language, and the Law of Mahomet. Being thus fitted for Employment, they were taught the Discipline of War, and by degrees advanced into the highest Offices of Power and Trust, as now the *Janizaries* are in the *Turkish* Empire: in choice and ordering of whom, as the *Ottoman Turkey* were preceded by those of Egypt, so it is possible enough that the *Janizaries* may make as great a Change in the *Turkish* Empire, as

as the Mamaluck did in the *Egyptians*. So 'unfale a thing it is for a Prince to commit the sole guard of his person, or the defence of his Dominions, to the hands of such, whom not the fence of a natural Duty, but the hopes of Profit or Preferment may make useful to him. For thus we find, that Constantine, a King of the *Britains*, was murdered by his Guard of *Pilgr*: most of the *Roman* Emperours, by the hands of those whom they intrusted, either with the guard of their Persons, or the command of their Armies: And I think no man can be ignorant, how many times the Princes and Estates of Italy have been brought into the extremest dangers, by trusting too much to the honesty of mercenary Soldiers and Commanders. Take we for instance the proceedings of Giscope Pisenino, who with his Followers first took pay of Ferdinand the first of Naples, left him, to fight for his vowed Enemy, John Duke of Calabria, the Son of Rene Duke of Anjou; whom he also forsook in his greatest need. The like we find of Francisco Sforza, first entertained by the Duke of Milan, from whom he revolted to the *Florentines*, from them to the *Venetians*; and being again received into the Pay of the State of Milan, made use of their own Army to subdue that City. Nor can I speak better of the *Switzers*, or their dealing in this kind with the *French* Kings, the *Sforza's* Dukes of Milan, and with whom not, (to say the truth) that ever trusted or employed them.

Now as it is unsafe for a Prince to commit the custody of his Person, or the defence of his Estates to the Faith of Foreigners; so is it dangerous to him to call in such Aids, and to commit his Fortunes either wholly, or principally, unto their Fidelity. A moderate supply of Men, Money, or Munition, from a confederate King, is, I confess, in most cases convenient, in some necessary: as well to save their Natives from the Sword, as to try a Friend, and interest an Ally in the same cause. But to invite too great a number of Succours, as from *Helpers* may become *Masters*, and oppress the people whom they came to defend; is that Rock on which many *Realms* have suffered shipwreck, and which a good Pilot of the State should with all care avoid. For as in the fickleness of the body natural, it is hurtful to a man's Health and life to take more Physick, than it may (after the effect thereof be wrought) either digest, or put out again; so in the body Politick, it is a perilous matter to receive more succours, than what (after they have done the deed they were sent for) we may either with convenience reward and settle with us, or at liberty expel. All succours, this of Foreign supplies is most incurable; and *Ne quid nimis*, if in nothing else true, is in this case Oracle. There is no Kingdom (I am verily persuaded) under the Sun, which hath not been by this means conquered; no Common-wealth, which hath not been by this means ruined. To relate all examples, were infinite and tedious; to infer some, pleasing to the Readers and to illustrate the point, not unnecessary. To begin with former times, Philip of Macedon, called into Greece to assist the *Thebans* against the *Phocians*, brought all that Country, in a manner, under his command. The *Romans*, by aiding the *Sicilians* against the *Carthaginians*, possessed themselves of that flourishing Island; by assisting the *Hedui* against the *Septani*, mastered *Gallia*; by succouring *Androgeus* against *Cassibelon*, seized on *Britain*; by siding with the *Ætolians* against *Perseus*, united to their Empire all the Kingdom of *Macedon*; and by the same course what not? In after-ages, the *Britains* called in the *Saxons*, and were by them thrust out of all; the

*Irish* called in the *English*, by whom they were, in process of time totally subdued; and the *Indians* called in the *Mongul-Tartars*, who now Lord it over them. These foreign Supplies are invited, or let into a Country, commonly in four cases. First, when some one man upon discontent, or desire of revenge, openeth them a way into a Country: upon which motives, *Nasir* invited the *Lam-bards* into Italy; and Count Julian brought the *Moor* into Spain; the one to be revenged on the Eunuchs *Saphia*, who had despitely reviled him; the other to revenge himself on King *Roderick*, who ravished his Daughter. Secondly, when a weaker Faction makes a way for them, to maintain their cause against a stronger. On which ground, the Duke of Burgundy being oppressed by the faction of Orleans, made way for Henry the fifth to pass into France; and the *Leaguers* drew the *Spaniards* in, to hold up their declining cause against Henry the 4th. Thirdly, when an ambitious Prince makes use of a foreign power, to usurp upon the rights of another man. And for that cause *Ludovic*, Sforza perwaded *Charles* the 8th. to undertake the Conquest of the Realm of Naples; that by the countenance of his Arms, he might appropriate to him the Dukedom of Milan. Fourthly, when a King overburdened by a foreign or domestic Force, which he is not able to resist, requires the help of a foreign Friend: in which case, *Plus à medice qu'à malis mali*, the Physick proves many times worse than the Disease. For thus the Kings of Naples of the house of Aragon, being in danger of the French, drew in the Aids of Ferdinand the Catholic, the Cousin-German once removed of the King then being; and the Caliphs of Egypt, not able to withstand the Forces of Almericus, craved aid of the *Turky*: by which means, both those Kingdoms were made a prey to their foreign friends, and by avoiding Scylla, fled into Charybdis. Nay, many times it so happeneth, that these foreign Succours join in design with those against whom they were called, and divide the conquered State between them. And so we find, that the *Burgundians* being called by *Stilico* into Gaul, to prevent the breaking of the *Franks*, or *French*, joined with them in a common League against the *Romans*, whom they dispossessed at last of all that Country. Only amongst so many examples to this purpose, we find the Low-Country-men to have prospered by these foreign aids; who by the assistance of the *English*, ransomed themselves from that yoke of bondage which was intended to be put upon them by the King of Spain. This I acknowledge to be true and look upon it as a great argument of the integrity and honesty of the *English* Nation; although it be as true withal, that the *English* never had such an Army there as to be able to subdue them. But give me such another instance, I will quit the cause: for the same Low-Country-men found it otherwise with the Duke of Anjou, Brother to Henry the 3d. of France, whom they created Duke of Brabant, and their Governor-General; permitting him to bring in as many of the *French*, as either his Authority, or their own moneys were able to raise: who was no sooner settled in that command, but he made it his chief business to seize upon their strongest Holds, and to be a more absolute Prince amongst them, than ever the *Spaniards* or *Burgundians* had been before. So that I think I may conclude, that these foreign Succours are the least to be trusted, and the least to be trusted, of any remedies in State. But it's now more than time to return to the Mamaluck; and in them to

# The Fifth DYNASTY of the EGYPTIAN KINGS, or the Race of the MAMALUCKS.

- A. Ch.  
1255 1 *Tarquinius*, who being promoted to the Kingdom, released King *Lewis*, whom *Melchisedech* his Predecessor had taken Prisoner, but precluded not half the conditions agreed upon.
- 2 *Clothes* (by some called *Elmutabaz*) taking advantage of the Miseries of the *Turks*, then distressed by the *Tartars*; seized on the greater part of *Syria* and *Palestine*.
- 1260 3 *Baudouin* perfected the begun Conquests of *Clothes*, and took from the *Christians* the strong City of *Antioch*; carrying on his Armies as far as *Armenia*, where he did much spoil.
- 4 *Melchisedech*, or *Melchisedech*, restored the power of the *Mamluks* in *Syria* and *Palestine*; where it had been much impaired by *Edward* the Son of *Henry* the 3d. of *England*; and *Henry* Duke of *Morocco*, &c.
- 1286 5 *Elpis*, or *Alphix*, recovered from the dissenting *Christians* the strong Cities of *Tripoli*, *Beirut*, *Tyre*, and *Sidon*; all which he raised to the ground, that they might not be any more servicable to the affairs of the *Christians*.
- 1291 6 *Arabis*, or *Euthymus*, by birth a *German*, released *Henry* Duke of *Morocco*; but he had been Prisoner 26 years. He rooted the *Christians* out of *Syria*, took *Ptolemais* the last Town they there held; and so raised it, that he made it fit to be ploughed.
- 7 *Melchisedech*, when he was Lieutenant to *Arabis*, was disinherited by *Cassian*, a great Prince of the *Tartars*, with the loss of 40000 *Egyptians*; but *Cassian* being departed, he recovered again *Syria*, and destroyed *Hiersusalem*; for which Service he was afterward made Sultan of *Egypt*.
- 8 *Melchisedech*, who I suppose to be that *Sultan* that governed *Egypt* when *Tamurlane* with unrelenting violence conquered it; but of this I am not certain: neither can I meet with any constant and continued *War* (which I dare rely on) of his Successors in this Kingdom, till I come to
- 9 *Melchisedech*, or *Melchisedech*, who in the year 1423, subdued the Isle of *Cyprus*, and made the Kings thereof to be from thenceforth Tributaries to the *Mamluk* Sultans.
- 1465 10 *Cathartes*, who much reformed the State of *Egypt*, and was a professed Enemy of *Baizet* 3d. the 8th. King of the *Ottomans*.
- 1498 11 *Mahomet* the Son of *Cathartes*, deposed by the *Mamluks*, for fear the Kingdom might by him be made hereditary; it being against their usual custom, that the Son should succeed his Father, in the name and privileges of a *Mamluk*.
- 1499 12 *Camilus* *Chirifus*, succeeded on the deposing of *Mahomet*.

- 13 *Zanballat*, who dethroned *Camilus*, and not long after was deposed by
- 1500 14 *Tononbeius*; outed of his Estate by the joint consent of the *Mamluks*, so to make way for *Camilus* *Gaurus*.
- 1501 15 *Camilus* II. surnamed *Gaurus*, reformed the disordered and factious Estate both of Court and Country; and for the space of 16 years governed very prosperously. But siding at the last with *Hysmael* the *Persian* *Sophy*, against *Selimus* the first of that name the 3d. Emperor, and tenth King of the *Ottoman* Family; he drew his Kingdom into a War, in which his Armies were overthrown, and himself slain in battle.
- 1517 16 *Tononbeius* II. succeeded *Camilus* *Gaurus*, both in his Kingdom and misfortunes: vanquished in his first year by the said *Selimus* the first, *An*. 1517. Who having conquered this rich Kingdom, was used to say, *That he had gotten a Farm to feed his Gnomans, or young Soldiers*. So *Egypt* became a Province of the *Turkish* Empire, as it still continueth.

What the Revenues of it were in the time of the *Pharaohs*, I am not able to affirm. Great they must be, beyond the proportion of belief; for else they could never have been Masters of sufficient Treasure to finish those vast Structures which they undertook. Twelve thousand and five hundred *Talents* they amounted annually unto, in the time of the *Ptolemies*; which of our Money makes the sum of two Millions, and 347750 pounds. Which *Sum Augustus Caesar* (appropriating this Province to himself) is said to have doubled: but whether he had it all in Money, or part hereof in Money, and the rest in Corn, I determine not. Certain it is, that there was yearly shipped hence for *Rome*, in the time of that Emperor, Two hundred thousand Measures of Wheat, every Measure weighing Twenty hundred pound weight; which cometh to Seven Millions, and an hundred forty thousand of our *English* Bushels; sold by him, or distributed gratis amongst the Poor, as he saw occasion. So that there might be very well some abatement in Money, considering that the Corn amounted to so great a Sum. Nor were they much less, if ought at all, when the *Mamluks* ruled in this Country. For *Camilus* *Gaurus*, at his coming to the Throne, gave no less than Ten Millions of *Ducats*; at one clap, amongst his Soldiers. But the *Turks* at this day, partly through their Tyrannical Government, and partly through the discontinuance of the usual Traffick through the *Red Sea*, receive no more than Three Millions of Crowns; one of which is hoarded in his own Coffers; the second is appropriated unto his Vicegerent *Dahab*; for support of this Charge, the third is distributed amongst his Garrison-Soldiers; and such of them as by Sea guard his own Million to *Constantinople*; for by Land dareth not venture it, for fear of the *Florentines*, who with a few Ships Lordeth it in the *Mediterranean*.

And so much for *Egypt*.

Of

# OF B A R B A R Y.

**B**ARBARY, is bounded on the East, with *Cyrenaeica*; on the West, with the *Atlantic* Ocean; on the North, with the *Mediterranean*, the Straits of *Gibraltar*, and some part of the *Atlantic* also; on the South, with Mount *Atlas*, by which separated from *Lilya inferior*, or the Deserts of *Lilya*.

It containeth in it the whole *Districts* of *Africa*, and part of the *Districts* of *Spain*: subject in former times to the Commonwealth of *Carthage*, and the great Kings of *Mauritania*, and *Nomidia*. When conquered by the *Romans*, they gave to that part of it, which they won from the *Carthaginians*, the name of *Africa*, calling that Province by the name of the whole *Peninsula*, and afterwards extended it over all the rest of the Country, on the North of *Atlas*. Which name it held till the subjugation of it by the *Saracens*, by whom called **B A R B A R Y**: either from *Barbar*, signifying, in their Language an uncertain murmur, such as the speech of the *Africans* seemed to them to be; or from the word *Bar*, signifying a *Desert*, which doubled, made up first *Barbar*, and after *Barbary*.

It situate under the third and fourth *Climates*: so that the longest Summers days in the parts most South, amount to thirteen hours three quarters, increased in the north Northern parts to fourteen hours and a quarter. In length extended from the *Atlantic* Ocean to the greater *Syria*, for the space of 1500 miles; in breadth from Mount *Atlas* to the *Mediterranean*, where narrowest, 100 miles; but towards the *Straits*, where the broadest, almost three hundred.

The Country, in such parts as lie nearest to the *Mediterranean*, is full of Hills covered with Woods, and stored with plenty of Wild-beasts; provided reasonably well of most sorts of Fruits, but unfit for Wheat, inasmuch that most of the Inhabitants live of Barley-bread. Berwix which and Mount *Atlas* is a Champain Country, watered with many pleasant Rivers issuing from that Mountain, and liberally furnished with Cherries, Figs, Pears, Plums, Apples of all kinds; abundance of Oyl, Honey, Sugar; some Mines of Gold, and that for purity and fineness no where to be bettered. Here are also betides, large Herds of Cattle, some Elephants, Lyons, Dragons, Leopards, and others of the like savage nature, and of Acres great multitudes; Horfes good store, of excellent both strength and beauty. But taking it in the best parts, it is falshly extremely poor of that infinite fertility, which is ascribed to it by the Writers of older times. For besides the miracle of five hundred Ears of Corn growing on the stalk, (whereof more anon) *Pliny* reporteth, that not far from the City of *Tapeis*, in the way to *Leptis*, a man might fetch a great Date-tree overshadowing an Olive, under the Olive a Fig-tree, under that a Pomegranate, under that a Vine, and under all, Pease, Wheat, and Herbs, all growing and flourishing at one time. It is affirmed also by the same Author, that the Vine beareth twice a year, that some fruits or other are gathered in it at all times of the year; and that a

piece of ground of four cubits square, was usually rented out at so many *Denarii*: by which account, (as the learned *Budens* doth compute it) an Acre of that ground might be worth yearly, 12800 of the *Roman* *Sesterii*, which make 320 Crowns. An infinite and unparalleled increase of the Fruits of the Earth, if the Author were not out in his valuation.

The people are of a dusky colour, but inclining to blackness: much of the same nature with the *Arabians*, by whose numerous Families formerly they were overspread, but the *Africans* of the two the better: active of body, well skilled in Horsemanship, but impatient of labour, covetous of honour, inconstant, crafty, and unfaithful: studious in matters of their Law, and in some of the *Liberal* Sciences, especially *Philosophy* and the *Musick*, of which in many parts of the *Mahometan* Countries they are admitted to be Readers. They are also said to be fitly of gate, exceeding distrustful, in their hate implacable, and jealous of their Women beyond all compare. The Women of a comely body, and well featured, beautiful in blackness, of delicate soft skins, and in their habit and apparel beyond measure sumptuous: so drest, to make themselves more amiable in the eyes of their Husbands; for otherwise not permitted to stir abroad, and seldom to see any body but those of their own houses.

The Language spoken at the present in most of the *Mauritane* Towns, except those of *Effse* and *Morocco*, is the *Arabick* Tongue. In those two Kingdoms, and most part of the Country-Villages, the *Punic*, or old *African*, the ancient languages of the Country: the *Punic* spoken in all places where anciently the *Carthaginians* were of any power; the *African* (whichever it was) in the parts of *Mauritania*, not subject to them. Of the *Latine* there is no remainder, which though it was the language of the *Roman* Colonies, yet never could it spread so far as to extinguish or suppress the old natural Tongues: and in the *Coloniae* themselves so much degenerated in a short time, so barbarously and imperfectly spoken; that a Sister of the Emperor *Severus*, who lived in *Leptis*, a *Roman* Colony, coming to *Rome* to see her Brother, spoke it so incongruously that the Emperor was ashamed to hear it. And though the Sermons of St. *Augustine*, an *African* Bishop, were preached in *Latin*, because preached in *Hippo* his *Episcopal* See, which was then a Colony of the *Romans*; yet he confesseth, that he was sometimes fain to use such words as were not *Latine*, to be the better understood of his Congregation.

The *Christian* Faith was first planted in that part hereof which was called *Africa Propria*, by *Ephantus*, one of the 70 Disciples; by *Dionysius* in his *Synopsis*, affirmed to be the first Bishop of *Carthage*: In *Mauritania*, by *S. Simmi* the Apostle, surnamed *Zelotes*. *Metaphrastes* addeth, that *S. Simon Peter* preached here also, when by the Decree of *Claudianus Caesar* he was forced from *Rome*; and



and at his going hence, left *Crescent* his Disciple to promote the work. But by whomsoever planted first, it found good increase, and was so propagated in short time over all this Country, that in the year 250, or before, there were in it above 90 Bishops; for so many were assembled in the Synod of *Lafium*; and in the year 398, when the faction of the *Dionysii* was of greatest power, we find no fewer than 214 *Catholic* Bishops met together in the Council of *Carthage*. Which as it is an argument of the great increase of *Christianity* in those parts of *Africa*; so it shews also, that the Church was in ill condition; so overpowered by the violence of that mighty faction, who had at least 70 Bishops of their own Opinion; that the *Orthodox* party was necessitated to increase the number of Bishops for fear of being over-balanced by the contrary side, if ever the difference should come to be examined in a public Meeting. These Bishops ranked into six Classes, according to the number of the *African* Provinces: the Bishops of each Province subject to their own *Metropolitan*, who in this *Dioecesis* (contrary to the usage of all other Churches) had the name of *Primate*; but all of them subordinate to the *Primate* of *Carthage*, originally invested with *Patriarchal* Jurisdiction over all these parts. *Latius Julia est nostra Provincia; habet enim Numidiam, & Mauritaniam sibi coherentem*, are *S. Cyprian's* words. Which shew, that *Leo Africanus* was a better *Geographer*, than an *Historian* or *Divine*. He would not else have told us in such positive terms, that these of *Barbary* remained in their old *Idolatry*, till 250 years before *Mahomet's* birth; at what time they received the *Gospel*, and not before. But the good man mistook the reviving of the *Orthodox* Faith, in the time of *Justinian*, after it had been long suppressed by the *Andals* of the *Arian* faction (who at one time banished hence 300 *Catholic* Bishops) for the first planting of the *Gospel*: otherwise not to be excused. But after this *Review*, it held not long, when suppressed by the *Saracens*, and so suppressed, that except it be in some few Towns possessed by the King of *Spain*, and the Crown of *Portugal*, there is no tract of *Christianity* to be discerned in all this Country; *Mahometism* being elsewhere universally embraced among them.

Amongst the men of most note for *Souldiery*, which have been born in this Country, we may reckon 1. *Amilcar* the *Carthaginian*, and his three Sons: 2. *Annibal*, 3. *Asdrubal*, and 4. *Mago*; men hardly to be paralleled in any Ages: 5. *Maffius*, King of the *Numidians*, one of their Contemporaries; and in the following times, 6. *Septimius Severus*, the Roman Emperor. Amongst those addicted to the Muses, those of most note, 1. *Terenus*, 2. *Apuleius*. But for *Divines*, no Region in the world afforded men of more civilities, nor better deserving of the Church: 1. *Tertullian*, 2. *Cyprian*, 3. *Julius Africanus*, 4. *Arnobius*, 5. *Lactantius*, 6. *Vitorinus* after 7. *Optatus Milevitanus*, 8. *Victor*, 9. *Vulgentius*, 10. *Primasius*. And above all, the most learned and divine *S. Augustine*, a man of such admirable abilities, and indefatigable industry, so constant a Defender of all *Orthodox* Doctrines against the *Heretical* of those times, that he deservedly got the name of *Milani Hereticorum*.

Principal Mountains of this Country besides *Mount Atlas*, (of which hereafter by it self) 1. *Phœnx*, 2. *Hepzadaphus*, and 3. *Atlas minor* in *Mauritania Tingitana*; 4. *Cinabab*, 5. *Gans*, 6. *Maderubadus*, and 7. those called *Gariphi*, in *Casariensis*; 8. *Thamber*, 9. *Mompfrian*, 10. *Ufalatus*, and 11. *Zachabari*, in *Africa Propria*. Of which, and others, we may speak more, if occasion be, in our description of the Provinces, in which they are. And for the Rivers of most note, though none

of any long course in so narrow a Country, we have in *Tingitana*, 1. *Sala*, falling into the *Atlantic*, out of *Atlas minor*; 2. another of the same name, and the same exit also, but far more to the North, towards the Strait of *Gibraltar*; 3. *Melchab*, mollified by *Sahit* the Historian into *Milchaba*, and by him placed betwixt the *Numidian* and the *Moor*; 4. *Malva*, the boundary at this day betwixt the Kingdoms of *Pesse* and *Algiers*; 5. *Phibath*, of more fame than any, of which more anon: in *Casariensis*, 6. *Nafabath*, 7. *Sifaria*, and *Sorbeth*: in *Africa Propria*, or the Kingdom of *Tunis*, 8. *Rubicatus*, which issuing out of *Mount Thamber*, falleth into the *Mediterranean* near *Hippo Regius*; 9. *Triton*, which issuing out of the Hill called *Ufaleus*, and making the great Fcnn called *Tritonia Palus*, endeth its course also in the *Mediterranean*; and finally, 10. *Bagradas*, the greatest in all this tract, which rising out of *Mount Atlas*, first runneth towards the East, and then receiving from the Hill called *Mompfrian* the addition of another Stream, passeth directly Northward to the City of *Utica*, and there endeth its course.

Having thus laid together the chief *Metes* and *Landmarks*, I should now proceed to the description of the several Provinces hereof, as in other places. But because each part almost hath had for these later times its particular History, and that it is divided at the present into several Governments, and under the command of several Princes: I will here lay down so much of the Story of it as concerns the whole, before such division; and afterwards pursue the *History* and *Geography* of the several parts. And for the whole we are to know, that this Country was first peopled by *Phœn* the third Son of *Cham*: who leaving his Brother *Mizraim* well settled in the Land of *Egypt*, passed towards the West; and leaving *Lebani* his Nephew betwixt him and *Mizraim*, possessed himself of all the rest from the greater *Syria* to the Ocean. Remainers of whose name we find in the River *Phœn*, (by *Plutarch* called *Phibath*, with but little difference, save that it favoureth more of the *African* roughness) near which *Josaphus* findeth a Region called the Country of *Phœn*, a Nation called the *Phœnians*: descended herein by *S. Hieron*, who speaking of this *Regio Phœnensis* in *Mauritania*, where the River *Phibath* is placed by *Plutarch* voucheth in general terms the testimony of old Writers, both *Greek* and *Latine*. So that of this there is no question to be made. Such Nations as descended of this Plantation, shall be hereafter spoke of in their several Provinces. Governed at first by the Chiefs of their several Families; but in the end, reduced under the Command of the Kings of *Mauritania* and *Numidia*, and the State of *Carthage*. The two last, Natives of this Country, of the Race of *Phœn*; the last descended also of the Seed of *Cham*, their common Parent, by the line of *Canaan*: who on the Conquest of this Country by the Children of *Israel*, transported to seek new Dwellings, and having force of Ships to transcend themselves and their Families; settled in the maritime parts of *Mauritania*, and *Africa*, properly so called. For, that the people of those parts, though lost into other Names and Families, were anciently of a *Canaanitic* or *Phœnician* Race, may be made apparent, 1. By the remains of their Language, the *Phœnic* or *Phœnician*, and old *Hebrew* Tongue, differing only in the Dialect and Pronunciation. Secondly by the name *Pani*, or *Phœni*, little differing from that of the *Phœnic*. 3ly, By this testimony of *S. Augustine*, who telleth us in the Comment on *St. Paul's* Epistle to the *Romans*, begun but reinforced by him: *Interrogati Ruffici nostri quid sint, respondunt, Punici Chanani*; that is to say, That when any

of the Inhabitants of this Country (he himself was one) were asked what they were, they answered, *Canaanites*. 4ly, We find in *Herodotus*, how *Cambyses* had totally conquered *Egypt*, intending a War against the *Carthaginians*, who were then a State (it seemeth) of some power: But the *Phœnicians*, being the only Sea-faring men *Cambyses* then had, absolutely denied to be employed in that Service; they being sprung from the same Tree that the *Carthaginians* were. 5ly, We read in *Procopius*, (out of which it is cited by *Eusebius Scholasticus*) how on two Marble-Pillars, situate high unto *Lingia*, or *Tanger*, there was in the *Phœnician* Language and Character engraved, *Nos fugimus a facie Jothuah predonis, filii Nave*; that is to say, *We flee from the face of that Robber Jothuah, the Son of Nave*. The feeling of this people there, a great incitement questionless unto *Dido* to come thither also: who feared as much danger from her Brother *Pygmalion* King of *Tyre*, whose hands had been imbrued in the blood of her Husband; as as the others did from the Sword of *Jothuah*. Gathering together all her Treasures, which were very great, accompanied with her Brother *Barea*, and her Sister *Anna*, the fair fall for *Africk*; and landing in the Bay, where after stood the City of *Carthage*, she obtained leave to build a Fort of no greater bigness than the could compass round with an Oxen hide. This the beginning of that City; hence the name of *Byssa*, which at first it had. First founded in, or about the year of the World 3070, which was about 144 years after the building of *Salomon's* Temple; 143 years before the building of *Rome*, and about 290 years from the destruction of *Troy*. By which account (I note this only by the way) it is impossible that *Dido*, or *Elisa* (for by both these names we find her called) should ever see the face of *Æneas*, unless it were in picture, or imagination; and therefore as impossible the should either fall in love with him, or be got with Child by him, or finally kill her self on her being forsaken. All which being delivered by *Virgil* in his excellent Poem, did for long time obtain a general belief with most sorts of men. Hercutito consenteth *Aufonius*, who honouring the *Statue* of his abused Princess with an Epigram of 18 Verses, among others, gives us these four.

*Invida cur me simulasti Musæ Maronem,  
Fingeret ut nostræ damna pudicitie?  
Vos namque Historici (Lectores) credite de me,  
Quam qui furta domo, concubitusque cautos.*

Why didst thou stir up *Virgil*, envious *Muse*,  
Falsely my name and honour to abuse?  
Oh me! let *Historics* be heard, not those,  
Who to the World *Joves* thefts and lusts expose.

Credible it is, *Æneas* being driven on the Coast of *Africk*, was by some Prince there courteously entertained, as a man whose fame had been his *Harbinger*: but why the fiery should be kindled on *Dido*, I see not. Perhaps the unfortunate death of this Queen, who laid violent hands on her self, gave occasion to the Poet to say, that it was for the love of *Æneas*: Whereas it was indeed to avoid the lust and fury of *Larbas*, a potent King of the *Gentils*, a powerful Nation neighbouring those parts of *Africa* in which *Carthage* stood, who violently desired to have his pleasure on her.

But to proceed; This City thus founded in a place commodious for Trade and Merchandise, in short time grew exceeding wealthy. And having wealth enough to hire *Merenary* Souldiers (of which the needy *Mauritanians*, and *Numidians*, did afford good store) they conquered all the Sea Coasts from *Cyrene* to the Straits of

*Hercules* (now called the Straits of *Gibraltar*): and so much also towards the South, as was worth the conquering; within which space possessed of 300 Cities. Grown to such height, that all the *African* Kings and Princes, and amongst them the Kings of *Numidia* and *Mauritania* were at their devotion: They began to cast their eyes on *Scilly*, a wealthy Island, lying near unto their Coasts; which questionless they had possessed, if the *Romans*, envious of their greatness, and fearing their Neighbourhood, had not took upon them the defence of the *Mamentines*, and under that pretence got some footing in it. The end of this War, after many brave exploits on both sides, was the driving the *Carthaginians* out of *Scilly*, their abandoning all the Islands betwixt them and *Italy*, and the payment of 32000 *Talents*, amounting to about two Millions of Crowns. And such end had the first *Punic* War, managed for the most part in *Scilly*. During which time, and the first War there managed by the *Carthaginians*, *Africk* it self was twice invaded; first, by *Agathocles* Tyrant of *Syracusa*, (or so commonly called) and afterwards by *Regulus* a *Roman* General, but with no other great success than the spoil of the Country. The second followed not long after, but the *Scene* was altered; begun in *Spain*, prosecuted in *Italy*, and ended in *Africk*. Begun by *Annibal* the Son of *Amilcar*, descended from *Barea* the Brother of *Dido* or *Elisa*; who having conquered a great part of *Spain*, and thereby both increased his reputation and experience, conducted his victorious Army through *Gaul*, and over the *Alpes*, into *Italy* it self; defeated the Armies of the *Romans*, and drew some of their Confils: So prosperous in the Battle of *Canne*, where the whole strength of *Rome* was broken, that had he followed his good fortune, and made use of his Victory, he might within four or five days after have dined in the *Capitol*. Having for 18 years together held them work in *Italy*, he was called home to defend *Africk* from the Forces of *Scipio*; who having driven the *Carthaginians* out of *Spain*, had very prudently translated the War to *Carthage*. The issue was, that on the 10th of the battle of *Nadagara*, the *Carthaginians* were necessitated to submit themselves to the will of the Conqueror; that is to say, to deliver up all their Elephants, together with all their Ships and Gallies excepting ten; to make no War without leave of the *Romans*, to pay for the Charges of the War 10000 *Talents*; and such other extremities. So ended the second *Punic* War, A. U. C. 602. And the third followed not long after, not any way occasioned by those of *Carthage*, but out of the inveterate hatred of the People of *Rome*, who would not think themselves safe whilst that City stood; and therefore sent another *Scipio* to lay siege unto it. By whom, after a long and stout resistance, it was at last taken and destroyed. The Treasure which was found in it, notwithstanding their former losses, and the low estate it was reduced to, besides what was consumed by fire, and referred by the *Souldiers*, amounting to 470000 pound weight of silver, which cometh to a Million, four hundred and ten thousand pounds of our *English* Money.

Such end had *Carthage*, and therewith all the rest of the States of *Africa*, who though in hatred to the *Carthaginians* they had armed against her, and aided the *Romans* in these Wars; yet they soon found their own Fortunes buried in the self-same Grave. Subverted one after another, as occasion was, they became all subject unto *Rome*; their Kingdoms and Estates turned to *Roman* Provinces. Of these were reckoned seven in all, that is to say, 1. *Africa Propria*, called also *Zangitana*, and *Proconsularis*, 2. *Byzacena*, 3. *Tripolitana*, 4. *Numidia*, 5. *Mauritania Casariensis*, 6. *Stifensis*, and 7. *Tingitana*. Of which the last (I know not why) was laid to the *Dioecesis*

of Spain, called therefore *Hispānia Transfretana*, Spain on the other side of the Sea, by some elder Writers: the other fix made up the *Dioecesis of Africk*, subordinate to the *Præfidiū Prætorio* for Italy, who had here his *Picarius*, or Lieutenant. In this condition it continued, till subdued by the *Vandals*, a German Nation, inhabiting beyond the *Elb*, on the Coast of the *Baltick*; where now lie the Dukedoms of *Mecklenburg* and *Pomerania*. Their memory still retained there in the title of those Princes, who call themselves *Duces Vandalorum*; and in the Confederacy of the *Hanse-towns*, called by some *Latine* Writers, *Civitates Vandalice*. A Nation of great power, and numbers, (the *Burgundians* being only a part of the) one of the five into which *Pliny* doth divide the *Germans*. In the 11th year of the Empire of *Acadius* and *Honorius*, they were invited into *Gaul*, by the trea-

cherous practices of *Stilico*, Lieutenant of the Western Empire; and after an abode of three years, passed into *Spain*, together with the *Suevi*, and *Alani*, their Associates. But after 18 years, the *Goths* made that place too hot for them also. So that they could not but willingly accept the offer of *Bonifacius*, the Emperor Vicegerent in *Africa*: who summing up to see his Office bestowed on *Caesarius*, an unworthy man, and his enemy, betrayed the Country to these *Vandals*, in the last year of the life and reign of *Gundericus*, an *Avian* in Religion, as were the rest of the Nation, to which induced by their Neighbourhood and acquaintance with the *Goths*: Which *Hæresie* as they brought with them into *Africk*, driving thence all the Orthodox *Christians*, so they continued in it till their extinction.

## The Vandal Kings of AFRICA.

- A.C.  
412 1. *Gundericus*, who first invaded *Gaul*, *Spain*, and *Africk*, 16.  
428 2. *Geisericus*, who at the request of *Eudoxia*, the Widow of *Valentinian*, invaded *Italy*, and sacked the City of *Rome*, the Spoil whereof for fourteen days he gave to his Soldiers: but at the request of *Eudoxia*, whom he afterwards married, he did not burn it. This *Eudoxia* was Wife to the Western Emperor *Valentinian*; who having a mind to a Lady of *Rome*, the Wife of one *Maximian*, he cunningly slipped the Ring of *Maximian* off his finger, and by that token sent for the Lady to the Court, and when she was come, ravished her. To revenge this disgrace, *Maximian* slew *Valentinian*, made himself Emperor and forced *Eudoxia* to be his Wife. But the storming a Match so unequal to her high Birth, and having some inclining of her Husband's death, sent for *Geisericus* into *Italy*. This *Geisericus* conquered *Carthage*, and *Hippone*, and reigned 48 years.  
476 3. *Honorius* Son of *Geisericus*. 7.  
484 4. *Gundebundus*, Son to *Genzo*, the Brother of *Honorius*, 15.  
499 5. *Transimundus*, Brother to *Gundebundus*. 24.  
523 6. *Hildericus*, the Son of *Honorius*, deposed by  
530 7. *Gimir*, the Son of *Genzo*, one of the Descendants of *Geisericus*; overcome by *Belisarius* a worthy and politic Leader, whom the Emperor *Justinian* employed in that Service.

And thus ended the Kingdom of the *Vandals*, (having continued in *Spain* and *Africa* 146 years) by the valour of *Belisarius*. Who after this good Service, was employed by *Justinian* against the *Goths*, then reigning in *Italy*; against whom he proceeded very fortunately: but being, as I know not what envy, called to *Constantinople*, his eyes were put out, and he was forced to beg his Bread at the Gate of the Temple of *S. Sophia*. A bad reward for so good a Servant. But to go on, *Justinian* having regained *Africk*, to honour his new Conquest, exempted it from the command of the *Prætorio-Præfidiū* of *Italy*, to which formerly subject; and increasing the number of the *African* Provinces by the addition of the Isle of *Sardinia*, made it a *Præfecture* of it self: appointing his *Præfidiū*

*Prætorio Africa* to reside in *Carthage*, as the chief City of his Charge; which he then also raised to a *Consular* Province, having in former times been *Præconsular* only. But long it held not in this state: For in the year 647, the *Romans* were finally expelled by *Huchba* famous Leader, whom *Ofmen*, the third *Caliph* of the *Saracens*, had designed to this Service. *Africk*, from that time forwards, reckoned amongst the Provinces of the *Saracenic* or *Mahometan* Empire. But in the end, the Authority of the *Caliphs* growing less and less, and every one of their *Sultans* or Provincial Officers, getting what he could for himself; this Country was distracted in many Kingdoms and Principalities, but all at last reduced to four of most confederation: that is to say, the Kingdoms of 1. *Tunis*, 2. *Tremesin* or *Algiers*, 3. *Fesse*, and 4. *Mureca*. To the *Geography* and *History* whereof we do now proceed; adding hereto in the fifth place, the Isles of *Barbary*.

### 1. TUNIS.

The Kingdom of *TUNIS* (in *Latine* called *Regnum Tunitanum*) hath on the East, *Cyrene* on the West, the Kingdom of *Algiers*, or *Tremesin*; on the North, the *Mediterranean*; on the South, Mount *Atlas*. So called from *Timis*, the chief City of it; extended all along the Coast of the *Mediterranean* for the space of 800 miles or thereabout, but the breadth not answerable.

The Country towards the East, barren and destitute of water; but in the Western parts, sufficiently plentiful of Corn and other Fruits, and generally well fit with Trees. The People more patient of labour than the rest of *Barbary*, and for that cause perhaps more healthy: but questionable of so good constitution, that they live commonly to great age, unless a violent death prevent them; and are not much afraid of Sickness, or much troubled with it.

It contains in it the two whole Provinces of *Africa Propria* (or *Africa Minor*, as some call it) and the *Nu-midia* of the *Romans*; called since *Nu-midia Antiqua*, to difference it from the present *Nu-midia*, lying on the other side of Mount *Atlas*. The principal Mountains of which Countries, besides those spoken of already, were, 1. *Audax*, 2. *Bazania*, 3. *Cinnat*, 4. *Dier*, or the Hills of *Jupiter*, 5. *Gilius*, by some named *Gigion*, and 6. those called *Thazibi*. Rivers of most esteem with them, though not much with others, besides those mentioned before

before. 1. *Amphage*, now called *Calla*, and by some *Sat Gomar*, which divideth this Kingdom from that of *Tremesin*; 2. *Carada*; 3. *Cyniphus*, issuing from the Hills called *Zuchabarus*, and falling into the Sea, not far from *Tripolis*. Besides which, there were some great Lakes: the chief whereof, 1. *Hipponeis*, near Mount *Cinnat*; 2. The Lake of *Pallars*, or that called *Palus Tritonis*, where *Minerva* was said to have shewed her self the Inventress of Spinning and of Oyl, and for that much worshipped by this people; 3. *Sylura*, another great Lake; but not so famous as the former, because not honoured by a Goddess.

The whole divided by the *Romans* into these four parts, viz. 1. *Africa* especially so called, lying on the Sea, from the River *Amphage* to the lesser *Syrtis*; 2. *Tripolitana*, from the lesser *Syrtis* to the greater; 3. *Nu-midia*, lying on the West of *Zengitana*, or *Africa Propria*; And 4. *Byzacenae*, so called from *Byzacium*, or *Byzacina*, a chief City of it: the Territory whereof so extremely fruitful, that 400 Ears of Corn were sent to *Rome* in the time of *Augustus*, and 360 in the time of *Domitian* Nero, growing on one stalk. But this division being long since worn out of memory, it is divided at the present into the Provinces of 1. *Ezzab*, 2. *Tripolis*, 3. *Tunis*, 4. *Constantina*, 5. *Bugia*.

1. *EZZAB*, is that part of this Kingdom which lieth next to *Cyrene*: A small Region, and not very fruitful; yet the Inhabitants hereof are conceived to be rich, (the richer, in regard they are free from *Tributes*;) their wealth not rising from the Commodities of their own Country, which affordeth them little else besides Dates and Olives; but from such Merchandise which they buy of the *Venetians*, and sell to the *Nu-midians*. The richest, those of *Mesrata*, (a little Province of this Tract) which lieth near the Sea. Towns it hath some, but none of note: the chief of which, 1. *Mesrata*, 2. *Sibeca*, both upon the Sea; of which the first gives name unto that little Province spoken of before. Of more note in former times was *Phileni Villa*, situate on the greater *Syrtis*, near the Promontory then called *Hippi*, but now *Cabo de Surta*; memorable for the adjoining *Altars* called *Phileni Ara*, erected by the *Carthaginians* upon this occasion. Some Controversies being grown betwixt those of *Carthage* and *Cyrene*, about their Bounds; it was agreed, that two men at a set hour should be sent out of each City towards the other; and where they met, there to be fixed the *Meer-stone* of their several Territories. The *Phileni*, two Brothers nominated for *Carthage*, were so quick of foot, that they had gotten a good way into the Country of the *Cyrenenses* before they were met; wherewith the *Cyrenenses*, much enraged, put to them this choice, either to go back again, or to die in the place. This last accepted by the *Phileni*, who preferred the common good of their Country before their own, for preservation of whose name and honour to succeeding Ages, the grateful *Carthaginians* did erect these *Altars*.

2. West of the Province of *Ezzab*, lieth that of *TRIPOLIS*, which together with *Ezzab*, made that Province which the *Romans* called *Tripolitana*. Not much more fruitful than the other, except in Barley, but more commodiously seated in regard of the Sea, which is here more safe for Navigation: the former lying wholly on the greater *Syrtis*. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Lepis Magna*, so called, to distinguish it from another, but of less note, and therefore called *Lepis Parva*, situate in the (now) Province of *Tunis*. A Town of so great wealth and Trade, that it was worth a *Talent* daily to the *Car-*

thaginians. 2. *Euphranta*, called also *Pyrgos Euphranta*, from some strong Tower in it on the Western bank of the greater *Syrtis*. 3. *Cinterna*, on the Eastern side of the River *Cyniphus*. 4. *Gabis*, the utmost City of this Province Westward; the fame which *Pliny* calls *Tacapa*, situate at the fall of the River *Triton* into the lesser *Syrtis*. 5. *Sabratia*; and 6. *Hena*; not else observable, but that together with *Lepis Magna* they made up that one City, which the *Romans* called from thence *Tripolis*. 7. *Tripolis*, founded by the *Romans*, and by them peopled with *Colonies* from those three Cities before mentioned. A City of great Name and Riches, till destroyed by the *Saracens*. By whom rebuilt, adorned with many fair Temples, Colleges, and Hospitals; and flourishing in much Wealth and Lustre, it became a Kingdom of it self, but subject to the King of *Tunis*, till taken by the *Gensse* with a Fleet of 20 Sail, and by them sold to the King of *Fesse*. Recovered not long after by the King of *Tunis*, it came once more to have a King of its own; till by the valour of *Peter of Navarre*, it was conquered for *Ferdinand* the *Catholic*, the first Monarch of *Spain*: whose Nephew *Charles* the 5th, conferred it on the Knights of *St. John* of *Hierusalem*, then expelled from *Rhodes*: whom the *Turks* under *Sinan* *Baja* General of *Selmus* the Second, dispossessed by force, An. 1551. Since that the ordinary Residence of the *Turkish* *Beglerbeg*, for these *African* Provinces; and made an usual retreat for *Pirates*, who infect these Seas, and do much mischief to the Coasts of *Sicily*, *Italy*, and others of the *Christian* Countries.

3. The Province of *TUNIS*, lying Westward to that of *Tripolis*, taketh up so much of this Kingdom, as anciently contained the Province of *Byzacena*; and so much of the *Roman Africa*, as lieth on the East of the River called *Guadilbarbar*, the *Hipponeis Lacus* of the ancient Writers. The Country anciently so fruitful, that it yielded usually an increase of an hundred and fifty fold: For proof of which, besides the testimony of approved Authors, the wonderful if not prodigious Ears of Corn, which before we heard of, may serve sufficiently. Now indigent, and so unprovided of all Grain for the use of their Families, that they are fain to furnish themselves of other places: the people not daring to mature or sow their Land, for fear of the *Arabians*, who ever and anon fall into these parts, and spoil what they meet with.

Places of most note in it, in the elder times, 1. *Adrumetum*, or *Adrumis*, now called *Machometta*, once a *Roman* Colony, and the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Byzacena*; by consequence, in the times of *Christianity*, and Archbishops See: walled and repaired by the Emperor *Justinian*, and by his Command called *Justiniana*. 2. *Zama*, the incamping place of *Annibal*, before his battle with *Scipio*. 3. *Nadagara*, memorable for the great battle betwixt the two renowned Generals of *Rome* and *Carthage*; not parallel'd since their own times, nor in those before them. In which the great Controversie between those Cities being to be tried, the fortune of the day fell unto the *Romans*: For though *Annibal* shewed his singular judgment in ordering his Soldiers, as *Scipio* could not but acknowledge; yet being far the weaker in Horse, and by an Order of the Senate of *Carthage*, constrained to fight in a place of disadvantage, he could do no marvels: The *Romans*, with the loss of no more than 1500 of their own men, killing 20000 of the *Carthaginians* in the Fight and Chase. 4. *Salona*, the first place took by *Scipio*, after the landing of his Army. 5. *Utica*, a *Tyrian* Colony, beautified with an Haven capable of the greatest Ships; much spoke of in the Wars of *Carthage*, and

and memorable for the death of *Cato* (hence surnamed *Uticensis*) who here slew himself, for fear of falling into the hands of *Cæsar*. It is now called *Biserta*. 6. *Byzacium*, seated in a liberal and fruitful soil, as was shown before; whence the Province had the name of *Byzacena*. 7. *Rafiquum*, made by *Cæsar* the seat of his War in *Africa*, against the Sons and Faction of *Pompey*; as memorable in the times succeeding, for being the Episcopal See of *St. Fulgentius*. 8. *Thyrus*, remarkable for the Tragedy of the *Gardiari*: Of which the Father in this City was saluted Emperor by the Soldiers, in hatred to *Maximianus* their Emperor, whose *Procurator* they had slain in a tumult: but his party being discomfited by *Capellianus*, whom *Maximianus* sent against him, and his Son killed in the defeat; but upon the hearing of the News, he here hanged himself. 9. *Hippagreta*, on a great Lake betwixt *Carthage* and *Utica*; one of the Towns which held out longest for the Mercenaries, in their desperate Rebellion against the *Carthaginians*; by which the Estate of that great City was in danger of ruin at the end of the first *Punic* War. 10. *Carthage*, once the Lady and Mistress of *Africa*, situate in the bottom of a safe and capacious Bay, the entrances whereof were very strongly fortified both by Art and Nature, environed with the Sea, except upon one side only, where joynted unto the Land by a narrow *Isthmus*, about two miles and an half in breadth, in compass 24 miles, but measuring by the outward Wall, it was 45. For without the Wall of the City it self there were three Walls more, betwixt each of which there were three or four Streets, with Vaults under ground of 30 foot deep; wherein they had place for 300 Elephants and all their Fodder, with Stables over them for 4000 Horses, and all their Provender, and Lodging in those out-dreets for the Riders of the said Horses, and for 20000 Foot besides, which never came within the City to annoy or pester it. On the South-side stood the Castle called *Byza*, which took up two miles and an half in compass: First built by *Dido*, on that ground which she obtained of the *Libyans*, when she got leave to buy only so much Land of them, as she could compass round about with an Oxes Hide. In that, the sumptuous Temple of their ancient Deities, *Juno*, *Apollon*, *Æsculapius*, *Belus*. On the West side a standing Pool made of the Sea-water, let into it by a narrow a passage, that there was but 70 foot open for the Sea to enter: On which they had a flatly Arsenal, with their Ships and Gallies riding by it. Of the Foundation and Affairs of this mighty City we have spoke already. The Government of it first by Kings, those absolute enough at first, afterwards limited by the *Senats*; and finally made merely titular by the power of the people: a which unproporcionable mixture is much condemned by *Aristotle*, in the 2. of his *Politics*. Their Territories, before the second *Punic* War, when they were at the greatest, extended on the Sea-coasts of the *Mediterranean*, from the Greater *Syria* to the *Streights*, and unto the River *Iberus*, for the space of 2000 miles in length: in their Revenue, answerable, and readily brought in, by reason of their infinite Trading. Which made the *Roman* People think themselves unsafe, whilst this City stood. Relolved on the destruction of it, they sent against it *Lu. Marcius*, and *M. Manlius*, their two *Consuls*, with a puissant Army; to whom the *Carthaginians* willingly delivered up their Arms and Shipping, contracting only for the preservation of the City it self, which was faithfully promised. But when they had withal given up the Sons of their Principal men, to be sent to *Rome* for Pledges of their future Loyalty; they were told, that a City confined not in Walls, but in Laws and Government. These, with the Corporation, should remain as formerly; the Town to be removed ten miles further off, where there was

no Sea to thrive and grow rich upon. Enraged herewith, it was resolved to abide the utmost: but they wanted necessities for resistance. That want supplied for want of Iron to make Arms with Gold and Silver; the Houses pulled down to furnish them with Timber to build a Navy; the noble Ladies cutting off the Hair of their Heads, to make Ropes and Cordage, 25000 Women came to defend the Walls. But the fatal moment being come, a second *Scipio* is sent thither to dispatch the Work; by whom at last the Town was taken; and for 17 days together consumed with fire: The Queen and multitudes of the People burning themselves in the Temple of *Æsculapius*, because they would not fall into the hands of the *Romans*, reedified by *Julius Cæsar*, and made a Colony, it recovered some part of her former lustre; but so, that her chief glory was rather to be sought for in her ancient, than her present Fortunes. *Populi Romani Colonia*, *olim Imperii ejus pertinax emula*, & *prætorum excidio rerum, quam esse prætorum clarior*, was her Character in the times of *Pompeius Mela*. But in the last estate, accounted for the Metropolis of the Diocesis of *Africa*, the Residence of the *Vicarius* or Lieutenant-General, and the See of the chief *Primate* of the *African* Churches; who had 164 Bishops under him in that one Province wherein *Carthage* stood. Destroyed in the succeeding time by the *Vandals*, and after that by the *Saracens*; it revived again, and had the reputation of a City of no mean importance, till the year 1270; at what time being forced by the *French*, under *Lewis* the 9th. and thereupon deserted by its old Inhabitants, it began to languish, and was at last reduced to nothing but a few scattered Houses, not above five and twenty Shops, one Temple; all the rest a ruine. So truly said the ancient Poet:

*Sic patet exemplis Oppida posse mori.*

Thus by Examples do we see,  
That Towns may die as well as we.

Of chief note at the present, 1. *Tunis*, supposed to be the *Themisa*, or *Thimisa* of *Ptolemy*; of small account till the last destruction of *Carthage*, by whose fall it rose. Situate not far from the Ruines of that famous City, in compass above five miles, and in that compass said to contain 10000 households. Of great Traffick, and well frequented by the Merchants of foreign Nations; chiefly from *Genna* and *Venice*. Remarkable in the Story of the *Holy Wars*, for the Sieges and Successes of two of our *English* Princes; that, namely, of King *Edward* the Fifth, in his Fathers time; and that of *Henry* the Fourth, then but Earl of *Darby*: by both which (though the last reserved only under the Command of the *French*) the City was compelled to a Compulsion. *Lewis* the 9th. commonly called *St. Lewis*, dying at the first Siege of it. 2. *Goleta*, a strong Fort, built for defence of the Haven of *Tunis*, in a demy-Island, divided from the main Land by two narrow passages, but so that it commands them both. Taken, but not without extreme difficulty by *Charles* the 5th. *An*. 1535. together with the *Turkish* Navy riding in the Lake bay by it; but again recovered by *Charles* the 5th. 40 years after, *An*. 1574. 3. *Cairuan*, built by *Huchas* who first conquered *Africa* for the *Saracens*, in a sandy plain, about 100 miles from *Tunis*, and 36 from any Defart, about the Sea, to secure himself from any invasion, which the commodiousness of the Sea might bring upon him. Adorned by the first Founder of it, with an admirable Temple raised on Pillars of Marble: who placed also in it a College of Priests, and made it the chief Residence of his Posterity for the space of 170 years, who reigned here under the great *Caliphs*, as the *Sultans* of *Africa*. Destroyed

by the *Arabians*, in the 424 year of their *Hegira*, but regained from them by the King of *Morocco*, and still of such esteem amongst these *Mohometans*, that their chief men are brought hither to be buried from all parts of the Country, hoping by the Prayers of those *Priests* to find a shorter way to Heaven, than in other places.

4. More Westward yet lies the Province named *CONSTANTINA*, so called from *Constantine* the chief City of it. Extended from the Lake *Hippagreta*, now named *Gualdibarbar*, to *Constantine* a Mountain bordering on *Bagia*, which I conceive to be the same with *Mont Arctus* in *Ptolomy*. The soil hereof said to be very rich and fruitful both for Corn and Cattel, yielding abundance of Fruits, and great store of Butter. *Rabricatus*, by *Orfius* called *Ordath*, now *Ludg*, the chief River of it.

Principal Cities of this Province, 1. *Tabraca*, on the East; and 2. *Hippo Regius*, on the Western bank of *Rabricatus*: both *Roman* Colonies, but this last most famous, in being the Episcopal See of renowned *St. Augustine*. 3. *Bona*, the birth-place of that Father, built by the *Romans* about a hundred miles from the Sea; but situate in a large Plain, containing 40 miles in length, 25 in breadth: so Rich and Fertile, that the Town flourisheth to this day; adorned with a sumptuous Mosque, and never without the Company of Merchants coming from *Genna*, *Tunis*, and the Isle of *Zerby*, for their Fruits and Butter. 4. *Thuburnica*, another Colony of the *Romans*. 5. *Sicca Veneria*, another Town of the same nature; by *Solinus* called *Veneria* only, and by *Pliny*, *Sicca*. 6. *Culena*, another of the *Roman* Colonies, by the *Moors* now called *Cucutina*, but *Constantine* by the *Latines*, and most Nations else, now the chief City of this Province, situate near a Mountain of the same name, near the edge of *Bagia*. An ancient City, but containing still 8000 Families, many sumptuous Buildings; amongst which they exchange for *Dates*, or *Slaves*, who are here good Merchandise. The City for the most part fenced about with high craggy Rocks; and where those want, with strong walls, of a great height, and most exquisite workmanship, declaring the antiquity of it. A further Argument whereof may be a fair *Triumphal Arch* not far from the City, and some *Hot Baths*, after the manner of the *Romans*.

5. Most Westward lieth the Province of *BUGIA*, extended from Mount *Constantine* to the River *Amphaga*, now called *Cholo*, or *Sef-Gennar*: which with so much of *Constantine*, as lieth on the West side of *Rabricatus*, made up that Province which the *Romans* called by the name of *Numidia*. The length hereof 150 miles on the *Mediterranean*, the breadth not above half so much. Narrower than *Mauritania*, as is said by *Pliny*; *Sed ditior & magis culta*, but the richer of the two, and the better peopled. The Country of a far soil, plentiful both in Fruits and Corn, but most fit for Pasturage, to which the people were so addicted, that many of them cared not

for building Houses, (instead whereof they used the Hold of a Ship with the Keel turned upwards) but removed from the place to another, as their Pastures failed them. From thence called *Nomades* by the *Grecians*, *and rē rē rē*, signifying to feed or graze. The people of good metal, swift of Foot, and well skilled in Horsemanship; but better in the Onset, and to give a Charge, than in standing to it; such as the wild *Arabians* are now said to be.

Chief Towns hereof (besides *Thuburnica*, *Culena*, *Bona*, *Hippo*, spoken of before, belonging to *Numidia*, though not to *Bagia*) 1. *Bagia*, built by the *Romans* on the side of a lofty Mountain looking into the Sea; by some conceived to have been the *Thuburnica* of *Ptolemy*, now the chief City of this Province; adorned with many sumptuous Mosques, some Monasteries and Colleges for Students in the Law of *Mabomet*, and many fair Hospitals for relief of the Poor; fenced also with a strong Castle. Secured by the strength whereof, and growing rich by the fruitfulness of the situation, the Citizens began to grow proud and wanton, working much mischief to the *Spaniards* by their Gallies, which they had at Sea; till taught more modesty by *Peter of Navarre* a *Spanish* Captain, *An*. 1508. by whom the Town was taken, and the people plundered. 2. *Cholo*, upon the Sea-side, the *Cholops Magna* (as I take it) of *Ptolemy*; reported for a wealthy City. 3. *Nicaus*, seated towards Mount *Atlas* in a pleasant and delightful Country: which though interperched with many Hills, yet being those Hills are clothed with Woods, yield them good store of Goats and Horses, and feed the Vallies with fresh Springs, which do issue from them; they rather add than detract any thing from the pleasures of it. 4. *Madama*, by some called *Madurus*, the birth-place of *Apuleius*. 5. *Tundramm*, another of the *Roman* Colonies. 6. *Cirta*, or *Cirta Julia*, the Metropolis of *Numidia*, when a *Roman* Province, and formerly the Seat-Royal of *Syphax* King of the *Masfessi*, within whose Country it was reckoned in former times, though afterwards laid into this Province. Situate near the mouth of the River *Amphaga*, and memorable for the Tragedy of *Sophonisba*, the Daughter of *Adribalus* of *Carthage*; a Lady of most exquisite beauty, and yet carried more Charms in her Tongue than in her Eyes. Employed first unto *Masfissa* King of the *Numidians*, but after, upon the Reason of State, married unto *Syphax*, who being took Prisoner by his Rival, and brought to *Cirta*, the Lady upon hopes of liberty and honour both, bestowed her self on her first Lover: but *Scipio* fearing lest that marriage might withdraw *Masfissa* from the *Roman* party, caused the Lady to be seized on; which *Masfissa* not being otherwise able to prevent or remedy, sent her a Cup of Poyson, which she drank, and died.

Of these *Numidians* there is much mention in the Stories of *Rome* and *Carthage*; employed by this last City in all their Wars, both in *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Sicily*. Siding at last with *Scipio* against that State, they did good Service to the *Romans* in the weakening and destruction of that City, whose fall they did not long survive: first conquered in the War of *Jugurth*; after the death of *Juba*, made a *Roman* Province. Their Kings, as far as I can trace the succession of them, follow in this Order.

## The Kings of the NUMIDIANS.

1. *Gala*, the Father of *Masfiniffa*.
2. *Defalers*, the Brother of *Gala*; according to the Law of the Country, which gave the Crown unto the Brother, not the Son of the former King, (like the Law of *Tamir* in *Ireland*) succeeded *Gala*.
3. N. N. a Son of *Defalers*, in the absence of *Masfiniffa*, then serving under the *Carthaginians* in the Wars of *Spain*, possessed himself of the Throne: slain not long after by a Rebel.
4. *Masfiniffa*, Son of *Gala*, recovered the Kingdom of his Father; but again ousted by *Syphax* and the *Carthaginians*, betwixt whom and *Masfiniffa*, touching *Sophoniba*, there was deadly feud. Aided by *Scipio* and the *Romans*, with whom associated against *Carthage*, he not only recovered his own Kingdom, but was gratified with the greatest part of that which belonged to *Syphax*. A professed Enemy to *Carthage*, (the final ruine whereof he lived to see) till the time of his death, being then ninety years of Age.
5. *Miciffa*, the Son of *Masfiniffa*, of whom nothing memorable.
6. *Jugurth*, the Son of *Masfiniffa*, one of the brethren of *Miciffa*, having wickedly made away the two Sons of *Miciffa*, usurped the Kingdom, and manifestly withstood the *Romans*, whose attempts sometimes by force, sometimes by subtilty but chiefly by money and bribes, he overthrew and made frustrate: *Et fuit in Jugurtha* (saith *Florus*) *quod post Annibalem timeretur*. At last being broken by *Metellus*, vanquished by *Marius*, and by *Boecbus* delivered into the hands of *Sylla*, he was by *Marius* led in Triumph to *Rome*. In this Triumph was carried 3700 pound weight in Gold; in Silver-wedges, 5775 pounds weight; and in ready Coin, 28900 Crowns: it being the custom of the *Romans* in their Triumphs, to have carried before them all the Riches and Money, which they had brought out of the conquered Countries, to put into the common Treasury.
7. *Hiempsal*, Son of *Boecbus* King of *Mauritania*, gratified for his Fathers treachery in betraying *Jugurth*, with the Kingdom of *Numidia*; Relieved *Marius* in his exile.
8. *Hiarbar*, another of the *Maurian* faction, preferred to the *Numidian* Crown, but vanquished and deprived by *Pompey*, at that time one of *Sylla's* Captains.
9. *Hiempsal* II. preferred by *Pompey* to this Kingdom.
10. *Juba*, the Son of *Hiempsal* the second, who siding with *Pompey* against *Cæsar* in the Civil Wars, gave a great Overthrow to *Curio*, one of *Cæsar's* Lieutenants; *Curio* himself slain, his whole Army routed, such as were taken Prisoners murdered in cold Blood. But being discomfited by *Cæsar*, after *Pompey's* death, *Numidia* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire.

Thusby the Fall of *Carthage*, and the death of *Juba*, came the whole Provinces of *Africa Propria*, and *Numidia* (containing the now Kingdom of *Tunis*) into the power of the *Romans*. Of which, the Nations of most note were the *Nigritani*, on the Eastern parts of the *Mediterranean*; the *Machini*, near the lesser *Syrtis*; the *Lybia-*

*Phanices*, and *Medini*, bordering upon *Carthage*; the *Jonii*, *Navarre*, and *Certeis*, taking up all the Sea-coasts of *Numidia*. Such as inhabited more Southwards on the back of these, not so much considerable: None of them to be said upon, but the *Liby-Phanices*, a mixt people of the old *Libyans*, and new *Phanicians*, as the *Liby-Egyptians* were of the said *Libyans* and the neighbouring *Egyptians*. The memory of all of them fo defaced by the violent inundation of the *Arabians*, that there is scarce any tract, or footsteps of them in all the Country. When conquered by the *Saracens*, they were at first subject to the *Caliph*, or *Sultan* of *Cairo*: after the Spoil whereof by the *Arabians*, subdued by *Abdul Mumen* King of *Morocco*, and by him added to that Kingdom. In the distractions of that State, made a peculiar Kingdom by some one of the Relicts of the Stock of the *Almohades*, who took unto himself the Title of King of *Tunis*, that City being his chief Seat. By him transmitted unto his Posterity, till the days of our Grand-Fathers: when *Muleffer*, one of the youngest Sons of *Sultan Mahomet*, having first murdered *Maimon* his eldest Brother, and put out the eyes of twenty of the reftaured Sovereignty. *Rofetta*, the only one of those Princes who escaped this Massacre, upheld a while by the *Arabians*, and by them deserted, was feign to put himself into the hands of *Barbarossa*, King of *Algiers*, and Admiral of the Turkish Navy; by whom he was carried to *Constantinople*, and so presented to *Solymann*, who under colour of retaining him to the Throne of his Fathers, conquered that Kingdom for himself: ousted thereof not long after by *Charles* the Fifth, appearing in favour of *Muleffer*, An. 1535. But the Tyrant did not long enjoy his ill-gotten Sovereignty, when his eyes were also put out by his own Son *Amyda*, and he committed to close Prison: Nor did *Amyda* enjoy it long, dispossessed by *Abdamelech* his Fathers brother. To *Abdamelech* *Mahomet* his Son succeeded; who being a Child, and his Affairs ill governed by his Tutors, and other Ministers of State, gave opportunity to *Amyda* to regain the Kingdom. During which broils the *Turks* again recovered footing, possessed themselves of a great part of the Country, and forced *Amyda* into exile, who flying to *Don John* of *Austria*, then newly victorious at *Lepanto*, invited him to the Conquest of *Tunis*, but he got little by the bargain; for *Don John* having subdued the Kingdom, conferred the same on *Mahomet* the Brother of *Amyda*, and carried *Amyda* in bonds to the Isle of *Sicily*, where he after died. Nor did *Mahomet* enjoy it long; for the next year the *Turks* besieged and took the City of *Tunis*, with the strong Fort of *Gazetta*, with all the other Ports and Holds of that Kingdom, made ever since a Province of the Turkish Empire: the poor King being carried prisoner to *Constantinople* at the end of the War, which was in the year 1574. and the last of *Scimmes* the Second.

## 2. TREMESEN, or ALGIERS.

THE Kingdom of *TREMESEN* is bounded on the East with the River *Amsaga*, (now called *Major*) by which parted from the Kingdom of *Tunis*; on the West with the Kingdom of *Fesse* and *Morocco*, from which separated by the River of *Mahaba*, or *Malva*. So called from *Tremesin*, or *Telensin*, the chief City of it. Called also the Kingdom of *Algiers*, from the City so named, sometimes the Seat-Royal of their Kings.

In

In the flourish of the *Roman* Empire, it had the name of *Mauritania Cæsariensis*; *Mauritania*, because of the Kingdom of *Juba* King of *Mauritania*, of which more anon; *Cæsariensis*, from *Cæsarea* the chief City of it, as that fo called in honour of *Augustus Cæsar*, on whom the King hereof depended. More anciently the Kingdom of the *Masfylli*, one of the most powerful Nations in all this tract, over whom reigned *Syphax* before-mentioned, called therefore by *Sirado Masfyllia*, with good propriety; and corruptly, *Masfylla*.

The Kingdom extended in length from East to West, for the space of 80 miles, but of breadth not answerable; is generally of the same nature (as to the Soil and Air) with the rest of *Barbary*: sufficiently fruitful towards the Sea, more barren and uncomfortable in Southern parts. But meanly peopled, by reason of the continual spoils made by the *Arabians*, who possess the *Desarts*; and the Cities of it much wasted by continual Wars. Nor have the People any peculiar Character, but what belongeth to others of these *Africans* also.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Gazgaya*, inconveniently seated, as paying their accustomed Tributes to the King of *Tremesin*, their natural Prince; and contribution to the *Arabians*, who are here so numerous and powerful, that the Kings themselves of this small Kingdom were fain to buy their peace of them at exorbitant rates. 2. *Tigrid*, sometimes famous, and abounding with men of Learning; now almost forsaken, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of these *Arabians*. 3. *Tobertit*, inhabited for the most part by Weavers. 4. *Bresch*, the Inhabitants whereof use to paint black Crofs on their Cheek, and another on the Palm of their hands: the reason of which Custom they are ignorant of, but some conceive it to be a remembrance of their Christianity. 5. *Ned-Roman*, built, as the people do pretend, by the ancient *Romans*, as an *Egyptine*, or Abridgment of that mighty City, so which it is said to have some resemblance; and that imported by the name, which signifieth in their Language, *Like to Rome*, Perhaps the same which *Ptolomy* calleth *Novum Oppidum*, or the New-Town, then a *Roman* Colony. 6. *Batha*, once a great City, since decayed by Wars. 7. *Oran*, a noted Haven on the *Mediterranean*, said to contain no fewer than 10000 Families. Powerful at Sea, and much infesting with their Gallies the Coasts of *Spain*; till taken from *Ferdinand* the Catholic by *Peter* of *Navarre*, An. 1502. since which time peopled and possessed by the *Spaniards*: In vain besieged by the said *Turks*, An. 1562. *Maliskouer*, a fair and spacious Haven on the same Sea-coast, and taken by the said *Peter* of *Navarre* about the same time. 9. *Hersagel*, in former times of much esteem amongst the *Moor*s; but being destroyed by the King, or *Sultan* of *Cairo*, he bequeathed its greatness unto *Tremesin*, which after grew into renown. 10. *Tremesin*, once adorned with many beautiful *Mosques*, and five sumptuous *Colleges*, curiously wrought with *Mosaic* work. So populous, that there were reckoned in 16000 Families; and so well fortified, that it held out seven years against *Jupha* the great King of *Fesse*: not taken that, though they were very much weakened by *Abulhasen*, or *Allobacen* his Son and Successor, under a siege of 20 Months. By those, and the succeeding Troubles it hath undergone, exceedingly impaired both in strength and beauty. More ancient, 11. *Siga*, an *African* City, and a *Roman* Colony; the retiring place of *Syphax* and *Boecbus*, sometimes Kings of this Country. 12. *Afsona*, another Colony of the *Romans*. 13. *Jol*, the Seat-Royal of King *Boecbus*, after such time as this Country was conferred upon him by the *Romans*, on the taking of *Jugurth*: called afterwards *Cæsarea*, in honour of *Augustus Cæsar*, whose *Fœdutaris* the Kings hereof were

then accounted; or as some say, in honour of *Claudius Cæsar*; by whom made a Colony: the Metropolis of it also when a *Roman* Province, which from hence was called *Cæsariensis*. Situate in, or near the place where *Oran* now stands, which seemeth to have risen out of the ruins of it. 14. *Salde*, a *Roman* Colony also, of whose ruins rose *Algiers*. 15. *Algiers*, by the *Arabians* called *Geezin*, now the chief City of this Kingdom, situate near the Sea, in the form of a Triangle, with an Haven, to it is neither great, nor safe from the North-winds, which do much annoy it. The buildings very beautiful; is the publick *Baths*, *Bathes*, and *Mosques*, exceeding sumptuous; every Trade having a several place, or Street by it self. But that which is the greatest grace of it, is the situation of the Houses standing in even streets one above another, upon the rising of a steep Hill; so that the Windows of one Street, or row of housing do all along over-look the tops of the other next beneath, which yieldeth to the Sea a most pleasant Prospect. A City not so large, as strong; and not so strong, as famous. Famous for being the receptacle and retreating place of the Turkish Pirates who dominion fo infinitely over the *Mediterranean*, to the great damage of the Merchants of all Nations that frequent those Seas. Famous also for the Shipwreck which *Charles* the Fifth here suffered who besieged this Town, lost in the Haven of it at one Tempest, besides an infinite number of *Karvals* and small Boats, divers strong Gallies, 140 Ships, a great many excellent pieces of Ordnance; such a number of gallant Horfes, that in *Spain* the race of Horfes for Service had like to have been lost for ever; and above half his Men. It long enjoyed the benefit of proprietary Princes, (but *Mohamers*, or Tributaries to the Kings of *Tremesin*), till such time as *Selimes* and *Mahomet*, falling out, made the first, and that an irreparable Breach in the Government. So *Selimes*, to strengthen his side, implored the aid of *Hairacuss Babaroffa*, a noble Pirate; who taking his best advantage, slew the disjointed Brethren, and settled himself in the Kingdom: which he had scarce made warm, when he left it to *Hairadine Babaroffa's* Brother, An. 1514. This *Hairadine* drove the *Spaniards* out of *Begia*, and was so renowned for Martial prowess, that *Solymann* the *Magnificent* made him Lord High-Admiral of his Fleet: Which Office, when to the prejudice of *Christendom* he had fortunately and for long time undergone, he died lamented, and made the *Turk* the Heir of his Kingdom; the Kingdom of *Tremesin* being made subject to the *Turk*, much about that time. 16. *Tetian*, and 17. *Sargel*, situate Westward of *Algiers*; Towns of Trade and Pyrracy.

The old Inhabitants of this Kingdom, when a *Roman* Province, were the *Herpidiani*, *Taladuffi*, *Thaluffi*, *Machibii*, *Maccerebi*, *Clutine*, and others of as little note; the most predominant Nation being the *Masfylli*, over whom (and in that over all the rest) reigned *Syphax*, spoken of before, unfortunately famous for his tragical love to *Sophoniba*: For whose sake, siding with the *Carthaginians* against the *Romans*, he was vanquished and sent Prisoner to *Rome*. His Kingdom given to *Masfiniffa* King of the *Numidians*, continued in his Line till the death of *Jugurth*, and then bestowed upon the Kings of *Mauritania*; part of whose Kingdom it was reckoned in the following times, till made a Province of the Empire by the Emperor *Claudius*. Won from the *Romans* by the *Vandal*, and then by the *Saracens*; it followed the fortunes of these last, while they stood and flourished: But growing into many distractions, and every *Sultan*, or Provincial Government shifting for himself, it became a Kingdom, under the title and title of the Kingdom of *Tremesin*. The Majesty of it much impaired by *Abulhasen*, or *Allobacen* King of *Fesse*, who brought it not long after an Abolition.

Com-

Command. Recovering after some short time its former liberty, it became a Kingdom once again, and to continue till the time of *Abubeken*: who incurring the hatred of his People, because by his supine neglect the *Spaniards* had furnished and taken *Oran* and *Majalquivir*, their two best Havens, made an easy passage for his Brother *Abuizen* into the Regal Diadem. *Abuizen* scarce well settled lost it to *Hairaidin Barbardaz*, An. 1515, and he to *Charles* the Fifth, by whom *Abubeken* was restored, becoming *Huniger* and *Tributary* to the Crown of Spain. But his Successor *Abdalla*, weary of the *Spanish* Scrivitude, put himself under the protection of *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, as a Prince of his own Religion; to whom at his decease, he left the possession of his Kingdom also: ever since subject to the *Turky*: whose *Beglerbeg* or Supreme Officer for these *African* Provinces, reside for the most part in *Algiers*, and hath 4000 *Timariots* under his Command.

### 3. FESSE, and MOROCCO.

These Kingdoms I have joyned in title, because united for the most part in the story and affairs thereof, and of late times making but one entire Estate under the *Xeriff* of *Morocco*: and therefore handled both together in the point of History, though of a different consideration in the way of Geography.

They contain in them the whole Country of *Mauritania*, truly and properly so called; divided anciently into *Tingiana* and *Stifenfis*; *Cesariensis* being naturally a *Numidian* Region, the *Meslyli* and the rest of the Inhabitants of it, of *Numidian* breed; not laid to *Mauritania*, nor accounted any part thereof, till the death of *Jugurth*; when given to *Boecbus* King herof, in regard of his Treason, for betraying that unhappy Prince into the hands of the *Romans*.

It took this name from the *Mauri*, the Inhabitants of it, whom that name was first given; the word *Tania*, signifying a Nation, being added to it; as in *Britania*, *Lusitania*, *Aquitania*, and perhaps some others; and the name of *Mauri* given them *ante rem Mauri* which signifies amongst other things *obscure* or black, by reason of the darkness of their Complexion. Accounted in their times an hardy, but a bloody people; careless of life, fearless of death; implacable if once offended, their thirst of Revenge not to be quenched but by Blood. *Mauri* sunt genus hominum sùpbe natura cedis acidissimum, nihilque non facile audens, & desperatis smiles, contemptu, viris & periculorum. A Character given of them in *Herodian* time, and it holds good still: notwithstanding the intermixture of *Goths* and *Saracens* incorporated into the same Nation with them, and passing by the same name in the Writers of the middle time. Post hæc Mauri totum Hispaniam & Provinciam Burgundiam, &c. Dominio suo municipiant, as my Author hath it; where by *Moor* we are to understand the *Saracens*, which came out of *Africa*.

Chief Mountains of this Country, 1. *Atlas Minor*, so called, to difference it from the greater *Mountain*, but from which it is seven degrees more North, but shootech, as that doth, with a Point or Promontory into the main *Atlantic* Ocean, on the South of *Salta*. 2. *Dindus* extended also into *Cesariensis*. 3. *Diur*, 4. *Phœnix*, of which little memorable. Rivers of most note, 1. *Sala*. 2. *Salar*. 3. *Zilia*. 4. *Phub*. 5. *Diur*. 6. *Cufa*, all falling into the *Atlantic*: The last the same, as I conjecture, which our Modern Writers call *Omair-bili*. And for the rest, we must find amongst them, 1. *Sifemel*, 2. *Tosiff*, 3. *Niffir*, the names of the chief Rivers, as at this time called.

The old Inhabitants herof in the time of the *Romans*, were the *Metagonis* near the *Straits*, giving name unto *Metagonis* an adjoining Promontory, the *Sweosii*, *Verice*, *Nediberes*, *Vacuatæ*, *Polii*; and on the East-side the *Maurisii*: These last participating of that common name, in which all united. Called by the *Latines*, *Mauri*; by the *Greeks*, *Maurisii*: The Etymology as before. Their descent originally from *Phut*, the Son of *Cham*: whose memory preferred here in the River *Phut*. To that, the coming of the *Cananites*, of the fame extraction, served but as an Accessory. From those two Mountains sprang the whole Nation of the *Mauri*, Governed by Kings: the most considerable of which, when first known to the *Romans*, was that *Boecbus*, who betrayed *Jugurth* his Friend and Son-in-law, into the hands of the *Romans*: gratified for that Treachery with the Country of the *Meslyli*, (reckoned for part of *Mauritania* from that time forwards) as *Hempfal* one of his Sons was, not long after, with the Kingdom of *Numidia*. The whole cities of *Boecbus*, *Syphax*, and *Meslyli*, united by this means in the person of *Juba*, one of his Posterity, the most potent Prince of all these parts: who falling in the *African* War against *Julius Cesar*, *Numidia* was forthwith made a Province of the *Roman* Empire; *Crispus Salsutius* being made the first Governour of it. But *Mauritania*, extending at that time from the Ocean to the River *Angusgar*, he gave to *Boecbus* and *Bogud*, two of his Confederates, but defended of the old Regal Family, *Bogud* unluckily taking part with *Mark Antony* against *Angusgar*, was by *Boecbus*, who declared for the other side, dispossessed of his part; (that which now makes the Kingdom of *Fesse*) in which confirmed for his good Service, by the conquering Emperor *Juba*, the Son of the former *Juba*, grown famous for his eminent learning, was of *Pitron* made a Prince: invited after the death of *Boecbus* in all the Dominions of his Father, except *Numidia*: and by the bounty of *Angusgar*, a great Patron of Learning, advanced to the Marriage of *Selene*, Daughter of *Antony* and *Cleopatra*. After whose death, and the death of *Pholomy* their Son, murdered by *Caligula*, *Mauritania* was by *Claudius* added to the Patrimony of the *Roman* Empire: divided into two Provinces, viz. *Cesariensis*, betwixt the two Rivers *Maha* and *Ansage*, now the Kingdom of *Tromes*; and *Tingiana*, from the River *Maha* to the Western Ocean. This last divided into *Tingiana* and *Stifenfis*, (the River now called *Omair-bili* being the boundary betwixt them) by the Emperor *Constantine* who leaving *Stifenfis* to the *Dioecsis* of *Africk*, laid *Tingiana* (why, I know not) unto that of *Spain*. Gained from the *Romans* by the *Goths*, after by the *Saracens*, they became Members of those Empires: in the declining of the last divided into the two Kingdoms of *Fesse* and *Morocco*, to the Description and History whereof, we now proceed.

### 3. MOROCCO.

The Kingdom of *MOROCCO* hath on the East, the River *Maha*, by which parted from *Tromes*; on the West, the *Atlantic* Ocean; on the South, Mount *Atlas*; and on the North, the Kingdom of *Fesse*: so called from *Morocco*, the chief City of it; in former times known by the name of *Mauritania Stifenfis*, from *Sinip*, in those times the principal City, as *Procopius* telleth us.

The Country said to be fruitful of all things necessary to life, pleasing to the sight, and sweet to smell: particularly, well stored with Grain and Pulse, plentiful of Oyl, Honey, and Sugar, liberally furnished with Dates, Grapes, Figs, Apples, Pears, and all sorts of Fruits; exceedingly

exceedingly well stocked with Cattel, but with Goats especially; whose skins afford a very excellent kind of Leather, and of their fleece materials for the finest Chambers, which are here made in most of their Cities. The whole Country divided commonly into these seven parts, viz. 1. *Guzzula*. 2. *Sus*. 3. *Morocco* specially so called. 4. *Hæa*. 5. *Hæfona*. 6. *Ducella*, and 7. *Tedley*.

1. *GUZZULA*, the most Southern Province of this Kingdom, hath on the East, some part of *Tromes*; on the West, *Sus* or *Sufa*, from which parted by a ridge of Mountains called *Ida*; on the South, Mount *Atlas*; and on the North, part of the Territory of *Morocco*, and the rest of *Sufa*. The Country rich in Mines of Brasse, Iron and other Metals, of which are made many *Uzoffs* for domestic uses, exported hence into other places.

The People Barbarous and rude, not easily acknowledging subjection to the Kings of *Morocco*, and at continual Wars amongst themselves, except only for two monthes in the year: which being the time of their publick Marts, and then much visited with Strangers from other Countreys, they lay aside their private quarrels, and cheerfully entertain *Rich Merchants* as repair unto them. Walled Towns here are not any, but some very great Villages: the chief whereof, 1. *Guzzula*, on the Northern bank of the River *Sus*, whence the name of the Province. 2. *Targissa*, not far off, but on the other side of the water, towards the foot of Mount *Atlas*. 3. *Tedza*, inclining towards the borders of *Morocco*. Of these nothing memorable.

2. West of *Guzzula*, lieth the Province of *SUS* or *SUSA*, so called from the River *Sus*, (with which well watered) or giving name to it. Rich in Gold-Mines, the cause of continual Wars amongst the people: well stored with *Sugar-Canes*, which the inhabitants know neither how to boil nor purifie; and on the Sea-shores, furnished with great plenty of *Amber*, bought by the *Portugals* of the people at an easy rate. Chief Towns herof, 1. *Cape D'Agur*, on a Promontory so called; a place of such importance to the *Portugals*, that the taking of it by *Mahomet* then King of *Sus* (after of *Morocco* also) made them quit all the Forts which they had in this Country. 2. *Targass*, a rich and wealthy Town; the greatest in the Province, and situate in a large Plain near the foot of Mount *Atlas*. 3. *Togit*, situate in a spacious Plain also, but on the Banks of the River *Sus*: divided into three parts, each a mile from the other: which joyned together, make the exact figure of a Triangle. 4. *Missa* or *Massa*, seated at the influx of the said River on the Promontory called *Cape Gilon*'s three Towns in one; not much the better for the Sea, and but ill befriended by the Land, as seated in a barren and unpleasing foyl; remarkable for a fair Temple, the Beams and Rafter of which are made of the bones of *Whales*, which usually are left dead on the shore. 5. *Taradant*, a large Town, built by the *Africans*, before the conquest of this Country by the *Goths* or *Saracens*: the Residence of the Vice-Roy for the Kings of *Fesse*, when the Lords of this Kingdom; but more enriched of late by the Merchants of *France* and *England*, who have here a Staple for their Sugars. By this Commerce, the people made more civil than in other parts of this Province: the whole number of them thought to amount to 3000 Families. 6. *Tedza*, more within the Land, bigger than *Taradant*, but less wealthy: the chief Ornament of it being a fair *Mahometan* Temple, liberally furnished with *Picids* and Readers of that Law, at the common charge. Not far from hence the Hill *Anchisa*, where it snoweth at all seasons of the year, and yet the people go extrem thin in the sharpest Winter. Nothing else memorable of this Province, but that a little before the *Xeriff* made himself King of *Morocco*, it had the title of a King-

dom; and gave the title of King to *Mahomet* the second *Xeriff*, made King of *Taradant*, or *Sus*, before he disposed his Brother of the Crown of *Morocco*.

3. Northward of *Sus*, lieth the Province of *MOROCCO*, specially so called, the most fruitful and best peopled part of *Barbary*; not much unlike to *Lombardy* in wealth and pleasures; the very Hills thereof as fruitful as the Vallies in other places. To which fertility of the foyl, the Rivers, 1. *Teniff*, and 2. *Affinnad*, give no small advantage; though much defaced by frequent incursions of the *Portugals*, who have extremely spoiled this Country. Places of most observation in it, 1. *Delgumaba*, built upon a very high Mountain, and environed with many other Hills; at the foot whereof the Fountain of *Affinnad*. 2. *Elgimaba*, a small, but ancient Town, on the River *Siffava*. 3. *Tesfat*, a small Town upon *Affinnad*. 4. *Imizimzi*, situate on a Rock, spacious and seated near the entrance of a narrow way leading into *Guzzula*. 5. *Tenezze*, an old Town but very well fortified. 6. *Agnet*, upon the River *Teniff*, all ruined except the Fort, and some scattered houses: formerly second unto none but *Morocco* (from which distant 24 miles) the Hills and Vallies about it adorned with pleasant Gardens, fruitful Vineyards, a fair River, and Fields so fertile, that they yield a fifty-fold increase. 7. *Sefina*, where they have snow at all times of the year. 8. *Tennidula*, an Heretical Town, differing in opinion from the rest of the *Mahometan* Sects; and so well-grounded in their Tenets, that they challenge all their *Opposites* to a Disputation. 9. *Hanera*, very full of Jews. 10. *Morocco*, the principal of this Province, and of all the Kingdom, situate in or near the place where once stood the *Bezanum* *Hemerum* of *Ptolemy*. Once reckoned amongst the greatest Cities of the World, at what time it was said to contain 100000 Families; since so defaced and wasted by the depredations of the *Arabs*, and the removal of the Sea-Royal to *Fesse*, when that Kingdom was in the *Affordant*, that it is hardly a third part so great as formerly. The Founder of it *Joseph*, surnamed *Telidene*, the second King of the House of the *Almoravides*; but much enlarged and beautified by *Abdul-Munim*, one of his successors. The principal Buildings in it, are the Church and the Castle: the Church or *Mosque*, one of the greatest in the World, adorned with many sumptuous Pillars brought out of *Spain*, when the *Moor* had the possession of that Country; and beautified with a lately Steeple, in compass at the bottom an hundred yards, and of 60 feet height, that the Hills of *Asazi* (one of the branches of the lesser *Atlas*) being 130 miles distant, may be thence easily discerned: the *Cathedral* very large and strong, on a Tower whereof stands three Globes made of pure Gold, weighing 130000 *Barbary* Ducats: which divers Kings have gone about to take down, and convert into money, but all deflected in regard of some cross accident or other which befell them in it; inasmuch that the common people think them to be guarded with Spirits.

4. North of *Morocco*, on the further side of *Teniff* and *Affinnad*, is the Province of *HÆA*: rough, Mountainous, and Woody, yet watered with many pleasant Rills, and would be plentiful enough in all commodities, if the Industry of the people were not wanting to it. A sort of people little better than merely barbarous, without all *Artifice*, either Ingenious or Mechanick; except some *Chirurgians*, whom they keep to circumcise their Children; and some few Teachers of their Law, which can hardly read. Their Food a Pap, made of Barley-meal, which in stead of Spoons, they claw with their Fingers; the Ground they eat on, serving for Table, Stools and Napkins.



Napkins. At endless feud with one another, yet to kind to Strangers, that in one of their chief Towns, called *Tedest*, the Gentlemen used to call lots who should entertain them. A Town of good estate in former time, situate in a large plain on the River *Tessit*; but in the year 1514, almost wholly abandoned, upon a rumor, that the *Arabians* had a purpose to sell it to the *Portugals*, 2. *Tecadeth*, seated on a good Port, and once very well traded, here being in it at that time 1000 Families, some Hospitals, and a beautiful *Mosque*; in the year 1514, destroyed by the *Portugals*, 3. *Toneti*, a Sea-Town in the hands of the *Portugals*, 4. *Elmoriden*, a strong piece, as the name importeth, the word signifying the *Disciples Fort*, so called, because a certain *Heretic* in the Law of *Mahomet* (whereof this Kingdom yields good plenty) retired hither with his *Disciples*; fortified it, and defended it against the King of *Morocco*, 5. *Iguilinguigul*, seated on the top of all, and fortified by the Country-people (or old *African Moors*) against the *Arabians*. 6. *Tefalme*, beautified with a pretty Haven, but not capable of any great shipping. 7. *Tegisset*, a den of Thieves and Cut-Throats. 8. *Tefisset*, as courteous and civil, as the other barbarous; At the Gates whereof a Guard is set for entertainment of Strangers; whom if they have no acquaintance there, they are to provide of Accommodation in some Gentlemen's house, where it costs them nothing but thanks, and some kind acknowledgment.

5. Northwards of *Hoz*, stands the Province of *DUCALA*, bounded on the West, with the main *Atlantic*; and on the North, with the River *Ommirabili*, by which parted from the Kingdom of *Fesse*. Of three days journey long, about two in breadth; thrusting into the Ocean with a craggy Promontory, which some of the Ancients called *Uligian*, others the Promontory of the *Sun*, but by the *Christians* of *Europe* called the Cape of *Cantins* by the *Moors*, *Gebelrhude*. Populous enough, the quality of the men considered, ignorant both of Letters and all good manners; Yet not so populous as it hath been in former times, much of the Country being abandoned for fear of the *Portugals*, who have taken all their best Towns on the Sea-coasts, and destroyed the rest. Amongst these, 1. *Azafi*, at the foot of the Hills so called; surprised by the *Portugals*, under colour of making a Store-house for their Merchandise. 2. *Azame*, seated at the mouth of the River *Ommirabili*, the furthest Town of this Kingdom towards that of *Fesse*; the people whereof were extremely addicted unto *Sodomy*, till subdued by the *Portugueses*, 3. *Elmadina*, once the Metropolis of this Province; but now for fear of those Invaders, in a manner desolated. 4. *Conte*, of the foundation of the *Gober*, 5. *Tie*, built by the old *African Moors*, but possessed by the *Portugals*, 6. *Subiti*, 7. *Tuercoff*, 8. *Conpua*, 9. *Terga*, 10. *Calduban*; all sacked and ruined by the *Portugals*, who they took *Azamor* (the Key of this Province) which was in the year 1513. At which time it is said, that *Mahomet* King of *Fesse* passing through this Province with an Army, to repress these insolencies, at every *Allar* (whereof there are many in the Roads) Inceaded, and said unto this effect: *Lord, thou knowest that the cause of my coming into this wild place, is only to free this people of Ducales from the rebellious and wicked Arabians, and their cruel Enemies the Christians, which purpose, if they shall not approve of, my Followers will fulfil upon my Person, but not upon my Followers; who deserve it not. With greater piety than could be looked for from a blind Mahometan.*

6. Eastward of *Ducalis*, along the banks of *Ommirabili*, lieth the Province of *HASCORA*, a fruitful

Country, intermixt of rich Fields and pleasant Gardens; furnished with most sorts of choicest fruits; and amongst others, Grapes of such extraordinary greatness, that they are said to be as big as a Pullets Egg. Good store of Honey it hath also, and some Mines of Iron: Inhabited by a more civil people than any of the rest, and consequently more deservful to rich a soyl. Places of most importance in it, 1. *Ezo*, an old town, situate on a lofty Mountain. 2. *Elvina*, of a later erection. 3. *Almadina*, conquered for the King of *Fesse* by a Merchant, whose Paragon the Prince or Governour hereof had taken from him: Situate in a pleasant, but little valley, but begirt with Hills, and well inhabited by Gentlemen, Merchants, and Artificers, 4. *Togodist*, on the top of an Hill, environed with four others of equal height.

7. More East, betwixt *Hascora* and the River *Malva*, is the Province of *TEDLES*, bounded on the East with the Kingdom of *Tremeson*; and on the North, with that of *Fesse*, from which last parted by the River *Servi* which on the North-east border it meets with *Ommirabili*. The whole Province in form Triangular, of no great either length or breadth, but sufficiently fruitful and well inhabited for the bigness. Some Towns it hath, and those not meanly populous for so small a Province; the chief whereof. 1. *Tefza*, built by the old *African Moors*, and beautified with many *Mahometan Mosques*; the Walls of which made of a kind of Marble, which they here call *Tefza*, whence the name of the Town. 2. *Efza*, seated on the River *Ommirabili*, where it receiveth that of *Deyme*; which rising out of *Atlas Minor*, and passing by *Tefza* last mentioned, doth here lose its name. 3. *Chybitte*, renowned for the stout resistance, which it, hath made from time to time against those of *Fesse*, 4. *Ebit*, abounding in all sorts of Victual.

These Provinces make up the Kingdom of *Morocco*; infested miserably while it remained subject to the Kings of *Fesse*, by the *Portugals* on the one side, and the wild *Arabians* on the other. Concerning which last people we are to know, that when the *Saracens* conquered *Africk*, they contented themselves with the Command, and left unto the *Natives* the possession of it, forbidding the *Arabians* (with whose course of life they were well acquainted) to pass over *Nilus*. *Elcain*, the last of the Successors of *Hucha* in the Kingdom of *Cairoan*, having subdued the rest of *Africk*, and added it unto his Estate, passed forwards into *Egypt*, which he had conquered also, assuming to himself the title of *Caliph*: But in his absence, the Lieutenant, whom he left in *Africk* rebelled against him; and acknowledging the *Caliph* of *Bagdet* for his lawful Lord, received of him for his good Service, the Kingdom of *Africk*. *Elcain*, thus disposed of *Africk*, despairing to recover his lost Estate, and yet not willing that it should be useful unto his enemies, licensed the *Arabians* for a *Ducat* a man, to pass over the Nile with their Tents and Families. On which agreement, almost half the Tribes of *Arabia Deserta*, and many of *Arabia Felix*, went into *Africk*; where they sacked *Tripolis*, *Cairoan*, and the rest of the principal Cities; tyrannizing over all *Barbary*, till restrained at last by *Joseph* the Founder of *Morocco*, (of whom more hereafter.) Since which time, though they lost their unlimited Empire, yet they still swarm like Locusts over all the Country, and neither apply themselves to Tillage, or building Houses, or any civil course of life; nor fillge those to live in quiet, who would otherwise mature and improve the Country. The rest of the Story of these Kingdoms we shall have anon, when we have taken Survey of the Kingdom of *Fesse*.

## 4. FESSE.

The Kingdom of *FESSE* is bounded on the South, with the Realm of *Morocco*; on the North, with part of the *Atlantic* and *Mediterranean*; on the East, with *Malva*, parting it from the Kingdom of *Tremeson*; and on the West, with the *Atlantic* wholly.

It takes this name from *Fesse*, the chief City of it. Known to the ancients by the name of *Mauritania Tingitana*, so called from the City of *Tingis* (now *Tanger*) then of greatest note. Called also *Hispania Transfretana*, Spain on the other side of the Sea, because a part of that *Ducois*; and by some (Pliny, amongst others) *Bagudiana*, from *Bagud* one of the Kings hereof, to whom given by *Cesar*; by others *Amphelus*, from its abundance of Vines, The Inhabitants of it, by the *Spaniards*, now called *Alarbes*.

The Country of good temperature in regard of the Air, if not in some places of the coldest; but very unequally disposed of in respect of the Earth; here being in it many Deserts and large Forests, not well inhabited; but intermixt with many rich and delightful Fields. So that taking the climate in the gross, it may be said to be a rich and flourishing Country, hardly inferior unto any. The particularities of which are to be considered in the Characters of the several Provinces, into which it now stands divided, that is to say, 1. *Tomesina*, 2. *Fesse*, specially so called, 3. *Elchane*, or *Chane*, 4. *Garet*, 5. *Algaza*, 6. *Ergisse*, and 7. *Habat*.

1. *TEMESINA* hath on the South, the River *Ommirabili*; on the West, the Ocean; extended in length from West to East 80 miles, and in breadth 70. A Champaign Country, very level; and once so populous, that it contained 40 Cities, and 300 Castles; most of them mined by the Wars, and the wild *Arabians*, the greater destroyer of the two. The principal of those remaining, 1. *Togger*, near the River *Ommirabili*, once of greater note, but now inhabited only by poor people, and a few *Smiths* compelled to live there for the making of Iron Instruments to manure the Land. 2. *Thagia*, on the course of the said River; much visited by those of *Fesse*, for the Sepulchre of an holy Prophet, who was there interred; the *Fessans* going thither in Pilgrimage with such numbers of Men, Women, and Children, that their Tents seem sufficient to lodge an Army. 3. *Adendum*, more towards the Sea, but on a small River called *Gairla*; well walled, and fenced on one side by a Lake or Pool. 4. *Amse*, on the shore of the *Atlantic*, once of great Trade, and well frequented, both by the *English* and the *Portugals*, by which last destroyed. 5. *Manfur*, destroyed in like manner by the wild *Arabians*, 6. *Nachaida*, situate in so fertile and rich a soyl, that the Inhabitants would have given a Camels burden of Corn for a pair of Shoes. Nothing now left of it but one Stemple, and a piece of the Wall. 7. *Rabur*, or *Rabur*, built by *Manfur*, or *Almanfur*, King of *Morocco*, near the mouth of the River *Burwig*, and by him made one of the best peopled Towns in *Africk*; built after the model of *Morocco*, but now so wasted that there are not in it above 500 Families; most of the ground within the Walls being turned into Meadows, Vineyards, and Gardens. 8. *Fanzara* on the River *Saba*, the *Saba* of *Pliny*, falling not far off into the other. 9. *Mahomra*, in the same tract also, once possessed by the *Spaniards*; near which the *Portugals* received a great defeat by the King of *Fesse*, for want of good intelligence betwixt them and the *Capitains*. 10. *Saba*, the *Saba* of *Pliny*, by the Inhabitants called *Zale*, or ordinary *Mars* by mistaking, *Cale*; at the mouth of the River *Rabur*, which the ancient Writers called *Saba*, as they named

the Town. Beautified by King *Almanfur* (who is here interred) with a stately Palace, a goodly Hospital, a fair Temple, and a Hall of Marble, cut in *Mosack* works; intended for the burial-place of his Posterity. A Town much traded formerly by the Christian Merchants of *England*, *Flanders*, *Gena*, and the Gulf of *Venice*. Took by the *Spaniards*, An. 1287. and within ten days lost again; a sort of late times made a nest of *Pirates*, as dangerous to those which failed in the Ocean, as the *Pirate* of *Algiers* to the *Mediterranean*. Whose insolencies the King of *Morocco* not able to suppress for want of shipping, desired the aid of his Majesty *Charles*, King of *Great Britain*; by whom the Town being blocked up by Sea, and belleged to the Landward by the King of *Morocco*, it was at last compelled to yield; the works thereof dismantled, the *Pirate* executed, and 300 *Christian* Captives sent unto his Majesty, to be by him restored to their former liberty; to the great honour of his Majesty, and the *English* Nation, An. 1632.

As for the Fortunes of this Province, they have been somewhat different from the rest of this Kingdom: trained by a famous Prophet to revolt from the King of *Fesse* and *Morocco*, whose estate they very much endangered; sending an Army of 50000 men to the Gates of *Morocco*. But being discomfited by *Joseph*, surnamed *Telephus*, he followed them into their own Country, which he waited with great cruelty for ten months together; consuming above a Million of them, and leaving the Province to the mercy of Wolves and Lions. Repeated afterwards by *Almanfur* with *Arabian* Colonies: Given about fifty years after that, by the Princes of the *Marine* Family to more civil Inhabitants; by whom the *Arabians* were expelled, and the Province consequently reduced into some good order.

2. Westward of *Tomesina* lieth the Province of *FESSE*, properly and specially so called. Extended in length from the River *Burwig* to the River *Unad*, for the space of 100 miles. A very fruitful Province, well stored with Cattel, and exceeding populous; the Villages hereof as big as the better sort of Towns in other places; but contrary to the custom of other Countries, better inhabited on the Hills than among the Vallies; the people making choice of the Mountains for their habitation, as places of Defence and Safety, but husbanding the Vallies which lie nearest to them. Places of most consideration in it, 1. *Macameda*, on the River *Unad*, in a goodly Plain, but in a manner all ruined, except the Wall. 2. *Gualiti*, memorable for the Sepulchre of *Idris*, the first Founder of *Fesse*. 3. *Potira Eassa*, where they have some Lions so tame, that they will gather up bones in the Streets like Dogs, without hurting any body. 4. *Agla*, where they have brought their Lions to so strange a cowardice, that they will run away at the voice of a Child; whence a *Brachadobis* is called proverbially a Lion of *Agla*. 5. *Pharao*, by reason of the name, thought by the vulgar to be founded by some King of *Egypt*; but the *Latine* Inscriptions therein found, declare it to have been some work of the ancient *Romans*. 6. *Magritte*, of more antiquity than note. 7. *Fesse*, the Metropolis of this Province, and the chief of the Kingdom, supposed to be the *Volubilis* of *Pliny*, but much enlarged and beautified by some new Accellions. Situate for the most part upon little Hills, and watered by a pleasant and gentle River (derived by *Aguedalis* and conduits into all parts of the City) which they now call the River of *Fesse*, conceived by some learned men to be that which was anciently called *Philo*, from *Phin* the first Planter of the *African* Nation. A City so beautiful and well seated, as if Nature and Art had paid the Wantons, and brought this forth as the fruit of their Dalliance. The Founder, or enlarger

of it, one of the Race of the false Prophet *Mahomet*, his name *Idris*, who built on the East-side of the River that on the West-side, being the Work of one of his Sons: both for increasing, that at last they were joined together. To the left the *Sabars* being added, have made a third. The whole called *Fesse*, from *Fez*, an *Arabic* word signifying Gold; whereof great quantity was found, when they digged the Foundations. Divided into three parts by the River, all of which contain 28000 households, and 700 *Mosques*, or *Saracenic* Temples: the chief of which is *Came*, or *Carman*, being a mile and a half in compass. It hath 32 Gates, great and high; the Roof 150 yards long, and 80 broad: round about, divers Forts, containing 40 yards in length, and 30 in breadth; under which, the publick fire-houses of the Town. About the Walls are Pulpits of divers forts, wherein the Masters of their Law read unto the people such things as they think to pertain to their Salvation. The Revenue herof is 200 Ducats a day of the old Rents; for so it was, *An. 1526*, when *Leo* first wrote. The Merchants have here a Court, or Exchange, inclosed with a strong Wall, with 12 Gates, and 15 Streets. There is also a Colledge called *Amardoe*, a most curious and delicate Building. It hath three Cloysters of admirable beauty, supported with eight square Pillars of divers colours; the Roof curiously carved, and the Arches of *Mosque* work, of Gold and Azure. The Gates of Bricks, fair wrought: and the doors of the private Chambers of inlaid work. This Colledge did cost the Founder, King *Abubekir*, or *Abu Henen* 380000 Crowns. Here are finally laid to be in it many Hospitals, little inferior to the Colleges in building and beauty, all very liberally endowed; and about an hundred *Hou Bahs* well built, with four Halls to each, and certain Galleries without, where they put off their Cloaths when they go to bathe themselves: and besides these 200 Inns, built three stories high, each of them having 120 Chambers in it, with Galleries before all the doors for their Guests to walk in.

3. Eastward of the Territory of *Fesse*, lieth the Province of *CHAUS*, extended in length from the River *Gingir*, or *Gingirum*, by which parted from *Tremfin* and *Fesse*, to the borders of *Tremfin*, for the space of 190 miles, and 170 miles in breadth. So that it is thought to contain one third part of the whole Kingdom: but meanly populous for the bigness, the Country being poor and barren, and the Inhabitants here and warlike; more given to prosecute their quarrels, than to Trade, or Tillage. Chief Towns herof, 1. *Hum Lisan*, a Town built in the more Mountainous parts of the Country, by the old *Africans*. Famous for the Temple of an Idol here worshipped to which at certain times men and women resorted in the night; where, after their devotions ended, and the Candles put out, every man lay with the woman he first touched: the exact platform of the Family of *Loe*, if all be true which is told us of them; and anciently, but falsely, charged on the *Primitive* Christians. 2. *Tezze*, adorned with three Colleges, many Baths and Hospitals, and some beautiful Temples; one of them larger, though not fairer than that of *Fesse*; in both Towns men of the same Trade have a Street by themselves, for greatness, wealth, and numbers of people, eclipsed the third City of this Kingdom. 3. *Dubda*, an ancient Town, but not much observable. 4. *Turret*, seated on the top of an Hill, in the midst of an Plain, but compassed about with *Defarts*. 5. *Boni Jiffen*, neighboured by Iron Mines, in which their greatest bravery and wealth consisteth: the women here wearing Iron-Rings for Ornaments to their Ears and Fingers. 6. *Tezeigni*, subject to the *Arabians*. 7. *Adagria*, the most Eastern Town of all the Region's situate in a *Painisfeld* made by the confluence of *Mulfo* and

*Melua*. In this Country is the head of the River *Sabur*, which rising out of a great Lake in the Woods of the Mountain *Seligne*, and receiving many lesser waters, with a large and Navigable stream falleth into the Ocean.

4. Northwards of *Cham* lieth the Region called *G A R E T*, extended thence as far as the *Mediterranean*; and reaching East and West, from the River *Melua*, where it bordereth on *Tremfin*, to that of *Necber*, wherewith toucheth on *Erif* and *Afsara*. The length herof 25 Leagues, the breadth but twenty. The soil in most places dry and desert, like the Sands of *Nomidia*: especially all along the banks of the *Melua*; near unto which from the *Mediterranean* to *Cham*, it is wholly *Desart* and uncultivated, not well inhabited in the most fruitful parts of it, being full of Mountains; the worse for the ill neighbourhood of the *Spaniards*, possessed of 1. *Chesista*, and 2. *Medla*, two chief Towns herof. 3. *Pemond de Veler*, by some called *Vile de Gomer*, situate on the shore of the *Mediterranean*, betwixt two high Mountains; built by the *Africans* or *Goths*; but now in the possession of the *Spaniards* also. 4. *Jaffaria*, situate on the Sea also, founded by the *Mahometans* of the *Marine* Family. 5. *Tezezza*, standing on an Hill, to which there is but one passage only.

5. Westward of *Gavri* lieth *ASCARA*, a stretch from thence unto the Ocean: Shut up on the South-East-side with the great Mountains *Zalaga*, *Zaron*, and *Gomara*, out of which last runneth the River *Lacur*, called *Lix* by *Pulug*. The Air herof very temperate, and the soil as fertile; supplying with the over-plus of its Commodities the Mountainous parts of *Fesse*, and the *Defarts* of *Gara*. Once full of Towns, till ruined and destroyed by the wars, A Monument whereof, 1. *Gimbia*, built by the ancient *Africans*, of which remains nothing but the Ditches. 2. *Lancabe*, in *Latine* *Lariffe*, the *Lix* of *Pulug*, situate at the mouth of the *Lix* or *Lacur*, and furnished with a good Port, but of difficult entrance; garriſoned when possessed by the *Moor* with 200 light Horse, and 200 *Harchibuffers*; but better fortified than before, since possessed by the *Spaniards*, into whose hands it was put by *Muley-Sheik* King of *Morocco* and *Fesse*, when won by *Muley-Sidan* his younger Brother, in the beginning of the Civil Wars betwixt them. 3. *Caslar Elcahar*, given by *Al-munfir* to a poor Fishers, who had entertained him unknown, one night in his Cottage, when he lost his Company in hunting; Adorned with many Temples, one Colledge of Students, and a stately Hospital.

6. On the North of *Afana* is the Province of *EL-HABAT*, or *HABAT*, coasting along the *Atlantic* Ocean to the mouth of the *Streits*, in length 100 miles, about 80 in breadth. The Country very plentiful of all manner of necessaries, and very well peopled; the Mountains which are here of a great height, being well inhabited. In former times replenished with many Cities, and both of the Foundation of the *Goths*, *Romans*, and old both of the *African* *Moor*, now much diminished by the Wars. Those of most note, 1. *Azaggan*, the Inhabitants whereof by an ancient privilege granted by the King of *Fesse*, were of licence to drink wine, though prohibited by the Law of *Mahomet*. Situate on a Mountain near the River *Gauza*, about 35 Leagues from *Fesse*, and garriſoned with 400 Horse for fear of the *Portugals*, who sometimes make their excursions thither. 2. *Bafra*, once a walled Town, and the walls still standing, but very little or no Town in them. 3. *Hamm*, sometimes well peopled, but now little inhabited, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of the *Portugals*, who command that Coast. 4. *Barreanda*, in a manner deserted for the same reason. 5. *Alcazar Gur*, taken it from another of this name, called *Alcazar Gur*, taken together with *Arzilla* and *Tangier* by *Alfonso* the fifth of *Portugal*, *Anno* 1470. Nigh to which Town the three Kings,

Kings, *Schizism* of *Portugal*, *Mahomet* and *Abdelmelech*, Competitors for this Kingdom were slain in a day. There was also slain at the same time, the great *English* Rebel *Smolghy*, who fled out of *Ireland* to *Rome*, *Anno* 1570. Where he was lovingly entertained by the Pope then being, as a good Son of the Church; by whom appointed for the Conquest of *Ireland*, and for that end furnished with 800 Soldiers paid by the King of *Spain*; and by his Holiness created Marquis of *Leinster*, Earl of *Wexford* and *Caterlogh*, Viscount *Murrough*, and Baron of *Rofs*. Thus furnished, he began his Journey towards *Ireland*, *Anno* 1578. but hearing of these Wars, and desirous to make a party in them, he lost all his honour with his life. 6. *Arzilla* a Sea-Town, 70 miles distant from the *Streits*, now possessed by the *Portugals*. 7. *Tanger*, a great Town, and very ancient, distant from the *Streits* about 30 miles, belonging to the *Portugals* also. In former times it was called *Tingis*, a Colony of the *Canaanites*, and by them built at their first coming thither, when they fled from the Sword of *Jehobab*, testified by the two Pillars erected near this City, which before we spoke of and from that name caused all this part of *Mauritania* to be called *Tingiana*. Made afterwards a Colony by the Emperor *Claudius*, who named it *Traducta Julia*; but the old name prevailed, and out-lived the new. Near to this Town, it is said, that *Heracles* overcame *Anteus*, a monstrous Giant of 64 Cubits high, as his Legend telleth us. And not far off was an high Mountain called *Abyla*, opposite to which in the Coast of *Spain*, was another called *Calpe*, on which the said *Heracles* placed his so famous Pillars. 8. *Septa*, or *Sema*, situate on, or near that Mountain, unfortunately memorable for giving the title of an Earl to *Julian*, who first brought the *Saracens* into *Spain*; beautified in the following times with many Temples, Colleges, and Learned men: taken by the *Portugals* with the help of the *English*, *An. 1415*, and now in the possession of the King of *Spain*. The only Town of all the *Elitates* of *Portugal*, which in the late revolt of that Kingdom doth remain unto him. 9. *Julia Constantia*, so called, and made a Roman Colony by *Augustus Caesar*. 10. *Laxur*, a Roman Colony of the plantation of *Claudius*, in old times said to have been the Court or Palace of the Giant *Anteus*. Not far from whence (that *Anteus* might not dwell alone) the old *Geographers* have placed the habitation of *Geryon*, as proper a Gentleman as himself, in a small Island of the *Streits*, called *Erythia*, and by some *Erythia*.

7. Eastward of *Habat* is the Province of *ERRIF*, extended from the mouth of the *Streits*, where it joineth to *Habat*, as far as to the River *Necber*, (supposed to be the *Melchab* of the Ancient Writers) by which parted from *Gara*: A Mountainous and cold Country in respect of the rest of *Barbary*, full of Woods and Forests; but plentiful enough of Vines, Figs, and Olives; and not without some herds of Goats, though otherwise not well stored with Cattel. In length 140 miles, in breadth 40

only; inhabited by a race of valiant men, but excessive Drunkards. The Towns herof not many, though full of Villages. The chief of which, 1. *Mazagon*, near unto the *Streits*; a very strong Town, and of great importance, but possessed by the *Portugals*; in vain besieged by *Abdalla* the first, with an Army of 200000 men, *An. 1562*. 2. *Mezennem*, seated on a Mountain. 3. *Boni Terfa*, of like situation, once beautified with a goodly Colledge for the Professors of the *Mahometan* Law, who here publicly taught it, as in an University; the Inhabitants whereof were in that regard freed from all exactions. Destroyed together with the Library of it, by some wicked Tyrant, *An. 1509*, the books therein being valued at 4000 Ducats. 4. *Torga*, 5. *Togassa*, 6. *Gebbe*; of which little memorable.

Thus having looked over the particular Provinces of these two Kingdoms, we must next look upon them also in the general story, from the time of the *Saracenic* conquest; first let us into this Country by the Tradition of *Julian*, and for a while subject to the great *Caliph*, or Successor of *Mahomet*: afterwards to the King, or *Caliph*, of *Cairwan*, who extended his Empire to the Ocean. But that Kingdom being overthrown by the coming in of the *Arabians*, these Provinces with the rest were afflicted by them till the rising of the Kingdom of *Fez*; began in the person of *Idris*, of the blood of *Mahomet*, by *Hali*, and his Daughter *Fatima*, commonly called the Family of *Alawez*; who persecuted by the opposite Faction, fled into *Mauritania*; where he grew into such reputation, that in short time he got both Swords into his hands. Dying about the 185 year of the *Hijra*, he left his power unto his Son, of the same name with his Father, the first Founder of *Fesse*. Opposite whereunto on the other side of the water, one of his Sons (but his name I had not) built another City, which in time grew into emulation with it; and railing by that means a faction in the house of *Idris*, which occasioned the subversion of the Kingdom of *Fesse*, after it had continued in the Family of the *Alawez*, for the space of 270 years. The estate herof first weakened by *Abu Tefin*, or *Tefifin*, of the house of the *Almoravides*, or *Lauinner*, and so weakened, that he thereby gave an opportunity to *Jeseph Aben Tefin*, or *Telephine*, his Son and Successor, then famous for bridling the *Arabians*, and founding the City of *Morocco*, to suppress that Family: Who killing the Princes of that Line, and 30000 of their Subjects, brake down the Walls which parted the two Cities from one another, united them by Bridges, and so made them one. Drawn into *Spain* by the diffusion of the *Saracens* there amongst themselves, he added all which they held in that Kingdom unto his Dominions, held by his Successors, as long as they were able to hold *Morocco*: the Catalogue of which Princes, called the House or Family of the *Almoravides*, with that of the Race of the *Almohades* is this which followeth,

## The Kings, or Miramomolims of MOROCCO.

A.C.

1068

1. *Tefin*, *Tefifin*, or *Telephine*, the first of the *Almoravides* that reigned in *Africa*.
2. *Jeseph*, surnamed *Telephine*, the Son of *Tefin*, founded *Morocco*, subdued the Kingdom of *Fesse*, and added the *Elit* of the *Moor* in *Spain* unto his Dominions, *An. 1091*.
3. *Hali*, the Son of *Jeseph*.
4. *Abu-Hali*, the Son of *Hali*, supposed to be the Publisher of the works now extant in the name of *Avicenna*, compiled at his command

by some of the most learned *Arabian* Doctors: vanquished and slain by

5. *Abdelmun*, or *Abdel-Munem*, the first of the *Almohades* of obscure Parentage, but raised to great power by the practices of *Almohade*, a juggling Prophet of those times, that he overthrew the King, and obtained the Kingdom of *Almoravides* both in *Spain*, and *Africa*, *An. 1150*. to which he also added the Realm of *Tunis* and *Cairwan*.

6. *Jo-*

6. *Joseph II.* or *Aben Joseph*, the Son of *Abdelmon*.
7. *Jacob*, or *Aben-Jacob*, surnamed *Almanfor*, a puffed and prudent Prince, of whom much before: Son of *Joseph II.*
8. *Mahomet*, surnamed *Ensafor*, or the *Green*, the Brother of *Almanfor*. Discomited by the *Christians* of Spain, at the Battle of *Sierra Morena*, An. 1214. lost his Dominions, there being slain in this Battle 200000 of the *Moors*, as some Writers say; who add; that the *Spaniards* for two days together burnt no other Fowl but the Pikes, Lances, and Arrows of their slaughtered Enemies, yet could not consume the one half of them.
9. *Caid Arrax*, Nephew of *Mahomet Ensafor*, by his Son *Baxaf*: slain at the Siege of *Tremezzin*, a Castle of *Tremesin*, which was held against him.
10. *Almoracda*, a Kinsman of *Caid Arrax*, ousted of his Estate, and slain by *Badebus*, of the same house of the *Almoracides*.
11. *Badebus*, the last of the house of the *Almoracides*, settled in his estate by the aid and valour of *Jacob Aben-Joseph* the new King of *Fesse*:

but dealing faithlessly and ungratefully with him, he was warred on by the said *Jacob Ben-Joseph*, vanquished and slain in battle; the sovereignty by that means translated unto those of the *Marine* Family, An. 1270. or thereabouts.

But before I proceed further with this *Marine* Family, I must again look back upon *Mahomet Ensafor*, whom I conceive (the computation of the time being so agreeable) to be the *Admiral* *Mormelius* mentioned by *Matthew Paris*, to whom our King *John*, An. 1214. is said to have sent such a degenerate and unchristian Embassy, which strange name of *Admiral* *Mormelius*, was by that good Writer unhappily flumbled at instead of *Miramonim* (which also is corrupted from *Amir Elmunim*, that is to say, *Princeps Fideium*: An Attribute which the great Kings of the *Saracen-Moors* did much affect, and retained it long time amongst them. The Story this, King *John* being overlaid by his *Baron* Wars, and the invasions of the *French*, sent Embassadors to this great Prince (then ruling over a great part of Spain and Barbary) for aid against them offering to hold his Kingdom of him; and to receive withall the Law of *Mahomet*. The *Moor* exceedingly offended at it, told the Embassadors, that he had lately read the Book of *Paul's* Epistles which he liked so well, that he was hence to choose a Religion, he would have embraced *Christianity* before any other: But every man (saith he) ought to die in his own Religion; the greatest thing which he disliked in that Apostle, being (as he said) the changing of the *Faith* in which he was born. This said, he called unto him *Robert* of *London* Clerk, one of the Embassadors (a man ill choise for such an Errand, if the tale be true,) of whom he demanded the Form of the *English* Government, the situation and wealth of the Country, the manners of the People, the life and person of the King: in which being satisfied, he grew into such a dislike of that King, that ever after he abhorred the mention of him. This is the substance of the story in *Matthew Paris*: But you must know he was a Monk, to which brood of men King *John* was held for a mortal Enemy, and therefore this Relation not to pass for Gospel.

But whatsoever opinion King *John* might have of the power of the King to whom 'tis possible enough he might send for aid, certain it is, that he was grown so low in his

Reputation, after the loss of that great Barrel in *Sierra Morena*, that not only the *Spanish Moors* withdrew their Obedience from him (as a Prince unable to support them, but those of *Affrick* did revolt also from the Crown of *Morocco*) extremely weakened by that blow) after his decease, For *Gonsalves Aben Zein* of the house of *Abdallah*, seized upon *Tremesin*, in the time of *Caid Arrax* his Successor: as *Bucar Aben Merin* of the noble *Marine* Family (descended from a *Christian* stock) did the like at *Fez*. Settled in his estate by the vanquishment of *Almoracda* the *Miramonim*, he left it to *Hajia* his Son, under the Governance and protection of a Brother of his called *Jacob Ben-Joseph*. But the young Prince dying shortly after, left his new Kingdom to his Uncle: who aiding *Badebus*, (before mentioned) dispossessed *Almoracda* of the Realm of *Morocco*: and afterwards having just cause of quarrel against this *Badebus*, invaded his dominions, overcame and slew him; and once again transferred the Imperial Seat from *Morocco* to *Fez*. In him began the Empire of the *Marine* Family, who held their Residence in *Fez*, as the first Seat of their Power; *Morocco* being governed by an under-King, the rest of the Provinces of that Kingdom Causued unto several States, the Sea-coasts in some tract of time being gained by the *Portugals*. And in his Line (but with great confusions) the Royal Dignity remained till the year 1500, and somewhat after. Three only were of note in the course of business, that is to say, 1. *Jacob Ben-Joseph*, the Advancer of the *Marine* Family to the Realm of *Morocco*; the Establisher thereof in that of *Fesse*; and of great power and influence in the affairs of the *Moors* in Spain, where he held *Algaraz* and *Tariff*, Towns of great importance: slain treacherously by one of his familiar Friends, at the siege of *Tremesin*. 2. *Aben-Joseph* the second, a younger Son of the first *Joseph* (the issue of *Bucal* his elder Brother being quite extinct) succeeded after *Aben-Joseph*, the sixth of the *Marine* Family in the Throne of his Fathers and had added thereto the Realm of *Tremesin*, if not diverted by the revolt of *Abdallah* his eldest Son, continually in Arms against him. 3. *Albasen*, the Son of this *Aben-Joseph*, and the eighth of the *Marine* Family, who after a siege of 30 months took the City of *Tremesin*, and with that the Kingdom. But not so fortunate in his Wars against the *Christian* Kings of Spain against whom he led an Army of 40000 Foot, and 70000 Horse, with all other necessaries: but vanquished by the two Kings of *Castile* and *Portugal*, with far lesser Forces; (their Army consisting but of 25000 Foot, and 14000 Horse) at the River of *Saladnot* far from *Tariff*, An. 1340. Deported soon after his return by his Son *Albasen*, who lost all which his Father and the first of the *Aben-Josephs* had gained in Spain; their Empire after this declining even *Affrick* it felt: the Kingdom of *Tremesin*, and the greatest part of the now Kingdom of *Tunis*, withdrawing themselves from their obedience in the East parts of *Barbary*, as the *Portugals* prevailed upon them in the West. The Kingdom of the *Marine* thus approaching near its fatal Period, it fortune about the year 1508, that *Mahomet Ben-Amet*, a Native of *Daza*, in the farther *Nimidia* or *Biledulgerid*, pretending a Descent from their Prophet *Mahomet*, caused himself to be called *Xeriff*, the name by which the Kindred and Successors of that *Impostor* use to call themselves; and being a poor Hermit only (with which *Mumtchouky* and the high opinion of their Sanctity, this people have from time to time been extremely fooled) plotted to make his Sons the chief Princes of *Mauritania*. To this end he sent them in Pilgrimage to *Mecch*, whence they returned with such an opinion of Sanctity, that *Mahomet* King of *Fesse*, made *Amet* the second of them Governor of the famous

famous Collage of *Amadorach*; the youngest called *Mahomet*, Tutor to his Children; the eldest named *Abdel*, staying at home with his Father, to expect the issue of the War undertaken by the other two against the *Portugals*. In those days the *Portugals*, grievously infested the Provinces of the Realm of *Morocco*; to repress whose incursions, *Mahomet* and *Amet* obtained Commission, though much opposed therein by *Muley* the Kings Brother, who told him how unsafe to trust to an armed hypocriticalising him; that if they once came unto any power (which under colour of Religion they might quickly raise) it would not be easy to suppress them. But this good counsel was rejected, and the War

went forward. Furnished with an Army, they discomfited *Lopes Barriga*, Commander of the *Portugal* Forces under King *Emanuel*, compell that King to abandon all his footing there; they subdued *Ducala*, *Sus*, and *Hea*, three Provinces of the Realm of *Morocco*; enter that City, payson the tributary King, and salute *Amet* King thereof by the name of the *Xeriff* of *Morocco*, investing *Mahomet* the other Brother in the Kingdom of *Sus*. In the career of their Successes died the King of *Fesse*; and *Amet* his Successor, an improvident young Prince, confirms his *Quondam*-Tutors in their new Elites, conditioned they should hold of him as the Lord in chief, and pay him the accustomed Tributes.

## The Xeriffs of MOROCCO.

- A.C. 1. *Amet* denied both Tribute and Superiority to the King of *Fez*, whom he overthrew in a fer Field; and was after vanquished and dispossessed of his Kingdom, (upon some quarrel breaking out) by his Brother *Mahomet*.
- 1544 2. *Mahomet* King of *Sus*, having got the Kingdom of *Morocco*, united *Fesse* unto it also by the vanquishment of *Amur* the King thereof; slain after all his Victories by the *Turks* of his Guard.
- 1557 3. *Abdalla*, the Son of *Mahomet*.
- 1572 4. *Abdalla II.* Son of the former, had twelve Brothers, of which he slew ten, *Hamet* being spared by reason of his supple simplicity, and *Abdelmelech* escaping to the *Turks*.
5. *Mahomet II.* Son of *Abdalla* the Second, expelled by *Abdelmelech* and the *Turks*, fled to *Sebastian* King of *Portugal*, who together with the two Competitors were slain in one day at the battle of *Alcazar Guet*, Anno 1578.
- 1578 6. *Hamet II.* the Brother of *Abdalla* the 2d. who added parts of *Libya* and *Nimidia* to the Realm of *Morocco*, not absolutely subdued before.
- 1603 7. *Muley Sheek*, the eldest Son of *Hamet*, opposed in his succession by *Boferes* and *Sidan*, his two younger Brethren, in which war he died; as did also *Boferes* his Brother. From whom *Abdalla*, the Son of *Muley Sheek* had regained *Morocco*.
- 1607 8. *Sidan* the third Son of *Hamet*, immediately on the death of his Father, caused himself to be proclaimed King of *Fez* (where he was with his Father when he died) and having won

*Morocco* from *Abdalla*, the Son of *Muley Sheek*, became Master of that Kingdom also. Stripped afterwards of *Fesse* and *Morocco* both, by the opposite Factions, distressed by *Hamet Ben Abdalla* a Religious Hermit, who hoped to get all for himself; and aided by *Side Hean* one of like hypocrisy, who seemed to aim but at a Limb of that great Estate, by whose assistance he was once more possessed of *Morocco*. These tumults on the Land being pacified in long tract of time, and the Country brought to some degree of peace and quietness, (though never absolutely reduced under his Command, as in former times;) a Rabble of Pirates nest themselves in *Salla*, a Port-Town of the Realm of *Fesse*: creating thence great mischief to him both by Sea and Land; and not to him only, but to all the Merchants of other Countreys, whose business led them towards those Seas. Unable to suppress them for want of Shipping, he craved Aid of King *Charles* of England: by whose assistance he became Master of the Port, destroyed the Pyrats, and sent Three hundred *Christian* Captives for a present to his Sacred Majesty, An. 1632. Nor staid he here; but aiming at the general good of Trade, and Mankind, he sent a Letter to his Majesty to lend him the like Aid against those of *Algiers*, who did as much infect the *Mediterranean*, as the Pirates of *Salla* did the Ocean. The tenor of which Letter, as favouring of more piety than could be possibly expected from a *Mahometan*, and much conducing to the honour of his Sacred Majesty, I have here subjoyned.

## The Letter of the King of MOROCCO to the King of ENGLAND.

When these our Letters shall be so happy as to come to your Majesties sight, I wish the Spirit of the righteous God may so direct your mind, that you may joyfully embrace the Message I send; presenting to you the means of exalting the Majesty of God, and your own Power amongst men. The Royal power allotted to us makes us common Servants to our Creator; then, of those People whom we govern: So that observing the duties we owe to God, we deliver Blessings to the World, in providing for the Publick good of our States, we magnify the honour of God, like the Celestial Bodies, which though they have much reversion, yet serve only to the Benefit of the World. It is the excellency of our Office, to be Instruments, whereby happiness is delivered unto the Nations. Pardon me Sir, This is not to infringe, (for I know I speak to one of a more clear and quick sight than myself) but I speak, this, because God hath pleased to grant me a happy Victory over some part of those rebellious Pyrats, that have so long mangled the peaceful Trade of Europe; and hath presented further occasion to root out the Generation of those who have been so pernicious to the good of our Nations: I mean, since it hath pleased God to be so auspicious, to our beginnings in the Conquest of Salla, that we might join and proceed in hope of like success in the war against Tunis, Algier, and other places (Dens and Receptracles for the inhumane Villanies of those who abhor Law and Government.) Herein whilst we interrupt the corruption of malignant Spirits of the World, we shall glorify the great God, and perform a Duty that will shine as glorious as the Sun and Moon, which all the Earth may see and reverence. A work that shall ascend as sweet as the perfume of the most precious Odours, in the Nostils of the Lord. A work grateful and happy to man. A work whose memory shall be revered so long, as there shall be any that delight to bear the Alliance of Honour and magnanimous Spirit; that shall last as long as there be any remaining amongst men that love and honour the piety and virtue of Noble minds. This Alliance I here willingly present to you, whose piety and virtue equal the greatness of your power, that we, who are Servants to the Great and mighty GOD, may be in hand triumph in the glory which this Alliance presents unto us. Now because the Islands which you govern, have been ever famous for the unconquered strength of their Shipping, I have sent this my trusty Servant and Ambassador, to know whether in your Princely wisdom you shall think fit to assist me with such Forces by Sea, as shall be answerable to those I provide by Land: which if you please to grant, I doubt not but the Lord of Hosts will protect and assist those that fight in so glorious a Cause. Now ought you to think this strange, that I, who much reverence the Peace and concord of Nations, should exhort to a War. Your great Prophet CHRIST JESUS was the Lion of the Tribe of JUDAH, as well as the Lord and Giver of Peace: which may signify unto you, that he which is a lover and maintainer of Peace, must always appear with the terror of his Sword, and wading through Seas of blood, must arrive to Tranquillity. This made JAMES your Father, of glorious memory, so happily renowned amongst all Nations.

It was the most noble fame of your Princely virtues, which refunds to the utmost corners of the Earth, that persuaded me to invite you to partake of that blessing, wherein I boast myself most happy. I wish God may heap the Riches of his Blessing on you, increase your happiness with your days, and hereafter perpetuate the greatness of your Name in Ages.

Such was the Letter of that King; whose motion in all probability might have took effect, had not the Troubles, which not long after brake out in Scotland, put off the design. And therefore laying by the thoughts of his future purposes, let us take a view of the Revenues and Forces of this mighty Empire; before the late distractions made it less considerable. And first for the Revenues of it, the Xeriff are the absolute Lords of the whole Estate, and of his Subjects Goods and Bodies. The tenth and first Fruits of all sorts of Fruits, Corn and Cattel, he demands of course; though many times contented in the name of the first fruits, with one in twenty. The fifth part of a Ducat he receiveth for every Acre of Land throughout his Dominions; the other four parts for every Fire, and as much for every Head, whether Male or Female, which is above fifteen years of age. In Merchandise he receiveth of every Native two in the hundred, of an Alien ten; and hath a large Impost also upon every Mill. When any of his greater officers or Judges die, he is sole Heir of all their Goods; and yet advanceth great sums by the sale of those Offices. And in the levying of such Taxes as are extraordinary, he useth to demand more than he means to take; that the People finding him content to abate somewhat of his Due, may think themselves to be fairly dealt with.

As for their Forces, it is evident in matter of Fact; that Abdulla the first, at the liege of Mazagan, a Town held by the Portuguese, An. 1562, had no less than 200000 men; and that Abdel-Melech at the Battal of Alazar Guez, against King Sebastian, had 40000 Horse, and 80000 Foot, besides Voluntaries, and wild Arabians; it being supposed that he might have raised 30000 Horse more (notwithstanding the strong part which was made against him) had he thought it necessary. It is said also that Abdulla kept in constant pay 60000 Horse of which 15000 were quartered in the Realm of Sw, 25000 in Morocco, and the other 20000 in the Kingdom of Fesse; out of which he called 5000 of the best and ablest for the guard of his person, well mounted, and as richly furnished. Besides these he hath bodies of Horse in continual readiness, maintained according to the manner of the Turkish Timariots; and by Pensions given amongst the Chiefs of the Arabians, who live like Outlaws in the Mountains, and up and down in the Skirts of this Country, is furnished at his need with Supplies from them. Well stored with Ammunition also, there being 45 Quintals of Gunpowder laid up monthly in his famous Arsenal at Morocco; and yet not able to stay long (not above 3 months) upon any action, in regard that all his Souldiers live on his daily allowance; which maketh them, when his Provisions are consumed, to dissolve and scatter.

The

## THE ISLES OF BARBARY.

THE ISLES OF BARBARY, which make up the fifth and last part thereof, are situate near the African shores of the Mediterranean, assigned by Ptolemy to the Province of Africa Propria. In number sixteen: 1. Hydrus, 2. Calabre, 3. Dracoutis, now called Chelli, 4. Aegynus, by Strabo called Aegynus, and now Guetta, 5. Larnesia, now Mellium, 6. Lapedusa, now Lampedusa, 7. Mesyrus, 8. Pontis, 9. Gaia; all of little note. 10. Insula Glauconis, with a City of the same name in it, now called Goza, and subject to the Knights of Malta. 11. Aethusa, by some called Aegusa, and consequently mistaken for Aegator, which lieth near Sicily. Of more note are the five that follow: Viz.

1. COSTRA, now called Pantalaria, equally distant from Africa and the Isle of Sicily, 60 miles from each. In length about thirty miles, and in breadth not above ten: Mountainous for the most part, and a full of black kind of Stone; the soil not very proper for Corn, and void of Rivers; but plentiful of Figs, Melons, and Cotton-Wool; well stored with Kine and Oxen, but without Horses. The people poor; by Religion Christians, and subject to the King of Spain: very good Swimmers of both Sexes, and in their speech and habit coming near the Moors. It hath a Town in it of the same name with the Island, situate on the Sea-side in the Northern part of it; defended with a very strong Castle.

2. CERCINA, now with little difference called Carthana, situate near the Coast of Africa, at the entrance (as it were) of the lesser Syrtis: in length twenty five miles, in breadth half as much, but in some places not above five. Exceeding fruitful in old times, able to furnish (as they did) the wants of Caesar and his Army, when he warred in Africa; Magni frumenti numero Cercine inventa, navem onerariam, quorum ibi satis magna copia, complet, atque in castra ad Caesarem mittit, are the words of the History. It hath a Town of the same name. Of no great note in way of Story, but for an handsome piece of Wit here shewed by Amibal; who flying from Carthage, met here some Merchants of that City, who had there come shipping in the Haven; and standing in some doubt, left by their discovery of his flight, he might be pursued, pretended a Sacrifice to Hercules the Tyrian Deity, to which he invited all the Sailors, and borrowed all their Sails to set up a Tent for their Entertainment; which having got into his hands, and leaving them asleep, he made on for Africa; secure enough not to be pursued, until out of danger.

3. LOTOPHAGITIS, now called Zerby, and by some Gerbe, is situate in the bottom of the Bay of Tripolis, divided from the Main Land by a narrow Ford. The Island full of Bogs and Marishes, without other Water, and in the midst of it somewhat hilly; indifferently fruitful, yielding Dates, Olives, Barley, Mill, and the like Commodities; inhabited by 30000 men, dwelling in low Cottages, and but simply apparelled: at had in it anciently two Cities, 1. Monix, which sometimes gave name unto the Island, called Monix by some elder Writers. 2. Gerrapolis, both now destroyed: insinuated whereof there is now one of more note than the rest, called by the same name with the Island and fortified with a very strong Castle. Subject unto the Turks, but governed by a poor King of its own. Both Fort and Island taken by the Christian Fleet, in the year 1559, for the King of Spain, to whom Caravanus the King thereof did submit himself

conditioning to pay the yearly Tribute of 6000 Crowns, one Camel, four Ostriches, four Sparrow-Hawks, and four Faulcons. But the Christians were scarce warm in their new possession, when besieged in the Castle by Piali Bassa, to whom after some extremities the were fain to yield: these perishing in this unfortunate Action, by Sword, Famine, and Sicknes, 15000 Christians.

4. GAULOS, or GAUDUS, by the inhabitants called Gaudica, is distant about five miles from the Isle of Malta; to the Knights whereof it doth belong: given to them by the bounty of Charles the Fifth. The Island 30 miles in compass, well watered, and very fruitful. So great an Enemy to Serpents, and all venomous Creatures, that they neither breed here, nor will live here, brought from other places. The People Christians, but they speak the same Language with the neighbouring Saracens. The chief Town is of the same name with the Island, beautified with a capacious Haven, lying betwixt the West and South, and strongly fortified. Cruelly pillaged by the Turks in the year 1551, who carried hence 3000 Souls into endless Thraldom.

5. MALTA, the chief of the African Islands, lieth betwixt Tripolis in Barbary, and the Isle of Sicily; distant from this last about 60 miles, and from the other 180. In circuit about 60 miles, in length 20, and in breadth 12. Situate in the beginning of the fourth Climate, and eighth Parallel; so that the longest day in Summer is but 14 hours.

Anciently it was called Melite, and by that name occurred not only in Ptolemy and other Writers, but also in the Book of the Acts, in the Story of St. Paul's Shipwreck; this being the place where he and all his company were cast on Lands in memory whereof was built a little Chapel in the place of his Landing. So called most probably, *ante Melitensem*, from the abundance of Honey which it yielded in former times; Cicero charging it on Verres, that he came home loaded with 400 measures of Honey, and store of Melitensian Raiments; Jam non quero unde 400 amphoras melis habueris, unde tantum Melitensium Vestium, faith that famous Orator. The joyning of which two together, declare that he had robbed the same place for both; this Island being a near Neighbour of Sicily, which Verres governed then as Pretor. Nor is it strange, that an Island of the Coast of Africa, and using for the most part the Phœnician or Punic Language, should borrow its Appellation from the Greek; many of that Nation coming hither from the Isle of Sicily, and inhabiting here; and the whole Island sometimes subject to the power of Sicilian Greeks, though for the most part under the command of the State of Carthage.

It is situate wholly on a Rock, being not above three foot deep in earth; by consequence of no great fertility, the want of which is supplied with the plenties of Sicily. Yet have they here no small store of Pomegranates, Citrons, Oranges, Melons, and other excellent Fruits, both for taste and colour. They have also great abundance of Cotton-Wool (Gossypium the Latins call it) which they sow as we our Corn; the growth and ordering of which Wool, hath been shewn already, when we were in Syria. For the commodity of this Wool, and the Cloth made of it, the Romans had this Island in great esteem, thinking themselves happy when they gained it from the Carthaginians.

The natural Inhabitants of it are said to be churlish and uncivil; of the African Language and complexion, but followers of the Church of Rome, the Religion whereof these Knights are sworn to defend. The Women fair, but hating company, and going covered. The whole number

of both Sexes, supposed to be 20000, possessed of 90 Villages, and four Cities. Places of note. 1. *Malta*, so called by the name of the Island, in the middle of which it is situated; built on an hill, but counted of no great importance, the strength and safety of the Island lying in the defence of the Shores and Havens. 2. *St. Hermes*, a strong Castle at the point of a long *Languet*, or tongue of Rock, thrusting out betwixt the two best Havens, both which it notably defendeth. Took by the *Turks*, Anno 1565, but at no cheaper rate than 2000 shot of Cannon, and the loss of 10000 of their men. 3. *Valetta*, situate on the same *Languet*, not far from the Castle of *S. Hermes*, (or rather lying close unto it) extended the whole breadth of the said *Languet*, from the one Sea to the other; and so commanding both the Havens. Built since the departure of the *Turks* unpregibly fortified, and called thus by the name of *Valetta* the Great Master, who so gallantly repulsed their Fury. In this Town the Great Master hath his Palace, and the Knights their several *Alberges* or Seminaries; all very fair and handsome Buildings. 4. *Borgo*, a little Town or City on another *Languet*, lying in the Eastern Haven; at the extremity of which Promontory in a demy Island stands the strong Castle of *S. St. Angelo*, built on a Rock, opposite to *Valetta*, on the other side of the Haven, and found impregnable by the *Turks*; who in vain besieged it. 6. *Isola*, a small City, and better deserving the name of a Town, situate in another Promontory on the South of the other, defended on the West-side by a strong Platform, at the point of the *Foreland*; and on the East-side, by the impregnable Castle of *S. Michael*; in vain assailed by the *Turks*, who on their ill success at the Siege hereto, gave over the Enterprize, and failed home.

The People of this Island originally were a *Tyrian* or *Phœnician* Colony, but intermixt in tract of time with some *Greek* Plantations, coming hither out of *Sicily*, as before was said. For the most part dependant on the Fortunes of *Carthage*, afterwards of *Rome*, till subdued by the *Saracens*: by the *Spaniards* taken from the *Moor*; and by *Charles* the Fifth given to the Knights of *Rhodes*, not long before expelled thence by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, Anno 1522. These Knights are in number 1000; of whom 500 are always to be resident in the Island. The other 500 are dispersed through *Christendom*, at their several Seminaries in *France*, *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Germany*; and at any Summons, are to make their personal appearance. These Seminaries (*Alberges* they call them) are in number seven, viz. one of *France* in general, one of *Avignon*, one of *Provence*, one of *Castille*, one of *Aragon*, one of *Italy*, and one of *Germany* over every one of which, they have a *Grand Prior*, who in the Country where he

liveth, is of great reputation. An eighth *Seminary* they had in *England*, till the suppression of it by *Henry* the Eighth; yet they have some one or other, to whom they give the title of *Grand Prior of England*. Concerning the original and riches of these Knights, we have spoken when we were in *Palestine* now a word or two only of their places, and the Election of their *Great Master*. None are admitted into the Order, but such as can bring a Testimony of their *Gentry* for six Descents: and when the Cereemonies of their admission (which are many) are performed, they swear to defend the Church of *Rome*, to obey their *Superiors*, to live upon the Revenues of their Order only, and withal, to live chastly. Of these there be 16 of great Authority, (*Counsellors of State* we may fitly call them) called the *Great Crosses*; out of whom the Officers of their order, as the *Marshal*, the *Admiral*, the *Chancellor*, &c. are chosen: and who, together with the *Master*, punish such as are convict of any Crime. 1. By degrading him. 2. By strangling him. And 3. By throwing him into the Sea. Now when the *Great Master* is dead, they suffer no Vessel to go out of this Island till another be Elected, lest the *Pope* should intrude on their Election; which is performed in this manner: The several *Seminaries* nominate two Knights and two also are nominated for the *Engliff*: these 16 from amongst themselves choose eight; these eight choose a Knight, a Priest, and a Friar-cervant; and they three, out of the 16 *Great Crosses*, elect the *Great Master*. The *Great Master* being thus chosen, is titled (though but a Friar) *The most Illustrious and most Reverend Prince, The Lord Friar N. N. Great Master of the Hospital of S. John of Jerusalem, Prince of Malta, Gaulles, and Goza*. Far different I assure you, from that of the first Masters of this Order, who called themselves only *Servants to the poor Servitors of the Hospital of Jerusalem*; or that of the Master of the *Temple*, who was only entitled, *The humble Minister of the poor Knights of the Temple*.

This Island is conceived to yield to the *Great Master* the yearly Rent of 1000 *Ducats*, the greatest part whereof is sent out of *Cotton-mool*: besides which, he hath towards the maintaining of his Estate, the tenth part of the prizes which are won from the *Turks*; and certain thousands of Crowns yearly out of the Treasure of the Order, which is great and rich; and one of the best *Commanderies* in every Nation. And for the scouring of the Seas and securing of their Harbours, they have many good Gallies, each of them able to contain 500 Souldiers, and to carry 16 pieces of Ordnance, with which they make Excursions many times to the Coasts of *Greece*.

And so much for BARBARY.

## MOUNT

# MOUNT ATLAS.

IN our way from *Barbary* to *Libya Interior*, we must pass over *Mount Atlas*, a ridge of Hills of exceeding great height, and of no small length. So high, that the top, or *Summit* of it is above the Clouds, at least so high, that the eye of man is not able to discern the top of it. *Extat in hoc Mari mons cui nomen Atlas*, (*Saith Herodotus*) *is sublimis, ut ad illius verticem oculi mortuorum pervenire non possint*. Yet notwithstanding, it is always covered with Snow in the heats of Summer. Difficult of ascent, by reason of the sharp and craggy precipices, which occur in many places of it; the rest were plainer and more even, of such wondrous steepness, that the precipices of the Rocks form the steepest way. Full of thick Woods, and yielding to the Countreys on the North side of it, the greatest part of the Rivers which refresh and moisten them: and where it bordereth on the proper, or *Roman Africa*, of such self-fertility, that it affordeth excellent fruits of its natural growth, not planted, grafted, or inoculated by the hand of man. The beginning of it on the shores of the Western Seas, which from hence have the name of the *Atlantic Ocean*; in the 26 Degree and 30 Minutes of the Northern Latitude and passing on directly Eastward, draw near unto the Borders of *Egypt*, part of *Marmarica*, or the *Roman Libya*, namely interposing. It is now called *Anobis*, and *Monte Clavio*: And took the name of *Atlas*, from *Atlas* King of *Mauritania*, who dwelt at the bottom of this Mountain; famed by the Poets to be turned into this Hill by *Perseus*, and the head of *Medusa*, Of the Daughters of this King, their golden Fruit, and the famous Gardens of the *Hesperides*, we have spoke already, though some remove the place of their habitation more into the West (then by us disposed of) and others into certain Islands of the Western Ocean, which we shall meet withal hereafter. He was said to have been a man of such wondrous height, that the Heavens rested on his Shoulders; of which, when weary, he discharged his burden on the Shoulders of *Hercules*; the ground of the fiction is taken from the height of the Mountain, the top whereof seemeth to touch the Sky; or from his extraordinary knowledge in *Astronomy* (as the times then were) whereby he came to be acquainted with the motions of the Stars and Planets; in which Knowledge he instructed *Hercules*, when he came unto him. But for the more *Authentic* description of it, take it thus from *Virgil*:

--- Jungs, volens apicem & latera ardua cernis  
Atlantis duci, Calum qui vertice fulcit;  
Atlantis, celsum afflue cui nubibus atri  
Pinifera caput, & vento pulsatur & imbri.  
Nix humeros infusa tegit, non flamma mento  
Precipitant sonu, & glacie riget horrida barba.

Which may be Englished in these words:

Then flying, he the top and sides descends  
Of *Atlas*, whose proud head supports the Skies.  
*Atlas*, whose Piny head with Clouds inclosed,  
Is to the storms of Wind and Rain exposed.

Now hides the Snow his Arms, now tumbleth down  
Upon his Chin; his Beard with Ice o'er-grown.

## OF LIBYA INTERIOR.

LIBYA INTERIOR is bounded on the North, with *Mount Atlas*, by which parted from *Barbary* and *Cyrenæa*; on the East, with *Libya Marmarica*, interposed betwixt it and *Egypt*, and part of *Æthiopia Superior*, or the *Habassine Empire*; on the South with *Æthiopia Inferior*, and the Land of the *Negros*; and on the West with the main *Atlantic Ocean*.

The reason of the name we have seen before, given to this Country in regard of its contiguities and resemblance to the other *Libya*; or else became descended from the Children of *Lebanus*, by which that Country was first planted. For of King *Lybia*, or Queen *Libya* (the Daughter of *Enaphis*, and *Cassiopea*) and other the like fictions of the *Greeks*, I shall take no notice. Distinguished from the other by the addition of *Interior*, as lying more within the main Land of *Africa*, the other being partly a *Maritime* Country.

Of the nature of the Soil and people we shall speak anon, when we come to take a view of its several parts. Look we now on it as it stood in the time of the *Romans*: when, though not so well travelled, or discovered, as in these last times: yet have we more particulars of it, as to the names and situation of the Rivers, Mountains, and chief Towns, than any of our late Writers have preferred to us. The Rivers of most note, 1. *Salabus*, 2. *Chusirius*, 3. *Ophiodus*, 4. *Nobis*, 5. *Maffia*, 6. *Sobus*, 7. *Dardanus*, 8. *Stachiris*, and 9. *Mathisalus*; all of them paying tribute to the Western or *Atlantic Ocean*. Mountains of most note, 1. *Mandrus*, out of which floweth the River *Salabus*, 2. *Sagapala*, which gives being to the River *Sobus*, 3. *Rysadus*, from whence *Stachiris*, 4. the Mountain called *Deorum Carrus* (of which more anon) whence *Maffisalus*, and *Mount Capus*, out of which *Dardanus* have their first Originals. Then there are, 5. *Mount Ufur-gala*, and 6. *Mount Gignis*, from the first of which the River *Bagradus*, and from the last that of *Cynophus* do derive their waters: and passing through the breaches of *Atlas* (of which these Mountains seem to be some dismembered Limbs) cross the whole breadth of the *Roman Africa*, to make themselves a way to the *Mediterranean*. Besides these, more within the Land, we find the famous Rivers of *Gir* and *Niger*: of which the first maketh the two great Lakes of *Nubis* and *Cleobandus*: the second those as great, or greater, called *Nigritus*, and the Lake of *Libya*. Which makes me wonder by the way, that in a Country so well watered as this seems to be, our Modern Writers should complain of such want of water: as if there were neither Spring, nor River, nor Pond, nor Lake, nor any thing to moisten and refresh the Earth, but the dews of Heaven, or some Pits of salt and brackish water not worth the tasting. *Phrynia* must either be mistaken, which I hardly think; or our late Travellers not so punctual in their observations, which I rather credit: or else the Rivers which were here in the time of my Author, in his *arenarum vagitibus diffunduntur*, must be dried



up and swallowed in these sandy Defarts, as *Magnus* telleth us; finally there hath happened some later conflagration than that of *Phœnix*, to which the want of water may be better attributed than it was to his. Of which thus the Poet:

*Hinc fallax est Libya, raptis humeribus æstu,  
Arida—* Which *Geo. Sandys* thus rendreth;  
A sandy Defart Libya thus became,  
Her full veins emptied by the thirsty flame.

Places of note and name in those elder times, 1. *Salathier* on the River to named, 2. *Bagaxi*, 3. *Jazabih*, and 4. *Babiba*, all honoured with the name of Cities. 5. *Gamar*, 6. *Gira*, and *Nigra*, the Metropoles of their several Nations. Then there were two Havens of some good esteem, the one called *Magnus Portus*, the other *Portus Perphobus*, besides 43 other Towns and Cities (twelve of these on the banks of the River *Niger*) whose names and situation do occur in *Pliny*, which shews the Country not to be of uninhabitable and void of people, as was pretended by some other (but less diligent) Writers.

Nations of most note in it in the former times, were 1. the *Getulii* on the back of *Mauritania*, a resolute and unconquered people, *Græci insuperabile bello*, as we find in *Virgil*: 2. the *Garamantes*, dwelling South of *Cyrenæa*, and giving name to a large and spacious Territory, called *Vallis Garamantica*, supposed to be the most remote Nation towards the South, as the *Indians* were towards the East; whence we have *ultra Garamantas & Indos*, in another Poet. 3. the *Pyræi*, an *Ethiopic* Nation, on the South of the River *Gir*: 4. the *Nigritæ*, originally *Ethiopi*ans also, inhabiting on the North of the River *Niger*: 5. the *Odrangidi*, of the same original extraction, possessing the Country between the Mountains *Capha* and *Thala*: 6. the *Perorsii*, dwelling near the Hills called *Deorum Curus*: 7. the *Ménaii*, at the foot of Mount *Thala*: 8. the *Nabæ*, on the West of *Vallis Garamantica*: 9. the *Derbici*, dwelling on the West of the Hill *Aranga*: and 10. the *Pisylli*, placed by *Pliny* amongst the Inhabitants of *Cyrene*: but so near the Borders of this Country, and so far from the Civilities of those Nations which converted either with *Rome* or *Carthage*; that they may more properly be thought to belong to this. Of a Nature so venomous, that they could poison a Snake. Insumuch, that when their Wives were delivered, they would throw their Children amongst a Bed of Serpents, supposing that child to be born of an adulterate bed, the very smell of whose Body would not drive away a whole brood of the like poisonous Vermin. Others there were of less note, that Author calleth *Minores* *Gentes*; many in number, of small fame, and therefore not material to be here inserted; those of most note, the *Africæmer*, (whom some Authors call the *Gampaphantes*) honoured with the Attribute of *Geni Magna*, the greatest as it seems of those lesser Nations. None of them of much note in the way of story, except they were the *Libyans*, which are so famous in *Herodotus* for an expedition they made against the *South-Wind*. For when this Wind blowing abroad the Hills and Defarts of Sand, had dried up those many pools and waters they had among them; they, to revenge this injury, by common consent armed themselves, and went to fight against him. But they took not the *South-Wind* unprepared. For he mustered up his forces, and encountered them with such a brave volley of Sand, that he overwhelmed and slew them all. A better Friend was the North-Wind to the Citizens of *Regium in Libya*, and better was he rewarded for it: for having scattered a mighty Fleet, which *Dionysius* prepared against them, he was by the Common-

Council made free of their City. That part of *Cæsar*'s war which was managed here, we shall hereafter meet with on another occasion.

Thus having took a view of the state of this Country, as it stood of old; we will next look upon it in its present condition; as comprehending the whole Provinces of 1. *Biledalgerid* or *Numidia*, 2. *Libya Deserta*, or *Saraceni*; and 3. a great part of that Country which is now called *Terra Nigritarum*. But because the greatest part of this last Country is to come under another Account; we will here only take the two first into consideration.

### 1. NUMIDIA.

**N**UMIDIA, is bounded on the East, with *Egypt*; on the West, with the *Atlantic* Ocean; on the North, with Mount *Atlas*, which parteth it from *Barbary* and *Cyrene*; on the South, with *Libya Deserta*.

It was thus first called by *John Leo*, an *African* Writer, to whose description of all *Africa* we are much beholdings, because of that resemblance which the people of it have to the old *Numidians*; which is after the custom of the *Nomades*, living without Houses, under their Wagons and Carts, as *Lucan* testifieth of them, thus:

*Nulla domus, pluvibus habitant, migrare per arva  
Mous, atque errare circumcære Penates.*

They dwell in Wains not Houses; and do stray  
Through Fields, and with them lead their Gods  
each way.

And worthily may they owe their Names to them, from whom they borrow so much of their Nature: for the People to this day spend their lives in hunting, and stay but three or four days in a place, as long as the grails will serve the *Camels*. This is the cause why this Country is full peopled, the Towns so small in themselves, and so remote from others. An example herof is *Tesser*, a great City in their esteem, which yet containeth but 400 households, and hath no neighbours within 300 miles of it.

The Country aboundeth with *Dates*, whence it is called *Dalylorum regio*, and in the Arabic *Biledalgerid*, which signifieth also a *Date-Region*. These *Dates* (to speak properly) the fruit of the Palm-Trees, usually growing in hot Countries, of which some are male, some female; the first bringing forth only flowers, the other fruit; and yet the male so beneficial to the increase of the *Dates*, that unless a flowered bough of the male be ingrafted into the female, the *Dates* never prove good, in case they bear any *Dates* at all, as before was noted. This fruit is the chief diet of the people; but this sweet Meat hath few Sauce, for it commonly rotteth their Teeth betimes. As for the Stones of these *Dates*, they feed their Goats with them, whereby they grow fat, and yield store of Milk. The Air herof, of so found a nature, that if a man be troubled with the *French Disease*, he shall there, without any course of Physick find a present Remedy.

The natural Inhabitants of this Country are said to be a base and vile people, Thieves, Murderers, Treacherous, and ignorant of all things; feeding most commonly on *Dates*, Barley, and Carrion; accounting Bread a Diet for their Festival days. But the *Arabians*, who are intermingled with them, in most part of the Country, affirmed to be (comparatively with the Natives) ingenious, liberal, and civil. The Garments of these *Numidians*, of the coarsest Cloth, to shew, that they cover not half the Body: the richer sort, distinguished by a *Tucker* of Blue Cotton with wide Sleeves. Their Steeds are *Camels*, which they ride on without stirrup, or so much as a saddle; a leather, thrust through

through an hole made in the nose of the *Camel*, serves them for a *Bridle*; and to save the charge of *Spurs*, they make use of a goad. Their Religion, *Mahometism*, to which pertained *Christianity* having once had some footing here; in the year 710; the *Azawaghi* and other people of those parts then subdued by the *Saraceni*: who held them for a Nation of so little reckoning, that no man of account amongst them would defend so low as to be their Princes but left them to be ruled as in former times, by the *Chiefs* or Heads of their several *Clans*.

The chief River which is left, hath the name of *Dara*, and possibly enough may be the *Daradus* of *Pliny*. The rest which are mentioned in that Author, rising out of Mount *Atlas*, and falling thence this way, finding these barren Wildernesses to afford them the readiest *Channels*, are trained along by the allurements of the Sands; and are either swallowed up in great Lakes; or being too liberal to the thirsty Sands in their way to the Sea, die at the last for thirst in the midst of the *Deserts*.

The Principal of their Provinces (if capable of a distinction into better and worse) 1. *DARA*; more cultivated than the rest, because of the River running thorough it, whence it hath its name: 250 miles in length, indifferently fruitful, where the River doth overflow and water it; and of so different a nature from all the rest, that here the country people have some scattered Villages, the better for their several *Capitels*. 2. *PESCARA*, so called from the chief Town of it; exceedingly infected with Scorpions; the sting whereof is present death. 5. *FIGHIG*, so called from the chief Town also, inhabited by an industrious and witty people (in respect of the rest) some of which betake themselves to Merchandises; come to the study of their Law, which they study at *Fess*, and grow rich upon it. 4. *TEGORARIN*, a large Region, and well inhabited, better than any except *Dara*; as having in it 90 Castles, so Gentlemen Houses, and 200 Villages. The people wealthy, in regard of the great Trade which they drive with the *Negroes*; and pretty good husbands in managing their land, on which they are forced to lay much toil; and will therefore let some of themselves and their *Cattel*. 5. *BILEDALGERID*, specially so called, abundantly fruitful in *Dates*, whence it had the name; but destitute of Corn, by reason of the extremity of the soil; and yet hath in it many Towns of good name among them. 10. *Tesser*, 6. *Tesser*, 7. *Segelmiff*, 8. *Zeh*, 9. *Tebellati*, and 10. *Fessin*, so called from the chiefest of their Towns and Villages.

Towns of most note both now and in former times, besides those spoken of before, 1. *Timgedit*, in the Province of *Dara*, the birth-place of *Mohomet Ben Amir* and his three Sons, the Founders of the *Xeriffian Empire*. 2. *Tafilaite*, in the said Province, to which place *Mohomet* the second of these Sons, and second King of *Morocco*, of that family, confined his elder Brother *Amir*, having took him prisoner, *Anno* 1544. 3. *Tesser*, a great Town of 400 houses, but so poorly neighboured, that there is no other inhabited place within 300 miles of it but of that before. 4. *Tebellati*, the Inhabitants whereof are very courteous to strangers, whom they entertain at free cost; and choose rather to marry their daughters to them, than to any of the Natives. 5. *Ebnacab*, the most Eastern Town in all this Country, distant about 100 miles from the Borders of *Egypt*. 6. *Debris*, one of the chief Cities of the *Garamantes*, of great renown in former times for the Wells or *Fountains* of the *Sea*. The Water whereof being lukewarm at the *Sea* rising, cooled more and more till noon, and was then very cold, and so continued until midnight; afterwards by degrees growing hotter and hotter; as if it had a natural *Antipathy* with the Sun, hottest when that

was furthest off and cold when nearest. 7. *Mafiche*, seated on a Rock, garisoned by *Jugurth* for a place of refuge, but taken by *Marine* in the prosecution of that War. 8. *Cuspa*, the chief City of all this Tract, said to be built by *Heracles*; but questionable of very great strength; *angustus arenifera vallata*, made inaccessible (saith the Historian) by the thick Sands, and multitude of *Serpents* which were harboured in them; but easily forced by *Marine* in his wars with *Jugurth*, and utterly destroyed by *Cæsar* in his war against *Juba*.

It seems by this, that those people neighbouring Mount *Atlas*, were much at the disposal of the Kings of *Mauritania*, in the times foregoing, and so they have been also in these latter times. For though neglected by the *Romans*, who thought it an high point of wisdom not to extend their Empire beyond that Mountain; yet the *Saraceni* had not long possessed themselves of those parts of *Barbary*, which was in the year 698; but within twelve years (*An* 710.) they subdued this Country, and planted their Religion in it, though not themselves. Nor was *Amir*, the first *Xeriff* of *Morocco*, warm in that estate, when he thought it best for him to secure himself in it by the conquest of this: to whose Successors, the Chiefs of the Tribes herof render some acknowledgments.

### 2. LIBYA DESERTA.

**L**IBYA DESERTA, is bounded on the North with *Numidia*, or *Biledalgerid* towards the South, with the Land of *Negroes* wholly; and on the West with *Gualata*, another Province of these *Negroes*, interposed betwixt it and the *Atlantic*.

The reason of the name of *Libya* we have had before. To which *Deserta* was added upon very good reasons, as well to difference it from the other *Libya*, a Province of *Egypt*, as to express the barren and sandy condition of it: in which respect by the *Arabians* called *Sarra*, signifying, in their language a rude and uninhabitable *Desert*, as this Country is. So truly such, that men may travel in it eight days together without finding Water, or seeing any tree, and no grass at all. The water which they have is drawn out of Pits, exceeding brackish; and many times those Pits so covered with the Sands, that men die for thirst: the *Marchants* therefore carrying their water with them on the backs of *Camels*; which if it fail, they kill their *Camels*, and drink a water which they wring out of their guts. And yet as dangerous and uncomfortable as these *Deserts* be, they are very much travelled by the Merchants of *Fess* and *Tremefin*, trading to *Agades* and *Tombatum*, in the Land of *Negroes*.

The People differ not much from the *Numidians* in shape or qualities; but if a worse quality, it must be the *Libyan*. They did once worship a God called *Pasaphon*, who when he lived, taught divers Birds which he caught, and then set at liberty, to say these words, *viz.* *Pasaphon is a great God*; which the simple people hearing, and admiring at it, afforded him Divine honours. Converted at last to the *Christian* Faith, they remained a while in the profession of the Gospel: exterminated by the *Saraceni*, about the year 710. who having added *Numidia* or *Biledalgerid* to their former conquests, planned their *Superstitions* in this Country also.

This Country is divided (as others into *Provinces*) into five great *Deserts*, to which those of less note are to be referred.

1. *ZANHAGA*, beginning at the Borders of *Gualata*, (interposed betwixt it and the *Atlantic* Ocean) and extending Eastward to the Salt-pits of *Togaza*; having on the South, *Gualata* and *Tombatum* in the Land of *Negroes*; so destitute of water, that there is one pit only at the end

end of each hundred mile, brackish and unwholesome; and in the *Desarts of Asand and Arsan*, which are parts of this, but one in an 150 or 200 miles riding.

2. *ZUENZIGA*, extended from the Salt-pits of *Tegaza* Eastward, to the *Desart of Targa*: bounded on the North with *Sagelmefi* and *Tobelbaty*, *Namidian* Provinces; and on the South, with the *Desart and Gbir and Guber*. So void of water, (especially in that part thereof which is called *Goguda*) that in Nine days Travel there is not so much as one drop to be seen, but what they carry on their Camels.

3. *TARGA*, extended Eastward to the *Desart of Igbiadi*, and reaching from *Tegerasin* in the North, to the *Desart of Agadez* in the South, the best conditioned part of all this Country, well watered, of a temperate Air, and a Soil reasonably fruitful. In length from North to South 300 miles, and liberally strewed with *Manna*, which they gather into little Vessels, and carry to *Agadez* to sell. Mingled in water, or with Potage, it is very cooling & drank of in their Feasts, as a special dainty.

4. *LEMBTA*, extendeth from the *Desarts of Igbiadi*, unto that of *Bordau*.

5. *BORDEA*, which reacheth to the borders of *Nubia*. Of these two there is little to be said in general, but that this last was lately discovered by one *Hamara* guide to a *Caravan* of Merchants who blinded with the Sands, wandered out of his way, and causing Sand to be given him at every twenty miles end, found by the smell at last that they begun to draw nigh home inhabited place; and told them of fifty miles before they came to it.

Cities of Note we hope for none, where we find no

Water. Of such as go for Cities here, the most comfortable, 1. *Tegaza*, rich in veins of Salt, resembling Marble; which the Inhabitants, being twenty days distant from any habitation, and consequently many times in danger to die for famine, exchange for Victuals with the Merchants of *Tombutun*, who come higher for it. Much troubled with the *South-Wind*, which doth so drive the Sands upon them, that it causeth many of them to lose their sight. 2. *Huaden*, or *Hoden*, a known resting place, and a great refreshment to the Merchant in the midst of these *Desarts*. 3. *Guargata*, on the brink of a Lake, fed by a River of hot Water; affirmed to be a Town of elegant building, and inhabited by a wealthy people. 4. *Tobatum*, of little note, but that it serveth for a Stage or halting-place to the weary Traveller. Of which kind there are said to be others at the extremities or ends of each several *Desart*, the *Havens* of such men as sail in those Sandy Seas; but not else observable.

Nor is there much, if any thing observable of them in the way of Story, but that not looked after by any of the great Conquerors, either Greek or Roman, much of the Country possessed by Arabian Colonies, (men fit enough to plant in such barbarous Nations) at such time as the *Saracens* planted their Religion here. The Government of the Country since, as it was before, by the Chiefs of their several *Clans* or *Families*, who as they know no Law themselves, so do the people hear as much ignorance of it in their lives and actions, differing but little from brute Beasts, more than in shape and speech.

And so much for *LIBYA INTERIOR*.

OF

## TERRA NIGRITARUM.

**TERRA NIGRITARUM**, or **THE LAND OF NEGROES**, is bounded on the East, with *Aethiopia Superior*; on the West, with the *Atlantic Ocean*; on the North, with *Libya Deserta*; and on the South, with the *Aethiopic Ocean*, and part of *Aethiopia Inferior*. So called from the *Nigritie*, the chief of the Nations here inhabiting in the time of *Ptolomy*, and they so named from the River *Niger*, of which more anon.

The Country very hot by reason of its situation under the *Torrid Zones* yet very well inhabited, full of people, and in some places always green: well watered, and exceeding fruitful, specially in those parts which lie within the compass of the overflowings of the River *Niger*; and on the further side of the River *Senaga*: abundantly well stored both with Corn, Cattel, and Garden-ware for the use of their Kitchens; well Wooded, and those Woods well furnished with Elephants and other Beasts, both wild and tame. Their greatest wants (but such a want as may be born with) is the want of *Fruit-Trees*; few of which they have; and those they have, bear one kind of fruit only, which is like the *Chestnut*, but somewhat bitter. Rain here doth neither hurt nor help; their greatest wel-

fare consisteth in the overflowings of *Niger*; as that of *Egypt* in the Inundations of *Nile*. In some parts liberally enriched with Mines both of Gold and Silver; very fine and pure: so that had not the *Portugals* affected the honour of discovering New Worlds, as much as *Wealth*, they might have made as rich a *Factory* here, as at the *Indies*.

The Inhabitants, till the coming of the *Portugals* thither, were for the most part so rude and barbarous, that they seem to want that use of Reason which is peculiar unto man; of little Wit, and destitute of all Arts and Sciences; prone to Luxury, and for the greatest part Idolaters, though not without some small admixture of *Homemans*. When the *Portugals* first failed into these *Coasts*, the People hereof took the Ships for great Birds, with white Wings; and after, upon better acquaintance, they could not be brought to believe, but that the Eyes which were usually painted on the Beaks of the Ships, were the Eyes by which they saw how to direct themselves in their course. *Guns* seemed to them, for their hideous noise, to be work of the *Devil*; and for *Bag-pipers*, they took them to be living creatures; neither when they had them permitted to feel them, would they be persuaded that they were the work of *Gods own hand*. The ve-

ry Nobles (if so noble a name may without offence be given to such blockish people) are so dull and stupid, that they are ignorant of all things which belong to Civil Society: and yet so reverent of their King, that when they are in his presence, they never look him in the face, but sit flat on their buttocks, with their elbows on their knees, and their hands on their faces. They use to anoint their hair with the fat of Fishes, which makes them think more wretchedly than they would do otherwise. Of Complexion they are for the most part Cole black, whence the name of *Negrees*; but on the South-side of the River *Senaga*, they are only Tawny: the *Blacky* so much in love with their own complexion, that they use to paint the Devil White; which I find thus verified:

*The Land of Negroes is not far from thence,  
Never extended to th' Atlantick Main;  
Wherein the Black Prince keeps his residence,  
Attended by his Jetty-coloured Train:  
Who in their Native Beauty most delight,  
And in contempt do paint the Devil White.*

They have tried all Religions, but agree in none. Idolaters at the first, as others the Descendants of *Cham*: Afterwards it is said, that they received the *Rites* and *Religion* of the *Jews*, (but the time and occasion of it I do not here find) in which they continued very long: But that being worn out at the last, *Christianity* prevailed in some Kingdoms of it. In the year 973, *Mohometism* began to get ground amongst them, by the diligence and zeal of some of the Preachers of that Law: the first who were seduced that way, being those of *Me* after which *Tombuto*, and then *Gualata*, were infected with the same poison also. In the end, all the rest of this Country followed their example, except the Kingdom of *Borneo*, some part of *Nubia*, and the *Coasts* of the *Atlantic Ocean*, which continue in their ancient *Gentilism*; *Christianity* being confined to a corner of *Nubia* (if still there remaining) and some few Garrisons belonging to the Crown of *Portugal*. And as they are of different Religions, so are they also of several Languages: those of *Gualata*, *Guinea*, *Tombutun*, *Melli*, and *Gugonti*, speaking the Language called *Singai*; the *Guberoi*, *Canotes*, *Chefene*, and *Gangreter*, &c. that called *Gubro*; *Gualata*, a language of its own; and those of *Nubia*, once resembling the *Arabick*, *Chaldean* and *Egyptian*.

Mountains of most note in it, in the former times, were those of 1. *Aravates*, and 2. *Aravus*, and 3. that called *Dorom Curras*; this last supposed to be the same which is now called *Pumie de Lopez Conzales*, but that more probably, which they now call *Cabo de Sierra Leona*, a large Promontory, thrusting it self into the Sea; discerned afar off by the Sailer and the Country people, as well by reason of his height, reaching to the Clouds, as the continual Lightnings and Thunder which do issue thence.

Rivers of most note, besides *Nile*, which watereth it on the East, 1. *Senaga*, or *Canaga*, which riseth out of the Lake of *Ganga*, supposed to be the same which *Ptolomy* calleth *Lacum Chelmidan*. And if so, then must this be the River *Gir*, of which he saith, that having fallen into that Lake, and there swallowed up, it thence produced another River, whose name he telleth not; 's little inferior unto *Nile*, for the length of its course, the variety of strange Creatures which are bred therein, or the distinction which it maketh in the face of this Country; the people on the one side of it being Black, on the other Tawny; the soil on the one side very barren, on the other fruitful. In the end, having run his race, he falleth into the *Atlantic*, by two great Outlets. 2. *Niger*, a River better known to *Ptolomy* by name than nature; now found to have its rise

from a great Lake, within two degrees of the *Aequinoctial*, whence running Northwards for a time, he hideth himself under ground for the space of 60 miles together; when rising up again, and making a great Lake called the Lake of *Borneo*, he bendeth his course directly Westward; and taking in many less Channels, he teareth the Earth into many Islands, and at last falleth into the Sea. Of as long course, and the same wondrous nature as the River *Nile*. For from the fifteenth day of June it over-floweth all the adjacent fields, the space of 40 days together; and in so many more, recolletheth his Waters into their proper Channels: the whole Country being indebted to these inundations for its fertility, which otherwise could be but small; since the drinels of the Soil can afford no exhalations, whereby Clouds may be generated, and the Earth refreshed with moistures, or revived with dews.

Chief Cities of this Country in the time of *Ptolomy*, 1. *Nigra*, the Metropolis of the Country, 2. *Panagra*, 3. *Milabath*, 4. *Anyath*, 5. *Thomondacana*, 6. *Sulnee*, and others, to the number of 17 in all; situate all along the course of the River *Niger*: Of all which we have nothing now remaining but the situation and the names, which that Author giveth us. So that the memory of all the ancient Towns and people being quite defaced, we must look upon it now as it standeth divided at this time into several kingdoms, 25 at the least in all, (some say many more) the chief of which are these that follow.

1. *ORA ANTEROSA*, a large Tract of Ground on the Western Ocean, extended from Cape *Blanco* to the River *Carnaga*, sandy and barren, but reasonably well peopled. The Inhabitants hereof called *Azanbaji*, were accounted formerly very rude and barbarous; much civilized since the *Portugals* and other *Christian* Nations began to trade there; of middle stature, complexioned between black and ash-colour, great liars, very treacherous, poor, and parsimonious, and very patient in extremes both of heat and hunger. The chief Towns, 1. *Porto di Dio* (we may call it *Gods Port*) and 2. *Porto del Rifatto*, two frequented Havens, thus named occasionally by the *Portuguese*, at their first coming thither. 3. *Arguin*, a strong Fortrefs of the *Portugals*, situate on or near the Promontory now called Cape *Blanco*; and giving name unto some Islands, five or six in number, lying near unto it, called the *Isles of Arguin*; inhabited by a barbarous people, named the *Azanbaji*, but of no great note. These *Coasts* discovered first by the *Portugals*, Anno 1482, under the Conduct of Prince *Henry*, Son of *John* the first, or by his encouragement and directions.

2. *GUALATA*, distant from the Ocean 100 miles, (the Province of *Libya*; as being interposed) is but a small Country, though a Kingdom; containing in it but three Burrough-Towns, with some Territories of ground and petty Hamlets belonging to them. Fruitful only in Dates, Mill, and Pulse; but of these two last no great abundance. The Inhabitants Coal-Black, hospitable towards Strangers to their power, but poor and miserable, without Laws, settled form of Government, Gentry and Judges.

3. *AGADEZ*, bordering on *Targa*, one of the five *Desarts* of *Libya*; the people of it generally given to grazing; their Houses made of green Boughs, which upon every change of Pasture they carry with them. So that we are to look for few Towns among them, but their movable Villages. One of good note it hath, called *Agadez*, by the name of the Country, inhabited for the most part by Merchants Strangers, who drive a great Trade betwixt this and *Tremelen*. The Town well walled, the Houses of a better building than the Country promisseth; the people

people civiler, and more fair conditioned than the rest of the *Negroes*; feasted commodiously on a River which falleth into the *Sonaga*, and by that means hath correspondence with the Ocean also. The King hereof a Tributary to the King of *Tombuto*, payeth him 15000 Crowns of Annual Tribute.

4. *CANO*, a large Province on this side of the River *Canaga*, full of Woods, Mountainous, and in some parts Defart; but plentiful enough of Corn, Rice, Citrons and Pomegranates, with good store of *Cotton-Wool*. Well watered, besides that great River, with some lesser Streams. Sufficiently populous, and stored with good Towns and Villages, the habitations of the Shepherds and Husbandmen, as the chief Town called *Cano* is of wealthy Merchants. This the Seat Royal of their King, a Tributary also unto him of *Tombuto*, environed with a Wall, built of a Chalk-stone, as most part of the Houses are.

5. *CASENA*, on the East of *Cano*, but less fruitful far; the Country over-grown with vast Woods, and the foil untractable, affording only Mill and Barly, but of that good plenty. The people as black as any Coal, with great Noses, and most prominent Lips. Their Houses very poor and mean, and their Towns accordingly, none of them numbering more than 300 Families.

6. *SANAGA*, lying on the other side of that River, from which this name is extended to the *Atlantick* Ocean, as far as to the Promontory which by *Ptolomy* named *Africarium*, is now called *Cape-Vert*, or *Caput Viride*. The Country full of rich Pastures, goodly Trees, and most sorts of Fruits; plentiful enough of Mill and Pulle, but ill provided of other Corn, and no Grapes at all. Well watered both with Lakes and Rivers. No tame Beasts about their Fields, but Goats, Cows, and Oxen; of Lyons, Leopards, Wolves, and Elephants, too great a plenty. The people extream black, much given to lying, treacherous, very full of talk, excessively vengeous, and extream jealous. A King they have, but such a one as holdeth but by *Consejse* only, having no certain Reuts or Revenues, but what is given by his Nobles.

7. *GAMBIA*, or *GAMBEA*, a small Kingdom on the River so named, but bordering in some places on the *Atlantick*. In those parts very pleasant, the Trees always flourishing, the Air very hot; in other parts of the same nature with *Sanaga*, but that this affords good store of Rice, which the other doth not.

8. *TOMBUTUM*, on the further side of the River *Sanaga*; exceeding plentiful of Corn, Cattel, Milk, and Butter. Defitute of Salt, but what they buy of foreign Merchants at excessive rates; and small flocks of Horses. Well watered by a Branch also of the River *Niger*, and many Wells of purpose made to receive fresh Waters as by Artificial Dikes and Channels are derived from both. The people courteous, rich and pleasant, spending whole days and nights in singing and dancing. Their food, Fish, Butter, Milk, and Fils, which they mingle together, and make it neither toothsome nor wholesome. The chief Towns, 1. *Tombuto*, which gives name to this Kingdom, situate about twelve miles from a branch of the *Niger*, and founded by the *Saracens* or *Arabians* in the 610. year of their *Hegira*. The Houses all of mud and thatch, except one fair Church, and the Kings Palace, both of Lime and Stone. Inhabited by wealthy Merchants, who manage a great Trade betwixt this and *Effie*. 2. *Gago*, the residence of the King, large, without Walls, the Buildings very poor and mean, except such as belong unto the King, or the chief Nobility. The Merchants rich, and their Wares sumptuous and precious, but excessive dear. The Town about

400 miles distant from *Tombuto*, situate in a fruitful Country for Rice, Fruits and Fiefl, and well replenished with fresh water. 3. *Cabra*, a large Town, but unwall'd, and of no better building than the other two.

9. *MELLI*, lying on the East of *Tombuto*, is a spacious and fruitful Province, situate all along on a Branch of the River *Niger*, in breadth 300 miles, and abundantly fertile, especially in Corn, Cattel, and *Cotton-Wool*: the people generally very wealthy; of greater wit, civility and industry, than the rest of the *Negroes*. The chief Town of it is called *Melli*, unwall'd, but large, as containing in it 6000 Families; furnished with many Temples, Priests, and Readers of the *Mahomeian* Law, which those of this Country did first unhappily admit of. This the Seat-Royal of their Kings, who are very courteous unto *Forajers*; but *Homagers* and Tributaries to the King of *Tombuto*.

10. *GHENEOA*, situate betwixt *Gualata*, *Tombuto*, and *Melli*, but so, that it bordereth in one place on the *Ocean* also; is a wealthy Country: but hath neither Town or Cattel in it, except that wherein the King resideth, who is a Vassal also to the King of *Tombuto*. That Town the residence also of their Priests, Doctors, and Merchants; of which the Priests and Doctors are apparelled in white, but all the rest in black or blue *Cotton*. The people have great Traffick with the Merchants of *Barbary*, and though made very rich by the overflowings of *Niger*, and the wealth of the Country, they have great store of Gold uncoined; yet in buying and selling at home, they use iron money.

11. *GUBER* lieth on the East of the former Province, of the same length, and naturally well fenced with lofty Mountains. Exceeding populous, and thick set with Villages; in which dwell their Husbandmen, and Shepherds; rich in their numerous herds of all sorts of Cattel, as also great quantities of Rice and Pulle: the people very industrious and good Artificers. Their Principal Town is called *Guber* also, a Town of 6000 Families, the usual residence of their King; full of wealthy Merchants, and rich in Manufactures.

12. *GLALOFI* lieth betwixt the two great Rivers of *Sanaga* and *Gambia*. The people whereof are of such admirable dexterity, that they can leap upon an horse when he is in his full Gallop, stand in the Saddle when he runneth fastly, turn themselves about upon his back, and suddenly down. Of their Country I find little, of their Story nothing, but that *Bennin* one of their Kings, being over-laid with Civil Wars, in the year 1489, went for Aid to the King of *Portugal*, and gave great hopes of his conversion to the *Christian* Faith. But being shamefully murdered by *Petro de Vaz*, the *Portugal* General, the hopes of *Christianity* in these parts fell together with him.

13. *GUINEA*, is a Sea-Coast Country, extended from *Sierra Leona*, (so called from the Lion-like roaring of the Waves beating on that Promontory) in the 10. degree of *Longitude*, to the Borders of *Bennin* in the 30. But the *Portugals* comprehend under this name the whole Sea-Coast of *Africa* from *Cape Blanco* and the Country of *Ora Antrofia*, to *Angola* and *Congo*, inclusively, in the Lower *Aethiopia*. But take it in the proper sense, as before-mentioned, and we shall find it to be rich in Gold, Ivory, Rice, Barley, *Cotton-Wool*, and a sort of Pepper, which the *Portugals* call *Pimenta del Rubo*, the Natives *Melageta*, and we *Guiny-Pepper*, of double the efficacy of the Pepper which comes from *India*; and therefore forbidden to be sold by the King of *Portugal*, for fear their *Indian*-trade should be discontinued. Well stored with Sheep and Poultry, and of Dates good plenty. All other fruits which

which they want, or care for, are brought thither from *Gualata*. Birds in abundance, and of Elephants and Apes too many. A Tree they have, by them called *Mignolo*, the Bark whereof being cut, doth afford a most excellent Liqueur, more pleasant, strong and nourishing than the choicest Wines; which the drink of in their great Feasts, even to drunkenness. The people of both Sexes very rude and barbarous; as well in their habit as their manners; yet amongst many barbarous Customs, they have one most commendable, which is the breeding of their *Maidens*. When Marriageable, they place them in an house severed from the rest of their Cities, like a *Cloyster*, or *Monastery*, where for a space they are trained up by some old man of best estimation. At the years end they are brought out well apparelled, with *Musick* and *Dancers*; where the young men please themselves in the choice of their Wives: for whom having bargained with their Parents, they satisfy the old man for his care and pains in their Education. They keep one day of rest weekly, but therein differ from all Nations in the World besides, that they keep their Sabbath upon the *Tuesday*. Distracted into as many Kingdoms as great Tribes or Families: the Kings thereof subordinate unto one another, as they live more within the Land, till they end all in a subjection to the King of *Maninga*. Places of most note, 1. *Songue*, the principal of *Maninga*, about 100 Leagues Eastward from the *Cape of Palmas*, 2. *Badomel*, the chief Town of the Kingdom so called, 3. *Usoo*, in the Centre of all the Country. 4. *Mina*, a strong hold of the *Portugals*, situate near the *Cape* called *Cabo de trois ponts*, the three pointed *Cape*; named sometimes also *S. George de Mina*, by the name of the *Cappadocian* Martyr, and the *Mines of Gold*, which they hoped to find there: By which, and by the Port of *Arguin*, which they have upon *Cape Blanco*, in the North part of this Land of the *Negroes*, they command all the Countries which they call by the name of *Guinea*. This Town not built until the year 1486, in the beginning of the Reign of *John* the Second, though the discovery of these Coasts had been made before, Anno 1482, under the Conduct of Prince *Henry Duke of Viseu*, Son of *John* the First. By whose encouragement the *Portuguese* did first employ themselves in Foreign Discoveries, and became enamoured of the Seas. For in this interval, the *Portugals* being more covetous of new Discoveries, than of fortifying and securing the old, gave opportunity to the *Catholians* to look after this Country, who having took a view of it in the year 1477, pursued the Enterprise the next year with a Fleet of 35 Ships, under the Command of *Pedro de Cabides*, who brought thence great quantity of Gold: but in the year 1479, by an Agreement or Capitulation between those Princes, the Trade heretofore was again left free to the *Portugals*; who thereupon discovering the life of *S. George*, and finding it a fit place to secure and command the rest, built in it the strong Fort or Castle of *Mina*, which before we spoke of.

14. *BENIN* lieth directly East of *Guinea*, by the *Portugals* reckoned for a Province, or Kingdom of it; the King whereof is said to have 600 Wives, with all which twice a year he goeth out in Pomp. The Gentlemen (if I abuse not the name) have most of them 80 Wives, some more; he that is poor, ten or twelve, and the more the merrier. The people thereof do cut and raise their skin with three lines drawn to the Navel, esteeming it necessary to salvation. They use all, both men and women, to go naked till they are married; and then to be clothed only from the waist to the knees; so that had our Sir *Thomas More* lived in these parts, he had in some measure had his desire. For he amongst other strange Plots in his *Utopian* Commonwealth, telleth us, how there it is the Custom for some Reverend Old Sire to bring in naked the young

man; and some hoary Old Matron to present naked the young woman, between whom a Marriage is propounded. For, faith he, in buying a Horse, the Chapman not only vieweth his naked Carcass, but taketh off all his trappings and fiddle, lett under them some Blain or Ulcer might be hidden: why then in chusing of a Wife should we take one, of whom we see no more than the Face (*minus Palme spinam*) and perhaps scarce that? The Learned and Ingenious Author of the *New Atlantis*, though he dislike of Marriages made upon such uncertainties, yet he would have this discovery made by some friends of the Parties, not by them themselves; it being, as he faith, very inconvenient that after such a plain and familiar sight of each others Person, there should be a refusal upon either side. But these new Projects I refer to your modest censures.

15. *GUANGARA* lieth on the North of *Bennin*, a wealthy and well-peopled Country, but their Towns and Villages very mean, except that called by the same name with the Country, where the King resideth, which is somewhat better than the rest, well traded and full of rich Merchants. The King heretofore of great Revenues, that he kept seven thousand Archers, and five hundred Horses in continual pay, but *Hamager* and Tributary to the King of *Bornum*.

16. *BORNUM*, a large and opulent Country on the West of *Guangara*, is there extended to the length of 500 miles. Distinguished equally in a manner into hills and valleys: the hills inhabited by Neat-herds and Shepherds, breeding great Flocks and Herds of Cattle, with Mill, and many other fruits to us unknown; the Valleys replenished with many Market Towns, and as full of Corn. The people are of no Religion, but live like Beasts; without propriety so much as in their Wives, or Children: nor are they differentiated by names, as in other places, but by some mark upon their bodies: Which though it seem strange to us of this present Age, yet was it thus in part with our *Saxon* *Angels*. Whence have we the names of *White*, *Brown*, *Black*, *Grey*, *Green*, and *Tawny*; or those of *Long*, *Short*, *Low*, *Curly*, *Crispy*, and others, but from such *Originals*? not to say any thing of the names of Trades, and Occupations, so familiar with us. The name of their chief City is *Bornoe*, where the King resideth. A potent Prince, who keepeth in continual pay 3000 Horses, and great numbers of Foot, and yet is said to have no other Revenue, than what he getteth by strong hand from his Enemies. Which if it be true, those Kings must needs be good Warriors, and have great success also in their undertakings: it being also said of these Kings of *Bornoe*, that all the Furniture of their Horses, all the Dishes, Cups and Platters which they eat or drink in, yea the very Chains for his Dogs, were of finest Gold.

17. *GAGGA* lieth betwixt *Bornoe*, and the Desarts of *Nubia*: the Country almost square, each side thereof extended 500 miles. The people ignorant, rude, uncivil, but especially those which dwell in the Mountains: their houses built most of boughs and leats, which once dry-cake they take fire; but the best is, they are soon repaired: their greatest wealth is in their Cattle, which they keep most tenderly. About the year 1420, they were brought into subjection by a *Negro Slave*, who having slain his Master, by the help of his wealth grew strong enough to inchoach on his Neighbours; and selling such Captives as he took, for Horses of *Egypt* became King of *Gagga*, and in due very gracious with the *Mameluck* Sultans. His Successors have since lost or cloathed their Territories, that they are descended unto none but the Kings of *Tombuto*.

18. *NUBIA* hath on the West *Gagga*, bounded on the North with *Egypt*, extended Eastward unto *Nile*, by which parted from *Aethiopia Superior*, or the *Habashine* Empire, so called from the *Nube*, an ancient and potent people

people of this Tract, spoken of by *Protony*: the great Lake, anciently called *Nubæ Palus*, being hence denominated. A distinct people from those of the same name, dwelling on the shores of the *Red-Sea*, near unto *Sinai*, *Avallites*, who from the thornbush of their stature passed in account for *Pygmies*: *Nubæ Troglodytes*, faith *Helychime* an old Grammarian: these being a strong and potent Nation, and well skilled in Wars. Inasmuch, as *Cyriacus* once a King hereof, understanding of some perfidious laid upon the *Christians of Egypt*, is said to have raised 100000 Horse for their aid and succour; but by the perfidians of the *Patriarch of Alexandria*, went back untought with. For at that time the Country was wholly *Christian*, and had been so from the very days of the *Apollies*; but are now fallen off again to their former *Idolatries*, or become *Mahometans*, for want of Ministers to instruct them. It is recorded by *Alvarez*, the Writer of the *Aethiopic* History, that at his being in the Court of the *Abissine* Emperour, there came Ambassadors out of *Nubia* to instruct a supply of Pastors to instruct their Nation, and repair *Christianity* amongst them; but were unchristianly rejected.

Here is a *Posyon* in this Country, of which the tenth part of a Grain will dispatch a man in a quarter of an hour, and is sold for ten Ducats an ounce; the Custom for which unto the King, is as much as the price unto the Merchant. But for this one ill Commodity they have many good; that is to say, Corn, Sugar, Civet, Sanders, Ivory, all in great abundance; some store of Gold, and other Metals. The Country naturally sandy, but well refreshed with Lakes and Rivers which do much enrich it; inasmuch as the people generally are very wealthy, and manage a great Trade with the Merchants of *Cane* and *Egypt*. Their chief City is called *Dangala*, large and well frequented; said to contain no fewer than 10000 Families, but their Houses built of nothing but Thatch and Mortar. In other parts, especially towards the River *Nilus*, they have many Villages, few or none of them worth the naming.

There are many other Kingdoms in this Land of *Negroes*, besides these in *Guinea*, but of lesser note; as, 19. *BITO*. 20. *TEMIANO*. 21. *ZEGZEG*. 22. *ZANFARA*. 23. *GOTHAN*. 24. *MEDRA*. 25. *DAUM*. Of which there is nothing to be spoken, but of their Poverty or Riches, Customs or Curies, common to the people with the rest of these Nations, and therefore I purposely omit them.

The Country, or a great part of it, was anciently accounted part of *Libya Interior*, inhabited besides the *Nubæ* and *Nigrite* spoken of before, by the *Nabathæ* dwelling about the Hill *Aravater*, the *Aroneæ*, near the Hill *Aravus*, the *Agargineæ*, *Xylines*, and *Alcalines*, *Aethiopic* Nations. Not much considerable in the business of former times; not much discovered (not very perfectly at this day) till the year 973, at what time certain *Mahometan* Preachers, out of a superstitious zeal to pro-

pagate their Sect, first opened the way into these Countries: the people then living like brute beasts, without King, Law, or any form of Government, scarce knowing how to sow their Lands, clad in the skins of as very beasts as themselves, and challenging no propriety in Wives or Children. First conquered by *Joseph* King of *Morocco*, of the race of the *Almohades*; and after that by the *Five Nations of Libya Deserta*, who divided them into fifteen parts, every one of these Five Nations possessing three of them. One of the Kings of these *Libyans*, named *Sani Heli*, being slain by *Ahmed Ibbia*, General of his Forces, and the rest terrified with that blow, Anno 1526, the *Negroes* once again recovered their long lost liberty, and instituted divers Kings of their own. Amongst them, *Ibbia* was most deservedly made King of *Tombuto*, who managing his Affairs so well, that he conquered the Kings of *Gadus*, *Agadus*, *Cano*, *Melli*, *Zanfara*, *Zegzeg*, *Gheneas*, *Gambon*, and *Cajena*, which he made his tributaries. So that his Successors are now the greatest of those five Kings who have the supreme power over all the rest. The other four, 1. the King of *Mandinga*, lording it over the Realm of *Benin*, *Gioloff*, and the Kings of *Guinea*; 2. the King of *Borno*, the only one that is descended of the *Libyan* Race, in greatness of command next to him of *Tombuto*; 3. the King of *Gualata*, whose Kingdom is confined within that one Province, but therein absolute and supreme; and 4. the King of *Goaga*, Paramount over all the rest of these Provinces.

But because the greatest power is in the hands of the King of *Tombuto*, who possibly enough may in short time bring all the rest under his command, we will take a more particular view of his Estate affirmed to be the richest Prince in these parts of *Affrick*, and to have many Plates and Scepters of Gold, some of which weigh 1300 pound weight. When any of his Subjects do appear before him they kneel on both their knees, and bowing their heads unto the ground, cast sand over their shoulders and upon their head, going forward still upon their knees. His Court he keeps in a royal manner, continually guarded with 3000 Horse, but with many more Foot, all armed with Bows and empoyoned Arrows. To the *Jews* a very bitter Enemy, whom he admitteth not to trade in his Kingdoms, and confiscate the goods of all such of his Subjects as hold traffick with them. Zealous of the *Mahometan* Law; and liberal in stipends to the Doctors and Professors of it. Of greater power than any other beyond *Atlas*, but the *Habissine* Emperour. And though *Ahmed* the *Xeriffe* of *Morocco*, in the year 1589, had some hand upon him, and conquered a great part of this Kingdom, even as far as *Gago*, extending his Empire six months Journey, by Camels, beyond *Morocco*, yet it held not long; this King again recovering what was taken from him; and being since that time in as eminent power, as ever in any times before.

And so much for *TERRA NIGRITARUM*.

OF



OF

## ÆTHIOPIA SUPERIOR.

**Æ**THIOPIA SUPERIOR is bounded on the East with the *Red Sea*, and the *Sinus Barbaricus*; on the West with *Libya Interior*, the Realm of *Nubia*, in the land of the *Negros*, and part of the Kingdom of *Congo* in the other *Aethiopia*; on the North with *Egypt*, and *Libya Maritima*; and on the South with the Mountains of the *Moon*, by which parted from the main body of *Aethiopia Inferior*.

It was first called *Aethiopia*, and afterwards *Atlantia*, as *Pliny* telleth us. In the end, the *Grecians* gave it the name of *Aethiopia*, from the *Greek* words *Αἰθρ*, signifying to burn, and *ἡ* a Countenance, because the violent heats of the Sun had so scorched the Countenances of the Inhabitants. The additions of *Sin* *Egypti*, *Superior* and *Inferior*, serve only to distinguish it from the other *Aethiopia*, which lyeth further off from *Egypt*, on the outside of this. It is called also *Regnum Abyssinorum*, from the *Absini*, or *Abyssini*, a people of *Arabia Felix*; who passing over the *Red Sea*, (not above seven miles broad in the narrowest place) came and settled here. And in the Scripture it is styled by the name of *Ludim*, from *Lud* the son of *Mizraim*, who first planted it, as hath been proved by many strong and concluded Arguments in our General Preface.

It is situate on both sides of the *Equinoctial*, extending from the South Parallel of seven Degrees, where it meeteth with some part of the other *Aethiopia*, to the Northern end of the Isle of *Meroe*, situate under the fifth Parallel on the North of that Circle. And though by this account it fall short of the dimensions assigned by some, who extend it from one *Tropic* unto the other; yet is it of a very great length, no less than 1500 miles; the breadth about half as much, the whole circumference amounting to 4300 miles. Yet so, that all this vast Tract of ground, is not to be understood of that part of the Country which is under the command of the *Abissine* Emperour, commonly but mistakenly called *Preter-Jobn*: but of the whole Country of *Aethiopia*, as before limited and extended, containing besides his Estate, the Kingdom of *Adel* and *Ades*, and the provinces of *Quilao* and *Melindi*; which two last are now reckoned of as parts of *Aethiopia Inferior*. The Isle of *Meroe* in the North is possessed by *Mahometans*, the most bitter Enemies of this King; all on the West of *Nilus*, betwixt it and the South-east of *Nubia*, inhabited by the *Anzichi*, an *Idolatrious* and man-eating Nation, subject to a great Prince of their own; and all the Coasts of the *Red-Sea*, as well within the *Straits* of *Babel Mandel*, as without, except the port of *Ereco* only, enjoyed by *Arabians* and *Moors*, who do acknowledge no subjection unto his Commands but are under the Kings of *Adel* and *Ades*, before mentioned.

But taking in the largest signification and extent heretofore (according unto which we must here describe it) it comprehendeth the three Countreys called anciently *Aethiopia Sub-Egypti*, *Trogloditica*, and *Regio Cinnamomifera*.

Of these, the two last are by some reckoned but as parts of the first; though certainly the *Troglodites* were a different Nation from the *Aethiopiens*. For past all doubt the *Troglodites* were originally an *Arabian* People, so called *quia troglas subeunt*, from their living in Caves and Dens, in which respect their part of this Country had the name of *Arabia Trogloditica*, in *Disjunctis*, and some others of ancient Writers. Of these it is affirmed by *Pomponius Mela*, that they were not the Masters of any wealth, and that their speech was rather a gnashing of the teeth, than any articulate and intelligible Pronunciation. *Nallum opum Domini sunt Trogloditæ, frident magis quam loquuntur*. As for their houses, they were (faith he) no better than Caves, and their food than *Serpents*. With whom concurrently *Pliny* also for their dwelling in Caves, and consequently for the reason of the name, laying positively, *Trogloditæ beluinas excavant*. Called for the same reason in the holy Scripture, 2. *Chron.* 12. 3. by the name of *Suscebi*, the word *Suscebi* (whence that name derived) not only signifying in the *Hebrew*, Tents, or Tabernacles, but Caves and Dens; and so translated *Psalm* 10. v. 9. and *Job* 38. v. 40. As for that part heretofore which was called *Regio Cinnamomifera*, taking up the southern parts in the time of *Protony*, it took that name from the abundance of *Cinnamon*, which was then growing it; it's now not a tree of it to be found in all this Country; as the *Portugals*, who have looked narrowly for it, have affirmed unto us. Shipped at *Mosylon*, a noted Emporie, placed by *Protony* in the ninth degree of Northern Latitude; it was thence transported into *Egypt*, and other Countreies as is said by *Pliny*, *Portus Mosylitus quo Cinnamomum deservitur*: the Spice in some Authors being called *Mosylon*, by the name of the Town. *deservit ei et ad Arabum Maribus, et ad Musum aditus*. Of *Cinnamon* the best is that which is called *Mosylon*, because brought from the City of that name in *Aethiopia*, faith *Simon Sethi* in his Tract de de Facultatibus Ciborum. As for this *Cinnamon* (note this only by the way) it is the inner bark of a Tree as big as an *Olive*, with Leaves like Bay-leaves: the drying of which maketh it roll together, and every three years is renewed, and stripped off again. Some think it came first from the *Sine* or the Country which the *Romans* called *Sinnum Regio*, the *Moderns China*; and that it was so called, *quasi Sine Annum*, the *Annum* of the *Sine*; *Annum* being the name of a sweet perfume growing in *Affrica* and *Armenia*. But then it should be written *Sinannomum*, and not *Cinnamomum*; yet to give the greater credit to the former opinion, they of *Ormus* called *Bar-Chine*, or the wood of *China*. But of this enough.

To go on therefore unto *Aethiopia* it self; The people of it in old times were said to have been great *Astrologers*, the first orderers also of sacred Ceremonies, and in both to be Tutors to the *Egyptians*. They were also noted to be very good Archers, and to draw the longest and strongest Bows of any Nation; the *Perjan* Bow (though those the greatest of all *Africa*) being only three cubits long; but these of *Aethiopia* four. *Uinter etiam Aethiopes quatuor Cubitos*.

*torum arcibus*, as we read in *Strabo*; the like is said also by *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*. Their Arrows small, but strong, for the most part poisoned: *Aethiopia geminata venenis vincta*, as we find in *Claudian*; and for that inhumanity very much condemned. But not to spend our time too much upon these particulars, *Pliny* reciteth two strange things of this Country: 1. That the air and Ground are so parching hot, that the people not only dare not go out of doors without shoes, but that they roast their meat also by setting it in the Sun. 2. That there is a Lake whose waters are thrice a day, and thrice a night, exceeding salt and unpleasing; but at all others times moist sweet and delicate to the Palate.

This Country being as big as *Germany*, *France*, and *Italy* laid together, is but meanly populous, the *disposition* of the *Climate*, and the dry barrenness of the ground, not admitting a multitude. For this cause *Africa* is by *Strabo* compared to a *Leopard's* skin, the distance of whose Spots leaveth the disproportion of the Towns and habitations in those torrid Countries. A country scarce in Wheat, but sufficiently plentiful in Rice, Barley, Beans, Pease, and the like; they have abundance of Sugars, Minerals of all sorts, and innumerable herds of Oxen, Sheep, Goats. Finally, there is no Country under Heaven fitter for increase of Plants, and Living Creatures, if industry were not deficient. But in regard of this defect, they are detitute of many necessary things, which otherwise the natural commodities of the Country would supply them with. For they have here great store of *Flax*, but make no *Cloth*; plenty of *Vines*, yet make no *Wine*, except it be to serve the Palaces of the King and *Patriarchs*; abundance of *Sugar-Cane*, and mines of *Iron*, but know not how to make use of either unto any advantage; Rivers and Brooks in many places, but will not take the pains to dig *Channels*, or trenches, to drive their waters to the rest of the land which want themselves Rivers almost choked with *Fish*, their Woods crammed with *Venison*, which they trouble not themselves to catch.

By this we may conjecture somewhat of the people also: Lazy and given unto their ease, ill clothed and not much better housed; extremely inclined to *Barbarism*, destitute of all learnings, not to be credited unless they swear by the life of their Emperours; they hate a *Smith* equally with the Devil: their colour is generally Olive-tawny, excepting only their King himself, who is always of a white complexion; a wonderful prerogative, if true. This blackness of their bodies, by the Poet attributed to the burning of the world by *Phaeton*.

*Sanguine tum credunt in corpora summa vocato,  
Æthiopia populari nigrum traxisse colorem.*

Which may be Englished thus.

Their blood (it's thought) drawn from the outward part, The *Æthiopians* grew to black and swart.

But the true cause herof, whatsoever it be; may perhaps be looked upon hereafter, when we come to *America*.

The *Christian* Faith was first made known in this Country, by the *Emperor* of *Queen Candace*, who was baptized by *Philip the Evangelist*, and one of the *Seven*; more generally embraced by the pains and preaching of *St. Matthew* the Apostle herewith; but not totally propagated over all this Empire, till the reign of *Abraham*, Anno 470. who in his life entituled himself the Defender and Propagator of the Religion of *CHRIST*, and after his death was generally honoured as a *Saint*. Suppressed in part by the coming in of the *Abissines* and other *Arabians*, it was again revived and more universally received than in former times, in the reign of *David* King of the

*Axumite* *Æthiopians*: who in a War against *Dumax* King of the *Homieris* in *Arabia Felix* solemnly vowed to the God of the *Christians* to become one of his Followers, if he got the victory: and so accordingly he did, sending his Ambassadors to the Emperor *Justinian*, for some Bishops and other learned men to instruct his people. The particulars of those Opinions wherewith they have since corrupted the purity of the true Religion, I had thus registred. 1. They use to circumcise their Children, both males and females. 2. They baptize the males 40, and the females 18 days after their circumcision. 3. After the receipt of the Sacrament, they are not to spit till Sun-set. 4. They profess but one Nature and one Will in *CHRIST*. 5. They accept only the three first General Councils. 6. Their Priests live by the labour of their hands, for they allow them nothing, and permit them not to beg. 7. They baptize themselves every *Epiphany* day in Lakes and Ponds, because that day they suppose *Christ* to have been baptized by *John* in *Jordan*. 8. They eat not of those Beasts, which in the old Law are reckoned for unclean. 9. They keep the *Saturday* or *Jewish Sabbath*, equally solemn with the *Lords Day*. 10. They administer the *Eucharist* to Infants presently after Baptism. 11. They teach, that the Reasonable soul of man is derived from their parents by *seminal Propagation*. 12. That Infants dying unbaptized, are sanctified in the womb, by virtue of the *Eucharist* received by the Mother after her Conception. And finally, they drew a Book of eight Volumes, writ, as they say, by the Apostles at *Hierusalem* for that purpose, the Contents whereof they observe most solemnly. These are the most material points in which they differ from the Tendencies of the *Catholic* Church. And there are other Points in which they differ only from the Church of *Rome*, as *viz.* 1. Admiring in both kinds. 2. Without either *Elevation*, or *Reverence*. 3. Rejecting *mass* Images; and 4. *Extreme Unction*. 5. Allowing the first marriages to their Priests and Bishops; and 6. In renouncing all relation to the Church of *Rome*; who to the business of these Churches is a very stranger, and so hath been from the very first foundation of them. For it appears by the Canons of the *Nicene* Council, extant in the *Arabic*, and translated into *Latine* by *Pisanius*, that the Patriarch (or *Abbas*, as they called him) of these *Abissine* Churches, was in those times subordinate to the *Alexandrian*, confirmed in that Supremacy by the Fathers, which were there assembled; and constantly ever since approved and practised by these Churches; in the Liturgies whereof, the name of the *Alexandrian* is remembered before their own. To this Patriarch, by an ancient privilege belongeth the seventh place in the *Sessions* of all General Councils; the Archbishop of *Seleucia* (or *Babylon*) only interpoling betwixt him and the Patriarch of *Hierusalem*. Elected by the *Abissine* Monks of *St. Antonies* Order remaining in *Hierusalem*, and confirmed by the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, (of which Order, and of whose jurisdiction he must always be he is sent into this Country to take his charge: where in some points of *Civil* nature, he hath equal privilege with the Emperor himself; and in *Spiritual*, hath the sole power of excommunicating an obstinate sinner. All other Ecclesiastical Dignities, from the Bishoprick to the lowest Benefice, are conferred by the Emperor only.

The principal Mountains of it in the former time, had the names of 1. *Primoris*, 2. *Ibus*, 3. *Monodactylus*, 4. *Garrus*, and 5. *Mons Satyrorum*, all of them in that which was called *Trogloditica*: 6. *Garbale*, 7. *Elephas*, and 8. *Mofe*, in the life of *Moro*: the rest of the Country flat and level, or the hills not eminent. Rivers of note note, 1. *Atapus*, (now *Albani*) arising out of a great Lake called *Coloe*, now the Lake of *Barena*, 2. *Atabore*, now

*Tacasse*.

*Tacasse*; both falling into the River *Nilus*. 3. *Nilus*, of which before when we were in *Egypt*; whose Spring undoubtedly sought for in the elder times, is now said to be out of the Lake *Zembe* in the other *Æthiopia*, eleven Degrees beyond the *Equator*; whence passing through spacious *Deserts*, large Lakes, and many great Kingdoms he at last entereth into this. Here in some places struggling amongst broken Rocks, and less free passages, he falleth with such a wonderful noise into the Vallies beneath, that a Colony planted by the *Persians* near one of these *Cataracts*, (so they call those huge falls of his) were so dulled and deafened with the noise, that they were fain to abandon their habitations. Nor doth it only dull and deafen the neighbouring people, but the very hills do seem to tremble at the noise it maketh. Of which thus the Poet,

*Cuncta tremunt audis, et multo murmure montis,  
Spumans invictis abscissis fluctibus amnis.*

Which may be Englished in these words:

The noise the Mountains shakes, who roar for spite To see th' unvanquish'd Waves cloth'd all in white.

Of the *Cataracts* here are two most noted: the one called *Cataract Major*, in the borders of this Country towards *Egypt*, but South of both the Cities of *Phile*, and *Pselis*, *Æthiopian* Cities; the other called *Cataract Minor*, not far from *Elephantis* a City of *Egypt*, neighbouring to *Syene* the last City of that Country towards this. So turbulent is this River amongst the Hills. And yet as terrible as these Falls are supposed to be, one may divers times see the Country people in a little Boat not able to contain above two persons, to venture down them without disappearing after they have been long tossed in the water, a great distance off, as if they had been shot out of an Engine. Nor is he of such quiet passage in the open Countries, but that the Inhabitants of this Kingdom are fain to cut many Ditches, Sluces, and By-channels to receive his waters, which if not curbed and lessened by such ways as these, might by some sudden overflowing much endanger *Egypt*: in respect whereof the *Sultans* of *Egypt* have paid for a long time to the *Abissine* Emperours, an annual tribute. Which when the *Great Turk*, supposing it a needless charge, had once denied: this people, by the command of their Emperor, did open their Sluces, and brake down the Dams whereby the water fell so violently and so fast into *Egypt*, that the *Turks* was not only glad to continue tribute, but to give them great sums of money to make up their works. But others say, that this acknowledgment was paid by the *Egyptian* Kings, not so much for keeping up the waters from drowning *Egypt*, as for fear the *Abissine* Emperours should divert the Stream, and so deprive that Country of the benefit of it. But I incline rather to the former. Here are also said to be some Lakes, of that poisonous nature, that whoever drinke of them doth either immediately fall mad, or else is troubled for long time with continual drowsiness. Of which thus *Ovid*:

*Æthiopsque Lacus, quos spiritus faucibus haurit,  
Aut furit, aut patitur mirum gravitate soporem.*

Which may be paraphrased in these words:

Who doth not know the *Æthiopian* Lake?  
Of which whoever drinks, his thirst to slake,  
Either grows mad, or doth his soul oppress  
With an unward drowsiness.

To look upon the State as it stood in the former times, we find in it besides the Lakes and Rivers before mentioned, three capacious Bays; that is to say, 1. *Sinus Adulicus*, 2. *Sinus Aualiter*, and 3. *Sinus Barbaricus*; the two last neighbored by the now Countries of *Adel* and *Melinde*. Havens of note and Rodes for shipping, there were five in all, *viz.* 1. *Babius*, or the deep Haven; 2. *Disgorum Portus*, or the Haven of *Cayor* and *Palox*; 3. *Theon Socrum*, or the Haven of the *Savon-Gods*; 4. *Portus Evangelicorum*, Gospel-Port, or the Port of Good News; and 5. *Serapionis*, the Port of *Serapion*, with a Promontory of the same name adjoining to it. For other Promontories, which in so long a tract of Sea must needs be many; the Principal were, 1. *Bafum*, 2. *Mumium*, 3. *Dimitria*, 4. *Aphis*, 5. *Ara Ameris*, 6. *Colobus*, 7. The Promontory of *Saturn*, 8. *Mofylon*, with a noted Empory of the same name; 5. *Aromata*, near another well frequented Empory of the same name also; and 10. that of *Natocum*. Then for the Towns of greatest Trading, besides those last mentioned, we have, 1. *Aualiter*, 2. *Malan*, 3. *Mandi*, 4. *Cabe*, and 5. *Acane* in the Bay of *Adalites*; 6. *Opone*, in the Bay of *Barbaria*, 7. *Effina*, on the South of the *Æquidial*. Then for their Cities, we have amongst many others, the names of 1. *Epitharia*, by *Ptolomy* called *Ptolomai Feronia*, 2. *Adalis*, and 3. *Aualiter*, giving names unto their several Bays; 4. *Rapta*, the Metropolis of that part of this Country which was called *Barbaria*, lying along the shores of the *Sinus Barbaricus*; which as it taketh name from the River *Raptus*, upon which it is situated, they do both agree in communicating it to the Promontory called *Raptum*; 5. *Moro*, the chief City of the Isle so called; 6. *Sabat* in the Bay of *Adalis*, which possibly might be some Colony of the *Sabæans*, in *Arabia Felix*; 7. *Coloe*, by *Pliny*, called *Tolon*, not far from the great Lake so named 8. *Cambusi*, by *Ptolomy*, called *Cambusi Ararium*, from some treasures laid up here by *Cambusi* the *Persian*, in his invasion of this Country. 9. *Axum*, the chief City of the *Axumite*, a most potent people of these parts, and the Seat Royal of the old *Æthiopian* Kings, 10. *Napata*, as *Ptolomy*; but by most others called *Tanape*: of old the residence of the *Æthiopian* Emperours, sacked and ruined by *Petrinus*, President of *Egypt*. For when *Candace* (the Predecessor, I believe, of her whose *Eunuch* was baptized by *Philip*) had rancked and waited *Egypt* with Fire and Sword; *Petrinus* Lieutenant to *Augustus*, drove them home, harried the whole Country, put this City to the spoyl; and to prevent the like incursions, fortified the Frontiers of his Province. 11. *Phile*, upon the borders of *Egypt*, Garrisoned by the *Romans* till the time of *Dioclesian*, and by him abandoned. Of some of these, and others not here mentioned, we may have opportunity to speak more hereafter, in the survey of some of these particular Provinces, into which this Country stands divided at this present time.

And for the Provinces comprehended at this time within the bounds and limits of this *Æthiopia*, as before laid down, they are said to make up 70 Kingdoms, most of them subject to the *Abissine* Emperor. The principal of which are, 1. *Guagere*, 2. *Tigremam*, 3. *Angote*, 4. *Amma*, 5. *Dannu*, 6. *Goujam*, 7. *Bagamedrum*, 8. *Barnagiam*, 9. *Adel*, 10. *Ades*, 11. *Danfali*, 12. *Dubar*, 13. *Fatigra*, 14. *Xos*, 15. *Barus*. Concerning which I must premise, that I find the Relations of them to be very imperfect, many times disagreeing, sometimes false: So that I must needs myself be less satisfied in the description of this Country, than in any of the rest which have gone before. Such as it is, I here present it to the Reader.



## 1. GUAGERE.

**GUAGERE** containeth only the Island of *Meroe*, an Island of much note and fame among the Ancients; made by the confluences of *Nilus* and *Astaboras*, the two chief Rivers of this Country. The length hereof 350 miles, the breadth 125, abundantly plentiful of Gold, Silver, Brass, Iron, Ivory, Precious Stones, and an excellent kind of Mineral Salt. Well stored with most sorts of Beasts, both tame and wild, and of the last sort with Lyons, Leopards, *Rhinoceros*, Elephants, and Dragons.

The people are of the same nature and complexion with the rest: *Mahometans* by Religion, and the professed Enemies of the *Abissine* Emperour against whom they do not only defend themselves, by the advantages and benefit of their situation; but confederating with the *Turks* and *Arabians*, fall many times with great Forces into his Dominions. It is said by *Pliny* of the Inhabitants of this Island, that twice a year, viz. when the Sun is in the 16 degree of *Taurus*, and the 14 of *Leo*, they have the Sun so perpendicular above their heads, that he casts no shadow. More anciently memorable for their long lives, than their great exploits, attaining ordinarily to 123 years of Age; and therefore called *Macerii* by the old Greek Writers. The women said to be of such great breasts in the former times, that they did suckle their children over their shoulders (as some women are now said to do near the Cape of Good Hope): the Drug being bigger than the Child. Of which thus *Juvenal*,

In *Meroe* crasso majorem Infante mamillam.

In *Meroe* the Mothers Paps  
Is bigger than the child in lap.

The Principal Cities hereof. 1. *Meroe*, which gave that name unto the Island, but took the same from *Meroe*, a sister of *Cambyses* King of *Persia*, or as *Eusebius* saith from *Merida*, the mother of *Chephris*, a King of *Egypt*. *Josephus* telleth us, that in former times it had been called by the name of *Sabson*, authority of whose mistake it hath been made the *Regal* City of that Queen of *Sheba* (the Queen of *Egypt*, and *Æthiopia*, as *Joseph* calleth her) who came to *Solomon*. An opinion to receive amongst these Islanders, that the name of *Meroe* being laid by, they have restored the name of *Sabto* to this City, as of greater eminence. The City said by some to contain about 5000 houses, great and sumptuous; the streets thereof to be large and spacious, with Galleries on each side before the doors of their houses, where men walk safe from all extremities of heat, or rain. Beautified with four chief Gates, (besides others of inferior note) built of *Alabaster* and *Jasper*, wrought with *Antick* works: the doors belonging to those Gates of *Cedar*, curiously wrought; the ways which lead unto them, for the space of two leagues, beset with *Palms*, *Orange trees*, *Cedars*, *Cypresses*, and others no less useful both for shade and fruit. In the place where the four streets going from the Gates, do cross each other, a goodly Arch erected upon stately Pillars, fairly wrought and gilded, with the Statue of *St. Matthew* made of brass, but gilded, on the top thereof. Such it is said to be by some. Others think there is no such City; it may be not so beautiful, as some have made it. The other Towns of note and name in it, in former times, 2. *Saelebe*, 3. *Darorum Vicini*, 4. *Efer*, of which we have little but the name.

This Island was once a peculiar Kingdom; he being chosen for their King, who excelled the rest in strength;

person, or in stock of Cattle; but those Kings so subject to their *Priests*, that by a *Messenger*, or *Herald*, they were sentenced by them unto death, and others advanced unto the Throne. And thus it stood till one of the more provident Kings, forcing the Temple with his Armed Souldiers, slew all these *Priests*; and freed himself and his successors from to great a slavery. Afterwards made a Province of the Kingdom of *Æthiopia*; honoured for the most part with the Seat of those Kings, and memorable in those times for the Table of the Sun: which was a place near the City of *Meroe*, always furnished with variety of roasted meat, fed there by night at the charge and command of the King (much taken as it seemeth with this costly vanity) and eaten in the day time by all that would; called therefore the Table of the Sun, because ascribed unto his bounty by the ignorant people. In the declining of this Kingdom, occasioned by the inundation of the *Saracens* and other *Arabians*, this Island was seized on by that people, and hath been ever since kept by them together with the rest of the Country, lying betwixt it and *Egypt*, in which are contained, as some write, the Kingdoms of *Damot*, *Sua*, and *Jalulium*, anciently belonging to this Empire, now difmembered from it: not much observable, but for being a thoroughfare to great troops of *Pilgrims*, which every Year pass by them out of the *Abissine* Dominions, to the *Sepulchre* and other like places in and near *Jerusalem*.

## 2. TIGREMAON.

**TIGREMAON**, hath on the North, *Guagere* and the River *Marabo*, by which last parted from *Barnagasso*; on the South, the Realm of *Angote*; on the West, *Nilus*. On the East it is said to extend to the Red-Sea; but the Sea-parts thereof possessed by the *Turks*, and the adjoining Coast by the *Moor* and *Arabians*; the In-land parts promiscuously inhabited, especially more towards the Sea, by *Christians* and *Ethiops*. Divided into many inferior Regions, the principal whereof, 1. *Sabian*, 2. *Tarrater*, 3. *Balgada*, so called perhaps from the chief Towns of them, and 4. *Tigrai*, the most large and ample of all these subordinate Provinces, as containing in it 17 great Tracts under so many Lieutenants, which rule all affairs both of Peace and War. The people black of colour, deformed of shape, in condition miserable, of conditions wicked. Some Rivers they have, but dried up in Summer; yet so, that with a little digging they find water in them. Their chief City *Caxumo*, or *Casumo*, supposed to be the same which *Ptolemy* calleth *Axume*; *Stephanus*, *Axomites*, *Procopius*, *Axumide*: by all of them esteemed the Metropolitan City of *Æthiopia*, and the Seat Royal of their Kings. In witness whereof are many ancient buildings yet remaining, some Pillars which resemble the Egyptian *Obelisks*, admirable for their height and workmanship: 60 foot high and full of Characters, or Letters engraven on them, which now none can read. The *Æthiopian* *Axumites*, the most potent Nation of this Country, had their name from hence more probably conceived to be the regal Seat of *Candace*, (mentioned in the *Acts*) than any other in the Kingdom; and still affirmed to be honoured with the Court of their Emperours. Others I know have fixed his Court in *Boimalechi*, but I know not in what part to find it: some in a Royal Palace near the lake of *Zemba*, built in the year 1570, by some *European Architects* sent hither by *Francis Duke of Florence*; and many will allow him no fixed Seat at all, but tell us that he moveth with his Tents in a Royal Progress from one place to another; which wandering Court, or moving City, is said to be no less than ten miles in compass, when the

Pavilion

*Pavilion* which belong to it, are disposed of into Rank and Order.

This Kingdom is governed by a Prince of its own, but one who is an *Honourer* and Tributary to the *Abissine* Emperour; to whom he payeth yearly 200 Horcs of the best *Arabian* breed, infinite quantities of Silks, great store of Cotton-wool, and abundance of Gold; but the determinate proportion I have no where met with.

## 3. ANGOTE.

**ANGOTE** is bounded on the North with *Tigremoon*, on the West with *Nilus*, on the South with the Kingdom of *Amara*, on the East with *Dancalia*, and *Xoa*. Indifferently compounded of Hills and Valleys, both extremely fertile, productive of the choicest Fruits, and great Herds of Cattle. The people cut but once in 24 hours, and for the most part make that Meal in the night; their diet raw Venison, or smoked Beef: the Money most in use amongst them, Salt, Pepper, and Iron. Which custom of using Salt, Pepper, and the like instead of money, was in former times amongst most people the only barter, or way of exchange. So in *Homer*, *Glauco* Golden Armor was valued at an 100 King, and *Diomedes* Armor at 10 only. Afterward in *Julius Commutative*, it was deemed convenient to have some common Judge, or valuation of the equality or inequality of goods: the Invention of which, the *Jews* attributed to *Cain*; the *Greeks* to *Hermes*; the Wife of *Midus*; the *Romans* to *Juno*. It is called *Nannus*, or *Nannus*, from *Nannus*, because it was ordained by the Law: *Pecunia*, either because in elder times the chief of their wealth consisted in Cattle, as now among the *Irish*; or from a *Cow* (*Pecus*) which was stamped on it; and *Moneta*, à *monendo*, as *Suidas* saith, because when the *Romans* stood in need of money, *Juno monens*, *Juno* admonished them that they should use Justice, and there should be no want of money. To this Goddess, *Dea Pecunia*, the *Romans* erected a Temple, and worshipped it in the figure of a Woman, holding a pair of Scales in one hand, and *Cornucopia* in the other: by the Poet called *Regina Pecunia*, and not unly, the greatness of her power considered.

But to return again to *Angote*, I find not much spoken of the Country in the way of story; nor meet I with the names of any of their Towns, or Cities; unless that 1. *Angote* it self, as also 2. *Alugana*, 3. *Ginnamora*, two of the principal Provinces of it, may possibly be so called from their principal Towns, as perhaps they are.

## 4. AMARA.

**AMARA** hath on the North *Angote*; on the South *Dannus*; on the West, it stretcheth towards the Nile; and on the East, bounded with the Realm of *Xoa*. The Country very plain and Champaign, little swelled with Hills, sufficiently fruitful, and well stored with all sorts of Cattle. The chief City of it called *Amara*, by the name of the Province, situate in the midst of the Empire, and though not much distant from the *Æquator*, if not plainly under it, yet blessed with such a temperate Air, such a fruitful Soil, such ravishing pleasures of all sorts, that some have taken (but mistaken) it for the place of *Paradise*: So strangely Heaven, Earth, Nature, and Human Industry have joyned their helps together to enrich and beautify it.

But that which is the greatest Ornament of this Province, and indeed of the whole Empire of *Æthiopia*, is the Mountain *Amara*, situate in a large and delightful Plain: the bottom of the Hill in Circuit 90 miles, and a days journey high; the Rock so smooth and even (but

leffer and leffer towards the top) that no wall can be more evenly polished: the way up to it is cut out within the Rock, through which are divers holes forced to let in the light; so facile of ascent, that one may ride up with great pleasure, and in the midst of the ascent a spacious Hall, as it were to rest in: the top it self is a large Plain, 20 leagues in circuit, compassed with an high wall, to the end that neither man nor beast fall down upon any chancy; beautified towards the South with a rising Hill, out of which issueth a sweet Spring, which watering the several Palaces and Gardens of it, uniteth it self into a Lake for the use of Cattle: the Plain enriched with all sorts, both of fruit and grain; adorned with two magnificent *Magnificer*, in each of which are found 1500 Knights of the Order of *S. Anthony*, a Religious *Militia*; and honoured with 34 Palaces, in which the younger Sons of the Emperour are continually inclosed, to avoid Sedition. They enjoy there whatsoever is fit for delight, or *Princely Education*; and from hence come one of them, who is most hopeful, or best liked, is again brought out, if the Emperour die Son-less, to be made Succesor. This Mountain hath but one ascent up, as before was said, which is impenetrably fortified; and was destitute to this use, Anno 1460, or thereabouts, by the Emperour *Abraham Philip*, advised hereto, as he gave out, by a Heavenly Vision. In one of these Palaces is a famous Library, wherein are said to be many Books, which with us are either in part or totally lost; as the Oracles of *Enoch*, which the *Mysteries* which escaped the Flood, being by him engraven on Pillars: the whole Works of *Livy*, and others. Which being heretofore translated by the *Saracens* into the *Arabic* Tongue (when having plundered all the most famous Libraries of the East and West, they burnt the Originals, out of a Plot to make that Language as Renowned, and as generally studied, as the Greek or *Laine*) are said by some good fortune to be here preserved.

## 5. DAMUT.

**DAMUT** hath on the North *Amara*, on the West *Egamedram*, on the South *Goiomy*; and on the East, the great Lake of *Barcana*, and some part of *Zanquebar*, one of the Provinces of *Æthiopia Exterior*. The Country plentifully furnished with Gold, Ginger, Grapes, Fruits, and living Creatures of all sorts. For none more famed than that for their Slaves, sold in great numbers into *Arabia*, *Egypt*, *Persia*, *India*; and much esteemed by them who buy them, for their abilities in War, dexterity in business, but specially for their fidelity in all things which they undertake. For this cause placed in Offices of great Trust and Power, by many of the Eastern Princes; who using a tyrannical form of Government, and not daring to trust the Sword into the hands of their Subjects, or to advance them unto places of Court, or Council, do for the most part arm these Slaves, and trust them also with the Conduct of their chief Affairs. A trust in which they never falsified, or failed in a true discharge, but when presuming on their power, and those advantages which they got into their hands the Kingdom of *Abissine*, and kept it many years in a Succession of the *Abissine* Slaves, wherewith they still made up their numbers, till outed not long since by the Great Mongol.

The Oxen of this Country are said to be near as great as Elephants; their Horns so large, that they serve as *Tankards* to carry, and as *Barrels* to keep either Wine or water. Here is also said to be a kind of *Unicorn*, very fierce and wild, fashioned like an Horse, but no bigger than an Ass; but we must think these *Unicorns* to be but *Rhinoceros*, or else we shall very much mistake the truth of the matter. And for the

the people (to go to them both over once again) they are for the most part *Gentiles*; some *Christians* intermixt amongst them, who have sundry Monasteries.

To this Kingdom belongeth the Principality of *Coebe*, said to have more Gold in it than all *Pera*; a Mountain all of Gold, if the *Fryers* say true. The people *Gentiles*, but the Prince not long since gained to the Christian Faith into which he was baptized by the *Abbot* or chief Governor of the Monasteries on the Hill *Amara*: *Graden* the Emperour being his Godfather, by whom named *Andrem*. And here they have an Hill of great height, and very difficult ascent; from the top whereof they use to cast headlong such of the Nobility, as by the Emperours sentence are condemned to die. What Towns they have either in that Kingdom, or their Principality, I am not able to resolve, unless, 1. *Damut*, and 2. *Coebe* may be two, and the two most eminent, as giving name to those Estates.

## 6. GOIAMI.

**G O I A M T** hath on the North *Damut*, on the West *Bagamadrum*, on the South and East, some Provinces of the other *Æthiopia*. The Country in the North parts full of *Deserts* and Rocky Mountains, in the residue plentifully furnished with all things necessary. Great store of Gold they find, but *driftie*, the people not knowing how to refine and purify it; or loth here (as in other places of this Empire) to take pains that way, for fear of drawing the *Turks* and *Arabians* to partake of the Booty.

It containeth in it many Rivers, or rather *Torrents*, which come tumbling down the Hills with a mighty violence, and a terrible fall, making a noise, not much inferior to a clap of Thunder: and amongst other *Lakes*, two of special note, which for their greatness seem to be Seas; in which, as some report, *Mermen*, and *Tritons*, or Men-fishes use to shew themselves; and out of which it is thought by others, that the Fountains of *Nilus* do arise; and both true alike. But past all doubt the *Abissines* themselves are of this Opinion; and therefore in the title of *Neguz*, (so they call their Emperour) he is termed King of *Goiamy*, with this addition, *In which are found the Fountains of Nilus*. Deceived alike in their Opinion touching this particular, the Springs or Fountains of that River being further South: though possibly leaving loth himself in these vast *Lakes*, and issuing hence into a more contracted Channel, he may be said to have a second birth from hence, though not the first. And these I take to be the *Lakes* which were discovered by the *Komans* in the time of *Nova*. Who following the deluge of some other great Potentates, *Seslstris*, *Cambyses*, *Alexander*, and *Philadelphus*, in discovering the true Original of this famous River, employed the *Cutarians* in that service; who sided in it by the then King of the *Æthiopians*, are said to have come at last unto certain great *Marishes* (most probably the lower and fildy parts of these *Lakes* now mentioned) of whose extent the Inhabitants themselves were ignorant, not possible to be discovered any further, the Weeds having so overgrown the water, that there was no further passage to be made by Boat, and less by wading.

Extwixt this Country and *Damut*, which we last passed thorow, is said to be a Province of *Amazons*, warlike and hence, and very expert at the Bow; whose Queen knoweth no man, and by the rest honoured as a Goddess. These, they say, were first instituted by the Queen of *Saba* as true, as that which some have added of the *Phœnix* visible in this Country; of *Griffons*, and of *Fœnls* so big, that they make a shadow like a Cloud. Which strange reports I have here added, to supply the

defect of Towns and Cities, of which I meet not with so much as the named names, as undiscovered places in our *Maps* and *Charts*, are filled up with *Monsters*.

## 7. BAGAMEDRUM.

**B A G A M E D R U M**, or **S A G A M E D R U M**, (for I find both names) lieth on the West of *Goiamy*, betwixt the Northern parts thereof, and the River *Nilus*; and keeping all along the course of that River, as far as *Gugere*, or *Meroe*, encounterth with the Southern point of *Barnagasso*; some do extend it also beyond that Island, but making the whole Length thereof but 600 miles, do confute themselves. The greatest Province of this Empire it may probably be, *Ceteris huius Æthiopie amplissimum*, as they say it is; but if extended the whole length of it, it must be 1500 miles, not 600 only.

The Country plentiful in Mines of the purest *Silver*, which they cannot draw thence but by fire, which makes it run like long rods, or ropes of Metal. And yet as large and as wealthy as they say it is, I am more to seek for Towns and rich Cities in it, than in the *Deserts* of *Lilya*, or the sands of *Arabia*. Merchants and Travellers for the most part go no further than the Sea-coasts of the Country, of which they give us more exact and full informations, knowing but little of the In-lands; and of the Natives, (such as have travelled abroad in other Kingdoms, rude and ignorant men, know little more of their own Empire than the place they lived in: Or probably their best Cities not containing above 2000 houses, few of them so many, and those patched up of Thatch, Dirt and Hurdles, (unless some of the Nobility, or Wealthier Merchants are provided better) they may have no greater reason to speak much of them; or to acquaint us with the names of such forty places, as are indeed not worth the naming. Which I conceive to be the true condition of most, or all the In-land Towns in this large Estate.

## 8. BARNAGASSO.

**B A R N A G N E S**, or **B A R N A G A S S U M**, hath on the West *Gugere*, or the Isle of *Meroe*; on the Southwest, as some say, a point of *Bagamadrum*; on the South, *Dangali* and *Adel*; on the East, the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*; on the North it stretcheth towards *Egypt*; the Kingdoms of *Jesulium* and *Saxa*, possessed by the *Mahometans*, being interposed.

The Country very fertile, full of Towns and Villages, and exceedingly well stored with pleasant Rivulets, besides the Neighbourhood of the *Red-Sea* on the one side, *Nile* and *Abambi* on the other. Remarkable for a Mountain in the Western part of it, which being spacious in the beginning, growth strait by little and little, and then enlargeth it self again to a League in Circuit. On the top thereof a Royal Palace, a Church, a Monastery, and two very large Cisterns, with a piece of ground able to entertain and keep 500 men. To be ascended one way only, and that but to a certain mark; to which being come, they are drawn up with Cords and Baskets to the top of all; not to be took by force, by reason of the impossibility of ascent; not by long Siege, or any extremity of Famine, in regard it yields provision enough to maintain it self. Accounted therefore the chief Hold of all this Province against *Turks* and *Moor*.

It containeth besides *Barnagasso* it self, the two Provinces of *Cassila*, and *Dafila*: though rather subject to the Governour or Vice-Roy of it, than parts and members of the same. Towns of most mention in the whole, 1. *Berna*, or *Barna*, conceived by some to be the Colony of *Ptolomy*, the Residence of the Vice-Roy, situate on a retiring

pleasant and fishful River. 2. *Zameta*, honoured sometimes also with the Vice-Roy's presence; but rather as a retiring place in times of leisure, than a Town of strength. 3. *Suaden*, situate in an Island of the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*, one of the richest Cities of the Eastern parts, and beautified with a goodly and capacious Haven, secured by Nature from all storms, of smooth Tides, free Anchorage, and able to receive 300 great Ships of Burden. Situate in a little Island, the whole circumference whereof it taketh up; inasmuch that Vessels of all sorts, both within the Haven, and without, do usually unlade themselves at the doors of the Merchants, to which the Ship-beaks serve for Bridges. A wealthy and well-traded Town, both by Sea and Land, to which from the more In-land parts of the *Abissine* Empire, the Mountains open a safe passage for the carriage and re-carriage of their Commodities. Taken by the *Turks* long since, with all the rest of the Country lying betwixt it and *Egypt*, and made the Seat of a *Turkish* Beglerbeg, or *Bassa*; whom in imitation of the *Romans*, they call the Beglerbeg of *Abissia*; as if by the possession of this small part of the Empire, they would entice the Grand Seigneur unto the rest. The Town conceived by some to be that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Ostium Sebasticum*, or rather *Sebaiticum*, as called by *Strabo*. Others will have it to be the *Ptolomæa Ferarum*, or the *Epiberia*, as *Pliny* calleth it of the Ancient Writers. And some again will have it to be the *Sucebe* of *Pliny*, by whom reckoned among the Cities of the *Troglodytes* (who are called *Sucebei* in the Scriptures, as before was noted) in whole part of the Country it is seated, and to which name it hath some resemblance. 4. *Bisam*, not far from *Erocco*, remarkable for a Monastery situate on the top of a high Rock, environed with dreadful Precipices upon every side, in which live 3000 Monks, eating by three and three together, in a common Refectory: this being the chief of six others in this Province of *Barnagasso*, the furthest not above 30 miles distant. For maintenance of whom, and a great number of poor Children which they daily feed, besides the Riches of all the Mountain in which it standeth (fruitful and rich, and at least 30 Miles in compass) they have many good Farms at the Foot of the said Mountain, and an hundred small villages appertaining to them, out of which they raise yearly great provision of Corn, and above 2000 head of Cattel; their Revenues out of *Tigremann* being reckoned in. A Revenue able to maintain them and their Hospitality in regard their *NoVICES*, or young *Monks* are first abroad to earn their living, or to manure their Lands, and attend the Husbandry of the House: the Elder only being found at the charge of the Monastery, though all alike bound to the performance of Religious Offices. 5. *Erocco*, another noted Port on the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*, to which a passage openeth through the Straits of the Mountains, as it doth to *Suaden*, conceived to be the *Adulis* of *Ptolomy*, the *Adulion* of *Pliny*, now in possession of the *Turks*, or at their command. 6. *Santar*, 7. *Gabel*, 8. *Laccari*, and 9. *Abarrach*: these four last in the Province of *Dafila*. This Country at the present, and for long time past, is subject both to the great *Neguz*, or the *Protigian* of *Æthiopia*, and the Grand Seigneur of the *Turks*; naturally subject to the one, and tributary to the other. Governed by the chief of their own, whom they call *Barnagassu*, by the name of his Province, a Vassal and an Homager to the *Æthiopian*; to whom he payeth the yearly Tribute of 150 of the best breed of Horses, besides some quantities of Silks, and some other Commodities: but so ill-neighbour'd by the *Turks*, that he is fain to pay also to the Beglerbeg or *Bassa* resident at *Suaden*, 1000 ounces of Gold yearly for a Composition. For the *Turks* having by the Conquest of *Egypt* made themselves Masters of those Countries towards *Æthiopia*, which formerly were allied to, or confederate with the *Mameluck* Sultans; within short time (viz. An. 1558.) possessed themselves also of the Town of *Suaden*, and the parts adjoining; made it the residence of one of their Beglerbegs or *Bassas*, and gave him the title of Beglerbeg of *Abissia*, as before was said: forgot by the industrious Collector of the *Turkish History*, in his enumeration of the Beglerbegs or *Bassas* of *Africke*. To this they added not long after, all the rest of the Sea-Coasts, and the Port of *Erocco*; and not content therewith, after some short breathing made a further inroad; in which they did fo waste the Country, that in the end they compelled the *Barnagassian* (not being aided by the *Neguz*) to this composition.

## 9. DANGALI, and 10. DOBAZ.

South and South-East of *Barnagasso*, lie the two Kingdoms of *DANGALI* and *DORAS*; that of *Dangali* bordering on the *Red-Sea*, the other more within the Land: both of them held by the *Mahometans*, or *Arabian Moors*, both in continual enmity with the *Abissine* Emperours, and both of like nature, in regard of the soil and people.

**DANGALI** hath on the North, *Barnagasso*; on the South, some part of the Kingdom of *Adel*; on the East, the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*; on the West, *Dobaz* before-mentioned. It taketh up some part of the *Arabick Bay*, within the Straits of *Babel-Mandeb*, and without those Straits, the greatest part of that spacious Bay, which anciently was called *Sinæ Avalitionis*, as far as to the Promontory then called *Myslon*, (neighbour'd by a noted Empery of the same name) now the Cape of *Doonax*; near unto which the Sea makes a little Gulf, and suddenly straiteneth it self again; so as the Channel cannot be above ten or twelve leagues broad. And in this Channel are five or six Islands, which hinder the passage, so as Sailors must have good experience to avoid the Rocks which lie near those Islands.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Sebi*, or *Babel*, which gives name to the Straits of *Babel-Mandeb*, a narrow Frith, opening out of the Bay of *Arabia* into the *Æthiopian* or *Indian Ocean*. 2. *Vella*, a well frequented Port, conceived to be the same which *Strabo* calleth *Antipolia*, not found by that name in *Ptolomy*. 3. *Zugani*, 4. and 5. *Zama*, in a Province of this Kingdom called *Lamra*. 6. *Doonax*, near the Cape so called, and therefore probably the *Myslon* of the ancient Writers. 6. *Dangali*, not far from the Sea-side, which gives name to the Kingdom. Nothing else memorable of this Kingdom, but that there are in it two great *Lakes*, wherein live *Crocodiles*, as in *Nilus*.

On the South-West of *Dangali* lieth the Realm of *DORAS*, extended on the West to the borders of *Angot*. The Country large, containing twelve, or as some say, 24 several Prefectures. Of fo good Pasturage, that the Kine hereof are of greater size than in other places, and those for number not easily matched in all this Empire. The people much professed Enemies of the *Christian* Faith, that they suffer not any man to marry, till he hath killed 12 *Christians*. Some reckon them for *Tributaries* to the *Prete*, or *Neguz*; but it is only when they lift it so far from being *Contributors* towards the support of his Estate, that they take from him what they can. The chief of their Towns, 1. *Dobaz*, which gave name to the whole Kingdom. 2. *Baba*, upon the same River on which *Dobaz* standeth, but more near the head.

## 11. ADEL.

**ADEL** is bounded on the North with some parts *Dangali*, and the *Red-Sea*; on the South, with *Ades* on the East, with the *Red-Sea*, and the *Indian or Arabian Ocean*; on the East, with *Fatigar*; extended on the Sea-Coast from the Cape of *Dooona*, to the Cape of *Guardafiu*, conceived most probably to be the *Aromatis* of *Ptolomy*, a noted Promontory in his time.

The Country plentiful of Flesh, Honey, Wax, Corn, Gold, and Ivory; great flocks of Sheep, & many of those Sheep of such burdened Fleeces, that their tails weigh 25 pounds. Some Kine they have, which have horns like 25 Stags; others but one horn only, and that in the forehead, about a foot and an half long, but bending backwards. The people inhabiting on the Sea-Coasts are of *Arabian* Parentage, and of the *Mahometan* Religion; those towards the Inland Countries, of the old *Ethiopian* Race, and wholly *Cottile*.

Chief Towns heretof, 1. *Zeila*, a noted Port-Town, situate in or near the place where *Ptolomy* placeth *Avaliter*: stored with variety of Merchandise, and yielding some representation of Antiquity in the building thereof, being Lime and Stone; materials not much used amongst them in the latter times. Of great both beauty and esteem, till the year 1516, when sacked and burnt by the *Portugals*, before that time the most noted Empory of all *Æthiopia* for the *Indian Trade*. 2. *Barbora*, seated on the same Sea-Coast, well frequented by Merchants, and possibly may be the *Mandi* or *Mulao* of *Ptolomy*; neighboured by a lofty Promontory, which they call *Mount Felax*. 3. *Mette*, another of the Sea-Towns near the Cape of *Guardafiu*, supposed to be the *Aene* of the Ancient Writers. 4. *Alfon*, 5. *Selir*, and 6. *Bidar*, on the Sea-Coasts also. 7. *Arar*, the principal of the Kingdom, more within the Land, and about 38 Leagues from *Zeila*.

This Country, formerly a member of the *Ethiopian* Empire, is of late grown to so great strength and reputation, that the Kings heretof have freed themselves from all signs of subjection to that Crown, and think themselves the mightier Princes of the two. Advanced to this repute and power by *Gradigna*, or *Gradameth*, who reigned here in the year 1540, by whom *Claudian* the *Negus* was so overhaid, and his Country so destroyed by continual Incursions, that he was forced to abandon his Frontiers, retire himself into the heart of his Estates, and crave Aid of the *Portugals*. And though by their assistance, and in the help of their Shot, he was twice victorious; yet in the third battle he was vanquished, and in the fourth, Anno 1559, slain upon the place. This King accounted for a *Sunt* by the *Moors* and *Saracens*, in regard of his continual Wars against the *Christians*, did so establish the Affairs of his little Kingdom, and left it to well settled unto his Successors, that the *Abissine* Emperor hath ever since left it out of his Titles; though many other of those small Kingdoms are reckoned in the *Imperial Stile*, in which he hath as little power as he hath in this. It is said also, That in the battle wherein *Claudian* was slain, and his Army routed, consisting of 60000 Foot, 5000 Horse of his own Subjects, besides the *Portugals*, the King of *Adel* got into his possession the greatest mass of Coin and Treasure that was ever seen. A Victory obtained as well by Policy as Force: the *Abissine* being seldom fought with, or their Country wasted and depopulated by the Kings of *Adel*, till by the strict observance of their *Lenten Fast*, they were grown so weak, that they were not able to discharge their domestick businesses, and therefore most unable to resist a prevailing Enemy.

## 12. ADEA.

**ADEA**, or **ABEX**, as some call it, hath on the North the Kingdom of *Adel*; on the South and West, some parts of the *Abissine* Empire; on the East, the Sea. Extended from the Cape of *Guardafiu*, where it joyneth with *Adel*, along the greatest part of the Bay, called of old *Sinus Barbaricus*; of the realm of which name hereafter.

The Country plentifully fertile, shaded with Woods and spacious Forrests, and those Woods liberally furnished both with Fruits and Cattel; the *Champagne* Country not less fruitful in Wheat, Barley, and other necessaries, besides a great store of Horfes. The people of an *Olive-colour*, in some places more inclined to black: not clothed, but from the Girdle downward; nor very well armed in the time of War, but with poisoned Arrows; *Mahometans* in Religion, *Arabians* by original Extraction, whose language they retain with some little difference in pronunciation.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Ades*, which gives name to the whole Kingdom, because of the old residence of the Kings. 2. *Casir*, upon the Sea-Coast, sometimes called *Opon*, then a noted Empory, and situate near the Promontory called *Zingis extrema*. 3. *Azan*, and 4. *Zazelle*, supposed to be the *Hoffna* and *Tonica* of the Ancient Writers. 5. *Magadazo*, a petty Kingdom of it self a wealthy and well traded Town, situate in a fruitful and delightful soil, and neighboured by a safe and capacious Haven: much traded by the *Portugals*, who bring from *Ades* in *Arabia Felix*, and *Cambodia* in India, their Spices, Silks, and other Indian Commodities; which here they barter and exchange for Honey, Wax, Gold, and *Abissine Slaves*, which last they value as the chiefest Merchandise which this Country yieldeth. First built by some *Arabian Moor*, who flying from the King of *Lava* their Mortal Enemy, under the Conduct of seven Brethren, came into these parts, where they founded this City, and that of *Barus* in the Province of *Barus*, of which more hereafter.

The Inhabitants are originally of *Arabia*, as before was said; who many hundred years ago became Lords of all the Sea-Coasts of both *Æthiopia's*, as far as to the Cape *Des Carientes*, which is somewhat to the South of the *Tropic of Capricorn*. The Kings heretof in former times *Vassals* to the *Abissine* Emperor, to whom they paid a yearly tribute; this Kingdom still remaining amongst his Titles: but since the taking of *Magadazo*, made it obnoxious to the power and command of the *Portugals*, that the Estate of the *Abissine* in it is but merely titular.

## 13. FATIGAR, and 14. XOA.

**FATIGAR** hath on the East *Adel*, and some part of *Ades*; on the West, the little Realm of *Xas*; on the South, *Barus*, another Province of this Empire. The Country *Champagne*, sufficiently fruitful of Corn and Cattel, not meanly furnished with pleasant and delicious Fruits. Most memorable for a Lake of twelve miles in compass, on the top of a Mountain, well stored with Fish; from whence and from the rest of the Mountain issue many Rivers, which much enrich the Vallies and Fields adjoining. The chief Town heretof (if any one be better than another) conceived to be *Fatigar*, giving this name unto the Kingdom, or so called from it.

Westward of *Fatigar*, lieth the little Realm of *XOA*, bordering West on *Anara*; Southward upon *Damti*; furnished with great store of Corn and Cattel, but not much

much beautified with Towns of any consideration. Nothing observable in the History or description of it, but that together with *Fatigar*, and others of the Mid-land Provinces, it hath continued constant in obedience to the *Abissine* Emperors, notwithstanding all those misadventures which have hapned to that Empire in these latter days.

## 15. BARUS.

**ON** the South-East of *Ades*, lieth the Province of *BARUS*, extended Eastward to some part of that of *Fatigar*. The soil and people much of the same condition with the rest of *Æthiopia*. *Mahometans* upon the Shores, but *Christians* subject (as the rest) to the *Abissine* Emperor; but he hath neither place of strength or consideration in all the Country; those of most note, 1. *Brava*, once a Free Town, and governed after the manner of a Commonwealth, by twelve Aldermen or Common-Councillors, descended from the Seven *Arabian Brethren*, by whom first built; the Founders of *Magadazo* also, as before was said. But now, together with 2. *Pate*, and 3. *Gogia*, all upon the Sea, made subject to the *Portugals*; by whom taken under the Conduct of *Tristram de Gogus*.

Besides these, there are many other Kingdoms mustered in the *Stile Imperial*, (the swelling vanity whereof, we shall see anon) but of so little observation in the course of business, and so obscure in the esteem of such as have spoken of them, that it is enough to tell you where to find their names; and having found their names, to bid you not to seek for more; there being nothing else in them which is worth the knowing.

As for the Body aggregated of those several Members, it was first planted, as is noted and proved elsewhere, by *Ludim* the Son of *Mizeram*, and the Nephew of *Cham*: from whence this Nation in the Scripture hath the name of *Ludim*. A Nation not much taken notice of in the first Ages of time, but by an Error of *Josephus*: who giving too much credit to some *Talmudical* Tales, or willing to advance the reputation of the Jews to the highest pitch, telleth us a story, how the *Ethiopians* invaded and endangered Egypt, how they were beaten back by *Moses*; the City of *Meroe* besieged and taken by him, or rather delivered to his hands by *Tharbis*, the Daughter of the King, who had fallen in love with him, and on the betraying of the City was married to him. All this not only questioned, but rejected by discerning men, as a Jewish Fable, that hath no ground to stand upon in true Antiquity. With little better fortune, and as little truth do the *Ethiopians* tell the story of their own *Original*. By whom we are informed, that *Chus* the Son of *Cham*, first reigned in this *Æthiopia*; to whom succeeded his Son *Regma*, and next after, *Dedan*; that from the death of *Dedan*, till the reign of *Arach* (the certain time whereof they tell not) the people lived in Caves and holes digged under the ground; as did the *Troglodytes*, an ancient Nation of this Country, in the times long after that *Arach* first built the City of *Aruma*, and by that Pattern taught them the use of Towns and Cities. But the main part of the Legend, is the story of *Marquada* a Queen heretof, and fourth from *Arach*; whom they will have to be the Queen of *Sheba*, famous in both Testaments, for the Royal Visit which the belovèd upon *Solomon*. Of whom they tell us, that being got with Child by *Solomon* when she was in his Court, it was delivered of a Son, whom the cauld to be called *Melech*, or *Milech*, and at the age of 20 years, to be sent to his Father. By whom instructed in the Law, and circumsized, and called by the name of *David*; he was returned into

his Country, with *Azarias* the Son of *Zadok* the Priest, who had stolen the two Tables of the Law, and carried them with him into *Æthiopia*; where the old Queen reigned the Empire to her Son. His Successors afterwards called *David*, till *Indim*. (as they call him) the Eunuch of Queen *Candace*, returning home, baptized the young Prince by the name of *Philip*. This is the substance of the Legend, as related by them in their own Chronicles (but we know that they are no Gospel). That *Chus* planted in *Arabia*, hath been shew already, as also what absurdities must needs arise from supposing the Land of *Chus* to be this *Æthiopia*. Therefore most probable it is, that this Country was first peopled by the Children of *Ludim*, as before was said. To whom the *Abissines* coming out of *Arabia Felix*, might be after added; and in some tract of time be of such great power as to put their name upon the Country. For that the *Abissines* were originally an *Arabian* people, appears by *Stephannus*, one of the old *Chorographers*, who out of *Oranus* (an ancient Author than himself) hath told us this, *Ἀσάνωι ὁ ὄνομα Ἀβισσινῶν*. Another *Stephannus*, and he a very learned Grammarian and Lexicographer, hath, as he thinks, decided the Controversy, by making *Sheba* the Son of *Chus*, the Progenitor of the *Arabians*; and *Sheba* the Son of *Regma*, the Father of the *Ethiopians*: and for this cause hath cited us with this pretty Criticism, that *Sheba* when it is written with *Samech*, must be rendered *Ethiopia*; and *Arabia*, when written with *Shin*. But this by no means will be found to agree the controversy; it being evidently clear, that both *Sheba* the Son of *Chus*, and *Sheba* the Son of *Regma*, were originally settled in *Arabia*, as hath there been shewn; though I deny not, but that some of the posterity of *Chus* in those elder times, (before the coming over of the *Abissine* Nations) might either out of too much Popularity, or desire of Change, cross over the *Arabian* Gulf, and take up such part of this Country as the *Ludims* had not fully peopled, with whom conjunct at last, both in name and government. And for *Marquada* (supposing that to be her name) she was doubtless Queen of the *Sabeans* in *Arabia Felix*, not of the *Ethiopians* in the waste of *Africk*. For besides the longfornness of the way, too much for a Woman and a Queen to travel; it is very probable, that the Son of *Solomon* into this Lady would never have suffered Egypt to have lain in quiet, whilst *Syrie* the King thereof made war upon *Rebhomam*, the Son of *Solomon* also, and so by consequence his half Brother. But to leave these uncertain Fables, the first action of moment which we meet with in unquestioned Story, touching these *Ethiopian*, is that which hapned betwixt them and *Cambyses* the Persian Monarch; who having by force of Arms united Egypt to Persia, conceived it to be worth his labour to unite *Æthiopia* unto Egypt also. Upon this resolution he sent Embassadors to that King, to search into the passages of his Country, and discover his strengths; and by them sent a Tun of Wine, some Bracelets, a Purple Habit, and a Box of sweet Ointments, to present him with. Which Presents being tendered to him, he looked upon the Unguent and the Purple Robe, as too slight and effeminate: the Bracelets he conceived to be Bonds, or Fetters, and openly laugh'd at them, as too weak to hold in a Prisoner: but with the Wine he was very well pleased, and sorrow'd that his Country yielded no such Liquor. But understanding well enough what his Visit aimed at, he gave the Embassadors at their parting (amongst other Gifts) an *Ethiopian* Bow of great length and strength; requiring them to tell their Master, That until every Persian could bend that Bow (the *Ethiopian* Bows being a foot longer than the Persian, as before was noted) it would be no life warring upon his Dominions; and that he had good cause to thank the Gods for giving the *Ethiopians* to

contented minds; as not to think of conquering their Neighbouring Kingdoms. Lying far off, and parted from Egypt by vast Mountains, we find them not looked after by the Macedonians. Nor had the Romans meddled with them; had they not been provoked by Candace, the Queen herself, during the Empire of Augustus: who having made a War on Egypt, was by Petronius, Governor of that Province, brought to such conformity, that the was fain to sue for peace, and to purchase it with the loss of some part of her Country. To keep them quiet for the future, Philo an Æthiopian City, but on the borders of Egypt, is made a Garrison by the Romans, and the Seat of their Deputy for these parts: held by them till the Empire of Dioclesian, and by him abandoned, because the charge of keeping it did exceed the profit. After this, growing into power and reputation, the Æthiopian Kings were reckoned of as friends to the Roman Empire: innumerable as Justinian sent unto Heliodorus, as Justin his Successor did unto Archetes, the then Kings of this Country: to crave their brotherly assistance against the Persians.

Of their Conversion to the Faith in the Reign of a second Candace, (unless as Pline thinketh, Candace was the general Name of all their Queens) we have spoken already. To name the Æthiopian said, that after the baptizing of their first Philip (the Son of that Candace) by the hands of the Eunuch, the Emperours succeeding had the name of Philip: till the Religious life of John, a Contemporary of the Emperour Constantine, honoured as a Saint after his decease, made them take his name. Some building upon this Tradition, have to the name of John, prefixed that of Presbyter, because (as they affirm) he executed as well the *Sacerdotal* as the *Regal Office*; *Res idem bonum, Divinus Sacerdos, the very Annu* of the Poet. And this is commonly received, that he is vulgarly called by the name of *Prester John*, and his Estate, the Empire of *Prester John*, with no truth at all. Others more probably conceive, that this vulgar name of *Prester John*, is but a corruption, or mistaken for *Preterian* (or *Preterian*) John; and that the word *Preter* (by which his Subjects call him) importeth no less. And yet I more incline to those, who holding that the word *Prester* signifieth an *Apostle*, in the Persian Tongue; and *Preterian* an *Apostolical man* do thereupon infer, that the title of *Padescha Presterian*, an *Apostolical King*, was given unto him for the *Orthodoxy* of his Belief. Which not being understood by some, instead of *Presterian*, as they like made *Preist John*, in Latin *Prester John* as by a like mistake, one *Pregon*, or *Pogran*, (as the French pronounce it) Commander of some Gallies called under Lewis the XII. was by the English of those times called *Prior John*. *Presterian* then, not *Preist John*, is his proper adjunct; contractedly, but commonly called the *Prete*, by the Modern French, who usually leave out before a *Consonant*. Their Empire greater heretofore, than it is at the present, thrice impaired of late times by the *Turky* and *Arabians*. Of which the first have taken from him all his Country, from the Life of *Meroe* unto Egypt, with all the Sea-coasts of *Barnagasso*; the latter as much encroaching on them, on the rest of the *Maritime* parts of his Dominions. But from none have they suffered more than the Kings of *Adel*, who their King in battle: not cured of those wounds to this very day. For *Adam*, who succeeded *Claudius* that was slain in battle, was so far from being able to revenge the death of his Predecessor, that being suspected to incline to *Mahometanism*, he was defeated by the under-King of *Barnagasso*. Since which time they have so languished by intestine difficulties, that though *Alexander* the Third (if there were ever such a King, which I find much doubted) is said to have settled his affairs by the aid of the *Portugals*, and that

some strange successes have been since reported of a later Emperour: yet the truth is, that the Estate heretofore had been so imbroiled in Civil Wars, and so many of their Emperours successively murdered, that the power and reputation of it is exceedingly weakened, and the Country made a prey to impuissant Enemies. For in the year 1603, the Emperour *Maleb Gada*, who succeeded in the Throne by the deposition and imprisonment of his Predecessor, (under colour of *Baltardy* was not long after slain by one *Zezelezeus*: and *James* or *Jacob*, advanced unto the Empire: *James* not long after vanquished, and slain in the fields of *Guera*, by one *Sazingius* (contractedly by some called *Sufnean*) his three Sons being forced to fly to provide for safety. What became of the two Eldest, I have no where found. The youngest, called *Zaga Christos*, after many hazardous wanderings and accidents, arrived at last into Italy, and thence he came to *Paris*, Anno 1638, where he was entertained in the quality of a Prince, but without hope of being restored to the Throne of his Fathers: for *Sazingius*, or *Sufnean*, immediately upon the victory, had possessed himself of the whole Empire; though for a time so terribly disquieted with Treasons and Conspiracies, that in the year 1607, he was fain to sue for aid to the King of Spain, and tender a submission of the *Abissine* Churches to the Pope of *Rome*. But the spirit of Rebellion being conjured up, could not so easily be laid down, (though there followed a long calm between) but that it broke out again within few years after (that is to say, about the year 1628,) more violently than it did before: a powerful Rebel starting up, who followed by an Army of 50000, had questionless dispossessed the *Prete* of his whole Dominions, if not prevented and discomfited beyond expectation. For it happened, that one *Vernille*, a *Frenchman*, a Jeweller by Trade, but exercised in the wars of *Holland*, understanding that the *Abissine* Emperors was much delighted with the Rarities and Jewels of *France*, found means to convey himself into the Court, where understanding the great danger which that great Emperour was in, and the ignorance as well of the good Subjects, as of the Rebels, in the Arts of War, he got leave to have the disciplining or training of 80000 men, with which small Army, he utterly discomfited and routed that vast body of Rebels, and was thereupon deservedly made Commander in Chief of all the Forces of the Empire. This is the last News of any certainty that hath come from thence: (it being Anno 1634, in which that Victory was obtained) but that there hath been a report of some new Conventions, Anno 1648, the particulars and truth whereof, must be sought elsewhere.

Yet notwithstanding these disasters, these late Emperours have still preserved their Majesty among their Subjects whom they hold in Servitude enough, though they keep not such a distance as in former Ages, when the *Prete* was honoured as a God, and used to show himself but thrice in a year, viz. on Christmas, Easter, and Holywood-day: by which retiredness it was thought that he made his presence more acceptable: some holding nothing to be more derogatory from the Majesty of a King, than to make himself too common an object for the eye of the Vulgar. The like kind of state was once kept by those Kings of *France* of the first *Merovingian* line; who withdrawing themselves from all publick affairs, used only to shew themselves (as we have already said) on May-day. A greater retiredness than this, was that which *Velledy* Queen of the *Tugheti*, (a people of the *Rhine*) is reported by *Tacitus* to have used; for when the rest of the *Germans* then in Arms, sent Ambassadors to her to inform her of their Victory against the *Romans*, they were prohibited either to speak to her, or to see her; *Arcebatum aspectu, quo venerationis plus indiget*. Such a keeping of State the Politick Prince *Tiberius* used. Such a keeping of State the Politick Prince *Tiberius* used. Such a keeping of State the Politick Prince *Tiberius* used. him self

himself to see them pacified, but sent his Son; and the reason was, *quia majestati major e longinquo reverentia*. And no doubt, the same keeping of distance swayed much with him, when he forsook *Rome*, and kept Court privately at *Caprea*: though I deny not, but a propensity to follow his unnatural pleasures the more securely, together with his deformities on his face, had also their powers upon his resolution.

The Title of this great and mighty Emperour, but neither so great or mighty in power as title) runneth thus: *N. N. Supreme of his Kingdoms, and the beloved of GOD, the Pillar of Faith, spring from the Stock of Judah, the Son of David, the Son of Solomon, the Son of the Column of Sion, the Son of the Seed of Jacob, the Son of the hand of Mary, the Son of Nahu after the flesh, the Son of St. Peter and Paul after the Spirit; Emperour of the Higher and Lesser Æthiopia, and of the most mighty Kingdoms, Dominions and Countries of Xoa, Goo, Caffares, Fatigar, Angote, Balagnato, Adea, Vangne, Goyami, where are the fountains of Nile, Amara, Bangamedron, Ambica, Vangucum, Tigreman, Sabaim, the birth-place of the Queen of Saba, Barnagassum; and Lord of all the Regions under the Confiner of Egypt.*

It seemeth by this Title, that these Æthiopian Emperours, however the truth of Story goeth, conceive themselves to be sprung from *Solomon* and *Maqueda*, (or *Nizandae*, as *Joseph* nameth her) the Queen of the South. For better confirmation whereof, it is by some reported, that the Arms of this Kingdom are the same with those of the Tribe of *Judah*, which area *Lyon Rampant* in a Field Or, and that the Motto of them is to this effect, viz. *The Lyon of the Tribe of Judah shall overcome*. But *Bara*, an expert Herald, giveth this Prince no such Coat-Armour; his Arms, according to him, being *Luna*, a Cross Portate *Mari*, charged with a Crucifix *Sol*, between two Scourges of the Second. And yet not altogether to discredit the old Tradition so generally received amongst them; it may be probable enough, that when the *Abissins* came into Æthiopia, some of the *Sabeans* their next Neighbours, came along for company, and amongst them some of the *Royal Race* of the Queen of *Sheba*; with some of which, by reason of their great Nobility, some of the *Abissins* Emperours might think fit to match. Nor is it any matter of impossibility, but that *Solomon* (considering his course of life) might give a Son upon the body of that Queen, from whom the Æthiopian Princes might be thus descended.

As for the Government of these Emperours, it is absolutely *Regal*, or to say better, perfectly *Despotic*: the people being treated by them more like Slaves than Subjects; taking away *Seigniories*, and giving them unto whom he pleaseth, the deprived party not daring to express the least discontent. By them so reverenced, that it was anciently a custom, if the King were blind, or lame, or maimed, for the Subject to inflict on his own body the like *impresion*: still had in so much honour by the greatest Subject, that at his barename they bow their bodies, and touch the ground with one of their fingers and reverence his *Person* as they pass by, though he be not in it. He on the other side seldom appeareth to his Subjects, but with his Crown upon his head, and a *Silver Crucifix* in his hand; his face then covered with a piece of *Watches-Taffata*, which he lifteth up and putteth down, according as he is minded to grace the party with whom he talketh.

As for his Forces and Revenue, some of our late Observators speak nothing but wonders. Some say his Empire reacheth from the Red-Sea to the Atlantic Ocean, and from one Tropick to the other: Some, that he is of so great

Riches, that he is able to purchase a moiety of all the world, if it were to be sold; others, that he is able to raise for any present service a Million of Men. And he himself is said to have offered to the *Portugals* one million of Money, and another of Men, if they would employ it in a war against the *Infidels*. But notwithstanding these great brags, I cannot think this Emperour to be such a *Miracle* as some of these reports have made him. For they that speak most knowingly of his Revenue, affirm, that the ordinary expences of his Court and Army being discharged, he collecteth up but three Millions of Crowns per annum; which is no great matter: and upon extraordinary emergencies of War and Trouble, will be easily waited, or brought into a narrower compals. And yet to make up this Revenue, besides the Crown-Lands, or *Domain Imperial*, he layeth some Tax or other upon every house, receiveth the Tenth of all that is digged out of their Mines; and leviech on the great Lords the Revenue of any one of their Towns, which he pleaseth to chuse, so be not that in which the Lords themselves inhabit.

This, thought he be no great *Intrada*, considering the large extent of his Dominions, and Form of this Government; yet it is greater in proportion than his Forces are. For notwithstanding the report of *Alvarez*, and his own great brag of raising a Million of Men for present service; it is well known, that he was never able to advance half that number in his greatest necessity; and amongst those whom he can raise, there are but few who can deserve the name of Souldiers. For the People being poor and beggarly, and brought up in a servile and base condition, are naturally destitute of that courageous alacrity of spirit which should be in men pressing Arms, or fit for Noble Undertakings, and are besides, uncertain *Jealous* of State, so diffused from War, that they know not how to use their Weapons, when there is occasion. So that for my part, I consider him as a weak and impuissant Prince, of no authority or influence over his Dominions; nor able to defend himself from the continual Incurfions of his Neighbours (some of them mean and petty Princes) which lie nearest to him. *Landed* on every side from Traffic and Commerce with the Seas; incroached upon Northward by the *Turky*; confronted on the West by the King of *Barnao*, who possesseth not a tenth part of the Land of *Negros*; on the East, continually bearded and bafled by the King of *Adel*, sometimes a Vassal of his own; and on the South with the *Galle*, a barbarous Nation of the other Æthiopia, who lay all waste before them wherever they come; and finally in the latter time by his own Subjects. Injuries not to be endured, had he power to help it.

But the chief stay of this Estate, is an Order of Knights, entitled by the name of *St. Anthony*, to which every Father that is of the degree of a Gentleman, is to dedicate one of his Sons, if he have above two, but not the eldest, and out of these they call about 12000 Horse, which are to be the standing Guard of the Emperour's person: to preserve Religion, and to make head against the Enemies of the Faith. The *Abbots* of this Order (for it is partly Religious, partly Military) live in the Mountain of *Amara*, where they have two Monasteries, as well for the training up of these Knights in the time of their youth, as their retirement when grown old, and discharged from service.

The Arms of this Empire we have seen before.

And so much for ÆTHIOPIA SUPERIOR.

OF

## ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR.

ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR is bounded on the East with the Red-Sea, (that name extending from the bottom of the Gulph of Arabia, to the Southern Ocean) on the West, with the Æthiopic Ocean; on the North with Terra Nigritarum, and the Higher Æthiopia; and on the South, where it endeth in a point or Conus, with the Main Ocean, parting it from the Southern undiscovers Continent.

It was called Æthiopia for the reason before delivered; Inferior was added for distinction sake, because somewhat of a lower situation than the other is. By Ptolemy called Æthiopia Interior, because lying more within the Land, and remote from knowledge, than the nearer did: and by late Writers, for the contrary reason, called Æthiopia Exterior, because situate without and beyond the other.

It comprehendeth all Ptolemy's Æthiopia Interior, part of his Æthiopia sub Ægypto, and all those Lands to him unknown, which he giveth us under the name of Terra Incognita. The Country so little discovered in those elder times, that we find mention only of some eminent Mountains, as 1. Gandia, 2. Lon, 3. Ziphia, 4. Bardia, 5. Mafchi, one only Region known by name, called Agifimba, and of that nothing but the name, and that it was a Province of a large extent. The People not distinguished here as in other places, by their Tribes and Families; but only by their kind of diet; some of them being called Antiprophagi, from their eating of men; and others Ichthyophagi, from their living on fish. Of these, the first inhabited on the Eastern shores, near the Bay of Barbaria; the principal of which had the name of Rapti: the last on the shores of the Western Ocean, near Magnus Sinus, or the Great Bay; called also from their Western situation, by the name of Hesperii. Nothing else told us of these parts by the Ancient Writers, but that the Lakes or Fens of Nilus were occasioned by the great abundance of Snow, which fell from the Mountains of the Mon: and that in many parts heretofore, there were Rhinoceros, Tygers, Elephants, but these last all white.

Such was the face of this Country in those elder days. The Character of it at the present, generally and in brief, is thus given by Aubanus, viz. That it is Mountains in the West, Sandy in the middle, and Desert towards the East. But for the several qualities of the soil and people, being of very different tempers; we shall give the better description of them in their several Inclinations, then as presented thus in common. In the mean time to take a view of the Hills and Rivers of most reckoning in it; the principal of their Mountains are, 1. those called Camtaberri in the Province of Angola; 2. Lume Montes, formerly accounted for the boundary of both Æthiopia's, now found to belong to this alone. A Chain of Hills, but known by no particular name, lying under the Tropick of Capricorn; full of sharp Rocks of an incredible height, and inhabited by a barbarous and savage people: the Valleys underneath of so great a depth, that they seem to emulate the Mountains.

In this Country is the Lake of Zembre, so much renowned for giving birth to the greatest Rivers of the World; thought it fell but 50 miles in compass. For out of the abundance hereof flow the famous Rivers, 1. Nilus, which passing through some part of this Country, and traversing the whole length of the Abassin and Egyptian Empires, endeth its long course in the Mediterranean. 2. Zaire, the greatest of all Africa, but unknown to the Ancients, which running Westward through the Kingdoms of Manicongo, and taking in the lesser Streams of 1. Vamba, 2. Barbelo, 3. Coanza, 4. Lelunda, makes many Islands in his way, and at the last by a mouth of 28 miles wideness, disgorgeth his full stomach in the Western Ocean. 3. Cuama, which making his passage towards the East, and much increased by the addition of six great Rivers, after a long course of 700 miles (in all which it is Navigable) loseth it self in the Indian or Arabian Ocean; and 4. Fluvius Spiritus Sancti, or the River of the Holy Ghost, which shaping a course opposite unto that of Nilus, endeth it in conclusion in the Southern Seas. It is divided most properly into three parts, that is to say, 1. Zanguebar, 2. Monomotapa, 3. Caffaria, 4. Manicongo. Some also add the Country of Ada, subdivided into the two Kingdoms of Adal and Ada. But these we have ascribed with better reason to the other Æthiopia, within the Bounds whereof they are wholly situate.

## 1. ZANGUEBAR.

ZANGUEBAR, or ZANZIBAR, is bounded on the East with the Red-Sea, or the Indian Ocean, and on the West with the Kingdoms of Manicongo, and part of the other Æthiopia; on the North with the Higher Æthiopia only; on the South with Monomotapa. The reason of the name I find not.

It contained in it the great Province of Agifimba, placed by the old Writers in Æthiopia Interior, and in so much of the other also as lieth on the South of the River Raptus; now called Quilimanci, by which parted from the Kingdoms of Adal and Adia. The Country on both sides of that River, known in old times by the name of Barbaria, giveth to a large adjoining Bay the name of Sinus Barbaricus, and was much famed in those Elder Times for the best sort of Myrrh: the Myrrha Tridactica, and Myrrha Barbara, or Barbarica, being used for the same by some of the Ancients, because the Tragelodites, and the people of this Barbaria joynd one another. Here was also in those Elder Times a good Race of Ginger, of which faith Dioscorides, Μαγειρον & ζομαζου & αινω βασιλιν, that it is the Bark of a Tree brought out of Barbaria. Where by the way, the Scholiasts upon that Author, and Pliny in the 12. Book, have been much mistaken: of which the first takes this Barbara or Barbaria for some part of the Indies; the other thinketh, that the Myrrha of those parts had the name of Barbara, from the drossiness and coarseness of it, as if to cal-

led only because unrefined. The principal Town heretofore called Raptus, by the name of the River, seated not far from the Sea; and by reason of the great Trade of it, esteemed the Metropolis of Barbaria in the time of Ptolemy. A noted Promontory of the same name was not far from hence.

To come again to Zanzibar, as it is now called; The Country is affirmed to be low and fenny, and very much overflowed with unrunly Rivers; and withal full of Woods and Forests, that for want of passage for the wind, the Air is generally (as in all Fenny Countries of the like obstruction) exceeding pestilent. The People of Complexion black, and of curled hair; Mahometans on the Sea-Coasts; in the Inland parts Idolaters; extremely given to Witchcraft and Divinations. Naked above the Waiste, and beneath covered only with the skins of Beasts, or some fish mingled colour stuff, as the Scutiffi Plad. The Moors which dwell on the Sea-coasts, use to adventure on the Seas in little Vessels, covered together with leathern thongs, and calked with Gum; having no other Sails in them than the leaves of Palm-trees. Boats of as slight making as those used anciently by the Britans, whereof thus the Poet:

Primum caua salix, madefacto vimine parvum  
Tectum in pappi; casque induta jereco  
Veleis patiens, tumidum supernatat Amnem.

Which I find thus rendered to my hand:

The moistned Oser of the hoary Willow  
Is woven first into a little Boat;  
Then clothed in Bullocks Hides; upon the Billow  
Of a proud River lightly doth it float.

It containeth in it to the number of 15 Provinces, that is to say, 1. Melinde, 2. Bombaza, 3. Quilao, 4. Mambique, 5. Sofala, all along the Coasts; 6. Monemange, 7. Corova, 8. Calen, 9. Anzaga, 10. Monzato, 11. Badin, 12. Mombira, 13. Mombizzo, 14. Embro, and 15. Macar, more within the Land. Of the nine last, not being perfectly discovered, and therefore likely to yield nothing of note and credit, we shall now be silent. But the first six lying upon the Shores, or near it, and consequently better known to Merchants, Travellers, and the like Adventurers, shall be surveyed in order as they lie before us.

1. MELINDE is the name of a little Kingdom, on the South of the Realm of Adia, in the Higher Æthiopia, from which parted by the River Raptus, now called Quilimanci; so named from Melinde, the chief City of it, well walled, and seated in a fruitful and delightful Soil; abundantly productive of Rice, Mill, Fleh, Limons, Citrons, and most sorts of Fruits; but not well furnished with Corn, the greatest part whereof is brought out of Cambaza, a Province of India. The Houses built of Lime and Stone, after the manner of Europe. The Inhabitants on the Sea-Coasts of Arabian breed, and of that Religion; those of the In-lands, which are of the original Natives, for the most part Heathens. Most of them of an Olive-colour, but inclining to white; the Women generally of as white complexions as in other places; but they have some black people also: and all of them more civil in their habit, course of life, and entertainment in their houses, than the rest of this Country. Great Friends unto the Portugals, and befriended by them, ever since the kind entertainment which they gave unto Vasques de Gama; whom they furnished with Pilots to direct in his way to India, when first discovered by that people, Anno 1497.

2. MOMBAZA is the name of another of the petty Kingdoms, of the same nature for the temper of the soil and people that Melinde is. So called from Mombaza the chief City of it, situate from Melinde about 70 miles, in a little Island of 12 miles compass; but of good influence on some part of the Continent also. The Isle and City said to have some resemblance unto the Rhoder. The Town about a league in circuit, environed with a Wall, and fortified with a Castle; the streets thereof very narrow, but well built, most of the Houses being Brick, and the Mosques capacious. The King heretofore a Mahometan, as are most of his Subjects, and a bitter Enemy of the Christians. For which cause, and upon some discourtesies received from them, the Town was taken by Vasques de Gama, Anno 1500, but abandoned again by reason of the unhealthy Air, not well agreeing with the constitution of the Portugals. Afterwards, having taken in Alibog, and five Turkish Gallies, the better to enable themselves against the Portugals; the Town was taken and ruined by Thomas de Caicao, sent thither Anno 1589, by the Portugall Vice-Roy residing in Goa, there being taken at that time besides the spoil of the City) all the Turkish Gallies, and in them 23 greater, and as many lesser Pieces of Ordnance. Such of the Turk and Citizens as escaped the slaughter, and had the opportunity of coming to them, yielded themselves into their power, to avoid the fury of the Imbians, a man-eating people, who had before besieged the City; and gathering up such gleanings as were left by the Portugals, devoured the King, and as many of the principal Citizens as they could get into their hands. 2. Ampaza, the second Town of note, was taken by the Portugals about two years after.

3. QUILAO lieth on the South of Mombaza. The Country rich and pleasant, the Inhabitants for the most part of Arabian Ancestry; of complexion near unto a white: their Women comely, sumptuous in Attire, and of civil carriage; neat in their houses, which are generally well built, and richly furnished. Touching the ordering of this Sex (of whose honour they are very tender) the people of this Quilao are said to have a strange custom amongst them, more to be mentioned for the rarity than the decency of it: which is the fowing up of the private passages of Nature in their Female Children, leaving only a small vent for their Urine. Thus fowed, they keep them carefully at home, till they come to be married. And the that is by her Husband found to want this sign of her perpetual Virginity, is with all kind of ignominy first back to her Parents, and by them as disgracefully received.

It took his name from Quilao, the chief Town thereof, situate in a little Island, but near the shore, from which parted by a narrow Fyrl, opposite to the mouth of the River Cuama, by some called Quilao; first built in the 400 year of the Hegira, by Ali, the Son of Sultan Hishben; who not agreeing very well with his other Brethren, because their Mothers were Persians, and his an Abassine, sought new Adventures in these parts, and bought this Island. His Successors grown rich and powerful by the trade of Sofala, extended their Dominions far within the Land; and so adorned Quilao, the chief Town of their Kingdom, that for sumptuous and magnificent buildings, there were few like it in those parts. Proud of their many good Successes, they provoked the Portugals, by whom under the conduct of Vasques de Gama, Anno 1500, the City itself was taken, the King made a Tributary, and with his leave some Fortresses erected by them in convenient places. Secure and wanton by this means, they pick a quarrel with Abraham, then the King of this Country; whom in the year 1505, they deposed from his Kingdom and placed another in his Throne, under the colour of

paying



paying the conditioned Tribute. For which the *Arabians* rose in Arms, displaced their new King, demolished their Fortifications, and sent them to learn better moderation in their prosperous Fortunes, *An. 1509*. The business coming after to a composition, the *Quilias* covenanted for the yearly Tribute of 1500 Marks of Gold paid unto the *Portugals*, to live in Peace, and quietly enjoy his own without further trouble.

4. *MOSAMBIQUE* lieth on the South of *Quila*. So called of *Mosambique* the chief City of it, situate in a little Island, the principal of three; opposite all of them to the mouth of the River *Mogimbis*; and bordering on the Promontory of old called *Prasam*, spoken of by *Pliny*, and by him made the furthest known place of all this Coast. In the Island there are said to be Sheep, whose tails are 25 pound weight, as in other places of these Countries, and some parts of *Syria*; Hens, black in Feathers, Flesh and Bone; and if foddren, make the water as black as Ink, but yet sweeter in taste than any other. Of *Pork* good store, the more, because the people are for the most part of the Law of *Mahomet*, by which all Hog-meat is forbidden. The In-land parts more barren, but very populous: so ignorant and rude when the *Portugals* first came among them, that for a Shirt, a Razor, and a little Bell, they sold fifteen Kine, and then sell out among themselves, who should have the Bell. The Town conveniently seated on a large and capacious Haven, and fortified with a very strong Castle, in the hand of the *Portugals*; who in their going to the *Indies*, and returning back, use to call in here, and sit themselves with all things necessary to pursue their Voyage. A town of so great wealth and trading, that the Captain of the Castle in the time of his Government (which continueth only for three years) is said to lay up 300000 Ducats for his lawful Gains, out of the Gold that cometh from *Sofala*: A gain so great, that at the end of his three years, he is to serve for three years more at some place or other of the *East-Indies* at his own charge, without any allowance from the King or State of *Portugal*, and then permitted to return into his native Country. Such of that Nation as are suffered to inhabit here, are enjoyed to be married, to the end the Island should be well peopled, and as well maintained; which otherwise perhaps might have few else in it but the Garrison-Souldiers, and the Factors of particular Merchants.

5. *SOFALA* lieth in the South of *Mosambique*, from which parted by the River *Cuama*, the greatest River of those parts, and thence extended to the Mountains which they call *Matuca*, by which separated from *Monomotapa*: So called from *Sofala*, the chief City of it, situate in a little Island (as the former are) but with great influence on the Land adjoining. Both Town and Island subject unto the power of the *Portugals*; who have a Fort, the better to secure the *Factory* by them here erected, one of the richest in the World; the People bringing in hither great quantity of Gold, of which they have most plentiful Mines, which they exchange with them for their Cloth and other Commodities. It is supposed that the Gold brought into this Town amounteth to two Millions yearly. The supposition to agreeable to all other circumstances, that little question need be made of the truth hereof. In-

much as this Country for its abundance of Gold and Ivory, is by some thought to be that Land of *Ophir* to which *Solomon* sent: And of this Opinion *Orelinus* in his *Thezaurus*, was the first Author; but in my mind, upon no probable conjectures, and against very strong presumption. For first, *Ophir* the son of *Jedai*, of whom mention is made *Gen. 29. 27. 10.* and from whom the Land of *Ophir*, in all likelyhood took its name, is in the next verse said to have planted in the East; whereas this *Sofala* is situate South-west from *Chaldea*, in which the confusion of Tongues, and dispersing of the people began. And secondly, it is impossible for the Navy of *Salomon*, which lay at *Ezion-Geber*, in the Bay of *Arabia*, to have spent three years in coming, and returning; which we find to have been the usual time of finishing the Voyage to *Ophir*, 1 Kings 10. *Ophir* then is some part of *India*; or whether it were the Island of *Sumatra*, or that of *Zeilan*, or one of the *Maluccos*, or the Land of *Malaca*, called by the Ancients *Aura Chersines*, I dare not determine; considering what worthy men maintain these several Opinions.

6. *MOENHEMAGE*, or *MONOEMUG*, the only In-land Province of any note, hath on the East *Mombaza* and *Quilias* on the West, the famous River *Nilus* on the North, some part of the Dominions of the *Abassine* Emperors; on the South, *Mosambique*. The Country very plentiful of Mines of Gold, yet the people use it not for Money; but barter it in exchange with the *Portugal* Merchants for Silks and Tassetaes, with which they use to clothe themselves from the Girdle downwards. In stead of Money they make use of Red Counters, much resembling glass. Governed by a King of their own, who holds confederacy with the Kings of *Mombaza* and *Quilias*, for the better ordering of their Trade. To whom are also subject a wild and cruel people, called *Agas*, inhabiting on the Lake *Zemba*, and the Banks of the *Nilus*; dispersed about the fields in their homely cottages, black, *Cannibals*, and of an horrible aspect; more horrible than otherwise they would be, by drawing lines upon their Cheeks with an Iron-Instrument, and forcing their Eye-lids to turn backwards. By the assistance of this people, the King of *Moehemage* hath hitherto preserved his Estate against the King of *Monomotapa*; and they themselves by some of their own Leaders did so distress the King of *Congo*, that they forced him to retire to a small Island, where he hardly escaped a violent and untimely death, most of his people being starved. Of which more hereafter.

Touching the rest of these Provinces, we can say but little; and that little of no great note or certainty; but that they differ for the most part from one another, both in speech and behaviour; each Village under a several King, and each in continual quarrel with its next Neighbours; whom if they overcome, they eat. At leisure times they live by hunting, and the flesh of Elephants. And amongst these, but more upon the borders of the *Abassine* Empire, place the *Galle*; a Nationless Nation as it were, without house or dwelling, without Law or Government; as barbarous and horrid as the *Agas* (whom some call *Jage* or *Giagui*) are affirmed to be, who watching their advantages, and joined together in some Arts of doing mischief, have made of late such Desolations in the Countries of the *Præter-John*.

## 2. MONOMOTAPA.

*MONOMOTAPA*, or *BENOMOTANA*, or *BENOMOTAXA* (for by all these names it is called) is bounded on the North, with the River *Cuama*, by which and the Mountain of *Magnice*, it is parted from *Zanzibar* on the West, and South; by the River of the *Holy-Ghost*, which separated from *Cafrovia*; and on the East, by the main Ocean. So that it is almost an Island; said to contain in compass 750 Spanish leagues or 3250 Italian miles.

The Air hereof is said to be very temperate, and the Country very good and pleasant, yet full of Forests. Well watered, besides the two great Rivers before mentioned, with the Streams of 1. *Panani*, 2. *Luanga*, 3. *Avanga*, 4. *Mangungu*, and certain others, which carry gold with them in their fads. By means whereof it hath not only abundance of Corn, but great store of Pasturages on which they breed infinite Herds of Cattel, and other Beasts very large and great, such store of Elephants, that they kill 5000 yearly for no other reason, but to make Merchandise of their Teeth: their Gold-Mines great and small, reckoned to 3000; some in the hills of *Magnice*, others in the Province of *Matuca* and *Boro*, the places where the Mines are, known without further art in the discovery of them, by the dynes and barrenness of the soil; as if Nature could not hoard up gold in her spacious bosom, but the mud needs be barren of all good works.

The People are of mean stature, and black complexions; but strong and active, courageous, and of such footman-ship, that they out-run Horses. Their apparel Cotton-Cloth, which they make or buy from some other place: their Diet Fleish, Fish, Rice, Mill, and an Oyl called *Sufman*. Their Religion, *Paganism* for the most part; yet they worship not Idols, but believe in one God only, which they call *Mucimo*; and seem not much averse from the *Christian* Faith, to which one of their Kings was once converted. They punish nothing more severely than *Witchcraft*, *Adultery*, and *Theft*: and in the punishment of *Delinquents* they use no Prisons, but execute them as soon as apprehended, which is the reason that the Vulgar have no doors to their houses, that being a privilege for the Nobles. They may have as many wives as they will, but the first the principal, and her Children only to be heirs: the women here very much respected (as a second *England*) the Emperor himself, if he meeteth any of them in the streets, he giveth them the way. Not to be married, till their *Magistra* or Natural purgations testify their ability for conception; and therefore they solemnize their first Flux therewith with a liberal Feast.

Provinces of most note in it, and adjoining to it, but reckoned as Members of his Empire, are.

1. *Matuca*, rich in Mines of Gold, the Inhabitants whereof are called *Botongbi*; who though they dwell between the *Line* and the *Tropicke*, have in the winter such deep snows on the tops of their Mountains, that if they come not specially down, they are frozen to death.

2. *TORRA* or *BUTUA*, extended from the mouth of the River of the *Holy Ghost*, or di *Spirito Santo*, to *Cabo Corrientes* (Caput *Correntium* in the *Latine*) wealthy in fat pastures, and great herds of Cattel; more in her unexhaustible Mines of Gold. Mines memorable for formerly by some torrid Prince to secure the Mines built of square stone, and every stone of marvellous greatness,

without any sign of cement or other mortar; the walls hereof 25 spans thick, but the height not answerable over the Gate certain characters written, which the most learned of the *Moor* could never read. Perhaps the work of some of the *Æthiopian* or *Abassine* Emperours, when their power and Empire was at the height. By the Inhabitants who conceive it to be a work beyond humane power, it is thought to have been built by Devils; but by those who take *Sofala* for the Land of *Ophir*, ascribed to *Solomon*, though situate 510 miles more Westward than *Sofala*, by their own account. The Air here very cold, by reason of the sharp blasts coming from the *Pole-Antarctic*; so much the colder, in that they have no wood, or other fuel, but what they make themselves of the dung of their Cattel.

3. *BORO*, and 4. *QUITICUI*, both furnished with Gold also in their Mines and Rivers, but not so pure as that of *Torra* and *Matuca*; yet such as serves their turn so well, as to spoil all industry: the people here being very careless in providing necessities, which they presume the *Moor* (I mean the *Arabian Moor*) will bring them in exchange hereof.

5. *INHABAN*, governed by a King of its own, but Vassal and Tributary to the Emperor of *Monomotapa*, the King whereof in the year 1560, was Christened by *Gonsalvo Silveira* a Spanish Jesuite, by the name of *Constantine*; his Queen baptized by the name of *Mary*; but I find nothing of the further progress of *Christianity*, Touching 6. *Matuca*, 7. *Melenba*, 8. *Buinbobe*, 9. *Bericea*, and 10. *Bavagul*, five other Provinces of this Empire, I can meet with little but their names.

Cities of note here are not many, hardly Towns or Villages; the houses being here so thin, that from the border of *Sofala* to the Fort of *Torra*, being 510 miles, as before is said, there is no sign of any building either old or new. The principal of those that be, 1. *Tangani* in the Province of *Inhaban*, and the Seat-royal of those Kings; memorable for the baptism of the King and Queen, which was there performed. 2. *Simbulu*, supposed to be so called from the *Agisymba* of *Pliny*, the chief Town of the Province of *Torra*, or *Boro*; distant from *Sofala* one and twenty days journey, and neighboured by the remains or ruins of the old Fortresses before described. 3. *Benomotaxa*, where the King or Emperor makes his usual residences, giving this name to the whole Kingdom, but taking it from the King himself, whom they call *Buomotaxa* or *Monomotapa*, the word in their language signifying a King or Emperor.

The King hereof accounted one of the greatest of *Africk*, hath under his command, besides the Provinces described, some part of *Cafrovia*. Of great Riches in regard of his Mines of Gold, which so abundantly supply all the Royal occasions, that he exacteth no kind of Tribute from his Subjects, but some certain days service in his Works; and from his Nobles Gifts and Presents, without which none of them are to come before him. His Forces great, the multitudes of men considered; but weak for want of skill to train them, and Arms wherewith to fit them for modern service; the Arms they most use being only Darts and Targets. For which cause, (and in regard the people of the subject Kingdoms are so prone to *Rebellions*, that he is fain to keep the Heirs of the *Tributary* Kings as Hostages of their Fathers Loyalty) he wagem *mercenary* Souldiers of other Nations, whom he distributeth abroad in his several Provinces: and amongst these it is affirmed, that he hath a strong Battalion of *Amazon*, a Warlike Race of Women, who inhabit about the Lake of *Zanzibar*, and the out-skirts

of *Zanzibar*, compared by some for their fidelity and Prowess, to the *Twifo Janizaries*. And yet not trusting wholly to the faith of these *Mercenaries*, it is said that he keeps 200 *Maffios* for the Guard of his person. Much, reverenced by his Subjects, by whom he is served upon the knee; and when he cougheth or drinketh, all those that are about him make such a shout, that the Town rings of it. In one particular they differ from most Nations else, which is. That such as are admitted into his presence, are bound to sit down, in token of reverence; to stand before him, being a sign of the greatest Dignity which can be afforded unto any. Once in a fair way to have advanced *Christianity* in his Dominions, when in the year 1560, the King hereof was baptized by *Gonfalo* the Jesuit, by the name of *Sebastian*, that being the name of the King of *Portugal* then reigning. But afterwards on the suggestions of some *Arabians* then in great place about him, having caused the *Jesuite* to be slain, he was warred upon by the King of *Portugal* with an Army of 1600 men, under the conduct of *Francisco Barreto*; to whom he offered very honourable amends for the injury done: But *Barreto* having in hope swallowed all the Gold in the Country, would not admit of any peaceable agreement; but referred the business to a battle; in which being overcome himself, and his whole Forces not long after consumed by sickness, the hopes of *Christianity*, and the *Portugals* interest in that Kingdom, fell together with him.

### 3. CAFRARIA.

**CAFRARIA** is bounded on the East with *Rio di Spirito Santo*, or the River of the Holy Ghost; on the South and West, with the main Ocean; on the North, extended to some parts of *Manicongo*, and the Province of *Zanzibar*. So called from the word *Cafra*, which in the *Arabian* tongue signifieth an Heretic; a name by them given to *Christians*, *Heathens*, and those of their own Religion also, which differ in Opinion from them; but given to this Region by some late Writers, because destitute of another name.

The Country for so much of it as hath been discovered, is said to be full of great Herds of Cattel, and flocks of Sheep, abundance of Deer, *Antilopes*, *Baboons*, Foxes, Hares, Ottriches, Pelicans, Herons, Geese, Ducks, Pheasants, Partridges; in a word all things necessary for the life of man, were it somewhat better filled with Corn. Exceedingly well watered, and as liberally stored with Woods and Forests: the Hills thereof intermix with grassie Vallies, that pity 'tis so beautiful and rich a Country should be inhabited by so barbarous and rude a people, who being utterly unprovided of Towns and Houses, live in Woods like Beasts. Of colour black, thick lips, flat noses, long shaped heads, and most monstrous ears, extended far beneath their shoulders, by hanging in their Iron-chains, Glafs, Bullets, Bells, and such ponderous baubles. These ornaments common to both Sexes, who also use for their greater beauty most hideously to flath themselves in all parts of their bodies, even their very bellies; as if no lace could better fort with their naked skins; with which only, except some flap of an Hide or other leather to hide their privities, they are here apparelled.

Their best habits for the most part are the Hides of Beasts, undressed, unfashioned, and as they tear them from the flesh; but when they cloath themselves with Sheep-skins, they have so much wit as to wear their fleeces next to their bodies in cold weather, that at other times they expose (with no small pride and glory) to the open view. Their voice so inarticulate, that it is hard to be distinguished

into words and syllables; which being compared with that brutishness, which commonly appeareth in all their actions, makes it hard to say, whether the people generally may be thought to be men in the skins of beasts, or beasts created in the likeness and shape of men. But they make a greater use of their Cattle, than for Garments only; their raw flesh serving them for food, and the Guts for Ornament, which hang about their Necks uncleaned, and with all the filth in them, in as great a bravery as Ropes of Pearl, or Chains of Gold in more civil Countreys. Gold here so vilified, that they exchange it gladly for Brass, or Iron, and that not only quantity for quantity, and weight for weight, but in such senseless disproportion, as rendeth Brass and Iron the more excellent metals.

But amongst all the several Nations which inhabit this most flourishing Country, none are more barbarous than those whom they call the *Imbians*, dwelling not far from the Cape of good Hope; tall, square, and strong, addicted always to War and Rapine, and feeding on the flesh both of their conquered Enemies, and their dying Fricks, whose death they hateen for the *Shambles*; the Skulls of whom they use for their drinking Cups. Their Weapons poisoned Arrows, and Poles burnt at the end: And in their Wars they always carry Fire before them, meaning thereby to roast or boyl all such as they overcome. Their King (if such a sacred Name become such an impious Monster) they account for Lord of all the Earth; as the *Portugals* for all the Seas; and he with the old Giant-like Arrogance, not only threatneth the destruction of Men, but shooteth his poisoned arrows against Heaven it self, as often as the rain or heat offends him. In the year 1580, laid desolate all the Country as far as *Mombaza*, which City they besieged, sacked and devoured the people of; which Tragedy we have heard before, in our description of *Mombaza*, a Realm of *Zanzibar*.

Towns here are none, scarce so much as Houses; and except to mean, that they deserve not to be so called: except it be some heds on the Sea-fides, for the use of Saylor. Of most note in it, is *Soldania*, a large and capacious Road, about fifteen or sixteen Leagues on the North-West from the Cape of Good Hope; not so much noted for the buildings adjoining to it (if there be any such) as by the bay it self; environed on all sides with a pleasant Country, enriched with variety of Herbs, not only pleasing to the sense, but very Medicinal for many diseases, especially for those that are troubled with the *Scurbut* (or *Scurvy*, as we use to call it,) the Hills adjoining stored with great multitudes of Cattel, both Sheep and Cows, though less in size than those in the Northern parts; great helps unto our Sea-men in their Eastern Voyages; for here such as are to fail towards the *Indies*, use to take in fresh water, and make provision of things necessary for so long a Voyage. I have heard that some of our *English* ships in their return from the *East-Indies*, seized on two Savages, living near this Bay, whom they brought on Ship-board, with an intent to carry them into *England*, to the end that having learned the *English* tongue, we might be more particularly informed by them of the Estate and Affairs of this Country. One of these was called *Goore*, being brought to *London*, (for the other died upon the way) was dierced and clothed according to the *English* fashion, gratified also with Brass Rings, Beads and such other things, by which they thought they might most gain upon him to affect the change of his condition. But *home is home*, though it be but *home*, as the saying is. For this poor wretch having learned to much *English* as to become his own misfortunes, would throw himself upon the ground, and cry out with great anguish and vexation of spirit, *Goore home go*, *Soldania go*, *home*

*home go*; out of which unquietness of humour, when they could not get him, they sent him back in the next Ships which were bound for the *Indies*. After which time, as oft as he saw any Ship with *English* Colours, he would joyfully make towards the Bay with Guts and Garbage hanging about his neck (as their custom is) and readily perform all good offices towards them; yet so, that was found withal, that by discovering to the Natives how low esteem the *English* had of Brass and Iron, they thenceforth raised the value of those richer Metals, which formerly they had parted with for such sorry trifles, as have been spoken of before.

But that which is of most consideration in all this Country, is the Cape it self; discovered by the *Portugals*, under the Conduct of *Bartholomew Diaz*, in their first *Indian* undertakings; by whom, for the continual Tempests which he found about it, was first called *Tormentosa*. But afterwards the *Portugals* having doubled the Cape, and thereby finding good hopes of a prosperous voyage, they caused it to be called *Cabo di Buona Speranza*, or the Cape of good Hope: *Vasques di Gama*, the first discoverer of this way to the wealth of *India*, being then their *Admiral*, Anno 1597. It consisteth of three great points of headlands, of which that which is nearest us, is the Cape of good Hope; the middlemost hath the name of *Cabo Falso*, because mistaken for the other, by some of the *Portugals*, returning homewards; the third called *Cabo della Gualia* or the Cape of Needles, by reason of those sharp points which shoot towards the Sea. On the top of the Cape is a large and pleasing Plain, adorned with great variety of flowers, and covered with a Carpet of grass: it is called the Table of the Cape, and yieldeth a large prospect over the Sea on all sides. The Sea here is very rough and tempestuous, and harsh to the *Spaniards* proved oftentimes very unkind; whereupon a *Spanish* Captain being vexed with a storm, expostulated with GOD, why he suffered his good *Catholicity* to endure such torments; and permitted the *English* Heretics, and Blasphemers, to pass so easily.

The Country is not subjected to any one Prince, the Natives being governed by the Chiefs of their several Clans; nor had I hitherto that either *Portugals* or *Spaniards*, have took possession of any one part of it, in the name of the whole. So that for ought I know, the best title to it doth belong to the King of *England*; for whom possession was taken of it in the Reign of King *James*, by one Captain *Finis-Herbert*, who called the Ascent unto the Table, *King James his Mount*. But whether this Act of his beger any good title, or whether the title of a Country lying so far off be held worth the owning, I leave to be determined of by *Lawyers* and *Statesmen*.

### 4. MANICONGO.

**MANICONGO** is bounded on the South with *Casfaria*, and the Mountains of the Moon; on the West with the *Æthiopic*, or *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North with the Realm of *Benin*, and other parts of the Land of the Negroes; and on the East with *Zanzibar*, and some part of the *Abessin* Empire. So called from *Congo* or *Manicongo*, the principal of those many Kingdoms which are united in this Name.

The Air hereof so temperate, that their Winter is like the *Autumn* in *Rome*; inasmuch as the people do not use to change their garments, or to make more fire than they at other times: the tops of the Mountains free from cold, and the nights so equal to the days, that for the greatest part of the year there is little difference; the Country being situate under the *Equator*, though more of it on

the North than the South thereof. Not over-hot nevertheless, standing in the heats of Summer, by reason of the cool winds which then blow continually; and the great dews, which falling in the night make some compensation for the extrem fervour of the day. The soil so exceeding fruitful in the production of herbs, plants, fruits, and such sort of Pasturage, that they have here great herds of Cattel, large flocks of sheep, plenty of Goats, Stags, Deer, Hares and Conies; Elephants of that bigness, that their teeth weigh 200 pounds; and Serpents of so vast a bulk, that they will eat a whole Deer at once; not to say any thing of their *Fowl*, both wild and tame, which they have here in great abundance.

The people of mean stature, black of complexion, thick lips, and having the apple of the eye of divers colours, which makes them ghastly to behold; strong and long-lived, with very little hair on their heads, but that all naturally curled. In Religion for the most part *Heathens*, some worshipping the Sun and Moon, others the Earth, as the Mother and Nurse of all things; and some again, wild Beasts and Serpents. So populous, that without any sensible diminution of their infinite numbers, it is supposed that they sell 20000 *Slaves* to the *Portugals* yearly: by whom they are sent into *Brasil*, there to work in the Mines and Sugar-houses. The *Christian* faith admitted in some few of their Provinces, but specially in that of *Congo*, where first preached, in the reign of *John* the II. King of *Portugal*, Anno 1490. by *Gonzalvo de Sufia*; who having converted and baptized the Kings Uncle, and one of his Sons, prevailed so far upon the King, that in the end he and his Queen, and many of his principal Subjects, did embrace the *Gospel*. Received there by the people with such infinite joy, that when their first *Bishop* came to live amongst them, they caused the ways from the Sea-side to the City of *Banza* (being 150 miles) to be covered with Mats; and offered him all the way as he went, Lambs, Chickens, Kids, Partridges, Fish, Venison, and other necessities, to testify their rejoicings in that happy change. And though many of the Subjects, in the other Provinces were baptized accordingly, and for a time embraced the Faith; yet after some small trial of it they relapsed to their former *Heathenism*; either unable, or not willing to conform to so strict a Rule.

Principal Rivers of this Country. 1. *Bengo*, 2. *Casanza*, 3. *Dande*, 4. *Barbela*, 5. *Ambreza*, 6. *Loza*, 7. *Zaire*. This last the greatest of them all, if not of all *Affrick* also: Of which, though we have spoke already, we shall add this here, That it falleth into *Æthiopic* Sea with so great a violence, that for ten miles commonly, for fifteen sometimes, the waters of it do retain their natural sweetness, not intermingled nor corrupted with the salt Sea-waters. Nor can the people say above five miles against the stream, by reason of the Cataracts, or huge falls which it hath from the Mountains; more terrible and turbulent than those of *Nile*. And for the Mountains of most note, they are, 1. *Sierra compida*, or the long Mountain; 2. *Mons Crystallin*, or the Crystalline Mountain, so called from the abundance of *Crystal*, which is found therein; 3. *Sierra de Sol*, the Mountain of the Sun, of excessive height; 4. *Montes Sal-Nitri*, so called from the abounding in that kind of Minerals; and 5. the Mountains of *Cabambe*, rich Mines of Silver.

It containeth in it many large and ample Provinces, of which we have this general muster in the title Imperial; wherein their King, calleth himself King of *Congo*, *Bamba*, *Sango*, *Sandi*, *Bango*, *Batti*, *Pemba*, *Abandi*, *Matani*, *Quisoma*, *Angola*, and *Cacango*; Lord of the *Congones*, *Amozale*, *Languelungu*, *Anzuichi*, *Cucobi*, and *Zanghi*. Many of these not so well discovered, as to afford us any matter

matter-fit for our discourse; the principal of those that be are—

1. **ANGOLA**, bounded on the South with *Cafra-ria*; on the North, with the Provinces of *Bamba* and *Pemba*; on the East, with some part of *Zanzibar*; on the West, with the main *Atlantic* Ocean. The Country rich in Mines of *Silver*, and most excellent *Copper*; some store of *Kine* and *Horses* brought out of *Europe*, which they kill rather for their tails, the wearing whereof is held for a special ornament, than keep for any other use: their chiefest diet being *Dogs*, which they fat for the *Shambles*; and to that daintily affected, that at the first coming of the *Portugals* thither, they would give 20 slaves and upwards for a good large *Dog*. By this we may conjecture somewhat at the nature of the people, who besides this, are said to be much given to *sojcery*, and *divinations* by the flight of *Birds*; Skilful in *medicinal* herbs and poysons, and by familiarity with the *Devil*, able to tell things to come. Permitted as much *Pagans* are, to have as many wives as they will; who with the rest of the women, whether maids, or widows, use at the first light of every *New-Moon* to turn up their bare Butts in defiance of her, as the cause of their troublesome purgations.

In this country are the Mountains called *Cavalieris* rich in Mines of *Silver*; but those Mines not fished to be digged, for fear of drawing force unnecessary war upon them; so that they use *Glass* heads for money, and there-with also to adorn the persons of greatest eminence. Their principal City called *Cabazza*, is about 150 miles from the Sea, and the Royal residence of their Kings; but not else observable.

This Country was first discovered by the *Portugals*, under the conduct of *Diego Can*, Anno 1486, the King hereof at that time *Vassal* unto him of *Congo*, and so continued till that King did embrace the Gospel: whereupon they revolted from him, and have since subsisted themselves without such dependence. At first they held good correspondence with the *Portugals*, and allowed them free Traffick in their Dominions: But after their revolt from the King of *Congo*, with whom the *Portugals* were in league, they put to death as many as they found in *Cabazza*, Anno 1578, under colour of some pretended treason. To be revenged of this foul murder, *Paul Diaz*, Governor of these parts for the King of *Portugal*, arming such people as he had, with two Gallies and some other Vessels passed up the River of *Congo*, waiving the Country on both sides. Against whom the King of *Angola* raised an Army of a Million of men (as some Writers tell us); but amongst those multitudes of men, there were few Souldiers, that a handful of the *Portugals*, aided with some of the Forces of the King of *Congo*, gave him a notable defeat, Anno 1582. Since that, the Trade with *Portugal* was revived again, and the King herof hath expressed some good affections unto *Christianity*: sending unto the King of *Congo* for some *Priests* to instruct him in it, but obtained them not; the state of *Religion* in that Kingdom being then declining. The *Portugals* having thus gotten the upper hand, built, or repaired a strong Fort, situate near a convenient Bay, by which they did not only take their Trade, but command a great part of the Country, till dispossessed thereof by the treachery and fallshood of the *Hollanders*, Anno 1640, or thereabouts: For the *Portugals* having withdrawn themselves from the Crown of *Spain*, a Cession from all Hostility, with them was proclaimed in *Holland*, and not long after a firm peace made between the Nations; in the Articles whereof it was conditioned, that this peace should not begin in the *East-India*, till the end of the year, nor in *Brasil*, till the end of half a year from the making thereof. Which being obtained, they gave order to their Fleets and Forces

which were abroad, to make themselves Masters of any thing then belonging to the *Portugal*, which they could lay hold on, who following these instructions, and Anchoring near the Fort of *Angola*, were by the *Portugals* received with joy into the Castles as their special friends, which presently they possessed themselves of, turning the poor *Portugals* in a very weak Bark to seek new adventures. But of this more hereafter in the life of St. Thomas.

To this King belong also the two Provinces of *Matana*, and *Quifima*, though both used in the titles of the King of *Congo*; of which the first lieth towards the Sea, is said to be of a wholesome air, and a fertile soil; outwardly furnished with fruits, and inwardly with mines of *Crysil* and other metals; but not very rich, for want of some convenient Haven to bring on commerce. The other lying towards a great Lake called *Aque Linda*, was once governed after the manner of a *Common-wealth*; but tributary at that time to the King of *Congo*, as of later times to the Kings of *Angola*, by whom brought under this new yoke by reason of the aid they had given the *Portugals* in their wars against him.

2. **BAMBA** hath on the South the River of *Canza*, by which parted from *Angola*; on the North, the River *Ambrize*, by which divided from *Songo* on the East, *Pemba*; on the West, the *Æthiopic*, or *Atlantic* Ocean. The Country rich in Mines of *Silver*, well stored with Beasts and Birds, as well tame as wild. Amongst the Birds, *Parrots* both green and grey, and many which are taught to sing; not much inferior for their musicke to the birds of *Cameris*. Amongst the Beasts of most note, is that called the *Zebra*, shaped like a *Mule*; but from the ridge of the back to the belly streaked with lines of white, black, and yellow, and those streaks so naturally fit in such even proportion, as yieldeth to the eye most pleasing object. But wild, and of so swift a foot, that *velox ut Zebra*, to be as *swift as a Zebra*, is grown into a Proverb amongst the *Portugals*. The men so strong, that it is said of them, that at one blow they will cut off the head of an Ox, or strike a slave quite thorow the middle, into two pieces; and to be able to carry in their arms a Vessel of wine, weighing 325 pound weight, containing the fourth part of a buttsard hold it so till it be quite drawn out. It containeth in it many *Signories*, most of them called by the names of their principal Towns. The chief of which, 1. *S. Paul*, situate on the Sea-side, opposite to the life of *Loanda*; inhabited for the most part by *Portugal* Families. 2. *Bamba*, which giveth name to this Province, and is situate about 100 miles from the Sea, betwixt the Rivers of *Lofo* and *Ambrize*.

3. **PEMBA** hath on the West, *Bamba*; on the East, the Lake *Zemba*, and the River *Barbela*; on the North, *Batta*; and on the South, *Angola*, Estimated to be the richest and most pleasant Country of all *Mauca-ngo*; the Fields in all parts thereof beset with *Palm-trees*, but intermixt with other fruit-trees, which are always green. The water of it good a nature, that it never hurteth any that drink of it: the Air exceeding wholesome, and the earth as fruitful; productive of all sorts of grain, and especially of that which they call *Lena*, in form like *muscad*, but bigger, which they grind in an hand-mill, and make thereof a Bread not inferior to Wheat. The people much reclaimed from their ancient *Barbarism* since the coming of the *Portugals* thither; so well skilled in imitate both in behaviour and apparel. So well skilled in the virtues of *Medicinal* herbs, that every one is his own *Physician*, *Chirurgion*, and *Apothecary*. Anciently clothed with Mats, and trimmed up with Feathers: retained till

by the *Villagers* and poorer sort, in some part of the Country. Their chief City formerly had the name of *Banza*, so called, because the Kings Court (as the word doth signifie,) but since the receiving of the Gospel it is called *S. Savours*: distant from the Sea 150 miles, beautified (since it became *Christian*) with a *Bishop* See, and a fair Cathedral, in which are 28 *Canons*, with other Officers, and Ornaments accustomedly belonging to the like Foundations. The Town it self situate on the side of a large and lofty Mountain; on the top whereof is a spacious Plain, two Dutch miles in compass, full of Villages, Burroughs, and scattered houses; which are thought to have 10000 persons, most of them *Portugals*, and their Servants.

4. **BATTA** hath on the West and South, *Pemba*; on the East, the Mountains of the *San*, and those called *Sal-nirion* the North, *Pango*. Of the Soil and People there is nothing singular to be said, but that the Inhabitants herof are more Military, and better furnished for the Wars than the rest of these Provinces; necessitated thereunto by the ill neighbourhood of a fierce and savage people, dwelling about the spurs and branches of the Mountains before mentioned, whom they call *Jaggos* or *Giachis*. These naturally and originally of the Land of *Negroes*, abandoned the parts about *Sierra Leona*, where before they dwelt, and to the number of 12000 fell into the Mountainous part of this Region, under the Conduct of one *Elembé*, where they are since grown into a people, and become a terror to their Neighbours. Greedy devourers of mans flesh, which they prefer before that of Beeves or Muttons: not yet so qualified by the change of their Country, as to build houses, sow or plant, or to breed up Cattel; finding it far the easier life, to maintain themselves by the labour and spoil of others. And which is yet most strange of all, though they have each of them many Wives, ten or twenty a piece, yet they have no Children, but strangle them as soon as born, lest they should be an hindrance to their often wanderings. But as *Pliny* once said of the *Essini*, *Geni eterna est in qua nemo nascitur*; so we may also say of these, that they do not want succession, though they breed no children: selecting out of their Captives and stolen Children, some of either Sex, (but neither steal nor take them captive, under twenty years old) to the *Siernary* (as it were) of a new posterity. Against these *Mosters* those of *Batta* are armed continually, not otherwise able to defend themselves, their Wives and Children, from their hands and teeth; inasmuch as this one Province, though none of the best, is able to raise 70000 men, well armed, and fit for any service. The principal of their Town is *Batta*, which gives name to the Province situate on the Banks of the River *Lelandi*, and the Seat of the Vice-Roy, who is always of the *Blood Royal*, honoured sometimes with sitting at the Kings own Table, which none else may do; and of so great authority in all Consultations, that no body dares to contradict him.

5. **PANGO**, is bounded on the South with *Batta*; on the East, extended to the Mountains of the *San*, which close up this Country: on the North with *Sunda*; and on the West, with parts of *Pemba*, and *Sango*. Of the people, little singular, of the Country less. Neighbourhood on the North-East towards *Sierra de Crysil*, with the *Languelongo*, supposed by some to be the *Æthiopes* *Hesperii*, (spoken of by *Pliny*); a barbarous Nation, but of so considerable power, that they are found amongst the rest in the *Sierra Imperiali*. This once a Kingdom of it self not subject till of late times to Kings of *Congo*. The chief Town of it called *Pango*, is seated on the Western Bank of the River *Barbete*, the ordinary resi-

dence of the *Viceroy*, and the name-giver to the whole Province.

6. **SUNDA**, is bounded on the South with *Batta*; on the North with the great River *Zaire*; on the East with *Barbete*; and on the West with part of *Songo*. The Country rich in several Metals, but the Inhabitants prefer Iron before any other, because it doth afford them *Materials* for Swords, Knives, and Armour; well furnished also with *Martens*, *Sables*, and other Furs of great esteem among Foreign Merchants. This is the best Region of this Kingdom, not above 40 miles in breadth, betwixt *Batta* and the River of *Zaire*; nor much more in length. Their chief City hath the name of *Sunda*, which it communicates to the whole.

7. **SONGO**, is bounded on the East with *Batta* and *Anzichana*; on the West with the *Æthiopic*, or *Atlantic* Ocean; on the North with the Kingdom of *Loango*; and on the South with the River *Ambrize*, by which parted from the Realm of *Bamba*. It lieth on both sides of the great River *Zaire*, which is here so turbulent and broad, and so full of *Islands*, that the one part of it hath little or no commerce with the other. The chief Town herof called *Songo*, gives this name to the Country; in which is nothing singular for the Soil or People.

8. **ANZICHANA**, hath on the West, part of *Songo* and *Loango*; extended thence unto the East, as far almost as the Lake of *Zemba*; on the North, some part of the Land of *Negroes*; on the South, the *Zaire*. So called from the *Anziqui*, the Inhabitants of it: The cruellest *Cannibals* in the World; for they do not only eat their Enemies, but their Friends and Kinsfolk. And that they may be sure not to want these Dainties, they have *Shambles* of mans flesh, as in other parts of Beef or Mutton. So covetous whilst, that if their *Slaves* will yield but a penny more when sold joynt by joynt, than if sold alone; they will cut them out, and sell them so upon the *Shambles*. Yet with these barbarous qualities they have many good. Affirmed to be of so cunning at the Bow and Arrows, that they will discharge 28 Arrows (for so many do their *Quivers* hold) before the first of them falls to the ground; and of so great fidelity to their Masters, and to those which trust them, that they will rather chuse to be killed, then either to abuse their trust, or betray their Masters: for that cause more esteemed by the *Portugals*, than their other *Slaves*. And for the same, and that only, worthy of so good a Country: said to be rich in Mines of *Copper*, and very plentiful of *Sanders* both red and gray, which tempered with *Vinger*, is found by the *Portugals* to be a certain remedy against the *Pox*; as the smock thereof against the *Head-ache*. Towns they have none, or none at least of any reckoning, which deserve place here.

9. **LOANGO** hath on the East *Anzichana*; on the West the *Æthiopic* or *Atlantic* Ocean; on the North *Benin*, one of the Realms of *Guitana*, in the Land of *Negroes*; and on the South, the Province of *Songo*, from which parted by the River *Loango*, whence it hath its name. The Country very hot, as lying under the Line, but well peopled, indifferently fruitful, and more stored with Elephants, than any other of these parts; stretching in length 200 miles within the Land, and for the most part very well watered. The Inhabitants whom they call *Bramas*, by Religion *Heathens*, but of old accustomed (as the *Anziqui* and others of these barbarous *Africans*) unto *Circumcision*. Governed by a King of their own, once subject to the King of *Congo*; but of late time, both he

and the King of the *Anziqui* (for they are also under the command of one *Sovereign Prince*) have freed themselves from that subjection; though still the King of *Congo* be called King of both. Their King they call by the name of *Mani Loanga*. Their Towns of note, 1. *Ponga*, the Haven to the west, 2. *Morumba*, 30 Leagues more Northwards, and within the Land; the inhabitants of which Towns being more civil than the rest, apparel themselves with the leaves of *Palm-Trees*; but not so well skilled in the nature of that excellent Tree, as the more civilized people of the Realm of *Congo*, who out of the leaves thereof well cleaned and purged, draw a fine long thread, of which they make *Velvets*, *Damasks*, *Sattins*, *Taffates*, *Sarcenets*, and the like fine Stuffs.

10. Having thus looked upon the chief Provinces of this Kingdom seated on the Continent, let us next look upon the Islands. The principal of which *LOANDA*, situate over against the Town of *S. Paul*, in the province of *Bambila*, said to be first made out of the sands of the Ocean, and the mire of *Coanza*, cast into an heap, and at last made into an Island. Now beautified with a very fair Haven, of the same name with the Island, possessed by the *Portugals*. The Island destitute of Rivers, but so well furnished with waters, that every where within less than half a yard digging, they find sweet and good Waters, so contrary to the Sea from whence they come, that when the Sea ebbs from it, they be salt and brackish, when it floweth towards the Island, then most fresh and sweet. But most remarkable is this Island for the *Cockle-fishing*, which the Women going a little into the Sea, take up together with the sands, in baskets, and part them from the sand,

as they lye on the shore; the *shells* of which being naturally distinguished into divers colours, serve over all the Kingdom of *Congo*, instead of money; which is a matter of such moment unto this King, that he entertains a Governor in the Island for no other reason, but to take care about this fishing.

Besides this, there are many Islands in the River of *Zaire*, now subject to the Kings of *Congo*, but heretofore in continual Wars against them: fighting in Boats which they made of the bodies of a Tree, by them called *Licande*. The Tree so big, that two or three men or more are not able to fathom it; inasmuch that many times a Boat is made of one of the largest of them, able to contain 200 men. Upon the shores of these Islands, and in other of their *Bays* and *Creeks*, they have so great numbers of *Anchovies*, that in Winter time they will leap upon the Land of their own Accord.

Compacted of these several Members, and of the rest expressed in the *Stile Imperial*, is the Realm of *Congo*: so called from *Congo* the chief Province, but now distinguished from thence by the name of *Pemba*; which being of more power, or of better fortune, than any of the other, or of all together, hath given both Law and name unto them. Discovered by the *Portugals*, under *Diogo Chan*, An. 1486, at what time these Kings were at the greatest: called by their Subjects *Mani Congo*, or the Kings of *Congo*, the word *Mani*, signifying in their Language a Prince or Lord; the name communicated since to the Kingdom also. Of their affairs before this time there is nothing certain. What hath since happened in this Kingdom, may best be seen in the ensuing Catalogue of

## The KINGS of CONGO.

1486. 1. *John*, not so called till converted to the Faith of *Christ*; and then *Baptized* by this name, in honour of *John* the Second King of *Portugal*, Anno 1490. in whose Reign this discovery and Conversion hapned.
2. *Alphonso*, eldest Son of *John*, zealous in the advancement of the *Christian Faith*, and for that opposed by *Panse Aquitine* his younger Brother whom with a very small Army, zealously invoking the assistance of *Jesus*, he is said to have vanquished. A Prince, who during his long Reign of 50 years did seriously promote the *Gospel*, and caused all *Idols* in his Kingdom to be overthrown: and Churches to be built, and furnished in convenient places.
3. *Pedro*, the Son of *Alphonso*, in whose time was founded the College of 28 *Canons*, in the Cathedral Church of *S. Croffe*, in the Town of *S. Saviour*.
4. *Francisco* the Son of *Pedro*, who reigned not long.
5. *Diogo*, or *James*, one of the Kinsmen of *Francisco*, in whose time Religion growing into discredit, by the scandalous lives of some of the *Secular Clergy*: *John* the Third, King of *Portugal*, sent four *Jesuits* thither; who are said to have converted in five months 5000 persons, and to build three Churches.

6. *Henry*, the brother of *Diogo*, after a sharp War touching the Succession, in which were slain all the *Portugals* of *S. Saviours*, except the *Priests*, at last succeeded: not long after slain in battle against the *Anziquers*.
7. *Alvarez*, the Son of *Henry*, forced by the *Jaggies* or *Giacebi* to abandon *Congo*, and betake himself, together with the *Portugals* Priests, to an Island of the River *Zaire*: where he continued, till restored to his Crown by the Aid of *Sebastian King of Portugal*, after by Famine he had lost almost all his company.
8. *Alvarez II.* Son of *Alvarez* the first, who much solicited *Sebastian* and *Henry Kings of Portugal*, to send him a new supply of preachers; the old store being wasted in the Islands of *Zaire*.
9. *Alvarez III.* Son to *Alvarez* the Second, not being born in Lawful Wedlock, was opposed by one of his Sisters and a younger Brother, both of Lawful birth; whom he overthrew, Anno 1587, and in the place of the Victory founded a Church in honour of the *Virgin Mary*.

Touching the *Forces* and *Revenues* of these Kings of *Congo*, I am able to say nothing certain; but that he is a Prince of great Power and Riches. His *Riches* visible by the great Treasures which he draweth from the Mines of Silver

Silver, and of other Metals in his Kingdom: from the Trade of *Cockle-shells*, the only Money of his Realm, which he keeps wholly to himself, the great gain which he makes by *Slaves*, and from Elephants Teeth; the Presents which he hath in way of Tribute from the King of *Angola*. And though it be not easy to say what he layeth up yearly, because he hath not his Revenue in Coin, as most Princes have; yet it is thought that he is as rich and well furnished with all things as any Monarch in *Africk*.

As for his *Forces*, they consist most in the multitudes of his Subjects; which were they well armed and used to the Wars, would make him formidable to the rest of the *African Princes*. And though he hath no Garrisons or Towns of War, but must trust, if once invaded, unto *Cavalries of Bomas*; yet he doth rest secure enough from all

fear of danger, except out of *Europe*: being able to raise against his *Rebels*, or any of his invading Neighbours, 400000 men out of *Bambila* only, all armed according to their manner, and 70000 men at least, well exercised in Wars against the *Jaggies*, from the Province of *Battata* besides what may be drawn from his other Provinces.

The Arms of this King are *Mars*, five Swords meeting in *Bafe Sol*: which Coat was taken by *Alphonso*, the second King in this Catalogue, because in the Battle which he fought against *Panse Aquitine*, he and his Souldiers laid (or supposed they lay) such a number of shining Swords hanging in the Air, with their points turned directly upon the Enemy.

And so much for *ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR*.

## OF

# The ISLES of AFRICK.

IN tracing out the Isles of *AFRICK*, we must observe another course than that which we have taken in *Europe* and *Asia*: these Islands not belonging to any part of the Continent, nor under the command of any great Prince in *Africk*, in the account of whose Estates they might be considered; but being all of them independent and *sui juris*, and therefore to be handled by themselves apart. In our *Chorography* of which and the stories of them, (as far forth as my Authors will direct me in it) I am now to travel, beginning first with those that lie in the *Red-Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*, and so proceeding by the *Cape of Good Hope*, through the main *Atlantick Ocean*, to the Straits of *Hercules*: that from thence we may have the shorter passage into *America*, and there *adieu* *Æthiopia* conclude our journey. These then we will consider either joyned, or separated, as delivered to us by the names of 1. The *Æthiopic Islands*, 2. *Socotara*, 3. *Madagascar*, 4. *Mobelia*, 5. *Mauritius*, 6. *St. Hellens*, 7. *Ascension*, 8. *St. Thomas*, 9. The *Princes Island*, 10. The *Island of Anubon*, 11. The *Gorgades*, or Islands of *Cape Verde*, 12. The *Canaries*, or the *Fortunate Islands*, 13. *Madara*, 14. The *Island of Holy Port*, and 15. The *HESPERIDES*; of all which, the four first only are dispersed in the *Red-Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*, all the rest scattered up and down in the main *Atlantick*, on this side of the famous Promontory, called, the *Cape of Good Hope*.

## 1. THE ÆTHIOPICK ISLANDS.

THE *ÆTHIOPICK ISLANDS*, so called because they lie upon the Coast of *Æthiopia Superior*, together with all those which lie on the further side of the *Cape of Good Hope*, or scattered, or dispersed in the *Red-Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*, (for by those names these mighty Oriental Seas are most commonly known) of which we have spoke more at large when we were in *Arabia*, and therefore shall say nothing here

which concerns the same, but for the Islands of those Seas, such as we comprehend here under the name and notion of *Æthiopic Islands*, which were only known unto the Ancients, they are more in number than in weight: some of them situate within the Straits of the *Red Sea*, or the Gulf of *Arabia*; others without those Straits, in the open Ocean.

1. Of those within the Straits, not reckoning such as lie upon the shores of *Arabia Felix*, of which we have already spoken; there is 1. *Altare*, or *Altrata*, now called *Causia*. 2. *Ara Palladis*, so called from some Altar of that Goddess which was there erected. 3. *Gypseris*, by *Pliny* called *Cypris*, but *Gypsius* in *Justinians* Code, renowned in former time for its plenty of metals. 4. *Macaria*, or the *Fortunate Islands*, so called from the fertility and pleasures of it. 5. *Orneon*, or the *Isle of Birds*, from the great plenty of Birds which was found therein. 6. *Daphnis*, by *Pliny* called *Daphnie*, opposite to a famous Port-Town of the same name in the Continent. 7. *Bacchus*, so called from *Bacchus*, unto whom consecrated. 8. *Anti-Bacchus*, so named, because opposite to it. 9. *Acantiline*, supposed by some to be now called *Anguina*. 10. *Insula Didori*, conceived by the Learned to be the same which is now called *Babel Mandel*, and giveth name unto the *Straits*, or entrance of the Bay of *Arabia* now called the Straits of *Babel Mandel*. 11. *Insula Isidis*, memorable for a Temple dedicated to the Goddess *Isis*; and for a well frequented Port called *Portus Isidis*; the same which is now called *Pafos*, as *Bel-Forst* thinketh. 12. *Mendi*, an Island in the Bay of *Avalliter*, opposite to a noted *Empory* of the same name on the shores of that Bay. Besides all which, we find in *Pliny* two Islands by the name of *Thridides*; two more, called *Chelonides*, or *Chalbrates*, two others passing by the name of *Gomados*; together with the Isles of *Miron*, *Pan*, and that called *Insula Magorum*: which make up one and twenty in all, but of no note or observation in the course of business, or the conduct of humane affairs.

Those of most Note in the open Ocean, which still preserve the name of the *Red Sea*, and is sometimes called the

the *Indian*, sometimes the *Arabian* Ocean, and by a particular name *Pelagus Hypodis* are but four in number, that is to say, 1. *Myrica*, by the Translator of *Ptolemy* called *Myrica*; 2. 3. Two Islands called by the name of *Menan*, a degree more Northwards than the other: 4. *Amicofia*, as *Stephanus*; or *Amici Infula*, as called by *Ptolemy*, the most North of all; which I conjecture to be that which is now called by the name of *Socotara*, the most noted Island of this Sea. I know that many Learned men will have this Island to be that, which *Ptolemy* and others of the Ancients call *Disfordis*: but because *Disfordis*, by all those Ancients, is made to be an Island of *Arabia Felix*, and *Socotara* by all the Moderns affirmed to be an Isle of *Africa*; I can by no means yield unto it. Again, it is affirmed by our best Modern Geographers, that *Socotara* lieth over against *Cape Guardafui*, (the *Armatia* of *Ptolemy*, as before is said) from which distant not above 30 leagues: which site and distance forth will with *Amicofia*, but can by no means be applied unto *Disfordis*, *Amicofia* being placed by the *Longitude* of 85, whereas *Disfordis* is situate from it almost four degrees, in the *Longitude* of 16, and 40 *Minutes*; besides as great, or greater difference in their several *Latitude*. So that supposing for granted, that *Socotara* is that Island which was anciently called *Amicofia*; and having cleared my way for now, I now proceed to the Description and affairs thereof.

## 2. SOCOTARA.

2. **SOCOTARA**, the greatest Island of these Shores, is situate, as before was said, against *Cape Guardafui*, from which distant about 30 Leagues, *Abadalemy* a small Island lying in the midst, that is to say, 15 Leagues from the Cape, and 14 from the Island. The length hereof 60 miles, 25 the breadth; divided in the middle by craggy Mountains of great height, the top of which are for the most part covered with fens. The Island extremely vexed with Winds, and molested with dryness, inasmuch as it is destitute of most things necessary for the life of man; affording nothing towards it of the growth of the Earth, but some small quantity of Mill, Dates, and some kind of Fruits. Provided notwithstanding of some good Pastures for the breed of Cattel, and liberally furnished with Medicinal Drugs, as *Cinnabar*, *Dragons blood*, which is a red Gum issuing from the bark of a Tree; and the best *Aloes* in the World, from hence called *Aloes Socotrina*.

The people of an *Aethiopian*, very rude and barbarous; their bread for the most part of Dates; the rest of their food being milk and butter their hair long, and their clothing only enough to hide their nakedness. The Women as good Soldiers as the men, countenancing, or occasioning the tradition of the *Arabians*, that they came from the *Amazon*: And the better Husbands of the two, governing all affairs both within and without. All of them by profession *Christians*, governed by a *Bishop* of their own, with some few *Priests*; but ignorant enough of all things with concern Religion. More generally Circumcised than *Christians*, though both used among them, *Jacobites* in Sect, as the *Abissines* their Neighbours are; and zealous worshippers of the *Cross*, which they always hang about their Necks. So pertinaciously addicted unto *Magic* and therein so expert, that they bring incredible things to pass, not to be weaned from those black Arts, though the Bishop excommunicate all such as use them. They hold opinion, that *St. Thomas* suffered shipwreck upon their Coasts, as he sailed towards *India*; and that his Ship being drawn to land, was turned into a Church;

but it appeareth neither by their life, or Doctrines, taint any *Apotetical* man hath let foot amongst them.

They live for the most part in *Caves* or *Cabins*, of no other stuff than the boughs of Trees; so that we are to look for new Towns among them. The principal, 1. *Zocotara*, giving name to the Island, the place of the Kings residence, and a *Bishops* See. 2. *Tamarind*, 3. *Deliba*, two Port-Towns, and reasonably well traded, in the hands of the Natives: as 4. *Cora*, and 5. *Bonia*, two other Ports, possessed and garrison'd by the *Portugals*. The King thereof a Vassal to the King of *Fartane*, one of the petty Princes of *Arabia Felix*, not far from *Aden*; in Habit and Religion *Turkish*: attended on when the *Re-Liber* was there, Anno 1614, by five Camels and five Horses only yet the whole in the Island.

Nigh herunto are two Islands, (those posibly which *Ptolemy* calleth *Menan*) the one inhabited by men only, and the other by women, who do meet at their accustomed times to preserve their kind, but make no long stay; the Air of the one being found unhealthy for the constitution of the other Sex. The other Islands of these Coasts, scattered up and down in the Bay of *Barbaria*, (but not known by any name in the time of *Ptolemy*) as 1. *Dan Garcia*, 2. The Three Brethren, 3. *Brandon*, 4. *Francois*, 5. *Mafcadenna*, 6. *Comoro*, and many others of as small note, are not worth the speaking of.

## 3. MADAGASCAR.

3. **MADAGASCAR**, the greatest of the world, is situate over against *Mesambique* in *India Inferior* supposed to be the *Memuthis* of *Ptolemy*, the only Island by him named on the Coast of that Country; but by the *Portugals* called the Isle of *St. Lawrence*, because discovered by them on the day of that Saint, An. 1506. The length hereof affirmed to be 1200 miles, (which is longer than *Italy*) and 4000 in compass: the middle part hereof opposite to the Promontory, which *Ptolemy* calleth *Prasium*, now the point of *Mesambique*, from which distant 170 miles: in reference to the Heavenly bodies, situate from the 17 Degrees of Southern *Latitude*, to the 26th.

The Country plentiful of all things necessary for the life of man, particularly of Mill, Rice, Honey, Wax, Cotton-wool, Sugars, Stags, Goats, Deer, and other Creatures both wild and tame; Lions and other cooling Fruits, some store of Ginger, Cloves, but little different from those of *India*, red Sanders, Saffron, Amber, and some Mines of Silver, Iron, Gold, and Copper: not to say any thing of their Bees and Muttons, so large and good, and so good cheap, that for a two-penny Bead, or some such trifles, they will sell beves and Sheep of good rate and bigness: such numbers of Elephants, that they find thence yearly great store of *Ivory*. And amongst other rare Fruits, they have plenty of those which they call *Cocos*, or *Cocoanuts*; a kind of Date as big as a Cabbage: the liquor in it, about the quantity of a pint, tastes like Wine and Sugar; the Kernel big enough to content two men: and like good *Ale*, it affords not only meat and drink, but clothing; as also furniture for their houses, tackle for their ships, fuel for the fire, and timber for building; the body of the Tree being straight and high, and toward the top diversified into many branches. A Country far too good for so bad a people.

For they, as Travellers report, and most Writers testify, are treacherous, inhospitable, ignorant both of Prayers and Festivals; destitute of the distinction of time into years and months, not knowing any proper names for the days of the week, nor able to reckon above tens naked, except

except their *privities*, which they cover with Cotton; *Idolaters* in the mid-land parts, and *Mahometans* upon the Shores. Commendable only for their hate to *Polygamy*, and restraining themselves to one Wife; the declining of the Marriage-bed severely punished: but otherwise so eager upon copulation, that their Boys at the age of twelve years, and their Girls at ten, think they stay too long if they keep their Virginitie any longer: some of them, like *Quarilla* in *Petrus Arbitr*, begin so early, at *unquam meminere* se *Virgines* fuisse, that they remember not the time when they lost their Maidenheads. Of colour they are black, and of strong composition; their Breasts and Faces cut and pink, to appear more beautiful. Much given unto the Wars, well armed according to their Country manner, and exceeding good Archers. Amongst them there are some white people, said to come from *China*.

It hath in it many fair Rivers, but their names I find not; and at the mouths of those Rivers some convenient Havens, into which they admit the Foreign Merchants, but suffer none to come on Land; which the Merchant hath no cause to be sorry for, finding himself not safe on Shipboard from their treacherous practices. So that we can give but small account of their Towns and Cities, except it be the bare recital of their Names: as, viz. 1. *S. Augustine*, on a fair Bay in the South-West point; as 2. *Gangomar*, in the North-East of it. 3. *Antabola*, 4. *Point Antogil*, 5. *Santo-Jacoba*, 6. *Matatians*, 7. *Angoda*, 8. *Herndor*, 9. *Andro-arco*, and 10. *Roma*, or *New-Rome*, got entituled by some zealous *Romanist*, in hope to have it thought that the *Pope* of *Rome* had got some footing in this Island.

This Island known, but very imperfectly in the time of *Marcus Paulus Venerus*, who telleth us many strange things of it: but none more strange than that of the Bird called *Rack*, of such incredible strength and bigness, that it could march upon an Elephant as easily as a Kite doth a Chicken. Discovered by the *Portugals* in the year 1506, as before was said; and since frequented by the *English* and *Holland* Merchants: by whom we are informed no further touching the Estate and Affairs thereof, but that it is divided into four parts, under so many Kings, each of them in continual Wars against one another, but well enough agreed to defend themselves against the coming in of Strangers. Yet, as some say, they would be well enough content with an *English* Plantation: either in love to our Nation, whom they acknowledge to be more courteous than the *Portugals*, and not so covetous as the *Dutch*; or else by the strength of our Shipping, and the reputation of our interest in it, to keep off all others.

## 4. MOHELIA, and 5. MAURITIUS Island.

A Djoining to *Madagascar*, and as it were attending on it, I find divers Islands; and some on the North-west we have, 1. *Mottey*, 2. *Chamroy*, 3. *Mohelia*, and 4. *Jaama* Island; on the East. 5. The Island of *Mauritius*, and 6. *Englands Forre*. Of these *Mauritius* is the greatest, but *Mohelia* the best inhabited.

4. **MOHELIA**, situate on the North-west of *Madagascar*, is about 20 miles in length, and 15 in breadth: abounding in Goats, Hens, *Coco-nuts*, *Lemons*, *Oranges*, *Pom-Citrons*, *Pulse*, *Sugar-canes*, store of Fish taken on the shores, and other necessities. The people of complexion black, of composition large and strong; courageous, affable, less treacherous than their Neighbours of *Madagascar*. Of the same Language and Religion with those of *Arabia*, from whence they seem to have descended; but by reason of their commerce and

intercourse with the *Portugals*, they speak that Tongue also. The Women of the like complexion, to amend which, and seem more lovely, they Pink their arms and faces in several thapses. Both Sexes no otherwise apparelled than their natural Garments; with some *Plumbe* Leaves about their middle to hide their thame.

Their Religion that of *Mahomet*; as before is said, their *Priests* in great esteem amongst them; so their Temples also: which they keep clean and neatly matted; not suffering any man to enter with his Shoes on his feet. Their chief Town *Moringuza*, at the West-end of the Isle, strong and well Garrisoned: Heretofore under the command of one King alone; of late divided into two Principalities; one of the last Kings leaving two daughters, the one married to a Native, the other to an *Arabian* Lord.

5. Larger than this, on the East of *Madagascar*, is the Isle of *MAURITIUS*, so called by the *Hollanders* in honour of *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, in whose time they first set footing in it; but by the *Portugals* called *De Corne*, and by some *Ceylon*. In compass about 100 miles: well stored with *Beeves*, *Hogs*, *Goats*, most flocks of Fowl; and liberally endowed with all the blessings of Nature, sweet Waters, most delicious Fruits, Woods fit for any use both of food and building; plenty of *Ebony* of all colours, but the best coal-black. Yet altogether destitute of humane Inhabitants: inasmuch as we may say of this, as the Poet of the World, before man was made;

*Sanctis bis Anima, mentisque capax astra,  
Deerat adhuc, & quod dominari cetera possit.*

Which may be Englished in these words:

But yet the Chief, with supream power posselt,  
Was wanting, he that should command the reit.

Of the ATLANTICK OCEAN, and the Isles therein.

HAVING thus looked upon such Islands as lie upon the Eastern side of *Africa* in the *Indian* Ocean, let us come homeward by the *Cape of Good Hope*, into the main *Atlantic*, the greatest body of Waters, which is given to us by one name in any of our Cosmographers, either old or new: a name peculiar to that part of the Western Ocean, which lieth between the *Streights of Gibraltar* and the Land of *Nigros*, to which Mount *Atilis* the west it felt with a cloudy top, and gives name to the Seas adjoining, but generally communicated to all that vast Region of Waters which lieth between *Spain* and *Africa* on the one side, and the New World, or *America* on the other side: Extended further by *Strabo*, and some other of the ancient Writers, who not knowing any thing of the interposition of *America*, carry the name of the *Atlantic* to the Shores of *India*, which they make to be terminated by this on the East and South. *Macrobius* goeth farther in it, affirming positively, *emmen terram, que a nobis colitur, Atlantico mari (quod Oceanum appellamus) circumfunditur*, that the whole habitable World (so far as it was then known and peopled) was compassed round about with the *Atlantic* Ocean. The like affirmed by *Julius Firmicus* also, by *Aristotle* in his Book *De Mundo*, and by others, who have took it upon their Authority. And though some parts thereof, which wash the Western Shores of *Aethiopia Inferior*, be called the *Aethiopian* Ocean; yet that it doth derogate no



more from the great extent that is given formerly to the main *Atlantick*, than that some parts of the *Mediterranean* should be called *Mare Siculum*, *Sardum*, *Tyrrhenum*, *Creticum*, according to the shores of those several places which it passeth by; which having said in general of the Sea it self, according to our method in other places, we next proceed unto the rest of the *African* Islands, which we named before, but could not meet with but in this Sea, and this side of *Africa*.

6. *St. HELENS*, and 7. the Isles of *ASCENSION*.

AND the first Isle we meet with in this side of *Africa* is, 6. the Isle of *St. Helens*, situate on the West of the *Cape of Good Hope*, and in the 16 degree of the Southern latitude, no other Island interposing betwixt *Madagascar* and it, except those of *Don Alvarez*, and of *Tristram de Acugna*, near the *Cape* it self; but of so little note, as not worth the naming. The Island very high and hilly, and mounting from the Sea with so steep an ascent, that the Mariners have amongst them a merry saying, that a man may chuse whether he will break his heart going up, or his neck going down.

It was thus called, because discovered by the *Portugals* on *St. Helens* day; not then inhabited, nor since; the King of *Spain* suffering none to dwell there, because it had been an unlawful Receptacle for uncustomed Goods; whereby he lost exceedingly both in Power and Profit. Stored by the *Portugals* at the first discovery, with Goats, Hogs, Hens, and other Creatures: as also with Figs, Limons, Oranges, and the like Fruits, which there thrive exceedingly, and grow all the year long. Intended by them for a Stage in their going and coming to and from the *Indies*: in which they might refresh themselves, and bestow their lick, whence they are taken off by the next years Fleet. Used for the same purpose by the *English* and *Hollanders*, who so dominion about the Island, that the *Portugals* dare not Anchor near it, or own their Property, if they see any shipping in the Rode. No buildings in it but the ruins of a little Chapel, destroyed by the *Hollanders*; and some fragment of a little Village begun by some *Portugal* Mariners, but demolished by the King of *Spain*.

7. North-west from hence is the Isle of *Ascension*, so called, because discovered on *Ascension* day; not then inhabited, nor any use at all made of it for ought I can find. Of the same bigness with *St. Helens*, 30 miles in compass, and about 700 *English* miles distant from it.

8. *St. THOMAS*, 9. *The PRINCES Island*, and 10. the Isle of *ANNIBON*.

8. THE Island of *St. THOMAS* is situate directly under the *Equator*, of *Oblisical* form, the Diameter being 60 miles, by consequence the Perimeter or compass 180, and just to many from the shore of the Realm of *Congo*. At the first discovery nothing but a continual Forest, now very well inhabited both by *Portugals* and *Negros*; these last brought hither from the opposite Continent: with whom the Air agrees so well, that they attain generally to 110 years of Age, few of the *Portugals* unto fifty. The Air so vehemently hot, that it forthwith brings forth no Ear: nor will

The Country destitute of Wheat, which if sown here, turneth all to blade, and brings forth no Ear: nor will

any Fruits here prosper, that have any stone in them: but so abundant in *Sugar-Canes*, and well stored with *Sugars*, that 40 Ships are hence loaded yearly with that one Commodity; for making which, they have here 70 *Ingenios*, or *Sugar-houses*, and in each of them 200 *Slaves*, in some 300, which belong to the Works. Six days in seven these *Slaves* work for their Masters and the seventh for themselves; which they spend in sowing and planting their Seeds, Fruits, and Provisions. Where, by the way, these *Sugar-works*, or *Ingenios*, are a late Invention: the boiling and baking of *Sugar* (as it is now used) not being above 200 years old; and the refining of it more new than that: first found out by a *Venetian* in the days of our Fathers, who is said to have got above 100000 Crowns by this Invention, and to have left his Son a Knight; who (though he was no Knight of the *Poist*) in very little time brought it all to nothing. Before which Art of boiling and refining *Sugars*, our Ancestors not having such luxurious Palates, sometimes made use of rough *Sugar*, as it came from the *Canes*; but most commonly pleased themselves with Honey, more wholesome, because more natural than these forced inventions. But to proceed in the description of this Island, in the midst thereof is said to be a woody Mountain, over-shadowed continually with Clouds: which so moisten the Trees that grow there in a great abundance, that from thence falleth a sufficient quantity of waters to refresh their fields, and feed their *Sugar-canes*, notwithstanding the extreme heat of the Climate and Air.

The Religion here allowed of, is the *Christian* only, first preached here by the *Portugals*, or brought hither with them. The Church hereof governed by a Bishop, his Title, the Bishop of *St. Thomas*; but his Charge extendeth all over all the Churches in the Realm of *Congo*. The Principal City of it hath the name of *Pavosian*, a Colony of *Portugals*, consisting of 700 Families, or about that number: situate on a fine River, and a pleasant Haven: seldom without the company of *Portugal* Merchants, who bring hither in exchange for *Sugars*, *Wheat*, *Wine*, *Cheese*, *Hides*, and other things more necessary than these *Sugars* for the life of Man. Took by the *Hollanders* in the year 1599, but again recovered, or abandoned; and since possessed again by the *Hollanders*, not as before by force of Arms, but by fraud and falshood, at the same time, and by the same dishonest Arts by which they made themselves Masters of the Castle of *Angola*, before mentioned. And though the *Portugal* Ambassador presented his injurious dealing to the *States* of *Holland*, yet all the answer he could get at the present, was, that their people had done nothing but what was justified by that clause of the Article, that both sides might take and keep whatsoever they could within such a time: and though the Ambassador replied very rationally in behalf of his Country, and pressed the restitution both of this Island, and that Castle by all honest arguments, yet he could then get no reason from them: and whether they have done the *Portugals* any Justice since, as to those particulars, I am not able to determine.

9. THE PRINCES ISLAND, (*Insula Principum* in the *Latine*) so called, for that the Revenues of it were allotted to the Prince of *Portugal*; is situate in three degrees of the Northern Latitude. The Country very fruitful for the bigness of it; but not much observable, except it be for being taken for the *Hollanders* by *Julian Clarcbogen*, Anno 1598, abandoned not long after to the former Owner. Attended as is fit for a *Princes* Island, by a *Mess* of *Chaplains*, viz. 1. the Isles of *St. Matthew*. 2. *St. Croix*. 3. *St. Paul*. and 4. *St. Concepcion*.

ception: and waited on by seven servants (so many Islands near *Cape Verd* laid in Coats of *Green*, called by one common name, *Barbaena*. But because the former four yield no matter of *Hibory*, and these last seven have no other Inhabitants but *Birds*; we may be thought, having said thus much of them, to have said enough.

10. South-west hereof, but on the other side of the Line, lieth the Isle of *Annobon*, (*Insula Annoboni*, as the *Latines* call it.) So named, because discovered upon New-years-day. Inhabited, and of very good fishing all along the Coasts of it; but that fishing made unsafe by *Crocodiles*, and other venomous and hurtful Creatures, which are said to be about the shores in great abundance.

11. The GORGADES, or the Isles of CAPE VERD.

11. THE GORGADES, or the Islands of *Cape Verd*, (*Insula Capitis Viridis*, as the *Latines* call them) are nine in number, called by the last name, because situate over against *Cape Verd* (*Promontorium Capitis Viridis*) in the Land of *Negros*. Their Names, 1. *Saint Anthony*. 2. *Saint Vincent*. 3. *Eusebiana*. 4. *Saint Lucius*. 5. *Insula Salis*, the Isle of Salt. 6. *Del Fogo*, or the Isle of Fire. 7. *Saint Nicholas*. 8. *Moggo*, or *Maja*. 9. *Saint Jago*. Some add to these a tenth, called *Brazza*. Discovered all in the year 1440, by a *Genoese* called *Antonio de Noli*, employed therein at the charges and direction of *Henry Duke of Vise*, one of the younger Sons of King *John of Portugal*, the first of that name. Of the most little to be said. The principal, and indeed the only ones which are now inhabited, are *Maja*, *Del Fogo*, *St. Jago*. 1. *Maja*, is of most repute for a *Lake* of two Leagues long; the Waters whereof are by the heat of the Sun turned into Salt, which is here made in great abundance. 2. *Del Fogo*, is called from the flakes of fire which it sends forth usually; and fell to thick upon the Ship of *Sir Anthony Sherley*, when he took the Island, Anno 1596, that one might have writ his name in the ashes on the upper Deck, with the top of his finger. 3. The principal of all, *St. Jago*, yet but 7 miles long; Rocky and Mountainous, but full of very pleasant Valleys, and well inhabited. The chief Town of it called *Ribiera*, or *Ribiera la Grande*, a Colony of *Portugals*; situate on a fine River and a beautiful Haven: taken and sacked by *Sir Francis Drake*, in the year 1585, and after by *Sir Anthony Sherley*, Anno 1596.

The names of *Gorgades*, as the more ancient of the two, is almost forgotten. Given to those Islands, as supposed (but I cannot see upon what Grounds) to be the fear of the *Gorgons*; the proper habitation or dwelling place of *Medusa* and her two fair Sisters. This *Medusa*, said or rather fabled by the Poets to have been a Woman of great beauty; who either for suffering her body to be abused by *Nepereus*, one of the Temples of *Pallas*, or for preferring her self before *Pallas*, had by the said Goddess, her hair turned into *Snakes*; and this property annexed unto them, that whatsoever looked on her, should be turned into *Stones*: which quality was retained after the was slain, and beheaded by *Perseus*. Thus and far more fabulously the Poets. The Historians (for as some think, *omnis fabula fundatur in historia*) relate how this *Medusa* was indeed a Lady of such exceeding beauty, that all men that saw her were amazed; and of such a wife and subtle brain, that for that cause only men attributed unto her a *Serpents* head. She abounding in

wealth, and by *Pisces* molesting the Seas of *Europe*, was invaded by an Army of *Grecians*, under the leading of *Perseus*, who in a single combat slew her. *Perseus* when he plucked off her Helmet, admiring that beauty which he had destroyed, cut off her Head, and carried it unto *Greece*: where the people beyond measure wondered at the rare composure of her face, and the exceeding beauty of her hair; and are therefore said to have by her head been metamorphosed into *Stones*. *Pausanias* in his *Comuthiack* so reports the Story.

12. THE CANARIES.

THE CANARIES are in number seven, situate over against the Coast of *Libya Interior*, so called from *Canaria*, one of the principal of the number. By *Pliny*, *Pholomy*, and other of the ancient Writers, they were called *Insulae Fortunatae*, the Fortunate Islands: and amongst them of great note, for being made the fixed place of the first Meridian; removed since to *St. Michaels* one of the *Azores*. But those Ancients knew but six of them by name, and in the naming of those six do not well agree, by *Pliny*, whom *Solinus* followeth, they are said to be, 1. *Ombrio*, 2. *Junonia Major*, 3. *Junonia Minor*, 4. *Canaria*, 5. *Nivaria*, and 6. *Canaria*. By *Pholomy* thus reckoned, 1. *Aproditus*, 2. *Hera*, (or *Junonia*), 3. *Phaetania*, 4. *Canaria*, 5. *Canaria*, and 6. *Canaria*. Where we may note also to our purpose, that though these Authors disagree in all the rest of the names (*Junonia* being added by the Translators unto *Pholomy's* *Isles*) yet they agree in making *Canaria* to be one; which sheweth that one to be of eminence enough, to give the name of *Canary* Islands unto all the rest. Called *Fortunate*, from an opinion which the ancients had of their fruitfulness, and other excellencies; in which respects several Countries in those times had the names of *Macaria*, *Felix*, *Fortunate*. Now better known by the new names of 1. *Canary*. 2. *Palma*. 3. *Tenariffe*. 4. *Gomero*. 5. *Ferro*. 6. *Lanzarote*, and 7. *Fuente Ventura*.

1. CANARIA, or *Canaria Magna*, because the biggest of the Cluster is said to be 90 miles in compass, and to contain 9000 persons: plentiful in Barley, Honey, Wax, *Sugar-Canes*, Goats, Kine, and Camels; of which and of their Cheese, and the skins of Beasts, they raise great profit: but from nothing more than from their Wood (whereof they have very great abundance) used by the Clothier for the well-colouring of his Cloth. From hence and from the other of these Islands which bear this name, come the fine singing-Birds, called *Canary-Birds*; and so do also those rich Wines, (the Fruit of the *Rhynio-Grape* transplanted) which we call *Canaries*. A sort of Wine, if not sophisticated and abused, which is said to fume less to the head, please the palate more, and better help the natural weakness of a cold stomach (if moderately and discreetly used) than any other Wines whatsoever. Brought hence in such abundance to supply our luxury, that no less than 3000 Tuns hereof are vended yearly into *England* and the *Netherlands* only.

2. PALMA, one of the least in circuit, but as rich as any; fruitful in Wine and *Sugars*, abundantly well stored with Cattle, and great plenty of Cheese; and therefore made the victualling place of the Spanish Fleets as they pass to *Brasil* and *Porto*. This Island, together with *Canary* and *Tenariffe*, make up the Bishoprick of the *Canaries*. One of the Bishops whereof was that *Melchior Canius*, a *Dominican* Friar; whose works now



"Isles of *Blessed Souls*, and the *Fortunate Islands*. They have rain there very seldom, but a fine sweet Dew, which makes the Earth exceeding fruitful both for tillage and planting Fruits, which sometimes grow without any care or labour of the Husbandman: sufficient by their plenty and sweetness to maintain the people, much given to ease, and hardly troubling themselves with any business. The Air for the most part very temperate, never extreme in any changes of the Season; the rigour of the Northern and Eastern Winds, being by so long a passage thither very much abated; as on the other side the Western and South-Eastern Winds, do much refresh it with such Mists as they bring from the Sea, to the great comfort of the People. A place by generally sweet, that the Barbarous people in it have a constant and approved opinion, that these

"should be the *Elysian Fields*, the seats of the blessed Souls departed, described by *Homer*: with the report whereof *Servilius* was so highly taken, that he intended to have given over the pursuit of the *Civil Wars*; and there to spend the rest of his days in peace and happiness; which he had done, if the *Cilicians*, men accustomed unto spoil and rapine, had not took him off. So far, and to this purpose *Plutarch*. But what these Islands are, and where now to be found, (for in regard of their great distance from the Coast of *Africa* they cannot be the *Fortunate Islands* spoken of before) I cannot easily determine: unless we should conjecture, as *Ortelius* doth, that they are the Islands of *Cuba* and *Hispagnola*, on the Coasts of *America*; to the Story and Geography whereof we are now to hasten.

And so much for the Isles of *Africa*.

A Table

A.		Long.	Lat.		Long.	Lat.	
A	Gadez	39	20	25 30	Malta	46 0	45 30
	Alexandria	67	0	31 20	Manicongo	47 20	7 0 A.
	Algiers	33	0	35 20	Morocco	20 0	30 30
	Amara	63	30	5 0 A.	Melinde	71 20	3 20 A.
	Angola	45	10	7 0 A.	Meroe	68 20	16 15
	Asna	66	30	25	Mezzata	47 40	30 40
	Azamor	18	30	32 40	Mina	28 50	6 20
	Atekin	11	10	20 20	Mombaza	72 0	4 50 A.
	Adrimetum				Mofambique	70 20	14 40
					Mompbis		
B.		80 01	12 50	Nubia	N.	60 0	17 40
	Babel Mandel	62 36	6 0	Oran	O.	29 40	35 0
	Bagamedrum	62		Palma	P.	6 20	28 0
	Barea	41 0	7 40	Pascar	Q.	59 40	1 20 A.
	Benin	37 10	35 40	Quiloa	R.	69 50	8 56
	Borneo	44 30	17 10	Ramejer	S.	68 30	30 30
	Brava	74 30	0 30	Sabaim	T.	68 20	8 40
	Budomet	10 20	14 30	Sepra		22 0	35 40
	Bugia	34 30	35 10	Siachem		72 40	18 40
	Babylon Egypt	34.30	44.30	Sus		27 30	
C.		67 30	30 0	Tangier		30 50	35 0
	Caire	53 30	32 0	Tefabue		16 10	30 0
	Cyrene	9 30	27 20	Teguit		27 40	28 10
	Canaria			Tenit		17 0	30 30
	Carthage			Tenariffe		8 10	27 30
	Cirta			Teffet		20 0	29 10
D.		60 0	32 40	Teffine		29 0	34 10
	Damata	51 0	11 20	Tigremann		65 0	6 0
	Damut	65 0	17 30	Tombuto		20 50	15 0
	Dancali	66 50	12 0	Tunis		40 0	36 0
	Dara	78 20	12 30	Thebes in Egypt	V.	28.00	28.35
E.		74 0	2 40	Vella	Z.	77 0	13 0
	Faigiar	21 50	32 50	Ulica		88 0	12 50
	Fesse	6 20	26 30	Zacatera		36 40	14 40
	Fierro	11 0	28 0	Zegerg		80 0	11 20
	Forte ventura	8 10	31 30	Zella		45 50	40 50
	Fouchial			Zigge		59 0	25 20 A.
F.		64 49	70 30 A.	Zimbans			
	Gamba	55 0	22 0				
	Gnaga	57 0	14 0 A.				
	Goyami	13 30	23 30				
	Gualata	29 20	10 40				
	Guber						
G.		10 0	32 30				
	Holy Port	11 40	29 30				
H.		77 0	19 0 A.				
	Laufertotte	46 0	5 10				
L.							
	Madagofcar						
	Midazo						

A. is the mark of a Southern Latitude.

A. is the mark of a Southern Latitude.

The End of the First Part of the Fourth Book.

# A TABLE of the Longitude and Latitude of the Principal Towns and Cities mentioned in this Part.

Nova descriptio  
Impensis  
ANÆ SEILE  
1663



# COSMOGRAPHY, The Fourth Book.

---

PART II.

---

CONTAINING THE  
CHOROGRAPHY  
AND  
HISTORY  
OF  
AMERICA,

AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Islands of it.

---

By *PETER HEYLYN*.

---

MATTH. XXIV. 14.

*Et predicabitur hoc Evangelium regni in universo orbe, testimonium omnibus Gentibus :  
& tunc veniet consummatio.*

*S. Hieronym. in locum.*

*Signum Domini adventus est Evangelium in toto Orbe predicari, ut nullus sit excu-  
sabilis : quod aut jam completum, aut brevi cernimus complendum.*

---

L O N D O N,  
Printed in the Year MDCLXXVII.



# COSMOGRAPHY,

## The Fourth Book.

### PART II.

#### CONTAINING THE CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY OF AMERICA,

AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Islands of it.

OF AMERICA.



AMERICA, the fourth and last part of the World, is bounded on the East with the *Atlantic Ocean* and the *Percian Seas*, by which parted from *Europe* and *Africa*, which Seas the Mariners call *Mare del Nord*; on the West, with the *Pacific Ocean*, by the Mariners called *Mare del Sur*, which divides it from *Asia*; on the South, with some part of *Terra Australis Incognita*, from which separated by a long but narrow *Streight*, called the *Streights of Magellan*: the North bounds of it hitherto not so well discovered, as that we can certainly affirm it to be *Island* or *Continent*.

It is called by some, and that most aptly, *THE NEW WORLD*: New, for the Late Discovery; and *World*, for the vast greatness of it. The most usual, and yet somewhat the more improper name, is that of *America*; because *Americus Vesputius*, an adventurous *Florentine*, discovered a great part of the Continent of it. But since the first light he had to find out those Parts came from the Directions and Example of *Columbus*, who first led the way; and that *Sebastien Cabot* touched at many places which *Americus Vesputius* never saw, it might as properly have been called *Columbiana*, *Sebastiana*, or *Cabotia*.

The most improper name of all, and yet not much less used than that of *America*, is the *West-Indies*: *West*, in regard of the Western situation of it from these parts of *Europe*; and *Indies*, either as mistook for some part of *India*, at the first Discovery, or else because the Seamen use to call all Countries, if remote and rich, by the name of *India*.

Many are of opinion, but rather grounded on conjectural Presumptions, than demonstrative Arguments, that *America* was known long before our late Discoveries. Their Reasons drawn, 1. From the Doctrine of the *Antipodes*, which being maintained by many of the Ancient Writers, inferreth (as they think) a knowledge of these parts of the World which are opposite to us. But unto this it may be answered, that the knowledge of the *Antipodes* amongst the Ancients was by Supposition at the best by Demonstration only, & not in fact; that it was known that there were *Antipodes*, but the *Antipodes* were not known. 2. It is said that *Hanno*, a Noble *Carthaginian*, discovered a great Island in the Western Ocean, and after a long Voyage returned home again, not wanting Sea-room, but *Vithuals*, as he told the Senate. But he that writ the actions of *Hanno* in this famous Voyage, (which some conceive to be *Hanno* himself) inform us that he failed not West-

wards, but more towards the South : and therefore this *Great Island*, whatsoever it was, (whether *Madera*, or some one of the *Fortunate Islands*, I determine not) could not be *America*. 3. It is alleged that *Plato* in his *Timæus* speaks of a great Island of the *Atlantic Ocean*, *Libyam & Africam adiacentem*, (as out of him *Terullian* hath it) as big as *Libya* and *Africa*, properly so called : which he confesseth to be drowned long before his time, and therefore possibly never extant but in some poets fancies. 4. That *Ariftole* in the Book of *Manda* if that Book be his speaks of an Island very fruitful, and full of Navigable Rivers, discovered by the *Carthaginians*, and by them forbidden to be planted upon pain of death. Which Island being affirmed by that Author to be *Multorum diemum itine* a *Gadibus remota*, hath made some men conceive it to be this *America*, or some of the great Islands of it. As if it might not as well be one of the *Azores*, or perhaps some of the *Phœnicians*, have, who would not gladly lose such an opportunity of embellishing their performances in Navigation, (could anything be built upon it) doth waste the whole Relation as of doubtful credit; and knoweth of no such place as there described by that Author, whosoever he were. 5. Some have produced these Verses of *Senecca*, to infer a knowledge of this Country amongst the Ancients, viz.

*Veniunt anni sceleris frons,  
Quibus Oceanus vincula rerum  
Laxat, et ingens pateat Telluris  
Noſſusque Tiphys detegat Orbem,  
Nec fit Terris ultima Thule.*

Which may be *English* in these words :

In the last days an age shall come  
Wherein the all-devouring Foam  
Shall lose its former bounds, and there  
Another Continent to view.  
New Worlds, which Night doth now conceal,  
A second Tiphys shall reveal,  
And frozen Thule shall no more  
Be of the Earth the farthest Shore.

But this Argument can bring no necessary, nor so much as a probable inference, of any such Continent as this, then known to *Senecca* : the Poet in that *Chorus* shewing as well the continual dangers as the possible effects of Navigation; that there might be, not that there were, more Lands discovered than those formerly known. 6. Some hold this Country to be the Land of *Opbis*, to which *Solomon* is said in the holy Scriptures to have sent for Gold. But *Ezra* and *Gheber*, which is there also said to be the Nation where his Navy lay, was situate in the bottom of the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia* : whereas if he had had this way, his shipping must have lain at *Joppa*, or some other Port of the *Mediterranean*, and from thence set forthwards through the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and so plainly Westward. 7. Finally in the History of *Walter*, writ by *Davide*, it is reported that *Mado* the Son of *Ovra* *Givendib* Prince of *Walter*, of purpose to decline engaging in a *Civil War* raised in that Estate, in the year 1170. put himself to Sea, and after a long course of Navigation came into this Country; where after he had left his men and fortified some places of advantage in it, he returned home for more Supplies, which he carried with him in ten Barks; but neither he nor they looked after by the rest of that Nation. To which some add, that there is still some smattering of the *Welsh* or *British* tongue to be found amongst them ; as that a Bird with a white head is called *Penguin*,

and the like; in which regard some forty States-men went about to censure *Queen Elizabeth* into the Sovereignty of these Countries. Others, more wisely, dissuaded from that vain Ambition, considering that *Welsh-men*, as well as others, might be cast upon those parts by force of Tempest, and easily implant some few words of their own among the People there inhabiting. And though I must needs say for the honour of *Walter*, that they have more grounds for what they say, than those which look for this New World in the *Atlantis* of *Plato*, the *Atlantick* Islands of *Ariftole* and *Plutarch*, or the Discoveries of *Hanno* the *Carthaginian* : yet am I not so far convinced of the truth thereof, the use of Mariner's Compass being not so ancient, (without which such a Voyage could not be performed) but that I may conclude with more satisfaction, that this Country was unknown to the former Ages.

But now, as *Mela* the Geographer said once of *Britannia* then newly conquered by the *Romans*, *Britannia qualis sit, qualesque progressus, mox certior & magis explorata dicemus*, ( he means *Claudian Cæsar* ) *non indolentiam modo sed & inopiam ante se Genium Vitæ* : so may we say of *America*, on these late Discoveries. What kind of Country it is, and what men it produceth, we do and shall know more certainly then in former times ; since those puissant Kings of *Spain* have laid open almost all the parts thereof, inhabited not only by unvanquished, but even unknown Nations. For God remembering the promise of his Son, that his Gospel before the end of the World should be preached to all Nations, stirred up one *Christopher Colon*, or *Columbus*, born at *Nerby*, in the Seignoury of *Genoa*, to be the Instrument for finding out those parts of the World, to which the sound of the Gospel had not yet arrived. Who being a man of great abilities, and born to undertake great matters, could not persuade himself (the motion of the Sun considered) but that there was another World to which that Glorious Planet did impart both his Light and Heat, when he went from us. This World he purposed to seek after, and opening his design to the State of *Genoa*, Anno 1486. was by them rejected. On his repulse, he sent his Brother *Bartholomew* to King *Henry* the Seventh of *England* ; who in his way happened unfortunately into the hands of Pirates, by whom he was detained a long while, but at last enlarged. As soon as he was set at liberty, he repaired to the Court of *England* : where his Proposition found such a cheerful entertainment at the hands of the King, that *Christopher Colon* was sent for to come thither altho. But GOD had otherwise disposed his rich purchase. For *Christopher*, not knowing of his Brothers imprisonment, nor hearing any tidings from him, conceived the offer of his Service to have been neglected ; and thereupon made his desires known at the Court of *Castile* : where, after many delays ; and six years attendance on the business, he was at last furnished with three Ships only, and those not for Conquest, but Discovery. With this small strength he sailed on the main Ocean more than 60 days, yet could see no Land, so that the discontented *Spaniards* began to mutiny ; partly out of scorn to be under the Command of Stranger, partly desirous to return, would not go a foot farther. Just at that time it happened that *Columbus* did discern the Clouds to carry a clearer colour than they did before : and probably conceiving that this clearness proceeded from some high habitable place, refrained the time of their expectation within : the compass of three days, passing his way to return again, if they did not see Land within that time. Towards the end of the third day, one of the Company, called *Rodrigo de Triame* ( he deserves to have his name recorded, being no otherwise rewarded for such joyful News ) descried Fire, an evident Argument that they

they drew near unto some Shore. The place discovered was an Island on the Coast of *Florida*, by the Natives called *Guanahani* ; by *Columbus S. Savanah* ; now counted one of the *Luciais*. Landing his men, and causing a Tree to be cut down, he made a Cross thereof, which he erected near the place where he came on Land ; and by that Ceremony took possession of this NEW WORLD for the Kings of *Spain*, Octob. 11. Anno 1492. Afterwards he discovered and took possession of *Hispaniola*, and with much Treasure and Content returned towards *Spain*. Preferred for this good Service by the Kings themselves, first to be Admiral of the *Indies*, and afterwards to a Coat of Arms with this Inscription, *For Castile and Leon Columbus habetogen* a NEW WORLD ; and in conclusion into the Title of Duke *De la Vega*, in the life of *Jamaica*. News of this fortunate Discovery being sent to Pope *Alexander VI.* by the Kings of *Castile*, he very liberally bestowed upon them all those Countreys which they already had, or should afterwards discover in the Western World, advising them to use their Diligence and Endeavours for converting those People to the Faith : which was done accordingly. For the next year *Columbus* being furnished with 18 Ships for more Discoveries, and his Brother *Bartholomew* made Governour of the Countreys discovered by him, they took along with them one *Bryl*, a *Benedictine* Monk, as the Pope's Vicar-General accompanied with the learned Clerks which were to be Assistants to him in the converting of that People to the Christian Faith. In this second Voyage, he discovered the Islands of *Cuba* and *Jamaica*, and built the Town of *Isabella* ; afterwards better known by the name of *Domingo* ; in *Hispaniola* : from whence, for some Severities used against the mutinous *Spaniards*, he was sent Prisoner into *Castile*, but very honourably entertained, and absolved from all the Crimes imputed to him. In the year 1497. he began his third Voyage, in which he discovered the Countreys of *Paria* and *Guayana*, on the firm Land, with the Islands of *Cubagua* and *Margarita*, with many other Islands, Capes, and Provinces, which shall be touched upon particularly in their several places. In the year 1500 he began his fourth and last Voyage, in the course whereof, coming to *Hispaniola*, he was unworthily denied entrance into the City of *Domingo*, by *Nicolas de Ovando*, the then Governour of it : after which, scouring along the Sea-coasts as far as *Nombre de Dios*, but adding little to the fortune of his former Discoveries, he returned back to *Cuba* and *Jamaica*, and from thence to *Spain*, where about six years after ( that is to say, Anno 1506. ) he departed this Life, and was honourably interred at *Sevil*, where to this day remaineth this Epitaph on his Tomb, bald in it self, and otherwise exceeding short of so great a Merit. O which I must tell you by the way, that the *Philip* whom the *Versifier* ( I do not say the Poet ) called *Philippus Hispanus*, should rather have been called *Philippus Austriacus*, or *Philippus Burgundicus*, as being meant of that *Philip* of *Austria*, Duke of *Burgundy*, who had then married *Jean*, sole Daughter and Heir of the King of *Spain*, and after the death of *Isabella* succeeded in the Realm of *Castile* : or else the Epitaph must be written long after his death, and meant of *Philip* the II. Son of *Charles* the Fifth, who was not born until the year 1527. and came not to the Crown above twenty years after. Now for this Epitaph, such as it is, is this that followeth :

*Christopher genitum quem Genoa clara Columbus,  
( Nuncius præfatus quo nescio ) primus in altum  
Descendit Pelagus, Solon versibus cadentem  
Dirisio crederet, nunc hædum addita Mendo  
Littora detexit, Hispana partim Philippo ;  
Addida binæ alis plura & majora reliquant.*

Which may be *Englished* in these Words :

1 Christopher Columbus, whom the Land  
Of Genoa first brought forth, first took in hand,  
I know not by what Duty incited,  
To seek for Countreys never known before.  
Crown'd with Success, I first deserv'd the Shore  
Of the NEW WORLD, I then deserv'd to sustain  
The future Toga of Philip Lord of Spain.  
And yet I greater matters left behind,  
For men of more Means, and a Braver Mind.

Dying he left two Sons behind himself which the young-est, called *Ferdinand*, did unmarried ; the eldest, called *Diego*, succeeded his Father in the Admiralty of the *Indies*, and the Dukedom of *Vega*, and married *Mary* of *Toledo*, Daughter of *Ferdinand* Duke of *Alva* ; but having ( as it seemeth ) no issue by her, he spent the greatest part of his Estate in founding the Library at *Sevil*, spoken of before, which he furnished with 12000 Volumes, and endowed with a liberal Revenue to maintain the same. But though his Family be extinct, yet his Fame shall live, renowned to all Posterities, as the first Discoverer of this New World, and consequently the greatest and most fortunate Advancer of the *Spanish* Monarchy ; though in his life time maligned by most part of the *Spaniards*, that *Bobadilla*, being sent into those parts for redress of Grievances, loaded him with Irons, and returned him Prisoner into *Spain*. Nor did they only kill after his death to deprive him of the honour of this Discovery ( attributing it to I know not what *Spaniard*, whose Charts & Descriptions he had seen ) but in his life would often say that it was a matter of no such difficulty to have found these Countreys ; and that if he had not doneit when he did, some body else might have done it for him. Who peevishness he confuted by this modest Artifice, desiring some of them, who insolently enough had contended with him touching this Discovery, to make an Egg stand firmly upon one of its ends. Which when they could not do upon many Trials, he gently bruising one end of it made it stand upright ; letting them see without any farther reprehension, how easie it was to do that thing which we see another do before us.

But to proceed, *Columbus* having thus led the way, was seconded by *John Cabot a Venetian*, the Father of *Sebastian Cabot*, in behalf of *Henry* the Seventh of *England*, who in the year 1497. discovered all the North-East Coasts hereof, from the Cape of *Florida* in the South, to *Newfoundland*, and *Terra di Labrador* in the North, calling the Roylets to turn Homagers to that King, and the Crown of *England*. Next after him succeeded *Americus Vesputius*, an adventurous *Florentine*, employed therein by *Emmanuel King of Portugal*, Anno 1501. on a design of finding out a nearer way to the *Moluccas* than by the Cape of good Hope, who though he passed not farther than the Cape of *S. Augustine* in *Brasil*, without so much as having a fight of the Great River of *la Plata*, which wathing the South parts of that Country ; yet from him ( to the great Injury and Neglect of the first Discoverers ) the Continent or Main Land of this Country hath the name of *America* ; by which it is still known, and most commonly called. Followed herein by divers private Adventurers and Undertakers out of all parts of Europe bordering on the Ocean. *Ferdinand Magellan* was the first that compassed the whole World, and found the South passage, called *Fretum Magellanicum* to this day : followed herein by *Drake* and *Cavendish* of *England*. *Frobisher* and *Davis* attempted a Discovery of the North-west passage : *Willoughby* and *Burroughs* of the North-east.



Touching the Original of this People, it is most probable that they descend from the *Tartars*; for which there are some Arguments of special weight. For first, it may be proved in the way of Negation, that they came not from *Europe*; as having no remainders of the Arts, Learning and Civilities of it. And secondly, that they came not from *Africa*; in regard they have no Black-men amongst them, except some few which dwell on the Sea-Coasts over against *Guinea* in the Land of the *Negroes*, from whence they are supposed to have been brought hither by some Tempest or other. Thirdly, that they have not the least token or Fiction of the Arts and Industry of *China*, *India*, or any civil Region on that side of *Africa*. The Affirmative Arguments prove first, That they came from *Asia*; next in particular from *Tartary*. That they came out of *Asia*, is more than manifest, in that the West side of the Country towards *Asia*, is far more populous than the East towards *Europe*; of which there can be no other reason assigned, than that these parts were first inhabited, and that from hence the rest was peopled. Next, the Idolatry of this People, and the particularities thereof, their Incivility and barbarous qualities, tell us that they are most like the *Tartars* of any. Thirdly, the West-side of *America*, if it be not Continuent with *Tartary*, is yet divided by a very small Strait, as may be perceived in all our Maps and Charts, as also in the Description of these Countries: so that there is thence into these Countries a very quick and easy passage. And fourthly, The People of *Guinea*, which of all the Provinces of *America* is the nearest unto *Tartary*, are said to follow, in the whole course of their Life, the Seasons and best performing of their Carrel, just like the *Scythian Nomades*, or *Tartarian Hordes*: an evident Argument of their Original Descent.

But from what Root *Europe* they did first descend, certain it is, that they had settled here many Ages since, and overpread all the parts and quarters of this spacious Continent: there being no place which the *Spaniards*, or any other Adventurers, found desolate or waste, and without Inhabitants. But their numbers are much diminished since these late Discoveries: the *Spaniards* behaving themselves most inhumanely towards this unarmed and naked People, killing them up like Sheep appointed to the Slaughter, or otherwise consuming them in their Mines and Works of Drudgery. And had not *Charles* the Fifth ordained with most Christian Prudence, that the Natives should not be compelled to work in the Mines against their will, but that the *Spaniards* should provide themselves of Slaves elsewhere; the Natives in a little longer time had been quite exterminated, to the great reproach of Christianity and the Gospel. For so exceeding barbarous and bloody were they at their first coming thither, that *Hanby*, a Nobleman amongst them, being persuaded to embrace the Christian Faith, demanded first what he should get by being of that Religion? and was answered, that he should get Heaven and the Joys thereof. Then would he know what place was destitute to such as died unbaptized; and was answered, That they went to Hell, and the Torments of it. Finally, asking unto which of these two places the *Spaniards* went, and being told that they went to Heaven, he renounced his Baptism: protesting that he would rather go to Hell with the unbaptized, than to live in Heaven with so cruel a people. The rest were driven unto the Font, like to many Horses to the watering place, and received into the Church of *Christ* without any jurisdiction: inasmuch that one old Friar (as himself testified to *Charles* the Fifth) had Christened 70000 of them, and another of that rank 300000; never acquainting them with any of the Articles of the Christian Faith, or points of Religious Conversation, (except

it were to be obedient to their Pastors and Teachers.) Yet here I must confess, (for I am loth to defraud any man of his due) there hath been made great Improvement of Christianity: the number of Christians in this Country being thought by some learned men of the Church of *Rome*, to equal all those of the *Latine Churches* in *Europe*. And though perhaps constrained at first unto it as a new Religion, and of a stricter Rule than that which before they had; yet by long time and Education it is now grown more plausible and familiar to them. The Church heretofore is governed by the four Archbishops of, 1. *Mexico*, 2. *Lima*, 3. *S. Foy*, and 4. *Dominico*, who have under them 25 Suffragan Bishops, all liberally endowed and provided for.

When this New World came first acquainted with the Old, *Isabel* Queen of *Castile* would not permit any of her Husband *Ferdinando*'s Subjects to be planted here, viz. *Arrogians* or *Valentians*, but licensed the *Castilians*, *Andalusians*, *Biscainers*, and the rest of her own people only, conveying the Wealth heretofore to the rest. When he was dead, *Ferdinando* licensed generally all the *Spaniards*, excluding only the *Portugals*. But so rich a Prize could not so warily be fenced, but that the *Portugals*, *French*, *English*, and now of late the *Low-Country-men* have had in their own Bays part of the *Spaniards*'s Harvest; who well hoped to have had a Monopoly of so wealthy a Region, and to have enjoyed without any Rival or Competitor the possession (I cannot say the Love) of a Country so abundantly fruitful. For though some of the Kings of *Spain* have been used to say, that they loved the *King of India* as their Mistress only, in whose favour they could patiently enough endure a Rival; but esteemed *America* as their Wife, in whose love they could not break a Competitor without a foul dishonour: yet by his leave (or without it rather) some of his Neighbours have made bold with his Wife in these later times, though in the affections of his Mistress they have greater Interest. But these Attempts of the *English* and *Hollanders* have been an occasion of great strength to the whole Country. For whereas in our first wars with *Spain*, in Queen *Elizabeth*'s time, our private Adventurers found the Sea-coasts almost naked of Defence, and thereupon made many a rich and prosperous Voyage to these parts: the *Spaniards*, upon light of that weakness and disadvantage, so strongly fortified their Havens and Sea-Towns, that towards the later end of the Reign of that Queen we were not able to accomplish that with great and Public Forces, which before had been performed by small and Private. Which caused our Captains and adventures, falling oftentimes in their Designs upon the Continent, to make up their Market on the Seas, in the return of *Spanish Navies*, as they yet do.

This New World is very plentiful of Spices, Fruits, and such Creatures which the Old World never knew; stocked with such store of Kine and Bulls, (brought hither out of *Europe* since the first Discovery) that the *Spaniards* kill thousands of them yearly for their Tallow and Hides only: blest with such abundance of Gold, that they found in many of their Mines more Gold than Earth's Metal which the *Americans*, not regarding it, greedily exchanged for Hammers, Knives, Axes, and the like Tools of Iron; for before they were wont to make their Canoes or Boats plain without, and hollow within, by the force of Fire. Other particularities shall be specified in the particular Descriptions of the several Countries. I shall now only take a brief View of such of their Beasts and Fowls, as either this Old World did not know, or knew not in such shapes and qualities as are there presented. Their Lions live in greatness than those in *Africa*, are said to be of colour gray, and so nimble as to climb Treesthree

Dogs

Dogs snouted like Foxes, but deprived of that property which the Logicians call *Proprium quatuor pedum*, for they could not bark; their Hogs with Talons sharp as Razors, and the Nails of their Bodies on the Ridge of their Backs: their Stags and Deer without Horns; their Sheep (they call them *Lamas*) not only profitable, as with us, for Food and Raiment, but accustomed to the carrying of Burthens, some of 150 pound weight. Amongst such strong Beasts as this Old World knew not, we may reckon that deformed one (whose name I find not) whose fore-part resembleth a Fox, the hinder-part an Ape, except the Feet only, which are like a Man's: be beneath her Belly a receptacle like a Purse, where the keeps her young, till they be able to shift for themselves; never coming thence but when they suck, and then in again. The *Armadilla* is in form like a barbed Horse, seeming to be armed all over, and that with artificial (rather than natural) Plates, which do shut and open. The *Vicugna* resembleth a Goat, but greater and more profitable; of the Fleec whereof they make Rugs, Coverings, and Suffs; and in the Belly find the Bezoar, sometimes two or three, a sovereign Antidote against Poisons and venomous Discales. A kind of Hare, resembling a Want in his Feet, and a Cat in his Tail; under whose Chin nature hath fastened a little Bag, which he hath also taught him to use as a Store-house; for in this, having filled his belly, he preserveth the remnant of his Provision. The *Perigrina*, a little Beast, (not so named for nought) which in fourteen days cannot go so far as a man may easily throw a stone. Then for their Birds, they have them there in such variety of Colours, that the *Indians* will perfectly represent in Feathers whatsoever they see drawn with Pencils: inasmuch as a Figure of *S. Francis* made of Feathers was presented to Pope *Sixtus Quintus*; whose Eye could not discern them to be natural Colours, but thought them Pencil-work, till he made trial with his Fingers. One called the *Tomirio*, of all colours, so little, that it seems no bigger than a Bee or Butter-fly, the mouth thereof no bigger than the eye of a Needle, yet yielding not to the Nightingale in the sweetness of its Note and Music; the Bird and Nett put into Gold-Scutes or many Colours, especially in the Neck and Breast, that the *Indians* make great use of them in their Father-pictures. Others as big as these are little. The *Condors* of such strength and greatness, that they will fall upon a Sheep or a Calf, open it and eat it. Like Miracles of Nature have they in their Fruits and Plants, more proper unto natural History than to this Discourse; and many medicinal Drugs of rare operation, which I leave to the consideration of the Learned Herbalists. I am too much a Fool to be a Physician, and therefore will not deal in such things as are out of my Element. Yet somewhat of this kind we may chance to meet with in the Description and Survey of the several Provinces into which this New World is divided.

The whole is naturally divided into two great Peninsulas; whereof that towards the North is called *Mexicana*, from *Mexico* the chief City and Province of it, supposed (for the most Northern parts of it are not yet discovered) to contain 130000 miles in compass. That towards the South hath the name of *Peruana*, from the great Country of *Peru*; the Circumnavigation whereof is reckoned to 170000 Italian miles. The *Indian* which joineth these two together is very long, but narrow; in some places not above 12 miles from Sea to Sea, in many not above fifteen. By the *Spaniards* it is called the Strait of *Darien*, from a River of that name in *Peruana*, near unto the *Indian*; and is so small a Ligament for two great Bodies, that some have thought of turning these two

*Peninsulas* into perfect Islands. Certain it is, that many have motioned to the Council of *Spain*, the cutting of a navigable Channel through this small *Indian*, so to shorten their common Voyages to *China* and the *Moluccas*. But the Kings of *Spain* have not hitherto attempted it; partly, because if he should cut off few of them which in the work, he should lose those few of them which his people have suffered to live; partly, because the *Slaves* which they yearly buy out of *Africa* do but suffice for the Mines and Sugar-houses; but principally, lest the passage by the Cape of good Hope being left, those Seas might become a receptacle of Pirates. Which doubtless was a very prudent and politic consideration. Many times I have read of the like attempts begun, but never of any finished. *Sesftris* King of *Aegypt*, *Darius* of *Persia*, one of the *Polonians*, and a late capricious *Portugal* had the like Plot, to make a passage from the Red Sea to the *Mediterranean*. So had *Cesar*, *Caligula*, and *Nero*, Emperours of *Rome*, upon the *Caribinian Indian*. Another of the same nature had *Charles* the Great, to let the *Rhene* into the *Danube*: the like had *Lucius Verrus*, to join the *Rhene* and the *Rhine*: all which, in their peculiar places, we have already touched. *Nicanor* also, King of *Syria*, intended to have made a Channel from the *Caspian* to the *Euxine* Sea, an infinite Project. But neither he nor any of the rest could finish these works: God, it seemeth, being not pleased at such proud and haughty Enterprises. And yet perhaps the want of Treasure hath not been the least cause why the like Projects have not proceeded: besides the dreadful Noises and Apparitions, which (as we have already said) continually affrighted the Workmen.

Nor less observable than this great, but unsuccessful, Design of cutting a passage through the *Indian*, from one Sea to the other, was that notable, but alike unsuccessful Attempt of *John Oxenham*, an adventurous *Englishman*, to cut a passage over it by Land. This man being one of the Followers of *Sir Francis Drake*, arriving in a small Bark, with 20 of his Companions, a little above *Norwich* of *Deer*, the chiefest Town all the *Indian*, drew his Ship on Land, covered it with Boughs, and marched over the Land with his Company guided by *Negroes*, till he came to a River. There he cut down Wood, made him a Pinace, entered the South-Sea, went to the Isle of *Pearl*, where he stayed ten dayes; intercepted in two *Spanish Ships*, who feared no Enemy; on that side 60000 pound weight of Gold, 200000 pound weight in bars of Silver, and returned in safety to the Land. And though by the mutiny of some of his own Company, he neither returned into his own Country, nor unto his Ship: yet it is an Adventure not to be forgotten, in that never attempted by any other, and by the *Spanish* Writers recorded with much admiration.

But to return to the Division of this Country, and the two main parts thereof which this Strait uniteth, *Mexicana*, or the Northern *Peninsula*, may be most properly divided into the Continent, and Islands; the Continent again into the several Provinces of 1. *Estadialta*, 2. *Nova Francia*, 3. *Virginia*, 4. *Florida*, 5. *California*, 6. *Nova Galicia*, 7. *Nova Hispania*, 8. *Guatemala*; each of them branched into many Subdivisions and lesser Territories. *Peruana*, or the Southern *Peninsula*, taking in some part of the *Indian*, as before we did, hath on the Continent the Provinces of 1. *Castilla* *Antea*, 2. *Nova Granada*, 3. *Peru*, 4. *Chile*, 5. *Paraguay*, 6. *Brasil*, 7. *Guiana*, and 8. *Paria*; with their several Members, Parts, and particular Regions. The Islands which belong to both, dispersed either in the Southern Ocean, called *Mar del Zur*, where there is not any one of note but 1. Those called *Las Ladroneas*, and 2. The Islands of *Solomon*: or in the Northern Ocean, or *Mar del Noard*,

M reduced

reduced unto; 3. the *Caribber*, 4. *Porto Rico*, 5. *Hispánola*, 6. *Cuba*, and 7. *Jamaica*, in the Survey of which particulars we will begin with those which lie on the North-east of this great Continent, not possessed by the *Spaniards*; and passing through the plantations of such

other Nations as have any footing in the fame, come by degrees to the Estates of the King of *Spain*, that we may lay them all together without interruption: beginning with *Estotiland*, the most Northern part, and that which (as some say) was discovered first.

O F

# ESTOTILAND.

**E**STOTILAND, as under that name we comprehend those Regions of *Mexicana* which lie most towards the North and East, hath on the East the main Ocean: on the South, *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*; on the West, some unknown Tract not yet discovered; and on the North, a Bay or Inlet of the Sea, called *Hudson's Straights*, and called so from *Henry Hudson* an Englishman, who by this way endeavoured to find out a more commodious and quick passage to *Cathay* and *China* than had been formerly discovered. It comprehends, 1. *Estotiland*, specially so called, 2. *Terra Corterialis*, 3. *New-found Land*, and 4. the Isles of *Bacalaos*.

1. And first *ESTOTILAND*, specially so called, is the most Northern Region on the Eastside of *America*, lying betwixt *Hudson's Straights* on the North, and *Terra Corterialis* on the South. The Soil sufficiently enriched with natural Endowments is said to have in it Mines of Gold, and other Metals: but I doubt it lieth too much North for Gold, whatsoever it may do for Brass and Iron. The people rude and void of goodness; naked, notwithstanding the extreme cold of the Country; not having either the wit, or the care, to cover their Bodies with the skins of those Beasts which they kill by Hunting, though their bellies teach them to keep life by the flesh thereof: said by the first Discoverers to fow Corn, to make Beer, or Ale, and to have many Barks of their own with which they traded into *Greenland*; as also to have many Cities and Castles, some Temples consecrated to their Idols, where they first sacrificed Men, and after eat them. The Language which they speak is expressed in Characters of their own; but some knowledge of the *Latin* Tongue there hath been amongst them, and *Latin* Books in the Library of one of their Kings, undisturbed by few.

Such were the Reports made of this Country by the first Discoverers, who were certain Fishermen of *Freeze-land*, call'd by a Tempest on this Coast about the year 1350. Six of them only got on Land, where all died save one; who after a long wandering from one Prince's Court to another, found means to return into his own Country: the King whereof, called *Zichmuni*, being a great Adventurer in the feats of Arms, prepared for the further Discovery and Conquest of it. Animated therunto by the opportune coming of *Nicola* and *Antonio Zeni*, two noble Gentlemen of *Venice*, who desiring to see the Fashions of the World, furnished a Ship at their own Charges, and passing the Straights of *Gibraltar* held their course Northward, with an intent to see *England* and *Flanders*. But driven by Tempest on this Island, *Ann*, 1380, they were kindly welcomed by the King, then newly prosperous in a War against those of *Norway*, who liked *Nicola* so well, that he gave him a Command in his Navy, and under his

good conduct won many Islands, discovered *Greenland*, and provided for the Conquest of *Estotiland* also. But *Nicola* in the mean time dying, the business was pursued by his Brother *Antonio*, the King in person making one in the Undertaking: who liked the Country so well being once possessed of it, that he built a City in it, and there determining to spend the rest of his days, sent back *Antonio* unto *Freeze-land*, with the most of his people.

This is the substance of the Story of the first Discovery, published long since by one *Francisco Marcellino*, out of the Letters of the *Zeni*: which had they been considered of as they might have been, we had not so long wanted the acquaintance of this part of the world. But whether it were that their Reports were esteemed as fabulous by the States of *Europe*, or that the time was not yet ripe for this great Discovery; was there nothing done in pursuance of it: *Zichmuni* never going back to his own Country, and *Freeze-land* not long after conquered by the Kings of *Norway*. So that the knowledge of it was quite lost again, till these latter days. Said, in the Letters of the *Zeni*, to be well stored with Fowl, and the Eggs of Birds, which they found there for their refreshment; the Haven where they landed to be called *Cape Trin*: the people to be of *Irish* stature, tearful, and to hide themselves in Caves at the sight of the *Freeze-landers*; that there was a Mountain always burning, or calling smoke; together with a certain Spring, whence issued a water as black as Pitch; but no such Cities, Ports, and Temples, as the Fishermen spoke of. The Country West from *Freeze-land* 1000 miles.

To give you the Face of it as it stands at the present, it is said to be well cultivated, fruitful of all Necessaries for the life of Man, and rich in Metals, but extreme cold; watered with four Rivers, which rising out of an high Mountain in the middle of the Country, disperse themselves over all parts of it. The people said to be more ingenious, of better judgments, and more skilled in most Mechanick Arts, than the rest of the *Americans* were at the first Discovery; which argueth some more Civil people to have been formerly amongst them. Their Garments of the skins of Beasts, or Sea-Calves, with which also they covered the out-side of their Boats, to keep out the water, and make them able to endure the Sea. What Towns they have, and whether the name of *Cape Trin* be still remaining, I am not able to discover; this Country lying still for the most part hidden in a Northern Mist. All we can say is, that some English names have been imposed of late on some Caves and Promontories lying on the Northern Shores hereof: towards *Hudson's Straights*, by *Hudson* and such others of the English Nation who pursued that Enterprize. Of which first are *Prince Henry's Foreland*, towards the East, al-

most

most at the entries of those Straights; and then proceeding towards the West, *Cape Charles*, *Kings Foreland*; and last of all *Cape Walsingham*, at the end thereof, where these Straights open into a large and capacious Bay, called *Hudson's Bay*. But of these more particularly in another place, where we endeavour the Discovery of such parts of the World as as yet unknown, and so within the compass of a *Terra Incognita*.

2. *TERRA CORTERIALIS* hath on the North *Estotiland*; on the South *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*. So called from *Caspar Corterialis*, who in the year 1500 left his name unto it. It is called also *Terra di Laborador*, both from the pains required of the Husbandman, and the great Recompence which it gives him: in the same sense as *Campania* in the Realm of *Naples* is named *Terra di Lavoro*. By the French, who succeeded in the possession hereof after the *Spaniard* had forsaken it, it was called *New-Bretagne*, with reference to *Bretagne* in *France*, their own natural Country.

The people at the first coming of *Corterialis* were found to be barbarous enough, well coloured, swift of Foot, and very good Archers: their clothing of Beasts-skins; their Habitations Caves, or some sorry Cottages, their Religion *Paganism*, or none; their Directions Sooth-fying. Not so forgetful of the Law which Nature had planted in them, as not to know the necessary use of Marriage; but extremely jealous. Better conditioned at the present than in former times, by their near neighbourhood to the French, and Commerce with Foreigners: affirmed to be very well disposed, to feed most generally on Fish, and to adorn themselves with Bracelets of Brass, or Silver. Their chief Towns, 1. *Brest*, 2. *Santa Maria*, 3. *Cape Marso*, of which little memorable.

The Country first discovered by *Sebastian Cabot*, the Son of *John Cabot*, before mentioned: who in the year 1497, at the Charges and Encouragement of *King Henry 7.* setting sail from *Bristol*, first made the Discovery of these parts as far as to the Latitude of 67 and an half, (which brings *Estotiland* within the compass also of his Discoveries.) The Land which he first saw he called *Prima Vista*, an Island lying before it he called *S. John's*, because discovered on the day of *S. John Baptist*. They found upon the Country plenty of White Beas, Stags greater than ours. Scut-fishes of a Yard long, and fish free of Cod-fish (which the Inhabitants called *Bacalaos*) that their multitudes sometimes stayed his Ships: hence the occasion of their name. Returning home, he found great preparations for War in *Scotland*; so that nothing else was done in this Discovery by the English Nation. But three years after, *Caspar Corterialis* a Portuguese, setting sail from *Lisbon*, fell upon these parts of *Cabot's* Discoveries, which since bear his name: from whence he brought the piece of a gilded Sword of Italian workmanship, left there most probably by one of the *Cabots*. Returning again the next year, he was no more heard of: drowned in the Sea, or slain by the Savages on the Land as was his Brother *Michael* in the year next following. Neglected after this, till the French having planted in *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*, cast an eye upon it; who gave the name of *Brest* to a Town hereof, (according to the name of a noted Port in *Little Bretagne*;) but whether they settled any Colony in it, or only did resort unto it in the way of Trading, I am not able to determine.

3. *NEW-FOUND-LAND*, (*Terra Nova*, as the Latines call it) is a great Island, lying on the South of *Corterialis*, from which parted by a Frith, or Strait, called *Gulfus del Gajenex*. So called from the late discovery of it, when discovered first, though it be some scores of years ago: as *Wickham's College* in *Oxford* hath the

name of *New College*, though founded divers years past; because it was the Newsett when that Name was given.

The dimensions of the Country I have no where met with. But for the quality hereof, it is said to be better inhabited in the North-parts, than in the South; though the South the fitter of the two for Habitation. Furnished upon the Sea-coasts with abundance of Cod-fish, as also with Herrings, Salmon, Thornbacks, Smelts, Oysters, and Mussels with Pearls in them. Within the Land a goodly Country, naturally beautified with Rofes, fown with Pease, planted with stately Trees, and otherwise diversified both for pleasure and profit: the Air hereof never very extreme, more temperate in the depth of Winter than with us in *England*; the Brooks being never so frozen over, that the Ice is able to bear a Dog; and those little Frosts but (I hold) holding three nights together. The people of reasonable Stature, full-eyed, broad-faced, but beardless, their Faces coloured with Oker; their Houses, Poles set round meeting together in the top, and covered over with skins, an Hearth, or Fire-place in the midst: their Boats of Bark, twenty foot long, and four in breadth, not weighing above 100 pounds weight; every of which will carry four men, and is by them carried to all the places of their Removes.

Places of most importance in it, are the several Havens (of which it is conceived to have more and more commodious, than any one Island of the World for the big-ness of it): not beautified with Towns or Buildings, but yielding very safe stations to the greatest Ships. The chief whereof, 1. *Renns*, or *Roigness*, on the North of the Promontory called *Cape de Raz*, the South-east Angle of the Island: of most resort for Fishing, from several Countreys. 2. *Portus Formosus*, or *Rain-Haven*, three Miles North of the other; capable of great Ships, and bearing into the main Land above 40 Miles: situate in the Latitude of 40, and 40 minutes. 3. *Thorn-Haven*, by the Portuguese named *Enfada Grande*. 4. *Trinity Bay*, on the North of *Cape S. Francis*, by the Portuguese called *Bahia de la Concepcion*: a large Bay, five miles broad in the narrowest place; yet safe wharfe, and of very good Anchorage. 5. *Bona Vista*, the name of a Port and Promontory. 6. *White-Bay*, or *Bay-Blanch*, (as the French call it) safe and capacious, on the North of the Promontory of *S. John*. Betwixt which and *Cape de Raz*, on the North-east Angle of the Island, is no Port of Note. Then on the South-side of the Island, and the West of *Cape de Raz*, is 7. *Port Trochiffaz*, 8. *Port Prefinaz*, and 9. *Port de Biquier* (or the *Bijcan* Havens) and on the West-side, having doubled the *Cape de Ray*, in the South-west Angle of the Island, there is 10. *S. George's Bay*: all of them safe, capacious, and of great resort.

4. Before the Island, at the distance of 25 Leagues from *Cape de Ray*, lieth a long bank or ridge of Ground, extended in length a hundred Leagues, in breadth 24 Leagues where broadest, in other places but sixteen: and all about it certain Islands, which *Cabot* by one common name called *BACAL AOS*, (that name peculiar now unto one alone) from the great multitude of Cod-fish (by the Natives called *Bacalaos*) which swarmed hereabouts so numerous, that they hindered the passage of his Ships, as before was noted, and lay in such Shoals upon the Coasts, that the Beas caught them with their Claws, and drew them on Land. The Government at that time by Kings, before whom the people in the most formal expressions of Duty and Reverence used to rub their Noses, or stroke their Foreheads: which if the King observed, or accepted of, and meant to grace the party which had so adorned him, he turned his Head to his left Shoulder, as a mark of Favour.

The first Discoverers of this Country (but not known then



then to be an Island) were the two *Cabots*, *John* and his Son *Sebastian*, employed herein by *Henry the 7.* 1497, as before was noted. The business being laid aside at his coming back, was afterwards revived by *Thorn* and *Elton*, two of *Bristol*; who taking a more perfect view of it than was took by the *Cabots*, ascribed to themselves the Discovery of it, and animated *King Henry the 8.* unto the Enterprize: which was done *Anno 1527*, but with ill success. In the mean time the *Normans*, *Portugals*, and *Brazils* of *France* had reported to it, and changed the names which by the *English* had been given to the Bays and Promontories. But the *English* would not so relinquish their Pretensions to the *Premier Seclin*. And therefore in the year 1583, *Sir Humphry Gilbert* took possession of it in the name of the *Queen of England*, in-

terdicted all other Nations the use of Fishing; and intended to have settled there an *English* Colony. But being wrecked in his return, the fending of the Colony was discontinued till the year 1608, when undertook by *John Guy* a Merchant of *Bristol*, who most successfully performed it; the Colony so prospering in a little time, that they had Wheat, Rye, Turnips, Coleworts, of their own sowing, some probability of Metals, a certainty of Sables, Musks, and other precious Commodities, besides their Fishing; though that the great occasion of their settling there, Such plenty is there found of Ling and Cod-fish all about the Coasts, that ordinarily our men take 200 or 300 of them within four hours space, which they convey from hence to all parts of *Europe*.

## OF CANADA.

CANADA is bounded on the North with *Corterialis*; on the South, with *New England*; on the East, with the Main Ocean: the Countreys lying on the West either not yet discovered, or not perfectly known. So called from the River *Canada*, the greatest, not of this Province only, but of all this *Peninsula*. A River which hath its Fountain in the undiscovered parts of this Northern Tract: sometimes enlarged into great Lakes, and presently reduced to a narrower Channel, with many great Windings and Reaches in it. Having embosomed almost all the rest of the Rivers of this County, it emptieth it self into the Great Bay of *St. Laurence*, over against the Isle of *Assumption*, being at the Mouth 40 Leagues in breadth, and 150 Fathom deep.

It is also called *Nova Francia*, from the *French*, who following the Tract of *Cabot* and *Corterialis*, made a further Discovery of these parts, and planted several Colonies in them. The business first undertaken by *Jacques Cartier*, *Anno 1534*, received here gladly by the Natives with Singing, Dancing, and expelling much sign of Joy: pursued by *Monsieur Roberval*, sent thither in the year 1542, by *King Francis* the first, not only to discover the Country, but to plant some part of it, who built there a fair Fortrefs for his greater safety; followed therein by divers others of that Nation, in their several times.

The nature of the Soil, and People, we shall best discover in the several parts of it, each differing from one another, and so not easily conformed to a general Character. Look we now only on the principal Rivers of the whole. 1. *Canada*, of which before. 2. *Pontogenet*, or *Norminiegne*, as some call it, of which more hereafter. 3. *Quinbeque*, falling into the Ocean as the others do. 4. *Rio S. John*, ending its course in a large Bay called, *Bay Francoise* interposed betwixt *Nova Scotia* and the rest of this Country. 5. *Les Trois Rivières*, which rising far North, and passing through two great Lakes, falleth into the *Canada*. 6. *Saguenay*, of the same Original, Course, and Fall. A River of it strong a Current, that it sufficeth not the Sea to flow up its Channel: so deep, that

in many places it attaineth to 100 Fathoms; and though but narrow at the mouth, yet groweth it broader and broader upwards, and having received many lesser streams, loseth it self at last, where the other doth.

It containeth in it several Regions. 1. *Nova Francia* specially so called, 2. *Nova Scotia*, 3. *Norminiegne*, and 4. the *Iles* adjoining.

1. *NOVA FRANCIA* specially so named is situate on the South of *Corterialis*, and on the North of the great River of *Canada*, towards the East; but on both sides of it, in the Western and more In-land parts. The Country is naturally full of Stags, Bears, Hares, Martens and Foxes, whose flesh the people did eat raw, (till more civilized) having first dried it either in the smoke or Sun as they do their fish. They have also flocks of Conies, Fowl and Fish great plenty; one Fish more memorable than the rest, which they call *Adoubel*, whose Body and Head is like that of a Greyhound. But their greatest Jewels are their Chains of *Esjurpie*; a Shell-fish of the whitest colour, excellent for the fanching of Wood; which they fashion into Beads and Bracelets, and so wear; or sell them. Not very plentiful of Fruits, or fit for Tillage, yet it breedeth some Corn, or fit for good plenty. The Air more cold then in other Countreys of the River, which being wholly of fresh Water, and so large without all children the Air on both sides of it; partly because of the abundance of Ice, and those hills of Snow which the North-wind passeth over in the way to this Country.

The People, when the *French* first discovered them, were very rude and barbarous; a few of them furnished with Houses, but removing from one place to another, as their Food decayed; and carrying all their Goods with them (a thing easily done) upon those removes. Such as lived towards the Sea, or the greater Rivers, somewhat better housed. For in the day-time they fish in their Boats, which they draw unto the Land at night, and turning them upside down, sleep under them. As ill apparelled as housed; for they went all naked, except a little piece of skin before their Privities. Some of them had their heads quite shaven, excepting one Bunch of hair on the top

top of the Crown, which they suffered to grow: to the length of an Horles Tail, tied up with Leather-strings in a knot. Each man allowed his two or three Wives apiece; and they so constant to their Husband, that they never marry after his death, but keep themselves continually in a mourning habit. A Vizard, as it were, made of Greafe and Coal-dust, which they spread over all their bodies. The women labour more than the men, both in fishing and husbandry; digging the ground instead of ploughing, with certain pieces of wood, where they sow their Maize (a Plant of which they make their Bread in most parts of *America*.) Idolaters in general before the coming of the *French*, as they are most of them at this day; the *French* and others which have planted in these Northern parts having added little more unto Christianity, than by the Colonies they brought with them. Yet in the midst of this darkness they law for much light, as to believe that when they dyed they went immediately to the Stars; from thence conveyed to certain green and pleasant fields, full of flowers and fruits. Plain Evidence that they believed the Immortality of the Soul; and that there was some place appointed for reception of it.

The chief Towns of it at that time, 1. *Hochelaga*, round in figure, compassed about with three Course of timber Ramparts, one within the others (tharp at the top, about two Rods high, with one Gate only to give entrance, and that well fortified in their kind with Piles and Bars. It had in it 50 great houses, in the midst of every one a Court, and in the middle of that Court a place which they made their fire on. Situate far within the Land, about six or seven Leagues from the banks of the River *Canada*, in the most pleasant part of the Country; and therefore made the seat of their King, whom they highly revered and carried him on their shoulders sitting on a Carpet of skins. 2. *Stadacon*, or *Stadacone*, which the *French* call *Croix*, on the course of the same River also; this last a Colony of the *French*. 4. *Tadoussac*, a safe but small Haven, not capable of above 20 ships, at the mouth of *Saguenay*. 5. *France-Roy*, a Castle built by *Monsieur Roberval*, when he came first into this Country. 6. *S. Lawrence*, designed for a *French* Colony by *Monsieur de Champlain*, *Anno 1611*, but never came to great effect: yet so much *Champlain* got by the undertaking, that he left his name to a great Lake of this Country (full of little Islands) in the Lands of the *Unigenis*, inhabiting on the South of the River *Canada*, into which it emptieth it self at the last.

2. *NOVA SCOTIA*, containeth that part of the Countreys of *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*, which the *French* call *Acadie*, or *Cadie*, (being a *Peninsula* or Demy-Island) with so much of the mainland as lieth between the River *Canada*, and the large Bay called *Bay-Francoise*, from the River of *S. Croix* upon the West, to the Isle of *Assumption* on the East. So called by *King James*, in the Grant of these Countreys to *Sir William Alexander*, after Lord Secretary of Scotland, and by *King Charles*, for his approved fidelity, most deservedly created Earl of *Sterling*. The Letters-Patents of which Donation bear date *Anno 1621*. What time the *French* having been out of their holds here by *Sir Sam. Argal*, Governour of *Virginia*, had abandoned the South-parts of *Canada*, and betook themselves more into the North, and the higher parts of the Course of that River. And in pursuance of this Grant, the said *Sir William Alexander* in the year 1622, sent a Colony thither: and having procured a New Map to be made of the Country, caused the *Peninsula*, lying on this side of the *Bay Francoise*, to be called *Nova Caledonia*, that on the North thereof, to be called *Nova Alexandria*, giving new names also unto most of the Ports and Promontories. For the better accomplishment of which business, he obtained also a Patent for advancing a certain

number of persons to the hereditary dignity of *Baronets*, or *Knights of Nova Scotia*, as we call them commonly, distinguished from others by a Ribon of *Orange Tawny*, the money raised upon which Patent was to be wholly employed towards this Plantation. But being unable with those helps (as certainly Plantations are of too great burthen for a private person) or willing to employ his money to more profit, he held *Port-Royal* to the *French*, and after discontinued his endeavours in it.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Port-Royal*, in *Acadie* or *Nova Caledonia*, on the *Bay-Francoise*; once made a Colony of the *French*, by *Monsieur de Montm.* *An. 1604*, continued with much difficulty till the year 1613, when destroyed by *Sir Sam. Argal*, then Governour of the *English* Plantations in *Virginia*, by reason that the *Jesuits*, whose neighbourhood he liked not of, had begun to melt there. Sold since again unto the *French*, as before is said, by whom till possessed. 2. *S. Luke*, Bay, by the *French* called *Port au Monton*. 3. *Gaspé*, a noted Port in *New-Alexandria*, opposite to the Isle of *Assumption*. 4. *Cadapepe*, on a fair Bay in the same Coast also.

3. *NORUMBEGA* hath on the North-East *Nova Scotia*; on the South-West, *Virginia*. The air is of a good temper, the soil fruitful, and the people indifferently civil; all of them, as well men as women, painting their faces. The men are much addicted to hunting, and therefore never give their daughters to any, unless he be well skill'd in that game also. The Women are here very chaste, and so well love their husbands, that if at any time they chance to be slain, the widows will neither marry, nor eat flesh, till the death of their husbands be revenged. They both dance naked, and for more mirth, sometimes stark naked. The Sea upon the Coasts so shallow and full of Sands, that it is very ill sailing all along these shores. The Towns or habitations rather, so differently called by the *French*, *Portugals*, and *Spaniards*, that there is not much certainty known of them. Yet most have formerly agreed upon *Norminiegne*, or *Arnpsee*, as the Natives call it; said to be a large, populous and well-built Town, and to be situate on a fair and capacious River of the same name also. But later observations tell us there is no such matter; that the River which the first Relations did intend is called *Pempenet*, neither large nor pleasant; and that the place by them meant is called *Aggenet*, so far from being a fair City, that there are only a few Sheds or Cabins, covered with the barks of Trees or the Skins of Beasts. Howsoever I have let it stand on the nil reports, it being possible enough that Town might fall into decay, deserted on the coming of so many several Pretenders, and that the Sheds or Cabins which the last men speak of may be only the remainders of it.

4. Adjoining to these Countreys of *Canada*, are several Islands not joined in any common name, but yet deriving some consideration in this place and time. The principal whereof, 1. *NATISCOTEC*, called the Isle of *Assumption*, situate in the very mouth of the River, was first discovered by *Jacques Cartier*, *Anno 1534*, in length 35 leagues, seven or eight in breadth. The Island very plain and level, of a fruitful Soil, beautified with Trees of several sorts, replenished with great plenty both of Fowl and Fish, and furnished with convenient Roads, though with no good Havens. Not hitherto inhabited, for ought I can find. 2. *RAMEA*, aerie of little Islands in the great Gulf of *S. Lawrence* on the South of *Natiscote*, first found out or frequented by the Citizens of *S. Malo* in *Bretagne*, *Anno 1590*, of great resort for the *Morse-fishing*, used upon the Coasts, which is here so gainful, that a *French* Bark in a very little time killed 1500 of them. These *Morses* (take this by the way are

a kind of Sea-Horfe, or Sea Oxen ; with two Teeth of a foot long growing downwards out of the upper Jaw, fold dearer then Ivory, becaufe esteemed a fovereign Antidote againft poifons. They have alfo four Feet, no Ears, the Horns about half an ell in length ; the skin, when drefsed, twice as thick as that of a Bull ; their flefh, when young, as fweet and tender as Veal. So far and undoubt, that with the bellies of five of them, there is made ufual an Hogs-Head of Trainoil, as good as that of the Whale.

3. *BRITON*, a fmall Ifland on the South of the *Ramee*, about two leagues in length, and as many in breadth, of a rich foil, fat paffure, well fhaded with tall and lofty Trees ; and neighbored by a fmall Ifland called *Ifle Blanche*, of the like fertility.

4. *BRITON*, (*Infula Britonum*) fo named from *Jacques Briton* a French-man, in the time of *Francis* the firft, called alfo the Ifland of *S. Lawrence*, is fituate on the South-Eaft of the Ifle of *Brian* : in form triangular, in compafs about 80 leagues ; pleafant and fruitful, though for the moft part fwelt'd with Hills. Delitute of Rivers, but interlaced with great Arms of the Sea, well ftored with fifh ; and in the midit thereof a great Lake full of little Iflands : the Woods replenifhed with plenty of Deer, black Foxes, and a Bird called *Penguin*. Inhabited by the Natives only, though the *Portugals* did fometimes endeavour a Plantation in it ; but finding the air too cold for them, they again deferted it. The chief Haven is by the *Engliff* called *Newport* ; by the *French* *Port aux Anglois*, from the great refort of the *Engliff* to it, in regard of their fifhing.

5. *ISLE DE SABEL*, by the *French* fo called from the Sands which alfo high about it ; diftant from the *Briton Ifle* about 30 leagues to the South ; 15 leagues in compafs, but more long then broad, and of a fafe landing. The planting of it, in regard of the

fafety of the place, attempted twice by the *French* and once by the *Portugals* ; but without fuccefs. 6. Others of lefs note, as *Mongo*, and *Les Ifles des Oufans*, I pafs over purpofely, there being nothing, nor but little, to be fpo- ken of them.

So it appears by this account, that though the *French* have given the name of *Nova Francia*, to all thefe Coun- treys ; yet they never had the honour of the firft difcovery, wherein the *Engliff* and *Portugals* had precedence of them : nor are poffeffed of any confiderable part thereof, the *Scots* putting in for a large fhare ; the *Engliff* Mafters of the beft Ports, and all the Iflands of the Coun- try in the hands of the Savages. Of thefe fome great and powerful Nations over-fove the reft. The chief whereof are the *Troquois* on the North-Eaft of *Nor-umbega*, neighbored by the *Ochataquies*, the *Algon- quins*, and the *Nebicviers*, the *Sauriquis*, and *Etchimis* of *Acadia*, and *New Alexandria* ; the *Montagues*, and the *Antagvians*, on the banks of the *Canada*. All of them ftout and hardy people, falfe of their words, treacherous in their practices, and mercilefs in their re- venges. So well acquainted with the Factions and di- vifions of *Europe*, that they know how to make ufe one Nation againft another ; and by that means to keep them- felves in their firft eftate, without being fubject to any. So that the footing which the *Engliff*, *French*, or *Scots* have obtained amongst them, ferves rather to fecure themfelves in the way of their Trading then to entitle them unto any poffeffion and command in the Country : the *French* being fhut up in a few weak Forts on the North of the *Canada*, the *Scots* pretending only to a Bay or two in the South of *Acadia* ; and the *Engliff* being only *Tenants* at the will of the Natives, for fuch convenience of fifhing as they have in the adjoining Iflands.

## OF VIRGINIA.

**V**IRGINIA hath on the North *Canada* ; on the South, *Florida* ; on the Eaft, *Mare del Noort* ; the Western boundaries not known, or not well difcovered. So called in honour of Queen *Elizabeth*, that Virgin Monarch ; when difcovered (to any purpofe) by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Anno 1584. By the natural Inhabitants called *Apalchen*, from a Town of that name, one of the chief in all the Coun- try.

The Inland parts herof are mountainous and barren, full of thick Woods, a Receptacle for wild Beasts, and wilder Savages. Towards the Sea more plain and fruitful, as will appear by the Survey of its feveral Pro- vinces ; premiffing firft, that *Virginia* in the full latitude thereof extendeth from the 34 degree, where it joys with *Florida*, unto the 44, where it quartereth on *Norumbega*.

The firft Difcovery herof by the two *Cabots*, Father and Son, Anno 1497, did firft entitle the Crown of *England* to this Country. The Defign after fecoded by *Mr. Haro*, bringing thence certain of the petty Kings or Princes herof, who did Homage to King *Henry* the 8. then fitting in his Royal Throne in the Palace of *Wefminfter* ; but no

thing farther done in purfuance of it. And though *John Verazzani* a noble *Florentine*, at the encouragement and charge of King *Francis* the firft, Anno 1524, difcovered more of the Country then *Cabot* did ; yet the *French* too much in love with the pleasures of *France*, or intangled in Civil wars amongst themfelves, looked no farther after it : Infomuch that the Country lying thus neglected, was re-difcovered, by the charges and direction of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, then Captain of the *Guard*, and in great power and favour with Queen *Elizabeth*, Anno 1584, who fending Mafter *Philip Amadas*, and Mafter *Barlow* upon this employment, did by them take poffeffion of it in Queen *Elizabeth*'s names in honour of whom he caufed it to be called *Virginia*. The next year he fent thither a Colony, under the conduct of the noble Sir *Richard Green- ville*, who not fupplied with neceffaries for their fubfif- tence, returned home again. In the year 1587, a fecond Colony being undertaken only on a private Purfe, not owned as the Interest of the State, or of pub- lick mention, till the year 1606. In the mean time the North parts of this Country being more perfidly difco- vered by Captain *Bartholomew Gifbold*, Anno 1602. and the

the middle parts being taken up by the *Hollanders* not long after, that is to fay, in the year 1609. the whole became divided into thefe three parts : 1. *New England*, 2. *Nor-umbega*, 3. *Virginia*, ftrictly and fpecially fo called. To which the Ifles of the *Bermudaz* fhall come in for a fourth.

*NEW ENGLAND* hath on the North-Eaft *Norumbega*, and on the South-Weft, *Norumbega*. So called by the Adventurers by whom firft planted, not fo much becaufe oppofite to *Nova Albion*, as fome men con- ceive, as an intimation of the like adjuncts of diftinction given by the *French* and *Spaniards* to *Nova Francia*, *Nova Hispania*, *Nova Galicia*, *Nova Granada*, and the like.

The Country fituate in the middle of the Temperate Zone, betwixt the degrees of 41 and 44, equally diftant from the Arctick Circle and the Tropick of Cancer ; by confequence, naturally of the fame degree of heat with *France* or *Italy*. But by reason of the thick mists which arife from the Seas adjoining, thofe heats fo moderated, that the Air is found to be exceedingly agreeable to an *Engliff* body. The Soil not only fruitful of fuch Com- modities as grow there naturally, but alfo of all forts of Grain which were brought from *England*. Great ftore of Woods and Trees, both for fruit and building ; plenty of Deer within the Woods, of Sale and Filh upon the Shores ; and as for Turkeys, Partridges, Swans, Geese, Cranes, Ducks, Pigeons, fuch a full variety, as ferves not only for neceffity, but for Pride and Luxury. The Commodities of moft note for maintaining of Traffick, rich Furs, and many forts of Filh, fome Amber, Flax, Linnen, Iron, Pitch, Malts, Cables, Timber fit for Ship- ping : in a word, whatever comes to *England* by the way of the *Sound*, might at better rates, and with far lefs trouble be fupplied from hence ; at leaft if we be- lieve the Relations of it, publifhed in the year 1622.

The people for the moft part well enough difpofed, if not roughly handled ; hofpitale and more civil than the reft of their Neighbours. So tractable and docile in mat- ters of Religion, that liking well the Rites and Ceremo- nies of the *Engliff*, at their firft fettling there, Anno 1608, they would ufe to fay, that *King James was a good King, and his God a good God, but their Tanto naught*. Which *Tanto* was an evil Spirit, which did haunt and trouble them every Moon, and therefore they worffhipped him for fear. Which notwithstanding, I find not any great in- creafe of Chriftianity among the Natives : our *Engliff* Undertakers thinking it fufficient, if they and their families fore the Lord, without caring what became of the Souls of the wretched people, which hitherto have fate in dark- nefs and the fhadow of death, notwithstanding thofe New- Lights which have fhined amongst them. And as for thofe New-comers which have planted there, all *Engliff*, though fome immediately out of *Holland* I cannot better tell you of what train they were, than in the words of *John de Laet*, *Nova Orbis lib. 3. cap. 8*, where he obferveth, *Primum bofe Colonos, mi & illos qui poftea accesserunt, primum aut omnia Jaffe ex eorum hominum Sedes, quas in Angli Brownifms & Puritanifms vocant, quales non pauci & in Belgium fuperftruitus annis fe repperunt, & hinc ad focios funt profecti*. They were (faith he) either for the moft part, or altogether, of that Sect which in *England* are called *Brownift* or *Puritan* : many of which had formerly betaken themfelves to *Holland*, but afterwards went thence to joy with their Brethren in *New-England*.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1. *Tamofet*, where our men found Oysters of nine Inches long. 2. *Nafick*, a River of the *Tarentines*, one of the chief Nations of this Tract. 3. *Sagadahoc*, of moft note and defervedly too, a mild and flat broad at the mouth or influx, and fo

upwards for the fpace of a days journey, where it maketh a large Lake three days journey broad, with fix Iflands in it ; boundeth with two large Channels, the one from the North-Eaft, the other from the North-Weft, each of them rifing from a Lake ; the leaft of which being of lefs note, 4. *Apanawepick*, 5. *Kaniffick*, 6. *Albam- baga*, &c.

The Country on the Sea-fide full of notable Havens, populous, and very well inhabited, infomuch as Captain *Smith* reckoned in the fpace of 70, 500 or 1000 fall ; moft of them fheltered from the fury of Winds and Sea, by the interpofition of fome Iflands, of which about 200 lie upon that Coast. In the fpace of 70 miles he reckoneth 40 Villages of the Barbarous people, the chief of which are, 1. *Maccadaet*, 2. *Segodet*, 3. *Ponmaguif*, 4. *Nifconet*, 5. *Kennebeque*, &c. all being called by the name of fome Brook or water, upon which they were fited. Since called by the *Engliff*, 1. *S. George's Fort*, the firft Plantation of the *Engliff*, built by them at the mouth of the River *Sagadahoc*, in a Demi-Ifland, Anno 1607. 2. *New-Plimouth*, feated in a large and capacious Bay at the firft building (Anno 1620.) confifting of nineteen families only, but in fhort time improved to an handfome Town : which as it was the firft Town, fo it was the firft Church which was fetled there, modelled according to the form of *Mr. Robinfon's* Church in *Holland*, (that notorious Separatifts) ; and after made a pattern to the reft of thefe Churches : each abfolute and independent in it felf, with- out fubordination unto any fuperior. For my part, I be- hold the *Epifcopy* as the Primitive Government of the Church of *Chrift*. But if there were no other Pretenders to that *Presbytery* and *Independency*, I fhould as foon look for the Scepter and Throne of *Chrift* (as they please to phrase it) in the *Concordation* of *New-England*, as in the *Presbytery* of *Geneva*, or the *Kirk* of *Scotland*. 3. *Bryfton*, upon the Seafide alfo, but more North than *Plimouth*, 4. *Brownifick*, fo called with reference to a noted Sea-town of that name in *Devoynshire* as is *Bayton*, with like reference to that name in *Lincolnfhire*, 6. *Quintipack*, on the Bay of *Maffachufetts* ; a Town of an old name, but a new Plantation.

This part of *Virginia*, firft difcovered by Captain *Gifbold*, Anno 1602. and the next year more perfectly furveyed by fome of *Britiff*, was by King *James* Anno 1606, granted unto a certain Corporation of Knights, Gentlemen, and Merchants, to be planted and difpofed of for the Publick : Sir *John Popham*, then Chief Juftice of the Common Pleas, being one of the chief alfo in that Commiffion. By his encouragement, and principally at his Charge, a Colony was fent thither, Anno 1607, under the Prefidency of Captain *George Popham*, and *Raleigh Gilbert*, who built the Fortrefs of *S. George* at the mouth of *Sagadahoc*. But the Piccadilly dying the next year, and not long after him the Chief Juftice alfo, the Colony, difpairing of good fuccefs returned home again. Succedingly again attended Anno 1614. the Undertakers were refolved to make farther trial of their fortune ; and in the year 1620, fent out eight Ships more : but it never fetled into form till the year 1610, when by the building of *New-Plimouth*, and fome encouragements fent thence to bring others on, it grew in very fhort time to fo wight a growth, that no Plantation for the time ever went beyond it. The growth of *Old Rome* and *New-England* had the like foundation ; both Sanctuaries, Ad que turba omnis ex finitimis gentibus novarum rerum cupida confluit, as *Livy* telleth us of the one ; referred to by fuch of the neighbouring Nations as longed for Innovations in Church and State.

2. *NOVUM BELGIUM*, or *NIEU- NEDER-*

DERLANT, hath on the North-east *New-England's* on the South-west, *Virginia* specially called. So named from the *Netherlanders*, who began their Plantation in it *Anno 1614*. the Country being then void: and consequently open to the next Pretender, according to that Maxime in the Civil Laws, *Quia nullius in bonis, dantur occupanti*. And yet they had some better title than a bare Invention, having bought *Hudfon's* Charts and Maps, and otherwise contended him for the charge and pains of his *Discovery*, *An. 1609*, of which more anon.

This part of the Country extended from the 38. degree and an half, to the 41. 15. of a good temperature both of Air and Soil: fruitful of those things which the Earth brought forth of its own accord: abundance of wild Grapes, Nuts, and Trees of great height and bulk for shipping; plenty of Herbage, store of Plants, the effects of nature: and where the people did their part, such increase of *Mizee* (a plant of which they make their Bread) as shewed their care and industry to be well bestowed. Since the planting of the *Hollanders* there, abundantly well furnished (within their command) with Wheat and other sorts of Grains as also with Flax, Hemp, and such other Commodities as were brought hither out of *Europe*. The Woods replenished with Deer, and the Plains with Fowls: the Rivers not inferior to any in *Sturgeon*, *Salmons*, and other the best sort of Fish which can swim in the water.

The people, though divided into many Nations, and of different Languages, are much of the same disposition with the other Savages: clad in Beasts-skins, for the most part without certain dwellings: dwelling together many Families of them under one poor roof, made of Poles meeting at the top, and covered with the bark of Trees. Their Household-stuff a Broom-Pipe, a wooden dish, and an Hatchet made of a broad flint: & their weapons, Bow and Arrows, but their Arrows made or headed with the bones of Fishes, their Religion Idolatry, or worse: their chief God the Devil, whom they worship under the name of *Monette*; but with less Pomp and Ceremony than is used in *Africa*. Of manners, fearful and suspicious (not without cause) wonderfully greedy of revenge; but if well used, tractable and obedient unto their Superiors: fickle, but very faithful unto those who trust them; conceived to be inclinable to the Christian Faith, if they had fallen into the hands and command of those who had studied Godliness more than Gain.

Rivers of note they have not many. That want is supplied by many large and capacious Bays, all along the Coast. The principal of those that be, 1. *Mahabets*, by some called *Nassauins*, but by the *Dutch* commonly *Norfolk Rivers*, which falleth into the Sea at *May-point*, so called by *Cornelius Mry*, the Master of a Ship of *Holland*, at their first Plantation: another Channel of it, which from the noise thereof they call *Hell-gate*, emptying it self against an Island called the Isle of *Natur*. The River about 15 or 16 fathom deep, at the mouth thereof affordeth a safe Road for shipping, but of difficult entrance. 2. *Zuid River*, so called, because more Southerly than the others; as fair as that, but hitherto not so well discovered.

Towns here have few either of the old or new Plantations. The natural Inhabitants live together in Tribes, many Families of those Tribes under one Roof, as before was said: but those Families far remote from one another, that their Habitations are not capable of the name of a Town, and hardly of a scattered Village. Nor do I find, that either the *Hollanders* or the *English* (who now divide the whole among them) are much given to building: the Title of the *Dutch* being subject unto some disputes; and the Possession of the *English* not confirmed and settled. *Hudfon* an *English-man* had spent some time in the Discovery of this Country, and given

him name to one of the Rivers of it. With him the *Hollanders*, *Anno 1609*, as before is said, compounded for his Charts and Maps, and whatsoever he could challenge in the right and success of that his Voyage. But they were hardly won in their new Habitations, when Sir *Samuel Argal*, Governour of *Virginia* specially called, (having dispossessed the French of that part of *Canada* now called *New Scotia*, *Anno 1613*.) disputed the possession with them; alleging that *Hudfon*, under whose sale they claimed that Country, being an *English-man*, and licensed to discover those Northern parts by the King of *England*, could not alienate or dismember it (being but a part, or Province of *Virginia*) from the Crown thereof. Hereupon the *Dutch* Governour submits himself and his Plantation to his Majesty of *England*, and the Governour of *Virginia* for and under him. But a new Governour being sent from *Amsterdam* in the year next following, not only failed in paying the conditioned Tributes, but began to fortifie himself, and entitle those of *Amsterdam* to a part of the propriety. To which end he gave unto the Country the name of *New-Netherland*, conferred new Names on all the Bays and Rivers of it, and possessed himself of a little Island near that Branch of the *Noordt River* which themselves called *Hell-gat*: where he laid the foundation of a Town, called *New-Amsterdam*; and built a Fortris by the name of *Orange Fort*, which he garisoned, and planted with five pieces of Canon. Complaint whereof being made unto King *Charles*, and by him represented to the *States of Holland*: it was declared by the said *States* in a publick Instrument, that they were no ways interested in it, but that it was a private undertaking of the *West-Indian Company of Amsterdam*; and so referred it wholly to his Majesty's pleasure. Which being declared, a Commission was forthwith granted to Sir *George Calvert*, Lord *Baltimore*, to plant the Southern parts thereof, which he next *Virginia*, by the name of *MART-LAND*: the like not long after to Sir *Edmond Pleydon*, for planting and possessing the more Northern parts, which lie towards *New-England*, by the name of *New Allion*. And though the *Hollanders* did then seem willing to be gone, and leave all they had there for the Sum of 2500 l. yet taking advantage of the Troubles which not long after followed in *England*, they have not only raised their demands to a greater height, but furnished the Native *Indians* with Arms, and taught them how to use their Weapons. A most mischievous and wicked Act, as not only tending to the damage and discouragement of the present Adventurers, but even unto the extirpation of all Christians out of all these Countreys. But the best is, they were the first that sinned by it. The Savages, thus armed and trained, fell foul upon them, destroying their Farm-Houses, and forcing them to betake themselves to their Forts and Fastnesses. What hath been since done, (for the giving of new names to some of the old places, I look on as a thing of nothing) either in getting out the *Dutch*, or planting Colonies of the *English*, I can hardly say: but I fear that little will be acted, or to little purpose, till it be made a work of more publick interest.

3. *VIRGINIA*, specially so called, hath on the North-East, *Nieu-Nederland*; on the South-west, *Florida*: the name restrained to this part only, since the two last Plantations, which before was common to the whole. The Country lieth extended from the 34. to the 38. degree of Northern Latitude: and by consequence the Air is inclined unto heats, if not refreshed and moderated by a constant gale of Eastern winds, which they call the *Breeze*, and the blasts driving on it from the open Seas. Diversified most pleasantly into Hills and Valleys; the Mountains clothed with woods, and the Fields with fruits. The Soil so fruitful, that an Acre of Land well ordered will return

return 200 Bushels, or 25 Quarters of Corn. Said also to be rich in Veins of Allom; as also Pitch, Turpentine, store of Cedars, Grapes, Oyl, plenty of sweet Gums; several sorts of Plants for the Dyers use; some Mines of Iron and Copper; of Timber Trees almost infinite numbers; as also great abundance of Cattle, Fish, Fowl, Fruit, and of Maize no scarcity. Some Crystall is found amongst the Mountains, on the those more Pearls. Nothing deficient either in the Soil, or Air, for the encouragement and reward of a thriving Nation.

The people are but few in number for so large a Country, and those as divided in size as in speech or manners. Some of them, whom they call *Sagoyes-humoi*, of so vast a greatness, that in comparison of the *English* they seemed as Giants: clad with the Skins of Bears and Wolves in so strange a manner, that the head of the Beast hung before their Breasts instead of a Jewel: their Arms, Bows, Arrows, and a Club. Some on the other side, whom they call *Weygonimoi*, of so low a stature, that in relation to the other they appear as *Pigmies*. But generally they are all of tall stature, well limbed, for the most part without Beards, and the one half of the head kept shaven, clothed in loose Mantles made of the Skins of Deer, with an Apron of the same to hide their nakedness; the rest of their Bodies painted over with figures of Serpents, or of some other Creature of as horrid shape. Strong and accustomed to the cold, which they patiently endure, or feel not: wavering and inconstant, crafty, and somewhat more industrious than the rest of the Savages; but given to anger, and as greedy of revenge as any. Gods they have many, for they worship all things (and them only) which are like to hurt them: as Fire, Water, Lightning, Thunder, &c. So that it may be said of them, as once *Lucianus* said of the Ancient *Romans*, (did not the ignorance of these poor Wretches render them excusable, and make them fitter Objects for our Prayers and Pity, than our *Lords*) *Dignissimi homines qui Deos suos semper habere presentes*. One Devil-God above all the rest, (they call him *Ok*) whom they worship, as themselves confess, more for fear than love. Nor yet converted from these horrible and gross Idolatries by the long Neighbourhood of the *English*; accused in that respect most justly by those of *Rome*.

No Country, for the bigness of it, can be better watered, or yield fairer Rivers. The principal of which are 1. *Powhatan*, (so called by the name of the petit *Royelet*, whose Territory it passeth through) which having run a course of a hundred miles, and navigable all that way by smaller Vessels, is at his fall into the Sea about three miles broad. 2. *Apamattuck*, 3. *Nampanomok*, and 4. *Chickahominy*: all Tributaries to *Powhatan*. 5. *Pamunkey*, fourteen miles more North than *Powhatan*, but of lesser note. 6. *Topotomock*, navigable 130 miles. 7. *Patawomek*, passable by Boat 140 miles, and six or seven miles broad where it falleth into the Sea; is increased by many lesser streams which come out of the Mountains, and generally well filled with Fish. 8. *Potomacum*, of a shorter Race, but a deeper Channel, than most of the former; 16 or 18 fathom deep; and of more choice of Fish than the others are.

Along the Banks of these Rivers dwell their several Tribes, scarce any of which make up an hundred men, (that of *Patawomek* excepted, which is able to arm after their manner 160.) many not yielding above 50, and some not so many. Their habitations, not consisting above ten or twelve houses apiece, but in those houses sundry particular families, are for the most part covered with the Barks of Trees: so placed, that the common Market-place standeth in the midst, at an equal distance: the houses of their *Worshippers*, (or the Chiefs of their Tribes) and that

which serveth them for a Temple, being somewhat finer than the rest. And of these habitations, some are preferred to us by the names of 1. *Oaumke*, by the *English* called the *Blind Town*, 2. *Powoke*, 3. *Slycock*, said by my Authors to be *Civitas Amplia*, a large City; but we must understand him with Relation to the rest of this Country. 4. *Chomamuck*, 5. *Secatun*, 6. *Mattunke*, 7. *Weygonimok*, 8. *Pyghohumok*, said to be inhabited by none but *Wom-men*, 9. *Chopano*, 10. *Mescommunge*, both upon the Sea: most of them called by the name of those several Tribes which inhabit in them.

In reference to the *English*, and their Plantations, we are to know that they made choice of the South-side of a large and goodly Bay for the place of their dwelling. A Bay which thrusting it self a great way up into this Country, and receiving into it many of the Rivers before-mentioned, is by the Natives called *Chesapeake*, and yieldeth the only safe entrance into this part of the Country: the Capes thereof for that cause fortified by the *English*; that on the Southern point being called *Cape Henry*, and the other *Cape Charles*, according to the names of the two young Princes. Towns of most note, which have been either since built, or frequented by them: 1. *James-Town*, (*Jenepolis*) so named in honour of King *James*, on the South-side of that Bay, not far from the River *Chickahominy*: first founded in the year 1606, at what time it was treacherously burnt, and some Ordinance planted on the Works. 2. *Henric Town*, (*Henricopolis*) so named in honour of Prince *Henry*, the Elderly Son of King *James*, built in a convenient place more within the Land, 12 miles from *James-Town*, 3. *Doris-city*, so called, because built and planted at the charge of Sir *Thomas Dale*, *An. 1610*, 4. *Bermudas*, an open Burrough five miles from *Henricopolis*, 5. *Kentington*, a noted and frequented Port in the Bay of *Chesapeake*, very much traded by the *English*. 6. *Wicomico*, the chief Town of *Powhatan*, one of the *Royalests* of this Country; much courted by the *English* at their first settling here, and a long time after: a Crown being sent him by King *James*, with many other rich Presents, the better to sweeten and oblige him; but for all that he proved a treacherous and unfaithful Neighbour.

The sum of the affairs of this last Plantation is, that the business being returned in the year 1606, and a Commission granted to certain Noblemen and Merchants to advance the works they fell in hand by the Council and encouragement of Captain *Smith*, with the building of *James-Town*, (having first fortified *Cape Henry*) in which Town he fixed a Colony of 100 men. These, being almost consumed by Famine, and other miseries, were the next year recruited with 120 more, brought by Captain *Newport*: but a Fire having casually consumed their Houses, once again discouraged them. But the Houses being re-edified, and a Church added to the Houses, by the industry of *Smith* their Governour, the Colony began to flourish, and to increase in reputation among the Savages: especially having made (as they believed) a friend of *Powhatan*. In the year 1609, the Lord *De la Ware* was appointed Governour, and *Smith* commanded to return, who left here 450 persons, (and of them 200 expert Soldiers) 3 Ships, 7 Boats, 24 great Guns, 300 Muskets, with Victuals and Ammunition necessary; and 59 of their *Worshippers*, or Petit-Kings, Tributaries and Contributors to the Town. *Sir Thomas Gater*, and Sir *George Sommers* first thither with 9 Ships, and 500 men, lost a great part of their numbers in the Isle of *Bermudas*, the rest, not well according with the old Plantation, were at the point of returning home, when happily the Lord *De la Ware* arrived with three Ships more, *An. 1610*. But falling into a desperate sickness, and come home to *Eng-*

land, he recommended the estate of the *English* there to Sir *Thomas Dale*, who furnished them with Men, Cattle, and other necessities: after whom came Sir *Thomas Gater* with 300 men, and some Heads of Cattle. And then the Government hereof being conferred on *Hony Earl of Southampton*, the Affairs here began to settle in a prosperous way: when unexpectedly in the year 1621, the Savages falling on them (fearing no such treachery) killed 340 of their men; and had then also surprized *Jamestown*, if one of the Savages who had received the Christian Faith, had not discovered their intention. Since that, recovered of that Blow, it went happily forwards, and might by this time have been raised to some power and greatness, if the *English* by diverting on some by-Plantations, and by employing indigent and neccitious persons in so great a work, had not discouraged the design. For certainly one might say of this Plantation, as the Scripture doth of the *Camp of David* in the time of *Saul*, that few folk or none were sent unto it (except the Principals, but such as were in distress for debt, or some way or other discontented; men never likely to advance and pursue a business of such publick Interest. Commendable howsoever in this particular, (though perhaps that commendation do belong to their Governors) that being here, they kept themselves constantly to those Forms of Worship which were established and observed in the Church of *England*.

As for the Natives of the whole, they were divided (as was said) into several Tribes, every Tribe under the Command of their several Chiefs: which Chiefs, though many in number, and of little Power, knew well enough how to keep their State under their Subjects, and to shew it also unto Strangers. For when *Pemberton* was pleased to give Audience unto Captain *Newport*, and the rest of the *English* sent from *Smith*, they found him upon a Bed of Mats, his Pillow of Leather, imbroided with white Beads and Pearl, attired with a Robe of Skins like an *Irish* Mantle: at his head and feet an handsome young woman; on each side of the Room twenty others, with their necks and shoulders painted red, and about their necks a great Chain of Beads: his principal men sitting before them in like manner. Yet notwithstanding this great state, (and great it was indeed for such petty Princes) he and the rest became so subject to the *English*, that in *Smith's* time they did not only pay their Tributes, or Contributions, but at his Command would send their Slaves and Subjects to *Jamestown*, to receive Correction for wrongs done to the Colony. And it is probable enough, that those of *New-England*, being the greater and more powerful Plantation, (as followed with the stronger real, and carried on by the United Purposes of a prevalent Faction) were of like influence also among the Natives, though I find it not prefixed to in many particulars.

4. The Isles of *BERMUDAZ*, many in number, (some five 400 at the least) are situate directly East from *Virginia*, from which they are distant 500 *English* miles; 3300 of the same miles from the City of *London*. So called from *John Bermudez*, a *Spaniard*, by whom first discovered. Called also the *Sinners Islands*, from the Shipwreck of Sir *George Summers* upon that Coast; so much delighted with the fadnets of the misadventure, that he endeavoured

what he could to settle a Plantation in it.

That of more fame and greatness than all the rest, to which the name is now most properly ascribed, is situate in the Latitude of 32 and 30 minutes. Well stored, when first discovered, with plenty of Hogs, divers Fruits, Mulberries, *Palmettes*, Cedars; as also of Silks-worms, Pearls and Amber, and such rich Commodities: of Fowl so infinite an abundance, that our men took a thousand of one sort, as big as a Pigeon, within two or three hours. The Air hereof very found and healthy, found by experience (the best argument in such a point) to be agreeable to the body of an *English-man*; yet terribly expofed to Tempests of Rain, Thunder and Lightning. For which, and for the many shipwrecks happening on the Coasts thereof, and want of other Inhabitants to be said to own it, the Mariners have pleased to call it the *Island of Devils*. The Soil affirmed to be as fertile as any; well watered, plentiful in *Maize*, of which they have two Harvests yearly: that which is sowed in *March* being cut in *July*; and that which is sowed in *August* being mowed in *December*. No venomous Creature to be found in all the Island, or will live brought thither. And besides these Commodities, of so late a being, so known about Rocks and Illets, that without knowledge of the passages, a Boat of ten Tuns cannot be brought into the Haven; yet with such knowledge there is entrance for the greatest ships. The *English* have since added to these firebrands of Nature such additional helps, by Block-houses, Forts and Bulwarks in convenient places, as may give it the title of Impregnable.

It was first discovered (but rather accidentally than upon design) by *John Bermudez*, a *Spaniard*, about the year 1522, and thereupon a Proposition made in the Council of *Spain*, for settling a Plantation in it, as a place not to be avoided by the *Spanish* Fleets, in their return from the Bay of *Mexico*, by the *Strait of Bahama*. Neglected notwithstanding, till the like accidental coming of Sir *George Summers*, sent to *Virginia* with some Companies of *English* by the Lord *De La Ware*, *An. 1609*. Who being shipwrecked on this Coast, had the opportunity to survey the Island; which he so well liked, that he endeavoured a Plantation in it at his coming home, *Anno 1612*. The first Colony was sent over under *Richard Moore*, who in three years erected eight or nine Forts in convenient places, which he planted with Ordnance, *Anno 1616*. A new supply is sent over under Captain *Daniel Tucker*, who applied themselves to sowing, Cutting of Trees brought thither from other parts of *America*, and planting that gainful Weed Tobacco, *Anno 1619*. the business is taken more to heart, and made a matter of the Publick, many great Lords and men of Honour being interested in it; Captain *Butler* sent thither with 500 men, the Isle divided into Tribes or *Canneds*, to each Tribe a *Barrago*; the whole reduced to a settled Government both in Church and State, according to the Law of *England*. After this, all things so succeeded, that in the year 1623, here were said to be three thousand *English*, ten Forts, and in those Forts fifty pieces of Ordnance, their numbers since increasing daily, both by Children born within the Island, and supplies from *England*.

OF

## FLORIDA.

**F** L O R I D A is bounded on the North-East with *Virginia*; on the East with *Mare del Nord*; on the South, and some part of the West, with the Gulf of *Mexico*; on the rest of the West, with part of *New Galicia*, and some Countries hitherto not discovered. Extended from the River of *Palma* in the 25 degree of Latitude, to *Rio de Seco* in the 34, which evidently speaketh it for a Country of large Dimensions.

It was first discovered by the *English* under the Conduct of *Sebastian Cabot*, *Anno 1479*. afterwards better searched into by *John de Ponce*, a *Spaniard*, who took possession of it in the name of that King, *Anno 1527*. and by him called *Florida*: either because he landed there upon *Palm-Sunday*, which the *Spaniards* called *Pascua de Flores*, or *Pascua Florida*; or else quia *Florida erat Regio*, by reason of that fresh Vendure and flourishing Estate in which he found it. But by the Natives it is said to be called *Jaguala*.

This Country lying parallel to *Castile in Spain*, is said to be of the same temper both for Air and Soil, but that is abundantly more fruitful: the heart of the ground not being here worn out by continual Tillage, as perhaps it may be in the other. For here they have great abundance of *Maize*, (the natural Bread-corn of the Country; which they sow twice a year: *viz. March and June*, and reap in the third Month after, laying it in some publick Barns, and thence distribute it to the Necessities of particular persons. Well stored with several sorts of Fruit, as Mulberries, Cherries, Chestnuts, Grapes and Plums, of both excellent taste and colour: Beasts wild and tame, of all kinds which these Countries yield; and of like sorts of Fowl. The Woods and Forests full of the largest Oaks, and the loftiest Cedars; some Cypress Trees, and Bays, of a large proportion: with great plenty of that Wood, which the Inhabitants call *Paume*, and the French name *Salsifius*, the Bark whereof is Medicinal against some Diseases; and another Tree which we call *Espinie*, affirmed to be a Sovereign and present Remedy for the French Disease. It is also said to be enriched with some Mines of Gold and Silver; neglected by the Natives, till the coming of the *Spaniards* and French put a price upon them; and to have in it Emeralds of great worth and beauty, with many Turquoises and Pearls. Others report, that all the Gold and Silver which they have amongst them came from some Ships which had been wrecked upon those Coasts: contrary whereunto it is said by the Natives, that in the Hills which they call *Apalachee*, there are found great Veins of a reddish Metal, which the French concluded to be Gold, though they wanted time and opportunity to search into them.

The people are of an Olive colour, great stature, and well proportioned; naked, except their Privities, which they hide with the Skins of Stags: their Arms and Knees stained with divers paintings, not to be washed off, their Hair black, and hanging down as low as their Thighs. Cunning they be, and excellent in the Arts of Diffimulation.

So stomachful, that they do naturally love War and Revenge; so insomuch that they are continually in War with one or other. They are crafty also, and very intelligent, as appeareth by the Answer they gave to *Ferdinando Soto*, a *Spaniard*, who was here among them, *Anno 1524*. For when he went to persuade the people that he was the Son of God, and came to teach them the Law: *Not so*, replied a *Floridan*; *for God never had the world and slay, and work all kind of mischief against us*. The Women, when their Husbands are dead, use to cut off their Hair close to their Ears, and strew it on his Sepulchre, and cannot marry again till their Hair be grown long enough to cover their shoulders. *Hermaphrodites* are here also in great plenty, whom they use as Beasts to carry their luggage, and put them to all kind of drudgery. They have all a gross belief of the Souls Immortality, but are otherwise Idolaters.

Mountains this Country hath not many, as being generally plain and level; the chieftest, those called *Apalachee*, before-mentioned, supposed by the Inhabitants to be rich in Mines of Gold. Rivers of most note; 1. *Rio Seco*. 2. *Rio Grandes*. 3. *Serrevahi*. The two first named by the *Spaniards*, and the last by the Natives. 4. *Ganama*. 5. *Ligeri*. 6. *Azuza*. 7. *Sequana*; and 8. *Charente*; so called by the French, according to the names of the best Rivers in France: both French and *Spaniards* having had severally and successively the possession of it. Here are also 9. *Rio de Flores*, or the River of Flowers. 10. *Rio de Nieves*, or the River of Snow: And 11. *Rio de Spiritu Santo*, or the River of the Holy Ghost; all of them falling into the Bay of *Mexico*. A particular description of these Rivers, their Rise, Course, and Greatness, I find not in any of my Authors. Only *Mercator* telleth us of a swiftest River, called *Porte Riale*, reckon'd the chieftest of this Country, the Mouth whereof is three miles broad; where it openeth into the Sea betwixt two Promontories, the one towards the West, and the other pointing to the North. Some of these Rivers are affirmed to be haunted with Crocodiles: a Creature dangerous alike both by Land and Water.

The Country, not so well discovered and planted hitherto, as to be divided into Provinces, is commonly distributed into several Tribes, as were all Nations of the World at their first Discovery. The principal of these they reckon the *Quevenes*, *Mianets*, *Cunagadi*, *Cannoi*, *Avanar*, and *Malicane*, the *Susiles*, *Guinnes*, and other names not usual unto us of Europe's, though these more passable than many which have gone before; mollified perhaps by the French and *Spaniards*, and not presented to us in their natural roughness: all governed by their *Paracassis*, or several Chiefs, and those at deadly Feuds and continual Wars with one another. Some have advanced on the names of particular Provinces, as *Panama*, *Avanar*, *Abandusia*, *Jogaxia*, *Apalache*, *Amibia*, *Sasmania*, *Colas*; but they acquaint us neither with their Site nor Bounds; except it be that *Panama* lieth on the borders of *Hispania Nova*, beyond the large and spacious Bay of the *Holy Ghost*; and *Calas* near the Cape called *Cabo de Florida*. Others distinguish it by the names of

the several Roylets, which varying with the change of the person, makes that division to be very variable and uncertain also. But it is generally agreed, that the *Península* which pointeth on the Isle of *Cuba* hath the name of *Treglia*, or *Florida* (specially so called; the name of *Florida* being first given by *Columbo* unto this part only, though afterwards communicated unto all the rest of this Country. A Demy-Iland, stretching in length, from the South to the North, 100 Leagues; in breadth, where broadest, 30 Leagues, and in some places 20 only. Well known by the Cape of *Martyrs*, looking into the Isle of *Cuba*, the River of the *Holy Ghost*, and three goodly Bayes, the chief whereof, that intituled to *S. Jaspis*, all opening into the Gulf of *Mexico*, or the Bay of *New Spain*. The whole invironed about, save where it is joyned unto the Continent with Bars of Sands, and scattered Islands, which serve unto it as the Out-works to some notable Forts.

Chief Towns herof, 1. *S. Helen*, on or near a Promontory so named, where this Country bordereth on *Virginia*, once fortified and possessed by the *Spaniards*, but not long since abandoned. 2. *Fort de Charles*, *Arc Carolina* in the *Latine*, built by the *French* upon the Banks of the River *Mato*; and so called in honour of *Charles* the Ninth, in whose time the Conquest of this Country was undertaken; but ruined by the *Spaniards* in the War between them. 3. *Port-Royal*, a well frequented Haven, on the mouth of the River of that name; but whether there be any Town now remaining, I am not able to say. More in the Land (for there lie all upon the Borders towards *Virginia*) *Apalache*, supposed to be a place of great consideration, in regard of the opinion which was had of the Wealth thereof; (but found to be a small Town, of but 40 Cottages;) and therefore first attempted and took in by the *Spaniards*, in their Invasion of this Country under *Pamphilus de Narvaez*, Anno 1528. Recovered by the Natives after his departure. 5. *Anc*, an open Burrough, nine days journey from *Apalache*, where the Savages gave the *Spaniards* a sharp Encounter, and slew many of them; but being vanquished at the last, they forsook the Town, of it self not Tenable. 6. *Ocalis*, an unwall'd Town, but consisting of 600 Sheds (for I dare hardly call them Houses) the chief of the Kingdom of *Aucua*. 7. *Osabile*, the chief Seat of the King so called; and 1. *Pitacachum*, a Burrough of 200 Cottages, the principal of the Kingdom of *Pitacachum*: both taken by the *Spaniards* at the same time also. 9. *S. Matthews*, on the Eastern shore of the Demy-Iland above-mentioned, possessed and fortified by the *Spaniards*. 10. *S. Angustines*, on the same shore, but more South than the other, situate at the mouth of a small River so named, fortified by the *Spaniards* with many a strong Castle: but for all that taken by Sir *Francis Drake*, Anno 1585; there being found in the Fort of *S. John*, in which the strength of the Town consisted, 15 Brass Pieces, and 20000 *Picors* in ready Money, for the pay of the Garrison. Repaired afterwards more strongly than ever formerly. The *Spaniards* have also Garrisons in two other places of this Country, viz. *S. Philip*, and *S. Jago*; but I cannot say distinctly in what part they are.

The Government of this Country is of one kind only; though managed by several persons: the Supreme Power residing in the Chiefs of their several Tribes; at such continual Enmity with one another, that they very seldom joyn together in any Councils wherein the publick is concerned. So that the *Spaniards* may affirm of the present *Floridians*, as the *Romans* did of the ancient *Britains*; *Nec quicquam adversus validissimas gentes utilis nobis fuit, quam quod in commune non consulebant*; The not communicating of their Councils hastened on their bondage. Yet in the Government of these Chiefs there

was somewhat of the Parliamentary way used with us in *Europe*: For as in all matters of Concernment those Chiefs advised with their Council; so if it were a business which concerned the Publick, their Priests and others of most note for Gravity and Wisdom were admitted to the Consultation. But being feverally too weak for a strong Invader, and never joyned together to defend themselves, they made themselves an easy prey to the *French* and *Spaniards*; *Et sic dum singulis pugnabant, universi vincuntur*; by trusting to their single Forces, they were all subdued. For in the year 1512. *John Ponce*, a Native of *Leon* in *Spain*, setting fail with three Ships from the Island of *Porto Rico*, on *Palm-Sunday* fell on the *Península* before described; and for that cause, or from the flourishing Veridure of it, called it *Florida*; but did no more than four along upon the Coasts, and give new names to such of the Promontories and Rivers as he had discovered; and having only a slight skirmish with some of the Savages, returned back again. The business eight years after was again revived by *Vesputius de Aylen*, who setting fail from the Haven of *Plata*, in *Hispánola*, attained unto the North-east parts of this Continent, bordering on *Virginia*, where he left names unto the Promontory of *S. Helen*, and the River of *Jordan*: and having treacherously inflamed some of the Natives, (whom he had invited to a Feast) prepared for *Spain*; where he obtained the Kings Patent for a new Plantation. But his periodicalness could not prosper: For in the year 1524. coming with his Ships upon this Coast, one of them perished on the Rocks, and 200 of his men being killed at their landing, he gave over the Enterprise: the *Spaniards* hitherto making no more use of these Discoveries, than wickedly to enrich themselves by stealing men, whomas wickedly they sold for Slaves. Nor had the Voyage of *Pamphilus de Narvaez*, Anno 1528. any better end; though undertaken with a Band of 400 Foot, and 80 Horse. For having took possession of the Country in the name of his Sovereign *Charles* the Fifth, finding some hopes of great Treasures to be had at *Apalache*, (distant above a Months Journey from the place of his Landing) he would needs march thither. In which Action, though he got that and some other Towns, yet he lost himself, few of his men returning safe into their Country, and they not knowing what became of their General. As fruitless, but more famous, was the Enterprise of *Hernando de Soto*, begun in the year 1538. and continued till 1543. who with a little Army of 350 Horse, and 90 Foot, over-ran a great part of the Country, and brought many of the Petit Princes under the Command of *Spain*. But making only a depredatory War of it, to enrich himself, and waste the Country, without settling any Colony, or building any Fortifications in it to make good his gettings, the Action ended with his Life, which he lost by a Fever: the remnant of his Souldiers, whom the War had spared, under the Conduct of *Ludovico Melisso di Alvarado*, recovering *Mexico* not without great difficulties.

And so the *Spaniards* leave the Stage, and the *French* enter; sent on this Voyage by *Gaspard Coligny*, Admiral of *France*, Anno 1562. under the Conduct of *Ribault*: who falling on that part of the Continent which lieth on the East-side of the *Península*, gave the first Promontory which he touched at the name of *Cape Franc*, and after running Northward along that Coast, new-named the Rivers thereof by the names of the *Saine*, the *Loire*, the *Somme*, the *Garonne*, and others of most note in his own Country. Coming as far North as the great River of *Porto Royal*, he there built a little Fort, which he called *Fort-Charles*, where he left 26 of his men to keep possession, and returned for *France*: his

Soul-

Souldiers following not long after, as well as they could; destitute of Supplies from home, and not able with so small a number to command them there. The *Admiral* reinforced about two years after, under the Conduct of *Landottier*, who had accompanied *Ribault* in the former Voyage; by whom some further progress was made in this Undertaking, and a little Town built on the Banks of the River *Mato* (so called by *Ribault*, because in that Month discovered by him) which he named *Charles Fort*, *Arc Carolina* in the *Latine*. But a Mutiny happening amongst his men, and some Complaints made of him in the Court of *France*, he was called home, and *Ribault* sent again to pursue the Enterprise: who entering on his Charge in August, Anno 1565, was presently set on by the *Spaniards*, both by Sea and Land; his Ships forced violently upon the Rocks, the New Town sacked, the Colony put unto the Sword, very few escaping; *Ribault* himself murdered in cold blood by the Enemy, after Faith given him for his life. It was thought that above 600 *French* were slain in this Action. So ended the *French* hopes in *Florida*, the King being then preparing for a new Civil War, and loth to engage himself against the *Spaniards*, till the year 1627. when at the charge of *Dominicus Gorgius*, a private person, out of an honest zeal to the honour of his Country, and to cry quittance with the *Spaniards* for their treacherous cruelty, it revived again. And though he found the *Spaniards*, after the defeat of *Ribault*, had repaired and fortified *Arc Carolina*, and raised two Castles more on the Banks of the *Mato*, which they had furnished with such Pieces as they took from the *French*, and garrisoned with 400 Souldiers; yet giving a courageous Onset, by the aid of the Savages, (to whom the name and Neighbourhood of the *Spaniards* was exceeding odious) he forced them all, demolished the Works, and hanged all such of the Souldiers as the Sword had spared, and so returned into *France*; where, instead of honour and reward for so great a service, he was in danger of losing both his Life and Fortunes, compelled to lurk among his Friends till the times were changed. The *Spaniard* after this, to keep some kind of possession, though not finding in it Riches answerable to their greedy desires, fortified *S. Matthews*, and *S. Angustines*, on the East-side of the Demy-Iland, with the Castles of *S. Philip*, and *S. Jago*, in other parts of the Country towards the North-East; thinking himself so strong in the Gulf of *Mexico*, that no Foreign Forces durst appear on that side of the Country. So that it seems he plays the part of *Aepus's* Dog in the Manger, neither resolved to plant there himself, nor willing that any others should.

Having thus taken a Survey of the Main Land of *Florida*, let us next take a view of such Islands as lie dispersed up and down in the Seas adjoining; called by one general name *LUCAIOS*, or *LUCALIE IN-SULÆ*, many in number, but reducible to these three Heads: 1. The *Tortugas*. 2. The *Martyrs*. And 3. The *Lucaios* specially so called.

1. The *TORTUGAS* are seven or eight little Islands, lying on an heap at the South-West point of the *Península*, called the Cape of *Florida*, in the height of 25 Degrees; distant from the Port of *Havana*, in the Isle of *Cuba* (opposite unto which they lie) about six Leagues. Well known among the Sailors, because much avoided, or rather avoided because known; the danger of their Company making their farther Acquaintance thinned.

2. The *MARTTRES*, called also the *Caior*, are 1

three great Rocks rather than Islands, covered with a white Sand, and full of Buttes; the middlemost of the three the greatest: situate over against the South-East Promontory of the said *Península*, called from hence *Cabeza de los Martyres*; or, the Cape of *Martyrs*. Denominated thus by *John Ponce* the *Spaniard*, in his first Discovery of this Country, because they seemed afar off to have some resemblance to men impaled upon Stakes, as many of the *Martyrs* were in the Primitive times. Infamous for the many Shipwrecks which have since there happened; but of great observation amongst Sea-faring men, because they know by leaving these Rocks or Islands on the left hand of them, that they are already entered in the Streights.

3. The *LUCAIOS*, specially so called, lie dispersed on the East of the *Península*, many in number, and so called from *Lucanisque*, the greatest and most Northern of them, situate in the 27 degree of Latitude; of more length than breadth, but hitherto known by name only. Of greater note, though not so big, is that called 2. *Bahama*, in the middle way betwixt *Lucanisque* and the *Península*; in length 13 Leagues, and eight in breadth; memorable for giving name to the violent Current interposing betwixt it and the Demy-Iland, called the Streights of *Bahama*; yet not so freight, but that they are 16 miles in breadth, though of so forcible a Course, that many times neither Wind nor Oars can prevail against it. 3. *Guanabani*, the most famous of all these Islands, because the first that was discovered by *Columbus*, being then almost out of hope of proceeding farther, who thereupon caused it to be called *S. Saviour*. Well shaded at that time with Trees, full of fresh Springs, and very plentiful of Cotton, now overgrown with Shrubs and Buttes. 4. *Guanima*, by *Columbus*, when first discovered, called *S. Maria de Concepcion*; begirt about with Rocks and Quick-fans, but otherwise of a pleasant and fruitful Soil, full of delicate Springs. Others there are, to the number of 24, or thereabouts, whose names occur in many of our larger Maps: but being we had nothing of them but their very names, I shall not trouble my self with the Nomenclature.

Of all in general it is said, that they obeyed their King so strictly, (for a King they had) that if he commanded them to leap down from a high Rock, they performed the same; though he gave no reason but his Will. The Women of so perfect Beauty, that many of the bordering Nations forsook their own Countries to enjoy their Loves; their Shape and Beauty the more discernable, in regard not suffered to wear any thing till their Purgations; nor after that, but Nets of Cotton filled with Leaves of Herbs. But now, and long since, there are neither Men nor Women to be found in any of them; the people being long since waited by the *Spaniards* in the Mines of *Cuba* and *Hispánola*, or consumed by Famine and Dificals, or otherwise made away in Prisons, and by several Torments, to the number of a Million and two hundred thousand, as some have told us. And so we pass unto the other side of those Northern Countries, opposite to *Nova Francia*, *Virginia*, and the Main Land of *Florida*; that when we fall into the Countries now possessed by the *Spaniards*, we may not wander out of them till this Work be finished, except it be to take a Progress into some of the Islands, which cannot otherwise be visited, but by such a Start.



# OF CALIFORNIA.

**C**ALIFORNIA, in the large and general acceptance of it, containeth all those Provinces of *Mexicana*; which lie on the West-side of that Northern *Peninsula*, beyond *Nova Galicia*, and New *Spain*: though in the stricter, limited to that Province only which lieth on the other side of a long and spacious Gulf, called *Mer Vermiglio*, and from hence the Bay of *California*. But taking it in the largest sense, it hath on the West New *Spain*, and New *Gallicia*, and so on to those undiscovered parts which lie farthest North, to the Straights of *Anian*. So witnesseth *John de Laet*, lib. 6. cap. 11. *CALIFORNIA communiter dicitur quicquid terrarum Novae Hispaniae atque Galliciae ad Occidentem obijcit, ad extremos Americae Septentrionalis terminos, & Frisium quod vulgo Anian vocant*. Limited in the stricter sense and acceptance of it to an Island (as it is now generally conceived to be) extended in a full length from North to South, on the West hereof. So that for our more regular proceeding in the Chorography and Story of it, we must divide it into the Continent, and the Island: the Continent subdivided into the two large Provinces of 1. *Quivira*; and 2. *Cibola*; the Island into 3. *California*, specially so called; and 4. *Nova Albion*.

And first the Continent of this part which we call *California*, hath on the East some parts of *Nova Galicia*; and besides that, those vast and undiscovered Countries which lie on the West-side of *Canada* and *Virginia*; on the opposite shore: bounded on the North with the unknown parts of this *Mexicana*; on the North-west, with the Straights of *Anian*, if such Straights there be; on the West, with the Sea interposing betwixt it and the Island, called *Mer Vermiglio*; on the South and South-west, with the rest of *Nova Galicia*, from which parted by a great River called *Rio del Noordo*. A River which rising in the 40 degree of Northern Latitude, first parteth *Tigues*, a Province of *Quivira*, from that of New *Mexico*, one of the Provinces of *Nova Galicia*; and after a long course falleth into the Sea, called *Mer Vermiglio*, above *Cinola*, another of the Provinces of that Division. Divided, as before was said, into the two great Provinces of 1. *Quivira* and 2. *Cibola*.

1. *QUIVIRA*, taking up the most Northern parts of this side of *America*, is said to be very plain and level, of few Trees, not many Houses, nor much store of people; quite destitute of Fruits and Corn, and yielding nothing for Mans life but the flesh of Beasts, which they eat raw, and swallow down in great bits without any chewing. The men apparelled in Bulls skins from the head to the feet; the women, though in a cold Country, with no other Garment than their Hair, which they wear so long, that it forceth them instead of a Veil to hide their nakedness. They live in Bands and Companies, on the verity of a better Fortune, most of them being plain in the sight, and the rest red under the Horrific face, or crowned in passing over the River. Yet would not these few which were left give up the Town, till it

diffant from it) it is supposed that the Inhabitants first came, and from hence by degrees peopled all *America*.

The Country, being full of Herbage, breeds great flocks of Cattle, differing not much in bigness from those of *Europe*, but that they have an high Bunch betwixt their shoulders; bristled upon the back like Boars, with somewhat which resembleth the Mane in Horses, and the Beard in Goats; their Legs short, and clad with Fetlocks, their Horns short, but sharp: the whole Beast of an aspect so horrid, that an Horse will not venture near them, till well acquainted. Yet in these Beasts lie all their Riches, these being to this people, as we say with us of our Ale to Drunkards, Meat, Drink, and Cloth, and more too. For the Hides yield them Houses, or at least the covering of them; their Bones, Bodkins; their Hair, Thread; their Sinews, Ropes; their Horns, Maws and Bladders, Vessels, their Dung, Fire; their Calves-skins Budgets to draw and keep water; their Blood, Drink, and their Flesh, Meat. There is thought to be some Traffick from *China*, or *Cambay*, hither: for when *Vasquez de Coronado* conquered it, he saw in the farther Sea certain Ships, not of common making, which seemed to be well laden, and did bear in their Prows the figure of Pellicans; which could not be conjectured to come from any Country but one of these two. I know, some place this Country more within the Land; and others are so far from letting it look towards any part of the Sea, that they have laid it close unto the back of *Virginia*. For my part, I have laid it along the Coasts, upon good Authority, though I deny not but that some parts hereof may be more remote. Or else to reconcile the difference, it may thus be ended; that the Maritime parts being known by other names, the In-lands might retain more specially the name of *Quivira*, as we have seen in many other Countries before described.

And this I am the rather inclined to think, because I find mention of three Provinces on the North of *Cibola*, but in the way unto *Quivira*: the one called *Sao*, the other called *Cicnie*, and the third *Tigues*, which I look upon as the Maritime parts of the same one Country, but better peopled and frequented than the Islands are, because lying in the way of Traffick. The principal Towns of which Provinces are: 1. *Ara*, or *Acon*, a small Town, but situate in a strong and defensible place, about which growth some store of Cotton, which from the place the Natives call by the name of *Acon*. 2. *Tigues*, on the Banks of a River so called; inhabited by a stout and courageous People; who being refused not to fall alive into the hands of the *Spaniards*, when beleagued by *Vasquez de Coronado*, after they had held out above six weeks, laid all their Household-stuff and Treasure in an heap together, which they set on fire; and taking their Wives and Children into the midst of their Banks, made a desperate Sally on the Enemy. A Reliance on the verity of a better Fortune, most of them being plain in the sight, and the rest red under the Horrific face, or crowned in passing over the River. Yet would not these few which were left give up the Town, till it

fired about their ears, and no longer Tenable: the *Spaniard* buying this Victory (notwithstanding the great odds of their Arms) with the loss of most of their Horses, the death of seven of their men, and the wounding of 80. 3. *Cicnie*, a small Burrough, but the chief of that Province, four days journey from *Tigues*; from whence the whole way unto *Quivira*, specially so called, being 90 miles, hath in it neither Stone nor Tree, nor any Land-mark, inasmuch as the *Spaniards* were fain to make heaps of Cow-dung to serve for their direction in their coming back.

The first discovery of this Country is to be attributed to the diligence of *Antonio de Mendoza*, Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, who desirous to get Wealth and Honour by some new Adventures, employed in the discovery of these Northern parts *Fray Marco de Niza*. By him, and by a *Negro* which he had for his Guide, there was some light gotten of *Cibola*, the next Province to this; but so disguised in lies, and wrapt up in Fictions, that that light was little more than darkness. Yet by that glimmering, *Francisco Vasquez de Coronado*, in the year 1540, undertook the business; and sped so well, that having made his way through *Cibola*, he took the Town of *Tigues*, as we heard before, and laid his way open to *Quivira*. Moved to a further journey by the report of the *Savages*, (who desired to hasten him out of their Country) (telling him of the Wealth of *Tanaras*, who reigned in the In-land parts of *Quivira*; a Bearded Man (those of this Country wearing none) of a white Complexion, and one who in his Chappell worshipped a Cross, and the Queen of Heaven; on went the *Spaniards* towards *Quivira*, and found out the *Tanaras*, a poor naked Priest, Master of no more Treasure than a Brazen Plate hanging on his Breast, and without any sign of Christianity as they did expect. So frustrated of all their hopes, and having got nothing but their labour for their pains, and the Honour of a new Discovery, with the loss of many of their men, they returned to *Mexico*, Anno 1542. Some *Frysars* made bold to stay behind, but were all slain by the people of *Quivira*, except only one, who like *Jab's* Messenger was left to carry news of the Murder; the *Spaniards* never looking into these cold Countries, where nothing else was to be gotten but Blows and Hunger.

2. *CIBOLA* hath on the North *Quivira*; on the South and South-east parts, New *Gallicia*, from which divided by the River called *Rio del Noordo*, as before was said; the West-side of it washed with the *Mer Vermiglio*, interposed betwixt it, and the Island, or *California* specially so called. By the Natives it is called *Zuni*.

The Air hereof indifferently temperate, if not too much subject in the Winter to Frosts and Snows. The Country for the most part level, rarely fawled with Hills, but those very Rocky. No Trees that bear them any Fruits few Trees at all, except it be a Wood of Cedar, from which abundantly supplied both with Fowl and Timber. Plenty of Maize, and small white Pease, which they make their Bread of; great store of Venison, but they kill it only for the skin: some quantities of Sheep, known for flesh by their Fleeces only, but otherwise as big each of them as an Horse, or Oxe, some of their Horns weighing fifty pounds. Of Lyons, Bears, and Tygers, to great a number, that they have more than enough for themselves, and could well spare them to their Neighbours.

The people generally well limbed, and tall of stature, ingenious in respect of some other *Savages*; and though naked except their Privities only, or covered only with a Mantle, yet those Mantles wrought in divers colours; which, with some quantity of Cotton which they have

amongst them, (none of it growing in their Country) shew them to be an industrious Nation, and to maintain a course of Trade with some of their Neighbours. A farther Argument of which is those painted Skins which they have from *Cicnie*, or some other Country which lies towards the Ocean, my Author telling that they travel for them eight days journey towards the North: and probably enough may be some of those Commodities which the Inhabitants of the Maritime Provinces of *Quivira* do receive from *Cathay*, or *China*, with which they are supposed to Traffick, as before was said. Little industry is noted in the Women also, one of which will grind and knead more Maize in a day, than the Women of *Mexico* do in four. In other things not differing from the rest of the *Savages*.

This Country was first made known to the *Spaniards* by the Travels of *Frier Marco de Niza*, employed on new Discoveries by *Antonio de Mendoza*, as before was said. Leaving *Cathacan*, the most Northern Province of *Nova Galicia*, he overcame a tedious Desert four days journey long; at the end of which he met some people, who told him of a pleasant Country four days journey farther, unto which he went. And staying at a place called *Nacapa*, he dispatched the *Negro*, whom he took with him for his Guide, to search towards the North, by whom he was advertised after four days absence, that he had been informed of a large and wealthy Province called *Cibola*, a Months journey thence; wherein were seven great Cities under the Government of one Prince; the Houses of which were built of Stone, many Stories high; the Lintels of their Doors adorned with Turquoises; with many other strange reports of their Markets, Multitudes and Riches. But neither the Fryer nor the *Negro* had the hap to see it; the *Negro* being killed on the very Borders, and the Fryer so terrified with the news, that he thought it better to return, and falsified the Vice-Roy with some handsome Fiction, than put himself upon the danger of a further journey. To that end he enlarged and amplified the Reports which the *Negro* sent him, gave to the Defarts in his way the name of the Kingdoms of *Tanaras*, and *Merita*; ascribed unto this last a great City called *Abacan*, once well inhabited, but at that time destroyed by Wars; to the other a more civil and well-cultured People than in other places. Inflamed with which Reports, *Vasquez de Coronado* undertook the Action, but found the Fryer to be a Fryer; nothing of moment true in all his Relations: the Kingdom of *Merita* to be found only in the Fryers brains; *Tanaras* to be nothing but a great Lake, on whose Banks had once been many Cottages now consumed by Wars. And as for the seven Cities of flesh Wealth and bigness, he found them to be seven poor Burroughs, all situate within the compass of four Leagues; which made up that far famed Kingdom, which the Fryer dreamt of. The biggest of them held about 500 Cottages; the rest of them not above half that number. One of them, left he might be fain to return without doing something, he beleagued and took; but found it such an hot piece of service, that he was twice beaten down with Stones as he scaled the Rampiers; but having taken it at the last, he found in it great plenty of Maize to refresh his Army, and caused the Town, consisting of 200 Houses, (or thereabouts) to be called *Granada*, for some resemblance which it had to that City in *Spain*. Such as have since endeavoured the Discovery of this North-west part, and failed along the shores hereof on *Mer Vermiglio*, have added hereto the names or some Points or Promontories, known in the Maps by the names of 1. *Puerto de S. Clara*, not far from the Mouth or Influx of *Rio del Noordo*. 2. *San Pablo*. 3. *S. Michael*. 4. *Rio de Teron*. 5. *Lagos del Oro*. wondering on *Quivira*.

vina's and 6. *Roy Coronado*, on the East of that.

Between this Region and *Quitira*, specially fo called, lieth a Country, which the said *Vesputz* names *Tucayna*, memorable for the famous River of *Huancu* on the Banks whereof, for the space of 20 Leagues, stand 15 Burroughs well built, and furnished with Stoves, (if he hath not in this part of the Story out-ried the Fryer) as in other cold, but more civil Countries, against the extremities of Winter. This Region, stretching seven days journey to the River of *Cienick*, I reckon to belong to the North-east parts of *Cibola*. As I do also the fruitful Valley of *Ania de Corazon*, which they passed in their way hither from *Coutiliana*; with the Town and Territory of *Cibiltica-la*, and the Valley of *Nusfra Senora*, or our *Ladies Dale*, in the South parts of it: not knowing otherwise what Province to refer them to.

Proceed we now unto the Island, the other general part of this Division, parted from *Cibola* and New *Gallia* by a narrow Sea called *Mer Vermiglio*, and by some the Gulf of *California*, environed on all other parts by the Main Ocean. Extended in a great length from the 22 degree of Northern Latitude to the 42, but the breadth not answerable. The most Northern point hereof called *Cabo Blanco*, of which little memorable. The most Southern, called the Cape of *S. Lucas*, remarkable for the great Prize there taken from the *Spaniards* by Captain *Cavendish*, in his Circumnavigation of the World, Anno 1587. Supposed in former times to have been joynd in the Northern parts of it, above the Latitude of 27, to the rest of the Continent; and so described in most of our later Maps, till the year 1626, and after that in the Chart or Map of *Juhn de Laet*, Anno 1633, which I wonder at; himself affirming, that in many of the old Maps it was made an Island, lib. 6. cap. 11, and that he had seen a Map in Parchment, a very fair and ancient Draught, *que Californiam, in ingenuis Indis modum, a Contineute divideret*, in which it was expressed for a spacious Island, lib. 6. cap. 17. The reason of the Error was, that those who first endeavoured the discovery of it, failing up the Sea of *Mer Vermiglio*, found it to grow narrower and narrower towards the North, till it seemed to be no bigger than some mighty River; but that of such a violent Current, that no Boat was able to pass upwards with Wind or Oar, unless haled up with Cords by the strength of men. And taking it to be a River, they gave it the name of *Rio de Bona Guis*; known by that name, and continued in the Opinion of being a River, till the year 1620, or thereabouts. At what time some Adventurers, beating on these Coasts, fell accidentally upon a straight, but violent passage, on the North hereof, which brought them with a strong Current into *Mer Vermiglio*: discovering by that Accident, that the Waters falling into that Sea was not a River, as formerly had been supposed, but a violent breaking in of the Northern Ocean; by consequence, that this part of *California* was not a Demi-Island, or *Pennisula*, but a perfect Island. And looking on it as an Island, we have divided it into *Nova Albion*, and *California*, specially fo called.

And fifth, 3. *CALIFORNIA*, specially fo called, containeth the Southern parts hereof, as far as to the Latitude of 38, where it bordereth on *Nova Albion*. Of which Country, though fo near to New *Spain*, and New *Gallia*, and though discovered so long since, we yet know but little: the *Spaniards* either wanting new for new Plantations, or finding small encouragements here to invite them to it. Furnished on the Sea-coasts with great plenty both of Fish and Fowl, which they find in great Islands of Weeds floating on the Seas; and more within the Land, with a kind of Beasts haired like a Goat, and with Teats like a Cow, but otherwise resembling

Deer, which they kill with their Dogs. Some Mountains in it are said to call Fire-athes, which the *Spaniards* for that reason call *Cacofogo*. The people are numerous, and thick set, inasmuch that on the Banks of the supposed River of *Bona Guis* were numbered three and twenty Nations, all of several Languages. In their persons like the rest of the Savages, but of different Dresses. Some of them painting their Faces all over, some half way only, others with painted Vizards, resembling Faces: Holes in their Noftrils for their Pendants; the tips of their Ears loaded, if not over-loaded with the bones of Fishes hanging at them; a Girdle about their Waite, to which they tatten a bunch of Feathers that hang down behind them like a Tail: the Women using the like Bunches before them also. Their chief God the *Sim*, (as that of *Cibola* is the *Water*) which they most affectionately worship, as the cause of the increase of their Fruits and Plants. Joynd in Communion with their Gods, they were taught by *Alarcon* a *Spaniard* to worship a wooden Crofs (the more irrational Idolatry of the two) which he caused to be erected at his coming away, with instructions to kneel before it every morning, at the first rising of the Sun: so teaching them to worship their two Gods at once, or translate their Devotions from the Sun, a Creature of God, to a plain Wooden Crofs (of which they knew nothing, but the form) the work of a Carpenter. It is also told us of this People, that each Family is ordered by the Father of it, without other Government: yet so well managed, that they allowed but one Wife to a man, and punished Adultery with death; the Maids not suffered to converse or talk with men before their Marriage, but to abide at home and work: the Widows not to marry again, till they had mourned at least half a year for the death of their Husbands. Matters more favouring an *Utopian* Commonwealth, than a *Californian*.

Places of most observation in it; 1. The Capes of *S. Clara*, and *S. Lucas*: the first on the South-east point of the Island, towards new *Gallia*; the other on the South-West, towards *Asia*. 2. *S. Croffs*, (*Sinus S. Crucis*) a capacious and convenient Haven near the Cape of *S. Clara*; so called, because discovered upon *Holy-Road* day, 3. *Cabo di las Pluiss*, more within the Bay; so named, because the shore shewed in little Hills, without Grass or Shrubs; the Spanish word signifying as much. 4. *Cabo Bazo*, towards the bottom of the Gulf, (from whence the Land on the other side may be easily seen) in the Latitude of 29. 5. *S. Andrews*, a convenient Haven, and not far off an Island of the same name, with some Cottages in it. 6. *S. Thome*, an Island of 25 Leagues in compass, at the mouth of the Gulf; rising towards the South in an high Mountain, under which is a convenient Road for shipping the Sea being thereabouts 25 fathoms. Then on the other side towards the Sea, we have 7. *S. Ad-bad*, a convenient Haven, surrounded with a Country which seemed rich and pleasant. 8. *Cape Trinidad*, a Promontory well known to Sea-men. 9. *Cape de Cedros*, fo called from the Cedars growing near it, in the Latitude of 28 and 15 minutes; with an Island not far off of the same name also. 10. *Cape Engano*, in the Latitude of 31. 11. *Puebla de las Comas*, fo named from the multitude of Boats (by themselves called *Camar*) which the people used, four degrees more Northward than that Cape. And 12. *Cabo de Galera*, fo named from the resemblance, which it had to an *Har*, in the Latitude of 36. But these two are placed by *Juhn de Laet* within the Country of *Seyu*, one of the Provinces of *Quitira*. Understand here, that these are only the names of Places, not of Towns or Villages, (for whether there be any such, I am yet unsatisfied); and that there are many other Promontories, Bays, Rivers and Islands on both sides of this Region, which I did not name for.

The first Discovery of this Country we owe to *Ferdinando Cortez*, (of whom more hereafter) who in the year 1534, furnished out two Ships from the Haven of *S. Jago*, on the Western Shores of *Hispania Nova*, to search these Seas: who making some small progress in it, encouraged him the next year to pursue it in person; and passing up the Gulf, as high as to the River of *S. Peter*, and *S. Paul*, (so called, because discovered on the 29 of June, the Annual Feast of those Apostles) for want of Victuals and other necessary Provisions, he returned back again. The business having slept a while, was in the year 1539, awakened by *Francisco de Ulla*, one that had accompanied *Cortez* the time before: who did not only search to the bottom of the Gulf, but having thoroughly canvassed all the Eastern Shores, he turned his course, and made as fortunate a Discovery also of the Western Coasts. Landing, he took possession of the Country with the wonted Ceremonies, for the King of *Spain*; and in the place set up a Crofs to serve as a Remembrance of his being there. After him followed *Ferdinando de Alarcon*, who discovered many Leagues up the course of the supposed River of *Bona Guis*; where *Naguanicus*, one of the Chiefs of their Clans or Tribes, did submit unto him: advancing so far towards the North, that at the last he heard news of *Cibola*; but was unprovided at that time for a Journey thither. And on the other side, *Roderico Cabrillo*, in the year 1642, coasting along the Western Shores of this Country, discovered two small Islands beyond *Cape Galera*; the one of which he called *S. Luke's*, and the other the Island of *Paffion*; and beyond them a fair Haven, which he called *Sardinas*. But yet not finding what they looked for, which was Gold and Silver, and hungry Honour yielding but a poor subsistence; the farther Search of these Countries was quite laid aside, almost as little known now, as before *Columbus* first fell upon new Discoveries.

4. *NOVA ALEION*, formerly conceived to be a part of the Continent, hath of late times been found to have taken up but some part of this Island; lying about the 38 degree of Latitude, and so Northwards as far as to *Cape Blanco*, as they call it now. Discovered by Sir *Francis Drake* in his Circumnavigation of the world Anno 1577, and by him named *Nova Albion*, in honour of England his own Country, which was once called *Albion*.

The Country is abundantly replenished with Herds of Deer, grazing upon the Hills by thousands: as also with a kind of Conies in their Feet somewhat like a *Want*, and on each side a Sack, where they keep such Victuals as they cannot eat. The Flesh of these Conies serves the people for Food; and of their Skins the Kings or Chief of their several Tribes make their Royal Robes. The Men go quite naked, the Women with a piece of Mat instead of an Apron; chaste, and obedient to their Husbands. Their Houses made of Turf and Oiler, fo wrought together, as serves to keep them from the cold in the middle whereof

they have an Hearth, where they make Fire, about which they lie along upon Beds of Bull-rushes. What Towns they have, or whether they have any or not, and by what names called, if they have any, must be referred to a farther Discovery: there being nothing to that purpose delivered hitherto. And yet not feared to far North, but that it may be capable of a farther light, if any *Noble Undertakers* would adventure on it.

The English were no sooner landed, but the Inhabitants presented themselves before the General with presents of Feathers, and Galls of Network made of Bull-rushes; which he received, and requited with great humanity. The News of their Arrival being carried farther, one of their Kings thought fit to betow a visit on them: A Person of a goodly stature, attired in Cony-Skins, with many tall men attending on him; one going before him with a Mace, at which hanged three Crowns, with as many Chains; the Chains of Bone, but the Crowns of Knit-work, made of Feathers, very ingeniously composed. After him followed many of the common sort, every one having his Face painted white, black, and some other colours; and every one with some Precinct or other in their hands, even the very Boys. Being brought into the General's Presence, the Mace-Bearer made a long Speech, which might be well meant, though not understood; and that being ended, the King caused the Crown to be put upon the General's head, and the three Chains about his Neck; the common people offering Sacrifices about the Field in great solemnity. Not to be interdicted those Superstitions, though the English (whom they took for Gods) seemed to be offended at them. Finally, after much kindness expressed on both sides, the General promising in the Name of the Queen of *England* to take them into his Protection, he caused a Pillar to be erected in the place; on which he fastened the Arms of *England*, the Queen's Name, and his own; and so returned unto his Ships. But the Country lying so far off, that no benefit could redound by it to the English Nation, but the honour of the first Discovery; the name of *Nova Albion* by little and little was forgotten, and at last quite left out of the Maps or Charts; only a Point or Promontory, by the name of *Po. de Francisco Drake*, being left unto us to preserve his Memory. And though we have called the name of *Nova Albion* to be restored unto the Maps, as it was before; yet we must let the Reader know, that the name of *Nova Albion* hath been given lately with as much propriety, but more hopes of profit and advantage, to that part of *Virginia* which lieth betwixt *Mary-Land* and *New-England*, as before was noted.

Opposite to *Cape Blanco*, and the extreme North parts of *America*, the supposed Kingdom of *ANIAN*, from whence the Straight of *Anian*, which are thought by some to part *America* from *Asia*, do derive their Name, is conceived to lie. Supposed, and supposed only, for not certainly known: the very being of such a Kingdom, and such Straights, being much suspected.

OF

## NOVA GALLICIA.



**N**OVA GALLICIA is bounded on the East and South with *Nova Hispania*, or *New Spain*; on the West, with *Mer Vermiglio*, better known heretofore by the names of the River *Buena Guiz*, and the Gulf of *California*; the Countreys beyond it on the North not discovered hitherto. So called because of some resemblance which it was thought to have to *Gallicia*, a Province of *Spain* in *Europe*; the word *Nova* being added to it for distinction sake.

It is situate between the 18 and 28 degrees of the Northern Latitude, which measured from the Port of the *Nativity*, (by the *Spaniards* called *Natividad*, and contractedly *Navidad*) where it cometh on *New Spain*, to the most Northern border of *Cinaloa*, makes 300 Leagues: the breadth hereof so much as is possessed by the *Spaniards*, being but an hundred only. But taking in *New Biscay* and *Nova Mexicana* into the Account, the breadth will be greater than the length.

The Air hereof is generally very temperate, but more inclined to heat then cold; many times subject unto Thunders and great Storms of Rain, but for the most part so found a Constitution, that the Inhabitants attain to a good old Age; contagious Diseases seldom known amongst them. The Ground by consequence somewhat of the diet, if not moistened with the morning Dewes, which fall very frequently; and whether by the temperature of the Air, or Soil, apt to produce a kind of Gnat, (which the *Latines* call *Cimices*) affirmed to be as big as a Bean, which by their stings do very often plague the people, and raise Blisters on their Bodies as big as Walnuts.

The Countrey more Mountainous than Plain, and in most parts Sandy. Quarries of Stone in many places, but little Marble, or any other Stone of value. Good store of Mines of Brass and Silver, few of Gold or Iron; and amongst all their Metals a great mixture of Lead. The Soil so rich, that it yields 60 measures of Wheat for one; and for one of Maize, and woods two hundred: The Rivers plentiful of Fish, and the Woods of Beasts: great store of Bees without stings which make their Honey in the Forests without other Hives. And as for Apples, Pears, Citrons, Figs, Malcatoons, and other *European* Fruits, they thrive better here than they do in *Spain*, except the Cherry and the Olive: of which the last is most an end determined by Emnets; and the first thrives out such a Harvest of Leaves, occasioned by the natural Rankness of the ground, that they seldom come to their perfection.

The People are wavering and inconstant, apt upon any discontent to forsake their Houses, betake themselves unto the Woods, and many times to return to their Ancient Barbarism: Crafty and docile even in matters which concern Religion; but slothful and impatient of any labour, to which not to be held but for very great wages. Much given to singing, Dancing, and sometimes to Drinking; and were it not that they loved their Liquor, few of them would betake themselves to the cares of Husbandry. Of Stature reasonably tall; their Garments for the most part

a Shirt of Cotton, with a Mantle over it, fastened with two Buckles about their shoulders. They dwell in Villages and Towns, according to the greatness of their several Tribes: those Tribes commanded by their Chiefs, who succeed hereditarily; but subject to the Judges and other Officers of the King of *Spain*. As for the *Spaniards* who here dwell, they betake themselves generally to Merchandize, and the search of Metals; some few to Husbandry and grazing, but make not the best use which they might of the Countrey: for though here be great plenty both of Sugar-Canes and of Cochinell, yet they neglect to refine the one, or attend the ordering of the other; finding perhaps an easier or a greater profit in the other Commodities.

The Mountain of most name in all this Countrey is that betwixt *Gudalajara* and *Zacatecas* a League in height, but of such a Precipice withal, that no Horse nor Cattel can ascend it: their other Hills rocky, but clothed with Woods full of vast Pines, large Oaks, and great store of Wolves. The River of most name is that called *Reyes*, which, rising out of the Lake of *Mechuacan* in *Nova Hispania*, falls down a Cataract about four Leagues from *Gudalajara* of Ten Fathoms deep, and so runneth into *Mare del Zur*: in no place fordable, nor having any passage over it but on Reeds and Rafts, on which the Passenger sitteth with his Commodities, his Horse swimming by; nor safe at any time, and at most times dangerous. Some Lakes here be of 20, some of 12 Leagues compass: environed with rich Pastures on every side. Those of less note shall be remembered in their proper places.

It comprehends the Provinces of 1. *Cinaloa*, 2. *Concilicac*, 3. *Xalisco*, and 4. *Gudalajara*, on the Western Shores; 5. *Zacatecas*, 6. *New Biscay*, 7. *Nova Mexicana*, more within the Land. Of all these somewhat shall be said, though of each but little.

1. **CINALOA** is the most Northern Province of *New Gallicia*, bounded upon the West with the fuppiced River of *Buena Guiz*, and some part of the Bay of *California* on the East, with a long chain of Mountains, called the Hills of *Tepestan*; on the North, with the South parts of *Cibola*; on the South with *Concilicac*.

The Air for the most part clear and healthy, the Soil fat and fruitful, productive of Maize, Pulse, a sort of long Pease, which the *Latines* call *Phaseoli*, but we have no proper English name forso which abundantly plentiful. Great store of Cotton-wool, wherewith both Sexes are apparelled. Well watered with the Rivers, 1. *Petatlana*, 2. *Tamobula*, 3. *Pajolma*, 4. *Taquim*; of no long course, all of them rising from the Hills of *Tepestan*; and those but 36 leagues distant from the Sea-shores. By reason of these Rivers, here are very rich Pastures, which breed great store of Kine, Oxen, and other Cattel.

The People are generally tall, higher than the *Spaniards* by an hand-breadth, warlike and strong; not conquered by the *Spaniards* without great difficulty; their Arms a Bow and poisoned Arrows, with great mally Clubs. Their Garments for the most part of Cotton-wool; their Hair nourished to a great length, which they tie up in a Knot,

Knot, but the Women suffer to hang down to the full length of it. Both Sexes at the first coming of the *Spaniards* thither, without Cloaths at all, but to hide their flames most miserably poor; worshippers of the Sun, and not a few Cannibals amongst them.

Chief Towns herof 1. *S. Philip* and *Jacob*, situate on the Bank of a River, about 42 Leagues from the Town of *Concilicac*, but of no great note. 2. *S. Johns de Cinaloa*, a Colony of the *Spaniards*, planted here long since, and re-inforced by a Supply brought thither in the year 1554, by *Francisco de Tharras*; scarce able to defend themselves from the old Inhabitants, who ever and anon disturb them with a fresh Alarm. Besides these, here are onely some scattered Villages, and those not many: the *Spaniards* finding only 25 old Forts in all the Countrey, when they first made themselves Masters of it, under the Conduct of *Nonnez de Guzman*, Anno 1542. People everywhere submitting without any resistance, or if they gathered to an Head, found dispersed again. For what could naked men do against an Army?

2. **COTULACAN**, or **CULUCAN**, lieth on the South of *Cinaloa*, coasting along the Bay of *California*, which it hath on the West, and part of *New Biscay* on the East. The Countrey well provided of Fruits, incited unto none for all sorts of Provisions and not without some Mines of Silver found out by the *Spaniards*. The chief Rivers of it, 1. *Rio de Mueban*, or the River of Women, in the North part of the Province; so called, because the *Spaniards* found there more Women than Men, occasioning the opinion that it was inhabited by *Amazons*, 2. *Rio de Sal*, a goodly River, both sides whereof are very well peopled. 3. *Piahta*, more towards *Xalisco*.

The People not much different from the rest of *Gallicia*; save that their Women were more handsome, more for Dress and Personage; all clothed in Garments of Cotton Wool, when first known to the *Spaniards*; and yet the men not free from the sin of *Sodom*. Their Houses neatly thatched with Straw, and over the Lintels of the Doors some Paintings, as shameless as the very foulest of *Arcine*'s Postures. Ignorant of Gold, which they had no Mines of; but of late times acquainted to their craft with Silver, which they are compelled to dig and refine for the *Spaniards*.

Chief Towns herof, 1. *Piahta*, on the River so called, about a days Journey from the Sea, well built, and artificially contrived in respect of others; never recovered of that blow that it had from the *Spaniards*, who in the Conquest of this Countrey waited all before them. 2. *Quimola*, near *Rio de Mueban*, an old Town, but new named by the *Spaniards*, because it consisted of four parts. 4. *El Leon*, an old Burrough, which from a Lion there found had this new name also. 5. *Concilicac*, on a River so named, once the chief of this Province. 6. *S. Michael*, on the River of Women, built by *Nonnez de Guzman*, in the Latitude of 25; but afterwards deserted, or removed rather to a fitter place; and now fixed in the Valley of *Harroba*, two Leagues from the Sea, in a flourishing, and wealthy Soil both of Corn and Pasturage. The whole Countrey conquered by the *Spaniards*, Anno 1551, under *Nonnez de Guzman*, most barbarously burning down the Towns, and destroying the people; as if they came not to subdue, but root out the Nation.

3. **XALISCO**, or **GALESCO**, as some Writers call it, hath on the North *Concilicac*, on the South, *New Spain* on the East, the Province of *Gudalajara*; on the West the large Bay of *California*. So called from *Xalisco*, the chief Town of it, when subdued by the *Spaniards*.

The Soil hereof very fit for Maize, which it yields good store of, but not often Herbage good for Cattel, which is reckoned for their greatest want. The North parts, called *Chimetta*, of the two most fruitful, and better peopled; having in it store of Wax and Honey, with some Mines of Silver. The people formerly Man-eaters, and much given to quarrel; from which reformed since their Conversion to the Gospel. Tenacious still of one of their ancient Customs, which is, to carry the smallest Burthen upon their Shoulders, and not under their Arms; which to do, they think very much ill-becoming.

Chief Rivers herof, 1. *S. Sebastian*, 2. *Rio de Spiritu Santo*; and 3. the great and famous River of *Barana*, spoken of before. Upon the Banks of which are situate their most principal Towns, viz. 1. *Xalisco*, giving name to the whole Province, and to a large Promontory, called by the *Spaniards* *Sierre de Xalisco*, thrusting it self into the Bay of *California*, over against the Islands called *The Three Maries*: the City taken and destroyed by *Nonnez de Guzman*, Anno 1550. 2. *Compostella*, now the chief City of the Countrey, and a Bishop's See, founded by the said *Nonnez de Guzman*, Anno 1551, when he had fully conquered the Countrey: by whom peopled with *Spaniards*, and by him called *Del Spiritu Santo*. But founded in so ill a place, and so bad an Air, destitute both of Food for Men, and Grass for Horses, as plainly showed him to have better judgment in Soldierly than in Architecture. 3. *Purification*, a small Burrough on the Sea-side, and in the extremity of this Countrey towards *Nova Hispania*, near the Port of *Natividad*. 4. *S. Sebastian* in *Chimetta*, on the River so called, first built by *Francisco de Tharras* above mentioned; who having found hereabouts some rich Mines of Silver, brought hither in the year 1554, a new *Spanish* Colony, and building Houses for his Miners in convenient places, occasioned the whole Tract to be called *Tharras*.

4. **GUADALAJARA** hath on the West, *Xalisco* on the East and South, some parts of *Nova Hispania* on the North, the Province of *Zacatecas*. Well watered with the River *Barana*, which runneth through the midst thereof, some of his by-rites moistening the other parts. The Countrey very wealthy in Mines of Silver, plentiful of Maize, and fortunate in the production of Wheat, and such other Fruits as were brought hither out of *Europe*. The Character of the People we have before, applied in general to all the Natives of *New Gallicia*, but most peculiar unto this.

Chief Towns herof, 1. *Gudalajara*, so called with reference to a Town of that Name in *New Castile*, and giving name unto the Province, situate on the Banks of the River *Barana*, or some branch thereof, in a sweet Air, and a most rich and pleasing Soil; there founded by *Nonnez de Guzman*, Anno 1551, when he had perfected his Conquest: better advised in the choice of the place, then in that of *Compostella* before mentioned. A City of so good esteem, that it passeth for the Metropolis of all *New Gallicia*; honoured with the Courts of Judicature, the Residence of the Kings Treasurers, and a Bishops See, removed hither from *Compostella*, Anno 1570. Beautified on this last occasion with a fair Cathedral, a Convent of *Franciscans*, and another of *Angeline* Friars. 2. *Del Spiritu Santo*, built by the said *Nonnez* in that part of this Countrey which is called *Tapone*; but not else observable. 3. *Santa Maria de la Laguna*, built by the same Founder, 30 leagues on the East of *Gudalajara*; and the best defence of all this Province against the *Chichimecas*, a barbarous and untamed people on the North and East parts of this Countrey, who harbouring themselves in the thickets of the Woods, and some unknown Caves,

do many times prey upon the Country; which they would utterly destroy, if they were not thus repressed.

5. *ZACATECAS* is bounded on the South with *Guadaluara*; on the North, with *New Biscaya* on the West, with *Calcanan* and some part of *Xaltipa* on the East, with *Panuco*, one of the Provinces of *New Spain*.

The Country is still a different nature. In the West parts, called properly *Los Zacatecos*, rich in Mines of Silver (no one Province more) but destitute of Wheat, Maize, Water, and all other Provisions; as if it were designed for some wealthy Miser, who could live upon the sight of Treasure. The Eastern parts, properly called *Uxipita*, not so well furnished with Silver, but most abundantly provided with all sorts of fruits; their Woods replenished with Deer, their Fields with Corn, and every Tree giving Entertainment to some Bird or other: In a word, nothing wanting in it either for Necessity or Pleasure. Of the people I find nothing singular, but that they are affirmed to be more indolent than the most of their Neighbours, whether by force or nature, (the *Spaniards* compelling them to drudge in their Silver-Mines) I determine not.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Los Zacatecos*, neighbored by most wealthy Mines, 40 Leagues on the North of *Guadaluara*; is inhabited by about 500 *Spaniards*, who have here a Convent of *Franciscans*, 2. *S. Martin*, 27 Leagues from *Zacatecos*, the Mines whereof were first opened by *Francisco de Tharra*, before mentioned; who with many Slaves, and all things necessary for a War, was sent upon that Errand by *Lewis de Velasco*, then Viceroy of Mexico, Anno 1554. The Town inhabited by a Colony of 400 *Spaniards*, besides Women and Children, 3. *S. Lopez*, and 4. *De Avila*, not built amongst Mines as wealthy as those before, by the fame *De Tharra*; as also was 5. *Erena*, a small Town, but of the fame Estate for Silver; distant from *Zacatecos* 25 Leagues towards the North-west, 6. *Nombre di Dios*, in the most Northern parts of this Country, 68 Leagues from *Guadaluara*, the foundation of the fame *De Tharra*. Who having conquered the Natives, and quieted them after some rebellions by gentle usage, built this Town in a pleasant and fruitful Soil: and having got the Government of the Country which he had discovered, drew hither so many of the *Spaniards* and chief men of the Natives, by granting them the propriety of some Silver Mines, that it became the chief and best peopled Town of all this Province. 7. *Durango*, in the Valley of *Guadaluara*, about eight Leagues distant from *Nombre di Dios*, peopled by a Colony of *Spaniards*, conducted thither by *Alonso Pacheco*, at the appointment of *De Tharra*, to whom the *Spaniards* are indebted for all this Treasure. 8. *Xerez de Fuentera*, first built for the suppressing of some of the Savages, who used to infest the Borders towards *Guadaluara*, during the Regency of the Marquess of *Villa Murrique*, who then commanded in *New Spain*.

As for *UXITIPA*, it belonged once unto the Province of *Panuco*, subdued by *Lopez de Mendoza*, employed therein in by *Nommez de Guzman*, Anno 1529, at that time Governour of that Province. Disinherited from it since the Conquest of *Zacatecos*, and made a Member of the Prefecture of *New Gallicia*. The chief Town of it is called *S. Lewis*, built in a pleasant Valley by the said *Pacheco*, and by him peopled with a Colony of *Spaniards*: The Town not distant from *Panuco* above twenty Leagues.

6. *NOVA BISCAYA*, or *New Biscaya*, hath on the South *Los Zacatecos*; on the West, *Cinaloa*; on the North, *Nova Mexicana*; the Country towards the East not discovered hitherto. So called by *Francisco de Tharra*, by whom it first subdued, from the near Neighbourhood which it had

unto *Nova Gallicia*, of which it hath been always since reckoned for a part.

The Country is subject in the Winter to great Frosts and Snows; but notwithstanding well provided of all things necessary, and wonderfully enriched with Mines of Silver. They have also some of Lead, which serve very fitly for the melting and purifying of the others used to this purpose not alone in these Mines of *New Biscaya*, but in those also of *New Spain*. The people resolute and stout, not conquered at the first Attempt, nor won so much by Force, as by fair Persuasions.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *S. Barbara*, and 2. *S. John*'s, about three Leagues distant; built only for the benefit of the Mines adjoining. 3. *Ende*, the farthest Town which the *Spaniards* have towards the North, of whom a Colony was there planted; by reason of the adjoining Mines by *Rodrigo del Rio*, who did also fortify it by the direction of *De Tharra*, under whom a Colonel. Distant from *S. Barbara* and *S. John*'s about 20 Leagues, and 120 Leagues from *Los Zacatecos*. More North by 70 Leagues at least, and within this Region, but not within the power of the *Spaniards*; are said to be those four great Towns which the *Spaniards* call *Las Quatro Ciudades*; but I have nothing of them certain.

This Country was first subdued by *Francisco de Tharra*, who after he had built *Durango* in the North parts of *Los Zacatecos*, & assured that Province, advanced with a Troop of 150 Horse for the Discovery and Conquest of his Northern Neighbours. Encountered at the first more with hunger and thirst, than with any opposition of the Inhabitants, inasmuch that they were fain to eat their Horses: and afterwards by the Rebellion of the Natives, who killed the greatest part of such Horses as were left uncastrated. But not discouraged herewith, nor with the many difficulties which he found in his way, being compelled to hew his passage through the Woods by the Swords of his Soldiers, he prevailed at last; and having settled it in peace, returned by the way of *Cinaloa*, which he also conquered, and planted there a Colony in the Town of *S. John*; as was said before.

7. *NOVA MEXICANA* is bounded on the South with *New Biscaya*; on the West, with *Quivira*; the Country on the North and East, not discovered hitherto, though some extend it Eastwards as far as *Florida*. Extended 250 Leagues from the Town and Mines of *S. Barbara*, and how much beyond that, none can tell; the Relations of this Country being too uncertain, and indeed incredible, that I dare say nothing positively of the Soil or People, but much less of the Towns and Cities which are said to be in it. So named by *Antonio de Egeiza*, Citizen of Mexico in *New Spain*, by whom discovered and subdued.

For first, they tell us of the People, that they are of great Stature, and that like enough is not to prove that they have the Art of dressing Chamois and other Leather, as well as the best Leather-dresser in all *Flanidez*; or that they have Shoes and Boots so well worked and soaked, that no Shoe-maker in all *S. Martin* could do it better.

Then for their Towns, that they are very fair and goodly, the Houses well built of Lime and Stone, some of them four Stories, and in most of them Stoves for the Winter season. The Streets even, and ordered in an excellent manner. Particularly, they tell us of a Town called 1. *Chita*, one of the five chief Towns of the Province of *Cameles*, which is said to contain eight Market-places, and all the Houses to be plastered and painted in most curious manner. 2. *Of Acma*, that it is situate on the top of a Rock, a great Town, yet no way unto it but by Ladders; and in one place a pair of Stairs, but exceedingly narrow, hewn out of the Rock; exceedingly well for-

fortified by Nature, (they say true in that, if any things are true which they tell us of) and all their Water kept in Cisterns, (but no body can tell from whence they have it.) 3. *Of Combar*, on a Lake or Lagoon, the City seven leagues long, two broad; (a second *Nimue*) but the Houses (scarcely built amongst Hills and Gardens, which take up a great deal of the Room: Inhabited by a People of such strength and courage, that the *Spaniards* once faced it, and to wear away. Much of this stuff I could afford you, but by this Tale we may conjecture of the rest of the East.

The Country was first discovered by *Augustino Rayaz*, a *Franciscan* Friar, Anno 1580, who out of zeal to plant the Gospel in the North accompanied with two other Friars of that Order, and eight Souldiers, undertook the Adventure. But one of the Monks being killed by the Savages, the Souldiers paid the Peltrons, and gave over the Action. On their return, *Betram*, a Friar of the same Order (from whose mouth we must have the former Fictions) desirous to preserve the Lives of his Fellows which staid behind, encouraged one *Antonio de Egeiza*, a Native of *Cordoba*, but a Citizen of Mexico, to engage in such an holy Cause: who raising a Band of 150 Horse, accompanied with many Slaves and Beasts of Carriage, undertook the business. I omit the many Nations of the *Conchs*, *Pajungater*, *Tobosi*, *Parrashyer*, *Tarrabumacer*,

*Tepanuer*, and many others as hard names, which he passed through in his way. But coming at the last to a great River which he called *Del Noordo*, there made a stand; caused the Country on both sides of it to be called *Nova Mexicana*, and a City to be built which he called *New Mexico*, situate in the 37 degree of Northern Latitude, and distant from *Old Mexico* five hundred Leagues: the name since changed to that of *S. Poy*, but still the Metropolis of that Province, the Residence of the Governour, and a pretty Garrison consisting of 250 *Spaniards*. Some other Towns he found at his coming thither, viz. 2. *Sacarra*, so called by the *Spaniards*, because of that Succour and Relief they found there for their half-starved Soldiers. 3. *Seneca*, 4. *Plalaba*, and 5. *Sevillata*; old Towns, but new Christened by the *Spaniards*, when the Inhabitants thereof did embrace the Gospel; each of them beautified with a Church, 6. *S. John*, built afterwards in the year 1599, by *John de Oñate*, who with an Army of five thousand followed the fame way which *Egeiza* went, and having got a great deal of Treasure, laid it out in this place, that it might be no incumbrance to him in his Advance. This is the most I daresay on for this Country. And this hath no such Wonders in it, but what an antic Fate may give credit to: Though I had rather believe the Friar's whole Relations, than go thither to disprove any part thereof.

## OF NOVA HISPANIA.

**N**OVA HISPANIA is bounded on the East with a fair and large Arm of the Sea, called the Bay of *New Spain*, and the Gulf of Mexico; on the West, with parts of *Nova Gallicia*, and *Mare del Zur*; on the North, with the rest of *New Gallicia*, some part of *Florida*, and the Gulf; on the South with *Mare del Zur*, or the South-sea only. So called with relation to *Spain* in *Europe*, as the chief Province of that Empire in this *New World*; with reference to which, the Kings of *Spain* call themselves *Rexes Hispaniarum*, in the plural number.

It extendeth from the 15 degree of Latitude to the 26 exclusively, measuring it on the East-side by the Bay of Mexico to the North of *Panuco*; but six degrees less, measuring it on the West side to the Port of *Natividad*, where it joyneth with *Gallicia Nova*. Or making our account by Miles, it is in breadth from *Panuco* unto *Mare del Zur*, 200 *Spanish* Leagues, or 600 *Italian* miles; but hardly half as much on the other side. The length hereof, from the East point of *Tucuman* to the borders of *Gallicia Nova*, 1200 *Italian* miles, or 400 Leagues; which is just double to the breadth.

The Air exceedingly temperate, though situate wholly under the *Torrid Zone*; the heats thereof much qualified by those cooling Blasts which fan it from the Sea on three sides of it; and by those frequent Showers which fall continually in *June*, *July*, and *August*, the hottest seasons of the year. Abundantly enriched with inexhaustible Mines of Gold and Silver, some of Brass and Iron; plenty of *Coe-*

Nuts, of which we have spoke before; great store of *Cashu*, such a wonderful increase of *Cochineal*, that 5670 *Arrobas* of it (each *Arroba* containing 25 *Buils* of our English measure) have been shipped for *Europe* in one year. Where by the way, this *Cochineal* groweth on a small Tree or Shrub, having very thick Leaves, which they call *Arroz*; planted and ordered by them as the *French* do their Vines: out of the Seed whereof ariseth a small Worm, at first no bigger than a Flea, and the greatest not much bigger than our common Lady-Cows, which they much resemble; which feeding on the Leaves, and over-spreading all the ground in which they are, are gathered by the Natives twice a year, filled with Althes, or with Water, (but this last the best) dried to a powder in the shade, and so transported unto *Europe*. Here is also great plenty of Wheat, Barley, Pulse of all sorts, and of all such Plants and Roots as we set in gardens for the Kitchen: Pomegranates, Oranges, Limons, Citrons, Malacatoes, Figs and Cherries, even to superfluity; Apples and Pears in less abundance; few Grapes; and those few they have not fit for Wine; plenty of Maize, and other plants unknown in *Europe*; Birds and Beasts wild and tame of all sorts, and of each so farcely. Not thus in all places of it, nor in all alike; but some in one, some in another, according to the constitution of the Soil and Air; which is so different in this Country, that in such parts heretofore as are hot and dry, their Seed-time is in *April* or *May*, their Harvest in *October*; but in such places of it as are low and moist, they sow their Corn in *October*, and reap in *May*; thus having two Harvests in a year, and yet but one.

The People more ingenious than the rest of the *Sava-*

Ess, exquisite at some Mechanick Arts, especially in the making of their Feather-Pictures; and so industrious withal, to patient both of Thirst and Hunger, that they will sit at it an whole day without meat or drink turning every Feather to the light, upwards and downwards, every way, to see in which posture it will best fit the place intended to it. No better Goldsmiths in the World, nor men more expert any where in refining Metals; curious in painting upon Cotton whatsoever was presented to the Eye. But yet so barbarous withal, that they thought the Gods were pleased with the blood of men, which sometimes they sacrificed unto them. So ignorant, that when they first saw the Spaniards on Horse-back, they thought the Horfcs and Man to have been one Creature and would ask what the horfcs said, whet they heard them neigh. So careless of the worth of Gold, that they would part with great quantities of it for Knives, Glafs Beads, little Bells, and such petit Trifles. But whatsoever they once were, is not now material: the Spaniards having made full havock of this wretched People, that in 17 years they destroyed above six millions of them, roasting some, plucking out the Eyes of others, confining them in their Mines, and mercilessly casting them amongst wild Beasts, where they were devoured. As for those who do remain, besides their own natural ignominities, they have since learned the Civilities and Arts of Europe. What else concerns this Soil and People, we shall here more particularly; if we find it necessary, in their proper places.

Amongst the Rarities of this Country, (though there be many Plants in it of a singular nature) I reckon that which they call *Maguey*, or *Malt*, said to be one of the principal: a Tree which they both plant and drefs, as we do our Vines. It hath in it 40 kind of Leaves fit for several uses. For when they are tender, they make of them Conerves, Paper, Flax, Mantles, Mats, Shoes, Girdles, and Cordage: upon them there grow certain Prickles, so strong and sharp, that the People use them instead of Saws. From the top of the Tree cometh a Juice like Syrup; which if you seeth it, will become Honey; if purified, Sugar: they may make also Wine and vinegar of it. The Bark of it roasted maketh a good Plaster for Hurts and Sores; and from the highest of the Boughs comes a kind of Gum; which is a sovereign Antidote against Poysons.

Nor is it less a Rarity, though less useful to the good of Mankind (except it be to keep them in continual mind of the Fires of Hell) that they have a Mountain in this Country called *Pompeumetepe*, (situate in the Province of Mexico) which vomiteth Flames of Fire like *Ætna*; and another in the Province of *Guaxaca*, which sendeth forth two burning fountains, the one of red Pitch, and the other of black; a fit resemblance of those Fountains of Fire and Brimstone. Though they have many other Mountains, yet these are most memorable. And as for Rivers, though very well provided of that watery Commodity; yet here are none remarkable for length or greatness, but *Panuco* only, of which more presently. The want thereof is supplied by some famous Lakes, and the neighbourhood of the Gulf of Mexico. Amongst the Lakes, the principal are those of Mexico, (whereof more anon) and that of *Chapala*, bordering upon *Gallicia Nova*; which for its greatness hath the name of *Mare Chapaleum*, out of which there is made yearly great abundance of Salt. But that which is of greatest beauty is the Gulf of Mexico, the greatest and goodliest of the World: in form completely Circular, in compass no less than 900 miles; environed with the main Land, the *Peninsulas* of *Florida* and *Jucatan*, and the Isle of *Cuba*. Two only passages in and out, and both well fortified: the one betwixt the point of *Jucatan* and the Isle of *Cuba*, where the Tide with a violent

Current entreth; the other betwixt the said Island and the Cape of Florida, where it makes as violent an Exit: the sea fo beady in the middle and yet safe enough, that ships are not to fail in it directly forwards, but must bend either towards the North or South, as their Journey lieth. Upon this Gulf the King of Spain hath always some Ships in readiness, by which he more affureth his Estates in this part of America than by all his Garrisons.

It comprehendeth the Provinces of 1. *Panuco*, 2. *Mechuacan*, 3. *Mexicana*, 4. *Tlafcala*, 5. *Guaxaca*, 6. *Jucatan*. Some others of less note, but reduced to these.

1. *PANUCO*, the most Northern Province of all *New Spain*, by some called *Gusfapan*, is bounded on the East with the Gulf of Mexico; on the West with *Uxiatapa*, a Member of the Province of *Zacatecas* in *New Galicia*; on the North, with *Florida* and some Countreys not yet discovered, from which parted by the River of *Palm*; so on the South-west, with *Mechuacan*; and on the South with *Mexicana*. So called from *Panuco* the chief River of it, which rising out of the Hills of *Tepehuacan*, bordering upon *Cinatlao* and *Comitlan*, and dividing *New Biscay* from the Province of *Zacatecas*, passeth through the middle of this Country, and so at last into the Gulf.

The length hereof is reckoned to be 90 Leagues, and the breadth as much. Divided into three Provinces. That towards *Mexicana*, called *Azotlan*, of a fruitful Soil, and not without some Mines of Gold; once very populous, till in the year 1522 a dispeopled in a manner by *Ferdinando Cortez* in his War against them. The other called *Chila*, less fruitful, but piously for want of people to improve the Land; for being formerly of a flouring courageous nature, and trusting overmuch to their Fens and Painfeels, they put the Spaniards to such trouble when they warred upon them, that the Conquerors so secure themselves from all future dangers, endeavoured to root them out, and destroy them utterly. The third lieth towards the River of *Palm*, inclined to barrenness, and unpleasant; but the name I find not.

Chief Towns hereof, at the coming of the Spaniards hither, 1. *Las Casas*, 2. *Tixienym*, 3. *Nachapan*, 4. *Taquimier*, 5. *Tuzeteco*, desolate and laid waste by the cruel Spaniards. Of most note now, 6. *Tlanepala*, and 7. *Tlanepala*, two small Burroughs in the Province of the River of *Palm*, (for so I call it) inhabited by the Natives only. 8. *S. Kallap*, another small Town, but in the Province of *Chila*, inhabited by a few Christians, with a Convent of *Angolian* Friars: sacked by the Savages in the year 1571. 9. *Tampico*, or *S. Lewis de Tampico*, a Colony of the Spaniards situate on the North Banks of the River *Panuco*, and at the very mouth thereof; where it hath a very large Haven, but so barred with Sands, that no Ship of great burthen can make use of it: the River otherwise so deep, that Vessels of 500 Tun might full 60 Leagues at least in it against the Stream. 10. *S. Steven del Puerto*, on the Southern side of that River, in the Latitude of 23, about 65 Leagues on the North of Mexico, from the Sea eight Leagues; now the Metropolis, and Town of greatest Trade in all this Country. Built by *Ferdinando Cortez* in the place where formerly had stood *Panuco*, once the chief City of the Province, but by him destroyed. Opposite hereto, on the other side of the River lie great flocks of Salt-pits, out of which the people of this Town raise their greatest profit. 11. *S. Jago de los Valles*, or *S. James* in the Valleys, 25 leagues Westward (but inclining to the South west) from *S. Steven del Puerto*; situate in an open Country, and therefore fenced about with a Wall of Earth: To the Inhabitants whereof (all Spaniards, as in that before) the King of Spain hath granted many fair possessions, to defend

thoſe

thoſe parts (then being the borders of his Estates) against the Savages.

This Country first attempted by *Francisco Garza*, but the Conquest of it finished by *Cortez*, as before is said: each striving, as it seemeth, who should most deface it, and be enrolled for the greatest Man-killer of the two. But having carried on the course of their Victories almost as far as to the River of *Palm*, they desisted there; either because already glutted with humane Blood, or that the conquest of those parts would not quit the charge. Inasmuch as in all that Country, from the River of *Palm* to the Cape of *Florida*, though lying all along on the Gulf of Mexico, the Spaniards have not one foot of ground: secure enough, because it lieth all along that Gulf, that no other Nation can possess it.

2. *MECHUACAN* hath on the North-East *Panuco*, on the East, *Mexicana*; on the South, part of *Tlafcala*, on the west, the main Ocean; and on the North, the Province of *Xalisco* in *New Galicia*. So called from the abundance of Fish, which the Lakes and Rivers did afford them; the word in their own Language signifying *Locum Piscium*, or Country of Fish.

The breadth hereof on the Sea-coast is 80 Leagues, in the borders towards *Mexicana* but sixty only. The length I find not yet agreed on. Blest with an Air so found and sweet, that sick Folks come hither out of other Countreys to recover their Health. Well stored with Rivers, some Lakes, innumerable Springs of Running Water, and here and there some hot Baths issuing from the Rocks. The Soil so plentifully productive of all sorts of Grain, (even to admiration) that in some parts hereof four measures of Seed have brought forth 600 measures of the same Grain in the following Harvest. Well wooded, and by reason of its Springs and Rivers, full of excellent Pastures; and yet not yielding unto any part of all America for Medicinal Herbs and Plants, of very sovereign nature for the Good of Mankind. It affordeth also store of Amber, Mulberry-Trees, Silk, Wax, Honey, and such other things as chiefly serve for Pomp and Pleasure.

The people tall of Stature, but strong and active; of a good Wit, and skilled in many excellent Manufactures. They speak four Languages of their own; but that most generally used is by the Spaniards called the *Tlafcalan* Tongue; which though it be an elegant and copious Language, yet most of them speak the *Spanish* also. More pliant to the Manners and Apparel of that Nation, than the rest of *New Spain*, (the Mexicans excepted only) and so inclinable to the Gospel, that they are almost all gained from their old Idolatries. Inasmuch that the whole Country being divided into fifty Parishes, every Parish hath its several Priests and inferior Ministers, who in the Language of the place do instruct the people in which they preach to them, and hear their Confessions: besides many Convents of Dominicans and of *Angolian* Friars.

It containeth in it upwards of 150 Towns of Burroughs, besides scattering Villages: ninety of which have Free Schools in them, and almost every one a Spittle for relief of the Sick. The Principal thereof, 1. *Zincunze*, the Seat of the old Kings of *Mechuacan*; in the first Times of Christianity in this Country made a Bishop's See, till removed to *Pascuar*. The first Bishop *Vladimir de Quiriga*, 2. *Pascuar*, of no great note at present, but that the Bishop's See was removed thither, because nearer to Mexico; in that distant 47 Leagues. 3. *Valledor*, now the chief City of this Province, and the Bishop's See, removed hither from *Pascuar*, and here finally settled in a Fair Cathedral, *Ann* 1544. situate near a large

Lake, (said to be bigger than that of Mexico) which doth not only afford the City great store of Fish, but yieldeth them the opportunity of several fisheries which they take in Boats upon the Water. The Lake and City by the Natives called *Guanayacaro*. 4. *S. Michael*, in the way from Mexico (to which distant about 40 Leagues) to the Silver Mines of *Zacatecas*, built built by *Lewis de Velasco*, then Vice-Roy of Mexico, to defend the People of this Province from the *Chichimecas*, a barbarous, and hitherto an unconquered People, who terribly molest the Nations upon whom they border. 5. *S. Philip*, built at the same time by the said *Velasco*, 6. *Concepcion de Saylas*, 17 Leagues from *Valledor*, 35 from Mexico; of the foundation of *Martin Enriquez*, the Vice-Roy, *Ann* 1570. to be a Stage for Travellers in their Journeys Northwards, 7. *Guacanatlan*, bordering on *Panuco*, and not far from *S. Jago de los Valles*, rich in Mines of Silver. Then on the Sea we have, 8. *Acatlan*, on the borders of *New Galicia*, two miles from the Ocean; a Town of not above 30 Houses, with a little Church; but neighboured by a large and safe Road for Shipping; (by the Spaniards called *Malacca*) which makes it seldom without the company of Sailors, who their Lido, (or *Portus Navium*) a noted and convenient Haven, from whence they commonly set sail to the *Philippine* Islands; pillaged and burnt by Captain *Carandish* in his Circumnavigation of the World. 10. *S. Jago*, (or *S. Jago de Buena Esperanza*) a little on the South of *Natividad*, the Shores whereof are said to be full of Pearls. 11. *Colima*, ten Leagues from the Sea, but more South than the other; built in the year 1522, by *Gonzalo de Sandoval*. 12. *Zacatlan*, by the Spaniards called *Concepcion*; situate on the Banks of a large (but nameless) River, which rising about the City of *Tlafcala*, passeth by this Town, and thence with two open mouths runneth into the Sea.

This Province, at the coming of the Spaniards hither was a distinct Kingdom of it self; not subject nor subordinate to the Kings of Mexico, as were most of the Princes of these parts: the Frontiers of the Kingdom fenced with Stakes of Wood like a Palizado, to hinder any sudden Incurſion of the Mexican Forces. The last King, called *Tanguayan Bimbicha*, submitted of his own accord to *Cortez*, *Ann* 1522. and willingly offered himself to Baptism. But the Spaniards were not pleased with either, because deprived thereby of the Spoil of the Country. But at last, *Nunez de Guzman*, then President of the Courts of Justice in Mexico, picked a Quarrel with him, accused him falsely (as is said) by the very Spaniards) of some practices against his King, burnt him alive with most barbarous and unheard-of Cruelty, and so confiscated his Estate.

3. *MEXICANA* is bounded on the East with the Gulf of *New Spain*; on the West, with *Mechuacan*; on the North with *Panuco*, and some part of *New Galicia*; on the South, with *Tlafcala* and part of the Southern Sea. So called from Mexico, the chief City not of this Province only, but of all America.

It is in breadth from North to South, measuring by the Bay of Mexico, 130 Leagues; thence growing narrower, in the midland parts hardly above fifty; and on the Shores of *Mare del Zur* not above fifteen. The length hereof extendeth from one Sea to the other; that is to say, from the Point of *Lobos* in the Province of *Papantlan*, on the Gulf of Mexico, to the Haven of *Acapulco* on the Southern Ocean; but the determinate number of Miles I do not where find. But measuring it from 17 degrees and an half of Latitude, unto the 22, and allowing something for the slope, we may conclude it to be much of the same length as it is in breadth, that is to say, about one hundred and thirty Leagues.

The



The Country is inferior to Peru in the plenty and purity of Gold and Silver, but far exceeding it both in the Mechanical and Ingenious Arts which are here professed, and in the abundance of Fruits and Cattel: of which last here is fish there, that many a private man hath 40000 Kine and Oxen to himself. Fish is here also in great plenty; that only which is drawn out of the Lake whereon Mexico standeth, being reported worth 20000 Crowns yearly to the Kings Exchequer. The people for the most part witty and industrious, full of Valour and Courage; good Handicraftsmen, if they stoop low as to Trades and Manufactures; rich Merchants, if they give themselves to more gainful Traffick; and hardy Soldiers, if trained up and employed in service. Their Ancient Arms were Slings and Arrows; since the coming of the Spaniards practised on the Harquebuse. In a word, what was said before of New Spain in general, as to the Soil and People of it most applicable to this.

Chief Rivers herof, 1. Los Topes, which parteth this Province from that of Tlaxcala. 2. Chala, and 3. Mita, both running Eastward towards the Gulf. 4. Papagani, in the way from Mexico to Acapulco with a fair Bridge over it. 5. La Balsas, of a violent course, and in biggness equal unto Tago in Spain; passable only by a Bridge made of Rafts and Reeds, not very fitly joined together. 6. The River of S. Francis, both large and swift, but in some parts fordable. Mountains of note I find not any which require a more particular consideration; and so pass them over the more easily.

Towns of most note in it, 1. Mexico, the Seat of an Archbishop, and of the Spanish Vice-Roy; who hath the power to make Laws and Ordinances, to give Directions, and determine Controversies; unless it be in such great Causes which are thought fit to be referred to the Council of Spain. This City was first situate in the Lakes and Islands, like Venice; every-where interlaced with the pleasant Currents of Fresh and Sea-waters; and carrying a face of more Civil Government than any of America, though nothing, if compared with Europe. But the Town being destroyed by Cortez, it was built afterwards on the firm Land on the edge of the Lake, and bordering on a large and spacious Plain. The Plain on which it bordereth is said to be 70 Leagues in compass, environed with high Hills, on the tops whereof the Snow lieth continually. In the middle of which Plain are two great Lakes, the least of them forty miles in circuit, the one salt, and the other fresh: that of the one salt, and the other flowing up into the other. On the Banks of the salt Lake standeth the City of Mexico, which many other goodly Towns and stately Houses; on which Lake also 50000 Wherries are continually playing. The Town in compass is six miles, and containeth 6000 Houses of Spaniards, and 60000 Indians. It is a by-word, That at Mexico there are four fair things; viz. The Women, the Apparel, the Houses, and the Streets. Here is also a Printing-house, an University, and a Mint, the Cathedral Church, ten Convents of Nuns, several Houses of Jesuits, Dominicans, Franciscans, Augustinians, and other Religious Orders; some Colleges, many Spittles and Hospitals, and other publick buildings of great state and beauty. By the Natives it was anciently called *Tenchtlan*, the name of Mexico being given on a new occasion, of which more hereafter. Most noticeably undamaged by the breaking in of the Waters, Anno 1629, which swelled so high, that they not only overwhelmed the meaner Houses, but the Vice-Roy's Palace; drowned many thousands of the People, and destroyed the Household-stuff of the rest. Occasioned by the Avarice of the Kings Ministers, who had inverted the Money to their private use, which should have fortified the Banks. But being a rich and wealthy City

it soon recovered of that Blow, attaining in short time to such infinite Riches, that generally the Merchants, Trades-Men and Artificers, do brave it in a greater State and more splendid Equipage than any people under Heaven of the like condition. 2. Tezcuco, situate on the same Lake, but six leagues from Mexico; heretofore twice as big as Sevilla; and for the beauty of the Streets, and elegance of the Houses, not inferior to any. Served with fresh Water from the Hills, brought in Pipes and Conduits, though seated on the brink of a salt Lake. 3. Guanaxaca, built wholly in the Lake, like Venice, and therefore by the Spaniards called *Venezuela*; a City of 2000 Households: the way unto it over a Causeway made of Plinths, half a League long, and about twenty Spans in breadth. 4. Uxatlapala, half in the Lake, and half without, with many Ponds of fresh Water, and a beautiful Fountain. A City of 10000 Households, six Leagues from Tezcuco, and two from Mexico. 5. Mexicatzingo, a Burrough of 4000, and 6. Cuycan, one of 6000 Families; both upon the Lake: bountied in the Times of their Paganism with many Temples, so gorgeously set out to the Eye, that after off they seemed of Silver; most of them now converted into Monasteries and Religious Houses. 7. Chulula, the finest of all the Lake, scarce excepting Mexico, with which it anciently contended both for state and biggness: said to contain 20000 Families, and to be bountied with so many Temples, that their Towers equalled the number of the days of the year. The people so addicted unto their Idolatries, and so barbarous in their bloody and beastly Sacrifices, that no fewer then 6000 Indians of both Sexes were yearly murdered on their Altars. 8. Mitatlan, seated on a high Hill, begirt about with most pleasant Groves and shady Woods. A Town of about 30000 Inhabitants, the Villages about the Hill being reckoned in: situate 14 Leagues or two days Journey from Mexico, in the way to the Province of Panuco, the Highway on both sides set with fruitful Trees, to the great comfort and refreshment of the way-going man. 9. Guadalupe, twenty Leagues from Mitatlan, a Manor to which 40000 of the Natives do owe Suit and Service. 10. Antequera, on the South of the City of Mexico, at the foot of the Mountain *Popocatepetl*; a Town belonging to the Marquels of *Valia*, and seated in the most delicious place of all New Spain. 11. *Acachula*, on the North-east of Mexico, betwixt it and the Gulf, bordering on the Province of *Papantla*. 12. *Acapulco*, an Haven-Town of the South-sea, situate on a safe and capacious Bay at the entrance of a large broad, and in the body of it full of convenient Stations and Docks for Shipping: so that it is accounted the fairest Haven of all those Seas. At the bottom of it towards the West stands the Town and Castles the Castle opportunely seated on a little Portland, both to command the Town, and secure the Port: well walled, and fortified with four very strong bulwarks, on which are planted good store of Ordnance; the Garrison consisting ordinarily of 400 Souldiers: throughout the rather in regard of the usual intercourse which is betwixt this Port and the Philippine Islands.

The original Inhabitants of this Country (as far at least as their Records are able to reach) were the *Chichimecas*, now the most rude and barbarous Savages of these parts, together with the *Omteques*, somewhat more Civil than the rest, but yet rude enough. By these possessed till about the year 902, as it is conjectured from their Annals, when vanquished and dispossessed by some new Comers, whom they called by one Name *Nauatlans*: sitting, as it is conceived, from those parts of *Gabriel* *Nova*, which are now called *Nova Mexicana*, Anno 920, or thereabouts, but lingering in their March, and walling all the Countreys as they lay before them. Of these there were

were seven Tribes in all, i.e. the *Sachimilts*, the *Chalcs*, the *Tapanecs*, the *Culucs*, the *Tlaxcalas*, the *Tlaxcalucas*; all of them ferled in these parts, and the five first about the Lake, before the coming of the seventh Tribe, which was that of the *Mexicans*, so called from *Mexi*, their chief captain; who much delighted with the situation and conveniences of *Tenchtlan*, then a ruined Town, caused it to be re-built and beautified, by the name of *Mexico*. This Town from that time forwards was reputed the Head City of their Common-wealth; the six Tribes governing in common, or the Chiefs rather of those Tribes in the names of the whole, after an Aristocratical manner. But weary at the last of this equal power, which the prevalency of some Tribes had made very unequal; the *Mexicans*, one of the weakest of the Tribes, oppressed by the rest, resolved to separate themselves, and to commit the ordering of their Affairs to a King of their own, at first elected by themselves, but afterwards, when once they had conquered most of the other Tribes, the choice was entrusted unto fix, one for every Tribe, (the *Tlaxcaltecs*, which was the seventh of their Tribes, and the Founders of *Tlaxcala*, governing themselves long before as a State apart: who in their choice had an especial eye on those which were strong and active, and fit for Military employments; the People holding it a commendable meritorious act to kill their Kings, if once they were reputed Cowards. The Policy and Insinuations of this Mexican Kingdom I forbear to write of, farther than as they lie before me in way of their Story, digested by the Government and succession of their several Kings, whose names and actions do occur in the following Catalogue of

B. Ch.

The Kings of MEXICO.

- 1222 1. *Acamapitzli*, Nephew to the King of *Culiacan*, but of the Mexican blood by the Fathers side, elected for the first King; who joynted *Culiacan* and *Tongancan* unto his Estate, and settled that Kingdom at his death in the way of election.
- 1273 2. *Vitzcoitzli*, Son of *Acamapitzli*, subdued the Tribe of the *Sachimilts*, and others of the neighbouring Nations.
- 1394 3. *Huizacotl*, Son of *Vitzcoitzli*, conquered the Tribes of the *Chalcs* and *Culucs*, with many other Nations of the old Inhabitants.
- 1415 4. *Chimalpahuac*, Son of *Huizacotl*, won the Town of *Tehuacan*, and reduced the rebellious *Chalcs* under his Command.
- 1425 5. *Jichau*, Brother of *Huizacotl*, by the Valour of his Cousin *Tlaxcaltec* freed himself from the yoke of the *Tapanecs*, to whom the *Mexicans* had before that been Tributaries, and added their Dominions unto his Estate, conquering all the Nations round about him. After whose death the Elctors by a joint consent chose *Tlaxcaltec* for their King, as a man of whose Vertue they had formerly made trial. But he very nobly refused it, saying, that it was more convenient for the Commonwealth that another should be King, and that he should execute that which was for the necessity of the State, than to lay the whole burden upon his back; and that without being King, he would not leave to labour for the Publick, as well as if he were. Upon this generous refusal they made choice of *Moctezuma* the first.
- 1458 6. *Moctezuma*, one of the Brothers of *Chimalpahuac*, brought in the Custom of using no other Sacrifices at their Coronations, but of

such Prisoners as the new King should first take in the Wars. By the Valour and good Fortune of *Tlaxcaltec* he subdued so many of the Nations, (whose names I hold unnecessary to here repeat) that he extended his Estate from one Sea to the other.

- 1467 7. *Ayazacati*, the Nephew of *Jichau* by his Son *Tezomacuilapetl*, enlarged his Empire by the Conquest of *Tenchtlan* 200 miles from Mexico, to fit himself with Sacrifices for his Coronation; and brought the Lord of *Tlaxcala*, who rebelled against him, to so hard a freight, that he was forced to break his neck from the top of a Temple.
- 1479 8. *Tenchtlatzi*, the Son of *Ayazacati*, added twelve Cities with their Territories to the Mexican Empire.
- 1484 9. *Aluicazotl*, Brother of *Tenchtlatzi*, extended his Borders to *Guatemala*, repaired or rebuilt a great part of Mexico, and brought thither a Channel of fresh Water.
- 1502 10. *Moctezuma II.* Son of *Ayazacati*, before his Coronation conquered 44 Cities. He ordained that no Plebeian should bear any Office in his Court, and in the 18. year of his Reign was subdued by Cortez.

As for this Cortez, to whom the Spaniards stand indebted for the Kingdom of Mexico, he was born in *Medina*, a Town of *Extremadura*, 1485; and in the nineteenth year of his Age employed himself in the Trade and business of America, for the improvement of his Fortunes, Anno 1511. he went as Clerk unto the Treasurer for the life of Cuba; where he husbanded his Affairs so well, by carrying over Kine, Sheep and Mares, and bringing Gold for them in Exchange, that in short time he was able to put in 2000 *Capitanes* for his stock, as Partner with *Alondro de Dure*, a wealthy Merchant. Growth richer, he was taken to be Partner with *Juan Velazquez*, in the Discovery of *Tehuacan* and the parts near *Tezcuco*, Anno 1518. And now resolved to venture all his stock both of Friends and Money, he furnished himself of eleven Ships, and with 550 Men, set sail from Spain, and arrived at the Island of *Azuclama*, (now called *Santa Cruz*) and failing up the River of *Tehuacan*, sacked the Town of *Panuco*, the Inhabitants refusing to sell him Victual. After this by the help of his Horse and Ordnance, he discomfited 40000 of the naked Savages, gathered together to revenge themselves for the sack of that Town; and received the King thereof in Vassallage to the Crown of Spain. Being told that *Westward* he should meet with fine Mines of Gold, he turned his course for the Haven of *S. John de Ulva*; where landing he was entertained by *Tenchtlatzi*, Governour of the Town and Country for the King of Mexico: who understanding of his coming, and that he was the Servant of so great an Emperour, (of which *Tenchtlatzi* had informed him by especial Messengers) sent him many rich Presents both of Gold and Silver. Inflamed at the sight hereof, he resolved to go unto the place where such Treasures were, took possession of the Country in the name of *Charles* the fifth, King of Spain and Emperour, and building there the Town of *La Vera Cruz*, left in it 150 of his men. Attended by no more than 400 Foot, 15 Horse, and six pieces of Ordnance, he pursued his Enterprize; by practice gained unto him those of *Zempallan* and *Tlaxcala*; whom he undertook to be ill-affected to *Moctezuma*: assisted with whose Forces he passed on for Mexico, sacked the Town of *Chulula* (a Town of 40000 Households) in his march: kindly received into Mexico by the frightened King, whom

he caused to acknowledge himself a Vassal to Spain, and to present him, in the name of a Tribute, with so much Treasure as amounted to 160000 Castellans of Gold. A Quarrel growing not long after, *Moteczuma*, the voluntary King was by one of his own Subjects killed in the public market; and the *Spaniards* driven out of the Town. But aided with the whole Forces of the *Tlascalans*, and a Recruitment of more *Spaniards*, (first thither on a Design against him) he made up an Army of 100000 Savages, 500 Spaniards Foot, 80 Horse, 17 pieces of Ordnance; and having with great diligence made ready a Navy of 13 Gallies, and 6000 Canoes or Boats, laid siege unto the City both by Sea and Land. After a Siege of three months, the City is taken, sacked and burnt August 13. 1521. But afterwards rebuilt more beautifully than it was before. Thus fell this mighty Kingdom into the hands of the *Spaniards* by the valour and good fortune of *Cortez*, a private Adventurer; endowed for that good service by *Charles* the fifth with the Town and Territory of *Tecotepecque*, in the Province of *Guaxaca*, and many other fair Estates in the Province of *Mexico*, and dignified with the Title of Marquess of *Valle*.

As for the Kings of *Mexico*, they are said to have worn a Crown resembling that which is now used by the Dukes of *Venice*. His Coronation was held with great Pomp, but most bloody Sacrifices. His Revenues thought to be almost infinite, raised out of all Commodities, and paid in kind, whether Natural, or Artificial only: the King participating of the fruits of all mens Labour, and sharing with them in their wealth: some paying in Cups full of powder of Gold, of two handfulls apiece; some Diamonds, and Beads of gold; Plates of Gold of three quarters of a yard long, and four fingers broad; *Turquoise* stones, Golden Targets, rich Feather-Pictures, &c. not to say any thing of matters of inferior value. All which in such a wealthy and large Estate, must needs afford him a Revenue equal to the greatest Monarch. And for the encouragement of his Soldiers and Men of War, here were ordained three Orders of Knighthood, (or at least such distinctions of personal merit as had resemblance to such Orders): the first distinguished by a Red Ribband, the second called the *Lion or Tiger Knight*, and the third the *Grey Knight*: all privileged amongst other things to be clothed in Cotton, wear Breches, to adorn themselves with Gold and Silver, and to have Vessels gilt or painted; a high point; and not permitted unto any else. But it is time that I proceed to the rest of the Provinces.

4. *TLASCALA* lieth betwixt *Mexicana* and *Guaxaca*, extended from one Sea to the other. The length hereof from Sea to Sea an hundred leagues; the breadth along the Shores of the Gulf reckoned 80 leagues, on the South Sea not above eighteen. So called from the abundance of Maize which they make their Bread of: the word in that Language signifying *Lesser Panis*, or the Place of Bread, the same with *Babibow* in the Hebrews.

The Country is very plentiful both of Corn and Cattle, full of rich Pastures, and wonderfully stored with Maize; Level and plain, except towards the Sea, where occur a large Chain of craggy Mountains. The richer in the fruits of Nature for those fair and pleasant Rivers wherewith it is watered. The principal of which, *Rio de Grigalea*, so called from *John de Grigalea*, who first discovered it; imployed herein by *James Velasquez*, the adventurer of *Cortez*. 2. *Rio de Zempol*, so called from the Town of *Zempollan*, about which it rifteth. 3. *Zabante*, which makes its way through the Chain of Mountains before mentioned, and falleth with the former into the Gulf. 4. *Rio di Zactacila*, a River of the longest course in all this Province: rising near *Tlascala*, and falling many

leagues off into *Mare del Sur*. The people much of the same nature with those of *Mexico*, though upon jealousies of State their most bitter enemies; of which the *Spaniards* made good use to advance their Conquests on that Kingdom.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Tlascala* it self, which gives name to the Province: in former times governed after the form of a Common-wealth, according to the Democratical Models. Situate on a little Hill betwixt two Rivers, and in the middle of a large, but pleasant Plain, 60 miles in compass. So populous at the coming of the *Spaniards* hitherto, that it contained 300000 Inhabitants, now scarce 50000. It had four Streets, (or rather Quarters) each of them governed by a Captain in time of War: and in the midst a Market-place, so fair and spacious, that 30000 persons might assemble in it to buy and sell, or for any other business. 2. *Puebla de los Angeles*, (the City of Angels) but most commonly *Angos*: built by *Sebastian Ramirez*, Anno 1531. in the way from *Vera Cruz* to the City of *Mexico*, from which last 22 leagues distant. A Bishops See, and thought to contain in it 1500 Families. 3. *Zempollan*, on the River so named, the Inhabitants wherof did great service to *Ferdinando Cortez* in his Conquest of *Mexico*. 4. *Napulica*, of great resort for a Fair of Cattle; and such a kind of Court for ordering the Trade thereof, as we call the *Pie-powder*. 5. *Guaxacoingo*, a pleasant and well-peopled Town, situate at the foot of the burning Mountain before mentioned, by the ashes and embers wherof the Fields are many times annoyed. 6. *Segura*, or *Segura de la Frontera*, in the Region of *Tehuacan*, built by *Cortez* the next year after the Conquest of *Mexico*, with fair Streets and handsome Houses; by whom people with *Spaniards*. 7. *Vera Cruz*, the first Town built in this Country by the said *Cortez*, now a Bishops See: situate near unto the Gulf, and a great Thorough-fare from thence to the City of *Mexico*, from which distant about 60 leagues. 8. *S. John de Ulloa*, the most noted Port of all this Province; fenced with a Peer against the fury both of Winds and Sea; defended naturally by Rocks and Quick-sands lying before it, and by two Bulwarks well fortified and manned on both sides of the entrance. 9. *Medellin*, built by *Cortez*, Anno 1525, and planted with *Spaniards*: so called in memory of a Town of the same name in *Extremadura*, in which he was born: situate on the banks of the River *Almeria*.

The *Tlascalans* were originally one of the seven Tribes which drove the *Chichimecas* out of their possessions; and either finding no room left for them on the banks of the Lake, or else willing to submit alone, withdrew themselves from the rest, founded the City of *Tlascala*, and there erected a Democratical Estate. Stomached for this by the other Tribes, and many times invaded by those of *Mexico*, after they had subdued the rest, they still maintained themselves against all Attempts; and in the end assisted *Cortez* in the destruction of that Kingdom, they so deadly hated. Privileged for that reason by the *Spaniards*, and exempted from all kind of Tribute, (except he a handful of Wheat for every person) and suffered to live under his Protection in the former Government. The Province given us by this name is said to contain 200 good Towns and Burroughs, 1000 Villages and upwards; and in them 150000 of the Natives, besides Spanish Colonies. Distributed into 36 Claffes or Rural Decanies for Ecclesiastical Government, in which are thought to be 30 Convents and Religious Houses.

5. *GUAXACA* is bounded on the West with *Tlascala*; on the East with *Jucatan* and *Chiapa*, one of the Province of *Guatemala* on the North, with the Bay of *Mexico*; and on the South, with *Mare del Sur*. Extended

tended on the South-side to the length of an hundred miles, but on the Bay to 50 only: in breadth from Sea to Sea, where it bor'eth on *Tlascala*, 120 leagues; not above 60 where it cometh on *Chiapa*. So called from *Guaxaca*, once the chief Town of these parts, now named *Antequera*.

The Air hereof is very found and sweet, and the Soil as fruitful: plentiful not only of those Commodities which are common with the other Provinces of this Country: but of such quantities of Silks, and store of Mulberries, that the Natives paid their Tithes as the *Spaniards* do, that very Revenue, would suffice to endow five Bishopsricks, as good as that which they have already. Scarce any River of this Country but hath Sands of Gold: such plenty of *Cochineo*, (a rich Grain used in dying Scarlets, of which before) as all of *Calffa*, Gold, Silver, and other Metals; that if the people did but add some industry to the wealth of the Country, they might be the richest men in all *America*. But being naturally slothful, and impatient of labour, they lose all opportunities of gathering Riches and live but from hand to mouth, as we use to say. Docile enough, and so indulgent unto those who take pains to teach them, that here are reckoned 120 Convents of *Dominican* Friars, besides other Schools: these last conceived the greater number.

It is subdivided into many particular Provinces, (we may call them *Wapentakes* or *Hundreds*): 1. *Miltepa*. 2. *Tlaxtepec*. 3. *Zapoteca*. 4. *Guaxacualco*. 5. *Guaxacatl*. and the 6. *Valle of Guaxaca*, this last most memorable, in that it gave the Title of *Marquess of Valle* to the famous *Cortez*. Towns of most observation, 1. *Tecozapalan*, once the chief Town of *Zapoteca*, and the Seat of their King. 2. *Guaxacatl*, of great note for a Labyrinth not far off, hewn out of the Rock, but by whom none knoweth. 3. *Antequera*, in the Valley of *Guaxaca*, a stately City and beautified with a fair Cathedral: as that is with Marble pillars of great height and thickness. 4. *S. Yldefonso* in the Province of *Zapoteca*. 5. *S. Jago* in the Valley of *Nexcala*, seated upon a lofty Hill. 6. *San Spiritus* Sant, distant about three leagues from the shores of the Gulf, in the Province of *Guaxacualco*, the foundation of *Gaspar de Sandoval*, Anno 1526. 7. *Aguatulco*, or *Guatulco*, a noted and convenient Port on the South Sea, much used by those which trade from *Vera Cruz*, *Mexico*, and from *Mexico* to any Port of the Southern Seas. By consequence rich, and therefore plundered to the purpose both by *Drake* and *Cavendish*, in their Voyages about the World. 8. *Tecotepecque*, a Port of the same Sea also, but of far less note. Burroughs and Villages in all 650, inhabited by 150000 of the Natives liable to Tribute, besides Women and persons under Age; not reckoning the *Spaniards* in the number.

6. *JUCATAN*, environed on three parts by the Sea like a Demi-Iland, is said to the Continent only where it meeteth with *Guaxaca*, the farthest point of it opposite to the Isle of *Cuba*. Discovered first by *Fernandes de Cordova*, imployed therein by *Don Christopher Morante*, Anno 1517, and called *Jucatan*, not as some conceit it, from *Jutan* the son of *Hobos*, who they think came out of the East, where the Scripture placeth him, (*Gen. 10. 30*.) to inhabit here; but from *Jucatan*, which in the Language of the Country signifieth, *What say you?* For when the *Spaniards* at their first coming thither asked the name of the place, the Savages understanding what they meant, replied, *Jucatan*, that is, *What say you?* whereupon the *Spaniards* always after called it by this name.

The compass of it, taking the Province of *Tabasco* into the account, is said to be 500 miles, or 300 Leagues. The Air hot, and the Country destitute of Rivers, not otherwise provided of Water but by Pits and Trenches,

which abundantly supply that want. Sufficiently barren, the Soil not bearing Wheat, or any European Fruits, nor many of the growth of *America* in other places. Nor have they Mines of Gold or Silver, or any other Metal, to enrich the people; who must either live by Trades and Labour, or else beg their bread. Nothing remarkable in the Country, but that here seemed to be some remnants of Christianity at the *Spaniards* first coming thither: the people constantly observing a kind of Baptism, which they call in their own Language a *second birth*, expelling by that word a Regeneration; not suffering any one to marry until so initiated. And possible enough it is, that this may be the Country upon which *Madeo* or *Owen* fell; who though he might by some good fortune be brought back to *Wales*, yet that he should make any such second Voyage hither as is said in their Chronicles, I by no means grant.

Towns of most observation in it, 1. *Merida*, almost in the Navel of it, situate in the 20 degrees of Latitude, the ordinary Seat of the Governour, and the See of a Bishop, 7 distant from the Sea on each side about twelve Leagues; and called thus from a Town of that name in *Spain*, with which it is thought to have some resemblance. 2. *Yalladolid*, 50 Leagues from *Merida*, beautified with a most famous Monastery of *Franciscan* Friars. 3. *Campche*, (or *S. Francisco*, as the *Spaniards* call it) situate on the Shore of the Gulf. A Town, when first known to the *Spaniards*, of 3000 Houles, and beautified with such Monuments of Art and industry, as shewed that there was somewhat in this people which was not barbarous: since that no more observable then for being suddenly surprized by *Parker*, an English Captain, Anno 1596, who carried away with him the Governour, the wealth of the Town, and many Prisoners; & besides a great Ship full of Gold, Silver and other the like precious Commodities, designed for the King of *Spain*'s own use. 4. *Tabasco* situate in the best part of this Country, so different from all the rest, that it is made by some a distinct Province from it. By the *Spaniards* called *Villa de Nuestra Señora de la Victoria*, most commonly *Yucatan* only; and that in memory of the first fortunate Victory which *Cortez* had upon this people, arming themselves against him for the Seizing of *Pontombon*, 5. *Pontombon*, sacked by *Cortez* for daring to supply him with Victual. 6. *Salamanca*, so called with reference to a Town of that name in *Spain*.

Along the Coast of this Country lie many Ilands; viz. 1. *La Yuca*. 2. *Delosombrado*. 3. *Triangulo*. 4. *Permita*. 5. *Las Negritas*. 6. *Las Alacenas*, all within the Gulf. Without it, 7. *Zaratán*. 8. *Panama*. 9. *Lamany*, 10. *De Madres*, or the Isle of Women, 11. *Cazamit*, by some called *Acaumit*. This last the biggest is 15 Leagues long, 5 broad; and the most remarkable, as being the usual way which the *Spaniards* travelled in their Discoveries of this Country from the Isle of *Cuba*. For here first landed *Ferdinando de Cordoba*, Anno 1517, who pailing over to *Jucatan* (but four Leagues distant) brought back nothing but Stripes. Here the next year arrived *John de Grigalea*, in the same pursuit; who pailing by *Jucatan* to the Province of *Guaxaca*, left his name behind him to a River. And finally here landed the most fortunate *Cortez*, who, coasting about the Demi-Iland, landed near *Tabasco*, and there first handled his good fortune with a notable Victory. Yet neither the Iland nor *peninsula* were discovered perfectly till the year 1527, when both subdued by *Francisco de Manico* to the Crown of *Spain*. The Iland is now called *Santa Cruz*.

OF

## GUATIMALA.

**G**UATIMALA is bounded on the North by *Jucatan* and the *Gulf of Honduras*; on the South, with *Mare del Zur*; on the East, (or the South-east rather) with *Castilla Andra*; on the West, with *New Spain*. Extended 300 Leagues in length, upon the Coasts of *Mare del Zur*; but measuring by a straight line, not above 240, the breadth thereof 140 leagues where broadest; in most places narrower. So called from *Guatemala* the chief Province; as that from the prime City of it, honoured with the Seat of the Governor, and the Courts of Justice.

The nature of the Soil and People (if differing in any material thing from those before) we will consider in the View of those several parts into which this Country is divided. The principal whereof, 1. *Chiapa*, 2. *Verapaz*, 3. *Guatemala*, specially so called, 4. *Honduras*, 5. *Nicaragua*, 6. *Yucatan*. The rest of less note easily reduced thence.

1. *CHIAPA* hath on the West *New Spain*; on the East, *Verapaz*; on the North, part of *Jucatan*; and *Mare del Zur* on the South. Extended 40 leagues in length, not much less in breadth; and anciently inhabited by four Nations, all of several Languages.

The Soil not very natural for Corn or fruits, though Pot-herbs brought from *Spain* thrive well as do Beans and Lentils; yet Vines and other richer Fruits seldom come to good. Wood-Vines they have, which yield a very pleasant Pulp; and if well ordered, might be brought to afford more profit. Their Trees most of them greater than in other places, as Pines, Oaks, Cedars, and the Cypress; whose Woods of Walnuts, but the Nut not so big as those of *Europe*. Some of their Trees yield Rofin, some such precious Gums as in other places are not usual; and some there are whose leaves being dried unto a powder, afford a sovereign Plaster for excoriating Sores. And they have need too often to make use of these Plasters, the Country being full of Snakes and other venomous Creatures; (some of the Snakes no less than 20 foot in length) whose poison, being strong and deadly, doth require such helps. Of the people nothing singular that I have met with, but that they are more musical and exact in Painting than the rest of the Natives.

Towns of most note in it, 1. *Ciudad Real*, built by the *Spaniards* in the Country of the *Chiapense*, at the foot of an Hill; situate in a round Plain, encompassed about with Mountains like an Amphitheatre; afterwards made a Bishop's See, and privileged by the Kings of *Spain* to be governed by such City-Magistrates as they call *Alcaldes*. 2. *Chiapa*, in a Vale adjoining; before the building of the other, of most note in this Province, yet till before it in regard of its situation, this Valley being better fraught with Pears, Apples, Wheat and Maize, than all the rest of the Country. 3. *Tecpatlan*, once the chief of the *Zaque*, possessed of 25 Villages in this Province; now beautified with a Monastery of *Dominican* Friars. 4. *Copanacasta*, the principal Town of twenty five that the *Quetzils* held in this Tract; remarkable for nothing but a Convent of the same *Dominicans*. 5. *S. Bar-*

*tholomeus*, another Town in the Territory of the same *Quetzils*; near which is said to be a great Pit, or opening of the Earth, into which if any man cast a stone, though never so little, there presently followeth a loud and fearful noise like a clap of Thunder. 6. *Guevetlan*, built by *Pedro de Alvarado* when he was Governor of these parts; the chief Town of a little Provincially called *Soomfo*, 7. *Cafapualca*, a small Burrough, but memorable for a Well in the Fields adjoining, the Waters whereof are noted to rise and fall as the Ocean doth flow or ebb, and at equal distances of time. Of thirteen Townships which the *Zeletas* were possessed of, I find no one named; though painted all of them, and set forth to the Eye of the Traveller, with *Cochinel*, of which their Territory hath good plenty.

And now I am fallen upon the Rarities of Nature, I cannot but take notice (though somewhat out of my Method) of a River by the *Spaniards* called *Rio Blanco*, which runs Wood to Stones: of a Spring in the *Centred* of *Tafica*, which in the Summer is full of water, in the Winter dry; of another in the same *Centred*, which for one three years, though it rain never so little, is full of water, and the next three years hath none at all; and so successively by turns: and finally, that the chief River of the Province, having received into it many lesser streams, is swallowed up near a Village of the *Chiapense*, called *Oztutan*, never after seen. None of them famed for Golden Sands, as are those of *Guatemala*; though it be thought there be some Veins of Gold and Silver, but hitherto neglected for want of Slaves to work in the Mines.

2. *VERAPAZ* is bounded on the West with *Chiapa*; on the East, with *Guatemala* and *Honduras*; on the North, with *Jucatan*; and on the South, with the Territory of *Soomfo*. In Latin called *Provincia Vera Pacis*, by the *Spaniards*, *Verapaz*; because not conquered by the Sword, but won to the obedience of the King of *Spain* by the preaching of the *Dominican* Friars.

The Country is 30 leagues in length, and as much in breadth, full of high Hills and deep Valleys, but no fruitful Plains; generally overgrown with Woods, very large and thick, which so hinder the free passage of the Winds, that the Air hereof is very stowry: insomuch that for nine months in the year they have always rain, not altogether free from it in the other three. By reason of this moisture much annoyed with *Mosquito*, a kind of Gnats very injurious to their Fruits, with which otherwise (as with Fish and other necessities) they were well provided. No Mines of Gold or Silver discovered hitherto, though the *Spaniards* have many times in vain attempted it. In stead whereof some of their Trees drop a kind of Amber, which they call *Liquid Amber*; some *Melick*, and some others *Guazuma*, that called *China-Wood*, and many others.

The people tractable and conform to the *Spanish* Government, except the *Leandones* and *Pachucos*, some Remainers of the ancient Savages; who, keeping in the Mountains and craggy Rocks of this Country, have hitherto

thero retained both their native Freedom and their old Idolatries. No Towns herein possessed by the *Spaniards*, and but fourteen Villages in all, in which they live mingled with the old Inhabitants. The principal of these *S. Auguftin*, not so much memorable in it self, as for the neighbourhood of a Cave betwixt two Mountains from which the Rain descending turns into Alabaster, naturally fashioned into Pillars and other Pourtraitures. Into which also many Springs do convey their waters, which there being joynted into a body make an handsome River, able almost at the first appearance to bear a Boat. A Port they also have at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, called *Golfo Dulce*; but of so little use and trading, that I find no name for it, unless it should be that *Tezapa* which *Horrea* speaks of, by whom it is placed in *Guatemala*.

3. *GUATIMALA* specially so called, is bounded on the West with *Verapaz*, from which parted by the River *Xicalapa*; on the East, with *Nicaragua*; on the North, with *Honduras*; and on the South, with *Mare del Zur*, or the *Pacific* Ocean. Extended 30 leagues from the North to the South, and on the shores of *Mare del Zur* not above seventeen. But reckoning in *Tezcala*, *Chaluteca*, and *S. Saviour*, three adjoining Regions, by some made Provinces distinct, the dimensions of it must be much greater both for length and breadth.

The Country is Mountainous, but withal very full of Rivers; by consequence commodious both for Filling and Hunting. Fruitful of Wheat, Maize and other Provisions, but those Fruits not lasting. Not so much subject unto Rain as they are in *Verapaz*, but more troubled with Winds. Full of rich Pastures, and those Pastures of great Heads of Cattel: good store of Cotton-wool, some *Kassum*, and other Medicinal liquors; also of the best Sulphur, and many Apothecaries Drugs, which I have no skill of. The People pusillanimous and fearful, greater Proficients in Christianity and Civility than most of the Savages; but that it is thought they would relapse again to their ancient Paganism, and revive again their old barbarous Customs, if not held in by the bridle of Fear and the curb of Power. The men affirmed to be good Archers, and the Women good Spinners.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. *Guacapa*, a River of a course but of 13 leagues, yet of great depth, and navigable half the way, which falleth into the *Mare del Zur*. 2. *Lompas*, watering the Burrough of *S. Saviour*; which hath its rise from a great Lake, and his fall into the same Sea also. Here is also said to be a Lake near the Village of *Titepeque*, of the Waters whereof are made both Sulphur and Alum. And here is said to be a *Volcano*, or burning Mountain, which though it hath vomited no Fire of late, the matter of it being spent, yet the sad Monuments of his Furies do remain among them: another not far off which till calls out smoke.

Towns of most note, 1. *Guatemala*, or *S. Jago de Guatemala*, the chief Town of the Province, situate in a little River betwixt both *Potomac*; by one of which most terribly washed, Anno 1541. But being re-edified, it hath since exceedingly flourished, by reason of the Bishops See, the residence of the Governor, and the Courts of Justice. 2. *S. Acazotlan*, 40 leagues Eastward from *Guatemala*, by the 4 Natives called *Guazuma*; situate on the River *Guacapa*, seven leagues from the Sea, and neighbored by a great Lake of five leagues compass. 3. *Acazotlan*, at the mouth of the same River, the Port Town to *S. Saviour*. 4. *S. Trinidad*, by the Natives called *Semfinate*, the most noted Empory of this Country; the place of Battery betwixt the Inhabitants of *New Spain* and those of *Ferri*. 5. *S. Michael*, two leagues from the Bay of *Fonseca*, which serves unto it for an Haven. 6. *Xerez de la Fontana*, the chief Town of the *Centred* of *Chub-*

*lutean*, (by which name it was formerly known) situate on the Frontiers towards *Nicaragua*, and to the South-east of the Bay of *Fonseca*: that Bay so named in honour of *Rodericus Fonseca* Bishop of *Brage*, and President of the Council for the *Indies*, Anno 1532. by *Giles Gonzales de Avila*, who first discovered it. About and in this Bay are ten little Islands, four of them inhabited, and plentifully furnished with Wood, Water, and Salt.

4. *HONDURAS* hath on the South *Guatemala*, specially so called, on the West, the Bay, or Arm of the Sea, called *Golfo Dulce*, by which parted from *Verapaz*; on the North and East, the Sea called *Mare del Nord*; on the South-east, *Nicaragua*; on the South, *Guatemala* specially so called. In length from East to West by the banks of that Sea 150 leagues, and about 80 leagues in breadth from North to South. The name of *Honduras*, or *Fonduras*, imposed upon it from the depth of the Sea about the principal Head-land of it, called the Cape of *Honduras*.

The whole Country is either Hills or Valleys little Champain in it; fruitful of Maize and Wheat, and of very rich Pastures; made so by the constant overflowings of their Rivers about *Michuelan*, which do not only foil their Grounds, but water their Gardens. The principal of them, 1. *Hongara*, 2. *Chamalucan*, 3. *Ulnas* all neighboured by fertile Fields and pleasant Meadows. Some Mines of Gold and Silver are conceived to be here, but not yet discovered; the people being so slothful and given to idleness, that they rather live on Roots, than take pains in tilling of their Lands; and therefore not easily entreated to toil for others, but where necessity and strong hand do compel them to it.

Towns of most note, 1. *Valledad*, by the Natives called *Comayagua*, 40 leagues distant from the Sea, situate in a pleasant and fruitful Valley, on the banks of the River *Chamalucan*, and honoured with a Bishop's See, fixed here about the year 1558, but built near the place where once *Francisco de Montio*, Governor of this Province, had planted a Colony of *Spaniards*, Anno 1530, by the name of *S. Maria de Comayagua*. 2. *Gracias de Dios*, 30 leagues Westward of *Valledad*, built by *Gabriel de Rojas*, Anno 1530, to be a place of defence for those who worked in the Mines against the Savages. But finding himself unable to make it good, he defaced and left it. Re-edified again by *Gonzalo de Alvarado*, and since well inhabited. 3. *S. Peter*, eleven leagues distant from the Port of *Cavallos*, but seated in a most healthy Air; and therefore made the dwelling-place of the Farmers of the Kings Customs, who have their houses in this Town, and follow their business in the other, as occasion is. 4. *Porto de Cavallos*, so called from some Horses thrown overboard in a violent Tempest: the most noted Haven of these parts, and strong by natural situation; but so ill guarded and defended, that in the year 1591, it was pillaged by Captain *Christopher Newport*, Anno 1596, by Sir *Anthony Sherley*. Deferted on those spoils, and since built inhabited. 5. *S. Thomas de Capitlan*, 18 leagues from *Cavallos*, naturally strong, and fortified according to the Rules of Art; to which, as to a place of more strength and safety, *Alonso Brado de Castilla*, President of the *Solicits* of *Guatemala*, removed both the Inhabitants and Trade of *Cavallos*. 6. *Traxillo*, seated on the rising of a little Hill betwixt two Rivers, (one of them that which is called *Haguera*) distant from *Cavallos* 40 leagues to the East, and 60 leagues to the North of *Valledad*, surprised and pillaged by the *English*, Anno 1576. Not far hence towards the North-east lieth the Cape of *Honduras*, from whence the Shore drawing inwards till it join with *Jucatan*, makes up a large and goodly Bay, called the Gulf of *Honduras*. 7. *S. George*

de Olancha, so named from the Valley *Olancha*, in which it is situated; a Valley noted heretofore for some golden Sands, which *Gaujepe*, a River of it, was then said to yield.

5. *NICARAGUA* is bounded on the North with *Honduras*; on the East, with *Mare del Noordo* and the Province of *Veragua*; on the South, with *Mare del Sur*; on the West, with *Guatemala*. By *Didaco Lopez de Saldiva*, who first subdued it, it was called the *New Kingdom of Leon*; but the old name by which they found it called at their coming thither would not be so lost.

The Country is destitute of Rivers, except that part hereof towards *Veragua* called *Costa Rica*, reckoned a Province of itself. The want hereof is supplied by a great Lake, or a little Sea, called the Lake of *Nicaragua*, 120 Leagues in compass, ebbs and flows like the Sea; upon the banks of which stand many pleasant Villages and single Houses. A Lake well stored with Fish, but as full of Crocodiles; and having made its way by a mighty Cataract, emptieth it self into the Sea about four Leagues off. Not very rich in Corn, (most of which is brought thence from *Pera*) but well stored with Cattel: level and plain, and thadown with frequent Trees, one amongst others of that nature, that a man cannot touch any part of it, but it withereth presently. Affirmed to be as full of Parrots as *England* of Crows; stored with great plenty of Cotton-wool, and abundance Sugar-Canes. In a word to please generally to the Eye, that the *Spaniards* call it by the name of *Mohomer's Paradise*.

The People for the most part speak the *Spanish* Tongue, and willingly conform themselves to the *Spanish* Garb, both of behaviour and apparel: well weaned from their old barbarous Customs, retained only by some Mountaineers, whom they call *Chomates*. All of good Stature, and of colour indifferent white. They had before they received Christianity a fictitious and politic form of Government. Only as *Solon* appointed no Law for a man's killing of his Father, so had this people none for the killing of a King; both of them conceiving that men were not so unnatural as to commit such Crimes. A Thief they judged not to death, but adjudged him to be a Slave to that man whom he had robbed, till by his Service he made satisfaction. A course more merciful and not less just, than the loss of Life.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Leon*, or *Leon de Nicaragua*, situate on the Lake aforesaid, the Residence of the Governour, and the Bishop's See; built in Sandy Soil, and begirt with Woods. 2. *Granada*, on the same Lake, sixteen Leagues from *Leon*; beautified with a fair Church and a strong Cattle, both founded by *Ferdinando de Cordoba*: the City seated in a liberal and wealthy Soil, well furnished with Sugar-Canes for the refining of which here are many Work-houses, which they call *Ingenios*. 3. *Segovia*, distant from the former about 30 Leagues, rich in Veins of Silver. 4. *Juan*, (all called according to the names of some Towns in *Spain*) situate at the end of the Lake aforesaid, from whence by a long and narrow Channel it disembogues into the Sea near the Port of *S. John*. 5. *Realto*, about a League distant from the Port of *Tupiguan*, in the Latitude of 12 degrees and 40 minutes; inhabited for the most part by Shipwrights and Mariners. 6. *Nineta*, giving name to a little River, within the bounds whereof standeth. 7. *Aurimora* also. 8. *Correjo*, 40 Leagues from *Nineta*, equally distant from both Seas, on each of which it hath a convenient Port: this Town is the principal of that part which is called *Costa Rica*.

6. *VERAGUA* hath on the West *Costa Rica*; on the East, bounded with the District of *Panama*; washed on both other sides by the Sea: extended 50 Leagues in

length from West to East; not above 25, where narrowest, from one Sea to the other. The name given to it from the River *Veragua*, of great note in it at the first Discovery.

The Soil hereof is Mountainous and exceeding barren, not fit for Tillage, and less useful in feeding Cattel; sufficiently provided of Maize and Pot-herbs, but else of little necessary for the life of man, unless the people could eat Silver, or drink *Aurum Potabile*. Of both which Metals, but especially of Gold, here are fuel never perishing mines, that the *Spaniards* think them able to supply all Wants, and cure all Diseases. Once being asked what made them so greedy of that Metal, it was answered, *That they were much troubled with Grief of Heart, for which Gold was a most sovereign Medicine*. And as the Country, such the People, hardy, courageous, and warlike, and such as bear the *Spanish* Yoke with great impatience: the stoutest and most untamable people being bred most commonly in mountainous and woody Countries.

Chief Rivers of this little Province, 1. *Veragua*, which gives name unto it. 2. *Belen*, by the old Inhabitants called *Tibera*; at the mouth of which *Columbus* purposed to have settled a *Spanish* Colony, for the better transporting of his Gold. But finding that fast the Channel, on the scaling of some Rain which had fallen before, was become so shallow that no Ship could go in or out, he gave over that purpose. 3. *La Trinidad*, 4. *La Concepcion*; all falling into *Mare del Noordo*. Their chief Towns, 1. *Concepcion*, upon the Mouth of that River, the Seat of the Governour. 2. *La Trinidad*, on the banks of that River, near the Port of *Belen*, and six Leagues Eastwards of *La Concepcion*. 3. *S. Foy*, (*Oppidum S. Fidis*) twelve Leagues from *Concepcion* on the South; where the *Spaniards* melt and cast their Gold into Bars and Ingots. 4. *Carlos*, not far from the Shores of *Mare del Sur*. 5. *Philipina*, on the West of *Carlos*. Each seated on a large and capacious Bay. Before which Bay lie a Frigate of Islands, which the *Spaniards* call *Zebaco*, from the chief amongst them. Thirty in all; the principal, *Zebaco, Cabano, S. Marie, S. Martha*, inhabited in former times, now not much frequented; the people being dragged into the Continent to work in the Mines.

This Country oweth its first discovery unto divers men according to the several Members and Divisions of it. The last in order being the first that was discovered, but the last that was conquered had the honour to be visited by *Columbus* himself. Who driving up and down these Coasts in the year 1502, hit on the entrances of the River which afterwards he caused to be called *Belen*; where, hearing that there was plenty of Gold in the Mines of *Horra* not far off, he intended to find it. But the River failing him, as was said before, thought nothing fit to sustain his men; he bent himself, though unwillingly, to a farther search. He had before touched upon *Honduras* also, but find not that he landed on it: the settling of these Countreys being designated to another hand. Twenty years after this the most fortunate *Cortez*, having fully quieted and composed the affairs of *Mexico*, resolved to make his Master Lord of the rest of *America*; and to that end sent out his Officers and Commanders into several parts. By *Pedro de Alvarado* he subdued *Guatemala*; *Honduras*, by *Christopher de Olid*; *Veragua* and *Nicaragua*, by *Gonzales de Cordoba*. But fearing lest the conquered Provinces might revolt again, he resolved to visit them in person. Attended by a choice Band 150 Horse, and as many Foot, and 3000 *Mexicans*, he began his journey in October 1524, and held on his Progress as far as to *Traxillo*; where finding that *Gonzales de Cordoba* had

play'd

plaid his Game as there was no necessity of going farther, he made a stand, having marched above 400 leagues with his little Army. Returning back another way, in April 1526, he came home to *Mexico*; with whose return we

conclude also our Survey of the Northern *Peruana*, containing all *America Septentrionalis*, or *Mexicana*.

And so much for *MEXICANA*.

## OF PERUANA.

**P**ERUANA, the other of the two great *Peninsula's*, into which the vast Continent of the *NEW WORLD* doth now stand divided, hath the form of a *Pyramis* reversed; more answerable thereto than *Africa*, though that be resembled. Joined to the other by a straight and narrow *Isthmus*, called the *Streights of Darien*, whereof we shall have opportunity to speak more anon; which looks but like a Stone mill-dam in a great Building; or the first step by which we are to climb the top, as in other *Pyramids*.

The name is derived from *Pera*, the chief Province of it: the Circumnavigation said to be 1700 miles. Nothing else to be said in the general, but what will serve more fitly for particular places; except it be the description of some prime Mountains and principal Rivers, which being of too long a course to be reckoned unto any one particular Province, may more properly deserve place here. Of these the chief are, 1. *Orellana*, on the River of *Amazon*; called by the first name from *Francisco de Orellana*, a *Spaniard*, who first discovered it; by the second, from the *Amazon*, a kind of stout and warlike Women, who are said to have inhabited on the Banks thereof. The Fountain of it in *Pera*, the Fall in the North Sea, or *Mare del Noordo*. A River of so long a course, that the said *Orellana* is reported to have failed in it 5000 miles, the several windings and turnings of it being reckoned in: and of so violent a Current, that it is said to keep its natural tale and colour above 30 miles after it falleth into the Sea; the Channel of it of that breadth, where it leaveth the Land, that it is accounted 60 leagues from one point to the other. 2. *Orenoque*, navigable 1000 miles by Ships of burthen, and 2000 miles by Boats and Pinnaces. Having received into it an hundred Rivers, it openeth into the same Sea with 16 mouths, which part the Earth into many Islands, (some equal to the Isle of *Wight*); the most remote of these Channels 300 miles distant from one another. By some it is called *Ralema*, from Sir *Walter Raleigh*, who took great pains in the Discovery and Description of it; or rather in discovering it so far, as to be able to describe it. 3. *Maragony*, of a longer course than any of the other, assumed to measure at the least 6000 miles from his first rising to his fall; and at its fall into the Sea to be no less than 70 leagues from one tide to the other. More properly to be called a Sea, than many of those great Lakes, or largest Bays, which usually enjoy that name. 4. *Rio de la Plata*, a River of a

less course than the other, but equal unto most in the World besides: In length from its first Fountain 2000 miles, in breadth at its fall into the Sea, about 60 leagues; and of so violent a Stream, that the Sea for many leagues together altereth not the taste of it. All these, as they do end their race in the *Atlantic*, they begin it from the main body of the *Andes*, or at least some spur or branch of that body.

But before we venture farther on more particulars, we are to tell you of these *Andes*, that they are the greatest and most noted Mountains of all *America*; beginning at *Tinima*, a Town of *Papayan*, in the new Realm of *Granada*, and thence extended Southwards to the Straights of *Magellan*, for the space of 1000 leagues and upwards. In breadth about 20 leagues, where they are at the narrowest; and of so vast an height withal, that they are said to be higher than the *Alps*, or the head of *Caucasus*, or any of the most noted Mountains in other parts of the World. Not case of ascent, but in certain Paths, by reason of the thick and impassable Woods, with which covered in all parts thereof which lie towards *Pera* (for how it is on the other side, or by what People it is neighboured, is not yet discovered); barren and craggy too withal, but so full of venomous Beasts and poisonous Serpents, that they are said to have destroyed a whole Army of one of the Kings of *Pera*, in his march that way. Inhabited by a People as rude and savage as the place, and as little hospitable. The most noted Mountain of *America*, as before was said, and indeed the greatest of the World. Of some sufficient of themselves, not to be gratified by the addition of impossible Fictions, or improbable Fictions. Amongst which last I reckon that of *Abraham Ortelius*, a right learned man, who will have these Mountains to be that which the *Scripture* calleth by the name of *Sephur*, Gen. 10. 30. and there affirmed to be the utmost Eastern limit of the Sons of *Japhan*: the vanity and inconsequences of which strange conceit we have already noted, when we were in *India*.

Proceed we now unto the particular Descriptions of these great *Peninsula's*, comprehending those large and wealthy Countries which are known to us by the names of, 1. *Castella America*. 2. The new Realm of *Granada*, 3. *Pernu*, 4. *Chilo*. 5. *Paraguay*. 6. *Brasil*. 7. *Gibiana*, and 8. *Paria*, with their several Islands. Such other Isles as fall not properly and naturally under some of these, must be referred unto the general Head of the *American* Islands, in the close of all.

OF

## CASTELLA del ORO.

**C**ASTELLA del ORO, Golden Castile, (Aurora Castile, as the Latins) is bounded on the East and North with *Mare del Nord*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*, and some part of *Veraagua*; on the South, with the new Realm of *Granada*. Called by the name of *Castile*, with reference to *Castile* in Spain, under the favour and good fortune of the Kings whereof it was first discovered: *Aurea* was added to it, partly for distinction sake, and partly in regard of that plenty of Gold which the first Discoverers found in it. It is also called *Terra Firma*, because one of the first parts of *Firm Land* which the *Spaniards* touched at, having before discovered nothing but some Islands only.

The Soil and People being of such several tempers, as not to be included in one common Character, we will consider both apart in the several Provinces of, 1. *Panama*, 2. *Darien*, 3. *Nova Andalusia*, 4. *S. Martha*, and 5. the little Province *De la Huacha*.

1. *PANAMA*, or the District of *Panama*, is bounded on the East with the Gulf of *Uraba*, by which parted from the Land of this large *Peninsula* on the West, with *Veraagua*, one of the Provinces of *Guatemala* in *Mexico*; and on both the other sides with the Sea. So called of *Panama*, the Town of most esteem herein, and the Judicial seat of *Castella Aurea*.

It taketh up the narrowest part of the Straight or *Isthmus*, which joins both *Peninsula's* together; not above 7 or 8 Leagues over in the Narrowest place, betwixt *Panama* and *Porto bello*, if measured by a straight line from one Town to the other; though 18 Leagues according to the course of the Road betwixt them, which by reason of the Hills and Rivers is full of turnings. Of some attempts to dig a Channel through this *Isthmus*, to let one Sea into the other, and of the memorable expedition of *John Oxenham* over it by Land, we have spoken already.

The Air hereof is foggy, but exceeding hot, and consequently very unhealthy, chiefly, from *May* unto *November*: the Soil either Mountainous and barren, or low and miry; naturally unfit for Grain, that it yieldeth nothing but Maize, and that but sparingly; better for Pasture, in regard of its Plenty of Grass, and the goodness of it: so full of Swine that the *Spaniards* first coming hither, that they thought they never should destroy them; now they complain as much of their want, or paucity. As for the Inhabitants, whatsoever they were formerly is not now material: most of the old stock rooted out by the *Spaniards*, and no new ones planted in their rooms; so that the Country in all parts, except towards the Sea, is almost defoliated, or forsaken.

The Country, as before was said, of little breadth, and yet full of Rivers: the principal whereof, 1. *Chagres*, by the *Spaniards* called *Rio de Legatos*, or the River of Crocodiles, (many of which are harboured in it) which falleth into *Mare del Nord* betwixt *Nombre de Dios* and *Porto Belem*. 2. *Sardinilla*, 3. *Sardina*, 4. *Rio de Colubres*, or the River of Snakes, and 5. *Rio de Comagre*; all falling into the same Sea. Then on the other side, 6. *Chepo*, whose Sands in former times yielded plenty of Gold.

7. *Rio de las Falsas*, on the banks whereof groweth great store of Timber for the building of Ships. 8. *De Comagor*, emptying it self into the Bay of *S. Michael*.

Towns of most note, 1. *S. Philip*, seated on a safe and strong Haven, called *Porto bello*, built in this place by the appointment of King *Philip* the second, but by the Counsel of *John Baptista Antonelli*, to be the Staple of the Trade betwixt *Spain* and *Panama*; partly, in regard of the unhealthiness of *Nombre de Dios*, where it was before; but chiefly, because that Town was found to have lien too open to the Invasions of the *English*. Fortified with two strong Castles; (on each side of the Haven ones); but for all that surprized and pillaged by the *English* under Captain *Parker*, in the year 1601. 2. *Nombre de Dios*, conveniently seated in the upper Sea for a Town of Trade; and for that reason made the Staple of such Commodities as were traded betwixt *Peru* and *Spain*, which brought from *Spain*, and landed here, were from hence conveyed over the Land to *Panama*, and there shipped for *Peru* or brought from *Peru*, and landed at *Panama*, were by Land brought unto this place, and here shipped for *Spain*. It took this name by *Didaco Niuega*, a *Spanish* Adventurer, who having been distressed by Tempests was driven in here, and bid his men go on shore on *Nombre de Dios* in the name of God. In reference hereto the *Latins*, borrowing a Greek word, it is called *Thysmania*. Of great Trade once, on the occasion before mentioned; but in the year 1584, the Trade was removed unto *Porto bello*, by the counsel of *Antonelli* before named; and some years after that, the Inhabitants also. To hasten which, the taking of this Town by Sir *Francis Drake* served exceedingly, nely. 3. *Acla*, on the Coast of the same Sea also, but on the South-east of *Nombre de Dios*. 4. *Nata*, or *S. Jago de Nata*, situate on the lower Sea on the Borders of *Veraagua*, about 30 Leagues on the West of *Panama*. 5. *Panama*, the chief City of *Castella Aurea*, the Residence of the Governour and the Courts of Justice, honoured with a Bishops See, a Suffragan to the Arch-bishop of *Lima*, and beautified with three fair Monasteries, and a College of Jesuites. Seated in the 9. degree of Northern Latitude; and so near the Sea that the waves come close unto the Wall. A Town through which the Wealth of *Spain* and *Peru* passed every year; yet not containing above 350 Houses: the number of the Soldiers greater than that of the Citizens. 6. *S. Cruz la Real*, a League from *Panama*, inhabited totally by *Negroes*, brought out of *Guinea*.

This Province was the first of those on the *Firm Land* which were discovered by *Columbus*. But I find not that he left any name unto it, or to any River or Promontory of it, but only to a little Land lying on the Shore near *Porto bello*, which he caused to be called *Los Batimientos*; because being caught here by chance, he found good store of Maize and other Provisions, called *Batimientos* by the *Spaniard*. But the chief Islands of this Province are those, which *Columbus* never saw, called the Islands of *Pearly*, situate in the Southern Sea, opposite to *Panama*, from which distant 17 Leagues, or thereabouts. In number above twenty, but two only inhabited, the one called

led *Tarorocapi*, the other *Del Rio*; the rest of them rather Rocks than Islands. Much famed not only for the abundance, but the excellency of the Pearls there found; fairer than those of *Margarita* and *Cubagua*, so much commended. Once very profitable to the *Spaniards*, till by their cruelty and covetousness they unpeopled the Islands and destroyed the Pearls. Inhabited now only by a few *Negroes*, and some Slaves of *Nicaragua*, who live here to attend the grazing of their Masters Cattle in the Fields and Pastures.

2. *DARIEN* hath on the North the District of *Panama*; on the South, *New Granada*; on the East, the River of *Darien*, whence it hath its name; and the Gulf of *Uraba*; and on the West, the main Southern Ocean.

The Country is of a temperate Air, and a fruitful Soil: so happy in the production of Melons, and such other Fruits, that within twenty days after they are sown they are fully ripe. With like felicity it bringeth forth Grapes and other Fruits; either natural hereto, or brought hither from *Europe*. A Tree here is called *Hono*, not elsewhere known; the shade of which is conceived to be so wholesome, that the *Spaniards* seek them out to sleep under them. Out of the Blossoms of it they distil a perfumed Water; of the Bark a Bath or Lavatory good for the opening of the Pores, and redress of Weariness; and from the Barks they draw a Liqueur, which they use to drink of. Of Beasts and Fowl great Plenty, whether wild or tame; and some of them not heard of in other places.

Principal Rivers hereof, 1. *Darien*, whence it hath the name. A clear Water, and much drank of, but of a flow course and a narrow Channel; able to bear no bigger Vessels than those of one piece of Wood, used among the Savages, we may call them Troughs. But with this slow course it falleth at last into the Gulf of *Uraba*, a large Arm of the Sea, which pierceth far into the Land, and at the mouth is said to be eight Leagues over. 2. *Rio de las Redas*, and 3. *De la Trepadera*, both emptying themselves into the Gulf of *Uraba*. 4. *Corbata*, on the same side of the Country also. 5. *Bero*, a River of the South-Sea, not much observable, but that some have laboured to derive the Etymology of *Peru* from thence.

Towns of most note, though few of any, 1. *Darien*, on the Bank of the Gulf of *Uraba*; so oftentimes fo unhealthy by the Mists which they do thence arise, that the Inhabitants use to find their sick people to the fresh Air of *Coroboy* to revive their spirits. By the *Spaniards* it was called *S. Maria Antigua*, afterwards the *Antique* of *Darien*, being new built by one *Eusebio* a *Spanish* Adventurer, Anno 1510, and grew so suddenly into Wealth and Reputation, that within four years it was made an Episcopal See. But being built too near the banks of the *Darien*, in a moorish and unhealthy place, both the Episcopal See and the chief Inhabitants were removed to *Panama*. Some other Colonies of the *Spaniards* have been planted here; but either forsaken by themselves, or destroyed by the Savages; so that now from *Acla* to the bottom of the Gulf of *Uraba*, the *Spaniards* have not in their own hands either Town or Village. Nothing but some few scattered houses in all that Tract, for the use of the Natives, who formerly made their Neils like Birds, on the tops of Trees. 2. *Buenos Los Angeles*, two small Villages on the other side of the Country, possessed by the Savages. Besides these, and some forry Sheds here and there dispersed, all the rest is a Desert. So that not being able to maintain the Reputation of a distinct Province, the Government hereof hath of late been devolved on the Prefect of *Panama*.

3. *NOVA ANDALUZIA* hath on the West the River *Darien*, and the Gulf of *Uraba*; on the East, the Province of *S. Martha*; on the North, the main O-

cean; and on the South, the *New Realm of Granada*. So called with reference to *Andalusia*, a Province of *Spain*. Called also by some Writers *Carthagena*, from *Carthago* now the chief City of it.

It is in length, from the Gulf of *Uraba* to the River of *Magdalen*, 10 Leagues, and near upon as much in breadth. Mountainous, and very full of Woods, but in those Woods great store of Rofin, Gums, and some kinds of Balfams. Here is also said to be a Tree, which whosever toucheth, is in danger of poisoning. The Soil, by reason of the abundance of Rain which falls upon it, very moist and frowy; inasmuch that few of our *European* Fruits have prospered in it. Few Veins of Gold in all the Country, except only in that part hereof which is called *Zena*; where the *Spaniards* at their first coming found great store of Treasures. But it was taken out of the Graves and Monuments of the Dead, not found in Mines, nor digged for, as in other places; such being the Reputation of that Territory in former times, that the Nations far and near did carry the Bodies of their Dead to be buried in it, with great quantity of Gold, Jewels, and other Riches. The Natives very fierce and stout, whilst they were a people; But giving the *Spaniards* many overthrowes before fully conquered, they have been so confounded and wasted by little and little, that there are not many of them left.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. *Rio de las Redas*, and 2. *Rio de los Andes*, both falling into the Bay of *Uraba*. 3. *Zetu*, which passing through the Province above-mentioned, to which it gives name, falleth into the Ocean over against the Island *Fuente*. 4. *S. Martha*, of long course and much estimation. For rising in the most Southern parts of the *New Realm of Granada*, near the *Equinoctial*, it passeth through the whole length of that Kingdom, and at the last minglcth its stream with that of the River *Magdalen*, not far from *Mopos*. By the Natives it is called *Cana*. And as for Mountains, those of most note are a continual ridge of Hills, by the *Spaniards* called *Cora Alibis*, by the Natives *Alibis*; craggy and difficult of access; in breadth affirmed to be 20 Leagues, but the length uncertain, the farthest ends of them towards the South not discovered hitherto.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Carthagena*, situate in a sandy *Peninsula*, ten degrees distant from the *Equator*: well built, and for the benefits of it of great Wealth and State; consisting of 300 Houses, or thereabout, but thofe neat and handsome. Beautified with a Cathedral Church, three Monasteries, and one of the best Havens of all *America*. Well fortified on both sides, since the taking of it by Sir *Francis Drake*, who in the year 1585 took it by Assault, and carried thence, besides incalculable sums of money, 240 Brass pieces of Ordnance. 2. *Tolu*, by the *Spaniards* called *S. Jago*, twelve Miles from *Carthagena*, memorable for the most fervent Balfam of all these parts, called the Balfam of *Tolu*; little inferior, if at all to the Balfam of *Egypt*. 3. *Mopos*, or *Santa Cruz de Mopos*, near the Confluences of the Rivers of *Martha* and *Magdalena*. 4. *Baranca de Melambo*, on the Banks of the River *Magdalen*, six Leagues from the Ocean, where such Commodities as are brought by Sea for the *New Realm of Granada* use to be unshipped, and carried by Lighter or small Boats up to the River. 5. *Schicti de Buena vista*, built by *Alfonso de Oieda*, Anno 1508, in the first Attempt upon this Country; situate on a rising ground, near the mouth of the Bay of *Uraba*, a League and a half from the Sea. 6. *Villa de Maria*, 30 Leagues South of *Carthagena*, but of no great note.

4. *S. MARTIN* hath on the West *Nova Andalusia*; on the East, *Rio de la Huacha*; on the North, the main Ocean; on the South, the *New Realm of Granada*: about 70 Leagues in length, and as much in breadth.



breadth. So called from *S. Mariba* the chief City of it. The Country is mountainous and barren, not fit for Pasturage or Tillage; and such other Fruits as are brought thither out of *Spain*. The Air on the Seacoasts very hot and falding, and in the mid-land parts as cold, because of the neighbourhood of some Mountains always covered with Snow. The principal of those Mountains, a long ridge of Hills, by the *Spaniards* called *Las Sierras Nuevas*, or the Snowy Mountains; discernable by the Mariners 30 Leagues at Sea, by whom called the Mountains of *Tunima*, from a Valley of that name beneath them, the Inhabitants whereof, by the advantage of those Hills, have hitherto preserved their liberty against the *Spaniards*. The rest, though subject to the *Spaniards*, have their several Kings, assumed to be an arrogant and ill-natur'd people; made woful perhaps than indeed they are, by reason of their hate to the *Spaniards*; whose Government they live under with great unwillingness.

Chief Rivers of this Province are, 1. *Rio Grande de la Magdalena*, which hath its Fountain in the Hills of the *New Realm of Granada*, not far from the *Egnator*, but its fall into the Ocean betwixt *Carthagena* and *S. Martha*, in the Latitude of 12 degrees; where dividing it self, it maketh an Island of 5 Leagues long, and after openeth into the Sea with two wide mouths; discernable for ten Leagues space from the rest of the Main by the falseth and colour of the Water. 2. *Rio de Cazaca*, which falleth into the *Magdalena*, as doth also 3. *Cesar*, by the Natives called *Pompiama*; which having its Fountain near the City of *King* in the Vale of *Upur*, passeth directly towards the South, till it meet with 4. *Ayuma*, another River of this Tract; accompanied with whom he runneth Westward for the space of 70 Leagues, and endeth in the great River of *Magdalena*, as before is said, near the Fovell of *Alperne*. 5. *Babia*, 6. *Piru*. 7. *Don Diego*. 8. *Palamini*, 9. *Goyca*, falling into the Ocean.

Towns of most observation, 1. *S. Mariba*, situate on the Shores of the Ocean, in the Latitude of ten degrees and 30 minutes; neighboured by a safe and convenient Haven, defended from the Winds by an high Mountain near unto it, and honoured with an Episcopial Sea. Small, and ill-built when it was at the best; nor well recovered of the Spoil it suffered by Sir *Francis Drake*, Anno 1595, and by Sir *Anthony Shirley*, the next year after. 2. *Tenariffe*, on the Banks of the *Magdelen*, 40 Leagues from *S. Mariba*. 3. *Tanalemeque*, by the *Spaniards* called *Villas de las Palmas*, 20 Leagues to the South of *Tenariffe*. 4. *Ciudad de los Reyes*, or the City of Kings, situate in the Vale of *Upur*, on the Banks of a deep and violent River, called *Guatavari*, which not far off falleth into the *Cesar*; ill neighboured by the Inhabitants of the Vale of *Tunima*, not hitherto reduced under the command of the Kings of *Spain*. 5. *Ranada*, by the *Spaniards* called *New Salamanca*, in the same Valley of *Upur*; as liberally furnished with Veins of Brass, as it is with Stones. 6. *O-*

canna, on the Western Reach of the River *Cesar*, equally distant from its Confluence with *Ayuma*, and its fall into *Magdelen*.

5. *RIO DE LA HACHA* is the name of a little Province lying on the North-East of *S. Mariba*, environed on two sides with the main Ocean, and on the third (which is that of the East) with a large and spacious arm of the Sea called *Golfo de Venezuela*, the extremities hereof of North-west, called *Cabo la Vela*; on the North-east, *Cabo di Copuqueca*.

It took this name from the Town and River of *La Hacha*, a small Town, consisting of no more than an hundred Houses, but big enough to give name to a small Province; built on a little Hill about a Mile from the Sea: the Haven inconsistent, and exposed to the Northern Winds, but the Soil about very rich, fruitful of all such Plants as are brought from *Spain*, well stored with Veins of Gold, excellent Salt-wiches, and some Gems of great worth and virtue. Distant eight Leagues from *New Salamanca*, and 18 Leagues from the *Cape la Vela*; surprized and sacked by Sir *Francis Drake*, Anno 1595. 2. *Rancheria*, six Leagues on the East of *De la Hacha*, inhabited for the most part by such as get their living by Pearl-fishing. 3. *Topia*, five Leagues from *La Hacha*, and almost as much from the Sea: the fields whereof lying betwixt the Town and *New Salamanca* were terribly wasted by the *Englisb* in the year aforesaid, because the Governour of *New Salamanca*, with whom they had contracted for 4000 Ducats not to burn that Town, would not stand to his Bargain.

These Countries, discovered by *Columbus*, and by him called *Terra Firma*, as before was said, were afterwards brought under the power of *Spain*, by two several men, employed in the subduing of their several parts, Anno 1508. To *Didaco Niquefa* was allotted the Government and Conquest of those parts hereof which lie on the West of the Bay of the *Uraba*, containing the Prefectures of *Darien* and *Panamá*, by the name of *Castilla del Oro*; and to *Alfonso Orela*, all that lay on the East of that Gulf, by the name of *Nova Andalusia*. But these two finished not the work, though they first began it: *Ensis* discovering farther on the River of *Darien* than *Niquefa* had done before him; and *Balboa* finding out the way to the South-Sea, where *Panamá* and the best of their Trading litch, which neither of the other had thought upon. Both afterwards joyned into one Province, the Prefectures of *S. Mariba*, and *Rio de la Hacha* (when conquered and subdued by the *Spaniards*) being added to it. One of their last Kings which held out against the *Spaniards* was called *Abitica*, who had his Palace on the top of a Tree, (as most of his Subjects had their Houses;) from which when *Fernando de Viqueza*, a *Spanish* Captain could by no other Rhetoric win him to defend, he laid his Axe to the Root, and began to fell it: which seen, the poor Prince was fain to come down, and compound both for his Life and Palace at the will of his Enemies.

# OF NOVA GRANADA.



*NOVA GRANADA*, or the New Realm of *Granada*, is bounded on the North with *Castella Aurea*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; on the East, with *Venezuela*. The Countries lying on the South, are not yet discovered, but shut up with vast Hills, and impassable Mountains, except only in those parts which lie near the Sea, where the way lieth open to *Peru*. Thus called by *Gonsalvo Ximenez*, the first Discoverer; who, being a Native of *Granado* in *Spain*, gave this name unto it.

It is in length 130 Leagues, and as much in Breadth; reckoning *Popayana* for a part of it, though by some made a distinct Government. So that we may divide the whole into these two parts, 1. *Granada* specially so called, lying on the West; and 2. *Popayana*, lying towards *Mare del Zur*.

1. *GRANADA*, specially so called, hath an Air for the most part well tempered betwixt heat and cold; with little difference (if any) betwixt Summer and Winter, and not much in the length and shortness of dayes. The Country is full of Woods, but of great fertility, well stored with Corn and Pasturage, many Herds of Cattel, some Veins of Gold and other Metals, and in that part hereof which is called *Tunima*, great plenty of Emeralds: and amongst their Woods, that called *Guaicam*, medicinal for the French Disease, grows in great abundance. The People are tall and strong of Body, not very industrious, the greatest part of their time being spent in Songs and Dances. The women of a white and more clear Complexion than any of their Neighbours, and more handsomely habited, apparelled in black or parti-coloured Mantles girt about their middles; their Hair tied up, and covered most an end with Chaplets intermixt with Flowers, and artificially comfposed.

Rivers of note I had not any, but those of *S. Mariba* and *S. Magdelen*, described before: nor any distinction of it into several Provinces, but by the names of *Tunima*, *Bagota*, *Panche*, *Colyne*, and *Musi*, by which the Savages were distinguished when first known to the *Spaniards*; with reference to which the Principal of their Towns are by some described.

Towns then of greatest note, 1. *S. Foy de Bagota*, but commonly *S. Foy*, the Metropolis of this new Realm, the See of an Archbishop, and the Seat of the Governour. Built by *Gonsalvo Ximenez de Quisada*, at the foot of the Mountains, not far from the Lake of *Guatavita*, on the banks of which they used to sacrifice to their Idols. The Town inhabited by 600 Families of *Spaniards*, besides those of the Natives; and situate in the fourth degree of Northern Latitude. 2. *S. Michael*, 12 Leagues on the North of *S. Foy*, a well traded Market. 3. *Tocayama*, in the Territory of the *Panche*, a barbarous and man-eating people, till reclaimed by the *Spaniards*; and Masters of the richest part of all the Country. The Town is about 15 Leagues from *S. Foy*, toward the North-east; and seated on the banks of *Pati*,

a little River, which not far off is swallowed up in the body of *Magdelen*. 4. *Tudela* in the Country of the *Musi* and *Colyne*, two warlike Nations; situate on the banks of the River *Zarbi*, and made a Colony of the *Spaniards* at their first coming thither; but deserted by them not long after, for fear of the Savages, though the want of Provisions was pretended. 5. *Trinidad*, on the same River, but somewhat lower, and more remote from the Savages, by them notwithstanding much annoyed: the Fields thereof full of Veins of Crystal, Emeralds, Adamants, and Chalkedonies. 6. *La Palma*, built by the *Spaniards* in the same Territory of the *Musi* and *Colyne*, Anno 1572. 7. *Tunima*, so called according to the name of the Tribe or Province in which it is situate; built on the top of an high Hill, that it might serve for a Retreat and Fortrefs against the Savages; now a well-traded Empory, and very wealthy, the Inhabitants being able to employ 280 Horses for present service. 8. *Pampelona*, 60 Leagues from *S. Foy*, toward the North-east, rich in Mines of Gold and Herds of Cattel. 9. *Merida*, on the North of *Pompiama*, the farthest Town of all this Province on the North-east towards *Venezuela*: as 10. *S. John de las Plenas*, or *S. John* upon the Plains, is in the South-east, 50 Leagues from *S. Foy*, and seated in a corner full of Veins of Gold.

2. *POPAYANA* lieth on the West of *New Granada* strictly and specially so called, from which parted by the River *Mariba*, which hath its original in this Country: on the North bounded with *Nova Andalusia*, or *Carthagena*; and with *Mare del Zur* upon the West. Extended in length from North to South 130 Leagues at the least; and from the River to the Sea betwixt 30 and 40.

The Country over-cloy'd with Rain, breeds but little Maize, less Wheat, and almost no Cattle; though in some places richer than it is in others. The People anciently Man-eaters, and as rude as any; now more industrious and affable than the other *Americans*, especially about *Popayana*, where the Soil is also better tempered than in other places. The Rivers of most note, beside that of *S. Mariba*, which we have spoken of already, and some lesser streams which fall into it, are 1. *Rio de S. Juan*, 2. *Rio de Cedras*. 3. *Rio de S. Jago*; all falling into *Mare del Zur*.

Cities and Towns of greatest note, 1. *Popayana*, called by the name of the King hereof, when first known to the *Spaniards*; situate on a nameless, but pleasant River, in the midst of a Plain, of great Wealth and healthy Air, in two degrees and 30 Minutes of Northern Latitude; the ordinary residence of the Governour, and the See of a Bishop. The Building fair unto the Eye, but slight; excepting the Cathedral, and a Monastery of the Friars called *De Mercedes*, which are strong and lasting. 2. *Acachua*, (or *Santa fides de Antiochia*) on the borders of *Nova Andalusia*, 100 Leagues distant from *Popayana*. Seated upon a little River which falls into the *Mariba*, from which twelve Leagues distant. 3. *Caramanta*, on the *Mariba* it self. 4. *Patia*, in a pleasant Valley, on the banks of a small River, but of excellent water. 5. *S. Ana*,

in the *Centred of Anzerman*, by which name it is sometimes called: built on a little Hill betwixt two sweet Rivers, and compassed round about with a Grove of most pleasant Fruits. 6. *S. Jago de Arma*, the chief Town of the *Centred of Arma*; situate in a Territory very rich in Gold, but otherwise unprovided of all manner of necessaries; fifty Leagues to the North-east of *Papayan*. 7. *Carthage*, in the Province of *Quimbaza*, 22 Leagues from *S. Jago de Arma*; situate in a Plain betwixt two Torrents, seven Leagues from the River of *S. Mariba*. 8. *Calli*, a League from that River, but on the Banks of another, in the Latitude of four degrees: neighbored by a vast and mighty Mountain; at whose feet it standeth; there built by *Sebastian de Botalcazar*, the first Discoverer of this Country. 9. *Bonaventura*, on a Bay so called in the Southern Ocean; a small Town, but of great use for the ready conveyance of the Commodities of *New Spain* unto *Papayan*, and to other Towns of this Province. 10. *Imana*, 80 Leagues from *Papayan* towards the East, at the foot of that vast ridge of Mountains called the *Andes*; which herabouts taking their beginning, extend as far Southwards as to the Straights of *Magellan*. 11. *S. Juan de Pajto*, situate in a pleasant Valley, but one degree from the *Equator*. 12. *Sebastian de la Plata*, so called from its Silver Mines in the South-east confines of the Province. 13. *Almagra*, on the tides of a Plain, but barren Mountain. 14. *Madrigal*, by the Natives called *Chapan Chico*; in a barren Soil, were not Gold a Supplement of all wants, which is there found in some abundance.

To this Province belong also some Islands in the Southern Ocean: that is to say, 1. The Isle of *Palmer*, South of the Cape of *Corientes*, so called from the abundance of Palms which are growing in it. 2. *Gorgona*, opposite to the mouth or Outlet of *Rio de S. Juan*, an Island of three Leagues in compass; the Hills so high, the Valleys so extremely low, the Sun so little seen amongst them, and the Woods so dark, that some have likened it to Hell. Not much observable, but that it did afford a lurking-place unto *Francis Pizarro* in his attempts upon *Pern*, when repulsed from landing on that Coast. 3. *Del Gallo*, a small Island, not a League in Circuit, on the South of *Gorgona*.

This whole Country thus divided into two Prefectures, but both subordinate to the Juridical Reform in the City of *S. Jago de Bagota*, is indebted for its first Discovery to two several persons. *Granada* specially so called

was first discovered by *Consejo Jimenez de Quesada*, employed therein by *Ferdinando de Lugo*, Admiral of the *Canary Islands*, Anno 1536, who pausing up the River of *Magdalen* without molestation (more than the difficulties of the ways through Fens and Forests) as far as the *Centred of Bagota*; was there encountered by that King, whom he easily vanquished, and waiting all his Territories, carried with them these great quantities of Gold, Emeralds, and other Treasure. The residue of those Petit Princes, which then governed in their several Tribes; either submitted to him without opposition, or else were vanquished at the first rising. Having discovered and subdued every several Province, and miserably murdered *Sangipa* the last King of *Bagota*, of whom he had made use in subduing the *Panches*, he caused it to be called the *New Realm of Granada*, for the reason formerly laid down: and summing up the Spoils he had gotten in this café War, he found them to amount to 18000 Emeralds, 191294 *Pezos* of the finest Gold, 35000 of a coarser and inferior Alloy. In his return, he heard the news of *Sebastian de Botalcazar's* marching on the other side of the River of *S. Mariba*; who having at the same time discovered and subdued the Province of *Papayan*, was beating out his way towards the North-Sea, and from thence to *Spain*. This *Botalcazar*, being by *Francisco Pizarro*, the Conqueror of *Pern*, made Governour of the Town and Province of *Quito*, and having secured all the Country to the very Sea, resolved to open a way homewards through those Regions, which lay betwixt his own Province and *Mare del Noordo*. And this he did resolve the rather, in regard that he had been informed, that a rich Country, full of Gold, was in that Tract possessed by *Papayan* and *Columbax*, two petit Princes, but yet the greater in those parts. Encountered in his March by the Roylets of *Patia* and *Pajto*, he soon made them weary, and retire themselves into the Woods and impassible Mountains; and passing slowly on, came at last to *Papayan*. Where, though the Savages entertained him with some frequent Skirmishes, yet they grew quieter by degrees; giving the *Spaniards* leave to possess themselves of their best Towns, and to build others in such place as they thought convenient. But this was after the first Conquest, according to the coming over of succeeding Colonies. The first Conquest being finished Anno 1536, when the *New Realm of Granada* was subdued by *Ximenez*.

O F

## PERU.



ERU is bounded on the East with that vast ridge of Mountains which they call the *Andes*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; on the North, with *Papayan*, an Appendix of the *New Realm of Granada*, on the South, with *Chile*. So called from the River *Pern*, which being one of the first of Note which the *Spaniards* met with in this Country, occasioned them to give that name to the whole.

It is in length from North to South 700 Leagues, but the breadth not equal. In some places 100 Leagues

broad, in others 60, in the rest but 40; more or less, according to the windings of the Seas and Mountains. Divided commonly into three parts, all of so different a nature from one another, as if they were far distant both in Site and Soil. These parts are, the Plains, the Hill-Countries, and the *Andes*; the Plains extend on the Sea-shore, in all places level without Hills; the *Andes*, a continual ridge of Mountains without any Valleys; the *Sierra*, or Hill-Countries, composed of both. Each part stretcheth out from North to South, the whole length of the Country: the Plains from the Sea-shore to the Hill Countries, for the most part ten Leagues broad, in some places more; the Hill-Countries 20 Leagues in breadth,

where narrowest, and as much the *Andes*. In the Plains it never raineth, on the *Andes* continually in a manner; in the Hill Countries it raineth from *September* to *April*, being after that fair weather. In the Hill-Country the Summer beginneth in *April*, and endeth in *September*; in the Plains their Summer beginneth in *October*, and endeth in *April*. So that a man may travel from Summer to Winter in one day; be frozen in the morning at his setting forth, and scorch'd with heat before he come to his journey's end. Some other differences there are: as that the *Andes* are covered with Woods and Forests, whereas the Hill-Countries are bare and naked; the Plains, where there are store of Rivers, and the benefit of the Sea besides, sandy and dry, and in most places destitute both of Fruits and Corn: in some parts of the Hill-Countries, where there are no Rivers, and Rain but seldom, plenty of Roots, Maize, Fruits, and all other necessaries. In the Plains there never bloweth any but the Southern Wind, though it bring no Rain with it; and in the Hills Winds from every Coast, and of every nature; some bringing Rain, some Snow, some claps of Thunder, and others fair Weather at the heels of them. Inasmuch that it is observed, that such of the Inhabitants of the Plains as go up to the *Sierra*, or Mountains, do find such pains in the Head and Stomach, as Freshwater Soldiers when they first Sea-sick.

Not to pursue these differences any farther in the several parts, we will look upon the whole in gross; which we shall find but meagrely furnished for the biggish with those Commodities which so large a Country might afford: inasmuch as many of the people live most on Roots, here being little Wheat, and not such quantities of Maize (the ordinary Bread-grain of the *Americans*) as to serve their multitudes. Nor find I, that the Cattle of *Europe* have been either brought hither in any great numbers, or are grown to any great increase. Instead of which they have in their Woods and Pastures infinite numbers of Beasts, somewhat like wild Goats (which they call *Vicaguas*) and great flocks of kind of Sheep, by them called *Pacos*, profitable both for Fleece and Burthen; as big as a small breed of Horses, but in taste as pleasing as our Mutton, and no less nourishing. A creature so well acquainted with its own abilities, that when he findeth himself over-loaded, no blows or violence shall make him move a foot forward, till his load be lessened; and of so cheap a Diet, that he is content with very little, and sometimes passeth three whole days without any water. The Camels of these parts are not much unlike them.

This, as it is by some accounted for a Creature proper to this Country only, (though in that mistake) so may it pass among the Rarities herof: many of which it hath both in Beasts and Plants, and in inanimate Bodies also. Among their Plants they have a Fig-tree, the North-part whereof, looking towards the Mountains bringeth forth its fruits in the Summer only, the Southern part looking to the Sea, fruitful only in Winter. Some as deserv'dly do account the *Caca* for a Wonder, the Leaves whereof being dried, and formed into Lozenges, (or little Pellets) are exceeding useful in a Journey. For melting in the mouth, they satisfy both hunger and thirst, and preserve a man in strength, and his spirits in vigour; and generally are efficacious of such foreign use, that it is thought that 100000 Basketsfull of the leaves of this Tree are sold yearly at the Mines of *Potosi* only, each of which at the Markets of *Cusco* would yield 12 pence or 18 pence a piece. Another Plant they tell us of, but I find no name for it, which if put into the hands of a sick person, will instantly discover whether he be like to live or die. For it on the pressing of it in his hand he look merry and cheerful, it is an assured sign of his Recovery: as

on the other side, of Death, if sad and troubled. Amongst their Beasts, besides those spoken of before, they reckon that which they call the *Huana*: of which it is observed, that the Males find Sentinels on the Mountains, while the Females are feeding in the Valleys; and it they see any men coming towards them, they let out their throats, to give their Females notice of some danger near; whom, when they come up to them, they put in the Front of the Retreat, incorporating their own bodies betwixt them and their Enemy. Nor want they Rarities of Nature even in things inanimate: here being laid to be a round Lake near the Mines of *Potosi*, whose water is so hot, though the Country it self be exceeding cold, that they who bathe themselves are not able to endure the heats thereof, if they go but a little from the Banks; there being in the midst thereof a boiling of above twenty foot square. A Lake which never doth decrease, though they have drawn a great stream from it to serve their Metal-Mills.

More profitable, though less rare, are those Metals, which those Mills are made for; and not less profitable, one of those Vulgar Plants, I mean Tobacco, growing more abundantly here than in other Countries of *America*: for which cause, and the resemblance which it hath to Hemp, in form and quality, it is called the *Huano* of *Peru* by *Granada*, and some other of our Modern Herbalists. A Plant; which (though in some respect, being moderately taken, it may be serviceable for Physick, yet) besides the consumption of the pipe, and impairing of our inward parts, the immoderate, vain and phantastical abuse of this stinking Weed, corrupteth the natural sweetness of the breath, fuppresseth the Brain; and indeed is so prejudicial to the general esteem of our Country-men, that one faith of them, *Angustum corpus, qui hunc plantam tanquam indigenam, in Barbarorum naturam degenerasse videntur*. The two chief Virtues ascribed unto it (pardon me I beseech you this short Digression) are, That it voideth Rheum, and is found to be a sovereign Antidote against *Lues Venerea*, that loathsome Disease of the *French Pox*. For this last, like enough it is, that so unclean a Disease may be helped with such an unfavoury Medicine. But for the first, it may perhaps commit me in Opinion than truth or reality; the Rheum, which it is said to void, being no more than what it breedeth at the present. We may as well conclude, that breeded Ale is good for the breaking of Wind, (which effect we had commonly to follow on the drinking of it) though indeed it be only the same Wind which it self conveyed into the Stomach. But Tobacco is by few now taken as Medicinal; it is of late times grown a good fellow, and fallen from a Physician to a Complement. An Humour which had never spread so far amongst us, if the same means of prevention had been used by the Christian Magistrates, as was by *Mora Bassa* among the *Turks*; who commanded a Pipe to be thrust through the nose of a *Turk*, whom he found taking Tobacco, and him to be carried in division all about *Constantinople*. It is observed, that the taking of Tobacco was first brought into *England* by the Mariners of *Sir Francis Drake*, Anno 1585. And that it hapned not tardily in the way of an Antidote to that immoderate use of Drinking, which our *Low-Country* Soldiers had brought out of the *Netherlands* much about that time. Anno 1582. Before which time, the *English* of all Northern people were deemed to be most free from that Swinish vice, wherein it is to be noted, that they have much out-gone their Teachers, the *Dutch*. Certain it is, that it is taken so excessively by both these Nations, that I may justly say with a learned *Flaming*, *Horbe ejus, non dicam ejus, sed ab ejus, non modo in Europa, sed in Belgio, & aliis, insensum in modum jam adhevit*.

But the greatest Riches of this Country is most out of sight

light, hid in the Bowels of the Earth, but found in those never-decaying Mines of Gold and Silver, more eminently abundant in this one Province than in all *América*. For instance whereof we may take the Silver-Mines of *Potosí*, discovered in the year 1545, the fifth of which, payable into the King's Exchequer, amounted in forty years to 111 Millions of *Pezeos*, every *Pezo* being valued at six shillings and sixpence: and yet a third part of the whole was discharged of that payment. By this one we may guess somewhat of the rest, as by the proportion of one member the Dimensions of the whole Body may be probably aimed at: unless the riches of these Mines be beyond conjecture; of which it is affirmed by some knowing men, that they yield in many places more Gold than Earth. Upon which ground it is conceived by *Arias Montano*, and some other very learned men, That this *Peru* is that Land of *Ophir* to which *Salomon's* Navy went for Gold; induced thereunto by that Text of the *Chronicles*, *lib. 2. cap. 2. vers. 16. That the Gold was the Gold of Parvaim*. A fancy not of so fond a Foundation as many others of that kind, if *Peru* had been the old name of this Country, and not newly given it by the *Spaniards*. By means whereof, not only *Spain* but all *Europe* also is better furnished with Gold and Silver than ever formerly. For in the first Ages of the World our Antecitors, the *Britains*, (I must digress here once again) had no other money than Iron-rings and Brass-Rings, which they used for Instruments of Exchange; and in the *Roman* Provinces, we read that the most useful materials of their Coin was molten Brass, and sometimes Leather. *Civium fœmâ publicâ periculis*, as it is in *Seneca*. Of which last fort we find, that *Frederick* the Emperor made use at the Siege of *Millain*, and the *English* in the time of the Barons Wars. And why not? considering that no longer since than in the year 1574, the *Hollanders* being then reduced to some Extremities made money of Pail-board. But this happened only in cases of Necessity, the two Metals of Gold and Silver having for many hundred years (though not in such abundance as in later times) being the chief Instruments of Exchange and Barter betwixt man and man, and questionless will to continue to the end of the World. I know Sir *Thomas More* in the second Book of his *Utopia*, preferreth Iron before Gold, because Gold is more necessary for all uses: *Et sine quo non magis quam sine igne aqua vivere Mortales queant*: that he giveth us there a Plot to bring Gold and Silver into contempt, telling us how the *Utopians* use to employ those Metals in making Chamber-pots and Vessels of more unclean necessities, eating and drinking for the most part in Glass or Earth. He telleth us also how they make Chains and Fetters of Gold to hold in their rebellious Slaves and Malefactors; how they punish infamous Persons by putting Gold-Rings upon their Fingers, Jewels of Gold in their Ears, and Chains of Gold about their Necks: how they adorn their little Children with precious Jewels, which Gaieties, when they come to Age, and see them worn by none but such little Children, they use to cast away of their own accord: as with us our elder Boys leave off, without constraint, their Babies, Cobsuts, and other *Ornamenta*. He farther telleth us, how the Ambassadors of the *Anconitis*, (a confederate State of the *Vic-plians*) coming amongst them richly and gloriously attired, were took for Slaves, by reason of their Golden Chains, and the meanness of their Followers thought to be the Ambassadors: how the elder Boys derided the Strangers for wearing Jewels, as if they had been Children still: and how the people laugh at their Chains of Gold, as being too weak to shackle such sturdy Fellows. Now though it pleased that wise State to have any Gold or Sil-

ver at all amongst them, it was not (as he telleth us) out of any esteem which themselves had of it: but there-with to provide themselves of Foreign Aids, and pay their Armies, when the necessities of their Affairs or other reason of State did require the same. How this Device would fort with the humours of those People whom *Lacian* anciently did fable, and some of later times more really do fancy, to have their dwelling in the Moon, I am not able to say, as having hitherto had no Commerce nor correspondence with the Inhabitants thereof: though possibly I may endeavour it in the end of this Book, and find it to fort well enough with their Condition. Certain I am, this sublimary World of ours will never brook it. And to leave it and look back again on the Mines of *Potosí*, the extraordinary plenty of Gold and Silver, which those and the rest of the *New World* have furnished the Old World withal, being conceived by many knowing and judicious men to be the cause of the dearth of all Commodities at the present times, compared unto the cheapness of the times foregoing. For where much is, there greater prices will be given than in other places. And yet there want not some that add also other causes of the high prices of our dayes, viz. Monopolies, Combinations of Merchants and Craftsmen, Transportation of Grain, pleasure of great Personages, the excess of private men, and the like: but these last I rather take to be Con-causes, the first being indeed the principal. For (as that excellent Sir *Henry Savile* hath it in the end of his Notes on *Tacitus*) the excessive abundance of *et vixit auro vixit*, things which consist merely on the Constitution of men, draweth necessarily *et vixit auro*, those things which Nature requireth, to an higher Rate in the Market. *Capit ab Augusto Alexandria*, (saith *Orsius*) *Roma in tantum opibus ejus crevit, ut dupla majora quam antea rerum venalium pretia fuissenturum*. As for that Question, Whether of the two Kingdoms be happier, that which supplieth it self with Money by Traffick and the works of Art, or that which is supplied by Mines growing as the gift of Nature: I find it by this Tale in part resolved. Two Merchants, departing from *Spain* to get Gold touched upon part of *Barbary*, where the one buying *Mores* to dig and delve with, the other broughteth his Vessel with Shovels and being come to the *Indies*, the one finding Mines, set his Slaves to work; and the other happening in grassy Ground, put his Sheep to grazing. The Slaves grown cold and hungry, call for Food and Cloathing; which the Sheep-matter by the increase of his flock had in great abundance: to fort what the one got in Gold with toil, charges, and hazard both of life and health, he gladly gave unto the other in Exchange or Barter, for the continual supply of Victuals, Clothes, and other Necessaries for himself and his Servants. In the end the Mines being exhausted, and all the money thence arising exchanged with the Shepherd for such Necessaries as his Wants required; home comes the Shepherd in great Triumph, with abundance of Wealth, his Companion bringing nothing with him but the Tale of his Travels. But I dare not take upon me to determine this point. Only I add, that the *English* and *Hollanders*, by the benefit of their Manufactures and continual Traffick, did in conclusion weary the late King of *Spain*, King *Philip* the Second, and outwied him (as it were) in Wealth and Treasure notwithstanding his many Mines of Gold and Silver in *Barbary*, *India*, *Mexicana*, *Guinea*, some in *Spain* and *Italy* and these of *Peru* which now we handle, and which have given occasion unto this Discourse, or Digression rather.

It is now time to take a view of the People also, affirmed to be (for the most part) of great simplicity: yet some of them (those especially which lie near the *Agua-*

tor) to be great dissemblers, and never to discover their conceptions freely. Ignorant of Letters, but of good courage in Wars, well skilled in managing such Weapons as they had been used to, and fearless of Death: the rather prompted to this last by an old opinion held amongst them, that in the other world they shall eat, and drink, and make love to Women. And therefore commonly at the Funeral of any great person, who was attended on in his life, they use to kill and bury with him one or more of his Servants, to wait upon him after death. In the manner of their living much like the *Jews*, but not in Habit: conforming therein to the other Savages, but that those cover their upper parts with some decent Garment, and leave the other members bare. But this is only near the *Agua-tor*; both Sexes elsewhere wearing Mantles to their very Heels. Habited in one fashion over all the Country, except the dressing of their Heads, wherein scarce any one doth agree with another, but hath his Fashion to himself. The Women less elevated here than in other places, treated as Slaves, and sometimes cruelly beaten upon slight occasions: the men (as *S. Paul* faith of the ancient Gentiles) leaving the natural use of the Woman, and burning in their lust towards one another. For which, if God delivered them into the hands of the *Spaniards*, they received that recompence which was meet.

Rivers of most note, 1. *S. Jago*, on the borders towards *Papayana*, a River of a violent course, and to great depth, that it is 80 Fathoms deep at the influx of it. 2. *Tombez*, opening into a fair and capacious Bay, over against the life of *Pana*, on the further side of the *Agua-tor*; an Island of twelve Leagues in compass, and exceeding fruitful. 3. *Guayaquil*, of a longer course than any of the other two, and falling into the Mouth of the Sea, on the South of *Tombez*, over against the life of *Lobos*. No Island after this of note upon all this Coast. If any come in our way which runneth towards the East, we shall meet with them in view of the several Provinces; and so we shall with the Hills or Mountains which are most considerable; the *Andes* having been already touched on. Take we now notice of the great Lake of *Titicaica*, in which twelve Rivers are reported to lose themselves; in compass 80 Leagues, and usually navigable with Ships and Barks. The Waters off it so late as those of the Sea, but to think that no body can drink them; yet on the banks of it many Habitations, as good as any in *Peru*. By a tank Water-course or River it passeth into a less Lake, which they call *Anlaya*; and thence most probably findeth a way into the Sea, or else is swallowed in the bowels of that thisty Earth: but the first more likely.

It is divided commonly into three Judicial Reforts, viz. of 1. *Quito*, 2. *Lima*; and 3. *Charcas* each having under it many several and subordinate Provinces, too many and of too small note to be here considered. We will therefore look upon the chief, and of greatest reckoning: 1. *Quito*, 2. *Los Quijos*, 3. *Lima*, 4. *Cusco*, 5. *Charcas*; and 6. *Colla*, three on the Sea, and the other three in the mid-lands; to which the Islands of it shall be joyed in the close of all.

1. *QUITO*, is bounded on the North with *Papayana*; on the West with *Mare del Zur*; on the South, with the Province of *Lima*; and on the East, with that of *Los Quijos*. So named from *Quito*, the chief Town and Province of the first Division.

The Soil is as fertile, and as fit for the Fruit of *Europe* as any other in *Peru*: well stored with Cattel, especially the *Paco's* or *Peruvia* Sheep; and plentifully furnished both with Fish and Fowl. In many parts great store of Nitre, of which they make most approved good Gunpowder; and in some Rivers, especially that of *S. Barbata*, many veins of Gold. The People generally in-

dustrious, especially in making of Cloth of Cotton, equal almost to Silks for fineness: of constitution strong, and healthy, but given to lying, drinking, and such other Vices; with which they are so much in love, that though they are conceived to be apt of Learning, yet not without great difficulty brought to the Christian Faith, nor treacly reclaimed from their ancient Barbarism. Exceedingly punished with the Pox, an hereditary Disease amongst them; the very Girls and untouched Virgins so infected with it, that neither Tobacco, *Guacacum*, nor *Sassa-parilla*, all which this Country doth afford in a great abundance, is able to prescribe them from it.

Towns of most observation in it, 1. *Carangues*, a large and sumptuous Palace of the ancient Kings; so named, because situate in the Territory of the *Carangues*, a barbarous, bloody, and man-eating People, subdued by *Guaynacapa*, one of the mightiest of the Kings of *Peru*, from whom revolting, and withal killing many of his Militaries and Garrison Soldiers, they were upon a second Conquest brought to the banks of a great Lake; where 20000 of them being killed, were thrown. The Lake from thenceforth called *Tayacacocha*, or the lake of blood. 2. *Olavain*, another Pallace of the Kings, but far inferior to the other; yet giving name unto the *Canuto* in which it standeth. 3. *Quito*, the chief of this Refort and once the Regal Seat of its proper Kings, (still made subject by *Guaynacapa* before mentioned) the Ruines of whose Palace are now remaining. By the *Spaniards* it is called *S. Francisco*: built on the declivity of an Hill, not above 30 minutes from the *Equinodical's* well fortified, and as well furnished with Ammunition: inhabited by about 5000 *Spaniards*, besides the Natives. The Streets thereof straight and broad; the Buildings decent: the principal of the Cathedral Church, the Courts of Justice, and two Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciscan* Friars. The Town and Territory much annoyed by a flaming Mountain, or *Volcano*, which in the year 1566, cast out such abundance of Cinders, that it a Rain had not hapned beyond expectation, had made great spoil upon the place. 4. *Tuacaca*, fifteen Leagues from *Quito*, and 5. *Riohumbra*, in the Territory of the *Peruvians*, 10 Leagues from that: each of them honoured with another of those ancient Palaces, 6. *Thombambra*, neighbored by another of the King's Palaces, but more magnificent than the former, situate in the Country of the *Canuris*, amongst whom anciently the Women till the Land, and did all without doors, whilst the men staid at home and spun, and attended Housewifery. 7. *Cuzco*, 64 Leagues from *Quito* on another Road, situate in a Country full of Gold, Silver, Brass, Iron, and Vains of Sulphur. 8. *Loxa*, sixteen Leagues Southward of *Cuzco*, situate in the fifth degree of Southern Latitude, and in a sweet and pleasant Valley called *Guacabamba*, between two fine Rivulets. The Citizens well furnished with Horse and Armour, but not otherwise wealthy. 9. *Zamora*, twenty Leagues on the East of *Loxa*; and 10. *Jaca*, 35 from that: both situate in the Province of *Quindimayo*, and both so called in reverence to two Cities of those names in *Spain*. Then on the Sea-coasts there are, 11. *Porto Vitor*, (*Porto Vain*, as the *Spaniards* call it) not far from the Sea-side, but in foul an Air, that it is not very much frequented. Said to be one of the first Towns of this Country possessed by the *Spaniards*, who digged up herabulous bones of a monstrous Giant, whose Clack-teeth were four fingers broad. 12. *Mann*, the Port-Town to *Porto Vain*, from whence the Trade is driven betwixt *Panama* and *Peru*; the Town it self situate in a rich Vine of Enceables. 13. *Guayaquil*, or *S. Jago de Guayaquil*, called also *Calata*, seated at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, near the influx of the River *Guayaquil*, a noted and much frequen-



Track were much waded by the Civil wars which the *Spaniards* had among themselves. 3. *Huancalla*, the Metropolis or chief Town of this Province, as the name doth signify: not far from which the famous River *Cachayay*, famous for the abundance of Gold in the sands thereof, hath its first original. 4. *Chiquiza*, a Colony of the *Spaniards*, on the banks of the Lake of *Titicaqa*: a Town of fo great Trade and Riches, that the Governor hereof is named immediately by the King; its place being estimated at the worth of 50000 Ducats yearly. 5. *Tiaguanaco*, at the mouth or out-let of that Lake; supposed to be the most ancient Burrough of *Peru*: now most remarkable for the Ruines of certain great and stupendous Buildings, some of the stones whereof are said to be 30 foot long, fifteen foot in breadth, and fix in thickness; not to be brought thither without the help of Iron Engines: (which this people had not till of late) but by some strange Arts. 6. *De la Paz*, or *Nuestra Señora de la Paz*, by the *Spaniards* called also *Pueblo Nuevo*, and by the Natives *Chiquiza*, according to the name of the *Cantrid* in which it standeth, is situate at the foot of a little Mountain, by which defended from the injuries of Wind and Weather, but over-looking a large Plain of great fertility: well watered, and well wooded both for Fruits and Fuel. 7. *Chilane*, 8. *Acos*, 9. *Pomata*, 10. *Capita*: and some others of as little note.

6. *LOS CHARCAS* on the North is bounded with *Lima* and *Collao*: on the South, with *Chile*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; on the East, with some Countreys not well discovered, interposed betwixt it and the Province of *Kio de la Plata*. This is also called by the name of *Plaza*, according to the name of the chief City of it.

The Country extendeth in length from north to south but 300 Leagues, but measuring by the sea-shores, above 400. Not very rich in Corn or Cattel, though in many places furnished with good Pasture-grounds: but for the inexhaustible Mines of Gold and Silver, not to be equalled in *Peru*. Of these the principal are those of *Potosi* and *Potosi*, but these last the chief: out of which comes that Mass of Silver which yieldeth the King so much profit yearly, as before was mentioned. The Mine 200 Fathoms deep, so that they do defend, by Ladders made of raw Hides, 800 steps: some of the Workmen see not the Sun for many months together; many fall down with their loads of silver on their backs, pulling others after them, and many die in the Works for want of Air. For the refining of this Silver there are 52 Engines, or Silver Mills, upon a River near unto it: 22 more in the valley of *Tarapaca* not far off, besides many which they turn with Horses. The Poets words never more literally verified than in these deep Mines, where speaking of the Iron Age, he describes it thus:

*Nec tantum fœces alimentaque debita dices  
Pescabatur humus, sed ium q̄ in viscera terre;  
Quasque reconsideras Stygiæq̄ advocat Umbra,  
Effuditur opes, irritamenta malorum.*

Which I find thus rendered by *George Sandys*:  
Nor with rich Earth's just nourishments content,  
For Treasures they her secret Entrails rent.

That powerful evil, which all power invades,  
By her well hid and wrapt in Stygian Shades.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Plata*, so called from the rich Mines of Silver found in Mount *Poro* near adjoining, well celebrated by the ancient *Incas*, but searched into again by *Francisco Pizarro*, who (it is thought) might have raised hence 200000 Ducats of yearly Income, if hopes of greater at *Potosi* had not took him off. The Town is commodiously seated in a fruitful soil

in the 19. degree of Latitude, and 180 Leagues distant from the City of *Cusco*, honoured with the seat of the Governour and the Courts of Justice, and beautified (besides many Religious Houses) with a fair Cathedral, the See of the best endowed Bishoprick in all *Peru*; its Revenues being estimated at 8000 Ducats of yearly Rents. By the Natives it is called *Chiquiza*. 2. *Oropesa*, twenty Leagues from *Plata*, built by *Don Francisco Toledo*, when Viceroy here, in the rich and pleasant Valley called *Achabamba*, Anno 1565. 3. *Potosi*, neighboured by those wealthy Mines already mentioned. Discovered first in the year 1545, before which time this Town was but a sorry Village; now the best peopled and frequented in all the Province: said to be continually inhabited by four or five thousand *Spaniards*, many more of the Natives: not so few as 30000 Workmen appearing to it; but lodged in the Villages adjoining: besides the infinite resort of Merchants in pursuit of profit, and idle Gallants, who come hither for their lusts and pleasures. Situate in the 21. Degree and 40 Minutes of Southern Latitude, in a cold and very barren Soil; yet plentifully furnished with all Commodities both for Necessity and Delight. For as the money is, so is the Market always full. It is a little Town, but one which furnisheth *Potosi* with good plenty of Wine, as 5. *Lagunilla*, and 6. *Tarica*, do with Wheat, Maize, Sugar, and choice of Fruits. 7. *Arica*, the most noted Haven of this Country, in the Latitude of 19 degrees, and 80 Leagues, or thereabouts, from the Mines of *Potosi*; a little wealth thereof, brought thither on the backs of their Sheep is here shipped for *Lima*. The truth hereof was experienced by Sir F. Drake, who seized here on three *Spanish* Ships, in one of which was 57 Bars of Silver, each of them twenty pound weight apiece. Few other Towns, if any, upon all this Coast, which is altogether Rocky, barren, and unfit for Habitation; accordingly but little peopled, or not at all.

Come we now to the *Peruvian* Story, which we shall sum up with as much brevity as we can. The People are generally governed by the chief of their Tribes, as in all Countreys else, where neither the Arms of Forcemen nor the Ambition of some few of the Natives had diminished any thing of those natural Rights. Not subject to any one supreme till these latter times, the *Incas* or Monarchs of *Peru* growing unto their greatness but a little before their fall. Their Territory at the first so small, that it was not above five or six Leagues in compass, situate in that part of the Country where the City of *Cusco* now standeth. Opposed at their first Encroachments by the *Cannars*, a valiant Nation, and likely to have had the better, if the *Incas* had not helped themselves by a piece of Wit; giving it out, that their Family had not only been the Seminary from which Mankind came, but the Authors of that Religion into which was then in use; particularly that the whole World had been destroyed by a Flood, except only seven, (so far they hit upon the truth) which seven had hid themselves in a Cave, called *Paititamba*, where having lived in safety till the fury of the Waters had been asswaged, they came abroad at last and re-peopled the Country; that *Viracocha*, the Creatour and great God of Nature, had appeared to one of them, and taught him how and with what Rites he would be worshipped, which Rites were afterwards received over all *Peru*; and finally, that the same *Viracocha* had appeared lately to the chief of their Family, assuring him that he would aid him with invincible Forces against all their Enemies. This Tale soon gained belief amongst those *Barbarians*, and that belief drew many to take part with the *Incas*, by that Aid victorious. This is supposed to have happened 400 years before the *Spaniards* put an

an end to this flourishing Kingdom, which was in the year 1533. Within which time they had brought all this Country which we now call *Peru*, and many of the adjoining Provinces, under their Dominion. Their Kings were called *Incas*, as the *Egyptians* *Pharaohs*, the *Tartars* *Chans*; the word *Inca* signifying an Emperor, as *Capa Inca* (by which they sometimes called them) the only Emperours. Much revered by their Subjects, and so faithfully served, that never any of their Subjects were found guilty of Treason: Nor wanted they good Arts whereby to incite their Subjects, and keep them out of leisure to foment new Factions. The way of incitement, by the fair and satisfactory distribution of the spoils gotten in the Wars, whether Lands or Goods; all which they divided into three parts: allotting the first unto the service of the Gods; the second, for the maintenance of the King, his Court, and Nobles; the third, to the relief of the common people. A Distribution far more equal than that *Lycurgus*, or the *Lex Agraria*, or the *Romans*. But when there was no cause of wars, they kept the people busied in the works of Magnificence as building Palaces in every one of the conquered Provinces, which served not only for Houses to assure the Conquerors, but were employed as Store-houses to lay up Provisions, distributed amongst the people in times of dearth. But that which was the work of as greater trouble, or of chiefest use, was the Crofs ways they made over all the Country, the one upon the Mountains, and the other on the Plains, extending 500 Leagues in length: a work to be preferred before any both of *Rome* and *Egypt*. For they were forced to raise the ground in many places to the height of the Mountains, and lay the Mountains level with the flatted Plains: to cut through fume Rocks, and underprop others that were ruinous; to make even such ways as were uneven, and support the Precipices; and in the Plains to vanquish all many difficulties as the uncertain foundation of a sandy Country must needs carry with it. Kept to these Tasks, the people had no leisure to think of Practices; yet well content to undergo them in regard they saw it tended to the publick benefit. And for the *Caciques*, (to they call the Nobility) the *Inca* did not only command them to reside in *Cusco*, to be assured of their persons; but caused them to lend their Children to be brought up there, that they might serve as Hostages for the Fathers Loyalty. They ordered also, that all such as repaired to *Cusco*, the Imperial City, should be attired according to his own Country fashion; so to prevent those Leagues and Associations which otherwise, without any note or observation, might be made amongst them. Many such Politick Institutions were by them devised, which had little of the Barbarous in them; and clearly shewed that there were other Nations which had Eyes in their Heads besides those of *China*. What else concerns the Story of them, offereeth it felt in the following Catalogue of

#### The Kings of PERU.

1. *Mango-Capac*, defended of the chief of the first seven Families, the first who laid the foundation of this puissant Monarchy: he subdued the *Cannars*, and built the City of *Cusco*.
2. *Sinchi Capac*, eldest son of *Mango*, subdued a great part of *Collao*, as far as *Chancara*.
3. *Louque-Incapuqui*, the son of *Sinchi*, conquered *Chiquiza*, *Ayacucho*, the *Cannars*, and the Inhabitants about *Titicaqa*: the last Advancer of the service of *Viracocha*, from whom he did pretend to have many Vint.
4. *Mayta-Capac*, the son of *Tupanqui*, subdued all the rest of *Collao*, the Provinces of *Chiquiza*, and a great part of the *Charcos*.

5. *Capac-Incapuqui*, or *Tupanqui II.* the son of *Mayta*, enlarged his Kingdom Westward unto *Mare del Zur*.

6. *Rocho II.* of *Tueba-Rocha*, eldest son of *Tupanqui* the second, enlarged his Kingdom towards the North, by the Conquest of the great Province of *Atabambilla*, and many others.

7. *Jahuar-Huacac*, Son of *Rocho* the second, added to his Estates (by the Valour of his Brother *Mayta*) all the southern parts from *Arequipa* to *Tacanan*. D. posed by the practice of his son.

8. *Viracocha*, the son of *Huacac*, having settled and enlarged his Empire, raised many great and flatly Works, and amongst others many *Aqueducts* of great use, but charge. For fear of him, *Huancabamba*, King of the *Chuncos*, with many thousands of his people, took the Country.

9. *Pachacuti-Inca*, son of *Viracocha*, improved his Kingdom by the Conquest of many Provinces lying towards the *Andes* and fourth sea; with that of *Caxamalca* Northwards.

10. *Tupanqui III.* or *Tueba-Incapuqui*, son of *Pachacuti*, subdued the *Conches* and *Moxes*, with some part of *Chile*.

11. *Tupanqui IV.* or *Tapac Tueba Tupanqui*, Son of *Tupanqui* the third, extended his Dominions as far as *Quito*.

12. *Huayna-Capac*, or *Guaynacapac*, son of *Tupanqui* the fourth, the most mighty Monarch of *Peru*, conquered the whole Province of *Quito*; and is supposed to be the Founder of those two great Roads spoken of before.

13. *Huascar*, or *Cuschar-Inca*, the eldest Son of *Guaynacapac*, after a Reign of five years deposed and slain by his Brother.

14. *Athualpa*, or *Atabalipa*, the third Son of *Guaynacapac*, by the Daughter and Heir of the King of *Quito*, into which Kingdom he succeeded by the Will of his Father. Commanded by his Brother to do Homage for the Kingdom of *Quito*, he came upon him with such power, that he overcame him, and so gained the Kingdom. Vanquished afterwards by *Pizarro* at the battle of *Caxamalca* he was taken Prisoner. And though he gave him a ransom for his Life and Liberty, an House piled up on all sides with Gold and Silver, valued (as some say) at ten Millions of Crowns; yet they perished, as flew him.

15. *Mango-Capac II.* the second son of *Guaynacapac*, subduded by *Pizarro* in his Brothers Throne, after many vicissitudes of Fortune, was at last slain in the City of *Cusco*, and to the Kingdom of the *Incas* began and ended in a Prince of the same name, as it happened formerly to some other Estates.

Let us next look upon the birth and fortune of that *Pizarro*, who subdued this most potent and flourishing Kingdom, and made it a Member of the *Spanish* Empire. And we shall find that he was born at *Trujillo*, a Village of *Navarro*, and by the poor Whore whose Mother laid in the Church porch, and so left to Gods Providence; by whose direction (there being none found that would give him the Bread) he was nourished for certain days by sucking a Sow. At last one *Condesa* a Soldier, acknowledged him for his son, put him to Nurse, and, when he was somewhat grown, set him to keep his Swine: some of which being lured, the Boy durst not for fear return home, but betook himself to his heels, ran unto *Sevil*, and there shipped himself for *America*, where he spent, and *Alonso de Ojeda*, in the discovery of the Countreys beyond the Gulf of *Urdaba*; *Balboa* in his Voyage to the South-sea; and *Pedro de Avila* in the Conquest of *Pa-*



*nomas*. Grown rich by these Adventures, he associated himself with *Diego de Almagro*, and *Fernando Lopez* a rich Priest; who betwixt them raised 200 Soldiers, and in the year 1525 went to seek their Fortunes on those Southern Seas which *Balboa* had before discovered. After divers Repulses at his landing, and some hardship which he had endured, *Pizarro* at the length took some of the Inhabitants of *Peru*, of whom he learnt the Wealth of the Country; and returning thence to *Spain*, obtained the Kings Commission for the Conquest of it, excluding his Companions out of the Patent, but taking in *Almagro* of his own accord. Thus furnished and landed in *Peru* again, at such time as the Wars grew hot betwixt the two Brethren for the Kingdom, and taking part with the Faction of *Guscar*, marched against *Atabalipa*; whom he met with in the plains of *Caxamalca*, but rather prepared for a Parley, then to fight a Battle. *Pizarro* taking this Advantage, picked a Quarrel with him, and suddenly charged upon him with his Horse and Ordnance, slaying his Guard without resistance; and coming near the Kings Person, (who was then carried on mens shoulders) pulled him down by the Cloaths, and took him Prisoner. With him they took as much Gold as amounted to 8000 Castellans, and as much Silver as amounted to 7000 Marks, (every Mark weighing eight ounces) of his Household Plate; and the Spoil of *Caxamalca*, almost infinite Riches. This, with the Kings Reward, came to be so great a sum, that besides the fifth part which *Pizarro* sent to the Emperor, and that which *Pizarro* and his Brethren kept unto themselves, every Footman had 7200 Ducats, and every Horseman twice as much, for their part of the Spoil; besides what they had gotten in the way of plunder. Here they dealt afterwards with the miserable King, their prisoner, hath been shewn already. Upon which Act though they put many fair pretences, yet God declared that he was not pleased with their proceedings; few of the greatest undertakers going to the Grave in peace. For though *Pizarro*, in reward of so great a Service, was made the first Vice-Roy of *Peru*, and created Marquis of *Anatilla*; yet having put to death *Almagro*, his chief Companion, who had raised a strong Faction in that State, he was after slain at *Lima* by some of that Faction, in revenge of the death of their Commander. The like unfortunate end befel all the rest: his Brother *John* slain by the *Peruvians*; *Martin* in *Lima* with himself; *Ferdinando* secretly made away in Prison; and

finally, *Gonzales* the fourth Brother, with the son of *Almagro*, severally executed for their Treasons and Infurctions, which they had acted in this Country against their King. So little Joy doth Wealth ill gotten bring along with it to the owners thereof. And here I am to leave *Pizarro*, whose strange both fortunes and misfortunes in the course of his Life are to be paralleled only with the like of *Sinan*, a great Basha in the Court of *Selimus* the first; who being born of base Parents, as he (being a Child) was sleeping in the Shade, had his Genitals bitten off by a Sow. The Turkish Officers which usually provided young Boys for the service of the Grand Signiour, being in *Epirus*, (for that was *Sinan's* Country) and hearing of this extraordinary an Eunuch, took him among others along with them to the Court; where under *Mahomet* the Great, *Bajazet* the second, and his son *Selimus*, he so exceedingly thrived, that he was made the chief Basha of the Court; and so well deserved it, that he was accounted *Selimus's* right hand; and was indeed the man to whose Valour especially the Turk owe their Kingdom of *Agypt*: in which Kingdom then not fully settled he was also slain.

But to return to *Peru*. No question but the Forces and Revenues of it were exceeding great. For, though we find no particular musters which they made of their men, or what great Armies they drew with them into the Field, yet by their great Successes and many Victories, we may conclude them to be Masters of great Bands of men, and skilful in the Arts of Conduict. Nor can we otherwise conjecture at the greatness of their yearly income, but by the greatness of their Treasure; so infinite and almost incredible, that all the Vessels of the Kings House, his Table and Kitchen, were of Gold and Silver; Statues of Giants in his Wardrobe, together with the resemblances in proportion and bigness of all the Beasts, Birds, Trees, Plants and Fishes, which were found in that Kingdom, of the purest Gold; Ropes, Budgets, Troughs, Chells, all of Gold or Silver; Bills of Gold piled up together, as if they had been Bills of Wood cut out for the fire; three Houses full of pieces of Gold, and five full of Silver. All which, besides infinite other Treasures, fell into the hands of a few poor *Spaniards*; who grew so wondrously rich, that they would give 1500 Crowns for an Horse, 600 Crowns for a small Vessel of Wine, and 40 for a pair of Shoes; consuming all upon their lusts, and sacrificing their Gods of Gold to their God the Belly.

## OF

## CHILE.



CHILE is bounded on the North with the Defart of *Alacama*, 90 Leagues in length, interposed betwixt it and *Peru*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; on the South, with the Streights of *Magellan*; and on the East, as far as to *Rio de la Plata*, with the main *Atlantic*; the Countreys lying on the East betwixt it and *Paraguay* not well discovered.

This Country lieth wholly beyond the Tropick of Ca-

pricorn, by consequence in the temperate Zone, extended in length, from the borders of *Peru* to the mouth of the Streights, 500 Leagues; but the breadth variable and uncertain. Called *Chile* from the word *Chill*, (which in more Tongues then ours doth signifie as much as Cold) from the extreme coldness of the Air and Clime; so vehement herein our Summer Solstice, that many times both the Horses and the Riders are frozen to death, and hardened like a piece of Marble.

The Soil hereof in the midland parts Mountainous and unfruitful; towards the Sea-side level, fertile, and watered

tered with divers Rivers flowing from the Mountains: productive of Maize, Wheat, and most excellent Pasturage: plenty of Gold and Silver, abundance of Honey, store of Cattel and Wine enough for the use of the People; the Vines brought hither out of *Spain* prospering here exceedingly, as do also all the Fruits and Plants, which are sent from thence into this Country. The people very tall and warlike, some of them of a Gigantick Stature, affirm I (but I believe it not) to be eleven foot high; yet well conditioned with his greatness, where we much provoked. Their Garments of the Skins of Beasts, their Arms Bow and Arrows: a white of Complexion, but as hirsute and flaggy-haired as the rest of the Savages.

Rivers of note there are not any but what will fall within the view of its several Provinces, Divided commonly into 1. *Chile* specially so called, and 2. *Magellanica*.

1. *CHILE* specially so called is bounded on the North with the Defart of *Alacama*; on the South, with *Magellanica*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; and on the East, with some unknown Countreys, lying betwixt it and *Paraguay*, or the province of *Rio de la Plata*: not above 20 Leagues in breadth, but in length 300. The reason of the name, together with the nature of the soil and people, we have seen before.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1. *Rio de Copayabo*, giving name unto a Promontory near the Influx of it in the Northern borders of this Province. 2. *Rio de Conquinbo*, 3. *La Laguna*, 4. *Topicalma*, 5. *Cacapoel*, 6. *Canten*: all falling into *Mare del Zur*. And besides these, nameless, but more famous, River, which in the day-time runneth with a violent Current; and in the night hath no Water at all. The reason of it is, because this River, having no constant Fountain, is both begun and continued by the Snow falling from the Mountains, which in the heat of the day, melted into Water is precipitately carried into the sea; but congealed in the coldness of the night yields no Water at all, whereby the Channel becometh empty.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Copayabo*, giving name to a fertile Valley in the most Northern Tract hereof, and neighbored by a small, but commodious Haven. 2. *Serena*, a Colony of the *Spaniards*, on the Sea-side, not far from the Influx of *Rio de Conquinbo*, on whose banks it is seated, there built by *Baldovia*, the Conqueror and first Governour of this Province, Anno 1544. The Territory round about it is rich in Mines of Gold: The Town it self of 200 Houses, but few people, that at the landing of some of the English under Captain *Drake*, they presently sent out 300 Horse and 200 Foot to compel them back unto their Ships, which they did accordingly. 3. *S. Jago*, the chief of all this Province, (though not above 80 Houses in it) because the Residence of the Governour and the Courts of Justice; adorned with a Cathedral Church, and some Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciscan* Friars; situate in the 34. Degree of Southern Latitude on the Banks of the River *Topicalma*, at the mouth whereof is the Haven of *Val Paraisa*, the best and most noted of this Country; out of which the English under *Drake* took a Spanish Ship, and therein a 5000 Pieces of the purest Gold, besides other Commodities. 4. *Conception*, 70 Leagues on the South of *S. Jago*, situate on the Shore of a large and capacious Bay, (by the Natives called *Pero*) by it and the Mountains on all sides so strongly fenced, that the Governour, when distressed by the Savages, (as sometimes they are) retireth hither for safety. Well fortified in such places as are accessible, and garrisoned with 500 Soldiers, besides the Townsmen.

Opposite hereunto lieth the Mouth of *S. Mary*, so near the Shore, that it seems to have been rent from it by the force of the Sea: fruitful and very well provided of Swine and Poultry; but the people for fear of the *Spaniards* dwelling in *Conception*, that they dare not kill or eat either, but by leave from them. 5. *Araucos*, (so I think they call it) a strong Fortrefs in the Country of the *Araucans*, the most potent Nation of these parts; who, weary of the Spanish Yoke, revolted against *Baldovia*, overcame him in a set fight, and at last killed him: this piece being thereupon forsaken, and of no more use. 6. *Delos Confines*, built by *Baldovia* in the borders of the Country of those *Araucans*, to leave for a defence to the Mines of *Ongel* near adjoining: distant from the Sea shores about 18 Leagues, enlarged by *Garcias de Mendoza*, and by him called *Villa Nueva de los Infantes*. 7. *Imperial*, in the 38 Degree and 40 Minutes of Southern Latitude, situate on the banks of the River *Canten*; an Episcopall See, and the best Fortrefs of the *Spaniards* in all this Province. Fortified and made a Colony of *Spaniards* in the year 1571, and by *Baldovia* called *Al Imperial*, because they found an Eagle with two heads made in Wood on the doors of their houses; a Monument perhaps of some *Germans* who had here been shipwreckt. A Town of great Wealth and Power, before known to the *Spaniards*, that in a War betwixt them and the *Araucans*, spoken of before, they are said to have brought into the Field 300000 men. 8. *Villa Rica*, another Colony of *Spaniards*, 16 Leagues on the South-East of *Imperial*, and 25 Leagues from the Shore of *Mare del Zur*. 9. *Baldovia*, the most noted Town of all these parts, situate in the Valley of *Guadallangue*, in the Latitude of 40 Degrees, or thereabouts; adorned with a safe and capacious Haven, and neighbored by Mines of Gold of such infinite Riches, that *Baldovia* (by whom built for defence of those Mines) received thence daily by the labour of each single Workman 25000 Crowns a man, and sometimes more. Sacked by the Savages Anno 1599; since repaired by the *Spaniards*. 10. *Oforno*, on the Banks of the Bay of *Chile*, (or *Arcaud*, as the Savages call it) situate in a barren foil, but well stored with Gold, and thought to be more populous then *Baldovia* it self. 11. *Castro*, the most Southern Town of all this Province, in the Latitude of 44: built in a large and fruitful Island in the Bay of *Arcaud*, said to be 50 Leagues in length, but the breadth unequal: in some parts nine, in others not above two Leagues. 12. *S. Juan de la Frontera*, on the farther side of the *Andes* towards *Paraguay*, or *Rio de la Plata*.

To this Province there belong also certain Islands lying on the Coastland shores hereof, 1. *S. Maria*, spoken of before. 2. *Mocha*, upon the fourth of that, 5 Leagues from the Continent, fruitful of Grain, and very good Pasturage, sufficient to maintain the Inhabitants of it, who being the descendants of those *Americans* who fled hither to avoid the tyranny of the *Spaniards*, hitherto have made good their Liberty against that Nation: of which they are so jealous, that they would not suffer the English under *Drake* and *Cavendish* to land among them for fear they had been *Spaniards*, or some Friends of theirs. 4. *Castro*, which we have spoken of already.

2. *MAGELLANICA* is bounded on the North with *Chile*, and the Province of *Rio de la Plata*: on the south, with *Fretum Magellanicum*, or the Streights of *Magellan*, on the West, with *Mare del Zur*: on the East, with *Mare del Nord*, or the Main *Atlantic*; so called from *Magellans*, by whom first discovered: of whom we shall speak more hereafter.

It is in length from the borders of *Chile* to the mouth of the Streights 300 Leagues in breadth: from one sea to the other, where broadest, above 400 Leagues, in some

some but go only, and in others left, according as it draweth towards the point of the *Pyramis*. The Inland parts of the Country not yet discovered : those on the sea side observed to be rocky and unfertile, except for the moist part of the year to such bitter colds, that the Snow lieth always on the Mountains. The People said to be tall of Stature, and some of them of a Gigantic kind, reported to be ten or eleven foot high : and by the *Spaniards* for that reason are called *Patagons*. Both great and less sufficiently rude and barbarous, quite naked, and unfurnished of any Houses, notwithstanding the rigour of the Cold.

No Houses doth imply no Towns, and therefore we must look for none in to rude a Country, as hath not hitherto converted with more civil Nations. So that the most that we can do is to coast the Shores, and see what names of Ports or Promontories we can find therein. And first upon the Sea-coasts towards *Mare del Zur*, they place (beginning at the North, and to descending) 1. The Promontory called *Cabo de las Islas*. 2. The Port or Haven of *S. Stephen*. 3. The Valley of *Nagstra Senora*, or our Ladies Valley. 4. The Promontory called *Punta Delgado*. 5. *Porto delos Reyes*. 6. *Anteon Sinjalida*, on the banks of a semi-circular Bay, the receptacle of many Rivers, and not a few Islands. 7. *Cabo de la Victoria*, or the Cape of Victory, situate betwixt that Bay and the mouth of the *Straits* : so called from the name of the ship, in which some of the *Magellan's* soldiers did first compass the World. For *Ferdinand Magellan*, a noble *Portugall*, and well skilled in Navigation, at the persuasion or command of *Charles* the fifth, to whom upon some discontents received in the Court of *Emmanuel King of Portugall* he had made offer of his service, undertook the finding out (if possible) a shorter cut to the *Moluccas* then discovered formerly. In the year 1520. he began his Voyage, his Fleet consisting but of 5 ships, whereof that called *S. Antonio* forsook him in some great displeasure, and returned to *Spain* : another of them being lost not long after in a storm. Keeping along the Coast to the south of *Rio de la Plata*, about the end of *October* he fell upon the Cape of *Virgins*, at the very entrance of this Strait, which on the doubling of this Cape he was fallen upon : and by the end of *November* (not before) was fully clear of these Narrow Seas, since called *Fretum Magellanicum*, and entered into *Mare del Zur*. Having refreshed himself in a little Island called *Ymaginava*, he passed unto that also, but not far from the *Philippines* : the Prince whereof, called *Hamabar*, he persuaded to become a Christian, baptizing him by the name of *Charles* : and finally engaging in a Quarrel of his against the King of *Mantuan*, or *Marian*, an adjoining Island, he was there unfortunately slain, Anno 1521. After his death *Sernus* chief Pilot of the Navy, together with 70 of his men, being treacherously slain by *Hamabar*, the other three ships departed with no more than 15 men aboard them, which put them to a necessity of burning one of their Ships, that they might have men enough to make good the others. With these two Ships they came at last to the *Moluccas*, where being kindly entertained by the King of *Tidore*, they divided themselves : that called the *Trinity*, under Captain *Spinoza*, designed for *Panama* in *New Spain*, but from thence driven back by contrary Winds to the Isle of *Tidore*, was seized on and spoiled by *Antonia Brito*, a Captain commanding there a small Navy of the King of *Portugall*. The other Ship, which by a happy Omen was called *Victoria*, having in her but 47 *Spaniards*, under the command of *Sebastian del Cano*, after a very long and dangerous Voyage, wherein it was thought that he had failed at the least 14000 Leagues, returned to *Spain* in safety, and

brought the welcome news of their good Success. We use to say that Sir *Francis Drake* was the first that failed round about the World : which may be true in a qualified sense ; viz. that he was the first Captain of men of note that achieved this Enterprize, *Magellan* perishing in the midst of it ; and therefore he is reported to have given for his Device a Globe, with this Motto, *Tu primus circumdaxisti me*. This Navigation was begun Anno 1577. and in two years and a half with great vicissitudes of fortune finished. Concerning which his famous Voyage, a Poet then living directed to him this Epigram :

*Drake, pererrat vixit quem tenuissim Orbis,  
Quemque final mundi vidit antequam Polus  
Si taceant homines, facient to Sydera notum.  
Sol nescit comitis non minor ossibus.*  
*Drake*, whom th' encompass'd Earth so fully knew,  
And whom at once both Poles of Heaven did view,  
Should men forget thee, Sol could not forget  
To Chronicle his fellow-Traveller.

This *Fretum Magellanicum*, thic *Magellan* Strait, is in the 52 degree, and are by Mr. *John Davis*, who professeth to know every Creek in them, thus described. "For 14 Leagues within the Cape of *S. Mary* lieth the first Strait, where it ebberth and floweth with a violent swiftnes, the Strait not being fully half a mile broad, and the therifall into it very dangerous and doubtful. Three Leagues this Strait continueth, when it openeth into a Sea eight miles long and as much broad, beyond which lieth the second Strait, right Well-South-West from the first, a perilous and unpleasant passage, three Leagues long, and a mile in breadth. This Strait openeth it fell into another Sea, which is extended even to the Cape of *Victory* : where is the Strait properly called the Strait of *Magellan* : a place of that nature, that which way soever a man bend with his course, he shall be sure to have the Wind against him. The length hereof is 40 Leagues : the breadth in some places two Leagues over, in others not fully half a mile. The Chanel in depth 200 Fathoms, so no hope of Anchorage, the course of the Water full of turnings and changings, withal so violent, that when a ship is once entered, there is no returning. On both sides of it are high Mountains continually covered with snow, from which proceed those Counter-winds which beat with equal fury on all parts thereof. A place assuredly not pleasing to view, and very hazardous to pass. So far, and to this purpose Mr. *Davis*.

But to proceed : the way thus opened was travelled not long after, Anno 1525, by *Garcias de Loyas* next in the year 1534, by *Simon de Alcazar*, and four years after by three Ships of the Bishop of *Placenza* in *Spain* : but none of them had the hap or courage to adventure through till undertaken and performed by Sir *Francis Drake*, Anno 1577 after which it grew more familiar amongst the Seamen. However, we are so much Debtors to the Attempts of others, as that we owe to them the most part of the names of those Bays and Promontories which they discovered in the search, though many of them be since new named by the *English* and *Hollanders*. Those of most note, proceeding from *Cabo de la Victoria*, are 1. *Cabo de Quade*, 2. *Cape Gallant*, 3. *Corder Bay*, 4. *Cape Erasmus*, being the very point or Corner of this great *Pyramis*. 5. *Porto Famine*, 6. A little Isle called *Elizabeths Island*, and at the Exit of the Strait in *Mare del Noerd*, the Cape of *Virgins*. Then bending Northward toward the great River of *Plata*, we find upon the Main Ocean, 1. *Rio de la Cruz*, neighbored by a Promontory called *Cabo de las Barreras*, where *Magellan* died all September, and the greatest part of *October*, in expectation of an opportunity to discover farther. 2. The Bay of *S. Julian*, out

out of which he set sail for this Adventure about the latter end of *August*, leaving there two of his Companions condemned of Mutiny. 3. The Port of *Defire*. 4. A large Promontory, called the Cape of *S. George*. 5. The out-lets of a fair River, named *Rio de los Camerones*. 6. A goodly Haven, entitled *Porto delos Leones*. 7. The Cape called *Punta de terra plana*. 8. The Bay of *Amegado*. 9. The Promontory called the Cape of *S. Andrews*. And 10. the River of *S. Anne*, beyond which lieth the Province of the River of *Plata*. This is the most that I can say touching *Magellanica*, as to the Havens, Rivers, Points, and Promontories : and this is nothing (as we see) but a *Nomenclatur* : it must be better peopled and more discovered before it can afford Discourse of more variety. All we can add, that the passage back again from *Mare del Zur*, to the *Atlantic* hath not been found so safe and easy, as from the main *Atlantic* unto *Mare del Zur*. Attempted first by *Ladrillera* a *Spaniard*, at the command of *Garcia de Mendoza*, Governour of *Chile*, and attempted also : performed not long after the Voyage of Sir *Francis Drake* by *D. Pedro Sarmiento*, employed therein by *Francis de Tolcha*, Viceroy of *Peru*, with much difficulty, and no less danger : so much, that few have since endeavoured to return that way.

As for the Fortunes and Affairs of the Province of *Chile*, so which we have made this an Appendix, we are to understand that it was first discovered by *Almagro de Alvarado*, one of *Pizarro's* chief Friends and Associates. But he having other designs in his head about *Peru*, which he intended for himself, and to out *Pizarro*, did discover it only : the Conquest of it being reserved for *Balverde*, whom *Pizarro*, on the falling of his Affairs by *Peru*, whom *Pizarro*, had employed in that action. He, going Soldier-like to work, not only did subdue the people : but, as he gained ground, built some Fortresses, or planted Colonies of *Spaniards*, in convenient places. This done, about the year 1544, his ill luck was to meet with a more stubborn and untractable people than either *Cortez*, or *Pizarro* had done before him : who, quickly

wearied of the Yoke, besieged one of his Forts, encountered *Balverde* himself coming with too small a power to relieve his people, vanquished and slew him in the field. Some add, that they poured Gold into his Throat, (as the *Parthians* are reported to have done to *Cressus*) bidding him *suavitate himself* with that which he so much thirsted after. After this blow given, in the year 1551, the Savages recovered the rich Valleys of *Araucan*, *Tucapel*, and *Purres*, which they keep from them till this day. The Towns of *Los Coñastes* and *Villa Rica*, both on the borders of those Valleys, were deserted also. Nor staid they there, though they took time to breathe a little. For in the year 1599, (having provided themselves of 200 Coislets and seventy Muskets) they break out again, surprised and sacked the Town of *Baldivia*, forced *Imperial*, after a whole years Siege to surrender without any Conditions, and in the year 1603 took *Ofeno* by Famine. Of thirteen Cities which the *Spaniards* had possessed amongst them, they had taken nine : some of them since recovered, but the most demolished. As ill it thrived with them in *Magellanica*, where *Pedro de Sarmiento* undertook the planting of two Colonies to command those Straits, Anno 1584. The one he settled near the mouth of the Strait, which he called by the name of *Nombre de Jesus*, and left therein 1500 of his men : the other he intended on the narrow neck of the Strait, to be called *Ciudad del Rey Philip*, which he resolved to fortify and plant with *Indians*. But winter coming on, he left there others of his men, promising to relieve them shortly with all things necessary. But such was his unhappy fate, that after many Shipwrecks and disappointments, which befel unto him in the pursuit of his Design, he was at last taken by the *English*, under the command of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, who was there in person ; and his two Colonies, for want of timely Succours, either starved at home, or eaten by the Savages, as they ranged the Country.

And so much for CHILE.

## OF PARAGUAY.



ARAGUAY is bounded on the South with *Magellanica* ; on the East, with the main *Atlantic* ; on the North, with *Brasil* ; on the West, with some unknown Countreys betwixt it and *Chile*. So called from the River *Paraguay* (one of the greatest of the World) which runneth through it : the River and the Province both by the *Spaniards* called *Rio de la Plata*, from the great store of Silver they expected from it.

The Country (for so much as hath been discovered) is said to be of a fruitful foil, capable of Wheat and other of the Fruits of *Europe*, which thrive here exceedingly : nor do the Carril increase less which were brought from *Spain*, both *Kine* and *Horses* multiplying in a wonderful manner. Well stored with Sugar-Canes, and not unfurnished of Mines both of Brass and Iron,

some Veins of Gold and Silver, and great plenty of *Amethysts*. Of Stags great plenty, and of Monkeys almost infinite numbers : not to lay any thing of Lions, Tigers and such hurtful Creatures, of which a few would be thought too many. Of the people there is nothing said but what hath been observed of other Savages.

Chief Rivers of it, 1. *De la Plata*, whose course we have described already. 2. *Rio de Buenos Ayres*, so called from the chief Town, by which it runneth. 3. *Zarcamuna*, which riseth in the Country of the *Diaguitas*, and falling into Lake at the end of his course, doth from thence pass into the body of *De la Plata*. 4. *Ejora*, which rising in the Valley of *Chalacqui*, and passing through two great Lakes, meets with 5. the *Bermeis*, and both together fall into *De la Plata* near the Town of *S. Fy. Yllesmo*, which hath its Fountain near the Mines of *Pasfi*, in the Province of *Charcos* : but his fall in the same River with those before. Then on the North side

of that River there is, 7. that of *S. Salvador*, or *S. Salvador*, as the *Spaniards* call it. 8. *Rio Negro*, or the Black River, of a longer course, but buried in the end, as the other is, in the depths of *La Plata*. 9. *Tiquaza*, and 10. several others, which united Streams make the great River *Parana*, the second River of esteem in all this Country, but swallowed in that of *Plata*. Besides these, 1. *Rio de S. Martin*, and 12. *Rio grande*, falling into the Ocean.

It comprehendeth the three Provinces of, 1. *Rio de la Plata*, 2. *Tucuman*, and 3. *S. Cruz de Sierra*. The rest not conquered by the *Spaniards*, or not well discovered cannot be properly reduced under any Method.

1. *RIO DE LA PLATA*, or the Province of *De la Plata*, lieth upon both sides of that River, ascending many Leagues up the Water, but not extended much upon either side. The reason of the name, the quality of the Soil and People, we have seen before.

Chief Towns heretofore, 1. *Buenos Ayres*, or *Nuestra Señora de Buenos Ayres*, by others called *Ciudad de la Trinidad*, seated on the Southern Bank of the River of *Plata*, there built by *Pedro de Mendoza*, Anno 1535. Delected by the Inhabitants, and again new-peopled by *Cajafra de Vaca*, Anno 1542. It was afterwards again abandoned, and finally, in the year 1582, re-edified and placed with a new Colony. Situate on the rising of a little Hill, in the 34. degree and 45 minutes of the Southern Latitude, and about 64 Leagues from the mouth of the River. Fortified with a Mud-wall and a little Castle, with some pieces of Ordnance: yet neither large, nor much frequented, containing but 200 Inhabitants. 2. *S. Fe*, or *S. Fidel*, 50 Leagues up the River from *Buenos Ayres*, on the same side of the Water, near the confluence of it with the River *Espero*: of the same bigness as the other, but somewhat richer: the people here being given to Clothing, which Manufacture they exchange with the *Brasilians* for Sugar, Rice, and other necessary Commodities. 3. *Nuestra Señora del Assumption*, but commonly *Assumption* only, higher up the River, from the mouth thereof 300 Leagues distant: situate in the Latitude of 25, and almost in the middle betwixt *Pern* and *Brasil* well built, and very well frequented, as the chief of the whole Country. Inhabited by three sorts of men: first, natural *Spaniards*, of which here are accounted 300 Families; 2. the *Mestizos*, begotten by the *Spaniards* upon the Natives; and 3. *Naturals*, born of the *Spaniards* and Negroes: of which two last here are thought to be many thousands. Not far off is a great Lake called *Tupiza*, in the middle whereof is an huge Rock, above 100 Fathom high above the Water. 4. *Ciudad Real*, by the *Spaniards* called *al Outinero*, by the Natives *Gusya*; 80 Leagues North from the Town of *Assumption*, situate on the banks of the River *Parana*, in a fruitful Soil, but a sickly Air; for which cause, and the frequent Insurrections of the Savages, but meely peopled. 5. *S. Anna*, on the banks of the same River *Parana*. 6. *S. Salvador*, on a River of the same name. Besides these, there are up the River above *Assumption* three noted Ports. 7. *Puerto de Guaybiano*, 8. *Puerto de la Candelaria*, and 9. *Puerto de los Reyes*; but whether Towns, or only Havens on that River for dispersing and bartering their Commodities, I am not able to say. The last have one memorable for the defeat of *John de Ayolas*, and the death of 80 of his men by the hands of the Savages.

2. *TUCUMAN* lieth on the West of *Rio de la Plata*, extending towards the Confines of *Chile*, through which they make their way unto *Mare del Sur*, as through the Province of *Rio de la Plata* unto *Mare del Norte*: the exact bounds heretofore to the North and South not yet resolved on.

The Country, for so much heretofore as lieth towards

*Chile*, is well manured and fruitful, that towards *Magellanica* barren, untilld, and not well discovered. No Veins of Gold or Silver in it, though situate in a temperate and agreeable Air. Watered by the two Rivers, 1. *Salado*, lieth called from the brackishness and saltness of it, and 2. *Del Ebero*, spoken of before, so named, because sometimes it breaketh out of his Banks. The Inhabitants now civilized both in manners and habit, in both they conform to the Garb of the *Spaniards*.

Chief Towns heretofore, 1. *S. Jago del Ebero*, on the banks of that River, by the natural Inhabitants called *Vareco*, the principal of that small Province, honoured with a Bishop's See, and the Seat of the Governour, and distant about 180 Leagues from *Buenos Ayres*. 2. *S. Michael de Tucuman*, seated at the foot of a Rocky Mountain, but near a very fruitful Soil both for Corn and *Paraguay*, distant 28 Leagues from *S. Jago*. 3. *Talavera*, or *Nuestra Señora de Talavera*, but by the Natives called *Esteo*, situate on the River *Salado*, before mentioned, in a fruitful Soil, and inhabited by an industrious People, grown wealthy by their Manufactures of Cotton-wools, which grow hereabouts in great abundance, with which they drive a great Trade at the Mines of *Panji*, from hence distant but 140 Leagues. 4. *Cordoba*, in a convenient place for Trade, as being equally distant from *S. Juan de la Frontera*, in the Prefecture of *Chile*, and *S. Fe*, in *Rio de la Plata*, 50 Leagues from each, and seated in a Road from *Pern* unto *Buenos Ayres*, much travelled consequently by those who go from *Pern* to *Brasil* or *Spain*. 5. *New London*, and 6. *New Cordoba*, built at such time as *Garcia de Mendoza*, Son of the Marquess of *Cameres*, and Vice-roy of *Pern*, was Governour of this Province: but both abandoned not long after. Besides these, 7. *Murata*, 8. *Cibicoma*, 9. *Sococha*, and 10. *Calabina*, Towns belonging to the Natives.

3. *S. CRUZ DE SIERRA*, is the name of a little Territory lying towards *Pern*, on the North of the River *Guspay*, and in the Country of the *Chiquitos* and *Chiriguanoes*, two Tribes of the Savages. By some accounted to *Pern*, because under the Jurisdiction of *Chiriquito*, but to far distant from the nearest bounds of that Province, (100 Spanish Leagues at least) that I think fitter to account it to the Province of *Paraguay*, betwixt the banks of which River and that of *Guspay* it is wholly seated.

The Soil is abundantly productive of Maize and Wines, plenty of most sorts of American Fruits, which I can give no English name to, a kind of Palm; of whose Trunk they make great store of Meal, of good taste and nourishment. But neither Soil nor Air agreeable to the Fruits of Europe, which ripen slowly, and soon die. So delicate of Rivers, that the Inhabitants were fain to make use of Rain-water preserved in pits: the cause of no small Warts, and of many great Murders; the people either dying for thirst, or killing one another for some Water to quench it.

Chief Towns heretofore, 1. *Santa Cruz*, situate at the foot of a great Mountain, whence the name of the Province; but situate in an open Field, enlarging it self into many Plains and thirty Valleys: neighbored by a Brook, or Torrent, breaking from the Rocks, which four Leagues from the Town is become a Pond, and plentifully doth supply the Town with fish. 2. *Barana*, 60 Leagues from the Mines of *Panji*. 3. *Tominia*, 4. *Laguilla*, and 5. *Tarica*, three Forts erected for defence of this Province against the Incursions and Alarms of the *Chiriguanoes*. 6. *Nueva Luján*, once a Colony of the *Spaniards*, but sacked and dispeopled by the *Chiriguanoes*, when the Count of *Noya* was Vice-roy of *Pern*: at what time *Nuño de Chaves*, who in the year 1548 first discovered those parts,

darts, was treacherously slain by one of the Savages.

The principal Nations of this Country, when first known to the *Spaniards*, were the *Guaranies*, *Timburi*, and *Cacares*, the *Chanes*, *Chimintí*, *Guaranies*, the *Guayacures*, *Cacover*, *Guxaraphi*, &c. on both sides of the river of *Plata*; the *Tucumanes*, *Jurics*, and *Diagnitas*, in the *Centred* of *Tucuman*: more Northward, where the *Spaniards* have as yet no Hold, the *Chunettes*, *Xaquettes*, *Xacocets*, and the *Xarayes*, great and powerful Nations, hitherto unconquered. The first Discovery of this Country is ascribed to *John Dias de Solis*, a Spanish Adventurer; who in the year 1515, passing up the River to the Latitude of 34 Degrees and 40 minutes, and unadvisedly landing with too small a power, was shot by *Selkian* Cabin, the *Deluge* was after prosecuted by *Selkian* Cabin, Anno 1526, who failed against the fire-arm as high as the River *Parana*: at the reception of which, the great River, called till then by the name of *Paraguay*, begins to

be called *De la Plata*. Here built he the Forts called *Fort Cabot*, and 30 Leagues more up the River that called *S. Anna*, (both long since ruined) where *Diego Garcia*, a *Portugall*, found him in the year next following. In the year 1535, the business was resumed by *Pedro de Mendoza*, who built the Town of *Buenos Ayres*, and sent *John de Ayolas* to discover Northwards; of whose unhappy end we have heard before. Not fully filled till the year 1540, when *Alvares Nunez*, commonly called *Cajafra de Vaca*, made a more full discovery of it, and planted Colonies of *Spaniards* in convenient places. Nothing since done for the further planting of the Country, though some places have been marked out for new Plantations; here being little Gold and Silver, and consequently not much temptation to draw on the *Spaniards* to the work.

And so much for PARAGUAY.

## OF BRASIL.

**B**RASIL is bounded on the East with *Mare del Norte*, or the main *Atlantic*; on the West, with some undiscovered Countries lying betwixt it and the *Andes*; on the North, with *Guiana*, from which parted by the great River *Maragony* and on the South, with *Paraguay*, or the Province of *Rio de la Plata*. The reason of the name I find not, except it came from the abundance of that Wood called *Brasil-wood*, which was found amongst them; as the famous Isle of *Cyprus*, from its plenty of Cypresses.

It reacheth from the 29 to the 39 Degree of Southern Latitude; or measuring it by miles, it is laid to be 1500 miles from North to South, and 500 miles in breadth from the sea to the *Andes*; which must be understood with reference to the whole extent of it; for otherwise all that which is possessed by the *Portugals* under the name of *Brasil* is so short of taking up all the breadth hereof, that they possess nothing but the sea-coasts, and some few Leagues (comparatively) within the Land: the greatest part of it being so far from being conquered, that it hath not hitherto been discovered.

The Country is full of Mountains, Rivers, and Forests, diversified into Hills and Plains always pleasant and green. The Air for the most part sound and wholesome, by reason of the fresh Winds which do reign amongst them: there being all along the Coasts certain quick Winds rising from the South about 2 hours before Noon, which do much benefit the Inhabitants: yet in regard it is somewhat moist, it is held to be more agreeable to old men than to young. The Soil is in most parts very fruitful, were it not cloyed with too much Rain; but howsoever liberally provided of Sugar-canes, (no one Country more) for the refining of which they have their *Ingénios*, (as they call them) or sugar-houses, in most parts of the Country, in which they entertain many thousand slaves, brought yearly from *Guinea* and *Congo*, and other Maritime parts of *Africa*. A Trade in which the *Portugals* are much delighted, and I cannot blame them;

there being few years, in each of which they bring not out of *Brasil* to *Portugal* 150000 *Arrobes* of Sugar; every *Arrobe* containing 25 *Bathels* of our English measure. Here is also infinite quantities of that red Wood used in dying cloth, which we commonly call *Brasil-wood*; (but whether the Wood took that name from the Country, or the Country rather from the Wood, I determine not;) the Trees whereof are of that incredible greenness, that whole Families live on an arm of one of them, every Tree being as populous as the most of our Villages. In other Commodities, common to them with the other Americans, we need not give particular instance.

Amongst the Rarities heretofore reckoned, 1. the Plant called *Copiba*, the Bark of which being cut doth send out a Balm, the sovereign virtue whereof is so well known to the very Beasts, that being bit by venomous Serpents, they resort unto it for their Cure. 2. The Herb called *Sentida*, or *Viva*, which roughly touched will close the Leaves, and not open them again till the man that hath offended it be gone out of sight. 3. A kind of Wheat in the Valley near unto *S. Selkian*, which is continually growing, and always ripe; or never wholly ripe, because always growing; for when one Ear doth grain, another doth Bloom; when one is ripe and yellow, another is green. 4. The Ox-fish, with Eyes, and Eye-lids, two Arms a Cubit long, and at each an Hand with five Fingers and Nails, as in a Man; under the Arms two Teats, Inwards like a Cow, in every Female. 5. A Creature found off-shore about the Bay of *Al Saints*, which had the Face of an Ape, the Foot of a Lion, and all the rest of a Man; of such a terrible Aspect, that the Soldier who shot him fell down dead. But this I rather look on as an Aberration of Nature, than a Rarity in kind. 6. Beasts of such strange Shapes, and such several kinds, that may be said of *Brasil*, as once of *Africa*, *Semper aliquid apparet novi*, every day some new object of Admiration.

The people here are endowed with a pretty understanding; as may seem by him who partly blamed the Cover-outs of the *Spanish*, for coming from the other end of the World to dig for Gold, and holding up a Wedge of Gold, cried out, *Behold the God of the Christians!* But in

most places they are barbarous, the Men and Women go stark naked, and on high Festival days hang Jewels in their Lips. These Festival days are when a company of good neighbours come together to be merry over the roasted body of a fat Man, whom they cut in Collops, called *Bacon*, and eat with great greediness and much decoration. They have two vile qualities, as being mindful of Injuries, and forgetful of benefits. The Men Cruel without measure, and the Women infinitely lascivious. They cannot pronounce the Letters L. F. R. The reason of which, one being demanded, made answer, because they had amongst them neither Law, Faith, nor Rulers. They are able Swimmers, as well Women as Men; and will stay under Water an hour together. Women in Travel are here delivered without any great pain, and presently go about their business belonging to good Housewives: the good Man (according to the fashion of our kinder sorts of Husbands in England, who are said to breed their *Wives* (children) being sick in their bed, and keeping their Beds; so that the bath Broths made him, is visited by his Gossips, or Neighbours, and bath Junks sent to comfort him. And amongst these there are some Rarities, if not monstrosities, in nature: it being said of those which live towards the *Andes*, that they are hairy all over like Beasts, such as *Orson* is signified to have been in the old Romance, and probably so ingendered; also that the *Guaynaries* disbowel Women with Child, and roast the Children; and finally, that the Savage Nation of *Cumaniara* have their Paps almost down unto their Knees, which they tie about their waste when they run, or go faster than ordinary.

Rivers of note I find not any till I come to *Maragony*, though that be a Boundary rather betwixt this and *Guiana*, then proper unto this alone. If any chance to come in our way as we cross the Country, we shall not pass them over without some remembrance. And so proceed we to the Division of the Country, not into Provinces or Nations, as in other places, but into Prefectures, or Captainships, as the *Portugals* call them. Of which there are 13 in all, which we shall severally touch on as we trace the Coast, from the Province of *Rio de la Plata* unto that of *Guiana*; that is to say,

1. The Captainship of *S. VINCENT*, bordering on *Rio de la Plata*, inhabited by the most civil people of all *Brasil*. Chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Saint*, at the bottom of an Arm of the sea, capable of good Ships of burthen, but distant from the Main three Leagues. A Town of no more than 120 Houses, yet the best of this Prefecture; beautified with a Parish-Church, and two Convents of Friars. Taken and held two months by Sir *Tho. Cavendish*, Anno 1591, since that envircd with a Wall, and fortified with two Castles. 2. *S. Vincent*, better built, but not so well fitted with an Haven, of about 70 Houses, and 100 Inhabitants. 3. *Irange*, and 4. *Casanea*, two open Burroughs, but capable of lesser Vessels. 5. *S. Paul*, upon a little Mountain, at the foot whereof run two pleasant Rivers, which fall not far into the River of *Imbabu*. A Town of about 100 houses, one Church, two Convents, and a College of studies; neighboured by Mines of Gold found in the Mountains called *Pernambuco*. 6. *S. Philip*, a small Town on the banks of *Imbabu*, which there begins to enlarge it self and passing thence falleth at last into the River *Parana*, one of the great R. Tributaries to *Rio de la Plata*.

2. OF *RIO DE JANEIRO*, or the River of *January*, so called, because entered into that month by *John Dias de Sales*, Anno 1515, neglected by the *Portugals*, it was seized on by the *French*, under the conduct of *Villegaigne*, employed herein by Admiral *Chabillon*, a great Friend of the *Hugonots*, to whom it was intended for a

place of Refuge, as *New-England* afterwards for the likes) but within three years after their first coming thither (An. 1558, regained by the *Portugals*, and the *French* put unto the Word. Places of most consideration in this, 1. *Colignia*, the Fort and Colony of the *French*, so named in honour of *Galpar Colligni*, commonly called *Chabillon* by whole encouragement it was founded. Situate on the Bay of the River *January*, which the *French* called *Canabara*. 2. *S. Sebastian*, built at the mouth of the same Bay by the *Portugals*, after they had expelled the *French*, and fortified with four strong Bulwarks. 3. *Angra des Reges*, distant 12 Leagues Westward from the mouth of the Bay; is not long since made a *Portugal* Colony. Besides these, there are two great Burroughs of the natural *Brasilians*, in which are said to be above 2000 Inhabitants.

3. OF THE *HOLY GHOST*, (*del Spiritu Santo*) one of the most fertile Provinces of all *Brasil*; is well stored with Cotton-wool, and watered with the River *P. rayba*, large, and full of Fish. The only Town of note in it is *Spiritu Santo*, inhabited by about 200 *Portugals*. The chief building of it, a Church, Dedicated to *S. Francis*, a Monastery of Benedictines, and a College of Jesuits: the chief convenience, a safe and commodious Haven, capable of the greatest Vessels.

4. OF *PORTO SEGURO*, the secure haven, so called by *Capralis*, who first discovered it, when being tossed at sea by a terrible Tempest, he had here refreshed himself. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Porto Seguro*, built on the top of a white Cliff, which commands the Haven, most Antiquity then *Vine*, of more fame then bigness, as not containing fully 200 Families. 2. *Santa Cruz*, three Leagues from the other, a poor Town with as poor an Harbour. The Patrimony and Inheritance of the Dukes of *Avicira* in the Realm of *Portugal*. 3. *Santa Amara*, or *S. Omer*, once of great note for making Sugars, for which use here were five *Inganios*, or Sugar Engines; deserted by the *Portugals* for fear of the savages, against whom they had not power enough to make good the place, and the Sugars destroyed of purpose, that they might not come into the hands of the barbarous people.

5. OF *DES ILHEOS*, or of the Isles, so named from certain Islands lying adjacent the Bay on which the principal Town is seated, called also *Ilheos*, or the Islands, with like Analogy as a Town of good note in *Flanders*, hath the name of *Isula* or *Lisse*. The Town consisting of about 150 or 200 Families, situate on a little River, but neighboured by a great Lake of 12 Leagues in compass. (Out of which that River doth arise) full of a great, but wholesome Fish, which they call *Monatus*, some of which are affirmed to weigh 28 pounds. This Colony was much endangered by the *Guaynaries*, a Race of Savages more savage than any of their Fellows, who, being driven out of their own Country, fell into this Prefecture, which they had utterly destroyed, if some of *S. George's* Reliques, as the Jesuits tell us, (but I bind no man to believe it) sent by their General from *Rome*, Anno 1581, had not flayed their fury, and given the *Portugals* the better.

6. OF *TODOS LOS SANTOS*, or *All Saints*, so called from a large Bay of that name, upon which it lieth, in breadth two Leagues and an half, 18 Fathoms deep, and full of many little Islands; but flourishing and pleasant, and well stored with Cotton-wool. A Bay in which are many safe Stations and Roads for shipping, and therefore of great use and consequence in those furious Seas. Memorable for the hardy Enterprize of *Peter Heyn*, a Dutch man, Admiral of the Navy of the *United Provinces*; who, in the year 1627, seized on a Fleet of *Spaniards*, consisting of 26 sail of ships, (four of them being Men of War) all lying under the Protection of the Forts and Castles, built for the safety of that Bay. For thrusting in amongst them with his own Ship only (thereat

not being able to follow) he laid about him, that having sunk the Vice-Admiral, he took all the rest, conditioning only for their lives, notwithstanding all the shot which was made against him from the Ships and Castles, and 42 pieces of Ordnance planted on the shore. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *S. Salvador*, built on a little Hill on the North-side of the Bay by *Thomas de Sousa*, and fortified (besides the Wall) with three strong Castles, the one called *S. Anthony*, the other *S. Philip*, and the third *Tappeto*. Yet not so strong by reason of some Hills adjoining which command the Town, but that it was taken by the *Hollanders*, Anno 1624, recovered by the *Spaniards* the next year after, and since lost again. 2. *Paripé*, more within the Land, four Leagues from *S. Salvador*, 3. *Serrippe del Rey*, a small Town, and seated on as small a River, but amongst many rich Pastures, and some Veins of Silver.

7. OF *FERNAMEUCK*, one of the richest Prefectures for Tobacco, Sugar, and the great quantity of *Brasil*-wood, which is brought hence yearly for the Diers, in all this Country; but destitute of Corn and most other necessities, which supplied from the *Canaries*, and sometimes from *Portugal*. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Olinda*, the largest and best peopled of all *Brasil*, containing above 2000 persons; is not reckoning in the Church-men, nor taking the great number of Slaves which they keep for their Sugar-works into the account; for whose use they have here eight Parochial Churches, five Religious Houses, and some Hospitals. Situate near the Sea-side, but on an uneven piece of ground, as makes it not capable of a regular Fortification; the Haven being little, and not very commodious, but defended at the entrance, by a well-built Castle, and that well planted with *Beas*-pieces. Which notwithstanding, in the year 1595, the *Calle* and the Suburbs along the Port (wherein they used to stow their chief Commodities) were taken by Captain *Jones Lancaster* and some few of the *English*, who having landed in the Haven above a month, brought home with him eight of his own Ships, four *French* men, and three *Hollanders* which came in by chance, all laden with the choice Merchandise of *Brasil* and *Ledia*. 2. *Atmatta de Brasil*, ten miles from *Olinda*, the Inhabitants whereof live by killing the *Brasil*-wood. 3. *S. Laurencio*, a well-frequented Village, but as yet unwall'd. 4. *Poincar*, upon a River so named. 5. *Antonio de Cabo*, near the Cape of *S. Auguſtines*; both of good note for the great quantity of Sugars which are made in each. 6. *Garajá*, about five Leagues from *Olinda*, inhabited for the most part by poor and mechanical persons, till the year 1632, when taken by the *Hollanders*, and planted with a people of higher quality. This Prefecture, belonging formerly to the Earls of *Albuquerque*, (a great House in Spain) is now wholly in the hands of the States of the *Provinces* united: the Town of *Olinda* being taken by them in the year 1629, the Port and all the Avenues unto it so strongly fortified, that they have hitherto enjoyed it.

8. OF *TAMARACA*, so called from an Island of that name, distant about five miles from *Olinda*, of no great note, but for the Haven, and an impregnable Castle on the top of an Hill for defence thereof. Which when the *Hollanders* could not take, they built a strong Bulwark at the mouth of the Port, and to block it up, that it hath since been of no use to the *Spaniards*. This is the least Prefecture in *Brasil*, but withal the ancientest; extended three Leagues only in length, and but two in breadth: the Patrimony of the Earls of *Montano* in *Portugal*, who received hence yearly, when entire, thirty thousand Ducats. But his Reuts are much diminished, if not quite extinct, since the loss of the Haven.

9. OF *PARAIBA*, so called from a River of

that name (but by the *Spaniards* called *Domingo*) of most note herein, on the banks whereof standeth *Paraiba*, the chief Town of it, at the bottom of an Arm of the sea, about 3 Leagues from the main, but capable of pretty good Ships to the very Town. The Town inhabited not long since by 500 *Portugals*, besides Slaves and *Negrees*. Nor walled, till they began to stand in fear of the *Hollanders*, on the loss of *Olinda*; but more secured by a strong Castle on the Promontory called *Cabo Dely*, which the *Hollanders* have in vain attempted, then by any works within the Land. A Castle which acknowledgeth the *French* for the Founders of it, who for a while were possessed of this Tract, and gave name to an adjoining Haven, called, *Port Francois*, but outed by the *Portugals*, Anno 1585, who have since held their footing in it, but with fear of the *Hollanders*; especially since their taking of a little Island lying over against them, called the Isle of *Noronha*.

10. OF *RIO GRANDE*, so called from the River *Patingis*, (as the Natives term it) which the *Portugals* call *Rio Grande*, or the great River; not made a Prefecture till of late. For lying upon, as it were, to the next Pretender, time of the *French* began to fix here, Anno 1597. But the King of Spain, not willing to have any such Neighbour, commanded the Captain of *Paraiba* to drive them thence; which was done accordingly. But then the Savages beginning to rise up in Arms, the Captain of *Paraiba* was fain to seek aid from him of *Fernambuco*, by whose help having slain five thousand, and took three thousand of them, the rest became Vassals to the *Portugals*, who built here an impregnable Castle, (which is all the footing they have in it) well manned, and furnished with Ammunition and all other Necessaries very few *Portugals*, except those of the Garrison, being yet come over.

11. OF *SIARA*, a late Prefecture also, in which the *Portugals* have no more than a Castle, with a dozen Houses, or thereabouts, besides that of the Governor adjoining to it. So named from an Haven called *Siara*, but of no great note, and capable but of little Vessels. Of some Trade in regard of the Crystals, Cotton-wool, and some precious stones found in the Country hereabouts; and certainly would be of greater, if once the *Portugals* would be active and pursue the Conquest, here being great plenty of Sugar canes, but no Works to make it.

12. OF *MARAGNON*, an Island lying in the mouth of the great River for called, in the farthest parts of *Brasil* Northwards, and many Leagues distant from *Siara*, the last of their Prefectures; the Country intervening not yet discovered, or otherwise made known unto us, then by the names of the Ports and Promontories found upon the Coast. An Island of fruitful foil, if pains and Husbandry were not wanting; affording naturally Maiz; and a root called *Manioc*, both which the Savages use for Bread; good food of Cotton-wools, Saffron, *Brasil*-wood, and the best Tobacco; and in some places *Balm* and *Amber*. Watered with many fresh Rivers and pleasant Springs; well wooded both for Timber and Fuel; and, in a word, blessed with so temperate an Air, (though to near the *Equator*) that no place can be more commodious for the Life of Man. The People strong of body, healthy and long-lived, without any balneis, industrious in their Feather-works and Manufactures of Cotton; Women curious in ordering their Hair, fruitful in Child-bearing, and that till 80 years old, and sometimes more. Both sexes naked till their Marriage, and then apparelled only from the Waste to their Knees.

The Villages hereof possessed by the Natives consisted but of four great Houses; each of them two or three hundred foot in length, and twenty or thirty foot in breadth.

breadth fopaced as they resembled a quadrangular Cloyfer; and in each Houfe fo many Houtholds, that commonly each of their Villages, or *Taves*, (for fo they called them) contained three hundred perfons, and fome twice that number. Of thefe were twenty feven in all, whole names I hold impertinent to be multered herewith the total estimate of the people when the French came thither amounting to 12000 Souls. For the French trading in this Ifland, and carrying themselves courteoufly amongst the Natives, found them not unwilling to admit a Colony of that Nation, if fent over to them, by whole Aid they might free themselves from all other Pretenders, and be inftructed in the Gofpel. Accordingly a Colony and four Capuchin Friars are fent over to them, Anno 1612. fome Savages gained unto the Faith, and a ftrong Caſtle, called *S. Lewis*, commodiouly built, and planted with 22 pieces of Ordnance, the effect of that Voyage. But long they had not reſted there when difturb'd by the *Portugals*, ſent thither under the conduct of *Hierome d'Albuquerque*, Anno 1614. Who to the Caſtle of *S. Lewis*, which the French had built, added thoſe of *S. Mary*, and *S. Francis*, planted two Villages in the Ifland by the names of *S. Andrews*, and *S. Jago*, and ever ſince have held it without moleſtation.

13. Of *P. R. A.* the moſt Northern Prefecture of *Brazil* towards *Guiana*, fo called from the River of *P. r. a.* (ſuppoſed to be a branch of the River of *Amazon*) which runneth through it. The River at the mouth of it is two miles in breadth, and in the middle of the Channel fifteen Fathoms deep: on the banks whereof (but on an higher ground than the reſt) the *Portugals* have built the Caſtle of *P. r. a.* in form quadrangular, and well-walled, except towards the River: the Country thereabouts being inhabited by 300 *Portuguese*, beſides the Garriſon.

Now for the Fortunes of the whole, it never did acknowledge any one Supreme. Divided into many Tribes, and each Tribe governed by their Chiefs, as in other Countries. Theſe Tribes fo many, and the Muller of their names fo ufeleſs, that I now forbear it. In this cluſte they lived when diſcovered firſt, but by whom firſt diſcovered will not be agreed on. The *Spaniards*, to get fome colour of a Title for the Crown of *Caſtile*, aſcribe it to *John Pinſone* and *Diego de Lope*, two of their own Coun-

try, who, as they ſay, had landed on it in the year 1500 before the coming of *Capral*, though the fame year alſo. The *Portugals* attribute the Diſcovery of it to *Pedro Alvezes de Capral*, ſent by their King *Emanuel* to the *Eſt-Indies*; who being driven over thither from the Coaſt of *Guinea*, took poſſeſſion of it, and as a Memorial *Cruis*, or the Holy Croſs, to this new Diſcovery. That name changed afterwards to *Brazil*, from the abundance of that Wood (as it is conceived) which was found amongst them. Notice hereof being given to the Court of *Portugal*, *Americus Vefputius*, a noble *Portuguese*, Anno 1501. and after him *John de Empoli*, another of that Nation, in the year 1503, were by *Emanuel* employed in a further Diſcovery, Who ſpeeding fortunately in it, the *Portugals* did accordingly ſend over ſome Plantations thither. But a great controverſie growing betwixt them and the *Spaniards*, to whether of the two it of right belonged; the *Spaniards* were content to yield it to the Crown of *Portugal*, though by the Bull or Edict of Pope *Alexander* the ſixth (by whom the whole undiſcovered World was divided betwixt thoſe two Kings) it ſeemed to fall within the Grant made to the Crown of *Caſtile*. Enjoyed by *Sebastian*, (which *Sebastian* the Jeſuits look on as the Founder of all their Colledges in this Country) and by the *Spaniards*, ſince the death of *Henry*, (whole Reign continued but a year) though in the name and right of the Crown of *Portugal*, ſince the death of *Henry*, (whole Reign continued but a year) though in the name and right of the Subjects of *Spain* to grow great amongst them, for they poſſeſſed entirely without any Rivals, (I mean, for ſo much of the Country as they had ſubdued) till of late years the *Hollanders* put in for a part, and got the Prefectures of *Fernambuck* and *Toda* *les Santos* (or the Bay) by the right of War. The reſt with all the other Members of the Crown of *Portugal*, in the late Revolt of that Nation from the King of *Spain*, ſubmitting unto *John* the fourth, of the Houſe of *Braganza*, whom the *Portuguese* had made their Kings, Anno 1639.

And ſo much for *B. R. A. S. I. L.*

## OF G U I A N A.



*GUIANA* is bounded on the Eaſt with the main *Atlantic*; on the Weſt, with the Mountains of *P. r. a.*, or rather ſome undiſcovered Countries interpoſed betwixt them; on the North, with the River *Orenoque*, and on the South, with that of the *Amazon*. The reaſon of the name I find not, unleſs it be fo called from the River *Wiz*, of which more anon.

It is ſituate on both ſides of the Line, extended from the fourth Degree of Southern to the eighth of Northern Latitude. The Air, notwithstanding this ſituation under the *Equator*, is ſaid to be temperate, the Eaſtern

winds (which they call the *Brizes*) conſtantly blowing about Noon, and mitigating the extreme heat thereof by their cooler blaſts. The Country towards the Sea ſide flat and level, the inland parts more mountainous and ſwelled with Hills: in all places fo adorned with Natures Tapeſtry, the boughs and branches of the Trees never unclothed or left naked, (fruit either ripe or green growing full upon them) that no Country in the World could be better qualified. The particular Commodities of it we ſhall ſee anon, when the particular parts hereof come into diſcourſe.

Of the People it is ſaid in general, that they have amongst them no ſetled Government, and though they acknowledge ſome Superiority in the Chiefs of their Tribes,

yet

yet it is only voluntary, as long and as little as they pleaſe. Adultery and Murder, which are only puniſhable, are not otherwiſe expiated but by the death of the Offender. The richer ſort have two or three Wives, and ſometimes more; the poor but one, and hardly able to keep her; they that have more, and they who have but one, alike jealous of them; and if they take them in Adultery, without any farther Ceremony or Formalities of Law they beat out their Brains. Their Wives, eſpecially the elder, they uſe for Servants; and he which hath moſt ſlack is the greateſt man. Without Religion, or any notion of a Godhead; not fo far onwards on the way to the worſhip of the true God, as to be Idolaters: for though Idolatry be miſtaken in the proper Object, it ſuppoſeth a Deity; and they who have this principle, (that there is a God) have learned one, and not the leaſt, of the prepoſits of their Catechiſm. Their Accounts amongst themſelves they keep with a bundle of ticks, which they diminiſh or increaſe according to the times of their Contract. Their Funerals they ſolemnize with a Feaſt, but with ſuch diſcrity in the department of both Sexes, that while the Women houl extremely, the men perform the Obſequies with ſinging and excellent drinking; the one as improper for a Feaſt, as the other for a Funeral.

Rivers of moſt note in it, beſides 1. *Orenoque*, and 2. the River of *Amazon*, and thoſe rather Boundaries betwixt this and the neighbouring Provinces, then proper unto this alone. 3. *Aravari*. 4. *Conamini*. 5. *Caſiparough*, or *Caſſipure*, all falling into the ſame main *Atlantic*; betwixt the River of *Amazon* and *Wiapeco*: the laſt riſing out of the Lake of the *Aracobi*, half a mile broad at the mouth or Influx into the Sea, and but five fpanns deep. 6. *Wiapeco*, of which more hereafter. 7. *Wia. 8. Cajane*. 9. *Marnine*. 10. *Eſſequibe*, a River of twenty days journey long, betwixt *Wiapeco* and the River of *Orenoque*, or *Rallana*.

The whole divided commonly into theſe four parts: 1. *Rio de la Amazona*, or the River of *Amazon*. 2. *Wiapeco*, or *Guiana* ſpecially fo called. 3. *Orenoque*. And 4. *RIO DE LAS AMAZONES*, or the River of *Amazon*, containeth that part of this Country which lieth along the Traſt of that famous River. The Soil is in ſome places dry and barren, in others fertile and productive of the choicelt Fruits, full of large Woods, and in thoſe Woods moſt ſort of Trees which are to be found in *America*: One amongst others of moſt note, (and perhaps peculiar to *Guiana*), which they call the *Totoke*; a Tree of great bulk, and as great a Fruit; this laſt aſbig as a mans head, and ſo hard withal, that when the Fruit grows ripe and ready to fall, the people dare not go into the Woods without an Helmet, or ſome ſuch ſhelter over their heads, for fear of beating out their Brains. The kernels of it, for the moſt part ten or twelve in number, have the taſte of Almonds, and are ſaid to be provocative in point of Vnery. Of which the Savages have this By-word, *Pigue ſeſe in Saccone pigeon Totoke*; that is to ſay, Eat *Totoke* if thou wouldſt be potent in the acts of *Venus*. Here are alſo Sugar-canes in ſome places; and the Plant called *Pira*, the taſte whereof is ſaid to be like Strawberryes, Claret Wine, and Sugar.

The principal Inhabitants of this part of the Country, the *Taoes*, *Cockitians*, *Pattients*, *Tockians*, *Tomees*, and *Wackebans*, dwelling on the Continent; the *Maranos* and *Arrianis*, poſſeſſed of the Iſlands. Towns of note I have met with none amongst them, though every houſe (moſt of them 140 foot in length, 20 in breadth, and entertaining at the leaſt an hundred perfons) might paſſe ſufficiently for a Village. Yet they are ſaid to hold them ſo, for otherwiſe their Houſes would afford them but lit-

tle comfort in the overflows of the River, which drown all the Country: and therefore they beſetke themſelves to the tops of Trees, and there remain: like Birds, with their ſeveral Families, till the Waters be drawn in again, and the Earth become more comfortable for habitation. Yet I find none of theſe their dwellings called by proper Names: as, 1. *Mataram*. 2. *Roakry*. 3. *Auracopok*. 4. *Hauman*. 5. *Wumiam*: and 6. *Cogomymu*. But I find nothing but their names, and enough of that.

The firſt Diſcoverer of this River and the parts adjoining was *Orellana*, the Lieutenant of *Gonſalves Pizarro*, whom his Brother *Franciſco Pizarro*, then Vice-roy of *Peru*, had made the Governour of *Quito*. Moved by the noiſe of ſome rich Countries beyond the *Andes*, he raiſed ſufficient Forces, and paſſed over thoſe Mountains, where finding want of all things for the life of man, they made a Boat, and ſent this *Orellana* to bring in Proviſions. But the River which he chanced into was ſo ſwift of courſe, that he was not able to go back; and was therefore of neceſſity to obey his fortune in following the courſe of that ſtrong water. Paſſing along by divers deſolate and unpeopled places, he came at laſt into a Country planted and inhabited, where he firſt heard of the *Amazon*, (by whole Savages called *Comaypurá*) of whom he was bidden to beware as a dangerous people. And in the end, having ſpent his time in paſſing down this river from the beginning of *January*, to the end of *Auguſt* 1540, he came at laſt into the Sea, and getting into the ſide of *Cubagua*, ſailed into *Spain*. The courſe of this Voyage down the Water, he eſtimated at 1800 Leagues, or 5400 *Engliſh* miles; but found no *Amazon* in his paſſage, as himſelf affirmed; only ſome maſculine Women ſhewed themſelves intermixt with the Men, to poſſeſs his landing; and in ſome places he found Men with long Hair like Women: either of which might make theſe parts believed to be held by *Amazon*. But to proceed, arriving at the Court of *Spain*, he got Commiſſion for the Conqueſt of the Countries by him diſcovered; and in the year 1549, he betook himſelf unto the ſervice. But though he found the mouth of the River, one of them at leaſt, he could never hit upon the Channel which brought him down, though he attempted often. Which ill ſuccels, with the conſideration of his loſs both in Fame and Fortunes, brought him to his Grave; having got nothing but the honour of the firſt Diſcovery, and the leaving of his name to that famous River, ſince called *Orellana*. The Enterprize was puniſhed, but with little ſuccels, by one *Pedro de Orſina*, Anno 1560, after which the *Spaniards* gave it over. And though the *Engliſh*, and the *Hollanders* have endeavoured an exact Diſcovery, and feverally begun ſome Plantations in it, yet they proved as unfortunate as the other; their Quarters being beaten up by the neighbouring *Portugals*, before they were ſufficiently fortified to make any reſiſtance.

2. *WIAPOCO*, or *GUIANA* ſpecially fo called, taketh up the middle of this Country, on both ſides of the River of *Wiapeco*, whence it hath its name. A River of a long Courſe, but not paſſible up the Stream above 16 miles, by reaſon of a Cataſt or great fall from the higher ground: in breadth betwixt that Cataſt and the *Aſturium*, about the tenth part of a mile at the *Aſturium*, or Influx, a whole mile at leaſt, and there about two Fathoms deep.

The Country on both ſides of this River very rich and fertile; ſo natural for Tobacco, that it groweth to nine handfulls long. Sugar-canes grow here naturally without any planting, and on the Shrubs great ſtore of Cotton, and the Dye by ſome called *Orellana*. Plenty of Vnion in their Woods, and of Fills in their Rivers: their Fields well ſtored with Beatts, which themſelves call



Moyes, in shape and use resembling Kine, but without any Horns. The people generally of a modest and ingenuous countenance, naked, but would wear cloaths if they had them, or knew how to make them. Their Bread is made of a Plant called *Cassavi*, of which also being dried and chewed, and then strained through a Wicker Vell, they make a kind of Drink, in colour like new Ale, but not so well tasted, and of less continuance. The greatest part of their Food is Fish, which they intoxicate with a strong-scented Wood, and to take them up as they lie floating on the top of the Water. Much troubled with a Worm like Flea (by the *Spaniards* called *Nigua*) which get under the nails of their Feet, and multiply there to infinite numbers, and the no less torture of the Patient, without speedy Punction. No better Remedy found out, then to pour Wax melted hot on the place affected, which being pulled off when its cold, draws the Vermen within, sometimes 3000 at a pull. The women have such easy child-birth, that they are delivered without help, and presently bring the Child to his Father, (for they have so much natural modesty as to withdraw from company upon that occasion) who washeth it with water, and painteth it with several colours, and so returneth it to the Mother.

Rivers of note here are very many; no Country under Heaven being better watered, nor fuller of more pleasant and goodly streams. The names of some of them on both sides of the *Wapoco* we have had before: the chief of which I take to be *Wia*, affirmed to be of a long course, a goodly River all the way, and at the Mouth thereof to be large and broad, which passing through the heart of the Country, in the fourth Degree and 40 minutes of Northern Latitude, may possibly occasion both the whole and this part more especially to be called *Wiana*, and by the *Dutch*, who cannot pronounce the *W*, *Guiana*. Certain I am, that by the name of *Wiana*, I have found it written in approved Authors. But what need further search be made after lesser Rivers, (which will offer themselves to us of their own accord) when we have a Lake to pass over like a Sea for bigones, *Macagnan*, *Sanfium*, & *Watum*, *Ashtar*, *Naris*, as my Author hath it; by the *Tau* or *Tau* called *Kapomintin*, by the *Caribes* (the old Inhabitants of this Country) *Parimay*; situate about a days journey from the River *Esequibo*, and neighbored by the great and famous City *Mama*, which the *Spaniards* call *El Dorado*, (or the Golden City) from the abundance of Gold, in Coin, Plate, Armour, and other Furniture, which was said to be it. The greatest City, as some say, not only of *America*, but of all the World. For *Diego de Ordaz*, one of the Companions of *Cortez* in his Mexican Wars, and by him condemned for a Mutiny, put into a Boat alone without any Victual, and so call out to seek his Fortune, affirmed at his return; that being taken by some of the *Guianians*, and by them carried to their King, then residing at *Mamabe*, entered the City at high noon, travelled all the rest of that day, and the next all until night, before he came to the Kings Palace; but then he saith that he was led blind-fold all the way. And therefore possibly enough this City might be no such Miracle as the story makes it. *Don Diego* being either abused by the Reports of the Savages, or willing to abuse the World with such empty Fictions. For though the *Spaniards* and the *English* have severally sought out that with incredible diligence, to find out this City, yet none of them have hitherto had the fortune to fall upon it. So that I fear it may be laid in the Poets Language.

— Et quod non invenis inquam.

Essequibo inquam — f. e.

That which is no where to be found.

Think not to be above the ground.

Not is there much more credit to be given unto his

Relations of the great Court kept here by one of the *Ingos*; who being, forthwith, one of the younger Brethren of *Atabalipa*, the late King of *Peru*, at the Conquest of that Kingdom, with many thousands of his Followers, came into this Country, and subduing the *Caribes*, erected here a second *Peruvian* Monarchy. For, besides that *Atabalipa* had no Brethren but *Guscar* and *Mango*, who both died in *Peru*, how improbable must it needs appear, that this *Guianian* King, knowing full well the thirst of the *Spaniards* after Gold, would either suffer him to return and disclose the Secrets of his State, or send him away loaded with Gold, as 'tis said he did? who sheweth his Treasure to a Thief, doth deserve to die. And therefore, letting pass these dreams of an *El Dorado*, let us descend to places of less Magnificence, but of greater Reality. Amongst which I reckon, 1. *Caripou*, most memorable for a Colony of *English* there planted by Captain *Robert Harcourt*, Anno 1600, situate on the Banks of the *Wapoco*, near the Mouth thereof, on the advantage of a Rock, and that Rock of difficult access, that they feared no danger from an Enemy. The Air is found and answerable to the constitution of an *English* body, that of 30, which were left there for three years together, there died but six, and those six rather by misfortune, and some cross accident, then by any Diseases. 2. *Gomeribou*, on the top of an Hill, near the mouth of the Bay of *Wapoco*, possessed by a while by some *Hollanders*, but soon deserted. 3. *Moyemon*, a Village of the *Paragoti*, on the banks of the River *Murivou*. 4. *Crevinay*, on the other side of the same River, possessed by the *Caribes*. The King of the fish (for each Tribe had its several Princes) being named *Maperitica*, affirmed to be a virtuous man, and kind to Strangers; of the latter, *Minapa*. 5. *Tanparamenou*, about an hundred Leagues from the mouth of that River; and 6. *Morogbes*, four days journey from the other: both possessed by the *Caribes*. The King or Cacique of those last, as Captain *Harcourt*'s being there, (of which time we speak) was named *Aracurita*, affirmed to have a skin like a piece of Bull.

The principal Families of this part, besides the *Tau* or *Tau*, and the *Marauis*, spoken of before, who possess almost all the Sea Coasts of this Country, are said to be the *Arancea*, the *Sapayay*, the *Moyes*, and the *Aracurita* of different Languages and Customs, though near neighbours unto one another. Originally Inhabitants of the Island of *Trinidad*, and the River of *Orenoque*: whence driven by the *Spaniards* they came into this Tract, and beating the old Inhabitants, whom they call by the common name of *Caribes*, higher into the Country, possessed themselves of the Sea shores and the parts adjoining; each Tribe or Family being governed by its several Chief, as before was intimated. The *Netherlanders* for a time had some footing in it, but they quickly left it; endeavouring nothing more in the time of their short stay amongst them, then to make the people disaffected to the *English*, of whose pretensions to these parts, and designs to plant them, they had good intelligence. And so much was confided by some of the Natives, when they had found by good experience and acquaintance how much the *English* were abused in those Mist-reports. Afterwards in the year 1503, Captain *Charles Leigh* set sail from *Wolrich* on the *Thames*, and in May fell upon the River of *Wapoco*, where he was kindly entertained, granted with an House and Garden, and his Aid craved against the *Caribes* and other Enemies. He took possession of the Country in the name of King *James*, and the Crown of *England*, and caused the River of *Wapoco* to be called (by his own name) *Caroleigh*; but that name ended with his Life, and that shortly after, he dying in his return on Ship-board. The design went forwards notwithstanding,

withstanding, and in the year 1608, an *English* Colony is brought hither by Captain *Harcourt*, a new possession taken in the name of King *James*, the Colony planted at *Carpo* before mentioned, the Country farther searched into by that noble Gentleman then ever formerly by any or by many since. After three years, the Colony, wanting its Supply, returned home again; the Plantation never since pursued, though by some projected. Yet so far are these Savages beholden to the *English* Nation, that as they did defend them at their being there against the *Caribes*, so at their going off they taught them the use of Arms, and put them into a posture of defence, enabling them thereby to preserve themselves against all their enemies.

3. O R E N O Q U E, or the Province of the River *Orenoque*, comprehendeth the North parts of *Guiana*, lying upon and between the Banks of that famous River, of which we have already spoken. The Country is very rich and pleasant, confiding of large Plains many miles in compass, adorned with the Embroidery of Flowers and unknown Plants, exceeding pleasant to the Eye; and sometimes interlaced with Hills, reported to be furnished with rich Mines of Gold, and Silver. The Rivers liberally stored with Fish, and the Forests both with Beasts and Fowls. No Country in *America*, nor *Peru* it self, did to be comparable to it for abundance of Treasure. Some also add a whole Mountain of Crystal to be seen afar off from *Wineaporo*; and tell us (but in general terms) of more goodly Cities then elsewhere in all *Peruana*: but neither the *Spaniards* nor the *English* could ever see them, though they diligently searched into all parts of the Country.

The People, as of several Nations, of of several Natures. The *Capuri* and *Macures*, for the most part Carpenters, live by making Canoes or Boats, which they sell unto *Guiana* for Gold, and to *Trinidad* for Tobacco, in the immoderate taking whereof they exceed all Nations. When a Cacique or Commander dieth, they make great lamentation; and after the Fish is putrified and fallen from the Bones, they take up the Skeleton, and hang it up in the House where he dwelt, decking his skull with Feathers of all colours, and hanging Gold Plates about the bones of his Arms and Thighs. Of the *Tritonius*, dwelling upon some of the Northern Branches, it is affirmed by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, that they are a goodly and valiant people, and to have the most manly and most delicate speech of any Nation in the World. A people, which eat of nothing that is fit or fowly; the Children of Dame Nature, and therefore will not be beholden for their livelihood unto Art or Industry; using the tops of the *Palmito*-Tree for Bread; Fish, Deer, and Swines-Rub for the rest of their sustenance. The *Assaway*, *Sayma*, *Wigiri*, and *Aroras*, affirmed to be as black as *Negroes*, but with smoother Hair; and to use Arrows dipped in so strange a poison, as doth not only bring death, but death with most unpeakeable torments, especially if the wounded party be permitted to drink. Of the *Arancea* of this Tract I find nothing singular, but that when any of their Kings or Caciques die, their Wives and nearest of the Kindred beat their Bones to powder, and mingle it with their drink, like Spice.

Places of most importance in it (for to speak anything particularly of those many Rivers which fall into the *Orenoque* were an endless labour; are, 1. *Comoliba*, on the mouth of *Orenoque*, but somewhat distant, in which they keep their annual Fairs for the sale of Women. One of our *English* men, left by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Anno 1595, at *Armench* that he bought eight of them (the eldest not above eighteen) for a half penny red-hatted Knife, which he brought from *England*. But withal, rather us, for his credit, that he gave them to some *Spaniards* of his acquaintance. 2. *Moquiro*, a known Port upon some branch of

the *Orenoque*; of much use to the *English* in their shift Discovery of these parts. 3. *Wineaporo*, so called from another branch of that River bearing this name, from whence was shewed an high Hill, said to be of Crystal, but so far off, that it was thought better to believe then to go and see. Others report of this Mountain, that above it there is a mighty River, which, falling down this Cataract on the lower grounds, makes a terrible noise, as if a thousand Bells were knocked one against another. And so little enough it is, that this great fall of Water discerned far off may (with the help of Sun-shine) carry some resemblance of a Crystalline Mountain. 4. *S. Thomas*, situate on the main Channel of the River *Orenoque*, a Town of 140 Houses, stretched out in length for half a mile, but flighly built; a Parish Church in the midst of it, and at the west end a Convent of *Franciscan* Friars. The only Town of all *Guiana* possessed by the *Spaniards*, not fortified till against the last coming of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Anno 1617, but taken by him at that time, and since that by the *Hollanders*, Anno 1629; though by both quitted not long after, it returned to the *Spaniards*.

The several Nations of this Tract have been named before. Discovered first by *Diego de Ordaz*, Anno 1531, furnished with a Patent for the Conquest of it by *Charles* the Fifth, But not hitting on the right Channel, or otherwise not able to overcome the difficulties which lay before him, he returned to *Spain*, effecting nothing but the opening of the way to others. Followed herein by *Hierem* de *Ortal*, Anno 1533, and after by *Herrera*, who proceeded farther then the others, Anno 1536, and finally by *Gonsalvo Ximinez de Quisada* and *Antonio Berro*, with far better fortune: who by beginning their journey from the *New Realm of Granada* in the search of *Guiana*, fell casually into this great River, as *Orellana* did before into that of the *Amazon*. But yet not perfectly discovered till the year 1595, in which Sir *Walter Raleigh* having taken Prisoner this *Antonio Berro*, and learning of him the success of his Expedition, resolved upon the Undertaking; and searched for far into the Country by the course of this River, that some have since called it *Ruliana*. The business was followed the next year (after his return) by Captain *Lawrence Keymis*, employed by *Raleigh* in that Service, who at his coming found the Country possessed by the *Spaniards*; by whom 20 or 30 of the moveable houses of the Savages had been laid together like a Town, and all the Natives, who would well to the *English*, dispersed and scattered. So that without any other check of this journey, then the finding out the true mouth of the *Orenoque* (which he first discovered) he set sail for *England*. In the mean time it had been moved at the Court, that a Colony of *English* should be planted there, and some proportionable force sent over to make good the Action. But the motion was upon good advice rejected, first in regard of the distance of it from the main body of our strength; and secondly, because the *Spaniards*, bordering near upon it, might easily cast out small forces, and make the enterprise dishonourable to the *English* Nation, who had then the better of him in the point of honourable Achievements. It was permitted notwithstanding unto private Adventurers to try their Fortunes on it, without engaging of the State: whereupon followed the Voyages of *Leigh* and *Harcourt*, before spoken of. But they, not being able to go through with so great a business, let it fall again. And so it relied till the last unfortunate Voyage of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, licensed by Commission under the Great Seal to search into some Mines of Gold and Silver, which he was credibly informed of when he was in this Country. A design followed with great hopes by the Undertakers, most of them being persons of honour, and well attended: but so unfortunate in the issue, (the *Spaniards* being

being made acquainted with it before his coming) that at the taking of S. Thome he lost his own Son, and a great part of his Forces, and after his return (not able with the residue to make good his ground against the enemy) was executed on a former Attainder in the old Palace of Westminster, Octobr. 29. Anno 1618. Of whom I cannot but note what was said by Camden Clarenceux in his Annals: *Pir erat iniquam satis laudato studio & Regionis re-mota detegendi, & Navalem Anglie gloriam promovendi. And so I leave him to his rest in the Bed of Peace.*

4. The *ISLANDS* which properly are accounted of as parts of *Guiana*, lie either scattered on the shore, or in the mouths or bodies of the greater Rivers; some of them not inhabited, others of no name, and none at any of any reckoning. Only the Isle of 1. *Trinidad*, and 2. *Tabago*, are of some esteem: which though somewhat farther off from the shores of this Country, yet being that of *Trinidad* lieth in the mouth of the *Orenoque*, and that both of them with *Guiana* pass but for one Prefecture, or Provincial Government, we shall describe them in this place.

1. *TRINIDAD*, or *Insula S. Trinitatis*, lieth at the mouth of the River *Orenoque*, over against *Paria*, from which separated by a Frith, or Streight, by *Columbus*, who first discovered it, called *Boca del Drago*, or the Dragon mouth, because of the dangerousness of the passage. Extended from the ninth to the tenth Degree of Northern Latitude; the most Southern Angle of it called *Punta del Gato*, as that on the North-east *Punta de Galera*. The Frith, or Streight but three miles over, yet made more narrow by the Interposition of four or five little Islands, which the Sea breaketh through with great violence, leaving only two entrances for Shipping into the Gulf, called the *Gulf of Paria*. The length hereof 25 Leagues, the breadth 18. Of a cloudy and unhealthy Air, but a fertile soil, abundantly well stored with such Commodities, as are of the natural growth of *America*, viz. Maize, Sugar-canes, Cotton-wool, and the best kind of Tobacco, much celebrated formerly by the name of a *Pipe of Trinidad*. Here is also a sufficiency of Fruits and Cat-

tel for the use of the Natives; and here and there some Veins of Gold, and other Metals: such store of Pitch, that innumerable Ships might be laden with it; but that it is conceived to be unfit for the calking of Ships, because it softneth in the Sun. The place in which it groweth is by the *Spaniards* called *Terra de Brea*, by the Natives *Pichen*.

The People of the same nature and disposition with the other *Americans*, distinguished into several Tribes, but most of them reduced under the power of two petty Princes. But the greater part of the Inhabitants, to avoid the Tyranny of the *Spaniards*, took their Country, and retired over into *Guiana*, where before we found them. The chief Town of it called S. *Joseph*, situate on the South-side of the Island, on the banks of a little River which the Natives call *Carone*, the ordinary Residence of the Governour, who hath under him besides this Island the Provinces of *Guiana* and *El Dorado*, (for so goes his Title) yet a small Town, confining but of 40 Houses when it was taken, Anno 1595. by Sir *Walter Raleigh*; *Antonio Berreo* the Governour of it being then made Prisoner, who furnished his taker with many Notions (and some merely fabulous) towards the Discovery of *Guiana*.

This Island, first discovered by *Christopher Columbus*, in his third Voyage, Anno 1497, was by him called *La Trinidad*, it may be with some reference to the form hereof, shooting into the Sea with three points or Promontories. Nothing else memorable in the fortunes and Story of it, but what is touched upon before.

2. *TABAGO* lieth on the North-east of *La Trinidad*, from which eight miles distant: full of fair Harbours for the bigness, watered with 18 little Rivers, and well stored with Woods; amongst which some *Palmito* Trees, some like that of the Brazil-wood, others not elsewhere to be found. Of Fowl and Fish sufficient to maintain it self. Now called *New Wales*, with reference to an Island of that name in *Zealand*, by some of the *Low-Country-men*, who begin to plant there.

And so much for *GUIANA*.

## O F

# P A R I A.



*PARIA* is bounded on the East with *Guiana*, and the Islands in the mouth of the *Orenoque*; on the West, with the Gulf or Bay of *Venezuela*, and part of the new Realm of *Granada*, on the North, with the main *Atlantic* Ocean, or *Mare del Noords*; the Countries lying on the South not discovered hitherto.

It took this name from a mistake of the *Spaniards*, (as *Pere* and *Juanon* on the like) who asking, as all men do, the names of those new Regions which they discovered, and pointing to the Hills afar off, were answered, *Paria*, that is to say, high Hills or Mountains, (for here begins the Lodge of Mountains which are thence continued for the space of 3600 miles, to the Straights of *Magellan*) and so hath ever since held the name of *Paria*. By some writers it is called *Nova Andalusia*; but I adhere unto the former.

The nature of the Soil and People being very different, will be more properly considered in the several parts. The whole divided into the Continent and the Islands, which, with their Sub-divisions may be branched into these particulars, viz. 1. *Cumana*, 2. *Venezuela*, 3. *S. Margarita*, 4. *Cubagua*; and 5. the lesser Islands.

1. *CUMANA* hath on the East the Gulf of *Paria*, and the River *Orenoque*; on the West, *Venezuela*; on the North and South bounded as before. So called from *Cumana*, one of the Rivers of it, on the banks whereof some *Dominican* Friars (who first set footing in this Country) built themselves a Monastery; that name being communicated afterwards unto all the rest of this Tract.

It extended East and West to the breadth of 110 Leagues; the length thereof, from North to South, said to be 400. But there is little of it known, and less of it planted by the Europeans; except some places near the sea: there being no part of all *America*, the descripti-

on whereof hath come so imperfectly to our hands, as I may call it. *Martyrdom*: which was revenged by *Alonso de Ojeda*, Anno 1520. and he not long after slain by the *Savages*, who also at the same time destroyed two Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciscan* Friars, which had been founded in the year 1518. A second force sent thither under *Gonzalo de Ocampo*, waileth a great part of the Country, beheads one of their Kings, and hangs some of his people. But that strength being withdrawn, or defeated also, *Diego de Castellon* is sent over by the Council resident in *Hispaniola*, to secure the possession of the Country; by whom the *Castle* first, and after the *Burrough* of *Cumana* was built and planted. Some other attempts there were for a farther Conquest, but they proved nothing but attempts; except the building of the *Castle* of S. *Michael de Neve*, by *Hierom of Ortal*, and the Discovery of some of the inland Provinces, 150 Leagues from the sea-side, by *Antonio Saldano*, Anno 1537, of which nothing followed, but the Registering of that tedious March.

2. *VENEZUELA* is bounded on the East with *Cumana*, on the West, with the Bay of *Venezuela*, the Lake of *Maracaybo*, and the new Realm of *Granada*. So called by *Alonso de Ojeda*, one of the first Discoverers of it, Anno 1509, because he found a Burrough of some of the *Savages* situate in the midst of the waters, to which was no passage but by Boat: the word importing as much as *Little Venice*.

It is in length from East to West 130 Leagues; in breadth where broadest about 80. The Soil plentiful of all sorts both of Fruit and Grain, the Country so replenished with kind of Cattel, and excellent Pastures to maintain them, that the Neighbouring Nations call it by the name of the *Granary*. Such store there groweth from hides of Wheaten Meal, Basket, Cheese, Hogs, fish, Ox-hides, and Cloth of Cotton ready made, as very well deserves that Title. Here is also a very great plenty of Fish, wild Beasts for hunting, Mines of Gold and other Metals: besides an infinite deal of *Sarsaparilla* sent to Europe yearly. The people are of the same Nature and Disposition with those of *Cumana*, with whom they do participate in all points of that Character. The Women (which was there omitted) trained up to ride, run, leap, and swim, as well as the men to Till the Land; and look to the business of the house, whilst the men hunt or fish to bring in Provision. They count it a great part of Beauty to have very thick Thighs; which they effect by binding their Legs hard below the Knee from their very Childhood. Shameless enough till married, after more reserved & thought rather for fear of a Divorce, than for love of Modesty.

Rivers of note I meet with none, instead of which are many convenient Harbours and capacious Bays. The chief that called *Golfo* isle, from some Shipwrecks, or the like misfortune happening to the Name of it. 2. The Bay of *Coro*, or *Venezuela*, large and spacious, which by the Frith or Streight hath a League over, receiveth the Tribute of 3. The great Lake called the Lake of *Maracaybo*, by the *Spaniards* called *Lago de Nuegra Senora*, or our Ladies Lake, in compass about eighty Leagues; on the Banks whereof dwell many Nations of the *Savages*, and into which there falleth a River from the Realm of *Granada*, by which the two Provinces maintain Commerce with one another.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Maracaybo*, the farthest Port upon the East, and one of the best on this Coast, in which the *Spaniards* of *Cubagua* had once a Garrison, under colour of defending the Country against the *Savages*, but in plain truth to use it for an opportunity to seize upon their persons, and carry them away for Slaves. Those parts are hereby unpeopled, or but

may call it. *Martyrdom*: which was revenged by *Alonso de Ojeda*, Anno 1520. and he not long after slain by the *Savages*, who also at the same time destroyed two Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciscan* Friars, which had been founded in the year 1518. A second force sent thither under *Gonzalo de Ocampo*, waileth a great part of the Country, beheads one of their Kings, and hangs some of his people. But that strength being withdrawn, or defeated also, *Diego de Castellon* is sent over by the Council resident in *Hispaniola*, to secure the possession of the Country; by whom the *Castle* first, and after the *Burrough* of *Cumana* was built and planted. Some other attempts there were for a farther Conquest, but they proved nothing but attempts; except the building of the *Castle* of S. *Michael de Neve*, by *Hierom of Ortal*, and the Discovery of some of the inland Provinces, 150 Leagues from the sea-side, by *Antonio Saldano*, Anno 1537, of which nothing followed, but the Registering of that tedious March.

2. *VENEZUELA* is bounded on the East with *Cumana*, on the West, with the Bay of *Venezuela*, the Lake of *Maracaybo*, and the new Realm of *Granada*. So called by *Alonso de Ojeda*, one of the first Discoverers of it, Anno 1509, because he found a Burrough of some of the *Savages* situate in the midst of the waters, to which was no passage but by Boat: the word importing as much as *Little Venice*.

It is in length from East to West 130 Leagues; in breadth where broadest about 80. The Soil plentiful of all sorts both of Fruit and Grain, the Country so replenished with kind of Cattel, and excellent Pastures to maintain them, that the Neighbouring Nations call it by the name of the *Granary*. Such store there groweth from hides of Wheaten Meal, Basket, Cheese, Hogs, fish, Ox-hides, and Cloth of Cotton ready made, as very well deserves that Title. Here is also a very great plenty of Fish, wild Beasts for hunting, Mines of Gold and other Metals: besides an infinite deal of *Sarsaparilla* sent to Europe yearly. The people are of the same Nature and Disposition with those of *Cumana*, with whom they do participate in all points of that Character. The Women (which was there omitted) trained up to ride, run, leap, and swim, as well as the men to Till the Land; and look to the business of the house, whilst the men hunt or fish to bring in Provision. They count it a great part of Beauty to have very thick Thighs; which they effect by binding their Legs hard below the Knee from their very Childhood. Shameless enough till married, after more reserved & thought rather for fear of a Divorce, than for love of Modesty.

Rivers of note I meet with none, instead of which are many convenient Harbours and capacious Bays. The chief that called *Golfo* isle, from some Shipwrecks, or the like misfortune happening to the Name of it. 2. The Bay of *Coro*, or *Venezuela*, large and spacious, which by the Frith or Streight hath a League over, receiveth the Tribute of 3. The great Lake called the Lake of *Maracaybo*, by the *Spaniards* called *Lago de Nuegra Senora*, or our Ladies Lake, in compass about eighty Leagues; on the Banks whereof dwell many Nations of the *Savages*, and into which there falleth a River from the Realm of *Granada*, by which the two Provinces maintain Commerce with one another.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Maracaybo*, the farthest Port upon the East, and one of the best on this Coast, in which the *Spaniards* of *Cubagua* had once a Garrison, under colour of defending the Country against the *Savages*, but in plain truth to use it for an opportunity to seize upon their persons, and carry them away for Slaves. Those parts are hereby unpeopled, or but

meanly populous. 2. *Venezuela*, the most Western Town of all the Province, commonly called *Caracas*, situate in the Latitude of 11 Degrees: built on the sea, where it hath an Haven on each side: the one capacious but not safe, the other safe enough, but not very capacious. But being built in a sweet and healthy air, and neighboured by the richest soil of all the Country, it hath been long the ordinary seat of the Governour, and the See of a Bishop. (Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Domingo in Hispaniola*.) Once suddenly surprized by the English, Anno 1595, and burnt to ashes; but as suddenly repaired again. 3. *Caravalleda*, or *Nuestra Señora de Caravalleda*, 80 Leagues from *Caracas* towards the East, seated upon the sea near an unsafe Haven, and defended from assault by the Castle of *Caracas*: so called from the name of the Tribe in which it standeth. Near unto which the Hills arise to so great an height, that they seem to equal the Pike of *Tenassiro* so much talked of. 4. *S. Jago de Leon*, in the same Tribe of *Caracas*, taken by the English in the same years. 5. *Nova Valencia*, 2 Leagues from *S. Jago de Leon*, and from *Caracas* 60. 6. *New Xerez* lately built fifteen leagues on the south of *New Valencia*. 7. *Nova Segovia*, one league only from *New Xerez*: situate on the Banks of *Baraquicimiri*, the most noted River of this Tract. 8. *Tucayo* in the Valley for called: not very large, but plentifully loaded with rich sugar-cane, for which some sugar-works or Ingenios are here lately built. 9. *Traxillo*, or *Nuestra Señora de la Paz*, 18 leagues on the south of the great Lake of *Maracaybo*, on which the Inhabitants heretofore have a Village which belongs unto it, where they hold a Factory for the sale of their Wares. 10. *Laguna*, on the bottom of the Lake it self; not else observable but for the multitude of Tigers which do haunt about it.

This Country, discovered by *Columbus*, and named by *Alonso de Ojeda*, as before is said, was first pretended to, for Neighbourhood sake, by the Spaniards planted in *Cubagua*. Afterwards *John de Ampuez*, by order from the Council resident at *Domingo in Hispaniola*, was employed in the Discovery of it, Anno 1527. But *Charles the Fifth*, having taken up great sums of money of the *Vesperi*, a wealthy Family of *Angsburg*, pawned this Country to them, by whom *Ambrusius Alfinger* was sent with 400 Foot, and 80 Horse to take possession. But he and his successors in that Employment not minding so much the Conquest as the spoil of the Country, the Council of *Domingo* undertook the business once again: and in the year 1545, sent over one *John de Caravay*, who treading in the steps of the *Governor*, or rather out-going them in all sorts of Rapine, was ousted on a second Order by one *John Perez de Tolosa*, by whom the Province was reduced into some good order. In the year 1550, the *Negros*, brought hither in great multitudes out of *Africk*, began to mutiny; but their design was discovered, and themselves all slain. Peace and contentment following after all these Troubles, the Country was in little time so thoroughly planted, and the Natives so encouraged in their several Tribes, that notwithstanding the destructions made by the *Germans* and *Spaniards*, there were reckoned not long since above 100000 of the Savages: not numbering those above fifty, or under 18 years of age, who, by an Order of the Council of *Spain* for these parts of *America*, are exempt from Taxes.

3. *MARGARITA* is an Island situate over against the *Salina* or Salt-Lake in *Cumana*, from the main Land whereof it is distant above seven Leagues. So called from the abundance of Pearls which the Spaniards found at the first discovery, which the *Latinists* call *Margaritas*, and from them the *Spaniards*. Which though it signify no other than the vulgar or common Pearl, yet here were also found of those of the greater climate, such as the Ro-

mans by the figure of *Antiphras* called *Uniones*, because they always grew in couples. *Nalli duo reperitur indissociari*, faith *Pliny*; unde nomen Unionum scilicet Romanæ impoierit delicia.

The Isle is affirmed to be 16 Leagues in length, and fix in breadth; situate under the 11 Degree of Northern Latitude. Well stored with Pearls upon the Shores, when first discovered; but even then, when most plentifully stored with that Commodity, she had not water other own to quench her thirst, compelled to fetch it from *Cumana*. Otherwise plentiful enough both of Maize and Fruits. The people obsequiously servile to their Lords, the *Spaniards*: so long accustomed unto Bondage, that it is now grown another nature. Places of most importance in it, 1. *Monaster*, in the East corner of the Islands a Fort of the Spaniards, built for securing their rich Trade of Pearl-fishing, and to defend their Ships which lie there at Anchor: within the command whereof is a little Borough, and the House of the Governour. 2. *Elvado de Santa Luzia*, two leagues from the Sea a Spanish Colony. 3. *Makana*, the chief Village of the Natives.

This Island, first discovered in the third Voyage of *Columbus*, Anno 1498, grew suddenly into great esteem, by reason of the rich Pearl-fishing which they found on the Shores thereof. And in regard the Natives were ready to betray their Treasures, (of which themselves made little reckoning) they found more favour from the Spaniards, and obtained more Liberties from the King, than the rest of the Savages. Inasmuch that the Spaniards either could not, or would not compel them to dive into the Sea for Pearl; but bought *Negroes* Slaves from *Cumana* and the Coasts of *Africk*, whom they inforced with great Torments to dive into the bottom of the Sea, many times seven or eight fathom deep, to bring up the shells in which that Treasure was included: where many of them were drowned, and some maimed with Sharks and other Fishes. But that rich Trade is much diminished of late, if it fail not quite. The cause thereof to be imputed to the insatiable Avarice of the Spaniards, so greedily upon Pearl, that they destroyed the very Seed, and making gain of whatsoever they could meet with, for a little present profit, lost the hopes of the future. The Island is since less famous, and not much frequented. Visited to its coast in the year 1601, by the English under Capt. *Parker*, who received here 500 l. in Pearls for the ransom of Prisoners; and took a Ship which came from the Coast of *Angola*, laden with 370 *Negroes* to be sold for Slaves.

4. *CUBAGNA* is an Island lying betwixt *Margarita* and the Promontory of *Arya* upon the Continent; from the first distant but one League, from the other fix; it self in compass about three. Rich on the shores by the abundance of Pearls which were found there, but very beggerly on the Land. Destitute both of Grass and Water, by consequence of Cattel also, except only *Cornies*, and but few of those. So that like many a Gallant, who spend all upon the Back, and nothing on the Belly, he had her out-lid-laced with Pearls, but within nothing to be found but want and hunger. Their Bread and water brought them out of other Countries, and their Fruits too, if they desired to have any there being very few Trees, and those most of *Cucuzum*. But so abundant in this treasure, that the Kings Fifths for many years amounted to 15000 Ducats yearly out of this poor Island.

In this respect it was presently referred to and possessed by the Spaniards, who planted here a Colony, which they called *New Cadix*, and grew in short time unto so great power, that they made themselves Masters of the Port of *Maracaybo* in *Venezuela*, one of the best upon those Seas. But in the year 1521, hearing that the Savages of *Cumana* had destroyed the Convent of *Francis-*

cans

cans on the opposite shore, they cowardly forsook the Island, and fled to *Hispaniola*. Sent back again by the Council there, under the Conduct of *Jamer de Castellon*, by whom the Town was made more beautiful and strong then ever formerly. In great esteem as long as the Pearl-fishing did continue; now, with that, decayed. Yet still the Island doth deserve some consideration for a Fountain on the East part of it near unto the sea, continuing, though the Pearls be gone, which yieldeth a Bituminous substance like Oil, medicinal for Discaies, and is found 2 or 3 Leagues off floating on the Sea: more profitable for the good of mankind, and more easily found, than the Pearls, which sunk unto the bottom, and maintained our Pride.

Four miles from hence, but appendent to it, lieth a little Island called *Crobo*, 3 miles in compass, but so abundantly stored with Pearls, that it hath been worth in that one commodity, for some months together, above a thousand pounds a month of our English money. First peopled upon that occasion, Anno 1529, but the occasion failing, the Plantation ended, the Isle being now unpeopled, as not worth the looking after.

5. THE LESSER ISLANDS of this Prefecture, or Provincial Government, lie all along upon the Coast of *Venezuela*, from East to West. The principal of which, 1. *Tortuga*, 12 or 14 miles on the West of *Margarita*: four miles in length, hardly one in breadth but yielding such good store of Salt, that three or four Ships are laden with it every year. Well furnished with Goats and *Guaicum*, but not else considerable, except for being naturally fenced about with Rocks, and yielding a convenient Harbour for the use of Mariners. 2. *Catrina*, by the English called *The Isle of Providence*, as the former is by the name of *Assuacion*; both which, being void of all Inhabitants and tame Beasts, were possessed by them about the year 1629, at such time as there was open War between *England* and *Spain*. After which, not being claimed by the Spaniards in making up the Peace ensuing, they were

granted by King *Charles*, by his Letters Patents under the Great Seal of *England*, to certain Noblemen and Gentlemen, and their Successors, who for the space of 20 years, or thereabouts, have enjoyed them quietly; the Islands being planted by them with their several Colonies, and all things necessary to maintain and enrich the same. 3. *Bonaire*, opposite to the Bay of *Golfo trile*, in the Latitude of 12 degrees; well furnished with Sheep and Goats, and other Cattel brought out of *Spain*, and peopled with some Savages out of *Hispaniola*, whom the Spaniards Civilized and sent thither: some Spaniards with their Governor intermixt amongst them. The Island 16 miles in compass; not fruitful naturally, but in Trees, which are great and numerous. 4. *Caracas*, nine miles on the West of *Bonaire*, and as many in compass of a more fertile Soil by far, and of very rich Pastures. The people are given to Grazing, and make good store of Cheese, transported thence to other places of the Island, having toward the North a convenient Harbour. 5. *Aryba*, on the North-East of *Caracas*, from which 9 miles distant, in compass not above 5 miles, for the most part level. One Hill it hath (amongst some others) fashioned like a Sugar-loaf. Inhabited by few Savages, and fewer Spaniards.

The other Islands on this Coast, as 1. the *Tolligos*, lying Eastward of *Margarita*, 2. *Blanca*, 3. *Orchilla*, 4. *Tococa*, and 5. the *Iles del Aves*, or of Birds, interposed betwixt *Tolliga* and *Bonaire*, some of them rather Rocks than Islands, few stored with any living Creatures for the use of men, and none of them at all with men to manure and dress them, I pass over here, and so proceed from these Islands of the Province of *Paria*, to those which are subordinate to the Council of *S. Domingo*, and make a Province of themselves, But first we must go back, and bring up some of the Islands of *Mare del Zur*, which could not be reduced to any of the former Provinces.

And so much of *P E R U A N A*.

## Of the American Islands:

And first of those which are in

## MARE del ZUR.



THE AMERICAN ISLANDS scattered up and down the Shores of this New World, are commonly divided into those of *Mare del Zur*, or the Pacific Ocean, and those of the *Atlantic*, or *Mare del Noerde*. The first so called by *Magellanus*, the first Discoverer, who, passing through those troublesome and tempestuous Straights which now bear his name, found such a change upon his coming into the main, that he gave it the name of *Mare del Zur*, (quod a tranquillitate vocavit) *Mare del Zur*, faith the Author of the *Atlas Minor* from the calm and peaceable temper of it; by the *Latins* called *Mare Pacificum*, in the same regard. Called also the Southern Ocean, because of its situation on the South-side of *America*, in reference to some part of the Gulf of *Mexico*, and the Straights of *Anias*: Not known unto the Spaniards till discovered

by *Nomius Vespucius de Balboa*, conducted thither by one of the *Caciques* or petty Kings of the Country about *Nubere de Dios*; who seeing the Spaniards so greedily after Gold, told them that he would bring them to a place where their thirst should be satisfied. Accordingly he brought them to the opposite shore, this *Balboa* being the chief man at that Adventure: who discovering farther on the Sea, opened the way unto *Pizarro*, and the rest that followed, to the golden Treasures of *Peru*. He was executed notwithstanding this good service, by *Don Pedro de Arila*, within short time after. But the more full discovery of it is to be ascribed unto *Magellanus*, and some later Adventurers, though the Spaniards got nothing by the bargain. For formerly, as long as the Southern Sea was unknown to any but themselves, they conveyed their Gold and treasures from one place to another, from *Panama* to *Peru*, from *Peru* to *Panama*, without loss or charge, and thought their Ports upon that Shore to be unaccessible:

T 2

But

But after the way into this sea was found out by *Magellanus, Drake, Cavendish*, and the rest of our *English* Adventurers do to scour these Coasts, that they left them neither Port nor ship which they did not naufrags as hath been evidenced before in former particulars.

As for the Islands of this sea, they lie most of them to near the Shores, as if placed there by Nature to serve as Outworks to defend the Continent. Many in late, but few of consideration; and of those few, some of the chief have been defracted already in their proper places as parts and members of the Province upon which they lie. The residue, which lie too far off to come under such consideration, must be mentioned here; and those reduced to the two Heads, 1. *Los Ladrones*, 2. The Islands of *John Fernandez*.

1. *LOS LADRONES* are certain Islands situate betwixt the main Land of *America* and the *Philippine* Islands, in the Latitude of 18 $\frac{1}{2}$  and the 4. Degree of Northern Latitude. So called by *Magellanus*, who first discovered them, because of the Thievishness of the Inhabitants, (*Infulæ Latronum* their name in *Latine*) who had stoln his Cock-boats, which he was forced by main force to recover from them. And they continue till both their name and nature. Found such by *Cavendish* and *Noon* in their several Voyages, to whom they came under colour of buying Iron, (a commodity which they highly prize) but either closely or openly flouting whatsoever they met with. The People tall of stature, brown of complexion, and inclining to corpulency; extremely active, and good Divers, continuing a long time under the Water, as it alkited fit to both Elements; inasmuch as the *Hollanders* then with *Noon*, to make trial of it, cast five pieces of Iron into the sea, all fetched out by one of them. The Women as good at it as the Men. Both sexes given to filthy and promiscuous Lufts; for which branded (many of them) with the marks of their Incontinency, the Fox having eaten up both their Lips and their Noses.

Their Religion is worshipping the Devil, whose Images they have in Wood on the Head of their Boats; the Chappel and the Saints fit for such Devotions. But for the nature of these Islands, and what subjection the Inhabitants of it yield to the King of *Spain*, I am yet to feel. But like enough they yield as little as some others do, which yet are reckoned by our Authors to be parts of *America*.

2. The Islands of *John Fernandez* are two in number; so called from *John Fernandez*, the first Discoverer, Anno 1574; each of 5 or 6 miles in compass, and about 300 miles distant from the shores of *Chile*. Situate in the 33 Degree of southern Latitude; rocky and barren, but well wooded, and those woods replenished with Goats, but their flesh not favourable as in other places. Some flocks of Sanders there is in them, and of Palms no scarcity. Plenty of Fish upon the shores, for which cause visited sometimes by the *Spaniards* lying in *Peru*, and fitted with commodious Harbours and Roads for shipping, which makes them not negl. And by other Nations as pass this way. None else of note in all this sea, but such as lie upon the shores of their several Provinces; which we have looked upon already. And therefore passing through the Straights, and coming up unto the Islands of *Paria*, *Mare del Nord*, or that part of the *Atlantic* which washeth the Shores of this New World (the reason of which Names we have seen before) subordinate to the Council or Government of *S. Domingo*, viz. 1. the *Caribæ*, 2. *Porto Rico*, 3. *Hispaniola*, 4. *Cuba*, and 5. *Jamaica*. The rest are already spoken of in their proper places.

### 1. The CARIBES.

THE *CARIBES*, or *Cannibal* Islands, are in number many; 127 of them known by their proper names; the rest of less note; though some of these of little enough not yet so distinguished. Called thus in general, because inhabited by *Cannibals*, & man-eating people (at their discovery by the *World* Caribæ do import. They lie extended like a Bow from the coast of *Paria* unto the Isle of *Trinidad* of different temper, as must needs be in such variety; & therefore not within the compass of a general Character. Some of the principal we shall consider more distinctly; and for the rest, 'tis enough to name them, or else we will pass them by.

1. *GRANADA*, the nearest of this crew to the Main Land of *Cumana*, is situate in the Lat. of 20 Deg. and 15 Min. in form like a Crescent or half Moon, the two horns not a mile asunder, the whole length but 6. Shaded all over with thick woods, but notwithstanding of a rich and fruitful soil. A Haven in it of good use, but no Town of note. The people of the famell condition with the other *Savages*, but more wit to hide it most mischievously intended when they seem most kind, & then most to be avoided.

2. *S. VINCENT*, 18 miles on the North of *Granada*, is of 6 blessed a foil, that it brings forth abundance of Sugarcane without charge to the Husbandmen; watered with many pleasant Rivers, and full of safe and convenient Bays for the use of Mariners. In figure Circular: the Diameter being 6 miles over the circle by consequence 18. The people but of mean stature, foolish, and studious only for the Belly: their love to which makes them adventure in their small Boats, hewn out of the body of a tree, to pass into the Continent, and return again without the help of a compass though distant from it, at the nearest, above 30 miles.

3. *BARBADOS*, on the North-east of *S. Vincent*, in the Latitude of 13 Deg. and 20 Min. Of an Oval form, 17 or 18 miles in compass. The soil in show like that of *England*, but far more fruitful. On the East side thrusting out itself with Points and Angles, which yield more Bays but full of Quick-fands and unsafe for shipping; on the fourth furnished with a large and commodious Harbour. Not very well provided of for Fruits or Cattel, till made a Colony of the *English*, who brought thither from their own Country Swine and Kine, Oranges and the like from others. The chief Commodity hitherto made of this Plantation comes by the planting of Tobacco, and by a kind of coarse Sugar called *Barbados Sugar*, which must be quickly spent, or it will melt to nothing. Were they in stock, and not forced to make a quick return of their commodities, they might make here as good Sugars as in other places. Yet this Plantation is said to be worth all the rest which are made by the *English*, who (as I take it) are the sole Colony in the Island; but at the courtesy of the *Spaniards*, without whose leave and liking not of force to hold it.

4. *MANTININO* on the North-west of the *Barbados*, by the *Savages* called *Mandaminan*, with little difference. Every where swelled with hills; of which way is most eminent for height: one of them, which way cover a man looks upon it, carrying the resemblance of an Hat. Inhabited in the time of *Peter Martyr*, the Historian, with none but women; afterward with a more fierce & barbarous people than the rest of these Islands; but neither men or women to be seen of late: whether destroyed, or removed farther from the shores for fear of their destruction, is a thing uncertain.

5. *DOMINICA*, seated on the North of *Mantini-*

*nina*, 12 leagues in length, exceeding fruitful of Tobacco, which they fell unto the *Europeans* for Hatchets, Knives, and other Instruments of Iron. Famed for two Fountains of hot water, and a commodious Haven at the West-side of it, into which falleth a River 20 paces broad. The people as barbarous as ever, *Cannibals* or Man-eaters to this very day. At deadly enmity with the *Spaniards*, & to man truly, but where they cannot hurt, or dare not Both Sexes were their hair long, & colour their bodies over with Oaker. Yet bloody & barbarous though they be, they are ruled by a King of their own, distinguished from the rest in his dress or habit, whom they most readily obey.

6. *DESEADA*, or the Land of Desire, on the north-east of *Dominica*, discovered by *Columbus* in his second Voyage, naked of Trees, and at the first sight afar off not unlike a Galaxy. Of great use to the *Spaniards*, who always take it in their way to the *Canaries*; the parts of *America*, and back again at their return.

The like use do they make of 7. The Isle of *GUARDALUPE*, parallel to this, but directly Westward: which the Fleets which come from *Spain* use to take fresh water, and there disperse themselves to their several Ports. Eight miles in length, and of good Anchorage in most parts of the S. a. adjoining. North-east from hence lieth

8. *S. Maria del Antigua*, commonly called *ANTIGUA* only, and by some mistakingly *ANTEGO*. Seven leagues in length, and as many in breadth; difficult of access, and destitute of fresh waters, but well replenished with woods and provided of Fens. Of late times made a Colony of the *English*, who do fill profits it.

9. *S. CHRISTOPHERS*, on the North-west of *Guadalupe*, in the Lat. of 17 Deg. and 20 Min. The length six miles, the breadth in many places four, and in some but two; much swelled with Hills, and towards the East provided of several Salt-wiches. The French and *English* had sometimes in it several Colonies, by whom the Natives were destroyed, or otherwise compelled to forsake their dwellings; so civil, as was pretended, of some manifest Treachery. But the two Colonies did not long enjoy the sole possession of it. *Frederick de Toledo*, as he passed this way with his Navy; though suffered to return to their former dwellings as rather profitable than dangerous to the Crown of *Spain*. Their chief Employment and commodity lies in their Tobacco, by some much commended. Joyning hereto, or but a league from it at the most, is

10. The Isle of *NEVIS*, which is affirmed to be five leagues in compass, well wooded, and as pleasantly watered; inasmuch as the Inhabitants of the Isle of *Dominica* used to come thither for their pleasures, but for hunting chiefly. Now famed for more Baths or Hot-waters, found out by the *English*, who, in the year 1528, placed a Colony in it. But whether subsisting of it, or for a part of their Plantation in *S. Christophers*, I am yet to learn.

11. *SANCIA CRUX*, by the Inhabitants called *Ayzo*, on the North-west of *S. Christophers*, and the South-east of *Porto Rico*, from which last distant 15 Leagues. Woody and Mountainous, not well provided of fresh waters; but on the west side furnished with a safe and commodious Road, under the cover of the Mountains. Amongst their fruits are some that resemble a green Apple, which tasted, do inflame the Tongue, that for 24 hours it swelleth in so great extremity, as makes it altogether useless; but after that the little and little it abates again. The like happeneth also to the Face, if walked before Sun rising with their Fen-

waters, which are very frequent in this Island; after the rising of the Sun, without any harm at all. In this there is a Colony of the *English* also, but of later standing than those of *S. Christophers* and *Barbados*.

Some of the principal of the rest are 1. *Anguilla*, 2. *Barbuda*, 3. *S. Bartholomew*, 4. *S. Lucie*, 5. *S. Martin*, 6. *Monferrat*, 7. *Ratunda*, 8. *Saba*, 9. *Virgogard*, and 10. *Sunbrev*, of which we have little but the names: the rest, though known by several names, are not worth the naming. Only we are to add concerning the whole Nation of *Caribæ*, once here inhabiting, that they did usually hunt for men, as men for Beasts, moving as far as *Porto Rico*, to seek after their prey; and what they caught was sure to go to the pot, in the worst kind too. *Columbus*, when he was at the Isle of *Guadalupe*, found 30 Captive Children, which were reserved to be eaten, and in their households divers Vessels filled with Man's flesh, and some upon the Spit ready to be roasted. Nor had they laid aside this Diet till after the year 1563, but how long I know not. For at that time a Spanish Ship coming to water at the Isle of *Dominica*, they cut her Cables in the night, haled her to the Land, and devoured all that were in her. But the Islands have been of late times well cleared of these Monsters; some of them brought unto better order, but the most destroyed, as the common enemies of mankind, the Islands where they dwelt being either totally deserted, or taken up by *Europeans*, and their several Colonies.

### 2. PORTO RICO AND MONICO.

*PORTO RICO* lieth on the North-west of *S. Maria Cruz*, from which distant about 15 Leagues, and near upon as many from *Hispaniola*, 126 Leagues from the main Land of *Paria*, and not much less from the Cape of *Cognobine* in *Rio de la Hacha*, a Province of *Castilla*. *Azores*. It took this name from the chief Town and Haven of it, but was called by *Columbus* at the first *Dicovery* *S. Johannes Isula*, or the Isle of *S. John*, by the Natives *Borinquen*.

It is situate under the 18 and 19 Degrees of Northern Latitude, in form quadrangular, but of a greater length than breadth, such as the Geometricians call *oblongum*: the length heretofore being 30 Leagues, and the breadth but 20. The Air heretofore very pleasant and temperate, not scorched with furious Heats in Summer, nor made offensive by the fall of continual Rains; exposed sometimes (chiefly in *August* and *September*) to the troublesome fumes of fadden tempests, called *Hurricanes*. The soil is indifferently fruitful, though somewhat Mountainous; here being (besides other Hills of inferior note) a Ridge of high Hills which run cross the Country from the one end unto the other. Their chief Commodities are Sugarcane, Ginger, Coffee, and great store of Hides; the *Europeans* Cattel having so abundantly increased, that they kill thousands for their Skins, leaving the flesh to be a prey unto Dogs and Birds. Some Mines here were of Gold and Silver, but consumed long since. And so are all the Natives also of whom, in this respect, it is impertinent to give any Character.

Chief Rivers of the Island, 1. *Cairon*, 2. *Boyaman*, of divers Fountains, and of several and divided Courses. 3. *Luyza*, and 4. *Tos* two Rivers growing out of one. The Spring of that one is in the Mountains of *Guanayon*, whence running Northwards in one Channel 16 Leagues together, it afterwards divides it self into two streams: 5. *Guanayon*, 6. *Azeibon*, 7. *Guadalupe*, of lesser notes but all of them, as well as all the rest before, concluding in some safe and capacious Haven.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Porto Rico*, the chief Town, built in a little Island, on the North-side of the greater

greater, but joined into it with huge Piles at vast expences, by the command of *Philip the First*, Anno 1504, well built, with large Streets and convenient Houses, according to the Model of the Cities of *Spain*, and beautified with a fair Cathedral, the Bishop one of the Suffragans of the Archbishop of *S. Domingo in Hispaniola*. The Town unwall'd, but fortified with two strong Castles; the one of which secures the Haven, and the other the Town. In vain attempted, and with the loss of 40 or 50 men, by *Sir Francis Drake*, Anno 1595, but taken two years after by *George Earl of Cumberland*, who had a purpose to have peopled it with an *English Colony*. Discouraged from by the death of 100 of his Men, by change of Air, and some intemperance of Diet, he set sail for *England*, doing no other hurt to the Town or Island, but the disfigurement of it 70 pieces of Ordnance, and some part of their Treasure, which he brought home with him. 2. *S. German*, in the Western part of the Island but four Leagues from the Sea; once the chief of the Island, now both unfortified and small. 3. *Arcebo*, on the River fo called. 4. *Leyla*, the most noted Port of the Eastern parts, situate on the mouth of the River fo named.

Eastward hereof, betwixt it and *Hispaniola*, lies the Island of *Mona* (might not this, think we, be fo called by *Madoc ap Owen Gwynedd*, of whom before?) three leagues in compass Rocky, and of a brackish Earth, but fit for the production of Limons, Oranges, and such kind of Fruit, which are here in plenty. Not far off, but more towards the West, *Monico*, or *Monetta*, as our *English* call it; where they found such infinite flocks of Fowl, that they flew over their heads as thick as Hail, and made them almost deaf with the very noise; their Eggs fo thick upon the ground that they loaded two Boats with them in three hours, and could hardly pass forwards without treading on them.

But to return to *Porto Rico*, or the Island of *S. John*: it was touched upon by *Columbus* in his second Voyage, Anno 1493, but first inhabited by *John Ponce de Leon*, Anno 1510. who being courteously entertained by *Aiguabana*, the chief Prince thereof, planted a Colony of *Spaniards* in the North part of the Island, which he called *Caparra*. The Colony 10 years after that removed to *Guayama*, and from thence to *S. German*: carrying with it the repute of the chief Town of all the Island; upon civility remove, till the building of *Porto Rico*, where it since hath fixed. The Island very populous for the bigness of it, when the *Spaniards* came thither; but the Natives were long ago confuted by several Churches and, as some write, not above 1500 *Spaniards* are in all the Country. What else concerns the Story of it, we have seen before.

## 2. HISPANIOLA.

*HISPANIOLA* lieth on the West of *Porto Rico*; the Distance we have seen already. By the Inhabitants called *Haity*, and by some *Guissana*; but by *Columbus* it was honoured with the name of *Hispaniola*, or *Little Spain*, and of late times beginning to be called *S. Domingo*, from the chief Town of it.

The form thereof is Triangular, extended in a sharp Angle, called *Cabo del Engano*, towards *Porto Rico*; the Western end fashioned like a Bay or Semicircle; the Northern point of which is named *S. Nicholas*, the Southern *Cabo de Donna Maria*. The length affirmed to be 150 Leagues, the breadth in some places 60, in some but 30, thence growing less and less, till it come unto the Eastern Angle; the whole compass estimated at 400. Situate betwixt the 18 and 20 Degrees of Northern Latitude. Of an Air much infested with Morning-heats, but cool in the Afternoon, by the constant blowing of a

Sea-Gale, which they there commonly call *Virfoun*. The Country is for the most part beautiful and flourishing; the Trees always in their Summer-livery, and the Meadows green, as if it did enjoy a perpetual spring. In many places twel'd high craggy Mountains, whence the name of *Haity*, that word fo signifying in the natural Language of the Natives. Of such an excellent Herbage, that the Cattel brought hither out of *Spain* have increased almost beyond Arithmeticks; grown wild for want of proper owners, and hunted unto death like the Stags of the Forest, though only to rob them of their skins. The soil fo fertile, that in the space of 16 days Herbs and Roots will grow ripe, and be fit to be eaten. So plentifully stored with Ginger and Sugar-canes, that in the year 1587, there were shipped hence 27500 pound weight of Ginger, and 900 Chells of refined Sugar: an evident argument of the richness and fertility of it. A farther proof hereof may be, 1. The rich Mines of Gold, in which they used to find Gold without mixture of dross or other Metals. 2. The great increase of Sugar, one Cane here filling 200 sometimes 30 measures. 3. The wonderful yield of Corn, amounting in some places to an hundred-fold. But the mines were long ago exhausted, inasmuch as the Inhabitants are fain to use brass money: but instead of gold of Gold, they have found out others of Brass and Iron, and some few of silver; but not much searched into of late, for want of Workmen.

The reason of that want is to be ascribed unto the Covetousness and cruelty of the Spanish Nation: who, out of an insatiable thirst for Gold, consumed the people in their Mines; and out of the like thirst for Blood, killed for many of them, that in few years they destroyed three Millions of the Natives. And it is probably supposed, that had not *Charles the Fifth* restrained them by a penal Edict from compelling the Natives against their wills to those works of servitude, there had not been one Native left in all this Island, nor in any other part of their Plantations. Such as are left are said to be of a low stature, of black hair, and a complexion somewhat inclining to that colour: not differing in Manners, Habit, or Religion, from the *Spaniards* there.

Rivers of most note are, 1. *Ozama*, on whose Banks stands *Domingo*, the chief Town of the Island capable of the greatest Ships to the very Wharf. 2. *Nigua*, which passing through the rich Pastures, or making the Pastures rich by its secret virtue, runneth towards the West: as do also, 3. *Taguima*, 4. *Nizao*, and 5. *Neyba*, 6. *Hayna*, of a contrary course to the other three. *Tagui*, or *Jacho*, which falleth into the Northern Seas. 8. *Nisagaya*, 9. *Cocintenco*, 10. *Xanigue*. These three last famous hetherofore for their sands of Gold. Some speak of 30000 Brooks and Rivers which are found in this Country; 2 parts of which value number had their golden fands. A thing fo far beyond the charity of the strongest Faith, (though reported by a Grave and Reverend Author) that I know not what interpretation to put upon it, except every Water-course, Ditch, and Gutter, may be reckoned in.

The whole divided when the *Spaniards* first came amongst them, into several Provinces or Kingdoms: as, 1. *Higite*, 2. *Jacaguana*, 3. *Samana*, in the Eastern parts; 4. *Taguima*, 5. *Boraco*, and 6. *Xaragua*, towards the south; and 7. *Guababo*, and 8. *Cabana*, in the West; and in the North, 9. *Cibao*, rich in Mines of Gold, 10. *Marien*, the Landing place of *Columbus*, and 11. *Magnana* in the Centre of the Island, the King whereof in the time of *Columbus* was named *Canabo*, of greatest power of any of those petty Royalties. Another division of it hath been made by Nature, parting it by four Rivers, all rising from one Mountain in the midst of the Island, into four Divi-

ONS :

ons; 1. the River *Jacho*, running towards the North, 2. *Nabiba*, halting to the South, 3. *Tana*, or *Juna*, towards the East, and 4. *Hibibonico*, to the West. But these divisions being long since grown out of use, we will survey the chief of the Towns and Cities of it, as they come before us.

And they are, 1. *S. Domingo*, first built by *Bartholomew Columbus*, Anno 1494, on the East Bank of the *Ozama*; and afterwards (in the year 1502) removed by *Nicholas de Obando*, then Governour of the Island, to the opposite shore. Situate in a pleasant Country among wealthy Pastures, and neighboured with a file and capacious Haven: the Houses elegantly built, most of them of stone, and the whole well walled; beside a Castle at the West end of the Peer to defend the Haven: enriched by the Residence of the Governour, the Courts of Justice, the See of an Archbishop, and (besides many Convents and Religious Houses) an Hospital endowed with 20000 Ducats of yearly Rent. Esteemed of greatest trade and concourse of Merchants, till the taking of *Mexico* and the discovery of *Perez*, since that time sensibly decaying, and now reduced unto the number of 600 Families of *Spaniards*; the greatest part of the City, and all the Suburbs, inhabited by *Negroes*, *Mulattos*, and other Strangers. Not yet recovered of the hurt it had by *Sir Francis Drake*, who in the year 1586 took it by force, and held it for the space of a month, burning the greatest part of the Houses, and suffering the rest to be redeemed at a certain price. 2. *S. Salvador*, 68 Leagues to the East of *Domingo*, 3. *Jaguana*, called also *Santa Maria del Porto*, from a late and beautiful Haven adjoining to it; situate in the West part of the Island: of no great bigness, consisting of no more than 1500 Houses when it was at the greatest; but made much less by *Captain Newports*, who, in the year 1591, burnt it to the ground. 4. *Cony*, in the North of the Island, opposite to *Santa Domingo*, from which distant almost sixty Leagues: a little Town, but formerly of great esteem for its Mines of Gold. 5. *Concepcion de la Vega*, the foundation of *Christopher Columbus*, for whose sake afterwards adorned with a See Episcopal. 6. *Puerto de la Plata*, 40 Leagues from *Domingo* on the Northern shore, there built on a commodious Bay by *Nicholas de Obando* before mentioned, by him also fortified, the second Town of Wealth and Trade in all the Island. 7. *Acaia*, now called *Campestre*, a noted Haven, and resorted to for Sugars, which it yields abundantly.

This Island was first discovered by *Columbus*, (for I believe not that it was any of the Fortunate Islands which we read of in the life of *Strabo*); in the first Voyage which he made, conducted hither by some of the Inhabitants of the Isle of *Cuba*. Landing, and gaining the good will of the Savages by gentle usage, he obtained leave of one of their Kings or *Caciques* to build a Fort in his Country, which he called *Nueva*, or *Natividad*, leaving in it 36 *Spaniards* to keep possession; whom he found both massacred and murdered at his coming back. Bring now better furnished for a new Plantation, he built the Town called *Isabella*, (in honour of *Isabella Queen of Castile*) near the Mines of *Cibao*, which afterwards was deserted also, and the Colony removed unto *S. Domingo*; the *Spaniards* sending one Colony after another, till at last their number was increased to 10000, besides Women and Children. But having rooted out the Natives by their infinite cruelties, and exhausted the riches of the Country with as insatiable Covetousness, they betook themselves to fresher Quarters, abandoning the Island to devour the Continent. Once had the Islanders rebelled and fortified themselves in the Province of *Boraco*; a place fo naturally strong, that there was little need of the helps of Art. Not brought to leave that Nature but on such Conditions as

made the *Spaniard* less insolent, and themselves less Slaves.

## 4. CUBA.

*CUBA* lieth on the West of *Hispaniola*, from which parted by a Frith, or narrow Channel, interposed betwixt the two Capes of *S. Nicholas*, and that of *Mexico*, backed on the North with a Frith of Islands called the *Lucayos*, and some part of the *Peninsula of Florida*; extended towards the East to the extrem point or Foreland of *Jucatan*, called *Cape de Canache*, from which distant about 50 Leagues, and neighboured on the South with the Isle of *Jamaica*.

It is in length from East to West, that is to say, from *Cape Mazie* towards *Hispaniola*, to the Cape of *S. Anthony*, 230 leagues; in breadth where broadest hardly 40, but 15 in others. For the fertility of the soil containing the *Spaniards* for the pre-eminence, but in the temperate of the Air a great deal before it. Liberally stored with *Ginger*, *Cassia*, *Mastic*, *Aloes*, *Cinnamon*, and *Sugar*, (not reckoning such commodities as are common unto this with others) besides great plenty of Fish and Fowl, and of Fowl no scarcity. The Gold more drolic in the Mine than in *Hispaniola*, but the Brags more perfect. Hilly, and full of lofty Mountains; but those Mountains clad with divers Trees, some of which drop the purest Robin, and the Hills tending to the Valleys many notable Rivers. Pestered with many flocks of serpents, not fo much out of any ill condition of the soil and air, as by an old superstition of the Savages, in former times not suffered to kill them when they might, (this being a Dish reserved for the higher Powers) notable afterwards to destroy them, when it would have been suffered.

What other savage Rites they had, is not now material, the *Spaniards* having took an Order that they should not trouble us in that particular. Yet thus much we may add in memory of the first Inhabitants, that an old man of 80 years, one of the *Caciques* of the Island, addressed himself unto *Columbus* at his first coming hither, advising him to use his Fortune with moderation, and to remember that the flocks of men have two journeys when they leave this world, the one foul and dark, prepared for the injurious and cruel person; the other clear, bright, and pleasant, for the men of Peace. It is said also of them, they knew not the use of money, nor understood the niceties of *Mens* and *Tenues*; Tenants in common to the Blessings which the Earth brought forth, and Cohesors of Nature.

Amongst the Rarities of this Island, they mention a Fountain out of which floweth a pitchy substance, which is found frequently on the feet into which it filleth, excellent for the calling of fishes. Secondly a navigable river, but the name not told us; the waters of which were so hot that a man could not endure to hold his hand in them. They tell us also, thirdly, of a Valley 15 leagues from *S. Jago*, which produceth stones exactly round, as if made for pleasure; but yet merely natural. But there are no greater rarities than in other places, nor altogether so great as in *Hispaniola*. In which they tell us of a fair river whose waters are salt, and yet none but fresh fishes fall into it. Of another Lake (three leagues in compass) on the top of the Mountains, into which many Rivers were known to run without any Exit. Neither of these fo strange or rare as the *Ctenery*, a kind of *Scarabe* or Beetle; the eyes and wings whereof, when opened, give so great a light in the darkest places, that a man may see to read and write by it, as well as by a Candle.

Rivers of most note, 1. *Cante*, much annoyed with Crocodiles, (a Beast not common in these Islands, nor elsewhere in this) exceeding dangerous to such as repose them.



themselves on the Banks of the River. 2. *Armas*, which disburtheneth it self near the Port of *Xagua*. 3. *Rio di Porcos*, full of Rocks and Quick-sands at the entrances of it. 4. *Rio Ejondada*, passing betwixt *Habana* and the Port of *Maracaibo*. 5. *Marigay*, and 6. *Tanuco*, of less note. Besides these there is *Xagua*, a safe Station and Road for Shipping; of a narrow entrance, but large and spacious when once entered; above ten Leagues in length, and of breadth proportionable. So fenced on all sides from the Winds, that Ships lie here in safety without any Anchor. Some other Bays there are as useful, though not so considerable.

Towns of note consequence, 1. *S. Jago*, in the south part of the Island, situate about two Leagues from the Main, but in the bottom of a large and capacious Gulf, the most noted Port of all these Seas; Built by *Don Diego de Velasquez*, Anno 1514; afterwards made a Bishop's See: beautified with a Cathedral, some Religious Houses; once not inferior unto any numbers of people, though now few enough. 2. *Caracas*, 30 Leagues on the East of *S. Jago*, the same foundation as the other, and neighbored by great quantities of Ebony-wood. 3. *S. Salvador*, by some called *Bayamo*, according to the old name of the Province in which it standeth; built by *Velasco* in the most pleasant and richest part of all the Island, but not so fitly as the other for Trade and Merchandise. 4. *Porto del Principe*, an Haven-town in the North parts: not far from which is the Fountain of a pitchy or bituminous Liquor, spoken of before, which I conceive to be much of the same nature with the Fountains of *Naphta* in the East. 5. *Trinidad*, another of *Velasco's* foundations, nine or ten Leagues Eastward of the Port of *Xagua*: once well frequented, but now forsaken, and mere nothing. 6. *Havana*, in the North parts, opposite to *Florida*, a noted and well traded Port; so strongly situate and fortified both by Nature and Art, that it seems impregnable. The Entrances defended with two notable Castles; a greater then either opposite to the mouth of the Haven; all so commodiously built and well planted with Ordnance, that they are able to keep out and scatter the greatest Navy. Near one of them standeth an high Tower, from the top whereof notice is given unto the Guards of every Ship that cometh within view of the Watchmen. The best assurance not only of this Island but the Bay of *Mexico*; and therefore honoured for the most part with the Seat of the Governor, and the greatest Trade of all these Seas: the Ships which are bound for *Spain* from all parts of the Gulf tarrying here for one another till all meet together, and setting sail from hence by the Straights of *Babama*, amongst the Isles of the *Lucas*.

This Island was one of the first which was discovered by *Columbus*: who having almost tired the *Spaniards* with the expectation, first fell upon the Island of *Guanabani*, one of the *Lucas*, to which he gave the Name of *S. Salvador*. From thence he sailed to *Baracoa*, on the North of this Island, which he caused to be called *Fernandina*, in honour of *Ferdinand* the Catholick King of *Castile* and *Aragon*; at whose charge, and the encouragement of *Isabella* his Heroick Queen, he pursued this Enterprize. Landing, he asked the people if they knew *Cipango*, (by which name *Paulus Ponticus* calls the Isle of *Japan*); and they conceiving that he enquired after *Cibao*, (of great note for the richest Mines in *Hispiania*) pointed towards *Haiti*; some of them going with him to conduct him thither. *Cuba* was by this means laid aside, and all the thoughts of *Spain* unto *Hispiania*, where they found many golden Provocations to invite their stay, till hanging after more Gold, and some new Plantations, they passed over hither, and in few years, by the prudent conduct of *Velasco*, got such footing in it, and made that footing good

by so many Colonies, that their Title and Possession was beyond dispute, and so continues to this day.

### 5. JAMAICA.

**JAMAICA** lieth on the South of *Cuba*, from which distant 20 Leagues, and as much, or very little more from *Hispiania*. Discovered in the second Voyage of *Columbus*, by whom named *S. Jago*, that name changed afterwards to *Jamaica*.

It is in length from East to West about 50 Leagues, and in breadth 20; the whole compass estimated at 50; the middle of it under the 18 Degree of Northern Latitude. Of a rich soil, abundantly provided of all things necessary, well stocked with Cattle, which either industry or Nature have supplied it with. Great store of Cotton-wood, and such abundance of *Jucca*, (a Root whereof the *Savages* once made their Bread) that it was deemed the Granary of the neighbouring Island. And were it not diminished of convenient Ports, (which is all the want of it) it would be as much frequented by sea-faring men as any other in those parts. Once very populous, now deplete of all the natural inhabitants; this Island, and that of *Porto Rico*, losing in few years 60000 by the *Spaniards*' Cruelties. Cruelties which not only ragged upon the Men, but destroyed Posterity: the Women, here and elsewhere, so abominating their sad condition, that they strangled their Children in Birth, to the end they might not live to suffer such a cruel Nation.

Chief Towns herof, (for though it be well watered it hath no great Rivers.) 1. *Sevilla*, in the North part of the Island, beautified with a goodly Monastery; the Abbot whereof hath all Episcopal Jurisdiction, and is privileged to wear a Mitre: in nothing more ennobled, then that *Pater Martyr* the Historian (to whose Decades all succeeding Ages are beholden for the Chorography and History of these parts of the World) was once Abbot here. 2. *Méjilla*, a small Town, but memorable for the unfortunate Shipwreck of *Columbus* on the Shores adjoining. 3. *Orizaba*, on the South of the Island, fourteen Leagues from *Sevilla*. 4. *De la Vega*, now a Ruine only, once a *Spanish* Colony; and of great fame for giving the Title of *Duke* to *Christopher Columbus*, and his Brother *Bartholomew*. Since whole time nothing happened prejudicial to the state of this Island by the hands of any but the *Spaniards*, till conquered, but not held by *Sir Anthony Sherley*, Anno 1596.

Thus having took a short survey of the several parts of this great Body; we now briefly take a view of the Government and Forces of it. The Government is committed chiefly to two great Vice-Roys; the one of *Nova Hispania*, who resides at *Mexico*, the other of *Pern*, who abideth at *Lima*, the principal Cities of those Kingdoms. The first hath Jurisdiction over all the Provinces of *Nova Gallicia*, *Nova Hispania*, *Guatemala*, *Castella Auca*, and the Provinces of the Mexican Islands; the other over those of *Pern*, *Chile*, *Rio de la Plata*, and the new Realm of *Granada*. Such scattered pieces as they hold in *Guiana*, *Paria*, and the *Caribes*, with their Forts in *Florida*, being reduced to some of these. Of these the Vice-Roy of *Pern* is of greatest power, because he hath the nomination of all the Commanders and Officers within his Government; which in the other are referred to the King himself. But that of *New Spain* is counted for the better pretence, because of its nearness unto *Spain*, (in respect of the other) the Beauties of the City of *Mexico*, and the Civilities of the People. For the administration of Justice, and ordering the Affairs of the several Provinces, there are ten chief Courts, from which there lieth

no appeal: that is to say, 1. *Guadalajara*, for *Gallicia*; *Nova*: 2. *Mexico*, for *New Spain*: 3. *S. Domingo*, for the Province of the Islands: 4. *Guatemala*, for the Division named: 5. *Panama*, for *Castella Auca*. Then for the other Government, 6. *Quito*, 7. *Lima*, and 8. *Charcas*, in the Realm of *Pern*, 9. *Imperial*, for *Chile*: 10. *S. Jago*, for the new Realm of *Granada*. From these though no appeal do lie in matter of Justice; yet both from them and the two Vice-Roys an Appeal may lie in Affairs of State, or point of Grievance. And to this end there is a standing Council in the Court of *Spain*, which is called the Council of the Indies, consisting of a President, eight Counsellors, two Proctors Fiscal (which we call the Solicitors general) and two Secretaries, besides other Officers; to whom it appertaineth to take care of all matters which concern the Government of these Countries, to appoint the Vice-Roys, to dispose of all the great Offices (except those of the Government of *Peru*) and spiritual dignities, to appoint Visitors to go into those Provinces for the examining the actions of all Officers hearing the Grievances of the People, and to displace or punish as they find occasion, but with the Kings privacy and consent.

As for the Estates of private men, they which hold Lands or Royalities from the Crown of *Spain* hold them but for life, (except it be the Marquels of *Valls* in *New Spain*, of the race of *Cortez*) after their death returns to the King again; who gives them commonly to the eldest son, or the next of blood; but so, that they receive it as a mark of his favour, and not for any right of theirs. And though they have many times attempted to make these Commanderies and Estates hereditary, and offered great sums of money for it, both to *Charles* the fifth and *Philip* the second, yet they could never get it done; the Kings most prudently considering, that these great Lords having the command of the Estates and Persons of their several Vassals, would either grind them to powder without any remedy, or upon any Inquisition into their proceedings take an occasion to revolt. Both dangers of no small importance; both by this uncertainty of their present Tenure exceeding happily avoided.

The Revenue which the King receiveth hence is said to be three Millions of Ducats yearly: most of it rising out of the Fifths of the Mines of Gold and Silver; the rest by Customs upon Manufactures and all sorts of Merchandise, and the Acknowledgments referred upon Lands and Royalities. But out of this there go great Exits: that is to say, to the two Vice-Roys 12000 Ducats; to the President and Officers of the Council of the Indies in *Spain* 20000 Ducats; to the Judges and Officers of the several Courts of Judicature very liberal Pensions; to every

Archbishop and Bishop, of which there are 29 in all 2000 Ducats at the least; and to some much more, to mend their Benefices. Then reckoning in the infinite charges in maintaining Garrisons, and entertaining standing Bands both of Horse and Foot, in several parts of this Estate and the continual keeping of a strong Armada to conduct his Fleet-Fleets to *Spain*; there must be made a great abatement, and the sum will bear it. For howsoever at the first his Revenue came from thence without any great charge, more than the keeping of a few Soldiers to awe the *Savages*; yet after he fell foul with *England*, and startled the *Hollanders* to Rebellion, he was compelled to fortify all his Havens, and secure his Ports, and to maintain a strong Armada at the Sea, to convoy his Treasures: Before which time the English (as is intimated in several places) did go thence in his Harvest, that they left him scarce enough to pay his Workmen; which if they should attempt again upon any Breach, they would find it very difficult, if not impossible, to offset any thing upon the Coasts as in former times; or indeed any other way, but by making themselves too strong for him at Sea, and thereby either intercept his Fleets, or hinder them from coming to him to supply his needs.

And so much for the AMERICAN Islands.

Having thus travelled over (with Gods Blessing) the Known Parts of the World, and failed through the most difficult Seas which embrace the same; we should now man our Barque again, and try what Discovery we can make of the Parts *Unknown*, or not fully known to us as the others are.

— atque

*Quo properas, mea cymba? sed, satis ardua poma Navimus: ecce Autem pluvius jam egere nubes Incipit, hic tamen non igit (mibi crede) morari. Dum licet, in Portum undamus, nubila claram Reddidit nobis postea diem, revocabit ab alto Nos Triton Sculpas, atque iterum tentabimus Equare.*

That is to say,

But whither goes my Bark? Return: for we Have slid'd the Capering Brine enough: see, see, The South-wind 'gins to gather Clouds again; 'Tis no safe tarrying in to fierce a place. Whilst thou halt time, retire, thou wearied Bark, Into safe Harbour, when the Clouds which dark The World's Bright Eye shall be dispell'd away, And shining Phœbus make a lightsome day. Triton's shrill Trump shall thee recall again, From the safe Harbour to the foaming Main: And we with all our Powers will boldly try What of this UNKNOWN WORLD we can defy,

# A T A B L E of the L O N G I T U D E and L A T I T U D E of the Chief Towns and Cities mentioned in this Second part.

	Long.	Lat.		Long.	Lat.
<b>A</b> Capulco	276	0 18 0	Margarita	314	10 10 50
Almeria	272	15 20 0	Mexico	283	0 38 30
Ancon	321	0 6 20	Martha	301	20 10 40
Angadas	296	0 50 0 A.	S. Michael	291	40 6 10
S. Anna Equinum	318	10 27 30 A.	S. Michael	327	10 47 20
Antigua	330	20 16 10	Mona	309	30 18 0
Antiochia	300	50 6 40	Monferas	319	10 15 40
Arica	300	30 20 0 A.	Mouryal	301	0 45 40
Arcenfion	353	20 18 50 A.	Mopox	301	10 10 0
Aravala	298	10 1 30	N.		
Arcuamit	289	30 19 0	Nazca	300	20 17 10
S. Augustin	293	0 29 50	Nicola	284	50 10 40
			Nesic	318	40 16 20
<b>B</b> Bahama	296	30 27 0	Numbre di Dias	294	50 9 20
Bahados	322	0 13 0	Norumbega	315	40 43 40
Bavinas	296	50 15 50	P.		
			Paca	302	50 13 10 A.
<b>C</b> Campa	351	40 62 50	Paiti	290	30 5 10 A.
Carriagena	300	0 20 10	Panama	294	30 8 30
Caribago	299	30 3 10	Panuco	270	10 22 20
Caxamalca	298	30 11 30 A.	Pajito	304	0 11 40 A.
Cheffapiake	308	0 38 0	Pina	296	20 3 0
Chisimulan	260	0 25 40	Plaza	305	0 9 50 A.
Chile	299	0 36 30 A.	Popayan	297	20 1 50
Colima	267	20 19 50	Poffiffion	241	30 32 20
Collao	300	0 16 0 A.	Potusi	315	10 21 10 A.
Coquimbo	301	20 20 40 A.	Q.		
Corduba	316	20 33 0 A.	Quicon	298	50 16 30 A.
Coano	259	40 31 0	Quinter	303	40 34 40 A.
Cauliacan	266	30 27 0	Quito	293	10 10 0
Cusco	297	20 13 30 A.	Quivira	233	0 41 40
			R.		
<b>D</b> Darien	295	40 5 30	Roa	311	0 11 10
Deffada	320	0 15 20	Roquelzy	314	10 50 0
Dominica	359	40 14 0	S.		
			Saba	317	30 17 20
<b>E</b> Elade	305	10 47 40	Salinas	321	40 52 0
Fernambuck	351	40 9 20	S. Salvadore	321	10 5 0
			Sane	294	40 9 30 A.
<b>G</b> Gorgona	295	10 3 20	Saona	309	0 16 50
Granada	310	20 11 0	Sorana	351	40 61 0
Guzisquil	294	30 2 30 A.	T.		
Guadalqueibol	282	20 31 0	Tabaco	322	10 10 40
Guzape	294	50 8 10 A.	Tarnaco	270	15 24 40
Guadalupe	319	20 15 20	Tavasco	275	40 18 20
Guatimula	303	0 24 20	Tetiger	316	10 11 0
			Tbomchamba	293	40 1 50 A.
<b>H</b> Hargueda	310	30 54 0	Tiquifana	305	20 16 0 A.
Havana	292	10 20 0	Tochripce	274	40 19 0
Hochelaga	300	50 44 10	Tortuga	303	50 20 20
Huaco	324	0 51 30	Totoncac	248	20 36 0
			Trinidad	295	50 21 20
<b>I</b> Jabaque	315	15 17 15	Tumbez	291	40 4 10 A.
S. Jago	298	10 30 10	V. W.		
Isabell	305	20 18 50	Val paraiso	300	0 33 0 A.
			Villao	242	10 30 30
<b>L</b> Lempa	274	10 16 50	Uraba	297	20 7 30
Lima	296	40 23 30	Ureos	301	0 14 50 A.
Laxa	293	30 9 50 A.	Woccan	307	30 34 0
			Z.		
<b>M</b> Malagnana	306	0 23 40	Zacatula	269	4 20 0
Milones	279	40 13 40			
Maracapan	312	10 8 0			

The End of the Second Part of the Fourth Book.

A N

AN  
APPENDIX  
TO THE  
FORMER WORK,  
Endeavouring a Discovery of the  
UNKNOWN PARTS  
OF THE  
WORLD:  
ESPECIALLY OF  
Terra Australis Incognita,  
OR THE  
SOUTHERN CONTINENT.

---

By *PETER HETLYN.*

---

Horat. De Arte Poet.

— *Pictoribus atque Poetis*  
*Quidlibet audendi semper fuit æqua potestas.*

---

L O N D O N,  
Printed in the Year MDCLXXVII.

# AN APPENDIX TO THE FORMER WORK,

Endeavouring a Discovery of the  
UNKNOWN PARTS of the WORLD.



AND here we are upon a new and strange Adventure, which no Knight Errant ever undertook before. Of things unknown, as there is commonly no desire, so less Discourse can probably be made upon them. By *unknown* therefore we must understand *less known*, or not well discovered; and in that sense we may as well endeavour to say somewhat of them, as others with more pains and hazard to attempt the Discovery. And to say truth, even in the known parts of the World there is much unknown; as in the best and most flourishing Kingdoms of the Earth there is some waste ground, either not cultivated at all, or not so well inhabited as the rest of the Country. For besides many vast Tracts of ground in the North and North-west parts of *Tartary*, and such parts of *India* as lie Northwards towards *Delanger*, *Nangroet*; the East parts of *Caucasia*, and the Realm of *Cathay* it is conceived that the greatest part of the Midlands of *Africa* are undiscovered to this day, or the knowledge of them is imperfect as comes near a Nescience; and for *America*, not reckoning in the Northern Borders, (which are in part to be the Subject of this Enquiry) it is affirmed of the Midlands by *John de Laet*, (who hath made the most exact description of it that ever was extant) *minima sui parte perlustratum esse*, that the least part of them hath been discovered hitherto to any purpose. Leaving these therefore as before without farther search, we will divide the UNKNOWN WORLD into these two parts: 1. *Terra Incognita Borealis*, and 2. *Terra Incognita Australis*: which with their subdivisions we will now pursue.

## TERRA INCOGNITA BOREALIS.

**T**ERRA INCOGNITA BOREALIS is that part of the *Unknown World* which lieth towards the North; and is to be considered in these three Notions: 1. As directly under the Pole, which for distinction sake we will call *Orbis Arcticus*; 2. as lying to the North-east on the back of *Europe* and *Asia*; or 3. on the North-west, on the back of *America*.

1. **ORBIS ARCTICUS** is that part of *Terra Borealis Incognita* which lieth under or about the *Arctic Pole*; the situations and dimensions of which being taken with the *Astrolabe* by an *Oxford Friar*, are by *Mercator* thus described out of the Itinerary of *James Cusack* of *Bairle due*, or the *Bisick*, a Town of *Brabant*.

Under the *Arctic Pole* (saith he) is laid to be a black Rock of wondrous height; about 33 Leagues in

"compass, the Land adjoining being torn by the sea into four great hills. For the Ocean violently breaking through it, and disgorging it felt by 19 Channels, maketh four *Euripi* or hence Whirl-pools, by which the Waters are finally carried towards the North, and there swallowed into the Bowels of the Earth. That *Euripus* or Whirl-pool which is made by the *Seythick Ocean* hath five Inlets, and by reason of his straight passage and violent course is never frozen: the other on the back of *Greenland*, being 37 Leagues long, hath three Inlets, and remaineth frozen three months yearly. Between these two there lieth an Island on the North of *Lappia* and *Esarnia*, inhabited, as they say, by *Pigmeti*, the tallest of them not above four foot high. Acertain Scholar of *Oxford* reporteth, that these four *Euripi* are carried with such furious violence towards some Gulf, in which they are finally swallowed up, that no ship is able with never so strong a Gale to stem the Current, and yet that there is never so strong a Wind as to blow a Windmill. The like is reported by *Giraldus Cambrensis* in his Book *De mirabilibus Hibernie*. So far and to this purpose he. But *Blandevil* our Countryman is of another opinion, (as indeed who not?) neither believing that *Pliny* or any other of the *Roman* Writers came hither to describe this Promontory; or that the *Oxford Friar*, without the assistance of some cold Devil of the middle Region of the Air, (and consequently able to endure all Weathers) could approach so near as to measure these cold Countreys with his *Astrolabe*, or take the height of this black Rock with his *Jacob's staff*. Leaving this therefore as more fit for *Lucian's* Dialogues than any serious Discourse: we will proceed to matters of more truth and certainty.

2. The NORTHWEST parts of *Terra Incognita Borealis* are those which lie on the back of *Esthonia*, the most Northern Province of *America*: by which it hath been much endeavoured to find out a passage to *Cathay* and *China*, and not to go so far about as either by the Cape of *Good Hope*, or the Straights of *Magellan*. Attempted first by *Sebastian Cabot* Anno 1497, at the charge of *Henry the 7. of England*. But having discovered as far as to the 67. Degree of Northern Latitude, by the mutiny of his Mariners he was forced to return; when finding great preparations for a war with *Scotland*, that business for the present was laid aside. Returned by *Gaspard Cortrealis* a *Portugall* Anno 1500, and after by *Stephen Gomez* a *Spaniard*, in the year 1525; but neither of them went so far to the North as *Cabot*. The *Spaniards* notwithstanding would not so give over, but still with five Ships from the *Grey*, and afterwards by two from *New Spain*, sent out by *Cortez*, pursued the Enterprize; which

Proving as successful as the former had been, occasioned Charles the 2<sup>d</sup>, then preparing for Italy, on the payment of 350000 Ducats by King John the third, to suspend the Prosecution of it. Followed with greater industry, but as had success, by *Sir Martin Frobisher*, who made three Voyages for these parts, (the first of them in the year 1579,) and brought home some of the Natives, a Sea Unicorn's horn, (still kept in the great Wardrobe of Windsor Castle) and a great deal of the Ore of that Country, found upon trial, when in England, not to quit the Coast. A great Promotory which he passed by he called *Queen Elizabeth's Foreland*, in whose name he took possession of it and the Sea running not far off he called *Frobisher's Straights*. The Seas full set with Ice Islands some of them half a mile about, and eighty Fathoms above Water: the People like the *Sanneds*, the worst kind of *Tartars*, in their lives and habit. *John Davies* followed the design Anno 1585, at the encouragement of *Sir Francis Walsingham*, then principal Secretary of Estate: and having in three Voyages discovered to the Latitude of 73°, by reason of the many difficulties which he found in the enterprise, and the death of Mr. Secretary, he was fain to give over, leaving out a narrow Sea on the North of *Esotland*, the name of *Francis Davies*, in the Latitude of 65° and 20 Minutes by which name it is still called. After him followed *Wyomouth, Hall, Hudjon, Batton, Bassin, Smith*; all English. The rest of those Endeavours was the finding of some cold Isles and points of Land, which they named *King James his Cape, Queen Ann's Cape, Prince Henric's Foreland, Saddle Island, Barren Island, Red-goose Island, Diggs his Island*; all of them betwixt 80 and 81: and the imposing on some passages and parts of the Sea the names of *Hackley's Headland, Smith's Bay, Hudjon's Straights, Mandin's Sound, Fair Haven*, and the like marks and monuments of their Undertakings. Nothing achieved of publick moment, but the Discovery of an Island called *Cherry Island* in the Latitude of 74°, and the Shores of a large piece of the Continent, which they caused to be called *King James his New Land*, most commonly *Greenland*; where they found many white Bears, with white, gray and dun Foxes, Partridges, Geese, and some other Provisions. Sea-Unicorns Horns, great store of *Mosses*, (or Sea-Horses) the Oil and Teeth whereof yield no small Commodity. But most considerable for the Trade of Whale-fishing, which our men use yearly upon those Coasts; of whose Oil, Bones and Brain (this last supposed to be the true *Sperma Ceti*, now sold as Medicinal) they raised very great profit.

3. The *NORTH-EAST* parts of *Terra Incognita Australis* are those which lie on the North of *Russia* and *Tartary*, by which the lipage towards *Cashy* and *China* hath been oft attempted; and hitherto with little success. Endeavoured first by *Sebastian Cabot*, the Son of *John Cabot*, so often mentioned before, by him trained up in the Discovery of the North-east parts of *America*. His Employment falling here in England, he betook himself unto the Service of the King of Spain; and coming out of Spain, Anno 1559, was by King *Edward* the sixth made grand Pilot of England, with an Annual Pension of 166 l. 13 s. 4 d. In the year 1553, he was the chief Dealer and Procurer of the Discovery of *Russia* and the North-east Voyages, undertaken and performed by *Sir Hugh Willoughby, Chancellor, Burrough, Jenkinson*; and after prosecuted by *Pet* and *Jackman*. Some of which perished in the Action, and were frozen to death; their Ship being found the next year hemmed about with Ice, and a particular account of all things which had happened to them. Others with better fortunes found the way to *Russia*, (since that time made a common Voyage without dread or danger) and passing down the *Volga* to the *Ca-*

*spian Sea*, and by that to *Persia*, were kindly entertained in the Court of the *Sophy*. The *Hollanders* in the year 1594, and in some years after, tried their Fortune also, under the Conduct and Direction of one *William Barrow*, their chief Pilot; but went no farther than the *English* had gone before them; yet gave new names unto all places as they passed, as if they had been the first Discoverers, with Pride and Arrogance enough. Nothing since done of any note or consideration for the opening of this North-east passage, or giving us any better account of the North of *Tartary*, or any Country beyond that but what we had many Ages since out of *Pausanias*: so that we are but where we were, in the *Terra Incognita*. And though I would not willingly discourage any noble Actions, or brave and gallant Undertakings, yet when I look upon the nature of those Shores and Seas, those tedious Winters of ten months, with no Summer following, the Winds continually in the North, and the main Ocean paved with Ice so long together; I cannot chuse but rank the hopes of these Northern Passages amongst those Adventures which are only commendable for the Difficulties presented in them.

## TERRA AUSTRALIS INCOGNITA.

With better hopes we may go forwards on the next Discovery, and try what may be done on *Terra Australis*, or the Southern Continent, though hitherto *Incognita* also, almost as much unknown as the *African* Islands, which none but my good Friend of *Oxford* had the hap to meet with. A Continent conceived by our Learned Brethren to be as large as *Europe, Asia, and Africa*; and that upon such strength of Reasons as cannot be easily overborne by any oppositor. His Arguments in brief are these. 1. That as touching Latitude, some parts thereof come very near to the *Aequator*, if they come not also on this side of it: and as for Longitude, it keepeth along, though at several distances, the whole continental course of the other Continents. 2. It is clearly known, that in the other two Continents the Land which lieth on the North-side of that Line is four times at the least as large as that which lieth South thereof; and therefore, since the Earth is equally poised on both sides of the Centre, it must needs be that the Earth in answerable measure and proportion must advance it self in some places above the Sea on the South-side of the Line, as it doth in others on the North. By consequence, what is wanting in the South parts of the other two Continents to counter-balance the North-parts of them, must of necessity be supplied in the Southern Continent.

The Country being so large, so free from the Incumbrances of Frosts and Ice and endless Winters, I have oft marvelled with my self that no farther progress hath been made in Discovery of it: considering chiefly by the Site and Position of the Country, especially in those parts which lie nearest *Asia*, that there is nothing to be looked for elsewhere, either of profit or of pleasure, but may there be found. Whether it be that there is some *Nihilum* put to humane endeavours, or that this people are not yet made ripe enough to receive the Gospel, or that the great Princes of the Earth think it no good Policy to engage themselves in new Discoveries, till the old be thoroughly planted and made sure unto them; or that the Merchant, who in matters of this nature hath a powerful influence, thinks his hands full enough already, and being fettered in so many and so wealthy Factors, will not adventure upon more: Which of all these, or whether all these together be the cause of this Stop, I am not able to determine. Certain it is, that there is a large Field, enough for Covetousness, Ambition, or desire of Glory,

to spend themselves in enough to satisfy the greatest and most hungry appetite of Empire, Wealth and Worldly pleasure; besides the Gallantry and Merit of to brave an Action. Most which hath hitherto been done in it hath been by the encouragement of the Vice-Roys of *New Spain* and *Pera*: by the first of which we came acquainted with the Coasts of *New Guinea*; by the latter, with those Countries called the *Islands of Solomon*, but whether Continent or Islands, not yet fully known.

And yet we must not rob *Magellan* of his part of the Honour, who, passing through the Straights which now bear his name, discovered those parts of it which, from the Fire thence seen, he called *Terra del Fuego*, found by the *Hollanders* of late under *James de Maire* to be an Island. Nor do the *English* or the *Dutch* want their parts herein, though what they did was rather accidental than upon Design. For in the year 1593, *Sir Richard Hakluyt*, being bound for the Straights of *Magellan*, was by a cross wind driven on some parts of this Continent, to which he gave the name of *Hankins his Maiden land*; a Promontory off shooting in to the Sea with three Points he called *Point Tremontin*; and a pleasant Isle not far off by the name of *Fair Island*. Sailing along the Coast of the 50. Degree of Southern Latitude, for the space of sixty miles and upwards, he found the Country as he passed to be very pleasant; and by the Fires which he saw in the night, to be well inhabited. By the like accident, Anno 1599, *Sibald de Peert*, a *Hollander*, in his return from the Straights of *Magellan*, fell upon some Islands of this Southern Continent, in the Latitude of fifty Degrees and forty Minutes, which he caused to be called *Sibald's Islands*. And besides these we owe to the *Portugals* the Discovery of such parts hereof as they fell on in their way to the Eastern *Indies*, of which we have little but the names as: 1. *Pittacorum Terra*, so called from the abundance of Parrots which they saw on the Coasts over against the Cape of good Hopes. 2. *Beach*, a Region yielding Gold, and posited by Idolaters, with the two Kingdoms of, 3. *Luceah*, and 4. *Malcatur*; all three against the Isles of *Java*, from which little distant.

But the greatest light we have to see by into this dark business is by the Voyages and Adventures of the *Spaniards*, employed by the two Vice-Roys of *Peru* and *Mexico*, as before was said. For in the year 1543, the Governor of *New Spain*, then being, sent *Pilla Lobos* with a Fleet towards the *Moluccas*, who in that Voyage made a Discovery of a rich and flourishing Country, which he named *New Guinea*, by others since this time called *Terra de Picinaceli*: and in the year 1563, *Castro* the Lieutenant, then Vice-Roy of *Peru*, sent a Fleet from *Lima*, which under the Conduct of *Lopez Garcia de Castro*, discovered the Islands of *Solomon*. To which if we subjoin the success of the *Hollanders* in the discovery of *Fratum de Maire*, and the Lands adjoining, the best Description we can make of this Southern Continent must be in the Chorography and History of their Adventures.

1. *Terra del Fuego*, 2. *Insula Solomonis*, 3. *New Guinea* beginning first with *Terra del Fogo*, because nearest to us.

1. *TERRA DEL FUEGO* lies on the other side of the Straights of *Magellan*, heretofore thought to be a part of *Terra Australis Incognita*, or the Southern Continent, but is now discovered to be an Island by one *Jacob Maire* of *Amsterdam*, accompanied by *Cornelius Sebemba* of *Horn*, both *Hollanders*. They began their Voyage on the 15 of June, Anno 1615, and on the 19. of January following they fell even with the Straights of *Magellan*. On the 24. of the same Month they had the light of another Strait, which seemed to separate this *Terra del Fuego* from the rest of the Southern Continent;

and on the 25, they entered into it. That part of the Land which (being entered into the Straights) they had on the West, they called *Terra Mauriti de Nassau*; that on the East, *Statenland*; the Strait it fell, *Fratum de Maire*; the entrance into the Strait they found to be in 55 Degrees of Southern Latitude and 50 Minutes; the water running into the North Sea by so violent an Eddy, *his aduersum mari glom diffundit superare passum*, which he whoso the way of Journal or Ephemerides hath described the whole course of this Voyage. In the whole course thereof nothing so much observable (besides the Discovery) as that they found that at their coming home they had lost a Day, (as multitudes happen unto such as in so tedious a Voyage had travelled Westward) that being *Saturday* to them which was *Sunday* to the *Hollanders* and the rest of *Europe*; though they had calculated the Days since their going out with all exactness. So that if there were any such Morality in the Sabbath as some men pretend, these men must either keep their Sabbath on a different day from the rest of their Countrymen, or otherwise, to comply with them, must be guilty of the breach of the Sabbath all the rest of their lives. But of this more at large elsewhere. To return therefore to this Strait: it is said to be seven Dutch miles or 28 of ours in length, and of a fair and equal breadth; plentiful of good Fish, especially of Sea-Calves and Whales. About the inferring of which Strait into the third Edition of my Microcosm, I received a Letter at such time as the Parliament was held in *Oxon* Anno 1625, subscribed G. B. and a little under that, *Sub genibus floridus*: which whether it were the Gentleman Mottor, or the Anagram of his name, I am not able to say, having never heard more of him from that time forwards, though his desire were satisfied in the next Edition of that Work. For my encouragement wherein he gave me this direction following. "The News (faith he) of this New Strait coming into Spain, it pleased the King, in the year 1618, to send and search whether the truth were answerable unto the Report. And finding it to be much broader than the other, and not above seven Dutch miles long, he decreed, that being the more easy and commodious way for Navigators, and less subject to dangers, his Auxiliary Forces should be sent that way into the East-Indies to defend the *Philippine* and *Molucca* Islands, and the way by the Cape of good Hope to be left. In regard that every such Voyage requireth twice as much time; besides the variety of Winds, and often change of the Air, not only troublefome, but full of Disasters, consuming the one half of the men before they return. Whereas this way gaineth time (and, if need be, they may dispatch business in the West as they travel thence to the East) without any extraordinary danger or loss of men. So far the very words of my Letter. The Intelligence given me in this Letter I find confirmed in a Relation of the Voyage made by Captain *Don Juan de Mesa*, Anno 1618, at the command and charge of the King of Spain, who perfectly arriv'd and furnish'd eight tall Ships to send this new way into his *Philippines* and *Moluccas*, under the conduct of *Pern Michabius de Cordelien*. Since it hath been found by experience that even from our parts to the *Moluccas* through this *Fratum de Maire*, is but a passage of eight Months, *fine uli infigni navigationis clade*, with the Narrator. But of this Strait enough to satisfy my unknown Well-wishers Request, and inform my Reader: being extremely sorry that the Gentleman was not pleased to impart his name, that so his memory might have lived in these Papers, if they themselves be delineate to a longer life.

Now for the nature of the Soil, it is said to be very full of Mountains; but those Hills appalled with Woods



Woods, intermixt with Valleys; the Valleys for the most part full of little Brooks, which fall down from the Mountains, and afford good Pasturage; the Sea-coasts well provided with Bays and Roads, not unsafe for Shipping: though the Air every where, but chiefly near the Sea, be most subject to Tempests. As for the People, they are said to be of a white Complexion; but their Faces, Arms and Thighs, coloured with a kind of Oker: of full stature and well-proportioned, their Hair black, which they wear long, to seem more terrible. The Men most generally naked, the Women only shadded on their secret parts with a piece of Leather.

Towns they have none, nor any Habitations which deserve the name of Houses: so that the most which we can do is to coast the Island. In which we find towards *Mare del Nord*, 1. A large Arm of the Sea called *Entrada de S. Sebastian*. 2. The Cape of S. Ives. 3. *Mauritius Land*. 4. *Promontorio de Buen Suceso*, or the Cape of Good Success. Opposite wherunto in another Island is the Cape of S. Bartholomew, and betwixt them the Strait called *Fretum le Maire*. Then in the *Nor South-Sea*, as they call it, there are, 5. *Barnwell's Island*. 6. The Islands of S. Idelfonso. 7. Cape Horn, on a fair Promontory, in the South-west *Ande*, which doubled, the Country goes along with a straight Shore, on which I find some Bays and Capes, but no names unto them; till we come to the Western entrances of the Strait of *Magellan*, opposite unto Cape *Victoria*, to often mentioned.

2. *INSULÆ SOLOMONIS*, or the Islands of *Solomon*, are situate on the West of *Terra del Fogo*, 11 Degrees on the South of the Equinoctial. Discovered in the year 1567, by *Lopez Garcia de Castro*, sent by the Vice-Roy of *Peru* to find out new Countries. By him thus named, in hope that men would be rather induced to inhabit in them; imagining that *Solomon* had his Gold from these Lands of *Opbir*.

In number they are many, but 18 the principal: Some of which 300 miles in compass, others 200, and others of them less, till we come to fifty, and beneath that, none. All liberally furnished with Dogs, Hogs, Hens, Cloves, Ginger, Cinamon, and some Veins of Gold. The chief of these eighteen are, 1. *Guadalcanal*, supposed to be the greatest of them; upon the Coast whereof the *Spaniards* sailed 150 Leagues, where they found a Town which they burned and killed, because the people of it, by a sudden surprize, had killed fourteen of their men. 2. *S. Jabbell*, 150 Leagues in length, and 18 in breadth, the Inhabitants come black, some white, some of brown Complexion. 3. *S. Nicholas*, 100 Leagues in compass, inhabited by a People whose colour is black of hue, but said to be more witty than the other Savages. All of them situate betwixt the Straights of *Magellan* and the Islands of *Thiver*; and yet not well agreed upon amongst our Authors, whether to be accounted Islands, or a part of the Continent, the *Spaniards* having sailed 700 Leagues on the Coasts hereof, and yet not able to attain unto any certainty. But being they pass generally in account for Islands, and by that name under the Vice-Roy of *Peru*, who appoints their Governors, let them pass to fill.

3. *NOVA GUINÆA* hath beyond the Islands of *Solomon* in respect of us, proceeding, as we have begun from the Land of *Fire*. Discovered, as before was said, Anno 1543, by *Vila Lopes* (wherein attributes the Discovery to the *Alvares de Saavedra*, and sets it higher, in the year 1527) more perfectly made known, if I guess aright, by *Ferdinando de Quir*, who being sent with two Ships to make a more full Discovery of the Islands of *Solomon*, and taking his course about the Height of the *Magellan Straights*, discovered a main Land coming

up close to the Equinoctial, on the Coasts whereof he sailed 80 Leagues, till he found himself at last in the Latitude of 15 Degrees, discovering a large Bay into which fell two great Rivers, where he purposed to settle a Plantation, and to that end presented a Petition to the King of *Spain*. This Country I conceive, by the Site and Position of it, to be *Nova Guinea*, coming up close as that doth to the Equinoctial; and after turning to the South towards the Tropick of *Capricorn*, where it joyneth with *Malacca*. And taking it for granted, as I think I may, I shall afford the Reader this Description of it, out of his memorials, in which it is ischerly affirmed to be a Terrestrial Paradise for Wealth and Pleasures. The Country is plentiful of Fruits, Coconuts, Almonds of four sorts, Pome-granates, Dates, Sugar canes and Apples; plenty of Swine, Goats, Hens, Partridges, and other Fowl, with some Kine and Buffals. Nothing inferior (as it seemeth) to *Guinea* in the Land of *Negroes*, and from thence so named. For, as he saith, he saw amongst them Silver and Pearls, and some told him of Gold; the Countrys on the Coast seeming to promise much felicity within the Land. The Air he found to be wholesome and temperate, the Sea-shores to be full of Bays, Havens, and the Exits of Rivers, making shew of another *China*. The Inhabitants he affirmeth to be innumerable, some white, some like the *Malakas*, others like the *Negroes*; diversified in Habit as well as Colour. Their Bread made of three sorts of Roots: without Government, but not without Religion; for they had their several Oratories and places of burial, but neither King, nor Laws, nor Arts. Divided by that want, and in daily Wars with one another: their Arms, Bows, Arrows, and other Weapons, but all made of Wood. Of this Country, whatever it was (if not *Nova Guinea*) he took possession in the name of the Catholick King, and set up both a Cross and a Chapel in it; the Chapel dedicated to the Lady of *Loretto*.

The precise time of this Discovery I have now here found, but that the time spent about it is by him affirmed to be 14 years, to the small endamagement of his Health and Fortunes. Nor do I find that any care was taken of his Petition, or any thing else done by others in pursuance of his Propositions. Whether it were on any of the Reasons before laid down; or that there was no credit given to his affirmations, I determine not. Nor find I that he gave any names to the Bays or Promontories as he passed along; but he either took such names as were given before, or found not any thing worth the naming. And for such names as were given before, (still taking *Ferdinando Quir's* new Country for *Nova Guinea*) we find a Promontory called *Cape Hermosa*, in the East parts hereof, near the Islands of *Solomon*, and not far from the *Aquator*. 2. Another in the Western part, but as near the *Equinox*, called *Pont Primiro*. 3. A third in the first bendings of the Coast towards the South, called *Cape de Buena Defensa*, or the Cape of good Defence. 4. *Rio de Valcanes*. 5. *Rio de Lorenzo*. 6. *Rio de S. Augustino*, on the East of *Cape Formosa* towards the Straights. 7. The Rivers of S. Peter. 8. S. Paul. 9. S. Andrew, and 10. S. James, betwixt *Cape Formosa* and *Primiro*.

But being there is little certainty of these last Discoveries, and the greatest certainty we have of that little is nothing but a list of names without any thing observable in the state and story of the fame, they may still retain the old name of *Terra Incognita*. And therefore I try my fortune, and without troubling the Vice-Roy of *Peru* and *Mexico*, or taking out Commission for a new Discovery, will make a search into this *Terra Australis* for some other Regions, which might be found either here or no-where. The names of which are, 1. *Mundus alter idem*, 2. *Utopia*, 3. *New Atlantis*, 4. *Fairy Land*, 5. The

Painter's

*Painter's Wives Island*. 6. The Lands of *Chivalry*, and 7. The *New World* in the Moon.

1. *MUNDUS ALTER ET IDEM*, Another world, and yet the same, is a witty and ingenious Invention of a Learned Prelate, writ by him in his younger days, (but well enough becoming the austerity of the gravest Head) in which he distinguisheth the Vices, Passions, Humours, and ill Affections most commonly inclined to mankind, into several Provinces, gives us the Character of each, as in the description of a Country, People, and chief Cities of it; and lets them forth to the Eye in such lively Colours, that the Vicious man may see therein his own Deformities, and the well-minded man his own Imperfections. The Scene of this Design is laid by the Reverend Author in this *Terra Australis*; the Decorum happily preferred in the whole Discovery; the stile acutely clear, in the Invention singular. Of whom and his *New World* I shall give you that Eulogy which the Historian doth of *Humor*, *Nec ante illum quem ille imitaretur, neque post illum qui eum imitari posset, inventus est*.

2. *UTOPIA* is a Country first discovered by Sir *Thomas More*, after Lord Chancellor of *England*, and by him made a Scene of a Commonwealth, which neither *Solon*, nor *Lycargus*, nor any of the Legislators of former times did ever dream of; nor had been fancied by *Plato*, *Aristotle*, Tully, or any who have written the *Idea's* of a Form of Government, though not reducible to practice. Some of his Plots we have taken notice of already: viz. his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt by making of those Metals Chains and Fetters for their Malefactors, Pans of Clove-hoofs, Chamber-pots, and Vessels of such unclean uses; by imposing it as a penalty on infamous persons, to wear Gold-rings upon their fingers, and the like devices: as also his device to prevent mistakes and dislikes in Marriages, by giving the parties a full view of each other naked. Many more projects of this nature, from which the possible enough, but so unpracticable, to beyond hope of being looked on in the modelling of a Commonwealth, that we may reckon this device amongst those strange Fancies, *que nunquam antea fice concepti, nedom operentur erant*. The man indeed (considering the times he lived in) was of rare abilities; but this *Utopia* fitted only to the Meridian of this Southern Continent, this *Terra Australis Incognita*, in which now we are, and to no place else.

3. *NEW ATLANTIS* is an Island of this Southern Continent discovered by Sir *Francis Bacon*, the Learned Vicount of *S. Alban's*, one of Sir *Thomas More's* Successors in the place of Lord Chancellor, but far before him in the excellency and fecibility of his Invention. It had this name with reference to *Atlantis*, an Island of the Western or *Atlantic* Ocean, mentioned in the Works of *Plato*, both alike invisible. But for his falling into this Island, his description of it, the City of *Befallen*, and the manner of his reception there, such handsome probabilities, and so fairly carried, that to one not acquainted with the state of the World it would seem a Reality. But above all things, the Inventions and Designs of *Solomon's* Houses for perfecting the works of nature, or rather improving Nature to the best advantages of Life, and the benefit of mankind, are beyond comparison. The man I must confess had his personal errors, (I know none without them) of good and bad qualities equally compounded: *Mores ejus vigore & levitate mixtissimi*, as *Paterculus* once said of *Piso*, nor one amongst many thousand (to purport that Character) *qui aut oriam vultu diligit, aut facilius sufficit negotio*. A man of a most strong Brain, and a Cynical Head, who, if he had been entertained with some liberal Salary, abstracted from all Affairs both of State and Judicature, and furnished with

facility both of means and helps for the going on in his Design, would, I am confident, have given us such a Body of Natural Philosophy; and made it so subversive to the publick good, that neither *Aristotle*, nor *Theophrastus* amongst the Ancients, nor *Paracelsus*, or the rest of our later Chymists would have been considerable.

4. *FAIRY LAND* is another part of this *Terra Incognita*, the habitation of the Fairies, a pretty kind of little Fiends or Pigmy-Devils, but more inclined to sport than mischief; of which old Women, who remember the times of Popery, tell us many fine Stories. A cleaner and more innocent Cheat was never put upon poor ignorant People, by the Monks and Friars. Their habitation here or no where; though sent occasionally by *Oberon* and their other Kings, to our parts of the world. For not being reckoned amongst the good Angels, nor having malice enough to make them Devils, (but such a kind of mischievous Spirits as the Latines call *Lemures*, or *Laræ*) we must find out some place for them, neither Heaven nor Hell, and most likely this. Their Country never more ennobled then by being made the Scene of that excellent Poem called the *Fairy Queen*. Intended to the honour of Queen *Elizabeth*, and the greatest persons in her Court: but shadowed in such lively colours, framed to exactly by the Rules of Poetic, and representing such *Idea's* of all Moral goodnes; that as there never was a Poem more artificial, so can no Ethical discourse more fashion and enflame the mind to the love of Virtue. *Invictum facilius aliquam quam insitutum*, shall be *Spencer's* Motto; and so I leave him to his rest.

5. The *PAINTERS WIVES ISLAND* is an Island of this Tract, mentioned by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, in his History of the World. Of which he was informed by *Don Pedro de Sarmiento*, a Spanish Gentleman, employed by his King in planting some Colonies on the Straights of *Magellan*, (which we have touched upon before) who being taken Prisoner by Sir *Walter* in his going home, was asked of him about some Island which the Maps presented in those Straights, and might have been of great use to him in his Undertaking. To which he merrily replied, that it was to be called the *Painters Wives Island*, saying, that whilst the Painter drew that Map, his Wife sitting by, desired him to put in one Country for her, that she in her imagination might have an Island of her own. His meaning was, that there was no such Island as the Maps presented. And I fear the Painter's Wife hath many Islands, and some Countries too upon the Continent in our common Maps, which are not really to be found on the strictest search.

6. THE LANDS OF CHIVALRY are such Islands, Provinces, and Kingdoms, in the Books of Errantry, which have no being in any known part of the World, and therefore must be sought in this. A gross absurdity, but frequent in those kind of Writers, who in describing the Adventures of their Knights, in despite of Geography, (with which indeed they had no acquaintance) have nor only disjoynd Countries which are near together, and laid together Countries which are far remote; but given us the description of many Islands, Provinces, and mighty Kingdoms, which as the ingenious Author of the History of *Don Quixote* merrily observeth, are not to be found in all the Map. Of this sort is the Isle of *Adamants* in Sir *Huon of Burdeaux*; the *Firm Island*, in the History of *Amadis de Gaul*; the *Hidden Island*, and that of the Sage *Altiart*, in Sir *Palmerin of England*; the Islands of *Lindaraza*, and the *Devilish Farnes*, with the Kingdom of *Lyræ*, (of which the *Amazonian* Lady *Anchibolus* was the rightful Queen) and many others of that kind, in the *Mirror of Knighthood*; and divers of like nature in *Palmerin de Oliva*, *Primaleon*, and *Belianis of Greece*, *Parismis*, the *Ramant*

mance of Romances, and indeed whom not of all that Rabbie! handily humoured by *Michael de Cervo* in his *Island of Barataria*, of which the famous *Sano Panca* was sometime Governour, and the Kingdom of *Micomicona*. And yet I cannot but confess (for I have been a great Student in these Books of Chivalry) that they may be of very good use to Children or young Boys in their Adolescence. For besides that they divert the mind from worldly cogitations, they perfect him that takes pleasure in them in the way of Reading, beget in him an habit of speaking, and animate him many times to such high conceptions as really may make him fit for great Undertakings.

7. The NEW WORLD IN THE MOON was first of *Lucian* discovering; a man of eminent parts, but as ill a Conscience, apostatizing from the Faith in which he was bred. *Avithaphant* had before told us in one of his Comedies of a *Nephelococcygia*, or a City of Cuckoos in the Clouds. But *Lucian* was the first who found out this New World in the Moon; of which, and of the Inhabitants of it, he affordeth us in one of his Dialogues a conceited Character. But of late times, that World which he there fancied and propounded but as a fancy only, is become a matter of a more serious Debate; and some have laboured with great pains to make it probable, that there is another World in the Moon, inhabited as this is by persons of divers Languages, Customs, Politics and Religions: and more then so, some means and ways propounded to consideration for maintaining an intercourse and Commerce betwixt that and this. But being there are like endeavours to prove that the Earth may be a Planet, why may not this Southern Continent be that Planet, and more particularly that Moon, in which this other world is supposed to be? Certainly there are stronger hopes of finding a New World in this *Terra Australis* then in the body of that Planet, and such perhaps as might exceed both in profit and pleasure the later Discoveries of *America*.

But I am no discourager of Industry and Ingenuity, which I love and honour wheresoever I find it. I know great Truths have many times been started upon less presumptions. Nor would I be mislook, as if in my pursuit of this *Terra Incognita* I put scorn on any of sublimer thoughts, or that I would have any man so much in love with the present World, as not to look for another world in Heaven above. It is reported, that in some Controversie betwixt the *Polander* and the Duke of *Moscow*, the King of *Poland* sent the *Moscovite* a curious Globe, representing the whole Heavenly Bodies,

with the particular motion of each several Sphere. To which the *Moscovite* returned this unworthy answer, *Tu mihi Coelum misisti, et reddo mihi Terram de quibus contentumus*; You send me Heaven, faith he, but that will not last, unless you give me back those Lands which are now in question. And much I fear there are too many of this mind, who would not lose their part on earth for all Heaven it self; whom I desire, if any such part peruse these Papers, to consider, that as much as the most flourishing Country which is here described doth fall short of that Paradise wherein God placed our Father *Adam*, so much, and infinitely more did that Earthly *Paradise* fall short of the unspeakable Glories of the Kingdom of Heaven. To the diligent and careful search of which Heavenly Kingdom I heartily commit the Reader: not doubting but the Works of God which are here presented, and that vicissitude of humane Affairs which is herein touched at, may prompt him to some serious thoughts of that mighty God who made all these Works, in whom is no shadow nor shadow of change; to whom be given all Glory both in this World, and that to come.

*Quicquid enim Lunæ gremio completitur Orbis,  
Permutat variæque vires, trepidoque tumultu  
Assuat, & nunquam sensit pars una Quiescentem.  
Nam ruit in sese, & civili vulnere semper  
Aut cadit, aut perimit; alioque renascitur unum,  
Rursus ut interest: sic non est omnibus unum  
Partibus Ingenium, non vis nativa. Sed Orbes  
Altitelli, & nudi sublimis Regio Caeli  
Immutat senil, & vultu immutabili tuus,  
Terpetuum servat scilicet & sincera tenorem.*

The Verses are *G. Buchanau's* in his Book *De Sphæra*, which I thus Translate, and therewithal conclude this Work.

The World beneath the Moon its shapes doth vary,  
And change from this to that: nor can it tarry  
Long in one state, but with it self doth can  
Kills and is kill'd in endless Civil War.  
New form'd again, 'tis but to die; the frame  
Neither of Bodies nor of Minds the same.  
But that above the Spheres, the Heavens can high,  
In which GOD Reigns in glorious Majesty,  
Free from old Age, unchang'd, and of one face,  
Always presents it self in equal Grace.

*Non nobis, Domine, non nobis, sed Nomini tuo detur Gloria.*

FINIS.

## A Table of some Principal Things herein contained, not properly Reducible to the following Index.

- A. Bader*, a strange beast, the *Rhinoceros* of the Ancients *lib. 2. 201*  
*Abafenes*, by whom converted *L. 4. 50*  
their Heterodoxies and Opinions *ibid.*  
*Abilene*, the Tetrachy of *Lysianis*, where it was *L. 3. 53*, why reckoned, *Luke 3. amongst* the portions of *Herod's* Children. *71*  
*Abdus* besieged by *Philip of Macedon*, and in distress, is fired by the Inhabitants, who likewise flew themselves *L. 3. 15*, betrayed since to the *Turks*, by the Governors daughter *ibid.*  
*Adamiter*, why so called, and what *L. 2. 11*  
by whom destroyed *ib.*  
*Adaphus* II. Earl of *Berg* shut up in an Iron wall and miserably stung to death by Bees *L. 2. 45*  
*Adriaticæ* Sea, whence it had the name *L. 1. 105*, the great extent thereof in some ancient Writers *ib.*  
married to the Duke of *Venice* every Holy Thursday *ibid.*  
*Advice* to an old Casique to *Columbus* *L. 4. 151*  
*Eolus* why made the god of the Winds *L. 1. 75*  
*Æt Cornubium*, what it was, how highly prized, and how occasioned *L. 2. 188*  
*Ætna*, the violent burnings of it *L. 1. 72*, and the cause thereof *ib.*  
*Africa*, whence it had the name *L. 4. 1*  
the state of Christianity in it, how much decayed *ib.* the several Languages therein spoken *ibid.* The monstrous things reported of it by some of the Ancients *ib.*  
*Aghurus* Prince of *Edessa*, his message to our Saviour *L. 3. 117*  
*Albigenses*, what they were, and why so called *L. 1. 92*, the sum and substance of their story *ibid.*  
*Alcoran*, the book of the *Mahometan* Law, why so called *L. 3. 107*, how highly revered *ibid.* the Doctrines thereof, &c. reduced unto eight Commandments *ib.*  
*Alphonse*, Tables by whom compiled, and the cost bestowed in the compiling of them *L. 1. 233*  
*Aloufon*, of a French Gentleman, concerning the cause of their civil broils *L. 1. 153*  
*Almans*, from whence so called *L. 2. 2*  
what several Nations they consisted of, their affairs and story *ib.*  
*Almod*, the son of *Jockare*, where most probably fixed *L. 1. 10*  
*Alex*, a precious Wood worth its weight in silver *L. 3. 213* *Alex*
- Zoarina*, from what place it comes *L. 4. 71*  
*Amar*, a Mountain in *Ethiopia*, described *L. 4. 53*  
*Amazon*, why so called *L. 3. 6*, their dwelling place *ib.* the sum and substance of their affairs *L. 3. 6*  
*Amber*, where it groweth, how gathered, and the virtues of it *L. 2. 143*  
*Amber liquid* *L. 4. 117*  
*America*, not known to the Ancients *L. 4. 83*, by whom first discovered, *84. 85*, the people of it not so black as the *Africans* *87*, that they are descended of the *Tartars*, *ibid.* the estate of Christianity in it, *ib.* the ingenuity of the people in their feather pictures *86*  
*Amethyst*, a precious stone, and the virtues of it *L. 3. 8*  
*Amantius*, a stone whereof cloth is made *L. 2. 211*, which stained, is cleared by fire *ib.*  
*Amphilysius*, what they were, and of their Authority *L. 2. 193*  
*Amphiphyl*, why so called, and what they are in Geography *L. 1. 20*  
*Anagala* silentium perdidit, a by-word, and from whence it came *L. 1. 67*  
*Anayris* infelix, an old proverb, the meaning and occasion of it *ibid.*  
*Anabaptist* cuts off his brothers head *L. 1. 141*, their furies and proceeding in the City of *Munster* 476  
their demands in the interjection of the Boors *L. 2. 153*  
*Anakim*, the name of a Gigantic race of men, and why given unto them *L. 3. 79*  
*Ananias*, the father of the *Hamantians*, an African people *L. 1. 11*  
*Anaræus*, an old by-word, and the meaning of it *L. 2. 213*  
*Aneboret*, whence so called *L. 1. 100*  
buried whilst alive *ib.*  
*Anath*, what they are, and how they differ from *Hittites* *L. 1. 17*  
*Aufser*, a feeling one of an English Captain to a Coling demand of the French *L. 1. 118*, a smart one of *Spinala* to *Marquis Prince of Orange* 0  
of *Richard I.* to the Pope, writing for the Reliance of the Bishop of *Beauvais* 157 of the *Conqueror* concerning his imprisoning of *B. Odo* 164 of *Dr. Dale* to the *Spanish* Commissioners *L. 3. 97*  
*Anticyon* navigans, a proverb, and to whom applicable *L. 2. 193*  
*Antipodes*, what they are *L. 1. 20*, the tenet touching them decided by some of the Ancients *ib.* condemned of *Hæclic* in the darker times of the Church *L. 1. 20*
- Antioch*, the same with *Riblat*, its story *L. 3. 49*  
*Antioch*, what they are in Geography *L. 1. 20*  
*Antonius* Army in distress, relieved by the prayers of Christians *L. 2. 81*  
*Apenege*, what *L. 80, 81*  
*Arachery*, where most practised in elder times *L. 3. 150*, *Cezereus*, good Archers *L. 2. 131*, the excellency of the English at it, Whether Guns or that to be preferred *L. 3. 150*  
*Aras* the son of *Sen*, the founder of the *Syrians* *L. 1. 8*, *L. 3. 38*, the large extent of that name in holy Scripture *ibid.*  
*Areopagites*, what they were, and from whence so called *L. 2. 190*  
*Argonauts*, who they were, and whence so denominated *L. 3. 128*  
thir expedition into *Calebis* *ibid.*  
*Argesies*, great slips of burden, whence they had their name *L. 2. 163*  
*Arismas*, a *Galatian* scathed the whole Nation for a year together *L. 3. 8*  
*Aristomenes*, strange escape out of prison *L. 2. 183*  
*Aristotle*, the Precursor of *Christ* in rebus naturalibus *L. 1. 2*, why he conceived the World to have been eternal *ibid.*  
*Ariste*, the Heretic his dissimulation and death *L. 4. 13*  
*Ark of Noah*, where made *L. 3. 116*, in what place it rested after the flood *L. 1. 6. 7. L. 3. 152*  
*Armadilla*, a strange beast in *America* *L. 2. 60*, the description of it *L. 2. 86*  
*Armenians*, in what points they differ from other Christians, *L. 3. 125*  
how and by whom their Church is governed *ib.*  
*Arms*, why first used *L. 1. 54*, by whom first quartered *L. 2. 1*, why those of *England* give place in the fame *Escocheon* to the Arms of *France* 275  
*Arphaxad*, the father of the *Chaldeans* first settled in the Religion, called *Arapsidius* *L. 3. 116*  
*Arrobas*, a Spanish measure, the content thereof *L. 4. 110*  
*Arsifius*, Wines much celebrated *L. 3. 29*, in what place they grow *ib.*  
*Arundel*, created a Count of the Empire by the Emperor *Rodolphus*, and afterwards a Lord *Arundel* of *Wardour*, by King *James* *L. 2. 155*  
*Asia*, whence so called at first, *L. 3. 13*, the several notions of the word, and in what sense used in holy Scripture *L. 3. 2*, the state of Christianity in it, among whom divided, *ib.*  
X

# A T A B L E.

*Athenae*, the son of *Gomer*, first settled in *Bithynia* and *Phrygia* minor, *l. 3. 77*  
*Affendus* *Cishariffa*, a proverb, and the meaning of it *l. 2. 23*  
*Affur*, the son of *Sen*, where planted *l. 1. 9. 3. 15*, the *Affurians* defended him *ib.* why fo easily conquered by all Invaders *l. 3. 124*  
*Aibens* *l. 2. 189*  
*Attila* the Hun, why called *Flagellum Dei* *l. 2. 156*, his bloody cud *ib.* his Coat of Arms *l. 60*  
*Augur*, and *Aruspex*, how they differ, and whence they had their names *l. 3. 120*  
*Augustine* Confession, why fo called *l. 2. 35*, by whom, and where confirmed *l. 63*  
*St. Augustin's* tart reply to an Atheistical demand *l. 1. 2*, the Order of *Priests* by him founded *l. 99*  
*Augustus*, or an Essay of the Means and Councils, by which he reduced the Common wealth of Rome to the state of Monarchy *l. 1. 38*  
*Avi finifra*, what it meaneth, and the reason of it *l. 3. 120*  
*Anles*, Tapidities, why fo called, and by whom invented *l. 3. 15*  
*Antrafra*, what Provinces it contained, when first made a Kingdom *l. 2. 56*, the story and Kings thereof *ib.* *Antrafra* incognita, the vast greatness of it *l. 4. 158*, why not yet discovered *ib.*

## B.

*ABEL*, the attempt only of some bold adventurers, and not of all the sons of *Noah* *l. 1. 13*, the languages occasioned there not 72 in number, as by some fuppofed 8, the stupendous greatness of the project *l. 5. 113, 114*  
*Babylon* *ibid.*  
*Baceuch*, called *Moonins* why *l. 3. 18*  
*Balancer*, why fo called *l. 1. 243*  
*Baltick* Sea, why fo called *l. 2. 110*  
*Why it doth notebb and flow like other Seas* *ibid.*  
*Bather* not permitted by the Emperor *Adrian* to be used promiscuously by both Sexes *l. 1. 141*, the inconvenience arising from that intmixture *ib.*  
*Battel* at *Minina*, and the success thereof *l. 1. 127*, between the *Sarmatians* and their slaves *l. 2. 132, 133*  
*of Kersifure* 155, of *Lepanto* 219, the last betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius* King of *Persia* *l. 3. 115*  
*Tedellians*, mentioned *Gen. 2. 12*, what conceived to be *l. 3. 145*  
*Beaufort*, why made the surname of the Children of *John of Gant* *l. 1. 169*  
*Bel and Baal*, whence the names derived *l. 5. 119*, why called *Belzebub*, the Lord of Flies *l. 74*  
*Belrephontis* Literae, a by-word, the occasion of it *l. 3. 21*

*Belge*, the valiantest of the *Gauls*, in the time of *Cæfar*, and for what reasons *l. 2. 2. 3*  
*Benedictines*, or *black Monks*, by whom instituted *l. 1. 100*, their habit and increase *ib.*  
*Berrie*, abundantly stored with sheep *l. 1. 175*, *Charles* the 7th in derision called King of *Berrie* *ibid.*  
*Beznar*, the sovereign nature of it *l. 4. 89*, found in the belly of a beaft, called the *Vicagrie* *ib.*, that of *China*, and the East more excellent than that of *America* *l. 3. 183*  
*Bishop of Spalato*, his Levity, Apostacy, and death *l. 2. 162*  
*Bishops* coeval with Christianity *l. 1. 22, 146, 149, 257. l. 2. 105, 179. l. 3. 1*, how, and why hated by the *Bisants* *l. 1. 215*, and their consequences thereof *ibid.* *Bishops* not anciently interdicted from the seats of War *l. 3. 60*  
*Black Fryers*, or *Dominicans*, by whom founded, and why fo called *l. 1. 99*  
*Blind and Lame*, mentioned 2 Sam. 5. 8. what they were most probably *l. 3. 79*  
*Box in Lingua*, a proverb the meaning, and original of it *l. 2. 189*  
*Botelius* his strange adventure *l. 3. 201*  
*Brachmanns*, what they were amongst the *Indians* *l. 2. 193*, their authority and course of life *ib.* succeeded in the first by the modern *Bramin* *ib.*

*Brachygraphy*, or the art of short writing, by whom first invented *l. 4. 5*  
*Britania*, from whence the name probably derived *l. 1. 251*, not from *Brutus* *ib.* that there was no such man, proved *ib.* Southern parts thereof called *England* 252, its plenty and ornaments briefly set forth *ib.* plenty of Mines therein 254, and number of Parks *ib.* its sea stored with fish 255, quantity of fish fished in one City thereof 255, Christian faith planted therein by whom 257, first peopled out of *Gaul* 262, counterfeit Kings of *England* *l. 3. 156*  
*Bucenature* *l. 1. 125*  
*Burgundians*, why fo called *l. 1. 189*  
*when first converted to the faith* *ib.* their affairs and story *ib.*  
*Bisainers*, some of their Customs *l. 1. 218*

## C.

*CÆsar*, the name at first of the Roman Emperours *l. 1. 52*, after of the designed Successor *ib.* the unfortunate end of most of them *l. 53*  
*Cæsar Borgia*, son of Pope *Alexander* the sixth, after divers changes of fortune where slain *l. 1. 215*  
*Calis* taken by the *English*, and retaken by the French *l. 1. 161*

*Cales* taken by the Earl of *Effex* *l. 1. 225*  
*Caliph*, the name of the Successors of *Mahomet*, and the succession of them *l. 3. 109, 110*  
*Calioirs*, what, and where seated, their number and manner of life *l. 2. 202*  
*Cambyfes* his present to the King of *Æthiopia*, with the Kings answer returned *l. 4. 57*  
*Campi atalaunici*, where *l. 1. 185*  
*Canes fepulchrales*, what *l. 3. 153*  
*Capuan esse Cannas Annibali*, a by-word, and the occasion of it *l. 1. 61*  
*Capuchin* Friars, by whom first instituted, and why fo called *l. 1. 100*  
*Cappadocians* generally fo lewd, that they grew a by-word *l. 3. 9*, not only morally wicked, but naturally venomous *l. 10*  
*Caracalla* the Emperor, slain by *Maximus*, where, and upon what occasion *l. 3. 118*  
*Caphurim* to be found in *Cyrene*, a Town of *Egypt* *l. 1. 10*, carried against all reason into *Cappadocia* *ib.* *l. 3. 9*  
*Cardinals*, by whom first ordained, the Election of the Popes assigned to them only, and by whose authority *l. 1. 92*  
*Carnel*, a Mountain of *Syria* *l. 3. 43*, mistook by the *Gentiles* for a god *ib.* the Fryers Carmelites thence named *ib.* *l. 8. 1. 100*  
*Carthusian* Monks, by whom instituted *l. 1. 100*, their strict kind of life *ib.*  
*Casubini*, more likely to be found in *Casubia* than *Calebia* *l. 1. 11*  
*Cenauers*, the fable of them, whence it took beginning *l. 2. 199*  
*Chaldeans*, great Astrologers *l. 3. 112*, the name communicated unto all who professed that Art *ib.* fo called from *Chelad*, the son of *Nebuch* *ib.*  
*Charles* the 5th of *Navarre* his strange death *l. 1. 216*  
*Chasir*, or first matter of the world, expressed by *Moses* in the names of *Haava* and *Ereth* *l. 1. 2*, how described by *Osirid* *ib.*  
*Chaitformareth*, the father of the *Chardromatist* an Indian people *l. 1. 10*  
*Cherfonfides*, what they are, why fo called, and how many of them *l. 2. 106*  
*Chimera* the Monster, what it vvas, & how tamed by *Bellerophon* *l. 3. 21*  
*Chorography*, what it is, and how different from *Geography* *l. 1. 24*  
*Chriftians*, where first fo called, and vvhich word solemnly *l. 3. 44*, extremely hated by the *Gentiles* 45, their persecutions and increase *ib.*  
*Chriftmas* sports in *Tweel-tide*, by whom first instituted *l. 1. 264*  
*Chronology*, how they differ from History *l. 1. 17*, by whom best performed *ib.*  
*Chus*, the Son of *Cham*, first planted in

# A T A B L E.

in *Arabia* *l. 3. 102*, his posterity (the *Chiftites*) why called *Æthiopi* *ib.* *Chiftites* why rendered *Æthiopi* *ib.*  
*Chiftes* why rendered *Æthiopi* *ib.*  
*Our English* Bibles *l. 3. 99*, the Translation justified *ib.* the actions ascribed to them not poffible to be understood of the *Æthiopi* *ib.*  
*Chiftes* *l. 4. 71*, the mistake laid on the Expofitors *l. 3. 100*  
*Cimmerius* the posterity of *Gomer* *l. 1. 12. 154*, first settled in *Albania* and *Phrygia* Major *ib.* and gave name to *Bosphorus Cimmerius* *l. 2. 38*. In *Europe* better known by the name of *Cimbri*, the fame with the *Cimmerians* *l. 1. 12. 1. 2. 38* the *Cimbri* *Cherfonfide* named from them *l. 2. 106* their attempt upon the *Roman* Empire and overthrow by *Marius* *l. 1. 187*  
*Cimon* in one day overthrew the Sea and Land Forces of the *Persians* *l. 3. 23*  
*Cinnamon*, what it is, where, and how it groweth, and from whence fo called *l. 4. 69*  
*Cipters*, or private Characters for writing, by whom first invented *l. 4. 4*  
*Circassians*, where they dwell, their opinions and practice *l. 3. 166*  
*Ciftians* or *White Monks*, whence fo called *l. 1. 99*, by whom ordained *ib.*  
*Cities* by whom first built, and on what design, *l. 5*, the causes of the greatness and magnificence of them *ib.*  
*Cium*, the son of *Japhet*, first settled in the life of *Cyprus* *l. 3. 35*, his posterity spreading into *Macedonia*, *l. 2. 199, 204*, from thence into *Ætolia*, and fo into *Italy* *l. 1. 32*  
*Climar*, what they be, how many, and how distinguished *l. 1. 20*  
*Clover*, where they grow most plentifully, and the nature of them *l. 3. 222*  
*Coa*, and *Vestis Coa*, a light Garment much used by the Dames of *Rome* *l. 3. 30*, the *Coan* Wine (*cinnam* *Co*) as much cried up by the good-fellows of that City *l. 31*  
*Coconuts*, a most excellent fruit, and of several uses *l. 4. 70*  
*Cecubite*, a precious Dye, how, and where it groweth *l. 4. 110*  
*Cedrus*, his love to his Country *l. 2. 190*  
*Celomer*, why planted by the *Romans* *l. 1. 185*, the number of them, and how distributed *ib.* whether more useful than a Forest *ib.*  
*Celephorum*, addre, a proverb, and from whence it came *l. 3. 17*  
*Col Gius* of *Rhodes* *l. 3. 25*  
*Commentaries* what they properly are, and how they differ from History *l. 1. 17*  
*Constantine* converted to the Faith, and

on what occasion *l. 1. 53*, his new Modelling of the Empire 55, of which one of the chief subverters *ib.* He caused the Pretorian Guards *ib.* his Donation forged *l. 94*  
*Constance*, the Council there holden *l. 2. 58*  
*Confuls*, when first ordained in *Rome* *l. 1. 55*, who the first fo called *ib.* when the Office ended *ib.*  
*Capiti*, the name of the *Christians* of *Egypt*, whence to be derived *l. 4. 5*  
*their Tenets*, in matters of Religion, and citate at the present *ib.*  
*Corybantes*, the Priests of *Cybele* *l. 2. 14*  
*Cosmography* defined *l. 1. 24*, the general Latitude of the Notion *ib.*  
*Coty* his rare temper in making and preventing pullion *l. 2. 205*  
*Cotton Wool*, where it groweth, and how *l. 4. 40. & paffim alibi* *l. 3. 47*  
*Council of Trent* *l. 2. 67*  
*Creation* of the World, and the Motives of it *l. 1. 1*, the concurrence of each person to it *l. 3*, the matter of it, and the method *ib.* how long since done *l. 1. 2*  
*Crete*, things most observable there *l. 2. 219*  
*Cretenfe mendacium* *l. 2. 217*  
*Cretenfe infat Pelagus*, a Proverb, the occasion of it *l. 2. 219*  
*Crocodiles*, their monstrous shape, and where most usual *ib.*  
*Curetes*, what they were, and from whence fo called *l. 2. 217*  
*Cusfians* happy guests at the Arms of *Germany* *l. 2. 104*  
*Cyprian* women their Chastity *l. 3. 34*, the *Heroick* act of a *Cyprian* Lady *l. 37*  
*Cyzicum*, besieged in vain by *Mithridates*, its glorious Temple *l. 3. 15*

## D.

*Ducky* observed as lucky, or unlucky unto divers men *l. 1. 86*  
*Damafcus*, how situated *l. 3. 171*, *Damafcus* Plums, *Damask* Roses, and *Damask* Linnen, thence fo called *l. 53*  
*Damietta* besieged and taken by the *Christians* *l. 4. 9*  
*Darius* his fruitless Wars against the *Sythians* *l. 3. 164*  
*David* George a monstrous Heretic, and what his Tenets *l. 2. 3*  
*Deid*, the son of *Regna*, planted on the shores of the *Persian* Gulf *l. 1. 12*  
*Delinquents*, how to be proceeded with *l. 1. 65*, gained more by favour than by rigour *ib.*  
*Dofpis*, the title of *Heir* apparent in the Eastern Empire *l. 2. 165*, communicated to inferior Princes *ib.* the *Depofits* of *Rufcia* *ib.* of *Scythia* *ib.* of *Bulgaria* *ib.*  
*Diaries*, what they are, and how they differ from History *l. 1. 2*

## X

*Diftators*, what they were in the late *Rome*, a Catalogue of them *l. 1. 38*  
*Divination*, by Birds, and the kinds thereof *l. 3. 122*  
*Diofclaus* depofes himself, and follows the Trade of a Gardner *l. 1. 55*  
*Dodonius* the Son of *Javan*, first settled in *Rhodes* *l. 3. 52*, his posterity passing into *Egypt* *l. 2. 197*, and there naming the *Dodonian* Grove *l. 193*  
*Dog-fish*, how taken *l. 2. 23*  
*Dofibcaura*, *Samaritan* S. & their Superftitions *l. 3. 72*  
*Drake Sir Francis*, how fild to be the mit that fayed about the World, by whom followed *l. 4. 136*  
*Drabinnia*, her cruelty, fwallowed a live *l. 2. 77*  
*Druides*, what they were, and from whence fo called, & their chief feat in *France*, in *Britain* *l. 1. 275*  
*Drufians*, what they are *l. 3. 39*, of their power and strength *l. 53*

## E.

*E Co la Fico*, a fcof used amongst the *Italians* *l. 1. 124*  
*Edgar* rowed over *Dee* by eight Kings *l. 1. 276*  
*Edward III.* his claim unto the Crown of *France* mistaken in our common Chronicles *l. 1. 153*, not prejudiced at all by the *Salutic* Law *ib.*  
*Egypt* peopled in probability before the Flood, some of the Dynasties of their Kings to have bin before it *l. 4. 15*  
*Elam* the Son of *Sem*, where planted *l. 1. 97*, of the Dukes of *Venice* *l. 1. 109*, of the German Emperours *l. 2. 103*, of the great Matter of *Malta* *l. 4. 39*, means for obtaining the Crown of *Bohemia* *l. 2. 77*  
*Eldkors* of *Germany*, how many *l. 2. 103*, by whom ordained *ib.* their Offices and how performed *ib.*  
*Elephants* their vast greatness and docile nature *l. 3. 191*  
*Elifha* the son of *Javan*, settled in *Eli* of *Peloponnesus* *l. 1. 13*, and after in the Isles of *Greece* *l. 2. 182*, thence called the Isles of *Elifha*, *Ezek* 27. 7. 15.  
*Emir of Sidon*, what he is *l. 3. 44*, his power and strength *l. 45*  
*Eudymonius formum dormia*, a Proverb the occasion of it *l. 3. 20*  
*Enemies* to be licenced fight with *l. 1. 177* how to be dealt withal when they are in our power *l. 1. 63*  
*Entervens* betwixt great Princes reckoned inconventient *l. 1. 119*  
*Epaminondus* slain at *Maritima* *l. 2. 183*  
*Ejcard* *l. 1. 232*  
*Effent*, why fo called, their opinions and Dogmata *l. 3. 67*

## Etymologies

# A T A B L E.

*Elymologies*, ridiculous of Europe l. 1. 28. of the *Huguenots* l. 1. 169. of the *Wallons* l. 2. 3. of the *Lombards* l. 2. 148  
*Ephesus*, and the Temple there dedicated to *Diana* l. 3. 17  
*Epeche*, what it is in account of time l. 1. 20. the several *Epeches* in Italy *ibid.*  
*Eunuchs*, why most employed by the Eastern Monarchs l. 3. 160  
*Europe*, whence so called l. 1. 27. the Original languages still in it.  
*Exarch*, what he was, and by whom ordained l. 1. 81. his proper Territory *ib.* the Catalogue and succession of them. *ibid.*

**F.**  
*Fides Attica*, a Proverb, the Original of it l. 2. 189  
*Fidei*, a barbarous custom among the *Scars* l. 1. 283. abrogated by King *James* *ibid.*  
*Fig tree*, why cursed by our Saviour l. 3. 61  
*Fire*, worshipped by the *Lituanians* l. 2. 143. and by the *Perisians* l. 3. 142. carried in state before the *Romans* *ibid.*

*Fleas* drive the Inhabitants from the City *Myra* l. 3. 17  
*Flight*, to be permitted an Enemy, and debarred a Soldier l. 1. 177  
*Formalities* of the homage done by *Edward III.* to the French King l. 1. 184. at the Degradation of *Priest* l. 2. 58. at the Investiture of the Dukes of *Carinthia* l. 2. 67. of *Maurice Duke of Saxony* 137. of *Albert Duke of Prussia* 137. of the Duke of *Moscow* 149. at the admitting the new Duke of *Wirzburg*, and entering the old l. 2. 72. at the marriages of the Netherlands l. 3. 115. at the Coronation of the Great *Charles* 180. at the presenting of Ambassadors to the Grand Signior l. 3. 6. at the Funerals in *China* 183.  
*Ferdin* Guard dangerous to a Prince's Person l. 4. 18. as foreign Aids unto a Kingdom 19. on what occasions usually sought, and when most necessary *ib.*  
*Fornication* and Adultery punished with death l. 2. 153  
*Franks*, or French, of what Nations they consisted l. 1. 188. Their Actions and achievements *ib.* By whom converted to the faith, and on what occasion l. 1. 150. their Character 16. the Antipathy between them and the *Spaniards* 153. the valour of their Empire, and the reasons of the decay thereof 190. 191. The name of *Frank* given by the Turks to all Western Christians l. 3. 44  
*Frankenfe*, where it groweth, and how l. 3. 103. 106. offered to the

Gods, *Frankenfe* growing out of the Earth *ibid.*  
*Franciscan*, or *Grey Friars*, why so called, and by whom founded, by the French called Cordeliers l. 1. 100  
*Free Cities*, what they are, how many, and in what Estates l. 2. 37  
*Friers*, and their several Orders 114. &c. in what esteem amongst the people l. 1. 100  
*Frutifulness* of *Rhesan* l. 2. 133. and *Podolia* 144

**G.**  
*Gabari*, a Leprous kind of people in what parts they dwell l. 1. 182  
*Galileans*, of what stock they were l. 3. 68. scorned by the Jews 69. Their zeal unto Religion, our Saviour called a *Galilean* *ib.*  
*Gallican* Church, the power and privileges of it l. 1. 151  
*Galtonies*, what they were, for what cause named *Galileans* l. 3. 60  
*Gentlemen* of *Venice*, what they are, and what esteem l. 1. 109  
*Geography* defin'd l. 1. 16. the benefit thereof 19  
*S. George the Cappadocian*, a famous Martyr, l. 3. 9. his *Conspiration* at *Lidds* in the Holy Land l. 3. 50  
*Ghighis*, a Mahometan Epoke l. 1. 18. from whence so called l. 3. 109. the unlikelihood of *Scaliger* about it *ib.*  
*Hellenists*, what they were, and why so called l. 2. 179. l. 3. 51. in what differing from the other Jews *ib.*  
*Herodian* Foret, the beginning and extent thereof l. 2. 38  
*Hermis* the Tyrant sewed in an Ox's Hide, and baited to death l. 3. 100  
*Herodians*, what they were, and from whence denominated l. 3. 38  
*Hieroglyphicks*, what they were, and by whom first used l. 3. 5. some particulars of them *ibid.*  
*S. Hierome*, a Father of the Church, where born l. 2. 153. the Order of Monks by him instituted l. 1. 109  
*History* defin'd l. 1. 16. 17. the necessity use of it, and to whom, how it differeth from *Annals*, *Commemoratives*, &c. *ibid.*  
*Hock-tide* sports, the Original of them, and from whence so named l. 1. 271  
*Hollanders*, their great strength at Sea, l. 2. 20. the great benefit they make by fishing on the Coast of England l. 2. 2. Their base cheat upon the English at *Polevone* l. 3. 222. and bloody butchery at *Amboyna* 223  
*Holy Oyl* of *Rhemes*, in what state attended, not so ancient as the French pretend l. 1. 159  
*Homers*

*l. 2. 34.* not used in *India* at the expedition of *Bacchus* l. 3. 181  
*Gyger*, how he came to be King of *Lycia* l. 3. 19. whence said to have a Ring, by which made invisible *ib.*

**H**  
*A Letter Omnia* unto the State of England l. 2. 225.  
*Hamath*, or the Land of *Hamath* l. 3. 46  
*Hanse-Towns*, why so called, how many, and of what power at Sea l. 2. 128

*Hirats*, whence used for the name a common profute l. 1. 165  
*Harpyes*, the table and the Moral l. 2. 37  
*Hatto*, Archbishop of *Mentz*, devourer of Rats and Mice l. 2. 49. So also *Populus Duke of Poland* l. 2. 143  
*Havilah* the son of *Chus*, first planted about *Babylonia* l. 1. 10. called thence the Land of *Havilah* in the second of *Gen.* 10. 143  
*Havilah* the son of *Jochanaan* feasted in *India* l. 1. 10. the Kingdoms of *Assa* and *Chus*, so called from him l. 3. 212  
*Hebrew*, not the primitive language l. 1. 17. nor at all peculiar to the Jews *ib.*  
*Higra*, the Mahometan Epoke l. 1. 18. from whence so called l. 3. 109. the unlikelihood of *Scaliger* about it *ib.*  
*Hellenists*, what they were, and why so called l. 2. 179. l. 3. 51. in what differing from the other Jews *ib.*  
*Herodian* Foret, the beginning and extent thereof l. 2. 38  
*Hermis* the Tyrant sewed in an Ox's Hide, and baited to death l. 3. 100  
*Herodians*, what they were, and from whence denominated l. 3. 38  
*Hieroglyphicks*, what they were, and by whom first used l. 3. 5. some particulars of them *ibid.*  
*S. Hierome*, a Father of the Church, where born l. 2. 153. the Order of Monks by him instituted l. 1. 109  
*History* defin'd l. 1. 16. 17. the necessity use of it, and to whom, how it differeth from *Annals*, *Commemoratives*, &c. *ibid.*  
*Hock-tide* sports, the Original of them, and from whence so named l. 1. 271  
*Hollanders*, their great strength at Sea, l. 2. 20. the great benefit they make by fishing on the Coast of England l. 2. 2. Their base cheat upon the English at *Polevone* l. 3. 222. and bloody butchery at *Amboyna* 223  
*Holy Oyl* of *Rhemes*, in what state attended, not so ancient as the French pretend l. 1. 159  
*Homers*

*Homers* birth, how contended for l. 3. 17. where born, and why call'd *Mavrodes* *ibid.*  
*Huamans*, a strange beast, and the nature of it l. 4. 125  
*Huguenots*, whence so called, l. 1. 169  
*Their* great power once, and present condition 151  
*Hah*, or *Chad*, the son of *Aram*, in what parts first settled l. 1. 81. l. 3. 127  
*Hydrograph* what it is, and by whom first written l. 1. 26

**I.**  
*Isabier*, what they are, and where most numerous, their opinions l. 3. 117. 118  
*Janizaries*, their institution and number, l. 3. 134. their Office and power *ib.* their insolencies and punishments, 135. the likeliest men to carry the Turkish Empire, if the line of *Ottoman* should fail, l. 3. 138  
*Japhet*, how made partaker of the blessing of God, *Gen.* 9. 27. both in the literal sense, and the mystical l. 1. 20  
*Jappo*, the name of the North-west wind, and why given unto it, l. 1. 65  
*Jarab*, the son of *Jochanan*, more probably to be found in *Arachobis*, than *Isufia* *Hieracim* l. 1. 78  
*Javan* the son of *Japhet*, the father of the *Ionians* and *Athenians* l. 3. 17  
*Jedoniss*, a predominant passion among the *Italians*, l. 1. 59. as also among the *Morrs* and *Spaniards* 207. the English little free to it, and the Dutch much less, l. 1. 2. 1.  
*Jesuits* by whom first instituted, l. 1. 100. their vow of *Mission* *ib.* grown formidable to the Pope, *ibid.* industrious in planting Christianity in the barbarous Nations, l. 3. 183.  
*Chief* Factors for the King of *Spain*, l. 2. 10. They and the *Presbyterian* or *Puritan* Preachers the greatest Incendiaries of Christendom 100. expelled *Georgia*, on what occasion l. 3. 130  
*Jetur* the son of *Ismael*, the father of the *Imurens* l. 3. 66  
*Jews* not suffered to land in *Cyprus* l. 3. 34. expelled out of England, France and Spain 94. in danger to be stoned every *Munday* *Thursdays* *ib.* The hopes and hindrance of their conversion, *ib.* the restitution of their Kingdom not denied by Christ 95  
*Islands* how caused, whether better feared than the Continent, l. 1. 18.  
*Imperial Chamber*, why erected, and where settled, l. 2. 50. *Imperial Cities*, where 19  
*Indians*, or *Christians* of *S. Thomas*, what they hold in matter of Religion, l. 3. 192. The submission of

their Churches to the Pope 193  
*Indies*, where and how it groweth, l. 3. 200.  
*Influence* of the Heavenly bodies on particular Countries l. 1. 15  
*Inquisition*, when, and why ordained, the manner of proceeding in it not admitted into many of the Papal Countries l. 1. 210  
*Interim* of *Germany*, what it was, and how ill liked of all parties l. 2. 35  
*Invention* of Clocks and Watches, l. 2. 2. of Pictures in Glass, and laying Colours in Oyl, of Printing, 218. of Guns 3. Leather Ordnance 141. of Wild Fire 217. of Battle-ax l. 3. 6. of Dice and Chess 18. of Tragedies 28. of Sail for Ships 30. of Arithmetick and Astrology 43. of Purple Die 44. of Crystal-glass 45. of Potatoes, Hour-glasses, &c. l. 1. 72. of Comedies 72. of Mariners Compaſs 62. of Tackle for Ships, *ib.* of Letters, and Cipher, l. 4. 4. of Brachygraphy *ib.* of Paper, l. 4. 8  
*Ireland*, why never Conquered till the reign of King *James* l. 1. 296  
*Irish* their barbarous customs 291  
*Ionian Games* l. 2. 187  
*Israel* and *Judah*, when divided, the reasons why no more United, though some opportunities were offered l. 3. 85  
*Italians* derived from *Citim*, the son of *Japhet*, so called from the *Aetolians*, by whom converted to the Faith, their scandalous lives, how punished, and by what instruments, l. 1. 33. 34. and 56  
*Italy* the name first of the East parts of the Country, only communicated after to the whole, the Kings thereof after the ruin of the Empire abandoned by the Emperours, for what reasons, l. 1. 58. 59  
*Joan* the Virgin, not a Witch, as the English, not so miraculously sent as the French pretend, *ib.* what the was indeed l. 2. 55  
*Jochan*, and his posterity settled originally in the East, l. 1. 10. 11. the improbabilities of their fixing in *Arabia Felix* 10. greater of their transplanting into *America*, l. 3. 193  
*John Baptists* head, how pitifully mangled by the Papists.  
*Julius Scaliger* his censure of *Hesiodus* controverted by *Velleius* l. 2. 192. his base character of the English, l. 1. 255  
*Joseph Scaliger* his singularity about *Nabonides*, and *Darius Medus*, *ib.* His untruthfulness about the *Higra* l. 3. 121  
*Julian* the Apostate where he died l. 3. 115  
*Judges* of Hell, what, and who they were, and why so accounted of, l. 2. 214. 216

*Justus Lipsius* his unjust Censure of *Cassius Commentarius* l. 1. 18

**K**  
*Kaia* *Kaia*, a Proverb, and of whom intended l. 2. 215  
*Kaia* *Kaia*, or *Kaia*, a Proverb, used for a wicked person l. 3. 9  
*Kings* called an Ordinance of man, and why, l. 1. 216. who of them anciently anointed, how they take precedence 274. not to use their people to the wars, l. 2. 30. the Legend of the Kings of *Calen*, 48. Kings but for twelve years, and then must sacrifice themselves, l. 3. 206. Kings subject to Priests, where l. 4. 62  
*Kings* Erit a disease, l. 1. 130 the Cure thereof hereditary to the King of England l. 1. 271  
*Kinghood* vid. Orders.

**L.**  
*Labyrinth* of *Egypt*, l. 4. 6. imitated by *Minos*, in that of *Crete*, l. 2. 16  
*Laebryne Christi*, l. 1. 118. the execution of a *Dutchman* thereon *ib.*  
*Lady of Loreto* her Legend, l. 3. 70. the impudency of her Temple, l. 1. 81  
*Lamissas* found an Infant into a hill-pond, thrown by King *Agimod*, brought up in Court, and after chanced King of *Longobard*, l. 2. 153  
*Latines*, the Inhabitants of *Latium*, and from whence so called, l. 1. 30. The *Latine* tongue not the language of *Italy*. The reasons of the spreading and extent thereof *ibid.*  
*Lampisus*, how saved by *Antiochus* when threatened by *Alexander* *ib.*  
*Laws* of *Oleum* l. 1. 203  
*League* between France and Scotland, l. 1. 286. the condition thereof, *ib.*  
*Lebanim* the Father of the *Lybi* *Egyptii* l. 1. 10. l. 4. 17  
*Leomers* an infectious beast, l. 2. 14  
*Lemnia*, or *Terra Lemnia*, the foreign virtues of it, l. 2. 210. how made and ordered, *ib.* why called *Terra Sigillata* *ib.*  
*Letters*, the first Original, and History of them l. 4. 4  
*Levites* why scattered and divided among the Tribes, l. 3. 51. The liberal maintenance allowed them *ibid.*  
*Libanus*, a famous Mountain, why so named, l. 3. 41. the length, course and branches of it *ibid.*  
*Libertas* *Prophetandis*, what, and where most in use l. 2. 139  
*Liburni* the name of Light Vessels, l. 2. 163. and of fish Chairs as we call *Stedans*, *ib.* and from whence so named *ib.*  
*Lions*, l. 192. Its famous Mart. *ib.* in it a Temple dedicated to *Angulus*, *ib.* before whole Altar exercises instituted

tuted of the Greek and Roman Eloquence *ibid.*  
*Lami* a strange beast in *Bohemia* *L. 2.*  
*Lombards* their Original and first Kings *L. 2.* 56. their affairs in Italy, the subversion of their Kingdom there *L. 1.* 56.  
*Lud* the son of *Sem*; the father of the *Lydians* in *Asia minor* *L. 1.* 1.  
*Ludim* the Son of *Mizraim*, the father of the *Ethiopsians* in *Africa*; *L. 1.* 1. improperly rendered *Lydians* in our *English* Bibles, *Jer.* 46. 9. *L. 1.*  
*Luther* his birth, his first contention with the Pope, *L. 2.* 35. the success and spreading of his Doctrine, *ib.* and by what means especially, 37. the Government of the *Lutheran* Churches, *ib.* the condition of their Ministers 8. their Rites and Ceremonies not much different from those in the Church of *England* *ib.*  
*Lyfians* the Tetrarch of *Abylene*, whose son he was *L. 3.* 53. why reckoned, *Luke* 3. among *Herod's* Children *ibid.*  
**M**  
*Maddeth* his story *L. 1.* 286  
*Madai* the third Son of *Japhet*, *L. 1.* 139. the father of the *Medi* *L. 1.* 13.  
*Magi*, what they were in *Persia*, their citicism and power *L. 2.* 142  
*Magnez*, why used to signify the Load-stone by the *Latine* writers *L. 4.* 87  
*Magg* the son of *Japhet* settled in *Syria propria*, and the borders of *Egypt* *L. 1.* 12. *L. 3.* 47.  
*Mahomet* his birth and breeding, *L. 3.* 107. his design to Coyn a new Religion, *ib.* the causes of the great growth and increase thereof, 109. his success and victories *ibid.*  
*Maites* of the Palace, their institution and authority, *L. 1.* 119. the Catalogue and succession of them *ibid.*  
*Malefactors* flying to *Geneva*, how punished *L. 1.* 128  
*Man*, why created unarmed and naked, the image of God in him what it doth consist in *L. 1.* 3.  
*Manly* exercises allowed at *Geneva* on the Lords day *L. 1.* 138  
*Marcheta nulieria* a barbarous custom of the *Scots*; *L. 1.* 283. whence named and by whom abrogated *ibid.*  
*Mare*, why used in ostell among some of the Ancients *L. 2.* 176  
*Margaret* Countess of *Heunberg*, delivered at one birth of 365 Children *L. 2.* 22  
*Merriner* Compass, by whom invented, and by whom perfected *L. 1.* 62. erroneously ascribed to *Solomon* *L. 4.* 86  
*Narcotics*, whence so called, their Tenets and places of dwelling, *L. 3.* 40.  
 Their reconciliation with the

Pope, but a matter of complement *L. 3.* 41  
*Marulla* her valour in preserving the *phobias* from being surprized by the *Turks* *L. 3.* 211  
*Massifiers* of the *Scythians* by the *Medes*; *L. 3.* 154. of the *Romans* by *Mithridates*, 7. of the *Danes* by the *Englisb*, 317. of the *French* in *Sicily*, *L. 7.* 60. of the *Hugonots* by the *French* 150  
*Matlick*, what it is, where growing, and how gathered *L. 2.* 29  
*Matiff* Dogs, why called *Matiff*, by the *Latins* *L. 2.* 197  
*Mamulukes*, their Institution, Office, and Power *L. 4.* 18  
*Medusa* the Fable, and true story thereof *L. 4.* 75  
*Melchites*, what they are, and from whence denominated *L. 3.* 40  
*Mercet*, an Order of Religious persons, their institution and employment *L. 2.* 197  
*Meshe*, the son of *Aram* planted about *Mus Mesius* *L. 3.* 118  
*Meshe*, or *Meshe*, the son of *Japhet*, settled among the *Montes Moschici* in *Armenia* major *L. 3.* 127  
*Mesha*, and *Mount Sephir*, mentioned *Gen.* 10. in what place they were *L. 3.* 118  
*Message of Waldermar* K. of *Denmark* to the Pope *L. 2.* 105  
*Messene* *Strivell*, a Proverb, the occasion of it *L. 2.* 183  
*Mimosa*, the Fable, and true story of it *L. 2.* 215, 216  
*Mithridates*, the Author or the Antidote so named, the sum and substance of his story *L. 3.* 7.  
*Miramomolins*, what the word doth signify, the *Miramomolins* of *Morocco* *L. 4.* 35  
*Misraim* the son of *Cham*, the father of the Nation of *Egypt* *L. 4.* 4  
*Monarchy* the nearest form of Government to that of God: the Monarchs of *Spain*, *L. 1.* 247. of the *English* Saxons, 270. of the *Affrican*, 3. 119. of the *Medes* and *Persians* 855  
*Mongolick* life, how accounted of in former times *L. 1.* 100 whether to be preferred before a sociable  
*Money* not only the instrument of exchange in ancient times, *L. 4.* 53. by what names called, and why *ib.* made sometimes of Leather and Talk-board 126  
*Monks* their Original and increase, *L. 1.* 100. by whom first brought under certain rules *ib.* their several and particular Orders 99, 100  
*Mongul*, a Tribe of the *Tartars*, *L. 3.* 179. The Title of the great Emperors of *India* 210. their Catalogue and Succession *ib.*  
*Monument of John Duke of Bedford*,

with the answer of *Charles* the 8th to a Courtier, who perswaded him to defend it *L. 1.* 164  
*Moutmrenny*, the Family extinct *L. 1.* 157  
*Moor*, the lust of *Roderick* occasioned their coming into *Spain*, *L. 1.* 213. and the lust of *Magnus* their expulsion thence 220. forced to quit *Spain* 228  
*Murser*, or *Sta* horses, the description and use made of them *L. 4.* 93  
*Musick* work, what it is *L. 1.* 107  
*Muscovites*, by whom converted, and of what opinions in Religion, *L. 2.* 128. from what Original they come 135. their Government Tyrannical 140. the great Dukes habit and Royal state 158  
*Musali*, or *Musfrones*, a strange beast *L. 1.* 120  
*Musick*, the several sorts and effects thereof, *L. 3.* 13. used by the Primitive Christians in Gods publick service *ibid.*  
*Myrtum Mare*, where it was, and from whence so named *L. 3.* 52  
*Myrtum poffimum*, a Proverb, and the meaning of it *L. 3.* 15

## N.

**N**ames fatal to some Kingdoms *L. 2.* 224  
*Naptha* the nature of it, and where most used *L. 3.* 140, 143  
*Naphuchim* son of *Misraim*, where first planted, *L. 4.* 14. the name of *Netune*, by some said to be thence derived *ibid.*  
*National* Animosities to what cause ascribed *L. 1.* 16  
*Navigation*, the Original and story of it, *L. 4.* 86. what Nations most famous for it in former times, and who at present 86  
*Nomades* Games by whom first instituted, and on what occasion, *L. 2.* 187  
*Nestorians*, what they were, and in what employed *L. 3.* 78  
*Nestorians*, whence so called, *L. 2.* 115. their Tenets in Religion *ib.* Solenities they use in contracting marriage, *ib.* what hated of the Pope, and why 117  
*Nimrod*, the Founder of the *Babylonian* and *Affrican* Kingdoms *L. 3.* 119, 120  
*Ninine* *L. 3.* 116  
*Noah's* seven Precepts, or the Precepts of the sons of *Noah* *L. 3.* 58  
*Nomades*, where they dwelt, and from whence denominated *L. 3.* 168  
*Noradri* the gallant answer made to a Commander *L. 3.* 56  
*Normans* what they were Originally, *L. 1.* 166. *L. 2.* 114. their Actions and Achievements, *ib.* when first first in *France* *L. 1.* 166  
*North East* passage, by whom attempted and pursued, *L. 4.* 158. of the North-

North-West passage, *ib.* the little probability of doing any good in either *ib.*  
*Nane*, why so called, and by whom first instituted, *L. 1.* 101. their particular Orders, *ib.* of ill report for their unchastity, *ibid.* Nunery of *Valdrade* in *Hainaut* *L. 2.* 9.  
*Narmeg*, how they grow and where most plentiful *L. 3.* 222

## O.

**O**bits of the Saints kept as Festivals *L. 2.* 205  
*Ocean*, the collection of waters, *L. 2.* 23. the causes of its ebbing and flowing, *ib.* the Eymology of the name, and vast greatness of it, 249  
*Offa's* Dike *L. 1.* 277  
*Oleum Medicum*, see *Naptha*  
*Olympick* Games, by whom first instituted and restored *L. 2.* 182. where held, and where were Judges of them *ib.* All the Victors at one time of one City in Italy *L. 1.* 56  
*Omniscient*, a kind of Divination, an experiment of it *L. 1.* 55  
*Ophir* not the Province of *Sophala* in *Ethiopia*, *L. 4.* 62. where it rather was *L. 1.* 10  
*Oracles* which most famous, *L. 2.* 193. their ambiguity and decay *ibid.*  
*Oratorians* an Order of Religious persons, by whom first instituted, used for a counterpoise to the *Jesuites* *L. 1.* 99  
*Order of Knighthood*, of *Avize*, *L. 1.* 239. *Alcantara* *ib.* of the *Annunciada* 135. of *S. Andrew* *ib.* of *S. Anthony* *L. 3.* 113. of the Blood of the Lord *Jesus* Christ, *L. 1.* 126. of the *Isab* 275. of *Banmerci* *ib.* of the *Crescent* 171. of *Calatrava* 234. of *Dutch* Knights, of the *Port-Glaive*, *L. 2.* 151. of the *Dragon* 159. of the *Golden Fleece* 284. of the *Gemmet* *L. 1.* 204. of the *Garter* *ib.* of the *Holy Ghost* *ib.* of *S. Jago* 234. of *S. John* *L. 3.* 97. Great Master how chosen, his title *L. 1.* 954. of *Jesus* Christ 239. of *S. Michael* 204. of *S. Mark* 111. of *Mercet* 234. of *Montfa* 246. of *Novo Scotia* 274. of the *Fairrie*, or twelve Peers 204. of the *Round Table* 274. of the *Star* 204. of *S. Stephen* 116. of the *Sepulchre* *L. 3.* 97. of the *Templars*, of *S. Savonar* *L. 1.* 246. of the *Glorious Virgin* 111. of the *Lily* 217  
*Oracles*, what it was, whence called, and with whom in use *L. 1.* 281  
*Orich* Feathers, why, and how long the Cognizance of the Princes of *Walt* *L. 1.* 281  
*Oration*, how it differeth from a Triumph *L. 1.* 35. from whence so called *ib.* in what cases granted *ib.*  
*Ovid*, why banished into *Pontus* *L. 2.* 176  
*Oxenham* his adventurous attempt *L. 4.* 89

*Oysters* grow on Trees *L. 2.* 164  
**P.**  
*Pasjants* slavery in *Lithuania* *L. 2.* 140  
*Palm* anciently used as a sign of victory, let by the Christians in Church-yards, and for what reason, *ib.* of the rare nature of the Tree *L. 4.* 445  
*Pamphyl*, what they were *L. 1.* 118  
*Paper* where first invented, and why so called *L. 4.* 9.  
*Paradise*, where it was indeed; the several fancies and opinions touching the particular *L. 3.* 112  
*Paradise* terrestrial of *Aladine* *L. 3.* 148  
*Parochim* in *Latine* Pergamena, where invented first *L. 3.* 16  
*Paris* never taken by force, why *L. 1.* 158  
*Pasiphae*, how far the Fable of her may be thought historical *L. 2.* 116  
*Patriarch* first planted in the land of *Parthos* *L. 1.* 11  
*Partition wall*, alluded to *Ephes* 2. 14. what, and where it was *L. 3.* 80  
*Patriarchate* a new Order devised by *Constantine* and what it was *L. 1.* 53  
*Pellicies*, who, and why so called 730  
*Pelleneae vestis*, a by-word, and the meaning of it *L. 2.* 181  
*Perseus* *L. 3.* 144  
*Persilime*, what it was, and where most in use *L. 1.* 74  
*Peter-pence*, by whom first granted to the Pope *L. 1.* 98  
*Perseus* and *Perizet*, what they are in Geography *L. 1.* 20  
*Phaez*, where probably first planted *L. 1.* 8.  
*Pharisees*, whence they had their name *L. 3.* 59. their *Dignata*, and Authority amongst the people 59  
*Pharos* *L. 4.* 8  
*Phelus*, whence so named *L. 3.* 21  
*Phileni* are *L. 4.* 25  
*Philippicks* given by *Tullie* for the name of his Orations against *Antony* *L. 2.* 195  
*Phut*, the son of *Cham*, father of the *Moor*, or *Mauritians* *L. 4.* 22.  
*Phyrges* *pro sapient* *L. 3.* 13  
*Pids*, what they were, and the story of them *L. 1.* 285  
*Pigritia*, a strange Creature in *America* *L. 4.* 89  
*Pied piper*, the story of him *L. 2.* 168  
*Pigron* Letter Carriers *L. 3.* 114  
*Pizarro* his birth, breeding, rise, and death *L. 4.* 122  
*Pledging* one another, why first used in *England* *L. 1.* 271  
*Pluto*, why fancied by the Poets to be the God of Hell *L. 2.* 197  
*Pompey's* successful War against the *Citicians* *L. 3.* 34  
*Polyester* for long time fortunate, dies miserably, *L. 3.* 30  
*Pope* or *Papa*, what it signifies, *L. 1.* 90

common a first to other *Bishops*, *ib.* the opportunities those of *Rome* had to advance their greatness *L. 1.* 90. the means and steps by which they did attain to their temporal power 98. and still keep the same 99. how easy to be made Hereditary, their Forces and Revenue  
*Portugals* their Character. their Antipathy to the *Castilians*; *ib.* *Portugals*, *Spaniards*, *French*, *Italians*, compared *L. 1.* 239  
*Poultry* hatched in *Ovens* by heat *L. 4.* 3.  
*Predition* of the *Moor* conquering *Spain* *L. 1.* 213  
*Pretorian* guards by whom instituted, and by whom cashiered, *L. 1.* 53  
 Their power, the great Authority of their Captains *L. 1.* 45  
*Presbyter John*, the name of the King of *Tenduc* *L. 3.* 178. erroneously ascribed by *Scaliger* to the *Abassine* Emperor *ib.* The ground of the mistake and right name of that Prince *L. 4.* 58  
*Presbyterian* Discipline, by whom first framed, *L. 1.* 137. and how after propagated. The introduction of it into the Seignory of *Geneva*, and the Realm of *Scotland*, 283. why so importantly desired by some in *England* *L. 1.* 258  
*Priest* of the *Jews* provided of a liberal maintenance, *L. 3.* 81. who they were, whom they called the Chief Priest 60. of the High Priest, and when made a saleable Office, *ib.* How *Annas* and *Caiaphas* were High Priests at the same time, *ib.* Their power and succession after the captivity 92  
*Printing* where first invented, and by whom *L. 2.* 12. how much abused in these latter times, said to have been long used in *China* *L. 3.* 82  
*Prometheus*, why feigned to be tortured by a Vultur *L. 3.* 139  
*Protestants*, where first so called, and why, *L. 1.* 55. 56. 51. the whole story of them 35. the causes of the great increase of their Doctrines, *ibid.* their principal over-tight *ib.*  
*Psalm* of *Degrees*, how many, and why so named *L. 3.* 180  
*Pyramids* of *Egypt* their vast greatness, by whom built, and why, *L. 4.* 6

**Q.**  
*Qvisira*, a strange beast there which supplies them with most necessities *L. 4.* 102

**R.**  
*Rain* falling turns to *Alabaster* *L. 4.* 17. Rain obtained by the Prayer of *Helena* *L. 2.* 218  
*Rarities* in *Arabia Felix*, *L. 3.* 104. in *Nova* *Egypt*, *L. 4.* 6. in *America*, 89. in *Nova* *Hispania*



# A T A B L E.

*Hispania*, l. 4. 10. in *Chiapa*, l. 118.  
in *Pera* l. 29 in *Brazil* l. 36. in *Cuba* l. 151  
Red Sea, whence it had the name, how far extended by that name, l. 3. 106  
Regna the son of *Chus* first planted on the shores of the *Perfian Gulf*, l. 1. 10  
Religion naturally ingrafted in the heart of man, l. 1. 27. 28. how it standeth in relation to the parts of the World l. 1. 27. 28  
Retirings from the vulgar eye used by divers Princes l. 4. 58  
Rex Romanorum, what he is by whom, and for what cause ordained, l. 2. 103  
Richard the first, terrible to the *Turks*, l. 4. 24. taketh *Cyprus* 37. his speech concerning the Siege of *Veruillo*, l. 1. 165. is slain by a shot from an *Arbalist*, the shot that shot him set at liberty and rewarded, ib.  
Rhipah the son of *Gomer*, found in *Ephlagnia* l. 1. 10  
Rivers, their use and conditions requisite for Navigation, l. 1. 23. the banks of great Rivers how defensible l. 3. 15  
Rhabarb, or *Rhabarb*, where it groweth l. 3. 173. 177  
Rhamnus, why given for an adjunct unto *Nemesis*, and what *Nemesis* was l. 2. 189  
Rhene, the fountain and course thereof, l. 2. 4. 5. the several branches by which it falleth into the Ocean l. 4. 5  
Roche l. 1. 179  
Rb der taken by *Solyman* the Magnificent l. 3. 31. 32  
Rbodian Laws, the rule in former times of all marine causes, and for how long they continued, l. 3. 32  
Rome, of what circuit in her glory, l. 1. 87. 88. the number of its inhabitants, the extent of her Dominions 53. once made a Goddess, and by whom, l. 3. 19. Her Revenues computed at 150. millions of Crowns, l. 1. 53. Her Empire subverted by *Constantine*, and how l. 1. 54  
Roman Emperors, the succession of them, l. 1. 52. cut off by violent deaths till the time of *Constantine*, and the cause thereof 53. their negligence and degenerate flesh 54  
Rofamund wife to *Alb* King, of the *Lombards* procures her husband to be murdered, why her death, l. 1. 57  
Royd Tydot, a French by-word, the meaning and occasion of it, l. 1. 165  
S  
Sabbot-day not for moral as some pretend l. 4. 159  
Sabeans of Arabia Felix, from what race they came l. 3. 105  
Sacrilege a crime unpardonable even amongst Heathens, l. 2. 194  
Sadducee whence they had their name l. 3. 59. their opinions and dogmata ibid.  
Salique Lams what it truly is, not so ancient as the French pretend, not at all as regarded by them, but to serve the turns of some Usurpers, the inconveniences and injustice of it l. 1. 152. 153  
Salmacida *Spolia*, a Proverb, and the meaning of it l. 3. 20  
Salvager lately found in *Spain*, l. 1. 23. 1  
Santis *vulgi*, what, and how highly prized l. 3. 30  
Samaritans, what they were, their Religion, Tenets, and Sects, how hated by the Jews, and why l. 3. 71. 72  
Saraceni, why so called, their Character in former times, they resort to *Mahomet*, their successes, victories, and Caliphs, l. 3. 98. 100. 101  
Sardanapalus an effeminate King why he burnt his Treasure l. 3. 121  
Sardonius *Nifus*, a Proverb, and the meaning of it l. 1. 78  
Sava's valour l. 3. 198  
Scanderberg his life and story, l. 3. 199  
what became of his body ib.  
Selaves or *Selavians*, whence so called. Their affairs and story, given as a name to Bond-men, and what occasion l. 2. 165  
Schoia *Salerni*, by whom written, and to whom dedicated l. 1. 62  
Sents, why so called, l. 1. 282. their proceedings in their Reformation 28. their Kingdom held in Vassalage to the Crown of England 289  
Scriber, what they were, when instituted, and of what Authority, l. 3. 71  
Seythians, their Original, Antiquity, and Achievements. Their expedition into *Media*, and success in *Lydia* l. 3. 166. 171  
Sbe the son of *Jocktan* planted upon the River *Indus*, or the *Golden Chusfene* l. 1. 10  
Sbevians l. 3. 72  
Sela the son of *Arphaxad*, in what parts settled l. 3. 144  
Selucus a great builder, l. 3. 48. his strange rise and fortunes l. 3. 54  
Semiramis l. 3. 120  
Seminaries for the English, by whom first erected, and where l. 1. 160  
Seneca's happy memory l. 1. 209  
Scriphie *Rana*, an old proverb, the occasion and meaning of it l. 2. 213  
Serpens worshipped by the *Samogites*, and *Litani*'s the barbarous Customs of those people l. 2. 142  
Sforza, his strange rise and story, l. 1. 124  
Sheba, *Sabia*, and *Sabaea*, the sons of

*Chus*, all planted in *Arabia Felix*, and there the founders of the pious Nation of the *Sabeans*, l. 1. 10.  
Silybi, what they were, how many, and where they dwelt, l. 4. 13. not countenanced by the Fathers ib.  
Sicula *Gera*, l. 1. 72. *Vesperia* *Sicula*. *Siculi* Tyranni 76. three by-words, and the meaning of them 75  
Silks, why called *Serica* by the Latines, l. 3. 174  
Silver and Gold where most plentiful, l. 4. 126. the rich Mines of *Potosi*, 129. how vilified by the *Utopian*, 126. the causes of the darkness of things in our days 127. not disadvantageous to a State, as Trade and Merchandise ibid.  
Simon the son of *Jacob*, how dispersed in *Israhel*, as his father prophesied l. 3. 76  
Socrates whence l. 3. 24  
Solomon's *Parab*, mentioned, *John* 10. 23. where, and what it was, l. 3. 80  
South-eyings, how many kinds thereof l. 3. 120  
Soldiers and great Commanders unfortunate for the most part, and why l. 2. 189  
Spa, Medicinal waters, where, and for what most useful l. 2. 15  
Spaniards from whence they do descend, l. 1. 21. 1. by whom converted to the Faith, 208. The dependence of the Popes on the Crown thereof 210. their aim at the fifth Monarchy, ib. the greatness of their Empire, and weakness of it 218. *Spanish* Nobility very servicable to their King, why 219. *Spaniards* their cruelty towards the *Americans*, l. 4. 88  
Spawachi, a thievish beast l. 3. 24  
Sterling money, why so called, l. 1. 284  
Streight of Mountains, not to be abandoned by the Defendants, l. 3. 24. the losing of such Passes of what fatal consequence l. 14  
Stukely, were and when slain, l. 4. 35  
Styx, a River of Greece, the usual Oath of the gods l. 2. 182. 183  
Sugars, when, and by whom first refused, l. 4. 72. what used instead thereof in older times, ib. the great quantities thereof sent yearly by the *Portugals* from the *Isle* of *S. Thomas*, ib. and from the *Sugar* works in *Brazil* l. 4. 77  
Syrian language, what it was, and of what ingredients, l. 4. 41. when first made vulgar to the Jews.  
Syrian Goddess, what the was, l. 2. 48. her magnificent Temple, ibid. the deccits and juggling of her Priests, ibid.  
Syorum multa olera, *Syri contra Phnicet* two Proverbs, and the meaning of them l. 3. 47  
T

T  
Tails of Sheep, (and of no beast else) why used in Sacrifice l. 3. 47  
Tamarlane his Birth and Parentage l. 3. 170 the fun and substance of his history ibid.  
Tarshish the son of *Javan*, planted a more Tarshish in *Gilicia* l. 1. 13. not in *Tarshish*, as some say ib.  
Tartarian, not the Progeny of the Tribes of *Israhel* l. 3. 162. from whom most probably descended ib. their affairs and victories 179  
Taxas, a Tree so called, &c. l. 1. 120  
Temple re-edified by *Zorobabel*, in what it differed from the former l. 3. 80. repaired and beautified by *Hered*, ib. the several Courts about it ibal of them in the name of the Temple, ib. Temple of *Sophia*, l. 3. 207  
Tenedia *Scuris*, a By-word, the occasion of it l. 3. 28  
Theophilus banished by his Country flies to, and is entertained by *Araxerxes* l. 3. 17  
Theocrata, or the Government of the Jews by God himself l. 3. 85  
Thyras the father of the *Thracians*, by some called *Thyracians* l. 2. 204  
Sir Thomas More no friend to the Friars l. 1. 101. his new Plot of wooding not approved of, l. 4. 47. his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt, in for none but *Utopians* l. 4. 120  
Thracians their Customs l. 2. 204  
Tigranes his frankness l. 3. 125  
Timariots, what they be, their institution and number, l. 3. 135  
Tims Bishop of *Crete* l. 2. 214  
Title of most Christian King, why given unto the Kings of France l. 1. 199. of *Catholic* King to the King of Spain 247. of *Defender of the faith* to England 273. of *Defender of the Church*, to the *Switzers* 143. of *Basilius*, to the Kings of *Bulgaria* l. 1. 176. of *Flagellum Dei*, to *Anila* the King of the *Huns*, l. 1. 185  
Tobacco, where most plentiful l. 4. 125  
why called the *B. ubane* of *Pera*. ibid. the fantastical use thereof condemned, and the virtues ascribed unto it examined, ib. by whom first brought into England, l. 4. 125  
Togamas, or *Torgana*, the son of *Gomer*, founder of the *Troem*, or

A T A B L E.  
*Trogmades* in *Cappadocia* l. 3. 10  
*Toolsium Aurnum*, a Proverb, the meaning and occasion of it l. 1. 185  
*Tomino*, a bird in *America* l. 1. 1006  
*Topographic*, what it is, how it differs from Geography l. 1. 26  
*Trafick*, and the story of it, more advantageous to a State than Mines of Gold and Silver l. 4. 126  
*Treafun* how rewarded l. 2. 155  
*Tragedies*, by whom invented l. 3. 28  
*Tree* that withereth if touched l. 4. 118  
beneficial Trees in *India*, &c. l. 4. 70. 121  
*Triumphs*, their Original and Majesty, in what they differed from an *Ouvion*, in what cases denied a Conquerour, when discontinued and laid by l. 1. 35. 36  
*Troy* not besieged ten years together by the *Greeks*, and at last how taken, *Fimbria*'s boast of taking *Troy* in eleven days partly answered l. 12  
*Tubal* the son of *Javan* first planted in *Iberia* l. 3. 13. the *Spaniards* how derived from him l. 3. 130  
*Turkey*, their Original and Conquests, l. 3. 132. their Kings and Emperors 133. their Persons, Customs, and Religion, their Estate and power l. 3. 133. 134  
V  
*V. Aloud*, the meaning of the word l. 2. 169. the *Vaisods* of *Transylvania* ib.  
*Vaudais*, their first feat l. 4. 24. their affairs, story, and the succession of their Kings ibid.  
*Vaudais*, the same with the *Waldenses* l. 1. 199. their life and doctrine ib.  
*Venus*, whence called *Erycinia*, l. 1. 74. whence *Cytherea* l. 2. 214. whence *Dea Cypris* l. 3. 33. whence *Paphia* ib. whence *Des Cnidia* 20. the brutishness of the *Cyprians*, both men and women, in their Feasts and Sacrifices 33  
*Versaria* in *Plautus* what it is, not used there for the *Mariners* Compasses, by some supposed l. 4. 86.  
*Victory of Annibal* at *Cannae* l. 1. 65  
*Vidamer* in France, how many and what they are l. 1. 162  
*Vingues*, a strange but profitable Bait among the *Americans*, and the nature of it, l. 4. 89. the *Bezar* found in the belly of it ibid.

*Vina Massica* whence so called, and of what esteem l. 1. 62  
*Virgil's Fable of Dido* disproved, and his *Aeneas* suspected l. 3. 12  
*Vlysses* travelled not so far as *Libion*, l. 1. 23. 5. the fun and substance of his story l. 2. 220  
*Or*, the birth-place of *Abraham*, a Town of *Mesopotamia*, l. 3. 116. that it was not in *Chaldeas*, as by most supposed 119  
*Vjury*, the *Genosse* much addicted to it l. 1. 118. the faying of a merry fellow thereon ib.  
*Vezor* *Hus*, the Country and dwelling of *Job*, whereabouts that was l. 3. 99.  
W  
*W. Allons*, what they are, and why so called l. 1. 275. l. 2. 3  
*Whales* their dimensions, and what greatness l. 4. 101. how driven from the Coast of *Norway* l. 2. 114  
*White Friars*, from whence so called, and by whom first instituted, called also *Carmelites*, and why l. 1. 99. 100  
*Wolves* destroyed in *England*, how l. 1. 259  
*World* why created l. 1. 1. how long since 3. peopled before the general Flood 5. East parts planted before the attempt at *Babel* l. 4. 3  
195. called *Cosmos* by the *Greeks*, and *Mundus* by the *Latins* for the beauties of it, unequally divided in respect of Religion l. 1. 28  
*Writing* the Original of it l. 4. 48. and the several forms ib.  
X  
*X. Eriffs*, why used for the Title of the Kings of *Morocco*, the catalogue and succession of them l. 4. 37. 38  
*Xerxes* his numerous Army l. 2. 209  
Y  
*Y. Engle Tree* why planted in Church-yards l. 4. 3  
Z  
*Z. Alenex* his Laws l. 1. 66  
*Zenobia* a most masculine Lady her story l. 3. 52  
*Zepyrus* his act l. 3. 114  
A



*The T A B L E.*

Æteli, p.	199	Amherdan, n.	21	Arnhem, n.	25	Acras, n.	36	Almorfi, p.	164
Albanoma, p.	171	Amfclodanum, ib.	21	Archameti, p.	124	Acarnas, n.	116	Almona, p.	165
Æth, n.	210	Amurgos, inf.	214	Aro, inf.	111	Acabali, p.	118	Albanis, n.	131
Æthra, inf.	210	Anyle, n.	284	Arofa, n.	122	Accabene, p.	175	Albanus, ff.	164
Ætolia, p.	195	Anactorium, n.	200	Aras, n.	7	Accadi, n.	116	Albaria, n.	48
Aganzia, p.	124	Anaphe, inf.	214	Archigos, n.	150	Accaron, n.	74	Aleppo, n.	47-50
Agathya, p.	155	Anariti, n.	168	Arif, n.	206	Acces, inf.	36	Alexandri, inf.	146
Agernis, inf.	110	Anchiola, n.	183	Arifis, n.	206	Accesmes, inf.	194	Alexandria, n.	25, 145
Ageroe, inf.	110	Anclara, n.	85	Arthufen, p.	109	Acachmenides, p.	141	Alga, 145-159, 165	
Aggerhi, r. p.	114	Andefort, n.	116	Artoys, p. n.	7	Acachara, n.	148	Algait, n.	153
Aggltham, n.	217	Andernach, n.	47	Arucis, n.	53	Achen, n.	225	Alcirota, n.	105
Agria, n.	155	St. Andrews, inf.	259	Arurgers, n.	98	Collu Achellia, n.	77	Aliga, ff.	153
Colonia Agrippiana, n.	47	Andros, inf.	21	Arur, n.	150	Achillis Curus, n.	163	Alitrophagi, p.	174
Alba, ff.	98	Caffiolo St. Angelo, n.	220	Arur Britannica, n.	173	Achindina, n.	77	Alma, n.	204
Alchafadum, n.	96	Anglocladum, n.	62	Afandc, n.	21	Achindina, n.	77	Alam, n.	165
Alcladum, n.	201	Angerburg, n.	145	Afens, n.	111	Acron, n.	79	Alam, n. 2. p.	175
Alite, n.	8	Angerman, p.	122	Afclurgium, m.	80	Acere, n.	36	Alatunca, n.	130
Aliz, Arzen, n.	40	Angermund, n.	144	Afclia, n.	162	Acra, n.	72	Alati, n.	129
Alaicon, ff.	160	Angien, n.	110	Afclurum, n.	152	Adia, n.	51	Amadab, n.	15
Alami, p.	64, 198	Angli, p.	110	Afilia, n.	141	Adada, n.	65	Amagance, p.	219
Alba Græcia, n.	155	Angra, ff.	43	Afclotracon, n.	209	Adam, n.	24	Amalcis, p.	73
Julia, n.	168	Angravia, p.	98	Alloia, n.	114	Adam, inf.	100	Amancis, p.	102
Regalis, n.	154	Anialit, p.	50	Alpofalcon, n.	170	Adap, n.	50	Amam, n.	159
Albania, p.	198	Aniluf, n.	58	Alpof, ff.	187	Adara, n.	73	Amamus, n.	3
Alberg, m.	198	Amium, n.	72	Alfclend, n.	17	Adara, n.	73	Amamus, n.	3
Albis, ff.	77	Anfchab, p. n.	72	Aflorus, n.	202	Adara, n.	73	Amamus, n.	3
Alborch, n.	110	Anfclung, n.	100	Aflragan, p. n.	134	Aden, n.	106	Amangafic, n.	220
Albus, n.	163	Antio, n.	114	Aflrylic, inf.	214	Adena, n.	25	Amariac, p.	60
Alcand, n.	123	Antandrom, inf.	21	Arth, n.	10	Adiabene, p.	116	Amariac, n.	141
Alcmer, n.	21	Anteriacum, n.	47	Adthianes, p.	159	Adida, n.	53	Amatris, n.	6
Alclerburg, n.	49	Antebari, n.	162	Adthancum, n.	ibid.	Adida, n.	95	Amatris, n.	35
Alclera, n.	163	Antigonia, n.	197, 202	Adthelin, p.	124	Adidafiri, m. 852. p.	42	Anathafia, inf. 677. p.	175
Alecia, n.	101	Antirithum, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia, n.	181	Adthens, n.	189	Adidoni, n.	22	Amaveza, n.	25
Alecia, n.	101	Antonia,							

*The TABLE.*

[illegible]

*The T A B L E.*

[illegible]

*The T A B L E.*

Braban.	17	Bagrada, u.	149	Benjamin, pr.	78	Bezabde.	119	Bernice, u.	14
Bracant.	17	Bagdad, u.	114	Benthrinus, m.	211	Bozings,	211	Bernico, u.	126
Bracław.	144	Bagos, m.	114	Baraboma, u.	112	Boz, u.	212	Bermuda, u.	97
Braginglac, u.	72	Bagradas, fl.	149	Bernice,	114	Byoni,	61	Bermudaz, inf.	58
Bragomund, u.	59	Bahaman, pr.	59	Beriza, u.	124	Byces, fl.	94	Berna, u.	163
Brakel, u.	59	Bala, u.	72	Berius, u.	94	Bylcaz, u.	164	Bertecca, u.	54
Brakle, u.	98	Balacium, u.	153	Berthoti, u.	52	Byra, u.	51	Beru, fl.	128
Brakle, u.	98	Balagata, u.	153	Berthi, u.	145	Byrria, u.	51	Beicath, pr.	128
Brandenburg, pr. 145, 97	87	Ballabana, u.	225	Berby, u.	145			Bethans, u.	11
	82	Balavanus, u.	225	Berbe, u.	145			Bicar, u.	137
brando, inf.	111	Balanga, u.	215	Berbama, u.	82			Bidar, u.	137
Brancorianum, u.	72	Balpe, u.	50	Refor, fl.	75, 85			Bildulgerid, pr.	43
Branki, u.	133	Balpece, u.	54	Berynga, fl.	112	Babel, u.	55	Bilam, u.	59
Braviova, u.	171	Balgigwood, c.	64	Beryng, u.	52	Babel mandel, inf.	69	Bilica Nova, pr.	108
Bratofina, u.	168	Balona, c.	112	Berbratampla, u.	52	Babylon, u.	91	Bilicra, u.	26
Bratufanum, u.	17	Balora, u.	115	Berhabora, u.	64	Bacilo, pr. u.	91	Bilicra, u.	138
Brainsberg, u.	145	Baily, inf.	225	Berhel, u.	69	Bacchias, inf.	69	Bilicra, u.	138
Bratia, inf.	104	Bameth, u.	63	Berheob, u.	69	Badin, pr.	61	Blanca, inf.	147
Breda, u.	107	Bameth Bala, u.	225	Berharum, u.	ibid.	Bacaz, u.	128	Blance, c.	45-104
Bredenberg, u.	107	Banda, inf.	61	Beden, pr.	53	Baganecum, pr.	53	Blanch, fl. 91.	inf. 54
Brederoede, u.	21	Banda, inf.	61	Horon, u.	53	Bagari, u.	123	Blancin, u.	2
Bredovode, u.	29	Bandore, u.	201	Bechlem, u.	77	Bagora, pr.	123	Blanc, fl.	127
Bregen, fl.	25	Banaricis, u.	201	Bemral, u.	77	Bagradas, fl.	123	Blind Town, u.	147
Breme, pr. u.	59	Banarawa, u.	145	Rhichod, pr.	77	Bahama, inf.	100	Boarou, u.	54
Briflow, u.	143	Bancom, u.	120	Baida, u.	123	Baldria, u.	123	Boarum, u.	31
Brifly, pr.	143	Bantun, u.	219	Baidia, pr.	75	Baldria, pr.	52	Bogudina, pr.	144
Brifly, pr.	143	Barab, pr.	100	Semchil, u.	75, 76	Baldia, fl.	112, 113	Bogudina, pr.	144
Bretta, u.	72	Barachus, fl.	202	Sora, u.	77	Baldia, pr. u.	66	Bol, u.	11
Brewers Haven, u.	22	Baraca, u.	212	u. r.	77	Baldia, pr. u.	66	Bol, u.	11
Brill, u.	ibid.	Barale, inf.	209	Bethula, u.	77	Bangu, pr. u.	66	Bol, u.	11
Brill, u.	ibid.	Barathle, u.	80	Bethula, u.	103	Banrendo, u.	67	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barathum, u.	127	Bezbade, u.	103	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Baraza, u.	127	Bezek, u.	103	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barbanilla, u.	127	Bianco, c.	165, 164	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barbarius, u.	48	Biani, u.	200	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Baradacena, u.	100	Biblis, u.	44	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Baradafide, u.	100	Bidafides, fl.	170	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Bargu, pr.	178	Bidafides, fl.	170	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Baris, fl. u.	116	Bider, u.	201	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barma, pr.	175	Bilgezuga, u.	13	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barocho, u.	122	Bimindir, fl.	143	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Baron, pr.	121	Bimam, inf.	226	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Barona, fl.	115	Bieria, u.	119, 159	Banza, u.	202	Bol, u.	11
Brigantia, u.	68	Bar							

*The TABLE*

[illegible]

*The T A B L E.*

[illegible]



*The T A B L E*

[illegible][illegible]

120		<i>Cerne, inf.</i>	72, 119
120		<i>Chagre, fl.</i>	119
39		<i>Chalcu, p.</i>	113
		<i>Chalcuqui, p.</i>	135
pr.	58	<i>Chalceva, pr.</i>	117
		<i>Chalamalco, fl.</i>	71
124		<i>Chamane, inf.</i>	71
120		<i>Champlaire, l.</i>	92
37		<i>Chancay, p.</i>	129
fl.	133	<i>Chancay, p.</i>	135
		<i>Chapala, l.</i>	110
51		<i>Chapen Chico, u.</i>	124
133		<i>Chicas, pr.</i>	130
92		<i>Chicra, u.</i>	139
137		<i>Chicra, fl.</i>	99
114		<i>Chicre, p.</i>	130
92		<i>Chipe Charles, l.</i>	100
92		<i>Forti de Charles, u.</i>	160
45		<i>Golf di Chalfancos, fl.</i>	92
100		<i>Chichil, p.</i>	34
123		<i>Chichil, p.</i>	34
73		<i>Chicondides, l.</i>	42
128		<i>Chicondides, l.</i>	45
60		<i>Chicondides, inf.</i>	70
135		<i>Chico, p.</i>	130
128		<i>Chicop, fl.</i>	12
53		<i>Chicorella, u.</i>	130
9		<i>Chieriquia, pr.</i>	13
46		<i>Cherry, inf.</i>	157
fl.	144	<i>Chicua, u.</i>	34
11		<i>Chicula, u.</i>	77
60		<i>Chia, u.</i>	108
131		<i>Chimaceda, pr.</i>	124
34		<i>Chimapa, pr.</i>	97
111		<i>Chicalumana, fl.</i>	97
120		<i>Chichemenci, p.</i>	111
45		<i>Chichucilla, p.</i>	120
42		<i>Chilla, p.</i>	112
74		<i>Chilla, l. 128, p.</i>	112
43		<i>Chiliane, u.</i>	311
144		<i>Chilio, fl.</i>	132
pr.	162	<i>Chimenes, p.</i>	134
146		<i>Chimo, p.</i>	129
125		<i>Chin Chica, pr.</i>	129
125		<i>Chioch, pr.</i>	3
144		<i>Chiniquabo, pr. u.</i>	130
126		<i>Chiquitos, pr.</i>	130
126		<i>Chiquito, u.</i>	97
56		<i>Chica Cacha, l.</i>	132
40		<i>Chitica, u.</i>	29
118		<i>Chivaldy, p.</i>	161
118		<i>Chicococa, u.</i>	136
42		<i>Chicocococha, pr.</i>	29
inf.	148	<i>Chollo, u.</i>	127
		<i>Chollolops magnus, u.</i>	29
126		<i>Choncalas, p.</i>	118
26		<i>Choncalas, p.</i>	67
121		<i>Chirif, fl.</i>	97
121		<i>St. Christofers, inf.</i>	149
110		<i>Chulula, u.</i>	112
49		<i>Chulucapan, pr.</i>	117
73		<i>Chumales, p.</i>	130
141		<i>Chunguana, u.</i>	131
		<i>Chuniquaca, u.</i>	120
50		<i>Churibus, fl.</i>	41
91		<i>Clydites, u.</i>	32
119		<i>Le quatre Cienegas,</i>	
pr.	11		107
128		<i>Claio, pr.</i>	151
39		<i>Cibola, pr.</i>	204
128		<i>Cibola, p. 103, u.</i>	204
138		<i>Cienquic, fl.</i>	114
70		<i>Cimaboa, pr.</i>	107
25		<i>Cinna, m.</i>	24
pr.	117	<i>Cinnaba, m.</i>	22
		<i>Cinnamomifera, pr.</i>	22
128		<i>Cinifera, u.</i>	25
133		<i>Cinipago, inf.</i>	152
52		<i>Cirta, u.</i>	30
121		<i>Citral, p.</i>	208
105, fl.		<i>Citral, p.</i>	112
123		<i>Ciudad Real, u.</i>	116
32		<i>Climacolpeter, u.</i>	112
31		<i>St. Clara, inf.</i>	145

[illegible][illegible][illegible]

1

*The T A B L E.*

Diamma, <i>fl.</i>	194	Dios, <i>m.</i>	24	Efrange, <i>n.</i>	
Dian, <i>n.</i>	217	Dioforidis, <i>inf.</i>	70	St Evarius, <i>n.</i>	
Dianga, <i>n.</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	Dioforcom, <i>peras, n.</i>	51	Eubairades, <i>p.</i>	
Diabecek, <i>pr.</i>	117	Diolipolis, <i>n.</i>	51	Eubonia, <i>inf.</i>	
Diargens, <i>pr.</i>	154	Diores, <i>inf.</i>	58	Eugubium, <i>n.</i>	10
Dianus, <i>fl.</i>	116	Dion, <i>n.</i>	51	Eugubius, <i>n.</i>	
Diablatum, <i>n.</i>	63	Dobas, <i>pr. n.</i>	55	Euphemia, <i>p.</i>	
Didymi, <i>m.</i>	105	Docano, <i>c. n.</i>	55	Eunynios, <i>inf.</i>	
Dihona, <i>n.</i>	65	Doco, <i>n.</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	Eurecus, <i>n.</i>	10
Dio, <i>fl.</i>	116	Dominica, <i>inf.</i>	139	Eurocus, <i>n.</i>	
St. Dimitri, <i>n.</i>	13	Domingo, <i>fl.</i>	139	Eufalcide, <i>n.</i>	
Dindimus, <i>n.</i>	14	St. Domingo, <i>inf.</i>	151	Ewe, <i>n.</i>	
Dinhalal, <i>n.</i>	22	Dorad, <i>p.</i>	128	Ex, <i>fl.</i>	10
Dio, <i>fl.</i>	116	St. Caraxes, <i>inf.</i>	29	Exeret, <i>n.</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
Dionysopolis, <i>n.</i>	225	St. del Draga, <i>frat.</i>	31	Extremadura, <i>pr.</i>	
Dioipolis, <i>n.</i>	24	Dubdu, <i>n.</i>	34	Eymh, <i>fl.</i>	
Dioforis, <i>inf.</i>	128	Ducula, <i>p.</i>	32		
Dioforis, <i>n.</i>	128	Dulce, <i>p.</i>	117		
Dioforis, <i>n.</i>	128	Durango, <i>n.</i>	107		
Dio, <i>fl.</i>	116	Durdus, <i>m.</i>	20		
Dio, <i>fl.</i>	201				

98	<i>Eperia</i> , <i>n.</i>	154	<i>Emefa</i> , <i>n.</i>	3
99	<i>Ephrya</i> , <i>n.</i>	187	<i>Emmines</i> , <i>p.</i>	64
100	<i>Epictaria</i> , <i>n.</i>	198	<i>Enhadda</i> , <i>n.</i>	74
101	<i>Epichidus</i> , <i>fl.</i>	216	<i>Enodorus</i> , <i>m.</i>	174
102	<i>Epichemidid</i> , <i>p.</i>	193	<i>Endor</i> , <i>n.</i>	75
103	<i>Epichidamus</i> , <i>n.</i>	186	<i>Engas</i> , <i>m.</i>	71
104	<i>Epichidus</i> , <i>n.</i>	184, 186	<i>Enkie</i> , <i>n.</i>	148
105	<i>Epirus</i> , <i>n.</i>	198	<i>Eplicus</i> , <i>n.</i>	17
106	<i>Equiratus</i> , <i>n.</i>	101	<i>Eplicus</i> , <i>n.</i>	67, 72
107	<i>Erecomalis</i> , <i>pr.</i>	155	<i>Epiratus</i> , <i>p.</i>	71
108	<i>Erdenberg</i> , <i>n.</i>	89	<i>Epiratus</i> , <i>n.</i>	65
109	<i>Erdorf</i> , <i>n.</i>	89	<i>Epiratus</i> , <i>pr.</i>	12
110	<i>Erdol</i> , <i>m.</i>	153	<i>Epiphaphne</i> , <i>n.</i>	51
111	<i>Erfraf</i> , <i>fl.</i>	44	<i>Epiphania</i> , <i>n.</i>	54, 48
112	<i>Ertios</i> , <i>n.</i>	211	<i>Erech</i> , <i>n.</i>	35
113	<i>Ertiza</i> , <i>n.</i>	201	<i>Epipocio</i> , <i>n.</i>	142
114	<i>Ergyon</i> , <i>fl.</i>	188	<i>Eres</i> , <i>n.</i>	149
115	<i>Ermene</i> , <i>n.</i>	195	<i>Erechtra mare</i> ,	105
116	<i>Ertimius</i> , <i>inf.</i>	197	<i>Ergmal</i> , <i>p.</i>	176
117	<i>Ertius</i> , <i>n.</i>	197		

[illegible]

70	Ermaec, <i>n.</i>	48	Ervan, <i>n.</i>	
71	Erp, <i>p.</i>	44	Erythra, <i>n.</i>	17
72	Erfpruch, <i>n.</i>	76	Erythrum, <i>n.</i>	9
73	Erylla, <i>n.</i>		Erzya, <i>n.</i>	128
74	Esca, <i>n.</i>	97	Esion, <i>Geob.</i>	31
75	Escheburg, <i>p.</i>	111	Ethiopia, <i>p.</i>	91
76	Eſcheburgs G.		Ethra, <i>inf.</i>	89
77	Eſcheburg, <i>p.</i>	97	Euchae, <i>n.</i>	28
78	Das Eſchingen, <i>n.</i>	63	Eucradia, <i>n.</i>	155
79	Eſdan, <i>n.</i>		Euergete, <i>p.</i>	148
80	Eſen, <i>n.</i>	100	Eulau, <i>p.</i>	142
81	Eſling, <i>n.</i>	665, 74	Eupateria, <i>n.</i>	165
82	Eſpinal, <i>n.</i>	55	Euphrates, <i>p.</i>	44-126
83	Eſſendia, <i>n.</i>	44	Euphratensis, <i>p.</i>	52
84	Eſſis, <i>p.</i>	141	Euphratica, <i>p.</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
85	Eſſiones, <i>p.</i>	<i>ib.</i>	Eurus, <i>n.</i>	149
86	Eſſions, <i>p.</i>	200	Euryedon, <i>p.</i>	3
87	Eſſland, <i>n.</i>	141	Euxinum mare.	23
88	Eſcherwald, <i>n.</i>			
89	Eſtania, <i>n.</i>	6		
90	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	194		
91	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	210		
92	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	195		
93	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
94	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
95	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
96	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
97	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
98	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
99	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
100	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
101	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
102	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
103	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
104	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
105	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
106	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
107	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
108	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
109	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
110	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
111	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
112	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
113	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
114	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
115	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
116	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
117	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
118	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
119	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
120	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
121	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
122	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
123	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
124	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
125	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
126	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
127	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
128	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
129	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
130	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
131	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
132	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
133	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
134	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
135	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
136	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
137	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
138	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
139	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
140	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
141	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
142	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
143	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
144	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
145	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
146	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
147	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
148	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
149	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
150	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
151	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
152	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
153	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
154	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
155	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
156	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
157	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
158	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
159	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
160	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
161	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
162	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
163	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
164	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
165	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
166	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
167	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
168	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
169	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
170	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
171	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
172	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
173	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
174	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
175	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
176	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
177	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
178	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
179	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
180	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
181	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
182	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
183	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
184	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
185	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
186	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
187	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
188	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
189	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
190	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
191	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
192	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
193	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
194	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
195	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
196	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
197	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
198	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
199	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
200	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
201	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
202	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
203	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
204	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
205	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
206	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
207	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
208	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
209	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
210	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
211	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
212	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
213	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
214	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
215	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
216	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
217	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
218	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
219	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
220	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
221	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
222	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
223	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
224	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
225	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
226	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
227	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
228	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
229	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
230	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
231	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
232	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
233	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
234	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
235	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
236	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
237	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
238	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
239	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
240	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
241	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
242	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
243	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
244	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
245	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
246	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
247	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
248	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
249	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
250	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
251	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
252	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
253	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
254	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
255	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
256	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
257	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
258	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
259	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
260	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
261	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
262	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
263	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
264	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
265	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
266	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
267	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
268	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
269	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
270	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
271	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
272	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
273	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
274	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
275	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
276	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
277	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
278	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
279	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
280	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
281	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
282	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
283	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
284	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
285	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
286	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
287	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
288	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
289	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
290	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
291	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
292	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
293	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
294	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
295	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
296	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
297	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
298	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
299	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
300	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
301	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
302	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
303	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
304	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
305	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
306	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
307	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
308	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
309	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
310	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
311	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
312	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
313	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
314	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
315	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
316	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
317	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
318	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
319	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
320	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
321	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
322	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
323	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
324	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
325	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
326	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
327	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
328	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
329	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
330	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
331	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
332	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
333	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
334	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
335	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
336	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
337	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
338	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
339	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
340	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
341	Eſtucca, <i>inf.</i>	211		
342</				

Lib. IV.		Elba, <i>inf.</i>	115	Elbing, <i>ff.</i>	
		Elamites, <i>pr.</i>	8	Elbogen, <i>n.</i>	78, 111
		Elbinger, <i>ff.</i>	157	Elbouch, <i>n.</i>	10
Dactylorum, <i>Regio</i>	42	Elviræ, <i>ff.</i>	277	Elcoln, <i>n.</i>	10
Dadila, <i>pr.</i>	54	Elwyg, <i>ff.</i>	277	Elderfeldt, <i>n.</i>	10
Ladiv Dale, <i>pr.</i>	104	Elwenses, <i>p.</i>	265	Eleusis, <i>n.</i>	18
Dalegiff, <i>pr.</i>	57	Ely, <i>inf.</i>	265	Eleutheria, <i>n.</i>	21
Dammita, <i>n.</i>	50	Elzabeta, Erenicze, <i>n.</i>	225	Ellis, <i>pr.</i>	18
Danotoca, <i>pr.</i>	50	Emoria, <i>n.</i>	225	Elmanberg, <i>n.</i>	18
Danuat, <i>pr.</i>	53	Emporia, <i>n.</i>	241	Elmar Saveru, <i>n.</i>	18
Dandef, <i>ff.</i>	63	Engaden, <i>n.</i>	154	Elmütz, <i>pr.</i>	11
Dangela, <i>n.</i>	48	England, <i>n.</i>	81	Elmure, <i>n.</i>	11
Dangeli, <i>pr.</i>	55	Engoltingensis, <i>p.</i>	179	Elmter, <i>ff.</i>	8
Daphnis, <i>inf.</i>	69	Enghy, <i>Edi</i> , <i>inf.</i>	179	Elmter, <i>ff.</i>	8
Dara, <i>ff.</i> , <i>pr.</i>	43	Kans, <i>n.</i>	74	Elycia, <i>ff.</i>	14
Daradus, <i>ff.</i>	41	Ens, <i>n.</i>	64	Elzeburg, <i>n.</i>	4
Darius, <i>n.</i> , <i>pr.</i> , <i>ff.</i>	121	Epimithia, <i>n.</i>	73	Emathia, <i>ff.</i>	4
Darorum Vicus, <i>n.</i>	121	Eptacene, <i>n.</i>	121	Emberger, <i>pr.</i>	12
Davis fretum.	158	Epida, <i>inf.</i>	252	Embscher, <i>pr.</i>	19
Daum, <i>pr.</i>	138	Eporodia, <i>n.</i>	163	Emden, <i>pr.</i> , <i>n.</i>	10
Debris, <i>n.</i>	41	Esquina, <i>inf.</i>	100	Ems, <i>ff.</i>	4
Delago, <i>n.</i>	121	Erldm, <i>n.</i>	200	Emmerick, <i>n.</i>	4
Delagudana, <i>n.</i>	121	Erta, <i>n.</i>	130	Engers, <i>pr.</i>	12
Delidha, <i>n.</i>	138	Kreberg, <i>n.</i>	256	Engheln, <i>n.</i>	2
Dolo, <i>n.</i>	138	Ercofio, <i>inf.</i>	157	Endele, <i>inf.</i>	10
Dolta, <i>pr.</i>	9	Erdrumus, <i>ff.</i>	24	Engge, <i>pr.</i>	4
Dorum Curru, <i>ff.</i>	41	Erta, <i>n.</i>	130	Engnes, <i>pr.</i> , <i>n.</i>	10
Derbita, <i>ff.</i>	9	Eroscus, <i>ff.</i>	102	Engingia, <i>ff.</i>	18
Defconofidalia, <i>inf.</i>	735	Erichas, <i>n.</i>	157	Engis, <i>ff.</i>	21
Defire, <i>pr.</i>	735	Erfurial, <i>inf.</i>	232	Engihen, <i>n.</i>	18
Deficada, <i>inf.</i> , 148, <i>n.</i>	166	Eskeden, <i>n.</i>	284	Englberg, <i>conf.</i>	5
Deysne, <i>ff.</i>	166	Efleretz, <i>n.</i>	180	Enguodine, <i>n.</i>	16
Diagnitia, <i>pr.</i>	158	Elia, <i>pr.</i>	157	Enging, <i>n.</i>	26
Diagnite, <i>pr.</i>	158	Eflia, <i>n.</i>	157	Enihens, <i>ff.</i>	6
Don Diego, <i>ff.</i>	158	Elfons, <i>ff.</i>	156	Eus, <i>ff.</i>	2
Dori, <i>inf.</i>	107	Eflampas, <i>n.</i>	157	Enichide, <i>n.</i>	2
Doris, <i>n.</i>	107	Efler, <i>ff.</i>	168	Enthim, <i>n.</i>	5
Perte di Dio, <i>n.</i>	107	Efler, <i>ff.</i>	168	Enthim, <i>n.</i>	5
Duri, <i>inf.</i>	107	Efler, <i>ff.</i>	168	Enschers, <i>n.</i>	14
Dunofius, <i>n.</i>	11	Eflerac, <i>ff.</i>	171	Entz, <i>ff.</i>	14
		Efleremo, <i>n.</i>	171		

2	Euxinus Portus,	201	<i>Cepus</i> Eicaber. <i>n.</i>	34
3	Eydore, <i>fl.</i>	107	Elephantus. <i>n.</i>	13
4	Ezila, <i>n.</i>	44	Eclipsis. <i>n.</i>	30
5	Ezlar, <i>fl.</i>	43	<i>Eclumina</i> . <i>n.</i>	34
6	Ezling, <i>n.</i>	71	E-habar, <i>pr.</i>	34
7			Elizabeth, <i>inf.</i>	135, 136
8			Elcmdina. <i>n.</i>	32
9			Elmurdan. <i>n.</i>	16
0			Elvina. <i>n.</i>	35
1			Embroc, <i>pr.</i>	60
2			Ende. <i>n.</i>	107
3			Enganno. <i>c.</i>	105, 150
4			England. <i>pr.</i>	95
5			Englands Forest, <i>inf.</i>	71
6			Enicada grand. <i>n.</i>	99
7			Epiphetas. <i>n.</i>	51, 55
8			Erena. <i>n.</i>	107
9			Eritrichoculus. <i>n.</i>	34
0			Eroica. <i>n.</i>	35
1			Errira. <i>p.</i>	9
2			Eryphia. <i>inf.</i>	34
3			Ericharia. <i>pr.</i>	12
4			Ersomida. <i>fl.</i>	152
5			Etrac. <i>n.</i>	52
6			Etfecquo. <i>fl.</i>	140
7			Etlima. <i>n.</i>	55, 56
8			Etferon. <i>n.</i>	129
9			Etfero. <i>fl.</i>	135
0			Etfotland. <i>pr.</i>	95
1			Etfaz. <i>n.</i>	32
2			Etfecimines. <i>p.</i>	53
3			Etfiad. <i>n.</i>	32
4			Evangeliorum portus.	52
5				
6			Eufhaura. <i>n.</i>	25
7			Eythia. <i>inf.</i>	34
8			Ezagen. <i>n.</i>	114
9			Ezo. <i>n.</i>	32
0			Ezzab. <i>n.</i>	32

*The* T A B L E.

<i>Lilb. I.</i>		Foy	183	Frelat,	65
		France, R. 148. <i>inf.</i>	186	Friedrich, <i>inf.</i>	66
		Franchville,	162	Friedland West,	100
<i>Aenza, 80</i>		Franciscopolis,	197	East	23
<i>Page, 175</i>		Franks, P.	199	Friedland,	100
<i>Paigues, 182</i>		Francolino, <i>inf.</i>	241	Le Freete,	13
<i>Forceland, 182</i>		Fraxinetum, <i>inf.</i>	128	Friedrich,	66
<i>Ille, <i>inf.</i></i>		Fregon, N.	183	Friburg,	59, 88
<i>Land, 104</i>		French Country, P.	193	Friburg, <i>inf.</i>	62
<i>Larid, 112</i>		Friburg, A.	140	Fridland, <i>inf.</i>	86
<i>Krials, <i>inf.</i></i>		Friedl, P.	264	Friedrich,	147
<i>Ukland, 238</i>		Froome, <i>inf.</i>	264	Fritzi, <i>inf.</i>	107
<i>Imouth, 266</i>		Fronac, <i>inf.</i>	180	Majores, <i>inf.</i>	26
<i>Franc, 83</i>		Frondaze, P.	<i>ibid.</i>	Minores,	45
<i>Francenra, 169</i>		Francenra, <i>inf.</i>	243	Frings, <i>inf.</i>	62
<i>Defender, 182</i>		Fluence, <i>inf.</i>	243	Frings, <i>inf.</i>	62
<i>Fortune, 84</i>		Furce: Caudine,	62	Frison, P.	23
<i>Regali, 281</i>		Dit Furcken, P.	136	Fuciania, <i>inf.</i>	111
<i>Frarus, <i>inf.</i></i>		Furli, <i>inf.</i>	80	Fuinen, <i>inf.</i>	170
				Summ	170

<i>Nova Francia.</i>	65	<i>Giacci.</i>	256
<i>St. Francis, inf.</i>	70, 9, 6, 9	<i>Glors.</i>	164
<i>St. Francis, inf.</i>	71, 2, 140	<i>Glorbergan.</i>	277
<i>St. Francisco, n.</i>	128, 130	<i>Gland</i>	187
<i>Part. de Francisco Draco.</i>		<i>Glarn.</i>	140
<i>Bay Francois, f.</i>	c. 105	<i>Glur.</i>	187
<i>Francy Roy, f.</i>	99, 139	<i>Glur.</i>	187
<i>Tres Frates, inf.</i>	93	<i>Glevum.</i>	281
<i>Frobilfers petam.</i>		<i>Glocler.</i>	264
<i>Dr Froeger, n.</i>	108, 117	<i>Glotta, fretum.</i>	375
<i>Froward.</i>		<i>Glabumum.</i>	283
<i>Terra de Froer.</i>		<i>Glabumum.</i>	283
<i>Fuerte Ventura, inf.</i>	74	<i>Godman.</i>	267
<i>Fuerte, inf.</i>	121	<i>Godmanin.</i>	267
		<i>Godmanham.</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
		<i>Golfo de Squillay.</i>	136
		<i>Gomes.</i>	63
		<i>Gorgona.</i>	115
		<i>Gothuciana.</i>	184
		<i>Govavum, prom.</i>	167

[illegible]

Lib. I.				
<b>G</b>				
Abales, <i>m.</i>	185	Grade, <i>inf.</i>	187	
Gabii, <i>s.</i>	87	Grafianus, <i>s.</i>	81	
Goda, <i>f.</i>		Gratius, <i>m.</i>	120	
Gadani, <i>f.</i>	231	Granada, <i>pr.</i>	226	
Gaden, <i>f.</i>	285	Graz, <i>s.</i>	257	
Gaditana, <i>f.</i>	224	Gratianopolis, <i>s.</i>	19	
Gaditanum <i>fistum</i> .	225	Gratia, <i>inf.</i>	234	
Gaham, <i>s.</i>	278	Grauptern, <i>pr.</i>	145	
St. Gal, <i>s.</i>	141	Gray, <i>s.</i>	195	
Gallici, <i>s.</i>	239	Grenade, <i>s.</i>	281	
Gallienus, <i>m.</i>	145	Greobis, <i>s.</i>	191	
Gallia, <i>f.</i>	148	Griffinaudus, <i>pr.</i>	145	
Galleo, <i>f.</i>	244	Grifons, <i>pl.</i>	195	
Gallia, <i>s.</i>	248	Groine, <i>s.</i>	222	
Breaccata, <i>f.</i>	156	Grojanlander, <i>pr.</i>	240	
Celtica, <i>pr.</i>	171	Guadalcanal, <i>s.</i>	225	
Comata, <i>pr.</i>	122	Guadaluquivir, <i>f.</i>	210, 225	
Comata, <i>pr.</i>	155	Guadalupe, <i>f.</i>	226	
Togata, <i>pr.</i>	155	Guadarama, <i>f.</i>	226	
Transalpina, <i>f.</i>	148	Guadiana, <i>f.</i>	233	
Galicenium, <i>m.</i>	60, 61	Guadix, <i>s.</i>	227	
Galicina, <i>pr.</i>	212	Guadaluca, <i>s.</i>	226	

80	Figueroa, <i>inf.</i>	155	Firma-fura, <i>u.</i>	74
81	Figma, <i>u.</i>	209	Flaviopoli, <i>inf.</i>	51
82	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	154	Focleus, <i>inf.</i>	186
83	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Focleus, <i>inf.</i>	182
84	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
85	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
86	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
87	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
88	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
89	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
90	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
91	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
92	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
93	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
94	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
95	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
96	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
97	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
98	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
99	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
100	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
101	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
102	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
103	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
104	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
105	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
106	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
107	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
108	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
109	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
110	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
111	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
112	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
113	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
114	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
115	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
116	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
117	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
118	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
119	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
120	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
121	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
122	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
123	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
124	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
125	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
126	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
127	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
128	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
129	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
130	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
131	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
132	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
133	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
134	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
135	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
136	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
137	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
138	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
139	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
140	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
141	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
142	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
143	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
144	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
145	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
146	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
147	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
148	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
149	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
150	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
151	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
152	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
153	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
154	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
155	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
156	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
157	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
158	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
159	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
160	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
161	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
162	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
163	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
164	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
165	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
166	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
167	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
168	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
169	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
170	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
171	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
172	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
173	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
174	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
175	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
176	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
177	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
178	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
179	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
180	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
181	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
182	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
183	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
184	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
185	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
186	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
187	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
188	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
189	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
190	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
191	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
192	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
193	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
194	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
195	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
196	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
197	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
198	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
199	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
200	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
201	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
202	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
203	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
204	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
205	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
206	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
207	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
208	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
209	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
210	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
211	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
212	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
213	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
214	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
215	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
216	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
217	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
218	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
219	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
220	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
221	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
222	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
223	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
224	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
225	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
226	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
227	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
228	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
229	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
230	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
231	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
232	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
233	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
234	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
235	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
236	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
237	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
238	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
239	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
240	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
241	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
242	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
243	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
244	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
245	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
246	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
247	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
248	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
249	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
250	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
251	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
252	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
253	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
254	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
255	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
256	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
257	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
258	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
259	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
260	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
261	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
262	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
263	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
264	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
265	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
266	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
267	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
268	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
269	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
270	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
271	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
272	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
273	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
274	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
275	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
276	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
277	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
278	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
279	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
280	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
281	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
282	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
283	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
284	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
285	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
286	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
287	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
288	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
289	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
290	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
291	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
292	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
293	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
294	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
295	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
296	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
297	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
298	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
299	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
300	Fimela, <i>u.</i>	111	Fonola, <i>inf.</i>	219
301	Fimela, <i>u.</i>			

<i>Galipolus</i> , <i>n. inf.</i>	115	<i>St. Guenier</i> , <i>n.</i>	234
<i>Galipolus</i> , <i>n.</i>	116	<i>St. Guenier</i> , <i>n.</i>	238
<i>Galipolus</i> , <i>inf.</i>	294	<i>Gueteria</i> , <i>n.</i>	141
<i>Galloyau</i> , <i>p.</i>	5	<i>Gueteria</i> , <i>n.</i>	141
<i>Gandia</i> , <i>n.</i>	240	<i>Guiter</i> , <i>p.</i>	180
<i>Gandia</i> , <i>p.</i>	223	<i>Gulford</i> , <i>p.</i>	265
<i>Gangani</i> , <i>p.</i>	223	<i>Gulphica</i> , <i>p.</i>	217
<i>Gappe</i> , <i>n.</i>	191	<i>Guic</i> , <i>n.</i>	101
<i>Garcia</i> , <i>f.</i>	103	<i>Guines</i> , <i>p.</i>	165
<i>De Garda</i> , <i>l.</i>	102	<i>Guinos</i> , <i>p.</i>	151, 165
<i>Garas</i> , <i>n.</i>	174	<i>Guthat</i> , <i>inf.</i>	301
<i>Garesbrook</i> , <i>n. f.</i>	304	<i>Gut</i> , <i>n.</i>	244
<i>Gargnes</i> , <i>n.</i>	64	<i>Gymnatic</i> , <i>inf.</i>	204
<i>Gariglia</i> , <i>f.</i>	60	<i>Gyrecom</i> , <i>n.</i>	229
<i>Garond</i>			
<i>Garnauna</i> , <i>f.</i>	154-180		
<i>Garune</i> , <i>f.</i>	220		
<i>Gascoigne</i> , <i>p.</i>	180		
<i>Gasific</i> , <i>p.</i>	192		
<i>Gasinois</i> , <i>p.</i>	150		
<i>Gasius</i> , <i>n.</i>	262		
<i>Gebenna</i> , <i>n.</i>	104		
<i>Gela</i> , <i>n.</i>	180		
<i>Gelo</i> , <i>f.</i>	120		
<i>Gencabum</i> , <i>n.</i>	171		
<i>Genera</i> , <i>n.</i>	136		
<i>Genet</i> , <i>n.</i>	136		
<i>Genet</i> , <i>f.</i>	139		
<i>St. Georges</i> , <i>inf.</i>	234		
<i>Gergenti</i> , <i>n.</i>	74		
<i>St. Germans</i> , <i>n.</i>	159		
<i>Gergis</i> , <i>n.</i>	174		
<i>Gernicy</i> , <i>inf.</i>	293		
<i>Gesloricus</i> portus, <i>l.</i>	165		
<i>Gevio</i> , <i>p.</i>	265		
<i>Gez</i> , <i>f.</i>	183		
<i>Gey</i> , <i>n.</i>	224		
<i>Gigari</i> , <i>p.</i>	223		
<i>Giglio</i> , <i>inf.</i>	117		
<i>St. Gillis</i> , <i>n.</i>	185		
		<i>Lib. II.</i>	
		<i>Gabract</i> , <i>n.</i>	214
		<i>Gabreta</i> , <i>n.</i>	18
		<i>Gadzick</i> , <i>n.</i>	345
		<i>Gala</i> , <i>n.</i>	175, 204
		<i>Galatz</i> , <i>n.</i>	171
		<i>Galindae</i> , <i>p.</i>	147
		<i>Gamelgard</i> , <i>n.</i>	111
		<i>Gandvum</i> , <i>n.</i>	6
		<i>Gardale</i> , <i>n.</i>	135
		<i>Gargapol</i> , <i>n.</i>	201
		<i>Garlicus</i> , <i>n.</i>	201
		<i>Gaudos</i> , <i>n.</i>	218
		<i>Gaudos</i> , <i>inf.</i>	22
		<i>Gauis</i> , <i>n.</i>	22
		<i>Gauror</i> , <i>inf.</i>	22
		<i>Gaurigroth</i> , <i>p.</i>	124
		<i>Gebwiler</i> , <i>n.</i>	53
		<i>Gedumum</i> , <i>n.</i>	148
		<i>Gec</i> , <i>f.</i>	97
		<i>Geilen</i> , <i>n.</i>	17
		<i>Gela</i> , <i>n.</i>	15
		<i>Getelander</i> , <i>p.</i>	268





*The T A B L E.*

<i>Zancytus</i> , <i>fl.</i>	21	<i>Zolota</i> , <i>fl.</i>	128	<i>St. Marceline</i> , <i>fl.</i>	191	<i>Merionese</i> , <i>pr.</i>	268	<i>Montlanchery</i> , <i>n.</i>	157
<i>Zan</i> , <i>fl.</i>	21	<i>Zon</i> , <i>fl.</i>	60	<i>March</i> , <i>pr.</i>	178	<i>Merville</i> , <i>pr.</i>	179	<i>Montmelian</i> , <i>n.</i>	157
<i>Zingib.</i>	226	<i>Low London</i> , <i>n.</i>	136	<i>Marchina</i> , <i>n.</i>	223	<i>Mervis</i> , <i>pr.</i>	278	<i>Montmorency</i> , <i>pr.</i>	157
<i>Zilpor</i> , <i>n.</i>	203	<i>De Lopez Gonzales</i> , <i>n.</i>	445	<i>Marchia</i> , <i>fl.</i>	80	<i>Melfana</i> , <i>inf.</i>	74	<i>Montonus</i> , <i>fl.</i>	80
<i>Zivias</i> , <i>n.</i>	165	<i>Arevalo</i> , <i>fl.</i>	160	<i>Marchis</i> , <i>fl.</i>	28	<i>Melpia</i> , <i>pr.</i>	167	<i>Mont Orgueil</i> , <i>cap.</i>	147
<i>Zoc</i> , <i>fl.</i>	166	<i>Lofo</i> , <i>fl.</i>	160	<i>Mariana</i> , <i>n.</i>	120	<i>Mecurus</i> , <i>n.</i>	167	<i>Montpelier</i> , <i>n.</i>	157
<i>Zocopy</i> , <i>n.</i>	166	<i>Lothopathiges</i> , <i>fl.</i>	39	<i>Marians</i> , <i>n.</i>	211	<i>Merh</i> , <i>pr.</i>	293	<i>Montpremier</i> , <i>n.</i>	242
<i>Zod</i> , <i>n.</i>	82	<i>Loxa</i> , <i>n.</i>	127	<i>Mariburg</i> , <i>n.</i>	293	<i>Methacum</i> , <i>inf.</i>	105	<i>Montpremier</i> , <i>n.</i>	113
<i>Zonibore</i> , <i>fl.</i>	102	<i>Lofa</i> , <i>fl.</i>	65	<i>Maritimum</i> , <i>n.</i>	277	<i>Metrocno</i> , <i>fl.</i>	80	<i>Montpauline</i> , <i>n.</i>	174
<i>Zonotus</i> , <i>fl.</i>	176	<i>Lubaga</i> , <i>fl.</i>	168	<i>St. Maries</i> , <i>inf.</i>	123	<i>Michaelis</i> , <i>pr.</i>	234	<i>Montpelier</i> , <i>n.</i>	157
<i>Zopg</i> , <i>n.</i>	176	<i>Luchas</i> , <i>fl.</i>	138	<i>Marign</i> , <i>n.</i>	124	<i>Middlesex</i> , <i>pr.</i>	272	<i>Montrille</i> , <i>n.</i>	161
<i>Zoriz</i> , <i>n.</i>	130	<i>Lucadi</i> , <i>n.</i>	100	<i>Marignan</i> , <i>n.</i>	233	<i>Milae</i> , <i>n.</i>	74	<i>Montrico</i> , <i>n.</i>	218
<i>Zubum</i> , <i>n.</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	<i>St. Lucus</i> , <i>n.</i>	124	<i>Martina</i> , <i>n.</i>	130	<i>Milefino</i> , <i>n.</i>	110	<i>Montreger</i> , <i>n.</i>	180
<i>Lugum</i> , <i>n.</i>	216	<i>St. Lucus</i> , <i>n.</i>	124	<i>Martovila</i> , <i>cap.</i>	185	<i>Milano</i> , <i>n.</i>	277	<i>Montreger</i> , <i>n.</i>	242
<i>Luz</i> , <i>n.</i>	21	<i>St. Lucus</i> , <i>n.</i>	73	<i>Martovila</i> , <i>cap.</i>	185	<i>Milano</i> , <i>n.</i>	277	<i>Moret</i> , <i>n.</i>	157
<i>Luz</i> , <i>n.</i>	81	<i>Ludum</i> , <i>n.</i>	249	<i>Marmothof</i> , <i>inf.</i>	197	<i>Millar</i> , <i>fl.</i>	140	<i>Morges</i> , <i>n.</i>	70
<i>Lycaconia</i> , <i>n.</i>	22	<i>Ludog</i> , <i>fl.</i>	22	<i>Martha</i> , <i>fl.</i>	112	<i>Milly</i> , <i>n.</i>	257	<i>Morici</i> , <i>pr.</i>	161
<i>Lycia</i> , <i>pr.</i>	21	<i>Lugo de nuestra</i>	100	<i>Marn</i> , <i>fl.</i>	159	<i>Milengen</i> , <i>n.</i>	140	<i>Morist</i> , <i>n.</i>	166
<i>Lycia</i> , <i>pr.</i>	34	<i>Luz</i> , <i>n.</i>	73	<i>Martus</i> , <i>n.</i>	118	<i>Milino</i> , <i>n.</i>	211	<i>Morits</i> , <i>n.</i>	166
<i>Lyda</i> , <i>n.</i>	115	<i>St. Lutes</i> , <i>n.</i>	130	<i>De Marian</i> , <i>n.</i>	189	<i>Minora</i> , <i>inf.</i>	243	<i>Morist</i> , <i>n.</i>	167
<i>Lydia</i> , <i>n.</i>	18	<i>Lune montes</i> , <i>n.</i>	66	<i>Martilles</i> , <i>n.</i>	167	<i>Mimuri</i> , <i>n.</i>	59	<i>Morreai</i> , <i>n.</i>	74
<i>Lyellus</i> , <i>n.</i>	22	<i>Aque Lunda</i> , <i>n.</i>	66	<i>Marlo</i> , <i>n.</i>	62	<i>Niramus</i> , <i>n.</i>	178	<i>Mortagne</i> , <i>n.</i>	165
<i>Lymima</i> , <i>n.</i>	22	<i>Lungaria</i> , <i>fl.</i>	140	<i>Marachi</i> , <i>n.</i>	132	<i>Niranda</i> , <i>n.</i>	233	<i>Mortore</i> , <i>n.</i>	210
<i>Lyria</i> , <i>n.</i>	22	<i>Lurion</i> , <i>fl.</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	<i>St. Marins</i> , <i>n.</i>	152	<i>Niranda</i> , <i>n.</i>	233	<i>Mortore</i> , <i>n.</i>	210
		<i>Luyfa</i> , <i>fl.</i>	150	<i>Malcon</i> , <i>n.</i>	192	<i>Nirandula</i> , <i>n.</i>	192	<i>Molon</i> , <i>n.</i>	244
		<i>St. Luyfa</i> , <i>n.</i>	145	<i>Marferos</i> , <i>n.</i>	145	<i>Nirapen</i> , <i>n.</i>	141	<i>Mounier</i> , <i>pr.</i>	254
		<i>Luzia</i> , <i>n.</i>	145	<i>Malos</i> , <i>n.</i>	145	<i>Nirapen</i> , <i>n.</i>	141	<i>Murcia</i> , <i>n.</i>	166
		<i>Lybia</i> , <i>n.</i>	123	<i>Mallo</i> , <i>n.</i>	62	<i>Nirapen</i> , <i>n.</i>	141	<i>Murcia</i> , <i>n.</i>	166
		<i>Lycibum</i> , <i>mayr.</i>	12	<i>Mallicensis</i> , <i>n.</i>	139	<i>Micinus</i> , <i>n.</i>	145	<i>Mulades</i> , <i>fl.</i>	232
				<i>Matra</i> , <i>n.</i>	67	<i>Mincius</i> , <i>n.</i>	125	<i>Mulfo</i> , <i>fl.</i>	85
				<i>Matraval</i> , <i>n.</i>	277	<i>Mondus</i> , <i>fl.</i>	125	<i>Munda</i> , <i>n.</i>	228
				<i>Matricarum</i> , <i>n.</i>	277	<i>Mondus</i> , <i>fl.</i>	125	<i>Munov</i> , <i>fl.</i>	228
				<i>St. Mauris</i> , <i>inf.</i>	277	<i>Mondus</i> , <i>fl.</i>	125	<i>Mur Murus</i> , <i>n.</i>	145
				<i>Maufredonia</i> , <i>n.</i>	65	<i>Modorcum</i> , <i>n.</i>	123	<i>Muralia</i> , <i>n.</i>	123
				<i>St. Maurice</i> , <i>n.</i>	138	<i>Molo</i> , <i>fl.</i>	123	<i>Murati</i> , <i>n.</i>	174
						<i>Mola</i> , <i>n.</i>	614	<i>Murcia</i> , <i>n.</i>	166
						<i>Molae</i> , <i>n.</i>	125	<i>Muriana</i> , <i>inf.</i>	165
						<i>Molina</i> , <i>n.</i>	232	<i>Murty</i> , <i>pr.</i>	285
						<i>Molinga</i> , <i>n.</i>	232	<i>Murtina</i> , <i>n.</i>	127
						<i>Molinis</i> , <i>n.</i>	173		
						<i>Molombane</i> , <i>n.</i>	218		
						<i>Mombrum</i> , <i>n.</i>	190		
						<i>Mons</i> , <i>n.</i>	232		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		
						<i>Monsa</i> , <i>pr.</i>	294		

*The TABLE*

[illegible]



*The T A B L E*

[illegible]

*The T A B L E.*

[illegible]

*The T A B L E.*

[illegible]142  
Pons.

*The T A B L E.*

[illegible]

24

Propocampeche

*The T A B L E.*

[illegible]

*The* T A B L E.

[illegible]

*The* T A B L E

[illegible]

*The* T A B L E.

Salones, <i>p.</i>	171	Sichem, <i>u.</i>	73	Sirava, <i>u.</i>	152	Salma, <i>pr.</i>	144	Soomonico, <i>pr.</i>	113
Salvar, <i>p.</i>	150	Sid, <i>u.</i>	73	Strangulus, <i>m.</i>	145	De Salas, <i>pr.</i>	126	Soorora, <i>u.</i>	109
Saragun, <i>p.</i>	209	Sidon, <i>u.</i>	23	Sustia, <i>u.</i>	157	Salis, <i>inf.</i>	34	Soocoria, <i>pr.</i>	72
Sarazun, <i>u.</i>	210	Sidon, <i>u.</i>	44	Sustius, <i>fl.</i>	194	Salis, <i>inf.</i>	34	Sofia, <i>pr.</i>	63
Satralia, <i>u. inf.</i>	210	Sigam, <i>u.</i>	182	Sutbell, <i>u.</i>	141	Sal-utiri, <i>m.</i>	66	Do Sol, <i>m.</i>	66
Satyrorum, <i>u. inf.</i>	155	Sigan, <i>u.</i>	185	Sutib, <i>inf. u.</i>	231	St. Salvador, <i>flac.</i>	139	Soldania, <i>u.</i>	65
Savadi, <i>p.</i>	155	Siguan, <i>u.</i>	148	Succu, <i>u.</i>	128	Salud, <i>pr.</i>	10	Solis promont.	160
Saubeni, <i>p.</i>	171	Siganam, <i>u.</i>	148	Suchani, <i>u.</i>	186	Salu, <i>u.</i>	136, 151, 153	Solomonis, <i>inf.</i>	67
Saun, <i>u.</i>	144	Sigara, <i>u.</i>	128	Sucheni, <i>pr.</i>	153	Samana, <i>pr.</i>	10	Songo, <i>pr. u.</i>	32
Saur, <i>u.</i>	201	Sigra, <i>u.</i>	58	Sucheni, <i>pr.</i>	153	Samovia, <i>pr.</i>	97	Songus, <i>u.</i>	47
Saurmonta, <i>p.</i>	162	Sigra, <i>u.</i>	58	Sueme, <i>u.</i>	140	Samofate, <i>u.</i>	115	Sorbesis, <i>fl.</i>	22
Saufene, <i>pr.</i>	198	Silhon, <i>m.</i>	128	Sues, <i>u.</i>	140	Sano, <i>u.</i>	109	Sorocera, <i>u.</i>	51
Saut, <i>u.</i>	176	Silo, <i>u.</i>	73	Sucta, <i>u.</i>	137	Sandi, <i>pr.</i>	67	Sorquips, <i>pr.</i>	94
Sazore, <i>p.</i>	140	Silvampede, <i>p.</i>	218	Suira, <i>pr.</i>	136	Sama, <i>pr.</i>	109	Spiritus Sancti, <i>pr.</i>	99, 127
Scannadici, <i>p.</i>	162	Scannadici, <i>p.</i>	162	Sulcani, <i>pr.</i>	158	Samar, <i>u.</i>	53	St. 108, 115, 128	
Scandamria, <i>u.</i>	25	Simeragan, <i>u.</i>	22	Sulcani, <i>pr.</i>	158	Samar, <i>u.</i>	53	Stachiris, <i>pr.</i>	39
Scandolorio, <i>u.</i>	25	Similia, <i>u.</i>	194	Sumachia, <i>u.</i>	134	Todos los Santos, <i>pr. u.</i>	109	Stada, <i>u.</i>	93
Scanderone, <i>u.</i>	167	Simocis, <i>u.</i>	411	Sumahua, <i>u.</i>	134	Sapayoy, <i>u.</i>	142	Stanes, <i>u.</i>	93
Scandron, <i>u.</i>	167	Simocis, <i>inf.</i>	227	Sumaria, <i>inf.</i>	219	Sardimia, <i>inf.</i>	120, 121	Starand, <i>pr.</i>	159
Scarpanto, <i>inf. u.</i>	116	Sin, <i>u.</i>	100	Sunda, <i>u.</i>	224	Sardimia, <i>inf.</i>	120	St. Stephen, <i>pr.</i>	134
Scheherual, <i>u.</i>	116	Sin, <i>u.</i>	100	Sunda, <i>u.</i>	224	Sarged, <i>u.</i>	29	St. Steven del puerto, <i>u.</i>	110
Schentez, <i>p.</i>	159	Sina, <i>p.</i>	101, 121	Sundia, <i>u.</i>	219	Sarra, <i>pr.</i>	41		
Scid, <i>u.</i>	159	Sinai, <i>u.</i>	101, 121	Sunien, <i>u.</i>	120	Saques-hanxi, <i>p.</i>	96	Sua, <i>pr.</i>	53
Scid, <i>u.</i>	159	Sinai, <i>u.</i>	101, 121	Sura, <i>u.</i>	120	San Gerni, <i>fl.</i>	24	Sudchen, <i>u.</i>	55
Scid, <i>u.</i>	159	Sinai, <i>u.</i>	101, 121	Sura, <i>u.</i>	120	Sar, <i>u.</i>	51	Subcit, <i>u.</i>	32
Scinmay, <i>u.</i>	186	Sincapura, <i>u.</i>	162	Surat, <i>u.</i>	129	Satyrorum, <i>u.</i>	59	Suby, <i>u.</i>	29
Scinnah, <i>u.</i>	168	Sinchi, <i>u.</i>	117	Surati, <i>u.</i>	129	Sand, <i>pr.</i>	10	Su, <i>u.</i>	29
Scitrus, <i>u.</i>	117	Sincocanda, <i>pr.</i>	117	Surrabata, <i>u.</i>	224	St. Saviour, <i>pr. u.</i>	116	Succha, <i>u.</i>	56
Scorde, <i>p.</i>	155	Singra, <i>u.</i>	118	Suranguis, <i>u.</i>	224			Suchachi, <i>p.</i>	39
Scordicus, <i>m.</i>	3	Singra, <i>u.</i>	118	Suta, <i>u.</i>	140, 143	Sayna, <i>u.</i>	130	Succodifi, <i>u.</i>	30
Scutari, <i>u.</i>	4	Sintacora, <i>u.</i>	193	Sufina, <i>pr.</i>	143	Scanderia, <i>u.</i>	12	Sue, <i>u.</i>	30
Scythia, <i>pr.</i>	169	Sinthum, <i>fl.</i>	193	Sufina, <i>pr.</i>	143	Scandir, <i>u.</i>	10	Suluce, <i>u.</i>	39
Scythia, <i>pr.</i>	169	Sio, <i>u.</i>	193	Sutia, <i>u.</i>	143	Scandir, <i>u.</i>	10	Sunburo, <i>inf.</i>	149
Scythia, <i>pr.</i>	169	Sio, <i>u.</i>	193	Sutia, <i>u.</i>	143	Scandir, <i>u.</i>	10	Summet, <i>inf.</i>	98
Scythicus Oceanus, <i>u.</i>	176	Sipilas, <i>m.</i>	71	Swally, <i>u.</i>	102	Scandir, <i>u.</i>	10	Sun, <i>u.</i>	107
Scythopolis, <i>u.</i>	53, 68	Siphara, <i>u.</i>	115	Sybaris, <i>u.</i>	168	De la Plata, <i>u.</i>	124	Sunta, <i>pr. u.</i>	34
Sebatia, <i>u.</i>	166	Siphara, <i>u.</i>	115	Syber, <i>u.</i>	168	De la Plata, <i>u.</i>	124	Surda, <i>pr.</i>	37
Schataphonitis, <i>u.</i>	221	Sitrae, <i>u.</i>	115, 166	Syda, <i>u.</i>	131	Secum, <i>u.</i>	97	Suta, <i>pr.</i>	31
Schat, <i>inf.</i>	221	Sirbon, <i>u.</i>	82	Syda, <i>u.</i>	131	Secum, <i>u.</i>	97	Suta, <i>pr.</i>	31
Schoims, <i>u.</i>	78	Siriangh, <i>capl.</i>	217, 223	Syndra, <i>u.</i>	105	Secco, <i>fl.</i>	159	Sut, <i>pr.</i>	160
Scocanda, <i>pr.</i>	152	Sirup, <i>u.</i>	209	Syngras, <i>fl. m.</i>	118	Secellne, <i>pr. u.</i>	41	Syene, <i>u.</i>	13
Scel, <i>u.</i>	152	Sirme, <i>u.</i>	35	Synndia, <i>u.</i>	118	Segocet, <i>u.</i>	95	Syluria, <i>u.</i>	25
Scel, <i>u.</i>	152	Silman, <i>pr.</i>	178	Synp, <i>u.</i>	118	Segura, <i>u.</i>	118, 146	Syrta major, <i>u.</i>	14
Segui, <i>u.</i>	82	Sifan, <i>u.</i>	148	Syria, <i>u.</i>	203	Segura, <i>u.</i>	118, 146	Syrta major, <i>u.</i>	14
Seir, <i>u.</i>	82	Sittacene, <i>pr.</i>	116	Syria, <i>u.</i>	203	Seguro, <i>pr. u.</i>	137	Minor.	25
Sela, <i>u.</i>	143	Sitrim, <i>u.</i>	64	Damafene, <i>pr.</i>	50	Scio, <i>pr.</i>	10		
Sela, <i>u.</i>	143	Sizyces, <i>p.</i>	75	Maacha, <i>pr.</i>	50	Scilgus, <i>u.</i>	36		
Selbes, <i>inf.</i>	222	Sivryna, <i>u. f.</i>	194	Salarati, <i>pr.</i>	53	Scilgus, <i>u.</i>	36		
Selucia, <i>u.</i>	22, 24, 48	Soa, <i>fl.</i>	194	Secunda, <i>pr. ibid.</i>	56	Senega, <i>p.</i>	56		
Selucis, <i>u.</i>	114	Soama, <i>fl. pr.</i>	30	Transiluvialis, <i>pr. ibid.</i>	56	Seneca, <i>u.</i>	109		
Selge, <i>u.</i>	36	Arze Sobab, <i>pr.</i>	39	Propria, <i>pr.</i>	56	Natira Senorra, <i>pr.</i>	133		
Sellure, <i>u.</i>	208	Sobara, <i>u.</i>	22	Syria, <i>u.</i>	52, 58	La Sepulcrata, <i>u.</i>	35		
Sellure, <i>u.</i>	208	Sobara, <i>u.</i>	22	Syro-Media, <i>pr.</i>	42	Sequa, <i>fl.</i>	51		
Semamthus, <i>m.</i>	211	Socotai, <i>u.</i>	211	Syro-Phanicia, <i>pr.</i>	52	Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semamius, <i>m.</i>	187	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semita, <i>u.</i>	187	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semita, <i>u.</i>	187	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion, <i>u.</i>	91		
Semirafis, <i>u.</i>	145	Sorcat, <i>inf.</i>	104			Serapion,			

**T**

Távaras, <i>fl.</i>	128
Tavina, <i>fl.</i>	270
Tafalla, <i>u.</i>	210
Taffes, <i>p.</i>	276
Tagus, <i>fl.</i>	211
Talavera, <i>fl.</i>	210
Talente, <i>C.</i>	197
Talavera de la Reina, <i>u.</i>	129
Talzali, <i>p.</i>	285
Tamara, <i>fl.</i>	289
Tamara, <i>u.</i>	289
Tanaua, <i>u.</i>	146
Tankerville, <i>u.</i>	165
Taodunum, <i>u.</i>	87
Taracina, <i>u.</i>	184
Tarazona, <i>u.</i>	184
Tardes, <i>fl.</i>	24
Tarenta, <i>u.</i>	134
Tarentum, <i>u.</i>	67
Tarifio, <i>u.</i>	224
Tarsetta, <i>fl.</i>	73
Tarsetta, <i>u.</i>	183
Tartas, <i>u.</i>	183
Tartagou, <i>u.</i>	241
Tartelus, <i>inf. u.</i>	223
Tarconensis, <i>p.</i>	212
Tarconis, <i>u.</i>	275
Tavilla, <i>u.</i>	234
Taulon, <i>u.</i>	187
Taurini, <i>p.</i>	132
Tauronensis, <i>u.</i>	187
Tauronum, <i>u.</i>	75





# The TABLE.

# The TABLE.

Lib. II	143	144	145	146	147	148	149	150	151	152	153	154	155	156	157	158	159	160	161	162	163	164	165	166	167	168	169	170	171	172	173	174	175	176	177	178	179	180	181	182	183	184	185	186	187	188	189	190	191	192	193	194	195	196	197	198	199	200	201	202	203	204	205	206	207	208	209	210	211	212	213	214	215	216	217	218	219	220	221	222	223	224	225	226	227	228	229	230	231	232	233	234	235	236	237	238	239	240	241	242	243	244	245	246	247	248	249	250	251	252	253	254	255	256	257	258	259	260	261	262	263	264	265	266	267	268	269	270	271	272	273	274	275	276	277	278	279	280	281	282	283	284	285	286	287	288	289	290	291	292	293	294	295	296	297	298	299	300	301	302	303	304	305	306	307	308	309	310	311	312	313	314	315	316	317	318	319	320	321	322	323	324	325	326	327	328	329	330	331	332	333	334	335	336	337	338	339	340	341	342	343	344	345	346	347	348	349	350	351	352	353	354	355	356	357	358	359	360	361	362	363	364	365	366	367	368	369	370	371	372	373	374	375	376	377	378	379	380	381	382	383	384	385	386	387	388	389	390	391	392	393	394	395	396	397	398	399	400	401	402	403	404	405	406	407	408	409	410	411	412	413	414	415	416	417	418	419	420	421	422	423	424	425	426	427	428	429	430	431	432	433	434	435	436	437	438	439	440	441	442	443	444	445	446	447	448	449	450	451	452	453	454	455	456	457	458	459	460	461	462	463	464	465	466	467	468	469	470	471	472	473	474	475	476	477	478	479	480	481	482	483	484	485	486	487	488	489	490	491	492	493	494	495	496	497	498	499	500	501	502	503	504	505	506	507	508	509	510	511	512	513	514	515	516	517	518	519	520	521	522	523	524	525	526	527	528	529	530	531	532	533	534	535	536	537	538	539	540	541	542	543	544	545	546	547	548	549	550	551	552	553	554	555	556	557	558	559	560	561	562	563	564	565	566	567	568	569	570	571	572	573	574	575	576	577	578	579	580	581	582	583	584	585	586	587	588	589	590	591	592	593	594	595	596	597	598	599	600	601	602	603	604	605	606	607	608	609	610	611	612	613	614	615	616	617	618	619	620	621	622	623	624	625	626	627	628	629	630	631	632	633	634	635	636	637	638	639	640	641	642	643	644	645	646	647	648	649	650	651	652	653	654	655	656	657	658	659	660	661	662	663	664	665	666	667	668	669	670	671	672	673	674	675	676	677	678	679	680	681	682	683	684	685	686	687	688	689	690	691	692	693	694	695	696	697	698	699	700	701	702	703	704	705	706	707	708	709	710	711	712	713	714	715	716	717	718	719	720	721	722	723	724	725	726	727	728	729	730	731	732	733	734	735	736	737	738	739	740	741	742	743	744	745	746	747	748	749	750	751	752	753	754	755	756	757	758	759	760	761	762	763	764	765	766	767	768	769	770	771	772	773	774	775	776	777	778	779	780	781	782	783	784	785	786	787	788	789	790	791	792	793	794	795	796	797	798	799	800	801	802	803	804	805	806	807	808	809	810	811	812	813	814	815	816	817	818	819	820	821	822	823	824	825	826	827	828	829	830	831	832	833	834	835	836	837	838	839	840	841	842	843	844	845	846	847	848	849	850	851	852	853	854	855	856	857	858	859	860	861	862	863	864	865	866	867	868	869	870	871	872	873	874	875	876	877	878	879	880	881	882	883	884	885	886	887	888	889	890	891	892	893	894	895	896	897	898	899	900	901	902	903	904	905	906	907	908	909	910	911	912	913	914	915	916	917	918	919	920	921	922	923	924	925	926	927	928	929	930	931	932	933	934	935	936	937	938	939	940	941	942	943	944	945	946	947	948	949	950	951	952	953	954	955	956	957	958	959	960	961	962	963	964	965	966	967	968	969	970	971	972	973	974	975	976	977	978	979	980	981	982	983	984	985	986	987	988	989	990	991	992	993	994	995	996	997	998	999	1000	1001	1002	1003	1004	1005	1006	1007	1008	1009	1010	1011	1012	1013	1014	1015	1016	1017	1018	1019	1020	1021	1022	1023	1024	1025	1026	1027	1028	1029	1030	1031	1032	1033	1034	1035	1036	1037	1038	1039	1040	1041	1042	1043	1044	1045	1046	1047	1048	1049	1050	1051	1052	1053	1054	1055	1056	1057	1058	1059	1060	1061	1062	1063	1064	1065	1066	1067	1068	1069	1070	1071	1072	1073	1074	1075	1076	1077	1078	1079	1080	1081	1082	1083	1084	1085	1086	1087	1088	1089	1090	1091	1092	1093	1094	1095	1096	1097	1098	1099	1100	1101	1102	1103	1104	1105	1106	1107	1108	1109	1110	1111	1112	1113	1114	1115	1116	1117	1118	1119	1120	1121	1122	1123	1124	1125	1126	1127	1128	1129	1130	1131	1132	1133	1134	1135	1136	1137	1138	1139	1140	1141	1142	1143	1144	1145	1146	1147	1148	1149	1150	1151	1152	1153	1154	1155	1156	1157	1158	1159	1160	1161	1162	1163	1164	1165	1166	1167	1168	1169	1170	1171	1172	1173	1174	1175	1176	1177	1178	1179	1180	1181	1182	1183	1184	1185	1186	1187	1188	1189	1190	1191	1192	1193	1194	1195	1196	1197	1198	1199	1200	1201	1202	1203	1204	1205	1206	1207	1208	1209	1210	1211	1212	1213	1214	1215	1216	1217	1218	1219	1220	1221	1222	1223	1224	1225	1226	1227	1228	1229	1230	1231	1232	1233	1234	1235	1236	1237	1238	1239	1240	1241	1242	1243	1244	1245	1246	1247	1248	1249	1250	1251	1252	1253	1254	1255	1256	1257	1258	1259	1260	1261	1262	1263	1264	1265	1266	1267	1268	1269	1270	1271	1272	1273	1274	1275	1276	1277	1278	1279	1280	1281	1282	1283	1284	1285	1286	1287	1288	1289	1290	1291	1292	1293	1294	1295	1296	1297	1298	1299	1300	1301	1302	1303	1304	1305	1306	1307	1308	1309	1310	1311	1312	1313	1314	1315	1316	1317	1318	1319	1320	1321	1322	1323	1324	1325	1326	1327	1328	1329	1330	1331	1332	1333	1334	1335	1336	1337	1338	1339	1340	1341	1342	1343	1344	1345	1346	1347	1348	1349	1350	1351	1352	1353	1354	1355	1356	1357	1358	1359	1360	1361	1362	1363	1364	1365	1366	1367	1368	1369	1370	1371	1372	1373	1374	1375	1376	1377	1378	1379	1380	1381	1382	1383	1384	1385	1386	1387	1388	1389	1390	1391	1392	1393	1394	1395	1396	1397	1398	1399	1400	1401	1402	1403	1404	1405	1406	1407	1408	1409	1410	1411	1412	1413	1414	1415	1416	1417	1418	1419	1420	1421	1422	1423	1424	1425	1426	1427	1428	1429	1430	1431	1432	1433	1434	1435	1436	1437	1438	1439	1440	1441	1442	1443	1444	1445	1446	1447	1448	1449	1450	1451	1452	1453	1454	1455	1456	1457	1458	1459	1460	1461	1462	1463	1464	1465	1466	1467	1468	1469	1470	1471	1472	1473	1474	1475	1476	1477	1478	1479	1480	1481	1482	1483	1484	1485	1486	1487	1488	1489	1490	1491	1492	1493	1494	1495	1496	1497	1498	1499	1500	1501	1502	1503	1504	1505	1506	1507	1508	1509	1510	1511	1512	1513	1514	1515	1516	1517	1518	1519	1520	1521	1522	1523	1524	1525	1526	1527	1528	1529	1530	1531	1532	1533	1534	1535	1536	1537	1538	1539	1540	1541	1542	1543	1544	1545	1546	1547	1548	1549	1550	1551	1552	1553	1554	1555	1556	1557	1558	1559	1560	1561	1562	1563	1564	1565	1566	1567	1568	1569	1570	1571	1572	1573	1574	1575	1576	1577	1578	1579	1580	1581	1582	1583	1584	1585	1586	1587	1588	1589	1590	1591	1592	1593	1594	1595	1596	1597	1598	1599	1600
---------	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------